Treasure of arrecally and Paragrams times

ΑΡΧΑΙΟ-ΠΛΟΥΤΟΣ.

Containing,
Ten following Bookes to the former

TREASVRIE

OF AVNCIENT AND

MODERNE TIMES.

880

Being the Learned Collections, Iudicious Readings, and Memorable Observations: Not onely Divine, Morall, and Philosophicall, But also Poeticall, Martiall, Politicall, Historicall, Astrologicall, &c.

Translated out of that Worthy Spanish Gentleman, PEDRO MEXIA, And M. FRANCESCO SANSOVINO, that Famous Italian: Asalfo, of those Honourable Frenchmen, Anthony du Verdier, Lord of Vauprinaz:

Loys Guyon, Sieur de la Nauche, Counsellour vnto the King:

Claudius Gruget, Parisian, &c.



LONDON Printed by WILLIAM LAGGARD, 1619.

To the most Noble and Twin-like paire, of truely Honourable and compleat perfection, Sir PHILLIP HERBERT, Knight of the Bath to our dread Soueraigne King I AMES, at his Royall Coronation; Lord Baron of Sherland, Earle of Mountgomery, and Companion in the unparaleld and famous Fellowship, of the

As also, To the truly vertuous and Noble Countesse his Wife, the Lady Susan, Daughter to the right Homourable Edward Vere, Earle of Oxen-ford, Viscount Bulbec, Lord Sandford and of Badelessnere: and Lord High Chamberlains of England, &c.

Order of the Garter.



Orthily might I bee condemned of arrogancie, (most Noble Lord & Lady) because, having past the Pikes in a peece of the felfe-same service (followed with fauour and kinde acceptation) I should therefore prefume vppon the like successe: knowing the inconstant nature of Times, that as they alter, fo do mens humours & dispositions with them. For, that which carrieth

liking and allowance to day, falles into loathing and contempt to morrow, Opinions being more various in the case of Bookes, then are the Arguments whereon they discourse, because carping curiofity will have his censure, ... But, as the Last for Hercules, was not fa-Thioned to fit euerie foote, nor his Lyons skinne to be worne by any Ignorance wil base Lout; even so the sublimitie of true judgement (in matters of alwayes be fuch industrious and painfull labor) should be left to the Learned learned la

The first Volume of this

Treasurie, published a-

bout 5.yeares

not

The Epistle Dedicatorie.

not to every course and mechanicke conceite, capeable of nothing, but of fuch occasions as are suteable to his owne condition.

I have read of the great River * Euripus, which ebbeth and flow- Anarrow for eth feuen times a day, and with fuch violence; that it carrieth Ships Hauen Aulis vpon it with full fayle, directly against the winde. Seuen times in an Eulers, and houre ebbeth and floweth ralh Opinion, in the torrent of indifcreet and troublesome apprehension: carrying Criticke calumnie, and fquint-eyed detraction, mainly against the winde of Wisedome and Iudgement; because their braines are no better ballast, nor their

capacity of further reach or extendure.

And yet, if the faying of Hesiode be true; That nothing can bee more pleasing, then variety, which is the soules cheefest solace: Then (not fearing folly, but speaking to peerelesse Noble nature) give mee leave to tell you, that there can hardly bee any especiall subject imagined, but one Argument or other heere meeteth with it. From Sacred Diuinity (the most solide and supreame of all other) through all other Artes and Sciences what focuer, even to any lowly, and the meanest (worthy)profession; here is some notable marke or Monument thercof (if it be either Ancient or Moderne) stored vp in this Treafurie, for future Ages to delight in, and to receive no meane bene- together. fite thereby.

Then (Honourable Lord and Ladie) all these blessings beeing Yours (as also my selfe, in endlesse dutie and service) when any subiect of great, grave, and ferious confideration (as of Nations, Monarchies, Kingdomes, and People, in their Originall, Rifing or Declining, by Warres, Diffentions, Combustions, or otherwise in the like occurrences) shall seeme troublesome or tedious to you: walke on but a little further, & then you may enter into a spacious Forrest, affording all choise of pleasing Game, either for Hawking, Hunting, Fishing, Fowling, or any other Noble exercise beside.

When those Forrest pleasures shall faint you (as all delights dull, by too much continuance) an Orchard standes wide open to welcome you, richly abounding in the fairest Frutages: not to feed the Eie onely, but likewise to refresh the Heart, inuiting you to plucke where, and while you please, and to bestow how, and when you list: because they are all yours, and whosoeuer else shall taste of them, do

enioy such freedome but by your fauor.

There is one especiall recreation more (Gracious Madam) which remaineth foly to your felfe, and fuch as may enter by your admittance in a goodly large Garden, abounding with all kind of the fairest Flowers, that open with the cheerfull mornings Sun, and shut againe at his fad departure, all fweet, and all foueraigne. And, because Ladies of elder times (as many haue had the like delight in our more Moderne daies) were fingularly skilfull in Phyfick and Chirurgery: there is not a vacant place in the whole Garden, but it is fitly furni-

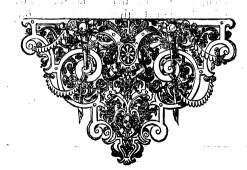
The Epistle Dedicatory.

shed euerie where; the verie common walkes (euen as if they were Bride-like strewed by hand) are couered with the choisest Simples, purest distillatorie Plants, and wholesome Herbes of euerie Vertue: for which, the Garden was purpotely founded, and not for fruitleffe

idle vanity.

And were you all alone, without companie, and by your felfe, yet can you not so continue there: For, you may meete with a faire Beuey of Queenes and Ladies, ar divers turnings as you walke, and euerie one will tell you the Historie of her life and fortune (rare examples of Vertue and Honor) as themselves can best, truly & plainly discourse vnto you. Some other also you shall see; fadly sitting vnder Eughe & Cipresse trees, with Garlands of those leaues wreathed about their heads, fighing out their divers difasters: whom your Noble nature cannot choose but commiserate; as greening to see a scratch in a cleare skin, and a bodie beautified by Nature, to be blemished by vnkinde Destiny

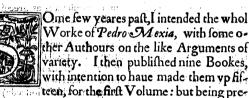
From manie remote Kingdomes and Countries where natural ly they spake those severall Languages) are all these variable pleafures come hither, onely to kiffe your Noble hands. It was no mean infelicitie for them, to find no fitter a Tutor, that might have taught them to speake more eloquent English; which (indeede) also was my fault, seeing none else would tie themselves to so hard a Taske. But howfoeuer it may prooue, your rich judgements, and all-fufficient ability in the Languages, as also my weakenesse; will (Ihope) bury all defects in your fauor, & beare out from feardall my willing endeuour, that I may finish the other (yet remaining)eleuen Bookes behinde, to perfect fo rich and rare a Treasurie.



Hefiod, in Lib 3. Cap. 7.



The Printer to the Reader.



uented by fickneffe, I finished but the first nine Bookes and finding the good acceptance of them, I have adventured now on ten Bookes more, of the like Ancient and Moderne Times: lauing only, some particular Heads but lightly touched, are now (by the same Authors) more at large illustrated. And may this finde equal fauour vnto the former (withoutany harsh censure, or vnkinde discouragement:) the other eleuen Bookes shall follow with all convenient speede, to finish up so faire a Treasury.

Farewell.

A Table of the Authours Names, that alledge and approoue the feuerall Arguments, contained in this Booke.

210 J.J. J. J.



Auenz.oar.

4 o athias Auitus Arrianna Albertus Strasbourg

Auirenne Auerroes Athanasius Antonius Sabellieus Arehytas Tarentinia

Intoninus Annius de Viterbo Annales Constantinop. Annales Treuirensis Autor de Bel. Affric.

Arnoldus Lisiadus Adrianus Imperat. Armonina Áleninus :Nice Agapetus Anlus Gellius

Ægisippus Encas Sylvidis Æschylus

Æ (chines Amillius Villor Etius

Ælius Lampridius Amillius (Macer Asberarina Atheneus Asinius Pollio

Apuleius Panisis Alexander Alexandrinus Alexand. Aphrodifens Apolonius Thyaneus Alphraganus Anthony du Lebris

Aristander Antonius Nebricensis Albertus Magnus Aristomachres

Achilles Statius

Aristophanes. Augustine. Andronicus Athenensis. Ausonius Lombardus Aretine Acamathius Antoninus Svi.

Alphonfus Rex Hift. Attalus Accurtius Azzo

Alexand. Trallianus Atteins Capito ... Asconius Padianus Appianus Alexandrinus Archilocus

Arnoldus Ferronius Amain Aristarchus Antoninus Arch. Floren.

Antifthenes Anaximander Albertus (rantzius Alexand. Guaquinus Anaximenes

Abbas Siculia Almadallus Araba Augurellite imp. N. Anthenor Annales I. Stowan Altuarius hand Aurea Historia

Afferins Meneuenfis Alfridus Benerlacensis Adam Merimont h Alliances genealògiques des Rois & Princes de France Annales de Aquitaine

Annales de Bourgoigne Annales du France. Annales rerum Flandricarum.

Biblia Sacra S.Basile S.Bernard Boterus Benelus Baldus Abbat Baldus Doc. Civil. Revolus

Bucchanan Baronius Budaus Bandello

Belforreft Baptista Fulgotius Rartholomeu Boetma Boccace

Bonfinus Barthol.Picenus Rartholus Вечения Barthol Dardanu

Beroaldus Baptifta Ignatim Bellonius

Bodinus Bozins Bachi Anchisia Bucholcerus

Balthazar Castillanois Batins Senermus B. Westmerus

S.Cerill. S. Chry foftome Columella Cedrenus Claudianus Crescentius

Clemens Alexand. Cocil. Toles Capitolinus Cornelius Tacitus Cicero Ciaconius

Chry sippus Cardanus Cleomedes Collenutius Conradus Episc. Cnaus Epidius Cornelius Agrippa

Caclus

Censorinus

Cellus Cleanthes Chalcidiu Caline Rhodiginus. (landins Victor Charles de Molin

Comment. Cafar Constantinus Casar Calmatheus.

Cheremonius Chronerus Pol. Caffiodorus Corninus Mell. Cratinus Ctesippus Alexand. Crantzius

Colophonius Count Balthazar Cælius Calcaguin. Сифіпіапня

Dion

Dicaarchus Diodoriu Siculus Dionif Halicar. Dionil . reopar Diogenes Laertius Dioscorides Demosthenes Democratus Diocles Diogenes Cynic. Damascene D. Pedro Epif. Loon Demetrius Alexand Du Bartas W. ... Dictis Cretenffs Dares Phrygius Damaso.Sigierus Dionif, Lycinus Donatus

Dionif. Caffianus.

Ентепін

Ephorius Ecditins Eulebius. Eucherius Eumenides Epiphanius Estinan de Garibar Egbinbard Enuodius Euripides Eracostbenes Ennin: Eustatius Entropius Erasistratus

Ebu-

The Authors Names.

Ioan Feralden

Ioan de Imola

Ebulus Enclider Eldacus Eitanthes Enicurus Empedocles Era(mus Roter. E Catina Éginus Émpolemus Elpagoras Enpolis Epile.Tyrienlis P.Ereb.de Reip.Ind. Egnatius Енадтіна Enans Estien Pasquier Epilterni Euchirid. Eral. Epicharmus

Froiffard Fortunatus Fanchet Fenestella. Frontinus Fabina Pictor. Flanin Epife. Fasciculus Temp. Fernelins Flores Postar Fran. Georgius Fabianu Pretor Fran Philelphus Funttius Festus Pompeius

S.Gregory S.Greg. Nazianzen Guliel. Tyrienf. Gebinianus Guil de Naugis Gennadisu Greg . Floren. Greg. Turonnenf. Gregor.Papa Gelner Guicciardine Gandentina Merula Geber Glareanus Gontierus Gualt. Monach. Garcias d'Oria

Gaulfrid Monumet.

Gyrald. Cambrensis

Guliel. Malmef.

Gemma Frisius

Guyldas

Galen Galionu de Nargni. Geor Trabezon Gulsel.Budens Galerus Gwrdoniu Guydo Benatus Genebrardus Geor Leontinus Gregor. Giraldus Gregor . Rech. GHEHAT A.

S. Hierom Hist. Missellan. Homer Herodotus Hortine Hermanu He findes Heraclides Ponticum Hermolaus Berber. Hugo de S. Victor Hierocles Heliconiensis Hippocrates Harbocration Hift . D. Villamont Herodianus Horace Hermes Trifmegist. Hermocrates Heliscou Tatius Heraclitus Heraclides Hen. Hunting don Hist Poland Hallian, Chron. Hall Holinshed Hostiensis Негторры Herophilus Hinemariu Hier, Oforing Hinibaldus Houllier Hephestion Grec. Heliodorna Haly ben Razel. Hier Conestagio

Iulius Pollus Inl. Caf. Comment. Innocentius Papa Io(ephus Innenall Inlina Florus Inlius Secundius **Iustine**

Inlim Capitolinus Io.de Sacrabolco Io. Lincolnienfis Io. Agricanus Io. Bale Iulius Frontinus I sidor no Lamblichus Ingulphus Inlins Pelavins Instinator Isaac Rab. io.Ronie Iulian Imperat. Inftim. Martyr Io.Scotus Io. Alexandrinus Iulius Firmicus Io.de Mons Royalis lo. Driodonna I Cens Io. Math. Tierinus Io.Va (ans Io.Saxonisu Io. Magnus Arch. Hispal. Isocrates

Îreneus Io, Capprane Iornandou Io. Monachus lacques Bosins Io. Damascenne Io. Baptist, Egnatine Io. de Ataulmons lacques de Maguntia Io. Boccace Ioachim Vadianus Icel. Med. Alexand. Ioubert Med. Gal. lo: Camertes lo: Carion Io: Cantacuzensu

lo: Fernelius

I (ans. Indaicus

Io: Lastens

lo: Annius.

Iacobus Fabet

Ionianu Pontanu

L Lucian

Lucius Frultiu Leo Imperat Lucius Plotius Latinus Pacasus Lucane Lattan, Firmianus Lupus Episc.Troi Liebondus Lodonicus Vines Lea Affricanus

Lastantine Gramman Leonardus Camellus Laonicus Calchond. Licinius Macer Lucas Tudensis Lazaro Soranzo Lucretine Leo Hebraico Lodonicus Caline Leo Sophift. Labeo Antiflins Linus Lateratisa Lucius Flores Laurentine Surlas Lopez de Castagued Lucas Marinus Sie. Lampridens Lazarni de Paif. Lodo: Valentinus Lee Papa Lucas de Tur Lerus Lyfias

Marcus Spor Marcellus Marcu Varre Molina Hifba. Marineus Sicul Martianus Capellus Martin du Bellay Macrobius Marianne Scotus Martiall Mantues Meffala Augurius Metrodorus Marcus Aurelius Moschiones Marbodena Mestala Corninu Macchianell Morses Bar: Cepha Marsilina Phicinus Matheus Palmerius Martinus Marcus Maniline Marcus Panins Metalthenes Mathew Parist Manethon Masheus Marhew Westminst Munster Marcus Valerius Mathiolus Monsieur de Villament Marcus Damascenus Musaus 1 Monsieur de la Nous Meļuns



THE TREASVRIE

of Ancient and Moderne TIMES.

THE FIRST BOOKE.

Of the ancient Countrey of Gaule, now called France; what Lawes, Customes, Ceremonies, and other manners were wied among the people of that Nation in their first Originall: and how (fince then) they have continued.

An Introduction to the whole Discourse.

The first limits of Gaul



Gaule was enclofed within the limits of the Rhein. of the Alpes, of the Mediterranean sea, of the Pv-

N ancient times.

the Countrey of

renean Mountains, and of the Ocean fea. But after that the Gaules had passed the Alpes, all the Countrey which was from the Mountains, fo farre as the river * Rubicon, along by the coast of the Apennines, Italy, riling out of Apenni and so vp into the high Sea (which at this day is called the Gulfe of Venice) took the w,& running etweene Aname of Gaule : as Galatia did the like, afminum and Rauenna into ter that wee had fubdued fome people; of the Adriatique Alia. That Gaule then which is in Europe. being halfe parted by the Alpes, is diui-The 3.diuifided into two parts; the one on the hither fide of the Mountaines, and the other be-Togata, calld yond. That which is on the further fide, yet concerning vs, was called by the Romanes *Togata: as Romane, in regard of

the habit of the Romanes, being commonly called a Gowne, and which they then did finally weare. That on the historifide, was (by themselves) named properly Braccasa (by a certain fashion of garment then worne by them, termed Breeches) and partly " Comata, in regard that the haire on their heads was verie bushy. Brassata in the time of Iulius Cafar, had his extendure from the Alpes, so farre as Rolne or Khodanus bending towardes the Pyrenean Mountaines, where were comprized the Volca, Armoricanes, Rhutheni or Khynteni, and Heluetians, as it is to be feen in the feuenth Book of Calars Commentaries. This country was one while called Prouence, and then againe Narbone, after the name of Narbona, then the chiefe and capitall Citie of the country. In Comata dwelt the Aquitans, which are they of Guienne, euen from the Pyrenean Mountaines fo farre as the river Garana : A river paton the hitherfide whereof are the Celts, lung Celica inhabiting fo farre as the Rivers of Sena lina. and Marna. All the rest of the country extending toward the North, is possessed. The Authors

by the Belgians. Now the fearch would bee very great, fence concerand hard to be performed by any ma, that, ning his pur-B would History.

taining Narbö. Dawbhinie. Comata.com rehending Belgica, Celtica ind Aquitane A Riuer riing out of the alpes.

tul Car In Com nent, lib y .

ronence called Narbone.

fpetchesin his owne de-

Nef.

& new Lome

would (with a certaine history of all the | as will bee declared by that which Cafer times) fet downe the fashions, manners, and customes which the ancient Gaules had held and obscrued, untill the daies of Inline Cafar, and their nouell qualities from those dayes to ours. But such as can content themselves with that diligence, which generally may be deliuered by the proofes of good and fufficient Authours, worthy of faith and found credit; perhaps shall finde their expectation well fitted, both with honest pleasure and profite in their reading. And with this intention am I determined to make (fummarily) a collection out of many writers, that have carefully imployed their paines, concerning the manners and behaulour of the Gaules, according as matters might be remembred, in such diversity of distant places. And first, we will select out the most Ancient : afterward (if wee can bring our purpose to full effect, and as our endeuor

(hall nothing be wanting) we will as dili-

Calar hath comprehended a certaine

gently feeke for the nouell customes.

forme and femblance of Gaul in her ancient dayes; especially in the fixt booke of his Commentaries, of the warre in Gaul: albeit he hath fowen many other things throughout his Bookes: which I having collected heere and there, and from infinite places in other Authors, so that the whole may ferue to encrease and fully ils lustrate the course of our purpose; wee may the more reasonably accomplish that which shall serue to make knowne our ful aime and scope. Neuerthelesse, I am not to learne, that the Greekes which have followed Cafar, wer it that they understood not the latine tongue, or were it through carelefnesse and negligence; haue declared in many places, that they fearfely vnderstoode the matters contained in his Commentaries. Wherefore we will first of all imitate Celar, as the most great and fingular Author and master of our history: and then purfue others, according as

they have borrowed any thing of him, or

as they serue to make the whole subject

vnderstood. But in regard that the principall parts of Great Britaine, as also of Germany, haue bene seized by the Gaules, as shal appear in due time and place; and foraimuch as there hath bene great refemblance of the Britaines and Germanes with the Gauls.

hath written : I imagined with my felfe. that it would very conveniently fute with our purpose, to compare such fashions as carried any coherence in these Nations. Confidering that Cafar thought it fit, to compare the customes of Gaule, with IntiCafin com them of Germany. And Strabe, percey- Strabe inline uing the Germanes to be called so by the Romanes, as true brethren to the Gauls, by refemblance of their manner of living, when he wrote the fashions and customs of the ancient Gaules, he reproued them, and began with the Germanes. But although that Tacisus hath fayd, That they cornel Tacitus were named Germanes, by an appellation proper to their Nation, and such as they pleased to stile themselves, yet notwithflanding howfocuer at first they received Resemblance that name, there may be differred in the in customer a great Germanity, or (for our better vn- betweene the derstanding) a Fraternity, both in beha-Gaules and uiour and customes, answerable one vnto another.

For our better beginning then, we will conclude on certaine kindes of manners. to the end, that each thing may be carried as may be most convenient. Plato sayeth, delegib. There are three principal parts in the body of Man, wherein are lodged the three principall powers of the foule; Concupibodie. icence in the Liuer, Anger in the Heart, and Reason in the Head, as in a Citadell. In like manner, there are three feuerall kinds of vertues that do command & gouerne them : Sobriety or Temperance to ver ueto go ouersway Concupiscence in the Liner; werne the po Courage, against Anger in the Heart; and foule. Wisedome, in thinking and judging with Reason. The common consent & agreement of all which, is the faithfull dutie of each one, euen as it were with diners voices, & worthily may be called Inflice. Cafar and Diodorus, Titus Liuius, Strabo, and others, who are as interpreters of Cafar, do declare many things of the Gauls wif I wouldhave for down sol wif I wouldhaue fet down at large in my terpretersof Discourse, according as they are written by them: I should rehearse one and the fame matter too many times. Wherefore I will rather imitate their intention in each place, then bee constrained to alledge their multiplicity of words.

CHAP.

CHAP.I.

Of the Temperance in eating and drinking Wed among the Gaules : as also of theyr Marriages and lingle condition of life.

The Authou beginneth with Tempe

Chap. 1.

O enter then on the behalfe of Temperance, wee might speake of their abstinence in eating and drinking, refort to women, theyr manner of

speech, their modesty in Garments and

lodging their foortes, delights and afsi-

stance which they affoord to one another

in such things as they have. Concerning

the eating and drinking of the ancient

Gaules, they lived for the most part (ac-

cording to Diederus and Strabe) on white

meats, and divers kinds of flesh, & prin-

cipally on Porke fresh and salted. They v-

fed to have standing by their fires, pottes

full of boyled flesh, and spits well loaden

with roafted flesh; the better part whereof

they would give to men of worth, to doe

them honor: as Homer writes, That the

Grecian Captains did to Aiax, when he

had won the victory against Hetter body

to body . Cafar granteth the felfe-fame

manner of life to the Britaines, and to the

The eating drinking of the Ancient Gaules Diador in lib. Strabo in lib.

Hom,lliad,lib

comment lib. 6

doth fet apart fuch as are Masters, & ver= tue docth anough and make them to bee knowne. Their viands are fimply dreffed or prepared, being of wilde fruits; fometimes of fresh Venision or curded milkes without any dainty cooking or dreffing. So much for their manner of eating.

As for their drinke, that amongst the Gody the an-Gaules, and termed Zythum: This (fayth cient Gaules Diodorus) was made of barley and water, Diodor in libit hauing paffed thorowdiuers honicombs. intib.4.cap. 2. Tacitus writeth almost the very same of the Germanes, They make a drinke faith he) ofwater mingled both with barley & wheate, disguised into some resemblance of wine. They which dwell on the Seacoafts, do buy wine. The most part of the Gaules (as Diodorus & Strabo doe both Strabo in lib. 4 write) yied to fitte on the ground and to eate their food, fitting on the skinnes of Their manner Dogges or of wolues: being ferued with of earthen veffelles, which were ftrong and massine, and wrought about with branches of flowers; and they were alwayes attended and ferued by their young children. In like manner Taciens recordeth, Cornel, Tacitu That the Germans fo foone as they were of wathing awake and rifen (which they vied not to their body in do till it was day:) they laued and washed warme water. themselves with warme water, because winter continued in their region for the most part of the yeare ; and at comming foorth of the bathe, they went vnto theyr foode, each one having his table and feat alone by himselfe. Thus then was their ancient and rude simplicity, which caused corpulence & the Germanes to be fo big membred and big flature of corpulent, whereat Tacitus feemeth to the Germans and Gaules maruell greatly. And thence likewife enfued the felfe-fame greatnesse of bodye which was among the Gaules, vvho for their huge corpulency, and regarding only their owne bignesse of stature, held the imaller constitution of the Romanes in contempt, as may be seene in the 2, book of the wars in Gaul.

But Plate reprehendeth the Gaules for their intemperance and drunkennes with wine; and Diodorus writeth the very fame. neffe amongst They affected Wine fo excessively, that the Gaules. when the Merchants brought it to them, they dranke it wholly new as it was; and then becomming drunk, by having taken ouermuch, they lay downe to fleepe, or behaued themselues like mad men. And this was the reason that many of the Ita-

Intemperance

Germanes. The Britaines (faith he)which dwell furthest vp into the Countrey, the

most part of them do not sowe any corne but live onely vpon milke and flesh. Neuertheleffe, they hold in deteftation (by what religious opinion I know not) to tafte of an Hare, of an Hen or Chicken, and of a Goofe. Hee faith also the very fame in his feuenth book, speaking of the Germanes; That they do not addict them felues to any kinde of labour, and that

their very greatest nourishment is vppon white meats, cheese and flesh. But Tacitw hath written much more amply concerning the manner of life amongst the

Germans. Each mother (faith hee) doth nurse her childe with her owne brest, and neuer trusteth it in the hands of their feruants or other Nurses. Thou canst not

know the Master from the Varlet, by any kinde of more delicate feeding. They line nakedly and flouenly even amongst

their Heards or droues of Cattle; & lying vpon the ground, vntill fuch time as age

Corn, Tacitus is

Dimers other compared

with Calar.

2

Errorsin Greeke Au-

Cæfar follow ed as Father of the history.

thors that fol

The cheefest placesin Great Britais and Germany poffeffed by the Gaules,

for nower in

Italian Marchants brogh winc to the Gaules

Dioder in lib.

The Gaules hazarded their lives vp

on fodaine

quarrels.

Corn Taitus it

& night fpeni

mongeft the

Germanes.

lib.a.cap:5.

lian Merchants for the gaine which they of them, what might be their natural difgot both by sca and land; brought wine in great plenty thither, and for a smal vesfell of wine, receyued (in exchange) foure times the value. And the same Authour not onely blameth their drunkennes, but alfo the quarrels which accompanied this excelle. They observed (faith he)as a custome, at their feeding, for the least debate of words, to rife presently from the Table, and defie one another to the combate, hazarding their lines without any discretion. Thus you see how the Greeks haue reprooued the ancient Gaules; and Tasitus calleth the Germanes theyr Brethren in the same vice, accusing them equally to bee drunkards and quarrellers. They ysed not (faith he) any such temperance against thirst. For they held it no difhonor, to spend the whole day and night in drinking, fo they might bee fuffered to drinke their fill, furnishing them with so much as they would have: you shold find them no leffe cafe to bee conquered by their vices, then by armes. The quarrels which rose very often among them, as among people subject to Wine, was no fooner mingled with injuries of the mouth; but (for the most part) did end with blowes by the fword to the expence of their blood, yea of their liues. Such was the blame which the Germanes received by making no more account of fo bad a custome; euen as if this vice had bene no

An Order av mongest the Gauls against this badde cu-

Cafar in com-

Most valiant

& fierce peo-

But the Gaules vsed themselues in bettermanner: for by a publicke ordinance this vile behaujour (in particular persons) was verie greeuously and rigorously punished. Let vs heare then from Cafar the cause of the magnanimity of the Gaules: which was, by knowing how to keep thefelues from this diforderly kinde of life. The most magnanimous of all faith he in his first Booke, speaking of the Belgians, Celts, and Aquitanes) are the Belgians, because they are furthest off in the countrey, which is carefully husbanded, and strangers doe but sildome trafficke with them, to bring them that which serueth to no other end but to effeminate their

vice among them, or did any way shame

In the same book speaking of the Neruians, as of the most couragious of al the Belgians, he faith : Calar making enquiry

position and manners, hee found, That Merchants did not trafficke with them,& that they would not fuffer (by any means) that wineshould be brought among the, or any thing that ferued for delicacy. For they held (as an infallible opinion) that Wine & wanfuch things wer the cause of abasing their hinderers of courage, & that their native vertue would manly corage thereby be much weakned. Whereby we may perceive, that the intemperance of some particular men, was condemned by a generall and publicke decree; and that fobriety & temperate carriage was greatly respected and honored in those parts. Strabe fayeth, That by the perswasion of Cenus, a graue and wife man, the Getes Strabb in lib. rent and pluckt vp all the Vines in theyr country, yet vied some wine in the time of their childrens nurfing. But our Anceftors did much better, because they would No vines plineuer permit or suffer, that any Vine ted amongst should be planted among them, or wine to be brought them from any other place. Wherefore Diederus had good reason to fay, that in his time there came no vvine at all into Gaule Comata. Cafar in his fourth Booke, maketh the Intagar in

Sueues, a people of Germany, equall in comment Lib 4 Sucura, bottemperance to the Neruians that were in Gaule. For they would not fuffer that any wine should bee brought into their Rheine & the countrey, because they were perswaded, Alpes. that it made men lazie, effeminate, and vnapt to endure any labor. Thus we may obserue then, what was their sobrietie in eating and drinking, wherein their greater part of vertue is commended; for abstinence from lewd and wanton women. And albeit that Diodorus, Strabo, ** Barde, grapher of famer; according as Eufebius reported; Baylon being all of them Grecian Authors, haue reproued this vice as frequent and common among the Gaules, and which is as innated (if credite may bee given to Ariflotle) in warlike actions; whereby the fa- drift: in lib. 4. ble was fained, of conjoyning Venue with de Anim cap. 9 God Mars: yet notwithstanding, Cafar speaketh nothing therof, but giveth great commendation to the Germans for their temperance, contrary to them that have written otherwise of them.

Such as haue continued in virgin estate Offuch as lithe longest while among them, and with-out the knowledge of any other but their of life. owne body, received the very greatest re-

Hered, in Terp Of the nature of Children.

> The younger men amongst the Germans

Chap. 1.

qualled theyr fathersstregth Iulius Cefar is omment.Lib.C

Young men

children e-

ued in marriages amongest the Gaules,

Offulpition concerning

The doctrine
of the Philo. phers concerning the huf-bands power. spect and praise. For they held it as a most | dren as a King. The Law truly may apvillanous thing to haueknowledge of a woman, before the age of twenty yeeres. In all which time they did not hide themfelices, but bathed daily together in the riuers. And this is the reason rendered by Herodotus, speaking of the nature of children, wherefore haire commeth much fooner to fome then it doth to others:because the vse of Venus maketh the flesh more loofe and flaggy, and openeth the skinne, which affordeth the eafter passage to the haire; contrarywife, such Children as are gelded, have never any haire at all. Tacitus hath not omitted the felfesame attribution of praise to the Germans. Youg men are long time before they have any knowledge of women : and that is an especiall reason why they lose no part of their yourhfull strength, and therefore make mothers, being yet maids. So much alfo no hast at all of parting with their virgin condition . Young Laddes, and fuch (of like stature) as are gelded, do make triall of their agility together, and their children do (commonly) partake of their Parents ftrength.

Marriages do appertaine to the rule of

the fame vertue : but Cafar hath not writ-

ten carefully how the Gauls observed it. The husband (faith hee) laide downe the valew of fo much goodes, as his wife brought with her, and a just account being taken thereof, the whole stocke was put together. The party that furuined, enioyed the others portion, with the reuen-newes of all that had past. The husbands are masters and commaunders of their wives lines, and also of their Childrens. When any Father of a Family (of note) dyeth, the nerest of the kindred do assemble together; and if any suspition be concevued concerning his death; the VVife is committed to tortures, as they doe theyr flaues, and if the prooue to be conuinced; after they have tormented her with fire, and all other kinds of paines, they put her to death. This law may feeme hard, that giueth the husband fuch like power ouer the wife and children, as he hath ouer his flaues. For, according as the Philofophers have taught vs: the father of the family giueth command to his wife & children, as vnto free persons. Yet this is not all as one kinde of command: for hee giueth command to his wife as to one of & fuch as are of most forward disposition the same Commonwealth, & to his chil- the Father hath care of that they may re-

peare to be hard, and yet it is Roman, euen the like as Romalus made, Ordayning; That the fonne should bee in his fathers power all his life; and that the father may fathers. chastife, beate, put him to any busines in the field, fell, or kill him. The fame King also appointed. That a man might punnish his wife, if the had drunke any wine. Cafar speaketh all this in his fixt booke: and in his fift hee declareth divers other fashions of behaujour in marriages, speaking of the Britaines.

dred are present thereat, and allow of all

presents passing between them. And they

are no presents denised for delicacie or

delight of women, nor to repaire a new

owne behalfe) presenteth him with some

weapons of warre. This is the great mar-

riage bond, these are accounted facred

mysteries, & these are the conjugal gods

ceined and taken to be her husbads com-

panion in all paines and dangers, and that

(be it either peace or warre), thee must of

necessity runne the same fortune. And

these are plainly signified vnto her by the

coupled Oxen, the furnished horse, and

warlike weapons. She receiveth what the

is to bestow on her children after that she

hath worthily and holily nurfed them vp:

that they hold in reuerence.

Ten or twelue together (faith he) do pally brethren with their brethren, and amongst the hold their wives in common, and princifathers with their daughters. And fuch as are born of them, are anoughed for children of them that have espoused their

he relateth of the English . But Taciones Cornelius Taciwriting of the Germaines, glueth them In praife of most noble commendation in this point. the Germans, The wife (faith hee) neuer offereth anie dowry to the husband, but the husband to the wife. The parents, coufins, & kin-

intended marriage: but they are a gift of Oxen yoaked, a horfe brideled and furni- Prefents give flied, & a Buckler or Target, with a fword vnto the new and Iaucline. For these presents the hufband taketh his wife; who likewife (on hir

And to the end that the wife may not Aduertifethinke her felfe exempted from vertuous wifefrom the deffeignes, nor the hazards of warre: from day of hir mathe very beginning of her marriage the is riage. continually advertised, that she is thus re-

Education of

| femble (in good quality) others of theyr | 3, And Casar speaketh thereof in his seachastity well defended; not being corrupted by any occasions, nor the fight of wanton pastimes, or beeing present at

fhed by theyr husbands for adultery

No pardon dultery.

Vices not ie-

Commendation of marri age making,

Against mu thering of Children or Kindred.

Diodor in lib.4 of speaking a-mongst the

Feafts or bankets.

There are very few adulteries commit-Women puni- ted in so great a Nation; for the punishment thereof is very speedy, and the hufband may lawfully do it . After hee hath thauen and stript her naked, the husband bringeth her forth of his house, in the prefence of all his and her neerest Kindred . and beateth her with a bastinado thorow all the streetes; for there is no allowance of any pardon after that a wife hath blemithed her honor; and neither her beauty, youth, or riches can afterward winne her another husband. Vices serue not there to be laughed and iested at: & one m w well (av. That (there) is fuch a world. as neith a permitteth the doing or induring of any diffolutenesse. Those Commonweales are the best ordered, wherein is such permission, that the Maides onely finde themfelues husbands, and mariage confifteth in mutuall accord(for a long while) in goodhope, and that the Bride may have her hearts defire. For in this cafe the taketh her husband as one & the felfesame body, and one life is allowed by them both: because they can have no contrary thoughts, neither theyr defires any way wandering, but their affections doe fo simpathize, as not in either to husband or wife, but to the fanctity of marriage. It is helde as a very great offence to procure the death of any of their children, or of their kindred : And there good customes do beare more sway, then good Lawes and Ordinances doe elfewhere. Hitherto haue wee continued the writing of Tacitus, concerning the Ger-

manes marriages. Diodorus reprehendeth the Gaules for a certaine kinde of difordered behaujour in their speaking, saying; They vse a shore kinde of speech, somewhat hard to be vnderstood, and without any deliberation; speaking great store of doubtfull things, yet deliuering many bragging and vaunting words; much to commend thefelues and in the contempt of others. They are threatners and bad speakers, and full of ouerweening. This vauntery of theirs hath

likewise beene reprodued by Strabo in lib.

diuers examples in his other books. Such is that whereof hee speaketh in his first booke, of Divisionus the Heluctian, who Divisionus the highly extolled and vaunted the vertue of Heluetian the Heluctians, and reproached the difcomfiture of the Romanes, admonithing Cafar by menaces to beware of any further attempting; for feare, least the place where the Romanes miscarried, by a further loffe of their people, after the foiling of their whole Army, should take name thereby, and so remaine as a memorie of their diferace.

Such also was Arionistus, King of the Arionistus K. Germans, who answering litle or nothing mans. to matters which Casar demanded of him; spake wonders of his owne valour, and that he neuer buckled with any man, but he was ruined. And Cafar might com to fight when soeuer he pleased, but he should learne of the Germaines, that they were a people neuer vanquished, and skilfull enough in actions of armes. Vercingetorix also vanted in his oration, that hee would make a League with all the Gaules, and then all the world durft not make head against them. This is sufficient concerning this matter; I come now to speake of the care which they had of their

CHAP.II.

How the Gaules veed to weare their Haire and what kinde of garments they wied. with the painting of their bodyes, their Coines & c.



Gaules, fayth; Albeit, that How the naturally they have good-ly lockes of hayre, yet doe they helpe the naturall colour thereof, by an in-

strument properly denised for that purpole. They twine and twift theyr bushie lockes together, and suffer them to hang dangling downe, cuen from the forchead to the necke : so that they resemble Satyres, and young vnshorne boyes. They haue practifed by Art, to make their haire

Iul.Caf. in com.

Strabo in Lib.

Chap. 1. thicke and hard, that little difference ap- | all paint themselves with an hearb, called peareth betweene theirs and the haire of a horfe. Taciens speaketh (wel-neere) the cornel. Tacitus

Died in Lib. 5 How the Gaules wore their beards. and fome o ther apparre

ubisupra. How the Sucues did

weare their

Of the Lords

amongst the

haire.

fame of the Sneues, a people of Germany. But the especiall note of that Nation is, that they turne their haire croffe or ouerthwart, and then binde or truffe it vp in a knot. In this manner are the Sueues knowen among all the other Germaines, and free-men of the Countrey from flaues. Some of the Samues do weare their havre long, and briftling backward with a bending downe, and so they go till they bee hoary or white; and then (oftentimes) they binde it together on the crowne of the head. The Lords are no more respe-Ctiue of their own persons, and yet without any proud or bad intention: For it is not done in regard that they affect or couet to be affected; but they doe onely fo decke themselves, to appeare the more fierce and terrible vnto theyr enemies, when occasion calleth them foorth to Diedorus proceedeth on in this maner, concerning the behautour of the Gaules. Some of them (faith he) doe vie to shaue

their beards but others do weare them of fome length. The Gentlemen do cutte fuort the haire on their cheekes, & fuffer their beards to grow to fuch length, as it will couer all their bodie. They weare alfo a kinde of garment, which is all hairie, to feeme the more dreadfull and terrible. confifting of diuers colours, and tearmed by them Braccates. They have long skirted lackets or Cassockes, rewed or streaked, beeing of the very courfest Cloath, which they vie for winter, and the most simple or flenderest for summer. Diederus The reason o speaketh thus of the Braccates, as the reacalling Gaule fon whereby the Romans called that part of Gaule Braceata, and by which garment the fame Authour affirmeth, That the Gaules were more terrible to beholde. Strabe likewise writeth in his fourth book concerning their haire, their Cassockes, their rude and hairy garments, their long high breeches, & their short open cloaks which hardly conered halfe theyr Buttockes. All these Authors do agree together, as touching the haire of the Gaules Tilus Liui. dec. and Germaines, and to be of a redde cothe Germains, writing trus. 1 doubt with Gorden com. doru have written. Calar speaking of the specific contrary, because they denied them of the contrary, because they denied them.

by them*G/aftum, which caufeth a blewish 1 The Hearbe or azure colour: and this made them very dreadfull to looke on, when they went to any fight. Moreouer, they wore their lockes of haire very long; shauing off all their other haire except that on the head, and on the vpper lip.

Diodorus purfuing his purpose concerning the Gaules, figureth them forth (asit No shuerin al were with golde) in this manner. The the countrey whole Countrey of Gaule is without the of Gaule, but mettall called Silver : but nature hath giuen it gold without any labor or cunning endeauour. For, in regard that the most part of the rivers have their courses verie troublesome, vneasie in passing, & wheeling or circkling in wide compasse: the waters which descend from the hilles and mountaines, by dispersing themselves abroad in the valleyes, do featter a fand on the fields, which is mingled with golde. How they ga Afterwardes, kneading or tweaking the therebeir clods together, wherein they difcerne the gold amongst golde to fine, and permitting them to adorne thembecome hard they then breake them in felues there peeces, and when they have washed it in with. water, and the earth is quite taken away. they hurle the rest into a furnace, and so melt it in that manner. When they have thus moulten and drawne out the golde pure and cleane, the women and men do adorne themselves therewith: for they weare it in rings on their fingers, and in bracelets about their armes, and in Carcanets on their brests,& in chaines about their neckes, and about their middles as golden girdles. Polybius also maketh mention in his fecond booke, of their Chaines and Bracelets. And Serabo in his 4-booke Strabo in Lib.4 fpeaketh of their Mines of gold, whereof the cheefest are in the Country of "Thre of Gascoigne, bells: and hee attributes this Ornament neere to the only vnto fuch as were in honor and dig-Pyrenean Mountaines nitic.

But Cafar and Tacitus do speake of an- Iul. Cafar in other manner of want or pouerty (of this Com.lib.7 magnificence) amongst the Germaines. They vie (faieth Cafar) skinnes in their garments, and short cloakes made of furred skins, having the greater part of their body naked. But Tacitus speaketh more Corn. Tacit. amply, concerning the whole manner of in lib.6.c.3.

Woade, view by Dyers.

the

Chap. 3.

among the

Their Caues

uer held in no more accoun then the like

The Serrati 8

Bigati wer mo

the ancient

Romanes.

the mettals of gold and filter. Notwithstanding. I will not set it downe affuredly but that there may bee some veine of gold or filuer in Germany: yet who (at any time) hath made fearch for it? They haue no fuch affection thereto, as to apply it to any feruice. Som veffels of filuer haue beene found amongst them (which haue bene giuen to their Ambassadors.or to their Princes) and ver to be held in no more esteeme or reckoning, then those that are made of earth. Neuertheles they that dwell much neerer to vs, in regard that they have trafficked with our people: do make more esteeme of gold and filuer, allowing and commending fome pecces of our monies. They that live further off in the Countrey, doe deale more fimply, and (according to the most ancient manner) make their trafficke by exchange. They receive the old mony, and fuch as they have had longest knowledge of, as the Serrati and Bigati. They loue the coin of filuer better then that of gold; not that they beare therto any particular affection but because the filter money is cafiest for them in buying things common, and offmallest price. The viuall habit or garment to them all, is a long skirted lacket or Cassocke which they fasten together with a buckle, but (for want thereof) with a great pin. The rest of the body is not conered with any thing, and they fit the most part of the day vpon the hearth, somewhat neere to the fire. Such as are of greatest wealth, doe differ from the other in their garments, which are not fo ample or large as those of the Sarmases, or of the Parthians : but justly fitted to the body, and fuch as maketh apparant thew of enery meber. They wear the skins of wild beafts, and fuch as dwell neerest to the rivers, are most curious of their habit: but they of more remote abiding, vie no great curiofity, as being leaft carefull what they weare, because they live so far from strangers. When they have made choise of their beasts skinnes, they do the like of fithes, taking fuch as are the greateft, or as the Ocean and most vnknowne

Seas do yeeld, and fullest of spots, and so

they fowe them together. The Women

are no otherwise habited then the men:

but that the women are oftner conered

with a garment of linnen, inter-wouen

with a scarlet colour. They care for no

fleeues on the height of their armes, but are naked downe from the very shoulders and part of the breaft (neerest adjoyning) is as nakedly discouered. Thus you see the gayest brauery of the Gaules, & how simple the Germans are in their garments: it remaineth now that we fav fomewhat of their houses and dwellings.

CHAP. fl.

Of the houses and dwellings of the Gaules: their Townes and villages, and of what manner they were.



He habitations of the Gauls (according as Strabe fayth) Of their hon. (according as Strabo fayth) Of their boal are wide and spacious, made of earth and planchers of strabo in the wood,&couered with strong

reeds arched on the top together in form of a vault : for fo Cafar in the fift booke of the Gaules warres faith. That the Lod- Iul Cafin com gings of 2. Cicero in the fields, were co- Lib.5. uered with straw and reeds, according to the manner of the Gaules. And in his fixt booke he sheweth, that the more part of Lib.6. the Mannor-houses appertaining to the

gentlemen Gaules, were in the woods, or on the riners. Speaking of the house of Ambiorix, which was altogether engirt with woods; As were wel-nere al (fayth he) the houses of the Gauls are, who to thun the heate do dwel in woods, and neere to rivers. Cæfar deliuereth plainly, that the Aquitaines, Celts and first Belgians, had their Cities and Townes enclosed both with Of their first walles and ditches; but it may be doubted Townes. whether the like provision was vsed among the Gaules further off, and fuch as were necreft to the North; as the a Morini, b Aduatiques, c Menapians, and d Ebu-

Cæfar declareth, That the most part of in France. thefe Belgians, are descended of the Ger- c Inhabiting maines, and faith, that the Germains had not their Townes and Villages made aft to the Vbii. ter our manner : as may bee obserued by that which Tacitus hath written according to the custome which they had in Luke, beyond his time.It is fufficiently known (faith he) Brabant, that the German people dwell not in any mib.5.

and storehou les of Corne under ground

Iul.Cafar in Com.Lib.6.

Corn. Tacit.

Towns.

by the British

Of the Mort. i, that made war, contrarie to all the o-ther Gaules.

Oftowns be-

longing to the Belgians

to have their houses necre vnto one another. They dwell diftant on apart, feattetheir building ringly. where wither rivers, fieldes, or woods do best content them. Their Villages are not after our fashion: for their houses do not touch or joynembere each other. Euery one leaueth a great wide distance or compasse about his dwelling: either to avoid the difastrous fortunes of fire, or elfe because they know not how to build better. They vie neither Morter nor Tiles : but the matter which doeth them feruice, is very rude, and is not prepared either for beauty or pleasure... They plaifter some places much more respectively. with a kinde of earth fo cleane & thining, as it feemeth to contend with painting & portraitures of colours. They were wont to make caues vnder the ground, and couered them with thicke clods of dung. to withdraw themselues thither in the winter time, and therein also to hide theyr Corne because in such places, the colde weather had not fo great power, & when the enemy came, hee could make pillage of nothing, but what hee found readily discouered. As for that which was thus hidden or buried, Theeues not knowing thereof, would bestow the lesse paines & fearch, in further enquiry after it . Calar speaketh (almost) as much of the Britains. They tearned it a Towne (faith he) when they had enclosed some tuffy wood with ditches and pales; whereinto they were wont to retire themselues, to shunne the courses of their enemies. And whereas Cafar speaketh sometimes of certaine Townes of the Suenes: in mine opinion . heeis so to be understood.

> Returne we now to the townes of the Belgians, which are vp higher in the contry, and heere my question is: VV hether they had any such Townes as the Britains or no? We will first of all speake of the Morini, who (according as Calar writeth) beganne to make war, but in a quite contrary manner then the other Gaules. For they having heard, that the very greatest in the security of the place, withdrew Nations which had hazarded battel, were quite defeated and conquered : withdrew themselues & their goods into the strongest places, which were great and long forrests, encompassed with fenny or marthy grounds. Cafar being come vnto the entrance of some such forrest, and having sage, gaue them assault three severall owne negli-

Townes, neither that they could endure | concluded there to tortifie his campe; as the komanes were feriously imployed about their busines; the enemy (of whom they had no doubt at all) fallied forth vp. on them unprovided, at most places of the wood, and charged the Romanes very tharply. Heerenpon, they berooke them to their Arines, and repulfed them backe Romanes and into the wood, and having flaine a great were repulled number of them, purfued them thorough many vneafie places, yet with very little loffe of their people. The next day following, Cafar determined to fell down the Forrest, and suspecting least some harme might be done by the Flankers to Soldiers vnarmed : he caused al the trees which were hewne downe, to bee made as ram= piers against the enemy, and to serue as defences on either fide.

> Hauing made a great spacious countrey (in few dayes) by incredible diligence, after that the Romaines had made themselues Maisters of the cattle & baggage which was in the rereward; they Casar & his gage which was in the recewant; withdrew themselues into the thickest of men pursue the Mortalinite for the Forrest the men and them to the Forrest themselves the men and themselves the forrest themselves the forest themse wood of the Morini, which ferued them as a Towne or Village. And the yeare after; in regard of the drought which had dried up all the Marishes (as is to be seene Int. Cafar in. in his fourth booke) they having no more Com, lib.4. refuges to flye vnto as they had the yeare before, were (almost all of them) (ubdued by Labienus. In these two warres hee maketh no mention of any other Townes, then of woods and marithes.

The like is affirmed of the Menapians, Of the Menain those Countries where the Romaine pians. Legions were broght, under the conduct Int. Cafar in of Fabius and Cotta, as it is fet downe alfo Com. lib. 4. in his fourth booke. They made fpoyle in the fields, destroyed the Corne, fet the houses on fire; and all this happened, because the Menspians had hid themselves in the thickest Forrests. Afterward Cafar himselfe came to them with fine legions. But they (as Cafar faith) not having gathered any forces together, trufting only themselves into the woods and marishes, and carried thither their goods alfo. Ca far having divided his powers with C. Thefratagem Fabius, who was his Lieutenant, and M. of Caffus Treaforer of his wars, and hauing sinfth the mapian, tho also sodainely prouided bridges for past- rough theyr wayes:

skins of wilde beafts, and of

They weare

What garmen did wear

amage that

Of the Nerui-Com. Lib. 2.

10

The Neruian had no walled townes or v lages of de-

1ul_Cafin com

Cæfar againft

wayes, and burning their houses and vil- | or villages in those times , but like them lages, made himfelfe Master of a great number of men and cattle. The Menapians feeing themselves in this diffresse: were constrained to send Ambassadours, also there is no name of any village, or pregnant appearance that there were any but fuch as wee haue alreadie fooken

By due observation of this discourse. appear to be even the like. The Nervians (this speaketh Casar in his second booke) from all antiquity, not having any power of horsemen (for even to this day they do not addict their mindes thereto, but all the strength which they have consisteth onely in footemen) to the end they may impeach and withstand the horsemen of vpon them, to rob and spoile them, cutting downe yong trees that had shot forth strong branches, they twined them together, and interweauing briars and thorns among them, they wrought them fo artificially, that thefe hedges or fences ferued them as a wall; wherein not onely a man could not enter, but also he was vnable to fee or difeerne any thing.

In the fame warre of the Wernians, the women,& fuch as(in regard of their age) were not feruiceable for bearing armes, had neuer any Village or Town for their fafety, which was engire with wals; but in fuch a place where there was no coming or entrance for an Army, because of the marish grounds, which were the onely hinderance.

Now, in this first warre agaynst the Neruians, wee may plainly perceive that they had not any Towne enclosed with wals : and we may well credit it by that which is in the fixt booke. For Celar hauing affembled foure Legions with all possible diligence, entred (vnawares) into the Country of the Neruians, and before they could either draw their strength together, or tell how to faue themselves rafter hee had furprized a great number of men, and heards of Cattle, and dispersed the booty to his Soldiers; he layde waste their fields, and compelled them to yeeld and deliuer him hostages. This passage likewise of the Nerusans, yeeldeth great coniecture, that they had no other towns

of the Britaines.

It may appeare also, that the Aduati- Of the Adua cases (by that which Cafer writeth in his tiquer. fecond booke) have had the like townes. humbly to entreate peace. In this place | Hauing for faken (faith he) al their townes | Com.lib.2 and Castles, they brought all their goods into a village, which was wonderfully ftrong by naturall fituation. For, having (on al fides about it)huge rocks & downfalles of exceeding height, it had but one perhaps the villages of the Nervians will onely comming to it, which was hanging or descending downward, yet in a sweete and gentlemanner, being in breadth no more then two hundred foote. This way or paffage they had fortified with a double wall, of very great he ight, & the fame was strengthened in many places with mighty huge stones, and sharpe-pointed beames or pyles. Heere Cafar describeth their neighbours, if they make any inrode nothing but a wall onely, and on one fide of the Towne. And the like may be eafily prooued in the Nation of the Eburones: who are also called Germaines by Calar Of the Ebuin his fecond booke. These men, under the last of in con. conduct of King Ambierix, had ouercom Lib. 2. Sabinus and Cotta, with fifteene Companies, neere to Vatuqua, as it is fet downe in the fift booke. Cafar who had never receiued a greater iniurie, determined to mination for be reuenged for this loffe, and vtterly to abolish and ruinate the nation of the E-the Eburenes burones, as we may reade in the 6. booke. Therefore he fent Bafilus on before with the whole band of horse, and leaving alegion for guard of the baggage; he divided the other nine into three Regiments, to ouerrunne and make spoile of the whole Countrey. He caused Labienus to march The seuerall with three Legions along by the Ocean, Legions committed to Latoward that part which joyneth vnto the bienus and Menapians. Hee fent Trebonius with the Trebonius. fame number of Legions, to facke that Countrey which was neerest to the Adu. atiques. Himselfe, accompanied with the three other Legions, stayed to go toward the river Sabis, and the vemoit parts of the Fortest of " Ardene.

The Eburones not having any certaine miles in Army, neither garrison, or any Towne length, reach wherein they might defend themselves ing from the by Armes, and the whole popularity be- to the City of ing fcattered enery where abroadiretized Tourney. themselues to such places as were obscure valleyes, or wilde and fauage, or vyhere the moorish Fennes made a troublesome

Thoght now obe the

with fome imaginary hope, that thus they might defend and faue themselves. Calar The great de-fire of Cæfar, to be reuenin this fiery heate of reuenge, perceyuing the great danger which might enfue, by ed on the E having thus separated his Legionaries; called all the neere-neighbouring Citties (in hope of booty) to come and make pillage of the Eburones, to the end, that the race and name of them might bee veterly confounded. And because he could not (as yet) appeale his thirsting soule by such spoile as he had made, which indeed was very great, he put himfelfe once more on his way, to give further vexation to his enemies, affembling infinite troopes of people from all the Townes & neere adioyning parts, and fo fent them outward by fundry wayes. They burned all the villages, and enery house that they could finde standing . The selfesame defire of vengeance (as is to bee seene in his eight booke) enflamed him the third time, and the like waste he made : neuerthelesse, he speaketh not of any rampier, or of any ditch belonging vnto Towne or Village. Whereby may justly bee obserued, that the Belgians as they were descended of the Germaines, fo in like manner they had the same order of dwelling.

The Bellouafi, or Bellouafians in like fort, albeit that they were the very principal of the Belgians, as wel in regard of their vertue and authority, as for the great number ofmen amongst them: yet it appeareth, that they were no straungers to this cuftome : for in the first warre, he speaketh not but of one Towne or Village, named * Brattufpancium; in the other warres, hee maketh no mention of any one. This may feeme to be spoken sufficiently enough, concerning the habitations of the Belgi-

Of sports and ecreations a

CHAP.IIII.

Of the Humanity, Liberalsty, Hospitality, & Courtefie of the Gaules to Brangers, and care for benefiting each other equally.

Finde nothing written in Cafar, of the playes, fports, & pastimes of the youth among the Gauls. As for the Germans,

accesse to them; these presented them | Tacit is writerh thus. They had but one onely kind of spectacle in every aslembly yong boies that conceined delight in this fport, would run or leape forth violently (and flarke naked) before fwords & lauelines directed against them. This exercise grew to be an ort, and Art made it verie gracefull in them: yet what they did, was not for any lucre, gaine, or wages; but the onely recompence of this their audacious gallantry, was, to bee pleafing in their eyes that beheld them. They would Deforate & play(being in very stayed and setled judge dangerous ment) at fuch desperate games of hazard and dangerous aduenture, as would make a man blush to stand and looke on, and they performed their intentions in fuch carnettest earnest manner, as if they were at strife for some matter of great moment: yea, fuch was their affection to the gaine or loffe, as after they had nothing els to con tend for : they would ftrine about the very last hazard, laying downe their own liberty and persons in pawne. Whosocuer loft himfelfe, would yeelde to the others feruitude, with his ownekinde confent: And albeit hee were never fo young and strong, yet (in regard of his losse) he wold fuffer himselfe to be bound and sold. For fuch was their wilfull obstinacy, that they would lay down faith vpon the very leaft occasion.

But who focuer would take note of the Humanity, li great humanity, liberality, and courtefy, berality, and courtefy both as well in the Gaules as in the Germains, in the Gaules let him read what followeth. They would and Germans inuite ftrangers(this speaketh Diodorus of the Gaules) to feast with them. And after nature was fufficed, they would enquire what people they were, and what occasion drew them thither. But Cafar and Tacitus gineth this commendation vnto the comment Lib s Germaines, by writing much more am. Corn. Tacit. ply. They make it a matter of great Con- in lib.7. science (saith Casar) to offer any outrage to strangers, who, be it for what cause so-

ener they come amongst them, yet they

will defend them from all injuries, and

thinke them to be facred people, each one

allowing them part of his house, & yvhat-

focuer he had to live on. Taritas writerh

Iulius Cafar in

to any commer; for each man will Feast | gers.

in this manner. There is not any Nation | The love and more addicted to make good chear together, and feast strangers. They doe make which they afgreat conscience in denying house-room ford to stran

No differenc betweene a known friend & a stranger

he hath no further meanes, he that is the Hofte, enftructeth him to another mans dwelling; and thereinto (without any further bidding)they enter both togither, euen the neerest house they come vnto; where their entertainment is vovde of all difficulty, and vsed with extraordinarie courtefie. As concerning the rites of hofpitality they make no difference between him that is knowne, and another that is vnknown. At his departure, if he defireth any thing, it is their order and custom to grant it : as they will doe the like when it falleth to their turne. They take great delight in giuing gifts : but will receyue no recompence for whatfocuer they give, or think themselues indebted or beholding for any thing that they receive. This is a testimony of their worthy hospitality, & I am of the minde, that fo great an honor descrueth not to be forgotten, as Germany iustly deserueth in regard of this Ver-

Arist intib.4. Riches & pouerty the twe principall plagues vnto mankinde. Plato in Lib.d. Legib.cap.9.

Inl.Caf. in con

The order of the Germain holding of their Landes.

Inlius Cafar in Com lib a him according to his power: And when

Phaleas the ChalceJonian, did first pub-

lish in the Commonwealth (as Aristotle affirmeth) that goods might bee equally divided to the end, that the two principall plagues to mankinde (which are ri= ches and pouerty) might be banisht from the Citty. And this is that which Plate (most of all other) wished for the grounded estate of a happy Commonwealth. But the Germains neuer fixed their imaginations on fuch a most fortunate Commonwealth, by disputes and discourses onely; but accomplished and brought it to effect by their owne good customs and honest examples. For some of them (as Cafar anougheth in his fixt booke, fpeaking of the Germaines) had not any certain measure of land, or any particular limitation: but the Princes and Magistrates affigned enery yeare (both to kindreds and parentages, who were acknowledged and placed together) somuch ground or land, and fuch a fite or fituation, as vnto them feemed best and convenient; & the yeare following, they were constrained to seeke elsewhere. In his fourth booke, hee fayth as much of the Surues, another people of Germany. They had no land which they held in particular, or divided among the: neither were they permitted to tarry longer then a yeare in a place, to Til or make it husbandable. This is the equality of

goods, which then was among the Ger- | Equality of maines.

And they rendered great store of reafons for this equality, as the same Author witnesseth in his fixt booke, viz. Fearing maines, for least beeing retained by an accustomed their equality continuance in one quarter, they should The first. forfake the profession of warre, & follow the other more beneficial kind of life. Fea- The fecond. ring, least they should withdraw their minds from the enlarging and extendure of their bounds or limits: and growing to be too potent in strength, they should oueraweand expell the weaker from their goods. Fearing also, least they should be ouer curious in building to defend themfelues against cold and hear, and so proue to be starke Cowards. Fearing beside lest The fourth. a wicked couetous desire should arise among them, of scraping and gathering goods together: wheron (custommarily) insueth threatnings, differtions, & blood.

Also, to the end that the popular fort The s, and last might bee contained within a reasonable contentment of mind, when the meanest perceived his goods to be cough with the most powerfull. This is (in effect) the words of Cæfar, touching the qualitie of goods vsed then among the Germaines: and when the Greekes come to compare of with him, in commending this manner of with Cxfars behauiour either in the Cretanes or La- words. conians; all that they could auouch or fay, was; to terme this worthy and extraordinary vertue, to be no more then meer barbaroufneffe.

Scruitude or bondage was in vie aswel among the Germaines and Gaules, as in other Nations. Many men (10 speaketh Cæsar in his sixt booke, discoursing on laukes, and suckers in the same of the same o the Gauls (finding themselves to be char- comment Lib 6 ged either with debts, or taxations, or iniuries of the mightier fort) did veild them felues into feruitude or flauery of Gentlemen, who had the felfefame right ouer them, as Masters had over their slaves. It should seeme, that this Masterie or command was cruell, as well as that whereof Titus Liuius recounteth in his 2. booke, Titus Liuius in to be vied in Rome, after that the Kings Libra. dec. 1. were expelled thence, when the commotion of the bondmen was on foote. For they were then controlled and handled by their Masters, as the bodies of debrers were by their creditors, who were parted (as Quintillian writeth in the fixt chapter

The reasons

The third.

The humani y and libera lity of the yond that of he Romaine

Chap.5.

The Roman

12. Tables.

Dieder in L.

Corn,Tacitus

Of the flaues

Of feruices

of his third booke) or divided betweene the creditors, according to the law of the twelve Tables. And that Law(as himfelfe faith) which naturally was not to bee allowed, and yet (notwithstanding) permitted as in right, was reprehended by publicke custome, and oftentimes (to remedy the same in meere pitty) the Commonwealth granted Letters of respite, abolithing extorting interests, and making a new obligation for the principall.

But the Gaules vsed much greater hu-

manity and liberality then the Romaines did : because the Masters kept in honourable place, and about their persons, such as thus stoode obliged to them, and they vsed their seruice also in their warres. Wherefore it appeareth, that that which Diodorus wrote, differed not from this purpose, where he faith: They employed as guards and defenders of their bodyes, fuch as (among freemen) were poore and needy, and they ferued them as Esquires and Armor-bearers in the warre. Tacitus reporteth almost the very same custome as was yfed by the Gaules, when he focaketh of the flaues among the Germaines. They do not vie their flaues (faith hee) as we do ours, appointing them certain offices in our houses: for every one serveth himfelfe, and gouerneth his houshold affaires. The Mafter chargeth his flaue with certaine measures of Corn, or with some Cattle, or with some kinde of cloth: euen as we do our Farmers or Husbandmen, and the scruant obeyeth him not but in fuch bufineffe. If he would have any matter done in his house, his wife and Children performeth it. It fildome or neuer hapneth, that a mafter doth beat his flaue or bindeth him, or enforceth and constraineth him to any businesse. They had a custome to kil them, yet not by any maner of rigorous or seuere chastisement; but in choller, as an enemy, and done in the case of some reuenge. Freemen had they were to bear Armes, neither in what Case, no more aduantages then feruants. Sel-

house, and neuer vuto the managing of

Commonwealth affaires: except among

fuch Nations, as were in obedience to a

king, and there they mounted higher then

Freemen, or then Gentlemen. Among

other Nations, libertines being not receiued into the like dignities as the free,

made distinction of their liberty.

nefit then ferdom or rarely were they aduanced in the CHAP. V.

How the Gaules wied to educate and bring vo their children. Of their corage, manhood, and valour in Armes and martial exerciles.

of their admirable stature : whereat Cafar

was much amazed, when hee beheld the



Hese then were the maners and temperance of the ancient Gaules, which fertued of the from their difpolitions which fertued their difficulty to maintain their difpolition & ftrength of body, and (doubtleffe) was the caule of their admirable desarrange.

Gaules which were flaine in the warres of Affrica: you have also heard some part of their liberality, in the administration of their goods, for the relecte of others ne cessities. But there remaineth much more to fay, if wee would enter into discourse, concerning all the parts of their mahood The manand valiancy: were it in confidering the hood & valor exercise of their youth, or their earnest & of the ancient violent defire in following armes, and the Nations which have beene conquered by them, and the Colonies established thoroughout the world, onely in the name of the Gaules. The Gaules (thus faith Ca- cafar incom-(ar in his fixt booke) helde this as a difference from others, in their manner of behaujour, to wit; That they would never permit their children to come openly before them, vntill they were of able yeares to beare Armes. And they held him to be a villaine, whose some (being vnder limited yeares) should be found in publike

must make search into other Authors. Tacitus, speaking of the Germaines, Corn. Tacit. would have vs to know at what time they in lib. 5.c.7. came vnto the service of the Commonwealth. They observed as a custom (faith At what time he) that no one should undertake the profession of Armes, vntill the Common-monwealthin wealth had approued and allowed his fuf-ner.

before his fathers face. Cafar speaketh this

neuertheleffe hee giveth not fufficiently Somewhat oexercise their infancy was imployed, vntill this date of expectation, therefore we

A Garment which the Ro maines did al

in peace.

Arift in Polit. Lib.8.cap.2.

barbarous

propie.

This was the * Toga or Gown which they tooke, and this was the first degree of honor, wherunto their yong men mounted. Before, and till this dignity was done to them, they were but as a member of the house onely: but afterward, they appertained to the Commonwealth. Aristotle, who wrote long time before Cafar, declarethypto vs this manner of education of children (for it feemeth in the 8. Booke of his Politicks) that hee learned this instruction of vs. It is necessary (faith he) to accustome and vie the very yongest children to indure cold weather: for it profiteth maruellously, as well, for the disposition of the body, as for manly cariage in war. Aristotle cal-And this was the reason, why some barled the Celtes barous people (as the Celts) observed it as a custome, to plunge their young Infants (fo foone as they were borne) in the coldest water of the river, or els to cloath them in light garments. For, to whatfoeuer thing youth ought to apply it felf, this is the best courfe; to accustom them there to (by little and little) from their yongest houre, and when they are tender; because of the heate which is naturally in them, & therefore the first thing to be done, is to

be carefull in this one point.

Aristotie in this place calleth the Celts

themselves after their manner. I know

our, when in the first booke of his Go-

uernment of health, and instructing how

which he writes of is neither for the Ger-

maines, or for any other fuch fauage and

barbarous men; no more then for Beares,

wilde Boares, Lions, or fuch other beafts.

Iknowe (Ifay) that Galen reprehendeth

this custome severely; but I know like-

wife, that the yong nice delicates of the

Greekes, whom Galen striueth to please,

in prescribing them an order for theyr

health: haue beene quite deuoured by

these Lyons (as he tearmeth them) and

that the Gaules and Germanes, if they be

the yong man with a fhield and a Iauelin.

Aristotle com barbarous, and yet hee accounteth not mendeth the Celes customs their customes barbarous; in regard that to the Greek hee appointeth the Greekes to fashion that Galen sharply reproueth this behaui-

Galenin Gub.

Galens reprehension of the Germains

compared with the Greeks, may in good ficiency. Then, in the martiall Confistoright be called Lyons. rie, either some one of the Princes, or his Father, or els his neerest Kinsman, armed

And truly, Lacedemon, which was the Lacedemon most noble of all the Grecian Cities, was shaped it selfe principally renowned for being fludious in hardning it felfe to trauaile, after the office Celea. true manner of the Celts. For the youths of Sparta, did dayly imbolden themfelues

against al manner of paines and exercises: neuer entering into the especial assembly, before the age of twenty yeares, as Plu-tarch recordeth in the life of Lyeurgus. Plut in vit. 13. Wherefore, not onely the power of this carg. vertue, which was in the Gauls and Germaines, but (ouer and belide) the authority of Aristotle, as also of Lacedemon (if any man be regardfull thereof) may well

ferue to answer the reasons of Galen. VV e may also inferre (to this purpose) that which Strabe hath written, when he faith The Gaules held this as proper and peculiar to them, to refuse no taking of pains, Strabo in Lib. as fearing to becom fat and fwoln bellied by ease : therfore they punished and condemned vnto some pecuniary fine, such ous & painful yong men as grew groffe through floath and excesse. Whereunto that ordinance

of the Romaines was conformeable; that depriued any fat or corpulent Knight, of Knights had publike Horthe Horse graunted him by publique al- fee allowed Now it is further to be confidered, that The German

teth in his fixt book) they addicted them

felues to paines taking, and imployed (al-

their hornes to publicke view, as a testi-

mony of their diligence, received both

reward and great praise. This yeeldeth

fufficient demonstration, how the young

men prepared their spirits, to endure all

to order health, he saith. I am not of the most) their whole life time, either in hun-minde, that Children should onely bee ting, or seas of warre. They had diuers

this exercise was not onely proper or pe- brethren to culiar vnto the Gaules : but it was in like the Gaules, common vie with the Germaines theyr brethren, as Galen himfelfe hath elfwhere declared, Let vs listen then to Cafar, who Jul. Cafar in heerein giueth them sufficient commen- Com. Lib.6. dation. From their infancy (this hee wri-

nursed among the Germaines. Also, that kinds of wilde beasts, in the Forrest cal- woodin Ger led*Hercynia: as wilde Bulles, *Alees, but many, in especially Buffles, which they tooke with bredth nine great labour in their dens or ditches, and and in length

which had flaine most of them, bringing low Deere.

Of the Ancient Gaules. Chap. 6.

paine and labour, and fell not off for any I ther cause of their valor, that continually danger: as having learned, though not of great and skilfull Doctors, which were best able to give them instructions ; yet (at least) of their owne selues, and so put it in effectuall execution. Let vs now obserue what they were in

actions of warre, and as the Poet faveth; The brane workemanshippe of Mars, be-The Gauli wer alwayer in accause the Gauls were perpetually in warion of arm.

For, before Casar came thinher (as hee
hath written in his fixt booke) it hapned cuery yeare, that either they affailed o-thers, or else were glad to defend them-

sclues; and it was casily knowne, that by

a custome among the Gaules, age was no excuse to any man, as appeareth by diuers passages in the eight booke. Vertifeus, a chiefe Commander of the * 3hemi, albeit People of he could very hardly keepe himselfe on horsebacke, because he was so farre gone Belgia,next to the Leuci and Madioma

in yeares : yet notwithstanding, according to the manner of the Gaules, hee would pleade no excuse by his age, in vndergoing fuch charges as were imposed on him; and he was very vnwilling, that any fight (hould bee performed without

him. Likewise, in the warre of the Parisians, the whole charge (as is to be feene in the fenenth Booke) was given vnto Camulogenus, an especiall man of the * Aulerci, * People of who was well-neere wholly spent with | security, in being delinered from al dread Roane in No.

age: and yet for all that, the great experience which he had in marriall affaires, adnanced him to the highest degree of Honor. Answerable to this, Straho faith, The Strabo in lib. 5

Gaules were rather men of warre, then any way addicted vnto Tillage or husban-Ariftot e writeth, that the Celtshelde

stift in Polit the vertue of warlike actions in most singular respect and commendation. And it carlefnesse, to winne that by sweate and was well noted, as Cafar affirmeth, that the cause of valour (both in the Be gians labour, which a man might purchase with and Heluctians) grew through their conti-nual exercise of armes, for he saith: The the price of his blood. Cafar faith likewife of the Germanes, the fame that Diedorus doth of the Gaules, that they were m oft valiant people of al the Gaules, were nment, lib, 8 addicted to rapine and thefts. Robberies the Relgians.

(thus speaketh Cafar in his fixt booke) did Now, as Temperance was the first and formost in ranke, as being the Mother, or not make men any iot the worse esteethe Nurse (at least) of true valiancy: so med: fo that they were done out of those the fecond cause which Casar rendreth, was; That they were neighbours to the Germanes, which dwelt on the further fide of the Rheine, with whom they were continually at warre. This (I fay) was ano-

they exercifed armes, and by the fame reaion, the Heluetians furpaffed (in this ver- exceled at the tue) all the other Celtes: As it might daily be discerned in regard, that ordinarily they fought with the Germanes, eyther in repulling them from their frontiers, or making war on them in their owne coun-

esteemed it to bee proper and naturall to vertue, to compell their expulsed neighbours, to forlake their Lands and Territories, to that few or none durft dwel nere neere to the vnto them. And by this meanes, they

made into their Country.

Tacifus fpeaketh of the same exercise corn. Tacifus in

into their heads, any order for husbandry No care of in their grounds, or carefulnes for gathe- husbandry, or ring their fruites, and corne, as to go affaile the enemy, and to returne back with earth but alto wounds and maimes. Morcouer, it appea- affaile the e-

Iul.Caf.in com

limits, which appertained to each Citty. beries thoght And it is faid that they vied their courses : not discomenonely to exercise their youthes, and for dable, but allowed & followed & followed the anoyding of ydlenesse. And when lowed withno fome one of the Lords would deliner his meane affectiminde on.

there flew them. The yong men hardned forty.

themselves to this trauell, and euermore

*A wild beaft exercifed this manner of hunting: & they in fathion and

the Mother Of

ib.8 cap.6.

Nutle of vali-

try. In this place also might be alledged, their often and frequent skirmishes, to deliuer true faithfulnesse of their valour. Moreover, the Gaules for want of warre. to the end that they might ftill be in exercile of armes : gaue themselves to thefts The Gaule wer

and robberies, as Diodorus faith, purloyning the goods of others, without any beries, prouision of their owne. What were the Diodor in lib. 6 Germanes ? faith he. What participation had they in this vertue? All their life, as

hath beene already declared, was no way

imagined themselves to be in the greatest

of courses, which suddenly might bee

imployed but in deeds of armes. And as The greatest he hath further written in his fixt Booke, honour of a the very greatest honour that any Citty the German. could have was to have a great Defert & foacious Country round about it. They

of armes. You could not fo readily put 116.6.cap.4.

red to them, that it was meere floth and nemy.

in li.6.cap. 2

warred with

ftrange nati-

Concerning

the birth bree

ding, and edu

cation of the

greatest anti

Gaules of

quity.

minde in an open affembly, that he wold | part of the yongest Gentlemen went (vp. be their guide, and that fuch as would follow him, should shew instantly themfelues. Such as gaue confent to his opinion, and (allowing him for their Leader) presently arose, and promised him their vttermost assistance: the people present would both commend them and their enterprize. As for fuch among them, as neither followed nor gaue allowance to the attempt: they were reputed as traitours, and neuer afterward durft any man repofe any credite in them.

Tacious addeth yet moreouer, that the Corn. Tacit. Germanes made war among strange people. If the City (faith he) wherein they The Germane were borne, grew flothfull and ydle, thorough long peace and repose; the most to honour Italy.

on their owne motion and good will) to finde out such Nations as had any warre. For rest and ease was no way pleasing to this people; and the dangers which they essayed and made proofe of, made them also the more famous: and they could not maintaine any great matter of worth, but ning their bounty and liberality. by power and warre, for thus they compaffed meanes to be bountifull and liberall, onely by warre, thefts and pilla-

Thus we may perceive, how the auncient Gaules made continual exercise of armes, and well deferued those commendations, wherewith the first and cheefest of all the Romaine Poets thewed himfelfe willing

We are hardly bred, Babes are no fooner borne, But we to Rivers beare them hurle them in ; To harden them against both wet and colde. Heere our young people give them felues to hunting. And haunt the Forrests. The pastimes they affect. Is saming wildest Horfes draw the Bowe. Sometimes our routh imboldened to labour Make (mall account of husbanding the ground: But to besiedge Strong holdes. Each age we passe, Managing flurdy yron turning our Staues To pierce the hides of Bulles. Slowe sardy age, Cannot abate our versue daunt our hearts. With fnow-white heads we enter Arms, and flill Seeke for fresh pillage, living on the booty.

Of the Ancient Gaules.

Especiall ob-Scruations concerning the auncient Gaules, omit ted by Cafar in his writing of their warres.

Oh, would it had pleased God, that Cafar, discoursing on the fashions and customes of the Gaules, had bene as willing in describing much more amply, what vie they made of Armes; what reasons they followed in their preparation for warre; what diligence they vsed, beeing in the fielde; what their strength and valor was in fights & combates: it would have caufed an extraordinaty pleafure, to remember continually, the ancient custome of our auncestour in their warlike actions. But Cafar (principally) sheweth nothing of all this : neuerthelesse, we will pursue each matter, infomuch as possibly wee may, and diligently collect fomewhat out of divers passages of his, (as wee can follow any traces, though greatly obscured) in such things as are agreeable to our purpose, not forgetting (in meane while) the udgement of other Authors.

CHAP. VI.

How the Gaules made choice of their Generals and Commanders for their warres. with a true description of their Military Services and discipline.



HE wars which Cafar made cach yeare, deliuereth fome on they made testimony, how they elected of their Generalles, and other

cheefe Leaders in their martiall employments, whereof wee are able to speake fomewhat more largely. But the troupe or heape of particular Soldiours, was alwaies made in a publike affembly, & how euery man should behaue himselfe in armes. Induciomaras Prince of Treues,

Chap. 6. published an assembly in armes against the Romanes; as is to bee seene in the fift booke of the warres in Gaule. The Gaules began their warre in this manner, & followed one common Law among them. All their youngermen vsed to meete together in armes: but he that came lateft, in the presence of the whole assembly (after hee had beene tormented with all the tortures could be deuised) hee was afterward put to death. The felfe same custom is declared in the feuenth booke, when Vercingesorix; being elected Generall for the warre of the Gaules; was befiedged in * Alixia. For he tooke counsell, to difcharge all the troupes of horse which he had with him, and at parting, he gave the charge, to returne each man to the City, whereof he was a member, and there to affemble or muster for the warre, all such às were of age to carry armes. Neuertheleffe, the Gattles having published the afsembly of their Princes, did not thinke it

meete to draw al the together, that were

ble meanes of prouision for them. By this

manner of ordering men for their warres.

we may well perceive, that the Gaules

were studious in military affayres, consi-

dering, that all fuch as were about four-

teene yeares of age, did carry armes.

The Gaules armed themselues quite

contrary to the Romanes, as is to bee ob-

ferued in the fewenth booke, where hee

speaketh of the * Hedui, that came to the

feruice of Calar, who very greatly aftoni-

hed the Romanes, by vling their armes

after the Gaulish manner. And yet I can-

or foine, fo faieth Diodorus; notwithstan-

ding, Polybius and Titus Liusus doe deny

their thrusting or foyning with the point.

of age to beare armes, according as Vercingetorix had ordained:but rather apoin-The Gaules ted, that each City should be furnished with a certaine number of men; it could getorix, and not otherwise chuse but breed confusion by beeing vnable to command them, or knowing one from another, or any possi-

The Gaules Audiousin martiall afaires.

A feuere cu-

ftome among

Iul.Caf.in com

Auffotsin Bur-

go)ne.

the Gaules.

Sometime people of that Bourgundy.

Their Target or Shielde was large, and Oftheir auniwerable viito each mans flature or wordshields constitution: and, according to their securification of pleasure, so was it enriched with Imagerie of brazen Beafts, mounted vp into boffes. Their Ianeline had a head of yron or fleele, conthyning a cubite in length, and two fingers bredth Calar in his third book faith; that they likewise caried a staffe, which he lulcof in comtearmeth Geles, & another, called by him Meris, which was a certaine kind of fmall lauclin. Their heads were couered with a Of their Sal-Sallade or head-peece of braffe, a little lades, Headexalted or railed vp, whereon was figured Corflets. Images of Birds, Beafts, and antique shapes. Their vsual Corfelet was of yron.

Many of the Gaules were wont to fight naked, fo farre as the nauil: as Tiens ngnt naked, 10 farre as the naun: 28.71816 Gault fought
Liuius faieth, in the battaile at Canbas, naked so farre and Polybius fpeketh as much of the fame as the nauil. fight in this manner. It was a verye dreadfull fight, to observe the behavior

shewing an excellent beauty, and vndauntable strength. In like manner, Titus Liuius faieth, that in * Gallogracia, A Countrie the Gaules fought naked, and than was the Gautestought naked, and than was Affa, joyning the reason, why they were our come by to Phrygia and

ry strongly. The Gaules likewise vsed Bowes and Slings, according as Strabe Strabe inti.s. faieth; for he writeth, that they hadde a oftheir bowes

fomewhat refembling the Figge-Tree, Of a ftrange which carried a fruite, that had some likeneffe to the chapter of a Corinthian pil- poilond their ler. This Tree being cutte, did yeeld a Arrowheads.

ueth verie pregnantly in his seauenth Gaultwers Booke, where hee speaketh of Vercin- great Archers getorix. Hee commaunded (faieth he) Iul. Cof.in com mer.liby. that all the Archers (which were a very great number throughout Gaule) should

appeared

not perceiue (throughout Cafars difcourses) what those kinde of armes were: therefore we will collect that which Polybius, Diodorus, Strabo, and Titus Linius Polyb. in lib. 4. Diodor, in lib: 3 have noted to vs. The fword which Tit Lin in lib. 4 they vied, was long, and the man wore it (hanging in a chaine of braffe) on his right fide: and it served not onely to Smite or flashe withall, but also to thrust

of naked men, who marched on floutly,

off with their Piles, which were a kinde

of fmall Iauelins, and darted at them ve-

kinde of Staffe, which being throwne by

the hand onely, without any string or o-

ther holde, would imite further off then

an Arrow, and with this they did (most

commonly) shoote at Birds. It is also

very certaine (as the same Author affir-

meth) that they hadde a Tree in Gaule.

deadly inyce or liquor, wherewith they

vsed to impoyson the heads of theyr Ar-

be leayed, and fent voto him, as it will

Some of the Polyb, in lib. 4.

the Romanes, who smote them afarre Lydia.

rowes. That it was fo, and that the Gaules were great Archers, Cafar proo-

A Towne of

wim the At-

chers fought

mong (t the

Of the Sucue

A fhort Glau

Of the horfe and foote Sol-

No brauerie on their gar-

A league made by the Gauls againf

Betweene Belgia, & the b People of that place, now called Xantong in Aquitaine.

The horfmer had the high eft honour of he watres.

appeare much more fully hereafter in better place.

This was the Armor and Munition of the Gaules, whereunto that of the Germaines, which Tacitus describeth, was not altogether agreeable. They feldome defended themselves with swords or long staues: for they carried Iauelines, or (to vie their owne proper word) Framées, the blades whereof were straite and short, but yet fo keene, and fo apt for their feruice, that they could vie them with or against

a staffe, according as they had occasion to fight, either before they came neere to one another, or when they were at handy gripes. The Horseman contented himfelfe with his shield and I aueline: but foot foldiers had many darts each man, which they hurled or darted infinitely, being na-

ked, or lightly cloathed with a fimple Caffocke or Mandillion. They had no brauery on their accourrements: onely, they would decke their shields with some curious choise colours. Very few of them did weare any shirts of Maile, or scaled coats: fome one or two might haue (perhaps) a Caske or Morrion. These are the Armes which the ancient Gauls are cre-

dibly faid to weare.

It remaineth now to speake how they employed their men of warre, as well on foote as horsebacke. The horsemen were in most estimation among the Gauls, and had the principall managing of all affairs for warre, as Cafar hath faide in his fixte Booke. And in the League which all the Gaules made against Cafar, one while hee speaketh of the number of eight thousand horse, then againe of fifteene thousand, which was that part of the army, wherby the Gaules made themselves strongest, as plainly appeareth in the scauenth Booke. Neuerthelesse, no assurance can bee col-

lected heereby, concerning all the cities in their feuerall forces. The people of Trenes, or the 2 Treniri, were the very strongest of all the Gaules in horsemen, as is to be seene in the fift book. ThebSam-

tones, according as wee reade in the third booke, had likewise very great store of horsemen : but the Nerwians (in the verie fame place) are faid to have the most foot fouldiers. Notwithstanding, if you regard them generally, you shall finde, that the Cauallery had the cheefest honour of all

the warres among the Gaules. And these

were the horsemen, wherewith Cafar vvas | Iul Cafin 1.de most assisted in his civill wars. For so him felfe testifieth in the first booke of his Ci-

uill Warre, that when Affranius came with great forces to affaile the Cæfarians The comming who were but a few in number: fodainely of Afranius a the horsemen of the Gaules were diligent gainft the Cain making head against them; and (so long his Ensignes

as they could) they maintained fight, alof the legions
beit they confifted of fo few, and endured against a great multitude of the enemie . But so soone as the Ensignes of the Legions began to approach; with verie little loffe of their menthey retired vnto the neighbouring Mountaines. The time of

the fights continuance ferued sufficiently for the Cæfarians fafety: for, in that while, they had leyfure to gaine thefelues the highest parts of the hils, & there sheltred themselues securely. Likewise, in the warre of Affrica, when The enemies the enemy (with powerfull forces) came fetting on Carfars hoad to deale with the hoast of Calar, and to

attache them in the reresfuddenly the Legionaries stayed them, and the horsemen (although they were but few in number) made very stout resistance, yea, and with vnconquerable hardiment, against that great troope of the enemy. And a matter almost incredible happened, That lesse 30 herse of then thirty horse of the Gaules, repulsed two thousand horse of the Moores, and

put them into rout. Such was the stregth the Moores. of the Gaulish horse. Hence ensued that exclamation of Cicero, in his 5. Phillippick. Cicero in Ovinion was conceined (faith he) that some Phillip. 5. appointed that there fould be gine to Mark Against Marke Anthony the government of that latter part Anthonies go of Gaule, which Plancus holdeth at this in- Gaule. flant : Is there any other wifedome in fo dooing, but to lend our owne weapons to an ene-

my, to make a ciuill warre upon us? For firll of all, the nerues or finewes of warre, which is countlesse (ummes of money, and whereof hee flandeth now in neede; and next, the power of horse, which valeweth as much; what can he desire more then both these ? Behold. in what account and estimation the horf-

men of the Gaules were. Sometimes it was thought conueni= ent, to entermingle amongst the horse amongst the fome of the foote fouldiers, which were worst armed, and the Archers. And this was (as appeareth in the feauenth booke) lib.7-

when Vereingesorix went with the Horfe, and certaine foote (least charged with

of the Ger-

Armes) to prepare an ambuscado, where he imagined that the Romaines intended to come and forrage. At another time, (in the same booke) speaking of himselfe, when they were neere to "Gergouia, Cafar Guyenne ftafaith: It was not fully breake of day, when ding on a hye in the skirmishes, the footemen beeing mingled among the horse, we were forced to approoue how hardy and vertuous our owne men were. Sometimes, the Footemen, being lightly armed, accompanyed with the Archers, fought amongest the ccompanyed Horfmen, as was observed in the encoun-

Souldiers in old time, that marched in Waggons, but fought on foot Dieder in lib, 6

Their maner

The fuccour giuen to eac

The fwiftne

ter neere to Alexia. The Gaules (among fome few of their horse) flanked their Artroopes what foeuer, if they were Horfechers and lightest armed footesto the end men, and rode on faddles. that they should succour the horsemen, and fustaine the violent affault of the Ro-

maine Cauallery. Ancient Gaule had * Esfedaries, who were warriours that rode in Waines or Waggons, called Effednes: and Diodorus giveth vs affurance hereof in these words. Passing thorow the Countrey in time of

If they met with the enemy in warre; first of all, and while they were voon the waggon, they would let fly their darts at him. Afterward, alighting from the waggon and being on foote, then they fought together with their fwords. Thefe two maners of fighting, are much more at large

warre, they yied Carres or Waggons

which two Horses drew by a fit prepared

furniture: the Waggoner, or he that had

the charge thereof, being the only guide.

described by Cafar, when hee speaketh of the Germaines and the Britaines. Of the Germaines in the first booke, where hee reckoneth vo the forces which Arioniftus had. They were (faith hee) fixe thousand Horsemen, and as many foot, of the very

strongest and best disposed, which each man had made choise of particularly, as for his owne succour and safety. If they were to fet on to the warre, they mingled on all fides, and hurle their Darts, and ofone among another, and the Horsemen tentimes it happeneth, that by the terror also retired when they did. If any great of their horses trampling, & by the noise

occasion happened, the foote souldiours

fought with the horsemen. And if any one

being wounded, hapned to fall from his

they would mount up, and run as swiftly

horse, the other gaue present succour. If they were to march on further, or to retreate voon expedition; exercise had enftructed them in fuch celerity, that onely by fastning hold on their horses Maines,

as they did. In another passage of the 4. [Int. Cafin com Booke, speaking of the Suenes, hee fayth. In those skirmishes which they made on horsebacke, they would oftentimes dif-

mount and fight on foote: having taught and invred their horses in such manner, that they neuer stirred from the place where they left them, returning to their

horses againe, when occasion required. According to their custome, they esteemed nothing more base and idle, then to ride on Saddles. And this was the reason, They hated to that although they were but few in num- ride on Sad-

Whofoeuer (faith he) wil confider them

power confisteth in their footemen : and

therefore (in fighting) they ranke them a-

mong the troopes of horse. For the foot-

men which they choose among all their

was now giuen as an especiall name, and

was honourable to them. Thus serued the

Horsemen of the Germaines, and were

mingled in this manner among the foote

of their Waggon wheeles, they trouble

the rankes extraordinarily. But after that

they are mingled amongst the troopes of

ber, vet they durft boldly affaile any

This is that which Cafar hath written; The Gaules

whereby we may gather, that heerein the contrary vnto Gaules were contrary to the Germaines for their footorder: confidering, that the Germaines men. placed their stregth in their men on foot; which Tacitus relateth more apparantly.

in generall, shall finde, that their cheefest libid, cap. 1.

vouth, to put to the point of any danger; are men of wonderfull fwiftneffe, apt and fit to fight among the horse. They are an Vpon what

hundred chosen out of cuerie Towne or Village, and thereon were tearmed Centenders or Comments of Contenders or Co teniers, or Centurions: for that vvhich ferued(before)but to fignifie the number.

Now, as concerning the behauiour of Jul. Cafar in the Britaines, Cafar in his fourth booke, Com. lib. 4. describeth it in this manner. They have a Of the Britmanner of fighting on Chariots or waggons, which is thus. First, they skirmish fighting they

horsemen, they descend from their wag-gons, and fight on soote. During which

while, the Waggoners withdraw themselues somewhat out of the fight, and arrange their waggons in such fort, that if

Chap.6.

Their order

Of the Hel-

The Gaules

Com.lib.8.

& in lib.1

Vaggons.

of martial dif

The notable managing of in their fwiftell running. number of enemies, they can make an eafie and speedy returne to them . The adreffe and direction of their horses, the order observed among their sootmen for fight, and their aptneffe thereto, by dayly vie and exercise was such: that when they lifted, they could fodainly fray their horfes, even in the middest of his swiftest courfe, although it were in descending downe a high hill. There could they readily mannage and turne them, running mainly by the bridle among the horse; & thence againe returne lightly vnto theyr Chariots. This manner then of fighting, whereof the Effedaries made vie, was fomewhat also mingled among the horse and foote. Moreouer (as is to be seene in the sea-

Waggons in vie among the Gaules. Iul_Cafar in comment, Lib

uenth booke) a great number of VVaggons attended on the Gaules, especially fuch as were vnarmed. Next of the Archers of the Rutheni, and the horsemen of Gaule, which had followed Cafar; there came into Spaine with a great number of waggons, all filled with baggage, according to the custome among the Gaules. Befide, there were of men and women, about fix thousand with their feruants and children : and because they took delight, in having beafts for portage and carriage. they were glad to pay deerly for them, as Cafar hath recorded in his feuenth book. Heereby wee understand, that not onely the men, but their children also, yea, the whole Families in Gaule, went to the war when occasion required . Tacitus writeth alfo, That the women followed the Germaines, and accompanied them to theyr warres. But this is sufficient, concerning fuch leuies and preparations for warre, as was vied among the Gaules.

Now it would be knowne, with what

eafe they could endure the fearfity of vic-

tuals, by the temperature of their nouri-

ture, having formerly avoided the delica-

cy of wine: and Calar giveth vs to vnder-

fland (in many places) how they wer pro-

uided of victuals. The Heluctians depar-

ting from their houses, carried meale(that

was formerly ground with them) to ferue

for 3 months. And Vercingetorix to take

away from the Romains all meanes of re-

couering foode, perswaded the Gauls to

burne the Towns and Villages on all parts

where the Romans might make any inua-

Their enduring fcarfitie of food.

The whole fa

milies of the

Gaules went

to the warre

Of the Helu

Percingetorix his aduice gi uen vnto the

their mafters bee preffed with any great | fion. Whereupon more then 20. Townes (belonging to the * Bieuriges) were burnt *People of in one day: and the like they did vnto the old Aquitaine Cities in the neighboring countries. But, at the instant intreaty of the Biturigeans, who required that * Auaricum (which was the very goodliest City in all Gaul) might nor be burned : it was granted by Veremgetorix, who first had debated for the contrary, yet after yeelded, as well in re-'gard of their earnest motion, as also in meere pitty and commiseration. But the The pittying pitty afforded to this one Towne, caused most cruel ruine of all the other cities and truction of Townes in Gaule. For Cafars armie, that many other had bin very mightily tormented with famine, and had endured divers daies with out power of recouering any thing to make bread of: after the furprizing of Anaricum, was now not onely stored with plenty of food, but being fleshed as it wer with hope of like following fuccesse, it made them to denoure vp all Gaule.

At another time, Vercing etorix (by vertue of the fame counfell and aduice) con- his aduice ftrained Cafar to forfake Gergouia, and ha- againft Cafar uing taken all the victuals which the Romans had then in * Nouiodunum, brought him into fuch diffresse, that had it not bin Towne for shame, tediousnes of the way, and ab= Noyonof Bel fence of the 4. Legions, Cafar was fetting gia in France, forward to go into Prouence. Vercingetorix, being elected captaine Generall thoroughout Gaul, vied(at a third time) the Vercingctorix felffame advice; when in a publike affem- his third adbly of the Gauls he faid, that he wold not uice against tempt his fortune, & giue his enemy bat. tel because he was strongly desenced with horsemen, wherby he could easily hinder the Remans from food and forraging. And it behooued enery man (of his own good will) to destroy his Corne, and burne his house; confidering, that by this litle loffe, which each man might well endure in his own particular, he should perceive, that their empire and liberty, would (for euer) be the furer maintained. And vindoubted Cafars purly, Cafar being moued by these occasions, purposed to withdraw himselfe into Prouence, thorow the country of the * Seque- France, which ni when Vereingetorix (100 inconfiderately) condemned the good counfell given him, & would not tempt fortune, by hazarding the battel, & turned all his intentions stil to the worst: wherby may be obferued what care the ancient Gauls had for provision of food. Now

"The City Vi rey in France.

Of the Ner-

was vsed among them in the field, either for marching. lodging their armies, or cipline in the observation of military discipline; it seemeth that they were not therein any iote curious. The Heluetians effaying to paffe a river, fome tied divers boates together; others would leape into fuch places, wher the Rhone was most easie for passage, oftentimes in the day, and more often in the night, but Cafar cuermore gaue them the repulse. The Gaules not having (as ver) learned the manner of making bridbridges made of Boates. ges, could not (in the space of twenty dayes) paffe the third part of their army, by fuch boates as they had fastened together: and this was their want of knowledge, in the arte of making Bridges. If Their fortifiwe look you the feating of their armies, cations in the and their fortifications in the fielde, they were as flenderly skilfull therein. They would make choife of a valley, that had no other Rampier or Ditch, but Heauen and Earth to fuccour and defend it. For the custome among the Gaules, was (as we may reade in the eight booke) to re-Iul Cafar in fuse and forfake high places, and to order their Campe neere vnto Riners. Soit appeareth in the first booke, that the Hel= uctions encamped at the foote of fome hill euen as the Germans did the like; but the Romanes cuermore elected the highoft places. The feating then of the Gaules campe in the Campe was in this manner, without any highest places kinde of fortification. The Campe of the The Campe of the Belgi-Belgians (as is to be seene in the second ans, and they booke) according as might be indged by beit rampier their fires and smoake, consisted of more Chariots & then eight miles in largenesse. And when they declared most care & warinesse; they would onely plant their Chariots and Waggons formost, which serued them as their cheefest Rampier. In like manner, the Germans would engirt their whole army, with their Waggons and Chariots. At length the Gaules began to imitate the Romanes, in fuch matters as they perceived to be best behooving for the or whatfocuer they did for the best ad-

> The Neruians (as wee reade in the fift booke) enclosed that place, where Cicero bestowed his winter abiding, with a rampier of eleuen foote in height, and a ditch of fifteene foote deepe. They had learned this by their practife of warre against

Now if we defire to know, what order | the Romenes, and by the helpe of fuch | The Neruian prisoners as they had taken. But wanting fortifying of tuch tooles and instruments, as were ne- the Romanes ceffarily required in this bufinetie: they were constrained to cut the greene turffs or fods with their Swords, and to carry both them & the earth, in the long skirts of their Iackets. Afterward, they began to raise Towers on the tops of their ram. Towers and piers, and to make mounted roofes and Tarraffes. Tarrafes, according as their prisoners had enstructed them; infomuch, that Ca-(at length) wondred, to fee what To- Gauls fortiliwers. Tarraffes and Fortifications they enterprifed and performed. These passages of Calar do fufficiently declare, that the Gaules were not wanting, eyther in naturall disposition, or in care, to performe what was necessary, but only came

thort of orderly discipline.

In the fenenth yeare of the Gauls wars, after great flore of loffes had happened; | line comfort Vereingetorix comforting the Gaules, de- eingetorix, to. clared vnto them, that it was reasonable the Gaules. & expedient (for common fafety of each one) to begin to fortifie their campe: to the ende that they might the more cafily endure the fudden affaults of their enemies. For in those times (faith Cafar) was it, that the Gaules began first of all to fortifie their Camp. And therefore Cafar Iul. Cafar in did especially marke and nominate it in Com, lib. 3. that place. And the first fortification which they vied, was at Gorgonia, when The first mathey made a wal about their camp, which king of wals was fixe foote high, of great thick stones. Afterward, neere to Alexia, where they made a ditch and a wall, containing fixe foote in height. The Latine word 2 Mace: 2 Made infled ria, which fignifieth a wall of stones, heaped together without mortar or lime, & whereof Cafar maketh vie in the second place: declareth what manner of walles they had, which were rudely conftructed, and without any cunning. The Gaules then (aunciently) had fo little knowledge or discipline.

But what valour or manhood did they vie in fight? Was there any fuch matter of worth in them? Vndoubtedly they repoied a very great affurance in theyr owne strength. The Gaules, as was noted in the warres of Affrica, were naked or vncouered, and vling no kinde of furprizing: had a custome to fight onely by valiancy, and not by any fleight or cunning.

Mounting of

Cæfar admired

The comfort

of a Mound.

A people of the Heluettans by the Riuer Ligamus, whose head-City is called

46.1. 0 inti.

The resolute affurance of the Belgians

The manly vertue of the Neruians agair ft the Romanes.

A Towne of Batica in Spair

The words of Hertius,con cerning the vertue & ma hood of the

And this was the reason, why Diniconius the Heluetian, spake so to Cafar, who had furprized the " Tieurines at vnawares, faying. That they had learned of their Fathers and Auncestors, to fight more for manhood then arte, but he made himfelfe strong, onely by surprizes. And for proofe of this military vertue, there are very fingular examples in many places of Calar. In the battaile of the Heluctians, albeit that from the feuenth houre (as is to bee feene in the first booke) they had fought till darke night; yet no man could euer fee the enemy to turne his backe. The Belgians in like manner (as it is written in the fixt booke) neuer being daunted or terrified with the flaughter of fo many of their owne fellowes, cruelly flame before their faces: in resolute affurance essaved boldly to march oner their dead bodies. The Neruians likewife (as appeareth in the same place) ene in the latest hope of their fafety, declared an extraordinary figne of their vertue. For, albeit such as were the very cheefest among the, lay butchered on the earth before them: ver they kept neere still to them, and fought standing vpon their bodies. Yea, and that in fuch manner, as they which remained aline, making hilles of dead mens coarffes; threw their Darts against the Romanes, as from the top of a Butte, and cast also their leffer Iauelins at them, to long as they were able to reach them. This agreeth with that which he fpeaketh of the Gaules, who were in Cafars feruice, when * Munda in Spaine, was round about engirt with the bodies of enemies, that had beene flaine, and lay there in their armes. In flead of turffes of earth (faith Hirtims) they piled and layed dead bodies one vpon another, and for the service of a Palifadoe, they couered them with theyr Shields and Iauelins, and their fwords, with the heads of men, were all placed & turned towards the Towne of their enemie: To the ende, that they should apparently behold the true Enfignes of their valiancy, only to affright them, while thus they were circled in, as in a rampier. Thus the Gaules having made a round wall of their enemies bodies, and mounted theron they began to affaile the Towne with violent deliuery of their Arrowes and

They had learned this manner of ma-

king a rampier of dead mens bodies, fro a custome vsed in their owne Countrey. and heerehence (in mine opinion) grew the conjecture made of the Gaules, wherof ArtHotle writeth in his Ethicks to Nicomachus: That they feared not any thing in the world neither foorchings burnings or any torments what focuer. And to this effect, was that which Strabo writeth of Strabo in Lib. the Ganles, concerning their answer to A- wer to Aixlexander, who demaunded of them, what ander. ir was that they feared most? Nothing (faide they) if the Heavens tumble not downe vpon vs. I perceine also, that they were even as neglect and careles, in chufing the advantage of place for fight, as they were in the feating of their Campe, Aduantage of which may enidently bee different in all place for fight the Commentaries of the Gaules warres. When the Heluctians and Neruians affailed Cafar, it was in a place very difad- ans and Noniuantagious: but if they lighted on any o. ans affailed ther, that might declare them to bee any way better aduifed; it was by fome former patterne of the Romanes, and obseruation of their discipline. And the fust time that they entred into any good order, vvas, vvhen the army vvhich they had vvas rallyed out of divers Countries, and the Souldiors then were generally diffributed, according to the Countries wherof they vvere, and so placed (separately) the forces of each City in his due rancke or degree. So in the battaile of the Nerusans, the * Atrèbetans vvere ordered on trosin Fisit the left fide, the Neruians on the right, & the * Veromanduans in the middeft of the * People of battaile. Lik wife in the feuenth book, vermandoile where hee maketh mention of the forces Germany. of Vercingetorix. The Gaules after they had broken the bridges, kept themselues firmely on a little Hill, confiding in the scituation of the place, and beeing generally divided, according vnto the Citties whereof they were, and placing Guards ar enery Foord & Thicket of the Marish; they impeached them to their no meane difaduantage. In the fame place againe, Julius Cafar Vercingetorix having planted his Campe in Com.lib 3 on a Hill neere to the Towne, lodged feparately also the forces of each Citty; yet discipline of leauing some vvide and spacious roome percingulars. about all their lodgings, and being pofferfed of all the finaller hilles that neighboured the greater, vyhence any aduantage might be had for looking dovvnvvard; he

Arift in li. a.ds Ethic ad Nico.

Division by ed among the German Cornel. Tacitus

f Bands of Souldioss

And every day, even from the point or breake of day he caused the chiefe Commanders of fuch Cities (as he had chosen to be of his counsel) to come before him. whether it were to conferre about some matters to be done, or execute any thing that depended on their charge: to that no one day might escape him, but some esfay or other was made of his courage, & of the vertue that lined in his followers: making out many fallies of horse, mingled with the best and choysest of his Ar-

ty of the Helmesians, all the other three

Iul.Caf.in com

A notable car

& prouidence

The River Sagona in France.

nlib.3.cap. g.

Bohemia. b Of Halfatia of the Citty Wormes in germany,now culled Vorma cienfes. d Neere to Rome. e The Citie Sion in the

a People of

This place is

ded by the au

In the first booke likewise, the people called Tienrines, which were under the ci-

companies having passed the River Aby themselves. And they of the Borrough Verbigena, because they fled away with the other; being afterward brought before Cafar, they were received as open enemies. The Germanes obserued the fame order, to divide themselves generally by nations: as Tacitus delivereth more plainly, where he faith. And that which principally did encourage them, was; that not hazard, or an affembly made at aducture, or a troope, or a fquadron; butthe families and alliances laboured together. One example heereof in the Germanes, is noted by the that followed Arionistus, who in the end (as we reade in the first booke) were compelled to fend their forces out of the field: and made a generall ordination (by equall internalles) of the Marcomani, Triboci, Vangiones, Nomentani, Segulians and Sueues. Wherefore I conclude, by the words of this passage, that in regard the Army of the Gaules confisted of many Cities; the Souldiers (generally) did divide themselves, according to the number of the Cities.

The Gaules vsed the Phalanx in theyr battailes, as the Romanes did their Legions. The Phalanx, subtilly explicated by Aelianus, both in parts and parcels, to bee of an equall number, eight times divided into equall parts; the fummary whereof, I thus comprehend. The Phalanx armed with weighty armours, confifted of foure thousand, ninety fixe men, each ranke whereof, contained in length fixteene Phalangearies, and was tearmed f Decuria: in which bands, the formost man was na-

made a thew verye dreadfull to behold. med & Decurion, and the lafth Tergiductor, gThe Captains of Lea that is to fay, hee which conducteth the der. Rereguard or hinderpart. Thefe formost h The Guide me wer also cald Prafites of the seconds, of the Rereby reason of their marching before, and fo the third men of the fourth. Contrariwife, the fecond men were tearmed sub- i Voder-Subflites to the former; as being under them. like as the fourth under the third. Thus the Decuria was composed of Prastites & Substites, the one following the other. The fecond Decuria was called & Condeen - & Coniunes ria, that is to fav. conjoyned to the Decuria in such manner, that they all answered both in place and number : Decurion to Decurion, Prastites to Prastites, Substites to Substites, and they which accoasted, or went along by , were tearmed ! Astites. The ordinary space or distace of the Pha- helpers. langearies, was foure cubites, but whe they closed, two & when they went in crowd. one onely. This was the manner of the

Phalanx, observed by the ancient Ganles. The battaile of the Heluctians (as is to lut cef. incom be seene in the first booke) kept it selfe ment.lib. 1. strongly lockt against Cafars horsemen, and when the horsemen were repulsed. the Phalanx, which was prepared under the first barrailion, advanced it selfe, and fet forward. But the Romanes (by the po- The Philanx wer of their Iauclins) brake the Phalanx of the Helueof the Heluctians, by reason that they wer by the Rotoo ftrongly lockt together : And then to maner. defend themselves against their Iauelins, they began to disloynt their vniting, & to combine their Targets and Shields. the one with the other, which were in the forme and shape of the shelles of Tortuisses, to receive and resist the Iauelins darted at them. In the fame booke alfo, The Phalanx the Germanes having fuddenly (accor- of the Gerding to their custome) prepared a Pha- mans. lank: withflood the strength of all theyr Swords. And I perceive, that this Phalanx was ordered in fuch manner, not to ferue as a defence for their heads; but rather as a Rampier for their brefts. But on the Heluctians day, the " Boij, or Boians, and the Tugi, or Tulingians, who came that part of thither for their fuccour; enclosed the France,now barraile round about with Chariots and a Auncient baggage, and guarded the rereward. And people among as the Heluctians (who had the worft, & the Heluctians, of whom the greater number were fore Internal. wounded) retired, and withdrew themselves into the neerest neighbouring

lA(siftants or

The retire & re-affault of the Helucui

or Faggott,

Sanldiare that were alwaies let in the rereguard frongest me and bowing fome what or their knees,a iFthey would rather dye, from their places.

Mountaine: they affayled the Romanes 1 at ynawares on the Flanks, and engirt the round about. Which the Heluctians beholding; they returned againe, began to recharge them, and fought valiantly with

Thus wee have heere fet downe fome forme of that fashion, which the Gaules observed in preparing their battaile, and that which Harrius hath spoken thereof, is not much diffring from the purpofe. That the Gaules, being in battaile, had a custom to fit downe vpon Faggots of Vine branches and finall twigs, which they placed in the ground. Now albeit he reporteth, that Cafar hath declared the same in the first book of his Commentaries, yet notwithstanding. I finde no such matter. But forasmuch, as the Gauls (in their battails) are faid to fit downe on Faggots: it was a kinde of discipline observed among the, like to that of the Romane " Triary, who being ranked in the third battalion, which was the rereward, yfed to kneele down on and were the their knees, which was termed by the Latines, Subsidere, whence ensued the word they tought euer flanding Sublide as they named it. This commeth fomewhat short of the order observed among the Gaules: but many matters more might be related, concerning the encouragement they gaue to one another for war-feruice, which principally imployed their mindes, and boldly animated them on to vertue.

CHAP.VII.

Of the Shours cries, & strange noises denised and vied by the Gan's, to comfort and encourage shem felues and so affright or difmay their enemies. Alfo of their signes of contentment, peace, mercy, their Barit. Songs and Rithmes.

their weapons; to make a cry in the loudest manner that they could, & to enflame the Souldiers mindes with the founde of Trumpets. But the custome of the Gauls, was not onely with cry of the voyce, and

found of Trumpets: but with a Song, a Dance, loud yelling, clattering of their armour, and brandishing their darts, to make a noise so terrible, as nothing could appeare to be more horrible. The Gaules (faith Diederus) had loud big and rude voyces, & their Trumpets (according to cuftom) were barbarous. & made a rude har fb found. But Polybius (in his fecond booke) fayeth Polybinlib. moreover. The brauadoes & noises of the Celts, were dreadfull to the Romanes : for they had an infinite number of Trumpets and Hobois, with the found whereof, the frighted the Romanes, whole Army cryed out aloud, making fo great a clashing and noyle; that not only the Clarions & army ecchoed the found, but all the places likewife that did round engirt them. And indeed, the novie which customarily was made by the Gauls, hath oftentimes beene noted by Titus Linius: Titus Linius in but yet hatefully and iniuriously, as (for the most part) he was wont to speake of the Gaules. The Gaules (faith he, in his fift booke) by finging fauagely, and crying out confusedly; filled the agre with an horrible found. And in the fame place: Immediately there were heard fongs and Titus Livius no noyfes difagreeing, as when the Gaules fiend to the walked (by troopes) about their walles. Gaules. And afterward in the foure and thirtieth Tit, Liu, in li. 34 Booke he faith. The Gaules went marching forward, howling or yelling strange ly, and finging according to their confufed fashion. shaking their Targets ouer their heads, and brandishing their Dartes in their hands. Then againe in the foure the and fortieth Booke, speaking of the Gauls which were in Asia, he saith. Beyond all how they be the rest, their singing, when they began haued themthe battaile, and their howling, yelling, felues in batand dances, covering themselves with their Shields, after the manner of theyr Country, with the horrible clattering of their armour: all thefe things were done on deliberate purpose, onely to procure affrightment and terror.

Cafar toucheth this tumultuous beha- Inlins cafar in uiour more lightly, in his fift booke, after The overthe ouerthrow of Sabinus & Cotta, where throw of Sabinus & Cotta, where throw of Sabinus & Catta keth thus of them. Then, according to their wonted custome; they cryed the victory together, and howled loudly. And Jul. Color in at another time, in the feauenth Booke, Com. Lib.7. speaking of the Gaules necre vnto Alexia. The Gaules (faith hee) perswading them-

with great numbers on all fides: they that were within the Fort, and they that came, in their assistance, with a loude cry and yelling, affured the courage of their peo-

The battaile

Chap.7.

tion among the Gaules,

In Lib.7.

But perhaps these thinges may seeme

the Germanes, whether they were of like felues to be the ftronger part, and perceicondition, or no. It should seeme that uing the Romanes, that they were preffed it was the Barrit of the Germanes, whereof Tagitus maketh fuch mention. They of their Barrie had certain pleafant Songsand Rithmes, inlib 4.cap. 2. at the found whereof; that which they ple. Morgouer, that which gaue greatest tearmed Barrit, enflamed their courages;

and by the Song, they prefaged the ende and fortune of the future battaile. For they were cheered or difmayed, according as the Army made the novie; and this accord in finging, feemed not to confift fo much in the voyce, as in vertue.

They did principally respect the rudenes of found, and confusednesse of the noise; by holding their Targets before their mouthes, to the ende that the voyce (be-

ing made thereby the greater and fuller) might resound the louder and stronger. Such then was the noyfe of the Gaules, cheefely when they came to the shocke or brunt, and when they would enflame

hearts, were appealed and quieted swhen their Souldiers courages : for the women Of the wome they defired peace; and when they were Gaules (alwaies) had fome part in this enwilling to yeelde themselues. The figne couragement. You wil hardly credit, that how they en mens harts would bee more enflamed, by couraged the the exhortations and teares of their dea- husbands.

rest wives: the they could be by the found Int. Caf. in con of Trumpets and Cornets. The proofe ment. Lib. 7. their right should is were scene to bee hereof, is to be seene in the 7. Book, when at Gorgonia, the mothers of the Families naked: it was their accustomed figne. thereby to declare, that they were conbegan to pray with earnest affection, and to thew their haire ditheucled, after the

tented. The figne of desiring peace, was to extend or stretch out their hands: Gaulifb manner, and to make prefents of their young infants. Such was the exhoras hee speaketh in the second Booke, diftation at the fiedge of "Masylia, after that A Country courfing on the Bellouafians. The woall the Ships on the Sea were readily pre- in Affrica, amen and children (beeing on the walles) pared at the inftant entreaties & teares of westerne according to their wonted behaviour the old men of the mothers of the fami- Moores. would fretch foorth their hands, therelies and their daughters, who defired the to fuccour the Citty in extreme necessity: by desiring peace of the Romanes. Which he farther relateth in the seuenth Booke,

they had no leffe heart and refolution, to mount into those Ships, then they had beforein fighting the battaile. Then might eafily be differned, both from the Camp of " C. Trebonius, and all the places of 2 One of them highest prospect in the City; how all the that afterward youth that remained within it, and all the murdred Ca.

oldest men, with their wives and young children, stood as publike guardes, and (vpon the walles) helde vp their hands to heauen, or ran to the Temples of the immortal Gods, where prostrating theselues before their Images, they entreated victo-

ry of the Gods. This hath some resemblance with that which)

Dioder in lib

the Romines might come foorth, to admit them partie or conference. It may appeare now as conucnient, to speake somewhat of those signes which Signes of elpe the Gaules yied, to fignific, when theyr

w.Caf.in com.

How they re-quired parlie.

which they vied to make, when theyr hearts were contented and quieted ; was, to shew their right shoulders naked. Cafar speaking of the Hednans, in his scalul Cafin con uenth Booke, faith thus. Whenfoeuer lib.7. The ligne of

terror to the Romanes, was, the loud cry

that they made at their backs, in the time

of their fighting, It was likewife a custome

among the Gaules, to require parlicor

conference, by making a loud cry, as by a

Trumpet: according as Cafar in his fift

Booke, speaking of the Eburons, saieth.

Then after their viuall manner, they made a

loud cry together : to the end that some one of

The figne of

Gergouia

by that their lives might be faued. to bee of flender account: therefore I will conclude the noyfes made by the Gaules, and fearch into the behautour of

speaking of the women of Gorgonia: who

baring their breafts, and stretching our

their hands upon the walles, required

mercy of the Komanet. In the fame place

alfo, hee declareth what figne they vied,

when they were willing to fubmit them-

felues. The Heduans holding up their

hands; gaue notice thereby, that they

would veelde themselves. And holding

downe their armes, they requested there-

Observations

found most

ter observed in Military difcipline,&

A viuali mat-

Percingetorix to the Souldi-

ers beliedged

140 5

. h = ;

.....

d mer

a land

Courage na-

turall and he-

reditary to

the Gaules.

Carfar had fix

Legions of

the Gaules 8

but foure of

A certaine

legion among

the Romanes

Titus Liuius

reproved by the Author, t

his own coun-

ry, & the law

of Hiftery,

Romanes,

in Alexia.

Of the Gera man women.

An observati they wer ready to light.

Quailed battailes ra-en forced by the meanes of women.

Cærars double dealing with the Ganles, IM M. ERfar in comment Lib coin Lib.8.

Titus Linius a reproduer of the Gaules.

In lib. g cap. 4

In lib. 10.cap.

their cheefest commendations. They wold bring the wounded persons to their mothers and Wines, and they feared not to number and fucke their hurts; carrying food to them, and any thing that might harten them againe to the fight. Some fay, that ditiers battels, which began fuddenly to quaile and breake off: were as fuddenly re-enforced and purfued by the women, even through the constancy of their praiers, beating their hands on their naked breafts, & fetting before their eres, the danger of their neere ensuing captiblity, which they feared the more impatiently, in regard of their Wiues and Children. Wherefore the wines of martiall minded men, did declare themselves also no leffe valiant and refolute. But Calar, in attributing very great courage to the Gaules, doth yet (I know not how) reproch them, with a quite contrary negligence or cowardife. For, like as the hearts of the Gauls (faith he in his third Booke) are prompt and deliberate, for the attempting of warre: euen fo is their courage dull, and weake in refistance, to Support any mischances. In briefe (as we may reade in the eight Book) a man cannot well judge, whether the Gaules are more infolent, when their affayres do go neuer so little successefully with them:

with fuch infolence, as euery where hee

ceaffeth not to taxe them with formwhat

fauouring of the fame nature. As in the

fift Booke concerning the gowned Gauls.

The Gaulish nation are accustomed to

colde and raine; but they cannot any way

endure eyther dust or heate. In the tenth

Booke. The bodies of the Gaules, which

first booke. And the women, holding vo

their hands to the Souldiers, which were

going to the warre with teares entreated

them that they would not fuffer them to

fall into the fernitude of the Romanes.

Therfore when the Germanes were rea-

dy to fight, fuch things as were in theyr

deereft efteeme (as Tatitus reporteth)

they would have in some place neere vn-

to them? where the out cryes of theyr

wines, and lamentings of their children,

might coficft be heard; thefe ferned them

Int. Cafar in which is written of the Germanes, in the) cannot abide transfe or heat, do yet melt themselves with sweating. They enter fight like more then men; but their fille is leffe then women. In the 37. Booke. Their big bones that'can fuffer no labor, will toile with weighty Armour on their backes. In the 40. Booke. Heate and tra- In lib. 40.cap. uaile are yrkoforme, to the Callesquaggy bodles, because they are not able to endure thirst. In the 48. Booke, speaking of In Ub. 48. capa the Gaules of Alia. If their first affault be endured, which they ruth into with boyling courage, and blindfold fury their lazie members will melt themselves into as most facred witnesses, and these were sweare, and the weapons will fall our of their hands. The Sun, duft, and drought, without imployment of any weapon against them, doth dul their foggy bodies, and abate their steamest courage, if theyr hot rage and fury be once oner-paffed. Tacism giveth the felfe fame dull difpo- com.Tacismin

> dies(faith he) that have no other ftrength, disposition of then (at the first on-set) to fliew theselues the Germans. forward: are not accustomed to support (with any patience) either paines, bufines, thirst heate colde or hunger. How doth this hold together? According to the indgement which Cafar hath given of the Gaules? Are they both most valiant, and yet foggy fellowes also? Vndoubtedly, al the natural the Gaules are reported to bee (even national inclination of turally) martiall and valorous, and being the Gaules exercifed in military discipline they are the more hardened against any trauel but wanting exercise, they grow the more foggy & ydle. Custome and vse do teach mento support any toyle, and to hold essence against all danger; for the men apraid tranaile of warlike discipline, admitteth valiant. neyther finerie orfoftnelle. If we meete with some old Souldier, who, because he is expert in warre, is fearelesse of blowes: If likewife a new fresh Souldier be broght Cicero in in that hath his hart as frout and refolute, Tufculan, 5. & as yet vnexperienced; yet his best conthen they are easie to be affrighted, when rage will appeare to be but womanish; so neuer so little harme befals them. This is writeth Cicero in his fecond Tufculanes. that alfo, which Titus Linius reprehendeth

Tendernesse and softnesse is reprehended in the Gaulish Souldiers; as namely by Vercingetorix, and Critognates, one of the " Aruerni, in the feuenth Booke. For there he faith, that the Gaules defired to the River fight, in regard of their foft and tender Leyre in disposition, because they cannot long endure any toyle. The fame man at the men. lib?. councell

In li. 37.009 9

fition to the Germanes. Their great bo- libit capi.

councell which was holden among them, that were beliedged in Alexia, and stood in great diffresse, through want of victualles : against such as were of the minde, to hazard all at one fally he faid. This is indeed meere cowardife, weaknesse, and no hone of courage or any acte of vertue, to declare your felues amable, to endure dearth or fearfityfalbort a while. Proofe may bee produced of more men that gladly offred themselues to death then could patiently fustaine greefe or annovance. It is not then tobe doubted, but prompt & fout courage, especially in warlike enterprizes, was hereditary (both by nature and race) to the Gaules nation, and that this foft or render complexion, grew through lacke of exercife, in military discipline. For if a Gaule had beene once well enftructed, by a Mafter, skilfull in the arte of warre: where was any Souldier to bee found, that could more ably endure all labour ? If thou doe inferre any doubt in this cafe, proofe thereof was made by Cafar himselfe: For Oufar levied fixe Legions of the Gaules, because he could raise no more then foure of his owne Common-wealth. Cafars horfe-men were knowneito be Gaules, and thereupon, after he came to the head of all his enterprizes: hee naturalized all those Legions. which not onely were Gaules by Nation. but they retained (beside) the name of * Alauda. Wherefore, this foftnesse in the new or young experienced Souldiers was as common to the Romanes as Gaules; and was no otherwise proper, eyther to the Gaule or Germane Nation.

But Titus Liuius, with I know not how many Greekes, is too injurious and insupportable against the name of a Gaul, and offend against forgets withall, the kindnesse which hee ought to his Country, and to the law of history. For, although hee much better affected, to make the Venetes or Venetians, to descend from the traitor Antenor, then from the Nobility of the venetian Gauls. as Strabo hath done and the Romanes approue the fame, placing the Venetes or Venetians in Gallia Togata; yet thereby hee maketh himfelfe to be a Gaule. And the law of history doth command that in the relating of a history, he shold stand cleare from suspition of being touched with fanour or hatred. But whereas he reprocheth the gowned Gaules and Afians,

with the ydle matter of cold, because they dwelt in the hottest Countries, and such as were neerer to the Sunne, then the * Men of Pa-Patauines or Patauians, among whom Ti- dua in Italy. tus Livius was borne; doth he not mocke himfelfe as foolifhly as can bee deuifed? As for the Gaule Souldier which Cafar had, and who was the very branest man of all other whatfocuer: this man belynthe him manifestly. And it appeareth Apparant probably, that Gasar had to deale with proofe of the those men onely in that Gaule: but in the other partes of the world, hee fought and dier of Gaule gainst women, in regard of those men hee found in this Nation.

alur

CHAP. VIII.

Of the difference betweene the Souldiers of Cafar and of Pompey, being the valiant. Gaules, in comparing them with the Romanes : As also of the Spaniards and the Gaules, and what cunning they learned of the Romanes.

prehendeth in the Souldiers of Gaule ;

himfelfe theweth the foftneffe and affe-

ction of his owne spirit, which cannot 4:

ny way abide equity, the grauity of hifto-

ry foundnesse of judgement, and trueth.



and discipline.

Action in

O W., to speake of C.e. fars
Souldier, against the Soldier of Pompey, that is to
say, the valiant Gaul, what
was hee against the Romaine? In the third book

of the civill warres, Cafar faith : The Ar- Jul Caf, in com my of Pompey was not accustomed to paines mens, lib. 3. taking. Why then Titus Liuius, by the

purity of his eloquence, which Quintillian compared to the whitenesse of milke, Quintil im lib. hath drawne the Spaniards and Gaules fro 3.cap.9. the corners of the world, onely to make

himselfe listened vnto, according as Saint Hier, in Profat,

For to be foft or hardened against toyle, is not any thing that proceedeth eyther and hardreffe

Concerning the gowned

Hierome writeth . Notwithstanding, in this delicacy or fofmesse of not enduring paine heate thirst nor dust, which hee re-

from Nation, or race, but by breeding against labour

Cafar

Want of dif cipline in the Gaules.

Strabe in Lib. CAY.7.

which remai ned in the Gaules.

thecues.

Strabo in Lib.7

Example of the Helucti-

Example of & Aquitains

All Gaul con to Alexia

men of Gaule a great courage, & truely warlike : and yet neuerthelesse, he discouereth in this great minde or spirit, a certaine want of discipline, or much rather hereproueth a kinde of fimplenesse, and an ill aduited affurance of their strength, which was the fault that was most noted in their warres, according as Strabe wrireth in his fourth Booke.

:: The Gaules very eafily affembled togerher in great number, because they wer simple of fpirit, stil followed inflice, right and trueth, being moued and affected by the loffes of their neighbours. Whereupon it happened, that the more easily they were chased out of theyr Country: because in affembling all their forces, or rather their whole families and friends, they were throwne out by them that produced the stronger. The Romanes did much more easily subdue them, then they could do the Spaniards: for the wars in Spaine were begun long time before theirs, and yet notwithstanding, they were brought to end after theirs. And betweene both these times, they conquered all the Gauls, that were betweene the Rheine and the Pyrenean Mountaines: for in comming to the field fo many together, they were querthrowne by multitudes together. But the Spaniards managed their battailes more sparingly, and, even as if they had a defire to some affected kinde of monies: to did they preferue them from one time to another, and from Country to Counery making their warre stil cauteously like vnto thecues.

And that which Strabe hath written, may fufficiently bee perceived by the examples of Calar. The whole City of the Heluctians, there being all the people of twelue Townes, and of forty Villages: did fight all at one instant, and in one instant also were all ouerthrowne. Such was the league of fifteene people of the Belgians. Such was the renolting of the Armoricans in the warre of the Venetes , or Venetians. Such was the conspiracy of the Aquitains against Crassim, In briefe, did not all Gaule put it selfe in Armes, and was it not wholly conquered in one warre, neere vnto Alexis? The Gaules in the eight yeare of fault, as Hirtim faith, and that in regard of fome great numbers, which still were af- sides) enuironed by the Foote-men

Cafar then did but right, in giving to the | fembled in one place; it exceeded possibility to refift the Romanes. But if divers Cities (at one selfe same time) had made warre in divers places: the Romane Ar- of the Gaules my could neither have had fufficient fuc- in their fight cour, leyfure or forces to vndertake all at ling.

Neuertheleffe, the Gaules were not alwaves of fo simple and open spirite thut at some times they declared more tunning and holpe themielues by fome fur- wayes filly & prizes. Cafar, (as Suetonius faith) neuer fimple in their fuffered any one occasion of warreso boe loft were it never fo vnindifferent, fetting as foone on the allied and leagued, as on enemies: and yet notwithstanding, all the warres which he made, hee still paliated with good & fufficient colours of reason. The Eburone-Gaules payed Cafar with TheEburones his owne vnfaithfull dealing. For thefe cunning in o-Gaules aductifing the Romaine with the conspiracy, which all the Gaules had as greed on together: made him beloeue, that if hee would come, and leave the fielde, they would gine him free passage. Through this deceit, a Legion, and fine Cohorts or Companies (with Cotta and Sabinua, which ledde them) were all vanquished. And albeit, that the Romane was then alike in number and strength to the Gaules (as Cafar confesseth) yet was Cafar repaied he foyled by the Gaules fubrilty, who had learned this craft of Cafar, and therewith repayed him.

Hirtus recountern the like ambufca- Hirt. Int. 3.6.3 does of the Bellonafi, or Bellonacanes, who having understood the lodging of the Romaine horsemen: tooke anumber of light and nimble spirited footemen, and en-ambushed them in a place thickly conered with wood. On the morrow, they fent certainehorfes thither, which fians circummight allure the Romanes out, into the uented the compasse of the ambushment, and when they were once in it, they prefently charged them. And the fortune of this mifhappe fell on the men of Rheimes, who The Rhemi were appointed as Guards there that foiled throgh day. For they having feene (too fud-fault, with the denly) the enemies horse-men, and losse of their knowing them felues to exceede them Prince Vergreatly in number, making no account of fo fewe as they feemed to bee: they their warre, both well felt and knew this rushed foorth, and ouer-hotly pursued them, euen vntill they were (on all

Cafar fulpec ed the deceit of the Bellouafians, aud

with coyne of his own stamp

Romanes.

Cunning oftentimes deeines it felfe.

Many harmes

done to the

the Gaules.

to their no little aftonishment, which / ties which they had learned of Cefar. And caused them to retir much sooner, then skirmifies of horsemen were wont to do; having loft Vertifeus, Prince of the Citie, The Romain and cheefe Commander of the horfmen. This shewed no simplenesse in the Gauls, instruction. but meere quaint cunning dearned of the Romaines.

In the very fame place, Hirtius decla-

reth the like cunning stratagem; as that

which Hannibal vied, to deceyue Fabius.

The Bellouafians (faith he) perceiving that

the Romaines were ready to pursue them.

and that they could not (without daunger)

passe the night, or solourne longer where

they were : they delivered (by Oath) from

had oreat store in the fielde, all which they

placed before their Army : and at the ending

of day-light (upon a figne fod inely given)

they fel them all on fire. So the flame, which

followed it felfe in great length, immediately

hindered, that the enemy could not discouer

their Forces : and which being doone, the

harmed by

heir owne

Chap. 9.

The night fa- hand to hand, the Faggots and small bushes uourethmany whereon they veed to lit, and whereof they

Gaules very speedily withdrew themselues. Casar, albeit he could not perceine that the enemy was gone in regard of the fire fo made before them: yet notwithst anding Supecting that they had done this deuice to the end that they might flye caused his Legions to march would not be on, and fent out troopes of hor femen to purfue them. And yet being mistrustful of some Surprizall, of doubting left the enemic might still lurke there with intent to allure the Romanes to some disaduantage, hee marched on the more adulfiely. The Horsemen, fearing to enter the smoke, and if any one (by ouer-Suspition is the hinderer much forwardnes) did enter he could not fee of the brauest any thing before or behind him: grew all fufpitious of some secret ambulb of so gane leyfure to the Belloua fians to retire thence. Thus the enemy, by meanes of a flight (full of feare

> feated their campe in a very strong place." Oftentimes thenceforward, & by many ambushes both of horse & foot, they did great damages to the Romaines, in their wandering abroad, itealing and foraging: whereby it should appeare, that these attempts fauoured rather of a Punick (pirit then of a Gaulish. And yet neuerthelesse, when all came to al (as we vie to fay:)they were furprized by the hands of their maisters, & by the selferame deceits & subtil-

dy craft) having marched about ten miles of

the country, without (ust aining the left loffe,

to the end it might bee noted, that the Gauls had no more cunning or craft then what they learned of the Romaines: the Heluctians (as Orofins writeth in his fixt booke) (urprized the Confull Caffins, with orofin lib.6. all his army, by an ambufcado. But I haue cap.4. concluded with my felfe not to omit one maner of ambushing, which was the most maruellous of al those that ever I read of, or heard reported; whereby the Prætor Pathumius Posthumius was ouerthrown of the Bojan vanquished Gaules, as Titus Linius reporteth in his by the Gaules 33.booke.

Of the Ancient Gaules.

While matters went on in these doubts

uei thi own by

and vncertainties, tidings came of another losse, according as fortune (in that yeare) ftill re-charged one vpon another. And thele were the Newes that Lucius Posthumius, designed Consull, was ouercome in Gaule, both he and his Armic. There The manner was a verie great Forrest, which the Gauls how Posthucalled Litana, thorough which Forrest, mins was ohe was to passe his Army. The Gaules, we the Boians. on both fides of the paffage, had cut and hewne the Trees of the Forrest in such fort : that (yet notwithstanding)they parted not from the trunke or bodie, but must endure hard thrusting and enforcement, before they could possibly get the to fall.

Posthumius had two Romane Legions. and had leayed fo many people, allyed vnto the Romaines, that hee brought into the enemies Countrey, well neere the number of fine andtwenty thousand men of Warre. The Gaules, who were ambushed in the Forrest, when the Armie was entered within the Vyood; threvy effectually downe the aforesaid hewne vnder-grow- performed. ing braunches, which were apted fo for the present purpose that falling stil thickly one vpon another, without any poffible meanes of restrayning them, they ouer-turned (pell-mell) both Men and Horses, in such manner, that (very hardly, and with much paines taking) tenne men of them escaped. For the greater part were flaine by the falling of the huge braunches and armes of Trees on them; and the Armed Gaules, that held poffeffion of all the VVood, put the rest vnto Astrange con death, vvho vvere not a little affrighted at this fo strange misaduenture. Veric few (of so great a number) were taken;

Dį

who in going to the bridge of the riner,

The figuralical ty of mind:

The spaniard not lo foone Subdued, as the Gauleste the reason

The Spaniard

the Belgians Armoricans.

quered neree

Hirtius in lib. 2

were impeached by the enemy, who for= merly had gotten the mastery thereof. This is all that Titus Linius hath written, concerning this notable accident to the Gaules.

CHAP. IX.

In what manner the Gaules fortified their Citties and Townes: and what Engines they implayed for their owne defence.

After what manner the Gaules fortifird heir Townes and Citics.

VT this is enough alreadie fpoken, concerning the ma-ner of behauiour among the Gaules, as well in ranged battails, as in ambuscadoes :

it remaineth now to speak, how they forrified their Cities and Townes, and contrarywife, how they were belieged. How was it then that the Gaules strengthened and fortified their Townes, and what Engines had they whereby to defend themselucs? There neede no wonderment bee made, at the fortification of the Morini. Neruians, Menapians, Aduaticate, and Eburones, because they had no Townes at all. And thence entued it, that the Aduaticate maruelled fo ftrangely, to beholde the warlicke Engines of the Romaines; whereof it is thus written in the fecond Booke. Beeing fortified with a rampier of twelve foote high, which had fifteene thousand Towers and strong Bastils nere to each other; the Romaines kept themfelues within that Fort. Afterward, when the trailes and platformes were readie prepared, mounted aloft, and a Tower to be raifed some long distance off: at the beginning of these vowonted workes, the Gaules beganne to laugh on their walles, and lowdly to mocke at then, maruelling what they did undertake fo farre off, and with so huge an Engine, or how it should bee possible, that the hands and strength of men (especially of so meane stature) could promife any hope to themselues, of comming neere to their walles, with a Tower of fo great a composition. But when they (foone after) perceyued, that this mighty frame mooued from place to place, and approached neere vnto thevr

walles: beeing aftonished at a matter of fuch nouelty, and fight vnaccustomed; they sent their Ambassadors vnto Ca/ar, to entreate peace; who answered them, fent by the That they must thinke that the Romaines Gauls to Cz. neuer made any warre, without the spe- far, and his an ciall fauour of the Goddes: feeing they fwer to them could advance (and in fo thort a while) an Engine of such height, to fight both farre off, and neere at hand; and therfore they should submit themselves, and all their goods to his mercy. Thus fpake Cafar . It would require fo much freech (faicth Cicero in his fecond Tufculanes) cicero in Tufa concerning the new fouldier, & the old: that if wee make comparison of one that, hath not beene exercifed with him which is tried and skilfull; he will appeare no otherwise, then meerely as a woman. All foldier. which notwithstanding, the very selffame Gaule, beeing enstructed in the Discipline of Cafar, feemed as a God to another Gaule, that neuer had knowledge in that Art.

But let vs leaue these Belgians which dwelt fo farre off, and come vnto fuch as were more civillized, as the Swessiones, Belloughans, and the Belloualians. The Swessiones (faith Cafar in his fecond booke) when as the Jul. Caf in com. Treiles vvere prepared against Nouiodunum, one of their cheese Townes, and that the platforme was mounted together with the Treiles : as men amazed at fo great an enterprice, and fuch straunge workes, which the Gaules had neuer feene or heard of, yet fo speedily, performed by the Romaines; they fent their Ambaffadors toward Calar, to entreate that they might yeeld themselves. The Bello- Engines to usfians alfo, having not (as yet) feen fuch batter cities and Townes Engines, wherewith Townes were bat- withall. tered, but onely hearing report made of them, furrendred the Towne of Bratufantium. Wherefore, if the Gaules Yas Cæfar affirmeth) had neuer either feene or heard focech of fuch inftruments, vitill that verie time: vvhy then should vve make any maruelling, That the Gaules, who had not yet learned fuch conning, yvere conquered by other Gaules, that had knowledge in them? Now, whether this place in Casfar, which treateth of A doubt conthe Belgians, vvas purposely vvritten, or cerning the (at the least) may seeme not to bee vvritten according vnto trueth, there the question remaineth. For, the Gaules made

Ambaffides

geft defences that the Gauls then had about all thei Cuies and Townes.

Chap. 9.

Of the Swell

luruay of his their or . lerin build ng,& what hicknes their walles contai-

All the Gauls were not ig tifying their

Marcus Craf

lis beliedged

How the Gaub | their walles with strong beames of wood, | till they came to the great planted platwhich were not planted vp on one ende: but couched downe, & joyned together, with spaces of earth betweene each two beames, whereof Cafar speaketh thus in Int. Cafar in his feuenth book. All the walles (faith he) Com. lib. 7. of the Gaules, were (well nere) made after this manner. They layd beames of wood straite out along on the ground, and fol-These walles lowed after stil in the same order, making equall diffance betweenerhein, about the space of two foote in bredth. These beams or plaits, as some terme them, were reuefled and bound within, with ftrong forced earth; and the equall distances (whereof we have spoken) were filled vp with great flones, which fronted the wall forward. After that this rowe was all along thus ranged and ordered; another like frame was laid thereon, after the fame manner; vet fo, that the beames betweene both. did guard and keepe the maine Timber from touching each other. And being distanted alto by the selfe-same spaces; they were knit and flut fast together, by great stones castin beiweenethem. And so, confequently, all the whole worke shaped it felfe in this manner, euen till the Wall was perfected to a reasonable height.

Now, concerning this kinde of building, ouer and befide, that it was no way mithapen, by the order kept in the leuelling, and fitting both the beames & flones aptly to each other: euen fo it was greatly commodious, in scruing for the defence of their Townes. For the stones were apt and proper to impeach the force of fire. and the beames and other matter, brake and refilted the blowes of battery. Because, they being bound together inwardly, and knit to the Timber beames running all along contayning (for the most part) in thicknesse, the measure of forty foote could (by no meanes) be forced to finke, or be otherwise dismembred. Hereby then it may appeare, that the Gaules knew fome-what for the fortification of their Citties and Townes; yea, and how to defend themselves also, by such meanes as were yfed in the warres.

In the third years of the warre in Gaul. the Sintone-Áquitaines were befiedged by Craffes and his men, both with Treitles and Towers: but they refifted him valiantly, one while, by making faillies out vpon them, another while, by vndermining,

forme, which formerly had beene prouided by meanes of the treilles. To which vndermining (faith Cafar) the Aquitains Int. Cafar in were well inured because they had Mines Com. lib. 7. of Copper and Braffe in many places. So much Cafar wrote, approning, that the Aquitains knew well enough how to defend a Towne or City; because they had Copper Mines, which made them therein very skilfull. It is faide also, that the Celtes (for the same cause) knew well The Celtes how to defend themselves at the fiedge skilful in their of Auaricum : because they had very deep Mines of Iron in their Country. For Auaricum being couragiously assayled by the Romanes, the Gaules found out all forts of inventions (as Cafar fauth in his feuenth Booke) wherby to give impeachment to the most fingular enterprizes of The natural the Romane Soldiers: as having (by na- inclination of tural inclination) a very ingenious and the Celis. fubtile spirit, apt to follow and counterfeit all things, and whatfocuer they fawe done by others.

gaine hurle it downe with their Engines.

fuddenly furprize the amazed Romanes;

or by vindermining, ouerthrow the maine fortification. Whereunto (indeede)

they were the more apt and ready; be-

cause they had great yron Mines in theyr

Country, and knew (befide) all kindes of

deluing into the ground. By leaving their

Mines open, they impeached and tardy-

ed the Romanes preparations: mingling

fire with pitch and other matter made apt

to burne wherefoeuer it fel, and tumbling

downe great stones also, to keepe them

from approching neere to their walles.

owne defence

First, for the Romane Falx, they could Of the Roma ouerthrow it by a fnare or grinne, and engine Fals. when it was remounted, they would a-

They couered all their walles with towers made of skinnes, and equalled the height of those towers made by the Romanes, gainst the Rowith masts made in their owne turrets. In their accupts making their faillies abroad; eyther they of war against would throw fires into the platforme; or them.

By these cited places it appeareth cuidently that the Gaules had attained vnto the Mines yn fome indifferent knowledge, how and der ground, which way to defend a City: but to speak foready in

truely, it was more through their conti- defending nuall exercise in their Mines, then by any cunning they had learned in the arte Mi-

Iu!Ce(.\n Con ment lib 2.

Diners people that had no

Townes or Villages,

The Gaules had neuer feene fuch ad mirable Engines as were tramed by the Romaines

The words of Vercingetori at the taking

of Auaricum. Int.Cefur he

The confta cy of the detence of their Cities & Townes.

2 People that inhabited Denmark an Norway. People of Germany, cald Allemaignes

Some others rearme him Critognatus.

Other Gaules milliked this counfell, yet yeelded it fit in cases of ex tremity.

The Gaules ful of courage

And this is that whereof Vercingetorix complained, comforting the Gaules at the taking of Auaricum. That the Romains had not wonne the victory, either by vertue or battaile: but by a kinde of science and cunning, which they had in the battring downe of Townes, wherein the Gaules had no knowledge. By which words, that place of Cafar which concerned all the Gaules in generall feemeth to be true: That the Gauls had neuer feene, or heard any report, of Platformes, Treslles, nor Towers. But bee it fo, that the ancient Gaules neuer knew any fuch Art, as the Romaines did; yet there was no want of courage in them. For, it is a matter very maruellous, which Cafar himselfe speaketh of them in his seauenth Booke, in remembering their constancy, for guard and defence of their Cities and Townes.

The Gaules, in the warres of the *Cimbrians and * Tentones, being wholly constrained to retire themselves into such places as were strongest, and being there also oppressed with great famine & lacke of victuals: they did yet maintaine theyr liues by feeding on the bodies of fuch, as both appeared, and were not able indeed to do any further fernice in the warre, & would (by no meanes) yeeld to their ene-

Critegnates, who was a man of great ranke among the Aruernians, held a verie strong opinion in councell, that it was good to put the same in practise for the defence of Alexia; and although hee had made no vie thereof before, yet hee ear= nestly maintained the fitnesse and necesfity thereof, onely for liberty, and that it was worthy to bee left (as a memorable custome to posterity. This opinion helde fuch account amongst the other Gaules, that they were of the mind, to affay all other meanes whatfoeuer, then to doe according as Critognates had aduifed. And yet notwithstanding, if there wer such vrgent necessity, and ayde tardied too late in comming; that it was most behoovefull to credit his judgement, rather then to yeeld, or liften to peace-making, vpon enforced or violent composition. Such was the courage of the ancient Gaules.

Now this kinde of defence, which they vsed for safegarding their townes, thogh it proceeded from no meane Vertue in them, yet it did not rellish of any great

discipline. In what manner also they asfailed Townes, was vvithout any craft or fubile denice. For they never holp themselues, either by Platformes, Rampiers, Treilles, or Towers, as it is described in the second booke. The Gaules and the Belgians, had both one manner of affaulting Cities, fo faith Cefar. For after they had ringed (after the order of crowding together) a great number of men about the Town; they would hurle heaps of stones vp on the wall, vntill they had left it naked of men. Then, winding and turning, according as occasion served, they approa-ched to the gates, and vndermined the walles. Thus then their whole manner of making war in places fortified with ram- Townes, piers and ditches, doeth give vs to vnderstand, that the heart and courage of the Gaules was very great; and yet very little or no discipline at all vsed amongest them. Let this then suffice, to acquaint ve with the order of their land feruice.

CHAP. X.

Of the service on the Sea, or other waters, vfed by the Gaules : And what Ships and Vessels they had among them. Also, into what farre remote countries they extended their name.



Oncerning that which they performed on the Sea, as it is described in the warres against the Britaines and *Ve- *People now performed on the Sea, as it netes, it appeareth to tafte of called Ven-

vertue, although it was fimple, and without any great cunning. Cafar describeth it in all parts, with the matter and maner Inline Cafe of fuch thips or veffels, as the Gauls then vsed speaking thus. Their Ships were made and armed in this maner. The keeles of them were much larger then tho feef the Romaines Ships: to the end, that they might the more in vie. eafily fustaine the obling and flowing of the Sea. Their Prowes were highly rayled, and their Poupes alfo: because they wer the more apt to hinder the power of great Waves and Tempests . All their Shippes were made of Oake, to indure all injury and violence that could happen. The bankes were made of timber beames, about a foote in thickeneffe : and

A description of the Gaules ships, which they had then

they were toyned or fastened together with iron mules of great bigneffe. Their Anchors (in stead of Cables) were made fast with chaines of iron : and for want of other failes. they made wee of skinnes and hides, which were foft and pliable with currying and paring: And either through the want of hempe. or knowledge how to weet (which is the more likely) they imagined, that if they wied other failes, they could not refist fo manie tempests of the Ocean, and such impetuous windes as daily arafe, neither fo commodioufly conusy such great burthens as they caried in their neffelsen.

In another paffage of the fourth book

ly preffed by the Britains, on the shore of

the Ocean; Gefar commanded, that the

gallies (which these poor barbarous peo-

ple were not wont to fee, & which could

be managed most readily in any busines)

should be fet apart distant from the other

thips, and that they thould be moved by

the strength of Oares : to the end, that

Engines, flayed their proceedings, and

Int Cafar it he sheweth that the Gallies, whereof hee Com. tib. 4 himselfe made service, both against the Of Cafars Gaffies a Britaines and the Venetes had not beene gainft the Br vied on the Ocean, vntill that inflat time. For the Romanes being fomewhat hard-

Hempe not

known to the

the vie therof

Chap.:0.

Cæfars command for imployment of his Gallies.

they might be ranged against the flanke of the enemy, which was discouered; and do. whence they might repulse and recoil the enemy by the dint of their weapons, and Engines of warre, which availed the Romanes very greatly. For the ignorant peo-ple, being amazed at the fashion of those lgnorance is the mother of much errour, vessels, and the mooning of their Oares, especially in as also the manner of their vnaccustomed warre feruicus

(foone after) retired.

Thus farre we have heard the ancient fashions and behaujour which the Gauls vsed in actions of warre, and vyhich haue bene collected out of many places:declaring them to be much greater in naturall strength, then in the course of Martiall discipline. Whereby wee may perceine (in regard that their yvarres were managed by vertue, & not by any flights, cun-The Gaules made them. ning, or trumpery;) they were the maifelues mafters fters of all or most nations. For they purof al other nafued their purpose, euen as Geographers were wont to doe, to make all the Earth habitable, euen from the Suns fetting, fo farre as his rifing . Britaine, Spaine, Italy, Germany, Illyria, Pannonia, Greece, Maccdonia, yea, Asia it selfe, can declare the

Empire of the Gaules. For Britain, which was along the fea coaft (as Cafar faith in Iul. Cafar in his fift booke) had beene conquered by them that passed from Belgia, going thi-ther for pillage, and to make warre; and they named themselves according to all the Cities titles from whence they iffued; and having made warre there, there they inhabited, and began to plough and hufband the grounds. VVhat thall we fay of *Celtiberial Doth it not deliuer sufficient pledesended testiunony, that Spaine was subdued by of the Celtes, them ? For, to what purpose else thould that came out Lucane (av ?

The Celts departing from the ancient Gault, river Iberus. Renowned their name as fante as Iberus.

But it may be, that Italy dathe not wir Italy fibie &der the gouernment of the Gaules : Yes ed vnto the that it did foundly, and at the fame tiene Gaules power when Tarquinius Prifeus reigned. The Tarquinius biturioes, Aruernians, Senones, Heduans, Prilcus. Ambarrians, Carnutes, and Aulertes, vinder conduct of the Sollumans, Bosans, & Lin- People of gones, preuailed fo farre, that that Italy, Langres in France. which reacheth along fro the Alps, coasting still to the Apennines, and so farre on as the river Rubicon, became Gaule. And finally, after that they had ouerthrowne the Romanes necre to Allia, they tooke Rome and burned it; and having agreed for a thousand pounds of gold, they folde Rome surprithe Capitoll (which they kept befiedged) by the Gaules to the rest of the Romaines which yvere enclosed therein. And both not furious Germany borne the yoake of Gaule? In elder times (faith Cafar in his fixte Booke) Iul. caf in com. the Gaules excelled the Germanes in vertue. lib.6. For the Volca and Tettofages, vnder the People of concuct of Sigouesus, possessed themselus, Nanbone, beof the most fertile places in Germanie, e. yond Rhodauen those which were negrest to the For- now called rest Hercynia, as Titus Liuius also rela- Languedoc,

Tacitus maintaineth, that the Colonies mountaines. of the Heluctians & Boians were brought into the same place. But those Gaules, the conquerors of Germany, being made bold Sparedyet and hardy by fuch simplicity in diet as the made the Germans viech extended themselves much Gaules course further, and the renowne of theyr name, went (with great honor) thorough Illyria, Pannonia, Greece, Macedonia, Thrace, and Afia, according as Instine (following Tro) gus) declareth more at large. And the

Com, lib. c.

of France, and felues by the

Kings compelled to buy their peace of the Gaules.

Prolomy flain by the Gaules

The Temple of Apollo fac-ked by them.

Cruel people of Scythia in Europe,East-ward by the fea fide. b People of M.rfia.betweene Danubius and Aenius. Titus Linius i 46.48.44.9.

e People of Gaule, that did win part of Paphlago nia & Mæonia

d People that cald Mysians. e A Region in Greece, betweene Cari and Eolis. f A riuer rifing out of Taurus, and running tho-rough Cappa

War guided no guile.

name of the Gaules was fo much feared. that Kings (not constrained, but on their own meer motion and good will)bought their peace of them, with great fummes

Beeing conducted by Belgeus, they flew Ptolomy, King of Macedon. Led by Brennus, as making small account of the spoyles of men; they sacked the Temple of Apollo, which was in Delphos. Afterward, a new Armie of the same Gaules, which vvere dwelling in Germanie, hauing formerly driven in rowte the Getes and Triballes, and inforced Antigonus King of Macedon, to forfake the Fielde: thence they passed on into Asia, vyhere they made furth a dreadfull terrour(as Titus Liuius, the great blamer of the Gaules name, (arth in his eight and forty booke) amongst all the Nations, which were on this fide the Mountaine Taurus, that not onely they among whom they came, but fuch with whome they never were (both neere and farre off) did ranke themselues altogither under their obedience and fubicction.

Not long after, because they confisted of three Nations, to witte, Tolistoboges, Trocmes, and Tectofages, they divided Afia into three parts, to the end, that each Nation might hold his share tributary to himselfe. The coast of the Hellespont was assigned to the Troomes. The Tolistoboges had the & Aplides and Ionia for their part. The Tectolages had the Countrey which was in the middeft of Asia, and raised all their fouldiers pay, at the charge of that whole Afia, which was on this fide Taurus, making their abode neere to the river Halys. And their name was so much feared (in regard of their great number) that they became (afterward) a people of no meane parentage: infomuch, that the Kinges of Syria refused not to pay them Wages. Thus hath Titus Linius written, concerning the entrance of the Gaules into Greece and Asia. Whereby, I haue observed, that, in regard (as I have formerly fayde) their warres were managed by vertue, and no craft or guile: the due commendation of the Gaules valiancie, was iustly comprized within those limites and Countryes, as the Sunne obferued his course, from his rising, to his

But in following time, thorow lacke

of Military Discipline, or else (much rather) by reason of discords, which grevy among themselues, the & Cenomanians, has using difference with the Togates, the Mass (ylians with the Bracchates, and & Heduan) with the Comates: they holp the Romans, to bring their owne Countrey into thraldome; betraying all Gaule, to subject it Gaul berray to the Romane Empire. And that which & fubicated is much more, to the end, that in this cale | Empire. we may more admire the Gaules Vertue, they being well instructed in the Art Military and all together hauing encountred Cafar, who was a most excellent Maister The Romane in actions of warre; within the space of throwne ma foure yeares, ouerthrew the whole Ro- yeeres, onely maine Empire, which had ferled it felfe by by the valour fo many warres, and multiplicity of ages. For heerein Cafar had the confent of the Gaules, onely against whom, (as Vareingetorix prophesied) not all the inhabitable worldknew how to make refiftance: yet, the only confent (I fay) of the Gauls, and Gaule onely, stoode against all the other Provinces of fo great and mightie an Empire. Why then, thou Man of Gaule, thou deseruest highest honour for this Vertue; for encreasing the dignitie and glorie of thy Countrey, and not the tyrannie of a ftranger . Thou (euen of the Gaules thy felfe) hast subdued Italy, Spaine; nation in the Greece, Egypt, Asia, Affrica, yea, and Spaine againer in briefe, thou haft conquered the whole Empire of the Romane

But this may seeme sufficient (if not too much) to be fooken concerning their man-hoode and valour : Now it is fitte time to speak of their prudence and wife-

CHAP. IX.

Of the Learning and wifedom of the Gaules: Of the disciplines instructed by their Druides or Priests, to the yonger people. Also of their Bards, Poets, Sarronides, Eubages and profession of Languages.

THE study of disciplines (whereby the Of the wifeiudgment of man maketh it felf most dom and learfirme, for the better entertainement of wisedom)was most notable amog the an-

amongst the Gaules.

Chap.10.

ned Priefts in

Gaule, who

estimation,

that the deter

controuerties was commit-

red to them.

it is supposed.

that they firft

same out of

the lie of Bri

The Gaules

capeable of all

nent lib 7 .

Diodor in Lib.

Strabo in li 🔩

Certainler | cierte Gaules. The Druides, or Druide,

made profession in each of those Disci-

plines. First of all, Cafar faidr, they wold

nauermen to beleeue, thar their foules

could not dye but after death they paffed

from one body to another And they

were of opinion, that this beleefe ferued

greatly for an encouragement to vertue;

tempt. Moreouch, they discouered verie

many things which they taught to youth:

concerning the Starres, and their moti-

on tof the greatnesse of the world, & the

earth softhe Nature of things vof the

might and power of the immortall Gods.

Cafar writeth, of the Learning of the

Gaules but in few words, and fleightly;

theifare we must enquire after more am-

ple relation. That the Gaules had a cape-

able understanding of all disciplines, Ca-

far hath affirmed in his feuenth booke, by

that which wee have already alledged.

They are a kinde of people of very great vn-

derstanding, and who are most apt to follow

and counterfet all things which cabe taught

them. And Diodorus writeth thus . Al-

though their Beech be Comewhat obfcure and

doubtfull; yet are they not any fuch men, as

do estrapae themfelues from Learning. Al-

to Strabe agreeth there-with, faving. The

Gaules are easily quided to learn such things

as may do shem feruice, because they addict

From the beginning of the world, which

Father Noah re-established all sortes of

Disciplines were taught to fuch spirits, as

appeared to be defirous of thom: For ac-

cording to Berofus, if that which now a-

dayes is generally read, be true: Dis, who

was the first Author of the Gaules Nati-

on, is faid to bee most famous for know=

ledge, and thereon was called Semnothes,

or Samothes, and (after his name) fuch as

made profession of Learning and know-

ledge, were termed Semnotheans, or Sa-

motheans. But this place of Cafanteemeth

to confirme the history of Berofus. The

For this cause, they marked all the cour-

fes of times by number, not of dayes, but

frome, by observation of their birth daies,

and fo from the beginning of months and

yeares; that still the day followed the

themselves to Arts and Disciplines.

when men held the feare of death in con-

add ftein

1100

Old Father Nosh re-efts blished the

*Pluto the God of riches Demigr.gen.

Berof.ant. Ct. Gaules (faith he) do report them elues to bee descended of their father Dis: and say beside, that the Druides gaue them that instructio.

The courses f times note ynumber of of nights; and that they kept fuch a cunights, & no

night. Now, concerning this point, that day alwayes enfued after night : the Germaines also kept the same course, & made not their account by number of daves as of accounting wedo (faith Factors) but of nights giving an apt rearme therefore, and vied their alfiguations among themselves accordingly, as holding, that night was still the guide to day. It may bee, that this was a thing in vie to other people alfo, to take the beginning of the houres, from the inftant of midnight. in But let vs come againe to Father Da

and the Semhocheans , or Samotheans, whereof Beroface (peaketh; with whom the opinion of variationle consenteth: for hee writeth in his Magitian (according as Luertius reportech) That Philosophy receywed originall from the Semnotheuns of the Gauls. The fame Berofus writeth, that Sarron the third King of Gaule, to reftrain the wilde fierceneffe of the first men; established publicke Schooles of learning: but hereafter we shall speake more at large of the Sarronides. The fourth King was Druis, of whom came the Druides. & who were full of all things, as Cafar affirmeth. The fift King was Bardus, of whom wee celebrate the honour, in speaking of Bardes, Poets, and Orators. Thus then weeperceine the ancient professions of the Gauls disciplines, which maketh it selfe venerable, cuen in the image of antiquity. Marcellinus in his fift Booke, doth very neere agree heerewith; writing the Original of ble diftiplines the Gauls, where he faith, Thofe that have of the Gauler anciently written, doubting the first original of the Gaules, did leave their knowledge halfe full of trouble. But fince then, * Timagenes the Greeke, both out of diligence and diuers Languages, collected fuch things as were vnknown for the space of long time; to whom giving credit (all doubt & scruple taken away) we will deliuer the fame notes distinctly and cleerely.

Some are of opinion, that the * Abori-Some are of opinion, that the * Aborithese Countries; and that they did name themselues Celts, after the name of a king whom they deerely affected; and Galates (for the Greekes do call the Gaules fo) after the name of his b Mother. Others do affirme, that the Dorians, which followed ancient Hercules, inhabited the borders about the Ocean. The Drufides recount (for a truth) that there was a certain part he a people of

observation by night.

Berof. Ant.lib.

Arist in Mar.

*A great the. lexandriagin who taughtin

taines, whom Saturn broght into Italy.

b Galata, or Galatea.

c Fepured to

Com. lab. 1

A Letter cari-

ed by a Gaule

Amius de D

Scrip. Brit. Cent.1.

Two bloodic

a People of Phocis, a little countrey of Greece, by the gulfe Criffeus Lucania, in the gulfe P Stanus. c The Cittie Marfilesin France-which

The begin-ning of the fludy of Ler-

was astamous

for Learning,

as Athens

Galatea got with childe by

the Ancient

elder dayes

The Lerning vied amongf maticke, Physick, Theology. Grammar Gauls in those

Countrey: but were chased and expelled from their dwellings by another people, in regard of their continuall warres, and thorow the inundations of the Sea, they landed on the hither Islands, and in the Countrey on this fide the Rheine. Some alfo holde, that after the destruction of Troy, a finall number of people which fled from the Greekes, wandering all about: cam at last into this country, which till then was empty. But the inhabitants of this land (more then any thing els can) do affure this, which wee have also scene engrauen in their Monuments: that Hercules, the fon of Amphitrio, made all pos-I. Bale forip. lible speeds to ruinate the cruell Tyrants
Brit. Cent. 2 Gerian and Taurifess, one of which over-Gerion and Taurifcus, one of which ouergiants conque awed Spaine, and the other Gallia. After sed by Hertu- he had conquered them both, he had priuare knowledge of some women of noble race; by whom, he had many Children, that flyled (by their owne name) all those places where they commanded.

It is likewise further maintained, that the * Phocenies which lived in Asia, flying from the cruelty of Harpagus, Lieutenant to King Cyrus, betooke themselues to sea, and came into Italy; one part vvhereof, founded the Towne of b Velia, and the other . Massilia in Viennoys . Within some while after, when their forces were increafed; they fortified a great number of Cities and Townes. But we must breake off this variety, which gladly would keep company with pleasing satiety. Afterwards, when these places were (by little and little) civillized, and reclaimed from rudenelle by men : the study of learning (which is most commendable) began to appeare in some splendour, by the Bards,

Eubages, and Druides. Marcellinus reporteth this of Hercules, agreeing therein with Berofus. For Bero-(w faith, that Galatea (by confent of her parents) was begotten with child by Hercules, at his returne out of Spaine, and that of her was borne Galata, of whome the Gauls received their name Galates. Therfore, the antiquity of the Gaules Discipline and Learning, maketh it felf known by thefe testimonies.

But in what Discipline and Learning perhaps) thou wilt aske me? I answer in Grammar, Rhetoricke, Logicke, Mathe-

of a people, which were Natives of the instructed to reade, and frame Letters: and this Art was fuch from those times, when as the tongues were in their entire condition: and that the neighbouring ftragers had not (as vet) corrupted them. For fo Plate in his Philebens grounded the Greeke Grammar. Heere (me thinkes) I understand in this place, that which many good and learned foirits have questioned to wit, what were the Letters of the Ancient Gaules? Cafar, in his fixt book confirmeth, that they were Greeke Letters. They thought (faith he) that it was ill done, to fet down their disciplines in writing:how- Of the letters best, that almost in all their other affayrs, as Gaules. well common as particular, they vied the Greeke letters. In this place, Gafar fpeak- Cafar in cometh not obscurely, but disertly and plainlv : that the Gaules made vie of the Gre- The Gaules cian Letters, that is to fay, thefe Charra- vied Greeke Gers a. f. y. &c. He deliuereth fom proof Carraders. heereofin the first Book, that in the camp of the Heluctians, there were found little Table bookes, written with Greeke Let- Greek letters ters. Most true it is, Cafar calleth those found in the Greeke Letters, which the Gaulesthen campe of the Heluetians. vied : but I call them Gaul Letters, & will Inl. Cafaria maintaine, that they never came out of Com, lib. I. Greece into Gaule; but on the contrary, that they went out of Gaule into Greece.

As concerning the man, who is fayde to be the first inventer of Letters, verie Of him that great question had beene made thereof: | was the first and Plane hath debated the matter by di- Letters. uerlity of opinions. So that the invention of Letters, is not proper or peculiar vnto any one Nation, according as hee thinketh, but (from all antiquity) they had bin vied. Cadmus (if the booke be true which Cadmus reis allowed to one named Kenophon) as is ported for to bring Letter affirmed by form, was the first that broght from Phani-Letters (to the number of fixteene) from cia into Phanicia into Greece, the which were ve. Greece, and ry like to the Caracters of the Galates and that foundou Maons. Hereby may be coniectured that the calling of Letters came from the Galates vnto the Greekes. Now, finding not onely a verie likely coniecture, but a certaine proof alfo, by the report and account of Times; maintaining, that the discipline of the Theantiquing Semnotheans, or Samotheans, Sarronides, of the Gaule disciplines Druides, and Bardes, did flourish in Gaul for fo many yeares before Cadmus event into Greece: there neede no doubt to bee made, but that the Gaules caracters vvere in vie in Gaule, for so many yeeres before

Chap. 11. And this is that, which Varro (in his fea- | could fpeak it in any mean measure, Heruenth booke of the Latine tongue) maketh openly knowne. For Crates & Greek, had formerly made a Grammarian queftion in Greece, demanding what was the reason why Alpha might not be called Al-The demaund Crates the phatos? The other grammarian Greekes answered: These wordes are none of ours, but are wholly Barbarian. In this place then the Greekes do plainly confesse, that these Letters were none of theirs. And confenting heereto, Aristotle confesseth to his Magitian (according as I have alreadic fayde) That Philosophy received originall Arist in lib. from the Semnotheans, or Samotheans of the de Mag suc-from the Semnotheans, or Samotheans of the cessible 22. Celts. And last of all, that Gaule had bin

I know very well, that Strabo speak-

eth of the Gaules, that they affected the

Greeks: infomuch, that whatfocuer bar-

gaines or convention was made amongst

them, they wrote thereof into Greece,&

that they addicting themselves to the flu-

dy of cloquence, & of Philosophy, as the

Greekes did, kept in pay or wages, pro-

fessors of the liberall Artes, as also they

did the like by Physitians. But Strabo

wrote this of the Masylians, and of their

neighbours, at fuch time as Tiberius held

the Empire, and when the great Lords of

Rome (as himfelfe writeth) caused theyr

children to bee fent no more to Athens,

then they did to Marfeilles, there to fol-

low their studious exercise. It must needs

then be very certaine, that we learned the

Gaules do Ctrine of Dis, Samothes, Sarron,

Druis, Bardus, and those other ancient ma-

sters, when Greece did not fo much as one-

Some may conceit, that we speak of Pa-

radoxes, against all reason: but I cannot

coprehend, why fuch men as have beard

fo many Authours speake, that carry cre=

dite and authority (among all) in other

things, should reproach theyr praises of

their owne Countrey, by a peruerse opi-

understand the Greeke tongue, that they

the Mistris of all Greece.

Mars y erre

Strabo in lib

The aucient famous Vni-uerfity of Marfeilles in

France.

Authours of found autho.

> nion of judgement. But it may bee, that al thefe things do ferue vs to no purpofe, in regard that (concerning this matter) wee may bee preffed with nouell Arguments : because the Gaules (as some will Whether the fay) did fpeake Greeke, therefore did they

ly thinke on Letters.

Gaules Spake Greeke or no make vie also of Greeke Letters. But let me much rather tel them, that in & from the time of Cafar, the Gaules did motfo

in I have Cafar for my warrant : for thus he writeth in his fift Booke. Wee preuailed To farre ((aith hee) with one of the Gaules horsemen, onely by powerfull promises: shat he undertooke to carry a Letter to Cicero, which he had written in Greeke Carracters, to the end, that if it happened into the nemies hand, they might not know our fecrets. Cafar (peaking this, I conclude thereby, that the enemies of Cafar and the Gauls, understood not a letter written in Greek, nor the language thereof.

And hee that will looke a little neerer, That the ponot Grecke.

cannot probably proue to himfelf (thogh | pular Gaules fome others hold it for most certain that vnderstoode the popular Gaules understood any thing in that language; but that the cheefe and principall Heads of each Commonweale knew the Greeke tongue, as now adayes they do the Latine. I fay moreouer, that whofoeuer maketh heedfull observation. will finde, that this cannot any way bee prooued for truth. Because it is most certaine, that in fo great an army of enemies, there must needs be some men of marke, of Townes good store, Nav. that which is more. I have learned of Cafar himselfe. that the woorthy Draides, who were the mafters and Doctors of the Gauls youth, Greek tongue did not know the Greeke tongue. For Diuitiacus, one of the Heduans, according to the testimony of Cicero, was the most learned man amongst the Gaule Druides . The great affection in this Divitiacus, towards the Romane people, the extraordinarie good will which they bare vnto him, the fingular fealty, inflice, tempes rance (as appeareth in the first booke) in this man, was very well knowne voto Car Car. To Cafar I fay, who understood the Greeke tongue fufficiently, and had a de- Gafar fuffici. fire to communicate feeretly (for feare ently vnderleft any thing should be discourred) with Greek tongue Dinitizens, concerning his brother Dumnorix, who was supposed that hee would betray Gafar to his enemies.

Wel then, if Dinitizens had understood the Greeke tongue, as well as Cafax did: could not the one have holpen the other with prinate instructions, in whatfocuer they would have had imparted? But foorning to ferue his turne by ordinary Interpreters (asit appeareth in the verie fame ordinary in hill Booke) Cafar fpake with Damitacus, terpreters. by the meanes of Valerius, Prince of a In'.c.f.in com-

Coun- ment, ub. 1.

Diuitiacus the learnedft man of the Druides

ن الناد،

mo.

Countrey in Gaule. Then there is no ap- | take S. Hierom for their Authour, who gipearance, that Dimitiaeus (although hee was one of the principall Druides) did vnderstand the Greeke tongue, or that it was any way knowne to the Gaules.

Heere I may be demanded, what was What the language of the ancient Gauls wasan regard it was not Grecke.

The Gaules

compel d to

fpeak the Ro

mane tongue.

Lcg:b.4

the speech of the Ancient Gaules, seeing it was not Greeke? I may, and must anfwer, that it was Gaulish : but to render a certaine reply, where the Language of the Gaules hath beene preserued, it requireth the Divination of a Pythian Apollo. Because it is sufficiently knowne, that the Gaules have had time long enough, whereby to vnlearne and loofe their owne Natiue tongue. For not onely Lawes, but the Romane Legions established in Gaule, constrained the Gaules to speake the Romane tongue. And, according as Plate fayth: Ordinarily all other Citizens do follow the manners of them that command them. Therefore, the Romane Lawier, and the Romane Warriour, did quite abolish and extinguish the Gaules Language.

Moreover, the Emperours of Rome, appointed wages ynto fuch men, as made publique profession of teaching the Latine tongue. So that, to this very day the bookes written in this corrupted tongue; fome whereof wee haue yet to fhew, are vulgarly called Romaine, and not Gaulifb.

Some in debating this matter, are of

enough, that thele Suiffes were not the

true Gaules of the Country, neither are : considering, that the ancient Heluctians

(thut vppe by Cafar within their owne

mountaines) were afterward expelled

thence (according to Entropius) by the *

Quades; and finally, the Quades them-

selucs, thrust out by the Allemaignes . At

length the *Vites, a people amongest the Saxons, possessed themselves of the Hel-

uetians Countrey whereupon the Suitois

(that is to fay) Suiffes , were called , ac-

cording to the opinion of Beatus Rhena-

That the Suif opinion, that the Language of the Suiffes yet fpeak fes, that hold (at this day) the dwelling of the ancient the Heluetians, are they that speak the an-Language of cient Gaulish tongue. But we know well

Teaching the

pu likely, re-warded.

Of the ancieng Helueti-

"A people of Bohemia.

A Saxon people.

> nu, by a Name somewhat neere vnto the Vitois. Others are of the minde, that the language which the Germaines now adayes speake, is that of the ancient Gaules, and

ueth affurance, that in his time the Galates or Galatians of Afia, spake the same language which the Treuirians (dwelling on the Rheine) now doe. But Cafar feemeth to avouch the contrary writing in his first Booke, that Arionistus King of the Arionistus K Germaines, by long vie(as fome have conicctured by this place) of fourteen yeers, did speake the Gaulish tongue. And in the time of Saint Hierome, there were other Treuirians in Gaule, that were subiects to the Romane Empire: and now in our time alfo, there are other that speake the fame speech, as the other Germaines doc.

There remaineth yet another opinion amongst learned men; who do judge, that Gaule Armothe language of the ancient Gaules, is that Britaine. which was vied in Gaule Armorica, that is Britaine at this day. But they do not hold the French History to be true, that makes the Britaines to come out of the Isle of Britaine, into Gaule Armorica: confidering, that Cafar (as I have already faide) maketh great Britaine it felfe to be a Colonic of the Gaules, and that Strabo maketh mention of a Towne or Cittie, called Britaine, which is in Amorica; and Plim (though verie confusedly) numbereth | Plin, in Lib. 1: the Britaines in Gaule : and Cornelius Tacitus in the life of Agricola writeth, That the necrest shores of the Ile were impeached by the Gaules, & that their language was but little different. Finally, the learned men of this Isle, imagined (for this Of the welft reason) that the Welshmen of England, land. had fome conninence in speech with our Britaines. Therefore this is the only opinion, which (as yet) I know, to holde any good reason, or descruing to be approoued. And this is the Grammar of the Gaules, both in writing and speech.

But what was that of the Britains, and O. the difeithat of the Germaines? The Discipline of Britains, and the Gaules (faith Cafar) mus first invented Gaules. in great Britaine, as hath bene esteemed : and Iulius Cafa from shence transported into Gaule. And at this day, such as would know it most diligently, they go thither (oftentimes) to learne It. This passage sheweth sufficiently, that the discipline betweene the Britaines and Gaules, was al one. If we understand also, that Cafar maketh great Britaine as desceded of the Gaules, & that they of the Brittains were most human which were Gauls.

lul.Lafar in comment. Lib 1

rilme

Great Britain affirmed by Cafar to be a

Corn Tacitus in lib.2.cap: 1.

> Of the Bard and Poets amongst the Gaules:and in what reue were efteen

> > Strabe in tib.

The studies of

the Rhetorick

Diedor in lib.

The discipline it is verily to be credited, that Discipline of the Britain parted from Gaule, to come thither. This place may suffice generally for al the do-Ctrine of the Britaines. Concerning the Germaines, there is

scarsly any one word . The men and Wo-

men (faith Tacitus) were equally ignorant

in the fecrets of Letters . The Germaines

then wholly, had not any Letters or Dif-

ciplines. Eneus Sylvius gineth affurance,

that in the time of Adrian, civility and

Letters came into Germany. The Ger-

maines themselves do hold, that it is not

vet eight hundred yeares, fince their lan-

gnage began to be written; and that (with

Christian Religion) the Muses came in-

to Germany; where both in publique Schooles, and by learned professors, they

haue so prospered, that the nation (which

all Nations else had formerly in detesta-

tion for fauage barbaroufnes:) hath fince

then, in all civility, in all gentlenesse and

humanity of all disciplines, conferred

with the most learned and best lettered

Nations whatfocuer, and for the priority

But what were the studies of the Rhe-

toricke Gaules ? Affuredly, they were

very highly and honourably effectived:

yet more for a fetled speech, confishing of

measure, then in profe. The Gaules had

(faith Diodorus in his fixt Booke) Poets of

melodie, which they called Bards. Thefe

men, with a Musicall instrument, as with

the Lyre or Harpe, fang some mens prai-

fes, and others imperfections. He further

ffiarmeth in the same place, that Poets

were in fuch reuerend respect amongest

them, that when Armies were in ran-

ged battaile, hauing their Swordes and

Bowes ready drawne, and approaching

to finite one another: not onely friends.

but meere enemies (if these men once did

steppe betweene them) were faine to

make an end of all fighting. In like man-

ner, among the most fauage Barbarians,

anger was compelled to yeelde to wife-

dome, and Mars gladly renerenced the

Muses. Likewise, Strabo in his fourth

Booke, speaketh of the Bardes, as being

Poets, and fingers of praifes. The Po-

et Lucane alfo. in the first of his Pharsalia. speaketh thus in commendation of the

Gaulith Poets.

in this commendation.

Of the Germains. Cornelius Taciins, ubi supra Eners Sylvius

and Gaules al

Chap.11.

concerning the Germans and their for mer barba

You Poets, Bards, that of those valiant souls, Dring in warres, do Caroll their renowne. Know how teternize to perpetuall worlds Their endlelle praile: Many (weet sones you (fing.

Morcouer, Marcellinus in his filte Macel. in lib. 1 Booke, speaking of the Gaules, hath these words : The Bards fung to the Harp, which they touched very pleasingly : declaring the famous actes of illustrious men, their Songs being composed in heroycall verses. The Romaines followed this example of the The Romains Bardes, and they (according as Cato hath initated the written in his Booke of Originals) had a lards in fingcustome to fing at banquets, the vertues of famous and renowned men, euermore conforming their voices with fuch as did play on Instruments.

Heereby therefore, we may wel perceyue, how highly Poelie was honoured and authorized by the Ancient Gaules. This argument putteth mee in minde of Greece, and other Homer and Heliodus, thee vaunting of them, that they were in as great honour and estimation amongst Bards and the Greekes. This then was their Rheto- Poets. ricke, and (as Pomponius Mela fayeth) This was the eloquence which the auncient I baseps. Gaules had.

But what was that of the Germaines? Although they were ignorant (as hath bene formerly declared) in the mysteries and fecrets of Letters; yet notwith flanding, as Tacitus anoucheth, they celebrated in ancient Canticles and Songes, the memory of their Gods and Kings. And this was the only maner of their Annals, & of the Antiquity which they had : for I finde nothing more, concerning the Difcipline of the ancient Germaines.

Now, what was the Logick of the ancient Ganles? I finde in Calar one only que- The Logicke flion, concerning the meanes & manner Gaules. which ought to be followed in the inftru- Int. Cofar in Ction of youth. All the noble and liberall Com. lib. 4. Arts were to be learned in written books: the maisters of those Arts, interpreting the to their schollers, & the schollers pra-Clifing to vaderstand them. Many times Difficulties fome great difficulty would arife, about arifing about the entertaining of mens authority; whole men of autho-Bookes were propounded to youth: be- written works cause those men, although they were more excellent then other men, yet notwithstäding being no more but men, they

Greece te-

The Rheroricke vied among the Germeines, in lib.5.c.9.

vvould

That the Ger maines Language was the olde Gaulish tongue.

The memory

Arts taught by voice or tongue, without writing.

Inftructions giuen vnto youth by wordof mouth Inl.Cafar in Com. lib. 6

Two especials ged by Catar concerning influction.

a.Reafons of the Druides.

Pithagoras 8 Socrates lefte nothing writ

would sometimes dreame, and quite forget themselues. Whereby ensued, that their writings passing as valuersall, they proued many times vocafie to be explained. Contrarywife, without any writing, but by the voice onely, an infinite number of Arts and Sciences (belonging to Mechanicall men (as Laborers, Maions, Marriners, and fuch like) were foone apprehended: and there arose no repugnancie or doubt of their words, neyther any difficulty of their intention when as they were vnderstoode. There was no other maxime of these Arts, but what vse and profit had approoued. Then those Doctors and professors were not woont to write of any discipline : but al that they delinered to youth, they taught onely by word of mouth. Yet notwith Handing, being guided by other reasons, they made Conscience (as Iulius Casar sayeth in the fixt Booke) to fet downe their disciplines

in writing.
Well then, if we vrge a question (in this case) to Casar, thus will he shape vs an answer. It appeareth to me, that for two reasons, they established this decree among st them. First because they would not have their disciplines imparted unto popularitie. Next least fuch as learned them, trusting to writing only: would make the leffe account of retuning them in their memory. For many times it happened, that the more part, by vfing continuall recourfe to books became flothfull in Learning truely, or kept retention of any thing thewn voto them. And thefe two reasons were likewise alledged by the Druides, for not committing their Disciplines to writing, & thefe causes have beene approoued by the very cheefest Philosophers of Greece. For, in ancient time, this was the aduice of Pythagoras; and (after him) of Socrates, both which left not one Letter in writing. The opinion of Socrates, to this purpole, is am-

ply declared by Plato to Phadrus, in this Conference which So= crates had with Phadrus.

CHAP. XII.

A Dialogue or Communication between Socrates and Phadrus, concerning what great difference there is between the excellent Art of Memory, and matters reeistred downe by writing.



Ocrares. It remaineth now to speake of the fitnesse or Of the fitnes withings of writing. Vyhether the doing thereof bee well or ill, is not that the

question? Phadrus. Yes, that is our argument.

Socrates. Knowest thou, that in dooing or ordaining it, as concerning present acceptable to speech, thou mayest thereby be accepta- the Gods. ble to the Gods?

Phadrus. Not I, but thou doeft. Socrates. I have heard of our Elders, that they knew the trueth, and if wee out felues could finde it, ought we not henceforward, to bee verie carefull of mens o-

pinions ? Phadrus. This is to laugh at thine owne demands but tel vs that, which thou

favefl thou haft heard. Socrates. I have heeretofore heard, that neere vnto " Naucratis which is in E- knownen B gypt, there was fometimes one of the an- gypt. cient Gods, who was named Theuthates, and to him, the Bird tearmed Bis or Ibis, was facred. Moreover, that hee was the first inuenter of numbers, and of Icat, as alfo of Dice and Letters, and of Astrono- bers, let, Geo my and Geometry. At that time, Thaumas was king of all Egypt, making his abi- and Letter. ding in a great City of the higher Countrey, which the Greeks called the Egyptian Thebes, and that Ammon or Hammon was then their God . Theuthates beging come to this King, he shewed and declared to him, that hee must instruct the Egyptians in difciplines. Whereon the King demanded of him, concerning the the Egyptian profite that would enfue thereby to any

one; and according as Theuthates (hould

feeme to fpeake ill or yvell, fo would hee

blame, or else give commendation. It is

favde, that betweene Thaumas and Theu-

Whether wri

*A City well

The inventi-

Chap..12 thates many things were debated, which wold require too long time to discourse, but when they came to diffute about Letters. Sir (faid Theuthates) this discipline will make the Egyptians very wife, and prompt of memory : for this is the onely Medicine found out for memory and knowledge. Whereto the other replyed: O most ingenious and fubtle Theuthatec, the one is most apt to performe the workes of Art, and the other knowes best how to judge. what harme or benefite their vse may bring. But thou, the Father of letters, being carried by thine own affection, main-

tained the contrary of their effect. For

hast not then found out a medicine for

Letters enemy to the me mory & the reason why.

*A Citty in

which was a

ted to lupiter

Concerning the custructi-

on of letters

or benefit

might enfuc by them.

letters caufeth forgetfulnes in the mindes of firch as learne them, because they make no reckoning of fludying by memory; for they trusting to the marks of exterior writing, doe forfake inward recordation, which is the very foule of memory. Thou

memory, but for forgetfulneffe, and thou can't not teach thy Schollers the truth of knowledge and vinderstanding, but of Opinion. For, they having comprehended great store of things, and vvithout a Matter, they will perfwade themselues to know enough; and yet notwithstanding Diffrence be-(commonly) they are exceeding ignotween know. edge an to pinion therof. rant in the greater part, proouing to bee offensive and troublesome in mens company and frequentation, as beeing more full of opinion of knowledge, then of true

knowledge indeede. Phadrus. Thou canst easily (O Socrates) imagine the humor of the Egyptians, or of any fuch nation, as feemeth good to thy felfe.

Socrates. My friend, it is held by fome, that in ancient times, Oakes did speake those prophetics which were in the Temple of Inpiter * Dodonaus. For through Chaonia,nere the rudenesse and ignorance of old men wood dedication those times, who had not then attained to the knowledge which now your yonger dayes haue done: it was fufficient for them, to heare an Oake, or a Stone speak, fo long as they fpake trueth. It may bee thou conceineft, that fome peculiar interest should bee placed in judgement, how, or of what country he was, that hath spoken any thing of this nature, without confideration, whether it were for or

Phadrus. Trucky, thou haft very juftly

reproued me: but for the order of disciplines, I am of the same minde as Thau-

Socrates. Then whofoeuer thinketh, that Arte can fo well fette downe it felfe, hath exceeor comprehend by writing, as if there ded all matter fee downe in writing, or affured writing. by writing; that man should ill learne, and bee ignorant in the Oracle of Ammon, making more effective of reasons fette downe in writing; then of knowing and retayning that which is writ-

Phadrus. Thou fayeft very well.

discourse set downe in writing, should

speake of it selfe. But, if having a defire

to learne, thou come and demand fome-

thing of it, concerning that which it

should say; it continueth filent, yet figni-

fying one and the same thing. For after

and for fuch as vnderstand it not; and no

one can fay, to whom it is most conveni-

ent, and to whom not. And if it hap-

pen to be injuriously dealt withall, it will

alwayes stand in need of his fathers help :

because it is not able to revenge any

Socrates. O Phadrus, writing hath a great matter in it, and (in very truth) carrieth fome refemblance with painted Writing comcreatures, for fuch works feeme as if they ted figures or had life : but if thou demand any question portrainures of them, they hold their peace with great that can freak modelly. They inspected all and the modelly such instance and and the modelly such in modesty. Thou imaginest also, that a

that a discourse is set downe in writing, it Writing is in carrieth it felfe alike equally to all men: it felfe equally to all men: and alike to both for the learned which understand it, all men.

wrongs received, nor yet to right it Phadrus. Hitherto thou hast spoken most trucky.

Socrates. Doe wee not then perceiue, how another discourse maketh it felfe, pated the brewhich is Brother to this we talke of, and much more it excelleth both in power & dignity ?

Phadrus. What is thy meaning ? And what is that which (thou faich) maketh it felfe?

Socrates. It is that, which (with know - The excellenledge) writeth it selfe in the spirit of him that apprehendeth: for it can after reuenge voon it felfe, knoweth it felfe, and when and how to speake, or to bee

Phadras. Thou speakest the lively and foule-like discourse of him that knowes &

Speaking rether to writing

42

Writing the image of fpe

A pleafant witty quefti.

ry good pur

The feedes of

wifedom haue

their due fea-

Matters fet

ing,cannot atterward be holpen with words,

downe in wri

vnderstandeth; and (by good right) that \ which is written, may tearme it felfe (in fome refrect) to be his image.

Socrates. Tell mee then, in good fadnesse, if a wife husbandman take delight to beholde his feedes, whereof he is carefull, and defireth to gather fruite; will he fowe them at Spring time, in the Gardens of Adonis, where hee shall see them budde foorthat eight dayes following; or, when hee goeth about fuch bufineffe; shall he scatter them iestingly, as after the manner of a holy day sport? When hee hath taken paines to fowe his feede, according as hee ought to do, and answerable to the Att of Husbandry: he suppofeth it sufficient for him, if in the space of eight moneths after the feed time is past, they doe thrine, and come to their matu-

Phadrus. The wife Husbandman, (O Socrates) will doe as thou haft fayde; but the idle and negligent foole hath no fuch care.

Socrates. Shall we then fav.that a man who hathknowledge and experience in that which is just, honest, and good, will be leffe carefull of his feede feafons, then an Husbandman?

Phadrus. No.

Socrates. He will not then write down the feedes of his penne with Inke, fovving them there amongst his Discourses, as if he did a matter of great importance: because hee cannot then helpe them with his wordes, neither can hee demonstrate the truth so exquisitely as it should

Phadrus. Nor can they make any proof of themselues.

Socrates. No truely : but he shall foweand verite (as it is in reason) in meere sportfull manner, and vyhole Gardens of Letters. But, when he maketh memories, as certaine Treasures, to the end that they may not fall into Oblinion, as well for himselfe, as also for the first that will followe the same example: hee taketh delight in beholding their tender byrthes; and, while others doe addicte themselues vnto other Recreations, as to Feafts, sports, and the like pleasures; leauing all these heedefull matters behinde them; hee shall passe on all his leysures, taking great delight in his owne discour-

Phadrus. O Socrates, thou speakest of a most true pastime indeede, in steade of that which is of finall valew, and woorth nothing: when a man delighteth in ferious Discourse, he shall ruminate on Iunister of iuflice, and all those other especiall matters flice. by thee remembred.

This was the opinion of Socrates, which was much more sweete and humaine, then that of our Druides. Socrates alwayes preferred knowledge, confisting in memorie and living wordes, before that of the dead Letter : neuertheleffe, hee allowed veriting to bee but as help to forgetfulneffe.I could wish that this Opinion had beene as pleasing vnto the Druides; for then, wee should have had no neede of straungers goodes, as to borrow any thing of the Greekes, but continued fatisfied with our owne countryes aboundance. Neyther by meanes of the Latines and Greek, sshould we have learned disciplines by paine and studye, after studies of the nature of other straunge Languages: but with great pleasure and contentment ofminde, wee should have suckt them as elsewhere. milk from our nurses brests. All the youth of a man, albeit study were sharpe thereto should not so hardly have spent it selfe in learning Grecke and Latine Letters; yet seeming but as an enterance into the common rode way of liberal studies, whe we rather should have runne out our full course so the end. A long and laborious guage., irketime of studye year required in apprehending the Greeke and Latine tongues, to understand Homer, Demosthenes, Virgil, Cicero and others: whereas contrary-wife, without trauaile, and with exceeding delight, we might have fung the Hymnes & Poems of our Bardes, having(naturally) the true vnderstäding both of their words

The loue which they bare vnto theyr countrey, and to vertue it felfe, was ouerabounding in fenerity. For, our Druides fought all meanes, vyhereby to make their countrey Gaule surpasse all other Nations, not only in actions of Armes, but in the honor of Disciples, and in coueting to banish idlenesse from the Gaules mindes; they disinherited their posterity, of their most rich and vnualewable patrimony of ancient disciplines. In the doing wherof they buried in perpetuall oblinion, the Gaules rare Arts and Doctrines, which they had

and fense.

Serious Dif-

Chap...3

The Gaules

& disciplines

Iul Cef.in com-men. lib y

Dis,Sarron,

la(eph,in lih,1 de Autiquit,

Two Pillars

The Gaules their owne. without need

ftrange Lan-

The Druides affection to and vertue,

a hope, should have lived and flourished for euer, only by the meanes of hindring writing. But in vaine do we now make our complaints: neuerthelesse, sorrow remaineth still with vs. to wish (how vainely foeuer) that it had beene fo. And vndoubtedly (in this case) they might justly accuse the vilenesse of the Romane ambition, which vtterly ruined the Schooles of the Druides. Wee may therefore fay with the Poet.

We ought to mourne, or all these mortall things May touch their hearts.

CHAP. XIII.

A further addition to the Artes and Sciences, taught among the Gauls, by their Druides, Bardes, and learned men, according to the instification of diners, good Au-thors: and what religious Ceremonious orders they observed.

VT let vs come to the Mathematicall Artes, whereof Cafar speaketh, when he saiteth. They made very many disputes of the Starres, and at

their motion; of the greatnesse of the world, and of the earth, and concerning the nature of things. Queftionleffe, thefe were their ancient disciplines, left from the father to the fonne by Dis Sarron, and Druis: which they themselves preserved carefully, hauing received them (from hand to hand) of their grave Auncestors. For Infephus, in the first booke of the Iewes Antiquities, testifieth, concerning the ancient Fathers before the flood, that they had obferued those Mathematicall considerations. And because they would hinder the loffe of fo noble inventions, or perifling by the inundations of the waters: they engraued them voon two Collombes or Pillars, the one whereof was of moulded engraue with Mathematical earth, and the other of stone. And this was thus done, that if that of earth should chance to be defaced by the flood: yet the other of stone might remaine intire, and yeeld men means to apprehend what was engrauen thereon. The same Author

witneffeth, that the fame Pillar of stone

was to bee feene in Syria, in the time of Velbafian. Eulebius likewise reporteth. Eufeb. in Hift. how the Egiptians learned them of Abray Ecclelib. 32.5 ham; and that the Greekes afterward, did fet downe those Artes in writing, & then published them . But our Drudes (as I have formerly faide) gave them to posterity, according as they had received them. from the hands of their fathers; disputing many matters, touching the Starres, and their continuall motions.

Mela alfo writeth, that the Druides Pomponius Memade profession, concerning the motion lambia scapes. of Heauen, and of the Startes. Astrology was fuch a thing, as it could not any way be taught or learned, except (before of Afrology, hand) a man had fludied Arithmeticke & andhouse Geometry. For the calculation of the ted by the motions, they flood in neede of the ac- Druiden counts of Arithmatick; and the distances and intervalles of the Starres, must needs passe themselves by the figures of Geometry. Therefore the Druides, making profession of enstructing Astrology; taught (first of all) Arithmetick and Geometry, which are Arts that make Astrologie to be understood.

Berofus theweth, that there was fome mulicke in the Hymnes and Poems of the Bardes. Among the Celts (faith he) a Barde was much renowned, for the innention of Sones and Mulique. The Druides difputed many things, concerning the greatnes of the world and the earth: This was the greatnesse and forme of the world and earth, which Mela fayeth, the Druides Pomponius Me. taught: This was their Cosmography & Geography, and the Druides diffuted diuers things of that nature. As, what was the length of the world, from the Sunnes fetting in the West, to his rising in the disputation red among the Druder. Equator or Equinoctial circle, to both of the world the one and other Pole: how great were carth, & beathe distances of the fine Zones, from the Pole, to farre as the imallest circle thereof even to the Tropick, and then from the Tropicke to farre as the Equator, which is in the midit: what were the Zones of the earth, which are assigned and subjected to the Celestiall Zones: which of the were inhabited, and defert, by reason of cold or heate, and which were temperate:

And how Europe, Afia, and Affrica were divided, and separate one from another. Their questions of Phylick, were con-

Berofus in lib. 1.

Bardesamone the Celts.

The divers the Druides,

Memories are faid to be the rich treasures of mans life,

and the best

to be learned

The questions of Physicke, among the Gaules.

Strabe in Lib.4.

Marcel:in l.s.

Two famous Philosophers among the immortall by Cicero him-

Cicero in lib. 4.de offic.

A fearthing out of natura things,or a realoning of the nature o any thing.

* A king of Galatia, who Cicero defen ded, being acconspired Calass death

Cicero in lib. ubi supra,

cerning Principles, that is to fay, the matter and forme of things: as Fire, Ayre, Water Earth. Whence all things were engendred; how they perished, augmented decreased altered and moued. The professours (among the Gaules) of these fo feuerall doctrines : are called by Strabo. Poets, or Prophets, who, ouer and befide other things, concerning Phylicke, principally taught this Oracle, proper to the Country: That the world must sometime perilb by fire and by water. The fame Do-Cours are called (by Marcellinus) Eubages. The Eubages (faith hee) feeking into the very highest or deepest parts of the earth; laboured to discouer the secrets of the. These thy a testimony, he preserved the memory to Cicero. noble disciplines then, were wont to bee taught of the Gaules, and in the Gaules language onely.

Heere we may not omit, to remember two most excellent Philosophers among them; that were commended, yea, and confecrated to immortality, by the words of Cicero . The one was Dinitiacus, (of who wee have fooken already) Prince of the Heduans : the other was Deiotarus; King of the Gaules in Afia. Speake then noble Cicero, and remember vs of our famous Druides. In Gaule there were of the Druides among whom, I my felfe knew Diuitiacus the Heduan as the man that received me into his house, and made account of mee. This man made his vaunt, that hee knew the reason of Nature which the Greekes named Physiologia; and could speake of things to come partly by Augurie, and partly by coniectures. This Divitiacus (as it is very likely) was the Holle to Cicero, by reason of the Druides knowledge which was in him. But what doth he fay of * Deiotarus? How is it that this Oratour commendeth him? But wherein (faith he) /hall I make mention of king Deiotarus, that most famous dy right worthy personage our Hoste, that never did any thing, but with preface? For, when hee was returned from a volage, which hee had formerly purposed and resolved to make : the Chamber wherein hee should have lodged (if he had continued his journey) fell downe the might enfuing. And therfore as I have oftentimes heard from himfelfe, hee made many pauses and returnes from that one voiage albeit he proceeded in many other beside. Cicero fpeaking further of the fame man, faieth. Hee performed one very notable acti-

the Tetrarches, wherof he was dishostested by Cafar and condemned to pay a great funime of money. He faide, hee did not repent him-Celfe for not crediting fuch Auguries as happened to him when hee went towards Pompey, having maintained with his forces, the authority of the Senate, and liberty of the Romane people, with the dignity of the Empire. And that the Birds (to whose augurie hee gaue faith) had well councelled and aduited him : yet nat with standing , hee made much to Deiotarn more precious and decre esteeme of his honour, then he did of all his goods and posses ons. These are the words of learned Cicero. to whom both Gaule and Galatia are Gaule & Gafor euer beholding: because, by so wor- latia indebted

of 2. fuch famous Philosophers of theirs. But what shall I most preferre in this place if not our fighes and teares, as true witnesses of our misery? Hecretofore, Gaule com-Gaule commanded ouer the Italians and Grecians, and, insted of the goods of Fortune, which are but of small worth, and gine to men as stipendary wages: the gaue them the goods of the minde in recompence, which were (indeede) much more precious. Greece and Italy vaunted very proudly, because they had Mathematirians and Philosophers : but that glory was (formerly) ours; those praises distilled from our Fountaines: which did meerely dry vp themselues, because they would not rampier and defend their owne power by writing. For Gaule might hauchad Gaulish Euclides, Ptolomies, Platoes, Aristotles, and others befide, farre more excellent men then all they were. But let vs ceasse our bootlesse complaints, & come now to the Theology or Divinity of the

The Druides (about all things elfe) The Divinity would have men to beleeve, that their vied among foules could not die: but that (after death) the Gauliffi they departed out of one body, & entred mens foules into another. The reason of this their opi- could not die nion was that it was the only encouragement to vertue, because seare of death was thereby held in high contempt. I fet downe this their perswasion of immortality as the principall foundation of the Gaules Religion and Theologie, which the Greekes and Latines did enviously celebrate. The Gaules (fayeth Diodorus) Diod in Libis, after their repaltes and feeding, had a cu- cap. 3. on when he came backe from the kingdome of Stome, to defie one another unto the Com-

ters cast into fires that burned dead bo car.7.

manded over

The pride of Italy, yet prothe Gaules.

bate, without making any reckoning of their | Cafar also held, to wit: that by the conlines, for the opinion of Pythagoras premaiimmortall and that after the death of the body, within a certaine while they came againe into other bodies . And for this cause, some Written Letwould cast written Letters into heapes of wood, prepared as bon-fires to burne mens bodies in, as if the dead were there to reade

Strabo in Lib. 2 them. Strabo affirmeth as much. They were perswaded (sith he) that mens soules were not subject to corruption or mortality.

Pomponius Me-Lin lib.4.64.1.

Death freely

and volunta-

rily imbraced

The words of

oules immor-

The error of

the Greekes

and Latines.

concerning the Gaules,

which were o

more antiqui

ty then Pytha

by the Dru-

Chap.12.

eternall, and that the dead lined another life. Whereupon, when they burned dead bodies, or buried them, the whole account of their former lives negotiations was interred with the, was to be redemanded of them. Some were found, that voluntarily, and with their owne good will, would throw them felues into flaming fires and burned fuch things as neerest and deerest appertained to them, even as if

tempt of death, the Gaules might make led with them: That the foules of men were themselves the more couragious, and valiantly disposed to warre: and it is very likely, that the contempt of death, whereof we have formerly spoken, proceeded from hence.

Valerius Maximus, in his second booke, Valerimanin maketh this relation. I bethinke me (faith lub.s. he) of the ancient manner of the Gaules, who are faide to have a custome, to lend out monies, to be repaied them againe when they wer Pomponius Mela writeth thus. There in the lower regions. For they held it as a was one thing which the Druides helde and | matter most infallible, that the foules of men maintained, to encite men (thereby) with the were immortall: and I (bould have reputed better will to warre: That mens loules were thefe men feolifh but that the Bracchates likewife held the fame opinion, which Pythagoras * Pallium did . Such a number of Authors then, doe confent with Cafar, con- the Latine cerning the opinion which the Gaules word Palliaespecially, if any thing had beene borrowed, it had, of immortality. And heere I may not negligently let passe, that these Authors (about all things elfe) do refuse to confesse, that the Gaules were the first fathers of Philosophy. Pythagoras maintained, that the foules of men were immorthey were to line with them . Mela reportall, and Plato (following him) faieth the weare. teth thus of them, wherein we may note fame. It is also the opinion of the Phithe fame reason of this perswasion, which losopher, which Ouid remembreth.

> Mens foules are exempt from death, And leaving their first lodeines : Live alwaies in new dwellings, Where they have fresh entertaiment.

This (I fay) was the judgement of Pythagoras, from whence enfued, that the Gauls (by report of the Greekes and Latines) were made Pythagoriam, and fo meerely borrowed this opinion of immortality. But to thew of what great ambition this error is. the filliest indeement may cafilie apprehend: in that, for a long time before Pythagogorus was borne, this opinion of the Druides lived among the Gaules . Wherefore, I may very well affure that which hath formerly beene proposed: that Greece was not Schoole-miffreffe to Gaule, but rather her scholler. Neuerthelesse, the Gaules did not allow of that " Metemplycholis, that is to fay, the changing of foules, which Pythieoris tionor pallage maintained as passing out of humane bodies, into other of brute beasts: For they of the foule did not believe, that of men they became beatts, but that they were made men again, de to another in other bodies. The Poet Lucane affirmeth the fame.

> - According as you fay. Those hadowes goe not into the filent dwellings Of deepelt Erebus, or the pale Country Of King Pluto beneath, The felfe fame (pirit enters Into another body : And of long life Led in another world, you fine most truely.

Other points f the Gouls religion.

Proceede we now to other points of the Gaules religion. They disputed very much, concerning the power and might of the immortall Gods, and made profession (as

Pallium, for lay, as clothed with a Robe, um,& which

phers vied to

Transmiera-

I wean: n lib. 3.

Chap. 14.

comment Lih

Strabo in Lib.

Ротр**ен**ім Ме la in libi 4 £ 19.

Mela faith) to know what the Gods would have them to do. They adored the Gods. Mercury, Apollo, Minerua, Jupiter and Mars, holding almost the very same opinion. which other nations did to wit: That Mercury was the inventer of Artes, and a guide to men on their wayes and voyages: That he could helpe much in the gayning of monie, and in the affaires of Merchandize, being such as the Poet feigneth him.

Mercury reputed to bee the God of Meffages, and the inventer of Artes,as to trauellers in their journice

He spake the word, and the God Messenger, Immediately was ready to be gone. He fast ened to his feete his light wingd plumes, Which at his heeles do beare him through the windes, Mounting and falling with their nimble flight: One while on Land, and then upon the waves. He tooke his Rod and with that powerfull Rod. He Summond up aloft pale meager Ghosts, From the fad bades, or elfe doth fend them thither. And therewithall he doth controle our forts. Waking or fleeping, he commandeth all: And some into eternall sleepe to fall.

Marcel: in lib: S £4P.7.

For this Rod of his, was taken to be the power of Artes, the guide to trauellers on the way, and the rich gaine of Merchants. Iulius Cafar made his prayers to Mercurie. (and as Marcellinus faith) he was reputed to bee the most sudden fense in this worlde. that moueth our thoughts, according to the doctrine of those Divines. This was the power which the Druides gaue to Mercurie. As for that of Apollo, he was faid to cure & helpe diseases and sicknesse; as the God testifieth of himselfe in Ouid.

> Physicke is mine, and through the Vniuerse Men call to me for succour in distresse. The vertue of all hearbs to me is subject.

morph.Lub.4

Onidiin Meta

Minerua the Goddeffe of all ingeniou deuiles

The power lupiter and Mars in thei feuerall con ditions

Diedor, in lib.

Cruelty exemplified by rhe ancient Romanes.

thus: That thee gaue the determination of all workes and cunning deuifes. Whervpon the Poets feigned, that the was bred and borne in the braine of her father Iupiter. They were perswaded also, that Jupiter had command ouer all the other Gods, and that Mars gouerned in warres: to whom oftentimes they made vowes (when they had determined to give the enemy battaile) of all fuch things as they should take in fight. And if they won the day, they would facrifice all fuch Beafts as were taken, and bring away all the rest as booty. Diodorus relating almost the very fame, faith farther; that they facrificed their prisoners and captines to the Gods. But you wil fay that this example was too cruell. I confesse as much but must answer ve withall : that it was borrowed from the ancient Romanes, who wold put to death in their prisons, the very brauest & most valiant Captaines of their enemies. And many times for a publike spectacle, and before the common people, they were

The might of Minerua, they held to be I woured by them in cruell manner. Some of the Gauls did burne in their facrifices. fuch Beafts as were taken for booty, and (with them) did put the enemy to death,

or elfe torment him with other paines. The Celts had an admirable and particular observation in their Temples, to cast or spreed abroad a great deale of their of the Celto in their Temples. tion very greedy and couctous: vet notwithstanding, there was neuer found any man, among the rudest inhabitants of the country, that durft fo much as touch one pecce thereof, fuch was their respect and reuerence to Keligion . Neuertheleffe, fuch offrings may (perhaps) feeme more proper and convenient for Mars : beeing proper and contenent for Mars: Deeing Names gluen called (in ancient times) by the Greeke to Mars, by Poets, The plague of men, or the Murderer, the ancient And yet fuch ceremonies also were common, and yled in the facrifices of other Gods. The whole nation of the Gaules. (as Cafar affirmeth) were greatly addicted to Religion, and by this occasion, such men, lib 6. as were vexed with any greenous difeagiuen as a prey to wilde Beafts, to be de- fes, or they that were in warre, or in any

An especiall

Apollo taken to be the God of Physicke.

their oblations & offerings, or else made vowes of fuch facrifices. For they held a seuere opinion, that if for the life of one man, the life of another was not justly rendred: it was impossible to appeale the anger, or fatisfie the will of the immortall Gods. And fuch manner of facrifices wer Religious fa-crifices inftipublikely instituted, as truely declaring admirable Religion, and meruailous perfwasion of the Gods might and power; whereof the Greeke Authors made not a iote leffe account and estimation.

CHAP, XIIII.

Of the Diunation wied by the Sarronides, who were a kinde of Philosophers among the ancient Gaules their manner of oblations and facrifices : As alfo of their fels, charmes and incantations.

tuted pub-

Philosophers and Divines called Sarro-

A firange ob-

the Sarro.

lodorus further faveth, that Diuines, were held in great honour & reucrence among them, whom they tearmed

Sarronides, that yfed divination: and because they fore-tolde things that were to come, as well by auguries, as facrifices: they were highly effected of them, but especially of the common people, who performed great reuerence to them. And when they held any councell, concerning matters of import and confequence: they observed a very admirable custome, and almost incredible. For they would cut the quired. throte of a man, and when he fell downe; eyther by the manner of his fall, or feparation of his members, or fluction of his blood by a long and ancient observation) they attained to the knowledge of future things. Their custome also was neto their Gods, they yfed an impiety anuer to make any facrifice, without the (werable to their beftiall nature. For after presence of some Philosophers: as holthey had kept (for the space of fine whole ding opinion, that facrifices ought to bee yeares) fuch as were attainted and conperformed by such men, as participated ninced of notorious crimes: they would in the divine nature, and came neerest to foir them on flakes, from the fundament the Gods. For by the prayers of fuch men, they were perswaded, that good fortune and fucceffe thould be defired of the Gods, and their councell also to be ehigh piles of wood, and putting fire to specially vsed, both in the times of peace them; this was the manner of their in-

other perill of life: did facrifice men as 1 and warre. Heereto may be referred that which Cafar faith, in the fift Book of his warres in Gaule . Wholoeuer came latelt to the affembly made in Armes; beeing first afflicted with divers torments, was afterward put to death before the whole multitude. Moreover, Strabo faith, that they would fasten a man vnto a Crosse in their Temple, and there shoote him to death

med of Twigs and Ofiers, which beeing

they dyed most miserably. Beside, they

imagined, that the punishments of such

as were apprehended for robberies and

thefts, or any fuch like offences; were most

pleasing to the immortall Gods, & these

they made most vie of in those Idols. No-

uertheleffe, for want of fuch offenders.

they made no difficulty, in putting honeil

and innocent persons to the same atflicti-

on, whenfocuer neede and occasion re-

tues, laying. They builded a Colopius of wood,

many parts whereof, were enterlaced with

Straw: and therein they burned all kindes of

Realts, and men alfo among them. But Dio-

with Arrowes.

The fame Author, agreeing with Pof- Peffidonius in fidonius and Artemidorus, faith, there were Lib. 2 certaine Bacchanalles, which dwelt in an ib.4. Island, neighbouring to the Riner of Loyre, and of certaine Auguries done by them, according as two white Crowes mooued their right wings, which neuertheleffe is reputed to be fabulous. There-

ans oblerued, in the honour of Ceres and that part of Proferpina. Cafar pursuing the felfe-tame Thrace, wher Hebrusicaleth occasion, saieth, that there were others, into the Acwho had Idols of immeasurable height, grum Sea. the members of whose bodies were fra-

filled with living men,& fet on fire; there with living

men in them

Strabe writeth the fame of their Sta- Strabe intib. 3 of their Sta-

dorus faith, that in making their facrifices Diodo in Lib. a

to the mouth, and so facrifice them vnto their Gods. Then placing them vpon the Turket.

molation.

The manner of their facrifices in the prefence of hilolophers.

fore that which Artemidorus faith, I hold more agreeable to reason, that in an Iland neere to Brittaine, fuch and the like facri fices were performed, as the * SamothraciDyonif. Ha-

Pomponius Me Lain lib. 3.44.7

molation. Pomponius Mela focaketh thus of the Gaules. They are a proud Nation, Superstitious and cruell sometimes: for they verily beloeue that men are the best and most acceptable facrifices to the Gods.

Neuertheleffe, wee thall not thinke

strangely, that the Statues of the Gaules

Gods were of fuch excessive height: if

we but remember only what Pliny faith,

Of the statues of the Gods of the Gaules Plin.in lib. 34.cap.7.

in 34. Booke, and feuenth chapter. We beheld (faith hee) huge massie Statues of new inuention which they called Colosses, dr were no lower then Towers, but of equall height. In the same place hee speaketh of a num-Of the height ber, among which he nameth Apollo Caof diuers Co pitolinus, being of thirty cubites in height: loffes in un. dry places of the world. Inpiter Tarentinus, which was forty cubites high: The Rhodian Sunne, seventy; the thumb wherof, few men were able to embrace. Apollo of Tuscanie, which was

in the Lybrary of the Temple of Auguftus, contained fifty foote in height, from the feet vpward. That of Nero, was an hundred foote high. But ouer and beside, Zenodorus faith that in his time there was one made in the space of ten yeares, sur-The Image of passing all other Statues in height & big-Mercury,exnesse: beeing the Statue of Mercurie, of ceeding all o inestimable value; and made in Autorgne, ther Statues.

a Common-weale belonging vnto the Gaules, and it contained foure hundred foote in height. Those Statues then of the Gaules Gods, were of wonderfull and extraordinary greatnesse, according as Cafar faith, which they filled full with living men, and so made offerings and sacrifices of them.

But you will obic tvnto me, that this

manner of religion was cruell and abho-

minable: whereto I must answer that such

cruelty was common vnto all other Nati-

damons, & familiar spirits of each coun-

try. Titus Linius writeth, that fuch facrifi-

ces were made at Rome, after the ouer-

throw at Cannas. He faith moreouer, that

in the interim while, certaine extraordi-

nary & vnaccustomed facrifices were per-

formed, by confultation had with divers

fatall Bookes, wherein a Gaule-man and a

Gaule woman, a Grecian man and Gre-

cian woman, in the market appointed for

Oxen at Rome, were laide along vpon the

ground aliue, in a place round engirt with

ftones, which had never before beene ful-

lied with humane offerings or facrifices,

zul. Caf in com

A crucil and abhominable kinde of Re ligion.

A Towne is Apulia, where the Romanes had a great ouerthrow.

Humane facrifices performed at Rome.

and there they were facrificed after the Romane ceremoniall manner. This is the affirmation of Titus Linius, and therfore Titus Linius in I shall neede to make no further mention Libio.cap.11. evther of the Arabians, Thracians, Scythi. ans, Egiptians, or Grecians: confidering, that Dyonisius Halycarnasseus sheweth in the first Booke of Romane Antiquities, licar in An. that Jupiter and Apollo, (because the tenth Rom. Lib. 1. borne of every male childe was not facrificed to them) fent great and greenous calamities throughout all Italy. Diodorus, in the twentieth Booke of his history, decla- Diod in Lib. 10 reth, that (in his time) there was at Carthage, a Statue of Saturne, and fuch like Carthage. facrifices. Andit was thought (faith hee) that Saturne was offended with the people, because that in (former times) they were Children fawont to facrifice to him, the most worthy and wont to jacrifice to mm, the most worthy and crificed to the best borne of their children. Furthermore, Gods. that by the successe of times, instead of their owne children, they bought and entertained others, fecretly nourifhing the, and afterward facrificed them vnto their Gods. This being closely and diligently discouered, & an infinite number of these supposed found out, which in that manner had beene facrificed, they were eafily perswaded to beleeve, that for this occafion onely, the Gods beeing displeased, An entireperfent enemies to take and facke their Citties, because they had not continued people.

wasion to a war of the continued people. those honours, which from all antiquity had bin done to the Gods. Wherfore, the better to appeale them again; they facrificed publikely 200. yong men, fuch as were the choyfest & best borne among all their Nobility, and found out three hundred more, which (with their owne good liking, because they perceived themselves to be suspected) gaue their lines freely to ons, or rather proper and peculiar to the be facrificed.

They had a Statue of Saturne, made of Braffe, which was of wonderfull greatneffe, the hands whereof were extended of admirable in round circling manner on the ground, greatnesse, and children beeing followed with eager pursuite were enforced to enter into the roundure, and then fell into a very deepe pit, full of fire. If any man be defirous to. have more ample and certaine testimony heereof: Eufebins, in the fourth Booke & Bufeb, in Hill feuenth Chapter of his Ecolofiafticall hi- Hatefilb. 41.1 ftory, recounteth many examples of this Religion, observed then in divers Nations. Affirming further, that in the time of

Sonne to

Teuron.of

whom the

Allemaignes

Mercury their

elcended.

trine began to appeare in some bright fplendour: those abhominable cruelties were commonly abolithed; albeit they remained still among the Celts. Neuertheleffe, Mela writeth, that they tooke ena in lib: 3 ,cap.1 ding in his time. Moreover he faith some markes of this brutish cruelty, formerly abolished, vet notwithstanding, whe they brought their offerings to their Altars, which were confectated and dedicated to be facrificed, they would make an effay or proofe of them, and with much deliberation. These then were the finister & wicked facrifices of the Gaules, whereof Lu-

wan: n lib. 1.

You Druides, after you for fooke your Arms You fell to Cauage and barbarous customes Of wicked facrifices. Only to you was given, To know the Gods, and holineffe of Heaven. Or not to know them.

cane speaketh thus.

Of the ceremonies obfer ued among & Germans. Iul.Cef.in com men, lib 4.

This shall suffice, for the manner of facrifices observed among the Gauls. What shall we now fav, concerning the ceremonics of the Britaines and Germanes ? Already we have related, what was the manner of behauiour, as also the disciplines of the Britaines. The Germanes (laith Ca-(ar) were farre differing from thefe customs and orders : For they had not their Druides to command in divine matters, and to take care of their facrifices. They held opinion of fuch as they beheld, and by robofe aide they conceined themselnes to be succored manifest ly ; that they were worthy to be ranked in nuber among the Gods : As the Sunne, Vulcane, and the Moone, of others they never heard any speech. These are the words of Cafar. Corn. Tacitus in But Tacitus, ouer and beside these, speaking of the Germanes Gods, nameth Tuiston, or Teuton, a God borne of the earth, and of his Sonne * Mannus, who were the original and beginners of their Nation. Then of the Sonnes of Mannus, by whose names, the neerest neighbours to the Ocean, called themselnes Ingenoues; and they that dwelt neerer to the middle region, Hermiones; and the other Istenones. Among other Gods, they worthinped Mercury, in the honour of whom, it cheefelt God was permitted them (on certaine dayes) to offer humane facrifices. They also appeafed Heroules and Mars, by the facrifi-

ces of beafts, which likewife was permit-

Adrian, and when the Evangelicall doc-1 ted vnto them. A part of certaine number of the Swenes performed their facrifices to * Ifis; and yet, the cause and originall of fuch facrificing is not certainly the River Ina knowne.

Cefar, in his first Booke, attributeth charmes feels, & incontations to the Germanes which were performed by women of Speller, Charmes, and ner, wherefore Arrows would not bid him battaile: he found it to be a custome the Germane among the Germanes, that the mothers in women. their feuerall families, did declare by foels and varicinations, whether it were profitable to offer battaile, or not, and they would fay that it was not possible tor the Germanes to be Conquerers, if they gave the battaile before the new Moone, Tacitus fpeaketh much more of thefe dipinations, & among the rest, relateth the prefages and incantations which they most observed. The very simplest and most wat gar manner of their diaining (faith he) was,
by taking a branch cut off from a fruite tree,
nation, by an) which they would cut into diners peeces, with branch cut certaine very knowledgable markes made vo. from a fruite on them, and afterward throw or feaster the Tree. (cafually and without any regard at all) voon some white garment. If the matter were to be consulted publikely, then it was done by the Priest of the City. But if it were in prinate or particularly; the father of the family. having made his praiers to the Gods, and elenating his eies up to heaven, taketh the peeces of the branch by three and three and when he hath lifted them aloft, he maketh his interpretation, according as he findeth the marks that were formerly engrauen. If he finde the cafe to be prohibited he maketh no other confultation (concerning that matter) that day : but if he finde it to be permitted, then he feeketh further for the truth thereof, by other kindes of predictions, which gineth perfect knowledge in that place, both by questioned woices, and alfo by the flight of Birds.

Moreouer, it was proper and particular which publikely had been bred in their Woods, by Woods and Forretts, and were all the manner wholly white, without any spotte vp- of their neigh pon them, and had neuer beene labored or employed, or vied in any fernice of man .. The Pricit, or the King, or elfe the Prince of the Cittie, fastening them vnto the facred Chariot,

*Daughter to

Inline Cafer in Incaprations nerformed by

Cornel Tacitu in ub.a.cap.z

ing & noyle.

A prediction

for the fucces

of their dan-

gerous wars.

braced fuch

Physicie at-

fully regard their neighing and noyfes. And there was not any other prefage. whereto the people(but especially the very principall persons in the Citty, yea, and the Priests themselves) did give more credite, then to this: as perswading theselues that they were the Ministers of the Gods, and came necrest in councell to the. They had another observation of presaging, whereby they could foretell the iffue of their warres how cruell or dangerous foeuer they were, and how they should succeed. They would take a prisoner of that Nation with who they intended to make warre, and he should combate with one of the brauest and most gallant spirits of all their owne people, & with those weapons belonging to the Country. After-

the vanquished, and of his Nation. CHAP. XV.

ward the victory of the one or other, tur-

ned to the prejudice and difaduantage of

What Ceremonies were observed among the Gaules at the times of their Burials, or Funerals dre.

The manner & ceremonie of their Fune

HE manner and Cerémo-nies of their Funerals, are fet downe in Cessar. Their Funerals (latish he) are (after the Gaulish brauery) magnificent and sumptuous, with throwing all those

things (what (ocuer) into the fire which they imavined that the dead person (during his life time) most esteemed and affected, especially his Beast's. And fome short while before this memory, such seruants and domesticke attendants, as were judged to be dearely loued of their Masters (tomake the Funerall Ceremony the more intire and compleate) were burned together with the other things. Cafar having affirmed this, methinkes Paufanias descrueth to be laughed at, when hee faith in the tenth Booke of the warres of Brennus: That the Gaules contemned, and held the buriall of their dead in disdaine. because, that by the opinion of such cruelty, they might affright their enemies, not having any more vitty on the dead, then on other living persons. In this point Cafar refuteth Panfantas and Titus Limus alto, where he fpeketh of the Gaules befiedging Rome, his

and going along with the: did very heed- | words, in the fift Booke of his third Decade are these. They heaped and piled men Dec. one upon another, and so burned them indifferently together: because they would not bury them each after other, whereby they ennobled the place magnificently in imitation, and answerable to the name of the Gaules sepul

> As for that which Cafar faith. That all that which was pleafing to the dead person, Such things was cast into the fire with him: At Rome, as were burned with the into the fire made for Iulius Cafar himfelf, dead person the Trumpetters threw their torne gar- at Rome. ments; the Legionaries, their Armes; the Matrones their Chaines and Iewels, yea, and the precious purple deckings of their children. Cafar doth not declare apparantly, whether the feruants & domesticks were throwne into the fire, living or dead: but that he meant the living, may eafily be conjectured by that which Mela faith. Ther wer fuch (faith he) as voluntarily wold Pomponius Mecast themselves into the fires made for their lambacaps. parents kindred and masters, holding opinion, that so they were sure to live with them. We have fuch another example, in the s. of Ciceroes Tulculanes, wher it is faid: That Cicero in the women of India when their husbands di- Tusculan.s ed, had a custome of combate and indgment, mongthe woto make proofe thereby, which of them was menoi India, best beloued of her husband, for one man had to try who many wines. She that carried the honour of her husband the combate, being followed and attended by her other companions, was (with great toy) placed in the fire and there burned with him the other that had fought and loft the day returned home mourning, and disconsolate to her house. This cruell manner of behaujor, may wellkeepe company with the other

> humane oblations. Tacitus speaketh in this manner, concerning the Funeralles of the Germanes. The manner of the Ger They bring the bodies of their companions in- mans Functo doubtfull battels, and that there may bee lais, according found no ambition of glory among them, for interring of their dead: they onely observe, that the bodies of the most noble, or of greatelt apparance, may be burned with certaine wood. They do not heape upo the pile of wood, neither their garments, or any odours: but only allow to each man his proper Armes, dy into the fire of some they make addition of their horfes. One only fod or turffe of earth is building sufficient for the Sepulcher, they contemne pompous workmanship and honourable

ceremony, of immolating or facrificing

Chap. 15.

Plin.in lib.

His accularion

Druides, con

cerning the

Magick Art.

ocolour to

Cornelius

against the

3.CAP. 1.

the dead. Complaints and teares are foone ouerpast with them but greefe by sadnesse is of longer continuance: for women to weepe is honest, onely men are to remember.

But Pliny in his thirteenth book & first chapter, speaking of the Sacrifices, & the whol discipline of the ancient Gaules; frets himselfe against the Magick Arts, as fraudulous and deceitfull feeming to reproue and accuse the discipline of our Druides with the same crime. Let no man meruail (faith he of the Art-Magicke) if great authority be given to fuch discipline. Because it onely will comprehend and redigest the three Sciences all into one, which have most command over our humane First of all, no one doubteth, but that

it receiveth birth & beginning from Phy-

fick, and that vnder pretence of yeelding helpe by little and little : it hath viurped the place, as feigning it felfe to be more high and healthfull, then Phylicke, and with fuch entifing and defirous promifes, makes addition of some strength and power of Religion, whereby men (yet to this day) do abuse themselves. And ver to fatisfie them better, they have interming-The Matheled the Mathematicks , because there is maticks made not any one but he is very couctous, and their deceidefirous to vinderstand future things concerning himselfe, and of his fortune, as beleening viidoubtedly, that fuch knowledge commeth from Heaten. Thus the reason and understanding of men being furprized, and feriously busied in this manner: the discipline is fortified with a triple bond, and growne to fuch an encreasing greatnes; as even in these dayes(in most parts of the world)it beares away the reputation from all other, commanding ouer the Kings and Princes of the East. From whence issued the Magicallfaction, Perfian, Mofaicall, and Ciprian. Finally, the fixe hundred, fixty & feuenth yeere from the building of Rome. Cnens Cornelius Lentulus, and Publius Li-Lentulus, and cinius Craffius being the Confuls, an Edich nius Craffus, was made, that no man was to be offred in Confulles of facrifice, and affuredly, the celebration of fuch prodigious facrifices vanished away. But contrariwife, the Gaules kept them, cuen till our memory: For Tyberius Celar

wholly abolished the Druides, & fuch kind

of Prophets & Phylitions. What menti-

labor about Monuments, as being offensive to 1 on shall I make of this diseipline, which hath out-stept the bounds of the Ocean. entring into Britanny, where (at this day) it is celebrated with all reverence, & fuch ceremonies, as it feemes that they have fauage behataught it to the Perlians? It hath attained wour equal to fuch confent with the whole vniuerfe, with the (although it can grow to no agreement, or can well know it felfe:) as we do little conceine, how highly we are beholding to the Romans, who ytterly abandoned al fuch monftrous behaujor:being formerly fauoured (as a charitable work) to kill and facrifice men, yea, and a very wholesome thing to eate them.

So far extend the words of Pliny, wherby oner and beside the Arts formerly remembred he attributeth Physicke also to tributed to the Gaulith Druides . But he greatly bla- the Druides meth the frauds therein concealed, & deferuedly commendeth the Romanes, for excluding fach monftrous qualities out of their Empire. But would to God, that they had onely abolished the frauds and deceits in fuch Arts, and not the true Arts themselves nor the Schooles and profetfion of them: For then vndoubtedly, wee thould in duty thanke them, and crowne them with honour. But Pliny faith, that Tyberius wholly ouerthrew the Druides. Notwitstanding, the same man discouered Magicke, by fome example of the Druides, as in the last Chapter of his scanenth Booke, speaking of Glew, or a certaine Gumme, hee hath thefe

words. We may not omit (faith he) in this cafe, one Plin, in li.17 admirable matter of the Gaules. The Druides cap.vir. (by fuch name they terms their Magitians)e- Concerning theeme nothing more precious then Glew and Guns citee Gum, and that the Tree where it groweth, during the time it bath vigour:they themfelues do then make chaife in their Woods and Forrests which have fuch power to nouriff that's Gummes, that they will not offer any facrifice, without the leanes of fuch a Tree. And it may be very likely, that from the Greeke interpretation, upon this occasion, they were called Druides. In briefe, they hold opinion. that that which taketh birth or originall with thofe Trees, is fent from beauen in fiene that fuch a Tree is cholen of the Gods Such a Tree is very rare to finde, but being found; they take it with great ceremony and religion, 4- At what time hone alother, at the time of the Moons fextile, the Drudes or first Moon, which is the beginning of their vied to gather

the Druides.

Monethy Glew.

Paufan.inli.z de Bel.Bren.

The ceremo nies in the 1a crifice of the Druides.

A prefent re medy agains and poyfon.

Plin.in lib.

2 I .cap. 1 I

* A hearb v-

fed much of

the Druides,

for all eye-foreshedge

hylope

thirty yeares. Because that then she is in her strength not being in diminution of her moity, and they terme it by a word in their lanquage, fignifying : To be helping in all things. They prepare the facrifice and a banquet under those Trees bringing thether two Bulles wholly white, the hornes whereof are as yet Carle able to be bound. The Priest, cloathed in a white Robe, mounteth up the Tree, and cutteth the branches with a Sickle of Gold, and such as fall are received in a white cloth. Then they offer their facrifices, making their prayers that God will make their gift proferous and happy, for them to whom they intend the etuing. They are of opinion, that such things being given in drinke to any sterile or barren body, either of women or beafts; will make them fruitfull, and belide that it is a foueraigne remedy against all poilons. Thus somtimes a Religion is made among men in matters meerely friuilous, and not of any impor-

Thus you fee what Pliny faith, concerning the mysteries of the Gaules Magick, wherein he findes the greeke etymology of the name of the Druides (although that it is a Gaulish name to wit of Druyon, as already hath beene faid) as in all languages you may finde infinite words, which (by fome conninency) feeme to be deriued from another tongue: as in like manner the Mathematicians, in their moneths and yeares, and the Chronology of their ages, do declare sufficiently, that the Mathematicall disciplines, albeit after the Greekes descriptions, do not alwaies fall out to be one and the fame. But let vs purfue fome other examples of Pliny.

In his one and twentieth Booke, and the eleventh Chapter, heespeaketh thus. There is a certaine hearbe like unto Sabine, called " Selago which is gathered without any yron weapon, by the right hand, thrust into somelest-handed glove or sleeve, in manner of a theefe. And the party must be cloathed with a white garment having his feete naked and cleanly walhed: and facrifice must bee performed with Bread and Wine, before any offer of gathering, and modestly brought thether in a new Napkin . The Druides of the Gaules have written, that this hearbe is very Soucraione against any perill or dreaded danger and also that the smoke thereof is profitable for the discases in the cies. They have al-

To another hearbe, which they call Samola,

Moneths and yeares, and of the world after | which groweth in moist and waterish places, Another and they vee to gather it alwaies with the left heard for the hand: it ferueth against al difeases in Swine help of cattel and Kine and who foeuer gathereth it, must not (by any meanes) be seene, neither must be bring it into any other place, then a gutter or brooke, and there breake or bruise it in the water, that the Beafts may swallow it in their drinking.

> In the same place is recited another Magicke of the Gaulish Druides, whereunto (in the third Chapter of the twentieth Booke, written by the faid Author) there is another very like enery way. Moreouer (faith hee) there are a certaine kinde of the Egges of Egges, wherof great account is made in Gaul, Serpents. and whereof the Greekes have not made any mention. Summer caufeth an infinite number of Serpents to heave themselves together, writhing and embracing in a kinde of artificiallhugging : when either by the moisture iffuing from their mouthes, or slimy scumme of their owne bodies, that which they call the Serpentine Egge is engendered. The Druides (ay, that (by their hissing or whiltling) it is The Druides exalted up into the Ayre, and in the meane Serpentine while it must be received downe in some robe Egge. or garment, because it may not touch the earth. But he that receives it must make oreat (beed away upon an horfe, because the Serpents will purfue him (wiftly, untill they find hinderance by some River or Water. The proofe and experience thereof is, when it floateth against the wvater, especially wwhen it is enchased in gold. But as the cunning of Magitians is well contriued, for the more ingenious covering of their fraud: fo they fay, that it must be taken in a certaine Moone, as if it were lawfull in humane judgement, to accord such an operation of Servents. Verily, Thave Seene this kinde of Egge, of the bionesse The Author of an indifferent round Apple, bearing a cruft haur frene or (hell like a gristle, feamed with little such an liggemouthes or openings, like to them wwhich are on the armes of the Polypus or Pourcontrell. and the Druides holde it for a most notable thing. It is highly esteemed, as for giving victory in fights and combates, and to have accesse to Kings of Princes : by such an abuse, and no other reason that I know, a Romane A Romane knight of the Vocontians, was put to death Knight put by the Emperor Glaudius, andy in regard of fighting, for he alwaies carried fuch an Egge in his bosome. Neuerthelesse, the embracing time lags. and colligation of Serpents, and the alliance of the most cruell creatures, feemeth to have

Plin,in li.20

No force or

preuaile a-

violence can

ainft vertue

flame be roo

Partiality in

ted vp.

Chap. 16. Of the Ancient Gaules. beene the cause, whereby strange Nations (as \ an argument of peace) made a Caduceus of Serpents writhed round about, and it hath

beene a custome alfo, that they bould be crea-Red on the Caduacus.

Thus hath Pliny noted the Serpentine Egge, to proceede from the Gaules Magicke, and that for this cause onely, the Knight was thine by the Emperour, who stood in feare of this Magicke. Finally, the Romanes, to abolish veterly the discipline of the Druides, tooke occasion by this Magicall fuperflition: but though impiety, fuperstition, magicke and vices may be rooted out, yet vertue will continue still found and intire. Would to God that the Romanes had maintained in like place, and in like number, the Gaules as the Greeks. The Empire hath bene fnacht from the Greeks, but Learning and Arres was left with them ftill. Grecke hath bene constrained to make way for the Latine tongue: but yet continually Grammer. Rhetorick and Philosophy hath benesand yet is taught in grecke. What greefe then was it to the Romanes, to expulse not only the Gaulish Judges from their seates: but the professors also, yea, the very sciences & disciplines of the Gaules out of their Schooles

Immortall Gods, the Gaules authentick race, You thought to hold true eminence and place. And so should still, were gifts in equall grace.

But we connert our affections too caraffection, can neftly, to the glory and honour of our nruer be an vpright Iudge owne particular, which honour we may bemoane, being too greedily carried away with a mighty spleene against the name of the Gaules. But let vs now proceede to finish the rest.

CHAP, XVI.

Of the Iustice exercifed in Ancient Gaule, compared with that of the Romanes, by diuiding the chiefe men into two degrees, of Druides and Knights, and two kindes of Magistrates, with the punishment of difobedience to Superior Officers.

Itherto wee haue gone tho-rough three parts of the pro-posed labour, to wit; The pru-dence of discipline; The entire knowledge of truth; and likewise of prouidence. There yet remaineth the fourth course,namepart namely of luftice, which is Princeffe Iv of the luftice of the and Mistresse of all other manners. It be- Gaules hooueth vs then, to feeke for the principality of ancient Gaule, and what it was: what power the people had, and what policy was maintained among them; that which we terme the Platonicall good and benefit of Temperance, Fortitude,& of Prouidence, whereby each man hath that belonging to him, without viurping on any thing appertayning to another.

The Common-wealth, at least that The common of Gaule, whose lockes of hayre beeing wealth of long enough in Cafars time; was meerly Gaule in the Timocraticall, and in many parts very like time of Cx. vnto the Roman liberty, as by that which followeth, hee which will examine things particularly, may eafily perceiue. Let vs then obserue what Cafar hath said, and especially concerning customes and behas Int. C. cfar in uiour. In all Gaule, or Gallia (faith he in his Com, Lib.6. fixt Booke) all men that are of any marke, or made any account of, are divided into two forts : to wit, into Druides, and into Cheualiers: for the common people is of no other rec-

they admitted to councell in any matter. Behold what partition Iulius Cafar hath instituted of himselfe, albeit it is not altogether true which he speaketh of the people. as shall at large bee delinered hecreafter, in place more convenient for the purpoîc.

koning, but as warlets and flaues, not daring

(of themselves) to do any thing, neither are

In this partition of Cafar, There is one (faith he) that Prefideth, or is as Primate o. Int. Cafar in ner all the other Druides, that hath cheefe Com. Lib.6. command and authority of the rest. He being vi Sup. dead, if there be any one among the other that bath the aduantage in worthineffe or defert : he is to succeed. If there be many of equallyarity and condition; he is to be chofen (by volces of the Druides) from among the reft. Diuers times they contend for the fourraignty or

Masterfhip by weapons, and fo firme who

Shall have the prime place. Here Cafar proposeth two distinct kinds of Magistrats, one to rule or gouern in diuine things, yother in fuch as are humane

and civill. Among the Druides, he inflitu-

The Gaules

discipline o

the Romaines

lib.4.c. 9.

Two windes | teth one, to be as the high or cheef Prieft, of Magifrate proposed by and he defineth his election, to bee eyther Cz'arinGaul by Dignity, or by Suffrages, or by Arms. And there is no great difference between the institution of the Roman high Priest, and this other man: but onely, that at Rome he is annuall or yeerely, & in Gaul it seemeth he hath beene perpetuall. That the Druides have beene spread over all Gaule, euen in Cities, Townes and Burroughs, their estates have shewne sufficient manifestation : for the Druides did euer command ouer the three principall parts of the Common-wealth: as in profession of Artes in judgments pleading; and ceremonies belonging to their facrifices. All the younger fort (faith Cafar) have their recourse to them, to be enstructed by them, and to learne sciences, as also a great number of verses: so that some continue there twenty yeares, only to learne knowledge. And furely, an honest stipend or recompence, can neuer want Masters to giue enftruction.

The Druides (faith Cafar) are not wont

to goe to warre, but stand exempted from it,

and immunity of all other taxations of char-

The Druides exempted from war & taxations.

iudgement

The yong me

Druides,to

learne of the

ges. So that in regard of such faire acknowledgements and freedomes, there are many that come to bee ranked among them, and to follow the study of their disciplines, they are Sent thicker by their parents dy kindred. Let me now entreate yee, and (euen in honest charity) but to obserue well this place alledged by Cafar. Can there be any thing more excellent, or more magnificent, the when the Primates of a Country, or the Gouernors and very greatest Princes in a Common-wealth, do make profession of disciplines? Perhaps, some will consider fweatingly on this point, as though wee would have the cheefest men, and those that are the grauest in our Citties, to keep Schooles, and apply their paines to enstruct other. Notwithstanding, let me tell ye, Plato would have fuch men (and no o-Plato, his ad ther) to take the charge of enfructing, & deliuering the knowledge of Sciences: uice concerping men of because such a place should be as a Seminary or feed-plot, of great, judicious, and learned men, meete to administer and beare authority in a Common-wealth: wherein the grafts and plants must needs

be the more rare and excellent; by how

much the grafters and planters are most

vertuous and honourable.

I wonder at the opinion of Pliny, in many paffages alledged by him, and efpecially in this, where he writes : That with the ancient manners and falhions of Rome. the Land abounded, & did daily bring forth double encrease. What was the cause (saieth he) of fuch aboundance? The earth was then husbanded by the hands even of the chiefelt warriers, and, as it is credible, that the earth loyed and reloyced, to be honoured with a share or culture crowned with Laurell, and by the labour of a victorius triumphing conqueror : even so did it travaile and endeuour it felfe the more industriously, to produce the feed sowne in that nature, as to prosper their other warlike proceedings. And the like diligence, for well husbanding the ground, as al-fo to order and direct a potent Army, or elfe in all other things, which are performed by noble and honest hands : do encrease the more Good and aboundantly, and become so much the more fertile by how much they are the more carefully executed. But now adaies, this faire and honourable mystery, is exercised by foule, infamous, and condemned hands, by men that are either theeues, or banisht, or have lost their eares, or branded with some such other wicked imputation. Notwithst anding the good earth is not deaffe, who being called Mother, and bids herfelfe to labour and frustifie, by a Latine word, called Coli, which fignificth al-(o to do honour, as beeing thence derived: whereby it plainly appeareth, that what soeuer (he now doth or produceth, she doth it but in meere disdaine, and against her owne liking. And therefore we must needs meruaile, that no such profits arise in the times of these labourers, as in the famous daies of those flori-

that it is as convenable for vs, to speake of The Authon which concerne the earth? Euen fuch Batton of Pilwas the fertility and aboundance of the ning the flo-Gaules disciplines, when in the times of rising conour Druides, the Schooles of the Muses, dition of Rome. became the Pallaces of Kings; the chaires of Masters, were the seates of Princes, the number of Students, was the company & following of honorable Lords. Then Pal-Las delighted to be in a royall Colledge, vfing one & the fame Rector & gouernor in the common-wealths affaires, & to declare the Sciences and disciplines, explicating those enstructions in one self-same

Plin.in lih 22.cap.4. Of the anci. ent manners and behauiours of Rom

The extremi

ty of the Ro-

against the Gaules Lear-

weales. And by the same discretion and prouidence, they instituted the rules of Arts, Lawes, and Ordinances: wherein all things increased the more prosperously, and more aboundantly (by honest labours) as they were the more diligently and respectively followed. There were many in those dayes, who being spurred on by fuch recompences, and the expec-The voluntatation of those proposed honours, addiry inclination of the Gaules cted themselues (gladly) to apprehend in former those disciplines, being sent to the same end & purpole (from the remotest parts)

by their parents and kindred.

Hereupon, and for the same occasion.

Lucian was the more willing to have the

Gaulith and Ogmian Hercules depicted;

not onely covered with the despoyle of a

Lyon, and a maffy Club: but also decre-

pite, bald, aged, wrinkled, and meager;

drawing a great number of Conquered

men after him, in chaines of gold faftned

to their eares. Their tongues also vvere

pierced thorow, and at them hung little

Chaines of gold, in fuch fort, that those

valiant disposed and conquered gallants,

followed the Hercules that drew them,

he turning eftloons his face and looks to

behaujour. And what elfe was all this.

but the eloquence of the Bardes, as also

out any more regarding) caused such ad-

number of Students, which submitted

themselues under their charge, onely to

learn their disciplines and goodly know-

ledge in fo many noble things : figured

Schollers, hung by the ears at the mouths

as by the Romaine Empire, the falary and

honour of Learning was taken away and

abolished, even as sodainly was the pro-

Lucian hi spi Aure of He cules among the Ganles, the allusion thereof.

Chap.16.

manner, for gouerning their Common- hath approoued the faying of the Orator to be true: That Honor is the Nurse of arts, and all hearts are enflamed with the love of the Sciences, onely in regard of their glorie . For neuer thould any account bee made of fuch things as are misprized and condemned by cuery man.

Thus the loffe and burying of the Gauls disciplines, are due to none but vnto the Romaines, by whose tyranny the honour of their profession, and their liberty togither, was violently taken from the Druides. Wherefore Mela (who flouritht vnder Claudius faith. Now are not the brane and worthy Schooles of the Druydes; because they are become clandestine, and suppressed by other, banished into the deepest of furthest off Forrests. So that the Discipline of the Druydes, was not onely robbed of her former honour, but compelled in meere feare of danger, to hide her felfe in caues and thickest woodes. Lucane seemeth to take knowledge thereof with Mela, fpeaking thus of the Druydes.

-Your dwelling now, Is in the strongest and profoundest Forrests.

Cafar also in his fift booke. The Gauls Iul, Caf in com behold them, with very milde & affable (faith hee) perceiving from whence the bes libs, & lib.7. ginning of warres came, held their confultations in the night time, and in defert places . the wisedome of the Sarronides and Dru-Likewise in the seuenth booke. The Prinides? which even at the first fight (withces of the Gaules, in their Councels (appointed in Woods and concealed places) complaymirable affection to the same. The great ned amongst themselves of their servitude. Neuertheleffe, we conclude not, neither by the authority of Mela, nor of Lucane, nor of Cafar, that the Colledges of the Druydes, that the affembly of Councell. those Chaines of golde. And even so the and deliberation of their men of Warre, were in the woods: for that wold appeare of their Master, as being taken & bound rather to be a figne of fernitude and conby his rich words, and the fweet doctrine fraint, then of crudition or confultation. Of the wages flowing thence. Then did al disciplines | But proceede we on to speake of the fallaflourith, in regard that the professors of rv? wages, and honest prefents, viually gi- Druydes. them were rare and excellent. But fo foon uen to the ancient Druydes. The Druydes (faith Cafar) doe not enely take the reward of their honest profession, but over to beside. the Gaules give them great honor and reuefession of those Disciplines esteemed and rence. All cases in controver sie, bee they eyheld to bee but a feruile and mechanicall ther publike or prinate, are referred to theyr thing. Which was the onely occasion, indecement. If there happen any thing to bee that (necessarily as it were) those honest done amiffe, or any murther committed: if and liberall ftudies languithed for a long there arile any diffention, concerning inheritime; and by an ouer-tedious experience, tance, Succession, or bounds of Landes: they

Thing Captaines. So farre extend the words of Pliny. But by your fauour, do not we conceine,

InlaCalar in

are thomen that give fentence, and constitute the reward of well doing, and punishment of mildemeanors. Strabo addeth heereto (I know not how) that by their Magical fuperstition, they judge of the fertility of the yeare, according to the multitude of criminall causes.

But proceede we with the rest of Ca-

Cas. in con ubi supra. from their fa aifices,

far. If there be any man, either a private, or publique person among the common people. that wil not obey their ordinances of decrees: he is interdicted from comming to the facrifices which is the most greeuous punishment in all their Nation. They that stand so interditted from the facrifices, are reputed among the number of lewd and wicked people: All men flyes from them and cuery man stands in feare to speake to them, or to keepe company with them, as dreading some Contagion or Plaque (bould happen to them by fuch frequetation. And if they demand Law or Iuftice,it is denved and may not be granted them, neyther may they enior any preferment or honor, or the least reverence done unto them by amy. But what manner of fentences or judgments do the Germaines obserue? What penalties and punishments are amongst them . It appertaineth to none but Priests, who have the full power of commaunding (faith Tacitus) to impose silence in publicke Corn, l'acitus in consultation. Moreover, it is not permitted but to Priest's onely, to chaftife, beate, or bind them, not as the paine or punishment of the offence, nor by the commaund of the Prince :

but even as by divine permission, & as a com-

mandement given by God, whom they make

account to be then in presence, and to be asi-

Stine in their fights. In Warre alfo they carry

certaine Pictures and Images, wwhich they

bring away from their hallowed places. The

difference of punnishment is answerable on-

to the delict, Traytors, and fuch as forfake

their Captaines of their Nation, to doe any

Prieffs onely haue the preheminence to inflict punish-

The observa-

tion amongst the German

lib.4.cap: 2.

Service vnto a Stranger-enemy, are hanged up upon the Trees. Vagabondes, Roques, vale liners, and all such as are noted of foule infamie, are drowned in mudde, or in some Marilb place, & congred all oner with filth. The variety of punishment is much respect-Punifiment ed there to the end, that the enormity of the inflicted ac offence, may be knowne by the qualitie of the cording to the infliction, and that vice may by no meanes be quality of the offence. concred. But in crimes of leffer nature, the parties which are continced, are condemned in Fines, of a certaine number of Horffes, or other Beast's, whereof one part of the forfeite

is given unto the King, or to the Cittie: and the other part is given to him, for whom the penaltie is done, or to his neerest Kindred.

Returne we now again voto the Druides of the Gaules: for, Cafar deferibeth in Com.libs the times and the places, where they did vie to keepe their Seffions. The Druides (faith hee) wpon certaine dayes in the yeare, and upon the Borders of the Caruntes (the People about which Countrey is reputed to bee the verie Chartres in Celtica. middest of all Gaule or Gallia) do vee to keep their oreat dayes meeting, in a certaine confecrated place, where all fortes of men, that hauc fuites or Controversies, make their Af-(embly, being obedient unto the fentences & iudgements of the Druydes. Cafar doeth not distinguish the times of the yeare, but onely the place, which was on the Limites and Confines of the Caruntes, as being the Center and middle of Gaule, where the Druides of all the Countries of meeting or all Gaule (euen as of all the world) were wont the Druydes to meete together . Neuerthelesse, the of Gaul obgether. Cittie of the Caruntes, named Chartres, was (in those ancient times) of much larger extendure_then now it is; and it is very likely, that it contained not onely the Chartrain Diocesse, but that also of Orleance. For before that Cafar arrived there, it was a Realm, which afterward was put by Cafar into the power of Tafgetius the Ind. Cafin com-Carunt, as himfelfe hath written in his 5. ment, lib 5.

booke. In breefe it feemeth that the Realme of Orleance, which afterwards was a long time maintained to bee a Realme by the Franconians, was the very fame of Chartres : Confidering withall, that Genabium or Genaba, was one of the Townes in the Caruntes Kingdome, and scated vpon the River of Loire, beging in the time of Cafar beyond Orleance, a farre off by a great many Miles, and which hindered him in his way, when hee went from a Agendiaffembled themselues together in that place from all partes, as in the Center of Gaule, according as Cefar hath spoken. If ay then, that in all Gaule, and in the law them the same of the Citties, Townes, and Villages of Gaule, there were Druydes, who gouerned in fuites and Controuerfies, and likewife in the Ceremonies of Religion: Inbreefe, the care of all things was committed to them. The Druydes were then dispersed thoroughout Gaule, as now adayes are

Booke

Inline Cafar

The generall

aA Towns of

Iul.Cafar in Particular fadions throuin enery City, Towne, and Village,

the men of the Church: notwi hstanding the Princes were wont to refer to a common Councell (at certaine times of the yeare) all the fintes of their Citizens and Subjects, wherein the chiefe Priest of the Druydes gouerned onely.

generall mee ting for all A noble Councellin Greece, lo na med of Am-

phictyon the

on to Hele-

nus.who ap-

ointed the

iame. Pauf. in lib

de Phocis.

The royal po

wer and au-

thoritie of the

Gaules Druy-

common

Councell, or

Such (in elder times) was the Councel of the * Amphictiones, which during the liberty of Greece was kept in Delphos (as Paulanias report thin his Phociques) & in the middeft of Greece. Whereby appeareth, that the Druydes of the Gaules, were like to the Amply tuns of Greece,& their place as facred in the Chartraine Countrey, answerable to the Temple of Delphos, made fo famous by the Oracles of Apollo. The marter would have beene a little the more noble, if Cafar had called the place Delphos, which was confecrated within the limites of the Countrie of Chartres. Heerein is thewen the authority, and (almost) royall power, which the Druydes not onely held in prinate and particular, but intirely ouer all the people. The profession of Disciplines was in great reputation; the estate of judgment a most famous authority; the power to

performe facrifices, and to speake of Di-

uination, appertained vnto royall Maie-

The first degree of the Gaulish Commonwealth, was that of the supreme Ma-The order & giffrate, next, the Princes, then, the Cheualiers; the people made election according to his aduice, and for his benefit, and the commodity in generall, the Princes gaue him order how to make his warres; and fuch as did not well by their inftruction, they would expulse and banish the. But you may demand of me, how this is who fpeaketh thus in his fixt Booke. In not onely in all Cities, Burroughes, and quarthe Princes or Heads of fuch Factions, are they whom they conceine (in their indement)

to be proued? I will answer from Cafar, Com. lib. 6. Gaule (faith he) there are certaine factions, ghout Gaule, ters, but also in enery particular Housbold, to be the worthiest persons for authoritie : by whose aduce and determination, the verie greatest matters of waight or importance, either for publique affayres or Councell, are wholly differed. Vpon which occasion it feemeth, that this matter bath bin thus ordered from reverend Antiquity, that none of the meanest should be destitute of helpe, against a rich or potent Superior . For there is no man,

that will indure or fuffer, that fuch as aypertaine or depend woon him, shall any way be oppressed or circumvented : for if he offered to do otherwife, hee fall not beare any Iway among the people.

Of the Ancient Gaules.

Thus you heare what C.efar faith, wherby may be vide if tood, the Timocraticall tical governgovernment of a Commonwealth, which ment of a Plato and Aristotle fo much commended, Commonand which Greece (being in her libertie, edby Plato 8 and Italy alfo) did keepe fo carefully: Ariffode. wherein, all the kinds of a just and equitable policy are comprehended. Note the felfcfame reason, in the whole charge of the affaires of Gaule; for there was royalty in the annual Magistrate, whereas Aristocratic was differented in the Senate. and briefly, Timocratie in the plaine power & authority of the people, by whom the Senators and Magistrates were created. And therefore let vs goe fomewhat necrer, and examine the testimonie of cafer in com-Cafar a little more narrowly, speaking of ment ub. 6 the Common-wealth of our Ancestors.

Such was the freedom and liberty of Gaul

(faith Cafar) that in every City. Towne, and

Burrough, and almost in every bouse, there were certaine factions, and it was in such fort, that every one was permitted to deale closely and underband by voices and suffrages: fo that the very meanest and simplest, had power to give their fentence, and deliver their voyces. Heere then we are to vnderstand, that the Electors of the Magistrats amongst the Gaules, were such kinde of Authority of men. And heereby wee plainly perceine, the people a-mongh the that the authority of the people was not Gauls in crea fmall in their Commonwealth: in regard tion of their Magistrates. that by voices and fuffrages of the people, the Magistrates were then created. But what was hee that had the power to make election of thefe men ? He that was reputed to be in the greatest authority or befide, all the affayres of consequence, and the whole deliberation of the Councell came onely to him. But why was it requisite, that so much authority thould be in one Magi-Strate & Cafar himselfe makes answer vnto this Obiection. Recause (uppon this accusion) it (cemed that Antiquity (venerably) had foinstituted it : to the end, that no man among the people (how meane or poore foeuer) [hauld fland in neede of syde against the richeft oppreffor. For he might not indure that any of his faction (bould be oppreffed or

circummented. This then was the end of

duans, and their neighbors the Secusians,

Ambinarets, Aulerkes, Brannouikes, & the

Brannonians. The like number was ap-

pointed to the men of Auuerne, together

with the Cadurcians, Heluterians, Gaballes,

and Vellaunians, who were vnder the do-

minion of the Aunermans. To the Se-

quanes, Senones, Biturigianes, Santorigeans,

Ruthenes and Caruntes, were appoynted

twelve thousand men. To the Bellouacanes

ten thousand, and as many to the Limo-

fines. To the Poicteuines, Tourangeans,

Parifians, and Heluetians, eight thousand

to each. To the Swessiones, Amiangeans,

Mediomatricians, Petrocorians, Neruians,

Morines, and the Nitiobrigrians, five thou-

fand to each. To the Aulercians and Ceno-

manians as many. To the Atrebatians four

thousand. To the Bellocassians, Lexobians,

and Aulerks Eburones, three thousand to

each. To the Rauracians and Boians, two

thousand a peece. To all the Citites that

border vpon the Ocean, and (according

to their manner) are called * Armorica fix

Councell, vniuerfally observed through-

out Gaule, and one felfesame manner of

behauiour, and answerable to the Amphy-

ctiones, of assigning by a Councell pub-

lique, the estare and revennewes of every

Citty. Notwithstanding, one onely man

did not command ouer all these Compa-

nies: but there were foure captains, with

whom were joyned some Councellors of

these Citties, Cesar in the same place sai-

eth . That the whole charge of thefe affayres

of the Empire, was given to Comius the A-

trebatian, to Viridomarus, to Eporedorix the

Heduane, and to Vergafillanus of Aunerone.

Cofine Germane to Vercingetorix by the mo-

thers fide : and onto them were assigned cer-

taine other chosen persons of the Citties, as

Heere we have a view of the publique

Landriguer in

e Ot Londul

Of Nauntes

gOt Cornwell

in Britaine

in little Brit-

The voyce of the people in election of their Magiftrates.

58

The punnishment of one that beginneth well an neglecteth h care of the weal-publike

The political the people.

Strabo in l 4.C.ID.7.

"Marsiles in France, a citic famous for Learning as Athens. Strabo in li

cap.9.

the Magistrate, and the reason why the | people faid: We will not have this man, except by his wertue, and by his authority he do defend that no man offer vs iniury . We will not have this man, because he is both bad and

But if a good Prince, who (at the beginning) hath made proofe of his vertue. happened afterwards to change his manners; and, as one that hath no longer care of the weale-publike, proposeth his owne particular profit before the publike, and carry himselfe otherwise then the Ordinances of the people have commanded: he is excluded and banished, and (as Ca-(ar (aith) Deprined of all power and authority among his owne people. And to the end that this might not be imagined to be obferued in some one Citty only, The felfe-Same course (faith Cafar) is kept thoroughout all Gaule, Heerein then may be noted, the politicall authority of the people, when Magistrates are not onely chosen by the people, but also deposed & expul= fed. But Cafar faith nothing, whether this principality was constituted in the authority of many, or of one onely, neither for how long time it continued. Neuertheleffe, Strabo (in his fourth book) defineth both the one and the other, faying: There were many kinds of Aristocratical policy, in ancient times they elected every yeare a Prince, as the people elected a Chiefe or Commander for the warre. Thus wee fee. what Strabo faith : but a matter fo goodly and commendable, should bee enriched with fome examples.

Cicero hath so highly extolled the commonwealth of the Massylians, that before the people of Rome, in the defence of Fonteius, hee fayde: That the Discipline and gravity of the Citty of * Marfiles, deferued not onely to bee preferred equall to Greece, but almost with all other Nations of the world. In that Citty (fayth Strabo) there were fixe hundred Senators, whome they tearmed Timouches, as men honourable, and who (all theyr life time) enjoyed that honour: from foorth of which number, were elected and chofen fifteene Princes, to judge fuch fuits & causes, as happened day by day amongst them. And questionlesse, these were the fixe hundred Marsilians, and the fifteene cheefest men among them, whereof Cament.Lib. 1. far fpeaketh in his first booke. But let vs

go on with the words of Strabo. Out of thefe fifteene (faith hee) they elected three. which had the most authority and power. In this manner Strabo describeth the Common-wealth of the Massilians, which neuertheles I alledge not as a name of Gaule onely, because it was better beloued and esteemed to be Greekish, rather the Gaulish : but also, because none of those Ti- The nature mouches was to bee elected, that had not the timoucher bin a childe borne there, and had not bene eledion aa Cittizen, even to the third race or defcent, as the fame Strabo faith . Vpon this occasion, Aristotle (and very desertfully) calleth the Common-wealth of the Maffilians Oligarchia, and not Aristocratia: for this declareth her Oligarchie, that Princes were not elected by their vertue, but in regard of their race.

I doe not alledge (I fay) this Commonwealth, as an example of the Gaules The Commo. Common-wealth: I defire to deliner wealths trulie their owne true estates indeed, and those that truely were of Gaule, and first of all the that truely were of Gaule, and first of all they were in in generall of all Gaule enext, of the Na- the revealed tions, and then particularly of euery Cit- the Gaulian warre, tie. The seauenth Booke of Iulius Cafar, shall serue as a sufficient Testimonie in my common example, wherein Gaule is intirely described, both in orders, and all revenuewes : albeit in the seauenth yeare of the warres in Gaule, great store of the afflicted Townes and Citties, had diminished much of their reuennues. First (by a Common Councell) Vercingetorix was elected for cheefe Commaunder, as Cafar himfelfe faieth, when the Heduans fought, that the Empire might bee given to them, as the matter came then in controugrife. The whole Councell of Gaul (faith hee) was called at a Bibracte or Beaulne, where arrived a great number of men, and Towne of the Election was appointed to the most voy- Bray, in the ces : but by generall confent it was concluded Rochell in that Vercingetorix (bould be Emperor, or the France. chiefe Leader of their Armies. Onely Cafar faieth, that the men of Rhems, bthe Linb A Towne is gones, and thed Treuraines, were not prefent at this Councell: but hee maketh no mention at all of the Aquitaines.

Afterward, when Vercingetorix was befiedged neere to alexia, the Gauls then d Tries, and called another Councel; wherein was or- the Countrey dained, that a certaine number of martial c Now called men should command ouer enery towne. And it was concluded, that five & thirtie

Chap. 16.

ded ouer the

feueral towns

and Citties.

a The whole

little Britaine

Captains to

ther Coun-

Artois in

Belgica. Int. C.efar in

thousand.

a Bibrax the

in Belgica. c Langresin on of Tull in Celtica:

The Celts did differ from the Gaules in the ceremony of Councell.

we may obserue, if in all the Gaulish Nations, the same estate of commonwealth left for their Captaines, certain men that had was kept, as among the Celts, Belges, and ferued (all their time) with .Q. Sertorius ... Aquitanes. uer hapned, that the Celts kept the like apparant by the places before alleadged; ceremony of Councell 1 for the greater that the policy proposed by Cefar, vvas part of them wer affociated with the Romaines, either by amity or alliance, or by what kind of dutie elie, I know not. Notwithstanding, in the war of the e Venetes,

a conjuration was made of the Armorican | d People of Citties, the Venetes, the Ofifines, the Lexobians, the B Nannets or Nannetians the h Diablinters, the 'Curiofolites, thek Vuellians, the Ambiliates, and the Eburones. Suddenly were Amballadorus fent (faieth Julius Cafar in his third booke) and by aduice of their Princes de Noblemen, in little Brie they conferred together . to do nothing without Councell, and to abide such disasters as Fortune fould fend onto them, Solliciting in lite Britthe rest of the Cities, to choose rather to continue in the liberty which they had receyved Belgica. from their Ancestors, then to endure the feruitude of the Romaines. Neuertheleffe the cheete Head or Commander of all the Army, is not named by Cafar in any part whatfoeuer. And yet in the publike councell of the Belgians (whereby was plainely and openly determined against Cafar, the intire liberty of all Gallia:) the maine and eminent charge of the affaires (by the wil and consent of all men) was put on Galba King of the & Swessiones, as well in regard of his owne good deferuing, as for his Belgica. wisedom and prouidence.

In this warre at that time, the ! Bellouacanes contributed to the number of three in Celtica. fcore thousand armed men; the Swessions fifty thousand; as many the Nermans, the Atrebatians fifteene, the Ambians ten; the Morines fine and twenty; the m Menapians m The people feuen; the Caletines ten; the Velocassians & & Cleucland. Veromandians as many; the Aduaticians nineteene: the Condrustans, Eburones, Ceresians, Pemanians (which al by one name are called Germanes) forty thousand. Here is to bee feene a Common Councell indeede, and therby likewife, the intire power and authority of enery Cittle. Such a conjuration also was amongst the Aquitaines, of whom Ckfar writeth thus. Then the Aquitaines began to fend foorth Ambaf-Sadors, and to enterchange Hostages, to mu-Councellors for the warre. Neuertheleffe, fer men of warre; and to crave ayde of the Cantabrians their Neighbors: as alfo to elect for their Captaines, certainment hat had Spaine, therefore were reputed to bee most expert in In the time of the warre in Gaul, it ne- the actions of Armes. It is then plaine and not onely common to all Gaule:but like-

wife generally in recommendation to all

the Nations.

CHAP.

Int. Cafar in

CHAP, XVII.

Of the forme of Gouernment obserued in the Common-wealths of the feuerall Citties and Nations: and what their Rulers and Magistrates were : as also how they at= tayned to their authority.

The particular gouernement in every Commonwealth of the Nations.

The fituation of the Heluetime in they and villages.

The Canton of Zurich.

Orgetorix cheefe in the confpiracie a gainst the which hanned to be reuealed, and hee impriloned.

ZE T vs now particularly illustrate the Gouernments in the Commonwealths of the Nations and Citties of the people. And first of all, let

vs speake of the Celts, among whome the Heluetians have beene reputed to be the most braue and valiant Nation. What administration & government of Commonwealth hath beene obserued in their cheefest City ? The City of the Heluetians was fituated betweene Rhein & Rhone, as also the Mountaine Jura, in a triangular forme or shape having twelve towns, and foure hundred Villages, & the whole divided into foure Regions: yet not for warre onely, but likewise for Instice, and for doing right to all men. There were two, named by Cafar himselfe, * Tigurine and Verbigenia . These Regions were as one Parliament, that had the whol charge of the affairs of the Realme, and for matters of confequence, were wont to come into a publike Councell; where for the Election of a Prince, hapned a conjuration amongst them of the Citie, to burne all their Townes, Burroughes, and Villages, to forfake their own limites, and by force to feize and furprize the kingdome of the Gaules.

For the better execution of this enterprize, Orgetorix, one of the most apparant and Noblemen was made choise of; and this act declared at the first, even a meere and certaine Timocraticall affliction. Orgetorix ouercome with a couetous affection of Soueraignty and reigning, imbraced this Confpiracy : but the iffue requireth observation, after the matter came to be discouered. This happening to the knowledge of the Heluctians, by some prefunptions and conicctures Orgetorix was taken prisoner, and they would have

compelled him (according to their manner) to confesse the truth; which if it fell out to be approued, their Law condemned him to be burned with fire. Orgetorix fummoned to this Sessions al his friends. kindred, and alliance, who were in number ten thousand men, together with his Support; the fernants and debters, who were a great bad cause by company, that they might assist in the power. case of judgement. Hee prevayled so well by this multitude of men, that hee freed himselfe from answering to his enditement, or disclosing uppon what occasion hee was incited to this matter of con-

In the meane space, while the Cittie (being offended) fought to maintain the execution of their Lawes by the fword & the Magistrates mustered men from all parts: Orgetorix dyed in prison, not without suspition (as the Heluctians imagi- Orgetorix ned) of murthering himselfe. Kingdomes thoght by the (faith Cafar) were bought in Gaul, by fuch kil himselse in as were most potent and abounding in riches, and fuch as had the meanes to command most lib. x. men at their pay. But what these kingdoms were, is easily to be coniectured . by the example of Orgetorix, and by others beside, whereof we are to speake hereafter. The Commonwealth then of the Heluetians, was parted in this manner by Regions, as at this day that of the Switzers is, who viurp and make vie of the borders of the Heluctians. Next, there were three great Cities of the Heduans and * Aruernians : let vs now furney these Commonwealths, and first that of the Heduanes, France who were the very brauest and most valiant people, when Cafar made his warre in Gaule. Let vs make a good obsernation of this Common-wealth, and how(in three kindes of a just and commendable gouernment) it was judicially ordered & maintained.

By a yearly election of Priests, in a certaine place, at a certaine time, & of divers | The election descents, amongs the Heduanes was cho- year by year sen one called a Vergobret, who had full power as a King, and absolute authoritie of life and death; but he was not permitted to go forth of their inrifdictions . Cafar in his first booke, making mention of the Heduanes, speaketh in this maner. Af- lul.cafar in ter he had summoned together the chiefe No- comment. Lib blemen and Princes in his Campe: amongst whom were Divitiacus and Lifeus, who at

Chap.17.

that time was the cheefe Magistrate, and by | of a few, privily congregated together in the Heduanes called Vergobret, created yeare by yeare, & having power of life and death.

Booke, where is declared how the Senate

and people of the Heduanes, were in a

great sedition about their Magistrate, for

the appealing whereof, Cafar was called:

these are his own words. The Princes Am-

balladors of the Heduanes, came to Calar de

intreated him, that he would come to succour

their Citie, especially in a time of such necessi-

ty, when their Common-wealth was in great

danger. For whereas (in former time) they

were wont to have but one Magistrate yeare-

ly, who had authority Royall: now there were

two that bare that Office, yet both making

their vaunt, to bee created by order of Law.

One of them was called Convictolitane, a

man in the floure of his youth of great power,

and well allyed: the other named himselfe

Cottus, of a most ancient race, and one that

was able to doe much: whose brother, named

Valetiacus, hadborne, the fame Office the

yeare before. Moreover they fayd, that all

the Citty was up in Armes, that the Senate

and the people were divided, each holding a-

part their leverall factions: And if this mu-

time should bee suffered for any long time a-

mong them, and no other means of help were

affoorded, they would make prize and bootie

and they also among whom the strife had

happened. When the whole Cittie was

(wel-neere) affembled together, and hee

was fully informed, that by the confent

The rest is reported in the seauenth

Of the Ancient Gaules: 10

The Heduans about theyr Magistrate Iul. Caf. in com ent Lib. 7.

Two Marifrares inflead of one Con-

uictolitane &

prifon.

"People by the River of

the Hedmans

Cæfar goeth in perfon, to appeale the diffention amongst the

an vnmeete place, and at an vnlawfull time; understanding withal, that one brother had subrogated the other in his place; contrary to the lawes, which plainly did prohibite, that two of one Linage and family (being both lining) (hould not onely bee difabled from creation in the Magistracie, but also not admitted into the Senat : Cuttus was compelled to give ouer his Office, and Consisteditane (who according to the custome of the Cityayp on the ceasing of the former Magistrats, had bene created by the Prieftes) had the full authority appointed to him. Cafar ning this imwrote all this himfelf, about the commo- portant diffetion of the Heduanes, whereby most clearly appeareth: that the royall dignitie was in the Vergobret, and the authority of the Seigneurie in the Senate; and finally, the

Democraticall power in all the people.

But to know what, and how noble this

City vvas, vve need no more then to look

vpon fo many Towns, as were in the pro-

tection of the Heduanes, whereof Cafar

speaketh in his Commentaries. Among

them of greatest note in this Common-

far (as he writeth in his first booke) meant Bibracte a

wealth, is Bibract named, whereunto Cas to go (as to the principal place of the He-anong the Hedusnes, &

Biturigias, where in elder times were the Macon. ancient Kings of the Gaules ; the Senones, d Legere, and Loyie.

Great dågere grow out of

duanes. And to this place (as it is recorof one another, and all must goe to generall ded in his featienth booke) Litauicus had made his re-Cafar, though he knew it to be a danwithdrawne himfelfe, because this yvas a treate. gerous matter, to forbeare his wars, and Citie highly authorized among the Hedepart from his enemy : yet, in regard he duanes, and there the Magistrat Connictowas not ignorant what great inconuclitane, with a great part of the Senat came niences do grow out of fuch diffentions: vnto him. Thither also were all the hoand fearing withall, that fuch a Cittie, fo stages of Gaule brought, when Cafars well allyed to the Romane people, which Guards were flaine at Nousedunum. And he had alwayes maintained, and furnished there likewife year assigned the Councel with all things he could deurfe; leaft alfo of all Gaule, against Cafar: and thither althe part that was most distructfull of him. fo (finally) Cefar, after that he had recoshould fend for ayde to King Vercingetouered the Heduanes, betooke himselfe to rix, he refolued to go thither, & prevent winter for that scason. This Citty (I say) the perill betimes. And because, by the was the very principal of the Heduanes, & /as the ambaffador faid in the Panegyrick a The Towne Lawes of the Heduanes, the cheefe Magifrate might not ablent himself out of the of Constantine) it was after called Julia, Po- of Chalons in countrey, as doubting thereby, that hee lia, Florencia, Flauia. Moreouer (in his 7. Burgundy. should diminish any part of their right & book) Cabillone, & Matifcon on Larar, Soane. Lawes ; hee went himfelfe in person vnto are named among the Heduanes, and Wo- c Matifeon, them, and called before him al the Senat,

wodung on Legere. Thefe that I havena- city of Celtimed vvere their Tributaries, but their honors were the greatest in all Gaul. For the Malconor

6The People of Beauuoy-fine in Celti-

Inl. Casar in Com. lib. 6

aith is 7.5

absolute authority in all Gaule anciently: according as hee hath written in his fixt Booke, but as wee may fooner fee in his first booke : at all times it had the principality throughout Gaule, especially before it had alpired to the friendship of the Romane people. But after that the Heduaneswere called Cofins and Brothers to the Romaines: what decrees of the Senate, how many times, and in what ho-.50.7. nourable manner were they pronounced on their behalfe? VVe fee then, that fuch and fo great a City of Celtick Gail, hath had this Democraticall Common-wealth, Plin in Lib.o. cap.17.6 18 butaries, but among the Cities allyed to-

The Com monwealth o the Aruerni ans, and the extendure thereof.

Straba in li 4.CAP.7. 4 ...

The two famousbarels o the Gaules.

Titus Linius is lib.61.64P.10.

Int. Cafar in

(who were in the protection of the Senones) and the Bellouacanes, are called by Cafer their Clients, as being under their protection. So then, the City and Commonwealth of the Heduanes, had the most and Plin numbers it not among the Tri-

Now, concerning the commonwealth of the Aruermans, it was sometime the cheefest of Gaule; for (anciently) there were two leagues throughout Gaule, as we reade in the first booke: the Heduanes were the ring-leaders of the one, and the Aruernians of the other. And Strabe hath related in his 1. booke, that that of the Aruernians, was more potent the the other; extending their Seigndury to farre as the confines of the Narbonians and Massilians to the Pyrenean Mountaines, to the Ocean, and to the Rheine: In like manner he foeaketh faithfully concerning two cruell battailes of the Gaules, given vnder the conduct of Bituitus the Aruernian: and Strabo reporteth them in the fame place. & Titus Liuius in his 61.booke. Theone was against Domitius, at the confluent of Sulve and of Khone; and the other against Fabiles at Tifara & the fame Rhone: whereby we may plainly perceive, that ther was the same forme of Common-wealth, as formerly we have spoken of.

For the Romane Senate, as it is in the Com. lib. 1. first booke, being willing that the vanquifhed Gauls, or repulled (at least) from the confines of the Roman Prouince, should continue in their franchises and liberties : nay, which is more, to the end that Gaule might remaine in the greater libertie; ordained, that Bituitus himfelfe (King of the Arvernians, according as Titus Linius ter=

and (by the same meanes) the Parisians | meth him in his 61. book) who was gone Bitunus & his to Rome to purge himselfe, shold be kept fen Congenin guard within Alba : but Congentiatus Rome to the his fon was taken and brought to Rome . Senate. Afterward, Celtilus the Father of Vercingetorix, although he had held the principall place of all Gaule in a warre, yet notwithstanding, because hee pretended to make himfelfe King, as it is the 7. booke, the City put him to death. Vercingetorix, by the meanes of his own people, was faluted as King of the Arnernians, and likewife it is faid in the fame book, that all the Gaules called him King: neuertheles, vppon the fame occasion hee was charged rix and his ta with treason, and hoe came in judgement ther both put before them as loueraigne Iudges, and in to death, the end, couetouines in defire of rule, pro. ued alike to the father and fon.

Thus the Kings were excluded out of king expelled the Commonwealth of the Aruermans, & out of the Aruermans companies companie they remained at liberty, even to the time nonwealth. of Cafar. And Pliny (in his time) remembreth it amongst the Cities of the Celtes, which were at freedom: and then it hadno leffe protection then they of the Heduans as is already made manifest by the numbring of military forces formerly declared. The city then of the Arnermans hath anciently bin the Lady over that of the Heduanes, and after that the Heduanes affected rather to bee brethren and cofines of the Romanes, then of the Aruernians : they became like vinto them in habits and manners. And when arthe laft comming of Gafar, the Heduanes were ouercome & spoiled by the Germaines, yet were they The Hedunis then far greater in forces . Finally, when ranfacked and (by the courteste and favor of Cafar) the spoiled by the Heduans were not only replanted in their former condition, but it plainly appeared that they had more countenance and authority then ever before: yet the other were equall to them, and alike in wealthic possessions. But in fauour and esteem thoroughout all Gaul, they were much greaterias the election of Vercingetorix hath fifficiently showne: V Vherefore we may perceite, that the liberty of a Common- The freedom welth remained in these two cities of Cel- wealth, in we tike Gaul. For the remainder of the other Caltike Gaul that were of meaner ranke, hee fpeaketh Cities. not fo much as of any one King, or of a Prince: but only we heare no other name. then of the people, and of the City.

The city of the Senons, was accounted Sensin Celli among ca.

Cauarinus K, the Senon butexpulled

Villenufin

Chap.17.

The common wealth of the

The Citie

Chartres in

bare vnto him.

Celts Cities.

Tafgetius K. nuces flain by his cuemies.

The commor

wealth obser-

ued among the Belgians,

People of

rity among the Celts. Of some store of Towns that were vnder it, Cafar hath named two, Agendecum & Vellaunodunum. Cefar wrought by certaine meanes, that Cauarinus was their King ; because Moritaleus, brother to Canarinus and his anceftors, had held the fame authority in that realme for Cafar had undertaken this colour only to establish a singdome there Neuertheleffe, the Senones, although Cafar was prefent, effayed by a counce I publike to put Cauarinus to death. And as he (having intelligence thereof) fled away, they purfued him to far as the Frontiers, expelling him from his house & kingdom The commonwealth of the Parifians was the like, by that which we reade in his 7. Booke. For the Parifians, by a Common Councell of divers Citties, vindertooke warre for the liberty of their country, ele-Cting Camulogenss to bee their commander by reason of the experience he had in actions of Armes, and the good will they

Carnutum also was a great City, as already hath bin shewn, & Cafar wrought the like meanes to establish a kingdome there. Among the Carnutes there was one Talgetius, a ma descended of a great place | they had a field (apart) of great largenesse, and whose Ancestors had held dominion in that City. Cafar (as he faith himfelf) in regard of his vertue, and for the good wil he had found in him, because he had bene a great helpe to him in all the wars, planted him in the fame place which his An-ceftors had held. He had reigned but 3. veeres, when his enemies being authorized by many men of the city, openly flew him. These Cities then had their Bruti, as well as Rome. So Cafar named the Senate of the Eburones, Lexobians, and Venetes. At the fame time, Teutomatus vvas king of the Nitiobrigians, but by a publike rity & number of people. For their exten-Councel of Gaul, hee yeelded obedience | dure was from the limits of the swessions, against Cafar. This may serue as suffici- & also fro the Wormans, so termed at this

What then is to be faid of the Citties of the Belgians? By what manner of Empire were they particularly gouern'd? The extendure of the men of Rhemes was very great: because it iouned with the Sequans, Mediomatrices, Treuirians, Veromanduans, and the Swessiones. Notwithstanding, in all these parts, he nameth but two towns

among the principals, and of great autho- | or Cities, Durocottorum and Bibrax. In | The City of the fixt Booke, the councell of Gaule was France. assigned at Durocottorum; and in the fecond booke Bibrax was befiedged. Concerning the men of whemes, in the time of Cafar, they hadde the managing of the Gauls, and held the fecond place in dignity, next to the Heduanes. Cafar nameth their Senate, and the Prince and Prouoft. of the city, as that Vertifeus, whereof wee have already tooken.

In the time of Cafar, the Swelliones had Divitiacus as their king, who was the most ones, and held powerfull man in all Gaul, and who opened a great part on this fide of the coun-

try which he helde, holding also the Empire of Great Bretaigne. After Galba (of whom he hath fooken)he fucceeded. But vve may vvell perceine hereby, what manet of kingdome this was in regard that the Swessions (who yvere brothers & coufines to the men of Rhemes) yled the fame course of authority, and the same lawes, having one and the same Government. and one Magistrate, as they had. For such are the words of Cafar himfelf, by whom one only Magistrate was allowed in their cities. But yet notwithstanding the Sweffiones, although they were brethren, yet and very fertile, and twelue towns, where of Gefar nameth onely one which is Nouiodunum, and which Cafar (after the Belgians vvere retired to him) palsing tho- to P ris calle rough the countrey, essayed to surprize. Noyon. But hee could not compaffe it, by reason of the deepnesse of the dirch, and heighth

few people to defend it. We come now to the Bellouscanse, what kind of commonwealth years kept among them ? These men vvere highly esteemed with the Belgians, for their vertue, authoent, concerning the government of the day(even there where the river of Seine, throvves it felfe into the fea) fo far as Calete, known by the name of Callice. Cafar nameth Bratuspantium, a city of the Bello- dy. uacanes. But by vyhat forme of commonvvealth did they gouern their city? They chose their Princes, as (among other) Corbus, who though his Army had bin defeated; yet vould he neuer for any discomfort happing, or possible to befal hm; nei-

of the wall: and yet there were but verie

the borders of Langres, and low Bourgun-

Belgart.68.dif

A Towne in

The Senate & of the Bello. uacanes.

woods, but fought valiantly, & in wounding many, compelled his conquerors to runne in vpon him, and so to kill him in mention of the Senate of the Bellouocanes, and authority of the Comminalty:whece enfued the excuse, which the Senate of the Bellouacanes made to Cafar : That during the life of Corbus the Senate had never the like power in the City, as the common ignorants had.

But now concerning the most potent Cittle of the * Neruians, after what man-*People inhabiting about ner of order wer they gouerned? The bo-Tournay in dy of the Wermans, is divided into mem-Belgica. bers of divers names, as of Hannonia, Fladers, and Brabant, and the name of the Wermans fignifieth no more then a Citic or Towne, including (as now adayes our words arc) of Hannoyers, Flemings, & Bra-Hannovers, banders . And why you may aske mee? Flemings and Brabanders. Whereto I can make no other answere, then as already I have done, when as the

Wermans had neither Towne or City: but I will discourse the bounds and limites of that fometime most noble Citty, according as Cafar himselfe hath described it; obserue then what I shall say vnto you. When the Ambians had fubmitted

Country, runneth now through the mid-

dest of Henault: wherefore the Countrev

of the Hannoyers, is comprehended within

of the Neruians. Of Cafar himselfe wee

may learne the limites of the countrey of

Flanders, which is in firme land, and also

of Brabant, for there is a passage in the fift

book, which maketh well to this purpofe.

VVhen Ambiorix (after that Sabinus and

Cotta, Lieutenants Generals, were ouer-

come with a Legion and fiue Companies

neere to Vatuca, which is in the Eburones

land) exhorted the Weruians to doe the

like to the Legion that passed the winter

feafon to their country, vnder the charge

of Quintus Cicero . Hee per swaded eafily

(faicth Casar) the Neruians, and there-

themselues, Casar went thither, to goe to iourny to th the Neruians which were theyr Neighbors. And having made three daies iournev into the Country of the Neruians, he found by report of some that hee had taken : that there was no more then tenne miles distance from his Campe to the riuer * Scaldis . This Scaldis, which passed thorough the middest of the Neruians

*The River Skeld,running through Tornay & fa ling into the

Cæsar his

Neruians.

Iul.Caf. in co ment.Lib. 8.

ther forfake the fight, nor retire into the upon dispatched messengers immediately to the Centrones, Grudians, Leuakes, Pleumofians and Gordunes who were all under their obedience, and joyned together the greatest their rage and fury. Calar also maketh forces that they were able to make. These are the very words of Cafar. But the Grudians & Leuakes were enskirted with Louane, in the Countrey of Brabant; and the Gordunes (as much to fay as the men of Gaunt) were in the Mediterrane countrey of Flanders. Likewise the Pleumosians, whom fome doe hold to be them of Cortroy: And they that are of this opinion, do plant the Centrones in the Diocesse of

> This so great Commonwealth of the Nerusans, and which was of fuch large ex-The Prince & tendure, elected a Prince, fuch as Boduog- Neruians. natus was in the first warre of the Neruians. It had also a very great Senat, for Cafar reckoneth up fixe hundred Senators of the Neruians. After that the Atrebatianswere vanquished, Casar give them Comius (who was of the fame countrey)to bee their King : that is to fay, that of a Prince, which was but for a time, he created one that should continue. Hee mainrained the franchifes of the City, & gaue to them their laws and rights, and annexed the "Morines to his Empire. Neuertheleffe, this King enjoyed his authoritie of Tirwinin no long while, for after that the AtrebaBelgica, of attach had put themselves vnder Casars o. losephus Mobeyfance: his fway ceafed, & Comius bare let fayth) the Armes against Cafar again. The Eburones then also had two Kings, Ambiorix & Catrunleus; but their authority was fuch that the commons had no leffe commad ouer them, then they had to contradict them:

The commonwealth of the Morines was answerable to that of the Heluctians, althogh it was divided by divers villages,& had extendure farre off from them: as to Callis, and all along the coast of Piocardie euen fo far as the * Menapians, who dwell of Geiderland vppon the confluent of heine, as also of & Cleucland, the Meuze or Maze, and who were their in Belgia neighbors, as is to be seene in the Teuethers war, in the 4.booke. But the Treuirians, as well for a kinde of gouernement, (wherein they were very skilfull) as also for the occasion of tumult and sedition, very frequent among them; refembled in quality the Heduans. Cingetorix and Indiciomarus quarrelled for the principalitie,

Grudians.Le uakes, Pleumofians and Gordunes.

Aquitaine.

Soldurii (as Cafar fayth) were in the Gaulith Language,fuch kinde of men, as deftinied & owed themfelues to the mity of any. to take part in all their good

Cefar in comment lib. 4.8c

> Great Brirain had the fame gouernement as Gaule, and

orn.Tacitue in .4.cap: 7.

euen as did y other two, Connictolitane & Cottus but Cafar feated again Cingetorix as he had done Connictolitane. Thus the gonernment of the Belgian Citties, were mingled with three formes of estates. The Santone Aquitaines seemed to bee

The people of Santone in

Chap. 17.

gouernedby fuch a kind of comonwealth. For that City, when the made proofe of her own vertue, by fighting both on foot and horseback, and well to sustaine all asfaults in her own defence: the rendred hir necke to fuch authority. But Adcantuanus their Prince (of his owne power) stept in to do his duty and fallied forth with 600 *Soldures, or Soldury. Wherefore I think that the gouernment of the Gauls Commonweales, hath bin already fufficiently explicated, and by fo many examples, as we may well conclude, that the principalities of the Gaules (according to Cafar) were fuch as wold not fuffer that the fubiects (hould be oppressed or circumuented but if any Prince did otherwife, hee helde no authority amongst his subjects. VVe have spoken then enough of the go-

the ancient Gaules. Let vs now liften vnto the Commonwealth of Great Britaine, and that likewife of the Germains. There is mention made in the fourth Book, concerning the Princes of the Britains, with their conferences and confultations held among the felues, for the common good of Great Britaine. And in the fift booke, the common councell is observed by Casar; and that the whole charge and command of warre against Casar, was put into the power of Casibelane, and the diucrsity of Kinges which were subject vnto that common Councell, doe sufficiently declare, that Great Britaine vied the fame kinde of gouernment that Gaule did, Cafar also dethe Gofmains livereth (almost) the very same governevery little dif-fering.

wealth (faveli he) either endured war made

vponit, or attempted any, Magistrates were

elected to undertake the charge of the war,

and they might alfo take or faue life. In times

of peace, there was no common Magistrate,

but the Lordes of the Countries, and of the

Burroughes, who exercifed law to their vaf-

fals, and appealed all their contentions. In the time of Tacitus, Germany had fome Kings : but they were fuch as had more honor then power; in other mat-

ters they were like to the Gauls manners. They made Kings (faith he) for their Nobi- Concerning lity, and Captaines for their vertue. Nor had taines among thole Kings any undefined or free power, or the Germans the Captaines were obeyed more by example, and the Com the Captaines were obeyea more by example, panions of then by command: either whether they were winces. deliberated; in fight, or doing their denoyre woon the point, making wonderfull proofe of their prowelle. As concerning the Captaines or Princes (as the fame Author relateth) & likewife for them, termed companions of the Princes, thus it follow-

The Princes also they elect in the publike Councels, which doe hold the jurifdiction of The election Burroughes and villages. Every man hath of their Prinan hundred Companions , who are of the po- ces. pularity, and doe give affistance unto them in Councell together, and also in their Authority. A Noble or generous flock of fame, whose high deserts of theyr Fore-fathers, doe challenge to have the dignity of a Prince. 4. mone st the younger fort of people : They are accompanied with other of more robust complexion; and such as have had (long time) uernment and authority observed among | good proofe made of them : and yet, they bluft | weaker. not a totte, to bee feene amongest fuch Companions, albeit there are some degrees in this companie, according to his indeement whom they follow. VVhy then I may fafely fay of the Germaines (according to Tacitus) that their Magistrates have bin answerable to their Kings, Captaines, or Princes, and likewise to them called the Compa-

nions of Princes. I come againe vnto the Knights of the Gaules, which (in the times of warre) have the managing of the affayres . And thefe Int. Cafar in Knights (thus faith Cafar in his fift book) Com. lib. 6. when there is neede, and any warre hapneth: The knightes they are all employed, and according as each of the Gaules man hath authority and meanes, fo hath hee Cafar himfelf most fernants and clyents about him, or this is the onely fauour and power that they doe know. Heerein is continued the ancient Gaules manner, for election of Magifirates, and we may learne by a new argument : that the Gaules Princes were chafen for their Vertues, and for their deferts towards the Common wealth, and that this eminencie came from Vertue ones ly . For every Prince would not fuffer his Subjects to bee oppressed, nor deceyned (So hath Indus Cafar formerly faid) but if hee Should to otherwife, he must beare no authority among his people. And hereto doth this

The stronger qualit alwain to helpe the

liufly make answer: That this is the onely fauour and power which the Knightes knowe, if according as they have most meanes and authoritie, fo they shall have the more servants, and the more Clients

about them.

The differece betweene fer uants and cli

By feruants or vaffailes, are meant fuch as frand obliged or indebted (of whom I haue formerly (poken) and who, vppon that occasion are dedicated to the service of those Knights : for, these vassals serue as Waggoners to their Masters, and carry their thields. And the Clients (as it is in the seauenth Booke) neuer dare, euen in the extreamity of all misfortune, forfake or leave their Lords. Thus then the vaffals or fergants, do accompanie theyr Knights and Masters in warre, and the Clients doe attend on their Lords, and these are the companions of the Germans, whereof Tacitus (peaketh, as already hath bene faide.

Strife for po pularitie, and eminency in the Princes

Princes and their follow ers fhould b alike in they

Corn. Tacit in l.5.c. 11

There is great lealousie amongst these

companions, who shall have the cheefest place about his Prince: and amongst the Princes, who shalbe followed by the most and best companions or attendants. It is held a high dignity, to bee dayly rounded with a great troope of young and choyle men : it is an honour in time of peace, & fecurity in time of warre. This honor, and this glorie is not onely in eueric Nation, but even in the neighbouring Cities, coueting as much to be accompanied with fuch a company of men, as with fo manie vertues. Whereof practife is made by Ambassages, and plenty of presents sent; nay, oftentimes, they will vndertake Armes, for the bare name to be termed a fouldier. When a man is in the fight, it is shame to a Prince to be surmounted in vertue: and it is a more shame to his follower, if he doe not equall the Vertue of his Prince. It is a most infamous & shame full thing, and not to be washed off in a mans whole life time, to return from the battell, his Prince being there flaine. The principall Oath that he takes, is to defend and sustaine him, and if he doe any braue or worthy acte in his owne person, to referre it to his Princes glory onely. Princes fight for victory, companions and followers fight for their Prince. Tacitus writeth : The Prince recompenceth Such as follow him : for they receive (faith he) from the Princes liberality: this Horse of service that

victorious and bloudied Sword: for (uch Bankets, although they are not properly ferued, yet are they sumptuous to them, dy men are well contented with fuch wages.

But can you tell me, what were the re- Recompences compences of the Knights amongest the to the Gaules Gauls, and who managed this other part theinferuses of their Common-wealth? As for the recompence of the Druydes, it hath bin fpoken of already, which was honor, the greatest payment that could be, and only proper to vertue. Neuerthelesse the Common-wealth it selfe could not be ingratefull towards them in recompences:confidering that there were Imposts & Tolles. which appertained to each Cittie, as is to be seene in the first Book, and their greatnesse of Tribute, in the fixt Booke. Tacitus hath declared among the Germaines, what worthy recompences were performed to Princes. Citties had a custome to Recompense collect (with their owne good living) by the poll or head, either of their cattle, or Germaines. of their fruites, to give to their Princes: which being received as an honor, ferued alfo to supply necessity. About all, they tooke delight in presents given by theyr neighbouring Nations, not onely by particular persons, but in general; as of choise Horses, faire Armours, trappings for seruice, and also of Chaines. And since then

they have taught vs to accept of mony. But let vs pursue other manners of the Gaules Common-wealth. Cafar doth often accuse the infirmity of the Gauls, be- Cafar his ble caufe in aduice they were fodain and mu-table: but especially in this place of his 4. Gaules for their varia-Booke. There is a common custome (fayth blenes arish he) amongst them, to compell pallengers or neffe. way-faring men, to stay whether they will or Inl. Casar in no, and to enquire of them, what each man hath heard, or knoweth of every matter what foeuer. The popular and common people, they flocke about Merchants in the Citie and constrain them to tell, out of what countries they come, and what things they knowe, or have heard of there. The ancient Gauls, had not onely this wonderful defire, to know matters of nouelty: but besides, that they should be imparted, and made knowne to them and theirs.

I will fet downe two examples of some admiration, the first is in the fift booke, of the victorie which Iulius Cafar had against the Neruians. During the bruite of Cafars victory(this he writes himselfe) uians. Iul Callin com

and noifes ob-

ferued among the Gaules.

Chap. 17.

the men of Rhemes (with incredible (wiftneffe) carried tidings thereof to Labienus, in-Comuch, that where is he was about threescore miles from the Garrison of Cicero, and that Cafar cam: thether after the nmth hour of the day; yet not withstanding, there arose fuch a cry or noise before the gates of the Campe, and before it was midnight; that the men of Rhemes (onely thereby) gave under-Standing to Labienus of the victory, or made a signe of their reloyeing with him. But the other is an especiall, and most notable cry or noife, when the Romanes were ouerthrowne at Genahum before Sun-fetting: yet before the first watch was set. the cry was heard to the Arnernians, the noise running through all the Townes of Gaul, as Cafar affirmeth in his feuenth Booke. For fo foone as any important matter happened, by a cry they made it knowne in the fields, and fo along thorough the Countries, and still as it was heard, others fent it in like manner to their neighbours, and according as it came to them. And that which had bene done at Genabum be-

fore Sun-ferting, was knowne in the con-fines of Aruerne before the first watch, &

vet the distance was aboue an hundred &

fixty miles. So faith Cafar, and haply it

may feeme, that that fingular description

of Fame, which is fet downe in Firgill.

Fame, an enill, vnmatchable in swiftnesse, Is sudden, moving, gadding with rashnesse.

tooke hence the first originall.

Virg.in lib.9.

ling lyar.

Cafar describeth the like celerity and

effect of this cry, as Virgill doth of Fame. This concerneth the bruite and cries among the Gaules, whereby being moued, they often held Councels of important faires. And they do not make their account by tingfor genematters : wherof (not long after) they re- the daies, as we we to doe, but by the nights . pented themselues, in regard they gave The fault ensuing on their liberty, is, that they credite to vncertaine novies, and found them in the end to be nothing but fables, But hee that thus reproued the common | flacke to come. people of Gaule of lightnesse; commended their conftant & politicall wisedome. Iulius Cafar in Those Citties (faith he) which are accounted to gouern best their Commo-weals, have their Lawes, which ordaine, that if a man that bath heard any thing of his neighbour (eyther by report or otherwife) concerning the estate of the Common-wealth: he is to impart the fame to the Magistrate and not to any other whatfoener. Becaufe it hath bin ofte feen that rafbs

beaded men, and of small understanding, A good obare affrighted by falle noises, or prouoked on to whappy attempts, and (dreadlesse) enter into important enterprizes. The Magistrate concealeth what he thinkerh fittest; and difconcreth to the Commons any matter needfull to be knowne.

This last passage of Cafar, refuteth (ve-Popular ferrv (frongly) popular feruntude, for it testifieth, that even in those Cities, which go- und by Cafar uerned best their Common-weales? that ver the Commons have their authority, because the Magistrate imparteth to the people, what is necessary for the to know. Strabe auducheth in his fourth Book, that Strabe in Lib. this was also yied in the Councels of the cap. 7. Gaules. If any one (faith he) did interrupt him that bake : the publike Minister flept up with a drawns (word, and ving threatnings to the party, commanded him to hold his peace. If he would not do it, he advertised him in the same manner a second and third time. In the end, he would cut off fuch a peece of his garment, as the rest sould afterward do him no feruice. Tacitus expressent it more plainly, as hee doth many other things ; concerning the manner of electing Magistrates, and the Councels kept among the Germanes.

The Princes (faith hee) hold a Councell wherein matters of meanest importance, and such also as are of greatest consequence, are handled together : And yet in fuch manner. that those affaires which appertaine unto the people, are managed and ordered by the Princes . They assemble together (if there happen no (udden accident or aduenture) on certaine daies, either at the new Moone, or the full of the Moone: For they beleeve that those seasons are most happy to treate on ther afare not altogether on the day assigned: but two or three daies is lost to attend for such as

The same Authour declareth another strange thing of the Germanes, affirming, that many times they deliberate at Ban- Banquets by quets to reconcile enemies, to make alli- the Germans ances, and to gaine grace of Princes, yea, euen then to confult of peace or warre: because as then (rather then at any other time) they have their spirits most open, cyther to fimple thoughts, or more earneft to them of greater importance. This

Nation,

Corn. Tacit. in li.5.cap. 3

daies of mee-

Matters con-

Chap.17.

n open field.

Nation, which is neyther fubrile nor cautelous, will discouer the secrets of their foules in iesting manner: for the minde being naked and discovered, bethinks it selfebetter on the day following, & then hath more regard to eyther time. They deliberate when they know no dissembling, and determine when they cannot erre. Such also was the custome of the Country, when the Gaules helde their chiefest consultations: as hath already bene declared in the leuving of their men for warre.

Titus Liunes, speaking of the Gaules,

reporteth the fame in his one and thirti-

eth Booke laying. Then is feene in them

Tit, Liu.in li.31 Decad.6.

Gaules can

armed to

Councell.

a new and terrible apparance, because (according to the custome of their Nation) they are armed when they come to Councell. VVhv then the Pallas of the ancient Gauls, came The ancient herselfe armed to the Councell: and because they would not do any thing, but it should expresse the courage of the Gauls, their affemblies were alwayes made by found of Trumpet. For Hirtius writeth fo of the Bellouacanes Senate, having knowne their misfortunes by all contrary things. Corbus being flaine, all their Caualiery ouerthrowne, and the very valiantest of their foote-souldiers, when they thought that the Romans drew nere

The garment of the german fitting in couand Hostages to Cafar.
What shall wee say of the Germanes? What garments did they weare whe they came to councell? They did not any thing (faith Tacitus) neither in affaires publike or particular, but all in Armes . They went armed about their daily negotiations, and came in the fame manner to their Banquets . Blame not then the councels of the Gaules to be done in Armes: for the Romane Oratour could fay in his owne Language.

vnto them then fuddenly they affembled

a Councell by found of Trumpet, crying

all with one voyce, to fend Ambassadors

Let Armes give place to Gownes. Because Armes are the accoustrements

of Warre, and the Gowne is the habite of

The habits o Warreand Pcace.

Peace, followed and attended on by Eloquence. And when the Court of Rome was enuironed with fouldiers of Armes, at the pleading of * Mile: the spirit therof was not onely terrified, but the whole body also trembled with feare. But Elo-

quence vnited it felfe with the Armes of the Gaules, so that there wanted not at one time and place, both Commanders of warre, and learned Orators: for the Gaules Orators (by the irradiation of Armes) were encouraged to speake the more brauely. Princes were pleading Orators in the Gaules councels, where (in generall) all might heare, that had intaror. tereft in the case in question, as is enident by the examples of Cafar.

Among the Germanes (faith Tacitus) in publike Councels, the King or Prince, according to his age, according to Nobility, according to the place for warre, and according to his readinesse in otterance: was much rather heard for authority in perswading, then any power in commanding. It was also permitted in a full Councell, to accuse of crimes deferuing death. The cry or noise of the people, by liftening fauourably or otherwise: fignified to the Romane Orators, that their Oration had found good or bad fuccesse. But the counfell of the Gaules, which was made in Arms, as it was reasonable; made a figne by their Arms (although the clattering of weapons was a figne among the Gaules) how they tooke liking of that which had beene faid. Cafar writeth fo in his 7.Booke, speaking of the Oration of Vercingetorix: All the people made a cry (saith he) and according to their custome, made a

clattering with their Armes, as they do, when

they approve the Oration of any man.

Marcellinus declareth in his 21. Booke, that after Iulian had made his Oration: the Army of the Gaules applauded him, and mingled dreadfull cries, among the loud clashings of their Targets. The Gaules consultations were in Armes; their Orations were approued by Armes, and the oath they take, was voon Armes. The Caruntes (as it is in the 7. Booke) promised in a full councell of the Gaules, that they would be chiefest in the warre against Cafar, and because they could not in fielde against Casa: giue assurance by the meanes of Hostages, fearing how matters might come aboutsto the end that all might be certaine and fworne, after they had brought together al their Enfignes of warre (as alwaies they yied to do in very ceremonious manner) they requested that they wold begin the war, and the other would not forfake them. And in the same Booke there is a most holy oath, to assure the battel given

Corn. Tacit. m li,q.cap.q

tulius celar is

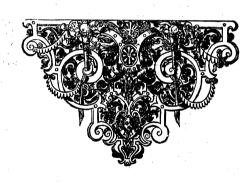
The Carun-

by the horsemen. They on horse cry alto- | ners and customes of ancient Gaule, the | The Authors gether, that this holy oath may be impofed on enery man: Neuer to be received into his house; neuer to goe backe to his parents, nor to his wife, vntill hee haue twice thwarted ouer the enemies armies. Whereo that of Marcellinus conformeth. speaking of Iulian: All were commanded to sweare in his Name, & setting solemnly the points of their swords vnto their throtes, made execrable oathes and curfes on themselues, if they brake their

But now it is time to finish our discourfe. Hauing thus reported the man-

temperance of the peoples lines, their affurance in dangers, their wifedome in artes and disciplines, their instice, in ruling and establishing the best meanes, for good ordering and governing their common-wealth: There remaineth now no more, but if we can recover the like levfure (having finished some other studies already entred on) we hope to proceed in the manners and customes of our new Gaules or Frenchmen, which will yeelde the more delight and pleasure, because the fubicct is of a farre more excellent na-

The End of the first Booke.



his long labor

"The Roman that was defended by



THE SECOND BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Of the new Gaules, or those that are called (now adaies) Frenchmen or the people o France Succeeding after their Predeces fors the Ancient Gaules.



S among all parts of the Earth, Europe, (though it is the least) holdeth the verie cheefest rancke, as beeing the principall, and most worthy: So

it is not to bee doubted, but that among all the Countries of Europe, France muft needs be the most excellent in al respects. The people of Arabia that now are, have a customary kinde of faying, that if the world were a Ring, the Citty of Ormuz mustbee the Beaziell, Colletor Head, wherein the most precious Stone is to be enchased. By much better reason then. may it lawfully be faide of France, and a true faying:

Romfard in

try of Europe

It is the leffer eye, & the Pearle of the world.

As one of her owne Poets formerly hath fung. Which no way can be accounted strange, when consideration is justly made, of the great blefsings, commodities, and graces of Heauen, wher with the Land is and hath beene endowed. For there is nothing else found to be comparedtherewith; be it if we regard the fertility and aboundance of all things, not onfertility of all ly necessary for the life of man, but also for all forts of pleasures and delights. Bec it alfo, for the iweetnesse, temperature, & amenity of the Ayre: not having any other, more graciously regarded by the eie

of the Sunne. No leffe commendable (for valour) is the courage and spirit of the people, which have inhabited there to this present time, who not onely have extended their renowne through all Lands habitable: but also have excelled in whatsocuer can bee applied to the height of

Aboue all (as most admirable) is the dignity, greatnesse, and Maiesty of their The Maiesty Kings, redoubtable and exalted (for their the Kings of vertues truely heroycall) aboue all other, France. on the earth. In this excellency then, ther on the earth. In this excellency then, ther three are three things to be discoursed: the first guments of is that of the Landit felfe; the fecond is this infient of the People, and the third is of their discourse. Kings, which refult as well from the two Precedents, as from their owne proper

Concerning the goodnes of the Land, it were an infinite labour to expresse to The goodnes many blefsings, and all things elfe which and excellenit produceth euen of best vie for the life Country. of man, and that in such aboundance, as fufficeth not only for the people; but alfo are imparted and dispersed to other Nations, without any incommodity to it felfe, and (in a manner) not to bee difcerned. The fat fields, covered with good wheate and all graines elfe of any kinde, filles the Graunges & Garners enery haruest season. The Mountaines and Hilles. cloathed with goodly Vineyards, which wines. bring foorth most healthfull and delicate wines : & almost enery where stored with Fruites. all kinde of fruite trees. There is not a jote of vnprofitable Land, all is laboured and husbanded, or ferues for pasturage for Pestures. feeding beafts, which caufeth fuch plenty of all forts of flesh. There ye may likewise behold goodly VVoods & Forrests, filled Weods and with all kinde of game and Venison. Most Forrests. excellent Flax & Hempe, wherof cloth is Flax & Hemp. made in great aboundance. Dyers woad alfo, Scarlet holme-oake, Saffron, with

Cornes.

Cicero pro 1-on-

Plin,in lib. 18.cap. 7. Nitidifsimi panis reddere.

uam far alind

Of the Country of France.

onely for Medicine, but also nourisha-Nauigable &

Chap.1.

ithing riuers.

Houses, Cit-

tics, Townes.

and Village.

The great

Of Wheate &

Heereto I may adde, the admirable fight of great and goodly Rivers, both nauigable, and abounding with fifth, difperfing themselves through France, as veines in the body of man: making the mid-land Regions as apt for commerce. as those on the Sea-coasts. Beside a great number of other waters, great Pooles & Pondes, Fountaines, and cleere running Riuers, all meruailous and delectable. Then have yee goodly houses and buildings; an infinite number of rich and great Cities, Townes, Burroughs, Villages, Caftels, and other Edifices. Moreouer, greater plenty of people, then in any other Region of the world. This is that which is so much wondred at by strangers, who haue thought France to bee a terrestriall Paradife: making more account (in this case) then Frenchmen do themselues, because it is so ordinary and frequent vnto them. But to fuch as have fayled into farre | lumella makes his moane, at that which are Roll, Pin.

felicity of France fo farre beyond other, and therby to know their owne good. All these graces might much better bee acknowledged, if we did but feuer and confider them particularly. First, for Wheate and other Corne,

it a happinesse to themselves, to see the

which is the principall fustentation, to maintaine and strengthen the bodye of man; it encreafeth and aboundeth fo in France (and that of the best that can bee) more then in any part of the world, and likewise all other forts of graine. It is not a time now to acknowledge fo great a happinesse, for wee see that our Elders have better knowne and felt it, when the Land was not, throughly fo well husbanded and tilled. As wee discerne by that Strabo in lib. 4. which is written by Strabo, Julius Solinus Popponius Mela, who speake hintib, 3, ca, 2 thereof expressely. Also Cicero reporteth, that (in his time) was brought to Rome and into Italy, great quantities of Corne from the Gaules. Pliny the Great hath alfo obferned the fame, for fpeaking of the Corne of France, he faith: That is was most cleane Corne, and that it yeelded foure pound of Bread, more then any other.

many fingular Plants and Hearbs, not I furnisheth herselfe with the Wheate and Graine of France and that it is to her as a nurfing Mother. And Portugallit felfe, which is described to bee one of the most happy and fertile countries of the Spains, hath recourse to France: as we may see by y which Ozorius faith, a Portugall Bithop of Sylues; & the same is reported likewife by others, who have written of Relati-

And for Wines, the country is no leffe of the plenty fruitfull, in producing such as are very good, and in great assumence. This hash alto beene confessed by our Ancients, ac- Plin, in li. 14 cording to the testimonie of Solinus and cap.2. Pliny, who renowne Bituricam witem. Pet- Bituriges Vihaps this may be interpreted not of Bourges: but of the wine about Bordeaux, wher- 14.cap.6. of the people are called Biturines Viui/ci. He speaketh also of the wine of Feziers, whereto hee gineth the cheefest place among all them of Gaule. And Iulian the In Milphogome.
Emperor said, that there were good vines The Lumber in the grounds of Paris. Behold how Col appelation 1. remote strange Countries, or otherwise the Italians did, for planting of Vines: demias condihauchadintelligence of them: they hold for faking their owne country, they were Cycladibus ac to feek in the delicate grounds of France, recionibus Galin the Ifles Cyclades, and those of Ande lies Betteift louzia. Whereby we may perceine, that he equalleth the grounds of France and their wines, with them of Muscadella. Greeke, and of Spaine.

Pliny faieth, that in Italy they highly e- Plindib. 14.0.8 fleemed the Grapes of France, making Mirum voique mention also of a certaine kinde of admirable Grape there growing; which daily que ob id Stree turneth it felfe to the Sunne, like as the in Italia Galli.
Heliotropium doth, and therefore is called camplacere in after the Greeke word Streptos. Wine is trans Alpes vetransported from France to Rome, which is there accounted very delicious: efpecially that which is gathered in the grounds of Vienna, which they call Picatum, as Plus Plut, Lib. 5. tarch declareth in his Sympoliaques. Not quell 3. withflanding there is a difficulty found in these words, as namely that which Popiseus faith, in the life of the Emperour Probus. That he had permitted to the Frenchmen to have and plant Vines. Notwithstanding, it appeareth that they were in France before his time:

The residention of this dependeth thas that by the Edict of the Emperor Domini in he had enjoyned to the inhabitants of It is well known in these dayes, that Spaine the Provinces, to cut all the Vines, fowe

Plin.in lib.

France abou

view taken, that fome yeares there was abundance of Wine & fearfity of Corne: he conceined, that the eare-able Landes were left barren, in regard of the Vines. Afterward, the Emperor Probus tooke off those inhibitions in Gaule, permitting them to have Vines. And fo to this day. the wines of France are transported by great quantity into England, Flanders, Holland, Germany, Denmarke, Sucden, and into other Notherne Regions.

Of the plenty

of fruit-trees, fruite Trees, bearing (in abounding affluence) most excellent, dainty and delicious fruites: as well stone-fruite of all forts, as those of other nature. And yet notwithstanding, Italy and Spaine cannot vaunt to have any that come not into France: as Oranges, Citrones, Pomegranates, Oliues,&c. For though the Land doth not produce these eucry where: yet notwithstanding, Provence & Languedock, which is the Narbone Gaule of our Ancients, do beare the same fruites, yea, and much better, as hath beene noted by experience. Also Strabo observed it well enough. The Country of Narbone (faith he) produceth all the fame fruites as Italy doth.

Moreouer, France produceth store of

Our Ancients have also given thereto another commendation, to have great ftore of pasture grounds, and so (by confequence) plenty of beafts to feed in the. Strabo testifieth as much, making so good esteeme of the woolles and clothes of this Country : that they are carried thence to divers parts, and therewith all Italy is fufficiently furnished. But ouer and beside the great commodity, enfuing bythe flesh of domesticke creatures: there are Deare in abundance, as also all kinde of game, &

And to the ende that nothing should

be wanting, in necessary matters for sup-

port of life: the Country is not destitute

of good, proper and profitable horses, as

well for ordinary trauell, as also for com-

bates, fights, and battels; bred in the Na-

tion, and continually nourished. The Ro-

manes were thereto addicted, but princi-

pally to the horses of France: as is to bee

feene in Trebellius Pollio, who faith, That

the Horses of the Celts were renowned about

allother. Pollux the Grammarian, in-

terlaceth (among the rest) dogges of a

good and gallant breede, apt for the Celts

Fowles in no meane plenty.

Deare and ther game.

Strade in Liv.4.
The Jauvet
implese esperade il
Napulatire a muous Gamp i Irania

Plenty of Pa

Strabe in Lib.

Plenty of

flurages.

Plety of good

In Claudio. Quid equaru quas fama no-bilitat Celtica rum? Gnomaft, lib.5 CAP.S.

excepted.Induced fo to do, because vpon | hunting, or such dogs as the Gauls vsed.

This may ferue sufficiently for terrestriall creatures, because to number the particularly, would require an infinite labor: let vs come now to them that live in the waters. It is apparantly knowne, that the coasts of the Sea which enuirone France, Abounding are richly stored with fish, and the fish alfo to be delicate and excellent, better the elsewhere is to be found. And as for the mid-land Regions, where Sea-fish is wantings the fresh and sweete waters are most copiously stored. For the Rivers, Streams Pooles, Ponds and Rivolets have most dainty fresh-fish, and countlesse in number. Daily experience makes proofe therof, Strabo auoucheth it, and Aufonius fings strabo in 15.4 it, making mention thereof in his worke Aufonius in called Mosella.

There are many other commodities, which come and encrease vnder this ayre, for the necessity, vtility and ornament of Ofthe Flave mans life. Among other, Flax and Hemp, and Hemps. and the cloathes made of them, are labored and fought for by strangers: whereof great traffique and transportation goes to other Nations, & returnes home store of money to France: In briefe, it is one of her best wealths and riches.

In this place to ftay no longer on a matter fo frequent, and ordinary in vie, as cloathes and other works, it may appeare lawfull (with Pliny) to enter into confideration (it may bee) of one of the most | Plin, Lib. 19.lin admired things that is in nature: To fay, that so small a plant should beethe cause, berbam essentially berbam essentially. that the Sea cannot bound men within que admived limits, nor separate their Countries, but Egiptum Italia fuffers herselfe (thereby) to bee vanquithed. This is that hearb that drawes Syria Parus simine neere to vs. Egipt to Italy, and Affrica and hom terrava America to France . In a word, it is that vitro citraget which makes man tread under his feete, porter. and trauerfe ouer that dreadfull gulfe, the heape or pile of the whole Element of water, the vafte and profound Ocean; wherein principally appeareth the admirable workes of the high and Soueraigne Creator of all things. And the same Pliny wondreth not a little, that (offo small a graine) fuch a matter (hould come, as carries men through all the Cantons of the world. Which onely is by the meanes of Sayles & Cordages, the principall helpes and wings of nauigation. Such workmanships are performed in France in mighty

quanti-

Chap.2.

quantities, and thence transported to infinite other Countries: especally into Spaine, where they have greatest need, to arme and prepare their Ships for seruice. And this is that & hath fo often ferued them, and yet daily doth in their greatest nauigations : beside their very finest clothes, and others of all fashions, broght thether to them. Pliny also recordeth, that (in his time) the Gaules were efteemed and renowned for this revenue.

oap. 1. Habe Gallie muerfa Gal-

A Mount of old in Au-

France hath no need of

Of Woods &

Strabo in

France produceth also Woad, apt and needfull for al good Dyers; and the grain for Scarlet dye, anciently called Gocque, which groweth in the Country of Narbone, and Saffron likewife, with infinite

other farubs & hearbs of great vie, especially in Physicke. Boterus, Benefus, and other ffrangers have observed and reported, that there is a Mount in Auuergne, called the Mount of gold, full of an infinite number of rare and fingular fimples, proper for Phylicke, which nature there produceth liberally, & without any conftraint. So that to fpeake no more then truth, France hath no neede of the rich East & West Indiaes. It is a little world, a collection and an abridgment of the happinesse and felicity of all Lands: not onely for necessity and profite, but also for the delicacy of life. And if we goe so farre as medicaments themselues, such Simples are there to be found, as equall the drugs of strange Countries, which yeeld nothing elfe. Ther are also goodly Thickets, Woods

and Forrests, to furnish whatsoeuer is requifite (befide fewell) for building, engines for warre, fabrication of thips, and other vessels, as also for mooueables and houshold-stuffe. Heerewithall one of the cheefest considerations which causeth France to be esteemed, is, that it is wholly inhabited and well husbanded : not a jote of defert or waste ground, no place empty, nor any thing but hath his vie. Heare what Strabe acknowledged in his time, vnder the Empire of Augustus. There is not any thing unprofitable (laith he) nor any idle grounds: except fuch as are hindred & vied with Pooles and Forrests. By much more reason maywe now say y al grounds there are better tilled and husbanded, the in those times they were: & that y Pooles and Forrests yet remaining, are not a jote the leffe beneficiall, but rather more then

fome other grounds be.

Of the People of France.

But no man can better breefely figure foorth the felicity of this goodly neece of Landship, seeming heere to bedone but in diffemper or dry colours a then ichath bin already wrought by two removes the Soling popular lun Solinus Polyhistor, and Pomponius Asses Felices proping gubus glebs. Gaules, in fatted Lands, wholl's proper and accomede pro commodious, in bringing the revenues of tuaru:plere que fruites: A great part planted with Vines, confre vuibus Brubs and fruit-trees. Most happy and rich, mad view and to produce all kindes of creatures, and that mantium futu which is needfull for them : walked with beatifume. Ri cleere waters of Rivers and Fountaines.

Pomponius Mela (peaks thus Terra eft tium. frumenti pracipue de pabuli ferax de amana la in libi 3 cap. lucis immanibus : noxio genere anamaliŭ minime frequens. It is a land principally fertile, and abounding in Corne & past we grounder pleasant and delight full for youdly and great Woods and wherein few living creatures are to be found hurtfull, or doing any harmes

In like manner, Mefsire Michell Suriana, a Venetian Lord, and one of the Clarifsimies; having bene Amballador from the high and honourable Common wealth of Vente in France, in the time of King Charles the 9 left ys this figure, of his own skilfull handy-worke. 110

Fu sempre riputata la Francia richisima, dy piena d'ogni commo dita, dy abondantisima ditutte le cofe ne effarie alla qua huna : perche effenda quafi nel mezzo della peu nobil parte del mondo, che è l'Europa, bail cielo molto temperato de benigna libero da quel freddi grandissimi di Allemagna & de gli eccessiui caldi di Spagn. L'acre benche sia atquanto ventofo, é però falubre, de fottile, de non ha del groffo & paludofo come la Fiandra vicina. Il paese è amæno & piaceuole pieno di fiumi, dy tutti nauigabili : non ba monti a-Bri, Saluo nel estremità de confini : ma nel mezzo per tutto sono colline & pianure, tutte fertili de lauorate. Et fa tanta copia di biade de do vini di lini és cancpe, di guadi de di altra cose, che non solamente bastano per vlo del regno ma ferue ancora a mandarne fino in Spagna, Portogallo, in Inghilterra, Soria, Danemarka & altri paesi piu lontani.

France was alwaies reputed to be most rich and full of all commodities, and abounding in all those things necessary for the life of man. For (becing as it were) in the middest of the most noble part of the world, which is Europe: it hath the heavens very temperate

Sol in poly.c.22 nensibus frucgue aquis flu-minum & fon

noth through Paris,& diti-

Welethat cure very ftrange dife-fes, onely by

and benigne, free from those mighty coldes of Germany, and the excessive heates of Spaine. The Aire although it be Comewhat windy, is therefore healthfull and Subtile, and bath no proffe of paludus moistures, as nere neighboring Flanders hath. The Country is milde er pleasing, full of Rivers, and all navigable. It hath no harpe Mountaines, except on the extremity of the Confines: but in the middeft, every where are little hillocks & plaine champaione orounds all fertile, and husbanded or tilled And yeeldeth (nich plenty of Corne & Wine of Flax and Hempe of Wood, and of other things: as not onely serve for the wfe of the kingdome, but also sufficeth to send into Spaine, Portugall, into England, Scotland, Denmarke and other Countries farther off. The same Suriano, having bene (before that time) Ambailador in Spaine, & made therehis Relation: speaketh not in the fame manner, but in other tearmes farre

Among the causes of this fertility, and delicious aboundance in so happy a seating : one part of this felicity may beereferred to the temperaturo of the Ayre, & the Climate of Headen, vnder which it is schulated: Being justly the midst of one of the temperate Zoanes, to wir, the 42. degree of Latitude, about which is Marfeellis and the coast of Prouence and Lanpuedock, fo farre as about the 50. degree towards the North; which is the breadth of France. Whereunto in like manner do contribute, the great number of waters wherewith it is bedewed: which ferue as well for the generation of fruites, as pleafure and amenity, befide (in greater manner) for commerce and traffique. For Gaule hath beene alwayes (throughout) furnished with sprightly Fountaines, and cleare running Rivers, with some of small and greater current, yet very nauigable, for the carriage and recarriage of Merchandizes, and communication of the Prouinces one with another; a mighty commodity, and (then which) there is not a greater in the world.

This is that alfo, which makes the midland Regions, and the Cities & Townes there feated as Merchantable as the Sea coasts, as strangers themselves have both knowne & reported; that there are more great and nauigable Rivers in France, the in all other parts of the earth; & though they speak it as an hyperbole, yet nothing of Niter, Sulpher, and Allum, which are

commeth neerer to truth. For in all Italy, hardly can any nauigable River be found beside that of Poe: and likewise in Spaine almost as few at lest that have any course (how little focuer) in length. Strabo hath Strabo in is faide, and that in every Country heere; are Rivers, which come and returne to all parts, coaffing the very principall places. But (aboue all) that of * Seine is to be admired a fweet River, the most profitable fing necrethe and commodious for nauigation, & this and commodious for naugation, a configuration only (among all those in the world) is best languages. bounded and reftrained within his bed, gundy, in the country of Alcet, It run fildome or little overflowing and when it oueffloweth, doth little or no harme at all, yeelding (befide) a most cleare water, and fit to be drunke; abounding also with ding Celia from Belgia, fallethinto the British plenty of fifb. Which moued the Emperor Iulian to

fpeake in this manner. Very fildome (faith Oceanby he) doth this River exalt or abale it felfe, de it keepeth(almost) one or dinary course in win- In Misopogie ter as it doth in summer : furnishing generally with a most neate water, sweet & cleare to the eie, and wholfome to be drunk by fuch as will. And although this should not be alwayes certaine: yet notwithstanding, there are few to be spoken of concerning other Rivers to be seene, in comparison of this. Whereto may be added, that an thefe archis owne words. It beareth caufe dutage full free Ships, and fust aineth fo mighty dexo dut call bush on the state of the s which is fpoken by Botero Benefe the Italiburtbens, as they that fee it, will not beleene Porta nauigh it and there is no River, that (in proportion) gouernes an equall weight: fo that although tanto grand, it exceedeth not mediocrity, yet admirably it supplies the businesse and the necessities of neressars

I might also make some reckoning of eccedata medi diuers waters there, producing effects admirable and prodigious: but because it would be a labour long and infinite, to a slight with the slig stand upon all their particularities; I will Parigi, ex. fatisfie my felfe to touch that which concerneth matters wholesome and medicinall, wherewith the fauour of Heauen hath in like manner graced this Region, to the ende it shoulde not faile in any

Ther are many Wels or Springs, which Wels and are found in divers parts of France, that Springsof fundry ver haue certaine properties and vertues, as tues, receiving a juyce & tafte, by the mixtion

vnderneath, and entred into their fourse: of the most learned Philosophers. And in regard whereof, they have power to remedy many great diseases, indged o-therwise incurable; as dropsies, and the stone in the reines, and others, the causes whereof are voknowne, and ordinary remedies veterly upprofitable for them.

Qualitaque nocent artes, cessere magistri.

Such are the famous Wels of Pongues in Nivernoys, and of Forges in Normandy. Such also are many other, especially towards the Pyrenean Mountaines, which have the vertue to flav the bloody flixe: to foften and make come forth (in forme of paste) the stone that is in the bladder or reines; to fetch again fight almost lost; to warme and strengthen the nerues; and to cure the gout. In the time of Pliny, he had then discouered something, for hee makes mention of a certaine Well, in the Towne of Tongri among the Gaules ; the water whereof fauoured like vron (as all other Wels almost doe) which healed Tertian Feuers, and the difeafes of the stone, as also the running of the reines.

Now, to speake of Mettals and Mine-

Of Mettals ralles, France cannot be destitute, neither end Mineral can other Nations make vaunt of any aduantage aboue it if due fearch might bee made. Strabo declareth, that in his time. the Gaules affirmed themselues, to have the best in the Cemenes and Pyreneans; and that therefore they would not give place to any other people, especially the Spaniards, who made their glory, in having great quantities. Gold, which is held and esteemed to beethe most precious, shining, resplending, and domineering aboue all other, yea, qualifying the Sunnes bright beames, is to bee found in France. Strabo in Lib.4 For Strabo testifieth . that there was excellent Gold, and in great quantity, in Ce-A hil by the menus. To which purpose, we reade in Alpes, not far from the Ri-Procopius, a Greeke Historian, that the Kings of France caused mony to be sta-Procep.in lib.3. Belli Goth ped of Gold, with their marke and charaeter, found in France: reporting withall, that other barbarous Kings had not that prerogative, no, not the Kings themselucs of the Perfians. Gold in Ri-

In like manner, France hath Rivers, among whose sandes, gold is mingled, as being excorlated from the Mines vnder their current, according to the opinion

they further fay that this gold commeth. as being derived by continuall agiration of the waters rowling, and maketh it fo much the purer, about the Marcassity or Rocke yea or that in the earth. Among other Ancients, Diodorus Siculus affureth Diodor Skulim vs, that there are many of these Rivers in France. Aufonius (by his verfes) celebrates Aufonius. his golden Tarne: and (euen now) it is a matter most certaine, that there are such Rivers in Gascoigne, which descend, either from the Pyreneans, or the Cemenes. Let the Cappadocians cease the, to make vaunt of their Pactolus; the Thracians, of their Hebrus or Mariffa; the Colchians of their Phasis the Italians, of their Eridanus or Poe; and the Spaniards, of their Tagus,

And as for Mettall, whereunto the fecond value is given next to gold; Strabo worth next affirmeth, that there are many Mines in to Gold. France, as Cafar himselfe also doth the Cafar Bel, Gal. like; and (at this day) good proofe and lib.7. experience hath bin made thereof. Cafar faith, there is found Copper and Braffe in large aboundance. But aboue all there is great plenty of excellent Iron & Steele: Iron & Reele. whence it came, that reverend Antiquity fo highly commended the Swords and Courtelasses of the ancient Gaules. Let Onomas Ilib. 1. the skilfull Iulius Pollux be credited, who capio. faith; that the Emperor Marcus Aurelius made his choyfe of fuch a man to bee Schoolemaster to his Sonne, who preferred the Gaules Courtelasse, among those other weapon that were most excellent. This Mettall highly aboundeth there, & is the most common in France. Beside, it best agreeth with the Frenchmens gene- men have erosity, who have enermore made them- uer bin worfelues famous by Armes, and bin knowne thy fouldiers. by their manhood, to all the vemost parts

of the world. Gold and Siluer, fo much effected a- Gold onely emong vs to be precious, are no more apt Reemed for for Armes, then other instruments and the rarity. vtenfilles for the commodity of men, and the great account we make of gold, proceedeth onely from the rarity thereof. But we ought rather, to value things by their vtility & vse although they be common, as Aristotle faith; among which is I- Arift: in Ethic, ron the most profitable Mettall of all other & not by the to be furmounted: fo y (without it) with great difficulty can gold (more harmefull and leffe beneficial) be

4b g.cap.7.

Batero in Rel at.

Small fling-

The infelici-

Ifle De Los

The French

were neuer

concrous of

gold or filuer

To get gold,

lotle of many

. 76

Herodot, in 1.3.

tus) contemning gold, doe value copper beyond all other; and at this instant, siluer is made more account of in China, the gold is. The people dwelling in the Ifle De Los Ladrones, in the Sea called Su, although they have no more store of gold, then of other mettals: yet notwithstand ding, they couet not, or demaund any of paffengers Ships fayling by them; but call to them with loud cries, to let them haue yron, which they acknowledge to be most necessary.

It is to be credited, that there are no leffe store of Mines (both of gold and siluer) at this day in France, then formerly hath beene knowne, and spoken of by our Ancients: as daily might bee discourred, if men would give their mindes to fearch and breake open the ground for them. But the French wer neuer affected to fuch greedy defires, the earth yeelds and cafts them vp commodities sufficient, goods & treasures in abounding plenty: without violencing or deluing into the earths entrailes, and very profoundest deeps, euen (as if we should say) to burye men aliue, renting and tearing hard Rockes in peeces leuelling high Mountaines, to melte and fine them, with the loffe of an infinite number of lines. Day and night is spent hath benether in these extreme passions, to get this vile mettall, and then to adore it as a God, being the true cause & originall of the greatell miseries that can happen to man: albeit Nature (in her purity of wisedome) placed it to be trodden on vnder our feet, and hid it close in the earth, as a thing vnworthy to be scene.

There are many other treasures & gifts of Nature, which are affoorded vs by France Quantum apud nos margaritis Indicis precium est, tantum apud Indos in Coralio: gignitur in Rubro mari, laudatissimum vero in Gallico sinu ad Stæchades. Looke how much (in thefe quarters) we esteeme the Pearles & precious Stones of India, as much reckoning there is made of our Corall. And though it encreaseth in the gulffe of Arabia; yet not with standing, the most excellent comthe Isles of Ieres; fo faith Pliny.

Among so many benefits and commodities, Salt likewise is one, the best & most wholesome that can be in any Country: in which regard, it is fought for by ftran-

obtained. The Ethiopians (faith Herodo- | gers, euen whence commeth great store of gold and filuer into France, befide that which is of her owne ordinary vie. Botero ranketh it among the foure things which Inlib. 1. della aboundeth in France, tearmed by him Adamants, as drawing to them the gold of Strangers countries. These foure Adamants (faith he) are Corne, Wine, Flax and Hempe,

In divers parts of France, are the ma- Of hard flone terials fit for all kindes of building. Hard stone and other matters, wherof infinite are to be feene in goodly, great, and rich buildings, Castles, and publike Edifices, wherewith the Country is wel filled and cities beautified. Nor is it destitute of the fairest Marbles, in which respect, wee may Marbles. not omit that which hath beene observed by our Ancients, as a thing particular giuen to Gaule : that those Stones and materials do encrease in the Quarries, how a drin. liberally foeuer dispersed abroad, as Vlpi. an the Lawyer hath left vs in writing.

It was not then without great reason, that the Poet Manilius calld France Rich. And Dion tearmes it Florishing in riches. Dion inlib. It feemeth alfo to be knowne to loscphus, who declareth how King Agrippa deliuering to the lewes, what inconveniences might come vnto them, by revolting a gainst the Romanes: demanded of them if they could speake of more wealth then the Gaules had; more strength then the Allemaignes or Germanes; and better vnity and vnderstanding, then among the Greekes, all which (neuerthelesse) were under the dominion of the Romans. And the better to perswade them, in the commodities and advantages of all those peo-ple, being vinder their yoke & obedience: he faith of the Gaules, that they were (in multitude) three hundred & fine kindes | mar mit 3 mit multitude) three hundred & the same of people. And had among them (by his mather of fleaking) Welles and Springs of all virgination and felicity, watering and bedewing in the same of the the whole Land habitable, with riches and good blessings. He addeth beside, that ther were then in Gaule, aboue twelue hundred Townes and Cities.

In like manner, Cafar having bent all Cafars intest meth from the Isles Stoechades, now called his hopes, one day to make himselfe Ma- to make him fter and Monarch of the whole eftare, power and dignity of the Romane Empire. and finding himselfe in want of money, charged with great debts, and yet (necesfarily) to lay out greater largesse and expences,

Suction in Iulio dezzo dilleun Exomni pro unciarum copia Gallias potifit-

Chap. 1.

mum elegit, cu-ius emolumento

& opportunita-te idonea effet

naeria trium

The fairest

The counting

of Carlar to

that which he

compatie

avmed at.

Plut in vit. Cafar. Un Kalgaeye m Tahamah mi Farannes nhime dijin di julio defiatro sain rele reshe-mondyine, The bounty

Sueton in Iulio

Pro.M.Marcello.Gente: omni copiarum genere abun-

pences: to compasse the maine Masterpecce wherat he aimed ; Among the multitude of mighty Prouinces, hee chofe principally the Gaules (faith Suctonius) whose profite riches occasion, and opportunity, was to him Subject of matter Sufficient, apt & conuenable for fo great triumphing. Shewing thereby, that it was the goodlieft, richeft, most potent, and worthy Prouince of the Romané Empire, & thought it there the. fittest, to exalt himselfe to the Maiesty of Rome. Which acordingly came to paffe, for by themeans of the Gaules riches, not onely he discharged himselfe of his great debts: but enriched likewife al his friends, practifing with divers, & winning an infinite number of Lords in Rome, yea, they that wete the cheefest Magistrates

In briefe, hee omitted not any kinde of

bounty as well publike as particular,

Among other matters, hee attempted the building of a Pallace, for the judging of causes, the meere place costing him abone 1400000 crownes, and althis came from the pillage of the Gauls. He feafted all the people of Rome, which was a thing (well neere) impossible and infinite. He doubled the pay of his Legions & companies of foldiers, to perpetuity; curiching the rest with good gifts, beside great distributions, as well of monies as slaues, as also lands and victuals, which he caused to be given to every Citizen of Rome,& likewise to his Captains & Soldiers. For Plutarke faith; He emptied out of his owne. Coffers, the riches of the Gaules, to such as holp him to the publike government of Rome, euen what they would have. He acquited Curio the Tribune, of a great fum of mony, which he ought him: And gaue to the Confull Pau-

Crownes of french coine. All this bounty, all these goods & treafure, were taken in Gaule, & (as Suetonius faith) without any spare of the Temples, which he knew to be rich in gifts: & many times facking Cities, rather for the greedy defire of booty, then any other iust caufe. And Cicero faith : That he had ouercome Nations, abounding in allthings & in all the feneral kinds of power; this he meant of the Gaules. For not only was that true which Procopius faide : That Gaule is much more powerfull then Spaine : but also aboue Ctions. Fire falles fro heaven there vivally Fire from all the other Prounces of the Romane, Empire, according to the judgement of not only it embraceth & confumes partial

lus, 1500. Talents, amounting to 900000.

Cafar. So then it may justly be faide, that Gaule, as well for riches, as for the me that he found there gave entrance to the great power of Cafar & was the cause, means, and inftrument of his defignes, & obtaining the Empire of the world, which hee enjoyed, in despight of so many Romane Lords his aduerfaries and competitors.

But among fo many profeerities, it is No marrer of a matter both rate & admirable, that ther discommodiare to be found few or no discomodities ty to be found at all whetwith the land should be annoied. There is not any Region in the world. how goodly or happy focuer it may bee faid to be, but is subject to fundry inconueniences, that make a counterpoile to the felicity therof. Arabia, which carrieth the furname of Happy, wherein, beside in The inconus many blessings it affoordeth, the odors & are in Arabia perfumes there growing, maketh the aire Folix. all embalmed, as it were: yet in counterchange, it hath two very great discommodities. One is, that in those Forrests of most odoriferous trees, throughout in er nery place, are found a great number of finall and short serpents, of the same colour as the earth is that fubtilly fling and byte men before they have any power to perceine it, or defend themselves against it; and being thus bitten, they cause their death in a million of torments. The other is that these so happy people are subject to a strange discase, proceeding fro their ouermuch ease, and hot persumes of the country: fo that to helpe themselves, they are enforced to find out all kinds of stinking and infectious finels, euen the foulest Diod. Sic. in lib. that can be, fo faith Diodorus. So that ther 3.cap. 18. is no happinesse in any part, neither any fuch pleafing sweetnes; but it is conjoyed & neighbored with one greefe or other.

The Regions of Affrica, those that are the most delicious of al, are ordinarily affailed with an infinite number of wilde Dragons, Serbeafts, horrible Dragons, Serpents, & other venomous creatures : beside Lions, Beats, 1 20 Leopards Panthers Ounces, & prodigious monsters, which Affrica producethe from time to time, often rayling fiedge against the inhabitants, compelling the to fecke out new dwellings . China, which The afflictiis described to vs to be so fortunate, and one of China abounding in all things : hath many affliand fuch wonderfull rauage is made, that heauen.

Plin. lib.32

Of Salt.

Inundations of water.

Earthquakes

People of

Libya abidin

on the fand

Syrts. Herodot.in li.e

Seldome is

ny delight without dan

neere the

great Cities altogether, yea, many times whole Provinces. Deluges and inundations have also wrought there strange effects, spoyling, ouerthrowing, and defacing whole Countries, & that very often Earthquakes, ingulfings, and impetuous showres of raine, are (as a man should fay) there daily: thus you fee what delight and happinesse, is in the greatest & most renowned kingdome of the East.

There are Countries, which fuffer colds and insupportable freezings: as other are meerely burnt and wasted with heates. Witnesse the * Nasamones, who in regard of this heate (they dwelling beyond the Torride Zoane) do curse the Sunne when it paffeth ouer them. Thus then other Regions, being effeemed fo happy for perfumes, odours, & fueh kinde of delights: doe sometime pay very dearely for their pleasures; perill is euermore neighbour to iby, and contentment is close followed at the heeles, with some or other mishap.

Whofoeuer thinketh to gather the (weets of their fairest flowers, or the invee of their most delicious plants; may as foone meete with deadly poyfon, and in stead of sweetnesse, finde such bitternesse, as quickly will bring him to his graue. Either by the Aspicke lying close hidden, whose pricking causeth sudden sleepe, & procureth dea h in that fleeping. The Snakes byting bringeth a deadly drought with it. The Viper filleth the whole body full with venome, by his buting. The Bafilike flayeth by his very fight onely. The earth by quaking, endangereth to swallow men vp, or ouerthrow and kill them in their houses. A deluge suddenly carrieth away, and couers all with water. The Lyon or the Tyger comes onely to deuoure. Strabo having related the goodnesse of

Batica in Spaine, which is now Granada & Andalousia, saith withall; that the country is perfecuted with an afflictio very strange ver reputed to be ridiculous. It is by the great and immense multitude of Conies or Rabbets, which feede on, and confume their feedes, plants, and rootes of trees. He also saith, it hence ensueth, that almost throughout Spaine, yea, and the neighboring liles, are thereby afflicted. Adding beside, that the inhabitants of the Isles Gymnasiaes or Baleares, now called Maiorque and Minorque, sent Ambassadors, to

cular houses; but Villages, Burroughs, & 1 request and of the Romanes, against these hurtfull creatures, and to chase them out of their country, as beeing vnable to endure their multitude. And succour was necessarily required in so great a warre, which doth not alwayes happen (faieth he) but when the country is subject to be infected with some plague of pestilence, famine, or fuch other affliction and punnishment sent from Heaven.

> Marcus Varro writeth, that a Towne in Spaine was wholly undermined, and ruined by those Conies, & another in The/- cap.29. falie by Moales. Some that have bene dif- cap. 1 3. peopled & forfaken in regard of the great multitude of Frogs. Another in Affrica; by Locusts: Also, that the inhabitants of the City * Gyaros, now called Gura, in one of the Cyclades; were expulsed thence by the Acquir Rats: and that in Italy, an ancient Citty lea, one of the called Amyclea, was vererly ruined and loft Sporades. by Serpents. There is a Region in Affrica, where a great extendure of the country is become defert, the people which dwelled there being driven to all extremities, and quite exterminated, onely by Scorpions and Piffemires, which are a kinde of venomous Ants. Theophrastus reporteth that others were expulsed by " Scolopendraes. | * A worme And Strabo faith, that Spaine was ordina- that hath me rily infected with a strange multitude of is very vero-Rats: whereupon (oftentimes) followed | m contagious diseases. The like happened | Strabo in lib.3. once to the Romanes, when they were in the countries of the Basques and Astures: fo that they wer glad to hire men to chafe them away, the Rats came fo fast vppon them, and hardly could they faue themfelues from them . An ancient Philosopher named * Dicaarchus, wrote a Book, of the ruine of men, and had collected to- Philosopher, gether, how many ruines had happened Scholler. in divers countries, by reason of the inopinate multitude of beafts: by whofe imperuous violence, he sheweth that some Nations have bene loft and confumed.

France, on the contrary (God be praifed for it) neuer was subjected to so many compare wit miseries, & there is not any Region found in all the habitable world, being fo hap- whe world py tasteth lesse inconveniences. Deadly poison cannot deceive him that gathereth there her wholesome flowers & hearbs, or perfumes. The Lyon or Tyger, the rauenous Beare or Panther, cometh not to fet vpon the traueller, or drive the husband-

The flesh is sourraign for diseases. Bald. Ang. Ab batins lib.de

Chap. 1.:

all France.

in France

In lib.x cap. 2.

None of thef nouelties are in France.

France may

man from his home. The Serpent cannot annoy the paffenger or haruest Reaper by his byting, because there is none at all to be found there. A man may fafely take the Eucning or Mornings benefit on the greene graffe, without dread of any venomous creature, which are most dangerous in other countries. But admir that | the time of the Punicke warres, the peo- Plinta sap. 84 there were fome kinds of Serpents or Snakes in some peculiar parts: yet are they very few, and no barme at all difcerned to come from them. No Egyptian Aspicke is there to bee found, and that Of the Aspick which is termed in France an Afpicke: it is no Aspicke at all but rather a Viper, as is verified in the Observations of P. Bolonius. Neuertheleffe, it is rare or fildome to be seene there, and benefit (rather then any harme) is to be received therby. And fay that this Serpent were very venomous: vet notwithstading, it serueth most commodiously for the life of man, and Treacle is compounded thereof. The verie learnedst Physitians do hold, that the flesh thereof is soueraigne for many difeafes; and, that which is much more, it hath power to lengthen the life of man, in

fuch as make ordinary vie of it, as manie

of our Ancients did, and other healthfull

people yet living, who have heretofore

referred the cause of their so long health-

full continuance. Thus our Ancients.

Morcouer, France is not subject to the

and especially the learned Egyptians, v-The Egyptian fed the Snake as an Hieroglyphick, marke and figne of health: presenting it to theyr Goddesse Sanitas, rouled about with o-

ther creatures.

miseries and horrors of earth quakes. Neuer shall ve there heare the earth grone, bellow, then tremble, shake, and swallow vp houses, Burroughes, & whol Townes, making groweth of Mountaines, by leuelling and plaining other places, to drie vp waters and rivers, and then fodainly to let loose Flood-gates of Nouelries; to stay their violent course of a streame, and then to make it run directly against his curret: to let foorth flaming fires, to finish that with greater defolation, which the former Earth-quake had left behinde it . By an especiall priviledge of heaven, France stands exempted from all these; experience hath made it apparant, & Pliny long ago witnessed it, when he saide: That the Gaules were not shaken by tremblings of the

Lib.7.cap.80. Gallie terre: motu minime quatiuntur.

To know the quiet condition and felicity of Prance in this cafe, wee may compare and confider other Nations & Prouinces, and what great afflictions and ru= ines have infued to them by fuch harmes. in most part of the worlds Regions. We finde, that in Italy and other Countries, in ple were tormented with Earth-quakes. feuen and fifty times in one yeare. VVho would not be amazed, to heare that two hilles thould approach neere each to or mountaines ther, to iustle (as it were) together then, met together. to retire and anancer on againe, after the manner of fight, stirring and mouing furioufly, with an horrible noise and breaking? A great fire and smoake rose vp betweene them : and by this their rude encounter houses and villages (seated in the valley)were bruifed and beaten downe,& both men and beafts (mothered to death: euen as it happened in the Territorie of Modena, in the yeere 622, and in the City of Rome, in the time of the wars of Marius and Sylla. This was scene in broad day Plin.1.2.cap. 82 time, by a great number of paffengers &

spectacle, from the necre-neighbouring

Romane Citties, who beheld this wofull

high-way, or bill ascending to the Capi-The It was a strange thing, that trembling

or Earth-quake, which happened under the Emperor Tiberius, and in the 5. yeare of his Empire (to the end we may not, as Orofine doth, confound it with that which chanced twelve years after, miraculoufly, euen at the passion of our Saujour:) Tacitus reporteth, that in this yeere (which danalis. was the 770. of the City of Rome) in one night, twelue great and famous Cittes of Natolia, were ruined and vtterly ouerthrowne , fuch as was Ephefus, Sardis, Cu- Plinin Leap 84 ma, Philadelphia, and other of the fame ranke. And that which yvas most terrible, they had not the meanes of open flight. an ordinary fuccour in fuch misfortunes: yet thereof they were deprined, because the earth shrunke and opened vnder their feete, and swallowed them vp immediarely. Herewithall grofe flunings and flames of fire among the ruines; a .d that which was plaine champaigne grounde before, was exalted to Mountaines, and contrarywise, Mountaines became euen

and levell ground. Heere might also bee alledged, the v

Perill of the Aspicke.

The Snake.

The Viper. The Basilisk Earthquake.

Deluge. Heredot.in l.

The misery Patica in Spaine. Strabo in Lib

fian Iflands o Balcares pla gued with Conies.

quakes at Con stantinople. Mifcellib. 14.

ced in some yeares before, in the City of Nicea in Natolia, which was ruined; and the dreadfull effectes thereof are particularly written by Amianus Marcellinus, and Marcel lib. 17 under the reigne of the Emperor Constantines Zonarus reporteth, that thirteene great Townes of Champaigne ground in Italy, or in the foyle called Terra di Lanora, were veterly ouerthrowne. But among other, the City of Antioche was wonder-

fuall and frequent earthquakes at Constan-

tinople, and whereto it hath bene alwayes

fublect. And in fuch manner, as during

the reigne of the Emperour Theodolius,

there happened fuch an Earth-quake, as

lasted soure moneths continually: the

people beeing constrained to flye out of

the Citty, not daring to return in againe.

There was another as strange, which cha-

fully afflicted. In the reigne of the Empe-

ror Iultinian, it was ouerthrowne; and an

infinite number of men therein swallow-

ed. Soone after, it was re builded by the

liberality of the Emperor, and two yeares

were not fully expired, when this goodlie

It is likewise a happinesse particular to

France, that the sweetnesse and tempe-

rature of the Ayre is fuch; as, in compari-

fon of that in other Prouinces, there is

neyther excessive colds, nor insupporta-

ble heats. And if in some yeare it happen

otherwise, it is but once in an hundred

veeres, and of so small continuance, that

it is onely but as a scantling : therby to let

the Frenchmen know, the sharpe rigour

and discommodity that other people en-

dure, to the end they may the better vn-

derstand their owne felicity, and shape

their comforts answerable therto. Length

of Winters, and of Nightes; the bitter

North-east windes of Scythia; Moun-

taines of Ice and Snow, neuer hindereth

their Commerce, nor their Voyages at

all feafons of the yeare. Theyr Seas doe

not freeze, as often it dooeth in Pontus

Euxinus, or Mare major, even so farre as

the streights of Constantinople. On the

contrarie fide, extreamity of heate con-

Paul Disc. bift Misclib.t g. & Cedrenus.l. 16

and flourishing Cittle had beene newly finished : but againe in like manner it was wholly ruined, and the greater part of the inhabitants buried in the downfall. This was in the beginning of Justinians empire. Such miferies neuer hapned in the King-Plin.lib.7.c.60 dome of France: Gallia terr amotibus mini-

me quatiuntur.

The tempemildnes of the

No Mounraines of Ice and Snow in France.

firaines not men to keepe them a long while hidden under ground, without daring to come forth but in the night time : neyther to fleepe in the water, and like the Amphibi or halfe Fishes, to devel | That line there the most part of their time. That which is reported of many people, & par-water. ticularly of the dwellers in Barbarie, Ormuz land them of Taprobane, now called *Samotra: not any thing heere is like vnto them, but all most remperate. From so in legit 1000, fweetean Avre, can proceede nothing miles, and in but healthfulnesse; the Heauens being no bredth 625. way subject to ingender frequent and irkfome Difeases. Therefore did Cafar deferuedly fet this commendation on Franco: To be a. Countrey most [weete and healthfull. And so the English-men likewife, in the recitall of Froisard, doe note France, To be a most safe Country, and very Frois in vol. 3. sweete, a courteous Country, with mild aire, and delicate Rivers. It is an admirable matter also, that

France produceth fuch diversity of things and in fuch aboundance : there being no France. Countrey throughout the World more commixed, and that hath leffe meanes of subject, for recourse vnto other. It is by a priviledge and particular right, and against the Law which Nature hath giuen vnto other landes ; but to speake vprightly of France, it is proper to all, and in fuch fort, as there is not any thing particular to other, which is not common in

it. In regard whereof, and confidering what hath formerly bene faid, there needs no doubt to bee made: but that which Virgil meant to fay in commendation of his Italy, was much more fitting for the Land of France.

Hîc ver assiduum,at gʻalienis mensibus astas, Bis granida pecudes, bis pomis viilis arbos, Ac rabida Tigres absunt of Sana Leonum Semina, nec miseros fallunt aconita legentes : Nec rapit immensos orbes per humum neg, tanto Squamen in spiram tractu se colligit anguis. Adde tot egregias vrbes operumá laborem.

Beside, that which he could say concerning the amenity or delectablenes of Italy, was but for some certaine places; & the Italians themselves do know wel enough. that vyhatfoeuer they do admire or commend, in any particular part of Italie, it

Lib.z.Bel.Civil.

Virg.Georgic.

Herfal.part. 2.

is to be found every where in France, and is meerely common there.

How France s feated for Nauigation.

Moreouer, the Kingdome is most abfolutely feated for Naugation: because on the one fide it hath the Mediterranean fea, and the Ocean fea on the other, enuironing it by a long extendure, and wherein are many goodly and commodious Ports and Hauens. As for the Land it felfe, it is as in the very middeft or hart of Europe. Suriana, in his relation of France, hath well observed it, and makes

great reckoning of the commodiousnesse

of the lituation vling thele very words. Il regno di Francia, come quello che è in mezo de la Christiantia de commoda en opor+ tuno piu' d'ogn'altro per voure de dividere a (ua volonta le forze de i piu gran Principi, & de i popoli pin bellicofi, penche à dinanzi l'Italia, og l'Inghilterra ale palle, a man destra la Spagna, da sinistra è la Germania, di qua Suizzeri, di qua Flamenghi, & oltra di questo è fra due mari, il Mediterraneo dell' una parte, og l'Oceano d'all'altra : onde per mare de per terra puo facilmente fauorire eutte le imprese de tutti li disegni di ciascun Principe & Potentato del mondo. Et quanto a se è sicurisimo di ogni banda de per Natura, & per Arte.

The Kingdome of France, as that which is in the midst of Christendome, is opertune of commodious (more then all other) to unite and divide (at her owne will) the forces of the very greatest Princes, and of the most warlike people. Because it hath Italy before it, England to (houlder it, Spain on the right hand, Germany on the left : on this fide the Switzers, on that side the Flemings. And beside all this, it is betweene two Seas, the Mediterranean on the one part, or the Ocean on the other : so that by sea and land, she may easily fauour all the enterprizes, and all the deseigns of every Prince and Potentate in the World. And as for her felfe, she is most secure on enery side, both by Nature, and by

Let no man then thinke strangely of it, if France be endowed with so many celestiall graces and fauours, and so wel peopled and inhabited, that any thing can be compareable thereto, in all other Countreyes what soener. There is not a jotte of voyde or waste ground; the goodly and great Citties and Townes, are all well filled with inhabitants, and very neer neighbouring one to another. Trauailing upon

the common high-wayes, from any part whither you pleafe; you shal finde them bordered with great villages; faire Hour fes and Castles, and the people swarming cuery where even as if al France were but one City.

It is not fo in other regions, for in some there are immense Forrests, Lakes, and Marith grounds, taking vp immeasurable roome as in Germany, and in the Low that are ino-Countries. In other places, are great and ther countries sterile Mountaines, which take vppe no different from meane part of the Countrey: as Botero acknowledgeth, that the Apennines viurpe a whole quarter of ItalyiThere can you not behold (as you may in France) fmall hils and dales, fweetly cloathed and flourishing with delicate fruite trees, or vvealthie Vineyards, orelie employed to some other profitable vie. As for the Alpes and Apennines, for the most part, there is nothing to be feene but sharpe and craggie rockes, bearing their heads up vnto the clouds, couered with Mosse & Saltpeter, and having very dreadfull downefalles. There is nothing but hardnesse, rocks full of horror, places vnacceffable, vnprofitable, and fruiteleffe, eyther for Men or Beafts.

Concerning Spaine, so much as it is far off from this happineffe of France, euen fo (in comparison) is it as slenderly peopled. Behold the perspective thereof, according as Straba hath drawne it downe for vs. Spaine (faith he) for the most part is torvs. Spaine (laith he) for the mois part is creating inhabited. For the Mountaines, For-rels, and Plaines (wherey the earth is dried, meager and barren, being but [lenderly holpen with waters) takes up too much ground.

The same Author saith in another places, the cannot beleeve that there hath bin so many Citties or Townes in Spain, as some haue reported, or else they counted Villages for Townes. 1 or (faith hee) ted Villages for Townes. For (faith hee)
The Nature of the Countrey cannot recepte
any number of Townes, in regard of the bargrennesse of the ground 2 to being farre off. 6:
retired from one of the worlds corners: and six a kammatakenses. also the ayre breathing not gracious & agree- brush to antiable. Thus you fee the true description of Spaine, and this hee fayeth, because it is found in foin Authors of Antiquity, who haue tearmed it to be happy and fertile: What happiness it is to be vnderstood of the Sea shores, tility is in

and some Countries, where (in trueth) it Spaine. is fo. As in Betica, containing nowe the

The sharpnes

of the North

Froif vol. 2. in

part of Portugall, whereto Strabo giueth the fame commendation.

But hee omitteth not also, to describe the rigour, hardnesse and sharpenesse of the very greatest part, which turneth towards the North: aniwerable to that now still there to be seene. For Andalouzia is knowne to be fertile; but the Spanyards thefelues do tell vs, what store they have (befide) of Mountaines and final deferts, w they terme Sierras, as keeping fill the ancient Arabian word. Froiffard relateth, that the English, who had bin at the succour of the King of Portugall, under conduct of the Duke of Lancaster : would returne no more thither, faying: In Castile there is nothing but Rockes, which are not good to bee eaten with Veriuyce : verie high Mountaines, a hard Avre, troubled Rivers or grosse victuals, the people poore and slowenly, ill nurtured, and worse habited, beside great

dearth of all wholesome viands.

uer-frequent among them, so that they

are enforced to feeke helpe in France, by

the hands of the most Christian King. Be-

fide, France hath alwayes had the prayfe

to be well peopled, and to produce men

at due scalons. Casar himselfe speakes it, saying; A most fruitfull mother of men.

And Strabo writeth, That the women are

apt to beare children, and to nourish & bring

them vp. In another place hee confesseth,

That there is a certaine kinde of vertue and

propriety, particular to the women of France,

both in their teeming, and giving fucke onto

Botero and other Italians, being defirous

to make a curious inquifition (fo nere as

poffibly might be) to know what number

ofmen each countrey contained althouh

it is a matter (from time to time) fubiect

to change: fetteth downe, that in France

were fifteene millions. In Germany, with

the Lowe Countries, and the Switzers

Cantons (although they exceeded France

twice or thrice in extendure of ground)

they grant no more. In Spaine, which is

very great, they number but three Milli-

Heere is to be observed, that Spaine must needs give place (by ods) to France Spaine inferiour to France for healthfulneffe, when the ayre is there for healthful so hard, the rivers troubled, and the waters naught: whence infueth the inflations, swellings, and enils in their throats, commonly termed the Kings euill, and o-

Inlib.2.Bel.Gal Fertilisima beminum genetrix Strab. in lib.4 Tord the ay your are any thoses ayabus. Item apara sur your any oppers क्षेत्रकार मुख्य बस्या हो क्या करेंद्र सामग्रीयतः

Botero in Relat.

Number of people in diuers Counprouinces of Granado and Andalouzia, and | ons : whereby appeareth one of the principall prerogatives of France.

The glory and honor of any kingdom, and of the King commaunding ouer it, confisteth (to speak truely) in the peoples multitude. The Emperour Adrian faid; That he defired to fee his Empire amplified Debondaman with multitudes of men, rather then with abundance of money and riches. This was it Proudant also that mooned the wife King to say; In multitudine also that mooned the wile King to may 3 populi dignina Inthe multitude of the people, is the honor of Regue, in pass a King: and for the want of people commeth citate plebu is [hame and ignominy to a Prince. The King nominia Prince dome of Indea! which hath heretofore beene so famous, and made choise of for the inheritance of Gods people, it vvas not in regard of her great extendure; for there was none finaller; containing not aboue forty miles in length, & in bredth much leffe in many places.

Likewife, the promise that God made to Abraham, was; That he would make him Gen. 12,2. the cheefe of a great people : and his feede to Gen. 13,6. be as the dust of the earth: so that if one could number the dust of the earth, so likewife shold Genesis, his feede be numbred. At another time hee favde vnto him; Lift up thine eyes to Hea- Genef. 28.14 uen, and tell the starres, if thou bee able to number them; in such number shall thy seede be. The same promise he reiterated againe to his yongest fonne lacob. And this yours it, that excited the hatred and enuy of the Egyptians, against this people of Israel; because they saw their number to multiply, and for that reason they oppressed them : but the more they were oppressed so much the more were they encreased and multiplyed. But David exalting him- Reg.2.cap.vla felfe beyond measure, and glorying in the number of his people, would needs have them counted, to knowe their iust number: whereby he prouoked God to anger against him, there beeing found in Israel eight hundred thousand strong men, able to beare armes and weapons, and in Iuda fine hundred thousand fighting men.

In the Romane history, when wee obferue the encreasing of that Common- ling of the Ro wealth from time to time: it was by the mane Comnumber of the Cittizens, which were downe registred by the Cenfors . Kings are Kings of men, and not of Lands. For no account is made of a King, by possesfing a large length of vaine lands, barren, walte, vnprofitable, and vnpeopled; nor for his multitude of high Mountains, de-

L.Cum ratio D.

23.Bifhopprickes, & 14 Archoyshop-

other Inhabitants but fauage beafts. But rather, by commanding infinite numbers of people, that acknowledge him as their The true dige nity of a king

The plentic of copicamon he ancient Gaules, and the new.

Chap. 1.

Sourraigne, willingly obey him, and reuerently respect him for their own good. This is that which maketh his ftate affirred, and maketh him dreadfull to neighbours or enemies. Moreouer, owhat great numbers of

people Gaule hath produced at all times, veelds pronfes (whileient, as well by the troopes heeretofore parting thence, the Countreybeing vncapeable to containe them; as also others, that have gone and filled all other regions on the earth, aswel by Colonies andiplantations in their coming thither, as fome other Countries still inhabited by them, whereof we shall haue cause to speake more particularlie This great number of men'is the cause

and goodly Cities, as alwayes it hath bin, The number and at this day more then ever . Iofephus or Cities wh far inuaded Gaule, there were then aboue ded Gaule.

The Author

modestie, in

peaking of the City of Paris.

twelve hundred. Among them that are now at this present, there are three hunz dred; wherein there are three and thirtie Byfhops Sees, and fourteene Metropolitane or Archbyshopprickes; besides, an infinite number of other, a great company whereof are so potent in extendure & dignity, as they equall the verie capitall Citties of strange Nations, sparing here

(befide) to speake of their strength.

that France is adorned with fo many faire

maketh mention, that at the time as Ca-

I forbeare also a matter remarkable in France, that there hath beene (and some fay now is) feauen and twentie thoufand Burroughes or Townes, being Parishes, and having Steeples, and amongst them Villages so great and wealthy, as may compare with good Townes in other Countries, not bringing within the Lifts of this account, all the Hamlets, Graunges, and particular houses, because they are innumerable.

Heere give me leave to fit downe and rest, as not knowing how to bee filent, or in what manner to speake, of the great, puissant, and opulent Cittie of Paris, which hath exalted her head about all other of the world. To forget it, I cannot; to speak worthily, or to describe and prefent it to the life indeede, it is impossible

fere rockes, wild Forrests, which have no , for me. It is the feat of the Kings of Frace; it is the principall residence of their Maiefties: it is the dwelling of their Soneraigne Iustice: which is there rendred & distributed by the Court of Parliament, being called the Court of Pecres; from whence all other are derived; the same is the Chamber of Accompts or of the Exchequer, and the arrivall for all the revennewes of the Realme what focuer.

Of the Country of France.

Also in this Citie, is that most ancient Vniuerfity, fo famoufly renowned tho. rough the world. All there is admirable, vniuerficie either in regard of the greatnesse and ex- Paris. tent, or for the infinit ftructure of fo many buildings, both publike and particular : but aboue all, the prease and throngs of people wherewith it is inhabited, and which commeth thither from all parts fo that the like can hardly be spoken of in any place else. Beside, it is seconded with aboundance of all things, that can be defired for happinesse of life.

Paris est en scauour vne Grece feconde, Vne Rome en grandeur Paris on peut nomer. Vne Afie en vichesse on le peut estimer, En rares nouveautez one Afrique (econde.

Paris in knowledge may be Greece , as wife; A Rome for greatnes, Paris may be nam'd: An Asia in wealth it may be found: A second Affricke, for rare nouelties.

Heereto might be added the grace of The fituation the fituation, the fairest and fittest that is of the City to be seene: for being as pleasing and de-lectable, as commodious and profitable. In the very middeft of rich Prouinces, enuironed with many Nauigable rivers that come and render their riches to Seine: passing thorow the middle of the Cittie. to gather and bring thither commodities from all the Countryes round about, coming from, and into an Ayre fo good & healthfull. In which respect, though hauing fuch mightie accesse of people : it is leffe subject to contagious diseases, then other the greatest Citties are ordinarily afflicted withall. And when any do happen the effects are much more moderate, of far leffe danger and contagion, then is to be seene in other places.

It is reported of the Citty of Constantinople, that from three yeeres to 3. yeeres, (without tayle) it is most strangely tor-

Hiff.Mifed, lib.

pleafant and

greatly dispeople it: to the no meane a-

mazement of many that have made deep

fearch into the cause. So it is in like man-

*A Spring

neere to Ha-

A morall Al

ufion of the

Frenchmen

are truly bor

warriors.

nople, and in the Graund Caire.

ner affirmed by divers, that the Grand Cairois enery yeare afflicted with the Pestilence. Vndoubtedly, when I confider with my felfe, that great Lougs, vulgarly called Chlouis, stayed his opinion, and made Paris the feat of his kingdome, leauing many other Cities which were then far greater: and that before him, the Em.

Lib. t , Delle caufe della grandzza delle Cita.

peror Julian (being come into France) e-Stablished there his ordinary aboade, and called it Amiable or Louely. I am compelled to admire therein, their great Wifedome and understanding, in choosing a place so commodious, so pleasant and anfwerable; although then it feemed to bee one of the least Citties of Gaul. It would require an entire volumne to speak thereof, and yet none will credit what it is, except they have the happinesse to see it : & the fight may much better fatisfye them. then all that can be fayde or written of it. Therefore I wil end this discourse, adding onely that which is fayde by Botero Parigi, Città che di popolo, dy di abbondanza d'ogni cofa, auanza di granlunga tutte l'altre di Christianita. Paris a City that in people and abundance of all things, goeth farre beyond all the rest of Christendome.

CHAP. II.

Of the People dwelling in this fruitfull Land of France, what they were being ancient ly Gaules, and afterwards Frenchmen: their Manhood, Valour, and Successefull Fortunes.

He proceedhis fecond dif-



Land it felfe in all things: let vs now fee (according vnto our intended purpose) what the people have beene and are in their condition. Such as have heard of

Strage plague mented with a pestilence, which doeth foextraordinary selicity, perhappes may in Constant or early dispense it to the no meane as a quickly condemne mee. by alledoing it as amatter impossible : that in a Region so pleasant, gracefull, and abounding in all kindes of goodneffe: the inhabitants can any way be vertuous, valiant, and couragious. Great Cyrus was of that Opinion, The wifedon when his victorious Perfians laboured to of Cyrus a. change their Countrey, in regard it was gainst the folfharpe, rough, rude, and Mountainous; ers, for one of them which they had conquered, that was more pleafant; confishing of goodly plaines, and even Champaigne grounds. Which hee would not fuffer them to doe, but shewed them, that like vnto feeds and plants, fo are the lines of men made conformeable vnto those Regions where they abide. As if hee would haue fayd, that in a fair & fortunate count trey, the mindes of men alter, and quickly become effeminate.

Hanniball, not onely inuincible bythe Armies of the Romaines, but also by fo many victories ouer them bringing them neerer to their viter ruine, then ever they were or had bene : was ouerthrowne and confounded, by the foft and eafefull delights of Capua. The sweets of his winter foiourning there, did eneruate and weaken both him and all his army, which the rough Alpes and freezing fnowes, had formerly made vnconquerable. Euen fo we may fay, and very truely, that the high Alexanders and mighty courage of Alexander; was formed by the luxury, fumptuousnes, and

diffolutions among the Persians. It is a matter verie frequent and ordinarie, that the Provinces of greatest happinesse, become a prey to others, in beeing voluntarily destitute of couragious men, For, a more warlike people coming to inuade them, after they have continued there for some time: they forget their former generolity, as if they were wholly changed, and with the very avre of the countrey, had deriued to themselues the verie same Nature. Sicily hath alwaies bin the butte and ayme of all warlike people, Sicily the aim as of the Grecians, the Carthagenians, and of warlikens the Romaines, and of many other beside. tions.

Also in Egypt, which is one of the ve- The fruitfulrie choisest, fertilest, and richest Nati- nes of Egypt, ons of the worlde: the most martiall peo- and hurrin ple that come to ftay there, doe after enter into fuch a lazie condition, that they stand in neede of chasing thence, even as

2. Booke

Hanniball vi Corious against the Re maines, loft al his honor at

Zozim in vit, Imp.P alentin

Of the People of France

they did to the first inhabitants. The like great and frequent changes have bin often obserued, as well in ancient as more moderne times; and namely, vnder the Mahometane Calvifes. It is reported of the Wel * Salmacis in Caria (which is one of the regions of Watolia) that fuch as drinke the water thereof; of men, doe immediately become women. But the truth is, according to the relation of Vitrunius, that it is a place fo goodly, pleafant, and where the people live in such delights and diffolutions; that the courages of men, after they have lived there any long while, becommeth altogither effemmate or womanith which gave such a subject to the Fable, as if they had beene changed into women, and receyued into another Nature. Some haue attributed (to the felfefame reason) the vnmanlinesse of the latter Grecian Emperors of Constantinople. through the ouer-much delicacie of the Countrev.

All this is contrary in France, for amidft fuch a great affluence, and even among a world of pleafures; generous fpirits are borne, truly warriors, and of men excelling in all vertues it yeeldeth withall the like abundance of every other thing yea euen among those Frenchmen as suffer themselves to be led into all pleasures, in peaceful & undisturbed times; yet are they not thereby foftned a jotte, neyther loofe any of their courage, valour, and addresse to actions of Armes. But euen, as if they were meerely borne thereto, nor euer learned any other kinde of exercise : beeing euermore readie to gine ouer all pleasures, to follow the warres, march to fights, and throw themselves first into the mouth of danger. This is their true exercife, their naturall inclination, which they knowe not how to forget or give ouer: and whenfoeuer they delight in hunting, yet are they more readie to returne to Armes.

The like naturall disposition is described by Zozimus, of the Emperor Valentinian, who although hee was a man given to much pleasure, and addicted himselfe thereto at due seasons : vet notwithstanding, when occasion required, he was alwayes readie to vndertake Armes, whereof as patiently hee endured all the paines. toiles, and incommodities, euen asif hee had taken a great pleasure and felicitie

therein. Such a man was Demetring King. of Macedon among the Grecians, and Marcus Antonius among the Romaines, and Scipio gives very little ground vnto them in martial disposition. Cafar also, speaking of his Army (composed for the most part of Gaules) saide: That his Saul diers, how focuer they were perfumed, yet they left not (for all that) to fight valiantly and couragiously. Milites (nos etiam onquentatos, bene pugnare. The like account yvas heretofore made, that the Belgians were the most hardiest and valiant amongst the Gaules; because, they would permit no Merchandizes to bee brought into theyr Countrey, that any way might ferue to fosten the naturall inclination of Men. But he knew well enough foon after, that valiancie and Militarie vertue was fo natural, voto them that were borne and norished under the ayre of Gaul, as it could not by any meanes bee quailed in them, or feparated from them, by the plentie of any thing feruing vnto voluptuous

Some haue held opinion, that the rigour and aufterity of the Persian youths, and their continual manner of living in mongeft the fo ftricte a kinde : prooued to be the onely cause, that they were much better men dred at amonofwarre, then their neighbours. And geft the Lafurely, the Lacedemonians differed not from this coniecture of them, when they faide: They made no great meruaile why they went so boldly to warre, and expofed themselues vnto death; considering, what finall delight and contentment they tooke in life, in regard of the haifh and rigorous discipline of their lawes. But the Gentlemen of France, although they be borne and bred delicately, they domener fayle in generous courage: Armes, and verie hard Trauailes in Warre, are vnto them as sportes and pastimes; and, to speake inftly, they are born thereto, without neede of fo much cunning and inftruction, as others have to exercise and prepare them.

Those people that Fraunce hath bred The Romains and veelded, have alwayes bene redoubtable for their Armes, to all other Nati- hoode of the ons of the world. The Romaines well their coit. felte it, when they were hewed in peeces by the Gaules, on the day at Allia. And afterward, when (vpon their fodaine coming on them) they were constrained

Men aldict

Sucton in Inlie.

Cap.67.

The frice forme of life young men of

cedemonians.

teltihe man-

The errour the Romane historians.

Polyb.bift.in l.

Suet in vit.Ti-

berio cap.3.

In Lib. I.

Cicero in Oral

which yet was not fufficient to faue them till (in the end)they were gladde to pay a great quantity of golde and filner to the Gauls for their ransom. And although their historians labour to make men beleeue . that Camillus the Dictator exterminated the greater part of the Gaules, & brought back againe that which was given for ranfome; yet notwithstanding, Polybius a very ancient Author, neere enough to those times, well experienced in the history, & being an excellent writer beside, hee declareth the contrary, faying: The Gaules went away victorious, having granted peace to the Romanes, by meanes of a great fumme of gold, which they brought thence with the. Which is moreover confirmed by Suetonius, who fayeth; One of the house of the Neroes, Ancestors to the Emperor Tiberius, having made warre on the Gaules called Senones, descending from them that surprized Rome: brought backe the gold of the ransom which had bin payed them, or that it was not recovered by Camillus, as the rumour ranne. And beside, those very men that sacked Rome returning thorow Italy, made alliance with the elder Dionifius, the Tyrant of Siracusa, and aided him with theyr troopes against the Locrians and Crotones his enemics, as it is auouched by Tro-

gus Pompeius. 🖈 If the loffe of the Gauls had bin so notable, as Linius hath described it: they could not have peopled a greater country in Italy, & made war so often on the Romans, as at divers times they did . Wee had enough to do (faith Cicero) to resist them er to defend our selves being continually asfailed by them. And our Captaines and Commanders in war perpetually accounted that it was fitter to defend of beare off their blowes in such a war, then to set on or assault them. It is wel known of great Marius, when he opposed himselfe against the effortes and stratagems of the Gaules, that hee neuer durst attempt to enter their Lands. They to whome all other war was easie, lost all their fencing trickes against the Gaules. Hitherto (faith Salust) the Romans evermore conceived that all things gave way, and were to be yoaked by their vertue. But only against the Gaules when they were to fight with the not for honour and glory, but for defence of

Nor did they tearme this warre but tu-

to hide themselues in their Capitoll; the \ mult & insurrection, because that by the promptitude of the Frech, in vling arms; they had not the leifure to beate their drum to raife or call their companies; but fuddenly, without any choife, tooke fuch for foldiers as could carry Armes. They An Exchechad a particular Exchequer or Treasurie quer in Rome by it felfe, destined to be imployed onely onely for the about the charges of the Gaulish warres, whenfoeuer they hapned: as being one of the greatest & most extreame necessities belonging to their City. And though in all other wars some stood exempted from going to them, as fuch as had front their time in war being called Veteranes, or ancient feruitors; yet (in fuch a cafe) they much needs march without any regard at all of fuch exemption. Vt oportet bello Gal- Cicciopro Fa lico vt maiorū iura more[ģ, pra[cribunt, nemo est Ciuis Romanus qui sibi vella excusatione vtendum putet. According to the Lawes of our Ancestors (laith Cicero) and according unto ordinary custome, there is not any Romane Citizen shat must think onely to propound any exemption, when there happeneth any war with the French.

Nav that which is more, the Romaines quitted and gaue them freely the honour In Coniurat.Co. belonging to actions of arms. Cato volun-tarily confesses in Saluft, That the Greet-belli Gallos Reans had gone beyond the Romans in eloquece, manos ante fuand the Gauls them, in the glory of war. And this is the reason, why they alwaies stood in feare of the country that brought forth a people naturally warriors, & in fo great a number. When they named that Prouince, they would fay, It was too fearefull cicer.de proninfor the Romaines. Neuer was any speech of cits Confalant. the least ftir or tumult in Gaule, but they acco timenda. would all tremble. And thereupon, immediately after the death of great Cafar the Dictator, it was propounded to the Senate to giue ouer Gaule, leauing it to full liberty, although it was formerly conquered and affired. These are the very words of Appian: There was (faith hee) made a In lib.3. de Bil. Decree and arrest to the Senate, concerning Gaule: all the Senators being poffeffed with feare. A little lower hee faith : Some amongst them were of the minde, That they must needes give over, and for fake all the whole Countrey and People, leaving them at libertie, and to enfranchise them from sub= section unto the Empire. So much they stood in feare and dread of the Neighbourhoode of

And

Chap.2.

munierat ante nstura, non fine lerum immanitati multitudini eue patuisset, nunquam bec vrbs summo Imperio domici

lum 4: sedem

ting them-

*A Citic of

by the Ro-

maines,

Called alfo

ta,and Cite-

ior Gallia,

now named Lombardie.

orabuisset.

And Cicero faith; Nature bath munited | Italy with a rampier of Alpes, not without divine providence. For if that entrace (fayth he) were laid open to the fury and multitude alique dis no numine: nam & of the Gaules: euer would the Citty of Rome, numine: nam je the seate and dwelling place of the Empyre, onely Soueraigne of the worlde, bee besied-· It is not to the Romains only that the

French haue made knowne their vnconquerable corage, and to feel the ftrength of dreadles armes, what Canton? what quarter of the world is there, where they haue not planted their conquering Enfigns ? The Celts (for fo the Grecians termed the French) are found to dwell in most parts of the vniuerse, as having lefte France, in regard of their ouer-great multitude, to seeke new countries elsewhere, which they conquered with their fwords, and became Maftersofthem. They are difperfed ouer al Europe, and hardly is there any quarter, where they have not left the markes of their victories, and records of their name. Spaine is full of fuch Colonies, whose names would bee considered out of divers countries, according as ancient Geographers have stiled them. And first to speake of the "Celtiberians, who are People of the proofe sufficient to our purpose, and accounted to be the most valiant people in France,plan-Spaine. No doubt, as they stil retaine the felues by the name, fo doe they (in like manner) keepe Ruer Iberus the vertue and valour of the Gaules their Ancestors, that came to inhabite there. and also to make a Plantation of theyr

Some fourethousand of those Celtiberians, defended most couragiously the city of Numantia, and fustained the fiege Celtiberia in for fourteene years, against the Effortes Spain, befiedof many Roman armies, yea, and of theyr ged 14 yeares very cheefest Captaines, vntill such time as they were inforced to fend their Scipio thither. In the end, the fo long befiedged Celtiberians, chose rather to burn themselues and their Citty together, then to yeeld to their implacable Enemies, vnto whom they left nothing to adorne theyr triumph, but their very name onely.

At this very day, Portugal and Gallizia do carry the names of their first founders the Gaules. They entred also vpon a great | by the same Trogus, and heere you may Trog. Pomp. List part of Italy, comprehending (in the same | reade his owne verie Words. Gallorum Gallia Togarespect) the name of Gallia Cifalpina, wher they first entred in the reigne of Tarquini-

Of the People of France. us Prifew, King of the Romaines, about the year of the world, MMM, CCC.LX. There they founded Millam, & afterward Brescia Verona and other Cities: this cour ragious, hardy, and warlike Nation (I vie the very wordes of Trogue) the checkeft next to Hercules, and justly deferuing to 100,24. be called immortal, they (I fav) ouerwent the tharpnesse and bitternes of the Alps, ynpalsible for the fnowes & colds, They are found to dwell thorowall Germanie, where are the Boemes and Carnes , in Pannonia or Austria, and Hongaria; in Tran-Cyluania, Valachia, and Albania; in Thrace, the Celtes. where they have reigned a fufficient legth of time. This may be the reason, why som of our Ancients named Europe, Celtica, Ptolomliba. Kelriav, because that the most part of the Quadripert. inhabitants, called themselnes Celtes ot Gauls, as is plainly auouched.

For the fame respect, an ancient Geographer faide, that the Northerne part of the earth, was inhabited by the Scithians, the Eastern by the Indians, the Southerne by the Æthyopians; and the Occidentall The foure or Western by the Celts or Gaules:each the world, and place and part of the world taking first de- how inhabinomination, according to the excellency ted. of the people that were the principal and most renowned in eueric part. The verie fame Gaules have made all Macedon and Greece to tremble, and have folde peace to all other people, who came to buy it, before they were any way affailed, as affrighted with the name of the Gauls onely. Trooms reporteth it in this manner: Tantus terror Gallici nominis erat, Ut ettam Trog Pomp. La Reacs non lacelliti. vltro pacem ingenti pecunia mercarentur. Such was (faith he) the terrour of the Frenchmens name, that Kings neuer beeing encountred, came of them-selues, and by theyr owne meere motion, to purchase their peace with great summes of Money.

All the leffer Afia were as flenderly able The leffer A. to refift them. for it hath bin, wholly fub- fia fubdued dued by them. In like manner, fuch ac- by the Frech count was made of their man-hoode, that there hapned not any war in the East, but they were the forwardest partakers therein. It was euermore to them, that afflicted Princes fled for fuccour, as it is declared ea Tempestata tanta facunditatis inuentus fuit, vt Asiam omnem velut examme

Trog.Pemp.in

Many Lands

In fine Bel. Iug ~ [que ad nostra mani sic babue virtuti fue pro-ue esse că Gal-lis pro falute ,no pro gloria certa- their lines.

Mellobands The affection of the Empe-

tor Gratian to the Gauls for

his own good

Gallo-Greci fo named of the valiant

Gaules, that declared their

valour there.

fine mercenario Gallorum exercitu vila bella gesseriut, neg, puls regno ad alios quam ad Gallos confugerint. Tantus terror Gallici nominis siue armorum inuicta felicitas erat, ut aliter ned, Masestatem suam tutam, neque amissam recuperare se posse, sine Gallica virtute arbitrarentur. Denig, in auxilium à Bythinia Rege inuocati, regnum cumeo parta victoria diuiserunt, eamá, regionem Gallo-Graciam cognominauer unt. There was then fuch an aboundance of youthfull French, that they filled Asia, even as if it had bin swarms of Bees : in fuch fort, that the Kings of those quarters of the East, attempted not any war, wherein they had not Frenchmen under pay. And if they chaced to be expulsed from their estates, they had no other recourse, but to throwe themselves into the armes of the French. Such was the terror of the Frenchmens Name, or the inuincible felicity of their Armes; that Kings knew not howe to prouide, nor conserue their Maiestie, or to recouer it againe being lost, without the valor of the French. To conclude, being called by the King of Bithinia, to lend him fuccour, after they had parted away with victory; they also parted or divided his kingdom with the, and surnamed the Countrey Gallo-Gracia, or French-Greece.

Those verie Gaules whereof we now fpeake, were come away from Thrace, where they (before) had established a Kingdome: which continued afterward, till the time of Clyarus their last king, according to the report of Polybius . The people of Thrace, of Bizantium, and of Cherrone (us, being then their tributaries. All this is affirmed and maintained of the

Nowe, as concerning fuch as haue caried the name of Frenchmen or Gauls, ancient standers, and dwellers in partes neerer hand, as well on this side, as beyond the Rheine: they long time made warre with the Romanes, pursuing them with their Armies, and ouer-labouring them by fo many courfes; that at length they expulsed them quite from amongst the Gaules. They were first observed to appeare vnder that name of French-The valour of men, in the time of the Emperor Galien; the Gaules in and from thence onward, the Romane the Emperor Galiens time. Histories are copious, how manie times

they passed and repassed the Rheine, to

make warre with the Romaines, vvhen

aliquo implerent : Deni g, neg, Reges Orientis | they thought to teare away Gaule out of their hands. Panegyricall Authors, exalting those Emperors with praises to heauen, that had in any encounter (how filly focuer) got any advantage against the French, do yet make it sufficiently known what great account was made of this people and generous Nation, yea, more then of any other, as being most fearefull to them, and to whome (for this cause) they veelded themselves tributaries.

Vnder the Emperor Claudius the I I. they inuaded Holland, and other neighbo- of Holland, ring Countries, and made thence theyr other placeso courfes and wonted expeditions, as well by Land as Seasyntill they extended their power fo onward, that they entred fomewhat farre into Spaine. Zozimus and the Rhetorician Eumentus, doe report a cer= taine voyage of theirs, and a chance well deferuing memory. The Emperor Probus hauing made warre on them, and wonne the voper-hand in some encounter; hee tooke divers of them prisoners, which he led away into Afia. Soon after, they made an escape. & being imbarked in certaine final veffels, which they found fitting for The fucceffe their purpose: they ouer-ran and rauaged of the Gauks the coasts of Greece, and the Isles of the prisoners into Ionian sea, besieging and taking Siracufa, and afterward passing the straites of Gebaltare, returned home againe into theyr owne country. The verie greatest affairs, that euer the Romanes had with Straungers, were alwaies against the Gaules, or French, who neuer would fuffer them to liue in quiet.

In the end, the Emperors well vnderflood their valour, and made vie thereof The warre of to their service. Constantine the Great, in | Constantine the warre hee made against Licinius: had great store of them in his Armie under his, and fer great store of them in his Armie, vnder wice of the French to him aonduct of a verie valiant French Captaine, named Bonicius, whose manhood is well noted by Ammianus Marcellinus. At the same time, partly by conquest, partly by conniuence of the Emperours; they extended the Gaules name very farre, and did fo great feruices to the Romains, that they filled whole Legions of them. Especially, under the Emperors Conftans, Constantius, Valens and Valentinian, as is to be feene in Ammianus Marcellinus, Zozimus, and divers other Historians of those

Afterwards, Gratian, having fworne

out a Mellobands, Prince of the French, beside many other Captaines and Soldiers: by whose meanes he assured his owne estate, and carried away great Victories from the Germanes, whereof thirty thoufand were flaine in the field . This Prince did so highly esteeme of them as they ferued him in all occasions : yea, they filled up the Army which he gaue to Theadofine to make quietnesse in the East; and to repulfe thence the Gothes. Moreover, he favoured and advanced them to great charges of his Court, and even (as if (in respect of them) he began to grow in distafte with his Romanes; fo prooued it

(partly) to be the coule of death. It is most plaine and apparant, that for the space of about 200 yeares, they were the threshing Flaile, the terror & amazement of the Romane Empire; whertofto vie the fame words that Claudian fayth of them) They folde peace and quietnesse at the prizes of money, and tooke great recompences to cease their fights. The Epithets which the Authors of those times gauethem, were the names of Terrible, dreadfull, and redoubted Warriors as being the onely nation, that (more then all other elfe could do) amated, bruifed, yea, & veterly brake in peeces the Romane forces.

After that this Monarchy of the French in Gaule was fully established: they could then vndertake other great enterptizes & voyages. How many times did they passe in Armes, both into Asia and Affrica, to chase thence the Infidels, Sarazens, and Turkes, to deliuer the Holy land, and the Christians that were there in their seruitude? There hath not bene any expedition in Christendome, wherein they have not bene heads and conducters, yea euen the better part it felfe. Many times have they fuccoured & re-established the Emperors of Constantinople. And in the end. to revenge the death of Isacius Angelus, (whom they had reseated som short time before) cruelly murdred by the Tyrant Mur fuffle: they took in their affault) that great City, where they commanded (almost) fourehundred yeares. They made themselues so knowne thoroughout the East and South parts, and have so lively engrauen there the memorie of theyr name that (even to this day) all the Orientals terme the inhabitants of Europe,

more first alliance with them, could find | by the word Franks, as thinking that name to be vniuerfall. As in like manner the Arabians and the Abyffines, who call Europe by the name of Frankia.

Ozorius, the learned bythop of Sylad reporteth, that the Indians when the Poitugals make warre against them: they call them by no other name then Francki 1 38 confessing naturally, that since the brane expeditions of the French : against the Turkes and Sarazins, this name (full of admiration among those people) had so foread it felfe thoroughout all Affa and Affrica, that alwayes afterward, the fame was to be attributed ento all the Western people, marine a managrafing to man mak

But to deliberate no longer at this time on all the expeditions of waire and vovages attempted by the French for the chri-Itian name, for the defence of religion & the Church, against Moores, Sarazins, Turkes, and other Mahometanes, in diuers Countries of the world and the glo- the French rious and goodly actions thereby them of the Holy performed: Can any thing bee tearned Land. more hardy, valiant and denerous; then that which they did for conquest of the holy Land? Vindertaking for long a Voyage, croffing fo many Countries & with fuch flore of difficulties: Nothing could dant or turne them , nothing feemed impossible to them, beeing altogether inflamed with a zealous & diuine defire. They exposed themselves to allkindes of dangers, inconvenience of places and paffages, famine, thirst, pestilence and warre: meerly prodigal of their lines, for religious zeale. In whatfocuer we read concerning antiquity, yea cuen of the fabulous ages, neuer are to be found fuch deedes of proweffe, as they did in that conqueft.

Let Godfrey of Bullen fer himfelf before you, with his gallant French troopes, tra- Guliel Tyrim in uerfing al Germany & Hungaria, & arining De Belle Sarre at Constantinoples there is affailed bydiners ambuscadoes on the Emperors behalf, yet ouercoming them al, euen as if it were against his wil to preuaile. Then looke on him passing the straits of the Hellebont, be fleging the city of Nicea, one of the strongest in all the East, munited with al things fustained and defended by a people resolued, as wel for affaults given, as fallies repulsed, or by any cunning to bee circumuented. During this fiedge, the Army of Soliman, confishing of 500000.men,

Claudian his words of the Gaules.

6700 t

The paffage of the Gaules into Afia and

The Gaules gaue great Emperors of Confrantino-

Nicet Chonia

The ancient Gaules inhabiting on ey-Rheine.

Polyb.in lib.4.

A brave an-

wernfihe

French to A

lexander the

Nicea taken by the Fréchi

againft Soli-

man and his

Turkes.

comming expressely to rayle the siedge. is ouercom, broken, and cut in pecces, & the City furprized in the end.

A battell glud by the French in Caramania

A worthy ftr tagem of Godtrey of Bullen, in an vrgent necel

The sharpe & jeuere beliedging of the City of Antioche by God-frey of Bullen

After this, behold another battel giuen in Gicilia or Caramania, by thirty thousand French onely, against an Armie of tyvo hundred thousand Turkes and Mahomecanes, led by the fame Soliman, and the Sultane of Persia. These two hundred thousand Turkes, having (at theyr first charge from farre off) couered all the Christian Army with a cloud of Arrows; and making a counterfet flew of flight, fenr another hower of thafts in the fame maner, and then a third, they not having any meanes to joyne or come nere them. So that there was fearfely one man amonothe Christians, but was wounded with sheir steeled Arrowes, some in the armes, others in the legges, and many in diners parts of their bodies, notwithstanding the helpe of their Targets: euenas if we famithedike Army of the Romanes led by M. Craffin against the Parthians'. Vntill fuch times a Godfrey refolued to make apretonce of flight, and (indeed) retyred; as if he had bene no longer able to endure them Which moued the Turkes to purfue after them out of order, as if they were altogether overthrown and diffiartned. But when the French behelde them within their compasse, that they might deale with them by handy stroakes: all wounded as they were, they give fuch a couragious charge voon the Infidels, that they foiled and vanquished the whole Armyi So proceeding on, the Citties of

Tharfus and of Edella, and all the other betweene them, were likewise taken. ... Antioche besiedged by a long siedge, the besiegers being incessantly assayled, as well with the villuing foorth of an Army that was within as by the ambuscadoes of many troopes at liberty abroad, befides cutting off victuals, and all other commodities from them. In these extremities they were also oppressed with conragious difeafes, famine, and other kindes of necessities and miseries, every thing being opposite and contrary to them, and the Emperor of Constantinople, doing his very vttermost to endamage them. All which notwithstanding, they lost not a

iot of courage, or became any way at all

disheartned in this theyr enterprize, al-

though to make their mifery much more:

there came also on them another dreadfull Army, containing all the powers of the East, and appearing impossible to bee refisted. But the Christians conducted by The happie Godfrey of Bullen, ouer-spent and wearled the Child as they were, having given the battaile, ouercame the great Armies, and drone them to flight.

Her paffe an infinire number of particular charges, encounters, combates, fights, ambushes, surprizes and assaults, to come to the fiedge of Ierusalem, where they metwith all resistance possible, both by force and cunning : which neverthelesse (in the ende) after infinite famous actions of Armes, was wonne by lively force, and in a generall affault. All this was done in lefte then two yeares, from of Bullen the yeare 1097 to the yeare 1099 .- when Ierusalem was wonne and in the Moneth of July: Then was Godfrey chosen King of Ierufalem who yet refused the crowne of gold, faying; It fitted not him to weare that pompe where his Lord and Sautor wore one of tharpe pricking thornes. Euery one of the other Princes& French Lords, which made up the body of the Army were also rewards of for partakers in the chiefe poffession of Cit- great deferties and Prouinces thereabout; & there uing. was not a man among them, but was capable of holding the Empire of the world, and by farre greater reason, then is reported of Alexanders Captaines. And this may justly be the cause (in part) that the fuccesse was not so great as it might haue bene: they beeing able to haue paffed on, fo farre as the extremest parts of the East to conquer all the Country and plant their Enfignes on the banks of the Indian Seas. In briefe, there was neuer any thing comparable thereto, neither for religious piety, nor manhood in Armes.

It was also a matter admirable in Godfrey, that being Souldier; he should bee culpable of fo great prouidence, inflice, and moderation of spirit. It is reported of him, that although he was King, yet he cloathed himfelfe, and lived fo fimply, as the very meanest Souldier about him So that you a certain day divers Lords of the Country being come vnto him, to present him with gifts, but (to speak truly) to espie and take knowledge of what they could: being brought before him, they found him fitting on a Sacke ful of straw, & vpon the ground. After they had well

the Christias

Chap.1.

The admira-

ble humility

and modera

tion of God-frey of Buller

& his answer

to certaine

edicario s de bes

Strabo in Lib. 2

observed it, beeing driven to no meane | courage; there remaineth very sufficient admiration, they made enquiry; how fo proofes in antiquity. Some haue attrigreat a Prince, beeing a Lord of fuch matchleffe merit. hatting shaken all the East, and seized on the very greatest kingdome, should be feated to poorely, without any pompe, no rich hangings, nor any Guard about him to make him dreadfull to fuch as should some neere him. But he demanding what they had faide, replied thus: It is the belt feate for a mortall man and by good right the earth foodld Suffer and ferne to beare him for a time . in regard that (afterward) it must be the house for his body to dwelling Which when the Lords had heard; admiring his answer. humility and wifedonie, they returned thenco Taying This is (indeede) fuch a man, as bught to rule oner all thefe Regions; and to him (in equity of defert) it belonveth. to command over all other people Whatfo-**'euer.** เดาละยาเปลาการเทีย

Thus the kingdome of Jeru (alem was How long the for the space of about sources & held the king tenne yeares by the French, who (in the dome of te meane while) made warre voon the Infidels; being succoured from time to time by the Kings of France: among whom. Lewesthe leuenth called the young, and Philip Augustus went thither in person. But afterward , this kingdome was conquered by Saladine, first Souldan of Egipt : And then the French, vnder conduct of their Kings, ceasied not alwayes to attempt voyages and expeditions, as shall be declared in place more conucnient. Heere I forbeare to speake of the great

warres and goodly exploits in Armes; of

the French against the Allemaignes,

Hunnes, Danes, Normans, Saxons, Sar-

razins, Gothes, Lombards, and English,

very ftrange, and rather blame worthy, which are to be discoursed hecreafter. There is not any other people, that The apparant fingularity of haue caused themselves more to bee spothe French, a- ken of, to foread their renowne fo far, and enterprise matters more great, goodly, & all occasions, whereby they might bee redifficult, then they have done. Other Naouted timorous. tions never could come neere them, no, not the Spaniards, of whom Strabb Veeldeth testimony, that they never did or ever durst vndertake great occasions. They beeing (faith he)exercifed and inured to slender exploits, or lowe or bale enterprises; as some light ambuscadoes, courses, and brigandages or theeueries. But concerning the valour

of the French, and the greatnesse of their

buted this quality to them, to be voyd of feare, and boldly to cast themselves into the midft of dangers. Strabo reporteth Strabo in lib. 2. that certaine Frenchmen beeing brought to Alexander the Great; when hee demanded of them, what it was they most feared : made this answer : Nothing at all, except the Heavens (bould fall on our heads. Signifying by this manly reply, that feare had no power to freeze their blood, or vflitted any place in their warlike foules.

Great. In like manner, they nouel knew what it was to flye, or turne their backs in the most dangerous fights; fieither to give fo much as the least inch of ground: as the Emperour Leo declareth in his Art Mill- Leo ImpinTee. tury or Tacticks, and Chalcondilus the Chalcona in Grecian, in his Turkish History. Both of Hist. Turk, these Authors do affirme, that they hold this the heaviest sinne, which can happen to be committed by them. The selfesame is also anouched by Aelianus, who delinereth thefe very words. Among all men, they Aclian. De var that most affect dangers, and most valiantly Hift.lib.11. expose their lines to perilles : Londerstand them to be the Gaules. The whole Subject of their Songs is of such men of vertue, as died valiantly in foughten battels. Crowned they combate, and adorned with Markes & Trophees of their victories: as well to honor the worthy act's which they have done, as to ferue for memory to posterity, according to the manner of the Grecians. But above all, flight

is held fo dishonest and shameful among them,

that very many times, they will not get them

gone; or make escape away from a tottering

house though it be ready to fall uppon them.

or all on a flame, and themfelues in immedi-

are danger to be burned. This may feenie

then commendable: yet it is done in no

other regard, but only to fhew what their

refolution hath alwaies bene, as shunning

In like manner, the Emperor Iulian, fpeaking of his followning among the Gaules, faieth; That it was with the most warlike, and onely couragious people of all other Nations. Paufanias declareth, that although they were wounded quite thorough their bodies with the fword, and even cleft in twaine with axes sharpe slices; yet notwithstanding, not a jote of

Paulan Phoci

Vnconquera-ble resolution in the French and what opi nion the Greekes had of them-

Arift.in Ethio

No diftincti-

on of yeares

among the

Gautes from

marching in

Marcelin İ.34

One that

Armes

their courage abated. And when they wer \ shot through with darts and arrowes, fo long as any respite of life remained, or the very last gaspe or breathing; they fought stil manfully, and made a massacre among their enemies: yea, there were many among them that fnatched the Arrowes & Darts out of their own wounds. and thor them backe against the Greeks, or being neerer hand, flew them with the fame Arrowes and Darts, even by meere stabs. Whereat the Greekes being amazed, to behold fuch wilfulnesse in fight, fuch courage, consempt of death, & prodigality of life; not knowing whereto they should attribute it, nor (to speake truely) what to fay of it, (beeing wont to commend no men but themselues) they faide: This goes quite beyond the nature of men. .

In the same case and respect, Aristotle, imagining that fuch firength and valiancy was without example, and aboue the capacity of any humane spirit: attributed this viuacite of foule, to a kinde of furious and naturall infensibility, not fearfull of any thing; neither earthquakes, nor the roughest stormes or tempelts : Euen like (faieth hee) as it is reported of the Celts or Gaules. Warre was their true trade & exercife, there was not a man among them, that would excuse himselfe from marching to the field, without any distinction of ages. The olde man, wearied and spent as he was went to it as cheerefully, as hee that farre greater force and vigor. A yong lad, euen in the first floure of his time, found therein no difficulty at all; he made offer of his youthfull members freely, to be hardened by colds, and inured to trauailes, alwayes disposed and ready to support most difficult occasions, yea, and the

very dreadfullest accidents of wat. In briefe, as it is confirmed by Martellinus, a faithfull Author, a Souldier or mã fit for the warre, who hath lived any time among them; shall neuer be there mette withall, as among the Romanes: where there were forme, that to fhun the warres, wold cut off some member of their owne, especially their thumbs , Whom we termed (faith he) in derision and mockery, * Murci. To men of fuch base and seruile condition, as will thus cut off a joynt, to make themselues vncapable of being Soldiers,

may bee referred that injurious French

difgrace, Poltron, và police trunco : A knaue bath his thumbe cut off.

This generofity and greatnesse of courage, is likewife familiar among the wome The spright of France, whereof we have testimony in the fame Author Ammianus Marcellinus, who writeth thus. If a man of Gaule enter into a quarrell, his wife being with him, there is not any troupe of strangers able to refift or Stand against their strength. Especially, when the women are moved or enflamed with choller , firetching fourth their brawns armes, oriping their strong knit hands todether great and white as fnow : fo that both with feet & fifts they discharge blowes as liberally, as if they wer stones from flings, or quantels from Croffebowes. And as they are thus excelling in magnanimity, fo are they as complete in other perfections: but cheefely in

providence, discretion, and good advice.

VVe reade, that before the Gaules paffed into Italy, a strong fedition happened to grow among them, which dispersed it selfe into a civil warre. But the women,euen as the two Armies were ready to Plut in De meete each other; threw themselves into the middest betweene them, and questioning the reason of their difference, drew them to fo great equity, and fulneffe of content on cyther fide; that they begat admirable and reciprocall love and kindnesse among them, not onely betweene the Townes and Citties, but also in the houses neighbouring together. Wherup-pon, after that time, they continued all confultations of their affaires (as well concerning warre as peace) with theyr wives, and pacified all quarrels and differences with their neighbors and kindred, onely by their meanes. And therefore, in the composition which they made with Hanniball, when he passed by the Gaules, The compose they concluded (among other Articles) in this manner. That if it fo came to passe tweene Han that if the Gaules pretended any wrong miball & the to be done them by the Carthegenians the Carthagenian Captaines and Gouernours (which were in Spaine) should be the Iudges thereof. Contrariwife, if the Carthagenians could alleadge, that the Gaules had offered them any injury; the women of Gaule should bee Judges therein. And therfore Plutarke had great reason, to ranke those Ladves in number. among them reputed to be vertuous wo-

The Gaules called their wines to con-Cultations and ouncels.

Kingdomes in India where

Noble men

admit not

mariage.

Of Bertrand

du Guesclin.

and his noble

Behold what generous words of a woman can

Chap.2. The Gaules ever called them to their | Barre of his body, against the hottest incouncels and confultations, as well for warre as peace, because they knew their naturall disposition to be such; as not a woman among them, would feeke any to foften and weaken (willingly)the boldeft or most couragious enterprize her husband could vndertake. And this may be the cause, why the ancient Romane Soldiers would not be maried: As now at this day there are certaine kingdomes of the Indiaes, where the Noble-men will by no meanes admit marriage. But the Gaules knew well enough, that this fexe were fo farre off, from any way hindring their Martiall defignes; that they would by no meanes permit the very least inclination to negligence or cowardife; they rather ferued as sharpe spurres to their vertue, to excite, encourage, and animate

them more and more. To this purpose, I may not omit a notable example though not of the ancient Gaulish women; but of a French Lady, as vet recent and fresh in memory. Bertrand du Guesclin had beene alwayes a most valiant Knight, and one highly renowned in all Histories . After he had performed nesse, in winning honour by Armes; and many worthy enterprizes, euer to his fame and honour: he maried with a beautifull Lady, named Tiphania, descended of a noble family. After which mariage, he growing to leave, and discontinue his former exercise of Armes; as he sate difcourfing with his Lady, the gently began to blame and reproue him declaring that (before their mariage) hee followed the warres, wherein hee had atchieued the cheefest reputation. And that it neyther futed with the nature, nor duty of a true Gentleman, to lofe the least repute of honour wonne before, by ouer-much affecting a new made choise. As for mee (quoth face) who ought to faine by the bright radiance of your fame, I shall account my felfe too low dejected, if you giue ouer a course so well begun, and lose your spirits in doating loue, wer it to one more worthy then my felfe.

These words did so neerely touch the Knight, that hee began againe to follow Armes, wherein he carried himselfe so valiantly, that they did well and worthily attribute it to him, to stand as a stout Rampier for France, in the very sharpest times of warre, and euermore made a meere

uations of the English. By vertue of his valour. King Charles the fift, having reconquered most part of those territories, which had bene infulted on in the reignes of the precedent Kings: alwayes helde head against that valuent Edward, surnamed the Blacke Prince, and Prince of Wales, and disappointed all his hopes. It was he that re-established Henry the II. King of Castille, in his kingdome, in defpight of all the Armies and English forces. Hee was also made Constable of France by King Charles the fift, who helde him in such endeared affection for his valour, that having bestowed great gifts on him in his life time; after his death, hee did him fo much honour, as to let him be buried at S. Denis, at the feete of the same Toombe, which this King had prepared there for himfelfe.

Whatfocuer is heere fet downe, con- All the Ladies cerning this honourable Lady Tiphania, of France are hath beene, and is as familar to all the La- equall to Tidies of France, who partake in the felfefame affection; and couer rather to enflame, the freeze their husbands forwardthe like they are (in all respects) to their children. For whofoeuer will but aduitedly well confider, on the admirable generosity, and greatnesse of courage in the people of Gaule; they will make no meruaile at all, of those bolde words yied by the braue Souldier Vercingetorix. If could (quothhee) write together all the In Cafin som French: I should compose such an Army of lib.s. men, as if the whole world did consure, and bend all force against them, they were not able to withit and them. Take it as a vaunt or brauado who will. The very proofe of their fights and conquests, made but by some part of their people, may yeeld sufficient testimony, that if the words spoken by Vercingetorix had bene put in exccution; they would have prooued true, and the fame effect must needes have followed.

And to speake truely, if we conferre them with other Nations, we shall apparantly perceive, that the French have gon beyond all in Military vertue. So many expeditions, and yet info farre remote Countries, so many warres attempted, & fortunately finished; so many foughten battels; and so many actions of Genero-

The honora-ble actions of Bertrand du

cutteth off his thumb,be cause he will

Chap.2.

breeding and

The negli-

gence of the

Spaniards in

tilling their

grounds.lca-

uing them to

be done by their willer.

alwayes flood in feare of the to the world. The Greeks and the Romanes (albeit their sworne enemies) doe render but too true testimonies thereof: not speaking (in the like tearmes) of any other people whatfoeuer. But especially the Romanes, who never feared any Nation fo much as they whom they acknow ledged to be farall to their City, and the greatnesse thereof. So that when the Gaules of Italy, but particularly those on the hither fide of the Alpes, made but a countenance of remoting themselues; or designed any enterprise: they were immediately possessed with terror, and in a continuall apprehension, omitting no needfull provision of all things, even as if their City were to be befiedged againe, or halfe furprized. Polybius faith. They verily perswaded themselves, that they should never become Masters of Italy; no, nor conferue their owne lands sufficiently; so long as they had the Gaules to be their neighbors. They felt againe the force of the war-

like Gaules in the fecond Punicke warre.

when Hanniball went to encounter them

through Gaule, and made alliance with

the Gaules, whose valor was well enough

knowne vnto him: and hee conducted

them into Italy, where they did him great

service against the Romanes. And nota-

in that great day at Cannas, there were

flaine 4000. Gaules in the fielde on the

Carthagenian fide: That were (faith he)

the principall instruments of the victory,

wonne by their blood for the Carthagenians, which was the most deadly day for the Ro-

manes, next to that of Allia, where the Gauls

ouercame as many. I forbeare to speake of

all the other encounters, battailes, and

most signale warres, which this couragi-

ous Nation had against the Romanes, for

the space of about two hundred yeares.

It is easily discerned (euen out of their

ownereports)how many times the Gauls

had the vpper hand of them, and what

difinal feares and amazements they have

put them to. Alfo, where they have no-

fity have made them fufficiently knowne

Punick warre

Polyb, in lib.2.

Hadleagued with the Gaules, & le them into bly doth Polybius remember them, when Polyb, in lib. 4.

The Gaules had war with the Romane aboue 200. VEATER.

ted downe any conquering of the Gauls, it may be well observed, that it was compaffed onely by some stratagem, deceit or cunning, wherby (according to their own cuning, argue the least part faying)they brought all their purposes to

In a word, after that the Gaules of Italy were emptied of men(by continual wars) and brought into Subjection, Polybius reporteth. That there was the end of the Gauls war, the like wherof was never heard or feen, be it for courage boldnesse, and resolution in Souldiers ; be st for greatnes of fights ; be it for numbers of flaine men, or multitudes of their troupes. Further he proceedeth on in the accidents of their wars, by way of giuing some encouragement to weake mindes against the dreadfull attempts of the Gaules : Who made foizure (faith he) on the Greeks not only before, but also in my time. Of any other nation, he findethnone but the Grecians & the Romans, that can deliuer any such true testimony of them: which rendreth faith fufficiently on their fide v (among al other people) they neuer could be fellowed. Albeit Cicero in his cicarere PE time, speaking of the Spaniards and the tio Hilpani m French) (aith: That the Spaniards exceeded dine Galli. in number but the Gaules or French in valiancy. Wherby is enidently feene, that in the comparison of these two Nations, he giueth the honour to the French, attributing to the other nothing but number. in Iraly. That great Captaine passed then

And yet me-thinkes it is strange to be eredited, that the Spaniards should exceed the French in multitude of men, cofidering, that Spaine (as hath bin fpoken heererofore) is described to be but badly inhabited, even by ancient Geographers, habiting of and them more moderne: whereas contrariwife, that France is so filled with me, and fo greatly inhabited, as it is wonderfull to behold. But it may bee, that the mighty numbers of the Gaules were not (as then) knowne, Gaule beeing not subiected to the Romanes, as Spaine was, which they held almost wholy. For whofocuer shall consider, what Armies the Gaules gathered from time to time, to make warre vpon the Romans, according to the recital of Cafar himselfe: wil judge 141. Caf in can that Spaine, nor any other Province of Lib.7.

Europe, could not be fo fully furnished. Moreouer, it would not be much differing from our purpose, if wee should set The Romans downe, what troups of ftrangers the Ro- had more manes then kept at their pay: & namely, inercinary Soldiers from that they had more mercenary Soldiers Spain: then out of Spaine, then euer they could get from France from France. Because those people beeing more barbarous, lesse civilized, & polished with good cariage; gaue the-

Polyb , whi figns

Learned ftudies among the Gaules. Concerning

Cicero pro M.

Subject to the fpoiles of

All Countries

der at randome among the Mountaines, there to pilfer and rob from one another, or elfe to ferue as mercinaries, partly to the Carthagenians, and partly to the Romanes, after they had once got footing there. On the contrary, the Gaules (of whom no question was at any time made to be all warriors, excelling in valour and greatnesse of courage) in regard that they were much civilized, neuer lived after fo base a manner. And although they had fuch plenty of warlike people, yet wanted they no meanes of freeing themselues from vdleneffe, when their grounds were to be tilled and husbanded or other Arts and Trades vsed, necessary for the life of man, as well in times of greatest turbulence, as feafons of more fecurity. For no where can it bee read of them, as it is of the Spaniards, that they left their Lands barren because they would not till them. but referred them wholly to their wines to take that paines, who both before and after their times of childing, were feigne so to toyle and movie themselues.

Other of our Gaules imployed themselues in the studie of Letters, and exercifes of Religion, and contemplation in celestiall matters: witnesse so many skilfull Druides, and fuch befide as followed after them, renowned for their Learning through all the parts of the world. So that the Gaules dwelling beyond Gaule, ferued but very flenderly to the Romans, vntill fuch time as they had conquered Gaule: then they found the fufficiency of their assistance, and acknowledged not only their vertue and valiancy, but also their infinite number of warriors. And this was the reason, why Cicero, speaking afterward to Cafar, concerning his victories in Gaule, faid: That hee had ouercome Nations, inumerable in multitudes.

Now, to speake of all other Countries, there is hardly any one of them, but it hath bene as a prey to strangers. Italy, fometime the Conquereffe of many people, with her Rome, calling her-felfe, cheefe Lady of the world : was shee not reach. (for long time) exposed to the rauages, irruptions and pillages of the Vuifigothes, Herules, Gerpides, Ostrogothes, and Lombards: who intirely tacked and rent her in peeces (each after other) and droue the people out of their dwellings? Spaine

felues to no other exercifes, but to wan- | became inuaded in the fame manner, and | Spaine in the afterward was cantonned by the Vandales, Alanes, and Swenes: yet were they also expulsed (in following time) by the Vuiligothes, who established their owne abiding there. Next to them.came the ofrogothes, who held the Country powerfully to long, till the Sarrazines ouercomming them, were viurpingly possessed of well neere all Spaine. Allemaigne, or Ger-many, was not it likewise made subject to or Germany the inuations of those people which dwelt more Northerly, who at length odher. uerthrew the whole Romane Empire? I fay nothing of some other quarters of the world, where the like fortune hath many times happened: yet this is most certaine. that thorough all the Prouinces of the earth, there have bene changes of people, and of frequent Colonies.

But to speake more particularly of Spaine, at the first it was filled with people of the French Nation, as along the River * Anas or Ana, now called Guadiana in * The River Castille, so farte as the Promontory Artabrum, or Cabo de finis terra, in Gallicia in deth Granada Portugall. Alfo the Celtiberians in Castille, from Portugal by the testimony of Strabo Ptolomie Pom- Strabo in Lib.4. ponius Mela, Pliny and Appian. Fro whence it ensueth, that some ancient Geographers as Ephorus and others, have comprized them vnder France. But be it howfocuer, Spaine hath continually beene taken held and commanded by ftrangers : Divers ftrage as by the Ionians, Lydians, Thracians, Rho- Nations com dians, Phrygians, Cypriots, Phanicians, Egip ... Spaine. tians, Phocenfes, and Carthagenians, accor- value Tading as their owne Historians have ac- rapha. knowledged. Since then, by the Vandales, Alanes, and Sweues, that inhabited there for a long time: and afterward by the Vuifigothes and Ostrogothes . At laft. wholly filled with Moores and Sarragins who held it in possession about senen hundred yeares. And there they remaine vet to this day (according to fome VVri- Moores and ters) in the Mountaines of Andalouzid, Sarrazine yet called Alpuxarras, whether the Armies Spaine of Conquerours could neuer come or

Heereby may bee gathered, that they, are a mingled people, and composed of The Spanifo many feuerall Nations, as have dwelt compounded there in the countries from time to time. people, As their very language it felfe (euen the best pollished and most frequent) suffici-

A Rhetori-

andria, reach-

Marcel, in l.15.

Marfeilles in France, built by the Phocenies.

Marcel:in 1,15

The Bretons expulled by the English

Cornel, Tacitus in vita Iul.Agricola.

Colonies plá red in Armorica or Bre-

ently theweth, confifteth (for the most) part) of the Gothish and Arabick. It would aske an infinite and wearifome labour, to make fearch for all the mutations that have ther happened. But France is a Country, which hath least bene that way ill entreated : as having kept herfelfe more pure entire, and neate from rauage, and incursions of so great numbers of

* Timagenes, an ancient Greeke Author cian of Alex- that flourished in the time of Augustus, cited by Ammianus Marcellinus, faicth; That according to the opinion of his Nation, the Gaules were Autocthones, that is to fay, Originaries and borne in and of the felfefame Country. Declaring thereby, that they were not come or derined of any strangers Colonies; which the Athenians al-To attributed to bee a matter of great honour. I know well, how it may be obie-Eted to me, that Marfeilles was builded and inhabited by the Phocenfes ! yet there was none other but that onely Colonie, beside that which is reported of the children of valiant Hercules, which he had by the women of France, and who there comanded for sometime, as is testified by ancient Monuments and Anciquities of the Gaules, which Ammianus Marcellinus

faith, That he himfelfe had feene in Gaule.

As concerning the Britannians or Bretons, who being expulsed out of England by the English Saxons: they withdrew themselves into Bretaigne, the called Armorica. I hold, agreeing with the judgement of many learnedmen, that they being ancient Pillars of the French. parting from the firme land of the Gauls, to dwell in the Isle which was before it: comming backe afterward, to refuge thefelues in France; did but re-establish their owne ancient Country, and returne to their true orginall. Naturall reason, for the neighbourhood both of the one and other, doth apparantly shew it selfe. The fame is confirmed by Cornelius Tacitus, & by the common opinion that then was, as also by the similitude and likenes, both in faces and manners of the inhabitants. And beside, there is to bee seene in the Geographicall description of that Island (according to Ptolomy) the names of many Gaulish people, who undoubtedly had planted Colonies there. Such were the Belgiaus, the Parisians, the Atrebatians, &

the Cornabians.

As for the French, they were no strangers, they entred among the Gaules, not of the French as enemies, but as friends and brethren among the to the Gaules: to deliuer them from the Gaules. tyranny of the Romanes and Gothes, who had expulsed them, and were (in that maner) restored to their former freedome. and fo the Gaules and French became but one people, as shall heereaster more plainly be declared.

The Gothes, having fo long time kept The Gother their reuels in Spaine; to speake truely, came among the Gauler came also among the Gaules, but yet for a very thort while:nor was there any Enfigne or remarkable valor in those Goths. making comparison of them with the French. It is faid, that their property was to be fearefull, and foone put to flight: fo reporteth S. Gregory Florentius, Arch- S. Greg. Floren Bishop of Tours, who lived somewhat in lib. 2. cap. 27. neere to those times. And Saluianus, that eloquent Priest of Marseilles, acknowledged the Gothes to be the most feeble and syaginm iran flothfull, among the generous Nations Francoum is of the North parts. When they were in current, of Gaule, and stood to encounter with the French: they durst nottarry, or make a vindiam legals ny head against them. The Kings Mero- tradidit, End l. ueus, Chlouis, and Childebert, beheld them feeundam ento passe ouer the Pyrenean Mountains, settleding Giller yet they affailed and ouercame them in battaile, euen in Spaine, hard by Toledo, 6.67. their capitall abiding. The Burguignons and Germanes, who had inuaded fome finall parcels of France, were foone cut off, and quite extermined.

So the French and Gaules, conferued themselves within their own limits, without having any stragers mingled among them. And as (in former times) they filled the world with their Colonies or troops of people, so did they continually the like afterward: hauing againe peopled Germany and Italy, vnder the Emperour Charles the Great, and his successors. So that it is not without good reason, that fee of Ger-(at this instant) the very greatest houses many derived of Germany, derive their original from Herman.com. the French : as is declared by Hermanus, de Nutar in E Count of Nuear, in an Epiftle which hee pift.ad car.s. fent to the Emperor Charles the 5.on the the Annales of Pepin and Charlemaigne.

True it is that the Gaules have beene ouertaken by the Romans: but what people knew how to relift them; confidering

their admirable order, and exact Military discipline? Tofephus, very fitly to this purpose, attributeth thereto all their great conquests and large extendure of the Romane Empire. So that after he hath de-

monitrated the forme of their Campe. their ordinary exercises for Armes, and a fumonary observation of all their behauiour, he concludeth. All thefe being well considered, wee neede make no doubt to say: that the possessions was much lesse then the

Moreouer, of the Westerne Prouin-

The words of Iosephus con-cerning the possessors. Adding withall, that hee extended To farre in declaring all this not as any commendation to the Romane's power; but rather as a comfort to the conquered;

France last conquered by the Romans.

None of the

Romanscoule

Prance, but

onquest of

Chap.2.

ces. France was the last conquered by them whatfocuer is elfe faide to the contrary. Whereas (on the other fide) Spaine came among the first into their hands, in the time of the wars against the Carthagenians. France was that Country, that longest of all resisted, and against which (to speake no more then truth) their inuincible Armies, yea, they that were victorious throughout the whole world; became meerely edgeleffe and blunted, as not able to beare off their blowes. All other Romane Captains veterly loft their labour. Cafar onely excepted. Which is no meane honor to the Gaules, to yeeld themselues under the yoke of so great a Prince: who is acknowledged to be the

most wife and perfect Captaine that ever

was. And yet for all that, France was not was honour enough to their generous conquered at the first onset, neyther made mindes, to carry Cafar fafely away from furrender of her spoyles, without sweate danger, when they had him in their powand blood. That great Commander in er and could have flaine him , Satis eft prowarre, tooke intollerable paines, and trastraffe. The Grammarian Servius citeth uelled for the space of ten yeares conti- this example out of the Ephemerides or nually, with all the power and strength of the Romanes, which then held the more part of the wide world. And vet (euen then) he had not prenailed neither, if hee the other fide) experimented the dulnes of the Easterne people, in the war which he had against * Pharnaces, King of Ponhad not ferued his turne with Frenchmen France it felf. themfelues, & made a conquest of France, and in a time by France. Divisions and partialities. tus Saide. Most happy was Pompey that he when they were at diuisiwhich were then on foot among them (an had nothing to do with the resolute French. ordinary and fatall ruine to the most pobut with the faint-harted men of the East or tent kingdomes) called him thether wher got the furname of Great at fo cheape a Marfinding all to bee divided in divers facti- ket. In briefe, the Gauls were never joyned ons, ciuill warre kindled among them, alto the Romane Empire, by any power in lied with many, and fortefied with their the Romanes, but thorough their owne troopes, as namely them of Authun and proper forces: as a great Captaine ipea-

others it was fo much the more easier to

be furprized by him, and in such an op-

portunity of aduantage.

All which notwithanding it is an admirable matter, and well worth the obsernation that in the relistance made against him by people to difformed & perplexed: vet in ten whole yeares, the Gaules fought thirty ranged battailes, wherein, according to the account made by Appia, according to the account made by Appia, Appianinhiba, there were flaine well neere eleuen hundred thousand able fighting men. And in Celicis. befide himfelfe teftifieth in his Memories fufficiently, with what manner of people they had to deal: w they likewife could no way performe, without receiving great loffes as there he feareth not to confesse.

faith: He pacified them, after many great lof-

fes on either fide sustained in tenyears war.

And as touching his owne person, it is re-

corded that in a certain encounter he was

relected (notwithstanding all his Great-

neffe and goodly Armour) by a Gaule,

who having remounted him vppon his

cos Cafar in the ancient Gaulish language

which is as much to fay, as I et Cafar paffe,

& this was the reason of his safe patsage.

Wherein they worthily declared, that it

If wee had but his Ephemerides, or particular Iournall booke, we should see Diary booke other matters of his owne confession; of all actions confidering, that Ammianus Marcellinus, in Armes. speaking of the conquest of the Gaules,

owne horfe, bare him away through all the ued by a Gaul throngs. But there came another Gaule, ingreat exwho brauely cryed to his companion, Ce- tremity.

lournals of Cafar, which wee cannot come by in these dayes. In like manner, In home versum Cafar knowing them wel, and having (on ab eque.

keth in Tacitus. Vere reputantibus Gal- Hiflor.Lib.4.

liam (uifmet viribus concidisse. And 2. Booke

de Bel.Indai.

De Bello Galico lib.8.in fi.

much conque

red, as louing

ly leagued.

Gaule could endure no apparant de

One winters kindneffe in Cæfar wonne more then all his Legions could do in ten yeares

And as King Agrippa declareth in Iolephus. It was not through want of courage or any dull neglect, that they were ouercome: confidering the Romanes them felues faid, it was fourescore yeares, before they could fasten hold in one (mall Meridionall or Southerly Province of Gaule. In afterward fought So much against Casar: But rather it was by the frugall managing of their owne felicity, wherein they pacified both destiny and fortune: whereby they plainly faw that the Romanes got the upper hand rather by force the otherwife, and (in a word) by the divine permission or providence. Nav. and that which is much more, after fo long warre, against fuch power, and fo great a Captaine, yea, and after fo many loffes: yet notwithstanding, Gaule fell not into the Romans hands, as being subjected, but rather as allied, and in farre better fashion then all the other Prouinces.

He that continued Calars Commentaries, faith: That while hee wintered in Belgia he had a carefull eye onely to maintain the people in amity without giving to any one either will or occasion, to rife or take themselves to Armes. For that which hee most of all defired, was, that you his departing, there might happen no occasions to flay him: or if hee had cause to bring an Army thither againe, yet that he should not bee troubled with any long warre, whereunto Gaule gaue listening with very good attention, when the faw her selse out of apparant danger. Wherfore, causing the Citties to come before him, with his best respect, and greatest honour he embraced them, and gave very goodly gifts to the principall and most apparant persons: not imposing on the restany charges, or extraordinary subsidies, wherby he contained them in peace, and the better disposition to obedience throughout all Gaule. And so by this cunning, Gaule (at last) gaue place, and became mildely quieted. For the affability of Cafar, and the courtefies he extended towards them, did more conquer them in one winter, then all his Forces, Legions and Armies could doe in ten

Ouer and beside, the titles of Alliances, of Peace, and of friendly conference, are so frequent in the Romane Authors, ener where they speake of Gaule; that it plainly testifieth on her behalfe, that shee was not conquered by Armes, but rather | Gaule not left at louely liberty, by friendly parlances and confederations. Which Ammianus Marcellinus himfelfe also confirmeth, for he faith, that Cafar; After many losses on bellimities the one fide of other fust ained during a war clades succession of ten yeares continuance: in the ende (by e- iunxil etens ternallpactions and agreements) ioyned the Gaules to the Romane Society and alliance. We fee also that they left some people in Gaule wholly free as (among other) the men of Auuergne; who termed themselves as Noble as the Romans, and called them their brethren; the men of Authun, the Plin. lib. Marfellians; them of I ionnois, Forests, and cap. 19.

the round neighbouring Countries.
Now as concerning Sublidies & Contributions, a Romane Gouernour, named Cerealis, (heweth plainly in Tacitus : That | Corn.Tacitis fuch tribute was but for maintenance of the Hiflor lib 4 Legions, and for preferuation of peace in the Provinces: which could not bee continued without Armes nor Armes without wealth. As for the rest (faith hee, speaking to the Gaules all is in common with vs. oftentimes. you give command to our legions your selves also governe in the Provinces, as others do in our Empire. By the felfe-fame reason, that which bound them most to duty was the entire amity of the Romanes to them. Cafar made a great number of their Cittizens Romanes, and August us in like man. Gaulish Cite ner though in more sparing fashion, with zens Romans. some restriction fro vulgarizing so great an honour of the City or Bourgeship of the Romanes. Afterward, the Emperour Claudius gaue the right of Senatours to Idem. Hiffm.in the principall of the Gaulish Lords. And lib.1. in the ende, Galba, for the fignale fernices which the Gaules had done to him and the Romane Empire against Nero: hee made them all Cittizens, without excep-

The like was neuer done in, or for Spain. where there were but some Colonies & had the fame right, and no more then to any other Prouince of the Empire: who obtained that priviledge, but by generall Linorbe Ro Edict of the Emperour Antonius Caracal- Statu bomin la. Nor was it without great reason, that they made fuch great account of this Province: confidering, what great aduantages at gaue vnto them. For, were it in respect of treasure, rich Gaule the Gaules furnished them with more revenues; then (by vfing the common manner of

courtefie.

Chap.2.

Velleyus Pater

Soldiers for

the wars out

Cæfar made

Plut,in vit. Pompey was aftonished at he bread Gaules fed on

Czlars victo-

ic against

Pompey,a(-cribed to the

The Gaules lent to fuccor M.Craffus against the

Plut in M. Crasse.

The admirayong Craffus

faving) all the rest of their Empire, as it is | were befide , who for faking their owne. recorded by Vellevus Paterculus, Were it for leaving vndaunted Souldiers, and for fuch as they mustered from thence : therin confided the maine ftrength of al their troopes. And that Cefar knew well cnough; and published it sufficiently abroad, as having made choise of them aboue all other, and (by their meanes only) came to possesse the Empire of the whole world. For ouer and befide what hath formerly beene faid concerning the wealthy treasures of France: the valiancy of the Gaules holdeth the most eminent place by whose courage he was especially and principally ferued, to gaine that greatnesse, whereunto hee had so long time aspired.

great Pampey, ought to bee attributed to the valour & warlike vertue of the Gauls. And if he had not bin furnished with such men, valiant and ftrong, not onely againft the enemy but also to endure famine, and all other kindes of necessities, even to the feeding on bread made of graffe & roots; he had bin loft in his hopes, and veterly defeated by the long & lingering delaies of his enemy. This was that which most of all amazed Pompey, who gaue expresse charge, that fuch bread should not bee scene in his Campa for feare of disheartning his Souldiers, or driving them into detellation of their paines, whe they confidered, the sharpe extremities suffered

by their enemies, with whom they dealt

fo cruelly, that they left them nothing to

The victory which he wonne against

feed on but even as brutish beasts. Moreover, Cafar having fent a small number of Gaules, for great fuccour to M. Crassus against the Parthians these were the men, who (in that most vnhappy day for the Romans) performed most strange exploits of Armes, and shook the enemies victory very sharply. These were the men, in whom young Crassus reposed most confidence, as being the warriours, with whom he performed admirable actions of prowesse. For they received (with their bare hands) the sharpe points of the Parthians Pikes, and cloting with them body to body, threw them to the ground among their horses feetes where they lay all along stretched out, vnable to relecue themselves, onely through the

maffiy weight of their Armor. Many ther

horfes, crept under the bellies of the belonging to their chemies to pierce & flab them with the points of their Swords: which caufing the horfes to bound aloft, by extremity of the anguith they felte. trampled under their feete both their masters & enemies together, and to fell dead without any rescue.

The fame Cafar, prepared a complete Cafars Legi-Legion of Gaulith Souldiers, which hee on of Gaules tearmed by called the Larke, and added it to the Ro- him the Lark mane Legions, and whereto (at length) Sucionia Inlia-he gaue the honour of Bourgeship. Nay, Suctionia Inliaand that is much more, hee not knowing 649.76.6 80. how he might worthily enough recompencethe Gaules: made a great number of them Senatours, to the great discontenting of many Romanes. And as for the Cauallery or horsemen, wherin the Gauls euermore excelled all other Nations in warre: Cafar had (almost) none other. but continually ready at his feruice ten thousand Gaulish horse, according as it Appian. De Bel. is declared by Appian. These were the cimiblib.2. French horse, that affoorded so many great fernices to Cafar: as well in Spaine against Affrinius & Petreius, Lieutenants to Pompey; as afterward in Affrica AN her it is faid, that in one fight, lefte, therethir, faute Bello, Ci ty Gaules in number, fought against two milis. thousand Mauritanians, and droug them

Nere to Munda in Spaine, Cafar fought against the sonnes of Pompey, where all had bin veterly loft for him heeknew not any meanes for helpe or redreffe : till the Cafar fuces any meanes for neape of readers all and ready the Gaulet on a was the cause, that the day (beeing desperate day before reputed for desperate) came folic to Cafars His fuceffors found themselves alwayes well ferued, both with ordinary horse and soote of the Gaules . Tacitus maketh mention of a Cohort or Regimet Corn. Tacit. of the Sicambrians, which did many re- in Annal.4. markable deeds; in the warre against the Thracian Mountaincors : Who were (faith he) prompt and hardy against dangers, and no lesse dreadfull far their Armes and order of marching in buttaile aray. This I do the more willingly feste downe, because of those Gaulish Sicambrian Nation, the French are properly descended.

The Poet Claudian auoucherhacthat as De laudib Seother Prouinces furnished the Empereur Dat Gal-

1.31 ücibsi Since on H

Greece spoy-led & wastess by the Goth

The Ganles

hated to be

commanded by d ffolute

Emperors.

warres. The same Author saith in another place, that vinder the Emperors Arcadius & Honorius, about the time of the infurrection and revolt of Gildon, a great Army composed (for the most part) of Gaules, was brought to fuccour Greece, then rauaged and spoyled by the Gothes: and they performed there such deeds of valour, as holpe the Country to recouer her right. So that being (for long time) wel entreated by the Romanes, partaking in the honours and administration of the Empire: it was no matter of maruaile, that their peace should be of so long cotinuance. One onely thing also was irkefori & burdenous to the, in regard wherwith some stirres and perturbations, the Gaules being naturally addicted to vertue and seuerity. And therefore they hated to be commanded by fuch Emperors as were negligent, diffolute, and quite giuen ouer to all vices : which made them despise subjection to such as was Tiberus, Nero, Domitian, Commodus, Heliogabilus, Galien, and other fuch like moniters of their names. They would endure none but vertuous Princes, and fuch Gouernors were the fittest men to confirme and keepe them continually in peace.

Tzebell.Pollifiæ In xxx. Tyrannis. De Posthu-

Popifius in

The Gaules were neuer truely fubic Emperors.

France alwayes fit them with men for the of, they troubled the Romane Empire

Heereupon was it that the Emperour Valerian, in a Letter of his faid; That hee had made a certaine man, named Posthumius Gouernor of Gaule. A man (faith he) well worthy of the Gaules Severity. A word sufficient to reject the objection of leuity. wherewith some would have reproched them. Another Author, writing the life of the Emperor Carus, confesseth: That to command the Gauls there needed an Emperour very constant and vertuous. So that being ynable to fuffer the detestable vices of many Romane Emperors, they departed (at every occasion) in this respect fro their obedience: whereby it may be inftly faid, that they continued alwayes free, and being not truely fubicated, gaue their feruice to no other Emperors, but fuch as themselues reputed worthy. Vntill such time. as youn the declination and fall of this great Empire, by the infatiable auarice of Romane Gouernors, and other insupportable charges: they altogether fell off from them, and gaue ayde to their compatriots the French, and so wholly

did roote out the Romanes name.

But to examine a point (heeretofore handled) formewhat more particularly, it France not handled) iomewhat more particularly, is conqueredly cannot bee faide with any reason, that the Roman France was conquered by the Romanes before Spain before Spaine: neither that the Spaniards made any more relistance, or continued longer time from fubduing or fubication. For on the contrary, it appeareth, that the Carthagenians possessed themselves (in few yeares) of a great part of Spaine: euen at fuch time as the Romans fell likewife on it, and carried away their share without any difficulty. Witnes the treaty of peace, made betweene the Romans & Haldruball, chiefe Captaine for the Carthagenians, wherein it was couenanted, that the River Iberus, now called Ebura, should bee the bound of the Empire for these two people, and that the Saguntines, free people originally of Greece, who were between them both, should conferrus and a mile derate with the one and other.

After this, it is fufficiently knowne, that the Romanes had long time made warre against the Carthagenians in Spain, who gaue them there many valiant fights. During which while, no estate, or fewe, made mention off among the Spaniards; who food but as fpectators, in expectation of the yffue, to fee which of those two people should have command over them. This was at the beginning of the second Punicke warre, when the Scipioes (after The fecond they had spent eight yeares in war) were wherein the flaine by the Carthagenians. And after- Scipioes were ward, Great Scipio, Surnamed Affricanus, flaine, & the being fent thither, after divers encoun- great Scipio ters, and taking Townes from the Carthagenians:expulsed them wholy thence, & first of all made it a Romane Prouince, in the yeare of the Citie of Romes foundation CCCCXLIII. All the busines which he had with the Spaniards, was for fome revolts of particular people, whom he likewise as soone suppressed. So that very truely Ammianus Marcellinus hath Marcelin has faide: That all the Provinces of firme Land in Spaine, were the first conquered of made one Province by the Romanes.

All Historians agree together, reportingalfo, that in the yeare CCCCLII. two Pretors were created at Rome to gouerne Spaine, which was then divided in two parts, and termed Ctterior & Viterior, to wit, on this fide, and beyond Ebu-

Plut.in Catone Tit.Liuius in 3 1. Anti.de Vir. 1 Hull. c. 47

Atwhat time

he Romanes

first en:red in-

wabo in Lib.4

Chap.2.

Cato Senior

from the S

A defeatine kinde of making warre.

People of Boetica in Spaine.
* People beweene Gallicia and Por-

quallifie the revoltes of some people. When he had ouercome them, & made prouision, that no more rebellions might afterward happen : he fent his Letters & command to enery City in particular, to this effect, that they should cast down to the ground their wals and fortefications, & disposed the action so orderly, that his command was obeyed in the Cities, and he arrived ther at the fame time. So they being verily perswaded in each City, that this command firetched but to that place onely: veelded the more willingly, which otherwise they would not have done. Whereupon enfued, that in one day, all their Townes were difinantled, and their wals raced. In regard of which fuccesse, Cato made his vaunt; That hee had taken more Townes in Spaine, then there were daies.

Now, as concerning Gaul, the Romans

neuer had footing there, but in the yeare IVCXXII.& in Prouence only: about an hundred years after that Spaine was wholly conquered. Nor had they there but a very finall parcel, which was a nere neighbor to them: all Gaule being neuer made a Prouince, but by Cafar. By what likelihood of truth can it the be faid, that Spain was brought under the power of the Romane Empire, after France? Neuerthelesse, it is very true (as Strabo faith) that the difficulties which the Romans had in Spaine, to make it peaceable, grew onely through the reuolts of some particular Townes & people, and by the incursions of theeues gathered together in troopes, and these (of necessity) were to be chastifed.So, making war, not in groffe, or with a body of iust Armes, but by peeces and parcels, one after another, in imall courfes and furprizals: the Romans had more trouble to finde out then conquer them. Againe, although Spaine was held & comanded wholly by the Romanes, yet notwithstanding, there remained some people, dwelling in difficult, (harpe & mountainous places, as * Bafques,& * Astures: who afterward, in the time of Augustus, were wholly vanquished, and added to the rest of Spaine. As also (about the same time hauing conquerd Aquitain)he made it a Province as the three other of Gaul.

Moreover, there cannot bee found fo great a number of worthy Captaines, af-

ra. The elder Cato was also fent thither, to | foorded by any country, like vnto France. What famou As were among the ancient Bellouafians Captaines and Sigonafians, chiefe of the first & fur. France hath thest-off expeditions among the Gaules: yeelded from Brennus, that furprized Rome, and another Brennies, who afterward fubdued the most part of Europe and Afia Dumnorix, Diuiconus, Ambiorix, Dumnatius, Vercingetorix, Divitiacus, and many more recorded by Cafar. And to fet Kings afide, who care count all the Dukes, Earls, Barons, Lords & Gentlemen, that have excelled in the Art of wars. They are not to be numbred fuch as haue beene in later times, as God-frey of Bullen, king of Ierufalem: befide fo of Ierufalem many Princes and Lords, as went in the expeditions to the holy Land, the wars of Spaine and Affrica, against the Turkes, Moores, and Sarrazins at fundry times. The Marshall Bouciauant, in the daves of king Charls the fift, as also John de Saintre, knight; Bertrand du Guesclin, Constable of France; Enguerrand, Lord of Coucy; the Conte de Dunois cheefe of the famous house of Longueutle, the right hand and maine helpe to King Charles the '7. for expulsion of the bolde English. La Hire, Pothon de Xaintrailles, Tanneguy du Cha- One of the stell : Gaston de Foix, Duke of Nemours, best Soldiers one of the Ancestors to great K. Henry. hee, that after he had conquered a great part of Italy, bare away the renowned vi Grory of Rauenna, trampling (vnder his feete) all the forces of Spaine and Italy conjured against him. Odet de Foix Lord of Autrec: the Captain Bayard: the Lord of Chamont : Louis de la Trimouilles: Guillaume and Martin du Bellay; Charles de Bourbon, Constable of France; Frances de Bourbon, Duke of Anguyen; Charles and Timoleon de Colle of the house of Brillac.

> What shall we say of our Kings Meroneus, Chlouis, Childebert, Chlothaire, Charles Famous war-Martell, Pepin, Charles the Great, Hugh France. Capet, Loys le Gros, Phillip Augustus, S. Louys, Phillip the third, Phillip le Bell, Charles the fift, furnamed the wife, Lewes the twelfth, Frances the first, and the valiant Henry the fourth, Father to the King now reigning?

and an infinite number more, most ho-

nourably remembred by the best Histori-

On the contrary, Trogus, speaking of Spaine faith. In tanta feculorum ferie, nullus liba. illis Dux magnus, prater Viriatum fuit,

that cuer France bred.

Trog.Pomp.in

Viriatus the hardy Lufita

Strabo in Lib.4.

iaui annos decem Romanos varia victoria fatiqauit. Adeo feris propiora quam hominibus ingenia funt Inlong fuccesse of ages they neuer had any chiefe Guide for warre befide Viriatus Lustanus, who laboured the Romanes for the Bace of ten yeares. So that (laieth he) they came neerer in nature to fauage beasts, then to men. And addeth further, that they followed fuch a Captaine, rather by occasion, then out of any judgement, hauing not made any election of

Nor can there be defired a better, and more certaine testimony of valour, and generous nature in the French, then that which Strabo deliuereth in these words. All those people whom we terme Gaules, are Martiall couragious of ready (of the felues) to fight: And yet notwithst anding they are very simple, and no way wicked or euill inclined . Heereto he addeth. That they bring nothing to the fight but vertue and courage, without any craft, superchery, or brauing. And although (faith he) they are full of heat to fight; yet are they (for all that) capable to understand reason, and easie to bee per-[waded Willing to undertake the quarrell, for such as they see to be injuriously wronged and offended.

The Author of the Commentaries on the warre which Cafar made in Affrica. be it Hirtius, be it Oppius, or whofoeuer elfe, faith. That the Gaules were men openhearted and no way deceivers whing to fight by vertue and not by subtilty or fraud. The fame Strabo auoucheth in another place. faying: They are all warriors, and principally good Knights, for the best Cauallerie of the Romanes was composed of the Gaules. The Romanes alwayes made most especiall account of the Gaulish horsemen, for Cafar found himselfe to bee best served with them. And Cicero hearing that the gouernment of Transalpine Gaule should be given to M. Anthony; cryed out. Eft enim opinio decreturum aliquem M. Anton. Galliam vltimam quam Plauius obtinet: Quid hoc est aliud quam hosti arma largiri primum neruos belli pecuniam infinitam.Deinde equitatum quantum velit? Can any thing elfe be done heerein, but onely to thrust Armes into the hands of an enemy? First of all infinite summes of money, which are the nerues and finewes of warre: And next as many men well hor fed, as he wold have with him. This passage is sufficient, whereby

to conceiue and certainly obserue, the wealthy treasures of France, and the opinion held thereof.

The exercises of these people, spake fully the matter of war fo much by them affected, alwaies louing a manly & cheerfull disposition of the body, and contemning groffe corpulency: fo that they condemned(in very great fines)all fuch yong men, whose bellies exceeded the ordinary measure of their girdles, according to the auouching of Strabo. Moreouer, the Strabo in French haue bene reputed to surpasse all other Nations, in these two noble and warlike exercises, hunting, and ryding Hunting and great horses. Hunting, which is nothing elfer riding great but a lively image of warre, and an assiduate horses. meditation thereof, as Xenophon faith. Egin- Xenophon. hard, the nursing-childe of Charles the In vita cardi Great, and his Secretary, writing his life, Magni. fpeaketh thus. Exercebatur af sidue equitado ac venando quod illi gentilitium erat auia vix vlla in terris natio inuentur qua in hac re Francis possit aquari. He exercised himselfe daily to hunting and to mount on horsebacke. Wherein (faith he) he rellished of the whole Nation. For there is not any people in all the world that can heerein surpasse, but

But before I can finish this discourse, concerning the warlike vertue of the French. I cannot forbeare to fay formewhat of that which they performed on the day of * Nicopolis against the Turkes: where a man may well fay, that a finall thynia. handfull of French Gentlemen, excelled (in prowesse) whatsoeuer wee reade in Histories of all the braue exploits in war that euer were done. Not Leonides of the Greekes at the Thermopyla, nor Caditius Froiffardin of the Romanes in Sicily, is any way wor- vol.4. thy comparison with them: the history followeth in this manner.

onely may endeuor to equall the French.

Charles the fixt reigning in France, the The history King of Hungaria fent Ambaffadors vn- the few relol to him entreting that fome fuccor might ued French be affoorded him, against Baiazeth & first, fought at N Emperor of the Turks, the most remark- copolis. able warrior that ener was of the house of the Ottomans. The King confenting thereto very gladly, many Lords & Gentlemen of France prepared themselues to be seene in this voyage, to the number of about a thousand or twelve hundred. A mong others, there was the Conte d'En. Constable of France; the Conte de la

The exercises

A City in B

500.hundred French Lances, fet vpon & their fucces

fewe of the

rench.

Chap.2.

The greatest

iuer in Eu

Arnoba in

lyricum it

ecciueth 60

ther rivers

nto it, where

tis cald Ifter

and there is

broadeft.

A far vnindifferent army of Turkes,to meddle with

Marche; the Lord of Concy; the Lords of the verie midft of the bodie of the maine Trimouille, and John, Conte de Neuers, Son to the Duke of Burgongne, who was chief Commander. When they were joyned with the king of Hungariaes army having past the river * Danubius, they bare away rope,rifing out of the hill (in affault) the honor of divers Townes: and at length came to lay fiedge before Germany. In the City of Nicopolis.

VVhile the greater part of the Army befiedged the City, Enguerrand Lord of Caucy, taking with him fine hundred Lances: made vp into the Countrey, to feeke fome enemies that they might fight withall, and it is credibly reported, that (verienere vnto them) there was a troop of Turkes, of about twenty thousand in number. Now, albeit this multitude exceeded their finall companie beyond all measure : vet notwithstanding, they refolued to grapple with them. And hauing first of all drawne them beyond a wood, wherein there was an ambufcado; they came and charged them in the rere. The number) wearied with killing the Turks. fight was (for all that) cruell, and of long continuance, wherein the French, although they were so few against so great a number; yet they did performe wonders that day. So that in the end, the Turkes being disheartned, faintned extraordinarily, & more then fifteen thoufand lay flaine in the field.

Some thort while after, Baiazeth being come with a dreadfull Armie, confifling of more then three hundred thoufand fighting men : they aduanced themselues to deale with the enemies armie, being not worthy to be termed any number, because they were (in all)but seauen hundred, when they beganne the fight. The French small troops, made a goodly fight to behold, beeing all well armed and appointed, in rich glittering and gorgeous Armors, wanting no cost of golde and filuer, and brauely mounted on gallant horses, most sumptuously barbed & caparassoned; so that such as saw them, might well have tearmed them an Armie of Kings. But (beyond all the rest) vvith what force, ardour and courage they fought, although they were meerely thut vp, and round railed or ringed in with innumerable enemies. At the first onset, they wholly defeated and ouerthrew the auantgard and first battell of the Turke,

army, where was Baiazeth himfelfe.

Many there were, who perfourning manhood demeer miracles of manhood in fight, cleft or hewed out their paffage thorough the French and ir prease, and very thickest of all the Turkith a time of most Army, compelling them to make them extreme trisll way, both for going on and returning backe again, even to two or three feuerall times of enforcement. And yet no one man among that poore fmall troop, who feeing the vnauoydable danger of death, was desirous to take hold on any aduantage, or flew fo much as a countenance of retiring, albeit their enemies (gladly) offered them many meanes. All resolued to loofe their lines, but yet the enemie bought them at very deere rate, filling the field with mountaines made of their dead bodies: even till fuch time as the fight having held a great deal of the day. the most part of the French lying dead on the ground, and the rest (avery small and pierced through with wounds, being ouerwhelmed with multitudes, were (in the end) taken prisoners. But it was generally held for truth that if the great body of the Hungarian army (beeing wellncere the number of an hundred thousad able men) had feconded them, or vfed ne- gence in the uer so little resistance, in making but a straight affine of the Hungarians, to faile the der the French from beeing fo enclosed/, men which (by any forwardnesse in redeeming them, fought for the and not fearefully fly away on heaps thorough the valley as the Hungarians most cowardly did, fuffering themselues to be murthred without any offer of fight) the day had remained to the Christians, And I dare speake it, that the power of the Turkes, which afterwards to great enlarged it selfe (meerely thorow our divisions) had then bin veterly ruined from the top to the bottome.

Then you plainely perceive, that of But few prifethis small troope of resolute Champions, ners taken of the greater part of them lay dead in the finall French comfield, having made a flaughter of infinite pany. enemies, more by fifty times then they were, and fought to their latest drop of bloode; but verie few of them remayned prisoners, But on the next day, Baiazeth going himself in person, to view the fielde ofbattell, and take acknowledgement beating them on still before them, even to of the dead, when he found that for one

Most admira-French, and in

Great negli-

los bomines ape tos minime que instalioses, qui non per dolum dimicare con euerunt. Cicero in Philip.5.

In Lib. . Copias babebat

in Gallia bella

re confuetas, lo

cis can pellribus

& contra Gal-

Chap 2.

Words of

more power

then weapons

Suet.in vit.Ca-

Beiazeth had but little ioy in his deare victory.defi ring to deale no more with the French.

Concerning

matters belo

ging to iustic

Agatbias in l. 1

The French great louers of justice.

Frenchman slaine, whole heapes and piles the person of a stranger, he is punnished of Turkes filled up the field, and all his Ar- with death: for the paine is augmented in my left in such pittiful condition, he tooke consideration of the stranger, to whome it fo defortefully, and entred into fuch out- the more eafily the injury may be offred, ragious choller, as beeing vnable to consi- so much the more (they hold) that the ofder on his loffe, or take any means for con- fence which he hath done, ought to be fetentation, hee commanded a passage vinto uerely punished and renenged. It may be A Stranger death thorough the army, of all the prifo- thought fomwhat hard, that a straunger and defended ners, except about some twentie of the should be fauoured and defended, more then a Cini ereatest Lords: as the Conte de Neuers the then a Citizen. To cut off which difficul-Generall, and others; who being knowne, ty, we see by the divine law, ordained on were faued and put to their ransomes. Ba- the strangers behalfe, that he is so ofteniazeth complaining on so sadde a victory, times repeated and defended, that a man which cost him so deare, could not depart must very carefully keepe himselse from thence but very penfiuely; and in plain tru- harming him, and that justice must bee eth, such another ouerthrow woulde abso- rendred him equal with a Citizen. And lutely haue confounded him altogether.

cie of the French. But form may obiect, that world, where a stranger is more humanefuch warlike people, accustomed to line a- ly entertained, lesse offenced, and more mong Armes and Martiall exercises, shold desended in all right of justice, then abee voluntary disdainers of matters apper- mong the people of France. taining to Iustice, acknowledging no other right then that of armes. Forbear (faid Pom- histories, that (very often times) Princes Strange Princes pey) till to morrow, to alleadge your Lawes to and straunge people haue referred their est people vs, who haue our fwords by our sides. This is differences to the institute of France, aswel haue referred. quite contrary to the French, who are no of the Kings, as of the Parliaments. A- trouerly w

ons of armes, and have evermore bene ac- into strange Nations, that the Hungaricounted to be true louers of Iustice. Aga- ans, the Sclauonians, and other people thias a Grecian authour, who lived more neighboring about, defired him to be the then a thousand yeares since, hath prayled | Iudge in their differences. And more the and commended the French for their Iu- Sclauonians faid, that if ever he cam into stice. Whereof (faith hee) they are verie dest- their countrey, they would acknowledge rous, as also great louers of their Country. He & obey him, as if he were their King. further addeth, That because they possesses Furthermore; let it neuer be said or ima-most assured estate, they have (as their bases gined, v batbarisin at any time had enterand (upport) many goodly principles engrauen tainment among the Gaulis. Continually the Gaules. in the hearts of their Kings and People. Why they were most human, having milde and then let mee vindoubtedly tell vee, that a- wel polished spirits by nature, & being ad

without any passion. number of goodly institutions, and divers of in welfpeaking. The proof hereof apea- militarem, of examples of their lustice, it may well ap- red in that Hercules of Gaule, so much re- argui logui. peare by this notable custome, which both nowned by our forfathers, figured in such Greeke and other ancient authours have fashion, that from his mouth hung dangobserved among them. To wit, that if any ling downe at his tongue, manie small one haue flaine a Citizen or Bourgesse, he chaines of fine gold, wherewith he tied &

questionles it may be truly said, that (euen This may feeme sufficient for the valian- at this day) ther is not any country in the

In like manner, wee finde by probable way to be leffe commended for their inflice mong other, the reputation of their Iu-the Inflice of then for their valor and excellency in acti- stice in King Dagobert, was spred so farre Suntin like.

mong all other Nations, the Gaules & the uantagiously shaped or fashioned for the French haue most highly cherished and lo- study of al arts & Sciences:especialy they ued Iustice, and haue alwayes religiouslie studied eloquence in such fort, that the honoured it, yeelding themselues thereto, elder Cato in his originals cited by Chariand making continual exercise thereof, fine, hath rendred this testimony of them. Charistus. ithout any passion.

That they wer quick conceited by industrious Gallia dustry

And not to make repetition of an infinit

principally in two things; in the Art military, before the principally in two things. hath no other infliction but banishment; bound the people by the eares, leading whereas, if hee commit the like offence on them whether so ever he pleased, & with

An answer to

ued opinion.

Suet declaris

Suet, de illuft.

their owne good wills, free from al con-Graint. Declaring by this figure, what precious account they made of wel fpeaking, and what power wordes had: no leffe (but rather greater) then that of Armes, to subdue people, & cause thembecome obedient willingly.

Vnder the Romane Emperors, there was a combate of eloquence in the City of Lyons, fought in Greeke and Latine; wherein, fuch as were vanquished, gaue the prizes to their victors, and were confirained (belides) to write in their commendation. And as for such as performed no matter worth the effeeming they were bound (by necessity) to wipe out what they had done with a Spundge, or with their owne tongues; except they better affected, to be either beaten with rods, or throwne headlong into the Riuer. Wherto may be referred that which Iuuenal faith.

Palleat vt nudis presit qui calcibus anguem Aut Lugdunensem Rhetor, dicturus ad ara.

And the same Author makes mention alfo concerning the Eloquence of the Gatuls, which they instructed vnto other péople.

Gallia causidicos; docuit facunda Britannos.

I am enforced to extend my felfe fomwhat further in this discourse, by making report of a few more testimonies; to ouerthrow the falle conceined opinion of fome, who have effected, that the people of France (in their first times) vvere not addicted to Sciences, erudition, nor the study of Letters, wherin they are very greatly deceived. For on the contrary, it is plaine to be proucd, that (as in all other thinges) so therein also they have most fingularly excelled, and raught the fame to the Romans. He that first instructed the Art of eloquence or well-speaking in Rome, was one Lucius Plotius , a Gaule borne, under whom Cicero (beeing then but young) was fome yeares with his Brother Quintus alfo. And about the fame time, or not long after, another Gaul was highly renowned in Rome, named M. Antonius Gnipho, beeing endued with a mighty fpirit of fingular memory, and infinitely skilfull and eloquent, as wel

in Greeke as in Latine, and verie liberall (wherefoeuer he came) to teach what he knew. So that for these goodly and commendable qualities, hee bare fuch fway in those times: as his house was much frequented by the very greatest Romaine

It cannot be denied alfo, but the the great Oratour Gicero went often thether schoolemaftet when he was Prætor. But that which (a- for eloquence boue all other) may make him most Famous, was, in being Teacher to the great Dictator Cafar himfelf. Surely, not without some especial providence therein, to the end that this Prince might hold wholy from Gaule(not onely the encreasing and establishing of his Greatnesse) but alfo this honor, wherein (not a jot leffe) hee excelled, then in actions of armes. Gaule hath euer fince kept her felfe in this reputation. Quintilian, vvho vvas a vuintilian, Spaniard, made great reckoning of the cloquence which was taught in Gaule, and about the declination of the Roman Empire, Symmachus Gouernour of Rome at Symmac in lib that time, in one of his Epifles, fayeth; 2 Epifl 94. That if he would performe any worke woor- caudie bauftus thy of memory, he must go of necessitie, and require. dreine it out of the Gaulifh knowledge and elegancie. The fame man also acknowledgeth, That what soener was in him either of eloquent or polished beaking, ought the due thereof to the aire of France, where hee had learned them . And in another place hee faith, That Mount Helicon, facred unto the 66. Gallied-Mufes, was transported from her owneplace, dux Helicons. into Frante.

Saint Hierome writing to a certayne S.Hierome ad Father, who was very carefull for the in. Rufticum Mee stitution of his sonne in well-speaking, faith ; Post studia Galliarum que vel florentissima funt, misit Romam non parcens Sumptibus ot obertatem Gallici nitoremá Sermonis gravitas Romana condicet. After (faith he) he hash performed his studyes a. mone the Gaules where they are most flouris fling, for fending him onto Rome, make no - spare of expences, to the end, that the aboundance delicacy, and lufter of the Gaulifhlan- Proem Epift. 2 guage may be scaloned with the Roman grauity. The fame author faveth in another place. That France is fertile in Orators. In another place also he faith. That shee hath alwayes abounded in most eloquent men. As illustrating under that title Wotienus Montanus in the time of Angustus, afterward

Á Gaule was

Duintil, in lib

A notable ex ample of lu-flice among the French. Stobem.

Corn. Tacitus i in Annal A.

Tacit. eod. Lib. Eufeb in Chron. Quint.in lib. 5 Trog.Pomp. üb.

Nazarius and his learned daughter Eu-

Claudian in

Druydes,Vges,& Bardes. The learning of the Bardes.

Strabe in lib . 4.

relegated or exiled into the Islands Baleares. Domitius Afer of Nifmes, who came with great charges to Rome, being generally renowned for the cheefest Orator of his rime, and effected to highly by Quintilian, that he acknowledged him for his Master. Next, the father of Trogus Pompeiusehe historian, of the house of the Vocantians: who kept in his hand the ring of the Emperor Califula, as beeing the keeper of his feales. Then Gabinianus, M. Aper, Julius Florus, Julius Secundus, verie famous Oratours under Velpalian, and many more whom I omit, to come to more moderne times, wherein Aquitaine onely hath more furnished Rome with Senators and Orators, then all the rest of the world

A testimony heereof was the Learned Nazarius, Author of some Panegyricks, yet remaining with vs. And that which is more admirable, was the daughter of this Nazarius, named Eumonia; the miracle of her age, who was not a jot inferior to the very worthiest Orators. Beside an infinite number of others, mentioned by the authors of those severall times, too troblefome for vs to rehearfe but one halfe of them. Heereto apperraineth the writing of Claudian: That Gaule with her Learned Citizens, did ordinarily guard the Emperor, and served him in the most part of his affairs Moreover the greater part of the Roman Senate, and a number of the Magistrates beeing great and famous persons of that age, are especially noted to bee Gaules. So that wee may very well anouch that. which Aufonius fung in his Mofella: It is no longer Rome, that onely made flew of her Catoes, in regard that Gaul did enery wway equall her.

Other Sciences also have carried as ful faile there. In the first times shee had her Druydes, Vuates or Eubages, & Bardes, of whose learning we have yet lefte some remaines and memories. The Bards composed in Verses, and conserved to all posterities, the names and commendable actions of vertuous men, aspurre sufficient to animate the very dullest corages. The Eubages, called also Vuates by Strabo, applyed their studies to the contemplation of celestial things; as also vnto Naturall Philosophy. As for the Druydes, they are fufficiently famous, and although wee haue spoken to good purpose of them in the former booke of the ancient Gaules : yet some especiall things there omitted; may the better in this place be remembe= red in larger manner.

They instructed and taught aboue all things essentially of the feel taught by the tall: which is the foundation of all religi- Druydes, on and the very frongestbond of human fociety. They discoursed also on the stars, and of their course and motion; also of the greatnesse of the world, the earth, the nature of things, the power of God, & gaue instruction in al these to their youth. This is auouched by Ammianus Marcellinus; cap.14. Mela, and Strabe, who fay, That the most Pomp Mela, is of them held the world to be immortall. An Strabo in list. opinion furely (after many great disputes and alterations) found to be most true by the verie best Philosophers and Dinines, framing a distinction thus.

Affiredly, the world is of eternal and incorruptible matter, in regard of the celestiall part, which receive the no alteration, neither shall receive any at their conimmortality. fummation: but by § adjunction of light and whole perfection. But what is vnder the caus of the Moone, composed and mixed with Elements for the vie of man, shal perish by fire, and returne into theyr first essence and Elementary quality. The course of heaven shal stay, and by consequent, al motion and corruption cease; according as it was held by Peter Lombard long fince Bishop of Puris, & called Ma- Senient diff 41. Theological Scholaftickes, and the Angellical Doctor, Thomas Aguinas. gellical Doctor, Thomas Aquinas.

They beleeved also, that (one day hereafter) the water and fire thal have Dominion; wherby we may perceive that they had notions comming necre to truth and our beleefe, albeit altered and confused. For that which they conceined of the water, they faide was alreadie come, and for the matter of fire we doe credite the like, & expect the confummation of the world thereby. Why then it is no matter of maruel, if having imparted their knowledge to other people; Arisiatle should con-fesse. That Philosophy received her originall caspud Dist. from the learned Gaules, whom hee calleth Semnotheans, and anougheth France to bee the Mistreffe of Greece. All the Gaulish Philosophers were in such reputation : Strate militie that the people conceyued the goodnesse of the yeare, the happinesse and honor of

of them.

This shal suffice to shew that such men were not well informed, as have written, that the French did not adica themselves to Sciences; ponfidering, that they have alwayes continued in the exercise of Letters and Learning. And for that purpofe they had (from time to time) many famous Schooles, established for the enstruction of youth. Mar feilles equalled 4thens in learning; so that very oftentimes the Romaines sene their Sonnes to that France equalled Athens in Academy, rather then to Athens, as it is reported by Strabo, who wrote in the Strabo in Lib. 4. time of the Emperor Tiberus. We reade moreouer, that the Emperour Augustus, fent thither Julius Antonius; the youngest fonne of his Sifter, to fludy there. And Tacitus reporteth, that the probity, integrity, and knowledge of Julius Agricola, his Father in Law, came by the nouriture & instruction, which he received at Mar-

Ceilles in France. About the same time, Austune also be came famous for the study of letters and liberall Arts, whereof wee haue the testimony in Tacitus. And againe, after thefe publike schools, who were established by the Emperor Constantius, faiher to Constantine, who to that purpose sent thither the Orator Eumenius. There is a Law in the Code Theodofian, of the Emperours Valens, Gratian, and Valentinian, wherein is declared, that there were a great number of Townes in France, which florithed by

That then issued from the hand of one onely

Doctor, Nector Mineruius, a thoufand Fa-

mous Aduocates or Councellors at law twice

These Fountaines of all erudition, haue

not dryed up in France under the reignes

of their Kings, but rather have encreased

and abounded more and more, by multi-

plicity of Schooles, publikely established

in many other Citties, wherto they fince

have given the right of an incorporated

body or vninerfity. And by this occasion,

fuch Vniuersities, in fauour of the studie

of Letters and Sciences fo founded and

as many Senatours or grave Statesmen.

Lib, 1 1. Cod. the excellency of Masters, Oratours, and Theed De pro Grammarians, in the learning both of Greeke and Latine. Among which towns alfo, were them of Bourdeaux; Tholoufe, Narbona, and many other. Aufonius likewife speaking of that of Bourdeaux, fayth,

Theencresse

Marfeilles in

Cornel Tacit. in

Corn, Tacit,

Annall 3.

Orat.Eumenii

Int. Agricol.

of Schooles & for Learning

their times, to confift in the multiplicitie | erected, haue beene endowed and adorned by divers Kinges, with goodly great priviledges and particular fanours. Among which, that of Paris hath extraordinarily furpaffed all other in the world . Toher, assorbe Queene of Learning, refortes the affluence of people from ftrange Nations, there to learne the Sci-Paris, & great ences, and especially holy Diuinity. This is as the Faire, Mart, or Market of the whole world; for the liberall Arts, and for instruction in all Languages. This is as a Nurfing Orchard of good plants and iugenious spirits, in all vertue and faire erudition a from whence bath beene felected (like swarmes of Bees) learned men in infinit numbers, that have dispersed themfelues, and meerely peopled most parts of the earth. Also it hath beene the module and originall, whereby all other haue taken example, not onely for France it felf,

Pone Innecent the third, made fuch c-

but likewise for all Europe.

fimation thereof that from thence he fe- The affection lected all those men, whom hee intended of Pope Innoto advance to the Bishoppricks of Christendome, and other dignities in the Paris. Church. Befide, it appeareth by good & fufficient testimonies of other Vniuersities, for more then three hundred yeares fince, that the studies of Paris have beene the Foundation (in great measure) of the Church. Studium Parisiense effe fundamentum Ecclesia. And euermore it hath beene the cheefest in opposition against herefies to compate and ouercom them, euen fo foone as (at any time)they began togrow. Infinite victories and triumphs hath the crowned her felfe withal, in fo fa- Paris the conmous a contention, whereof I spare to queror of infi make any report; because they are no nite heresies. leffe carefully then elegantly fet dovvne by the Lord Loyfell, in his Tract of the Vniverfity of Pars. Wherein also hee hath most learnedly observed, the true institution of that Vniuerfity, against the vulgar Fables which have beene noyfed thereof. There are likewise many other Vniuersitics founded, and chablished in divers of Vniversi-Citries and Townes of France, as in Tholoufa, Bourges, Orleance, Angiers, Poitiers, Cahors, Mont-pellier, Nymes, Caen Nantes. Rheims dec.

Alfo from France, and all her Schools, haue proceeded men as learned and excellent in all kindes of Sciences, as in piety

The famous Vniherfity of lers thither.

ties founded in France.

France hath yeelded great plenty of lear-ned Byfhops.

thep of Poi-

S.Sulpitius Seucrus.

Pontius Paulinus the Se-

Rufticus, Phoebadius Profper, Alc

g.archbishops of Vienna.

S.Germaine by shoppe of Auxerre.

S.Gregorie Florent, Arch bythop of Tours, compared to S. Gregory Naand probity: and as this Discourse would require whole volumnes, fo yet it would exceede possibility to name and re-count them all. There have beene many wife & learned Byshoppes canonized for their fanctity of life, who have establisht Christian religion in many Countreyes, and Suppressed monstrous heresiest dispersed in many parts of the world. As S. Hillarie Bythop of Poitiers, the true confounder of the Arrian herefie, where with the Church was too much tormented, euen at the beginning of her increasing . Saint Sulpitus Seuerus, whose learned writings lets vs yet fufficiently fee his piety, and painfull endeuours together as the Arch bythop of Bourges, that lived vader the reigne of King Gontran, and also a more ancient Priest of Aquitaine, of equal standing with S. Hierom and S. Martin, with whom he was very familiar, & who wrote

Pontius Paulinus, who being a Senator, descended of a great family, and infinitely rich gaue all his goods to the poore & becomming an Ecclefiafticall person, was afterward elected by shop of Nola in Italy. Of the same country of Aquitaine, vvere also S. Rusticus, S. Phaebadius, and Prosper, Alethius the Prieft, fo much commended by S. Hierom, for his fanctity, eloquence. and learning. Ecditius, Auitus, and Mamertus, instituter of the Rogations, Arch by shops of Vienna: S. Sidonius Apollonaris Bythop of Auuerene : S. Lupus bythop of Troves; and S. Germaine bythop of Auxerre, who ferled and affured Christian religion in England. Eucherius Archbishop of Lyons; Saluianus and Gennadius, priests of Marfeilles, and S. Vincentius Monke of S. Honoratus, in the Isle of Lerins. And fince the Monarchy of fome later Kings, S. Rhemigius, and S. Gregory Florenties, Archbythop of Tours: who is compared by Fortunatus, an ancient Christian Poet, to S. Gregory Nazianzene, as given to the East, and by Gregory the Great, Pope, giuen to the South, as he for France was to the West. It was at the same time, when Pope Gregory (having scene at Rome) not onely admired him, but did him fo much honor as could bee denifed, Arnold, Bythop of Metz, Hinemar Archbythop of Rheimes, Lupus Abbot of Ferriers in Gastinois, Arnold de Lisieus, Fulbert & Yues, Bylhops of Chartres, Suggerus Abbot of SiDenis, S. Bernard Abbot of Cleruaux: Peter Abbayelard, of whome there went a Peter Abaye Prouerbe in his time, that there was not man for Leaany thing in al the world, reaching either ning & know.
to the highest heavens, or to the lowest ledge. bottome of the profoundest deepes, but they were all familiarly knowne to him. Alfo Peter Lombard by thop of Paris . 10 admirable in the profession of Dinimitie. that (even to this verie day) all Christendome acknowledgeth him forher Mai-

"Hee should never make an end, that would take on him to recite all the great men of France, not onely fuch as have preceded them of these times, but infinit numbers befide: whereby may bee juftly faid, that Learning and the Sciences, not onely received their ancient flourishing splendor in France; but also have imparted themselues (as before) to all other regions of the earth. There hath bin heeretofore (beside all them formerly named) one Eumenides of Marfeilles, a most wife excellent Phi Philosopher, who (among manie other losopher, things) made a very ferious inquisition,& learnedly wrote on the original of Nilus. P. Terentius Varro (firnamed Atacinus, of his Countrey in Narbone Gaul, on the riuer of Atax, now called Auda, which belcheth it felf into the fea at Narhona) much | uer in Narrenowned among the Roman Poets, for bone. making foure bookes of the Argonantes affaires, diners Epigrams, and the Sequanes warres, recited by Pliny in many places, as also by the Grammarian Prif-

Heere we may not forget the Philofopher * Phanorinus, so highly renowned vnder the Emperor Adrians reigne : a na- wondred that being a Frech tiue of Arles, as Philostratus reporteth in the discourse of his life, Nazarus the Orator, and Latinus Pacatus, Author of the excellent Panegyricke of Theodofius . About the same time flourished Rutillius Numatianus a Poet, and Aulonius of Burdeaux, most worthy the name of a Poet. fince the dayes of Augustus: divers nameleffe workes of his haue bene found, and Aufonius (for their especial descruing) hane bene Schoolmaster attributed to be Virgils . Heewas chosen to two Em. for Schoolemaister to the emperors Gratian and Valentinian: for it was an ordinary course in those times, when there yvas any necessity of learned men, eyther to instruct the Emperors sons, or the grea-

Marfeilles, an

A famousti-

* He was icho

Strangersthat knowledge i France.

Theopinion

f diu re wor

thy fliangers

concerning

Chap.2.

honored their owne countries; thogh respiring first the sweet ayre of France, and borrowed a beame from her bright fplendour, to give fome luster thereof to their places of birth. In breefe to speake truely, it is as difficult a thing to name all the famous persons that have flourished in France, as it is casie for other people to make a thew of all fuch as they have had. which would rife to a far inferior number. Moreover, many great persons (beeing frangers there) having diligently formayed the spirits of the French, have found them by experienced judgment to be full of life, subtile, proper & prompt to all occasions, cleare sighted, and piercing into the Sciences; thinking it very congenient that whereas some have esteemed the ancient Gaules to be light and mutable, they should rather fay, & very infly, that they were tractable apt and ready to performe any thing imposed on them whatfoeuer.

were fecht fro France, as we read in many

places of the works of Symmachus, then

Gouernour of Rome, & who fuckt (him-

I forbeare to speake of those strangers.

who by becomming there learned, have

felfe) the milke of the Mufes of France.

Of this minde was Julius Cafar Scaliger an Italian, a man most learned and judici-Iul.Cef Scaliger In Exerct 167 ous, who speaketh in this manner. Illudest comprimis aduertendu, non effe cum animorū mobilitate coniunctā fidei iast uram. Gallos enim vides ad omma momenta vel euentuum vel disciplinaru promptos paratos verfatiles: vt femel quicquam vel vs fum vel audstum, illico apud eorum ingenia & deponst & amittat nouitatem, in co ipfo penitus exte plo videntur nati atque educati. Qui animo rum vigor igneus, maturaque celiritas null alij nationi data est à natura. Quoquò incubuere felicissime fefe dant ocyssime proficiunt gnauiter exercent : mercaturam artes arma, litteras, eruditione, subtilitatem, candorem, eloquentiam. Omnium tamen gentium atque nationu, fide funt maxime integra de constati. It is a matter that well deferueth to be noted or considered, that the defect of faith is not alwases conjoyned with the mobility and lightnesse of spirit. That it must needs be so I fee that the French are prompt, ready, and tractable at all moments and occasions be it eyther for the diversity of accidents, or beeit

for the Sciences : and that in (uch fort as fo

Soone as they have scene or heard any thing,

test Lords of the Romane Empire, they | immediately it loseth all nouelty with them, and carrieth no fuch matter of newes in their mindes, for it feemeth as instantly bred and borne with them. This hot and fiery wigor of understanding, and this promptitude with maturity & judgement, bath not bin given by nature to any other Nation. On what foeuer they purpole a resolution, they apply theselues The French thereto very happily profite therein most speedily and exercise it carefully : either Merchants, Artes, Armes, Letters, erudition. Subtiley affability freedome and eloquence or any thing elfc. And yet not with standing, among al nations they are the most voright do

intively constant of their faith and word.

Moreover, as there is nothing that doth

fo much civilize and fweeten manners the

the fludy of good letters, & to win know-

mans heart, makes plaine outward shew

and appearance in his countenance. In his

forehead he carrieth a naturall franchife,

are noturally addicted to fingular qua-

ledge in the Sciences, which do beger in our foules all humanity and courtefie, and expelleth all rudenesse in carriage: euen fo is it very true, that there are none more None more gracious and humane, then the French, e- kinde to flidspecially towards strangers. The mildnes gers then the that is inwardly, and lodged up in a french

and freedome in life and civill converfation: all laid downe cuidently, without diffembling anything, or ving any cunning or flattery. Good judgement was made hereof by the emperour Julian, who faid: He thought bim elfe most happy to meet In Missogne. with such good naturde men, so facile & fellowly of yet (neuerthele (fe) without flattery.

It is a world of time fince the Gauls had no mean reputation, for entertaining curteoufly, and liberally welcoming ftrangers among them. Diodorus the Sicillian highly commended the courtefie of the Gauls in Died Sicalus in this point. And Tacieus hath written particularly of the Germans, that came from the Gaules, and had meerely learned it of them. And when the French name began first to appeare, Salianus of Marfeilles gaue corn. Tacitus in them the vertue, to be kinde to ftrangers. Aboue all, this people hath alwaies helde Religion in fingular recommendation, as being § foudation of vertue: & they have continually bin denoted to dininity, enen when they had no true knowledge therof. Cafar faith, Gallia admodu dedita religionibus. And Linius describing the fiege of the comment lib 6.

Gauls at the Capitole, faith, that a man of Ti us. Linius in the house of the Fabil, being cast down fro lib. 5, cap.7.

Scaliger his oblernation concerning the French.

cicercin Orat

One of the feuen Hilles in Rome.

negligens grus

runt : Gallia

buit.Sed viris

Cemper fortifsi-

tißimis abun-

in his family, and returned to the Capitole thorough the midst of the enemies. They looked vpon him, without any violence or assayling, & suffered him to passe on; Being assoushed at such resolution, as at Seu attonitis a miracle: were it through respect and rene-Gallis miraculo rence to Religion, whereof (faith hee) that andscia, feu re-Nation is very carefull. l·gione etiam motis,cuius But after that the bright beames of the hand, quaquan

ing any thing, went to Mount * Aventine,

to make an annuall and solemne sacrifice

Gospell began to shew their splendour, it

is hardly to be credited: with what feruor

of foule this people embraced it, with

what veneration, and (euen vpon heapes) voluntarily presented themselves to deth, to testifie the zeale of their affection to Christian Religion, and seale with their blood the fincerity of their faith. On the other fide, faith S. Ierom, Spaine sometime Aductf.Vigil. Informem Ge brought forth Geryon the dreadfull monster. ryonem Hilpa-nie tradide-Herefies have (warmed in most part of the earths quarters: Gaule onely hath conferued her selfe in the truth without denouring hermonstrà non ba selfe.But hath abounded alwaies in great per-Sonages Jearned, and holy in life together. Armis & cloquen rianilme had infected all Christendome. only France bath continued pure : for her Bishops carefully imployed their paines, quickly to stifle those heresies & schismes

> Whe it came so to passe, that the schisme of the Donatifts exalted it felfe, and many partialities, quarrels, and hatreds by particular persons were intermingled: the Bifhops that were in the faction with Donatus, required of the Emperor Constantius, that ludges might be fent from the Gauls, onely for their piety and learning. Whervpon the Emperor granted vnto them 3 Bishops, Rheticus of Austun, Maternus of Cologne, and Marianus of Arles: who went to Rome, and together with Pope Miltiades, hauing exactly lookt into the matter,

which grew too troblefom to the church.

their fentence) the error of the Donatifts, as it is reported by Optatus, one of the Orthodox Bishops of Affrica, who hath left vs in writing the history of this schisme,& gaue his helpe to the suppression therof. In the yeare VCCLVIII. Pope Stephen the third entreated Pepin King of France, by his expresse Nuntio, that he would send

him the very learnedst Bishops of France,

to the ende, that by their authority, hee

decided the cause, and condemned (by

the top of the Cittadell: without dread- | might reforme & re-establish the church, which he performed accordingly. Wherby is plainly discourred, in what esteeme and account, the learning & piety of the Prelates of France hath alwayes bene. According to this purpose of ours, it

may be very truely maintained, that Ganl, Gaule first reamong the Proumees most towards the Christia faith West did first receive the Christian faith, next to Italy, next vnto Italy ; being brought thether in the first birth and infancy of the Church. For ouer & beside the Apostle of France. S. Dionifius Arcopagita, who is faid to bee fent thither by S. Paul: it is certaine, that one named Crescentius, the scholler of S. Crescentius, Paul, did first of all preach the christian Difeiple 10 S. faith in Gaule, and there performed the of- Paul fice of a Bishop and Pastor: as is to be gathered from S. Paul himfelfe, from Epipha- a Tim.cap.a. nius S. Clemens, S. lerome, & Eusebius, who report, that he was sent thether by S. Peter, and that there he dyed. I fet afide what lib.7. Apoflete. our Annalists haue recounted of S. Peter D. Hieronmin and S. Phillip sthat they came thether. But Catalog fenge I may not omit what is faid by Epiphanius; Ecclefiafic. that S. Luke came into France, and there

declared the faith of Jesus Christ.

All that can be imputed to the ancient Gaules, concerning the acte of religion, is, on laid on the that they facrificed men. But this manner Gaules for is of facrifice was not particularly to the Gaules, they having dealt no otherwise therein, then was vied (well neere) by all other people. The like is reported of the Plin. in 1.7 (1 Seythians in generall, and Mela nameth the Pomp. Mila to be the Effedones. The Carthagenians, in lib.4.c.9 whethere hapned among the any plague Trog Pomp.lis or famine, or any other publike affliction. they made their recourse to this superstition, & ordinarily bloodied the Altars of their Hercules with humane facrifices, yea they would facrifice their owne children to Saturne. Strabo faith, that the Lufitars- Strabo in lib.4. ans, a people of Spaine, wold offer up their prisoners in war. And Seuerus declareth. that the Massillans, a people of Greece, & Sernius in 3. well educated would feed a man very im- Acn. In pri. measurably for some space of time, then they wold conduct him through their citty, charging him with accurfed execrations & imprecations; and in the end they would facrifice him, to expiate their publike offences, and to lay on him the penalty of all their fins. Among the Grecians it was very common, not onely during the Sacrifices of Troyan warre, of Iphigenia, facrificed at the Greciam

Testul, in Apo-

1.b.12,

The Gladiacers of Rome

the gate of Aulis; but likewise of Polixena, in the Land of Trove. Long time after, Themistocles (a little before the day of Salamina) by command of his diginators. caused three noble Persians to be sacrificed. And about the fame time, Xerxes,

fame superstition, and vied the like facrifi-

ces of humane oblations? Wee finde it

faithfully fet downe, that they factificed

two Gaules, a man and a woman, to their

Of the People of France.

King of Perlia, offered twelve men in facrifice. Many examples more are there of the Grecians, declared more at large by Plutarke. What thinke ye then of the Romanes? Were not they addicted to the

Plut In Pelo

Pint In The-

Chap.3.

Tutelary or houshold God. I cannot imagine what should be the reason, why they A Gaule mar and a Gaule chose their offerings to be of that people, woman facri rather then of any other sif it were not in ficed by the this respect, that they supposed they shold Romanes. present a more acceptable facrifice (in fo

doing) to the God of their Citty, then to offer any other people, whereby he might be offended, because once they had confumed Rome in cinders, and therfore they might bee judged the more able (afterward) to ouerthrow the whole Empire. Plutarke reporteth, that they caused

some of the Gaules to be buried aliue, du-Plut in Marcel. ring the Confulship of Marcellus: by reafon of a Gaulish warre which had happened to them, and whereof they flood in

fearefull doubt. And that afterward euen till his time, they would have celebrated the like bloody anniuerfaries; which fometimes they were constrayned to goe might not be permitted (it may bee for fo farre as innocent folke, meerely for the the immanity) and all the world to fee defect of other, because this opinion was it. The like was put in practife at Rome, noted in the, that the Gods could not be foone after the difmall day at Cannas : & pleafed, for the life and fafety of one man, the Emperor Domitian likewise sacrificed

two: They had a Inpiter, firnamed Latialis, to whom they made offerings of human blood and of the lives of men. This Tertullian. faieth was ordinarily done in his time: and Lattantius and Eufebius, who lioffer to God what might bee most accept ued foone after under the first Christian table: which made them to prefent him Emperours, do affirme as much. with fo noble a dreature, the only perfect

The often & frequent spectacles, among of all other and fo confecrated to him the the Gladiatores or Egneers, were they any most precious oblation of all oblations: thing elfe, but even a cruel and bloody fawherin they are the leffe taxable for their crifice of many men. Nay, which was most custome (thogh indeed cruel) yet not prodetestable to cause them kill one another ceeding fo farre as other, as the Grecians. for other, mens pleasure ? They were not who fell voluntarily into Atheifine. Aany fmall number of one or two but ordi> narily fine hundred, a thousand two thoufand, and three thousand; and it hath bin,

observed, that at such times, ten thousand haue bin thereto exposed. Let Cicero then and Plutarke ceasse to reproue the Gauls with this custome, seeing that they themfelues, both Greeks & Romans, have obferued the fame. Nav. the Greeks did far worfe, for not contenting themfelues with The Greeks fuch facrifices, they would needs know would feed on the flesh of what good meate it was to feede on hu-

ill done to facrifice a man, how much

more derestable was it then, to serue in

his flesh for food to the table? As for Ci-

cero, I pardon him very willingly, for that

which he faid in one of his pleadings of

the Gauls: because it was to serve his own

cause, and for the reproofe of witnesses,

which made whatfocuer he faide the leffe

confiderable. Contrariwise also, as him-

Pleadings, to derive any availeable anthority

of my opinion or elle a torme of testimony by

that which I have faid : Becaufe (faith he) it

mane fleft, and as Pliny hath left written, Plin. lib. 28.

to tafte of all the parts of a man. If it was cap. 1.

Cicero in felfe hath written. He may foone deceiue him Orat, Pro

Selfe, that thinkes out of mine Orations and Chentio.

was the caufe that pake and not I. And yet if wee observe more neerely, what Cafar Int. Cafar in hath faid concerning this cafe, wee shall Com. Lib. 6.

perceine that the Gaules made glad facrifices of malefactors, as thinking fuch an offring to be most agreeable to the gods.

48 (infleede) there could bee none more A good and proper, then the just punishment of wie. wordsy opiniked persons. And yet notwithstanding, Gaules justice

but by offring to them the life of another. Howfoeuer, they deferued herein no imputation of blames because what they thought to be

did was by superfitition, the excesse of true the excesse of religion, not holding it for any errour, to true religion

mong Gods people, we fee that teptah fel Concerning insa the lims error, under the fhadow of by leptah for a wow & doudtion: albeit I know very wel his faire that

The Gaules made ludges of the Dona

tifts schisme.

Optatus Mile

uit.Lib.z.

Signius in lib.

The Sicam-

Gaules called

of the most learned Rabines. I passe ouer the abhominable idolarries of the Iewes, to the Idoll Moloch, who practifed the very fame. Yet what hath beene faid might The Authors (perhaps) fauour of some signale and senopinion of fible apprehention, or prefage, that man the Gaules G could not be faued, but by a man himfelfe: perflirion,& his excuse in And that one day, man (hould bee redeetheir behalfe. med and brought into his former condi-

tion, by the blood and passion of a man-This haue I fet downe in their excuse, it being a zeale proceeding from religion, when as then they walked in darknes, destitute of any knowledge of the true God. Now, for a fmuch as I have heeretofore

that the Hebrew Text hath no other car-

riage, but that he offered to God, no more

but the virginity of his daughter onely,&

that this is the opinion and interpretation

indifferently yfed thefewords, Gaule and France, Frenchmen and Gaules, as being no other then one and the fame thing, wherof some may conceit very strangely: I hold it convenient, & furable to our purpole, to deliuer a fufficient reason therefore. That which our Ancients had named Gaule or Celtica, was afterward defigned by the name of France. Likewife, the Kings of France have long time commanded in all those parts which were tearmed the ancient bounds of Gaule, betweene the Rheine, the Alpes, the Pyreneans, and the Mediterranean and Ocean Seas. These were the ancient limits of France, which also by feafons, and vnder certaine Kings, haue extended themselves a great deal fürther. But if any parcell therof be at this day difmembred or cut off, that may not change the true appellation of things. Confidering, that such distraction is nothing but the acte, the right alwaies remaines in his perfect integrity. And as for the French, it will be anouched, that they are one felffame people with the Gaules, on whatfoeuer fide fearch be made, and the truth fer downe of their originall.

I may not flay my felfe heere, to fight with the false opinion of such, who thinking to make the Gaules the more honourable, would have them to be descended from the Troyans, because it hath bin already done by others. But it is a point fo cleare and apparant, that there is no man (now adayes) fo filly veried in letters: but plainly knoweth, that they are altogether meere fables and fictions. There hath bin

another opinion, and purfued by many, That they who imagineth the French to bee come hould confoorth of Allemaigne or Germany. And ac- out of Gercording to this conceit, there shall be no Gaule. place of diffinguishing the French with the Gaules: because it is most true to say. that Germany hath beene peopled by her neighbor Gaule. So in making the French to come from thence into Gaule, is to returne them backe to the place where they received their originall. For it is to be credited, that Provinces which are the most temperate, haue bin the first inhabited, & after that men are encreased in multitude, they then make their recourse to more remote places, which are of ruder quality, and more subject to cold. Beside, Cafar himselfe (long since) testified, that the Intim cafara Germanes or Allemaigns, called the Gaules their Brethren: for the similaride of their manners, and the customes of both these people, reported by our ancestors, may instantly make faith for this their fraternity.

Others would fetch them from the Pannaniaes, as it is teported by S. Gregory S.Greg. Tunk of Tours. Now it is very certaine, that the in lib. a.c.p., Gaules did sometimes people both the Pannoniaes: especially at that time, as Bre- Trog Pomia nue made warre in Macedon, and through- 160.24. out all Greece. And the Geographers, as Stephanus, Arrianus, and Strabo, do nomi- Stephanus nate the Celtes among the people of Pannonia. There is yet another opinion, the truest and most certaine, and yet notwithstanding little enough knowne. For oftentimes (faith an ancient Writer) it commeth to paffe, that the originall of great people is as much unknowne, as that of our greatest Riwers. This is that which hath bin observed by divers passages of Sidonius Apollinaris, linaris in mil. S. Gregory of Tours, and other neighbou- Ic. ring Authors, concerning the beginning of this Monarchy: that the French came from Sicambria, and that the Sicambrians are many times taken for the French.

Now we are to note, this Sicambria is not that Sicambria, which fome have viu-ally feated in Franconia: but it is described by auncient Geographers toward the cambrines, that in Frat-North, wholly iowning to the riuages of conla, and the Rheine, as wel on the one fide, as the other, other. But more principally towards the place. where that goodly ftreame falleth into the Sea : a place of very difficult accesse, by reason of the great Marishes thereabout. Suctonius maketh mention that the Em- Suetin vita peror August.

he did, some way to content them, and to low German hinder their courses: as also to serue his owne turne with this warlike Nation, being upon the extremities or utmost parts corn.Tacitin

• Holland in

Chap.2.

of Gaule. And befide we reade in Tacitus. that there was daily at the Emperors feruice.a Sicambrian band or Cohort, highly esteemed for their valiancy. Heereby we may know that they are descended of the same country with the Gaules, and it is to bee credited that thefe were the people onely, which never came into subjection of the Romane Empire,

in the time of Cafar : in regard of the dif-

could not keepe themselves alwayes in

their Northerly corner or angle of Gaule

fuch as (at this day) Holland and part of

Frielland are: but they made their exten-

dure into neighboring countries, & con-

tinually there tormented the Romanes in

Gaule, after whose liberty they longed fro

time to time. And part of them paffing in

to Gaule among the Romanes, were there

highly effectied, and came to undertake

the cheefest charges, as we may reade of

many of them, in Ammianus Marcellinus.

that were transported by Augustus, con-

tinued (for long time) in obedience to the

Empire, as appeareth by many examples.

and Histories fet downe by divers Histo-

rians, which I may not heere recite, be-

cause (for the most part) they have beene

diligently collected by the Lord Fauthet.

in his French Antiquities, where this true

opinion is approued, by the passages of

Lozimus, Ammianus Marcellinus, Procopi-

us and Zonarus. At the fall of that great

Empire, those invincible Sicambrians.

Francs, or French, accustomed to make

ordinary courses into Gaule, perceiuing

the invalion of Northerly people, as the

Alanes, Vandales, Bourgnienons, & Gothes:

they could not endure, that their ancient

country shold remaine any longer so sub-

Part of this people alfo, namely they

cambrians to passe on further into the

firme land of the Gaules, and namely, that

he gaue them * Batauia to dwell in. This

ficult places, and badneffe of the country The Sicabri people.knowne & renowned by the name ans renowned of French onely in the time of Galien, vn-

by the name of French. der Pasthumius, one of the thirty tyrants, about the yeare of our Lord, CCLXIX.

The Sicamberty of Gau

cel.in l.14.cap.7

Intiquit, de D

Z-zimus,Prowhile, and Zo

The Sicamrians could beflauery of iceted neither by the tyranny of Romane their country.

perour Augustus caused those valiant Si-Magistrates, nor by the invations of barbarous people. Hereupon taking aproccasion, they proceed on further into the midft of the Gaules; where they were receiued (in open armes) by their olde mother, and by the other Gaules, who joyning with them, shooke off the yoke of the Romanes, & expulsed also the strange Nations whad so infolently intruded on the.

From thence forward, both one & other named them Frenchmen, as being but one brians and people by originall. Nor can it be conceiued, that the Sicambrian people fhold be Frenchmen. enemies to the Gaules, but rather called by the as their fellowly brethren, to helpe in their enfranchizing, beeing received with the liking of enery one: as thefe places of S. Gregory of Tours do jufficiently Mew. Intercacum iam terror Francorum ve. s.Greg. Turon. which then they held. This Sicambrian Jonaret in his partibus, or omnes cos, amore inthe a capaz desiderabili cuperent imperare, &c. Also in another place: Multi ex Gally's habere Fracos dominos sumo desiderio cupiebant. Moreouer, it is to be feen in many places of the histories, written by the fame S. Gregory, that the Gauls were never trod downe by the French; but administred in publike charges. & took part in their honors, not as a conquered people, but as companions, friends, and affociates, and as making but one people. In regard whereof a man may vie the names of French and Gauls & France and Gaule, beeing but one and the fame thing. And the country enermore in His conclusion habited by the fame people originally be- Gaules and ing neuer thence expulled, nor fubiected. French.

. A country the most happy, the most fertile, the most abounding in all things and the most agreeable with the world, & least incomodious. The people dwelling therein the most martial & warriors at altimes. that the Sunne neuer beheld better. By others also commended for all those good and vertuous qualities, wherwith any humane spirit can be adorned, quicke apr. & ready to whatfocuer they apply thefelues, with moderation, curtefie, and humanity, as none greater can be defired. The hapi pineffe & felicity of this Land, together The excellent with so many commendable qualities of country and the people, have bene published (in some people of measure) by the Poet Buchanan of Scot- France well land, when at his returne from Portugall, by Buchsnar coming backe into France, he made thele verfes, which I thought fit here to infert, to ferue for a conclusion of this discourse.

Confusion of not alter mat-

Gaule became

afterward to

he called

France.

That the French shou be descended Troyans.

Iciuna misera tesqua Lusitania, Glebaque tantum fertiles penuria Valete longum. At tu beata Gallia Salue,bonarum.blanda nutrix artium. Cælo salubrs fertili frugam solo, Vmbrola colles pampini molli coma. Pecorofa faltus, rigua valles fontibus, Prati virentis picta campos floribus. Velifera longis amnium decur fibus, Piscosa stagnis riuulis lacubius,mari, Et hine de illine portuoso littore Orbem receptans hospitem atque orbituas, Opes vicif sim non auara impertiens : Amana villis tuta muris turribus Superbatectis lauta, cultu splendida, Victu modesta moribus non aspera, Sermone comis Datria gentium omnium Communis animi fida, pace florida, lucunda, facilis, Marte terrifico minax, Inuicta, rebus non fecundus infolens, Nec Sorte dubia fracta cultrix numinis Sincera ritum in exterum non degener. Nescit calores lenis astas torridos, Frangit rigores bruma flammis afperos, Non pestilentis pallet Austri (piritu Autumnus aquis temperatus flatibus : Non ver solutis amnium repagulis Inundat agros de labores eluit. Ni patrio te amore diligam, o colam Dum viuo rur sus non recuso visere Iciuna misera tesqua Lusitania, Glebasque tantum fertiles penuria.

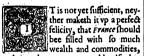
CHAP. III.

Of the Maiesty, Dignity, and high Eminency of the Kings of France: And what infinite actions of Honour they have done from time to time, to renewne the glory of that kingdome.



1.3

114.



as the earth can any way yeeld; also that the people are fo generous, endued with fo many commendable qualities, beside, most humane and acceptable conversation. If all do not correspond to this profperity, and that the forme of her estate & good government, is not the main height of all this happinesse. Wherein it may well be faid, that France hath bene as graciously fauoured by heaven, as in al other things whatfoeuer. There hath neuer beene seene so many citill warres and factions, for change and alteration of the State, as hath often happened in many other Prouinces. After the had once talted the Monarchall Government of one on- chall govern ly naturall Prince (which all the greatest | ment of a na Philosophers fuch as were brought vp in tural Prince free citties, have confessed to be the best) the neuer found any change, neyther did it euer make offer of it felie, or any way proposed.

France well may boast this in common, with a great part of the people of the world that the is a Monarchall estate: but yet this is more particular to her, that the hath fuffered no mutation for fo ma- France neuer ny Ages; but hath beene inuiolably al- fubied tomawayes conferred in her owne Royall e- uernment state and gonernment. And it may as truly be faid, that her Kings haue excelled as much aboue others in the world, as Frace it selfe hath gon beyond all other Lands. Then to come to the paint of her Kings, and of their Greatnesse and Excellency: it resulteth first of al, from that which hath beene discoursed heeretofore. Because there is no man, but will tearme that king potent, rich, and redoubtable, that commandeth ouer a country fo fertile & well The happing furnished: and he will also vouchfafe, that of Kingsin Kings commanding a people fo vertuous their gouernand generous together, must needs be Paragons in generofity and courage yea, & true models of all vertue. Moreouer, what other Kings can make their vaunt, to have fo goodly, so opulent, and so happy territories, and to command ouer such a people? In like manner, what Land can fay, that it hath had like Kings, and so great in all respects, as they of France have bin? This is in generall, and the touching of this point thus were sufficient, without need of any further inquisition; because it is evident to the eyes of all men, even as what hath bin related in our former chap.

But to discourse more particularly on their other prerogatives. First, it is a mat- Prance are termost constant and certaine, that the truely Sout Kings of France are Soueraigns in their raignes in State, holding their kingdom but of God their sour onely, and by the Sword: this needs no o- raignry hath ther profe, because it is granted without

fession, not onely for exceeding the memories of men or for three hundred years a tearme more then sufficient, for establithing fure and inuiolably a Soueraigne estate, as maintained teptah, chiefe of the Israelites against the Ammonites, but also for twelne hundred yeares. There needeth no other testimony then that of Pope Innotent the third, who speaketh it expresty in his Decretall, That the King of Fraunce Cap. Per venera
ikm. Qui phii
ful tigit.

This was i acknowledged not any Soueraigne, in tempo-

This was it which made fo fuperfluous impertinent, inept, and idle, the disputation fo much canuazed amongst the Doctors Imperialists, to witte; Whether the King of France were Subject to the Empire, or no, and whereabout the Doctors difputing vainly, contraried themselues, and fufficiently ouerthrew their owne judgements. Peter Belluga, an ancient Spanish Doctor, in his treatile of a Prince, & Oldradus an Italian Doctour (the cheefest of his time do maintaine; That the kingdome of France acknowledgeth not sither by acte or right any Prince of the world.

Pet.Belluga. In

deculo Princi-

um,tit.4,11,25

Oldradus in

Consilibus.

Lopez Mader." In lib.Excellen-

cias de Espa**gn.**

The Emperors themselves also, have auouched as much; declaring by divers actes, That the King of France is Sourraigne, & that he depended not on them it any fashion what soeuers which will be more amply handled, in a place firter for the purpole. To as filly effect was that, which Doctor Lopez Madera a Spaniard hath written ; That the Kings of France dee take their Title, by a consession made unto them by the Emperor Instinsan, according to the recitall of Procopius. But a man can fee no fure footing, on that which is faide by a subject to the Empire. And beside, soon after, Justinian himselfe could fav: That he quitted what soener hee had pretended to the Ganles, because he held not there any thing. And in other places, he speaketh not of at the Gauls, but onely concerning them of Provence, and the neighbouring Landes. which the Gethes held before, & which he pretended appertaining vnto him, by his conquest made of them. VVhich Lands, the Gothes having made over to the Kings of France, Justinian approued the concesfion, and on that confideration, departed with all his rights and pretentions.

The French do not ground their grants. as the same Lopez did for Spaine, on the

diction. Also, they have bene in this pos. I grant which he pretended to be made by the Emperor Honorius, to the Gothe Alaricke. They derive their title from higher place, and not from the Romaines : who had no other right, but an vniuft inuation by Armes. Por these are the Gauls, namely, fuch as enfranchifed themselues from the Romanes, and that by meanes of the French, their auncient Columnes and Compatriots: And therefore it is apparantly scene, that they have no way vsurped by noughty, but rather have regained their first condition and liberty, as being reduced to their primitive nature. A matter very fauorable; and a reason most impertinent among the Civill Lawyers. In like manner, what was more fust then that which the Romanes caried away by force Pattus ne Pete. of Armes, and was taken again from them res, D. de Patt. by the very fame meanes? But this is infallible, that the Kings of France are Soueraignes, knowne to be fuch, at all times and every where without any controverfic.or friuolous contradiction.

It cannot bee fo fayde of many other

Kings, and namely it hath called in que-

or Earle of all that which he had conquer

writers, Ramirus the first, King of Arra-

gon, payed a tribute to the Popes: which

his fon Sanchio after continued to Pope

Alexander the fecond. And fince this fub-

ftion the King of Spaine. For Pope Gregory maintaineth in his Register, that

Spaine is parcell of Saint Peters patrimo, Int. spiff. 6. ny, and is to make provision for his Lord: 67. having therfore invested a certain Count

red from the Moores . In confequence Zwica in lib. to whereof, by report of their own Spanish 1649,22,

iection to the Romane Church, as from feodataries, it hath beene acknowledged by other Kings. VVe reade that Peter the fecond, King of Arragon, beside acknowledgement of feodality, fubmitted & rendred his kingdome, by ordinary centual (to Pope Innocent the third) of two hundred and fifty peeces of Arabian Golde, which had free course then, as appeareth by the Registers

in the Vaticane, which were extracted and ouer-written by Ciacconius a Spanish author, who wrote the lives of the Popes, & by diuers histories of Spaine.

In like manner, the Realmes of Sardignia and Carfica doe depend uppon the holy See, and the investiture of them kept in the Vaticane., which was made by the

of Arragon, did homage liege at Valencia, betweene the hands of the Legate, in the veare.MCCCLIII. I finde also, that Ferdinand and Alphon-

fue, Kings of Arragon, did make faith and homage, in the yeare MCCCCXLV. The Islands of the Canaries, and Cape du Ferd are held in the fame fort, and I reade, Ocean, four that Lewes of Spaine was inucfted, and rehundredmiles from Spaine, dred faith and hommage to the Pope, in and tearmed the yeare MCCCXLIII.being charged the fortunate to pay to the Apostolicall Chamber, four

In lib.z. De vi folit. The East Indiaes & Peru

The Pope

giues a king

Vitiza the ty

to pay the Popes tribute

Batonius in lit

A. he'd by ho-

5.cap. 17.

Ifles.

Ifles in the

hundred Florins of gold; wherof Petrarch also maketh mention. And as for the East Indiaes and Peru, it is very certaine, that Pope Alexander the fixt, in making partage of that which was newly discourred. betweene the kings of Castile and Portugall: referred expressely to himselfe, the full power and fourraignty, by confent of both the kings, whom afterward he constituted his vassails, in all acquests & conquefts by them made, or that should bee made thence forward, as the Spaniards themselves have written. In like case. pope Iulius the fecond, gaue to Ferdinand the fift, King of Arragon and of Castile, thekingdome of Granada, which hee had conquered from the Moores: with this charge, to hold it of the Roman Church. in faith and homage. All these feodall acknowledgements

and subjections of the estate of Spaine, as well in generall as in particular, are no matters of nouelty. For before them, and during the reigne of the Gothes: the kings ahvayes payed tribute to the holy See, in acknowledgement of fourraignty: vntill that a tyrant named Pitiza, a little before the ruine made by the Sarrazins, refused to pay it. And afterward, by the generall inuation of Spaine having bin wholly difcontinued Pope Gregory the scuenth coplained thereof in his Register, as is well observed by the worthy Cardinall Baronius. Which may be the cause; that each particular king, beginning to strengthen himselfe against the oppression of the Sarrazins, would return againe to the duty of this submission, and ancient subjecti-

On the other fide, it is found recorded that the kingdom of Castile is in Fief. to France. For Henry the fecond, King of affured, & (therby) the kings immortallit

Pope to Peter the third, King of Arragon. Caffile, fubmitting himselfero Charls the In consequence where of asterward, taques fift, king of France, promised as well for fife, king of France, promiled as well for himfelfe; as for his fuccessors, to be vassall, and to hold his kingdome of Castile, of the Kings of France, by a treaty in the yeare MCCCLXIX. which is kept in good forme in the Treasury of France. This king of Castile, being expulsed thece by his Brother Don Peter, was at length re-established there againe, by power fro the king of France, under conduct of that valiant knight, Bertrand de Guescline, Constable of France, notwithstanding all the effortes of the English, bandied to the

> There is another notable quality, The kingdom which is no meane aduantage vnto the Realme of France, in that it is, and euermore hath beene successive hereditary, not by clean and not elective. And like as by generall custome, in all succession in the Realme, death seizeth on the living : even fo this taketh place, & is observed so much the more certainely, for fuccession in the State. Not vifitly compared to the golden branch in Firgill, which being pluckt away, another springeth vp instantly, so that there is neuer any defailance.

Vno anu!fo non deficit alter.

Whence arose the common saying among the French; That the King never djeth. Because that there is alwayes The king ne-uer dyeth in (naturally) another of the fame kinde, Prance. who (without any controuersie or difficulty) fucceedeth at the same instant in the others place. And when as France happeneth to be ouer-trausiled and preffed by potent enemies, euen to the loffe of her King; yet it causeth no confusion or diforder, neither giueth any aduantage to the enemy or can he (by fuch an accident) vsurpe vppon the State. It hath beene prooued (to the cost of some) Comparison like vnto a reuiuing Hydra, not to bee the kingso furmounted; or rather as a Phoenix, that France in fu reuiueth another out of her felfe. Alfo, after another that the Kings of France were truely bred of an immortall race neuer parting from hence, to returne to the true place of their celestiall and divine originall; but they left a fucceffour, who (in the fame moment) is made King, without any other formality.

But to render their fuccession the more

oval in Frace

De feudo Mar-

chie,nu.s.

Of the Kings of France. Chap.3. that fuch as are of the blood-royall, although they or hee thould stand farre off by a thousand degrees: yet notwithstanding, if there be not any other that is neererathey or he are called to the fuccession of the kingdome, and possessed thereof, onely by the others deceafe, without any other contradiction; which hath beene well observed by Baldus, an Italian Doctor, and hath euermore bene fo continu-Baldus in cap.2. ed, even to the person of the King nowe

happily reigning, to bee descended from the King, called Saint Lewes . Si in Francia moreretur toto domus Regia, extaret vnus de sanguine antiquo , puta de domo Borbonia or non effet alius proximior, esto quod esset millesimo gradu, tamen iure sanguinis. & perpetua consuetudinis, succederet in

Reeno Francorum. Item Guliel. Benedicti. in Cat. Raynutius in ver duos habens. Num. Agathias the Greek, who wrote in the

faying ; Among St the French, Children take

the king dome, by succession to theyr Fathers.

And in another place, hee faith and reci-teth, That Theodebert King of Metz, beeing deceafed, his sonne Theudibalde, or Thibault

Succeeded him. although hee was but an In-

ces, and ouerthrowing an Estate, which

may happen during a vacancy, and when

tell you that fuch fuccession in a kingdom

hath not alwayes beene in Spaine, And

there needeth no other proofe thereof

but the confession, or acknowledgement

of Spanish Authors; and particularlies of

Lopez Madera, who wrote in the Spanish

tongue, and yet but little for the dignitie

of the Kings of Spaine. For we find that

the Kings were ther established by electi-

on not onely during the kingdom of the

word, all that Lopes produceth, is that

Before I paffe any further, I may heere

the fucceffor is vnccrtaine.

Agath in Lib. time of Justinian, observed the same also,

In Eod. Lib.

Affurance in fuccession cuts off infinit

fant. But (faith hee) it was the Lawe of the Countrey that called him thereto. Affuredly a most wife institution, especially, for the representation of succession to infinite ages: to obuiate disorders, inconvenien-

Such fucceffion not alwais n Spaine.

Gothes; but also, after that they were ruined, and in the invalion of the Sarazins. Pelagina, king of the " Asturians, & (after A people in Spaine, behim) many other his fucceffors, came by the very fame meanes, as is exactly approued by Melina a Spanish Authour. In a

primog.lib, s.c.

Concerning | hath alwayes been ereceyued in Fraunce , 1 the Kinges were elective : but yet, that none were at any time elected, excepting that they were of the Family and House-Royall.

The contrary appeareth, by the certaine sequele of Histories, and namely by the Councels of Toledo, who permitted, that the election should be made indefinitely of all persons; except of Slaues, strangers, and others that were not of the race of the Gothes. Wherein (it may be) an equiuocation is made, when as Lopez favth. De eadem gente : the interpretation beareth, Of the Family and House-Royall, and not of the Nation of the Gothes, as the Councels understood it. Therein also were many constitutions, for the honour

and confernation of fuch as were of the

race of the precedent Kings: it beeing a

matter necessary to assure them in this

manner, because there were other Kinges

of their house. For whom there needed

no fuch provision, nor fearch for such affurances, if the Kings should have beene fuccessine. But yet much more by the fift Councell of Toledo, there is denounced a comil. roll 1.5 curse and excommunication agaynst such as shall come to the kingdom of the Goths

otherwise then by election. As we read in Ritius, one of their owne Historians, that Bamba a labouring man was made king of Risin in Eb. 1 Spaine by Pope Leo, and approved by the

alection of the people. It neuer hath bene fo in France, where the right of fuccession hath enermore bin ting of Kinger inuiolably kept : There, the Race-Royall in Franc. which furpasseth the rest in greatnesse and vertue, are borne and destenyed to

reigne. Nor was it without good cause, that an Greece they made fo exact an inquisition and fearch for fuch as were of the Linage flomoblement of Heraclides, and of the Aacides to make in Greece. them Kings, Captains in warre, and Gouernours of estates. Plato, and nexte to him Arittotle, are of opinion, that Mo- Plato and A. narchivis indeede the best forme of Go- ristoile. nernment: Werest not as a dream (fay they) to find a good king. As thinking it a matter impossible for a humane spirit, in so great a fortune, affluence of fo many goods and delights, and fuch liberty without contradiction, and in so supreame a power, to keepe in, and commaund ouer his owne

Cont. Tel. 6.ct 7

be made by e-

lucceffion.

A worthy cu-

passions. Plato addeth, Weeline not in the comparison of Commonwealth of Bees, where naturally one Plato.

da & Portu-

Chap.3.

Eminency

brooketh no

competitor.

The felicity of

A note well worth the ob

ferustion.

Radolfe of

The liberall

promife of

Charles the 4

is bredmuch greater and better, to command ouer all the other . And yet the very fame happeneth to the French, whose Kings come from their very birth, more great (not of body) but of courage generofity, and vinderstanding, then all the rest borne and esteemed (by heaven) of another nature, then any common person to reigne.

Would we but a little confider the great difficulties and inconveniences, which are noted in an electine estate, by reason of such forme of election we shold the better know, what an aduantage, excellency, and prerogative France hath. In an estate elective, the death of the Prince hapning, there is an Interregnum, during which time, it falles into * Anarchy, which caufeth diforder, vnrolineffe, and confufion: whereon enfue infinite cuils, murders, affaffines, violences and thefts. As hath beene well observed in those elections, made for the Kings of Thunis, & the Soldanes of Egypt by the Mammelukes. Nay, and hath formetimes happened at the election of Popes, in Sede vacante.

And which is vet farre worfe, the Interregnum fometimes lasteth for many dayes, because, beside vnder-handed suites and made factions, there is an naturall inclination to diffention in men. As hath oft beene seene to happen in the Empire of the East after it veclded it selfe to be elective : And in the Realmes of Hungary, Polonia, Bohemia, Denmarke, and Sweden. During thele Interregnums, nothing happeneth but schismes, diusions, and many menacings of divers persons, which ordinarily do draw on civill warres, every one coueting to have a Prince of his partaking or as he would have it.

It hath also beene observed in the Empire of Germany, that many Emperors have beene elected, vntill they have had feuen or eight at a time, as after the death of the Emperour Fredericke the feeond. And there could no sufficient remedy be found, for the establishing of a Gouernour, that might have commanded in the meane while 3 because about the election of that Gouernour, there grew on still the famerinconveniences. And perhapsis might have fo fallen out that the Governour being feized on the effate, would attend no other election, as some haue done hecretofore: finding but few men, that will render up to great an engadgement. & a thing to attracting, he reputing himfelfe inft in all things, if he can keepe fuch dignity from violation.

Moreouer, it commeth fo to paffe fomtimes, that fuch as have the right to elect Princes, will deliuer foorth fome apparances of credence to them: even to have them murdered and massacred, if they please them not, or else by corruption leaue them and elect fome other. Hereof the Romane Empire can furnish vs with The Romane Empirea wofufficient examples, and that it never was full witheffe more calme, then when her Princes came of herowne to the Empire by fuccession. On the contrary, when the election was in the Soldiors hands, they fet the Empire to fale, and filled all the State with rapines, thefts, murders, cruelties, and barbarous brutishnesse. When an Emperour pleased them not were he the most vertuous man and the best Prince in the world; they would maffacre him, without any difficulty, and establish another; as it befell to the good Emperor Pertinax, after whose Pertinax murder, they caused it to bee published murdered through the Citty, that the Empire was to be fold to the fairest offerer.

In like manner, they murdered Alex-In like manner, they murgered Alexander Alexander Seuerus, one of the best and most Seuerus. Pro vertuous Princes that enerwas. And fo bus, Tacing they dealt with Probus, Tacitus, and many & many more more, as may bee gathered by the fequell murdered. of Histories from time to time. Yet this is not all, each Legion and each Army made his Emperor, all which (in the end) had their throtes cur, after cruell civill warres: the poore people enduring all this while infinite miferies, and there are observed (in that time) well neere thirty. among whom there was two women.

Thefe inconveniences were ordinary (anciently) in the offate of Spaine. S.Gre inth, 149. a gory of Tours faith: Sumpferant Gotthi-hanc detest abilem consuetudinem, or si quis die de regibus non placuiffet, gladio eum adpeterent: & qui libuifet animo, hunc fibi Statuerunt Regm. The Gother had taken shis detestable custome, that if any one of their Kings did not please them; they would murder him, and establish who sower falleth into their fantafle to be their King. This he wrote concerning Theudas, Theudegy files, and Agilas: And in Germany, after that this order of election got footing there; there were eight or nine Enperors flain & Emperors 25 William of Holland, Raoull, Albert, Henry flaing

the seuenth, Frederick the second, and Le- | Territories, and Seigneuries, as well in wes of Banaria, &c. beside them that have shamefully bene expulsed from the Imperiall Throne. And of fifteene Sultanes Seue Sultans that reigned in Egypt, Teauen were murof Egipt murthered.

VVith these wee could ranke many equall, and equally worthy, growing onely through hatreds and discontentment: from whence have proceeded divisions and feditions; fo that the choife and preferring of one man, hath prooued the vtter cont empt of another . And questionleffe, it wil be very hard for him that hath beene re fused, intirely to be obedient to him with whome hee hath contested for the royall authority, as his equal in house, reputation and merit.

Happy France, and truly happy, where-to God hath giuen the grace, to breathe but one acceptable libertie, vnder the fweet command of thy naturall and fucceffiue Kings: which hath benethy warrant from ruine, dangers, & deadly tempefts, and hath kept thy State alwaies florishing, yea, in full strength and vigor.

Amongst other inconveniences that may be met within an elective estate, this is one : A Prince elective will never bee carefull of the state, which he holdeth but by entreaty, or at other mens liking, but of his owne family. For knowing well, that he cannot leave the kingdome to his children, he makes his profite of the publike purffe, deriving and turning it to his own particulars, by venditions and other alienations. According as Rodolfe of Habfourg did, who comming to bee elected of Habipourg Emperour, by the fauour of his Master Emperor,& Elector, the Arch-Bishop of Magunce: lignity he did founded & built up the house of Austriathe empire. vpon the ruines of the Empire. Euen fo farre, as to fell at prices of mony, her freedomes and Seigneuries to Citties of Italy; as to Florence for fix thousand crowns. and to Luca for ten thousand, and so to other in like manner. Which prooued to be the end of the kingdom and command of the Emperors in Italy : in regard wherof, he was highly blamed by all the Historians of those times, and by such as have

> I forbeare to speake of many other Emperours, who practifed in the same manner, and alienated the hereditary patrimony of the Empire, Citties, Townes,

Germany, as in Italy, and other places. And buthis meanes, divers Principalities effablithed, and great citties franchised, beare now no more but the bare name of foueraignty for the Empire. Also it is to bee credited that a Prince doing what he can. will ouerthrow all, yet not topfic turuy: but will mingle (as one faith) heaven with earth, but he wil make his iffue to fucceed. fo ftrong and mighty is this paffion. Few or none are found to follow the example of Moyles, who knowing and acknowledging his formes to bee incapable to command the people of Israel after him; rather chose to establish another, as preferring the weale publike, before affection or charity to his owne. It is recorded that the Emperour Charles the fourth, promifed an hundred thousand crowns to each one of the Princes Electours, to haue his fonne Wence flaus elected emperour; and being vnable to pay them, hee was constrained to give over to them the ordinary reuennues of the empire in paiment.

The case is quite contrary in France, where the inheritance and patrimony of No two kinds of inheritan.

him that commeth to the crowne by fuccession, accrueth and revniteth it selfe (by the same meanes) to the crowne. In regard whereof, the Kings have not two kindes of inheritances, the one particular, and the other publike: for all commeth | ces in France of one and the same nature, & all is made publike. Wherein is different the full the King.

effect of that which the emperour Antoninus Pius faid to his wife. Seeing (faveth cint vita.

he) that we are come to the Empire, wee have lost that which we had before. But although this kingdome bee fuc-

written euer fince. The heredica ty patrimony alienated, and nothing but the bare name remaining.

cessive in this manner, by the iuniolable custom of the country, rather the by hereditary right:yet notwithstanding, women. No female and the descendants of them in that kind, France, accor neuer haue beene, neither euer can be ad- ding to the mitted, no not in the defect of Males.

VVithout reason, some enemies to the French name, and enuious (to speake truly) of this prerogative; would ftrive to call in doubt the Salique Law, which reiecteth women from succession in the kingdome, faying, that the originall ther-

of is doubtfull and vncertaine. As if a man can defire a better and more certain proofe, then the successe and possession of so many hundred yeares, since the set-

The difficulues and dan gers in a flate elcetine.

out a Prince.

The kings of Thunis, Solgypt, and ele-lection of fome Popes.

The Empire of the East be comming c leCuue, & th kingdomes of tries befide.

Contratious election in the Empire

Alex

Chap.3.

Herodot, int. 1.

Sonne to

Phraortes.

Concerning

the laft infti

tution of

led establishment of that estate. That law the first ages) were governed by Kinges. hath beene engrauen, not in Marble or Copper, but in the hearts of Frenchmen and alwayes certainly kept.

Lopez Madera the Spaniard, feeing that the like could not be in Spaine, and that the dignity was much leffe, to couer Lib. 3. cap. 3.

the defect, and bring some shadow for it, laboureth to prooue, by stretching out a long discourse, that the succession of women is very naturall. This carryeth good reason in inauter of succession for Patrimony in particulars. In which case (neuertheleffe) we can shew, that the successions by right (well neere of all people) hath alwayes bene referred to the Males: who are as firme pillars and Anchors of affurance to great Families. But in the fuccession of a mighty estate or kingdom it were a mockery for the French to imagine, that the maintaining of womens fuc

ceffion could be the better. There is verie ing of the Emperor A-drian. great difference flavde the Emperour Adrian) betweene the fearch of an heyre of my patrimony, and a successor in an Empire. Moreover, it were superfluous to goe

feeke for the originall of this Salique law, and enquire any further, when or how it was made; because it appeareth of a certaine vic, and that it hathi alwaies bin kept by the French. Law hath no force, if it be not by custome, which is the very strongest Law of all other. And it may well be fayde, that it is a right of great authoritie. when it hath bene observed so strictly : as there is no neede of reducing it to a law by writing.

It is no written Law, but borne with The Salique them, neither haue they invented it, but Law bred and fuckt it from nature her felfe, who gaue it them by inflina, & fo inftructed them: which not only the French, but most part of the people of the world, haue likewife most religiously observed. If we look vpon royalty and imitation of gouernment generall in the world, by the Soueraigne vnity, from the very first birth, that is to fay, when the world tooke beginning, we of the worlds hall find, that the first fathers of families firft begining. gaue command in their houses themselus

> any part there. Whence came it, that all people (in

ty of the Family, whereas the Daughters

(not of many Provinces) but of a Cittie, or fmall territory onely, which had bene before but the inclosure of a father of a Family? As is to be feene, as wel in holy Writ, as by the ancient histories of each Countrey. That which great Aristotle fo faithfully interpreted of nature, hee hath lib. 1.09.1 well acknowledged. In the beginning (faith hee) Townes and Citties were governed by Kings, as now adayes people and strange Na. tions are . For they were composed of people, that lived under Royalty: each Family being gouerned by the most ancient . So women could not come to the Royaltie, nevther hold part in the fuccession of particulars, Contrarywife, Fathers of the family receined commodity by rich gifts and orefents which were given them, by fuch as made request for their daughters : as wee reade in holye Writ, of the Father, Mo- Gen. 4 51. ther, and Brethren of Rebecca, the wife to Isaac, and as (at this day) it is a common right among all strange people, as well of the East, west, and South, where it is obferued in the fame fort.

Aristotle reporteth, that the ancient Ariff in Politic Greeks did buy their wives : whereof (as lib. s. vet) we have the teltimony of Homer, But fince the prime simplicity & good nature of men forlooke and gaue them over, itrflice and peace withdrawing themselves a of this Iron while in this truly Iron Age) all began to grow more firong, without any right or world, ag and the Primutine lustice, and that ambition (a most pesti- lustice that lent difeafe) ranne currant in the hearts of full florithed men: that goodly order became peruerted and overthrowne : when the most mightie, such as the Scripture reporteth. as of Nimrod and others, of Nimus, Sefo-Stris, Nebuchadonozar, and Cyrus, troubled the quietnes of their neighbours, and inuaded their lands. So, on the ruine of a great number of small estates, mightie

length and largeneffe. In this inuation, confusion, & overthrowing of king comes, as also particular and naturall Principalities, some also mounting vp against their Soueraignes ; in sted of naturall Royalty, brought effates to popularity or Oligarchy, Afterward in regard of these disorders thus happening, willing to live fo: became at length con-

Empires and Monarchies grewe to bee

grounded, and gaue commaund both in

The happy condition of Arift in Poli buing ynder Aiff.in Politic

Trog. Pomp in Concerning Semiramis # mong the Af

Lopez Madera in Hift. Eftagn,

fale fecurity as the strongest, and which pertained to enery prinate person, might peaceably be poffeffed, and defended by their kings, against the violence of neighbors: which were \$ 2 principall functions. that incited wadring people to reunite & Submit themselves to kings. Wherin Aristotle also hath placed the definition of rovalty.to wit : As well to render Iustice, as to defend the subject's from inuation of enemies. Such were the Judges that governed the Estate of Ifrael, before the establishment of kings. Wherto is referred that which Herodotus (aid: That the Medes would have Deloces to bee their K.to the end to render Institute. Be it then that we regard the first indignities have met together in one booriginall and naturall institution of kings. or be it the establishment of great Monarchies: vet it is doubtles, that women neither could or ca be any participants. And as for the last institution of kings, for recourse of people, to the ende, they might be defended against violence, & to enjoy Inflice: we plainly perceine, this could neuer agree with the naturall disposition of women because the vertue of pudicity reiecteth the from those functions of judging people, & defending them by Armes. And if in popular and Oligarchall Common-weals, women haue alwayes bin barred from government, and entermedling with the publike affaires: by much ftronger reason then they ought to bee fro Roy alty, in as much as that forme of State is more excellent then the other. It hath bin obscrued throughout al the Monarchies. cuer pursuing the right of nature. And during fabulous times, if ther be found a Semiramis among & Affyrians; yet that breaketh not the rule. Confidering the flory it felfe faieth, that to bring her purpose to paffe, the difguiled herfelfe in the habit of a man : and was taken, not for Semiramis. but for her Son Ninus. And therby it appeareth, that the Asyrians did not willingly endure the dominion of a woman, as Lopez Madera fondly supposeth. Contrariwife we reade, that that & caused the ruinc of their Monarchy, was, whe Sardanapalus (their last K.) imitating the manners,

of kings, to enjoy their former justice. To

the ende that the weakest might bee in as

Arained to render thefelues to their own , for fo many men to beefabica to fuch a nature.& return to the good government woman who had no more but the forme of a man; they revolted from him, and

conftrayned him to kill himfelfe. Women then are not capable of fuc- Women pot ceeding in the kingdome of France, as we capable of haue, already approoued, that in ancient the Crowne times (ordinarily) they were not. For out of France. of the fabulous times, there is observed onely a Queene of Saba, and a Cleopatra in Egipt, and fo few belide; that their ratity declareth, how contrary a thing it is, violent and extraordinary to nature. Since the declination of the race and Empire of Charlemaigne only, we have feene in fome parts of the West, where valour & virility hath failed or relaxed : foueraigne (words and scepters converted into distaffes, and by the succession of wome, many the like Segres cha dy. This was that which rayled the houses of Spaine and of Austria, to the greatnes they hold: a kinde of encreasing viknown before, in any other house or sougraignty. because there was no right at all.

When then the Spaniards demand of the French, the proofe and foundation of The defence the Salique Law; it is fit for themselves of the French to flew the original and beginning of the lique Law. right for their feminine Crownes, feeing France hath kept the vie of Antiquity,& they have falne to change among themfelues. Which hath bin heretofore obferued and discoursed, by Seigneur Leschaffier, in his Tract of the right of Nature : where he theweth, that by the right of nature, women fland exempted from fuccession in the Realm of France. I remember the answer which Lieurgus made to A witty anone, who discoursed, that the government sweet made by of many was the best forme of an Estate. Licurgus. Ering it first of all (quoth he) into thine own house. In like manner, to such as will maintaine the government of women in kingdomes and great Empires, especially in France: a man may well fay, let them begin that establishment in their owne hou-ses. It is by good reason saide, that there is neyther beginning nor writing found for the Salique Law. It is a Law of nature. borne with men, and not written, as Ari-Stotle faith: That who focuer is by right of nature of by right of people is not written at al.

Wherto I may adde moreouer, that it is feudu. the common right of inheritances, which ought by stronger reason to be observed in

Of Sardanapaffed to another house, without haning fashions, & behauior of women, offended the greater part of the people beeing mot men fo much, that by a just indignation,

and not by their wives, and that the male children succeeded them in the soueraign

Law bath no

power but by custome.

borne with the French."

Royalty, as being the last and most eminent title of inheritance, and whereon dependeth all the other. So then this right, fo naturall, hath euermore beene exactly kept in the estate of France.

Beside, the ancient lawes of the Salians, A connexion will not permit, that any part of Salique of the Lawes land or inheritance (that is to fay, of lands of the Salian distributed to the French, in their entring with that of the Ripuarito the Gaules) shall come into the hands of women; but willeth, that it bee wholly left to the males. The same is also ordained in the law of the French Ripnarians. If this then tooke place in the succession of particulars, that the lands affigned vnto the French warriors, for recompence of their trauailes, and to ferue for defence of the Country, should not fall (as one faith) From the from the Lance to the Distaffe: by how Lance to the Diftaffe. much greater reason then ought we to esteeme, that this should be observed, in

the effate and fuccession of the kingdome

of France, as the sequell of her owne Hi-

ftories maketh knowne, that it hath bin at

Sonnes, who by custome (then) received

and divided his Monarchies equally. Chil-

debert the eldeft, was king of Paris; Chlo-

thaire of Soiffons: Chlodamiere of Orleance,

and Thierry of Mets. Childebert had two

Daughters, the one named Chrodefinda,

and the other Chrosberga, as appeareth by

the Charter of exemption, of the Abbey

of S. Germane des Prez, and by that which

Fortunatus, Bishop of Poicters hath writ-

ten in his Poems, who addeth, that King

Charibert was Tutor to those two daugh-

ters. Neuerthelesse,neither of them suc-

ceeded in the kingdome of Childebert

their Father : but without all further dif-

pute, it was Chlothaire their Vnkle, as hath

in like manner bin observed by Agathias

the Greeke. Afterward, Charibert the fon

of Chlouis, had three daughters also, with-

out leaving any male-childe: the one was

married to a king of Denmark; the second

named Berthefleda, of whom Fortunatus

made an Epigram; and the third, called

Chrodielda, entred Religion in the Abbey

of S. Croffe in Poitters: fo that none of

these daughters succeeded their Father,

but Sigebert, brother to the deceased king,

& that without difficulty or controuerfie.

Now if there had bin any means or fub-

cct to worke vpon, it is not to be thought,

The great Louys or Chlonis had foure

all times fo held and practifed there?

The 4 fonnes of great Chlo uis all kings together.

Fortunat in Parm.

Agathias in L.

The three daughters of Charibert.

that the king of Denmark, who had married one of the daughters, could otherwife haue bin remoued. Or if he had bin impeached by power, at least he would have complained,& the authors of those times (uffome of the could not forget to make mention of it. Iny country is But they not making any account of the a mighty and daughters, do report, that Sigebert succeeded his brother Charibert, according to the custome of the Country. Gonthram, King of Bourgongne, brother to Charibert had but one only daughter, named Cklotilda. And yet notwithstanding he inuested and instituted his Nephew Childebert in the kingdome of Bourgongne, to enioy it after his death. It is not here to be objected, that hee did it for any ill will he bare to his daughter, or because hee would difinherite her : For by an acte of accord or agreement, made with his Nephew Childebert, transcribed at large by S. Gregory of Tours, who lived in those very times; he stipullated great Lands and Seigneuries for her, declaring well therin his fatherly affection; but because the law of France hindered her fucceeding in the Crowne, he aduantaged her otherwise as he found the best means to do. The same may be confirmed by the testimony of many strangers, who do al agree in this point, that wome are not to succeed in the kingdome of France: the names of whom, as dome of France: the names of whom, as also their authorities, have beene (for the uers strange most part) noted, and collected by a lear- Witters, ned man of this time, in an Epistle which he hath written concerning this subject.

Nodgerus, Bishop of Liege, in the life of Nodger in vil.

S. Landoalde, written by him in the yeare Landoalds. id. VCCCLXXX.faith. Francerum Regnu 1.449-3. à sui principio semper per infatigabile. Ec. Maximu autem accepit incrementu & firmu Sub eo Saneta Dei Ecclesia statum, cum Chlotarius Rex IVS TA SVCCESSIONE. Chlodouco quartus Monarchiam singulariter trium regebat regnorum. The king dome Chlouis was of France fro her beginning, hath enermore Monarchof; bin innincible and indefatigable, &c. But the kingdomes. holy Church of God hath taken a great and firme encreasing in that State, when as king Chlotharius, the fourth Son of Chlouis was Monarch BY IVST SVCCESSION of three kingdomes. He faith by just succession, and yet notwithstanding, Childebert had left two daughters behinde him.

Albert of Strasbourg reporteth in his Chronicle: In Francia nullus per foeminam in chron.

Albert Strash

linea successiffe dicitur. Neuer hath any perfon succeeded in France by the line of wome. The Emperor Charles the fourth, Son

Chap.3.

ın vit Caroli

Quality.

to John, king of bohemia, in his life it is thus written. Eodem Anno obiit Carolus Francorum Rex relicta vxore pragnante, aua peperit filiam. Et cum de consuctudine regni filia non succedant, prouestus est Philippus, filius foceri mei in Legem Francia. That yeare (laith he) died Charles, king of France, leaving his wife great with childe. who was delivered of a daughter. And because by the custome of the kingdome, daughters are not to succeed: Philip, Sonne of my Father in law, was made king of France.

Froiffard, a parta ser with England writeth thus. Then after the death of K.Charls. the 12 Peeres and Barons of France, affembled them selves togither at Paris, with althe freed they could make and gaue the kingdome (by a common confent) to Messire Philip de Valois. and tooke it from the Queene of England or her Son who was left Sister germane to king Charles by this respect and reason; because they faid that the Realm of France was of fo great nobility, as it ought not go by any means to a Female. And indeed, the Q. of England, and Edward her Son, would not go to the contrary: but acknowledged Philip de Valois for legitimate successour to the kingdome. And that which is more, Edward voluntarily did him homage, in regard of the Dutchy of Guyenne, and the acte of homage was deliberated and ad-

uifed by his councell of Fingland. Now as concerning that which hapned King Edward | Some while after, warre being moued betweenethe twokings, for another cause name of king, and enmity excited among the, that Edand quartred ward tooke on him the Name and Armes of France: this was only done by the muention of the Flemings, who faide, that they could not aide him, except he would qualifie on himfelte, the name of King of France: because they floode bound by oath, not to beare Armes against the K.of France, on paine of paying two millions of Fiorins. So that in taking Armes for him against Philip de Palois, and to quit théselues of that payment; Edward gaue them a discharge and quittance, as being K.of France. And yet notwithstanding, the K.of England made difficulty of vnderstanding it, having attempted war vp. King Edward on another subject, as being Vicar of the england Vicar of the Empire, and for recouering the towne of

Cambray, which the King then held. But in the end, to have the helpe of the Flemings & their allies, who were most important ypon him; he was induced to take the title of king, & the Arms of France, as may more particularly be feene in the fequell of the history fet down by Froillard.

Estinan de Garibay y Gamalloa, a Spaniard, Estinan de Gaspeaketh of the very same, saying. Porque libay. Histor in Philip Conde de Valoes descendida de la corona Real por linea malcolina: fue coronado por Rey di Francia por virtud de la Ley Sauca. Al Rey Eduardo por descender de linea de muger, exluyeron de la succession Real, &c. Aunque todas ellas razones d'Eduardo euaden yesclusen los Franchesescon Ley Salica, que en estos dias y ua tomando grande vigor y fuercapara los figlos futuros. Becaufe Philip Count of Valois descended of the Crowne Loyall by the maj culine line: he was crowned King of France by vertue of the Salique law. For king Edward, he being descended by the Mother's line, he flood excluded from the Royall succession, oc. And all the reason alledged by Edward, were enaded by excluded for the French, by the Salique Law, which in thofe dates was in great force, and continueth allo

Doctor Baldus on the Pandects faith.Filia Regis Francorii non succedit in Legno .ex D.L.e.S.m.tor. rationabili consuetudine Francorum. The Daughter to the K.of France, succeedeth not at all in the kingdome, by a reasonable custome among the French. Which is also confirmed by Doctor Petrus Iacobi, on the books of Petrus Iecobi. Fiefs or Inheritances, & many other Do can wallalin ctors. This may (by good right) bee regi- Fond. fired among the honors, dignities & preheminences of France. And such as contend against it, as willing to impugne such a Law, or call it in doubtfull question; do flenderly conceive, that the state of their owne Country could neuer pretend, nor attribute vnto it selfe such a prerogatiue.

for future times.

. The King of France hath also this great aduantage aboue others, that he is not on aduantage of the king of the king of France. full power & authority truly Royal:which is not common to all Princes, although they be Soueraignes. There are very few or none, but are reftrained, either by lawes, or by affemblies of the generall Estates: who therfore cannot tearme the. felues abfolute, being fo fubicated, & their power limitted. The perfection & height | The perfectiof a royall estate, is, when the Prince or on of a ruely Royall estate.

daineth

The Queens or England and Edward her Sonne.

This point of

S.Greg. Turn

the third took

or him the

Ariff in Politic. lib.3449.10.

124

Ecclef.8. 24.

The honourable dispositian!er& Cz (ar in their warre, and o therwic.

The absolute power of the Romanes Dictarour.

Two other corfiderati ons well deferuing obfernation.

daineth all by his owne will, doth what he Jother, is the antiquity of her race of kings: would without any restriction, and being no way answerable for any of his actions. This was the reason, that Aristotle clegatly named fuch an estate, by the name of rapsacaria, as one would fay Full and perfect Royalty. And wife Salomon speaking of a true king indeed, faith; He will do what foeuer pleafeth him. Where the word of the king is there is power; and who shal say unto him. What doft thou? This is also of no meane importance for the good government of an estate; be it to resolue more certainly on the affaires; be it to keepe councels & designes secret; be it for facility promptitude, and speedines of execution. He that hath fuch power, especially in actions of war, as the two great warriours Alexander and Cafar had, may fway the Empire of the world. One of them being demanded, how in fo fhort a time, hee had made fo many famous conquests: It was (quoth he) by neuer deferring occasion, or wling remissenesse. And the other was so prompt& ready, as many times he was at his iournies end with his Army, before any newes was heard of his comming. Yea, and in fuch fort, as enemies felt hisfingers, before they tooke aduice for his comming. Nor can this be done, if a man depend vpon another, in any manner whatfoeuer, & the his power is not absolute. The Romanes tooke good acknowledgement hereof, being wont in their very greatest affaires, & dangers of the cltate, were it in peace or war, to create a Magistrate, whom they called Dictatour, with fuch full power & absolute authority. In breefe, for the gouernement of great estates, and likewise of great affaires, the account can neuer bee well rendred, except it be to one man only. Otherwife, a Prince, although a Soueraigne, can neuer fay, as Metellus Numidicus, and as it was after vsed by king Lewes the II. That if he thought his hirt knew his The wife fay the 11. That if he thought his fort knew his ing of Metel. councell, he would teare it from his backe and his Numidicus burne it. He that is truly an absolute king, may well vie the aduice of his councell, in fuch affaires as present themselues: but in an arrest and resolue, what seems good to himselfe. The excellency of that kingdome, as also of her kings, resulteth yet from two other confiderations. One is the long continuance of the estate : a certain proofe, as well of her good gouernment,

as of the supreme and celestiall fauor. The

for to speake truely, there is not any more lead in worthy, no nor more generous blood in State & Ann the world. Who can in all the kingdomes quity of the through the Vniuerfe, show another the like estate, as firm and stable, as hath continued for 1200 yeares? Who can nominate fuch a nobility & ancientnes of race, fo fairely approued, and in fo long fucceffion of fo many kings. Since the year 440. according to most certaine History. Meroneus planted the foundation of that Mo- The fire of narchy, and established it to the Gaules: & station of the Monarchy by euen to this instant, the estate hath bin alwaies maintained, and valiantly stood against all violent affaults. In such fort, as the more it hath bin attempted yearin very dangerous extremities; then found the her selfe strongest, and more flourishing then before. There is not any thing comparable to fuch a fuccession of kings in al other Realmes, as it will be eafily verified.

Moreover, the nobleneffe, dignity, and greatnes of that royall race, hath received no diminution by those two changes, noted by #1 which historians have there observed. Let storians connot Lopez Madera alledge then, that fuch changes hapned, because France would not admit the regiment of women. For if we regard the fide & line feminine, thogh the fuccession be not therein; three races finde themselves all vnited with the other. The fecond of Pepin with the first, as some Chronicles of those times do proue. And that of the Capets which is the third, and reigneth at this present happily with the second, as M. Guillaume de Nangu hath deduced the Genealogy. The which Pope Innocent the 4.in his Decratale, speaking of king Phillip Augustus full well acknow- cap Nount De ledged, when he auouched that king to be Indici apad descended of the race of Charlemaigne.

But beside this, there are other faithfull Authors, who do declare, that the fecond Authors, who accuracy race is tolyndro the first, by the males fide, repin defen proouing from father to fonne, that Pepin ded of kap was descended in direct line by the males, for Motor of Chlogion, K. of the French, before Meroneus, as iffued from Albericus, one of the fonnes of Chlogion. And as for the third race, the true originall thereof, was in that noble and fo ancient house of Saxony, & The third of great Vuitichind, king of the Saxons, who made himselfe Christian with his only king you know the saxons only king you know the saxons only king the saxo time of Charlemaigne. He was descended and that de of Signardus.

Robertthe

Strong, & his Sonne Otho

Tutor to Charles the

Chap.3.

Gregot.

Warriors that terrified and amazed the Meroneus

ounder o the monarchy in Gaule.

Attila king of the Hunnes called himfelfe Flagellum Dei.

Siguardus, who was made Duke of the Saxons, in the yeare VCXXXVI.at such time as Dagobert was king of France. Behold the certain fuccession. Vuitichind the great had another Son cald Vuitichind, & that Vuitichind had another Vuitichind 9 3. who had to Sonne Rupert or Robert the Strong Count of Anion, he being flain against the Wormanes, in the time of Charles the Bauld, king of France, and Emperor.

That Robert the Strong left his Son Otho or Eudo, who was Tutor to king Charles the Simple, and afterward crowned king ; as also was his brother Rupert, Father to Hugh the Great, Count of Paris, Sonne in law to the Emperor Otho the first. And by this mariage of Hugh the Great, was born Hugh Capet, established king by the Nobility of France, through default in the legitimate line of Charlemaigne, in the year VCCCLXXXVII. Since which time, the kingdome hath alwayes beene in the hand of that generous and flourishing Linage, excelling flill more and more, and

Next heercunto, there commeth also

reigning to perpetuity.

roour confideration, the admirable and herovicall vertues of the kings of France, which hath mounted their glory vp vnto heaven, & made them known through a the Cantons of the earth. But to forbeare the most ancient warriours, the affeight & terrour of the Romanes, Afcaricus, Gaife, Marcomir, Sunno, Mellaubodes, and Chlocion : what a warrior was Meroneus, the founder of that Monarchy in Gaule? This was the man, who (in despight of the Romanes, and fuch a mingle-mangle of barbarous people, scattered and dispersed by the Gaules) planted there his Standards, and made himselse absolute Lord of one part. And as for Attila, king of the Hunnes, that caused himself to be cal'd, The scourge of God: he came to rauage France, as hee had done all other Provinces where hee had past. The wife Actius, Gouernour to what then remained of the Romanes in Gaule, was perfwaded, that he was not able, nor all the barbarous people releagued with him to endure the furious and fearefull shock, of that huge thunderbolt of war. But made his recourse to the vertue of the French, and to their great Meronews to fight against the furious entrance of the Huns. Wherin hehad good fucces, for the pride of Attila was soone reba-

ted on the Cathalanian plaines, by great Mereneus, who put to the edge of the fword that dreaded maffe and number of enemies.

Alas, there is no roome here, in a work This labour of no larger circumference, to recount the ever lutle to goodly deeds, and actes herovicall, well containe the deferuing eternall memory, of al the kings on of the that have raigned in France: for many Kings of great volumes can hardly containe them. So high an afcending subject, deferred to meete with fuch Writers, as can as worthily fet down in writing, what thefe kings did boldly and vertuotilly performe. Befide, the aboundance of matter, and dignity of the fubicat, would affoord them tearfity of ground, and trouble them with a thousand difficulties. It is a subject much The Greek more great, then the wars and encounters war more om of petty Townes and Villages in Greece, barable with them of the bandied the one against the other: which neuertheles, by the learning & eloquence of fuch, as have attempted to write thereof are become so much celebrated, and thought worthy of immortality. But Frenchmen, who have established this Monarchy, contenting themselves with the glory and fronour of well doing, care little for any pride of the Pen, addicting themselves rather to execute high & hardy enterprizes, the to fet down in writing

those of others, much lesse of themselves. Neuertheleffe, though destitute of fuch exquifice meanes, whereby to mount to Admiration immortality yet it hath fo well falne out, (in Ilead of that all their faire actions have not bin ve- inthathmade terly buried nor forgotten. But in flead of the French a worthy Historia, admiration bath thrust generally fainto the mouthes of all people, to know out the world and speake of them; delivering it so from hand to hand even to fuch as dwell in the remotest Climates, familiarly acquainting them with their manners. And indecde, there are to be found more testimonies of French vertue, in the Hiftorics Memories, and Annals of ftrangers, then in their owne. I will therefore leane that labour to others, that can better acquit thefelues therof, if I touch any thing, it shall bee but in my passage along, and onely to make a light demonstration.

It hath bin observed for an ancient faying. That all the good kings might be enclosed Adage conwithin the Beazillor Collet of a small king, cerning good But this faying cannot hold in France, w kings. hath euermore metwith good kings, most

Chlouis or

Louys that

droug the Ro

mones quite

out or Gaule

& made the

Gothes to fli

beyond the

Pyrennean Mountains.

Chap.4.

Roderic Xime-

net Aichies. 7

excellent and most vertuous: having bin | ety;made themselves admirable & dreadalwayes happy therein, as in all other things. I will call then vnto you divine fpirits, & generous foules, who have fomtime swaved that Monarchy; to the ende, that being put on by your inspiration. I may, if not worthily fing your merits, yet (at least) figure foorth to life some part of

Next to Great Meroneus, who first established himselfe in France, repulsed the Hunnes, and ouercame King Attila, the horrour and the whippe of the world, account is to be made of that Chlouis or Lowir, who possessed himselfe throughly of the Gaules, and etterly exterminated the Romanes name. This was the quayler of the Romanes and Germanes, and he that expulsed so quickly the Gothes beyond the Pyrennean Mountaines, and made them thinke, that hardly could they get ground enough to flie away vpon, or where to hide themselves from his victorious arm. The Gothes having offended him many times, and broken all agreements made: this Prince undertooke war against them, to chastife them, and purge the Canles of fuch a people, as eagerly followed the errour of Arrius, and laboured to plant it cuery yeare.

When as the two Armies were met

together, somewhat necre to Poictiers, the

battaile was given, wherein the Gothes.

were wholly ruined, and driven away in

rout. Historians do adde heereto that the

was met withall in the fight by King Chlo-

ais, and fighting hand to hand, hee fmote

him downe dead to the ground. This is

the felfe-fame Prince, who (first of all the

French) embraced Christian Religion,

whereof both he and his fucceffors were

alwaies afterward true protectors and de-

fenders. He was the most redoubted of all

the kings in the world, and of whom the

Emperour Anastalius, Theodorick the O-

strogothe, and the Vuisigother of Spaine

made no meane accountswere it in admi-

ration of his vertue, or were it for feare.

they thought themselves very happy, to

have peace and friendship with him, feek-

The meeting of the two at mies hard by Poiters, where King Chlouis flew Alarick hand to hand King of the Gothes, being named Alarick, in fight.

The Empero

Childebert

Sonne & fue

ceffor to

Chloui.

ing it by diverfity of Ambaffadors, & by plenty of most exquisite guifts. His Sonnes Childebert, Chlothaire. Chlodamire, and Thierry, as heires to his crowne, and likewife to his valour and pi-

full to ftrangers. Childebert, induced thereto, by horrible perfecutions inflicted on the Orthodoxe Christians, as also by the bad and vnworthy vsage offered to his Sifter, by Almarick her husband, King of the Vuifigothes in Spaine, who fenerely main- S. Gug. Time tained the Arrian herefie: paffed with his Army into Spaine, quailed & ouercame 2.029.9.019 the powers of the Gothes, wonne divers Citties by affault, and at length took Tolledo, cheefe of all, ruinating it in ranged battaile, where also was flaine Almaricke their king; returning triumphantly into France, hauing added to his Empire, the very greatest part of Spaine. Afterward the three Brethren together, wholy onerthrew the estate of the Bourguignons. And foone after, the emperour Instinian, The Empero making warre on the Gothes of Italy, the Gothes made recourse to Theodebert, king Gothes of Italy of Mets, and youngest Sonne to Chlouis, taly. who defended them for a good space of 1,Bel Got, time, giving fuch proofe to the Greekes, of vertue in the French, that Justinian was constraind to compound with the french, as Historians (on his own fide)do restific. In this first race, there was also Chlo-

thaire, who by his victorious arms, wholly subdued Germany, and vanquished the vnconquerable Saxons. On a day, the two horse-backe and well armed; espied Berroaldus, Duke of the Saxons, in like furnishment on the Rivers other side. Alone & without atteding for any other troops. fuddenly he croffed ouer the River, to encounter and fight with his enemy swho ter with all possible speed, and having ouertooke him, fought with him, and left him dead on the ground, So returning victorious backe againe, bearing his encmies head in his hand, he found his pcople much offended, because they had neg-Churches richly founded and builded by bim can well teftifie.

Hauing finished the first race, wee come to the second, wherein let vs confider first of all, the cheese man thereof,

Armies being fomewhat neere each to o-ther, and the Riuer Vifurgis running betweene them, this Chlothaire beeing on the Saxons. betaking himfelfe to flight, he purfued af- lib. 4.4.0.18 lected to follow him. He left Dagobert his Dagobert, Sonne to be his Succeffor, a worthy heire heire and fu both to his estate and valour, as also ex- cessour to his celling in piety and denotion, as many theire.

whose name remained engrauen (perpetually) in memoric of all the people of Europe, for beeing their confernator, in warranting them from the certaine yoake and scruitude of the Sarazins. It was then when the Arabian Sarazens (holding all Affrica) passed into Spaine with very smal troopes: where finding but flender refistance, the Spaniards and Gothes bequea-Teles mi lib. 3 thing themselves, as ingulted in all pleafures and delights, and no way addicted to the exercise of Armes, became immediately Masters of all Spaine. This victory and conquest drew on thither Millions of

> Moores and Sarrazins, and in fo great number, that Spaine being no longer able of comprehending them, they made account of passing further on, even to run thorow all Europe, and quite to exterminate Christian Religion.

Into France they entred with a most dreadfull Army, facking and spoyling all that they met with, and paffed on fo farre as Tours, sceming, as if there were no force or power great enough, that could refift or hay the course of their conquests. All people and Christian Princes, were Mahometanes of the East. Questionksse, full of teare and terror, and (in a worde) Europe had viterly beene vindone : if this Charles Martell had not then bene present neere or before the City of Tours making there a barre of his body and French forces. Having given them battell with fo few French as then were with him : hee ouercame and meerely hewed them in pieces, to the number of three hundred. threefcore, and fifteene thousand Sarrazins. After this, being advertised that there were yet other great troopes, towards Warbona and Auignion; hee went thisher to finde them, & in another daies good fucceffe, wholly ouercame them,& left not a man liuing. So that it appeareth by inftrecords, that there were flaine in all, feuen or eight hundred thousand : in regard whereof, the fir-name of Martell was given him. Thus did he dissipate this dangerous tempeft, wherewith all Christendome was threatned, and ready to be confounded.

This also gaue good ease to the Spaniards who were feattered in Spaine; fled & hidden in the Afturian mountains. So that he might wel be named, & in good right. the Buckler, Hammer, Tharpe Tworde and

Charles Martell, Prince of the French; | Rampier of Christendome, But for him, Europe had now bin the scate of Caluffes and Miramolines. In flead of adoration giuen to the true God, the name of prophane Mahomet, and his execrable Alcoran thould have bene here preached. The Saxons, who were Pagans then, and not capable, but to give offence to a peaceable king, by their revolts and wonted feditions; could they have bin any hindrance? The Germanes, divided into many finall Principalities, and gouerned (for the most part) by the kings of France, could they have refisted ? In Italy there were but the Lombards, who in the fpace of almost two hundred yeares, could not became Masters of all Italy, neyther conquer any more but a part, which their first king Albonine obtained at a clap, even when they first entred. The rest wasso miserably tormented, by the courses and piracies of the Sarrazins: as the poore inhabitants knew not where to hide themselues. The Empire of Constantinople remained, haung worke enough to do, to keepe herfelfe within her owne finall bounds and limits : beeing purfued by the Arabes and the Christian name had bene extinct had it not pleated God to ferue himfelfe with the victorious arme, and courage inuincible of this French Prince, to conferue his faithfull servants to glorify his name.

This was the fame Prince, of whom it was faid; That hee affected rather to com. mand Kings, then to bee a King himselfe; which was engrauen on his Toombe in these rearmes.

Non vult Reguare fed Regibus imperatipfe.

Thus imitated by the Virgil of France.

This was Great Martel, Prince of the Frech! Not King in name, but a Master of Kings.

Much more to be esteemed heerein, then he that faide . Hee affected rather to command them that had Golde, then to have any lumfelfe. Because the passion and fernour which is borne to honor, and which feareth it felfe willingly in the fouls of the most generous; is much more quaint; tickling and violentsthen is the defire and limustimile, thirst after riches. The reputation and cap. sr. valour of that great Martel protector of Christen-

Avmonius con

Christendome) beeing such, the Church | ranged them under his obedience. hauing no other prop nor fuccour, euery one fixing their eyes on him. Pope Gregory the third fent him the chaines of Saint Peter, and the keyes of the Sepulcher, committing himselfe and the whole Romane Church into his protection, to be warranted, not onely against inuasion of Sarrazens, but also against the continual courses of the Lombards, wherewith hee had beene afflicted beyond all extreami-

Pepin, King of France, fon to Charles

Martell, wonne not a jot leffe glory by his

Pepin, the for Martell.

Aymon, contin in lib. 4.cap. 63

haughty deeds of Armes. This was hee that danted the Aquitanians, and them of Bauaria, ouercomming them in diuers battailes, and likewise the renolted Saxons. Soone after, being called for fuccor by Pope Stephen, to defend the Romane Church (vexed more then ever) and oppreffed by Astolpho, King of the Lombards, he went with all diligence, & constrained 25tolpho (who felt his power not equall to his) to flye, and thut himfelfe vp in Paula his Capitall City, where hee befiedged him, and could not raife his fiege vntill hee hadde made an aduantageable composition for the Pope, with whom he left many French fouldiers for his further assurance. This composition being afterward broken by the perfidie of Astolpho. Pepin returned thither againe, and beliedged him the second time; compelling him to furrender the Exarquate of Rauenma, and many other places, which he gaue vp to the Romanes Church. And returning home into France, hee found there the Ambassadors of Constantine, Emperor of Constantinople, who bringing him many goodly prefents, came onely to request his alliance.

or Charls the Great, fonne

The Licute-

nancie of the

Empire.

But what can we speake of more admiration, then his fonne Charles, to whome (by good right, and for his high deferts) the whole Vniuerfe, by one confent, gaue the fir-name of Great? Hee attempted. maintained, conducted, and brought to end, ten or twelue seuerall warres, all-of most great importance & difficulties in all kindes; as well in regard of the places, as for the great multitude and firength of the enemies, against whome hee was to deale. First, against the Aquitanians and Bafques or Gafcoigns, a meruailous firong people ; yet after many overthrowes, hee-

Next, another warre against the Lombards, who having violated the Articles of peace, which had beene couchanted with them by King Pepin, Father to this His warte a with them by King Pepin, Father to this gainst the Charles: they infested and tormented the Lombards, & Romane Church, without the least breathing or respit. Which was the reason thing or respit. that this Prince, as pious and inft, as valiant, vndertooke (according to the ordinary vie of the French Kings) the defence of the holy See, ouercomming & ruinating the Lombards from the toppe to the bortome. He also befreged Didier their king tooke, and led him captine into Fraunce, where ended the kingdome of the Lombards in Italy, and whereby he augmented and enlarged his owne efface. Thus hee purchased rest to the Pope, and beside enriched the Romane Church, giving it no meane part of his Conquests, and encreafing the patrimony of S. Peter.

Hee attempted warre also against the Sarrazins, paffed into Spain to fight with gainft the Sa them, where he foyled them in many en-counters, enforcing them to hide themsclues in Towns, which he besiedged and wonne away from them, fo that he conquered a great part of Spaine, chafing the Sarazins thence, and continued warre alwayes ther afterward against them, which gaue no small case vnto the Spaniardes, who were mightily oppressed and ouer-

burdened before.

Then he made an expedition into Ita: ly, against the revolted Lombards and Italians. Many the like into Germany, against the Bauarians, the Danes, Bobemians, Sclauonians, and Vuinides, all warlike people, and whom hee conquered. Also against the Hannes, an vindaunted people, after they had gotten habitation in Pannonia; under the conduct of Attila their King : wet he vanquished them, and hewd them in peeces in many fought battailes, plucking out of their throats the spoiles of Europe, which they had enjoyed and triumplied ouer for so many yeares. And there he found fuch wealth and aboundance of riches, as the very simplest fouldiour in the Camp, was wonderfully rich for ener

Furthermore, he had no meane medling with the Saxons, against whom hee had warre for the space of three and thire Saxons tor 3 ty yeares: they being a people that could yeeres.

cainft the

Aaron the great Calyfte f the East.

Chap.3.

His warre a.

He was loued

and teared by

the Emperor

of Constan-

Eginhard in Ant.lib.q.cap.

tinople.

neuer liue nor abide in quiet, revolting inceffantly, especially when they knew this Prince to be farre off from them. & troubled in some other places. Hee added to his owne estate Gascoingny, a great part of Spaine, Saxony, and the Pannoniaes : restraining so powerfully the ordinary cour fes of the Sarrazines, as all Europe lyued quietly vnder his reigne. Belide, hee was to redoubted, loued, and admired altogither by forraigne Kings, that Aaron, Calyffe of the East, who held (well-neere)all Afia, and was feared by all the greatest Kings: fought for his friendship, and sent him rare presents at divers times, anouch ing him to be the most woorthy King in the whole world. And although this Caluffe was rude and harth unto Christians, that dwelt in his countries; yet notwithstanding, he forbare to perfecute them,in confideration of Charlemaigne, to whom he game the City of terufalem, by fending him the keyes thereof, as also them of the

holy Sepulcher. The Emperours of Canstantinople alfo did fo effeeme, loue, and honor him, that oftentimes they fent him rich giftes by their Ambassadours, dreading nothing more, then to have any contending in warre against him. In like manner, Alphonfus King of Gallicia, and of the Asturues, would call himselfe no other, but with this qualification towardes Great Charles, His humble and faithfull Subject, wholly to him; Propries fues in Latine, as

Eginhard hath recorded.

But what can be thought more admirable, or tearmed to bee a matter more rare, then in a Prince that was so stout a warriour, all other civill vertues and most humane, should have an equal meeting together? Singular clemency did euermore accompany his victorious arme. The same Eginhard reporteth, that hee could not be enforced to choller, by any occasion whatsbeuer. Nay he would nener yeeld, that one of them which had attempted against his life and State, should be put to death, but onely was contented with their fafe keeping. In his victory against the Lombards, hee did not onely pardon Paulus Warnefridus, Deacon of Aquileia: but also kept him neere about his person, greatly honouring and gratifying him, for the effective of his crudition and knowledge.

This Lombard was vnworthy of fo great grace, in conspiring afterward with other Rebels, and vling treason against his King and Benefactor. VVho neuertheles, after he had discouered the conspiracy, & Good nature in a Prince furmounted all that the resolute could do, may be too againe he pardoned this Paulus Warnifri- much abuted dus, being no way willing, that he should by Traitor. be punnished for his perfidie and rebellion. Onely he commanded his retirement, and banished him (tor a while) to a cerraine place. Afterward hee brake the bounds of his banishment, and fledde to Ragaifius, Duke of Beneuento, to excite him alfo to reuolt. An occasion, whereby the king was councelled, greenously to punnish both the one and other for this double treason. Yet the good Prince would lend no eare thereto, but faued & pardoned both their lines; onely he charged Paulus Warnefridus, to write the Hiftory of the Lombards, the continuation a wronged of Europe, and some other works.

This was not only a light punishment, but honourable also to him that had the charge thereof: wherein, beside a most fingular example of clemency, appeared an admirable affection vnto learning, for that onely respect, to love and honor the man, who had so often faine into treason. Such was the love & great account which he made of learning; and himfelfe, albeit living in an age vngracious enough,& full of barbarifme, yet did hee speake Latine elegantly, and his mother tongue fo readily euen with naturall eloquence and admirable perswasion: hee vnderstoode Greeke alfo, but spake it hardly. Beside, he was well feene in all the Sciences, hauing Alcumus to bee his Schoole-mafter. All dinner while, heccanfed one to difcourfe or reade ancient Histories: wherein he tooke no meane pleasure, but moulded thereafter the forme of his owne

No leffe was he to bee commended for his justice, carefull for rendring it to His lustice & his subjects with all sincerity; himselfe taking knowledge of fuch causes as concerned any difficulty, vndertaking the defence and protection of VViddowes, Orphanes, and other miferable people, to warrant them against all oppressions of the mighty. Having also established many good Lawes and Ordinances, for the rooting vp of vices, and furtherance of iu-

of the West towards Germany, and vali-

antly imbarred the courses of the Nor-

therly people, from their manifold inuali-

ons. And neuer could any defect or

vice be noted in him : but that he was too

good, too humane and debonnaire. His

piety, zeale, and deuotion towards God

and his Church was fuch, as neuer in any

man was observed greater. Forty dayes

before his decease, hee tooke no other

foode, but the bleffed Communion one-

ly, which he received with wonderful hu-

mility, and extraordinary contrition:

continuing alwayes in prayer, or caufing

to be fung in his prefence and hearing the

cheefe whereof was Hugh Capet, villued

from the house of Saxony; who happily

reigned, and wifely gouerned his King-

dome, with much piety and suffice . His

Sonne Robert, with like piety and inte-

grity of life, loued Learning, and was fo

earnestly addicted thereto, that hee him-

felfe composed fundry Books; and among

the rest, he wrote many goodly & pious

Hymns, which were received, and are yet

(at this present) sung in the Church. Of

him it is thus credibly reported, beeing

(at a certain time) mockt by an ignorant

Duke, because hee fung in the Church a-

mong Ecclesiasticall persons, hee made

him this answer : That he better affected to

fee a King learned, then an Affe Crowned,

making his allusion vnto the Duke, who

warehis Dukall Crowne on that folemn

Come we now to the third race, the

Ecclefiafticall offices.

fice. In regard of his piety and fingulare | the yeare VCCC, when that acclamatidenotion, hee made sufficient apparance thereof, as remaineth witneffed to this day in strange Countreys, by his wealthy foundation of Churches and Monasteries. He was ordinarily present at solemn prayers in the Church, and at all Canonicall houres, even in the night time. Great care had hee, that divine service should be honourably celebrated, & the Churches well ferued, despending great fummes of money, to have them fitted the fu and furnished with all convenient rich naire. Omaments, and matters to them belon-

130

Hee caused

fine Councel to be called &

helde for the

good of the Church.

Moreouer, he was fomewhat prouident and curious, that the church should be beautified and shining, by the probity, integritie, and fanctitie, expressed in the lines of the Ministers, and Ecclesiasticall persons to them appertayning. Being alwayes heerein fo carefull, and for effablishment of the better order, that hee caused fine Councelles to bee called and holden, and collecting the Decrees of them, made the to be published & obserued: holding nothing in more great rehonoured, and flourishing in all holines. manner. He was liberall vnto all men, especiallie to the poore, as well of his owne Kingdome, whom hee mercifully relected: as alfo in straunge countreyes, whereto hee fent rich Almes; alwayes coucting frendfwage the persecutions of poore Christi-

But about all the rest, one thing seemeth very strange, that Ambition could Charlemaign neuer gette footing in the foule of this Prince, although it had beene, and it, a frequent and ordinary disease, in the very greatest courages, and most generous spirits. For, although hee was crowned Emperor of the East at Rome, by Pope Lee the third, uppon the cries and acclamations of the Roman people; who both defired and elected him : yet let mee tell ye, it was to farre from any fearch or proacciding thereto in him, as hee knew nothing thereof, neither ever gave his confent thereto. For Eginbard affureth, hauing heard himfelfe to confirme it, that if hee had knowne the purpose of the Pope and people; he would not have gone into the Church on Christmasse day, in

on, election, and corronation was performed. It was a thing to much against his minde, and whereof hee made fuch flender reckoning. Hee dyed at the age of threefcore and eleuen yeares, having reigned seuen and forty yeares. And, at his height of humane felicity, hee left his Charlening Sonne Lewes his fuccessor, and heyre to his vertues, who for his exceeding great mildenesse and meekenesse, deserved the fur-name of Pious, or the Debon-

In his yong yeares, his Father made him King of Aquitaine, where he carryed himselfein such fort, gouerning so wiely and with fuch discretion, that fuch pru- Father Chardence and vertue was highly admyred.e- lemaigne. specially in those tender yeeres. Himselfe rendred inflice to his subjectes, attending thereon three dayes in enery weeke. Hee vsed great judgement for well choosing men of worth and merite, to vndergoe places of important charge, as Officers and Magistrates. Hee eased the people fo much as possibly hee could, in taking away harde Tributes and Sublidges, and commendation, then to see the Church | moderating others, euen in the mildest

And yet notwithstanding, hee was a good Warrior, not onely in defending & lake keeping his owne Frontiers: but also warriour, conproceeding very farre into Spain, tomake quering the warre vpon the inuading Sarazins, whom Spaine. shippe with the Easterne Kinges, to af- he foyled in many battels, encounters, & beliedgings of Citties conquered by him. hauing maintained and enlarged the lads of his Father Charlemaigne, which he had wonne in Spaine. So that by his Vertues. wife carriage and deportment, hee gave a wonderfull contentment to his Father. Hee succeeded him in the kingdome of Frace, and in the Empire of the East. He continued warre against the Sarrazins in Spaine, & weakned them in fuch fort, that he gaue good means to the Spanish chriftians, to defend themselves against them and to extend their territories farther off. Marineus Siculus, who wrote the historic of Spain, declareth the expeditions of this | Mannews in | (m. junit). 9. Marineus Sicu French Emperour, reporting moreouer, that he imposed a tribute on the people. which were conquered and subjected by him in Spaine : where he was cald in the dayes of this Author Romanfanos.

He conscrued in greatnes the Empire

The 3. race of kings in Frace the first being Hugh Caper,

His zeale and

Chap.3.

His loue and

Aworthy an-

Hee was very pittifull, and a great Almoner on the poores behalfe; fo that when hee tooke his owne repast, great charity to the troopes of poore people were admitted poore, and eto be about him, whom hee would fuffer freely to come neere him, and gaue vnto them that foode which was fet there before him, & many other things that they Rood in neede of. Nor was hee a jotte lesse liberall to Churches, in causing many to be builded, founded, and endowing them bountifully, as also re-establishing and enriching others. There was no want in him likewife of all other royall vertues, maintaining and conferuing his estate very wel, and making the people happy, that were under his obedience.

I am feigne to passe ouer others, to come to King Lewes the fixt, firnamed Le

Gros, a true imitator of his Auncestours, KL-westhe vertues. He imployed all his life time, to the Grosse or containe his people in peace and quyetnesse, and / according to the dutie of a good King) to thield them from opposed fion of the greatest & most potent Earles and Barons of France, who flood then vepon very peremptory tearmes. Which made him to attempt divers wars agayn (t them youn that occasion, and oftentimes expose his life to dangers, preferring the well-fare of his people, before all other confiderations whatfocuer, and fo he wel witneffed from time to time.

After he had chaftifed and raunged all fuch as had revolted, flying from him vp- The Emperor pon the like occasions, and was become feared, respected, and obeyed of all the great army a-Rebels, as also beloued of all his subjects. the Emperor Henry the fift, being departed from Germany with a mighty & dreadfull Army to ouer run him and his country, he went to meet him nere to Rhemes. having but a handfull of men with him. But he fo affrighted the Emperor Henrie, and all the potent Army with him, that fearing the valour and invincible arme of the French, whose courage will give way to nothing whatfocuer : he thought it farre better for him to quit the place,& get him gone, then to hazard his estate againft fo valiant a King, though hee yeas attended but with so small a troope. And fo this Emperor made his retreate, at the very novic of the Kings comming, whose name (indeed) was very dreadfull.

This Prince also excelled in Piety and Vertues pro-Religion, vertues proper to the Kinges of France: being the true props, supports, France. and Bulwarkes to the Church. For we reade, that in his time, Pope Paschall the fecond came into France for refuge, and to confult with the Gallicane church, concerning those differences which he hadde with the Emperor. And afterwardes, the Popes Calixius the second, Honorius the fecond, and Innocentias the fecond being tormented and expulsed by the Emperors of Germany, and brought to great mifery, yet fuccoured in that kingdome, their ordinary retreat and refuge. Hee entertained them honourably, affifting them with riches, respecting them worthily & royally. In the end, having succoured them to his vemost power, he tooke pains to pacify those discords and contentions.

Le Groffe, & retired thence without Ori king a blow.

Suggerus in vit Ludous Grofsi.

Eginbard in Antiq1. 5 4.10

could neuer

be tempted by a thought of Ambition.

Chap.3.

The King of

marcheth his

armie againfl

the encuny.

Sugger. Abbat Mort Ludeni Grofe.

Lewes the a.

fucceedeth.

Leweslegro

his Fasher

172

Something more I may adde concerning his death, as it is fer downe by Suggerus, Abbot of Saint Denis, his principall friend, and an eve-witnesse thereof. Feeling the end of his life approching, & the holy Eucharist being brought to him. he arose out of his bed to meete it, falling downe on his knees, and receiving it with great denotion. Having before taken order for al his affaires, and made both profession of his faith, and confession of his finnes, in the hearing of all there present. Afterward, being taken foorth of his bed again, & laid vpon aftes dispersed abroad he gaue vp the ghost.

His Sonne Lewes the feuenth, called. The Touthfull, was a true refembler of his Father, having joyned piery and valiancy together. By the counfell of S. Bernard he made a voyage into Palestine to helpe it with a puiffant Army, against the inuasion of the Turkes. And having obtained many great victories against the enemies of the Christian Faith, he returned home to his Kingdome, preffed by the discommodities of Famine, where-with his Armie was very fore afflicted, thorough the disloyalty of the Emperor of Constantine-

VVho can fufficiently admire the valor Philip Auguand good guidance of Phillip Augustus, who (by good right) also carried the surthe Con icname of Conqueror? At the age of foureror, came to the Crown at teene yeares, he tooke into his hand the 14.yearc .. f reines of the State, and in that tender age performed all exploites and actions, not onely of valiancy, but also of a great and perfect Captaine; watching & spending whole nights, to execute and accomplish his enterprizes. By which meanes, hee out-flept his enemies, tooke Towns and ftrong places, where himfelfe would bee scene in person at the scalado, yea, and at the affault at the breake of day, instead of addicting himfelfe to pleafures, whereto his youth might rather have induced him He fo vanquished his enemics, and chasti-

> bin another Alexander. Afterwards, the English being prouoked against him, gaue the better and more worthy subject to his victories: for he conquered and tooke from them all that they held in France, weakning them in divers battailes, and famous encounters. Also this Conqueror, incited by the fame pie-

fed rebels in fo tender yeares, as if hee had

ty of his Ancestors, made a voyage to the Holy Land; where he fought divers times against the Turkes and Sarazins, and carryed many triumphes from them. Beeing returned home to France, he wonne that great day of Bouines, neere vnto Tournay, which I will touch a little more largely in The gran this place, it being scarfely known, though day of Bouing (indeed) it was most signale and famous. nereto Tour-For this king fought in that battel, against | nay. the forces of the Emperour Otho the fift. the King of England, the Earles of Flanders, Henault, and Bologne, all conjured a. gainst his estate.

Those Earles being revolted and leagued with the King of England, had likewife caused the emperor Othe the fifte, to the businesse come into Fraunce, with a very great and between the puissant army of Germanes and Saxons. Emperor and VVith them were joyned the Forces of confederate Flanders, Henault, and other French subiects and vaffals, affociated with the Earl of Bologne. The King went on before with his Army, and met the enemy fomewhat neere to Tournay, where he had Lodged him aloft in a place for his best aduatage: which the King hauing well perceived, & that he was frustrate of all meanes for coming at them on that fide, resolued to fetch a further course about, and to assaile them on the other fide.

Being withdrawne to effect this intent, the Emperor Otho taking it for a flight, did cause his army to march on with speed to ouertake the King, who was encamped in a village called Bouines. There he had intelligence how the enemy was come very neere, and the noyfe of theyr armes gaue apparance, that they would fall in hande presently with them, and charge the rereguard: all which notwithstanding before hee would doe any thing elfe, hee entred first into a Church, and there sayde his

Afterward, being armed, hee mounred on horse-backe, giving order for the The Kridch Armies readinesse, riding thorough the his armiein rankes, for the better disposition of his readings. people; yet nothing at all was done that day. On the morrow morning, having againe ranged his Army in battaile array, hee gaue his people a Kingly encouragement, by breefely acquainting them with these circumstances: That they were to fight with one, who was an enemy vinto

God and Men, come to lend a strong

The maner of

The Kinges horfe flaine under him, & e remounted y Sir Peter

ura his back

no other wages then facriledges, spoiles of the Churches goods, and the blood & flaine under him, and hee fore wounded. teares of the poore. Therfore they were his throate threatned to bee cut by a Vilto confider, that God had brought them thither, to punish their just defernings, & had chosen the French for the instrument of his justice. Hee further adulfed his foldiers, that they should not labor to buckler the bodyes one of another : but eueric man to do for himfelfe the best he could, without any eye or respect to his friend and companion.

Haning animated them with fuch or the like speeches, he caused his Army first to march on, affayling and tharply ferting on that of the enemy. The French Cheualiers, after they had broken their Lances, came to handy-blowes, fighting with all the heate and valour could be denifed: throwing themselues into the middest of the maine battell, piercing and passing peeces, and overthrowing all that durst meete them. Great was the reliftance, & wonderfull deeds of Armes perfourmed on either fide. The King was alwaies the most forward man, rushing into the greahimfelfe enuironed with a huge battalion of enemies, where hee sharpely layed about him on all fides, and cleared his paffage still as he rode on. But in the end, his horse being slaine between his legges fell downe vppon him; yet he was quickly remounted againe by a French knight, called Sir Peter de Tristan, who gaue him his owne horfe.

Now charged hee the enemy more fiercely then before, his strength & courage being redoubled at the indignation of his fall, nor ceafed he with his French Lords, who neerely followed him, vntill he came to the very midft, where the Emperor Otho was, he being then very linely affayled.

Heere did he meet with many French Knights, who being on foot, fome tooke hold on his bridle, others hung about the neck and maine of his horfe to flay him . which compelled him to turne his backe. But the Count Reignald de Belogne, hee would not budge a foote from the fielde ofbattell, but continued there & his followers valiantly fighting, eucn to all ex-

hand to Rebels, leading an army that had, tremities, willing (by no means) to yeeld himfelfe, till in the end, his horfe beeing laine, he yeelded himselfe to Lorde Guarin, a Knight of Saint Johns of Jerusalem, and elected by shop of Senlis, one of the principall Captains for the King, faying, The noble I had rather yeeld my felfe, and be indeed by worder of thad rather yeeld my jeise, and ve inaged of Couni Rig. the King and his Peeres, then to dye vinwor-nald of Bothily by the hand of a flane. So the fielde of battaile remained vnto

the King, as also the victorie full & whol-

ly, all the enemies being broken and feattered, a great part of them flaine, and very many taken prisoners, cuen of the chiefest men. The King would permit none to purfue the Emperor, who fledde with the Count of Brabant, and many Germans further off then two or three Leagues. Among the prisoners, was Ferrand Earle of Henaulte, Nephew to the Queen, Counthrough the thickest battalions, hewing in tesse of Flanders, and Daughter vnto the King of Portugall. Shee being a medier with Magicall Sciences, would needes confult with her Duiners, concerning The Counthe successe of this Battaile, and it was telle of Plantolde her, That the King Should be layde on ders decented by her Wie test throngs; and where the fight was fier- the ground, without any Sepulcher: And saids. ceft, to succour his people. Hee tound | that Ferrand Earle of Henaulte, her Cofine, Should enter Paris in Triumph. All vyhich was true, but farre off from her interpre-

It is also faithfully reported, that the King before the fight, in presence of all his Earles, Barons, and Lords (knowing full well that some were tottering and vncertaine, as beeing not thorowly affected to him) tooke the Crowne from off his head, and fet it vppon an Altar, flanding by him, faying in this manner. If there Motthoners bee any man heere amongst yee, that thinkes ble worder the King be more capeably and worthily of himselfe, then fore hee went this day to fight for libertie, beeing in fuch to the fight. danger, both to the Honour and Renowne of France: let him willingly leane and for fake this Crowne, and that man (what focuer bee

bee) let him boldly put this Crowne woon his bead. Whereat all of them standing amazed, and being mooued with admiration and enflamed affections, threw them felues before his feete, faying ; That they were all his humble feruants, and that they would every one of them dye with him that day, rather then be commanded by any other.

The English incited to armes, againf Philip Augu

Lewes the 8. offer to Phiiip Augufius-

Lewesthen fireamed S Lewes,areligrous king & a worthy Sol

The victory at Tailleboure on the River Charante in Poidu.

His famous gainft the Sarrazina.

ry, Monsieur Lewes de France, eldest Son to the King; wonne another against the English, in the Country of Aniou, at La Roche du Mayne, against the King, called Inhamithout Land. For this double victory, obtayned both in one day, the King rendred thanks to God: and defiring that fome marke might remayn for a Trophee thereof to all posterity, hee caused an Abbey to be builded neere to Senlis, which (in that respect) he named, The Abbey of Victory, and endo wed it with great reuen-

I can hardly flay at Lewes the eight, Son Some & Suc- to this King and Successor in his vertues, wherein he seconded him living, and partaked in many of his expeditions and enterprizes. But reigning to short a time after his Father; I must come to the King, called S. Lewes, whose piety, religion, and fanctity of life, bath fufficiently commended him to all men, & acknowledged him by quality, worthy the name of Saint. But that which is to bee reckoned as a matter most rare is that he excelled no lesse in all other vertues, both Military & Politique. He brought about many warres, wherein still he had a finger, and performed worthy exploits of Armes: beeing most valiant of his person, & a very wile Capraine. ... Hee toyled and droue in diforder a great Army, wherein was the King of England, and the Counts dela Marche, and de Lufignan, at Taillebourg, on the Riuer Charante in Politu. Where having gotten before, with very fewe people, to winne a Bridge, long time he endured all the Thratagems of the enemies Army, which was in number a hundred to one: yet hee performed fo much by his valiancy, that his Army had leyfure for theyr paffage whereby the enemies were defeated, a great number flaine, many taken prisoners, some say foure thousand, and the rest were dispersed and driven to

No where can be found more famous deeds of Armes, or any actions more generous, then his kingly expeditions against the Turkes and Sarrazines, where he wonne the bestin many foughten battailes, hazarding his owne perfon, and expoling himfelfe to all dangers, even in the checteft heate of fight, running where he faw the enemy strongest, and his owne

The selfe-same day of this great victo- | followers in any distresse. So that wherefocuer he went, hee made all to give him way, none beeing able to withfland him; but gaue place to the greatnesse of his courage, and strength of his powerfull arme. The Lord of Joinuille, an eye-witneffe thereof, speaking of one day among others, vied thefe very words.

And bee you very certaine, that that day the King perfourmed most high deedes of Lesieur de tomail in de Armes, more then ever I faw in all the Bat- 29. Chapter tailes whereat Thave beene present. And one of law Book. Saide after the Battaile, that if it had not bene for his person, wee had all beene veterly lost and flaine that day: And furely, I can no otherwise imagine, but at the very instant, his vertue and strength was doubled on himby the grace of God . For hee feared not a iote to thrust himselfe into the dangers and perils of the battaile: and where he faw his people in any distreffe, there he laide most about him to helpe them, delivering fo many blowes with his Sword and Battle-Axe, as none of the Turkes durft come neere him . The Lord of Courtnay and Messire Io'nn de Salony reported to mesthat they faw fixe Turks (the fame Kings Hoit, day) preparing sowards the King, and hadde forcibly laide hold on the bridle of his Horfe, from theath intending to leave him away . But the vertuous Prince, feeing the danger wherein hee was , strone with all his might , and (in meere height of courage) laide fuch loading strokes uppon the Turkes which ledde him, so that hee alone freed himselfe from

In another place the fame Lord relateth, that the king vnderstanding how the Earl of Anion his Brother was engirt & hemd in with enemies, yea, and in fuch extremity, as hee had no meanes to get out from them; he gallowped immediately to refcue him. And (faith he) without tarrying In the p. for any man, gauethe Spurs to his horfe, his Chapterof Sword in his hand, & rushed mainly into the Howite his battaile; charging the Turkes and Sarrazins referred in heavily contillhe came to the place where his Brother the Brother was. But at his arrivall, God knowes miou. what paines he tooke, and how many worthy deeds of Armes bee did: for it is most certaine, that where bee faw the greatest danger and prease, there hee bestowed himselfe without any feare. So that by his admirable proweffe he brought his Brother out of danger, and droue the Sarrazines to flight, chafing them quite out of their owne Hoaft or

Another

nihe 12.

was ready to affaile the enemy, & exhorted his followers to all forwardnesse: His Helmet (fayth he) was richly gilded, and in his hand he held a fivord of Germanic, readily drawne. But let me tell yee, that I never Taw a more goodly man then he was, for hee appeared about all the rest, by the beight of his head and (boulder : and it is a thing hard. ly to be credited, how chearefully all the Soldiours were encouraged to the battaile, when they but looked on the King in that manner. So that many Knightes, without attending for the King, mingled themselves amongest the Turkes, and there affayled them couragiously. The King wwould alwayes be the for-most , and when he came neere to the Turkes, the battaile beganne lo fiercely, as it was a matter maruellous to behold. And that verie day, there were far more woorthy actions of Armes performed, as well on the one fide; as the other, as never had beene observed in all the voyages beyond the Seas . For no man drew a Dart, an Arrow, nor other Artillery: but all of them fought manfully, hand to hand, allpel-mell, one with another, onely by stroakes of Swords and Battle Axes. Further hee addeth : That the King did more then meruayles in fighting, and would alwayes bee in the werie strongest of the Bat-

After the rout and flight of the Turks,

at his descent and taking of Damieta, and

after the three great battailes in Egypt, betweene the Channels of Nilus, where

he obtained full victory; if famine, and a

certaine strange disease (extraordinarily

contagious) had not falne amongst his

people: it had bene Doomeiday vnto the

Turkes and Sarrazins, and doubtles, they

had benequite exterminated, both out of

Egypt, and the Holy Land. The Intidels

fo admired the vertue of this Prince, that

although he was contrary to them in Re-

ligion, and their very feuere perfecutor.

yet after the death of their Soldan, it was

offered to him, and they would have ele-

Addhim to be their Lord. And they had

red to alter this deliberation, by alledging

him to be the firmeft, fierceft, and moft

determinate Christian that euer they did

know. And they faid among themselves a

Thaif their Mahamet had fuffered them to

feele fo many mischiefes as his God hadde let

A very manly

great battails ought in E-

The King of France elect-The King of France electric done it, as beeing a matter already refole done be sold used on among them: but that fome labo-

Another day, speaking how the King | him (being a Ring) to taste: they would never more have adored or beleeved un him. And yet (neuertheleffe) fome amongst them. onely by the example, and good Life of this holye King, received the Christian

Moreover, he ordained to well for the flate and policy of his Kingdome: that his full for his Subjects (beeing before mightily oppref + kingdome, as fed) lived in perfect peace and quiernes. well in his He vied great wifedome und prouidence presence. in all his affayres, having thoreby quenched and qualified many troubles and commotions in his kingdome; and by taking away the causes thereof, constrained the Dake of Bretaigne to acknowledge him. and render fuch fatisfaction as himlelfe defired. With very much judgement alfo he pacified the differences with the Englith, and induced the king of England to fuch friendlineffe, as he becam his Liegeman by faith, and one of the Barons of France: fo that hee left not any war to his fucceffors, which caused them to enjoy so long a peace.

Aboue all other things, he loued In- Nomeand ADoug all other things, he loued luflore especially, and was verie carefull
thereof in himselfe; correcting (by his
owne example, and holye Ordinances)
such Vices and Abuses as reigned among
aprecious exin Chical Linear Control of the Control
to Chical Control his Subjects. Hee was fuch a Louer of his people. trueth, that (as the Lord of Jonuille faith) He was never knowne to fallify bu Word. In chapter 19 of his Booke, For, it was reported vnto him, That the Sarrazines, in receyuing his Ranfome. were discontented with tenne thousand pounds, he caused more to bee given to

. Neuer could any feare or mif-fortune disfurnish him of reason; but ever-more he was thankfull to God in all his adversities. When he faw his army in danger, by no meanes in the world, or for fafetie of his owne person, would hee part from it; but would alwayes abide by his people. and endure (with them) the latest hazards and enents of fortune. Neuer should hee make an end, y would recount the deeds (well deferuing immortality) of this good King. It shall suffice then to say, as the

fame Lord of Jonuille reports of his time. The common people called him true Father; Inchapter 16 the Wobility, just Prince, and preferner of ot his Booke. the Lawes , France, ber King of Truth, and the Church ber Tutor and defender from op-

N 2

the Pucelled

gu in Philippo lertio.

K Philip en-

tred Spaine,

and killed the

Kof Arragon

In the same Schoole was bred and norished Philip the third to whom the good ly examples, and profitable instructions ceafed in AS of this good King his Father, ferued as frice at the the an absolute pattern and excellent infiltution, which he vnderstoode so well, and made profit of in fuch fort, as, although he got not fo great a name, yet notwithflanding, he was the most worthy hevre ofhis Fathers vertues. And albeit S. Zewes dyed at the fiedge of Thunk in Affrica, making warre the fecond time against the Infidels; yet this young Prince gaue fo good affurance to the Armie, much danted by the death of the King; that hee bare away many famous victories from his enemies, although they exceeded his ftrength in huge multitudes: In the end, he constraind the king of Thuris, to come humbly, and entreate for peace: rendering himfelfe, and his Vnckle Charles king of Sicily tributaries to him.

Afterwards, returning home towards France he passed thorow staly, where he was entertained with fuch fauour and applaufes by all the inhabitants, as the most barr came and entreated him, that hee would take the command oner them, defiring (aboue all things elfe) to be gouerned by fo good a King, fo louing and re-fpective of his people. Beeing returned into his owne kingdome, he maintayned it in peace a long time; vntill being mollefted by the King of Arragon, and the Count de Foix, hee underrooke Armes. Hecreupon he entred into Spaine, where hauing made war very happily, by affault he tooke many places reputed impregnawith an army, ble, conquered a great part of the kingdome of Arragon, ouerthrew the Arragemians in divers encounters, and flew their King, fo returning home-ward with Triumphall victory he died at Parpignan!

> But one thing may not becomitted. that this king most oftentimes did weare fackcloath, and a thirt of haire, living fo holily, and viing fuch abilinence, that the Authors of those times were enforced to confesse, that he rather refembled a good Religious man, then a King, Yer was rec a great Prince, & knew well enough how to vouerne his kingdome.

Charles the Charles the fift, descruoth allo to be fee in this ranke of choyle men, being furnamed of his time che Wife. Onely by his

ring from his Chamber, he reconquered whatfocuet his Predeceffors liad loft, by the Armies of the English. His provident and well tempered wiledom, did dipers times rebate the keene edged fword of valiant Edward the Prince of Wales and disappointed many of his forwarde purpofes; lo that, notwithstanding his high spirit, and well ordered Armies: he gained very little from him, nor yet the King of England his Father, but what they wonne one day, they loft againe in another

Heere also I cannot omit Charles the feuenth, who comming to the Crowne, his kingdome (for the most part) was in Charles the much molethe power of the English: but yet recove- Red by the red it myraculously, as not onely hee're-gained what he had loft, but alfo(as fome fay) all that the Englishmen did hold in France, wishing them to rest contented with their owne Island. And heere methinkes it is very ftrange, what all Historians have reported of those times, that this king, being toyled & wearied by the long warres of the English, to him much vnprofitable, and leffe pleafing: fhould yet be excited by a poore Maide, dwelling in a village of Lorraine, named loane d' Arc. For the being brought before him, & being of great resolution, made him manie France. faire remonstrances, whereby to entice and kindle his courage, for the recoverie of his kingdome, and expulsion of his enimies, which furely could not beebur by miracle. And it cannot be denied but that there was a Genius in this Maide, far furpassing the natural and ordinary condition of her fexe. And so much the more strange, because the served as a Captaine, conducted the Armies, and fought verie valiantly, when as occasion ferued.

Non hac fine numine diutin tueniunt.

Confider we also Charles the eight, his yongest fon, who having past into staty, to charles the reconquer that which the Arragonians v- for to Chull furped from his predeceffours, filled all the 7. the Citties and Townes of Italy (at his arritiall, with no meand terror of his armes. none being found thet durft make heade againfilim. Every Citty Submitted to him, and fet open their gares, in meer af-fection and respect, both to the vertile of councell and good aduice, without fur? the French and dread of their name . "O'

with them. So that in leffe then five moneths, he made himfelfe Mafter of all Italy, Geneway, Florence, Pifa, Sienna and Li-The country burma being all in his power. He recon-Croatia, be weene Iftria, quered the whole kingdom of Naples, and and Dalmati. expelled them of Arragon, who had vn-

iustly vsurped there.

voiage agains fecond.

Chap.3.

The Great Turke Baiazeth the fecondfeared nothing more then tomeddle with him.& questionles, he would have gon to affault him in Constantinople, wherein hee had flut vp himfelfe in meere feare, if vrgent occasions had not called him backe to France, making ful account to recurne thither againe afterward, to attempt that great and honourable expedition against the Turkes, whereunto hee was induced and called on all fides, & for divers good confiderations. At his comming backfor France, two maine impediments presented themselves to him, as well in regarde of difficult waies and mountaines, where (of necessity) hee was to passe his Artille-

ry: as for daunger of enemies in fuch pla-

ces, where they might worke vpon aduantage many wayes; his army beeing alfo much afflicted with famine.

Beside all this, a league was made against The Venetihim, by the Venetians, the Duke of Milon, the Duke of Millaine, & laine, and other Potentates, who had leuiother Princes ed an army of 40000 men, to cut him off leagued aquite: but yet hee furmounted all thefe Charles, and difficulties, and paffed through the daunyer were toy gers without any loffe. The Armie of 40000 men was encamped on the Plaine

of Fornoue, where it was most requisit for the King to paffe, they purpofing to lock him vppc in this paffage, to the end, that they might confume his army, with Famine necessity, and miserie, amongst the Mountaines where he was. The king with 7000 able fighting men onely, affronted this great army, gaue them battell, paffed ouer the bellies of all them that hindered his way; and there was flaine about foure thousand of them, the rest beeing driven to rout, or feized with feare, he full aining but very little loffe, about thirtie French flaine, and fome threefcore Varlets. So

not onely he referred his army, which hee

led in fafety with all his traine, baggage,

Artillery, and carriages, but also fought

his enemies, which was a much more ho-

A very (mall Kings fide a-Familt forgreat an Army.

thers for feare, not beeing able to contest | thousand, so highly renowned by the Greekes.

An example of rare vertue is recorded of him. At the surprizal of a certaine Abriefe kiplace in Italy, a young Maid (of most ex-tring admiraquifite beauty) flying from his Soldiours, the vertue in this King. who woulde have violated her honour: came and threw her felfe at his feete, defiring him earneftly, to defend her from the force and outrage of his fouldiers. As indeed he did; but yet himselfe fel into an amorous affection toward her, & having her private in his Chamber, with full intent to accomplish his pleasure, the Maid all drowned in tears, humbly defired him on our knees, supplicating and adjuring him in the name of the bleffed Virgin, the vntoucht mother of the worlds Saujour, whose picture the saw hanging by his bed that hee would take pitty on her, and not compell her to that, for fafety wherof the had escaped from his ranishing Soldiers, and purher felfe wholly into his handes . The King became mooued in fuch fort, that being transported with lone and pas- and honor is fion, and in the braue gallantry of his unly innated, youth, he made a Kingly conquest of him fester was the fester power to fester, and bedewing his cheeks with tears, prenale. as beeing much afhamed at his immodeft offer, he would not touch her in any vnciuill or vnchaste fashion, but gaue her most honourable freedome, with a verice liberall Dowrie to her marriage, fetting

prifoners. Surely, this was an acle verie ffrange and almost invraculous, if wee consider him to bee a King, in the very vigour & flower of his youth, victorious : yet neerely touched with the love of a Mayden, excelling, and no way inferiour vnto any in Beautie, and having her whollie in his primate power. His great wifedome, fingular judgement, and infinite goodnesse heerein appeared; and beeing a familiar Prince, hee would oftentimes fay to his Fauourites ; That hee had made choyle of them, and loved them more then a- King Charles ny other, because he was persimaded of theyr has speeches to his fauorits ly be full feared one fault in them, that they would fuffer him to bee taxed with Anarice, fucceffelully, and hadde the victory ouer in beeing eafily follicited and tempted for acceffe in regard of the credite they hadde nourable Retreate, then that of tenne with him; and his owne facility, in granting

alfo at liberty both her Parents and Kin-

dred, that were then (at that inflant) his

Where verme

furnamed t Wile.

fuch matter came to his knowledge, they

veterly lost his fauour for euer: for he of-

The great bat-

taile at Raué-

thall have oc-

fpeake more

heereafter.

Frances the

f. II. fuccello

to Lewes the

Of this battel

fpeake heere

cation to

tenentreated them, to continue in the true profession of honour, the onely meanes to keep and preferue his good opinion of them. The fame King also vsed to fay, I could wish, that my Court were a Mirror for all my

A worthy and other Subjectes, to maintaine and continue Royall mind them in doing well. The fweete finelling in a King. fauour of this renown, attracted the fouls of ftrangers ynto his love and liking. So

that by very just reason, the sur-name might bee accommodated to this good Prince, of The louer and delight of Men: as it was attributed vnto the Emperor Ti-

Sucreeded Charle in the kingdome of France.

His fuccessor Lewes the twell, made himfelfe likewife as famous, by his Con-Lewes the 12 quests of Italy . In the beginning of his reigne, he attempted warre against Lodouico Sforza, who viurped the Dukedome of Millaine, which belonged to him. In lesse space then a Moneth, he conquered all Lombardie, and expulsed Sforza, who making a re-entry afterward, and caufing the people to renolt; the King went thither in person where, after hee had vanquished Sforza (whom hee fent prisoner into France) he reconquered Millain, and receyued the most part of the Potentates Citties, and Common-weales of Italy. which ran (on heapes) to yeelde their obeyfance to him.

theleffe) would poffesse themselues of all:

he submitted himselfe into the handes of

the King, who yfed him royally, and gra-

tified him with the Dukedome of Anion,

beside thirty thousand Crownes of rent.

Heere (me thinkes) I should not endure

the malignity of Paulus Iouins, who hath

fet downe, that the King gaue nothing to

Fredericke, and that he dyed miferably in

France. Afterward, war was alwaies con-

tinued at Naples against the Spaniardes,

where were performed many goodly ex-

ploits, famous combates of enemy to eni-

my, charges, skirmiflies, encounters, af-

The fucceffe kingdome of Naples.

Paulus Ioniu taxed with vntrucch.

what they asked. But if afterwards, any, faults, and fallies: and where the French had many victories, & the iffue of all had fucceeded happily, if the enemie had not diuers times abused the King, under colour of treaties of peace, appointments, Spaniardes and arrefts. He beleeuing their plighted Naples. faith and flender affurances, was formtime the more flacke in fuccouring his people; so that their perfidious dealing, rayled a Million of enemies, leagued and conjured against this King, who found himselfe affayled on al fides. And yet notwithfranding, he went away with honour, having astonished and filled with terror, all them that were thus bandyed against him.

He made war vpon the Venetians, in The warrele regard of that which they had detained & made against the Venetians vfurped, during those wars. He entred into their countries, and with a small troop, & in a place of no advantage, in the Guiaradada neere to Agnadell, he gaue battel to Bartholmew d'Aluiana, Generall for the Venetians, and wonne the victory: there being flaine aboue eight thousand of the enemy,many taken prifoners. & the very cheefest Commander himselfe.

Concerning that dayes feruice, two memorable favings of his are recorded. Two memo-The one was at his arrivall there, when it rable fayings hadbin told him, that the enemy had taken vp Agnadell, and he came too late to battell. haue any lodging there, hee returned this reply, I will lodge upon their belly, or they shall lodge on mine . The other, was at his being fo neere the enemies Artillery, as it might very easily play vpon the place; From thence he' fent an Armie to the kingdome of Naples, which had revolted he was aduited to walke wanderingly, for feare he should thereby be offended, hee after the departure of King Charles the 8. Then Fredericke, King of Arragon, seeing made answer; Neuer was King of Fraunce Smitten by a Cannon's bullet : And he that is he could not refift him, and being offenafraid (quoth hee) let him come and stand ded at the perfidie of the Spaniards, who he had called to his ayde, and who (neuerbehinde me.

Vpon the fuccesse of this victory, those places in Lombardie, which appertained Places in to the Venerians, were feized and made Lombardie, vse of by this King: but afterwardes, they belonging were manfully recourred by the Confe- lerzed by il derates, with whom Ferdinand, King of King. Castile, was a partaker, quite contrary to the contractes (not long before) paffed by him vnto the French King, But the Lordes of Trimouille, of Chaumont, Trivulce, and other woorthy French Captaines, referred them backe againe fo powerfully, that they continued alwayes Warriors. In the end, was given the bat-

War continu

peror Charls

An admirable disposition in a king.

taile of Rauenna, where the French van- jeuer) line commended to posterity, for King Frances quished a puissant Army of Italians and Spaniards joyned together. And an entire victory had enfined on the taking of Rauenna; but that they loft their cheefe Capna, wherof we taine Gaston de Foix, Duke of Nemours,& Nephew to the king, who was flaine by purfuing (ouer-earnestly) the enemies. broken and flying in confusion.

The excellency of this good king confifted not onely in greatnesse of courage and valiancy; but likewife in all other vertues. Aboue all, he was most highly commendable, for loue to his people, to who (notwithstanding all his other serious affaires) he was a Royall eafe and comfort: fo that this famous name was defertfully giuen him: Father of his people, and a good

He had as his Successor, Great Frances the first, a Prince as valiant as ever the other had bin, and who in his very youth, and at the beginning of his raigne, onercame the vnconquerable Nation of the Switzers, on the hot and dreadfull day at

Marignano, an enterprize, which had neuer before, or at any time fince, succeeded to any other King. A most remarkaable thing in this battaile, was, that fo young a Prince continued feuen & twenty houres in Armes, without receiving any fustenance, and spent one whole night in the fielde of battaile, without lying downe or a nod of fleepe.

This was the man that made head a-He contended gainst the great Emperour Charles the s. with the bar | who neuer met with a keener enemy, nor that more disappointed his designes, or eucry way more hindred him. And yet notwithstanding, it is hardly to be credited, with what honor, magnificence publikely, and courtefie in particular, hee entertained in his kingdome this Emperor, his principall aductfary. And although he with-held some of his estate vniustly, yet would be not demaund any reason for it, when he might well have done it, hauing him in his owne power: but kept inmolably the faith he had given him; and moreouer, gaue him all the contentment

> To speake no more then truth, hee was naturally generous & Royall, which enidently declared, that hee had no other ambition, then to excell all other men in vertue and well doing. He shall (for e-

he could defire.

the love which he bare to Learning, and an entire to to learned men : whom hee fought for e- uer of learuery where, entertained, honoured, and ning gratified in all kindes. By which means. he filled France with learning and erudition in all Sciences: but especially the Vniverfity of Paris, which never was fo flourithing, as in his reigne. So that (by good right) he was fir-named, The Father of Learning.

Wee may confesse as much of his Sonne Henry the second, a Prince truely Henry the second Sonne generous and valiant : who continued Successor to warre against the Emperor Charles the 5. King Frances. having fustained all his efforts, and stood continually opposite to his greatest enterprizes. But not long after, Charles the fift walrew himfelte into a Monastery, fearing (as fome supposed) the vertue and fortune of this young Prince, leaving the reignes of his Germane Empire, to Fer- Charles s.em dinand of Austria, being his brother, and peror entreth the kingdome of Spaine to Philip the fe- flery. cond: who foone after made warre vpon the Pope, Paulethe fourth, and then this

ded him, & reconquered the places which

the King of Spaine had taken from him.

And in the end, by his entremife, the Pope

and the King of Spaine were accorded &

reconciled.

King fent succour to his Holinesse, defen-

Occasion now carrieth me, to speake of Great Henry the fourth, miracle of the King Henry world : who gaue place (in nothing) to the to the the vertue of his Predecessours, nor to the king now glory of all the greatest Princes and Mo- reigning. narches that ever were, if he did not furpaffe them. But my Pen is too feeble, to take to high a flight, it is a subject ouerworthy, which ought to bee referred for the choylest spirits of this age, or of poste. rity, if any man conceine themselves capable to vidertake it. For there hath bin fome, the very best and skilfullest writers. who being thereto zealoufly affected began to attempt the labour: but were conftrained to give over and leave it, beeing ouercome with the immense greatnesse of fo many high and admirable actions, acknowledging and confessing, that they could not fet downe any thing, to equall

or come neere fo famous merit. What hand can worthily describe so many wonne battailes, fo many Citties and Townes taken (without lofting any

He was reputed to be one of the worthieft Soldiors in all the world

He faucd

France from

an expected

and hoped fo

Two ancient

worthy fay-

Plato in lib. 2.

De Legib.

raine.

counters? Who can figure him, Thining in h.s glittering Armes, in the fiercest and hottest brunts of fo many sharpe onfets, combates, ranged battailes, affaults, fiedges, and furprizals, making himfelfe way wherefocuer he went? A true Commander and Captaine, for councell and conduct: a most valiant Souldiour, to give example for effect and execution. Finding all France troubled, the people mooued and divided in parts, by the devices and factions of strangers, all Europe (to speake truely) bandied & conjured against him, in very deplorable affayres; he yet gotte the vpper hand of all diffipated all storms and tempests, saued and preserved France fro that ruine, which every one supposed certaine. All the enterprizes of the enemies, ferued but as matter for his Trophees. Looke how many enemies, fee fo many Triumphs, and as many Laurels in his Helmet, to make his vertue the more illustrious, and fill the foules of his owne people and strangers, with terror, amazement and admiration fuch as cannot bee fufficiently spoken off.

He guided all his intentions with fuch wisedome, and executed them with so high a courage, that they could have no other yffue but happineffe: and it plainly appeared, that his vertue led Fortune by the hand i making truely knowne the ancient faying; That the wife man disposeth of Fortune, and on the contrary; It is to flender purpose, to impute that to accident, which produes to be a mans owne error. Nouer did any Prince finde an estate so confused and hurried; and neuer could any reduce it to more peaceable calnines, the he did meerely by his vertue, he not only danted his enemies, but (of chemies) they became his principall friends: A foueraign degree of the fole perfect it of a great Statefman, according to Plate. His valiancy, height of courage, and addresse to actions of Armes were fuch, as admited no comparison therewith: matchlesse clemency euen towards inch as were his most determinate enemies. No acte of cruelty, neyther of renenge, in the very fiercest fury of warre : neuer was his fword feene vnfheathed, but in the hot extremity of fights. His fingular prudence, appeared not one-

ly in the managing of war, and when lice

was therein very ferioufly employed; but

one) so many fights and diversity of en- | also in affayres of peace, whe he gave him felfe wholly for the good and quiet of his people, shewing at all times, and in al places, that he was an admirable, good and wife king exquifitely enabled with all perfections. Qualities in such fort incompatible by nature, as fince the beginning of the world, they could hardly meet in any one man: in regard whereof, it hath bene fometime faid & defired that two should be taken to make one of.

> In breefe, all things were fo great and gracefull in him, as fearfely could any one spirit comprehend them: so that (to speak truely) the best that men could do, was to fit downe, and admire them with filence. This was the man, whom not only France Henry the acknowledged, & adored as her Conferuator: but likewise on whom the whole man of men. world cast an eye, as the true Arbitrator. Author, and Moderator of her quietnes. His right to the crown yeelded him to be the cheefest king: but his owne vertues made him confessed to be the most worthy among all other Princes.

In that then which is faid to be the dignity of the French kings, for their rare vertues and great merits; no other people are thought to equall or come neere the. There are certaine vertues, which are termed heroycall or divine, because they surpasse that which is common in men, or of humane vnderstanding, euen as an excesse and hyperbole of vertue. So in Homer, Priamus being defirous to commend the vertue of his Son Heiter, faid, He feemed to be iffued not of a mortall man, but ra- ad. Lib.s. ther of some God. In like manner the Lacedemonians, when they admired any rare or excellent vertue in any one, they would fay, That he was a dinine man. Such great personages hauebeene noted among our Ancients, whose vertues were so extraordinary: that their extraction was attributed to the Gods, as Alexander the great, and Scipio Affricanus: and the very fame heroycall vertues have beene carractred in the foules of French Kings, euen as being proper and particular to them.

It is a matter as common, as naturall, for a man to take Armes in his Name alowne defence, or for his owne priuate brother, and to reuenge his vniust wrongs and injuries. But a man to arme himfelte for another that is offenced, to reuenge his cause in zeale of lustice, without

where he had bin formerly expulled questionlesse is a carracter of vertue truely heroycall, and fweetly favouring of the diulfilty; which evermore hath beene naturall to the French. Strabo faith: That they would willingly grow into choller, and undertake Armes; for such as they saw to be uniustly wronged, and manifest shames done vniso chem.

The Iustice of the kings of France.

Agathin Gree.

The firft be

ginning of

in France.

Parliaments

Chap. 3.

The Kings of France have beene accounted admirable for Iustice, and by an extraordinary affection in them thereto ! they have taken care and paines, to exercife and render it in their owne persons, declaring themselves alwayes equitable Iudges, not onely betweene particulars, but also in they rowne proper causes, whe in a doubtfull cafe, they have layed the judgement on themselves, rather then to iniury any other. The Kings of France euer did fo, as well when they rendred Iustice in theyr owne person, as by theyr Soueraigne Courts, and commendation of very ancient Inflice. This report and praise of their lustice

is very ancient; for Agathias the Greeke Historian admireth them herein, and feemed to fay with great judgment, or rather by a Prophetical spirit : That living fo, et carrying themselves in the like behaviour to their actions heerous not able to conjecture otherwife, but that their Estate would be al-

wayes stable invincible, & impregnable from enemies; being fust ained with To found ba-Inflice & Flo-Nous are two fes and foundations, as Instice and the defire good Pillary of Honour are. Among them most re-cent, Baldus, a famous Italian Doctor,afor a man to build on. In L. Magis pu bout the yeare MCCCL.maketh especito 55.in primus. verficaltem que all reckoning of the Kings of France: Gimp D.De which (for most certaine) long time they reb zor. qui fle delinered in theyr owne person.

> But the multitude of affayres encreafing, and they viable to bee abfent from rendring Inflice to particular perfort, except the State should receive some endamagement, diffraires, either by the war, or other important charges of the kingdome; they were feigne to establish Parliaments to that effect, and therefore appointed ordinary and fedentary Officers. Before that time, the Estates made they meeting but foure times enery yeare, termed in the ancient Annalist's Conneneus Generales i wherein affifted the principall Lords of France, and Officers of the

any other hope, and to re-establish him | Crowne, as well to discorne and admie, in what was to be done for the generall E. flate, as to decide the greatest and moit notable differences, happening betweene

Hauing then decreed and refolited on theyr ordinary Parliament at Paris, there was the appointed place for rendring to appointed it ucraigne audice: for that the prefit and Pans. indgements there concluded, were as if they had beene pronounced by the Kings owne mouth, and thereitpon inferibed & entitled in his Name . They were like wife verefied and published; as also Rebifired by Lerrers of elpecial provision, in the Offices and Dignitles of the Crown. with folenine & publike reception of the greater part

Ir allo anouched (chat oftentines) Lords and Princes, being fitangers, fiibmitted theyr differences to the judgment being franof that Court, in regard of the great opinion they hold of their lufflee. The Emperor Frederick the fecond, referred him- ris and worfelfe vnto the Parliament of the King of thily ended to France; in the debate and contention betweene him, & Pope imovem the fourth. concerning the kingdome of Waples, In the yeare MCOXLIII. The Barles of Wemmer, in the years MCCCXII. dif. putted there the cause of his Earldome, aguinst Charles de Palois, Brother to Philip le Bel & won theday. Likewife the Prince of Theme, in the yeare MCCCXX.gained there a fuite against the Duke of Bourgongne, concerning the charges & expences layde out, for the conquest and recourry of Gonstantinople. 11:

In the yeare MCCCXLII, the Duke of Lorraine and Guy de Chastillon debated there their parrages. In like manner the Daulphine, and the Count of Samoye, hisuing proceile rogether, entrered for their Indges the Court of Parliament, in the yeare MCCCXC. The kings of Spaine made fuch account of hillice in the kings of France, and integrity of theyr Parliatrent, that they fent their fintes to be confidered there. The kings of Callile and Portugall, having made peace together in the yeare MCCCHE fent they difference to the Parliament, to be there vetylied, for the more folid and found affirmet: and there it was fully confirmed at their request, and published at the open doores.

The place for

Differences their content-

The Kings of Spaine efterflice of the Kings & Par liament of

Nocruelty obleracd in himtowards his greately enemics.

That which

Concerning

vertues di-

The familiarity and man-fuctude of the Kingsof France in tal king with their fubicat plaine and

nours and prerogatives of the Kings of France, as an especiall marke of their greatoeffe and Majesty : one thing which is found in few of the Kings & Monarchs of other Nations. Which is, that they themselves doe ordinarily conserve with their fubicats, fuffering themselves to bee feene daily, not onely in publike, but also in particular, vling primacy, granting eafie accesse to any one : and yet notwithstanding they are not a jote the leffe reverencediobeyed, honoured, and respected, nay, rather much more then some other kings. who by artificiall trickes and mysteries, feeke to have themselves honoured of their people. Neyther doth this facility in communication, and friendly familiarity, beget any contempt towards them, or diminish the least part of theyr Maiefiv: but rather maketh an addition thereto, causing them to bee the more esteemed, in venerable and most happy man-This is that which attracteth, & (most

The fabic &. of all) winnerh the hearts of the French. like affection rendring themselves wholly affectionate, of the French yea, vowed and denote to theyr Prince; to their kings and Princes. whom they loue feare, and honour altogether, even with an entire and cordiall affection, and not by any force or constraint. A matter truely as admirable, as rare, and which the Lord Suriano an ho-In lib.1 . Delle nourable Fenetian, and other strangers casse delle having well observed, stand not a little agrandezzo de la Cirà. mazed thereat, it appearing (naturally) almost impossible & incompatible. Wherin it is no easie matter to fay, which is the greatest honour and aduantage, eyther to

> to the one and other. Most part of the kings in this world, at all times have fought many exteriour meanes, by different habites, extraordinary fashions, crafts, secrets, and diversity of innentions to maintaine their Maiesty to make themselves scared and respected by they fubicas, and yet notwithstanding, could not compaffe it. The ancient Detopes, beging elected king by the Medes, fro a particular man as hee was before, changedinto all manner of behaviour. Hee

would build a great magnificent Calle.

engironed with many walles, the very

fight wherof procured amazement. There

fuch kings, or to theyr fublects , but beeit

howfoeuer, it is a great happinesse both

We may also account among the fa- | would be flut uppe himselfor cloathed in garments of no viuall wearing, nouer thewing himfelfe to the people, but very fildome and rarely: delivering luftice by written papers: & by interposed persons and likewife all his answers, expeditions, and affavres even as if they came from an

The kings of the Persians did vinally The Kines weare a Tiaras on they heads, a Diadein among the or royall Head-band, all gliffering with Perfiam. Pearles and precious stones, causing thefelues to bee adored by fuch as fhall fee them. And now adayes, most part of the Kings and Lords in divers countryes, obferue the very fame order. The great Duke of Molcouia will neuer be feene but Duke of Mo cloathed with a rich Sacerdotall habite, couis. under a precious Pauillian, accompanied with a small choyse number of his Domestigues, so sumptuously apparelled, as one would fay, they were an affembly of Gods. The great king of the Aby Sines, or The king of Athiopians, is neuer seene at all, he speaketh to Ambassadours, with a Curtaine ans. drawne betweene them, no other fight have they of him. But when he pleafeth to shew himselfe, hee weares a Crowne richly fashioned, exalted or rayled very curiously, a garment all of beaten gold, thickly beautified with precious stones; having his face covered with a veyle of Taffara, for feare lefte any should see his face. It is also a rare, and no accustomed fauour, when he lifts the Taffata neuer fo little, that any part of his vifage may bee

The king of China neuer commeth a- The king of broad, but keeps himfelfe continually en- China. closed in a Pallace round engirt with very frong fortifications, and caufeth his very Pictures to be adored. The great Seigneur of the Turkes, is neuer feene, but in a habite wholly different from any other, the Turket both for the fathion as also the vnfbeakable riches on him: he dazeleth the eyes of all fuch as looke on him, in regard of the glorious stones shining on his head, and causeth himselse to bee served with such Maiefty, respect, & ceremonies, as is most wonderfull. The king of Monomatapa, The King of is not ferued but by men on their knees. There are other, who cause themselves to be ferued with strange fashions, and very feruile submissions; thewing themselues fildome or neuer, and speake not a word,

sudeus in lib 1.

Chap.3.

The kings of

France futea

bletotheir

fobicas.

Princes,origi-

Dauphrius Ital. In lib.4. Iras c

But the Kings of France have no medling with these apparences, and exquisite cunning, whereby to support theyr greatneffe, authority, and Royall dignity; because they differ in nothing (for the most part) neyther in habites, food and fashions from their subjects, maintaining thefelues without any fubtilty. And the more they are feene, the more are they honoured, and not only honoured, but alfo loued of the French: as being borne to reigne, carrying Maiesty in theyr Fronts naturally, which maketh them yenerable: ranisheth the people with obedience to them, and crowneth them with continuall respect. And although it is no matter rare or difficult for the French, to fee their King, because it is so ordinary and common to them : vet as learned Budeus hath discreetly observed, the people runne on heapes, when they heare that the King paffeth to any place, reputing it as a happinesse, to have so favourable a fight of To this great and immense love of

the French towards they naturall Prince. The kingdom may well be attributed the long continuance of that Monarchy, one of her other 1100. yeares. excellences, that hath subsisted twelve hudred yeares, which few kingdomes elfe can fay befide. And that which is most admirable of all, is, that the kings have bin of the same race and extraction, without any change but twice, & yet in changing, full it came to proximity and kindred, as we have already declared. One thing al-Natural born fo maketh it commendable, that it neuer bare command of a firange Prince, nor fo much as defired it; but alwayes hath bin gouerned by her naturall Princes, originaries, and of the most noble blood, nor onely in Europe, but in all the rest of the

> Learned Onuphrius, a famous Italian, observed it as a matter worth marvaile. faying that in no other Estate, can be obferued the like felicity . I will fee downe his owne words. Mirum illud obfernandum eft quod cum mulla gens vnquam fuit, qua aut externos Principes non admiferie, aut allumptos interdum non expulerit, lape etiam per summum scelus non occiderit, solis Francis peculiare hac eft ac proprium, nullos unquam exteros Reges pati, fuos autem vfque adeo amare de golere, ve pro corum dig-

but it is accounted -as an especiall fauour. I nitate & Maiest ate tuenda non opes tantum fed vitam profundere foleant. Hinc eneniffe credendumest, ve per mille & ducentorum fere annorum internallum non nifi ex tribus familijs Regesorti fint. Wee must account (faith he) that this is meruailous, albeit there hardly hath bin any other Nation, but hath received strange Kings, and after receipte of them hath expelled them againe, yea, many times maffacred them, through fome extreme mischiefe. Yet notwithstanding, it is proper and particular to the French, to have endured no Kings strangers, and therefore have fo loued and renerenced their Princes, that they not onely imployed all their goods and meanes, but likewise laide downe their lines, for the defence of their Dignity and Maielty . And this may be thought to be the caufe, that for the space of about twelve hundred yeares. there hath beene but three familles from whence have proceeded all their Kings.

CHAP. IIII.

A Funerall Oration written woon the most unnaturall and untimely death of Great Henry the fourth, Father to the King now reigning. 1 1 m.

HE Egiptians, having fufficiently taited the fanours of "Harpocrotes theyr God; did Silence. Confecrate the Peach-Tree Plan migator, in the highly freety, Plan migator, vnto him, in thankfull retri-

bution of his infinite benefits. The leaves of this Tree are shaped like to tongues; and the fruite doth carry a refemblance of



Of the Dein ces elected Kings of the

The greatest loffe that ever France fultai-

cfcape of Te-

lemachuspre-

ferued from

drowning by a Dolphine.

144

hearts: whereby they would feeme to fav. that their hearts should thence-forward ferue that Harpocrotes, and theyr tongues be continually bufied in celebrating his prayles. O France! wilt thou bee leffe thankfull then those people? So many choise benefits received fro the cheefest of thy Monarchs, can they well escape thy memory, or glide into the depth of bottomleffe obligion? No no wee will not onely confectate the Peach-tree vnto him, but our hearts and tongues joyntly together because this is the best offering, remaining in our power to giue him.

Telemachus, the youngest Son of Plysses, sporting himselfe (on a day) childe-like vpon the Sea-shore, by accident fell into the water: but a Dolphin happily came, who receiving him vpon his backe, did fet him fafe and dry vpon the land againe. The Father not knowing how to expresse his gratitude to the Fish, that quickly was carried farre off from him by the nimble waues; to auoyd the foule blemith of vnthankfulnesse, caused all his Gates to bee painted with Dolphins, engraued them vpon his Sword, yea, hee honoured his Seale with a Dolphins Image.

A familiar allusion to the

Henry great Henry a most Christian. Potent and Royall King fuccourd France in a Sea of feditions & dreadfull tumults. Royal Henry. and like a gracious Dolphin, received her on his fhoulders, and fet her vo in fafety. cuen on the shore of a most happy peace, whereof as yet thee enjoyeth the benefit. His name shall not onely bee written on our Gates and Walles, but his greatnes. his victories, his mildnesse and paternall bounties, shall bee engrauen on an euerduring Piramede of thankfull acknowledgement, neuer to depart out of our memories. Our eyes, hitherto busied in teares, granting no liberty to our fighing hearts, to let our mouthes memorize his Trophees, and tell the world his countles Triumphs, we do now begin to open the. and now wee would breake the doores of some sad Funerall discourse, in remembrance of his great Maiesty, and excelling vertues.

If Calisthenes durst make refusall to Alexander, who commanded him to commend the Macedomans, alledging for his excuse, that their vertues were so well knowne, and their merits fo great, as hee should not gaine the least honour or re-

putation (whatfoener) thereby. How dare I then appeare in publike, and in this common habite of mourning, to commend the eldest Sonne of the Church. the Father and Patrone of Soldiours; especially in these dull times, when that diuine fire of Eloquence, sometime stolne from the Gods by " Tantalus, feemes to Sonne to hauetaken her returne to heauen, from Plota whence she came at the first.

There are now no Ciceroes, not a Demost henes to be found no nor an Horten. fufficient to fius. And albeit they were all aline againe, expressebit to ioyne their best abilities together in high deletwell speaking; yet could they not speake in fuch fort of that famous Prince, but their elegancy would fall farre short, and infinite goodly things would nere come neere them, which are no more then due to his happy memory. If then I speake, it is but by appointment, and as feeling a certaine combate within me, between bathfulnesse and nature. Bashfulnesse taxing me with fhame, to be filent when the whol world cries and complaines; ashamed alfo that I cannot joyne my fighes & teares to yours. Nature likewise tels me, that by an indissoluable obligation, I ought to render this duty and feruice, to the eternall memory of my King, my Lord & my Prince. This then may ferue for my dif charge. The * Epizephyrian Locrences, People in former times, not having the commo- great Great dity to performe any folemne facrifice to lo calledof Hercules, according to their vow (because tory Zephyni there were not any Oxen, Sheepe, or o-um about ther Beafte for oblation left in their Cit-which they well ty, through the length of a greeuous pestilence, which had consumed them all) when their Elders aduised them to take Cowcumbers, Mellons, and some other kindes of fruites, fitting them with short flickes in forme of feete, and then calling them Oxen, Sheepe, and fuch like Beafts. they threw them into the fire, & formade their facrifices. Among their neighbours, there was not any but commended their invention, and gave cheerefull applause vnto this acte of theirs.

If I have not wherewith (worthily) to answer the admirable vertues of that Monarch, let me accuse my necessity, and gitte you what I can, which (I hope) will be acceptable to you. Or elfe (if you beton viedster affect it) I will imitate those Sauages mong the se of Florida, who reputing the Sunne to be use people of Florida.

rall Oration or his daugh-

Cafars fune.

Chap.4.

1Rcg.1,19.21

What ought Monuments to be.

Reg. 1.2 1.

Blacke, beft befliteth Punerall pompe

their God, and feeing him fo highly exal- | margailous pleafing. Therefore David ted ouer their heads, as it is impossible for them to come neere him: in looking on him, they hold up their hads at him, which bringing backe to their mouthes, they kis, delivering testimony (by this meanes) of the reverence, honour, and respect they beare vnto him. If I cannot touch (dazeled with his beams) the Sun of fo bright a Maiefly, or my tongue shal this day feem dumbe, in the infinity of his glory: I will yet effay by fignes, and thew fome-what that way, when other helpes fayle me.

Concerning the reft, my aime hath no other end, then that of Cafar, in the Funerall Oration he made for his Daughter Iulia: Vt adstantes admonerentur quanta iaetura ex illa morte fact a effet : That the bystanders might bee admonished, how great a losse ensued by her death. For what losse can be greater the ours? A loffe which never had his like, a loffe fpringing out of our iniquities, which made vs altogether vnworthy to enjoy fo great, so happy and so dreaded a Prince.

O desiderabilis terra Isarel! in excelsis tuis vulneratus est. Quomodo ceciderunt potetes ? Quomodo abiect us est Clypeus fortium? Thus did David bemone the death of Saul, King of Ifrael. Thus was a King extolled by a King, being filled with the fpirit of Prophetic. Thus did the annointed of God streame forth his teares, in A Funerall Oration for A Prince, flaine vpon the mountaines of Gilboa, which he withed might (for euer) continue barren like Rocks, liften the effect of his diving maledictions. Nec ros nec plunia descendat super vos, quia proiectus est Clypeus fortin. Let neither dew nor raine descend upon yee because there the shield of the muchty is cast downe. Behold, how he would have fome fad and lamentable monument to remain there, answerable to an acte so sad & difmall. Monuments ought to agree in rethe nature of femblance with the things which they fignify. What thing could be more horrible then the murder of an Ifraelite Prince? The Monument then ought to beceuery

> In Funerall pompes, we vie to goe in blacke garments. Dewes doe make the Mountaines verdant, and raine drunk vp by the Vallies enammels the with a thoufand flowers, and gives them fuch a garment of greene, as is both faire to fee, and

way as yrkefome and horrible.

would have nothing to grow your Gibea. but thornes and brambles, that fo(among rude Rockes) nothing might appeare but rough thorny pallages: to the ende, that fuch places might bee condemned, as of deeds of horror and darkneffer to likewife to sterility, and wofuli perpetuall denastation, but are not dewes the gift of God? Doth not raine come from the hand of sir es are the him that is almighty? The not to receive bleffings of thefe, is a dreadfull malediction. It should feeme then that David invoked the wrath of heaven your that Gilboa, the land being fubicct to many curfes, for the finnes that were there committed . Let nevther dew nor raine descend woon yee because the Shield of the mighty is there call downe.

themselves, yea, the Seigneurs and Prin-

cipalities of many ftrangers, fheltred the-

felues vnder that Sunny Banck. Therfore

of him may now be faid, as fortimes was

his owne beart, and commanded him to bee a

Gonernour ouer his people. For if Danid de

clared himfelfe couragious, in the grea-

test heate of Alarmes and fights : Hours.

great Henry, hath not hee beene (enery

where) attue Mars, and a true thunder-

therefore elected him among thousands,

to bee the Ruler of his people: then may

we fay, that (after his fights) neuer was

found a kinder Prince then great Henry

the fourth, to whom this Elogium rightly

appertained. Qui in aciate confect (upera-

twelf, qui in pace nilul timuit: Enermore a Conquerour, both in warre and peace, deti-

uing his victories no leffe from love, then

King of the Gothes) Fidimine enemtus

optimos de aduerfitate generari, to may

wee fay, That out of greatest extremities,

Alaste, what greater Shield of strength, Nobester more generous and mighty, then Great Shield of de Henry the fourth, Henry, the Rampier of kingdome, his people, the Shield of his Souldiers, & then a truely the Buckler that defended the heads and generous

hearts of his Princes? He covered them against all their enemies attempts and encounters. Hee serued as an Armour of proofe to the French Monarchy, under which defence they continually raunged

of David : The Lord fought him a man after 1 Reg. 13,14.

bolt of warre? If Danid were ftill crow. Kine David ned with victory, because his elemency crowned with was acceptable to the God of Armies, & ous Victories.

from power. Vnder which (as Emnodi- Emnolin Paw spake in the Panegyrique of Thierry, or Thur. Kis

Terp.feb.

Agapetus in

Ele administra

The hand of

heaven ever

Supporteth

the right of

tiue kings.

The fucceffe-

his long trou-

blefome wars.

Victory that

accompanied Great Henry.

full iffue of

we have beheld the birth of highest and fai- | frica a certaine precious stone, called Lirest fortunes.

For in conquering the Rampiers of our Cities, at the very fame time he won our hearts alfo, and (by a foueraigne amplitude of kindnesse) sweetly infinuated himselfe into all our soules that behelde him fo brightly thining in Armes So that faving was verefied in him, which Agapetus foake to the Emperour Iustinian. Im-Articulis de re perium exornauit superiores Imperatores tu vero prastantissime illud illustre reddidisti: That which Empires (in former times) gaue to their Emperours; thou thy felfe (O great Prince) halt given to thine, to wit, lufter and Blendour. Thou didft finde it full of quarrels feditions, and tumults, thy vnciuill Subjects made mad (by what new Circes I know not) becam enemies to thy crown. But by the right hand of God, & strength of thy martiall arme, thou didft displant their Fortresses, peopled with Spaniards, expelling both the one and other; and from the limits of thy French Empire, thou didft exterminate that proud Bello-

na that (without all pitty) did cruelly la-

bour to teare her in peeces, and quite de-

Oh what a goodly day was that, when

we beheld bright victory to descend vpon his head, euen glorious and celestiall vi-Acry, holding in her hand a thousand Laurels, dispersing them in the fields of so many faire Provinces ? Victory was figured by the Romans, with a gracious countenance, and two great wings displayed on her shoulders. The Athenians made a mockery thereat, and portraied their vi-Ctory quite contrary, without wings or any feathers, to the ende, the fhould neuer five from them, but alwayes keepe within the girdle of their Citty walles . Fictory (Companion to the merits of this great Prince) was of the Athenian nature . In former times the had bene full of inconstancy, first on one side, then on another, neuer long continuing in any one Prouince. But at length, the feated herfelfe on the Louure of this onely Mars, where (first of all) the threw off her wings never to fart thence all the time of his Reigne. This was the, that not only made him beloued of his owne people:but fo feared &

reverenced of ftrangers beside, that they

Pliny tels vs, that there is found in Af-

had and held him alwaies in admiration.

paris, which hath so faire a looke, that all two of the eyes are at a stand to gaze vpon it. Hunters ther have no need of sculking hounds for their game, or any Arrowes to kill it. because this stone, laide open in the midst of any field, all wilde beafts (getting but a glimps thereof) gather together about it, and as amorous of the stones beauty, doe nothing elfe but looke voon it. Our Monarch, our great Monarch, was as a Liparis in the midit of his French world, the Ger- Alleyer and mane, Italian, Spaniard, Engliff, Swethen, with admiration arther very Turkes, were all drawne his ther by the fame of his vertues & renown prefence of of his Armes enery one flood at gaze to Great Henry behold him, not any one but withed his presence, each one loued & admired him. as a new miracle, or prodigy of valour and greatnesse in the world. In so much, that his presence served not onely as an ornamament to this State: but it was also here as an horne of abundance, our of which, al kindes of goodnesse that could flow from a facred peace, were in a most plentifull affluence deriued from him. The poylons of diffentions could heere no more produce their Gangrenats; the high vnderstanding of the King was too present an Antidote And as the dryed body of a Bafiliske, hung with a golden thred in the midft of Apollos Temple (faith Gefner) kept Geftieruinit. it alwayes cleane, restraining (by an hid- Animal caps, den vertue) Spiders from working cobwebs along the pillars and walles: Euen fo great Henry, living in our France, kept it cleane from all the infolences of enemies, and suffered no strange Spiders to come weave their webs of discord within his Provinces. So availeable to this Monarchy was his long experience& promp. titude, that he held the affaires (in eyther His care of condition) both of church and common the Church wealth, in an voright fway of pollicy, were wealth. it in peace or warre. And fo profitable did this people finde their fubication & obedience to him that in all & quite through

as their Lord, their Pastor, and Father. Doe you not know the great vnity which Nature hath planted betweene the Plin.inlib. Planothere and the Pinna? Haue yee not 7.cap. 14. read of the benefit enfuing to them both, by their mutuall concord & intelligence? France hath beene as the Pinna, and the King her Pinnothere . The Pinna is that

the body of Prance, they reverenced him

reene the Naker or Scallop, and he Creuile Crab,

Chap.4.

The compato the Realm

cellent Painter, living in the time of arthafius of

rereat kinde of Cockle, which we vie to | blies, of the cheefest Heads and Capagins call a Niker or Scallop. The Pinnothere is a little creature, in the kinde of a Crabbe or Creuife, that continually stands as a Porter, awayting the opening of the Cockle , which he keeps fill wide gaping, vntill fuch time as he perceineth fome prey to enter, which may be beneficall to them both. For then hee pricks or bytes the Cockle, and thee thutting her thell, they then feede both friendly together. And neuer (without this admonition) doth the Naker fut her shell, nor euer (without the liking of this her Gouernor) will shee admit any strange creature to come neere

Enen fo France, referring herfelfe to the managing of the King her Pinnothere, and neuer receiving any impression but his; the lived with that foode which was

aprand natural for her, and by this reafon the neuer felt in any of her parts and members, those intemperate vile diseases, that heeretofore bred her to many warres and troubles. A great misfortune is it the. when fuch a precious lewell is taken from foorth the midft of our Temple, whe fuch a Master and Gouernour is carried away from his people. O decus Ifraelis in excelfis tuis vulneratus est. O France, the honor of Ifrael, glory of the Militant church O. Para the very fairest among the Gauls. or in the world, Metropolitane of the goodlieft state in Christendome: thou haft feene him wounded in thy firectes. flaine in thy bosome, and parricided inhumanely in excelfis twis, in thy places most frequented. O vnspeakable mishap! Quemodo proiect us est Clypeus fortuin ? How is

* Timanthes, a most famous Paintet among the Grecians, being defirous to portrait a Soldior ful of courage, sprightly in valour, and as fiery as Wars: gaue him all the grace that Arte could deuise upon his cloth. A But afterward fetting it before his doore to bee seene, hee caused foure Trumperato found before the Pit Cure, that the person might appeare the more forious and dreadfull Odcare people, if I could worthily, and (according to true life) reptelent before your eves the prouidence, wiledome, and happines of councell that remained in this Princes Ishould then fer beforeye one after and ther) even all the great and ferious affemhighly

the field of the mighty cast downer

of war, and of all other frates wherein hee prefided. Then shold you see him not like a filly " Wester by Agamemnon, but Agas | Sonne to memnon himselfe, and (in him) a milition of Nestors. If you would see his vigilland being well cy. & the care he had of his State affairs; neere 300 yeares olde. I should then fet before yee (in groffe) the went with the Ambassadors of the greatest Princes, the Courtiers and Possillions slying fremall parts, their puckets open, their Secretaries standing by, & that magnificent King in the midft, fpending many nights rogether for the confernation of them, that foundly flept in their beds at eafe. If vou would have a picture from mee, of his mildenesse & clemency then must I paint a thousand potent enemies, not humbled

at his prefence, or crouding to his feete, but feated in fafety by him, at one and the fame Table, in one and the fame Caroch. yea, in one and the fame bed. In breefe, if it were in me to thew you King Henry his valour & Won-pareilleourage; I foold the 4-might the here instantly fet before ye so ranged wellbe a mirbattailes, with their Squadrons of armed warriours in horse, and Regiments of foote, their Pikes the world. aptly placed, the flame and fmoak fmonl-

dring from Canons, the noyfe of Drums, the lound of Trumpets; and at the maine of every battailion, this king encouraging his followers to the fight; and then him felfe to give the onfer, & (like a true Mars) beating downe his enemies about him. Then would you fay, that you faw a God armed, the terror of the world, the honour of valiancy enen where Cafarrand Alexunders might well crowd in there to learn warlike leffons of him. But oh infignali difafter the being deade Quemodo creides runt potentes & Projectus eft Clypens for's tium? .. Howarethemigher buerthrowne? And the Shield of the very strongest cast downer more revelo. Jobl.

Filia Afraelis Super Saulem flete, quid west iebat was caccino in delicysus Daughter's of Mrael weepe for Saul, which sloashed you in skarlet with pleafures. Lindies, Daughters, and Wints of Paris, weepe for your king, he that alouthed you in Scarlet with pleasures, that game you these Imbroyderings, Liaces, and Bracelets of Gold Indeed Liadyes, peace purchated by the Peace With prowelle equidat of this great king, gatte inuffinanto the or planty you all their things in great abundances be abundance filled your houses with the beauties of the

s Reg. 1,29,

Plin. in lib.

Chap.4.

lob 12 5. Tribulatio dat

stelle Clarit?

Plater in Mo-

Camers of

Garumna in

France,par-ting Celtica from Aquita-

East and precious rarities brought from

2 Reg. 1.2 ?.

Arift in Politi lib.4 c 19.9.

diligence and wiftneffe of the King, and

King Henry fecond Her-

Reg.12,1.

King Henry descapped sto the holy 5. the eyther of the Poles. Rich and poore might eate their bread (fearelesse) with their families, might consolate themselues with God, and offer the facrifice of their hearts (at case) in his Church. Weepe then, weepe then rich and poore, great & small, the inhumane death of this common Father, vnder whom you receyued fuch infinity of pleasures. Saul dy Ionathas amabiles : Aquilis leui-

ores fuerunt Leonibus fortiores. Saul and Ionathan were lonely; they were swifter then Eagles, and ftronger then Lyons. Swiftneffe onely in any one fubied is unprofitable. and strength without swiftnesse is as great a maime, as lazinesse or neglect. Both these were joyned together in our Prince. What legerity was that, when in leffe then two Moneths, like to a flash of lightening, hee made himfelfe feene through the Prouinces of Picardy. Normandy Champaine, le Perche, Aniou, and Maine Travling after him a weighty Army, great store of weapons, Canons, Chariots, and great aboundance of other Artillery. O good God! in how short a time did hee winne more the 160 Leagues of ground, and subjected voto him (even in passing along) fifteene or fixteene strong Towns. In divers other places, what power and magnanimity did appeare in him, euen in his very greatest difficulties, withdrawing the lighted fires from all the parts of his kingdome. There did he shew himselfe like to another Hercules, being foulded in the skin of his constancy and high valour, his most redious trauailes (which seemed to him but as Dwarffes and Pigmeis) hee strangled and crusht them all, euen as if they had beene so many Mice or Mush. rumes, that have no vertue or resistance whatfoeuer. Wherfore O France, we may well fay of thee, as it was fometime spoken of the people of Ifracl Nunc Rex graditur ante vos, & pugnabit bella vestra. Thou haft now a King that walketh before thee. He spared not himselfe in marching before thee, and this was the man, ordained to terminate the fights and battailes.

Oh, how many meruailes do I behold. meeting in him all together. Let vs take him in his originall. Albeit he descended fro the loynes of the most happy S. Lewer. by a long extended Genealogy, wherein there is not any but Kings eyerhad he no-

thing (in his kinde) more abiect and contemptible, then to be thut vo in the Pyrenean Dens or Grottes, badly followed by his owne, threatned and purfued by externe accidents, throwne out of his Cradle, and the armes of his Nursse, into the Fordge of Mars; wrapt vp in partiality of opinions, which held a high fayle in his bles autiful time, and yet doth the like in many places the counted of this Realme. They that fed his hopes, to preuaile thereby, deceiued him: others that thought (by fuch instruments) to ouerthrow him, did the higher exalt him, And perforce must I (in this case) without looking on the pointes of his conscience. commend his morall vertues.

Achilles, the fonne of Aeacus, who was to conclude the Troyans greatnesse. & to ouerthrow their * Illium from the top to * Troy was the bottome, was long time hid vnder the of Illus, who garment of a woman, among the daugh- enlargedit ters of Lycomedes. And our great Henry greatly. (who was to be a terror to Spain) the prop and Support of our French Commonweale, was (in his yonger yeares) euen as hidden under the habite of a poore & difinherited Prince, in the solitude of the Bearnish Lands and Mountaines. But yet notwithstanding.God had(euen then)deflined him to be a subject of his wonders, vea.to the cheefest dignities, & very greatest powers of this Land. God I fay the great God of hofts, Per que Reges reguant. & hath his hands ful of crowns & bestoweth them where himselse best pleaseth.

Reade what 10b speaks of the Ostrich & there shall you see this Prince naturally,e- 18,19. uen according as description is ther made of her. That Bird being depriued of wifedome & loue) without couering her egs, leaves them in the dust, and so loseth all remembrance of them. The world would be quite bereft of Ostriches, if God did not play the part of a mother, and by the beames of his bright fining Sun, make the dust warme about the egges, and so cause the yong to be hatched, to maruaylous favre and goodly forme. In like manner our great Henry, was not he forfaken? Left in the duft of disfauour, and negle- What God Red all the time of his childhood? God will have had a care of him notwithstading, aspurpoling to make him an Melas, for the lup-port of his Church, and defence of this petith. State. So that by beholding him fo much abased in his beginning, and afterward to highly

highly exalted: we have great reason to fay with the same Job. Lampas contemptaad tempus statutum. A Lambe, whereof no account at allreas made: yet ordained for honour, and to be honoured at the time appoinred. God would bring him by the paths of aduerfier, to the highest place of prosperity, and made his travailes feeme as Malless to harden hun for fuch paynes as hee was to endure for the re-establishment of beace and vnlty, in all the divided Prounces of France.

In enery estate, afflictions do make the greatest persons, where contrariwise, in the midft of highest prosperites (as standing vpon an ouer-flippery place) oftentimes they foonest lose themselues. We may deduct an example heereof, from a Glaffe, vpon whose Christall, Flies can get no footing (faith Plutarch) & yet stand firmely on the borderings about it, because they are more rough and apprehenfine. referie beignie er iba

and the market Labuntur mildie, Cafrifien tenactus barent. Smoothe paths are flippery rougher wayes have hold. Allowed All

And from the same ground, it seemeth that Homer fetcht his Mely, the rootes whereof were blacke, but it bare fruite of most fine gold. So the life of this French Atlas, did themir felfe (every where) to be very blacke in the bud and wholly obfcured with aduerfity; but the rest thereof (cuen to his vntimely ending carryed three Flourers of true goldsinan Azure field of hearienly beauty. Afflictions in him, fer-*Two famou ued as an applible to * Polycletus and

Miren, whereby to mould carne & forme the true shape of Vertue: which was the very fayrest and most goodly Statue, that quer could (by Arte) be imagined.

Let vs instantly conceite that happy hours, when wee beheld heavens providence to call him from Bearne, and the Banicks of Garona and (with goodly Enfignes) to thew him the Loire. He being (not long before) thatply purfued, was then fought for in the Grottes, many royall Armies (enen then) truffing to his arme: but fent for (foone after) by the K. his brother, Henry the third, whom hee would not forfake at a time of need. Then was it; when France concred oner with rebellions and Armies against her folfe, was conftrained (more then ever before)

to approve the foirit, wiledome, and handl of him who quickly became her Haleyon, to appeale and calme those furious temand table in small of

The blowes began at Tours and at Blois, but within few daies the fiery fire fore the death of those Souldiers proceeded through of king Henry Beauffa, even to the origiting of Baris: was murded wherethe execrable and bloody, parrioide by a lacobine committed on the perfun of the king, opened him the doore to the whole State The Princes and Freinde Nobility, both proclaimed and auknowledged himsto be their king. Meane while, the troubles encreating, and the Anthies contrage wicre in many precess beheld him speece hand) as foode thus voine Dieine and Bushkathe Steele that firikes but of Flint toicatort thence the furely fodrkes of fire : even fo. the neerer a warriouris purfued the more fplendour is added to his glary. 1 113

There liveth a certaine monfter in the Plinin lib.g. Sea, vulgarly called the Scia or Same of 149.17. the Sea in regard of a horne he hath, ferting him in fread of a fronte, cartying no meane refemblance with a Sawe a This creature meeting with a Ship under full fayle; by divers times of attempting, doth grow angry thereat, and feemeth to make open warre againff it. He paffeth and re- A very fingupaffethlmany times vaderneath it im- at compatiploying his horne / with his vitermost apranallusfrength) to fawe, as he thinks, and cut in on. twaine the keele of the Ship. But in vaine doth he torment himfelfe, for fo long hee vieth the teeth or razors of his fnout, till beating himfelfe out of breath in the conflict at length hee floates on the water with his belly voward, remaining at the mercy and laughter of the Pilote.

And what great act (I pray ye) did fo many Armies, as quite couered the plaines of France? They imployed all Malice hath their endehour and weapons in vaine ho- no greater e ping to fawe in funder and divide this tend against State. After all their malicious wraftling then it lelfe. with this Soueraigne holy Ship!, did they not become ennerued and broken in picces, by the power of this great King her Pilote? Wherefore wee may well fay, as Velleine Paterculus faid of Cate. Firtuti quam fimillimus, & per omnia ingenio Dis Plutin vit. M. quam bominibus propier : qui non rectefetit ot ficere wideretur, fed quia aliter ficere non poterat.

It is not for any ambition or defire of glory

Troubles he

The honorable words of a Kingly Soldour.

A mighty Gi-ant, the Son to Titan, cal-

led of the Gods Briggin

to maintagne the liberty of my Subjects, and preserve my Crowne. And even so did God fauour his designes, and laide at his feete (myraculoufly) an infinite number of Trophees. Heere Arques made her most signale surrender. There Turie published his high fortune. Dion, Fontaine-Francosfe, S. Helena, and the Molets engirt his browes with a thousand Laurels: And for die higher pitch of his honours, the vanduished themsfelues did (even then) reloyee at his prosperity and victories. He fought not in one place only at a time but like to a fecond * Briarius, with an hiidred hands and by his Lieutenants, hee imore as many places together. So that posterity reading his heroycall actions, not onely will make doubt to belocue the all burrather groffely receive, or repute them for fables.

I will leave them to our Histories, & to tell ve that his clemency appearing aboughts other vertues; did make him vniuerfally both beloued and admired . • O goldd God! how ready was he alwayes in helpe and subuention to the oppressed?

How, diligent, in finding out for our dif-The especiall eafes, both foueraigne, peculiar, & conthy Prince. uenable remedies? When I call mill eyes on the gastly Theater of our France, me-thinkes I doe there behold that terrible fight betweene Brutus and the * Xan-Scythia aboue thians, the very cheefest Inhabitants of the Lake of Lycia, when they (being beliedged the fire getting mischeenously into the crannies of their walles, threatning their neighbors houses, and the whole Citty toge-

> gots, made of dryed Reedes, the more to nourith and augment the flame, whereas Brutus (being their enemy) employed the vttermost endeuour, both of himselfe & all his Soldiors to flake and grench it. He fate on horse-backe, full of compassion, effaying by all possible meanes, to take fome good order, and turning him round about, hee held out his hands to the vnhappy Inhabitants, defiring them to spare their owne Citty, and to faue themselves.

ther with a generall denastation) in a def-

perate rage and fury, threw on fresh Fag-

· How many of our blinded French (desperately madded in our last wars) did the very like ? What intended those Armes, and hostile preparations in the labouring his minde with the designe of greater number, but onely the ruine of

that I fight (would be oftentimes fay) but \ themselves, and the whole State together? And what was laboured (on the contrary part) by this great King our Brus tus? Nothing elfe, but to preserue his ms? Nothing else, but to preserve his people, and furthe the fires, furionsly fla-nour in aking ming in the foure corners of his king a to prefetue dome; yea, to keepe his people from des his people is footing the footing the feeter. (doubtleffe) the full butt and sime of all his warres, during which time, and even in the very fiercest broyles, hee was heard to cry aloud in the thickeft throngs : O Frenchmen, Frenchmen, faue your felues. And the blood of them, although they were in Armes against him hee did value at a dearer rate then his owne. An acte truely generous, and which (afterwards) made him fo much admired that they who refused to accept him as their Lord; threw themselves at his feete, and (in endeared loue) called him their gracious Tutor and Fatheraus stom new your shoes Let Paris (onely) stand as a witnesse The wofull

of my words, which was feene (almost) condition of without Subburbs, without Pallace, with Paris, dujing the wares. out Vninerfity, or any other Ornament whatfoeuer. The Field of the flothfull man, and the Vineward of the mif-villerstanding foole, described by Salomon in Proust, 14 his Prouerbs . Which were all overgrowne 19.30. with Thornes and Nettles, and their Hedges broken downe, might be compared with it. Our buildings beautified with Porphiry and Marble this Royall goodly places; his Louvres; his Twilleries; his new Bridges; his Arfenally the streetes newly reedefied, and adorned with formany new deuices of Silke and Tapiffry; the new foundations of publike Readings; these are as fo many Trumpets, to publish the loue and vigilancy of this King. Very true is it then, that his life, to obfcured and tra- Vertue long uersed in the beginning, did well resemble a fire, which in the making, and before it attaineth to any light, doth cast foorth dour. very groffe and thicke fmokes but being fully kindled, it yeeldeth a bright flame, & giueth no meane delight to the beholder. We have feene his originall to be dimily obscured and darkened with the clouds of crity. Afterward wee beheld him; not like tobes despised Lampe, but flining as the Sunne in brightest splendour.

An industrious and skilfull Architeck, an intended stately building, walking a-

The Stone neglected and Church, did not forget this Prince: our refused by the at the time appointed by his eternall pretuilders, beorner flone.

Thracian.

inforall the

Greekes went

Land at

Froy, albeit he had heard

hat be should

furely die that

did fo. He was

faincby He-

ptain, sonto

The Stone

Chap.4.

were among the people, but God faile the Deare people, from the beginning of my Oration, I have feared to fall short,& my feare is very just, handling so highe a subject, and so full of meruailes. Yet notwithstanding, that great goodnes of his

furnished me with courage, and hath hitherto vpheld me, in the pleptifull field of his flowing vertues . Wherein I felte fo great a confolation, and fuch a boundles liberty of fpirit, that my tongue (without impeachment) hath(in fome weake manner) expressed those things which I con-

ceiue any one to be of groffe Marble, half

earthy, milhapen, and that hath not (as

vet) felt the Hammer and Chizell, he do-

eth appoint that stone to some important

place in his edifice. Euen fo God, proie-

ding (long time) the building of his

Church, did not forget this Prince: but

science, he tooke him out of the Quarrie

of darkneffe, to make him thine as bright

day, and ferue as the Mafter-pillar to the

whole frame. Behold him then (O myra-

cle) in midft of fo many victories and fa-

uours from heauen, prostrated at the

feete of the Church, and no other cryes

ceyued of his praifes all But now Infecte my feirfes arrefted by an laccide myalus as nouell, as it strange and lamentable. I The Poets makemention of certaine

trees, that fometime did grow about the Tombe of Protefility, and they having attained to fuch hight; that (with their tops) they could cover the mine of olde Troy : withered in an inflant, and loft all theyr leaues. Euen fo my difeourfe could entertaineit selfe vnto this point; but when I fee this great Prince (alas) fetting from his Lauure in his Caroach, a fmal traine, indeed, without traine a my whole heart is frozen, my discourse witherether and there remaineth no verdure in my words. A mischeenous affaffinate, let look from Achoron, created of the filthy drinell falling from the foule chappes of Gerberus (to built our whole France) followes halfillyafter him. I fee the Caroch flaved; O Baris! haplefle City of Paris lin excelf in tuis, in one of thy cheefest foure cornered fircets, I fee the murtherer likewife flay there with it.

OGod! whatiflue depends vpon his

mong the stones in a Quarry, if hee per- / boldnesse? Gracious Heauen, thou didst preferue this great King (before) fo many times : as against Barriere at Melune .against Chastel in his Louure, and agaynst an infinite number more of most pernitious conjurations. Thy goodnesse (O Lord) shall it sleepe at this blow? Behold (deare people) it was our fins that weighed downe the ballance of eternal! Inflice, for one chastisement. Anteretur ab impis lux fua, de brachium excelfum confrigetur. The light that (hined upon those Nations, rebellious against my Edicts, shall be take from them, and the strong Arme that defended them, (ball be broken. Yea, and fo farre it proceedeth, that our great God feemeth weary of further advancing the Name of the glorious Franch.

TOO Fury ! O barbarous wretch ! instructed in the schoole of Sathan and enchanted with a diuellish Doctrine, that (vnder the fubborned name of a tyrant) woulde striking to approone and maintaine the Massacre of his authoritie Kinges. O Deuill, and no man, thy parricide hand is not hindered but dares boldly imploy the vic of that hellith liberty, in a most detestable sacriledge, against God, against his Annointed, and against thy natutall Prince. O Sunne, thou bright daybringer, that heeretofore veiled thy golden Treffes, and didft with-hold thy heanerly lookes, from the infamous house of the Pelapides, and the enraged abiding of Buphales that voworthy Romane Citizen. because thou wouldst behold no Burcheries and massacres : how couldest thou keep thy Chariot in his ordinary way, but with one touch of thy hand turned it fom way elfe, that this day might have bin co-

uered with darkneffe? Among infect or injuried Greatures, Bees (fayth Pliny) do fo much honor their Plin. in lib. head and King, as they will not live after 7.09.14. the loffe of him: And among other Animals: flaue wee not (almost) an infinite number, that have confectated their lives for the defence of their Mafters? , Quintus in lib 4 cap 9, Curtius, as one of the faitelt ornaments of his Hiftory, brings in the Elephant of K. Porus, which Elephante feeing his Mafter on the ground airclasibloody battel given him by Alexander with his trunke drewe hila foftly out of the drowdo (as fearing to hurte him) notwithstanding all the points and staues of Lances, being thrust into his breft and fides.

leremy 10. 2.

The doctrine

and warrant

Quint.Curthus,

A hard extre mity, when people are pittied by their enemy

Mzotis.

Phil.Commin.

in lib.z cap. t.

Same men

are more in-

humane then

bruifh crea-

Tertulin Dial

Homer in 17i

Attributes

and titles gi-uen to kings

\$ 1 9.5

Ad Keg.

flaine, became the revenger of his murder neuer ceaffing till (with his heeles) he had instantly beaten out the braines of the murderer. The Dog of Hesiodus is also remembred because he attainted the Hefiod in lib. children of Ganistus, for the murder com-£30.7.

mitted on the person of his Master. But that which our owne Fathers have feene, is much more memorable, of a worthy Dog, belonging to a Groome of the Chamber, attending on King Frances the first. Which Dog, not fatisfied with the apprehension of him that had flaine his Master in the Forrest of Fonteine-belleau; but beeing present by command of the

The Serthians also do eternize theme-

mory of a Horse, who seeing his Master

face of the whole Court, that then were gathered together, to behold this fpectacle. O most strange case, that brute beasts shall love, respect, and reverence theyr Kings and Mafters, and creatures reasonanable (yet without all reason) contrary to Nature, or any inftine of her, shall foyle their fellonious hands, in the facred & ve-

Prince) he rent him in preces, before the

nerable blood of their Prince. -... Tertullian fpeaking of Kings; Secundi funt polt Doum (faith he) inter quos de Deum optimum maximum nullum eft medium. They are next after God betweene whom and the greatest God there is no meane. Homer, by a name more proper, doth call them, The children of the great God : as they that do very neere participate in the beames of his durnity. The Greekes were wont to call them, Bazilees of Bazis, which fignifieth a Foundation. As in the holy Scripture, one of them is called Femur, the Thigh, he being as the Thigh, base and foundation, whereupon the repose of the State and people is supported. But to what end are all these Epithites, both sublime and divine, in comparison of The most Christian King, she eldest Sonne of the Church, which Titles our kings attained vnto by infinite merits, even from the

i If Emperours have done any good to the Apostolical See, what denotion can compare with thebofour Kings? Clouu, the first Crown-bearer among fo many kings, offered a Diadem of ineffimable value called Regdam, upon the Altar of S. Peter: the which Diadem, according as fome of our Historians haue written, fer-

Cradle of Christian Religion.

ued for the Tiaras to the holy Fathers prefiding in the Church. What shall I fav of Charles Martell, who received from fay of Charles Martell, who received from Gregory the third, she keyes of the Sepulcher, and the Chaines wherewith S. Peter ches Proce. was bound? was not this done, as ackno- tor. ledging him the Churches Protector, and yeelding him an honourable funmination, for defending that holy Toombe, and excellent prerogatives therto belonging, against the fury and invasions of the Lombardes? Against whom, this Prince began to arme himfelfe, when at the very first report of his preparation, the Lombard yeelded, and submitted himselfe to the holy

I cannot let fleepe in filence the piety

of king Pepin, who went twice over the Alpes, to check the infolences of the faid Lombardes, against Stephen, then fitting in the facred feate. There remaineth (vet to this day) an ancient infeription, engrauen vpon one of the Towers of Rauenna; The ancient Pipinus-plus primus amplificanda Ecclefia Rauenna wiam aperuit orc. Delinering testimony to all Christendome, of that Princes gift and liberality to the Church . Charles maigne, Philip Augustus, S. Lewes, many Kings among them, & many others fince then, euen vnto our time, haue no way degenerated from this affection, in piety & iuccourantwerable to the former Kings, and their enterprizes were most commes anceptated able & perillous, to maintaine the truth, of many and to confound the Sarrazine, Mabumas. French king tiffs, and other fects of Instidels. V V hereof matter fufficient is given to our Hiftorians, to make their volumes the more copleateland to Innocenties the third, a worthy fubicat of writing, in an Epifile which he directed Archiepifeu de Epifcopis per Galliam constitutis Exaltatio regni Francorum est fedis Apostolica fublimatia. And if that execrable and diuellish murderer, had not impeached the course of the great delignes, and holy intentions of this King (O France, for whom thou now fo iuftly lamenteft) he had thaken the Scenter of the Turke, and we might well have hoped to have feene our faire Lillies glifter in the Church of the Easterne Empire,& once more to have made the true God worshipped in Palestine.

Then, O vnhappy Realme of France, redouble thy forrowes, and reuiue the fourle of thy teares, as often as thou flight

Prince? yea, thy Shield, and the Shield of the mighty, proditoriously ouerthrowne in the Capitall of his Prouinces. Oh that I could (in this case) according to the maner of a Pegalus, strike with one foote into a fountaine of eloquence, or that the Muses and the Graces meeting together. would give new motion, or rather new life to my languishing Oration, that I might reach to the point first proposed to my felfe, which was, either to lay open before you the praifes of my King, or to let you fee his life and heroycall vertues, and how much we are al intereffed in his loffe. Thefe two attempts were very great, and

if I feele my felfe to thrinke vader the

faid (long agoe) a learned Philosopher.

For as a Player of Comedies, may ca-

fily bring foorth vpon his Stage, a man of

goodly flew, in flape of Hercules, coue-

red with a Lyons skinne, and bearing a

long great Club on his shoulder, but yet

made light and hollow within, and althis

dreadfull appearance, comes nothing

neere the vertues and incomparable

ftrength of the true Alcides : Euch fo an

writing with an Eagles quill (yet lagging

weary with circkling the world) to make

knowne to the two Poles, the admirable

battailes wonne by this Monarch, and all

this nothing indeed to great Henry the 4.

This were no other then a meere phantal

ma, because his inwarde man, with his

principall vertues, remained full hidden

the vinacities of his fpirit, the heates of

his generous courage, and that true cour-

tenance of Maiesty, which carried on his

brow the loue of his fubicots and terrour

of his enemies: thefe are things that fleike

dumbe all tongues, and are not any way

to be declared. The interest and the da-

mage then, which the whole world endu-

remember the death of this Prince. A

the worth of weight of the first, I must needs fall flat the lewellis ne with the charge of the fecond, Becaufe the wretchednesse of a privation can never be re-ally understood, but by knowing the excellency of the thing whereof we are deprined so

Chap.4.

e differ frő

Oratour may eafily produce some groffe description of great Henry, that most inuincible Prince, giuing him golden Armour, mounted on a gallant Courfer, attended with Drums and Trumpets, in middest of a confusion of armed men, a thorny wood of Pikes and Lances about him, and as the last ornament of renown.

The inward vertues of a teth by his death, can neuer be sufficiently declared. Euery man by himfelfe (from the least to the greatest) may frame out his owne discourse, and finde himselfe immeasurably offended: yet all this is nothing elfe, but as if each man should point with his finger at his owne heart, and no indement to be made, whose paine is the most greeuous ?

Sylaganbie, the Mother of Darius, her Plutare, in vit. Necces and other Persian Ladies wept Alexander. more extremely for the death of Alexane

den (faith the Hiftory) then did the Greeks and other Macedonians . For he was the common bond of peace, and hee being broken, they found themselves (among all them which he had left) the very weakeft. furthest off from fuccour, and most subiect to the injuries of warre. Without all question, our forrow hath bin common through the whole State, for this vnhappy accident falne upon the common and publike head. Our Princes pierced throgh with greefe, haue (to the whole world) fufficiently witnessed their affections. But unoffoncerely great men stand fafest on the board, the southgreat leffer ferue as poore Pawnes, & they have to the meast the greatest cause to complaine. That ner fort.

great chaine or bond of peace, which vnited together fo many kindes of spirits, is broken in the midft ; yet peace and vnity

(God be thanked for it) doth still remaine among vs.

As an Arrow that from a good strong arme, flyeth farre through the ayre, not in regard of his owne proper or naturall wings, but by the Archers vertue who (in the loofe) gaue it the vigor of advantages euen fo our peace as yet continueth by that strength and vertue, which the high understanding and credite of our deceaffed king gave vnto her. If we war against abuses, if vices may be cut off, and vertues replanted; wherefore should not this strong bond be new knit againe? But if they encrease, as they do, look then (deare people) for your danger to be neere. The mighty can daily maintaine themselues but the weake and feeble, they altogether undergoe the worft, especially when diforders continue.

In this cafe, the body of a Commonwealth, and that of a beaft do carry fome Companion resemblance. For as the members (which weakling the are found) doe not finde themselves so subject to rheumes or defluctions, but to

The offering ot king Clotar of S.Peter The murther of a king is no mean motive of griefe to al neighbouring

foone as they present themselves, do send | cellencies : who afterward becomming a them to the diseased parts: Euen fo, in a body politike, those great overflowinges that engender discords, do not so necrely touch the strongest in the State. Noblemen, as being more robust & powers full, know how to hurle fuch annovances behinde them, and then their weight fals vpon the vulgar, who are composed of flendereft refistance. Who feeth not then that the principall interest is ours? It is vpon vs that this blow is falne. That fatall knife hath ript open our brefts, and hath fluced forth our bloode, even fo farre as the very furthest Nations: who wholy afrighted at so damnable an attentate haue tellified, that this disaster was in common to them, communicating likewise in our fighes and teares.

But now wee facrifice ouer much vnto griefe. O France! thou must giue a breathing time to thy forrowes; thy great Hen ry yet liveth, God hath not left him after formany victories; he hath rather fnatcht him from beneath the armes of a temporal peace, to lodge him in his everlasting rest, & made him change the Soutcheon Affis Lillies for an eternal Diademe, the floures whereof are without number and value, and the gloryword of any date or limi ation. This life hath nothing in propriety siwhat any man holds here, it is but any creatinite as a depost or pawne, it is but for a shortive (ance, and a present of slender continu-Ance Spuma gracilis que aprocella dispergiour faith the wife man: Fumus qui à vente diffulius elt. It is a highway common to kings & Subjects alike to the haughty, and to the humble. Omne capax mouet wrna nomen. Death (notwith standing he is familiar to vs) yet in his passage along, if he hit his foot against a shepheards cottage only or if a poore labouring man meet with his fickle thefe are blowes that mooue no terror . But contrariwife, when he finites the greatest into the bottom of a tomb; when he shiners Crownes in peeces, and breaks royal Scepters with a touch of his Bigre, this is that which moueth aftonishment in ment this is that wherin they fee themselves, even as in the clearest Chrystall, best representing to the life, the defects of their fraile and wreached nature. They that have contemned God al sheir life time, may take example by Entelidas, loft in the love of his owne peculian ex-

knight of Athens, tooke a Grashopper in the fields of Egrettum wherby he learned and came to acknowledgment of his lifes shortnes. Wherupon he builded a house of piety, in contempt of himfelfe; wherein bequeathing all his hoves to God only, hee founded life and faluation for his foule: For an a goodly Rofe in rainy weather (being prickt with a pinne) will fend forth a maruellous pleafing fauour ! euen fo,al the degrees of a great State, beeing prickt in the death of their K.by the into- in a State are lerable piercing thornes of bemoning do woundedby then fend vp to heaven the most sweete their King. Odors of infinite prayers, whereby they procure Dinine bleffinges to descend downe vppon their heads.

This is also the benefite, which (among our teares and laments) we ought to feeke for in our loife, because euen therin God himself bath given vs matter, whereby to comfort out felues. Set before vour conceits, that great deluge of waters, which (in the time of Woah) drowned the whole world. Neuer did heaven before or fince. deliuer fo great a fign of anger against the fins of men. And yet notwithstanding, a extremits, mong all the billows and floating of dead bodies aloft on the waters the height or his divine top of an oliue tree did fnew it felf, wher- helpes. of the Doue broght a presentation to the good old man, as a fymbol of grace, carrying an affured testimony, that the ouer-flow should soone cease, & the Ark be deliuered from all perils whatfocuer.

Euen focin the frightfull deluge of tears, which appeared to swallow vs al vp in the waues, wee haue a facred Oliffe plant, a branch of that royall tree, ourry way an- Lewenhell (werable to that holy Doue, verily raifed to this purpose by the holy ghost, to bring this aged French States thirteenth Less. ex the lively image of the great Heary fo lately taken from vs. Lewes I fay the true Oliue braunch fent from heauen, to prefage our great mercy; vnder who we are to expect the increasing of al those choice vertues and felicities that wee felt under the flourishing teigne of his Father 175 211 In behalfe of whom, I may wel (O France) addresse those speeches to thee, deliuered by tho wife K. Sklomon. Beata tu terra, cum Rex, tum filius aft. Nabilium : Bleffed arts thou (Q Land) when thy King is the found of Nobles. Happy art thou Of rance; for stry

Ecclef. 10,17

Colimo de Medicis the Great Duke of Florence.

the belt pil-

aroqqiil or nd

kingdome.

Chap.s.

was no lesse adorned with Vertues, then Crownes: And his Mother on the other fide) beeing iffied from fo many great Dukes of Tuscany, the very beautifullest feate of all Italy, from the illustrous blood of that great Cosimo de Medicis, that afforded fo many Fathers to the Church, and floures to thy Diademe, witneffeth the hight of thy good fortune, having broght foorth this young, yet great Prince, who truly Filius est Nobilium. The Isle of Delphos was somtime most

King is the fon of Nobles. For the Father

of thy king, descending fro so many kings,

wretched, and yeelded it felf to the greedy appetite of the wasting billowes of the fea; till Apollo was borne there, who made it immoueable, and constantly confirmed it against all tempests. O France! if heeretofore thou hast bin beaten with stormes and the rude windes of discord, agitated by the flux and refluxe of some vnhappie partialities, what needest thou nowe to feare, Cum Rex tuus filius est Nobilium? Thy totterings are already past, and I fee thee (for euer) fetled in the Bay of a most bleffed peace, even in the armes of thy King, fo Noble in extraction both by Father and Mother. These are the wishes which we yeelde thee, even from all Orders and effates, vnited both in harts and wils, to submit our selues in a perfect obedience: As we also protest, neuer to be ingrateful to the most happy memorie of that Great Henrie, from whom so manie blessings hath continually fallen uppon

In elder times, the Graces were figured holding handes together, teaching men thereby, that a benefit received with one hand, ought immediately to be requited with the other: But Kings are ouer-great to attend the returne of fuch benefites, as they poure out vpon their people. And as for vs, wee are not able to acknowledge them, which hatte beene received from our good Princes except in feruing him loyally both with hearts and hands as becommeth most faithfull & obedient subiects: If that the hand (to our great greefe) hence-forward can'to nothing yet let the heart (as being more powerfull) continue that office, in waiting, vntill to hal pleafe the heduculy Maielty, to make ve bleffedly fee him againe, in the Celeftiall repose of his glory.

CHAP. V.

The Battell of Rauenna: Which was fought in Italy, in Anno, 1512. betweene Gafton du Foix, Duke of Namures, Generall for Lewes the xy. King of Fraunce, on the one party: and Raymond de Cardonna Viceroy of Naples, Generall for the King of Spaine, and Pope Julio on the other.

HE Generall of the French
Army in Italy, being named
Gastlon du Foix, for Lenes K.
of France, againft the Pope
and King of Spaine, beeing
giuen to vnderstand that the opposit pothis battalle HE Generall of the French

fiedged by him in the Cittle of Rauenna;

mildoubting some sodaine irruption in

wers for the Pope and Spaniard were marching onward(according to a former paffed promife) for giving assistance vnto Marco Antonio of Cardonna, who was be-

his politike enemy, brake up the fiedge, making a retreate for the space of some three miles from Rauenna, as it were to meete with the leagued army. That night they made a bridge over the river of Ro-uco, and levelled the highest banks equal with the River, for the eafier paffage of the Souldiers in all places. Afterward the 11. day of Aprill, beeing then Easter day, the Germane foote fouldiers made their passage over this made Bridge of the Ripanage ouer tins made appointed for the vawward and middle battell, they went thorowthe Foord. As for the rere ward being led by Don Ino de Alegres, and confifting of fonte linndred bolde refohied men, they reinhined ftill on the river bank towardes Rauenna, for better affifting the maine army when neede required, and curbing the Garrison of Ranenna, if they Thould prefirme to fally foorth. But for keeping a Bridge (formerly made vppon Montano) liee left a valiant Gentlemah. riamed Paris Scot, with a thousand foote vinder his charge.

All things being ordered in this maner, In what manhis battailes were raunged in this norder.
The vant-gard, that had the great Artilletry before them, confifting of 700. horfe,
see Artillebattailes, in

ample for all, teke warning

expediation. befide of the eremie

this life bath

No man in

*A City in I-taly caldfomtime Forum

Chap.s.

A Towne of | fled by night out of Boldgna! Nay more shey are the fame white liver d men that (not many daies fince) escaped our swordes by base running away sculking within the wals of Imola and Fauenrza, or the weighbouring mountains. They are a nation that never duri fight with our armies in the Newbolitan Kino dom in any place of indifferencie or eafte accoffe, but enermore open adminiage, beeing Supplied with munitions rivers and disches as relying more on close hid ambiffies & tres cheries then on any iot of manhood or valor. And yet let mee further tell ve concerning

> and ancient wel-skild feruitors in the New politane wars, but meere fresh-water souldiers otterly without skill or experience never fighting against other weapons of relistance. but Bowes, Arrowes, or the blunted Launces of the Moores. And yet notwithst anding, by that timorous people weake in body worfe in Birit wanting knowledge in armes and military actions they were (with great (hame) ouerthrowne the last year in the Isle of Gerba. And there this very man . Don Pedro de Nauarro, one of fogreat note of name amor them that by taking himfelfe to his hecles, hee delivered a notorious testimony of the difference betweene the beating downer als with fhot and powder & fighting with true fortitude of hardsment. See how they are flut up within a ditch, made this last mieht, enenin meere trembling feare of how their foot are covered with a rampier confisting of Carriages of hooked waggons, as meaning to try the battel with those childish instruments or not with the Marrow, Mufcles, and Arteries of men, or with the chearfull vinacity of Pirit. Make no doubt (deare hearts) but our great Ordenance fall drive them out of their holes. and beate them to the open field: where they Shall plainly perceive, that the power of the French, the courage of the Germanes, and onconquerable refolution of the Italians, doth go far beyond the cunning Subtilities of the Spaniards. The greatest obscuring of our glory, is that we overmatch them in nuber being (wery neere) twice as many as they. Nevertheles. freing fortune hath bin fo bountifull to vs, it were indifcretion not to make wfe of fo happy a benefit, which will rather be imputed to temerity and improvidence in them, then to any cowardly advantage in vs. Nor doth courage or valour incite them on but the authorisy of Fabritio de Colonna, in his rash promise

made to Marco Antonio ; or rather thein-

Stice of heaven hath thus provoked them, to the end, that the pride and unfleakable hevnow actions of Iulio, that falfe and counterfer Pope, as also the deceitfull treacheries of the King of Arragon, may have condiene and worthy puniffinent.

But why walt I time in fo many words? Or why should this dictory be folong kept from ye by circumstantial perches in a skilleffe O. ration otterly needle fe for fouldiers of vint danted first? March on then,my valiant fellowes in armes with full affurance, that this day I shal give the whol Empire of Italy tomy King de the wealthy poyle among you all. 4 thefe Spaniards that they are not those tries tour Captaine and Commander willbee prefent with you in every place; and, as I cut have done fo this day more effectally wil 1001 pofe my life upto al perils rather then a man of ye (ball mi [carry. Nay . I (ball repute my felf for the most fortunate Captain that ever with feeing that by this dayes victory. I Ball not onely make my foldiers most glorious, but the richeft of all other Armies , within the com-

paffe of three hundred yeares.

This Oration ended, and the aire ecchol ing the noise of Drums & Trumpets, the Spaniards effying the French past the riuer, in this maner they ranged their bat' tailes. The vantgard, confifting of 800. horfe, and conducted by Don Fabritio de How the best Colonna, flood placed along the banke of spanishe timer, where owas added 600. footon were ranged were ranged the right hand. Likewise along the River; were tanged in the field. food the middle battel of 800 horfe; being flanked with 4000.foot, the Viceroy being the Leader therof, & with him the Marqueffe of Paluda, as alfo tohn de Media ci, legat to the Pope. Moreover, along the fame river bank flood the rereward, conducted by Cardaial a Spaniard; & in that battell were 4000. horfe, and 4000.foot. Al the light horfmen (whose General was Danales, Marques of Pefcara, a very yong Gentleman, but of exceeding great hope guarded the right fide of the foot behind, for fuccoring any part that fainted . The great Ordenance was placed in the front of the horse, & Don Pedro de Mauarro Gc. neral of the Spanish foote, accompanied with 500 horfe, had not any place of certainty, but had planted at the ditch in the front of the foot, 30 waggons, like to the crooked Chariots vsed in ancient time. Whereon he had placed field pieces, and very long Boares speares, for casier sustaining the furious feaze and charge of the

beside Germane soote, led by the Duke of Ferrara, and the Seneschall of Normandr; this power was placed on the bank of the river, beeing then on the right hand, whereby the foot troopes flanked the left wing of the horse. Somewhat nere to the vantgard, the foot appointed for the mid battalion, being partly Gascoignes, and the reft of other Provinces in France, tooke their charge, and Don Ino de Alegres was their Commander, Further remote from the River banke, the reregarde had theyr place, being in number five thousand foot and all Italians, under the conduct of Frederica de Roz zólo: and this battel was flanked by all the Archers mounted on horfbacke, and other light horsemen, amounting to three thousand.

These battailes were not ordered to rere one another, but in the shape of a Cressant or halfe Moon, and directly behinde them were marshalled six hundred well appointed horfe; conducted by Seigneur de la Palice, and the Cardinall Sanleuerino, Legate for the Councell of Pifa, who bent their intentions against the Pope. He was a man of no meane constitution, full of heate and courage, armed Cap a pie in faire bright glittering Armor, and meeter (in deede) for the office of a Commander in field, then to supply the place of a Cardinall. As for Gaston du Foix, ayming onely at honour and victory, he would not betake himselfe to anie particular charge in the Campe; but felecting for thirty choise Gentlemen, such as he thought fit to share with him in his best fortune of the day; wandered at liberty, as to bee prouident in all places, and for the readier helpe, where neede should require.

He was the man of best marke amongst them all, not onely in regard of his folendant Armes, but likewife for his fprightly countenance, dreadfull carriage, & refolution no way to be daunted. Hauing sanged his battalions into such due form, as nothing wanted but the fignal for fight advancing himselfe on the bay of the Riuer, where belt he might have attention, and animate his army with boldeft fpirit, more eloquently then Souldier-like (as fome suppose, thus he spake.

The Oration of Galton du Foix before the fight to his whole

T Fellow-Souldiers, the thing which you have so long coveted by desired, to wit; to encounter the e-

nemy in an open champaign groud: behold how Fortune hath this day blest yee withall, as not forgetting her former Motherly care of ye, in many a famous and wellwon victory. See what a gracious opportunity is heere presented to ve. Such as precedent times, nor memory of man hath ener acknowledged, vistory houering ouer your heades. embracing ye within the very winges of her bounty not onely for " Rauenna it felf, ful- "An ancient ly and meerely profit rated to your power: but likewise all the Townes and Citties of Romania, though but flender attributes of re- cious & fruitcompence to your high deferts, yet as an ear- full country nest of her further intended fanour wato ve. For, finding Italy naked and emptie, not a man left to stand or encounter with ye: what shall hinder your marching on to Rome it (elfe ? Seeme as if (euen now) you (aw your entrance into it; and confider withall, the boundlesse wealth of that gripple and greedie Court (for many ages togesher) haled & violently torne, even out of the bowelles of poore abused people, and instly ordained now to be at your mercie as village and foile. Proud Ornaments, Silver, Gold, precious Stones All in heapes, and numberleffe summes, beside most rich and sumptuous prisoners, you may already plead full possession of the wide world fanding amazed as your fortunes. And Rome thus being yours, Naples lies fairely before ye, inuiting ye to com thether with the Same successe, and there to revenge your manifold iniuries.

When I consider your valour, fortune dr famous victories, woon within the compasse of fo few dayes , when your manly lookes, and more then manly actions, do quicken my memory, that there is hardly one among yee. but bash made good proofe of his conrage, by apparant and pregnant testimony of his great pirit : there is not any objection what former. to forestall the affured felicitie of wittorie. What are our enemies, but the verie same Spaniards, that (meerely upon our coming)

Nauarro was the Spanish

Gafton du Foix, a man o especiall note from all the

of Pifa leuved

forces against

the Pope.

Both fides pectation of

In this order they expected the affault & charge of their enemies strong army, with in the munitio of the ditch but this councel, as it profited nothing in the end, fo in the very beginning it appeared to be per-nitious. For it was the mind of Fabritto de Colonna, to inuade the enemies fo foon as they began to come ouer the Rivers as thinking it more commedious to incounter with one only part of the enemies, the ro shide in the camp, defenced but with a fingle ditch But when Don Pedro de Nawarro (whose councel the Viceray follow-ed as Oracles) repugned this aduice, it was decreed (though nothing providently that they (hould be fuffered to paffe) uer the river. The French being com within 200 paces of the ditch flayed; perceyuing that their enemies, kept themselves within their camp, not ftirring any further leaft they should give their enemies such advantage as themselves defired to have. For more then two houres, both the armies were thus at a fland, but no meane flore of thot came from the great Ordenance all that while on either fide whereby the French foote endured great detriment. For Nauarro had planted his artillery in fuch a place, as he might at his pleafure hurt them; but the Duke of Ferrara made great haft, & brought his Artillery in the rere of the army, to another wing of the French, where the archers on hord back were planted, which wing, in regard that the army flood in the form of acreffent, was (welneere) on the rere of the enemics from whence he beganne cruelly so flank their fides efpecialy of the horse for the Spanill foot being brought by Nauarre, into a low place along the rampier of the river, & (by his command) laid flat on the ground could no way be injuried by the thot. Fabritio called out aloud, and vrged the Viceroy by mellengers often fent to begin the battel, before they were torn in pieces by the great Ordnance. But Nawarro being guided by peruerfe ambition would not agree therto. For in regard he had promised himselfe victory, only thorow the value of the Spanish foot, yea, & although al the rest of the army wer slain, yet he imagined, that his glory would bee the more augmented, the more y harmes

were heaped on the rest of the army. By this time, the men of armes and light horfe had enduredfo great a flaughter, as

it could be no longer born; and as a most miferable & dreadful foectacle, here horfes, there men from off those horses, fell down dead and heads & arms being torn from the rest of the body, were seen flying aloft in the aire, whereat Fabritio beganne thus to exclaime. And must we all (quoth ha) dy bere shamefully by the wilful perner fwas of one Maranot Must this army be otter- A nick-nam In lost and not one enemy flaine by ws?Where given in from exe pur formany Tropbees over the French? Must the honor of Spaine and Italy perish for one only Nauarro? No fooner had he spoken these words, but without staying for the figual or any command fro the Viceroy he droug his horfnich ouer the ditch whom the rest of the horse following, Nauarra was forced prefently to give the fignal to his Regiment, & they rifing with violent fury encountred the Germanes, who were by this time come verie neere them. So the battels being met pelmel on all fides together, it was wonderful to behold; & furely this battel was the greatest termed the that ever traly had feene in many yeares : most terrible because that at Tarre washardly any thing battell, elfe, but a ftrong encounter of horfe, And the battels in the kingdom of 2V aples were rather diforderings of array, or rath attempts, the describedly to be termed bat-tels. And at Giaradaedda, the smallest part of the Power and fought: but heere two potent armies fought with harts firmly combined either to vanquish or dy. Being enflamed, not only by perill. glory, and hope, but also mutuall batted. which fleuerall nations bare each other. In the encounter of the German foot with the Spaniards two Colonels of great fame fightbenean the one named Jacob Emfer, a German, & the chief Colonels of great fame fightbenean the one named Jacob Emfer, a German, & the chief Colonels one fight fight. by way of challenge, before the fronts of cob Emfer, the battailes : in which fight, the Spani- Zamudo, ard killing his enemic, became the conqueror . The horsemen of the Confederates, were not compareable to them of France ; beside that day they had bene fo endamaged, and meerely torne by the great Ordenance, that they were thereby made farre interiour. So that, after they had a while fuftayned the force of their enemies, rather by flournes of ftomacke, then fitength of body, and Alegres

to a Spaniard

This battelor Rauenna was

gree and his

Fabritio de Colonna fighting very valiantly, hadbin taken by the Duke of Ferraraes Soldiers. Wherefore, feeing themselues nolonger able to hold but against the enemicatury, & enfirinced also by the example of their Capsaines, turned their backs likewife. For the Viceroy and Garuaiall, neuer tarrying theyrrermofatriall of valour in their Souldiers, fled; leading away with the the rereward, almost whole and vnroucht. With them also fleet intonia de heurya man (as then) of mointeonditionabut afterward being exercited in all degrees of marrial fernices, became a

and Paluda raken. Sed T

Chap.s.

The flight of

the Viceroy

and Carnaial

and Antonio

de Leua.

very famous Generall. Now all the light horfemen were ouerthrowne, and Pefcara their Oaptaine, weltring in blood & wounds; was raken alfin and fowns the Marquelle of Paluda, who brought the fecond battail into the fight, through a field of dirches, bufher, & bryats, which much difordered the aray Bofide, the field was concred wholly (as it were) with the mangled bodies of men & horfes, which proned no final hinderance to them. Bur yet the Spanish footebeing forfaken of the horfemen foughbwith in credible fiercenes. And although they had bindiminhat rapulled at their firft encoutringwhilishoidermanes, by reafon of the fitongranks of Pikosayerafter thelicanie brithin the reach of their Swords many of the Spaniards (beingloonered with their The flinhard Fargets) got hetween the legs of the Cenhogmanyof patts. With their Daggers, and folcommitmanes, wounding them in thofodifarmed ting avery great flaughter among them attayned (almost) to the midft of the battaile. Among whom the Gascoigne foot, having won the way betweent the River and the Rampier, had fharply charged the Italian foote, who although they had fustained great losse, by the Ordenance play ing hothy upon themose they had utterly expelled then, if their had nor given a fresh and violent charge on them with his horsemen, & with grenter force the good fortune. For when he faw his Son Finerrees flaine in his fight; and almost at the very first encounter; he vnwilling to furnine, after a loffe flugicar and greenous; ranne in with his horie, even among the thickeft of his enerdies; and fighting like a most valiant Captaine, after hee had flainemany, was flaine himfelfe.

The Italian foote, when they could no

longer hold out against forgreat a multituide began to thrink but part of the Spaniards comming welleit fuccor, they kept Atilin the battaile; and the Gorman foote, oppressed by the other part of the Spaniardercould lumfely fland up any longer. Burnowall the Spanish troopes of horle being pur toffight Gaston dus Fois with 4 great multitude of his horlemeder frefft lvolvithe Spantardscand thed retiring raafform delice of the field march linghaggood acraylandin no part biokeni took the way lying between the River & the high banck going in afrequall paret with their Front very thickeof men, and repelling the Ireach with the ftrength therof began to redrive and of derly depart our of the field Which 2 mairio behold ing was more defitous of death then life? Pedro de Na-& therefore not departing out of the bat-prisoner. taile, was ta-c prisoner. But helr minded de Fois, not brooking to fee the Spanish footomarch thus away fafely & (Vi Ctorslike) with their whole rankes vnbroken, perceining alfo, that the victory was imperfect, voleffethey were broken as well as the rellein a vehement filty, he charged on their rere with a troop of horfe. But he beeing immediately enclosed in among The death of mong them, and thrown off from his defenceall, dantor de hore, or (as orliers lay) opprefied with the Fork, & meet flundering of his owne horfe was flaine ly though his within Pike thruft into his fide. And doubtleffe, if they ougher to with for coatli (according as common upinion is that hade attained to the highest degree of felicitys then affiredly the death of this not ble Centlemen was most vofortunate, hauing gotten fo glorious & eminent a viz dory. He dyed a very your man, having now won (among all me) immortall fame. because within the space of a Moneille, (being a Generall, almost before he was a Soldier) with incredible celerity & good finecesse; he had getten so many glorious victories. The Hord Laurrech (his Coufin german) having received twery greenous Laurech conwoundestaybelide him, well neere dead ; fin germane burbeing barried to Ferrara, was faued by to Gaffon du the diligent ente and cure of good Chy-

the thousand foote also lest at Montona: they were charged on allfides. Befide,

fending for Palice with the rereward, and

the bag and baggage taken together with their Enfigns & Ordenance: as also the

rargions. Thus through the death of no-

ble Du Foingthe Spanish footewere fuffe-

red to march away without impeachmer.

The rest of the Army was put to slight, all

Don Pedro de Naustro.

Much harme

done by the

great Orde-

nance on ey

6.5

ther fide.

What prifo. ners were taken in this harrel.

The number of men that were flain on both fides

Colonna, Wanarro, the Marquelle of Paluda, Ritonto and Pelcara, and manie other Princes, the cheefe of the Nobilitie, and men of best name among the Spaniardes and Neapolitans . The number of them that were flaine in this battell, is altogether vocertaine, yet among the variety of many reports, most do affirme, that (on both fides) there were flaine ten thouland at the least, whereof the third part vvere French, and the rest made vp among their enemies. But without all controversie, the loffe on the victors fide was farre the greater, by reason of the death of Du Foix, Alegres, and many of the French Nobility, as also of Jacob Emfer, and other the valiantest Captaines of the German foot. to whose valour and manhood this victory (bought with fuch a deere effusion of blood)was chiefly attributed. Moreover, many Captains of the Gaf-

Popes Legate, John de Medicis, Fabricio de

coignes and Piccards (which Nations loft that day all their glory amog the French) were flaine with Mounfieur Molard : but the death of Du Foix turpassed all other loffes, with whom the courage, firength, life, and fiercenes of that army was veterly extinguished. The greatest part of the vanquished, that escaped from the battel, fled to * Cefena, & from thence to further places: neither did the Viceroy flay any where, vntill he came to Ancona, whether he brought but very few of his followers. For, the Duke of Vrbine, not onely rayled vp the Countrimen against them, but alfo fent fouldiers to doe thelike in Pefare; onely they escaped safe, that passed thorough the Florentines Dominions.

And although after this battell, the vi-Gor Army tooke and facked Rauenna, yet within very short time after, when the couctous Treasurer of Normandie (to sauc charges) had dismissed the Italian Soldiers; and part of the men of Armes vvere returned for France, and the Emperor had reuoked the Germanes: they were (by a new Army of Switzers that came in the Popes ayde, and with whom also joyned the Venetians) quite dispossessed of the whole Dukedome of Millaine, and all that euer the French King had beside in Italy.

CHAP. VI.

What they were whom the world tearmed by the name of the Sibillaes; Of their Prophefies : but more principally of those shings which they Bake concerning Chris Stian Religion.

THe History of the Sibils, is generally held to be very certaine, because euery one (almost) knoweth, that they foretold and prophefied many things. Neuertheleffe, to know when, whence and what they were, what they did, & at what times they wrote and prophefied, is most familiar to him that hath read ancient and authenticall bookes. It made me therefore The dium the more willing, to make a Collection of phefic belon their history, and so much the rather, be- ed on those cause it is a matter of no meane maruel, to women. contemplate the gift of Prophefy, which God gaue to those women in divers manners. But particularly to prophefie of the comming of Christ, of his life, of his pasfion, and other great mysteries of our holy faith : thefe we do purpofe to fpeake of briefly, to the end, vehe Ethnicke Pagan may not any way excuse himself (althouh he will reade but his owne bookes onely) no more then the lew in reading his, and will not accept nor beleeue our faith . I write this the rather because (by common The Sibille confent) those bookes were receyued among all the Gentiles , and the Sibillaes the Gentio. credited, especially by the Romanes, who in all theyr affayres and necessities had still their recourse to the Sibilline bookes, and tooke their best and most serious counsels from them.

All Historians, both Greeke & Latine have written of them:our intent then shall best fit it selfe, without selecting fo great a number, to make choise of the cheefest, the better to avoide prolixity, & fet them down in some orderly maner. Diodorus Siculus. Pliny Solinus Servius Martianus Capellus, Lactantius Firmianus, Elianus, Suidas haue white Strabo, Marcus Varro, Virgil, with the concerning the Sibile foundest part of al the Poets. S. Augustin, Eulebim Orofim, and the more part of all our Historians, largely writeth on them.

Diodorse faith that the word Sibil or Sibilla implieth to much, as if a man should fay A woman Propheteffe, & filled or infpiInterpretati · on of the word Sibilla.

Chap. 6.

Encides; and Lactantius in his first Booke of Divine Institutions, nameth them, The Councell of God. Suidas termeth it Prophetelle. These Authors doe not agree how many there were of these women neither confent at what times; because some determine more, and others leffe. Martianus Capellus makes mention but of two, others remember foure as Alianus doth in his variable histories. Marcus Varro recordeth ten, whereof Lactantine Firmianus to follow.

The first was of Persica, named Samber.

ta, of whom Nicanor maketh great menti-

on euen he that wrot the actions of great

Alexander. Others fav. that shee was of

Chaldea, & others, that the was a lewesse,

borne in a town feated nere to the red fea.

called Noa. Her father was named Berofus

and her mother Erimantha: the composed

24.bookes in verfe, wherein the recounted

of Christ, his life, and miracles. But yet

they were vnder concealement, and deli-

uered with an artificiall obscuritie, which

was not to be vnderstoode of eueric one:

whereto al the other Siballaes conformed

themselues. So that Lactantius Firmianus

without particularizing any one of them,

describeth their particular Prophesies of

Christ. Saint Augustine maketh a summa-

thefe very wordes.

Diam.Intit. Sibilla Perfi sacalled also

Diffent abou

the Sibilles

Lall Firm in

mmber.

The prophe-fic of Sibilia Perfica,concerning christ

He Shall be taken by the wicked handes of unbeleeuers and they shall give him blows on the face with their facrilegious hands of spet on him with their foul polluted mouths: And he (hall give them his shoulders, suffering the to be whipped and he holding his peace, without Beaking any word, they shall thereby not know whence his words came. He Shall likewife be crowned with thorns, giving him gall to eat or vinegar to drink. Behold what feasting they shal make for him: so that they blind and ignorant people, thou fbalt not know thy God, converfing among men. But fbala crown him with thornes, providing for him vinegar or gall. Again, the weile of the Temple (hall be rent of the plaine bright day at noone, shall be like night, obscured or darkened for the space

of three houres. And when he hath bin in hel. be shal returne so life, and rife againe. Thele words are so pregnant, that they

red by God. Seruius on the fourth of the pare the very proper tearines of the Euan, Her word; a gelists writing on Christ, and the verie the Property fame that the Prophets prophefied, efpe- and Evangecially Efay, whereunto our holy Church lift. giveth absolute beleefe. Beside, these Prophefies of the Sibillaes, are derived fro the writings of Lattanting, S. Augustine, and Cicero, from Marcus Varra, & other Authors of the Gentiles, who dyed before the birth of Christ, as Lactantius ap- Leg Firmin proueth, And fav moreouer (of the felues) dawn inthe, lib that they faid, That he fhall raife the dead : 4.cep. 15. speaketh in his first booke & him I meane The lame of impotent shall walke and runne Coundly : the deafe shall beare ; the blind shall (ee: the dumbe shall beake plainly. A little farther is added, With fine loanes de two fithes, hee fall feede fine thoufund men in the wildernesse: and that which remaineth. Shal ferue for fatisfaction to the hope of manie .

> The second, they say, was a Natine of 2.5 ibilla Libia Libia, and therefore named Stbilla Libica. Europelan Pro. Ofher is large mention by Europedes in his Prologue called Lamia.

Thus farre for the first Sibilla.

wonderful things, concerning the coming The third named her felfe Themis, and was firnamed Delphica, in regard that the 3. Sibila Dilwas borne at Delphos. Of her speaketh phica, called Chrisippus, in his booke of Dinination: & alto themis. this woman (according to Pliny) the Ro- diain mans made a Statue voto, and thee lined Plinin 1,7 s. 9. before the destruction of Troy: fo that Homer hath fet downe in his workes, manie verses concerning her . Diodorus Siculus Diodor Sicul ry of some things, which this woman and faith, that she was called Dapbne, and was the rest said of Christ, and among other) daughter to Titessus, and that the Argines faith, that the was called Daphne, and was in lib. o. cap. 14 having subdued Thebes, they fent her to Delphos, where afterward thee became a Propheteffe in the oracle of spollo: fo that (according to his relation) in that respect The was called Delphica.

... The fourth was named Cumaa, or Italiana, & not Cumana Amalthea, of whomwe no shall have canfe to speake anon. She was a native of Gimeria, a City of Campania, necre to Cuma. Her learned and judicious Prophefies, are written by Neuvin in the Punicke Bookes, and by Pilonius in his Annal. Annales, and referred by Lactantius, and by Firgil in his Eglogue, which beginneth Sicelides muladace

The fift was that to famoully remebred Sibilla Erythrag, who fo clearly (by Gods affiftance) prophesied the greater part of our Religion. V Vherefore as Lattantius fayeth; In times long fince, those Gen- Litt. Firm in tiles reputed it as folly, or a defect of braine,

Punic Pifonan

The couetou Treasurer of Normandy.

A Towns of Picenum in I

taly, beyonde

Appeninus.

Appollod,in lib

Eufe's in Hift. Eccl lib. s cap.

Aug in lib, 16

The prophe Erythraa.

de Cinitate dei.

naturall things which they wrote, beeing declared in Bookes of ancient Historians and Poets. Appollodorus writeth of this Sibilla, that the Greekes going to besiege Troy, thee prophetied to them that Troy should be destroyed. Wherfore, all those that speake of her, make her more ancient then the destruction of Troy : vet Eulebins maketh her more novell, for hee woulde haue her live at fuch time as Romulus lyued in Rome. And Strabo faith, that the lived in the time of Alexander the Great. The Verses of this Sibilla Erythraa, are recited by Eulebius: the first words whereof, being traduced into our language, are thus : lefus Christ, Son of God, the Sauiour: which is a most admirable thing to think on. The confideration of those verses, and their further addition, are set downe by S Augustine, in his 18. Booke of the City of God, delivering it in these expresse

under stood not how it might bee, that a vir-

gin flould have a childe; and other super-

The earth shall sweate, a signe of judgement : from Heauen shall come a King , who (ball be King for euer: and further, known in humane flesh, to the end, that by his presence be shall judge the world. By which means, the incredulous, as well as the faithfull shall see God with their eyes, exalted among his Saints. And in the end of the world, the fouls of men shall appeare in their owne flesh, and hee shall iudge them himselfe, when the rotunditie of the inculted earth, shall be full of clods of dust andgrasse. Men shall cast away Idols and Images, and all their Iewels and riches. He shal penetrate the inferiour parts, and breake the gates of the darkest hell. Then Shall favre and cleare light be given to the Saints, To the flame of eternal fire shall burne the Wicked . All secrets shall be discourred, enery man shal be knowne of his companion: and GOD [hall discouer the Consciences and hearts of all. There shall be weeping and enashing of teeth, and the Sunne and the Starres shal bee darkned; the heavens shallbreake, and the Moone lose her light; the mountains shal be humbled, and the valleyes made equal with the hilles . There shall not be any thing in the world that Balbe higher or lower one the another: mountaines and valleyes shall be even and plain of all things shall finish. The earth shall be dryed, and converted to dust, Ivels, frings, and rivers shall burne, and with the same fire shall

to talke of the Sibillaes verses: because they the earth, sea, and ayre, he burned also. Then from beauen shall found a Trumpet, with a dreadfull and horrible found, and the earth in opening. Shall discouer the darkenesse and confusion of hell, and the paines dy torments of the miserable damned.

Thefethings, and many more befide. are spoken of this Sibilla in those Verses. declaring clearly Christ God incarnate, with the last judgement, and refurrection of the dead. Now these things, before they came to paffe, were no way intelligible: & that was the reason, why the Ethnickes and Gentiles might holde them to be follies and mockeries. In like manner, this Sibilla Erythras, knowing well that her prophete which should happen, concerning her other tells. owne felfe, spake these words : They will repute me for a blind of mocking propheteffe. Neuertheleffe, when those things which I speak shal be accomplished and verified, they will remember me, and no more tearme me a lyar but a Prophetes of the Great God.

The Romans had great flore of the verfes written by this Sibilla Erythraa, wherof Fenestella speaketh more at large, and Fenestelinith, faicth: That by a decree of the Senate, they de For. fent Ambassadors unto her in regard of her Prophesies: and that they brought backe great flore of her verfes, which they laid vo in the Capitoll, with them which they had before. She was borne in Erythraa in Ionia, "A Cityin Aa Prouince of the leffer Afia, and abutting Chios, voon Caria: this I relate the rather, beecause there are found many other Citties to be of that name; as one in Lybia, another in Bætta, another in Locris, and another in the Isle of Cyprus. But that shee was of that Erythraa in Ionia, Strabo is my Author, and faith. That it hath a Port on Strabo in lib. the fea, neere to a Mountaine.

Another Sibilla, being the fixte, was borne in a place named Phiton, in the Isle of Samos, which is in the Ægaum fea, nere to Thrace : or elfe in the other Ifle of Samos in the same sea, and opposite against Ephelus, for which cause, thee was called Sibilla Samia, of whom further mention is Eratoftent. made by Eratostenes J.

The seauenth in order, is Sibilla Cu- 7. Sibilla Cumana, named Amalthaa : others call her Demophila; and Suidas tearmeth her Hierophyla. Shee was called Cumana, because sheedwelt and prophesied in the *A pleasant Citie of Cuma in Italy, a Prouince of City in Cam-Campania, necre vnto Baia. Of this wo- Seafia.

Nine Books brought to Tarquinius Superbus to be fold, by this Sibilla

Chap. 6.

Cumana.

Feneftel, in lib.

Pirgil. in Aen. lib.s.

Plm in lib.9.

b.7.cap.14.

man writeth Dionisius Halicarnasseus, So- 1 be the other Cumaa, whereof we haucallinus, Aulus Gellius, and Serutus. This ready spoken. For it can be no way likely, Sibilla brought to fell to Tarquinius, the that Firgil should suppose a Sibilla, at such proud King of Rome, nine feueral books: neuertheleffe, Suidas faith, that it was to Tarquinius Priscus. For which Books, she demanded three hundred peeces of gold. moniethen of great value: but because fold the Bookes, was named Cumana, although the price feemed excessive to the king, he it was not her name, and yet not with stanwould not buy them. Whereupon, the burned three of them in his prefence, and yet demanded the fame fumme for the fix that remained. Then the King thought her motion to be more impertinent then the former, and feemed to mocke her: whereupon she burned three more of the fixe, and told him, that the had but three left of the nine, and yet he should give her as much for those three, as if hee had bought them all. The King being amazed at this her confident determination. and conceiuing (by good aduice) that those Bookes must needs containe some bunea, and was borne in the Citty of Ti- butina. extraordinary great mysteries; bought the three at that price, which formerly the demanded for them all, and those Bookes were placed in the Capitoll, where they were held in foueraigne reuerence & ve-

Pliny faith, that the had but 3 Bookes

in all and that the burned two of them, &

vet would have as much for that one, as for all the three. But it sufficeth, that those Books were kept in great reputation, with them that the Romanes had of the other Sibillaes. For as Marcus Varro reporteth. er." arro in from Lattantiue; the Romanes bestowed great cost and paines, in searching all Cities and Townes of Greece, Alia, and Italy, and brought to Rome all the Verfes & Prophesies, that could bee recoursed of the Sibillaes; especially those of Sibilla Erythrea, for the care and fafe keeping of which Bookes, fifteene men were particularly appointed, and none other but they might touch them . Fenestella faveth. that when the Capitoll was burnt, the Senate fent againe to entreate Sibilla Erythrea, to helpe them in those Bookes. In which respect it is to bee presumed, that they had not at Rome the Bookes of Sibilla Cumana onely, but likewife al the reft. And that Sibilla, whereof Virgill maketh mention in the beginning of his 6 Book, who kept herfelfe at Cuma, where (he fayeth) Aneas tooke shipping; must needs

time as Aeneas entredinto Haly, nor that the lived till the fit King of Rome. Befide, Servius interprets the same passage, servius in 1.5.2 faving. Or elfe it must needs be, that shee who sup.9. ding, she dyed in that Citty.

The eight Sibilla, is faid to be a native 8 Sibilla Hellein the Territory of Troy, in a place named frontia. Marmifa, and this woman is reputed to be very ancient. For * Heraclides Ponticus faieth, that he lived in the time of Solon the scholler to Philosopher, and of the great King Cyrus. Palo and Ari.

The ninth sibilla, divers Authors doe sibilla Phyreport to be of the Country of Phrygia, Bia. and that thee prophetied in the Citty of Ancyra; of which name were two Cities. one in Phrygia, and the other in Galatia.

The tenth Sibilla, named herfelfe Al- 10 Sibilla Tibur, which standing fixteene miles distant the Sabines from from Rome, thee therfore was tear- 16 miles from med Sibilla Tiburtina.

Now, all these Sibillaes lest many Bookes and Verses, wherein they prophefied of things that were to come, & prin- The Romans cipally of the fortunes of Rome, were they respect of the good or bad : fo that in all important affaires, the Romanes would diligently fearch, and turne ouer the leaves of the Sibiline Bookes, and order their gouernment wholly by them. And in the fame manner, as when wee would have our speeches credited, we vie to fay, this is Gospell: so would they fay, these are the words of Sibilla; fuch was their credite & account among them. And for this cause Innenall faid.

Credite me vob is folium recitare Sibilla:

Heereupon some faid, that the Sibillaes gaue their answeres, written vpon leaues of Trees, as Virgill witnesseth in his fixt Booke . Cicero speaketh of those Sibil- Cicero in Dissi laes with great reuerence, faying : As wee nat lib 2. have formerly done, even fo from the capitall Letters of their Verses, we may derive, great, good and gracious fentences.

Among many other things, they have Divers Profpoken much of Christian Religion, con-phesesoncerning the birth, life, and death of lefus cerningChrist Christias we have already declared. Se

luuenall. Virgil.in Ac-nidlib.e.

The acknow

ledgment of

the Sibillaes

Report of fome other

Sibiliaes.

writings.

and shall reione in powerty, concealing his Soueraignty, and shall come from the wombe of a Virgin. And Infephus (although he was a Iew by race and profession) speaking of Iofepb. inlib. the Tower of Babylon, hath these words. Sibilla well remembred it, when the faid thus. At such as men having but one Language, Some of them Shall build a very high Tower, as if thereby they would mount up to Hea-

uen: Godsbal (euenthen) send great windes to destroy it and divers Languages shall happen among the workmen, and therefore is the Tower named Babylon.

of a Virgin, without any flefbly copulation. A-

nother laid : Hee that is to come, shall come,

Thefethings, and others fuch like, were written by the Sibillses, and acknowledged both by Christians, Jewes, and Gentiles, which the Gentiles (for their finnes) scarfely understood. But it fell out well for christians afterward into whose hands thefe Bookes came, as Lattanfins, Eufebius, S. Augustine: the knowledge of which Bookes, or the least part of their Prophefies greatly confirmed the Christian, and quite confounded the Pagane and Gentile. There is report made of some other, who were also named Sibillaes, because they were reputed to be Dinineresses and Prophetesses: as Cassandra, the daughter of King Priamus, and Campusia Celophania, the daughter of Calcas, and Manta Theffalonica, daughter to Tirefias the Thebane: neuerthelesse. Historians

CHAP.VII.

speake onely but of these ten.

Concerning the feuen Maruailes and Wonders of the World , what they were ; also in what severall parts and places of the "World they are remembred to bee by grawest Writers.

CVch as haue read ancient/Historians. Orators, and Poets, do finde, that they make mention in many of their Books, of 7 Meruailes or Wonders of the World. and that they were in divers places. All they that have written, do confent to fix, but concerning the feuenth, there are vatiable opinions, and likewife a great diffe-

billa Delphica faid, The Prophet shall be borne | rence, in placing one before another. Notwithstanding, I purpose to speake first of The fish were the walles of Balylon, which are rancked world. in the number of these Wonders, & vpon good reason, because the greatnesse of the place, as also the scituation thereof, feemeth incredible.

> In our former Volume, and in the Areference Chapter of the diversity of Languages, to the fift to lume of this wee have fufficiently declared, that they worke. were founded in the fame place, whereas Nimrod builded the Tower of Babel, and whereof the Citty tooke name. Concerning those walles, according to the foundest opinions, namely Iustine, and also as Iustinia His Trogus Pompeius faith, they were founded by the famous Queene Semiramis, Molitica, 1719 Pumpa libat. ther to Ninus. Diodorus Siculus, Ammi- Diodor, Sical anus Marcellinus, and Paulus Orofius doe inlib.3. maintaine the same, with the greater part celinlib 33. of our Gentile Authors. Neuertheles, Paul. Orof. 10 S. Augustine, and Insephus in his Antiquities fay, that they were builded by Nim-de cinii, Dei rod, affifted by the proud Gyants then li-loseph, inthe 6, uing. But bee it, that the foundation or reparation of them was done by Semiramis; it is sufficient, that they were greatly ennobled by her.

> The scituation of the City was with a The scitual Plaine on the one fide, and on the other on of the Ch ran the River of Euphrates. The modell & ty and Wales figure of this Citty, was in a quadrangle, and the walles wonderfully high, as also wrought with maruallous cunning. The matter was of stone, joyned with Lime & Ciment, growing in the Mines of that Country; but especially in the great Lake of Indea, where fometime flood Sodome & Gomorrha, named Afphaltida, which yeeldeth fuch 2 kinde of flime or mud, as bindeth like Pitch or Glue, the very firongest that is to be found. Historians do difagree about the height and largenes of the Concerning circuit, which might happen, through the the circuit of diversity of the measures they then vied. the Wallet Pliny faith, that the circuit of those walles Plinin 16 cas was threefcore thouland paces, fo that one of the fquares was fifteene thouland. He also saith, that they were two hundred of them, and the thickasts three fingers breadth, the measure of the Romane foote a and the thicknesse was fifty foote of the fame meafure, which was (indeed) a marret very admirable.

Dadorus Sicula faith, that the wals con- Deder Skali tained in all round about 360 Stades, and lib.s.

that they were so broad and wide, as fixe I score and ten cubites in height, and al-A Stade is re Three hüdred fet on worke

and Orof in

Chap. 7.

Izl.Solin Polyhainlib 3,c.g.

An hundred tall in the

Chariots might eafily be trained in front together, without offending one another. The Bridges, the Mounts, the Towers, & the Gardens, Semiramis caused to bee made, which were works of great aftonish ment. It is credibly fet downe in Records. that shee kept daily at this worke, three hundred thousand me, out of all the kingdomes which were fubicat to her. Quintus Curtius addeth thereto eight Stades more in length, and faith, that they were an hundred cubites high; but Paulus Orosussaith, that they were 480 Stades in length, which amount (taking fix fcore & fine paces in enery Stade) to threefcore thousand paces, as Pliny said. Strabe faith and affirmeth, that they contained three hundred, eighty fine Stades, and also that they were fo broad, as the former named Chariots might in that manner goe on them, and yet not hurt or hinder one ano-

Moreouer, Authors doe report maruaylous things, of Gardens made uppon the Arches and Towres, wherein grew Trees of vnmeafurable height. Inline Solinus confirmes the same with Pluns Some among the Authors do auouch, that the walles without, were engire with Ditches full of water, as large and deepe as an indifferent wide River. In this Citry there were an hundred Gates of mettall, very admirable. And for conclusion, all that is written of the greatnesse and height of the walles, may well be credited, because (in truth) this Citty was the proudest in the whole world, and long time held the vniuerfall Monarchy, which is an especiall argument of her greatnesse. And the fame is also described by Aristotle, when he faith: That being once taken with enemies, they that dwelt at the one end or fide of the City had no advertisement thereof, till three whole daies shace after.

ther, in their passing along together.

The fecond place of the worlds wonwonder of the ders, we give to the Colossus of the Sun, which was at Rhodes. It was a Statue or Figure of a man, offered by the Gentiles, and dedicated to the Sunne, and some say to Iupiter. It was made of mettall, of an incredible greamesse, and in height also like a huge Tower : fo that it could hardly be imagined, how it was made and raised in that manner. Pliny, who discourseth on all things, faith, that it contained three though at the making of it, there were many good workmen continually labourings yet were they twelve years before it could be perfected, and it cost three hundred Talents. He that vndertooke the works mandbip thereof, was named Cares, an Indian by birth, and Scholler to * Lyfip- Caruer of

This Statue was fo immeasurably

men found, that could embrace the great

fingers of this Statue: fo that the very

least of his fingers, was greater then any

Paul wrote, were people of a Citty in Phry-

Returning then agains to our won-derfull Coloffus, I say that it lay there ru-

ined a very long time, euen till the dayes

of Pope Martin the first, which was in the

yeare fixe hundred, when the Infidels, and

the Soldane of Egypt their Captaine,

came vpon the Rhodians, and according

which they found of the reliques of this

Colosius, and they finde nine hundred

Camels to be loden with the mettall. Of

other Coloffes that were at Rhodes, and

in other places, nothing fo great, we pur-

pose not to speake, because our present

aime is at the feuen Wonders of the

pia.named * Coloffa.

À tiotable

great, as it seemed, that the earth could not any longer fustaine it, because according to Pliny and Paulus Orofius, it stood not about fixe and fifty yeares : at the end of which time it fell, by reason of a great quaking and trembling of the earth. After which fall, and namely in the time of Pliny, many went to fee it as a thing to wonder at. For, faith he, there were few

other Statues, how great focuer. And yet he speaketh of an hundred other Golosses of meaner stature, which were also at Rhodes. But that is nothing to our purpose, except some one be defined to say, elication and the F.

that in regard of this greet one, and the other lefter, the Rhodians thereon were called Coloffenfes or Colofsians. But that opinion is not approued by Erasmus, for he saith; That these Colossans to whom S.

> A Towns of Phrygia,nor

as Platina writeth in the life of Pope Mar- Platina in vit. tin, and Antonius Sabellicus, in the third An Sabellic, in part of his Booke: they carried away that 1863.

world onely. In the third place, wee determine the Piramides of Egypt, and vindoubtedly, if The third that be true which Historians haue writ- wonder of the ten of them, they are things deferuing ad-

Some diffeabout the 7 wonders

If we fer afide those ancient Bookes.

we shal vet finde testimonies of our owne

times. Peter Martyr of Millaine, a very

learned man, who was Ambaffadour for

the years I to I. wrote a Booke of what he

had seene and done in his Ambassage.

There he declareth, (as he did the like by

word of mouth) that hee had feene those

Piramids & agreethwith that which those

ancient Authours had written of them.

Particularly, he speaketh of two seene by

him, which were of incredible height, and

faith, that he measured the fonate of one.

finding it to be 315 paces; for that it con-

tained about thirteen hundred in circuit,

and on each fide very huge stones made

up the buildings. Moreouer he faith, that

certaine men in his company, afcended

vp one of them, with very great labour, & long space of time, and they declared to

him, that on the toppe of all (as we vidto

fay) there was one from wholly of it felfe.

fo great, as thirty men might cafily frand

voonit . And when they were about,

they faid, they feemed as if they had loft

their fight, and onely with looking down-

ward, and tooke themselves to bee in a

Cloud, fuch was the extremity of height,

their braines being much troubled, and

turned vpfide-downe. So that (faith hee)

there neede no doubt at all be made, con-

cerning the great number of people em-ployed, and the expences spoken of, in do-

ing those works.

red to touch heaven.

gic of the 1/2 word Pira-mid-

miration. These Piramids were certaine buildings, which began beneathe in quadrangle forme, and so rose vp (in a diminishing manner) a huge height, in the Ihabe of a painted Diamond. And yet notwithstanding, they were of such greatneffe and taulneffe, confifting of fuclerand fo many stones, as also wrought with fuch perfection, as it is no easie matter to describe them, neyther to winne credible oninion of them . And yet (me-thinks) things to fufficiently authorized, by Authors both Christians and Gentiles; men well efteemed and approved; their eredence is not rafuly to be flighted or denied. These Piramids then are as very high towers, finishing in a spire or sharp point, and the crimology of the word commeth of Parin Greeke, as much to fay, as fire, because it feemeth, that the height commeth to leffen and fayle like as a flame of fire doth, more and are to

Among all other Piramids, Historians make particular mention of a which were in Egypt, betweene the Citty of Memphis, which is now the Cayro, and the Ife that maketh or createth Wilus, named Delta, one of which is rancked among the feuen wonders. For it is faid, that to the making thereof, therewere continually imployed three hundred and threefcore thousandmen, and the work lasted twenty whole yeares. Many do affirme it, and particularly Pliny in speaking more amply, alledging ewelue authors for his warrant, as Diedonias Siculus, Strabo, Pomponius Mela, Herodetus, Ammanus Marcellinus, and many more, whereof fome fay, that the foundation and ground-work of this Piramid couered and contained eyelit dayes journey of ground : others fay feaher and most agree on fixe, and as many (little more or leffe) in the height. Pliny faith, that each quadrangle or fquare conrained 882 foote in bredth. The ftones were of Marble, brought out of Arabia, and Pomponius Mela maintaineth, that the most part of them were thirty foote in largenesse. Whereby may be gathered. ployed dayly, that fo many thousand men must needs be builed, fome in cutting and fquaring those stones, others in bringing and carrying them, and other in laying them, befide the mighty multitudes, imployed for fetching them fo far off, and about other

necessary occasions. ad:

Of the other Piramids the like is fooken at leaft of the other two foremamed, one whereof was made by the wantry of the Kings of Egypt, who were the very cheficities richeft in all the world: as well by the world fruitfulneffe of the earth, as in regard alfo, that no man possessed any thing in proper, but onely the King. Besides after such time as 10/eph the Sonne of 1400b, aduited Pharach, to preferue the Corne in seuen yeares abundance, as provision for the time of famine: during which foace by meanes of that Corne, he had all the Lands of his people. Thus you fee how the Kings became rich, and were ferued by their subjects, even as if they had bene their flaues . " And Historians dde The reibad faithfully report; that the Kings caused building the those Piramids to bee builded, onely to Piramids, feed their people that labored about the, and because they should leave no wealth to their successors. For they affected rather, to dispense in this manner with their people, then that any of their heyres fhould attaine the meanes to exceed the

deceassed by their goods and money.

I finde it recorded also, that those Pi- Those Pire ramids ferued for Sepulchers to theyr mids were Kings. And who focuer doth well confider the multitude of hebrew people that Rings. ferued in Egypt, and by whom the Kings made their Citties and Fortresses to bee builded, will not be much amazed heereat, in regard that it is very certaine, that fixe hundred thousand men on foote, befide a great multitude of women & finall children, departed out of that femitude, and that all of them were imployed, and ferued in those wonderfull works. Wherby it is no meruaile at all, that fuch buildings should be made; for good Authors do anouch, that in Rootes, Garlike, and Onions, to sustaine the multitude of wor-hers, there were dispensed 18 hundred men were the Talents, which at the rate (now adayes v(ed) is a million and foure-score thoufand Crownes. Diodorus faith, that round in lib.s. u. All about it, and a large compasse also somewhat farre off, there was not to bee feene the very fmallest stone, newther apparence that any man had trodden there, nor any figne of a foundation; but onely Sandias fmall as the finest Salt. Whereby it med, as if that Piramid had beene plante there by Gods ownerhand, or to haue growne fo naturally and the top lappea-

ny of learned eter Martyr of Millaine, Dame Habell, to the Soldane of Egypt, in concerning of thole Pira-

Ghap.7.

great large

Stone on the

top of the Pi

The fourth Wonder of he world. Toomb. in Nett. Atti

The fourth Meruale or VVonder, was the Manfolan. Artemifia was He fourth Meruaile or VVonder wife to Manfolus, King of Caria, a Prouince in the greater Afia. This woman (according to Aulus Gellius, and other hiitorians) to dearely affected her husband, as it was generally recorded for a most norable example. Her hisband the king dying first, the lamented his death with teares and complaints more then were of ordinary custome. Needs would the red a Toombe or Sepulcher for him, an-Swerable to the extraordinary loue shee bare him ; and fuch (indeede) it prooned to be, that it was recorded among the feushivonders of the world. The stone of the whole confiructure, was of a most ex-

cellent Marble, confifting of fourthun-

dred and elenen foote in circuite about. and five and twenty cubites in height sit had also about it, fixe and twenty Colombs of admirable frome, and likewife of as famous feulpinte.

the Kings Catholique, Don Ferdinand, & The building was open on all fides, with Arches of fenency three foote in widenesser and it was framed by the hands of the most exquisite workmen then to be the Toombe. found . The part towards the haff, was such as the world as then made & engraven by Seopas; that on the had not their North, by Briax; the South fide by Time-like. theus, and that on the West, by Leochares. The perfection of the work was fuch, and that on the whole body fo fumptuous & beautifullias partly it was therefore called Maufolaa, and in regard also of the king, for whom it was made: fo that even to this veryeday, when any Toombes of fuch superficiall Arte are made, they are called Manfoles. Of thefe things mention is triade by Pliny, Pomponius Mela, He- Plinin lib.35. rodotas: Strabo also remembreth them, fo doth Anisa Gellius, and many other him in libes. ftorians! It is found written, that Arte- Herodor, int, mifia, after the death of her frusband, lived Strabo in incontinual teares and mourning, and lib.7.
that the dyed before the worke could become the worker works are the library with the library works are the li fully finished! having drunke the bones of her husband, beate into powder, which the burned and buried in her owne body. that it might be the Sepulcher for his.

> THE fift Edifice of these VVonders; The fift Won was the Temple of Diana, whom the der of the Gentiles adored as a Goddefle, and it was The Temple builded in the Citty of Ephefus in Afia, in of Diana at the Pronince of Ionia. Of this Temple, Epheius. great speech was made throughout the world: fo that one named Democritus, wrote a particular Booke thereof. Pliny writing of this Temple, faith that the Amozones caused it to bee builded, and that it contained foure hundred and five and twenty foote in length, and two hundred and twenty in largeneffe. The worke was fo admirably arteficiall, that it had 220 yeares to the perfecting. It was built in a Lake, to preuent the peril of earthquakes; and it is faid withall, that on the founda- The foundation was laide great ftore of coale-duft & tion of the wooll thereupon, the better to make firm and fure the moist and marshy place. It had arr hundred and feuen Colombs or Pillars of most excellent Marble, & each

of them was made by all the Kings of A-

Plin. In 116. 16. cap. 34

fcore thou-

dred & three

Plin in lib 36. Cap. 12. Diodor Sicul. in lib.t. Strabo in lib.vlt la in lib. 1. Heredot.in l. 2.

celiin l.z

The bredth of euery '

twenty yeares

fia: thirty feven of them were of most curious cunning and sculpture, and all the other of the choyfest Marble.

Strabo in lib.

Solin in cap 14

Pampanius Me-

Plin.in lib.

6.cap. 49.

Paler.Max.in

Solin.in lib. 3.

The fame of

derostratus.

Lantis.

The principall Masters of this worke, according to Pliny, was Drefiphon: but belequing Strabe it was Archiphron. Notwithstanding, this diversity of opinion is fufferable, confidering, what length of time the businesse lasted: and therefore there must needs be more then one Mafter, especially for so many performances & varieties, in the divertity of fuch times and intelligence. Solinus and Pomponius Mela fay, that the Amazones builded & dedicated this Temple: and yet Solinus affirmeth, that when the mighty King Kernes went to the conquest of Greece,& that he burned all the Temples ; yet hee reserved this onely still standing. All Hiflorians do confent with one accord, that the Pillars of this Temple supported the planked feeling of wood, the most excellently wrought that could be deuised, and that this whole couering was of Cedar, and all the doores and wainfcotted works were of Cipres.

Yet afteeward, a villaine feeing this folemne and foueraigne building, conceiued a lewd defire to burno it,25 (indeed) he did. And being taken for the fact, confessed, that he did it to no other ende, but to leave a famous renowne of his deed to the world. Wherefore Valerius Maximus, in his titles of defire of renowne, and Aulus Gellius affirmeth alfo, that it was Aill,Gel. in l.2. prohibited (vnder greeuous penalty) that any man should doe so much as write his name, because he should veterly lose the fame and renowne, which he so earnestly affected. Yet all this ferued to flender purpose, for Solinus and Strabe both fay, cap. 14. Strabo in li.14. that he was named Herostratus, and that of him came up the viuall Prouerbe, that when any man would ftriue to be famous for fome vicious deed; people would comonly fay; This is the renowne of Herostra-

> To speake yet of some other memorable matters to this purpole, it deferueth fome respect to remember, that the very fame day as the Temple was burning, Alexander the Great was borne, the Conquerour of all Afia; heercof are Authors, Plutarch in the life of Alexander, and Cicero, in his fecond booke of the Gods nature, where he speaketh it in two places,

and likewise in his booke of divination. Further he faith, that while the Temple burned, the Sages prognosticated the deftruction of all Afia; euen as afterward it was ouercome by Alexander . Some do write, that this Temple was built agains afterward, in much more great and excel lent manner then before, and that the Min fler of the worke was named Democrat 376

THE fixt Wonder, was the Idoll or The 6 West Image of Jupiter Olympus, which was der of the in his Temple in Achaia, betweene the Cithe Inage of ties of Elia and Pifa: and the place was Jupiter Olia. named Olympus as also the Temple, in re- pus. gard of Jupiter Olympus, of whom write both Strabo and Pomponius Mela. They Strabo into 1. maintaine, that this Statue or Image, Laintha. which stood in the Temple, was much renowned, as well for arreficiall perfection and admirable workmanship, as also for the greatnesse thereof. It was made of Porphiry, some say of Ipory, and by the hand of Phidias, the most excellent Caruer and Engraver for Imagery (in Gold or Inory) that euer was ; albeit Pli- Plin lib -35. my nameth divers other. Strabo faith that \$ 36. the excellency thereof confifted in the greatnes, and yet the matter which made it more admirable, was in being wrought of Porphiry, knit and vnited together of

Some fay, that Phidias wastaxed with one onely imperfection, to wit, that hee had not proportioned the Image to the capacity of the Temple, because hee had made it fitting, and so great, as when due consideration was made, what the height thereof would have bene, if he had made him flanding vpright on his feet, the temple had no way bene able to have contained him.

infinite fmall peeces.

Neuertheleffe, the renowne of this Image did most highly illustrate the place. and made the Temple more knowne, then the place where deco otherwise it would have bene, although lympian it was formerly held in groat efteeme, by sames were reason that in the very same place, woro such that in the very same place, woro such that in the very same place, woro such that in the very same place, woro kept the sports and wrastlings called Olym- ber, vizce pian. And thence it came, that the yeares flut, Curfut, were counted by Olympiades, which they Palafia. made from five years to five years : which pastimes were first instituted by Hercules, and afterward being left off, they were a-gaine re-established by Aemanius, but (ac-

cording

"He alfo made a good-ly Library, which contained 50000.

Plin in lib.35. tap. 10. Iul Caf. in sa ment,lib.a.

celim l.s Salm, in cap. 2

cording to some Authours) by Sphiron, foure or fine yeares after the destruction of Troy, especially according to Eusebius, and then began the yeare of the first olym-

Chap.7. The seuen VV onders of the world.

The fenenth Wonderof the World. The Tower

la in lib.2.

689.7+

Plinin lib.s.

How the Ifle

came to be

Ow concerning the feuenth VVon-der, fome fay, that it was a Tower-which flood in the Isle of *Pharos*, neere to the Citty of Alexandria in Egypt. Pharos was a finali Island, long and narrow, feated on the coast of Egypt, ouer against the mouth of 2011us, which in former time (according to Pomponius Mela and Pliny) was wholly (as it were) engire with firme Land, and afterward in the times of these Authors, the Sea imbraced this firm land, excepting onely a Bridge, whereby men went from the one place to the other. In the firme land is the great Citty of Alexandria, builded by Alexander the Great; which Citty was afterward a Colony of Inline Cafar. In this Ifle (named Pharos, after the name of a great Pilot, which belonged to Menelaus, and was there buried) the Kings of Egypt crecked a Tower of Marble, maruailous in height and cunning workmanship, vpon a Mountain en-uironed with water: the artesiciall performance of which Tower was fuch, that it coft 800. Talents, which value foure hundred and fourescore thousand Crownes. after the computation of Budans. And it was built for no other purpose, but to sec vp (in the night time) a lighted fire there-

Cafar in his Commentarios, highly praifeth the height and workmanship of this Tower: and faith, that it was also called Phares, as taking name of the Island. As much faith Ammianus Marcellinus, declaring the history of this Tower. Also Solimus in his Polybistor, in the ende of his 34 Chapter faith, that all the Towers which were afterward made, and for the like occasion, each of them was named Pharos. after the name of this, as was the Pharer of Mesins, and in other places. And I am of the minde, that the kindled fires or lights, which are ordinarily carried in

Ships, asguides to other in the night, vp-

on, Beacon-wife, to guide and direct fuch. Ships as came to take landing there: and

this Tower, according to the greatest o-

pinions, was crecked by King * Ptolomans Philadelphus, and the Master Architect

that made it, was named Sittratus, which

is confirmed to vs by Pliny.

pon this occasion are called Pharoles.

Thus this Tower is the last of the wonders, although (by diners) it is not named in their number, but in flead thereof, the hanging gardens of Babylon are reckoned. The hanging hanging gardens of Babylon are reckoned, Gardensof wherof we have already spoken. Lact anti-Babylon. us Firmianus confirmeth it and faith, that Ladau, Firm, in thefe gardens were vpon Arches & Tow- Diam. Laffit.L.4 ers, yet shelving downward, admirable for great Trees in no meane abundance, and great store of Fountains: the forme of this building is amply described by Diodorus Diodor Sicul. Siculus Calius Rhodiginus, discourfing on inlib.s. the feuen VVonders of the world. doth Cal Rhed,in 1.3 not infert this Tower of Phares : but the Obelifque of Semiramis, which was made The Obeliske after the same structure and forme of a Piramid for it began to in a quacrangle, and finished voward in a point, and there was no difference betweene an Cheliske and a Piramid but that the Obeliske was all of one entire peece, and therefore of no fuch height as the Piramids. I finde it written. that fome of them have bin great like Towers, and of a very goodly stone. There is one now at Rome, nam'da Needle, which Cafars Neewas brought out of Egypt; and it is admirable to fee the greatnes therof, as alfo to liske. judge how it was brought thither. Concerning the Obeliske of Semiramis, wherof Calius reporteth, and nameth it in the number of the 7 V Vonders : he findeth it credibly anouched, that it was an I so foot The height in height, and 24 foote fquare in a quadrangle, fo that the whole circuite was 90 foote, and this Stone was so taken whole, out of the Mountaines of Armenia, & by the command of Semiranis brought into Chaldean Babilon. But in truth, when due confideration is made, how it should bee taken out of the Quarry, brought thence, and erected up on end : it might appeare a niatter incredible, if Antiquity had not yeelded things as strange, and certified to vs by Authors, well deferuing beleefe, yea, and of other great Obelisks, made by the kings of Egypt. Pliny describeth how they are fetcht foorth of their Quarries. Of the Piramids, Obelisks, Statues, & Coloffes, mention is made by Polyphius, in begin- Polyphin lib. ning of his Booke, cald Hypne-rotomachia, Hypneretonic Therefore I need not to make any further relation of them, fearing I have offended already, by prefuming ouer-farre vpon your patience, in what hath bin faid, concerning these 7 VV onders of the world.

the fquarence

CHAP.

Plut in vit. A lex. Cicero in Nat. Denso z.o in lib.de DiuiCHAP. VIII. The Oration of Antipater, the Father to Herod, which he made before Cafar standing accused for following Pompeies part.

THE ARGUMENT.

A Fter that Pompey had bin vanquished by Cæsat he was massared in Egipt, by them whose lives he had sometime saved. Antigonus the Iew Aspiring to the Royalty, accused (before Cæfar) Antipater the Idumzan, to have ferred and favoured Pompey in his enterprizes. And that he had done no matter of fernice in Egipt, which could be interpreted for Cælar; but rather for the Succour of Mithridates, and to cover his fault committed in following Pompey. But Antipater, for the better apparance of his good fernices, renting off his garments, | bewed what wounds he had received in the fer nice of Cafar, and fuddenly accompanied this fearry testimony, with thefe words enfung.

Wounds are a Soldiours fpeaking wi himfelfe is

The effect of

the accusati-

on objected

by Antigonu

pater.

filent.

against Anti-

Ehold heere affured and cere not any particular affection (whatfoeuer) that made me follow hims for Laffifed against Cafar, these wounds so apparant, and which are shining markes of my soules

conceptions, to speak & defend the poore accused criminall. I offer to thee (Lord Cafar) these wounds, as pledges of that affection which lies hidden in my heart, and wherof I make you a liberall present. These are the gages of my faith, and this is an obligation written in my heart, and which wil remaine engrauen heere all my life time. If you will not pleafe to credite my fellowes in Armes, nor to liften to the of my Nationaler it be demanded of mine enemies, and know from them, for whole fake I have received all thefe woulds. And what is the reason that I am thus pursued? but because I have bin noted loyally affecled, in orfering you my faithfull feruice.

I vnderstand and perceine, that mine enemy reprocheth me with friendship to Pompey, and fixeth before his owne eyes. that I have favoured his cause. I confesse friend, not to men, but to the Romane , it is his custome to make war, and that he name; and that never my defires were elfewhere addicted nor my duty & diligence any way applyed, but onely in doing my most humble service to the Senate and people of Rome I have then born Arms. not for a Romane neither for his particular profite, but for the fernice of all. And let the case be admitted, that Pomper was acceptable to me, that I carried his cause. and maintained his quarrell; wherein am I therefore to be blamed? Hee was long time (before) my friend that hee had mar with you, or any discord grew betweene him and Cafar. Moreover (my Lord) he was your Kinseman, and you were his Father in law. He being in Indea, there was repolt.

that made me follow him: for I affifted him, as being Generall of the Roman Ar- A Soldiour my. And yet notwithflanding I never ha- flands oblizarded my felfe fo far for bim, neither did bis General he ever finde fuch kinde knowledge of affection in me, as (for his fake) to take fo many wounds, as I have received in feruing you It is for you that I gave the pledges of death, and for whom I became an enemy to mine bwne body, exposing it to the Darts Arrowes, and Weapons of your enemies. The sales

But is it any matter of amazement, if a

flaue, nurffed vp in feruitude, do not know what wounds are nor the hazards happe- cannot judge ning in warre? Or should its offend any of blows, man, if a disloyall fugitive should be ignorant what the worth of faith is, and what fulneffe. honefly remaines among good minded men? Who can repronente, but this my perpetuall enemy and yours, for fayling in loue and affection to the people of Rome? I am aftonished , how Antigonus should be so hardy, as daring to blame or accuse (Lord Cafar) I confesse, that I have bin a any man before the Romans, against who shold be so impudent to make complaint before them, as if his Realme were fnatcht or rauisht from him. If it were so vet his power should not bee exercised for his greatnesse or advancement : but onely to feize on you, to affaile the Romane Legions,& to practife vengeance against you for his father and brother. It much amazeth me, that fuch a wretch, & fo vnthank full as he is, feareth not the throne of the Romane I mperour, but dare (euen there) oppole and purfue innocents: without remembring, that a Kinseman of his. and a companion in the crime, hath there

beene punished for fellony, treason, and

THE

THE EFFECT.

Reason appearing (in Casars indecement) to be upon Antipaters side, he indeed also for him, and gave him the government of Judea. By this meanes hee opened him the way, to give the lewish king dome to the children of the faid Antipater, and differzed them that were of the blood Royall and of the true feed of David.

CHAP.IX. The Oration of Hered to his Martiall troopes, being you the point of fighting with the Arabes.

Fond prodegies and fu erffitious e pinions conciued in mens braine make them cowards to warlike at-

tempts.

An Army v-

fing fraud and

nomeanes of

conquering;

but to delay

the victory

from his en

THE ARGVMENT. Hetod seeing that his Army stood like men amazed, as searing a disadvantageable suc-cesse of the warre, through (1 know not what) superstitions conceite, grounded whom prodegies and tremblings of the earth, which at that time had happened, and it regard where of, his Souldiers shewed themselves very committing to sight against the Arabes: Heelaboured by this Oration to perswade them, that all such things are naturall, exhorting them, not to leave the victory to their enemies, for any distruct in them; and thefe were his words.



enemy hauing bin enfeebled and abated by many of our aduantageable encounters, ful of fortune to vs. and transporting

them to maffacre our Legates and Ambaffadors: I cannot chuse but meruaile. how you should be thus affrighted without any occasion. At least wife, it were reasonable and dreadlesse, without some good foundation, to preferre accidentall occasions to any enident successe, when men are affured of their owne vertue and forwardnesse. We have had some encountring with the enemy, where the Arabes did not turne their backes vpon vs. deceit, feekes & yet dealt but fraudulently (as they can well do) not to vanquish, but to delay vs from the victory: which matters, as they ought to encourage ye to the fight, lo you should withall consider, that as you have felt (I know not what) weakning of hart, by some earthquakes hapning, they shold be no terrors at all to vs. no more then to the, who stand with vs to endure this war.

them with furious despaire, yea, making

And if we would but respect, on whom the damage of this perfecution is falne, you should perceive, that it is upon the Arabes, constraining them to keepe themfelues in the field, because they should be still before them, that far go beyond them in courage and valiancy. For I fee, that they distrust their owne strength & manhood, and yet taking heart, on the hopefull ruine of our troopes, they will needs aduenture to endure the war. But alasse, that is a feeble hope, which proceedeth

HE forces of the I not from his owne proper vertue and van The vacetlour, but rather dependeth voon others tainty of mifery: infomuch, as there is nothing menstelicies and admore fraile nor mutable, then are felicia uerfitier, ties and adversities happing to men. For the estate & condition of humane oceafions, what foeuer ouerthrowes they chace to feele, relieth vpon a very little time, '& as felicity is neuer durable; even to aduerfity can never bee perpetuall, and a man continueth no longer iniferable, then her had a precedent time to bee fortunate. And of all thefe I can give you a goodly and most manifest example.

In the first fights, wee had the victory ouer the Arabes, but war taking his course and altering the lot and formine thereof; we were vanquished by them whom (not long before) wee furmounted and ouefthrew. Which therefore yeeldeth reason to beleeue, that we shall againe conquer them which vanquified vs a confidering, that prefumption is alwayes guided by indiscretion and want of fore-light, wheras aduited feare armeth mon with provis dence, to fit themselves for following fucceffes, and thereby to learnedury and diligence. It neuer is otherwise in the state of felicity, but that boldnesse and temeri-ty are equal companions, and want of discretion in Souldiers, neuer tarries for the wife advice & councell of their Captaines; in briefe, they ruth into the warre, withoutheir leave or commission. But I fee that you are judiciously fearefull, which makes mee to hold the victory fol much the more affored. Courage then (deare friends and companions) take hart and hardiment, by advancing the glorious and ancient magnanimity of the lewes your Predecessours. And

Prefumption maketh a man improvident. but diference teare maketh

A free and

rable confessi

Monffrous 19

Ordinary an naturall occafions fhold neuer breed difinay in Soldiors.

172

And let not the mouings of infensible | broken the law common to all Nations: things, breed any terrour in you, neither carry any conceite, that earthquakes can be any argument or prefage, of any other difaster or mishap, then what hath already happened. For the Elements have their defects as well as we, and no other harme or danger is to be doubted, then what enfueth to themselves: considering, that neither tremblings of the earth nor mortality of creatures are but their owne iniuries, and fignifie no other perill or prejudice at all.

And yet we (hould not feare to fuffer matter of greefe, in regard that (already) we have endured most afflicting and in-Supportable greeuances : he that hath punithed vs, will bee appealed, and become againe as milde vnto vs, as if hee had not chastifed vs. For what can we expect from him, after this irksome pestilence, but only his holy fauour and mercy, feeing for two offences he hath bin pleased to afflict and pupish vs? For the rest, as concerning that which belongeth to this war, all plague hath ended them that were not in the Campe, and our victory hath taken them from the enemy, cue those men that were the cheefest for his battailes. If our Flocks or Heards of Cattell are dead, the enemy hath had a loffe of much better things, being bereft both of wit and fence, when (contrary to all right and equity) he

for no people are so cruell and barbarous, bur Ambaffadors ought to be inviolably respected of respected of them.

Let them therefore expect from God, a just vengeance for such crimes, to chaftise their cuill doing; for the sinnes of our aduerfaries are of fuch importance, as there is not any law, be it humane or diuine, that will leave them vnpunished. Let vs go forth then, yea, let vs go to fight; not to get their spoiles, or conquer their lands; but for the glory of God, and the defence of his honour. Let not the loue of your wives and children spur ye on to the war; but only the divine fauor, which you know to be present with you. So going on this manner to the fight, our defires shall not be thereby effected but our obedience to God, for doing vengeance on them, whom the Law forbiddeth any man to touch. Beside. Ambassadors are they, who (among the furies of armed e- Ambaffadors nemies) onely mediate peace, & fuch men countedor are never numbred or ranked with aduer- rankedamong is in his entire condition; because the saries; because their blood being shedde, other entine civeth incessantly for inst vengeance in our foules. Hafte wee then in going to the fight, in regard that God is hee, which offereth himselfe to revenge our friends flaine. The very murdred Ambaffadours will fight for vs more furioufly, and better then our sclues: and ringed round with a fquadron of Angels, let vs on to the batflew our Ambassadors. The Arabes have taile, and vtter confusion of our enemies.

THE EFFECT.

By these words of the Generall, the lewish Soldiors recovered heart, and seeking occasion to affront the enemy, at length affayled them with fuch fury; as the Arabes were enforced to fight and had a great loffe of men. Befide, fuch as fled retired into the Mountaines : except a part of them which yeelded themselves to the I cwes. The rest, affecting rather to die like honest men, then submit themselves basely; fell to handy blowes againe, where they were slaine and hewd in preces, yet not without leaning sufficient testimony to the lewes of their valor.

CHAP. X. The Oration of Herod before August us Cafar, who had conceived anger against him, because he had taken part, and followed Marke Anthony,

THE ARGUMENT. A Vgukus Cæsat, having vanquished Marke Anthony in Egipt, it seemeth he was ad-uised that except he chattised Herodusso, he was not fully possessed of the victory. He. tod sasting the suil affection of this Prince, went to him to Rhodes, where prefenting himselfe and whing the generofity of an invincible spirit, be declared to Augustus; that if he did not helpe Anthony it mannot through want of any good will, but became he had no meanes made him ra- to do it. Affectine much rather to confeste that he had beene an enemy to Cafar, then there ther goe to Augustus, the himselfe ingratefull to his friend. And although he presented himselfe before him without a the to lend to kingly Crowne on his head, and cloathed like a man that had no dignity i yet his words expresfed the Maiesty of a great Prince, and thefe were they? ... N ...

Ambaffadors the people,

A benefit re ceiued.doth fo oblige a true harted friend,as no feare can keepe him rom confesing it.

at Actium.

Confesse (O mighty Monarch Augu-Hus) that I have beene a lovall companion to Marke Anthony in his affayres, as to the man, from whom I receiued the kingdome of Iudea. And I will not deny, but that I was very highly beholding to him, as I would more plainely haue expressed by Armes, if the enuy of Cleonatra had not given mee hinderance. and if the Arabes had not broken my defignes and enterprizes. For which cause, and constrained by such necessities, I came not against you (in his affistance) with weapons in my hand: because I had no defire at all to forgoe my deare friend. and much leffe was I affraid to enter battaile against you in his behalfe; but onely in this respect, that I was busied in defending mine owne Countries. And albeit that I affisted him not personally in the battaile, yet Anthony found mee not vnthankfull to him; for I furnished him with men and victuals, for the fuccouring and refreshing of his Army, and I am well asfured (Great Augustus) that you would not have thought me ingratefull to Mark | but yet my offence is not fo great, for al- lafeinious Anthony, if you had beene in the battaile

You fee Sir, that I hide not my felfe, fearing more to be reputed ingratefull on your aduerfaries behalfe, then doubting barous wanton woman, even fo could that any one should imagine me your e- | not I forgoe my great friend in his aductnemy . I make more account of your fities. It was hee that didiette a Royall iudgement, then of all the fuccesse of warre: because before you, the merits of vertue are not in any perill, in regard you know how to purchase honor, and punish mif-behauiours and vices. Confider (gentle Prince) that as I neuer forfooke | & yet, although I have left off my known Anthony, to long as Fortune spake fairely to him : euen fo, all difafters, and dead as he is, cannot yet make mee to forget and to another; it goeth far beleauchim. You haue vanquished (O ond the loue Cafar) you have vanquished Marke Anthony, by power, and by a great number of your Legions, you have furmounted him by the wifedome of your Councels; the strength of the Empire bath cast him downe, from which hee was farre gone, and whereof he made not any reckoning; throw me,

your vertues have ouerthrowne him, or rather he hath beene ruined by his owne vices. For an Egyptian woman charmed and enchanted him; the delights of Egypt made him too foft and delicate, yea, he was wholly effeminately drowned in the Alexandrian luxuries. In briefe hee hath beene conquered, because he better affected to be cast downe with Cleopatra, then to conquer without her; and fo to be dejected by a woman, was more greeuous and insupportable to his friends, the ener it could be to his anemies.

I adulfed him, to vnewine himfelfe from that wretched woman, and to bee the death of a beaft fo dangerous; I promilechim fuccour in his affaires, and forces to preuaile by in his flight; yea, I offered to beare him company in this warre, But the miserable man, was so doating on the beauties of that woman, and meerely chemilery, enchanted by Cleopatra, as hee is brought when a man to be just nothing, by reason that he wold leaves a loyall not beleeue me. 1 confesse (Great Cat leanes to the far) that I am also conquered with him, base allurethough Cleopatra quite quailed, and made woman. a diffionourable prey of poore Anthony; yet she had not the like power ouer mee! And as hee would not abandon that bar-Crowne on my head, neuertheleife, 1 would not bee to bold to appeare in your prefence, with the ornaments I receyued from fo loyall a friend, fearing to offend you by those favours which he did to me ! lineries of dignity, I have not loft a jote of my greatnesse in courage. You may judge therefore as it shall seeme best to your felfe; for whatfoeuer fentence you pronounce on me, yet I am fure to carry this reputation with me, and to my no meane contentment; that I was good and perfect in mine affections; that I left not my friend in life nor death, and neyther good or bad fortune had power to ouer-

If Princes would banish flatterers fro

There is no-

thing compa

entire affecti-

on of one ma

women.

table to the

CHAP. XI. The magnanimous answer of Augustus to Herod, confirming him in his dignity. Whereby is demonstrated, that a Frince ought rather to asset truth speeds by his friend, then frigned statery, comming from the mouth of a dissembling counterfeit. And therefore Augustus perceising them their pourty, comming from the mouth of a diffembling counterfeit. And therefore Augustus precious with the formal born freely Herod had floken to him, confiffing humfelferabler his enemy, then ingrateful twards Mark more glorious intried hims this anjiver following, flowed in the following definitions in the sample following.

Heauen

offeredto Herod, which

Diuers hard

measures we

He is a true friend indec that continu eth alwayes one and the fame in all

couditions.

174

dome. For we entry not thy vertues, neither doth it dispelase vs, that thou shouldst be such a man as thou art : but rather it is to vs most high contentment. And truely, thou art well worthy to rule & command, feeing thou hast so loyally kept thy faith ginen to a man onely, and being put in diffresse, and

affayled with aduerfities; yet thou art not ashamed to confesse thy selfe the friend to Marke Anthony, and fuch as thou wast to him in his profperity fuch diddeft thou continue still to him when his fortune fell contrary. Now, albeit I have conquered Anthony, yet I neuer thought to ouercome thee : for thy friendship remaining fo entire, placeth thee in ranke with them that have wonne the victory. Which is the reason, that I no lesse with thee for my friend, then I praise and commend thy stedfast loyalty, because no changes of Fortune, haue power to alter thy minde and defires.

Thou never didst abandon Anthony, but it was he that estranged himselfe from thee: for he better affected to follow the councels of Cleopatra, then them of fo deare and true a friend as Herod. The ignorance of Anthony, is the reason of my winning thee: for hee made choyle of a pernicious and foolish woman, and reie-Red a most worthy loyall friend. And vet it is no matter of meruaile, that Anthony should be vanquished by Cleopatra, and keepe himselfe wholly with her: fee- | knowledgement and friendship.

Cafar and Herod having thus discoursed together, Augustus, to shew what account he made of this great Warriour Herod: did fet a Royall Crowne upon his head, and confirmed him in his authority, with hope to enlarge the limits of his kingdome. As likewise hee did afterward, having observed, how Herod acknowledged the benefits of his Maiesty, when as he furnished and refreshed him with water and vietualles, at such time as a great dearth and fearfity was in the Romane Army . From whence Cafar being returned, hee gaue Townes and Castles on the Sea to Herod, and accepted him as one of his best friends, which he had in the East.

CHAP.XII. The Oration of Herod to the Iewes, vpon the partage or dividing of his Seigneuries, to be made to his children.

THE ARGVMENT. Ike as Herod was happy in his warlike enterprizes, so did bad fortune follow him in the domesticke affaires of his house, for having children of diners beds, the humors also

Eauen protect thee Herod, and enioy at this instant (better then euer before) the honour of thy King-thould turne Anthony from your counting the honour of t needs become a voluntary flaue. Could When men you account it strange, that Cleopatra should turne Anthony from your councelles feeing the could feparate him from cellis hateful me, and of being my fellow-Companion to them. in the Empire, cause him to become my mortallenemy? Seeing therefore, that with mee you have loft Marke Anthony; with mee I purpose you shall live and raigne.

And trust me, your commendable and infigne enterprize descrueth great recom pence, and is worthy (by vs) to bee highly guerdonned: confidering that while wee were busied in the late passed warres, you haue ouercome and subjected the Barbarians although they feemed to be vnconquerable. For we reputed them to bee our enemies, and so we do make account of all those that are aduerse to the Iewish Nation, and fuch as molest them, must know that they make warre with vs. You have therefore fought for vs, and for vs you have wonne the victory; in which refpect, we permit you to reigne, and grant you the kingdome which you possesse: Commanding, that by our donation it shall be confirmed to you, and established durable, your merite being not little, because you have made no diminution therof. Also in further recompence, I will A notable deale in such fort with you, as you shall signe of a ver haue no cause to wish for the presence of twous and w Marke Anthony : effecting it altogether ding Printer vnbeseeming vs, if having (while hee liued) ouercome him in warre, being now dead, we should not go beyond him in ac-

When Printheir cares to flat crers, their Courts want querrels and contenti-

Chap.12.

of them being as divers: caused the Palace Royall to bee dayly filled with quarrels and defiances, according as flatterers were heard, and fanoured by Herod. Now, the matters grew To farre, that the King and one of his fonnes, named Antipater (who was his eldest) must go to Rome to declare their greenances; where Antipater behaved himselfe so well; that he woune the Emperor, and qualified the anger of his Father, who received him into grace againe. Neuertheleffe, Cafat ordained, that children flould be obedient to their fathers, of that it should be lawfull for Fathers, to declare him for King (after his decease) that stoole best in his liking , because Antipater had accused his yonger brethren, being issued of blood Royall on all sides, euen as well as he was borne : Herod not being as then in authority, but aspiring to the Crowne. So soone as the king was returned from Rome he caused an assembly of the people of Icrusalem, to whom he declared what he had done in this worage, wline thele very Words.

Contention. quarrell, and disobed ience in chi'dren. ate no meane motiues of griefe to their

Obedience is

an excellent

leffon when it

far might judge, concerning the quarrell betweene me and my children. To him I went, because my selfe knew not how, neither would I take voon me to cenfure a cause, wherein I might easily fayle, by being transported with choller: & therefore he that gaue me the Kingdome, I thought fittest to ordaine, concerning the firecession, and to bestow it on such a one of my fonnes, whom he should conceiue to be the worthieft. Now, among fo many benefites as I received from him this he added to them, that in a great difficulty, he did so facilitate the matter, that he gaue me my fonne againe, whom I had well-nere loft, and accorded the brethren together, vpon the difference growing betweene them, touching fucceffion in the kingdome . You fee mee then returned, farrericher then before I went: for I have learned to be a better Father then formerly I have beene; and my children also are tutor'd to beare themselues in better manner to me, and all this hath happened through the grace and mildnes of Great Augustus. For, he hath appointed, that the appenage of my fonnes, and their fuccession in the kingdome, shall depend vpon mine owne will; to the end, that the prerogative and advancement of which of them focuer it be, shal not breed any pride or prefuming in anie one of them. Hee hath permitted me, to choose fuch a fucceffor as I will have, to wit, he that shall be the most obedient to me, and gueth the greatest honor to his Father.

fhall teach a man howe to haue a King-Nowsconcerning my felfe (O you my

O T without great occafion, and that very beneficiall to my felfe (you Hebrew Cittizens) did I make my voyage vntoRome, to the end that Cathey may fucceede after me. In which respect, this very day, I make and declare them Kings all three together, the eldeft having the priviledge, in regard of his age, and the other because of their Nobility in blood. I would not have you mouedat the number of Princes, confidering that the greatnesse and magnificence of the kingdome, fufficeth to maintaine and furnith effectually a far greater number, although there were no more aduantages. First of all, I make God the Judge of this my aduice and ordinance & next, I would have you to be witnesses and testifiers thereof; to the end, that you may honor them according to right, & equally them that Cafar hath accorded, and whom my felfe /being their father) do e. stablish and appoint vnto you as Princes. To whom also you may doe such honor, as shall not exceede the bounds of reason in ouer-much esteeming them; and yet in no leffe fashion then belongeth to them . For too much honour puffes vp the heart with prefumption, and neglect or contempt causeth rage and choller. Wherefore, I would have that dutie done vnto them, as appertained to the merits deliucred from them: for you cannot giue fo honouring a much content to him, who is honoured him infolent, aboue his deferts, as you doe harme to and contemps him, to whome dutie is denied vndefer- is the meaner uedly. Oftentimes, it commeth fo to make him passe, that both the one and other are offended, in regard it is meer flattery, which occasioneth the indiscreete sentence of

Beside, let me further say freely to you.

Too much

Chap. 13.

the oreoter glory to their

What Pride

buildeth, Pre

uer throweth

A wicked in-

ention wour

deth the heart

deeply of hin

to whom it

reuealed.

three, and you know well enough, that honor done to the Children redoundeth the more to the Fathers glory, Notwithstanding, if there be any, that shall flatteringly honor my fonnes beyond reason, they make themselves guilty of treason to them : because they shal proue Authours of the recidiuation and rebellion, for the which we fell at first into difference. In making too much esteeme of our youth, is to give it too free a heart and head, and boldnessein attempting beyond capacity: yet let no man thinke, that I am enuious of the advancement and glorie of mine owne Children. No, heauen is my witnesse, how I rather wish their power meane and flinted, whereby wee may the better liue in peace; then in growing ouer-great, to fwell vp their hearts as high, and thereby spend the rest of our dayes in troubles and feditions. For that which is established by pride and invasion, hath but small and slender continuance, and flippeth away fodainly; but that which is possessed with love and gracious liking, it hath as good and fuecessefull endu-

I will therefore bee carefull in taking order, that my Kindred and Friends may bee the pledges of peace and concord for cuer hecreafter, betweene mee and my Sonnes; by whose exhortations and admonitions, they will bee mooued to love and cherrish one another. For, as an euill purpose makes a deep wound in the heart of him that heares it tolde him : euen fo, much more are they corrupted, who are made drunke by them that dayly frequent it, and whose soules are continually infected by so soule a plague; so that the contagion spreades it selfe ouer all them, that then are about, or come in-

to their company. Although a man be /by nature) very courteous and peaceable; yet, let a Lake or Poole be neuer fo calme and stil, when impetuous windes throwe their churlish blastes upon it, it will swell, and shewe a discontented countenance. In the very fame manner, are the mildest Natures of men madded, and quite percerted by the meanes of lewd and wicked Counfellers. In breefe, it is on mee that all my Subjects must fixe their expectation, and there affuredly fettle their confidence for

Honor done | that I am the common father to them all | whatfoeuer advancement happeneth to my Sonnes; yet so it is, that I will not lose a jote of mine authority and power . And when all is faide, there is not a Captaine or foldier, but wil expresse more reuerence to the father of Conductors and Generals, then to them that command ouer the whole Army.

It is my felfe alone, without any other, that will bee the discharge of al, and will onely recompence them, who hauing done their dutie vnto mee. shall acknowledge what fernices they have done to my Sonnes . If I finde dutie perfourmed without pernerting ; no doubt but deserved recompence will follow there- Deceite doil on; but deceite and cogging shall finde mest common fuch reward, and fo furely paidehim, that owne mafter. he will veterly lofe all the fruite of his la- & Flatteren bor, and that which he fawned for by kna- are the falled uish flattery.

Now, as concerning you (my good and deere Sonnes) fatten your first regard vppon the common bond of nature, which vniteth bruite beaftes together, and caufeth their alliance to keepe fuch a mutuall agreement: as there is not any beaft fo vntractable, but with the perill of his life, hee will striue and labour to defend his young ones from danger. Carry honour and reverence to Cafar, who hath reconciled you together; and next, haue regard of mee, and of the Honour which is due vnto mee; who had much rather pray yee to doe fo, then to command it to be done, albeit you know that it still remaineth in my power to Com-

Continue in the bond which you have knit together: you are brethren, I would not have you breake that vnion, neyther to be the occasion of dissoynting that for which ve were borne. I shall give you Habites, Attendants, and Royal honors, but much more precious is that whereto I exhort ye, inuiolable amity, beeing vnited together in one and the fame will, If you declare such mutual affection, your authoritie will bee the more acceptable Anthoritie vnto mee: but amity fayling, you dart without amity your malice thorow my heart, and tho-full. row the very foule of Kingly Gouerne-

Therefore, vntill I have made proofe of this your Vertue, yee shall enjoy no Kingdome, but the Royall Title onely:

if you lone your father, the effect of name | they shall lye vppon me, though it were will follow, in the meane while, approue among your felues, how and what affec-

tion I beare vnto you. You shall enioy al that is goodly and pleasing in the dignitie Royall, as Princes of the blood : but concerning the charges of the Empire, and you, and which I truly account to be mine, troublesome burthen of State-affayres, owne.

THE EFFECT.

Herod having delivered all these speeches, and greatly comforted his sons, how sower some reloyced thereat, as not discerning so far off, that which was hidden under these words: yet the better fort felt themselves offended. For they perceived, that this equallity served but for a Barke, to kindle the concealed fire in the brefts of the brethren; who could not indure any advantages, how litle focuer, especially having all but one and the same prerood tiue. So that this proued to be the cause of ruine to one another, as also of distrust and extreme cruelty in King Herod.

CHAP, XIII.

The Battaile of Riotta or Nouara, wwhich wwas fought in the Dukedome of Millaine, betweene Iohn Trivulzi: and the Lord of Trimouille, Generals for Lewes the xij. King of France, on the one fide; and Maximillian Sforza, Duke of Millaine, accompanied worth the Switzers, on the other, in the yeare 1513.

The kings for mer loffe of Millaine, wasi the occasion of this water.

Ewes King of Fraunce, the twelch of that name, ill dige-fting the lofte of Millaine, and fom other difgraces formerly received, made his e-

lection of two speciall Captaines, wel experienced in martiall affaires, and also of no meane authority; the Lords Trivulzi and Trimouille, to passe the Alps, and enter Italy. A further choise was likewise Zug, Lucerna, Schaffouse, Zurich, and made, for the more happy successe in this Berne, and these made vp another martiall attempt, of Robert de la March, whom hee | company. The third and last confort, confent for out of the Countrey of Luca, and his blacke Regiment of Germans, by fome termed Allemaignes, as also the Lord Lewes Beaumont, who came from the Frontiers of Nauarre, and brought with him those scueral bands of Gaseoignes, that had before served Seigneur de la Palice at Panipelona, when they fought against the Spaniards. Some few Enfignes of foot (but of very choice men) were intermingled

not with horse, held it no disgrace, thus to be imployed on foote, and went vnto it with chearefull alacrity. Alwhich power beeing very aprly appointed, and furnished with great Ordenance vnto theyr owne good liking, they hafted away with speed for Italy.

better to cumber many, then one onely,

By this meanes, it shall beevery profita-

ble for you, to accommodate your felues

to that which I have defired : because I

loue the glorie which should still thine in

On the contrary fide, the Duke of Millaine, named Maximillian Sforza, vnder- are follicited standing this French preparation made Maximillian for him; he was not negligent in his owne sforz, and occasions : but mooued the Switzers to come to him revisite Lombardy, as in some former ex- liant bands. peditions they had done, and to Friend him with their manly affiftance, in which motion he purchased no deniall . The Ammans, or they that beare the Office of Majors, in the Cantons of Vri, Suits, and Vnderuald, as lying nerest vnto staly, with their warlike powers, were the first that passed ouer the Alpes : beeing seconded or followed by the like bands of Glaris fifted of five thousand foot, conducted by Altofaxo, a most expert and forward captaine. But Maximillian became somewhat discouraged, by an vnexpected reuolt of Sacranora Visconti, that did kcepe a swarme of desperate fellowes about him in Millaine, all errant vnthriftes, though leaning to Nobility, and others beside ; and therefore joyned with the first company of Switzers, going to Nouara, exwith them; for fuch Gentlemen as ferued pecting there (yet free from priny awaits

The Switzers

Of what feuerall bands the French Army

15.11

The French

Army cometh

before Nous

Chap 13.

Opportunitie

taken in war,

is alwaics at-

tended with

fortunate fue

and treachery) when the rest of the Switzers (hould come.

Before the Towne of Nouara, came the French Forces, yet hearing that the fecond supply of Switzers were somwhat necre, and that Altofaxo was at Galarita; they retreated to Riotta, which was about fome twenty Furlonges from Nouard, hard by the River of Mara. No fooner were the fecond Conuoy of Switzers entred the Towne, and had theyr Mornings refection; but the Captaines called for a confultation, for concluding vppon matters fittest to be done : whereuppon, Caraffe, Amman of Zurich , offering the first motion of speech, began in this man-

The Oration of Caraffe,

Amman of Zurich.

This he spake of the whole Company.

Aliant, and invincible (pirited Brethren, let not the attempt robich you have resolvedly cocluded on, coole through want of courage, or corruptly lose it

Celfe, in needleffe attending for Altofaxo, fuch as come with him. For it hath ever bene knowne, that the surest and happiest way to fortunate successe, is to stifle delay with speedy expedition; and so we shall finde it if wee have the providence to purfue it : Nor neede we whose corage and constancy standequalthe point of the same of the s cloudit selfe in our lingering, and so we lose our glorious expectation. Occasion is yet offered us, and we may take hold on his happy fore-locke; for, it is not number, but Wobleneffe of minde that grues honor to the actions yffue. A handfull is enow for a heaped multitude, and while hope holds them, that Altofaxo is our Load-Starre, and we dare doe nothing till he fine out with us, they may be deceived in their idle supposition, or we more then masters of fo good advantage. Let therfore their erroneous conceit. lead us the way to true discipline, for a sodaine and vnexper Hed onfet, ftrikes terror in an enemies foule, and followes him bothwith flight and flaughter. Let their overweening pride wher them, and take we hold on this happy and beneficial

councel:which guides ye to undoubted victory, if with dreadlesse harts you ply & pursue

No sooner had Caraffa come vnto his speeches period but all the Captains and Ensignes consented to him, and a grave confultation grew immediately, for best proceeding in their purpose. Hereupon, refection and reft was generally commaded and after the fecond watch prefent the condue repaire vnto their Colours; where before to happy for day-dawning they should bee acquainted with other instructions. Imagine hecre(as well you may) that every minde fate mufing with ferious conceite, what iffue the intended fight would fort vnto; & by this time the Sun was fet. But now liften to a wonder, and truly no leffe in mine opinion. The Dogges which the French had brought to field with them, quite leaving their Campe, all in a troope together entred Nonara, and the Switzers Centinels, with fuch as walked the round, or kept the Carbs du Guard : the dogs fawning on the one after another even as if they were already become their Masters, or shortly should, laide downe their eares, wagged their tailes in louing manner, and licked their hands.

But the Switzers, not intending to haue their prinate cogitations discouered, cunningly gaue order, that in eueric part of the City, now at one place, then at another, Drums should still be beaten; that if any scouts or spies tooke notice of them, they should the easier bee perswaded of their fodaine comming foorth, as also to continue their enemies in Armour fill; they having all the day before bin fo prepared, and on horfeback. Thus they tha- Mencan ne ped their outward desseignes, while theyr closer determinations aimd at other ends, an inuiding as to strengthen their bodies with food & enemy. reft, and to win another daies respit more for their better contestation in trial of honor. And let me tell vee, that the Lawes are fo strict and severe among the Switzers, that if any shal dare (in publike view of the Armie) to do any thing cowardly, or with feare, thamefull & vnfitting men of valour; he is immediately flaine by his following fellow, so that the greater feare confounds the leffe, and begets an honorable death, in stead of that which is otherwise attended on with nothing but infamy.

The Army confifting of about 9000, The Switzers foote, made choise of a thousand Horsse befide, men of well tryed and undaunted left opportuvalour, to take the charge of eight Faulcons, and to keepe with Maximillian and his Horffe /which indeede were but few. vet of the cheefe Nobility:) while the rest did throw themselves into two battailes. and filently, without beating any Drum, marched towards the enemy two feuerall

Now Trivulzi, being reputed for a wife and well experienced Captaine, suspected nothing leffe, then that a fewe tyred foote, and also before Altofaxo came : would venture out voon a stronger power, or hazard any the least fortune of battaile. But vnderstanding that the Enemy was within fight, he cals uppe Trimouille and the other Captaines, giving order for placing the Ordenance, the fignals for fight to be given, and what hee knew by discipline or experience, to wait

vpon the need of danger.

Such was the shortnesse of time, and the courage of the foe fo mounted for fight, that the French scarfely had leifure to bridle their horses, & arm their heads : for they had flood most part of the day & night in Armes, expecting stil what shold be commanded, and at last (though very late) newes comming, that all was whift and quiet at Nouara, had got into theyr Cabines to reft. But the Light-horse being fooner ready then they looked for, yflueth forth in time convenient, making a long Wing to the left handwarde, and met the thousand Switzers as they yvere marching on. And they, for more fafely fhunning the great Ordenance, which played vpon them tempestuously, fetcht a finall compas about towards the River of Mora, with intent to paffe a Bridge & fo fet on the enemies tents in the rere. So marching in a broad way towards the Riuer, they were hotly rent and torne with the Ordenance; and mightily preffed also with the light horse.

But then Motting, whose corage could not be quailed, changed his former refolution, and entreated Duke Maximillian, (being then in great daunger, by reason that the Epirotes infulted round about him) to leave the fight, and returne to the Citty instantly, that so the warres mayne

the tiranny of chances, and there to await the fuccesse of expected victory . Maximillian made an honourable refufall, for fuch was the conftancy of his courage, as he would endure all common accidents of Fortune, rather then be blurd with the least diferace.

Heereupon, two vader Captains, and two Ancients seized his horse by the bridle, and renting the Creft from off his Helmet, threw an olde cloake about him to hide his Armes, and forcing him (whether he would or no) led him out of the field with a troope of Horsse, and so conducted him to the Citty, to stand cleare from danger, while they endured the brunt of the day. Afterward Mottina ralliered his fwaying battell, which (by this time) hadde loft three of their Faulcons; then retiring the wounded into the midst of the battell; and beating back the ouerforward Epirotes, flew there Alexio Bofigna, a noble Grecian Captaine, and so defeated them vtterly.

Then rushing into the enemies camp, where the drudges and stragglers beeing flaine, and the foldiers of that flation difordered; the carriage and baggage were furprized. But some little while before Mottina had thus prevailed another company that tooke a longer journy through the Corne-fieldes, then growne vp, and recoyuing little harme by the Ordenance, had made a fresh charge on the Enemiss

The French forces were ordered into three battallions, Trimowille and De la In what man-March having the leading of the winges, ner the Frech and Trivulzi the middle Regiment, or power were mained bartayle . As for the Launce the fight, equeners Battallion, they had got them-Clues within a ditch, and betweene the battailes of the Horsse, because their Trench, being a new and somewhar admirable kinde of Workemanship, denssed by Robert de la March, to hemme them in against the chances of warre: vpon fo fodaine a comming of the enemy, coulde not by any meanes bee fet vp and pitcht. The Switzers bringing their Battailes about towards the right hand, and vppon this foundron of the Germaines or Allemaignes, very contragionally turned to them is perceyning that victory viould foone bee wonne, frauing once defeated head might be kept, which lay open vitto the cheefest force of the Enemies Armie.

Which

Alexio Bofig

Captain flain

noble & valiant resolution in Duke Maximillian.

By friuolous Supposition in an enemy, he i· foont ft ta-

Chap.14.

The louing

care of a Fa

ther to his

The Ammana of Zug and ers not a lotte

Where both

fides contend

for honour,

great muft

of the fight

gaue present order to discharge theyr great Ordenance uppon them, breaking through the rankes, with mighty flaughor Lug and Berne flain & ter, the Horsie also comming hotely on yet the fouldi- them on the left fide. The Ammans of Berne and Zng were flaine in this confusion, which nothing difmayed their fouldiers courage, nor their owne vnauoydable perill, and wofull hauocke of theyr Fellowes about them; but chearfully animating themselues, and wheeling round into a ring, propelled the Horffe very valiantly, and (as before they had concluded) fuddenly getting ouer the ditch, fet vpon the Allemagnes couragiously. Now began a fierce and bloody fight, no noise or words spoken on either side; but onely a dismall clashing of Weapons and armor, and the soft sighes of such as fell downe dead, giving their latest adiew vnto the

> The Allemaignes, that they might reuenge the flaughter of their country-men the yeare before at Paula; and now (by new renowne) redeeme their glorie lost fourteene yeares past at Bruderholts, on the confines of Bafile, fought very fiercely. And the Switzers that they might yet (one day) destroy their olde and peculiar enemies, fellowes that had runne out of Germany, and (in reproach to the Emperour) ferued the French King; were not a iot behinde them, either in ftrength, or feruency of courage.

Now, while the Switzers and Allemaigns fought thus at the push of pike, Newes came to Trivulzi and Trimonille, that the bagge and baggage were taken those that were appointed for keeping the campe al-fo flaine, beside tumult and slaughter in enery place. Which report for daunted the Frech, that a great part of their horfe (every man being careful for his luggage) ran (without any command) to ouercom it againe.

In another quarter alfo, & at the same instant almost the third company or battallion of the Switzers, thewd themselues at the front of the French, which Battallion (while the French hadde (in vaine) difcharged their Ordenance into a VVood standing before them, in regard that the Switzers (to deceive the enemy) had pozers to beguil litikely left a few of the drudges among ft the trees, as making a thew of ambushed

Which the French Captains beholding, | armed men) had closely crept along by a fide way, by little and little floopings downe, and trayling their Pikes vpon the ground after them.

Now, so great was their contempt of the bullets flying about them, and the charge fo dreadfull, that the French and Lewes Lord Nauarrine foote (their Captaine Beamont Beamont flin being flaine) two bands also of Genewares and Salucians defeated, and theyr Ordenance taken, and turned yoon their backs that fled; the Allemaignes now beeing almost quite destroyed, their Tents taken. the enemy ouerthrowing all, and largely Lords of the field ; betweene thame and feare turned their backes. VVhen all men were thus dismayed, the Captaines yet continued fearlesse (considering the fearfulnesse of their present estate) and went ralliering the difordered rankes, and turning themselves vnto the cryes of theyr Companions, made them to abide and

The under Officers and Ancients, entreated them for to exempt all feare, the Lancequenets bare the brunt of the battell, and the fight began to be repaired in all places. But the horfmen, nothing moued with their Captaines encouraging words, shamefully fled. For the Switzers although their Captaine Mottina was flaine by a piece of Ordenance; yet, ha- taine of the uing gotten the Campe, fet fiercely and bloodily on the left fide of the Horsie, & likewise on the right, and then on theyr backes came a greater power with terri-ble Pikes, to the no little terror of the dif-

In repairing the field, there perrished Montalcon Montfalcon, Captaine to the Duke of Al- and Coriols banies company of horse, and Coriolano no and Trivulzi, a young Gentleman of singular vulzi slaine. hope. But, the Allemaignes lofing halfe their men, two Ensignes, and their Gene. rall Floranges very greenously hurt , had fought mest constantly a long while together : but perceiuing nowe the Horffe to forfake them, the foote in enery quarter to bee defeated, and the great Ordenance taken, accounting flight to be very fhamefull, yet voide of fecuritie; fer the points of their weapons vpright, according to their vivall manner, and yeelded, The Allefeeking mercy of the victor enemy. In this maignet yell-tempest of assistation and consustion, Robert de la Marche, Lord of Cadan, fhotte nemies meig

through

his two fonnes, the Lords Floranges and Gemele) engitt by the enemy, and meerly in desperate daunger of life : with a troope of Horsse, boldly brake into the middest of the enemies battell, and they lying among the mangled bodyes halfe dead, pittifully embrued with their owne blood and woundes, laying them ouerthwart the neckes of two Horsses; to his no little prayle, both for manly prowesse and fatherly pittie, woorthily brought them thence, preserving theyr lives for suture renowne, and in a farre more fortunate field.

Thus the Switzers, fighting in three fenerall Squadrons or Companies, within the compasse of an houre and a halfe, the Switzers. or thereabout. perfected a most memorable famous battayle, and vveigl tie

> And although their enemies lay flaine before theyr faces, stored with goodlie and rich Furniture, which was able to allure them: yet would they make no fevfure on the spoyle, but kept within care of their Countrey Discipline, which permits not to take any armed man prisoner in the battaile, neither to follow him that flyeth.

This made them to stand still a great part of the day, as doubting least the French, prouoked eyther by pollicie in their Captaines, or their owne shame; should retreate backe againe, and take them at advantage in despoyling the dead. But this feare was much more difcreere then needefull, because the Enemy kept on fill in flight, and Trivulzi gallopping too and fro, confounded with extremity of dust and hoarfenesse in crying to them, was veterly vnable, eyther by foule or faire persivasions, or the When confucommanding Authoritie of a Generall, to stay the Enfigires or the Horsle, that throwing away their Lances, strone with greatest cagernesse, who should bee foremoft.

> It is reported, that the whole troops of French Horffe might have beene vrterly ouerthrowne and spoyled in theyr-flight, if Duke Maximillian had made an opposition but with two hundred light Horse: for there was not a French-man that carried a Lance beyonde Sesithes fuch was their heate and haft to be gone.

thorough with deadly forrow, beholding 'And yet within a short while after, set uia Sabello, and Corradino Cribelly, with certaine light Horsse; pursued them vnto the Towns of Trecato : but the Contadines and Peazants, flocking amaine out of the Fieldes and Hamlets to the spoile, made a most cruell slaughter where anie bootie was to be had, at hedges, ditches, and all other places, that hindered the tired French in their flight.

The same day the Switzers, gathering together the flaine bodyes of their countreymen, carryed them on their shoulders into the Cittie, to give them the latest honour of buriall. Amongst them, The loss fu were flaine a thousand and three hunde- both sides. red, seauen hundred beeing torne with the great pieces of Ordenance, and almost as many were wounded, but of the French were flaine eight thousand of all

Duke Maximillian, not a little joyfull

of fuch fortunate fuccesse, summoned the Souldiors together, and ioy fo confounding speech, as he was scarse able to vite a worde; which appeared by the teares trickling downe his cheekes, gaue them all most hearty thankes; and, as a gift of The gratitude instant benefite and pleasure, all the Vi-Aualles then taken, beside the Ordenance Sforza toand general spoyle, hee frankely bestow-ed vppon them. As for the admirable diers. Trench, wherein confifted fuch vndoubted hope of Victorie, invented by a warlike witte, brought ouer the Alpes with much labour, and great charge: that being taken from the enemy, was fer vp in apublique place, for a future Monument of that victorie : and this deceyned the Allemaignes most, that they holde it viterly needleffe to crect their Trenche that day, which lay still in the Waggons, because successe seemed then to frowne

on the enemy. Vppon Conference had afterwardes With Trimouille at Bologna, concerning all When a loffe thefe matters; he did not fripolously impute the fault vnto Trivulzi, for not en- complainte. camping on his owne groundes (as Triare alledged
mouille had perswaded him) in regard of then, to go fpoyling the Graffe, which then at that time was ready to bee mowne. But Trivulzi, as a man neuer conquered before. yet disputing on seucrall events hapning in the battaile, threwe the maine errour on aduerfe fate, which too much enuyed

A firstagem of the Swit-

his worth and renowne. And hee faide | do no where leffe answer the expettation of very truely, that men, made more then mad, by cowardly and degenerate feare, in the cheefest heate and fury of fight; are no way able to be restrained or ordered, by the best or most skilfull Captaine that eucr lined.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the force of Sudden Chances and unexpected Euents, for the dissipation as well of mans power, as of his pollicy : And of the hazards and doubtfulleuents of Battailes, and other enterprizes of Warre.

matters, wherein mans power is most

feene to wit in matters of warre, whereof

the events are so doubtfull and dange-

rous, that (as Iason saide to Epimanondas)

He is not wife that doth not feare them. And

therefore it is reported of Phocion, a most

excellent Captaine of the Athenians, that

although hee was chosen five and forty

times Generall oftheir armies; yethee

himfelfe did euer perswade the to peace,

as fearing the successe of warre. And Han-

niball having bene for 16 yeares victori-

ous in Italy, and forced at the length to

defend his owne country, which was Car-

thage (where Scipio the Romane had alrea-

dy ouerthrowne two great armies of the

Carthagenians, and was ready also to pre-

fent him battaile) he doubted fo much the

cuent thereof, that crauing conference

with Scipio, he fought to perswade him to

peace, representing vnto him the hazard of warre, and aduiting him to consider in

the prosperous course of his victories.

not onely what had hapned to other men,

but also what might ensue to himselfe, &

that to make peace was in his own hands,

but if he came once to the battaile, the vi-

Gory should bee in the hands of God.

And laftly, that Nufquam minu quamin

bellocuentus respondent. The euents of things

Lthough the fuccesse

of mens affavrs is most

vncertaine, variable, &

subject to infinit chan-

ces and hazards; yet in

nothing so much as in

The cuents of war most

Supplement of Plutarch in Epaminindas

Plutarch,in Phocien.

Hannibal feared the cuent of warre.

Tit Lining in Dec.3,46,10

l'o make prace is in he hands of man,but victory is in the hands of God men then in warre. Thus spake Hanniball, who may also idem.

well ferue for an example of his owne admonitions. For though he had bin many yeares together, the scourge of the Romanes, and the most famous and renowned Captaine then living, yea, and was (as it were) growne old with victories in forreigne Countries, euen before the very gates of Rome; yet was hee at length vtterly ouerthrowne by a Romane, a young The ouer. man, inferiour to him in reputation, ex- throw of Hi perience, and forces, and in that battaile niballby a which most imported him, and wherein (by the judgement of all men) he imployed all the endeuour, military arte and skil he had, or which could bee required in a most prudent and valiant Captaine.

This change and decay of fortune in This change and decay of fortune in The chancek war, may be exemplified in many others, decay of for. as famous Captaines as euer were; as in tune in wante the worthy Indas Machabeus; Cyrus, king exemplified in many faof Persia; Pyrrhus,king of Epyrus; Mar- mous Cap. cellus , Pompeius Magnus , Marcus Antoni- taines. u, Competitor of Augustus Cafar; the Micability. Emperour Constantine; and Heraclius; Phanch. Belizarius; Edward the third, King of Polydor Ving England; our famous Countriman, John Guicciardin. Talbot, the first Earle of Shrewsbury, Podro Mixi whose name is yet terrible to the French ; Surius. the great Earle of Warwicke, in the time of Edward the fourth; Charles, Duke of Bourcongne: Nicholo Pricimico: Lewes the 12. king of France; and now lastly (in our memory) the Emperour Charles the fift. All which (with many other whom I omit for breuities fake) having by many notable victories got the fame and renowne of most famous Captaines, were eyther at last disgraciously killed, or else receyued fome great ouerthrowes, or had (at least) some notorious decay of their former and wonted prosperous successe.

The confideration heereof, had moo- The doubtful ued divers most valiant Captaines, to a- euentofa uoide the aduenture of battaile as much battaile is greatly to be as might be, and rather feek to ouercome feared their enemies by stratagems, practifes, and delayes: as Q. Fabius Maximus, who (by fuch meanes) distressed Hanniball, much more then others could do by main battailes. And therefore Ennius the Poet faide of him; Cunstande restituit Cicer, Officials rem: He repaired the State of the Romanes by delayes. And it is also written of the

lection. Cap. 1. Pars 2.

Selvad: varia | valiant Franciscus' Sforza Duke of Mil- | laine, that he would never joyne battaile with an enemy, but when hee could not otherwise choose.

And Lewes the eleventh, K. of France

(who was no leffe valourous in war, then

prudent in peace) feared nothing more,

as Philip de Commines testificth, then the

hazard of warre; and especially of a bat-

taile, which by all meanes possible hee

fought to avoid. Infomuch, that when a-

ny enemie entered France; hee procured

to make peace or truce with him, whatfo-

enerit cost him . As appeared when Ed-

ward the fourth King of England was ther

with a strong Armie, to whom he gaue a

great fumme of ready money, and gran-

red to pay him a tribute of fiftie thousand

Crownes a yeare, besides divers pensions

to his Councellors, and other hard con-

ditions; rather then hee would hazard a

battell with him, knowing the cafualtie

thereof, and that as Commineus faith. Vne

battaille perdu a maunasse queue; A battaile

lost hath an ill taile or consequence For it

redoubleth the hope and courage of the

Victors; it aftonisheth and discourageth

the vanquished; it shaketh the fidelity of

subjects, it ministreth matter and oppor-

tunity of conspiracie to malecontents, of

reuolt to Townes, and of alienation to

confederates, who commonly fway with

the good successe. And for this cause, not

onely King Lewes the eleventh, but also

other wife Princes haue vsed, when an e-

nemy hath bin ready to enter their coun-

tries: to dismantle all the Townes in his

way that were not tenable, and to forti-

fie and make strong the rest, retyring thi-

ther all the Cattle and provision of the

countrey, and destroying all the Corne

vppon the ground, thereby to confume

him with Famine, long fiedges, and all

kindes of delayes whatfocuer, rather

then feek to ouerthrow it by a maine bat-

tail. This was very prudently practifed by

Frances the first, King of France, at such

time as the Emperor Charles determined

to enter into Prouence, with a great and

puiffant army: infomuch, that when K.

Frances vnderstoode, that the people of

the Countrey resisted the destruction of

theyr Corne, and other commodities;

he straight way sent his armie to destroy

it. Whereby the Emperour finding

all Townes fortified, and no prouision a-

Phil o Commin. (ap. 17,20,0

Philip Commin

ap.19.0 64.

A battell loft

hath an il tail

and why.

Chap. 14.

The practile K of France to ouercome anenemie wi hout bat-

Mattindu Bel-Frances the Kot France, vied against

of Charls the

Emperor.

broad was left them, were forced (after hee had befiedged Marfeilles some certaine moneths) to retire himselfe for lack of victuals.

And this I have thought good to fignific by the way, for that Phillip de Commines, and Martin du Bellay (both of them notable Historiographers, and Councellers, the first to Levves 11. and the other to Frances the first) lo greatly approue this manner of proceeding in these Princes, and propose it for a rule of state to al such batter, why. Kings & Princes, as, beeing in posession their Kingdomes and States, are inuaded by Forreiners; though for those that inuade and fecke to conquer, Phillip de Commines, thinketh it meete and conuenient to feeke battaile, to make short worke, by reason of the difficulty to bee fuccoured, and of the infinite dangers & inconveniences, which happe by delayes to an armie of strangers in for aine countreyes. Besides, hee that inuadeth and feeketh to conquer, commonly adventureth no more but his present armie, and that in hope to gaine a Crowne, whereas the Prince in possession, aducatureth his whole state against nothing, and a flate is loft (many times) with the loffe of a battaile at home, if the victory bee well followed.

But nowe let vs returne to speake of fodaine Chances, and to touch fome particularities, thereby to shew very manifeftly and euidently, the vveakeneffe of wallike atmans wit and power, and the cafualty of tempts.

warlike attempts. Let vs first and formost consider, by howe many accidents the mightiest ar mies are many times quite dispersed and dissipated, and the greatest enterprizes ouerthrowne; as sometimes it falleth out by the death of some one man, sometimes by the diffention of Leaders and Captaines amongst themselues, sometimes by the mutiny of fouldiers, fometimes by meanes of a Tempest or vnseafonable weather; fometimes againe by plagues, or other diseases in the Campe, and fometimes againe (as Guicchiardine Guicin Lib. 2. noteth in his second Booke) by a commandement eyther not well vnderflood, or ill executed; by a little temeritie or disorder, which may channee to happen by some vaine worde or speech, even of the meanest Souldiour. And last of all

Chap.15.

Rome furpri-

zed by Arnul-

e fodain feare

Sigon.de Regno Italico.An,896

battell loft

v the Chri-

ians to the

urkes onely

brough a fo-

daine feare.

Naucler, Chron.

AR,1396.

by the Soldan

through a fo-

daine feare.

Paul Emit.in

Nowelerus in

Chron.

Philippo fecum.

Phil.Com in c. Plots are fel dome or neuer executed in the field, at they are or

184

dained in the chamber. I dem Ibid,

pen at vnawares, vnpossible to bee forefeene and prevented by the wit or counfell of any Captaine. Heereto I also adde out of Comminam, that be the counsell neuer so well taken, and the plot neuer fo well layed: yet

(faith hee) by infinite chances which hap-

it is neuer or seldome executed in the fielde, as it is ordayned in the Chamber. And that sometimes, by the least motions or occasions that may bee, the victories wonne or lost: Which (faith hee) is a great Mystery, whereby Kingdomes and States de rife or fall. And heereuppon, the selfe-same Authour groundeth two Conclusions, no lesse piously then wifely. The one, that no humane wit is able (of it felfe) fufficiently to gouerne an Army of men: and the other, that God referueth to himfelfe the successe of battels and disposeth of his victory at his wil and pleasure.

This will be made cleare by examples, by the which, I will first of all showe the force of sodaine chances in battaile, and other enterprizes of Warre. And after that all victorie proceedeth from the prouidence and hand of God, and not from the power and pollicie of mortall man. As concerning the first, we see many and fundry times, that great defignements are broken, and potent armies dissolued by accidents, without any force or ftroke of the Enemie. When Lewes the Emperour (called Lewes of Bauaria) was in Italy, with a great and puiffant armie, and readie to beliege Florence, vpon the confidence he had in the valor and affistance of Castruccio of Pifa, whom the Florentines feared more then any man living, it chanced that the fayde Castruccio dyed: fignement, and returned into Germanie with his army.

Alfo, in the time of the great Schisine which was holden betwixt Vrbane, the fixte Pope of that name, and Clement the false Pope, who was called Clement the feuenth, and lined in Automion : Levves Duke of Aniou, Vnckle vnto Charles the fixt, King of France, went into Italy with an huge armie, wherein hee hadde aboue thirtie thousand Horsse, partly to deliuer Ioane, Queene of Naples, (who was beliedged by Charles Ourazzo. Nephew vnto Levves King of Hungaria) though they came scattering one after

and partly to depose Pope Vrbane, in fauour of Clement. When he had already entered into Italy, and began to make warre in the Territorie of Bologna (which belonged to the Church) and was likely in al mens opinion (by reason of his great forces) to obtaine his defire in all he pretended the fodainly fell ficke and dyed the death in list, whereuppon, all that mightie and inuincible army, dispersed and dissolued it self; and enery man returned from whence he

The like hath chanced divers times, by fome great plague and mortalitie in armes, as in that of the Christians, which Paul Emilia beganne in Thunis in Affrica, vnder the Lodonico nono conduct and commaund of Levves, the ninth, King of France: which armie was fo mollested with pestilence, that it was forced for to rife from the fiedge at such time, euen when the Towne was brought to extremitie, and must needs have rendred it felfe within few daies.

Furthermore, such is the force of sodaine feares which fall vpon men, fome- Of the force times by meere chance, without anie iust of sodain fer in battels. cause, that the greatest armies are vtterly ouerthrowne thereby. And no maruel feeing no man is fo valiant, but that hee may bee feized and transported with a fodaine feare. And therefore the Lacedemonians, before they went forth to fight, were woont to facrifice to the Muses, to obtaine their affiftance, against the fierce and furious affaults of fodaine paffions. VVhich taking reason many times at vna- Plut in Tres wares, and (as it were) at an aduantage, doe so oppresse it, that they bereaue a man of all judgement and discourse for a time, and no passion more then seare. VVhereof I my felfe faw a notable expewhereuppon, the Emperor broke his de- rience, in a most valiant Spanish Captaine in France, which happened in the time of a League, who going out of his Garrison, with certaine Troopes yppon an occasion, and meeting with the Enemy by chance, where hee least suspected, tooke fuch a fright thereat, that he ranne No passion home with might and maine, and tolde bereauchs vs (for I was ther at the same instat time) that all the Souldiers were cut in peeces, and that hee himfelfe escaped very hardly. Neuertheleve, within fine or fixe houres after, they all returned home fafe, and not fo much as any one man hurt,

then fodging

another, for they all fledde as well as he, i happened at fuch a time, as the Soldane would have veterly differed him if in very many occasions (before) hee had not got the reputation of one of the most valiant men of his Nation, in which respect it was rather wondered at in him, then blamed.

But to showe the like effect of sodaine feare in whole Armies, vpon diners acciphus the Em- dents. When Arnulphus the Emperor peror through befiedged Rome, it chanced, that a Hare (being started by some of the Camp) ran towardes the Citic and that a great number of the fouldiers purfued her with very great rowt and cryes, which the Romains feeing from the Towne, and conceyning that the enemy meant to give fome furious and violent affault thereto, were furprized with fuch a feare, that they abandoned the wals and Rampiers, and the enemie espying, and taking the opportunity thereof, scaled the walles, and tooke

> Alfo, when Sigifmond, King of Hungaria, (who was afterward Emperour) gaue battell to an Army of the Turkes, neere to Nicopolis, and was affifted with exceeding great numbers of the French, and of diuers other Nations, the French Horse being in the vantgard, and feeing themfelues (after a while) hardly opprest, alighted from their Horsles to fight on foote. But their Horsfes beeing loose, ranne all backe toward the campe, which

the Towne.

the Hungarians and others that were in the rere perceiving, and imagining that the Horse men were slaine; tooke such a fright therewith, that they ranne away, whereby the Turkes got a notable Victorie, with great flaughter of the christians, especially of the French, who wer almost

all flaine. Also at Ptolomais in Ægypt, which the The Christian ouerthrowne

Christians besieged two yeares together, the Soldane, who came with an armie to fuccourit, gaue them an ouerthrowe by the like chance; of a Horse, which beeing let loofe, ranne backe to the Campe. For whereas divers fouldiers called one vnto another to flay him, many ranne out of their rankes (to take him) with fuch diforder, that they feemed to those that yvere behinde, and some-what farre off, to run

and the rather by his example. Which with his Soldiers (being put to the worfe) were running out of the field : who feeing the Christians flye, called backe his men. charged them afresh, and got the Victo

> Charles Duke of Bourgogne, besiedging Philip Commin. Cap. & c. Charles Duke of Bourgogne, Straufon, & vnderstanding that the Swit-Charles Duke zers came to fuccour it, went to meete of Burgundre ouerthrowne them, to give them battaile. The Souldiby the Switers of the vantgard, as they wer marching, zers at Graumeaning for to take a better way', retired a little backe. The rereward feeing the fame, imagined that they fled, and began themselues to flye, whereupon the rest alfo did the like; and (in conclusion) the Duke and all ran away, abandoning their artillery and Campe, to the spoile of the Switzers, who were exceedingly enriched thereby, and yet flew only but feuen men, for all the reft faued themselves by flight. Thus much concerning fodaine feares, whereto I will adde a few more examples of other accidents.

> Gildo, Gouernor of Affricke, under the Emperours Arcadius and Honorius, rebel-theraccidents led against the Empire, and his own bro- Ofice, in lib 7 ther Mascezill was imployed against him cap. 36. for Generall, who had not (in a certaine Gildo Gouer occasion) aboue 5000. men to fight with nerof Affica 70000. And the armies being so nere to-gether, that they were ready to Charge accident. one another, Mascezill beganne to make motions of peace; & receiving some hard and croffe language of one that bare an Enfigne, stroke him vppon the same arme that helde it, where with the Enfigne fell. and divers others that followed, feeing it, and conceining that he which bare it had yeelded it, went in great haft, and yeelded themselues. VVhereuppon, Gildo fled away with a great part of the armie, and the rest surrendred themselves to Masce.

Alfo in the battell of Cirignola, in the Guicinlib. s. Kingdome of Naples, betwixt the Spani- The French ardes and the French, a worde spoken by the Count of Nemonn, (who was then a Generall of the French) beeing misconftrued by his Souldiers, was a very great ken. cause of their ouerthrow. For, the battell being already beginne, and the Count finding withall, that he could not passe a cerain Ditch (ouer which he had thought away; whereuppon, a great part of the to haue ledde some part of his Armie, to Christian Army began to slyc. And this charge the Spaniardes on the other side, to have ledde some part of his Armie, to

Philip Commin.

Examples of Battailes loft

Paul Emil.in Carole 6.

Pedro Mexia.

in Lodonico Ba

Battell loft by

Yury in Frace

in Anno 1500

deth fomtime

a little dilor-

cryed vnto the Souldiers that followed him, Backe, backe ; meaning to lead them another way. But they not knowing the cause, vnderstood that he bad them flye, which they all began to doe: and others (feeing the fame) followd their example. It chanced also at the same time, that the Count was flaine; whereupon the whole Army of the French ranne away, and lefte the fielde and victorie to the Spaniards.

Againe, whosoeuer hath reade any thing of the ancient warres, or hath any experience in these our times: cannot be ignorant, what confusion may bee bred in a battaile, by a little diforder growing vppon some sodaine accident; whereby Armies (many times) are causes of theyr owne ouerthrow. As it chanced to Hanniballin his last battaile with Scipio, wherin his owne Elephants turning backe vppon his Horsse-men, so brake & disordered them, that the Romans taking aduantage thereof, did eafily put them all vnto

The like to this, hath happened fometimes in this our age, and namely, a few yeares past in France, in the yeare of our Lord, 1590. in the battaile of Yury, betweene the King of France, Henrie the fourth, and the Duke de Marne, then Generall for the League . In which Battaile, the Horssemen of the League, flying backe vpon their owne foote, brake them in fuch fort, that theyr Enemie entring withall eafily defeated them.

Lastly, to shew enidently the force of chance in warre, is there any thing more vncertaine or vncoustant then winde and weather? And yet neuerthelesse, thereupon (many times) dependent the successe The victory in of battailes, and other warlike attempts: battels depen especially by sea, where the winde & weather do predominate, and check al the povpon winde & weather aswel wer of men. For, who is ignorant, that by land as fea. be the Nauie neuer fo potent, it can neyther goe out of the harbour, nor arrive where it should to encounter the enemie, if winde and weather be not fauourable Which is also as necessary and importat for obtaining victory in a conflict by fea. wherein, the first advantage that an expert Sea-man feeketh to get of his Enemie, is to winne the winde of him: which winde also changing (sometimes) during the Conflict, doth giue both the aduan-

tage and victory to the enemy. As it fell out in the Battaile of Lepanto, which The battellet the four in the Dattaile of Legislands, and the Turkes, wherein the Winde beeing tween the furthes, fodain-the Turkes, fodain-t ly changed, and draue all the fmoake of Sariasia Can the Artillerie and finall thot vpon them, mentar, 1571. whereby they were fo blinded, that they were very eafily and speedily ouer-

And thus it chanceth in like manner in battailes uppon Land; and therefore wife Captaines feeke not onely to haue the Sunne, but also the winde on theyr backes: for, it often falleth our, that a storme of Haile or Raine in the face of an enemy, or a violent winde, drining either the dust, or the smoake of shot and Artillerie vpon it, giueth the victory to The greating the enemie. As in the famous battaile they of that at Cannas, when Hanniball ouer threw the main. Romaines, and flew four e thousand foote, Talining. and feuen and twenty hundred horse, and Dec. 3.16,2, tooke three thousand and three hundred prisoners. He had the winde in his fauor. which being in his backe, and withall fo violent, that it draue the dust into the Romaines eyes, and did greatly facilitate his

The like, or rather a farre greater vi-Ctory, got Scipio Afiaticus against Antiochus, King of Syria, whom heeput vnto The victory flight, and flew five thousand foote, and of Scipio Alia foure thousand horse, with the losse only Antiochus. of three hundred forty nine men , by the Titus Linius helpe of a foggy mift, and a showre of Dec. 4.4167. raine. For the mist was so thicke, that the huge Army of Antiochus could not one part of it fee another: whereas it wrought no fuch effect in the small Army of the Romaines. And againe, the raine so weakned the Bowes and Slinges of Antiochus his Souldiers, that they ferued to little or no purpose : whereas the Romaines vsing onely Swordes and Darts, receyued no damage thereby. And to come neerer to our time, wee reade that Adolphus the Emperour was flaine, and his vyhole armie cleane ouerthrowne and vanquished by Albertus, by reason that the Sun vvas Guicinlib 3. in their faces.

Alfo, amongst some other causes of the losse of the great Battaile of Ghiaradadda, betweene the Venetians, and the French, Guicebiardine obserueth, that a certain showre of raine; which fel euen

How little confidence is to be had in the pollicy or power of man

fucceffe of a

attaile.

Chap.15.

as they were fighting, made the ground so | women, and Mistresses, and not without flippery vpon a sudden, that the soote of very great reason. For it is a notorious the Venetians could not hold their footing, to defend themselves against the he who abideth as a scruant in a house, French Horse. By which meanes they should entermeddle in seeking to pur-

of them flaine. Thus then we fee, how great a fway chance beareth in battailes and enterprizes of warre, and confequently, how little confidence is to bee reposed in the witte, pollicy, power, and endeuour of men, for eth himselfe. the good successe thereof. VV hich dependeth vpon infinit accidents, chancing teth, that the Licaonians had a law, that if Matricare, fo diverfly (according to the difference any strangers were found to conferre in of persons, times, places, and circumstances) that neyther the wifedome of any for the good Generall can foresee them, nor any diligence, dexterity, or industry of Souldiers preuent them, though al should concurre in the highest degree. For be the Soldiers neuer fo obedient, dexterious, & diligent. and the Captaine neuer fo wife and valiant: yet what affurance is there of good fuccesse, when a sudden danger shall so difinay both Captaine and Soldiers, that neyther the one shall know what to command, nor the other how to obey; when an erronious conceite of some few, or streffe foftly by the siecue of her gowne; bad example of fome one, or a word mistaken, or a blast of winde, or a shewer of raine, and innumerable other accidents, not possible to be fore-feene or remedied, shall give the victory to the weaker, yea, to those that are (in a manner) vanquithed before? Therefore I will thus conclude this Chapter, that the successe of

CHAP.XV.

ments of God.

Battailes, and all warlike attempts, depen-

deth wholly on the will and fecret judge-

How our Ancients and reverend Predeceffors, punished such in former times, as durst do any disbonour to their Mistres-

The Authors eafop for his Chapter heere fet

VVas the more willing to infert this Chapter, to the ende that the youth of our times may know and understand in what veneration and regard, our Ancients held the honour of Ladyes, Gentle

treason, & high point of dishonesty, that were easily broken, and the greater part | chase the loue of his Mistresse: nay, and that which is worse, to obtaine the cheefest point of al. In the compassing or contriuing whereof, he maketh the husband infamous, doth injurie to the wife, fcan-

> Plutarch, in his Booke of Mariage wri- Plut, in lib. fecret with the Miffreffe of their lodging, they had their tongues cut out of their mouthes; and if they prefumed any further, then it was the loffe of their lines. In- The fenerity lius Cafar caused one of his Captaines to of Julius Cabe beheaded, because he had dishonored taine. the Mistresse of the house where hee was lodged: without attending any excuse he could or should make, and without any complaint vrged by the husband.

> The Emperour Aurelius, standing on Marcus Aurea day at his window in his Pallace, & be- hus, a just and holding a young man, who drew his Mi- feuere Empehad them both brought before him immediately, and although the young man and his Mistresse both deposed, that it was onely done in iest; yet Aurelius commanded (neuertheleffe) the fame hand to be smitten off.

Macrobius writeth in his Saturnales, Macrobius in that fuch persons were reputed infamous Satum. among the Romanes, as should give any commendations of the Mistresse of a Family, eyther in regard of her beauty, modest behaulour, or any other seemely quality. For fuch praises they reputed, to give euident notice of more private knowledge, and fuch knowledge vrged fpeech, and speech being the discloser of the hart. would afterward grow to the shamefull acte. In the like manner Aulus Gellius recordeth, that the same punishment was Not Autic. inflicted on him that dishonored his Mistresse, as to him that corrupted a vestall virgin: which penalty was, to have his body cut in foure parts or elfe to bee stoned to death aliue.

CHAP.

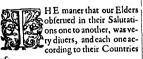
The vanity of

question moo-

worthily an

CHAP.XVI

Concerning divers kindes of Salutation, vfed among our Ancients, when they met



The Idumeans at their meetings, vied The Idumæ to speake these words: The Lord bee with

The true Hebrues, faluting each other, The Hebrues. faid . God faue you my Brother.

The Philosophers were wont to Lay; Goe in a good houre.

The Thebanes faid; God give you health. The Romanes Calutations were as if they The Romans, they would fay; God fend or give you good fortune.

The Sicillians The Cartha-

The Philoso.

phers.

The The-

genians.

The Sicillians faid ; God keepe you. The Carthagenians did not vie any falutations by speeches at their meetings, but as a figne of love and friendlines, they would kiffe their right hands each together, and then kiffe one another.

The Moores likewife at their meetings, would kiffe the right shoulder of one another: and when they tooke leave for their departing, then they would kis each others knee.

The Italians.

In Italy, they have three severall kindes of falutations for a whole day. In the morning they fay, Dio vi dia il buono giorno : Godgine you a good morrow : At midnoon, Dio vi dia falute, God gine you health. And at cucning they fay, Buona fera, Good eeuen. They fay also many times, Miraccommando, I commend me to yee. And after two or three houres of night is past, then they fay, Dio vi diala buona notte; God giue you the goodnesse of the night . Sometime alfo they are accustomed to fay, Iddio vi contenti God content ye.

The Valenti

In the kingdome of Valentia in Spaine, when men meete together, they falute each other in this manner; Gentle Sir, you are well come. And at the departing, the one faith, God remaine with you; and the o-

ther replyeth, Goe in a good houre. In Cathalognia, fuch perfons as chance The Catha-

to meete together, falute one another lognians, thus : You are very well arrived heere Sir. In Castile fome vie to fay, God keepe The Callilli. you : others, God be with you. And when ans. they leave each other, the one faith, God

conduct you: and the other answereth, The bleffed Angels beare you company. Some also vie to say; With your good grace and fauour. And others Adien Sir. In the Court some vie to fay, I kille the hands of Court Saluta your mercy. And fome other, I kille the feet ons. of your Honour or Worfbip. Which Courting falutations are altogether vaine, and (for the most part) delinered with feigning and diffimulation. For many offer to Courtfalus. kille the hands and feete of one another, tions. that would much rather cut them off, the any way kiffe them, defiring indeed to fee each others vtter mine. And certainly (mc-thinks) that men of worth, authority, and respect, ought not to vse any such falurations because to kiffe the feet, hath bin accounted a matter of great dignity, and appertaining to the Pope onely. And to kille the hand, is a gracious fauour affoorded by Kings and Princes, to fuch Subjects as they thinke worthy of fuch

But without gadding after fo many How Christikindes of vanities, and divertity of idle ans shoulds. words, it is a matter meete and reasona. here one another. ble, that wee who are Christians, should imitate lesus Christour Lord and Sauiour, falteting one another, with fuch words as he faluted his Disciples, faying; Peace be with you. Our Redeemer enftructed vs alfo, to falute houses at our entring into them, faying ; Peace be in this houfe.

Epaminondas faid, that vntill the age of An excellent thirty yeares, we should salute men thus: observation of the samous tou are very well come bither, for all this Epaminonds while it appeareth, that they are but come into the world. From thirty vp to fifty, then to falute thus; Wellber yee; because that then they know what maner of thing the world is. And from fifty descending downe againe, to fay, Goein a good and bleffed boure. For then it appeareth, that they are beginning to take leaue of the world, and that as they had an entring into it, so there must needs be a departing from it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

What a commendable thing it is to pardon iniuries, especially in Princes and great

Thath euermore bene a praife-worthy thing to pardon injuries and offences: which Princes and great Lords should neuer be vnmindfull of, but continually to remember the words, which Inline Cafar spake to Manilius. Who (on a time) de-An excellent manding of him, what that was which bequelion moo-ued to Cafar, ing performed by him, he therby thought to receive the greatest glory, and in reand by him as membrance whereof hee ought most to reioyce? VVhereto he thus answered. By the immortall Gods I fweare to thee Manili us, that I never thought my felfe to have merited glory, for any other thing what soener in this life, nor any other elfe fo much to reioyce me; then in pardoning such as had iniuried me, and rewarding them that did me feraice. VVords vndoubtedly worthy of praise, pleasing to heare, notable to reade, and necessary to be followed. For althogh Iulius Casar beleeued as a Pagane, yet his works fauoured of a good Christian : and we miserable men, beleeuing all as Christians, yet our works come farre short of fuch beleefe, through the tentations of our corrupt flesh. Because humane wretchednesse is grown to such an encreasing in these cases, that many would pardon the injuries of their enemies; and yet notwithstanding, dare not do it for feare of men: who viderstanding, that such a man is willing to forgiue his enemy, presently vie to fay; that hee rather doth it through weakneffe and cowardife, then in any respect of charity.

CHAP. XVIII.

From whence (at the first) came the title or name of King and also of Emperour.

VR reuerend Fore-fathers, according to the diversity of Nations, called their Princes by divers names. The

Chap.17,18. The name of King and Emperor. Egiptians called their cheefest Lords and Rulers Pharaohs: The Bythians, Ptolomeis: Nations can The Parthians, Arfacides: The Albanes, ted duerfier Syluies: The Sicillians, Tyrants: And the of tytler gine Argines, Rings. Heere we are to vnder- Princes. fland that long fince in former times, to be a King, was not any dignity, but an office onely: as even now (among vs) is a Gouernour of the Common-wealth.

Plutarch, in his Bookes of Commonwealth, faith, that at the beginning, al fuch as gouerned, were called Tyrants: but afterward, all those that governed badly, were tearmed Tyrants, and fuch as ruled were tearmed Tyrants, and fuch as ruled wellwere flyled Kings, as a different note of the worlds from them. For as the King maintained Tyrant and common vtility, and preferred the fafety King, and the feuerall manof the Commonwealth, before his owne ner of their respects and commodities; so the Tyrant governing in referred his dominion to his cupidity and the Commonprofite, alledging his will onely, as the fole reason of all his vniust commands. The King fed the flock, and the Tyrant denoured it : the one obeyed lawes, & the other commanded aboue them, and also would breake them when himselse pleased: this man was equall, the other vniuft; the one obtayned the kingdome by vertue, and therein conserved it; the other vsurped it

by power, and so by power held it. From the beginning of the foundation of Rome, the Romanes created Kings, The first creato bee gouerned and defended by them: in Rome. neuerthelesse, they afterward found such kinde of gouernment to be so bad, as they would endure no more but feuen Kings. And after they had banished perpetually the Tarquins for their tyranny, cleanfed or purged the Citty, and flaine their of-ferings: they made a folemne oath, for them, their children, and fucceffors, neuer more to create any Kings, eyther to gouerne Rome or them. But forasmuch as the Romane Common-wealth, had formerly received great benefits by their Kings, as by Numa Pompillius, and that their Kings only had the charge of facred Carin Libs. things: they resolued to keepe the name of King perpetually in their Citty, to the end, it should not appeare, that with the expulsion of the Kings, they derogated from diuine Religion and Service.

And because the Auguries or Diviners had faide, that that name was confecrated to the Gods: the Romanes ordayned, that one man among them should

course to a good Pilot, in whom they re-

pose their trust and safety : Euen so as re-

quisite is it, to give the government of a

Citty, to fuch a one as may well conduct

the common-wealth, and render justice

and right to cuery man . For where there

is no Governor (faith Ecclesiastes) the people

are scattered. All things which consist

Kings imitate

The King or Sacrifices.

and whereof

it was deriucd.

Dictatour.

The name of

Emperous gi

en to Calar

by the people

The fiue dig-

Many other

State among

the Roman

Offices of

nities of the

Scuate.

King to be cheefe Priest and Superintendent in hallowed things, and exempted from going to warre. The first man that had this honour in Rome, was Manius Pa-The fire chare Prieft pirius, a Patrician, a louer of peace & quiin Rome. etneffe : who was high Priest in the Temple of Iupiter, and called King.

Now, as concerning the name of Emperour, at the first it was not given by the Romanes, to fuch as held any foueraigne The original of the name of Emperour

power; but onely to their Captaines and Generals, who had effected some worthy acte or enterprize in warre. And no other man was called Emperour, but onely the Colonell of the army, because hee gaue command there. Nam Imperator dict us est ab imperando; For Imperator or Emperour is derived of commanding: which office was held but for a limited time, and that being

be chosen, who (for the times to come)

thould beare the name of the Sacrificing

past, it was deliuered ouer to another. But after the battaile of Pharsalia in The Roman Thessalie, wherein Casar vanquished Pom-

pey: the entire government of the Roman Common-wealth, beeing fallen into the hands of the Dictator Cafar, he coucting to make the authority and foueraigne power, to be proper and hereditary, wold not take on him the title of King (albeit he was fo in effect) because that name was hatefull to the people. And they being defirous to pleafe him, granted that he thould be named Emperour, a name acceptable to all) especially to Souldiers. and which was onely but the fift dignity of the Senate. For the first was the Sacrificing Priest, whom they called King: The fecond, the Dictator: The third, the Con-

full: The fourth, the Tribune of the people : and the fift, the Emperour.

There was also divers other degrees of State, as the Cenfor, the Prator, the Proconfull, the Questor, the Edilis, and other of order and ranke, whereof thall need no question heere. By this meanes then, iulius C.efar having gotten to be perpetuall Dictator, all fuch as succeeded him in the government of the Romanes, were alfo called by the name of Empero ars, and Cafars likewise by his fir-name, which was given him Ab Elephante cafo. As afterwards of Augustus, the Emperours which came in fuccession to him, vsed also to name them-felues enery man AuguCHAP.XIX.

on Kings in ancient times were created of established: And of the Dignity Royall.

The world would perish f the power of God did ot gouer ne it

on a certaine order, should be referred to one head or cheefe. Which we may obferue in some brutish creatures: as in Bees, who observe a forme or image of a common-wealth among them. This world it felfe (the parts whereof are conioyned among themselues, by admirable order and arteficial workman(hip) would ander demanded of him, after what manfayle and come to nothing, if it were not gouerned by the power of God. Therefore such as cannot endure the dominion of many, will submit themselves to the regiment of one; in whom, for opinion of wifedome and goodnesse, they may fafely repose their truft. Wet onely then to the Medes (faish Herodotus) but alfo to Kings as a divine image, and helde it for

In elder times, kingdomes came not

ginning of Royall and

fly ought to

vith good

Chap.19.

Eccles.7,9.

to the Sonnes of Kings, but was given to fuch a one, whom they thought would wifely and religiously maintaine the foundation of the Common-wealth, by concord and justice. In those oldedayes, a The first be-King gouerned in every Citty, and after other Townes became annexed to the principality and dominion of one: Kings Kingly Lurishad beginning to governe over divers people, and thence enfued, that according to the names of Kings, the Regions were so called, which the Romanes tearmed Provinces. Moreover, cuery King should excell one another in justice and power; to the end, that he may the better vnite. his people by equitye, and defend the Common-wealth from enemies. And by good right it may be fayd, that Royall Royall Maic-Maichie ought not only to be decorated with Armes: but ought also to be armed with lawes, that at all times, both of warre and peace, he may both manfully and

vprightly gouerne. Now, speaking of this Royall dignitie, doubtleffe it is fo great and holy, that Kings being protectors and defenders of

yea. & before they will fet foorth to Sea. | focieties among men, do therein imitatel fore-feeing future perils, make their re- the providence of God: the office and action of whom, is to rule and gouerne all things,& therefore by good right, they may be tearmed Vicars and Ministers of the almighty and foueraign Rector of the whole world, and he himfelfe hath called them Gods. Plato reputed a kindome a- Plato in lib. 4. mong mortall men, to be a divine and fo- de Legib. ueraigne goodnesse; because it came neere to the divine nature, and power celestiall. How farre then some do surpasse each other in many things, so a King doth excell al other men in dignity and honor.

not humane but divine.

Porus, a King among the Indians, being taken prisoner in battaile, when Alexner he would be vied : Like a King, quoth India, he. Againe he vrged the fame demand, &

fill he returned the fame answer. For (quoth hee) all is comprised under the word King. The name of King was of fo great veneration among Nations, that the Indians and Persians adored their all other people, Kings (vertuously enclined) their highest and cheefest happinesse, to were established for the administration of have at any time but a sight of them. Poets renowned Jupiter bythe name of king, more then any other title. And in ancient times, Kings did not onely gouerne the and office of common-wealth; but also had the charge Kings in anciand super-intendency of Ceremonies & Sacrifices. Kings then are facred, confidering that the Hebrewes with one and the fame oyle, annointed both their Kings & high Priests.

Let vs fee and observe, how one kinde of reason, and the like of understanding, do gouerne in man like a Queene, Let vs confider the other works of nature, which by a wonderfull kinde of concord, restrained and combined together depend only vpon one . So that if things which imitate nature, are the most perfect and ex- Things imitacellent, then questionlesse, Monarchy is ting nature, are the molt most absolute and entire, farre aboue Aristocratie, Democratie, Oligarchy, or excellent. Laocratie, yea, all other kindes of gouernment, where eyther many persons, or few, or the people themselves do rule and command. And like as it is a very hard matter, to finde many men good and honest, rather then one onely : so is it more hard, that the manners of one man shold

be so soone corrupted, as of many. So

What was the reason, and wpon what occasi-

OR two principall causes, Kings were at first anciently, for the slave of they should preserve come they should preserve come mon instructional equity, by

ued. The other because they should de-

fend the goods and fafety of their Citti-

which bond humane fociety is maintayned, and without which the leffer would be oppressed by the greater, all things being done by power, and no right obser-

zens from enemies. The necessities of life affembled men among themselues, and conjoyned them by a naturall fociety: which hath beene caused by mutuall suecours, support, and offices fitting mankinde. The beginning of this fociety, The begining was reason and speech, whereby wee are of humane differing from all brutish creatures. Reafon cauled many and infinite artes to bee inuented, and speech (which is the interpreter of the spirit) learned, enstructed, &

communicated them, not onely by this mutuall conjunction; but also hath stored the life of man with many commodities. The first and cheefest, was the coniun- The first cor

Gion and coupling of man with woman, inntion of whereof was made one house, wherein all man & where things were to the in common, & thence enfued theren enfued plurality of houses. For Brothers, Siflers, and Cofins contracting mariage together at the beginning, and could not afterward (by multiplicity of their children) be contained all in one house, they went to dwell in other houses. So of one house at the first, came Borroughs and Villages, euen as Colonies of kindred. Finally, from Borroughs & Villages were Of one house deriued Citties, and becomming to bee peopled were enclosed with walles, confirmed with lawes, and enstructed with Towner and fciences : for without all these, they could Villages. not be preserved from the conspiracies of men, and therefore were to bee ruled by fome one, and couetoulnesse of reigning is so great, that all would command, and none obey, or yeeld reuerence.

VVherefore, like as Saylers, when they An apt and are furprized with an impetuous tempest, worthy come run for refuge to the Patron of the Ship, Partion-

Chap.r.

The world to pe donesticy by one man onely. one man, there would not bee so many differences, manners, customes, nor diuerfities of religion, nor fo many warres, offences, and flaughters. But when Citties are under the fway and power of many, they are then ouer-toyled with troubles feditions and diffentions, by reason: of inordinate willes and affections in the greateft: who licence themselves to all euill, beeing partiall and discordant one towards another. Whereof God faid by the mouth of his Prophet; Many Pa-Stours have ruined my Vine.

Let me demaund one question, is it To ferue and not much more feruile and flauish, to atattend vpon tend on the willes of many, then of one the comman of many, is no onely. Nay, are not the couctous defires meane flauery of one man fooner to be fatisfied, then of many? you cannot chuse but grant it, and I craue no better judgement. For as it is neyther good nor necessary, that in one

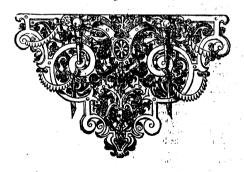
house there should be many fathers of the

that if the whole world were gouerned by | Family :: even fo is it neyther fecure nor profitable. that the Common-wealth should bee governed by the authority of many. Whereof Licurgus gaue good affurance, when fome one required, that Democratie should bee established in Sparta hee returned this answer : Beginit then in thine owne house first.

Yet very true it is that one man onely, how great or finall focuer in power & The power & prerogative cannot (of himfelfe) provide prerogative for all occasions, and in all places: but he may by his Lieutenants (as God by the name) ministery of his Angels) exercise his authority throughout all his Lands under his obedience, as having the eye of his minde euery where, for contayning his Subjects in quietnesse, and causing justice to be administred vnto them. I say then, as a conclusion to this Chapter, that wee ought to liue, in and under the unity of these foure things; Of one God; Of one King; Of one faith; And of one Law.

THE

The End of the Second Booke.



Ecause amongest those Commonweales of Freedome, gouerned by a certain number of Lords,many haue held opinion, that (at this

present time) the Commonwealth of the Switzers is the cheefest, next voto that of Venice: I have many times questioned with divers people, that were no Switzers, how, and after what manner this Common-wealth was first established & gouerned. For they did highly marnaile. that fo many people, having but little, should ally and encrease themselues in so short while, euen as enclosed within a defensive wall or circuite, and continue firmely knit together in peace, for fuch a

large and long expence of yeeres.
The Common-wealth of the Athenians, excelling all the reft in Greece, was affembled and felected of many people, and from many places, not only into one countrey, but also within one & the same city. As for the Commonwealth of the Achaians, composed of twelue towns or cities, it did not last long, nor prosper: but after it continued in some dignitie, under

Aratus and Philopoemen, foone afterward it was subdued by the Romaines, because the abused her owne liberty. After the death of lofbua, the Common-wealth of The common Ifrael, exposed (thorow, her owne fault) wealthof Ifto pillage and violence of enemies, was many times protected and defended by Iudges and valiant persons, which God had raifed up for that purpose : but at the last, the twelve Tribes, as beeing glutted or furfetted with their own liberty, made choise of a King out of their own motion

In the time of our Ancestors, by the intermedling and folicitation of the Emperour Frederick, the Townes of * Suaba v. nited themselves together, and (by that meanes) were esteemed inuincible : but having rashly attempted (and by badde conduct) war against the Switzers, the for mer confederation lostinuch of the latter. Which afterward, it feemed the recouered againe, when the confederates expulfed the Duke of Wirtemberg, and ruinated all the Castles of Suaba, detained by divers theeves and robbers. So that soon after the time of their league was expired they became fo ftrange one to another, that they who before were their friendes and allies, were reputed by them as theyr greatest enemies, and joyned themselnes with those that had most molested them; by which meanes, in verie few yeares this league was vtterly loft and vanished.

realth of the

The Preface

or induction

of the Autho



THE THIRD BOOKE.

The Originall of the Switzers, and their ieuerall CANTONS.

Containing, the Government of the Countrey; the publike estate of the thirteene Cantons, and of their Confederates, both in generall and particuler : Their Baylywickes, and Junifdi-Etions; The Originall and condition of all their Alliances; Their battels, victories, conquests, and other memorable actions; from the Emperor Raoul of Habspourg, until the time of Charles the fift.

CHAP. I.

med Pomers-

All Switzerand is no other but one Commonwealth,& the reason therof

Passage by plurality of

deth all fub-

The nation

the Switzer

confifteth of

estates in co

194

Now albeit there are many people, & great number of Townes and Cities in Swetia; yet is it neuertheleffe, but euen as one City or Commonwealth. I know that learned men will hardly credite this, because they suppose vs to haue no society, nor any conjunction of government, and fo (by consequent) it cannot be said, that Swetia can yeild the body of a Commonwealth confidering also, that the Townes are not tyed to the ordinances of other Cities or Townes, except with their owne good will and liking, as in the Conventions private of affociates. So it is, that in the fame degree of Commonwealth, what soeuer hath passed by plurality of voyces, it bindeth all the Subjects of that Commonwealth. As for my felf, I am not willing to contest with the lear= ned: for I freely confesse the trueth of their faying; if wee confider matters exactly. But in regard that the whole Nation of the Switzers confifteth of common estates, gouerning many Prouinces in common, deliberating altogether on the affaires of peace and warre, hauing (almost) a like Lawes and Customes, and are to fluictly conjoyned by perpetuall Conventions: admit that this were not one onely Commonwealth, and in fuch nature as hath beene formerly spoken of; yet notwithstanding, wee that write and speake of these matters some-what more popularly, do imagine, that we shall not much faile, in calling this affociation and league, the City and Commonwealth of the Switzers.

Thus then this Commonwealth esta-

blished by perpetuall alliances, hath con-

ferued her liberty for the space of more

then two hundred yeares, with great con-cord, and incredible vnion of hearts of all

the Switzers. For albeit that once or

twice(according as it hapneth almost or-

dinarily in all great Commonweals)they

haue beene prouoked and stirred to civill

warres: yet notwithstanding, those trou-

bles were immediately pacified, and al re-

vnited together againe in fincere & cor-

diall affection; embracing the laudable

defire of their predecessors, to study still

for the freedome of their Countreyes

maintenance. Neuerthelesse, there are

fome kind of men (enemies to the Swit-

zers) so impudent, as to reproch vs, that

in Heluetia, euery man is a mafter or com-

How Com.

ended, & mu tuall loue emmander, and that our Ancestors, having put to death, or troden under foote the awe of our Noblemen, by these meanes entred into this liberty, contrary vnto all right and reason. Others do (more truly) confesse, that our Noble-men did offer fuch outrage to our predecessors, both in words and deeds, that they had just occafion to vndertake Armes, which all that while they managed very sharpely, as it happeneth among people much abused and prouoked. But to fatisfie the irrefolution of fome friends, who understand not for the Authe efface of our affaires, and to rembarre thors writing the calumnies of the enuious, I thought of this difgood to imploy my labour, in describing the forme of the Switzers Commonwealth, by reprouing all vntruthes to the full, and ascending to the heighth of their originall.

All Heluetia or Switzerland, is at this day confidered in three parts : for first of The parts and all the thirteene Cantons haue alwayes Helucia. allved and combined themselues, as into one body of a City. And these are they, Zurich, Berne, Lucerne, Vri, Suits, Vnderwald, Zug, Glaris, Bafile, Pribourg, Soleurre, The thirteen Schaffouse, and Appenzel. In the second place are the affociates and confederates of the thirteene Cantons, to wit, first of all, the Abbot and Towne of S. Gal: next, Affociats and the confedered Grisons, the Byshop of Confederates Sion, and the whole countries of Valais, Rotuille, Mulhouse, and Bienne. Consequently, the territories or Bayliwickes, which are gouerned by the 13. Cantons Iurifdidions in common, to witte ; Turgow, Bade, the or Bayliwick Rhegusces, now adayes called Rhinthall, Sargans, the free Prouinces, the inhabitants of Lugano, Locarne, Mendrife, and the Vale Madie; whereto may well bee ioyned them of Bellizone, who are vnder the dominion of the three leffer Cantons Circles and The cities and townes of the Cantons & Towns of the Zug, Bafile, Fribourg, Soleurre, Schaffoufe,

Moreouer, all of them abide not in Switzerland, neither within those limites proposed by Casar in his Commentaries: for of the thirteen Cantons, Bafile is as a quar- ment. Lib. 4. ter apart, which was anciently called the countrie of the Raurasians. Schaffouse is in Allemaigne or Germany, on the further

confederates, are Zurich, Berne, Lucerne, Cantons and S.Gal, Coire of the Grifons, Syon in Valate, Villages ap. Rotuille, Mulhouse, and Bien ne for all the pertaining to him. rest do dwell in villages.

fide of the Rhine: and one part of them of Glaris and of Vri. do touch (as some conceine) with the Grifons and the Alpes . Asforthe affociates, except the Abbot and Town of S. Gal and Bienne : al the reft are out of the limits of the ancient country of Heluetia. First we consider, that the Grisons retaine still their name and olde country of the Rhasians. Next is the Valastans, who in elder times were called Viberins, Sedufians, and Veragrians. Rotulle is in Germany, and Mulhoule towardes the Franche Comté. Now as concerning the Iurifdictions or Baylywickes, they of Rhinthal and of the Sargans, are Grifons . But they of Lugano, Locarne, Mendrife, of the Vale Medie, and of Bellizone, are Italians by originall and Language: the other Iurisdictions remaine in Switzer-

And heere you are to understand, that

these Cantons doe not hold equal autho-

rity ouer the distinct countries; but ac-

cording as the affociations have beene

made in diversity of times, even so are the

authority of the Cantons divers. They

of Turgow, hold as their Lords and heads

the feauen most ancient Cantons, namely,

Zurich, Lucerne, vri, Suites, Vnderuald,

Zug & Glaris. Berne, Fribourg, & Soleurre,

do vndergoe some right in criminall cau-

fes. For the Prouostinip or Precendency

of the Empire (as they vsed to tearme it)

and judgement of criminall processes,

was heeretofore referred to them of Con-

stance, as their due: but among other con-

ditions of peace, after the warre of Sua-

ba, this authority was granted vnto the

Switzers, which appertained equally to

the fore-named Cantons, because they all

ioyned together in the felfe-fame warre.

Moreover, those seven Cantons comman-

ding at Bada, did the like to them of Sar-

gans, Rhinthal, and ouer the Free Pro-

uincesulfo. True it is, that in their go-

uernement of Bada, they affociated the

men of Berne with them; and they of Ap-

penzel in the government of Rhinthal; and

all the Cantons to the foure Baylywickes,

which are on the confines of Italy . Belli-

zone is subject to them of Vri, Suits, and

Vnderuald: and fuch (at this day) is the

condition and estate of the Switzers

Common-wealth. Now, I purpose to

fhew the times, the cause, and the princi-

pall Articles of the Switzers league. Alfo,

Diverfity of authoritie in the jurifdiAions of the Cantons.

land.

Chap.2.

The Abbot &

the towne of

An ancient

The order of

the Bayly-

people of Germany.

Saint Gal,

Anthority of riminall oc-

> Affociations in matter of and authority

what hath beene the estate of each Cans ton, before they became allved together. and what their dues and rightes have beene, and are. Lastly, what warres they have maintained fince their League yvas made:

CHAP. II.

Of the three fir & Cantons of the Switzers.



N the year after the natiuity of our Lord Iesus Christ, 309 they of Vri, susts, and Vnderuald, wer the very first that Cantonned themselves. They

were tearmed Swaines or Boores of the countrey, dwelling in vallies, and in their owne Language, filed, Die Drep Lander. alfo Die der maloftett: And, in time, Lucerne came into the fourth place. They dwelt in the Valleyes of the Alpes, betweene the Grifons countrey, the Vale of Liuiner, and high Valais, and were fea-



ted betweene the Canton of Zurich. and the countrie of Ergon. Some doe Of whom and affirme, that they of Suits, are desce-ded of the Cimbri-cended. ans; they of Vri, of the Taurifci & they

of Vnderuald, of certaine banished Romanes; and indeed. their magnanimity in war declares them

to be iffued of generous Ancestors. Their Annals do testifie, that the Emperor Lewes, fonne to Charlemaign, at the these people. request of the Byshop of Rome, graunted these people liberty to bee governed by Lawes made among themselves, & gave them many other Priviledges, for theyr faithfull feruice in warre against the Sazarins, in behalfe of the cittle of Rome. For the Sarrazius, who in those times much troubled Affrica, having invaded Sicilie, came likewise into Italy: where they tooke fome places: and afterward marching vnto Rome, easily made themfelues Masters of the Vatican, vvhich

The Empe-rors fauour to

whence there

Called alfo

Gallia Toga-

ta,and Citeri

or Gallia, be-

tweene them

and the Alpes

A citty built

Martius in the

months of Ty-

of the Helue-

tian Annales.

A great spoile

Sarazine by

Cantons.

the three first

by Ancus

then stood voyd of any defence. There | gest sonne to Charlemaigne, gane them of | The lands a they robbed the Temple of Saint Pecer, breaking downe the gates thereof, that were of filuer and very great value, and afterward burnt and destroyed it. Hauing continued there divers daves in determi-



the whole Cittie: they heard tydings (as Historians fay) that a great band of foldiers, belonging to Cifalpine Gaule. came to the fuccor of Rome, which

made them forthwith recoile, and to wast all the plaine Countrey about Rome. Among other badde feruices, they robbed the Temple of S. Paul vpon the way to Oftia, and stuffed it with such fires, as the more part thereof was vtterly ruined.

From thence continuing on theyr

rauage, euen fo far as mount Callinum. they stole away all the lewels and Ornaments of the Abbey, and defaced a

great part thereof. Thence getting vnto the fea shore, and lading their Shippes with their stolne booties : finding them ready to fet faile, they lanched forth into

Now, the Annales of Switzerland'or Heluetia, do fay; that thele three first Cantons, and they of the Valley of Hafell, were prefent at this fore-mentioned fuccour and supply, and passed two seuerall times into Italy, vnder the conduct of a certaine Italian Marquesse, named Guy. They pursued the Sarazins, and cut their rere-gard in peeces, bringing back a great spoile from this ouerthrowe of theirs. which they altogether gaue to the Temple of S. Peter, euen all that they hadde gotten from the enemy. In regard wherof, the Pope (as a recompence for fo great a benefite) obtained (on theyr behalfe) great priviledges from the King of France; and moreouer, presented them with those Ensignes or Standards, which yet, in our daies, they vie to beare in war.

Notwithstanding, the Emperor Lewes sonne to Lewes the Debonnaire, and youn-

gett ionne to Chartemaigne, gane them or Vri, to the Abbey which he had builte at Turegum, now called Zurich, where his Abbay of Tu daughter Hildegarde was Lady Abbesie: regum. and the wordes of the Donation (truely translated out of the Latine Coppie) are these which follow.

The Donation of the Emperour Lewes to the Abbay of Turegum.



E giue to our Abbay, founded at Turegum, where Saint Feat 2 wrogmin the antenna the Lord with their bodyes; latine Copp our Bourough or Towns of our Bourough or Shabas

blemen in

thefe Can-

one feuerally

diftinguished by their pla-

The fourfe or

originall of

confusion in

any estate

Partialities de

roue moft

angerous.

euermore

Tureoum Scituated in the Dutchy of Suabay in the Territory of Durgan, with all the appurtenances and dependances in diver s charges : to wit, the village of Vri with the churches, houses, and other buildings about named: The flaves, male and female young and old, lands eareable and defert, Woods, Meddowes, pasture grounds, Fish ponds, Rivers, Ports, Passages, things found and yet to find, with all olde rents and revennewes. Moreouer our Forrest named Albis and generally all those things fore-mentioned . that eyther now or heereafter do and may appertaine vnto vs, without referuing or retaining any thing what soeuer.

But it is not to bee thought, that this Donation did wholly abolish the ancient priviledges and libertie of them of Vri: For, if we may credit them, the Emperor ri, not truffe gaue not the Seigneury of all the country to this recited Abbay, but of one Village or two onely. Moreover, if it were so that the whole valley of Vri had bin vnder fub iection to this Abbay, yet notwithstanding, it coulde not much prejudice their freedome: because such as were any way subject to Monasteries or Conuents. were obliged under certaine conditions, and enjoyed their liberties in the meane while, onely their feruice to the Church excepted.

Beside, they received their Gouernors or Prouosts of the empire, to take knowledge and censure in causes criminall, without any appeale. They of Vri alfo did formerly do the like; and as concerning other causes, their Judge, whom they tearme Amman (as much to fay, as Major or Bourgomaster) with his Councellors or Assistants, was chosen from a-

Chap.2. mong the people, by good knowledge the Nobility, especially such as were as had of him and them, & they are to prouide in common for the affayres of the Commonwealth. They of Suits & Vaderuald do gouerne themselves in the same manner; and among them, men belonging to the Church, have some power and priniledges. In these severall quarters wer good store of Noblemen. As among them of Vri. the Barons of Attinghule, Schwinfberg and Vizinge: The Lords of Sillini Winterberg Mole, Sedorf, Spiring, Meier, of Bourgs and of Gezefeld. Among

them of Suns, the Lords of Stouffacker. Rogkenberg, Schunanow. In the quarters of Vnderwald, the Lords of Wolffen chieff. Hlumence, Rudentz, Altnach, Walterferg, Lembourg, Liebourg, and Huneville. At the beginning, these Gentlemen carryed themselves very kindly with the other Inhabitants, and part of them ferued as vaffailes to some neighbouring Earles. But when they grew rich thorow fuccession of times, they began to misprize the people, and to subject them to theyr vniust commands. The Gouernors, who ought

to conferue the peoples libertie, making femblance of not feeing fuch harfh behaujours : fauoured the Gentlemen, as being next in condition to themselves, and

by those meanes both augmented & supported their power.

In those times especially, not onelie the freedome of the Switzers Cantons. but likewise of many Townes in Germany, were in manifest danger. The Emperors were excommunicated, and in open warres affayled by the Popes, fo that all Germany was divided into two factions, one part wheroffollowed the Popes power, and the other the Emperors. The people of Switzerland, and some few of their Nobility, tooke part with Frederick | ftles or other places, without the counfell and the lawfull emperor, who (for that cause) liking of the other Allies, they shal not stand renewed and reconfirmed the auncient priviledges of their liberty. They of Suits can yet thew the Letters Patents of Frederick the fecond, written in the moneth of September, in the yeare 1240, wherby he received them of Suites into the fafe- fence. If any Shalattempt to inuade or fet vpgard of the empire, as members thereof; on the lands of Vri and Suits: they of Zurich

their priviledges, and called them people of free condition. On the contrary side, the most part of siedge the Towne of Zurich, and shall S; sporte

ned or estranged thence, hee confirmed

vasfals to Convents and Abbaies, which were then in very great credit, they followed the Popes faction. Hence forung the hatreds enmities, and first foundation of The vacancie civill diffentions, all taking a wonderfull of a Princes increasing in the Interregnum of manie way to manie yeares, after the death of Fredericke. Ne- harmes, uertheleffe, in those very times, the forenamed people did(euen then) eniov their intire liberty, although many ambufcadoes were prepared to deprine them of its fift against times as appeareth sufficiently by a deed patent ranny. of confederacie for three yeares, by them of Pri and Suits, with them of the Towne of Zurich, the tenor of which confederacie followeth thus.

Atrue Copy of the Patent of Confederacie betweene Zurich, Vri. and Suits.

Constance. We make it knowne, that we are

obliged together by oath, mutually to ayd and

counsell each other from the Feast of the na-

tiuity of lefus Christ, untill & for the space

confederates shal possesse himselfe of any Ca-

magement by fire or (poile on any place, Wee

wil loyn all our meanes together, to make war

on them that (hal have committed (uch an of-

all other belpes of hostility . If any shall be

TO all them to whome these Letters shall. come, to be either feen or heard: We Ar- the incient nol Majeur de Sillini, Amman, and the people of Vri: and we Conrad de iberg, Amman and the people of Suits, and of the Diocesse of

of threeyeares infuing , on these conditions following. What seuer hath bin done or past before y day, doth not any way ty vs togither. If a Lord, what soeuer he be have a servant or The coverant vaffall among vs: that vaffall or fernat shall of conditions agreed vpon be Subject onto him, according to the custom betweenthem

which hath heretofore bin ved in the kings time. But if the Lord (ball constraine him beand feruants. yond that limitation; then will we endeuor to

Succour the servant. If any of the Allies or

bound to furnish the with the charge of Gar- Against Gre or rifon or munition. If any one have done enda- other spoile.

and that they should not be any way alic- Shalimpeach them to their vetermost power. Against inua-If they cannot attaine thereunto: they shall sion to be of-

then endamage them by burning, facking, and fered on ey-

Their liberties renewed indconfirmed by the Empe ors Letters Paten ts.

and trees a-

Against no-uelty in alli-ance.

Six men chofen for Vri & Suits out of Zurich, and as many out of Vri and Suits, to command all the reft.

Provision for death of any of the twelve th the time of

The Switzer elous of the

The Nobiliti

For the Vines | Poyle the Vines and trees about it : they of Vri and Suites Chall oppose all their forces against them, and shall rob and burne the enemies Country. If any one of these inter-obliged parties, doe make confederation with any other, the other Allies Iball not Itand bounds

Moreover, we of Vri and of Suits, have made choise of sixe persons among the Cittizens of Zurich; namely, Raoul Muller, Roger Mannes, Raoul Beggenh, Knightes, Gaultier de Saint Pierre, Garnier Biberlin, and Conrad Krieg . And We of Zurich have chosen three among them of Vri; namely, Garnier de Attinghuse, Burckhard, the old Amman, Conrad Maicur of Ort schueld. And as many of Suits, namely: Conrad, Amman of Iberg, Raoul Stuffacher, and Conrad Hun. Thefe twelve men. according to their discretion. Shall give command to all the Allies, for mutuall ayding dy Succouring one another, both how and when-Soeuer neede shall require, in those affavres whereof the conditions have formerly bin expressed. If any one of these twelvemen shall chaunce to die within compasse of the three consederation yeares alliances the other shall stand bound by Oath, to substitute another in his place within fourteene dayes after following. And to the end that all before declared, may continue firme for the time prefixed : Wee the Senate and Citizens of Zurich, and we the people of Vriand Suits, have put our Seales to three instruments of the same tenure, concerning this our faithfull alliance . Given at Zurich the day of Saint Gal in the year of our Lord God,M.CC. LI.

> These Letters of alliance, made an 100. yeares before that they of Zurich hadde contracted perpetuall alliance with the three first Cantons, do evidently declare how those people were euermore icalous of their liberty, without offering wrong neuertheleffe vnto any person in conferuing it. Now, about ten yeares after this alliance made, the Empire being trobled with factions, in regard it was destitute of an Emperor, and Heluetia much molested by the onermuch license, which the Nobility tooke to themselues day by day:the three Cantons having heard Raoul of Habspourg (who was afterward Emperor) to be highly commended for many Vertues clearely thining in him, gaue him yearly pledges, and electing him for their head, made alliance with him, that theyr

liberty might be maintained at the fwords point, if neede required. They of Zurich. Bafile, and Strasbourg did as much at the very fame time. The like did manie free Alliance Townes of Germany, being called vnto their fuccour, and gaue mony enery yeare to preferue to the neighbouring Princes, to the end, their liberty. they might be fecured by their meanes.

The authority of Raoul, beeing bufied in other warres about Zurich, Bafile, and Strasbourg, comming thort of abilitie to represse the insolence of the Nobilitie: at length the people (being too much trod The first war downe by great mens outrages) vnder- of the Nobilitooke Armes, and expelled them forth of Cantons the Countrey that had raifed this diforder. This warre continued twelve yeares, about the yeare of our Lord, 1260. and fome few yeares following. And in this Erection of warre, all the Cantons beganne to fortify Collected the passages of their Countreyes. They of fence. Suits builded a Tower at Mount Sattell, fortifying and cutting off the great highway. They of Vnderuald, did dam up the Lake with a strong prouision of stakes & thrubs, toward the village of Stantz, and fortified the Port, by meanes of a Tower which they builded there. The year 1272. it came to passe, that Raoul of Habspourg was elected King of the Romaines. Then the Gentlemen of Switzerland went vnto him, and gaue him to understand, that the people had rebelled : on the contrary, the people maintained , how much the The trueffre Nobility had outraged them . The King | medy to imhaving heard both parties, and feene the fions of effat priviledges of the people, gave fentence to their benefit, and made peace between them and the Noblemen expulsed out of Heluetia, whither they returned again for the more part. As for the rest of the country, the king did generally confirme Gouernors in the name of the Empire, ¬ Emperors of the house of Austria: which Gouernors in the house (from their beginning) did not dwell in of Austria. towns or villages, but kept themselves in their Castles, whence they came, twice or thrice yearely, to judge in cases of pro-

In our dayes, there are Towns in Germanie, that received fuch Governours of the Empire, who managed no other matter, but onely causes criminall, & had no other occasions in Townes to attend vpon, but only the. And so far off was king

ceffe, but more especially in criminal cau-

bridged none zers liberti :s.

> They of Saits were termed free people.

entirely to the

Austria and

The Emperor Albert agreat enemy to the Switzers li-

> Tyranny is cautelous in his proceepaffe his in-

Raoul, from diminishing the liberties of King Raoul athe Switzers: as rather many of the Cantons flood beholding to him, for not only the confirmation, but likewife the amplification of their priniledges. For, without depending on them of Zurich; he confirmed and augmented the priviledges of the Canton of Suits, in the 18. yeare of his Empire, as appeareth by his Letters given at Bada, in the yeare 1291, where in expresse termes, they of Suits are called people of free condition. True it is that the King himselfe tooke

things of fuch flender confequence, and

that all the profite hee could procure by

viurping ouer the Switzers, could not va-

Adolph de Nassau, who was successour

to Raoul in the Empire, confirmed to the

Switzers their priviledges. By meanes

whereof the Switzers were highly hated

of Albert, Sonne to Raoul, and enemy to

Adolph. This Albert was the very grea-

test aduersary and persecutor of the liber-

ties of the Switzers. Hee had a great

number of children, and to advance and

enrich them, hee began to ftretch foorth

his wings to farre as possibly he could, &

especially he resolued, to prouide a new

kinde of principality in Switzerland. Hee

being become Emperour attributed ma-

ny things to the house of Austria, that

appertained to the Empire: which made

him offensive and insupportable to his

neighbours, in being shamelesse, to get

to himselse whatsoever he desired, evther

by vniust demands, or else by manifest vi-

olence. And because Ecclesiasticall per-

lue the ill-will he should gaine thereby.

very great pames, to make the house of The Switzers Habspourg great: but he left to the Switzers their liberties entire. Either because

Chap.2.

fons were very powerfull; he practifed byall meanes, eyther to make fale to thein of their jurisdictions, or elfe to make them acknowledgehim and his childre, as their hereditary and perpetuall Tutors & Protectors. In this manner he dealt with the Colledges and Convents of Strasbourg, Bafile Constance, Coire, S. Gal, the Hermi- ledges intultage, Rafe, Difentz, Pfauertz, Ringw. ted voon by Wettinghen Muren, Interlach, Trubic, Cer- the Emperor tia, Seconn, Schennisis, Zurich, and many other places beside. By the selfe-same cunning, he follicited & oppressed the Earles and Barons of Switzerland or Heluctia. to put the miclues into the fafegard, and become valials to the house of Austria, valid to the he would not be accounted vnthankfull.

Among others were the Lords of Villam, house of Au-Rotenburg, Keynspourg, Eschenbach, Al- Emperours in ruinating the that had fuccoured him. bourg Wolhuse and Grencinge. and thewne themselves faithfull in his right, before he was himperour, perswa-In former times, the Colledges and Conuents depended upon the Empire, & ding himfelfe alfo, that his affaires would Lords & Gentlemen did neuer acknowprosper the better, by having the Switledge any other Soueraigne vpon earth, zers his loyall friends and affociates, then but the Emperor onely: but this Albert to make rebels of fubicats, who would laboured to fasten all to the house of Aucarry but bad affection to the oppreffors Aria. .. Weemay eafily judge of his vioof their liberty : Or elfe in regard, that hauing (but a very little before) iovned the lence rowards frangers, by his bad carri-Dukedome of Austria, as also of Alleage to his owne proper Nephew, to who stata ioyned margne or Sudba, to his other possessions, to the Eupehe might thereby imagine, that it would be the beautiful account to follow on maigne or Suaba, to his other possessions, he would never (although hee was very many times thereto required) render the cruely to his thermitage paternall, which he gouerned beget him a generall hatred, to fasten on

in quality of a Tutor. But the abbot of phew. Saint Gal, two Colledges of the Towne of Zurich, and the Count of Hombourg, could never be brought to that point, to acknowledge them of Austria for their Protectors neyther to fell them any portion of their jurisdictions. They continually alledged their ancient priviledges, Tyrants doe and would not permit, that they shoulde alwaies meets be difmembred from the Empire: which much incensed and offended the Empe- will refift arour, who had practifed vpon the rights gainft their designes. of many other, especially the Connents Secoun, Murbach, the Hermitage, Interi lach, Difentz, and Lucerne, who had given him all that appertained to them, at Gla- An cuil exam ris Lucerne, Suits, and Vnderuald. Howbe- pleis no rule it, they had formerly promifed (by verie in others. authenticall letters) to the inhabitants of those places, neuer to alienate them to any other. But all this while, Albert curningly wonne the harts of fimple people, and by goodly promifes, made them to

ratific these alienations. Hauing (by these meanes), gotten foo-

12.20

The practice ror Albert, t (ubie & them of Suits and Vnderuald.

Faire words

to the ene-

mies of free peoples liber-

Threatning

of a Princes

diffauour ominous

ting in the round neighbouring Countries, & bought some Castles of the Conuents, in the Territories of the forenamed Cantons: heébegan to looke into fome meanes, whereby he might become Mafter of Suits and Inderuald, which being enclosed by the of Austria fthat domineerd over the Hermitage Glaris Zuo. Lucerne & other places thereabout) caufed many to imagine, that except hee could prevaile against the too, they wold quit their liberty as the other did . Neuertheles. Albert being desirous to reach the height of his defire, by fuch meanes ashe had propounded to himfelfe: fent in Emballic to them of Suits and Vnderwald the Baron of Liechtenberg, Gouernor of Allatia, and the Baron of Ochfenstin, two of his intimate Councellers. They addressed themselves first to the of Suits. and perswaded them to yeeld themselves into the protection of the house of Aufria, who were very beningne Princes, & vnder whole dominion they might live much more peaceably, the formerly they had done under the Empire difmembred and rent in peeces (as it were) while the Princes were in debate about the election of Emperors. They further added, that they of Austria had the revenues of many Conuents in those very quarters, and that if they refused; by displeasing Albert, they might well conceive, that their affaires would but badly carry themselues; but in doing the contrary, his highnesse made them promife of all honest and amiable entertainmet, that a Prince could affoord them.

The men of Suits, having bene advertifed before concerning the intention & demaund of Albert, by Garnier, Count of Hombourg, Lord of a neere neighbouring Country, called La Marche: a man not well affected by Albert because he had refused to yeeld himselfe vassale to 9 house of Austria: And having conferred with them of Vri and Vnderwald, returned thus their answer to the Ambassadours. That the Kings and Romane Emperours Wisedome & good councell had given them faire and ample priviledges, carrying expresse charge, that they thould never bee difmembred from the Empire: wherefore they were fully refolued in imitation of their Ancestours example, to continue firmely joyned to the

of Murbach and Beron, whose rights and reuenues (especially about Suitz) were then in the hands of the Austrian Princes. having formerly promifed by authentical inflruments neuer to alienate themselves to any other authority whatfociter: If they had kept their promile, they would have done the like in duty to them. But feeing that they had broken their faith; and all donot merit former contracts were vnnahurally can- to be followed celled: their example was no warrant to extendure them for the like. Moreouer they would to generall render to Albert and his children, Princes of Austria such fidelity and obedience as they ought to do : entreating Albert, feeing he was Emperor; that he would not permit them to be divided from the Empire. Belide, in regard his Predecessours had confirmed their priviledges to them of Suits (which himselfe as yethad not done) they therefore againe did humbly entreate him, that he would youch afe to confirm them. They also desired the Ambaffadors, to returne this their answer to his Imperiall Maiesty, and to entreate on their behalfe, that he would benignly receive them.

The Ambassadors having this answer. went to deale with them of Vri & Vnderuald: who (according to that which had beene accorded on among them before) defire to pu made the felfe-same answere as they of Suits had done. In all the forenamed Villages, they did nothing elfe but shew to the Ambaffadors, the Letters Patents and priviledges, granted them by Fredericke, Raoul of Habspourg, and other Emperors, together with the letters and confents of the Monasteries: all of them making humble entreaty that they might not be compelled to fee al those things frustrated. But the Emperor having heard the Ambaffadors, was highly offended at the answer, ded thathis because the Switzers not only refused to expectation acknowledge them of Austria for their ted. Lords, & would not willingly be separated from the Empires body: but also declared, that they would yeelde to no difiunction from the Monasteries, by which meanes, all the precedent attempts of Albert, built vppon great cost and trauaile, were vtterly disappointed.

In some short while after, they of Suits, Vri and Vnderuald, having againe fent their Ambassadours vnto the Empe-Romane Empire. As for the Monasteries rour, to obtaine confirmation of their

ent to the Emperor by the Switzers Bad prefidents

Chap.2.

mhaffadors

xrraordina-Gouernors Caftels erecredand Garrifon, placed in the Country,are the coinning of manifest ty-

Vniry is re-

Gouernors enter like Angelsbut continue and

oc out like

Multitude of

Governors

are very dan-

ercus in any

common-

priviledges: hee answered them in choller, that hee would fatisfie their requests; according as they nad done his demands. And that hee had deputed certaine Gouernors, which he purposed to send vnto them, and by whom they should more amply understand his minde.

Following this intention, heefencus Gouernors the Knight Grifler, and Peregrin Landberg. Grifler was appointed for Suits and Vrs. and made his abiding in an olde Castell aboue Suits, called Cufnach, and beside hee builded another Fortresse on the Land of Vri. Landberg, the Gouernour of Vnderuald, had two Castles, to wit. Sarne about the Forrest, and Rotzberg beneath, which Forrest divided the country of Vnderhald inft in the midft. Thefe two Caffles did formerly belong to the Conventor Colledge of Lucerne, & the Maiors or Bourgoniaisters made their dwellings there: but the Emperor Albert had folde them to the house of Austria. and there he appointed Garrisons. These deportments were fomething nouell and ilrange to them of Vri, Suits, and Vnder-uald: for till that time, these three severall places together had but one Gouernour. who (ouer and beside) was many times Gouernor of Zurich and other Townes. Hee remained in his Seigneuries out of the Cantons, and enery yeare once or twice (being called) hee came thither to ludge in law-cases. The rest of the time, he had a Lieutenant chosen among the Country people, that executed his charge But now there was appointed two perpetuall Gouernors, keeping Garrison in the very strongest parts of the Country: which the people were constrained to endure, onely in feare of the Emperour. and in regard beside, that those places were in the power of the Austrian Prin-

At the beginning, these Gouernours shewed themselves very courteous and affable to all men : labouring by blandifh. ments and faire lookes, to winne the peoples harts, & to subject them to the house of Austria. But perceining that these carriages did little availe them, they began to checke and oppresse the people, by the command of Albert; who was againg greeuously enraged, by reason of a new league or alliance (made for the space of ten yeares) betweene them of Suits, and

the Count of Hombourg . Tyranny thus encredfing day by day, Ambaffadors (in name of the three Villages) were fent to the Emperour, who would nevther feel Acunning nor heare them: fo that they were conhis Councellers . The fumme whereof frustrate and was that being people of the Roman Emples compire, they had obtained very ample fran- plaints. chizes and priniledges of the Eurperors's whereof they were now in danger to bee despoiled; and oppressed by an inkesome and infurportable tyranny. For the inhabitants of the recited places, were without cause or vpon very flender occasion. immediately imprisoned, & pressed with nouell exactions . Beside all this, every man in particular was compelled at a certaine time, especially the first day of the Newsallyear to bring prefents to the Gouernors, on & gift to which neuer had beene put in practife before. In which respect, they most humbly on the people defired the Councellers, to intercede on their bhalfe to the Emperour: that fuch charges might bee taken from them, and that their auncient priviledges might bee confirmed and put in full force againe. But the Emperours Councellers having Such as the conferred and agreed together, made an- Mafter is, fuch fwer; that the Villages themselves were commonly the cause of this oppression, and that the archis Ser-Emperour was thus severe to them, because they would not follow the example of Luceane, Zug, and Glaris, in yeelding thefelues to the house of Austria. Which doing, and making more account (then formerly they had done) of Albert and his children; they shold find him a Prince

that would vie them very kindly. The Deputies having received this anfwer, returned without doing any thing Landbergwas else: in the meane while, the tyranny of a most tyran nicall Gouerthe Gouernors (being fauoured & winked at by the Emperour) grew more and more to greater strength. In a certaine Valley of Vnderuald, called Melchtall, ther dwelled an aged rich man, icalous of his Countries liberty, and one that had bene the cheefest in councelling his compatriots, neuer to subject themselves vnto the house of Austria, but carefully to preferne their ancient liberty, which ma was named Henry of Melchtall. Landberg fent The extonia Seruant vnto him, with charge to bring ons of Landberg, with him a couple of Oxen. Wher- Gedin the Hito Henry answered, that he knew not him- floy of Hen

tricke in the

felfe tall.

ting in them

their liberty by lawfull meanes.

Telfe to be culpable of any crime, whereby mends of him: and albeit hee had committed some offence, yet hee ought not thus to extend his authority vopon his goods before he had beene heard & condemned. The fernant being of humour answerable to his Master, arrogantly re-plyed, that instantly he wold drive thence the Oxen: and if he stood in need of them to plough his Land, his Country lubbers should serue to draw in the yoake. Thus focaking, hee tooke the Oxen out of their yoakes, and made himfelfe ready to drive them away. Arnoul, a lufty young man, and Son to

Henry, mooned at this outrage offered to

Oppression is an cafie marter to procure impatience in a Sonne feeing his Father

med the Moand iniuftice.

Tyranny blindfolded by his villaneus companion concupiscence, and chaftifed by the iuft iudge ment of God his father; gaue the feruant a found blow with a cudgell, as hee was driving on the Oxen, and chanced to breake one of his fingers: but fearing the tyranny of his Master he got immediately to the top of the Mountaines, and withdrew himfelfe among them of Vri, where hee kent close with one of his kindred. Landberg vnderstanding al that had past, sent out for Henry Melchtall, demanding of him what was become of his Son. Henry made answer, that he knew not where he was as indeed hee was meerely ignorant of his flight: whereat the Gouernour was so furiously enraged, that he caused the old mans eies to be pluckt foorth, droue away his Oxen, & despoyled him beside, of the most part of his goods. This cruelty brought him into the hatred of all the people: but in regard of Alberts power and oppressions, commanding over them very stearnely, there was no man (as then) that durst ftir against him. And because wicked courses grow to a great head, when ouermuch licence is permitted to them: euen fo infolent iniquity in the Gouernors, did drive them out of one mischiese into ano-

Neere to the Abbey of Engelberg, and to the Village of Wolffenschiez, in a place named Alzelen, there dwelt a country ma called Conrad de Bomgarten, maried to a very faire and beautifull woman. It chanced that a Gentleman, named Wolffen (chiefz, being Lieutenant to the Gouernor, returning from Engelberg, & passing by Alzelen, to goe home to his house at Rotzberg, found this woma in a meadow, buffed about some commendable exer- fort, that hee would bow & bend them at

cife. He understanding that her husband was absent, commanded the woman to make him ready a Bath, wherein he might wash himselfe, because he was ouer-trauelled with heate and labour. The woman not daring to make refufall, did as the tyfurther in his intended villany, he pressed en another. the woman to put off her garments, and come into the Bath to him ; wherein fhee promifed to obey, prouided, that two varlets, which attended on him, might withdraw themsclues, as accordingly they presently did vppon their masters com-

The woman vsing some delay, yet seigning preparation of her felfe to come into eth meanto the Bath : got recourry of a doore be- preserucher hinde in the chamber, and fled away in chafter reputs great feare and anguish. Her husband waies finded returning from the Forrest, chanced to helpe when she least to meete her, and vnderstanding what had keth for it. happened entred his house, and with an Axe or Hatchet, which he then had in his hand, flew the Lieutenant fitting in the Bath, and so he received the chastisement due to his wicked attempt, vpon the ho-nour of a vertuous modest woman. The Gouernant fought all means to revenge his death: hut he was so hated of all men, as he could not execute any thing. Befide the villany and indignity of his Lieutenant, with-held him from daring to require any helpe of the Country:in regard alfo, that he who had done the deed, was fled into the Lands of Vnderuald, & kept himselfe hid among them of Fri. Some fay, and among others, Eternilerus, and Stumpfius in his Annales of Heluetia, that Sumfius in this man was the Gouernour himfelfe; the Annales who feeking thus to violence an honest land. woman, became so slaine. But they of underuald maintaine, that hee who was kild in the Bath was called Wolffen schiel z a fernant to the house of Austria, and dwelling at Rotzberg.

While these Tragedies were thus acting at Vnderuald, Grifler, the Gouernour of Vri and Suits also, to keepe the people nour Griflet. in the more awe and subjection; began to builde (by command from his Mafter) a Fort or Cittadell neere to Alterff, vpon a finall Hill called Solturne. This Grifler beeing a verye vaine-glorious man, made vaunt of abasing the people in such

alled the oake of exreme flauery o the people

Bonnet of

Hat to be re-

ueronced by

Note the fub-

tilty of a Ty-

A Cittadell

Modelty feek

Garnier Stouffacher Sonne to Raoul Scouffacher first Maeiftrate of

Tyrants are enemiesto them that maintaine the peoples liber-

Chap.2. his pleasure; wherupon he called his Fort, (not diffemble his greefe. Which was the A yoake of extreme flauery to the Vrians. He perceiuing, that all men were enraged & badly bent toward him, and doubting, lefte some matter might secretly be contriued against him to compasse discouery thereof, he vndertooke this course enfuing. He caused a Hat or Bonnet to be fixed vpon a long Pole, erected in the market place of Altorff, where the greater part of the Country people vsed to meete, and gaue command, that all men (taking off their owne Bonnets) should bow their knees, and veelde as much honour to that Hat, as they vied to doe to him the Gouernor, or when they came into his presence. His purpose and opinion was heereby, that fuch as were malicioully addicted towards him would neuer humble themselves, in doing so many reuerences to the Hat, especially if they had any conforts, vpon whose help they made any dependance: and that this occasion would ferue him as an honest pretence for their discouery to his spies, and so tortures might be inflicted on them, to gain knowledge of the whole enterprize. In the meane while, he departed thence, to visite the Country of Suits, where he was likewise Commander and Gouernor.

In Suits there was a Gentleman of marke, named Garnier Stouffacher, whose Father was called Raoul, and had bene the first Magistrate of Suits, about thirty years before. This Garnier had built a house in more ample and magnificent manner, then was the viual custome of the Country. It fortuned, that the Gouernor Grifler passed on horsebacke by this house, and demanded to whom it appertained Stouffacher knowing himselfe to bee in theill opinion of the Gouernor, because he had alwayes before councelled the people, not to subject themselves to them of Au-Stria: This house (quoth he) is for the King and you, by whose liberality, I am possessiour of it. Then the Gouernor anfwered; I am Lord of this Country, and henceforward I will not fuffer any more, that yee shall fway your selves after your owne appetites, in building houses, as if you were Masters, and that you shall well

feele before it be long. This answer delivered with outragious menaces, greatly displeased Stouffa cher, who (from that time forward) could

cause that his wife, being a wise, modest, and discreete Lady, perceiving her husband fad and penfiue, and understanding the reason thereof; exhorted him to hope well, in regard that God, to whom all violence and tyranny was displeasing, wold final & senneuer forfake fuch as innoked his help & der appeafurtherance. Moreouer it would well be- rance, grov come him to make fearch after men of feets; effect courage, fuch as were oppressed with the ally against fame tyranny : to conferre with them, and syranny. ioyne their meanes together, to recouer the liberty of their Country: for thee durst affure him, that God would blesse fo holy an enterprize. Stouffacher, hauing a long time consulted with himselfe, at length went from Suits, to Vri. where he eafily knew and perceived, that Griller was hated of all men in those quarters, by reason of his insupportable pride, euen as much as he was in Suits: especially by the Baron of Attingbuse, then cheefest in inflice at Vri, & a familiar friend to Stouffacher. This Baron first began to complaine, as extremely wearied with the infolencies of Grifler, in erecting his Hat, as comfort one to ranke it with Princes; protesting open-another by ly that he could not permit his Country, any longer to endure fo great a tyranny.

But Stouffacher fearing (perhaps) that the Baron vied this kinde of language, only but to found him, and (as we vie to fay) to vndermine his fecretst cogitations: kept his owne intention couert, contenting himfelfe, to breake his minde vnto an ancient faithfull friend of his, called Gantier Furst, that is to fay the Prince. These two having many and fundry times confi- The three first dered on all matters, and taken into their mendat wer councell (as a third party) Arnould Melch-dation & be-dation & betall of underuald; bound themselves to- ginners of the gether by mutuall oath, to ioyne all their Switzers, and meanes, and imploy their paines by a co-their manner mon confent, for the extirpation of tyran- of proceeding ny, and reducing their country to her ancient liberty. Moreover they concluded, that each of them in his owne quarter, should procure so many men as possibly he could, prouided, that they were people of good and discreet carriage: who shold all sweare to imploy both their goods & bodies, and to maintaine one another in his right, for recourry of the Countries former freedome; and that in the meane while, each man should acquit himselfe

nasteries as also to al Gentlemen & Ycomen. Promising likewise, to keepe this league & combination fecret, vntill fuch time as (by common advice) all the confederates (hould bee resolued to publish ferre on thefe it. They made choise also of a private ferious affairs, place, necre to the Lake of Fri, called Grutly, where these three chiefe heads of the League vied to meete, accompanied each one with three or foure, to aduise together what was to be done.

Stouffacher. Furft, and Melchtall the three men of the league.

Oppression

is a fey to o-

pen the vn-derstanding

of most and

leaft.

home, to make conjunction with his copanions. Soone after this not onely the vulgar people, but likewise the most part of the Nobility in the Villages, rancked themselues with the confederates: For the Gouernours did molest the Noblemen, no leffe then they did the common fort, not making any difference betweene the one and other, but called the Gentlemen, peazants, and companions of rascality. In like manner, they of Austria had appropriated (by little & little) to themfelues, the rights belonging to Noblemen : whereat many being offended, had forfaken (as it were) the part of Austria, as we have formerly observed by the Baron of Attinghufe.

Aduice taken for beginning the butineffe publikely.

ferences, each fide ought to be indicially heard.

of his duty towards the Empire, the Mo-

Thus you may perceive, how the ground-worke of the League of Switzers was then begunne, by Stouffacher, Furst, and Melchtall: and being so agreed vppon, each man returned by himfelfe

The number of the confederates becing encreased, it seemed good ito many, that it was time to fet hand to the worke, namely, to chale thence the Gouernors, & replant the ancient liberty of the country: for feare (lefte by ouer-long delay, their enterptize would be discouered (by fome meanes) to the Gouernors. And therefore, in the yeare 1207, the 17. day of October, twelve of the principall men among all the confederates, affembled themselves at a certaine place appointed. All infifted to lay hand to the bufineffe fo foone as possible might be; against which, they of Vnderuald onely opposed them-selues: because that the Castles or Fortreffes, which the Gouernor held in their Inferious con territory, to wit, Sarne and Rotzberg, were places well munited, and almost impregnable, and if fiedge should bee planted before them, the King of the Romaines would come forthwith, bringing an Ar-

my fufficient to fuccour them. The other confederates veelded to this motion, and agreed together, that the first day of la-nuary then next following, through al the Cantons, seizure should be made, on all the strongest Castles belonging vnto the Gouernor. To whom notwithstanding, not any outrage should be offered, ney-ther to any of their family or Garrisons: toexpellibe except only to fuch as would make head, Gouernor from the new and withftand them in Armies; butto of their tyran fend the Gouernors fafely and well away, ny. with their goods. Moreouer, that the Castles and strongest holds or Cittadels, should be rafed from the top to the bottome: to declare by manifeit effect, that they had not vndertaken Armes for blowes or pillage, but onely to conferue their Countries liberty. This resolution agreed on, each man retired home to his house, awaiting for the day appointed: in the meane space, according to faithfull promife, they kept their determination very fecret.

While these affaires were thus in for-While their attaires were thus in for-warding, there happened a notable acci-dent at Vri. One Guillaume Tell, a man in laum Tell, on the confederacy, divers times passed by much invited before the Hat exalted on the Pole, as Gouernor. formerly hath beene related, without performing any reuerence thereto. And being therefore accused to the Gouernor Griffer: he entreated, that his incivility might bee excused, because hee reputed fuch reuerence to bee a matter of ino importance. But the Gouernor, who held him a man much to be suspected, among Guillaumes children, made choise of a young little boy, whom the Father loued very dearly. And hee commanded Guillaume (being known an excellent archer) to fet his sonne some good distance off,& with an Arrowe, to cleave an Apple vp- innaionto on his head, which if he did not, his owne Father by th head should be smitten off. Guillaume Tel sprenting answered, that his commaund was too be aduente strange and senere, and he had rather die, red. then thorough default of shooting right, to kill his deerest sonne. If thou doest not performe it, faide the Gouernour, it shall cost both thy life, and thy sonnes.

Prayers and entreaties not prevailing, Tell tooke his Bowe; and, by the prouidence of God (who questionlesse guided and directed the Arrow) cleft the Apple in twaine voon his fonnes head. Enerie

SWITZ ZVG. VNDERS.OF.THE.LIB STOVFFACHER SOLLEVRE. LVCERNE. SCAFFOVSE. BERNE. ZVRICH. GRISONS. VALAIS.

An hardin-





Tyrants are neuer in fafefelues,but alwalce fulpiti-

The admira-

ble prouided of God, to

bring fuch a

to his end.

206

but the Governor, not contented with fo perillous a fatisfaction, perceining another Arrow remaining under Guillaumes girdle, demanded of him, what vie hee meant to make of that other Arrow? Guillaume replied, that it was a custom among Archers, to draw more arrowes then one out of their Quiners, for any occasio that might happen. But the Gouernor suspe-Aing fornething elfc, preffed him more & more;& finally, promised him to faue his life, if he would confesse the truth: which accordingly Tell did, and that he had that other Arrow ready, therewith to kill the Gouernor if his first shaft had slaine his Son. Then the Governor declared, that he wold not take away his life, because he had promifed the contrary: but he should be kept in perpetuall priton, and live miferably in darkneffe, without converfing with any man living. Thus fpeaking, he caused him to be fast bound with cordes, & led into a Barque, that having past the Lake of Vri, he might be conuaied to the Cattle of Cufnach. The Gouernor, with his people & prisoner, being in the midst of the Lake a greenous tempest suddenly exalted it felfe, which did put the Barque in cuident perill. They perceiving themselues in extreame danger of their liues: one of Griflers fernants faid to his mafter, that there was but one only means wherby to faue them, and that was, to vnbinde Guillaume Tel. and refer the Barques conduct to him, because he was a most expert Marriner, strong and able to direct them in fuch a necessity. So extreme vrgent was the case, that every man allowed the councell, & vnbound Tell; who fastening hold on the Rudder, and guiding it manfully, preserved the Barque among the roughest billowes, turning her prow towards the country of Suits.

one of the beholders did not a little re-

iovce, at fuch a faire and admirable shoot:

Having attained neere enough vnto the shore, there appeared a mighty stone (like vnto a Rock) about the water, which to this day is called Telles Stone. Being hard by it, Tell caught hold thereon with his Bow, which lay at his feete in the Potpe, and leaping foorth quickly vpon that Hone he gaue to firong a thrust with his foote against the Barques side, that it returned back among the stearn billows. This done he tooke his flight thence, and

hid himfelfe among the neighbouring Mountaines. The Barque having long floated in this manner, was guided at length by the Gouernours feruants, to a Port named Brune des Fontaines. From thence the Gouernour fet on his way towards Culnach, and must needs passe thorough a hollow craggy straite, where Tel! The correct (well acquainted with all those parts) by great good hap had ambushed himselfe mentwinds among thick bushes : there he discharged iniquity of an Arrow at the Gouernor, which paffed quite through his body, & flew him. Ther remaineth yet (to our time) a Chappell, built on the place where the Gouernour Two chappets was flaine: and another vpon the Stone erecteding. or Rocke, where Tell threw himselfe out as hungme. of the Barque . After this successefull morials of the shoote, Tell went to Suits, where he made tyrants out all these matters knowne to Stouffacher. good fortune
From thence hee tooke his way ouer the highest Mountains, and turning by Morfach, came back to Vri, wher having foud Gautier Furst, he acquainted him with all that had hapned. By this time, they had gotten hearts and hands enow, to expell all the Gouernors family and followers: but having respect to them of Vnderuald, and remembring their former resolution for the first day of lanuary following, they kept thefelues quiet. & Tell (in the meane time) liued closely among his friends.

The first day of Ianuary being come, they of Vnderuald made themselves Ma- The retraite sters of two Fortresses, according to a compromise passed between them. In and women the Fort of Rotzberg there dwelt a chainbermaid, who was in loue with a goodly young man of Vnderuald, and committed folly with him. An especiall night of meeting being appointed by them both, the young man brought twenty other armed Souldiers with him, and caused them to lye closely hidden neere the Castle. He having given the fignall to his wench, who knew nothing at all of the intended deceit, was mounted up aloft to her by the helpe of a corde. Having staide sometime of dalliance with her, making her to beleeve one thing for another; he left the chamber a while, going to the window whereat he had bin drawne vp. & letting downe the cord, drew vp one of his companions, and then teturned to his lasse againe. He that had thus gotten vp, neuer left till he had drawne vp all his other fel-

When the the best wifecannot pre-

Chap.2.

Ry base and

meanes, the

oppressors MAS VETET IV

of the tyrant

lowes, (who were vnmatchable for frength and courage) and fo got poffeffion of the place: where they kept all the contemptible gates strongly defended, and close thut vp. in expectation of good newes from ower of the their other conforts, who were to feize

the other Fortresse called sarne. brought to That other company confifted of fifty valiant men, thirty of them hauing ambuthed themselves in a neere neighboring wood: the rest went directly towards the Castle, leaning upon staues and croutches, and carrying presents to the Gouernor, (according to custome of the day) as Lambs, Pigs, Calues, Cheeses, and such like things. The Gouernor was going to church, answerable to his ordinary wont at fuch a time, and met them on the way, where perceiting them to haue no other Armes then staues and croutches, which ferued (as it feemed) to support their feeble bodies: hee made no doubt of any thing, but paffed on, not a little pleafed When the judgement of with those presents, and brought him in heaten intended more liberall and plentifull manner, then they were formerly wont to do. Their dome in men staues and croutches were made round, and pierced so hollow within: that they could eafily fcrew in long tharpe pikes of iron, which each of them carried close hid in his bosome. They came to the Castle, where beeing permitted entrance with their New-yeares gifts: they possessed thefelues of the Gates, giving an appointed fignall to their fellow-fouldiers lying in the wood, who came immediately to fuccour them, and tooke them all prifoners that were in the Castle. Afterward. hearing that Rotzberg was furprized by Secretic pro-led alkie in their other affociates, they releafed all their priforiers, and the Gouernor affo, whom they had laid fure hold on, as hee was about to escape. When the Gouernor and his followers had folemnly promifed vpon oath, neuer more to returne againe into those quarters; they gaue the leaue to depart, & fent them by fafe conduct out of the Country, and then ruined those two strong Forts or Castles flat to the ground. The very fame day alfo, they of Vri demolished the new Cittadell, which Grifler had named, The yoake of the The neft and Vrians, being not as yet fully finished; and yoake of Tyfarny vicerly in Suits, Stouffacher (with his followers) defaced and ruined. won and ruined the Cittadell of Louerts, builded nere vnto the Lake. On the mor-

row, the three villages (by their Deputies) made a publike league of amity and alliance to continue for ten years, voon the conditions before mentioned, cofirming The onely them al by folemne oath. Behold the end tiffe them. of their tyrannicall government, whom felues against Albert had established ouer the Cantons tyranny.

When Albert had received tydings of

this fudden change: he was wonderfully

enraged, and refolued to make war vpon.

the cantons, as thinking by strong hand

to bring them in subjection. He sent first of all to his fubicats of Zug Lucerne & other neighbours of Suits, Vri, and Vnderuald, to fuffer no victuals to be convayed to them. But in a short while after, he was flaine by his owne Nephew, the Son of enemy to the his Brother, and by his complices, in paf- Switzers, fing over the River of Ruff: fo that this flaine by his war by him intended, remained now to be own nephew freshly attempted. His sonnes, being sufficiently hindred from reuenging his deth, left the Switzers in peace: fearing lefte they should joyne with the Gentlemen. who had flaine their Father. About this timesthey of Austria ruined many strong places in Heluctia, as in the Territory of Zurich, Warte, Multperg, Schnabelberg, Spoile and Maschwande the Towne and Castle, and waste made Farwange in the neighbouring quarter. by the Austrians in SwirSome most noble families also were by

zerland, on them fubuerted and extermined, to wit, Noble & Ge that of Eschinbach, Wartz, Palme, & many other. For at the taking of the Castle of Forwange, in one day, 63. Gentlemen, with their feruants, had their heads finitten off: And in other parts of Switzerland, they of Austria canfed to be flaine, or banished out of the country, about a Tooo.perfons, the most part wherof were

Henry of Luzelbourg ,7. Emperor of that Henry the z. name, succeeded after Albert. He confir-med the priviledges & ancient liberty of the 3.cautons the 3, cantons, & citablified a Propost or wherin may Aduocate of the Empire, to be Judge in law cases in the Towne of Zurich, the of god to shine round neighbouring places, and in the three Cantons, in name of the Emperor. This Prouost was named Raoul of Hab- to long op-(pourg, Lord of Lauffenberg, Sonne to pression.

Noble. There are some ill-willers, that do

ble families: when al this while, those hor-

rid actions (for the most part) were com-

mitted by them of the house of Austria.

Guillaume Telles Stone or rock, which was (next to God) the meanes of his delinerance.

falfely accuse the Switzers, to hau. defo- False imputalated many places, & expelled many No-the Switzers,

rour Alberts

murderers of their Father.

A difference

cerne & the

men of Vn.

deruald.

betweene

208

to the Emperor Raoul of Habibourg. But the Emperor Henry being gon into Italy, (in which iourney an hundred Souldiers of Zurich, and as many of the other Cantons, were at his pay) the Prouost was fallely accused (as some say) before the Emperor by the means of Duke Leopold, who hated him, and faid that he had abufed his authority. So that he was deposed, and Edward de Burgle, dwelling at Turge, substituted in his place. Afterward, Raoul being brought to answer his cause at the Court of France, dyed at Montpellier. His scruants brought backe his body, and caused it to bee buried in the Abbey of Wettinghen.

The Sonnes of Albert having flaine all The reuenge them that were present at the murder of their Father, and expelled all their other Somes on the complices; became rich and powerfull, for they had feized on the goods of al the that had hand in the death of Albert. The three cantons were highly in their malice and difgrace, yet they durft not begin war ypon them (caring (perhaps) the Emperor, who had taken the Switzers into his protection: but nevertheleffe, they molested the Cantons by divers in-roades, for they could eafily offend them of Vnderuald, by Boates descending on the lake of Lucerne; yet the Cantons kept themfelues carefully within compaffe of their guards, & mutually affifted one another.

In the yeare one thousand three hun-

dred and ten, a Ship well munited & furnithed with men, fet foorth from Lucern, them of Luto make affault on the of Vnderuald, who in the defence of them of Vri, that were come (by great chance) with a Shippe of warre to assist them; did both bondge & finke the Veffell of Lucerne, very neere to the Port, killing a great number of the Soldiers, and taking the rest prisoners. This loffe thus received, they of Lucerne Lucerne glad (and their neighbours) tooke truce with to take truce the Cantons. In the same yeare, they of with the Can-Suits, being defirous to pacific all matters among them: bought of Ewrard. Count of Hab/pourg, Arte and Cufnach, Villages of their Cantons, and fubiects to the house of Habspourg, encreasing & enlarging the limitation of their bounds very much that way. But on the other fide they had warre against the Monkes of the Hermitage, & for the space of about four

Godfrey, who was Nephew to Raoul, vnkle | hundred years; each being at push of the Pike against the other, and for those reafons which I will breefely relate.

> The Emperor Otho, surnamed the great, about the yeare 950. hadde established certaine bounds to them of Suits, and to of fo many the Monkes of the Hermitage. In these limitations fome Mountaines (fertile for menof Suis pasturage) were left to the Monks, which & the Monks till that time had bene possessed by them of Suits. It came to passe, that they wold not keepe themselves to the Emperours appointment; but held their ancient limits. The Abbots of the Hermitage, who were not able enough to debout the out of their possession; gaue not ouer to obtaine of the Emperors fuccessors, confirmation of the ordinance fet downe by Othe. About the yeare one thousand, forty foure, the Abbot Geron accused them of Suits to Henry the third, Emperor. Raoul and Arnoul, Earles of Lentzbourg, & Gouernors of Zug, being joyned with them of Suits, made their complaint likewife, that their limits were much abridged. But the Emperour Henry re-confirmed the The grantof grant of Othe,& condemned the Counts Othothe of Lentzhourg to a certaine fine of mony; Great, reconfirmed by the all which notwithstanding, they of Suks Emperor Har kept themselves in their ancient possession y, the thirds still in despight of all y the Abbot could do. Once more then about the yeare of our Lord, 1144. the Abbot Faoul accused them before Conrad the second, Emperor, who confirmed also the sentence of Otho. Neuertheleffe, they of Suits maintained themselves (perforce) in possession still, and the Abbot (on the contrary fide) defending the limits given him by the Emperor, and making vie of them accordingly; raifed warre vpon them, inuading continually one another, and taking prisoners on eyther side. These enmitties endured a long time, and at last, Raoul, The Count of Count of Rafperwill, brought them to an Rafperwilber agreement, in the yeare 1217. This ac- came a good cord was imbraced & kept for about the betweene space of fifty yeares, at the end of which long discontime, there came an Abbot, named Anfelme, under whom nouell differences began : because that both sides expounded the tract of pacification, in a contrary fence and meaning.

The war being againe renewed continued foure and forty yeares: but soone after, they of Zurich laboured to ratifie

Chap.2.

Peace broken off againe by

villanous be-baujour in the

Monks of the

Her pitage to holy Pilgrims

The Abby en-

night time by

them of Suits

o reuenge

heir wrong

ty hardly to

Election of

Lewes of Ba-

uaria.four.h

Emperor, and

difference

alling amon the Princes

The ground

featenth. While they were treating on this peace, some men of Suits, being gon in pilgrimage to this Abbey of the Hermitage: were villianously and publikely outraged by certaine Monks, which wholy brake off the negotiation. Moreover, the Princes of Austria, who had appropriated to themselves the protection of the Abbey: incenfed the Abbot and Monks against them of Suits, promising them continuall fuccour. The warre hauing lasted long, wherein they of Suits were greatly endamaged: at length, in the yeare, 1313, the 23, day of February, they went foorth fecretly into the fields in the night time, & having deceived the guardes; entred by strong hand into the Abbey, taking and leading thence the Monkes that had done the outrage, together with the Curate of the place, named John, and the Master of the Schoole, na. med Rapul. There were then Monkes of noble birth in the Abbey, namely, Raoul, and Henry of Wnenberg, John Regensperg, and Burckhard Fleminger. This was the cause that the Counts of Habspourg and of Togge, and the Baron of Regenspere, who were their neere allies and kinimen. as also John of Schwanden, Abbot of the Hermitage, greatly imployed their pains with them of Suits, for these Monkes. When the Monks had follemnly promifed ypon oath, neuer more to deale with them of Suits in any fuch enterprize, nor to attempt any matter of reuenge vppon them: they were released, having first payed nine hundred pounds Tournois. But this enlargement came to farre thort of appealing them: that it wrought a quite contrary effect in them, continually fixing their thraldome before their eyes; fo that thence forward, they fought all meanes whereby to injure them of Suits. Heereupon happened a new occasion

of troubles. After the death of the Emperor Henry, in the yeare 1314 the States of that name, the Empire beeing affembled to create a new Emperor; the Electors found themfelues to be divided in opinion. Foure of them elected Lewes of Bauaria, fourth of that name: but the other three gaue their voices to Frederick of Austria, the Sonne to Albert. He to make his part equall in voices to Lewes his number, named Henry, Duke of Carinthia, as King of Bohemia,

a firme peace, in the time of Henry the maintaining that this kingdome belonged to him, by right of the Country, Frederick counted this Duke among them that thould give their vovces:albeit that John. fonne to Henry the 7. was king of Bohemia, having married the daughter to the late deceated king. This difmembring of the Empire, caused those greenous trou- The cause of bles in Germany and tieluetia. The three the dismall Cantons, enemies to the house of Au- Germany and Stria, 10yning themselves with Lewes of Switzerland. Bauaria: all their neighbors being before in their protection of Austria, or else at the time of these elections, approoued that of Frederick. Now in regard that the three Cantons onely, made head against Frederick; he prevailed so far, that (by his accufation) the Bishoppe of Confrance excommunicated them, & they wer The three banished by the Court Imperiall, which communicawas at Rotuille. They were charged, that ted and bani they had viole reed the abbey of the Her- they would mitage, & (in that tumult) had cast downe not yeeld the and spoiled the holy facrifice: which they felues to terof Suits firmely and floutly denied, promifing contrarivite, feuerely to punish the offenders in such a delict, provided, y they might be discourred to them. And although they could not produce any one; yet notwithstanding, they remained banished & excommunicated. In regard whereof they humbly entreated the Emperor Lewes to undertake the knowledge of this cause: which he did and procured afterward, that they were reintegrated into the communion of the Church.

In this time, the Gentlemen that were forth of the lands of the 3. Cantons, with warre preparties Gouernors; folicited Leopold of Autred by Prince ftria, Son to Albert, to make war vpon the Auttria a-Cantons. The Abbot of the Hermitage, gainst the 3. and the Count of Monfort rouled on this the cause wheele with their best helpe. The occasi- thereof. fion was very honest, as it feemed, to wit; that the Prince purposed to revenge the outrage done to the Chappell of the Virgin Mary. The yong Prince, being young, powerfull, and a true heire to his Fathers hatreds: fuffered himfelf to be thus councelled, and intended profecution of this wat. His forces were about him by whole meanes he had spoiled the places and cafiles of his fathers murderers : & Soldiers were people aptly disposed forwar, and made rich by the booties they had taken in those castles. Moreover, he levied a mighty Army,

War by then gainft the Monkes of the HermiThe divition conducted

The volunta

ry offer of the

Cantons to

the Prince,re-

quiring peace

and no way defirous of

The affembl

Cantons, and

their numbe

The great

mercy and

providence

ring lafety fo

oppressed

people.

210

of the Forces Alfatia, dividing all these powers into telonging to two parts. One of them, which (as is cre-Prince Leo-pold, and who dibly affirmed) confifted of about twenty thousand men; was conducted by himselfe against them of Suits. He gaue the rest to the Count of Strasberg, Gouernor of the vale of Hafell, that they might afcend the Mountaine of Brunig, and affaile that fide belonging to them of Vnderuald.

The Cantons hearing newes of this preparation, mustered vp their forces, & because nothing might remaine as forgotten: they fent to craue peace of the Prince, by the Count of Togge, promifing to accept the Prince as their Judge, & to make answer in his presence, to the Abbot of the Hermitage, and to the expelled Nobility. But the Prince would allow no audience to the Count, and refused all negotiation of peace. The whole hope and expectation of quietnes being thus cut off; a Fast was published & comanded throughout the Cantons, and prayers devoutly made to God. All fuch as could carry Armes, were fent to the Garrisons in all those parts, where any entrance might be made into g countries.

But because the Prince was at Zue. with the greater part of his power: the allies affembled thefelues at Suits, which is the very neerest Canton to Zug, and there were mustred foure hundred Souldiers of Vri three hundred of Vnderuald. and fixe hundred of Suits. These made vp 1 300 men in all, and thus they refolued to attend the enemy, valiantly exposing their lines for confernation of their countries liberties, wiues, and children: declaring themselues (in this case) no lesse worthy of commendation, then the Lacedemonians, who fighting for the freedome of Greece, dyed all with their weapons in their hands, at the passage of the Thermopyle. It is faid that the Lord of Huneberg, a worthy Gentleman, dwelling in the territory of Zug, and being then in the Army of Prince Leopold, taking compassion on the death of so many innocents, at whose throtes flycing kniues lay ouerready (for it was concluded by the Nobility, to put the three Cantons to fire & fword) did fecretly aduertife the confederates, by a Letter which he shot vnto the fastened at an Arrow, that the day of S.

Army, collected from Suiffe, Suaba, and Omer (which was the 16.of November) they should be assayled at a place called Morgarten, and therfore it flood them on to looke to their bufinefle. The allies hearing this, fortified strongly that place;appointing men to all the wayes whereby the enemy should passe, and encamped themselves aloft on the Mountaine.

> Fifty men had then ranked themselues together, which had bene banished from War ought Suits, and they humbly defired, that their not tobar or banishment might be reuoked, offering fice, in care to imploy their paines couragiously, for of important the fafety of their Country. But a fad an- necessity. fwer was returned them to wit that many among them were guilty of very greeuous crimes: therefore they would not accept such people for companions, as fearing lefte those faulty persons, might be the occasion of harme to the whole Army. These poore banished men (for al this) would not give ouer their good affection, which they had intirely addicted to their Countries fuccour : but got poffession of a little high Hill on the Frontiers, which hung ouer the way, whereby (of necessity) the enemy must passe.

> The fixteenth day of November being The battell of come in the yeare, 1315. Lespold caufed Morgarten, his troopes to iffue foorth of Zug, about wherea the the breake of day; the infantery marching formoft, with all the Nobility and fifty menohorsemen: for the Gentlemen had refolued to chastife the poore Country people with their owne hands, whom they tearmed the Seditious. As they were entred on the confines of zuits, having the Lake of Egeria on the one fide, the high Mountaines on the other, and their Army betweene both. The banished men began to roule downe from the Mountaines top, great huge stones, and mighty Logs of Timber, vpon the Princes Army. Afterward, without the least intermission, hauing laid together great heaps of incredible big sharpe-pointed Flints: then showred them downe (as it were) youn the horfemen, euen like to a violent the best way tempest of haile.

This accident neuer expected, did put the Army into very great trouble; for men were not able to gouerne their horfes, frighted with the continual falling of Tharpe stones from aloft, and very greeuous wounds they received by the. This being noted by them of Suits, who were

Diligence and haft is most expedient & availeable when vrgene

The ouer-

Count of

throw of the

Strasberg at

ranged vpon a very high place: they marched on to meete the enemy in the face : and (from a farre off) threw huge stones, and thor sharpe pointed arrows at them. Afterward, they came to handy grapling, and charges with Halberds fo furiouflie, that both horse and foote were put to flight; among whom, the Abbot of the Hermitage, and the Count of Mountfort were the formost, as is credibly reported. Ouer and beside the footmen, 1500, horsmen were flaine in this battell, beside many drowned in the Lake, & a great number /by reason of the narrowe passage. which hindred the fauing of themselues) were murdred by their own fellowes, and trodden to death with horfes. Two and fifty Citizens of Zurich, being all habited alike in garments of one colour, and well knowne by the Cantons, to be the most valiant men in all the enemies army, being fent by the Senate to fuccour the

Duke of Austria, were flaine in the field.

The felfefame day as the battaile vvas fought at Morgarten, the Count of Strafberg (hauing chased the Garrison of Brumig from the Mountain:) entred into the Indernald,& Country with three thousand men, and n what maner it was perforbegan to forrage enery where. He incamped at Alpenach, which is a Village in the Canton of Vnderuald, threatning the next morning to inuade the other part of the country beyond the Forrest, if they on the hither fide did not willingly yeeld themfelues. But in the meane while, they of Vnderuald beyond the Forrest, assembled them of the Mountaines round about. & called to their assistance them on the hither fide the Forrest, whom the enemie had not found asiyet, and by the fame meanes gaue knowledge to theyr partakers which were at Suits. The Messenger arrived at Brunen the morrow after the battaile, but others fay, that it was the very fame day. These newes beeing thus come, they of Vnderuald put themselues vpon the Lake, and made fuch diligence in getting to their houses, as in two hours space (by painfull labour and speed of the Ferry men) they croffed ouer the Lake, which indeede was very broad. An hundred men of Suits did accompanie them, with whome they arrived at the Port of Buchs, which is a village appertaining to them; then going on from thence to Eurgenstad, ioyned their people with the others troops.

Soone after, they came to affaile the enemy, who was come thither by the Lake of Lucerne, and ranged on through the country:but they compelled them to flight, and made them glad freedily to recouer their Boats. Having thus chafed them thence, they went towards Alpenach, to feeke the Count of Strasberg 1 & although it was lare, they concluded (ne- deale with the uertheleffe) to affault the enemy, because Strasberg and his powers were dispersed amongst the his forces. Villages, where they pilled and rauaged. Moreouer, night could be no hinderance to them, that were well acquainted with all the straites and passages of the Countrey : which was an excellent refolution . and wonderfull contrary to the enemie. For very hardly could the Count of Straf berg endure their first shocke or encounter, because the dispersion of his soldiers amazed him: and when hee faw two Enfignes belonging to them of Vnderuald, like a good and difereet warrior, hee perfwaded himfelf, that they of Austria were ouerthrowne at Morgarten.

Heereupon, he speedily retired (thorow the Mountaines) home to his owne flight of the house, and the rest fled amaine and confufedly: but yet not all for three hundred all his follow. of them were left flaine in the fielde, and en. the whole booty taken from the enemies hand. They of Suits and Vri, having prouided for their affaires, came to fuccour their confederates of Vnderuald, and in the night arrived at Buchs, where they did heare tidings of the victory. Wherefore having first giren thankes to God, & gratified their friends with so fortunate a fuccesse, they returned home vnto theyr owne houses.

This victoric, fetled and affured the foundation of the Switzers confederacie A League of or alliance, and from thence forward . perpetual Althey of Suits, vri, and Vnderuald, changed tweene the s. their league of ten yeares, into a perpetu- Cantons. all alliance, and so passed it by authenticall Letters. The Switzers tooke theyr name of Bydanoffen (which fignifieth) partakers in fwearing or conjoyned together by one and the (ame oath) by this alliance. At this time, among ftrangers, they are called Lords of Leagues, and Switzers, by reason of the Village or Canton of Suits. It may be, because they fought in that quarter, for the maintenance of their libertie: or in regard of their long

Eydgnoffen

ranged

warre with the Monks of the Hermitage, | the aduice and liking of the other. Each one and they were the first (among the three Cantons) affailed by them of Austria. and being the most potent of the three, the other Cantons were comprized vnder their name, which (confequently)extendeth it selfe to the other Cantons and confederates. I have hereto annexed the tenure of the alliance, to the end, that euerie one may fee, therein is nothing, either infolent or vniust, as some (to their great shame have fallely accused vs.

The Tenure of League and Alliance, confirmed betweene the three Cantons.





ought to be) are too foone and very eafily lost or forgotten : It is therefore profitable and necessary, that such things as are established for peace, tranquility, profite, and honour of men Shold be couched and published by writings, and authenticall instruments So then We of Vri, Suites, & Vndcruald, give all men to knowe, who shall either fee or heare these present Letters, that foreseeing & prouiding for difficult and queazie times, and for our more commodious enjoying peace and rest, which are the best meanes, whereby to conferue our bodies and goodes : Wee have promised and sworne each to other, in good Faith, and by Christian Oath, that Wee will mutually confult, councell, and ayd one ano. ther, to warrant our lines, and defend our goods at our owne expences, at all times, against all and everie one, that would or shall offer outrage either to our bodies or goods, to Vs or Ours in any manner what soever.

Notwithstanding, if wrong be done to amy one of vs, either in his body or goodes, We are all bound to succour him to our power: to the end, that (by friendshippe or instice) the wrong may be amended or repaired. Moreouer, We binde our sclues by the same Oath, that none of the three Cantons, Ball receyue any man as Lord and Commander, without

of us, as well males as females, Shall Stand bound to obey their naturall Lords and Maisters, and line under their lawfull power, in all feruices iust and legitimate: except the (aid Lords offer wielence (in any manner what (oeuer) to any of the Cantons, for unto fuch Masters they hall do no service, untill fuch time as they be concorded with the Cantons. We have covenanted also that not any of the Cantons or Confederates, Shal minister an Oath, or binde him (elfe to any stranger, without the adusce of the other Cantons and franger, or Confederates. Not any person of the Confe- on with him. derates ball communicate with a straunger (without aduice and permission of other Confederates) so long as the Cantons (halbe with out a Lord. And if any one of our Cantons, violate and infrindge any thing or point of that which is contained in these Presents: he shall be esteemed as a disloyall and periured person, and his body and goodes consistate to the Cantons.

MOREOVER, WE have agreed A worthy ex and condificended not to accept or entertaine ample for all any Indge or Magistrate, that shall buy his office with money or any bribe elfe, although itate. he be of our owne Countrey. If difference or warre happen to be moved among the Confederates: then [web as are knowne to bee of most honesty and wisedome, shall meet together, to pacifie & confound the war or difference either by louing composition or censure of right. If the one fide do reiest this proposition, the Confederates shall assist the other fide, to the end, That the debate may bee ended either by amity or indiciall (entence and at the charges of them that would not stand to the award.

If any fuite or warre shall arise betweene Of strife betwo of the Cantons, and any one of them will not yeeld to a friendly composition, or accor- what the third dino to right : the third Canton Shall maine- is to do to aptaine the cause of that side, that submitted most to reason, and powerfully afift it, either also if one to end the contention by a louing composition or by indiciall fentence. If any one of the Confederates shall kill one of his owne fellowes, he must dye also: except hee can make it appeare and the Judges likewife anoughit by their fentence that he did it upon wrgent necesity and in defence of his owne bodie. If he flue for the fact, who locuer of our Countries Shall receive him into his house there to lodge or maintaine him : he is to be banished perpetually, except by common confent of the Con-

Chap.2.

goods in the

For fuch as

refuse the fen

tence giuen by the Judge.

antons.

federates he can win grace. For fuch as thall fire ey-ther houses or

If any of the Confederates, either privily, manifeltly or impudently, Bull fire any house or goods of some other of the Confederates: he shall bee expulsed (for ever) out of our Countries; and whofoever lodgeth or maintaineth him, shall stand bound to fatisfie the others losses. No person shall exact a pawne or gage, except it be of his debter, or one vnable to answer him otherwise : and it is not to be done neither, without confent of the Iudge. That every man shall be obedient unto his Indee, and make publike declaration, which Judge (of our Countries) hee will accept, to undergoe judgement before him. Whofoever refufeth to obey the fentence giuen shall pay the interests to him of the Confederates for whose profit by benefit the fentence was delinered.

And to the end, that thefe conditions abone written, may remaine firme, inviolable and perpetualt: WE (ubnamed Citizens dr Allies of Vri, Suites, and Vndervald, have put our Seales to thefe prefents, at Brunen, in the yeare of our Sautour Icfus Christ, 1315. being the morrow after the day of S. Nicholas.

The liberties and alliances of the Switzers,confirmed by the Emp.Lewes,

entrance in-

to his rule o-

uer the Can-

These Cantons having conquered their encinies, and confirmed their Alli= ance, fent men to the Emperor Lewes, to aductite him of all. He at the beginning of the yeare, held a day imperial at Wurenberg, where the Princes of Austria were condemned of high treason, the goods which they had in Suiffe, confiscated to the Emperor and Empire, and the liberty of the Cantons fully confirmed. The Letters containing this ordination, were given in the campe at Merride, the 23. day of March, in the yeare 1316. & the fecond yeere of the Emperor Lewes. The fame Emperor, about the yeare 1323. established as Gouernour in these three Cantons, John, Count of Arberg, vnto whom (as Lieutenant of the Emperour Lewes) the Cantons gaue their Oath.

The Gouernor promifed them also by Letters Patents, that hee would not di-The power & authoritie of minish or prejudice (in any maner whatlimited, at his focuer) their liberties and alliances, nor fuffer them to be alienated from the Empire, neither to be reduced under the power of them of Austria, or of the Noblemen excluded from the Countries of the

Cantons. Beside, that no man amongst them (hould be drawne in justice out of these countries, and that their lucges should not be taken from any place else. but meerly from among themselves. And because the Gouernours should not infringe the liberties of the Cantons, their power was limited by the Emperor, and prohibited (vinder greeuoi s penalties) from diminishing in any manner whatfocuer, the liberties graunted to the Can tons. The Letters Patents which contained thefe articles, were given at Paula, in the yeare 1329, and on the day of S. John Governours Baptift. The Emperors that fucceeded coo en among Lewes, confirmed thefethings, and per- themselves. mitted (moreouer) to the Cantons, to elea Gouernours (for their countries) among themselves but in the Emperors name, and to have highest justice in caufes both civill and criminall.

deale with fo many matters all at a time.

In the meane while (neuertheleffe) some

incursions and losses were made in Suiffe

on either fide. It came to paffe, that they

of Welen and their neighbours, which li-

ued below the government of Glaris, and

in diners kinds mollefted them of Suites:

who came and met them with a main ar-

my, and compelled them to craue peace.

On the other fide, the Abbot of the Her-

mitage, had caused the three Cantons to

be excommunicated, especially them of

Suits : first by the bythop of Constance. &

afterward by the Pope. Fredericke of An-

of Mayence, remitted them into the com-

munion of Christians. Also, the Abbot

of the Hermitage, wrote to them of Smits

that hee had renounced the Popes Bull,

and would not suffer it to bee served a-

They of Austria having bin fo threwdly It is the Nagauld, as hitherto hath beene declared, ture of trants grew to truce, not because theyr forces themselves were wholly weakned: but in regard that they were impeached in war against the mitthe peo-Emperor Lewes, fo that they coulde not ple not to live

fria, who termed himselfe to bee Empe- The Emperor ror, likewife banished them but the Em- contradiated peror Lewes tooke away the curfe, and by the curfe of his commandement, Peter, Archbythop Pope,

gainst them. During this time, that the truce continued on either part, they of Austria drew into league with them, Hermin & Ewrad, Counts of Kybourg, and Lordes of Dun. this happened in the yearc, 1317. By the

A louing League, when a particular iniury extendeth it felre it generall.

A careful and

fideration in

any Common

hriftian con

The Tower

The cunnin proceeding of them of Austria a gainst the Cantons.

The Emperor

excommuni-

cated and de

priued by the

The Cantons

joyn with the

Citties that

held for Le-

wes the true

ned to the 3.

Cantons,

Emperor.

meanes of these Earles, they procured fuch an hindrance, that the men of Interlach could fend no victuals to Vnderuald. In the yeere one thousand three hundred twenty three, they drew to them John of Habspourg, Lord of Rasperwill, and heyre to the Count of Hombourg . Afterward, they combined themselves with him, against the Cantons, because his Landes neighboured to the Canton of Suites, and lay aprly to cut off all releefe, and rayle warre. The yeare following, Raoul and Herman, Counts of Werdenberg, and Lords of Sargans, made alliance also with Leopold of Austria: but their brother Henry tooke part with the Emperour Lewes, who (at that time) was excommunicated and deprined of the Empire by the Pope. By these meanes, great divisions fell in the empire, fome depending on the Popes decree, others mocking it, and cleauing to Lewes, as their lawfull Emperor.

In these troubles, the Cantons maintained themselves carefully, and in amitie with the partakers of Lewes: whereto also, many Townes of Suffe conformed themselves. For, although (at the beginning) they of Zurich, and some others followed the part of Frederick of Austria: yet notwithflanding, he being prifoner, and having renounced the empire, albeit his brethren continued warre agaynst Lewes, they of Zurich joyned with Lewes: as with him that then was their onely true Emperor. In the yeare 1327, the Cantons made alliance with the Imperiall cities and townes, that stood fast for Lewes, to wit, Mayence Wormes, Spire, Strafbourg, Rafile, Fribourg, Constance, Lindaw and Vberlingen: with this League they of Zurich and Berne combined themselves. But fine hundred yeares after, Lucerna made perpetuall alliance with the three Cantons. In few words, I will tell you the

occasion, after I have first declared som-

what, concerning the beginning and e-

state of the faid City, before it becam al-

lied with the Cantons.

CHAP. III.

Of the Originall estate of Lucerna, before it leagued it felfe with the Cantons.



He city of Lucerna is feated A defeription on the river Rulls which if on the river Ruffe, which iffueth forth of a great Lake,
whereby wee may paffe to
the three Cantons. Alfo, at

the foote of an high Mountaine, commonly called Pilates Mount. The scituation is commodious, because this is the way, to trauell by the mountain of Saint Godard in Italy, From Fribourg, the Merchants are transported ouer the Mountaines, and from thence into Italy, with beafts of carriage: and (reciprocally) the Merchants of Italy descend by the Lake and River of Ruffe, to the Rhein, & thence into the Ocean sea.



It is not certainly knowne neyther The time whe at what time, nor by whom the Citie built, is vneer. was builded : but taine. one faith well, that on each fide of the River there is a caftlc(which are hou-

fes nowe inhabited by Citizens) and builded by the Allemains or Germaines. Concerning the opinion of Etterlinus, who wrote fome fmall history of Suiffe or Swetia, referring these matters to the house of Austria, and thinketh that those castles served as a retreate for robbers and theeues: he abuseth his own indgement greatly therein. For, in the time of Raoul of Habspourg (and no soo-they of Austria began to command this began to command in these quarters here, when the Dutchie the Cantons of Austria fell to the house of Habsbourg. And it is no way credible, that a Prince would euer endure; that theeues should make vse of a passage so commodious, for trauelling from Suffe into Italy.

It feemeth, that Lucerna was fo named, How Lucema in regard of a Lanterne, which duly cuery night is there advanced, and bright tobe fonalights clearly thining therein for benefite | med

of passengers upon the Lake. And it is very likely, that the high ancient Tower, which (at this day) (tandeth alofte on the bridge (as in like maner there is another at Zurich, called Wellemberg) ferued for that purpose. Our grave ancients & forefathers termed enery fuch kind of Tower Pharos. A Charter granted to Guichard the Prieft, anougheth; that Lucerna deriued her name from Antiquity. For the Annales of Lucerna do declare, that the Lucernians (hauing ferued Charlemaigne in a warre against the Sarazins) obtained the priest, out of him diners priniledges, and especially. the vie of Cornets, wherewith they did both fummon the battailes and retreats. euen as they doe nowe at this present

The colledge of Luceena, founded by Guichard the Pricft.& what Donations were theret annexed.

med.

The priviled

ges of Lucer na while Ab-

bots ruled.

The Charter

of Guichard

of the Annale

of Lucerna.

Chap.3.

Be it howfocuer, anciently, the Cannons of the colledge of Lucerna, helde great authoritie as also in many Townes of Germany. This colledge was founded by Guichard the Priest, brother vnto Ruperte. Leader of the horfemen to king Lewes, who was fonne to King Theodo= rick, who died in the yeare feuen hundered, & founded also the colledge of Canons at Zurich. The colledge of Lucerna fell to the Abbot of Murbach, by the donation of King Pepin. The same Abbot was Lord of Lucerna, vntill the time of the Emperor Albert of Austria: who ha= uing refolued to establish a new kinde of principality in Swetia, as already wee haue told you bought Lucern of the Abbot of Murbach, by giving him foure villages in Alfatia, and a certaine fumme of money, amounting to the valew of two thousand Markes of money, as it is affir-

This City enjoyed (formerly) the enfranchifement of many things, & fundry goodly priviledges beficle, follong as the Abbotswere Lords thereof; and yet they held no fourraigne jurifdiction: for, the cittizens were the greatnes of the citty. builded the wals and rampiers, and fortified it (by their owne diferetion) in those times. The Prince of Austria also promifed for his part, to conferue their priniledges inviolably, and made thew of being a verie gentle Lord, as he was neuer sparing of goodly promises. But soon after, the dominion of the Auftrians proued to gripe and oppresse the Lucernians, who were constrained (to their great

disaduantage) to make warre vpon their neighbours. For they were the first that exposed themselves to make incursions on the Cantons and maintained a garrifon in their citties at their great charge. The Tower of Shourg, which Handeth yet of Shourg, to this day cofirmeth what hath bin faid: for there it was, where the Lucernians planted a Corps de quard, against the incurfions which their enemies made vpon the Lake. When they had no open war, nor any affurance of peace, the Austrians did not much care to maintain them. In the meane while, Trafficke cealed the fields were forraged, and many times the Lucernians fell into the hands of their enemies. Moreoner, being gone to warre with them of Glaris, vnder the conduct of Otho, Captaine of Colmar, to encounter Otho, captain with the Emperor Lewes, the wages pro- leader to the mifed them, was made void and truftrate. of Lucerna. They themselves had paid many in other warres, and lent good fummes of money on scedules, to Captaines of the Austrian Princes; but now, in place of payment,

they were handled in fuch fort, as they

thought both their good feruice and mo-

Being thus tyred and harried fo many

the Cantons, leaving (neverthelesse) the

rights of the house of Austria to them in-

tirely. This peace exasperated not onely

them of Austria, but also many cittizens,

fernants, and pentioners to Gentlemen,

by whom they benefited & inriched the-

felues. Both the one & other feared, that

the City would ally it felfe with the three

Cantons, and that in fo doing, they wold

other. For this effect, in secret they con-

tracted a league; the fubstance whereof

was this. That at a certaine, houre of the

night, they of the citty thould open the

gates, and at the fame inflant, they of

Austria, (with fo many horsemen well

appointed) should make seazure of the

Cittie Afterwardes, having joyned

ny vtterly loft.

feuerall waies, they supplicated and desi- Themenof red (oftentimes) them of Austria, to be at the refusal of peace with the Cantons. But perceining their Lord, they transiled all this while in vaine, made peace themselves (in the end) accorded with memies.

Faire promifes coft nothing to op-preffors of the people.

estrange themselves from the Austrians, And therefore they conspired together, The first conto oppresse them that had counceld the iuration apeople to make this peace, and that they of Lucerna. should exhort them to be allied with som

The proie& of the Con-Coiracie.

The care and

prouidence

of the Citti-

of vegent ne-

The league

made be-

zens in a time

City into their owne power: they would punish the friends of the Cantons, break the peace, and plant a Garrison in the city to the end that afterward no fuchmatter might be againe attempted.

But the Cittizens being advertised, of the traines and ambushes prepared for them, vpon the appointed night did put themselues into armes, placed good guards at the gates, & provided to furely for their fafety, that fuch as tooke part with the house of Austria, durst not bee feene any way to stirre. Then the Gouernour of Rotembourg (with many Gentlemen) beeing come to the gates, they of the Citry (to whom he termed himfelfe afriend) gaue him entrance, and fome fmall number with him, fuffered the reft to ftand without. Perceiuing that this cunning tricke tooke no fuch fuccesse as he expected, and not daring to doe any thing by open force, because he was the weaker; he returned the next morning to Rotembourg with his traine, and fome Citizens of Lucerna, partakers with the Aufrians, fearing to be punished by the City, went away with him.

This combination was the cause of haftening the league between the Lucermans and the three Cantons, for perceyuing the injuries and ambushes of the Nobility, and the dangers where-with they threatned them : they thought it fit not to reject the succour of their neighbours, which they accepted, as fent from heauen. So they became vnited together, on the Saturday before Saint Martins day, in the year one thousand, three hun-

dred thirty two.

When the Austrians had intelligence hereof, they appointed Garrisons in diuers places about Lucerna, as namely, at Sempach, Rotenbourg, and Meyenberg : by meanes whereof, they did cut off all victuals from the Lucernians: and if any aduentured farre from the City, they were either flaine, or taken prisoners, so that they were constrained to goe seeke for food with a maine army. The yeare enfuing, and the feuenteenth day of March, the Lucernians going with their troopes towards Buchnass (which is a Castle, now called Hertenstein, vpon the Lake of Zug) the Lord of Ram [wag, Gouernour of Ro-

tenbourg, for the house of Austria, layde

their forces together, and reduced the / an ambuscado for them on the way, and flew about some fourescore of them. The rest that were scattered in the fieldes, and looking after pillage, affembled themfelues together, neere to Buchnaff; and charged the enemy fo couragiously, that they enforced them to flight, having first loft an hundred foote, and eighteene

The Gouernor of Austria well perceiuing that ounert power flood not for his aduantage, neither did any way benefite him in his businesse: vndertooke the first traine of ambuscadoes, and private practifes. There were then at Lucerna, many persons that had beene pensioners to the house of Austria. This war was verie troublesome to them, for they had lost their penfions, and befides, enjoyed not the renemewes of their owne inheritances; which (for the most part) lay on the lands of the Austrians. The Governour The fecond conferred with them, and because they conjuration were of the very worthieft houses in the men of Lu-Citty, and the cheefest of them : he adui- cerna. fed them to perswade the Citizens to renounce their alliance with the three Catons, and render themselves again to the house of Austria. He shewed them, that they might bee much more endamaged by one Prince, being a potent enemy, & fo neere a neighbour, then by the three Cantons, who (in the passed Warres) could doe them little, or no harme at

And for a fmuch as it had happened at this very time, that the lower Towne, and the fields about it, were greatly injuried by impetuous and extraordinarie raines: the Gouernor made vie of this accident, when the for to his own aduantage; telling them that is preaching. God punished them by such a means, because they rebelled against their lawfull Prince. But because these conjurations could not preuaile, nor hee moque the people with all his goodly perswasions; he would compaffe his intention by another stratageme, and completted with close consederates, to massacre the Au- gainst the Lu thors and conferuators of this Alliance with the Cantons, taking their faith vnder oath, and Letters figned and sealed. And, because they might be known one to another each of the Conspirators did weare red fleenes, which onely was their noted marke. Whereupon grew the Pro-

A maffacte

The brittel gi. uen at Buch-naff, and what fucceffe enfu

na : Beware the band of Red fleenes, and it was held for a matter extremely ignominious, to tell any man, that he was one of the red fleeues band. The number of the confpirators encreafed, and then they affigued the day

for the maffacre, which was the last day

of Iune, being the Feast day of S. Peter &

S. Paul. Apostles. They were to meete

under the great Arch or Gate, neere to

the publike house of the Taylors frater-

nity: for then the watch for night should

cease to walke the round in that quarter:

Alfo, the Lieutenant to the Duke of Au-

Stria, must have an army ready to bee let

into the City by the conformatours, who

(purposely) should open the gates. But

God (by his gracious prouidence) disco-

uered these bloody consultations, the ve-

ry fame night as the massacre was to bee

executed. For, as the conspirers met

in Armes at the place appointed, a yong

man, passing accidentally by, without

dreaming or thinking on any fuch mat-

ter, discouered the businesse, and vnder-

stood their deliberation. The night was

very darke, by meanes whereof, he foftly

flipt away, hying speedily to the butche-

ry or Shambles, where perceiving by the

lighted candles and noise he heard, that

divers were there vp out of bedde, drin-

king and playing: hee went in amongest

Forthwith they ran to the Gouernor,

and acquainted him with the compact &

the Citizens quickly had warning to arm

themselues, and good Guards also sent to

the gates: moreouer, they rushed in fo-

dainly upon the confpirators, and tooke

The feaft day of S.Peter & S.Paule,aphe maffacte lay, and in what manner was to bee

Chap.3.

uerbe (afterward) among them of Lacer- | had escaped out of the tumult, by favour

the conspirators was great; and, many a- uout done ynmong the of the principall houses, who descruedly to had flore of kindred and friends in the city. At request of the three Cantons, their liues were faued, and they punished by the purse, after they had folemnly sworne neuer to attempt any thing more against the state of the city, nor contrary to their alliance with the three Cantons. Heereupon, they of Lucerna made a law, wherby it was prohibited to the Citizens, not to make any affemblies or clandestine meetings in any place, nor to bind them- A law against felues one to another by Oath: except and close mee vpon any bargain they made for monies, tings, they should leave twice as much in the hands of the Seigneury.

At this time, they of Austria were re- Complaint conciled to the Emperor Lewes, to whom made to the alfo, a great accufation was made of the Empagainft the three Cathree Cantons & the Lucernians. Who tons and Lu-(contrarywise) well excused themselnes, cernians, and shewed, that they were allied vppon plenty of good reasons, and without doing wrong vnto any man. Whereupon. the Emperour gaue charge to them of Zurich, Berne, and Basile, who were then allyed to the house of Austria, and friends them, and tolde them the things hee had also to the Cantons (for three yeares before, the men of Zurich had assisted them in a VV arre against the Grisons) to pacifie the difference, and make an agreement of the Cantons with the Austrians.

VVherefore, in the yeare, one thou- Conditions fand three hundred thirty foure, by entermife of their Ambassadors, truce vvas taken for two yeares and an half, on thefe the Cantons conditions following. That during this agreed vpon. time, they of Lucerna (hould not be constrained to pay the moneyes borrowed of them, nor the wages due to the Lucernians by the Captaines. That they might make vie and service of the Money of the Dukes of Zofinge, forged in their Cittie: rendering obedience and honor done to the Dukes.

The alliance with the three Cantons, to remaine in absolute integrity, and the Cantons not to hinder the D. of Austria from injoying the goods and reuennews which they helde in the countries of the faid can-

of the nights extreame darkeneffe. vvere likewise apprehended and imprisoned, as was most conuenient. Now, in regard that the number of Grace and fa-

erformet.

The confoiators taken and impriso-ned fodginly

The bloodie

tention hap

oily discoue-

was to bee

them prisoners, before they could give entrance to fuch fupply as they expected from without. And to impeach the Licutenant to the Duke of Austria, from attempting any thing by manifest force, or violence against the City, it being in this dangerous agitation: the fame night they fent (in poste) for succour vnto the three Cantons, who also sent them three hundred men early in the morning . After

to be inflicted

this happy supply was thus come to the. they confulted then togither concerning punishment to bee inflicted on the con-

spirators. Their Letters were laid before them, and fuch other guilty perfons, who

Ectremity v ged against the Lucerni ans by them

The truce fur

ther prolong.

Chap.4.

The Pope ex

ommunica-

ed them of

The first alli-

ance of Zu-

Centons of

Vri and Suits

Cantons. The Emperour was to depute the Commissaries, for hearing the differences of the Dukes with the Cantons, at any time what foeuer.

Afterward, the truce was further prolonged, and although the peace was fearfely well affured, but was fometimes broken: yet they of Austria made no more open warre vpon the confederates. Vntill after fuch time as they of Zurich wrung themfelues into the alliance, in the yeare, 13 (1. Then Glaris and Zing came in the yeare following, and Berne the yeare after that : Concerning the estate and alliance of these Cantons, we come to discourse more at large.

CHAP, IIII.

Of the Originall, condition, and estate of Zurich, before it leagued in with the amity of the Cantons.

Concerning the antiquitie of Zurich, and when it was builded.



T is not to bee doubted, but that Zurich is one of the most ancient Citties of Swetia. The Annals of the country doe declare, that it was builded fixe-

teene yeares after the cittie of Treues or Treurys. Marianus Scotus faieth in his Chronicles, that Trebetus, fon to Ninus, builded the city of Treues, in the time of the Patriarch abraham. The Romane hiflories make honourable mention of the



The Tigurina are the people of Zurich, and were conque red by Iulius

Tigurines, who are they of Zurich, beecause they were present in the war of the Cimbrians against the Romans, and ouerthrew the Confull Cassius. Afterwards, when Iulius Cafar came to the conquest of the Gaules, they were vanguished and ruined by him. After that time to the inualion which the Allemaines or Germaines

made: Zurich was subject to the Romane Empire, then fell into the handes of the Kings of France s'and lastly, came to the Germane Empire, which beareth y name and shadow of the Romane empire.

There are in Zurich two Conedgian churches, one of men, the other of Wo-large all Churches men founded by the Kings of France. In in Zurich, and ancient times, these colledges were (well- a cassle on the neere) Lords & commanders of the citie. eus. There was also (heretofore) a castle, builded upon a little hill, nere to the River of Limagus, where the Gouernours (establithed by the Kings of France) kepte theyr abiding, who were Prouosts of the city, & of those colledges. Afterward under the Germane Emperors, those Prouostes still continued, but they dwelt not in the caftle: because the government was willingly giuen to the Princes. Neuertheles, fince those times, there grew in the city a councell of fixe and thirty men, tweller usual tume. whereof gouerned for the space of foure moneths. The commonwealth was so ordered in the yeare, 1100. and continued in that estate till the yeare,1 336. and then it fell to changing, in manner as heereafter we shall declare.

From fuchtime as the city beganne to throwe off the yoake of the Colledgiall ning of the distriction of the yoake of the Colledgiall to of Turish churches, it began also to consider on hir sy of Zurich, owne freedome, and how it might best manner it pu receiue increasing. For, amongst the diffentions of the Emperors and Popes, the men of Zurich adhered to the Emperors, and followed Fredericke Barbarolla, Fredericke the fecond, and Lewes of Bauaria, who augmented theyr liberties and fran chifes, especially Fredericke the second. For, after the death of Berthoull, the last Duke of Zerungen, Prouost of the Colledges, and also of the Citie of Zurich: he received the cittizens into protection of the Empire, about the yeare, 1218. Then afterward, he tooke many priviledges from the Colledgiall churches. Amongst other, the right of electing the councell, and graunted it to the citizens, ordaining that it should neuer bee law full to alienate zurich from the Empyre. Alfo, in the time of Fredericke, the Cittizens made the ditches and walles about to be aliena-

the City. It came to passe, that they requested the Priests w were citizens of the Cittle, to furnish their part of charge towardes

There are in Zurich two Colledgiall

Empire.

rich with the

moreover, to rid their houses of some women ill reported of: which offended them in fuch fort, as they with drewe themselues from the Citizens. But this difference was appealed by the bythop of Constance. Some few yeares after, the Pope excommunicated them of Zurich. because they tooke part with the Emperor Frederick. At the fame time, they ruinated(by permission of the Emperor)the old Castle fearing least some (enemies to their liberties) (nould get possession therof. At this day it is a very pleasant place, beautified with Linden and other fayre trees planted there. And because the City flood excommunicated, and (by confequence) exposed to the violence of any man: many Gentlemen round about, much mollested the Citizens, fo that the trafficke of filkes, being very great before in that place, was from thence transported to Come. In the yeare, 1251. they of Zurich did take their first alliance with the Cantons

of Vri and Swits, the tenour whereof you haue already feene. Some few yeares after the death of Frederick, his Nephew Conradine laboured to subject them of Zurich, to the Dukes of Suaba : vnder the pretence and colour, that they had long time bin Prouoftes and Gouernors thereof. The Cittizens maintained theyr liberty very firme and strongly, which caused Conradine to worke so with the

Atrue Coppy of the fauor done by Richard of England, K. of the Romanes, to them of Zurich.

Emperor Conrad, that Zurich stood pro-

scribed from the Empire. But Richard of

England, king of the Romanes, tooke a-

way the profcription, and by Imperiall

Letters, confirmed the priviledges of

the Cittizens. In those Letters, amongst

other marters, these words following are



contained.

T faithfull report, which is come to our ferenity, we have moderflood, that Conradine, some to the late King Conrad, who named himfelfe D. of Suaba; not contented with this fault, in

these fortifications, and commided them i vainely vsurping the honor appertaining to another, without having any right or power fo to do : hath published a sentence of banishment, against our Citizens of Lurich (as if they were (ubiects to that Dutchy) planted in the especiall bosome of Vs and our Empire & not appertaining any way to that Dutchy, but immediately to the Empire, according as fro antiquitie hath beene established, and is now approved in our time erc. Given at Haque. naw, the xx. day of November, in the yeare one thousand two hundred fixty two. And of our reigne the fixt.

> These Letters do render an ample tetimony, of the liberty belonging vnto what time the mof Zurich: notwithflanding, they people of Zutooke no great effect then, because such times the such liberty. as succeeded in the Empire after Fredericke the second, to Raoul of Habsbourg. held no great credit, fo that (by manie) they are not numbred among the Emperors, but all this internall or respite of time, is referred vnto an Inter-regnum; wherein the most part of althe variances were decided by the fword, rather then by inflice and law, and the ftronger tram pled the weaker under their feet . About all the Gentlemen that had anie means. did nothing else but machinate against the liberties of those Citties that yvere their neighbors, All the wayes were couered with theeues, & (in briefe) this Licenfe wrought a meereconfusion among the most wicked and desperate, mouing them to attempt and execute euen what-focuer themselues pleased.

Heereuppon, they of Zurich, defiring to conferue their liberty, and maintaine themselues in peace : sent an honorable Ambassage to the Lord of Regenfourgentreating him to be their Gouernour and Captaine, vntill the election of a newe Emperor, and (for that effect) offered him honest and sufficient gages, The Gentleman was a neighbour to Zurich, a rich and powerfull Lorde in those times. Hee proudly rejected the honour which the men of Zurich didhim, and made them answere in this manner. If the Citizens would obey al his commandements, and fubicat the Cittle to him : hee was readie to take them into his protection, and would be their benign Lord. But if they refused his offer, they should fhortly

Lord of Regenipourg,

neere to Zu-

rich, and his

derates.

potent Confe-

Pride & fcorn

full contempt very just y scourged and rewarded. 3. Booke

Of Zurich.

221

fhortly bee compelled to accept it, euen in meere despight of them; because their Citty was ingirt and inuclioped with his castles, as Fish within a Weele, or water The strong places of the

This vauntery of the Lord of Regenfpourg was not wholly vain, for he had many firong places neere vnto the cittie: as Wrepia on the Lake of Zurich, a mile and a halfe from the cittie; Glanzembourg, a Towns and caffle of like diffance, and on the river of Limagus. He had (moreouer) much neerer to the cittie, vpon a high Mountaine towards the Sunne-fetting, two castles, to wit, Vluberg and Balderie, impregnable (as was imagined) by reason of their scituation. Beside, the Towne and castle of Regenspourg, not aboue five miles at the most from Zurich . And, beyond all thefe, manie Countes or Earles were Leagued with him; among other, the Count of Kybourg, dwelling at Burgdorff, the Count of Rafberwill, of Togge, of Nidow, of Arberg, and the Barons of Eschenbach, of Riggenberg, of Kilchberg, of Balme, of Hombourg, of Warts, and many other. They of Z#rich, having beene to ignominiously refused: addressed themselves to Raoul of Habspourg, mortall enemy to this Regen-(bourg : made alliance with him, & within two yeares following, tooke the ca-Alcs of Viznaberg, Wripia, Veliberg, Balderie, and the Towne of Glanzembourg mollesting Regenspourg in fuch fort, as at length hee defited peace, and came to make his abiding at Zurich. These things hapned in the yeare, one thousand, two hundred, fixtie fixe, and the yeares follo-

Raoul of Hab fpourg King of the Romanes, and a friend tothem of Zurich.

In the yeare one thousand, two hundred, fewenty three, Raoul of Habspourg, was created king of the Romans, by common consent of the seauen Electours of the Empire. Afterward, being chosen Emperour, the Cittizens of Zurich, ferned him in many Warres, hee finding them still faithfull, and valiant fouldiers. In the warre of Bohemia, he had two hundred, which he placed betweene the Enfignes in the first ranke: exhorting the others fouldiours to imitate the magnanimity of them of Zurich, whom (he faid) he had well knowne and made proofe of before. Alfo, the most part of them dyed in the field, of battaile then given, and

the Enfignes of the other were borne (for their honour) into the Temple of the Cordeliers or gray Friars . Raoul haning receyued fo many feruices by the men of Zurich, gaue them divers privi-ledges: and to honour them the more, beautified their Enfignes of Armes, with a Diadem and Bend of Purple.

Many have imagined among the vulgar fort, because in the battaile at Winterberg, that the Bend was afterward annexed therto, as a note or mark of theyr the enemy, a ignominy. But there are many thinges Winterberg. yeelding contrary reasons to this opinior. For, in the first place, the notes of ignominy are not red, but meerly black. And afterward, when René Duke of Lorraine, tooke away all the marks of the enfignes belonging to the Switzers, in the warre against the Duke of Bourgongne; they of Zurich would never permit, that the Bend should bee taken out of theyr Standard. And in the yeare, one thoufand, fine hundred and twelve, when Pope Inlius gaue new Standards vnto the Switzers, the Councell of Zurich would cyofthe not alter any thing whatfocuer in theyr Switzen, for Enfigne, no not fo much as the bend or of Armes, Diadem, which they neuer would have done, if they had beene any notes of in-

Moreover, John of Winterduer, who lined at that time when they of Zurich wer conquered by ambufcadoes at Winterduer, spake to King Raoul these Words: He crowned the Standard of Zurich wwith great action of graces. The same Authour alfo declareth, that in the warre at Reigen-Bourg, laques Mulner, a cittizen of Zu- laques Mulrich, couered (with his owne body) Raoul ner, a worth of Habspourg, who was cast from his Zurich, and horse : and having remounted him vpon his honorable his own, brought him forth of the prease after fafe and found. For which great fauour. Raoul did much honour to the man, and loued him fingularly; yea, hee was also a deare friend to them of Zurich. This they auouch, because Carion, and such as were of his minde, did highly wrong the cittie of Zurich, accusing it of sedition & rebellion against King Raoul, who therefore foiled them, and brought them vnder his obedience by armes.

After the death of Raoul of Hab/pourg, they of Zurich maintayned the part of Adolph, and so did the Abbot of S. Gall,

Raoul of Hab

his cunning

The standard of Zurich car ried away by

he men of

Chap.4. The chat: of | and the byshop of Constance. Now to the | acknowledge and honour Albert as lawend that they of Zurich might joyn them selues with the other : they affayled the Towns of Winterduer, and tooks it in the affault, under conduct of the Count of Togge, and there (in Garrison) was the Lord of Werdenberg, with great troopes, in name of Albert of Austria. The first day they were Victors, but on the morrow, by treachery in the Lorde of Wer-The Lorde of denberg, who caused the Ensigne belon-Werdenberg. ging to the Byshop of Constance, to be carried before him : by this cunning ftraftratagem, againit them of tageine, the men of Zurich were ouerthrowne and cut in peeces. They attempted againe another warre in the name of Adolph, against them of Groningen, the which is in the territory of Zurich. But Albert Duke of Austria, Sonne to Raoul, was offended at their enterprize, beeing informed by his people, that the greater part of them of Zurich, were flaine at

Winterduer: which caused him to come

and besiedge Zurich, which hee imagi-

ned to bee quite emptic of any defensive

The Citizens made a muster of theyr Apolitike ftra men (apr for armes) in the Citty, and on tagem perfor-med by them ainft Albert of Auftria.

a place very high, where fometimes the Cattle flood and that the Duke of Au-Striaes Army might eafily discerne them. And, because their number might appeare to bee much more greater then it was, they canfed all their strongest and Stoutest women to be armed, and theyr children of biggest stature: which made the enemy to imagine, that there were great store of warlike people within the Citty. Afterward, they fent Ambassadors vnto Albert, to remember him, that his Father alwayes loued and maintained that cittle that the cittizens had ferued him in all his warres, and wherein they (enermore) carried themselves faithfully and valiantly. Wherefore, they intreated him to follow his Fathers Steps, and to accept them of Zurich rather as loyall and feruiceable friendes, then to beleeue falfe rumors fored abroad by their il-willers, confidering withall, that they were ready to gine him fatisfaction.

Albert unswered the Ambassadors ve-Perce conclus ry kindly, & willed them to come to him ded betweene at Winterduer, where the peace was con-Du Albert, & firmed betweene him and them of Zurich e yppon condition, that they should

full Emperor. This peace was continued atter the death of silbers, and in the warre which his fons made against them that had flaine him: the cittizens of Zurich kept themselves stil faithfully on the behalfe of Auftria, and fought for them against the three Cantons. After that, in the battell of Morgarten, fiftie men of Zorich were flaine in the field, as hath alreadic beene declared. Moreoner, worthy ferui-when the Emperour was in some trou-the Zurich. bles, because some had elected Lemes, Prince of Bayaria: and others Fredericke. the Sonne to Albert, the men of Zurich helde a long time for the part of Frede-

him therewith, in regard of the Warres

hee lately had, to his mightie expences;

gaue vnto him foure Townes as a pawn.

and fecurity of payment, Namely, Zu-

rith, Sthaffoufe, Rhinfeld, and Neubourg

on the Rheine. But they of Zurich, im-

mediately fent Ambaffadors to the Em-

perour, to thew him, that they yvere fo

incorporated with the Empire, as they

could(by no meanes) be separated from

it. Their Letters were shewn to the same

effect, read and perufed by the Emperor:

and then, although he loued them but a

little, because they had taken part with

Fredericke: yet notwithstanding hee leste

Worthy ferui.

In the yeare, 1330, peace was made betweene Lewes of Banaria, and Frede- Zurich would ricke of Austria, whereat, Fredericke te- not be separanounced his Imperiall Election, and Letter to the major mass (to recompence him) promifed to king it known pay him a great fumme of money. And by their Ambafladors. because hee could not presently furnish

them to their owne liberties, and in fed of Zurich, Briffacke was given in gage to them of Austria. The Ambaffadors had alfo brought with them, the Deputies of the three Zurich, alo-Cantons, whom Lenves greatly affected, reighbour to because they had alwayes beene faithfull the Cantons vnto him. Thefe Deputies declared that the City of Zurich was a louring & frendly neighbor to the Cantons, & had highly ferued them many times. Belide, they of Zurich promifed, that (horeafter) they would be no leffe faithfull & obedient to Lewes of Banaria, who was then their only lawfull Ensperour, then they had for-

moily beene to Fredericke of Austria.

This did much offend the Austrians; for,

albeir

The Citie of Zurich excó. municated by the Pope, for 18.yeares.

A Caftle ta-

ken and fpoi

led on the

Rheine, by

them of Zu

rich,&c.

222

pire : yet notwithstanding, Leopold, Albert, and Otho his brethren, would not ratifie the agreement, but continued warre against Lewes of Bauaria. By which means Zurich fell off againe from friendshippe with them of Austria, and was excommunicated by the Pope, in fuch manner. as for the space of eighteene years, there was no exercise of ceremonies according to the Romane Church) vied in Zurich. The Priests departed from the citizens, fome by their owne meere motion, others were expelled by the Bourgeffes, because they refused to adminifter the Sacraments. There were none but the Corocliers or gray Friars, who went forth at one gate, and entered immediately at another.

albeit Fredericke had renounced the em-

The Citie standing thus excommunicated, and hated by the house of Austria: many Gentlemen, feruants vnto that house, much mollested the Cittizens. Wherefore, in the yeare 1333, they of Zurich, with the men of Strasbourg, Bafile, and merne, befiedged and took a cafile on the Rheine, named Schunaw, belonging to the Lords of Geroltzegh, and ruinated it because it was one of the retreats for theeues. The yeare following, the men of Zurich ruined many castles, to wit, Fryenstein, on the river of Tofe, and another nere vnto it, called Touff the high. Alfo Schenenvert, on the Limagus, about three miles from Zurich and Schlatte. neere to Efgow, because the Gentlemen to whom these castles appertained, did greatly trouble the city of Zurich.

The next yeare infuing, the Gouernement of the Common-wealth of Zurich was changed, which produed to bee the cause of great garboiles, and the principall occasion, of allying the citizens with the Cantons of Swetia. We have already toldyou, that the commonwelth was gouerned by 36.men, and in such fort, as twelve commaunded during the space of foure months. Some difference hapned between them and the people, in regard whereof, the people began to demaund an account of their administration especially, of the twelve that were in the fecondorder. Somewere accused among them, of robbing and diffipating (in a fmall time) the publike treasure, and befides, that they had bound the Cittie in

in no meane flore of great debtes. Eight of those men, finding themselues to bee hardly clear in this case, retired from the city; the other foure, voluntarily refigned vp their charge. Thus the authoritie of twelve ceasing, they grew to a forme of electing Magistrates, being chosen out of every band of the tradefmen, and by feueral nomination.

The Emperour Lewes confirmed this | Election of kinde of Commonwealth by his Letters Magistrates Patents, and the succeeding Emperours also approued the same. They that had withdrawne themselves from the Citie, yeelding after to the peoples judgement, were condemned in feuerall fines : and they that feed the best were banished for three yeares, having first faithfully promiled neuer to make any conspiracie against the citizens. Heereto also was annexed a note of infamy, to wit, that neyther they, nor any of their children, shold euer be admitted into Councell. The ancient men and councellors, beeing affraide of a judgement fo feuere, beganne of their one to diftruft their owne causes; so that nine honeshes, among them for fooke the Cittie. This departure of theyrs was converted vnto banishment, and their goodes confiscated. As for the rest, nine of them vvere condemned in great fines, and then banished for two yeares: with this brand alfo fet yoon them, that they nor their children should ever be admitted vnto councell. Others, that flood to their tryall, instified themselves before the people, and were elected to be of the new coun-

The banished men made their retreat How, and in to a Towne, scituated on the Lake, two miles (or thereabout) from Zurich, named Rafberwill, which at that time belonged to Count John, of the House of Habflourg. Three years before, he had made request to them of Zurich, to accept him as a Citizen willingly they would, and did (at last) receive him, although he was Leagued with them of Austria, and diuers of them also were of his parentage. Hereupon, hee liftened the fooner vnto the banished men, and made a confederacie with them, vnder certaine conditions; for securitie vyhercof, hee gaue them the Castle of the Townein keeping. These banished men being thus com modiously lodged & fortified, began to

cell.

the benifhed ed themselve

The fuccesso

Habipourg a Buchberg

accuse them of Zurich, pretending to | were joyned together agains in the mid haue suffered great outrages by them; the panished they defamed the Confull and new counsaint them cell and to make the or Zurich,& tie vling (to this effect) the helpe of fome are banished of their friends, that remained still in Zurich. Some of them being discovered by the councell were punished; others fled away fecretly, and joyned with the banithed men. And because these banished men had fallified their folemne promises: Boates a mighty booty, & fixe Enfignes they were banished perpetually by the Senate especially they that stood relegated but for a certaine time enjoyned

Warre raifed by them of

The banished

proued too frong for

them of Zu-

tich, in warr

aired against

for euer.

Now, because the citizens of Zurich

of Grinow.

stood in slender security, either for themfelues or their goods, fince those banithed men were excluded the city: divers And the fame yeare, the Emperor Lewes, times they admonithed the Count of his and Albert of Austria, second of that duty that he being a Bourges, ought not to continue his favour to the banished men, but rather to withdraw al helpe and comfort from them. Perceiving the Count made no reckning of their complaints, they leuied another Army, and went and befiedged Rafberwill, the retire and refuge of the banished men. In vaine was this attempt of theirs, because the banished men had great plenty of victuals, and defended themselves valiantly. which made the other to raife their fiede Glady therefore they quitted the place, & fo much the rather because the Count of Habspourg, protector of the banished, and whom most especially they sought for ; was not at Rafperwill, but in a Castle called Grinow, which is at the head of Zurich Lake. They discamped thence, & marched with their Army voto that very place, beeing conducted by Diethelme, elle please them, but the old form of rule, Count of Togge, who was at controucr-fie with the other, concerning the caftle as many of their friends and partakers

The Count of Habspourg (with his Army well appointed) was encamped at Buchberg, whence he came mainly running vpon them of zurich, who landed fuddenly from their Boates; and they granting them no leyfure to bee raunged Zurich, gainft in order of battaile, put all in rout and diforder that were on Land, compelling them to enter their Boates againe, in which confusion they lost not many me, except the Count of Togge, who was taken prisoner. But after that al their troops name, and after the death of her Father,

dle of the Lake, being moved with anger, and defirous to wipe off the thame formerly received: by advice of their Leaders, they went on thore againe, brauely bidding them the battaile, which they wonne. And fuch was their fuccesse that the Count of Habipourg, and many Gentlemen with him, were flaine in the field: moreouer, they carried away in their of the enemies. The citizens of Rafperwill, hearing of this ouerthrow, to revenge the death of their Lord, they cut in peeces The Count of the Count of Togge, who was conuaied Togge hewed on Land, to foone as he had beene taken in peeces. prisoner in the first encounter.

This things hapned in the yeare 1337.

name, furnamed the Cripple, made peace Reace newly betweene lohn of Habspourg, Sonne to confirmed be the deceased Count; the banished men tweene the men of Zurich, and the Consull and Citizens rich, & them diuers condi-

of the City, vpon these conditions fol- that were ba lowing. That the banished men should miled, you pay to the citizens (as a fine or amerce- tione. ment) the fumme of fixe hundred markes of money remaining still out of Zurich fine years, during which time, they shold not come neare the citty, by the space of two miles; which beeing expired, they mould againe be received, & their goods remaine entirely to them. The Emperor conceined, that this new government in the state, would highly strengthen it in these fine years: for there was appearance of great danger, that if the ancient Councellors were re-established, alterations would enfue in many matters, & nothing

earnestly defired. This peace lasted not long, for the banithed men (fauoured by a great number | The peace of the Nobility) made no regard at all of their promifes; but molested the citizens, banished men and conspired daily something or other andthey of against the city. In regard whereof, by Zurich, yer after the houses permission of the Emperour, the houses, and al the goods which the banithed had in the city, were confiscated. Notwith flanding the years following, by the intermile of Agnes Queene of Hungary, (who was daughter to Albert, full of that

wealth of Zurich altered, procuring and mollefta.

The Gouern

ment of the

against the fecond order of Peace once more renewed,& broken againe the

Meanes desi

fed and vn-

dertaken, to

refift enemier

224

time) of Fredericke of Austria, and some other of the Cities: peace was renewed betweene the banished, and the citizens of Zurich: yet this was no firmer, or dured any longer then the former. For although the banished promised faithfully, that they would stand to the councell of Zurichs sentence, and pay the fines wherin they were condemned; yet would they not make any fatisfaction at all.

Many of the house of Habshourg, (2mong others, the Sonne and kindred to Count John, whom they of Zurich flew in the battaile at Grinow) affembled a great number of Gentlemen, offended with the liberty of Zurich, hating that Democritall gouernment, as being too popular in their opinion : fauoured the banished, and provoked them still on against them of Zurich. And they on the other fide for their better maintenance, first of all burned two Castles: one neere to the Tofe, appertaining to the Lords of Landberg, and maintain appertaining to the Lords of Landors, their liberties. Gentlemen of marke: and the other to the Lords of Schowenberg, on an high hill aboue Elgow, because these places did much injure them. And to fortifie themfelues vet stronger, they combined amity with the cities of Constance and S. Gall. Alfo, because some differences remained to be appealed with them of Schaffouxe, and war might be moued from the: they veelded willingly (by intermission of Ambassadors to some other cities) & in short time after, comprehended them of Schaffouze in alliance with the cities of Conitance and S.Gall. At the same time, they allied themselves also with the Bishop and city of Basile. Afterward they received into the number of their Bourgeffes, many houses of the Rhodes, or of S. John of Icrufalem : to be supplied and maintained with Gentlemen, and men of warre, as continually (and from time to time) were in that worthy Order of Knights of S. tehn.

These puissant cities and people round about, being leagued with them of Z#rich by new alliances, or reconfirmation of their ancient amity: the estate of the city remained more peaceable, and it feemed that the banished had lost all hope of ever enjoying the city by power. But in this fleeping time, they conspired very fecretly, to make themselves Masters

remained in Swella the most part of her | thereof by treason. Count lohn of Habhourg. Son to him that was flaine on the day at Grinow, as already we have shewn, was joyned with them; vpon condition, that he should re-establish the banished men, in possession of their goods in the country, and that they should difingage the lands of the Count, morgaged for debts to his creditors. With them joyned the Count of Toggenbourg, Peregrin Landberg (who fome yeares before, had Loucof goods beene at great debate with them of Zu- and greedy rich though all feemed to be laide afleepe uenge, are by an agreement made betweene them) the onely the Baron of Marzing, and many Gen- or this confetlemen, partly pentioners and vaffails to racy. the Count of Habsbourg, who they gladly endenored to gratifie, & partly as friends to the banished, who had many ancient friends and partakers in the city, some wherof were well acquainted with al the conspiracy, and others also that would ioyne with them, if the first attempt succeeded well. A further hope also was conceined, that no meane number more Otherrea. would come to their part, if they did but hope of more fee the ancient councellors namely, fuch partakenin as were greatly indebted, and could fubfift by no other meanes. Such likewife, as in this alteration of the state, wer not honoured nor recompenced according to their expectation, and who were vnworthy to be seene of others, aduanced and preferred before them. Then again, some others, who were weary of the estate in her present condition, desiring nothing more then nouelty: as in all commonwealths are daily to be found, too many fuch kinde of people. The refolution of the conspirators was, to make vie of the night time, and to plant armed men in all the streetes of Zurich, and to force the houses of Raoulle Brun, Confullatio of all the new Councellors, and the rest of their enemies, to maffacre them, feize the citty, make themselves Lords therof, and take away the liberties of the citti-

In this manner, the 24. of February, in Preparation the year 1350. Peregrin Landberg, Count to execute & of Hallourg, many Gentleme, and fome performs the conjugation of the banished with them, came voto by cuming Zurich. The fame ranne through the pretence Citty, that they came to prefent a request to the Councell, in behalfe of the banished. At the same time sidiuers

armed men had fecretly flipt into the city, and hid themselves in the houses of their complices. The Counts and Gentlemen had a very great troope of armed Groomes and Pages waiting on them, ready to execute whatfoener their Mafters thould command them. Moreover, there wer fundry companies readily prepared (both of horse and soote) who in the night should come neere the city. and there to be suddenly let in, after the watch-word was ginen. Others should come by Boates, and on that fide where the Lake makes a separation of the citty: to ruth on by impetuous troopes, & hinder the country men round about (who were very honest and faithfull to the city)

that they should not come that way to

All things being thus ordered and ap-

pointed, you the very fame night deter-

mined for the maffacre, the confpiracy

helpe or releeve it.

ble prouidece of God in the confernation of Zurich.

Treacherie by

water, as well

as by land.

Chap.4.

n what man ner the treaucred by a ruant of the he confpirators met to-

The care and diligence of the Conful!

Raoul le Brun

niuch an vr

gent time of

was discouered: more by the prouidence of God, then any councell or industry of men. For God (vindoubtedly) preserved this city to be (very foone after) the first. for conferning the Switzers liberties, as alfortor the retreate of his church. The chiefe men of this conjuration. were in the house of a citizen, where they conferred on their affaires, and closely expected the houre of night, when the watch-word was to be given abroad. A fernant of the honfe, who never had knoledge of this enterprize, being layd vpon a Bench to fleepe, happened to wake by their close whispering, and lending some attention to their talke, observed their words very carefully, yet foored as if hee had bene in a found fleepe. So foone as he could conveniently do it, foftly he got away, and went directly to the lodging of Raoul le Brun, who was Confull then, re-

obscurtty of the night. The Confull having heard the fernants words, armed himfelfe immediately, and went towards the Towne-house: the enemies were going and comming already through the fireetes, yet he escaped well gaue them a Lyon of Copper or Braffe, among them, because hee delinered the

ucaling to him at full, what danger hung

ouer the head of him, the whole councel,

and all the honest minded people of the

city. He also acquainted him with the

watch word, whereby the enemics shold

be knowne one to another, in the darke

watch-word readily to them, and fo got on to the Towne-house. A seruant of his, attired in the garments of his Matter.hauing not understood the watch-word, by reason of the great feare and halte the Confull made, was flaine by the enemies before the Towne-house: not to much because he could not give the word, as for that they tooke him to bee the Cou-

In the meane while, the Confull commanded one of the Officers of the Seigneury, to run to the church, and to ring the enemies out the watch-bell, after the wonted ma- being in the ner, to fignifie the comming of enemies. City, & tum-The Officer feeing the gate before the Citizens to clock-house to be round engirt with ene- gether. mies: by a fecret doore belonging to the church, got into the clock-houle, & rung out the terror to all the city. On the other fide, the Confull (himfelfe) cryed out aloud on the top of the Town-house, Arme, Arme, the City is full of enemies. Now the River named Limigus, or Limmitus, divided the city in twaine, & those two parts met and joyned together, by the means of two Bridges made of wood. Immediately, enery one ran to thefe bridges: but because the planks and boords Honeftcare of the one were not made fast nor nailed, makes vie of they threw them all downe into the wa- meaner of ter. By this meanes, all the fury and tem- helpe. pest of trouble, kindled it selfe at the other Bridge, which joyned neere to the Towne-house.

There is a place of indifferent greatneffe, at the entrance to the faid Bridge and house: the enemies got possession; of that place, and of another neighboring to it. Heere the conflict grew very tharp. for, from foorth the highest roomes of the houses, they of the city hurled downe Tyles and great Stones vpon their encmics, who were also to fight with other Chizen fight cittizens, gotten together in great num- for lib-try aber, and came to joyne with their belt out inustion helpe. The Butchers were the formost of deadly emen in the fight; for they were then vp in nemies. the Butchery (it being builded neere to the River) killing Oxen and other cattell. Haning heard the noife and out-cryes of the Confull, they ran out your the cnemies, with their Axes in their hands. In memory whereof, and as a tellimony of their hardineffer the common-wealth

The watch.

A new coniu ration of the banishedmen

ngainst them of Zurich &

the City.

Schaffouze.

Conflance,

S.Gall allied

with Zurich.

conspirators

which(as yet) they be are yearely in pomp \ that after eighteene yeares were expired, and triumph through all the citty. They were moued to undertake Arms, by thefe meanes following.

Trainers doe commonly proue volunterie and forward cowards

Mischieuous

and wicked

councellare.

times to the

ruine of the

author & dc-

The Count of Toggenbourg, beeing with-drawne into a house of one ofthe conspirators, and perceiving the danger, fearing also his owne skin-coate; after he had a while confulted with his Hoft: determined to free himselfe from blowes, refoluing thus; that if matters fell out wel for his companions, he could eafily come in againe among the troopes, and speake to them, as if he had bin alwayes in the crowd. But if it happened otherwise, he wold be fure to faue himfelfe. & learne to meddle with better bufineffe. According to this conclusion, himselfe, his Host, and his feruant, well laden with money, got into a finall Boate, belonging to a fiftherman, named Bax, who should conduct them along the River out of the city. But fearing left this Bax (hould discouer their flight, the Count commanded his feruant, that to foone as they were out of the city he should presently kill the fisherman. He being neerer to them then they imagined (by reason of the nights darkneffe) vnderstood their purpose and refolution concerning himfelfe: wherein he wisely presented them, by suffering the boat to tilt fuddenly on the one fide, and so they all three together fell into the

Making hafte afterward home to his owne house, and waking all the neighbours dwelling about him; hee defired them to take Armes secretly, because the city was in eminent perill, and enemies were hidden in many parts thereof, but he knew neyther how, nor what was their intent. Heercupon, they armed themfelues prefently, and hearing the Confull ftill crying, Arme, Arme: waked other friends and neighbours, by whose helpe they got the Bridge, and there raunged themselves orderly in fight against the enemy. It is further faid, that the Priests of the great church, being then finging Matins, and hearing this tumult in the night: armed themselves from the houses round about, and entred in among the thickeft throngs, fighting valiantly for the freedome & fafety of their country. It might fo come to paffe, that this year the Popes excommunication was first raised, and the Priests entred into the city againe.

Thus the citizens (by little and little) gathered their ftrength together, for from Divers of the cuery part they came in full troopes, and declaring their valour in fo great a need. flainc. the enemies that were in the citty (constrainedly) gane way. Fifteene among them were flaine, and more then thirty feuen taken prifoners, among whom was the Count of Habspourg; others faued themselves by favour of the night. The Baron of Matzinge, and Peregrin Land- ous, yet deler. berg were among the dead. The Count used handling that fell into the water, was there drow- of fuch ene ned. The bodies of the flaine lay three

whole daies on the patiement, exposed to the mockery of all men, and to be trampled on with the feete of enery paffen-

On the morrow, seuenteene, the principall men in the conjuration, were bro- kinde of deth ken, and their bodies laide on wheeles: innicreasi eighteene were beheaded. The Count of Hab/bourg, Huldrich, Baron of Bonstert, and some other, remained prisoners. The Army of the Count of Hab/bourg, as well that which came on the lake, as the other by land, hearing this tumult in the citty, and feeing no man came that should open the gates to them: retired backe in greatfeare, fo that in the morning, the people gathered vp their armes and wea- The Count pons for warre, which the run-awaies had gladly left behinde them, for their eafier run away.

escaping. Matters being thus appealed at Zurich, to preuent any more new troubles in the city the Confull brought an Army into the field on the fecond day of March, & being seconded with supplies fent them by the men of Schaffouze; they went and befiedged Rafperwill, the Fortreffe & re- He that thin tants of the Towne knowing that their of his liberty. treate of the conspirators. The inhabi-Count was taken, the banished mangled in pecces, or made fugitives and vagabonds, and having no likelihood at all of fuccour: on the third day of the fiedge veelded, and bound themselves sollemnly to the common-wealth of Zurich, promiling (for euer after) to acknowledge them as their chiefe, and render them all fuch duty, as formerly they had done to their Count. The Towne taken, they of Zurich thought they had gotten two adtages for the heir owner inion for their best

Chap.4.

Enemies to

the people,

the liberty of

gaine nothing by the refulall

nother Ar-

them of

Zurich, vpon

lenying the

gainst the

Another war

egainst the me of Zurich.

y the Wad.

ners of Sultz,

ny made out

Two aduan | uantages. One was that from thence forward, no pilling or rauage was more to be made of their country, as oftentimes before had bene, and that the city wold now fafely be preferred from ambuthes and treasons. The other, that the kindred and friends to the imprisoned Count, began to treate on peace : fearing to lofe all the country about Rasperwill, because the Towns and the Countwere taken.

Hecreupon, the Queene of Hungary

procured, that truce (hould be accorded

for certaine moneths: but Raoul & Godfrey of Habspourg, being summoned by them of Zurich to make peace, declared no affection thereto. Confidering withall, that divers Gentlemen, neighbours, but enemies to the men of Zurich, incited them rather to make warre. So all hope of peace being quite cut off, the first day of September (the fame yeare) they of Zurich conducted their Army towards the country of the Marche, fitnated at the beginning of the Lake of Zurich, towards the Sun-fetting, then being in obedience to the Count of Habspourg. The cities of Constance and Saint Gall, fent fuccour to the men of Zurich, and having spoylde & burnt all the country, they befiedged a Castle, called Rasperwill the olde, and followed it so closely, that the besiedged, hauing no more meanes of refistance, yeelded, & went away with their lines faued. The Castle was ruined downe to the ground, and they of the March promifed fidelity and fubication to the commonwealth of zurich. This done, the Army went to a Towne, called Rasperwill the new. They brake downe the Bridge that ioyned to the Lake, beate downe the Cafile, and most part of the walles of the Towne, and having heard (for certaine)

At the fame time, certaine Gentlemen named the Wadners of Sultz, dwelling in Alfatia, declared warre against them of zurich, taking their Merchants, pilling & outraging them by all manner of wayes. They of nafile and Strasbourg withdrew, & gaue supportance to these wars there. Vpon these indignities, they of surich wer moued, to feize on about eight fcore and ten persons of Bajile and Strasbourg,

that Albert of Austria meant to come aid

them of Habspourg with great forces:they

fet the Towne on fire, and burnt it wholy,

not leaving any iote thereof remaining.

that were come on pilgrimage to the Chappell of the Hermitage. As effaying by this meanes, whether they of Strasbourg and Bafile, compaffionating the imprisonment of their citizens : would expell from their countries those Gentlemen that were the cause of this diffurbance. This fell out to proue but a very vaine hope, for these cities and their Bithops, offended with this vniust detention of their pilgrims; iovned themselues with Fredericke of Austria, Fribourg in putby a great Brifgow, Seleftad, Briffac and Colmar. Ha- danger,it is uing vnited their forces together, they re- good to paffe folued to make warre on zurich, and redemand their prisoners by Armes. The men of zurich, finding themselves not strong enough, in regard of their precedent warres, seditions and losse of men, which had greatly impaired them in power: deliuered backe the prisoners, and fo turned afide this dangerous tempest.

Now because they had suffered great outrages, and faw no likelihood of any Zurich debetter fuccesse to ensue: they fent Ambasfadors to Charles IV. to whom they made their businesses with their businesses are the training taken (in a just warre, & with how a fadors with the training taken (in a just warre, & with how stadors with the training taken (in a just warre, & with how stadors with the with the training taken (in a just warre, & with how stadors with the with in their citty) the Count of Habipourg their enemy, for maintaining their cause against him, they were molested and affaulted by Gentlemen neighbours. But that which most of all greeued them was. to fee those Gentlemen affisted by Fredericke of Austria, and other potent citties of the Empire. And because surreb was an Imperiall Citty alfo; they made their recourse to him, as being the sole head of the Empire. They humbly desired him, to lend them both aide and councell, and to take order by his power and authority, that (in fucceeding times) the Princes of Austria, the cities and Towns of the Empire, nor any other Gentlemen might make warre against them, contrary to all right and reason. But rather to permit, that their citty might enjoy her wonted liberty, in peace and quietnesse: considering, that they were ready (as they ought to be) to answer before the Emperor, to all whatfoener any man could object againft them.

The Emperor having heard the com- The milde & plaint of them of zurich, answered the honourable Ambaffadors most humanely: that hee Emperorto coucted nothing more, then to have their the Amballa-

The fafery & liberty of ou Country, ought to be deare & precious to cuery mor of proofe

The negotiation of the men of Zu-

rich, with Al-

Howebe lands

of John of

Habipourg belonged to Albert of

Austria.in

manner of a

right by title.

ben of Au-

ftria.

228

liberty continue in full perfection, and would do his endeauor, to accord them with Fredericke of Austria, and his affociates. But he could give them no fuccor, nor attempt any thing by force, against the house of Austria, the Nobility of Germany, or the Citties of the Empire: because (at that instant time) they were far Stronger then he. Wherfore, they of Zurich should deuise to pacifie their differences with fuch enemies: by some reafonable agreement, wherein he would affift them to his power.

The Ambassadors departed away very fadly with this answer, and came home againe to zurich. And because (at that time) Albert of Austria, Sonne to Albert, was in Swetia: they of zurich fent prefents to him by Ambaffadors, to whom he gaue kinde entertainment, and tolde them, that he would come meete them with an ample power, for he defired to be a friend to them of zurich, and had some marters to acquaint them withall. Afterward, when the Ambassadors came vnto him againe at Bruges in Swetta, he was become an enemy to zurich, by accusations and reports of the Noblemen, and spake sharply to the Ambassadors, saying: That they of zurich had done him great wrong in ruinating both the old and new Ralberwills, and spoyling the Marche likewise, because they were in his Seigneury. He therefore demanded, that they should restore what they held from him, rebuilde those places which they had roined, and repay their pillages with ready money, & in fo doing, hee would pardon them all

those wrongs. As concerning hismaintaining the lands of John of Habsbourg : they belonged to him,in manner following. Garnier Count of Hombourg, Lord of Rasperwill the elder, and of three castles, seated upon one Mountaine, named Wartenberg, nere to Bafile, dying without children; the fucceffion fell vnto that John of Habspourg, who was flaine at Grinow. But Otho and Albert, Princes of Austria, laid claime to them, being the stronger (Iknow not whether they had any other title) and all the other goods of Garnier, including both Rafperwill the elder, & all the March. Neuerthelesse, they rendred all vnto John of Habspourg, and he to hold it of them as in Knights fee, and so became their vasfaile and pentioner. Thus you fee, why Albert of Austria faid they had done him wrong, and wherefore he demanded fatisfaction.

The Ambassadors of zurich made an-innocence wer, that (from those places) ambuscadoes had beene made against their citty, more an artheir cittizens spoyled and flaine, and in wherewith in those castles their banished men were detendit selfe harboured. Therefore, feeing they had ruined Rasperwell, which no longer was an abiding for Noblemen, but a retreate for theeues & banished men: they thought it no way meete, that any should be compelled to builde it againe, or in the felfefame place. They entreated the Prince to confider ferioufly on enery thing: they being alwaies ready to debate their cause before the Princes and citties of the Empire, and in any fuch place as hee would appoint. The Prince answered them in choller, that this was not a difference which flood in need of any ludges, to beate downe his castles, and waste the places of his Seigneury. But if all were not reduced agains to the first condition, and full facisfaction made: he would imploy all his forces, and constraine them of zurich to do it. In briefe, he would have no other debating of this cause, but by the

The Ambassadors having made their answer to the councell of zurich, & they perceiving also evidently, that the cittie would very shortly be befiedged, because all the Noblemen were already in armes: The alliance the men of zurich well knowing, that in of Zurich expecting aide from the Emperor or the Empire, was meerly to abuse themselves; resoluted to combine alliance with the liberties to Cantons, for the better preservation of gether. their common liberties. Till then, they maintained themfelues in amity one with another, and although in the day at Morgarten, they of zurich gaue fuccour to the Duke of Austria; yet notwithflanding, the Cantons were not offended therewith, but rather tooke pleasure, to approducthe hardinesse and valour of the men of zurich in fight.

point of the Sword.

Having then formaine an enemy (in common) against them all to wit, the Duke of Auteria; both the one and the Vnity effart other then might eafily indge, that their makethary forces beeing thus combined together, people tole they had thereby the better meanes for re-

not ignorant, that this their alliance with leagues. See heere the true cause of the pall intention them of zurich, did highly accommodate them for prouision of victuals; because there was a very excellent marker at zurich, and the Lake was apt to transport both food and Metchandizes. Wherefore, after that the men of zurich had fent their Ambaffadors to the Cantons, to require their alliance in lone, and freely had acquainted them with their present dangers: the Cantons imbraced their motion very thankfully and (foone after) fent their Ambaffadors to zurich, with plaine power to confirme this alliance, which was fully resolued on in the Moneth of Aprill,in the yeare one thousand, three hundred, fifty one, and engroffed in writing at the beginning of May following. Now albeit zurich is the fift, coming thus into alliance with the Switzers; yet notwithstanding, because it is a citty much renowned and mighty; the first place was given to it, and zurich named be named the to be the first Canton. The men of zurich (yet to this day) do hold that name and ranke, among all the thirteene Cantons,

nd vnion of cople,is as a horne in the harts of all fuch as would oppress them

he alliance

he honour

granted it to

irft Canton.

as well in dayes occasions of the Switzers accounts, as in all Ambaffages, and other publike actions whatfocuer. This vnity of them of zurich, caused warre(fo much the fooner)to come vpon them; for the Prince of Austria was already very angry with them of Suits, Vri. and Indernald, which first of all were leagued together : neuertheleffe, hee affured himselse (one day) to bring them vnder his yoake. For, because the country was barren, and not conucniently grounded forwarre; there grew fome apparance, that (at length) it might bee fubdued, albeit they were good Souldiers, and well refolued for fight. But when Lucerna, which was vnder the dominion of Auffria,ioyned with them, and then (foone after) zurich, a free citty, and cheefeft of all other in the country : the Prince became much more mooued and troubled: for he was not ignorant, how greatly this alliance had firengthened and authorifed them of surich. And therefore he concluded, to lay hold on this occasion, to make warre on the men of zurich, and befiedge their citty; to cilay if thereby he

could voknit this knot of combination,

refistance. Moreouer, the Cantons were | the former) should make any more new warre, and I dare maintaine, that no cante of the Duke (concerning the ruine of Rulber will) inci- of Austria. red it; because (at all times) when peace was treated on after the warre began: they of Austria neuer viged that article, concerning the building agains of Rafterwill; but rather that they of zurich, shold renounce their alliance with the cantons.

Thus then, in the Moneth of September the yeare 1351. Albert of Austria be fiedged zwrich. He had encamped with the City of him, Lewes, Count of Brandenberg, Fre- Zurich. dericke, Duke of Teck, the Duke of Prilinge, and the Burggraue of Nuremberg. The Bithops of Wircebourg, Bamberg. Frifingen, Coire, and Bafile fent hon ficcour. He had fine and twenty Counts or Earles in his Army, namely; Ewrad, Count of Wirtenberg, conducter of the Army : Lewes, count of Ottigen : Frederick, count of Ortemberg : the two counts of Schmanalech: the two counts of Tetnanges: the two counts of Furstemberg: wants flore of the three of Tierstein: they of Habshoure heipetabe and Kybourg; Raoul and Hermand of Wer-demberg; Albert and Henry of Nellembourg; Guillaume of Kilchberg; Immer of prefled. Strasberg, of New-chaftle, of Nidow, of Arberg, of Fribourg, of Zolerin, and of Methourg. Likewife the citties of Strafbourg, Bafile, Fribourg in Brifgore, Soleurre, and some others sent aide to the Duke. It is faid, that he had in his Army two thoufand horfe, and fine thoufand foote. On the other fide, the foure Cantons fent a good Garrison to them of zurich. The Souldiers and the cittizens fortified the citty, and made diligent prouition of all things requifite to withfland the fiedge, and to defend it : fo that (on both fides) there were fome fallies and skirmithes.

But few daies after the fiedge, peace was made, by the intermite of Frederick, count Peace made, of Tagge, and of Hertber Ketchbere, com- and on what mander of Rhodes abiding at Pateutlavith Condition them of Bafile and of Berne on condition. that the Switzers (hould refer themselnes vnto the definitine indgement of Aimer, Queene of Hungary, to whom, evther tide thould fend their Affellours, and that which was concluded by them, with plurality of voyces, cyther party thould ratific. For this effect, they of smich were to before any other (following example of gine in 16. Hoftages, of the cheefett

There neuer

Chap. 5.

The Abbey of

Secon giuen to S.Fridolin,

w two bro-

What meane

the oppreso

people do víc, in bereauing

their liberty, & at length to dispose ail at their owne pleasure.

A traine is made,to enrran them by a sheete of paper,thatcould come by force.

Religion and

protestation of willingnes

to peace,in

the mouth of

a woman, cx

alted to au-

thority, are

apteft inffru-

all other)

whereby to

deceive and

abuse the

pcople.

of the Citty, and Albert promised by his Letters, that no wrong should bee done vnto them. The foure Cantons would not accept of this peace, alledging, that no trust ought to be given to the Queen of Hungary, who would not faile to give sentence in fauour of Albert, he beeing her brother. Neuerthelesse, the men of Zurich, who had a good opinion of the woman, did so presse the other Cantons. that they subsigned together the conditions: adding this exception (in common) that their alliance should continue in full force. The Duke of Austria chose for Judges,

Immer, Count of Strasberg, and Peter of

Stoeffelen, commander of Tannenfels.

They gave sentence in behalfe of their Master, whereby it was appointed, that no leffe pern tious then they of Zurich were bound, to renew (acthe warre. cording to their former condition) the olde and new Rasperwilles, and give fatiffaction to Albert: rendring backe Lucerna under his government, and furrender alfo great store of possessions and rights, in the territory of Vnderuald. They tooke away likewise from them of Suits, their right of fishing in the Lake, and their an-

cient possession and vse of many Forrests. Finally, they condemned all the five Catons, in great fines of money: neuer hauing any regard, what wrongs the city of zurich had endured, by them of Rafperwill, nor other reasons and defences proposed by the Cantons, and by Philip Kyen, Knight, and Peter de la Baume, Confull of Berne, their ludges deleagued.

Queene Agnes approved the fentence of Alberts Iudges. She was a witty woman, that had an outward appearance of great functity, as we vieto fay from the teeth forward. At all times when the faw her brethren forward to make warre, but greatly vnfornified; then would fie bee ments (among fure to procure truce or peace betweene the Switzers and them. Onely to this end, that they might affemble their troopes together in the meane time, and bee the better prouided for a fudden affailing the at vnawares. Yet all that while, the would ftill protest that the did all this for the enjoying of peace, and in meere compassion which the had of the Switzers.

Now albeit this fentence was most vninfl; yet notwithflanding, the Switzers promifed to ratific it. But the Duke being

not contented with all this, commanded them of zurich, to fet at liberty (without eyther fine or ranfome) Count John of Habspourg, their prisoner taken in faire warre, and of whom the ludges made not any mention. Heereupon, they of zurich would not yeeld to any thing, by which tion of the occasion, the Duke imprisoned their ho- Duke of Austages, contrary to his faithfull promise, stria. planted a Garrison on the Frontiers, and prepared himselfe for a new warre.

CHAP. V.

How Glaris, being conquered by the Cantons, came afterward to be accepted into their louing alliance.



HE Switzers feeing that all hope of peace was veterly frustrated, & that they must nation of the termined among these termined among these to inuade the country of Glarks, for scare lesse (in that quarter) the enemy would receive the country of clarks to the country of Glarks to the country of G

make courfes on the lands of the confe-dertaken. derates, and especially on them of Suits. Wherefore, the very same years, and in the Moneth of November, the men of Zurich, Vri, Suits, and Vnderwald, joyned together, and led their troopes towards Glaris. Without any blow fmitten, they made themselves Masters of the whole country, taking oath of them of Glaris: and in regard of their faithfulnefle, as alfotheir approved valour in war, which they had well tried oftentimes before; they receiued them into their alliance.



Glaris is a straite Valley and long, A breete we cotaining a league Glais. and an halfe of the Germane measure, neere to the River of Limagus or Limmatis.li tookname from the principall

A breefe de-

Towne of all the Country, being engirt on three fides with very high Alpes: hauing the Grifons on the South fide, & towards the East, Vri, & Suits to the West, and on the North, the field called the Grt-

fors country, by which, the River of Limagus runneth along the Valley, and enters into the Lake of zwrich. Glaris had bin subject a long time, and for the space of many yeares to the Abbey of Secon & was given to S. Fridolin, by two brothers, named Ours, and Landolphe. They of Glaris paied tythes to this Abbey, and certaine constituted rents beside taxations of fome inheritances. They were not charged with any imposts, or subsidies whatfocuer: they held their owne lawes, & a councell among their cittizens. True it is, that the election belonged voto the Abbeffe but the Propositing or government (both of the Abbey and country) was the Emperors onely & in his power.

Afterward, Frederick Barbaroffa gaue it to Otho. Palatine of Bourgongne, from whose successors, it came to them of the house of Habsbourg. Vnder pretence of this authority, Albert of Austria, Sonne to the Emperour Rapul, made himfelfe Lord of Glaris, in despight of the whole country: who had promifed to the forenamed Abbey, neuer to be separated or alienated from it. This viurpation was the caufe, that many Noble families for fooke the country, and withdrew themselues thence fome to Vri. and others to zurich. They of Austria being well fortified, expulfed out of his house the Baron of Suanda, a rich Gentleman, and well beloued in those parts, appropriating all his goods to themselves. They vsurped also the rights of the Majordome of Glaria.& brought in a nouelty neuer before practised: sending Gouernors into that country, to have a fewere eye over the people, and to judge them by processe in law.

Those Gouernors were very rude and

infolent, to that the people (in defpight Glaris yeelof the Austrians) yeelded themselves voluntarily to the Switzers, when they came to warre vpon them, and made perpetuall alliance with them. Gautter de Stad, Gouernour for them of Austria, departed from Glaris, after the inhabitants had fworn fidelity to the switzers, withdraw, ing himfelfe not far off, namely to Wefen. But they of Glaris chose among theseluca (according to their ancient custome) a

Major or Amman, and their viuall number

of councellers. And because they expe-

And nothing more, but that the Austri-

ans would foone come agains to moleft

them: they firengthened their walles, and trenched their Valley, neere to a Village named Naifell, where was the easiest entrance into the country: that needed no fortification but only there, al the rest be-

ing engirt with Mountaines round about. During these alterations at Glaris, in the Moneth of December, they of zurich marched with their Army towards Teissille, Bada, where was a great Garrison of the where the Austrians, that by their often out-roades had a worthy made much waste on the Lands of surich. victory gainst To require them with money of the fame ther enemies the Auftrians stamp they of zurich forradged the coutry about Bada, and burnt the Subburbs of the Towne, getting vp on the Mountaine, to come neerer to them . But to. wards Tetiuille, on the Mountaine, a Captaine of the Austrian horsemen, named Ellerbach, made firme the passage with foure thousand men. They of surich were no more then 1300. (fome fay they were much leffe) notwithstanding, they fet vpon the enemy, and wonne a very remarkable victory, leaving there 700, enemies flaine, among whom (as is credibly auouched) there were 65. Gentlemen.

The yeare following, Gautier de Stad, The overnot long before Gouernor of Glaris, ha- chrow of uing leuied an Army, prepared himfelfe, Gaunerde to subject the country again to the house uernor of of Austria. Hee tooke occasion to do Glara. this, because he had received intelligence that two hundred men of Glaris were in Garrison at zurich. But the other inhabitants ouercame him in a ranged battel, where he was flaine, and a great number of the Nobility the 2.day of February.

The felfe fame day, the Austrians that were at Zug, beeing gone by Boates to Arte , did fet vpon the lands of Suits, but pening the met with the like welcome as Stad had at lame day. Glaris. In like manner, al the confederates fent an Army to forradge Berone, and other neighbouring places, from whence the Austrians iffued foorth oftentimes, to fet vpon the Lucernians: As (on the other fide) the Austrians put to fire and blood Cufuseb, and some other places, yet not without their owne great lotte. About the holidayes of Pentecoffe, the Lucernians, af- Courses and fifted by the three Cantons tooke (by af- outroides fault) a Castle, called Halypony, leated made onely on the Lake of Lucerna; cut in peeces all for spoyle. them that were therein Garrison, & ruinated it quite fro the top to the bottom.

Of the day at

Stad. Lite Go

CHAP.

lefte valued

and effected

At what time

Berne allied

By whom

Berne was builded.

Berne made

an imperiali

Concerning

the frituation

& firft eftate

The Canton made an Ar

my forth a-

of Zug.

CHAP. VI.

Of Zing and at what time it came to he comprehended, in league and confederacy with the other Cantons of the Switzers.

IN those times, Zug hapned to be thus comprized in alliance with the Switzers. It is a Towne betweene Zurich and Suits, feated at the foote of a Mountain, rich in pasturages, and vines planted on the fides joyning to the Lake, which aboundeth with plenty of Fish, common to them both of Zug and Suits. It is reputed to be the capi-



tall Towne of certaine people, which accomppaied the of Zurich, in the warre of the Cimbrians against the Fomanes . Sometimes (hee aknowledged divers Gé-

tlemen as her Lords: but afterward, fell into the hands of them of Austria, who. during the warre against the Switzers, maintained there an ordinary Garrison, which did many harmes to them of Suits and Zurich. And this was the cause, that in the yeare 1352, and the Moneth of Inne, the men of Zurich, with the foure other Cantons, prepared an Army to go against Zug. The Soldiers finding their firength far too weake, would not attend the Switzers comming: but withdrew to Bremgarten, and other places thereabout. But the Townesmen, who would be faithfull to the Duke of Austria, maintained the fiedge for fifteene daies space: neuertheleffe, having received a very violent affault: they yeelded themselves, & tooke an oath to the Smitzers, on this condition. That if within a certaine time appointed, the Duke of Austria brought an Army, to cause the siedge to bee remoued: they would returne againe under his obedience, and fland acquitted of their oath giuen to the Swuzers. To effect this bufineffe, they fent their Ambaffadors, to require succour from the Duke of Austria: he being then in the Abbey of Champ Royall, about fifteene leagues from Zug,

& there the Ambaffadors let him vnderstand their charge and message.

It chanced at that inflant time, that the Duke was walking in a Gallery demanding of his Fauldoner, whether hee had (that day) fed his Hawkes or no? The the cheefest of the Ambassadors, named Herman, taking him at that word faid. Alaffe my Lord have you not more care of your Subjects, the of Hawks ? Especially now; people are when the enemy hath fo firedly engire vs. (oftentimes) as lif you fend not prefent supply, confrainedly we must furrender our schies? then Hante The Prince returned this answer. It is welveeld your felues : before it be long time. we will recouer againe whatfoener wee have loft. And because they of Zuo well faw, that it was in vaine to looke for any comfort thence: they joyned themselves in vnity and alliance with the Switzers.

Hardly were the Letters of this alliance written, for combining thus the Cantons by oath: but Albert, Duke of Austria, now the second time besiedged the citty A secondbe seed the citty of Lurich, about the midst of Lune. But City of Zuat the end of the Moneth, by intermife of nehthe Matquesse of Brandebourg, peace was made, on these conditions following. They of zurich (hould fet at liberty John Conditioned of Habspourg, their three yeares prisoner, the peace without eyther fine or ranfome. Alfo, that the Duke of Austria should acquit (frank and freely) the hoftages of zurich, whom he had likewise imprisoned. They of Zng and Glaris, absolved of their oath taken to the Switzers, (hould (as before) veeld obedience to the house of Austria. In the meane while, nothing thould hinder, but that the alliance of the Switzers must

stand firme. In the time of this treaty, John of Hab-Bourg came forth of prison, without pay- | The craity fleights of ing any ranfome, but the Hoftages of zwrich wer not released, according to fworn
bett great
bett great
bett great promife: for before they could get forth, pout in due they were compelled to pay fixteen hun- respect and dred crownes for a ranfome, & yet could efficiation. not enjoy eyther peace or fafety. For fo foone as the Count of Hab/bourg was releafed hee gave Rafberwill, and the places neighbouring about it, to Albert of Aufria; who immediately fortified Rafperwill, and planted a Garrison there, whereby a new warre was engendered. For the Soldiers of that Garrison ranne in on the Lands of zwrich, and flewfifty men at

one of the Chanons of zurich.

Heereby we may plainly perceitte, that the Duke of Austria did but feeke occasion, whereby to begin the warre againe. The yeare following, as the Ambassadors of Suits were gone (in name of the fine Cantons) to require of them of zag, the obligatory oath of their alliance, according to the Articles of pacification: they of Austria expulsed them away with outrages. In regard whereof, they must red their forces together againe, and made themselves Masters of zug the second time, and then commanded the cittizens, to give their oath to the Switzers. In the fame yeare, 1352. the fixteenth day of March, Berne toyned it selfe in alliance with the Switzers. But we are to Beake fomewhat in this place, concerning this citty, which is the most powerfull among all them in Swetia.

CHAP. VII.

Of the building of Berne, the scituation and condition thereof, and how it was yeelded to the Empire.



the last Duke of zeringen, built the city of Berne, and being offended with the no-blemen, who had caused his

male children to bee poyfoned in their youth: he submitted it to the Empire, & affranchised it. The Emperor Fredericke the elementh, ratified the Dukes will, and after the death of him in the yeare, 1218. a Gouernor was fent to Berne, named Othe of Ranen/pourg, in name of the Empire. But some yeares after, for good sernices done by them of Berne to the Emperor : hee gaue them much greater priuiledges and franchifes, exempting them alfo from having any more Governor.

In the troubles and confusions which happened in the Empire, the Count of Aybourg, Lord of Burgdorff, flroue to abolish the citties liberty, leaguing himfelfe (for that purpose) with Gentlemen his neighbours, and the Towne of Fri-

Meile, which was a Village belonging to bourg, which Berthoul the fourth had built: And his Son had given in charge to both thele Townes, to continue friends for euet. As concerning the occasion of this war it grew thus. The men of Berne had bought certaine Lands beyond the River of ar, & began to prepare a bridge, which the Count would not fuffer, he beeing Lord beyond the River. Wherenpon



Of Berne.

they of Bernie (defirous to make the felues as strong as their chemies) did put themselves into the protection of the Count of Sauoye, who repreffed the attempts of the Count of Ky-

bourg, and having obtained peace, enlarged the compasse and roundure of the citty. Then after warre was moued, betweene the Count of Sanoye, and the Duke of Bourgongne, the Count promi-fed the men of Berne, that if they carried themselves valiantly, and he prospered in his attempt; he would grant them whatfoeuer they would demand of him. They performed their duty so well that the enemy was discomfitted : and then (as in recompence) they defired nothing elfe of the Count of Sanoye, but their ancient liberry, and he granted their request, and kept his promise most faithfully with them. After that time, they of Berne were alwayes friends, and allied to the house of SAHOYE.

The Citty being reintegrated into her The men of wonted liberty, before they entred into Berne had di league with the Suvezers, had many and wers wars bevery difficult warres, as well for conferua- came to be in tion of their liberty; as enlarging their li- number of the mits. They gave a battaile to Godfrey of Hablpourg, in the yeare, 1241, but that was to their owne difaduantage, because the enemy was far greater in number. Moreouer, Raoul of Hab/bourg, accompanied with them of la Tour and de Gravere, befiedged (two fenerall times) the Citty of Berne; vnder colour of accuting them of Berne, that they had violated the publike faith of the bimpire, in taking prifoners, and cuill entreating certaine lewes. Albert of Austria, sonne to the Emperor Runt, did twice hid them battaile before the citty, and many citizens were there

Zug being af-Cantons, vpon conditi-

Zugis affay-led by the e-nemics to her berry.

Alliance and

league perpe-

with the Can-

A great league and made againfl he Citty of Berne.

234

flaine. In the yeare 1291, the Counts of Sauore, Neuberg, and Gruyere, the Bishop of Lausanna, the Lord of Tour, belide fome Townes and Gentlemen, made a league against Berne: but by the aide of the Counts of Kybourg and Arberg as also the citty of Solleurre, the men of Berne wonne a mighty battaile, at a place called, The hill of Thunder Auldrich Erlach was cheefe of the Bernish Army in that warre. During the yeares following, many of the Castles, neighbouring to the citty, were taken in war, and demolished by them of Berne. They also had victories in the warres, moued in the vale of Sim. mis, and in many other places, against the Noblemen that much molested them. whereby they greatly enlarged their limits. Also the inhabitants of the vale of Halell, who were at freeliberty, ioyned with them of Berne . This happineffe of theirs forenflamed the malice and enuy of the Noblemen against Berne, as thereon enfued the memorable battaile given Many Counts and Gentlemen, hauing

The fannus and memora le battaile guenby Count and Gentlemen, against the men of Berne at Loupen.

leuied a well prepared Army of fixteene shouland foote, and three thouland, fine hundred horse, at the least, went and befiedged Loupen, which is a small Towne appertaining to them of Berne, who were about five thousand, affisted with three hundred men of Vri, as many of Suits, as many of I'nderuald, and as many of the Vale of Hafell, Raoul Erlach being chiefe of these troopes This small number ouercame the enemy in a ranged battaile, nere to Loupen, where dyed in the fielde, the Count of Sauoye, who was fent to the Campe by his Father, onely to treate on peace : but the other constrained him to make one in the battaile. There were flaine also, the Counts of Nidow, of Arberg and Valendy fifteene hundred horfemen, among whom were fourescore Getlemen of marke, and about three thoufand foote. This hattaile was fought the

21.day of Iune, in the yeare 1339.
After this fuccessefull day, they of Berne made warre (to their aduantage) against them of Fribourg, who were vallails to the house of Anitria, and also to the Getlemen about Fribourg. For at Schonnenberg, they of Fribourg were ouerthrowne. and loft many of their men, their country forraged, and the Subburbs of their

Towne burnt. Sienow, Lanenow, Burgdorff, Longuenall, Pyrnestic, Arberg, Erlach Nidow Thun, and other Townes and great Villages, were eyther spoyled, or taken by them of Berne. Finally, Agnes Queene of Hungary, made an end of this warre, by meanes of a peace which thee compounded. In all these warres, they of Berne euer felt, that Gentlemen, no Anvnexpec better then vallails to the house of Au- ted warre of firia, most laboured to oppresse them: the of Berne whereas (contratiwise) the amity of the men of Vn Switzers did highly advantage them. But deruald, in the meane while, and contrary to their hope and expectation, they were drawne into a new warre; wherein they of Vnderuald joyned themselves with their enemies. The Lord of Kingenberg, and the Propost of the Abbey scituated betweene the two Mountaines, were Bourgeffes of Bern . They were Gouernors or Bayliffs also of that country, which lies neere to the Mountaine of Brunic, and the Lake of Brieniz.

It came to passe, that they of the country accounting the gouernment of thefe Tho reason two Lords to be rude and harsh: began of the watte to mutiny against them, and after they and procee had called to their aide the men of Inder-ding. uald, who were neere neighbors; they tooke the Castle of Ringenberg, in absence of the Lord fer it on fire, and denied the Prouost such duties and tythes, as they were accustomed to pay. They of Berne fent Ambaffadorsito exhore them of Vnderuald, not to foccour fuch feditious perfons against all right and reason. But they of Vnderuald made no reckoning of this aduertisement, but went and encamped with the feditious at Brientz. On the other fide the men of Berne having required their allies of Solleurre, Thun, Bienne, and Morat to fend them fuccour, and it being fent them; marched with all their troopes to Brientz, gaue battaile to the feditious and them of Vnderuald, compelling them to flight, and retire into the vniuth, is the neighbouring Mountaines. They of Vn- ruine ando deruald (florining at this difgrace) called their contetheir confederates of Zurich, Lucerna, deraies. Vri, Suits, Zug, and Glaris to helpe them : but they of Berne fent their Ambaffadors to those Cantons, offering the justice & equity of their cause, and to have it tried before them.

Heereupon, a day was held at Lucerna,

where the Deputies of the Switzers, hauing heard the reasons aledged on either fide, commanded them of Vnderwald, to renounce their alliance with them of Brientz. On the same day, the men of them of Bern Berne made a perpetual alliance with the three Cantons, Vri, Suits, and Vnderuald. Now, although this alliance is made but with three, yet Zurich and Lucerna are comprized therein. For the three first Cantons bound themselues to succour them of Zurich & Lucerna whenfocuer they called them, and to bring with them the men of Berne, who by the same alliance are tyed thereto, if Zurich and Lucerna do desire it. In reciprocall manner they of Zurich and Lucerna promifed fo-

lemnly, to go assist (with all their power)

the men of Bern, if the three Cantons cal

Switzers out of this league, then he made

his re-course to Albert, desiring him to

fell Lucerna, Glaris, and Zug vnto the Em-

pire, because the difference did concerne

those three places especially. But Albert

audaciously answered him; That he would

rather buy fome Townes, if the Emperous

would fell him any then let him have any of

Once agains the Emperor preffed the

Switzers, to fuffer him to end the diffe-

rence, and promife to tye themselues to

fuch orders as he thould fet downe, affu-

ring them that Albert would do the like.

his for mony.

them thereto.

The thirdtime of fiedge laide to the City of

But the Switzers would not confent ther to, without plaine exception of their priuiledges; and the Emperor vrged his authority, without any referuation : by the which meanes, all this long unparlance ferued to no purpose, but only that a truce was taken for fome time. Which beging expired, the Emperor being inceffantly importuned, loyned with albert of Auitris, and befiedged Zurich. The befied-(by divers ambaffages)intreated the Em- Albertof Auperor, not to presse thus into the house of fria. Austriaes fauour) their citty, which was Imperiall : for they defired nothing but confernation of their priniledges and would not reject any composition what-

hee would not doe : in which respect, the Immediately after this alliance made. Emperor raifed the fiedge, and returned the city of Zurich was beliedged agayne home. That which also moved him herethe third time. For, Albert of Austria.acto, was, because his Camp stood compocufed the Camons before the Emperout fed of foldiers who were (almost al) prest Charles the fourth who having heard the forth of Imperial Townes and Citties; & The fiege raianswer of the Cantons, made a truce, vn-(in his opinion) bare more affection to the Switzers, then to the house of Asmost fingular till his returne from a voyage, which hee was constrained to vndertake about som firia, albeit those fouldiers during the providence. affavres of the Empire. Beeing returned, fiedge) would obey none other then the he came to Zurich, where he heard either Emperor. After the Emperors departure parties, and directing himselfe vnto the the duke of Austria also speedily got him Switzers, especially to them of Zurich he gon having heard, that the other Canaduifed them to renounce this alliance: tons had fent forth supply vnto them of adding withall, that the citty was Imperi-Zurich. Neuertheleffe, hee lodged his all, and could make no alliance without troopes in Townes, Villages, and Caftles confent of the Emperor. But the conferound about, enioyning them, not to suf-fer the Cantonnes to haue any rest, but derates rendred a sufficient reason for what they had done, exhibiting their pricontinually to make incursions on theyr uiledges, and making it manifest, that the Lands. alliance contracted between them, could not any way prejudice the rightes of the Empire. Seeing he could not drive the

At length, in the fift year of this war, by authority and intermife of the emperor Charles the fourth, peace was concluded betweene the Prince of dustria, and them of Zurich. Now because it would feeme a troublesome matter, to infert heere the whole Tenure at large; we will be fatisfied with a breefe Summary of the Articles, which are thefe following.

Articles of Peace concluded on betweene the Duke of Austria and Zurich.

1. W Hatfoener hath bene taken on either fide in this Warre Mall be restored againe.

2 They of Zurich (ball not receive into

A proud anwer of Albert of Aufria to the Emperor.

socuer, if it were reasonable. Then the Emperor began to fummon

Albert to liften to a pacification which

Peace made between them of Zurich, and the Duke of

full pursuite of victory,against them of Fribourg and many towner mar

A fortunate

and facceffe-

A new vari-

ance conret-

ning the Can-

ton of Zug, & referred to the opinion of the

Emperour.

them of Au-

the number of their Bourgesses such as remaine under the domination of the Duke of Austria: but if any will retire themselves to Zurich, they may be receyued. Prouided, that they bee of the number of them, which the Cittie might receive, before this peace was made.

3 Such as hold any other way then in fee-Service , Shall be under the instice of the lords of those Fees . And they which make we of another mans possessions, shall surrender them, or shal stand bound to answer the same in Law : except it be for the goods of the ba-

4 From hence farward, they of Zurich Shall not ally themselves with the servantes of the Duke of Austria: or contrariwise they hallhelpe to recover his rights.

& If any difference happen to bee maoued, hetweene the Duke and the Cantons: It is ordained before hand, that some Judges shall consider on the cause.

6 Those alliances which the Switzers have made together Shall remaine in their ful power and integrity.

There are divers other Articles in this pacification: but I am onely contented with these, as beeing the principall and cheefest.

It fell out, that divers interpretations were made vpon this agreement, which likewise begat new contentions : yet they were fill qualified, before they came to hand-blowes, for either fides purfe being emptied of money, and their forces fayling, made them virwilling to heare of any more warre. Albert Bucheimer, Lieutenant to the duke of Austria, preffed them of Zug, to give their oath of fidelity vnto his Prince, which they would not do, but with exception of their alliance made with the Cantons or elfe to ftand acquitted by the fayde Cantons, to whom they had given their faith . This difference was referred to the Emperor Charles the fourth, who finally gave judgement, that they of Zug fhould fland exempted from alliance with the Catons: because (quoth he) the Articles of pacification doe declare, that the Switzers shall not possesse any of the Dukes Towns, neyther hinder any way his gouernment in them.

Now, although this fentence was greatly greenous to the Switzers, confidering, that in one of the Articles, the

alliances made, were (by name) excep. The Switzen ted, and onely ordained, that no new Al- | being wearie liances should be made with the vassails to the house of Austria: yet notwithstanding, they were so ouer glutted with war, as they wereyon the point to leaue Zug more trouble to the Duke of Austria + if they of Suites (who had not (as yet) figned the neace) had not opposed themselves againstit. They then fod ainly gathered their troops together, and went to Zug, demaunding againe the faith of the Citizens, who for their part) had fent their Deputy to Suits to require confirmation of the faith first given. This done, after fome long debating and confulting, it was at length concluded; by meanes of the Lorde of Tarberg , that truce should be confirmed for the death of the space of eleuen yeares, which was till Albert. after the decease of Albert. During this truce, they of Zuz and Glaris continued allved with the Switzers, and althat while were thereunto fubicat, acquitting themfelues of all duties due to the house of Austria. The Duke received from Suits a man, from foure yeares to foure yeares, whom hee confirmed Amman or Major at Zug: And he gaue as Gouernour vnto them of Glaris, Godfrey Mulner of Zurich. Afterward, the truce being expired, it was againe confirmed for a longer

The fonne of Albert, named Leopolde greatly hated the Switzers ; but he durft | war made by not meddle with them , leaft hee should the English gaine as little thereby, as his Father had the Switzer done. And therefore he would workehis will by others, fetting the Switzers at variance with the Englishmen, who having fooiled the country about the kheine, entred into Swetia, where they did as much harme to the Austrians, as to the Cantons. But having bin beaten in some incounters, after they had forraged in Swetia, and all the countrey about Montbeliz ard Bafile, Strasbourg, and run into diuers other places, they retired home to their own houses, & hapned Anno 1376.

Six years after war was moued against the Count of Kybourg. Hee was enforced Warmale to take (by treason) the Towne of Sol gainfile luerre, allyed with the men of Berne, and Count of K at the very fame time, they of Austria bourg. would have furprized Dun and Arberg, Townes appertaining to the Canton of Bern. Confequently the Count of Kyburg

of war, would yeeld to their owne injurie;

cluded on for

v Leopold of Auftria, acainft the Switzers.

nonftrous

To ruinate

the people

they must bee

Chap.7.

Tyrants neer want exe. crable and

The Lucernians manhood at Rottem

made open war ypon them of Solleurre, to whome they of Berne and the other Cantons fent Supply. The Duke of Aufria, who (fo lately before) had made alliance with the Switzers, fortified (vnder hand) the Count of Kybourg, and (contrary to his faith) furnithed him with victuals, and other necessaries for warre. Neuertheleffe, the Count was not able to endure the burchen of amity agreed on betweene them of Sollewire and Bern. but fold them Burgdorff stor the fumme offorty thousand Crownes.

The Duke of Austria had a difference,

periall Cities and Townes. They made a league, wherein Zurich, Berne, Solluerre, and Zug were comprehended: but the Duke brake all in funder by his cunning deuices, pacifying himfelfe amiably with the Townes of Suaba and Franconia, And as for the Townes on this fide the Rheine in Halfatia, hee conquered them in one battell. This victory did so advance his hopes, as he began to confult with himfelfe, how to bring the Townes of Swetia vnder his obedience, and the occasion of the warre grew thus. Peter of Torberg, Gouernour of Wolhoufe, and in the Vale of Entlibuch and Herman Grunenberg .gouernout of Rattenbourg for the Duke of Austria, who had engaged these places vnto them, tyranized on the people, and did many outrages to the neighbours of the Lucernians. The people being tyrannically dealt with all, fent men to Lucerna, to defire acceptation into their Bour guership. But the two Governours ha uing discouered it, caused the Deputies to be hanged, and all them that had anie hand in the matter, recompencing them with death, that had faithfully imployed their paines, to give life agains to theyr languishing countrey of Moreover, they imposed new passage Tolles at Rottembourg on the Switzers, or elfe they might haue no passage there.

The Lucernians, too much prouoked by to many injuries, being ayded by the men of Suits Fri and Knderuald : made themselves matters of Rottembourg, the 29 day of December, in the yeare, 138; spoyling the Castle, which Grunenberg had fortaken. They did likewife beate downe the walles of the Towne, and filled vppe the Ditches : for feare least the

Austrians should lodge any Garrison, there, wherewith to mollest the Lucernians againe. Some short while after they of Sempach were received into Fellow-Bourgeship with the Lucernians, & two hundred men were put in garrison by the Lucernians, into the Town of Richenfee : Richenfee to but the Lieutenants to the Duke of du burnt, and all stria, having fodainely louised an Armie, in it flame or tooke the Towne by affault, cut & throats burned, by of the whole Garrison, put most part of frie the inhabitants to the fword, burned all the rest aline, in the same fire wherewith the Towne was embraced, fliewing po in what manner I know not with the Impitty to aged, ficke women, or children. On the other fide, al the Cantons, except Bern, took a place in those parts, named Meyenberg, & there planted a garifon bur the Austrians (faigning a flight) drew the Switzers foldiers forth into the ope field. where they flewe fourescore and one of them, and compelled the reit to retyre foeedily into the Towne. The Cantons aduertifed heereof, called their people together let fire on the Towne and Caftle.

leauing not a iote of them ynruined. Their beginnings and entrances into warre, federed to threaten the Switzers with a farre greater confusion: & therefore, they of Austria made their preparations carefully, yet with great pomp, and enery day (by Letters and Heraulds) denounced warre against the Switzers, at the beginning of the enfining yeare. The Switzers confidered likewife on their owne affaires, and prouided to fet vpon all those enemies which had enclosed the round about. The men of Berne, who had not boudge as yet, beeing follicited by many mellages from their confederates: ruined two Castles, to wit, Torberg, and Kopping, belonging to Peter of Torberg. They of Lucerna, Vri, Suits, and Finderwald, spoyled the Castle and Towne of The Confe-Woolhowfeans alto Liele, Rinach and Balden derates ioyne The men of zwich joyned their forces their powers with the Cantons, and after they had together, made some courses & waste in the countries neerest to their limits: in retiring backe, they tooke (by affault) the Caffle of Rumelange, and let it bu fire. And be-

cause the Duke of Austriannade the mu-

flering of his people, especially at Brue &:

Bada, neore to Zurich : it was imagined,

that he would go and beliedge that Citic

alfo. And this was the reason, why the

Chap.7.

Cownes diui-

ded from Ap

penzel to take

part with the

Abbot, yet foi-led in fight

Anew warre

hapning be-

fredericke of

war of the

Switzers, for

the recoverie

of Bellizona,

rom the dake

of Millaine.

The battell a Sempach,in Dof Auftria and 676. gen tlemen were flame in the plaine field.

to succour them of Zurich. Duke Leopold understanding that such a Garrison was at Zurich, marched sodainly with his army towardes the Cantons, which feemed then naked of the most part of their troopes. But this enterprize was discouered by their spies, & therefore left the citty of Zurich, in the cittizens guard, and returned back those fixteene hundred men which marched under their Enlignes day and night; and fo diligently, that they arrived at Sempache, even at the fame instant as the duke came to lodge his troops there. That day was the ninth of July, and battell was giuen the very same day, wherein Leopold fonne to Albert the wife, and Nephew or youngest childe to the Emperor Albert, was flaine in open field, with fix hundred Seventy six Gentlemen, whereof there were three hundred and fifty more remarkable then the rest by reason of theyr Helmes and Burganets, beautified with Coronets and goodly plumes . After fo faire a victory, the Cantons began to extend their strength thoroughout all Swetia, and chastifed such as hadde forraged their country, pilled the Citizens, & moued Warre vpon no occasion: many cafiles were ruinated, and many Towns ta-

foure Cantons fent fixteen hundred men

Truce fully agreed vpon for the ipace of a year, but being expired new quarrels arole againe.

In the yeare, one thousand, three hundred, fourescore, and seauen, the second day of the moneth of February, truce was agreed on for a yeare, by the entermise of some Townes. The times of truce being expired, the citizens of Wefen, on the Lake de Rine, deliuered vp their Cittie to them of Austria, who slew the Switzers that were there in Garrison . Afterward, the enemy (with great forces) to the num ber of eight thousand at the least, set vpon the Landes of Glaris the ninth day of Aprill. Some fay, that they were about fixteene thousand men, conducted by Donatus Count of Togge, Peter of Torberg, John of Klingenberg, John Counte of Werdenberg, Lord of Sargans. This last man made choyle of two thousand men, which he brought by Beglinge, to enclose the Swirzers and make them turne theyr

backes with (hame. The other marched boldly on towards the Walles, which they of Glaris had fortified and made strong their coun-

tries entrance the yeare before, gayning thereby fuch affurance of the wall, as the victory was almost intirely in their hand; yet they beganne to pillage, and burne all that was about them. Meane while they of Glaris met together in a neere neighbouring Mountaine, to the number of three hundred and fifty, and thirty belide. which they of Suits had fent from the nerest valley. This ouer-little Troope, by greatnesse of corage and resolution, met with the enemy in a verie narrow passage; where they faluted them with fuch impetuous formes of great stones, & whereof the place affoorded no scarsity:as, drawing them into a place more open, they pressed and pursued on them with such by 380,5mm extreame boldnesse; that the great armie was forced to flight, after they had rene- to their liberwed the charge eleanen fenerall times, y as the Annales of Glaris do tellify, for, fo often did the enemy labour still to fet vpon them.

The Count of Werdenberg, looking from the height of a Mountaine (which hee had betaken himfelfe vnto) and perceyving the overthrow of his affociates, faued his owne flake, as fwiftly as he poffibly could. There were two thousand enemies flaine in this battaile and about fine hundred evere drowned in the Lake: because the multitude of Runne-awayes, brake downe the Bridge in theyr hafte, whereby they thould passe from Glaris to

After this battell, the Cantons shewe ed themselves still in many other skirmithes against the Austrians, taking towns and Castles, either by force or composi- Townerson tion; but they fought no more battels. For by entremile of the Cittles of Constance, but no more Werlingen, Rauenspourg, & Rotuille, truce barrels giuca was taken for seauen yeares : and afterwards it was prolonged, euen fo farre as for the space of twentie yeares; and finally, peace was made for the terme of fiftic yeares.

Peace being oftablished for such length of time brought fome more case & quyetneffe to the Cantons. But in the yeare of the water one thousand, four e hundered and one, of Appenral, the war of Appenzelbegan, & continued and how long feuen whole yeares. Appentel is a Region it continued of Swetia, feated neere vnto the Alpes, toyvardes the East, and on the Head of the Lake of Constance. At this day, it

is one of the thirteene Cantons ; but as then it was no way allved with the Switzers: it onely acknowledged (as a Lord) the Abbot of S.Gall, who was then called, Cuno de Stouffen. Some difference happened between the Abbot and them of Appenzell, and after it had long time bene debated in Lawe before Indges; they fell at length to pleade theyr cause at the swords point. The Townes neerest to the Lake of Constance, did take part with the Abbot, who had fundered them from the men of Appenzel, with whom they were allyed and combined. The Abbot having leuied an army of the inhabitants of those townes, gaue battell to the men of Appenzel, who ouer-came them, droue them in diforder, with great loffe of their men.

After this foile, they of S. Gal, of Appenzel, and of Suits, affociated thefelues together. The Duke of Austria joyned with the Abbot; but they of Appenzel prooued still victorious in all other encounters. And after they had conquered a great part of the country, about them, ruined many Castles, and taken divers Townes: at length they compeld the Abbot to craue peace, & leave them in their wonted liberty.

Seuen yeares after these trobles were ended, a new warre kindled it felfe, betweene Frederick of Austria and the Can Cantons, and tons. The occasion was because Fredericke had carried away (from foorth the Councel of Constance) Pope John the 22. He was put to banishment from the Empire, and excommunicated by the councell. By this decree of the Emperour, and of the Councell, the peace for 50 yeares was broken, the Cantons absolued of their Oath, and commandement giuen them to take armes against the Emperor: which they did, and tooke in that warre Riberstein, Bada, and other places belonging to them of Austria.

In the yeare, 1422, the Switzers ledde their army by the Alpes, and by the Grifons, to befiedge Bellizona; it beeing a Towns which the Count of Monfax had fold to them of Suites, Vri & Vnderusld. The Duke of Millaine feemed to fay, that this place appertained to him; and thereupon tooke it by intelligence. To recouer it againe, the Switzers conducted their army thither this yeare, then in An. no 1425. and the year following alfo. But they could not take the Towne notwithstanding, they made hauocke, and forraged the Valleyes round about neighbouring, and belonging vnto the Duke of Millaine.

But in the yeare, 1436, they of Austria, Cunning deby cunning trickes and fubtle deutices rai-fed a great civill warre among the Swit-ouerthrowthe zers. First, betweene the Canton of Zu- people. rich and the men of Suits, to whom (foon after) the other confederats joyned them sclues. The Duke of Austria (first of all) ranked himselfe with them of Suits: and then (foone after) made alliance with the men of Zurich, and gaue them assistance There were fome encounters, and the Switzers besiedged Zurich : but ther was no battaile more memorable, then that which (not long after) was given at Bafile, the yeare, 1444. and the 26. day of August.

The Dolphine of France, vvho vvas afterward King, named Lewes the 11.had brought a puillant army betweene Montbeliard and Basile; provided partly by the practifes of Pope Engenius, to breake the Councell of Bafile, and partly by the em- The battell of peror Frederick, as withing well vnto the Switzers Switzers. Sixteene hundred Switzers en-Armignaes tred into battell against that great armie, before Basiles and made a terrible flaughter of them. True it is, that all the fixteene hundered men were flaine likewife, as beeing onerborne with the meere multitude of their enemies; but they brake the whole armie in fuch fort, as they forfooke all Germanie immediately, to get themselues into France againe. This memorable day, might well be compared with the battell of the Lacedemonians, at their passage "A verie long of the Thermopyla, confidering the mag-nanimity of fo finall a number: who, for the fafety of their country (euen all Ger-dia, thorough many) opposed themselves valiantly, at the middle of Greecesto the gainst an infinitie of enemies. In these Egeansea ciuill Warres were made many Truces, which was the cause, why such as have vvritten thereof, do not agree together in the computation of the yeares. The common opinion is, that this war lafted fenen yeares: but it began in the yeare, 1436. & firme peace was made and ratified in An-

A yeare after this peace, the Abbot of Swizers with S. Gallmade alliance with four Cantons of their friendes & confederate

no,1450.

A bargaine made,but without any certainty.

of the Switzers . And the yeare following, they of Appenzel allyed themselues with feauen Cantons. And again, a yeare after, the Citty of Saint Gall, with fixe Cantons. Confequently, and in the year one thousand, soure hundred, fifty soure, the men of Schaffouze allyed themselves with the fixe Cantons. But I shall make better mention of these alliances heereafter, and in apter manner.

Warre by th Switzers, 2. gainft Sigifmond, Duke of Austria.

Articles of

downe in wri

til g,yet war

on againc.

calued there-

peace let

These alliances were no sooner made but a new warre beganne to shew it selfe, against Sigismond Duke of Austria. Pope Pius had excommunicated him, I know not yoon what occasion, and so incited the Switzers to warre. On the other fide. the Lords of Grandler, brethren of Gratz 2 Towne in Styria, having bene dispoiled of their goods by Sigifmond, defired ayde of them of Zurich, who had receyued them into the number of their Burgeffes. Then the Switzers went and affaulted Winterduer, tooke Rasperwell, Diessenow, Frawenfeld, and Turgaw. In the end, peace was made. Anno 1460 by the meanes of Lewes Duke of Banaria. Afterward in the yeare, 1466. certaine Articles of peace & mutuall amity, were fet downe in Writing. Two yeares after, war was renewed against the Duke of Austria, so that the Switzers led their troopes towardes the Towns of Mulhoufe, on the Frontiers of I a Franche Comté. This Town had made alliance with the Cantons fome moneths before: and in the same yeare, a Towne vpon the Rheine, neere to Bafile, named Waltzhut, was befiedged by the Swit-

In the yeare one thousand, foure hun-

ginning of scuenty seauen, by reason of

the Dukes death, who was flaine in Lor.

raine. The Princes of Austria were the

fparkes to kindle this war. For Sigifmond

Duke of Austria, having ill performed

his businesse in warre, which he main sai-

nedfolong a time against the Switzers,

was confrained to agree with them, al-

though much against his minde. In the

meane while, to torment them by some

other meanes, he engaged those Landes

dred seventy foure, began the Switzers Warre of the warre against Charles Duke of Burgonyne. Switzers a-gainst the D. It grew hot, and wonderfull sharp, in the yeare feuenty fixe, for two battailes were of Burgundie. fought, in both which the duke was vanquiffied; but it tooke ending at the be-

which hee helde in La Franche Comne (as Montheliard and Bafile, neighbors to the Switzers) to Charles Duke of Bourgongn, file to the D. the most potent Prince of his time, ad- of Burgunde, uenturous, and of an high hand. Sigifmond perswaded himselfe, that (as manie times it fals out among neighbours) some difference would shortly grow betweene Duke Charles and the Switzers: for they had fent Ambassadours to the Duke, to pray him renew the ancient amity of the house of Bourgongne with the Switzers, and confirme the Articles of peace, not long before concluded with Sigismond, in so much as concerned the engaged countries. But the ambaffadors could neuer gaine accesse to the Prince, in regard of their hinderance by Hagenbach, chiefe Minion to the Duke of Bourgongne, and established Governor by him over those countries. This Hagenbach was the principall fire-brand wherby to kindle this war; for he gaue many outragious words vnto ding on Printhe Switzers. & daily kept company with css. are often theyr enemies as Heudorff Eptinger, and times fire. fome other Gentlemen, who had threatned the Switzers with war. Hee tyranized also cruelly in those paw-

ned countries, fo that the poore subjects who vvere able to performe no more, intreated most earnestly Duke Sigismond, their ancient Lord, to difingage them,& receive them againe under his governement. This request was quickly granted them by Sigismond, a Prince verie benigne, and (for his facility) fir-named the firmance the

Simple.

But the Duke of Bourgongne defired not to purffe the money againe. And on the other fide, the tiranny of Hagenbach fill increased, so that hee grevy insupportable to the people, & neighboring lords. There were fome other thornes between the Switzers and the D.of Bourgongne: The Switzers because Count Ramons being fernant vnto of oppretion. him, had fent away divers chariots from them, laden with Hides. In the mean vvhile King Lewes the elementh, vvho de= fired not greatly the Dukes life, and had prooued (necre to Bafile) the valour of the Switzers horsemen, made alliance with them. And although himfelf would not meddle with the warre, yet he could whet on the Switzers, and (by vaderhand trickes) furnish them with money, to the end that necessity should not inforce any pacifi-

bule their

Harred& enmity of great

That Duke fir peror and the Germaines: turned all his named the Terrible,felte forces youn the Switzers , and theyr Alat length the trueth of this fentence; Shame & derudion doe alwaies follow after pride .

pacification. He accorded Sigifmond likewife with the Switzers and made an Alliance betweene them. Soone after Rene Duke of Lorraine, Strasbourg, and Bafile, with theyr Bythoppes; Golmar, Selestad, Montbeliard, and some other cities, joyned themselves likewise into this confederacy.

appertained to him, and therefore plan-

ted his fiedge before Nuff, about Cologne.

The Emperor Fredericke, accompanyed

with the Empires forces, encamped nero

vnto him, to fight with him. And, accor-

ding to right and maiefty of the Empire,

fent vnto the Switzers and their confede-

rates, to affault (on their fide) the Duke

of Bourgongne, that his forces might be

broken and scattered & But immediately

after, hee shewed himselfe to bee of the

house of Austria, and (consequently), an

enemy to the Cantons. For fo foone as

the Switzers were entered into Bour-

gongne, and had won a battel, and taken

fome Townes, hee made peace with the

Duke of Bourgongne, wherein the Prin-

ces of the Empire were comprized, and

the Townes which had fuccored the Em-

perour in this warre. But the confederats

were excluded, to wit, Duke Sigifmond,

Duke René, the Cantons, and the forenal

Duke Charles, beeing deliuered from

There were some encounters on

the warre which he had against the Em

either fide : but the very greatest effortes

and valour, shewed themselves in three

battailes, whereat the Duke himfelf was

present in person. The first was fought at

Granfon, necre to the Lake of Ynerdun.

which (at this day) is called the Lake of

Newcastle. This Towne had bene taken

by the Switzers, and restaken againe by

them vpon composition : neuerthelessel

med Townes.

Hagenbach bad the wages villany and op pression: & fo may all other fpeede, that a.

Chap. 7.

Souldiers of his Garrison but (soone after) heo received wages answerable vnto his owne perfidie and cruelty, the Switzers ouercomming him in a fielde of battaile. True it is, that then he loft not many of his men, for the Canalerie fuffay- fought at tied, and meerely courred the Infantery Granfon, During this time, Hagenbach was taken in a place named Brillac, and the D. beeing broken and difordered, and the due vitto his of Austria having configned the money Switzers had not their Horfemen there. at Bafile, for which hee had engaged his because they came not at a convenient countries, re-entred upon poffession of time: yet notwithstanding, the Duke of them, and (by fentence) caused Hagen. Bourgongne lost his baggage, wherein bach to be condemnd, and his head pubhee had great flore of Riches and Treslikely finiteen off. Contrarywise, Duke Charles made warre vppon the bythop of Then afterwardes, there was another Cologne, pretending, that the Prouoftes Office, or protection of the Bythopprick

battaile fought at Morat, necre to Berne: The battell the Switzers (after a great ouerthrow of fought at Motheir enemies) wonne the day, and it is fayde, that eighteene thousand Bourguignens lay flaine in the fielde; and to this day, there is still to be seene huge heapes of dead mens bones, as a credible Testi-

the Duke of Bourgongne (contrarie to)

mony of that victory.

The third battaile, was fought before The banell Nancy in Lorraine, befiedged by the duke of Bourgongne: but the Switzers fant in Charles of fuccour vnto the Dake Rene of Lorraine, Burgundie (who had fixe hundered men at Armes) well neere all Frenchmen well prouided) eight thousand foot, and the other confederates three thousande more. With all these forces Duke Rene gaue battell to Charles, who had many more to attend him: neuertheleffe, he was ouercome, & (in flight)flaine by the Switzers, and fo (with him) dved all this warre. A yeare after, the Switzers paffed the " Leopantine | "Lepontii Alps, which mountaine is now called S. Godard, & went to give battell to the D. the Salati. of Millain in a place named Jornico. The occasion of the war, was, because the inhabitants of the valley towardes for mice. fibiects to the Canton of Vri complaind of divers outrages doone them by theyr neighbours, who mollesters and troubled them in the vse and possession of certaine kenby the Forrests. The Switzers Ambassadours, Switzers, abeing vitable to reconcile this difference, sainft the D. of Millaine. the men of Viv. craued fuccour of theyr. confederates, and ledde their Armie to Bellizona. 11 But because they could not befiedgait in regard of the winter: they lefte fixe hundered men in Gartifon at tornico, which is not farre from thence

his promise) hanged and drowned the

reople of the

Thefe

concluded on

They of Mil-

laine goe a-gainst the Switzers, and

a battaile is tought.

Pope Sixtus

allyeth with

the Switzers,

& gives them

large pardons

These two places are vpon the Telinus, a River passing thwart the Lake Major, and So goes to Paula.

The Millaineles came in great troops, to fet vpon the Garrison of the Switzers, which being thur vo in the straites of the Mountaines: the more foeedily and easily flew fourteene hundred of them, and chased the rest quite out of the Valley. This battaile was fought about the third day of November . 1478. And in the Moneth of December following, by the intermife of the King of France, peace was made betweene the Duke of Millaine, & the Switzers. In the fame yeare, Pope Sixtus made alliance with the Switzers, and beside other priniledges, he gaue the alfo strong pardons. Two yeares after, the Switzers fent feuen thousand men, to aide King Lowes the eleventh, according to the tenour of the alliance before contracted. But they having paffed fo farre as Chaalous, the King (who had obtained the height of his enterprise) having then no occasion elsewhere to imploy them; fent them backe againe with very good recompences: where-with many of them were for carneftly allored, that they strong among themselves, who should first take penfions or wages of the French.

The yeare after, they of Zurich, Berne,

Lucerna, Friboury, and Solleurres made a

The feedes of warre anions the Switzers, quite (mothered by means of a Hermit.

particular alliance, because they conceined that their affociates had carried thefelues inhumanely on their behalfe, in the war against the Duke of Bourgongne. For the forenamed citties and townes had hin at great charges, as well for conduct of their victuals, as also the carriage of the Artillery: moreover, they turnifhed more people, then the other canrons did. Neuertheleffe, when they fhold divide the spoile and boory, which was! very great and rich; the cantons that had defraied nothing, neither brought any fuch number of then, tooke their part of the booty by equal portion. In regard of which injury (as they pretended it) and some other hight offences sthese circ ties and towner, eleftring to prouide pareicularly for elicir owne affaires; allied themselves anely together. But the other cantons were heereat greatly offended. especially, they of Viri, Suites, and Vaderwald: maintaining, that it was not law-

full for the Lucernians, to make any new alliance without their knowledge and ം ക്രാം ക്രാംഗത്ത് confent.

This matter was debated divers daies together, in a Councell holden at Stantz in Vnderuald; and finally by the meanes of an Hermit, named Nicholas of Vaderwald (who was then in verie great autho- by the Hemin rity among the Switzers, by they refolued opinion of him, that hee was a holie man) the parties were accorded to conditions, to witte; That the fore-named Townes should depart from that nouell alliance, and altogether (by a common confent) should agree on causes then debated; as that Pribourg and Solleurre, should bee received into the number of the Cantonnes of Swetta, fo that there should be tenne Cantons: And because the former eight (which were and are called the olde Cantons, because they allyed themselves together before the other) had made a bodie of a Commonwealth together of the Switzers; for the space of lixe score and fine yeares. or thereabout in I will heere for downe a Summarie of the articles of the alliances which those olde Cantons made, and of that which was subscribed yord at Stant z. by a common confent among the Cantons. a mode of a service of

and their bridge A briefe Shamary of the Alliances and Confederations made betweene the 8. Ancient Cantons 1 in of Swetia.

a legali sar

the principall & first Chapter or Article of the leagues the aide and succour which one ought to give another, public affair pub

against such as wrongfully shall affayle them: wherein all thinges are veric well ordered, govierned by equity, and according to reason. Por, to the end that no warre may be lightly mooned, and vpon finall or flender occasions; It is first of all ordained that the Cantons which are offended, shall make knowne the merite of the cause to the Councell in generall for that Canton established. And then, if it do appeare, that offence and out rage is done, it may demaund succour and afChap.7.

Concerning'

Euery Can-

In fome other alliances, namely, that of Glaris, this knowledge is deferred to

Vri,Suits, and Vnderuald.

The Lucerni

All the Cantons have no their rights

he alliance of other allyed Cantons . After that the equity of the cause hath appeared. & the ourrage received: the Canton interreffed, may require the Confederates to come and helpe it. In the interim, the Caton may not make recourse to whom it liketh best; but onely to that which is ton is not alliallyed to it in some especiall manner. For (as I have hitherto thewne) every one of the Cantons is not allyed with all the other. In the first place, concerning them of Zurich, allyed by antiquity with fix of the cheefest Cantons; they may demand ayde of all those fixe. Since then, they made alliance with them of Berne:and fo (by consequent) they are bound likewise to give them assistance, being therto required. The Bernishmen may call vnto their assistance, them of Vri, Suites, and Vnderuald, by reason of ancient alliance: and they (reciprocally) may cal to their ayde, and for their other confederats the Canton of Berne. But by reason of the new league, they of Zurich and Berne, must require ayde one of another. The Lucernians (in times of hecessitie) may haue recourse to the men of Zurich, Vri, Suits, Vinderuald, and Zug. They of Vri, Suits, and Vndernald, may call all the other Cantons. And they of Zug haue the fame right as the Lucernians, that is, to

> Now, although that all haue not their rights alike heerein; yet notwithstanding if one Canton require one or two of his allies to come and fuccour him: all the Cantons must affemble together, because they which are first called, shall give aduertisement to the other. But, aboue all things, they shal fend their Ambassadors to the Chappell of the Hermitage, or to a place named Kienholtz, and if question bee made of an acte, which concerneth themen of Berne; they must aduise altogether (by all meanes) to appeale the difference in friendly manner, or according vnto right, or (if it may not fo bee done) how they may affuredly gine fuc-

charge put in age.

require aide from the Cantones of Zu-

rich, Vri, Suits, Vnderuald, and Lucerna.

They of Glaris, have recourse vnto the

Cantons of Zurich, Vri, Suits, & Vnder-

cour. Their alliance speaketh expresse- | No trand or ly, that fuch as are called voto affiftance, thall not vie any fraude or deceit, neither / fuecour any frinolous or vaine excute, but to affift with all their power.

And because it may so happen, that a Canton shall bee so sodainly assayled at Canton shall bee vnawares, as the enemy may floppe all be todainly of the paffages, and fo (by confequent) the fulled by the Canton can compasse no meanes of cra- enemie, and uing fuccour, neyther by Letters or Am- | when no help baffages. For this it is provided and expressely ordained, that in such a case, and when most neede is of speedyest helpe;al the confederate Cantons, shall affist with all their forces, euen as if they had beene (by name) called thereto. In the alliance with them of Berne, it is ordained; That if the enemie affault the higher countrie, the confederates shall make spoile on the other, vpon the Landes of the enemie: thereby to scatter his forces. And the fame to bee done in the higher countreys if the enemie intrude vppon the lower.

Aide on they
They that are called to fuccour, shall own expuse,
come at their owne expences, and without any wages. Onely in the alliance of wages, or elfe what wages is Berne, with Vri, Suites, and Vnderuald, what wages is to be received mention is made of Wages, Namely, of a Sol Tournois (each day) for eueric man on foote. Neuerthelesse, if the Warre be in the countrey of Ergow, then they of Berne shall pay nothing. But there is a Village or Hamlet, necre vnto the first Lake of the River Ar, which is called Vnderfee beyonde which, fuch foote Souldiours as come to affift the one or other partie, shall receive that aforesaid Wa-

If the warre last of any continuance b and that they must befiedge and batter For a warre fome Towne, Village, or Caffle, and of long laftthe same is fully concluded and agreed ing, and befie vppon, by common confent and aducer sing Townes, of the Cantones: then that Canton, or Caffles. in whose fauour, and on whose limites, the Towne or Castle of the Enemie is befiedged, shall pay onely the charge and expences, as well for munition, pouder, conuoy of Artillerie, Pionners, as all other things necessarie and requisite in a batterie . Neuerthelesse, if the Warre bee vndertaken, not onelie in the name of one caton, but y vnder name of the Switzers whole Commonwealth: other many to Y2

vied in giuing

then

A particular mbination of tome Cantons by themfelues from the reft.

Of wrong

whole Nati-

on, or in par-ticular in pla-ces farre di-

Orders for

the Soldiou

of the Swire

zers.

then they shal every one pay their shares

hended on the lands of one of the Cantons: hand shall be laid on them, & they haue offended. Finally to preuent & hinther they lift: in many alliances, the licour other, are prescribed and determi-

The fecond Article concerneth put like contro. uerfics.

Iudges chofe define varia tions, and a Supetarbitra tor added to them.

Likewise it comes to passe many times, that some such as dwel far off from Swetia, doth offer wrong to the whole Nation, or to one part in particular; in the meane time, no knowledge is had how to purfue this warre, evther because the enemy is too farre distant, or keepeth no certaine abiding, where he may bee dealt withall. For fuch it is ordained that any alliance or confederacie, without if (by any occasion) they, their goods, or any of their complices can bee appreconstrained to satisfie them whom they der that none shall abuse or be abused by the Switzers Soldiers, leading them whemits wherein some stand bound to sucned. The limits are partly to the Cantons confines, according to their extendure foorth, or a little more further out : but they may not passe the ancient bounds of

The second Chapter or Article, is touthing publike differences or controuerfies, between two Cantons or more. Forasmuch as it cannot be otherwise, but the very best friends and confederates, may fometimes have cause to dislovne & sunder: our predecessors did denise, to stay the confequence of fuch differences, to wit that no warre should follow, as fearing lefte alliance and kindnesse might thereby perish, & vtterly be broken. First then it is ordained, that the other Cantons shall send their Ambassadours, to take order, that the variance may amiably be ended, or according to right, and it is established to be administred in manner following. Each party shall chuse two Judges of his owne Canton, to whom they thall promife by oath, that without any affection or lone to their country, they will judge on the difference. To thefe foure Judges, a fift must bee added, named Vnipire or Superarbitrators who to maintenance & confernation of peace is elected fometimes by the Iudges, and and quietnesse. There is one for the put fometimes by the parties. If the one canton will not vndergo judgement, nor fuffer his right to bee examined: the other cantons stand bound by alliance, to succour him that confents, that the contro-

uersie should bee ended by the Arbitra-

The third Chapter or Article, concerneth alliances. The foure first Cantons do determine, that it is not lawfull for a- alliances, and ny one among them (without the will & beginning with the four confent of the other; to bind themselues by Oath, or make alliance with any, whofocuer it is . Likewife, in the alliance of Glaris, it is faide, that they may not make confent of the other Leaguers. For otherwise the other Cantons may referue to themselves, the liberty and authoritie of making new alliances, yet leaving (in meane while) the ancient stil in ful force. They kept also the freedome, for increafing and diminishing their alliances, by augment and a publike and common consent. And ordained in like manner, that these allianand alliance. ces might bee renewed by writing, or by word of mouth, and to bee confirmed by Oath, if neede required, from fine or ten to an hundred yeares. If this might not bee done commodiously, yet notwithstanding, they were to be observed firm-

In the fourth place, are added excepti- The fourth ons, because certaine Cantones, which Articleses anciently did concerne the Empire; as Lurich, Berne, Vri, Suites, and Ynderuald, obscurdin excepted the Empire, and the rightes the alliances thereof, from which they pretended no derogation by this alliance, in any manner whatfoener.

Lucerna and Zug, excepted the rites of the Duke of Austria. By the alliance of Glaris, are excepted all rights and deuoires due vnto lawfull Lords and Magistrates. Likewise, in all these confederations, are excepted the ancient alliances, rights, priniledges, and customes of the Cantons, together with their Castles, Villages, and Hamlets: fo that those rights remaine found and intire to everie

Now, although the other Chapters and Articles are not of any such importance; yet notwithstanding, they tend micide and nishing of homicides or Men-killers . heiss of ot-Hee that killeth any one of the Con-fence. federates. Thall loofe his head, except hee can make good proofe, that hee did it in defence of his owne bodie, and for

first Cantons

Concerning debts,pawnes

ding to the a-

ward and cen

Chap.7.

Matters too largely dila-ted, do mani times breed

The Tenor of the Arrest or Agreement made at Stantz.

The first Article is for pa-cification of wars that may happe among the Cantons and of differences betweene parti-

cular perform

Irft, we ordaine, that no one this we obtaine; that no one of the eight Cantons, either of the eight Cantons, either thall enterprize to make war on any one of the faid Cantons.

tons, or any other loyned there-with in this alliance. Neither thal offer anywrong

fafery of his life. Who focuer (halbe conto their bodies, goods. Townes, Coundemned and banished from his Canton. shall stand banished and excluded also from the countries of the other Catons: and wholocuer lodgeth or assisteth anie fuch person, shall be guilty and punished

in some other nature. There is another Article, which prohibiteth the exacting or vrging of names to wit, if any Lay-man attempt to pay himselfe in his debtes. by the name or meanes of Judges of the Church: onely causes Matrimoniall, and manifest Vsury, are to be referred, and fent to the Court for the Church. No man shall exact a pawne of any one, except of his debter, or him that flandeth pledge for him Neither thall he receive pawnes of his owne prinate authority, but by confent of the ludge. No one shall engage himselfe for another man.

Concerning judgements, it is orday-Of judgments ned, that each man may have, & affigne his Judge. He that shall not appeare according to the affignation, but falleth into default, and interreffeth the contrarie party by his absence, shall pay his charges. Causes shall be pleaded in the Audience Hall of the Canton, where the acte makes mention of the deed doing. Iuflice is to be done without fraude or deceite. And euerie man shall content him in the Citties, Townes, or Countries of fent of the felfe with the indgements, Lawes, and customes of the Canton, where his cause is pleaded.

Although that these Articles, and other fuch like, may feeme to bee of fmall consequence: yet notwithstanding, because thereby (oftentimes) great debates do arife, yea, warres with our alliances. in discouring them distinctly & at large, it contents me (for mine owne part) that I have thus breefely & fummarily tought them.

treyes, or people, nor robbe or defpoile them of any thing to them appertaining. If any one of the eight Cantons (hall do otherwife (which God forbid) and ontrage any of the other. To the end it may bee remedied, and order given that our alliance may remaine firme, fo that wee may line together in peace like Bretheren : all the other Cantons shall ranke themselves with that which is offended. and conferne the rights thereof, in good faith, and without any fraud. And if fome particular person, or many together, hal doe wrong or injurie voto fome other particular body: that then speedily, and without any contradiction, they shall be chastised by their Magistrate (in vyhat place focuer it is) according to the quality of the offence, and as they have deferued. Neuertheleffe, if any one shall Of insolencommit fuch infolences upon the iurifdiction of another, and moue it to be trou- nidictions of bled, answere may bee made him in the other men. very fame place, and he inftly punished, according to the right and cuftom of the country. Secondly we fay, that hence forward, concerneth

none shall attempt to make anie affem- affemblies or bly, and therein to purpose anie thing Conuenticles whatfocuer (cirher fecretly or publikely) ledge & con-

Magiftrate.

Swetia, whereby any damage or danger may enfue, without making it first knowen, and with the confent of the Lordes of that Canton. Whofoeuer fwerueth. and endeuoureth to make any fuch affem bly, or shall fattour it, either by worde or deede, shall bee chastised by the Magiftrate, according to the exigence of the act, and that without the least hindrance or delay.

In like manner, and by common con- For disobedifent, we expressely ordaine, that (honour traces, or inand oath referred) it shall not be lawfull fringing their for any one, to encite the subjects of any orders and do Canton, to do any thing derogatorie, to the obedience due to the Magistrate, or moone the people to any disobedience or revolt. And if the subjects of any one of the Cantons, shall bee rebellions against the commandements thereof that then the other Cantons thall fuccour it faithfully, and reforme those subjectes to their duties, according to the agreement of our alliances.

Υ3

Thirdly.

The reason of

agreement fo

Fribourg and

The third Ar ticle concerneth the Military discipline of the Cantons, answera. ble to that of Sempach.

of Sempach, our Ancestors resolued vppon some ordinances, concerning matter of warre: it feemed good to vs. to explicate in this agreement, that which is perpetuall, even the principall Article of those ordinances, and in regard of our felues and our fucceffors, to fet it downe as followeth. If one Canton or more, do bring an Army into the field, marching with colours displayed against the enemy: all they that march vnder those colours, must continue together for the fight, as honest men ought to do. And according to the example of our Anceftours, what necessity foeuer is enforced. beit to fight in ranged battaile, in skirmith, or otherwise, how thort or long tocuer the time be: it is to be carried according to the orders Military, made after the day of Sempach.

The fourth Article con cerneth mat ters of contracts paffed long ago by our Ancestors

For yong me and they of vnder age.

The fift Arti cle concerneth booties conquered i warre,& the ranfomes of priioners,

Thirdly, because that after the battell i

In the fourth place, we have ordained that those contracts passed long time fince, by our Ancestours, as concerning Ecclefiafticall persons, and other things, in the years, one thousand, three hundred and fenenty; shall bee observed inuiolably firmly, and from point to point. And to the end, that the memory thereof may be perpetuall, at al fuch times as our alliances may be renewed by oath those two transactions and ordinances, concerning affaires of warre and Ecclefiaflicks, together with this amiable agreement, shall be publikely read, among and with the Articles of alliances. But to the end, that yong men, and they of meaner yeares also, may the better remember our alliances, and observe them the more faithfully; we have agreed, that heereafter (from fine yeares to fine yeares) the alliances shall be renewed throughout all the Cantons, by oath, which shall bee gi-

Finally, we have accorded, that when any warre happeneth, all the booty conquered from the enemy, and those sums payed by prisoners for their ransomes: shall be distributed (by equall portions) among the number of Soldiers, which the Cantons or Townes have in the Army. But the Citties, Townes, Castles, Countries, passages, anuall reuenewes, iurifdictions, and other things of the fame nature, though conquered in warre, (hall be equally parted or divided among the

uen for this effect.

Cantons, according to their ancient custome. If we permit any of these things to be bought or folde to any; the money paide, or arifing thereby, shall be distributed among the Cantons by equall porti-

We have determined and published this louing agreement, and in this manner, that all fuch as haue or shall carry making and Armes with vs, all Subjects, cirtizens, in- publishing habitants, confederates, and parties joyned with vs, may have their just portion generally a in the booties. But as for Cities, Towns, Caffles, Countries, men, reuenewes yearly, jurisdictions, ports, and conquered passages: fuch things doe belong to the Cantons onely. We make exception in this accord, of our perpetuall alliances. intending that nothing thereof shall bee infringed ; but that this prefent transaction shall be inviolably maintained, yea. faithfully and without any fraud, for the confirmation and manutention of our alliances.

This Arrest was ratified with the confent of all in the years, 1481, in the house for particular alliances of our Townes: And by common accord, they of Pribourg and of Solleurre, were received into the number of the Cantons. And then the number of the common-wealth of the Switzers (for making them the space of twenty yeares) stood compofed of ten Cantons, whereto confequently, Bafile and Schaffouze, and then Appenzell were added. But before we fpeake of their alliances, wee must say somewhat

as concerning Fribourg and Solleurre: then will we fummarily declare. what they did after their receiving into alliance.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Towne of Fribourg; who was the first Founder thereof: And how it came into league and alliance with the Cantons.



Chap.8.

Ribourg is a Towne, feated vpon the Riuer of Sana, builded by Berthoull, fourth of that name, Duke of Zermgen, sonie sew yeares before Berne. These two Townes maintai-

ned themselues long time in amity: but after the Dukes death, Berne became fubiected to the Empire, and Fribourg fell into the hands of the Counts of Aybourg, that dwelt at Bourgdorff, which was the cause, that (by succession of time) they for fook their affection to them of Berne. First of all, they were present in the warre with Godfrey, Count of Kybourg, against the Bernians. Soone after, their friendthip was renewed againe, but yet with this exception, that if the Lords of Fribaurg were at discord with Berne, the Fribourgers might follow their Lords part, without any prejudice to that louing accord. Some fhort while after, the Count folde



The diners

deportments

and carriage

of the Fri-



Fribourg to Raoul, King of the Romanes, and from thence forward, about the space of two hundred years it remained under the dominion of Austria. During which time, the

Fribourgers beeing conducted and commanded by them of Austria, were prefent in many fought battailes, giuento the Bernians at Loupen, at Schonenberg, and elsewhere. Againe, afterward they renewed (divers times) their ancient alliance and amity, with the men of Berne.

In the yeare 1403. after they had bin tormented (in many kindes) by Noblemen, they contracted a perpetuall allimade beance with the Bernians: and yet notwithweene the Fribourgers standing, continued subjects to them of and the men Austria. This amity endured forty fine of Berne.

yeares, at the end whereof, warre being inoued betweene the Prince of Sanoye, and the Frihourgers: they of Berne followed the faction of the Prince of Sauoye, to whom they had beene allied, and flood friends a long time. There were fome courses on cyther side, and a battaile fought neere to Griertz, wherein the Fribourgers had the worft. The yeare after, the Ambaffadours to the King of France, of the Duke of Bourgongne, and of the Cantons, made a peace. And the yeare following, Albert of Austria being come to Fribourg; fome certaine men of The enemies the Towne complotted with him, to of peace put themselues make warre vpon the Bernians. Matters formoft into grew on fo forward, that there was fome the greatest apparance of fedition, and one was ready to run vpon another if the men of Berne (by a fingular providence and addresse)

had not appealed the commotion, by the fending of their Ambaffadors. Albert perceiuing that Fribourg fa-

uoured the Cantons, and leaned to that fide, and that the citizens, who enjoyed the priviledges of their Ancestors, obey- he should Albert feeing ed not entirely to whathe commanded lote Fibourg them, and that oftentimes (according to before he could quit it. their alliance) they followed them of takeththe Berne, and went in warre with the Can- latter hand tons: he began to lofe all hope of remaining any longer Master of the Towne. For this cause, the cheefe Master of his houshold came to Fribourg (fent by the Prince as fome fay) where he caused instantly to be noyfed through the Towne; that the Prince wold very fuddenly come

the filuer Vessels, Tapistries, and such like costly mooncables, to adorne that house in the Towne, where it was faide that the Prince thould alight and lodge. But (by vnder-hand meanes) the Mafter of the houthold, caused those goods to be fecretly transported out of the towne. The day beeing come, of the Princes

thether, how foone he knew not. Heere-

vpon, he borrowed and got together, all

appointment to be there, he rode foorth with his horsemen, as it were to meet his Mafter, accompanied with the worthieft Mafter of the men of the Towne. Being farre enough off, no Prince came; but only fuch horfemen as he had fent before, to attend the Master of the housholde, and the charge he had . When they were come into a place of fecurity, he faide to them of Fri-

tricke of the household.

There is no-

thing gained

by goods ill

gotten, and lofing the

harts & obe-

dience of ful

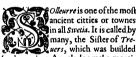
nour the Prince, that for the confidence they reposed in their league made with the men of Berne, and combined amity with the Cantons: they were rebels to the Prince, and therefore it stood with reason and instice, that the Prince should get what he could from them: as namely, the filuer veffels, and the other goods brought from the Towne.

Speaking these words, hee galloped away with his traine to meete the Prince with the spoiles of Fribourg. But the cittizens, beeing thus vnworthily handled, made a far stricter alliance with the Bernians, and joyned themselves also with the confederates, vpon certaine conditions. So that during the watre against the Duke of Bourgongne, the Cantons fent a thousand men for Garrison into Fribourg. And the Fribourgers likewise, were present in the battailes with their confederates, against the Duke of Bourgongne carrying themselves very valiantly in that warre. Afterward, they were receiued (with them of Solleurre) into the nuber of the Cantons, as heereafter we shall tell you.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Citty of Solleurre, being one of greatest name in Swetia.

The originall and antiquity



(as the ancient Annals doe make mention) in the time of Ninus. The olde Romane inferiptions, which are yet to bee feene at Solleurre, do testifie the antiquity of the citty. But by the warres and courfes of the Allemaignes, Hunnes, and Franconians in Gaule, vpon the declination of the Romane Empire; Solleurre was ruined, as many other citties and townes were in like manner. But after that the Franconians became Lords & Masters, it was rebuilded, and yeelded in subjection to the Bishop of Geneua. For it is faid, that in the Church or Temple of S. Vic-

bourg, who rode in his company to ho- | tor, neere to Geneua, these words are found written.

> Acta sunt hac regnante Domitiano, Episcopo Geneuensi quo tempore etiam Castrii Salodorense Episcopatus Geneuensi subditum erat drc.

> Thefe things were made and done, in the time of Domitian, Bishop of Geneua: during which time, the Castle of Solleurre was subject to the Bishop of Ge-

In the times of the Allemaigne or Ger- Solleure mane Emperors Solleurre was daily num-numbred abred with the Imperial cities & townes: mong the Imperial cities. vet (notwithstanding) in such fort, as the colledge of the chanons enjoyed the principal priviledges and franchifes. And it is faide, that they have the fame rights as the chanons of Zurich.

The Dukes of The Dukes of Suaba were Pro- The Dukes of Suaba, Go uofts or Gouer- uernors of nours of this citty, Solleure, as likewife of other Imperiall towns in Swetia. They of Solleurre (in annci-

ent times)made an alliance with the Bernians, I cannot well tell in what yeare; but fince that time, the two citties have borne good and loyall amity together. And (almost) in all the warres the Bernians had: the men of Solleurre cuermore succoured them with happy successe.

Vpon the contention moued betweene Lewes of Bauaria, and Fredericke of Au- The menof frea, which should be Emperor of them Solleurreex both: they of Solleurre tooke part with communication Lewes, by which occasion, the Pope excommunicated them, and then they were king part with the rule afterward befiedged by the Duke of Aufria: But they of Berne sent them foure Emperor. hundred men for their Garrison. Moreouer, they had warre against the Count of Kybourg, who wonne a battaile of the, by treason of one of their cittizens. Finally in the yeare, one thousand, three hundred, fifty and one, they made a perpetuall alliance with them of Berne, & continued alwayes good friends with the other Cantons. So that after the warre of Austria, wherein Leopold was flaine; they made peace and alliance with the house

Their receiuing into the number of the

of Austria. But it was ypon those same | dred & ninety, another civill warre kindconditions, that the other Cantons, with whom they were joyned in letters and contracts of alliance; by generall and common aduice, should establish and sweare them together in the Military ordinances. Then after that the war against the Duke of Bourgongne was ended, wherein they deliuered true testimony of proweffe and valour, in the judgement of all men; they were accepted and receiued (with them of Fribourg) into the nuber of the Cantons.

Chap. 10. Of the Svvitzers conquest of Naples.

CHAP. X.

Of the Switzers wars against them of Millaine; against the Venetians; and at the conquest of Naples.



Var made by

against the

Succour Cent

against the

Venetlans.

They ferued the King of

France for

pay,in many

HE men of Fribourg and of Solleurre, being admitted Into ranke with the Cantons; the Switzers made

these warres ensuing. In the yeare, one thousand, fourehundred, eighty and seuen; Justus de Sillim, Bithop of Sion, leuied an Army of Valachians and Switzers, which he led beyond the Alps. against the Duke of Millaine. But the iffue of that voyage was vnfortunate, because the Duke ouerthrew them: so that they were enforced to returne home againe to their owne houses, after they had loft very many of their men.

The yeare following, the Switzers fent fuccour (according to the tenour of their alliance) to Sigifmond, Duke of Aufria, against the Venetians. And then afterward, they were in pay with the King of France, Charles the eight, who had renewed the alliance, which his Father made with the Switzers. They were first in Bretaigne, where the King won a great victory against the Duke, at Saint Aubip. Then againe in Italy, when Charles conquered the kingdome of Naples, And at Fornoite, when heegane battaile to the Princes of Italy, that were leagued against him . In all these warres, the Swiezers did good and faithfull feruice vare the King.

In the yeare, one thousand, foure hun-

led it selfe in Swetia. The Abbot of S. Gall had begun to build a new Abbey at Rofack. The cittizens of S. Gall, they of Ap- Strife about penzell, and the subjects to the Abbot resigues of S. (partly moved by a kinde of denotion, as Gall, & the vnwilling that the bones and reliques of building of a S.Gall, (hould be carried any where elfe: and partly also for their owne profit, fearing lefte the packs of linnen cloth(which grew to great gaine among them) ihould be transported to Rolack conspired together, and at vnawares, went out in Arms, and ioyning together in troopes, went to beate downe the new building, which was not (as then) fully finished. The Abbot not a little moued with this injury, craveth aide called the foure Cantons, wherto he was allied to aide him. The fixe other Cantons, mediatours for peace, exhorted the of S.Gall, to decide this difference with the Abbot, by course of right in law. But because the confederates alledged, that great wrong was done them, in building a new Abbey, and (by that means) abolithing their ancient priviledges; therefore confequently, they had just occasion to vindertake Armes, and wold not have it debated in inflice. The foure Cantons with some other people of their allies, dertaken of brought their troopes to Turgan: but this warre was appealed without blowes. For first of all, they of Appenzell made peace with the Switzers, who took from them the Valley of Rherusce. Then afterward, the citty of S. Gall being beliedged, peace was made betweene the cittizens & the Switzers , by the means of George, Count of Sargans, Gaudentius, Count of Metich, and the Lords of Constance. A war ended, In like manner, the subjects to the Abbot were reconciled, after each one had

paide his fine. Some (hort while after, followed the last warre against the house of Austria, The last war which the Switzers called, the warre of sunfaithe Found of Author the Emperor Frederick did forcast firs, tearmed the freds abroad, but after his death, his the war of Sonne and Successor Maximillian, gathered them together. Fredericke had procuned, that certaine Princes, Lords, and Townes should make an alliance, which they tearmed. The great league of Suabu; and (among other matters) to opprefferespecially (as was conceined) the liberties of the Switzers. The Emperour

of foure Can

The war vn-

and neuer a

Solleurre rebuilt and Subjected to the Bifhop o Geneua.

Chap. 11.

was chiefe of this league, which was be- | dowicke Sforzza, Duke of Millaine, who neficiall to Germany in one kinde: for by that meanes, the wayes were more fafe & affured, thecues were taken and punished, and their castles and places of retreat beaten to the ground. There had beene (long time before) fome enmities betweene the Switzers, and some of their neighbours, vassails to the house of Au-

Day by day the fire lay kindling, and the Switzers suffered insupportable iniuries and outrages. On the other fide, they of Austria greened the Grisons with nouell charges, and had cast them out of their ancient possessions in some pla-

Vpon this occasion, and to prouide for their owne security, against the violence of their enemies; the Switzers and the Grisons made a perpetuall league toge-

Moreouer, King Lewes the twelfth, desirous to recouer the Duchy of Millaine, which he anouched to belong vnto him: purchased the amity and alliance of the Switzers, who in fuch a perillous time, thought good not to refuse it, neyther to let fo fit and apt occasion slippe

Many goings and commings were betweene them, to pacific this businesse, and the parties on eyther fide took arms, in the yeare, one thousand, foure hundred ninery nine. Many encounters they had in this warre, and the Switzers still remained victors: except once, when they were put into route, neere to Con-

But they recovered their honour againe the fame day, having freshly recollected their forces, and then giving battaile to the enemy, enforced him to forfake the place. Moreouer, they and the Grifons, in eight other as great encounters as skirmifnes had still the advantage: as at Mont de Luce, at Treife, Harden, Frafenz, on the plaine of Malfa, nere to Bafile, in the Forrest des Freres, in the vale of Leime; and laftly, at the Castle of Dornech, appertaining to them of Solleur-

They of Austria, beeing tired and foent with fo many loffes, came finally to a composition; by the intermise of Lo-

fent thether the Vicount Galeazzo. And Behold when fo peace was made, vpon this condition, gaines they that the liberties of the Switzers should be remained in their integrity, and they were confirmed in the possession of all those pless liberty. places which they had taken before from them of Austria. In like manner, the jurisdiction in criminal causes, at the command of Turgan, which they of Constance had enjoyed vntill that time, was given to the switzers.

Thus you fee the last warre (except that of the Grifons against Iohn laques de Medicis, Lord of Mus) that the Switzers had to this present time, to maintaine the liberties of their countries, against the violence and force of for-raigne Princes. They were afterward present in many other warres, and wonne well helpe, at ter long tolk renowne of beeing hardy and valiant and labour men : but those warres were made partly | Spentin war. in Italy, partly in France, vnder authority and command, eyther of the King of France, or of Popes, or of the Dukes of Millaine. For immediately after the peace made with them of Austria; the Vicount Galeazzo began to make fecretly a leuve of Switzers.

Contrariwife, the King of Prance demanded fuccour all openly, according to the tenour of the league, which was granted to him. Notwithstanding, contrary to the will and Edicts of the leagued Lords : Galeazzo enrolled fine hundred Switzers, by the aide of whom, together with an army of Lance-Knights, which he had got together, Duke Lodowicke recourred Millaine.

Soone after that the Frenchmen being come with a puissant Army to be-fiedge Nouara, the Switzers that were ingo Nouar then in Garrison, perceiuing it to bee a place not of defence, nor well munited, nor wherein they could any way relift the enemy; agreed to depart; and repaired home to their owne country. The Duke tooke the habite of a Switzer Soldiera and mingled himselfe among the restonely to escape: but happening to be knowne and discoucred, by a certaine man named Turman (who afterward was hewed in peeces) he was taken and led prisoner into Prance, and kept in the Castle of Loches. For the rest, they do Last to a market great

blemish a whole nation.

Alliances of

to the whole Nation, the faulte of one man onely. If they will charge all them that were with the Dake, because (maulgre his will) they composed with the French: yet (for all that) they must not couple the whole Nation of Switzers, with them in that action. Confidering, One mans of they that did the deede, were not fent by frace may not their Cantons, to fuccour Duke Sfor za; but followed his faction, against the Edicts of their Lords . Heereto may be added, that they appeared not to be partiall, or hare-braind in the busines, when they departed by composition.

In the same yeare, when these things were done beyond the Mountaines; Huldrich, Duke of Wirtemberg, made an alliance for twelve yeares, with the com-Princes made with the Switzers. In like manner, the Emperor Maximillian renewed the hereditary alliance made formerly by Duke Sigi (mond, with the cantons of Zurich, Berne, Vri, and Vnderuald. In the yeare, one thousand, fine hundred and one, two potent citties on the Rhine. namely, Bafile and Schaffouze, were joyned to the number of the Switzers can-

CHAP. XI.

Of the Citty of Basile, and diversity of opi nions, how it received that name : As alfo the originall and antiquity of the Cit-

*A people of Belgia, neere to the Kiuer

Opinions oncerning HE Citty of Bafile, capi-tall & cheefest in the coun-try of the * Rawratian's, is the very greatest of all the citties and townes in Swe-

tis. It is not knowne at what time it was first of all built. Amianus Marcellinus mal keth mention in his history of it, calling it Bafilia and testificth, that the Emperor Gratian crected a Fort lard by it to bridle the courses of the Allemanes. There are fome other, who do thinke that it tooke name of Bafilica, Mother to the Emperor Inlian. Phlegonius, the enfranchifed feruant of the Emperor Adrian, maketh

great wrong to the Switzers, that impute | mention of Bafilias in a little Tract which he wrote of admirable things, and of people that lived long: but it is not well knowne, whether hee meaneth this citty or no, whereof we now fpeake. But the opinion of them is most probable, that hold the citty of Balile to take name from one of the Romane Colonies, fent by Augustus into the country of the Raugacians, before named.

tv encreased the renowne thereof. And

as it is a neighbour to the Switzers, fo

hath it beene likewife very carefull for

maintaining it felfe in amity, long time

before it came to bee allied with them.

ance, and promife of mutuall fuccours

with them of the three first Cantons; and

afterward, in the yeare, 1 227, with Zu-

rich, Berne, and many other citties and

townes of Germany. In the yeare one

thousand, three hundred, forty five, they

made a particular alliance (for 2.yeares)

with them of Zurich, and then renewed

it for three yeares after. Againe, in the

yeare 1365. by the procurement of Lea-

engaged by the Bishop to the Duko of

Austria; would not submit themselves

wholly to his will.

perors. The Bithoppricke and Vniuerfi-

Of Bafile:

But Basile is in the number of the bredamong free citties of the thefree Cit-Empire, and hath mes of the obtained (for very Empire. long time) verie franke and liberall priviledges, from

the Romane Em-

For after the Pope had excommunicated The men of the Emperor Lewes of Banaria (in which Baile were frieed with case all Germany was combusted with the Switzers great troubles) they of Bafile made alli- a long time,

pold, Duke of Austria, an Army of Eng- Englishmen lishmen came and forraged the country invaded the of Halfatia, befiedged Strasbourg, and Halfatia,by threatned Bafile with the fame behautor. Duke Leobecause the cittizens of the lesser Basile, polds meanes

On the other fide, Bafile beeing not ftrong for refiftance of an enemy by reafon of an earth-quake, which had eaft downe the walles and many houses, and fire had confumed and done as great harne : Zurich, Berne, Lucerna, and Sollearne lent a frong Garrison to Basile : 10 rison tente that the Englishmen durft not besiedge Basile.

the citty, but retired thence, because the

a great leagu to oppresse of the Swit-

Diuers victo ries of the Switzers.

A league of the Switzers

and Grilons

against that

mies.

Chap.12.

No Boates &

ble to passe

the water at Schaffoule.

Concerning

the name of

Schaffouse.

for falt.

Katherine th Widdow to Duke Leo-

252

The Dolphi of France brought an Army into Germany.

The Basilians ioyne with the Switzers against the Duke of Au

War between the Emperor Maximillian, the Switzers and Grilons

an Army against them. In like manner, in the warre of them of Bafile, against Katherine of Bourgongne, the widdow of Leopold, in the yeare one thousand, foure hundred, and nine, the Bernians & they of Solleurre fent succour: the other Cantons imploying themselves carefully, to accord them with the house of Austria. Moreover, at the time of the councell of Bafile, when as Lewes the Dolphin of France, brought a great Army into Germany, to breake the councell, and made warre on the Switzers, by the instance & working of the Duke of Austria, who had procured him to come: the Switzers maintained and defended the citty and councell, against the encountering of a strange enemy; as an example very remarkable, it beeing not about fixteene yeares, fince they had coaped with great troops of the French, True it is that they all (well neere) loft their lines there : but yet they did so weaken their enemies troops, that he tooke part with the which fled fastest.

They being thus auoyded, the men of Bafile iovned their forces with the Switzers, and so made warretogether on the Duke of Austria. In like manner, when Charles, Duke of Bourgongne, made himfelfe fo terrible, and affrighted all the world, they of Basile ioyned in alliance (for ten yeares) with Strasbourg, and other citties on the Rhene. Afterward, with Sigismond, Duke of Austria; Rene, Duke of Lorraine, and with the Cantons. In this warre they shewed themselves both faithfull & valiant, for their confederates. Finally, a great warre being moued betweene the Emperour Maximillian, the Switzers and Grifons: they of Bafile remained neuters, without gluing fuccour to eyther fide, nor received their Garrifons ; but they furnished them both with victuals and munition. In this war there was a battaile giuen (almost) against the walles of Basile, afterward at Dorneck. where the Switzers wonne a faire victory ouer the enemies, whom they did beat backe to the gates of Basile. But during all this war, the cittizens of Basile fauoured equally both the one and other fide. To conclude, by the diligence of Lodonico Maria. Duke of Millaine, the Ambassadors on both fides met at Bafile, & peace

Emperor Charles the fourth, also broght | was made betweene the Emperour and the Switzers.

The Switzers allowed well of this expedient, in the men of Bafile during this and the Swin.
warre, and the Emperor Maximillian (for his part) feemed not to improdue it. But diffafte the the Noble-men, who were deadly enemies to the Cantons held Bafile (almost) Bafile in the in the ranke of a foe because the citty did warre. not then fhew it felfe openly, as an enemy to the Switzers; and not onely the fubiects to the house of Austria, but many more, who till then had beene cittizens with-drew themselues to the Count of Ferrara, and about Montbellard, into Hal-Satia, and to Brisgow, countries appertaining to them of Austria. Being in those places, they ceasifed not to outrage (both with words and deeds) the inhabitants of Bafile, who being moued with fuch indignities; the yeare after the war ended. to wit, one thousand, fine hundred and one; made a perpetuall alliance with the Cantons, and so were left in peace with their neighbours, who stood in awe of the Switzers fuccour.

CHAP. XII.

At what time Schaffouse was received into the number of the Cantons; and the antiquity thereof.



Chaffoufe, accepted the very fame yeare, to be numbered among the cantons, and females is not of fo great age and antiquity. It is feated on

11.18

the River of Rheine, within Germany, and yet notwithstanding, the Bridge is in Swetia. In the time of the Emperor Henry the third, the Counts of Nellenbourg builded there an Abbey, which standeth yet to this day, and it is thought, that it gaue a beginning to the cittle: as likewife the citties of S. Gall, Lucerna, and many more in Germany, have derived their original from Abbeyes. The Rheine is also another cause of the citties beyes. encreasing, continuing so for some thou-fand of yeares since, beneath the citty,

falleth downe from a very great height, with fuch a dreadfull novier and remounting vp againe into the ayre to vehemently, that it maketh there a cominual fogge or myst. And for this cause, and the vn-capablenesse of any Boats to passe there. all fuch as descend downe the Lake of Constance, and from Cella on the Rheine are constraind to discharge at Schaffould which hath beene conceined by many to give that name to the Citty, to wit of a Squiffe, or of a Boate, which the Germanes call Skiff, or Schiff, thence to bee tearmed Schaffouse. Neuerthelesse, the vulgar fort, taking vp a falle etymologye of the word Schaff, which fignifieth a Sheepe; have grounded their opinion. strongly thereon, and forged Armes also of the same nature. There is a great tole or custome gathered in this Citty, espe-A great Tolle or Custome cially for the passage of Sale: which appertained in ancient times, and before the foundation of the Citty, to two Noble Families, to wit, of Turn, and of Stad. which remaine yet to this day at Schaf-

Schaffoule at liberty at the first, but afterward allienated by the en

Schaffouse

fubicated to

Austria for 85



At the beginning,the principall dominion or fway of the City, belonged to the Abbot, who elected and chose one halfe of the Magistrates:but (by little) and little)

they exempted the-

felues from his gouernement, and obtained many good priviledges and franchifes of the Emperors. But Lewes of Bauaria (weakened by long warres) could not pay the Duke of Austria, such monies as he ought him according to an agreement made betweene them, which caused him to alienate and fell Schaffoufe, together with some other Townes, and so (by that meanes) it became difmembred from the Empire. After that time, Schaffoule remained subject to the Dukes of Austria, for the space of fourescore and fine years, euen vntill the councell of Constance: for then Fredericke of Austria, because hee brought Pope John the two and twentieth out of the councell, was banished by the Emperor Sigifmend, who caused him

wherewith it is (in a manner) enclosed. It / to bee so narrowly pursued, thar all his goods were partly pilled, and partly confiscated to the Empire, without any other meanes of lielpe.

In this warre, Schaffouse became revnited to the Empire, and the cittizens Schaffoule (having given a good fumme of money, to the Emperor) obtained great prituidedges vnder Letters patents: and therein uiledges grawas plainly expressed, that (thence forward) their Citty should not any more be alienated from the Empire. But Frederick the third, of the house of Austria, being Emperor : laboured to fubic@it againe, and that the citty of Schaffoule might remaine to his fucceffors. And therefore hee permitted Duke Sieismond, to compell the cittizens to fwcare fidelity to him; which they refused to doe, but with exception of their priviledges, and they would not receive the Princes Ambaffadors into the citty, but vppon that condition. Contrariwife, the Ambaffadors preffed them earneftly, to oblige themselves to the Prince, without any exception, and propounded certaine Articles for the maintenance whereof, they required oath: threatening the cittizens with very great harmes, if they would not yeelde to that which they demanded of

The men of Schaffonse, seeing the Ambassadors persist still in their opinion: to make good their owne part, received the Switzers Ambassadors into their cit. Schaffous, & ty, and made alliance (for fome yeares) with them, with them of Zurich, Berne, Lucerna, Suits, Zug, and Glaris, fo that the Ambaffadors of Austria returned backe, and

performed inft nothing.

Before this, they of Schaffouse were in good amity with the Switzers, and from the yeare, one thousand, three hundred forty fine, made alliance (for fome time) with them of Zurich. But because they were Subjects to the house of An- had continue fria, against whom, the Switzers had all wareafria, against whom, the Switzers have gainst the (well neere) continuall warres: they house of Allcould not then entertaine firmely this nome or neamity, but were compelled, to go in war against the Switzers, under the Ensignes of the Austrians . But after this last alliance, they were very good and faithfull friends vnto the Cantons, and bare them company in many warres and battailes. For immediately after the alliance

nited to the empire again

began:

The Cantons made war on

254

The men of Schaffouse ac cufed by Peregrin de Hewdorff.

the Popes

Incursions made on the Austrians lands,b then of Schaffoule

01.1

See

A new alliance of Schal foule for 24. yearcs,made with the can began: the Austrians came and affaulted | (till then) had not any particular acquainthe Switzers, and namely them of Schaf- tance.

It came to passe, that the Cantons (obeying the command of Pope Pius) made tons. For in the first place, they binde the- and condin war with Sigismond of Austria, which being pacified, they of Austria tooke Armes againe, because Mulhouse and Schaffouse had joyned themselves with the Smitzers, as should happen between them of Schafwho ledde a great Army to the Count of fouse and the Cantons. Then followeth in Ferrara, and into the quarters about Montbeliard. At the fame time, Peregrin de Hewdorff, accused them of Schaffoule in the Imperiall chamber of Rotuille, and follicited fo much, that they were put to banishment from the Empire. Among others, he charged John and Conrad de Fulach, brethren & cittizens of Schaffoufe; of a noble and an- And that the auncient alliances shall alcient Family, who sometimes possessed a wayes be esteemed of most advantage, & Castle, necre vnto the downefall of Rheine, to precede all the other. whence Albert of Austria had expelled them, but soone after they entred it againe hapned, and some yeares consequently, by intelligence. In regard whereof, they & that of Suaba, mooned by the Emperour the other cittizens that maintained their Maximillian, against the Switzers. In both inst quarrell, were proscribed. In this war these warres, they of Schaffouse did their the Cantons sent a good Garrison vnto duty exceeding well, furnishing men and the twelfth Schaffouse.

which is a Towne at the entrance into the ranke or roome. Blacke Forest, where the River of Arfalleth into the Rheine, and which was vnder the Austrian government, peace was made: wherein they of Suaba were exempted, & stood banished from the Empire, at the pursuite and charges of Sigismond. Thus then the Cantons having experimented in these warres, the faithfulnesse of them of Schaffoufe, and knowing well withall, what commodities they received from such a citty, seated in so apt a place on the confines of Swetia; And reciprocally, the men of Schaffoufe, feeling themselves to be deliuered from their enemies, by the good they were 12.during the alliance which affistance of the Switzers; they thought it they had made with King Lewes the 12. very expedient, both for the one fide and in the yeare, 1503. some among them (in the other, to prolong the alliance. And ac-great number) went for him in the war of cordingly, in the yeare 1479, they made an alliance for twenty fue yeares following: against the Edicts of their Magistrates.

The tenour of this alliance, is (almost) answerable to that of the ancient Can- Abreese of selues to aide one another. Afterward, ons of the althey establish a forme of judgement, for reconciling or anoyding fuch differences, what manner debts ought to be paide, & what meanes are to be yied in fuch cafes. Then for the punishment of homicides. or men-killers. The last Article concerneth the new & ancient alliances, to wit. the one fide shall make no new alliance, without the will and confent of the other:

After all this the warre of Bourgongne money for the weale-publike: by which Canton. While these helpes and succours lasted, meanes, they entred into the good grace the cittizens made divers courses into the of the Cantons, much more then ever lands about, appertaining to the house of they did before, and wonne great honour. Austria; as in the Mountaines of the black Alfo, the yeare after the last warre, to wit, Forest, in Hegow, Kleckgow, and other limi- 1501. they made perpetual alliance with trophing lands of Suaba and of Bafile. Fi- the Smitzers, and were enrolled in numnally, having laide siedge before Waldshout, ber of the Cantons, obtaining the 12.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the warres of the Switzers, fince such time as they came to be in number of the Cantons and making them twelue.

A Frerthat Basile and Schaffouse were numbred with the cantons, and that wherein were comprehended, the men of As the Switzers and French might brag not fortuna Vri and Vnderuald, with whom Schaffouse of small happinesse, in the first warre of inthe war of

The fpaniare brought it the Indies in to Christenlome.& bc-

the French,

at the fiedge

of Naples.

In honorable

Switzers, not

against their

he Cardina

of Sion a ware

four and ca-

pitall enemy whe French

owne houses, that villainous contagion of the Pockes, which afterward was tearmed the Spanish disease, the Neapolitane enill, and the French Pocks: At the last war they were ouercome in two battailes, and loft a great number of their men. The yeare 1507. the Cantons fent fuccour vnto the King, who (by their meanes) made himfelfe Master of the field, which the Genewayes had planted in a Mountaine, that commanded ouer their citty, which (foon after) yeelded it felfe.

their fortune prooued little better in this

last warre. They, who (during the first

warre) were left in Garrisons, in strong

places and Fortresses of the Kingdome;

dyed of diseases for the most part. Such

as escaped in this warre, in recompence

of their trauaile, brought home to their

At the same time the Emperor Maximillian demanded men of the Switzers, and they promifed him a leuve of 6000. men, prouided, that he should not leade them against the King of France, their allie: but because he would not accept this condition, the leave remained, and was not made.

Soone after to witte, in the yeare 1509 the league of alliance betweene the King of France & the Switzers, tooke ending, and the Emperor, Pope Islaus the 24 the Kings of France and Spaine, leagued themfolues together, and made warre on the Venetians, wherin the Switzers forued the King of France for wages. The yeare following, Pope Islius made alliance with the Switzers, by the meanes of Matthews Gardinall of sion, who immediately after the alliance concluded, led fixe thousand Switzers into tealy, vnder pretence of defending the lands of the Church, against the Duke of Fenrara. But his true intent was to furprize and expell the French out of Millaine. The Switzers lauring diffeourred his purpose awould not follow the Gardinall against the Frenchy and their Lords had likewife forbidden them: fo that the Popelent them in & Swetia, without paying them their wages, wherat they were very highly discontented.

In the yeare 1511 perpetuall alliance betweene the Switzers, the houses of Au-Aria and of Bourgongne, was renewed. On the other fide, the Ambaffadors of France defired the Switzers to renew the alliance

Naples, under King Charles the eight: fo | with their King: but the most part of them were displeased, because so soone as the first alliance was expired, the King had denied them all their payes and yearely pensions.

Of the Switzers Warres.

And albeit that a very great number among them, were no found well-willers or friends to the Pope, who likewife had not payed them : yet notwithstanditig, fearing lefte hee should excommunicate them, they durft not allie themselves with the King of France, who then was enemy to the Poper Heereupon, hapned a difgrace to be done them by the French, for they had taken at Lugano, a Herauld of the Switzers, with letters from the Seigneury Great wrong about him first, they drowned him, and Officer of to despight the Switzers, the Coate of Armen Armes, which the Heraulds and Officers to the Cantons vie to wearesthey folde at open port-fale, or our-cry, as we commonly call it.

The Switzers, in the very strongest of winter, led their Army ouer the Alpes, where having burned fome Villages, they returned backe againe, without performing any other memorable deed. But the yeare following; Pope fulius (who had loft a great battaile at Rauenna, at encountring there with the French) called them to helpe him," and therefore they fent into Italy, an Army of twenty thousand me. They beeing loyned with the Venetians (then reonciled to the Pope) tooke at The Switzers their arrivall Cremona and Paula, driving the French the French out of the whole Dukedome in very nonof Millane; fo that nothing remained to ble manner. them but orioly the Caffle of Millaine. In Defenders of regard of thefe worthy exploits, the Pope the Church. gaue the Smitzers the title, of Defenders of the Church Conriching their Standards with divers Images, and publikely gave to the whole Nation of the Switzers, two great Standards, which they call, Paner, that is, The Sword and Bonnet, as a noted marke of liberty, Maximillian Sforza, Bonnerifighes, re-eltabilited in his paternall doministic of liberty for the on by the Swizers facedury made alliande with them, and gaue to the Cantons Daguno, Detarna, Mendriff, and the Vale

of readiaudines on reliev ... He gaue also to the Grifons, their con- bestowed on federates, the Vale Telina or Volturena. the Cantons Likewise Charles, Duke of Sauoye, whose predeceffors had particular alliance (long time before) with fome of the Cantons: Z 2....

the King of France, about their payes &

The Sword &

Great gifts

The King of nied to bee

leagued with the Cantons.

254

The victorie of the Switzers ouer the French at No uara,very fa-

An Armie o Switzers, by councel of the Emperor, en tred into France the rowe Bourgongne.

dies.

made alliance with all the Switzers, for 25 | Prince of Wirtemberg. There they befieveares after following.

In the same yeare, the King of France folicited the Switzers, to become agayne allied with them : but because hee would not fet free the Castle of Millaine, and fome discouery was made beside, that his Ambassadors laboured to corrupt some particulars by gifts, and to buy theyr voyces for faire money layde downe; they were commanded to depart out of the Leagued countries; and fo the warre was renewed again. For the King fent a great Army into Italy, under the conduct of the Lords of Trunkle and Trimouille, who befiedged Maximillian Sforza in Novara. Hee was then accompanied with foure thousand Switzers, to whose ayde, eight thousand more were sent. Their vantgard being arrived at Novara, and they within being loyned with them, they gaue the battell to the French, vanquishing & driuing them out of Italy. Guichardin the Italian, an Historian much renowned writes that the Switzers won fuch honor by this victory, as many haue made no difficulty in equalling this happy successe of theirs, with (almost) all the braue exploites of the Greekes and Romanes. Notwithstanding, the field was deere enough bought by them, because fourteen hundred Switzers were there flaine, and the most part of them by the Cannon, before that they could come to handye stroakes. Which made the people of Swetia to murmur in many places, and all blame fell on them: that tooke part with the French: fo that divers withdrew themselves from Swetia for a time onely, and two only had their; heads finitten off in those mutinies and commotions: for the reft, all was well pacified, without any effusion of blood.

After this victory of the Switzers, the Emperor Maximillian, quitting the amity and alliance of the King : aduled the Switzers, to enter France by Bourgongn. with an army of fix thouland montwhere to (wel-neere) fixteene thousande other voluntary ioyned themselues, together. with some troopes of horse belonging to the Emperor, vnder the conducte of the

ged *Dijon, the capitall City of all Bourgongne. But the Lorde of Trimouille, an olde Captaine, beeing not of strength to defend well the place, agreed with the Switzers, on conditions, that the King should acquit whatsoever he pretended to the Dukedome of Millaine, and paye them (at certaine appointed times) fixe hundred thousand Crowns for affurance Meanes make whereof, he gaue them foure Lordes of Switzers gon marke, as holtages, with whom the Switzers departed thence immediately.

Nowe, although it was a matter most palpable and notorious to all men, that this composition warranted the kingdom because that Dijon being taken, the Switzers might have run vp fo farre as to the gates of Paris, or joyne themselues there with the English; and beside that king Leweshadde not a sufficient Army to make head against them; vernotwithstanding, he would not ratifie his composition. For he would not admit (by any meanes) that his rights to the Dukedome of Millaine, fhould be for much a stalkt of. The Swit-gers feeing them felues thus handled; and finite the highly offended with fuch flye trickes: threatned to kill the Hostages, except the confirmation might be brought within a state of the state of the confirmation might be brought within a state of the state of certaine time. Neuertheleffe, the winter grew extreame voon them, and yet they resolved to re-enter France in the month of Nouember: But the King fent his Ambaffadore, who laboured (by all meanes) to make aperperual peace with the Switzers. In the meane while, they coulde no Muchaliton way toyne, because the conditions which and nothing the King propounded, were very virted fonable which wasthe cause that the time frent it felfe in dayes and deliberations, in moore talke and friuolous difputes, whereby the enterprize of marchiing into Prance, was quite broken. Concerning the rest of these meetings and asfemblies, they were thus donfidered on; that in the month of December the fame Appenzel the weare, they of Appended were added

din to the Cantons number and 740 montheld the thirteenth q 200 di place. dia di

ni e Grand,

and in

CHAP

welling.

The inhabitants of Ap-

The Abbots

Chamber or

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the Originall of Appenzell: how it tooke that name. The Lawes, Customes, & m.iner of government there observed.

of the scituation of Appen zel, and the villages thero belonging.

Ppenzel is the name both of a Country, and of a Village.
The country is fituated form-what about S. Gall, betweene

the high Mountains, and on the Frontiers of the Grifons country. The inhabitants liue (scatteringly)in Villages, and among the number of them, there are eight chiefe and principal, which have enery one their Temple or parish church. The maine head of all is the village of Ap-

penzell, whereof all the rest of the countrey beareth name. This Countrey was fometimes vnder the government of the Abbots of faint Gall. and because they alwaies yfed to

dwel in the chiefest town or village, wher they builte a very strong Castle, named Claux: the village was therefore cald Ap-penzel, which in Latine is, Abbatis Cella: that is to fay, The Chamber or dwelling of

The people of Appenzel aimed at liberty, first by armes, and after peace made, they bought liberty for themselus & their children, by meanes of a great fum of mony, which they paied to the Abbot. They had wars which continued feuen yeares, against Cuno de Stouffen, Abbot of S.Gall; to whom the townes about the Lake of Constance, and belonging to Frederick D. of Austria, the bishoppe of Constance, the Count of Wirtenberg, & many Counts & Gentlemen gaue foccour. Yet they of Appenzel would not yeeld themselves for all this, but being ayded by the Cittizens of S. Gal (who, at the beginning, were parta-kers with the Abbot; but afterward joined with them of Appenzel, won fom battels, tooke flue Townes, and more then fixty Castles part whereof were quite ruined. In this war, they leagued themselues with the Switzers, who were enemies vnto the house of Austria. Some say, that they allyed themselves with Suits and Glaris only : but others doe maintaine, that it vyas | zers. with Lucerna, Vri, Suites, and Vnderuald. This Warre tooke ending in the yeare, 1408. and by meanes of the Emperour Rupert, agreement was made betweene them of Appenzel and their enemies, in the City of Constance.

posed of the most honest people, and the

notablest persons in all the Villages tho-

roughout the countrey. Then three years

after the peace was made, the Abbot of

Saint Gall attempted a new fuite against

them : but then they made alliance with

Zurich, Lucerna, Suits, Vnderwald Zug, &

Glaris, which so offended the Abbots of

Saint Gall, as, about the yeare one thou-

fand foure hundred twenty fine , Henrie

Mansdorff (then Abbot) prevailed so far.

round engirt with Mountaines, and not

Trafficking almost with any bodie) no in-

uafion could bee made vpon them. As

concerning the excommunication fent

from the Pope, they refolued in an affem-

bly of al the country, not any way to care

for it. And therefore they expelled all the

priefts(that observed the command of the

Pope) out of their Countrey, and would

not permit them to administer the Sa-

craments: amongst all which they killed

that this course did him not any service:

and that (on the other fide) the men of

Appenzell ranne verie fiercely vpon fuch,

as durst tearme them to bee excommuni-

The Abbot of Saint Gall, perceiuing

This being done, the men of Appenzel Their form & framed a forme of gouernment to themfelues, which yet they hold vito this day,
For till then, each village had her enfign,
and her eftates apart, or by it felfe. Now
here were the second of the se

there was but one Enfigne, one affembly of their estates, and one Councell, com-

that they of Appenzel were proferibed by People are ba

the Emperour, and excommunicated by mithel and exthe Pope. Banishment was no great hurt, jed because or inconvenience to them in any manner they maintain whatfocuer, because the countrey (being their to

cate, and ruined the Castelles of manie Gentlemen Finally, by helpe of the Byshoppe of Gonitance, and the Noble-S.Gall appear men of Suaba, hee accused them before leth to the Ethe Electours of the Empire, imploring lectors. theyr helpe and aide in this extreamitie.

The Electors fent to the Switzers, and to

258 Of the alliance of the five last Cantons. 3. Booke

most alike.

The Switzer war on their neighbours.

Warre made vpon the No-ble-men by

them of Ap-

When anger

helps not, pa

the Canton

prenaile.

penzell.

bring them of Appenzel under obedience. But the Switzer's would not make any war on their neighbours and fellow cittizens: but rather laboured to make peace, which was agreed on foure yeares after this exhaving beene (before) ouercome in two encounters, by the Count of Toggen-

This peace lasted not long, for the Gentlemen, neighbours to Appenzell, about the Lake of Constance, assembled a great number of horsemen, wherewith to inuade them of Appenzell. But they disappointed their hope, and got before them; possessing themselves of Rineck, & of the Vale of Rhegusce, in the year, 1445. The Lords of Hagenwill, who helde that country in pawne or pledge: caused them of Appenzell to be censured with banishment, by the Imperiall Chamber establithed at Rotuille. But gaining nothing by the bargaine, they folde them their right, for the fumme of fixe thousand crowns. and tooke off the censure. In the yeare, 1452.they made perpetuall alliance with feauen of the Cantons, and (after that time) ioyned themselves with the Switzers, in the warres against the Dukes of Austria, of Bourgongne, and the league of Suaba, wherein they shewed themselues both faithfull and valiant . Afterward, in the yeare, 1513, they were received into

CHAP. XV.

the number of the Cantons.

Concerning the alliance made betweene the fine last Cantons : And a breviate of their Articles, binding them together in confe-



LL the latter captons. except Bafile, long time before their receiving into this ranke, were allied to the other ancient Cantons, and

then afterward, at fundry times they were received and numbred with the cantons,

the Citties of Suaba, that they should | according as wee have noted alrea-

Now those Cantons doe hold this right aboue their consederates, that they deliberate, and giue aduice in their dayes of ges belonged consultation, for all occasions concer-to the Caucommunication, the men of Appenzell ning (in common) the common-wealth of the Switzers. They have a share or part, in all commodities and discommodities of the comminalty. They governo (in equall authority) all the Baliwicks by them obtained, and partake equally and publikely, all booties gotten in warre. For the rest, the Articles of alliance of the old Cantons, and latter with the first, are al-

> The first and principall Article, concerneth mutuall fuccour or affiftance, Articles of alwherein there are dinerfity of clauses. The latter cances Cantons which shall be called, ought to with the forfuccour their affociate or companion, mer. without any fraud or delay. If a Canton be so suddenly engirt by the enemy, as he cannot call the other, neither by Letters nor Ambassadors; yet shall not they forbeare (for all that) from gining fuccour, and in as speedy manner, as if they had received expresse advertisement. If the latter Cantons doe conceine, that a wrong is done vnto them; yet notwithstanding, they shall moourno warre against any person, without the will and consent of the olde Cantons. If their enemies will debate their cause in instice. and accept the Switzers for their Judges, or others of equall and indifferent judgement: the Canton may not attempt to purfue his right by Armes. Euery one of the Cantons, at their owne charge and expences, shall come to succour the other, and fend fuch numbers of men as they would have, and according as they shall see it commodious, wherewith the other Canton must content it selfe. In like manner, the limits are prescribed. The limitation wherein the auncient Cantones stand of succour to bound to send helpe to the new: And before. the limits are the confines of the Cantons, as they then stand. There is likewife mention made, concerning charges and expences, at the befiedging and battering of Townes and Castles. And the Lawes agreed vpon at Stantz, touching the partage of booties, which also are

heerein confirmed. The fecond Article declareth, what ces betweene two Cantons

ference do happen between two Catons or many: But wee shall speake in our fecond Booke, what forme of judgement is in the case to be kept. Moreover, there is mention made, concerning actions in cafes of iniuries betweene particulars, and what ludges they are to take note of in that kind. Then for the exacting of names: Concerning commerce, and free Trafficke, and what bargaining ought to stand free for buyers, as well on one part as the other. That no Canton shall receive the

The Svvitzers vvars in Italy.

one Canton to be entetrained by an other Canton

Chap.16.

Of differen-

citizens and subjects of another Canton: till they be first left at liberty, by them vn. der whose dominion they were before. That the new Cantons shall not make alliance with any whofoeuer, without consent of the olde Cantons. If war is mooned betweene the old Cantons, the latter shall remaine as newters, and labour onely to agree the parties. Each Canton fnall keepe his or her ancient priviledges rights, and customes in their true integri-

Anespeciall futury of the

Behold the principall conditions of the latter alliances, wher namely it is decreed that the new Cantons shal not moue any warre, without aduice of the old, neyther refuse that which is right, nor any honest condition of the countrey; and other fuch like things, concerning warre, are establifhed fully. And because that the most part of the latter Cantons, are vpon the limits and euen out (as it were) of Swetia: they ordained, that no one shoulde attempt to make any warre, except it were for some matter of very great importace: and so much the rather, because it is very hard to conduct and maintaine an army in those quarters.

CHAP. XVI.

Heere we are to feake of the Switzers wars in Italy , when the French undertooke to recouer the Dukedome of Millaine,

The death of Lewes, the 12 K.of France, iter whome ucceeded rances de Jalois,

N the yeare of our Lord, one thousand, fine hundred, & fif-

kinde of course is to be observed, if a dif- / his Ambassadors, the amity and alliance of the Switzers. Neuertheleffe, in the meane time, he made great preparation for war, pretending to recouer the dukedome of Millaine. Frances de Valois, his kinfinan, and his fonne in law, came after him (as fucceffor) to his crown; who following the deliberation of his father, had also his minde and eye fixed on the Mil= lainefes. The Switzers (on the other fide) allyed with the Emperour Maximillian, The Switzers attempt to guard Millain , Sfor a Duke guard Millain of Millaine, and with Pope Lee the tenth : against the vndertook to defend Millaine against the French. Wherefore, after they vnderstoodshe King of France his preparation they fent (at their first leuy) fix thousand men to the Duke of Millaine. Afterward, the tenth of lune, they made another leuy of 13000.men, which they fent alfo to ioyne with the first.

King Frances passed ouer the Alpes in the meane while, by vnaccustomd waies, fhunning the Garrisons of the Switzers, which were vpon the viuall paffages, and entred into Italy, with an Armie verie potent, of French and Germaines. This was the reason that the Cantons sent twelve thousand men more thether, so that the campe of Switzers onely, confifted of one and thirty thousand men. Now, although the Kings troopes were well pro- 31000.men in uided and refolued, yet they woulde not number, and hazard any thing, nor fet vppon fo great nouer fo many of them an Army of Switzerseit being fuch indeed feene before as hardly (at any one time) had fo manie in the field at one time. euer before beene in the field. Hereupon by their Deputies, they began to treat on peace with the Colonels of the Switzers: who likewise (for their part) were not far off from it in disposition, because they confidered, that their confederated princes did not march on roundlie with

For first of al, their wages was not paid them, according to promife. Moreouer Reasons induthe Emperor had not fent his companies cing the Switof horfemen, as he stood bound to do by zers to listen the confederacy. And contrarywife, he it was moued, had not prohibited the Lance-Knightes (which hee might have done in regard of his authority) from going in feruice with the King : but fuffered them (by troopes) thousand, fine hundred, & fif-teene, King Lewer the twelfth dyed. He had newly sought by the Pope and King of Spaine were neere-yet

12000-Swit zers pare home to the country, withtheir copanie.

frustrate all.

yet notwithstanding, they could hardlie | of their men. be perswaded to passe the Pau, and ioyne themselves with the Switzers. Beside, there were messengers gooing and comming betweene the French and them, & from them to the French. Wherefore, the Switzers seeing themselves vvithout money, and forfaken of their Confortes: made peace in the village of Galler as, with the Deputies to the King of France, vnder honest conditions. Which having bene confirmed by fome Cantons, immediatly twelve thousand Switzers took their way to Coma, and returned home to their countrey, without tarrying for the rest, who likewise prepared to depart the next morning . But the Duke of Millaine would not accept the conditions of this peace; and the Cardinall of Sion, (a great and perpetuall enemy to § French) laboured by oblique meanes, to break &

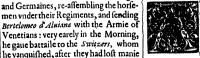
It came to paffe, that by cunning tricks and plottes, the thirteenth day of September, the Switzers of the Guard to the Duke of Millaine, and fome others befide offended with the King, in the night time brake in vpon the French, sending worde instantly to aduertise their companions, in what danger they were, and intreated their present succour. The other, imagining that it would be a great shame vnto them, to forfake their friendes in such a neede, and being made to beleeue withall, that the French had begunne this broyle, went with all their troopes to affift them. The fight was very tharp on all fides; but the night parted them. In this charge was flaine Frances, the Lorde of Rourbon, the Lord of Imbercourt, also the Count of Sancerre, the Prince of Talemond, fonne to the Lorde of Trimouille, the Lords of Bully d' Ambole, and manie other: which made some to holde opinion, that the Switzers were Maisters in this conflict, and a brute ran thorow Italy, that they remained conquerours. But the very fame night, the King hauing mounted his Artillerie on their carriages, levelled the battalions of the Gascoigns and Germaines, re-affembling the horsemen under their Regiments, and fending Bertelomeo d'Aluiana with the Armie of Venetians: very earely in the Morning, he gaue battaile to the Switzers, whom

The Switzers feeing the victory in a contrary hand, withdrew them-felues to Millaine; yet in such fort, that their retreate fauoured not of flight. For, they backe to Mil. brought backe the Artillery which came laine. out of Millaine, and marched in ranke of battaile, having their wounded Men in the middest among them, and going but avery foftly pace ; yet in all the French Army, not a man, eyther Horse or Foot, durst pursue them. On the morrow, hauing lefte the Duke of Millaine fifteene hundred men, to strengthen his garrison in the Castle, they returned into Swetia, by the way of Coma. But, by reason of their foile, the French recovered the dukedom of Millaine.

The Emperour Maximillian contested hardly to take it from them againe, & the yeare following, he ledde into Italy (ro effect that hope) an army of Germans by the Fresh and Switzers; but he could doe nothing, and so was glad to come backe again immediately. As for the King of France, having well felt how deare a price this victorie cost him : he neuer ceased till hee hadde made peace and alliance with the Perpetual smitzers in the end. Perpetuall peace, peace bebetweene the French and the Switzers, weene the was made in the yeare one thousand, fine ske French. hundred, and eighteene, the last day of November: and the alliance was confirmed three yeares after, to wit, in Anno one thousand, fine hundred, twentie and one. The Articles both of the peace and alliance, are fet downe in their due place, heereafter following.

CHAP. XVII.

A Discourse, concerning the Alliance of the Switzers, with the King of France.



 Γ that very time, all the Cantons, Zurich onely excepted, made Alliance with the King of France. And, although they of Zurich were ear-

font why the fuled to be allied with the The retreat of kingof France

> drich Zuinglis.why Chritian men hould not make them. felnes byre ings in warre

The men of

Zwich were

ninded, and

little giuen to

percefully

Taxations

impoled vpon the new legue

Chap.17.

Certaine rea-

this league with them : yet for all that, they could neuer bring them to the point of yeelding to this alliance. In the first place, the yearcs going before, Mathew, Cardinall of Sion, who came verie often to Zurich: by his Orations and perswafine speeches, had wholly estranged them from the French. On the other fide Huldrich Zuinglius, being then a principal minister at Zurich, in his ordinary preachingana Sermons, ceased not to turne the people, from taking wages to goe in warre feruices. Shewing by a guments & remonstrances of great weight, that it was not lawfull for a Christian man to fet himselfe to sale for a price of money, and go shed the bloode of such as are (oftentimes) innocents, and never did him any manner of wrong. He fayd, they ought to follow the manners of the ancient Switgers, who (by their manhood) had planted liberty in their countrey. All which while, they wholly estranged themselues from fuch course of living; their lives wer maintained by their trauell pneuer binding themselves ynto any Prince, neither hadde they any freedome that was to be

And as hee had words verie readio at command, so he approved by great store of found reasons and arguments, that fuch alliances did but eneruate & meerdly prostitute the liberty of the Switzers so forraine Kings and Princes ... So that the men of Zutich, being (otherwife) people of peace, and little addicted to martial affaires; were much mooiled with his foceshes, and abhorred this new League. On the other fide, she Captaines that hadde bene in the warres in the times of King Charles the eight, and Letesthe eleventh, diffwaded them from the leaguess being farro vnlike to the alliances with former Kings. For in precedent times lafter that the Smitters had well velder frond &c com prehended the occasion of the war they made choife offich Captaines and foldienses they should fend to the king according to their promile. But the Newe League, the Cantons neithen chose Captaines nor Soldiers, neither cared what became of all, what the occasions of the warre were, nor whether they vvere iuft, orno. But, if the King were to deale

with any people, he chose such Captains

nestly sollicited by the rest, to joyne in) of the Switzers as himselfe pleased, and I caused them to come whether he thought good. By which meanes, the Cantons had not any power ouer their Men for warre, except they might counter-mand them, when any warre was moued in the country.

Moreover, many faide, that this newe League was contrary to the ancient and cerning the perpetuall alliances of the Switzers For, in the first Article they stand bounde, to guard all the Provinces of France, against all enemies whatfoeuer they are. True it is, that the first alliances were exempted: but immediately is added, that if the ancient allies begin to make warre vpon the French, the Cantons ought to fend fuccour to the King, against the otherswheron enfued (as it feemeth) that if any one of the Cantons, or of the Confederates, could not have reason (in friendly maner) of the King of France, and would purfue his right by Armes ; the other Cantons are bound to warre on him, according to the new League, and contrarie to the promifes of the ancient alliances.

Moreover, it is not any long time, fince the Switzers denied theyr troopes to the Emperor Maximillian, alleadging for their excuse because he would have had them ferticat his Corronation) that Emperor Mathey were occasioned (for many reasons) ximilian, and to keepe their men of warre (as then) at caufe. home in their owne countrey. Therefore it appeared to them verie vnfitting, that they should then allye themselves with the King, who would make a Leuye of them, fo foone as the alliance was concluded. contribute main

They conveyued also, that it would be farre off from theyr annotene granty, and magnanimity, if they frould league them felues fo finicity with the King of France; of whom but a yeare and an half before) they had written vnto the Electors of the Empire that it was no way expedient that he fibule govern the affayres of Germa-king of Frace if the wife hould be elected Empe-ile for that if he should be elected Empe-if he were vor, they were not minded to give him o- cholen limpt bedience And, as concerning the commodities of the alliance, which many did make lowd proclamations of there vvere others of opinion, that the profite would fall into fome particular purfes, and efpecially offuch, as enriched themfolves by the penfions of Fraunce; but the Com-

perpetual Alliances of the Switzers

Articles con

The Switzers denyed their troopes to the vpon what

The Switzen

no oth Children

A hot &fierce fight between the Switzers & the French wherein the Switzers wer ouerthrowne in the end.

Read the lord du Bellay, in the first book ofhis Memo-

Arguments very confide rately alled-ged by the Switzers,againtioyning in League with the King of France.

fily was to be proued. For in the first place, the country had no neede of any strange horsemen or infantery, hauing worke enough to doe in nourishing their owne breed for that imployment. Moreouer, the hope of helpe, and money from France, robbed the Switzers of all their true force and courage. In following the example of their predeceffors, they were best to let their hope leane and rest upon God, to serue and honour him in fincerity of heart, and vorightneffe of conscience. That not onely hope in God would faile and diminish by such a League, but also it was to be feared, that it would very strongly break and corrupt their ancient manners, cause all husbandry to ceafe, gine ouer honest trades and exercifes, and engender nothing but idleneffe. And then is eafily known what followeth, diffolution in diet and apparrell, drunkennesse, whoredomes, adulteries, thefts, and blasphemies. For these are the fruites of warre, and the Arts that are lerwar inforrain Princes (erui-

monwealth of the Switzers would be no

way benefited by the bargaine, as very ea-

ned in the armies of strange Princes.
For a finall conclusion, the euent and fuccesse of precedent alliances, have both instructed and guarded many (especiallie the men of Zurich) to weigh well & confider on nouell combinations. For, albeit that some fewe did sufficient feruice to the nation, as that which was made against the Duke of Bourgongne: yet notwithstanding, the most part of those alliances, brought it into great extremities. Because in such straunge warres they lost many of their people: or els in those coutries, they were rudely hurried and agitated, by factions and feditions. For thefe reasons, and divers other considerations; the inhabitants of Zurich could not (as

the king of France. But the other confederates, who were not of any fuch opinion, maintaind what they did, by reasons enow. First, they de-clared, and would prooue it, that every voyage in war was not condemned by the word of God: but that many holye perfons had made wars ; wherein they were ayded and fuccoured by others, as in like manner they had affifted their Allies. Secondly, that the war of the Switzers was not mercenary nor vendible; because

then be induced to ally themselves with

they went to the feruice of a King onely. (with whom they were joyned by an honeft alliance) with the will and confent of their Lords.

Thirdly, that if the King should moue a warre, which all men knew to be vaiuft; then it remained in the power of the Lords of the Leagues, to deny him fuccour. But if the occasion were doubtfull and vncertaine; the fouldier had nothing to doe to make any curious inquisition thereof: it only appertained to the King and his Councell, to render a reason for it. Fourthly, that the Switzers Countrey was greatly peopled, but narrow, hard, & the Swinzer barren in many places, and could not furnifh fo many men with nourishment: wherefore the commodity was not to be condemned, which the King had offered voluntarily.

To these we will adde, that the Switzers ought to confider, with what neighbors they were enclosed, fom wherof ennyed them, and others pryed into their Liberties: fo that it was both well and wifely done, to fortifie themselires with strange fuccour against them, and that trust and hope in God, did not prohibite the vse of humane affifiance. Alfo, this was a means to traine up the Switzers in martiall discipline, which is necessary for all Commonwealths: and in regard whereof, warlike people haue euermore beene highly refrected? Finally, although that fome alwester. liances have difcommodited the Countrey, yet notwithstanding, the Switzers have foed well in the more part, especially in those which they had with the kings Lewes the eleuenth, Charles the eight, and Lemes the twelfth. And therfore they must needsteepecta happy yffice of this which they contracted with a King powerfull & fortunater geo

This was the discourse then made concerning aliance with the French: as I learned of my predeceffors, which lived in thole times. The felfelame question hath bene often and feriously debated & handhed cuenin my time, by men well groun-ded in the flayers of State, to whome(as yet) I referre the further knowledge of the cale.

The City of S Gal tooke name at firft

a Gentleman of Scotland.

Marrial & mi-

litarie Difei-

Of them that are Allyed and Leagued with the CANTONS.

And first, The Abbot of Saint Gall. CHAP. XVIII.

Another Difcourie of the Author, con-cerning the affociates in particular ma

Itherto wee haue showne what the Cantons & confederates are making vp a whole body of the Swigzers Commonwealth, and what hath beene the e-

flate and condition of enery one of them before they were leagued. Also, for what causes, at what times, and with what conditions they affembled themselues in a body politicke. Now we will discourse of the affociates of this Commonwealth. according to the fame order: and we will heere shew, wherefore, when, and vppon what conditions they allyed themselues with the Cantons. And because the Abbot, and the Citty of Saint Gall do holde the first ranke, wee purpose to begin with

> Gallus, of whom the ci-of Saint Gal hath taken name, was a Gentleman of Scotland, and Disciple or Scholler to an Abbot, named Colombanius, with whome hee came into France, and thence trans-

ported himselse into Germany, to a place called Tuggen, neere to the River named Limagus, at the mouth of the Lake of Zurich. There he preached the Gospel with great zeale and affection, to the people of the Countrey, then bewitched with diuers kindes of Idolatry. Hee continued (foone after) at Bregents, at the mouth opening of the Lake of Constance: next, at Arbonna, and in divers other places of

Swetia, for the space of sixteene years, or thereabout. Gonzo Duke of Suaba, hauing called him to bee Byfroppe of Cont stance; he would not accept that charge: but councelled the Duke to give it to one of his schollers, named Iohn, whom hee thought to be more fit for the place. As for himfelfe, about the yeare fix hunder red and thirty, he retired into the Mounraines, about the Lake of Constance, into Gallus refused a very folitary place; and in the very fame to be bythop plot or square of ground, where the Citic and Abbey of S. Gall now standeth: hee builded a little Cell or house, wherein he fpent the rest of his dayes, with som of his schollers, in the studye and meditation of

For fourescore yeares after the death of

S.Gall, they requested Counte Bertrand,

Gouernor of the countrey for the Kinges

of France, that hee would give them an

Abbot. He fent them a Prieft, named o-

Pepin, Prince of France, sonne to Charles

Martell: who following the aduice of his

father, established this Priest the first Ab-

bot of Saint Gall, and then (first of all) the

Monkes made profession of the rule of s.

holy matters.

After the death of S. Gall, his schollers The death of liked well to liue in that place, and according to his manner of life: neuertheleffe, schollers, and without making profession then of anie his lite house certaine rule or order. But the Kinges of an Abbey, France, and the Dukes of Suaba, taking delight in their denotion, did them many kinde Offices: where by the number of these religious men encreased, & (by lit-tle and little) the small filly house of saint Gall, became converted into an Abbey.

mer, bred and brought vp in a Colledge, called Coire of the Grifons, and towardes bottefs, Gall.

Arguments for alliance of the Switzers with the K.of Frace, against those formerly alledged by

Some former

examples wer

warrantable.

After that time, the abbey became verierich and powerfull, so that the Abbot of that place, was fette in number of the Princes. And in ancient times he was vnder protection of the Emperours, who tooke the Gentlemen of Suaba to be Gouernors of this abbey. Afterward, warre being kindled betweene the Abbot, and them of Appenzel : the Monkes well perceiued that their Conuent stood in neede of some good Protectours, because the Townesmen or Cittizens of S. Gall, who were (as within the abbey) ioyned with them of Appenzell, who were also fauored by many feruants of the Abbot.

S.Gal defires to be received into the number of 4. Cantons, and to

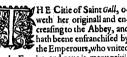
For this cause Gaspar de Landberg, then The Abbot of the two and fiftieth Abbot (by the aduice and counfell of the Monks) requested the Cantons of Zurich, Lucerna, Suices, and Glaris, to receive him into their alliance: establishing them patrons, fathers, & defenders of his freedom, & of al his goods, possessions, viances, and priniledges. This right is perpetuall, and at all times, and as often as a new Abbot is to be elected , hee promifeth this accord, and that al the places of his Seigneury, thall alwayes lye open to these foure Cantons, and they to have free accesse thither. And if diffrence shal happen between him and any other: he shall commit it (continually) vnto the hearing of the foure Cantons, and be iudged by them.

The fuccessour to Landberg, named Landberg the Abbot beeing dead, Hul-Huldrich, and fir-named Le Roux, added to this first alliance, that the foure Cantons (hould fend (one after another) one of their Councell, that should remayne two yeares with the Abbot, to bee Captaine of all his country. He gaue affiftance in pleadings and indgements, & the moity of all fines remained to the Switzers. Moreouer, it was ordained in this allyance, that in all warres the Abbots fubicas should goe to the succour of the 4. Cantons. As concerning that which Abbet Huldrich renewed, and the League alfo, ioyning himselfe more strictly vnto the foure Cantons, the cause was thus. Sometimes before, the Citizens of Saint Gall, they of Appenzel, and the fubicas of the Abbot, had conspired together, and ruined the abbey of Rolach, which the Abbet had newly builded. So that the foure Cantons having fent for the other Catons to theyr assistance, reseated the Abbot in his rites,

and reprooued his adversaries very stoutly. This affociation endureth yet to this day, and although al the Cantons are not at agreement with the Abbot, as concerning matter of Religion, yet notwithstanding, according vnto the articles of alliance, they lend him a Captaine, who manageth and gouerneth civill causes, conferuing (in this regard) the rights and priuiledges of the Abbot.

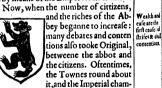
CHAP. XIX.

Of the Towne or City of S. Gall.



weth her originall and en-began and creating to the Abbey, and began and created by the Emperours, who vnited

it to the Empire, and gaue it many priviledges and immunities. In the time of the Emperour Arnould, the citie began first to be enclosed with walles: as fearing the courfes and furprizals of the Hungarians, and both it and the Couent were vnder the Empires protection. The cittie was fubicat vnto the Abbey in many things: meane while, the citizens had their rites, which they augmented by their industry, & by means of the Emperors liberalities.



ber, would fet them at agreement again. Sometime likewise, they were glad to satisfie the Abbots demands with money, and encreased their liberties, by buying their rightes of him. But when they of Appenzel moved warre against Abbot Cuno de Stouffen; the men of S. Gall beganne to take part with the Abbot, and got nothing for their labour but blovves, vvhich caused them (soone after) to make alliance with them of Appenzel. This warre being ended, and some other after, abbot Landberg being made a fellow-Bourgesse

with foure Cantons . the cittizens of S. Gall, to maintaine themselves by the like expedient, entred perpetual alliance with Zurich, Berne, Lucerna, Suits, Zug, and Glaris. This alliance was sworne on the Eue of S. Iohn Baptist, in the yeare, 1454. And they of Saint Gall made a publicke banket for the Ambassadors of the Cantons, whereat were prefent about fifteene hundred men . Before this alliance, they were leagued with some Cantons for cer taine yeares: as with Zurich , Constance, and Schaffoufe, in the yeares, 1312. and 1347. And at other times often with Zurich and Constance. Afterward, with Zurich, Berne Vri Suits & Vnderuald, in the yeare 1229. But I have purpofely omitted those alliances made for so short times, contenting my felte onely with this last

mentioned, which continueth to this day CHAP. XX.

Of the Leagued Grifons.



Wealth and

foo men p

T is generally agreed on that the people of the Grifons are very ancient.
For fome ages before the birth of our Sautor Leftis Chrift, the Tufcans been been been been been been for the barbes by the Gauls

ing driven from their houses bythe Gauls they possessed the Alpes, vnder conduct of their captain, named Rhatus, for whose fake they called themselues Rhætians. Heretofore this country extended it felfe greatly in length & largenes, fo that the Romane Emperors made two Rhætian Proninces named the first & second Rhatia: which comprehended not onely the Alpine regions, but also a great part of Suaba & Bauaria. Now, it is well knowne, that this first Khatia beginneth at & sourse of Rheine, & taketh a sufficient great quarter of the Alpes, and all the valleyes on both the fides. Almost all the people ther are (to this day) called Grifons; and in former times they were tearmed Gris: as likewise the Allmains gave them the same name,& call them belide, Gram pundter, that is to fay, Leagued Grifons. For, in regard that these Rhatians are Leagued, not onely with ' vitzers, but also ahat of verie long mong them?

time, we call them Leagued Grifons, & fom ! times the Switzers names them fimply, Dundter, that is, Confederates.

Wee are to observe three leagues of Three several the Grifons. The first tooke name of her the Grifons. antiquity, and of the scituation of the countrey: for they called it, The High 1. The High League, or high Grifons. It containeth nine Leauge, or high Grifons teene Communities or Fellowshippes, among whom (heeretofore) the Abbot of Diffentiff, and the Baron of Rhatia. & the Count of Mifauk held the cheefest ranke:

but the families of the 2. Matter are expired. Neuerthelesse, among them in AND AND Common, they which pofielle the Caftle of the ancient Barons of Rhatta. are called Lords of Rhatzurs, a title which (some

short while after) the Lordes of Marbree took; and after them, they which are named Plantes. They of Tauet scher, Liviner. and Masoxertal are the principall people

of this league.

The second is called, The league of Gods 2. The league house. I thinke it to be so termed, because or of the Hosthe byshop of Coire is comprized in this pitall. league. It also comprehendeth nineteene Communities; two whereof doe speake the Germane Language; the other, vie the Rhætian or Grison, which is their mo ther tongue, & cometh neere to the Italian. The principal people of this league are the city of Coire, which is the bishops See. Also they of Pregaul and of Engadin, out of which countries run two renowned riuers, to wit, Etfch and Inn.

The third league hath ten Communi- 3. The league ties, and is called, The League of ten Iurif- aions. dictions. Therein are comprized them of Rhuchemberg, and of Tunlesch. The former two leagues had (at the beginning) amity and alliance a certaine time, with the Cantons neereil to them. For in the yeare, 1419. the Bylhop, the Chapter, & the cittle of Coire, made Allyance with severall allithem of Zurich for one and fiftie yeeres . usrall times. Alfo, they were fometimes allyed with them of Glaris. And the Grifons of the high league, wer long time confederated with them of Vri. Then after, with them of Gods house they made a perpetuall alliance with feauen of the Cantons, But the thirde League is not comprized in this alliance, and yet notwithstanding do

Abbot Huldrich renewed the league with the four Cantons, and more strictly.

drich firnamd

the Red, fuc-

ceeded after

Alliance of the Grifons with the Switzers an vpon what

A great diffe-Gods-house. and them of

rencebetween the league of

The Grisons depute two of each league tor ending their cause.

Cunning tric s, and fit for fuch to vie, as defire to oppreffe the peoples

entertaine this amity and fociety with the confederates, euen as firmely and faithfully, as if they stood solemnly bound therero.

First then, in the yeare 1497, the high league, more properly called, The Grifon league, made perpetuall alliance with feauen Canzons: and the yeare following, the league of Gods-house joyned it selfe with them, by this occasion following. Some yeares before, the league of Gods-House had had certaine great differences, with the dwellers in the county of Tyroll. In the end, by the will of the Emperour Maximillian, it was decreed; that the parties thould chuse an equall number of Judges, to take knowledge of their variance, and that Thomas, Bishop of Con. france, should be Arbitrator about all the Indges. But while the Councellers to the King delayed to end this discord, the Bishop of Constance dyed: and in his stead, Maximillian subrogated Fredericke, Bi-Thop of Ansbourg. But the Kings councellers taking no knowledge of this other Arbitrator, prolonged (from day to day) the decision of the suite, as before they had done: all this while mollefting the Grifons, and charging them still with nouell impolitions.

They perceiving no cellation, deputed two of each league, and fent to Infruk, infifting, that this difference thould end, according to the order of the Emperour Maximillian. Which the councellers pretended not to know, albeit divers of them, and (among the rest) the chanceller was prefent when the decree was fet downe. Yet notwithstanding because the Deputies should not bee sent backe without answer; they assigned a day at Velcure, in Lent the next yeare enfuing.In the meane while, they of Austria planted Garrisons upon the Frontiers, and strong Artillery in divers places, making (vnder hand) their preparation forwarre. For they had appointed that day expressely, because they would set upon them at vnawares, & vtterly ouerthrow the Grifons, no way standing on their guard: wherein the Bishop of Coire lent his helping hand to them of Austria. But the league

of Gods-Houfe, having discovered the e-

nemies intent; fent men to the cantons,

who kept then a day at Zurich, and gaue

them to understand this eminent danger.

The Ambaffadors declared, that befide the olde quarrels, new differences were moued, betweene them of Austria and the Switzers, so that there grew an appearance of warre; therefore for the profit & fecurity both of the Switzers & Grilons. it feemed good, that they should be allied together. For by that meanes the Grifons shold easily expell the enemy out of their country: although they gaue them but little avde, or almost none at all. On the other fide, the Switzers should have a Bulwarke to back them, and so might the more ftrongly make head against the enemy. The Cantons, who had bin well affected to the Grifons before, and knew those Mountaine-bred men, to bee a warlike disposed people, and how beneficiall this alliance wold be both to the one and other: concluded and established a per- Aperpenul petuity of loue with the Grifons, in the league of low with the Gri yeare 14, 8. and the Moneth of Decem- fons. ber, and the Articles of the alliance are these that follow.

The Articles of alliance, betweene the Switzers and the Grifons.

M. I. First, that they shall be friends, & give mutuall succour one to another.

2. The second Article concerneth the ar Agreeined convenience on the second article concerneth the arconvenience on the second article of the second article of the second article of the second article on the second article on the second article of the second article on the second artic greeing of differences which may happen betweene confederates.

3. The third is, that no man shall give or No sellinger fell away, those actions that he hath against debis. his debter, or the answerer, or surety for him.

4. The fourth concerneth victualles, ac- For food and cording to one anothers trading : And to bee trading. freely in the Markets, without standing bound to pay any new tributes.

s. That neither the one nor other fide, shall make any new alliance, wherein these Articles (hall be comprised, but with excepti- king of peace ons : And that in times of warre, the one fide shall not make peace except the other be therin comprehended also.

These are the Articles and principall points of the alliance. But the yeare following, the warre of Suaba happened, happenedby wherein the Grifons valiantly defended the warred their Frontiers, against the men of Austri- Suaba a. And by the ayde of their people, many times in like manner, and by the affiftance of the Switzers, divers brave battailes

Swirzers and

The Grisons llied with the French.

Chap.21

Peabe made

in the citty of Balile, for the

Switzets and

lohn laques

Marqueffe C

Marignano.

Grifons.

were wonne against the enemy. Yet after these victories hapning on either side. peace was (at length) made in the citty of Bafile, with the Emperor Maximillian; in which peace, the Grifons are also comprised. By this meanes, the beginning of the alliance was wholefome and happy to both parties, and afterward, in many wars where the Switzers were present, vnder wages of strange Princes their confederates: the Grisons alwayes marched as

kinde companions with them. It came to passe, that in the yeare one thousand, fine hundred, thirty and one: Iohn Iaques de Medicis, who afterward was Marquesse of Marignano, getting v. furped possession of the Castle of Mus, vpon the Lake of Coma, and having taken Clauenna from the Grisons, forraging the country thereof: many Cantons, according to their league of alliance, fent fuccour to the Grifons: by meanes whereof. the enemy was ouercome at last, and driuen far off. In our time, the Grifons were allied with the French, and with the cantons of Swetia, and went to warre together for the King: yet in fuch fort neuer. theleffe, that they fend oftentimes a regiment separated of the Switzers, & which hath his Colonell & Captaine in chiefe.

GHAP. XXI.

The Alliance of the Valaisians, or people of

THE name of Valaisians, or them of Valois, comprehendes three diftinct A description people, enclosed within the most high Mountaines, and dwelling in the Valley, from the fourfe of Rheine, fo farre as the Lake * Leman is, They were anciently called Viberines, Sedusians, or Segusiger by Gene-us and Lauans, some say, Schustans, and Veragrians. At this day, the Viberines and Schustans, are called the high Valaistans, and are dis uided into seuen Diocesses, or Wards of ten Parishes. The Veragrians, or lowe Valaifians, are subjects to the other: but the Bishop of Sion is Prince of all the country, having the foueraignty both temporall and spirituall, and he is called Count, or Gouernor of Valois. We have described in another Tract, apart by it felfe, not onely this Valley, but likewise all the most remarkable things of the Valaifians.

Fine Wardes or Diocesses of the Valaisians. made first alliance with Lucerna, Vri, and Vnderuald, in the yeare 1 4 1 7. They were then in warre against a Bishop, named againit a bithop, named William de Raron, and his Raron and. Father Guiscard, whom they had (by a Guiscatchis

popular tumult) forced from their hou- father. fes. The Bernians gaue affiftance to the Bishop and his Father, who were of their Bourgeffes: And for this cause the Valarfians defiring to have fuccour elsewhere: allied themselves with the fore-named 3. Cantons. Now fearing leste this might be an occasion of breeding quarrell betweene the Bernians, and the three Cantons allied with the Valaisians: the other cantons, who were as neuters to the bufinesse, laboured so earnestly, that the difference was pacified, and the Lords of Raron re-established in their goods. Before this alliance, the Valaifians had made one (for the space of ten yeares) with them of Contracted Berne, in the yeare 1250. Againe, after this warre, they contracted another alliance (for certaine time) with the Berni- Bernians. ans. But in the yeare 1475, they made a league defensive and offensive. And in the same yeare when wee wrote this Hiftory (to wit, 1575.) an hundred yeares being expired, after the beginning of this league: they renewed and confirmed it on eyther part, by magnificent Ambasfadors. Two yeares before they were leagued with the Bernians, they made a certaine agreement with them of Vri, Suits. and Vnderuald.

To conclude, in our time, vpon great differences mooned, concerning matters Differences of Religion, Ceremonies, life and manners of the Cleargy, whereof reformati- lives, and ma on was required, Swetia being divided into contrary parts; Adrian, Bishop of Sion, and feuen Wardes of the Valaifians, in the yeare 1533. made alliance with feauen Cantons, in the Towne of Fribourg, which Cantons made profession of the Roman Religion, as namely, Lucerna, Vri, Suits, Vnderuald, Zug, Fribourg, and Sollearre. In this Alliance / ouer & beside that which is ysed in the other)it

ners of the Cleargy.

Sion is Count and Gouer-

A Lake of

Opinions

concerning

the name of

Roruill, which

is an Imperi

all Towns or Citty.

Kotwill,or

was especially agreed, that they should aide one another, to maintaine the vied and approued Religion, to wit, that of the Romane Church, against all them that would depriue or violence it.

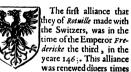
CHAP. XXII.

Of. Retwill.or Rotwill.

To Ome haue imagined, that

Tangatium, whereof Pto-lomy speaketh in his Geo-graphy, was Rotwill or Rot-uill, which Glareanus calleth Erythropolis, having changed the Aleman or Germane word, into a Greek word: but they much deceive themselves. For Ptolomy placeth Taxgatium in the country of the Grifons, and Rotuille is fcituated beyond Danubius in Germany, on the left fide of the River Niera, and very neere to the Spring-head of both those Floods or Riugrs. This citty is sufficiently renowned among the Imperials, for therein is a chamber of the Empire, which is vulgarly called Hofgricht, whereunto all the round neighbouring countries refort, for causes of appeale. Such as are contumacious, and fayle of their appearance there; are fent (by sentence of the Judges) into banishment from the Empire. It is faid, that this chamber was established by the Em-

with the can rons.



peror Conrad the third, and that it is 424.

veares fince.

betweene them. At last, in the yeare 1, 19. they contracted perpetuall alliance with all the Cantons of the Switzers. Dyring the warre of Suaba, they of Rotuille (engirt with enemies on all fides) shewed themselues alwayes faithfull to the Switzers; offering them amiably and liberally all their riches and men : which the Switzers could not accept, but onely defired them, to defend their citty against the enemy. Now in regard that Rotuille is scituated along the limits of Swetia, and that fuceour cannot bee brought to one ano- female in ther, but with danger, confidering, they rough the must passe through other mens lands: the midst of Swealliance speaketh expressely, that they must be carefull for drawing any war vppon them, or vpon any of their confederates.

And first of all: It is said that they may not make war with any wholoeuer, without the knowledge and confent of the of alliance Cantons. They shall give no succourto them and the cantons. will and confent of the Cantons. Moreouer, if they would have reason by Arms, for any injury or out-rage done vnto the; they must attempt nothing, but by advice of the Cantons. If their enemies will vndergoe judgement, fuch as the Cantons shall thinke to be honest and equall; the men of Rosuslle must also confent therto. If warre chance to bee moued among the cantons; they of Rotuille are to follow that part, which the most part of voyces do allow. The cantons are to conferue (with all their power) the Imperial cham- all Chamber ber of Rotuille, which (in the mean while) of Rotuille, thall vie no authority against the Switzers, or any of them. And if any stranger ded. shall cite or summon thether a Switzer: they are to make knowne, and he likewife, how farre he is to bee defended by priviledge. In breefe, they are not to molleft any Switzer in that jurisdiction.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Mulhouse.

Milhouse is a Towne in the county of Ferrara, or (as some do hold opinion) in the Territory of Bafile. It is thoght and nominathat in ancient times it was called Ariabinium. For in the Guide or Directer of

wayes, appointed by Antonius Augustus; this place is fet betweene Augusta Rauraca (which is Basile) and Vruncim. which some do thinke to be called at this day, Ensheym; then Mount Bris-Sac, Heluetum, and Stras-

bourg are named. In times of antiquity, Mulhouse was in number of the Imperial townes: but the Bishop of Mulhouseon Strasbourg was Gouernor thereof also of all Towner. the Towne

Aliance made

with Berne

for fifteene

rearcs, and

Towns of Colmar. It came to passe, that warre happened betweene Raoul of Habfourg, and the Bishop of Strasbourg, wherein Mulhouse was taken from the Bishop, & the Castle ruined. After which time, Mulhouse was againe re-obtained, and numbred among the Imperiall Citties and Townes.

Her first alliance with the Switzers. was made about the yeare 1464. For in regard that the neighboring Gentlemen mollested the Towne, and narrowly watched all occasions to affault it a the cittizens made alliance with them of Berne, for fifteene yeares, as also with Fribourg and Solleurre, and by meanes of the Bermans intercession, the other seuen Cantons tooke the Towne into their protection. Which proued so displeasing to the Noble-men, that these private enmittes converted themselves (soone after) into open warre: which caused the Switzers immediately, to fend and plant Garrisons in Mulhoufe. Afterward, all the Cantons brought their troopes into the field, and came with great affiftance to releeue Mulhouse.

In the end, hauing befiedged the towne of Waldshaut, appertaining to the house of Anstria: they compelled the Gentlemen to come to some equal conditions of peace. Afterward, they of Mulhoufe were received for fellow-Bourgesses with them of Bafile, and thereby more strictly vnited to the Switzers. Nine yeares after. the 19.day of lanuary they made alliance with all the thirteene cantons. The conditions were all alike to the alliance of Rotuille, as well in regard of warres, as leagues with firangers.

ment a part by it selfe, as also liberall frachifes and priviledges.

The first alliance of the

of Bienna, was made with the men of Berne, in the yeare 1203. to ridde the country of certaine robbers and theeues, which wandred there in fo great numbers, as almost no

way had any security for passage. In this alliance, they of Strasbourg, Bafile, Fribourg and Solleurre were also comprized. Three years after, in regard of some great differences, which they had with their neighbours: they made a particular alliance with the Bernians. Their third alliance was made in Anno 1352.and fifteen yeares after, because John de Viana, Bishop John de Viana of Bafile, (a man of turbulent fpirit) wold Bishop of Ba. not suffer any of his neighbours to liue in quiet: they of Bienna, desirous to prouide for their owne case and tranquility, bours. ioyned themselves more strictly with the men of Berne, by giving each to other the right of fellow-Bourgeiles. The Bithop very angry at this vnion, mustred together some troopes of horse, and (at vnawares) ranne vpon them of Bienna, and claptyp in prison the Authors of this affociation.

When the men of Bernaheard of this deede, they came to fuccour their fellow Bourgesses, tooke (by force) the Castle, which the Byshop had in Bienna, set the prisoners at liberty, and made warre vpon the Byshoppe, as also on them of Solleurre, his affociates. In this warre, they tooke and ruined many places, which were in subjection to the byshop.

CHAP. XXIIII.

The fituation and efface of

Ieme is at the ende of a very, pleafant Lake; abounding with plenty of fifth & round engire (on all fides) with goodly Vineyards. It is vn-

der the government of the Bishop of Ba-file; and yet it enjoyeth lawes and regi-

CHAP. XXV.

Of Geneua.

Eneua is the last and vemost Cittie of the Allobroges, of which (amongst other of Antiquity,) Cofar hath mentaries.

ance of them of Rotuille

lul.Laf in con The Scienation and anniquirie of Ge-

Geneua cal-

name of Au-

The Countes

of Geneway

and of Sa-

uoye, great enimies to

the liberties

zens of Ge

of the citti-

пеца

led by the

relia

270

It is neere to the limits of the Switzers, at the end of the Lake Lemanus, and an issue of Rhone commeth into it . Not onely the words of Julius Cefar, but also many antiquities there found do restifie the ancientnesse of the citty. Many famous Monuments might have beene feene there. but that the citty was oftentimes ruined by enemies, and much destroyed and defaced by fire. For I finde in ancient chronicles, that in the time of Heliogabalus, Genena was embraced with fo fierce a fire. as hardly was any one house to be found. that stood free from it. The Emperour Aurelianus restored the citty againe, being to pitifully diffigured, granted it great priniledges, and gaue it the right of Fairs, and of the Empire, because it was scituated most commodiously. Hee called it Aurelia, according to his owne name: but after his death. The took her ancient name againe. Afterward it was forradged (as many other citties were) by diners barbarous Nations, intruding themselues into France. And some 250.yeares after, or thereabout, within the space of 7. yeares, fire tooke it in such terrible manner, as the most part of the citty was quite ruined.

The Bishoppricke of Geneva, informer times had very ample priniledges & franchifes: yet notwithflanding, the cittizens held their liberties to themselves. and alwayes carefully conferred they leagues perpetuall with the Bifhop, according as they were left vnto them by their ancestors. The Counts of Geneway were great enemies to their liberties : who (neuerthelesse) were vassailes of the Bishoppricke, and held their Earledomes of him by fealty. So in like manner were the Counts of Sauoye; but the cittizens maintained their rights and priniledges couragiously against the Counts.

In the yeare 1420, when Amias, the first Duke of Sauoye, laboured to obtain of Pope Martin, by way of enterchange, the right and superiority (as they call it) ouer the citty of Geneua: the Bishop named Iohn de Pierre-scize, made an agreement for him, and all his successors with the cittizens, that he nor they should at any time confent, that the liberties of Genena (hould be exchanged or alienated. If eyther he, or any of his fucteffors did otherwife; the cittizens might hold and ranke him or them in the number of traitors and conspiring enemies. Some while after this, the Emperor Maximillian, hauing amply published his Sonne in law. Philebert, Duke of Sauove, Vicar of the Empire in those parts: then againe, Philebert and his brother Charles. Strone to fubiect Geneua vnder their awe, pretending the title of this new right, and priniledges of the Vicarship, given in former times to the Counts of Sauoye, by the Emperour Charles the fourth. Who (notwithstanding) tooke from Count Amias, all action, power, iurifdiction, and preheminence, ouer the citty and territory of

While these practifes and conspira-cies of the neighbouring Princes lasted, they of Geneua maintained themselves heedfully in amity with the Switzers and (diners times) made alliance with the Bernians and Fribourgers, for certain years. At length, they combined alliance and fellow-Bourgeship perpetually, with the of Berne, and confirmed it more strictly, in the yeare 1 526. Then in regard of the religions alteration, the Duke of Sauore, and the Bishop of Geneva, made war vppon the cittizens, they being fuccoured by them of Berne. This alliance hath bene (fince then) renewed, and many friendly motions made, to allie Geneva with the Cantons: but I know no reason, why it is nor executed and done."

CHAP. XXVI.

Of New Castle.

HE Citty of New-Caffle, is feated in the country of New-caffle, the Auantici, ypon the lake which is called the Lake of typ's 6200 New-Caffle, at the head entrousy. whereof is another little Towne, called of the Austr Tuerdun. New-Castle is both a citty and ties

country and the Count thereof was chofen by fuccession of the Counts of New-Castle: but fince, falne to the Counts of Hochberg, the Marquelle of Roselin, and to two Dukes of Longueuille. During the warre betweene King Lewes the twelfth, and the Switzers, the men of Berne (in

A good and fingular kind e of governmer

erued among

name of all the cantons their confederates) possessed themselves of the citty of New-castle, and of the whole county, and placed there a Gouernor. This order vew-castle by the other cantons continued, except that of Zwich, who having loft their ranke; at the returne of it to their turne againe, they should command at New-cattle two veares together.

Chap. 27.28.

Gouernor

e Cantons

But when the time drew neere, Jone of Hechberg, widdow to the Duke of Lonqueuille preuailed fo much, as (with cerraine conditions) the county was furrendred back againg in the years to 29. Somtime before, this county had beene allied from the Cantons of Berne, Lucerna, Fribourg, and Sallewreeby meanes of fome Articles, which were confirmed agains vpon this restoring or surrenden. At this day the counties of New-castle are particularly allied with the men of Berne, or the Bernians.

राजारी का अनुसर्भ भी Drawi CHAP, XXVII in the feel of the control of the

of those people that are concerned (in com-

an ares name, vi. of they Penald be paid in wages, and harges along the war

third part of our Swirzers common by the Swirzers common by the Swirzers. Itis necessary then, to fay fome-what of the time and by what title, they became fibiots to the Switzers. Among them there are fome Townes, which wee may tearme (tipendaries) because (at their own proper cofts and charges) they march along in warre with the Switzers. Neuertheleffe, they governe them felnes by their owne lawes, and make election of their Magistrates; & yet the maine foueraignty appertaineth to the Switzers, to whole hawes and Edicts, those Townes stand bound to obey. Anciently they belonged to the house of America, but during the warres against that house, the Switzers became Mafters of the neighbouring countries, and thefe Townes yeelded thefelites to them vpon certaine conditions to wit that they should be as well subject

to them as to the house of Austria, their ancient priviledges faued and excepted. Those Towns are Bada, Bremgarten, Fraisuenfeld, Mellingen, and Rafber will.

CHAP. XXVIII

Of Bada.

Add is a Towne vppon the Riuer Limagus, or Limma-thus, and so called, in regard anthe belonging to the of hot waters, whereof there switzers, whereof the Switzers, taines in that place, whereunto men and

women vie to refort (in great numbers)

from divers countries. For this cause

fome have called it the Towne of Baths,

others, the Caftle. According to cuftome

of our Elders, who called Baths, those

places where there were hot Springs and

Fountaines : fo may wee tearme this the

the Tarbes . In Germany, the Baths of

The Bathes : And in the inscription of

Wettingen, they of Bada are called. The

This Towne is one of the most ancient

for the Mountaines, which close 32 toyne

Swetia into France, and into Italy, wee

must goe through Bada, then ouer the

lands of Zurich; from thence into the

country of Ergow and thwart ouer Sweet

tia. In ancient times, this Towne had two

Caftles, one feated vpon an high Rocket,

which is nothing now at this day, but old

decayed ruines (being spoyled and defas

ced by the Switzers as we shall declare a-

non.) And the other at an end of a bridge,

cittizens of the Baths.

Switzers Baths. As in Italy there are the Of Baths in Baths of Statiell, and others & In France | divers counshe Baths of dix of the Convenes, and of

Space or Spaw and of Aix. In like mane In England ner, Bada, Towne of the Marquifare of likewiters Bada in a certaine infeription is namely Baths.

of Swetia by the testimony of Carnelius

Tacitus, who tearmeth it a Towne or City The teffimoty, having in abundance, and with great pleafure, very wholefornewaters . The lius Tacitus, fame Author faith, that the Romans took concerning notice of a Garrison in the Castle of Bib de, and reputedit selfe to be a Garrison:

together in that quarter, do locke up the country. To passe out of Germany and 1. drier har rowards

led be culse.

Anagreemen made betweene the Bishop and cittizens of Geneua, concerning the liberties of the Citty.

The Emperor

engageth låds

Zurich, and of

Bada ioyned to the house of Austria, & revolued to the Switzers.

By what came into the power of the Switzers.

A Councel of war, & there

answer retur-

ned vnto the

In the felfe. Came councel it was decreeed, that men did not stande bound to keepe Faith with them that were cal led heretikes

where (in our time) dwelt the Bayliffes or 1 Gouernours, which were fent thither by the Cantons . Bada hath had (in former times) Counts, the race whereof are quite exiinct, and their fuccessors have bene the Lords of Habspourg, who ioyned that County to the house of Austria, and diuers other goods. But from the house of Austria, Bada came into the Switzers hands, at the time of the Councel of Constance, in manner following.

Fredericke of Austria, brought Pope John the 22. out of the Councell & maincained him against the Emperour and the Councell. For which cause, by the Decree of the Councell, he was excommunicated, banished from the Empire, and his goods confifcated. The Emperour himfelfe, with an affembled Army, from the Townes and Citties of Germanie and Suaba, the Duke of Banaria, and some others, made warre vpon him. Also commandement was given to the Switzers, on behalfe both of the Emperour and the Councell to affaile Frederick with al their forces. Whereof they made refufall, alledging that they could not doe it, and their honor faned: in regard of the peace formerly made (for fifty weares follow) ing) with them of Austria: confirmed by Oath and Letters Parents ? The Fathers of the Councell made answere to this excufe of the Switzers: that Fredericke was an enemy to the Church, excommunicated and banished by publike order . This warre concerned the good of Church, who was offended and injuried (in her members) by Frederick.

Wherefore, if in this cause the Switzers vndertooke Armes, according to the command of the Emperour, they should do a good and holy worke. They should also well consider with themselves, how much it woulde wounde their honour ! if (in contrary opposition) they continuedidle excuses, which would wrap them vp in the fame cenfure and condemnation with Frederick. Ouer and befire all this: according to the aduice of the Ambassadors of England, Denmarke, Sweden, Normay, Bohemia, Polonia, and Princes, Gentlemen, and Lawyers, the Emperour declared, that the Switzers might (vvith a good and fafe confeience) make warre vppon Fredericke, notwithstanding the peace made. Because that the Subjects of

the Empire, in all actions doe except expressely or couertly, the right and Maiefty of the Emperor.

of the Emperor.
The Emperor sent a copy of this arest the Decree and decree to the Switzers, enjoying lent by the them agains to make war on Fredericke, Emperour b and by the same meanes adjudged to the empire, all that which they of Austria had engaged to them before. Promising alfo, not to make any peace with Frede= ricke til the Switzers were first reintegrated into their former agreement. The Switzers being then perfwaded with fuch reasons leuted their Atmes ; but because they were to Warre in the name of the Emperor, and of the Romane Empyre, they demanded wages of the Emperout: declaring, there was no reason, that they should furnish themselves at they were demand we charge, and the fruite of the victory fall ges of the la into other mens hands; and that theyr heir fenis wealth was not sufficient to furnish such expences.

The Emperor thought this demand to be made in equity neuertheleffe because he was somewhat empty of money, hee agreed with the Switzers, that all the goodes of the house of Austria, which they possessed already, or could conquer in this warre; they should enjoy it in the Empires name, vntil they should be paid their wages, and charges during the war. By efectalidetters, the Emperor exhor- The Empered them of Zurich to enter the field and ron Letten granted them (in title of Fee) the Count Zurich trey which is beyond Mount Albin, named the Free Province, which they of Austria held. According hecreto the veare one shouland, four of hundred, and fifteene, about the fifteenth day of April, the men of Zurich, with their troops well preparedement to beliedge a Towne feated on the River of Rull, named Mellingen and on the third day tooke it by composition. From thence they went to Bremderten, where the Cantons of Suits & Zug iovned with them . They of Bremgarten; (by example of the other) yeelded the felues to the Switzers, under protection of the Empire.

At the same time, the Lucernians tooke a Townenamed surfer. The Bernians, assisted by them of Solleurre, Bienna, the County of Wen-castle, and some others befide, got into their power Zefingen, Arberg, Arow, Lentzbourg & Brug,

The towne of

Bada vpon enditions of

tes, to breake the blowes of the Switzers.

counter-

The Con-

Fredericke was reconciled to the Emperor Sigismond, who sent immediately his Ambaffadours to the campe of the Switzers, to give them command for the ceafing of warre. But the Switzers feeling yet the outrages which the Garrison of Bada had done vnto them, fo foon as the truce time was expired, fo pressed them within, that two dayes after Pentecost, the caftle was delivered to them, which they burned and quite ruined, as soone as the enemy had avoided it. On the Morrow, the Count of Togge, Ambassadour from the Emperor, being arrived at the Switzers campe, to command them agayne, that they should give over armes, found the castle to be taken and spoyled. This

While these things were in working;

by the intercession of the Duke of Baua-

ria, and the Burggraue of Nuremberg.

done nothing, but in case of open & law-Then, as the Emperor was ready to go for Spain, to fetch thence Pierre de Lune,

strooke somewhat deadly vnto the Noble

mens hearts: but they had no occasion

to complaine, because the Switzers had

together with the country of Ergow. As | that he might be Pope, who afterwardes for them of Zurich, after they had taken the forenamed Townes, they beliedged Bads. All the other Cantons except Bern iound with them, for they of Austria held no place in Swetia of greater ftregth then this: and the Garrison of Bada had much ouer-trauelled the Switzers, especially them of Zurich, and this was the reason, that the Cantons resolved to force both the Towne and Castle. As for the towne, after it had beene beaten with the Cannon, for the space of three weekes, without ceasing, it yeelded. But the foldiours ftill defended themselues in regard, of the fortreffe, and held out well, after reddition of the Towne. The Switzers on the other fide, having received fuccour from them of Berne, did dayly beate the place, and pressed the Garrison to yeelde themfelues. At length, the Souldiers having no more stones, arrowes, darts, nor anie other munition proper for defence, truce being granted for some dayes: vpon condition, that if within a limited time Fredericke of Austria did not deliver the from this fiedge, they would quit the place, and deliuer the castle into the power of the Switzers.

was called Benet the eleuenth; beeing in need of money, because his cofers vvere emptied (hauing disburfed great payes, without any intermission in the precedent warres, and for the affaires of the Councell) he engaged to them of Zurich, Bada, Bremgarten, Mellingen, Surfey, and the Lands to them belonging. Also to them of Berne, the country of Ergow, vvhich they had taken, as already hath beene declared: yet paying a great fum of crowns. At this day, the country of Ergow is polfeffed by them of Berne onely. The yeare following, they of Zurich made a part of that which was ingaged to them, ouer to the Cantons of Lucerna, Suits, Vnderuald, Zug, and Glaris. From the beginning, the men of Vri

vvould not have any part; as thinking, that the detention of these places, contradicted the treaty of peace made with further infor-Fredericke. But after they vnderstood the cheir confede reasons of their confederates, who protefled (in themselues) the same defire of obferuing the peace: but that by commaund of the Emperor, and of the Councel, they vndertooke armes. Next, that by the will and confent of them both, they poffeffed now those places for wages, and price of warre-service, and held them on the faith of the Emperor, the foueraigne Lorde; yet for a great summe of money, vvhich they had layd out & disburfed . The men Vriand Beme of Pri having heard these Reasons, and accepted into other of the like Nature, entred into part of this engagement. The Bernians also vvere received in at the length.

Vri stood 'free

tion at daft.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Bremgarten, and Mellingen.

Bringarten is a Towne, fituated on the River of Ruff, which encloseth it in the midst almost, in forme of a demy Island, what manner a great Germane mile beneath Lucerna. Bremgan It appeareth by the ancient priviledges of this Towne, that it was (hererofore) numbred among the Imperials. Neuertheles, it became (afterwards) fubiect vnto the Counts of Hablbourg, then to the Princes

A description of the scitua-

tion of Mel-

lingen.

of Austria descended of them. But it is not well knowne at what time, nevther by what title, they came to make themfelues Lords thereof.

Mellingen is a little small Towne vpon the selfesame River, about half a German mile below Bremgarten. It hath alwayes beene under the dominion of the Counts of Habsbourg. These two Towns were taken (as Bada) in this war which the Switzers made vnder the Empires name, and then afterward, the Emperour Sigismond pawned it to the Cantons: vpon condition, that all their ancient rightes, priuiledges, and customes, should remain entire, and the Cittizens to yeelde the same dutie to the Cantons, as formerly they had done vnto the Counts of Habspourg. and Princes of Austria their Lordes. At this very day, both these Townes are vnder gouernement of the eight first Can-

CHAP, XXX.

Of Rasperwill.

The forme & fcituation of Rasperwill

Two factions of Austrians and Switzers in Rasperwill.

How Rasper will became ioyned to the Cantons, and

A S concerning Rasperwill, it is a town on the Lake of Zurich, wherin dwelt (fometimes the Counts of Rafperwil, who had to their successours the Countes of Habspourg, that gouernd likewise in these quarters. In the yeare 1458 the Switzers became masters thereof. There were then two factions in this town, the one of Au-Strians, and the other of Switzers. Duke Sigismond, tooke some of the Switzers partakers, and brought them as prisoners to Infpruk. The rest amazed at this deede. fled into Swetia; but by entermife of the Cantons, they all re-entred Rasperwillagaine. For the Cantons protested out alowde, that they would come and affault the towne, except the prisoners might be enlarged, and the banished received.

It came to passe the yeare following, that the Switzers made warre on them of Constance, who had done them some despightfull outrages. Peace being made, as they of Vri, Suits Vnderuald, and Glaris returned homeward to their houses, they demanded victuals for their troopes, and passage thorow Rasperwil, which they eafily obtained by the pursuite of their partakes. But being entred more frong, and

in greater number then the Cittizens (the most part whereof were Switzers in affeation) they compelled the Cittizens to fweare fidelity to them. So that from that time, Rafferwill remained in the power of those foure Cantons:who(neuerthelesse) left the citizens to the fame liberty as they had vnder the Dukes of Austria.

CHAP.XXXI. Of Framenfeld:

'Wo yeares after the taking of Rafterwill, the featen Cantons then being Howthe ton in warre against Sigismond, Duke of Au. same to be to ken by the, stria, tooke Framenfeld, the chiefest town Canton. in all the country of Turgow. There were reasons and occasions enow, whereby this warre was vndertaken and attempted. The Duke had imprisoned Cardinall Cufano, by shoppe of Brescia, and because he did not release him, so soone as Pope Pius (who formerly was named Aneas The causes Syluius) fent him command to doe it, hee this warre was therefore excommunicated . But, because this Thunder-bolte did not difmay him, and he appealed from that fentence, to the next Councell : the Pope commanded the Switzers to defend the Churches rightes, and to fet yoon Sigifmond. The Cantons, who had as much The Pope commanded credite with the one, as with the other, the ware. obeyed the Popes command: but there happened other occasions to induce this

The towne of Winterduer, in the countie of Kybourg, appertaining to the Can- Small sparker ton of Zurich, was subjected to the Duke can cause and kindle a great of Austria. There is every yeare in that fire, and trueplace a Fayre, on the day of Saint Gal, the lour fulpition fixte of October, whereat the Countrey duce great people round about doe meere in great harme. numbers. They of Kybourg beingscome thither, the gates over thut against them, vppon a finister suspition of the inhabitants, that they of Zurich would furprize the Towne, during the Faire time, & had therefore made fome preparation.

Now, as the Bayliffe established by the Canton of Zurich in those quarters, required that the Gates might be fet open, and that they of Kybourg might haue free trading, according to theyr accustomd maner, promiting that the town

should

Anew Garrifon is planted at Winter du-

The Baylyvickes gouer-led by the 7. If Cantons

THE common Baylywickes, are gouerned (in part) by the seauen first Cantons, and partly by some other with them. There are nine Baylywicks, or Go-

Of Bada & Turgovv.

hould receive no endamagement; notwithstanding all this, no credite would be given vnto his words. As a counterchange of this injury, they of Zurich prohibited their people from bringing cither victuals or merchandizes to Winterduer. The Duke of Austria on the other fide, standing uppon his guard, placed a garrison in the towne. These things hapned before the excommunication from But yet there was another occasion for

the mooning of this warre. There were

two brethren. Gentlemen of mark, of the

Itis now called both Stiria country of Stiria, named Vigilius, and Berand Austria.

One wrong

or injury dra-

rech on ano.

ther, and to

o meane

Chap.32,33,34.

cruelty is deaf heare any iu-

nard Gradlers. They of Austria, had infor ced them from their houses, and despoyled them of all their goods: without excepting to much as the dowrie belonging to Bernards wife, who was of the house of Starckenberg. After they had follicited the Duke a long time, to restore theyr goods againe, and neuer could obtain fo much as that hee would admit but what iustice did allow:at length, they withdrew themselues into Swetia, and were receyued as Bourgesses into Zurich . Afterward, having brought a little town, called Eglison: they made warre on the Duke of Austria, alsisted by the men of Zurich. The Duke placed a new garrifon at Win. terduer, but after the t copes of Zurich were drawne thence: some difference fel betweene the Garrison, and the inhabitants of Kybourg. So that once more they of Zurich (having demanded fuccour of their confederates) went foorth into the fielde, going to befielde Winterduer. At this time then, to wit, in the yeare, one thousand, foure hundred and fixty, Dieffenhow, a Towne on the Rheine, in the country of Turgow, this country also, and Framenfeld were conquered, and reduced under the power of the Switzers.

CHAP, XXXII.

Of the nine Baylywicks, or Governments.

ucraments in all, to wit; the Countie of Bads, the three Provinces, Turgow, Sargans, the Rhegusces, that is to fay, the valley of Rheine, which they call Rinthall, Lugano, Locarna, Mendrifa, and the vale Madia. The foure last are beyond the Alpes, in Italy, towards the Millainnefer, & fpank Italian the other the Germane tongue. Sargans, and the valley of Rhinchalliare on the Frontiers of the Grifons: the other 24 are feated within the confines of ancient Swetia.

CHAP: XXXIII.

Of Bada and Turgow.

IN this manner (then) were the Towne and County of Bada, Turgow, and Frawenfeld, by the Switzers conquered; at fuch times, and by those meanes, as formerly hath bene related. The Cantons of Zurich, Lucerna, Vri. Suites. Vnderualde, Zug, Claris, and Berne, commaunded at Bada. They are Lords of Turgow, except the Canton of Bern, which hath no part therein. As concerning the taking knowledge of criminal causes, the Emperour Criminal cau-Sigifmond tooke it from Frederick of Austria, at the time of the Councell of Constance, and engaged it to the City of Confance, which kepte it till the yeare 1499. when the Emperor Maximillian attributed that authority to the Switzers, by a treaty of peace which hee made with the. And therefore the feuen first Cantons aboue named, are Lords of Turgow. But concerning the knowledge of crimes; appellations and fines or amercements. which may happen, as oftentimes they doe: that appertaineth to the tenne first Cantons, who made warre agaynft the Emperour Maximillian, and the League of Suaba.

> CHAP. 34. Of the three first Provinces.

NOW, to speake of the three Prouin-ces, which are along beyond the Riuer of Ruf (to diftinguish them from the free Prouince, beyond the Mountain Albins, which was given to them of Zurich, by the Emperor Sigifmond, as we have already declared before:) they were taken by the Switzers, at the very fame time

quest hath bin already decia-

The authority belonging Cantons.

oler

227

Concerning the feituation free PropinThe scituation

belonging

ding to the au

tell you, that we call certaine Castles & Villages, which lye along the River of Ruf. both about and below Bremgarten, was thus giue free Prouinces. This name was given them (in mine opinion) because that the three villages, to wit, Meyenberg, Richenfee and Ergow, had anciently kept (each one) her jurisdiction. Magistrates, and Officers by themselves : so that they seequarter was called the Countie of Rora, Arow.

Some difference among the Cantons. concerning the conquest of the free Prouinces.

The Lucernians pleaded their Title ia right of theyt

¥ri lovned yeeres after, & had a part in the gouern

when Bada was conquered. Heere let me med as three feuerall Provinces, nowe ioyned all into one. In times past, all that and fo it was named by Henry the 5. Emperour, in a priviledge of the Abbey of Muren. The castle belonging vnto the Countes of Rora, was in the Towne of

At fuch time, as (by command of the Emperor and the Councel of Constance) the Switzers made warre on Fredericke of Austria, they of Lucerna conquered those places, which are along the River of Ruft, and namely that county of Rora. After the warre, when they contended vvho should be Lords thereof only : the Cantons of Zurich, Suits, Vnderwald, Zug, and Glaris opposed against them, and in diuers dayes held at Begkenried, Vadernald, Suits, and in the campe before Bremgarten, they thewed, that (from the beginning of the warre) the Cantons had agreed, that they (hould be Lords (in common) of all places in the countrey of Ergow, that should be won in that Warre. Now, although the Lucernians maintained, that they had given charge thereof to their Ambassadors; yet notwithstanding, after the testimonies were gathered both of the one fide & other, the Lords of Berne beeing appointed judges of the variance pronounced, that thefe 5. Cantons had part in all the country.

Tenne yeares after that, by confent of the fixe Cantons, they of Vri were joyned with them, and hadde a great part also in that gonernment. And therfore Zurich, Lucerna, Vri, Suits, Vnderuald, Zug, and Glaris, are Lords thereof at this day. The countrey is not great; and therefore, of what Canton foeuer the Bayliffe is , hee makes not his residence there; but when necessity doth so require, he comes once a yeare to judge fuites in law, and then he is lodged (most often) in the Abbey of Muren, which is rich enough, and well for them that dwell beyond the Rheine, of Rheine. builded. builded.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the Sargans.

A Mong the Grifons, the Sarunetes liued long time fince; but at this day, both their towne and countrey is vulgarly called Sargans, whereof diners ætymologies are made. But in the auncients uerfitte of Chartes, this Towne is named Sarunegans, which is a word derived from the name of Sarunetes, whereof Pliny maketh mention. Now, because the dwelling of the Sarunetes was at the foring of the Riuer Inn, where now they of Engadin and of Munstertal make their abiding; the inhabiting Sargans (now in question) it may be are yssued from them there: or else might take their name of the River called Sar, which runneth thorough the Towne.

In former times, this countrey belonged to the Counts of Werdenberg, who in of Werden that respect were called Countes of Sar-gans. Afterward they pawned it vnto the Austrian Princes, and at another time to the Counts of Torge, but redeemed it againe, and possessed it til the yeare 1482. And then, George Count of Werdenberg, Sargani Ok fold it to the feuen first Cantons, who fent to the Swita Bayliffe thither each one by his turne, zers. that commanded the whole country, & kept in the castle where the Countes were wont to dwell. As for the Towne of Sargans, although it is subject vnto the Switzers: yet notwithstanding, it enjoyeth hir priviledges, and electeth Magistrates that administer lustice, and also deale in criminall causes.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Rhegusces: now adayes called Rhinthall. That is to fay : The Valley of Rheine.

THE Rhegusces are of the Grisons countrey, dwelling on the bankes of thall, and the bankes of Rheine, aboue the Lake of Constance. As the countil

where are Bregents and Velcure: they are yet to this day, subjects to the House of Austria. But they on the hither fide, as Rhinek and Alistetten two little Townes. and the valley tending toward the Count of Werdemberg, they are obedient to the Switzers. Heeretofore, all this countrey appertained vnto them of Austria, who pawned it to the Lords of Ion. But at the time of the Councell of Constance, when as Fredericke of Austria was banified by the Emperour Sigismond: the Count of

The valley of Rhein seized Togge, the Emperours adopted sonne; by the Count seized on this valley of Rheine, and other of Togge a. places belonging vnto the house of Authe Emperor.

The valley folde to them

of Appenzell.

How Rhin-

thall came to

Chap.37.

Stria, by disburfing money for them, to whom they were engaged, Afterwards, this Count pawned this Valley of Rheine, for a great summe of money, to two Gentlemen, Fluldrich and Conrad Beierer, brethren. In the yeare, 1460. laques Beierer ! their Brother and heyre, having some variance with them of Appenzel, and fearing his vnablenes of keeping this valley against their strength: willingly folde them his rights, and refigned the engagement. After that, this valley remained in the power, and under dominion of Appenzel, for the space of thir-

ty yeares, or thereabout. But when it fo fell out, that the men of

Appenzel were troubled in warre, against the Abbot of S. Gall, his fubicats, and the Cittizens also, and the Abbey of Rosach belong to the (new built) quite defaced: the Canton'd Switzers, confederates with the Abbot, roustred up their troops, and called their other allies to them, by whose helpe they maintained the Abbot, and condemned them of Appenzel in a great fine. Which made them to require peace, and befide, to offer them the rule of the Valley of Rheine: the possession whereof fell (as a recompence) to the Cantons of Zurich, Lucerna, Suits, and Glaris. After this, they parted with a portion of this Seigneury, to the Cantons of Vri, Vnderuald, and Zug, who had assisted the: likewise to Appenzel, who indeed wer ancient Lords thereof. So that (even to this day) thefe laine. By an accord made at Fribourg, he eight Cantons, each after other) fend a Bayliffer fent by the eight Cantons, each after other 1 fend a Bayliffe into this valley, who makes his abiding in a finall Towne, called khinek, confirmed this donation of his owne roy-

the valley for Rulers there at one end of the valley, fornewhat about the place, where the Rheine enters into

the Lake of Constance.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the Gouernments and baylywickes which are in Italy.

Foure Bailywicks do yet remain, which the Switzers call Baylywicks beyond Baylywickes the Mountaines, because they are quite beyond the ouer the Alpes. The first is Lugano or Luca, a Towne vppon the Lake, which fome call the Lake of Gauna; others, the Lake of Lugano. This Lake is in the Luganoor' middest of two other Lakes, to wit, that of Coma on the left had, and on the right hande of the Lake Major, whereinto it shutteth vp it selfe.

The second Baylywicke, and neerest Locarna the of all to this former, is Locarna : a very pleafant Towne, at the head of the Lake Major, sometimes beautified with verie goodly and strong Castles, and accounted the cheefest in Lombardie, next vnto

that of Millaine. The Bayliwick of Mendrifa, on the left Mendrifa the hand of the Lake of Gauna, maketh the third.

third. And for the last, there is the Vale of The vale Ma-Madia, which depended heeretofore vp- dia the fourth

on Locarno as Mendrifa on Lugano. These foure Baylywickes fell to the Switzers, in the yeare, 1513. by the Donation of Maximilian Sforza, Duke of Howandin Millaine . For, hee hauing driven the these severall Frenchout of Italy, by the counfell and Baylywickes authority of Pope Inline, and being holpen therein by the Venetians and Swit- by the Switzers, he made a present of these four Bay- | zers. lywickes (abutting on the Frontiers of their countrey) to the Switzers. He gaue also the Vale of Tellina to the Grisons . But three yeares after, King Frances hauing vanquished the Switzers at Marignano, expelled the Duke, and re-vnited to his Crowne the Dukedome of Mil-

dome of Millaine did the like. All the Cantons fend their bayliffs the ther by turnes, except that of Appenzell, which was not in the number of the Ca

al authority, as his fucceffors in the duke-

Bayliwicke.

came to bee

Rellizona in

obedience to

three of the Cantons

yet recouered by the Dukes of Millaine.

Chap.41.

Leagues with

nd Cities.

ces of most

note and ob-

tons, when as these countries were first given to the Switzers : but they were receiued in a yeare after onely.

CHAP, XXXVIII.

Of Bellizona.

WE might ranke among these Bay-liwickes of *Italy*, the Towne of Rellizona, which obeyeth to the Cantons of Vri. Suits, and Vnderuald. This Towne (in former times) appertained vnto the Countes of Mifauk, who were reiected by the Dukes of Millaine. Afterward, hauing found meanes to enter againe by intelligence; they fold it to them of Vri and Vnderuald. But the Duke of Millain recouered it againe, and tooke it from the Switzers, by the fame fubtle tricks which the Counts of Mifauk had vsed to reposfesse it . This hapned about the yeare,

After that time, the Switzers made

Bellizona veil ded to the Caton of Vri-

many voyages ouer the Mountaines to recouer Bellizona. At length, in the yeare 1500. they got into possession of it agen. For, in regard of continuall warres betweene the Sforzaes and the French: the men of Bellizona willing to prouide for their owne fafety, yeelded themselves to the Canton of Vri. The French, becomming mafters of the Millainefes; labored often (but all in vain) to regain the town. Finally, at fuch time as the Dukes of Millaine gaue the fore-named foure Baylywickes to the Cantons, they were also in full possession on of Bellizoconfirmed in the possession of Bellizona.

Three Bayly-wickes in Bellizona.& how their gouernred equally.

The Switzers

The whole country is divided into 2. Bayliwicks, to witte, Bellizona, the vale Brune, and Riviera; and in like maner gouerned (turne after turne) by those three ment is order Cantons, that they have a Balywicke belonging to each one. As if Pri doe eftablish a Gouernour or Baylisse at Bellizona: Suits placeth one also in the vale Brune, and Vnderuald one at Riviera. Then beginning againe, Vri commends one to Riviera, Vndervald to the vale Brune, and Suits to Bellizona . And because that the Baylywick of Riviera is of the least reuennew, most commonly, he that hath bene Bayliffe at Bellizona, is established nexte after at Riniera.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the Alliances made by the Cantons, with Kings and Princes neere neighbouring to

Emosthenes, the most eloquent of all the Gracian Orators, a man woonderfully well acquainted with affayres of State, and (aboue all) a deare Louer of his Countreyes liberty, wrote thus. Ouergreat familiarity with Tyrants. Should be fusto bee reposed in them, especially if they bee neighbours, because every King and Tyrant and experienis an enemy to liberty, and contrary to lawes, ced by his The euent and successe attending on such cases, did well witnesse, that this Learned man had given very wholefome counfell to the Athenians, yea, and to all Greece. For Phillip the sonne of Amyntas (against whom Demosthenes madehead) and the fucceeding Kings of Macedon oppressed the liberty of the Greekes, by a dissembled amity, and working certaine combinations and alliances, denifed onely for their owne aduantage.

The case standing thus, I thinke, that The Switzen many stand thus amazed, what shoulde hauebinwonmoue the ancient Switzers to make fuch dred at, for alliances as they have done with ffraungers, Kinges and Princes, their Neighbours. But heere is to bee noted and obferued, that all alliances doe not hurt one like another in a Commonwealth. They are to be mistrusted, which do import a league offensive and defensive, & overgreat familiarity. Otherwise, for the benefite of peace, it is needfull sometimes. that Princes and great Lords nere neigh-bouring, should ally themselues togither, for the better vse of some rightes, and the easier mannaging of their affayres. The ancient Switzers made many fuch alliances of peace and amity. And if at any time they were knit more frielly to fome The prouidet King or Prince, it was not inconfiderately done: but, as appeareth by the tenour Switzers, in of the alliances, the conditions wer fuch, Leagues. as their liberties could no waies be eafily touched or wronged.

What allian

ces are faid to

be dangerous and what are indifferent,&

The Learned

& wife coun-fel of the Gre

Clement the seauenth. With neighbouring Princes; as the Dukes of Austria; With neighof Sauoye, of Millaine, and of Wertem. berg. Then, with the Byshoppes of Con-Hance, the Citties of Suabas and others With Bifhops on the Lake of Constance, and on the Riuer of the Rheine . But, without flaving our selves at the most part of these alliances, wee will touch those onely, which were hereditary, that continue yet, must longer continue, and are most notable among all the other. As namely, the Alli-Their allian ances with the Dukes of Millaine, of Au-Stria, of Bourgongne, of Sauoye, & the most remarkeable and last of all, with the King of France.

They made divers alliances, for a

certainty of times, with Popes: as Sixtus.

Iulius the second, Les the tenth, & with

CHAP:XL.

Of the Alliance made by the Switzers, with the Dukes of Millaine.

Vocertaintie of the first

Galeazo D.of Millaine, and his Wife

Cannot well fet downs what treaty or discourse was anciently had, and at the first time, betweene the Duke of Millain, and the Switzers. But in the

and fixe, Duke Galeazo, and Blanche Marea his wife, made an accord and agreement with eight Cantons, vpon certain conditions: which yet vnto this day, are called, The Articles or Capitulations of Millaine. Wherein also, mention is made of other auncient capitulations, which thew and testifie, that long time before, the Switzers, especialy they of Vri, which inhabite at the Alpes, had beene affociates with the Lombardes, under certaine conditions. But because the auncient Capitulations, are (almost)quite worne out of mens memories: I will propose the Summary of the accord with Duke Galeazo, and his wife, the La.

yeare, one thousand foure hundred fixty

dy Blanche Ma-

The Articles of Agreement, betweene the Duke of Millaine, and the Switzers

Their alliance vvith Millaine.

HE first Article, concerneth them of Vri. The Ordinary of the concerning the Valley of Luiner. By what occasion

this first Article, the Duke agreeth with them of Vri, to have free possession of that valley, in the regard of civill Iurifdi. ction: reuouncing his owne rightes, and promifing to obtain the same of the Qr-

They of Vri, on the other fide, shall Day a tribute to the Duke, & euer yeare, in the Moneths of June or July, or before midde-August, shall fend, him foure Hawkes, and a Crosse-bow. As concerning the difference touching the Churches reuennewes, betweene the Ordinary, and them of the Valley, each of the two parties shall nominate, two Judges, and to those foure Judges, the Duke that Judges apoin addeone, as an Arbitrator: and of him the Ordinario he must and will make choyse among the and them of Lords of Councell, and in one of the feauca Cantons. These ludges, must nominate what it is, that the Prince and they of the Valley, should pay voto the Ordinarie. And if there happen anie variance besides, for matters of Duties not payed: they also are to censure there-

The second Article is, that the eight Cantons, their subjects, and all they that The nature of haue dwelt in their countries , the space the 2 Article. of foure yeares, shall enjoy the ancient liberty, to wit, that they shal stand exempt from all tributes, impostes, and tolles, throughout Millaine, even to the ditches of the Towne.

The third Article, concerneth debts, and imprisonments.

The fourth is for fuch variances as may happen between the Duke and the Cantons, and of some particulars against the Duke.

The fift, is for processe and suites of The fift. particular persons.

The fixt matter of free Trafficke, and The fixte. that it shall bee lawfull for the Switzers, to go and fell their Wares and Cat-

The third.

The fourth.

They

The fenenth

tle: and the Duke no way to impeach them in their felling, or his Subjectes in

The feuenth importeth, that the duke and the Switzers thall maintain and preferue themselves in good amity: and that neither party shall give passage, or allow lodging or harbor to the enemies of neither fide.

Renewing & reconfirmation of thele ar-

Now, in regard that after this transaction, Millaine changed her Lordes often= rimes these Arricles have beene also renewed and confirmed from one time to another. And finally, in the yeare, 15 (2. Ferdinando Gonzaga, Gouernour of Millaine. in the name of the Emperor Charles the fifte, renewed this accord with the Switzers, very neere with the same conditions.

The Articles of Agreement, betweene Ferdinando Gonzaga, Gouernor, and the Switzers.

it shall be lawfull for the Switzers, to buy

any kinde of bread corne. But if there be

a dearth, and the Market measure is sold

for more then thirteene Francks, it is not

lawfull to transport any. Neuerthelesse;

for our amity with the Switzers, they

may carry away two hundred measures.

The Cantons did make the same conditi-

The second, is for the felling and car-

The third, confirmeth to the Switzers

their ancient priniledges, for going and

comming freely, and trafficking through

all countries of Millain, without any need

of support or safe conduct; except in the

time of pestilence, and then to bee free

from all Tolle onely the gate of Millaine

they are, that must enjoy these priviled-

ges; wherein are (by name) excluded all

Millainefes, that thall retire themselues in-

The fift ordaineth, to preuent & auoyd

priniledges shall not keepe companie, or

trade in merchandize with them that are

vncapable or may not have the benefit of

The fourth, declareth who and what

on with them of Millaine.

riage away of falt.

excepted.

them.

H E first Article concerneth be-

nefit of exemption, from Tolles,

Taxes, and other charges. Item,

Freedome from Tolles.

For Bread Corne.

A Franke is two shillings Acrling.

Selling of falt

Free passage

these priviled ges belongeth

For auoyding all means of fraud, that fuch as injoy thefe of fraud and

their buying.

The eight is, that in fuch reuennews, difines, goods mouable and immouable, which the Switzers possession the Dukedome of Millaine, or which may fal to the from this time forward: they shall have the same rights in them heere, as the Mil-Lanneles enjoy in Swetia.

be as free and fafe in the countries of each friendly put other, as formerly it hath bin, & with the there countries or like maintenance of amity.

In the tenth, the Switzers make exception of their other alliances, & all pre- liances, cedent instruments: to the end that they may not derogate or faile in the fore-named conditions.

In the last, the time is agreed on and this alliance prefixed, for this combination: which is, to continue for foure years after the death of the Emperor Charles.

Duke of Millaine, and the Switzers : Vet notwithstanding, both on his part, and Switzers enioy (almost) the same print-

CHAP.XLI.

Of the Switzers Alliances with the Dukes of Austria and Burgongne.

Ike as there hath beene no Prince or Princes, that have made fo much war vpon the Cantons, as the Dukes of Au- courfe, that firia:fo in the fame manner, the Switzers did neuer make fo many accords, treaties and alliances, as with those Dukes. At this sy frendships time, I meane not to make mention of

The fixt speakes of awards, and decisi- | Awardes in on of law fuites.

The feuenth willeth, that if criminall The feuenth willeth, that it criminal Difobedience parties on either fide, doe withdraw to a- in awarden. nie one of their precincts, after that they fentence, or he shalbe adjudged culpable, on know ledge of the cause: he or they shall be fent backe to their Magistrate, who is to chastife them according to the exigence of

Of reuennun

The ninth; that paffe & paffage may For free and

Now, although (for divers reasons) Of the Switthis agreement hath not beene renewed zersalliance to this instant between the King of Spare, laine. theirs likewise, ancient amity hath beene carefully kept; and even to this day, the ledges as in elder times they did among them of Millaine.

Chap.40. Alliance with the D. of Austria.

fome few years, and agreed or combined with one or two Cantons onely; but rather will refolue my felfe on the perpetuall and hereditary alliance of Sizismend Duke of Austria with the Catons; which was renewed afterward, by the Emperor Maximillian Charles the fifte, and Ferdinand.

The Emperor Sigilmond, firnam'd the Simple,a gret enemy to the

K.Lewes the

11.denied ayd

Of other AL

Sigifmond engageth Fer tara to the Boargongne

those alliances which haue lasted but for) dealt withall by Duke Charles.

ind.
This Sigistmend, firnamed the Simple, was forme vntor Fredericke, who brought Pope John the 22. out of the Councel of Constance, whereby he was banishe from the Empire. Sigifmond was a great Enemy to the Switzers, and had many warres agains them wherein he was continually beaton as at Winterduer Mulhoufe Wald Band in Turgow, and other places, & loft in thele warresthe countrey of Turgone; which is great fortile, and well peopled, yntiafterward conquered and kept by the Switzers. Seeing by Armeshe could not quaile the Switzers, hee withdrewe into Fraunce, and required fuccour of King Lawes the elementh, which hee was flatly denyed because the King would not entangle himselfe in warre with the Switzers, of whole magnanimity he had formerly made good proof, being Dolphini when the battell was fought against them ncere to Bafile.

Hereupon he made his recourse tothe Duke of Bourgongn, and pawned to him the County of Ferrara, and other Seigneuries on the Frontiers of Swetia, for the fum of four core thou and crownes: onely that he might finde busines for the Switzers, by meanes and help of the duke of Bourgongne, Lazius writes, that Sigifmond fold Swetia it felfe, but therein he abufeth himfelf. This engagement did not advance the matter, according vnto sigifmonds expectations for Hagenbach, gouernor in these pawned countries to Charles Duke of Bourgongne, began to tyranize vpon all the people, violating women and children, and putting many innocents to death. By which occasion ; Sigifmond being moued to compassion, and incited by the continual complaints of his subjects; redeemed the pawned countries, & configned the mony to be paid at Bafile. But norwithstanding all this, D. Charls would's not forfake his poffession, but froue still to hold the fame by force. The Switzers (on the other fide) were but crookedly

To be plaine, Sigifmond nor the Switzers were strong enough to make head against the Duke, and therfore some men. better feene and skild in fuch bufineffe, layd downe their opinion; that Sigifmond and the Switzers were beft to agree in vnity, and make war together vppon their common enemy. King Lewes the cleueth pusht hardly at that point, and follower the matter very hotly : for it was his enflome to prepare fuch diets for the Duke of Bourgongne, and to raise him so many enemies as might been To further thefe practiles, he ferned his owne turne with w Switzer, name Justus de Sillini, who foor after was by thop of Sion, and of Granoble lini, by thop of also. Sigifmond likewise fauored him, and sion & Granoble line and sion & Granoble lin gaue him as many good respects, as hee could receive by his by thopprickes an At length alfo by his meanes, and by authority of the King anthereditary alliance was made, the fubstantiall points wheroffold low thus

A brewate of the Articles of hereditarie Alliance herweene the Dake of Anfria, and the Swit. 100 in

Elrst, They shall continue them-selves Forwading in in mutuall peace and amitie, fo that the Austrians in Swetia, and the Switzers in the Countreyes belonging to the Duke of Austria: may freely and fafely Trafficke, and also mannage theyr other affayres.

If any variance or contention happen For differeces betweene them; they shall pursue their right in iustice, and not by armes.

The Arbitrators to judge their causes shall be the Bishop or Citie of Constance, and the Bythop or Seigneury of Bafile. fure causes. And before they take knowledge of the cause, both parties shall promise to the Iudges, by authenticke Letters vnder their handes : that they will beare no malice, neyther doe any outrage, what fentence focuer is given vppon their difference. 1 Wash

As for common fuites, concerning fuocessions and debts: the ordinarie Iudges in their Courts of inflice, are to take order for them.

If Duke sigifmond stand in need of such cor from the Switzers, they shal fend him Bb 2

Good ddate n cales of extremity much

wi.200 1 .270270 tters, and ULLA LL ENGAG

lustus de Sil-

daram

For Arbitra-

For ordinarie

3 Booke

283

Offuccour from the Switzers and from the D.

men: prouided, that it may be done with | deemed. their honor, and without prejudice vnto their ancient alliances, and they are to receyue as much wages, as the Cantons have custommarily payed to their Souldiers. The same is also to bee done by the Duke, if the Switzers defire any fuccour from him.

Of Charters. letters, Regifters, and books of cau

The Cantons shall deliver such Charters, Letters, Registers, Bookes of reafon, and other like instructions to the Duke, as are or shalbe in their hands, and belong to him; or declare to whom they have formerly given them; onely excepted, fuch letters and Registers, as concerne cities, townes, and castles, which nowe are in the power and authority of the Switzers.

For benefit of enioyingtheir owne rightes.

ic

 $P_{i}(\mathbf{q})=0$

The Duke and the Switzers shall remaine Lords of those countries, citties, cafiles, Fortreffes, Townes, Burroughes, and Villages as they have taken, and now poffeffe; without any fute in Law, or any kinde of quarrell to bee offered on eyther fide for them; neyther shall suffer anie wrong or injurie to bee done, neither to the countries, citties, castles, &c. of one another.

Of medling with the fub icas one of another.

No enemies

of each othe

to be fauored

on either fide

For portages and tolles.

hout.

Neither fide shall make alliance with the other subjectes, nor give them the right of Bourgeship, nor receive them into protection to eithers damage or preiudice; except any one with al his goods retire into the countrey. And yet with this exception notwithstanding, that hee shall remaine answerable to the jurisdiction of his first Lord. But if any such perfon do pursue his intention by violence, they among whom he hath retreated him felfe, shall present him immediately in juflice, Because neither the Duke, nor the Gantons ought to lodge, maintaine, or fa-uour (in any kinde what soeuer) the Enemies of one another.

The Duke shall make satisfaction, for the transaction of Waldhout; wherein The transacti on of Walds the Switzers shall affish him with al their

> The one shal not greeue or offend the other, by exaction of any new Portages

Such personnes as hold any thing by For tenure title of fealty of the Duke Sigifmend, thall cale of feaky. continue his Subjectes: excepting them of conquered countreyes, and of places engaged, and that have not beene re-

This alliance shall bee renewed from For renount tenne veeres to tenne yeers: and if by ad- on of this abuenture it happen to be broken, the party ance. interessed shall demand Justice . without moning any warre.

All enmitties and warres which former-ly haue beene betweene Duke Sigifmond, and the Switzers, and their predeceffors, cut off by das shall bee appealed and layde to fleep, by meanes of this agreement which is to be inuiolably kept on either fide.

This first transaction was made be The allies fore the war of Bourgongne, in the years of many con one thousand, foure hundred, sewentie & momental foure. In the same year, she showed by Abu proud Do fittia, René of Lorraine; the By shoppes of pour gorga Strasbourg and Bafile, the Cities of Straf bourg, Bafile, Colmar, Selestad, Montbell ard, and fome others, made alliance with the Switzers for certaine yeares (against the violence and tyranny of the Duke of Bourgonghe, who being flaine 2. yeares after in the battalle of Nancy, Sigifmond of Austria renewed the hereditary Alliance, and this first transaction made with the Switzers, by the entermile of K. LE wes the eleventh. This attace was confirmed with the Cantons of Zurich, Bern. Lucerna, Vrs and Sollourve, with liberty to the other Cantons, to enter into the fame alliance if they pleafed. There was not any new Article added at that time : But onely the forme and meanes of mutuall fuccour, which was couched in far more cleare and plaine tearmes. Some years after this, Duke Sigifmond not having any legittimate children, refigned his Dukedome to the Emperor Maximillian, referrefignedhi uing onely to himfelf an annual penfion. Maximilian required the Switzers to en- the Emperor ter the forenamed alliance with him. But because they had beene at some variance with him, and hee with them, and there grew fome apparance of warre /confide/ ring it feemed euidently, that Sigifmond had thus despoyled himselfe to injury the Switzers:) they would not enter into any Maximilian mouell alliance, especially, because he intended no meant nothing else but fraudes in all this faithoods in carriage, as the event plainely declared. his dealing Bor immediately, they of Austria, and of

the league of Shaba, moved warre against the Switzers and Grisons. After peace was made, betweene the Emperor Maximillian and the Cantons,

Chap. 14. Alliance of Sauoy vvith the Switzers. on the twelfth yeare, which was in Anno,)

1,11.the Emperor renewed the heredi-The Emperor hereditary alliance of Austria with

tary alliance of the house of Austria, with the Switzers, and joyned in one, the house of Bourgongne, and his Nephew Charles, of whom he was tutor. Moreouer, not onely the Switzers of the first alliance, but the twelue Cantons. Item, they of Appenzell, with the Abbot and Towne of S. Gall, confirmed this alliance hereditary, with the houses of Austria & Bourgongne. In this alliance or transaction so confirmed,made by the meanes of King Lewes the elementh, is expressely set downe first of all: that therein is comprehended only the county of Bourgongne, and the high countries of Austria the county of Tiroll, and thar which is beyond the Mountaine. Items fome Townes along the kheine, as Waldsbout, Lauffenberg, Secon, Rhinfeld, & others that are on this fide the Mountain. Neuerthelesse there is added, that order fhall be given, that those other countries not comprized in the alliance, thall not enterprise any thing by Arms against the Switzers, nor the Switzers against them. All outragious words & actions are prohibited, for feare of alienating their harts. as hath happened fometimes hecretofore

Moreouer, the Emperor Maximillian

promifed, in the name of Charles his Ne-

phew, to give (in prefent) every yeare in

the citty of Zurich, to each one of the

cantons, two hundred crownes. To the

Abbot and citty of S. Gall, and the Bourg

of Appenzell, an hundred crownes to each

of them: vntill fuch time as Charles shall

be growne greater, to gouern these coun-

tries himselfe,& then he shal stand bound

to confirm the alliance, which according-

ly was done. For in the yeare 154 .by let-

same as them of Austria. To wit, that it

shall be lawfull for eyther side, to traffick,

and to go and come freely into one ano-

thers countries: Item, that they neyther

doe, nor fuffer any of the countries, to

make warre vpon each other. And if (by

aduenture) fome enemy would doe vio-

or in the

thereby.

The contents

of the alliance

or transaction

Lewis the 11

made by the

ters which the Emperour Charles the fift, fent to the Cantons, he confirmed the al-Charles the liance; infomuch as concerned the house it confirmed and county of Bourgongne, for his brohe alliance with the Swi ther Ferdinand was chosen then Duke of zers when h Austria. The conditions and Articles of came to age. alliance with Bourgongne, are the very

lence to one of the two fides: the other (being thereto required) (hall be carefull to preuent it without any delay, for feare, lefte against right and equity, it should be oppressed.

CHAP.XLI.

Of the Alliances betweene Sauoy and the Switzers.

THE Dukes of Sauoy, (which part was called by our Ancients, the country of the " Allobrogians) long fince, and for long space of time, helde amity with the Cantons of Berne, Fribourg and Solleurre, the Countrie In the ende, Charles, Father W Philibert, of Sauny att now Duke of Sauoy, made an alliance Daulphine. The alliance now Duke of Sanoy, illiage at a with all the cantons, for twenty fine years, of Duke Chiles with

The first Article treateth of the amity which is to be maintained on either fide, without any outrage, or feconding an e-

nemy to passe among the Allies.
The second ruleth the knowledge of Processes and Law-cases, wherein Judges of equall number are to bee elected on both sides, who shall call the parties into the Towne of Bienna, and there ende the law cales. difference. If two fentences be given, hauing as many voyces on the one fide as other : the Judges shall elect a subarbitratour in one of the cantons, that shall have no part of interest in the Processe. As for causes betweene particular persons; they are to be decided by Judges of the places.

The third ordaineth, that it shall be lawfull for the subjects of the allies, to goe about their affaires freely, and in all fafety, in the countries of Swetia & Saury, without being charged with any new imposts, portages, or tolles.

The fourth auoucheth, that if any man haue a difference against the Duke, and For any diffe would have it referred to the orders spoken in the cantons: if the Duke will not agree thereto, the Switzers doe not fland bound (by any alliance) to affift any fuch party against the Duke.

The fift speaketh, that if the Switzers are affayled and preffed with warre, the Dike fhall fend them (at his own charge) Juccour in fixe hundred horfe at the lefte ; prouided, | warre on ey-

the Cantons. For preferuation of amity.

of commerce on both fides

rence against

For mutuall

The Liure Tournois is fterling.

No Nauall

of the Seas.

Payment of

200.CTOWNs

each Canton

The men of

Berne ioyned

with their tel-

low-Bourgef-

les of Geneua

yearely.

that hee haue then no warre in his owne country. In like manner, if the Duke haue any warte in his owne hand, & demandeth succourathe Switzers shall fend him fixe thousand foot or more, to each man wherof, the Duke shall pay 6. Liures Trarnois, for wages enery Moneth. If (ouer and aboue this number) hee demandeth fome other Switzers, that defire to goe to warre voon their owne good will towards him: hee shall not stand bound to pay them any wages, but what he will do out of his owne liberality.

The Duke may demand no feruice of the Switzers in any nauall warre, nor cause them to passe the Seas : but onely to defend the countries, which they poffeffe at the day of making this alliance.

To the end that this accord may bee firmely kept, the Duke nor the Switzers For preferuation of this al- Ihall meddle with any affaires of stranliance firmely. gers, to debate any thing to the prejudice of their alliance : neyther shall they give right of Bourgeship, to any subjects of Swetia or Sauoye, but onely to fuch, as shall have their persons and goods transported into eythers countries.

While this alliance endureth, the Duke shall yearely pay in the Citty of Berne, to each Canton, the fumme of two

hundred crownes. Vpon the ending of this alliance, which lasted almost 25. yeares, the King of France, Frances the first, despoyled Duke Charles of the most part of his countries. And in this warre, the Bernians taking in hand the cause of their fellow-Bourgesles of Geneua, with them of Fribourg and Valois: tooke all the Dukes places in the countries of Vaut, county of Romont and Tuian. After this time, the Emperour Charles the fift (in the protection of who the Duke of Sauoy was put) was in war continually in Piedmont gainst the Frech: and that was the cause of breaking the renewing of the alliance. At length, Philebert, the Sonne of Charles, having recouered his countries, by the meanes of peace betweene the Kings of Spaine and France: made a new and perpetuall alliance with the Cantons of Lucerna, Suits Vri, Vnderuald, Zug, and Solleurre. It is (almost) the very same as the former: but onely that there is no mention made (to my remembrance) of mutuall fuccour. Soone after, the other Cantons re-

newed with him, the very fame conditions of ancient amity and alliance.

CHAP. XLII.

Of the Alliances betweene the Switzers and the Kings of France.

K Ing Lewes the 11. was the first King of France, that allied himselfe with the Switzers, and that affigned rewards & Rowards ing as yet Dolphin, hee led a great-Army all the Coninto Germany conducted the control of the co into Germany, conducted by the Count of Armignac. This he did in fauor of Pope Eugenius, and of the Emperor Frederickes onely to breake the councell of Bafile, as the Pope defired: and turiously to inuade the Switzers, whom the Emperor hated, and to break off their fiedge in meere defpight of them) which they had planted before the citty of Zurich, because he was allied with the house of Austria. The Switzers had another Army before the castle of Fransperg: 1600 men whereof. they fent thence to fuecour Bafile & the Fathers there in the councell.

Being about 2 miles from Basile, they did fetypon the Dolphins troops fo flifty, The Switzer as (although in regard of their enemies Dolphin multitude, who had enclosed them on all 1000pesner fides) they were every man(almost)flaine to Bask. in the field : yet notwithstanding, they so weakened the French Army (for there were flaine about 6000 of them) that the Dolphin standing in feare of a further loffe, and of the valour of the Switzers; tooke his way fuddenly home to France, leaving the businesse vnexecuted, which he came for. It is reported, that the Dolphin feeing his enemies flaine bodies lying on the ground faide thus Sometimes with farre leffe forces, and in the space of The words three houres; I have broken an Army of the Dolphia thirteen thousand men, without any such flaughter of paine or danger as I have met with heere, his enemies the Switzer labouring a whole day toughly, to ouercome a little handfull of men . Neuer hadde I to deale with more valiant and fast enemies; and therefore I will take order, for euer warring any more against them. Which hee most truely and faithfully performed a long time after,

agreat enemy to Charles Duke of Bour-

King Lewes

euen vntill he came to the crowne. Hee neuer loued Charles Duke of Bourgongne, and yet durft not make open warre on him. because hee was not well appointed for it: and therefore he laboured by all meanes, to fet the Duke a justling with the Switzers. But to compaffe his intent the more easily, and have the Switzers at his command, when he shold frand in need of their affifrance : he made an alliance with them for ten yeares, giuing as an annuall, pension to each Canton the fumme of feuen thousand Liures Tournois. During the warre of the Duke of Bourgongne against the Switzers, the King furnithed them with a great fumme of money : as fearing least (through want of coine) they should give over conten-ding, and talke of truce. The Duke being foyled at Morat; the King gaue publike-Great gifts & ly great gifts to the Switzers, and in particular to their Captaines and Colonels. Finally, after the death of the Duke, flaine in Lorraine, to fet an imbarment, that (by right of warre) the Switzers should not

possesse themselves of Bourgongne, where

there were many men that nodded the

head at their denotion : hee bought the

country for a goodly fumme of money.

And because he must needs make warre.

to get into possession of the country : hee

made vie of the foote Switzers to ferue

him, giving to them farre greater wages,

Charles the eight, some to Lewes, in the

yeare, one thousand, soure hundred four-

score and three, renewed the alliance

which his father had made with the Swit-

zers : and vsed their service in the warre.

whe he ouercame the Duke of Bretaione.

But principally in the warre of Naples, he

diuers wayes made good proofe, that the

warlike Switzers, were both loyall and

valiant of their persons. His successour.

Lewes the twelfth, having undertaken the

conquest of Millaine, and very desirous to

turne the Switzers, from the amity they

bare to Duke Lodowick Sforza; made al-

liance with them for ten yeares. At the

end whereof, he thanked the Switzers, &

denyed to pay the rewards and yearely

penfions, which he had payed in publike

and to particular persons, Which so

highly offended this martiall people, as

partly of their own inclination, but much

then cuer any Prince had done before.

the Switzers for foyling the Duke at

Lewesthe

King Lewes the 12 made

King Charles

renewed his

fathers leagu

with the

who follicited the principals of the cantons; they made a league with Pope luli the fecond in the yeare, one thousand. five hundred and ten. Oftentimes after ward, this King laboured to make a new alliance: but the Switzers beeing joyned with the Pope, would never liften to it. But in the yeare, one thousand fine hundred and twelve, they drove the French out of Millaine, and re-established Max- thatesthe imillian Sforza in the Dukedome. Then Frenchout the yeare following, they overthrew the Millaine. French at Nouara, and came with a maine Army along into Bourgongne.

Lewes the twelfth, had his Sonne in

The Switzers

law Frances de Valois for his successour; Frances de who wonne a memorable battaile against the Switzers, when he ouercame them at the twelfth. Marignano: Hee brought into France. Maximillian Sforza, and made himfelfe Lord of the Dukedome of Millaine. After a victory fo remarkable, knowing well. how bloody it had bin, and at how deare a price the French had bought it the first thing he did, was (to winne the good fauour of the Switzers) a kinde agreement made with them, joyning them to his crowne, by a firme and durable alliance. The conditions and treaties of this peace and mutual amity, are comprized in thefe thirteene Articles following.

First, all enmities, diffentions, warres, The tenour of differences and quarrelles in precedent hepeace times are viterly brought to nothing; and made between King as for particular variances, which concern France the nothing in common with the occasions first and the of warre, they shall stand veterly void, by those Articles of agreement, made betweene the Duke of Millaine, King Lewes the twelfth, and the Cantons.

Secondly, all prisoners, in what part For free delior place foeuer they are deteyned as pri- uery of prifor foners, or as flaues; they shall be released ners. and fet at liberty, without paying any ran-

Thirdly, if any man at Armes of the Switzers, have any fivine against the King of France, not for any matter of warre, he the King. may contest in instice, according to the Articles following.

Fourthly, all fuch persons as after the accord made betweene King Lewes the For fuch as twelfth, and the Cantons,) were and are the eneft of allied with them, or received into the nu- this peace. ber of their Bourgesses : shall be compremore by meanes of the Cardinall of Sion, hended in this treaty, and enjoy the be-

A new and perpetuall a rweene Phile bert and the

For priviled-

ges and fran-

bounty to th

For maintai-

nance of lou

and amity.

No harboring

of enemies of

For free per-

miffion of

passage.

trafficke and

Yearely pen-

fions given by

either fide.

Switzers.

most altogether, with the accord of Mil-

laine, and other formes of judgements.

whereof we have spoken heeretofore. All

this conference and treaty of peace, was

made by the Ambassadours on eyther

Towns of Fribourg, on S. Andrews day.

with the Switzers, as already hath beene

declared: yet hee would needs proceede

fomewhat farther, and allie them more

cept Zurich) and all their confederates.

allied themselnes with the K. of France:

and the tenour of that alliance was as fol-

The Tenure of a more nere

agreement, made betweene

the King and the Switzers.

in the Dukedome of Millaine, or any o-

ther country appertaining to the crown.

eyther on this fide, or beyond the Moun-

taines: the King may make a leave of

Switzers, when and at what time himfelfe

shall thinke meete, to wit, of fixe thou-

fand men at the leaft, and feauen thou-

fand at the most, except the Lords of the

2. Hee may also chuse out of all the

Cantons and confederates, fuch Colo-

Leagues will permit more.

and credite.

1. IF any one (whofoeuer it be) make

war within the Realme of France.

The King having made pacification

out of the limits of Swetta, that fpeake not the Germane tongue, and are not subjects to the Cantons. The fift Article, confirmeth to Mer-

chants and subjects of Swetia, the priviledges and franchifes, which the Kings of France haue formerly graunted vnto | dia; or elfe to forfake them, for the fum them.

Sixtly, to the end that the Switzers may the better understand the good will and liberality of the King: hee will pay them downe presently a great summe of crownes, for their great charges at the siedge of Duon, and afterwards in Ita-

Seauenthly, that peace may bee the more firmely maintained on eyther fide, and to continue on this begun amity: if any difference happen to be moued neither the one party or other shall undertake Armes, in that manner to purfue his right; but according to the order before mentioned, is to demaund reason by course of justice.

Eightly, neyther side shall giue paffage, food or harbour to the others enemies: nor fuffer their fubiects to vndergo Armes, for fuch Princes or commonweales, as are enemies to France, or to the Switzers. Such as do the contrary, shall be repealed to their country, and punished according as they have defer-

Ninthly, permission is granted vnto Merchants, Pilgrims, & Subjects, French or Switzers, to trafficke, voyage, goe and come freely, into France and Swetia; without any outrage, or beeing offended by any new tolles or taxes.

Tenthly, the King giueth yearely to each Canton, the fum of two thousand Liures Tournois: As much to the Valaifians, and as much to the Grifons, as was granted vnto them by king Lewes the 12. And moreouer, the fum of 20000 Liures Tournous. Item to the Abbot of S.Gall, to the Subjects, and to them of Toggenbourg the fum of 600 Liures Tournous: To the citty of S. Gall, 400: To Mulhoufe, 400 : And to them of the county of Gru-

Eleuenthly, the ancient priviledges and franchifes, which they have (till then) enioyed in the Dukedome of Millaine, the inhabitants of Bellizona, Lugano, Lo.

nefit thereof. Onely fuch excepted, as are | carna, and the Vale Madia; are to them fully referred and confirmed.

Twelftly, the king leaueth it in choife to the Swizzers, to declare within the leftby the compasse of a yeare, whether they affect length within the leftby the compasse of a yeare, whether they affect length within the length within or no: to hold the countries and castles Switzen of Lugano Locarna, and of the Vale Ma- choife. of thirtie thousand crownes of the Sunne. And if they take the money: then they of the Vale of Telina, and of the county of Clauenna, (hal have their part in this fumme, as much as one of the Can-

The last Article ordaineth, that this For contine peace and amity betweene the Realme anceofthis of France and the cantons, shal continue mity. inuiolable and perpetuall.

The king excepteth in this peace, Pope Lee the tenth, the See and Romane Empire, the kings of Spaine, of England, of made by the Scotland, of Nauarre, and of Denmarke : K. of France The Dukes of Sauoy, of Lorraine, of Gueldres: Item.the Duke & common-wealth of Venice. Laurentius de Medicis, the house of Medicis, and the common-wealth of Florence: The Bishop of Liege, and all the confederates of the king.

The Switzers also except on their part, Pope Lee the tenth, the Sec of Rome, the | Exception made by the Emperour and Romane Empire: the Switzen. house of Austria: the Dukes of Sauore, and of Wirtemberg; the family of Laurentius de Medicis; the common-wealth of Florence, the Marshall of Bourgonone. their ancient alliances; and all their allies and fellow-Bourgeffes.

The reason for these exceptions, is, that if the king of France make warre vpon a- The reasond ny one of them about named in his own these excepcountries: the Switzers may keepe what promife or alliance they have formerly made or fworne, to those Princes or common-wealths. But if one or more of those Princes or common-wealths, come to affault the king in his owne kingdome : the Cantons shall not permit any of their Subjects to goe in warre against the king; but shall countermaund them, as it is ordayned in the eight Article, and which they are to keepe and observe inuiolably.

To these conditions is added the forme to be kept, in the deciding of strifes and differences. But it feemeth to me, that it would bee great loffe of time and needleffe inerrions.

Chap.42.

The King firit alliance with the Swit-

strictly to his crowne. Which also he ob-Lucerna, fine yeares after the fore-mentioned peace. Then all the Cantons (ex-

veare 1 (16.

loweth.

paper

For choise of Captains and Contons and contenerates, such Coto-colonels out nels and Captaines as he shall thinke fit: othe cantons prouided, that they be men of good fame

Concerning

warre in any

ing to the

place belong-

Against him dering or men and delay of

1. The Lordes of the Leagues shall giue no hinderance to those Colonels, Captaines, and Soldiers, neither delay time, or put any case in question, to hinder their going : but that within ten daies after that first day, whereon the King required fuccour, they thall bee permitted to march away.

For continu-4. They shall continue in the Kings ance in the lings service, service, vntill the end of the warre; if it acept warres feeme good to him, and they not recalled home by their Lords: The King shall

paper to infercit: because it agreethal- \ also pay them(enery one)his accustomed wages. But if there happen warre in Swe-tia, and that thereby the cantons cannot fuccour the King, as they otherwise wold: In this case, they shall find quit of their promife, and they may fuddenly counterfide, and fette downe in writing in the mand home their men; to whom also the King stands bound, to grant their deparin the Moneth of November, and in the ture immediately.

5 If the King would make warre vpon his enemies: he may make the fame leuie King fall of fixe thousand Switzers at the least, and have occasion feuen thousand at the most : chusing Colonels and Captaines, men of faire and good fame, which are Switzers, or of their tayned, and that agreement was past at Allies.

> 6. The King may not separate an Ar- An Army of my of Switzers, or divide them in troops to be divided. for Garrifons in divers places: and they &c. are not to serue at Sea, but on the land.

7. As concerning the wages for the Gendarmery; it is agreed on both fides, that the King (hall pay for a Moneth voto | wages agreed each Switzer Soldier, foure Florius and horfenen,& an halfe, of them that are called Florius du in what man-Rhin. And their wages shall begin on the paid, you the day, when they fet foorth from their hou- due of three fes : and then shall three Moneths pay be | Moneths pay due vnto them, although the King do not vse them in service so long. And before they part out of Swetia, they must receine the first Moneths pay and the rest for the two other Moneths, at meete places, according as need shall require. If after those three Moneths are past, the King will longer retaine the Switzers hee thal pay them the fame wages every Moneth, vntill such time as they may commodiously returne home to their owne

8. The Colonels, Captaines, Enfigns, Pay for men Ambaffadors,& others that haue charge of higher in the troopes; shall bee payed after their rank & place, accustomed manner, and according as their degrees. the Predecessours to the Kings of France haue done.

9. If any war is made upon the Switwers, the King of France shal stand bound Concerning to fuccour them at his owne coft: fend-fent the Switing them two hundred compleat horfe- zers, whe war men, and twelve pecces of Artillery, with is made on all their equipage and furniture; to wit, fixe peeces for battery, and fixe Canons. Moreover, hee shall furnish the Switzers (from three Moneths to three Moneths) in the citty of Lyons, with certaine fums

Whenthe

Priviledges particular plaof Salt.

Against relee uing eyther

The liberality of the King to the Cantons.

made on the Kings behalte

Exception alons behalfe.

A caugat or generall warning.

of money, for expences in the warre. And if the Switzers affect it rather: instead of two hundred compleate horsemen, the King shall give them all the three Moneths the fum of two thousand crownes at the leaft.

10. If it come so to passe, that if (thorough occasion of moned warre heere or there) the Switzers cannot have any Salt: it may be bought for them in France, & so bee connaved home into their coun-

11. No fide or party shall receive into protection, neyther bestow Bourgeship on any of the others fubicets, nor fuccor. lodge, or defend men banished, or enemies to cyther fide : but according to the Articles of peace, shall hinder & expulse

12. Finally, the King being willing to make knowne his loue and good will towards the Switzers: oner and beside the twenty thouland Francks, which he promiled to pay them by the treaty of peace, further promifeth, to pay yearely to each one of the Cantons (while this alliance shall continue) the summe of a thousand pounds Tournois. He will also pay to the confederates, the moity of the penfion which they had before.

The King excepteth Pope Lee the 10. The Romane See and Empire; the kings of England and of Scotland: the Duke of Sauoye, of Lorraine, of Halfatia, and of Gueldres; the common-wealth of Venice, and of Florence; the house of Medicis; the Marquesses of Brandenbourg and of Montferrat.

The Cantons do likewife except Pope Les the tenth the Romane See and Empire: the common-wealth of Florence; the house of Medicis; the Duke of Sauov: the house of Austria; their alliances, their Bourgesses and confederates; the Duke of Wirtemberg; and Octamian Maria Sforza,Bishop of Lauda.

Neuerthelesse, if any of these about named, make warre on cyther of these parties, in their countries on this fide, or beyond the Mountaines: the other shall giue fuccour, without exception of any person, according to the tenour of this alliance, which is to endure while King Frances liueth, and three yeares after his

This alliance being expired, K. Henry

before named : and that alliance lasted 5. Frances. yeares after his death. Now because the Dukedome of Millaine, and fome other Prouinces, comprehended in the alliance made with king Frances, were different the lolle of bred from the crowne, when this newe the Dukrden league was contracted: It is expressely fet of Millaine. downe, that the Switzers shall not stand obliged, to give the king any fuccour, for

recouery of those countries. But if he can reconquer them by the ayde of another Army, and he shall bee Lord of them againe, as of other Provinces belonging to his Kingdome: for the better confer- A bresiate of uation of them, the Cantons shall furnish the new ad him with men, who shall likewise attend him in warre, for the recourry of Bullen, and the county of Bullenois in Picardy.

If the king will goe in person to some For leuyed warre, hee may make choise (at his pleafure) of Captaines Switzers, and command a leuve of fixe thousand men at the leaft.

He may not diffiound or reparate the some of the Switzers Army, when hee is voon the of the Switzers army. He may not disione or separate the No sundering point of giuing battaile: but out of fuch occasion, he may plant the in Garrisons, in Townes and throng places, to defend

As for the wages, rewards, & fuccors, rewards. which the king is to give vnto the Switzers; it beareth the very felfe-fame reafon as is in the precedent alliance; and the other Articles doe agree with them before mentioned.

And to the ende, that the treaty of peace, made in the yeare 1516. may re- When wager maine firme, when wages rest vnpaide, it payed is thus ordayned. The demander shall acquaint his Magistrate with the matter, to whom if the cause seeme vpright; he shal goe or fend to the kings Ambaffadours, which are in Swetia, or if they be absent, the Magistrate shall write to the king, and require fatisfaction for the party. If the king yeelds to reason, the demander is fatisfied, but if he refuse to pay according private man to equity; the demander may then call his cause before Iudges and Arbitrators, and there haue it debated. And if the K. yeelds to reason, the demander is satisfied, but if he refuse to pay according to equity, the demader may then cal his caufe

For new taxa-

Chap.1. The gouernment of the Syvitzers.

before Iulges and Arbitrators, and there I ties on eyther fide, the demaunder may haue it debated. And if the King will not yeeld to the Judges his part, the Switzers may passe on to turther knowledge of the facte, and what they appoint, shall be allowed for firme and availeable to eyther party euen as if the ludges on eyther fide had therein affifted.

The Merchants both French and Switzers, according to the articles of peace, shall not be greeued with any new taxes tolles or imposts.

If any fuite be moued betweene par-

pleade before the ludge, in the place law.

where the defender dwelleth. This alliance was treated and past at Solleurre, in the yeare, 1549. All the Can- liance was tons (except Berne and Zurich) with their made.

confederates, being bound thereto. Finally, King Charles the ninth, Sonne Ring Charles to King Henry, renewed this alliance with the sallied with the Switthe Switzers, vpon conditions little differing from the former : and that alliance continueth yet to this day, after the kings

For fuites in

When this al



THE MANNER OF GOVERN

ment observed among the Switzers.

THE SECOND PART.

Abrecfe dif. courie of the first Bookes

Argument.

A bremiate of

Bookes Argu-

this fecond

Ec haue fhewne in our first Part, of what parts & parcels, the commonwealth of the Switzers composed; for what causes, &

with what conditions the epeople dwelling in divers places, allied themselves together, to make up one body of a Commonwealth. Also with what industry and tranaile, they have maintained their liberties; and with what Princes and peoples, they have affociated and leagued themselues. In this second Booke, wee shall declare, how this common-wealth is gouerned. And because the confederates have (each one) their Magistrates, Lawes, and particular government, and that the cantons do make one commonwealth apart, and yet there is a councell in common to the whole Nation, and lawes and ordinances, to whose observation all are obliged: First, I will make mention of the Switzers commonwealth in generall; then I will describe the estate and government of the Cantons, several-

ly in their places.

They that have written concerning Three feueral common-wealths, doe fet downe three kindes of co

The first, when all the managing and full shadower gouernment of the common-wealth, is in the power of one only, who is called a King, if he gouerne justly, with confent of the people, and according vnto the lawes; for if he do otherwife, he is a Ty-

The fecond, when a finall number of principall men, and more people of good behauiour, do gouerne.

The third, when all the people haue the authority in their hands.

Thus there are three kindes of Common-wealths, to wit, Monarchy, Ariftocraty, & Democraty: who have for their vicious shaddowes, Tyranny, Oligarchy, and Anarchy.

We cannot compare or fute the Switzers common-wealth, with any of these before named : but as (aunciently) the thepeofthe great Common wealths of Rome and Carthage, and (in our time) that of Venice may be tearmed mixt and compounded.

Switzers com

non wealths.

Chap.2.

are naturally

warlike im-

ployments.

Concerning

those people bred on the

Alpes,& na-

ture of the

All the Swit-

zers are fol-

diers borne.

country.

A Democraticall kinde o gouernment in some of the Cantons.

uernments; fo in like maner, the commowelth of the Switzers is mingled or composed of a Seigneuriall, Lordly, and Populare government. For among all the people, of whom the whole commonwealth of the Switzers is compounded: there are some, whose government is meerely democraticall, & where al things (almost) are done by the deliberation of the people. As in those Cantons that haue no citties to wit, Vri, Suits, Vnderuald, Glaris, and Appenzell: yea, cuen in Zug, although it is a citty. The other are gouerned by Lords, as citties commonly vie to be,namely Zurich, Berne, Lucerna, Basile, Fribourg, Solleurre, and Schaffouse. But because the Soueraignty appertaineth to the people, who doc elect thefe Lords, these common-wealths are compounded of two kindes of government: to that notwithstanding, the one is more Aristocraticall, and the other more Po-Aristocraticall and Populare. pulare.

tooke part, with all the three kindes of go-

So then, the common-wealth of the Switzers beeing compounded of people, that have not all one, and the same forme of gouernment: the order and pollicy alfo is very divers and mixt. For if vpon some daves of audience, ambassadors do aduife on matters of the whole commonwealth, or end some differences: this appeareth to be a gouernment meerely Aristocraticall. And yet neuerthelesse, because they are (for the most part) elected by the people, and that in causes and affaires of importance, they cannot go beyond their aduice, but deale according to the peoples command, to whom they must render an account of their negotiation: it may eafily bee noted, that fuch a kinde of government is not altogether Ariflocraticall.

Now it plainly appeareth, that the Switzers common-wealth cannot bee better gouerned, for the liberties which they do enjoy, was gotten by their anceftors, not by the industry and power of one, or of a finall number of particular ment but the people themselues were imploied therein, and did enfranchize it with the expence of their purffes, blood, and liues. And therefore it is no more then reason, that they should reape some fruite of their trauaile. And as concerning, that

because (insome matters) they shared or | it seemeth incommodious and perillous in a populare estate, that all men should deliner their aduice, but rather, that it ought to be done by them of most wifedome, and men of best quality: This danger is not to bee doubted in the Switzers No dangere Common-wealth, for they do most imploy, and fend on their dayes of audience, the Switzers the best and wifest persons of each Can-common. ton. And although they have not power to conclude definitively/because it might be a dangerous confequence, for the peoples liberty) yet notwithstanding, they are as the cheefest councellers, and make a conference of opinions, ypon the State affaires. Afterward, the people give their confent, by affemblies which they make in Townes and Villages. Now fuch as the Switzen are not altogether stupid and ill-affected, may know and approve that which hath bene deliberated in those dayes meetings, for common benefit : confidering, they give them plainly to understand every

CHAP. II.

Of the manner and behauiour of the Switzers in the times of both peace and warre.

Orafmuch as the right gouernement of a common- Thebeft F wealth, is best discerned in glasse to five any common of peace and warre: it be-

hooueth vs to flew how our predecessors have carried themselves therein. As concerning exercises of war, beside that which nature hath done, in fashioning the Switzers fit thereto: neceffity also hath constrained them, to apply their paines, and that in good earnest, The Country is Mountainy, tharpe, and The mature & hard for culture, anciently defert and fa- quality of the uage for the most part, making the people not onely indurate and hardened for trauaile: but also robuste, stiffe,& strong, and so (by consequent) very apt for warre.

Now as natuarally the people of Europe are more magnanimous and warlike, then they of Asia: fo the Europeans

The Switzer countries, are reputed to be more martially minded then the other Proofe heereof appeareth in the histories of the Goths. Vandales Hunnes, Lombards, Franconians, and other people, who being bred in the very coldeft countries of the North; did vet disperse themselves over the favrest parts of Europe, and cyther forraged or troubled them, treading under their feete the power of Rome, fometimes fo much renowned through the world. In like manner, as the very coldest countries of the Alpes, do beare the highest and tauleft Trees, and have beafts more fatte and faire then can be defired : fo the naturall disposition of the country, and temperature of the avre, produceth men more robufte and ftrong then others are. Wherefore, in many Countries, some are men for Armes, others are labourers, and others artezans : but in Switzerland, all are Soldiours borne, euen by a meere manner of defire, and there is not a Switzer. (prouided that hee have stature and apt difpolition) but in him may bee feene the very liues (to life) of a man of warre.

The Princes f Austria haue most in Switzers.

A comparisor well worth the observation

lt is an especi-

elde to beare

which dwell in Mountainous and hard | zerland, dwell he in Citty, Town, Village,

And because almost all the neighbors to the Cantons, but especially the Princes of Austria, laboured by continuall warres, to annihilate the liberty of the Switzers, and that for the space of two hundred yeares: meere necessity made the Switzers martiall, beeing compelled to carry weapons daily in their hands, to maintaine their liberty, bridle the headfirong courses of their enemies, & to preferue their wives and children. And as it was faid of Agefilaus, after he was wounded by the Thebanes in an encounter, that he received worthy wages, for teaching them the arte of warre: euen fo Noblemen that enstructed the olde Switzers, fimple peafants, and shepheards, to handle a Sword, and compelled them to vnderstand the trickes of fencing, received (in the end) the recompence for their apprentiship, having beene so many times beaten in battailes, and finally driven out of Switzerland.

From hence it enfued, that their lawes & customes were accommodated to the exercises of warre. For whereas in many Countries, the people are forbidden to zer yong and carry and manage weapons: fo on the contrary, there is none fo young in Swis-

or Field, be he a pealant, porter, or of the very basest condition can be deuised; but he is strictly commanded to have Arms. according to his quality. And because that in our time, the Harquebuz or Caliuer was in great vie for warre: there was wards propo-a prize and reward propoted in publike, led onely for for fuch as would exercise, and could dex- encourageteriously handle these fiery weapons. Not die the caliner only in Citties, as was done in many parts of Germany : but also in the most peopled Townes and Villages. Nav.there was a prize and reward appointed for children that could draw the Bowsto the end, that they might afterward be the better fathioned for weapons of more danger:which prooued to fuch an expert practife, that from their very youth, they accustomed themselues to discharge the Caliuer.

Their other pastimes also sauored all of

with a great number of Pikes, Halberts. &

Shot, who (vnentreated) march before

him, or come to honour his feast, in the

nature of a muster, marching after the

manner of war. Many times allo, boyes of

8.or 10.yeares old, and others fomewhat

more aged, meet together and make mu-

derstood any thing set downe in the Mil-

litary precepts of Vegetius, por of any o-

ther, inured from their infancy, without

any command: but onely of their owne

motion, and by a naturall inclination to

Armes, can carry and manage themselues

with countenances and steppings fit for

Soldiors. In many places, energy yeare, or

at certaine times of the years, the Lords

and in some other places, when the

Cc2

war. Forthey neuer vsed to meete toge-

ther, were it on solemne daies & festivals, All the exeraccording to the Churches dedications, fimesofthe or at weddings and other fuch like occafions, but with Drums and Trumpets for war. And it was (and still is)a great honor for a Bride-groome, to bee attended on

fters, with Drums & Enfigues, some bearing Caliners, others Halberts, & others of the Swit-Pikes: fo that to fee them march, it might zers children well be faid, that they had hearts & hands come foldior already, apt to manage those warlike wea- from their pons. In this manner, they that never you Cradles.

canfe general musters in arms to be made Good & verfor all their followers, as if they were go- tuous examing to war against the enemy. These mu-sters are somtimes performed at the de-minded men. dication of Temples, fointimes at Fairs:

Affaires of

State & diffe

rences ended

by Ambalfa-dors.

The common wealth of the Switzers is not otherwife ned then as it

Other agilities and com mendable qualities exercifed by the Switzers in

seucral kinds

Their sports

and pattimes

after tilling their grounds

How the Switthemselves in

What kinde of Armes are most in vse with the Switzers according to the

fent newly to some Bayliwicke, for then they all muster, and snew themselves in

It is altogether needleffe, that I should make any long discourse of other exercifes, which do dispose the to be the more valiant in war : as to runne, leave, throw the stone and barre to wrastle to thew all kindes of defence fit for Arms; for which there are prizes publikely appointed euery yeare. Morcouer, I am of the minde, that in all christendome, there is not any people, that do exercise themselves more in swimming, then the Switzers: who (with much eafe) can vie that Arte, fwimming thorough great Lakes, Rivers, Streames, and very imperuous floods, where-with the country doth greatly abound. When they are at leyfure, and haue done their husbandry in the fields: they daily follow hunting, fometimes ouer the highest Mountaines and Rockes, almost inaccessable, after wilde Goates, Kids and other beafts. At other times they pursue Beares, Wolues, Ounces, & wilde Boares, reputing it as an honour to him that can kil one of those sauage creatures, and fasten his head at the entrance of his doore; yet sometimes hee makes a present of it to the Seigneury. The Grecians had an ancient custome among the, to give the heads of wilde Boares, vnto Gentlemen or Gouernours of the country, as an honourable present after hun-

Now we are to declare, how the Switzers doe carry themselnes in warre. First then I will make mention of their Arms: next, how they chuse and enrouse theyr Soldiours: And confequently, of other things belonging to the acte of warre. Let me then tell you, that (ordinarily) the Switzers Souldiors are well furnished with Armes in their houses: yet (oftentimes) the Citties and Towns do fit them with Armes, which are kept in their publike Arfenalles and Magazines. Their Armes are commonly those of the Germane Lance-Knights, to wit: the Harquebuze or Caliuer or Musket; the Pike of eighteene foote in length; the Halbert, the Courtlace, and Sword made apt for both hands. They weare also a long Sword by their fides, whereas their of their Soldiours, it is done in manner ancestors did weare one farre shorter on following.

Subjects take their oath to a Governor, their thighes, proper to joyne with the enemy necrer hand, and to give him the Stoccado.

Now adayes, ouer and beside this long What ther Sword, they weare a large Poniard or what they Dagger, of three or foure fingers bredth, this prefent and tharpe pointed : which the very meanest of them do adorne and enrich, with curious workmanship of gold and silver. Some weare shirtes of Mayle; others Corfelets, or a good Cuirats for the bo-

The poorer fort, and especially the Muskettiers, content themselves with a Murrian or head-peece. Some, in stead of Armes plated with yron or steele, make vie of skinnes of Beares or Buffelles : ()thers weare doublets of linnen cloth, redoubled in iust thicknesse, and made full of oylet-holes, and these doublets thus made, are not easily to bee transpierced. For the reft, as Polybius writeth that the braue Parado or Romane Soldiour, vsed The braue to weare a Panache of three plumes, red Parado, or or blacke, about the length of a foote and Soldiour of an halfe, because this addition to the rest of his furniture for warre, made the Sol- Plumes. diour feeme to be twice greater and higher, then he was indeed, much more comly to looke on, and terrible to the enemy. Euen fo the Switzers Soldiours, who couet to appeare fightly among all other. do weare on their heads a Plume of Feathers, one part white, and the other anfwerable to the Enfigne, or Colours of their distinct Cantons.

They beare euery man vpon his Arms, a white croffe, plaine and right, which is The Imprest the Switzers Enfigne of war: Each man the Armer veelds himselfe under the Standard of his the Switzert Canton. They ferue their turne with purpofed for warre, Drums, Fifes, and Trumpets: yet in fuch fort, notwith standing, that the Drums of the Switzers are easily discerned fro them of the Allemanes or Germanes, because the found of the Switzers Drum is weighty and deepe, and the other more bluffring. Particularly, they of Vri vie in warre a Cornet made of a wilde Bulles horne. They of Vnderuald do the like. The Lucernians often-times vse a Cornet of Braffe, which they fay was given them by Charlemaigne.

Now as concerning the enrollement

How and in what manner they vie to enroule they men for war. If warre be made on them thome.

Chap.2.

sbroad to war

The care of

the old Swit-

z:15 in their

Aresson concerning the manes, and howitcame vp at firft.

great happineffe to be among fuch

and that they are affailed in their owne country; as no person was excused at Rome, when Hanniball was at the gates of the Citty; euch fo (without the least delay) all fuch as are able to carry Armes. they lay command on, to run with speedy fuccour, as to a fudden and dangerous fire, which every hand ought helpe to quench. Yet in all this, they proceede by good order; for in the time of peace, each Canton hath certaine Captaines, Enfignes, and chosen men, that ought still to be ready vpon any warning. But because it cometh to passe more often, that they must leade their troops out of their countrie, and all are not meete for marching, neither ought to be drawne abroad, for feare the country (hould be left naked of men of warre, and fo remaine as a prev to the enemy: Then one neighbour makes choise of another for his companion, and according to the advice of Kenophon, the very strongest Army that can bee imagined, is that which is compounded of

The ancient Switzers well knowing this, tooke especiall care, that in their enrolement, friends, and fuch as knew one another, might be ranked together. And heereupon they ordained, that in warre. Switzers should aide each other, & loue together like brethren, throwing of all particular hatreds, which they could formerly pretend one against another. The other Allemaigne Soldiours had a custom to call one another brother: in regard whereof, some haue thought, that our ancients named them Germanes, which is as much to fay, as brethren . Yet not withstanding, they were all (almost) at the Swords point one against another, & (very often) the furious Lance-knights, who by their hackt and flasht faces, seeme to breathe no other word but warre: haue received more cuts and gashes by their friends and companions, then from their enemics.

friends and companions.

On the contrary, ordinarily in the Switzers Campe, there is a very great tranquility, & one louing another (thogh otherwise they know not at all) euen as if they were brethren. And when they are the very greatest enemies in the world: yer notwithstanding, for the good and quietnes of their country, they renounce

If warre be made upon the Switzers, | all spleene & particular quarrels. Whereof I will declare a memorable example. which oftentimes (in my youth) I heard reported by my ancestors.

Two Switzers being deadly enemies. to wit. Arnould of Vnderuald who afterward was a great Captaine, and Zerchin- ample of great tes of Zurich, both of them very valiant Switzers, apmen, and meete for war. It came to paffe, pearing by that during the warre of Suaba they were two mortall both at one time in the Camp: when the enemies, cheefe Leaders (knowing their enmity) commanded them to be friends, and (as then) to forget their ancient quarrels. It happened in a certaine encounter, that Arnould was round engirt with his encmies: which Zerchintes perceiuing, came with his companions to relecue him, and did fet him free from the danger wherein he was. In the evening, being returned to the Campe, Arnould went to the Tent of Zerchintes, and called to him by his name. His fellowes and followers, beeing ignorant of that which had happened, were perswaded by their owne opinion, that he came to challenge combate with the other. Wherefore they stept betweene them, & admonished Arnould, to remember the command given by the Captains, and to take heede of mooning any trouble in the Campe. He answered, that he came with a quite contrary disposition. and so acquainted them with all the aduenture. And instantly presented to Zerz chintes a very goodly horse, fit for warre feruice, which he had wonne in that daies trauaile. From that time forward, even to the houre of death, they were very louing and intimate friends.

As the ancient Switzers thewed them. felues brethren, in fuccouring and affift- How the aning their companions, doing as they wold cient Switzen be done to themselves: so did they ob-ferue the same forme, in sharing and di-as they won uiding a gotten booty. For first of al, they in the warre. gaue prohibition on paine of death, that no man of theirs, should bee so hardy or bold as to forfake his ranck & the troops, vntill fuch time as the enemy should bee driven in route. Afterward, when the Captaines had given licence to rifle and ransacke; all the booty was brought in common, & distributed by the poll. And because the cantons are publikely united euen so the publike booty, as Artillery, Caffles, conquered Countries, Tolles,

Cc3

by equality of portions.)

They that de-

ought to have

The ancient

Switzers or-

der for victu-

als.Arms, mu-

nitions,&c.

Prohibition

for violating

of Churches

Of the mane

of the Swit.

zers battalion

maids,and

them by equal portion. Albeit there are some of the Cantons, that doe furnish out twice, thrice, and some whiles fine times more Soldiours, then others doe. Neuertheleffe.extraordinarily and particularly, recompence is given, and gifts bestowed upon Soldiers, that have borne themselues valiantly, & performed some braue exploit in the warre, beyond the fortune of their companions: and also to those Cantons in like manner, that have beene more imployed and charged, then the other.

Forasmuch also, as victuals and other munitions, are in warre to bee especially confidered: the ancient Switzers ordained, that fuch as brought victuals. Arms. or other necessary things, and came to fell them in the Switzers campe, they should be fauoured & maintained, in all respects as if they were Switzers. There is also a perpetuall law, and established by length of time, that in warre, Temples and other places destined for the exercise of Religion, should be left intire and vntoucht. And that no outrage should be offered to maids nor women : but onely to fuch, as shall give Armes to enemies, or ace the parts of Soldiors, by hurling stones, or

hurting in some other manner. As concerning the manner of camping, and raunging themselves in battaile: it is needlesse for me to shew heere, that which the Switzers do in particular, or in common with the other Germans. Only I will fay, that in our time, and by the memory of our auncestors; among all Infantery, the battalion of the Switzers hath alwayes beene highly efteemed. For being compoled of Pikes croffed, it resembleth a Porcupine, so that such as vnderstand the affaires of warre, doe judge, and experience hath appropued it, that this battailion may beare head against the horsemen. In the battaile of Nouara, the Infantery of the Switzers beeing not

and other revenues, are parted among | their retreat feemed nothing like a flight; and vet the French (for all their victory) durst not follow them. It is not long lines, when on the day at Dreux, in the first the day at durst not follow them. It is not long fince. Troubles, the Reistres & the French Ca- Dreux. ualery, linely charged the battailion of the Switzers, and flew the most part of their Captaines: yet notwithstanding the Switzers rallied themselves three times. and kept their rankes so well, that even in that battaile, their enemies confessed thefelues, that they were very valiant & warlike men.

But let vs leave fuch discourse to men of warre, and thew you, how the Switzers busie themselves in the times of peace, & themselves in the times of peace, & how they are ordered from their infancy. times of peace First, as concerning letters and learning, and arettained up from which holds the first ranke. I freely con-fesse, that the ancient Switzers were not very carefull thereof. But rather they imitated the Romans therein, when they were in warres continually, against the Aequi, Volscians, Veientes, and other neighbouting people. And as they then, with rufticall fongs celebrated the valiancy of Letters of their ancestors: fo in the same manner, learning lin the olde Switzers had vulgar fongs, to regardeda remember the victories which they had cient Switobtained inwarre. The Song wherein the zers. day of Sempach is aptly described, when as Duke Leopold was flaine, is very common in Switzerland. As for knowledge of Artes, and of the Latine tongue, men of warre bruske and vnapt to handle Bookes, rather thought, that fuch matters belonged to Churchmen. But in our dayes there are to be found in all the can- Many in the tons of Switzers, men learned both in Cantons katthe Tongues and Sciences. And as for and feiences many that understand not the Latine tongue: yet they forbeare not to reade Histories of all kindes, either concerning government of life, or affaires of State, or of Religion : And there are Libraries, well furnished with Bookes, written in the vulgantongue.

Now, as concerning Schooles, it is a very long time fince, that the Colledges Of Schooles of the Abbey of S. Gall, and of Coire a- for the furthe mong the Grifons, were renowned as wee ring and main haue already shewne else-where. But learning. within some certaine yeares after, letters and learning became quite banished. The Pope Place Pope Pine, formerly named Aeneas Syl- reded a Vai mins, prouided an Vniuerfity at Bafile, fro uerfity at Ba

whence have come many learned and excellent men: whom it is needles to name, because they are sufficiently famous, and knowne by their writings. There are alfo diuers notable and publike Schooles at Zurich, at Berne, and one established at Lausanna, by the Lords of Berne. Nor must I let sleepe in silence, the goodly Printing-houses at Basile, Zurich, and Geneua, renowned among them all that are in Germany.

of I have made mention, there is love of all vertue, and especially of Justice, which appertaineth also to the maintenance of peace. For it is a matter most certaine, that the common-wealth of the Switzers is grounded upon most great equity, and hath euermore beene famous, in regard of her inflice: as appeareth by the lawes, alliances, customes, and manner of life among the ancient Switzers, and by many examples, and particular actions. I need not make mention of their lawes, because they agree with those of other commonwealths, that are ruled by good lawes: where crimes and misdeeds are seuerely punished, without any exception of per-

As for their alliances, the Articles of them, reported in the first Booke : do declare, with what vprightnesse, diligence,& faithfulnesse they are made. The ends of them are, that every man may enjoy his owne peaceably, and that (by a common confent) all violence may be expulft and banished. For the better gouerning of this case, it is expressely forbidden, to goe and affault, and make warre one vpon another, eyther rashly, or withour just cause. And therefore also before Armes may be undertaken, the wifest and most discreete persons in all the nation: in a publike affembly, must examine the caules of the warre, and understand them to be just and lawfull. Then afterward, when question is veged; of repulsing an enemy, it is most strictly prohibited to the confederates, that ought to give affiftance; to yse therein no fraud nor cunning. But if they be called by letters, or by meffages; or, admit they could not bee called, the paffages being fore-closed by the enemy:

yet notwithstanding, they are comman-

ded to go and give succour, even to their

vtmost power.

Moreouer, because it many times hape pens, that the reconery of debts and borrowed money, do beget great debates, fo debts & bor that fuch differences betweene particu- rowed molar persons, doe sometimes fet the Can- nies. tons at variance one with another othe Articles of the alliances do enery where make mention, what course is to been be ferued in the recourry of fuch debrs, and for taking pawns, to cut off the ouer great licence of lenders, and to shunne the fraudulency of borrowers. Whofoeuer hath beene but a meane reader of Histories, knowes very wel, what troubles have hapned in Rome, in the case of debts, at all times, and when so euer the people are op- debts. prefled by the violence of vourers, & taxed in great summes then they would mutiny, and demaund, that the viurers contracks might be torne in peeces, & other made of more honest nature. But the prouidence and vprightnesse of the auncient Great care & Switzers, made fuch an imbarment, that prouidence in neuer was the abolition of Obligations the Switzers. vrged in Switzerland; although the country is not very great, nor rich, and hath

beene troubled with warres continually. Because also, that men of warre are prompt, and ready, to lay hand on their weapons, and (oftentimes) fight vnder a Anespecial falle and dangerous pretence, they being care against menrather quarrellous, flurdy & outragi-ous, then valiant, yetraking a delight in this forwardnesse of enduring nothing, fors. as thinking it makes men magnanimous and inuincible: the atheient Switzers laboured to remedy this cuill, first by impofition of great fines, on fuch as began the ftirre, and to outrage their affociates. But because choller is a furious beast, and very difficult to be brideled : to hinder him from taking carriere, and obniate murders; they added another remedy, to wit, Agoodlaw to that flich as were found present at those beviedinoquarrels and debates, if they did not paci-ther places, fie and hinder their proceeding, and impose on them the penalties appointed by the lawes : then themselves should bee greeuoufly punished by the Magistrate. For they would not permit, that men should be so one fwaied and mastered by choller, and their lawes (in the meane while) lofe their power and authority. If any man committed a murder, aid efea- Againt futh ped from the hand of inflice: her could as committed not be received into any of the Cartons.

ago all

Great trottbles in Rome about cases of

Example of Nouara.

couered with any horse: foiled and droue in route, the French Infantery and Horfemen. Afterward, on the day at Marignano having had battaile against king Frances, two feuerall dayes, which they loft, by the two dayes reason of the thundring Artillery, and multitude of their enemies: Neuertheleffe though vanquished, yet they returned to Millaine, ranged in battaile, fo that

Goodly Prin ting-houles. Befide the study of good letters, wher-Loue of verrue & justice among the

Chap.2.

The Lawes of he Switzers.

The alliances

Of vnderta king Armes

In the case of

and assistance

whence

If any man were banished, for offending ! any one of the Cantons, or killing a man: he was to frand excluded from all the reft. except hee could proue by fufficient witneffes, that he flew his enemy in the mere defence of his owne body.

Such hath beene, and still is, the equi-

are protected in this protection in the faulty from time to time: that many stragers have made the to them, and have accepted them for Arbitrators in their differences. For they do fhew themselves protectors of all such as haue any wrong done to them, and vpon this their comming to them; they have fent Ambassadours, nay, haue vndertaken Armes, to re-establish in their goods and possessions, some that have bene despoyled of them by very powerful Lords. The Cantons (in this cause) made war

on the Princes of Austria, to maintaine

the right of the Fulachs, Cittizens of

Schaffouse. And for certaine Gentlemen

of Stiria, named the Gradlers: & constrai-

ned the Duke of Austria, to restore such

goods as he deterned from them. In the

like case, but of much greater importance

they gave battaile vnto Duke Charles of

Bourgongne; to maintaine Rene, Duke of

Lorraine, whom Charles had dispossed of

the most part of his countries. In like

manner alfo, many times have they made

warre on certaine theeues, who couering

themselues with the title of Noblemen;

robbed and spoyled Merchants. To foile

thefe thecues, they have bin faine to make

out you them, not onely in their owne

country of Switzerland: but also in coun-

tries further off, allying themselues (to effect so good a worke) with those farre

off townes. By which meanes, the wayes

of Switzerland have beene made very fe-

cure: fo that Merchants, charged with ne-

uer fo great fummes of money, goe and

come in al safety, transporting their Mer-

chandizes whether they please, without

any need of company or transport. And a pleasant Prouerbe grew thereon, that if

any man carried his purfle full of gold or

filuer on his staffes end; hee might safely

paffe through Switzerland, and care not

Examples of duers prorected & holpen to their rights by the

The Switzen hauc made warre vpon thecues that robbed and spoiled passen

Rood adions are cuermore worthy to bee

> how many looked on him. Iustice sildome walkes without her companion Liberality, under which epithire wee will comprehend hospitality, which alwayes hath made the people of

Switzerlandto bee highly commended. They have not the delicates of the Italian and French, but they offer liberally those presents which the earth yeeldes them, as namely, Milke, Butter, & Hony. And who would bee ashamed, or can defoife this liberality; feeing the great Pa- It is no flame to follow yertriark Abraham, entertained Angels with tuous a good fuch viands, when they came to fee him? examples, And yet the country is not without good store of wilde Beasts and Fowles, with diuers kindes of Fishes, both in Lakes & Rivers. And as great men in times past, (fo fweetly fung of by learned Poets) honoured men of worth by giving them flesh for their food: even so oftentimes in Switzerland, prefents are given to ftragers, and them of the same country also, paffing from one place to another, of good and delicate flesh, namely Venilon, and also of very dainty Fish. But principally, the Switzers are liberall and chari- The Switters table to the poore, in lodging, seeding, & charitable as furnishing them with other needefull the poore. things: fo that there are very few countries wherein fo many poore beggers are to be seene as in Switzerland. I do not heere dispute, whether the Magistrate doth well, or no, in fuffering or supporting them: onely I was defirous to fnew heerein, the great humanity of the Switzers towards the poore, which refort the-

The people of Switzerland (among all other)take pleasure in Feasts and publike delighting Banquets. In Citties and Townes, they fling & binof one trade, or of one band, haue cer-quetting, only for the maintainehouses ordained to affemble themfelues in. Euery Village (almost) hath a uir greigh-house by it selfe, which they cal the house of good company: because they there meete, onely to maintaine loue and amity. The men doe meete there often, and fometimes the women are inuited thether to fitte and banquet with their hufbands. They do not vie any fumptuous dishes or delicates, but most often content themselves with one or two kindes of meates. Many times every neighbour bringeth his dish, and there feed friendly together, on that which was prouided for their owne private houses. And as among Aged men & the Lacedemonians it was ordained, that Magiffrates aged men and Magistrates should be prefent at banquets, to the ende, that every monians to man should carry himselfe honestly : the beat Fealis

ther from all parts.

VCTY and Banquets

very fame is practifed in Switzerland, fo) rily changed, that the Grecians prayed & that all of one Trade, or of one Brotherhood, haue their diftinct places, and the Magistrate, with the most auncient men, haue the higher ende of the Table allowed to them.

The Switzers theirmeetings

Chap.2.

They do not much delight in Musicke at fuch Banquets, because they conceine delight not in more pleasure in conferring together, either of particular affaires, or (oftentimes) of publike businesse. Aboue all, when one of the most aged begins to discourse on some notable matters, which happened in his youth, or that himfelfe had learned from his predeceffors; euery one is very attentine, without the least interruption. And many times, he that hath a good & pleafing tongue will speake loud enough on the faire descruings of his Ancestors, The ancient Switzers were very fober & modest in all things, especially at publike Feasts and Banquets: fo that it is a matter rare & most ignominious, if any man should be drunke in such an affembly. But I am enforced to write, and to my

great greefe, that although there is more

moderation in the Switzers Banquets, e-

uen at this day, then in many other peo-

ple of Germany: yet notwithstanding,

The Author which the peoples folly

Aftrange al-

drunkennesse will not be banished nor so vilely thought on, as in elder times it hath beene. And as Xenophon faide of the Lacedemonians (whose common-wealth hee had most highly commended) that hee durst not maintaine now in his time, that the lawes of Lycurgus were in full force, because in former times, sober and moderate people, affected rather to line among them in great continence, then to be Lords in other Citties, where they might possesse worlds of riches: So now in the time of Xenophon, the Lacedemonians, yea, them of greatest power among them, contended to have the government of citties, as fearing they should be compeld to live in their owne particular condition, glorifying themselues openly, of their wealth and riches. And whereas their Ancestors were studious, to make themselues become honourable, & worthy of giving command to others: thefe

exhorted one another, to refift against the Lacedemonians, yea, and to expulle the vtterly, fearing lefte they should vsurpe vpon the gouernment.

It appeareth now to me, that even as much may be faid of the Switzers: for I must needs confesse, that the frugality & alteredfrom temperance of our auncients, in eating, progenitors. drinking, cloathing, and in the whole course of life, is dead, or as if it had never beene at all. The Switzers are not now fo continent and spare in living, as heeretofore, when they maintained their lines with the labour both of their mindes and hands without taking wages of Kings & Princes, strangers to them. And therfore I am much affraid, lefte we lofe that wholy too, which yet remaineth, namely, valiancy and strength in warre, humanity, debonarity, iustice, and vprightnesse. that one day, they who (heretofore) haue The Authors fo carefully compaffed amity & alliance especial care with the Switzers: it is to bee doubted, or inscountries honour, may change their mindes, and fludy how and of his they shall best subdue them. I desire of countrymen. God, that he will turne from my country fo deadly a danger; and I defire also, and exhort all them that ought to think theron, to striue to bring in vse againe those honest ancient manners, that frugality, continence, equity, humanity, loyalty, & constancy of the olde Switzers in al their actions.

CHAP. III.

Of publike assemblies and meetings, or rather of the Councell and Senate of the Switzers.

Nall Commonwealths, three things are especially to be cofidered, to wit, the Councell naments or any common or Senate, the Magistrate, and

Iustice; for the Common-wealth of the Switzers hath no common Magistrates: except wee may place in that ranke, the Bayliffes and Gouernors, which are fent heere and there, not by the councell of the Common-wealth, but by each one of the Cantons in it felfe. For the rest, the

men coueted after dignities onely. So that whereas the Grecians (on their owne meere motion) made request to the Lace-

demonians, that they would accept of the

gouernment : matters became fo contra-

naments of a

The three or.

The bounty and hospitali-ty of the Switzers.

zers not equal alwayes.

councell of Switzerland is not alwayes e- | der, when they were entred into league; quall in number; for sometimes, ouer & as thus Vri, Suits Vnderuald, Lucerna and befide the Cantons, the other allies and confederates, especially the Ambassadors of S. Gall, of the Grifons, and of Mulhoufe, do meete together. And then this is the very greatest councell, which doe assemble but rarely, and to conferre on peace or warre, or of other affayres, which appertaine equally to all the confederates.

dors of the 12 cantons meet ofinell toge-ther, but not vpon all occa

Oftenest of all other, there do none but The Ambaffa- the Ambaffadors of the thirteen cantons meete together, to confult and aduise on matters of the Common-wealth. Euery man of them bath a deliberate vovce, as well as the other, and therefore, though one Canton do fend two Ambassadors: ver they shall have but one voyce, & one advice, because the advice is collected according to the number of the Cantons, and not to the number of Ambassadors. Neuertheleffe, all the Cantons doe not fend their Ambaffadors at all daies meetings; as when there is question of the Bayliwicks, gouerned by the seauen or eight first Cantons, or of other things on them depending: then feuen or eight ambaffadors onely meete together, & haue their deliberative voyces. But if there be any speech concerning the Bayliwicks of Italy, belonging to the twelve first Can-tons: then those twelve ambassadors doe affemble. And as for that which concerneth the good of the whole Commonwealth: the ambaffadors of the thirteene Cantons, do then make a perfect & com-

In our times, fince Switzerland be-

came divided into factions, by reason of

differences happening in Religion, they

likewise instituted particular assemblies:

fo that the fine Cantons of Lucerna, Vri.

Suits, Underuald, and Zug, that make ex-

presse profession of the Religion and Ce-

remonies of the Romane Church, & are

very thrictly united together, by especiall amity (Iknow not whether it bee by

league or alliance) they meete together

more often then the other cantons, and

are (as it were) a councell apart. And

therefore, when speech is made of the fine

finall Cantons, they before named are

understood, and not the fine first in alli-

ance. As also in making mention of three,

of fenen, or of eight Cantons: it must be

confidered according to the time and or-

please body of councell.

Factions among the of religion.

The Ambaffa

heir affem -

ding to their

blies accor-

caules.

dors haue

Lucerna, Vri, Suits, Vnder-uald and Zng, are the fiuc

Zurich, shall be the fine Cantons. Some. times they of Fribourg and of Solleurre, affemble themselues with the fine forenamed, and call themselves the seven ca- The seven tholike Cantons. Now, although any in the cantons of Glaria and Appenzell, doe will be to a belong to the catholike Church, & Masse thenselves is fung in their cheefest Villages: yet notwithstanding, they are not rancked among the catholikes, because (for the most part) their people walke with them that are of the new Religion. Finally, the foure Citties, to wit, Zurich, Berne, Bafile, and Schaffoufe, have likewife (fometimes) their affembly apart; but yet it is not fo often as the other.

Moreouer, it is very vneafie to discipher particularly, all those things where-on the councell of Switzers do deliberate: neuertheleffe, I will touch some of the principall articles. The first and cheeledge. fest, is concerning war and peace, as likewife mention is made in most part of the alliances, that if a great wrong is done to one of the cantons, and it thinketh good to have reason by armes: it must first bee referred to the councell of the leagues, to the end that the ambaffadors may regard together, whether the cause of warre bee iuft, or no, lefte warre should bee lightly War is not u moued, and upon triuial occasions. Then afterward, if it appears to bee expedient ons. to begin warre, and for the fafety of the common-wealth, the meanes must next be confulted on.

It chanced (in my time) that Christopher Landberg, being leagued with many of Rocalle Gentlemen, furiously to inuade them of alliedous Rotuille, allied to the Cantons many faid, cened with that fuch fuccour ought to be fent to Rot- danger. uille, as the inhabitants defired. But the greater part of the Senatours, and Deputies to the councell of Switzerland, hauing vnderstood the causes of the variance; hindred any fuch proceeding. For they faw plainely, that the whole State would ouerthrow it selfe into very great perill, and vpon filly occasion: because there was pregnant apparance, that by in-uading Landberg, they must therby meddle with the Duke of Wirtemberg his neighbour, to whom the Switzers hadde beene good friends a long time. Nor could they come fo neere him, without

can be compeld to make alliance with a strange

For the effa-

irritating (by the fame meanes) many other Princes, that wer hiskindred, friends, and confederates. Neuerthelesse, because they of Rottille should not complaine, that they were forfaken in fuch a necessity: fifty Soldiors of each Canton were fent as a Garrison to their Towne, but they stayed at Schaffoule, and (foone after) the difference was pacified by Indges, chosen for eyther side. And as the councell deliberated on the matter of warre, and whether it should be begun, or no: peace also was treated on by the same councell, and not by the Cantons in particular. According heereto, in the warre of

Suaba, all the Cantons together fent their

ambassadors to Basile, where they made

peace with the Emperor Maximillian. So

the warre at Suaba, when peace was made at Fri-

the councell of Switzerland, affembling at Fribourg : made perpetuall peace with the King, and all the Realme of France, in the yeare, 1516. The negotiation of alliances is joyned with that of peace: for very often in the dayes of our ancestors. and in ours also, the Cantons (by aduice of their councell) have made alliances with neighbouring Kings and Princes. Wherin this order is kept still to this day. that no one of the Cantons can bee constrained to make alliance with a strange Prince, but is to remaine at his owne liberty. As in the yeare, 1519, when all the cantons allied themselves with king Fráces; they of Zurich refused to be bound, and afterward, they of Berne renounced this alliance. In like manner, when Philebert, Duke of Sauoye, obtained to enter league and amity with the Switzers : first the fine finall cantons began, and then

The fecond Article, of fuch things as the councell of Switzerland do ordaine, lithment of concerneth lawes and ordinances. Each lawes and or- Canton hath his lawes and customes by himfelfe, which remaine firme and inuiolable: neuertheleffe, by a common confent, our ancestors denised and established many publike Edicts and Ordinances. Among which number, are the fore-mentioned lawes of warre : wherewith also may the accord at Stantz bee rancked, paffed betweene the eight first Cantons, and whereof we have spoken in the first book. Alfo because Priests abused their immunities and priviledges; they were reproo-

Solleurre joyned with them afterward.

ued by a publike Edica, containing this in effect. Whofoeuer of the cittizens or inhabitants of the cantons, be hee Prieft or their immuno, be he a Counceller, Vassaile, or bound ledges, to the Princes of Austria: he shall stand bound neuertheles, and promise by oath to his canton, to procure & aduance the profite therof, and of all the confederats, and discouer speedily and in good conscience, all that may bring them any damage. This oath thall precede all other, and no obligation, how expresse socuer it be, shall excuse them, if they go aginst this

none shall prefume to protect him, vitill

fuch time as hee hath renounced all for-

raigne inflice, and payed the charges of

other meanes : he shall be punishable in

body and goods, vntill hee haue fatisfied

culer, and out of the country: he shall pay

all the charges endured in that cause, in

regard hee ought to pleade in the same place, where the party dwelleth. No man

thall affigne ouer his action to another,

by which meanes he may the eafier afflict

made fatisfaction to the party. All the

cantons shall take order, that the waies

wife, by common confent of all, and our

helpe to the vttermoft, hee shall be com-

the contrary party.

Such Priests as dwell in Switzerland. and are not of the country, may draw no No Prieft may man into civill or ecclefiafticall inflice, commence out of the country; except in matrimoni- of the Counall and ecclefiafticall causes. If any one try, but with dare do otherwife, the Magistrates of the canton wherein he dwelleth, shall prohibite all men, not to harbour, lodge, or friend him, nor to frequent his company:

the party, that received endamagement by fuch inflice. Whofocuer shall doe For punishing wrong to his neighbour, cyther in taking of wrong done pawnes against order of right, or by any to neighbors.

the party. He that is not of the Church, No suite to be and yet hath fummond his aduerfary, ey- pleaded out ther before a Judge of the Church, or fe- of the country

If any man shall renounce his Bourgeship, and therby do wrong to another, No colourad. by drawing him into strange instice: hee mitted to wrong another. number of the cittizens, till first hee have

be fure and fafe, because both Switzers & For secure & firangers may passe securely, connaying on the high-

their Merchandizes through the country, wayes without any manner of violence done to them: whofoener shall attempt other-

pelled

Nopawnered betaken bur by the Magigistrates con-

An Edict a

gainit Bro

fices.

kers for Bene

The Authors

reason for the

Concerning

Emballages

the country.

or imploymet

ferious affairs

at home on

pelled to make fatisfaction, answerable to | but also the consederates sent their amthe faculties and riches as the party hath loft. No man in any Canton whatfoeuer, shall resciue pawne or pledge of any other, without confent of the Magistrate: neyther shall do, or procure any injury to be done to his neighbour; but hee that doth the contrary, shall be compelled by them of his Canton to fatisfie the other to the vttermost damage.

All these things before recited, were

agreed on, and ordained by the fixe can-

tons of Zurich Lucerna, Vri, Suits, Vnderuald, and Zug. There was another Edict also published, against many Brokers of Benefices for in regard that such fellowes did oftentimes cause much trouble vnto Priests, made by the Ordinaries of the places, and (vnder colour of some purchased Bulles) were so put in possession of vacant Benefices: It was concluded by common confent of all the thirteen cantons, in the yeare, 1520, that if such people purfued to maintaine the right of fuch Bulles, they should be imprisoned, where if they did not renounce those Bulles, they should be drowned. I could fer downe many other examples, of Edicts & publike lawes, but I thinke it needleffe : and

these formerly rehearsed, are to no other

end, but to let the Reader perceive, that

gaue great honor to men of the church.

did neuer yet (for all that) leaue the bridle

fo freely to them, or admit them any fuch

licence, as was contrary to publike liberty

and tranquility. If any Embassiages were to bee sent out of Switzerland, for the appointing of fome difference, contracting of alliance, gratifying fome Prince, or exhorting fome one to this or that, or elfe to command or declare some matters of import. or to denounce warre: Say alfo, that it were in Switzerland, to negotiate with some Canton, Citty, Towne, &c : The for other suites on this side the Mouncouncell confults and determines what is to be done in this case: as whether it is necessary to send ambassadours of all the from the sentence of the ambassadours Cantons or of some few onely.

When there is a question in hand, for contracting alliances or leagues, all the Cantons do then fend ambaffadors: As when the alliance was made and figned with King Henry, not onely the Cantons,

baffadors to the King . But in many obaffadors to the King. Dut in many or ther affaires, they name but foure or fine la other caffons. Cantons, who fend Embassages in the name of all. As the ambaffadors of 7.4rich, Lucerna, Vri, and Glaris went to the day at Ansbourg, & obtained of the Emperor Ferdinand, confirmation of the priviledges for their owne cantons, and for all the rest likewise. Moreover, this connell hath charge, with reference to Advice for the Lords that affift them, to adulfe on Regulation, & aufweing what is to bee negotiated, or answering Ambassaden ambassadors of Kings and Princes strangers, and also of other common-wealths. as they are oftentimes met withall, in the publike affemblies of the Switzers.

Finally, the councell adulfeth to prouide for the Prouinces, which do belong to the Cantons, to the end, they may bee gouerned as best beseemeth. First of all, because that some estates are of great profit, as of Secretaries, Commissaries, Officers, Interpreters, Landmans, & Land- Landweibell weibell in the country of Turgow (wherof the first, to wit, the Landman is ludge criminall, in name of the ten first Cantons, and the other is as ordinary Proctor or Atturney) the councell commits these estates to certaine men, who cannot (in meane while) chuse Officers vnthe ancient Switzers, who were denoutly der them, answerable to their appetite. affected to their Religion, and euermore Moreouer, if some difficult processe or whends fuite happen in a Prouince, and the Go- cult cafesha uernors or Bayliffes will not judge accor- peninany ding to their aduice : the whole busines is Province. referred ouer to the councel, where if the sentence of the Bayliffes seeme to bee vniust to eyther of the parties, they may appeale to the maine Senate or Councel of the Switzers.

As for causes in the Bayliwicks and Gouernments beyond the Mountaines : Order for the ambassadors (which are yearely sent the sible should be thicker in the Moneth of Iune) doe take Mountainst. knowledge of them, and end them. But taines, the councell of Bada doth judge them: And appeale also may bee made that have given judgement beyond the Mountaines, to the councell of Bada, be- of Bada. caufe that authority is greater, and their power more ample. Yet some say no, and that the appeale is to be addressed to the Cantons: that each of them may vnder-

Distribution of annuall re

The capacity he councell, n all matters mhatíoeuer hat concerne realths wel-

The order & observation for calling the generall af

calling & the safembling of the councell

ppertaineth.

Of Ambaffa dors from Kings and Princes.

rence to be decided. Alfo the Gouernors and Bayliffes, are to render an account to the councell, of the tolles, reuennues. and fines: the annuall reaconnues are distributed by equall portion among the Cantons to whom the Bayliwicks do anpertaine. There is the like also of the Abbeves in those Bayliwicks, the protection and gouernment whereof (in temporall occasions) do belong to the Cantons. In briefe, the councell doth know all things, which concerne the administration of the Provinces appertaining to the Cantons: they cause the Gouernors to render their accounts they give audience to whofoeuer can accuse them, and they punish them, if they have deferred it; eyther by depriuing them of their dignities, or re-turning them to the Cantons that established them, to have some other fent in their stead. To speake all in one word, the councell takes knowledge of all matters that concerne the good and tranquility of the common-wealth: as well in the Gouernments and Bayliwicks, as also in the Cantons themselves.

stand the matter, and by them the diffe-

Now concerning the authority of To whom the calling, and affembling the councell, for the demanding of their aduice: it hath belonged (of ancient time) to the Canton of Zurich which by a very authenticall printledge, holds the cheefest ranke among all the Cantons. Whenfoeuer then there is question made, to hold a generall councell of the nation: the Lords of Zurich make knowne by their Letters to each of the Cantons, both the time & the place where they are to meete together. If any one or more of the cantons, do thinke it necessary, that the councell publike and general (hould be affembled; first they give advertisement to the canton of Zurich, and require by their letters, that the Ambassadours of the other cantons may meet together. But if the affairs are preffine, and require speedy deliberation, then each canton must aduertise his confederates, to be in readinesse for aduifing (altogether) on that which is to bee

> Likewise the Ambassadours from Kings and Princes strangers; do demand leaue of the cantons, to present theselues at those dayes of meetings: & somtimes they make request, that one day (extraor

dinary) may be held for them. But on the Dayes of pardayes of particular meetings, they proceed otherwise, because Zurich fignifies bliesaccorthe fame to foure Townes: and when to fine or feuen catholike cantons; they of whom they are called.

Lucerna do affemble them. There are also daies of and for particular meeting of the cantons allied to the K. of France: whose Ambassador residing at Solleurre, calleth the cantons at the Kings charge. I thinke there is permission also, for the ambaffadors of the Pope, and of other kings. friends, and allies to the Switzers, to de mand their dayes: prouided they are at their Masters expences.

The ancient Switzers had no perpe- In what place tuall or certaine place, for holding their did affemble daies of generall councell: for I am per- on their daies fwaded, there is no one of the first eight of meeting. cantons, but they made an affembly at fome times, though most often it was done at Lucerna, at Zurich, Bremgarten, and at Bada . In our time, the custome hath beene (not by any law or ordinance purposely made for it) that the Switzers kept their dayes at Bada, in the Townehouse: and so much the rather, because the Towne hath many commodities for fuch affemblies. First, the place is beautified with goodly buildings, and very apt nnes or house of lodging. The scituation of the place is pleasant and healthfull, and the necreness of the Bathes yielde of t wonderfull pleafure, drawing thether Townsof great refort of people from farre remote Bada. countries. By meanes whereof, the neighbouring people to Bada, (feeling the gaines sweetnesse) bring thether all kindes of victuals in great aboundance, which causeth the Towne to be well furnished with all good prouision, and at all needfull feafons.

Next, it is feated (almost) in the midst of Switzerland, fo that the cantons furthest off, may appeare there (by neerenesse of wayes) all at one and at the same time. Also it appertaineth to the eight first cantons, & (by that meanes) the most Bada belongpart of the cantons are Lords therof, and first cantons. haue equall authority in the place. Befide, the particular affemblies of the foure Townes, is ofteneft kept in the Towne of Arow, appertaining vnto the canton of Berne; howbeit (sometimes) it hath bin of Basile, when question was made of entring. accord with Luther, & that for the cause

When Alliances ere to be contracted.

like Canrons

of Strasbourg, that then fent their Ambaffadors thether. The catholike Cantons do oftentimes affemble at Lucerna, fometimes at Beckenried, in the territory of Vri or at Brunen, which belongeth to them of Suits. But when the Ambastador of France demanderh (in his Kings name) a leuve of men of the Switzers: the day is oftenest held at Solleurre, where he entreateth the Cantons to be present; and sometimes also it is at Lucerna.

At what time the dayes of audience for fuites are

The realog the councels fitting and meeting.

Concerning fudden & vn expected accidents and fuites of particular persons, from the ge-nerall busines.

dayes for th

councell.

The custome is, that (euery yeare)

dayes of meeting are held at Bada, about mid-Iune. Then the Bayliffes or Gouernors appertaining to the Cantons, veeld a reason of their seuerail charges before the councell, and attend to the ending of fuites concerning the Prouinces. At the same time, the Ambassadors of the twelve first Cantons do mecte at Lugano, & take an account of the foure bayliffes for the Provinces of Italy, and judge the causes of appeale: but yet in such fort as a man may appeale from them, to the Councell or Parliament of Bada, it being of farre greater authority. The councell fo affembled, they fit by ordination of the Cantons, to ende fuch controverfiall cafes, as were not concluded on at the precedent meeting: for oftentimes causes of importance are not ended at the first Seffion, either because they appeare not of fufficient merit, or want due power of proofe. In regard whereof, they are referred ouer to a further day, and in the meane while the Ambaffadors crave adnice of the Lords of their fenerall Cantons, to know how they shall carry themselues therein. Sometimes also, in an vnexpected accident, or fome other fuch cale of confequence : the Canton of Zurich, or fome other, will affigne the day, especially, if it be a matter concerning the common-wealth. Now, although the Councell are affembled only for publike affaires; yet notwithanding, after they have taken order for them, if any particulars of the Provinces come, and would haue their causes pleaded, they give them audience. But the particular dayes of the Cantons and those that the Ambassador of France caufeth to bee held; haue no certainty of time, but according as occafions offer themselves, & as it is pleasing to them that have power to affemble the

The manner of proceeding on these daies! of meeting is thus. At the day affigued by and manuer the ordinary councell, or commanded to of proceeding be kept: the day before, the Ambaffador on the days for the canton of Zurich, fends the Lieutenant of Bada to all the Innes and houfes of receit, to know what Ambassadors are come, to whom the Lieutenant giueth kinde welcome, and receiueth them honourably, in name of the whole Switzers common-wealth, and the morrow after he calleth the to come to the Townhouse. If the Ambassadors of all the cantons are come, they are called, and then they treate on affaires concerning all the Cantons together. But if you the day named they for the new Cantons as for Bafile, Schaffoufe, Solleurre, and Fribourg, are not as yet arrived as oftentimes it comes fo to passe: then seven or eight Cantons do affemble, and discourse on matters only concerning themselues.

The Ambaffadors are feated in councell, according to the order & number of ner the Am the Cantons, fo that he of Zurich fits in baffidors do the highest and most eminent place; he of fit in counted Berne next; then he of Lucerna, & fo confequently the other, according to the order of the Cantons. Being seated, the ambaffador of Zurich faluteth them all, and hauing made some breefe preface & excufe,according to custome; he declareth which the Ambassadours had in charge on the last dayes meeting, and referred them to the next dayes deliberation, as oftentimes they are affembled to that effeet, and if any thing bath hapned fince then he propoundeth it also. Then he addeth that which his Lords have give him in charge, touching the Article whereon he is to deliberate: the other ambassadors do the like in their ranke, & declare whatfoeuer their Lords commanded them. After that every one hath made knowne that which they have in charge to fay: the Eachman me Bayliffe or Gouernor of Bada (of whatfo-milisio knows euer Canton it is) demandeth orderly of in councell each counceller, his aduice concerning the matter that hath bin in question. The he of Zwich speaketh first, and the rest after, according to their ranke. Having all fpoken, the Bayliffe counteth the voyces, according to the number of the Cantons and not of the councellers: for fometimes one Canton fends two ambaffadors, who may well affift in countell, yet they have

Particular | oules have he fame order of proceeding, as them in generall.

Chap.4.

Thus you fee how they proceed in deeiding those things, which concerne the publike good: In particular causes also, they follow the same order, give their aduice, and collect the voyces. But fuch as haue any causes to pleade on these daies. demand audience first of the Ambassador for Zurich, who affigned their day, & put their names upon the Role. When they appeare before the councell, fometimes the parties themselues will pleade their owne causes: or haue Aduocates, Procters, or speakers, which they bring with them, or chuse among such as they finde in Bada. For at all times, and when foeuer these dayes are appointed there will meet there a great number of fuch me belonging to the neighbouring Townes & Burroughs, pentioners of the Switzers, Caufes are there debated, not according to the civill Law, nor by the advice of Lawyers; but with equity, and according to the lawes & customes of the people long time observed among them.

I know, that many will account this

forme of pleading, to be barbarous, espe-

cially fuch as would have men follow the

affaires, and I will not infrindge their au-

thority in any manner whatfocuer. But

yet I fay, that the proceeding observed by

the Switzers, for ending controuerfiall cases, is to be preferred before that which

is vsed among other Judges, that give se-

tence according to the Romane lawes.

And I am well affured, that mine opinion

cannot be reiected, but by ill-disposed &

wrangling spirits. For it cannot be deni-

ed, that many Aduocates and Atturnies,

the civill law, then eyther equity or right:

confidering, they do nothing elfe many

times, but tye themselues to sillables,

words, and termes of the law, which they

expound according to their owne fancy,

labouring to circumuent a party, and to

take him by the nose, as we vie to fay. And

furely, they do nothing but for the benefit of their owne purifes, troubling the felues

but one voyce, as of one man onely.

order for ple-ding law-caes, not fo co uenient as

After what

manner cheir

causes are de-

Romanes order of pleading, for the ending of fuites: without which (they fay) the very wifest men do wrong themselues often, in the deciding of difficult causes, and matters of importance. As for my Switzers. felfe,I thinke well of the Romanes lawes, written by men very wife and skilfull in

ouermuch, to obscure and mustle vp matters; by which meanes, fuites are made immortall, to the incuitable detriment & fuites to fee ruine of both parties, being brought (by immortal them) to extreme poucrty and mifery.

Of publike Sentences & Judgements.

In which respect, they gave no very uill language, that tearmed fuch practicioners and brablers, blood fuckers of the people: for they empty their purssesivea. and sucke them to the bare bones. And if among the Inflices of Swiezerland, an committed a error happen to be committed, in the de-mong the cision of difficult causes, which commeth switzers in law causes, very sildome to passe; yet notwithstan-because these ding, it caufeth no fuch harme, as doth the fintes are length and immortalizing of fuites. So I quickly ended may well fay, that the manner of proceeding among the Switzers, doth leffen expences, ease the people, cuts vp the rootes of lingring fuites and differences because the fentence doth fooner refolue both the parties, and brings them to agreement: whereas in other places, we fee fuites encrease day by day, and from one case vndecided growes a great number of nouel variances.

CHAP. IIII.

Concerning Sentences and Judgements, in publike and peculiar differences.

Auing thus made mention

giue. If any fuite doth happen betweene particular persons in the Bayliwicks : the Concerning Bayliffs or Gouernors are Judges in those fuites of parplaces, or elfe the Canton (from whence ticular person the appellation ariseth) taketh knoledge, wicks. are much more carefull for maintaining and judgeth thereof. But the Inflices of euery Canton do iudge (each one within his jurisdiction) in the causes & differences of the Subjects. Beside this, there is iustice for publike suites, which are variances, happening betweene two or more Cantons, or betweene some particulars a. Publike varigainst a Canton: and such condition as ancesbethe Cantons hauc, the fame also their rons.

confederates have.

Dda Thus

of the councell, and daies of audience among the spitzers; we are now to speake, concerning such fentences and judgements as they vie to

ding to anci-

gans. Whe marrers cannot be lo uingly ended, what course they take then

Thus then, for the deciding of fuch differences, each of the parties doe chuse two hidges for either fide, who are ab-Toluced of the oath which they have taken arbitrator is chosen, whom they call frim to their Canton: and promife to judge according to right and equity, and labour that the fuite may bee louingly and very speedily accorded, or indicially ended.

By the ancient alliances, there were certaine places appointed, for the ending of fuch fuites. The feuen first Cantons fent their ambaffadors and arbitrators to the Abbey of the Hermitage, to end ther fuch fuites as happened among them. By an article of very ancient alliance with them of Glaris, it is expressely faid; that if they had any fuite with them of Vri, the affembly should be at Merch. If against the canton of Suits; the arbitrators shold meete at Bergeraz: and at Brunen, if against them of Vnderuald. And then the other Cantons having had knowledge of the cause, pronounced the sentence. The Bernians, and the three Cantons of Pri, Suits, and Vnderuald, affembled at a place named Daskienholtz. They of Zurich and Berne, at Zofinge. The Fribourgers & they of Solleurre, having a fuite against the eight first Cantons, or some of them, sent their Iudges to Zofinge; and if they were defendants, to Willifor. As for the causes of them of Rafile, Schaffoufe, and Appenzell, they pleaded them at Bada, together with them of these Cantons, allied with them of Rotuille and of Mulhoufe. But she differences of them of S.Gall, were determined in the Abbey of the Hermisage; and them of the Grifons, at Wallenfrad, which is a Towne at the ende of the Lake of Rine, in the Bayliwick of Sar-

When then some difference happeneth, which cannot bee kindly accorded. and that the entreaty of the Cantons ferueth to no purpole: the arbitrators and ambassadours of the Cantons that are in fuite, do meete at the place appointed, & (with them) the ambassadors of the other Cantons confederates, who come thether to attone the parties, and to make some amiable composition. The Judges and Arbitrators beeing affembled, after that the parties have pleaded their caufes: if the Judges take refolution, & giue fentence, the parties must (of necessity) be contented. But if they be of divers opinions (as many times it happeneth) and that there are as many voyces on the one fide, as on the other, then a fift Judge or obmann.or. Ein ameinen mann. He giueth no fentence at all, but onely appro- then a lift to ueth one of those, which the arbitratours bitratoris haue pronounced. Sometimes the ludges themselues do chuse the odde arbitrator: yet in fuch fort notwithstanding, that he is a man of one of the Cantons, no medler with eyther party, nor having any interest in the cause.

The alliance of the feuen first Cantons, makes mention of this election and choise: as that of Fribourg, that of Solleurre, that of Appenzell, and them of S. Galland of Mulhouse. It is added to the articles of the alliance of Schaffonfe, that to the Article if the ludges cannot accord, by choise of of Schaffate another arbitrator, taken from one of the Cantons; they shall then take one of the Lords of the councell of S.Gall. And in the alliance of Rotuille, command is given to the ludges, to chuse for an odde arbitrator, one of the Lords of the councell of S.Gall or of Mulhouse. Sometimes alfo the complainant chufeth. As if the Bermians have a fluite against the three first ediomento Cantons, or any one of them; the Cantons thal name fixteen men out of which tour. number, the Bernians are to chuse a subarbitrator. But if they bee defendants, the Cantons will then (for fub-arbitrator) chuse one of the Lords of the leffer councell of Berne. If forne difference fall betweene them of Zurich, and of Berne; the complainants chuse for an odde arbitratour, one of the defendants Lords of the councell. The same is observed in suites for them of Bafile, against the other cantons ; and fo in the Grifons causes.

Thus you fee how the Switzers gouerne themselues, in the deciding of con- Thereis at trouerfiall fuites betweene the common-wealths. I know very well, that forme may dispute subtilly, both for, and against this it may score order there observed: but I will seave that there. discourse to the Readers. For mine owne part, I admire the simplicity and integrity of our ancestors, who by such manner of proceeding, have often broght to end very great variances, and carefully conserved publike peace and concord But they did not regard their owne particular profite, neither defired any thing

Their ends & urs are quite

All the cons-

mon-wealths

othree forms

The cheefe

meerely po-

Chap.s.

Of Zurich, Basile, and Schaffouse. more, then to fee their country peaceable | times have beene subjected to them: are and flourishing. If now each man had no other meaning, but would aime at that marke: fo many fuites would not be feene. and easily might those be appealed, that are the hottest attempted.

CHAP. V.

Of those Common-wealths, which are in each of the Severall Cantons. And first, of the Common-wealths of Zu-rich, Basile, and Schaffouse.

Auing thewne already, how the whole Commonwealth of the Switzers is gouerned in common: it behoueth now to it behoueth now to the Common-wealth in each distinct

Canton. Now it feemeth to me that the common-wealths of the thirteene Cantons, may bee referred to three formes. For as there are three names of fourraign Magistrates and Cantons, so have they likewise as many formes of commonwealths; differing not onely in name, but also in the things themselues.

In some certaine Cantons, the cheese Commanders or Heads of the councell. are called Ammans. This is observed in the Cantons that haue no Citties or Townes, but Villages onely, having a popular estate, and the sourraignty appertaining to the people; by whose aduice. the very greatest affaires of importance are decided. Of this number are Vri, Suits, Vnderuald, Zug, Glaris, and Appen-

The other Cantons haue their citties and townes, which have the fourraignty : yet in fuch manner, as there are two formes of common-wealths. For the citties and townes, especially such as haue bene built by fome Princes, or fomegouerned by an Auoyer, whom they call, intowness Schulthels, (who is cheefe of the coun- cheefe man is cell) and by fome number of councellers called the Achosen by free election, from and by the cheese man of whole number of cittizens . The forme the councell. of this common-wealth is Ariffectaticall among all the other: and in this manner are gouerned the common-wealths of Berne, Lucerna, Fribourg, and Solleur-

There are other citties and townes Election of diuided by certaine companies, by each the Bords of whereof, and by voyce of fuch men as the comediane energy of them, the Lords of the comediane energy of them, the Lords of the council are elected, and the four-raigned francealled and councell are elected, and the four-raigned francealled and the council and the co Magistrate or cheese of the councell, Burgermeiwho by them is tearmed Burgernetflee, that is to fay, Mafter of the Bourgef-flee, which we in a hopter word cal Baurge, mafter. Such are the common-wealths of Zurich, Bafile, and Schaffaufe. Now we are to speake of these divers formes of commonwealths in order, beginning with the last first.

First then, all the people of these Towner divis Townes free and Imperiall, were divided ded into two into two rankes : the one of Noblemen, the other of Yeomen. The Noblemen Yeomen had a Society by themselves, apart, which the Allemaignes or Germans did call, Ein Beleichafft, and they of Zurich, Ein Constaffell .

In elder times, in the citty of Bafile, which is very spacious, and for the multitude of Noblemen, they were divided into two focieties, bandes, or companies of Noblemen. Oftentimes they Two bands of were in quarrels, and had the foueraignty: Noblemen in the Confull, and out of the other, the Tribune or Captaine of the citty, which is the estate of greatest authority, next vnto that of Consull or Bourgmaster.

Neuertheleffe, afterward the Noblemen lost this soueraignty, or else for sook their right voluntarily. For at the time of the councell of Bafile, when Lewes, then Dolphin of France, brought (very neere to Basile) an Army of Armignacks, in fauour of Pope Eugenius, and the Duke of Austria; many Gentlemen of Bafile, went and ioyned with that Army, in regard whereof, they were all banished, and their posterity deprined & excluded from and their poall publike honours.

ferity depriucd.

-,: -

The compaso called to do them bonour.

The priviledg of them of Zurich in chu fing their councell.

Afterward, when the Burgeffe (by common confent) made alliance with the ten Callitons of the Switzers, in the yeare, rspr. the most part of the Noble-men, who hated the Switzers: diflodged from the citry, and withdrew themselues to Caftles heere and there, fo that their authority diminished greatly then, and all the reft was loft in the yeare, 1 ; 29. For by the Sermons & exhortations of Oecolampadius, the doctrine and ceremonies of the Church were reformed by order fent from the countell, against which, many Noblemen opposed themselves. And alof Religion, yet rifey abandoned and left Miter which time, the two companies

Whateof we fpake, entred in againe, and got possession of folial private houses, & as ver they keepe those houses to themas yet they keepe trote houles to the houle body of the Northey. And those houses are called in their language, Zunt unit; en und zum baumen, but yet none of the is of the councell. For although the councell do meete together (almost) enery day, and the Gentlemen (having forfaken the citty) dwelt most part of the rime in their Callies: by common advice of the Burgeffes; they were excluded fro they had renounced voluntarily Newertheleffe, fome noble Families that dwell in the citry, & have had care of the common-wealth with the other Bourgeffes, are in ranke of the foure first companies or Supporters of the citty, and (in them) are chosen to be of the councell. And therefore, to do them honour, in regard of their condition; thefe Tribes or companies are called berrengunftt, that is to fay the companies of Lords.

Therefore, there are no more companies of these Noblemen in Basile, but those that are distinguished with the other Bourgeffes . But at Zurich and at Schaffoufe, the Nobleme have their companies apart by themselves. And they of Zurich haue this priviledge beside, aboue the tribes and companies of Tradelmen, to take the moity, that is, the most part of the Lords of the councell, from foorth the company of these Noblemen: so that they are as a counterpoile to the other companies. Notwithstanding, there is

fome difference among there Noblemen, for the Families of race, that He very no ble and ancient they do make a band by themselues, and they are Called Die Stubler, by reason of the place where they affemble apart by themselues, by right & especiall priniledge. To the whole body of these tribes or companies, are ioyned many cittizens, which are not of any trade nor traffick : in which respect, they may have place in one company, tather then in another Porters, Labourers, Porters La Burden-bearers, and other fuch like man-ner of people, who when warre hapneth, are held and reputed to be of this body of dy politique. companies, which they call Ein Con-Caffell, and receive wages : they have a voyce in electing the Mafter of the whole body of companies, and he is of the Seig-

neuries councell, in regard of his place. Beside the Society and Company of Of other Noblemen, the people of those citties & Tribes and townes there, are parted into certaine Companies tribes or companies, which the Germans befide the call Zunfft. The word (it may be) taketh name or originall, of Zamenkunfft, which fignifieth to meeter and affemble, themselves in company. Some interpret them to be Tribes, others, Courts, and others, Colledges or Abbeyes: but wee will call them Tribes or Companies. The number of them is not equall in the forenamed Citties and Townes. For there are fifteene at Bafile: whereof the foure Fifteene com first are esteemed more noble then the other, and are called the companies of they are de-Lords, as already hath beene faid. The flinguished first tribe or companie, is that of Mer- from the No chants. The second of Gold-smiths. Goldfiners, Founders, and Pewterers. The third is of Merchants dealing onely in wines: with whom the Notaries, Masters of Hospitals, Spittles, and other such like communities are joyned. The fourth is of Merchants dealing in Silkes, and of Factors for all States: This company is the very greatest of them all. The other eleuen, are of all forts of trades and handy-crafts men.

Now there is a dozen or twelue tribes Twelue ujbr or companies at Zurich: heeretofore they were thirteene in number, when many Drapers & workers in wooll dwelt there: for that was one company by it felfe. But now adaies, the weaters of woollen cloth and other things, are joyned into one co-

Of Zurich, Basile, and Schaffouse. Chap.s.

Eleuen tribes or companies are at Schaf-

Chiefe trades

and artezans

are diftingui-thed by them

The great

The leffer

Concerning the election

of the coun-

The great councels of Zurich, Basile, & Schaffouic,

Of the leffer

and Bourgmasters in each Citty.

pany with the Fullers and Diars. At | the Bourgmasters. Moreover, at Zurich Schaffoule there are eleven companies onely: neuertheleffe it falleth out many times, that diuces trades are joyned together in one company. They have their meetings by themselues : as at Zurich, the Millers and Bakers, the Barbers and Chirurgions, the Smiths and Mettall men. So at Bafile, the Fishermen and Marriners or Barquers, the Cordwainers and Curriers, the Taylors & Skinners. Thefe companies are divided, and they are called Bhaitue Zunfft. For when there is question of cheefe Trades, and especially workmen in them, their houses of meetings and affemblies are by themselves. But in things that concern the commonwealth, and when, and where all ought to be present, to elect Lords of the councell, or the Zunfft-Masters, who must be also in the councell; every man speaks

Out of each of these companies, some men are chosen as many of one company as of another, to be Lords of councell. In every city there are two publike councels, which have the principall authority: as namely, the great councell, when as a good number of councellers meete together, in name of all the people: as is vied in the affaires of greatest importance, and which do appertaine to the whole common-wealth. Next, the leffer councell. who meete together enery day, about the common-wealths businesse, and take knowledge of differences happening a-mong the cittizens. The great councell of Zurich, confifteth of two hundred me : That of Bafile, is of two hundred forty foure : and that of Schaffoufe, is of foure.

his minde, and gives his voyce

As concerning the leffer councell of Zurich,it is of fifty: that of Basile hath councels feue- threefcore and foure: and that of Schaffoufe, hath but twenty fixe. For out of each tribe or company, twelue are taken for the great councell: except at Zurich. where they clear eighteene of the Nobility. At Zurich also each company giueth three men for the leffer councell : at Bafile, foure; at Schaffoule, two. Next.in Of Confulles | enery of these citties, there are two Confuls or Bourgmafters, who are the cheefe and Presidents of councell. Ouer and befide thefe two at Bafile there are two Tribunes, who are cheete in councell with

the Noblemen fend fixe from among them, to the leffer councell: the other companies doe fend each one but three. By the plurality of voyces, choife is made Howmany of fixe other men, out of fuch companies each company as the councell do propose, to fill vp the number.

Master of the tribe or company. The cu-

stome of these three citties, is, that the

companies have two Masters: but one of

them is in estate but fixe Moneths, at the

end whereof, the other succeedeth him.

Neuerthelesse, it often comes to passe,

that hee who was Zunfftmeister the

halfe yeare before, is chosen againe. By

this meanes, the leffer councell is divided

in two parts, to wit, the old & new. Such

as have beene in charge the first fixe Mo-

neths, we tearme them of the olde coun-

cell; for although they be called who the

councell is helde, yet not with anding, it is

not alwayes fo done, and there are many

matters which passe in the new councell

leffer councell of Zurich chuseth one

counceller from each of the companies:

but the leffer conneel of Bafile chuseth

two. These councellers thus elected.

with the other which we have faid to bee

chosen extraordinarily at Zurich, are di-

uided into two bands: whereof the one

As concerning the election of councellers (for fo will wee heereafter call the of councellers

Lords of the leffer councell) it is done in for the leffer manner following. Euery yeare, about councell; and mid-lune, and mid-December, all the cit- der they elect tizens of Zurich affemble themselves to- the Zunfftgether, enery man in his tribe and com-meifter. pany: and the elelect a chiefe man, whom they call, Zunffrmeifter, that is to fay,

in the same manner, and of twelve which The great

The great councell of Bafile is divided is taken from each company, there are Bafile divided fixe of the new councell, and fixe of the in like maner olde. Befide the Zunfftmeifters, the

is the old councel, and the other the new. Thefe two councels are changed eneric The chanfixe Moneths at Zurich; fo that at their ging of the ending, the olde councell electeth the councels. new . At Basile, and at Schaffouse, they

The election of the councell at Schaff The times of foule, is made on the morrow after Pent thefe cleftitecoste: and that of Basile, on Satterday approbation.

continue in the offate a whole yeare to-

before the foure and twentieth day of

lune. At Zurich, the Zunfftmeifters

are elected by the companies in their hou-

fes of meeting : then the councell of two

hundred confirmeth this election; but at

Basile this confirmation belongeth to the

olde councell. The voyce is given openly

at Zurich, and secretly at Schaffouse. For

in each tribe or company charge is given

to particular persons to collect the voice.

whereupon they all come to them in or-

der, and tell them closely in the eare, for

whom they give vovce to be Zunfft=

meifter. The leffer councell affemble at

the oftenest, three times every weeke, and

some whiles (vpon earnest occasion) four

times. The old and new councellers of

Zurich, are seated one by another, & som-

times one among another: but at Bafile,

the old councellers are about the young

er. They have also this custome, to with-

draw often into another Hall, to confult

together. After resolution is taken,a

counceller of the first company, repor-

teth the aduice to the new councell; and

Burgermeilter, as much to fay, as Ma-

fter of the Bourgeffes, is President of the

old and new councels. The great councel

electeth him by open voyce at Zurich; at

Schaffoufe by fecret voyce : and at Bafile,

the olde councell first electeth the Bourg-

master, and the new councell the yeare

following. The Bourgmafter is in state at

Zurich dixe Moneths: but at Bafile and

Schaffouse, a whole yeare together, and

turne by turne, the Bourgmasters and

Councellers olde and new are changed.

They whom at Basile they terme Zunfft

meilterg, and Dberftermeifterg at Zu-

rich (as much to fay, as Masters of com-

panies and communities) doe fecond the

two, who with the two Bourgmafters are

called the foure chiefe & principal Lords

of the city. Nine other Lords of the leffer

councel at Basile, are joyned to these four

in cheefe, and by reason of the number,

they are called the councell of thirteene.

They heare the causes of very gretest im-

portance, and deliberate on them first be-

before they propound any thing to the

leffer councell: and therefore they may

be called Preconfulters, or first councel-

At Zurich there are three, and at Bafile

Bourgmasters in their authority.

The Bourgmaster, whom they call

they call the reporter Den Dffner.

imali places a-

The fitting of the olde and new councel

Of the Bourgmafters or Confuls,the manner of their cledion.

Masters of companies & communities, Tribunes of the people.

The councel of thirteene

lers. Moreouer, there is a particular councell at Zurich, whom wee may name the of accounts for it manageth the officers cell at Zurich, whom wee may name the The chamber publike affaires: and is composed of eight thereof. councellers, and have the Bourgmafter of the olde councell for their Prefident. Then is there two Pursse-bearers or Trefurers, and the Superintendents for Ecclefiaftical goods do affift them, together with foure other councellers, two of the olde, and two of the new councell. They take knowledge not onely of monies employed for the common-wealth : but oftentimes also, the younger councell demandeth their aduice in cases of importance, whereon they confult a while, and then give their report to the yonger coli-

To these publike councels, there are Two Sterres alwayes two Secretaries affiling, with their committees, when necessity requireth. The first and chiefest is cald statt-Schreber, that is to fay, Secretary of the citty. At Zurich, the other is called In-Derichrober, that is to fay, fub-Secretary: but they of Basile call him Raat= Schrpber, that is, Secretary to the councell. There is a particular Secretary for the Chamber of Accounts; whom they of Zurich call Rechenschryber. The cflate of Secretary in these citties is honorable, and of great gaine. In regard wher- norable of the Gentlemen ftrine to keepe it in their owne power, as fildome is it given to any other. Thefe men are they (among all other) that know the lawes, customes. priviledges, and all the fecrets of the common-wealth.

Next to the councels publike, are Iuflices of the citty. There are two at Zurich,one for civill causes, Das Stattgricht, which was in ancient times under dealing in d power of the Nunnes, and the Abbeffe will caufe. elected the Lieutenant, or cheefe man in that kinde of iustice, whom they called Den Schultheisten, and his affesfors or affiftants: but now the election belongeth to the leffer or yonger councell. Their number is of eight, and they have their Lieutenant, Secondary, and Serieant. To What causes them appertaineth theknowledge of ci-they take knouill causes, Debtes, Hires, Lendings, ledge of. Borrowings, Sales, and as the Switzers vic to fay, they judge Wind eth bnd eigen. There is no appeale from No appeale their fentence : but if there happen any from the ludifficult

Chap.s. Of Zurich, Berne, & Schaffouse. The other Inflice, whom they call Das Zinstaricht, is a ludgement of processe and suites, which happen for rents and vearely revenues. The Secretary of the other Inflice, and two Lords of the younger councell, it feemes doe

daily affift for the ending of all fuch diffe-

rences. In the bigger Bafile there are

two fuch kindes of Iuflices, and a third in

the leffer Bafile. That Law or Inflice of

greatest authority, which they tearme al-

lo Das Statturicht, is composed of

ten Judges; one part whereof is of the

councell, and the other, fuch as the peo-

ple do name. They take knowledge of

all causes, civill and criminall: but when

there is question of testaments, wils, con-

tracts, monies borrowed, and other fuch

like things: the Prouoft or Lieutenant of

the citty litteth in judgement. As for cau-

fes criminall the Prouost of the Empire

of the councell, who do purfue criminall

causes, by the sollicitation of one, who is

an ordinary Atturney, named by them,

Dberftenknecht, and keepeth compa-

ny with the Judges, hauing an aduocate

ly, and haue eight open audiences, where-

by all are permitted to be there prefent.

to heare and see whatsoeuer is done. But

at Zurich and at Schaffoufe, the new coun-

cell doth judge the criminal causes. Ne-

uerthelesse, the Bourgmaster doth not

then fit: but it is the Prouoft of the Em-

pirc.whom Rychluort, or, Blutrich=

ter, who prefideth and collecteth the voi-

ces. Enery yeare the councell chuseth

some one of that body, to exercise that

charge. Processe and suites criminall are

handled at Zurich, with the doores fast

thur: but at schaffoufe in open Court, fo

that all men may vinderstand the accufa-

tions and defences. But the councell com-

mandethall to bee abfent, when there is

of ten pounds. But the Justice of smaller

Bafile, hath a Judge apart, & taketh know-

There are two Courts, or kindes of

ledge of all causes, except of criminall.

These judgements are done publike-

waiting on him.

The Inflice restelt pow and autho-

Criminall

Criminali ca

The other or-

difficult cause, they send it to the Coun- | Instices at schaffouse. The one which | Invokinder they call Das Schuidgricht, is law or inface for debts: for therein onely is en- Schaffoufe. ded differences of contracts, debts, and fuch like things. And if the fumme where of question is made, doc amount about an hundred crownes, the councell theh takes knowledge of it. In this Court are twenty affeffors or affiftants, to wit. one of each Tribe: moreouer, eighe other persons chosen by the councell. The other order of Iustice is named Togt aricht,or, Duffingricht, that is to lay, vice at Schaf luttice for tines and amercements: because the Prouost of the empire, or Judge in causes criminall, presideth there, and condemnethall fuch forfeitures & fines. There are twelve affeffours out of the twelve Tribes, and who are of the preat councell. Causes criminall of leffer im- Criminall of portance, are debated and ended in this fences of flen Iustice there; as light injuries, vulgar outrages, and fuchlike. But when wordes do wound honour, and the wrong is not cafie to bee diffembled or digested; the

> Beside what hath beene saide these three citties have each one their particular councell, which they tearme Ein cies haue pe-Chozaricht, or, Bearicht, where they cels befide discourse on causes of matrimony. For the other, after that the religion was changed, the councels of the three citties established one councell: wherein were a certainer number of affiftants, elected by buplike fuffrages, and taken out of the olde and new councels, and among whom were Divines adfome Dinines or Theologians as they cal mitted to be them. Neuertheleffe, at Schaffoule none of the counof the Ministers were affistants, but onely fome learned men admitted to councell. who had each one as his adjunct, some Doctour of the Law. These Judgestake knowledge of all matrimoniall causes: punish whoredomes and adulteries; and haue charge to, observe the lines & manners of every onc.

knowledge of fuch cafes appertaineth to

the leffer councell.

Belide, in these common-wealths, baftards are deprined of all honours and dignity: nor is it lawfull for them to bee prohibited. feene at the councell, nor in the Courts of Inflice. True it is, they are not guilty cell, or in any. of that thaine to their birth, neither can Court of init bee denied, but that (oftentimes) ba- flice. stards have wonne more commendations

The three cit-

Of fuch as are

Law and Iujudgeth them. And there are three Lords

ludgements are openly

question of pronouncing sentence. The second order of Inflice at great Bafile, ders of justice iudgeth not but in cases of small importance, which hardly exceedeth the fumme For time of

For men born

OUE Of Swir-

Against stran-

gers not na-

For natices.

Againft ad.

čiuas.

zerland.

dwelling.

Chap.5.

ed to take

For bread.

For fifb.

or butter &

Other Offi-

cers noted b

Of Schooles

The Vniner(

ty at Bafile,

ounded by

Acness Syli

us,who was

Schooles.

haree of v

gitimate brethren : as we have an example of Jephta, 2 Judge of Gods owne people. But to bridle the leud concupifcences ofmany, and to conferue the dignity of facred marriage: Baftards fland as branded with infamy, and yrkefome eye-fores to well ordered common-wealths.

for their vertues, then ever could their le-

Next, hee that hath not dwelt tenne yeares within the citty of Zurich, cannot be chosen to be one of the publike coun-

Such as are borne out of Switzerland cannot be of the leffer councell at Schaffouse : But if they be Bourgesses of twenty yeares standing, they may be brought into the great councell, & into the number of the Iudges.

I will not tell you that strangers are vnworthy of these honors: but it is requisite first of all, that hee who ought to haue charge in a common-wealth. Thould be particularly affectioned and obliged thereto, and afterward be well skilde and scene, in the lawes and customes of the country.

And me-thinks, cittizens, and fuch as (from their youth) haue beene bred in a common-wealth; should have more aduantage therein, then strangers.

Moreouer, there is nothing more pernitious to common-wealths, then enuancement of ftrangers and uses and despights, proceeding from such aduancements to high degrees : as draw on partialities and factions, the danger whereof cannot be anoyded, when naturall borne subiccts are left despised, and ancient Families contemned, and charge of publike Officers giuen to strangers, & men of no merit.

Beside bastards and strangers, adulterers murderers, and men made infamous for any crime: are(by a common law)excluded from councell in these commonwealths.

Publike estates and conditions are of diners kindes in these common-wealths, and in great number, according as the citties are peopled . we will make mention of the principals onely.

The highest degree, next after the Bourg mafters and Zunfft Mafters, are fuch as have charge of the publike monies: who are called in many places of Switzerland, Sechelmeifter, as much to fay, as Treasurers or Pursse-bearers. At

Bafile there are three, named Drperherren, that have the keeping of the citties treasures. Besides them, there are three other, named Ladenherren, who mannage the monies of the Imposts, Customes, and yearely reuennues of the common-wealth: They also pursue criminall causes, making themselves parties. by meanes of the ordinary Atturney. At Zurich there are men(almost) in the felfe- Zurich fame charge, whom they call Die Junb. gelter; who manageth the tolle-monies of Corne and Wine, which they cause to be gathered by their committees. This tolle or taxation is not but on the Wine Tolle or tax publikely fold, and on the Corne brought wine wine in from abroad: but for the wine & corne which the Bourgesses eate and drinke in their houses, they pay not any thing. Beside these two Treasurers of the

common-wealth, there is a third at Zu- The Treatrich, for the reuennues of the Church, & rer of churches reuens he is called Der Bloefteren obman: he gathereth certaine reuennues of the Abbeyes; wherewith the Ministers wages are payed, the Churches maintained, and the poore cherished or releeued, and the ouerplus remaining, is referred to eafe the people in times of publike neecessities. Some yeares past the country of Zurich having beene afflicted with an extreme dearth of victuals: the receiver fold in the country corne at a meane price to them of the cit- of Zurich, ty, and to most part of the Villages round about, bought with the referred mony at the best rate, and thereby the Subiccts of the Seigneury were greatly relected.

Next to these, there are other Officers, as they that take care of publike buildings, whom the French call Voyers, the public bulk commans Sumberren, and they of Ba- ings at an analysis of the sum of t file, Lonherren, because they pay the tunter charge works & workmen that ferue in publike. These Surveyers have charge of the waies, Gates, Towers, Rampiers, Bridges, Couduits, and other publike Edifices: taking order that they shall bee maintained and kept in their best ability. Moreouer, they judge with three Lords of the They loyace councell (who are their adjuncts) (uch linkgramm and differences as happen for the confines, with the coll of the and fuch like things, & wherin the neighbours are to be guided by their direction in their building. At Bafile there are fine Seigneurs, that take knowledge of these matters.

There is another degree of them that) beene fo faithfully taught there, and all rake charge of victuals. Of this number are the vifiters for Bread, to confider if the Loafe carry his full weight, or no. Others view the Fleth in the Butchery, and aduifedly obserue, that they kill not any Beaft, the flesh whereof is bad, and dangerous to be caten; they also fet a price voon the pound, to fell it by. Then there are some that take charge of Fish, and heedfully foresee, that none be taken whe they are spawny, and have an eye beside to the goodneffe of all other Fish in the Market. Others looke to falt Fish, and to the Market of Butter and Cheefe, how it is reasonably sold. There are some other Officers, whose names are sufficient to be noted: as the Patrons of Widdowes and Orphanes, Schumuorat, and at Bafile, Muleiffenherren : The Almoners; Vifiters for weights and measures; Deputies for questioning of matters; Comptrolers of Ecclefiafticall goods; and Vifiters of

Morcouer, in these citties there are Schooles very well ordered. At Bafile is an Vniuerfity greatly renowned, effablifhed by Aeness Sylvius, afterward Pope, named Pius the fecond, who gaue it all the fame priviledges, rights, and immunities, which the Vniuerfities of Boulogne, Colongne, Heidelberg, Erdford, Lipfa & Vienne haue. Aeneus Sylvius was lodged at Bafile, during the time as the councell was kept there. He found the citty fo pleafant, the ayre to fweete, with fuch commodity and abundance of all things; that heereputed the place apt, and worthy to have an Vniuerfity founded in it. In the times of our ancestors, and our owne also, this Vniuerfity hath yeelded many wife men. professors of the tongues, in Philosophy and all Sciences who are needleffe heere to be named. Neuertheleffe, confidering the greatnesse of the citty, and the fame of the Doctours there abiding, there are but few Schollers. Beat ne Rhenanus rendreth the reason, and faith ; It is occasiohed by the imalnesse of revenues belonging to this Vningriity, and to many Schooles in Germany. As thinking, that if there were fewer. Schooles and Vniuerfities, they would bee much more frequented then they are. There is not any Vninerfity at Zwirch; netwithflanding, cuen to this prefent day, the tongues have

good Sciences and Dininity that it is very famous, and highly effected among all them that fludy Divinity.

Finally, these three citties whereof we Mints for the fpeake, haue power to stampe and coyne monic; and therefore there are fordging three duties. Mints, and Masters of the monies, whose charge is to take order that the money coyned with the stamp of the citty, shold beare full weight, and be of a good allay. Each of these citties hath her mony apart by her felfe. They of Bafile do covne the fame mony with them of Halfatia and of Bourgongne, and call it a Rappenmunts, Bafle. in regard of a Rauen, which ferueth for Armes to many persons of their mony. Fine & twenty Sols of this mony, makes a Florin of gold, which is thought to value threescore crutzers. At Schaffouse the The monic of mony is of the fame allay & price, as that Schaffoule. of the Empire. They of Zurich do covne Dallers, and halfe Dallers, of equall price Zurich, with them of the Empire : but they have a kinde of mony, which is their owne in particular, whereof forty Sols makes a Florin of gold. They stampe also another fort of mony, which they cal Baches, wher-

of fixteene makes a Floring. In ranke of these publike charges and The watch offices we may fet downe the Watch, & may not be fuch as take care for prouision against the other officers accidents of fire. There are two fortes of inpublike, & watch, besides the Sentinels in the clock- tending to the houses, and the Porters. First the perpetuall guardes at the citties coft, who keepe watch enery night, and diligently fearch through all parts of the citty, crying at all houres of the night. Ouer and beside thele, out of each company are taken a certaine number of Bourgeffes, who likewife watch (according to their turnes) with their Armes. This double guard is not done for any feare they have of enemies: but to avoid the inconveniences of fire, and to take order alfo, that (during the time of night) al maters may be peaceable and quier.

They that are Committees; to take care of dangers concerning fire, when a- The office of ny fuch happeneth in the citty, may com- quards for acmand the Carpenters, and other men of cidents of fire like quality, to runne for quenching the fire, taking order that all may bee done without confusion, and for the best safety of them that have the mif-fortune of the

The mony of

generall good

Treafurers the publike monies,& of Cuftomes and impofts.

Of publive flates.

Adulterers.

infamous per

What the orof fire.

The citty diflinguified tiall order.

When fire taketh a village ont of the cit-

What care the Switzers haue of the poore,

haue the losse.

A collection of charitable almes for the fire. Moreouer, they carry an eye ouer \ the watch at the Gates, and on the wals; lefte any tumult should happen in the city. For it is ordained, that when the fire is in any one place, a certaine number of the Bourgesses (chosen out of each company) make their fudden appearance at the Gates or Ports, and vpon the walles in Armes. Moreover, the whole citty is distributed into certaine bandes, euery one of them having his Captaine & Enfigne to it felfe, under whom they go marching in excellent order. The Bourgmaster betakes himselse to the Town-house, with some of the principall councellers and officers of the Seigneury, to aduise on what is good for weale publike. And not onely Carpenters, Masons, and their feruants, but likewise most of the Bourgeffes meete together, all labouring industriously to quench the fire: and oftentimes the women shew themselves of no meane courage, in bringing and casting on the water . Beside, if the fire happen in some Village out of the citty, the lustiest disposed of every Tribe (whereof ele-Aion is made for the purpose) do meete, and iffue foorth together, to quench the fire. They are conducted by one of the councell Seigneurs, who is fent to helpe and adulse what is meetelf to bee done. but most especially, to comfort them that

We have already told you, that the Switzers take great care for the poore. At Zurich, and in some other Townes, there is a daily distribution of almes to all the poore there, as of Bread and Pulse-pottage. There are a great number of poore Schollers in Zurich, fometimes forty, otherwhiles fourescore, that are thus relecued; some bestowing garments, and other needfull things on them alfo, viing the poore in no worfe manner, then they of the Abbeves and Couents in the Seigneury of Zurich are. Vpon the Sundayes and festimali dayes, an almes collection is made of the people; which Monethly, or at every two Moneths, by men chosen & deputed to the office is distributed equally to the poore in the citty, and fuch as line abroad in the fields. Beside, in the Citties there are great Hospitals, wherin needy cittizens, aged, impotent, ficke perfons, orphanes, and many other are releeued. The Seigneury appointeth divers

honest people to have care of the poores necessities: such as are the Master of Holpitals Proces, Receivers, & their Committees and Comptrollers.

Hitherto wee haue shewne you the The civile forme and state gouernment observed in extenting the citties:but ouer and beside these, they uernments haue authority in the neighboring coun- of the ques tries, and (among the rest) the canton of limits. Zurich hath more country jurisdiction. and larger Bayliwicks, then eyther Bafile or Schaffoufe. But in all the Lands and Seigneuries belonging vnto these three cantons, there is one and the felfe-same order of gouernment. For certaine Bayliwicks are gouerned by the councell of the citty in fuch manner, as the Bayliffes dwell in the citty, and are councellers of the common-wealth, and yet go to keepe Courts in the Villages. And if there happen any criminall fuite, and whereof there is defert of punishment capitall, the councell taketh knowledge thereof. There are other Bayliwicks of farre larger extent, and thether Bayliffes are fent with ample power: fo that they judge not only in civill causes, but oftentimes in cri- authority. minall occasions, and chastife malefactors, according to the greatnesse of the delicts. These Bayliwicks have their priuiledges and ancient customes, some also haue law and inflice apart by themselues, and are administred by Judges chosen out

of the same places. The Bayliffes make no change or alteration (of any thing) in these places; but they leave to the inhabitants, all their ledges, or corights fafe and found: contenting themfelues onely to prefide in inflice, and gine hypotheline fentence according to the lawes and cuftomes of each Bayliwicke. The canton of Zurich hath nine great Bayliwicks, to win the county of Kybourg, the Bailiwicks of Groningen Andelfingen Grifen ee Eglifow, the free Prouince, Regenspourg, Vadeuille, and Laufen, neere to the fall of Rhein. There are two and twenty small Bayliwicks or Castle-thips besides in some of
wicks dobe which, there is as large extent of ground, long to Zurich, a other and as great number of men, as in fome Townes be of the greater Bayliwicks. Moreouer, fide. beside these Bayliwickes, two pleasant Townes, namely Winterdner and Stein, are under the protection of Zurichs canton. The Officers of iustice are in the fame Townes; but the inhabitants are ty-

rich, to obey their lawes, and to go to war for that Canton; in which respect, the two Townes have their feuerall Enfignes by themselves. The Bayli-

Chap. 6.

wicks belong-

The Bayliwicks belonging to the Canton of Bafile, are the Calile of Farmferg. leated on the top of a Mountaine about Rhinfeld; Walbourg, a small towne on the Mount Jura, which they tearme Der bowentein in regard of the Rock there cut in lunder : Hombourg, Munchenstein, and Ramstein.

Schaffouse hath the most part of the country of Cletgoew, all about Bafile, and fendeth Bayliffes and Chaftellaines into the Bourroghs and Villages on it depending.

CHAP.VI.

Of the publike estate and government, of the Townes of Berne, Lucerna, Fribourg, and Solleurre: which are not divided into Tribes and Companies, as Zurich, Basile, and Schaffon fe are.

Of the fecon kinde of go-

chuldtheff.

he words as Bey are writ-

TEe haue already faid, that the fement, is confidered in fuch Townes, as sennicht ment, is connected in the Tribes without tribes are not distributed into certaine Tribes or Companies, out of which are equally cholen, the Lord & Seigneurs appointed for Councell and Iustice. In these towns they that are foueraigne Magistrates, or Heads of publike councell, are called Ein Schuldtheffen. The old Alleman word is found in the Lawes of the Lambardes, where it is written, Schuldabis. It feemeth that the word came of debt, which the Switzers tearme Schuld, and of commanding : as much to fay, that the Schuldahis commands the debters to fatisfic them of whom they borrowed. And in this sence it is found written in the Lombards lawes, under the title of debts and wages, in thefe

> If a free man who is a debter hath nothing elfe wherewith to make fatisfattson, but his owne private Cattell, as Horfes and Oxen for labour or Kine to the paile: then he that challengeth or demandeth the debt, flall go to she

led in obedience to the Seigneury of Zu- | Schuldahu, and intimate the cause, giuing bim to understand, that his debter bath nothing elfe to make repaiment withall, but the matters aboue rehearfed. Then the Schuldabis is to make feizure on the faid Castell, fre

The fame word is found also in the twentieth title of King Luitprands lawes. in fignificant tearmes, as followeth. If amy man have a cause or suite, and do appeare lawes mothe before his Schuldahis to demad instece : if in case that the Schuldahis do him not instice within foure houres after following (if both the varties stand bound to answer before him) himselfe shall pay to the demander fixe Sols,

and to his Indge fixe Sols.

Of the government of Berne. &c.

We may perceine heereby, that the word Schuldahis Ingnified (among our Aludsethet graue Ancients) a ludge, that gaue fen- ferrenced en les of debts tence vpon differences concerning debts, onely, made leucy on the debters goods, and compelled them to pay their creditors. Neuerthelesse, there was no instice so high, but hee flood in fubication to the county. At this day, the name is in frequent vie among the Princes of Germany: so that the ludges of Townes and Villages haue no other name Among the Switzers it is more honourable, for in the forenamed townes, the Schuldubis is lord ouer all. The foueraigne Magistrates of The cheefe Townes among the Switzers, fome haue Magi trate of thought were called Confuls, in imitationing the

on of the Romans: others hold opinion, Switzers, that Bourgmafters and Schuldahis ought to be called Prestors. For mine owne part, I call them Confuls, that are Prefidents in publike councel. The French call him an Auoyer, whom we scarme schuld-

Now as concerning the Towns wherof we fpeak, they are not divided by com- No Trades or panies and trades, because there are lawes these Townes which prohibite them from fo doing. But after fuch ms. although the forme of the Commonwelths of Zurich and Berne are different: yet the one flands bound to fuccour the other reciprocally, to maintaine and conferue the chate, fuch as is established in eythers common-wealth. In the meane while, the trades that are at Berne, Lucerna, Frihourg, and Sollenre, hauc houses cstablished for meeting, for knowledge of the best and cheefest workmen, but not for the election of Magistrates. They tearme those Officers by the name of Glellichafften, and not Zunfften.

In

fame effect.

Two publike connects in those Towns: the great and the leffer.

like councels as at Zurich Bafile & Schaffoule; to wit the great and the leffer. The great councell of Berne, is of two hundred men, as at Zurich, although it hath more then two hundred councellers. The leffer councell of Berne, is of fixe and twenty. At Lucerna, eighteen councellers do gouerne the estate, during the space of fixe Moneths, and eighteene other fixe Moneths, or the rest of the yeare. To elect the councell of Berne, the proceeding is in this manner.

Banderet is the Captains of a quarter in any good Towne.

The manner of electing of two hun-

The Seig-neurs or the great councel meete in the Towne-houl

of the leffer

In these Townes there are two pub-The third Peries before Easter day,

the foure Banderets of the Towne, doc chuse, and take with them sixteene Bourgeffes, the worthielt and best esteemed men of all: then these twenty, with the Auger, do elect the great councell, wherfore we may well call them Electors. First of all, they confider and examine exactly, the lives and manners of all them that are to be of the councell of two hundred: and if any one of them hath foyled his dignity and reputation, with any bad or villainous ace: they depose him, and in the place, as wel of the deposed, as of the ded, they chuse another, whom they do better like and allow of. In meane while their election remaineth secret, vntill the euening of the day before Easter, & then the Officers goe, and fignifie to all them that are elected for the great and leffer councels: that they are to meete on the morrow morning in the Towne-house.

The first Feries after Easter, the Seigneurs of the councell do affemble in their houses of meeting, and afterward they conduct them to the Towne-house, that are newly fet downe, to be in number of the two hundred, and then all the Magifrates are elected. The election ended, the Bourgeffes go to feast in their houses, and after dinner, walke foorth into the fields: exercifing themselves there in leaping,running,throwing the Barre, Stone, and other pastimes. But the Auoyer goes againe to the towne-house, accompanied with the twenty Electors; and there they elect the councellers, that are to be of the leffer councell. On the morrow, they are named to the councell of two hundred, and after that their election is approued, they goe and fitte downe in their places. Now in regard that the councell of Lucerna doth command no longer time the

fixe Moneths onely: the election of the Seigneurs both for the leffe and greater councell, is made twice yearely, if there of Lucema be any vacant places, and that is done a- chosen twice bout mid-lune, and mid-December. The yearely. new councellers are taken from the leffer councell, that gouerned during the fixe

precedent Moneths. The Augyers or Confuls, who are aboue the other Seigneurs, are elected by othe Augmon voyces. The authority of the Auorer at Lucerna, lasteth but a yeare, and a years at Berne: but yet in such manner, that the voyces are yearely taken for him, and hee againe elected. Next to the Augers of Berne, the principall men in the commonwealth, are the foure Banderets, chosen out of foure companies of trades men onely, or men of handy-crafts, to wit, of foure Carpenters, Curryers, or Leather-dref- panies. fers (who are distributed in three parts) Bakers, and Butchers.

The Towne of Berne is divided into foure parts, which are committed (each The during one of them) to these foure Banderets: of Bents who view and ouer-see the Armes of all derets. the Bourgesses, and prouide for the affairs of warre. They continue in their charge the space of soure yeares; but every yeare on the same day as the Auger is elected, they refigne their estates, and deliner into the hands of the cheefe Viher of the Seigneury, their Enfignes, and all the other markes of their dignity, which are laide on a Table before the Auoyer and Thetined the councell: and then the great and lefter councell gives their voyces, concerling in the lefter councell gives their voyces, concerling in the lefter councell gives their voyces. ning the Banderets. If one of them have continued in his charge fully foure years, or is preuented by death, another is planted in his place : but yet it is thus conditionallydone, that if the dead did not finish his foure yeares, his successour must accomplish them in the nature of a substitute, and afterward, execute the fame charge foure other yeares.

In all the Townes of the Switzers, The dignit of Pursies rers is great. Some whiles, the time of reisor lar their charge is not limitted at all; but fures. they continue in that estate, so long as pleafeth the councell, and theinfelues al-There are two of them at Berne, the one receiveth the revenues of the Towne, and of the Allemaigne country:

The council

The election of connectlers

cause hee receiveth the revenues which the Seigneury deriueth from the countrics of Vant, and of Sauoye. Those men which we have fo lately named Auovers. Banderets, and Treasurers, with one counceller of the two hundred, are called at Berne, Die beimlichen Rath, which is as much to fay, as the feeret or priny councell. For to them (before all other) matters of most secrecy, of consequence, and which concerne the whole Common-wealth, are reported and tru-

After that the abouenamed: Magistrates have beene elected, and confirmed by the leffe and greater councels: aduice is vied, concerning other publike Offices, which is done in some of those Townes the very fame day, and on the morrow in others.

As for those estates that have not any dignity, as Serieants, Executers of inflice, Meffengers, Watches, and other fuch like charges; ordinarily, the lefter councell bestowes them of fuch, as they know meeteft for them.

The Bernians hold this properly to themselues, as concerning election of their councellers, that they will not receine any person into the lesser connecll, if he benot borne within the Towne. In elder times, if the fonnes of councellers were borne out of the Towns, they could not attaine to the fathers dignity. Now adayes, when fome councellers are abfent, about occasions of the weale-publike and for the governing of force Bayliwicker if they happen to have any children, they are reputed as borne in the Towner For the great councell, they may bee elected that are borne out of Berne: provided that they be Bourgeffes. haue houses in the Towne, and are iffined of the Switzers country, or of the confederates of the Cantons. For no man is received into the councell of the two hundred, if he be borlie out of springerland: and the fame is in practife at Zurich, as we have already declared. In like | ludges; two of the leffer connecll, who is managemanner; baffards, and people of infamous note, are quite excluded from con-

There are three Courts or Benches of inflice at Berne; all the Indges where of, are cleeted by the Banderets & Trea-

the other is for the Romane country, be- 1 furers, and are confirmed by the leffer councell.

Of the government of Bernet &c.

The first Court of justice is called. Das affergricht. The Auger prefideth there, but the cheefe Viher, whom they call Der grofs meibell, doth (al- conto) inmost) daily keepe the place, and hath 12, dice, how and Affiliants, to wit, the last man elected of a etherein the foure Banderets, one of the Seigneurs determined. of the leffer conneell, and tenne of the great with one Secretary, and two Othcers. They take knowledge of debts iniuries &outrages of flender consequence, as if one man give another a box on the care, or gines fome words to his diffrace. A man may appeale from their fentence. to the leffer councell, and from them, to the fixty men, which is a councell composed of Seigneurs of the lesser councel, and of fixe and thirty councellers of the great councell. From the fixty, appeale anay bee made voto the generall. The ludges doe affemble enery day to conclude canfes, onely Tuefday excepted. which is the Market day,

The fecond Court of inflice, indgeth the appellations of the country of Sauoy: Courts caland therefore it is commonly called, the leathe Course Court for itrange Appellations; Das ocarrellations, or, or apbelteh Appellats gricht. The Purffe- peacs. bearer or Treasurer of the country, fitteth iniudgement there, & hath ten affiltants, to wit two Seigneurs of the leffer councoll, and eight of the great, with one Secretarie and an Officer. They end all the appeales for the country of Sauere, and gitte audience to parties at all times, and as ofte as they defire it. Notwithflanding, their ordinary vie is to meete after the meeting of day of S. Martin in Nouember, vntill the ine Court. Moneth of December. All they of Sanoye come thether to the appellations, they onely of Lanfanna excepted : but at enery two yeares, the Treasurer commeth to Laufanna with fome affiliants, and there decideth the canfes of appeale.

The third Court or wriftliction, takes knowledge of marrimoniall causes. It he therhird the Conflitory, where there are eight Contahe profide or gine fentence there (turne by maners. nithe) from two Moneths to two Medneths:two Ministers of the Church:fourt of the great conneell, and they have a Secretary or Clearke, and an Officer. They affemble three times in the weeke.

namely.

Meriluan

Lex Talionis

Cornett of

pets at Lu.

Comicines

The limited on of their authority.

Twe Court of justice at Lucerna, ar what caules are cettlured in them

Criminall caules concerning life and death.

How they

In the Bayli

Of the Bayli-

namely, on Monday, Wenfday, and Fri-) or Germane tongue; in other the Romane day, then they confider not onely on macipline of the Church. Moreouer, these men and the Judges of the first court of iustice. doe hold in estate but halfe the yeare, and are changed about Easter, and likewise about the end of September.

Of the gouernement of Berne,&c.

iustice, the one they call Das mouchen= aricht because the ludges do meete eucof debts and contracts. The other is calfor nine Judges take knowledge of iniuries and outrages, and accordingly inflict punishment. There is not any Consistory at Lucerna, neither at Fribourg, or Solleurre: because they are Catholiques, and fubicated to the jurisdiction of Bishops, by whose Officials the causes concerning Vudersee. matrimony are debated.

pointed, neyther at Berne, nor Lucerna. But when question is made concerning any ones life, the great and imaller councels take knowledge thereof, and judge it. The Augrers fit in cheefest authority, and resolued on at Berne, the Auguer goes and fits in a feate of inflice, appointed in some eminent part of the Towne, enuironed with Officers of the Seigneury. Then the Clearke or Secretary readeth out aloud the confession of the offender, & the fentence given against him. Afterward the Auoyer enjoyneth the hangman to execute the fentence, and commandeth the him. At Lucerna, the councell do judge in criminal causes of all the Bayliwicks, and all the Malefactors are punished within the Towne. But in all the Bayliwicks of Berne, there is justice apart by it felfe, which they call Landtoricht, and thether the ludges of all the bayliwicks are called, and give their advice in prefence of the Bayliwicks, who prefideth: and vet in fuch fort, as the councell of Berne may approue, or change the sentence, if they thinke good.

The Bernians have many Bayliwicks, &c are the most powerfull Seigneurs of the Leagues. In some they speak the Alleman

or Saugran. Among the Alleman Baylitrimonial causes, but also censure such as wicks, there are source depending on the kiue scandales, and put in practife the dif- Towne, and are euen as Subbutbs thereto: whereof the foure Banderets are Bayliffes, and if they were to go to war, those Bayliwicks march under the Enfignes of the foure Banderets. Moreouer, there are feuen and twenty other beside, to wit, the The Amman They of Lucerna haue two courts of vale of Hafell, which hath an Amman, out of the Vale of the body of the inhabitants, but hee is of Hafell, elected by the councell of Berne, & there ry weeke, and decide al fuites proceeding rendreth an account of his charge. Vndersée is a Towne so named, because it is led Dag nurr gricht, the inflice of nine: | at the end of a Lake : thether is an Auoyer The Auoyer fent, but he is of the Towne of Berne. The of Voderice vale of Simma, both high and low, do call their Bayliffes Schachtlandt, that is to fav. Castilians. Frutingen, Sane and Aelen, do name their Bayliffe, Gouernour. Laupen and Thun are in the same condition as

Next to thefe, are Signow, Trachfel- The Baylife As for criminal matters capitall, there wald, and the Rivers of the vale of Emme. of the Vakel are not any particular Indges thereto ap- Brandis, that receives her Bayliffe from the Lord of the place; but he is numbred among the Bourgesses of Berne. Sumifwald, where the Masters of the " Teuto- "The com nicke Order established a Bayliffe. Burg-ny of the dorff and Pyrnestic are governed all alike, chann. censure on the matters. After sentence is as Vnder lee, Landhoust, Arberg, Nidow, Erlach Bippin Wange , Arwange Arbourg, Biberstain Schenkenberg, and Lentzbourg. Moreover, there are three free Townes in the country of Ergow, vnder the Seigneury of Berne, to wit, Zofinge, Aron, and Brug. There are eight Roman Bayliwicks, Eight Roman as namely, Auanches, Modon, Tuerdun, Bayliwicks. Laufanna, Morges, Nyon, Orbe, Aille and Veway. Beside, they of Berne and of Fribourg condemned person to bee delivered to have source Bayliwickes in common; as Mort, Schuartzenbourg, Granfon, & Cha-wicks in conlange, whether they fend a Bayliffe fuccef- mon. finely at enery 5. yeares end : fo that if the Bayliffe be of Berne, his causes of appeale goe to Fribourg, where the reasons of the Bayliffe are examined. There are Pronoits beside, for the gouernment of Abbeves. The Berninans had nine in the Allemane country, fixe wherof held jurifdiaion, and three in the Komane country.

They of Lucerna have onely two out of the Towne, as at Wiken, and at Sem- wickenhall pach: but hee of Sempach hath no other long to Laauthority in the place, but only the fuper- cerns. intendency of the Lake, and of the lift.

gouerned by fome of the Seigneurs of the councell. Those Bayliwickes are Willifon, the Vale of Entlibuch, Rotenbourg, Hab/bourg, Berone, and the neighbouring countrie, which they call, Chelampt: Merifuande, that hath this priviledge, to chuse for Bayliffe, one of the Seigneurs of councell in Lucerna, eucn whom they lift, except the Auover: Weggiff, Ebicon, Horbe and Krientz. Moreouer, the two Townes of Surfer and Sempach, are in the protection of the Lucernians : Neuertheleffe, they have their councell apart by themselves, who judge in causes both civill and criminall. But the Auoyer of Surfey, giueth his oath to them of Lucerna. He of Sempach is ele-Red by the councell at Lucerna: but he is in number among the cittizens of Sempach.

The law of likeneffe or equality, which the Latines tearmed Lex Talionis, is as ver vsed (in some fort) at Lucerna. For if any man kil a citizen of the place, although he did it vpon just occasion, having beene prouoked thereto by the other, and in defence of his owne body: yet if hee be taken they finite off his head or if he five. he is banished for euer. But if he make fatisfaction to the children or kindred of the dead, and cause them to give over all pursuite: heemay obtaine leave of the councell to come againe into the towne.

Among all the Switzers, there is not any but them of Lucerna, that make vie of Broffe vied i Braffe Corners, inflead of Trumpets. The flead of trum crooked Corners, which they cal Darfehboener, gives a frightfull found. The Romanes alto made vie of Cornets in warre: and thereupon, they that founded or winded those Corners, were called Corner cines. The men of Lucerna fay, that Charlemaigne gaue those Cornets to the: because they carried themselves valiantly in a warre which he had against the Sarraxins, and that Rowland, a Lord very highly beloued of Charlemaiene in those times, ferned himfelfe with those kindes of Corners long before.

Thefe forenamed Townes do covne monies, but Berne, Fribourg, and Solleurre, haue one particular kind of coyne: wherof two and forty Sols, and two thirds of a Sol,makes a Florin of Rheine. Moreouer, they flampe another more great fort | they remaine in authority, three yeares:

As for their other Bayliwicks, they are of money, which the Switzers call Ein Worth circle Dickenpfeming, and the French a Te- worth eighfton. Incle Testones are minted at Solleurre fterling. for the most part; and ver notwithstan. ding are counted of leffe value, by a tenth part, then them of France. They of Berne coyned first certaine money, which the Switzers termed Baches: in regard of the figure of a Beare, which was stamped on Mony with a the one fide for they called a Beare 115ac - Beare framren and Bactsen. Afterward the other pedonic Citties and Townes of Switzerland and of Suaba, coyned the fame money: fixteene peeces whereof, valued a Florin of gold. The mony of Lucerns commeth The valuatinot necre to the value and price of that of onothe Bafile, which is more hard and flrong : for the Sol of Lucerns valueth but the moity of that of Balile, and tifty Sols of Lucerna, will make one Florin.

Now we come to speake of Fribourg, Theestate & which is divided into foure parts, like vn- condition of to Berne: the first is called the Borrough, the second, the Island, or the Medow; the third, the new Towne; and the fourth, the parts. Hospitall. The councellers of the common-wealth are choicn out of these quarters. As in the other Townes lo in this there are two publike councels; to wit, The two couthe great councell, confitting of 2. hundred, and the leffer of foure and twenty. The election is made on the Sunday before S. John Baptiff day. The leffer councell manageth the affaires of the Towne. Theofice of deciding the causes of appeales : except cell and of of the Bayliwicks of Saunte, conquered in the greater. warre. As for the matters which concerne the whole State, and are of maine importance, the councell of two hundred takes knowledge of them. The Augrer, who prefideth both in the lefter & great counties, is elected on S. tolms day by all the ot change. people, and continueth in his charge the foace of two yeares.

Next vnto the Augrer, are the foure Banderets, who are Captaines of fenerall The toure quarters in the citty of towne, & althogh next to the they are not of the ordinary number of Auster. Seigneurs of the leffer councell; yet notwithflanding, they affift there in name of all the people, and deliner their advice, except in appellations. If fomething be propounded which teemeth to belone to the conneell of two hundred they may ther make their report of it. Furthermore

Of the government of Berne, &c. 3. Booke

and are chosen by the great & lesse councels, as many other Officers are. Then followeth the office of the Treasurer, who manageth the monies, and all the teuennues of the Towne: he hath (as his coadjuter) the Secretary or Clearke of the Towns, or his Committees, who regifter downe all those summes, which the Treasurer receineth, or imployeth. His charge also is, to have an eye on all the publike buildings. Twice cuery yeare he renders an account to the leffer councell. and remaineth in his charge, the space of three yeares. In Fribourg there are foure principall

both in Berne and Fribourg, where it is na-

med, Brolstveibels. He is very often

neere to the Anoyer, and when the Seig-

neurs are fet in councel, he is at the door,

counteth voyces, calleth the parties, and

takes care of prisoners. His charge conti-

Fribourg, they are established in manner

following, First, the Court of Iustice be-

longing to the Towne, called, Dag

Stattoricht, is a particular affembly of

certaine ludges, to know and decide dif-

ferences among the Bourgesses. And if

there be any criminal processe or suite;

their charge is to interrogate the prison-

ners to prefent & deliuer the case in que-

ftion, and then to relate all to the leffer

councell. The other affembly of Iud-

ges, is tearmed Bas Landtoricht, ind-

ging the causes of dwellers in the coun-

try. In each of these jurisdictions, there

are two Seigneurs of the leffer councell,

and two of the great, and they meet three

times enery week. Appeale may be made

from their fentence, to the leffer councel.

Moreouer, there are twelve Iudges, cho-

fen out of the great and leffer councels,

for the appellations of the Bayliwickes,

conquered in the last warre against the

Duke of Sauoye. They meete together

once in enery Moneth, and there is no

Bayliwicks as in the other Townes: the

At Fribourg there are two kindes of

appealing from their fentence.

As concerning Law and Inflice at

nucth three yeares.

Foure princi-Secretaries: the first is called Secretary pall Secretaries in Frebourg. country; and the fourth, Secretary of law

The Saultier or chiete Vfl

The Courts of law and iu flice at Fribourg.

Thefirst Court or afembly.

The other Court of iu fuce.

Twelge lud gestor the conquered Bayliwicks,

one of Bayliwicks neighbouring to the Towne, which are gouerned by certaine Seigneurs of the councell, who dwell in helonging w the Towne, and come dayly to councell, Fribourg and of fuch Bayliwicks there are fine. The other is, when the Bayliffes are fent to dwell on diffinct places with ample authority; and they of Fribourg have fourteene fuch Bayliwicks, and foure in common with the Bernians. The Bayliffes are elected by the great and leffer councels, of Berne, the morrow after S. John Baptists day, and hold in office the space of five yeares:but euery yeare they render an account of their charge, before the leffer councell. They enftruct also, and deale in criminal Dealing in fuites: but them they fend to the leffer criminallo of the Towne, the second, Secretary of councell with their fentence, which the casions, the councell; the third, Secretary of the councell hath power to approue, change, or justice. In like manner, the estate of or moderate. Saultier, or cheefe Viher, is honoureble

That which at Fribourg is called Tto= A flay or for fingen, and in the vulgar, Leiftungen, bearing of is carefully maintained at Fribourg. By debrathe cotta-these words is vnderstood a remise or tariance for certaine time, and the charges to be on his owne head; when the debter doth not pay his debt, at or on the day of affignement, as in this manner. When the debter maketh not fatisfaction, on the day appointed for repayment, the creditor fendeth one, two, three, or more feruants (on horfe-backe) to an Inne or Hostery, whose expences there the debter is constrained to pay (tarry they there neuer fo long) vntill hee hath made fatisfa- Alawmide Ation to the creditor. Some fay, that the of Zeringen Duke of Zeringen established this Law. Such as infringe or breake it, are punished by imprisonment, banishment, or by the purffe. And there is a certaine Judge, who they call Bourgmaster, that holdetha ftrich hand in this cafe. Morconer, if action or fuite is moued, and a man demand the Traftung three times, if it is not grated to the demander, it is present banishment. Such as breake the peace, wherein they are enjoyeed to line one with a- Banifform nother, are banished likewise: and they of peace. that (without inft caute) will meddle, or take part on eyther fide, when a cause is in plcading.

Finally, the Fribungers make feafting yearely, with folemne proceffion of all effortiders through the Towne, on the fectoral obtained. day of March, and on the eight and twentieth day of Inne, which are dayes of bat-

Two kinder

The author

diffinguisheth

their qualities

Amman ie beld as a

Anmans.

Major or

The Cantons huided into certaine por-

Chap. 7.8. Of those cantons that dvvell in villages. 319 tailes giuen, and victories wonne by the this respect, because they are all partakers Switzers, against the Duke of Bourgonene,

at Granfon and at Moral.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Commonwealth of those Cantons that have neither Citties nor Towns but dwell onely in Villages.

Itherto we have discoursed on two formes of Common-wealths, con-

cerued in the Cantons of Switzerland. that have Citties and Townes. There remaineth now a third, which is of those Cantons that have no Townes, but make their abode in Villages, and for that cause are called Die Laender. There are fixe of them, to wit, Vri, Suits, Vnderuald, Zug, Glaru, and Appenzell. Zug indeede is a

towne, & hath her Officers in the towne, but the fourraignty of the Canton appertaineth to them that dwell in the lands of the Canton, with them of the towne, and are Lords as well the one as other. In all these Cantons, the cheese of the publike councell, is tearmed Amman, which fignifieth a man in office and authority. and that name is attributed to all publike Bourgomafter Officers. So that Abbots, and other Ecclesiasticall persons, do call their Indges, Receivers, and other fuch like Officers.

> As the Townes are divided or parted by Companies and Colledges of Artezans, or Tradefinen; fo the Cantons are distributed into certaine parts and porti-

CHAP.VIII.

Of all the fixe Cantons forenamed, which in this enfuing Chapter we will handle together, according to their fenerall rights & inrifdictions.

"HE whole country of Fri is divided into ten parts, which by them are called Bnotaminen, as if a man would fay, Participations. It may be in

in pasturages, goods, honours, and publike charges, and that from those ten parts onely, they are fummoned and called to be present at those assemblies which are yearely made.

The Country of Suits is divided into The division fixe parts, which they call quarters. Because the country (heeretofore) was distributed into foure portions : but the people coming to encrease greatly, they made a new partage into fixe portions, which nevertheleffe do reteine the anci-

As for the Country of Vndernald, Undernald dithere is a Forest that divideth it in the unded in the middeft : and therfore the division is thus midft. made to them that dwell about and beneathe the Forest. The whole Country taketh name of that part which is beneath the Forest: for Indernalden is as much Ofthe name. to fay, as beneathe or under the wood. In eldertimes, Stants, a principall Village cipall village. beneathe the Forest, and neere to the Lake, was the prime and cheefe place of the country, and the people were called, inhabitants of the Valley of Stants. But now adayes, because the word Vnderuald is taken for the whole country, the Switzers have added these words, about and beneathe the wood, Underualden ob und nidt dem kernwald.

Now as concerning them of Zug, we The partition haue faid already, that they are diuided in of Zug, the two parts; the one is the Towne it felfe, village. the other the Villages round about, comprehended under three affemblies, to wit, the Mountaine, the Vale Egeria, and Bara, a Parish very neere to the Towne.

Glaris is divided into fifteene parts. which they tearme & agwan, The word ignifies the work of a day, and as much of Glaris. diffance or spaciousuelle of ground, as a man can plow in a day. It may be, that these parts were called Journals, or daylabours : because enery one prepareth & ordereth the way in his quarter, and each one knoweth where he is to labour.

The country of Appensell is parted in- Theorders or to twelue orders or portions, which they call Raden, whereof those fixe conjoyned to the Village of Appensell, they name them the orders within, and anciently were subjects to the Abbot of S. Gall. The other fixe are called the orders without: to wit; out of the Abbots

320 Of those cantons that dvvell in villages. 3. Booke

Seigneury; heeretofore partly free, and partly in the jurisdiction of Gentlemen. Que of these parts (by equall number) are Election of the councell.

chosen certaine men, for the councell of the Canton: in many of them there are threefcore councellers, befide fuch as (hauing beene in office) continue perpetuall councellers. At Zug there are five and forty councellers, nine of each affembly, for the Towne is counted for two.

The councell generall of Appenzell, confisteth of an hundred forty foure, to wit twelve of each order. And if matters of importance are to be treated on, and it appeareth needfull to affemble the councell of all the people: then they will double or treble the councell in this manner. Each of the councellers takes a man or two with him, if they be to hold a concell of three times as many persons, as ordinarily they vie to do: and one of the

councellers, on Sunday, in the Church

after Scruice is done, hath a custome to

fignific, that on fuch a day as he nameth,

all the councellers are to meete in the

Towne-house of the Canton, and each

man is to bring with him fuch a one, as he

holderh to bee an honest and wife man.

who shall also bee there bound to obedi-

ence, under the oath whereby all are ob-

liged to the common-wealth. Beside, no

man is elected to be a counceller neither

can he affift in the generall councell, if he

be not borne in the country, Ein Land=

man : And it is much more eafie to ob-

taine the degree of Bourgeshippe, in the

Townes of the Switzers, then in thefe

Villages. Which proceedeth not of any

custome of their predecessors : being ne-

uer willing to mingle new commers a-

mong olde inhabitants of the country,

both to preuent charges, and to preferue

Publication of a councell m be bolden on a day appointed.

The generall

Appenzell.

None Eut natives can be counceler

inhumanity, for there are great flore of strangers among them, towards whom The Swirzers they thew themselves very kinde and hukinde to firámane. But rather by a certaine order of gere liuing aaduifed judgement, and according to the mong them.

The councel ted places of

the common-wealth (the more cafily) in one and the fame efface and condition. The foueraignty in these fixe Cangenerall of all tons, belongeth to the affembly of all the the people, & people. All they of the country, from the age of fourteene, or fixteene, or vpwards, do meete eyther at the principall Village of the Canton, or elfe at some other place in the midft of the country. As they of

Vri meete at Betzelinge, distant halfe a dayes iourney from Alterff, the cheefest Village of that Canton. The people of Glaris meete at Suanda. The ordinary and annuall affemblies of these Cantons, is made every yeare about the beginning these these canoning these canonin

of May. They of Suits, of Vnderuald vnder the wood, of Glaris and of Appenzell, do meete the last Sunday of Aprill. They of Pri and of Zug, the first Sunday of May. In elder times, they of Zug held their generall councel the 24.day of Inne, being S. John Baptists day. They of Vnder-

of May. In these assemblies, first of all he is elected whom they call the Amman, in which office hee continueth the space of two yeares. Heeretofore there was no terme of time assigned, but (oftentimes) The Amoun the same Amman gouerned for many free choice yeares together. He is permitted to be inthe affenchosen among all the people, as a man that (for his vertue and wifedome) shall

be thought most worthy of that dignity

uald about the wood, meete the first day

and charge, without regard at all, in what place or Village of the Canton hee dwelleth. Notwithstanding, in certaine Cantons, as at Appenzell, while the Amman is in his office of authority, hee goeth to remaine in the principall Village, where the publike councell keepeth most. At Zug there are three affembles of

them without the Towne. Next, the Of the aftern-Towns hath the power of two affemblies at Zugdoh and the annuang are chosen by order of without and each affembly. They that are elected of within the affemblies without, doe dwell in the Towne, during the two yeares that they are animang. In the fame affembly wher the anuman is elected, his Lieutenant al- The election

fo is chofen, whom they tearme Statt= of the Lieutehalter: and fo are the Treasurers or nant. Purffe-bearers, called by them Sekelmeifters. Next, the Secretaries and Bayliffes which gouerne the Bayliwickes of Secretario & the Canton: or those which the Canton Bayliffer holds apart with other Cantons. Moreouer, Edicts are there read & confirmed, or abrogated yearely, by the voyces of all

at cardes, dice, dancing, exceffine drinking fore-stalling Markets of victuals, and fuch like things. When the councell is thus held yeare by yeare, councellers are elected and con-

the people: fo likewife foorts, and playing

Chap.8. Of those Cantons that dwell in Villages.321

the election

nextraor-

feven at

lwo Courte f law & iu-

companies among whom they dwell. Finally, if at some other times of the yeare, there happen affaires that concerne the estate of the common-wealth, an extraordinary councell is held. As if need require, to fend Ambassadors to the dayes at Bada, or to some other Kings and Princes; or if there be question of making alliances, be they eyther for peace or warre, times they had at Stants. Beside the lesser councell and the ge-

nerall, composed of all the people; some of the cantons have a councell more frict and private, and courfes of justice for difcision of suites. In the Canton of Suits, which is divided in fixe parts, the principall counceller of each part is taken: and thefe fixe, with the Amman, make the councell of feuen, called fecret. Thefe

feuen do manage and order all the reuennues of the country, and furnish all that is laid out for publike expences. Moreouer, there are two Courts of justice, the one being called the order of nine, in regard of the number of Judges, and there the

Amman fits as Prefident. In this Court are decided the causes of greatest importance : as of inheritances, outrages, and terrible injuries, hard to be endured. The Court of feuen, (fo is the other

order of inflice called) where the Lieutenant to the Amman fits as Prefident : and those seuen are Judges in causes concerning contracts, debts, and fuch like. They of Vri haue (almost) the same gouernment : for there the Court of feuen, with

the Lieutenant to the Amman, doccenfure and judge of debts, which exceede not the fum of threescore pounds. There The Court of is another indiciall Court of fifteene, where the Amman fits as Prefident, and

> At Vnderwald also there are 2. Courts of inflice, the one at Stants under the

wood, and the other at Sarna about the wood, and each of them hath an Amman. It is faide, that the country was parted in the yeare one thousand, one hundred and fifty; when some debate fell among them for paying of a certaine tribute. And whereas before that time, they had but med cheefest councellers : their charge is one councell, and one Standard, bearing perpetuall, and they are called in this can-

concludeth causes civill of greatest con-

firmed: but yet this is not done by euery affembly, but each of them ordered by the subjects of the Canton, and by the the wood, retained still their olde Stan- the division. dard, white and redde, because they were the greater part of the Canton. Then they under or beneathe the wood, receiued from Popes another Enfigne, which The Popes had two keyes in it: for in regard that nother Encipall Village of the Ganton, they therefore kept fill the Enfigne, which in those

> The Towne of Zug, beside the coun-The observa cell generall of the whole country, hath a councell apart, order of justice, Magistrates, a Lieutenant to the Amman, Treafurer. Vover, &c. who judge the causes of the Bourgesses, and manage all the pub-

At Glaris there are two Courts of iuflice, one of nine, the other of flue Ludges, which the councell generall of the Can-Glarit, and ton do elect enery yeare. They decide their feuerall

law-fuites in the Moneths of May, and of December onely. The nine take knowledge of differences concerning inheri-

tances, and dangerous injuries. The fine do censure linies of debts and payments, after that the nine (who keepe Court the space of fixe dayes) have ended. They of Appensell haue two courts of inflice also, the first is kept in a publike of inflice at place of the ftreete; in regard whereof, Appenzell.

they call it Das caffen aricht. Therein

in fines, and chattife fuch as wrong one a-

knowledge of differences, which are en-

ded, by giving oath to one of the parties.

Moreouer, from each order of the can-

are foure and twenty ludges, two of each order of the canton, and their President The feet

is the Viher of the canton, Der Land Court. twetbell, and they meete together weekly enery Thursday: they condemne men

nother. The other court is called Dag The fe cond aefchwozen-aricht inflice of oath : be-

cause twelve ludges sitte there, and take

ton, a counceller is chosen, & many from the orders that are greater. Thefe men Another or-

make observation of such as breake pub. der of counlike ordinances, and deliberate on matiters which are to bee propounded to the councell generall. In which respect, they are as Guardians of the lawes, and tear-

322 Of those Cantons that dwell in Villages. 3 Books. Chap. 8. Of those cantons that dwell in villages.

Of the catho

ton Landthelick.

Suits, Vri, Vnderuald, Zug, Glaris, and Appenzel, are Catholicke, and under the Diocesse of Constance. And if there hap pen any difference concerning mariages, they goe to the Officialtie of the fayde place, but they of the other opinion goc As for adulteries, they are chaftifed in

Punishment for adulter:

each Canton : fome, by confifcation of goods; others (sometime by the fine of ten Dallers. I have heard likewife, that whole Canton, doeth decide fome diffe-

minall causes,

rences concerning marriages.
. Inflice in causes criminall, is adminifired (almost in all the Cantons) by the publike councell, and oftentimes doubled or multiplied by the ordinary councellers, the amman fitting Prefident, or his Lieutenant. At Zug, in criminal matvers, other assistants are joyned with the councell or Iudges, chosen out of each di-uision or assembly of the Canton. Suites of Law are discust in an open publique place, where all may heare that which is faid, and know the merite of the fentence given by the ludges.

The order & disposition of the Bayly-Cantons

Bellizor.a hath 3.Bayly wicks helong. ing to it.

Now to speake of the Baylywickes or Governments appertaining vnto thefe Cantons, they are carried and disposed in manner following. They of Pri fend a Bayliffe into the valley of I ininer beyond the Mountaines : who hath one of the fame valley for his Lieutenant and Affistants also, with whom he judgeth causes both civill and criminall, and continueth in his charge the space of three yeeres. Beyond the same Mountaines, they send Bayliffes also to Bellizona, and to two other places. They of Rellizona have three Bayliwickes, to wit, Bellizona, the Vale Brune, and Riviera, where the three Cantons do command in fuch manner, that each of them hath alwaies a Bayliwicke. Moreover, the inhabitants of Mount S. Godardo, are subjectes to the Canton of Hri; neuertheleffe, they have their Coungell and their Amman, who are confirmed by shem of Vri, & when there are criminal fuites, two, of the councell of vri do moet there. They have their Standard likewifer but when they of Wri. do difplay that belonging to the Canton, the other hold up They bought this Countie in the yeare

foure Bayliwickes, to wit, the Marche, the loure light.

Hermitage, Cufnach, and certaine small toler beam toler beam. Villages or great Farmes, neer to the lake ging to San of Zurich: but the two former have obtained municipall right, and doe clect a councell and triall of fuites in their owne bodye. Notwithstanding, enery yeare, when a councell generall is held at Suits, ordinarily they fend their Ambaffadors thether, and require, that they may have leave to elect their Magistrates; which is granted them, as in veric great fauour, (divers times) the councell general of the with this exception, that they are to bee modest and obedient, for otherwise it remaineth in the peoples power of Suits, to fend a Gouernour thether, whenfocuer they thinke meet.

> Cufnach hath the fame condition, but What winis because, within some few yeares certaine ledges being flraungers (customers for carriage of ged to Cul-falt and other thinges that way) made through ther their complaint, that they of Cufnach owne night did them wrong, and vied them harfblie vpon no occasion: the men of Suits knowing the accufation to bee true, fent a Bayliffe thether againe, and appointed new ordinations for Cusach. Besides, What Baile they have two Bayliwickes iri common wickes they with them of Clark; to wit, Vznac, which is a Towne, and Oastall. Thether they then fend Bayliffes, turne by turne, and alwaies there is one of Suits in one of the Bailywickes, and one of Glaris in the o-

In like manner, they have three other Bayliwickes in common, beyonde the Mountaines, in the valley of Liainer, with continues the Cantons of Pri, Suits, and Indernald. anthonyof The charge and office of all their Bay- would be liffes lafteth two yeeres, except in the Bayliwickes beyonde the Mountaines, where they holde for the space of three yeares; and they goe not to the other but at certaine times, alid to decide law controucifies.

They of Toggenhourg are not fubicets The color but Bourgeffes of Suits and Glaris, and and manual go to warre for them firecessively. They of Zag send Bayliffes to Cham, a very to the total tle Town neere vitto their lake Saint Andrew, fometimes a Towne: To Huneberg, Walcheuill, Stein-houfe. To Saint Wolfgang, and to other Villages 1517. Next, with them of Suites, They of Suites have formetimes hadde | they fend (turne by turne) Bayliffes to

In case of

Vanac and Gastal. They of Toggenbourg are their Bourgesses, as we have sayde already; and go to warre for them, and for the Canton of Suits. Finally, the fine first Cantons are Lordes with the other Cantons of the Bayliwicks gouerned by them in common : except the men of Appenzel, who fend a Bayliffe onely to Khanthal, with the feuen first Cantons, & in the fame manner.

Now follow some particular customs of these sixe Cantons, and which are not common to all the Switzers. Whofoeuer shall have committed a murther, although it was done in the defence of his though it was done in the detertice of its owne body, hee is constrained to forsake the Canton, and it is not lawfull for the lesser councell to repeale him; but hee may demaund and obtaine leaue of the

councell generall to returne againe.

They doe not permit, that Landes and foundations of inheritances should bee pawned or ingaged vnto any one that is not of the Canton; for they holde them to be no longer Lords of their countrey, if once they will becom bound for debts and morgage in such manner their inheritances to straungers. Likewise in the Canton of Pri, it is not lawfull for strangers, that have bene receyued there as in-habitants, to buy any inheritances, but a house and a small garden for Pot-herbes

If any man being drunke, doe commit fome feandalous action, hee is punished by imprisonment, and beside, hee is forbidden to drinke wine for the space of a certaine time, and vntill the Councell generall haue pardoned him.

In publike affemblies, and in the diffribution of honourable charges and Offices: hee that is put in election, is prefent, and his parents, brethren, and ions may giue him their voyces. They giue their voyces by lifting up their hands on high, and some are set in an eminent place to count them. If they stand in doubt, and cannot fo decide it, then they have another course. There are two men, who hold two Halberds touching together at the points; they that give their voyces, do passe vinder them, and two other men count them as they paffe.

Finally, they vie Featls and Processions on fuch dayes as their Ancestors obtained any remarkable victory. As they

of Glaris do yearly celebrate the memoriall of the victory which they wonne against the Austrians, in the yeare 1387. and in the month of Aprill, I wil declare Reade in the at large, the ceremonies observed by them in this festivally to the end, the better judgment may be made of such feaths as are yied by others.

The order of the folemne Feast and Procesion performed by the men of Glaris in honor of their victory against the Austrians.

[N the moneth of Aprill, euerie yeare.

on the Thursday of the first weeke (except Easter day fall on the Sunday follo-) The great wing, for then it is deferred til Thursday in the weeke after) the Feaft is celebrated. On the Sunday before, it is a lowde and openly published in the church, in behalf of the Seigneury, that on Thursday following, the most honourable persons of euerie Family, especially the men, are to meete and go in folemne Procession to Mulhoufere, by those waies, places, and passages, where their Ancestors were in great danger, even fo far as the Fountain, and to be warie of descending to the Village of Haures, til first they have past the til. other way. Moreouer, that all keepe silence while the Sermon is done, and to carrie themselues (that day) so modestly in their resection, that no disorder may bee noted, because the Seigneury will chastise them scuerely that do otherwise, and because the whole Canton of Glara doth folemnly feast that day. Forbidding alfo, that no man shall mount on Horsebacke out of the Village of Glaris, ficke & aged men onely excepted, who are not (being fo mounted) to goe anie further

then Scheneisinge. After they are all affembled together, and rounded in a ring as it were; the Amman, who is in the midft, makes a kinde

observation

offer their welcome (in name of the whole Canton) meeting tovnto fuch frangers as are come thether. gedier. First, to the Ambassador of Suits, who is yearly fent for celebration of the Feaft: because thirtie Souldiers of Sunes were present in the battell for which this Feast is kept. Likewife, he faluteth the Abbots, Priefts, & neighbors of Gaffal, la Marche, Rafferwill and Toggenbourg, giving them hearty thanks, for comming to celebrate

former parre

this folemne Procession, and to thanke & I the beginning of Lent in the yeare folfing praifes to almighty God, the Virgin Marie and their Patrones, S. Fridolin, and

S.Hillarr.

First, one beareth a red Standard, wherein is the Image of S. Fridolin, then The order of the Proceffifollow 4 men, bearing a guilded Toomb, on in match whereon are many faire and holy reliques ing, as they paffe along to the place where the battaile was fought.

enchased. Then come the Crosse-bearers, carrying the Croffes of Glaris, Hanres, of the Vale of Liuthe, and of the churches neighboring to the Canton of Glaris, as of Schennifs, Wefen, and others. The Croffes are followed with Banners of all the Churches, and the Priests come after them, finging according to their order. The Curate of Glaris is the first, accosted by an Abbot, or elfe fome other man of the Church. Among the strangers the other Priests follow. Then the councell of Glaris, to witte, the Amman, with the Ambassadour of Suits; then the Lieutenant to the Amman, and the other Officers in their order, each guiding or leading one of the most honourable strangers. The women (in great number) follow, to make up the end and conclusion of the Procession.

Beeing come to the place where the

The ceremo nies in the Proceition of Glaris,being come to the field where the eleven floor s are f ed in the ground.

The reason and original! fion read in particulars by the Secretary

son, upon the . beliedging & taking of Welen.

bartailwas fought, there are eleuen ftones fet down in those seueral parts of ground where they began and held on fight with the enemy: for they had partings & meetings againe at hand-blowes, cleuen feugrall times, and at each of those stones the Standards and Banners stay, and all fall vpon their knees in prayer to God. Whe they are come to the fixt stone, they cast themselves round in a ring, and then the Secretarie of the Canton readeth in a paper, the cause and originall of this Procesfion the fummary whereof is this. War being moued betweene Leopold, Duke of Austria, and them of Zurich, Berne, Solleurre, Lucerna, Vri, Suits, Vnderuald, Lug, and Glaris; Leopold led his Army to Sempach, where hee was ouercome, and flaine by the Switzers, the ninth day of lune, one thousand, three hundred, fourescore and fixe, beside fixteene Earles and Barons, and a great number of Gentlemen.

Afterward, in mid-August following, they of Zurich, Vri, Suits, and Glaris, befiedged and tooke the towne of Wefen, & the inhabitants promifed perpetuall fidelity to the Switzers. Truce was made, till lowing, which being ended, and war beginning againe, they of Glaris fent a Garrifon to Weson, wher the Souldiers thinking themschies to be in safety, and confiding on the oath of the townefmen, were flaine (for the most part) in a night by them of Austria, who entred in the dead of night, by intelligence which they had with certaine of the inhabitants, that make chinated this villany against the garrison,

and opened the gates to their enemies. Furthermore, that the very same yeare, and the ninth day of Aprill, they of Aufria brought an Army of fifteene thoufandmen towards Haures, and wonne the Fortresse of the Country. But three hundred and fifty Souldiers of Glaris, & thirto which the Canton of Swissent to affift them, affayled the enemy, and (Gods helps furthering, the Virgin Marie, and their Patrones, S. Fridolin and S. Hilarie) they became conquerors, wonne eleuen of their cheefest Ensignes, and left two thousand five hundred enemies flaine in the field, befide them that were drowned in the Lake, and among the reft, many of Wefen were there flaine, that formerly had betraied the Garrison of Glaris, And therefore, in dutifull thankfulnes to God almighty, the glorious Virgin Mary, and S. Fridolin, and S. Hilary their Patrones, and to all the Saints and Sainteffes of Paradife, & in everlasting remembrance of so great a helpe and deliverance, this annual Procession was ordained uppon those limits, where their Ancestours had fuffered many inconveniences.

After the reading of these severall letters, a Sermon is made in the same place; the Priests of Glaris performe their Aniuersary, and followeth the Minister of the new opinion. All their prayers being ended, they go againe to the fame flones, in the same ranke and ceremony as they began, vntill they come to the eleventh, which is placed neere to the Village of Haures, towards Wefen, where they affayled the enemy at the last time. Then they take their way to the Church of Haures; but they of the new opinion return home to their houses. The rest go to the church. where they fing a Maffe for the Switzers that were flaine in the battaile; and one reciteth all the names of them of Glaris, that perished there. Soone after this, a

Of the feast and procession in Glaris. 3. Book Chap.9. The government of the abbey of S. Gal. 325

banquet is made (at the Cantons expen- | kilch, Romifhorn, Summery, Mule, Hotischces) for the Priests, and all the strangers that came in the Procession. After dinner, the Priests singing, bring backe againe to Glaris the guilded Toombe, the Banners and Croffes.

This is the manner of the annuall Procession and Feast of them of Glaris, in remembrance of to famous and remarkable victory. The other Cantons also hane their Feasts, to celebrate the victories obtained at Morgarten, Sempach, and elfewhere.

CHAP.IX.

Of the Common-wealths belonging to the Confederates. And first of all, Of the Abbey of S.Gall.

Godsiuft 5 Gall the

A third re-for of coming with an Am

Abbot Muldoch was made a princ at Balile.

ding of the

of the final

What pofferni bled sed urgow,and her parts of

A Fter we have spoken of the thirteene Cantons, and of their severall Common-wealths; me-thinks now (according to the fame order) wee should make mention of their Confederates, among whom, the Abbot and Abbey of S. Gall holdeth the prime place. The Abbots of S. Gall, have bin great Lords for the space of many ages possessed of great meanes, and numbred with the Princes of the Empire: but I know not well from what Emperour they received this honour and title. Stumpfiss noteth, that Conrad de Pfa-ueres, Annalist of Switzerland writeth, that Abbot Huldrich, of the house of Altfax, was made Prince by the Emperour Phillip, in the citty of Bafile. Now albeit these Abbots are not of such power as heeretofore; yet notwithstanding, they continue ftill great Lords, and have their dominion in large extendure.

In the country of Turgow they are Lords of Wile, and haue a Pallace and a Vicar in the Towne. Moreover, in the high country of Turgow, they have a great Territory, and well peopled, who are all fubices to them. The inhabitants arc called Die Gottibuiglut, the Subicets of the house of God, or of the Abbey, and are parties in certaine Regions. fold in Germany, France, Italy, Spaine, Ko-Their names are Rofac, Thumbech, Gold, Vndereg, Morfwill, Tablate, Gozow, Wald-

will, Bernattzell, Lumifwell, Berg Wittenbach, Rodimont, Strubenzell, Geiferwald. Helbach, Bereknecht, Zuzwill, Ziberwangen. Vnd Wiger. These places are divided into Castle-wicks or President-Ships, and the Abbot sendeth Proposts thether, Moreouer, he hath his Ammans and Officers. that hold meane Courts of Justice in many places. Befide, he hath a higher Court of inflice, whether refort all appellations. and where causes of importance are decided. Allkindes of duties, and fuch as are rendred to Princes, in these places are confirmd vpon him.

Beside this country, the country of Toegenbourg acknowledgeth (as Lord) the Abbot of S.Gall, who fendeth a Gouernour into the country, and a ludge in criminall causes, which admitteth no further appeale. And yet they of Toegenbourg are Bourgeffes of Suits, and of Glaris, & haue their priviledges & franchifes ; by meanes whereof (among other things) they enioy the freedome of Religion. Also in the Bayliwick of Rhinthall which belong-

eth to the cantons: the Abbot holdeth

law courts of inflice in many Villages, &

keepeth Officers there for that purpose.

CHAP.X.

Of the Common-wealth in the Towne or Cittie of S.Gall.

C Aint Gall, Mulhoufe, and Rotuille, are Onumbred among the Imperial townes, Imperial and therfore have (almost) the fame man- Townes. ner of government, as we have already described vnto you. But because the cittizens of S.Gall, do hold fomething in particular: I will here fet downe a fummary description of their common-wealth.

In the first place then, the Towne of S. Gallis divided into fixe Tribes or Com- or Compapanies, & the Society of Noblemen. The mes in S.Ga'l first & principal of these Tribes, is of weauers, because of the linnen cloth there wonen, which is made very faire, and in abounding quantity: which afterward is it we we were bemia, and Poland, greatly enriching the inhabitants that dwell in S. Gall, and ma-

Two councels two councels, according to other towns, in S.Gall.

Twelac mafters. to wit the great and the lesse. The lesse is composed of foure and twenty, and namely first of all, twelue Zunfftmasters. Each Tribe, Colledge, or Company, hath three Masters, which gouerne the company a yeare, turne by turne: but there are no more then two, which enter into the leffer councell: the first is of the new. the fecond of the olde. The thirteenth Zunsftmaster, is the first of the cleucn, which are elected out of each Tribe, to be of the great councell.

The Zunfftmasters are elected by fe-

cret voyce in their Tribes, and are confir-

med by the leffer councell. Euery yeare,

the councell and officers of iustice, are e-

lected about mid-Iune, and mid-Decem-

ber. Beside the Zunfftmasters nine other

Senatours do affift in the leffer councell,

and are chosen as well in the company of

Noblemen, as in the other companies.

The three Confuls (with them) make the

The election of the Zunff mafters.

Nine Sena-

Three Conthey governe

The great Councell,in what manner they are tho fen, and what order they

in the leffer councell, but in the generall, by fecret voyce, Mit derrun: the Sub-conof office, do collect the voyces. The great councell is composed of threescore and fixe, to wit, twelve of each company : whereby there are ninety perfons in the great and leffer councels. After the election of the Confuls and the councell, the ordinances of the Towne are read in this affembly: whereon the Confull and the new councell do deliberate. Then they go (by two and two together) to the great Temple or Church,named S. Laurence, where all the cittizens ordinances, the Confull sweareth first to obserue them, and afterward, receiveth of the councell and whole affembly, the

christmas day, and the day following the

Zunffimatters, and the other cleuen Seig-

neurs of the leffer councell, do meete to-

gether in the Towne-house, and elect the king the Towne much renowned. It hath Sub-confull, whom they call Vnderburgermaster. His charge is to take order for Confull or the watch of the Towne, and to appoint Vaderburger Tutors and Ouerfeers for Widdowes & mafter. Orphanes, and also to examine their ac-

> Enery weeke, the leffer councell do ordinarily meete together twice, on Tueffer council
> day and Thursday; except those dayes be Festivals, or have Fayres. Also the Thurs- together. day before Lent, which they call the mad The mad Thurfday, Den Mufinnigen Douftag: Thurfday. because once, and on that day, the people mutined against the councell, by meanes whereof it was ordained, that (fro thence forward) there should be no more assemblies held, as on y day. The leffer councell manageth the Townes affaires, decideth civill causes, and giveth sentence concerning inheritances and willes: but med- councell. leth with no criminall fuites, nor differences about Seedules, Obligations and in-

The great councell meeteth together number of foure and twenty councellers: flue times energy yeare. First, the morrow ingo offer after christmas day, when they elect and confirme the new Magistrates. Secondly, year. For there are three Confuls in S. Gall, the first is in charge; the second is called olde Confull, for having governed in the very in mid-Lent, to elect and confirme the necrest yeare before; and the third presi-Master of the Hospitall. Thirdly, the deth in judgement for criminall causes, and in other places he is called, Prouost of Friday before S. Bartholmemes day, being the foure and twentieth day of August, the Empire, Repchuoat. The councell whe they establish the Masters of Halles, is elected the first Sunday of Aduent, not and confider on the tolles and taxes at the Gates. Fourthly, and fiftly, before full and the Zunffemasters, going then out | the Fayres which they keepe, on the morrow after Ascension day, and the day of S. Gall; and then they confult on the confernation, and course of Courts for the

The great councell also doth some-Extraordina times extraordinarily meete when they are to discourse on matters, whereof the of the great councell ought to have knowledge, as Councell. concerning fentences in criminall fuites. Then the Propost of the Empire sitteth President, and demandeth each case : this is done in the Towne-house, and the meete, and after reading of the lawes and | doores kept close. The leffer councell electeth the Prouost, and giveth him po- Election of wer to judge. Afterward, the great councell decideth the appellations made vnto fame cath. This done, the morrow after him, and receiveth fuch strangers as defire to be Bourgeffes.

But this is done more often, in the ordinary affemblies of the great councell,

The five met

What causes they deale outsa'l when they fit in

and then also they conclude there on ma- | all the councell doe meete together, for ny appeales. Sometimes the leffer councell fendeth affaires of importance to the great councell, to bee confidered

Enery yeare, the councell gene-

enerall of all

rall of all the people, is affembled three times, about publike affaires. First to elect the Confull. Secondly, the morrow after Christmas day, to take oath of the new Confull, and to binde him to obey the Magistrates. And thirdly, in the Moneth of August, about S. Bartholmewes day, after that the ordinance for tolles and taxes is agreed uppon, to heare the Lecture, which is made before all. Moreouer, the lawes and statutes of the Towne are distributed into three parts; one part wherof is delinered to the people, in each of these three assemblies.

The principall and cheefest Court of

laid to pawne, debts that have no certaine

time prefixed, wages that are due, fuites

concerning victuals, inturies, and fines.

iustice, is that of fine; who are the Con-The cheefe ft full the Sub-Confull or Lieutenant, one of the new Zunfttmalters, and two of thority there the new councell. They judge in differences concerning borrowed monies things

They fit on the Wednesday, or Friday, and there is no appeale from their fentence : neuertheleffe, they may fend backe difficult causes, and of importance to the leffer councell. Next to this, there is the Towne court The Court of of inflice, Das Stattgritht, compo-Noble mens companie, and out of the o-Catty Courts, Nobic there companies ; fo that the one is of Zunfftniafters, and the other of the people. The cheefe Officer of this court is called **Statamman**, Maior of the citty, and is elected with the other Magi-

gistrates, about Christmas day, and is con-

firmed by the great councell. As for the

Affiliants, they are changed twice enery

yeare, and elected by the great councell, on one of the feast dayes of christmas, & by the leffer councell, about S. John Baptills day, in the Moneth of June. Thefe ludges take knowledge of debtes, barterings, and yearely rents, although the fummes bee great. They are called together by tolling the Bell, and affemble in the Towne-house on Monday in cuery weeke, except it bee a Feast day, or that

then they referre those causes till Wednelday. A man may appeale from their fentence, to the leffer councell, prouided, that the fuite be of no leffe moment then an hundred Sols, or Shillings: and if the appeallant lofeth his caufe, he is condem-

of the towne of S. Gall.

ned in a fine to the ludges. The confistory court is composed of eight ludges, whereof foure are Ministers Of the Conof the Church, or some other men of and ludges

learning: next, two councellers of the thereto belesser councel, and two of the great. There longing. fitteth another Sciencur of the leffer councell, as Prefident, who questioneth the causes: and if there be as many voices on the one fide as on the other hee redu-

ceth both parties to fuch a courfe, as hee conceineth to be inst, and then sentence is given accordingly. The confiftory cenfureth matters of marriage, and of dinorces, and no appealing is permitted from sentence. But if there happen any involved or entangledvariance, or if fome Concerning colour of pollicy be mixed with the case intricate and

of marriage; then cause and all, is sent to cales. the councell, where the deciding is fufpended, vntill the councell, and fome other learned men, have adulfedly confidered thereon.

As for publike Offices, estates, and Of publike co. charges, this common-wealth is therein flates, chargouerned, as the other are ; having Trea- ges & offices. furers, Mafters of Halles, Receivers, and Administrators at the Gates for customs. tolles and taxations, Voyers, &c. Such as hold their places, doerender their accounts, first to the Zunftmatters, next

to the leffer, and laftly to the great councell, on the morrow after christmas day. Hauing given up their accounts, the leffe and great councell do elect new officers, New Officers or reconfirme the olde: and it is openly olde admitted read, what the charge is of each one of agains. them in particular, and afterward, in prefence of the councell, they sweare to discharge their duty faithfully. But when many are established in one and the same charge, then such rules as they are to fol-

low, are given them in writing. And because the very greatest trading of S.Gall, consistent in linnen cloth, and the only main that not onely the people of the towne, trading of S. but them alfo in most part of the Villa- Gall. ges round about, doe maintaine their lines therby; the councell is diligent and

Viewers and the goodneffe or badneffe of linnen cloth.

A Market of linnen cloth onely.

What is done after approcloths good-

Viewers of the whiting of cloth,& how they are thickened.

reputed fit to be died in colours,& how they deale

carefull, for well ordering all things in I finde the dying to bee well taken, they that respect, and for the anovding of fraud and deceit. First, therefore, so soone as the weaver hath finished a peece of cloth, there are three expert sworne Visiters or Ouerfeers, that come to looke yoon it and according as it is good, or indiffrent, they fet on fuch and fuch markes. If it appeare to be bad and naught, they fend it to the Zunfftmafter of the weavers, and to the other eleuen Zunffimafters; who condemne the workman in a fine, or cut the whole peece into some portions, of eight Elles in length each one, or elfe through the midft, or if it bee worth nothing, they burne it openly. This view and visitation is done daily, and there is a Market of linnen cloth, which hath certaine Lawes, for the observation whereof, they that deale in such Merchandize are strictly bound.

After that the cloth hath beene feene and appropued; the fworne Meafurers do both Ellit, and marke it. The Meafurers haue some other sworne men of the Mystery, to be their adiunces; and the Merteiff, measurers of linnen cloth, which confisteth of 134. Elles, and may not be of any greater length. There is another view made at the whitsters, wher the cloth is thickened and whited. These Viewers are called Die topffen Schomer. They looke that the clothes have their requifite whitenesse, and whether they sustaine any harme in the thickning: and according as have: and whether they be provided and they finde, they marke, or condemne the furnished, according to the ordinances whitster in a fine. Likewise there are certaine Merchants and Weauers, that vifite the whitsters houses and grounds, to see if all things bee fitting and convenient there: whether they have sufficiency of wood and afties, that none may be wronged by delay. Euery yeare the Masters whitsters take newly their oaths, to doe their duties as becommeth them.

As for the clothes which the Viewers Linnen cloth (whom they viually tearme Blato bnd Schwartz glehower) thinke fit to fend to the Diars : the cutters of linnen cloth. named Lynwathfthnyber, do cut them iust in the midst, and there are other committees, to regard that they have their instructure. After they are dyed into colours blew or blacke, if the Ouerfeers

marke the peece, and when they have plained and smoothed it with a Rowler; others come to approue it valuable, and they set on the Seale. Contrariwise, if it be spoyled and viciate in the dying: they Penalty for be spoyled and viciate in the dying: they cut it, or dip it againe, if it may be done, cut it, or dip it againe, if it may be done, in dying. and the Plainer and Diar are condemned in some fine. All these things about named, are very carefully observed, and if any dare do otherwise, hee is senerely punished. For the Towns or Citty of S. Gall hath this priviledge, to condemne in criminall fuite; to fetch men out of places 5.Gal of refuge, and to punish them that yse any fraud, in weauing, marking, fealing, dying plaining or misusing any Linnen

Something likewise must needs bee faid, what order they of S. Gall take, to auoid the inconveniences of fire: because they having beene heeretofore much endamaged thereby, it hath made them (furuiuing) to be the more prouident. Euery what prouise euening, for the space of a quarter of an onthey make chants have with them the Over-feers of the measuring. They call them Den Die feurglothen, the Fire-Bell: which certof fie. admonisheth enery one, to looke to the are of divers lengths: but a whole peece hearths of their Chimnies, for feare lefte fire flold take in any part. Then are there two Zunfftmafters, that foure times Vifitersfor yearely do visite the hearths, furnaces, & fite. chimnies in all the houses; and thereupon are called Die feurglehower, Vifiters for fire. They regard also, what Armes and prouision of foode the Bourgesses of the Seigneury.

Beside, if there rise any impetuous Against trop windes, or any rough ftormes or tempefts bletom wind happen (belide the ordinary Captaines of and tempells the watch, whom they call Die amachtbieter) there are two other, named Mafters of the watch, Die noachtmatter, who take with them two men of enery Tribe, well appointed, and goe with the Captaines of the watch, to walke the Captaines round through all the freetes of the Cit- the Watch ty, to preuent the dangerous accidents of

Euery night, two and thirty men keepe watch on the Towers and Walles, and in other places of the Citty, beeing appointed as Sentinels, by the cheefe Zunft= matter, with the Captaines of the watch. Chap.11. Of the gouernment of the Grisons. If fire take in any part fome of the Citti-

zens runne to the Gates, fome on the

Towers and Walles, some into the chee-

fest streetes; some keepe company with

the Confull and others labour to quench

the fire. There are foure Captaines of

the leffer councell, that have a care of all

this businesse, commanding every one to

that which is to be done, and punithing

greenously the disobedient. If the fire

be without, and neere the citty, they fend

foorth a certaine number of men with

their Captaines, to prouide against the

inconvenience. Others keepe watch at

the Portes, upon the Walles, and in other

places, where they are by them appoin-

Almes-houses, and Hospitals, because

they of S.Gall gouerne themselues therein, as other well pollicied citties do, and

carry a faire and comely order among

them. Likewise, I will not speake of the

election of the Ministers of the Church,

nor of their cstablishing and charge, nei-

ther what order they hold in their affem-

blies: because in this worke, we treate on

the matters of pollicy onely, referring to

discourse on the other, at some apter time

CHAP.XI.

I spare to speake heere of Schooles,

Schooles, Almes-houle Hofpitals,&c. pared to be token of.

The Common-wealth of the Grifons.

and place.

Concerning the Grifons in



word, a people of the Alps, who the French and Italians have named Grifons, and the Switzers Grawpundter. In ancient times, they inhabited Rhatia in the Alpes, neere to the fourte or head of Rheine, and of Iun.

HE name and

dominion of the

Grilons hecreto-

extendure : but

now wee vnder-

stande by that

The Grifons are divided into three Leagues. The first is called the League

Grife, and hath ten Comminalties, to wit. the Abbey of Diffentif, which the ancient Cardes or Mappes called Difertine. To this Abbey are joynd Tauetch, Trumb and some other places. 2. Walterspourg 3. Oberfachs. 4. Lugnits. 1. Fals. 6. Tlantz. 7. Schlæwiß. 8. They of Laax, Sinif, and them enuironing about the wood. 9. ing to it. Thannen. The Grisons call these nine Communities: the part about the wood, Die obdem mald; and the other ten; they call, vnder the wood. 10.Flims. 11. Trimon. 12. Safien. 13. Ratzuns, the ancient abiding of the noble Family of the Barons of Ratzuns . 14. Henltzenberg, and Tufis. 15. Schopine. 16. Schamps. 17 Splugen. 18. Malax. 19. Rufflee.

In each of these Comminalties; they yearely elect a foueraigne Magistrate, Magistrate in which many of them do call Amman, who with the ludges or Affiftants, elected by Comminalthe fame comminalty, doth judge fuites in law, and condemneth delinquents, according to the exigence of the cafe. Befide these Ammans, there is a great Prouost of the whole League, whom they call Ten Landteichter, who is chosen by enery one in the generall affembly of all the comminalties, and fitteth Prefident in the dayes meetings for all the League.

These meeting dayes for this Grife The Grand League, is in the Village of Trumb, which Prouch of is the cheefe comminalty, and there also meet the Seigneurs of the Insticial court, his orderin wherein the Landtichtet fitteth Prefi- Court of Iudent, who hath fifteene Affistants, one itice. Clearke or Secretary, and one Officer. The Lord of the Castle, and of the Barony of Ratzuns, is yet about the Landtrichter by an ancient prerogative, belonging to the race of the Barons of Katzuns, in whose rights, the Lords of the places have enermore succeeded.

The fecond League is called Det Botthusmundt, The League of Gods The League Houshold, or of the Cade or League Cate or of Gods thedrall, because of the Bishoppricke thouse. and Colledge of Coire: and it hath one and twenty Comminalties, which fomerimes were reduced into eleuen much greater. The Towne or Citty of Coire is numbred in the full place, as the chiefe of the League: and alone (among the eleuen Comminalties) is compounded of two leffer. But as the cittizens

Three leagus tiusded or the Grifons.

The first league haaing all thefe ues belong-

Ff 2

are enclosed in the same walles: euen fo !

are they counted but for one Comminal-

ty,and the other twenty reduced into ten,

make vp ten great Comminalties. The

citty (for fo we will call it) of Coire, hath a

common-wealth apart by it felfe, like (wa-

ting but little) to that of Zurich, and to o-

ther governments of the same condition.

For first of all, the cittizens are wholly di-

uided into five companies, from each of

which are chosen fourteene men, who are

of the great councell publike: fo that the

great councell and generall, is composed

of feuenty. From these seuenty men are

chosen fine of each company, for the leffer

councell: to whom are joyned the fine

Zunfftmaftere of the precedent veare.

whereby the leffer councell hath thirty

councellers, whereof fifteene called Sena-

fuls, who are Prefidents (turne by turne)

a whole yeare. The councell and the Offi-

cers of iustice, are yearely elected on the

cleuenth of Nouember, being the day of

S. Martin. The thirty of the leffer coun-

cell do judge in criminal causes, and the

Governor or Prouost sitteth then as Pre-

fident, remaining in that charge a yeare:

at the ende whereof, another taketh his

place, and they two are (in this Office) as

two Confuls. Next, there is a Court of

inflice belonging to the Lieutenant, who

Zunfftmafters, and ten from the thirty

of the leffer councell. This Court taketh

knowledge of civill causes, and pecuniary

actions concerning debtes: there is ap-

In the councell there are two Con-

tours, gouerne the common-wealth.

herein so due

confideration

The eftete 8 condition of the common wealth of Coirc.

The great councell of feauenty.

The leffer councell of

Two Confuls.

The Goner nour or Pro uoft Prefiden

The Lieure

nanti Court of luftice,an his Affiftant

Of the fecond Comminalty

Thefe Comminalties ar icere counted at they fand in the Record.

peale from them to the leffer councell, who doe decide also matrimoniall mat-The fecond Comminalty, which wee thould count for the third, because Coire takes it felfe for two, is named Die bier Doetffer the foure Villages. 4. Bergon. c. Tieffencasten. 6 Stalla. 7. Trintzen, with Reamps and other Villages, which with Tieffencasten, make one jurisdiction, where the Bayliffe of Reamps judgeth civill and criminal causes. 8. Vatz the high, where fometimes dwelt the Barons of Vatz: this Comminalty is joyned with the fourth.g. Furstnow. 10.Ortenstein in Tumlefch. 11. Sinnada. 1 2. Zutz: thefe two are in Engadin the high, and make one of the great comminalties.13. Ardetie.14. Scultine.15.

Remaß: which with two other finall comminalties, maketh one of the great. 16. Bergell about the Port. 17. Bergell vnder the Port. 18. Pesclaw, or Postlaaf. 19. Brusch, which is joyned with Postlaaf, and maketh one of the eleuen great Comminalties. 20. Munstertall. 21. Mals. Each Comminalty hath his Ammans, Podeltats, and vnder-Officers as they tearme them in least authority, under whom they are maintained in liberty.

The third League tearmeth it selfe The third League tearmeth it telle The League of Iuriddictions, or the league of Iuriddictions of Rights. The first and principall of the ons, or of ten, is called rafaas, in regard of a Village Right. fo named, where the house of the League The house of is, and where the dayes meetings for the the League for their menter Comminalties are held. 2. Beelfort, or Aluanum. 3. Churwalden. 4. Langwiß. 5. S. Peter de Schanfik. 6. The little Abbey in Brettigow. 7. lenats, or Castelfer. 8 Schiers. These eight jurisdictions doe acknowledge the Arch-Duke of Austria to be their Soueraigne. Anciently, the Barons of Valz were Lords thereof: but all their race fayling, the Counts of Toeoenbourg succeeded them. And after Howher them, the Counts of Amat, whereof one being named Gaudentius, dying in the Duke of Auyeare one thousand, foure hundred, eighty Ris. nine, left these eight jurisdictions to the Arch-Duke of Austria. The Arch-Duke established a Go.

uernor there, which to this day is chofen hath fifteene Affillants, to witte, the fine among the Grisons. The Gouernor dwelleth at Castelfer; and prefideth in fentence of criminall causes: he manageth and conferueth the other rights of the Arch Duke, The Arch who hath not the same right and equal Dukes authority over the eight in tellibrian har rity not abloauthority ouer the eight iurifdictions: but lute therein each of them enjoyeth his priviledges & cuery part. particular customes, the instruments and charters whereof are kept at Tafaas. The first and fourth jurisdiction have great priviledges and immunities, farre beyond the other.

The ninth Iurifdiction is called Ma- . A high Hill lans, by reason of a Village so named, be- by Rhaus tweene the River of Languart, & Mount * Rhatica towards the South.

The tenth is named Meyenfeld. Thefe two last did belong sometimes to the Barons of Vatz, afterward to the Counts of Toggenbourg; then they fell vnto Wolfhard de Brandis, in respect of his Wife, who was of the house of Werdenberg. The league to the The Iurisdic-

Chap.11. The addition they becam joyned (with the other eight Iurisdictions) to the two Leagues of Grilons, and made the third; referning to the Lords of Brandis, the right justly to them appertaining. Afterwardes, these three leagues together bought thefe Iurifdictions, and fent a Gouernor thither, who dwelt in the castle of Meyenfeld, and fate ions bought Prefident to judge in criminal fuites : he by the three condemned men in fines, and to death,&

gathered the tolles, and other publike re-

uennewes. The ten Iurifdictions allyed

themselves together, in the yeare one

The ten lurif dictions ally together faith

Leagues.

thousand, foure hundred, thirty fix,conditionally, to fuccour one another, & be abiding in all things (iust and reasonable) against enemies, repelling al wrongs that should be offered to any of them, & procure the peaceable enjoying of their liberties. Alto, all rights and duties appertaining to the Lords, they (hould be duly rendred, they permitting them to poffeffe their franchifes and printledges: all

the rest beeing carefull and provident to preserve the good and benefit of one an-In the same yeare, or the next follow-

ing, these lurisdictions made perpetual They.leagues alliance with the two other Leagues, and fo the three leagues became joyned as in gether in a one body, the particular parts whereof

have bene already mentioned. But in our numbering and fetting them downe, we have rather followed the fituation of the place, then the ranke which they holde in the dayes of affemblies, wherin not withstanding are many opinions: & therefore I will describe them heere, according to

the comminalties of the two first leagues.

& as they are comprized in their alliance The Author with the Switzers. The Comminalties of procesdeth to the Grife league, are the vally of Lugnitz, more figni-Tlants, Ober Jachs, Walter purg, Laax, Si ficant exprefion of the nif, and other places about the VV oods, Flims, Schewie, Trimmie, Retzuns, Hemdes,in theiri tenberg and Tufis Schamps Rhinuald Madue places and order.

their resolutions, which passeth by plurafax and Rufflee, Safien Thannen, Schopine, lity of voices. The councel of the Grifons Fals. The Comminalties of the league of is (almost) like to that of the Switzers: for Cade, are in order as they followe, Coire, there they treate on the felfcame things Furstnow, the foure villages descending which concerne the good of the vvhole countrey; of peace, of warre, of diances, on Apremont, Vata the high, Reamps, Tief of Ambaffages, lawes and ordinances, &

Schantzen. As for the ten lurifdictions, I

fencasten, Gryfenstein, Benio or Stalla, Auers, Bergel aboue and belowe the Port, Zutz, Sumada, Postlaaf, Steinsperg, Schuls, Remust, Munstertal, Mals, Galfen, and

I vnderstand their order thus. Tafass, the three Iurifdictions of Brettigon, Beelfort. or Aluanum, Chumvalden, S. Pierre, Langwifz, Malans and Meyenfeld. I know ve- Helesuerh ry well, that some doe name these Comminalties otherwife, but that importeth nothing, because in each Comminaltie there are many times notable villages, fo

that the Comminalty fometime takes his name of one, and sometimes of another. For mine owne part, I have named the principall places of the Comminalties.

one Commonwealth, For although ma-

ny of the Comminalty haue their Judges

lawes, customes, & iustice, aswel civil as

criminall; yet notwithstanding, the So-

ueraignty is with the councel of the three

leagues (which they name in theyr Lan-

guage, (Bin pundte tag) & dayes of mee-

ons. 14. If either one or other doe fend a

greater number, they have no voyces

there, but according to the about-named

account. Sometimes also, the councell

general of the whole Nation (which was

made no long time fince) do meet toge-

with them in writing on the dayes do di-

rect them, and whereto they conforme

causes of appeales from the Baylywickes.

There are three places appointed for the

to fitte in councel, to wit, Ylants in the

Grifeleague, Coire in the league of Cade,

The fore-mentioned councell, mana-

ther: but that is very rarely.

Thus then there are three leagues of Fifty Com-

the Grifons, containing fifty Comminal minables in ties, which (neuertheleffe) doe make but the 3. leagues

ting or affemblies of Ambaffadors, from The Councel each comminalty of the Grifons : whether of the three

fome of them fend two Ambaffadours, Leagues of others but one onely, If the councell bee ordinary, the Grife League sendeth thether 28. Ambassadors or councellors; that of Cade 27. and from the Iurifdicti-

geth the affayres of the common-wealth: The Ambal. vet in fuch fort, that the councellers or fadors are to Ambaffadors deale not according vnto be guided by their owne best seeming, but as the commaunds and remembrances from theyr comminalties, and which they bring

3 Booke

& Tafans in that of the ten Iurifdictions . But oftenest the dayes are held at Coire at times of their affaires, which happeneth three times in the yeare: about the fixe and twenty day of lanuary, the beginning of lune, and the eleventh day of Novem-

Another principal Councel or Senate for them al.

pals meete together when the other need which is approoued by plurality of voyces, is receyued of all. There is appeal alfo from the councel, to the Comminal-

Concerning

Appeals from

the Councel

to the Com-

minalties.

When varian ces happen amongst the Leagues, how hey are then to behaue hemielues.

They have another Councell or Senate, which they name Embytag : whe the principal Magistrates onely, and, as being the cheefe of the three Leagues, do affemble themselues together. These men, are the Iudge-Provinciall for the Grife-League : the Councel of Coire for the league of Cade, and the Amman of Tafaas, for the League of the tenne Iurifdictions. At all times, and as often as neede requireth, to prouide for the publique affayres; and it appeareth not conuenient, to call all the Deputies of the countrey together; then those 3. Principals do meete, with fome of the cheefest of the three Leagues. But they cannot determine absolutely, onely they referre separately vnto the Comminalties of the three Leagues, whatfoeuer hath beene discust among the Councellers, and that ties, and then matters are propounded in the Comminalties, whose sentences are fet downe in writing: and being conferred on, they are gathered to a resolution and an arrest, by the pluralitie of Voy-

As concerning judgements in criminal causes: the Grisons doe therein projudgmens in ceede like the Switzers. It there is publike cases, any difference among the three Leagues, ceede like the Switzers. If there happen three or foure ludges must bee choien on eyther fide, and discharged of the Oathe which bindeth them to their league. They are to accord the difference by kind composition, or judge according to theyr consciences. If the voyces fal out equal: an Arbitratour must bee chosen by vovces and common suffrages of the three Leagues. If two Leagues bee in fuite, they milt referre themselves to the third, who shald eliver vnto both the parties the right whereby they are to bee quieted If it chaunce betweene two Comminalties of one and the fame League: they must take (as Indge) the verie necrest comminalty or Jurisdiction belonging to the same League. But when the Comminalties of divers Leagues are at difference: the councel of the three Leagues. namely the Judges, are to provide there-

When one Comminalty, or fome particular person therein, hath processe Whenone and fuite against the three Leagues, or a- Comminglite ny one of them; two or three Judges of hath fuite aeach League are then to be chosen for it. League. And when two Leagues are at difference against the other, fixe Judges of the two Leagues, and fixe of the other alone, are to bee appointed. If they cannot conclude the ftrife; an arbitratour must bee chosen, by plurality of voyces of the three Leagues. These judgements are to be The places p deliuered first at Ylantz, nexte at Coire: a second time againe at Ylantz, then againe at Coire, and at Tafaas the last of

It would much weary mee, if I should Concerning describe at large the Statutes & customes dullons model of the Grifons: notwithstanding, I shall the Grifons not greatly displease or offend the Reader if heere I plance at a worde or two. First then, it is agreed uppon betweene them, by the confent and advice of the vyhole councel, that neyther the Byshoppe of Coire, or any of the Ecclefiaftical Order : shal elect or establish any civile Magiftrate, nor advance a Gouernor or Am- of Magistrato man, for any Comminaltic or Jurifdi-Gion whatfoeuer; but that the people of the Grifons (by theyr fuffrages onely) shal elect and choose theyr owne Magistrates.

Such as have obtayned any Offices of the Bythoppe, may not be accepted into councel follong as they do remaine in his seruice.

As concerning the Ministers of the Foradmission Church, euery Parish electeth their to Council owne: may depose them, pay them their Wages, which are too little in many pla-

Thoroughout the countrey of the Grifons, no smal Tythes are payed, and as for the great, they pay but the fifteenth part, and give nothing in the fielde, but they give it in the house, and alwayes after the haruests both for their Grapes and corne.

All they that are of a comminaltie, For Fishing, may fish in al the Rivers and Pondes, and hunting, and hunt both Beafts, and flye Fowles freely,

within their fayd Comminalty.

Thoroughout all the countries, one weight and measure of things licquid and dry, is to be vied, to wit, the weight and measure of Coire. And it is not lawful for the Bourgesses of Coire to alter any thing therein, without the confent of the other Leagues. For our conclusion, we are to speak of

mand equally. On this fide the Alps nere

enfeld and to Melant z. On the other fide

Of the government of the Grisons.

Of their Go-Other Go. Baylywickes the three Leagues of the Grifons do com-Grions count to Coire, they fend a Gouernor to Mey

Chap.11.

the Alpes beneath Bergel, toward the riuer of Maire, the Gouernment or Baylywick of Plurs first presenteth it felf, which is a great village in the field neighbouring to the Alpesiand on the bankes of Maire riuer, and euen as fightly to bee lookt on, as if it were a good Towne. In this place,

Rocke-stone coales, which serue as fewell Coales called for the kitchin; and it is faithfully reported, that the nature of this stone-coale is tenfulplenty. fuch, as when Fish commeth to boyling, they make them mount and leape out of the kettle into the fire thefe coales are very abundantly fold in Italy. All the villages round about, are answerable and like to Plurs, where the Gouernour (whom they terme 1000ftat) decideth causes,& is foueraigne in that place in name of the Grifons, and deputed by them.

Next is the Towne and county of Cla-

uenna, whereon Plurs in elder times de-

ended. Clauenna is a Towncaboue the

Lake of Coma, about fine miles, as Antoni-

ns observeth it also, in his booke of the

waves. The Grifons call the Gouernor of

Clauenna, Commissary: & he is the most

apparant, next to him of Sondria. The

third more spacious and noble gouerne-

ment is that of the vale Telma, famous for

the excellent wine, which there is made in

extraordinary plenty, and is thence tran-

sported into Switzerland and Germanie.

The whole vale of Telina, is divided into

fixe Bayliwickes. The first is that of Bormia

a Towne about the valley, towardes the

Mountaine of Braull: this Bayliwick hath

many priniledges and franchifes, farre be-

yond the other. The second is the towne

of Tiran. The third is Tel, wherof(as fome

thinke) the vale Telina first tooke name. It

is a Towne feated in a very high place, &

there are digged infinite Chauderons of

The Towne and Countie of Clauenna.

The vale of Telina, & the Baylywickes

1.Bormis.

1.Tiran. 1 Tel.

appearing to be fo naturally: & it is counted to be the best fortresse of all the Prouince. Sondria, the most renowned town of all the vale Telina, maketh the fourth 4. Sondria. Baylywicke. It is the most rich & powerfull among all the rest, and he that is Gonernor thereof, is called Captain, because The Gouerouer and beside the Bayliwicke, hee hath nor of Sonan eve to the whole valley when it is chief drain calld Captains, and in Armes. He hath his Lieutenant, who judgethin can judgeth with him the civil causes of the les both civil the Bayliwicke. Hee judgeth also the criminal matters of all the vally, having law- vale. vers and learned men to his councel, and gining sentence according to the Lawes and Statutes of the vale Telina: which ne-(uertheleffe) may be moderated & made milder in the Bayliwicke by the Podestats. Beside all this, all causes may be appealed to the councel of the Grifons Signeuries, or to them that they have ordained com- the Grisons mifaries, and fent to judge : or finally, to Councel. the conucel of the Comminalties, who haue the foueraigne power. The fift Bayliwicke is called Morben, and the fixt Trahon which is last of al.

This is the order of the Baylywickes of the vale Telina, vet fome doe not fet the Bailywick of Bormia in this ranke, but diuide the whole vale into three partes; der of diuwhereof the first comprehendeth Tiran ding the vale and Tell: Sondria maketh the fecond; and Morben and Trabon are the third. In ele-Ging the Bayliffes, they follow the order of the Leagues and Comminalties. As of electing for example, if the Grife League citablish their Bayliffes a Captaine at Sondria for two yeeres, the League of Cade fends one thether for the two following years: at the end wherof the League of the Inrifdictions fends one for two other yeares, this order is obferued in each League of the Comminalties. And fometimes the Comminalties. who thould fend a Bayliffe by their turn, vyould elect him only; but now the councel of the Grisons makes the election. The money. byshop of Coire, and the City, do stampe money. The Abbot of Diffentiff hath the fame priviledge also, amongst many o-

CHAP.

Another or-

CHAP. XII.

The Commonwealth of the Valafians, or people of Valois.

The division of the country of Valais or Valous the higher, & the HE whole countrey of Va-

of Morsia, which vniteth it selfe with Rhone, fomewhat beneath Sion. This was the dwelling of the ancient Viberines and Sedusians. The lower Valois, is from the riuer of Morsia, so farre as Saint Mauris, and this was the countrey of the Vergeri-

Seuen Iurifdi higher Valor

Hundreds or

Baronnies, or

The higher Valous is divided into 7 Iurisdictions, which they call Dixaines, wards. and Zenden in the Alleman tongue. know not whence this worde is deriued, for it cannot produce the number often, because there are no more Iurisdictions. A friend of mine told me, that the worde intended so much, as Diocesses, because that cuery Wardhath his Diocesse or Iurısdiction, his Common-wealth, and priuiledges apart by it felfe. Others do hold that the word Zonnen commeth of another word, fignifying, an Hundred: as in the Lawes of France, the Offices of the Earledomes or Counties, the Vicariates and Hundreds are number; and in some places of Germany, they are called Zendgraues, the Judges of some certaine Jurisdiction. But without standing so strictly on the words originall: wee may verie fitly tearme them Diocesses or Comminalties. So then there are feuen Comminalties in the higher Palois, to wit. Goms. Brighe, Vefpie, Raron, Leuck, Siders, and Syon. These seuen Comminalties have thirty parishes. The lower Valois hath fixe Comminalties, which they cal Banneries: because each one hath his particular standard, and foure and twenty Parishes fo

Six Bannerie in the lower

The names o

Cominalties

the seven

Long warres Veragrians&

The Veragrians or lower Valafians, had (in times past) long warre against the Sedustans and Viberines. In the end, after fourescore and thirteen yeares, they were ouercome and subjected; so that the Se-

dasians and Viberines ruined fixteene Cafiles, the old pirtifull foundations whereof, are yet to be seene, and it is not lawful for any to builde them againe, for feare they should prooue hursfull to the coun-Higher Vales tries liberty. And therefore the higher ruleth our Valois ouer-ruleth the lower, and fendeth the lower. Gouernors thether to judge in causes, & manage the affayres of the State. The Byshop of Syon (whom some call Count & The Bythop The higher Valois from the truer of khone, so farreas the river of Marks.

The Annales of Valois do declare, that Charlemaigne gaue the County and Gogaue the County and Gogaue the Gouernment of Valous, to Theodofus, Biftop
uernment of valous, to Theodofus, Biftop of Syon, and to his successors: with power Valors to the to beare a fword, in figne of civill Iurifdi- Bift paf Syction, and other priniledges of Princes of the Empire. Because that Byshop (by reuelation of an Angel) had declared to Charlemaigne, that fome fecret finne (I know not what) was forgiuen him. Howbeit, there are sufficient circumstances to call the county into suspition, as we have already made more amplemention in our description of the country of Valors. Notwithstanding, it is certaine, that the Emperors which came after Charlemaign, accorded & confirmed the fore-named pris uiledges to the bythops of Syon: namely, ger of Vilon the Emperour Charles the fourth, then confirmed by Charles the fift renewed & increased thein the Emperos willingly, at the request of Mathew Shiner By shop and Cardinal of sion, from whom he had deriued many good and gracefull Afterward, the Byshop had another

grace granted, that the next most excellent estate to his, should bee that of the captaine or Bayliffe of the whole country whom they vie to call Landts Baunt = The Captain man. He iudgeth in civill causes, and or Bayliffe of Valois, and bis continueth in his charge the space of two authority. yeeres: being elected by the Byshop, and by the Ambassadours of the Dizaines or comminalties. Afterward, he is confirmed by publike approbation and confent of all the comminakies, which have each one his Magistrate, whom they of Goms, Raron, and Leuck, call Maire, the others Castillian. He indgeth all fuites, especially them criminall, with the councellers which the comminalties give him as affistants. There be Ammans also (who are

minulties tha

he fituation of Valois

Soueraigne Magistrates in the Cantons | Mauris. Without the country of valois. of Switzerland, but they of Valois are judged inferiours, and haue Maires as theyr luperiors.

Appeale may bee made from the fentence, which is given by the Judges of a comminalty, to the councell of Valois who are called Den landts rath ; and according to the custome of theyr Anceftors, they affembled twice a yeare, in the months of March, and of December. At which times, two or three Deputies of each Village, do meete at Syon, in a Caftle named Maierin. The Bythop affifteth there, and the Bayliffe cals for the causes, and then they treate on affayres of the Common-wealth, election of gouernors and publike Officers, & fuch as shal judge in the last power, of causes that concerne appeale.

The Barons of Raron, were fometimes great Lordes in the countrey of Valois. Their successors were the Lords of Chinron, who are Marshalles of the Bishoppricke of Syon, Vicount of Syon, and Stewards of Valois.

As for the Maze, which they tearme Mutzen, it is a particular inhention of the people of Valois, to oppose theselues against the power of great and rich men-Wee haue made ample mention in our description of the country of Valois, and there declared, wherefore it was putte in practife, and how it began.

We have told you, that the Byshop & the fenen Dizames of the higher Valois, hold the fourraignety of the whole country in their handes. The lower Valois is subject to them, and is parted into fixe Comminalties, viz. Gundes nere to Syon, is the chiefe Castlewicke or comminaltie of lower valois. Heeretofore it appertayned to the Canton of Berne, but in thewar which the Switzers made on the Duke of Sauoy, in the yeare 1536. the Valafians did there recouer it, in exchange of another country. 2. Ardon, 3. Sallion, 4. Entremont, S. Martinach, 6. the Towne of Saint Mauris in Chablais, where the mountains feeme as if they joyned together. So that all valois, is thut or lockt vp by a Tower, & two gates (as it were) at both the endes of a bridge, vnder which the Rhone glydeth. In the yeare, 1475, the valafians brake down the wals and fortrefles of the fore-named places, except that of Saint

the valafians possessed themselves of 3. Bayliwickes, during the warre of Sanoye: as namely, Montey, Tuian, and Hochtak. ?. "aylywickes Neuerthelesse, fome few yeares after that lois. they furrendred Yuian to Emanuel Philebert, Duke of Sauove, and retained both the other.

CHAP. XIII.

The Common-wealth of Bienna.

HE Towne of Bienna made perpetual alliance with the Bernaians as wee haue already fayde: and it happened in the yeare one thoufand,

three hundred, fifty two. Thirty yeares after, it contracted perpetuall Allyance with Solleurre; and in the yeare one thoufand, foure hundred, and feuen, with Fribourg, fo it became allved with three cantons of the Switzers. It acknowledgeth as temporall Lord, the Byshop of Bafile, be- The Ecclesia cause as concerning the Ecclesiastical Iurisdiction, it is the Diocesse of Lansanna: but it is a long time, fince it was no more fubicatio the spirituall government of the Bishop, as in like maner were the citizens of Zurich and Berne.

and they to him. Hee taketh knowledge

(with the councell) of criminal causes;

& fitteth as Prefident in cenfuring them.

The moitic of fines, amounting to about

fuch like, belong to the Towne only, and

not to the Bishop. For hee is not permit-

ted to impose any charge whatsoeuer vp-pon the Bourgesses, nor to engage the

Towne: but the Bourgesses are bound to

Afterward, when it came to passe, that the Bernians got the possession of the Bi-Magistrate of shoppricke of Lulanna, they enfranchised Bienna, & his Bienna of the Ecclesiasticall subjection.

The Byshop of Basile is Lord thereof very ses. peaceably, in temporall power, and eftablifteth the fourraign Magistrate, whom they call Maire: but hee is chosen out of the number of the Townes councellers, and the Maire giues oath to the councell,

2. Liures Tournois, apertaineth to the By- The Byfhop thop, with fome tenths, and other reuen- impofeth no newes: but the ports, tolles, cuftoms, and the Bourgefles

Frawen-

otthe Tolles

The priniledges given by

The governe ment of the Common wealth of Bienna.

The Common-wealth of Bienna is gouerned in maner following. All the Bourgeffes are divided into fixe companies or brother-hoods: yet in fuch order & carriage, as no one man what foeuer may ioyn hunfelfe with two or more of the companies, who have each one two Masters, & a servant attending. The Councell publike is chosen out of the number of these Bourgesses. The leffer councel is compofed of foure and twenty: and the greater, of thirty councellers. The election is made at the yeares ending, and at the beginning of the yeare following, theyr names are openly publisht in the church. There is choise made of some Electours, out of the great and leffer councell: who (in presence of the cheefe Secretarie) do confirme the ancient Councellers, or elect new, if there be any fuch need.

He that fitteth President in the coun-

cell generall, is called Bourgmafter, and

is elected by the great and leffer councell.

He is next in office to the Maire, & when

they deliberate on affaires of the Com-mon-wealth, and question is vrged con-cerning civil cases: the Maire and Offi-

cers to the Byshop depart, and leave the

Bourgmaster President. Next to him are

the Treafurers, Banderets, voyers, or Sur-

ucyers, the Indges of the Confiftory, the

Hospitaliers, and others elected in pub-

like charges by the great and leffer coun-

cell, who are not advanced to such De-

grees, but as they are knowneapt and a-

ble. The Banderet onely, is chosen by all

the people. Hee hath charge not onely of

bearing the Towns banner; but also (with

the Bourgmafter) is protector of Schol-

lers, taking care that they may have dili-

gent and faithfull Teachers and Overfee-

ers, and to take their accounts. The leffer

councel assembleth three times enery

weeke, to wit, on Monday, Wednesday,

and Saturday , but if any mandoe defire

owne expences, yet no further then a

dayes journey from the Towne. If hee

is bound to pay their wages. Yearely,

there is repetition made to the Councel,

what priniledges Bythop Immer Ramftein

gaue to the Town, in the yeare one thou-

fand, three hundred, fourescore, & three.

They of Bienna have as ample priviledges

as in the greater Bafile.

Bourgmaster the General Councel.

Other officers of the Commonwealth.

The office of the Banderet. go in warre for the Bylhop, and at theyr / to haue a cause extraordinarily decided. paying a Florin to the Maire, the councell shall be then affembled . Bienna hath would have them march any further, hee no other particular Iurisdiction, but the Councell judgeth all causes citill and cri-

They of Bienna, are Lords of the Valley of Saint Immer, for so likewise is the Seigneury of Ergua called, and is diuided into many Comminalties, vvhich Ergus. haue (each one) their Maire or Amman elected and confirmed energy yeare, in the moneths of May and September. But they of Bienna have not any bayliffe, for the Comminalties have their courtes of Iustice, and when the parties cannot bee Bicanahat agreed, the cause is sent to the councel of no Baylinith the Towne, who fend sometimes affistants to helpe in the country pleadings, and to end their fuits: but appeale may be made from their fentences to the councel of the Towne. The inhabitants of this valley, do march in warre under the Standardes of

CHAP. XIIII.

The Common-wealthes of such people as are gouerned in common by the Cantones of Switzerland. And first of all, of stipen dary Townes.



N our former booke, we The dissident haue distributed the peo-plegouernd in common, by the Cantonsof Swit-zerland, into fiue stipen-dary Townes, and nine

bayliwickes or Gouernements. Those Townes have their Magistrates & Councell by themselves, to wit, a lesser Councell composed of twelve, and a great, of forty Councellers, comprehending the twelve of the leffer in the number. The Eleticanus cheefe of the councel is called & chulo= at Bada. theff, or Anover: hee is elected at Bada. by the leffer and great councell.

At Bremgarten, the fixe first Cantons establish one of the two Auoyers: who (notwithstanding) is in number of the Bourgesses, onely of whome the other is elected.

At Bremgant.

Hee of Frawenfeld, is elected by the I tons. Councell generall but in fecret voyce. The Councell of these Townes doe elect Treasurers, Voyers, and other Magistrats: for the Townes have priviledges, to prouide for publike charges, and have like-

wife treasuries, and good round sums of ready gathered monies in them, for their condition and extendure, because the cuflomes, tolles, and taxes do belong vnto them. Neuerthelesse, in the towne of Bada, which is the passage of Germany into France, the custome belongeth to

the towne; but the tolle for Merchandizes transported that way, appertaineth to the Cantons. The leffer councell of thefe townes, prouide not onely for the townes affaires, but also do decide suites: for they have no other Courts of inflice, except at Framenfeld, & they have likewise both ciuill and criminall iurifdiction.

Bremgarten commandeth ouer fome Villages neighboring to the town which they call the Bayliwicke of Cella . This country is in the government of the free Pronince, appertaining to the Cantons: but it was engaged sometimes to them of Bremgarten. VV hen the Emperour Sigifmand did put them of Zurich in poffession of the free Prouince, he gaue them priviledge to disengadge the country but they of Bremgarten entreated them, that in regard of the amity, which had til then continued betweene the two townes, they would leaue the country to them, which

of Bremearten were put and confirmed in possession of the country, in the yeare one thousand, foure hundred, and eigh-The referua-Neuerthelesse, they of Zurich referued to themselves the soveraignty, & the punishment of Malefactours deserning

was eafily granted them. Wherefore at

that time, by the liberality of them of Zu-

rich, who gave it them by Letters: they

death. The years one thousand, fius hundred, twenty eight, a difference happened betweene them of Zurich and Bremgirten; to wit, about the causes of appeale, and to whom it belonged. The feuen Cantons ordained thereupon, that onof the fea-win Cantons. the Bayliwicke of Cella, might appeale to the councell of Bremgarten, and from them to Zurich: but as concerning fuites mooned at Bremgarten, the appeale was to bee brought before the eight Can-

The towne of Frawenfeld, befide Au affembly the councell apart by it felfe, hath an af- of xii. ludges fembly of twelue Indges, who decide fuites among the Bourgesses, and country people in the Villages, that are under the townes jurisdiction. But as for criminall causes, and variances touching inheritances, and fuch like things; the knowledge of them belongeth vnto the councell. These Judges execute their arrests, in condemning of certaine fines. and making feizure on the goods of condemned persons. Appeale may bee made from them, to the featien Cantons: but there is no appeale from the councels No Appeale

For the present, by permission of the tence. councell, the Amman of the country is cheefe of those Judges , but anciently, and about an hundred yeares fince, it was to the Apparatour of the towne, and afterward to the Agent or Prouost of the

Empire. VVhen any Malefactour is to be con- When any demned to death, the ludges make choife one is fenten (as pleafeth themselves) of twelve other ced to death men of the towne, or of the villages reforting thether; and then these soure and twenty men may condemne to death. Frawenfeld obtained this priniledge of the Emperour Sigifmond; and therefore they have prisons purposely. From the time of the Austrian Princes, they hadde power to put criminall persons to death; now adayes the Cartons conferue and maintaine the rights to Mawenfeld: and although condemnation of death ap- Frawenfeld pertaineth to tenne Cantons, yet Fra- febetto the

wenfeld stands excepted, which depen- Cantons, deth not neither is subject but to the feauen first Cantons, the priviledges referued. Moreover, this Towne hath some particular rights, touching testaments Particular and inheritances, and the Bourgestes rights belongmay exact their debtes thorough all the ing to Fracountry of Turgow (annual revenues

excepted) according to the rights of Iuflice of the Prouince, and may (without punishment) lodge such as have beene banished by the lawes; but they cannot bee drawne into any strange inflice, but the demander must come and pleade at Frawenfeld.

The Abbey of Auge the rich, hath

councels fen-

Care for Schol

written in the name of all the Councell.

Moreouer, if the voyces be equallyppon

cither fide : hee maketh that auayleable

where he ranketh himfelfe, and by that

meanes enderhall variance. This Bay-

and priviledges it hath at

Frawenfeld

Bourgesses stand obliged, and (anciently) the most part of them wer subjects to the Abbey: but afterward, they enfranchifed themselves from all charges of servitude, and now adayes, before gining any Oath vnto the Abbot, they receyue Letters from him, whereby hee promifeth them, not to fel, engage, nor alienate the rights which he hath at Frawenfeld, by reason of the Abbey; and besides, that hee will conserue and keepe all their ancient Priuiledges, Franchifes, rights, and good cu-

The ancient power in tin

Turgow at li-

Finally, in the times of war, anciently, the Seigneurie of Frawenfeld elected the Captaine, the Ambassador, the Enfigne, and other cheefe offices of warre: which all the countrey of Turgow followed, and tooke Oath to them . Also, the Standard of the Towne is adorned with Images of Saints, like to the Standardes of the Catholique Cantons, to wit, with a Crucifixe, and two croffed Keyes; and on the other fide, is the picture of Ielus Christes face, as in a Linnen hand-kercher. But within some sewe yeares they of the Prouince of Turgow obtayned leave to have their particular captaines and Standards. In meane while the Towne of Framenfeld, and the places that are ofher Iurisdiction, haue theyr Captaines. Enfigne-bearers, and their aunci-

CHAP. XV.

ent Standards.

Of the Baylywickes or Governments.

The custome obserued in most part of the Cantons for their Bay lywickes.

E have already formerly fet downe, how many Baylywickes or Gouernements the Switzers haue, to what Cantons they appertaine,

and how they becam Lords of them. The Cantons do fend their Bayliffes turne by turne, and in the most part of the Cantons, the custome is ; that the charge is giuen vnto one of the Councellers of the leffer councell. The Bayliffe continueth in his charge two yeares, and then gineth place to him that is fent by another Can-

The Abbey of some rightes at Framenfeld, whereto the | ton. They gouerne the Bayliwicks according vnto the Lawes and customes of the people: neuerthelesse, in the Baylywickes on this fide the mountaines, the Bayliffe doth not judge alone in criminal causes; The custom but hath (as adjunctes or affiftants) the onthis fide Judges of the Province: in regard where- themountains of, they do call this course of Justice Ein Landgricht. They take knowledge of all fuites of importance, and especially, those criminall, and give sentence; Notwithstanding, the Bayliffe is soueraigne, for he fitteth Prefident, and hath power to moderate the fentence.

But in the Bayliwickes of Italy, or beyond the Mountaines, the bayliffes onely The cuftone condemne to death: they may vvell call in the Bayly fome learned men for councell, but those themountains Councellers have no power in the fentence. Finally, euery yeare about midde-Innerthey render an account of theyr administration; they on this side the mountaines, at Bada, they beyond, at Lugano; before the Deputies, which the tweluc Cantons then fend thither, and then they judge the subjects causes of Appeale. If fome straunge enemy make warre on the Switzers: all the Bayliwickes fend theyr Atrangent people, who march under their particular my wanted the Swinter Standards, and euery bayliwicke ioyneth with the Canton, under whose power it is that yeare. As in the warre of Bourgengne, they of the baylywicke of Turgow ferued the Canton of Zurich. But if ther e happen any ciuill warre in Switzerland because the baylywicks do stand as much Intime of de obliged to one Canton, as another : they will warrein are not bound to give fuccor, if the most Sw.tzethad part of the Cantons do not commaind

CHAP. XVI.

Of Bada.

HE Gouernement or Baylywicke of Bada, is much more magnificent then the other, because the dayes

meetings and affemblies of the Cantons are held there: for the bayliffe of Bada euermore helpeth there demaunding for the causes in order, and

Chap.21.

Many villages and lurifdicti-

an com man

Two little Townes, be-

liffe hath no authorities ouer the Towne of Bada, but over the Countie, which is divided into many Villages and fmall Iurisdictions; where hee hath his Lieutenants and Officers, who hold their pleadings with Judges of the Village in name of the Bayliffe , exact the Fines, and render him an account, and fometimes also himfelfe is prefent in those Jurisdictions. But when there is question of condemning a Malefactor vnto death, foure and twenty Judges of the whole Countie of Bada, meete together, and the Bayliffe electeth them : but the custome is, that after they have beene once thus elected, they continue all their life time afterward in that charge, if fome lawfull impeachment doe not preuent it : and when any one of them dyeth, or is dismissed, then the Bayliffe putteth another in his place. These Judges, give sentence according to the Lawes : neuerthelesse, the Baylisse (who hath the foueraignty in his hand) may mittigate their fentence. Next to this estate of the Bayliffe, is heethat is yof the whol called Secretary of all the Prouince : for, belide the dignity, hee hath profite, beecause all the Cantons serve him, so long as the daves are kept . Moreouer and beside, hee hath a Lieutenant, who is cheefe of al the Officers belonging to the The Bailywicke and Countie of Bada, hath two fmall Townes under it, the one deth Bayliffes thether, and hee of Bada hath nothing to looke to there, faue one-

named Clingenow, and the other, Keyfernow, and Key. stoull; but the Byshop of Constance senly, the acknowledgement of causes criminall appertaineth to him, and the people of those places, are comprehended with the rest of the County of Bada, when they goe to warre, with, or for the Switzers. Betweene these two little Townes, is a great Village, necre vnto the Rheine, named Zurzach, inhabited as if it were a good great Towne, Subject vinto the Bythoppe of Constance, and depending on the Baylywickes of Clingenow. I must needes fay fomewhat concerning the po-

fealeth with his Signet, fuch things as are liev thereof, because it is a place greatly renowned, in regard of two great Favres very goodly and commendable, which are there kept enery yeare. Many Metchants, not only of Switzerland and Ger- Faires yearly many, but also of France and Italy, meete at Zurzach. there, albeit each Fayre lasteth but one

Many do hold opinion, that this vil-

lage is the place, which Psolomy calleth

thefe Favres are very ancient, as having

beene ordained by Tiberius. It feemeth

to have taken this name of M. Junius Cer-

tius, a famous Romane Souldier, burved

in that place, as is testified by an ancient

inscription. The Iurisdiction of this vil-

lage is one of the dependances of Clinge-

now: the Bayliffe electeth an officer year-

ly, in the Moneth of Ianuarie, and eyght

Senatours, foure whereof, are in feruice

fucceede them, having foure Judges gi-

together they doe; the party paying

thirteene Shillings of the Money of Lu-

Bada, executeth the fentence, and puni-

theth the faultie. But out of the Fayre

times, Malefactors are examined, first at

Clingenow; after they have confest theyr

fault, and are convinced of capital crime,

they are delivered into the handes of the

after Pentecoft, the day before the Faire,

all the Iurisdiction of the Byshoppe cea-

feth, and belongeth vnto the bayliffe of

Bada, who hath fole power and authority

of commanding and forbidding, even vn-

til the end of the Faire. For in regard that

a great number of people doe affemble

there, our Auncestors were defirous, that

these Fayres might be in the safegard and

Forum Tiberij ; and that on this occasion, Foru Tiberii.

a whole yeare, and they are called fworne Swonie Se-Senatours and then the other foure doe nators.

uen them as affiftants. Thefe twelve, with the Bayliffe of Clingenow, who presideth, The Bayliffe

iudge the raules, and meete once in xv. of Chogenow dayes; but if any man requireth (in the meane time)that the Judges thould meet

Moreouer the Bayliffe to the bythop Power of conof Constance, cannot condemn any grea- demning fines

ter fine, then the fumme of tenne pounds; or other wife. but if the crime appeare to deferue more rigorous chastifements, to witte, corporally; then the Officer to the Bayliffe of

Bayliffe of Bada. At the times of the Concerning the times whe ber, and the first Holyday of the Weeke, kept.

The governe ment of Zurprotection of fuch as were foueraignes, and had me ues to bee strongest in these places then. In former times, the Princes of Austria, were Lords of the Countie of Bada; but now it belongeth to the eyght firft Cantons. As for the gouernment of Zurzach, it is managed by fixteene coun cellers, to wit, the twelue before mentio ned, and foure affiftants. But if there be any businesse of importance, it is referred to the councell generall.

The Gouernment of Turgovv.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Turgow.

Turgow the greatest of all the Bayliwicks

Mean Court

the villages of

Condemnati

The Ecclesia

Ricall persons and what Iu-

rifdi@ions

they haue.

The Abbey of

Auge.

on of fines.

of iustice in

Turgow.

Mong all the Bayliwickes of the Cantons, there is not any more plentifully peopled nor of larger extendure then Turgow, which hath more

then fifty Parishes. The seuen most ancient Cantons fend thither a Bayliffe; & to them appertaineth the Seigneury and ciuill Iurifdiction of the countrev. If Switzerland be affaulted by a stranger enemy, they of Turgow ranke themselves with the feauen Cantons: but the knowledge of criminall causes, and such as are capitall, belong to the tenne Cantons.

Beside, there are many Noblemen, & Ecclefiasticall persons, that have meane courts of Iustice in divers villages of Turgow, yet in such fort notwithstading that all the villages are subjects to the Bayliffe of the whole country. The inferior Seigneurs may condemne fines of twentie shillings, and sometimes so farre as tenne poundes: but the moity of the fines belongeth to the Bayliffe, according to the ordinances well understoode, and establithed among them.

All they that have Iurifdictions, are called Brichtsherren. The Ecclesiastickes, are the byshop of Constance, who hath his Prouosts in Turgon, to witte, at Arbonna, Tanney, Guttingen, and Gottliebe. The Chapter of Constance hath Iu-

risdiction within Altnaw . The Abbey of Auge the rich, nowe vnited and incorporated with the Byshoppricke of Conitance, hath great reuennewes, and many Iurifdictions in the countries of Turow. to wit, Stekbure, Bernange, Mannebach, Ermatingen, Tribeltingen, erc. Many Gentlemen are vatilailes to this Abbey. The Abbot of the Hermitage, is also Lord of Efchentz. In like manner, the Abbey of S. Gall, hath Jurisdiction in some Villages: as also the Abbeves founded in the countrey of Turgow haue, as Tobel, the Commanderie of the Knightes of Saint John, Fischinge, the Abbey of Benedictines, It- The Abbeyof tinge, Chartroufe, Munsterlinge and Ten- Benedictines. mikon. The Abbey of the Monkes of the Cisteaux order. Also Veldbach.Calchere Saint Katharine du Val, nere to Diffenhow; and some other Prouosts in one or two Villages, and fometimes in many, haue Jurifdiction.

There are great store of Castles, ap- Of Castles pertaining vnto divers Gentlemen, who Gentlemen dwell there, and enjoy their ancient Iurifdictions: the names of which Castles I will recite, together with the Lords vnto whom they belong. The Lords of Plane dwell for the present time at Wellenberg and Griefenberg. Herdere and Burgelle are to the Lords of Landberg. Wengie belongeth to the Lords of Giel. Spiegelberg, to the Lordes of Montorat. Vinfeld vnto the Lords of Schelneberg, and of Gemminge. Vpon the limites of the countrey, there is a Towne belonging to the Count of Oberstein. Nunenbourg and Mammer appertaine to the Lords of Tum. Salenstein and Blidec, to the Lords of Hanuille. Clingenberg, to the Lordes of Herdneheimer. Ottlishoufe, to the Lords of Schenck. Epifhouse, to the Lords of Hagenuille. Liebenfels, to the Lords of Lanz. Clinge, to the Lords of Brum. Neufere, to the Lords of Stocker. Sonnenberg, to the Lords of Gutenfon. There are many castles also ruined Castles ruined the most part of whose Iurisdictions, doe belong vnto Ecclesiastical persons: but other some of them belong vnto Gentlemen dwelling in other castles, and also vnto some particular men of the Coun-

Befide, the Abbey of Rinow hath itt- The Abbot flice both civill and criminal in the towne Rinow. of Rinow, which appeareth to be very ancient, although it hath no store of beautifull buildings. Some are of opinion, that the Romaines planted theyr campe there heeretofore, to encounter with the Germaines.

Chap.17. Of the gouernment of Turgovv.

The life with-Rheine, the Abbey of the Benedictines is to be feene, one of the most ancient in all Switzerland. The Abbot is Lord of the Towne; neuerthelesse, if any Malesactor be condemned to death the is deliuered vnto the Prouost or Amman of the Prouince, and his goods remaine feized and confiscated to the seuen Cantons. They The Standard of Rinow have their standard, under which they march in Warre for the Switzers. Moreover, there are some Towns in Tur-

gon, which continue in the Switzers pro-

tection, and have their Franchifes & pri-

uiledges verie ample, & Iurisdiction par-

Epitcopalla.

There is another Towne, named Bif-Bischoffzel,or chaffzell, at the meeting of two Rivers, called Sittera and Tur, which is well into the countrey of Turgow: and it hath his Standard, where under the fouldiers goe to Warre for the Switzers. But the Gouernour of the countrey is onely but to bee seene there, and can commaund nothing of the inhabitants, who are subject (in some things) vnto the Byshoppe of Constance, yet hee gouerneth according to their ordinances. The Byshop hath a Bayliffe in the Ca-

ancient Senatours, that houerne the

Common-wealth with the Councellers.

fes, and there is no appeale from the fen-

file of the Towne, to whom appertaineth The Byshops Bailiffe in the the moitie of the Fines: but the Townestowne Caftle, men doe elect the Councel, and the two Presidents out of them, whom they call

The Councell One of the two, judgeth in criminal cau-

tence of the Senate: neither is it lawfull to draw a Bourgesse before any other Iustice then that of the Towne. The Impost of Wine, and other Reuennews belong to the common-wealth. When the Byshoppe taketh his Oathe of the Founds-The Byshop men, hee promiseth first himselfe, neuer ukethoathof the townsmen to diminish in any manner whatsoever, their auncient Priniledges and Franchi-

Arbonna is an ancient Towne, on the The auncient Towne, on the towne of Arteninus Lake of Constance, whereof Antoninus onna on the maketh mention in his guide of the waies It is under the dominion of the Byshop of Constance, who hath there a Bayliffe: but they of the Towne doe elect theyr Amman and Councell, who manage civil causes. The Switzers have some Seigneuriall rights in that place: for the caltle is

In the Isle which is not within the popen to them in the times of warre, for best accommodating themselves; and the Inhabitants are theyr Souldiers for fer-

Diessenhow, a Towne vpon the Rheine, betweene Stein and Schaffoule, as also of Diesenhow the countrey of Turgon, and besides the of Rhe ac. feauen Cantons, who are Lordes of this countrey: Berne and Schaffouse have some

right in the domination of Diesenhow. Neuerthelesse, the Townesmen give Oath to eight Oath onely to eight Cantons, and have great store of priniledges : their councel and Augrer have the Jurifdiction of fome Townes about it. But all are effeemed to bee under the government of Turgow, and goe to warre with the other for the Switzers: but yet under the Standard of DiesTenhow.

But besides the Jurisdictions of the Ecclesiastickes, and of the Gentlemen: there are many Villages, wherof the Cantons are entirely Lords, and they are called the Iurifdictions of the county of Turgow, and the Officers of the Bayliffe, do holde the pleadings in these Villages. Heeretofore there were divers formes of pleas, and manie customes: but the feauen Cantons (by aduice and confent of the Lords of the Iurifdictions) ordained fuirs and pleas and established a common manner of in Turgow. pleading, thoroughout the whole countrey of Turgow. Belide, if a particular man haue a fuite against the Lord of a lurisdictions he presents it to the Baylisse or

mandeth instice. There are two kindes of Law and Iuflice (in the highest degree) in Turgowe: termed Profor they must pleade before the Iusticiary uinciall. bench of the Province, or elfe before the Bayliffe and his affiftants. The Law or Iustice Prouinciall, it appertaineth not onely vnto the featien Cantons, who establish a Gouernour in the countrey: but likewise they of Berne, Fribourg, and Solleurre, have therein their part, whereof wee have given a reason in our former booke.

Gouernor of the country, and of him de-

Sometimes this court of Iustice was held at Winterduer, when as the countrie of Kybourg was joyned to the countrey of Turgow; afterward, it was heldeneere to Constance, when the Emp. Sigi [mond had engaged Winterduer to the Bourgesses of Coffance, & fomtimes in other places: but

The lurisdic-

Order for the

Gg3

The election

in the Prouincial Court.

Power of the Plaintiffe in his plea.

Difference between the Bais liffes Court, & the Prouincial

Courts to th Cantons.

it is fully refolued on at Framenfeld, and I any man ylurge, encroach ypon, enclose, the Cantons have concluded that it shall neuer bee transported any whether else heereafter.

Twelue Iudges are chosen by the Bayliffe, foure of Framenfeld, and four of Turgow : the Bayliffe fits Prefident in name of xii.ludges, gow: the Bayliffe lits Preficent in name by the Bayliffe of ten Cantons; or the Amman of y country, established by the Cantons; or the Licutenantwhom the Bailiffe substituteth in his place. The causes of appeale, con-Causes ended cerning the whole countrey of Turgon, are decided in this Proninciall Court of Inflice, together with the fuits in matters of debt, the knowledge whereof may appertain to this court: also the causes of iniuries, crimes, and other offences deferuing death. The Bayliffe and his affistants (who most often are the Amman of the country, the Secretary, and the cheefe Vther) do censure also in the same suites: & it is at the discresion of the plaintiffe or demander, to make choise before which of the two courts he will pleade.

> The Bayliffe caufeth the fentences and ordinances to bee executed, with imposition of a fine of ten poundes, payable by him that fatisfieth not the fentence in ten dayes. The Provincial court of iustice, imposeth no fine of mony, but banisheth: onely referred, that it condemneth him in a fine that pleadeth his owne cause in person (because the custom is to take one of the ludges to declare the fact) and enters it into the Court where the Judges vie to fit. He that is accused to contemne the ordinances of the Bayliffe, is imprifo-

A man may appeale to the Cantons, Appeale from from the sentence given in either of the Courtes; and, according to the importance of the cause to the seuen Cantons. or to the ten in taking knowledge. Likewife al Fines (as the goods of persons put to death.confiscations, and fines imposed on fuch as are accessaries to crimes deferuing death) doe appertaine partly to the feauen, partly to the ten Cantons. Heere may be alledged (for example fake) mighty and horrid injuries, yet not meriting death: violence done by any man to him that is strictly commaunded to live in peace with his adverfary, outragious acts committed to a man vpon the publique high way, by wounding, robbing, or offering him any fuch like violence. Alfo, if

or appropriate to himselfe any part of the high-way, transpose or alter boundes, markes, and limits; or change any goods layed to him by way of pawning or given him in trust to keepe, if he violate Fayth, or for sweare himselfe openly; or if he cary himselfe insolently toward the Bailisse or ludges.&c.

Besides, all such as the Prouinciall court of Iustice declareth guilty of death: Concerning arefent vnto the other Judges with theyr causes, to have the sentence pronounced on them. These ludges are in number foure and twenty, and heretofore the cufrom was, that the Bayliffe loyned twelve Iudges, to the twelue of the Prouinciall Iustice, and chose them thoroughout the countrey, at his owne discretion: but now A custom ried adayes (and oftner then any other) the informer Indges of Framenfeld doe pronounce the therwife pro fentence of death. This is to cut off charges, which would be farre greater vvithout comparison, if the Judges should bee called from divers parts of the country, it

There is no appeale granted from this fentence: neuertheleffe it is permitted to granted with Bayliffe. the Bayliffe, to moderate the ludges fentence, or to alter the manner of the punnishment upon the Offender; or else to faue the condemned mans life; but hee may not (by any meanes) aggrauate, or make heavyer the condemnation.

being of so large extendure.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Sargans.



Sargans, hath heere-the Original tofore had Counted of Sargans, in the Counted of it the name, and fold it vnto the Switzers Countrey . Those

Counts were of the house of Werdenberg, by reason of the Counties thereunto belonging, and also of Montfort, being then divided into many families; but the countrey standeth separated by a certain small River, named Sar. Part of it, aboue the River, hath fome villages; the cheefest whereof

whereof is called Regatz, where the law pleas are held: as also the Abbey of Pfauertz, the Abbot where of hath jurisdiction in those quarters. It seemes that this part was heretofore divided from the other fo as the name of Sargans belonged

to them that dwelt beneathe the River.

Chap.19. Of the gouernment of Rhinthall.

Of them beand whereof (vndoubtedly) they borrowneathe the River Sar. ed their name. For there is another nother Sal gans or Sa-

Sargans, or of Sarunets, whereof Pliny maketh mention, which at this day is called Engadin, and neere the fourfe or fpring of Rheine: but they which dwell aboue the River, may bee of the quarter of the Rhegusces and Rhucans, at this day tearmed Rhinthall and Rhuchenberg. They have their court of inflice by themselues, and other weights and measures, then they

lower court of inflice belongeth to them

of Sargans, as likewise the principall Vil-

lages have their Court. The last or la-

test appellations, for causes criminall and

capitall, are held at Sargans; where Iud-

ges are chosen, both of the Towne, and

from the whole Bayliwicke. Oftentimes,

in stead of the Bayliffe, the Amman is Pre-

fident of the country. The Bayliffe him-

selfe pleadeth against the offender, and

hath a Secretary and an Officer. If crimi-

nall persons are prisoners at Walhenstat;

then judgement and execution to death

is done there: but the Bayliffe fitteth Pre-

fident, and not the Auoyer of Walhenstat.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Rhinthall.

beneathe the River. The towne of Sargans is finall, and

hath a Castle, wherein the Baylisse dwel-Of the Bay-lifte & Coun-cell of Sarleth, and it is the cheefest of all the Bayliwicke. There is a councell at Sargans, and gans & their an Auoyer, whom the Switzers (beging Lords there) do establish : as also in another Towne of the same Bayliwick, named Walhenstat, on the Lake of Rive. But the

For crimina and capitall

The Amman gcuerneth

Rhinthall taeth name of he River of

'HE Bayliffe of this Valley (which taketh his name of Rheine, and is vpon the left bancke thereof, about his entrance into the Lake of Constance) maketh his abiding in a finall Towne, called Rhinek, fomewhat below the Valley.

The whole Bayliwick is divided into certaine portions or fee-farmes, which they tearme Hoaf, and these are their names: Alstett, alittle Towne, Marpach, Bernange, Taall, whereon Rhinek dependeth, and dions, Oberriede. Each hath his jurifdiction by it felfe, and two Ammans; whereof the one is enftalled by the Bayliffe of the cantons. and the other by the Abbot of S. Gall, The moity of the fines belongeth to the Abbot, and the other part to the Cantons. Neuertheleste, at Alftett the fines are di- The division uided into three parts, whereof the third appertaineth to the inhabitants. Some fay, that the higher and lower jurisdiction of this place, belongeth to the Prince of Austria. The lower court of justice of Lustenow (which is a Village in the Bayliwicke of Rhinthall) appertaineth to the Counts of Amifa. The acknowledgment

of criminall causes, belongeth to the cantons: and their Bayliffe caufeth the fentences to bee executed in those places where the delicts were committed. hauing Ammans for their Judges.

The inhabitants of this Valley doe principally imploy themselves in husban- habitants of dry about their Vines, and spinning lin-nen yarne, which they sell at S. Gall, & line their time. very commodioufly by thefe meanes. Alfo they of S. Gall have flore of lands, and many vineyards in this Valley, with plenty of Vine-dreffers and Barne-keepers: in regard whereof, they fet a taxation on A taxe fet vp. the wine with the inhabitants of Rhin-on the wine to fuch as are thall, and fet downe a price to be payed by buyers before the Masters and others, who buy it before the vintage, vintage time at publike fale, and pay the mony to the Vinc-dreffers. This taxe bindeth not them who have not folde their wine before that time. When the vintage draweth neere, the Deputies of each Village do meete at S. Gall, and the Seigneury appointeth one or two of the councell to fit with them; and then they price vpon (altogether) fet aprice vpon the wines. the wines. the wines. If they cannot agree, but that there are as cluded by armany on the one fide, as on the other: bitration. then the Village, whose turne it is to bee Arbitrator, fets downe the determination. For every Village (in his rancke and place) hath the right and priviledge of arbitration, when as the taxers cannot, or will not agree together. The price agreed vpon, then they begin to cut and gather grapes for the vintage : but it is not law-

The Baylia and their teucrall jurifdi

Acknowledge

full to begin before.

CHAP.XX.

Of the Barons of Altfax.

Betweene the Bayliwicke of Rhinthall, and the county of Werdenberg, you may fee the Seigneury belonging to the Barons of Alt lax. Now, although the Barons are soueraigne Lords; yet notwithstanding, in regard of the scituation of Rhinthall, I was not willing to passe any further, without making fome mention thereof.

The race of the Lords of Altlax is

rons of Altiax

So named

of the Porest of Hitcinia

running tho-

Gentlemen

descended of

The scituari.

Seigneury of

on of the

The Antiqui- most ancient, and hee that hath written concerning Iustes and Tournaments, declareth, that the Emperour Henry, firnamed the Faulconer or Fowler, made choise among all the Gentlemen of Suabas of Frederick, Baron of Alt/ax, to prescribe to others, the order to be observed in those Royall pastimes. They of Mifauk in the Grifons country (whom Pliny calleth * Hir laces, at the Trophec of Auquitus) were fometimes subjects to the Barons of Monfax: to whom the Emperour Sigismond gaue the name and dignity of Counts, and Wolffe, Baron of Monfax was in the warre against the Obstrites, in the yeare nine hundred, thirty fiue. Some fay, that those Counts descended of the house of Altsax, and that there are many Gentlemen (of very ancient race) in the country of the Grifons, descended of the first Rhatians, who were of Tuscany, and vaunt themselves also to be iffued of the Romanes.

In Antiquity, the Lords of Altfax

dwelt in the Grifons country. For neere to

the Valley of Lengs, where they inhabite,

who (among all other) vaunt and glorifie

themselues, to bee of most noble and an-

cient race; there is the Village of Obier-

fax, which retaineth yet the name of that

Family, and it hath a Castle of the same

name. I am of the minde then, that the

descended (with many other of the Gri-

fons) of the Tuscanes, who were before

the Romanes. Also the country, where-

of they are Lords to this day, was heere-

the firft Rhatians. The Valley

of Longs.

The original house of Alufax is Grifon by originall, and of the house of Altiax of the Grisons.

tofore reputed to be of the Grifons: confidering, that Strabo extendeth the Grifons limits, so farre as the Lake of Con. This Baronny hath had heeretofore

Two ancient two ftrong Castles, to wit, Sax (which was Castles be. burnt before the warre of Appenzell) and longing to the Fortege, builded afterward, vpon the warranty of Virich of Altfax, Abbot of S. Gall, at fuch time as the Barons were in warre against the Counts of Montfort. There are many Villages in this Valley, fubice to the Barons of Altfax. If any warre threaten Switzerland, they chuse whenwarin their most valiant Soldiours, which they fend to their succour. Also Huldrich, Father to Huldrich Phillip, now Baron of Altfax, fought valiantly for the Switzers, in the warre which they had against the Emperour Maximillian, and the league of Suaba : and as a recompence and acknowledgement of his valor, the Cantons gane him divers peeces of Artillery.

It is a long time fince the Barons of of Altiax Altiax have beene Bourgesses of Zurich, Bourgeste d the rest of the Cantons never had any Zurich. dominion ouer the Barons of Altfax: but themselues were soueraigne Lords, and no man might appeale fro their fentence, to any other iustice. At this day, there is no more of this race of the Barons of Altfax left, but one, namely, the Lord Huldrich Phillip: but by the grace of God,it The now liis now augmented, because this lord hath had (by two wines) fine somes, already Bronof Ar of good stature, and which promise faire far. hope, namely, Albert John, Thibault John, Phillip John, John Christopher, and John Huldrich.

CHAP.XXI.

The Bayliwicks or Governments of Italy.



HE first and principall of Luganothe the foure Bayliwicks of 164- first Bayliwick by is called Lugano, and the Bayliffe is called a Captain, commaunding ouer all the

foure, if any warre doth happen vnexpe-

The second is that of Locarna, almost lecond of

of as great and large extendure, as Lugano. I will fet downe in this Chapter, an exact description of the Bayliwicke and Towne of Locarna, made (at my request) by M. Thaddeus Dun, Physicion and a na-A má or great tiue of Locarna, my very good friend. For therby may be knowne, what the gouernment of the other Bayliwicks is which althogh they are not of the like extendure, neither have the same policy, vet not withstanding, they are governed in the same manner in respect of the Bayliffe, and do-

minion of the Switzers.

The Towne of Locarna, is called Lug-

gari by the Germanes, and Locarno by the

Italians. Some do hold it to be fo named.

country round about, there is no meane

number of cattell. It is feated on a plaine.

betweene the foote of an high Mountain,

and the Banck of the Lake Maior . . To-

wards the East it hath the head and begin-

ning of this Lake to the South, the neck

of the Lake, and the high Mountaines. It

extendeth and shooteth it selfe out along

the middle of the Lake, to his fall, and to-

wards the North are also very high Mon-

taines. To the West, and against the

lands belonging to the Bayliwicke of Bel-

lizona, is a plaine of great length, yeelding

yearely a plentifull Hay-haruest, & thwart

it paffeth Thefina. Neere to the Towne,

betweene this plaine, the Towne it felfe,

the foote of the Mountains, and the Lake

bancks, is a fruitfull parcell of Land for

Corne and Wine, and a great goodly

field, abounding with graffe; which here-

tofore hath beene much more spacious,

but the neighbouring River (by vndermi-

ning it)hath borne away a great part ther-

of. The Mountaines of long extendure,

are very aptly husbanded, having goodly

carna is great, by reason of the Families

therein, to the number of foure hundred,

or thereabout: and there is not any grea-

ter Towne about the Lake Maior, neyther

are there more Gentlemen in any towne

of that quarter, by which reason, it is the

cheefe and principall Towne. This de-

scription doth demonstrate, how pleasant

the place is, the ayre also is there tempe-

rate, sweete, and healthfull, euen as much

as can bee defired. The windes of the

South do blow there very little, and even

Heereby we may conjecture, that Lo-

and faire vineyards in them.

Chap.21.

onut Locarna.and how it as being a place of flesh : because in al the istrimated by enery way. The fleshy Territory,or ingreat plen-

The descripti-

ics in Locarf Gentleme.

Peaceth to h

as tired, broken, and fpent, by reason of the Mountaines defencing before it. The North winde is there also sweet enough, because the high Mountaines doe couer the Towne. From the East to the West, the windes breathe at their eafe; and there is not a Pond, or Marthy plot in this quarter, fo that to fay all in a word, the place is fufficiently pleafing.

Heeretofore, the towne of Locarna had a great & strong castle, of very good- The ancient ly shew, in regard of the many Towers & of Locarna. Turrets, and well engire with fightly Ditches. It was sometimes the principall dwelling of the Counts of Rulques and the French were Masters there, the space of thirteene yeares, but yet could not expell the Counts. There is a Pallace within the faide Castle, which is the Bayliss house: there also abideth the Trucheman or Interpreter, and the two Switzer Ar- imployed. chers of his Guard, of whom wee shall make more ample mention hecreafter: within the walles enclosure of this Cafile, there was a goodly Hauen or Port,

where the Ships for warre were kept.

The Castle was square and quadrangular beautified with Towers at each corner, and had avery fitrong wall about it. At cient Caftle. that time, the Lake Major washed the foote of the Castle fo that the Ships were casily sent forth vpon the Lake. But now, the River of Madia hath gathered such aboundance of fand and grauell, as the place is become farre enough off from the Lake. Since the yeare one thousand, fine hundred, thirty one, the Switzers wholly This goodly ruined the Caftle, except the Pallace ; the | Caftle was foundations are yet to be feene, and the by the Switwalles of many houses, for there was not zers. any castle so strong in all the country. Alfo it was munited with Artillery of all forts, and other furnishments for warre, in great plenty. Frances Guicchiardine maketh mention in the fift Booke of his Mi- Lib.5.11.12. stories, that fifteene thousand Switzers got themselves together, to go and assault this castle, thereof he speaketh againe in

twelfth. Long fince in the times of the Dukes of Millaine, the whole country was com- The exten. manded by the Bayliffe of Locarna (ex- Bayliwicke of cept the towne of Brisag) and it was a Locarna. county, wherof the Rusques were Lords, they beeing Gentlemen of marke in the

the eleventh Booke, and at the end of the

Guicchlard in

The County of Locarna divided in rwaine.

Of the fertility of the country, and encreale of their Vines.

Of the Fields and Meddow grounds a-bout Locarna

Two harnefts yeare continually.

Masters sometimes, but after they furrendred it to the Duke of Millaine, in the veare one thousand, soure hundred and fixteene. But afterward, this county was divided in two parts, and the Vale Madia separated from the Bayliwicke of Locar-

At that time also, the Vale of Verza-Sche and Gambaron (whereof shall be spoken heereafter) obtayned leaue, to elect their Podestats. The extendure of the Bayliwicke of Locarna, may bee knowne by the Parishes, whereof there are twenty and more.

The foote-ground of the Mountains of Locarna, and a great part of the Territory, yeeldeth plenty of very good wines. In the Hilles and Mountaines, the Vines are bound high, and store of good grasse groweth under them. On the plaines they Thoote vp about Elmes and other Trees, as Hops do about Poles: also the twigs as being wouen together, and bound at the ends, are extended from one Tree to another. But if they stand too farre off, where the branches come too short, then they fixe poles in the midft, whereto they

fasten the branches, for feare leste they should hinder the Cornes encrease, or the other forts of pulle, which are also there fowne. The Vines are of great and incredible yeelding, the grapes huge, and very ripe, which causeth an extraordinary plety of wine. The fields cannot be very spacious, in regard of the fo neere neighbouring Lake and Mountaines: yet notwithstanding,

they are very fertile, by reason of the grounds goodnesse, which the husbandmen do fatten and labour very diligently. For because there are no great store of fields and meddowes, and the towne is fufficiently peopled; their paines are performed at the better leviures. Many times they render twenty graines for one, and they have two Harnests in one yeare. In the Moneth of June, they reape and gather Wheat and Rie: In the Moneth of October, they have the like of Millet, Panicke, and other Pulses fowed in Spring

The Mountaines and Vallies are furnished with cattell in great aboundance, especially Goates. Also there is plenty of Partridges, Phezants, Larks, Hares, Co-

towne of Comma, whereof allo they were nies, Butter, Cheefe, and admirable ftore What fich, Marker Comerimes, but after they furrened of Cheftnuts, for the nourifhment of Foots, and butters are butters and butt country people. At the beginning, they ther helpful eate them rawe, then dryed, and after country should be ward boyled, rofted, and fried. Also they foordein make Meale of them for Bread, and that Meale serues the to divers vses : but Gentlemen eate chestnuts among their other

delicates.

When therefore there is a good season of chestnuts, the dearth of other victuals is not great in that country: wher alfo is flore of good Figs, variety of Ap- kindes of ples, Peaches, Peares, Cheries, and other fruites, and dainty fruites, as Plums of divers kindes. dainty filh. Pomgranets, Citrons, Olives, Oranges, and other fruites in great plenty. The Lake aboundeth with Fish, dainty and good; especially Trowts, whereof store are brought & fold in Millaine. In briefe, the country is enriched with all good All bleffings things, for the maintenance of life; yet for the life fometimes there is fcarfity of Corne, by man, reason of the countries narrownesse, and Salt is brought thether from other pla-

Euery Thursday there is a great Mar- A market a ket at Locarna, where meete no meane Locarna euc. ftore of people. You shall see many boats ry Thursday, arrive there, from all the Townes of the Lake Major, from whence come divers Merchants, rather to buy, then fell. They come thether also from fundry parts of the Dutchy of Millaine, from Lugano and Bellizona, neighbouring Bayliwicks: as alfo from Milank, and the Valley of Liuiner not freaking of them about Locarna, and the vale Madia: It is one of the goodliest Markets in all those countries. There is a very spacious place neere to the Lake, where the Merchants fet vp Tents, to defend them from raine, and fuch like acci-

The people of Locarna are divided Noblemen, into three degrees, to wit, Noblemen, and Bourgefis, a cient citrizens, whom they call Bourgef-the three degrees, and the inhabitants, descended from greer of policy in the control of th to dwell at Locarns, more then an hundred yeares before.

There is a fourth race noble, as of A fourth dethe Aurelles, Muraltes, Magorians, and fcent of No Duns. That of the Duns is the most blemen. auncient, and before the other: their houses and goods beeing partly at Locarna, partly at Scone, which is a Towne

The Commisand authority.

lowedto he Commiffary to be his nterpreter. and speakes both the languages to whom

uery Citty.

The peop!e to eled Ma.

The election

Of the government of Italy.

Chap.21. neere to Locarna, but not fo wel peopled, | who is one of the Bourgesses of Locarna, seated on a plaine neere to the Lake. At and continueth as long time in that Offuch time as the Counts of Rufque commanded, the Duns were fauoured and honoured, more then the other Nobles, and advanced to great estates. And the Arms of the Counts of Rusque, magnificently illustrated, are yet to bee feene (outward-Inmemory of ormer receily) on the Duns Pallace at Iocarna. Next vinder name of the people, are reckoned all them that dwell in the Vallies and Villages, dependants on Locarna. The whole body of the Seigneury or Bayliwicke, is

As for the Bayliffe, whom they call

Cantons, and fent to Locarna euery yeare,

by one of the faid cantons, as it is then in

rancke, according to their lawes and alli-

The Commission Commission, hee is chosen by the twelve eiseleded.

ances. This commissary is Soueraigne. and hath full power to chaffife the faulty; yea, to condemne to death, if the case do lo require. His custome is to take wife

> his charge til he haue first solemnly sworn and promifed, to keepe the lawes and ordinances, which the inhabitants teatme municipall rights. Which being done the people there prefent, do acknowledge him for their lawfull Governor with lo-

called the Comminalty.

lemne and publike acclamations, & fweat ring faithfully to obey him Now because the commissiony spear Trucheman keth the Switzers language and the people Italian; the Lords of the Leagues do allow him a Truchman, who vnderstands

causes: which the Secretary or Prognotary writeth downe in Latine. The commissiary medleth not with the affaires of the common-wealth, because the people have full power to elect Magistrates and Officers, to ordaine of all things concerning the publike estate.

they pay wages. By entremife of the

Trucheman, the commissive the parties

that plead as Atturnies or Aduocates, do understand each other, and so debate the

Moreouer, they elect an ordinary Atturney, who pursueth crimmall causes, & keepeth the fines adjudged to the common purfle, which they call, The fines Chamber The Lords of the leagues give

order for the election of this Atturney;

fice as pleafeth the faid Lords. They establish also the Receivers of The Receithe taxes. For every yeare, in Summer, uers of the when the twelve Ambaffadours of the taxes & tolles Cantons come thether: they give the

farming of the taxe (mittigating a certain fumme) to one, or to many Bourgeffes, who then also receive ample power, to exact the taxe, and at the yeares end they

The Commissary chuseth (often- The Officer times) a Switzer Officer, who walketh dai-ly attending on him, with an Halbert and its Commisa Sword. He is the cheefest of the Serieants, that arresteth men, and guardeth

offenders. When the Ambaffadors come to Locarna, hee is their Viher: alforthey pay him his wages as well as the Truche-

man. The fame Commissary electeth his The Lieure-Lieutenant fome one of the Bourgesles, nant to the & understanding men, experrin the lawes fitte to decide fuires and criminall causes. Commissary. and manners of the country, to bee his councellers ... Hee is norrectived into

This Lieutenant gives attendance in the Commiffaries absence, or when hee is with held by fickneffe, or any other hinderance: having (in those causes) the same power and authority as the Commissary

Moreover, the councell (of whom The Seriants we shall speake presently) makes choise of and Officers fome Sericants among the people. Their charge is to ferue the Common-wealth, and to execute the commands of the co-

miffary. The Bourgeffes and inhabitants that Of the counare of this County and Comminalty, do cell their ma meete together according to their cuflome, which yearely is the first day of Iaders observed nuary, and then they elect the one and among them twenty councellers of the Common- on of coun. wealth. Twelue among them are of Zb- cellers. carna; three of the towne of Scone, which is neere: the other fixe are of the Vallies and Villages round about. As concer-

ning the twelve of Locarna; fixe of them are Noblemen, foure Bourgestes, & two inhabitants vet fometimes three, and fine Nobles. The three of scone, there is one of the family of Gentlemen, called Duns, and the two other are of the body of the people. The other fixe, whom I have faid tobe of Villages and Vallies, are of fuch places, as acknowledge no other Gouernour, but the fore-mentioned Commif-

farv.

A contrary kinde of gouernment & Officers.

fary. This I speake in regard of the towne of Brifag, the Valley of Verzasche, & Gabaron: which have their Podestats or Lieutenants, and fome rights apart by themfelucs, as we thall thew anon, and they do not elect any councellers.

What charge

Ofthe feuen

what their

The Secret

A Treasurer

euery yeare

Confuls ap-

pointed and their office.

ry or Chan

cellor.

office is,

The fum of one of the leaft affeiffe. ments.

The councell of the Bayliwicke of Locarna, hath charge to watch and waite on the affaires of the common-wealth: to conclude on needfull expences & wages: to dispose and set in order, whatsoener feemeth for the good of the weale publike fit and convenient. Scuen Procurators or Atturnies are

added to the one and twenty councellers; who give order, that the decrees of the councel may be effectually executed, and that eucry man do his duty thoroughly & faithfully. They stand also in stead of Voyers or Survayors: because they take charge of publike buildings. In like manner, there is a Secretary whom they call Chancellor; and he fetteth downe in writing, all things whatfoeuer that are con-

cluded on by the councell.

And for a finuch as the Comminalty lockes not up any of the publike monies, there is yearely a new Treasurer elected, who exacteth and collecteth of confuls and communities fuch fummes of money as are imposed by the councell. For euery community or parish hath his Confull To called, because they councell and aduife that which is necessary for the communities welfare) and is in Office as a Receiuer. They leuye vpon euery Father of the Family, or on each house, the money whereat they are affeffed by the councel, and afterward bring all to the Treasurer. The manner of affeffing these summes, is according to the estimation of goods, & the number of housholds in every com-There is not any Parith nor Family

(how little focuer it bee) but justly knoweth how much it is valued at in the affeffement. One of their cottifations amouteth to an hundred pounds of the Empire: which make feuen and twenty Florins of gold, or thereabout. The Confuls do first collect this fumme of the Families, and then deliuer it into the Treasurers hands, and he afterward paies it to the Seigneurs of the annuall accounts. Then it is payed out in wages, to the Bayliffe, to the Phyfitions, to Masters of Schooles, Officers,

and other persons, who are al at wages of the common-wealth: And beside, it acquitteth all other publike charges. The yeare being expired, hee yeeldeth vp his The Treasisaccount to the councell, or to the Procurators. If there be more omitted then re- cell. ceiued: his fuccessour disbursseth it himselfe. Contrariwise if the receipt doe furmount the ordinary charge, the remainder is deliuered ouer vnto his successour. Moreouer, the fore-named Magistrates make choise of two sufficient men to have a care of food and prouifion. And other two are elected by the councell to fee the waves and freetes duely and decently repaired and well kept.

Now in regard that the country is enuironed with Mountaines and Vallies, repleated with woods of extraordinary taul Forrest trees exquifite for their beauty and braue branching (among others the Pine, which produceth very excellent Agaricke, and the Firre-tree, notable for building, and whereof they of Locarna make very great benefit) the Merchant dealing in wood, do electa Judge or Master of the Forests, who decidethall differences proceeding Mafter of the in fuch cafes : When the taule trees are Forefi, whis cut, they bring knowledge therof to him. and then he ordereth their leffer cutting, for more commodious conuaying them through the narrow passages and vallies, as also the Rocky crooked windings, to the Lake Major. When they are there thipt in apt Barques and Boats, they passe along the Lake, and then on the The sina to Millaine and Pania, in great Trunkes; Beames, Joifts, and long Planks; together with great quantities of wood-coales, and other brush-wood, for heating Ouens. Afterward, they descend with them from Pania, by the River Po (wherein The sina dischargeth inselse) to farre as Cremona, and Plafentia, and may goe also to Ferrara, Mantua, Venice, and to the Adriaticke Sea. The trunks of the trees have their length and thicknesse inst, and the Merchants marks on them. The valley of Ver-their market zasche, the vale Madia, and other neight on the trunks bouring places, doe also send away Trees very aboundantly, when the Rivers fwell higher then their viuall wont.

The towne of Brisag, which is vpon the Lake Major towards the North, and ing to the Bar at the end of the country which the Swit- liwick of Lozers hold, is of the Bayliwicke of Locarna, caina.

Chap. 21.

The Locarni

uobio. It hath alfo to the East, the Vallie of Verzasche, taking his name of a River so called, and thence descending: Also Gambaron to the South, and on the Lake Maior. These places have their Podestats, who judge in civill causes: for as concerning them criminall, the knowledge of them appertaineth to the Commissary of Locarna. There is appeale granted from the fentence in civill causes, if it seeme good to the party condemned. They of the (Families: namely all fuch as would not Valley of Verzasche, and of Gambaron, do chuse (among themselues) such persons as they please, to be their Podestats: but the people of Brifag have not that authority, but yearely doe elect a Lieutenant, who is of the Family of the Aurelles. Gentlemen of Locarna. The Inhabitants of this place are not cottifed or feffed, as the other Communities be: but onely pay their part of rentage due, to the Lords of the leagues, and of wages to the Commissary. Beside, they furnish towards the charges that are in their Villages and

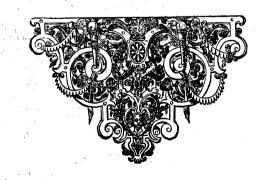
Communities. Of this Towne of Locarna thus described, are descended the Locarnians dwelling at Zurich, and in other places. It is not about thirty yeares fince, that some Citrizens of Locarna, yet living, affected to the new Religion; tooke knowledge

and is but foure miles diffant off from Ca- | thereof, by the reading of certain books, and afterward enstructed it to many of their Townesmen. From the yeare one thouland, fine hundred, forty two, vntill Religion the the yeare one thousand, fine hundred, fifty | movert is per foure, the zeale and number of them be- more it profgan to encrease, and notwithstanding the Pereth. perfecutions, embraced it the more earneftly. The most part of the Seigneurs and people, not willing to fuffer it, expulfed (in the yeare following) about thirty forfake that new opinion, and returne againe to the Romane Church. There were people of all kindes in this troope, Nobles, Gentles, and Yeomen; learned Perfecution and vnlearned; rich and poore; great and Christians fmall; husbands without their wives, and touch-ftone. wines without their husbands; fathers without their children, & children without their fathers. The men of Zurich received them very louingly, and did, and vet do many kinde courtesses to them: fo that divers of the are embraced as Bourgeffes, and the rest maintained at the expences of the Seigneury. At the beginning, they received a good fum of monie, fent by them of Berne, and another collected at Basile, and in some other Townes of Sauoye, where-with the poore people haue bene long time main-

THE

The End of the third Booke.

tained.



Salt digged

of Gold, Sil

Gold in Ri-



THE FOVRTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Of the Kingdome and Court of Spaine; the Lawes. Customes, and manners of the people, as also the division and scituation of the Country.

> Paine, so tearmed of r aine, to tearmed of * Hispalis, or of * Hef-

Confines in this

manner. On the East the Mediterranean

Sea: On the VVeff, the Ocean: On the

South, the streights of Gibraltare: And

on the North, the Pyrenean Mountains,

which make division of France & Spaine.

The principall Rivers in this Province.

are fixe in number: Myuo, Duria, Traia,

Guadiana, Guadalquabir, and Iberus. This

Kingdome (by our Auncients) was diui-

ded into three parts, to wit ; Batica, Lust-

tania, and Tarraconia. At this day, Bati-

ca contayneth three Regions, namely,

Granata, with her Citty Royall, which is

called Granada; Andalusia, with the City

of Sinill; and Estramadura, with the City

of Menda. Lulitania hath two Regions

to wit, Portugall, with the Citty Royall,

named Lisborne : and Galicia, with the cit-

ty that is called Compostella, where the bo-

dy of S. James is faide to be. Tarraconia

hath nine Regions ; as Arragon, with the

citty of * Sarragoffa; Nauarre, with the

citty of Pampalona; Cathalonia, with the

citty of Barcellona; Bifcay, with the city of

Viluero: * Castile the elder, with the citty

of Burges or Braga; Castile the newer.

with the citty of Tolledo; Leupusca, with

the citty of S. Sebastiano: Valenza, with

the citty of Valencia; Murgia, with the cit-

peria or Helperus, by

being a part of Eu-

rope, and neerest to

the VVest ; hath her

The Cirty Siuil in Bæti ca.
The West flar, and fup. poled to be Country Westward.

Rivers in Spaine.

Thefirft three divisions of Spaine, and how fince altered. Bætica. Eftremadura,

Called alfo Cæfar augu-

* Called also Viterior and Citerior.

the Ocean Sea, and in the Mediterranean there are three feuerall Islands, subjected to the government of Valencia, to wit Jeniza Majorica and Minorica. The East Indiaes; and the Spaniards of Sivill and Caliz, into the West. The chrcumfrence of Spaine is about 1893 miles. The kingdom of Portugall, fro the South part, beginneth at the citty of Leppe, and on the North it extendeth to Baiona of Galicia. The most notable Ports or Ha-Ribadeo: the Port Jeroll: and the Port delpart, are the Port di Monuedra; the Port of Portugall; the Port of Lisborne; & the Port Secuball. On the South part are the Port di Siluas; the Port of Sinill; the Port of Calax; and the Port of Caliz in the

Spaine hath feuen Arch-Bifhoppricks, Archithopand the refidence is made in Tarracomia, pricis, Rain in Sarragoffa, in Tolledo, in Compostella, in vader their Braga, in Lisbona, and in Granata. Vnder commend the aboue-named Arch-Bishopricks, are many Citties and their Bishops; as Barcellona, Girona, Lerida, Tortofa, Valenza, Maiorica, Ostia, Monuedro, Burgos, Salamanca, Corduba, Legiou, Tariffa, Almaria, Siniglia, and others.

This Country (in many places) is not reduced to tillage & husbandry, because lage or husbandry the ground confifts of a very stony earth, places of the and is much squallide and filthy through Country. desertnesse: notwithstanding, in respect of Affrica it is very fertile, and this enfueth through the ouer-great heate which is

ty fo called. In the kingdome of Granada, ther is an Island named Caliz, which hath of Islandin a citty also called by the same name. In the kingdom of Spaine. Portugals vie their nauigation into the Nauigation, uens of Spaine, on the North part, are S. The cheefe Sebastiano; the Port Galette; the Port An-urns in Spia drea; the Port di S. Vincenzo; the Port of Onthe north. le Grugne, or of the Groyne. On the VVeft On the Well On the South Island; and the Port Beger; & the famous Port Cartagenia. On the East part is Port On the East. Calibre, now called Porto venere.

rance and

The Spanish

that are necessary for man : as in VVine, Corne, Fruites, Oyle, Cattell, Line for all garments, yron mettals, VVaxe, Hony, VVaters well stored with Fish, and such other like things. They make no Salt by boyling or feething, but dig it out of the earth. And they have not fo many windes as France; neyther are they fo flored with marish and fenny grounds, whereby the ayre is much corrupted. There is not found any Gold, Silver, or Yron, fo good and approued, or in such plenty, as in Spaine, and the gold is taken not only out of the Mines, but also out of the Rivers, which when they encrease by much plenty of raine; they doe produce fandes of gold, & especially the Riner Tagus. There are found out in many places, divers wels and springs of hot and cold water; maruailoufly good for the helpe of divers & fundry infirmities, which happen to the bodies of men. There is likewife great abundance of Beafts, both wilde and tame; Swift maning and especially of swift horses, which were supposed by our Elders, to bee conceived by the windes. They have no hurtful creacontentainmentures in any great store, Conies onely excepted, who making their caues under the ground, doe much harme to the rootes growing in the earth. Their Rivers, glide away very gently, for hardly can their motion be differred and therefore they do not ouer-flow, or drowne the fields, being also well stored with Fith, because the Sea (by helpe of the Rivers) doth not fend any plenty on land . Galicia is much The gold Mines of Ga-kita commended for the Mines there breeding, and sometime it hapneth in this Region, that by plowing vp the ground, the people finde little graynes of gold. The language of the Spamards, is not much different from the Italians; from whom they received it, whe they were subjected to the Romane Empire. On the Northerly part, the Prouince is not fo colde as in that climate of France: for it fendeth into France, Oyle, Hony, Waxe, Saffron, Madder, Barly, dying coulors, Chuchinelo, Snger, Oliues, Lemons, Dates, Cedar, Pomgranats, and other things; but especially many thousand weights of wool,& muchwine, dried plums or pruins, rafines, almonds, chefnuts, bay-berries, faired falmon, and other things, which are fent into Italy, & fro thence transported to France.

in Affrica. It aboundeth in all those things

The temperature and complexion of the Spaniards, is much more hot and dry. The temper and their coullor more dun & foggy, the lof the Spani that of the French : because they are more ard, compacold and moift, having their flesh more red with the fost and their could are the french. foft, and their coullor whiter, & the French women are more gentle, and apt to conceine children then the Spanily are. The Spaniards are more raw-boned men of Their difpolibody, the the French, and in war they feed and approfile with councell and arte, being filent by na- to war. ture:as men that know most exquisitely, how to diffemble their owne intentions. walking very granely, and vfing much ceremonious behaujour in their customs & qualities. They drinke wine temperately, line with great respect & are of acute vnderstanding & knowledge in their words. In Spain there are a great number of Princes, Dukes, Marqueffes, Earles, & Barons, and Nobility and every one of them hath the revenues of Spaine, & and profits from 50. to 60. thousand Ducates yearely. The Marqueffes are 20, befide the like revenues. The Earls are 60. with revenues from ten, to twenty thoufand Ducates. Then there are Viscounts, Gouernors, and Barons, which are called The Adalan-Adalantadoes. There are great Masters of tad ies of the Orders of knighthood; as of S. lames, Great Maof Alcantara, of Calatrana, of S. John of Je- fters of the rufalem, of the Rhodes, of Montefe, and o- Orders of thers; who dispend (each one) about so. thousand Ducates in revenues yearely. The women go pompeoufly apparelled, The women wearing rich eare-rings of Pearl & Gold, of Spaine, having their garments plaited, after the their attire manner of Italy. VVhen they walk abroad our. out of their houses, the men-seruants goe before them, and the maids follow after. The most part of them do willingly drink water, and so paint their faces with white and red, that it is most lothsom to behold. They are discreet in speech, yet prettily wanton and lafeiuious, & deliuered with effectuall gestures, especially in amorous matters. It is not many yeares fince that the people of this Pronince, hath gotten The same for a great name of military feruice, as men Military ferthat are most patient in labors, surfering long antiquimost valiantly both thirst and hunger, and ty among the being matchleffe for subtilties in Soldier- Spaniards, like affaires, quicke and nimble of body, both for pursuit & flight. They have conquered many countries, bringing thence very honourable victories, especially vn-

der Charles the fift. Emperor.

the Moores

holly beate

of their kings

The birth of

Portugall ad-

minion of

352

The loue and beneuolence of Subjects is much encrea led by the life according to

his lawer.

Spaine fubiceted to the Moores for many yeares

Spaine in the gouernment of perty kings

I Tatracon. 2 Carthage. 3 Lufitania 4 Gallicia. 5 Bætica. 6 Tingitana.

The Vandale got the rule o Spaine.

No Kings of Spaine,but Kingsefthe

Of the Maiesty Royall. THE Kings of Spaine, as great in power, and valorous, in regard of Military pronision, were alwayes held in no meane reuerence among their people. For men bearing ordinarily affection to their Soueraigne, their beneuolence is fo much the more encreased, by how much the King lineth vertuously and justly, according to the ordination of his owne lawes, for fo shall hee be both loued and ferued. And in conclusion, the worthy deeds of his Lords, that are enriched with voderstanding and judgement, doe highly support him: even as the wicked actions of fuch as know not how to rule and gouerne, doth ruinate & ouerthrow him. The Kings of Spaine have poffeffed this Province many yeares peaceably. Moores; whom at length they expelled. and reduced the whole politicke body to a quiet condition, and greatly denoted to the catholique church, whereon the King attained to the title of Catholique King. The king then is the cheefe Ruler of the kingdome, and ordereth matters as beft him pleaseth: but heere it shall not much fome other observations, concerning the originall & fuccession of this kingdome. Spaine in her yonger daies was held by

fundry petty Kings and Tetrarches, & at terward became divided into many commonwealths fix in number as fome have written. The Carthagenians, a people of Affrica, hazzarding their fortune thether held one part therof, and poffeffed themfelues of that V Citties, Townes, and places; vntil they were expelled thence by the Komanes, in the time of the Punicke wars. Since when, it was continually fubicct to the Roman common-wealth & reduced into forme of a Province onely in the reigne of the Emperour Augustus. So it remained till the Emperour Honorius in whose dayes, the Vandales (a people of the North parts) broght it vider their command. But they (were foone after) chased thence by the Gothes, who establithed there the feate of their kingdome; which they maintained (in that kinde) for the space of aboue 200 yeares. Nor were they then called kings of Spaine, but kings of the Gothes. In the reigne of Roderick, king of the Gothes, the Moores entred

Spaine, in the year 715 they being broght thirher by one named Iulian; in very defpitefull indignation, and to shape out a The Moorfpitefull indignation, and to inape out a in polition way to his bloody relienge, because king of all space. Roderick had dishonoured his Sister, or as others fay) his Daughter, wherof heretofore we have spoken more largely. And fo did the Moores possesse themselves of all Spaine, feizing the citty of Tolledo, which was then the capitall citty. So ended the kingdome and name of the Gothes in Spaine. Nor rested they thus, but pursued on their conquest still, & there remained but Gallicia, the Asturies and Leon : Pelagius, Va which countries king Pelagius, Vnkle and ceffor to King Successor of Rodericke, had fled too for Rodericke refuge & there that up himfelfe, in regard that those places were enuironed with Mountaines, and might well defend and though it was (a long while) nefted by the fhelter him for fome time. But his Succeffors being hardly preffed by the Sarrazins, could no longer refift : wherefore, vader the reigne of Althonfus the fecond they were forced to craue the shelpe of Charlemaigne, king of France, by whose valour and vertue, the Moores were bea- king of France; ten thence a great way, and had bin quite againft the cast out of the country, if the Spaniards differ from our purpole, to fette downe mallice trad bene no hinderance thereto. Afterward, thekings of Leon and Gallicia (for fuch were then their onely titles) being for formerly preferred, began formewhat to efferease in power. And in regard of this expeditio performed by the French, the frength of the Moores was fo weakened & diminished, that many other king- much westdomes were eftablished in Spaine, as that ned of Wanter, by Enocho, Count of Bigorre, in the yeare 950. which hee tooke away from the Maores and Sarrazins by a very valiant conquest of them! And afterward, in the yeare 11 6. was Arragon reduced to domeso Ni a kingdome, by the will and testathent of warre and Ar Sanchio the great fourth king of Nanarre! 12800, for love to Ramy? His his nathfall Sonne. who was the first king thereof. "This was the fame Santhio who being Earle of Cafile in the kingdome of Leon; tooke on him fift the name of King of Castile, The firt king which he left vnto his Sonne Ferdinand.

The kingdome of Portugall was also conquered fro the fame Moores, by Earle Henry, Sonne vitto the Duke of Zorraine 3, the Moores who held it first of all vnder tytle of an Earle, in the yeare 1710 but quickly after, he brought it to be akingdome. Spaine

did continue fo (in this kinde of state) for a long time, divided into many kingdoms: & the Moores had also their abiding ther, possessing still a great part thereof; till fuch time as Ferdinand, the fift, king of Arragon (who was married to Ifabell, the onely heire of Castile) wholly expulsed the Moores out of Spain, in the year 1492. In no great distance of time after, he posfeffed himfelfe of Sicily and Naples, inuading also the East Indiaes. But fraudulently he vsurped the kingdome of Nauarre, against John d'Albret, who was (indeede) the lawfull King. And it is this Ferdinand, and Ifabell his wife, in whom onely wee The begining may truly fay, that the kingdome of Spaine had her first beginning. They left one only daughter named toane, who was married to Philip the first of Austria, Sonne vnto the Emperour Maximillian, and Mary of Bourgundy: he fucceeded in this kingdom of Spaine, and other countries beside. He was likewise Earle of Bourgundy; of Flaunders, and Lord of the Low-countries, inthe right of his Mother. In this his marriage, was borne Charles the fift, who was afterward Emperour. He reigned nine & thirty yeares, preserving his Provinces very happily: and hee left for fuccession (both in Spaine, and the more part of his

other countries) his Sonne Philip the fe-

cond, who reigned three and forty years.

having joyned to his other estates, the

kingdom of Portugallin the yeare of our

Lord, 1580. and fo (confequently) al that

which the Portugals held in the East Indi-

aes, and elfewhere; as in Affrica and Bra-

file, which came vnto him by the death of Henry the Cardinall. He died, aged feuenty yeares, the thirteenth day of September, 1508. No long time before his death, hee had made peace with the mighty and most christian King of France, Henry the fourth. Philip the third, his Sonne, fucceeded him, and reigneth as yet to this

a Sonne, in the Moneth of Aprill 1606. Now let vs returne where we left before, concerning the king of Spaine, who being a goodking, and living orderly aherfore on him doe depend the following coun-

day. He married Margret, daughter to the

Arch-Duke of Austria, by whom he had

cellers, who are speciall members of gouernement, both in the Court and elfe-

Councellers of Estate Royall.

THE fupreaine affembly of Spaine, which is the very fame, that (in effect) hath the government of most impor tant affayres in their power; is the Royall The reason of or Kingly Councel, to tearmed of the vocable king : because they are samong all name. other councellers) as the King himfelte a. mong his greatest Lords. These councellers doe prouide for the peoples living, in The care and all things that appertaine to a well ordered state: because from them do proceed cell. all meanes and deliberations, concerning matters of Graine, taxations, customes, provisions, and other substantial occasions for fafe being; but euermore affifted by the Princes authority. These councellers are in number twelue, all principall men of the kingdome, & noble by blood, of the Counhaving a Prefident as their cheefe. And cell. from these Noble-men, being affembledtogether, do come all orders, wherby the whole Realme of Spane is governed; and the appellation of three Audiences, called the Chanceries of three kingdomes,

do all refort to this councell. The Councell of Inquisition.

I In regard of the conquests which the Moores (informer times) made of this kingdome, reformation of the people was first instituthought most convenient, by bringing ting the counthem to holy Baptisme, and procuring by all careful meanes, that Religion might endure no danger throughout the countrythis councel was first created, and called. The facred Councell of Inquisition. Whereof there is a Prefident, and hee is alwayes an Ecclesiasticall person, as the Arch Bishop of Tolledo, or the Arch-Bishop of Sinill. He is affisted by twelve others councellers, who doe altogether deale in matters appertaining to religion. of Inquistion They give chastifement to heretiques; onely or Rehaue care of catholique affayres; and per- ligious oceasiuse all Bookes before they be imprinted, to anoyd them of offence or corruptions. Other the like businesses are referred to their charge, for the better preservation of holy faith.

The Councell of the Orders.

N Spaine there are three feueral degrees of Knights, all honourable gentlemen, Ordersof containing every one by themselves, one proper & peculiar Order of knighthood, introduced in former times by divers of Calatratia Kings of the Land. The first and principal Of Alcanicte. among all the other, is that of the knights Hhz

The Prefider

Knighthood

Calatrana: and the third, the Knights of

Alcantara. These three Orders haue (each

under their gouernment, gotten and ob-

managing is great, and as if it were a king-

dome within it selfe, therefore this Coun-

cel of these Orders was ordained. Wher-

of there is a Prefident, with foure Coun-

cellers, and these meeting all together, do

provide Magistrates of the Orders, of

Lawes, and of all other things that apper-

taine to the forefaid Orders. The King is

the great Master of these Orders, & when

any expedition is to be performed by the

Order of S. lames, the King in his Letter,

next vnto the ordinary fule or title that is

viually given him, writeth; And perpetual

Administrator of S. James, &c. Next vn-

to the King, followeth the great Com-

mendator of Leon, as being Commenda-

tor of the Order of S.lames; and after

him, the Commendator of Castile. Thefe

altogether with the King, do dispense the

commendums of spiritual linings: but

for that, looke in our Booke of the origi-

The Councell of the Indiaes. 7 Hen it pleased God, by the means

which formerly was thut vp from all of vs now here dwelling, and whereof the kings

of Spaine haue (in part) bin Patrones: for

gouernment of that part (as necellity re-

quired) a Councell of the Indiaes was cre-

ated, confisting of twelue Councellers,

with one President. These then do attend

ypon all fuch matters, as appertaine to the

governing of India. And therefore they

haue their full power, fending thether

Gouernors, Officers, and all kinde of pro-

of Don Christophero Colomba, to open (in our time) that part of the world.

nall of Knights.

The reason cels first ordi

The great Mafter of thefe Orders.

Their Office & authority.

Columbus the of the Indiaes.

Twelue coun cellers of the Indiaes, and

The reason of this Councels negotiation.

uition, as is fit for those kingdomes, which are under the Crowne of Castile. The Councell of Warre. Hen it so falleth out, that any matter of action is to be undertaken, eyther for defence of themfelues, or any new acquisition, the Councell of Warre do meete together: among whom are the Lords of the Councell Royal, the great Commendator of Leon, the Commendator of Castile, with other cheefe

of S. lames: the second, the Knights of | Rulers.

The Secret Councell. Aft of all is the Councell for matters one to it felfe) many Citties and Caftles of fecrecy, wherin the King is prefent, the great Chancellor, the great Commétained in divers times : and because their dator of Leon, and the third part of the Councell Royall, with the President. Be- They have ing fet together, they give dispatch to the charged

properly to the State.

matters of greatest secrecy, and which do most import the King, as appertaining ons.

Arragon the principall kingdome of

Royes gouer

ning in their

teuerall char

Hispania Ci-

lections and

Three Indges, and the Rector. COr causes incident to civill and criminall judgement, three Judges are or- After them

dayned in criminall occasions, who, as be- cient manuer ing Tribunes of the common people, do Tribunes difpatch all criminall occurrences. And when the ordinary Podesta, or cheefe Officers are there present the they attend on civill affaires : but if it fall out, that hee cannot be there in person, the three Iud. ges doe then take order in civill matters. These are alwayes in those Citties, where

The three Chanceries.

the appointed Courts are kept.

Over and beside the fore-named Cou-cels and Offices, the King bath three Courts of audience, called three Chanceries, placed in three kingdomes, divided

the one from the other. One is in Vallidolid, confishing of twelve Councellers, and Galitie with one President. These do sit every morning separately in foure Halles, three in each Hall. The fecond is in Granada, the principall citty of the kingdome of Gramada, as being the first and cheese. The third and last is in Galitia, beeing neyther more or leffe in power, then the two former. To this Court of audience go all the causes of Spaine, and they may each of them (by themselues) expedite their caufes. without any interuention one of another. The appeales and chalendges of the Rector of Granada, doe patte to the audience of Granada, and those of Castila, to ges of each Kalidalla and fo from hand to hand . But Court. in regard that they have superiours, and some for the people, such as finde the inclues ground in the forenamed Audiences or Chaunceries, may appeale from them to the Councell Roy-the Royall. Moreouer, each of these fore-named Councell Chaunceries have Rectors or Comman-

ders, with criminall jurisdiction.

Vice-Royes or Kings Deputies.

Because Spaine (as formerly hath bene faid) is divided into diverskingdoms, the cheefe or principall whereof is Arragon: the King hath and doth vivally fend into those kingdomes, Deputies, or Vice-Roves to gouern there in his name. They are elected and made choyle of by him, beeing first affirmed by the councel Royall, to be Princes of the country, men of vertue and valor, and deferting advancement to so high degree. Valencia hath her Vice-Roy, who gouerneth the kingdome of Valencia, by the fame authority as was received from the former Kings of Arragon, and by the ancient lawes and orders of the kingdome. In Barcellona likewife, the principall citty of * Catalogna, ruleth another Vice-Roy, making vie of

the lawes, customes, and ordinances of the kingdome of Barcellona. In Arragon alfo is another Vice-Roy, who maketh his refidence in * Sarragoffa. This Vice-Roy gouerneth by the ancient lawes of Arra-

gon (as other Vice-Royes do by the Castillian lawes) because it is the head of the other kingdomes. The kingdome of Nawarre bath also her Vice-Roy, abiding in Rampalona, who ruleth this kingdome according to the lawes thereof, and those

Pampalona conquered by King Perdi-nando, of the crowne of Castile, because it was last of all conquered by Don Ferdinando, the catholike King. All the fore-named Vice-Royes, doe acknowledge the King of Spaine, and his councell Royall, in all

The Treasurer of Castile.

their causes.

Aftofall, there liueth in Court the Treasurer, a most honourable degree, and of great importance, who receyueth the monies of all the kingdomes reuennucs. Hee hath foure Contadories or Auditors under his command, who doe gather and collect the monies from the people, and bringing them vnto the Treafurer, payments are continually made foorth as command is given by the King to the Treasurer.

CHAP. II.

Of the Kingdome of Portugall; the beginning continuance and prefent cleate therof with the Customes. Lawes and administration of Justice therein observed.



HE kingdome of Portugall began in the yeare of Chrift, How the king one thousand, fine hundred dome had her and ten, and after this manner. Henry Earle of Lor-

ravae comming thither, performed many valiant deeds against the Sarrazins, and his high defernings mooned Alphon (us the fixt king of Castile, to give him a Baftard daughter of his in marriage, named Tirefia. And in way of dowry, he affigned alfo vnto him that part of Galiei a, which was then contained in " Lusitania.

Of this marriage was Alphonf us borne, part of Spaine who was the first that ever stilled himselfe Portugall, king of Portugall: and hee was the first parted on the alfo, that tooke the citty of Lisbone from Tarracon, by the Sarrazine. For he having conquered the River Du fine of their Kings in fenerall battailes; rus on the caused his Armes to bee adorted with Barica,b the fine fenerall Crownes & Coar-Armors, River Anas. which ever after continued the Bufigne of the kings of Portugall, in perpetuall memory of his valour. But he quickly stayned this faire fame, with cruelry vied by him to his owne Mothered For after her fecond marriage, he canfed her to be intprisoned, and albeit the Pope laboured the matter greatly, by the meanes of his Legate ; yet could he neuer compasse his grace and fauour for her delinerance. Which finne was feuerely punished on him afterward by his enemics, who tooks him in battaile. And then his Sonne Sanc-The fucceffisio fucceeded him, and after Sandtio, diuers other, to lohn, who was the tenth dominihe king king in direct and naturall line.

This John was (at the first) expulsed the first, made very honourable proofe of his va lohn of Icru he tooke from the Sarrazins the citty of

which, Ferdinand (for integrity of life)

Alphonius

from his kingdome, and made a Knight of S. John of Jernfalem : but at length hee The King of was re-called to his kingdome, where hee knight of S.

> lour, and (among divers famous deeds) falem. Septia. Hee bad fenen Sonnes, among

pulia, now cal-led Mens S.

A hìch moũ

taine in Por

tugal, called

mentorium.

The fucceffi-

Kings of Por-

rugal,in their

Sebastian K.

of Portugal,

flaine in the

battel of Alca-

on of the

was termed a Saint.

Henry another of his fonnes, was the first that found Noua Infula, in the Atlanticke Sea. Hee being very skilfull in the Mathematickes, lived continually without a wife, and made his dayly abiding in a Promontorie, which was called the Cape of Saint * Vincent, and there he died, in the yeare, 1460. But Edward, who was the eldeft Brother, was made King; and he added to the kingdome of Portugall, by meanes of his warres, Zelia, Teeea, and Alcazar in Affrica. Hee had two daughters or fifters (as fonce fay) named loane and Leonora; the first was marryed to the King of Castile, and the other vnto Frederick the third, Emperor, of whome was borne Maximillian the first, who was afterward Emperor, and Grandfather to Charles the fift He had also a fon, named Alphonfus, who fucceeded him in the king dome, and begate John and Emanuel, that right line and was the fourteenth King of Portugall. Emanuel had John, who tooke to wife the fister of the fore-named Charles the fifte. Emperour, called Katherine, and begate Lodwicke, that dyed an infant, and Mabell who was wife to the faid Charles, and had another daughter alfo, which was married to Charles Duke of Sauoy. After these succeeded Sebastian, who (in our time!) fighting against the Moores, was slain, & the King of Morocco with him, besides di-

uers other great Lords of the Moores. Henrie, Vnckle to the deceafed King, followed him in fuccession, he being then a Cardinall, and very aged, holding the kingdome fome few months. But he dy-Philip the first ing, Phillip King of Spaine, entred on the kingdome; withstanding the claime and title of Don Anthonio, beeing a Brothers fonne to the dead King Henrie, & fo outwearied him with troubles, that he could neuer attaine thereto in full possession, and so it remaineth still in the Spaniards

there is a high Constable, and a Lorde

power. Concerning the gouernement of this Of the order and gonernekingdome, it hath the very fame forme & observation as all the rest of Spaine hath, kingdome. as being a part of that Province . For,

Great Steward, with all other dignities elfewhere related. By the Title and name of great Lords, there is the Duke of Bra-Dukes. ganzia, the Duke of Colimbra, the Duke of vilco, the Duke of Trafcoffa, the Duke

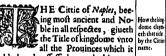
of Barcella and the Duke of Auaria. There is also the Marquesse of Villa Reale, the Marquesse Marquesse of Torra Nuova, the Marques of Monte Maggiore, and the Marquelle of Ferrira, with an infinite number of Earles. There is likewise the Order of Earles. Knight-hood, called the Knights of Christ, Order of honoured and esteemed much about all Knight hood

Among these honourable persons in this Order, as an appropued man of valour, most signale for many vertues, liberall minde and courteffe, befide fpeedveft intelligence in matters of Military discipline; is the Lorde Flaminio Zambeccaro. Lord of Castella in Campagnia, who liveth at this day in Florence, and highly affected

other, and whereof the King is the Great

CHAP.III.

Of the Antiquity Originall Customs Lawes and administration of Iustice, observed in the king dome of Naples.



holdeth and poffeffeth, euen by hir owne proper name. Therefore wee may thence frame our argument, what the greatneffe of that Citty hath formerly beene, in regard that all the parts by it possessed, deriueth from thence the Title of a Kingdome : which I do not holde to be of any great antiquitie, because the Normanes tooke it from the Gracians, who possesfed the Prouince in divers partes thereof, and then it was tearmed the County taly, bording or Earledome of * Puglia, or Apulia, as some do yet call it.

Robert Guiscard, a verievaliant and Robert Gui worthy man, having expulfed (in a manner) all the Grecians thence, & taken Sicily also from the Sarrazins; would needes fivle himselfe Duke of Apulia and of Calabria, and Earle of Sicily. In no long time after this, his Nephevve Ruggiero or Roger, having conquered the Cittie

A litt'e I fle against the lus ioyning lexandria. The Sicilian Eucning.

of the whole kingdome in length and breath Kingdom, with the Sea-shores & stronds; Italy which is hetweene the

description

nouths of Ti ber and the Circeians : 1 alled of Late mic In it Hati of Rome, whereof t is now called anpagna d

the title of King of both the Sicillies, by Anacletus the Anti-Pope, in the yeare 1120, which afterward was confirmed to him in good and lawfull manner. And from that time, it was called the kingdom of Sicily, on this fide a Pharos; vntill the reigne of Charles the first, when it becam divided from Sicily, by occasion of that famous accident, called Velpro Siciliano, the Sicilian Euening, wherein fo manie of the French were flaine. I finde moreouer in many good Historians, that this kingdome hath had 3. fenerall Names, to wit the kingdome of Waples, the Kingdome of Apulia, and the kingdom of Sicily, on this fide Phares, the bounds or circumference whereof, at this day is thus described.

First of all, by Land-way, measure of

the Line, and the Confines of the whole

of Naples, which till that time had beene

in the Grecians government) obtayned

as also Campagna di Roma, sometimes called Latium, which (at this day) terminateth the river of Offento, on this fide Terracina, and from the mouth of the fayde River, where it entereth into the Terrene Sea, proceeding on still towards the Apdeth the Citie penines, with Lattum, and part of Sabina: then paffing the Apennines, with part of Vmbria and of Picenam, now called Marcad' Ancona, vnto the Confines thereof, is the Riner Truentus or Tronto, where it enterethinto the bosom of the Adriatick maine. Which Scale or Lone, because it doth not directly extend it felfe forth, but passeth on by turnings and windings, enermore from one of the forenamed Riuers to another, by the terminations of those Regions, it containeth about an hundred and fifty miles in length . Paffing on thence from "Terracina, by the confines of the kingdome, to Ponte Corno, and Ceperano, and by the confines of Ajeti, thorow the country of Taylacozzo, to Interdoco, and Ciuita Reale, then to Matrice, and thence (by the river) to Afcoli. till we come to the mouth of Trente othe Line heere being directly extended, will contains about an hundred thirty miles Region's which lye berivene Tenere, Sain length, or little leffe. By the fea-coaffs along the banke and shore, the whole bing the Apennines, and Therecina, and kingdome winderh about, like vnto an Island almost round engirt with water, as towards the middest of the Terrhene Sea,

and fo on to the Siglian fea. On the East fide, from the Adriaticke fea, and fo vnto the North, part of the Jonian fea, to farre as d Monte Gargano, or Santo Angelo, and d A hil in Apart of the Adriatick bosome, from Gargano to Tronto, the Kingdonie, extendeth Angeliit selfe, and imparteth her boundes with the faide fea: all which circumference, from Offento to Trento, and in length by the fea-thores, containeth in all 1418. miles, in this margner.

called . Lacinium, an hundred and ninety

miles. From Capa delle Collona, to Taran-

most confines, which is the river of Tron-

to, two hundred miles. All which fums

in this roundure (by the fea boundes) do

make one thousand, foure hundred, and

cighteene miles . Whereunto adjov-

ning the forefaid bundred & fiftie miles,

which is the space of the Land by measu-

red line, wherewith if we cloving to the o-

ther part of Italy, from Offento to Tronto,

it furnmeth vp, one thoufand fine hunde-

red fixty eight miles. And this is now (at

this day) the dimension or measure of the

Terracina, reaching to Garigliane .. I For,

one part of the true Latio, which ancient-

kingdomes circuit.

From Terracina to Naples, are eighty The juff actwo miles. From 2 aples, to the heade of count or a.um being of the the gulfe of Policrasto, an hundred forcie feuen miles. From the head of Relievasto place to anoto Rhegium in Calabria, an hundred eighty. her thorough the kingdome three miles. From Rhegium to the head of Spartinento, fo to Capo delle Colonne, now

c A Promon torie in the furtheft part to, two handred miles. From Taranto, to of Italy, deui-Capo di Leuca, now called Salento, thirtie an and Adriamiles. From Cape de Leucasto Cape d'Otticke Seas, where Hercuranto, fixe and twenty miles. From Capo les built a Temple to lud'Otranto, to Capo S. Angelo, now called Gargano, two hundred two and twentie no and cald in miles. From Capo S. Angelo, to the ytter-

Recions and

f A River in Lixus that now adayes is called Garigliano, Campania, running by beginneth from Offenta vaporing Ter-

binas, the Apennines, and Thereemas and termed by three seuer ill names, to witter ore Tylenor, Latio: Compagna di Roma, and Maremmat Hirrania, calyernotwithstanding, in elderdayes (to led allo Mare

A part off-

These following Regions and Prouinces are contained and embraced within | Provinces the whole bodie . Latia Maque, that is contayned in one part, fo much as is from the River of

ly extended it felfe fo farre as the Rater f there are three partitions made of all the

farre

Chap.3.

h Rordering

on the Same

wes & Ac.

Heere liue

bines and the Marlis

d Heere the

n Apulia ri-

h A River of Campania.rifing out of Sarnus, a hil in Picenum.

i A River of Lucania dia ding it from Picenum.

k Taking nam of Leda a Ci ty in Italie.

l People dwel

m A promontory of Rhegi-

n That part of Italy,from Laurentum re Cumz.

o A Towne in Campania.

p People almoft enuiro ned with the fea,neere to Apulia.

Adriatick lea.

name, to wit, Latio Nuono, or new Latium. And in this Region the chiefe landes and Citties, are Formella, Fonds, and Ga-

Olde Campania, which stretcheth from Garioliano, fo farre as the river h Sarnus: therein is Naples and Capua, a most noble Citty, as well in auncient as moderne times.

Picenum, or where the Picentines inhabite, holdeth on from Sarnus, to the Riuer Silarus, and the most famous Cities therein, are Sorrento Nocera de Pagani, & Salernum.

Lucania, called fomtimes Sao, containes it felf betweene the river Silarus, and that called & Saprio. And therein the Cities of times also there were Pestum and Buxentum, and among the mountaines are many Castles.

with Lucania, and runneth along the river Saprio vppon the Terrhene sca, so farre as called " Capo dell'arme in the Sicilian Sea , nofa. umin Italy a. where the Apennine Mountaines do end. gainst Sicily. | which beginning at the Alpes, run all along through the midft of italy, and the veric toppe ouer the faide Cape, is now adayes called by Marriners, Punta di Tarlo, the point of Tarlo. In this part, the most principall places are Cofenza, and Rhegium on the Sea, otherwise tearmed Iunio, as a difference and distinction from that Rhegium which is in Lombardi, so named by Lepidus.

> " Magna Grecia, or Great Grecia, runneth along from Capo dell'arme, turning Capo di Spartinento, now called º Herculamium, by the Seacoast so farre as Taranto, where it entreth into the Adriaticke Chieti. fea. In it, are Squillace, Taranto, and Co-

The connerey of the? Salentines, is on the break of Taranto, to farre as Capo di torie. In ware scituated Callipolis and V. gento: "a abartica

Calabria it selfe, which hath so contig A cry of Ca nued turneth vnto Capo di Leuca Northnian fea. The famous Citties therein, are Lecci, Brundufium, or Brandizzaum, and

farre as Garigliano) was called all by one Hydruntum, now called Otronto. These two Regions (I meane Salentinum & Calabria, which is that part of Land which extendeth towards the East between the Gulffe of Taranto and the Ionian fea;) being joyned together with one name, now adayes termed Terra d Otronto, was called by our forefathers) Lapigia and Mef- Wherely, Sapea. And it is an Island round engirte thipped into with waters ; for from Taranto to Brundu- conia, fum, which are voon the two feas, there is not in firme land about 35, miles.

Apulia Pucetia, betweene Brundufium t An Ilembo & Offento, vpon the Ionian Gulfe, is now mariow case. adayes (along the fea-coaft) called Terra wholedage di Bari, and Louenazzo, & lyeth betweene iourney. the fandy countries.

Capitanato, of plain Apulia, with his exmost note are Pontecastro & Saleo in elder | tendure betweene Offento and the River called Fortore, paffeth on, on the Ionian Gulffe, fo far as Capo S. Angelo, & thence vpon the Adriaticke bosome to Fortore. Where the Bruti do live, it confineth The places of most note, are Salupis, " Si- u Called the porto, and Manfredonia, anew citty builte Sepinor Sepi by King Maufred. It is also between Ter- the Same the Promontory of Lencopetra, at this day | ra Luceria, or Nocera de Saracini, and Ca. in Italy

> Frentani are a people living from Fortore to the River Sagrue, or Sagra, now called the bloody riuer, on the Adriatike raly, pung Gulfe, Chiefe cities therein, are Eilonni, the Pelgi fomtime cald Islamium, Larino, & Laciano, fond be Felgi

The Peligni dwell betweene the River Sagra, and that called Pefcara, sometime y A niet pf Aternus. The fairest citty, between Terra important *Sulmona, and Pentina on the feacoaft, is wher Oul Ortano.

The Marucini do inhabite from the a Aprophia river of Pefcara fo farre as Tronto, the vt- Italy. most ending of the kingdome, along the Northerly towardes the Promontorie of | fea-shore on the Adriaticke gulfe. There is a Sea-Cittie, which is called Francawilla or b Frentana, and a Land-city called Deuni and B

Aboue the Marucini, between the land of the Apennines, and where they do take best rooting, beginning at the confines of the Peligni, io now called, and tur-Leuca, now called the Salentine Promon-ning towardes Marca d'Ancona, are three the Math other people in order, to witte, the Ve-Stini, whose Citty was named Pinna, and now called the citty of Penna; the Amiterni and Furroni, of whose ruines the citie of d Aquila was builded, some smal di- Campania stance off.

The Westim, neighbor with the Precuti, of whom

whom it is verily credited, that the name of the Bruty, now tearmed Abruzzefi, their Cowar was first derined. dice and base osnaci's.

The Marfi dwell more inward to the Mountaines, whose most famous place is Celana, with her Lake Lucina, now tearmed of the Marsi and Albi. These fixe forenamed people, are all called by one bodie of this kingdome, which circle, name, Abruzzest; but oftentimes by writers they are understood under the nomination of the Samnites.

" Samnio, from the point of Land, and he mountair almost to the middest of the Kingdome. seen the Sa- hath Latium and Campania in length, both on this fide, and beyond the Apennines. At this day it is called Valle Beneuentana. the valley of Beneuentum, which extendeth it felfe in length, fo farre as the River Silarus, eighty miles. Places of greatest name heretofore, were Efernia, Sepino, Te. lesio, Reneuentum and Bouiano.

The d Hirpini, otherwise called Samnites, do confine with the Picentines, Lucanes and Apulians, partaking at this day with Principate and Rasilicata. The most noted Cities, are now a Auallino and Ag.

I finde that all these Regions have (by our Moderne writers) beene divided into seuen seuerall principall partes or Pro-Stuen Princi-pal parts or duulions, after ward made 12 uinces, if we may fo tearme them, to wit, Terra di Lauoro, Principato, Bafilicata, Calabria, Terra di Otranto, Apulia & Abruzzo. Which Provinces have (fince then) according to order of later division, bene parted into twelue Regions, as I finde them in the Registers of Naples, in this Naples.

accounted the moft fertile & picalant in all

f Terra di Lauoro, which hath in lands Citties, and Castelles, to the number of 198.

Contado di Montisso, hath 108. Abruzzo the neerest, hath 155. Abruzzothe furtheft, hath 288. Capitanata, hath 96. Terra di Bari, hath 50. Basilicata , hath 103. Terra d'Otranto hath 172. Principato the neerest, hath 129. Principatothe furthest hath 164. Calabria the neerest, hath 162. Calabria the furthest, hath 147.

All which beeing fully fummed toge-

ther, in Citties, Lands, and Caffles, as | The g neral hath formerly beene tayde, and all inhabited with plenty of people, and furnish ed with all thinges commodious for the life of man, do amount to one thouland feuen hundred, feuenty foure.

I here are certaine Islands also in the Islands in the neighbour, or are opposite : as on the Terrhene fea, directly facing Terracina & Gaeta, are the Isles of Ponza, and of Pal marola. And ouer-against & Mola, is the Ile Nolain Cam of Defente. At the encountering of Poz. h Putcolis 8. zuolo, is that of Ischia; neere to which is miles from Procida, or Prochyta, made famous by those yong Gallants that deniled & performed the Sicilian Euening befide Nifari and i Capraa, fo highly beloued of the i Beyond Sur-Emperor Tiberius, opposite to Capo della Minerua.

The three k Sirenussa do front Passita. no; one of them being called Gale, ano- befo.e Lucather Mona, and the third S. Pietro. There nia. is likewise the Isle of Lipara, which cir- | Containing kleth aboue ten miles, wherein are fome touen ifles be Citties. On the Adriaticke maine, right and Sicily. against Varano, are those of Rasata & Cargano; and the foure other called " Diome- m Ifles oppode, now adayes called Tremite, but they fire to Gargaare very little; and the two greater thereof are called, the one S. Maria, the other S. Doimo, and the two leffer are, the one Gatizzo, and the other Caprara. Thefe are Islands of some note and name, omitting other places, which bee comprehended within the confines of the kingdome of

With them might bee ranked that of "Sicily, an Italian Mand, great & wealthy: but that it is an Isle of it felf, & at this day deuided from the kingdome. Notwithstanding, it did somtime partake in name with the kingdome of Naples. For fome Kings, as Fredericke the eleventh, Manfred his fonne, Charles the first of Anion. and Alphonfus the first of Arragon, posses fing both the one and other, wrote their titles both on this fide, and beyond Pharos. Whereuppon, when we find it writ- |cily,cald alfo ten simply the kingdome of Sicily; it is Charybdis. meant of this Isle, & not of Sicily on this palle. fide Pharos in Italy.

In this Kingdome are twenty Archby shopprickes, to wit, of Naples: which hath fiue Byshoppes vnder it: Of Capua, which hath ten. Of Salernum, which hath and B) shops ten.

g The Citie Naples

k Three Iffes

n A famous ifle in the Yes thene lea, 618 miles abour, fometime per aining to the

o A Gulfe of the fea by Sidangerous to

How manie prickes are in 121, Byfliops

Archbythops.

Of the Prin-

Of the feur-

rall dukedom

being 23.in

Of the Mar

number.

cipalities in

Iten. Of Amalifoure. Of Sorrenzo three. I fold many Titles and Lordshippes in the Of Conzafix. Of Cilenzafix. Of Taranto two. Of Brundusium one, and hath conjoyned with it the Arch-byshoppricke of Oria. Of Otranto fix. Of Bari twelue. Of Tranifix. Of Hiponte one, and hath vnited with it the Archbyshoppricke of Monte de S. Angelo. Of Beneuentum twenty three. of Ciuita di Chieti three. Of Sanciano four. Of Rhegium cleuen. Of Cofenza one. Of Roffino, which hath no Byshops See vnder it. Of Saint Seuerina ten. And there is the Archbishoppricke of Matera be-

There are also an hundred twenty four Byshops, which are under the aboue named Archbyshoppricks; only the byshop of Bisignano excepted, who is not subject to any one.

It is also to bee noted, that the Title of Pri ce is greater in this kingdome, then that of Duke. And the Principalities ther the kingdome are ten in number, to wit, of Afcoli, of Bi-Genano, of Euoli, of Melfi, of Melfetta, of Monchercole, of Squillati, of Siegliano, of

Sulmona, and of venofa.

There are likewife three and twentie Dukedomes. As of Andri, of Amalfi, of Artano, of Alu, of Boiano, of Castronillari, of Noseri, of Popala of Rocca di Mondragone, of S. Pietro in Galatina, of Seminara, of Seffa, of Somma, of Sora, of Tagliacozzo, of Termoli, of Terra nous, and of Traieto, together with those of Grauma di Martina, of Montalto, of Montelione, and of Nar-

The Marquelates are 29. of Anna, of Arienza, of Bellate of Bucchianico of Camquefats, to the number of 29 pania, of Capo Vrfo, of Castel Vetere, of Chierchiato, of Cinita'S. Angelo, of Corigliano, of Laina, of Lauro, of Sicito, of Miluraca of Oria, of Oriolo, of Padula Beruentana. of Pulignano, of Quarata, of Santo Lucito, of Terza, of Torre di Francolise, of Torre Maggiore, of Trinico, of Turfe, of Valle Siciliana, of Vasto, and of Vico.

There are in like manner, 54. Earles of State, 15. Lords, and 443. entituled Barons. And it is verily supposed, that in any kingdome of the world, there are not fo many great Princes and Lordes, as in this, because they are (by nature) of high and lofty courage. And nowe I call to minde, in this matter, that I have read in fome Registers, bearing date of the yeare

1521. that the Emperor Charles the fifte,

kingdom, & that many Gentlemen fold their goodes at ten in the hundred, and bought these Lordships at three in the hundred.

Thiskingdome fo highly ennobled, full of worthy Princes, most rich and ferfull of worthy Princes, most rich and fer-tile, as more cannot bee wished; was for ples many long time gouerned by divers kings. For yeares beside the Normans, who helde it manie yeares, and (as hath beene fayde) wonne it the title of a Realme ; it fell at length to Fredericke the fecond, Emperour, who had it of Henry the fixte his Father : after whom succeeded Corrado Emperour, son The succession to Fredericke; and after him it came (by of the King reason) to Corradino, Nephew to Corrater the Notdo. But Maufredo the baftard fon to Fre- mans, dericke, feigning that Corrodina was dead vsurped the State, and made himself king. But Pope Frbane the fourth (beeing encmy to Maufredo) excommunicated him, and deprined him of the kingdome: inuefling therein in Anne 1266. Charles the 1. of Aniou. Brother to Lewes the eight, K. of France, who (first of all) flewe Maufredo, and afterwardes caufing Corradino to

be beheaded, tooke it in full possession. Charles the second, Sonne to Charles Prince of Salerne had it next: and then fucceeded him, Robert the excellent Philosopher; who was a very louing friend to Petrach. After him, the succession fel to Joane, the Neece of Robert by Charls; and next succeeded Charles the third, K.

ofb Durazzo.

After his death there happened con-tention for the kingdome, betweene La-that part of diflates fonne to Charles the third, and Le- Macedonly wes of Aniou: but Ladiflaus remaining ful draucke Su Patron, held it till the yeare one thousand foure hundred and foureteene: and then fucceeded Joane the second, his fifter; in whose place (making himselfe King by force of armes) rose Alphonso of Arragon the sonne to Ferdinando, who left it vnto Ferdinando his bastard son. Next to him fucceeded Alphon fo the fecond, who trobled himfelfe not long in the Kingdome, by the comming of Charles the eight, K. of France into Italy, for recoverie of the kingdome, and then renounced it to Ferdinando the second, his son; from whom it came to Frederigo, Vnckle to the fayde

Afterward it fell to Charles the fifte,

A conflitution

Chap.3.

Pope Lee the tenth. For there was such a constitution betweene the Popes, Emperors, and Kings of Naples, that who foeuer was Emperor, he could not bee King of Naples: and therefore he gaue it ouer to Philip the first, King of Spaine, vvhose fonne Philip the second, now holdeth it. keeping there a Vice-roy, with most ample authority, and representeth there the Kings owne person. Whereby he is very much honoured and reverenced of all his subordinate Gouernors, according as he caufeth himfelfe to be efteemed, both by his valour and authority.

The High Constable. The Officers or Magistrates of the

speaketh for all as chiefest Aduocate, is

the Constable, or rather high Marshall.

He is the first man of the kingdome, and

Captaine generall for all ordinances of

warre. He (as Lieutenant to the king)or-

daineth and provideth all fuch things, as

ping men, prouiding tents and lodgings,

appointing the Enfignes Royall, and (in

breefe) hee hath the care for all matters

that concerne Armes. In which place .

he hath authority to chastise, and to put

to death such persons as commit Thesto,

Rapine, Homicides, and other milde-

meanors in the Campe. And this Office

continueth fo long as warres lasteth. When the King createth him in this dig-

nity, delinering a Truncheon to him, he vieth the ords: Take this holy Weapon,

wherewith thou shalt expell the adversaries

The Great Insticer.

The second Office, is that of Great

Inflicer, or Lord chiefe Inflice, who hath

iurifdiction as well in ciuil causes, as those

that be criminall; and under his authori-

ty are all the Princes, Dukes, Marqueffes,

Lords, and Barons of the Kingdome; for

to him belongeth care of offences against

the Maiesty Royall. His Vicar or Lieu-

tenant, is called Regent of the Vicaria:

who hath his ludges both civill and cri-

Seuen feueral Kingdome, are seauen in theyr seuerall degrees; but he whom they terme Sindiraining to the, co, that representeth the whole City, and

The Office of he high Conthible or Mars. hauing charge of the Sentinelles, encamthe high Con-flable or Mar-

The maner of

the Confta-

bles creation.

The L. chiefe

luftice, the fe-

cond Officer

of the King-dome, and his

authority.

of my people.

minall, and his Tribunallis in the Court Emperor, who had the investiture from of the Vicaria, having allowed him for his yearely provision, fixe hundred Ducates.

The High Admirall.

The thirde Office, is that of Great or The Lillich High Admirall, who hath the charge of Sea causes, and such things as appertaine third Officer, & his authoto Nauall Art and profession. Hee loo- rity. keth to the making, repairing, building, and appointing of all Shippes for Royall feruice, and keeping of all fuch veffels as come into the kingdome, from vvhat parts focuer. VVhen occasion fo requireth, and that it is imposed on him by the King, he setteth forth the Nauall Army in order. He appointeth both reall & corporeall punishments for delinquents, and hath civill and criminall jurisdiction ouer the Officers and others, that attend on Sea affayres.

The Great Chamberlaine.

The fourth Office, is, that of Great The fourth Chamberlaine, or the Chamberlaine of officer, Lord State, choose yee whether : whose Deputie or Lieutenant hath his judgement his authoritie Seate, in the Chamber called Sommaria. His charge is to have care of the Kinges person, to prepare and adorne his bedde; as also his Garments, and to take order for all his vnder Chamberlaines, Guardians, and Treasurers . Hee keepeth all the customes of the kingdome, and taketh cognition of the matters belonging vnto the Royall Exchequer, the tonths, tolles, fines, reuennewes, and other things appertaining to the Kings person.

The Protonotary,

The fift Office is the Lieutenant, or rather Protonotarie. Hee standeth obli- The Protono ged to reade before the King, and to conferue the writings and registers. He hath his office authority to create Notaries, Judges, and to Legittimate Bastards. But the Catholike King hath (fince then) transferred the Office of writings, and of the Registers, to the Kings Chancery.

The Great Steward. The fixte Office, is that of Great

Of Earles. Lords, and Ba rons in their Generall num

bers.

The Empero

Chap.4.

ingathered.

Seneschall or Steward, tearmed the Maiordomo or Master of the houshold. This man hath the government of the household Royal, and to prouide all things neceffary for life, as also garments for the Seruants in the Kings Court; having likewife absolute power, to correct & punish all the familiars of the Kings house.

Great Chancellor.

Lord Chiefe Chancellour the last office, & his charge

Their ordere fitting with the King.

The feuenth and last Office (of most importance in the kingdome) is that of Great Chancellor who writeth the kings Letters of secrecie, and sealeth al the priuiledges (graunted by the King) to any person. He hath also command ouer the walkers of Stations, the Beadles, the Studies, and fuch like things. It is also to be remembred, that the high Constable, the Admirall, and the Protonotary, do fit on the Kings right hand. And the Lord chief Iustice, the Great Chamberlain, and the Great Chancellor, on the left hand. But the Great Steward, he fitteth on a stoole at the Kings feete.

CHAP. IIII.

Of a Law observed amongst the Rhodians, which enjoyned and commanded Fathers ffetting aside all other businesse and affayres) to marry their daughters with all possible speed.

Greece the Mother of ancient Lawes.

The Rhodians citablifh manic good Lawes.

Here are very fewe people. (in mine opinion) that are ignorant of the Komanic Lawes, which came first forth of Greece, and are con-

tinued to this day; furpassing al other nations whatfoener, in the actions of Iustice and Policy, and among them have many Common-weales flourished, not onely in Military and warlike affaires, but have done, if they had remaind at liberty. alfo in good manners and policies . Among the rest, that of the Rhodians is to be effeemed; which not onely established great store of Lawes, to render enerie man what belonged to him, & preserve the weaker fort from oppression; but alfo concerning the marriage of their daughters, because no inconvenience should

enfue to them, as to too many elfewhere happened. The Law then made for marriage of their daughters, was breefely fet downe in these words.

ME command, that a Father doe not torment himselfe one onely day, for the Words of the Rhoding the marriage of ten sonnes, if hee should have written Line Comany : but rather to labour and trauayle for the martitenne yeares, for the marriage of one onely age of Maides daughter, being vertuous. That hee stand in water up to the mouth; That he sweat great drops of blood, and labor in the ground, drawing like a Horse; That he do rather difinherit all his Male-children leaue all his welch and riches to otter abandoning, yea, and his owne proper life: onely to provide (afetie for his daughters chastity.

- This Law had bene worthy of obseruation in the countries heereabout, where if it had lived in the like force and vertues Averie gren fo many famous Families had neuer bin ertor and isdishonoured, by the shamelesse immode- intriein Faflies of ouer-many maidens, as hauere-their daugh mained to very wofull example. For it ters. hath bin noted, that Fathers (oftentimes thorow greedy couctouineffe) would not allow Dowries to their daughters, answerable to their meanes and qualitie: in regard whereof, they have caused them to be forfaken, and not fought vnto by any person. Sometimes also they have given them greater estates then either was conuenient, or flood with their owne power, to the ruine and ouerthrow both of the one and other. Wee haue observed likewife, some ill aduised fathers, who have neglected their daughters marriages, being ouer-swayed with affection to theyr fonnes, and bearing no respect at all to loue their their daughters; eyther fuffering them to fonnes more entertoo farre into yeares, or elfe to bee thentheir thut vp in Religious houses (by not affording them money meete for Marriage) where all their time they have lived miferably, and (many times) as vnchaftly, and with much leffe honour then they could

The common Prouerb is, that ther are A greatfault three things, which if men do them not, committedby they will be done of themselues: And the ouer-many third of them is, that if men'do not marry their daughters, then they wil marry thefelues, and oftentimes, to fuch as are of badlife, or poore, or not agreeing with their owne quality, to the great dishonor

this doth happen in any Commonwelth, alliances loofe themselves, and there is nothing but reproch on the one fide and other; whereby(too often)great quarrels do arife fuites in law, and other desperate inconueniences.

To anoydall which dangers, Fathers ought to be advertised, that it is not good to keep their daughters too long vnmarried : For as one faieth very well: It is a merchandise, which beeing kept, there is nothing gotten by it. Prouision therefore (in this case) should be made, when theyr daughters begin to enter into their puherty, which is, at 13, yeares of age, or (at the vttermost)at 16.or 18, and to make no longer delaying if possibly it may be donfor then they are tipe, and ready to yeeld fruite. If they be kept any longer time for the most part they lose their beautie, and fairest graces. They affoord faccording to common naturall inftinct, as well in Themanie harmes that doen'ue, by the deferring temarrying beafts, as in men, throwing all reason and respect behinde them) their affection to fome fuch, whom their Parents doe not thinke meete and convenient, and/in the

end) worke some taint or blemish vnto

their owne modesty. Or if they doe not;

by reason of their frequent familiaritie

with men, they shall be fure talked of ve-

rie strangely, which now adales is grown

fo common and reproachfull, that even

the verie chastest that line, have worke

enough to doe, to exempt and cleare

themselues from badde fame and ill re-

Moreouer we daily behold that when Parents doe prouide for their daughters, fuch as are fomewhat entred into yeares, they will refuse the men that are thought meete for them, and made offer of to them in good discretion. Alledging that they have already given their liking vnto another, and (as many times it comes to paffe) to fuch a one as is ytter enemie to their house; compelling their parents either to forfake them, without any choise at all, or elfe (with much forrow) to confent thereto, onely to anoide the woorst, whereby both Fathers and mothers remainediscontented so long as they line . Thefe warnings do speake themselves, as well vnto great persons, such as are not onely Emperors, Kings, Princes, and o-

ther illustrious bloodes, but also to Ple-

of themselves and their parents. When | beians, and men of vivall ranke, who do stand no more exempt from ill husbanding their children, then the other do, but are even as ready to faile therein, yea, and many times foonest. Which I will approduc by some Histories, derined from Bandelle the Italian, and the Annalles of

rance.
Adelasia, daughter to one of the greatell and most vertuous Empergrs named of Adelifia. Otho, third of that name, that reigned af- daughter to Otho, third of that name, marrelline u.a. the Emperor ter Gharlemaigne, vntill his time, having Otho the s. listened vnto many, Kings and Princes, who fought his Daughter Adolasia in Matriage, as well for her extraordinarie beautie, as her other excellent Graces, and Royall extraction 1 yet hee aspiring (as it should feeme) at some greater and more nobler march, or a party of more worth (in his opinion) for his-daughter. by means of these delayes broght incomparable misfortune to his Imperial house which elfe had flourished in no meane happinesse, Adelasia grew enamored of a young youth, A Sonne to the house of Alerane, one young youth my worth of them being secretly of the young matried, furnished with some small flore Duke of Sax of money, befide a few Jewels and precia ony. ous flones, berooke themselves to trauaile, attired and disguised like Pilgrims. Adelafia in the habite of a youth with full deliberation, to make their abyding in fome ftrange countrey, far enough from Allemaigne.

Thus wandering as fugitives ito fatiffie their owne voluptuous defires; at the length, they were robbed on the Highway, and fo by that meanes were constrained (after long and importunate begging, trauerling manie Countreyes) to retire into a great Forrest, Scituated betweene Ast and " Sauona, in Italy, where (thorough great necessity) they Sabatia in Li began to exercise the labour of Colliars, guria, a hilly enduring many stormes and hard afflicition ching from ons, for the space of eighteen years toge Apeninus to ther. In the end, it pleased God to be satisfied with their humility & repentance, and from the and to make them better knowne, by the River Macra, meanes of one of their fons, named William, who following the nature of his extraction, betooke himfelfe to make one in the Imperial Armies in Italy, & greatly resembling in fauour the Emperour ver be con-Otho, whereby he was imagined to be if- cealed from fued of Adelasia: which being found to fall parance.

The H. Story

*Called alfo to Vatus, and-

Naturall Nobility can nemaniteft ap.

Example of

great Charle

out true, and the poore retreate of the Colliars (his parents) made knowne, the

Emperor pardoned them; & calling them home into Allemaigne, gaue them great and liberall meanes; but much blamed himselfe, that he hadde not marryed his daughter in such time as was fittest for her. The like happened to that far more puissant and great Emperour his predeceffor) Charlemaigne, whose eldest daughter was found paillardising with one named Eginhard, his Secretary, or (as some

(ay) Chauncellour vnto the saide Charle-

paved with coine of the same stampe, as

well as these fore-named Emperors; wit-

Some Kings of France haue also bene

The history of Iudith, daughthe Bald, king of France.

of Flanders,

who had fe-

neffe Indith, daughter to Charls the Bald fecond of that name. Her Father refused to give her in marriage to diverse young Allemaigne Princes, of great extraction, as Dukes, Marquelles, and others : affe-(ting (much rather) to give her in wedlocke to a King of England, who had for-merly beene an Archby shop, a man aged fickly, and impotent, with whome the remained eight months only, and without any hope of vilue. Repailing the fea, to returne home into France, the fent vnto Baldwine, Gouernor of the colliars countrey, then termed Pais Charbomieres, but Baldwin, Earl now adayes called the countrey of Flanders, a poore Prouince, wherto no other cretly promi-Lieutenants or Gouernours were giuen fed marriage to Iudith, be by the King, but fuch as were of smal and fore her going to England. flender renowne. This Baldwine had clandestinely promised marriage to Lady Iudith, before thee was fent into England,

he being a goodly person, faire and of ab-

folute forme, as many of that country of-

tentimes are, yet of no great discent, a

Gentleman in the midft of many necessi-

ties, who furprized her on the feas (the be-

ing willing enough to be fo taken) & car-

ried her home with him into his gouern-

ment. The King was fo displeased heere-

with,& that justly, that he appointed di-

uers forces to goe punish the rauisher of

his daughter,being his owne difloyal fub-

iect. But he was round engirt with fo ma-

ny Wars, as well against his Nephewes,

as his Brothers, and the Danes, that

he was fod ainely enforced to defer his in-

tention for that time, dying not long af-

ter, bearing no meane greefe for this rape

(with him) to his graue. By means wherof

Charles the Bald, molleft ed with many warres, dyed.

Baldwine & she lived a long while as priuate persons, not having any great store of meanes for their maintenance.

Lewes the stammerer, successor & brother to Charls the Bald, as much offended as the father of Indith, perfifted in refolution to punish these two louers. Neuertheleffe, by the humble entreaties made vnto him by diuers worthy Church-men, ot holy life & vnstaind fame, beside divers other great personages of his kingdome, (who deliuered lively representation to him of the yong yeares wherin they then were, subject to the propocations of nature, who hath not alwayes reason for her guide, and laying the blame on hir deceafed father, that would not admit her to marry, when the was fo fought and fued vnto:)he pardoned them, giving vnto his Neece Indith and her heires, the country and Forrest of the Colliers, whereof Bald- At white wine had formerly bin Gouernor; yet afterward depriued, & thus restored. And was brought albeit it was a matter of small moment in these times; yet he reserved the homage France. thereof to the crowne of France, which homage the kings of France fuccessiuely enioyed, vntil the taking of king Frances, first of that name, who quitted the soueraignty therof to Charles the fift, and Emperor. At this day it is a goodly & wealthy country, populous; having great store of The great faire Cities and Towns, and greatly merchandized; in regard of the fea, and divers faire ritters which adorne the Prouince . tion of His But let vs nowe fee, if Gentlemen haue derstoode free from this disaster, more then Emperors and Kings haue done; it shall not be amisse therefore to alledge some, as well of Italy, as of France.

In Verona, a famous City of Italy, lived ble historic a yong Gentlewoman, named Iulietta, of frirelulen the noble house of the Montesches, or Montant Montacutes. Her father being not willing Romeoth that the should marry, when both the de- Captien cency of time, and aptneffe of her yeares made tender of themselves: therefore (in her fairest flower) shee espoused her selfe. vnknown to her parents, to a gentlemans fon of another house and family, cald, the Capelets, whose name was Romeo, and the Capelets were mortall enemies vnto the Montesches or Montacutes. This mariage forted vnto the lamentable death of both the louers, as you shall briefly hear in this manner. They being fecretly maried, and

uengerpo Baldwing

holy Friar & Inlietta, what was to be don in tuch an VIent neceliit

Chap.4.

Verona, 8 grane of Inli-

of a feruant

Of a Lavy among the Rhodians.

by the hand of a Cordelier or Franciscan Friar, a man most expert in the secrets of nature, who tooke great compassion on their earnest reciprocal affection & dayly torments between them indured : it hapned on a certain day, that an vncle to Iulietta, in regard of the innetred harred between both the families, drew yppon Romeo, who (defending his owne body) flew the faid Vnckle, whereupon he was banished, or inforced (at the least) to be absent from Verona. The wofull Gentlewoman having made her moane vnto the honest minded Friar, vnder the (haddow of confession, concerning the irksom absence of her best esteemed friend; he gave her aduice to receiue alittle potion when shee went to bed, which should cause her to fleep for more then to houres, fo that the shold be verily supposed to be dead. She boldly aduentured on his counsel, & her parents imagining her to be dead indeed caused her to be buried in the Tombe or vault belonging to the house of her predecessors. From thence the Friar purpofed to fetch her, at a certaine houre of the night, & to conduct her (in the habit of a Nouice) to banished Romeo, who lived in the land of another jurisdiction, yet no far distance from the city. All this was possible & easy to be performed, for it was and is a common custome there, not to burie deceased bodies in graues, as it is obserued among vs, but in Grottes or vaulted caues. While these things were framing themselues according to premeditated purpofe; it fortuned that a feruant belonging to Romeo came to Verona, to bring Letters of recommendation to Julietta. & being returned back to his mafter reported the certaine ridings of her death, and that himfelfe was prefent at her interring. Romeo, confounded with greefe & extremity of paffions, found the meanes (in a disguised habit) before the shutting vp of Verona gates, to enter the city. In the dead time of night also hee compassed his intent, entering the Church with a lighted Torch in his hand, having opened the doores by the help of his feruant, and also the tombe wherein the lay inclosed. Hauing commanded the absence of his seruant, he entred into the vault, & after kiffes infinitly besto wed by him on Iulietta,

whom he verily conceited to be dead, he

dranke a most deadly poyson, which hee

had formerly bought of a very needle Apothecary, and which immediately fel to operation, to flept hee (for euer) by the body of Iulietta. After her drinke hadde wrought his full power, the awaked and by meanes of the burning Torch perceyned her Romeo to bee quite dead; whereat the death of luhetta, after enraged with greef, and fnatching a pon- the found Ro yard that hung at his girdle, the prefently meo dead. there slewe her selse. The honest Fryar came, and (as he thought) at fuch a conuenient houre, when Iulietta shold awake from her artificiall fleepe, that truely represented the shape of death; but when he beheld that tragicke wofull spectacle. ler his forrow be cenfured bythem of best indgement. On the morrow after, the death of these two Louers was discougred, and all matters rehearfed by Fryar Laurence, for fo was the Cordeliernam'd. Friar Laurece All which mournfull difafter happened, because Juliettaes father would not suffer of the tragedy her to marry when reason required. Now I will declare another French Historie,

which happened within the compasse of

mine owne memory.

Damoiselle Geneuiefue, Daughter vnto The history of Monfieur Megrelin, a Gentleman in ordi- tlewoman of nary in the Court of King Frances the 2. Paris. espoused her selfe by word onely, & without knowledg of any in hir fathers house, to one that was Schoolemaster voto her brethren, named Medard, a Piccard by nation, borne in Laon, a yong man of paffable handfomnes, and of indifferent knowledge for his time, being about 23, yeares old. She found her felfe to be conceined with child, and fearing the displeasure of her mother more then the frowns of her The Gentlefather, because the was a very somere wo- womans deman, forfooke her Fathers house, and the her Fathers goodly city of Paris, accompanied with House. none but her troth-plighted husband the schoolemaster. Tranailing thorow the countrey, they made their flay in a great Borrough town of Champaign, where likewife he becam schoolmaster, taking great paines to supply their necessities. Within fom few months after their residing ther, Medard dyed; and the fine dayes after the The death of death of her husband, one Euening after Medard the supper, in a publike place, declared to all fuch as gaue fauour to heareher, the whol Historie of their fore-passed Loue, her marriage by promife, her extraction want of gouernement, and the injurie done

The desperate death of Da neniefue.

ged her felfe that night, on a beame end of a poore Cottage, which they had taken vpon hire, of which mithap, the people of the Towne foon advertised her parents. For mine owne part, in the same manner as I haue fet it downe, it was reported to me by the forenamed Monsieur Megrelin, who made no small account of The death of her Father. greefe; often faying voto many, that this misfortune thus feel vnto him by refusing his daughters marriage with a yong Adnocate, one of sufficient wealth, and that

had requested her many times to bee his

wife, which still hee denied, intending to

In the Citty of Rome, no long vyhile

bestowher on a Gentleman.

ry heartily) pardon both of God and the.

bed with her young infant, which was a-

hour fix weekes old . Thee went and han-

The history of crecio.two Roman louere

Another mar by his Father

Affection is

fince, there was a young maiden (named Lucrecia, daughter to a rich Marchant)fecretly espousd to a yong man, called Paulo, sonne also to another Merchant, the two fathers beeing vowed enemies, and both alike enuious of each others Fortune. The father of Paulo perceiuing how falt aged yeares came stealing on him determined a marriage for his fon, acquainting him therewith, that he hadde made choife of one meete for him, commaunding him also to fashion himself to good liking thereof, because hee would haue it accomplished within very few dayes. The fonne deferred it off folong as well hee could vet to declare fome obedience to his father, hee craued respite to consider thereof: but in the mean while, it was generally noised thorow the City of Rome. that Paulo must be married vnto another. These newes comming vnto the eares of light credulity Lucrecia, the diffembled her inward conceyued displeasure, verily imagining the matter to bee already done. Paulo comming, as oftentimes he did when fit time fauoured him, to visit his Lucrecia in the night time, fo iocond and merry as at no

time more; after accustomed kindnesses

passed betweene them, Panlo fell into a

very found fleep. Increcia beholding him

in that fearlesse citate, with a great Knife

the gaue him to many stabbes and deepe

wounds, both in the brest and belly, that

he fell downe starke dead, and afterward

done by her to her fernants, defiring (ve- | committed the like violence on her felfe. This act, fo full of forrow and fadde mif-So, feigning as if the intended to goe to chance, came to the care of Pope Paulus the fourth, who would not allow them to have Christian burial. But a learned diuine, a Iacobine by Religion, made fo excellent an Oration to the Pope, agaynst the vikinde parents of the deceased Louers; that Obsequies were granted, & buriall given them. And an aged woman. a servant to Lucrecia, who had beene the meanes of their prinate marriage, was (by authority of luftice) burned aline, because my friendship, and dyed with verie great | she had not aduertifed the parents there-

If these Emperors, Kings, Gentlemen How all her and those of meaner condition, had ob-ferued the Law of the Rhodians, which I haue alledged in the beginning of this the alledged chapter; they never had falne into those hillories. dreadfull mischeeses, which they owne wilfull folly brought voon them. They may also serue as a good warning to Fathers at this inftant, and fuch as fhall bee heereafter, how to anoyde so enorme an error. I will give advice likewife to fuch Maidens, as having past the age of five to maidens and twenty yeares, if either anarice, orany other bad humor in their parents doe make them negligent of their marriages, when men of meet match and quality are offered to them, to be bold of their owne liking and choise in marriage; provided, that they first make it knowne vnto theyr parents. And then if they will not yeeld consent, they may proceed on further:al-wayes prouided, that they are equall in quality, and no way infamous. And least their Pathers should disinherit them, the Emperor ordained thus in the authenti-The like ordinance is to bee found in the dissibility of the control of the contr cal rule; Sed fi post. C. de inofficiofa testa . Marriages, made by king Henry the fecond. And there may bee noted another whenther inconvenience which inconvenience, which vnaduifed fathers do incurre themselues, that in due time, and vpportiust reason, will not yeelde to theyr daughters marriages.

CHAP

CHAP.V.

That Tyrants do line continually in feares: and that their ends are most miserable.

Tyrants at all emes and in all places are

Tyranny is

The Hiftory

his flatterer

feares.

Chap.5.

HE life of a Tyrant is full of hatred 3 euery man dete-freth him; all are offended at him, and he is fubied to infinite perils. What was

the life of Aristippus, to whom the very walles were dreadfull? VVhat that of Alexander Phareus, who lived in an hourely fuspition of his ownewife? What that of Dyonisius the Syracusane, who never durst trust his Barber, for feare least in trimming his beard, hee should cutte his throat. Hee had the carnall knowledge but of two women onely, Aristomada and Dorida, and yet he would never let them come neere him, untill they had put off all their garments. The Chamber wherein he vied to fleepe, was round engirt with a wide deepe ditch, and there was no entrance to it, but onely by a draw-bridge.

All things whatfoeuer, are continually suspected so much by Tyrants, that it was not spoken without good aduice; That Tyranny is the Nursse of feare. For it the Nurfle of commonly cometh to to passe, that such Citero in Tufas line till men feare them, doe also feare them by whom they are feared. This kinde of life, so full of care and dread, Dyonifius the Tyrant discouered to his Oratour Damoeles, of whom the History followeth in this manner.

Damocles defending in an Oration, which hee delivered in the presence of king Dyonifius; that neuer was any man more happy then he, for his inumerable wealth & treasures, beside the abundance of all things in his kingdome. O Damocles (instantly faid the Tyrant) feeing my life is of Dyonifius he Tyrant, & fo well liked by thee, I defire that thou woldst prefently but taste and experiment my fortune. Whereto Damocles confenting the Syracufane king caused him to sitte vpon a stately & sumptuous bed, richly embroydered with gold: and before him flood Tables and Stooles in magnificent manner, all conered with veffels of Gold and Silver. He was ferued by many young children, endued with fingular beauty, &

the feruice was extraordinarily magnificient, with all kindes of delicious and exquifite viands. The golden Hall, which gliftered round about him, was perfumed with vnguents of excellent odors, befide Flowers, Chaplets, and curious Notegayes. To be short, in this so triumphant and royall furnithment, Damocles helde fuch a proud, enflated, and (wolne vp countenance, euen as if in Maiesty Roycountenance, etten as it in Maietty Roy-all: King Dyonisius called to him, and bad all his pompe him lift up his head, to behold what was and price wa instantly ouer it. There he shewed him a dismared with fayre bright Sword, which he had caused to be fastened to the plancher, directly ouer the head of Damocles. He seeing the naked Sword, which hung but by one haire of a horses maine, ready to fall on

the least occasion; considering thereon

with deliberation, and perceiuing that

death was his prefent companion; he be-

gan to dispraise the royalty and riches of

the King, desiring to bee deliuered from that kinde of felicity. Heereupon Dyonisius Said vnto him, Doest thou not see, O Damocles, how great-ly thou art deceived in thine owne opinion? Such is our life, which (not long fince) thou heldst to be so happy: but now thou plainly perceincft, that eminent death is alwayes attending. By which example we may eafily judge, that he can never be happy, that is daily afflicted with feare. To this purpole

Not the fine fare of Sicily, Will fauour sweet and daintily, Nor the rare found of the Lyre, Nor the fweet Birdes in their quire : All thefe affoord no pleasure can, To that wofull wretched man, That beholds aboue his head. A naked Sword to Strike him dead.

Horace writ thefe verfes.

And as Job faith, The found of feare and dreadful affrights is alwaies in his eares: and although peace be certaine, yet is hee daily doubtfull of close ambushes. Tyrants loue not any body, and therefore (vpon iust occasion) learned men tearmed them to be cruell beafts, and plagues to mankinde. In the human figure of who is fo much fauage cruelty, that Salomon faide directly; A wicked Prince is a roaring Lyon, and an hunger-starued Bearc over poore people. And

Prouer. 17.12

Verfes tranflated out of Horace,

both her hufband and her

Miserable & violent dethi of Tyrants.

permit that Tyrants shall reigne, for the chastisement of wicked men, saving; I wil take vengeance on mine enemies by mine eneman to reigne in regard of the peoples sinnes. And in Hofea God fpeaketh thus: I will give thee a king in my fury. And in Elay; Albur is the rod and staffe of my fury, I will fend thee to a deceitfull people. Neuertheleffe they are not acceptable to God, who throwes them at length into the fire, as a father doth the rod, when he hath therewith beaten his childe. And it hath alwaies fo falne out, that all thefe Tyrants, or the most part of the, have ended their lines miserably, & oftentimes by violent death.caufed by their owne friends: and approoued by confent of all the people. But because the examples of tragicall endes in fuch Tyrants, are handled in a number of other Treatifes & experience hath made it daily manifest vnto vs; I may the fooner conclude this Chapter.

CHAP.VI.

A most horrible cruelty wsed by the Numantines against the Romanes; and in the end wonthemselues.

Scipio having continued fiedge before the Citty of Numantia in Spaine, the space of a yeare and seuen Moneths, and neuer ceasing: munition and victuals began to fayle among the befiedged, so that very many died with famine. Wherupon they made a vow to the Gods, that the first morfell they would cate enery day. should be the sless of some Romane; and that they would drinke neyther wine nor water, till they had fwallowed the blood of fuch as they flew.

The Numantines having all sworne to this vow, they issued foorth of the Citty, and like men, more then desperate, chafed the Romanes, even as if they had beene brute beafts : and fuch as they flew or furprized immediately they killed and brovled inhumanely, or being fliced in peeces, they folde the by weight in the Shambles or Butchery. So that a Romane taken by

And yet God hath and sometimes doth them, or slaine, was of farre greater price and estimation, then to line and pay his ransome. Finally, the Numantines perceiuing, that they had no more meanes of mies. God (faith 10b) maketh the hipocriticall supportation, beeing oppressed with famine, and enclosed on every side : they confulted among themselves to kill all their aged people; yea, all the women & children in the Citty; which (without any feare or respect at all) they put in exe-

When they had done thus, all the wealth and mooueables of the Citty, the lewels & Treasures of the Temples, were broght together in spacious places, & there confumed with fire, yea, and all parts & quarters of the Citty without leaning a house standing, suffered the very same consummation; and enery man tooke a fudden & fpeedy dispatching poyson, whereby they might the foonest dye. Thus the Temples, houses, goods, and persons of the Numantines, which had continued in profperity foure hundred, fixty & fixe yeares, medallin had finall conclusion all in one day. A one day. fight most horrible it was to behold, that the Numantines did those things living, fo full of gastly terror, and not be remooued from them at their houre of death. For they left not to Scipio, any goods as booty or pillage, nor fo much as a man liuing, for a Trophee or Triumph.

Scipio feeing Numantia flaming, and afterward entring thereinto, beheld all the buildings demolished, and turned one vppon another, all the Inhabitants burned; he gricued very greatly, and being vnable to containe himselfe from teares, cryed out thus: O most happy Numantia, to whom The words of the Gods appointed, that thou shouldst rather Scipio on remaine destroyed then conquered! Numa ruined Numannia Pompillius king of the Romans caused this Citty of Numantia to be builded, & Scipio the Romane, being aged then but two and twenty yeares faw the ruine of it.

CHAP. VII.

That a valiant Generallor Captaine, ought first to embrace wisedome & providence, before he do make experiment of his fortune : and also that after victory be shold be milde and pittifull.

'O be a Captain or Generall,is an Of-To be a Captain or Generally of attended his

Duties of a Captaine or Generall. Chap.7.

> by many dangers. Fot notwithflanding | of Piedmont, beheld the illustrious & maghe shall performe but what hee may and ought, yet if misfortune be present in giuing the battaile, and returne him off with out victory; hee shall never satisfie the vulgar, but the people will hold him in bad reputation, although it value his life in the adventure. Let every man bee of what quality and wisedome hee may, or would wish to be, & vie the best carriage he can possibly denise; yet we shall never heare a conquered Captaine called wife, or him temerarious, that gets the victory. It is a good thing that Captaines should be wife, but yet much better to be fortu-

Scipio Affricanus vied to fay: That all

A great difference in mens

in the Empe-tour Theodo-

things ought to bee effayed in warre, before they lay any hand to weapons. And (in truth) he faide well, because there is no greater victory in the world, then that which is wonne without effusion of blood. Cicero writing to Attica faith . That the Captaine which conquers his enemies by councell ought to be no leffe esteemed, then hee that did it by the fword. Silla, Tiberius, Caligula, and Nero, they never knew any other course, but to command and kill: whereas contrariwife, Augustus, Titus, and Traiane knew no better way, then to entreate fairely and pardon, fo that by pardoning, they conquered more, then the other could do by bloody fighting. If Captaines would but confider these things, perhaps they wold not be so ready, in opposing their Armies to fuch multiplicity of dangers: whence oftentimes enfueth, that in thinking to be reuenged on their enemies, they (in the ende) become vanquished them-

Theedofiss the Emperour, when hee bestedged any Citty, he would not suffer his Souldiers to erect any scaling Engines, or make any battery, vntill ten daies were fully past : during which time, hee offered no offence to the Cittizens, but daily admonished them-saying. I grant ye the tearme of ten daies, wherein yee may preuaile with mee by fauour and mildnesse, rather then hazard the triall of my power. When great Alexander faw the dead body of Darius: Iulius Cafar the head of Popey: when Marcellus burned Siracufa, and Scipio beheld Wumantia flaming; and in our later times, when that heroycall Emanuell Philebert, Duke of Sauoye, & Prince

nanimous Prince Frances of Burban, Afine of a Duke of Anguien, lying dead upon the ble disposito ground at the taking of S. Quintins: All in luch Genethese great persons could not retraine from teares, although the other were their deadly enemies. For albeit their generous soules were well satisfied with obtayning victory, yet notwithstanding, fuch great and weighty loffes did much discontent them, considering their cases might have beene the like.

Pitty and clemency neuer loft the vi-Gory in warre; but on the contrary, the Capraine bloodily minded cruell, and reuendgefull, hath eyther beene flaine by the enemy, or betrayed by his owne followers. Therefore it was not without greatreason, that Iulius Casar carried immortall renowne among all Princes and Cafar was for Captaines of the world, not for beeing highly remore faire, more strong, more couragious, and fortunate; but onely because far greater was the number of enemies, to whom he frankly affoorded pardon, then those that hee had vanquished and slew with the fword. The famous Captaine Narfes, who fubdued the Gothes, vanqui- He was Genefhed the Battrians, and domineered ouer Emperour the Allemaignes, neuer vndertooke a daies Juftinian. fight against an enemy, but the night before, heekneeled and wept to himfelfe in the Temple. Trogus Pompeius recordeth, that the most signale victories of the Romanes, were not wonne in regard that their Armies were mighty and strong: but because their Captaines were dexterious, active, and gallant, in all services

they undertooke. It is expedient also, that the Generall or Captaine (aboue all other things) hould be vigilant, & procure, that among | Secreev is the Captaines of his Army; affaires (con- moft necessa cerning warre) should be kept secret : be- ry in martiall cause the highest enterprizes neuer can affaires. have good fucceife, when they are discouered before they can be effected. Suetomus declareth, that it was never heard Sucton, in vit. faid to Julius Cafar : Must wee do this to It Leafar. day, or shall we do that to morrow? Only he would answer; Doe this in Stantly, & to morrow wee shall fee what is then to bee done. Plutarch writeth in his Moralles, Plut, in Moral that Lucius Metellus beeingrequested by one of his Captaines, to know on what day he would give the battaile; made him

Extremity fill waiteth vpon extremity, and be getteth daily worfe and worle courles

Extremitica

are the occa-

fion of delpe-

rate vowe; &

promifes.

lers in occasions of warre are fitte ft.and what men are to be flunned

A worthic

faying of Al-

not vnmeete

to be obfer-

How to make

vice of a victo

this answer. If I wist that my shirt knew the least thought of the things my hart intendeth. I would immediately burne it. It is wel done to confult on matters of war with many: but the refolution of them is not nevther ought to bee imparted but to very few; otherwise, they may bee published before they are fully concluded. And especiall care is to be taken, that no consultation be had with fuch men, as are evther obftinate in their councels, or rash and headstrong in their actions; for in cases which happen fometime in war, it is leffe harme to retire, then run wilfully on loffe.

Alcibiades, a valiant Captaine among the Grecians vied to fay : Men of magnammity and courage, should sometimes rather flye then tarry; because honour commands attendance and wisedome wils flight. For in greatestperils, it is better that men should fubmit themselves to reason; then that they should be commanded by fortune. A Captaine ought to be councelled in all things, except when he meetes with a dager not foreseene. For many Captaines at divers times in warre, have loft themfelues by no other occasion: but because at fuch time as they thould have brought to effect some notable deed, which admitted not the least minutes trifling they stood then musing, & idely called a councell to no purpose. It is necessary also, that a wife Captaine, after he hath obtained a victory, should understand how to vie and enjoy it. For if Hanniball, on the day at Cannas, could have told how to haue vied his fortune, Scipio the Affricane

CHAP.VIII.

had neuer conquered him.

Of the Salique Law the original thereof, and who were the first Authors and Inventers

See a Tract written by John Ferald, and I.C. ther-

N the time of Pope Boniface,

I the first of that name, and of
the Emperor Honorius, in An.
420. the Franconians having forfaken their Country, came to inhabite along the River of Rheine, which having passed, they remained for some time at Trenes. Now as these people were of bar-

barous manners; liming vncinilly & without law , Pharamond their first king. Son vnto their Duke Marcomir, chofe foure cheefe and principal men of the Sieunbrians, who by their councel and deremina tion, might give a law to the peoble. The names of those fouremen, were Vencalt. Lozocaft Salgaft and Vifoguft, who by authority of the king and people; fer downe came tobe a Law in writing, which Pharamond ap- called Sa. prooued and publified, caufing it to bee lique. called Salique eyther by the name of the place Saletham, whet it was made as forme fay of elfe by the hamle of the faid Salgaft, who was Chauncellor to Pharamond and cheefe of the fourc.

This Law contained the forme of fucceeding in the kingdome of France, & the and coddinamer of reigning; and it hath euer fince on ordics. bin observed by the kings of France, and lique Liw. their people untill this profent, "Among other articles therein contained women are declared viable to fule the kingdome. and deprived of faccession to the crowne. although they are the fole & only daughters to the King s nor can they have any portion of inhetitance in the Gallician Lands, but onely vio and profites by the owners confent, implying necessarily, that after their deaths, those allowances returne to the Crowne againe. And this Law is conformable to the Roman Law. reald Poconia, which was made at the time The Law Vo betweene the fecond & laft war of the Romanes with the Carthagenians, and which was pronounced by Voconius, Tribune of the people. And Mulus Gellins faith, that Aul, Gel in there is nothing more profitable to the Noth Allie. common-wealth, then the faid law, which debouteth women from fucceffion which Tit. Linius faith, Marcus Cato(a grave ma) Titus Linin perswaded in an Oration made by him.

And althogh it may be faid concerning this Law, that it containeth no courty be-This Law cause it toucheth the succession of prinate persons: yet on the behalfe of the king-dome, for which it was ordayned, it is full women. and reasonable, and by disposition of womens right, they ought not there to fucceed in the kingdome, nor rights of the erowne, except there be some priniledge or custome to the contrary. So noteth Iohn de Imola, on the Chapter Grands, tit. de simplici neglegen prela to the fixt. And in cap, Grandi for this was made the tenth chapter, Qui feoda poff. ff. hoc autem. C. dilecti, de arb.

Baldus is of the same opinion, speaking expressely concerning the kingdome of France, and faving, that the king of England, Sonne to one of the daughters of France, in regard of this law, might not pretend any right to the Crowne, and faith, it is cleare and certaine, as hee quoteth on the first law.ff.de Sena. And as I haue formerly faide, it hath euermore bin fo observed and held in France.

For example, when Lewes Hutin de-

The fucceffion in the Crowne of France, afte the death of ewes Hutin na continu

Ra'dus in Leg.

Chap.9.

ceased, he left one daughter, wife to the Count d'Eureux : Philip le long, his Brother, succeeded him, (neuerthelesse) as well in the Crowne, as in all the Landes thereto belonging. And after the death of Philip le long, although hee left foure daughters; yet Charles le Bel (his brother) fucceeded him, as well in the Crowne, as other inheritances. And after the decease of Charles le Bel, notwithstanding hee left one daughter named Blanche, wife to Philip, Duke of Orleance, his coufin : yet Philip de Valois succeeded him. In like maner, after the death of king Charles the eight, Lewes Duke of Orleance, his cousin succeeded him, before Madame Anne of France, his Sifter, wife vnto the Duke of Bourbon, and this was king Lewes the 12. who although (by his decease) he left two daughters, Claude and Renee: yet neuertheffe, Frances Duke of Valous and of Angoulefme, the very neerest in the line collaterall and masculine, succeeded him as well in the Crowne, as also in the Dukedome of Orleance, albeit the faide Lewes the twelfth, Charles his Father, and Lewes Duke of Orleance his Grandfather, had held the Dukedome of Orleance, by the gift and inheritance which Charles the 5. had made to the faid Lewes, Duke of Orleance his Sonne.

For right and inflice requireth, that all Lands which are once vnited and incorporated to the Crowne of France, ate once vnishall be of the proper nature, quality and orporated to condition as the fame Crowne is: as well in regard of fuccessions and acquisitions. as other causes. For at all times, and as often as a Land is vnited to the Crowne, it taketh the nature of the kingdome, and must be gouerned in all things, according to the conditions thereof. For the kingdome is an univerfall thing, which comprehendeth many other in particular : as it is faid in the Law Peculium.ff.de Lega ij.

And not onely the Salique Law is kept in France, but also it is found in many ftatutes in Italy, and elsewhere, prohibiting women to succeed, which is done, faith the Text of the Law, Fauere agnationis Libs five conservanda, ve dignitas familiarum salua public fi de sit. And Baldus saith, that a woman is not the head or Prince of the Family but the ende thereof.

Paulus de Castra, on the Law Maritus, Paule Call in C. de procur. faith, that the linage and fami- 16 9. ly beginneth in the males, and is conferued by the males. And so it seemeth, that the Etimologie of the word Foror declareth, which Labee Antistius giueth in Aulus Gellius. Soror appellata est quod quasi fe- Ant Gellins in orfum nascitur separaturque ab en domo in lib.13.cap.10. qua nata est, or in aliam familiam transcreditur. That is to fay. A fister is fo called, as Be that is borne almost apart by herselfe, and is separated from the house wherein foce was borne, and changing the place, goeth to dwell in another family.

CHAP.IX.

Examples of some Letters contayning secrecie, and fent in (uch manner, as they might not be knowne, but onely to fuch whom they especially concerned.

Arpagu writing to Cyru,
concerning the treason of in the belly of King Assigner, having cunningly vnbowelled a Hare,
put his Letter therein, and
after hee had ingeniously sowed it vp a-

gaine, delinered it (with the Hayes or Nets) to one of his Huntimen, the faithfullest of all his houshold, and hee carried it to king Cyrus.

Hystyaus, defirous to write to Aristagoras, did shaue the head of one that was his trustiest fernant, and wrote vpon the skull-skinne what hee would, containing of the head. three or foure Carracters, and afterward kept him in his house, untill the haire was growne ouer as thicke as before, and then he fent him to Aristagoras, willing that he (hould cause him to be shauen againe, so foone as he was come vnto him, and fo he understood the others minde.

Aulus Gellius reporteth, that Iulius

How Iulius Cafar wrote his Letters of especiall intelligence.

he had any vigent occasion, and to some peculiar places; and in them were letters formed onely, without any fillables annexed to them. So that when they were looks on and questioned, no word could be collected to any purpose, but by himfelfe, and him to whom they were intended, being a mute and fecret invention. ver familiar to fuch as vnderstood them.

Frontinus in lib.3.cap 13.

Many (faith Frontinus) being defirous n actions of warre to fend their letters miffi ne fecretly to have their inventions known, and yet to avoide all meanes of discovery, have written within the Scabbards of their Swords and fent them as acceptable prefent's whereby they have cleanly escaped.

Demaratus desiring to make knowne to the Lacedemonians, how king Xerkes Small Tablets of wood cowas armed and prepared for his journey uered with against Greece; did write the councell of Waxe. the king in small Tablets of wood, which he couered ouer with waxe, and in that manner fent them to the Lacedemonians.

> who taking off the waxe, read all the contents there written.

of Hirrius in conueighing his Letters.

Hirtius the Confull fent letters written voon Lead (but not knowne how to be read, being intercepted) to Marke Anthony, befiedged at Modena; they were carried by an honest Soldiour, who wore them as bracelets about his wrifts. & with them fwom over the River Scultena. The fame Hirtiss likewise tyed letters about the necks of certaine Doues, which hee kept close lockt vp in a contient place. where no light was to bee feene, nevener did he give them any food; that when he should let them loofe neere to the walles of the Citty (as eafily he could doe) they being greedy of light and food, might mount aloft vpon the houses, where beeing taken by Brutus, and by the meanes of food, purposely appointed therefor the. he understood what he defired.

Paradine, in his history of our times, A Letter fent writeth, that when as Rhodes was befiedginto the ene- ed by the Turke, a traytour named Friar Andrew de Meraill, a knight of Portugall, making a flew of carefull looking to the WV atch; fhot a letter (bound about an Arrow) into the enemies Campe, wherby he gaue them aduertisement, in what estate the Citty stood.

Frontinus hath many other examples of secret Letters, in matters of loue, of

Cafar sometimes sent him Missiues, when | which I will relate two only, remembred by Aeneas Sylvius Picholiui Pope Pius the fecond . Pachorus a young man (faicth he) fent a loue-letter in a Nofegay of Violets to Lucretia, whom hee dearely affeeted. And finding no fuccesse, wrapt another in a pellet of waxe, which he coucred as a fnow-ball, and fo threw it in at his Mistresses Window.

CHAP. X.

A Discourise concerning the original of the Normanes, what valiant actes have bin performed by them: and of Robert Guifcardo.



HE Normanes are anciently deficiently deficiently of the Gothes, and viurped that great half-mia, and fines Dacia: where-nia, and fines Dacia: where he will be supposed to the supposed to th

by the kings of that Province, were named kings of the Danes, and of the Gothes. They had a custome, that the kingdome came to the eldest Sonne, and therefore fent the other Sonnes to feeke their fortune. It came fo to passe, that Lutrocus their king (who was not a Christian) hauing two Sonnes; according to the precedent custome, sent the youngest named fent to select Biergost woout of the kingdome, albeit he his forunes loued him very dearely, and therefore co- abroad. mitted the care of him to a Gentleman of his Court, named Astengus, to whom he gaue in charge, that he should furnish him with a troope of valiant men.

An indifferent Army beeing given him, they came vppon the confines of France, and entring Picardy, possessed theselues of most of the Townes and Bourroughs, burnt Saint Quintins and Noyon, and for the space of forty yeares did infinite harmes to the Realme of France. For after that Biergostus was dead, they elec- The death ted/as their cheefe Commander & Cap- Biergoffun, & the electron taine) a very valiant and gallant Knight, of Rollo. called Rollo, who made three Campes, which entered France on three feuerall fides: the one mounted up the River of Seyne; the other along the River of Loyre; and the third by the River of Gerunda, fometime called Garona at Bourdeaux, and

fo feattred thefelues throughout France, ranaging and burning wherefocuer they came. Which being perceined by Charles the third of that name, and called the finiplaking of France, and knowing also that he had no meanes to relift them; he treated a peace betweene Rollo and him, by the Arch-Bishop of Roane, named Franquon, which was concluded neere to the Riner of Epta, the King being on the one fide of the River, and Rollo on the other. Therein was an appointment made, that

Charles should give his Daughter, na-

med Giletta, in mariage to Rello, to whom

he affigned as her Dowry, and an inheri-

tance for the children borne in this mar-

of King Charles.

homely man-

he Simple.

riage, and not otherwise, the Prouince of That which * Newstria, which Rollo caused afterward is now called to be called Nortemania, which fignifieth a Northerne people. For Nort (in the Dacian tongue) is as much to fay as North. and man implieth Homo, fo, interpreted of it felfe, from whence, by a corrupt kinde of speech asterward, it was called 2Vortmandie. The king created that Country to be

a Dukedome, and gaue his Daughter in

marriage to the faid Rollo, as formerly it was concluded, yet with this condition, that Rollo Mould become a Christian: whereto he condifcending, he was bapti-Rollo is bapti. zed in the yeare 900 and 12. & by Franmed Robdert, quon, Arch-Bithop of Roane, beeing then marying with named Robert, by Robert, Count of Poidiers; who was Godfather to him at the Font Andby the example of Rollo, all the Normans that were Pagans, caused themselues to be baptized, which caused Duke Robert to do homage toking Charles, for

the Country of Newstria, then converted to be Normandy. Historians doe report a pleasant and

ridiculous acte, which Rollo did on the day when hee came to performe his homage to the king, for some adulfed him to kiffe the feete of his Maiefly, according to a custome in that case observed. But hee disdayning to fall on his knees. Duke Robert performed hishomage in

tooke the kings foot, lifting it vp to reach his mouth, and fo ouer-high, that the king fell backward from off his feate. VVherat the Normanes fell into a great laughter; but the French were offended and vexed.

taking this behaviour in very ill manner. Neuerthelesse, this deed was imputed to fimplicity, because Rollo, in making his ex-

cufe, auouched, that fuch kinde of kiffing the foote, had beene an ancient custome in his Country. About a yeare after, Rollo feeing himfelfe peaceably poffeffed of all Normandy, repudiated his wife Giletta, & The Duke puther to a pittifull kinde of death, not Wite, and having any childe by hersin which respect put her to as well by right of forfeiture, as by other death. conditions contracted in the marriage, without all question, the Country and Dukedome should have returned to the Crowne of Prance again, as at the first. Long time before Rolla became a

Christian, hee had carnall knowledge of the Daughter to Berengariss. Earle of Beaunaus, the beeing named Pompeia, by whom he had a Sonne called William, that William afterward was tearined Long-Sword. Hee Long-tword being borne in vnlawfull and finfull copulation out of marriage, and the acte com- lo became mitted by a Christian with a Pagane, was his fucceffour confequently difabled from fucceeding dome. in the Dukedome. But howfoeuer it came to paffe, the Normanes finding thefelnes fo ftrong and dreadfull; poffeffed this William of the Dukedome, and the kings of France were enforced /by reason of hauing to flender meanes in those times) to endure and fuffer all. So that the Successors of Rollo or Robert, enjoyed ftill that Country, though by corruption of faith, and no true tytle thereun-

Of this William came Richard, firnamed The line and Long-shankes; and of that Richard a second succession Willam from Willam Longstyers. Richard; who was Father to Robert, that was Father to William the Bastard, which conquered England. Whereby it very plainly appeareth, that of the fore-named Three Eng-Rollo or Robert, the Dukes of Normandy, hishe Kings of and three Kings of England received ori-

Now concerning Richard, the Sonne to William, Sonne to Rollo or Robert, hee had two Sonnes, the one named Robert, and the other Richard also, who beeing defirous of glory and fame, went into Sicily with great troopes of men, and there they made war successefully many yeares together. These two brethren beeing dead, the Normanes beeing then in pay to the Duke of Salerne; made choise of a new cheefe Commaunder or Cap- Triftiam Citaine named Tristum Cistello, who ha- ftello Capuing flaine a Serpent, and beeing in- taine of the

fected

Frontinus in ib.3.cap. 1 7.

Tancred and his to fonne all worthy Warriors.

374

ter him succeeded Raymond, and some or ther (afterward) elected for their Captaine, William Ferrabach, Sonne to Tancred Conte de haute ville, who had twelue Sonnes, to wit, Sarno, Godfrer, Drogon, Tancred William, called Ferrabach, that is to fav , Armestrone, Haufrey, Robert, firnamed Guifcardo, Roger, Piccard, Godfrey the fecond or younger. Frumenting, and Ma-

Tancred with his twelve Sonnes.con tinued among the Normanes in the exercife of Armes, and Michael Catalaicus. Emperour of Constantinople, held then by viurpation Pouilla and Calabria, under the government of Malocco, one of his Captaines, and Lieutenant for him in those Countries. Some other places also were inuaded by the Sarrazins, who policifed sicily, continually molesting the faide kingdome. The valiant and generous William, being created Captaine of the Normanes, made a league with the Princes of Capua and Salerne, and also with Malocco, Lieutenant to the Emperour. All these passed together (with their Armies) into Sicily against the Sarrazins, and having vanquithed and expelled them thence, divided the prize equally among them. But Malocco furrendred the lands of that Isle to those Gouernors which the Emperour had fent thither before the warre. Whereat William being offended, yet diffembling his anger and intentions, marched with his Army to. wards Pouilla, where hee poffeised himfelfe of many places, and entring Melphes. there strongly fortefied himselfe.

When Malocco heard these newes, he departed from Sicily, and fuddenly went with his Army to Melphes; but William being come foorth of the Towne, gaue fuch a valiant affault vpon Malocco, that killing the better part of his followers, & chasing him from the greatest jurisdictions of Pouilla; hee fully enjoyed it, and made himfelfe Earle thereof . After the death of William, Drogon his Brother obtained the Seigneury of Pauilla, and being a man of great valiancy, as also very well experienced in Arms fought three times in one day against the Grecians, and ouercame them, encreasing his Countries daily more and more.

About seuen yeares after, Drogon died.

fected with her poylon, dyed thereof. Af- 1 and Haufrey or Hunfrey his Brother fucceeded; and after him, Godfrey, who left Balegard his Sonne successor in the Earledome. But Robert being a most valiant young man, displeased that his Brother Godfrer had not left the place to him after his death; expulsed his Nephew by torce | leth his No. of Armes, and so helde the Counties of | phew Bage. his death; expulsed his Nephew by force Robert exid. Pauilla and Calabria; annexing also Troy lard. thereto, which (till that time) had continued fubiect to the Romanes. This is that Robert, who for his excellent fpirit & wit- The voling ty prouidence, was firnamed Guifeardo, Robert, firmance Guifeardo, Brobert, firmance Guifeardo, Brobert which in the Norman Language, fignifieth do Duke of ingenious and cunning: although forme Calabra, others fay, that fuch a firname fignifieth errant and wandering, because the Normanes went wandering thorough many Countries. Afterward in the time of Pope Nicholas, feeond of that name, hee was created the first Duke of Calabria, & of Pouilla, in the yeare one thousand and

> In the ende Robert having by his proweffe, and with his Brethrens helpe, wonne (in eighteene yeares) the whole Isle of Si cily, and many other Regions in Italy; fought moreouer to make himselfe Emperour of Constantinople, for which he leuied a mighty Army, and fought with the felfet more of Conflate vanguished them. But being retired to Cassiopolis, a Promontory in the Isle of Corfue, and there furprized with a most violent Feauer, hee finished his dayes in that place, in the Moneth of July, in the yeare one thousand, eighty two, having lived gloriously (and won many victories) for the space of threescore yeares.

> This most noble Family of the Wormane Guiscardoes, had a lamentable ending, in the yeare one thousand, one hundred, ninery fiue, in William, whom the Emperour Henry the fixt caused to bee guelded, to the ende hee should have no clusion of the ability of producing any more iffue by Norman him. And moreouer he made him to lofe Guileardoe the fight of his eyes, by Basons extremely heated, which hee constrayned him to looke voon fo long, vntill the reuerberation of the hear, had vtterly depriued him of fight. This impiety, and more then barbarous cruelty, did the Emperour vie vnto him; because none of that race (afterward) should hinder his enjoying the kingdome of Sicily.

CHAP.

CHAP.XI.

Of two young youthes of Paris, that tranailed to the Indiaes, to cure themselves of the Neapolitane difeafe, or French Fox.

The Chapter heere mentioned, is infer-tedhereafter.

rom whence

Contradi&i-

The authors

ultification

Many haue

Chap.ii.

Nthony du Verdier. Lord of Vanprimaz, in his
Booke of diuers
Readings; hath
well deferibed the originall of the Weopolitane

Of the Neapolitane disease.

difeafe otherwife called the great pox, & how it was brought from the Countries of the new found world, discouered first by Columbus, in those Islands which the Indians call Haity and Quifqueia. And as this disease is very familiar in those lands; fo is the remedy therof also found there, Neapolitane by the meanes of a wood, called Guyaich, whereof there are divers Forests, and by the vie thereof it is easily healed. Many people in these parts, who have read the fore-named Chapter, haue highly contraried it: especially such as have had, and yet at this present, do finde no case thereby, albeit they have drunk every morning and evening of that decoction, having afterward foundly fweated twice a yeare, in those two temperate seasons, the Spring time, and fall of the leafe, nay moreouer, haue drunke no other drinke (with their meate, and without) for a whole yeare together.

For mine owne part, I dare maintaine, that the faid Lord of Vauprinaz, hath faid nothing but the truth, and if the greater part of ficke persons, infected with that disease, have found no remedy by the wood; the fault is in such as fell it, & hauc not wel ordered it, not having knowledge what kinde of Guyaigum should be vsed. northe place, northe climate, nor by whom it is brought thence, being ignobin deceived rantly perswaded, that there is but one in the Guyai. kinde thereof onely, against the opinion of some that will meddle with prescriptions, not having bin in the country where this wood naturally groweth. Wherefore I purpose to make good what I write, by a history of two Parisian youths,

who were healed by the vie of Guyaicum; not fuch as is brought hither to vs, and how it happed. I will fet downe the whole discourse.

I being at Paris in the yeare 1563. I had great familiarity with the two youths, be- The Author ing both borne in the Citty, of good and freaketh this worthy houses; but I conceale their burney of the names, by reason of their infection with ledge. that veneriall contagion, it beeing most commonly taken by diffionest dealing with leud women, and so by confequent, carrieth shame with it. This sickness they concealed fo long as they could, but in the end, it made it felfe to be knowne, by loffe of their haire, by red puffies appea- Outward en ring in the fore-head, by aches in the parances of bones, both of their armes, legs, thighes, dileals, where and shoulders, as also in the former part by best note of their heads, from the beginning of of the ficknes night, till break of day the next morning, with other fuch like fignes; as paine in the throate, being scarfely able to swallow a. ny food. Now, albeit that all these cuidences are not feene, in all fuch persons as are touched with that difeafer yet it plainly appeared, that in both these young bodies, all the fore-named testimonies, and many more beside (which I let sleepe in filence) were apparantly noted.

In regard of these rehearsed accidents, which were so manifest, the Parents to them both had intelligence, that they Helpe fought were touched with this difeafe; and yet Physicions & for more certaine affurance therein, they Chyturgions. caused them to bee visited by very skilfull Physitions and Chyrurgions, who performed all that which arte could permit, and yet they were not able, neither could they cure them . A second time, other Physitions were called to this businesse, who applied likewise the vetermost of tempthy phytheir knowledge; but all in vaine, and the ficke, but pre disease it selfe grew worse and worse, ri- uniling like the first. fing into knots and tophies in the foremost part of the head, and in the bones of the armes, thighes, and legs, they procured insupportable nightly paines. For when night drew necre, and all the time Night time a while it continued, they cried and com- great enemy plained incessantly, so that the neighbors to the disease (on all fides) heard their pittifull lamentations, by meanes whereof, their bodies became wholly dried vp.

The Physitions alleadged, that there was fome great extraordinary matter in

The Sarazins conquered & expulli d out of Sicily.

Melphesfurprized by Williams

The fucceffi am in the County of

Parties of diuers comple Ctions may haue all one difeafe.

The judge-

ment of the

Phylitions

their dileate

The young

to be cured.

When the

hope of man

keft, Gods

helpe is then

came nothing neere to one another in confanguinity, but were of divers tempewas delicate, foft, merry, whitifh, and of blackish coulor, strong, hardy, and many times addicted to penfineneffe. Neuerof nature, and all the Apiomes in the arte of Phylicke; their diseases seemed conformable, which never hapneth to other persons, offended with the same contagion because some have accidents farre different and contrary to other. Heereupon the Physitions referred the cause of this difeate (fimpathizing fo directly, yet in fuch different bodies) to the venome of fome paillardizing women, that had infe-Acd them.

But to make fhort, after these youthes

had endured much extremity of paines &

anguish, as well by Physicions and Chimen giuen o uer.a. no way rurgions, as Empericks that had charge of them: the harme had extended fo farre in expences, and no meane heart-greening of the Parents, al which not with standing. they were given over as incurable, & because there was no likely-hood of theyr healths recovery, they daily defired the seizure of death. Matters standing in this lamentable estate, God tooke compassion on them and their Parents, because is at the wea they were denout persons, & gaue almes very liberally to the poore daily, presenting them remedy in this manner. The Lord of Chantonnay, a Gentleman of Burgundy, and of the Franche Comte, was fent (by the King of Spaine) Ambassadour to Charles the ninth, King of France, who ordinarily made his residing at Paris. This Ambaffadour was lodged directly ouer against the house, to one of the Fathers of the ficke yong men, and both their chambers being outward, on the streetes side: it caused the said Lord Ambassadour (who was none of the fleepiest men) to heare the greeuous moanings, which the poore fickly Neapolitan continually made whervoon hee entreated his Hofte to informe him, whence proceeded those wofull la-

mentations, thus nightly made by the fick

young man. His Hoste hauing tolde him

nothing but the truth, the Ambaffadour

wrought fo by his Hofte, that hee might

come to see the fickly youth; which ac-

the difease. For these two young men | cordingly he did, in the company of his Mother .

The Lord of Chantonnay, well vn- to write the ratures and complexions. For the one derstanding whence the disease procee- fickey only ded, & those nocturnall heavy greenings, tender disposition: but the other was of said, that he had seen many in divers Prouinces, as in Bourgundy, Germany, Flanders, Italy, & Spaine, afflicted with the felfetheleffe, contrary to the common order fame fickneffe; and notwithstanding all curious and carefull attending, yet they could not any way be cured, but onely by Cureobur going to the Indiaes. For instance hereof, to the Indiaes he called for his Secretary, who prefently came thither, and had (as wel as his Lord) passed the voyage, therefore hee was the better able to confirme his speeches, and related at large, how every thing happened.

The Mother to the ficke youth, after the had thanked the Lord Ambaffadour for his aduice, withdrew herfelfe, and acquainted her husband (who was Muster of the * Chamber of Accounts) with all that the Lord of Chantonnay had faid vnto her. He being a very learned and wife quer Chan-Gentleman, conferred further (concerning this matter) with the Secretary to the faid Lord Ambaffadour; whom hee found to be a man of good judgement, & one that had past through the Pikes, as we vie to tearme it.

The Sonne to the Master of the Accounts, imparted this matter vnto his Themanus fickly Companion, who advertised his fully related and acquain Mother also therof, and she her husband, ted to both who was a Merchant trading in filkes, and fidet. furnished the house of the Queene, Catherine de Medicis, then Regent in France; and heereupon both the Fathers conferred together. In breefe, they concluded to hazard their Sons in the performance of this voyage, perswading themselues. that feeing they reputed to bee incurableit might fo fall out, that changing the ayre of the climate, and by their paffage vnder the * Equator, vnder which, fuch as Or coulros fayle, doe oftentimes become ficke, and siall Circle, dyein the voyage, making the Sea their caually diftant from grave, as the most part doe, of them that the 2 Poles aduenture to the Indiaes, to which fortune they freely committed their Sons. But if it came to passe, that they might there be cured, as divers others formerly had beene; they flood bound in the greater thankfulnesse to God. For they being daily in their fight fo difeafed, to their

A ftrange reen Fathers.

> No paffage to the Indiacs, King of Spain ermiffion.

recouery.

from the King of Spaine: Queene Mother, understanding by her Mercer (Father to one of the ficke youthes) the purposed voyage of his Sonne; wrote vnto her Daughter, then Queene of Spaine, for her affiftance to the poore paffengers, to favour them with Paffe-ports, and recommendations vnto the Kings Lieutenants in the Indian Countries, to fuch as were Captaines of the Seas, and other. Being affisted by two men, who had formerly voyaged both by Land and Sea, and peace being accorded with the Prorestants and Catholiques, they transiled to Spaine, and there presented their Let-

fide the charges attending thereon; they

could not determine on any estate for

them, nevther make mention for their

marriage, the reason of their sicknesse

being to noyfed quite through the Citty

of Paris. Thus thefe two Fathers refol-

ued to fend their Sonnes to the Indiaes,

evther for their vtter losse, or healthfull

any to paffe thither, without permission

Now because it was not lawfull for

Of the Neapolitane disease.

he arrinall of the young men in Spain

ters.

All the Frech in Brefile flaine by the paniards.

Good fortun in fo great necessity.

The arriuall of the two ficke young men in India

and their

there.

courteous en

tertainment

ted their licence and dispatch: but first they were visited, to know whether they were Spyes or no. For it was no long time before, that the Spaniards had flaine all the French, which were to be found in that part of Brefile, called by the Tononeinambouts, faying, that all the Indiaes appertained to them, by due right granted to them by the Pope. When they were found to bee diseased persons, they were discharged, and going on to the Port of Simila fortune was fo fauourable to them, that there they found a Fleet of Shippes, ready charged with men of warre & Merchandizes, bound also for that part of the Indiaes, whereto these sicke men intended to go; which was the Islands of Haity and of Quisqueia, named by Columbus, Hispaniola, and afterward the Isle of Saint Do-

The Queene immediately follici-

They went aboord a Merchants Ship, having agreed for threefcore Ducates. both for their passage thither, and their returne backe againe. The voyage fucceeded fo well, that although it contayned aboue eighteene hundred leagues by land; yet within two Moneths, they arri-

no little discontenument and shame, be- | ued there; landing in the Isle of S. Dominico, where the Vice-Roylay. To him they presented their Letters of fanour and recommendations, who gaue charge to a Gentleman of his Court, to fee that the young men and their company shold be kindely entreated, fending them vnto Physitions, that remained there in the Country at the Kings pay. But they thought it more convenient for them to Their remocpasse thence to another Island, which life of S John was called Saint John de Porterico: where de Porterico. the women there dwelling, were verye skilfull in curing that malady, and when they were come thither, thus it fucceeded to them.

First, the Governour of the Island. by commaundement given him from the Vice-Roy of the Indiaes, lodged the young men to well as hee could in that fauage Country: which was in a Lodging made with palifadoes, or a wall of of their lod-Pales, which beeing but badly joyned ging in s. tohn together, was filled vp with bundles of de Porterico.

The Roofe confifted of leaves of Trees, fo were their Beds also, and in stead of Feathers, they were filled with Cotten: their Sheetes being of plaine Fustian, and all their vtenfilles of wood, or of earth.

Their ordinary feeding was on Cowflesh somewhat tender, of great Serpents Their ordinaroafted, which ferued highly to their heather Ifle of S. ling, and also on strong Tortuics, as lohn, great as an indifferent Porket.

Their bread was Biscuit, and is much better in that Country, then elfewhere; for within the space of foure and twenty houres, it will grow mouldy, and if it be eaten hot, it is indigestible. But howfoener it were, the Spaniards gave them The kindnesse courage, not to greeue themselves, and of the Spanibrought a Musician vnto them to delight ards to them. them, whose Instrument was made of the bone of a mans thigh. They likewife fent a woman to attend them, that made little or no account of them; but tolde them, fo foone as they were cured, the did affure herfelfe, that they would very well

content her. This Woman fo affrighted our young Parifians, that they could verye willingly there have dved, as never hoping of any helpe by her meanes. For the went starke naked, her skin being of an

The manner

The Lord of Chantonnay heareth one of the young mens hourely complainings The descripti beauty of a fauage woma

Such a fight ly pleafing to in a place fo defert and vn-

affable enough for a fauage creature. This woman prepared a drinke, which

of Guyacum, or Pockwood, by the fauage

The Parifi anhalfe pinte as our whole pinte.

Their manne of giving Phificke in the

Cuftome to the Coun tries dyet.

dog: her breasts hung dangling downe, like to the dues of an olde Sow. Her head was shorne close before but behinde the havre hanged fo low as her heeles, all frifled, and like to the tayle of some ill-fauoured Cow. The nayles of her hands and feete, exceeded halfe a fingers length, and were bowing crooked. She had no haire where nature commonly affordeth. neyther in her arme-pits; and her teeth looked of a new betweene red & vellow. long, cleare, and wide enough afunder. At each of her eares hung a Stone of violet coulor, the least of them weighing aboue two ounces: her vpper lip was flit in the midst, in the top whereof stood another stone of grayish coulor, and thence passed her spettle continually. All the other parts of her body were round & far, and in indifferent fashion, sweete, faire, &

A drink made the made of the little loppings of a vong Guyaicum tree, hauing first bruised them betweene her goodly teeth, the afterward the boyled the in an earthen veffell, without any thing to couer it, and contrary to all courses observed in our Countries. This drinke the caufed them enery morning to take, each of them to the quantity of a * Paris Chopine, at two or three draughts. Then they must walke a while. almost as big exercise Fencing, or some other cheerefull stirring of their bodies; or elfe trauell to a Mine of gold, which was not far off fro the Village, fo to weare out the space of two houres. Then returning backe againe to the house, all sweaty, they would change onely their thirts; and going to dinner, they must drinke of no other water, but of a much-troubled standing Poole, wherein was nothing but rainewarer. The Spaniards would offer them Gallypands or Cocks of India, which they did eate fodden for the most part. But after they had benevied to it eight or ten dayes; they could eate Toads, Serpents. brought them and Lizards euen as well as other, and found them very fauory meate; befide diuers kindes of fruites, the like whereof hath neuer bene seene in these parts. About three houres in the evening, they

Oline-conlour: flat nofed, like to a little (mony, remedy, or denifes yfed to them, they found themselues to bee throughly The young healed inft within the space of fix weeks: men were men onely their gums excepted, which were red in the become swolne and enflamed. But they space of fite were made found, with a inarpe-pointed then to men were made found, with a sharpe-pointed their former them therewith in many places, and they red. thus healed, were perfectly recourred. The knots and bumps on their bones. vanished away, all their nightly afflictions ceaffed wholly within fifteene daies: appetite came afresh to them both, and their haire being loft, was reftored againe in more firmer manner then before. And now there remained, not fo much as the print of any push or blaine, eviler in their fore heads, or on their breafts, likewife all vicers which they had in their fecret parts, dried vp and were gone.

They perceiuing themselves to be thorowly cured, were willing to content the full intention woman with golden coyne, as hoping towards the fausage woman they did well therein : and this they did, by the aduice of a cunning crafty Spaniard, relegated to that place, and to worke in the Mines. He very well knew, that the Indians, making no account of Gold or Monie; purposed to begge it of her, not doubting but easily she wold give it him. But it fell out farre otherwise, for shee re-fused the Gold, and would by no meanes of the cuted touch it, but ran into the house, and took young men, a Bow and Arrowes, intending to kill by the tree they or a them, but that they fledde away from her. Spaniard Perceiving this, they called another Spamard, who had alwayes made fignes of amity towards them, and caused him to fpeake to the woman because they underflood nother language. Conference by fignes having past betweene them, the Spaniard learned of her, that shee would be payed in some small wares or trifles. They not knowing where they should so prouide themselves, the Spaniard tolde Trifles and them, that there dwelt a man in the Vil-matters of lage, who made profession of felling such yet pleasing things; and of him, for the value of two to the cic, at Ducates (which amount heere but to best welcome twenty Solz) they bought these following trinkets. Six very bigge Combes, fix little kniues, fold for a Sol a peece in Paris, with their theathes, fix final looking-glaffes, a must drinke as much of the Guvaicum, as dozen of points, sixe needles, a glasse they did in the morning and vie the same | spoone, & a dozen of Ballads. Wherwith exercises. And without any other cere- | the was extraordinarily pleased, & tooke

Their coming o Paris, and welcomming by their pa.

Countrey.

her felfe highly beholding to them. She presently sung a Song, after her countrey manner, made them a Feast, wherin were ferued foure finall Guinny hennes boyled,

Their returning vnto the Vice roy at S. their fayling

Chap. 12.

The Sauage

romans thák

inhelle to the

we young

two Toads very fat, vnbowelled and roafled. They dranke a Beuerage, made of Turky wheate, passable enough. And afterward, the gaue them halfe a dozen of Bowes, and some store of Arrowes, to beare away with them homeward beside the gaue to each of them, fine Hand-kerchers of Cotton, properly made. They returned thence to the Island of

Saint Dominico, where they presented

themselues ynto the Vice-roy, who was

most joyfull to see them recovered; and there they remained one moneth more. not feeling any ficknesse by the change of ayre, or of the climate, whereat each one greatly meruailed. In this time, the Merchants made them ready for their return, and some bands of soldiers, who went to refresh themselues in Spaine. Being entred their thip, within two other months they arrived happily in the Port of Sinill. Thence they went to Madrille, humblic to thanke the Queene, who gaue them Letters and Paffe-portes, for their more fecure arriving in France. Being come to

ned by their parents and friends, who did conceale their voyage and ficknesse, so much as in them lay.

It was my hap to finde them there, and to me they reuealed the whol aduenture euen in such maner as I haue set it down; to the end, that fuch as fall into the like inconvenience, & being forfaken of Phyfitians heere, may travaile for their recouery, as thefe two yong men did. At this day they are prouided of great and honorable Offices, the one being officer for the Finances, and the other a worthic Commander in Armes, having performed many fignal feruices, in the last wars of the vnion to his Maiesty. And because this Chapter should not seeme ouerlong: I will heereunto adde another Difcourse, concerning the Tree of Guyaicum, which healed these two young Parisians.

Paris, they were most louingly entertay.

CHAP, XII.

Why there is not found fo much vertue in the Guyaicum that is brought hither . as in that whereof the Indians them (elues do make vee, against the Neapolitane diseale, and the description thereof.



S God hath beene, is, The great and euer-more decla- to the natu. reth himfelte to bee rally infested good & mercifull.knowing the inhabitantes of the whole Countrie

Indian people

of India fore-named, to be naturally fubiect to this infection of the Pox: fo hath he given them the Tree of Guyaicum, by the meanes whereof they can cure themfelues, which they attayned vnto, onely by experience; for they have not anie knowledge of Letters. The Spaniardes which had conquered those countreyes, having co-habited carnally with the naturall Women there abiding; receyued from them this difease. For at certaine feafons, this malady possesseth the Indians; as Fellons or VVhitlawes, and Fea- Spaniardes ans; as Fellons or V Viitiawes, and Feawere the first
uers do seize on vs. And having perceyth trooke the ued that they recourred themselves by pox of the Indian women. Guyaicum, our Merchants brought some of it hither; which in the beginning, rotted of it felfe, by reason they brought thence the very youngest: which to preuent, they brought then of the oldest that in regard of his folidity could not rotte or perifh. And our Phyfitians (by their own report) appointed the receipt of that, to fuch as (in these parts) were so infected; but to little effect, for beside the breuage knowledge it or drinke made thereof, they fayled in fom Philitians annointing (oftentimes) the diseased body, with hotte Oyntments, compounded with Quick-filuer, wherby fome of good habitude, perceived themselves to be cu-

red and others not. Now, by that which I coulde gather, from the discourse of these two young observation Parisians, the olde Guyaicum, which is by report of broght hither to vs, is of the groffe trunk the two Pariand strong bodie of the Tree, that hath no vertue against the discase, neyther doe the Indians any way vie it. And our deceiued Physitians, appoint the receipt of

The want of

onely.

India.

this blacke Guyaicum, which is of those great trunkes, and call it, the heart of Guyaicum. They also perswade theselues that there are two kindes of Guraicum, to wit, one that is wholly blacke, and the other nothing blacke at all. Neuertheleffe, they are both of one tree, infomuch as that which hath no blackneffe is of the branches, and enermore the oldest, albeit they take it for the yongest. These young Paristans, beeing of good and apprehen-sive spirits, did well perceyve, that that which men brought hither to vs. had very little power or efficacy ! for they had made many diets, without receyuing the least ease thereby.

Trial of Guy-But the other of India, which was yong, arcum by the fornewhat tender, having hardly attained Parifians exto two yeares growing, and no higher the petience both heere, and in the flature of a man, did heale very eafily. For in the making thereof, there would bee felte and perceived, avery delicate and Grape-like gumme, pleasing vnto the heart, which is not to bee found in that made heere among vs. And they conclu-ded, that the drinesse and coldnesse of the trunkes of the trees, then which there is no other brought to vs, is the only cause,

Yet do I not inferre heereby, but that

why fuch an irkefome difeafe cannot bee cured.

Some vertue in the olde Guyaicum, &

Some forfa-

ly currd by the olde Guy-

the aged Guyaicum brought hither to vs. hath some power and vertue: as in preparing the bodie (to receive the voguents applyed in that il difease. fit for the difease) that is of a cold or melancholly nature, and having made vie thereof eight or ten dayes, then to take the Vinguents. Or elfe, when one is fupposed to have that sicknesse, and there remaineth paines or aches in some parts of the body, or some V lcer is feared: some have beene observed, that by the vse of this old Guyaicum, within three weekes they have appeared to be found. Some also have beene fore afflicted, yea, divers ken, yet found times left in deploreable condition; yet having made vie hereof for a year or two. as in their ordinary drink, and their bread commixed with a decoction of Guyacum, and their meate boyled in like manner, they have bene cured, and (among other) an Atturney of the Parliament at Rouen : but this is very rare and extreamly pain-

> The voyage to the Indiaes feemeth not fo dolorous, nor yet so greatly chargea-

ble: for these two young Parisians, of whome wee made mention in our precedent Chapter, it cost but three hundred charges in Crownes betweene them, yet each had a their voyage, man of honor with him, and a groome or feruant to attend them both.

The decoction of the Gayaicum which is heere among vs, doth not ferue onely the decocion for the Pox or those offended therewith; o' Guyakun, but likewise for all persons ouer-abounding in moysture, or that haue diseases caused by some cold humors. Also for cases before the pox fuch as have opilations in the Liver, Spleene, and other of the bowels, caufing them to sweate after the receite. Many haue found great comfort and ease also thereby; as some touched with palfies; others that have had fwolne legs; others with vicers fubicato certaine times; and defluxions, deafferes, catarrhes, theumes, and other imbecillities, they have found themselues thereby to be released. But people offended with hectique Feauers. must keepe themselues from any way yfing it. I will now describe the forme of this Tree.

The Tree of Guyaicum is great and groffe, as are the Oakes in these our countries having the Barke or Rinde of black- | led Guyairum ish coullor, thicke, gummy, and fat. The the diligent wood thereof is much harder then lbo-ny, and the rinde separateth it selfe very Author eafily from the trunke, when it is dry. The Leaues doe appeare like those of Plantaine, but they are much leffe, and more hard. It beareth a yellow flower, and the fruite is as big as a Nut, having within it stones, like to those of a Medlar: no vie hath beene made of the fruite, fo farre as I can learne, and yet there must needs be some vertue in them. Thus you perceiue what I know, and have vnderstood, concerning the Wood called Guyaicum. in the vertue whereof, many heere among ve haue found themselves to be deceiud; by thinking that it had the felfe-same faculties, as that which is young and tender, and found in the Indiaes.

CHAP.

The Patifians

Conie@ures concerning the long Kee-ping of Corn in Egypt.

CHAP. XIII.

From whence it proceedeth, that Graine or

Corne is not fo long time preferued in our

Countries, as it hath beene, and still is in

Egypt. Alfo in what maner our Lands

and Fines Should be corrected and quali-

fied, without dunging. With many reme-

dies, for the preserving of our Corn from

corruption, and being eaten with diners

kinds of Vermines.

aduice of lofeph, to prouide agaynst the dearth of Grame, which should for seuen yeares after follow, according as he Prophetically foretold; came to passe as by matter of miracle, and extraordinarily. I must needs confesse, that there was there both great abundance, and as great sterrility of Corne, in the feuen consecutine yeares, and all thorow the extraordinary power of God. But for the confernation of them, it is a matter ordinary to Egypt, that Corne should be kept there five and twenty yeares in pure goodnes, yea much longer time. Alwayes prouided, that it gypt may bee bee not transported from place to place, ept found 2 5 and be not made subject to any heating : neither that it should bee eaten by anie Vermines, as many times our Corne is heere in our Countreyes, and the cause thereof I will declare vnto ye.

The reason for it, is, that the Egyptians never vied to fatten their groundes, but contented themselves with such manurage, as the foyle it felfe, and Nylus ouerflowing them, onely affoorded: neuer vfing any dung, as heere we do, neyther Vrines, Leystals, and other excrements of beafts, which is the onely cause, vvhy our Graine cannot be preserued; but is fubica to Wormes, VVecuilles, Mites, and other small creatures, that doe great harme thereto, whereby it yeeldeth no fauoury tafte , neither can bee kepte in

goodnesse for any long time. Hippocrates Hip ml. s. 27 fremeth to be of the fame opinion, affirming, that fuch as vie breade made of Come, which any dunged ground hath veelded, they cannot live fo healthfully, neither follong a time, as others, feeding on the contrary.

Some one may fay vnto me, the what Lands that shall we do in these countreyes, where if are dunged, our fieldes be not manured and dunged, doe not yeeld the Land will yeelde nothing, or (at the fauoury, as o best) very little ? Is it not apparant every thers. where amongstvs ? That there are verie good meanes whereby to franke and fatten grounds, with other things then dung and filth, Hefod s plainly enftructeth vs; Hefod in lib de for in his Booke of Husbandry, he fayth: Agricult cap. 3. There is nothing better, to cherilb & fatten aleane and meager Land, then the Strong fram of Lapines, the chaffe of Chiches, of *A kinde of Beanes, of Tares, Lentilles, and other fuch Pulle, So called like vitterly rejecting all vie of dung, which many have charged with blamefull imputa-

Of this opinion also, Lieband appeareth to bee, in his Booke called Maifon Rustique, or the Countrey Farme, where he faith in fled of dung, they may we the lib d. M. fon stram of Lupines, backt or cut small. Or elfe Ruflique, cap. 10 to fowe the ground with Lupines, and other Pulses, and afterward when they beginne to grow to labour then the land ouer and ouer. and this will ferue for dung, much better

then that of any beast. There is mention also made, of another kind of manuring the ground, which is not so good as the precedent, alledged her of manuby Hefiodus; but approaching fomewhat ring ground, neere it, as thus. To cut some store of by Heath, Heath, Broome, Briars, and Thorns, and all other kinds of shrubbes that have bufly stalkes, or vnder-woods, and then to couer all those Lands therewith, which are intended to be fowen : there let thefe feuerall matters ly drying about the space of ten or twelue dayes, or longer time if neede require it. Then in the night time, let them bee fet on fire, and fo carefully tended, that they may bee altogether reduced into afhes, by kindling the fire stil where it would not fasten. Afterward, let those grounds be Tilled after one maner onely, and then fowed and couered. This kinde of Husbandry wil cause great quantity of Corne, which the poore make vie of in many places, where they have no

The reason why our Corn

The Grain or Corne of E-

yeares and

cannot be pre ferued for any

How the E. gyptians doc manure their grounds that are not neere to Nylus.

Dungs doc

many wilde

and vnwhol-

fome hearbes

by fmother-

ing the earth, rather then

nonrithing it

Knowledge

in the diuctli

tic of dungs,

for theirlgood

neffe or bad-

engender

to corruption. Here it is to be remembred, that where I fay in Egypt the grounds are not manured: I meane none but those that lye along the current of Nylus, on eyther fide three or foure Leagues in largenesse, or little lesse on either side . But in other parts, as in the mountaine countreyes, they manure their Lands, though they be greatly fruitfull: yet not with dung, but with straw of divers Pulles, according as I have formerly fayd. Howbeit they have great Heards of Oxen, and Flockes of Sheepe, also their fields are almost couered with flights of Pigeons, which after their owne manner) manure the grounds, and it is verie excellent good in that Na-

a great moyft graine, which is not fubicat

As for the dungs heere in our Countreyes, they are very laborious to bee made: for some dung must lye rotting a whole yeare together, before it can bee well imployed. And then it is (oftentimes) full of feedes of wilde or fauge Hearbes, which fall into the Hay, that beafts of labour cate, and fo paffe thorow in their excrements vndigested, or else are found among the strawe, whereof they make their litter. Whereby enfueth. that the earth (oftentimes) produceth more store of bad Hearbes and VVeeds. then of good Corne, because they take away his true vertue of nouriture, and do meerely fmother it.

Beside all these things fore-named, especiall care is to be hadde, in knowing what dungs are good or bad; and for certaine groundes, and for some peculiar feeds. For Horffe dung will ferue well in one place; that of Oxen and Kine in another; and likewise those of other, Cattle. Sheepe, Goates, Swine, Pigeons, and others beside. It may not be forgotten also that some grounds are to bee fattened in certaine quarters of the Moone, and others in other feafons : which is not any way to be observed in those other kindes ofmanuring, whereof I have formerly written.

Heere I must not ouer-passe, to write fomewhat concerning the husbanding of Vines, which some vie to dung, albeit to much leffe purpofe, then grounds bearing Corne. As about Paris, in the lower Ly-

Cattle : and it causeth the earth to yeeld | mosine; about Lymoges, and else-where, The dooing hecreof is a great deale leffe tollerable, because it is a matter very difficult, that a ground nourished and made fat with dung; should not still retaine in it, the fauour of the fayde Dung, and fo (in the end) impart it to the wine. For, our people are veric ill aduised, to charge their Vines enery yeare : by reason it is the cause, that their wines (for the most part) haue an unpleasing tast, and becom- Dungis vent part) have an empleating tait, and occount Dungin tait ming fat and Oyly, are caffeto turne of huntible wider. Vider, Vider, themselues. Moreover, dung maketh our Vines to waxe aged immediately, and foone to grow barren; because they are too liberall of their goodnesse in the first

Seruius hath lefte written vnto vs. in those Commentaries which he made on Servininca. the ninth Booke of the Encides, that the P. Entident man was named Pituuius, who invented this manner of manuring groundes by dung. And therefore he was called Sterquilinium, that is to fay, a dung-hill carrier. It is to be presumed, that he was bred in the Latines countrey, in some place that was neuer fertile. These sew notes I haue selected out of verie good Authors that did well understand themselues in Husbandry, concerning the manuring of grounds & Vines, but they neuer approued the vie of dung.

Now, because I know verie well, that The Author whatfoeuer Hefiodus, those other authors excuse on and my felfe also haue written; that our grounds and Vines should no longer bee his Council manured in fuch shinking, foule, and grosse manner, but to follow those other instructions, most sweete and wholesome in excuse of their neglecting so good aduice I will fay with them, that that which hath taken roote for so many thousandes of yeares, can hardly be taken away vppon the fodaine.

Therefore, I wil now fet downe vnto you some certaine receipts and aduices, for the long confernation of our Cornes fafe and foundly, and that they may not bee any wayes bitten or eaten with Vermine, because it will bring exceeding great healthfulnesse vnto the people. For, without all doubt, when Corne and other nourishments of life haue any corruption whatfoeuer, they doe dailie encrease and augment diseases amongst the

Of bringing

Of places

Chap. 13.

fture. Next, not to lay them on the eur. then floore, without there bee some dry boards betweene the Corne and it. Then that there bee no muck hill, or lakes, evther in the Barne, or neere it : for ill fanor will foone communicate it felfe to the Gorne a and about all, let the Barne bee very well avrede. If it be in fuch a place, where they have no vie of Barnes, as in the most part of Languedorke i then order must be taken, that the Stacke of Corne be (at leaft) fo wel couered and enclosed, that no raine may get power of entrance. for otherwise, the Corne will foroute it

felfe, and afterward rot, corrupt, and pu-

After that the Come is threshed and

erne blafts, and those leaning that way,

ouer-heating remooning and changing

them from place to place, at two Months

and two Moneths. The Garner must be

farre enough from moist places respect-

ally from houses of office, which yeeld a

noyfome fauour, or any fuch vnfit being

from Stables of Oxen, Horfes, Swine, &

circumfred, that before they bring their

Corne in freques into the Bathe, the faid

theaues be very dry and free from al moi-

mecte to bee laide vo in the Garner or Corne-lofte, choife must be made of one that receiveth the bright fplendour of the East, breathed also moderately with the or Corne-loft North and West windes : but the South-

by no meanes to enter it. The couerture ouer head need no great cost linesse; because of the ayres easier entrance thorow the Tyles or other shelving that the Corne may not be heated or chafed. The for the floo floore may bee of earth, or paning tyles;

and the walles of whited morter ... You must bee respective, that your Corneheapes bee not great or thicke to auoyde

fuch like.

The planchers and walles of the Gar-Howto augyd ner, wherein you purpofe to house your vermine that Corne, must be washed with vineger, or fuch water, wherein hearbes, or fome bitter drugs have beene boiled: as Wormewood, Southernwood, the leanes of wilde Cowcumbers, the pithe or graine of Coloquintida, or of Lupines, or Oxe gaules; without all question to the contrary, these have bene truely tried, that no Weeuils,

Mites, or Wormes can bite or touch the

Corne, where they have bene wied. And

they that fcome to take this paines, may First of allithen, men ought to be very | lay fome wormwood vnderneathe, aloft, An eaffer was and about their Corne-heapes, or Sou- for such as eliernewoods or dried wilde Marierome. cantake no Or elfe antiothe the walles and planchers paines. of the Garner with Live made of the oyle of Olines; or if it may nor be had, with Sheeps wine. To falt-powder the ground underneathe the Corne, with afhes made of Oaken wood, it is the prefent killing of all Miter and VV ceuils.

Now to keepe the Corne from heating or warming ouer and belide our ferue the forenamed removing, let there bee layde Come from under every ten Buthels of Corne one of hearing and Miller or if it be mingled therewith, it is ealily separated afterward with a rannging Sine. Salt-Niter and the four thereof is very good for Corne heapes, and preserueth them wonderfully, as also fro forouting: many Sea-Merchants have niade vie thereof, to their no meane profire. In breefe, a good and charitable man shall never stand in need of so many remedies. It he keepe his Corne with in-

tention, to helpe and lend to the poore. and without interest . For God faith by his Prophet Bachiell, That hee will pre- Ezek 27,10. ferue the goods of them that keepe them to helpe the prose. 14 And contrari wife; That he will juffer them to rot, and their Come firall Bee eaten with vermine, that hoorde them vp; to get great gaine by them, and hurt the people vexed with famine.

CHAP.XIIII.

of the great difference, which both Ancient and Moderne Writers have observed to be betweene the Royall title of a King, and the disgracefullesame of a Tyrant.

Efore I begin to describe the difference, that is betweene A necessary a King and a Tyrant; I hold observation it to bee a matter most conuenient, to set downe a defi-

nition both of the one and other, to the ende, that the deportments of them both, may the better be knowne.

A King is fuch a man, that yeeldeth himselfe as obedient to the lawes of Na-

Concerning the huthandrief at for Vines.

of a King, or cih the effate and dignity Royall.

The note or

marke of roy-

What things are possible in

The definiti-

on of a Ty-

the fignifica-

tion of the

implyeth.

Who were

word Tyrant

a King.

ought to bee obedient to the Royall Monarch to declare thereby that in him confifteth Soueraigne Majefty. The King. alfo ought to bee obedieut to the Lawes of nature, that is to fay to gouerne his to be seene as cleare and brightly. as the Royall marke or note, when the Prince the lawes of nature; as hee wither his Subicasto be obeyfant to him. Which be may easily do, if he feare God about all things be pittifull to the afficted, prouident in his enterprizes, hardy in exploits. modest in prosperity, constant in adversi-

ty firme in his word, wife in his councell.

carefull of his subjects, succourable to

friends, terrible to enemies, courteous to

good men, dreadfull to wicked persons,

and just to all.

a propriety in the goods of any man . I

A Tyrant is fuch a man, as defileth the lawes of nature with his feete abufeth the liberties of free-borne Subjects even as if they were his flaues, and maketh the goods of other men to behis owne .. The name or word Tyrant, is Greeke, in his owne propriety, and was honourable, fignifying nothing elfe in times of antiquity, but a Prince that had possessed himfelfe of the State, without the confent of his Cittizens and Subjects, and of a companion, thad made him his Mafter. Such a man was called a Tyrant, althogh he were a most wise and just Prince . In like manner, Plato writing to Diony fine the Tyrant, gaue him this quality as his hocalled tyrants nour: Plate to Dyonifius the tyrant health. The returne and answer was : Dranifius the tyrant to Plate greeting. And to declare that the word tyrant, was as well attributed to just & good Princes, as them that were wicked, it enidently appearesh heerein: because Pittacus and Periander, two of the feuen Sages of Greece, were called tyrants, for having feized the E-

states of their Countries. But such as eyther by power, or elfe were exposed to the mercy of their ene-

ture as he defireth his Subjects to bee to- Unies ; were constrained (for the better ture, as he defireth his Subjects to bee to inses 3 were consumed (for the better wards him : forfaking naturall liberity, & fecurity of their lines and goods) to have including the limiting to Guards of flrangers about their perfons, mounting It observe in this definition, that Subieds & Atrong Garrifons in Cattles, for whose compelled paiment of wages and maintenance, great Guardifor rributes & impositions were leured. And their orne when they faw, that their lines could not latery. be feeuted, having but poore friends, and potent enemies; they did eyther put to Subjects, and to guide his owne actions death, or hanithed fome, to pleafe and enby naturall inflice, which maketh it felfe. rich others and they that flood in delverate condition, they made rape both of folendour, of the Sunne and his likewife at their goods and wines. And this was the The tast reason, that tyrants were extremely hat why Tyran theweth himselfe as milde and plyable to ted and maliced . Forwer reade that Dyonifius the elder tyrant, of one part of Sicily, had daily ten thousand Soldiers for his Guard, and ten thousand horsemen, and foure hundred Gallyes, readily hyred and armed. And when he could not make vp this account among fo few Subiects as were vinder his feruice; he wrang & griped his people in fo finall an Island, whereof hee governed but in part onely, and contained no more then fix hundred and fixteene Italian miles in all.

Now because every one hath not the iudgement to distinguish a good King Westresse from a Tyrant, calling him a Tyrant, that menube (for great flore of good reasons) maketh | tweenea | goodKingk | himselfe formidable, and stood in awe of, a Tyiam, beside that which I have already sette downe, I will make him fome-what more cafily to be knowne.

The most notable difference betweene a King and a Tyrant, is that the King coformeth himfelfe to the lawes of nature, and a tyrant trampleth on them with his The apparant feete, that one maintaineth piety, inflice, and bett no. and faith, the other hath neyther God, corbetweene Law, nor Faith. The one maketh whatfocuer he doth, ferue for the weale pub- in very fignal like, & tuition of his Subjects : the other observations. doth not any thing, but for his owne particular profite, renenge, or pleafure. The one enforceth himselfe to enrich his Sub- Of publike iects by all the best meanes he can deuise: benesit. the other will not build his owne house. but with the ruines of theirs. The one revengeth the injuries of the publike E. Pardoningin state, and pardoneth his owne: but the other revengeth cruelly his owne injutirs, and pardoneth them that are done to others. The one spareth the honour of of women madeft women : & the other triumpheth honour. in theirshame. The one taketh pleasure

to be aduited in all freedome and liberty, life, and torne in peeces with thame after vertuous man.

Di generall

Of Louis

Of Feete.

The one friueth to maintaine his Subicees in peace and wnitie: but the other mooneth dayly divisions to make the one paractuinate the other, and then to fatten himselfe with their Confiscations. The one; delighteth to bee fometimes scene, and heard of his Subiedes, but the other etter-more hydeth himfelfe from them; as; from his enemies. The one, makethreekoning of his Subjectes Loue, but the other of their Feare. The one, neuer feareth, but for the wel-fare of his people: but the other dreadeth nothing more then them.

The one, will not charge his subjects more then needes mult, remembring alwayes the publique necessity; but the other drinketh their blood, gnaweth theyr bones, and ficketh the verie Marrowe of his people, onely to weaken them. The one fearcheth our men of best condition, to imploy in publike Offices; but the other imployeth none but Theeues, and most wicked persons in his service, like to Spundges. The one maketh free gifte of estates and offices, to avoide concussions, and crowdes of people ; but the other felleth them at as deare rates as hee can, for their betrer meanes of enfeebling the people by Thefts; and then (afterward) cuttes the Theenes throates for theyr vvealth, because he would be reputed a good Iu-

A King measureth his actions and mas ners, by the foote of the Law: but the tirant maketh the Law to serue his maners. The one is beloued and reverenced of his people: and the other generally hated of them all. The one hath no other recourse in war, but to his subjects : but the other, will make no warre but with them. The one, hath no Guards or Garrisons but of his owne people: but the others defence is onely in strangers. The one delighteth in an affured repose and tranquility; but the other languisheth in perpetual feare. The hope & expectation of the one, is euerlasting life in blessednes: but the other cannot agoid eternall punishment. The one is honored in this life, & defired again after death: the other is infamous in this

and will be wifely reprehended when hee death. But because the continuation of faileth sout nothing is more irkefome to this chapter might feeme over-tedious to the other; then the counsell of a grave and the Reader, if I thould verify at these rela- The Conclutions by historicall examples I wil referre firch as are willing to take the paynes, to reade the histories themselves, both in Greeke, Latine, & other languages, wher they shal find that to be most true, which hath bin fooken of Kings and Tyrants.

CHAP. XV.

In what high account and esteeme. Philosophers of other men of knowledge (in what Sciences focuer) were held in elder times. by Emperors and Kings.

furney with more wary judgment, we that

plainely perceiue, that there are learned A great cause memenow, who may inftly find fault, that of discoragement to learn neither they are in fuch effective, or any nedmen. way to well recompenced of Princes in these times, as many worthic men vvere hererofore by Emperors, Kings, Princes, and great Lords, in those famous daies of reverend antiquity. Infed of concluding, and acquainting yee with the inflice of their reason, I will lightly passe oner; & in fled of long speaking, onely remember ye with some histories and examples of Famous Potentates in former ages, who wer Friends, and Nursing fathers to Philoso-Porentates & phers and Schollers; to the end that their Princes of elactions beeing compared with those of der times, these dayes, it may bee knowne, whether they have cause to complaine, or no, in a

case so highly importing.

And first of all, I will beginne with the Pompey, his excellent and renowned Captain Pompey, victory a-gantt Mithri-who (as we read) after he had vanquified dates. the puiffant king Mithridates, & obtained many other victories and aduentures in war coming to Athens with al his warlike furnishment, such as the Roman Confuls and Captaines vied to have borne before the:he was aduertised that Possidonius the

E need not now complaine, that in these dayes of ours, there is such want of excel-lent spirits, in all kindes of Arts and Sciences: but if we

by cunning had inuaded and obtained the Soueraignty, perceiving that their lives

Of a happy

Of Law.

Ofpeoples

Of Warre.

Of Guardes.

Of Peace.

Of happy life

Philosopher lay sicke in his bed. Being | ly dead before the hart of the mother bedefirous to go and fee him, he would not came fo ftrangely and passion at elymoued onely honor him with his personall Visitation that when he came neere the door of the house, he caused his Standards and Imperial Enfigns to march in before him. For it was euermore his faying: That Kingdomes and Empires ought to obey wertue and Learning. Thus he behaued himfelfe to this poore learned man, which hee would not have done to the greatest Potentate

Dionylius the Tyrant, king of Syracula,

having obtained of Plato the excellent di-

uine Philosopher, that he would come &

fee him in Sicily; when hee heard of his

all, that no man should touch the house of

tanianus, it is a matter fo.perfectly known,

that it needeth no report of mine, Accor-

ding to Pliny in his feuenth Booke, when-

to deliuer fome of his Verses, all the peo-

ple would frand up on their feet, and offer

às great reuerence to him, as if it had bin

to the Emperor. And that which is much

more, Silius Italicus, a Spanish Poet, did

yearly folemnize the day of his Natiuity,

and with farre greater denotion, then hee

did his owne. The gifts and prefents dai-

ly ginen him by Octavian, Mecana, and

many more, were fo great, that Seruius

(who writeth of him) faith that his goods

(in very short time) amounted to the va-

lue of fixe thousand Sestertiaes, which a-

rife vnto two hundred and fiftie thousand

Crownes. He had in Rome a very honora-

his 7. Satyre faith, That he was one of the ri-

chest men in those daves.

focuer he entred into the Theater, there

Dyonifius the Tyrant,king oi Syracufa.

neere approching, he went to meete him on the way, causing him to sit with him in his owne Chariot, drawne with white Horsfes. Such was the reputation which wife and learned men had in those times. When Alexander the Great, had deter-Alexander mined the vtter ruine & subuersion of the the Great Thebans, he gave especiall charge first of

the Poet 1 Pindarus, but to leaue it wholly I A famous poet of Theh standing. If I should tell yee, how highly Virgill was honored and effected by Oc-

Plin.lib.7. Virgill was the must ex cellent of all Latine Poets. r) and Maia. anthorne in Mantua.

Invenin Sat. 7 ble Palace; in regard whereof, Invenall in

mNot he who in.es Conful, but young hat fhould haue bin heyr o Octavian

Vpon a day, in the presence of Octauihad b ne fue an, and Linia his wife, the mother vnto m Marcellus, Virgill vttered certaine Verses of his bookes Aneidos, and comming to the end of the fixt Booke, where hee difcourfeth most elegantly of Marcellus Jatethereat, that the fell into a fwound, not having any power to heare the rest. But being reuined to her felfe againe, the comaunded, that for each of those whereof thee had loft the hearing, Virgill thoulde haue ten Seffertiaer given him. @ The remainder (which the heard not)being one and twenty verses in number; the valewation of his reward, contained the fumme of sooo. Ducates, of our instant money.

It is found faithfully recorded that the Syraculanes had fome Athenian prisoners. that could rehearfe (by heart) certayne verfes of " Eurivides the Greeke Poet, and dayly pronounced them; by which occa- Trigical part in the time of fion only, and in honor of the Poet, they Archelau E. were delivered, & permitted freely to go of placede. home to their owne countrey. Scipio the Affrican, during his life time, had alwayes with him (in his wars) the Statue of . Anmust and when he died, he tooke especial tine port, o Anolde La order, that it might be buried in his owne borne at Tr Sepulcher with him. The Emperor Domi- rentum, and tian: canfed P Silius Italicus (an excellent Romeby Ch Poet, and borne in Spaine) to bee made to the Center three times Confull of Rome, as Martiall p A woorking witnesseth in one of his Epigrams, begin-poet, bontes ning. Augusto Piathura.

derne and later times; or what our late liuing Princes have done, either to Politian, Pontanus, or Sannazar; and to speak of our Modern Frenchmen, as Ronfard, Bel. Poen of me derne & later Lay, and other excellent Poets. But per- times, where haps you will answer me, their hopes may mertyal liuing or did very lately. them are yet living, young in yeares, but old in wifedome and understanding, and worthy to bee equalled with many of former times. But because I see so little refpect, let vs goe backe againe to thole re- The low of nowned Ancients. King Mithridates hald K. Mith

For in those dayes, the greatest honour

that could be, was (in publike places) to

fome vertuous deeds or for his dignity in

learning. For this cause the men of Athens

made one of Demosthenes, with a title of

But I know not what to fay of our mo- Mari, in Epic.

Plate and his learning in fo high reputati- his learning on, being defirous to have his statue: fent to find out 4 Syllamion to performe it, be- 9 A famous cause he was a most excellent workeman.

ered Figures & Statues : yet none might The honout be permitted, except it were of some wor done to lear thy man, made famous, and knowne by elder times

words of the inscription. If the power and The inferipti tue of Demo Ahenes. In fephus the Iew being one in number

standing in regard of the Bookes hee had made of the lewes Antiquities, they renotable Philotopher. that for his

rettues go-Athenians ten yeares. Atherens in

Chap. 16.

Gymnofe. lib. c Rewards ei-

Pin in l.8, ca.3

of Ariflotles book of crea

mers Iliads.

A famous Philosopher o' Prufa,a thinia by O lympus.

Grecian Po-

ginen vnto any other; and thefe were the strength of Demosthenes had bin equal to his (birit, wifedome, and learning : the King of Macedon could never have surmounted the

Iosephus lwas amonest the captines of Jerusalem, was ner to Rome. brought prisoner to Rome; & yet notwith-

> puted him worthy to have a Statue. The Athenians confidering the wisedome of Demetrius Phalereus, scholler vnto Theophrastus caused his statue to be erected in thirty places of this City. Now if men of merit were so highly honoured, doubtles

they were as well rewarded. For Atheneus writeth in the a book of his Gymnolophills that Aristotie for his Booke de Animalium received of Alexander 800. talents: which of the current money now in France, valeweth foure hundred & fourescore thou-

fand Crownes, which is verified by Pliny in his eight book. There he declareth, that Alexaders defire was fo great to have this book performed by Aristotle, that he fent

many thousands of men thoroughout all carrell defire | Greece and Afia, with letters and expresse commandement, that they shold be obedient to whatforuer hee required, touching the manner of hunting and flying of

Fowles, Fishes, and all the like exercises because they should know & understand the nature and properties of all kinde of Beafts, Birds, and Fishes, & then to aducrtife Aristotle thereof. Vindoubtedly if Ho-Homer the mer, the very best of Greek Poets, had libeft of all the ued in the time of Alexander, it is to bee

prefumed that he wold have bin as bountifull and beneficiall to him, as hee was to Aristotle. Because when a chest or Casket was presented vnto him, wherein K. Darius kept his most precious Vnguents, the Cheft being very pleafing to him, he faid; I will make this Chest the keeper of far richer The words of Great Alextreasure: and presently hee did put there-

into the Workes of Homer, which he euermore tooke great delight to reade in continually.

The Emperor Traiane, in regard of his learning onely, did to especially honour the Philosopher Dyon, that when he rode abroad in the fields to take the Ayre; hee would have him to fit neerest vnto him in | Crowne theyr Poets. Seleius Basius a Ly-

the very greatest honor that ever had bin | his owne Chariot, and so ride on along with him thorough Rome, making it as his tripmphall entrance.

In the warre which the Emperor Odlanius made in Egypt, against Mark Anthomy, hee fayde . That hee did forbeare to de-Stroy Alexandria, for the respect bee bare to Alexander, that builded it; but much more for his love to the Philosopher Arrius. The fame Emperor alfo anade Cornelius Gallus Tribune of the people; onely because hee Alexandria.

aWhofe birth

Plin in l.7.c.2

Greece, Scho

was a most elegant Poet. Suctonius in the life of Velpasian, theweth, what rewardes were anciently given to the Learned. For he fayth, Although Velbalian was taxed with conetou nelle : yet Of the Emperor Velpa fians rewards notwithstanding he greatly favoured exercifes and Artes, and gave as pensions to each to Learning. Master of them Such quantity of golden perces, as beeing reduced to the fummes of our moneyes (according to Beroaldus and Budaus) their stipends valewed two thousand and fine hundred Ducates, but as forme fav

By the Testimony of Pliny, in his scuenth Booke, and the ninth Chapter, writing of b Hocrates the Greeke Orator, b Afamous a man may very cafily perceyue, in what account and estimation the learned were ler to Plato. then. For hee fayeth, that this Ifocrates, having made an Oration for a certayne man; hee rewarded him with twelve Talents, which valew (according vnto our present computation) twelve thousand

Crownes. We finde it likewise written, in the Sucton in vit. life of the Emperour Antoninus, Some Imp. Antonin. vnto Seuerus, that hee gave to Appian, fo many Ducates of Gold, as there were number of Verfes in a great worke which hee had (at that time) made, concerning the Nature and property of all kindes of

The Emperour Gratian, knowing that Aulonius composed well in Verse : gane of Vigiles and him (onely for his defert that way) the Calindo, but Consulfhippe, which was the verie greater borne. test dignity, nay cuen next to that of Em-

Domitian, albeit hee was a most wicked man, yet he gaue great honors & gifts diffee wrote to the Poet d Euitathius. And in a folern the Hilloric Feast, hee caused him to fit at his Table, to Anastasius the Emperor. where-with all our grane Elders vsed to

n trainin Po-

latte is faid to be very fami cero.

onely during

Anobication and answere concerning learned Se-

Honour not

death alfo

ned men.

done to lear-

A true pronerbe.

liuing in ancient umes.

Those of more modeine dayes.

rick Poet, was much commended by Vepafian, with no lessehonourable wordes then others, and also had in giftes great fummes of money. h Arrianus for the historie which hee wrote in Greeke, of the actes of Alexander the Great, but more especially, because he was a very Learned man; was made Confull of Rome by Adrian and Antoninus. Nor were these learned men thus honoured during their life time, but a fo after their death. As may bee noted by Ptolomy, who was King of Egypt, who made a Temple and Statue to Homer, as he did to his other Goddes. For Virgillikewise, there was a Statue erected in Mantua, long time after he was dead. The excellent Poet Horace, althogh we are not certaine how wealthy he was ; vet notwithstandir g, he had great dienities of Octanius in Rome.

I could produce many examples vnto this purpose, which I forbeare, onely to auoide prolixity. But heere, if any man thall object vnto me, that wife and Learned Seneca dyed by the command of Wero; I answere, it was most bloodye Nero that did it, not any defect in his learning, and before his death, he attained to great dignities and honours in Rome, onely by the meanes of his Learning. It is an olde, but a true Prouerb; That Honors and gifts, are both the makers and maintainers of Arts. Therefore wee finde, that in those times when Emperors and Kings fauoured fludies and learning; there wanted then no store of Learned men. As in the daies of Octavius, Claudius, Adrian, Vefpafian, and Antoninus. For our modern times, when the Emperor Sigismund lived; Robert king of Sicily, Pope Nicholas the fift, King Al phonfus of Waples, and Matthias King of Hungarie, belide those of the house of Medicis in Florence. 'The flower of which Stemme, yet liueth at this day crowned in France, imitating the most gracefull steps of his euer-famous foregoers: but especially of good King Frances, in whose most happy time, France reached vnto fuch a height for Learning, that it might meritorioufly haue bene styled, another Greece or Athens.

CHAP.XVI.

That Learning is not onely necessary in Kinos and Princes: but also for Generalles. Captaines, and Commanders, that follow the Exercise and Art Military.



Could alledge manifold Could alledge manifold Histories, besides true, good, and sufficient Realions, that Princes (in ancient times) found no better forme, or directe guernement then indicates.

rule for their orderly gouernment, then Learning, and Knowledge. And because the euidence heereof remaineth so plaine and pregnant vnto vs, I will obserue some fewe examples, tending to this purpofe. When King Phillip vnderstood the birth of his fonne Alexander, and knowing A- Plutakinvi ristotle to line then in Athens, he fent a very notable Letter vnto him (recorded by in this 1, 243) Plutarke, and Aulus Gellius) wherein hee thanked the Goddes, not so much for the fafe birth of his fonne, but beecause hee was borne in the life time of Aristotle, By which few words, may be apparantly difcerned, how much the King thought lerning and knowledge fitte for his fonne, to the end, he might proue to be fuch a King and Captaine, as hee was indeede afterward. Whereupon, when hee grew vnto yeares meete for the embracing of studie; he made Aristotle his Mayster, sent him he made Artificile his Mayster, fent him Somedore great gifts, and (in mecre loue to his fon) put his deferoyed, and erected also a Schoole after the night his feather his made and the school after the night his feather his made and the school after the night his feather his made and the school after the night his feather his made and the school after the night his feather his made and the school after the night his feather his made and the school after the night his feather his fe (admired for cost and curious workeman- of Alexander (hip, fuch as no time before had afforded) wherein his fonne might receive inftru-

Antigonus, King of Macedon, knowing how needfull a thing Learning was, for his owne good gouernment: and beeing mightily prouoked by the continuall renowne of Zeno, a fingular Philosopher, grant Athons & and Prince of the Stoickes; defired ear-neftly to enioy his company, which hee further laboured by Letters, and manie Embassies. Of which Letters, Diogenes Laertius reciteth one, in this manner following.

Chap.16.

tigonus, to Zeno the Philosopher.



loue to lear-

ning, in io

Ntigonus a King , sendeth greeting to Leno the Philosopher, I know very well, that in worldly goodes, fauours of Fortune, and the reputation of

fuch things , I doe farre exceede thee . Neuertheleffe, I know withall, that in true felicitie, knowledge, discipline, studies and liberall Artes, thou reachest a higher pitch then I can doe . In regard whereof I defire, that thou wouldest come and live with me, which I pray thee to yeelde unto; that I may entoy thy company and conversation. In the doing whereof, be well assured, that thou not onely shalt be masster of me; but shalt also be a teacher to all my Macedonians . For he that in-Structeth the King, making him to become

Words befeevertuous and good: teacheth those vertues likewife to all his Subjects. To prooue the trueth heereof, it is commonly scene, that fuch as the King is , fuch are his vaffailes,

and such as the Captaine, such his Souldi-Farewell.

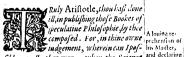
These Letters being received by the venerable Philosopher; in regard of his deepe steppe into age, it was not possible for him to condifcend thereto, or (in per-What the phi-losopher himfon) to fatisfie the Kings earnest request. like couldnot But he fent him two of his Schollers, excelling the rest in knowledge & learning, doe, he did by

by whom he was worthily taught and infiructed.

The learning of Aristotle, under whom Alexander was rutourd five whole yeares together, tooke fuch roote and efficacie in the Scholler; that he became so excellent a King, as no one in the world was ahe made himfelfe a Scholler, before hee was a Souldier: and afterward as often as ble to compare with him. Being in the midft of his Armies, he would not gine he had any leyfure, he frequented the Academies of the Poets, and in walking, he ouer study, but enermore layd (with his Sword) on the pillow of his bed, the Iliades of Homer, and other bookes. And it himselfe from an imminent perill, he adappeared, that fuch was his loue to Learuentured (wimming, bearing the bookes ning, that he could as easily apprehend which he had written in one of his hands; ir, as he conquered kingdoms by force of Plutare, in vita Armes. Plutarke, Aulus Gellius, and Themistogles doe affirme, that Alexander had published certayne bookes of naturall and what his learning was, his Commen-Philosophy, whereof he had been an Auditor vnder Aristotle; in regard whereof,

he wrote a Letter vnto him.

The Letter of King An- | The Letter of great Alexander, to his Maister Aristotle.



fibly excell other men, when the Science and declaring wherein thou haft instructed me, commeth to Learning. to be common to all men? I would have thee to know, that I more couct to preceed all men in Learning and Knowledge, then in riches, pompe powver and dominion.

Farevvell.

When this was understoode by Ariflotle, to comfort and please so puissant a Prince, he commanded that his Bookes (formerly common) (hould be fo obleured, that it was not possible to understand them, but by his owne interpretation. Pirrhus that excellent Captaine, and king Pirrhus king or of the Epirotes, who maintained great an execulent warres against the Romaines, and diverse lover of lear times ouercame them; did exercise him ning, and a felfe, not onely in the reading of the Sciences: but also composed fundry books, among which was his precepts of warre. As the like hath beene done lately in our time, by that famous man, Guillaume du Bellay, Lord of Langey.

would both reade and write. Vppon a.

time, being at Alexandria in Egypt, to face

taries (ver remaining with vs) can suffici-

ently witnesse.

What shall we say of Inline Cafar, the Iulius Cafar first Emperour, and (without all compari-fon) the very best Captaine of all them moustor learthat had the managing of war? We may ning, as to truely fay of him, that he was no leffe in-

clined to Learning, then to Armes. For want Mercu in

declaring thereby, that he affected them | Cafarloued as dearely, as his owne life: having as learning as much care to faue the one, as the other; lite.

Alexander was Scholler to Arifforle five yeares to etther, and ued Learning earneftly

And Gellius in

The care of the Romanes

Not onely Cafar, but all the Romanes alfo, do beare witheffe of that which wee fay, who (in my poore opinion) were reputed and knowne to be good Captaines and Gouernors. For, the first thing which drens lerning they vndertook for their children in their infancie, was to have them well enftructed, and therefore provided good schol-

masters for them, which they chargeably

fent for out of Greece. Both the Catoes

were knowne to be excellent schollers, &

Cate Cenforinu

cato Vticensis.

A Philofopher and Poet of Sicon. a Ciry of Phænicia, by the lea fide not farre from Tyre. Cicero in Lib. de Finib.

Examples of Scipio Affika-

Hanniball.

Plato febro mafter to D onyfius the Tyrant.

when he pleased. Scipio Affricanus, the victorious triumpher ouer Hanniball, was extreamely addicted to Learning, and euermore had the Poet Ennius with him. After all his Victories, he gaue himselfe againe afresh to Learning and reading. Hanniball his Competitor, although he was of Affrica, had alwayes bookes with him in his Tents and Pauillions: in the time of warre, hee would not give over reading, but in one place or other (howfocuer it were) hee would have Silanus and Safylas (two lerned Lacedemonians) with him, by whome he was well instructed in the Greck Language. We have formerly read, that Dionyfixs the Tyrant of Sicily, had Plato to be his Schoolemaster, and kept company alfo with many other learned men. Afterward, when hee was expulsed out of his kingdome, one (in mocking manner) demanded of him, whereto now ferued the Philosophy which he had learned of Plato, to whom hee returned this answer, It

ferueth mee to support my present necessitie

with patience. Themistocles, a most excel-

ent Captaine, declared himselfe to be no

lessediligent in learning, then hee was in ! Armes : his Mafter was anaxagoras, the A Philos. Milesian. Epaminondas, and the other bloode, but Captaines of Greece, were all studious more noble and worthy Orators. Mithridates, in the wifedome. warres which he had against the Romanes,

for the space of forty years together, norwithstanding all the furious assaults, desisted not from his studying, having evermore divers schoolemasters and Philosophers with him. Octanius Augustus, limited to himfelfe The lone of

foldiers. The great Cenfor was wondercertaine houres in the day, onely for ftu- gustus to let fully addicted to learning, as the Bookes written by him do plainely testifye: hee dy; and when he was in warre, yet he kept ning. was a worthy Orator, Hiftorian, and enhis times of fludying still : having theredued with many vertues, and euen toward fore divers worthy Mafters with him, as the ending of his dayes, hee learned the Apollodorus of Pergama, the Philosopher Greeke tongue. The other Cato, styled of Asperarius, Asinius Pollio, Valerius, Messa-Vtica, though he was not of fuch a tharpe la, Virgil, Onid, and many other, And beindingenious spirite in apprehension of fore this Emperour, there was a famous Sciences; yet norwithstanding, hee kept Captaine, named b Lucius Lucullus, who b A Noblemi company with most excellent Schooleduring the wars, gaue himfelf to study; & of Romest-mous forler-when the wars ceased, hee applyed all his mafters; among whom was the Philofodiligence, in cherishing and maintaining provedend pher * Antipater. And he gaue his minde learned men. Paulus Amilius, victorious great taken fo much to fludie, that Cicero favth in his Booke De Finibus, he did nothing elfe but ouer the king of Persia, ouer & beside his reade; yea, whenfocuer he face in the Sebeeing a very learned man, endeauounate house, hee alwayes had some Booke redalfo that his children might bee the or other about him, to reade at all times like; fo that at his inftant request, the A- caPhilofe thenians gaue him Metrodorus to bee pher, Scholle their Schoole-master. But wherefore do I take so much paines, in naming so

many one after another? Pompey, Quin. tus Fabius Maximus, Marcus Brutus Traiane. Adrian. and Marke Anthonie were al learned men, and compiled Bookes, Orations, and Letters of great learning, and in elder time memorable example. In briefe, if I errenot greatly in my famous for iudgement, it may plainly appeare, that

few Captaines are found of ancient times who were excellent in nothing fo much as by their learning. There are two only, of whom wee finde nothing remaining written expressing whether they were lerned, or no: the one being named Caites Caius Marian Marius, and the other Marcus Marcellus. Marcellus. Marcellus And yet I reade, that Marcellus highlie loued and fanoured men of knowledge: whereby it is to bee' credited, that furely himselfe was learned, though nothing (to that effect) bee written of him. And it may the more manifeftly appeare, by the prohibition he made (as we have former-

ly alledged) at the furprizall of Syracufa,

that Archimedes should not bee flayne.

but they were

And althogh he miscaried, notwithstanding his ftrict command to the contrary: vet it was not without great greefe of the Said Marcellus.

Chap.17.

Let then the Captaines of these our The Authors dayes, fay what they lift, that learning is not fo expedient for them (I meane fuch as thrust the stile of Captaines on themfclues) coueting with their owne opinion, or rather obstinacy, to cloud and coner their dulnesse and ignorance. It is sufficient for vs, that wee fee how highly our grave Predecesfors esteemed Bookes and Learning, equall with the courage and manhood of infinite Captaines, worthily affected and addicted to learning: as we finde it ynpartially fet downe, in that

CHAP. XVII.

indicious Booke of warre, written by Ro-

Of divers secret maturall properties, being in the viver : and how he may be fed on, and eaten without am danger.



bertus Valturinus.

HE Viper is a kinde of Serpent, fufficiently knowne to many: and although it bee little, yet notwithstanding it is very venomous, for with a little pricking it can kill a man. But as our

Lord God made not any thing but to things for the profitable al his venome, scrueth man for divers mevic of man. dicines and maladies, especially for any paine in the throate. It is a thing very ex-

bealeth. Tiriacle, or Treacle, as we vie to Of the vertue terme it, is properly good against venom: of Titiacle or Treacle, and how at first

but in the making thereof, and in the confection, there is necessarily required some part of this beaft, to the end it may be the more perfect, and of the greater efficacy. And it was named Tiriacle, because that the worde Thirien in Grecke, fignifieth a Viper or venomous Beaft. Some (and not vnfittingly) doe give another etymologye, and reason for this name. But before we report the benefits enfuing by the

Vipet,me-thinkes it were not amisse, to

remember what is faid by Pliny, Isidorus,

cellently good(by a fecret property in na-

ture) to beare the head of a Vinerabout

aman: for huing, it killeth, and dead, it

and Achanus. They report, that when this Plinin Lo. 62 Serpent concerneth, the Male putteth his 19der in lib 11. head in at the mouth of the Female, wher- de Etimolog.

deli nus in lib. by thee receiveth such immeasurable delectation; that with her ouer-tharp teeth, the byteth off the head of the Male, becomming thereby widdowed, yet violent in affaulting. The matter conceived by

her, groweth to bee Egges, which forme of her brood.

themselves within her body, according Female Vipe as the spawne of fithes doth : and of those and delivery Egges do Vipers enfue, at fuch time as the is to deliver her young ones, yeelding enery day, one, till they amount to twenty.

Now because they are so many in number they which remaine behinde, hau ng no power to attend their fit time, do teare the belly of their Damme, so that by her death, they enter into the world, and line. If it be fo, furely it is a matter very mar-

uarlous : for it should sceme thereby, that (cuen naturally) the children do reuenge the death of their father.

With this opinion of Pliny, do many | plut in Traft. other Authors confent; as Plutarch in cont. Illufor. his Treatife against Scoffers. Neuertheleffe, there are a great many other, who do contrary it, denying that the Viper dyeth in her teeming: with which opinion, I also rest resolued, because the other seemeth to menot naturall ; neyther have I seene the experience thereof, or know any person that hath seene it. In like manner, Philostratus is flatly againft it, in the Ph:loftratus in life of Apollo Thyaneus, introducing Apolvit. Apol. Thya profitable vie: euen fo this creature, with /6 himfelfe, who reporteth, that hee had scene a Viper, that after she had fully yeelded all her young ones; licked them very louingly, and lived healthfully. As much may be gathered from the words of Ari-

Dammes belly; they iffue foorth enery day

one to the number of twenty and more: thefe

Arift.in lib.c . forle, who fetteth them downe thus. The de animal c.9. Viper onely (among all other Serpents) deli-His words

uerethher young ones, because she first formconcerning esh them in her body of Egges, as the fawne of Fishes is . Afterward, when they are formyoung ones. ed, they remaine three daies wrapped up in a tender thinne skin; which breaketh at the limitted time, and so affoordeth the young

ones liberty (in regard whereof, Apuleius, in Apuleius in

his Apologie, calleth them Outperes, and not Vipers, as much to fay, as engendered of Egges) and very often it happeneth, that that wrapper breaking (of it felfe) in the

are the very words of Aristotle. In ano-

de Animal c. 12

conie@ure o

uerfed point-

4. Booke

Beafts, speaking of the teeming of Ser-Aill in lib.t.

pents he faith. Before the Viver veeldeth her young ones, the formeth them within her bodr of Egges. And I am perswaded, that hence ensueth those speeches, of the young ones tearing the belly of their Damme. For it seemeth to them that

stand in defence thereof, that when Aristotle speaketh of this first fawning or teeming: hee purposed to fay, that they did then breake or teare the belly of their damme.

But leaving these circumstances, I fay that the viper, how dangerous foeuer it be, yeeldeth great helpe and fuccour to man. Dioscorides faith, that the flesh of a Diefcor.in bl viper, being boyled or fodden, may fafe-How the fl-(ly be eaten: being very medicinable for may be lately the nerues, and for the fight. But in preparation to the eating thereof, the head and taile must be taken away: then being fleaed and well dreffed, it is to be tempered with firong Annife-feedes. He faith allo, that there is made of this flesh, a certaine kinde of Salt, or falt-powder, excel-

A Salt or poudermade of the viper to procure a

catin.

lently anailing to procure a good appetite, being prepared in this manner. You good appetite must take a new earthen pot, and put the viper thereinto, vied as formerly hath beene declared, then put Salt and stamped figges to it, with a competent quantiry of hony, and the pot being well couered, let it boyle and bake a long while in an Ouen. Which being done, beate and reduce it into a powder; and whofoener afterward will make vie thereof with his other meate, thall finde it very pleafant and profitable for the ftomacke.

Paulus Aeginetus faith alfo, that the

flesh of a viper is singularly good against

leaprousie and meazeldnesse; making

therefore great efteeme of the Salt-pow-

der fore-mentioned, and affirming with

Plinius, that a certaine nation in India,

Paulus Aegines, in lib. s . cap. s 4

Plin Jib. 7. ca.

Diofor, in til

Theophraft.in lib.de reb 24 9

Galen in lib de

cateth the flesh of the viper. Diescorides auoucheth, that who focuer will cate the fleth of the viper, shall live long time, and very healthfully. Against the byting of this Serpent, there are store of remedies. whereof Theophrastus maintaineth one, faving, Wholoeuer is bitten thereby, mellodious sounds and songs doe greatly benefite him, because Musique is very medicinable, as we have already, and shall prooue hecreafrer. Galen faith, that this beaft ca-

ther place, I meane in his third Booke of | teth not any thing all the time of winter : but hideth her felfe (as dead) in the earth; and whofoeuer then findeth, toucheth, and handleth her, the cannot bite him : but when fummer cometh, the then refumeth all her forces. The like affirmeth Plinie, of Lizards, Snakes, and all other Plinin literal kinde of creeping creatures.

Aristotle faith that they containe them- drifted in las felues three or foure moneths, without de damade feeding on any thing . Aelianus auouch- Aelianus in in eth, that those vipers which breed in the de Animalio Provinces of Arabia, although they doe cap.4. bite, yet their biting is not venimous; because they doe feede on the Baulme tree, and fleepe vnder the shadow thereof. A- Arifetinis ristotle further faith, that they are very de- vbifupa. firous to drinke wine; and many people doe take them, by fetting veffells of wine in the places where they refort ; for they will become drunk by drinking, and after they take them fleeping. There are many things more to be spoken, concerning the qualities and properties of the viper, which I doe purposely omit for breuities

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the admirable property of a little creature. the biting whereof is healed by the found of Musique: likewise of many other instrmities, which are onely holpen by the fame Medicine.



Hat which we haue fayd in our precedent chapter, vnder the authority of Theephraftur, concerning the biting of the viper, and that it may be cured by Musique; will make

our present report to be the better credited, because it tendeth to the same pur- alexander A pose. Alexander of Alexandria, in his book lexandinit. of Veniall dayes, and Petrus Gellius, a moderne Authour, doe affirme and fay, that in lib, de Rebni. in Apulia, a Countrey of Ibalie, there is a past in kinde of Spider, which the Inhabitants in libra-sept doctearme Tarantula. P.C. Rodianus calleth it "Phalangium", which at the beginning of furmer is fo venimous, that whofocuer is bitten or flung thereby , except knots, whole he be very fuddenly fuccoured; he loofeth fing is perillous & deadly.

Chap.19.

Of Romane Faustine.

stantly. But if any one (being so bitten) chance to escape death : vet he remaineth infenfible, and wholy voyd of any capacity: for which dangerous inconvenience, experience found out a remedy, and that is Mufique.

on of good ere-witneffes

med, the best helpe is, to bring instantly before him, fuch as vie to play on Vialles, Flutes, and other Instruments, to play diuers Leffons, & fing many Songs : which Musique being heard by the party wounded he will presently begin to daunce de-

diffinated. Alexander Alexandrinus pro-Alexander Aceedeth farther affirming, that he beheld lexand in lib.1. one wounded by this Spider, to dance & Gen.cap.17. leane about incessantly, and the Musici-

bene dead. The Musicians no sooner began to play againe, but hee returned to A ftrange and wonderfull himfelfe, and mounting vp vpon his feet, working in nature, by the danced againe as luftily as formerly hee had done, and fo continued dancing still, til he found the harme affwaged, and himfelte entirely reconered. Heereunto he addeth, that when it hath happened, that a

An excellent Physition of Prufa in ithynia.

A Mufitian

Theophrafing in Flutes. Theophrastus and Aulus Gellius lib de Reb. 9.2.7 fay; that Mussique appealeth the paine of lib.q.cap.y.

all fenfe and understanding, and dyeth in-

The judgement of Authours hereon, speaking as eye-witnesses, and having feene the proofe thereof, is thus, So foone

livering variety of gestures and motions

with his body, euen as if all his life time he

had well inured himselfe to dancing, in

which fury and power of dancing he con-

tinueth, vitill fuch time as the venome be

ans (finding themselves wearied) gave o-

uer playing, whereupon, the poore offen-

ded dancer, hauing vitterly loft all his for-

ces fell downe on the ground as if he had

man hath not beene thorowly cured by

Musique in this manner; within some

fhort while after hearing the found of In-

fruments, hee hath recourred footing a-

gaine, and bene enforced to hold on dan-

cing, and neuer to ceasse, till his perfect &

absolute healing, which (questionlesse) is

of Instruments, and voyces (weetly fing-

ing to them, bath wrought extraordinary

cures on Lunaticks and mad men. We

reade also, that * Esmeneas the Thehane,

healed many difeases and infirmities, only

by his sweete and melodious playing on

the Sciatica, and of the Gout. We like.

* Asclepiades writeth, that the found

admirable in nature.

The affirmati-(fay they) as any one is bitten or enueno-

wife finde it recorded in the facred Scripture, that David (by Mufique) cafed Saul 1 Sam. t 6, 23. of the paffio, which the euill spirit wroght in him : fo great is this property, proceeding from the entire amity, which the nature of man beareth to Musique. And if good confideration be made heereof, wee hes cured by thall not account it ftrange, that infinite the meanes o infirmities have bene cured by the means Mufique. of Mufique. For it hath enidently beene feene, that there are divers beatls and other creatures, that kill by laughing, others by weeping, and others in fleeping;according as Plutar ch writeth of Cleopatra, and as divers other good Historians have faithfully affirmed.

CHAP. XIX.

Of a strange medicine, whereby Faustine of Rome, wife wato the Emperour Marcus Aurelius, was cured of an infirmity of dishonest love : and of many other remedies against that powerfull passion.



Oncerning that affection, or imprisonment of the will, as we may justly terme it, which thisldone of ordinarily is stiled by the the will. name of Loue whether it be

a powerfull passion, working wonderfull effects in the foule or no : there need no further question to bee made, but examination of fuch mens indgements, as (by good experience) haue knowne it, and whose examples remaine notorious to vs. More effecially of very worthy and excellent persons, who have suffered their wils to be so strangely transported thereby that extremity of death hath enfued thereon. Iulius Capitolinus, among diuers other examples, reporteth what hap- limit in tive, a di pened to Faustine, Daughter to Antonius, Mem.cap. 3. and VVife to the Emperour Marcu Aurelius, who became fo excessively enamo- The Empresse red on a Fencer or Sword-player; that by extreme in ouer-abounding in defire to enjoy his attection to a

on, as very greatly endangered her life. This beeing understood by Marcus Aurelius, immediately hee assembled a great number of Astrologers and Physitions, to finde fome aduice and remedy

Indian Capita-

company, thee fell into fuch a confumpti-

for this extraordinary folly. In the end, it |

was concluded that the Fencer should be

put to death, and some of his blood bee

fecretly given to Faustine to drinke, and

after the had thus ignorantly drunke ther-

of, the Emperour her husband should

company with her in bed, This remedy

wrought very wonderfully, for it quite

tooke from her that fantasticke affection,

fo that (neuer after) fice did fo much as

once remember him. And the Hiftory

faieth, that of this her companying with

the Emperor, Antoninas Commodus was

begotten, who became fo cruell & bloo-

dy, that he refembled rather the Fencer,

of whose blood his Motherhad drunke

before his conception; then any iote of

Marcus Aurelius, to whom he was Sonne

indeed; in regard wherof, Commodus was

a daily companion with the Gladiatores or

Fencers, as Eutropius witnesseth, in the

Physitions among the Greekes and A-

rabes, do reckon this disease of Loue with

the most greenous infirmities of the bo-

dy, and thereupon haue disputed many

remedies. * Cdamus the Milefian (ac-

cording as Suidas reporteth, in his Booke

of Collections) wrote a Booke discour-

fing on perticular remedy, whereby vtter-

ly to expell this dangerous ficknesse of

loue : as Ouid also hath saide sufficiently,

in his remedies against loue. Wherefore

among all other remedies, which Physiti-

ons have adnifed against this infirmity,

this is one; that the patient endangered,

should undertake some great affaires,im-

porting highly his owne honour and pro-

fite, onely to this end, that his spirit being

busic about duscritty of things; hee may

the better retire his imagination, from

the party by whom he is offended. They

do moreouer with him, to thun and for-

fake all embracings, or ouer kinde con-

uerfation with other women. Pliny fay-

eth, that against this enflaming heate, it is

very good to obserue where a Mule hath

tumbled or wallowed, and to gather the

duft of that ground, which must bee cast

vpon the amorous party, and powder his

garments therewith, or elfe with the weate of a well heated Mule, as Cardanus

life of the faid Commodus.

4 Booke

Chap.20. Of fond and ridiculous Love.

CHAP, XX.

Of the strange and furious love of a young Athenian : and of the ridiculous love of King Xerxes: and how Beasts have many simes affected both men and women.

Naturall loue s cutt allow-

The History

of the young Athenian

that it came

OR a man to loue a woman, and a woman a man, it is a matter, conformable to nature, and worthy to be beleeued and embraced: but whe

blinde-fold folly attaineth to fuch a head, as those things wherof I am instantly to speake; it may well appeare to be imposfible, and no way deferuing any credite. Very learned and good Historiographers. haue written and recorded for truth, that in the City of Athens there lived a young man, descended of anhonest parentage, of competent wealth, and sufficiently knowne, who having oftentimes carneftly obserued a Marble Statue, most curioutly and ingeniously wrought, and crected in a publike place of Athens, became fo extremely enamored thereof, as he had no power to absent himselfe fro the place ung loue, yet where it was fixed, but would hugge and embrace it very affectionately, & alwayes when he was not by it shee found himfelfe very ill and fickly disposed. At length, this paffion grew to fuch extremity, as hee ran to the Senate house, and there before the reuerend Senatours, he made very liberall offers of money, humbly entreating the fo much to fauour him, that hee might have the Statue in his owne possession. This feemed no way pleating to the Senate, neyther could their authority fretch fo farre, as eyther to give or fell a publike Statue. VVhenhe perceived his request to be denied, hee became much afflicted with greefe and anguish of minde, & repayring to the Statue, enriched the head thereof with a Crowne of gold, and the body with garments and iewels of vnvaluable price. This being done, hee would stand amorously beholding it, and many times fall on his knees before it, offering all worthip and adoration thereto: and fo conclusion of long he continued in this vireproueable abrain ficke folly, till (being strictly commanded the

contrary by the Senate) he flew himfelfe before it with rage and anger.

Doubtleffeithis was a cale yer admirable, and yet I must acquaint you with another, much more thrange & ridiculous yet credibly anoughed by formany good Authors, conderning the loue of King The ridicu-Xerxes as irmay well be faid that hee ex-King Xerzes ceeded all men of the world in folly. He grew enamored of a Platanevor Planetree a Tree fufficiently knowne except in fome few parts, and he wouldkiffel&eni brace it with like affection, as if it had ben

fhall we fay then of brute Beafts; that have Beaftsenaaffected both men and women, and the mored of men

395

lous loue of

haue power

this delight. But one time, the most vnhappy of all There is filother, the childe would needs put off his dome any de light, but it cloathes (as formerly hee had not done) hath fome difbecause he purposed to swimme farre in- ger attending

Councell cinen by Afte logers and Physitian for astrange remedy.

The concep tion of the bloody Emperour Anto ninus Comodus.

Entropius in vis, Commond.

A worth Writer of Miletum. Saida in lib. a.de Collett. Quid in cemed Amor.

Remedies ad uifed against fond and foolifh Loue.

Plin.in lib. 10 CAP. SA.

a,de nat. fab.

alfo anoucheth, in his Booke of Subtil-Physitions likewise haue taught the meanes, whereby may be observed, which person is beloued of the amorous party. And that is the felfe-fame rule, whereby * Erafistratus, Physition to king Seleuchus, * Anexect. understoode the love that Antiochus did lent Phylice beare to Queene Stratonica, his step-moAustralia ther. For hee beeing ficke, euch to the vtmost extremity, and affecting much rather to dye, then any way to discouer the cause of this disease, and that it proceeded from the loue he bare vnto his Fathers wife: Vpon a fudden thee entred into the Chamber, even as the Physition was The extreme the feeling the pulse of his patient, which loue of Antimooued fo firongly vppon the Queenes entrance, that Erafifratus enidently gathered thereby, that not onely he was enamored of her, but alfo, that it was the maine cause of his desperate disease. Heerenpon, he practifed how to acquaint the King therewith: which at length /by good and acceptable means) he did, that would require too long time heere to relate, because the History is sufficiently

The case being likewise experimented The kinchin by the Father himfelfe, and he perceiting the danger wherein his Son was; thought Physicion good (although it went quite against his indgement Sonnes intention, who defired death, rather then to bee recourred by his Fathers losse) to deprive himselfe of his Queene. and give her vnto his fickly Sonne. And to speake vprightly, the age, beauty of the Lady, and equality for marriage, agreed much more conformably with the youthfull Sonne, then the ouer-aged Father. And this was the cause, that Antiochus liued healthfully and pleafantly (for many veares after) with his best beloued Stratonica; as the History more at large declareth, being recorded by Plutarch, in the Plutin with life of Demetrius. And this is the rea- Demetr. fon, why Physitions do aduise to raste the Why Physic pulse of any amorous person, and to re- onshale count divers names to him or her, among which, may be the name of the party affercled: for fo foone as that is once vnderstood, the pulse wil beate apace & strongly, by which meanes, the party beloued is knowne. By divers other fignes, it may be perceited, when any one is in lone, and to whom the affection tendeth: which figns I ceasse to speake of, because they are knowne to too many.

CHAP.

Fully excee-

A desperate

to the Banck, and thew himfelfe vnto the

childe, who (at the first) was much affrigh-

ly made before him, hee waxed bold and

hardy, and would venter into the water to

him to land. In this pleasure and passime,

diners dayes were spent, for the Dolphin

enermore would be ready at the Bancke, when as the childe came to make vie of

a beautifull woman. If these acciendents have happened among men endued with reason; what of brute fame confirmed by great and famous Hiforians? As of Glauce to extremely affeded by a Rammerthat it would never bee from her; and Dolphines also have bene

very admirably affectionate towards mo. A lianue reciteth in his Booke of Beafts, a defigue in lib matter well deferring to be related? He 4.de animal. faith, a Dolphine elpying young children cap.10.
playing on the Sea-thore; one among all the ftrange

the reft, which feemed to him the most affection of a louely and beautifull, hee became fo ena- Dolphin to a mored of, that ar cuery time when the childer Dolphine faw him, hee would drawn bere

ted,and fled away from him. But afterward, by the perfeuerance which the Dolphine vied from day to day, expressing manifelt fignes of entire love to the child, he grew the leffe timorous, and by the pastimes which the Dolphine continual-

him not fearing to mount vpon his back, making a figne, and commanding (asit The childe were) the Dolphine, to fwim a great way feemed to into the Sea with him, and then (vppon a contrary figne or command, and when he ouer the Dolwas weary) to returne backe againe with phine.

The childe flaine moft

vinhappily.

ting himfelfe on the Dolphines backe, or how to fir for his fafeft holding on in chaced, timpone of the flimp-pointed finnes, which riferhout of Dolphines wings (for fo are they tearmed by Plim, and others) ran fo for into the childes belly, & wounded him in such fort, twat instantly he fell dravne dead in the water .: Which when the Dolphine perceitled and the blood of the dead childe trickling downe his fides;

he tookenp his deare lou'd childe fo well

ashe sould, and returning backe to land

fuddenly, cuen as if hee intended to re-

uenge this offence vopon himfelfe hee

fwam furiously on land out of the water,

and preferally dved by the childe: "...

The destrict the Dolphine

cap. 14. Another Hi-

fluiry of a loueros childe.

Plin fecund in g.Lib.de Epift.

ad: This Hiftoric is also recorded by Pli-Pilmin lib 12. my withmany other examples of Doloffines that have declared great lone and kindunffebto men . Particularly heereporterhouse in the time of the Emperour Dalahim that a Dolphine fin the very like rosinndi)ttooke delight in an infant, on the Sea coast ricere to Puteoli, and whenweubrithischilde, beting halned Simon (for inisifaid, that Dolphines will suddenly runde to the very found of that name) came to the shoare; the childe would

mountypon his backe; and be carried in-

to the Sea, paffing and returning alwaies

fafely to land . He faith moreover, that

the childe dying by ficknesse, & the Dolphine often comming to the viuall meeting place,& not finding the childe there. dyed with greefe and forrow. The younged Pliny, Nephew to great Pliny, declareth many meruailes of a Dolphine, in the 9. Booke of his Epiftles: efpecially in that Epistle which beginneth, Indici in materiam veram.

CHAP, XXI.

Of a man, that by receiving a wound at his enemies hand was delivered from a dead. ly danger wherein he had long time lined: With fundry other examples to the fame parpofe.

TEc have formerly related, that Musique hath beene the meanes

to the Seas and being not carefull in fea- | of curing fome difeafes, and no way to be reputed incredible: confidering that wee finde by other stranger meanes, very great infirmities haue likewise beene holpen. Plutarch, in a notable Treatife by him Plut invalle composed, declaring how men may deriue profite or benefite from their enemies reporteth; that a man had a certaine enemy, named Promotheus, who hated him extremely, and fought all the meanes he could denife to kill him. It fortuned, that meeting with him on a day, hee gaue him divers hurts, and among the rest, hee chanced to wound an olde vicer, that had long Iven in the flesh, couered ouer with

skinne, a matter of great danger to his

life, and (for which) all helpe was viterly

denved him. Neuertheleffe, this wound prooued the onely meanes of his helpe, may fomin and fafe deliverance from the former da- do a man ger: for in thinking to kill him, and fo to his will quench his malice, hee gaue him life and foundnesse of health: Valerius reciteth Valer Maria the very fame history (among other note- lib.de Mind worthy matters) in his Booke of miracles: but he affirmeth the mans name that was healed by this wound, to bee Isfon Phe-

Plim writeth of another man, named Phaintain Phalerens, who had an incurable difcafe, op it. in regard of a fluxe of blood, continually flowing out at his mouth, caused by breaking a veine within his body. And finding himselfe in desperate condition of any curing, he entred fuddenly into an Army, without any Armes for his defence, that Where help being there flaine among the enemies, his is leaflespe hope and helpe might both finish toge- acd,thereit ther. It came to passe, that receiving a dangerous wound vpon the breast, there iffued forth fuch an abundance of blood from that hurt that the fluxe (having formerly his vent at the mouth only) ceasted,

and Chyrurgions afterward, with the aduice of skilfull Phylitions, confolidating the broken veine, hee remained foundly healed of all harmes. I finde it also recorded of Quintus Fa-

bize, that he having had a Feauer quartane for many yeares together; giving battaile one day to the * Allobroges , now named . People of Sauoyans, the extreme heate in defire Sauoyend Daulphiny. which he had then to fight; quite expelled the Feauer, and it neuer sought him afterward.

I my felfe can teftifie, that I both faw,

Chap.22.

Of the Vine and of VVine.

Authors kno

and well knew the man, who had received a wound in his thigh, whereof he became starke lame, and voyde of all hope of any remedy, happening afterward into an vnexpected quarrell, he received an other wound you the fame thigh, and inft in the place where the former chaunced.

The Chirurgions in dressing this latter harme, did very well perceive that the nerues which had beene cut before be-

ganne to firetch and restore themselves in such fort, that being cured of this fecond hurt, his thigh was foundly recouered, and hee went as voright as ever hee did, and without the least limping. So

did it happen to Telephus, one of the A king of My-fis, Hercules fon by Auge. fonnes to Hercules, and King of Myfia, who being wounded in his owne Countrey by Achilles, could not any way be cured, till eight yeres after he was wounded agayne by the fame Achilles, and in the felfe same part of his body, before Trey, then belieged, and the rust of the fame Speare that formerly had hurt him,

CHAP. XXII.

produced to be his onely help.

Who weas the first that planted the Vine: And wwho beganne to put wwater into wine. To wohom, and in what maner the Romaines did prohibite Wine : With many other notable things tending to the same purpose.

Wine thepro-fitablest of all ther liquors.

A notable Philosopher borne in Sev-

F all the fruites which the earth yeeldeth (I mean those earth yeeldeth(I meanunch wherof liquor is made) there is none (in my indgement) more profitable then good

wine; prouided, that it be temperately taken. For this cause was it that " Anacharfis fayd, The vine producesh shree Grapes: The first of Pleasure : The second of Drunkennesse: And the third of Teares and Sadneffe. So that hee which paffeth the first Cuppe, that is to fay, a little, and moderatly received; proceedeth on to shame and danger.

Prophane Authours, that neuer had any understanding of the facred Scriptures, doe name vs diverse inventers of

wine. Diodorus Siculus in his fourth book! attributeth the inuention of wine, and Of the first infirst planting of the Vine, to Dionystus the uéter of wine. fonne of Jupiter, named Bacchine, and Liber pater, fo flyled, for the liberty of wine. For this invention a Temple was erected to him, underneath the Capitoll at Rome: where they celebrated his Feaftes, which

were called Dionysians, or Bacchanalians, very diffioneit, and full of preat lubricity. That the inuention came from these Dianvisans, Virosli giueth affurance at the Vir.in Geort entrance into his fecond booke of Geor-Marcian Capel. gickes. Howbeit, Marcianus Capellus faith, that Dionyfius only instructed the Greeks.

Translated by in the manner of making wine. Others the Gods into fay , that Icarius father to Erigone , first heaven called taught the industry of making wine to the First. Athenians: and becomming afterwards drunke thereby, the people flew him. In Italie, they fay, that Saturne did first plant the Vine there, and brought the young fuckers and plants from the lile of Candie

Platarcin Ma. thither. And Plutarke writeth , that Ar- rat lib. 30cas,7 rus Hetruseus. brought Vines first into France. But the trueth of historic, is,

and the first that made himselfe drunke therewith: whereof are Authours (befides that which is recorded in the ninth Gene.9 \$1,23 chapter of Genelis) Lactantius, Firmianus. Lattant Fruit and Infephus. Noab; at his comming forth an in : , ib, de of the Arke, planted the Vine with his Inflit diain. owne properhand, and drunke the juyce of the raisin, whereby he became grunke: and discourring his nakednesse in sleeping, it happened to him by his fonnes, ac-

that the first inventer of wine was Nosh.

cording as we reade in the fame.chapter

of Genelis. Afterwards, men attayning to know the fauour of wine, did drinke it, at the Wine drunke first, wholly pure of it felfe, and without at the first the commission of any water: for, as Pli- purc of it felf. my auoucheth, one named Stafins was the Who first min first that did put water into wine, to tem- gled water perate and quallifie it. By the meanes of with wine. which aduice, great good and healthfulnesse ensued to the world : because, wine being so made moderate, procured verie good and excellent effects. In like manner Plato, alleadged by Macrobius, in his M crobinsin fecond booke, favth : Wine moderately taken, strengtheneth the understanding of a man, augmenteth his force and vigour, ma. keth the heart chearefull and deliberate, and

taketh away irkefome thoughts, and all offen-

1.Tim.5.23.

He of Prufa

wine by Phifitions in ma ny medicines

Plate in Secrat.

wine commen dedby natural philosophers.

Wine denied to women and Paler. Maxim Plindi, 14. ca.8

Fabius Pi**slor** is

The causing of parents kil

Plunlib. 23 c.1. \ fine persurbations . Plinie (2vth, The wfe of) Wine, receiving it temperately, multiplieth our forces encreaseth bloud and colour in the face: The nerues are fortified by wine, fight strengthened, the stomacke made vigorous, and appetite awaked : It promoketh wrine. impeacheth vomiting, expelleth melancholie. maketh the heart Brightly, and serueth for many other good things. Asclepiades the Physition, wrote a booke by it felfe, wholy concerning the vertues of wine. And faint Paul writing to Timothy? councelleth him to drinke a little wine tempered, to Arengthen his stomacke.

Physitions do make vse of wine in many medicines, because wine restoreth all the humours, re-enforceth blood where it fayleth, gladdeth a melancholy dispofition, diffipateth and dryeth vo flegme. humecteth and helpeth to purge choller. Plate, introducing Secrates, fayth thus in commending wine: Like as moderate rains doe encrease our hearbs, and tempests and inundations of waters doe rent them up and destroy them: Euen fo, wine temperately taken , cheareth the fpirites , and fortifieth the vertues of the body, whereas contrariwife,ouer much, and intemperately received, destroyethall. Not so much as the very odour and smell of wine, but it is highly commended (beyond all other odours) by our naturall Philosophers : because it is very comfortative, giveth great vigour to the spirites, and is exceeding lively and piercing. But yet wee must consider withall, that the chiefe vertue of wine is cuermore understood, when it is qualified and made temperate.

The ancient Romanes did wholly take away the vie of wine from women and children: as Valerius favth, speaking of the customes and lawes of the Romanes, So that , as Plinie affirmeth, at fuch time as Romulus reigned in Rome, a husband flew his wife, because thee had drunke wine: and in regard that the murder followed vpon this occasion, Romalus pardoned it. The vice of drinking wine, was held to be so odious in women, that Pabina Pictor reporteth, because a Romane woman had deceived the Clarke of a celler, onely to drinke wine which was kept therein, her parents caused her to be starued to death. And heereupon grew the custome of fathers and mothers kissing fing their children on the mouthes; onely to

perceive therby, whether they had drunk wine or no. We finde it in good record, that W. Domitius being ludge of Rome, he deprined a woman of her Dowry, because shee had drunke more wine, then was allowed her for her health . Salomon in his Proucrbs favth, It is not for Kings to Provided drinke wine, or Princes strong drinke, lest he drinke and forget the Decree, and change the judgement of all the children of affliction. And yet we reade, that the Kings of Ægypt were permitted to drinke wine, fo it were moderately, and in a certayne mea-

Vpon a time, Romulus beeing then King of Rome, and innited to a bountifull banquet: he would drinke but very little The worder a matter of great importance. Auicen faith; of Ross.

In giuino children mine. dition of fire to fire . Aristotle expressely Aristotle forbad the giving of wine to children, and Leep and Leep and likewise to the Nursses that gaue them fucke. Plate by the laws which he made in his Booke, for the common-wealth, although he feemes in the first book, to admit a tolleration of wines, yet in the fecond he fayth; A man ought to drink a little, a ice for dir and well qualified. This allowance stretcht not to any one, till he had attained to 18. yeares of age, and fo to continue till hee man were forty: but it must be alwayes doone in the presence of olde men, to the end that he might be reprodued, when in the least manner hee exceeded. From forty yeares vpward, hee permitted that a little more then hee had formerly demaunded, should be given him; to make the colde and melancholy disposition (of that age) the more temperate; and yet it must bee doone in a certayne measure too. It was Indge and his charge alfo, that feruants should drink Magistrate no wine, neyther Iudges, Magistrates, or wine. any that held any publique jurisdiction: and as for yong men that studyed, he aduised them, not to drinke any . Auicen alloweth Platees law, in this poynt, as a rule for Philicke : And thereto likewise Galen consenteth . Alexander Aphrodifeus fayth Alexan April in his Problemes , Hee which drinketh no- in Picitim thing but water onely, hath his fight and other lences more lively, then he that drinketh wine.

Now, as concerning in what fashion and maner, wine should be tempered and qualified, there are many rules, and diver-

Chap.23.

of water with wine. Heliadus in Li.3

Wine giuen for three fc. uerall purpo-

Apuleius Pani-

Temperance commended in Chriftian

of place in tib.8

lihroni in cpi 9

fities of opinions. Hefiodus the Greek Poet faith. That in one quarte of wine there should be three quarts of water mingled. Atheneus favth, that the auncient Greekes vsed to put five partes of water into two partes of wine, and most times three parts of water, into one of wine, which is the rule of Hesiodus. Heere also is to be obferued, that the Greekes did not put water into their wine, but wine into water, and Theophrastus affureth vs, that ter, and Theophraffus affureth vs, that the one and the other are much the better mingled. Morsouer, auncient men did not onely moderate wine in this manner, but albeit it was thus tempered, they would drinke very little thereof. Eubulus the Greeke Poet doth affirme, introducing Bacchus, to Speake thus vnto the Sages : I will neuer make more then three giftes of wine: The first, for health : The Second, for taste: And the third, for flespe; the rest favoureth of diforder and drunkenneffe . Apuleius Pamiasis, who wrote of meates, deliuereth the like ludgement, attributing this maner to three feuerall daughters. The first, to the Graces : The fecond, to Venus : And the third, to shame and danger. Iulius Cafar was very temperate in drinking wine : as Suctonius witheffeth by the tellimonic of Sutt.lib.6.:a.z. Cato, who was vtter enemie to Cafar. Demosthenes, the excellent Oratour, was the like. And Apollonius Thyaneus of whom fo many famous things are written, did

> In our Christian Religion, temperance (in drinking) is much commended. Saint lames the leffer, did neuer drinke wine, or frong drinke, nor did euer cate any fleft; immitating Laint John the Baptift. Wee finde the like affirmed of Saint Stephen, King of Portugall. Infephus in his Antiquities commending the holineffe of the Effeans, (who helde one of the three Sects amongst the lewes, whereof the other two were Pharifes and Saduces) fayth : That the Effeans did neuer drinke wine. In an Epiffle Saint Hierome repropued Priefles, that addicted themfelues to drinke wine, telling them, That Saint Paul the Apostle didforbid it, and that in the ancient Law, fuch as ferued in the Temple, did not drinke wine, or any other drinke that might procure drunkenneife.

neuer drinke any Wine, or feede vpon

Such as are tearmed good drinkers, vse to fay, that good wine ought to have foure properties, to answere foure sences or vnderstandings of the body : To Fourefenerall the tafte, by fauour: To the finell, by a ceffarily reperfect odour : To the fight, by a neate quired to be in and cleare colour : And to the eare, by good wine. a good report of the Countrey where it was made. Of this good wine men vie to make vineger, which hath many good properties and inconveniences likewife: wherein I will be filent, because they are matters too vulgar and common.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of many dammages and daungers, which enfue by the immoderate drinking of wine. And how it bath beene held as a healthfull thing (by some Phisitions) to be drunke sometimes.



Lthough the liquor called Wine, be apt and whole fome for diuers infirmities: yet notwithstanding, so many harmes and annoyances

do arife, from the excessive immoderate taking thereof, that the cuills doe finerabound all the goods enfuing thereby. So that it appeareth, that it were better not to know it . but rather to content our felues with water, which God hath ginen vs for our drinke; because hee thought nothing meeter for vs, and all other creatures doe well content themselves there- doe well fet's with. Hecreto also may be added, that fie themselues with the drinwine hath beene the onely occasion, by king of water. which many have become diffracted in their sences; some have lost their lines, and others not meanely endaungered the faluation of their foules.

Now, although the harmes enfuing to men (by Wine) are too apparently knowne: yet notwithstanding, they are fo far from thunning & anoyding them, that they daily fecke after new occasions, and Arange denifed appetites for drink-dailyinnented ing. And in our best French language, to procure apthese new appetites are titled by some; petitestor dinking. Mm 2

Plin.in lih G. cap.13.

The proper mong allother drinkes. Plana lb. zbi fupra.

The benefit of mmode rate drinking

The words o Cato. Plin.m lib,6. c.p.t 4. Sences in epift. ad Lucul.

Dyonif Arcop.

Ephcf. 5.18.

Prou.zu.1.10

by others, A thooing horne, to draw on a quart or two of good wine, fo that a flice of a Gambone of Bacon, is held (in this case) for a precious relique, and sew hours in the day or night doth passe ouer them, but the cup is kift with found denotion in drinking; fometimes taking fine or fixe cups more then are necessary. Pliny faieth there are some men, who will drinke before they be thirfly, and wine onely (among all other drinkes) hath this property, to cause it selfe to be drunke, before a man haue any need of it. He saith moreouer, that fome do drinke in such fort as they suffly deferue; for it gives them (immediately) the due punishment to such finne: for the vapour mounting vp into the braine, bereaueth them of all vnderstanding, so that they remaine as me senseleffe. And having plaid it off luftily (as they vie to tearme it) for fome quantity of time: it plaieth with them as the Cat doth with the Mouse, either kils them outright, or (at least) engendereth fo many harmes and infirmities, as are much worse then death it felfejas Gouts, Palfies in the head, hands and feete, imbrodering the eyes with a scarlet coulor, burning vp the Liuer, and fiering the face, belide divers other fuch undecent and fearle-grace-full qualities, no way fit to be yled among me indeed.

Cato faid, Drunkennesse is a voluntary folly. And Pliny laith, It confoundeth the meniory, and procureth dreadfull dreames. Seneca writing to Lucullus, faieth : Wine maketh the leages and armes impotent, and cauleth men to become luxurious . Dyonifins Areopagita, alleadging Plate to haue Spoken the words, faith : Drunkenneffe is a lively and merry Minitrill, and yet it makes our legges to faile under us, giving (as wee vie to fay in France) a trip to our heeles, and laying vs along on the ground. Saint Paul writing viito the Fphelians, adulfed them to thunne wine because therein is luxury. And Salomon in his Proverbs, among the imperfections of wine, faith; It is a deceiuer, and whosoener drinketh excessively thereof, cannot conceale a fecret faithfully. Heereupon then arole the ancient Proucrbe , That wine walketh without any thooes, that is to fay, It treadeth fecretly, foftly, and without any noyle, because no one thould perceive the power thereof,

A spur or pronocation to a cup of wine; I nor how it discouereth our secret and vicious qualities. To this purpose the Poet Æschylus faide: A Glasse or Mirrour ma. The word o keth knowne the gestures of the body, and Achille wine ferueth as a Glaffe to the foule or heart of a man. Plato likewise faid : Wine principally laieth open the manner and conditions Legib. of everyman. We have example thereof in Neah and Lot for Weah being drunk General with wine.discouered his parts of shame. whereby he became mocked and fcorned. And against Lot, Sodome could have no Gen, 19,33, power : but wine ouercame him, & made 34. him to lve with his owne Daughters : these are the benefits ensuing by wine.

Among the Lawes which Solon one Among the Lawes which solon one of the feuen grave Sages of Greece) gave the Athenito the Athenians: it was especially ordayned, that the Prince, when hee became drunke, should be flaine . Pittaciu, another of those wise men, ordayned, that a drunken man committing any delict or great offence, should bee doubly puni- gainst drunthed : once for the facte it felfe, and next kennelle. for drunkennesse, which caused him to do

Aristotle in his Problems , yeeldeth Ariftin Pul a reason, why such men as are ouer-much addicted to wine, are greatly difabled in the begetting of children: and likewife, why some drunkards are very pleasant in their drinke; and others terrible, some fad and weeping, others jocond and dan-

Neuerthelesse, some Physitions (among who are Auscene and Ralis) have helde opinion, that it is a wholfome thing to be drunke sometimes: but the reasons which they give in this case, doth not cotent me any way, neyther doe I allow of their opinion. And yet I must needes confesse, that very great personages hauc beene subjected to wine; whereas on the contrary, if they had stood cleare and free from it, their glory and renowne had bin farre greater.

Alexander the Great, was as greatly Alexander taxed with this vice, fo that (as divers being ouer good Historians do affirme) being over- come with come with this fury; he flew one of his most intimate friends; and comming (afterward) to acknowledgement of his fault he would have flaine himfelfe. Befide, it is further alledged, that the cheefest cause of his murders and slaughters, was onely this poyfon to all goodnesse.

thony one of the Romane Triumuiri-

Chap. 24.

Cleomedes King of Spar

> Archefilaus the Philotopher,

Dian fius the

younger.

Anacteon the

The Emperor Bonolus, a great drinker.

Sing Antiothus the great dunker and

Marke Anthony, who was one of the three Marke Ancheefe Commanders in Rome, and married with the Sifter to Octanius the Emperour: being addicted to wine, and (confequently) to lasciniousnesse, with Cleopatra Queene of Egypt; lost at length both his state and life, and was vanguished by Octanius, because hee suffered himselfe to be conquered by wine. The Emperour Tiberius was defectine in many things: Tiberius the but in regard hee was a great drinker, it great drinker was the fole cause of all his other imperfections: and whereas his name was Tiberius, as a nick-name, they would often call him Biberius, and his ende was mifera-

> Dionyline the younger, a Tyrant of Sicily was fo extremely affected to wine ; that it did eate his eyes, and made him to become starke blinde. Cleomedes, King of the Spartanes, would needs purfue and imitate the Septhians, in excelline drinking of wine: but in the end, he became a foole, quite infenfed, and without judgement. It is saide, that the Philosopher Archesilans died in notorious drunkenneffe.

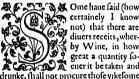
The Poet Anacreon was a very great drinker, and as he was drinking, he strangled or choaked himfelfe, with the stone of a Grape or Raisin, which entred into his throate vnadnifedly.

Flauius the Bishop, an Historian of worthy credite, writerh, that the Emperor Bonofus was fo addicted to wine that Anrelianus faid of him : Hee was not borne to line,but to drinke. And heerein hee had an admirable quality, for notwithstanding the immeasurable quantity of wine, which he dranke daily, yet hee was neuer drunke. I gueffe that this enfued, by his continuall anoydance of vrine, which went from him as fast, as hee tooke in his wine. Neuertheleffe, his ende was anfwerable to his deferuing, for beeing vanquished by the Emperour Probus, he was hanged or firangled. It is recorded that King Antiochus, who was conquered by the Romanes, vsed to drink so much wine, that he flept the most part of his time. In regard whereof, he gaue the cheefest authority of his kingdomes government, to two of his choylest favourites, and because himselfe was addicted to banquets. and the amorous embracings of a young Gentlewoman : when he came to fight a-

gainst the Romanes, his Army became broken, and veterly vanquished. Athenew writeth, that Aclebylus the Greeke Poet, would divers times be drunk, wher- The proofe. vpon Sophocles faid vnto him. Aeschilus, to Aeschilus those things which theu dininest or writest, the Greeke are done by chance or at adventure : and not by any knowledge remaining in thee, or that thou dost rightly understand them.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Certaine aduites and enstructions, against (uch forward affection to Wine . And fome reasons delivered, why two things doe appeare to bee three, to fuch as bee drunke.



certainely I know not) that there are diuers receits, whereby Wine, in how great a quantity foener it be taken and drunke, shall not procure those vikesome effects, which are related in the former

Pliny and Solinus do both of them af- | Plin in lib. firme, that there is a blacke Stone, having on. 1. Vermillion coullored veynes in it, and named Dionife, which hath fuch a property, as if it bee layde in water, it yeeldeth the perfect fauour and rellish of wine; and whofoener drinketh of that water, euen fomuch as himfelfe pleafeth, thall neuer be drunke therewith. Physitions say, that if a man will preuent drunkennetle; The ludgehe must first eate Honye, or some other stionsfor the fweete things: And hee that is drunke, drunkennelle must be viged to vomite, and then give him a morfell of bread fleeped in Honye, which will immediately recouer him, because Honye hindereth all vapours from afcending vppc into the Head.

Drufin, Sonne to the Emperour Tiberine, had a Physition, who gaue him very Mm 3 admi116.5 cap.7.

The ludge-

fomewhat of the argument, onely for the

delight and contentment of fuch mindes,

as are enclined to the Science whereof it

discourseth. Wherefore concerning our

pose, the first and cheese Elements of such

a Science: which because they are com-

mon, shal require the lesse labor to proue

them. The first is that whereof wee are

now treating, the greatnesse of the earth,

carrying with it both Land and Sea: be-

cause God did dispose them in such man-

ner, when he faid ; Let the dry land appeare,

for they both being vnited togither, made

one body perfectly round. So likewise is

it to bee vinderstoode in all those actions

which are given to the earth, the Sea is

also therein comprized : For, when a man

fayth, the earth hath fo many degrees in

roundnesse, or it containeth so many de-

grees from one place to another; the fea

is therein as well understood as the land.

So in like manner are confidered the Ec-

clipfes, heights and breadths, to hold one

and the fame certitude : and yet notwith-

standing, Mountaines, and Valleyes are

not comprehended in this roundure, nor

Woodes or Forrests likewise, which the

earth contayneth in it selfe; because such

things are not woorthie of any account,

with the greatnesse of this wonderful bo-

This rotundity of Land and Water is

feated in the midft of the circuite of Hea-

uen, in such manner, as the point & cen-

and Land, is likewife the center and num-

ber of the whole world, as well of heauen,

as of the Blements. Quer and beside this

definition, there is another, true and ab-

folute, to wit, that the land and water (in

regard of the flarry heaven, which we call

the Firmament) are fo little; that all thefe

two Elements ferue thereto but for a cen-

ter, and is even but as a fmall point, in re-

foed of his circumference . So that in

whatfocuer part thereof a man best liketh

to helpe himselfe, by meanes of a Qua-

drant or an Aftrolabe; his labour forteth

for the center of the earth. For in whatfo-

cuer place of the earth we are (prouided

that it be not in any deepe or hollow bot-

tome) we shall discouer the moity of hea-

to the like effect, as if hee made the fame

Drulas,his Phylician. whole phyfich

drunker neffe

Bitter Almondian e-Speciall help against drun-

Pin in lib 12. (ap.14. The Radia) route.

Saffion.

Plin.in lib.z bi Jupra.cap.cod

Arift.in Problem.part.z. Ancene in lib. Animal.t.

The finewer which conduft the ver tue of feeing to the eyes.

admirable physick, to preserve him from | ry strongly and quicke; because the Orbeing drunke, albeit he daily drank more wine then any other one man of his time: for he could out-drinke all commers, yet never he drunke, or bereft of his judgement. But in the ende it was knowne, that (vfually) before hee entred drinking, he would eate fine or fixe bitter almonds, whose power and naturall property was fuch, as it impeached the wine from alienating his spirits. And experience thereof was afterward made, for when they abridged him from the meanes of eating bitter Almonds, and he vling to drinke as formerly he did; he became as foon drunk as any other man. That these Almonds haue this peculiar property, Pliny affirmeth it, adding further; that eating a Raddish roote before hard drinking, auoideth drunkennesse. He saith also, that Colewortes eaten before hand, keepeth a man from being diftempered with wine: and being eaten after drunkennesse, they remoue instantly the distemperature, as Saffron also hath the selfe-same power. Ther are many other remedies for this imperfection, wherein I will be filent; speaking onely of one, recited by Pliny. He faith, that taking a quantity of wine, mingled with the egges of a Chough, and, beeing drunke two or three mornings together, he that drinketh it, will hatewine in fuch fort, as he will neuer after drinke thereof. Herreto he addeth, that a Swallow being taken and burned to afhes, then beaten into powder and mingled with a little Myrrhe in the wine; whofoeuer receyueth a draught of this potion, shall neuer be drunke, for this was experimented by Horus, King of Affyria. Aristotle, in the third part of his Pro-

blems, and Auicenne, in his fixt Booke of Beafts, do yeeld a reason, why in drunkenneffe, when a man looketh vpon any one thing, it appeares to him as if it were two, and a beit they doe both produce divers reafons, yet will I alledge but one from each of them. The first shall be Aristotles, who faith, that thorow excessive heat of vapours in the wine, afcending up into the braine; the little nerges, called *Optici nerui, which go on directly to the eyes, do worke and moone with fuch power, that the vifiall vertue, and the spirits of fight (altering in their motion) do cause whatfoeuer drunken men gaze on, to flirre ve-

gane of fight moueth it felfe in that manner and maketh the common fense to receiue the Images of things, in a multiplyed quality to the eye. For fuch kinde of motion, maketh fingle things to sceme double, and because this motion is so sudden and infenfible, it canfeth two things to feeme as one to the fight. As any man may eafily make tryall of, by laying Aprostees his finger vpon his eye-lid, and then re-mouing it thence, it will appeare to him, that it is the thingremoueth it felfe, which he beholdeth. Auicenne deliuereth another reason saving: The vapours of wine, Auicen in the which ascend up into the head of him that is drunke, are moist, and because the little nerves of wine mode. and muscles which reach to the eyes, doe en ting you grosse or well themselves by this humidity 3 drunken muscles To much more the one (then the other) doe thereby mount them selves the one higher and the other lower . From hence enfueth that the visible rayes do not equally divide them-Celues foorth-right from both the eyes neither by a direct or right line : which is the cause. that the Images of things visible, doe extend to eyther eye by them clues. In this respect only things fimple and fingle, appeare to be double, the commo fenfe receyuing & apprehending two images for one: and for the maintenance of this opinion, Auicenne yeeldeth the felfefame example, as Aristotle did.

CHAP. XXV.

In what manner a man may know and measure, the rotundity or round compasse of the whole earth: and how much it is reputed to containe, in the circumference or circkling round about.



VII well I know, that the fubicat of this Chapter, will By hardly feeme pleafing vnto all Readers; in regarde, that for the better vnderstäding ther-

of fom of the principles of the Mathematicks, are necessarily

Principles of Irequired to be well apprehended. NeuerheMathema. theleffe, I am the more willing to speake

Chap.25.

The chiete !- | present purpose, it is needfull to presup-

Genelis 1.9.

Eccliples, heights, and breadthes, mountaines,

Adions attri-

bured to the

How the rouand least (ca. ter of that round body, composed of Sca

The Starrie heauen or fir mament.

licipe of a Quadrant or Aftrolabe to aman in chis

uen; which proceedeth by reason of the incomprehensible distance, that is from hence beneath vp to the Firmament, with his incompareable greatnesse. That this The leaft Star must needs be true, it is most evident, that all the earth. the verie least Starre which we discerne in by enident heaven, is much more greater then the pione. whole earth; and yet neuertheleffe, it appeareth to vs but as a finall point, in regard of the heavens large spaciousnesse; by the least of which things, a man may make proofe in fufficient demonstration, but it sufficeth that experience hath apparantly showne the same.

Ptolomy approunth it, in the 10, chap- pages ballet ter of his first booke of Geography, Al- de Company phraganus, in his fourth Difference, Clea- 17,100 medes, in his first Booke ; Geber, in his te chounts that cond Book; and John de Sacrobofco, as the lead Sacrobof like do all other that have written on the Spheare.

This then being thus presupposed, let vs imagine in our mindes, that the vvater and Land do make one round circkle, and that heaven is another, but much more great, as indeede it is; and that thefe two How this matcircles have no other, but one common ter may bee center within them. Which being fo imagined, let vs lay two lines of equall great- minde of man neffe, which may extend themselves (in common) to the circumferences of al the two circles, according as Euclides enfirm-Acth, cutting and dividing the two Circles by equal portions, each portion being justly equalled, in regard of each one of them : that is to fay, that if those two lines paffe on right in such manner, they will make eight parts of a great circle, and fo shall make as much of the leffer, I vnderstand and meane each eight part, in refect of each ones greatnesse.

Our elders in former times, in theyr manner of measitring the world, gane adnice to divide the heaven into three himdred and threefcore equall partes, which we do now cal degrees, & by confequent, measuring of the roundnesse of the earth into as manie diusion of parts, by imaginations of lines, parting heaven, from the center, and making the dinifion in fuch manner, that the like quantitie which each one of the degrees hath, in refact of the whole heaven; the verie like thal be that of each one of the degrees for the earth, having regard to the roundure and circuite thereof. And as these portions or degrees, if you pleafe fo to terme

ned in the

Enclides in lib.

4.de E'ement.

The aduice of our Fore-Carbers, tor

them.

Concerning the nature of a degree, and how our Elders obserued thereof, acor ding voto the

height of the

scope of miles; the like may be easily gathered, by multiplying what distance is contained in all the reft. To know then the nature of a degree, they made this obfernation. The Pole is a fixed point in heaven, whereon the whole heaven mathe knowledg keth his mouing, yet it remaineth firme & stable. Therefore with an Astrolabe, or any other instrument proper therto, being in some apt vncouered place, they would take the height which the Pole contained about the Horizon, within the limite of the felfesame sight, and noting the place which appeared convenable to the eleuation or height of the foresaide Pole: they went directly on thereto, without wandering to the Meridian, votill fuch time (as with the felfelame inftrument) they found it in one degree more higher, then in the first place, and therby they knew, that they had gone one degree of the earth fro that place whence they first parted, just to that ground where they were arrived, confidering, that they had paced by the respect of heaven, in regarde of the fore-named rules of both the circles. Then they would measure that which this degree contayned, either by Stades, or thousands of paces; and this being thus knowne by them, they would make their account after this manner. It one degree contained fo many miles, the whole roundnes of the earth did containe as many: confidering, that therein was to be observed three hundred and threefcore degrees, fuch and as great as the fame were. This was the forme and manner by them observed, and it may wel bee continued to these times, for measu-

The greatnes

ring of the whole earth, as being the most certaine and infallible. And yet neuertheleffe we are to know. what greatnesse each degree of the earth gree within it what greathen e cach degree of the earth felfhowmout containeth in it felfe, and fo (by confeit contained. (quent) how much it tendeth to in the rotundity, measuring it according vnto the whole greatnesse, answerable to the experience of both ancient and modern men. skilfull, and well studied therein. The most common opinion of all other, is: that each degree or portion of three hundred and threefcore, containeth fine hundred Stades of ground, and enery Stade is valewed to fix score and fine paces by our Geometricians, and according to theyr

them, are equal among themselves, so that | Geometrical paces, each pace containing | The know. fome one may appeare to contayne the as much as two of our common paces. So students that the degree containes fixty two thou- oneurical p fand and an halfe, which amount to fixtie co. two thousand Geometricall paces. Ptolomy auoucheth the fame; as the like doeth de Giaya k Martianus Capellus, and the most part of the wisest ancient Cosmographers: befide, this is the opinion in common, of the greater part of our moderne men. Orentius Phineus holdeth the fame judg-ment, and fayeth, that this may eafily bee experimented by traugiling from Paris to Tholouse. Glareanus, & Anthony de Lebrix, Glarinian, being both of them learned men, and diligent fearchers into these matters : they do both affirme, that they have made the like experience, holding the same for most certaine. Albeit Eratosthenes, and fome other Gracians hold opinion, that Theopinica all degrees had feauen hundred Stades: oftonica wheerin (it may feeme) they were abu- cians concufed, by measuring their places ouershort. ning degrees I fay then, that each of their degrees confifting of three hundred and fixty, far off from fine hundred Stades: the whol three hundred and fixty, wil containe togither, twenty two thousand, and fine hundred thousand paces, which do make an hundred and eighty thousand Stades. By the Aneflinate which account, the round compas of the of the whole whole earth, comprehending therein the compane of whole machine of water, beeing reduced press, and by to a thousand paces, will containe twentic two millions, and five hundred thousand paces. And if you would know how many French leagues or miles the whole Earth containeth, we must then allow vnto each

League, the length of two Italian miles .

Then, if we divide twenty two thousand.

fine hundred paces in twaine, we shal find

that the circuite of the earth, contayneth

eleuen thousand, two hundred and fiftie

Leagues of France. And if we divide the

by foure; all the enuironing of the Earth,

will containe fine thousand, fixe hundred,

and twentie fine miles of Germanie; for Division ac four Italian miles, do make but one Ger- cording to maine mile. Thus have we discoursed on Octamine the earths dimension, according vnto the most common opinion received among

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the reason, why Snow (being covered with (traw) doth preserve it felfe in his entire coldnesse and warme water in his beate: considering, that two contrary effects are wrought by one and the selfesame thing: with some other secrets beside.

The works of Nature yeeld reat benefite

Chap.26.

Natures workes, nothing can fo lightly prefent it felf, or appeare to bee of fo flenons notable mat-🗹 O men of spirite, such as af-

ter or other may be found therein, to veild contentment to their mindes, after they haue attained to the knowledge thereof. No doubt but there are many men, of whom if it were demanded, vppon vvhat occasion, Snow (beeing couered with fraw) conferueth it felfe (for long time) in his true coldnesse, and without melting, they hardly knew how to make anie answer. Whereunto Alexander Aphrodidis Approvis. fers, that excellent Peripatetian, maketh

this reply. Straw hath no manifest or known

quality at all, for it is neither hot nor colde;

therefore divers have reputed and termed it,

anurall cold

Surwathing to be a thing without any quality. For this without any cause, beeing a matter fo fingularly temquality at all, perate and delicate, euen as reaching to yet apprehen delithe quast fuch a degree, that it may well be faide to hyof any
hing there
with conjoyteth it felfe into the quality of anie such thing, as is thereto annexed. So that co-

uering or laying Snow therein, which is colde, the straw apprehendeth the colde quality thereof, and by that means is holpen and affilted, in the true coldnesse of Snow i guen as a thing of one qualitie aydeth another without yeelding any heate thereto, because it is not in it selfe. Therefore, frow being accompanied with his owne coldnesse, & defended against heat, which fraw preferheth against the left en-

effect wrought by the lame means to hot ing it in his

not concred with ftraw at all. By the felfefame reason, a contrarie esfeet happeneth in warme or hotte water; defending the ayre that it cannot coole it,

trance sit is thus conferred in his entyre

condition for long time, cuen as if it were

the strawe immediately entertaineth the quality of the warme water; and being fo fodainly heated, it helpeth & conferueth the water in his warmth, and keepeth the avre off, that elfe would coole it. The same reason guides vs to understand other doubts and difficulties, which fome curious questionists may impose vpon vs, like vnto those before alledged. I am sure wee are not to learn, that ouer and beside our more hote in inward naturall heate, that which occasi- all the yeare oneth our warmnesse in Summer time, is elie bende. the ayre onely, which (in that season) is much more hot then in any other time of the yeare; so that the warmer the ayre is, fo much the more are we fentible of hear. If it be fother, how commeth it to passe, that we feele more freffinesse and cooleneffe, and leffe heate, when wee take the ayre in Sommer, and in moning and walking to receive it; confidering, that (acking to receive it; confidering, that (accaufeth our heate to be the greater? For the ayre, by reason of this agitation, must needs cause the more warmnesse both in it felfe and vs. then if wee refted and fate

for it being likewife concred with Strawe,

in auicr. The reason ensucth thus: VVce have then more warmth in our bodyes, then there is in the ayrer as wel in regard of our owne naturall hear, as also that which the then is in the ayre worketh in vs. For the ayre coming Ayre. with a fresh and coole gale (I speake this because it is more temperate then we ate) it maketh vs fome-what the more temperate: but being ftill and neere vs, it warmeth it felfe in our heate. Euen in the like manner as we have spoken of straw; for fo How the quait conferreth (yea augmenteth) our heate his firm it as is firred, and freshly bodies. mooued, in comming more temperately voon vs. then we our felues are; that tem-

aucilion. Neuertheleffe, it is to bee noted, that if Difference of we find an ayre more hot then that wher-in we dwell; agitation or fliring in fuch an ayre will not proone to good as our an ayre will not proone for good as our owne, becanfe wee shall therefeele farre greater heate, as in diners places oftentimes we do . An argument in this cafe,

perature and difference which wee then

feele of leffer heate, doth in the like man-

ner qualific and moderate ours in vs. This

is the answere of the fore-named Alexan-

der, but especially of Aristotle, voto this

More heat in our bodyes in Sommer time

An infallable tule for meafuring by de-

five fecto to the pace.

A measure of

ground con-

taining 125.

paces, al after

Example of manshand in hot water, for heate or temperature,

the months o

lunc and July

Ariflot,in lib.2

if a man put his hand rashly thereinto, he can hardly fuffer or endure it. Notwithstanding, let him hold it firmely therein, and it veeldeth then leffe cause of passion then if he mooued it vo and downe. In regard, that the leffer part of the water enuironeth the coole hand, whereby it caufeth fome small temperature round about it: but being plunged and mooued about the water, it reneweth fresh heate, and at each time appropriateth new power to it felfe; for the more potent, must needes worke nouelly vppon that which is much weaker.

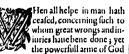
It may be likewise demanded for what cause it is more hot at the end of lune, & all along the moneth of July, the Sun being then the furthest off from vs, then it is at the beginning of Iune; confidering we more directly fmitten with his beames? Heereunto answereth Aristotle, in his second Booke of Meteors, and the ninth not the cause thereof, nevther is there any more heate felt by the Sunnes beeing necrest to vs, then when hee hath longest time to abide ouer vs. For in the months of lune and July, hee hath a great length of time in approaching towards vs 3 as al-fo in declining, hee caufeth the greater heate, because (in descending) here-heateth that part and tract of the ayre, which hee formerly had well warmed in moun-

CHAP. XXVII.

ting aloft.

Of fodaine death hapning water diners great Rer (ons, that have thereto bene wilhed or threatned, by fuch as they have unjust lie put to death before, and their deaths have enfued to them in fuch manner . & at fuch times, as have beene assigned wnto them: With the notable history of an Archby shop of Mentz or Magonce.

God neuer failed in the luft caule of wronged inmocents, to lend his help. when al way er in man hath tayled.



may bee framed by hotte water, that | hath neuer failed them. And albeit it hath not enfued to speedily, or elfe to visibly as they could have wished; yet GOD, who knoweth both how and when to be auenged on them that are the oppressors of innocents, hath wrought fo graciouflie for his own glory that trecheries have come to light in due and meete times, & mens false judgements haue felt his seucre condemnation, and publikely enough for other mens forewarning. In this case wee could alleadge many memorable examples; but beeing loth to trouble you with ouer many, these few commendable Collections shall serue for this time.

I read of a Knight amongest the Templers (of whome wee hane spoken in our of skught former Volume) who beeing (in the opinion of many) fentenced to death verie todeadirevniustly; as the Officers led him towardes are then in the Solftice of the Sunne, and the place of execution, hee espyed Pope Clement, the fift of that name (by vvhoic meanes he was condemned to death)looking out at a window; and by him stoode Chapter, that the heate of the Sunne is Phillip le Bel, then King of France. The Knight being an Italian, borne at Naples, beholding the Pope with an vindaunted countenance, with a lowde voyce spake thus vnto him.

Most cruell Clement, seeing that there is no Iudge in this world, before whome a poore The Knighter innocent man may call in question the viniuft fentence which thou hast given against mee. Lappeale from thee, a most valust ludge, to France, ash the vprightest sudge of all other lefus Christ death himfelfe, before whom I give thee warning, and likewife King Phillip there by thee, to make your appearance, to answere the falle indgement of death which you have given against me. This appearance of yours before the Tribunall feate of God, I do assigne to bee made within leffe then a yeare, to do me right there, where I may fafely have my caufe deter mined, without any auarice or passion at all, as here you both have dealt with ma. The poore Knights defire forted with his wordes, for on the Kand about the same limited time the Pope be- Pope. ing pained with a great greefe in his flo-mack, dieds fo did K. Philip but howfocuer it hapned, it was thought to proceed from the just judgement of God.

The very like fortune hapned to Ferdinand the fourth, King of Gattile, who hauing caufed two worthy Knightes to bee executed, more by his owne wrathfull & Cathle & line of the cathle & line of the cathle & Cathle & line of the cathle angry spleen, then any warrant of inflice, Kinghi

being no way to bee diffwaded from this violent cruelty, either by teares, intreats. or earnest solicitations; they (in very like manner) cited the King before the Tribunall of lefus Chrift, and to make his appearance within thirty dayes. And it is credibly auguched, that on the last of those thirty dayes, the King dyed. Retiff. Falgof.

The historie of a Captaine belonging the Genewayes, who cruelly put to her innocent Captaine

Chap.17.

The fodaine esth of the Geneway Captaine the

der it.Fred. Wed Roif in Hiff de Keb.di

The history of Henry arch Minoppe of Menta in

The like lot also befell to a Captain of the Gallies, which belonged to the inhabitants of Geneway, whereof Baptista Fulgofo maketh this report. This Captaine making a fally forth vpon the Sea, tooke a Foyft or final Gally appertaining to them of Cathelegna; wherein there was another Captaine that never had done any injurie to the Genewayes. Notwithstanding, in re-These matters thus understoode by the gard of the malice which the Genewayes Pope, who alwayes thought him to bee a

bare to the Cathelognians, hee gaue command, that this Captaine thus taken prifoner, hould forthwith behanged. The Captaine, shedding many teares, humbly requested, that he might not so shameful-ly be put to death, considering that he had neuer offended him, or his Nation. But in the end, finding no fauour or mercy in him, he made his recourse to the Diuine The wronged Ludge of 41 men, speaking thus to the cru-ords before ell Captaine; Secing show wilt needes exegreat dignities, as being a man of rich fpicute on me this most vniust fentence, I have no other friend but God to appeale unto who is the init avencer of insuried innocents. And therefore I humbly defire, that (this instant

him, to yeeld an account for the warong thou hait done me, Not many houres, after the Geneway Captaine also dyed, and doubtleffe went to render a reason for his most extreme cruelty. I could alledge many examples more, aptly futed to this purpose; but for the strangest of all, I will relate what hapned at Magonce or Mentz in Germany, which

day) thy soule may appeare with mine before

generally cost most deare voto the whole Citty, according as it is briefely reported by Gontier, that renowned Poet, who wrote the life and actions of the Emperour Fredericke, first of that name. Conradus alfo the Bythop, declareth the fame in his hiflory, among many things hapning in the time of that Fredericke, and of Hehrie the fixt his fonne, the Hiftory enfueth in this

In the Citty of Magonce or Ments in Germany, in the yeare one thouland, fine hundred and fitty, little more or leffe, ther

man fingular in all vertues. This Archbythop, according to the duty and office of a faithfull Pattor, as indeed hee was, did fenerely chaftife publike finnes and offences because he was very lealous of Gods honour, and loue of one neighbour vnio another, the which made him to have the greater care of his flocke. Heereuppon wicked and dissolute persons growe hatefull against him, denising many false and cious enumies flanderous accusations, where-with the Pope was plentifully informed, imposing fo many crimes and delicts youn him, that he was reputed vnmeete for fuch a digni-

liued an Arch Bylhop, named Henrie, at

Vertue neuer

iust and holy man; being no way able to deny audience to fuch a crowde of accufers as defired iuftice; at last he aduertifed the Arch-bythop of their foule acculations. The good reuerend man, to make The Pope accleare his innocence, elected (among all quantum the his other friends) a man whom hee most Archeythap affected, and on whom hee had beflowed cutations. more especiall fauours, then on any man elfe befide. Hee was a Priest by proteffi-on, named Aenolde, advanced vito many

rite, eloquence, and abounding in the wealth of the world beside. Arnolde comming to Rome, beeing enftrnæed and pressed on by the divell; con-of Arnolde at cluded in his private thoughts, to deprive Rome, and has his Lord of fo high a dignitie, and make wickeddea. application thereof to himfelfe. Which his Mafter.

that he might the better compas, having brought great fammes of money thether with him, he suborned two wicked Cardinals, who, in fled of speaking in his Lords fauour, should enforce all matters more against him. For they affirmed that they floode more obliged to God and trueth, Inclie of two then to worldly refpects or fauors of me: and therefore maintained, that the Archbythop was apparantly culpable of all the crimes inferred against him, and thereby infly deferred deprination. The Pope being thus abufinely perfivaded by they report, thought to haue fent two Prieftes thether, to acquaint him with this information confirmed against him ; but (indeede) he fent the two Cardinals confederated with Arnolde, to perfect the Pro-

ceffe, by them concluded for prefent exe-

cution.

The wicked-

Chap. 28.

he Kings

The perfecution of the Cardinal'es with Arnold against the Arch bythop

Arnolde aduanced into his place, who had fold his Master, even as Indas did our bleffed Saujour. In pronouncing the judgement, the Arch-Byshop Henry then prefent, delivered these wordes. God knowthe Archbyfh. eth, that I am most unjustly condemned: neat his de priuerthelelle. I care not for making any appeale uation,before Arnolde and to the further censure of men : because I am the Cardinal assured, that lyes shall bee better beleeved among you, then trueth can be in mee. Therefore I receive this Centence. As Come just Dunishment for my sinnes, and yet doe appeale

many, but they furnmoned the Arch-By-

thop to come before them, wher his hea-

ring was admitted in such fort, that sen-

tence was given against him, whereby he

was deprined of his See and dignitie, and

ludge les Christ : before whom I adiourne

you three to appeare.

These words were no sooner heard by the ludges, but they fell into extremity of laughter, faying; That if he pleafed to go on thither before, they would follow him at their leyfure. This fentence was given in the yeare one thousand, fine hundred, fifty fix, which the depriued Archbyshop endured with admirable patience; & being retired into his Monastery, he ther remained the rest of his life, yet without acception of the habite. To conclude, God would not permit this wickednes to paffe vnpunished, to the end, that innocence might the better bee knowne : but about a yeare and an halfe after, this Henrie dyed in his Monastery in great holinesse, and doubtlesse attained the glorie long time

fromyour indirect doome, to the eternall inst

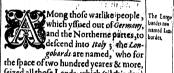
Newes of his death being brought to Rome, the two Cardinals being very merrily met together, one of them, faid : The Arch-Byshoppe Henry is gone, and must not we in halt follow him? Indeed (quoth the other) so wee made him promise; but let him tarry (wherefocuer he is) till wee come to him. Not many dayes after one of them, being fod ainly finiteen by one of his feruants upon the shoulder sel downe fo greeuoufly afflicted with paine, that his bowels and entrailes iffued out at his fundament, and instantly died. The other falling into phrenfic and madneffe, did cate off his owne hands, and dyed very firagely. Now as concerning falle Arnolde, hee

exercised such cruelties and seditions a-

They were no fooner arrived in Ger- 1 mong the people, that he became so hated and despised of them all: as being one day befiedged in a Monastery, hee yvas there flayne, and afterward left lying naked in the common dirch of the Cittie: whereall the people, both men, women, and children, performed all cruelties vppon his body, that possibly could be deuifed by them.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the cruelty which Albouine, King of Lombardie, vied to his Queene de wife Rosamond : And by what meanes she reuenged her felfe on him at length.



feized all those Lands, which (til this day) is called Lombardie, and vntill fuch time as Charlemaigne expelled them thence, according as in the History is amply related, written by Paulus Diaconus, in the par- inthe MA ticular Booke which he made for that pur- Mundings. pose. He saith, that when they lest Hungary (where they had for fomtime dwelt) to passe into Italy, they had one named Albouine their King: a man of great fpirit, and verie valiant in actions of warre. For he conquered in battayle Cunimond, King of the Girpides, and afterwardes, of the Graufing his head to bee fmitten off, made pides ones a drinking Cuppe thereof. wherein hea a drinking Cuppe thereof, wherein hee wine, andhis vsed to drinke, and in triumph of his headmades conquest and victorie. At which time, drinking cop he detained (as his prifoner) a verie beautifull daughter to the fore named King, called Rolamond, whom he made his wife, and then afterwards hee went to fubdue Italy, carrying his Queene along with him, in the yeare, eight hundred, fixty

When he had conquered many towns and Cities, he came (at length) to the City
of Paula: where (fince that time) the fueKings. ceeding Kinges vied to keepe their feate and continuall refiding, as the very principall Citty of their Kingdome. Hauing

and being then at Verena; he appoynted a solemne feast, where hee drunke to his Queene in the Cuppe made of her fathers head, and forced her to pledge him: forced to drin whereat thee conceined fuch griefe and displeasure, that the intire lone which face had formerly borne him , was confahers head. uerted into deadly hatred, with an abfowhereupon h: conclude lure refolue and conclusion to kill him in inft renenge of her fathers death, & crueltv extended to her. And to affift her in this determination, the conferred with a gentleman named Hermigilde: who prefently tolde her, that to the execution of fuch an important busines, the should require the ayde of a valiant knight in the Court, called Paradine. Which instantly she did, but he would not yeeld thereto because he tooke it to be too horride atreason. Finding her hope frustrated. and fearing left hir intent would be difcouered, yet defiring nothing more in the world, then to compasse the height and pitch of her enterprise : the fet afide all care of honour and honefty, & being aduertifed by Hermigilde, that Paradine carneftly affected one of her attending Ladies, the deuised therby to effect her purpose. Being acquainted with the secret refort where Paradine & his louer alwaies met together; the found fome other emploiment for the Lady, & made vie of her place for the time, Paradine keeping her there company a long time, imagining no other, but that it was the mistresse of his affections.

The Queene, who had spent all this while in fost whispers and dalliance, not ving any one word whereby thee might be difcourred; perceining opportunity fo aptly to fit her, spake thus vnto him. Knowest thou Paradine, who it is that keepeth thee company? Full well(quoth he) with my Mistresse, and then named her. Thou lyeft (falfe traytour,) replyed the Queene, I am Rofamond thy Soueraignes wife, whom thou hast dared to abuse in this manner, and dye thou must by the inft wrath of Albouine , except thou faue thy life by killing him: aduife thee therefore, whether his life or thine owne is dearest to thee. When Paradine considered his dangerous estate, without any meanes of helpe or escape; hee resolued to kill the King: and for his better furthe-

reigned three yeares and three moneths, / rance therein, both hee, the Queene, and Hermieilde tooke counfeil together, plotting the project in this manner.

The King vied to fleepe in the heate of the day, and all elfe auoyded the chamber, the Queene onely excepted, and he being a king of courage and high refolue, euer flept like a Souldier, with his Sword girded about him : which at this intended time of treason, the Queene had tyed fo fast in the scabbard, as hee could by no meanes helpe himselfe therewith. Paradine and Hermigilde waiting the houre, minedby the which was vppon the Queenes iffuing Queene, Pa. foorth : they entred, and for all their fort Heraugilde. treading, the King heard them, and started from his bed. VVhen he beheld two men armed with weapons, and at fuch a time of no fulpition: fury not feare made The valent of him take no knowlege of them, but foght to defend himfelfe with his weapon. VVhich failing him, by the meanes of fo in his death. falle a Queene, and they with their weapons every where wounding him ; hee caught vp a stoole, and therewith made his defence fo long as he could, till in the end they depriued him of life, yet neither noise heard, or any suspition of murther.

The king being thus dead, and all well carryed with a finoothe countenance: Hermigilde possessed himselfe of the Pal-Hermigilde lace, intending to make the Queene his marrieth with wife, as immediately he did. But notwithstanding all their close packing; the Lombardes (notlong after) came to the knowledge of their Kings death, and in what manner hee was murthered, which they purposed to reuenge with all possible speed. Wherein they were presented. for Rofamond and her complices having packed up most of her lewells & treasure Royall, fled away thence, carrying with The flight of them Alufinda Daughter to King Albo. Rolamond & wine, by his first wife. And for their fafer the numberer fecurity, they went to Ranenna, where then gouerned a Lieutenant of the Empire, named Longium, who kept that place for Tiberius, Sonne to the Empeperour Constantine of Constantinople, by whom they were curreoutly entertained.

Not long after , Longinus becomming Rolmond deenamored of Rofamond, & defirous to enioy her in mariage, whereto he found her by manying very tractable; conneclled her to procure with the Lieu the death of Hermigilde, & then he would chideth the marry her. She that had loft all lone and death of Her-Nn

The maner of

firous to adfeare impilde.

Scotling left by the two Cardinale. deceated Henry.

offendett.

The death of

the wronged

Henry.

The inflice o God on the wo wicked Cardinals,

A treaches

rous womans

wickedneste

met withall,

by her owne

deuise against

her husband

dreadleffe of the shame of men, coueting withal to advance her downefalne estate, by marrying with the Emperours Lieutenant; gaue to Hermigilde an impoyfoned potion at his comming forth of his Bath. perswading him, that it was most soueraigne for his health; by which perswasion he dranke a good part thereof. But when hee found it afterward to afflict his body, so as he plainly perceived himselfe to be poyfoned; drawing forth his fword in extremity of rage, he compelled Rofamond to drinke vp all the rest that remayned in the Cup, so that at one instant time they both were justly requited for the death of Albouine. Tydings hereof being brought to the Lieutenant Longinus, he caused the young Lady Aluisinda to be (eized on, and fent her (with all her iewels and treasure) to the Emperour Tiberius, at Constantinople, with Paradine also as a prisoner: where having his eyes pulled forth, he lived a while, and then died most miserably.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of a pleafant witty and honest deceit, which a famous and vertuous Queene vfed to her owne husband ; whereby lames, King of Arragon was begotten, with other rememberances both of his birth and

The Authors induction to the enfuing History .



VVell remember, that in reading the Chronicle of the Kings of Arragon, I finde, that Don Peter, Count of Barcelonna, who was the fea-

uenth King of Arragon, had Madam Mary in marriage, daughter to the Earle of Mount pefulin, Nephew to the Emperor of Constantinople, the being a very beautifull and vertuous Lady. All which notwithstanding, the King was much addicted vitto other women, and vied fuch flender testimony of loue towards his Queene, that hee refused to keepe her company, as (in the duty of an husband) he flood obliged to doe. This ftrange

feare of God, respect of womanhood, and | behauiour in the King, did much as filica and greene the Queene, because they had no childe to fucceed in the Kingdome, the greateest misery (of all other) that can happen to a well fetled Estate. Heere- the greatest vpon, by aduice of one of the Kings Pa-ges of his Chamber, who (it may be) had kingdome. formerly done fernice in the like affaires; thee compassed the meanes (vnder title of some one of the Kings cheefest fauourites) to bee brought that night to lodge with the King. Such familiar entercourfes having paffed betweene them, as in Shamedate fuch wanton seasons are commonly re-quired, the King perceiving the day-light neere approching, in regard both of his owne honours fafety and hers, made meanes to her for her speedy departure, but the taking hold of to good an occasion fpake thus vnto him. My gracious Lord and husband, I

am none fuch as (perhaps) you take mee The worded to be, but be well affured, that this night to the King, you have flept with your true Queene and before file VVife. Vse what violence you shall please would depend from higher to mee, for I purpose not to leaue your bed, untill fome man, well deferuing faith and credite, may be witheffe of my this nights keeping you company. To the ende, that if the fauour of heaven hath bin so gracious to me, that fruite (long desired) may enfue by this aduenture; the world thal take true notice, that it is your owne. The King perceiuing this honest deceit of his Queene, appeared to bee well pleased therewith, and called two Gentlemen of his Chamber, to testifie the truth, according to her defire, and as (indeed) flood best with his honour . It fo pleafed God, that at fit and conveni- The concepentrime, the Queene having at that intion & birth
of lamt,
frant time conceived with childe, at fuch
King of Aire due feafon as the custome of women al- gon. loweth them for trauaile, thee was deliuered of a goodly Sonne, euen on the first day of February, in the yeare one thousand, one hundred, ninety fixe. Soone after it was borne, the Mother caufedit to bee carried to the Church, and (which is a thing deferuing memory) as they which carried the childe entred into the Church, the Priefts began to fing, The coning Chap.33.

The Custome of Carinthia.

Psalme of Benedistus Dominus Deus Ifra- | service of God. But weaknesse encreael : Bleffed be the Lord God of Ifrael; which gaue a great prognosticating & vindoubted hope, of some excellent vertues to

manner of naming the Childe, by lighting of ches, tearme

The verruor

A ftrange

oualities re-

Ha winning Majorica and the Citty of Carthage.

feending fro lames King

Te Deum laudamu, Wee praife thee O of the this count from thence vnto another to the other characters.

fucceed in the childe. The Father and Mother, not know-

ing what name to give him, caused twelve Torches (of equall length and making) to be all lighted in one initant, the twelve Torches bearing the feneral names of the twelue Apostles. With this conclusion, that the name of the Torch which firft fayled, or became extinguithed; the selfe same name should bee given to the childe, which happened to be that of S. lames. Hecreupon he was named lames, because it was the name, which the men of Arragon gaue to that Apossle. Hee proued to be an excellent Prince, and of admirable gouernement, both in peace and warre, for hee made a cruell invalion vpon the Moores, being enermore very liberall to his Souldiers . Among other most notable matters, hee lenied a great Army, which he conducted into the Ifle of Maiorica, that then was in the Moores possession, where hee fought many flout battailes. But after he had a long while besiedged the City, he won it in the ende, and likewise other neighbouring Islands befide. Then comming into hiskingdome of the Moores, especially to the Ci-

queror, and neuer fayled in any of his at-He had many children, as well formes as daughters, on whom (during his life time) he bestowed great gifts and goodly eftates. Don Peter, that afterwad was of Atragon, & King of Arragon, was his Sonne. Liketheir gracious good fo. tunes wife Don James, King of Majorica and Minorica. He had another that was Archbishop of Tolledo. Madame Tollant, who was Queene of Castile; and Madame Ifabell, that was Queene of France; and Madame Frraqua, who was married to Don

Emanuell, Prince of Castile; and Don Pe-

King of Nauarre. He lined fenenty and

ty of Carthage, hee proued still the Con-

two yeares, and dyed religiously, taking on him (before his death) the habite of a Monke. For he had a greenous difeafe, which made him renounce his royall

fing more and more you him, he dyed in the Citty of Valencia, Anno 1266. and at the beginning of the Moneth of Au-

CHAP. XXXIII.

Ofan ancient and memorable Custome, obferued by the Inhabitants She Province of Carinthia, at the Coronation of their Prince : and how cruell their panifiment is to Theenes.



Ope Pius the fecod of that name. who was a man of great learning, & denem Splais a diligent inquifitour for the truth 147. of Histories, as weehaue in many

places formerly alledged, faieth in his description of the world; that the Pronince of Carinthia, is enclosed within the territory, and vides the government of Austria. Heelikewife relateth a custome, which the Inhabitants of that Province have anciently observed, at the election and Coronation of their Princes; appearing fome-what strange, yet honest and very commendable. Which custome is also confirmed by A. Sabellicus, in his tenth Decade ; and by Sebastian Muniter, in his composed Douglift. Cosmography, which is after this man- Schult. Mange.

In this Prouince of Carinthia, there is a very great and spacious plaine of olde ruined buildings, which feeme to bee the foundation of fome former auncient Cit-

ter, who espoused the daughter vnto the In which place also there is a great ftone, and when obeyfance is to be given at the new creation of a Prince; there is a day appointed, and a country labourer, or meane husbandman (allowed to Scepter, with deliberate purpofe, that if he might recoure his health againe, hee hath order to feare himselfe vp. would imploy the rest of his dayes in the pon that same stone. On his right hand

Preparation

A.S. bellins in

Church, as they were entring likewife thereinto, the Priests began to fing the

The manner of the Princes comming to his election.

The Princes being at the Scone before him that mul eled him.

The seuerall questions of the poore husbandman

The Earle that carrieth he cheeteft Standard.hi a. iwer to th poore man.

The Prince created with boxeon th

standeth a poore Cow, that hath lately calued, which hee holdeth fastened by a corde, and on his left hand flandeth a very leane and wretched Mare, tyed in like maner, and round about him is no meane crowd of labourers and country Boores. In this place, and at this Stone, the Prince that is to be enstalled, must make his apparance, attended with a great number of men on horse backe, ryding in very formall order, with twelve Banners borne beforehim: among which there is one more large and fightly then all the rest, carried by an Earle, thereto admitted by

especiall priviledge. The Arch-Duke, Prince or great Lord howloguer ve meane to tearme him, clothed in a Shepheards habite, commeth to the Stone wheron the poore man fitteth, & as he perceineth him to approch somewhat neere, hee demandeth with a loud voyce, what he is, that commeth towards him with fuch glory and felicity? Answer

is instantly made him, that it is the man, who commeth to bee created Prince of the Country. Then as it were with a voyce like thunder, the labourer cryeth out. Is he a just ludge? Will he wel maintaine justice? Will hee preserve the defence and fafety of this Country? Is hee a man franke, and free-borne? Is he valiant, vertuous, and worthy of honour and reuerence? Is he a Christian? Is hee a Defender of the faith of Iesus Christ? And all the company maketh answer, that he is

fuch a man, and will fo continue. Then he beginneth againe, and maketh another demand. By what right or reason cometh he to dispossesse of this place, which belongeth onely to me? To which question, the Earle that beareth the cheefest Standard replyeth thus. If thou wilt quit and fortake this place, threefcore Ducates of gold shall be frankly given thee, & this Cow as also this Mare shall both be thine owne, befide the rich Robe, which our

King did last of all put off, shall also bee thine: moreover, thou and thy family fhal bee free, from paying any manner of tribute. After these words, the Prince approcheth necre to the Stone, & the poore man giveth him a gentle blow on the checke, commanding him (in any case) to be a good Inflicer : & fo descending from the Stone, he leadeth along with him the

Cow and Mare, and departeth.

Then the Prince dismounting from his horse, ascendeth vp, and sitteth vpon the The Prince stone, where drawing foorth his Sword, the Stone, and turning to each fide of the stone, still flourishing the weapon round about him; hee maketh a folemne promise before all the people, vttering the words as loud as The Princes he can speake, that he will be a just Judge, promise beand a good Prince. This done one bringeth him (in a Shepheards bonnet) a finail quantity of water to drinke; and fo descending from the stone, hee re-mounteth on horsebacke, and rydeth on to a Church with all his company, there to heare Mas. Which being finished, hee changeth his former plaine and rurall garments, to very Royall and Princely habites: and after humble gara pompeous Dinner with his whole train, ments. hereturneth againe into the open fielde.

the viual ceremonies, observed at the creation of enery Prince. There is another custome in vse among these people, for the punishment of thests and robberies : which I hold to be vniuft, A cruellene and ouer-cruell, especially to bee vsed a- mony, for the mong Christians. For having but some of threeter & note or apprehension onely, that such a robbers,100 man flandeth in repute to be a theefesthey

where hee heareth all the Officers of Iu-

flice fpeake vnto him, to enftruct him in

the lawes of the Country: and these are

forthwith fend him to execution, without Russ. any other proceeding against him. Then three dayes after his death, they examine the witnesses with all care and diligence; when if it shall appeare by solemne inquifition, that he proueth to be guilty of the crimes alledged; they fuffer him to hang vpon the Gibbet, vntill his limbes fall peecemeale from him. But if he be found to be innocent, they take him thence, and

gine him honourable obsequies and funerall, with many prayers and almes-deeds, the lost of a for the faluation of his foule. With this fenerity doe they chaftife theenes and robbers neverthelesse, I read

of some other Nations, that greatly have supported and countenanced them therein. As the Egiptians, of whom Aulus Gel. Aut, Gellinia lius writeth in his Attick nights. And Notl. Aliu. ib. the Lacedomians likewife, who permitted their children to beetheenes, and learne climbing in at windowes, and wandring abroad in the night feafon, that they might be the more bolde and hardy for warre. Notwithstanding, Drace, hee that gaue

Chap. 34.

_{Oraco} his fe-

A poorere.

The benefit tion and frud inhigh and difficult mat

Menare na-

turally defi-rous to know

all things

Lawes vnto the Athenians, made one a: | mong which is comprized my prefent in. mong the reft; wherein he commanded, that every kinde of theft should bee punithed with the penalty of death. In regard whereof, Solon faide, that hee had written that Law with blood, which made him (afterward) to allay and mitigate it. The custome which yet to this day is obferued for hanging of theeues, was full of all appointed by the Emperour Fredericke the third of that name; according as Lodonicus Vines, that learned man in all Artes and Sciences, writeth in the third Booke of his Disciplines.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

In what part of the Zodiaque the Sunne and Moone , and likewife the other Planets were, at their first creating. Also of the beginning of yeares, and the course of times.



HE learned Philofophers tav. that men are naturally curious & couctous of knoledge.Morcoucr, fuch is the zeale of their affection

the bent of humane understanding so full of strange questionings, as they cannot content themselves to know such things as they may with some ease comprehend onely : but ouer and befide, they are ferutinous and fearthing (through bold prefumption) to know fuch causes as are very hard, and almost impossible. Nor hath this painefull defire beene altogether fruitleffe and vaine, though many times it fayled, and came farre thort of expectation; because by contemplation and continual fludy, they have found out fuch matters, as feemed before veterly impossible and fupernaturall, or that they thould any way be attayned voto by the capacity ofmen. As namely, the motions of the Heavensithe course of the Planets and other Scarres, with their fenerall influences and power, and the like things befide: a-

tended argument, and what in this Chap. The Authors rer I purposed to discourse on to withow purpose in to know the beginning of times & yeares; his Chapter. and on what day the world began, or to focake better; when, or in what fcalon tions, et ca-God created the world; when began the ucted to be yeare and times, and where was the Sun, or where God placed it at first, when hee began his courfe; & likewife the Moone, with the other Starres and Planets.

Aristotle did little care for thefe queflions, and infinite other Philosophers be- Arifode and fitons, and infinite other Printosophers ber the other Phi faith, did verily beleeue, that the world pinion of the was eternall, without any beginning or wald. ending. But fuch as have declared themfelices not to be ignorant in thefe things, but verily beleeved the beginning of times, feeme to fland divided betweene Two opinions two opinions. There are fome among them, who fay, that in the initiant when how a still a stil the world was created, the Sunne was worlds creafound to be in the first point of dries, or to in the Ransne, which is in the Equinoctial Regionalism of Summer, the time comming then to the elementh day of March. Others fay, that the world began, the Sunne then being in the first point of Libra, or the Ballances, which is the other Equinoctiall of Equin Giam Winter, commonly happening in thefe data waste. our dayes, on the thirteenth or foureteenth day of September. Of this opinion were divers Egiptians, Arabes, and Greekes likewife ; according as Lincolnien- 4. Lived vin fis reporterly, in a Treatife of the world, Touth. Naved which he wrote to Pope Clement ; & Vin- Miran, orale, gentius in his hilloricall Mirrour.

Such as have followed this opinion, A reasonal alledge a reason for it, which (in my indg- ledged or the ment) is very weake, and of no force. For emperie they fay, that then the principall fruites of beginning. the earth were fully ripe, and in the very best of their fanour, because it was most requifice, that (at the beginning) the earth should present it felle in the height of perfection. To this purpose, they produce authority out of Denteronomy, Denters, where it is faid; That God made all times perfect and complete. There are forme others, who affirme, that the entrance of The corrance times, and of yeares, was on the very great of times and tell day of all other; which was then, when the Sunne entred into the figne of Cancer, as now it is the elementh or twelfth day of Inne. Inlins Firmiens, an ancient Noz

Int.Firmicus in lib.3.de crest.Mund.

The figne Leo the house of the Sunne.

der and degrees.

The most pro bable opinion of all other.

S.Hierome. S.Ambrofe. S.Bafile.

The ful agree together,

neth of the

Containing pare of March and part of Aprill

Vincent in Mir,Hift.cap. 1.

Astrologye, in the beginning of his third Booke, which he wrote of the worlds creation, faith: That when the world began, the Sunne was in the fift degree of the figne Leo; which is the figne wherein hee hath most dominion, because it is called the house of the Sunne: the like he saieth, in discourring the other Planets, by their or-

But that which rellisheth of most reason in all these opinions, and appeareth most conformable to truth, is that when both time and the heavens began to bee mooued; the Sun was in the first point of Aries, which is (with vs) in March, and at which time is the entrance of Summer. This is affitmed (beside all other reasons that we can alledge) by the greater part of Historians, as well Christians as Heathens; among whom are S. Hierome, S. Ambrose, S. Basile, and others, who doe all maintaine, that the beginning of the world, and likewise of the yeare, was in the Equinoctiall of our Summer. And although there may appeare some difference among them, because some will haue the worlds begining to be in March, and others in Aprill: it may well bee endured, for they all agree together, that it was in the Equinoctiall, which now is in March. Notwithstanding, as wee have formerly affirmed, the Equino Ciall is not alwaies firme or constantifor Jesus Christ On what day fuffered his passion on the fine and twen-Equinoctiall, and now it is the eleuenth day of the fame Moneth, whereby may well be prefumed that heeretofore it was in Aprill.

For this cause, some would have April to be the first Moneth, and others March; This opinion is grounded on the Scripture, especially on the twelfth Chapter of Exodus, where it is faid : The Moneth * Nifan (which is March with vs) is the entrance to your yeare. Vincentius, in the beginning of his historicall Mirrour, faith : The Hebrewesbegan their yeare in March. because in the like Moneth was the Equinoctiall, when as the world began . This opinion was likewise helde by some of the Gentiles; as Elpacion in his Astrologicall

Treatife, where he faith: The Chaideans being very great A Brologers, beleeued like. Correcting the beginning of the year ancient Author, and of great authority in | Treatife, where he faith: The Chaldeans made the Sunne entred into the first point or degree of Aries: and this is also confidently maintained by the most part of Astrologers, both ancient and moderne. Therfore when the Sunne came in his course thither, or to that Signe; then was the beginning of the yeare, and thence enfied the principall or beginning day. For it is a matter most manifest, that the first day wherein the world began to be made, was also made the first day of the yearesconsidering, that till then, there was neyther time nor yeare. And therefore the figne of Aries is reckoned (about all the reft) in order a to be the first in order among the twelue mong the is.

Now, as when we come to judge of the revolution of yeares, and things to happe therin as of necessity we must equal the figures, by the beginning of the world; cuen foit is as casie to prooue, that God placed the Sunne in the first degree of this figne, at the beginning and creation of the world. And this may bee coniect ured without any great labor, by our profe and day what made in the fixt Chapter of the fettenth as Chiffel Book, in our first Volume, where discour-fing on the time and day, when as our red with the bleffed Lord and Saujour fuffered; it is day of the affirmed, that the Sunne was in the felfe- worldien fame at the creation, as it was when the great Sunne of righteousnesse made the tieth day of March, which was then the regeneration of the world, suffering death and paffion in humane flesh, and that happened (as is formerly faide) in the Equinoctial of Summer, which is an argument and presupposition, that even so hee pla-

ced it, when as he created it. Moreouer, it appeareth very crediyet notwithstanding, they all say, that ble, that it was so made, because such as At what the whe the Sun enters into the first point or know any thing in Astrologye, and in the Junior the degree of Aries, then is the Equino Ctiall. | Sphere, do well perceive, that the Sunne | the world to entring into the degree of this figne, and the cleare is making his revolution by the space of a diance of his wholeday: there is not any part of the beamer. world, which he leaueth vinlookt on with his bright splendour . And this he doth not in any other place of the Zodiaque, because in what place else socuer hee is there are some parts of the earth where he is not feene that day; but beeing in this first degree, as we have faide, there is no place where he is vnfeene, as hee walketh

Aries the fut

Marc. V arre in lib.9 Mecrob.im lil u. Ozid in Fast.

> The firft fca. fon that Ada and Eue faw in the world was the Spring time,

4. Booke hap. 34. ney. And it standeth with good reason and conveniency, that the first day of the Sunnes fetting foorth on prograce, hee should begin in such a place, where hee may best visite the whole world with his beames. And that it should bee in the figne Aries, rather then in that of Libra. appeareth plainly by our former relation. that on the day of our Lords passion, the Sunne was in the felfe-fame place, therefore there is some particular power in

Holding this opinion then for the

most certaine, I say that the reason alled-

ged, by fuch as would have the beginning

of the world, to bee in the Equinociall of

ripe and mellow; in regard it is no vni-

uerfall rule : for when the fruites are ripe-

September, is very weake. For it is not sufficient to say, that all the fruites were

> ned towards the Northerne latitude, they are not fo in the South, but wholly quite contrary. And therefore I craue no helpe of their reason, who say, that the Equinoctiall of March (already prooued) is the beginning of the Spring-time, & of flowers ouer all the earth, all things beeing the in procreation; for if with vs it be the beginning of Spring time, it is then winter in the Southerne parts. Let our reasons then suffice, & the authority of such worthy men, to cleare all other doubt or feruple , although the Romane yeare, now in vie, feemeth to begin the first day of Ianuary : for this matter came fo to paffe, onely through the superstitious denotion, which the Gentiles had to their God Idnus, coucting to have their yeare beginne

The Romanes (in like manner) began their yeare in March, according as Marcus Varro writeth, and Macrobius in his first Booke, Ouid in his Fasts, and many more belide. Also God shewed his immense goodnesse, in placing our first Parents Adam and Ene, in the Northerne parts of the earth, when he banished them out of the terrestrial Paradife, & that the first scason which they faw in this world, was the Spring-time, finding the earth to be greene & flowry, with the ayre milde, fweete and temperare, which was done for the confolation of their mifery and

with his name, as the Christians began

theirs with the Natiuity of Ielus Christ,

albeit the yeare doth not then begin.

along in his diurnal course, or dayes iour- | nakednesse, and so they could not sigue found it, if it had not beene Spring time.

This marter being sufficiently prooned, wee must know that there are other Planets, and especially the Moone, as be- conjunction ing one of the principall, whom some do with the Sun ather creation. on with the Sunne, on the first day of her creation. Others fav. that the was in opposition, and at the full . Saint Augustine reporteth thefe two opinions, in his booke Augin Gin. ypon Genesis, the fift Chapter, saying further, that such as maintaine her to bee in opposition, and at the full; do alledge for Others ho'd their reason; that it was very inconueni- opposition. ent, that at her beginning, God should create her any way defectuous. Others vrdge the contrary, and fay it is more credible; that the began her first day in coniunction, encreasing in her age answerable to our account. But to quiet this controuerfie, I fay (in mine opinion) that The Authors God at fuch time as he created her made this cate. her at full, and in opposition of the Sun. And it feemeth, that this judgement is the most received, as of S. Augustine, in the place before alledged, and Kabansus Rakans in Ex on the twelfth Chapter of Exodus, faith the very same. This appeareth conformable to holy Scripture, where it is faide: God made two great lights, the greater light Gen. 1,16. to gouerne the day, and the leffer light toilluminate the night. Now in the very fame inflant as the Sunne began his light, hee Offices of the gaue splendour to the moity of the world, Sunne and because in that moity or halfe part, hee Moone tor made day. But the other moity could have no light of the Sunne, by reason of the earths shadow; therefore it seemeth inftant. confonant to reason, that in the other moity of the earth, where it was night, the Moone should extend her office of this ning. For like as they were both created at one inftant; fo fhould they both fulfill their offices in one and the fame inftant, and the one to gouerne the day, as the other the night, according to the words of the Text, verefied apparantly, that the world was wholly lightened at one & the fame time.

Contrariwife, if the Moone had bene in conjunction, the light common and veconjunction niuerfall could not have come till fifteene dayes after; and befide, three or foure at that time. dayes must needs have passed, before the could lend any light to the earth, and that

Of her then being in op-

we see her to be but sour or fine daies old. Therefore it was very convenable, that these two famous lights shold illuminate the earth at one instant. I say moreouer, that the Moone then being in opposition with the Sunne, fhee must needs haue her being on the other fide of the figne Libra, for in her fo being, the performd the fame day the effects as the Sunne did, illuminating all the world, by her measurable pace of that dayes journy; which elfe the could not have done, if the had bin in any other place of the Zodiaque. Heereby it appeareth, that this opinion is the most likely although Iulius Firmicus will needs fay, that the Moone (at the time of ber creation) had her first scating in the fifteenth degree of the figne Cancer, where shee affecteth most to be: & of this opinio is Maerobius, in his first Book of Scipios dreame.

As for the other Planets, it is very difficult to certific them, and leffe profitable to know them : in which respect, I am willing to bestow the lesse paines on them. Neuerthelesse, Inlius Firmicus, in his second Booke before alledged, is fo bold as to name the places where each of them is feated, faying: Saturne should bee in the figne Capricorne; Iupiter in Sagittarius Mars in Scorpio ; Venus in Libra; & Mars in Firgo; which are the fignes wherein they have most power, and being signes likewise appointed to these Planets. Elpacus himselfe maintayneth as much, according as loannes Apricanus declareth in his Summary, entitled Agricano; with Macrobias in his fore-named Booke of Somno Scipionis, and thereunto confenteth Iulius Firmicus, naming expressy the same figns; yet there are others, who have thought, that in the recited inftant, all the Planets were found to be in conjunction with the Sunne. Ganltierus the Monke, in his book of the Ages of the world, faith, that the ancient Indians held firmely this opinion. As for my selfe, I amof the minde, that God did then fet the Planets in fuch distant places, one from another, especially from the Sunne; that on such a chosen day, each one of them might illuminate the earth with his beames. V Vhich could not be, they beeing in conjunction with the Sunne, becaufe his prefence, within a

ny certaine space or proportion, so hinde-

rech the greateft lufter of their light, that

must be but very little too, euen as when they cannot bee discerned on the earth. Notwithstanding, beeing created according to the will of God; It Sufficeth (faith Augustine) that they were made, in beeing Augin Gu. perfected by the hand of God, whose workes 49.6. (in what kinde foeuer they be) are perfect.

CHAP. XXXV.

That men may learne examples by Birdes, Flyes, Wormes, and other Creatures, to leade the course of a vertuous life.

Te haue already declared in our haue enfructed men in a great part of the hand properties appertaining to Physicke, by purging and preserving themselves from harmes: now I am briefely to entreate, how their example may bee profitable to vs, both in body and foule. And vndoubtedly, who focuer wil confider & contemplate, on the nature & properties abiding in beafts; shall not onely thence derine good enstructions for life and fafety of our humane bodies; but rules and examples beside, of good, commendable, and vertuous mainers. VVhy do not men ftrine to purchase peace with their neighbours; Concordant amity among brothering what concord and amity is among brothering. Beafts of all kindes, and how they keepe exampled to company, vnite themselves together in each kinde, and stand defensive one for another? VVhy fhame they not to bee flothfull and negligent, perceiuing & ob. | Slothfulnefe ferning the care and follicitude of the and negligite Ant, and after what manner thee maketh the Ant. her prouision in Summer for VVinter? VVhat vaffals and fubicets are they, that will not serve and honor their good Prin- to frinces ees;noting with what loue and obedience poore little Bees ferne and honour their King, and that which they doe for him befide? In which respect, such Commonweales as have no Prince, but enjoy all Against com things in common; may not they learne mon weaks an example of living in peace and concord, by imitation of the poore Ants, who are fo great in multitude, and yet preferue an order of peace & inflice among themfelice ? And why do not great Lords and Princes confider, what manfuetude and of clemeny clemency all of them are obliged vnto; and mude.

who doth no offence, nevther worketh any displeasure to the very meanest and sillieft of his Subjects?

Our great Seigniors and high-mindedmen, may learne humility of the Camell, who falleth on his knees, to accept a heavy and over-chargeable burden. I rue and loyall married couples, may take example by the good custome among some Birds: especially Pigeons and Turtle-Doues, noting both in the Male and Female, that nothing but death can impeach their continuall companying, or hinder eyther from their first choyle. I finde written moreouer, concerning Turtle-Doues, that the one dying, the other remaineth in the condition of a widdow, & finisheth the remainder of her life in widdowhood. Saint Ambrofe writeth, that widdowed women may learne chastity of the Turtle-Doue. As touching continency, all beafts (well neere) do letion vs therin: for after the Female hath conceived, the neuerfecketh, or hath any appetite to the Male, till her full time be determined. They are likewise examples of temprance in all vices ; because they eate no more Examples of Temperance then sufficeth to maintaine life, neyther sleepe they any more then necessity requireth.

To keepe our selues well and discreetly gouerned, the Peacoke may be our direction. For desence and maintenance of our houses, as also to line liberally among For good and our people ; what better enstructer can we have then the Cock? For he will part with the food out of his owne Beake, to giue it to his Hens, and when need requireth, he will expose himselfe to all perils in their defence. The great obligation, wherein children standeth bound to their uten towards their parents, and how they ought to ferue and assist them, the Storke plainly witnesseth; by nourishing their aged Parents in their owne nefts, as they fedde and maintayned them in their youth . Why should not men blush and be ashamed, to commit Sinne comfrailty and finne through feare, knowing mitted thorow feare at the inuincible courage of the Lyon? Faithfulnesse, friendship, and acknowledgement of received benefits, wee are Faithfulneffe. friendfhip,& notably taught by the meere behauiour good turnes of Dogs; that neuer forget the Masters they have ferued, but continually loue them, neuer ceasing to bee thankfull for

For good or der in beha-

when they but behold the King of Bees, I the poorest bread they cate. If a man would benefit himfelfe by the vie of another mans goods, yet without any harme or injury done him; let him fo carry him felf in that case, as doth the little laboring Bee, who draweth hony out of the faireft flowers, and yet no wrong at all done to

> VVhat meanes and order we should daily observe for healthfull conservation of our lives, we are not to learne it of any one beaft onely, but of many, that know what food doth foonest offend them, as alfo in with-drawing from one place to another, according to the mutation of times. Moreover, they will live in such foyles, as are answerable to their complexions and natures: excelling men herein as well as in all other things beside. VVhy (hould not men be absolutely learned, and ignorance in any thing quite remoued from them, beeing endued with derftanding. hearing and understanding: considering that an Elephant learneth whatfoeuer is fhewne and taught him; a Dog attaineth to many familiar qualities; and Birds can speake, being thereto enstructed? He that Skill in Muheareth the Nightingales fweer Songs. and some other mellodious Birds; how can he but defire to fing mufically? VVhy couet not men to be excellent builders, Arte beholding the Swallowes skilfull enftruction; what arte thee declareth for her owne dwelling, and with what divertity of matter it is composed? What better Geometry. Geometry, then that of the Spider? What better Astrologye, then that of the Ante, & Astrologye. & likewise of a Fish (according to Galen)

are meerely ignorant in these Artes? How many other industrious and excellent perfections are in brute Beafts, which men either hane, or elfe may learne of them? Paffages under ground, making of Caues in the earth, and knowledge how to dwell in them; came they not first from the Mole and Fox? There are certaine little VVormes, in Latine called seres, that enftructed the meanes and manner to fpin and make Silke. Next, the Spi der taught how to fpin thred for cloth, & fo to make Nets, whereby to eatch Birds. Catching of Men learned of Beatls to fwim in the water, for there is no one of them but can do the water.

Renefit receip: ciudice.

preferuation

none and vn

called " Vranofcopos, that having but one * A Fish cyc, yet lookes continually vp to heaten? whote eye Haue men reason and judgement, and yet

der ground.

Making of

Makingof cloth. Swimming in

the Sunge.

Iul.Firmic in lib.2 de creat. Mund.

Macrobin Lb.

de Somn. Scio.

Places in Trall. Aftrolog. Ivan. Agrican. in Sum. Agric. Macrob in lib. de Som. Scip.

Gault.in lib. de Mund.cap.s.

not then in coniunction with the Sur

The Planers

Rules for philedge in wea-

Our wearing garments and

The cheefeft Support of our

Examples conceining the foule.

All moral Paded on beafts.

Beafts comin holy Scripture, for our imitation.

Reafonabl: ed by example of bruice

August in lib.

it; yet men cannot attaine thereto, but by | word. practife and learning. What Physicall rules they have taught men, and knowledge in the changes of weather hath elfe where bene handled; and yet notwithffading we make fuch provision of them, for fupply of hunger and other necessities, as I know not how wee could line without their helpe. Our garments are made of theirs, and their flesh is our best Foode: both beeing brought home to vs from far remote countreyes, and whatfoeuer is needfull for vs, or elfe we fend abroad to feeke after them. They labour, and make the earth plyable for our vie; whence we get our bread, and the best fruites of fustentation, so that they are the principall maintenance of our lines. And although they are fore laboured, purfued, and euill entreated by the spleenes of men : yet are they still obedient, both knowing, following, and euermore dooing them fer-

Come wee now to examples concerning the foule, as a matter of higher Argument, and much greater importance. Whence can a man derine more worthie examples, both for vertues and good manners meete to bee in men, then from beafts? All those Vertues which naturall Philosophers hath perswaded vnto vs. are grounded on the fimilitudes and parables of Beafts: Oratours serued their turnes with them; and all that have spoken or

written elegantly.

God and his Saints have oftentimes in facred Scripture, instructed and perfwaded vs, by the properties & conditions of beafts, for the perfection of our lines : And the rules of vertue and civil manners do tell vs, that we should be wife like Serpents, and fimple as Doues; milde, like Lambes, and strong and constant as Lyons. In like fort, by the example of bruite beafts, and voide of reasons we are taught to become men reasonable, and spiritually affected. We finde many Offices & estates in the Church, applyed and figured by beaftes, and according vnto theyr properties. By Oxen (according to S. Augustine, writing on the fecond Chap. ter of S. John) fuch men are fignified, as doe publish and preach the holye Scriptures : for they till and plough vppe the knotted furrowes of our foules, fowing therein the feedes of Gods most glorious

Saint Paule, and Salemon in his Proverbes doeth say; Thou halt not muexle the mouth of the Oxe that laboureth, Rom. o. verse 7. Prouerb. 12. chap. 14. The holy Doctors and Preachers of the Church. that with Doctrine and good Lawes doe Gregorials gouerne and defend it, are termed Dogs. Saint Gregorie speakes it on the wordes of 10b : Quorum non dignabar patres ponere cum cambus gregis mei . The same Saint Gregorie, inuiteth men vnto a contempla. Contemplatiue kinde of life, by the immitation of life, life, Goates, that alwayes climbe vp to high places, spending there their time in contemplation as it were: the wordes in Leuiticus feem his motiue thereto, Leuitic. chapt. 14. verfe 12. Out of the Herd let the Goate be offered.

Moreouer hee fayth, that Preachers Grigo, in 18. should immitate the Cocke; as ground- vbifepre. ing on the words of 10b, who fayde; Who Preathers hath given under standing to the Cock? Ad- compared to ding withall, that (like vnto the Cocke) the Cocke. they proclaime (in the dimme darkeneffe of this life) the glorious light that is to come, and awake vs with their thrill voyces, out of fleepy finnes, faying with S. Ephel 3,0 Paul, The night is past, and day approacheth. And againe, It is time for vs to arife from sleepe looke abroad yee just, and sinne not. Phil.1,12.

The Church her felfe, pure, holy, and The Church immaculate, is compared to a Doue, as refembled to Salomon declareth in his Canticles, faying. Beholde, thou art faire my Loue, thine Cant 3,14. eyes are like the Doues. And againe in another place: Omy Loue, Omy Done. We fee likewise, that of the foure Euangelists three are figured by three beaftes. If I wold continue longer on this argument,

I could finde matter enough to discourse But about all other, that of our Sa- Ichis Chill uiour and Redeemer Icfus Christ, is the ingured by moft notable, who would bee figured by a Beaft, as Saint Iohn speaketh in his Apocalypse, chapt. 7. verse 14. The Lyon of the Tribe of Indah hath beene victorious. And Danid fayeth in his Pfalmes, Rouze Pfalme 110,1 thee like a Lyon: and fo in many other places, which were too long to rehearle. Befide, in S. Mathew, he tearmeth himfelfe Matthal, 37 a Hen, faying , O terufalem, terufalem hore

kens under her wings, and ye would not.

often would I have gathered thee & thy children together as the Hen gathereth hir Chic-

Chap.36. Of Neglect in Military Discipline.

Christs works (Seeing then, that Christ compareth t his workes to the properties of Beaftes; the proper. men may doc well to receive instruction from them, in leading a good and holie life. And contrarywife, what shame and confusion is it to vs, to see and know, that all kinde of Beafts do follow they rnature perfectly, and men (onely made reasonable) vie their owne fo badly, abusing that fuper-excellent gift very vilely. For, he that ought most to honor God, dothmost of all offend him, and farre beyonde all other creatures, dayly peruerting and adulterating his works. So that there are some beafts, of whome men may learne much better examples, then from fome kind of men among whom they line. For they haue more apprehension of instice, and offend farre leffe, then men that knowe what is their dutie, and yet do it not. And

examples to m.n, then bruite beafte

der Stand him.

his other cre-

CHAP. XXXVI.

therefore, God deliuereth it by the mouth

of the Prophet Elay : The Oxe knoweth his

Master, and the Affe his Cribbe; but Ifrael

knoweth him not neither will his people vn-

Of neglect in Martiall Discipline: and of an Army of Christians, that lost all their lines thorow drunkennesse, and wwant of following such courses, as are to be obserued in Military affayres.

In the eight chaps of the 1.800k in the

EE haue already declared, how Bayan Chinjan, Lictus nant to the Tarrarian Em-peror Cubley, and directer of his Military forces, tooke 12

arriuall, for conquering the great Prouince of Maugy, before all the reft would yeeld themselves tributary. One of them was veterly ruined to the very foundation and worfe vied then any other known to be, during the Empire of the faid Cublay, which was aboue fixe and thirtie yeares. This City being called Cinguinguy, was the second in wealth, greatnesse, and multitude of inhabitants, in all the rich Kingdome of Maugy, and the reason why it was wholly ruined, followeth thus.

Bayan Chinfan Durfuing his Conquests, was much withthood by a ffrong Caffle, builded vpon a fmall mountaine, very potent by naturall fituation, and artificiall constructure. For therein continued a powerfull Garrison, that prenayled with great advantages on his Army, passing along the foote of that Mountain: and this Bayans pafwas the reason that he would proceed on lage. no further, till hee had derived fome better correspondencie from the people of this Garrison. And yet he durst promise to himfelfe, that (within some finall distance of time) he should preuaile against them, as afterwardes it prooued true in-

In the meane while, and at the felfiame

inftant, the explorators or fcoutes vvere Return of his come backe againe, which he had fent to foutes from furueigh the effate of Cinquinguy, who made knowne vnto him, that the people of the Citty appeared, to knowe nothing of his comming, neyther flood vpon any guard, or preparation to expect a befiedging. This was the cause (to the end hee might the better preuent them) that hee forthwith dispatched a squadron of thirty thousand men, armed at the lightest, and very good foldiers, all of them being chri- that Bayan flians (which came among the Tartarian gaue to his Idolaters in open liberty, as the Iews haue Christians, done from all times of antiquity, and dayly yet doe) to possesse themselves of the Citie, and hinder the entrance of any fuccour, either by way of power or victuals, affuring them likewife, that he would fol-

low them with all convenient speede that might be.

This warlike band of Christians, made the Christifuch speedy diligence, that (within three ans arrivall dayes) they arrived before the Cirty, and before Cinlodged themselues on the Ditches side, before any in the Citty took notice therof. They made the scalado in so many seuerall places, and disposed their Archers fo conveniently, as no one durft peep out at any of the battlements, or elfebe feene vpon the wals. At length, the beliedged (imagining the army that had thus engirt the, was of far greater ftrength then it was indeed) being ouercome with feare, rendred themselues to the discretion & mercy of the affaylants, to the end, they might | Chiffians, finde the more humanity at their handes. The gates being fet open, the Christians entred taking vp their lodgings in feue-

The men of

The careless negled of Christians in their victory. continuing full in furfer and drunken neile.

Christians

flame in their

drunkenneif:

and thaine-

the Inhabi-

fully vied by

The strong

Caftie taken

by Bayan,&

tydings brought him

querors, without any other care of military discipline, finding the Citty well furnithed with victuals of all kindes, & whatfocuer was needfull for the life of man, but (aboue all) plenty of rich wines; fell to making themselves good cheere, and drinking hard, after the German manner, till they fell afleepe with the pots in their hands.

Heereuppon the Inhabitants finding themselves deceived in yeelding to so final a number of people, that had no better understanding in actions of warre, neither knew how to vie the fortune fo fairely befalne them; began to confult heereon with themselues, and how to worke their deliuerance with as much speed, as they were ouer-hasty in losing their liberty. The Christians continuing in this drunken behaujour, without any feare at all of the Inhabitants, that lodged the Soldiors in their houses, though not halfe fo many as they were able to receive: in one night it was fully concluded, that euery host should kill his guest, and so it was The Army of accordingly performed. Afterward, they threw their bodies into the great River, which runneth through the midft of the Citty faving: These are the renegadoes and faith-breakers, men of Christian Religion, of whom the Emperour Cublay made no great account, but fuffered them to carry croffes in their Enfigns, to fhame them the more in their least ill demea-

Bayan Chinfan having furprized the foresaid castle, commanded the Captains to be hanged, and the castle quite ruined; but pardoned all the Soldiours, journeying afterward on to Cinquinguy : but within leffe then two dayes journey, hee heard how all his men were flaine, therefore hee brought a ftrong fie ige before the Citty. The lubabitants were not a little amazed, beholding so powerfull an Army to befet them, and conducted by a man fo highly renowned: and therefore defired to have a Parlee before any farther proceeding, which accordingly was granted. The fumme of the Oration propounded by the Deputies, was thus. That they could not deny a manifest truth, but that they had flaine a number of runnagates, mafterleffe mendeeming to haue no faith or honefty, neither thewing any open ap-

rall houses. And these indiscreete con- | parance of their power; but suddenly surprized their Citty. Moreouer that they were all Christians, more addicted vnto wine and gourmandizing, then any re- Wine and fpect of valour or manhood: in which rethe deferued ouerthrow of fuch careleffe people, and they humbly defired pardon, if in this case they had transgressed.

Bayan returned his answer brauely Bayans reth and fuccinctly, faying. His men were to the men o warriours, that had no other direction in Cinguinguy, this bufineffe, but commaund from his mouth onely, and he had beene well enformed, that they tooke the Citty by faire order of warre; without offending any one in their goods, or violence offered to wines or mayds, or difarming any Inhabitant, but suffering them to continue in their wonted liberty. And in being Christians, they did not therefore deserue The Christians death, because he could as well tollerate ans defended them, as his Master the Emperour, who in their pro not onely suffered them to line in all his whole king Countries, without the least iniury done domer converto them; but having conquered king-minted to the domes, wholly Christian, he neuer inno- loy the bore uated any matter touching their Religion. Moreouer, the greater part of Officers in his Court, and the very worthiest of his warriours, were all Christians, being men more faithful, and of better conuerfation, then any other Religion what-

As for their neglect in martiall discipline, he did not allow it in them, but confessed, that they deserued death therein, which (doubtleffe) himtelfe would have inflicted on them; condemning them for beeing so forward, in executing any authority belonging onely to him. For which boldnesse (with an absolute deny- Bayandeniall of pardon or fauour) he vowed to bee fauour, you reuenged on the men of Cinquinguy; be- ing death sel cause (against all fidelity) they had slaine bloody rehis men, and declared monstrous ingratitude for their extraordinary manfuetude, and thence hee pretended to deriue his reason.

Hauing thus spoken, hee would see them no more, but in this rough manner In what mer dismissed them. About an houre after, he caused his Rammes and other Engines of battery, to bee mounted, for guinguy. destruction of the walles and houses, and within few dayes after, tooke the Citty,

without any great refiffance, putting all, whereof Anne de Montmorance, Confta- Thefault of the men to the fword that were about 14 veares of age. Women and maides went whither themselves pleated; but for their children, they were fold at the Out-crie, at the Outery to fuch as would give the most mony for them: for there were certaine merchants of Bengala, which followed the army that did trafficke onely in such kinde of merchandife, and fo do yet to this day. Afterward, vittailes beginning to faile, & the warlike enemy, having emptied the cittle of all the wealth; he commanded it to be fet on fire, and that the Army should not boudge thence, vntil it were intirely con-

This Citty was feated on a goodly ri-

uer, large and nauigable, whereby, the

comerce which it made with other conn-

In it was made the richeft & faireft works

wrought with the needle, both in cloth of

golde and filuer, as no other Citty in the

world belide had the like. There were al-

fo made fumptuous veffells (for all vfes)

both of gold and filuer, by most admira-

ble cunning, and in great plenty : befides

costly clothes of fine Cotten, gold, filuer

and filke. In briefe, it was the fecond or

fince when it was neuer rebuilded, or in-

habited. The ruines thereof may bee

feene to this day, whereat full many haue

floode amazed, it being scituated in so

potent a territory: but it was thought to

proceed from the just displesure of God,

and for the bloudy mail acre of fo many

We may now come homeward, and

nearer to our felues, and speake of the

Christians.

gamguy, and tries, returned infinite profit and wealth.

third Citty (as then) in all those parts: which was thus destroyed, thorow the drunkennes of Nestorian Christians, and by the perfidy of the Inhabitants, even as althofeparts. Troy in Illiam by luxuric & whoredome.

ble, was commanded, putting the 2 15/16- in the batt. If zers to flight, and the fayde Constable at Dieux. taken prisoner. Heerenpon the Protestants becomming infolent, and vtterly vnmindfull of Militarie Discipline : left their rankes, brake their order, gaue the chase, pursuing after certayne runawayes, and, before they had fully conquered all their enemies; they beganne to gape after pillage with the Swart-rutters and Launce-knights. During this diforder. Monfieur de Guyfe, a most wife and valiant Captaine, hauing yet left him a band of braue men, beganne to fet vpon those worthie and negligent fellowes with his troupes, and wied warrier running on the Protestants (who ima- protestants gined they had the whole victorie, which and tooke the they knew not how to holde) got the Prince of Co better of them, and tooke their Leader the Prince of Conde, becomming fole mailter of the field. Thus, not knowing how to vse Militarie Discipline, by breaking their rankes, following the chafe, and scraping for pillage, when they had gotten the better of their enemics fafe and foundly, yet not having wholly ouercome them : did they not declare themselves very vnaduised, becomming guilty and well worthie of death? I am perswaded, that all good warriours are of that opinion. And fo it happened, for thus the Protestant Armie was vtterly

They that (at so cheape a rate) tooke What the the Citty of Cinquinguy, should have Chastians difarmed the Cittizens, seazed the fron- ought to have pest places into their owne power, plan- done, victorie ted Courts of guard in all the most fre- at Cinguinquented parts of the Citty, imprifoned guy. the chiefett persons, expelled out of the Citty, a greater part of the youthfull and ledge, how to make vie of victorie: most forward men, if they would not As not long fince was feene in Fraunce, kill them, without vling fuch courtefie after conquest. In fo doing, they had kept Martiall discipline on foote, and anoyded the loffe of their owne lines, befides the reproach, to their great infamie. But ouer and aboue all the reft, Wine most they should (as much as in them lay) hurtful to any haue abstayned from wine : For there is good Souldi-

Oo

happen, where Military discipline is not

obserued.

foyled, which was (wellneare) equall in The Proteffat great Captaines and good men to the Armyvicely Royall . But fuch loffe doth almost daily forled.

part of the royall Catholique Armie, not anie thing, that fooner bereaueth a our.

view of for

fach diforder

like faults, as were among thefe Tartarian Christians, thorow lacke of knowin the first battaile given neere to Dreux, betweene the French Protestants and the Catholiques, in the yeare of our Lord God, 1562. vnder Charles the ninth. The Prince of Conde, being chief of those

Protestants, overthrew with his horse-

men (wherein he was flrongest) a great

flaughter.

A Parlee required before further proanfwer retur ned by them of Cinguingood Souldiour of manly indgement, and maketh him merely brutish in beha-

CHAP. XXXVII.

¶ Of the miserable ends, and other strange tranerses, endured by dinerse Kings, Emperours, Dukes, and other great Princes, within an hundred and fiftie yeares of these times.

The Authour thapeth his courle in this argument after Petraike. Ccording to the imitation of Petrarke, I am desirous to describe the vnhappie ends, and other aduersities, happening vnto diuerse fa-

mous Christian Princes; as Kings, Emperours, Dukes, Popes, and other Prelates, lining within an hundred and fiftie yeares of these dayes, some of them being familiarly knowne to vs; omitting fuch as the Greekes and Latines have set downe in their writings, because I would not be troublesome to the Reader, by repeating Histories esse-where to be read; (and perhappes) knowne to him before. And if it come to passe, that any worthie person, constituted in some eminent dignitie, chaunce to feele the ficklenesse of Fortune, by fuch occasions as shall ensue in this Chapter; let him take comfort, and forfake all sadnesse; for it is no meane confolation to the miserable, to have store of companions ranked with them in their disasters.

George King of Bohemia IN ANNO 1466.

Aduice to per-

fons of honor and eminence

> We will begin then with a king of Bohemia named George, who lived in the yere 1466, who was reputed to be a man of great wisedome, and was elected (in sede vacante) or inter-regnum after the death of Ladiflaus, who di**c**d on the very day of his marriage, folemnized at Prage, the capitall cittie of his Kingdome, hauing taken in marriage Madame Magdalen, daughter to Charles the seauenth King of Fraunce. This George hauing obtayned the amitie of many in the Kingdome, and making himselfe much seared beyond many other; was installed King, and gane his daughter in marriage, to Mathias King of Hungarie. In his elder yeres

Ferdinand King of the Romaines, bro ther to Charles the fifth, Emperour, possessed himselfe of his Kingdome, he holding then but a small portion thereof, because hee was molested many yeares before, by the Kings of Poland, Hungaria, and some Emperours, by the solicitation of Pope Paule, the second; King George for favouring of the Hussites Doctrine, in which cause he was so vehemently afflicted, that it shortened his dayes. He dyed much bemoaned; for in his youth, and while his body held the strongest vigour, hee performed many notable and worthic exploits in warres against the Turkes.

Another Prince, some short while before, Charles Bourgony, Sonne vnto Phillip, one of the most potent and vndoubted Christian Princes, that was in those times, beeing in the yeare of our Lord God, one thousand source hundred and two and twenty. Hee vnderstoode himselfe to be so rich and mightie, that hee pretended to create himselfea King. But Fredericke the third of that name, beeing then Emperour, would not admit such an advancement of his Countrey. His father left him great store of coyne, and many large renenewes of diverse Seigneuries: having lent foure hundred thousand crownes to Charles the scauenth, holding all the Townes and Countries, on, and about the river of Somme; as Amiens, Abe- scauenth. uille, Saint Quintines, and others beside. Hee held also (by way of mortgage) of Sigismund, Archduke of Austria in Germany, the lands to him belonging, both on this side, and beyond the River of Rheine, and the Earledome of Ferrat, for three score and tenne thousand florins: whereby enfued, the Gouernour which he placed ouer those Lands, was the cause of diverse mis-happes and ignominies, that followed vpon him very he was Lord fuddenly.

Moreouer, hee was Lord of fourcteene goodly Prouinces; as the Dutchy of Bourgogne, the French Court, of Flanders, Brabant, Holland, Zeland, Frizeland, Henault, Artois, Namures, Gueldres, Luxembourg, Verecht, and Embourg, all which Countries valewed well a large Kingdome.

And in regarde of his pompe and

ion to Philip.

What fate hethordayned to a man cannot be auoyded.

Of Charles

the eight, K.

of France.

His conquest

Calabria and Apulia.

of Naples,

Charles the

had of to famous a King, The greatnes & in lo great an extremity, Charles duke to let him die of Burgogne, with the leuein so stanking a place. rall lands that

Little care

King George

Hussites reli

Charles duke

of Burgoine,

ion to Philip,

one of the

gion.

that these things happened in the yeare,

one thousand sourchundred fifty three,

what Beds of state, the noble Kings of

I am sure few people are ignorant, in

about the Moneth of May.

Of Charles the eight, K. of France.

> His conquest of Naples, Calabria and Apulia.

What fate hath ordayned to a man cannot be auoyded.

100000-thou fand crowner lent to King (harles the (cauenth

hc

but

be-

of

er-

bth

Little care of had of to farat, mous a King, flo-The greatnes & in lo great and riches of an extremity, our Charles duke to let him die in so sunking was of Burgogne, with the feue. iga place. rail lands that ery he was Lord

France vse to take their rest, and vnder what rich Pauillions; yet the inquity of our times hath beene such, that a Kings lodging hath bene more vile then a laxe. I speake of King Charles the eight of that name, who returning home to his kingdome, having beene in Italy, where hee conquered the kingdome of Naples, and the great Dukedomes of Calbria and Apulia, and wonne two famous battailes in those countries: vpona Palme Sunday Ecue, being the scuenth of Aprill, one thousand source hundred ninety eight, leading his Queene by the hand, Anne of Bretaigne, to sce certaine Gentlemen play at the Tennis, in a Ditch belonging to the Castle of Amboise, entrea into an olde, broken, vncouered Gallery, where he gaue his head a great blow against the vpper part of the doore, albeit himselfe was but of lowe stature. Taking hold vpl pon some stayes for his recourry, neere vnto a noysome place, where enery one that would (by custome) vsed to let passe their vrine, and other uncleannesse of the body; he was contented to endure it, and stood there merrily discoursing with the Queene, and other noble persons there present, judging who deserved best of them that played. Suddenly hee was ouercome with a rheume or catarre, which taking from him all his strength and motion in euery part of his body, he

Heelanguished in this manner, for the space of nine houres, and dyed there in that noysome place. Is it not a matter descruing admiration, that so worthy a King should dye in so vile a place, being in his owne house, among his Officers, and many of the Nobility ? Hee that was King of the sweete smelling Floure-de-Luce, to expire and ende his dayes, not among hearbs or flowers of pleafing fa-

was deprined likewise of his speech. This

was perceived by all there-about him, and

how he lay vppon the ground, in such a

foule, stinking, and vnscemely place; yet

no one had the care, or subject-like affe-

Gion, to beare him thence to his royall

bed, which was not aboue twenty paces

uour: but in a place full of filth, then which, the whole world could yeelde no

And to thew yee, that great Princes are as subject to dye in battailes, as the simplest Souldiours: Immes, King of Scottes, may ferue as an example, for hee was slayne in the field, with twoo Bishoppes, a great part of his Nobility, and many men of warre, that hapned in the yeare of our Lord, one thoufand fine hundred and thirteene. the year's following, John d'Albrot king John d'Albret of Nauarre, lost his Kingdome, which King or Nawas feazed by Ferdinand King of Spaine, warre lott his because her floods accorded by R. R. kingdome, because hee stoode accursed by Pope Iulins, for affifting King Lewes the twelfth, in warre against him; and aboue all, in the battaile of Rauenna, which vitill this present his Successiours neuer enioyed.

And Lewes sforza, Duke of that rich and goodly Countrey of Millaine, was led prisoner into Fraunce, flying before the French to Nanarra, a Citty of his Dukedome; hee was confined to imprisonment, within the great Tower of Bourge, where (in great want and pouertie) hee finished his dayes.

What shall wee say of King Francer, first of that name, the Father of Learning, whose wisedome and magnanimitie, could not warrant him against the Ambuscadoes of Fortune, no more then any of them before remembred? Hee fell into the hands of Charles the fifth, Emperour, envious of his greatnesse, and had beene his competitour in the Empire, opposing himselfe against many of his dessignes. Hee detayned him prisoner aboue a yeare; during which time, hee had a most yrkesome disease, which compelled him (for enioying of his liberty, to yeeld to many hard and gricuous conditions. As, to renounce and disclayme a multitude of rights, which hee pretended to many Dukedomes, Earledomes, and Kingdomes.Belide, he gaue fo great a quantity of money, as well for his expences, as difcharge of martiall affaires, and his ranfome withall, that his kingdome (for cuer after) felt the smart thereof.

And not onely have temporall Princes felt the rigour of inconstant Fortune; but Ecclesiasticall persons also,

Iames the fourth, King of Scots, flain in battaile.

ion, where he

firft, King of France, the patrone

The hardenforcements of King Frances.

Oog

, all irgc

Irc-

chy

ize-

ires

:of

and

alth

An olde Ci

ty of Mauri-

tofore called

King Sebafti analwayes

feeking op-

portunity to enter Affrica

of Christian

The Author speaketh now of Spirituall

Pope Iohn

howfoeuer high and great degree they haue carried in the world. For in the year 1410. Pope John was put in prison, flying from the Councell of Constance, and was giuen in guard to Lewes, Count Palatine, deposed from his Office, and one called Martine, fifte of that name, feated in his place, being likewise very inhumanly entreated, for the space of three yeares. Afterwardes, by the humanity of the fayde depoted and imprifoned. Martine, he was fet at liberty, and created Cardinall: whereby euery man may perceine, how farre this John was falne from his former degree.

The hishop of Liege,Bro-Duke of Bour gongn, a lord both (piritua)

In the yeare 1466, the byshop of Liege brother to the fore-named Duke of Bourgongne, by his wife, who was of the house of Bourbon: beside his Office, hee was a Prince of the Empire, a Lord both spirituall and temporall, and holding fo great and rich a countrey, as that of Liege. He was taken prisoner by his subjectes, and a great fort of his friendes and officers (among whome were ten Abbots and Protonotaries, or Canons, al of worthy houfes) maffacred in his prefence & himfelfe kept prisoner for long time, and in great milery. At length hee got fafely away, hauing (by money) won his Guards confent thereto.

ing of an arch by thop, and 4. Cardinals.

At Florence, in the yeare 1448.the arch-Bythop of the faide place, being cloathed in his habiliments of Priest-hood, and saying Masse, was sodainely surprized, and hanged or strangled at a Window, by the hands of the hangman sbelide foure Cardinalles massacred by the people, and many other Ecclesiasticall persons beheaded.

And although Popes (as hath beene held) by their great and spiritual authority, might impose silence vpon Christian Princes, from undertaking warres, but to keepe themselves in quiet, and likewise to take armes at his command, for the affairs of the Christian world; yet it came so to passe, that Pope Clement was taken prisoner, and locked up feuen months space in his castle of S. Angelo, kept by a guard of Spaniards and Germaines, and all of them Heretikes (wel-neere) about him. The City of Rome was greeuoufly pilled, the Tem ples ranfacked and prophaned; all which happened by the Souldiers of Charles the fift, a Catholike Emperour, in the yeare 1527.

After these men of Ecclefiasticall profession, it shall not differ much from our purpose, to conclude this chapter with the death of three potent Kings, that died three kings, all three in one day: to the end, wee may all in one day obserue how vnhappy it is for Princes, to thinke that they can well manage their affaires, in medling amongst the quarrels of other Princes, as puisant enery way as thefclues.

It came to passe, that two Princes contended for the kingdome of Fez and Marocco, fituated in Barbarie of Affrica: the Muley Mahaone of them being named Muley Mahu- met, & Abdel met, Nephew to the other that demaunded thefe Realmes, called Abdelmelec. This Mahumet, who enjoyed those Kingdomes ten or twelue yeares, was affayled three or foure times by Abdelmelec, having gotten affiftance of the Turke, and wonne stil the best in foure fought battailes . So that in the end, the inhabitants of Fez and Marocco receyued Abdelmelec: because Maley Mishmet humet was a Tyrant, had very few frends, Marocco. contemning every one, and trufting altogether in his strength and Treasures, after all his loffes in those former Bat-

Sebastian, King of Portugall, made offer Sebastian K. to him of his ayde and friendfhip, but hee offereth aide refused it; vntill such time as hee had ney- 10 Mahumer ther place or person to retire vnto, nor any to follow him. Moreouer, he had spent the great heapes of money which hee had gotten together during his reigne,& now withdrew himselfe into the Mountaines, which are fixe Leagues off from the Citty of Marocco. There hee lived about sea- The miserauen or eight months, like a theefe or rob- ble effate an ber, with some few companies of needie Muley Mapersons, which yet againe were cut off by humes the troopes of Abdelmelec; and Mahumet constrained to wander in the most vnaccessable places of the Mountaines, where he endured a million of miferies, for the space of a whole yeare, living in continuall feare and distrust, onely thorough his conceyued opinion, that hee should bee taken, or betrayed in his fecret walkes.

In breefe, necessity compelled him to repent his former denials, and to require the friendly succour offered him, by that request the braue King of Portugall, Sebastian: vnto and formerly whom he fent an expresse Messenger, and (afterward) two of his Captaines. In the meane while, he found the means to defcend

The Army in field from Portugall.

King Sebasti an pasted into

Affrica a-

nion of all

Abdelmelee (wee may well perswade The care of Abdelmelec, our felues) flept not all this while carelefly, for hee brought threefcore thousand men to the field, as well Pykes as Harque-

buziers, and twenty fixe Pecces of Orde-

cend from the Mountaines, by wayes of little or no refort, and fought for his fafe. ty in * Tanger, a Towne which the Portugales held in Affrica: where hee was well entertained by the Gouernour, who knew some part of Sebastians minde towards him, and therefore furnished the two Captaines with well armed horsemen, for the dispatch of their Embassie in Por-King Sebastian was very joyfull to fee

these Ambassadors because he was naturally addicted to Armes, and the disposition of his person (ioyned with his height of courage) incessantly spurred him on to this businesse. And in this respect, hee tence, for the did but awaite fome apt ouerture, for making his paffage into Affrica, forming his pretext, vppon an earnest desire (as hee would alwayes fay) which hee had to aduance Christian Religion, and to extirpate that of the Mahumetifts. Whereuppon he fuddenly promifed (without any better confideration of the businesse) to fuccour Muley Mahumet, and to re-feate him in his kingdomes againe: hee made promise (I say) to such a one, as himselfe had before fought vnto, for this effect, by fo large a passage ouer the Seas, and two scuerall times had beene misprized by him. The Pope, the King of Spaine, and many other great personages, could not dissiwadehim from this enterprize, but still he perfisted in treading the path vnto his owne death, death that followed him fo hard at the heeles. So did hee fet on into Affrica, with thirteene hundred fayle, as well of great as finall Vesselles in that Fleete, the very fayrest and goodliest that had bene seene in those times. His Army was composed of Lance-knight, Spaniards, Italians, Portugales, and some small number of Affricane Moores, which took part with the Portuguizes, and thirty fixe Pieces of Ordenance for the fielde, well fitted and furnished. In all, there was not aboue fixteene thousand men of warre; fetting afide the Soldiours boyes, Waggoners, Strumpets, Castadours, and other fuch like people very unprofitable for the

nance for the field, well appointed & gouerned by most expert men. Abdelmele. was very forry, that hee should have any conquest against Christians, in regard he bare them much affection; not because he feared the Portuguezes, but as fore-feeing, that Barbary would proue the graue to the King of Portugall; who (indeede) was too weake to encounter with him. that went fo farre beyond him in power. And in due confideration of the case, hee would oftentimes thus fay to himfelte. King Sebastian should bee more respective, then fo unadwifedly to runne upon his owne tunines com ruine: for he would take two king domes from me, which in right and tustice doe appertaine Sebastian. to me, and give them unto a Negro, wherein Christendome can no way be eased or accommodated neyther is it a thing which God (being iust) will permit.

The report and rumors foread abroad,

kinde well-willer; efteeming themselues

happy in his acquaintance. So that from

divers places, great store of Christians

How Abdel-

of Abdelmelecs valiant carriage, was the cause that euery one came to offer him feruice and obeyfance; and from enery ches, and fer Province they brought him goodly prefents and gifts of inettimable value. Many Christian Kings tooke pleasure in his by Christians friendshippe, and embraced him as their and others.

tranailed into his countries, where they received gracious entertainment, and hee shewed them much better countenance, then to any other men that reforted thither, helping them liberally in their necesfities. On the contrary part, Muley Ma- Muley Mahuhumet oppressed the Christians all the mets opprestime of his reigne, or else permitted, that flians. all greefes and molestations should bee done vnto them wherefore King Sebastian(in this respect) did greatly forget him-

Now to deteine the Reader no longer in suspence, the two Armies disposed the- How the two felues for the encounter, and mette in a Armies came field, which contained about two miles in the field. in spaciousnesse, so enen and plaine, that there was not any tree, graffe, brambles, or stones, to offer the least hinderance. The Army of Sebastian, had the River of Arache behinde it, and that of Abdelmelec, the River of Alcassar. Muley Mahumet, for whom this Tragedy was to bee acted, The trechery contrary to his oath and promife, did not with King bring with him any ayde for Sebastian; Schaftian,

hauing

Pope Clemen ner,& Rome pilled by gree dy Soldiours.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

That Princes are commonly (uch in their a-

Etions, manners, and pietie, as they per-

ceque their Kings, Princes, and Rulers

ledged: That the course of Nature shoulde sooner faile, then people bee any other then

their Princes. This is not onely to bee vn-

derstood of their vertues and vices; but

likewife of the gesture of their bodies, yea

euen fo farre as to their wearing garmets.

This may easily be prooued; for Alexan-

der the Great but bending his Neck a lit-

tle towards his right shoulder, al his yong

Princes, and other cheefe followers in

Alphonfus King of Arragon and Sicilie,

having a wry necke, all fuch as followed

and affected him, inforced to wry theyr

neckes like his; as being perswaded, that

it was most commendable in them, be-

cause their King and Maister carryed his

necke fo: as wee finde it recorded in the

Booke of the Courtier, and in the life of

King Frances, the first of that name, v-

fed continually to weare his haire verie

long, and (as it was faide)looking out at a

Window, he received a wounde on the

ced to cut his lockes, and weare them a

great deale shorter then formerly hee had

done. Many of his Courtiers, especially

fuch as wore their haire as he was wont to

do, caused their long locks to be cut like-

wife, and ware them in the same manner

as he did. Heereupon afterwardes, diners

Noble and high descended French-men,

left off from longer wearing falle Lockes

and Periwigs, or Gregorians, which they

reputed as a figne of Nobility and come-

linesse, for holding some place of emi-nencie in the Commonwealth, & thence-

Here neede no doubt to bee made, but that it was verie true which Theodorick, King of the Gothes (writing to the Romaine Senate) al-

Muley Mahu met flying from the figh in the River of Arache.

King Sebafti an flaine among his own Souldiors, bu hardly known

Abdelmelec fell deadly ficke fome \$ dayes before the battaile. and dyed in his Lutter in the midft of the fight.

Three Kings ended their liues in one day diuerfly.

The death & buriallof three Kings bodies very strange as fi dome the like hath beene heard of.

having formerly made him beleeve, that more then halfe the Army of Abdelmelee, would come and joyne with him: which came not so to passe, for both the Armies meeting together, each fide fought valiantly for it felfe, and the Christians sustained the worse. Muley Mahumet was one of the first that fled, shaping his course towards the river of Arache, where thinking to passe the foord, & it being choked with mud and flime, and his horse sticking fast therein, he gave him the four fo furioufly, that lofing his stirrops, and not knowing how to helpe himselfe by swimming, hee fell into the water, and so was both drowned and suffocated in the myre. As for K. Sebastian, after that all his men were flain. or (at least) put to flight; he was affayled on al fides (having but 7 or 8 knights with him) among whom alfo he was flaine, & lay on the ground among his owne people, that fought for their lines as much as men could do.

Now concerning Abdelmclec, some 8

or 10 dayes before the battaile, he fell into a greenous ficknesse, by eating a messe of milke in a neere adioyning Village, which so curded on his stomacke, as hee could not compasse any auoydance of it. Neuertheleffe, on the day of battaile, hee would needs mount on horse-backe, and prease into the thickest of the fight, where finding himselfe more weake then euer; he was conuayed into his Litter, wherein he died immediately. But his death was very closely concealed, vntill the battaile was finished, and won on his side. Thus we may fee, that (in one day) three Kings died by three seuerall meanes: for Muley Mahumet was drowned; Sebastian finished his life in fight; & Abdelmelee dyed by ficknesse. Their bodies also received diucrfity of handling or viage : for the body of Mahumet was flayed, & the skinne fluffed with haire, was carried thorow all the Citties in the kingdomes of Fez & Marocco, in figne of open infamy. The body of the king of Portugall, Sebastian, was buried in the Town of Alcassarquiber, without any Priest for the funerall obsequies. or any sheete to couer his body; but stark naked, according as it was found, when acknowledgement was taken of it among the other dead bodies: yet one of the groomes of his chamber, despoyling him-

felfe thereof, gaue him a poore paire of

linnen breeches, & a most wretched doublet, which was no way difliked by the Mahometanes. The fore-faid groome faued himfelf miraculoufly, for of the whol Not two hun-Christian Army, either Soldiors or other, all the Chris there did not escape 200. Abdelmelec was fian Army, carried away dead in his Litter, royally burallof Abdelmelee. off from that place, hee was buried in a costly Sepulcher, among his Predecesfors, and there was granted rents and reuennues, to divers Priests of the Mahometane Religion, to pray to God (after their manner) for his foule.

Their successors also were as strange and divers; for to Muley Mahumet, succeeded his mortall enemy, Hamed. To werall Kings Abdelmelec, not his owne children, albeit nitheir don nions, after he had divers; but his bastard Brother, the their deaths, faid Hamed, for the father would have it fo. To king Sebastian, Philip King of Spain, who was (a farre off) a kinefinan to him, yet then the necrest that could bee found. because the other was never maried. Here we may apparantly perceive, how fortune playeth with miferable life, or vnfucceffefull ending in the very greatest, or of highest aduancement in this world, as well as those of much meaner condition, & that thorow some secret judgement of God, lethofall who can & will dispose of all things, according to his owne good will and pleafure. These matters happened in Affrica, in the kingdomes of Marocco and Fez, on Monday, being the fourth day in the Moneth of August, and in the yeare 1578.

I could heere alledge many other examples of Christian Kings and Princes, whose endes haue bin scarfely honorable wade in tedi or happy, and that within thirty yeare of our relation this instant:but because I know that these times do affoord some passionate spirits, who take no delight in fuch fad relations, and others are of a freer temper, but as void of pitty, as the other are too forward in compassion, not carrying any meane betweene fuch two extremities; I will forbeare to proceede any further in this argument, & enter into some other more apt discourse.

CHAP.

Chap.38.

Theodoricks

K.of Gothes

writing to the

Senate of

to bee.

Make, and of Princes, and other cheese kind his Court, did bend theirs also in the very

Frances, King of France did westelong hare, and cut head; by meanes whereof hee was enforinto his fashio

Plut in vit Pyr.

Palfe locks &

forward esteemed it as a ridiculous fashi-

Charles the fifte, Emperour, wore his beard long, but cut round below, in shape Charles the 5 of a pouch or purse. In imitation of him, ner of beard. the Noblemen of Spaine, Italy, Flanders, Germany, and Bourgongne, with fome other that were his subjects, hadde their beards after the felfesame fashion, which Beards Impethey tearmed to bee an Imperiall Beard. the Imperiall King Charles the ninth, King of Fraunce, fashion being at Metz, where the Count of Manffeld, and Marquesse of Baden came to see him, because he should shew them a gracious countenance, he tooke off the Marqueffes Bonnet from his head, and put on with the Mar-(insted thereof) his owne, which he com-, queste. monly vsed to weare, that was a German cap, great, thicke, thrummy, and flat, in forme of a Cheefe. In regard whereof, all the attendants in his Court (which was a great company at that time) would needs weare Bonnets after the same sashion. And it grew to fuch an extremity in affection, that such Cappes and Bonnets, as were viually fold in Metz for "thirty Sols, "Ten French within three dayes after, could not bee Sols, make an English shil. bought vnder three French Crowns; and ling. yet (at so deare a rate) they were not to be had, albeit the Bonnet-makers laboured night and day in making them, the crowd and preffe for them was fo great, without any other profite or commoditie Thekings faenfuing by them, but only that they wold great matter. be in the Kings fashion.

King Henrie the third, by reason hee had fome Vicers in the fore-part of his head, was subject to a continual paine & whose Courgreefe: therefore he wore thicke gummy tiers imitated haire, bound vp behinde (like womens) to his gunmed haire, like vncouer that defect. The Moblemen and to Womens. Gentlemen of his Court, had their hayre gummed and bound vp in like maner, although no paine thereto prouoked them: whereupon some were verily perswaded, that men would fall likewise to weare womens garments, they were fo forward in the fashion of their haire. If I would insert all the courses and behauiour of the people, in imitating their Princes fond fashions and habits, I must needs be too troublesome to the Reader : therefore I will now discourse on their vertues and vices, with as much breuity as I can.

The onely cause why men trauailed into Egypt fro fo many parts of the world,

The K. chan

Henrie the 3.

The cause why fo manie men requalled into Egypt.

The example of a Learned mean motiue to his Subjects to affect lear-

The words of Plato the great Philoso pher-

King, is no

nirg.

Manfor, Emperor of Affrica, and all the Spaines.

Great vertues in Manfor a louer of Learning, & a famous example to his fucceffore.

Leo Affrican.in Hift de Temp. Of the wo men of Lybia.

and from Greece more then any other | country (as did many great and excellent Philosophers, amongst whom were Plato, Democritus, and others) was for no other end; but in regard of a King of that Countrey, named Ptolomy Philadelphus, the onely louer of Learning, and seeker after such men as were learned. And in imitation of him, the Egyptians his subiects addicted themselves so studiously to ground their understanding in the most laudable Sciences, and that for fuch long continuance of time, as a man was reputed to have scene nothing, if he had not trauayled into Egypt. Whereuppon, it is fayde, that Plato (admiring their wonderfull erudition) cryed out by way of exclamation: The Greekes are no better then Children in knowledge, beeing compared with the Agyptians. Heere we may obserue, what honour this good King Philadelphusiwon to his subjectes, because by his immitation they made themselues vertuous, and given to all commendable qualities. The like happened under the reigne

of Mansor, Emperour of Affrica, and all the Spaines, who gouerned in the yeare of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred, & This King was such a louer of learning, that he caused all Bookes written in Greeke, cyther concerning Philosophie, Physicke, or Historie, to be translated into the Arabian tongue. He founded many Colledges, wherto he gaue very great rents, for the maintenance of poore Students, and professors of learning, whereof a great many are at this day to be seen, in the Citties of Fez and Marocco in Affrica, in Treuissen, Tunis, Argiere, Hippona, and else-where, although he was a Mahometane in Religion, yet many other of his successors, that afterwardes followed him, and the people themselues (to this day) in those Affricane countries, doe rellish of the good conditions, maners, and vertues abiding in that King, addicting themselues to Learning. Nor appeared this in men onely, but likewise in Women, according as Leo Affricanus testifycth, faying; The Women of Lybia, in thefe our dayes, are very Learned and Studious, and aboue all thingselfe, they are sooner busiedin good Bookes: then medling with cloathes, Garments, or other Vtensels belonging to houshold. And I dare boldly maintaine (with many other Learned men, well read in Histories) that but for this King Manlor, and his Arabian fuccessors: | fed. Physicke had neuer beene halfe so fertile in remedies, as we finde it now to bee in these our daves.

Garcias d'Horta, Physitian to the Vice- Garciald'Han roy of the Indiaes, who lived within leffe then thirty yeares, fayeth, that hee had conferred with many Kings both of the Arabes and Affricanes; and found them to bee learned, as also notably skilfull in in these dairs the Mathematikes. The like is affirmed by him that hath written the generall historie of India, that Almansor, King of Tidora, one of the verie greatest Islandes of the Moluccaes; was one of the greatest Astrologers in our times, and that the people are not fo rude and barbarous, as heere among vs they are reputed to bee. Before Mansor, none of them had ever seene the Bookes of Aristotle, Plato, Hippocrates, Galen, and other Greeke Authours, in any other Language then the Grecian.

In the time of this King, Manser, flourished great store of Learned men and Philosophers: such as were Auerroes, Me-(uus, Rasis, Rabbie Moses, and divers others, whose workes (at this very day) are reade in our Vniuersities, and Commen- Manfor. ted voon. by diverse and sundrie great Schoolemen, and it is not to be doubted, but posteritie (for euer) will rest beholding to them.

The manner of founding Colledges, wherein to instruct poore youths in good Letters; Hospitalles, for the lodging of Kings & Im maymed, fickely, and needie persons; Conuents and Abbeyes, for the dwelling of godly and religious men, wherein to pray for the augmentation of the Church, and prosperity of Christian Princes; beganne first by Kinges and Emperours, and in their immitation, Dukes, Earles, Barons, Popes, Cardinalles, and Byshoppes, besides other rich men (among the common people did the like As Charlemaigne, Lewesthe ninth, Phillip Duke of Bourgongne, and divers other: which is a most plaine and manifest Reafon, that all Christendome remaineth yet to this day, embellished with so manie faire and rich Arch-bythopprickes, Byfhopprickes, Abbeyes, Priories, Colledges, and Hospitals.

Phyfick plen-

Chap.3

Lewes the e-

leuenth im.

prisoned by

duke (barles.

The bold pre-fumption of

Charles duke

Peter de He. genibach

Count of This

eifteine,De-

putic to Duke

hi

th

35 09 8₹

Charles in

Aultria, degra

ded and be-

headed.

of Burgogne.

ſ'n

chi

lig his

in

the

| 3. Ol

Affrican and Arabian kings earned nowe

and worthy men flourish daies of King

Christian

The beginning of the Dukes downfall and mifformnes.

gious houles.

King

An Armie af-

fembled by

the Duke.

A most inhu-

manadaed of

the Dake.

Physick plen. cifully increa-

Garcias d'Har ta in lib de diwerf.Geft.

Affrican and Arabian kings earned now in these daies

> The bold prefumption of

putic to Duke

Charles in

Aultria, degra

ded and be-

headed.

Chap.37.

Lewes the e-

leventh im.

prisoned by

duke (barles.

ed in the daies of King Manfor. Peter de Hegenibach ount of Thieifteine, De-

Christian Kings & Emperouisfift founded Colledges, Ho pi tals, Abbeycs & Monafte ries.

What learned

and worthy

men flourish

The beginning of the Dukes downfall and mif. fortunes.

wealth, he became so proude, that hee durst vndertake the boldnesse (vpon some small suspition conceiued, that Lewes the eleventh King of Fraunce, had intelligence with them of Liege, beeing then his enemies) to imprison the fave King in the great Tower of Peronne, where they met both together, under the colour of friendly conference. And there he made him condificend to follow him (like a water Spaniell) in the warres, which hee had against the Inhabitants of Liege, euen vntill hee had ruined theyr Townes, and all the Countrey: Heere seated Edward king of England, beeing expelled from his Kingdome; giving him mony, and an armie by Sea, to bring it to passe.

Afterward, hee would needes coape in Armes with the Emperour, and (almost) all the Princes of Germanie: besieging the Towne of Nuz (which is not farre numption of Charles duke from Coloigne) for the space of a yeare. of Burgogne, but all in vaine. Euery one reputed him to be great, happy, and inuincible: but we shal soone perceive the contrary, and how (by little and little) heertrode the path to his owneruine, as briefly I purpose to relate. It fortuned that this Charls had instituted as Gouernour ouer those Lands, which he held mortgaged by the Arch-Duke of Austria: a thiefe and tyrant, named Peter de Hagembach, Counte of Thierstein, who (so much as in him lay) tormented both them of Mulbuse, and the Smitzers: whereupon, they took him prisoner, and having proceeded against him by due forme of Lawe: they degraded him of his order of Knighthoode, and afterwards beheaded him in the open Market place.

> Next, the seauenty thousand florins were configned ouer to a Banquer of Bafile, and to the Duke it was signified by an Herald, that hee held no more right ouer the Country, then what the Arch-Duke had mortgaged vnto him. Hereat hee grew verie highly offended, and fought all meanes how to be reuenged; especially for the death of Peter de Hagembach. Then hee affembled an Armie, being affisted by the Duke of Millaine, and the Dutchesse of Sauoy; taking Lausanna, which was confedered with the Switzers.

Thence hee went and besieged the

Duke commaunded foure score of them with an Army belonging to the Archhung vp as many Bourgognions.

The moueables of his house, which hee would alwayes have carryed along with him, were of extraordinary valew: with himin for among them were so many rich tents, water. all of costly silkes, and vessells both of golde and filuer, embellished with store of precious stones, that it would require too long time to recount them. There were some Switzers, that sold great store of filuer plates, for two great blankes a peece, not knowing their valew and estimation. A Diamond, thought to bee the greatest and clearest that those times affoorded; and, esteemed more worth then fiftie thousand crownes, was solde for twelue Sols. A faire bathing tubbe of filuer, richly guilded, wherein he vsed treasured to bathe himselfe, was solde for source pounds. I cannot heere set downe, the rich clothes of Tapistrie, wrought with vn-ualuable workes of filke and golde for him to treade on wherefoeuer hee went. To be briefe, the Reader would be wearied in rehearfall of the incredible wealth and riches, which this vnfortunate prince

Then falling into a long and greeuous sickenesse, at the length hee recouered, and taking courage to himselfe againe, hee returned the second time against the power and force of the Switzers. Hee had formerly taken Nancie from Rene, Duke of Lorraine; wherefore the fayde Duke of Lorraine forthwith loyned his forces with the Swit-

lost, and whereof his greatest enemies

made their triumph.

O0 2

The

Towne and Castle of Granson, Solliciting them to yeeld themselves. They hauing humbly fubmitted themselves, the to be hanged, and an hundred more to bee drowned, in the nearest Lake adioyning to the Cittie. This inhumane act did not onely moue the Switzers; but likewise them of high Germanie, who Duke of Austria (whereof Harman d'Extingen was the conducter) expelled the Duke from Granson, and flew a great part of his Army; taking beside, his Artillerie and furniture for warre, which was, great and rich. Afterward, taking downe all their friends, which the Dake had caused to bee hanged; in their places they

The Duke chased from

Granson, and historioure for watre ta-

The great implicitie of he Switzers, of the Dukes

All Christen dom beauti fied with reli gious houses Fascic.Temp. Mater Hiller.

Rene Duke of Lorraine.

A third battel yndertaken. by the Duke of Bourgongn and lost also.

The vanity of c'ie Bourguignont concerning the Dukes death.

Naucler. in lib. 7.64P.10.

The vnfortunate end of so great a Duke.

Vladiflaus K. howe little a while hee en. ioyed both thorough his owne folly.

The Duke of Bourgongne being before Morat, the people of the Towne yssued forth, and so beset the army of the Bourguignons, that twenty thousand (according to Fasculus Temporum) or twentie two thousand, and seuen hundred (according to the Mother of Histories) were ther The spoyle was left to the Duke of Lorraine, who likewife recourred Nancy againe afterward.

A third time likewise, the Duke of Bourgongne, being not a little offended, that he shold be vanquished by so mean a Prince as the Duke of Lorraine, and hee recouering the Towne of Nancy; returned with fresh forces, and besiedged it againe with fourteene thousand able fighting men, beside some other bandes in expectation. The Duke of Bourgongne was discomfited, and all his army; but by no meanes could his body be found. The Bourguignons could not be perswaded that hee was flaine: but having escaped from the field, hee had retyred himselfe into Germanic, where he had vowed to liue in seuen years penitence.

There were some Bourguignous, that made sale of precious Stones, Horses, and fuch like things, to be paide againe upon his returne, and namely to Brachelles, in the Diocesse of Spire. There was a poore Begger, immagined to bee the Duke of Bourgongne, because he lived in the like estate of penance; which made verie many trauaile to see him, and bestow very liberall almes on him. Nauclerus reporteth that he faw the poore man begging in the same place. The King of France, hearing the Duke was dead, seized on Montdidier, Roye, Peronne, Abbenille, Monstreul, Arras, Hesdin, and the two Bourgongnes, to wit, the Dutchy and Countie. The men of Gaunt tooke his Daughter, that gouerned his estates very poorely, and marryed her as themselues pleased; she having put to death the Chancellor, and other of his best officers. Thus you see how this great Prince ended his life, accompanied with many misfortunes.

Vladislaus, King of Poland, a young and of Poland and gallant Prince, was called by the Hunga-Hungaria, & rians to be their King, in the yeare 1440. He conceined fuch glory by feeing himfelfe King of two fuch mighty Kingdoms, his kingdom. that he thought himselfe to be inuincible. Whereuppon, being defirous to imploy

his valour in warre against fome enemie, that might take notice of his courage and power; he brake faith and Truce, which the Hungares had made with the Turk the yeare before. In the first battayle: hee gaue, he was quickely flayne, and hadde but a short enjoying of his two Kingdomes; for, thorow the inconstancie of Fortune, his pretended felicity was soon cut off, and all his supposed power veterly quailed.

The Emperor of the East, Constantine Paleologus, some fifteen yeares after, went Paleologus, to keepe company with this young King the Eaft Vladislaus, in the other world. For Con-Stantinople, the Metropolitane Cittie of his Empire, was besiedged and taken by Mahomet the second, sir-named the Great, thorow the negligence and treacherie of Iohn Iustinian of Geneway; Mahomet hauing 300000. able fighting men, and Thepower of fourehundred Cannons, and the fiedge continued threescore dayes. The Empe- tinople. rour (in flight) was met withall, and murthered neere vnto the Gate: his head being carryed vppon a Launces point, and so conveighed quite thorow the Cittie, while his bodye was trodden vnto dirte den vnder with their feete. Mahomet also caused a Crucifixe to bee erected, and wrote vppon it (in scornefull derision) these words: This is the GOD of the Christians: commanding likewise, that every one should cast dung and filthe uppon the fayre Image.

The wife to the Emperour, with her | The Mame daughters, and the very Noblest Ladyes attending on them, were brought before he, daughten Mahomet; and after all reproach was done unto them, even the verie greatest Villa nies in the world, their bodies were hacked and hewne in peeces.

Some few dayes after, there was another King (but of three dayes standing) put to death likewise. VVhich I may by no meanes omit because it was the forenamed Iohn Iustinian the Genouese, a trayterous Villaine. For hee had concluded with Mahomet, that if he would make him King, he would yeelde vp Constantinople, or be the meanes whereby hee shoulde surprize it. Mahomet kept promise with standing. him; for hee constituted him a King for three dayes space: and on the fourth day, hee commanded his head to bee finitten off. So sayerh Fasciculus Temporum; and

Frances, King of Frances fiftet that name,the iather of learning.

> rei Ofhonorable and learned w Ladies, befi le Wd two famous Queenes of As Nauatre. b¢

hi

re

le

th

th

cc

of

an

M

im

ho

of

tin

ď

m

ple

oft

fho

(cci tha

best

and

COL

mat

dibl

was

mol

fille

harc

Hen

allb

thee

him

Sou

on o

vicia

fame

thria

was:

it as

peop

vice.

full

N

King Henry

the fourth e-

ver the first

Battailes, & c

King Mithri-

dates a noto.

tious drank.

ard, and his

people follow

ed his exam

pl:.

man in all

Mahomet be-Learne La dies in Italy.

Elizabeth the rors body tro fairous and learned foore, and his Queene of head cut off. England,

done vnto the Empresse, and

The Treason of Juha Justinian, and his juft requitall, being a King of three dates

fics, Anth of di

ind

ich

the

nçe dde

ng cof con

erly

riby

eat.

ic of

ha-

edge

mpe

mmr d be

and

rtc

da

VD.

ords:

com-

ould

re I-

dyes fore

one

filla

hac-

ding)

ју Бу

fore-

tray-

luded

e him

her The firme

done vnto the

Empresse,and

he, daughters

Conflantine Paleologus, Emperour of the Eaft.

and The power of

Mahomet be-

fore Constan

tinople.

The Empe-

den vnder

rors body tro

foote, and his

bead cut off.

of France, fiftet that name, the father of learning.

and learned

rwo famous

Queenes of

Nauatre.

Ladies,besi le

King Frances, first of that name, because Frances, King himselfe was learned, and cherished men of learning and knowledge; beheld his reigne furnished with a great number of learned and vertuous Schollers, more then any other that went before him. In the fame minde continued his Sonne, fiicceffor to his Crowne, and all the children of his fuccessour; not meanely cherished and enriched by king Henry the fourth. Margret, Grandmother to the King now reigning, was a most learned Lady, of Ofhonorable whose excellent & most elegant Poems, we have great store remaining among vs. As also of Inneher Mother, both of them being Queenes of Nauarre, (and in their imitation) many other great Ladyes of honour, gaue their mindes to the reading of graue Authors, as well Greeke as La-Nor is it any matter of meruayle, if in these dayes, wee behold so many Ladyes well seene in good Sciences, and among the rest, that Italy affoordeth such plenty of studious women: the custome of the countrey prohibiting, that women should be any great walkers, or so much feene as they are in France. And because that famous Queene of England, Elizabeth, was very skilfull in many Languages, and deeply read in the fayrest and most

Elizabeth the farrous and learned Queene of England,

Learned La-

dies in Italy.

King Henry the fourth cuer the fir (t man in all Battailes, & c.

King Mithridates a noto. rious drank • ard, and his people follow edhis exam pl:.

Henry the fourth, then reigning: who in all battailes, encounters, and charging of the enemy, was alwayes the formost man himfelfe; which taught his Captaines & Souldiors to do the like, onely by imitation of his unparaled exploits. Now on the contrary, if the Prince bee vicious,his Subiccts wil fauour of the felfe same taste. As we reade of one named Mithridates, king of Amasia, who because he was a notorious drunkard, and accounted it as a vertue to drinke immeasurably: his people addicted themselves to that soule vice, so that the most part of them were full of diseases, as gouts, conuulsions, palfies,& alienation of vnderstanding. Marke Anthony, who tearmed himfelfe Emperor of the East, so wallowed with his beloued

Cleopatra, in the delights of Egipt (that the

commended Sciences, as in the Mathe-

maticks,& diners others: it was also cre-

dibly reported, that her house and Court,

was bounteously stored with learned and

most vertuous Ladies. And that which

filled France with fuch plenty of bold and

hardy spirits, was by the meanes of king

degenerated quite from the vertues of their former King Philadelphus) and became so affected to drinking & drunken- his drunkennesse, intermixing rich flowers and precio.s stones among the wine they dranke; East. that he gaue such example to his men of warre, and to the people thorowthe East, to drinke and gourmandize after the same manner, that they would be drunke euery day, and held it as an admirable vertue: forgetting the honest policy of the Romanes, who would drinke no wine while they were in Armes. And so Marke Anthony (albeit hee was a great and worthy Captaine) and all his followers, by having discontinued the vertuous exercise of Armes; when hee should come to cope with Octavius Augustus, was (with farall labour) surmounted. And the best generous acte, that Anthony could then devile to do, and for his latest piece of service, was to kill himfelfe, like another brutish Sardanapalus.

Darius also, the great Monarch and King of the East, about three hundred yeares before Marke Anthony, euen like to him, had (beside his married wise) a multitude of concubines, bardaching boyes, fidlers, vaulters, dancers, fooles, players, and other people of as small account in his Army, eating and drinking, before eyther hunger or thirst viged any necessity. His Captaines and men of command, with all the rest of his Army, he licenced to the like liberty: for each of his Soldiours might have his two concubines, beside as many Ganimedes, and cheefer men tripled, or (at least) doubled In the ende, his Army, thought to confift of eight hundred thousand able fighting men; there could not bee found twenty thousand among them all. according to the example of their king, they were altogether addicted to luxury | inedownfall and drunkennesse, and became as people vtterly vnmeete for warre. Therefore both he and they were ouercome by Alexanders forces, with small transile, or losse on his side; because his men were sober, continent, and flout fighting Soldiors, as the king himselse was. So the Persian Empire, and the Babylonian also, was lost and diffipated in a moment; in regard that their king was lascinious and of fost temper, which caused his subjects to imitate his example.

thony thorow neffe onerthrew all the

neglect m to tamous a Sol-

goodnelle appeareth, vice

Princes!

The Treason of Juhn Juftinian, Ind his ioft requitall, being a King of three dates flanding.

i*nople*, oulde with gifor iday.

hitten

Scipio denied

The Authors aduerti'emet to Kings and Princes in thefe our

Princes then, 'and others, that are aduanced to gouerne ouer people, may be aduited by thefe examples and reasons formerly alledged, to addict their mindes and bodies to vertuous exercifes, to fpeak discreetly, to be no blasphemers, to line in all fobriety, and to declare modestie in their actions and apparrell: but aboue all the rest not to swerue from vertue and true piety. For therein (doubtlesse)their people will follow them, and make theyr time of rule the more fetled and affured: for where vice reigneth, rebellion (oftentimes) the fooner enfueth.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the Originall of Triumphs: why they were first granted and ofed in Rome: How many they were that triumphed:What a Triumph is : and that there are two fortes of

Two thinges that moone men to high matters.

*A Poet of

much loued

of fully and

A Romaine

much main-

tained by Tu

The carefull

confideration

of the Romis

to hono: nich

of merite and

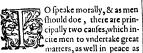
how frome

came to bee

Emprelle of the world.

Antioch,

Lucullus



warre. The first is Honor and renowne: the second is profite and commoditie, Magnanimous, Noble and Heroicke spirits do chiefly couet the first; & base and vnworthy fonles feeke for falary and hire. Cicero faith in his Oration which he made for " archias the Poet : We all are drawne to defire commendation, and they of greatest place and expectation, faile with full gale after honour and fame : coueting no other recompence, or greater guerdon for their Ver-tue, then glory onely. The same Cicero, in another Oration made for the defence of Milo, faith ; Wife and valiant men do not fo much labour in exercise of their vertue, for the receit of wages, as for the honor that en-

Sueth thereby. This being well confidered by the Romaines, they (more then any other Nation) fought how to honour and illustrate (beside due recompence) such as stroue to do any notable or vertuous acte. So that in thort time after, and proceeding on with the same determination; Rome cies & costs that might expresse any signe

affoorded the refort (more then any place beside) of no meane number of worthie men, excelling both in Armes and Go. uernment, that by them shee attained to fway the Empire of the whole world. In regard whereof, for example and instruction to these instant times, as also to delight fuch as enquire after Antiquities: I thought it very convenient, to supplye this place with some breefe declaration, of the manner observed amongst the Romaines, in yeelding honour and renowne to fuch men, as had obtayned any victory Now because among all honors what- Triumph, the

focuer, Triumph was reputed to bee the greatefta very greatest; we will discourse thereon, according as we finde it set downe for our was signified instruction . Triumph was a forme of by the word entrance, or (as we may well fay) a kinde Triumph. of Welcome, which they vsed in Rome, to their Captaines and Generalles, with the verie greatest pompe and solemnitie that could bee expressed vnto men. And albeit Triumphs were much vsed among the Romaines, yet were they not the first Died sient a inuenters of them . For Diodorus Sien- Phinitels, 643 lus, and Pliny, doth both fay, that Denis, called Diony fe in Antiquitie, and named also Fater Liber, was the first that ener Triumphed in the worlde. It appeareth likewise, that the Carthagenians vsed to Triumph : for Justine (among the other Juffin in like) honours of Haldruball) faith, that he Tri-

umphed fouretimes. Moreouer, wee reade of Triumphes among the Kings of Ægypt, and especi- comparable ally of King Solestris . Neuertheleffe, to to the Ro. speake truely, Triumphes were neuer for Triumphes folemnized in any other Nation, as they were among the Romaines: for vpon the day that any Captaine triumphed, the people of Rome ceased from all kinde of Workes whatfocuer, and not any matter (concerning profite) was permitted to be done.

And to make this folemne Triumph ces necre neighbouring thereto, came of people thicke and threefold thither to behold it. the more compleate, the people of al pla-And all the Cittie, Temples, Streetes, bouring pairs Gates, and Windowes, were enriched & Triumph. hung with clothes made of Gold, Siluer, Silke, Leafes and Flowers of sweete smelling fauour, befide all other magnificen-

golde and filuer, money, iewells and other rich thapes or trophees, with fuch gifts and prefents, as hee had received

No Nation

A hill wher on S. Peters

with the whole Nobilitie of Rome, and generally the better fort of people, went forth into the fields very honourably apparelled, to entertayne the Triumpher: who entred Rome, cloathed in purple, crowned with Laurell, and mounted on a golden charrior, drawne by foure milke white horfes. All his prisoners went before him, attired like flaues or fernants, having their heads close shorne or sha-

filled full of armour, which hee had ta-

ken from the enemy : beside other wag-

gons laden in like manner, with Plate of

of Kings, or any other friends to Rome.

Great Castles, Towers, and other Ess-

gines of wood, made artificially, repre-

fenting conquered Citties and Fortref-

making liuely reprefentation, as they

marched along, of fuch battailes as had

happened in the last warre, and so exact-

ly to the life; that they were very dread-

full to the beholders. These things were so many in number, so mighty, and of such rare diuerstrie, that the Triumph

(sometimes) required the vse of three fe-

nerall dayes, because all the representati-

ons might be the more amply noted and

conceined. The Triumph confifted of

various inuentions, with many rare de-

or Victor; but there were Lawes fet

downe, and notable occasions to be con-

fidered, before fuch fauour could be ob-

tained. The Captaine that meant to de-

mand it, came not at all into Rome : but

abode at the "Vaticane, and thither the

Senate returned him answere, whether

fuch grace might bee permitted him, or

no. First of all, no chiefe, or commander

of an Army might triumph; except hee

had beene Confull, Proconfull, or Di-

Norwas this honour of Triumph,

uices, too long to be reported.

The Souldiours of his owne Armie en-Souldiours. tred in due order, bearing branches of Laurell in their hands. Then followed Chariots of before him, Charriots and Waggons

Remaine no-

hers entring

no Rome

fes, were likewise carryed before him:

The triump dies fome

allowed and granted to enerie Captaine aliowed, but lawes for the

of ioy. The Senate and all the Priests, 1 to any of meaner condition. In regarde whereof, Marcus Marcellus had triumph denyed him, albeit he had worthily con- Marcus Marquered Siracufa; and Scipio alfo, although cellus and he had fubdued spaine. For, it was ne- triumph. ceffarily required, that the battell must be great and notable against the enemie. and aboue fine thousand men at the least flayne therein. Of thefe matters, Valerties | Valer. Max 12. Maximus is Author. We likewise reade, that Cato, and L. Marius, being Tribunes, Marius Triuen : and the Captayne or King of the made a Law, whereby they ordayned fe-bunes. prisoners by him vanquished, went nearest to the Charriot before anie other. uere punishment for any Captayne, that

due the whole Prouince or Country, &

lius, notwithstanding all his great victo-

ries in Spaine : for hee should have com-

paffed the acquifition of fom new coun-

try or entred into a new warre. & not de-

fend that only which was formerly won.

Vpon the same occasió also, great Quin.

him; which they would refute to doe, be-

cause (at this seast) no person should bee

present, to whom greater honour might

be done, then to the Triumpher. The

Triumph alwayes ended in the Temple of *Impiter* in the Capitoll, where the

spoiles (wonne from the enemy) were al-

nors and fauors done him : fome fay, that

a flaue or bond-man was feated by him

with permission, to least and scoffe at him

as a plaine apparance, that fuch dignities

conquered them of Campania.

deliuered a false report of the number flayne in fight. Nor was it enough for a man to win the battell, how doubtfull & bloudy focuer it were; but hee muft fub-

leave it peacefully to his fuccesfor, bring- Provinces ing home his army braue & victorioufly; which was the cause (sayth Titus Linius)
that Triumph was denyed to Titus Man-

tus Fabius riumphed not, though he had Valer.Max 1.2

It was observed as a custome also, that on the day of Triumph, the Triumpher A custome ob fhould invite the Confulls to suppe with triumph day,

together offred, and delivered vp to pub- The spoyles like vfe. And because the triumpher shold delivered to not ouer-glory himselse in these high ho-

all the day long, & to reproach him with Triall of the fuch iniuries as seemed best to himselfe, Patience,

depended but on transitory graces. Now, to make this triumphall honor the more intelligible; we will make reherfall of some one or two, especially that of Paulis Amilius, that worthy and famous The honora-Captayne of Rome, who obtayned his of Paulus Acctator; for Triumph was neuer granted triumph inftly; for vanquishing & taking milian,

Plat in vit.

Concourse of people to beumph.

Temples fet

Whiflers or Stickless to make way for paffage of the Triumph.

The order for the firft dayes passage.

The fecond dayes honour in larger må-

and chargers.

Fountaine Pots, Ewres, Lauours, and Batons of gold and filPerseus, the powerfull king of Macedon, conquering and ruinating his kingdome, and therefore made his Triumph, according as it is remembred by Plutarch, in this manner. Our first remembrance, concerneth the people of Rome in generall, with them of all the neighbouring parts round about, attired after their very best ability of performance, and contending for places in houses and windowes, where best they might take view of the triumph. All the Temples and Churches in Rome with Tapistry, greene boughes of Trees, beside plenty of incense and sweet smel-

were fet wide open, deckt and richly hung ling perfumes, and so were all the streetes in like manner. Now because in the Citty the concourse of people was infinite, reforting from fo many feuerall places, in earnest desire to behold such a solemne spectacle, there were certain men appointed with staues in their hands, who had charge to make way for the Triumphs passage, and looke to the peoples safe seating, because the matters prepared for this triumph grew fo great, as they were enforced to divide them into three feuerall daves.

The first day was scarsely sufficient for entrance of all the Banners, Standards, & vanquished Enfignes; as also for passage of the Statues, Coloffes, Tables, and Images, for all these were conuayed along in order, in rich and well appointed Chariots, VV aggons, and Thrones. On the fecond day, the Armour and munition of the conquered king, and what elfe belonged to the Macedonians, was brought into the citty: which Armours being rich and glorioufly glittering, were conveniently placed on best fighted carriages, meetest for their full and ample beholding. After these chariots and waggons, entred three thousand men, carrying siluer mony (open to be seene) on great Plates and Vessels of filuer, each one weighing three talents, of which Plates and Vessels there were 350 in number, and foure men allowed to carry each piece of Plate. The rest that ferued to make up the ful number of three thousand men, carried Fountaine Pots. Ewres, Basons, Lauours, very curiously wrought in gold and filuer, befide other veffels of the fame mettals, most rich and magnificent to behold: and the paffage of these companies continued so long, that

it required the second dayes whole employment, marching along in due and

comely order. The third day being come, the breake The third of day no sooner began, but in the first laft dayes pet. band, & beginning of the Triumph, went formance of Drums, Fites, Clarions, and Trumpets derof the founding not sweet and delicately, but in Triumph. fuch stearne and vigorous manner, as if they were instantly to enter battail. After them were led fix score kine, all white, hauing their hornes richly guilded, and their white kine bodies couered with costly cloathes: all appointed for these were helde as sacred to the Gods. sacrifice. crowned and decked with garlands, and chaplets of faire flowers, & they that guided the, were braue gallant youths, sump- Children tuously apparelled for this feruice, and for with Plate the facrificing of them; and by thefe kine for the face. went as many comely children, carrying Plates of gold and filuer for the facrifice. Next vnto the kine, were rancked fuch as carried gold money in chargers of gold, being seuenty seuen in number. And behindethem, followed they that holpe to beare the great Bolle or Cuppe of golde, A Bolle or weighing ten Talents, which Paulus Aeweighing ten Talents, which Paulus Aemillius had caused to bee made, enriched
Talents with many fumptuous and vnualuable precious stones. They which carried the chargers of money, were fuch as had bin neerest in fauour, about the Kings Antigonus, Seleucus, and other Kings of Macedon, especially the forenamed Perseus. Next followed the chariot of the conquered redkington King, with he Armes and Weapons riot and his which he vied to weare, his Crown, Scep- Aimes. ter royal and rich Robe laid vpon the Armour. Behinde the chariot were the children to the poore kingled as prisoners, The kings with a great number of his cheefest Offichildrenked cers; as the Masters or Gouernours of his prisoners, houshold, his Treasurers, Chancellors, Secretaries, and others of high employ-

to much compassion. Of the children belonging to this king, Children are there were 2 males and 2 females, but fo weake vnder yong in yeares, as they were not capable flanderiof of vnderstanding their misfortunes when of vnderstanding their misfortunes; wherby the people were fo much the more incited to pitty their condition, & thought it vnbeseeming, that affliction should bee

ment in his affaires. They all wept, & ex-

pressed extraordinary signes of greefe, be-

holding themselues brought into such a

feruitude; which moued all the beholders

The kings in thetriumph

The golden

Crownes of the Cittles of

Greece borne

him, and he

No great dif-ference in

the Romane

A Law for

the order of

Sports and Feafts were

by free per-miffion.

how diners

in their tri-

feene in fuch tender yeares. In this Triumph, the Father followed his children, artired after his Countries manner; but yet in blacke habites, pacing on troubled and fearefully, as indeed he had good reafon, confidering his present estate, and whence he was falne.

After the King, followed his friends & fauourites, with a great number of his familiars, who all looking on their King confounded themselues with forrow, to fee his reuerend cheekes furrowed with teares, and many of the Romans bemoaned his mifery. Then after were brought the crownes of gold, which the ancient Citties of Greece had presented to Paulus Aemillius, who followed the triumphantly, mounted upon a goodly Chariot, cloathed in purple tiffue of golde, bearing a Lawrell branch in his hand, and a crowne of the same vpon his head. Behinde him followed the people both on foote and horseback, some having branches of Lawrell and Palme in their hands, and some with Banners and Pennons, finging in honour of their Captaine, triumphing thus after his victories with other most delectable fights to behold; and in this order Paulus Aemillius triumphed throgh Rome. Others also did the like, with some things added or diminished, and so they went to offer their (poyles, in the Temple of Jupiter within the Capitoll; and there according to the forme and manner, as their blinded religion then required, they gaue thankes to their Gods for the victory obtayned. And notwithstanding that in this faftion they observed & performed their customary triumphs: yet they had a Law for it, according to which Law, they gaue triumph by defert, making a distinction of the gates & streets, whereat they were to enter, and whereby they should passe along, the times also beeing ordered and appointed. But concerning other things, as sports, playes, & Feasts of divers kinds, it was permitted, that every man might augment and enrich his triumph, and his chariot also: for it is found recorded, that

fome haue bin drawne by as many Buls. Great Pompey, when hee triumphed for The manner Affrica, he entred in a Charlot drawne by were drawne Elephants. Suctonius faith, that Iulius Cafar when hee made his triumphall entrance | this Captaine, were not armed, neyther

they had a custome, to be drawne by four

white horses, and yet notwithstanding,

VVith the like Beafts triumphed the Emperour Gordianies. And Flaulus writeth, that the Emperour Aurelianus, who was king of the Gothes, triumphed in a chariot drawne by Harts. VVc reade also, that Mark Anthony in his triumph, had his chariot drawne by Lyons. The Roman Captains had a custome beside when they triumphed to have a young childe or many forme of our in their chariots: whereof Cicero maketh Pageants wer mention in his Oration pro Munera. O- at first deuithers caused to be led in their triumphs, an infinite number of wilde and fanage Beafts, as Lyons, Ounces, Beares, Tygers, Rhinocerots, Panthers, Dromi-daries, & other kindes of beafts, as did Titus & Vefpasian, according to the relation of losephue. Some other also would have their entrance with diversity of Musique, as well by instruments as voyces, with infinite other the like delectations. Among all which triumphs, some were more fin- umphs more gular then the reft; as those of Pompey & lingular then Cafar; ofthetwo Brethren Scipioes; and the rett. likewife of the Emperors, wherof Flondus fpeakes in his Book of Rome triumphing, & according as Paulus Orofius faieth, that there were 320 I riumphers in Rome; the last wherof was the emperor Probus, from

had his chariot drawn by forty elephanis.

whose time fince. Rome ran to her deca-In Rome there was yet another kinde of folemn welcom, which was fomwhat leffe then triumphing, being called Ouatio, and given for victories when as A fmall trifomething wanted of fuch necessary con- umph of a ditions as required triumph. As for example, if the Captaine had not bin Confull out flaughter or Proconfull, or had made war without of men or very few. great refistance, or little bloodshed in battaile, or had conquered people of flender efteeine; or if the war had bin done without expresse authority from the Senate. & fuch like other conditions; then in fled of triumphing this Onatio was granted to

him,& it was performed in this manner. The Captaine entred Rome on horsebacke, in stead of a chariot, and some of them (in elder times) entered on foote, crownd with the leaues of Myrrhe, which were offerings to Venus, because such triumphing was not reputed Martiall, but (as it were) veneriall, according as Aulus Aul. Gellius in Gellius faith. The people attending on hott, duic, lib. founded

him, making a great feast for him, as also The first Ovation Triumphers, and that accepted

Plin.in lib 9. CAP.12.

gladly.

How this kinde of triumph tooke name at the firft,by vari. ety of opinion

A further permission gran. ted to Trium-

phers of ere-

Pillars, &c.

Oue.

Trophees among the Grecians, and founded Trumpets, Drums, or any other | which fignifieth a fleeting conversion, or instruments of warre; but flutes & sweet | retreated, because (in that place) the enemusicall instruments, fost and delicate. Neuertheleffe, they entred in order, and with their booty, and the Senate went foorth of the Citty to meete and receive

highly prayling & commending him. I finde that many excellent Captains have requested & accepted of this honor, and the first was Posthumus Liberius, ha. uing vanquished the Sabines; and Marcus thereof very Marcellus, for his victory at syracufa. Suetonius affirmeth, that Octavius Cafar entred thus, after the Phillippick battailes, & the warre of Sicily. The cause why this

finall triumph was fo named, is described by Pliny, for in declaring that divers Capraines were denyed this kinde of triumph, and could by no meanes obtayne it: hee proceedeth to yeelde a reason, why this Ouatio was to tearmed. The facrifice (fayeth he) which the Captaine then offered, was a Sheepe, which in the Latine tongue is called Ouis: but the other Triumphers offered a Bull, and therefore upon the word Ouis, the reception and entertainment made unto the, was called Ouatio, or Oualis. Some other fay, that it took name by a certaine found in the peoples voyce, of Oe, or elfe Oue: but because this is a matter of small im-

portance, it shall suffice to say, that such a

thing was named Ouatio, eyther of the

word Ouis, or of the other voyce of Oe or

It was also permitted to the Triumphers, to crect their Statues in Temples, & common places of refort : also to build Arches and Collombs, named Trium. phall, framed of Marble, and in or on the, to infculpt (most excellently) their battels and victories, for their owne perpetuall memory. The vestiges or footings of the are (at this day) to be seene in Rome: and these things wer thus done, in imitatio of Trophees, anciently vsed among the Grecians, helping themselues thereby in manner following. In the same place, where the in what man- Captaine had obtayned any victory, a great tree was prepared, the greatest therabout to be found, the branches whereof were all cut off; and then vpon the trunke was fastened all the coar-armours of the vanquithed, as a victorious and honourable memory, and it was called Tropaum

my was put to flight, or difgracefull retreate, and fo the Romanes afterward were glad to follow their fashion.

Salust writeth, that Pompey having ouercome the Spaniards, planted his Tro- Prompeyer phees on the top of the Pyrennean Moun-libetoper the taines: and this course (by tract of time) Pyrennen Mountaines was in such esteeme, that they grew to be made of stone. But this matter can approue it selfe to be much more ancient,& that other Nations have made vie therof: for we reade, that Saul having vanquished | Reg 15,11 Agag, king of the Amalekites, and beeing come to Mount Carmell, he erected there

a triumphall Arch, as a memory of his victory. In breefe, the honour of triumph was efteemed and affected, more then any other honour in Rome, fo that for obtayning it, the Captaines would expose their lines to all tranaile and perill. Beside, the then anyo Triumphers grew to great wealth, both ther horiour in Rome, by the enemies spoyles, and the gifts of their friends, and so much the rather have I reported these things, because Princes may thereby receive example, how to honour and remunerate their Captains and Soldiers to their merits. But in these decaying dayes, fluggards, and fuch as doe nothing at all, are as well, if not better respected, then they that adventure their lines and goods, both for feruice of their Prince, & profite of their natiue country

CHAP. XLI.

Of such names of immortall honour and renowne, which the Romane Captaines had granted and given them, according to their Seuerall victories.



Ver and beside this high dignity of Triumphs, the Romane distribution of the captains had farre greater honours die nours given them, by names & Romane Generals,

firnames, which were imposed on them nerals. by the people and Provinces, that had bin conquered and ouercome by them. And as it was a notable forme of exaltation to honour; fo did they immortalize their or Trophaum, after the greeke word Tropis, houses of discent, by contrary names of

glory and fame, onely through their me- | Arabicus, another Parthicus, another Armorable actions, which procured so many worthy and illustrious Families in the Citty of Rome.

For our first entrance into this dif-Metellus and courfe, wee may take an example by the two more of his name, had three Metelli, whereof one (according as their firnames Salust and some others write) because he according to had ouercome King Jugarthe, conquering also his lands and kingdome of Numidia; was firnamed Numidicus. The fecond being Quintus Metellus, for the victory he obtayned against the king of Macedon, was firnamed Macedonicus. And the third,

Martius Cori olanus and Sergin. Fi-

Chap.41.

Metellus Ba-

Mommins

Scipio Affri-Scipio Afiati

Scipio Affricarus and Numantinu

Enfignes in Afia. Another Scipio afterphew adoptine to great Scipio, was likewife firnamed Affricanus; because hee affayled and won the great and puiffant citin farre higher respect; because in Spaine he destroyed Numantia, and veterly ouerthrew the Numantines.

Emperours ter conques ec

Creticus, because he conquered the Isle of Creete. But much more ancient then

these, were Martius Coriolanus, and Sergius Fidenatus. The first was named Coriolanus, after the Towne Coriola in Latium, by him conquered. And the other by the like acte on Fidena, a Towne in Italy. Ano-

because he had conquered to the Komane Empire, the Islands called Baleares, now tearmed Majorque and Minorque. Lucius Mummius was firnamed Achai-

ther Metellus also was firnamed Balearicus.

eus. because hee had subdued Achaia and

Corinthe. So the other Brutus, in regard he brought the Gaules in Subjection, was firnamed Gallus. The two Scipioes, being brethren, were honoured by the names of the people whom they had vanquished; the one in Affrica and Carthage, and the o ther in Asia, because he conquered also in Antioche and in Alia: for hee was the first that displayed the Romanc Coullors or ward fonne to Paulus Æmillius (of whose triumph we have already spoken) & Nety of Certhage. Neuerthelesse, he received a greater honor and guerdon, to be firnamed Wumantinus, and he himfelfe held it

I finde in like manner, that Emperours attributed vnto themselnes the firnames of conquered places, speaking them expressely in their Letters missive and other instruments ; namely Senerus, and his succeffors after him; as for Arabia, Parthia, Armenia, Germania, and other Prouinces by them fubdued. So one named himfelfe

menicus so Germanicus, and Aliaticus; cach man according to fuch victories as he had obrayned, so did hee magnific him-

Moreouer, for other matters and reasons, the Romane Captaines were illustrated by especiall names, for their greater magnificence and fplendour. As we reade of Marcus Manlius, who for defending the hits Capitoli Capitoll from the forces of the French, nus. was firnamed Capitolinus. The family of the Torquati received that firname for taking a Chaine or Coller from the necke of an enemy, for a Coller or Chaine in latine is called Torquis, and fo were divers Torquams & of them therefore named, Quintus Fabius Manhus Tor Maximus, because by long delayes & diffi-mulations, hee had held out Hanniball in bins Cunctawarre, only for the defence of Rome; they cor. firnamed him Cunctator, which is as much

(befide) the Shield or Buckler of Rome,

which redounded to his greater aduan-

was called The Sword of Hanniball, And

warre, that he had the firname of Great

giuen him, then which title, I know not

what could more have raifed and exalted

him. So farre extended the dignity of fir-

dignity, and which could not then beegi-

uen, but to a Captaine, Prator, Confull,

or Proconfull, that had bin victorious in

fome notable battaile, and had defolated

the enemies country, by the death of a

great number of enemies: As if two thou-

fand of his men were flaine, there must

tage and honour.

to fay, as a temporater or delayer. And for the same reason also, they termed him

Marcus Marcellus, who lived also in Marcus Mar tholetimes, in regard of his great power cellus, The and valiancy, the continual battels which fivord of Han (without ceasing) he gave to the enemy,

that excellent Captain Sylla, though fom- syllathe what cruel, was firnamed Happy, in regard Happy. of his prosperous victories. Pompey like- Pompey the wife was fo renowned by his successe in Great.

names, granted to Captaines in those Captains caldayes, especially to such as were vertuous led Emperors Commanders and Generals, as they were and vpon also called Emperors, which in these more or deserte moderne times, is the title of supremest

then ten thousand perish on the enemies tide, and not otherwise it was granted. With this fo gracious and happy a firname, was Iulius Cafar, the Father of Iulius Cafar honored, for the victory which

Called alfo Sabelli, a people of the Mountaines betweene the Sabines and the Marfin Italy.

he had against the * Samnites & Lucanes, in the time of Sylla. Pompey also was called Emperour, for the memorable victory he wonne in Affrica, against Domitius. Marciu Tullius Cicero, beeing Proconfull in the warre against the Parthians, was by them of the Army named Emperour, for the victory there obtained. Inline Cafar, before he was called to the Empire, was styled Emperour, by reason of his many victories. But if this Captaine had not suffered great resistances in his battailes, he had not beene worthy of that name, & yet notwithstanding he was reprehended, to that Marke Anthony murmured against

him, and yet because he had taken a great

City, on the further fide of the River Eu-

phrates, he was content that they should

call him Emperour. After Iulius Cafar

Mark Anthony was offen ded at Cafar.

The name King bate'ull in Rome.

and his fuccessours, inuesting themselves with the full Seigneury of Rome, & knowing well, that the name of King was in horror and detestation among the people, they would bee named Emperours, which title hath continued ener fince, & is the very greatest of all. So then we fee, that for fuch honors,

the Romanes fayled not in their gratifica-

tion, aswell to their strange frends abroad,

being under their reward, as to the home-

borne fonnes of Rome. Because like as

they were powerfull and rigorous, in figh-

ting against enemies; so were they as gra-

cious and liberall to fuch as affifted them.

So that in the same kinde of bounty they

gaue to king Atalus the Pronince of Asia,

with the title of king: for which (after-

ward) he was ingratefull, because (by his

testament) hee returned all his profits to

Rome. To Eumenes the brother of this

Atalus, because he had well served and af-

fifted the Romanes, in the war against An-

tiochus: the Senate gaue him all the Cit-

ties and Townes, which hee had conque-

red from Antiochus in Afia. To king De-

iotarus of Galatia, because hee had ayded

Pompey, in the warre against Mithridates,

the Romans gaue him the Province of the

leffer Armenia. In the like manner was

king Massinissa of Numidia guerdoned,

having beene embraced by Scipio, as his

companion and friend to the people of

Kome: to him was given all whatfocuer he

had conquered in the kingdome of Sy-

phax, who had affifted the Carthagenians.

Nor were these gifts and presents al-

Well def ruing ftrangers as much respected an rewarded.as the native fonnes of

Rome. Atalus King of Afia.

Eumenes bro ther to Ata-

Delotarus king at Gal.

Maffiniffa king of Nu

cic onely; but likewise to them of the Meanemen meanest condition, they gaue gifts, pre-rogatiues, and great honours. The Con-as well as full Marius, knowing the well deferring fit cases Awor of two companies, that had fought valiations analy against the Cimbrians, a people as Marius. mong the Allemaignes, and were come into Italy with him, he received them as Citizens of Rome. When being reproued for doing fuch a thing contrary to their Lawes, he made answer: In the noise and clattering blowes of weapons there is no voice of the Law heard.

lowed to Captaines, and men of apparan-

CHAP. XLII.

Of fuch Crownes, with other recompences and falaries, which the Romanes gaue to Soldiers. Also of punishing offenders, comprehending (in this case) an excellent form for warre, and good government of a com-



HE Romans were not carefull onely for honouring & gratifying their Captaines, Diver kinds but offered them (befide) of recopence infinite other graces & fa- the Roman

uours, rewarding them honourably in diuers and fundry kindes, with Crownes & Iewels; as holding them in particular esteeme and reputation, and according to the merit of their actions in Armes, in the same sort were they respected and requi-

When a Captaine had obtained a vi-

ctory in some notable battaile, were it vppon the Sea or Land, and had therein taken some Towne by force, or done any other fingular enterprize; immediately Themannet after, they had a custome to make diligent of publishing inquifition, concerning the valour of the the merit of particular bandes and fquadrons. Then whom their Armies mounting vpo the Theater, after they had open Theater given thanks to the Gods for the victory obtayned: in generall they commended the whole Army, and especially extolled the band or fquadron, that had fought

with most man-hood. Afterward they

renealed particular men in the compa-

nies by their names, publishing the worth

Chap.42.

Of Recompences to Soldiers.

of their vertue and courage, in no leffe measure then they had deserved sterming them friends and louers of their country, faying also, that the Common-wealth stood highly obliged to them. And this beeing done, they gaue then presents of Gold and Silver, of Crownes, Girdles, Bracelets, Iewels, as also very excellent armour for horsses, made so curiously, & delinered with fuch defences and prohibitions, as no man was suffered to vveare or haue the like, without he had deferued it in the same manner. Histories are full of these things, and particularly Titus Li-Tit.Liu.in li.10 uius, speaking of the Conful Papyrius Cenfor, faith; that he gaue Bracelets of Gold

Ornaments. As much hee faith of scipio,

Now, concerning the Crowns which

they gaue, they had divers names, and

were according to the degrees of merite.

They had the Crowne Obsidionalis, the

crowne Triumphalis, the crowne Qualis;

Corona Ciuica, Corona Muralis, Corona Na-

ualis, and Corona Castrenfis. Pliny spca-

keth of them all, and so doeth Aulus Gel-

But that Crowne of greatest excellen-

being in Spaine, and other places.

& 30. Papir.Cenfor. to fourteene Centurions; and afterward to a fquadron, he gaue very rich & coftly

The feuerall crowns which the Romanes

Pūn.in lib.16. Ø 12. Aul Gellius in 46.5.

cie, and more esteemed then all the rest, was Corona Obsidionalis, which extended nalis, & where to the circkled or fiedge of the Campe, and it was given onely for having delive-Crowne for red an army enclosed and befiedged withrailing a fiege in a Towne or Citie, or when a camp was strictly enuironed. So that by such a worthy deede of armes, the place or people

> from death, or mercileffe imprisonment: for no other action what focuer, was this honor & respect to be given. The crown was made of greene leaves, for they cared not to have it made of Golde, or other mettall, but of the graffe and hearbes of the fame field, where the enemie had bin ouerthrowne or forced to flight. With obtained to weare this Crowne, & espethis Crown was crowned the Great Quin tus Fabius, because when Hanniball yvas before Rome, hee defended and delivered

having delivered the Confull Manlius,

with certaine bands. Calphurnius obtay-

ned it also in Sicily, and so did the valiant

L.Cincinatus Dentatus, and fome other.

accounted themselves to bee delivered

Such as had the honor to be crowned with this it from his befiedging. Amillius Scipio, was also crowned therewith in Affrica, for

Corona Ciuica, or the Citizen crowne, was made of Oaken leaues and branches, the Cittizego with the fruite or Acornes hanging on it. Crown, giuch This was given to him that had faued a for fairing a citizens life, Cittizen, when his life was in extreame perill, killing his enemy, & making good the place where the danger hapned. This crown was fo much made account of that fometimes it fell to fuch a mans Honour, who for fauing one Romane cittizen, at his deliuerance flew two of his enemies. But because he defended not and made good the place from future perill, doubt vvas made, whether he had deferued this Citizen Crowne, orno. Neuerthelesse, Law Lawmay som was dispensed withall, and it was concluded to be given him, feeing hee had deli- penfed withal

the Law imported fo much. And albeit a

man had delivered a King, or a Captaine

of confederates and friends, yet could he

not have his crowne to reward him, ex-

uered the Citizen, and flaine two of his e- or neede full nemies in a place so perillous, which was not in his power full to protect, although

Plin in la 6.c.

cept he had deliuered a Koman: I find that Pliny recordeth, that this very fame crown had been given to one, who flewe the first enemie that mounted on the wals of

a City or Fortreffe, being defended by or

for the Romanes. This Corona Ciuica, was the most ex- The reputati cellent, next vnto the Obfidionall, and on & effection might dayly be worne, and in all places. Of this citizen Likewise, he that deserved this Crowne, was of such account and esteeme, as hee might fit in the Theater, or at Feaftes, where hee had alwayes his place neerest vnto the Senate. And when hee entered. the Senate would rife vpon their feete, to do him honor.

He stood also free and exempt from any Office or charge whatfoeuer, except his pleasure was to accept it: and morcouer, for his fake, and in regard of him, his mans had the Father and Grandfather (if they were li- honor to wear uing) flood exempted also. Many Romans cially the most valiant Cincinnatus Dentatus, named before, who wonne fourteene of them. The fecond Capitolinus had fixe; and to Cicero, by particular dispensation, one of them was granted, because he had defended Rome from the conspiracy of

Catiline. These Crownes, whereof wee

have made relation, although they were

made but of Hearbes and Leaues, and

Corona Mu-

ralis giuen fo

first fealing

the walles of

a Cittie cr

Corona Na-

ualis for boar

ding thippes

rewards for

of merit.

Suet.in vita

Caa.Cafar

at Sca,

Caftle.

might more properly be called Garlands, or like to the French chapless of floures: yet were they (notwithstanding) much more esteemed and renowned, then if they had beene of the finest gold.

As for the Murall Crowne, called Corona Muralis, it was of golde, and given to him that had affaulted and afcended the walls of a citty, or a castle, mounting first up the scaling Ladder, and both freeing and defending the walles; which caufed, that the Crowne was made in forme of an imbattelled wall. The first (according to Pliny) that obtained this crowne. was Manlius Capitolinus. Scipio alfo gaue it to Quintus Trebellius, and Sextus Digitus; because that they (both together) wonne first the enemies wall, before any

Corona Ca-Corona Castrensis, sine Vallaris, was Atentis, as b giuen to him that (in the fight) entred longing to th first into the Barriers, Railes, or Listes Campe and Barriers ther of the enemies Campe, comming off againe with credite and reputation : this Crowne also was made of gold, and shaped according to Bastions and Rampires

of a field for warre.

Of the like mettall was the Nauall Crowne, Corona Naualis, which was beflowed on the man, that first (in fight at Sea) boarded and entred an enemies flippe : and it was in the shape of the prow or poynt of a ship. Marcus Varre made no difdaine of this Crowne, when it was offered vnto him by great Pompey, in the war against the Pirates. Octanius presented it also to Marcus Agrippa, and to Sylla: many other likewise had the honor thereof, wherof now I omit to fpeak.

When any Souldier of Rome, were he noble or ignoble, had made any proofe of his bodie, were it at the course of Launce, or in fingle combate: the Romaine Captaines or Generals were wont to gue him or them collers or chaines of gold and filuer, or bracelets, or girdles, accordingly as they had deferued with other privileges and preheminences. And fuch prizes they might give to his frends, that had affifted them in the war : but as for the Crownes, they were referred on- all before on the Crownes, they were referred only for Romaines. Of all which things wee finde many notable examples in the Romaine historics.

Suetonius writeth, that Offaulus permitted to Marcus Agrippa: that he might beare Banner of Azure colour : in regard of a victory which hee had obtained at Sea, against Sextus Pompeius. He further affirmeth, that it was he who denifed first The first deni. the gifts of Collers and Flagon chaines, Chaines and with other particular presents beside, al- other giftest lowed only in such affaires, which would require too long a space heere to report. And heere it is well worth the remembring, that the Romanes were so valiant, that some one man bath wonne the honour of all these rewardes, or the greater part of them. For Pliny and Solinus doe Plin in lit 10. name fuch men, amongst other Marcus List Set major Sergius, who obtained the most part of capalibat. them. And in the warre at * Thrasymenus * A Lakein and Trobia, where the Romaines were Hetturia, vanquished by Hanniball, he wonne the crown called Corona Ciuica, as also in the ouerthrow at Cannas . This man was fo valiant, that having loft his right hand in Marcus Ser the battel, he shewed great valor with the R mante, left, and by meanes of a steele hand made him, in flead of the other loft, he foyled and flew 4. men in one day in the field of Battell ech after other: in which braue day of fight, and others befide he received 22 wounds, & al in the fore part of his body.

Yet notwithstanding neither this Marcus Sergius, nor any other beside, did euer deserue and attaine to so much as Lucius Cincinnatus Dentatus, Tribune of the people, of whom we spake alittle before. Of him write Plinie, Solinus Valerius Maximus, and Aulus Gellius, affirming, that in iewels and prefents of price, some greater then other he obtained onely by actions of Armes, 320. and more. Befide, that he entred Rome with o feueral Generals, when they performed their folemne triumphs,& whom he had affisted in their victories. He had a great number of broke Spears, shinerd Lances, shafts of Jauelins, pikes without heads of steele, given to him as fignalls of honour. He had 18. collers and gold chains; 83 of filner: Of armors and furnitures for horses fitting war seruice, and thereunto particularly appoynted, hee had fine and twenty; an hundred and fortie bracelets; eight Ca- 45 wounds and I know not how many Nauall . In but one onely scuerall fought battailes, hee had taken fine and fourtie wounds, all of them before vppon his bodie; and no more then one only behind, and thirty foure times

Generalls,& their enemies Armics in Temples.

Statues allo-

Respect of ers children. and men of ong feruice,

dwelling and

No good a & left vni ecompenced by the

hee had difarmed and dispoyled the enemy, having personally bin present in fixe score encamped battells. Nay he was so valiant and fortunate in Armes, that hee was firmamed the Romaine Achilles : and Achilles Li- although his performances may feeme to the world incredible; yet notwithfanding the multitude and conformitie of hi-

The Romaines, for famous actions in

Armes, conceded (beside) other ho-

thorities of Souldiers, according as they

were fuffered by the people to doe: con-

cerning a degree or flate, fubmitted to

the libertie of the Patriottes and people.

stories doe anouch them.

nours and preheminences, as power of publique judgements, and fitting in the The chiefe chaire of * Curules, which was the feate Chaire in the of the Ædi'es and Prator, and which was Councellpermitted to Scipio. Somtimes also there they gaue confent, for the greatest au-

Chap.42.

Captaines likewise were permitted to ewed to be eredeaby Caprea triumphall Statues, and to decke and taines and cloathethemsclues, euen as if they had beene Confulls. The Senate granted(by forme of falary and congratulation) that they might place in Temples, the armes and spoiles of enemies conquered by the in battels : and fuch things were tearmed Manubiæ, the Manubia, as much to fay, as spoyles and ípoiles or e-

nemies. Furthermore, the Romains had a commendable custome, concerning such as had beene flavne in their warres; that their children should haue and enjoy the like wages, as they gaue vnto their fathers

booties taken from an enemy.

liuing. And to olde Souldiers, that had long time followed the wars ; fuch good allowance of land, as they might well and eafily liue thereon. Suffering them also to dwell in Citties, Townes, and Prouinces conquered and subjected, where themselues pleased to make election. In this manner the Cittie of Sinill was made a Colony for Rome by Cafar: which Colonies (according to the common French faying) may be tearmed a new dwelling, or transmigration of people. In briefe, the Romaines never left a good action vnrequited, nor without fome great prini-

other nations beside. I spare to speake of many other requitalls, which the Romaines vied in respect of Armes, thinking already I have fayde

ledge; for the which cause, more valiant

men were found among them, then in all

enough. Notwithstanding, it is a matter most certaine, that as they excelled all Nations, in both acknowledging and rewarding honest fernices : fo they came! not a iote behinde vs, in teaching and correcting where occasion required. For when men were not to bee moued by re- No want of gard of honour and vertue, or by necessit discipling . ty and gaine, to doe what was good; yet mong the Kothey were compelled to doe no vilet ing, maines. both in respect of shame, and scare of punishment. For the paines were great and rigorous against such as shewed themfelues to be flouthfull and negligent : becanfe when they loft honour, beeing called thereto, and might by their owne indenour haue had it; they were well and foundly whipt, till the blood followed. Some were manacled with yrons like Correction flaues; and if they fled away, and for- and rendition idle fooke their Captaines in battaile, they and negligent were impaled or spitted on stakes, or else persons. crucified : for, answerable to the delict,

Of Recompences to Souldiers.

fo was their punishment.

Titus Liuius writeth, that the Soul- Tit. Liuins in diours of a Squadron, belonging to Appius Claudius, to whom the keeping of a place was given in charge; forfooke and lost it . He being desirous to inflict punishment, and yetto mixe it with mercie: they were felected by numbers of tenne, and then to cast lottes, and they on whom the lot fell, were put to death for all the rest. Julius Frontinus fayth, Jul. Frontinus that Marke Anthony did the very like to a inlib 7. cap. 3. band, which had not defended the rampires, but suffered the enemies to fet fire on them. Other inflictions also hee imposed vppon Souldiours, for disobedience and other offences, requiring more time then I am permitted. Wherefore I will shape my conclusion thus onelie. that as those times wanted not remunerations and honours for well doing; fo, they were as forward in correcting wicked and bad actions.

CHAP

atift in Ani-

mallib.4.ca.3

What fleepe

is faid to be.

What fleene

worketh by

he course in

CHAP. XLIII.

of the reason wherefore Sleep was granted and given to man : And likewife, that too much fleep is victous and hurt-

Leep was naturally giuen

to man for his conferuation; because there is not any naturall worke, but it hath neede of rest and rehath neede of rest and repole. Aristotle fayth, Enery creature that hath bloud, fleepeth: and there he proueth by good reason, and likewise by experience, that fishes doc sleepe. Sleepe is a repose of all the sences, and proceedeth from the fumes and euaporations, which (in regarde of foode received) arise from the stomacke to the braine, by the coldnesse whereof, the hot vapours are temperated, and make the exteriour motions and fences fleepy: then retyring the vitall foirits to the heart, all the members become drowlie, and rest from their trauaile, untill fuch time as the vitall spirit (which is the instrument whereby the foule frameth her operations, gouerning

and commanding the whole body) doth

recouer new forces, and ceasing ordi-

minithing those vapours, man awaketh the body of from fleepe, and then the fences and powers returne more freshly, with farre greater power to their operations. Concerning the occasions of sleepe, Ariflot.in l:b.de Aristotle discourseth at large in his Book Som & Vigi'. Putaran Mor. of Sleepe and Vigilancie: and Plutarke declareth divers opinions of the Philofophers, beside sundry naturalists. But although it is for the rest and health of the

Teo much Acepe is very dangerous.

All things are to be vi: u with mederation and Gifcretion.

body, yet it must be taken moderately; Because long sleepe (faith Aristotle) weakeneth the naturall and animall (hirit, even as the moderation thereof doth give them viyour : for many things are necessarie, which neuertheleffe are hurtfull, if they be received excessively. Foode is both needefull and favourie, and yet notwithflanding, if it exceede measure, it harmth, and hath no rellish at all. In like ma-

ner, moderate tranaile is wholefoine; but

vsed with extremity nothing is more damageable. And fo I fay of fleepe, that it thould not be taken but vpon necessitie, for recreation and repose of the sences, the spirits and members of the body.

Ouer-much Sleepe (as it ouer-loadeth the members and fences, making them flouthfull, and enfeebling them by idleneffe) fo it ingendreth fo many humidities in the bodie, that they make it ficke, and killeth it, because in the time of sleep, sickeneth and all the moistures of the bodie (with the killeth the naturall heate) retire themselues to the body. exteriour partes, and then they make no cuacuation of the superfluities and humidities thereof. Alfo, fleepe immeasurably vsed, not onely is prohibited by naturall Philosophers and Phisitions; but likewise it is reprooued by all wise men of vnderstanding . Aristotle fayth , During Aristotia the time of fleepe, there is no difference betweene the wife man and the foole. And questionlesse, although a wife man had not any other occasion to make litle vie of fleepe, but for equalling himselfe with Sleepe equala fortish Ideot; yet hee should anoyd and letha wife fhunne the excesse (though sleepe maintaineth life, and is very wholefome) in confidering with his best cogitations. that he which fleepeth, is not living. And as Plutarke fayth in his Booke of the contention betweene fire & water: The man Plutar, in this that fleepeth hath no more strength or know- cont dely to ledge in his fleeping, then if hee were dead. pliny is of the same opinion, saying; Sleep taketh from vs the halfe part of our life,

Saint Paul, in the fourth chapter of his first Epistle to the Thesfalonians fayth, 1. Thesf. 4.13-Brethren, I would not have you ignorant, concerning them that are affeepe: in speaking these words, hee plainely meaneth death. Then it followeth thus: Such as sleepe in Iesus Christ, will God bring with him. Sleepe likewise is the resemblance of negligence and flouthfulneffe, accorto Saint Gregorie, who faith; For a manto S. Gregorialh. Sleepe, is to keep himselfe and personere in his finnes. If fleeping thus had not beene vnderstood to sinne, Saint Paul would ne-

iust, and sinne no more. A man then may

considering, while we are in sleepe, we nei-

ther know nor feele, whether wee are living

or no. Ouid, and other Poets beside, with

men of no mean learning, do call fleepe,

The similitude of death.

uer haue fayd fo many times : Awake yee 1. Corinth 7.9

VVhy Sleepe vvas giuen to Man. Chap.43.

of his life fleeping in his bed; for therein he finneth no leffe then he that fitteth all day at a Table feeding : in regarde, that these things ought not to be taken, but for the fustentation of life, and not the hurt thereof, and of the foule alfo; wherefore fleepe is allowed for fustenance, and not for voluptuoufnesse.

Sleepe to be vied for fuftenance, and not for volup moulnelle.

In what man

ner a man should lie in

How the ftomacke is placed in the bo

by turning v-pon the left fide.

The reason for turning a. gaine on the tight fide to finish sleepe.

Seeing then it should bee employed onely for the health of the bodie; let vs now vnderstand, after what maner a man should lie in his bed for Sleep, to the end it may be profitable to him. I reade. that the most profitable kinde of sleeping for any well disposed person, is first to beenfueth bad digestion, and consequently ginne fleepe vpon his right fide; and afterward (for the most part of the night)

while on the right fide againe. The reafon is, because the stomacke of a man is feated in fuch fort, that the mouth thereof leaneth somewhat more to the right fide then to the left; but the hollow heart or bottome thereof, declineth a little toward the left fide. So that by lying down to fleepe (for an houre or two) on the right fide, the stomacke extendeth it felfe and resteth upon the liner. And hence enfueth two especiall commodities: the wo benefits by fying down and refling on the right fide, and in that preparation, the foode defcendeth downe the more easily : the fecond, that the humidity of the meate receiued, refresheth the liver, and by that refreshing, naturall heate taketh strength in the stomacke, to beginne and cause digestion. After that these two good effects

to turne and rest vpon his lest side; and

in the ending of his fleepe, to turne a

The benefit haue followed one another, then it shall be fitting to turne vpon the other fide, because by being so turned, the liver cometh and concreth the stomacke, and embraceth it euen with wings, (as it

> gestion. Neuerthelesse, it is good in the morning, for a finall confummation of that times fleepe, to turne againe vpon the right fide, to the end that the stomack may beginne to ease and discharge the liuer, and likewise to expell the ayre or fuperfluitie of the passed digestion. This rule is good, and will bee well acknowledged by him that hath a qualified liner.

were) so that his foode retaineth more

to the liver, and thereby perfecteth di-

very well shame, to spend the most part | and his stomacke not cold, but that these two members are found and temperate in him. But he that hath an ouer-hot liuer, and a cold stomacke, as many times Of an ouerit commeth fo to passe: it is not good and a colde for him to fleepe vpon the right fide, because the stomacke falling vpon the liner,
ties do attend Braineth and presseth it in e erry part, thereon. heating and enflaming it excessively, so that the vpper part of the stomacke continueth vincouered by the superiour part, cooling and weakning it more and more; whereby the very greatest heate of the liuer carrieth and beareth vpon it, all the little left in the flomacke before, whence

keth digeftion; and as for the liver, lying

fo aloft vpon the superior part, it is both

discourred and discharged, and by that

meanes resresheth it selfe, and is not en-

flome of fleeping on their belly, which

and the superfluities can not be purged

by the mouth, nor by the ordinarie con-

duites and passages : but remaine in the

breast and in the throat, which often-

times causeth stuffings and suffocations,

phers rule; when the vertues and forces

are vnited together, the operation is fo

much the better. But being moderately

and indifferently heaped or doubled, the

carnofitie which concreth the stomacke,

joyneth the more closely to it, heating

and strengthening it better then before.

These rules whereof I have spoken, are

The wife therefore doe also councell

with Epilepsies and other infirmities.

There are some also, that make a cu-

flamed at all.

a fickly disposition. Wherefore the man Of a cold sto that hath a cold stomacke, and a hote li-macke and in uer, it is not wholesome for him to sleep flamed luer. on his left fide; because the stomacke being wholly couered with the liner, it ma-

helpeth and comforteth digeftion, be- Of fuchas do cause it assembleth and retayneth naturall heate in the stomacall part, which is belly.

in the better disposition for cuscuating superfluities. The contrary commeth to Offich as fuch as fleepe on their backe, with the fleepe vpon face openly discouered : in regarde that their backe, naturall heate extendeth it felfe abroad, fueth thereor. by which meanes digestion is weakened,

and aduife, that a man should not sleepe Officeping too much stretcht out in his bed, because too much thereby digestion is greatly weakned and stretcht out impaired: for according to the Philoso-

necessa-

necessary for fuch as bee dainty and deli- word Here: as that of Philip, that of Alexcate, and those of weaker disposition, but that be healthfull, lufty, and able, the best rule that they can obserue, is to keepe the custome which they have bene most vsed

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of an ancient wfe and custome in Spaine, in making their account of times, by thefe words: Here de Cafar: What that Here is, and wherefore, and when the vie thereof was left.



N auncient times they had a custome in Castile. when-focuer they dated writings & instruments of reckoning or worth; they wrote downe the

words of Here de Cafar, in fuch fort as we fet downe the yeare of Graco, or of our Lord God, and the same stile was obserued in Chronicles and Histories, as hath bene observed by many diligent Readers. And although this matter hath bin feene and discoursed by many, yet few people have understood the occasion and originall of this vie, neyther wherefore the word is tearmed Here.

In mine opinion, there may bee two good reasons rendred. The first, that this word Here was written with an afpiration, and so have I found it in some places of the Spanith History; although in some other it is not fo. But being fo, we fay, that it commeth of the Latine word Herus, which is as much to fay, as Lord: and thereby it followeth, that Here may be vnderstood for Lordship, Sourraignty, Monarchy, or Reigne and Dominion: and that Here de Cafar, implyeth the Monarchy of C.efar, that is to fay, the beginning of Monarchy, which is understood of Offanius. Of this opinion is Antonius Nebricensis, for in his vacabulary for the Spanish Language, he faith; Here de Cafar, is

namely the Monarchy of Cafar. Aftrologers in their accounts, and especially king Alphonsus in his Tablets,

ander, that of Nabuchodonofor, that of Ca. (ar, and many other. And yet notwithstanding, although this may feeme to bee a case cleare and euident, yet there is a kinde of difficulty wherein it is expedient to yeeld fatisfaction. To wit, that as Enfeto yeeld latistaction. To wit, that as injetium, Paulus Orofius, and divers other writ, Christ was borne in the 42 years of the Natury Empire of Octavius: if it be fo, it appead of Christ. reth that Here should anticipate the 42 yeares of Christs Nativity in regard that it hath respect to the beginning of Cafars Empire, according to due confideration. Neuertheleffe, it anticipateth but of thirty eight yeares, according to king Alphonfus his fetting downe: wherefore the Text hath not fayled, for cuermore Here de Cafar, precedeth the birth of Christ thirty eight yeares.

I vnderstand this to ensue from Euse- The difference bius, Orofius, and all the rest, who naming of Witten in the birth of Christ, to bee in the two and dewnether fortieth yeare of the Empire of Octavius; account. begin their account of his Empire, at the first day of his entring Rome, soone after the death of his vnkle Iulius Cafar, where he arriving, was made Captaine with the Confuls Hirtius & Penfacus, against Mark anthony. In fetting downe the account of time fo, and not otherwife, the birth of Christ commeth justly to bee in the two and fortieth yeare of his Empire: notwith stading, they that make their account by Here, leave out source yeares at the beginning. And it feemeth they had good uius had no reason so to doe, because in those 4 first Rome. yeares, Octavius held no commaund in Rome, neyther had the gouernement without refistance: for at the entring of those foure yeares, he had warre against Marke Anthony. Then going afterward to Rome with his troopes, he had the Confulfhip perforce, in the place of Hirtius, he being dead at his comming.

When these things were done, hee made an accord & convention with Mark The Trium Anthony and Lepidus, where they became rauius, Mark all three (one after another) to gouerne Anthony and for a certaine time, and made the cruell proferintion wherehe also alid when bloody profeription, whereby they did put to profeription death divers of the principall me in Rome. Moreover, he and Marke Anthony paffed into Greece, in persecution of the murderers of Cafar, where they fought a battaile nameth the beginning of reignes by the | against Brutus and Cassius: after whose

death and difcomfiture, he laft Mark An- | ming to Rome, when his Fishe was flaine. thony in those Eastearne parts, and returned into Halr where he opposed himselfe against Lucius Antonius, the brother vnto Marke Anthony, and befiedged him in * Perufia, confirming him to yeelde to his mercy. Thus having vanquithed and expelled all his enemies, hee came (without any contradiction) to Rome, to gouerne Italy, France, Spaine, and Germany: for Lepidus was in Africa, and Marke Anthony in Afia; therefore his entrance and Seigneury, was foure years after his comming from Greece.

In regard whereof, the account of 1/c-

reand Monarchy, beginneth (by good

reason) there, which is thirty eight yeares

before the birth of Christ: fo that Eufebi.

ten from the foundation of Rome: &our

Lord was borne in the yeare feuen hun-

dred, fifty two, whereby there is a diffance.

of two and forty yeares, all which are

granted to the empire of Octavius. In like

far was flaine in the yeare of the worlds

creation, fine thouland, one hundred, fifty

feuen : and our Lord (after the fame Eu-

(ebias) was borne in the yeare fine thou-

fand, one hundred, ninety nine, wherein

there is a difference each from other, of

ades, Iulius Cafar was flaine in the fecond

yeare of the 164 Olympiade: and Christ

was borne in the third yeare of the 194.

inclusively; which is also the same diffe-

rence of two and forty yeares: in which

respect, they set the empire of Octavius,

two and forty yeares before the Natimty.

Albeit his true empire began four yeares

after the time when his Here had original,

and thirty eight yeares before the Natiui-

ty : for during those foure yeares, hee was

no Lord nor Commander, as all the Ro-

mane Histories do approue. Plutarch,

Appear, Dion, Suctonius, and more then all

the rest, Titus Linius, or to speake better,

Lucius Florus faith, That Octavius com-

If wee come to account by Olympi-

the fame two and forty yeares.

count of Hee and Moearchy milly began, secon ding to the proofe of

Peroula m

us, Orofices, and all the reft, who fet downe the birth to bee in the two and fortieth yeare of Octavius his Empire, Coebegin their reckoning, from the day that Julius Cafar was flaine, he being his Vnkle. And this is prooued apparantly, because it appeareth by all histories, that Inlines Cafar was flaine in the yeare feuen hundred and

The death of manner, according to Eufelins, Iulius Ca-

Account made accor

Lucius Floras Epillib.125

was but eighteene yeares of age, and was Confullat nineteene. Then the warres bemy pail and all his enemies wanguifeed and gone; he returned victorioufly to Rome & Aronarchifed in the three and twenty of his age. So that by this account, and likewife that of Titus Linius, the empire of Octanius began foure yeares after the ococranas death of his Vnkle Inlines C.efar, which a- b gan toure greeth with the account of Here, thirty years after eight yeares before the Natinity. Some others doe allow of another

called Ære, or the tribute of Cafar, and

not the empire of Calar, and that it was

tearmed Aera Aera. It is further affir-

med, that it was the name of a covne or

money, which was reckoned at a certaine

reason or opinion, concerning this liere, The second by writing it with a dipthong ZE, without reafine in aspiration, and they say it is derined of the Herotocome Latine word dera, for come or money, ex tribute mony, Aera conflata, and that it had originall, from the beginning of taxes or tribute money, which was payed to Octabins, and

value, and that from the time that was ordered and imposed, so they numbred and counted the Are. Saint Isidore is of Isidor in thes. this opinion, speaking thus. Aera singu- de Etimolo. 16 lorum annorum constituta est a Cofare Augusto, quando primo censu excogitabo Romanorum orbem descripsit. Dicta autem Aera, quad omnis orbis as reddere professus

est respublica. Therefore it appeareth plainly, that this manne of account, came and received name of his money and tribute then payed. So hee auoucheth'in the chapter following, in speaking of the made from Quinquennall yeares, where hee faieth: fine yeares to Ad buc enim Confules, ad buc Aera non five yeares. erant. In like manner it feemeth, that Am-

brole Calepine, in his Dictionary gaue this lepinus in Dicdiction such originall, faying. Astrolo- tio. gi quoque initium, à que supputationes incipiant, Aeram vocant : dicta Aera ex co.

quod omnis orbis as reddere professies est rei-

Fryer Alphonfus, of the Order of S. Dominick, in his Euchiridion of times, Alphoni.Fr. hath thefe very words, Another beginning chirid. Temp. came of accounting by the Ere of the fame Octavius, who having the whole world in his hand would know what people be had writer his Empire: and therefore commanded by Edict, that enery one should be registred in the towne of his birth, to the end, they might give

Here de Ca far the Monuchy of

Here de Cx

far obleaned

a we do the

yeare of our Lord God.

The first

reason con-

cer ning the

word Here.

cenfun Pacaba

The account or Aftrologers.

The name of Acra deriued from the tribute payed by them.

him (in figne of Seigneury or dominion) a kinde of money; and because this money was of mettall the description thereof was named Aera. So that (according to these Authors)this manner of numbring the years by Heres, came from the tribute which they payed, and it was fo written in Latine. Aera.

A question the beginning dict of taxati

The Edict could not fo foone be

knowne in

as necrei

home.

remote part

quellion.

Notwithstanding, there remaineth yet another difficulty, of no meane importance, to wit, it feemeth that the Edict of C.efar began not so long time before the Natinity, as the thirty eight yeares which they count of the Here. Also it appeareth | There were found many other Lands and by the second chapter of S. Luke, that it | Provinces, which had beene registred downe. began in the yeare when our Lord was borne, because he saieth Exit Edictum à Cafare: There came out a decree from Augustus Cafar, and therfore the beginning accordeth not with that of Here. VV herevnto (in mine opinion) answer may bee made, that on the hither fide of the East parts, to wit, those of Italy, France, and Spaine, this Edict might be begun by the commandement of Octavius, when hee had beene enstalled Lord and Emperor peaceably in Rome, which was thirty eight yeares before Iefus Christ was borne: but in Affiria and Judea it was not then made knowne, because the Prouinces remained vnder the gouernment of Mark Authory, vntill they came under the Monarchy of Cafar, nd there is no contradiction to be found, but that eight and thirty yeares (before) he gouerned France and Spaine, and measurably impatronizing himselfe vsed in Spaine, as appeareth by the Spaof the Provinces, hee caused the Edict to be accordingly published. Wherfore it might so come to passe, that the first which was made knowne in those Countries, was that whereof S. Luke speaketh. and yet neuerthelesse, there were other Countries and Provinces, where that

Here had received beginning before.

Venerable Beda sheweth this clearely, writing upon the fame chapter of S. Bedragan I uke expounding the words, Vt describe- 5 lac. retur vniner (us orbis, he farth thus. Sig. nant hanc descriptionem velprimam effe ha rum,qua totum orbem concluserint, quiapleraque iam parte terrarum leguntur fuisse de-Scripta . It Seemeth this description, to bee the first that was universall to the whole world; because before it, many Citties and Townes in particular, had bene described or Cet downe. S. Ambrofe affirmeth as much Ambrof for vpon the faide chapter of Luke, faying : caps.us Lucius Florus, in his abreniation of 133. Bookes of Titus Linius, writeth: That Cx-in Atus, far, soone after hee had vanquished Marke Linus, Anthony, imposed a tribute woon al France.

Christ was borne. But whether the cause arose by the first A finallos reason, of tearming it by the name of He- clubon of the re, or by the last; it is sufficient that it be- two reason, gan eight and thirty years before the Natiuity. This custome of accounting by Heres is very ancient, especially in Spaine, as also among the Arabes and Sarrazines, and I think that the Gothes afterward vied it, and it was not left fo long as the Romanes reigne endured. Ifidore, in writing of the Gothes, and of this Here, approught wifere. it to be ancient. And although I cannot directly fay, when it began, yet I know well enough, that it hath bene long time

which was little leffe then thirty yeares before

nish Chronicles, euen vntil John the first, King of Spaine (who loft the battaile of Aliubarata, in the fift yeare of his reigne) Arwhu day commanded, that from thence forward, far selfed the Here de Gafar should no more be vsed in writings and histories, but the birth of Christ; which was in the yeare 1383, and in the Here de Cafar, 1421.

THE.

The Temple

mone the

The End of the Fourth Booke.



OF NOBILITY POLITICALL AND CIVILL.

THE FIFTH BOOKE.



Obility, which many of good, slept to the helme: yea, cuen the the greater forts of wits. with great proofe of vncorrupted verity,& much flowing Eloquence, haue gone about to derine out of divers foundations, is of three forts:

and is divided into Nobility Calestiall, N. Celefial which confifts in Religion: Nobility Philoled Philosophicall, which is got by Morall vertues: phicall, politicall, whereof this prefent Treatife is. Out of the two first forts This Treatife of Nobility, no man can come Noble, exonely Politi- cept that he the fame, be a good man alfo.

all Nobility. But out of this third fort, a man, although he beeneuer so wicked and vngracious, may yet excell the rest of men, euch in the highest degree of Nobility: so as did Caligula, Nero, and fuch others like. The matter of Nebility, was in anci-

ent time accounted of two forts, viz. Theo-

logicall and Morall: For why, Nobility is a thing honourable, and of it selfe laudable: But without vertue, nothing (according to the opinion of Cicero) can be commedable, or praise-worthy. Of which thing, the feate and scituation of the Temple of Honour among the Romanes, was a notable example: whereunto there was no entrance or way, but by the Temple of war-

But by the preposterous innouation and change of things, that Nobility which was proper onely to the good, gane place, and in stead thereof, that Nobility which legitime à Plebeia conditione eximitur & is alike common vnto the bad and to the

word Nobilis (or Noble) it felfe, which Political No fome will haue to haue beene fo called, as biny con no will haue to haue beene fo called, as afwell to the who should say, Noscibilis, or remarkable, bad as to the or for some vertue Notable, began to be indifferently taken into both parts good & bad : as nobile Scortum, a noble harlot nobile Scelus, a noble villaine. Neyther in question of Politicall Nobility, are wee any more to haue recourse vnto the Di- In question of unes or Philosophers, and much leffe to the ancient Romane Constitutions (for the most part) discerning all thinges by hauerecourse Magistracies, Charges, and Offices, but or Philofoonely vnto the dispositions of the Princes phers. and Monarchs of the world: who having the power of the government of the world (as it were in a fort common together with God)after their maner, gouerne

Nobility according to their owne pleafure and goodliking, and so have made the same hereditary. And heereof isit, that a firanger, made a Nobleman at Barthol, confin Rome, or elle-where, is not at home ac land mons counted in the number of the Nobility, qua Regione his Prince being thereto vnwilling, and Dignitatum fo contrariwise also. VVherefore, they which examine Politicall Nobility, ac- Principian. cording to any other rule, then the cu-bility refleth Rome of enery Nation, are veterly out of vponthe cuthe way. Yet in this fo great diuerity of tions. manners and customes of Nations in all places, the same Definition of Civili Nobility agreeth vnto them all, viz. Quod fit qualitas, fine Diomitas qua quis

ou of nobility

Two kinder

of Nobility,

viz Dariuc

and Natiue.

5. Booke

per gradus erigitur. That it is a quality or of men (as in all others) a distinction of Adistinction

dignity, wherby a man is lawfully exempt and by degrees promoted out of, and about the estate of the vulgar & common fort of people. Of this Nobility, there be two kindes, viz. Nobility Watine; that is to fay, by birth: and Datine, which is by the Princes guift. For as for violent Nobility, fuch as was that of Nemrods, I veterly re-

But that these things may bee made more manifest, we will by certaine of the better Common-weales, euen vnto these our times, deriue the beginning of this dignity, and the manner of obtaining the fame, as it were euen from the first infancy thereof, taking both the matter & the ex- also first in honour. Yet neuerthelesse, amples we therein vie, out of most autheticall and approved Authors, the sentences almost nothing, and much lesse the words, much changed, so that the well affeeled Reader, cannot of right, lay any thing thereof to our charge.

CHAP. 11.

Of the Nobility of the first Age.

Nobility which in Adi was firft Da. began to be Natiue.

Dare contrary vnto the comnobility Datine to have bin before, & more excellent then Nobility Natine, exaple being taken fro Adam hmfelfe. whom all men know to have benemade, and not borne: and verily to have bene a Noble-man (if any other) as formed by God to the Image of himfelfe, endowed with all good gifts, and made Lord and Soueraigne Ruler of all creatures; yea,euen of the whole world. But that coeleftiall Nobility he foone(alas, too too foone) loft, by hearkning vnto his wife : and that worldly Nobility which he yet retained, being vnto his children deriued, began first in them to be Natine, or Nobility by birth. If any man therfore confider Adam his ownerace and Progeny, he must needs confesse all the men of that age, to have bene together Noble. But as in mans body for the preservation of the whole, di-

uers functions, and offices of members,

are required; even fo, in that first fociety

persons was necessary : wherefore the first or persons Common-weale, which was of the family first focus, of of Adam, and of his children, confifted men. wholly of Noblemen (to wit) of the children of one Father, and he the same, being a King, a Prophet, and a Priest; but yet not all of them to be with like honour reuerenced. For he, that first Housholder as it were by the decree of Nature, gaue the preheminence and cheefe place vnto his first begotten Sonne, fo long as hee kept the right of his Birth-right, which order other families. Afterward follow- ued. ing, constantly observed: so that he which was first by Nature, should be accounted was it altogether lawfull for the Father of the family, to make choise of his own children, that so according to enery one of their desarts, he might bestow vpon them honours, or take them from them. Of the great number of Adams Progeny, & the discord of the Brethren among

themselues, at length arose the division of Families, and fo confequently, the vncer- The division tainty and forgetfulnesse of kindreds, and of Families deadly hatreds and fallings out withall. By warre, the change of mens estates and conditions, and servitudes are brought in. The vanquished, of Noble become base and vnnoble: & contrariwife, the victors, of base persons, became Noble. Men for the preferuation of themselues, have out of families affembled together into Villages; out of Villages, into Citties; and Families to out of Cities haue growne together into haue growne linto Village. Prouinces, and so into most great kingdomes. In dangers and diffreffes, according to the rule of reason, wise men are called vpon for their counfel, valiant men for their aide and defence, vnto whom, as Villages into vnto men most worthy, the gouernment Citues.

Citues Committed; whereas the rest are enforProminers & ced without difference, to obey without Prounterin any respect of their stocke or kindred.

Thefe things to have thus beene in the Iewes State and Common-weale, is vnto all men knowne, which are but eafily read in the old Testament. First that Principality and prerogative, was given vnto the first begotten, you shall easily understand, if you shall diligently consider, that when Adam by reason of his great yeares, was not able longer to attend to the government of the church, and of the common-

Of the Nobility of the first Age. Chap.2.

weale, Seth was made Gouernor, who the | first chapter of Deuteronomy thus plainheld the place of the first begotten. Vnto Seth even for the fame cause succeeded Enoch : vnto Enoch.Conan : vnto Gonan, Mahaleel: vnto Mahaleel, Iered: vnto Iered. Canoc: vnto Canoc, Methulehel, vnto Methusehel, Lamech: vnto Lamech, Noah: who ruled ouer his Progeny an hundred & ten yeares after the Deluge; at which time, the dispersing of his posterity happened. Which difperfion being made, enery one of them bare himselfe as Prince of his owne family, which preheminence paffed still vnto the first borne of that stocke and

of the Soldiers; and amongst them were 12

chiefe Princes, especially chosen of the 12

Tribes, who fomtimes were alone by the-

selues chosen out for some especial com-

mission. But what manner of men Moles

made Rulers ouer the Ifraelites, and what

manner of companions he chose forth as

affiftantsvnto himfelfe in the gonernment

of the common-weale, he himfelfe in the

The first begotten were of their own

Captaines of Centurions,

Captaines of

or cheefe Perions of 15

family: fo that the first begotten of the principall family, still held the same. Neither ought any man to doubt enery one of the Patriarkes to have ruled as cheefe men ouer their owne Tribes and Families vntill that the government of the whole people was delinered oner to Moles. But concerning Mofes himselfe, we reade in the fourth of Exodus, him and Aaron to haue gathered together all the Elders of the children of Ifrael, which was the first Affembly. In the 24. of Exodus, the Lord commandeth fenenty of the Elders of the children of Ifrael, to come vnto him, together with Mofes : which feuenty (in the fame chapter) are as it were by a knowne name called Nobles or cheefe Persons of the children of Ifrael. Mofes beside, oppreffed with the multitude of futes, following the counfel, of Iethro, chose out of the people certain Captains of thousands which should beare rule over a thousand families: others of hundreds, who comone of the twelve Tribes. manded ouer an hundred: others of fifties who had the command ouer fifty: and others of ten, who bare rule ouer ten, & determined of their leffer futes and controuerfies. Now that there were many Captaines of thousands, even in one and the selfe-same Tribe, it is out of holy Scripture manifest; and these men, Moses here & there calleth, The Heads of the Fathers, the Heads of the Tribes, Princes, and Heads

ly witheffeth. And I spake water vou the same fesfon, faying; I am not able to beare the burden of you my felfe alone. For the Lord your Princes. God bath multiplied you : and behold, you are this day as the flarres of beanen in number, &c. Bring (from among you) men of wifedome and of understanding, o men knowne in your Tribes that I may make them Rulers ouer you. And you answered me and said that which thou haft faide, it is good for ws to do. And fo out of the Tribes I tooke the Captains (men of wifedome and experience) or made them Rulers over you, Captaines over thoufunds, and over bundreds, over fifty, & over ten of Officers among your Tribes, c. But wee enduced both by the weight of the words, and by reason, are enforced to coiccture, Mofes being a wife man, in this election and choife, to have preferred men for their wisedome & experience famous and wellknowne, both for the gaining of the fauour and obedience of the people, and also for the better government of the common-weale: neyther to have any thing regarded fuch, as boafted onely of the prerogative of their birth; for otherwife, inflead of helpers, he should rather haue affociated vnto himfelfe, the perturbers of the publike peace. Wherefore we fet downe those scauenty Judges by the commandement of God, appointed by Mofes to have bin of the dignity of Senators vnto who fome men adde two moe, 'viz. Mofes himfelfe, and the High-Prieft, as if that fix had bin appointed out of enery

449

Wherefore, by those things which we haue now already spoken, it is enident, as well Datine as Natine Nobility, to have bin in vie amongst the Ifraelites, & sometime even in one and the fame family, to haue paffed vnto the fire begotten alone. or to fome other graced with fome publike Office in some family, whilst the rest borne of the same stock, in the mean time stucke fast within the oounds of them of the vulgar state and condition. And concerning the kings of the Israelites, it is to be thought alfo, asit is of the kings of other nations, that they according to their pleafure, ennobled many, eyther by reafon, or by affection moued and induced fo to do. But let vs now from the lewes, passe ouer vnto the Gentiles.

Qq3

CHAP.

The first diui-

fion of the

mon-weale by Cecrops. CHAP. III.

Tof the first Greeke Nobility.



Othing was cuer more vnconstant the the greek Common weale, with perpetuall changes still floating vp & down. The beginning of their Mo-

narchy, I (as most are wont) will no further fetch, then from Cecrops. He first called the rude Athenians out of the fields. into a civill fociety, built twelve Townes, Grecian comand divided the Cittizens of them into Souldiers, Artificers, Husbandmen, and Shepheards. Euery Citty had Magistrates of it owne, neyther did they but in times of great danger refort vino the King: yea many of them at times tooke vp Armes against their Kings. They which inhabite the Champaine Country, were commanded by some few. The Mountiniers were gouerned by a popular estate, and they which dwelt by the Sea-coast, had a mixt gouernement, in a meane betwixt both. And they which out of the whole body of the people, were called vnto the gotors, and No. uernement of the Common-weale, were bleme, among honored for Princes, Senators and Nothe Greekes, blemen. Plutarch writeth, fisch men as were of greatest power in the Citties to hane bene thrust out by Thefeus, that hee' himfelie might fo alone raigne, yet diuided he the people into Senatours, Hulbandmen, and Artificers: of whom hee

cell the rest in dignity: them of the second

fort, to excell the rest for necessary vie: &

them of the third, to exceede the rest in

multitude and number. But in the choise

of the Senators, he had respect vnto their

wealth, their learning, and especially their

vertue, which things were required also in the person of the King. For Demosthe-

nes in his Oration against Neara sheweth.

after the Common-weale fet in order by

Thefeus, neuerthelesse by his hands stret-

chedout, to have appointed a King out

of the number of the which were thought

to excell in vertue. Vpon the Senators he

imposed the charge of bearing of Office.

to confider and determine of matters of

Religion, to interpret and expound the

Law and facred rights : and when he was desirous more to encrease the Citty, hee called all men indifferently vnto an equall part of the Common-weale. V Wherefore, in Thefeus his Gouernment, Nobility was gotten by riches, knowledge, and vertue. After the Kings, there was in the Citty a double Democratie, one which confifted a double D: in the power and gouernment of the rimoration cherfort of the Cittizens; and another, Commun. which rested in them all in generall which weale. were free-men. Solon (the discord betwixt the common fort, and them of the richer fort of the people being appealed) after the flaughter of the Cylonians, restored vnto his country, the Democraticall or Popular gouernment, the Oligarchy or gouernment of some few, being quite taken away. He deuised source orders or degrees Foure orders of Cittizens: Thern, which could of their or degrees a dry & wet commodities, fill flue hundred dained by of their measures (called Modif) hee pla- solon. ced in the first order or degree. Them which could fill foure hundred of those measures, hee placed in the second ranke. Them which could fill three hundred, in 1. Mediale. the third, and al the rest in the fourth. And 3. Equite, 3. Zengue. called the first of these Modiales, the se- 4. Thus, cond Equites, the third Zeugita, and the fourth Theta. All publike Offices, he appointed to be committed to them, which were placed in the three first degrees, and they fo having borne Office, were accouted in the number of the Nobility, but vnto the fourth ranke was no publike Office or Magistracy communicated; & therfore that ranke was altogether base and vinoble. But after Solon, Aristides, and Pericles participated the Magistracies, euen vnto the basest and lowest fort of the people alfo, as Xenophon in his Booke concerning the Athenian Commonweal, setteth it down for right and reason, that they, euen of the meaner and poorer fort, should indifferently be called & admitted vnto all preferments in every part of the Commonweale, for that they more profited for the enriching of the Citty, then did they of the Nobility. Euen plaine Cittizens, hauing well deserved of the Commonweal, were therefore among the Athenians ennobled. So Leo, for that he for the welfare of the commonweal, had folemnly vowed his daughters to death, was accounted &

registred amongst the ten Worthies, And

Nobility once by the Father obtayned.

ennobled his Children also.

Chap.4.

But the Athenian commonweal was not fo lauish & prodigall in the communicating of Nobility, as was in auncient time the Romaine Common-weale sparing and curious in the bestowing thereof. Wherefore this the Romaine State and Common-weale shall affoord voto vs greater store and plenty of matter of this kinde and nature.

CHAP. IIII.

of the first Romaine Nobilitie.



Omulus to draw strength vnto the city of Rome, but lately beore by him built, ordayned an Afylum or Santtuary, where-

vnto the poore and bate people out of Countries and places thereby by flockes reforting, game the first encrease vnto so great a citty. And out of this rabblement of people Romulus chofe an hundred Senatours, which by Junenall the Satyricall Poet is in these verses noted.

> Et tamen vi longè vepetas, longè q renoluas Nom n. ab infami gentem deducis Afylo: Maiorum primus quifquis fuit ille tuorum, Aut Paftor fuit, aut illud quod dicere nolo.

And though from far thou dost repeat thy pedegree & Yet fro the base Afrium thou canst but derive the same: For he that was first Author of thy stocke and pedegre, A Shepheard was, or elfe fuch one, I lift not name to

Then Romulus for their honor, would have to be created, Fathers: and for their age, Senators, and both them and their progeny he appoynted to be of the ranke of them that were of the Senatours difcended. But afterward, the Commonweale being communicated also with the Sabines, he chose out another hundred. Tarquinius Priscus (or as some other rather would haue it) Brutus added vnto them another C. called the Senatours of the meaner fort of the People. Valerius Publicola, after the Kings were driven out, chose threescore and soure more then an hundred, of the order of Gentlemen (in stead of so many Senitors slaine by Tarquinius Superbus) which were called Adlects, or men chosen : for after the

kings drine out, such as he saw to be wife, ancient, and of approued honefty, he atcribed into the Senate as into the most grave & reverend Counsell . After those Adletti, first foundations of the Romaine Common-weale thus layed. Cittizens of Rome discended of the stocke of Senators (who before had borne the chiefe and greatest Honors) were by the Dictators, Cenfors, or Triumuirs, created Senators, and afterward also of the Order of Gentlemen were called into the Senate.

Wherefore, the Order of Patricif, and Ordo Equeller, of the Senatours, to have ennobled fuch of the order of gendemen

as were thereof, there was neuer anie doubt; but concerning the order of Gentlemen, some there be, which make queftion. Tiraquellus thinketh the Romaine Gentlemen to have holden the middle place betwixt the Patricij (or them which were discended from Senatours) and the Plebeij or Common People: for that Tacitus calleth them Illustres, or men of marke. Martiallalfo calleth the Order of Gentlemen, the Leffer Order and the Order of Senators, and of them that were discended of Senatours, the Greatest Or-

Many are also of opinion, Nobilitie to haue beene giuen amongest the Romaines, by the bestowing vpon them Rings of Golde: and most certayne it is, The golde fuch gift of Rings to transferre the state ring. and condition of a Free-borne man vnto them to whom they were fo given, without which free estate no Romaine was deemed capable of Nobility. But when the vie of rings of Golde began in Rome, it is not manifest. Pliny writeth it of long to have beene the Badge or Cognifance of them which were about to goe Ambaffadours vnto forraigne Nations, and the rest of the Senators, to have beene without them: nevther was it the manner and fashion for anie other to vse them, then such as had for that cause publiquely receyued them. And fuch Golderings they vsed onely abroad, and iron rings at home in their houses.

But afterward, the custome of wearing of Gold rings beganne to be vsed of all the Nobility, as it is written in Titus Linius in his ninth booke, in these words; The Senate to have burnt with fuch rage, and disdayne . because Cneius Flauius a late freed man was made Ædilis, that ma-

Fathers. Senatones.

A new division of the Athenian peowould have them of the first ranke, to exple by Thelem.

Princes, Sena-

Horses: wherein Plinie witnesseth many to have beene deceived, which thinke them of the order of Gentlemen to have then done the same. For that (fayth hee) is also added : but the Trappings were also lavde aside, for which the name of Gentlemen is put too. It is also recorded in the Annales, Rings to have beene then layde afide by the Nobilitie, but not by the whole Senate in generall. Whereby it is manifest, that the Gentlemen as then had no right to weare a Ring, and that it belonged but vnto the Nobilitie onelie; that is to fay, vnto the Patrici, and the Senators, although they were not themfelues Patrici; that is to fay, difcended of

their gold Rings, and Trappings of their

The dignitie

The right of

wearing of a Ring, to who it belonged.

Senators, for that the dignity of a Senator gaue beginning to Nobilitie. But after that Indiciall causes were translated from the Senate vnto the Gentlemen, the vie of Rings together withall, passed vnto them also; which was not then so much the cognisance of Gentlemen, as it was of Indges, and yet not of all them, but of them which were of greatest dignitie and honour. Rings (fayth Piny) divided the other Order from the vulgar People, as soone as they once beganne to be men of marke and fame, and afterward. But Rings verily put a middle and a third Order or Degree of men, betwixt the Common-people, and the Senators or Fathers : and that name which horses of service before gave vnto men, this name (I fay) the Judges now give vnto money: neyther was that long agoe done : for Augustus the Emperour, difpoling of the Courts, the greater part of the Indges wore Iron Rings, and they were not called Equites (or Gentlemen) but Iudices (or Iudges.) The name of Equites (or Gentlemen) rested in the troops of publique horsses. But afterward, in the ninth yeare of the reigne of Tiberius, when the Order of Gentlemen was come into an vnion (for so he termeth it) order was taken for the credite of the wearing of Rings, as that they should be vnto all Gentlemen common. And at length (faith hee) when as Caius Sulvitius Galba going about to gaine the credite of a youthfull good name with his Prince by the fines of Tauernes and Victualling houses) had complained in the Senate,

my of the Nobility thereupon, laid aside | euen Chapmen and Pedlers to be desended from the penalty of such their misdemeanor, by the wearing of Rings; it was for this cause by the Senate decreed, that it should not bee lawfull for any nean to wear a Ring, but vnto him who being fice born, both by his father and grand-father by the Fathers fide, was valued at 40. Sestertices. And by the Law Fulsia concerning the Theater, to fuch as had place and did fit in one of the foureteene orders or degrees. Heereby it came to passe, that they feemed to be of the Order of Gentlemen, which did weare golde Rings, for that it was not lawfull for any fo to doc. but such as had a Gentlemans substance. And therefore Suetonius writeth, Iulius Cafar when as in exhorting of his Souldiers, he oftentimes shewed the finger of his left hand, and faid, that he could willingly, for their fakes, be content to pluck off his owne Ring; to haue been thought in fo doing, couertly to have promited vnto eueric one of them, the right to weare a Golde Ring, and the fubitance of a Gentleman. But after that it was permitted to all Gentlemen indifferently to weare them; that marke (fayth Plinic) beganne to bee indifferently of all men defired: For before, Gentlemen and Indges were knowne by their Iron Rings; but at length, whilest the Order of Gentlemen is seperated from the Free-bornemen, the wearing of Rings was communicated with them that were bond-men, and of feruile condition : that is to fay, with fuch as were of bondmen and flaues. become free. Howbeit this right of wea- Ingenuitie of ring of gold Rings, was not wont in ancient time to be given to any other, but to fuch as had right manfully and valiantly behaued themselues in the wars; neither was the right of wearing of a gold Ring, euer giuen to flich, as were of bond-men made free, except they were also made free-men borne, (which was in auncient time a Priviledge not to be granted but by the Prince.) And it was alwaies in ancient time, accounted a greater matter to be a freeman borne, then to be rewarded with the right to weare a gold Ring: For that sheweth vs euen from our birth to be freemen born, whereas this right of wearing of a gold Ring, indeed, either blottes out, or as much as it can, washeth away the staines of seruitude, yet so, as that the

Statues or 1-

Chap.4. figne thereof for euer remaineth. But the | were. As for their Studies and Cloffets. creating or restoring of a man vnto Gentry, commeth nearer vnto Nature, which bringeth with it all the commodities of naturall Gentry, and that belonged onely voto the Prince, to restore agayne a man banished or cast into exile, voto his former estate and place: who becing fo restored vnto their bloud or birth-right, were not onely ingrafted into the number of the cittizens of Rome, but also inrolled among the Quirites; that fo, they might be partakers of all the honours and offices of the Common-weale. Therfore it is of Pliny called jus Quiritum; that is to fay, The right and Prinilege of the Quirites. The right of

There was also among the Ancients, a certaine right of hauing of Images or Statues, which was by the Senate giuen vnto fuch, as had notably borne some great Office, or worthily descrued some great honours, which was not fo much for the marke and figne of Wobilitie, as of the stocke and Family whereunto they were giuen. For, they which obtayned Statues for their stocke and family, there was no doubt, but that they thereunto brought Nobilitie also. And I know not what greater or more excellent thing there was, then to haue the right and power to vie Statues and Images.

Plinie in his nine and thirtie Booke thus writeth; Apud Maiores, Imagines in atrijs erant, qua spectarentur, expresis vultus singulis disponebantur armarijs, ve essent imagines qua comitarentur gentilia funera, semper á, defuncto aliquo, totus aderat Familia eius qui unquam fuerat populus. Stemmata verò lineu discurrebant ad Imagines pictas. Tablina verò codicibus implebantur, & monumentis rerum & magistratuum gestorum. In the time of our Auncestours, Images and Statues were in their Courts to be seene, linely counterfaits and portraictures were in all their Studies and Closets placed, to the end that there might bee still Images, to attend and fet forth the Funerals of fuch as were to be buried of that stocke and Family. And alwayes, when any Gentleman of note and marke dyed, all the whole race of them that were then living of that house and Stocke, accompanied the dead corpes; and from their Armes. lines were drawne along vnto the painted Images of them whose Armes they

they were full of Bookes and Records, testifying the Noble 2cts by them worthily performed, and the honourable Offices by them in the State & Common-weale borne and discharged, whilest they yet liued. Whereby it is declared, Statues and Images to have bin rather the fignes of some great Office well discharged, then of any Nobilitie. Neyther, that all the Images, of all that were of the stocke and race of them, to whom the right of Images belonged, were wont to be carried at the Funerall folemnities of their kinfmen, but onely the Images of them, who with great prayle and glorie, had borne and discharged some honourable Office, and who had of the Senate obtav-

ned that right and priviledge.

Wherefore Cicero reckoneth vp this

right of having Images, amongst the or-

Of the first Roman Nobilitie.

naments of Magistrates. Such as are, the Gowne, the Senators Robe, the Chaire of E-

frate, and, to have the preheminence to deli- Sella cerulis, uer his munde and opinion first : All which things passed not vnto their posteritie, so that they might vie the fame in fuch fort as did the Nobility, of fuch as had beene Confuls, Prators, and fuch like : which the Romain Lawes would have to discend vnto their Nephewes in these degrees; that as well the women, as the men, vnto the Nephewes sonne, should be accounted of the same dignitie that their Ancestors were of . In briefe, he that had brought the right of having of Images into his Family, is to be thought to have done no more, but that his owne Image might be carried foorth at his owne Funerall, and the Funeralls of them of his owne stocke and Kindred; and not, that the Images of his posterity, should also in such Funerall folemnity be carried; but onelic the Images of them who had gotten the like right. And thefe Images were kept at home in their houses, and were carried foorth at the Funeralls of them of theyr house and stocke, for an example of their Noble acts by them done. But concerning Images and Statues, many thus doe thinke, That they which had the Images of their Auncestors, were accounted and called Ancient Noblemen, and those which had but onely their owne Images, were reputed and called New Noblemen: but fuch, as had neither Image of their owne,

nor of their Auncestours, they were reputed as base and vnnoble. And yet they of the common fort of the people, hauing obtained the Offices (called Curules, or of the Inory Chayre of Estate) had also their Images. And thus much concerning the right of Images and Statues: Now wil I againe returne vnto Romulus.

As Komulies had divided the people into two degrees or orders(viz.) the order of the Senators, and of the Common perfons, calling their Progeny Patricios and Optimates for the Progeny of the Fathers, and of the Nobility) and the Progeny of the other Plebeios (or a Progeny difcended from the vulgar and common fort of people) fo devided he their Offices and vocations also. Vnto the Patricii or such as difcended of the Senators, hee left the liberall professions (viz.) the bearing of Armes and Offices, the making of Sacrifices, the deciding of controversies in Lawe, and the administration of all busineffes belonging in publique vnto the cittic and Commonweale: But to the Common people he left the bearing of Armes, also the tilling of the ground & the feeding of cattle: other base trades and occupations (not beforming free-men borne) he affigned vnto ftrangers, Marchandize, and fernile ministeries, he wholly committed voto them.

The Romaines themselues he would not have to exercise any base trade, or laborious and painefull bufineffe; vnto whom hee forbad all whonest maner of gaine, for all fuch manner of gaining was thought vnfeemely vnto fuch as were Fathers in the Common-weale: neyther in ancient time could one be chofen Senater, or one of the Patricii, but by an exprefic Law, to that end and purpose propounded to the people, which was the greatest office belonging vnto a King, a Confull, or a Distator. But in what things the Patricii were discerned from them of the common fort of the People, is by many examples tried : for the Patricii which excelled in Nobility, and which were honeftly begotten and well brought vp, had a Tablet or Iewell on their breafts, and little Moones on their feer, for they yied Inory Buckles, crooking horned wife, like vnto the Moone, which they fay was ordained by Numa, that Senators and their posterity, should vnto their black shooes

tie Moones, as if by the Character of the Moone, the number of an hundred had beene defigned and figured, in which number the Senators were then contayned. But the Tablet they wore was of Gold, made in forme of an heart, wherewith they of auncient time, are reported to haue also sealed their Letters : which Tablet free-borne boyes, and the fonnes of fuch as had ferued on horfe-backe, vfed to weare, together with the imbroidered Gowne called Pratexta, vntill they were seuenteene yeares olde, which time expired, they then in a folemne feaft hanged it vp voto their houshold, or harthgods, whom they called Lares. Eueric honourable and noble youth wore this Pratenta or imbrodered Gowne about his coat, but after child-hoode past, this Pratexta being left off in the feuenteenth yeare, and fometime in the fixteenth, and fifteenth alforthey put on the gowne (called Toga virilis) or Mans Gowne: that Phareun, or which was imbroidered with Purple, was imbroidered wont to be given only to them whose fa- Gowne. thers had borne the great Offices (called Curules) or fome other great honors. The order of Gentlemen, and the Common fort of People, in anneient time did weare no Purple . The garment of the Tribune of the Feople, and of them of the Comminaltie, was a cloake, fuch as they called Sagi, Endromides, and Cuculli, Caffocks, Mantles, Carolla and Cloakes with hoodes. But in succeeding times, the Commoners indeede did weare Purple, but yet different from that which the Senators wore (viz.) of a darke colour, and died with the luyce of hearbs. and not with the right Tyrian purple die. Beside that , the Patricii, by the institution of Romulus had the Auspieia or offices of Divination belonging vinto them, and the Senate the offices of Priefthood, But this ordinance (faith Diony fins) continued not long, for that al things were made common with them of the Comminalty. And left any man should thinke the dignitie of the Patritil, and of the Senators to be the fame; Tacitus reporteth, the Emperour Claudius to have felected out of the Senate, every one of the most auncient fort of the Senators into the number of the Patricii, there being now but a few left of those families which Romulus called Majorum, and Lucius Brutus, Maiorum Gentium But there is another thing

5. Booke The vic of the

Chap. 4.

Of the first Roman Nobility.

whereat thou wilt happily more maruell, | principis inventutis, Equites Seminarium which is, that the Comminaltie growing strong (as there was a passing ouer from the flate of a Commoner vnto the degree of one of the Patricii) fo diverse of the Patricii also went ouer vnto the Commimaltie, and so became of their numbers. The election of the Senators, according to the alterations and changes of times, belonged fometimes vinto the Kings, afterward to the Confuls, and to the Dicta-

ters. After the kings driven out, we reade, the Confuls to have chosen such of the Patricii as were decreft vnto them, and

afterward fome of the Commoners also to bee Tribunes of the Souldiers with Con-

Sulary power, Vntill that it was by the Law prouided, that the Cenfors should Warde by Warde make choice of them in the Senate. By and by after a sub-

stance was required for the creating of a Senator, and if he that was so chosen, did afterward wafte and weaken his faid fub-A Senators

stance, he lost also his order and degree. Wherefore it is manifest the Romaine Nabilitie to have beene established in the dignitie of the Patricii, and of the Senators, which not to have beene denied vnto the Order of Gentlemen, we gather of that which followeth, although some others be of other opinion . Dieny fius af-

euery VV arde. Some of the Gentlemen were fuch as ferued vpon a publike horfe, altogether in the Cittie; othersome of them were fuch as ferued vpon a private horse in the Armie abroad. The publike

horse the Censor appoynted, and publique Horse-men, or Gentlemen, he created, as well out of them that were difcended from the Senators, as out of the Comminaltie, who at length were for their substance created also, as were the Sena.

foure hundred thousand Sestertices, which being confumed and fpent, the reputation and dignitie of a Gentleman, therewith took end alfo. Isidore writeth, That although a man were by birth a Se-

nators sonne, yet untill he came to lawfull lawfull yeares yeres, he was but a Roman Gentleman, & accounted but fo afterward came into the order of the Senators. Liny bringeth in Perfeus King of Macedon, thus fpeaking. Equites Romani

Senatus, inde lectos in patrum numerum Consules, inde imperatores creant. The Romaine Gentlemen (faith he) are the Princes of the youth, the Gentlemen are the Seminarie of the Senate, out of them being chosen into the number of the Fathem they create their Generals. The Fo-

thers, they create their Confulls, out of maine Gentlemen did weare the Robe of Eflate, neither could any man be of the order of the Gentlemen of Aome, but that hee must be free-borne. Wherefore, to be a Romain Gentleman, was formewhat a greater matter, then fimply to be a free man borne. Yet Pliny hath written, the wear-

ing of Rings, to have inferted and put a middle and third Order into the People; and them to have begunne to be everie where renowned, and to have divided the other Order from the vulgar fort of People, or the Comminaltie; as if hee should have faide, The Gentlemen at the first to have beene Commoners, but afterward to have been men of better note & marke : which according to the words of Isidore before recited, may feeme to be compared vnto the Senators children, who were accounted among the Equites or Gentlemen, vitill they came vito the

Senators age. firmeth, three hundred Gentlemen to have In the question of Nobilitie, not onebeene chosen by Romulus, out of the ly the ignorant, but even the learned almost honourable Families, tenne out of formuch erre, whileft that they agree not vpon the proper fignification of thefe words, Eugenia, Nobilitas, Generofus, Nobilis, Ingenuus, Gentilis; that is, Honour of birth, Nobility, a Gentleman, a Noblemaan, a man free born, a Gentleman, For while they interpret Eugenia the Greeke word, Nobilit as in Latine, (and with vs Nobility) the more generall word is brought in place and steed of the more particular ; or as the Logicians vie to fay, Genus pro Specie, For why, Eugenia or honour of Birth, is tors. But a Gentlemans substance was but the one kinde of Nobilitie, called Natine, (and not allkinde of Nobilitie) requiring a certaine antiquitie of stocke, of riches, and of vertues as Aristotle would haue it) whose words are these: Non diuites, neque bons, sed qui à virtutibus, diuitijs, velantiquis bonu descenderunt Eu-

genes funt habendi : Not the rich men on-

ly, neither the good men alone, but

they which have descended from Ver-

tues, Riches, and good Auncestors, are

Senatore fonne, vnuil he

Apublique

Gentleman

A Tablet

Why the Ro mans void di Character of the Moone on

decria

gely a man

to be accounted Noblemen borne.

Eugenia'or Nobiliticof bath.

Nobility of birth, which is called Eugenis is of Ofores defined: Splendor vel dignit is genera in quo maxima virtutes extiterunt vita Communi falutares & commoda. The lafter or dignity of stocke, wherin most great vertues have flourished, wholefome and commodious for the common vse of mans life. Which oforiss affirmeth, to be as it were subject to rottennesse, and with olde age to be able to be confumed and ended. But this rule is not in our Court received. Symon Symoneus in these words reproducth Oforiw, his name beeing concealed, or elfe some other man of the same opinion with him. Supine loguntur qui aiunt quemadmodum (umma Senectus mentis vini & consilium debilitat, sic etiam Nobilitatis plendorem mediocri vetustate augeri, extrema vero Senecta confici. They speake ydly (faith he) which fay, that as great old age doth weaken the force & judgement of the minde fo also, the glory and lufter of Nobilitie to be with moderate antiquitie encreased, but yet to be with extreme olde age extinguithed. For as the similitude (faith he) agreeth not, fo neyther doth it well conclude : For the more auncient that a Stocke or Family is, by fo much the credit and reputation thereof is greater. And yether the fayde Simon forgetting himfelfe in another place stumblethat the same stone, by setting bounds and limites vnto the fame Eugegenia, or Natine Nobilitie, and by decreeing that a long and continuate race of Noble Progenitours, in whom great vertues have oftentimes shined vnto the number of three difcens, doth make a true Noble Stocke, or Eugenia . And that the beginning of a Stocke or Familie, is no further to be derived, then from the fourth Predeceffor, left in fearthing further, even Kings themselves (as fayth Place) Thould be derined from Slaves, or slaves from Kings.

Of this Eugenia or Natine Nobilitie, all ages have best thought, but yet so, as that all the right of Webiletie should vpon it be ground ; for a man may be Noble, although he be no Eugenes, or from Nobiles discended; yea, he may be more honourable then he which is fo difcended, although not fo ancient a Gentleman . As a new made Earle, compared with an

Elauire of a most auncient Family. As Apathocles, of a Potter made a King. What was Romelus? VVhat was Tullus Hostilius? And what was Tarquinius Prif-But let vs now come to fearch out the

fignification of the aforefaid words: The Romaines divided their People into Freemen and Slaves; of Free-men, some were of Bond-flaues made Free-men (whom OfFicemen) they called Libertini) other-fome, were fone were Free-men borne, (whom they called Inge forewere nui.) The Libertini were Cittizens of Free men Rome, who were three wayes manumifed boine. or made free; that is to fay, by will or Testament, or in the open Congregation or affembly of the people, or before fome publique Magistrate which had power fo to doe. And hereupon happily in auncient time, when as this our Kingdome was much oppressed with seruile state and condition, the word Francklin, for A Franklin, a man made free, or enfranchised, was in vie, except you had rather it to have beene vied, for a Free-borne-man.

But they were called Ingenui, or Freeborne-men, who neyther themselues, neither their Auncestors had ener serued as Slaves . And their Ancestors they reckoned vp, euen from their Grand-father, which is enident by these words of Linie. An unquam fando audistis Patricias primes effe factos non è Calo dimiffos, fed qui patrem Cicere Auumque possint ? Did vou cuer heare it spoken, the Fathers to have beene first made, and not sent downe from Heauen, but such as could reckon vp their Father and Grand-father: that is to fay, nothing but Free-borne-men. Freedome of birth , opened a way.vn- logenuitie or

to all degrees of Honours, which (cuen Birth. as Politicall Nobilitie) was cyther Natiue, or Datine: that is to fay, by birth, or by gift. Datine Freedome was by certayne Magistrates ginen , and ac length onelic by Princes themselues, and that two maner of wayes, the one fecretly and not fo plainely, by the gift of a Ring, the other more expressely by name and perfectly, by restoring of men to their birth or blood. And whereas men of seruile condition were but by one name called and knowne, Free-borne-men, and Men of free estate and condition, had two or moc names. And the name which they tooke from their Stocke or Familie, is called Gentile

Who are to be accounted ettocke and

fame name of Cicero began to be Gentile or proper to that Family, as to Cicerothe Orator, to his Brother, and to their pofterity. Tully in his Tropicks defineth, Gentiles elle aut eodeminter le l'unt nomine, aut ab Ingenuis oriundi funt, quorum Maiorum nemo seruitutem seruierit : qui Capite non funt diminuti, them to be Gentiles (or of the fame stocke and family) which are among themselves of the same name discended of Free-borne-men, none of

berty, state, or Country. They which were called Gentiles (or of the faine stocke or family) were of neceffity to bee discended from Ingentior Free-borne-men; for that of Slaues, and of them whom they called Libertini or men of flaues made free there is not flock tility, or of having of a Stocke and Family, although it was different from 2\(\text{obili-}\) ty, yet is it not to be doubted, but that it was in great effective & renerence among the Romaines, and to them, to have aboue all things defired to bee called Gentiles, as men that had beene difcended from some good slocke or kindred. And that defire hath euen yet vnto this day possessed all Haly.

For among the Venetians they are called Gentilhuomini, who derive their flock from the first Inhabitants of that Island; and which are themselves Patricy, or difcended from the Senators. And that word Gentilhuomo, as it were by hand delinered from the Italians to the Frenchmen; from the Frenchmen removed to vs; and at the length, together with the new place of dwelling, hath begunne to put a new fignification, differing from that which Gentilis or Gentilitas was of, amongst the auncient Romaines.

For it is falle which some, & they learned alfo, have delivered, Gentilitie to have

Gentile, or proper to them of that race or beene proper onely vnto the Patricia: for kindred. And yet it is to be noted, names why, it was common vato the vulgar fort ginen by chance, fomtime to becom pro- of the people (as was Innemaly it felfe) per to a flocke or family. As Tulling was a which appeareth by this one place of Saname proper & peculiar to a Family, but etonius. Patricia gens Claudia (fuit cliam Cicero was a name gotten by chance, and de alia plebera nee petentia minor nee aignifaigned of the Pulle called Cicer, (or the tate) orta est in Regillis. The Claudian Cichpeafe) the forme whereof one of that flocke and family, of the order of the Paefamily had upon the end of his note, who 'tricy', (for there was another house of thereof was first so sirnamed : but that them also of the Comminalty, neither in power nor in dignity inferiour to the other) rife vp at Regilli. But they feeme to have beene deceived, by that which Liny writeth, Romalus to have created an hundred Senstors, which he called Majorum gentium (or of the greater families) and Brutus another bundred allo , called Afinarum octium (or of the leffer families.) But this prough not, that we must therefore grant, only them of the order of the Patricij, to have had a stocke and family; whose Ancestors had serued as slaues, or neither did this fo calling of them, Maiorum and Minorum gentium, divide them had beene condemned to loofe their lifrom the common people, but the felues among themselves only; for that, whereas they were all chosen of Free-borne-Cittizens (and which had their flocke and family) yet fuch of the as Romulus had created, brought the honour of the order of the Patricii sooner into their stocke and or family. Wherefore, the right of Gen; family, then did they whom Brutus had freed vnto them. They are also called Gentiles, who in likenes of name agree among themselves (although there be no kindred among(t them at all.)

Among the Athenians they were called Genita, that is to fay, Gentiles, not they which were joyned among themselues in stocke or blood, but were of these fort of people, who, divided into Wardes, grew into a certaine fociety and fellowthip among themselves. For among the Athenians there were foure Tribes, and eneric Tribe was divided into three Wardes, which made twelve VV ardes. And cuery VV arde was divided into thirty parts, which they called Gentes or Kinreds. But againe to the purpofe.

VVhy a flock or family among the Komaines is go be derived from the Grandfather, neyther could confift but in two at the leaft(viz) the grandfather and the father: Somethinke the reason thereof to be, for that the Latine word Gens fignifieth a multitude, which requireth mo then one: and yet Gens feemeth to be called, as

Rг

the grace

the: cot from Nature.

it were Genes (that is to say a stock or kin- | Eagle bringeth not forth a Done, so nevdred) the Letter V. beeing taken away. Howbeit these two words differ, the one that good men are begotten of good Paof them from the other for that Genus fignifieth a flocke and beginning ; but Gens and Houses.

Ingenuity, or freedom of birth, had the Ingenuity.bath Ornaments thereof from nature, and had respect vnto liberty, which it still deriued from the Grand-fathers. But Gentility was a matter of the civill Law, and was i eferred vnto the ancientnesse of Agnation (or kindred by the fathers fide) differing from the other onely in antiquity of stocke: for it is not needfull to derive or take Agnation farther then from the Father.

Which if it bee fo, then Gentility and Nobility are all one and the same thing. And they confound Gentility (wherof the common people no leffe vant and boaft, then doe the Noblemen) with Nobility: which deny him to bee a Noble -man by birth, but he whose Grandfather was Noble; neither agree they with themselves, when they dare to affirme (but by vyhat authority I knowe not) Nobility together with the feed of the Parents to bee paffed ouer vnto their posterity, according vnto that faving of Mantuan:

Qui virit in folijs venit à radicibus humor : Et patrum in natos abeunt cu semine mores.

The beauty of the fairest branch. doth from the roote proceede: And so the Fathers manners do in their off-fpring abide. And otherwise out of Horace: Est in Inuencis est in equis patrum Virtus : neg, imbellem feroces Progenerant Aquila Columbam. In Bullockes, and in Horfes eke, the Syres worth we proue: Nor doth the hardy hagle hatch, the weake and fearfull Done.

By which Analogies, the learned Poets verily went about to stirre vp Noble and couragious youths, to the imitating of their Fathers vertues, being otherwise not ignorant Wobility whereof we intreat to be a thing civill or Politicall, & not na. turall. And indeed of vnreasonable creatures, there be divers kindes, but of men there is but one fort. VVherefore, as an

ther doth a man beget a Hare. But admit rents, and valiant men, of valiant fathers. But if this be vnto mankinde proper, why importeth as it were a certain multitude are not good and valiant children begotof Stocks, and of beginnings of Families | ten by good and valiant common perfonsalfo? t or why, they are men alwel as the other, but nothing is then this rule more deceitfull. For through the corruption of mans nature, we see it oftentimes to happen, an vnthrifty fonne to be born of a thrifty Father: a foole, to be begotten of a wife man; a Coward, of a valiant man. Neither is this now any noueltie or new matter, but such as tooke roote euen in the first corruption of our Nature. For accurfed Caine was the first begotten fonne of Adam, a most good father, and of him the same was good Abel begotte. lacob also and Esau , were the twinnes of a most blessed father: of which two, God loued the one, and hated the other. And if there be any thing of great operation. which is passed over together with mans feede, it is alcogether vice; so farre off is it from being of any vertue, which is cuer with labour and study begotten, but born neuer. An Emperour (as Ferretus Writeth) for his bodily substance is no better then other men; and yet for the highnes of his dignity, is most like vnto God. Demost henes faith alfo, wicked Sonnes (as it were by a certaine fatall destinie) to bee borne of good Parents. It is also common'y faide in the Greeke Prouerbe, The mufortunes of the Worthies sonnes. VVhat should I produce the Mathematicians and Astrologers, which affirme Nobilitie and Ignobility much more certainly to depend of the force and influence of the flarres, then of the constitution of parents. And yet the vulgar fort, and not with-

out cause, vieth to expect some greater thing in Princes children, then in poore mens; of which their hope and expectation, there are many causes alledged, as the great means Noblemen have, for the best bringing vp and instructing of their children (for it is a shame vnto the sonne if he should degenerate from his Father, being a Nobleman.) In briefe, the plenty of Kinsmen and Friends, giving the good Counsell. Neither was the Poets minde any other, if you marke his conclusion.

Of the first Roman Nobility. Chap.4.

side qued m. grass didiciffe idelier artes : Lucil motes net first effe

Dolfrina fed vim premonet infitam; Rellique cultus pestora roborant.

Instruction, helpes Dame Natures powres, And teaching, ftrengths those mindes of ours. By Natures ingrafted or hidden power, hee understandeth certayne seedes of vertues, which by the goodnesse of God alone, are yet in mans Nature, which become not otherwise fruitfull then do the feeds of Hearbs, according vnto the maner and fashion that they are manured & ordered with; fo that a man well brought vp,may much more easily obtayne Philosophicall Nobilitie, then can a man that hath beene well borne. Wherefore poore Countrey-mens

Children, who know nothing more then their beafts and cattell, feeme rather to be rude Siluans then men. Whereas others, borne in better place, euen in the fame Schooles, and in the fame Studies, striue with Noble-mens Children, and would to God they did not fo do, both with greater profit and praise. Other reasons yet remaine, which

proone Politicall Nobilitie not to bee a thing substantiall, but meere accidentall: for why, it may be both present and abfent, without the corruption of the fubiect whereof it dependeth; fo that the passage thereof may be letted by some heynous offence committed. It is also loft by voluntary departing or relinquithing of the fame (when as Nature in the meane while cannot be thrust away with a forcke) which wee reade to have beene | great offence of the father come betwixt: done, of many of the Romaine Patricij, who refusing their Patriciat dignity, took on them the state and condition of the vulgar fort, or Commoners. Now many, through the Lawyerstermes, are in this matter deceived, who call the extinguithing of Nobility for some offence committed, The corruption of blood : which manner of phrase and speech, they vse not, for that Natine Nobility is naturally and effentially in the humour of blood, more than other hereditarie facultie, but because the right of inheritance, which is by the degrees of the communication of blood directed, is by that meanes determined or ended, & in hatred of the crime, it is called Corruption, with the infection whereof, all their children are polluted

Neither can a stronger argument be

denifed, to proue Nobility not to be mingled with the blood, then that the Nobility of the Grandfather ennobleth not his nephue by his fon condemned to lofe his liberty, frate, or country . Of which this ciuill institution, a naturall reason is giuen; to wit, for that an vnable mean letteth & hindereth the extreams to be joyned together. But yet it was wont to be demanded with vs, no otherwife the it was long agoe with the ancient Romains, whether the nobility of the father being a Senator. do profit his fon, being borne before his father had obtained that dignity? And whether fuch Nobility in the fon, be Mitine or Datine? Whereunto I antwer, The child by our custom, to be immediatly by his fathers nobility ennobled, & their chil dren, like the boughes of a tree, remoued

into a richer ground, are green & florish with the fame new moyfure that the bodie of the tree doth . And fuch Nobility hath deferued to be called Natine, for that it extendeth not but to them, which are borne of such a father. As for example: A Baron, being honored with the title of an Earle, his first begotten fon forthwith taketh vnto him the title of fome Barony, and all his daughters are faluted Ladics and Madames. Wherfore we conclude Natine nobility

to be drawne from the father, & not to be needfull for vs to feek for it further: for it may be that formine it canot be derived ther then ho from the grandfather, as in case that some the father. for a man born of a noble father is without all doubt by difcent noble. But if anie man wil contend him not properly to be Eugenes or nobly descended; I answere, the common fort of people most of al, do respect the same, but the Indiciall Court to haue thereof no care at all. For otherwife fome new Princes should be of lesse Nobility, then some meane Noblemen, if the privileges of Nobility should be bestowed, after the ballance of proper and true Eugenia. Adde moreouer, that if true Eugenia should be vrged, it requireth not only our great grandfathers gradfathers, but even all the rest of our auncestours in continual order, after them to be Noble, Rich, profitable for the Common-weale, good me,& without spot or imputation.

An hard speech indeed, but an harder rule, and a consequence, of all most hardeft:

Natiue No-

Chap.5.

hardest: Such a noble discended person, | and family of their Mothers, and from is a rare Bird, and yet some such there be: but concerning that matter, heare Aristatles opinion. Eugenia, verily (faith he) I have found but in few, and no where an hundred good Eugenes. Wherefore the Athenians called their Noblemen by more viuall words , Eupaterios and Eupatriles, as who should fay, Menborne of Noble fathers: although I do know these words to be oftentimes confounded with were a Slaue or base common person;

ft to be no hard thing to affirme, that Nobility may be derived from the mother.

the word Eugenes. I have frankly affirmed Nobilitie to diffeend from the father to the children; and what if I should fay the same force to be in the Mothers nobilitie also? Surely, both reason and the opinions of Doctours, and ancient customes also, will be present for the desence of this cause. If Nobility draw any thing naturall at all from the Parents, almost the whole constitution of the Childe, is to be giuen vnto the Mother. It hath also such Thape (if we may beleeve Philosophers) as the Mother conceineth, together with tence : Iam depulso Nerone, quisnam elithe feede. For first, it taketh life from the Mother, it taketh likewise nourishment of and from the Mother, encreasing from the Mother; and in briefe, by the confent of all men, it, together with spirit and vitall humour draweth from the mother, aff. ctions, Vertues and vices. And that such power is in the Mother, it is manifest by the precepts of Phisitians, who command Parents to be most carefull to what Nutfes they put their children to be nurfed. In briefe, if the vertue of the Father be in the children to be renerenced, why should not the Mothers be so also. The manner of the Sex, doth neither diminish nor encrease Nobilitie, which is for it selfe to be defired. Nay, in tender women it seemeth to have both more admiration and grace.

It is of a certayne Lawyer well written; That amongst the causes for which the honour and dignitie of persons, is encreased or diminished, that is of others the lightest, which is drawne from the difference of the Sexe: I lpianus reporteth, the fonnes of the women of the Ilienfes, of Delphos, and of Pontus, to haue beene affigned vnto the houses of their Mothers, and not of their Fathers . Plutarch writeth, that amongest the Xanthy, the Sons were ingrafted into the stocke

them the name of the stocke and kinred to be derived, and not from their Fathers. The fame thing Herodotus reporteth of them of Licia: as that they should take the name and credite of their flocke and kindred from their Mothers, and that he was with them a free-borne-man, and Noble, that was borne of a free-bornwoman, and Noble; although his Father yea, and by the Lawes of the Romaines, the Sonnes in some cases follow the beginning of their Mothers. Neyther is it a thing vnheard of with vs, nor with other Nations, Sonnes to have taken vnto themselves names from their Mother. which were of greater nobility then their Fathers; as Rainatus de Clara. Spartianus and Trebellius Pollio, haue written, Macrianus or Macrinus, to have beene by his Mother noble, his Father being but onely a valiant and martiall man. You may alfo with Cornelius Tacitus reade this fengeretur inquirebant, & omnium ore Rubellius Plancus, cui Nobilitas per matremex Iulia familia. Nero being now deposed, greatinghiry was made, who should bee chosen, and Rubellius Plancus was in euery mans mouth, who was nobly borne by the mothers side of the Iulian Family. And from these, Virgil, Ouid, and Statius Papinius difagree not, whose verses I have thought good heere to fet downe.

Genus buic materna superbum Nobilitas dabat : incertum de Patre ferebat. His Mothers noble birth, to him did give a noble race For by his fathers fide he was, born but obscure & bale

OVID.

Est quoque pet matrem Cylenonen addita nobis

And by my Mother Cylenonie, Is doubled my Nobilitie.

IDEM.

Hinc funt Euander, qui quanquam clarus viroque, Nobilior fane, fanguine matris erat. (were From hence did old Euander come, who thogh he noble By both fides , yet by Mothers blood, more noble did (appeare

PAPINIVS.

Sed quicquid patrio ceffatum est sanguine, mater Redaidit, obscurumque latus clarefeere vidit Conulito ganifis domus. Stemmate materno (alix, virtute paterna.

What

What wanted in the Fathers blood, the Mothers did requite the same; And the base house reloyced much, by fuch a match to grow to fame. By Mothers Stocke accounted bleft. And Fathers vertues with the best.

Now the Reason which many Doctors bring, to prooue the Sonne to be partaker of his Fathers Nobilitie, is this; Eucrie thing compound, partaketh of the forme and matter which agreeth to both the parents. Wherefore, where the Law repugnethnot with reason, this rule is to bee holden for true.

And now concerning Nobilitie Natine (or by birth) I have thus much spoken: and from hence I will directly proceede vnto Nobility Datine, or to Nobility which commeth by gift.

CHAP. V.

¶ The diners beginnings of Nobilitie



Being about to fearch out the other kinde of Politicall or Civil Mobilitie (viz.) Noblitie Datine, and that even from the first beginning thereof, certayne things before fayde.

sceme heere necessarily to bee againe called vnto remembraunce. Their argument is first to be refuted, which say: That feeing Adam was a common Fa-ther vnto all men, whereof commethit, that one man should be better then another ? It is thereunto answered out of the fame Olde Testamens, out of which the question is rifen, beeing of the like Authoritie and credite both with the Christians and the lewes. Noah when he had planted a Vineyard, and had tasted of his planting, having drunke of the wine, lay drunken and bare in his Tent. And Cham feeing the prinities of his father, tolde it to his brethren, who woon a naturall honestie and vertue, with a Cloake cast whon their shoulders couered their sleeping father with their eyes turned from him, and not

Seeing their Fathers nakeaneffe . But Noch awaked, and knowing what his younger Sonne had done unto him, be curled cham. commaunding him to be a flane of all flanes. By this shamefull and voworthic fact, Cham with all his generation, carryed away his Fathers curfe, feruitude, and the Title of obscure and base persons; whereas contrary-wife, Sem and Lapher found all the Names and Titles of Honestie, Nobilitie, and Vertue, and their Fathers bleffing withall.

The Datine Nobilitie, whereof our Nacificie the present speechis, was for many causes carde of Norayled and invented. And first of all, vppon vrgent necessitie. For when as euill and wicked men prenayled, and good and honest men were oppressed: it was necessarie the good to be distinguifhed from the badde, and for the preservation of the publique tranquility, to be seperated and divided from them: wherefore, wife, infl, and vertuous men, and the lights, as it were, of the world, thining before others, were fet ouer the reft, that they might bee voto all men an example of godlie and honest life, that they might decide and determine all things. And at that time fuch wife men and prouiders for the Common-weale feemed by vertue to procure vnto themfelues Nobilitie. For the olde Prouerbe prenailed with them : Vertue, and not blood to ennoble men. Such men were by the People called, chosen, & appointed Counfellers and Judges, who by their fubiects were elected and created Aines and Princes. And they, which for their worthy deeds had obtained fuch honourable Titles and Offices, ennobled both themselues and their posterity.

Another cause also why Nobility be- The ignorice gan to be honoured, was the Ignorance & of the vulcar vnskilfulneffe of the vulgar and Common fact. fort of people, who have their fence, reafon and understanding so dispersed and feattered, as that they cannot gather, difcerne, or judge any thing certaine, firme, or found. VVherefore, for the maintenance of the publike peace and tranquilitie, it was necessarie to make choice of Princes (that is to fay, of Gouernours) men, for their vertue and wifedome, famous and Noble, who might compose and fet in order the troubled estates. for lacke of knowledge difordered, and Rr 3

5 Booke.

Wealth and riches.

Noble after.

Men immedi ately by God Nobilitie.

Knowledge in martial offair!

with fingular wisedome, and action, as it were by a certaine cunning, drawe the rude people vnto a more civill kinde of life, and courtefie of behaviour: fuch as were Iupiter, Pallas, Ceres, Bacchus, Apollo, and many others. And these men, by their wisedome, vertue, and skill, obtayned not onely the Titles of Nobilitie and Dignity, but were of the vnskilfull multitude, accounted for gods also, and received from them even divine honors.

We see Nobilitie to haue risen also, of the aboundance of wealth and riches: for many pinched with extreame pouertic, enforced to hang vpon the richer

fort, and giving themselves altogether ouer into their power, reputed them for them, and honoured them. Nobilitie also beganne of Noble and

worthy acts done; for in auncient time,

oppressed, if any valiant and couragious man had from such oppression deliuered his Country, he therefore was about other men worthily honoured. Many also thence to have afterward sprung vp and in ancient time by Martiall prowesse obrisen. All their Offices were executed tained Nobility, and therefore of the peo- by Tribunes and Lieutenants. There was ple accounted Noble: as was Danid for a greater Tribune, who was next vnto the death of Goliah the Philistine. Some, the Emperour and his successour. There immediatly from God were elected and called vnto Nobilitie, as Iofua, Gedeon, Ieptha, and the rest of the Indges of Ifrael, who were Generalls ouer great Armies: othersome, were againe by God chosen enen from the Plough, to be rulers oner the people, as the Princes of the twelue Tribes of Ifrael. King Saul called out of the field: David from feeding of his flock, who thought themselues vtterly vnworthy of fuch a princely calling. But fuch as God hath ennobled, are of vs about all others to be accounted most noble.

Yea, no finall part, but even the greatest part of Datine Nobilitie, gained vnto themselves honor and glory by their skil in martiall affaires, carrying home with them victory and triumph ouer their enemics : fo as did Horatius Cocles, Titus Manlius, Scipio Affricanus, and his brother L. Scipio Afiaticus : I speake not of great Emperours, fuch as were Velpatian, Domitian, Nerus, Traian, Antonius, Seuerus, Theodolius, and many others, who were of Cateline, hath called them Distatores, & part of them accounted Fathers of their Countrey; part of them Benefactors, but

all of them best Princes, whose Images are vpon their Coines, euen yet carried about; and publique Statues were in the honour of them, with certaine folemne Ceremonies erected, to the intent that all others with their valour and vertue, should with their deedes, as it were, in striuing-wife, aspire and grow vnto the

like glory. Others also, borne of most base and Magnaniming and wisedon

low condition, who by Armes in time of warres, for their wifedome and courage, have beene promoted to be great Emperours, Cafars, Dukes, Princes and Earles: as were Tullius Hostilius, Numa Pompilius, Tarquinius Prifcus, Iulius C.efar, O-Etanianus Angustus, and fuch other like, Noblemen, and for fuch, both esteemed of from hence, tooke the beginning of the Titles of their vertues . For certaine it is, at the first vnder the Roman Empire, when as they had subdued the Germaines, Italiwhen as Nations were by their enemies ans, the Spaniards, the Brittans, the Gauls, and other most mighty kingdoms, Dukes, Earles, and Barons, not then to have bin in such fort, as now they be, but from

> was also a great Officer called Tribunus Celerum, Lieutenant of the Armie, of the light armed and most readie Souldiers. Those which with a Cohort, or band of men, were the Keepers, and had the guarding of the Emperours person, and they among the Romanes, which were of the first Order, next after the Emperor, were called Tribuni Celerum, as they were long agoe in the time of Romulus, and of the other fixe kings fucceeding him. The great Officers, called Magistri

Equitum, or Maisters of the Horsemen . had like power with the Dictators, and with the Emperors, as Lucius Fenestella, Pomponius Latus de Magistratibus Romanorum : and also Flauius Vegetius , and Marcus Cicero do :, intreating of Martiall affaires describe. But Pomponius Latus writeth Romulus to have called the Generall of an army, whom the Germans call Bert300en Tribuna Celerum, Saluft in his Treatife concerning the Conspiracie

Imperatores; that is Dictators & Emperors. Beside that , Great Magistrates called of Nobility Datine.

and authority, as if appeale had bin made from their fentence, they might againe | Fl. Veffatianus, Flaniales : fome called 1appeale from the Emperor, vnto the Prafeeti Pratorio. For most wise, good, and fignes, and othersome called Imaginary, iust men, by the Emperours chosen out, were created Prafetti Pratorio, vnto who they were wont to commit almost the whole estate of the Common weale. The Emperour Seuerus granted many things vnto the Great Officers called Prefecti can more fitly compare vnto none, then wrbis, and Prafecti Pratorio, of all which, heere to speake, were but needlesse. For heere we speake onely of the authority of the Prafectus Pratorio (or Captain of the Guard) which the Emperour onely gaue vnto him, who is the chiefe, linely, and very effentiall Law it felfe; who were of power to thrust Cittizens into exile, and to restore them vnto their estate againc. Whereby it is most cuident, Princes and Gouernours of People to haue had the power and authority of the fword, to punish the offenders, and to administer Iuflice: wherby they were afterward thoght to procure and get a great name of Nobility, both vnto themselues, and to their posterity: and right probable it is, the authority of Princes and Dukes to have first rifen of the Tribuni and Prafecti: which Princes, at fuch time as the Romane Emperours removed out of Germany & Italy into Greece, are read to haue taken vnto themselues the Imperial power: which authority and regall priviledges wee see (cuen at this day) by Kings and Emperors to bee granted vnto Dukes and Princes: ble actes, and valour of minde. And that fo that the election of Princes & Dukes dependeth not of their Subjects (as doth the election of Kings) but is Datiuely, as of gift, to be referred vnto the fauour and bounty of the Emperours and Kings, to whom they have beene subject. And in the former times, the names of Duke and Prince were names of Offices, and not of Honours and Dignities . And so in the times of the Romans, the Roman Kings, their Dictators and Confuls, & also their Emperors, were in the administration of their civill affaires, all martiallmen, both horfemen and footmen.

But beside these great Offices of the Tribuni and Prafeeli, there were other publike offices and charges; fome called Ofdinari, for that they kept orders in the army, and stood in the front of the bat-

Prafecti Pratorio, were of so great credit | taile. Those in the time of Augustus, were wont to be called Augustales; and of quiliferi, carrying an Eagle in their Enbearing the enfigne of the common or generall Army of the people of Rome notable with the Letters, S.P.Q.R.that is to fay, Senatus Populus Que Komanus : Or the Senate and people of Rome, whom wee to our Standard or Ensigne-Bearers.

But if wee would heere profecute all things in order, this Treatife should without measure encrease. But now in this place wee onely goe about, flightly as it were to shew the beginnings of Noble Dignities & Offices, leaft any man should suspect them to be but altogether things faigned, and vpon no reason grounded. Rehearling their things in the mean time by the way, that when we thall come vnto our owne age, it may appeare, how much Powers, Dominions, and Nations differ among themselues. For they who in ancient times were vnder kings and emperours appointed Gonernours ouer Regions and Countries, are now become hareditary possessions thereof: & they which before were but Noble Ministers or Ser-

uants, are now become absolute Nobles. Beside that, in the meane time it most plainly appeareth of that which is aforefaid, that the kindred, stocke, and discent of the Nobility in former ages flourished and became famous onely for vertue, no-Vertue being fet apart, wee are all forafmuch as concerneth mans nature, the fonnes of Adam. VVherefore, according to the rule of Theologicall or Philosophicall Nobility (whereunto our Anceftors especially addicted themselues) to boaft of Nobility by birth, without vertue was but a vaine thing.

> Nam genus & Proanos & que non fect-Vix canostra duco.-

For our proud Stocke and Pedigree, and things we did not make, VVe scarse reckon them for our owne, or for our owne them take.

VVherefore-wee pray and exhort all

men, that for a much as vertue commeth | not by inheritance, every man would endenour himselfe, of himselfe to become Noble. For they which otherwise vaunt and boatt of Nobility, seeme onely honources of vertue, vpon another mans credite, and line not by their owne, feeing that they be rather base persons, bearing themselues brag, vpon another mans vertue. But for the most part quite out of order, fo the fashion and manner of the world now is. For what cannot flattery, the fauour of Princes, and too much indu gency do, and bring to paffe.

PARERGON.



T is fufficiently manifest, by that which is aforefaid, what the undgment Robert Gloner was, concerning Politicall No-

bility in ancient time, amongst the Genhaue fet forth to vs as a wauering thing, (and Dinines as a thing vncertaine)whilft uill Rights of persons.

It were verily to be wished, that the ornaments of vertue thould every where be more at large, and fully delight the Reaconferred and bestowed vpon none, but | ders. vpon fuch, as in whom vertue it felferefleth: for that as the encreasing of honor, fo the credite and reputation thereof alfo, is propounded to be gotten, not by ainbition but by industry. But seeing that Pofuch fort and condition, as maketh in cuery man that hath them, a beginning and excellency proper and peculiar to themfelues; it is from the rest of the kindes of Nobility (viz. Theologicall and Philofophicall) by this only difference diffinguithed, that whilft they rest onely upon Religion and Vertue, this Civill Nobility refleth voon the custome of Nations.

In the profecuting whereof, for that he finished not the fame, I verily tooke it in France, a Senatour of Rome, when as most greenously: for many things seemed to me to be therin wanting, which might | graced him with the Cardinals hat. In-

peculiar forme of enobling of men, yled in enery kingdome apart, and especially in this Empire and Island, as the very method and order of the worke feemed to me to make shew of. But for a smuch, as he in his life time perfected not these things;

-Abstulit clarum cita mors Achillem.)

Vntimely death foone tooke away Achilles, and clos'dhim in clay.

Least Venusses head being onely by Apelles perfected, the body beeing not yet drawne, the whole worke in the meane time altogether imperfect or deformed, should lye neglected and vnregarded, I thought it a thing worth the labour, to fupply that defect, with fuch thinges as hereafter follow: to the intent, that at length amongst others, I might in fewe words, and as it were at a glimple, thew of my Friend and Vncle | what orders of Nobility are with vs also: what Rites and Ceremonies are vsed in promoting of men vnto the degrees of Nobility, that from hence the forme of tiles: which Philosophers heeretofore, creating of the being before understood, I might afterward with greater fruite, and fuller pleasure, come vnto the persons they in speaking thereof omitted the Ci- themselves, with their families, marriages, changes, and noble actes; and at length in a inft volume (if God shall see it good)

But if we shall compare these old and most ancient times of the Romane Empire with ours, wee shall finde no signe or token of that auncient Nobility in the Courts of Princes. If you shall seeke liticall Nobility is another thing, whereof for fuch as they called Patricij or Senathere be diners beginnings, and those of tors (whom the Romanes renerenced as men fent downe from heatten) you thall finde them no where but in Citties, exercifing Vfury and Merchandize (trades vtterly forbidden the Romanes) at whom (although within their owne walles they be much regarded and effected) our no. ble Courtiers were wont to fcorfe & iest. Or else if it please you, goe vnto the time of Pope Vrban, who (forfooth) made Charles the Sonne of King Lewes the 8. he should rather of his owne right, hane much have concerned the matter: As the | deede, it was a very ridiculous comparia Senator of Rome, as the matter now sta-

VVherefore let vs fee, and as breefely as we can touch how, & by what degree after the empire of that Citty (which first built by Shepheards, at length became Mistris of the whole world) began to decline from so great an Estate, together with the change thereof, by little and little drew with it the change of Noble dignities and titles alfo.

After the translating of the Romane empire by Constantine the Great, all that excellency of publike dignities, whereof it is expresly and sufficiently enough before spoken, seemeth to have bin changed into a certaine other forme, and a new manner of ennobling of men to haue bin deuifed. And verily, the names of Honours and Dignities in the cast-empire, feeme to have bene divers from the westempire: and the Latines, after the empire rent in funder, and feated at Constantino ple, seeme to have beene subject vinto the Greekes. For he that was there next vnto the Emperour, eyther by reason of the neerenelle of blood, or by institution, and was of the Latines called (Prim.u) was of the Greekes, by a generall name faluted Defpotes; that is to fay, Lozo: as he is at this day cald Monsieur among the French men. The later V Vriters, were wont alto to call him, the fame man Sebaston, according as the emperors had deuifed honourable titles, where-with they might grace their friends, and binde them vnto them. The third in dignity from the emperor, was the Sebastocrator: whom hee whom they called Cafar, followed as

But whilft the emperour Bafilius, was wont to be called sebastos, & also Cafar, he the fame man, at one & the fame time enjoying all these titles, these dignities were then as offices, and not as titles of honour.But afterward, they as honourable names of dignities, euch without any offices at all belonging vnto them, began to bee according to the emperours pleatime, the next in honour vnto the emperour, was called Cafar: as The king of the Romanes at this day, is in the VVeft. But afterwards, Sebastocrator was the second in honour, & Cafar the third, at fuch time

Sebaffocrator

fon of the French King his Sonne with | as Alexius Comnenus appointed his Bro ther Mascius to be Sebastocrator; of whom Zonoras speaketh more at large. And lath of all Alexius Paleologus beeing Defiotes was made next in honour vnto the Emperour, vnto whom he the tame Emperor Comnenus having no Sonnes, betrothed his eldeft daughter trene, and graced him with the Title of the Defpotes, as hee which thould have beene herre of the empire, if he had not before dyed.

Protofebastus had the first place & de-

gree of honour from the emperour. And Panhyperieat length Panhyperfebastus begato be the builtus. most stately and maiesticall name of all others, being a new title, of a new dignity, innented by Alexius Commenus, to gratific Michael Taronitus withall. Epweinus was alfo a name of great honor, as who thould fay, the cheefe of all the Prounciall Prefidents. Contostaulus was Generali of the Auxiliary forces, which out of France, St. Contoffaulus cily, and Italy, served in the East. Whereof he was called The Great Contost sulus: and otherwife Comestabilu, which of the Italians is interpreted Contostabile. I rungarius was he, which had the command of a Drungarius. Fleet at Sea. But him which commanded the Army at Sea, they called, The erest Duke, and in Greek, were too, for diffrence Mega-Dux, fake, imitating therein the Latines. For he which led the Army at Land, was called Egemon; but hee which ruled at Sea, was called Dux. And ouer the Army at land, commanded alwayes, eyther the emperor himfelfe, or the Defpotes, or the Sebastocrator, or the Cafar, or the Panloperfebafew. And vnto this Great Duke whom they had as cheefe Admirall, they made fubicat all the Drungars of their Fleete, their Admirals, their Proto-Comites, and him the Great Drungarius himfelte, before whom they also appointed the emperors Statue on horfe-backe (which they called Contin) to bee carried before him in their forces at Sea. They had alto their Great Logotheta, whom we at this day call The Great the Chancellor. Their Logariastes, whom Logothera, the Frenchmen call Controlleur. And their Proportion Protostator, or Marlball of their Army. fure, bestowed and disposed of. And for a Their Primiceries also and Primangustes, Primiceries. and many others of that fore, I willingly Printinguitor paffe ouer, leaft in profecuting of energy

one, my difcourfe thould grow too long

and redious. These were all honorable

dignities, and that for the most part not

Protefebafto

Egemon.

Chap.5.

somuch for the necessity of their Offices the authority of the Emperors began to or order, as so made by the fattour and good liking of the Emperor.

But whilst it seemed so good vnto the Emperors, so to appoint the seate of the Empire at Constantinople (where al things nowlye fivallowed up of the Turkes) they left the west bared of their Legions, and strengthned onely with Fortes, undefended and subiect vnto the inuasions & fury of the barbarous Nations: vppon the fall and decay whereof, the ruine of the East Empire (at length) ensued also. Italy and Affricke was at that time governed by their Exarchi, Toparchi, Comarchi, Carthulari, Spathary, Gustaldi, and Capatani. But at length, when Narfes the Eunuch, and one of the Romane Patrici, was by Infinus the Emperour, appointed Gouernour, he brought in them whom they called Consulares, Prasides, and Correctores. But after, that hee that Narfes, prouoked with the injuries and despightes of Sophia the Empresse (and with anger enraged) had called in thither the Longobardes out of Pannonia, they became by little & little to vary, concerning the titles of Honour, and names of Dignity.

For Narfes beeing dead, Longinus (one of the Romaine Patricy alfo) by the same Emperour chosen Gouernor or Exarcha in his stead in Italy, for the repressing of the Longobards, but a little before called forth by Narfes, and cuen now about to come, ordained Dukes thoroughout the Provinces (haply to the imitation of Conitantine the Emperor, who is reported to have provided by Law, that Countreves and I ownes thould be affigued to Dukes, Earles, and olde Captaines, which having log ferued, were to be rewarded for their good fernice done and past.) And vnto this purpose tend the words of Guicchiardine himtelfe, which I have thoght good hereunto alfo to adjovne.

By the translation of the Empire vnto Conilantinople (faith hee) a way was opened vnto the power of the Roman By hops for the authority of the Emperours, dayly more and more weakned and decreafing in Italy (both by their continual absence, as also for that they were still busied with warres in the cast) the people also by litle and litle revolting from them, & the City of Rome it felfe, being at length oftetimes

decay and vanish away in Italy. But the barbarous people, at length again driven out of Italy by the power of the Emperors, the government began againe to be managed by Greeke Magistrats (of whom he which commanded ouer the rest, was called Hexarchus, and had his feate at Rauenna) who appointed Gouernours ouer the rest of the Citties of Italy, which Gouernors they called Dukes. From hence, came the name of the Hexarchatlbip of Rauenna, wherein al places were comprehended, which had not Dukes of theyr owne, but were vnder the commaund of one Hexarchus. Not long after, a notable change and alteration of matters enfued from the Longobardes: For they, a most fierce and cruell people entering into Italy, possessed the country called Gallia Cifalpina, of whome it hath also taken the name of Lombardie. They added also vnto their Gouernment Rauenna, with all the Hexarchatlhip thereof, besides many other parts of Italy, extending their armes as farre as Picenum, Spoletum, and Bene. uentum, ouer which, they appointed Gouernors to rule and commaund, whome they called Dukes,&c. So the Longobards raging and roaming farre abroad in Italy, at length, with thirty of their Dukes, in vaine attempted to haue taken the Cittie of Rome. And so it came to passe, according to the manner of warres, that the Titles of the dignities of the former empire being neglected, all things began to bee gouerned by the Generals and Commanders of the armies, viz. by fuch as they called Dukes Earles and Princes.

Pipin King of France, by the Romanes called into Italy, having taken Ticinum, the Metropoliticall Cittie of the Insubres, & there flain Defiderius (of a Constable promoted to be King of italy) ouercame and fubdued, and was foorthwith by the generall confent of all men chosen emperor The French of the VVeft Empire: who as hee would Romane Em haue the Empire it selfe to be called. The pirc. French Romane Empire, so euen in the beginning therof he had a purpofe to make ithereditary, and made the Great men, & fuch as were with Honourable Titles graced, to be altogether free : and bound them by oath, as men in Fee, holding onby the Goths and Vandals taken & facked; | ly of the King, and of the Emperour : fo

his ordinance was called Innestitura, or an inuesture. The bounds and townes of his kingdome, he committed to be gouerned by Counties or Earls. The bounds & borders they called Marchias, or Marches: whereupon, the Gouernours of the Marches, began to be called Marchiarum Comites, (or Counties of the Marches) and Marqueffes. at length Marchiones, or Marqueffes. And them whom he fet and placed in the Prouinces, for the administration of Instice. and the keeping of the people in their allegiance, were then called Missi (or Men fent) or otherwise Legati: - that is to lay, The Emperours Legats or Lieutenants. But fuch as the people afterward of them felues created, for the administration of Inflice, and the government of Citties, being two or moe in number, beeing chofen after the manner of the ancient Roman Common-weale, were called Confuls. The French Romane Empire, with this fucceffe made by Charles the Great, wa left ynto his poffer ty almost hereditary: which in fhore time after alfo, under the Emperour Charles the Groffe (Nephew in the fourth degree vnto Charles the Great, & before, King of Germany) devolued from the den ned fro French-men vnto the Germanes. Vnto whom alfo (within a few yeares after) Otto the Great, king of Germany, and he Emperour, also succeeded; who following the steps of Charles the Great, gaue such perfections vnto his beginnings, in beflowing and disposing of honours & dig Dukes, Eurb. nities, as that he is not fo much for his fir-These people, Charles the Great, son to Princes. name and noble actes, to bee compared

that if by chance they should fall from | of Dukes and Counties (being with the their faith and allegiance, or dye without ancient Romanes but the bare names of Dukes. iffue, hee then ordained those their dignipersonal offices and charges) now receities to be transferred vnto others : & that ued other customes: and a Duke (at first chosen for his vertues & noble acts) they now began to to call him of his Dukedome: as they did also a Marquelle, of his Marquifat, and an Earle of his Earldome. And he which had the command of people, from fome King, Marqueffe, or Earle, was called Capitaneus (or a Capitaine.) But they which had such command from Capitaines, were colled Valuafores (or Val- Valuafors uafours.) And they which had it from these Valuafors, were called Valuafini for Valuafines.) Whereupon this new beginning of Politicall Nobility, beeing far & wide dispersed through the kingdomes of the Empire, they at length were deemed rightly Noble, according to the maner and cuftome of enery place & Country, who eyther themselves, or their ance-

flours lined, fo graced with thefe, or fuch like priniledges. And there be the things, which according vnto the variety and alteration of times, we have read in the most approved Authors, concerning the titles of honors and dignities. In recounting of which, we haue thought this most especially worth the noting, that all the streames of Nobility (but especially the greatest & cheefest of them) came and issued all out of the Campe. Which degrees of honour and Nobility, before that wee compare them with ours, it shall not repent vs in diffinet rankes, orderly to runne through the beginning of enery one of them.

And first to begin withall, They in Campes were called Principes, or Princes, Princes, (of whom at this day, wee enery where make fo great account) which ferued in the first rankes, excelling others in stregth and age; and which followed the Spearemen, divided into fifteen bands or troops, fo placed, as it were for a refuge & electe for them: to the end, that if in battaile the man into his wars, graced with Royalties fuch of them, as had done him worthy & Speare-men should be enforced to retire, they might in fafety flye vnto those Irinfaithfull feruice (and thefe Royalties were cipes, as vinto principall men of more approued and affored fernice. Whereof ments of Proninces) which he according Castra Principalia, the Principall Tents, and Porta Principalis, the Principall Port, where those Principes or Principall men were wont to lye with their bands; are fo often read of in Linie.

Next

Royaltics.

with the most mighty emperours, as for

his wholefome Lawes, and heroicall Or-

dinances, of all posterity of right for ener

to be commended. For this man, after

the ancient manner of the Longobards and

French, entertaining enery most valiant

all manner of dignities, lands, & gouern-

28 he thought good, bestowed vpon such

as had of him well deferred. And now

men began more plainly to make a diffe-

rence of titles and dignities. For the titles

A Capitaine.

Valuatines.

Dukes-

Marquellet,

they which in the emperors name gonerned the Fomane affaires, were called Principes Senatur, or Princes of the Senate. But afterward, the emperour would have the place or title of a Prince, to bee a dignity next voto a Kings, who amongst the ancient saxons were called Ethelings, and a generall name, dinerfly ginen and attributed vnto many at once, and orderly comprehending in it all the greater forts of dignities: yea in fomeplaces, accorplaces, the title and dignity of a Prince, is inferiour vnto the title and dignity of a Duke or an Earle.

Duces or Dukes tooke their names from the Latine word Ducendo, as who flould fay . Dublores or Leaders; for that they marching before, led their followers. W hereof we reade the Latine phrase, Ducere bellum, that is to fay, to leade Warre; for Gerere bellion, to make warre. And fo of Spaine, of Brittaine, and of the Saxon Hij bellum assidue ducunt cum Gente Latina. These men make continuall war with the Latine Nation. And they which as Dukes or Generals were leaders of Armics, were wont to vie fuch Enfignes as the Confuls did: whereupon, the word Ducatus, forestime figurated the Region or Country, ouer which the Duke commanded: and other while, the Military government and commanding authority it felfe. Vnto which manner of men, for things by them honourably and valiantly in the wars atchieued and performed, triumphall Ornaments were fometimes awarded. Amongst the ancient Germanes, vnto a Generall or Leader of an army, were affigned twelne Counties or Earles to attend vpon him.

Marquelles were fo called of a certaine iurild ction bound vnto fome certaine place. So he which had the command and gonernment of any frontier Territory or See coast, was called Marchio, or a Patron, and the rest of the Barons. Atarques : and they which receited of the Fees, were properly accounted the Valuafars of the king, or of the kingdome, as men flanding with the Generals Advealuas Regm, at the gates and entrances of the kingdome. Other-fome there bee, which goe about to derine the word Marchiefrom Atarea (a word of the Celtes)

Next vnto Augustus the Emperour, \ chare in French, to ride: and the Marco manni as a people to called, for that they excelled in good horse-manship.

Now of Counties or Earles, as there were divers kindes, fo of them amongst the ancient VVriters, are read divers and fundry forts and orders; fuch as among the rest wer Comites Sacri Paliti, or counwith vs Clytones. But now it is as it were ties of the Sacred Pallace: Archiatri (or Principall Courtiers) and Comites Stabuli, or Constables. For Defiderius from a Constable, by the Longobards chosen and appointed to be king of Italy, was flaine by ding to the manner and custome of the | Charles the Great. And it is elsewhere read, hee fent Burchardus the Constable, with his Flecte to Corfica.

> There were also Comites Militum, or Counties of the Souldiers, of whom the Romanes would have always two refiding in the East, and were thereof sometimes called Comites Orientis, or Counties of the caft. And in breefe, there were Counties of Provinces: fuch as were the Counties Coasts in Brittaine.

> The Guitaldius in Italy, and a County, seeme in ancient time to have bene all one: There be some also, which beloeve a County in olde time to have beene called Comarchus.

The name of a Vicount Theweth a be- Vicouns. ginning not to be doubted of: For he to whom the County in the Camp committed the authority of his jurifdiction, was called Vice-Comes or Vicount; as were in the ancient time the Proconful. & the Proconfull his Lieutenant or Deputy.

But whereof the Barones or Barons Barons were to called is not yet welknowner for vnto the Romans as concerning their dignity, they were viterly viknowne: howbeit, that they affirme it to bee a Latine word by that faying of Cicero to his friend Atticus. Apud Patronem reliquosque harones to in maxima gratia poffuit : Hee brought you into great fauour with your

Other some obtrude vnto vs the greek word says, which fignificth Graue. But howfocuer it commeth to paffe if credite be to be given to our most learned Lawver Bracken, the Barons were full accounted for most valiant men, for hee would haue them to be called Anbora belli, or the ftrength of warre. And by the Lawyer from whence they derine the word Mare Balding Baron is defined to be a man haof Nobilitie Datiue.

est correcting of offendors. But sufficeth it now concerning these matters, to haue

fayde thus much, as purposing of the fame, to speake more at large heereafter. And let vs now come nearer vnto the matter, by comparing of ancient things, with others of latter time; to the intent, that by applying of those ancient things vnto this our Age and Time, the reason

as well of the Names as of the Dignities themselves, may the better and more manifeftly appeare. Like as the Empire of the Greekes, decaying, the was by the Turkes ouerthrowne and

doe now fearcely declare. The maieflie whereof, is yet by the Scauen Princes E-The Seaucn for infinited)earc,960,

The Empire

ganne to get both other cu-

flomes and

lectors (of the Germains called Coznoz= (tem) vnto the Ornament of the Chriftian world vpholden and maintayned. The Septemuirat of Germany, the Emperour Otho the third, and Pope Gregorie the fift, ordained in the yeare 260. Vinto whom afterwards the Emperour Charles the fourth engaged the renenues of the Empire (haning promifed vnto cueric one of the Electors, an hundred thouland crownes) that he would appoint Wenceflaus his fonne, heire of the Empire, But the Money beeing not payed, it came to paffe, that the Patrimony of the Romaine Common-weale, which was appointed to the vies and maintenance of the warres (and for that onely cause was subject to alienation) was privately distributed and divided amongst them, voto cuery one of them a part, whereby the power of the Empire was afterward almost brought to nothing, the Seauen Princes Electors of Germanie, keeping all vnto themselues, and compelling the Emperors by oath, that they thould not renoke the Lands and Pawnes before ingaged.

And Kings, to whom it was a pleafant thing to be delinered from another mans power and command, erecled to themfelues Monarchies.

But they which in most great Kingdoms hold the fecond place, next to the Kings and the Kings fons, are according

uing from his Prince the power and auto the forme of the Emperors army, called thority of the greatest, middle, and low-Dukes. The title of an Archauke is but one alone belonging to the house of Austria, by the emperor Frederick divised, to grace his nephew Phillip withall, at fuch time as he was to marry loane the heire of Spaine.

The name of Paywode, is a title of dignity onely in Transiluania, and Valuchia. And so also is the Doge of the Venetians, who is also called a Duke.

And as in warres Counties or Earles An Earle, were affigned vnto Dukes, so our Counties now at this day, are thought next in

dignity to follow the Dukes. For a Marqueffe at this day is nothing A Marqueffe

else in his owne proper signification, then brought to nought, even so also was a Countie yoon the Frontiers & Borders: the empire of the West, by the cunning which in the Germaine tongue is more fignificantly called a Martoraue : with and ambition of the Bishops of Rome, whome a Countie is called Braf. And rent in funder and weakened. Which, whereof come those honourable names how great it was, the very ruines thereof of the Pfalizarane, Landlarane, Dartarauc, Rheingraue, & Burgh graue: that is to fay, The Countie Palatine, the Countie of the Prouince, The Countie of the Borders, The County of Rhene The County of the Castle or Garrison . And yet according to the divers custome of places, Marq neffes in some places are pre-

ferred, and goe before Counties or Earles. The beginning of a Picount, the very e- A Vicount tymology of the name it felf hath taught vs. Barons are also every where according A Baron.

to the dignity of their degree, power, & gravity accounted honourable. France hath also onely soure peculiar Great and principall Lords, whom they call Vidames Vidames (viz.) Chartres, Chalons, Amiens, and Gerbery. So hath it pleased menaccording to the cultome of places, vnto new forms of Honours and Dignities, to give olde names. But nothing is every where, and in all places to fincerely observed and kept, as is that olde and generall dinifion of People, into Noble and Vnnoble, Noble and with a certain difference of the Vnnoble Vnnoble, fort among themselves, as of the Nobler

fort among themselves also. For fuch with casic exercises get their linings, fuch as excell in wit in the knowledge of Martiall affaires, in learning, in wealth, or in vertue; thefe men, in thefe times, are as it were the Seminaries of Nobility (as were in ancient time the Gentlemen whom they called Equites, among The Semina the Romans, the nursery of the Senators.) Ty of nobility.

A Doge.

All the vulgar people are base and vnnoble.

470

of the Nobility, they are altogether base ron. and vnnoble: like as all free-borne men, which are not of the vulgar and common are in French called Gentil shommes, and in fort of people, are indifferently and alike noble, according to the French Prouerb: Ie suis Gentilhomme comme le Roy, I am a Al gentlemen Gentleman as well as the King. Il foy de Gentilhomme: The faith of a Gentle-

Yet it is to be knowne, antiquity and

The differenluy.

Nobility, the

greater and the leffer.

high functions, to have their estimation in Politicall Nobility, as they have in other things. And hecreof as feemeth vnto me, are those distinctions of Nobility, named, and vnnamed: or of the greater and leffer Nobility as some others would haue it. And Wamed Nobility I call that which is by hereditary fuccession graced with Titles and Fees. As a king taketh that his denomination of his kingdome: a Duke, of his Dukedome; an Earle, of his Earledome; and a Baron, of his Baronny: who may also be called Majores Nobiles, or The greater Nobility, although not altogether so properly, for that that distinction of Nobility, indiffrently comprehendeth all forts of Noblemen, & the higher Magistracies (bestowed upon men for tearme of life onely, or during the Princes pleafure.) The rest of the Nobility under the degree of Barons, may bee called Nobiles Innominati (or vnnamed Noblemen) or Minores Nobiles, that is to fay; the leffer

The Frenchmen in the meane time, and

we tinglifbmen also, doe by more knowne

words, better discerne the greater Nobi-

lity from the leffer, but not without a cer-

raine injury and wrong done vnto the la-

tine tongue, from which wee derine our

Nobility. For who is he which know-

Latine word (Nobiles) indif-

And yet there are some of them which In some pla feeme to have Named Nobility, although ces of Italy there be lie they bee not in the fame ranke and order to be placed: fuch as are Knights and Ef-Knights quires. But forasmuch as the Titles of Knighthood and of Esquires, are not hereditary, they are accounted amongst the

Nobility.

lesser Nobility.

In many plaare Fiquires by birth.

Many noble & famous Gentlemen, haue ferently to comprehend all fuch as are aalso from Lawyers and Merchants discen- . boue the common and vulgar fort of me? ded. And although some of the vulgar Which word is in French or English ex-& common fort of the people, be among pounded (Noble.) By which word, the Nobilin figure them of better account and reputation, then some others of them, yet in respect teth no man, under the degree of a Baarange and tagging the some others of them, yet in respect teth no man, under the degree of a Baarange and tagging the some others.

> The rest under the degree of Barons, english, Gentlemen. Of which, such as are neyther Knights nor Esquires, we call them but onely Gentlemen, without any addition; and in French, Gentilzhommes simples, or plaine Gentlemen. Although it may be that fome of thefe me can thew moe Armes of their flocke, and derive their Pedigree further, then can some others of greater dignity, or euen the emperour himselfe.

Wherefore, in Politicall Nobility, being fimply understood, these plaine tearmed Gentlemen are not inferiour vnto the Princes themselues, but yet in honor and dignity much. For the titles of Kings. of Dukes, of Marquesses, of Earles, & Ba- Nobleman rons, are as it were the names of most honourable Offices, and by reason of such guilled. additions one becommeth more famous and nobler then another.

These things beeing thus somewhat more at large and in general spoken, concerning Nobility, seeme as it were to open the way vnto the particular degrees thereof with vs. But the division of the orders & degrees of men, which our english Common-weale and Empire well beareth, at other times, by others fette forth, is exceedingly well fet downe: who have divided the same into a King, into Nobility of the greater and of the lefter fort, Cittizens, Men liberally brought vp, and Labourers. But for somuch as I have purposed to speake onely of the degrees of Nobility, and that the intention and scope of this worke tendeth no faither, I have determined to entreat onely of the Kings, and of the cheefe named Nobility, whom it pleafeth vs to call, The Peeres of the Kingdome, The Common Fathers of the Common-weale, & in briefe, by one name, Great Estates or Noblemen.

Yet'in so great conversions of things, and inundations of forraigne Nations, A Transferon where-with this our Island from the first state Nobley inhabiting thereof, hath bene oftentimes troden vnder foote, and for a long time

ferious discourie, as to set downe, what were the beginning Titles of our Noblemen, with the orders and degrees of honours, feemeth a thing most difficult and Concerning which things (freely to

confesse the truth) seeing that I have not well fatisfied my felfe, I dare not with too much hafty confidence to affirme much especially seeing that heere, as well as elsewhere, the Victors have still especially endeaoured them-felnes, not fo much to oppresse the people by them fubdued, as they have done to innouate their customes, and to change their lawes. Seeing that it is so by Nature ordered, that with the fame fate where-with Monarchies and Kingdomes are ouer-whelmed, euen the Nations themselues, and Noble Families fall, and come to vtter ruine alfo.

For first, the Romanes by subduing the Brittaines, the natural Inhabitants of this Island, went about with their Legions to ouerthrow all things.

But the Romanes about fine hundred yeares more or leffe after, beeing againe transported into France, the Saxons, or rather English-Saxons, called in by the Brittaines voto their aide, raifed warre against their Hoasts, and throst them quite out of their auncient Seates, and first of all others, gaue voto the kingdome the name of England. And these people the Danes also for a space thrust out of the kingdome.

But at length, when as this kingdome began (as it were) againe to breathe vnder Edward the Confession, amost holy King, and last of the English-Susons race, he being torth-with dead without iffue, gaue occasion to the Normanes to passe ouer. VVho at length prenailing, (Harold who with flood them beging onercome) and the English-men beeing thrust out of their ancient inheritance, began foorth-with to affigue the Landes and groundes in enery place vnto their companions and fellow fouldiors, and alfo to bring in the Normane cuttomes and fashions.

Many things for all that, are yet extant in the most anneignt Records, cuen in the Heptarchy of the English-Saxon Kings, concerning those Noble-Men

most greenously afflicted: to write such a ; which were Rulers over the Countries of Chester, Leicester, and Lincolne, whom we reade to have beene indifferently alfo called Dukes, and Counties of the Mercians. The Danes had also their Heretocles, and the Princes of their Heretoches. And Edward, the King and Confessour vet reigning, euen in the time next voto the comming in of the Normans, in the charters and monuments of Churches, are found there to be Ethelings, Clytons, Patricij, Confuls, Earles, Palatines, Dukes, Senators, Stalbers, Thayni, Theotibani, Mimisters, and Princes . But yet with great inconflancy, of fuch their names and callings. For whom thou thalt reade to be called Counties, thou thair elfe-where finde euen at one and the felfe-fame time to be called Dukes. But the fule of Cisto, at first fignified the Kings eldest Sonne, but afterwards, it was a title common to all them that were defeended of the kings

> The Titles of Countie and Confultingnified the fame thing, differing, but in that Comes (or a County) was to called a Comutatu (or of a Shire or County:) and a Confull of Confutendo, or of giving of Councell. A Stallber, and The Gouernor of the Kings house, to have beene all one, it is out of diucrs writings manifelt. The Partricy and Thaini were Noblemen of the better fort; and I could almost affirme them to have beene equallynto our Barons at this day. Ministers and Princes, who in old Charters are fet as lowest witneffes, feeme to have beene names of one and the fame fignification, and alike fignifie Noble-men: but what degree of honour or Nobility they were of, is alroge. ther vnknowne. Neither feeme thefe honourable Titles to have beene foorthwith together with the victory, by William the Normane changed. For their men whom King Edward the Confessor in his Charter, concerning the Printledges by him granted to the Abbey of Waltham, in the yeare 1062: taketh to witnesse by the name of Counties Palatine (whom he but euen a little before had called Dukes) and by the names of Procurators, Chamberlaines, and Princes of his Court : the Normane himfelfe, in the fecond yeare after his victory, in his confirmatory Charter granted vnto the fame Abbey, doth by the same Stiles and Titles take to witheffe

Chap. 5.

witnesse also.

472

the kingdome vnto himfelfe in fafety, the Counties whom he by his Royall Charter had rewarded with Counties and Lands. began to be one from another, distinguifhed, by the addition of the Title, of fuch and such a Countie. As witnesse Alanus Countie of Richmond; witnesse Hugh Countie of Chester: witnes Roger Countic of Shrewsbury and Arundell.

VVherefore the English Saxons by little and little, eyther dead without iffue, or oppressed, or thrust foorth into exile, and foliuing in other places, all things were fo framed vnto the Norman maner, as that of our Nobilitie at this day, there is not any which can fo much as any little breathe of the Stock and Race of those most ancient Saxons.

VVorthics and Nobility beeing layde by William the Conquerour: and oftentimes afterwards by Successours, according to fore the comming in of the Normans, the dinerfe occasions and occurrents of times, by little and little continued and augmented, beganne at length in the reigne of King Henry the third, and Edward the first, to shine foorth, who hauing now vanquished the VVelch-men | now with vs , the same that the designed their Neighbours, and contending with the Scottes bordering vpon them; for Principalitie and Soueraignetie; entreating of all things concerning the Common-weale, with the three States of the Kingdome (which confifted of the Nobilitie, the Clergie, and the Comminaltie) they themselnes in their Royall Maiestie fitting in Parliaments, appoynted vnto enery man a preheminence, according his father, The Prince, or Infant. to the place of his dignitie: from whom, especially all the Nobilitie of our age, may feeme to derine the dinerfe and appoynted degrees of Dignities and Ho-

great Maieslie, as that besides GOD | fler, being dead without heyres male (o-Who from Equitie and Inflice feeking | vnto the fifters of the aforefaid Earle) the his chiefest praise and commendation king his Father had given the same coun-(when as any matter of greater weight or | tie. importance is to bee decreed and fet downe, concerning the welfare and honour of the Common-weale) doth ey-

her make new Lawes, before concei-But, after that he had now confirmed ued by the three estates of the Kingdom, or else abrogateth the old; and free from all homage for his Empire, is with the facred folemnities of his Countrey, with a royall Crowne, by his fubicets crowned, whom afterwards we with fo great renerence observe and honour, both in the time of peace, as also in the time of war, as that (forfomuch as hee himferfe is the fountaine of all Nobilitie) he may for his onely pleasure and good liking, blesse and grace whom hee will, with Offices, Dignitics, Honour, Nobilitie, and Ri-

Amongst the Nobilitie or Peeres of

the Kingdome, the Prince is the chiefe, who is alwayes but one and himfelfe alone, for hee is to be deemed the Kings eldest fonne, or heire apparant of the These foundations of the auncient Kingdome, and hath of long beene graced with the Title of the Prince of Wales. The Kings fonnes in auncient times, be- Wales. were wont to be called Ethilings, that is to fay, Clytons, (as more Noble than the reft, whom they in Latine called Inclyti, or Noble) as Edgar Clyto, Alured Clyto, and others. Our Princes of Wales are Cafars were among the ancient Romans, as who should say, heires of the Imperiall Maiestie; and whereupon at this day, the Germans appoint him which shall be emperor, King of the Romans, and the French flite him that is to succeed in the Kingdome, the Dolphin: but the Spaniards, together with vs , call him which is to have the kingdome after the death of the king

The first that was by this name called The first after the coming in of the Wormans, was Prince of Fdward, the eldeft fon of King Henry the Wales. third, who (his Father Henry being dead) and having there vanquillied Leolin, was VVherefore a King, who may with the first that vnited the Principalitie of vs bee also called a Monarch, having in Wales vnto the kingdome of England: vn-himselfe the supreame power, is of such to whom also, John the Scor earle of Chealone, hee hath none his Superione. ther lands and renenues being affigued

> At length King Edward the third gaue vnto Edward his eldeft fonne (a most famous and renowned warriour)

then Prince of Wales and Earle of Che- | Marquesses, who in ancient time were fler, the Countie of Cornewall also, which hee then had made a Dukedome: and by this meanes it is come to passe, that aftewrardes our Kings eldeft fonnes or heyres, were by the Kings royall Charter, with great folemnitie in full Parliament, created Princes of Wales, and Earles of Chester, (with the Countie of Flint, which belongeth vnto the Dignitic of the Sword of the Countie of Chester) but are called Dukes of Cornewall, even from the first houre of their Nativitie. They which are accounted of the No-

bility after the Princes of Wales, we call

Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, Vicounts, and Barons. Aboue which, if I shall also place the most famous Fellowshippe of Knights, of our (by farre) the most honorable order, taking name of the Garter, I not shal haply feem to have done amis: forasmuch as it maketh Knights, and somtime them of the Leffer Nobility, (excelling others in vertue and valour) almost equall, not onely voto Noble-men at home with vs , but even with Kings and Emperours abroad. But of them we are elic-where to speake. All these Noblemen (I say) in the be-

ginning to have beene Generalles and Leaders of Armics, or Gouernours of Countries, it is before declared. But afterward, as pleased the Emperours, to haue beene gitten them for terme of life: and at length strengthened with lands and fees, we fee them to have obtained a certayne hereditary perpetuity: wherefore, a Duke, who in ancient time was, as flomes: as wee will heereafter more at it were, the Conflable of the Kingdome, and whose chiefe service was, to leade and conduct the Kings Armie in time of warre, now graced with Fees, and once authorifed by the King, is become an hereditarie Title . Our Kings discended of the Worman blood to long as they themfelues were Dukes of Normandie, graced no man with this Title of Duke, till Edward the Third; who first of all (as is before fayd) exalted the County of Cornewall into a Dukedome : vnto the example whereof, many hereditarie Dukes were in like manner by our Kings created, howbeit that at this day we have nonc.

Next vnto Dukes in order follow

called Governours or Wardens of the borders or Marches: a Title voto vs , before the time of King Richard the Second, vtterly voknowne, who in the tenth yeare of his reigne, by his Royall Charter first created Robert Vere earle of Oxford (his Minion) Marques of Dublin the Metropoliticall Cittie of Ireland. By which example, many others afterwards obtayned the like Creations by Inheritance.

Concerning either the etymologie or An Fatle. the office of an Earle amongst the Auncients, I have elfe-where briefly touched fome things, and leaue the fame to bee! more at large by others entreated of. Earles with vs, haue alwayes beene both of greatest authority and dignity, and of much greater antiquitie then either Narquelles or Dukes.

Neyther is it any let at all, but that an Earle may be called Earle of any County or place, from whence he receiveth no profit, neyther therein holdeth any juritdiction. Indeed it is in antient Charters. declared them in old time to have beene Feed-men, and to have beene rewarded with the third penny of the profit of that Prouince wherof they were called Earles; but now the maner is with vs. that the Titles of Earledomes, are according vnto the Kings pleafure conferred and bettowed, without any poffettion of the places at all vnto whom, the King, in flead of the third Penny, is wont to appoynt a certaine fumme of money, to be yearely receiued out of the Exchequer, or his Cu-

large declare. Concerning the beginning of a Picount A Vicount. withvs, there is no cause why I should from farre derine it, forafmuch as we had none of them before the time of King Hemy the fixt. For he in the eighteenth yeare of his reigne, created John de Beilomonte, or Beaumont, a l'icount ; Whereupon that which in ancient time was the name of an office, we now at this day do

acknowledge it bee a certayne name and Title of Dignitie, as it were in the middeft, betweene an Farle and a Baron; as wee doe a Marque//e; betweene a Duke and an Earle. This Degree of Nobilitie hath innefliture from the Kings themfelues, with certain folemne ceremonies,

A King.

AMarquello.

A Baron.

as the other degrees of Nobility haue.

Now the last of all, aswell in order as specially in dignity, come foorth the Barons, whose conjoyned power, compared with the rest, hath in the great affaires of the Common-weale alwayes beene the greatest. Of whose beginning, yet truth it selfe doubtfully wauereth. Lucas de Penna in L.fi.C.de mancipijs, in his 16. bookfayeth. Quòd Reges cumplures haberent filios nec omnes Reges posse fieri (quòd regnum diuidi nequeat) prospicerent : ampla cuique donabant Castra cum inrifdictione of Imperio unde Barones dicerentur, id eft, fili alus excelliores. For that Kings when they had many fonnes, which they well faw could not all be made Kings (for that a kingdom cannot be divided) they gave vnto every one of them great Castles, with inrisdicion and command, whereof they should be called Barons (that is to fay) Their fonnes, higher in degree then others. Otherfome will have the word Baro, to have beene derined from the Greeke word Dapue, fignifying gravity. But if it may be lawfull for vs with conicctures to contend, I deeme it not amisse, heereunto to ioyne the curious conceite and judgment of a certaine most learned man, and of great reading, who marking the great power and authority of Barons, supposeth them in the beginning to have beene the Generals or Leaders of Nations & people, disperfedly roaming and stragling vp and downe without any certaine resting places, after the empire was rent in funder, who equally dividing the lands by force or leave by them gotten, as it were by tutelary law gouerned the people, holding of them in fealty, and subject to eucry one of their jurifdictions, cyther with a meere foueraignty apart, as Monarchs, or vnder fome other common Prince.

Whereof, Baldus happily hath called a man of greatest, middle, and meanest authority and command, Baronem, or a Baron. But they which were fo in power and authority in a manner like and equal, were before in Latine called Pares homines (or like men) but of the Frenchmen and Italians. (speaking more contractly) parhommes, and parhuomini, and thereof they might, faith he, bee called Barons and Barons: for with a more casie pronounciation, they in their words eafily admit b for p. And to give more credite to this mat.

ter, he joyneth thereunto the force of diners Languages. For they whom the Frenchmen from the beginning, called Ba. rons, we in the fame fence in ancient time, called Thaini, and at this day in english. Thaini.

Lozdes, whom the Germanes, as it were by a circumlocution, doe more firly call free heren, which with vs truely fignifieth free Lozdes; that is to fay, Lozds ALord having free jurisdictions and territories. But from whence this very word Laza

is forung (which is not fo much peculiar vnto Barons as to all Noblemen in generall) remaineth yet doubtfull.

Forasmuch as we after our manner and fashion, are wont to call all Dukes, Marqueffes, Earles, and Vicounts, (and fome of the greatest Officers and Magistrates of the kingdome alfo, although they bee not Barons) after the manner of Barons, Lozdes : fome fay it to be a primitive &

originall word of it felfe, fprung out of the Saxon word Hlaford, which is inter-the Saxon preted Lozo: Othersome also, suspect it rongue, in to have bene a derivative word, and to English Los haue bene first brought out of Burgundy: for it is manifest, the emperour Probus to haue fent hither into Brittaine the Burgundians, whom he had ouercome in the yeare 282. Who having heere feated and ferled themselues, did vnto the Romanes right good feruice, if at any time rebellio did arise or was stirred vp against them. And in that place they commonly call it Allodium, which fignifieth, Free and dif.

euen at this day called Allodim: whom we resting almost vpon the same reason, do in english call , A Lozd. Contrary vnto those Allody or Lords, are the Lendes or Leudi, as fubic & vito the Allod i, wher of perhaps the word Lavades is vied a- A Layrde.

mongst the scots, whom they with vs

charged from all homage and feruice.

which manner of possessiour or owner, is

call allo 10208. But as concerning words and etymologies, let euery ma gheffe as he lift: howfocuer the names be deemed of, it is for the most part of all men granted, that free=heren or Lozds (call them who-ther you lift) to have in all places lived as Free-borne men, and of great effectie, &I verily think them to have bene the fame, whom Cafar calleth Regulos in France: where even yet vnto this day, certaine of the most olde and ancient Barons, are re-

ported

of Nobility Datiue. Chap. 5.

> with the new Earles. But how full of aueafily appeare, if wee shall eyther respect cient time had hereditary Jurisdiction anwhereof wee at this day retaine a thew in our Lozos courts, commonly called a court Baron: or looke into the most the in the cheefest assemblies of the kingdome. For all Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, and Vicounts, have their feates with the Barons, in the highest assembly of the kingdome, in Parliament, onely by the name of their Baronies; Infomuch, that the greatest Duke sitting in Parliament (although he be placed according to the preheminence of his degree) yet holdeth he his place only by reason of his Barony: vnto our Archbishoppes and Bishoppes Abbots and other of like fort) to fitte there, but that they have the possession and dignity of fome Baronage or Barony annexed and joyned voto theyr Bishopprickes; yea, the eldest Sonne of a Duke wholocuer, although he be commonly called an Earle, as also the eldest fonne of an earle, although by the flattehe be called in Latine Dinasta or Dominue in French Signeur, and after our manner, a Lord, yet if wee shall consider the force of the Law, they are not to be num bred either amongst the earles or the Barons, but only to be accounted Efquires;

neyther can they challenge any voyce or

fuffrage in the Parliaments of the King-

dome lo long as their Fathers line. How-

beit, wee haue it often in experience (I

confesse) that as often as the King shal see

the eldeft fonne or heyre of a Duke, Mar-

quelle, or of an Earle, as well in wifedome

and councell, as of yeeres ripe and flay-

ed, and whom he shall deeme worthic to

beepresent at the greatest assemblies of

Parliament, him he promoteth vnto the

height of that honour : and by a VV titte

of Summons (as they terme it) his I ather

yet being aline according to the name &

file (if he be the fonne of a Duke) of his

ported and reputed by a certaine right of Barony, or if he beethe fonne of a Martheir Baronies, to contend for precedence queffe, or of an Earle, by the name wherof he was before called, and whereof hee thority and dignity the name of a Baron | was heire apparant, and into the inneitiand of a Baronage is, shall very plainly & ture whereof his father also before came.

This I fay, fometime is done, and may the antiquity thereof, as they which of an- be done, by the favour of the Prince onely, whose prerogative is so indeterminate nexed vnto their honour and dignity, and as that he may promote vnto honors, and admit into Parliaments whom hee pleafeth. As for example; it pleated our deceased Queen Elizabeth, in the year 1575. honourable and reverend prerogative of by her Writ of Summons, fo to call William Poulet, Baron S. John of Bafing, at this day Marquesse of Winchester, (viz:) the eldest fonne of tohn Poulet, Marquelle of Winchester, and to assigne vnto him a place amongest the Noblemen of the Vpperhouse, due vnto the ancient Barons of S. Iohn, vntill that their heires male fayling, the heire generall of the same tamily, had married with the flocke of the Poulets. This I fay, the Queene might doe by her neyther is it for any other reason granted royall prerogatine onely, the age and towardlinesse of the young Baron being re-(as it was in auncient time vnto fome | specied and looked into, which he could no way by right haue challenged, his Father yet lining.

Henrie Stanley, Farle of Darby, was by Writ of Summons called vnto Parliament. his father yet living, by the name of Baron Strange of Knokin, and placed in the fame feate wherein the Barons Strange of Knokin were wont of ancient time to fit. rie of custome, and in respect of his blood | The like we now of late have also seene to haue bene done to Gilbert Lord Talbot(at this day Earle of Shrensburie) foune and heire to George carle of Shrewsburie , but of late decealed: which places they could not by prefeript forme of law as vet challenge vnto them, for that theyr Fathers then aline, poffeiled both the dignities & renemewes of the aforefaid Baronies. So that I fay, they were onely by the fauor of the Prince promoted voto fuch honour and degree, whileft that their fathers yet

For wee rightly acknowledge no Barons, but them whom the Kings Royall Maichie hath first by his Charter created, or elfe the Parliaments preheminence & dignity defigned, who fo called and once admitted, and in Parliament placed, are alwaies after to bee held and accounted Barons, and to be reckoned among the Nobility of the Baronage of English, nel-

honos, are no wher open, fo things which are once gran ted vnto any man by the Prince, are not to bee a-

For that voto ther doeth it any where appeare, anie of which manner of forme and fashion, tothem to have bene afterwards rejected or degraded, except by chance their pofferwere by no meanes able to maintayne fo ing. great an honour. For as in ancient time the Romane Senatours, which had wasted or decayed their Senators substance were out of Senate remooued; even fo (I fay)

fuch are either of their own accord to abthan from comming into the vpper house of our Parliament, or elfe (I may fay perhaps)are not thereinto admitted, althogh that they for ever still retaine the stile and name of their Barony. And these be they whom we acknow-

ther, and feuerally apart, both in dignitic and preheminence diffinguished, is out of the forme of their Creations or admiffions to be better difcerned: which things we will declare by the Letters Patents, or of Summons, given vnto every one of them at the time of their Creation, (which Letters, we by two names call, viz: Royall Charters, and Parliament Writs) and by the ceremonies after our manner, joyned into their Inucstiture, and the custome of

ledge to be Named Noblemen : But how

they bee now amongst themselues toge-

Baron himfelfe. For why, the name of the Baronage of England is right famous, and more honorable then the rest: resembling the ancientifiew of a Reverend Romane Father, tegiftred to be one of 5 counfell of effate.& of the Senatory Dignity, and with vs giving an entrance vnto all the higher degrees of honor, as did that among the ancient Romanes.

In elder time, it was for a certain space given voto none, but voto men for their martial proweffe renowned, vnto whom the enfigne of a Barony was also given; as was the right to weare a Ring of Gold granted vnto the Romane Gentlemen. But afterward, not onely they whom martiall proweffe had commended, but even they also whom their Nobility of birth, theyr manners, fortune, or wisedome hadde at home ennobled, were wont by the Kings Writ of Summons, to be called forth vnto the high affembly of Parliament. And

at length alfo, King Henrie the 6. brought

in the fashion to create some by this ve-

ry name, by vertue of his Royall Charter:

gether with that other of calling by Writ of Summons voto the Parliament, we onesions were so far diminished, as that they | ly at this day haue in vie in forme follow

> Letters of Summons, or Parliament Writs (as they call them) for the promoting of any one, or of whom foeuer , vnto the Dignity of a Baron, in ful Assembly of Parliament Are in a prescript appointed forme in this fort made : Changing onely such things as are of order to be changed.

LIZABETH, by the Grace of God, Queene of England, France, and Ireland, Defendresse of the Fair. Defendresse of the Faith, &c. Into her faithfull and wel-be-

loued Henry Norris of Ricot Knight, Gree. ting - Forasmuch, as Wee by the advice and confent of our Councell for certaine high and orgent causes, concerning the estate de defence of our king dome of England, and of the English Church, have appointed a certain Parliament of ours, to be holden at our Citie their precedency; beginning first with the of VVestmonastery, the eight day of May, next comming, and there to have freech and conference with you, and with the Prelates, the States, and Nobility of our fayde Kingdome: Wee firmely eniogne dy command you. upon the Faith and Allegeance wherein you are unto Vs bound, that the waight of the aforefaide businesses, and the imminent dangers considered, all excuse what soener set apart, you be there personally present the day and place aforefaide, to conferre with Vs, dy with our Prelates and Webility aforefaide. concerning the aforesaid businesses, & there to shew your aduice . And of this, as you loue Vs, and honour the safegard & defence of Our Kingdome, and the Church aforefaid, and the good dispatch of the affairs afore aid, in no wife faile you.

> Witnesse Ourselse, the in the yeare of Our reigne the fourteenth.

> > An-

Another manner there is of creating of Barons by Charter: whereof this is the forme.



by Queene

made Baron

of Burghley.

LIZABETH by the Grace of God, of England, France, and Ireland, Queen,

Defendresse of the Faith, or.
Vinto all Archbishops, Marquesses, Earles, Vicounts, Bishops, Barons, Knights, Gouernours, Free-borne men, and allour Officers, Ministers, and Subietts. whomfoeuer, unto whom thefe prefent Letters (hall come, greeting . Wee well perceine and fee the hight and tipe of our Royall Dig-

nity, not onely to be beautified, but encreased alfo, whilft the titles of honors, are by vs conferred unto men for their vertues renowned and in our most weighty affaires wellenperienced. For We thinke our Royall Crowne to be fo much the more adorned and enriched, when as We call and promote grave and wife Men especially such as arc far the Nability of their stocke famous, and for their willadome renowned and mighty, into part of our Royall carefulnesse, unto the degrees of Honour and Dignity and the government of the Com. mon-weale. Wherefore, Wee considering the long feruice, which our well-beloued and faithfull Conncellor William Cicill,our principall Secretary, bath many wates done, as wel in the time of our Procenitors, Kings of this kingdome, as alfo his faithfull, and most pleafine loyalty towards Vs at all times, even from the first beginning of our Reigne, not onely in the notable and grave affaires of Councell, but befide alfo, bath not ceaffed daily to doe, in all other expeditions for our Kingdome ingenerall: and alfo the circumpection, courage, wifedome, desterity, integrity, prouidence,

Know you therefore, that We of our freqiall Grace, certaine knowledge, and meere metion, have fet, ginen, and in our Countie of Northampton promoted; made, and created. and by the toner of thefe prefents, do fet, ardaine, and create him the aforefayde William Civilly omto the flare, degree dignity, and ho. nor, of Baron of Rurghley : and conto the faid William bane impoled, guen, and granted, and by the cprefents, doe impofe, gine, and

cill, towards Vs,our Crowns and Digmiy.

Chap.6. The form of creating Barons by charter. 477 grant, the Name, Stile, and Title of the Ba-

ron of Burghley. To have, and to hold, the State, Degree, Dignity, Stile, Title, Name, and Honour, wnto him the aforefaid William, and the beyres male iffum of his body for euer. Willing, and by thefe prefents for Vs, Our heyres and successors granting, that the aforelaid William, and his Heyres male aforefaide, may successively beare and

have, and every one of them may have and beare the faid Name, State, Degree , Stile, Dignity, Title, and Honour : and may be called and stiled, and every one of them may bee called and Itsled by the name of the Baren of Burghley. And that he the fayde William and his heires male afore [aid] hall [uccepinely in all things be holde for Barons of Burgh-

lev : and (ball fo be wfed and reputed, & that enery one of them fall be wfed holden and reputed, as Barons. And that the faide William, and his heires male aforefaid, may have, hold, and possesse, and their beires male also aforefaid, and every one of them may as Barons have hold and posseffe a feate place, and voicemour Parliaments and Councels, amone ft other Barons, within our king dome of

England. And alfo the faide William and his beires male aforefaid, may have, enioy, and We and enery one of them ballby the name of the Baron of Burghley have enior , - wfe, all the Rights, Priviledges, Preheminences, and Immunities, of right, and law jully belonging water the flate of a Baron in all things; which other the Barons of our faid Kingdome of England, in former times, in better fort, more honourably and more quietly, wfed and

enloyed or at this present doe enloy and wife:

and this without any fine or fee, great or

Imall, to bee therefore to our viein any wife

oinen vaide, or madeintoour Hanapery of

our Chancery or elfewhere, for that exprese mention of the certainty of the premittes or of any of them erc. Thefe being witnesses. The most reverend father in Christ, Matthew care, and fidelity of him the faide William Cs-Archbifbop of Canterbury Primate and Metropolitano of all England our welbelouel faithful Councellor, Niebolas Bacon might, Keeper of our great Scale of England, and alfo our welbeloued Goofins and Connectors, William Marqueffe of Northampton, Henry Earle of Arundell, Thomas Farle of Suffes, Prefident of our Councellin the North parts of our kingdome, Henry Barle of Huntingdon, Ambrofe Farle of Warwicke, Master of the Ordenance, Francis Faile of Selford,

Robert Earle of Leycester , Master of our

orfe, Walter Vicount Hereford, Anthonie Vicount Mountaque: And also the renerend Fathers in Christ , Edwin by shop of London, Nicholas by bop of Worcester, Edmund by-(hop of Rochester, William by (hop of Chester: And alfo our wel-beloued and faithfull William Lord Lumley, James Lord Mountiny, Henrie Lord Cromwel, Thomas Lord Paget. Roger Lord North . And our welbeloued de faithfull Councellors, Francis Knols, knight, Treasurer of our housbold dec. lames Crofts Knight, Majler Controller of our houshold, &c. Ginen voder our hand, at Westmonastery, the 2, of February, in the 23. yeare of our reigne. By the Queene her felfe. according to the atorefaid date, by the

The ! ites and Ceremonies wfed in Creating Barons by Charter.

authority of the Parliament.

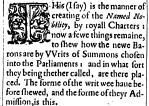
filliam Cicill Knight, attired in a robe and Mantle, and in this forme brought foorth. the xv.day of Februarie, the xiii. yeare of the reigne of

Queene Elizabeth, was in the royall Palace at Wellmonaflery, in a great affembly of Courtiers, made Baron of Burghley . First, the Heraids go before, by two and two together, whom Garter alone followeth, carrying in his handes the Royall Charter, Henry Cary, Baron of Hunfdon. carried the Barons Cloake : after whome followd William Cecill Knight, in the middeft, betwixt Edward Baron Clinson, on the right hand, and William Brooke Baron Cobham on the lefte: who entering into the Chamber of salutation (which wee commonly call the Presence Chamber) & making there obeyfance thrice, approached vitto her royall Maieflys where Garter first deliuered the Charter to the Earle of Suffex, then being Chamberlain of the Queenes house, who gave the same vnto the Queene, and the againe delivered the fame voto John Wolley Efquire, to be read: VVhere, at the word (Inuestinimus, or we haue inuefted) the Queen put you him the Barons Cloake, and the Charter being

read, pronounced him the fayde William Cicili, aron of Burghley, and his heyres male after him, as is before declared. was againe delinered vnto the Queene, who forthwith gaue it to the Baron to be kepte; who at length, after most great thankes given her, for the honour by him received, in his honourable attire, with a great noise and found of Trumpets, departed to dinner, euen in the fame maner that he came in.

After mid dinner, Garter with the reft of the Queenes Heralds, comming neere vnto the Table, and having first altogether cryed alowd, Largeffe; forthwith proclaimed the Queens stile in Latine, French and English, and so with-drawing themfelues a little farther off, and againer epeating Largeffe, he repeated the flyle of the new Baron in these words: Du tresnoble Seigneur Guliaulme Cicil Chenalier, Baron de Burghley: and fo having done their obeyfance, and altogether crying twice Largeffe, they departed.

The manner and forme of admitting of Barons by Rescript or Writ.



Henry Compton, Henry Cheyney, & Henry Norreis Knights, were by writs, called to be present at the Parlement at Westmonastery, vpon Thursday the 8 day of May, in the 14. yeare of the reigne of O. Eliza. beth, vpon which day, after that the Nobles were fet on their feats, thefe three attending without, were by turnes in this maner brought in, and admitted into the vpper house. Carter K. at Armes, came before bare-headed, haning on his royall coar, whom two of the laft made Barons, arryred in their Gloaks, robes, and Mantles followed, bringing in the knight that was to be in his new honour inucited, in the middle betwixt them. Him at length they bring vnto the Chancellor, vnto whome the Knight having made once or twice VVhich thing being done, the charter Obeyfance, deliuereth his Writ of SumThe habite of a Baron.

ment to be laid vp. mons to be read, wherein the declareth by what power & authority he is come the-In the like manner were the other two ther: the Chancellor after the writ read Knights afterward brought in and admitwith great courtesie welcomming him, ted, and in their due order in their feates dismisseth the new Baron (in his Barons placed. So they which entred into the Parliament but Knights onely, goe out attire) to take his place, which place (Garter going before them) they thewe vnto thence and are so accounted Barons, and him : but the writ is by the Chancellour enioy the like honor with the rest of the deliuered vnto the Clearke of the Parlia-Barons of the kingdome.

> The habit wherein a Baron of England, is inuested.



Chap. 12.

CHAP. VII.

The Kings Charter for the Creating of a vi-

The Copy of the L.Patents of K.Henrie the VI.creating Io. Beaumont, vicount of Beaumont. Enry, by the grace of God, King of England, and of France, Lord of Ireland, &c. To all Arch-Byshops, Byshops, Ab-

shops, Byshops, Ab-bots, Pryors, Dukes, Earles, Barons, Iustices, Sheriffes, Gouernors, Bayliffes, Ministers, and other his faithfull Subjects, vnto whome, &c. Greeting. Know you, that we, when as wee see it to beseeme our Maiestie, with principall honors to promote them, who with dutifull feruice dayly attend vs.efpecially in fuch things which proceed from our meere Prerogatiue & gracious bounty; and them chiefely, whom the remembrance of their fathers and former Ancestors hath ennobled, and the merites of their owne vertues have with manifest obedience and loyalty graced: that vertue fo rewarded, may in it felfe be firengthened, and withall allure many vnto vertuous actions.

Hecreof it is, that wee confidering the Noble different of our most dearely beloued cosine John Lord of Beaumont, & the good services which his Ancestors faithfully performed vnto our Progenitours, together with the most acceptable Offices which he even from his infancy, hath hitherto commendably done vnto vs, and yet dayly performeth; as he desireth hereafter to continue the same, and to doe vs so much the more better honour i Vvec of our especial Grace, in this our present Parliament, give vnto the aforestald John Lord of Beaumont our cosine; and the feiters male of his bodie, the name of the Kiconns of Beaumont; and do really invest

him the faide John, with the Armes of the Vicount of Beaumont, and affigne vnto him in our Parliaments, Councels, and other assemblies, a place about all the other Barons in our Kingdome. Vnto whom as it shall be more fit, and as it is showed in the very State of a Vicount aforefayde, wee of our meere motion and bountie. haue giuen and graunted for vs and our heyres, as much as in vs is, vnto the aforefaide tohn and his heyres, together with the Name, Armes, and place aforelaide, twentie Markes to be yearly received vnto him, and to his heires male yffning out of his owne body, out of the former issues and profits, of our countie of Lincolne, to bee paid by the hands of the Sheriffe of the fayde county for the time beeing, at the Tearmes of Easter and S. Michaell. by equall portions. To have & to hold to him and his heires aforefaid, the Name, armes, place, and twenty Marks as aforefaide for euer; for that expresse mention, &c. VVitnesse our selfe at Redding, the twelfth of February, in the eightcenth yeare of our reigne.

By the Writ of our Prinate Seale.



Here is so great a similitude and likenesse in the Rites and ceremonies in creating of a Vicount, viith those which are yied in the crea-

ting of a Baron, as that but chaunging such things as are of necessity to be changed, a man would thinke then almost the very same. But this difference there onely is; that a Baron is conducted betwixt two Barons, whereas a Vicount hath an Earle on his right hand, and a Baron on his less (in case there want Vicounts) to conduct him, and is by halfe a gard ypon his shoulder aboue a Baron, as by the Ricture following in the next Page appeareth.

The creating of a Vicount.

The rites and ceremonies of creating a Vicount.



The

Τt

CHAP. XIII.

The Royall Charter for the creating of an Earle.

The Copie of patents of Q. creating Wal ter Deuereux earle of Effex.

482

God, Queene of England, France, and Ireland, Defendress of the faith, &c. Vnto all and singular Archbishops,

Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, Vicounts, Bi-Thops, Barons, and all others, vnto whom &c. Greeting. Sceing that they whom the Divine providence hath put and placed in a Monarchy and Royall Seate, that they being as it were the Lieutenants of him that heavenly Monarch, vpon earth, may well, vprightly, religioufly, decently, and wholefomly rule, gouerne and maintaine, whatfoeuer is to their cuftody and gouernment by God himfelfe giuen and committed : and that the Monarchs in their Monarchies, represent the same thing that the eyes do in the body, whose office it is to direct all the members of the body: Monarchs and Princes therefore as cies of the Commonweale, ought diligently to intend, to looke about, and to fearch into all States and degrees of their Empire, without which wee must needes confesse, no civill administration, or politicall governement, to be possibly made or framed. And so necessary is the preferuation of orders and degrees of men in great Empires, as that after they once fee the Nobility of the States and Degrees, broken, rent, impaired, or shaken, or (as many things happen after the maner of men)by death afflicted or weak ned, they ought with all speed to amend, repaire, increase, and augment the same: so that others, whom both their owne vertues, and the glory of their Stocke and Ancestors hath ennobled, being called vnto Nobilitic and honour, the glorie of Degrees and States may for euer in the glorie and brightnesse thereof bee preferued and kept. Wherefore wee now feeing one honourable and glorious order of Nobilitie amongest the rest to growe few; and knowing right well our most famous and renowned Cosin Wal-

ter Vicount Hereford, Knight of our most Noble order of the Garter, Lord Ferrers of Chartley, worthily and valiantly to have for vs behaued himfelfe in that feditious tumult of wicked Traytors and Rebells. raised of most wicked and vngracious men in the North parts of our kingdom: In which tumult and power of armed Traytors, a most great and horrible danger was, not vnto our Kingdome onely. but euen vnto our person also intended: fo that partly by his conduct, not onclie the cruell furie and rage of the Traytours and Rebells, was there in that place repreffed, but many of the Rebels also were vnto our obedience reduced, and so the state of our Kingdome before fore troubled, became againe to be well quieted and pacified.

Wee therefore, for these causes and things by him fo worthily perfourmed, willing to promote him the fayde Walter vnto the State, Honour and Dignitic, of the Earle of Effex : and for that the aforefaide Walter is descended of the Noble Stocke and Family of the Bourchiers, late Earles of Effex, & is by the common Law of our Kingdome, next heire vnto Henry Bourchier late Earle of Effex . Know you, that wee of our especiall grace, certaine knowledge, & meere motion, have erected, created & promoted the faid Walter to be Earle of Effex; and also to the flate, degree, dignity and honour of the Earle of Effex : and by the Tenour of thefe prefents, do erect, create, and promote him to be Earle of Effex. And vnto the fame Walter haue imposed, given, and bestowed the name, stile, and title of the Earle of Effex; and by these presents, do impose, gine, and bestow the same. And him the faid Walter, in fuch the flate, title, honour, and dignity of the Earle of Effex, By the girting unto him of a Sword, and the putting on of a Cap of Honour, and a Coronet of Gold, do grace, inuest, and really ennoble by these presents. To have and to hold the flate, degree, dignitie, flile, title, name, and honour of the Farle of Effex aforefaid, with all and fingular the pracminences, honours, and other fuch things whatfocuer vnto the state of an Earle appertayning or belonging vnto the aforclayd Walter, and the heires male islaing from his bodie for ever. Willing, and by these presents, graunting for vs, our

heires & successors, that the said Walter, I hands of our Customers and Collectors, and his heires male aforefaid, shall the name, state, degree, dignity, stile, and honor aforefaid, successively have & beare: and shall by the name of the Earle of Effex aforefayd, be called, and stiled, and enery one of them shall be called & stiled. And that the faid Walter and his heires aforefayd, thall in all things fucceffinely be holden, vsed, and reputed, and enery one of them shall be holden, vsed, and repured, as Earles of Effex. And the faid Walter and his heires male, shall haue, hold, and poffeffe, and enery one of them shall haue, holde, and possesse a place in our Parliaments, and in the Parliaments of our Heires and Successours within our Kingdome of England, among the other earles, as earle of Effex; and in such fort, as the aforefay de Henrie Bourchier, late earle of effex had, held, and posses-

fed the fame. And the faid Walter also, and his heires aforefayd, shall enioy and vse, and enerie one of them by the name of the earle of effex, shall enion and vse all & every the rights, prinileges, præeminences, and immunities in all things orderly and of right unto the state of an Earle belonging; and which other carles in al things, orderly & of right, have before these times, in better wife more honourably and quietly vfed and enjoyed, or do at this prefent en-

ioy and vic.

And for because, that as the height of State and Honour encreafeth, fo greater charges and burdens necessarily encrease alfo : and that hee the fayd Walter and his heires aforefayd, and euery one of them may the better, more feemely, and honorably maintaine & support the aforesaide flate of the earle of Effex, and the burdens lying vppon him the faid Walter and his heires: We therfore of our more aboundant grace, have given and granted, and by these presents doe gine and graunt, for vs. our heires and fucceffors, vnto the aforefaid Walter, and his heires aforefaid, for ener, twenty pound of Fee, or yearely rent to be yearely received, of the iffues, profits, and renenues, of our great and litle Cuttome and Subfidie graunted vnto vs, or heereafter to be granted vnto vs, our heiges and fuccessours, arising, growing, or comming, within the Port of our honorable Citie of London, by the

or the Customer and Collectors of our Heyres and Succeffors there, for the time being, at the Tearmes of S. Miehael, and Easter, by euen portions, to be euery year payed. By reason that expresse mention of the true yearely valour, or of any other valour or certainty of the premises, or of any of the, or of any other gifts or grants by vs. or any of our Progenitors, before thefe times made vnto the aforefaid Walter earle of ellex, in these presents appeareth not: or any Statute, Ordinance, Act, Provision, Proclamation, or refleiction to the contrary therof, before had, made, fer forth, or prouided; or any other thing, cause, or matter whatsoeuer, in any thing

notwithstanding.

These being VVitnesses. Our faithfull Councellor, Nicholas Bacon knight, Keeper of our great Scale of england: and our most wel beloued Cosins, Edward carle of Oxford, Lord Chamberlaine of england, Reinold carle of Kent, William earle of Worcester, knight of the most Noble order of the Garter, Henry earle of Kutland, Thomas carle of Suffex, of our aforesaid order of the Garter knight, and Prefident of our Councell in the North parts of our kingdome of england: Henry carle of Huntingdon, of the aforefaid Order, &c. Ambroje carle of Warnicke, of the aforefaide Order, &c. Edward carle of Hertford, Robert earle of Leicester, of the Order aforefaid, &c. Thomas Vicount Bindon. And also the renerend Fathers in Christ, Edmund Bishop of Sarum, & Edmund Bithop of Rechester, our Almner, And also our wel-beloued and faithfull, William Lord Howard of Effingham, Lord Chamberlaine of our House, of the Order of the Garter aforesaide, &c. William Lord of Burghley, our principall Secretary of the Order aforefaid, &c. Henry Lord Strange, Arthur Lord Gray of Wilton, of the order aforefaid : William Lord Samier, Edward Lord Windfor, Thomas Lord Wharton, Robert Lord Rich, Thom is Lord Paget, John Lord Darcey of Chiche, whert Lord North, Edmund Lord Chandos, of the aforesaide Order of the Garter, & c. Thomas Lord of Buckingh, William Lord Delemare, Barons, Francis Knoller knight, Treaturer of our House, Lames Croftes, Knight, Controullor of our House. And our well-beeloued and faith-full Henry

The habit and attire wherein an Earle of

England is invested.

the Charter it selfe before set down more at large appeareth. These things being done, the fame Master of the Rolles of our Chancerie, and others. Given vuder our hand, at our Mannour of Greenwich, the fourth day of May, in the foureteenth year of our crigue. 1572.

CHAP. IX.

The Rites and Ceremonies of creating of an Earle.

Me same Walter Peuereux, Raron Ferrers of Chartley, & Vicount Hereford, having on an inner Gowne of purple filke, and couered with a Roab of Estate, & a veluet Mantell of the fame colour, and going in the middle betwixt the crle of Suffex on his right hand, and the carle of Huntingdon on his left, both of them in their Roabs was conducted from the Queens Chappell vnto the Queens presence. Next before him went the earle of Leicester, carrying a Cap of Eflate, and a Coronet of Gold: & the earle of Bedford on the left hand, bearing before him a Sword, with the Hilts vpward. Before these also went Garter, the chiefe K. of Armes with the Charter alone, and before him al the rest of the Heralds, by two & two together. When they were now come vnto the Chamber of Presence, after they had thrice made their most lowe obeifance, with fome little space betwirt, they drew neare vnto the Queene then fitting in her Chaire of Effate, where the aforefaid Walter kneeled downe, the rest standing by . There the Charter was first delinered vnto the Queene, who gaue it to William Cicill, Baron of Burghley, who delinered the fame vnto William Cordell Knight, Maister of the Rolles, to reade it aloude. Where at these words (in the Charter) Gladio cincluriauimus, the Queen put about his necke a Sword, hanging onerthwart towards his left hand : and at the words Cappa & Circuli aurei, she also put voon his head a Cap, with a little Coronet. And afterward reading that which was left, pronounced him the faid Walter before vicount Hereford, now created erle of I fex, for him and his heires male, as in

at large appeareth. These things being done, the same Master of the Rolles (in stead of the Secretary, for the helping of whom he had read the charter) delivered it to the Earle of Oxford, Great Chamberlaine of England : but he delivered it vnto the Queene, who also gaue the same vnto the Earle of Effex to be kept. But he after great thanks, with greatest humility giuen, withdrew himfelfe afide amongst the other Noblemen standing there by, expecting another, comming to be created earle. In like maner, & at the fae time alfo, Edward Baron of Clynton and Say, and Admirall of England was for himfelfe and his heyres male created earle of Lincolne.

These things altogether finished they departed in the fame order that they came in, with the Trumpets aloud founding, whom the Heralds received. Garter went before, whom the new Earles followed in the middle, betwixt the Earles of Suffex and Huntingdon. And being fo attired in the Ornaments of their creations, were conducted to dinner into a dining Chamber prepared for the fame purpose. Where, after they had sit a space, at the comming in of the second courfe, Garter with the rest of the Heralds entring into the dyning Chamber, crying aloud, Largesse; he alone proclaimed the Queens stile, first in Latine, after in Frech, and thirdly in english: and having twice repeated the word Largeffe, & withdrawing themselves a little farther from the Table, proclaimed the stile of these last created Earles, in french and english in these words.

Du treshault et Puisant Seigneur Gautier d'Euerux Counte de Essex, Vicouut Hereford,Baron Ferrers d'Chartley,et Cheualieur du tresnoble ordre de la Iarretiere.

Of the most high and mighty Lord, Walter of Euerux, earle of Esfex, Vicount Hereford, Baron Ferrers of Chartley, and Knight of the most honourable order of the Garter.

Du trefhault et puifant Sir Edou.rde Conte de Lincoln, Baron de Clynton et S.ay, grand Admirall d'Angleterre, et Cheualieur de trefnoble ordre de la Iarretiere.

Of the most high & puissant, Sir Edward, earle of Lincoln, Buron of Clynton & Say, great Admirall of England, & knight of the most noble order of the Garter.

Chap. 11.

CHAP. X.

The Kings Charter concerning the creating of a Marquesse.

The Letters Patents wherby King Ed-ward the 4. created Tho GreyMarques Dorfet.

Dward by the grace of God, King of England & of France, Lord of Ireland, re. Vnto all Archishops, Bishops, Abbots, Priors, Dukes, Earles, Barons,

lustices, Sheriffes, Gouernours, Ministers, Balines, and all his faithfull subjects; greeting. Know you, that for a much as our Royall Maiesty, after most great victories obtained ouer our enemies, is by the power of Almightie God promoted vnto the Regall Dignitie, and our Hereditary Royall leate: and lest that so great glorie of our Name, should even in the verie rifing thereof, for want of Children, faile, it came most happily to passe, that we were in lawfull marriage loyned vnto our best beloued wife, Elizabeth, Queene of England, of whom we have raised certaine more strong stayes of our future Royall Posterity, that is to say, Edward our cldcft Sonne, Prince of Wales, Duke of Cornewall, and Earle of Chester, Richard Duke of Shrewsbury and of Yorke; with a notable encrease of other our Children alfo: which thing greatly both perfwadeth and enforceth vs, even from our heart, to give the greatest thankes wee possibly can, vnto the most glorious and high GOD, Defender of our Royall right, and Reuenger of our wrongs; and with gracious fauours to profecute, and with greater honour and fauour to grace and beautifie her the same our wife, having of vs best deserved, and all her Progeny. But to the intent that our first begotten Sonne aforesayd, and the rest of our best beloued Children, compaffed about with the faithfull, trufty, and fure strength of their neare and deare friends, as it were with certaine walles. may the more strongly be defended; we will not passe ouer vnrewarded, Thomas Grey their Brother by the Mothers fide; whose noble Stocke, exceeding towardlineffe, worthy valour, but most of all, whose honourable vertues, we with the fincere affection of loue embrace : for

why it feemes a thing most certain, them being brought vp in naturall fociety, and bound together with that sweete remembrance, them to have dwelt in the fame dwelling place before they were borne, to beare a certaine common, and especial loue amongst themselues for ever : and that they who in so strait a degree of confanguinity & loue are joyned together, if any one of them should bee of so small dignity and reputation, as that for pouerty hee should not be able honourably to ferue his greater kinfman when he ought fo to do : we thinke it not unbeferming vs to prouide therefore, so as shall best feeme vs. And therefore we willing that the fayde Thomas should bee promoted with a greater patrimony, and more notable Titles of honour and dignity, that fo he may stand in better stead; and become a greater Ornament vnto vs , our Children, and the Common-weale: of our speciall grace, certaine knowledge,& meer motion, do ordaine, make, and create him the faid Thomas, to be Marqueffe Dorfet: and also by these presents vnto the faid Thomas, give and grant, the stile, ho-nor, state, title and dignity of Marquesse Dorfet : and by the Girding wate him of a Sword, and by the putting on of a Cap of Honour, do inuest him of the stile, title, name and honour of Marquelle of the place aforefaide; together with all the præeminences vnto the same honour and dignity appertaining and belonging. To haue and to hold the faid name, stile, honour, state, title, and dignity of Marquesse Dorfet, together with all the appurtenances, dignities, and other things whatfocuer, vnto the state of a Marquesse of our kingdome of England, as well in our Sessions, Parliaments and Councells, and of our heires, or otherwise howsoener it be vnto the same honour and dignity appertaining and belonging, vnto the afore-fayde Thomas and his heyres male issuing out of his body for euer. And also of our more plentifull grace we have given and graunted, and by these presents do gine and graunt vnto the aforefaid Marqueffe towardes the supportation of the sayde name, stile, honour, state, title and dignitie, 35. pounds of lawfull money of England. To be had, leuied & received yerely vnto the fayd Marquesse, and the same his heires aforefaid, (viz.) twenty pounds

CHAP. XI.

■ The Kings Charter for the creating of a Marchionesse.

ter State and Maiefly, confifteth in the

multitude of persons of both Sexes, as

well of men as women: and that the go-

uernment of our kingdome is fo much the

more, with the more excellent honour

strengthened, by how much the moeno-

ble States, and higher Dignity of both

Sexes are vnder it, or support it. VVec

therefore vnto the premisses directing

our fight, and willing to establish our Royall Scepter with the encrease of No-

bles, and especially such as are from Roy-

all race descended. For a Royall Seate

once placed, is with the presence of many

Princes to be attended. VVherefore vp-

pon this confideration, as well for the

Nobility of her Stocke, as for the excel-

lency of her vertues and conditions; and

other the shewes of her honesty & good-

nesse, worthily to be commended. VVce

by the confent of the Nobility of our

kingdome then prefent, make, create, and

ennoble; and by thefe prefents make,

create, and ennoble our Coofin Anne

Rochford, one of the Daughters of our

wel-beloued Coofin Thomas, Earle of

Wilishire, and of Ormend: Keeper of our

prinate Seale, to be Marchioneffe of Pem

broke : and also by The putting on of a Man-

tle, and the fetting of a Coronet of gold wpon

her head, as the manner is, do really inuef

vnto her the Name, Title, State, Stile,

Honour, Authority, and Dignity, and o-



ENRY by the grace of God, King of England, and Parents who GOO, Sing Of Engandants

of France, Defender of the by King Henric & Lord of Ireland:
to all and fingular Arms

to all and fingular Pulses

Part Pulses

Part State Control of Pulses

Par

Bishops, Bishops, Abbots, Priors, Dukes, Daughter to Earles, Barons, Iuftices, Sheriffes, Gouer- Thomas carle nors, Ministers, and all Baliues, & others and of Orhis faithfull Subjects: Greeting. Know mond, with you, that for a finuch as a Royall Seate, & the Titleof the height of regal dignity, with the grea- of Pembroke,

thereof to bee had and received vnto the faid Marqueffe and the fame his heyres, of the Fee-farme of the Towne of Dorfet, by the hands of the Bourgesses of the saide Towne for the time being, at the tearmes of S. Michaell, and of Easter, by equal portions. And the other fifteene pounds the remainder thereof, to bee had and receiued yearely unto the saide Marquesse, and his heyres aforefaide, of all the Customes and Subsidies, to vs already granted, or to be granted, and of eyther of the, and of euery part, or of euery parcell of the same, comming and growing in that Port of our Towne of Southampton, by the hands of our Customers or Collectors, or of our heyres in the Port for the time being, at the aforesaide Tearmes by equal portions. For because that expresse mention of the true yearely valour of the premisses, or any of them, or of any other gifts or grants vnto the faide Thomas, before these times by vs made, is not in these presents made: or any statute, acte, or ordinace to the contrary, made, fet forth, or ordayned or any other thing, cause, or matter what focuer not with standing : and thefe things without any fee thereuppon, to our vie in any wife to be payed. These being Witneffes: Our most famous first begotten Sonne, Edward Prince of Wales, Duke of Cornwall, and Earle of Chester, and of Flint. The most renerend Fathers, Thomas, Cardinall and Archbifhop of Canterbury, & George, Archbifhop of Yorke. Our most renowned Brethren, George Duke of Clarence, and Richard Duke of Glocester: and the right renerend Fathers, Thomas Bishop of Lincolne, our Chancellor of England: and Thomas Bishoppe of Hereford. Our wel-beloued Coofins, William Arundell, Henry Effex, Treasurers of England, and Anthony Rivers Earles. And the welbeloued and faithfull Clarke, our Efquire John Ruffell, Doctor of Law,& keeper of our prinate Scale : And also our welbeloued and faithfull Thomas Stanley, & William Hastings, Knights: with others. Giuen vnder our hand at Westmonastery, the XVIII.day of Aprill, in the XV. yeare of our Reigne.

> By Letters of our private Seale, and of the Date of these presents before the Par-

ther the rest of the Honour, vnto the same To have and to hold the Name, Stile,

belonging and annexed.

Title, State, Honor, Authority, and Dignity of the Marchionesse of Penbroke vnto the aforesaide Anne, and the Heyres male yssuing of her body for ever. And to the intent, that the fayd Anne as befeemeth the name of the Marchionesse of Penbroke, & the Wobility of her state may the more decently and honorably, maintaine and support the burthens to be laid vpon her, we have given and granted, & by this present Charter doc give, grant, and confirme vnto the faid Anne, and her heires aforefaid, thirty and fiue poundes vearely, to be received to her & her heirs aforefaid, of the firme rents, issues, reuentions, obuentions, profites, and emoluments, of our County of Penbroke aforefaid, arifing and growing, as well by the hands of the Sheriffe of that Countie for the time being, as by the hands of the Balyffes, Farmers, or other occupiers of our Countie aforesaide whosoener, at the Termes of Saint Michael the Archangell, and of Easter, by equall portions to bee payed. For that expresse mention of the true yearely valew, or of other giftes or grants by vs, vnto the aforesaide Anne in former times made, in these presents appeareth not, or any statute, act, ordinance or provision to the contrary therofmade, fet forth, or prouided, or any other thing or matter whatfoeuer, in any thing notwithstanding. These being Witnesses. The most reuerend Father in Christ, Ed. Archbithop of Torke, and the Reverend Pather in Christ, Step. Bishop of Winchester our Secretary, and John Bishoppe of London, And also our wel-beloued cofins Thomas Duke of Norfolke, our Treasurer of England, and Charles Duke of Suffolke, Earle Marshall: Thomas Earle of Wilshire, Keeper of our private Seale : John Earle of Oxford, our Chamberlaine of England: and George Earle of Shrewsbury, Steward of our house: Thomas Audley Knight, keeper of our great Seale : William Sandes of Vine, Knight; Chamberlaine of our House: and Walter Deuereux of Ferrers Knight, Barons: William Fitz Williams, Treasurer of our house: and William Paulet, controller of our house, Knights: and others. Giuen vnder our hand, at our Castle of Wind for the first day of September, and in the 24.yeare of our reigne.

The Rites and Ceremonies vied in Creating of a Marchione[]e.

This Anne the daughter of Tho: Earle of Wilshire, and of Ormund, uppon a Sunday, viz.the first day of Septem. 1532 in the 24. yeare of King Henry the eight,

was at Windfore in this manner inuefted. The King himfelfe attended vpon with the Dukes of Norfolke and Suffolke, the Marquesses, Earles, Barons, and other the Great estates of the Kingdome, together with the French Ambaffador, and manie of the Priuy Counfell, went into the Chamber of Salutation, which they commonly call The Presence) and there fate him downe in his chaire of Estate. Vnto the which place the aforefaide Anne was conducted with a great traine of Noble Courtiers, both men and women. The Heralds went formost, Garter K. of Heralds, first carrying the Kings Charter. After whom, the Noble Lady Mary, daughter to Thomas Duke of Norfolke, vpon hir left arme carried a robe of estate of Crimson Veluct furred with Ermines, and in her right hand a Coronet of Gold. Her, the aforesaide Anne followed, with her hayre loofe, and hanging down vpon hir shoulders, attired in her inner garment (which they call a Surcet) of Crimfon Veluet, lined with ermins also with straite sleeues, going in the middest betwixt Elizabeth, Counteffe of Rutland on her right hand; and Dorothy, Countesse of Suffex on her left; whom many Noble Ladies & Gentlewomen followd. But the being broght towards the Kinges Royall Scate, thrice made her obeyfance, and comming vnto the King fell downe up on her knees. The King gaue the Charter before delivered vnto him, vnto the Bishop of Winchester his Secretary to be read, which as he was reading aloud at these words Mantella inductionem (in the Charter) the King put vpon Anne the Marchionesse the Robe of estate, deliuered him by the Lady Marie; and at the wordes Circuli aurei, put also vppon her head a Coronet of Gold. At length, the Charter being read, the King gaue vnto her two Charters, viz: the one, of the creating of her to bee a Marchioneffe, and to the heyres male yffuing out of her body for euer. And another, for the receiving of a thousand poundes reuenew yearly, for the maintaining of that her dignity. All which thinges at length performed, the gaue the King most humble thankes, and so having on her Robe of

The Rites of a Marquesse. Chap.12.

> the Trumpets aloud founding, departed. "HERites and Ceremonies for creating of a Marquelle, altogether a-

Estate, and a Coronet you her head, with | changing onely such things as me of neceffity to be changed, but that Marquelles haue a Marquelle and an Farle to conduct them at their creating: the rest of the difference is out of the portraiture beneathe gree with those vsed in creating of a Euke | fet, as followeth.

> The Rites and Ceremonies in creating of a MARQUES.



CHAP. XIII.

The Kings Charter for the creating of a





Dukes, Marqueffes, Earles, Barons, Juftices, Sheriffes, Gouernors, Ministers, and to all Baliffes, and other his faithfull Subicas,&c.Greeting. Seeing that there is nothing which more becometh a Prince, then to thew himfelfe bountifull and liberall, especially vnto such as have of him well deferued, & good feruices vnto him performed: wee therefore revoluing in our minde, with how many, how great & worthy feruices our most deare and wellbeloued Vnkle Edward, earle of Hertford hath honoured vs: wee haue therefore thought him worthy, whom wee should promote vnto an higher degree of honour and dignity : neyther can we but for such his great deserts towards vs, but in fome part with due deferts againe requite him. Know you therefore, that wee of our speciall grace, certaine knowledge, & meere motion, and by the aduice of our Councell, do create, ennoble, make and ordaine, him the aforesaid earle, to bee Duke of Somerfet. And by these presents. gine and grant vnto him the faide earle. the name title flate, flile, honour, authority, & dignity, of the D. of Somerfet : and him of that name, with the title, state, honor, authority, & dignity, & other honors to the fame belonging & annexed; by The girting unto him of a Sword, and by the putting on of a Cap, and a Coronet of Gold wpon his head : and the delivering wato him of a golden Verge, do really inuest. To have and to hold the name, stile, state, honour, authority, and dignity, of the Duke of Somerfet to our aforesaid Vnkle, and to the heyres male of his owne body, and of the body of Anne, now his wife, already begotten, and of the body of the same Anne heereafter to be begotten. And if it shall happen the faide Duke to dye without heyre male begotten, or heereafter to bee

begotten of his body, and the body of the faide Anne now his wife : VVce will and grant, that if by the death of him the faid Duke, the heyres male of his body, and of Anne now his wife shall decease or dye, then Edward Seymour Esquire, the saide Dukes Sonne of the body of Katharine the first wife, of him the said Duke deceased, shall be Duke of somerfet, and shall beare, haue, hold, and enjoy vnto him the aforesaid Edward Seymour, and the heires male from the body of him, the fame Edmard lawfully descended, the name, state, title, honour, authority, and dignity of the Duke of Somerfet, with all the honours vnto the faid Dukedome appertaining & annexed. And also by the Girting vonto him of a fword, and the putting on of a Cap. and a Coronet of gold wpon his head, and by the delivering unto him of a golden verge, shall be thereof really inuested. And if it shall happen the aforesaid Edward to dve without heyre male of his body lawfully begotten, then we will, and grant, that the heyre of the now Duke of his body lawfully begotten, by any other his wife which he shall heercafter marry, shall bee Duke of Somerfet, and shall beare, have, and enjoy the fame, vnto him & his heires male, lawfully begotten. And also the ftate, title, honour, dignity, and authority of the Duke of Somerfet, with all the honours vnto the faid Duke appertaining & annexed. And also by the Girting vnto him of a Sword, and by the putting of a Cap and Coronet upon his head, and the delinering of agolden verge unto him, shall therein beroyally inuested. And that the same Duke and his heyres aforefaide, may according to the decency of the faid name of the Duke of Somer fet, and the Nobility of his and their estate, more honourably beare themselues. And that the same Edward and his heyres aforefaid, if they shal chance to be Dukes of Somer (et, may the more honourably maintaine, and beare the state and honour of the aforesaide name of the Duke of Somerfet; and for want of fuch iffue, that then the heires male of the body of the faide Duke hereafter to bee begotten of the body of any wife, which he shal hereafter marry, may in like maner more honorably beare the state and honour of the aforefayd name of the Duke of Somer [et : we have given and graunted, and by this our present

The Dukes Charter. Chap.13.

Charter, giue, graunt, and confirme, for | parcell thereof to be behind & vnpaid at vs our heires and successours, vnto the aforesaid duke of Somerset, a certaine annuall rent of forty pounds, of good and lawfull money of England, iffling out of our Mannor of Crikerum, otherwise called Crokhorne, Stokegersey, Wikefitzpane, or of any of them, in our County of somer(et, being late parcel of the possessions of Henrie late Marquelle of Exceter, which came vnto the hands of the late most noble and inuincible Prince, King Henry the eight, our most renowned father, by reafon of the attaindor of the faid Marques, of high treason attainted, and which now are in our hands. To have, hold, and receine the aforelayd yearely rent of fortie pound, vnto the aforesaid duke of Somerfet, and his heires aforesaid, at the Feasts of the bleffed virgin Mary, and Saint Michaell the Archangel, by equall portions, to bee yearely payed by the hands of the Receivers, Farmers, Tenants, and other whomfoeuer, Occupiers of our Manors, Lands, and Tenements aforefayd, or of any of them, being parcell of them. And after that, for want of fuch iffue, vnto the aforesaide Edward, and the heires male of his body lawfully begotten. And for defect of fuch iffue, to remaine from thenceforth, vnto the heires male of the faid Duke of his owne body begotten, by any other his wife, which he shall heereafter marry. And that these our Letters Patents, or the Inrolement of them, vpon the onely shewing of the same, or of the enrolement of them, shall be yearely, and from time to time, as well vnto our Chancellour, and our Councell of our Court of Augmentation and Revencion of our Crowne, for the time being, as vnto all others our Ministers, Receivers, and other our Officers, their heires and fucceffours whatfocuer for the time being, a sufficient warrant and discharge in this part, for the deliuery and payment of the faid verely rent offorty pounds, vnto the aforesaid Duke and his heires aforesaid. And for defect of fuch iffue, vnto the faid Edward Seymour, and the heires male of his body lawfully begotten. And for want of such iffice, vnto the heires of the fayde Duke, of his body lawfully begotten, by any other his wife, which he shall hereafter marry. And if it shall happen the faid yerely rent of forty pound, or any part or

any of the aforefaide Feafts, in which it ought to be paied as is aforefaid: then we grant for vs, our heires and fucceflours, vnto the fayde Duke, and his heires aforefaid, and enery one of them: and for lacke of fuch iffue, vn to the faide Edward Seymour, and his heires aforefaid: and for want of fuch iffue, vnto the aforesaid heires of the said Duke, whom he shall lawfully beget of the body of any other his wife whom hee shall heereaftermarry, and to enery one of them, into the aforefaide Mannors, and cuery one of them, and into all and cuerie the aforesaide Lands and Tenements, or any parcell of the faide Mannors, Lands, or Tenements, to enter, and there to distraine, & the distresses there so by them, or any of them taken, to drive, leade, carry away, impound, and with them, and enery one of them to detaine, vntill the aforefaid yearely rent of forty pound, together with the arrerages (if any there shall be thereof) shall vnto the aforesaid duke and his heires aforefaid, or vnto the faid Edward or his heires aforefaide : or the heires of the faide Duke or some one of them, be fully and wholly contented and payed, by vs, our heires and fucceffours, or the affignes of vs, our heires, or fuccessours. And for that expresse mention, &c. These being VVitnesses. The most reuerend Father in Christ, Thomas Archbishop of Canterbury, Primate and Metropolitane of all England; and our well-beloued and faithfull Councellour, William Poules Knight, Lord Saint John, Great Maister of our house, &c. tohn Ruffell Knight, Lord Ruffell Keeper of our prinie Scale: and also our most well-beloued Cozins, Henry earle of Arundell, and Francis earle of Shrewsburie, &c. Given under our hand at the Tower of London, the fixteenth day of February.

The first of Edward the fixt by the King himfelfe.

¶ The

CHAP. XIIII.

The manner of Creating of a Duke.



N the yeare one thousand fine hūdred forty seuen, the xvii. of the Moneth of February, and in the first yeare of the Reign of Edward

the fixt of that name, The Nobility being called regether and affembled into the Tower of London. Edward Seymour, the aforefaid Earle of Hertford the kings Vnkle, & Protector of the kingdom, with others promoted unto the diners degrees of Nobility, was in this wife created D. of Somerset. He himselfe being apparelled in an inner Robe of honour, the Heralds went before him in their Heralds coates, the chiefe of whom, Garter following alone, carried the Charter. The Earles of Shrewsbury and of Oxford, going together, the Earle of Shrewsbury on the right hand, carried a Verge of gold, & the earle of oxford on the left, carried the Dukes Cap, with a Coronet of gold. Next voto whom followed the Earle of Arundell, carrying a Sword with the hilts vpward. At length the carle of Hertford himfelfe was conducted in the midst, betwixt the

Duke of Suffolke, and the Marquesse of Dorchester: When they in this manner, attired in their Robes of honour, were come into the Chamber of Salutation (which they commonly call The :refence Chamber) they after thrice obeyfance made, went vnto the king, fitting in his chayre of Estate: where foorth-with the carle kneeled downe, all the rest standing about him, Garter king of Heralds, deliuered the Charter vnto Baron Paget, the Kings Secretary, who gaue the same vnto the King, and he delinered it voto him againe to be read aloud. And when hee came vnto the words inuestinimus, (or we we have inuested) the king put a Dukes Mantle vpon the Earle; and at the words (Cladio cineturanimus) girt him with a Sword: at the words (cappa & circulian. rei impositionem) the King himselfe in like manner with his owne hand put vppon his head a Cap with a Coronet of gold vponit: and at length, at those wordes (virga aurea traditionem) the King himfelfe gaue into his hand, A verge of gold: which done, the Secretary read the reft, even vnto the end of the Charter: wherin he pronounced him the faide earle of Hertford, to bee Duke of Somerfet: at which time, the King forthwith gaue the Charter ynto the Duke to bee kept: who after thanks given vnto the Kings Maieflie for fo great an honour and dignity receiued, in this fort attired, flood by the Chaire of Estate, whilst the Noble-men returned to bring in others, who were alfo to be created.

Th

The habite and attire of a Duke.



The Copy of

the letters patents of king Henry th: 6.

creating Ed-

ward his first

begotten Sor Prince of

Wales, and Earle of Che

OF

The Kings Charter for the creating of the Prince of Wales.

LIENRY by the grace of God, King of England, and of France, Lord of Ireland, &c. To all Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, Priors, Dukes, Earles, Barons, Iuflices, Vicounts, Gouernors, Ministers, and to all our Balines, and faithfull Subiccts, Greeting. Out of the excellency of Royall preheminence, like as beams from the Sun, so do inferior honours proceed: neyther doth the integrity of the royall lutter and brightneffe, by the naturall difposition of the light, affoording light fro light, feele any loffe or detriment by fuch borrowed light : yea, the Royall Scepter is also much the more extolled, and the Regall Throne exalted, by how much the more Nobles, Preheminences, and Honours are voder the power and command thereof.

And this worthy confideration allureth and induceth vs, which defire the encrease of the Name and Honour of our first begotten and best beloued Sonne, Edward, in whom we behold and fee our selucs to bee honoured, and our royall housealfo, and our people subject vnto vs; hoping by the grace of God (by coniccture taken of his gratious future proceeding to be the more honorably strengthened, that wee may with honour preuent, and with abundant grace profecute him, who in reputation of vs, is deemed the same person with vs. VVherefore, by the Councell and confent of the Prelats, Dukes, Earles, Vicounts, and Barons of our kingdome, being in our present Parliament, we have made and created, and by these presents make and create him the Gid Edward, Prince of Wales, and Earle of Chester. And vnto the same Edward we giue and grant, and by this Charter haue them) ornaments made of purple filke & confirmed, the Name, Stile, Title, State, gold. Dignity, and the honour of the faid Principality and County. And him of the faid Principality and County, that hee may therein in gouerning rule, and in ruling, direct and defend, we by a Garland wpon

bis head, by a ring of gold vpon his finger, and a verge of gold, have according vnto the manner inuested him . To have and to hold the same vnto him and his heires, the Kings of England for euer. Wherefore, we will, and straightly command, for vs and our heires, that Edward our Sonne aforesaid, shall have the Name, Stile, Title, State, Dignity, and Honour of the Principalitie of Wales, and of the County of Chester aforesaide, vnto him and his heyres the Kings of England aforefaide. for euer. These being witnesses. The reuerend Fathers, John, Cardinall and Arch-Bishop of Canterbury, Primate of all England, our Chancellor, and William Arch-bi-Thop of Torke, Primat of England ; Thomas Bithop of London, and William Bithop of Norwich: our most wel-beloued Cosins, Richard Duke of Yorke, and Humfrey Duke of Buckingham, our wel-beloued Cofins, Richard Earle of Warwicke, Richard Earle of Sarisbury, John Earle of Wilfhire, and our beloued and faithfull Raffe Cromwell, Chamberlain of our house, William Faulconbridge, and John Stourton Knights. Dated at our Pallace of VVestminster, the XV.day of March, and in the yeare of our Reigne, XXXII.

By the King himselfe, and his Councell.

CHAP. XVI.

Things required unto the Creation of the Prince of Wales.

LIrst, an honorable habite (viz.) a Robe of Purple Veluer having in it, about XVIII.elnes, more or leffe, garnished about with a fringe of gold, and lined with Ermins.

A Surcoat or inner Gowne, having in it about XIIII. elnes of Veluet, of like Coulor, Fringe, and Furre.

Laces, Buttons, and Taffels (as they cal

A girdle of filke alfo, to gird his inner Gowne.

A fword with a feabberd made of purple filke and gold, garnished with the like girdle he is girt withall, thereby thewing

The habite of a Prince of Wales. Chap.16.

himselfe to be Duke of Cornwall by birth, | declareth his mariage made with Equity and not by Creation.

A cap of the same veluet that his Robe is of furred with Ermines, with Laces and a Button, and Taffels on the crowne therof made of Venice gold.

A garland or a little Coronet of gold.

to be put on his head, together with his Cap. A long golden Verge or Rod, betoke-

ARing of gold also to bee put on the third finger of his left hand, whereby he

and Instice.

All these things were almost with Royalifumptuouinesse prepared for Fdward, Sonne to King Henry the eight, to haue beene created Prince of Wales, but preuented by his Fathers death, hee was crowned King, fixt of that Name: yet the forme, with the Rites and Ceremonies belonging to the inuefting of the Prince into the Principality of Wales, you may perceive, by that which is before declared.



CHAP. XVII.

Of the (rowning of the King.

Concerning Charters & Writs of Summons unto Parliament, whereby the Kinges of England, onely upon their good liking & meere motion (us they vee to fay) are wont to conferre Named Nobility, wee have already spoken: and now at length we are come unto the rites and Ceremonies of the Coronation of the Kinges themselues, as they are after our manner with vs Crowned. Concerning which, a few things are now to be faide.



Othing affuredly is more excellent then the Royall dignity, if we shall respect the Maiefly of the name of a King, either among the nations or in holie Scrip

tures. The Romanes in ancient time, appointed three Degrees of their greatest Dignities, of all which, the Regall power was the cheefest and highest. Next after the dignity of a King was the Dictatorship; in the third place, followed the power which the Generall of their Armies had, whom they called imperator. Hee that great Iulius Cafar; when after the victory of Phar falia, had beene oftentimes by his army faluted Imperator, yet for all that, vfed he not the name of Imperator, but Dictator. For why, the name of a King, after the time of Tarquinius, was for a great while growne into hatred, and become odious in the Citie. Howbeit, at fuch time as he was about to make an expedition against the Parthians, hee affected to bee called a King : affirming it to be contained in the Books of the Sybils, the Parthians not possible to bee conquered and forme following. fubdued but by a King.

The Dictators most high power, was in all things like vnto the power of a King: and fuch as a man may fay to have bin equall vnto the power of a King. This was (as Varro witneffeth) chaunged into a great Magistrate, whom they called Ma. gistrum Civium (or Muster of the Citizens) which manner of Gouernour of a Citie, the Germaines vied to call, Burnue

The name of Imperator or Emperors, was at first but an Office in an Army, and a bare Title; which yet at length became a dignity of greater State and Maiesties then any of the rest; and yet at length, fo fell, as that the Maiesty and magnificence of the Christian world, is maintained only by the power of Kings. Vnto foure of whom onely, it is written to have beene proper in ancient time to bee annointed, viz. vnto the Kings of Ierusalem, of Eneland, of France, and of Sicily.

The French writers report, the French Kings within the bounds of theyr owne kingdom, to be ftyled Imperatores or Emperors. Chaffaneus allo affirmeth, the king of England, to bee in England, a Monarke And if the name of Christianisimi, or the most Christianking, bee glorious vnto the French kings, and the name of Catholici or Catholique vnto the kings of Spaine, the kinges of England have also a style whereof to reioyee, as (viz:) not in Title, onely to be styled Fidei Christiana & Catholica Defensores, or Defenders of the Chri-Stian and Catholique Faith, but euen with vndaunted Maiesty, to be of both acknoledged the great Champions and Protecters of the same. But concerning attributes or additions of Stiles and Titles, I lift not for to ftriue. But, feeing that the kings of England for their royall dignity, gine God the thankes onely; and that it is onely by the grace of God (as they vie to fay) by hereditary fuccession, by them obtained : they hold it vnto them confirmed by the furfrages of the people, with the requisite forme and ceremonics of Coronation, Confectation, and Inunction. Which being of ancient time (the kingdome fore shaken with Danish wars) ofte kept at King ston vppon Thames, is now vfually holden and made at Westmonastery. a city ioyning vnto the city of London, in

The

Chap. 17. The ancient form of Coronation, &c.

The ancient forme of the Co-ronation of the Kings and Queenes of England.

INprimis. The King to be newly crowned, the day before his Coronation, mall be brought forth in royall Robes. and shall ride from the Tower of London, to his Pallace of Westminster with his head vncouered, being accompanied on horsebacke with his temporall Lords, his Nobles, the Commons of London, and other his feruants.

The seate of Estate.

Item. Let there be prouided against the day of Coronation, in the Kings great Hall at Westminster, a Chaire of Estate, fittingly prouided with hangings of filke and embrodery, with Cushions and Carpets of Arras accordingly.

The Scaffold.

Item. Let it be prouided, that a Stage or Scaffold bee erected in the Church at Westminster, with steps on eyther side: let it be orderly futed with Cloathes and Carpets on all parts, and likewise on the floore.

The Royall Throne.

Item. Let it bee prouided, that upon the faid Scaffold, there bee erected a Throne or Chaire, wherein the King is to fit: Let it bee accordingly futed with rich furniture, and Cushions of cloth of gold.

The Abbot of Westminster.

Item.It is to be observed, that the Abbot of VVestminster for the time beeing, by the space of two or three dayes before the Coronation of the King or Queene, shall instruct them what duties they are to performe in the celebration of their Coronation; as also to prepare their consciences, before the receiving of the Sacred on ction. And if the Abbot be dead, sicke, or absent in some remote Country, or lawfully hindred; the shall one of the Monks of the faide Monastery (nominated by the Couent of the fame Church) supply the office of the faid Abbot in this cafe.

Of the Kirtle and Surcoate.

Item. Vpon the day of the Coronation the King that is to be crowned, shall be placed in the foresaid Chaire of estate, in the forefaid Hall (but beeing first bathed:) and after his bathing, a Kirtle and Surcoat of Veluet shall be prepared for him, open on the breast, betweene the shoulders and blades of his armes: Let his open Kirtle and Surcoat bee fastened together with loops of filuer: and vpon the Kirtle let him be cloathed with other royall Robes, and let him bee shod with

Procession.

Item. Let a folemne Procession be prouided by the Abbot and Couent of VVeft : from the fore-faide Church to the Kings feate, in the fore-faid Hall. In which procession, there shall be arch-bishops, Bishops, and other Prelates. Then the King thall descend, and follow the Procession into the Church at VVestminster, and he shall goe vpon blew cloth spread vpon the ground, from the foresaid Chaire to the Stage (or feege) erected in the fore-faide Church. And in the faid procession shall be fung such like Hymnes, as are accustomed to bee sung in the reception of Kings and Queenes.

The Crosse, &c.
Item. The Crosse, Sword, Scepter, and Royall Mace (enfignes of honour) shall be borne in the procession, by the Abbot, Prior and Senior Monks of Westminfter into the Pallace, and there shall they be furrendred to divers of the Lords, to be borne before the King to the Church.

The Barons of the fine Ports.

Item. The Barons of the fine Ports shall carry a rich Canopy vpon filuered staues ouer the King or Queenes head, in the fore-faide procession vnto the saide

The Abbot of Westminster.

Item. The Abbot (or the Monke supplying his place) ought alwayes to be neere about the King and Queene to give enftructions.

Vv3

The

The Arch-bishop ought to demand the good | places, (viz.) in the palmes of his hands, liking of the people.

After the King hath a little reposed himselfe in the Chaire or Throne erected vpon the Scaffold, then the arch-bishoppe of Canterbury, shall goe vnto | vpon his head with the Christine, the fathe foure foures of the Scaffold, & with | stenings and Mantle beeing first opened. a loud voyce, aske the good liking of the people, concerning the Coronation of the king: Meane while the king shal stand vp in his Throne, and turne himselfe vi to the foure squares, in like manner, as the Archbishoppe speaketh vnto the people. And after the faid demand, the Anthem Firmetur manus tua, &c. shall be fung.

The Orffertory of the King.

The anthem being ended, the king shal descend from the Scaffold, up to the high Altar the Bishops leading him: whereppon he is bound to offer a Mantle, & one pound of gold: therein fulfilling his commandement, who laid; Non apparebis vacuùs in conspect u Cei tui.

The King prostrateth himfelfe.

The Offering being finished, the king boweth himfelfe vpon the Pauement before the Altar, being before prepared by the Kings Officers, with cloaths and futable cushions of veluet, vntill the Arch-Bithop hath taide ouer him the Prayer. Deus fidelium, &c. And then ought a Sermon to be preached vnto the people.

The King taketh his Oath.

The Sermon being ended, the king approcheth vnto the Altar to take his oath, which he ought to performe vpon the facrament of our Lords body. Then let the Hymne, Veni creator spiritus, be solemnly fung. VVhich being begun, the King shal proftrate himselfe before the high Altar, vitill the Letany and Preface bee wholly fung ouer him. Which being finished, let the king arife and fit in his chaire, therein reposing himselse a while.

The annointing of the King.

After this, let the King arise from his chaire, and goe vnto the Altar, and there shall he put off his Robes (except his Kirtle and Surcoat) and there let him receive Vnction, the Quier meane while finging; Vnxerunt Salomonem; with the prayer following. Then let him be annointed in fiue

on his breaft, betweene his shoulders, on the blades of his armes, and on his head. with holy-oyle, in forme of a croffe; and afterwards making the figne of the croffe Item, after the forefaid Vnction, and wiping with linnen cloaths (which ought afterwards to bee burnt) let the opened places for the annointing, be closed again by the Abbot of Westminster, or his De.

The Abbot of Westminster Shall take off the Kings Cap.

After the annointing of the kings head, let it bee couered with a linnen Cap, be. cause of holy vnction, and so let it remain vntill the eight day after the vnction : vpon the which day, the Abbot of Westminster or his Deputy, shall come vnto the king, and take off the aforefaid linnen Cap, and shall wash & mundifie the kings head. After the faid washing, the Abbot of VVestminster, or his affignes, shall put vpon the King, royall habiliments, viz, a Sindon fashioned after the Dalmatian fafhion, with hofe and fandals: and then let these royall Robes bee facred by the arch-Bishop: as Patet in Libro.

The King Shall be cloathed with a Mantle by the Abbot.

These Offices being finished, the aforefaide king shall be arrayed by the Abbot of VVetiminster, or his assignes, with a long Cloake or Mantle, woulen with faire Imagery of gold, before and behind, with his Buskins, Pantofles, and Spurs fitted to

The fetting of the Crowne wpon the Kings head.

After the King is thus arrayed, then let the Crowne be placed vpon the kings head by the arch-bishop, and afterward let a Ring be put on the Kings hand by a Bishiop.

Of the Sword.

After this, let the Royall Sword bee bleffed, and the faid King shall receive it from the Bishop, and shall gird himselfe with the faid fword, and receive the Bracelets: afterward, let him bee cloathed with a

of Kings and Queenes.

Royall cloake.

The offering of the Sword. After this, let the King offer the faide Sword vpon the Altar to God: which the worthiest earle then present is to redeeme for one hundred Shillings; and to carry it naked before the King. The price whereof pertayneth vnto the fayde

The receiving of the Scepter.

After this, let the King receiue a paire of linnen Gloues, & after that the Scepter, with the Croffe in his right hand, and the Mace in his left. Then being bleffed, he shall kiffe the Bishops, by whom (as also by the residue of the Nobility)he shall bee honourably conducted to his Royall feate, the Quier finging, Te Deum laudamus.

The Prelates, and the residue shall make their homace.

After this, let the Prelates and Lords make their fealty and liege homage to the Lord King: and then let Maffe begin. Item, whileft Gloria in excelfis is finging, the King thall be cenfed by a Deacon: and at Credo, he shall kisse the Booke.

The offering of Bread and Wine.

Whilest the Offertorie is finging, let the King approach to the Altar, & make his offering of Bread and VVine : and after that let him also offer a Mark of gold: which being done, the King shall a little bow downe his head, whileft the Archbishoppe doth blesse him with two Orifons, which being finished, let the King be brought back to his Throne or estate.

The kissing of the Pax after the Agnus Dei.

The kiffe of the Pax after the Agnus Dei Being received: let the King discend from his Estate, and humbly approach the Altar, and there receive the body & blood of our Lord: which being received, the Abbot of Westminster shall minister vnto him wine out of a stone Challice, pertayning to the King, and then immediately the King shall returne to his estate.

Masse being finished, let the King discend from his Throne, and goe vnto the high Altar, and let the Archbishops, Bishops, and Nobility go before him to the Shrine of Saint Edward, where the King shall be arrayed with other Rosbes; all which shall be offered upon the Altar of Saint Edward.

The taking off the Roabes.

The great Chamberlaine (viz.) the earle of oxenford, shall voclothe the king of the forefaid Roabes in a with-drawing place neare to the Shrine: which Roabs, as they are particularly taken from the King, fo shall they be laid upon the faid Altar by the Abbot.

Another Crowne.

The King attired in other honourable apparrell, Thall approach voto the Altar of Saint Edward, where the Archbishop shall put another Crowne vpon his head.

The King returneth to the Pallace.

The faid King being thus crowned, & carrying in his hand the Regall Scepter, from the Shrine to the high Altar, and from thence to the scaffold, then shall he discend thorow the midst of the Quier, by the same way as hee came into the Church, the forefayd earles carrying the Swords before him, returning with great glory vnto the Kings Pallace to dinner.

The delinery of the Scepter.

Dinner beeing ended, and the King withdrawne into his chamber, the Scepter shall bee delinered to the Abbot of Westminster, or his deputy, by the Kings owne hands, to be kept in the faid church of Westminster.

The Coronation of the Queene.

And note, that in the Coronation of the Queene, Procession shall be celebrated: and if the be crowned with the king, then ought the to be annoynted you the Crowne ofher head, and on her breaft : and if she be crowned alone, then ought thee to be announted upon the Crowne onely croffe-wayes with the Chrifme.

The Kings Oath upon the day of his Coronation.

The Archbishop of Canterburie shall demaund the King faying : Pleafeth it you

to confirme and observe the Lawes and Customes of ancient times, granted from God by iust and deuout Kings unto the English Nation, by Oath wnto the faid people, especially the Lawes, Customes and Liberties, grantea unto the Clearey and Laity, by the famous King Edward? The King answering that he will performe and observe all the premifes. Then shall the Archbishop reade vnto him the Articles whereunto he shall fwcare, thus faying, Thou Shalt procure onto the Church of God, unto the Cleargie, and people, firme peace, and unitie in God, according to thy power : He shall answer, I will

performe it. Art thou pleased to cause to bee administred in all thy judgements indifferent and vpright Iustice, and to ve discretion with mercie and veritie. He shall answer, I will

Art thou pleased, that our woright lawes and customes be observed: and doest thou promise, that those shall bee protected and maintained by thee, to the hondur of God, according to thy ftrength . He shall answere, I grant and promife.

The petition of the Bishops.

The Admonition of the Bishops vnto the King followeth; and must be read by one. (viz.) by the Bishop of Lincolne: Lord King, wee defire your pardon, that you would vouchfafe to defend to enery one of vs, and to the Churches committed unto vs, our Canonicall Priviledges, with equitie and instice, as a King in his Kingdome ought to doe unto euerie Bishop, Abbot, and Churches committed wato him. Hee shall answer thus

The Kings answer.

With a willing and deuout heart, I promife unto you, and I pardon everie one of you, and the Churches committed onto you. I will confirme the Canonicall priviledges. minister equitie and instice, and will defend them by Gods fauour, as farre as I am able ; euen as a King ought with uprightnes to do, unto euery Bishop , Abbot , and the Churches committed unto him.

The Oath of homage made vnto the King.

I become your man liege of life and limbe, and troth, and yearely honour to you shall beare anenst all men that now line. So helpe me God and Holy doome.

Item, that the Arch-bishop of Canterbury, shall first make his fealtie, then the Bithops, and afterwards all the Nobles of the Kingdome.

CHAP. XVIII.

¶ A briefe Description of the pompe and Ceremonies at the Coronation of Edward the fixt, King of England: according to the auncient manner, vied in the Confecration of the Kings of England.

most inuincible K. of England, beeing dead, who departed out of this life at Westminster, the 28.
day of Ianuary, 1546 and 38. of his reigne . Edward Seymour, erle of Hertford, King Edward his Vncle, accompanyed with most of the Nobilitie of the whole Kingdome, forthwith went to Enfield (in the Countie of Middle [ex) vnto Edward, now at length (by right of fuccession vnto his Father Henry) King of

Enrie the eight, the

England, France and Ireland. Whom the Munday following (viz.) the last of January, he with the great applause of the Cittie, and of the people by the way as hee went, was brought from thence vnto the Tower of London. The same day the Heralds from an

high Stage fet vp in the middeft of Westminster hall(with a great found of Trumpets) out of a Royall Charter, fealed with the great Seale of the kingdome, proclaimed the death of the aforesaid king Henry the eight, and the Inauguration of K. Edward the fixt to come. Which Charter was dated the 31 day of Januarie, and the first yeare of King Edward.

Vpon Friday following(viz.) the 4.of February, it was through the most famous places of the Citty of London, by the Heralds proclamed and notified, that whofoeuer they were which by right of Fee, were bound at the Coronations of Kings, to performe their Offices or Seruices; should vnto the Kings Commissioners therefore appoynted, in the White

The crovyning of Edward the fixt. Chap.18.

hall, the vij. of February exhibite their | wholly bestowed in the magnificent perpetitions: who according to the ancient custome of the kingdome, should determine vnto euerie man their rights and fernices, against the twentith of the same moneth, the day appointed for the Coronation of the King.

Vpon Thurfeday (which was the first day of February)the Nobility and States of the Kingdome affembled into the Chamber of Presence (as they call it) euery one of them in order one by one, did their renerence and ducty vnto the King, fitting in his Royall Scate, killing his hand, and faying ; Long live the Kings

After that the Chancellour declared ento him the Will of his dead Father, and the Names of his Executors : and that for lacke of yeares, he was not yet himselse able to gouerne his Kingdome (for now hee was but going vppon the tenth yeare of his age) he told them, that the Earle of Hertford his Vncle, was by common suffrages chosen Tutor of his person, and Protector of his Kingdome. V. Vhich when the King had approoued, and that the erle refused not that charge, they altogether, and oftentimes doubled and redoubled ; Long line our King Edward: and God faue our King. The next day (viz.) vpon Friday, the

Noble-men meeting together in the Starre-chamber, there bound themselnes by Oath vnto the King : at which time and place also the Maister of the Rolles, and the chiefe Officers of the Chancerie, were fworne truely and fincerely to enrole the VVill and Testament of the aforesaid King Henrie the eight, being

The Sunday following, the King by his Vncle the Protector, was after the accustomed maner made a knight, who by and by after with the same Ceremonies created the Maior of London, and certayne others, knights.

But vpon the Monday, the Commiffioners having well confidered of the matter, and having read the Suters Petitions on both fides, gaue sentence concerning Seruices, after the manner to be performed at the time of the Coronation; of which in their place and order more is to be hereafter faid.

The VVednesday following, was

forming of the rites and ceremonies of the Funerall of King Henrie the eight. VVhich done, they entred into confultation concerning the Coronation of the new King. And first of all, for the greater folemnitie of the pompe, the Earle of Hertford was graced with the Title of the Duke of Somer (et. At which time others also, with other honourable Titles, were with great folemnity hono-

After dinner, the Knights of the Garter affembled together into the Kings Chamber, where the King attired in the ornaments of that Order fate (as of right he should, highest) and with joyned voices, chose the Marquesse Dorset, the earle of Darbie, and others, into the fellowthip of that Order.

At length, vpon Saturday (viz)the 19 day of February, the king with a most magnificent pompe, went through the middest of the Citty, from the Tower of London, vnto the Pallace at Westminfter, the great Ordinance both out of the Tower, and the Shippes, on euerie fide thundering.

And in this order they went.

[Irft, all the Kings Meffengers by two and two together.

After them the noblemen of leffer note, or Gentlemen by two and two together also.

The Sergeants of the forraine embaffadors, by couples.

The Trumpettors with great noyfe founding on both fides.

The Gentlemen, keepers of the Kings person (whom we call Esquiers for the

Knights (which are called knights, Batchellours.)

The greater Chaplaines.

The vonger fonnes of Noblemen mounted vpon great Horses.

The Senators or Aldermen of London. The Clearks of the Councell. The Kings Secretaries.

The keeper of the facred Records, commonly called, the Master of the Rolls. The Knights of the Bath.

The kings Councellours. Knights Bannerets.

Knights of the order of the Garter, which were not by dignitie Barons.

The fonnes of vicounts. The yonger Sonnes of earles and Marquesses.

Barons.

Earles eldest Sonnes. Vicounts.

Bishops. Marquefics eldeft fonnes. Dukes yonger fonnes.

Earles. Dukes eldeft fonnes.

Marquesses.

Dukes.

The Controller or Cenfor of the Kings house; and the Venetian Ambassador. The Treasurer of the Kingshouse; and one of the Ambassadors of the Prote-Stant Princes.

The kings Almner; and another of the Ambassadors of the Protestant Prin-

The lord William Paget Secretary, with the duke Phillip.

The Admiral of England, with one of the Ambaffadors of Scotland.

The keeper of the private Scale, with another Ambaffador of Scotland. The governour of the Pallace, or great

Maister of the Hall, with the Baron de la Garde, a Frenchman.

The Chancellour of England, with the French Ambaffador.

The Archbithop of Canterbury, with the Emperors Ambassador.

Two noble Courtiers representing the dukedoms of Normandy & Aquitaine, attired in Purple roabes, with caps of honour, with their Cloaks cast crosse of purple veluet, furred with Mineuer. Garter king of Armes, in his Heralds coate, and the Maior of the Cittle of London, carrying the Mace of his

Mairalty. The Sergeants at Armes, & the Heralds on both fides.

The Constable of England, who for that time was the Marqueffe Dorfet, carried the Sword : on whose right hand went the earle of Warwicke as Chamberlaine of England; and on his left hand the earle of Arundell , supplying the place of earle Marshall.

The Duke of Somerfet Protectour of the kingdome, went a litle before the king toward the left hand.

The King himfelfe went vnder a Canopy or Thole , borne by fixe Knights, (the footmen going about him) before which, two Gentlemen Vihers went with white Staues.

Next after came the mafter of the Horse, with a royall Palfrey richly furnished, After came nine Pages of honor (whom

we call Hench-men) bare headed, and mounted uppon great Horses, whom Sir Francis Brian their Captayne followed.

Then followed the gentlemen of the priuy Chamber.

The gentlemen Pentioners, with their Polonian Partifans, guarded on both fides from those Courtiers which represented Normandy and Aquitaine, euen to the Guard.

Then came the Captaine of the Guard, with his band of the Yeomen of the Guard.

The Servants of the Noble-men and Gentlemen shut vp the troope, going in order according to the honour and dignitie of their Lords and Malfters.

In this order they came thorough the middest of the Citty vnto the Pallace at Westminster: The Pageants in the meane time, with diverse shewes euery where fet foorth, and the Orations made, &c. I for breuitie fake purposely omit.

Vpon Sunday, the twentieth day of February, at nine of the clocke, the King was carried downe the River, from the Pallace vnto the Hall at Westminfer, where first in the Chamber of the Court of Augmentation (which now is called the Court of Wardes) he attired himselse in a Roabe of Purple veluet, with a long trayne, furred with Ermins. His inner Gowne was of the same kind of veluer, furred with Mineuer, and fringed round about with Gold. Thefe were called Parliament Roabes, but vpon his head hee did weare a Cappe of blacke Veluer. The Noble-men in like manner also being attired in their Roads of honor, attended uppon the Kings Maiestie, from thence to the Marble Chaire fet

Chap. 18. The crowning of Edward the fixt.

in Westminster Hall, and from thence vnto a Royall Throne fet vp for him in S. Peters Church at Westminster. But the way whereby he went, was by the Kings

Almner all couered with blew Cloth. And in this order they fet forward.

■ All the Gentlemen went by two & two together.

All the Esquires by two and two also. The Secretaries of the Latine & French tongues. The Senators or Aldermen of London.

The chiefe Porter or Viher alone. Three Croffes.

They of the Quier of the Church of Wellminster in their Coapes.

The Subdeacon of the Kings Chappell, with the finging men of the fame. The Bishops in their Pontificalibus.

The Chancellor of the Augmentation, and the Venetian Secretary. The Gouernour of the Wardrope, with

the Duke Philip. The Controllor of the Kings house, with an Ambassador of Scotland.

The Treasurer of the Kingshouse, with another Ambassador of Scotland.

The Almner, with the Ambassadour of France. Secretary Peter, with another Ambassa-

dour of France. Secretary Paget, with the Emperors Am-

bassadour. Garter King of Armes, and the Major of the Citty of London.

The Earle of Rutland carrying Saint Edwards Spurres, and with him the Earle of Huntingdon, carrying S. Edwards Staffe.

After that, three drawne fwords; the first whereof was borne by the Baron of S. Iohn, great Master of the Kings house: the second by Baron Russell, keeper of the Private Seale: the third, which is called Cortayna was carried in the mid- line his Maiesty.

dest betwixt the other two, by the earl

of Darby. A Sword was also carried before in the Scabberd vndrawne, vnto which vpon the left hand was joyned the Earle of Arundell, as Earle Marshall in stead of the Protector.

The Duke of Somerfet Protector of the Kingdome, carried the Crowne, whose right fide the Duke of Suffolke with a

Globe and Croffe of gold enclosed, &: his left fide the Marquefle I or et, with the Royall Scepter. At length the Kings Maiefly went under a

Thole or Canopy, which the Barons of the fine Ports (by an ancient right) did beare; supported on the right hand by the Bishop of Durham, and on the left by the Earle of Shrewsbury.

The Earle of Warwicke, as great Chamberlaine of England, held up the Kings traine: whom the Marques of Northampton affifted on the one fide, and Baron Seymour of Sudley, Admirall of England, both of them of the Kings priny Chamber.

The Gentlemen of the priny Chamber. The Noblemen of the kingdome, attyred in the Robes of honour, every one of them according to his place and ancientnesse: whom the Gentlemen Pen-

tioners, the Captaine of the Guard, & the Yeomen of the Guard themselves did follow.

The King in this order beeing brought to Saint Peters Church, was placed in the Chaire of Saint Edward the King, in the middeft of a Throne, seuen steppes high. This Throne was creeded neere vnto the Altar vpon a Stage, arifing with steppes on both fides, couered with Carpets and hangings of Arras. Where, after the King had rested a little, being by certaine Noble Courtiers carryed in another Chaire vnto the foure fides of the Stage: he was by the Archbishop of Canterbury declared vnto the people (standing round about both by Gods and Mans Lawes to be the right and lawfull King of England, France, and Ireland; and proclaimed that day to bee crowned, confectated, and annointed. Vnto whom he demanded whether they would obey and ferue, or not? By whom it was againe with a loud cry answered; God faue the King: And ever

This being done, he was againe placed in the Chaire of the Throne, the Quier finging of an Anthem: The King from thence descending vnto the Altar, there offered his Cloake, and certaine Money, (viz.) XX. Shillings, and afterward lay downe flat before the Altar, the Arch-Bishop saying certaine Prayers; as Deus fidelium, &c. And afterward in formall words, fwore an oath vnto the Kingbe-

The crowning of Edward the fixt. 504

fore the people.

the Archbishop againe kneeling downe, beganne the Hymne Veni Creator firitus &c.and faid other Praiers ouer the King: two other Bishops beginning the Letany, which at length ended, the King arose and came againe vnto his throane: and from thence was brought to a retyring place (commonly called a Trauer(e) where having put off all his former garments, hee was by the Chamberlaine of England apparrelled agayne with other, (viz.) a Crimfon Coate, open uppon the backe and the breast, the shoulders and the elbowes, with a linnen Cappe vpon his head, wrought with gold. The Chancellour in the meane time, from the Stage proclaimed vnto the people the Kings generall pardon.

The King brought back againe out of the Traner fe voto the throane, and from thence vnto the Altar, vnder a cloath of being opened) was by the Arch-bishop with formall praiers vnto God, vpon the Palmes of his hands, vpon his breaft, betwixt his shoulders, in the ioynts of his Armes, and Crowne, with hallowed oile and chrisme annoynted; the Quire in the meane time finging the Antheme :P'nxerunt Salomonem, dec.

After this annoynting (the oyle being lightly wiped off) the openings of his coate and thirt were agayne by the archtithop cloafed, who put vpon his hands a payre of Linnen Gloues, and a Linnen Cappe, (brought thither by the great vnto the Tranerse, was with a Royall Roabe againe renefted.

At length returning againe vnto the Altar, hee there offered vp the Svvord wherewith hee was girt, to be afterwards with fine pound in mony redeemed. The royall Ornaments were after that confecrated. The King fitting before the Altar, the Archbishop and the Protectour brought vnto him three Crownes.

The first was the Crowne of Saint Edward the King.

The fecond was the ancient Crowne of the Kings of England,

The third was of all the richeft, made for that day, and for that purpose (and

by turnes, with the great founding of There the king being againe proftrate, Trumpets, and the applause of the People, put vppon his head : the Quier also finging Te Deum laudamus, &c. The Archbishop put a Ring uppon the third finger of the Kings right hand, at which time hee was likewise by the Maister of the Iewells bedecked with Bracelets and other most rich and most precious Ic-

The Earle of Shrewsbury delivered the Scepter into the Kings hand.

The Archbishop delivered vnto him Saint Edward the Kings little Staffe.

The Earle of Rutland offered vnto him a paire of golden Spurres.

The Duke of Suffolke gaue vnto him the golden Globe.

The Earle of Oxford deliucred him the other Royalties.

Hee in this manner attired with all Royall Ornaments (viz.) apparrelled with a royall Roabe, and crowned with golde (the strings of his Coate and Shirt | a Crowne vpon his head, carrying in his right hand a Scepter, and a golden Globe in his left, beeing brought vinto the Throane, hee fate downe in the Chaire of S. Edward the King. Where first the Duke of Sommer fet Protector of England, vpon his knees in formall words did his due homage and fealty vnto the King and his heires, the kings of England: whom the Archbishoppe of Canterburie followed and kiffed the Kings knee. The fame againe did all the rest of the Nobility, which could fo doe. But fuch as stoode about (and with the shortnesse of the time excluded, could not come Chamberlayne,) and so brought backe | nie) the Protectour vpon his knees pronouncing their homage, holding vp their hands, cryed out with loude voyces together, Long line EDWARD the fixt our King.

Divine service at length being done by the Archbishop and two Bishops, the King at the offering time came downe vnto the Altar, where in the patten of S. Edwards Chalice, he offered an hallowed little Crust or Cruet of Wine, and a pound of gold: and then having bowed downe his head, the Archbithop fayde certaine Prayers, and bleffed the King, and fo returning vnto his Throane, there kiffed the Paxe being offered him.

Last of all, hee being brought vnto fit for the Kings head) which being all the Altar, the Archbishop taking the

5.Booke Chap. 18: The crowning of Edward the fixt.

the Altar. From thence the King going into the Trauers, deliuered his royall Ornaments vnto the Deane of Westminfter to be layde vpon the Altar: and in his inner purple Gowne (commonly called a Surcoat) furred with Ermins, with a Crowne vpon his head, returning vnto Westminster Hall in the same order wee before faide; flaved a while in that chamber(which we call the Court of Wardes) untill the Tables were royally furnished. The flately furniture of the Hall at that time, the multitude of Tables, the varictie of diffies and fauces, and the delicate magnificence of the feaft, I willingly paffe by the grace of God, of England, France, and

Yet this it is worthy to remember that the Earles of Oxford & Hunting don held water voto the King, which the Earle of Hunting don before tafted.

The Earle of Rutland held the Towell The Marquesse of Worthampton was the Caruer, & before tafted the Diffies.

The Earle of Suffex was Sewer of the first course, and placed it upon the Table. the Marquesse Dorset at that time Constable of England, with a little filter staffe (the figne of his office) and the Earle of Arandel with the rod of the Marshalship. mounted vpon trapped horses, alin cloth of gold came riding into the Hall.

Foure swords were all the dinner time carried before the King.

The Ambassadors of forraine Princes, the Bishops and Noble-men, the Major of the Citty of London, the Barons of the fine Ports, &c. were in their order fet at

Tables in the fame Hall. After the fecond course, the kings champion (furnamed Dimock) a knight in conplease Armour, mounted uppon a great Horse, couered with a Caparison of cloth of gold, and attended upon with an Herald in his Coat of Armes, came into the Hall : who cuen at the first, with a proud gate went vnto the King, and with great reuerence made to him his lowe obeyfance. Afterward prauncing his carriering Horfe, by a trumpet founding foure times in the Hall, challenged to combate him who focuer he were that should deny Edward the fixt of that name, to be the true, undoubted, and lawfull King of England, France, and Ireland. And fo often he caft

Crowne from off his head, layde it vpon | downe his Gantlet vnto the ground, as a pledge of his challenge fo made: which when no man would cake vp, the Herald deliuered it vnto him againe: which done, the King did drinke vnto him in a Cup of gold, which he thankfully accepted, and challenging the Cup due voto him as his Fee, fo departed.

Last of all, Garter king of Armes, with the rest of the heralds, having made thrice obesfance before the King, all saloud, in formall words proclaimed the kings stile; in Latine, French, and English, in this fort; Largeffe, of the most Sourraigne, and most inuincible Prince and King, Edward the fixt. Ireland King, Defender of the Faith: and of the Church of England and Ireland, next under Christ in Earth supreame head: chiefe of the most Noble order and Knight-hood of the Garter. Which fame stile, when he had in Latine and French, and fo in three other places of the Hall besiderepeated, they oftentimes altogether crying out aloud, Largeffe, so departed.

A little before the ende of the Feaft, Before the coming in of the first course, the Maior of London (as the manner is) in a Cup of gold, gave a Cuppe of fpiced Wine (which we commonly call Tpoer as) vnto the King to drinke; which after hee had tafted of thee gaue the Cup vnto the Major, as due voto him for his fee.

The rest of the time was spent in creating of Knights of the Bath, and of other Knights, and in appointing of Iustings & Tiltings: All which, as not appertaining to my purpose, I omit; as also the variety of mufique, the divers kindes of shewes, & other things in number infinite, which wonderfully graced & fee foorth the magnificence of this coronation: of all which things, let them fay more at large, which faw cyther the fame, or the pompe of the Coronation of the most Soueraigne Queenc Elizabeth, with the wonderfull happinesse of her Reigne, and the applause and ioyfulnesse of the people on eucry fide.

CHAP.

506 The famous crowning of King lames, 5. Booke

CHAP. XIX.

The memorable and famous Coronation of our most gracious Lord King lames, and our Soueraigne Lady Q. Anne his Wife, the 25.of Iuly, 1603.

The Coppy heereof was deliuered to his Maiesty, by the Lord Archbishop of Canterbury; who faithfully obserued the forme, set downe in the ancient Booke kept among the Regalia at Westminster.



HE King and Queen came from Westminster bridge, to the West doore of the Minster Church.

They received into the Church with an Hymne or Antheme. They passe, along thorow the body of the Church and so vp to the Stage, and do

there take their places in their feuerall Seeges Royall. The King (hewed to the people, and they are required to make acknowledgment of their allegiance to his Maiesty, by

the Archbishop: which they do by acclamations.

The Second Antheme is Sung.

The King and Queene descend from their Thrones, and going to the Altar, there offer: the King a Pall, and a pound of gold : the Queene likewise offereth. A Prayer is faide by the Archbifbop.

A Sermon by the Bishop of Winchester. After the Sermon, the King is moued by the Archbishop to take his Oath.

The Oath ministred by the Archbishop, and taken by the King, there is fung, Come Holy Ghoft, &c.

A prayer by the Archbishop: when that is done, Letany is faide or fung by two Bishops.

The Archbishop beginneth the Ceremony of the annointing, with the thankigiuing, Lift up your hearts, dec.

After which, the King comming to the Altar, putteth off his vpper garments. The Kings under Garments are so to bee

made, as the places to bee annoynted,

may (by the vidoing of certain loops); be made open.

The Archbishop annointeth his Maiesty.

(Palmes. Breaft.

Vpon the Betweene the Shoulders. Bending of both Armes. Crowne of the head.

Then a Linnen Coife is put on his head. the Quier meane while finging the

Prayer made by the Archbishop.

The Inucstiture.

Then is the King inuefted with the Robes of King Edward the Confessor, by the Abbot of Westminster.

(With the Tunicke. Close Pall. Tuifni Hofen. Sandals.

Spurs pur on by a Peere.

Then is the Sword delivered his Maiesty by the Archbishop and Bishops, and after girt about him by a Peere.

After; the Armill or Collar is put on by the Abbot of Westminster.

Then the upper Pallor Mantle Royall. ... His Maiefty to bee crowned with the Crowne of King Edward the Confessor.

The fourth Antheme. A Ring to be put on the fourth finger, on the left hand: after which done, the K. putteth on the Linnen Gloues, & goeth to the Altar, & taking off his fword, there offereth it.

Which fword fo offred, the cheefe Peere isto redeeme; and having redeemed it, to draw it, and leave it fo drawne by his Maiesty all the solemnity.

ARod with the Doue to bee borne in his left hand.

A Prayer or blessing is pronounced by the

Then the King gracioully vouchfafeth to receive to his kiffe the Arch-bifhop or Bishops that were affishing to his Coronation.

The Inthronizing.

After this, the King is ledde backe to his Throne, with all folemnity, the Quier finging, We praife thee O God , &c. The King is inthronized by the Arch bishop in the Throne Royall.

and Queene Anne his Wife. Chap. 19.

The Peeres do their homage to the 1 the Communion.

King, so fitting in his Chaire Royall. And after the homage done, they all put their hands up and touch the Crowne on the Kings head, as promifing for ener to support it.

The Queenes annointing.

The folemnity of the Kings Coronation, and inthronizing beeing performed, the Arch bishop leaueth the King in his Throne, and goeth to the Altar.

The Queene, who hath all this while reposed her selfe in her Chaire beneathe, arifeth and commeth to the steps of the Altar, and there kneeleth downe.

A Prayer faide by the Archbilhop.

The queene arifeth from her prayer. the cheefest Lady taketh off the Coronet first, and after openeth her breast.

Then the queene kneeleth downe a-

The Archbishop first poweed the annointing Oyle on the crown of her head. Then he annointed her on the breaft.

A Prayer by the Archbishop.

Then the cheefe Lady attendant, clofeth the queenes Robe at her breast, and after putteth on her head a linnen coyfe. The Queenes Crowning.

That done, the Archbishop puts on the fourth finger of the queenes left hand a

A Prayer by the Archbishop. The Archbishop taking the Corwne in his hands, and laying it before him on the

Altar, faith a prayer.

The prayer done, he fets the Crowne on the queenes head, after that hee faith a

The delinery of the Queenes Scepter of Rod. After the prayer, the Archbithop deliuered first the Scepter into her right hand the Rod of Iuory with the Done into her left hand, both which being done, he faith a prayer.

Which prayer being ended, the queene ariseth and goeth from the Altar, and is led by two Bishops up to the Stages, and passing by the King in his Throne, shee doth, Inclinare Regieius Maicstatem (vt decet adorando.)

Which having done, the is ledde to her Throne, on the left hand, and some-what lower then the Kings, and is placed or inthronized in it.

After this, the Archbishop beginneth

Whereas after the Collects. Epific. Gospell.

The Nycen Creede.

Offertory is sung by the Quier.

Whilft the Offertory is finging, the king and queene descend from their Throne, and come downe to the Altar. The King maketh his Oblation; first of Bread and Wine: fecondly, of a marke of gold. The queene after him offereth likewife.

After which, the Archbithop pronounceth the bleffing ouer them: that ended. the king and queene are brought back to their chaires hard by the Altar. The Arch. Bishop proceedeth with the Communion. After the Archbishop hath communicated himfelfe, and those which affilled him, the king and queene come vnto the steps of the Altar, there to receive the holy Sacrament.

The Archbishop ministresh the body, the Abbot the Cup. That done, the king and queene are brought backe to their Throne about the Stages.

There they stay till the Communion bee ended. After which, they both goe into the Chappell of King Edward the Confessor, there they put off the Crownes wherewith they were crowned.

They withdraw themselues into their Trauers. The King putteth off King Eddwards Robes wherewith hee was inuc-

Hee is arraied with his owne Robes royall, by the great Chamberlaine of England. Then comming forth, the Arch-Bithop puts on the king & queenes heads the Imperiall Crowns, which they are to weare. The King taketh S. Edwards fcepter in his hand, and the queene hers. The traine is fet in order, and they returne the fame way they came.

After the king and queene returne to the Pallace.

The Scepters are delinered vnto the Abbot of Westminster, to be kept there among the refidue of the Regalia.

> Xx2 Huther

REGIA MAIESTAS

Hitherto I have described what manner of men the named

Woble-men have beene with as. The forme of their Charters and Referipts I have fet downe, with what Rites and Ceremonies they are after our manner and fashion created: and the Maiestie of the Coronation of the Kings themselues we have declared. Here now a great field is opened wnto me to speake of the right of the precedence of the Nobilitie, and of their Priviledges; but for a fmuch as they rest rather woon Cust omethen woon positive Lawes, I have of a fet purpose omitted many things, proceeding but soft are a the Statutes of the Kingdome may be my warrant and safety.

CHAP, XX.

1 Statute and Act of Parliament, made in the one and thirty yere of Henry the eight, concerning placing of the Lords in the Parliament chamber, and other affemblies and conferences of Counsell.



Orfomuch, as in all great Counall great Coun-fels and Congre-gations of men, hauing Degrees, and Offices in the commonwealth, it is very requifife

and convenient, that an order should be had and taken for the placing and fitting of fuch persons as are bound to resort to the fame, to the intent that they knowing their places, may vie the fame without displeasure or let of the Counsell: therefore the Kings most royall Maiestie, although it appertaineth vnto his prerogatine Royall, to give fuch honour, reputation, and placing to his Counfellers, and other his Subjects, as shall be seeming to his most excellent wisedome, is neuertheleffe pleafed and contented for an order to be had and taken in this his most high Court of Parliament, that it shall be enacted by the authoritie of the fame in manner and forme as heereafter followeth.

First, it is enacted by the authoritie aforefaide, that no person or persons of what estate, degree, or condition socuer he or they be of (except onely the Kings children) shall at any time heereafter attempt or prefume, to fit or haue place at any fide of the cloth of Estate in the Parliament Chamber, neither on the one hand of the Kings highnes, nor on the o-

ther, whether the Kings Maiefly be there personally present, or absent. And forasmuch as the Kings Maiesty is justly and lawfully Supreame Head in earth under God, of the Church of England, and for the good exercise of the faid most royall dignitic and office, hath made Thomas Lord Cromwell, and Lord Privic Scale his Vicegerent, for good and due admiadministration of Iustice, to be had in all causes and cases, touching the Ecclesiasticall Jurisdiction, and for the godly information and redreffe of all Errours, Herefies, and abuses in the faid Church. It is therefore also enacted by authoritie aforefaid, that he the faid Lord Cromwell, hauling the faid Office of Vicegerent, and all other persons which heereafter shall have the faide Office of the graunt of the Kings highnes, his heires or fuccessours, stall fit and be placed, aswell in this prefent Parliament, as in all Parliaments to be holden heereafter, on the right fide of the Parliament Chamber, and vpon the fame forme that the Archbishop of Canterbury fitteth on, and about the fame Archbishop and his successors, and shall haue voice in enery Parliament to affent or diffent, as other the Lords of the Parliament haue.

And it is also enacted, that next voto the fayd Vicegerent, shall fit the Archbishoppe of Canterbury, and then next vnto him on the fame Forme and fide, shall fit the Archbishoppe of Yorke: and next vnto him on the fame fide, the Bishop of London; and next to him on the fame fide and Forme, the Bishop of Duresme; and next vnto him on the same fide and Forme the Bishop of Winchester; and then all the other Bishops of both Provinces of Canterburie and Torke, shall fit and bee placed on the same side after their anciencies, as it hath beene accustomed.

berlaine the fixt.

liament, shall fit and be placed afore and

aboue all Barons, not having any of the

Offices before mentioned. And if he be a

Bishop, that then he shall sit and bee pla-

ced about all other Bishops, not having

XXXI. yeare of Henry the eight. Chap.20.

And forafmuch as fuch other Perfoany of the Offices about remembred. nages, which now have, and hecreafter And it is also ordayned and enacted by thall happen to have other great Offices Authority aforefaid, that all Dukes not afore mentioned, Marqueffes, Earles, Viof the Realme; that is to fay, the Offices of the Lord Chancellor, the Lord Treacounts, and Barons, not having any of the furer, the Lord Prefident of the Kings Offices aforefaid, shall fit and bee placed most honourable Councell, the Lord after their Anciency, as it hath bene accupriny Seale, the great Chamberlaine of England, the Marshall of England, the And it is further enacted, that if any

Lord Admirall, the Grand-Master or person or persons, which at any time here Lord Steward of the Kings most honouafter shall happen to have any of the faid rable houshold, the Kings Chamberlaine Offices of Lord Chancellor, Lord Treaand the Kings Secretary, have not heerefurer, Lord Prefident of the Kings Countofore beene appointed and ordered for cell, Lord Priny Scale, or cheefe Secretathe placing and fitting in the Kings most ry, shall be vnder the degree of a Baron of high Court of Parliament, by reason of the Parliament, by reason whereof, they can have no interest to give any affent or their Offices. It is therefore now ordaydiffent in the faide house, that then in end. ned and enacted by the Authority aforefaide, that the Lord Chancellor, the Lord ry fuch cafe, fuch of them as thall happen Treasurer, the Lord President of the to be under the degree of a Baron Mill fit and be placed at the vppermolf part of Kings Councell, and the Lord Priuy Scale, being of the degree of Barons of the fackes, in the midft of the faid Parliathe Parliament, or aboue, shall sit and bee ment, either there to fit vpon one Forme, placed aswell in this present Parliament, or vpon the vppermost sacke, the one of as in all other Parliaments hereafter to be them aboue the other, in order as is about holden, on the left fide of the Parliament rchearfed. Chamber, on the hither part of the forme

faide, that in all trials of treasons by Peers of this pealme, if any of the Peeres that shall decalled heercaster to bee tryers of of the same side, about all Dukes, except onely fuch as shal happen to be the Kings Sonne, the Kings Brother, the Kings Vnkle, the Kings Nephew, or the Kings Brofuch treasons, shall happen to have any of thers or Sifters fonnes. the Offices aforefaid, that then they had And it is also ordained and enacted by uing fuch Offices, shall fit and bee placed authority aforefaid, that the great Chamaccording to their Offices, about all the berlaine, the Conflable, the Marshall, the other Peeres that shall bee called to such Lord Admirall, the great Master, or Lord trials, in manner and forme as is about Steward, and the Kings Chamberlaine. mentioned and rehearfed. shall fit and be placed after the Lord pri-And it is also enacted by Authority uie Seale, in manner following: that is to

aforefaid, that as well in all Parliaments, fay every one of them shall fit and be plaas in the Starre-Chamber, and in all other ced about all other Personages beeing of Affemblies and Conferences of Counthe fame estates or degrees, that they shall cell, the Lord Chancellor, the Lord Treahappen to be of; that is to fay, the great furer, the Lord President, the Lord priny Chamberlaine first the Constable next; Scale, the great Chamberlaine, the Conthe Marshall third; the Lord Admirall stable, the Marshall, the Lord Admirall, the fourth; the Grand-Master or Lord the Grand-master, or Lord Steward, the Steward the fift; and the Kings Cham-Kings Chamberlaine, and the Kings Secretary shall sit and bee placed in such or-And it is also enacted by authority ader and fashion, as is aboue rehearsed, and forefaid, that the Kings cheefe Secretary not in any other place, by authority of being of the degree of a Baron of the Parthis present Acte.

Be it also enacted by Authority afore-

CHAP.

Chap.21.

The Parliamentary Pompe.

CHAP. XXIIII.

(Viz.) The forme and manner of the going of the States unto the Parliament. (eriously collected out of diners examples. Wherein I thought good, especially to propound that most stately going of Queene Elizabeth, in the xxvy, yeare of her reigne.

Pon Sunday(the xxij.day of Nouember) in the Cham-ber of Prefence(as they doe tearmeit) it was proclaimed that the Nath that the Noble-men and

States, and so all others which were bound to attend vpon the Queenes Maiestic, the next day to be holden at Westminster, thould bee ready at nine of the clocke before noone, to give their attendance, the Queene then lying in her royall house called Saint James, neare vnto Westminster. The next day at the appointed houre, the Noblemen put on their Parliament Robes in the Counfell chamber, and the Bishops theirs likewise, in another chamber next vnto the chappel: from thence they, by the Garden going into the Parke, mounted on horse-backe, attended the comming foorth of the Queene. About eleuen of the clocke the most gracious Queene, attired also in a Parliament Roabe, at the going out of the Garden, mounted in a Chaire of Estate, like vnto a Chariot or Horselitter, carried betwixt two white Horfes. This Chaire was on enery fide open, but that behind a concring hanging forth aboue, femicircle-wife, was with two litle pillers of Siluer supported : vpon the top wherof, stoode on high a Crowne of golde: and vpon two other pillers at her feete, stoode a Lyon and a Dragon ghstering with golde, made with wonderful cunning, supporting the Queenes Armes.
This Chaire (which I might rather call a Throane) being altogether cunningly garnished and gilt, was most magnificently bedeckt with cloth of Siluer (as

they call it) and with Cushions of the fame. Wherein, after that the Queene had placed herselse: the rest by two and two in this order fet forward. First went the Mandataries or Messengers

of the Kings Court. Afterward the Gentlemen of lesse note. Squiers. Squiers of the body. The Clarkes of the Chancerie.

The Clarkes of the Signer. The Clarkes of the private Scale. The Clarkes of the Counfell. The Maisters of the Chancerie. The Knights Bachelours.

Knights Bannerets. Trumpets heere and there founding. Seruants or Sergeants at Law.

The Kings Sergeant in an volined purple Gowne or Hood. Him followed John Popham the kings Atturney, with Thomas Egerton the So-

licitor. Two Heralds. The ludges of the Exchequer, whom we

call Barons of the Exchequer. The Iudges or Iustices of the Court of the Common Pleas, and of the Kings Bench,

Edmund Anderson chiefe Iustice of the Common Pleas, together with Roger Manwood chiefe Baron of the Exchequer, both knights.

Christopher Wray, chiefe Instice of the Kings Bench, or of England, & Gilbert Gerard Maister of the Rolles, Knights both: but this man ridde in a Veluct Gowne; but aswell the rest of the Iustices, as the Barons of the Exchequer, rid in Gownes and Hoodes of Skarlet lined with a white furre called

Miniuer. The yonger fonnes of the Nobility according to their dignities.

The Treasurer of the Kings Chamber. Knights of the Bath.

The eldeft fons or heires of the Nobility. Knights of the Priny Counfell. Knights of the order of the George, or of

the Garter. Francis Walfingham knight, principall Se cretary.

Francis Knolles Treasurer of the Queens house, together with James Croftes, Controuller of the Queenes house, both Knights.

Edward

The Parlamentary Pompe.

Norris, carrying the Queenes Hat and Cloake, thut vp this ranke. Two Heralds, whom the Barons followed by two and two together.

Henry Baron Norris of Rycot. Henry Baron Cheney of Tuddington. Henry Baron Compton, William Cecill Baron of Burghley. he went in another place, because hee

was Treasurer of England. William West, Baron de la Ware. Thomas Sackuile Baron of Buckburst. Iohn, Baron S. Iohn of Bletefho. Henry Cary Baron of Hun don.

was absent because he was Gouernor of Barwicke. Giles Bruges Baron Chandos. Roger Bason North of Carthelage.

Charles Baron Howard of Effingham. He went in another place, because hee was Chamberlaine vnto the Queene. Thomas Baron Darcy of Chiche. Thomas Baron Paget.

Edmund Baron Sheffeild of Butterwick. Charles Baron Willoughby of Parham. Robert Baron Rich of Leze. Philip Baron Wharton of Wharton. William Baron Eure of Witton. Henry baron Cronnvellof Vicombe.

Lewes Baron Mordant of Turney. Thomas Baron Burgh of Gainsburgh. Henry Baron Wentworth of Netlested. Fredericke Baron Windefor of Bradenham William Baron Vaux of Harroden. William Baron Sandes of Vine. Iohn Baron Darcy of Menill,

Cutbert Baron Ogle of Bothall. William Baron Montioy. John Baron Sturton. John Baron Lumley.

Edward Baron Dudley. Henry Baron Scroope of Bolton. He was absent, for that he was Gouernor of Carlile.

Arthur Baron Gray of Wilton, Edward Baron Stafford, of Stafford. William Brooke Baron of Cobham. Gregorie Fynes, Baron Dacres of Herstmonceaux.

Edward Parker Baron Morley. Henry Baron Barkley. Peregrine Bertij Bar. Willoughby of Eresby. Edward Baron Zouch of Haringworth.

George Touchet Baron Audley.

Edward Norris, the third Sonne of Baron | Henry Neuill Baron of Abergauenny. Two Heralds going before the Bifhops. The Bulhop of Glocester. The Bishop of S. Asphe. Bishop of Chester.

Bishop of Car ile. Bishop of Peterborow. Bishop of Landaffe. Bithop of Hereford. Bishop of Cicester. Bithop of Lietchfield. Bishop of Bath. Bithop of Rochester. Bishop of Worcester. Bishop of S. Danids.

Bishop of Bangor. He Bishop of Lincolne. Bishop of Sarisbury. Bishop of Norwich. Bithop of Exceter. Bishop of Ely.

Bishop of Winchester. Prelate of the Garter. Bishop of Durham. Bishop of London, Chancellor to the Bi-

shop of Canterbury. These three Bishops, (viz.) the Bishops of London, Durham, and Winchester, by force of Acte of Parliament, made the xxxi. yeare of King Henry the viii. goe next vnto the Arch-bishops: but all the

rest take their places, according to the ancientnesse of their elections. Euery Bishops Gowh was made of Scarlet cloth, made after the fashion of Barons, and hoods of the same, lined with Mineuer, & hanging downe behinde them.

Henry Vicount Howard of Bindon. Anthony Browne Vicount Montacuter Two Heralds, after whom the Earls followed. Edward Earle of Lincolne. The Admirall was ficke.

Robert Earle of Suffex, was absent. because he was under age. Robert Earle of Leicester, went in another place, for that he was for this turne

Steward of the Queenes House. Edward Earle of Hertford. Henry Earle of Tenbroke. Francis Earle of Bedford. Henry Earle of Southampton.' Ambrofe Earle of Warwicke. William Earle of Bathe. Henry Earle of Huntingdon,

was abfent because he was President of Yorke. Henry Earle of Suffex. George Earle of Cumberland.

Elward

Edward Earle of Rutland.

William Earle of Worcester Supplied the place of the Marthall, being absent.

Henry Erle of Kent, went in another place because he carried the Sword.

George Earle of Shrewsbury, was ab-

Henry Earle of Northumberland, Then prisoner in the tower of London.

Edward Earle of Oxford, went in another place, because he was high Chamberlaine of England.

Phillip Earle of Arundell.

An Herald or King of Armes.

William Marquesse of Winchester: Hee
in another place carried the Cap roiall.

Heere were places fit for Dukes: all whose parliament roabes (a thing worth the noting) differed nothing from the Barons, but that they wore the guardes vpon their shoulders, three or foure fold. For although all Dukes, Marqueffes, and Earles, in their creations are attired with garments of Silke and Veluet, which are called Roabes or garments of Honour: yet in Parliaments they vie the fame that Barons doe, made of Skarlet, with certayne differences of white Furre, fet as fringes or edgings on their shoulders: for that there they al fit by reason of their Baronies, and according to their dignitie take their places.

Thomas Bromley Knight Chancellour of England; with William Cicil Baron of England; with William Cicil Baron of England; was by one footman carried before the Chancellour: but hee himselfe was attired in a Gowne of black Veluet lined with Sables.

IohnWhitgift also, Arch-bishoppe of Canterbury: with Edwin Sands Archbishop of Torke followed next after them.

Clarencieux King of Armes.
Two Sergeants at Armes with filuer feepters, which we call Maces, gilt.

Garter chiefe King at Armes, in his Heralds coate, having the chiefe gentleman Viher on his right hand.

The Marques of Winchester did beare the Cap repall, your whole left hand the Earle of Worcester carried the Rod of the Matthalfnip of Englad, in fteed of George Earle of Shrewsbury, then earle Marshal, who was then in the Parliament Chamber, although he was not heere present, for that he was ficke of the Gout.

The Earle of Kent after them carried the fword, on whose right handwent the earle of Oxford, then great Chamberlaine of England, and on his lest hand the Earle of Leitetier, Senofthall, or Steward of the queenes house.

The queenes Maiefly carried in a chaire as we have before faid. She her felfe decked up in a purple Robe, futred with Ermines. But her inner Garment was of purple veluet alfo, more straighter unto her body, turned up at the hand, with the same furre.

Foure Quirles of the Stable (whom in French they call Efguiries) and the Footmen in their rich Coates were attendant about the queene: and without them all along in a ranke, waited the Gentlemen Pentioners with their Partifans.

After them followed the Earle of Darbie, Mafter of the Horfe (inflead of the Earle of Leicester, who at this time supplyed the place of the Steward) leading a spare horse of state: by whom on the less hand rode Charles Howard, Baron of Efsingham, Chamberlaine of the queenes house, both of them attired in their Parliament Robes.

After these followed also Christopher Hatton, Knight Vice Chamberlaine, with many Noble women, Ladies, and other Noble Courtiers.

In this order and Royall pompe, the queene came vnto the South gate of S. Peters Church at Westminster, where the Bishop of Sarisbury, the Kings Almner, and Doctor Goodman Deane of that Church, with the Prebendaries, and all the quier received Her in their Coapes. Without the Porch was fet a Forme, furnished with Carpets and Cushions, at which the queene vpon her knees, receiued of the Deane the golden Scepter of S. Edward, which she layde vpon the Cuthion before her: and having received a little Booke of the Deane, vinto her felfe foftly prayed. Afterward thee came into the Church, vader a flately Canopy of Cloth of Siluer, which fixe Knights fup.

The Marchionesse of Northampton, and the countesse of Oxford bare up the train: Baron Howard of Liftinghow being Chaberlaine supporting her: Christopher Hatton Vice-Chamberlaine going on the other side, but not supporting her. But

foraímuch

forasmuch as the Queenes roabes made of rich silke and Etmins, were too weighty and chargeable for her well to beare, the Earle of Arundell on the right hand, and the Earle of Penbrooke on the left, held them up from her shoulders.

Before the Lord Chancellor and the Lord Treasurer, went the singing men and Quiristers, singing of Psalmes, and when the Queene was now come vnto the royall withdrawing or retyring place (commonly called the Trauerse) prepared for them vpon the right hand of the Quier, neare vnto the Communion Table: the Noble-men tooke their places vpon Formes, beneath the Trauerse, but the Bithops fate themselves downe beneath the Pulpit, on the north side of the Ower.

Quier.
The Archbishop of Canterburie, after a pfalme sing, made a serion, the sword and cap of Honour beeing in the meane time borne before him.

The fermon with a pfalme ended, the Queene on foote vnder a Canopy, went vnto the fouth gate of the Chirch, carrying in her hand the Scepter, adedicated to King Edward the Confessor, in which place, thee restored it vnto the Deane of Weilminster, of whom sheehad before received it, to be againe layd up.

It is worthy note, that whileft the Queenes Maiefly was hearing diume fernice in the Church, the Earle of Leicetter (for that time Steward of the Queenes house) went vnto the Lower Parliament house, to be there present at the answer of the Rescripts, (which our Lawyers call the Returne of the Writtes) before sent footh for the sommoning of the knights of the shires, and for the Burgestes of the townes thither, and met the Queene coming unto the ypper Parliament house.

The Queene being come thither, first retired her selse into her owne prinie Chamber, where resting her selse a litel, the Noble-men in the meane while, had in due order placed themselues in the vpper house; and at length the Queene her selse came forth, the Sword, the Cappe, and the Rod of the Marshalship of England being borne before her, shee went vp into the Royall Throne, the Nobilitie of the Kingdome sitting downe about her.

In the middeft of the vpper house he great Sackes of cloth filled with wooll's vpon the vppermost whereof fitteth the Chancellours and vpon those which he towards the fides of the house, fit the Maister of the Rolles, the Queenes Secretary, the Indges, the Barens of the Exchequer, and certayne Lawyers, aswell Civilians as Common Lawyers. Vpon the lowest of all a first the Clarke of the Parliament boute, with the Clarke of the Crowne, behinde whom the other Clarks write, resting your their knees.

When the Queene was fer, and that they of the neather bouse (videlicet) the Knights of the Shires; and the Burgeffes of the Citties were let in the commaun! ded the Lord Chancellour, flanding on the right hand by her, to make his Oration: who turning himfelfe vinto the Nobilitie, and the rest there present, declared voto them, in her Maiesties name. that this affembly of Parliament to be for three causes called (viz.) For the glorie of Almighty God, and the furthering of true Religion : For the health and prefernation of her royal Maieftie, and the welfare of the Common-weale. Whith after that hee had aloude and moftelostuently at large declared, turning his speech voto the Knights and Burgesses. flanding on an heape together below! he willed them to make choyle of their Prolocutor, and to give notice of him fo chosen, to the Lords of the Priny Counfell from whom they should expect what the Queens pleasure and answer was concerning him to cholen, to be afterward prefented.

When the Chancellor had ended his fpeech, the Clarke of the Parliament rising vp, in French, and with a lowd voice proclaimed the names of them, which as Delegates had the power within certain dayes to vinder than do the affaires afwell of the Kingdomes of England, Fraunce, Scotland, and Heland, as of the Dukedoms of Normandie and Aquitaine, and to hear and examine the requests and pertitions of them of the llands and parties beyond the Seas.

Which things being done, the Chancellour prorogued the Parliament; the Quene diffeeding from her Throane, and retiring into her Privic Ghamber, there put off her parliament fobes, when

when the Barons had in like manneralfo | iects : But especially in that she had then done, they in order (with the Sword, the Cappe of Honour, and the Rod of the Marshalship carried before her) attended her vnto her Barge, wherein shee from thence was downe the River carried backe vnto her Pallace (called White Hall:) through which the passed into the Parke, where the mounting upon a most couragious Horse; the Nobility, States, and most honourable men and women attending her, thee happily returned vnto her Pallace of S. James , from whence the before came:

Vpon Thurseday following, the day appointed for the prefenting of the Prolocutour, the Queene about three of the clocke in the after noone, by the Parke came from her royall honfe of S. James, vnto her pallace of White Hall; and when the had in her Chamber put on her Parliament roabes, the went to her I brone, the Sword, the Cappe, and the Rodde of the Marshalship, being after the wonted manner carried before her re The Lord Chamberlaine going on the right hand of the Sword, and the Lord Steward on the left, with the Lord Treasurer, Garter, the vihers, & the Sergeants at Armes going before them. At length, when the Noble men were fet downe, the Chancellour on the right hand, and the high Treasurour of England on the left hand, stood beside the Queene without the barres.

Then at length, the Knights of the Shires, and the Burgeffes of the Citties being admitted in, brought in their most learned Lawyer(viz.) John Puckering, who standing at the barre, and having thrice made most lowe obeifance, sayd what he might, to thew himfelfe voficto vodertake to great a burthen, requesting most carnestly, that they would make choice of another Prolocutor, vnto whom the Queene by the Chancellour made answers That thee liked exceeding well of the choice of him already made, and that the ratified the fame.

Which done, the Prolecutor framed himselfe to another manner of speach, wherein hee particularly rehearfed what great benefits were redounded vnto the Commonweale, by the most wife gouernement of her royall Maiestie : he declared her fingular vertues, her very naturall and Motherly care ouer her Subcalled together the Estates of the Kingdome, there to confult and confider of the most weightiest affaires of the Common-weale, earneftly admonishing the Bishops to prouide for the Ecclesiallicall and Church matters ! the Nobilitie and the rest to bee carefull of the profite and welfare of the Common-weale. In the conclusion of his speach, he most humbly requested , that the auncient Rights and Priviledges of the Lower house of the Burgeffes, (viz.) of freely deliuering of their speach and minds, and of being free from Arrests, as well themselves as their Scruants, during the time of the parliament, might be kept whole and vnrouched . And if that in any thing not well by them vnderstoode, they should happen to offend, he requested leave aswell for himselfe as for the rest, to have accesse vnto her rovall Majestie.

His Oration at length ended, the Chancellor, by the Queene commanded, and in fome poynts, by her instructed, highly commended the Prolocutors Oration, and in the Queence name graunted the leave he had requested.

Which things being fo on both fides dispatched, the Queene rose and retired herselse into her private Chamber, put off her Parliament roabes, and so attended uppon with the Nobilitie, came downe: and at the West side of the Parliament house, mounted into her chaire of Estates a very royall one; and from thence with a great traine of Noblemen and honorable Ladies attending her (the Earle of Kent carrying the Sword before her) shee by Torch-light through the Parke, returned vnto her Pallace of Saint lames, from whence the before came.

The maner of fitting in the V pper house of Parliament, is in this Platforme following in the next Page, most truly and linely described.

CHAP



CHAP. XXII.

The manner of restoring of renewed Nobilitie before loft.



HE maners and formes of creating of Noblemen, with their Rites and Ceremonies, by Chartersand Kefcripts, or Writs of fummons, wechaue

before described. Now heere at length I haue thought it good, to ioyne heereunto the manner of restoring of dignities & honours before loft. Such as have by their owne or others fault, loft their honorable | ding to the manner of the Empire flyled stiles and titles, are wont to bee vnto the fame by petitions, exhibited vnto the Kings in full Parliament restored: which I would fay, to be a confirmation of renewed or restored Nobility. Whereof the request of Margret, daughter to George Duke of Clarence, in Parliament, in the first yeare of King Henry the eight, (to omit others) may ferue for an example. Whereby the is ref ored vnto the Stile, State, Name, Title, Honour, and Dignity of the Counteffe of Sarisbury, fro which Edward her Brother Earle therof, had by his guilt fallen. The Petition it felfe is longer then is necessary to be heere inserted. It is in English extant in the Records, & is thut vo with thefe words.

Which petition beeing read, and to the full vnderstood, and consented vnto by our faid Lord the King, by the aduice and affent of the Lords spirituall and temporall, and of the Cominalty in the aforefaide Parliament being: and also by the Authority of the same Parliament, it was vnto the fame Petition thus answered.

> Soit faict come il est desire. Beit done according as it is requested.

CHAP. XXIII.

Cust omes.



Haue said Politicall Nobility, still subject vnto the dispositions of Princes, and change of time; to rest alwayes vpon the customes of Nations.

For first of all, it is manifest, dignities which were but the bare names of personal Offices, to have at length become hereditary and successory: and yet with diuers Lawes circumscribed.

For although women in Germany born of Dukes, Earles, or Barons, are accorand called Dutcheffes, Counteffes, and Baronesses; yet by the Law of the Imperiall grant, the Principalities themselues, with the Fees thereto belonging, descend vnto the Males onely, who fayling, they reuert vnto the Emperor. Which thing, the most great Dukedome Carinthia, proueth to be fo. For Ericus the last Duke beeing dead without heires male, the dukedome by the Lawes returned againe vnto the Empire: which Lewes the Emperour afterward bestowed vppon Albert Duke of Austria.

Sigismund the Emperor also, the right line of the dukes of Saxony being extinct, gaue the dukedome in the yeare 1423.vnto the Marquesses of Misnia; and the Marquifat of Brandenburg, vnto the Burgraves of Noriburge : whose successors euen now at this day enjoy the same.

The same we reade to have been done in Italy: For Wenceflaus the Emperour in the yeare 1490. graced the Vice-county of Millaine with the Title of a Dukedome: but fo as that for want of heires male, it should together with that Dignitie, bee made a part of the Imperial patrimony. And in the remembrance of our Grandfathers, we reade of certayne (aswell at Waples as else-where,) to have beene by the Emperour Charles the fifth created; but yet alwayes with that common Lawe of Reuersion, that so soone as the

last of the male discent should dye, they I meane time he affirmeth, private Princi-(hould be made Imperiall dignities. Yet heere by the way we must remember, that the Emperors did not at all times doe all greatnesse of their power; but sometime by a new beneficiary or bountifull couenant, being requested to to doe, suffered those titles of honours to descend vnto the daughters (no heires male remaining) mittigating the extremity of the law, by wife mens interpretations thereof, regard being still had, eyther of the Commonweale, or of some former agreement, or of the time present.

Chap. 23.

In France, Rennatus Choppinus, difputing of the Royall Demaine, maketh a distinction of dignities. For he affirmeth all Military and masculine dignities, by the Law Salique to be annexed vnto the Fees Royall, neither by any meanes, by meere Law, to come vnto the Women, althogh that the heyres male faile; except by speciall and expresse words it bee before otherwife prouided : which hee faith, himfelfe to have seene and read. Yet in the | here following is contained.

palities not to be denied to women:which hee manifesteth by the example of the County of Arminiack by a womans right things according to the vttermost of the | denolued vnto the King of Nauarre, as by many others alfo.

And to mee, now writing and running ouer some few things concerning our owne affaires, it fortuned a certaine most ancient writing to come vnto my hands, taken out of the ancient Saxon Lawes, and lent me by William Lambert, a great admirer of reuerend antiquity, and a most earnest restorer thereof. Which writing, although that both in tongue and characterit incerely found Saxon like, yet feemethit in fome things, to favour of the Danifb maters, as also of the ancient lawes cyther of the Britons themselves, or of the Saxons, shaken and rent in funder, vinder the rule and government of the Lanes.

But the writing it felfe written in the Saxon tongue, translated into English, word for word, & into Latine, according vnto the true fenfe and meaning thereof,

hiv pef hpilumon Englalagum ji leos J lazum pop bezepincoum, Anoba It was sometime in the English Lawes, that the people and lawes were in reputation. And then Tempus erat elim cum Anglicis, legibus & populo suus voique constabat honor. Qui ex

pajon leon pivan peondreiperpynda, ale be hirmade. Conl y Ceopl Dern y were the wifelt of the people worthip worthy, each in his degree. Borle and Chorle. Thern and populo prudētis sīmi erant in honore fuerunt suo quis á, or dine. Comes & Colonus. Thaynus &

Decoen ; And zir Ceopl zeheah & he heroe rullice rir hioa azene lanoe, Cirican 7 Undertheyn. And if a Choole to thrived that he had fully five hides of his owne land, a Church a Sub-thaynus. Quòd si Colonus ita re fecisset ot habuerst plenè quing; hidas proprie trre ede

Cycenan, bellour of burhgavered of rundenno ve on Cynger healle, honne far he a hitchen, a Belhouse and a gate, a leate and a fenerall office in the Kings Ball, then was he Coquinam,Campanile,& Portam,locum itë et peculiare munus in Regius Aula, tunc erat de-

pannon rond Dezen nizhverpeonde; And zir Dezn zeheah i he henobe Cynze thenceforth the Theynes right worthy. And if a Theyne to thrived that he forced the bing inceps pari cum Thayno dignitat e. Sivero Thaynus ita prouect us crat vt Regi sernicrit, 7 hir paor venne pao on hir hipede, gir he honne hepde Dezn de him riligde and on his mellage or journey rode in his houthold, if he then had a Thegne that him followed. े nuncius eiss esfet & equitauerit in familiâ,st tunc etiā Thaynum sībi famulantē habuerit.

be to Cynger ut pan Fif hioa happe on Cynger revl hir hlarope benove o lubocto the kings erpedition fine Byves had, and in the kinges Pallace his Logo ferued, and qui ad Regiam expeditionem 5 drydas habuerit eiuf ge in Regia aula Domino feruierit, terque

Spilsa mio hir apend zeropa to Cynze he mort riddan mio hir ropade hir hlaropo thrice with his exande had gone to the Ring, he might afterward with his fore Dath his Lordes eius nuncius ad Regem venerst, hic deinceps data fidelitate Domini persona sustinere poterat

arplian art inirlicanneodan; And rir Degn gedeal; I he peande to Corle honnepar he part play at any neede. And if a Cheyne fo thined that he became an Carle, then was be thencesi opus fuisset. Quod si Thaynus ita evectus erat ve Comes cuaserit pari erat deinceps

ritt an Cople ninverpeonte. And zir Warrene zetean the repos hoits oren fwith an Garles right weathy. And if a Parchant fo thiueb, that hee paffeb thice ouer the Comite dignitate. Et si Mercator ita rem fecissit, ut ter vastum mare sua peritia

pio Sæbe hir azenum cpapve,he pælþonne riððan Dezne pizverpeonde;Ano zir leon. tuive Sea of his owne Craft, he was thenceforth the Thernes right worthy. And if a Scholtraiccerit, paritunc erat cum Thayno dignitate. Quod fe Isterarum studiosu litte-

ner gedeah hurhlare i he hanherde I benode Xpe, he par bonne riddan made ler to thrived through learning, that he had begree and ferued Christ, be was thenceforth of bignity ris progressum fecisset, vt ordines habuerit & Christo inseruierit, erat deinde venerandum

y nuinoe rpa micelrepynoe rpa pænto gebyreoe, buton he forporhte phe pær haono and peace fo much worthy as thereto belonged, bnleffe be forfeited fo that be the ble of his bede immunis quantum ad locum eius spectabat, nist ita excidisset ut suo munere uti non

te notian ne morte) grœ ne might. potuisset.

520

Thefe

These ruines or rubbidges of antiquity, | having obtained the Soueraignty, accormake shew of a perpetuity of Nobility, e- ding to his pleasure bestowed dignities & uen from the beginning of this Hand, but times are changed, and we in them also. For King Edward the Confessor, last of the Saxon blood, comming out of Normandy. bringing then in the Title of a Baron, the Thaynes from that time began to grow out of vie; fo that at this day men remember not so much as the names of them. And at length, that name of Baronage began to be both in dignity and power To magnificent about the reft, as that in the name of the Baronage of England, all the Nobility of the Land seemed to be comprehended. As for Dukes, they were (as it were) fetcht from long exile, and againe renewed by King Edward the third. And Marquesses & Vicounts, were altogether newly brought in by King Richard the fecond, and King Henry the fixt.

But our Kings descended of the Norman blood, together with the Crowne of the Kingdome, granted an hereditary & fucceffory perpetuity vnto honourable titles, fuch I meane as are the Titles of Earldomes and Baronies) without any difference of fex at all. Which thing I thought good to make manifest, by the examples of the more ancient times. In the reckoning vp whereof, that I may the better acquit and discharge my selfe; in the very entrance of my speech, there be 3 things, whereof I would have the Reader by the way, to be especially forewarned. First, concerning the disposition and inclination of our Kings, in the creating of the nobility. Secondly, of the custome of transferring of honours and dignities by Families. And thirdly, of the force of time, & the change and alteration of things. For why, our Kings (who only and alone, doe in their kingdome beare the absolute rule and fway) are with vs efficient causes of all Politicall Nobility. The Titles of Named Nobility, by our custome, have this naturall and common together with the Crowne it selfe, that the heyres male fayling, they devolue vnto the Women, except in the first Charters it be by expresse words otherwife prouided; and yet fo, as that regard is alwayes to bee had of the time, which is curry where wont to beare fway in the formality of things.

In this manner William the first, King fayling. and Conqueror, Harold being ouercome,

honors vpon his companions and others, (viz.) some of them so anexed and conioyned vnto the Fees themselves, as that euen yet at this day, the possessors therof, may feeme to be ennobled, even with the possession of the places onely. As our Bishops at this day, as also certaine ecclesiafticall Abbots and Priors; who by reason of the Baronies iouned vitto their Bishoppricks, enjoy the titles and preheminence of Barons in the highest affemblies of the kingdome in Parliament. Otherfome of the dignities and honors, he gaue and granted also, together with the lands and fees themselves. As he gaue to Hugh Lupus his kinfman and a Norman, the carldome of Chester. Ad Conquirendum de tenendum sibi & haredibus, adeo liberè per gladium sicut ipse Rex tenuit Angliam per Coronam. To conquer and hold it to him and his heyres, as freely by the Sword, as the King himfelfe helde England by the Crowne. With the Earledome of Richmond hee graced Alanus Rufus, his Nephew, and then Earle of Britaine in France and his heyres : Italibere & honorifice vt cundem Edwinus Comes antea tenuerat: fo freely and honorably as Earle Edwin had before holden the same. And the Earledome of Arundel, which Harold possessed, he granted with a fee vnto Roger of Montgemery. The first two of which honors (the heyres male fayling) by women eftfoones passed into other Families, but the latter Earledome, Robert the Sonne of Roger beeing attainted of treason, returned vnto King Henry the first, who gaue the same in dowry vnto Queene Adeliza his Wife.

The fucceeding Kings more sparingly, bestowed such dignities to bee holden of them in Fee, granting only for the better and more honourable maintenance of their stocke and honour, the third part of the Pleas of the County (as they tearme it) which they in their Charters called Tertium Denarium, or the third penny. So that hee which received the third penny of any Prouince, he the fame man by the fame ancient Law of fuccession, was called Earle of the same Prouince: and so by custome the women, the heyres male

Yy3

And

whence and

beare rule in all things viz. the Law, Cu-

Necessity.

And if any Earle or Baron dying without Sonnes, had many women his heires, howfoeuer order was either by couenant, husband Gilbert, a Sonne called also Gilor by way of partition taken, concerning the Lands and possessions, according to the common Lawes of the kingdome, yet the dignity and honour, a thing of it felfe indinifable, was still left to be disposed of, according to the Kings pleafure. Who in bestowing thereof, for the most part respected the prerogative of birth.

By which right, King Henry the third, after the death of John the Scot, dead with out iffue tother lands and renennues being by agreement given vnto his three Sifters) vnited the Earldome of Chester, with the honor thereof vnto the Crown. This is also manifest in the Earledome of Arundell: which (after Robert of Bellifme, Sonne to the aforefaid Roger of Montgomery, driven out by Henry the first) King Henry the second bestowed vpon William of Albinie, Queene Adeliza his Mothers Husband, and by a new Charter, confirmedit in Fee, together with the inheritance to him and his heires, with the third penny of the Pleas of Suffex, whereof he created him Earle. But Hugh the great, Nephew of this William the first, beeing dead without iffue, all the inheritance of the Earledome was divided among his foure Sifters. Whose dignity and honour for all that, together with the Castle of Arundel, was by Edward the first, at length given to Richard Fitz-Alan (viz.) the Nephewes Sonne to John Fitz-Alan and Ifabell the second of the aforesaid Sisters.

Now let vs passe from Henry the third. vnto Edward the first his Sonne. When as for a time a great diffention was betwixt him and certaine of his Nobility (viz.) Gilbert of Clare Earle of Hertford and of Glocester : Humfrey of Bohun, carle of Hereford and Suffex, and Constable of England, and Roger Bigod Earle of Norfolke, Marshall of the kingdome, and that all those Noble-men, at length had lost their Earledomes and Offices, they being reconciled vnto the King, afterward by new Charters received the same againe in this manner.

The first of them, received the same vnto himfelfe & Joane the fame kings daughter his second wife, for tearme of both their lines, and to the Children to bee by by his first wife being excluded.) This Ioane (called Ioane of Acon) bare voto ber bert; but sheethe second time, secretly married vnto one Radulph, of Mont Hermeri(without the King her Fathers know ledge) in her owne right, made also the fame Radulph Earle to long as thee lived. But the at length being dead, Gilbert her sonne, by the aforesaid Gilbert, succeeded againe into the Earledome, Radulph his Father in Law being yet aliue. In the very same manner he restored the Earledoms and Office of Constableship vnto the aforefaid Humfrey of Bohun, vnto whom alfo he gaue in marriage Elizabeth, another of his Daughters, widdow to John Earle of Holland: and vnto the third, he restored the Earledome of Norfolke, and the office of the Marescall, with a yearely encrease of a thousand Markes; yet vpon condition, that the heires male of his body to be begotten fayling, both of them should returne againe vnto the King. At length, this Roger dyed without iffue, in the xxxv. yeare of him the faid Edward the first viz. in the last yeare of his reigne: and King Edward his Son, the second of that name, both by a new Creation & Charter, gaue the Earledome and the Marshalship vnto Thomas of Brotherton his Brother, and his heyres male.

Thefe things wee haue thus propounded, thereby to shew, how according to the divers dispositions of Princes, & chages of times, it hath by little and little varried in the first bestowing of dignities and honours. Of which thing (that new Law) and to them of ancient time vnknowne, made by King Edward the first himselfe, feemeth afterward to have beene of no finall weight and moment, whereby, hee fauouring certaine private men, more carefull of their owne furname, then of their posterity, it was thought vnto him good, & so decreed, to make Fees to belong to men only. That law I fay which I would in Latine call Gentilitium Municipale, & which the Lawvers commonly call Ius Talliatum, and Talliabile: or the Law of cutting off: for that it cutteth off fuccessions before generall, and restraineth them vnto the particular heyres of Families: which feemeth also to have giuen an occasion of change in the giving them two begotten (his two Daughters | and bestowing of dignities and honors.

For ever fince that time, in the creating | him, challenging vnto himfelte the polof any new Earle, it is begunne to be altogether by expresse words in all Charters provided, that it shall bee but for terme of life onely, or discend unto the heires males alone, the Women being quite excluded. And this I need not by examples to prooue; for why, the thing it selfe producth the same. But the force heires male and kinsmen, of whom hee and efficacie of this Lawe of Entaile, (or of cutting off) I have thought good thus

in few words to declare.

The Lands and Fees of the earledome of Oxford (Robert Earle of Oxford and Duke of Ireland, being condened of treafon) by that Law came to Albericus Vere vncle to Robert, who therefore in Parliament, requested of the King, the Title of the Earledome also, and obtayned the fame. This is also most manifest, by the example of the Earledomes of Arundell and of Surrey, joyned together in the family of Fitz Alan. For Edmund Fitz-Alan Earle of Arundell, married the onely fifter and heire of Earle Richard, and of her begot Richard, happy with his in Fraunce. And this Iohn, both Earle twice marriage. Vnto this Richard, the fonne of Edmund, and his heires male by Alenor of Lancaster (his second wife) begotten, and to be begotten, the Castle, Honour, and Lordship of Arundel were entailed in the one and twentith yeare of Edward the third. And afterward (viz.) the same yere, Earle John his brother being dead without iffue, enriched also with the encrease of the Earledome of surrey, he was called Earle of Arundell and Surrey. Of Alenor Richard begot a fonne, called Richard, at length Earle of Arundell and Surrey also : and John Fitz-Alan his fecond fonne, in the right of his wife, called Baron Maltreuers, This Richard had Thomas, his onely Sonne, dead without iffue; and foure Daughters his Coheires (viz.) Elizabeth, Ioane, Margaret, and Alice, who divided the Earledome of Surrey amongst them. Howbeit the dignity therof was granted to John Mowbray duke of Suffolke, begotten of Elizabeth the eldest lister; who by the ancient custome of Succession challenged vnto himselfe the Earledome of Arundell also. But Iohn Baron of Maltreuers, Nephew to the first John Fitz-Alan, and Baron of Maltreuers, by his fonne Iohn opposed himselfe against this man, and withstood

fession of that cattle and demaine of A. rundell, as fallen vnto him by the good right of the Law of Entaile.

For Thomas the last Earle being dead without iffue(as is afore-faid, he alleaged the demaine of the Castle nor to belong vnto the Sifters, but to difcend vnto his himselfe was nearest of kinne vnto the faid Earle Tooms of which Fee, feeing by Law he held the possession, he affirmed the Title of honour and dignitic more fiely to agree voto himselfe then to lie in vaine, and to no purpose hidden in the Duke himfelfe. Which thing, although hee could not obtayne, yet Iohn his sonne, a most famous warriour, after the death of his Father, with the applause and good liking of all men, obtained by Acte of parliament, in the eleauenth yeare of King Henry the fixt. Of whom alfo, for his great deferts and most noble vertues, he was the yeare after, rewarded with the dukedome of Thurania and Duke, being dead, Humphrey his fon, in short time after dead without iffice (notwithstanding his fister) left the earledome of Arundell entailed vnto William his vncle, in whom afterward it took fuch root, as that we have feene it in the male line, to have brought forth most famous and renowned Earles, even vnto this our

And what wee have fayd concerning Earles, the same be it said also of Barons created by Charters. But in Barons created by Rescripts or Writs of Summons yet resting vpon most auncient custome, not fo.

For in them (one onely excepted, fent forth to Henry Bromflet, wherein it was prouided him, that fame Henry and his heires male of his body lawfully begotten, only to be Barons of Vefey) women, the heires male failing, were not in ancient time forbidden or embarred, but that they might be accounted, and by name stiled honourable, with the præeminence of the dignity and calling of Barons. And after they had borne a Childe, according to the auncient fauour of our Lawes, and the reverend custome of the Kingdome, graced their husbands also with the same honour; & with the fame by inheritance conobled

Chap.23.

ennobled their children; yea, euen without the possession of those places, from whence the names of fuch dignities and honours may seeme first to have risen. For Fees and locall possessions, circumscribed by the Lawe, are translated and carried from one family to an other, and viually enrich their Lords and owthemselves, neyther bring nor take away Nobilitie, either Datiue or Natiue. By Examples to manifest these things were but needeleffe; for why, all the most auncient Baronies, and the more auncient fort of the Barons at this day, are in this poynt on my fide, and give voices withme. Now, if any man studious of these things, by chaunce meeting with some things of other nature, shall more curiously dispute against these matters, vnto him I would oppose, eyther the force of time, or the carelefnesse and lacke of looking vnto. But, Customes are still like themselues, neyther are we to detract from the authoritie of Kings, who although they have fuch supereminent, and undeterminate prerogative, as that they may feeme fometimes to haue of fauour graunted, some things beside the Lawes; yet shall it not appeare them requested, to have done, or yet suffered any thing to bee done, contrarie vnto the Customes of Stockes and Families. So they fornctime not regarding the folemnities of Ceremonies and Charters. haue onely by their beckes (that I may fo fay) fuffered dignities and honours to bee transferred, as in Ranulph Blundeuill, Earle of Chester, and of Lincolne to bee feene. For the Earledome of Cheffer, he permitted after the manner, to discend to John the Scot his Nephew, by Mand the eldest of his Sisters. But the Earledome of Lincolne, (the King thereunto consenting) hee yet aline delinered vnto Havisia another of his Sisters, now married to Robert Quincy, by his deede, in the feuenteenth yeare of the reigne of King Henrie the third, in these words following.

524

Ranulphus Earle of Lincolne, vinto all inen present, and to come, which shall see this present VV riting, greeting. I would have it to come vnto the generall knowledge of you all, mee to haue

ginen and graunted, and by this my prefent writing, to have confirmed to the Lady Hamifia of Quincy, my most deare Sifter, the Earledome of Lincolne, (viz.) as farre forth as it vnto mee belonged fo that the may thereof be Counteffe. To haue and to hold the same of my Lord the King of England, and his heires, vnto ners the possessions thereof: but yet of the faide Hawisia and her heires, freely, quietly, fully, peaceably, and wholly by right of inheritance, with all the appurnances, and liberties vnto the aforefaide Earledome belonging. And that this present Writing may stand in force for euer, I have thought it good to firme and strengthen the same, by the setting to of my Scale. These being witnesses.

> Hawifa with this her brothers writing in this manner endowed, was forthwith Countesse of Lincolne, who yet living, presently gaue the same to John Lacie her sonne in lawe. So also I may not passe o. uer Hugh Courtney the first of that family and name, in the time of King Edward the third : for he, when hee had for many yeares after the death of Ifabell de Fortibus (whose sole heire hee was) quietly possed the lands and Fees of the earledome of Densbire, without eyther the Title or Inuestiture of an Earle, and that at length contention arose betwixt him and the Kings officers of the Exchequer, for the repayment of the third penny, for that hee as yet yfed not the Stile of an Earle, hee having written Letters supplicatorie vnto the King, then busied in the warres in Scotland, received answer; That taking vnto himselse the Name and Dignitie of an Earle, hee should cause himselfe, from that time forward, to bee named and called Earle of Denlbire, in thefe words.

> T'He King to his welbeloued and faithfull, Hugh of Courtney the Elder,&c. Greeting,&c. Whereas you, as appeareth by your Petition exhibited before vs and our Councell, have of long beene fued for the repayment of eighteene pounds, fixe shillings and eight pence, of the yearely Fee of the Earledome of Densbire, which Isabell de Fortibus, late Countesse of Denshire, whose heire you are, and the heires of her the faid Counteffe, and yours, Earles of Densbire,

yearely received by the hards of the 1 of Tutbury, a Castle (videlicer) in the Sheriffes of that Countie that were for the time being, and which you likewife after the death of the aforefaide Counteffe, as her heire for a certaine time receiued: And for that they have beene from you detained, because you have in no wife named and stiled your selfe an Earle: as by the Certificate of the Treafuror, and of the Barons of our Exchequer, by our commandement made into our Chancerie, more at large doth appeare. Wee, for that the inheritance which was the aforefaid Counters, and the inheritance of her Predecessours, and yours, the Earles of Denshire; ynto you discended by hereditary right and that you at this present hold the same inheritance; willing in this part to prouide, as well for our owne Dignitie, and theequitie of our Kingdome, as for your honeur: will and commaund you, in requefting you, that in taking vnto you the name and honour of an Earle, you from hencefoorth cause your selfe to be called Earle of Denshire, knowing that wee will make the aforesaide Fee to bee yearely payed vnto you, as it hath beene wont to bee payed vnto the Earles of Denshire your Predecessours . Witnesse the King at New-castle vopon Tine, the two and twentith day of February, & in the ninth yeare of our reigne.

Last of all, we have seene this same not long fince, in Phillip Howard confirmed. For hee, after the most auncient right of the Earledome of Arundell, tooke vnto himselfe the Title of Arundell, the Queene onely confenting thereunto, and approuing the fame; no forme of Charter repeated, or of any forme of his Creation being thereunto joyned.

Hitherto it seemeth also to appertaine, that our most auncient Earles were of auncient time wont (according to the divertitie of the places) where they for the most part chose to dwell, to to bee called by diverse Titles of Dignities. For Reynold who was Earle of Cornewall, for his continual dwelling at Briston, was oftentimes called Earle of Bristow.

Robert of Ferrars the younger, Earle of Ferrars in Normandie, and of Derbie in England, fometime wrote himselfe Earle Borders of Stafford-foire built by his Progenitours. Baldwine and Richard of Riuers, were fometime called Earles of Execter, and fometimes Lordes of the Ile of Wight, for their continual dwelling in the fame places; when as yet in the meane time, they were both Earles of Densbire. William also of Albiniac. Earle of Arundell and Suffex, the first of that name, in the Letters of agreement betwixt king Stephen and king Henrie the fecond, fer himfelfe thereto a Witnes, by the name of William Earle of Ciceiter, for that he there oftentimes dwelt. Adde hecreunto also if you please, the Earle of Penbrooke to have beene called the Earle of Strigulia, of the Calle of Strigulia, built by William Fitz-Osborne Earle of Hereford, and the Scate of the Earles of Penbrooke.

Thefethings (I fay) were of olde and in auncient time, but now at this day. not fo. For fuch is the force of time, and change in altering of the forms of things, as that it eating out of the olde, bringeth still in new. So vnto Earles, whom we faid in ancient time to have beene rewarded with the third penny of the Prouince whereof they were earles, to maintaine their Honour and Dignitie, a certaine fumme of mony is at this day yerely payed them out of the Exchequer, and they enjoy the Titles of fuch places, as wherein they have not any jurisdiction. administration, or profite at all. Barons alfo, who as the Fathers and Senators in auncient time among the Romans, were chosen by their Sestertia; were in like manner wont to bee efteemed and valued by Knights Fees (for why, hee which had and possessed thirteene Knights sees, and a little more, was then to bee accounted among the Barons) are now, more fildome times chosen for their vertue, their great wealth, and large poffeffions.

Neither is there any let, but that a man may hold and still retaine, the name and Title of a Barony, the head of which Barony (asthey tearmeit) he hath afterward fold or alienated to some other common perfon.

In briefe, our kings royall maiefly is alwaves like it felfe, constant, and the fame: which having regard to the vertue flock,

wealth, and substance of any man (whereby hee may with his Councellor feruice, profit the Common-weale) may in enery place freely give and bestow Dignities and Honours, fometime chufing moe Barons then one, out of one & the same family, the custome of the succession of the former and more auncient Baron, beeing still kept whole, and not in anie hurt : as we fee , Edward the fixt wifely to have done in the familie of the Willoughbies; which family (that for breuitie fake I should not reckon vp moe) befide the most ancient Barony of the Willoughbies of Eresby, brought foorth another Barony also of Parham. Wherefore wee acknowledge our Kings to bee the Fountaines of Politicall Nobilitie, and vnto whom we may with thankes, referre all the degrees of Honours and Dignities; wherefore I may not, without cause, feeme to rejoyce on the behalfe of our Nobilitie of Britaine, which hath alwaies fo had Kings themselves, Authours, Patrons, Gouernours, and Defendours thereof, that when Lands, Fees, and Poifessions, subject to Couenants or agreements, are still toffed and turmovled with the stormes of the Iudiciall Courts, and of the Common Lawe; it is onelie

Per titulos numerentur aui, sempérq; renata Nobilitate viret, o prolem fata sequantur : Continuum proprià seruantia lege tenorem.

vnto the Kings themselues beholden, and

restethypon heroicall orders and institu-

tions proper and familiar vnto it felfe. So

By Titles great, mens Auncestors were knowne still as they came, And fo their owne posteritie, do still enioy the same; And flourish long without decay. with cuerlasting fame.

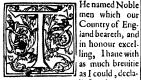
For the Noble-men, for deciding of futes concerning their Honours, and for the giving voto every man that which of right belongeth vnto his Farme and Dignitie, haue their Tribunall or proper Martiall Court, which they are wont to call, The Court of Chualry : whereof, when wee shall come vnto the Order of Knight-hood, wee shall say somewhat more.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Noblemen of the leffer fort.

men which our

Country of Eng-



in honour excelling, I haue with as much breuitie las I could, declared, and in painting of it foorth, propofed it vnto the eye : with what Lawes alfo they are created, and with what orders of fucceffions they after our manner line, I have in few wordes briefely thewed Now if I had vnto these also ioyned the Fellowes of the Order of the Garter, I might well feeme to have ended this Treatife, beeing about to haue written nothing at all, of those whom wee call Noble men of the leffer fort, or Vnnamed: but the earnest and continual calling yppon of certaine of my friends, ouercame mee. Wherefore, feeing that it is nevther altogether strange from our purpose, and may be done without straining of the Methode of that I have taken in hand, both the place, and the requests of my friends have inuited mee by the way to toyne heereunto these few things

heereatter following: The Noblemen therefore of the lef-grees or riks fer fort, are in three forts or rankes divi- of Noblemer dedly comprehended.

The first ranke or order, is of Knights: fort, The second is of Esquires: The third, of them we call onely by the name of Gentlemen.

Those whom the Frenchmen simplie call Gentilzhommes, and wee in English Gentlemen, wee thus diftinguish into three fores:

First, hee which derineth his Stocke Plaine Genwith Armes from his Aunceftors, is by out anie other bloud a Gentleman.

Secondly, hee which beareth Armes onely, although he be not yet by Stocke a Gentleman, is yet called a Gentleman, and giveth Gentry vnto his fonnes.

onely for his learning, or for fome Office or function which hee beareth, hee onely for himselfe, is in common estimation accounted a Gentleman; although he had a common person to his Father, and leave his Sonnes common persons also.

An Esquire, who sometime is also called Scutifer, or a Shield bearer, and in ancient time Home ad Arma (or a Man at Armes) in French Escuire, and in Englith a Squire, or an Esquire, is next vnto a Knight: as hee who in ancient time following a Knight, by his fide bare his Armes, as a most faithfull Fellow-fouldier with him, From whence perhaps, they whom wee at this day in our Kings houses, account Squires for the bodie, seeme to have taken their beginning. But that which at first was by institution | a militarie Office, is now become a degree of dignitie : whereof, Antiquitie it felfe, and the cuftome of our Kingdome hath brought forth vnto vs foure kinds.

The first doth comprehend all the younger fonnes of Barons, and of other Noble-men, and their first begotten Sonnes alfo; who together with their being first borne, make the dignitie of Esquireship successorie, so long as their iffue male faileth not.

Another kinde (and that most auncient) is of them, which are borne the eldest Sonnes of Knights, and their eldest Sonnes also.

The third is of them, which of auncient time graced with Armes belonging vnto their Stocke and Family, are the first begotten and chiefe of their house and stocke. And these by a certayne prerogatiue of being the eldest or first born, goe before all the rest of the Gentlemen of the same Family aside discended, and are accounted Esquires.

The fourth kind respecteth the common-weale, and the Kings house. For they which beare publique Offices in the Common-weale, are of Gentlemen in reputation made Esquires . Such as are the Iudges, the Kings Atturney, and Prolocutor: the Sergeants at Law, and other Officers of like fort belonging vnto the Exchequer.

Vnto these also wee may especially ioyne, if not preferre, fuch as proceede

Thirdly, hee which is of reputation | Doctors of Diamitie, or otherwise in other professions in the Vniuersities. For Doctorship is a Title of Dignitic more noble, then they which are Gentlemen but by their flocke onely : voto whom alfo after our manner, in the Kings Commissions concerning the publike affaires, fo much præeminence is giuen, as that they may well feeme in dignitie, to bee compared with Knights.

In the Kings house also, the Apparitors, commonly called Sergeants at Armes, Heralds, and all ferning in the Kings Court, whom for the præeminence of their Offices, we also call Sergeants, are made Efquiers with chaines, viz.) with a Collar made of Silver and blacke SS put about their neckes by the Kings themsclues.

Knights (in French called Chenaliers) Knights are with vs called either Knights Banne rets, Knights of the Bath, or Knights Batchellors.

Other there be of the Garter also, but of another fort, then that they are to be comprehended in a kind, to be compared with these as in due place is to be shewed.

Banneret is a degree of Honour, Bannerers esteemed the last amongest the greatest (I meane Nobilium majorum) or the first with those of the second ranke. Three formes of creations I have observed, as Sir Rob. Cott. fometimes vnder the Royall Standerd displayed: the person having the lower end of his Pennon cut off into a square (fuch as Barons vse) receiveth that Honour : Or as Edward the third enjoyned William de la Poole by Patten, Vt statum or honorem teneret & continueret Banne-retti, Tohim and tohis heires: Or as Ni-

cholaus de Grey was declared, by Writ of Ed.3. King Edward the fecond, to be, De fami- Ex comp. Garlia Regis tanquam Bannerettus; thereby derbig Ed 2. meaning, both Precedencie and Sallary accordingly.

The two other Knight-hoods Batchellors, and of the Bath, admit this difference betweene them, that to the one from elective grace of the Soueraigne (to attend himselfe or Quene in their inaugurations, or his Childrens creations) there is annexed a Ministeriall ductic to their knightly dignities; the other, nothing being left but their bare Stile and proper Merite; and therefore they are eyther in the Record, mentioned by none of

The Court of

of Cheualtic

Clanja Hena

528

ther name then Milites simplici, yet had in | ned the third penny of his Earledonic former ages (as well as other degrees of from the time he was made knight, about honour) many worthy and religious ceremonies, as also peculiar robes at their Creations (as appeareth copiously both in flory and record.) But they by iniury of times, and promiscuous admissions (which somewhat declined their reputation) had beene fully loft, had not the other prescrued the memory and vse of such venerable order.

As for right of precedency betweene these two; or whether such temporallsernice enlarged to the one more then the other, inuefleth a perpetuall priority or no, I leave it to the discussion of those, to whom in due of place, and depth of Judgment, it properly belongeth.

No man is borne a Knight, but men vppon their knees receive that Dignity (which is not but together with life loft, or taken away) of the King or his Licutenant generall; having regard cyther to his stocke, his vertue, or his fortune, or his actes done at home or abroad; lightly striking him that is so to be created, vpon the shoulder with a drawne Sword. The Prince speaking these words in French; Soyes bon Cheualier d'oresenauant au nom de Dieu: (Bee from hence-forth a good Knight, in the name of God.) And they which are fo made Knights, having kiffed the Sword, and this word (Sir) being added vnto their names, for tearme of their lines, are enery where (after the French manner in calling of their Kings) diftinguithed from other men; Sir John Norris, Sir Francis Drake. A dignity indeede of it felfe fo found, apparant, & ful of honor, as that it enery where befeemeth most great Dukes and Earles: and which even Kings thefelues have not disdained kindly to thanke one another for. For fowe reade our King Henry the fecond of that name, to have made Malcolme King of the Scots, Knight at Turwin in France, for his good fernice at Tholouse, in the yeare 1159. And Alexander, the Sonne of William King of the Scots, being not 14 years old, to have received the order of knighthood in England, in the yeare 1212. Hugh Vere restored vnto the Earledome of Oxford, was by the King made Knight. Henry of Lacy also in the right of his Wife, and by the refignation of his Mother in law, promoted to be Earle of Lincolne, recei-

ten yeares more or lesse before hee was created Earle. Beside that, the ancient Register of the Church of Abingdon thus reporteth.

Richard Earle of Chester, with his mother Ermentrude, lodged in the Towne of Abingdon; Farritius the Abbot, and the Countesse his Mother, earnessly calling vpon him, confirmed for wel done, whatfocuer was done concerning the Land of Wimondisleie, and with his writing strengthened the same. Which writing he ap. pointed to bee sealed with his Mothers Seale, for he being not yet knighted, all the Letters by him any whether directed. were closed with his Mothers Seale. And for this cause it is, that it is noted, the writing to be figned rather with the feale of the Counteffe, then of the Earle himfelf. Of which writing, this is the forme; Richardus Comes Cestria, & Ermentrudus Comitissa Mater eins, Nigillo de Oylly, &c. Richard Earle of Chester, and Ermentrudis the Countesse, his Mother, to Nigill of Oylly,&c.

This fame thing doe also the ancient formes of the Parliament writs testific. For it is manifest, Kings have beene wont to summon the Nobility of the kingdom vnto their Parliaments. Ioanni Marchioni de Monteacuto Cheualier (vnto Iohn Marquesse of Montacute Knight : And Henricus vi. Henrico Vicecomiti Bourchier Militi (Henry the vi.vnto Henry Vicount Bourchier Knight.) 1. Edward 4. &c. Which manner of calling, although it hath begun of long to grow out of vie in others of the Nobility, yet eyther in calling out of new Barons, or in fummoning of the olde, it is still right seriously observed: as Gulielmo Brooke de Cobham Cheualier (vnto William) Brooke of Cobham knight.) And Gulielmo Cecill de Burghley Militi (to William Cecill of Burghley knight) when as they both were commonly knowne and called Barons or Lords of Cobham, & of Burghley: fo that a man would almost fay, the order of knights to bee the Seminary of the Baronage of England.

I let passe in the meane time, with how great folemnity of the kingdome, and charges of the Subiccts, Kings in ancient time were wont to conferre and bestow this Military honour and dignity vppon

and as it were natural power of monarks among themselues, in bestowing Nobility according to the Lawe of Nations) haue dismissed one anothers Subjects & Ambassadours, graced with this Dignitie. I list onely heereunto to joyne an auncient forme, with the Rites and Ceremonies thereof, out of an old Chronicle of a certayne namelesse writer; Anno (faith he) 1316. Dominus Richardus de Rodney fact us fuit Miles apud Keynsbam die translationis Sancli Thoma Martyris in prasentia domini Almarici Comitis de Penbroke , qui cinxit eum gladio , & Dominus Mauritius de Barkley super pedem dextrum posuit vnum calcar : & Dominus Bartholomeus de Badelismer (Baro vterque) suppofuit aliud super pedem sinistrum in Aula, & hoc facto, recescit cum honore. In the yeare 1316. Lord Richard of Rodney, was made Knight at Keynsham, vpon the day of the translation of Saint Thomas the Martyr, in the presence of Amaricus Earle of Penbrooke, who girt him with the Sword : and the Lord Maurice of Barkley put one Spurre on his right foot, and the Lord Bartholomew of Badelismer (both of them Barons) put the other Spurre vpon his left foot in the Hall; and this done, he with honour departed. But now according to the maner of the time, we live after another fashion; and in this, as in other things, the change and alteration of things hath taught vs, what an alteration of things the long continuance of time is able to make. So in thinking of the beginning of Knights, and as well of the antiquitie of the Order of Knighthood, as of the preheminence thereof aboue other dignities and honours, I can scarse resolue my selfe, but that this name of olde should seeme to make shew vnto me of some (I wot not what) magnificent and maiesticall things contayned in the fame, and more excellent then Nobility it selfe : and mounting (as it were) into the royall Throanes, fitteth as it were a Judge in the Judgement seate, and the Protectour of all civill Nobility. For the desciding of sures concerning honours, and for the prescruation vnto cuery man

the right of his fame or dignity, the natu-

their eldest Sonnes, (viz.) the Princes of grall tribunal Scate or Court for the No-Wales, and with what lufter and magni- bilitie, is every where called Militaris; with Militar ficence, Emperours and Kings loyned in that is to fay, the Martrall or Militatie league together, (by a certaine mutuall Court, and commonly, the Court of Chiualrie: the forme whereof with vs is this. The appoynted place for the holding thereof, is the Kings Hall: wherein the Constable of the Kingdome, and the Marshall of England sit as Judges, where any Plaintife, either in case of dignities or of Armes, or of any other fate or controugrfie concerning Nobility and Honour, may fue the Defendant. But the forme wherein the Constable of England was wont to call the Nobility and Gentry vnto his Courtor Indgement seate, was on this fort:

Iehan filz du Roy Constable d'Angle-

John the Kings Sonne, Constable of England, and Warden of the Eatl-marches toward Scotland, to our welbeloued Cozin, Sir Rafe Neuile, Earle of Westmerland, and Marshall of England, greeting. We command and charge you, that you cause to come and appeare before vs at Westminster, the ninth day of May next comming , before Mounfieur Edward Hastings, to answere to Mounsieur Reynold Lord of Grey, and of Rutheyn, concerning that which he shall then charge him with in our court of Cheualry, concerning the full vling and bearing of his Armes, and to that the Lord Grey faith, and as it shall be more fully declared at the same day; and further to doe and receine that which the Lawe and the custome of our faid Court shall in this part require. Returning before vs at the aforefaid day with this our Precept, al that you shall therein haue done. Giuen at Westminster under the Scale of our Office, the first day of May, in the reigne of my most dread Lord and Father King Henry the fourth, after the Conquest, the

Ichan filz, frere, e Vncle an Roys, Duc de Bedford, drc.

John, Sonne, Brother, and Vockle to Kings, Duke of Bedford and Aniou, Earl of Richmond, and of Kendall, and Conftable of England, vnto our welbeloued Cozin, John duke of Northfolke, Marshall of England, greeting. We command and charge

charge you, that you cause to be arrested, of King Richard the second. and to come before vs or our Lieutenant at Westminster, vpon the 15. of S. Hillarie next comming, William Clopton of the Countie of Suffolke Esquire, then to answeare before vs or our Lieutenant in the Court of Chiualrie, to Robert Eland which he the faid Robert shal then charge | mory, the Indgement Scate of this Royfet and put to the Seale of his Armes to a false and forged writing, done to the hurt and danger of him the faid Robert an hundred pounds, and more then that, as you shall have therein done. Given vnder the Seale of our Office, the 23. day of November, in the fixeteenth yeare of the reigne of our Lord the King, & fince the Conquest of England, the hundred.

Of the lesser Nobilitie.

The forme of the profecuting of the action, is on both fides tryed, by the looking into of Letters Patents, auncient Charters, and of Euidences (as they tearme them) and by Witnesses. All things are (for the most part) acted by their Aduocates, in Writings, in Latine or in French. At length the definitiue Sentence, according vnto equitie and right, and our owne heroycall cuflome, and not after any ftrange maner, fealed with the publike Seale of the Office is openly read, and afterward is delinered to the Earle Marshall, to be put into execution. If any thing chance to be vnprouidedly done, or vnaduitedly in the fute ouer-flipped on eyther part, it is lawful for them to appeale vnto the king, who is wont to referre the whole matter vnto the Bishops, and other Ecclesiasticall persons, vnto the learned Lawyers, and others of most vpright life, to be diligently againe examined & expounded. And even in this very manner it was argued, adjudged, and appealed, betwixt Reynold Baron Gray of Ruthen , and Edward Hastings Knight, concerning the Armes of the Hastings, in the reigne of King Henry the third. Likewife, betwixt the Barons of Louell and Morley, for the Armes of the familie of Burnell. And Fichard Scroope Plaintife , against Robert Grofuenour Defendant, in an Action of Armes in the ninth yeare of the reigne

But this I leave to the indicious labor of that noble person and excellent judgement, who now can onely repaire the lamented ruines of that Iurisdiction, hauing bequeathed vnto him the Genius of those his renowned Auncestours, that so of the County of Lincolne esquire, to that | many yeares filled vp with famous mehim with by the way of Arms, as having | all Court, referring the eye of further fearch, eyther to the Kings Records, or to those Registers of Armes and Honor whome it concerneth most to sceke out fuch Monuments with the Genealogies he faith. Returning before vsatthe fayd | of Families, and the Armes of Stockes day, with this our Mandate, all that which | and Kindreds to distinguish the same, to write things done, and to register them vp in Bookes, for the perpetuall remembrance thereof. And who themselnes acknowledging the high Constable, and

the Earle Marshall of England for their

Patrons, receive yearely pensions from the Kings, and are by them with notable

priviledges rewarded.

Heere at length I might haue a large occasion to speake of the solemne Ceremonies of the Heralds; of their institution, imminuities (both in time of peace and warre) and of the auncient reputation had of them amongst all Nations: if it were lawfull for mee to roame at large beyond the breuitie I have vnto my felfe propounded, and whom therefore I had purposed in silence to have passed over. But, left I writing of fo many degrees of out Noblemen, and so great things concerning Politicall Nobility, (in leaving to be spokesmen for themselves) I might feeme to have spoken vnaduifedly, and not indifferently, I thought it good briefly, and by the way, to touch these things concerning Heralds. They were Heraldes. in auncient time Feriales, or as Messengers of the publique faith and credit. But fince the time Princes and Monarks, for dispatch of their affaires, first began to haue their Ambassadors stil resident one of them with another, the reputation of Heralds is so impaired, as that they eucrie where line as men neglected, & quite ouerthrowne. Yet what our Heraldes be, and in what houses, and under what Lawes they (by the fauour of our Kings) together with vs in fafety dwell, I will heere, as it were, in a short Inventorie, propound vnto the eye of the Reader.

Of the Society of Heralds. Chap. 23. (Garter, who goeth first, as cheefe) Ringleader of the all: not so much for the antiquity of his creation (for Three Kinges, he was first created by King Henry which of their the fift) as for the super-eminence offices are cal of the Order of the Garter. The notation of the ordained by K. Bidward the 3, and are called Provinciall kings of Armes. n, ort. sight, robe in ort. sopulare aboles. hallengeth if him that prei nella nort. et by weareth i leal spillocal the Somer/et. Chester. giate fociety Sixe Heraldes, which Windefor. of Heraldes by the names of their Richemond. confifteth of additions are called, Lancaster.

xiii. perfons, would be some to mill the confittent of additions are called, Lancaster.

(viz.) of Foure Portuitiones, Rougedragon, which in Heraldise Rougedragon, and followers. and followers, vnto Blew-mantell whom other Names Rouge croix. drog od die de

A Parlaments, are by the Kings themselves immediatelie, or by the Constable of the kingdome, or the Marshall with the Kings Authority, crowned with Crownes, graced with Collars, attired with their rich Coates, named by their names of addition, and with certaine appointed Ceremonies created, receive their yearely stipends out of the Kings Exchequer, to consult and meete together, about Armes and Authenticall Monuments. and helping and profiting vnto the Art of Heraldry. And they by the Kings Charter Incorporate, are endowed with a publike house in London, the cheefe Citty of the Kingdome: where besides the Immunities and Priviledges whereby they live) they are with the preheminences of their degrees and functions, one from another diftinguished.

scruethe dignity and reputation of their fociety, and go-

532

Garter King of Armes, for the supereminent Dignity of the Garter, is of the the cheefe; whose peculiar Office it is, with all dutifull sequice to attend uppon Are fet to pre- the Knights of that order. To aduertife them which are cholen of their new election, to call them to bee enstalled at Windfor, and to cause their Armes to be hanged up upon their feates. At their burials, to haue a care of their Funerall Rites & Ceremonies. Wheruerne the reft, fore, (baside the yearely wages given him by the as for example. Knights) he is by the King himselfe rewarded with a Salary double to the rest. In sucry new Emperour, King, Prince, Duke, Marqueffe, Earle, Vicount, Ba-ton, or Kuight, to be into this order enstauled, hee challengeth of him the vpper most Garment, which he on that day weareth. He all of newest vnio energy new Baron, called vino the Parliament, the place wherein he is to fit among the Peerrs, and ordere in other things concerning their orden. [212] I o

For fome

of them.

36,3b

armin ni

clarentim, who is Theferwo haue by char-King of Armes of ter power a vifit the Noal the East, West, blemens Families sto fer & South Proving blemens Families, a to let cet of England on downer their Pedegrees, to this fide of the Ridding with their armes, & uct of Trent. in the open Market-place, force, who is alto reproue such as fallely to acknowledged take yoon the Nobility or

for king of Arms Gentry And to order eue throgh the north through the north ry Mans Exequies & Fu-part of the king nerals, according to their River of Trent.

Dignity, & to appoint vnto them their Armes or Enfignes,&c. And in all things gouern the Heralds as well as Garter.

Other some are pointed to obey (viz.) Heralds and the defended of their fociety, or to their own the defended of their fociety, or to their own the defended of their fociety, or to their own the following the commandements of the kings and of the commandements of the kings.

And these onely are the Kings Heralds, with vs fo called, for that they receine wages of the kings, and with publike feruice, ferue all the Nobility of the king-

Howbeit, Noble-men and Peeres of this Land, in ancient time had their Heralds peculiar vnto themselues. For Chester the Herald, and Falco the Pur-

fuiuant, lived at the commaund of the Prince of Wales, and ferued him. Humfrey, Duke of Glocester, and Earle of Penbroke, had the Herald Penbroke his houshold Seruant.

Richard alfo, Duke of Glocester, having now obtayned the kingdome, wold needs haue his Herald Glocester, to bee called King of Armes for all Wales. Charles Brandon

folke Herald, and Marlcon the Pursuiuant, his Seruants. The Marquelle of Dorcefter, kept Groby the Herald. The Earle of Northumberland kept Northumberland the Hetald, and Efperance the Pursuinant. Arthur Plantaginet Vicount L'isle, took vnto himfelfe L'ille the Porfoiuant : and Baron Haflaings, Hafting the Pursuiuant. These it pleased me to have out of many others rehearfed, who ferued Noblemen in their peculiar and domesticall feruices. But the condition of the Servant is made better. by the dignity of his Lord and Master, so these forenamed Heralds lived not with like authority or priviledges as with the

beautifying and fetting forth of Politicall Nobility: Now at length (by the Heralds leaue) let it bee lawfull for mee to ioyne heereunto and infert fome few things cocerning Armes, whereby Noblemen are wont to be knowne from the vulgar fort, and to be among themselues by families divided, being wont in ancient time to be more sparingly bestowed, then in this our age, and onely vpon such, as had with their good feruice deferued them.

So I breefely touch all things, for the

But such kinde of Armes feeme not to haue taken beginning, but of fuch military rewards, as were wont to be given vnto well deferuing men in the Roman Common-weale. For the Romanes, alwayes most striued for the obtaining of honor and glory, for the nourishing whereof, they with ornaments and rewards, laboured to firre vp mens mindes, for the performance of noble actions, both at home and abroad. In warres flourished Military guifes, Tropheis, Troumphall Arches, Letters Laureat, &c. In time of peace, at home were shewed honourable Titles, Images, Statues, and fuch like. Things indeed wifely at first deuised, and asterward so together with the Empire encreased, that how many, and what manner of Crowns, Bracelets, Chaines, and Crests, euery ma had descrued; what manner of trappings, Speares, Darts, or Belts, they had gotten: thefe they were wont in their expeditions in the wars, to beare in their Targets and Bucklers, or set vpon their Helmets; and againe returning home, in time of peace, euery good Seruitor did hang them vp in their houses; and those Ornaments they

Brandon Duke of Suffolke, retained Suf- by the name of Armes, were wont by long order of succession, to deliner ouer vnto their posterity: and heereof those armes of Families, heere and there difpiercedly by the Nobility, vied in diners kingdomes, were (if it pleafe you so to thinke) of the Germanes called Toncapen. in our language Armes, and in Latine Arma, for that with them the enemies were

Thefe things the ancient Roman Coynes declare, and the credible ancient Romaine Writers; the vie wherof fo at length preuailed in kingdomes, that as names diffinguished men from men, enen so Armes divided Nations from Nations, and Families from Families: first granted by Kings themselues, but afterward by the Heralds (Kings of Armes) by a Royall transmissine power granted vnto them, they enery where especially serving the Politicall Nobility, vnto whom I willingly leave these things. And therefore the name and office of the Heralds was enery where notable, and well beforming an honest man; whom they of ancient time wer wont to call the Fosterers of Politicall Nobility, the Arbiters of Equity, the Protectors of Verity, the Ambaffadors of Princes, and the Writers of mens noble actes.

But woe is me, that I, carried with a certaine winde of this Method, have thus cuen against my will landed ypon our Heralds, whom (I know not by what destiny) euery man figheth and mourneth to fee them working their owne destruction. Although indeed it be not so much to be maruailed at, seeing that the cause is right manifest (for lawfull bee it for mee to fay the truth, which the thing it selfe speketh) (viz.) the want of the Martiall Court, or Court of Chiualry, wherof I but now spake. For why, Nobility it felfe beeing oftentimes hurt or impared, the Heralds themselues therewith languish also.

And yet for all that, heroycall truth wateth not her Patrones, euen amongst the most Noble and reverend Antiquity, olthough as it were banished, and almost a stranger in her owne house, hath together with the Muses, her most louing, kinde and earnest Patrones, and who were not even vnto my felfe also wanting in the perfecting of thefe my endeuors & purpofes.

Zz 3

These

534 The Orders and Degrees of Nobility. 5 Booke

These are the Orders and Degrees, of both our forts of Nobility, Na-med and I'nnamed. Now into what ranks they are among themselues divided, and what honour they owe one of them wato another (by a certaine right of precedence) receine heere in briefe.

THE Kings Maiesty.
The Prince of Wales. Dukes descended of the Royall Dukes not descended of Royall blood. Dukes eldeft Sonnes descended of the

6 Marquesses. 7 Dukes eldeft Sonnes.

Royall blood.

8 Earles. 9 Marquesses eldest Sonnes.

10 Dukes younger Sonnes of the blood Royall.

11 Dukes fecond Sonnes.

12 Vicounts.

13 Earles eldeft Sonnes.

14 Marqueffes fecond Sonnes.

15 Barons. 16 Vicounts eldest Sonnes.

17 Earles fecond Sonnes.

18 Barons eldest Sonnes. 19 Knights Bannarets.

20 Vicounts second Sonnes. 21 Barons second Sonnes.

22 Knights Batchellors.

23 Esquires for the body. 24 Knights Bannarets eldest Sonnes.

25 Knights Batchellors eldeft Sonnes.

26 Esquires.

27 Gentlemen.

The Sonnes of Knights, which are of the Kings priny Councell, for the time, hold the places which their Fathers being knighted, were knowne to hold, beneathe Barons Sonnes. But the antiquity of the creation of euery Knight is to bee regarded : by which reasons, the Sonnes of the elder Knights, goe before the Sonnes of them that were more later created. Amongst Esquires, the antiquity of their Families, their wealth, and publike offices are confidered; whereby it commeth to paffe, that the wines of them of the cheefer Families, or of fuch as beare great Offices take their places before others.

Howbeit, wee see no certainty to bee heere fer downe concerning the places of Esquires or their Wines, neyther concerning the places of yonger Brothers wines forasmuch as many such things oftetimes chance, as cannot in any certaine rules be comprehended: like as it yfeth to happen in Named Nobility (viz.) in Princes, Dukes. Marquesses, Earles, Vicounts, and Barons.

Now at last let us passe unto Knights of the Order of the Garter.

E faid in the beginning, in the dividing and reckoning vp of our Nobility, it not to be befide our purpose, if I should vnto them also joyn the fellowship of the order of the Garter, of others (by farre) the most honourable, For that it maketh Knights, and fomtime them of the leffer Nobility also, being me for their vertue and valour, both in peace and warre aboue others famous not only equall vnto Noblemen at home, but almost even vnto Kings themselves & Emperors. An order verily of all the orders of the Christian world (if it be to be compared with any other) most ancient and most famous, wherein the most true Nobility it felfe, together with Religion and vertue, attended vpon with five and twenty most famous Knights, is seene that (I may fo fay) with undefiled Maiesty to sit in the Royall Throne. Wherefore feeing that it is an order of so great dignity, and more famous then any other Nobility; & greater, then that it can in ranke with the

other orders be included, as which inclu-

dethall the other degrees of Nobility, I

haue purposed as briefely as I could, here

to fet it downe alone, and there-withall

to conclude this Treatife.

CHAP. XXV.

The Order of the Knights of the Garter when, and by whom it was ordayned.



Chap.25.

anDward the third, the most inuincible King of England and of France, a Prince principally endowed with al ma-ner of piety, magnanimitie, and wifedome, in the xxiij, yeare of his

reigne, after he had oftentimes ouer the Frenchmen and Scots triumphed, vnto the honour of Almightic God, whereunto he (as befeemed a denout King referred althings) in his Castle at Windfor, ordained the Military Ornaments and Geremonies of the Knights of the Garter t whereunto he gaue the name of the Blew Garter (but commonly called the Garter). and wherein hee appoynted the Kings of England as chiefe, and fine and twentie Knights or Fellowes and Companions together. Who being men both for their martial proweffe and birth, most famous, and most chosen Chieftaines tolemnely fworne, and binding themselues together with a bond of mutuall and perpetuall friendship, for the defence of the honour and dignity of their Colledge and Fellowship, refuse not to vndergoe any danger, no not death it felfe. And there-Bartholmew of Burgherst, knight. fore they are called Fellowes of the Garter, for that they have the Calfe of their Leg bound about with a little Girdle, fet with precious stones, which we call a Garter: the speciall Cognisance of the order, whereon it is in French, in golden Letters thus writte: Hony. Soit. Qui. Mal. T-Penfe. All these Knights once yearely attired in

der, meete together vpon the 23. day of

Aprill, a day dedicated to Saint George.

The Rites and ceremonies, where-with

they for the most great preheminence of

their Order, are with most great solemni-

ty chosen and enstauled at Windsor, and

the Statutes under which these Fellowes

and Companions liue, feeing they can in

heere in few words be expressed. Where-

fore I lift onely to rehearfe the names of

them, which from the beginning, or to-

CHAP.

gether with king Edwardhimfelfe, were the Founders thereof, or elfe hane by our Kings from time to time, for fome their vertue aboue others, bene still chosen to be Fellowes of that most honorable Order, in stead of them that were dead, euen vnto this our age.

Edward the third King of England and of France, &c. Supreame or Gouernour of the Order of the Garter, and with him the five and twenty first Founders thereof, which number they never exceed.

Henry Duke of Lancaster.

Peter Captaine Bouche. William Mont-acute, Earle of Salisburie. Ishn, Lord of the Iland, otherwise called Iohn Beauchampe, knight. Hugh Courtney, knight. John Grey of Codnor, knight. Miles Staplet on, knight. Hugh Wrothefley, knight. Iohn Chandos, knight Bannaret. Otho Molland, knight. Sanchio Dampredicourt, knight. Edward Prince of Wales, King Edward his eldest Sonne. Thomas Beanchampe, Earle of Warwicke. Raffe Stafford, Earle of Stafford. Roger Mortimer, Earle of March.

Iohn, Lord Mohun, Baron. Thomas Holland, knight. Richard Fitz. Simon, knight. Thomas Wale, knight. Neele Lorenge, knight. Inmes Andeley, knight. Henry Efme, knight. Walter Paueley, knight. the Robes and Ornaments of their Or-

> **The Founders of this Order** being dead, these following were in the time of Edward the third chofen, and being elected into the places of the dead, Supplied their roomes.

iust Volumes be scarse contained, cannot D Ichard, furnamed Burdeaux, cldeft fonne of the Prince of Wales, who was also King of England, after Edward

Chap.24.

Of the Knights of the Garter.

cond of that name.

Lionell, furnamed of Antwerp, the fon of King Edward, Duke of Clarence, and Earle of Vifter.

1)hn, furnamed of Gaunt, fourth fon of King Edward, first duke of Richmond, and after of Lancaster.

Edmund of Langley, fift Sonne of king Edward, first Earle of Cambridge, and afterward Duke of Torke.

Iohn of Montford, furnamed the valiant, Duke of Britaine, and Earle of Richmond, King Edward the third, his Sonne

Humfrey of Bohun, Eatle of Hereford. William of Bohun, Earle of Northampton. Iohn Hastings, Earle of Penbroke. Thomas Beauchamp, Earle of Warwicke. Richard Fitz-Alan, Earle of Arundell. Robert Viford, Earle of Suffolke. High Stafford Earle of Stafford. Inzelram of Coucy, Earle of Bedford. Guiscard of Engolesme, Earle of Hunting-

Edward Baron Spencer. William Baron Latimer. Reynold Baron Cobham of Sterberow. Ishn Baron Neuillof Raby. Raffe Baron Baffet of Drayton. Gualter Manny, Knight Bannaret. Thomas & ford, Knight. Thomas Felton, Knight. Francis Van Hille, Knight. A'an Baxhull Knight. Richard Pembruge, Knight. Thomas Vtreight, Knight. Thomas Bannester Knight Richard la Vache, Knight. Guy of Brianne Knight.

Richard, the fecond of that name, King of England, and of France, &c. Soueraigne of the Order of the Garter, de they which by him were choson into that

"Himas of Woodstocke, Earle of Buckingham, and afterward Duke of Glocefter, fixt fonne to King Edward the third. Hinry of Lancaster, Earle of Darby, & Duke of Hireford, and afterward Duke of Lancaster, and at length King of England,

of that name the fourth.

the third his grand-father, and was fe- William, Duke of Gelderland. William, furnamed of Henault, was firft Earle of Ostrenant, and afterward Duke of Holland, Hennault, and of Zealand, Thomas Hilland, Earle of Kent, and afterward Duke of Surrey. Iohn Holland, Earle of Huntingdon, and Duke of Exceter.

Thomas Mowbray, Earle of Nottingham. and afterward Duke of Norfolke, and Earle Marshall of England.

Edward, Earle of Rutland, Duke of Albemarle, and Edmund of Langley his Father being dead, Duke of Torke.

Michaell de la Poole, Earle of Suffolke, and Chancellor of England. William Scroope, Earle of Wilfbire, & Trea-

furer of England. William of Beauchampe, Baron of Berga-

Iohn Beamont Baron. William Willoughby, Baton. Richard Grey, Baron. Nicholas Sarnesfeld, Knight. Philip de la Vache, Knight. Robert Knolles, Knight. Guy of Brianne, Knight. Simon Burley, Knight. John D'Euerux, Knight. Brian Stapleton, Knight. Richard Burley, Knight. Peter Courtney, Knight. John Burley, Knight. John Bourchier, Knight. Thomas Grandson,Knight. Lewes Clifford, Knight. Robert Dunstanill, Knight. Robert of Namur, Knight.

Henry the fourth of that name, King of England, and of France, &c. chiefe of the Garter: and they which in his Reigne were chosen into the pla-

HENRY Prince of Wales, the eldest Sonne of King Henry, who afterward (his Father being dead)was himfelfe King, fift of that name. Thomas of Lancaster, Duke of Clarence, King Henry his second Sonne. John Duke of Bedford, Regent of France, third Sonne of King Henry. Humfrey Duke of Glocester, fourth Sonne

of king Henry, Thomas Beauford, Duke of Exceter, Son | Henry, Baron Fitz-hugh. to John of Gaunt , Duke of Lancaster. Robert, County Palatine, Duke of Baua-Ishn Beaufort, Earle of Somerfet, Brother to Thomas Duke of Exceter. Thomas Fitz-Alan, Earle of Arundell. Edmund Stafford, Earle of Stafford. Edmund Holland, Earle of Kent. Rafe Neuil. Earle of Westmerland. Gilbert Lord Talbet, Baron. Gilbert Lord Roos, Baron. Thomas Lord Morley, Baron. Edward Lord Powe, Baron. Ishn Lord Louel, Baron. Hugh Lord Burnel, Baron. Iohn Cornwell Knight, afterward Baron

Fanhope. William of Arundel, Knight. John Stanley Knight, Steward of the Kings houfe.

Robert Vmfreuill, Knight. Thomas Rampston Knight, Constable of · the Tower of London. Thomas Erpingbam, Knight. Iohn Sulbie, Knight.

Sanctius of Trane, Knight,

Henrie the fift of that name king of England, and of France, byc. Chiefe of the order of the Garter, and the Knights whom he graced with the Garter, in stead of them that were dead.

Sigifmund King of Hungary and Bohemia, Marqueffe of Madenburge, and Emperor clect. John King of Portugall. Christian King of Denmark. Philip Duke of Burgundy. John Holland, Earle of Huntingdon, and afterward Duke of Exceter. William de la Poole, first Earle, afterward Marquesse, and at length Duke of Suffolke. Ishn Mowbray, Earle Marshall, and afterward Duke of Norfolke. Thomas Montacute, Earle of Salisbury. Richard Vere Earle of Oxford. Richard Beauchampe, Eatle of Warwicke. Thomas, Baron Camoys. Iohn, Baron Clifford. Robert Baron Willoughby.

William Philip, Baron Bardolfe. Lewes, Robfart Baron Bourchier. Hugh Stafford, Baron Bourchier, Walter, Baron Hungerford. Simon Felbridge, Knight. John Grey of Eyron, Knight. Iohn Dabrigecourt, Knight. Iohn Robfart, Knight. Trank van Clux, a German knight William Harington, Knight. John Blount, Knight.

Henrie the fixt of that name, K: of England and France, &c. chiefe of the Order of the Garter, and the Knights of the Garter by him made.

A Lbert, Duke of Austria, King of Hungary and Bohemia, and afterward Emperor.

Fredericke, Duke of Austria, Emperour, & Albertus his Brother. Edward, King of Portingall.

Alphonfus, King of Aragon, Naples, & Si-

Casimire, King of Polonia. Edward, Prince of Wales, King Henry his eldest Sonne.

Peter, Duke of Conimbria, John King of Portingallhis Sonne.

Henry, Duke of Visontium, John King of Portingall his Sonne. Duke of Brunswicken

Richard, Duke of Yorke, Father to King Edward the fourth.

John Beaufort, Earle, and afterward Duke of Somerset.

Edmund Beaufort, Earle Moriton, afterward Marquesse, and at last Duke of Somerfet.

Infer Earle of Penbroke, and afterward Duke of Buckingham.

Iohn Mowbray, Duke of Norfolke. Humfrey, Earle of Stafford, and afterward Duke of Buckingham.

Gaston de Foix Capitaine de la Bouche, earle of Longeuile.

Ishn de Foix, Earle of Candalia. Aluarus D'almada Earle of Auerence. Iohn Fitz-Alan, Earle of Arundell. Richard Neuill, Earle of Salubury. Richard Neuill. Earle of Warwicke.

John Baron Talbot, afterward Earle of Shrewsbury.

John Baron Talbot, Earle of Shrewsbury, his Sonne. Ismes Butler, Earle of Willhire and Or-William Neuill, Lord Fauconbridge, afterward Earle of Kent. Richard Wooduill, Earle Rivers. Henry Vicount Bourchier, and afterward Earle of Effex. Iohn Beamont, Vicount Beamont. John Sutton, Baron Dudley. Thom.us, Baron Scales. John, Baron Grey of Authin. Rafe, Baron Butler of Sudely. Lionell Baron Welles. John Baron Hourchier of Berners. Thomas, Baron Stanley. William Baron Bonuill. John, Baron Wenlocke. Ishn, Baron Beauchamp of Pawik. Thom.es Baron Hoo. Iohn Ratcliff, Kinght. John Fastolf, Knight. Thomas Kiriell, Knight.

Edward, fourth of that name, K. of England and France dre. Supreame Governor of the Order of the Garter. chose these Knights, into the vacant places of them that were dead.

Edward Hall Knight.

Erdinand, King of Sicily and of Naples, King Alfonfushis bafe fonne. John, King of Portingall. Edward Prince of Wales. Charles, Duke of Burgundy, Francis Sfortia, Duke of Millan. Fredericke, Duke of Vrbin. Hercules, Duke of Ferrara. Richard, Duke of Yorke, the Kings fonne. Richard, Duke of Glocester, who afterward vsurped the Kingdome. Iohn Mowbray, Duke of Norfolke. Iohn, Baron Howard, afterward Duke of Worfolke.

John de la Poole, Duke of Suffolke. Henry Stafford, Duke of Bucking ham. Iohn Neuill, Marqueffe Mont-acute, Thomas Grey, Marquelle Dorfet. Imes Douglas, Earle Douglas in Scotland. William Fitz-Allan, Earle of Arundell. Thomas, Baron Maltrauers, the fonne of William, and afterward Earle of Arun-

Anthony Wooduille, Baron Scales, afterward Earle Riners.

The Knights of the Garter.

William, Baron Herbert, afterward created

Earle of Penbroke. Iohn Stafford, Earle of Wilfbire. Henry Percy, Earle of Northumberland. Iohn Tiptoft, Earle of Worcester. Galliard Duras Lord Duras. John Baron Scroope of Bolton. Walter Denerux, Baron Ferrers of Chart-

Gualtier Blount, Baron of Mentioy. William, Baron Hastings, the Kings Chaberlaine.

John Aftley Knight. William Chamberlaine Knight. William Parre Knight. Robert Haricourt. Thomas Mont-gomery, Knight.

Edward, the fift of that name, king King of England and France dre. Supreame Gouernour of the Order of the Garter, under whom was no election of new Knights of that order. For as hee had all the places filled with Knights by his Father, whileft hee yet liued, even so he left them. Excepting onely the seates of the Prince, and of John King of Portingall.

Richard, the third of that name, King of England and of France, dec. Cheefe of the Order of the Garter, & the Fellowes chosen into that Order, during the time of his Reigne.

Homas Howard, Earle of Surrey, and Duke of Norfolke. Thomas, Baron Stanley, afterward Earle of Derby. Francis, Vicount Louell. Iohn Coniers, Knight. Richard Radeliff, Knight. Thomas Burgh, Knight. Richard Tunstall, Knight.

Henry,

Henry, the feuenth of that name, King of England, and of France, chiefe of this most honorable Order, and the Fellowes chosen into the places of them that were dead, during the time of his Reigne.

M Aximillian, king of the Romaines, & afterward Emperor, chosen, his Father Frederick Emperor then living. Dhn, King of Portingall. Dhn, King of Denmarke.

Philip, King of Castile, Arch-Duke of At-Stria Son to Maximillian the Emperor. Alphonfus, Duke of Calabria and Naples, King of Sicilia and Jerufalem.

Arthur, Prince of Wales, the Kings eldeft Sonne.

Hinry, Duke of Yorke, & Prince of Wales, his Brother A thur being dead, and he the fame, afterward King of England. Vbald, Earle of Montferat, and Duke of Vrbin and of Pelleran.

Edward Stafford, Duke of Buckingham. Thomas Grey, Marquelle Dorfet. Ishn Vere, Earle of Oxford. Hanry Percy, Earle of Northumberland.

George Talbot, Earle of Shrewsbury. Henry Bourchier, Earle of Effex. Richard Grey, Earle of Kent. Edward Courtney, Earle of Denshire. Henry, Baron Stafford, afterward Earle of

Willbire. Edmund de la Poole, Earle of Suffolke. Charles Somerfet, Knight Banaret, and af-

terward created Earle of Worcester. Gerard Fitz-gerald, Earle of Kildare. John Welles, Vicount Welles.

George Stanley, Baron Strange. William Stanley, the Kings Chamberlaine. John, Baron Dynham.

Robert Willoughby, Baron Brooke, Steward of the Kings house.

Giles D' Aubeny. Edward Poynings Knight. Edward Widewill, Knight. Gilbert Talbot Knight. Ishn Chener, Knight. Lichard Guilford Knight. Thomas Louell, Knight. Thomas Brandon Knight.

Keynold Bray, Knight.

Ryce Ap Thomas, a Welchman. John Sauage, Knight. Kichard Poole, Knight.

Henry, the eight of that name, K. of England France, and Ireland: Supreame Gouernor of the Order of the Garter, notably chose & ascribed these of the Order of the Gatter, into the vacant feates and places of the knights that were dead.

539

Harles the Emperor, fift of the name. king of Spaine.

Ferdinand, king of the Romaines, and hee the fame king of Hungary and Polenics, Brother to Charles the Emt eror.

Francis the French king, first of that name. Emanuell, King of Portingall.

James, the fift of that name, king of Scots. Henry the Kings Sonne, otherwife called Fitz-Roy, Duke of Richmond and Somer fet.

Islian de Medices, brother to Leo, the tenth Bishop of Rome.

Edward Seymour, Earle of Hertford, and afterward Duke of Somerfet.

Thomas Howard, Earle of Surrey, and at length Duke of Norfolke.

Charles Brandon, Master of the Horse, and afterward Duke of Suffolke.

Ishn Sutton, alias Dudley, Vicount L'Ille, who was afterward Earle of Warwicke, & at length Duke of Northumberland. Annas, Duke Mont-morency.

Henry Courtney, Earle of Denflire, and afterward Marquesse of Excester.

William Parre of Kendall, who was afterward Earle of Effex, & at length Marqueffe of Northampton.

William Paulet, Baron S. Ishn of Bafing, afterward created Earle of Wilfbire, & at last Marquesse of Winchester.

Henry Earle of Surrey, Sonue to Thomas Duke of Norfolke.

Thomas Bullen, Treasurer of the Kings house, afterward Vicount Rochfort, and at length Earle of Willbire and Ormond.

William Fitz-Alan Earle of Arundell. IohnVere, Earle of Oxford. Henry Percy, Earle of Northumberland. Rafe Neuill, Earle of Westmerland. Francis Talbot , Earle of Shrewsbury.

Chap.24.

1597

1601

40	Of the Knigh	rs of the Garter. 5 Bo
mire Thomas term Robers I ware Heary Colon, B. Bedfo Tomas, ward Aribur Edward William I George N Thomas, Thomas, Thomas, Thomas, Thomas, Thomas, Thomas, Thomas, Channel John Gage houle. Henry Gu Channel John Gage houle. Houle John Gage Houle Houle John Gage Houle Houle John Gage Houle Houle John Gu Gu Gu John John Gu	A Chabot, Earle of New-blanch, A all of France. A Manners, Baron Roos, who was a rard Earle of Rullind. Ratcliff, Vicount Fitz-Walter, after Earle of Suffex. Liftford, Earle of Cumberland. Fitz-Williams, Treasurer of the shouse, and afterward Earle of himpion. Baron Cromwell, who was after Earle of Effex. A Baron Wriothessey, who was after created Earle of Southampton. Plantagenet, Vicount Lisle, Kingred the fourth, his base Sonne. Plantagenet, Vicount Lisle, Kingred the fourth, his base Sonne. Plantagenet, Vicount Lisle, Kingred the fourth, his base Sonne. Plantagenet, Vicount Lisle, Kingred the fourth, his base Sonne. Plantagenet, Vicount Lisle, Kingred the fourth, his base Sonne. Plantagenet, Vicount Lisle, Kingred the Marca. Plantagenet, Vicount Lisle, Kingred the Sonne. Plantagenet, Vicount Lisle, Kingred the North. Setting, Baron of Abergeueny. West, Baron Dacres of Gilesand. Baron Dacres of Gilesand. Baron Dacres of Gilesand. Baron Monteagle. Baron Marney. Stanley, Baron Monteagle. Baron Marney. Baron Marney. Baron Marney. Stanley, Baron Monteagle. Baron Marney. Kright, Knight, Master of the caster Controller of the house. Carew, Knight, Master of the caster Controller of the house. Carew, Knight, Warden of the caster Controller of the house. Carew, Knight, Warden of the caster Controller of the house to the King, Captaine of the cothe Controller of the cothe cothe King, Captaine of the cothe Controller of the cothe cothe Controller of the cothe cothe Controller of the cothe cothe King, Captaine of the cothe cothe Controller of the cothe cot	fe Edward the fixt, King of England, France, and Ireland, Supreame Lord of the Garter: by him the femen following, were admitted into the faid Order. I Henry the second, king of France. Henry Orey, Marquesse Dorfet, after Duke of Susfolke. Henry Neuil, Earle of Westmerland. Edward Stanley, Earle of Darby. Franci Hissings, Earle of Huntington. William Herbert, Earle of Fembroke. Thomas West, Baron of Sudely. Thomas West, Baron of Cobbam. Edward Baron Climton, Admiral of England, and after created Earle of Lincolne. William Paget, Baron of Beaudsert. Thomas Darcy, Baron of Chiche. Andrew Sutton, (alias Dudley.) Knight. Mary, Queen of England, France and Ireland, and Supreame Lady of the Order of the Garter, the semen (for orders sake) the other Knights beeing dead, were preferred into their places.
Ireland.	wint-Leger, Knight, Deputy of P, Knight, Captaine of Guynes	Elizabeth of famous memorie, Queene of England, France, and Ire- land, Supreame Lady of the most no- ble Order of the Gatter, chose into that Order, these men following.

na	p.24. Including of	r the Garter. 54
	Maximillian the Emperor, King of Bohemia, and	Henry Brooke, Baron Cobban.
	Hungary. 1,68.	Thomas Cecill, Baron of Burghly.
	Charles the ninth, King of France. 1564	Henry Sidney, Knight, Prefident of the
	Himry the third, King of France. 1,84	Marches of Wales.
	Fredericke, King of Denmarke.	Christopher Hatton, Knight, Lord Chi-
	Adolph, Duke of Holfatia. \\ 1560	cellor of England.
	John Cafsimere, Count-Palatine of Rhine, and	Francis Knolles Knight, Treafurer of the Co
	Duke of Banaria. 1579	house,
	Francis Mentismorency, Duke. 1572	Henry Lea, Knight, Keeper of the Armory.
	Thomas Howard, Duke of Norfolke. 2	
i	Fredericke, Duke of Wittenberge. 2559.	
	William Parre, Marques of Northampton	
	Thomas Percie, Earle of Northumberland. 1563	Iames the first, of Great Britis
	George Talbot, Earle of Shrewsbury. 1561	France, and Ireland, Supreance Lord of the
	The state of the s	ter : by him thefe men following, were adm
	William Summerset, Earle of Worcester. 1574	into the faide Order.
	Henry Manners, Earle of Rutland. 11559	
	Henry Hastings, Earle of Huntington. 1570	
	Ambrose Sutton (alias Dudley) Earle of War-	Hristiern, fourth of that name, King
	wicke. 1563	of Denmarke.
	Francis Ruffell, Earle of Bedford. 1564	Harry, eldeft Son to King James, Prince 21
	Henry Herbert, Earle of Penbroke. 1574	of Wales, Duke of Cornwall, & Earle
	Robert Sutton (alias Dudley) Earle of Leicester.	of Chester.
	15,19	Charles Duke of Torke, second Son to the K
	Walter Deuereux, Earle of Esfex. 1572	Maiefty, after Prince of Great Britaine. 1
	Edward Manners, Earle of Rutland. 1584	Fredericke, Prince Elector Palatine of
	Henry Radcliffe, Earle of Suffex. 1586	the Rhine.
	Robert Deuercux, Earle of Effex. 1588.	Graue Morris, after Prince of Orenge.
	Gilbert Talbet, Earle of Shrewsbury. ?	Lewes, Duke of Lennox, Earle of Rich-
	George Clifford Earle of Cumberlind. \$1592	mond.
	Hary Percy, Earle of Northumberland. 31593.	Henry Wriothefly, Earle of Southampton.
	Edward Summer fet, Earle of Worcester. 51593.	Ishn Ereskin, Earle of Mar.
	Robert Radcliff, Earle of Suffex. 1599	William Herbert , Earle of Penbroke, after
	William Stanley, Earle of Darby. 1601	Lord Chamberlaine vnto the Kings
	Arthur Grey, Baron of Milton. 1572	Maiesty.
	Charles Howard, Baron of Effingham, and Ad-	Fredericke, Duke of Wittenberge, installed 1
	mirall of England, 1575. after Earle of Not-	but elected in the yeare, 1 597.
	tingham.	Vlricke, Duke of Alfatia.
	Edmund Burges, Baron Chandoys. 1572	Henry Howard, Earle of Northampton. I
	Henry Cary, Baron of Hunsdon. 1561	Robert Cecill, Earle of Salisbury, after
	William Cecill, Baron of Burghley.	Lordhigh-Treasurer of England.
	William Brooke, Baron of Cobham. \$1584	Thomas Howard, Viscount Bindon.
	H:nry Scroope, Baron of Bolton.	George Hume, Earle of Dunbarre.
	Thomas Sackuill, Baron of Buckburft, after Earle	Philip Herbert, Earle of Montgomery. 5 1
	of Dorfet, and Lord High-Treasurer of Eng-	Philip Howard, Earle of Arundell.
	land. 15+7	Robert Carre, Viscount Rochester, after 11
	Thomas, Baron de Burgh. 1593.	Earle of Somerset.
	Edmund,Baron Sheffeild. 1593	Thomas Ereskin, Viscount Fenton.
	Thomas Howard, Baron Howard of Walden, 1597	William Baron Knolles de grayes, Treasu-
	after Earle of Suffolke, and Lord Chamber-	ror of the Kings house, after Viscount
	laine to the Kings Maiesty, also Lord high-	Wallingford.
	Treasurer of England.	Francis, Earle of Rutland.
	George Cary, Baron de Hunfdon, Lord Chamber-	George Villers, after Viscount Villers, Earl
	laine to Queene Elizabeth. 1497	and Marquelle of Buckingham.
	Charles Blount, Baron Monttoy, 1597. after Earle	Robert Sidney, Viscount Lyle, after Earle
	of Denonshire.	of Lescester.
)	Aaa T

The Knights of the Garter.

4	Hem y Staney, Kinght, Prendent of the
34	Marches of Wales. Christopher Hatten Knight, Lord Chi-
ю	The state of the s
	cellor of England.
ıd	Francis Knolles Knight, Treafurer of the Cucens
9	houfe. 1593.
2	Henry Les, Knight, Keeper of the Armory. 1,97
9.	
	1 00 00
3	Iames the first, of Great Britizine,
I	France, and Ireland, Supreance Lord of the Gar-
4	ter: by him thefe men following, were admitted
4	into the saide Order.
v	
9	
0	O Builliam Count - Color - Tri
r-	CHristiern, fourth of that name, Kingto
3	of Denmarke.
4	H.nry, eldeft Son to King James, Prince 21603.
4	of water, Duke of Cornwall, & Earle
r.	of Chester.
9	Charles Duke of Torke, second Son to the Kings
2	Maielty, after Prince of Great Britaine, 1611
4	Fredericke, Prince Elector Palatine of
6	the Rhine.
3.	Graue Morris, after Prince of Orence.
•	Lewes, Duke of Lennow, Earle of Rich-
2	mond.
	Henry Wriothesly, Earle of Southampton.
3.	
_	
9	William Herbert, Earle of Penbroke, after
1	Lord Chamberlaine vnto the Kings
2	Maicfly.
-	Fredericke, Duke of Wittenberge, installed 1604.
t-	but elected in the years, 1597.
	Viricke, Duke of Alfatia.
2	Henry Howard, Earle of Northampton. 1605.
I	Robert Cecill, Earle of Salubury, after
	Lordhigh-Treasurer of England. \$1606.
4	Thomas Howard, Viscount Bindon.
•	George Hume Farle of Dunhanna
lc	Philip Herbert, Earle of Montgomery. \$ 1608.
	Philip Howard, Earle of Arundell.
3- 7	Robert Carre, Viscount Rochester, after 1611.
	Earle of Somerset.
3•	
3	Thomas Ereskin, Viscount Fenton.
7	William Baron Knolles de grayes, Treasu-
r-	ror of the Kings house, after Viscount 1615

THE

Maximillian

that Order, these men following.



THE PERORATION, OR EPILOGVE OF THE WHOLE VVORKE,



concluded this Treatife of Nobilitic Politicke, Datine, and Natine, as breefely as I could, and the greatnesse & dig-

nity of the subject would permit. First generally; as applyed to the Customes of Countries, whereto the same is tide; then particularly exemplified, by the Rites and Ceremonies in vie among our felues. Wherein, if seeking to adorne the magnificence of fo flately a Theame, with eloquence of words, and beauty of flyle, as it felfe doth deferue, I feeme to have failed, I must plead for my selfe, as a plaine meaning man, that fometimes through zeale and denotion to the Church, undertooke to carue an Image, representing the Dei-ty and greatnesse of his God, out of trembling and feare, was forced to crane ayde of skilfuller workmen, hauing nothing to excuse the weaknesse of his wit, and expiate withall, the horror of his worke, but pious simplicity. Euen such is my case: For I willingly confesse, that being doubtfull of my felfe when I tooke this Taske in hand, yet my hope and comfort was, that howfocuer I might erre, and heerein bewray my skill, my faults proning veniall, I might gine occasion, to stir vp riper wits, to further the perfection of this rude and rough-hewd-worke, and Whetston like at leaft, to fet and sharpen others.

If now by the fight and view hecreof, (fuch as it is) any like to take the paines

Hus have I at last | shape, to the substance; & from the shaddow, to the body, to wade any further; the Volume now fucceeding, afwell of all the Persons, as their atchieuements of honour, marriages, alliances, and defcents, that ever this Monarchy hath invested &: ennobled with the titles and degrees of Political Nobility, from the Earles voward. (Vice-Contes and Barons make a Volume of themselues) digested into Catalogues, will further declare.

A worke, though not so perfect as the time may make it proue, for at the beginning, what thing was cuer fo? (Without pride be it (poken) of extraordinary fludy, care, and industry. Wherein, if onely for the publike, I have thus emploied my felse, and done my best endeauour, To acribes one hegegathefetai. Let no ma take occafion to taxe me of double diligence, much leffe of affectation, felfe-love, or flattery, that propounding thus a Pilgrimage pretended to bee generall, I have fpent my whole denotion on the Samts of Great Brittaine. I was to fit my mould to the matter already framed, and therto wholly bending and deuiting with my felfe, I aymed withall, in fecret to redeeme fo faire a fubicat (fublifting enery where on theciall Lawes and Rites) from the wandring Ideas of discoursing Philosophers, and contemplatine Divines to her owne proper Station, and peculiar Customes, that others elfe-where defirous of the like, I might seeme rather to give, then to stay their good example.

It remaines then now, to make good my first division into Celestiall, Morall, from the Meathe, to the blade; from the and Politicall Nobility, that I lay downe



tituale (vango Garterus) generals & literis mainfailis aurit. HOMI SOLT OVI MAL Y PENSE des

plaine demonstration and comparing of

their Essences mutually together, the

world may fee, how cuen this of Great

Heret profectio Comen sutrerfum veri, Que extatar voial-Lante Doctions. Nam, curregul Conterecta censemus.Ni merfus al 0 2 un et tomes cords ?

Piety.

Boct.lib. 1.3

Probity. Grace,

Pugencia. Eugenes.

Ingenuitie,

Generofity.

Christianity

Ciuility.

Brittaine (which heere I call Ours) is of it selfe absolutely, the most affured Patterne, and best ordered of all others. By Gods eternall providence, it is fo fore-ordayned, that for ornament and fafety of humane life and Nature, we fee and feele daily, some steppes as it were of divine intelligence, and feeds of Morall vertue, ftill foftered vp within vs, euen in this lower world. Est Deus in Nobis azitante calescimus Illo. That (divine intelligence) by heavenly inspiration, doth teach vs to know God, and moues vs to ferue him with all holinesse of soule, and religious observation. This (vertuous disposition) by an in-

bred ingennity, becomes the Mother of this our Positive Nobility. For, as these two still joyned together, first open the way by steps and degrees (though by diners paffages) to come to Kingly Grace, and Soueraigne Eudochyst, Datiuely; fo Ex 1 menuis funt Eugenein Eugenes, from inbred Ingenuity, men first become Geselfe-same Nobility Natively. For as godlinesse or piety, by diuine inspiration, and in-bred Ingenuity, by vertues infufion, makes vulgar men exempted, and fo honeftly respected about their fellowes, that nothing may difgrace them, but iniquity and herefie, yeelding matter and occasion to this kinde of Nobility that Subjects obtaine from Soueraine grace & fauour, Datiuely: Euen fo, where grace becomes so fixed in the person of any, that nothing can remove it but Death or high-treason; it begets generosity by descending to posterity, Natively. So that, as to be gloriously happy in the world to come, by dinine inspiration from God to man, by the name of picty, proceeds from Christianity imputatinely. And as to be honourably effeemed before God and but properly at home, for feruices performan, for inbred ingenuity, by the name of med in the Church and Common-weals. probity, proceeds from civility infufinely; gar fort, by the name of Generofity, pro- earth, or ennobled at the least, receive it ceeds from grace, Mediate or Immediate first or last from God, & his Lieutenants, respectively al worthily ennobled in their whose infusive grace and greatnesse, are

the dignity of each by themselves, that by | becomes aswell Nobilis (which wee call a gentleman, and the French found Gentil- Nobility. homme) as the Emperor himselfe, saying; Gentlin. Foy * de Gentilhomme. And Me voicy Gentilhomme auffy bien que le Roy. Though in prihaps why English and in French, the word it felfe in England feeme ftraightened. For we call no man our Nost, men, firm the Noble, but from the Baron vpward, wher Boson p. Nobilis in Latine, includes the meanest ward in Gentleman, aswell as Lords and others. point of bo. The names of Kings, Princes, Dukes, to no other Marquesses, Earles, Vice-Counts & Ba- by laying oathes,dica rons,&c. beeing titles of preheminence, their hands to distinguish the celebrity of each mans breastype, place & function, for orderly precedence. reft vpon Thus then, though none become Chri-their honoen

ftians by the rules of piety, carnally; and our inbred-ingenuity, proceed not from our Parents by the rules of probity, naturally; yet a Gentleman, one may be both reputed, and so called by the lawes of celerity, alias Cheualry, alias Heraldry, euen for humanity, and honest conversation civilly, and so become ennobled in himfelfe and his posterity Politically. For. "Est aliquid clarus Magnorüsblendor Auorü "Illud posteritas amula calcar habet.

And as to be a Christian, is the glory Glory. nerous, which also leades them on in the of all Nobility, and to be an honest man, Honour. is of it felfe most honourable: so to bee aduanced by the eve of Soueraigne Maicfty, with fuch Enfignes of Nobility, as demonstrate his celebrity in himselfe and his posterity, is properly most Noble; Noble Armes being in this respect ordayned to Armes. limit Families, as proper names do men. Whereby (this) flands diftinguished fro the other (two.)

For the first, from religious imputation, Gloticus. being hid fro the world, makes Christians only glorious by faith, with God in heaue. The second, from vertuous infusion,

makes honefty most honorable, & vertue still admired by good works among men. And this third, from absolute affection in Soueraigne loue and grace, makes fubiects rife ennobled respectively abroad,

Now, all that have the happineffe to be Ennobled fo to be lawfully exempted from the vul- glorified in heaven, or honoured vppon feuerallkindes and places: whereby the 'the grounds of all our credits.

meanest Subject being thus made happy, The first, by Diumes, beeing religiously

being morally disputed, like Twins of one birth or confin-germans at least, by piery and probity in a heattenly kinde of kindred, makes mortall men immortall, and by fame to live for ever. But the third, which this Treatise hath begot, or gladly would restore; being meere possitive with Kings,

within their kingdomes, and Orphantlike committed to their care and speciall trust depends upon their wils, their Rites it is we fee fuch Rankes of Nobility, fuch feuerall names of dignities, and titles of honor, bestowed upon Subjects for Piety and Probity, conspicuous in the world by

Soueraigne grace and fauour. Who at first, being but meane, and of slender beginnings, become at last extolled to places of renowne, from the foot-stoole, aduanced to the type and top of honour, & the fame like ebbes and floods, with time againe decline. These kindes of Nobility thus seueral-

ly laide open, and by a three-fold disposi-

tion made apt to be divided, are not (notwithflanding) fo at oddes within themfelues, that their Natures and their Effences admit no reconcilement, or may not

be vnited in one Person altogether. For the first, being celestiall, and meer-Notelliny
Theological ly dinine, admits no worldly vanity, whose Soueraigne is God, and whose Robes of perfection wee shall then put on your vs. when wee come to bee presented before Christ our King in Heauen. This is our more proper to the kinde. cheefest glory, our fummum bonum, and

highest blisse, whereto who strines to rife, and hopes to attaine, must worke it out by faith, and lay his foundation on the true Christian-Catholique and Apostolique-Religion: without which, euch Vertue her felte, with all her Morall Leffons. auailes vs nothing, as pointing onely to this end, aymes at this happinefie, but ob-

taines it neuer.

Nobility Phidophicall.

And they that being heere conversant with me on carth, have their mindes fo cleare and enlightened from aboue, that fore-feeing this end, they bend themselues thereto, and by a prudent care and constancy, still ayming at Instice, seeke onely the good of the Church and Commonwealth. These (I say) by their vertues nium and Modell of the reft, the most 110once confrienous, become for enerfamous, and worthily honoured with that nourably-Noble Order of knights of the

taught, and the second by Philosophers, | kinde of Nobility, which Philosophers fo.

magnific and extollymothe world. Now, these also at length being noted

by their names, and made knowne to So- Nobility Poueraigne Kings (that as Gods with God-Almighty rule heere the earth in common) are by them ennobled; first Datinely, with that Nobility, which descending to potterity, by right of inheritance, is Native of it felte, and in all places subject to peculiar Customes. From whence it and Country Customes. From whence comes to passe, that seeing Honesty, the height and type of honour, and vertue the way that leads vs thereunto; wee admire more Nobility Danine, being truely derined and raifed for it felfe then that which is Natine, and descended from other, as whose person first for vertues take, being for it felfe beloued, becomes with all illuftrious, and layes the foundation of happineffe in others, Nam Genus de Pronnes. & Que non fecimus Ipfi : vix es nostra vo co. For though in Nobility Politike and Civill, Generofity by antiquity, feeme to be respected; and to be borne a Lord, be more Noble, then so to be created; yet is it not so honourable, though farre more Honorable. generous. For Vertue of her felfe being Generous, enery way magnificent, first honours the Father then dignifies the Sonne, & magnifies posterity, which by the Grecians is more fignificantly fpoken, and better vn-

derstood, by their Eugeneia and genaion Eugenela. applying this to Ingenuity, which belongs

vnto the minde; and that vnto Celebrity

This then at the laft, is that Celeftiall, Morall, and Politick Nobility, that at first I propounded: whereof, when Dinines in their Sermons feeme to freake, and Philotophers by discourses goe about to dispute, they demonstrate nothing but Allegoricall idem, and immaginary fliaddowes, the inbitance whereof, wee must hope to finde in Heauen; when as heere cuen on earth for the good & furtherance both of Church and Common wealth, it is cherished and dignified at the hands of Soueraigne Kings, and as fitteft for grave Councellors placed next vnto the feluce, or Modellor whereof this rude Treatife containes the lathree kinds truefl patterne that the world affoords and one Order namely, The Nobility of this Menarchy of of the known Great-Brittaine, And therein as Instar Om- of the Gatter.

Garter: there

there being nothing found recorded, for | Lands, sencelesse and transitory, that nev-Religion, in thew more befeering a christian; for Vertue more Heroicall; nor for Poilicy, more affured, then this Religioully most Honourable and most Noble Society. For whereas all other of like institution, by growing ouer-vulgar, are become the leffe effected; or prouing elfe but icle, are at all hands neglected onely This is still so well supplyed with the Flower of true Nobility, that euer fresh and fpringing, by vearcly thowes and lufters, it difinifieth the beholders with greater admiration, then the best words of my Pen are able to viter.

546

For heere, all behold Maiesty herselfe, betweene Greatnesse and Decorum, defeend from her Throne, to walke & talke kindely with her owne Nobility; and Nobility it selfe betweene Honour and Reuerence, ascending on the Seate of her own Soucraigne Maiesty.

Heere the Religion of our Church, the Wifedome of our State, and the Nobuitty of our Court, admiring Kingly Maicfty, meere all in one rogether.

And heere our King with his Prince. our Prince with his Pecres, and our Pecres with their Worthies, meete and march together in one Bond of Loue, in one Order of Chualry, for mutuall defence both of Church and Common-wealth, aniazing the beholders with the stately fight and view of one personall Maiefty, in one fellowship of Honour, and one body of vustained and true Nobility.

Heere therefore to conclude, as the fittest place to end this weake and flender Treatife. If that which hath beene faide, descrues to be regarded (as Truth sayes it should) why do the Soucraignes and Monarchs of the world, then wrong themsclues in their Greatnesse and Authority. giuing way to proud violence, and prophane intrusion, wherby Popes haue put downe Emperors, & Cardinals presume to compare themselues with Kings? For whereas they alone by speciall Commission and Preheminence of place, and Vncommunicable power, and Prerogative of Grace, are made the Moderators of the vertuous endeaours, and onely Creators of all Titles of Honour, belonging to their Subjects, they fuffer Nobility to be tied, as it were against her owne Nature, to Fees, Houses, Caliles, Cities, and

ther infuse Religion, nor administer Inflice, nor encrease ryther in their prophane Possessors, nor make vulgar Tenants more honest, or more noble. For Ornanda potius est Dignitate Domus quam ex Domo Dignitas vicung, querenda, neg, a Domo Dominus fed a Domino Domis est vbiuis honestanda.

And thus having ended in the best fort I could, if I were to yeeld a reason of all that I have done, in a word, it should bee thus: The glory of God, and my Countries honour, to whom all stand indebted in all that we are, or can bee of our felues. Allegiance & Service to my Soueraigne, and his Nobility, and affection by Alliance, to the memory of mine Vnckle and deceassed Friend, were the Motiues only moued mee to take this worke in hand.

Hauing therefore now both offered vp, and thus paide all my vowes: mine Enthousiasme compels mee to salute his bleffed Genius, that by louing of Nobility, so hartily & so well, thus happily made happy, liues ennobled now in Heauen.

Quodena prima fides visa est tentasse, nec vitra Quasi tia prima fate vija epi emajje, spec vira in Patrica emplere decu for Bata fanchart:
ECCO via exegi, softrom pigusu Amarum,
Quada vi ilia dies, que iam tibi corpori urubram
Aduluti, paceti faculum dimi defigura aui:
Partic tames metiore tui, fuper alia petermis Quaque patet domitis Britanna potentia Terris, Dotta per ora virum perque omnia secula viues, Si quid babet grati Generosa propugo virorum.

What thou didft once attempt, our Countries worth to flow, But couldft not bring to paffe, the Fates for flade thy hand; Loe here, I have performed that Afflibou toou may know, Which enuy shall not cate, nor withering age with stand.

And though the day be paff, that bath thy Soule remov'd From hence; and bodies mortall fhape be parcel cleane away, And threats the like to me. yet that I cuer low!, (I meane thy better part) I hope, I shall againe enjoy.

And now, as far as Brittifh power, by Fame it felfe is rais'd, Or raming Sword, or by the helpe of any learned Pen, Thy name shall line, and Thou by future ages prais'd, If Honour dwell in Noble blood, or Honouly with Men,

(Efficient, as without which it hath no) For, and du-Regula iuris. Being, namely, foueraigne Endocky, | ring life only | For, as to infamie & or Grace and Fauor, without which, basenelle, the Gates as it could not subfift, so is it not of dignitie are never loft, but onlie by Lefe-Maiestie, high-Or made fet open: fo Honor Treason. Therefore, from the soue once bestowed by raigne, as from the fountaine, it is foueraigne grace, is deriued both Datiue & Natiue, and Hereditarie, not to be detracted is bestowed. either | & fuecessue to the Parties thane. eVertue, that of her Militarily, Which albeit they become difelf is conspicuously or, Materiall, or the Subminuhed and noted. All Nobilifpent, yet is not iect, wherof foueraigns ty political. Nobilitie withall create nobilitie, to wit, Fortune, or habilitie Fees, or In loft or extinct, u derined, to fulfaine Nobilitie, heritance of that of her Na-Namely, Goods. trie. and best knowne by the causes. | Creater caled Nobles Trudary by Dukes. | Dukes. | Letters parents, or write of four n for to the Parliament, wiz. | Earles Vioe. Counts. | Bartons, | Earles Vioe. Counts. | Formall, as how (Immediately) men become | by the Souclawfully digni- raigne, In England fied according nobility is to rites and ce-Or, diftingniremonies, and Leffer mad: by \ Knights. Bannetet. fhed into Commission, or without Let- Efquires. peculiar cuftos Batcheller. of Countries | Mediately by ters patents. cither | Committion Gentlemen. Finall, to what end, Service done, and to be done, to the King, and to be done, to Common

NOBILITY political is a Dignitic bestowed by Soueraigne Grace, upon Persons of Vertue or ability, for life, or for euer, whereby a Man exempted and raised by Degrees, becomes lawfully preferred about the vulgar People, the better to doe service to the King and Commonwealth.

Est, aliquid clarus Magnorum splendor Auorum, Illud Posteritas amula calcar habet.

The

* A River

which divides

Nathone (16

Liguria.

ning our of

Apannin us, &

parting Lieu

na from He-

The figuatio

of the cittle

Geneway.

truria.



SIXT BOOKE.

OF THE GOVERNEMENT

and Administration of Iustice, observed in the Common-wealth of Gennes or Geneway.

CHAP. I.



He people of Li guria are contained betwixt the Riuers of "Varus & *Macra, along the Sca-coast. & the downefall of the Apenines. Of all which

country, the city Gennes or Geneway (most noble for antiquity and power) hath(for the larger part of time) held the rule and Soueraignty because both for buildings, as alfoin nobilitie of actions, and in respect of valiantmen, it hath enermore beene very notable among all the rest of former times. This Cittie gracing the South with hearbs, beauteous lookes, is most prowdly built vpon the Sca-coast, and hath her backe vpon the North, at the foote of a mountaine; even as if the were descended downe the mount, and come to repose her selfe vppon a Plaine, the mountaine remaining on her backe part to defend the citie from the furious North. It is not altogether plaine nor mountainous, but participateth both of the one and other giring about the compaffe of fixe miles, fo faire and goodly as can be defired.

And because concerning her Antiqui-Concerning tie, we can not deliuer any thing certaine the antiquite of General, (in regarde fome doe maintaine, that it and by whom was built by Genoua or Iuno, the daughter of Saturne; others, by Genuinus, the companion of Phaeton; and some by Innus, who was faid to be Noah) it shall be fufficient therefore to fay, that it was accounted a citty two hundred and ninetie yeares before the comming of Christ on the earth, as manifestly appeareth (fetting afide Titus Linius in the Decade of his eight Booke) by a Table of Braffe, found (no long time fince) in the Valley Abrascuble of Pozzenera, and placed in the Church found in the of Saint Laurence: whereon is engranen zeuena, in auncient Letters , That in the Confulthip of Lucius Cecilius, and of Quintus Manilius, Indges were fent from the Senate of Rome, to discide the variance betweene the Vitturi, and the people of Geneway, concerning the neare neighbouring valley. And because as well the fententiall execution, as the gaole delinerie of prisoners, which were in respect of that strife maintained, was to succeede and follow in Generaly: therefore we may heereby comprehend, that the City (vntill that time) confifled upon some other

confiderations.

Now,

Now, this to noble Cittie, in former times held a great estate, and was posfessed of many Countries in the East parts: and now it is very powerfull by Sea in all respects sometimes seruing the the Duke of Millsine, fometimes the king of France, euer being traueled with much busines, either in regard of being an illustrous and famous Cittie, or because it is the paffage, and (euen as it were)the gate for going from the mountaines into Italy. Whereupon some conceine and are perswaded, that it was called Janua, as a Gate for Italie, and not Ianua of Ianus, who was old father Noah. But let it be in maner howfocuer, the men of this nation are industrious, enermore attentine to merchandize, whereby they attaine vnto great wealth, and as with other people it fareth, euen fo amongest them, there is alwayes great plenty of money, because no one prinate man, but very many more beside, haue made paffage of five hundred thoufand ducats, euen after the best valuation.

And yet these men so great and wealthie, beeing molested by some parcialities, which divers times have endange-The readnes red Italie, are now, and so have beene for notifical no small time, ready with their weapons in hand, expulfing now one familie, and foone after another, from the State; and now the Nobles gaining superioritie, afterward the popular fort; one fide fauoring the A lorni, another the Fregofi, and at legth reduced (by the benefit of prince Andrea Doria) to the present libertie which they now enjoy. For Geneway being in the power of the French, and Doria departing from service to the King of France, to whom hee was Admirall : at one and the felfe fame time, deliucred both himfelfe and Countrey from feruilitie to the King of Fraunce, and questionlesse with vinconquerable corage. For he might have impatronifed and pofferfed himfelfe of the whole State, beeing entreated and euen (as it were) confirained by his friends, that he would vouchfafe to take the commaund of them : but he rather affected (fetting afide all ambition) to reflore them to their former freedome, with fo much glory to him in future ages, as fo rare an example in him did juilly merit : whereto (perhaps) hee might be the rather incited, by the enuic

he bare to Christopher Columbus, because, | Andrea Do. if he opened to modern people the other the honour of part of the world, which had for fo many Christopher veares beene that vp from all other : 10 Columbus, this other (with wel gouerned thoughts) ring of his fpurning at all appetite of dominion, Countries limight open to his owne Citizens (with bette. their libertie) the State fo long lockt vp, by the difford of their owne opinions. Wherefore, deservedly the Generatyes A Statue ere-erected a Statue to his perpetuall glorie, etcl in honor and the memorable renowne of his im-mortall actions: as for his immente gift by his worthy industrie, was done to Columbus, by the Princes of Spaine. Geneway thus receiving in anno 1528.

her nouell reformation; entred upon the fame forme of government which it now maintaineth. A description was then An observation made, and therein set downe all the Fa- on made conmilies of account, as well noble as populer ben Families lar, appearing as descended of fixe hou- in Geneway, fes in Geneway : and the reckoning grew defined of the fo, that in Geneway there were found 28. and amounting to eight Families . All the rest remaining out of and twentie. this account, and yet were of some confideration, but not derined from those fixe houses; were aggregated and written downe in the aforefaide number of twentie eight families, by the title of Nobilitie, excluding the remainder of the people and Plebeians. And notwithstanding this entrancethus made, there The noblewas an addition to the number of these men more ad Nobles, of tenne persons in like fort ennobled, either for their riches or vertue, of cight and and these were made choice of eneric twente. yeare, applying their paines still fro hand to hand.

With all this prouldence, they could not yet so well prenaile, but in the yeare of our Lord, one thousand fine hundred feauenty and foure, a new tumult arofe in the Common-wealth, and as in the wonted civile differtions : fo a division happened that yeare, betweene two factions, termed olde and new. The principall occasion which moved this contention, was, that the olde fide, being not contented to have the greater part of authoritie in the Common-wealth; die mortally hate the new fide, abhorring & difdaining (albeit that the new fide, both for auncient Nobility, and true vertuous merit, were equall to them in al respects) to joyne in kindred with them. This was

A rew tumult between two

Matheo Sens reen a man of great account and who (at that time) was great Chanamong the Genewayes, ftrining to al-lwage this per cellour, and chiefe Secretarie of the cipall of the new fide more then once, turbation.

> intreated them, affirming, that it was not well, that fuch dinerfitie of interests and prinate respects, should have life in one and the fame City: shewing also by liuely reasons, bow availeable it was to eucry man, and likewise profitable for the State, that all should converse and like

most justly to be affected) before any pri-

nate respect whatfocuer, had not bride.

led the head-firong course of intended

hostiluie. Wherefore hee wrought so

paintully with the Generages themselues,

the Emperour, the King of Spaine, and e.

specially with Pope Gregorie the thir-

teenth, all favoring him with their help-

full affiftance, as the tumults in the Citty

were quieted, and after some few despe-

rate accidents, the furie of Armes was

quite blaffed, wherein both the faithful-

neffe of Senarega, and his admirable

wifedome cordently appeared. Hee be-

There are none to viole: as wilfull aged men, when they are grou ded on an ob finate opitio

But the words and euident reasons of Senurego, failing of fufficient efficacie, putfed up the olde fide with greater obftinacie, yet drew a farre better opinion of the new, prougking to farre to defend them, that oftentimes he was in danger of his life among them. For the old fide did great'y enuie, that the authoritie of Senareza thould pearch to fuch a height, that in him onely thould be reposed, the

tion preuailed any Armes or violence against the new by generall finiage polov fide. the olde, by the meanes of red the Common-wealth, if Senarega, Senarega. fore-feeing the weighty perill, and pre-

Ali flirresand tempefluou. tumulte calmly oner-blowing by the di ligentende nours of Sc.

and both of the publike & private Councell; with very fingular Eloquence hee mutually together.

ga, a Citizen of most eminerat authority,

Common-wealth; also had beene prin-

The great Councell.

of Geneway.

recited Families, is congregated a confiling of Councel of four e hundred persons yerely, who together with the Duke and thoritically the Gouernours, have the charge of have. the Common-wealth in their power. This Councell maketh election of the efficacie of the publike and prinate go-Duke, and of the eight Gouernours, uernement. Neuertheleffe, Senarega op-(because the Governours are the just posing their pernicious demonstrations number of eight) and have care of the with wonderfull wisedome, mooued State for two yeares continuance. They especially (as the same went) by a genemannage matters of importance, and concerning generall good, as also for rous disdaine, wrought in such fort, that the new fide affumed the chiefe place in the confernation of the Selgniorie : and The Signoria these Gouernours (with the Duke) are ordoning government, excluding (well-neare) properly called the Signoria. But and if all the olde, conftrayning them to forfake their Countrey, if they attempted they are at any time to handle fome occasions, which are not so important and weightie, but of meaner confide Aleffercoun ration : The Signoria haue a leffer dellot abundered Noble These words would much have stir-Councell in readie feruice, confifting men. of an hundred men of the Nobilitie, ferring the publique good of all (beeing elected by the Signoria by lotterie, and out of the maine bodie of the forefayd

The Duke.

fourchundred.

'He head or chiefe of the Commonwealth is the Duke , because he hath The most er the Title and Honour which appertaine vnto him: and it is an auncient degree in mon wealth, the Citty, whereto by varietic of times, and the substitute of times, and the substitute of times. divers persons have attained, but not by hit years. any course of Lawe. He continueth for two yeares, and in all that time of his au-

infinitely displeasing to Mattheo Senare- | ing appointed (by vniuerfall consent) Ambaffadour to Rome, with infinite prouidence and care (to the honour of the Common-wealth, and his owne great reputation) discreete qualified both factions, already growne to such a head on either fide, both by power and maleuolence; as not onely threatned danger to the Countrey it selfe, but likewise to haue filled all Italy with innumerable calamities and confusions; whereof the Pope (by his Breues) delinered most honourable testimonie, writing the acti- A Talebe. ons of Senarega to the * Doye, as alfo to to the Dukes

the Procurators of the Commonwealth of Venice and

ERom the whole bodie of the before- A Councell

Chap.1. Of the Common-wealth of Geneway. 551 thority, he dwelleth in the publique Pal-

lace, having five hundred high Germaines as his Guard, reprefenting heerein the forme of an absolute Soueraignetie. At the beginning of the affumption of his magistracie, for two dayes hee is clothed in his Ducall ornaments: but afterward, and the whole confistence of his regiment, hee weareth other habites.

but yet of Veluet or crimfon Sattin, and

fometime purple. His authoritie is very

any other, may propound what cause he

wil in Councel and in the Senate, which

is forbidden vnto any other Senatour.

Whereupon, whofoeuer would record

any Lawe to the Common-wealth, or

elle propound a motion of some impor-

The manner of the Dukes elections is

of the passed Duke; because hee hauing

ended his Office of two yeares returned

the first day of lanuary home to his own

house as a prinate person, and remaineth

a Procurator all his life time. The leffer

Councell with the Senate, doe elect a-

mong them (by ballot) eight and twenty

Noblemen, one for each Familie, who

to foone as they are chosen, are called in-

to the Pallace, and there thut yppe in a

Dikes autho meconfile important, because hee onely, and not sbrue all o-

tant matter, he must break it to the duke, and paffe it by his meanes. arribe Duke thus: The third day of the moneth of retelled on Ianuary, the Senate doth affemble with the leffer Councell, without the person

place by themselues, and there, together with those Senatours, who eyther in regard of age, or by contumacie of the Families are not capable of the dukedome: they elect eighteene men amongst themfelues, one for a Familie; and those eighteene, together with the fame Senatours, do elect another eight and twentie, which eight and twentie are called, and beging lockt vp with the aforefayde heh eache Senatours, they proceede by ballotting them that are to bee propounded to the Councell to be Duke. But heere you must know, that they may propound no more to the great Councell, but foure perfons onelie, and in the election of that number, it is necessarie, that the eight and twentie doe agree in two third paris among themselves, with the part of the aforefaide Senatours. This being

agreed between them, before they come

forth of the Confistoric, they elect ano-

ther eight and twenty, one for each Family, who returne together with them, from ballotting the aforefaid foure. And they rife from their Election with the two thirds, and put in place of him or them (not formerly appropued) one or more, but of the number of the Senate: which being done, the Councell meete together, and they propound the names of the foure men concluded on and elecled by the Electors : whereupon, hee of side addite the foure that hath the most ballots, is of Genewa . named for Duke. And at the time when I wrote this difcourse in that honourable degree of Duke, was chosen the most cur-

man, for goodnesse of life, and practife Of the eight Governours.

teous and famous Lord, Paulo Baptista

Caluo, sometime a Judge, a most worthy

in the worlds occasions.

THere sit vpon the Bench (with the Duke) eight Gouernors, as his councellers, and their Office doth endure for Benchwith two yeares: and they, with the duke are the Duke. named the Signoria, and gouerne the Common-wealth. All these together cannot deliberate on any thing, wherein the interest of the people is concerned, or of any chiefe important business but they call for the ayde of the Great Councell. These Gouernors are elected by two at a time, at fixe and fixe months;

and their elections made in this manner. The leffer Councell and the Duke being affembled together, they elect eight and twenty men, one for enery Familie, unnours are who beeing chofen by the Senate and chofen by the Duke, doe propound fometimes twelve, Duke and tel fometimes foureteene men to the great Councell; who (by ballotting) do make election of one of them at a time. The next day following, they observe the fame order in electing the fecond, to wit, the leffer Councell do elect another eight and twenty, and that eight and twenty performe the rest as both beene faid. Enery one of the eight Gouernors ending his office, remayneth Procurator or Atturney for two yeares space : fo that in the Colledge of the Proctors, there are alwayes eight, that thand for the gouernement of the Common-wealth; 8.Procurators and all these come into the Senate with alwayes athitthe duke, and with the eight Gouernors, ing the Con-

delibera-

The Proftor

con the lie

higheit digni

is an O acet

Two luiges

more as his

affultants.

tic ot al.

Chap. 1.

nadefmen &

fuch as deale

inall profet-

guarde & de

ence of the

Cittie, and

heirready

preparation

ters; and thus with these Gouernours & the Duke confisteth the whole summe of the State. Two of them have abiding in the Pallace, the other keepe at their owne houses; and they change by turnes two at a time, at three months, and three

Of the Procorators or Proctors.

Oncerning these Proctors, some of them living, doe come to be in the Office of Dake, and some doe remaine in charge but two yeares, and they are fuch as have beene Governours. They have care for procuring all publike occafions, collecting the rents and reuenues, and other such like businesse; being men of chiefe reputation, and of no meane importance.

Of the Potestate or Prostor.

A L the forenamed Magistrats, do on-lie attend upon the gouernement of the Common-wealth. Next now, con-The Potestate | cerning matters of Iustice and Iudgechofen abread ment (fpeaking first of criminall causes) and not of the they are guided and ordered in common by a forraine Potestate, who is a doctor, and they graunt him an honourable ftipend. He hath his residence in a Pallace, which is neare to the Dukes, and he heareth and judgeth all offences happening; but can affigne no capitall punishment, without confent of the Senate. Two other Doctors, being strangers also, doe affith him, whereof the one is called the ludge of Malefactours, and the other Fiscallor Atturney generall: and by the ayde of these two ludges, all processe and fuites are formed against guiky perfons, dealing also in cases of like nature. Beside these afore-named, the Potestate hath his Vicar, who attendeth vpon Ciuile causes, onely executive.

Of the extraordinarie Office.

THere is an Office of seauen men, cal-led Extraordinarie, and these do reorefent (as it were) the Princes person. ecante he is bufied in administration of the Common wealth. Their care confiffeth, in reforming and proronging of

deliberating together on important mat | variances, and granting tutors to Schollers. And because contention is forbidden betweene Parents and Parents, and betweene poore and rich by ordination: these men doe appoynt what magistrate they meete, to heare offending parent and kindred, as also the strifes betweene poore and rich. Their Office continueth the space of sixe months, and is of much dignitic.

Of the fine (upreme Sindicators.

Here is also a Magistracie, wherein Such as trie are fine men, called supreame Sundicators, They have authority to arraigne, of higher to not onely the Duke, but the Gouernors mineral for alfo, after the expiration of their charge: and they have the like power over all other magistrates of the Commonwealth, to punish both the Duke and Gouernours, finding them to bee delinquent.

And when the Duke is out of his Office, and that the Gouernours havefulfilled their magistracie; a Proclamation is published by these Supreame Sindicators, That if any man haue ought to charge the Duke withall, or the Gouernors, let them appeare in their presence, and lustice shall be done them. In which respect, the Duke and Gouernours have eight dayes affigned them for this scin-The Duke and dication; which beeing past, and they Gouerned found in errour, they are punished : but haue eight being innocent, they have a Pattent af dyelor ber figned them of their innocencie, whereby they are after called to be Proctours; because they cannot enter as Proctours, except they have the Pattent from those Supreamemen, to allow their expedition. Finally, the greatnesse of this Office is fuch, that the Common-wealth elected for one of these Supreame Scindicators, the Prince Andrea Doria, the deliuerer of his Countrey. They are elected by the leffer Councell, with the Senate, and fit in the Pallace next to the Senate, for their respect.

Of the Rota.

BEcause wee have formerly spoken of other Doctors and let us say through the same of the s formewhat concerning citale causes. pointed took Wherein ye are to know, that the Com- fure in could mon-wealth doe make choice of fine do-

tors, forraignes or strangers, at euery 2. yeares, which bodie of authoritie is called Rota . These men attend vpon Civile causes onely, and dwell in the Dukes pallace : Al fuch matters as they confure on, are guided by ordinarie course of the Imperial Lawes, forming their Processe and fuite, according to the indiciarie order appointed for the Cittie, which is after the auncient maner.

Of the Cenfors.

JOw, as concerning Arts, Trades and Mysteries, Censors are appoynted to that charge. These men do prouide, that buyers, fellers, and all fuch as trafficke in handi-crafts, shall have measures, weights, and all things elfe to them belonging, iuft, and according to the auncient Lawes. And here we are to obserue, that enery Art hath chiefe or head men, who are called Confulles, which make eeury under lection of Artists amongst them . These Confulles have authoritie in the matters of their Artes, and amongst these Confulls, fuch as deale in filks, may command much ouer their men : fo that their power extendeth, to put them to the halter, to banish them, and perforce send them to the Gallies, or to give other ca-

Of forty Captaines.

stigations to delinquents.

IN the Cittie of Geneway there are forty Captaines, of the number and bodie of the Nobilitie, and they are changed eucry yeare. These men haue under them an hundred men (for one) of the people, fo that they make (in all) foure thousand persons, and the Common-wealth is ferued by them at all occasions. For they make a guarde in time of the least suspition; and when the Signoria is abroad, thefe fortie Captaines (bearing them company) are all clothed in Veluet, goodly and honourable ornaments, meete to attend on to great Lords. Moreouer, all men in the Citty, and the whole Burrough, that are apt to carrie Armes, are registred downe, from the age of twentie, to three fcore, and are reduced under the gonernment of those Captains, who (with them) fland alwayes obliged to be readily armed with weapons in hand, according to the auncient cuffome ordained.

Of the Generall.

T'He Common-wealth hath continually a Generall, who is appoynted for Armes, to ferue in all occurrences, and in times of warre. At this instant it enioyeth (well deferring fuch a degree, and to the fatisfaction of all the Nobili tie, much pleafing to the whole hoaft of Souldiers, and vniuerfall liking of the Augustino Spi people) the Lord Asquestino Spinola, a nota Genemost honourable and valiant Gentleman ratof the Gentleman neway torces. of that Citty, full of incomparable bountie and knowledge, not onely in the occasions of Armes, but for all mannagements of the world belide.

Of the Office of Saint George.

THe Office and Magistracie of Saint At what time George, most noble among all the rest saint George in the Cittie, was ordained in the yeare, beganne. 1407. It is now (by length of time) the confernation of that Common-wealth, which, in those yonger dayes had not any naturall riches or wealth, fitting the qualitie of such a Country: yet notwith standing, it wanted not men of quicke and apprehenfine indgement, to find out the way, and forme some means for procuring of moneys, that might arise to common vse : whereupon, they that liued in those auncienter yeares, and gouerned the publique occations, tooke vp Provision for

moneys of particular persons, some by somey alconstraint, others with much willingnes. waves in bank for the catties And true it is, that in this money matter, vie. fuch prinate perfons as disburfed any fumnies, the publique vie payed them, tenne, nine, eight and seauen in the hundred, according to the varietie of times, to the end, that they might not fuffer any endammaging , by fuch feruice as they did for publique benefit.

Proceeding in this course, it made men willing, ready and cautelous, in fee king fecurity for their moneys, dayly put into the publique Banque, by felling to fome (as for example) the power and in rifdiction of toll for meates, to others , Great flockes the imposts of wines, and to others the otrome autaxations layd on corne. And thefe contracts madeboth in publique and parti- poorelogincular, was tearmed among them Bargai. | ning. ning and Buying, as when particular men bought any thing of the common fort, or in generall.

And

Seaten men termed Extraor Image: O ficers, & who their charge

The begin ning of tra-Jing and So cie i sinGene way, onely by cae Banquers hat lent out moneis to yfe

554

disburfed an hundred pounds, hee was faid to hold one place among the buyers : he that disburfed two hundred, had two places; and hee for three hundred, three, it could be at the beginning. and fo it paffed from hand to hand. So that this kinde of commerce and viance | Banquers, they are not fo determinate multiplied greatly, and had names of diuers ordinations; as of the Capitoll, of Saint Paule, and others of their profession, by dealing in Salt, and diuers other belide, whole Titles and Names grew by their trading, and helde correspondencie particularly among the best Cittizens, having care for inft payments, and the dues of the profites, with confideration of the Banquer, who alwayes ordered the contracts made publiquely or prinately. Heerenpon, the number of dealers dayly encreasing, both by forraigne Nations and home-bred friends, which required divertitie of Governours and Ouer-feers, and which elfe would grow to great confusion : it was therefore ordered by the Signoria, that all the Banquers should bee reduced and united into one absolute Societie, and named the Company of Saint George. Beeing thus ordained, they were also

Light gouerappoynted to bee gonerned by eight Cicers of the tizens from yeare to yeare, who provi-Baugger, both ter ka ding and al lowinces.

ded and gaue order, how the Banquers flould let out their fummes, and receive in their interests and allowances, whereby they held the eminencie in the Office of Saint George . And in regard they perceyned, that this Office gouerned thefe matters with wifedome and inflice, bufineffe dayly encreasing, and the number of places supplyed by new persons : alienation of profits grew among the Commons, and the charge of the Office euery way to be greater, by reason of lands and communities interested with them, fo that the Office attained to many priniledges : first, by the Signoria of Geneway, and afterward of many Popes, Emperors and great Lordes, which came to dominion in the Citty: So that the Office of Saint George, although it depended on the common people, as also the Signoria of Generaly : yet all that came to the gonemement or Seigneurie of the Cutie, were faorne to conferue the Priniledges of the Magiffracie of Saint George, and to maintaine it. And because (naturally)

And it was ordained, that who focuer things take original of weake beginnings, and to in processe of time attayne to perfection: even fo did this magisterial Office, being much better ruled now, then

First, in answering the profites to all nor certayne, as at the originall : but yet Thebega. according to the proportion of former affairts med allowances, leffe or more, and according helpentine vinto expences for the confernation of by the face, things of especiall care, and according to at ameto to the fruitfulnesse of tolles and taxati- true integer. ons, beside divers other benefites, affigned by the Commons to the Banquers: they are farre more fecure, and more neately qualified, concerning mens con-

Moreover, this place hath obtayned Seigneury and dominion by many good and fufficient allowances, which it could not have at the beginning. Beside, eucrie way are made new rules and orders, whereby there is farre better expedition of Causes, for the punishing of delin quents, and fubmission of the people to gouernement.

And who focuer docth confider the Two Concess high account of this Magistracie, shall internate incompand stude the body of the Cittie; thereby to howshever containe in it selfe two communities, the goutened. one great, the other leffe. The great is gouerned by the Pallace, and comprehendeth all the Citty; the leffer is gouerned by Saint George onely, as concerning the occasions before remembred. and comprehendeth all the Banquers and changers.

The first Communitie, or the greater, is subject to variation, and is many times under regiment, rather to bee tearmed Tyrannicall then otherwise: but the leffer is alwayes free, firme, an I vnder the Anote well Cittizens. And certainely, which is a wonth the differention. matter admirable, and rarely found, eyther by Philosophers or others, that have discoursed on causes concerning Common-weales, to obserue: that within the circuite of one and the fame wall, and all at a time, there should be tyrannic and liberty, life civile and corrupt, juffice and licence.

Of eight Protectors of the Office of Saint George.

Oncerning this Office of S. George, there are eight men appoynted to gouerneit, who are called Protectours. They continue for a yeare, and are eleared every fix months foure times, by the whole number of the Banquers, or Cre ditors for lands, & Creditors for letting forth certain fums, after this manner. A. mong the whole number of Citty Creditors, by lot are chosen 80 men, who meeting together soone after their election, they make a furuey among al those toure fcore, and felect out of them foure and twenty by balotting, who being thut vp in a roome by themselues: they may not funder or depart, till they have ballot. ted for the eight Protectors, and in this ballotterie, fixeteene ballots doe confirme the election.

In the yeare 1444, an other Office

Another Of oure and for tic, being cho irn out of a thouland,

Chap.2.

be manner

of electing the

dors of Saint

was made of Saint George, confilling of men, which was then called the Officeoffoure and fortie, in regard of a thoufand, out of which number they were created. The occasion of creating these eight men, was, that being the space of thirty feuen yeres, the Office fo encreafed and augmented that the eight Prote-Aors could not (in a whole yeare)terminate nor restrain the butie occasions happening, whereby the emoluments and interells of some creditors arose to great, and other moneys in dinerfe manners: it was thought fit (for fetting downe good order to fuch Remaines, which were (in effect) the riches and substance of the office) that a necessary participation of the gaines should be digested, for the creation of fuch as should helpe in this prouident care, for generall villitie of the Office of Saint George, and yet to be carried infecret manner, for taking away all occasion of tyranny. And so eight Cittizens were chosen; of which two are changed yearely t and they take charge of collecting and governing fuch over pluffes as do arife yearely, by the managements of the eight Protectors,

This Office hath vnder protection the Isle of Corfica, and many other Citties and important places; and thence enfueth the expences layd out for their conferna-

CHAP. II.

An excellent Relation, concerning the estate of Religion and Common wealth, which was observed among the Lewes.



T is not to bee doubted, but by the fingular councell of our eternall God, the Father of our Lord Iefus Chrift, who created mankinde, whereby

a Church might bee affembled and congregated: a perpetual! historie concerning the creation of things, was given to

And although that the Philosopher Democritus, and others like to him , drca- Democrine med of an eternitie of a former world, or dreating of else of innumerable worlds, and made a soft innumerable worlds. mockerie at the beginning of things, and Jable worlds thought fuch a recitall to be buttabulous: yet notwithstanding wee holde them to be most true, considering, that Almightie GOD appropued the Writings of Moles by apparant testimonies, as by the rayling vp of the dead and others.

Now, a beit wee receive the auncient Historie of the Church, and fingularly allow it for the Dinine authorities : larly allow it for the Dinine authorities: The suncient yet there are many more Eurocences of Inflorie of the trueth besides; for, the auncient names Church. of people, doe agree with the fuccession of the Pathers that related them, and the order of Empires bath bene fuch, as they were foretold to be, and to thould be in their forceeding times.

The Prophetical Historie then is the Therrophetitruest, and the most auncient of all o- cal Historic ther; and the reason of that continued the most and Historie, was, not onelie to let vs know | mod ancient, the beginning of mankinde; but much more to notific vnto vs, the Promiles of the Sonne of God, and to give vs certainety of the first, and no way to be corrupted doctrine of God, and of the reflifications to oftentimes rendred to other by that doctrine, what the governe-

Bbb 2

ment of the Church hath beene; for it

The daily in creating of the Office of Saint George

udas or Ioia

leufalem &

Profund the

b'affings of

God vpon his

556

was preferued in the dinerfitie of tumults, amongst Empires, like to a Shippe floating vppon raging and tempestuous billowes, what the battailes of the Church have beene, and the exercises of Faith.

that hee gaue a certayne feating vnto his Church, euen as an Academie, for more then fixeteene hundred yeares in a commodious place, betweene two most potent Kingdomes of Egypt and Babylon, the voyce of his doctrine might be heard. the Miracles adjusted, which are witnesbe informed by true doctrine, in the conflicts of the Church, and her manifold reconeries.

Concerning the inflerence la ter times.

Propheticall haltonie reached to the

The Cherch

Now, it was a great bleffing of God, to the end, that throughout them both There the Promises were repeated, and fes of the presence of God: whose will was to have those things set downe in writing, to the end that Posteritie might

And although nothing is found in writing by publike authority, touching the last times; yet notwithstanding, our Lord was carefull to have the latter Historic knowne, which hath beene declared partly by Isephus, and partly by Philo, whereof I have made a collection, because the more studious might enjoy a continuall Historie of the Icwish people, cuen to the destruction of Ierufalem. And it pleafed God, that a continued fuccesse of histories should remaine to men: for feeing that Prophetical histories reached fo farre as the reigne of the Persians, or to King Cyrus; the Greeke and Latine hiflories afterward, reported the great mutime of C reat tations of the following Empires, which King of Perfia alfo was feconded after by the Apostles writings, concerning the Sonne of God, borne of the Virgine Marie, crucified and raifed againe; and after the Apostles, En. (chius, Epiphanius, and Nicephorus purlued in the Ecclefiafticall Hiftory. Wherein I make no doubt, but all fuch as are well advised, will confesse, that the knowledge of the order of Times is necessarie, to vinderstand when the Doctrine was reuealed, the Sonne of God manifefled, ftormes; and yet (after all)gracionfly delinered. Wherefore, let vs give thankes | ancient. to God, for bestowing on men the conpily diameted / timined Hiftoric of his Sonne; and let vs keepe fuch Writings religiously: where-

in having taken fome paines, I hope it will proue pleasing to all Christian Rea-

The beginning of the Catalogue is the continuation of fourraigne Sacrificers, or high-Priests that gouerned the Iewish people, after their returne from Babylon, with the princes issued of the race

The first Familie being the Posteritie of Icfus.

CHAP. 111.

A Catalogue of the High-Priests; or foueraigne Sacrificers, beginning with Seraia and his fonne lofedech.

of lofedech, came backe into Indea with to lofedech the Prince Zorobabell, fine hundred and thirtie yeares before the Natinitie of Christ. He lined under the Kings of Perfia, Cyrus, Cambyfes, Darius the fonne of Hystaffes, Xerxes, cuen to the twentieth yeare of Artaxerxes, Long-hand, and prefided (as chiefe Prieft) first fixe and thirty yeares. Afterward, in regarde that the building of the Temple was hindered, he went into Babylon to Darius, the fonne of of Hyslages, whom the Holy Historic nameth Anafhuerus, and was absent the space of eight yeares. After his returne hee was twenty yeares more in the highthe Church congregated in diuers kinds, Priefthood. Philo is of opinion, that he fometimes agreated by temperations wrote the Historic of Indith, which others (neuertheleffe) holde to be more

The Sonne of Lefus was Isachim.

Oschim helde the Priest-hoode eight yeeres, in the absence of his brother, and eight and fortie veres after his death. Heelined under Long band, and Darius the Battard, untill the twelfth yeare of Artaxernes Abafbuerus, who was also named Mnemon; hee did fet downe in writing the Hiftorie of Hister, and the memorie of Phurim was by him instituted, as Philo writeth.

ElisCh the fon Eliafib was his fonne, who was in Office of the Soucraigne Priest-hoode one and twentic yeares, vntill the foure and thirtieth yeere of the reigne of Artaxer-

> Indus or Ioiada sonne to him, was hic-Priest foure and twenty yeares; vntill the third yeare of the reigne of Darius, who fucceeded next to Mnemon,

Ishn and Isfus were his fonnes, the latter whereof beeing fiered with ambition, infinuated himfelfe (by the power of giftes) into the fauour of Vocefes, Satrape of Persia, to take (by his helpe) the chiefe Priest-hood from his Brother: But immediately hee payed the penaltie due vnto his wicked prefumption; for in a debate and blowes being moued in the temple, he was flaine by his brother. Heere was the beginning of the cuills in Indea, about an hundred, fixtie and feauen yeares, after the returne from Babylan.

John having murdered his brother tefus in the Temple, was the cause of bringing the people into a miferable feruitude. For, the Satrape Vogefes being advertised of the death of his friend le/111, entited with a mightic Armic into terusalem, prophaned and pilled the Temple, faying, That he might afwell doe fo, as the high-Prieft to foyle it with the blood of his owne Brother : he collected the tribute money rigoroufly for the space of seaten yeares together, proceeding therein to farre, as forcing the lewes to pay an hundred crownes of the Sonne, for enery beaft that they facrificed. Iohn held the high-Prieft hood foure and twenty yeares, even ynto the death of Ochue, and the beginning of the reigne of Arfanes.

His Sonnes were taddus and Mana//es.

Manufes following the example of k-ladder and Minates ions to them, to threngthen himselfe against to tehn. balat the Chuttean, fent Satrape by the last Darius into Samaria, and tooke to wife his daughter Nicoffa. But in regard of this valawfull marriage, hee was repulfed from the Sacerdotall Office, with diuerfe others for the same caute. Beeing bereft of the Priesthoode, hee made his recourse to his Father in lawe in Samaria, who after he had obtayned leave of Alexander the Great; builded a new Temple vppon an high mountayne in Samaria called Garizim, thaping it after A newTemple the forme and magnificence of that at boot on anoti-Ierufakem, and there hee cauted his fonne Samana.

Mana//es to prefide. This diuftion of High Pricits, was afterwards the cause of great tumults in Index; for, as all they which were ex- Great Britis pelled from Irrufalem, for transgressing and contents the Ceremonies of Alofes Lawe, as allo the two Isan for some other offences, betooke them- ples. felues to this new Temple : in a thore time after, they grewe to fuch an head and strength, that inciting those Sacrificers, Apoflates and Samaritans against the lewes: it likewife gane occation to many riotous courfes and theeneries on

cither fide. Nothing was found by pofferitie of this Manaffes: but two hundred yeares after, the Temple on this Mount of Garizim was deffroyed from the toppe to the bottome, by Ishn Hireanus, fonne vnto Simon the Afmonean, and Succeffor

Liddus administred the hie-Priesthood for feauen and twentie yeares, under Arfanes, and the latter Daries, even to the time of Alexander the Great. He de-Italiandepti prived his brother Atanafes (and the ret.) methodies of the right of Priefthood; because (con fet the Pacit trary to the Law of Almightic God) they hold. had married with thrange women. V. hile Alexander the Great belieged the Cittle of Tyre, heedemaunded aide and tribute the author of of this Laklas, fuch as the Towes had for- toddisto A merly payed to the Pertians. Whereto I Sander the he returned antwer, That in the life time ling ande and of Darius (to whom hee tooke his oath) where. ВЬЬз

The

Alexander

with all lub-

Alexanders

his dreame.

milion.

A Catalogue of the High-Priests. 6. Booke

he neuer acknowledged any other Lord, because that the lewith Nation had been tubutaric to the Kings of Persia, almost euer fince their returne from Babylon. Alexander growing angrie at fuch an anfwere; after the taking in of Tyre and Gaza, mounted up to lerusalem with his Armies, intending to subjugate the

lewes by strength of Armes. But Iadd:ss beeing thereof admonished in a dreame, tooke his Priestlie garments, and went to meete him in great humilitie, accompanied with all Iaddus meetes the Sacrificers and Citizens. Alexander

beholding the Soueraigne high Priest, alighted on his feete, and gaue vnto him reverend adoration. Being demaunded what should mooue him to reuerence an enemie, that came with submissing entreatie vnto him : hee replyed : At the time of my abiding in Macedon, and

thinking on the Empire of Asia. aman was presented to mee in my sleepe, in the same or like habite as the High Priest weares, who perswaded mee to undertake the expedition of Afia, and gaue mee good hope of profperous [uccelle. When hee was entred the Cittie, he

was so farre from offering the least talte of an enemy, that, after hee had facrificed, he adorned the Temple with magnificent giftes, and at his departing hee gaue them libertic to vie the Lawe of their Fore-fathers, and the immunities of the featenth yeare, wherein the fields were not fowne.

> The sonnes of laddus were Onias and Manalles.

phew to like

Oncerning Manayes, weeken Oncerning Manasses, wee reade not Manaffer Ne. next to his Nephew Eleazar, and was a friend to Seleucus Gallinicus, and that vnder his gouernement, the Samaritanes being displeased at the Iewes in despight of the Temple, and feruices there performed, they put to fire and fword the whole territory of Ierufalem. Some are of opinion, that this man was not the brother to Omas, but rather the brother vnto his wife, and make thereabout fome contronerfie.

A Catalogue of the High Priest's Onias called the Amcient.

IN this mans time, Ptolomie, the fonne of Lagus, defiring to make the people of the lewes become tributarie; as hee entred vpon a Sabaoth day into the Cit- The cruelis tie of Ierusalem, to offer Sacrifice (the against the Iewes not daring to take Arms, for feare leves. of doing contrary to the Law) vsed great

cruelty against the Inhabitants, of whom

he led away into Egypt some thousands,

The Sonnes of Onias were Simon

as captines and hoftages.

and Eleazar. CImon was named Iustus, for pietic and Denignitie towards his Nation. The Iewes enjoyed peace under him, all the Simonfim while as the Successours of Alexander med lutus the great, Antigonus, Demetrius, Seleucus to his name and the rest, tought in Asia and Greece for the Monarchie.

Eleazar succeeded after his brother Simon, as Tutor to Onias the fecond, being as yet a childe. In his time, Ptolomie Philadelphus enfranchifed aboue an hundred thousand Iewish slaues, led into Eexpt, partly by the Kings of Verfia, partly Anhundred by his father Ptolomie the fonne of Lagus. An mundred thoulandless

Moreouer, he fent Ambaffadors with Leptinflancy magnificent Prefents to Eleazar the high by Prosume Prieft, requesting to have threefcore and Philadelphia, twelue lewes, that could translate the Writings of Moses and the Prophets, out of the Hebrew language into the Greeke. Which being done, hee fent them backe agayne with great giftes, and a Table of golde dedicated to the Temple, and other Presents of especiall value. His vnckle Manasses succeeded after his death; vnckle by the mother only, according to fome: for the Greeke word fignifieth vncle both by father and mother.

Simon had three fonnes; Tobias, whom Philo and Saint Luke in his third chapter The Jonnes calleth Mattathias; lofeph, that pacified of Smoon, and Ptolomie. And Annas Hyrcanus, the last also. Prince of the Iewish people, of the Linage of Iuda, and house of David: who flew himfelfe, for feare of Antiochin the Noble.

After this man, the high Priefts drew vnto themselves the governing in all af-

The daughter of Simon the high

A Catalogue of the High-Priests. Chap. 3.

Priest, was married to Tobias, of the house | tweene the Prince of the high-Priests, and of Danid.

Onius being left a childe by his Father, at luft, in his agefucceeded to Manaffes in the High-Priest-hood. By his auarice he offended Ptolomy, King of Egipt, and raifed him in rage against the lewes, be-

cause heerefused to pay the ordinary tribute. For the high-Priests were wont to pay their reuennues yearely to the Kings

of Egipt, for their Cittizens, amounting to twenty Talents, that is, twelve thoufand crownes of the Sunne. But Isleph afterward appealed Ptolomy, who was Nephew to Onias by the Sifters fide, a Prince of the posterity of Danid.

Onias succeeded his sonne Simon.

Philo faith, that he was firnamed Inst me. Vnder him, Iesus the Sonne of Syrach wrote his Book called Ecclesiasticus. And that Simon had three fonnes allo, who (each after other) obtayned the Priefthood, which lofephus tellifieth apparant-The Sonnes of Simon, were,

sigb in Antiq b.1 s.cap. 16

Oniss com-

He'indorge nthe wealth Onias. Iefus, otherwife called lafon. Onias, alfo called Atenelans.

The great Onias is commended in the fecond Booke of the Machabees, for his piety and inflice, and is faide, that hee was a friend to Seleuchus, Brother to Antiochus the Noble; who fornetimes furnithed all necessary affaires in the Temple, with the renennues of the Realme of Syria. But afterward, another man, called Simon, who had the charge of keeping the Tem-

ple, having conceyned malice against O

miss the high-Pricit; reported to King Se-

leuchus, that there was an infinite maffe of

gold hidden in the Temple, which the

Priefls applyed to their own prinate vies. And this was the canfe, that the king wold no longer fureifh the Temple with the wonted monyes; but also fent Heliodorus, to make feizure on the wealth, and commit it to the Kings Treafury. But as hee would have addactionally have entered (with his followers) into the fecret place of the Temple, he was fmitten downer & very neere dead, yet reconcred agains by dininemercy, and by the prayers of O-

Afterward, the diffeord to encreafed be-

the Tranor Simon; that many murders were committed by the friends of Somen: which made Onias to retire himfelfe towards the King Seleucies, and gaue way to

ochus as much as his Brother; ducit not

go to hi n, but went to a free place, neere

the fury of his enemies. But before Onias could get thether, Seleuchus was dead, lafon getteth and Isfon, Brother to Onices, had obtained Priefs Office by bribes and gifts to Antiochies the No- frem his lito. ble (fucceeding the deceaffed King) the ther Onis,

administration of the high-Priests office. Whereupon, Onias doubting King Anti-

559

to Daphne, a city of Syria, & being drawne thether by deceitful meanes, was also Themurder flaine by Andronicis, Lieutenant to the officer Oni-King, and at the request of Atenelaus, who as. Is on having expulsed, possessed himselse

The Sonne of this Onias the Great. was Onias.

shall be declared.

of the high Priests Office, as hecreafter

Onias beeing left young at his Fathers death, and afterward growing to more ripenesse of yeares; standing in teare of Oniastlych Alcinus the high-Prieft, he fled into Egipt Prolony Phito Ptolomy Philometor, accompanied with Jonesor.

fome of his fellow citrizens. There Ptolomy gaue him permission, to builde a Towns and a Temple, in the Territory of Heliopolis, in refemblance of that at Inufalem; which was called Onion, fine great miles from Atempha, now called the great Cayro. For in regard that Ptolomy waged warre with Antiochus the Noble, & flood in need of his neighbours fuccors, he was The building

perswaded by Omas to build a Temple, of a new tem as if by that meanes, all the people of the Plein Egipt.

lem were ruined sit was also despoyled of all her Icwels, and that up by Edict from Pelbalian the Emperor. The Sonnes of this Onias, dwelling in Fgipt, were Helebias and Ananias.

leves would league with the Kings of E-

gipt, & take their part. About 230. yeares

after this Temple was built, at the fame

time as the Citty and Temple of Ierufa-

Thefe two Brethren, beeing Colonels of the Teiptians Army , ascied valuantly three Com-Cleapatra; to that her Sonne Lathuria be- manders of ing excluded, the obtayned the kingdom, the Egyptians

Tho two bre-

The High-

pought tor

Prieff: Office

cos. Lalence

Infon is juftly

requited for

treachery : o

his brother

Onias.

6. Booke

But after that Ptolomy had recollected his forces, and passing into Enipt through Iudea; Helebias putting him to flight with his Army, died in Syria of a sharpe disease. For the rest, wee reade nothing of the posterity of the high-Priests of Egipt.

lesis, named lason also, second Sonne to Sinson, after the death of Seleuchus, bought of Antiochus, brother and fucceffor to Seleuchus, the high-priesthood, for fine hundred Talents, that is to fay, three Tunnes of gold, as wee speake vulgarly; promifing him befide as an ouer-plus, forty eight thousand crownes of the Sun, as an annuall tribute. And to gaine himfelfe more grace with this wicked King, he builded places in Ierusalem, for the exercifing of young people, in fuch pastimes as he had inflittited, and these were to bee performed, at fuch times as the people vfed to meete in the Temple. He received and magnificently entertained Antiochus ment of king | Epiphanes with his Army, with Lamps and flaming fires, & fongs composed in praise emerchasias to Jerulalem. of the King: and this was at loch time as the King departing thence, planted Garrifons of firength in the Fortreffes of lerulalem, and this was but a beginning to the intollerable feruitude which afterward followed.

> Infon having enjoyed the high-Priesthood three yeares, fent his Brother Menelaw with gold and great charge to Antiochus: but now hee prooued to be payed with coyne of the fame stampe, as before he had done to his brother Onias; for by the fame crafty contriuing, Menelaus fet him quite befice the Priefthood. And Iafon standing now in scarc of Menelaus. with-drew into the land of the Ammonits, where he closely concealed himselfe, vntil a falle rumour ran abroad, that Antiochus entring Egipt, dyed. Thefe newes fo cheered up his drooping spirits, that being accompanied with a thouland men in arms, he intruded upon the Citty, where being fanoured by the inhabitants, for the rapines and cruckies committed by Menelans, he flew many of Antiochus his fection, and compelled Menelaus to faue himfelle in the Syrians Garnsons kept in the

But hearing the returne of Antiochus som the Land of Empt, and loting all hope of the Priefflood, agains he repred-

not now be received, it inding in feare of Antiochus, who was neere at hand with his army. Expulsed also (for the same reason) by Aret.is, King of Arabia, out of his marches, and having no accesse into Egipt, & laftly, forfaken of all; he paffed by Sea to the Lacedemonians, among whom hee was Themilesis concerned in kindred: and yet, as a inft and writhed end of Island punishment for his ambition, he dyed very poorely in banishment.

Onias, named Menelaus alfo, the third Sonne of Simon, according to Tofephus (albeit in the fecond Booke of the Maccha- 2 Marcha) bees he is not faid to be the Sonne of Si capa, monthe High-Priest, but brother to one Simon, of the Tribe of Beniamin, who had charge of the Temple, as we faide before in speaking of Onias) beeing sent to King Antiochus the Noble, by Ialon, Prince of the facrificing Pricits, with money and commission about important affayres; did fo cunningly infinuate himfelfe, into the Menelus ha good grace of the King and his Courti-tunning who ers, that by promifing three hundred Ta-theking and lents (which is an hundred and fourfcore Counters, thousand crownes of the Sun) more then all that which Iason payed, and accusing him of divers crimes befide; he prevailed fo farre, that the Soueraigne Priesthood was taken from Jason, and conferred on him in his stead.

This dignity thus obtayned, he purfued the same impicties as Infon did, in the customes and manners of the Pagans, & farre exceeding him in rapines and cruelties. For at the entring into his gouernment, to make himfelfe the furer of foill- Menelan gotten honour; he flew Onices, eldeft Son more wided then his liter to Simon his brother, as lofephus affirmes, the thom who being exiled, kept close in a franchifed place neere Dapline, a Towne in Syria; there hee caused him to bee murdered by Andronicus (Gouernour of Caelofyria) by fraud and treafon, and for which offence, Andronicus was fentenced with death by the King.

Afterward, being vnable to fornish the great payment of money heehad promifed to the King; he folde many veffels of critedgeally gold, which he had concretly floing out of a bleahabe the Temple: which facrifedge comming Temple, and yet cancilor to be knowne, great mutinies were mo- away by or ued among the people. At length, Mene- inprior. law was accused and continued by three Ambaffadors fent from Jerufalem to Tyre. an ong the Ammonites, of whom he could | But by the meanes of a Courner, named Ptolemy

A Catalogue of the High-Priests. Chap.3.

Ptolomy (foundly corrupted with money) | nie: which treasure had bin partly given hee was abfolued and the King pacified, prenailing withall fo farre, that his accufers were executed for calumniators : and he returning backe to Ierufalem, began againe to tyrannize ouer the Cittizens.

Much about this time, for the space of forty dayes, there appeared in the Heauens, hoafts or bands of men, fighting both on horsebacke and foote: which prodigious fignes, prognofficated the horrible calamities which foone after were to follow. For as Antiochus was leading his Army (the fecond time) into Egipt, purpofing to viorpe the Country by open warre feeing he could not do it vnder colour of Guardianship, because Ptolomy Philometor (his Nephew) was yet but young : Isfon rushed into the Citty with his Army, againg to repulse his brother from the Priefillood, ouer-comming a great number of the Inhabitants, that tooke part with Antiochus and Menelaus. Who finding his strength too feeble, fled to the Fortrelles and Garrisons of the Syrians, dispatching messengers vnto Antiochus for better ayde.

And now Antiochus being vrged thereto by the rigorous command of the Romanes, and delinered by Popilius; left Egipt, comming thence in a raging madnes, fearing a further repolt of the lewith Nation. Having brought his Army beforethe Citty, hee found the Gates fall thut, and the inhabitants ready to defend themselves. Whereat being vexed he forced into the Citty without any great difficulty: because Menelans with his faction, and the Syrian Garifons ran vp and downe in the Citty, and put to the Sword many Cittizens, and giving entrance to the enemy at the Gates. Being entred, Antiochus charged his people to kill all that they met with in Armes, and not to spare eyther age or fexe: fo that within three dayes space, fourescore thousand men (or thereabout) were flaine in terufalen, befide diners thoufands ledde away captines, and fold for flanes.

beste lera

A pictifull

folde into the

The King, conducted by Atenelius, entredicto the most holy part of the Temple, touching with his polluted hands the facied Veffels, which he caused to be car ried thence into Syria, with a thoufand, eight hundred talents of treafure, as much to fay as eleuen Tuns of gold of our mo-

to the Temple, and partly was put there in trust for the benefite of widdowes and orphanes, as into the onely furest place both for renerence and functity. So, after both for renerence and functity. 30, and Menchus reAntiochus had restored Menchus to the Menchus rehigh-Priesthood againe, and had planted high Priest firong Garifons in the Citty (wher of Phis- land aga no, lip of Phrygia was Captaine, a man very and Catton bloody and cruell) hee returned backe to planted in the Antioche again with his great booty. Two City. yeares after, fearing a renolt of the terres, he fent the Colonell Appolenius to Ierufalem, with two and twenty thousand men, who expressed no countenance of an enemy, but encamped without the Citty, attending for the Sabboth day, and then giving the determined fignall, hee flew & maffacred the vnarmed multitude, that came foorth to behold the Campe of the Syrians. Then entring violently into the Citry, hee put all to the edge of the fiverd that withflood him, robbing, spoyling, & burning it in many places, throwing downe the walles and fortifications : yet rampairing the Walles and Bulwarks, in that part called, The Citty of Daniel, and planting there a potent Garifon.

This was a preparatine, to attaine (in time) to the Kings full ayme, who purpofing to turne (perforce) the terrer from the Law of their fore-fathers (a thing which he knew they would withthand to their vttermoft power) first of all he gane order, to disposicife them of Armes and Weapons, leaving them naked of all munitions, fuccour and refiftance. This difcomfiture made by Appalenius in Ierufalem; whereby to foone after the King fent thether Athenewanother of his Colonels, with an efpeciall Edict, whereby he commanded all Nations that were in subjection to him, to vie (in cuery kingdome) the fame Religion which the Greeker did : prohibiting expressely to the teres, the vie of circumcition, & other ordinances commanded them by God. He likewife planted Garrifons aswell in terusalem, as in other Cities and Townes of Indea, to inflict cruell punithment og al them, that did not obtemperate the Kings Edict. Befide the Tem- fent but by ple was prophaned by the Kings Command, and the Image of Jugiter Olympus worthipped in the Sanchuary, even in the Sanstum Sanstorum, and many paillardizes and whoredomes committed

The Citry of Daniante.

The Tewes victefillance n he'pe thê tchies,

A culell Edia Antiochus a

Laton frome

encouraged.

and equal

Ly demond .

MAINE.

The Citizens of Icrafalem opposition in their owne defence

within the circuite of the Temple. More- i tle of Soueraigne high Sacrificer, euen ouer, by the same Edic Royall, the holy Bookes were forbidden ingenerall, and that man judged worthy of death, with whom the Booke of the Law should bee found; yea, and feuere inquifition made for it enery Moneth.

As thus the Cittizens of Ierusalem were difarmed, oppreffed, & very firong Garifons planted ouer them: euen fo were durit make no they destitute of any Captain, not daring to vie force or opposition, against the wicked commands and excessive tyran-Menelaus the foueraigne High-Priest, had formerly instituted the behauiorss vsed among Pagans in Ieru/alem, to keepe himfelfe in his dignity, & in the Kings fauour, approuing and affifting all his enterprizessin which respect, many that made vertuous profession of the Law giuen by God, were most inhumanely murdered by the Soldiors of Antiochus, and their goods confilcated. Others (in great number) forfaking the City, and leaving all their goods behinde them, went to hide chemfelues in Caues and defert places, as | w. Mattathias the Asmoned withdrew (accopanied with his children) into the little Village of Modin.

In the fecond Booke of the Macchabees is described the horrible punishing of two women, who were accused to the Lieutenant of Antiocher, that they had circumcifed their children, contrary to the Kings Edict. Whereupon, they were condemned, and (for a terror to other) they were led naked through the streetes of the Citty, their infants ffrangled, hanging at their breafts, and afterward throwne downe

from the top of the City wall. There is alfo fet downe, the feuen Brethren & their Mother, tormented with most exquisite tortures; and yet they helde faft the profession of the Law. By which horrible crueltics, judgement may be made, aswell of the extreme rigour of Antiochia, as also the miferable efface of Gods people: of whom, fome reliques were yet referred, by meanes of the Asmoneans, raised up by God, to represe the rage of Antiochus, & to maintaine the Law of God by Armes, as heereafter thall be declared.

In the meane time Menclaus, Author, beholder and promoter of these instidions upon the people; retayned full the ti-

then when Iudas Macchabeus tooke (by power) the Citty and the Temple: he being then hid in the Fortresse, under the protection of the Syrians, vntill that after the death of Antiochus the Noble, his Son Antiochus Eupator, hauing feized on Ierufalem, concluded peace with Iudas Macchabeus, and by the perswasion of Lysias, brought him captine into Syria, as the firebrand of all the warre, and of the ouer- Captine in throwing of the Syrian Armies by the Af- Syin. moneans, and there he was also flaine, after nies of Antiochus: confidering also, that he had held the high-Priesthood twelve yeares. This was the last Sacrificer of The last is the posterity of Aaron, to whom the di- Priesto At uine right appertained, for administration rouspoiling of the Soueraigne Pricithood. For Antiochus Eupator appointed in the place of Menclaus, a certaine man named Alcimus, who might bee of Aarons posterity; but not of the Family of that lefus, who with Zorobabell had returned from Babilon into Alcimufa-Indea. This Alcimus prefided four years, conditions and then dyed of a sudden sicknesse, two hood yeares after the death of Indas Macchabe-

Alcimus being dead, the Temple and the people was featien yeares without a Soueraigne high-Prieft, vntill fuch time as the power of Ionathas encreased, who was the Brother of Indas; when the dignity of the Priesthood was transferred (by consent of the people) into the Family of The Highthe Asmoneans, where it remained follong, Parellina as to the beginning of the Reigne of Hethe Lamity of the Aliance.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the Asmoneans, being the Second Family.

As much to fay, as them of the posterity of Simon to whom the principality as well of the High Priefthood, as alfo of the lewish people being transferred, it continued from the time of Antiochus the Noble, untill the Reigne of Herod.

Simon. John. Mattathias.

THE Sacrificer of the Family of Ioarib of Ierufalem, dwelling in the Village

of Modin, did first oppose himselfe against Amiochus the Noble; who by horrible and torments constrained the lemes to transgreffe their Law, and to deale in those behaulours vied among the Pagans; in the hundred, forty and fine yeare of the kingdome of Syria, an hundred fifty and nine yeares after the death of Alexander, and an hundred fixty and fine yeares before the birth of Christ. For Mattathias feeing a certaine Ierr, who (to pleafe the King) facrificed a forbidden beaft vpon a Pagan Altar, it being prohibited by the dinine Law: enflamed with a just and holy zeale (in the presence of the Cittizens of his owne Nation, fuffering fuch a wickedacte to be done, as also of the Kings Lientenant) flew the offender, and then beating downe the Altar, delivered arms to all them, who (making more account of the word given by God, the the threatenings of a Pagan King) had forfaken their goods and lived in the Deferts, fro whence many returning daily; hee levied a great Army, by whose helpe he delineredworthily the neighbouring Townes, from the Idolatries of Antiochus, and replanted the fernice and ordinances commanded by the Law dinine.

But this valiant man, deepely flept in age, atter hee had (for a yeares space) led this banished wandring troope, and after he had exhorted his Sonnes to the fludy of piety, as also the valiant desending of the Law ginen by God, againft the wicked Edicts and torments of Antiochus, reconciling them all to concord and mutuall renerence, dyed peaceably, in the yeare 146.0f the Kingdome of Syria, 160.after the death of Alexander; and 164. before Christ was borne.

Lieazar fir-

out Lange

Chap.4.

lew a lew fo

hankong a

Atattathias had fine Sonnes. Indas, Jonathas, Simon, John, and Eleazar.

Eleazar, otherwise called Amean or duaran, a very hardy young man, after he had performed many valiant deeds in the fift yeare after his Fathers death, going to finde out Antiochus Eupator, Sonne to Antiochin the Noble with his brother Indias the faw (among other) a goodly Elephant. exceeding in greatnesse & rich forniture. Whereby, hee imagining that the King thould be upon him, ran towards him ouer-boldly, and flaying many Soldiours | lem, and very famous for Religion.

euery where about him, got vinder the E-Eleaza thin lephant, and giving a deadly flabbe in his for an his belly, the Elephant feli downe vpon him fenantisting

and thereby was the death of Eleazar. John firmamed Gadais, after the death tohn daine of his brother Ind.es, was tent by Ionathes by the . m. and Simon his other brethren into Arabia, mornes. with the lewels & precious things which they had conquered in warre, to place them in the cultody and guard of the Aabatheans: but the Animorites layed ambulles by the way for him, and haning flaine him, tooke also the spoyles away from him and his traine.

which diction in Hebrew is written Aleccabai, wherof each letter fignifieth a word, taken from the Song of Mofes in Execlus, in thefe expresse words: MECAMO Nicimocha CHA BAILEM LEHOVA? That on. is to fav : Who is like wato thee (O Lor.) among the Gods? Indas ving this fentence for his Motto or denice, and making one phrase of the first Letters of the foure words, caused himselfe to bee simumed Macchabens. His father being neere his death, appointed him the cheefe guide & Leader of the poore and miterable mul- links made titude: who had rather endure all affiicli- lead tot the ons whatfocuer, then renounce the doctrine given them by God. Soone after the death of his Pather, he onercame the Army of A polenius, and made vie of his Sword in all the battailes he fought afterward with a final band of menshe vaneuithed the Army of Seren, Gouernour of Syria, who was flaine in the field, and with access to lar lar him 8000 men. These victories obtained Macchabeus, the first yeare, made Indas Macchabens highly renowned. The yeare tollowing, which was the 147, of the Greekes reigne, Antiochus went into Perfic with his Army and left in the kingdome of Syria Lyflas, as Regent and Gouernot to his Son Antiochus Enpator, giving him expresse charge to deflroy the tener. For the execution of which command, Lyfas lent Lyfasmale into Palestine, forry thousand foore, and Conemor of feuen thousand horse, vnder the conduct vour Anii of Ptolomy, Nicanor and Gorgian his Colo land nels, who entred hoffilly with their Armies into Iudea, and encamped before the Village of Emans. Ind. a perceionic perill. led his Army into Majeba, a place (lone agoe) built before the Temple of Terufa-

The horrible punifiment inflicted vpo. two women.

The Afmone am raifed by God to reprefic Anti-

Indus, was firnamed also Macchaliens,

The fmall Army of men that Iudas had with him,

fulfucceffe of

of Judas a-

gainft Gods

Lyfias com-

meth with a

against the Macchabees

giuing charge, that by earnest and hearty prayer they should craue of God, that so small a handfull of men (for hee had but three thousand apt for warre with him) might valiantly defend themselves against fo great a power of enemies. Which being done, he removed his Campe, and went directly to confront the hoaft of his aduersaries, and setting upon them in the night season, droue them to flight, & flew three thousand with the Sword. Vpon the fuccesse of this exploite, hee went to feeke the other part of the Army, which was guided by Gorgias, who intended to steale vpon the lewes in the dead time of night. But Gorgias hearing the former defeature, and perceiving the smoake of lighted fires in the Campe of the lewes; fled away in hafte with his forces. So Indas, with fo filly a power of people, enforced the huge hoafts of his enemies vnto flight, and got very great booties from

ill fuccesse, being mad with anger, leuied a farre greater power, to make fresh warre vpon the Macchabees. And the yeare following, which was the 148 of the Greekes reigne, himfelfe in person (for hee grew distrustfull of his Captaines) accompanimighty Army ed with threefcore thousand foote, all of them pickt and choien men, & fine thoufand horse, innaded Iudea, by passing thorow Idumea. And as he was encamped in Bethfura, on the Frontiers of Judea, Judas Macchabeus came to meete him with ten thousand men (so much was the number encreased, of them that detested Ethnick Idolatry) and after hee had innoked publikely the ayde of God, hee fought with the enemy.

Lyfins perceiving how couragiously the lewes fought, as men that meerely de-Indas encoun spiled death, breaking surrously through his rankes, his men beginning to turne their backes, and fine thousand of them hewen in peeces; ralliered together his feattered troopes, and led them backe to Antioche, hoping to speede better at another time with a new expedition. Where-Antiochus re- in he was prenented, by the death of Antrochius the Noble, who being repulfed fro

informed (by the way) what bad fucceffe the Garrifons made many courfes; killing

pulled at his belieding befiedging Perfepolis, as hee led backe his Perfepolis. Army in ill order by Babylon, and beeing

arc:h the

great Army

There he publikely commanded a fast, | his Armies had sustained in Index: he fell first into a greenous vexation of spirit, & afterward of body, so that his intestines were smitten with horrible discases. Yet being nothing the milder by this visitation, but rather more vehemently pronoked against the lewes : after his returne, he purposed a speedy iourney to Indea; there to race their Citties, especially Ierusalem, and vtterly to extirpate the Iewish Nation. But as he proceeded on in this violent Theganh refolution, and making too much haste hombers on the way; the Chariot (wherein he lay declared) ficke) was ouerturned, and his body fo bruifed against the ground, also the extremity of his impatience so violent; that his blood jouer-boyled, his entrailes putrified, and his flesh outwardly rotted, yeelding forth a most loathsome and intollerable flinke, fo that in wonderfull torments, he gaue vp the ghoft, acknowledging the dinine vengeance of Heanen. Thus died this most cruell Tyrant, in the 148. yeare of the Greekes reigne; of his owne the 12. Lyfias having intelligence of his mens and the fourth, after those many robberies, as well of the Temple, as the Citty of

> Indas Macchabem, much encouraged The return by this fo notable a victory, conducted of ludano his Army to Ierusalem; where he cleansed his purious the Temple, formerly defiled and pro- the Temple phaned by the fernice of Idols, and offered facrifices according to the Law, in the yeare of the Greekes, 148. before Christs Nativity, 1 62. the 25. day of the Moneth of Chiflen, that is to fay, Nonember; the very same day, that (three yeares before) it had beene robbed & prohaned by Antiechus, placing therein Images and Idols. He builded also Sion, and strongly munited Bethfura, that it might ferue as a Fortreffe against the Idumeans.

> Having done this, he kept his Armour Indas went daily on his backe, because he was still af- daily with his fayled by the Idumeans, Ammonites, and o- Armour on ther, who laboured to ouerthrow the power of the lewish Nation, which began to exalt it felfe in fome good meafure. But the brethren of the Macchabees, repelled those infulting Nations worthily, diniding their Armies, & fighting fortunately in many places at a time, yet vfing their victories rudely enough. In the 150. yeare of the Greekes, Judas laide fiedge before the Forts of Ierufalen, which from

fuch as would facrifice in the Temple, & | Eupator, and his Gouernour Lyjius Now very much molested the Cittizens. But Antiochus Eupator, being vrged by Mene. law, to fend him aide, for reliefe of them that were belieged in the forts; fent an army into Indea by Lysias, confishing of 10000, foote, and 20000, horse, and besieged Bethsura a long time. In the meane while, Indes beeing aductifed of the Kings comming in person thither, railed his fiege from before the forts, and went to meet the enemy with his Souldiers, of whom he made force flanghters in diners skirmishes . Yet finding himselfe firong forces with Alcimus to tafe proto be oppressed by so over-great a moltitect him returnd back into Syria . While tude, retired into Ierusalem, where being thus Alcimus abused the power and fauor enclosed within the munitions of the of the King, for putting many to death Temple; he endured a long and difficult that were contrary to him : Inder finding

untill the King, being certified of Phillips coming, who, voder colour of reducing the Persians under the awe of Epiphanes, fought to possesse himselfe (as the sune went) of the Kingdomes both of Lia accufation against Lidas. and Syria: offred peace to them that were befieged in the Temple, with libertic of living according to the laws of their forefathers. But after that India had brought his garrison out of the Temple, the King this compact being discourred, he entired being amazed at the fortifications , beat into open armes; and being fought withdowne their walls, contrary to the accord all by Indis in plaine battell, was conmade at the Temple, and led Menelaus strained to retire to the fort of Sion. Af-Mendan led the Soueraigne Sacrificer captine away terward, iffuing forth of I.rufal-min great

fiege, enforced (vpon the coming thither

of Antiochies, who followed after Lyfi.is) to

So long lafted this flarpe befreging,

play vpon aduantages.

my captine with him (according as we have faide already) influenting Alcimus in his flead, who also was named toachim, and so took his way home againe to Syria.

CHAP. V.

Antiochus and Lyfias are put to death by Demetrius; the wicked behaviour of Alcimus the high-Priest the death of Ind.is, and the succession of his brother Ionathus.

IN the 151. yeare of the Greekes, Demetrius flying from Rome, where hee had bin detained in hoftage, made feizure on the kingdome of Syria: putting to death the fonne of Epiphanes, named Antiochus Alcimus, coucting to recaine full the dig- The greedie nitie of the High-priefthood, conferred defice of Alvpon him by Eupster and Lyfins : went to cimus tertil Demetrius, and there accused all his nati- Priestnood. on (especially the Asmeneans) as Authors of the tumults, and perturbers of the peace of Isdes, & that they had throwne him out in banishment. Heereupon, the

these courses to be intollerable, & taking

to heart fo great cruelty in the foueraigne

Sacrificer; vndertoolethe defence of in-

King fent Bacchides with a maine army to Brechidesen. reseate Alcimiu in his office. Being entred lem with his power, by fraude hee Aranic. flew many innocent Citizens, & leaving

nocents, putting all them to death that ladas vnder taketh to retooke part with Alcimus. Whereuppon, ucne the

Alcimin fearing the vertue and power of ourses of Indes, fled the fecond time to Demetrius at Antioche, and there formed a criminall

Nicanor then was fent with a puiffant Army, who thought craftily to ferprize Indus Fights

Ind. s, vnder a colour of kind conference, in plane barand fo leade him along to the King. But taile.

inforced his Armie, encountred againe with Nicanor at Bethfura, in which bat- Nicanor flain taile he flew the captaine Nicanor, & dif by Indas in comfitted the whole army, being about the fesonal 9000.men. This hapned the 13.day of the moneth Adar, which is February; and

ued, in regard of fuch a notable victorie. After these successefull aduentures Lidas perfwading himfelfe, that Demetras would feek reuenge on the Lewes for this his great ouerthrowsdenifed to throughe his power by the affiftance of ftrangers. Heereupon, hee fent Ambafladors to the

that day was afterward folennely obser-

anger, all his forces affembled together;

hee threatned all the facrificing Priefts

with death and viter destruction of their

Temple, if they did not delinet Indas a-

line to his hands . But Indes having re-

Romanes, to capitulate vpon confederacy

Iudas craueth ayd and fauor of the Romanes.

Bacchides & Alcimus lent with an Army into Iudea.

The valiant death of Iudas Macchabcus.

Alcimus Or ken with a dycd.

Ionathas folbrother Iudas

with them, requesting (among other par-) treating him to vndertake the defence of ticulars) that the Senate would forbid Demetrius, heereafter to molest and afflict the Iewes. But (as humane fuccors are deceitfull) fo the alliance of the Romanes was more discommodious to the Iewes, then if they had given them no ayde at all: because it made them the more sleepy and negligent, and also was more offensive to the enemy. Whereupon it hapned, that the yeare following being the 152. of the Greekes, Demetrius lent Bacchides and Alcimus with a potent army into Iudea. There Iudas met them with two thousand men onely, and although the most part of the flipt away, and forfooke his company, eyther thorow wearineffe of fo long a war, or fearing the enemies power, or by the practifes of Alcimus: yet notwithstanding he ventred on the Army of Bacchides with eight hundred brane Soldiors, and fighting valiantly, there he dyed with the al, in the fixt yeare after his fathers death, good old Mattathias, and before the Natinity of Christ, 158 yeares.

Theyeare following, which was the 153. of the Grecians Reigne, Alcimus caufed the walles of the inner house of the Temple to be destroyed, which the ancient facrificing Priests had builded : to the ende, that not any munition fould remaine, which might ferue to retreate the aduerfaries to the Kings of Syria. And hardly had they begun to beate it downe, but he was imitten juddenly with a Paliv. and therein furrendred vp his foule : but fudden palfie he had continued dumbe fome long time before; and this was in the fourth yeare of

his Pricithood. Ionathus the second Sonne of Mattathias.

Ionathas, or Ionathan, succeeded in the principality to his brother Iudis, and by degree to his this occasion. After the death of Macchabeus, while the lewes (which had embraced the manners and religion of the Pafought for all those well disposed people, that had followed Indas & his Brethren, fending them to Buchides to bee cruelly mutdered; adding also the famine, which greatly encreased, because, during these continuall warres, the fields had bene left without any tillage, fo that the best per-

the poore afflicted, and to imitate therein the vertue and piety of his brother. Ionathas confenting to the, foone after made longthas m head mainly against Bacchides, and hardly derial eth the escaping, retired his Soldiors into the de- Bacchides fert, where Bacchides made no account to purfue them; but fortefied fome Townes. and planted strong Garifons in them, daily to torment the lewes by fallics & courfes. Which being done, he retreated back his Army into Syria, after the death of Alcimus. By which meanes, the Jewes had fome relaxation from warre, for about the space of two yeares, to wit, the 154. and 155.of the Grecians reigne.

In the yeare, 156. Bacchides was againe incited by the apostate lewes, to surprize (by some sudden aduantage) the two brethren of Indas: but the ambushes being reuealed, hee came and openly affaulted them in the Towne of Betheffen. Neuertheleffe, perceiving the Towne to be well Bacchider munited, and the Tewes furnished with all mide a pear fitting matters, as fully refolued to defend themselves valiantly: he made peace with Ionathas, and the captines beeing furrendred on eyther fide, tooke his way backe to Syria, which was the cause that Iudea had sometime of repose and quietnesse.

The yeare 160. Alexander the Noble, who fought to possesse himselfe of the Ambassador kingdome of Syria, which was then vsur- fent to lond that by Akt- ped by Demetrius, Brother to Antiochus ander the the Noble, and understanding the power Noble. of Ionathas; sent Ambassadours to him with worthy presents, to practife with him for to joyne in his intention, offering him (moreouer) the Soueraigne Priesthood, on condition, that he would avde him against Demetrius. Beside he solemnly inuited him to the mariage, which hee had purposed in the Citty of Ptolomau, with Cleopatra, daughter to Ptolomy Philometor. Ionathus being allured by these ofgans) grew to be more emboldened, and | fers, vnder hope of enioying (by this meanes) two neighbouring Kings to bee his friends; went to be prefent at the royall wedding, and carryed gifts of great value with him. He was entertained by the two kings, fo honorably as possible might tonshire be, and afterward fent backe againe, with High-Pitch confirmatio in the high-Priefthood, as al- office, and fons, and which had most vnderstanding in religion, were extremely anguished: (after the decease of Alcimus) had remaind the principality of Indea, for the people lay of Indea, for the I they made their recourse to lonathus, en- ned 7. yeares without a Soueraigne Sa-

Demetrius

Chap. 5.

by the people

of High-Priesshood to the Almoneans, the ninth years of the principality of Ionathas; of the Greekes 160. as hath bene faide; and before the birth of Christ, 1,0, But s. yeares after as Ptolomy had caught the kingdome of Syria, with his daughter Cleopatra; fo he gaue them both to Demetrius Nicanor, Sonne to Demetrius, & then Ionathas had work enough to do to enter into the good grace & fauour of the new King. Neuertheleffe, by gifts and offrings he prevailed so well at last, as youn the anouching of his grace towards him, hee recourred a great part of Iudea, & wonne among his own people, no meane power and credite. In the latter dayes of his principality, he fortefied the Temple of Ierusalem, and renewed alliance with the Romaines, contracting kinde friendship alfo with the Lacedemonians. Soone after he was furprized in Ptolomais, by the fraud & treafon of Triphon, who, although he had promifed to release him, if he might have his two Sonnes fent him as hostages, and an hundred Talents (whereof his brother Simon made fatisfaction, fending both the money & the children) neuertheleffe, the most cruell Tyrant murdred both the Father and his fonnes. Having done this abhominable deed, and thinking no way to be refifted in his wicked courtes; by treachery he flew Antiochus, firnamed Sedetes, Sonne to Alexander the Noble to whom he was Tutor, & for the restoring of him to his Fathers kingdome, hee had enicted Demetrius Nicanor out of Syria, but got it into his owne possession. In this manner Ionathas held the principality of the lewish people eighteene yeares, and was the first administratour of the Soueraigne Priefilhood of the Almoneans, which hee held ten yeares.

Simon the third Sonne of Mattathias. Simon succeeded his Brother Ionathas, in the yeare of the Greeks, 170. & before the Natinity of Christ, 140 being elected (by common confent of the people) Duke & Soueraigne Sacrificer: because he had valiantly affifted his Brethren Ind.es and Ionathas, for maintaining the doctrine gine by God, & the repressing of perfecutions. At the beginning of his government he furprized fome Forts from the Grecians, among which was that of lerufalem, which till that time had beene held by the Syrian

By this meanes, came the dignity first | Garifons, & had wonderfully tormented the Citizens. He famithed them in such fort, that they were conftrained to yeelde themselues, and afterward purified prophaned places, the 23 day of the second Moneth, in the yeare, 171. Vnder him, lu-Moneth, in the yeare, 171. Vinder min, 44-1 ladea began to respire and breathe a while, to recover which for the space of 25. yeares after An- breathing & tiochus the Noble, had bin terribly fhaken quietneile. and wasted with continuall warres. The fields began again to recouer their former nature; places burnt and deflroyed, to be re-builded; and those prophaned with 1dols to be neately cleanted : In briefe, the voyce of heavenly doctrine began againe to bee heard and delinered in the Temple and Synagogues. In the third yeare of his simon renew Priefthood, Simon renewed alliance with edalliance the Romanes, and by a Decree from their with the Romanes. Senate, was confirmed Soueraigne Sacrificer, & to be flyled Prince of the people.

Afterward, Antiochus Soter brother to Demetrius Nicanor, preparing war against Antiochas Triphon, who viurped the Kingdome of Soter tentes Syria: labored Simon with great promifes . Tiphon. for alliance, as doubting leaft hee would giue hinderance to his enterprize. But hauing conquered the Kingdome of Syria, and Triphon chased thence, in the yeare, 174. he fallified the former alliance, & redemanded divers Townes and Citties in Indea of Simon, as also the Fort of Ierulalem, and a great fumme of money befice; Antiochus or elfe he would denounce warre against breaketh his him, if he did not yeeld to what he dem ided. Now in regard that Simon refused to and vigeth grant fo vniust a demand, Cendebeus was vniust defent into Indea with an Army, whom John Hyrcanus and Indas, Sonne to Simon, difcomfitted, as he was wasting the champain Country; and having destroyed the Forts built in the Marches of Indea by the ene. my, they returned backe with great glory.

Three yeares after, to wit, the 177. of the Greekes, and 133. before the birth of simon grow-Chrift, as Simon (growing now auncient) eth ancient returned, vifiting & ordayning the Chur- myeares. ches, and the diffipated pollicies in Iudes; he arrived (with his Wife and two of his Sonnes, Indus and Mattathias) mereto his kinefman Ptolomy, the Sonne of -thobus whom he had conflituted Governour of the whole Region about Ieriche. But he wickedly murdered him, fitting at the Ta- Simon murble of a Banquer, whereto (most traite- died at abanroufly) he had inuited him, onely for that some in law. bloody purpofe. Ccc2 Thus

Lindred Hyt

The Temple

Foure Aimoneans, the Father and his three fonnes.

Iudea not wholly recouered from Paganifme, & the reason why.

The writings of the Prophots fafely preferued a mong fo many perfecuti

Judas and Ionathas left not any iffue theirs.

ther Mattathias, and three of his Sonnes (each after other) fighting valiantly three and thirty yeares, in defence of the Law giuen by God, against the persecuters of his people, ended their lines. And although they could not fo compasse the matter, as to cleanse Indea wholly of Pagan Idolatries, because many among the people were (openly) Epicures, and many mightily dejected, by feeing the woful calamities of the people, and others inueigled by the Gentiles prosperities; did willingly renounce the first received doarine of their Fathers, and embraced the impieties of the Paganes: yet notwithstanding, they prevailed so well by their power, that the writings of the Prophets were presented, the service ordained by God, nor abolished, nor the Iewish pollicy any way diffipated. All which enfired by the fingular goodnesse of God, to the end, that the pollicy and ministry appointed by him (in some good measure still maintained) should continue to the time of Christ, that men might know, when & how the Messias was to be sent. The principality and high-Priesthood continued (fometime) in the Family of the Asmoneans, to the fuccessors of Simon, because In-

CHAP. VI.

das and Ionathas had not left any iffue of

Concerning the imprisonment of Simons two Sonnes and their Mother, by their cruell Unckle Ptolomic; and lastly, their lamentable death. The valiant actes of Iohn Hyrcanus, Sonne to Simon. The destrustion of Samaria, &c.

The Sonnes of Simon, were Iohn Hyrcanus. Iudas. Mattathias his fuc-

A Daughter, maried to Ptolomy, the sonne of Abobus, Gouernour of Icricho; who murdered his Father, as also his Wife of two of his Children.

Indus and Mattathias.

Auing accompanied their Father, going with his Wife to fee Ptolomy their Sonne in law, to whom he had formerly spoken, to give him the governe-

Thus foure Asmoneans, namely, the Fa- | ment of Iericho: they were imprisoned with their Mother, by their Vnckle Ptolo-my, who before had flaine their Father at a Banquet. Now, while Hyrcanus, feeking to revenge so horrible a deed, had befiedged a finall Towne, whereto Ptolomy had withdrawne himfelfe: the Tyrant canfed them there to bee pittifully difmembred, as also their Mother; untill such time as Thetwosom Hyrcanus, moved with compassion, & not of Simonal able to endure the torturing of his brethren and Mother, raised the siedge, albe-nened ithis captined Mother, still vrged him carneftly to maintaine the affault. Iohn Hyrcanus.

In the life time of his Father, hee difcomfitted the Army of Antiochus Soter, whichwas conducted by Cendebeus. Next whichwas conducted by Cenaeveus. Next after the death of his Father, and the talant of Anixan king of his two Brethren, himselfe hardly soter range escaping from the ambushes of the mer-shedby ldn derer Ptolomy: hee came to reuenge his Hyrcanus. Fathers death, and befiedging the Towne whereto Ptolomy was returned, being ouercome with pitty, by feeing the torments which his Mother & Brethren fuffered, at every time when hee gave the affault, confidering also, that the seventh yeare of rest was neere at hand; he retreated his Army. Afterward, Antiochus Soter John Hyramade warre vpon him slo that he was flut vp within the Citty of Ierufalem, which Antiochus besiedged in seuen places all a vector of the control of the cont one time: being pressed with famine, hee agreement yeelded up the City, upon condition, that he would beate down the Fortefications of the Citty, deliuer hostages, & fine hun-dred Talents, that is to say, three Tunnes of Gold.

But as he was in want of money, or accidentally feeking for fome by vigent necessity, or admonished so to doeby a dreame: he opened the Sepulcher of Da-uid, wherein he found three thousand Ta-and Talent lents of Gold, which amounteth to 18. of Gold found Tuns of Gold. Being thus readuanced, he uids grane. not only made peace with Antiochus, but also entred into amity with him, so that he entertained him into the Citty with his Army, and being well provided of mony, he was the first (of the Icwes) that had frange Soldiours vnder his pay. With whom he accompanied King Antiochus, he going in warre against the Parthians 5 and yet his company was but flenderly beneficiall to the King. For although by the

Antiochus

Cyzicentis

ghitor the

valiancy of Hyrcanus, he ouerthrew a part | for the kingdome of Syria; Hyrcanus and of the Parthians Army, yet soone after, when Arsaces, King of the Parthians, came with a new Army, & he should then have met and loyned with him: Religion hindered Hyrcanus and the Iewes from going to the fight, because it was then the Feast of Pentecoft. By which meanes, Antiochus being destitute of the lewes helpe, was flaine, with a great number of his people.

After the death of Antiochus Soter, Hyrmus began to make fmall account of the Kings of *Syria* ; as being men,that (by ciuill warres) had broken the forces of their kingdomes. Wherefore, bringing back his hoaft from Afia, he tooke many Cities and Townes in the kingdome of Syria, which had in former times appertained to Iudea. He razed alfo the Temple of The Temple of Garizam in Samaria, builded by Sannaba-smana ra-lat the Cutthean, (as hath before bin remebred) two hundred yeares after it had bin builded in fauour of Manasses, Brother to Isddus, in the time of Alexander the great. He compelled also the Idumeans (after he had given them many chaftenings) to receine circumcifion, and other ceremonies of the tewes. And to strengthen himselfe the more against the Kings of Syria, who he thought not fit to make any more furprizing of Citties; hee renewed alliance (by Ambassadours) with the Romanes, in the fourteenth yeare of his principality, and the 191. Of the kingdome of Syria: Cneus Domitius Barbaroffa, and Caius Flaminias being Confuls, an hundred and 19. yeares before the Natinity of Christ.

Afterward, as Demetrius Wicanor had bene restored to his Kingdome by Arfaces, and as quickly againe repulfed from it by Alexander Zebens, when he prepared himselfe to make warre on the lenes : fo Hyrcanus, allying himselfe with Alexander with Alexan. the victorious, had fustained as little ioy der the victo. thereof, if an admirable accident had not corrected their error. For Antiochus Gryphus, Sonne to Demetrius, feeking to recojuer his Fathers kingdome, flew Alexander in battaile, and (after that victory) purpofed to inuade Hyreanus, the leagued friend to his enemy. But hearing of another preparation of warre against himselfe, by his brother Antiochus Cyzicenus; he was glad to keepe at home still in Syria. So, while the two bretheren did wel-fauouredly contend with one another (a long time)

Indea remained in quietnes, during which time, Hyrcanus well fortefied himfelfe by strong Castles newly builded, re-enforcing al his most commodious munitions, collecting vp great fummes of money, & prouiding other necessary matters, to exploit his warre affaires.

Finally, hee laide fiedge to the most firong Citty of Samaria, and left there his fiedgeaby two Sonnes Antigonus and Aristobulus to Hyrcanus and continue it, while himfelfe attended to the administration of more important Occonomica laffaires. Hecreupon, the Saniaritaines called to fuccour them Antiochus Cyzicenus; who repulsed the fonnes to Hyrcames, and chaled them fo farre as to * Scythopolis. Againe, the two brethren A City of brought their Army before Samaria, and Syria, neere againe Antiochus Cyzicenus (being requeled alio Deca fled) entred into Indea, pilling and fpoy- polis. ling wherefocuer he came. But being :epulled, hee gaue the charge of his Army to two of his Captaines; one of them being flaine by the lewes, and the other corrupted with money, furrendred (by treafon) Scythopolis, and the other neighboring Citties. So the Citty of Samuria, hauing endured (in great mifery) a whole Samaria a. yeares fiedge, was at the last forced and zed and dequite destroyed. Such was the ending of throyed to the this most mighty Citty, which (for along time) had paragond it felfe equall with Ic. rufalem; but about an hundred yeares after, it was builded againe by Herod, who named it Sebasta, in the honour of Augu-Stus Cafar.

CHAP. VII.

How the rest and prosperity of Indea, begat fundry Sects among the people, effecially of the Pharifies Sadduces & The dinerfity of their opinions : and a breefe narration of the Doctrine, in vie among the

THE Country of Index, being thus reduced to repose & quietnes, & by the Ofthe Sector paines of Hyrcanus; her professing procu- the Phanifes red enny & diftafte, afwel toward her own and their difpeople, as (more especially) to the Pharifics. For fa Lions grew the in great effect among the meaner people, by fimulation Ccc 3 of fanctity,

Samaria be-

The gouernment of leri cho giuen to Ptolomy by

t'e tirit do-

cchaons

fine: enerca

The barmer

Of the first

anne, and fu-

Hyrcanus a fauouter of the Phanifies, leaneth after ward to the Sadduces.

Hyrcanus &

hated of the

vulgar people

The diffrence

betweene the

Pharfites and

Teftimonies

of Gods will

giuen to our fult Fathers.

his Sonnes

fanctity, and great swarmes of denised traditions, concerning some kindes of bodily exercises: so that (whensoeuer they pleafed) they could cause the common people to mutiny against the Princes and the High-Priest. Hyrcanus had sometime beene a curious fauourer of this Sect; in which regard, the Pharifies did beare him great affection: but at the last, he estranged his kindnesse towards them, finding himselfe offended at the punishment of Eleazar the Pharific, by some outrage offered him. And this was the reason, that hee tooke part with the Sadduces, who tharply reprodued the traditions of the Pharifies, and in hate and spight to the Pharifies feet, hee abolified (by publike Edicts) many of their traditions, which made him and his Sonnes to be mortally hated, aswell of the Pharisies, as of the people. Whereupon enfued great mutinies among the people: which his Sonne Alexander very harely appealed, but not without great effusion of blood.

Now, because mention is here made of these two Scots, both of the Pharisies and Sadduces, whereof more will be spoken in the following Histories, as likewife is in facred Writ: I thinke it not amiffe to make some addition, of matters found in authenticall writings, concerning the variance and difference betweene them. For in speaking of their originall, we can but follow conjectures onely: except this Sees of the infallible certainty, that both the one and other Sect were newly forged, by leaning the ancient and pure doctrine of the Prophets. I his firme rule ought euermore to be held in the Church, that there is one fole true doctrine, of the divine effence & will, made manifest of Godby certaine and vindoubted testimonies, and was giuen to the first Fathers and Prophets: but much more enlightened afterward, by the voyce of the Sonne of God, our Lord Icfus Christ, dead, and rayfed up againe for vs, as also by the voice of the Apostles. And no opinions ought to be embraced, contrary to that first Prophetical doctrine and voyce of Gods owne Sonne: because many fayings of the Prophets do witneffe this rule to be true. As I fay condemneth | duces, who declared fufficiently, the very those Doctors, which propose (as the doctrine of God) opinions forged in their wne braines, and fuch as neuer were ginen of God. Being armed then, and well

warned by this rule, wee may the better iudge of their Seas.

But in making this recitall, I may not forget that most lamentable complaint, which the fo mighty infirmity of mankind ought much to bemoane, because even then, when the Church confifted of to The proofer, finalla number, to wit, in few Tribes of finallbreinning of the Ifrael, poorely impayred, and flut vp in Churchinge that narrow country neighbouring to the Phanitians, and that then (with fo finall continuing) pollicy) discipline could scarfely main-thereof in taine it selfe peaceably, or doctrine bee many troubles. kept in good concord: fuch horrible furies being prepared against it, yea, & they embraced by the greater part of the Gouernours, publishing them wholly, without diffembling any thing, although they were plainly repugnant vnto the Law of God The Sadduces acquitted them felues Concerning of facrifices, and neuertheleffe affirmed the Sadda publikely, that after this prefent life, there cos. remained no other, nor any judgement; and that the foule (being separated from the body) thould have no more life, and that men should not rife againe. But the Pharifies were a little more modest, and note modest yet notwithstanding, they had as well cor-then the Salrupted the doctrine given by God, as we duces, shall have better occasion to speake of heereafter.

Neuerthelesse, God had a true Church God alware all this while, which stil retayned the light hadhisme of his doctrine : and yet, was it not great- Church, te ly to be lamented, that in one & the fame the beheld company, which bare the name of the his Doltrine Church, among a troope that called vpon God in truth; fuch errours should not onely bee dispersed, but also allowed by the authority of Princes and Doctours? Befide this, the affored and prophaned arrogancy of many (euen in our times) ought greatly to be reprehended, who dreaming of no dispersion of errors in the Church, cyther for fatisfaction of their owne ambition, vnder colour of religion The crossed feeking after kingdomes, or by heaping fuperfittions one vpon another, thereby ranto be to fit and furnish their owne avarice; doc differned. neuer thinke on (in this case) the ancient and old examples of the Pharifies & Sadlike cuils crept into the Church, even as apparantly then, as those of other times. It is therefore very necessary, to have one certaine rule, in liftening to the voyce E-

uangelicall,

uangelicall, according as Saint Paul faid: If any man preach any other Gojpeil to you, let him be accurfed.

Furthermore, consideration is to bee had, of the time of that first Doctrine, agreeing with the voyce of the Prophets, the Sonne of GOD, and the Apostles: and next, of fuch perswasions as have crept into the Church, fome whereof have beene confirmed by the superstition of men valearned, others have beene voluntarily received, as feruing the ambition of the mightie, and for benefite to the kitchin. Acknowledging then, and bewayling the harmes of the Church: let vs sceke after the springs or fountaines of true doctrine, to the end wee may truely call vpon God, who hath alwayes preferned some part of mankinde, where his true knowledge might thine, to bee the Temple of God, and afterwards partaker of his glorious company, because mankinde was not created in vaine. But before I discourse on the original of Sects, and Diutions of the Church, it is needfull first to say somewhat, concerning the first true Church or Schoole, which from the beginning of mankinde, hath beene gardian and keeper of the true doctrine : from whence hath iffued many, who (as feditious) have scattered divers corruptions among the truth of doctrine.

The reason why God cre-Mankind was not borne by accidentall chance, neither created without cause: but it pleafed God, that he should have a reasonable nature, embelished with a bodie, wherein the knowledge of him might thine, and to whom he might communicate his wisedome and goodnes, & that. hee should enjoy his company once and for euer. Now, although God expressed his wiscdome and goodnesse, by creating the great workemanship of the world: yet notwithstanding, his goodnes made it felte much more apparant, in that (after the fall of Adam and Euc) he fent from his fecret feate, that infinite mercie for their recourry, by giving them the promifed Seede to come. And to make it the better knowne and understood . hee would have men to heare the found of Genel 3.15. that fiveete voice : The Seede of the woman lball breake the Serpents head . Such as recemed graciously this consolation, were received of God, and made members of

all, the Church was created, and the The first cre-Schoole inflitted, wherein our first Pa-Church by rents taught the doctrine of God to their God, entirue children: concerning the creation of all third to our hith their owne fall; the and to rotheir paines and punishments to enfue; the tre- potterne. cheries of the diuell; the causes of death and all humaine mileries; the promife of the Seede to come, whereby the great and just anger of God was to bee appeaied. Alfo, how finne was to be deficed, eternall life restored, the difference of good and enill works, and that fuch a difference being imprinted in the foules of men, was truely the Lawe dinine, agreeing with the intelligence and dinine will; fo to thine in the spirites of men, that it might bee a testimonie of God to men, that he was one God, and how to bee adored : admonifhing likewife, that hee would judge the actions of men, because conscience would else exercise a burde. nous judgement in vs.

There they were raught the diffrence between hea betweene this naturall knowledge, and between ne ueniy know the other of higher qualitie; the pronoun- ledge, & that ced promise of the secret bosome of the which is natueternall Father, touching the Seedesthe future judgement of all mankinde; and that fuch as (by faith in that Seede) attayned to beleeve therein, were accepta-

ble to God, and in that faith had recourfe to him, striuing to order their manners by the rule of the divine Lawe, thould line eternally in the most sweete company of God. Others, who arrogantly contemned God, & the promifed Seed to come, running furioutly on the bridle of their wicked defires; were like vnto dinells, cnemics to God, and after death should The despiters liue in horrible torments, whereof they of God and the promited discerned some resemblance in this life, Seede. by the terrours of fuch, whose bodies were adjudged to terrible punishments.

Those first Fathers declared, how God had clothed them with the skins of beafts, of our first Fa to fignific, that (after death) they should thersin thebee denested of their corrupted bodies, skins of beats and put vppon them (as the garment or relation, roabe of the Lambe) that is to fay, the promifed Seede, which was to be facrificed, that all mankind might be faued by him. They taught the will of God to bee fuch, that by this meanes it should bee fought, knowne and called on, as it was the eternall Church of God. Thus first of | made manifest: and that our mindes lea-

Efay 25,14.

One fole and certaine affembly inftituted by God to bee his Cnurch

572

The reafon why accient ceremonies were influi-

What the Sacritices did reprefent.

Christ was alfilling to his Church long before his incarnation.

The first meants of knowing the blefled Frine tic according to the inftruction of the first Fathers.

stand, that then wee are in the grace of no other Divinitie was to be imagined. God, when (by fayth) wee relie voon his promifes, and that hee would have no other gods to be received, or Sacrifices offered by them that forgot or rejected this doctrine given by God. They also manifested, that God would have one sole and certaine affemblie, which should be confenting in doctrine, gathered together by inuocation and facrifices: in which fole affembly, should be the future

heires of eternall life with God. As an Interpreter to their Sacrifices, this predication was often repeated; This maner of behauiour, and thefe publique afsemblies are instituted, to the end, that this doctrine (hould be fent to Posteritie. In them the voyce of the dinine Promife, and the doctrine declared by vs. was to be heard: for god would have his voice to be heard of all men. In which tespect, it was and is requilite that there should bee honest affemblies; and although the Church will be alwayes tormented with great calamities : yet shall the be exalted as a Castle on a high mountaine. These our Sacrisices which you see, are the chaines and

linckes of fuch affemblies, and no other

paintings have we to admonish vs, then

the duine Promile fo graciously given

Hauing enstructed their children in these great matters, they added, concerning the Seede to come, That that Lord, who should breake the head of the Serpent; was already (and cuen then) affifting to his Church, although he was not (as yet) renefted with humaine flesh. That he was the Image of the Eternall and only Father, begotten of him, who prayed to his Father for the Church, and defended it, and (with the Father) comforteth the hearts of Beleeuers, euen in their greatest feares, by his Promises, and kindleth in them the light of the bleffed Spirit, for the beginning of eternall life. Which Spirit proceeded from the Father, and from this promifed Lord. By this meanes they taught to know the only true God, wife, good, iuft, true, chafte and pure, Creator of heaven and earth, of Angels, and of mankinde; to the end, that all might understand, there was one only eternali Father, who had created all with this promifed Lord, who is his I-

ning vpon his promife, gaue vs to vnder- | mage, and with the bleffed Spirit, fo that

Moreouer, in this holy Schoole, the first fathers taught the doctrine concerning the nature of things, giving to vnderftand; that there were certayne lawes of Celestial motions, to deliner testimony, that this world was not made by aduenture, but created by the intelligence of a super-excellent workeman. They taught beside, the course of the years to be ordained, because God would have men to ted by the fa know the order of times; thereby allo to understand the order of divine promises, and how they were to be reuealed, as to know what the first given doctrine was, thereby to judge of the newer afterward. And because men might coprehend, that all things were created by the Dinine Councell and Prouidence: they shewed dinerse vses of Plants, to what end they were created, and for the vse of man. Heereupon they expressed, how God affifted the nature of man by those remedies; thereby also enstructing, that oftentimes Innocents are holpen of God by of Plants. admirable meanes, and yet without the ayde of creatures.

That this was the doctrine of the first or Primitine Church, the narration of of the golden Mofes fufficiently declares, in Genef. And Age before it is not to be doubted, that the wifedom the Floud of the golden Age, before the Floud, was much greater then that after the Floud, whe nature became more weak & feeble. And though that many, both before and after the Floud, might forget or misprisc true doctrine; yet notwithstanding, God would not fuffer his true Innocation to be quenched among men: but euermore referred for company that kept this doctrine, (from one time to another) renued & dispersed it further off by nouell testimonics. Againe, when after the Floud, Godeuerthe multitude of men began once more und the important of the chereate about the transfer of the chereate about t to encrease, though the light of true do- cating you Ctrine might be extincted in Babylon : yet his name. notwithstanding the studie of Astrology remayned, touching the motions and effects of the Starres, with the knowledge of things growing in the earth.

And in this meane while, the promife of God was flill preserved and kept, renewed and illumined in the posteritie of Noah. Afterward, when this pollicie became to be fo well ordayned among the people

he ten tribes lings of Juda, mihof Docnne still en-

dodrine grev

Some rem-nants of Gods truth at all unes remain-

people of Ifrael: all the Colledge of the Leuites was as an Academie and place of exercife. There, some Sacrificers and Prophets taught againe the auncient and vncorrupted doctrine. But afterward, when the tenne Tribes

were cut off by the Kings of Iuda : then great confusions (both in Religion and Doctrine) followed. And yet neuertheleffe, God raifed in the difmembred part of Iudaes Kingdomes, Elias, Elifeus, and other Prophets, to draw divers there to the truth of knowledge : which was the reason that the Prophets had great troupes of Auditours, in regarde that Elias, Elifeus, and the rest had delivered stoode in the Euanglicall Historie, and (from hand to hand) their facted preachwhat their principall errours were. For, ings and interpretations. Some did leaue although they carried themselues as intheirs written, as Efay, and they that folterpreters of the Prophets : they apoulowed after. This custome did alwayes continue in this people, and especially in the Temple, where the facrificing Priests gaue the interpretations, or elfe-where among the Doctours, and fuch as were interpreters of the Writings of Moles helde falle opinions concerning the vie and the Prophets. of the Lawe, and transferred the promi-

But in the latter times, after the returne from Babilon, and after the Prophet Zacharie, when the High-Priests beganne to affect familiarity with the kings of Iuda, and fought to make themselues great and powerfull, the study of true doctrine became contemned, and after that Indea was spoiled by Antiochus; many places were loft, the companies of Students, and their Maisters scattered, and and discipline being thus neglected, it is very likely that the fludies became to bee wonderfully changed. Howbeit, that alwayes some of the Colledge of the high-Pricits, and of the people, kept fome sparks of the true doctrine living among them : as Simeon, Zacharie, Anne, and other, whose youth neighboured to the warres of Antiochus . Notwithstanding, many audacious Expositions of the Propheticall Bookes, wandred farre off from the auncient doctrine.

It is very likely, that at the beginning, the name of Interpreters was common to some men of the best judgement, and likewise to other, that transfigured the doctrine of the Church into Philosophie. By succession of times, as this new Philosophie was most pleasing, and many carneftly fauouring it : the

Schooles began to be so much the more frequented, and a kinde of doctrine was then concluded on. In this manner a profession or Sect (which then was in admiration) was ordained; without changing the name of Pharifie, asimuch to ging the name of Pharitie, aunuci to fay as an Expounder, as nowadayes the Pharifie is an honest Office and Profession: for many learned men doc conceiue the Pharific to be named, rather for Interpretation or

title of Doctour, is the name of a most Exposition. Exposition, then by separation or divi-Issephus reporteth some of their opinions, but they are better to bee vnder-

ched the Bookes not onely of Mofes, but also of the other Prophets, adjoyned to of the Scribes the holy Histories by publique authoritie and Pharifies, of the Ancients, to remaine in their credite and integritie. Neuertheleffe, they held them.

vie. They helde exteriour Discipline, for Inflice fatisfying to the Lawe, anddenyed that wicked affections were finne, or doubting of God, or courage enkindled by hatefull or luftfull defires : prouided that they proceeded not to outward of-

fence. These corruptions are expressely Math. 5,28. reprodued in Saint Matthew, where it is

faid; whofoeuer looketh on a woman, to lust after her, bath already committed adultery with her in his heart . And although that many villearned men in the Church, read these Sentences as Paradoxes of the Stoickes, who painted the Ideaes of the vertues, to the end that men should ftriue to come nere to them (which is impossible for any man in this world to do) yet are they propounded to the Church to

fes of the Messias Kingdome, to politicall

other ends. The Sonne of God knew, that in the Noman in imbecillitie of this nature, no man can dislifetime be without bad defires; therefore hee would have the preaching of repentance and vnlawfull to be dayly founded among men, that affections. acknowledging our corruptions in due manner, wee should confesse our owne guiltineffe, and make our recourse to the Sonne of God . The Philosophic of the Pharifies, obscured this aucient Prophe-

The Pharifics

the promites

made to Abra

The carnall

opinions of

the Pharifies

concerning

the Meffins

dome.

and his King-

celebrated

ham.

The Pharifes

maintained

They allow

of the Lawe

Ceremonie

Matth.6.7.

the freedome

Of the Pharisies.

ticall do êtrine, as it had beene in all times | remonies of Moles, at their pleafure; and after Caine and his Posteritie.

In like manner, the other part of heauenly doctrine, to wit, the promifed Meffins was also obscured. The Pharifies knew and celebrated the magnificet Promifes made to Abraham, recited by Isacob, and often repeated by the Prophets: but they maintained, that they spake only of a politicall kingdome. They dreamed alfo, that the Mellias should come like vnto an other Cyrus or Alexander the great, to vse the whole Empire of the world, the people beeing subjected vnto him: and yet notwithstanding, that this Empire should be more just, milde and peacefull, then any of them before. They affirmed that the Meßias should reigne a a thousand yeares; that the Israelites thould live three or foure hundred yeres without feare of warres, seruitude, or famine, or any other great calamities: And that there should bee no other nature in the Meßias, but humane.

In these idle imaginations, all the doctrine of the Sonne of God, of anger against sinners; of the facrifice and death of the Messias was buried. And yet neuertheleffe, truth was not wholly quenched in the Church, but (as I have faid) fome sparkes remayned with Simeon, Za-Prophets without corruption.

the words of the Lawe, and the promifes thereto appertaining : they dreamed that finnes were to be pardoned by ceremonies and flaughter of beafts, ordained in the Lawe. This perswasson brought in great gaine, for the people (being thus perswaded) multiplied the more their sacrifices. These so thicke mistes of darkenesse had some apparance of wisedome and pictie; which neuertheleffe are oftentimes reprehended of the Prophets.

Ceremonies growing to great augmentation and encrease, many questions (as in the like cases happeneth) were moucd, touching the manner of perfourming them, & other circumstances, which (indeede) required many declarations. And as Monks heaped vp together great fummes of money, by the buying and felling of humane traditions, with their annexed circumstances: euen so the Pharifies would locke up and let loofe the ce-

adde to them their owne nouell denices, as well for the confirmation of superstition, as their owne gaine. Saint Matthew! Maubles telleth vs , that the lucratine tradition is reproued:that it was much better to gine fomewhat to the Temple, then to norith and relieue their owne poore parents: euen as now adayes it is maintained, that a number of flouthfull ide Monkes, should rather enjoy great renenewes, then any thing spared for the reliefe of poore Schollers.

The tradition of the Sabbaoth was al. Tradition for fo in great vsc, as Hierome alledgeth: for daire income Alziba and Hilletius, both Rabines, do fay, 2 hahe nels, a Sabaoth dayes iourney is but two halfe appointed the Phases miles. Befide in this Sect remained fome studies of doctrine, and some care of gouerning the discipline. They could well conclude, that there was an eternall and intelligent God, true, good; inft, chaffe, well-doing, and a renenger of offences: whereby they confessed all things to bee created, the heavens, the earth, Angels, men and other creatures. They affirmed The Phailies alfo(by opinion of philosophy) that there allowed but was but one person in the divinitie, boldly reiecting the Primitiue and Propheti- Godhad call doctrine concerning the Sonne of GOD and the bleffed Spirit: although charie, and many fuch like, who read the they had apparent testimonies of the Son of God in Dauid, Ffay, Micheas and Da-After that the Pharifie had corrupted | niel; and of the Holie-ghost, in many Sermons of the Prophets.

Moreover, they confessed, that God Of the Last the Creator of all things, was manifested what the cerby his Promifes, and by publishing his theredition Lawe: furpaffing all other in goodnesse, with a most goodly pollicie, ordayned and warranted by many testimonies of his presence. Wherefore they would not have any one to call in doubtfull question the providence of God, nor to doubt that the posteritie of Abraham (to whom God had given this ordayned pollicie) should bee any other then the people of God, or the Church whereof God had a peculiar care. They taught them that Particular God gouerned the principall mutations inauters which happened in this life, as the encreasings and diminishings of Empires, the ruine and building agains of great Citties; because they knew their euents to agree with the prophecies of empires, which are in Mofes, Efay and Daniell; adChap. 7. |ding withall, that they knew that their Ci- | men, which was the cause that adulteries | Women fatie Ierusalem had beene divinely builded.

And yet(for all this)they affirmed that the affaires and lines of all men, were gouerned by humane councelles; and they magnified the libertie of mans will, as also the faculty of Free-will: yea, and in fuch fort, that they held a man might fatisfie the divine Lawe, and be just by his diligence, meriting all goodnesse both present and heavenly. And contrariwise, that fuch as offended the dinine Lawe by exteriour transgressions, should be punifhed both in this life and the other. For their opinion was (that the foule feparated from the bodie) should line, and that there should bee a resurrection of the dead, wherein God would reward the just, and fend into euerlasting punishments, fuch as had foiled themfelues with execrable vices. And yet they held withall, that he would punish many crimes by present calamities, adding also, that some might be defaced by facrifices, and the penalties due to them, made more milde or

leffened. Now, although this doctrine was very passable in appearance; yet notwithstanding, they abolified the true vie of the Law, and with the benefites of the Mesias, the doctrine of free pardon . Wherefore eyther they confirmed trust in mens owne justice, or left their consciences in pittifull doubts: in regarde that mens minds being thus ouerthrowne, fled from God, and trembling against him; neyther darst approach neare him, nor call vppon him truly

For the more fure maintaining thefe their disciplines, they had instituted many exercises; the most part whereof ferued rather for oftentation, then any rethraint to their owne bad defires. The maner or forme of their garments was notable; for they wore great long cloakes. with fringes about them, inter-wouen with the words of the Lawe. Oftentimes they vsed to wash themselues, having at the entring into their houses holy-water, wherewith they sprinckled themselnes. They observed choice of meates in their falls, muttering long prayers to themfelues, which Saint Matthew calleth Battologie, much babbling.

Their facrifices and apparance of piety attracted greatly the familiarity of wo-

and divorces grew to be very frequent among them; and to enjoy therein the more liberty, they enlarged the law of di uorces. For the auncient custome of dinorces implied, that they were not to be done, but vpon knowledge of the cause, and the instruments to effect them, was, with the knowledge and confent of the magistrate, and seperation might not be graunted for light causes and disturbances; but by good reasons induced to the Iudges, who were knowne to bee grave bilot divorce, men, and of great integritie.

But the Pharifes (viterly difannulling this auncient custome) made dinorces vpon their private authority, either without cause, or for causes of no moment: fo that the lawe of dinorce ferued onely as a baited hooke, to allure and betray other mens wines; as among the Pagans, and as at this instant with the Turkes, it is traying of

By this kind of proceeding, men might reject their wives when they thought fittest, without any reasonable cause, and contrary to the nature of mariage, which Godhimselse instituted at the beginning, Gods first in stitution of to the end, that it might be the aliance of marriage, an inseparable company when hee saide: They shall be both one steft; that is to fay, a Genesis 2.24 male and female shal be joyned together inseparably. In like manner, the Lawe of Moses lawe Mofes did not permit divorce without for divorce. cause; but rendred a reason whereby separation might be allowed to wit , If any Deut.24.1. vilenesse were found in her . And the ancient Atticke custome intended, that no diuorce should be granted, without know- custome conledge of the cause. Since when, by succesfion of times, the bands of discipline haue been let loofe, by the encrease of lewdnes and incontinencie: fo that the auncient Atticke custome became quite changed. And soin the latter times of the lewes, times of the all granity for the maintenance of aliance lewes much in mariage, grew greatly extenuated. For negligent in fine could not be faide to be a true wife, fies. whom the husband might cast off at all times, and whenfocuer fuch giddines intoxicated his braine, and without anic wighty cause. This vniust custome of the Pharifes was the cause of that question in S. Mathew, where mention is made concerning the alliance of marriage, and the Maul. 19.6,7 first institution therof repeated : also by a

manner for graunting the

uerce letued for the be-

The Atticke

Sinnes to be pardoned by cercia mira and killing of beafts ordained in the

Lawc.

Questionsco acting & per deuised cere-

The Saddu

ces name held to be e

The vniust custome of the Pharites.

and common

to luperfliti

ous natures

or the Phari-

Most of the

Their pride

in opinion of

and their acti-

all and none

good enough

to be equal

with them

thendelues,

nations.

feuere declaration, light and triuiall separations of mariage, yied both among the people of the lewes, and Pagans likewife. are forbidden and condemned.

It hath beene common to all superstitions natures, in all ages and nations, to Vices frequér peruert the order of precedent actions; yea, & in such fort, that they grow to be very difficult and rigorous exacters, of in all ages and multitudes of their owne denised ceremonies: being (in the interim time) very careleffe for the necessary fernices of life. whereof the Decalogue giueth comands, and letting loofe the bridle to infinit lewd affections. And many of them appeare meerely as Ingglers, such as are described ingling tricks in our Satyres, who (by counterfeited grauitie) disguise great vices, whereof is faid; That they shew themselves to be wife

men, and yet live in dissolution.

And although among the Pharifies, some were more modest then others, as Gamaliel; some also vnderstanding the do-Arine more purely, renouncing errors, as Nichodemus ; yet notwithstanding , the most part of them were of this coyne or Pharifes were of one molder frampe. They had execrable errors (conrours held by cerning the Divinitie) engraven in their the Phariles, ipirits, and touching the political Empire of the Mesias. They understood nothing of the promise for remission of fins, nor of the true Invocation. They had a false opinion of the Moifaical ceremonies, and of their owne. Moreover, they added other enorme vices to these; as to esteeme wel of themselves, for they reputed themfelues to be wife, infl, princes and pillers of Gods Church; preferring themselues before al modest and religious people indeed, because they affected to have their ons, excelling carriage more scene and observed themselucs to bee more honoured and feared. then any other. Neuerthelesse, they were in continual debates and variances, afwell among themselues, as the Citizens, feafting together for pride, ambition, enuy, contempt, hatred, cuill speaking and venimous injuries. So that through their private couctoufnes, they moved not only many domesticall tumults, but aymed at the yoake of strangers; for they were

> themselues) in seeking to compasse a tyrannicall power. First of all, they strengthened themfelnes by the fauors of neighboring kings,

> skilfull in those artes (welknowne among

of high Courts, mighty men, and planting factions among the people; forgeting factions among the people; 101get and practice ting to imitate the ancient faying; If the wete inob. Serpent doe not eate a Serpent, hee will neuer feruation a. become a Dragon. And either by calumnies, or other like means, they oppressed all fuch, as (in emulation) were hinderers to their power. About all, they were very spleenative against the professors of true doctrine, carefully feeking all occasions whereby to spoile them: as it is said, they flew Zachary the Father to John Baptist.

Now although (as I have formerly faid) that among the Phariles, some were more modest then other, & some (being thereto admonished) forfooke their errours, and embraced the true doctrine: yet notwithstanding, the following Histories of the Lewish people, and the Euangelical makemore narrations doe testifie, that the opinions apparant and behauiour of this troupe, and all fuch the proofe of thefe people. as made profession of this Sect, partaking with them in their rites and ceremonies, were none other then as I have heere fet downc.

CHAP. VIII.

Concerning the originall of the other Sect. tentmed Sadduces, contrary in nature to the Pharifies, and what customes were observed among them.



Haue beene the larger in discoursing on the Pharifes, in regarde that this Scott dazled or deceiued mens sight, by an apparance of farre greater surfaces, and

perstition, then that of the Sadduces, and going beyond them in authoritie. Now I (hall (in briefe) fay formwhat of the Sad- had their oil duces, in fo much, as this Sect received ginally no originall from superstition; but rather from contempt of God, fauouring to be Epicurian.

Forasmuch as the Pharisies charged men with numberlesse ceremonies, that neither their bodiesor consciences could bear any moredike to some other in these later times, whose lawes and impositions haue growne beyond all measure, that

fired(with tears) to be disburdned: fo ftarted vp other profane people, who, without any true judgement, loofing the bads of all restriction (by an Epicurian audaciousnes) instituted another Sect contrary to that of the Pharifes, naming themselues Sadduces. For to cary fome effect before the people, they tooke this honorable title delinered from Inftice: For Zaddikim fignifies Infines, & this name was oppofite to that of the Pharifes, who were tearmed Interpreters, and disputed on many things. Now it was a matter more notable and glorious, for men to be stiled Iust, and doers of the Law, then Interpreters and Disputers. Others deduce the name from Sedak, a Chaldean word, which fignifies to part or divide. Bicause they undernore glori-on then that of the Phariflood the Sadduces to be termed (according as we speake) Schismatickes, divided from sentence with the rest of the church; but I gueffe that their aduerfaries forged that Etymologie.

> pellation came, let vs rather confider the deed it felfe,& be terrified withall, in thinking on so horrible an example. Wherein plainly appeared the power of the diuell, forraging in this company, which bare the name of the church of God confidering, that (euen then) in people very well conditioned among whom discipline was eafily entertaind because their extendure was fo final, & where there were no ftrangers to intermeddle; many durit (by publike authority) propound most execrable errors, and creek, even in the midft of the Church, a Schoolelike that of Epicurus. Let vs consider on this also, that after these Churches were spread abroad farre & wide, many mighty errors were fowne in & by them: as namely the confusion of the Empire, and the conversation of Pa-

It is no great matter, whence the ap-

And although it is not possible to report all the mad prankes of the Sadduces, without great griefe and anguish; yet notwithstanding, it is necessary the Historie should be written. For it plainly appeareth, that some profane Iewes brought a monstrous audacionsnes into Iudea, and fuch wicked opinions as they had learned of Pagans, meerely Epicurians, by haun- Inis present fight & comprehension. And

gans, among whom they lived. Where-

fore, let vs not flatter our felues, by a vain

assurance of the name of the Church, as

if that all had bin, or were without finne.

ting to them familiarly; for they carried no meane refemblance with them. The Sect of the Sadduces retained the name of God, for feare left it should appeare, that they would diffipate the pollicie, which was fingularly maintained by the bands of Religion. But they endeuoured to efface out of mens understanding, the true inugcation vpon God, and the true feare

They maintained that mens foules being fundred from their bodies, should neuerreft, and that men should reuine no mottmothrous more after death: neyther that any other | blatphemies iudgement was to be expected, wherein tained by the the just were to be discerned from the vn- Sadduces. iust. The names of eternall life, & of hell, were to this Sect as meere fables, and terrours to affright young children. And because they would make their intention knowne, that it was to cafe the mindes of men, from the burden of Pharifaicall traditions, and to teach liberty: they feigned. to recall men back to the writings of Mofes, and therefore alleadged his faying, where it is forbidden to adde to the Law. By this meanes they frustrated all the writings of the Pharifes, with all their inter- made voyde pretations and traditions : the release and and of none discharge whereof was pleasing, and affected by many, because that the number

of them was well-neare infinite. From thence, and there framing their All the books beginning, they went on further under the of all the profame colour, & reiccted all the Bookes of by the Sadduthe Prophets (the bookes of Moles onely cessonly the excepted) an outhing, that he neuer meant books of Moor spake, but of this present life onely. To maintaine the forme and order of their Commonwealth, they fayd; That the law ought to be obeyd, & facrifices to be performed, because God punished great offences in this life. Contrariwife, for good actions and obedience, he gaue peace & abundance of goods: confirming al their fancies by the words of Moles, where hee speakes both of blessings and cursings.

The brenitie of this Doctrine, agreed The Sadduand contented light headed spirits highly; ces doctrine and prophane persons were not a little delighted with these opinions : which were of fente only confirmed by the judgement of fense only, because every man thought that an intollerable burthen, and hardly gaue credite to those Articles, which were out of

of the groffe and abhomi-

nable errours

of the Saddu-

ces Sca.

therefore this Sect (how wicked foeuer) in fuch great matters , let fuch as reade, Matter let it were) wanted not store of tolowers. Now although it be true, that God is A refutation

the gardian of politicall focietie, and that he punisheth vniust murders in this life. left the companies of men should be confumed, as also to the end, that they may be manifest signes of his divine Iustice to euery eye: yet notwithstanding, God in meane while (by an admirable councell best knowne vnto himselfe) suffereth many inft persons to be slaine by the wicked; as Abell, the children of Ifraell in Egypt, Ionathas, Efay, Ieremy, and innumerable other. These examples doe testifie, that there remayneth another Iudgement, wherein God will declare his inflice, by bringing the just and vniust into indgement; and the wicked, being fent into torments, shall shew the just to be victori-

other judgement to enfue after death.

The reason why the people of Ifrael were condem ned by the Sadduces

ous, although it continue some time after death. For, Teeing that God declared, that he had a care of Abell, Ionathas, Efay, and Ieremy during their lines : if after death he should have made no account of them, it had much diffented from his præscience; yea, and from his inflice also. It is then most enident, that the Sadduces, who denyed any other judgement to remaine after death; did cut off the divine and just prouidence, from a great part of mankind, and especially from such as have excelled in righteouineffe. The facrificing Priest of the Sadduces,

beeing at the Altare, conceined, that the Ifraelitish Nation was not chosen of God (who onely had the true knowledge of God on earth;) because they nad been fo often oppressed by Kings of the Egyptians Chaldeans & Syrians; and, even when their neighbors (being dispersed throghout Iudea) spoiled many thousands of just persons, compelling them that survived. to feed on the flaughtered bodies of their fellow-Cittizens: in this case, shall there bee no attribution of iustice and prouidence to God, if instantly hee shewe not himselfe to have a care of his, and that (therefore) there remayneth no immortality? Thus vnder the shadow of ceremonies, were mens foules abused, by outward and apparant Legier-dumaines, the divine Providence being exactly taken away, euen as the Epicurians did.

Now, confidering there were these debates between the Pharifes and Sadduces.

conceine, not onely how great and frequent the tumults and perturbations of this people haue beene; but also, how confiderance rudely both the Pharifes and Sadduces, and divers other with them (being manifestly Atheists) vsed the true Church, as Simeon, Zachary and their poore flocke. But as then (among fo many wolues and lions) some faithfull guardians of the true doctrine were referred, fo(no doubt)but God will stil continue it to all succeeding times; and as hee did to Simeon and the reft, fo he will enermore stand in the just defence of his Spouse the Church, supporting her against all miseries whatsoe-

CHAP. IX.

Of a third Sect, contrary to the Pharifes and Sadduces, who termed them felues by the name of Essans: their originall, Religion and maner of life.



Tordinarily happeneth, that when feditions hate once gotten them chief once gotten themselves Sects and diinto actiue motion : ma-my partialities and diuffi-ons will thruft in after my more to

them. As Homer feigned, that the Store- follow. house or Armory (wherein Acolus had locked up the winds) being broken open: the Sea became troubled enery where, the windes flew abroad with fuch extraordinary violence; euen foin kingdoms & Empires, after that politicall order commeth to bee once troubled and dif-joynted; many divisions must needes follow after. Many Sects exalted themselves. during these debates betweene the Pharifes and Sadduces. For some, detesting the profane doctrine, and Ethnicke licence of the Sadduces, and feeing Religi- Pharifes and on and piety masked by the Pharifes, and that, to difguise great and groffe vices, fuch as were whoredome, ambition, malice, enuy, cruelty, lying, rapine, and the like, they fet before mens cies (as a cloude of diffimulation) dreadfull seueritie, and and some seuere ceremonies; beganne

Chap.9. Of the Essæans.

to divide themselves from both one and And these Seperatists & divided people, formed a name for themselves, called Estans, workers, by which title, they gave net, in regard me to understand, that which they reproued in others, & wherin they would feem more excellent then they : namely, that they fled from the profune libertie of the Sadduces, & allowed not the hypocrific of the Pharifes, difguifed in fo many kindes: but that they would doe deeds or workes profitable to other, and commaunded by

God, having alwayes this vivall fentence

Arine, but retained the doctrine of Moles

in their mouths; Euery word without work, is meerely vaine and unprofitable. There is no mention made of them in No mention the Ecclefiasticall history, either because Ecclesificall they had not inveted any new kind of do-

> & the Sacrificers: or in regard they dwelt at th'end of Iudea, toward the lake Alphal. tida, as in a retiremet, & neuer intermedled with the government of affairs, thunning the contentions of the Pharifies and Sadduces . Their maner of life was like to that of the Monkes; for cither they were not maried, or if they were, they abstained from their wines; having their goods in comon, doing fuch bufineffes as were inioyned the. They fought not after riches, voluptuous pleafures or honors; but digd and deluced in gardens, as in a life of folitude, feeking carefully for knowledge in the nature of Plants, and their inyces, stones and animalls, learning their remedies, and exercifing Philicke faithfully, which ferued more then all other Artes

quaimics exerciled by the

harthey li-

red far from

for the life of man. Moreoner, they practifed many vertues, as beneficence, patience in visiting ficke persons; such as were not able to helpe themselues, they would feed them, carry them, wash and bathe them, neuer thrinking at groffe fauors, coming either fro wounds, fweats, or other annoyances. Their cunning, faith & diligence was very commendable, in knowing wel how to prepare medicaments; to know the kindes of difeafes; what remedies were ant for them; to know also times & seasons, when phisice ought to be ministred. In briefe, the vertues & welldoing of a learned, industrious and faithful Phisition appeared in the most of them.

And as it is a good thing, that youth

should be enstructed in learning, the do- The Arrest Arine of good maners, the Art of philick, and to accustome their tender spirites to mable tobe discipline, & the vnder standing of virtue: learned by cuen fo in the affembly of the Effeans, the yong people, very skilfullest were chosen by a certaine number, who instructed many throghout Iudea. For al modeft men, & fuch as thunned the managing of affaires in civile dif-fentios, affected rather to have their children taught by the doctours of this Sect, then any other, which they held in horror, & would have no acquaintance with them, feeing them fo tempestuous in the Common-wealth, by their owne particular couetous defires, and continually mo-

uing vnnecessary contentions.

The Effeans addicted their life and reli- The doctrine The Effeans addicted their me and rem-gion principally to two heads or points, and inc of the Effeans aimd to wit: In calling vpon God in a prinate onely attwo kind of life, and in honest bodily labours, especial ends which were the expulsion of vices, and profitable to other men. And for fatiffaction both to the one and other, they had partition of times, fo that they might attend on busines till the fift houre of the day, that is to fay, to cleuen houres before midday. Their labor ending at that houre, Concerning certain numbers of people (round about) their meetmet there together, according to the pla- ings and aftenblies. ces distributed to eucry one. In this affembly, some passage in Moses and the Prophets was read, the Auncients that fate as Prefidents, gaue addition of the exposition : which they would not have to be written, but retained in the minde, and so transferred to the government of manners, admonishing (according to the exigence of time) what they thought pro-

meddle in the Common-wealth. After this reading & exposition, they What times inuoked Gods affiftance both in publike & particular. They held those times to be most meet for meditation & praier, when diration and the body was not charged with meats & prayer. fumes, & that inuention is most sprightly in them, whose mindes were fasting from worldly cogitations. Two or 3. houres being employed in reading and prayer, enery one went to supper, or walked in company, or alone by himfelfe, according as it stoode with his good liking, or as his heart required, The rest of the day, vntill the Eucning came, was spent in Ddd 2 learned

fitable for peace and tranquilitie, for they

would have none of their followers to

The exercifes afterreceuing fustenance.

Discipline ec-

dayned for

fuch as offen-

their colleges

Matth. 18.17

ded against

learned discourse and talking of God, of Plants, of medicaments, and their experience in enery thing: or elfe of the hiftorie of their owne nation, and what miferies had beene common to them. Before the darke houres of night, they met together againe, and went to prayer.

Now, although the order of their behauiour and actions were wifely gouerned, and many (in their Colledges) lined modeftly; yet notwithflanding it came to passe, that some of them (wonne by their owne couctous desires) forgot the Lawes divine, and (in the neighbouring towns) fell to voluptuous pleasures. But the rigour of each Colledge was fuch, as if any one had defrauded another, if hee had lied, or had infected himselfe with whoredome: immediately (by common fentence) hee was excommunicated out of the company. For (among them) was kept the most ancient custome of the Synagogue, whereof is spoken in Saint Mathem, Because there might no question be vrged, for instituting any new forme of Indicature; but the playne auncient fathion, recited as it was given by the Fathers, the traces whereof are remaining in the Church.

This pollicie of the Effaans, compre-

hended the principall parts of their doc-

trine, to wit; the fludy of learning, the ex-

ercises of Inuocation, reverence to their

Gouernors, bodily labors, temperance,

and modest maners according to the De-

calogue, the nourishing of youth; who

were instructed in learning, and the Art

of Phylicke; paines and punishments al-

so appointed for delinquents . Iosephus

commended the College of the Essans,

comparing them to the Schoole of Pytha-

goras. Pliny also makes mention of them

in very honorable maner, terming them

Estaneans, as(fince then)divers other did;

for there he speaketh of no other people,

dwelling towards the Lake Albhaltida, on

the west side, not farre from the Citty of

Pericho, where were the gardens of Balme.

It may be, that this place was chosen to

study the Art of Physick, as not being the

like in all the world, for abounding in all

the principall medicines. By this passage

of Pluny, and by Iofephiu, it appeareth, that

the colledge of the Effeans continued to

the time of Vefpafian : besides, tofephus re-

The principall parts of the doctrine taught by the Edwans.

Iofeph.in Antiqlib.z. cap.9. Plin. in l. 5.c.2

The habitati on of the Efporteth, that they carried themselves very valiantly in warre.

Now wil we returne to Hyrcanus, who after he had held the gouernement, and after he had held the government, and the High-priesthood 31 yeares, died, lea-termetoile uing 3. children. Hee was accounted fingularly happy in 3. things; to wit, that he 116. had bin fo long a time a peaceable prince of the people, and the foueraigne Sacrificer:adding thereto, that he was beleeved to haue the spirit of Prophecie, & knowlege in things to come by the gift of god.

CHAP. X.

Having briefly discoursed on the 2. severall Sects, of the Pharifes, Sadduces, and Ef-Caans: we go backe againe where we formerly left, to speake of Hyrcanus and his

Ohn Hyrcanus had fine fonnes, Aristo- The valuat bulus the first, Antigonus the second; a actes of Amigraue yong man, who in his life time, accompanyed with his brother Aristobulus: expulsed Antiochus Cyzicenus out of Iudea, and tooke Samaria. The father being dead, his brother also was crowned King. But soone after, when hee had exploited the affaires in Galilee, he went up to Ieru-(alem, accompanied with braue Souldi. ers to be present at the Feast of Tabernacles. His brother growing suspitious of him, and caufing him to be entrapped by Antigonus his warlike troups; he was flaine by them flaine byhis neare to the Temple.

Alexander the third, called Jamnes alfo, had two fons, namely, Hyrcanus the first, Aristobulus the secod, Absolon the fourth; being of a most milde and peaceable spirit, lived by himselfe privately. A daughter of his was married to his cofin Ariftobulus. The fift some of Hyrcanus is not The fift some named at all, and yet was flayne by his flaine. brother Alexander : because that (after but onely the Escans . Hee placeth their the death of Aristobulus) he affected the kingdome.

Aristobulus, after the death of his father Hyrcanus, being the first that changed the Principalitie into a dignitie Royall; imposed on himselfe the diademe, and fent also for his brother Antigonis, whom he loued. He put his other three brethren in prison, and that which is Aristobulus much more, he starued his owne mother to death in prison; because she demaund of ludes

Juigement of Godiustly she wed vpon A-tot bulus,&

Aprediction

Mexander

ded the fuccession and gouetnement of mighty hauockethere; called from Cyprus half the principalitie, which Hyrcanus had Ptolomie Lathurus, expulsed by his nother un, between left voto her on his death-bed.

Afterward, he caused his brother Antigonus to be flaine, he being a braue man, and a bolde warriour, laying diverse anibushes for him, as hee returned victorioufly from Galilee; only because he suspe-Aed that he affected the kingdome.

Immediately, beeing highly distasted by this murdering of his brethren, he became feized with a grienous paine in his entrails, and having cast vp a great quantitie of bloud by vomiting, the Page that carried the Bason from him, fell (accidentally)in the fame place, where the ground remained as yet infected with the blood of murdred Antigonus, and there he foilt the cast blood of Aristobulus: which hee vnderstanding, and falling into acknowledgement of the divine full vengeance; in excessive torments both of soule and body, yeelded up the ghost. After he had reigned one whole yeare onely, and during which time, hee had augmented the kingdome of Iudea, and constrained the Itureans to vndergoe Circumcifion, hauing formerly vanquished them. He was called Philellin, because hee vied greatly the familiarity of Pagans. Alexander, called also Ismnes.

Has father Hyrcanus neuer faw him, for as he was in great care about the fuccession of his children: it was foretolde him in his fleepe, that his riches and prin-

cipalitie, should fall into the power of that new borne babe, whereat hee growing greatly offended, commaunded, that hee should be nursed in Galilee, like to a simple prinate person.

After the death of his father Hyrcanus, he was clapt vp in prison (with his two other brethren) by Aristobulus. But Aristo. bulus dying at his yeares expiration, hee came to the Crowne, by the means of Alexandra, wife to Ariftobulus, to whom he had promifed marriage.

Soone after he was crowned King, he flew one of his brethren, who practifed nouelties; and entertained the other (named Absolon) honorably, because he was of a peaceful spirit. Then taking order for publike affaires, hee befreged the cittle of Ptolomais round about. The cittizens feeing all hope of fuccour voyde from Syria, in regard of the civile warre, which made

Cleopatra. He coming to them with 3000 Cilicia and men , A'exander retired his army into his Syria. countrey, and dispatched a messenger secretly into Egypt, defiring ayde of Cleopatra against her son Lathurus. Publikely he capitulated aliance with Lathurus, promifing him 24 tuns of gold, if, expelling the tyrant Zoilus, who viurped Doris and Cafarea, he would render those Seigneuries Greece, neare to the lewes.

A country of the gulie Me-

But Ptolomie being advertised of Alexanders secret machinarions, breaking all alliances, inuaded Judea with his Army, where Alexander mette him with his for ces well appoynted, and after a rude encounter, Alexander was put to flight, and lost 30000. of his men. Lathurus not a litle glorying in this victory, made mightie waite in Indea, facking & fpoyling all places where he came, killing both women Thegreat and children in enery village; and after he Lathurus ahad fliced them in peeces, he caused their limbes to be boyled and eaten by his fouldiers, to make them the more terrible to ludes. the Iews. Very foone after, Cleopatra chafed this Tyrant out of sudea, as doubting lest if he should grow any greater, the he would further infult vpon Egypt. Alexander went to visite her at the siege which the maintained before *Ptolomais, where Tolomiraby he gaue her great gifts: and after he had bin royally welcomed by her, and combined alliance with her, he tooke his way homeward againe.

Much about this time, while Lathurus returned to Cyprus, and Cleopatra into E. Decapolis in gypt, Alexander tooke Gadera, Amathunta Syria. and Anthedon, and having held a long fiege before Gaza, with loffe of a great number of his men: finally by the treason of Lysimachus, he entred it, & flaying the Citizens most inhumanely, he raced it to The barbathe ground. Nor would he pardon 500. rous butcheof the principall persons, who labored to derthe High yield the city to him but drew them from prieft, foorth the Temple of Apollo (whereunto they had fled for freedom) to put them to death. But these iocund prosperities were ouertaken with a domesticall sedition: for, in the Feast of Tabernacles, hee was iniuried by the people, as vnwoorthy of the Priesthoode, because hee was borne of a flaue: And hardely it happened, that (in his facrificing) he was not flayne

lewes in

Citties of

Alexander ped killing, & bloodily renenged it of the people.

582

The Moabite & Galaadite conquered.

The lewes entredinto ciuill warre gainft Alexander.

Alexander findeth belo in his heaus extremity.

The most part of the lewes in Armes ftill against Alexander.

Eight! üdred checte Icwes crucified by Alexander, while he banqueted with his Concubines.

by the multitude then about him, who I murdred. The rest (affrighted by this cruclies, which the lewes vied to carry at that Feast. Not a little enraged at this wrong, he called his fouldiers together, and entring youn the vnarmed people, flew about fixe thousand of them: calling diuers strangers from Persia and Cilicia, to ferue as a Guard about his body. Afterward, marching forth with his Army, he vanquithed the Moabites and Galaadites, compelling them to pay him tribute.

Shortly after, to his great misfortune, hee encountred with Oboda, King of the Arabians, fell into his ambushes, and his Army being hewen in pieces, he escaped with much difficulty. Vpon this bad fucagainst him) tooke occasion to raise the most part of the lewish people likewise in mislike of him, with whom he warred (very hardly) fixe whole yeares. For the lewes that were his aduerfaries, drew Demetrius, the Sonne of Gryphus, to oppose his forces with such troopes as hee had called from Damas, where hee reigned against whom Alexander fought to his great loffe, for all his strange Soldiors lay Ilaine in the field, & he had no means to fauchimselfe, but by flight. Yet, notwithstanding his instant calamity, some say some-what concerning Alexandra, of the Iewes were hartened to take his part, in turning requitall vpon Demetries: and beeing affifted with some fixe thoufand men, he made a smal recouery of his former loffe.

Now, albeit vpon this victory, Demetrius (perceiuing the reuolt of the Iewes) retired his hoaft home into his kingdome: yet notwithstanding, the most part of the Jewes (who were conjured against Alexander) continued in Armes still, whose power Alexander brake by little and little, aswell through industry, as by vertue. And after he had sped well in fome skirmishes, hee shutte vp his very mightieft enemies, in the Fort belonging to the Towne of Bethom, which he enforced with great difficulty, & vied extreme cruelty vpon his captines. For he tooke eight hundred of the principal Iewes, caufing them all to be crucified, while he fate banquetting at a Table with his Concubines, and in the presence of al his inuited guests, having formerly commaunded their wines and children to be miferably

smote him with the boughes and bran- | ellexample) fled out of Ierusalem in the night time, being about eight thousand of his enemics.

By this meanes, that dreadfull civill warre was appeafed, which had continued more then fixe yeares; and wherein a children in the lines of boue fifty thousand lewes were flaine. At- more then ter these domesticke troubles, by continuall courses hee reuenged himselfe on strange aduerfaries, who had given succour and retreate to the feditions Iewes, winning from them many Townes and Citties.Returning home againe, through his intemperance, hee fell into a Feauer quartane, which held him for the space of three yeares. And yet, hating to abstaine ceffe, the Pharifies (enraged with hatred (all this while) from trauaile and war, dy- Alexandera ed in befiedging a Castle on the Mount fiedginga of the Gerge enians, in the nine and forti- Calle. eth yeare of his age; of his reigne and Priesthood, the seuen and twenty. Before his death, he left his kingdomes gouernment to his wife Alexandra, and gaue her charge to pacific the Pharifies, whom he and his Father had offended, vnto their great detriment.

He left two Sons: Hyrcanus of Aristobulus. Of whom we shall have leyfure to speak heereafter; because first of all, we are to the wife of Alexander Iamnes.

Alexandra wife to Alexander Iamnes.

After thee had instituted in the High-Priesthood her eldest sonne Hyrcanus, who defired nothing more, then to leade a private life: the fucceeded in the king- Alexander dome after her husband Alexander, being created high especially aided by the power of the Pharifies, to whom the gave authority, to reuocate and erect their ancient traditions, which Hyrganus (her father in law) had abolished, & granted to them many other fauours beside. So that the Pharisies administred the whole Regiment of the Awoman Kingdome at their owne pleasure; onely reignethout the bare name of Queene remained to the lewes. Alexandra. Finally, as they vndertooke the boldnesse, to execute (vnder colour of inflice) the cheefest Councellors to the deceassed King Alexander, who they suspected to have incited him against the Pharifies Sect: fo they proceeded on in many inhumanities. The friends of Alex- Alexander ander going to Rome with his fonne Arificials go
flobulus, obtained (by fauor of the Court)
bulluro flow

na viurpeth

Chap. 10.

The death of

thren, Aristo balus conque reth both

to goe as Captaines of warlike troopes, | miles, to attempt the restitution of Hyrcato the Castles.

At this time, Tygranes King of the Par-Syria; because the Syrian Kings had confumed all their strength and power by domesticke warres. And being entred also into Iudea, planted his Campe before the Citty of Ptolomais: whereof (neuerthelesse)Queen Alexandra bought the peace by liberall bounty of gifts. After the taking of Ptolomais, Tygranes returning with his Army to his Countrey : heard newes concerning the victory of Lucullus, and the flight of Mithridates.

Within a while after, Alexandra being Aiffobulus a fallen into an extreme ficknesse, her Son great enemy Aristobulus, taking in ill part the dominito the Phanifes, on of the Phanifes: fled to the friends of his Father, who had the guarding of the castles, by whose assistance, he got possesfion of the principall Citties in Iudea. In this feare of the Pharifies, and no great affurance of Aristobulus, who (neuertheleffe) approched neere with his Army; Alexandra was called out of this life, in the ninth yeare of her Reigne, and the Lxxv.of her age, which brought peace to the Land of Indea. But because she had encreased the power of the Pharifies; it was the reason of many troubles which followed.

> The sonnes of Alexander Iamnes, and of Alexandra, were (as bath bene faid) Hyrcanus the fecond. Aristobulus the fecond.

Hyrcanus the second, naturally peacefull, and a louer of quietneffe, was enflalled by his Mother Alexandra Soueraigne War betwee Sacrificer, in the place of his deceaffed Father. And moreouer, after the death of his Mother, by hereditary right he obtayned the kingdome. But being vanquifined by his Brother Aristobulus in battel, he was glad to faue himfelfe in the Fortresse of the Temple; commanded there to leade a prinate life, the kingdome and High-Priesthood beeing quitted to his Brother. For fome time he endured thefe conditions, but beeing afterward moued by some accusations, which Antipater the Idumean (father to Herod) put into his head, as also the frauds and fetches of his brother Aristobulus; hee was induced to flye thence into Arabia, to king Aretas, whom Antipater had won by liberall pro-

nus to the kingdome of In lea.

Aretas inuading Lidea with a potent thians, made feizure on the kingdome of Army, and having Aristobulus at the encounter; ouercame him, and taking the reflore Hyr. Citty of Ierusalem, held him so long befiedged in the Temple, vntill by the command of Scaurus, Lieutenant to Pompey, he was forced to retire with his Army into Arabia, and to the enterprize for Hyrcamis proued to none effect. After that Pompey had vanquished Tygranes, & was come into Syria, the two brethren, Hyrcanus and The two bre-Aristobulius, accused each other before threnpleade him, touching their right to the Kingdom before Pomand High-Priefthood. But Pompey, more peyenclining to the part of Hyrcanus, by the providence and services of Antipater; releafed Aristobulus vnder certaine conditions. Neuertheleffe, Ariflobulus meaning nothing but meere mockery to all commands, and trufting to the munitions in the City of Ierufalem: Pompey (in reuenge) entred it violently, and won the Temple fo strongly defenced, where were flaine of the Imes, about the number of two and Indea and Ie twenty thousand, and the City (with the insalemmade most part of Indea) rendred tributary to tributary to the Romaines. Which tribute they payed tor a certaine time, as lofephus confesseth, amounting to the fum of 10000. Talents, which is 60. Tuns of gold. Pompey having walked in the Temple, and entred into the holiest part of all, called Sanetum Sanetorum: at his departing, restored Hyrcanus to the Soucraigne Pricfthood, but not the kingdome. Alfo, he led along with him to Kome, Aristobulus as prisoner, with his two fonnes, Alexander (who neuertheles escaped by the way) and Antigonius, and his Pompey. two daughters likewife.

Thus Hyrcanus, being possessed of the foucraigne Priesthood, about foure yeares after the death of his Mother Alexandra, fuccored Scaurus (left in Indea with two legions) when he befiedged Petra, a City of Arabia. Afterward, he fel into the fauor of Hyrcanus in other Romain Lieutenants, sent into Iudea good fauor only by the perswasion and friendship of with many of Antipater; as with Gabinius, Craffus, Cafsius Licutenante. and Iulius Cafar himfelfe, to who he fent aid, vnder the conduct of Antipater, when he was much hindred in the war of Egipt. And because Antipater had caried himself valiantly, Cafar confirmd the high-Priesthood to Hyrcanus: & appointed Antipater

Ind lib 3 cap.7

6 Booke

protector of

dayes to speake) Protector of all Indea. At the fame time also, Cafar permitted to Hyrcanus, to re-establish the fortifications of the Citty of Ierusalem, which had beene beaten downe by Pompey.

poisoned by Malachus a

Malachus

staine by He

rode Antipa-

Antigonus e

fcaped the

Roman pri-

fons.

ters fonne.

After that Iulius Cafar was flaine by the conspirators, a powerfull Iew, named Malachus, being offended at the encreafing greatnesse of Antipater the Idumean, and that the whole administration of affaires should be in his hand; surprized his life by poisons. But thereupon, Indea, beeing destitute of so wise and valiant a Gouernour, fell to very miserable condition. For Malachus, tempesting his thoughts with mounting hopes, to become fole maifter and commander; was flaine euen in the entrance to his enterprifes, by Herode fonne to Antipater, to whom (though he was as yet very yong) his father had giuen the charge of Galilee. On the other fide, the brother of Malachus, desirous to revenge the death of his brother, theeued in the manner of an enemy . Alfo, Antigonus the captined fon to Aristobulus, escaping from the prisons of Rome: leuying men of arms, made him selfe maister of a great part of Iudea.

After that Herode had imbarred his proceedings, Antigonus vnder promise of a thousand talents, which value fixe tuns of golde, and of five hundred most noble women; procured Pacorus and Barzaphernes, Satrapes in the Kingdome of Persia, to enter with a maine army into Indea, to ouerthrow Herode and his brother Phaselus, whom Anthonie (one of the three Monarches) had before made Tetrarchs of Indea. Which beeing done, they should perforce render the kingdom of the lewes, to the fonnes of Aristobules . Pacorus thinking it best, that Herode should bee surprized rather by subtiltie. then by violence; fent Antigonus on before with fome bands of men, to get pofmies meeting fession of Ierusalem; and he(in the meane while) would follow with his Armie by Sea, so farre as to Ptolomais, where he had ordered, that Barzaphernes (hould meete him with a passable Army. Many gaue kind welcomes to Antigonus, running affectionately to him, and promising their ayde against Herode . Neuershelesse, Herode and his brother found themselues

be Tutor, Curator, or (as we vie now a- 1 ly within the Citty, but also without the

Finally, Anticonus distrusting his forces, called Pacorus into the Citry, vnder pretence, that (as an Arbitratour) hee summing semantics. should compound the difference for the compassibile Principalitie, which was betweene him which hear and Herode, vnder conditions more tol. lerable: but his purpose was indeede, to furprize Herode vnprouided . Morcouer, hee laboured with his vnckle Hyrcanus and Phafelus, worming it fo into their heads, to go in embaffic to Barzaphernes (remaining in Galilee with his army) and to preuaile so farre with him by rich prefents, that he should retreite his power into Syria. To which councell Hyrcanus the High-priest, and Phaselus (brother to Herode) yeelding, without suspect of ill; were taken by the Parthians, (euen as the matter was in monopolizing) contrary to the right of Nations, and delivered as ken prifonen captines to Antigonus.

Herode being formerly aduertifed of these plots and compacts of Antigonus & Pacorus; went foorth of the Citty in the night feafon, with all his family, some friends, and 800. women, rich and excellent in beautie, and left the persons and their goods in custody of Massada, a well to Rome. defenced Citty of Idumea: which being done, he went thorow Egypt to Rome, euen in the worst time of all the world.

Phaselus, brother to Herode, doubting the cruelty of Antigonus, because he was without armes, and bound; ranne his head (with great violence) diuers times a himfelfe. gainst the wall, and by that meanes slew himselfe.

Antigonus, not contented with the difpoyling Hyrcanus of the High-priesthoode, caused him beside to become the cruely deformed, by cutting off his eares, feat-of one bro ing left he should afterward attain to the ther to ano-Priesthood againe. For it was not lawfull, that any gelded man, or defective in any limbe or member of body should administer in facrificing. Moreouer, distrufting that he had not sufficiently enough prouided for his owne fecurity; hee deliuered Hyrcanus captine to the Parthians, to carry him out of Iudea, as farre as poffibly they could.

The flight of Herod being come to the haucce of the barbarous notice of the barbarous vnciuile people, multitude,& the stronger in many encounters, not on- and they singularly displeased for the wo- Hyrcanus led

Hyrcanus led

Chap.10.

Hyrcanus denered by K. Phraates, and ent into Ba-

The spoyle &

bloody murdering of the Almone ans by Herode.

tertained by

The spoile & | men: which Antigonius formerly had promiled to them; pilled and spoyled the citty and the pallace royall. And yet not fatisfied with this booty, robbed many places about Ierusalem, without leaving any thing behinde them. And after they had ordained Antigonus King of Ierufalem: they withdrew their armed troups home into their owne countrey, leading Hyrcanus (the foueraigne Sacrificer) along

with them captine. It was not long after, that Phraates king of the Parthians, beeing informed of the nobilitie whereof he was descended; did fet him at libertie, and fent him into Babylon, to be President ouer the Iewes inhabiting there, where, for about fine yeares he was in great honor. But having heard. that not onely Herode obtained the kingdome of Iudea, by Augustus Casar; but alfo, that he was contoined to him in affini-

tie, because hee had taken in marriage his Niece Mariana, the daughter of Alexander : he thought on returning him backe againe, promifing him mountaines and meruailes, for the goodwill of Herode. About this time it fortuned, that He-

Hetode worrode, defirous to beget vnto him the coubeth with the rage of the Iewes, whom hee knew to King of Par-, this, for the return of Hyrbeare great affection to Hyrcanus: repealed him backe by Lettets and Ambaffadors, and foorthwith fent great Presents to the king of the Parthians, to pay the ransome for his captility. Whereupon, Hyrcanus thinking there would not be any further question of deferring; contrary to the councell of al the Iews which were in Babylon (who entreated him earnestly to flay there, as fearing that which followed after) returned into Iudea.

Herode wellcomed him very magnifi-Hyrcanus hocently, and (for some time) vsed him honourably ennourably; euen to the appealing of his father, and often conferring with him on the very principall affaires. Notwithstanding, he would not furrender to him the principality of the high-Priesshood, for the defect of his eares: but inflead of Antigonus (flaine before) substituted a certaine man, named Ananelus, come from Babylon, to enjoy the Priesthood. Soone after, he gane manifelt fignes of his dead-The cucland ly hatred, against all the posterity of the Asmoneans. As, when (by a close ambush) he flew Aristobulus, nephew to Hyrcanus, and his most dearely affected wife Maria-

na, Niece also to the said Hyrcanus.

Finally, after the ouerthrow of Marke Antony, one of the 3 chief rulers to whom Herode had beene companion, and fent him fuccors divers times in war, as fome fad thoughts ouertooke him, for feare of Augustus, being Conquerour, and of his aduerfaries thorow the country of Indea, but especially fearing the people (who loued him not) should mutiny by this occasion, & transferre the kingdom of their Ancestors to Hyrcanus (who only remained of the roiali family of the A(moneans) ly left of the began to lay fnares and close contriuings against the life of the miserable old man. For, he imposed a false crime vpon him, that hee would have viurped the Kingdome : and to make it probable, he composed counterfeited Letters; whereupon he being condemned by fentence of the great Confiftory, was executed, albeit he Herod caused was aboue 80. yeares olde. All his life Hyrcanus to be most wrong time was troublesome vnto him, being a tully put to gitated with infinit accidents of fortune, death. yet he(naturally) offecting quietnes, and a meane estate. Only heerein reprehenfible, that he was too facile, in liftening to fuch as prouoked him on to the attempting of fond nouelties.

Aristobulus the Second.

Rother to the about named Hyrcanus had a gallant the second, and some of Alexander: As young a man as he was, and of hote younnul and hote disposed and lively spirit, yet notwithstanding for nature, nine yeares space, he left to his Mother the administration of the Kingdome, which Alexander (dying) gaue to hir; contenting himselfe with a private life. But at the length, his mother being detayned by a long fickenesse, and very dangerous. and he (not a little offended) that all matters were guided according to the fancie of the Pharifes; by stealth made his recourseinto the citty, and conferred with the friends to his deceassed father, who had the keeping of the Castles. Being ay- His strengthded by them in bountifull maner, he ga- ning himselfe thered an army; by whose affistance, hee friends. possessed himselfe of divers neighboring places about Ierusalem.

His mother Alexandra dying, vpon this his preparatine for warre: Hyrcanus. who all the life time of his mother as Queene, had held the High-priest-hood:

Herode and Phaselus Te trarches in Iudca.

ouercome by Ariftobulus in barrell.

The hope of

Hyrcanus to

recouer the Kingdome a

gaine from

Ariftobulus.

by right of inheritance. And to defend his right by Armes, hee went to affront his brother neare to Iericho, with an army ordred in good equipage. But being left of his people, who renolted to Aristobu. lus, vnder hope and perswasion of better recompence; he had no other helpe but to shield himselfe in the munition of the Temple, where he was for fome time befieged by his brother, and finally deliuered, vpon condition, that he should leave the Kingdome and High-priesthoode to his brother, and leade a private life by himfelfe.

Some while after, hee conueyed himfelfe couertly into Arabia, by the perswafion of Antipater; as hoping to regaine the Kingdome from his brother, by the meanes of king Aretas. Ariftobulus knowing the comming of Aretas, King of the Arabians, with Hyrcanus and Antipater, went foorth to meete them : and beeing vanquished in a day of warre triall, hardly fled backe againe to Ieru/alem, where hee was (for a time) befreged by the enemies, that closely followed his footing, vntill fuch time, as having promifed 300. talents to Scaurus, Licutenant to Pompey, he prevailed thereby fo well; that Scaurus fending in the name of the Roman people to Aret.18, commanded him to anoyd out of Iudea, except hee would be enemy to the Romans . By this meanes the fiege was raised; and Aristobulus, desirous to be reuenged, affembled men, and made warre

vpon the Arabes, of whom he flew fixe

While these things were thus in work-

thousand in one fight.

The coming of Pompey Damas.

Scaurus rai-

which was

laid to Ieru-

(alem

feth the fire

ing, Pompey, having pacified the East parts, came to Damas, where Aristobulus fent him a magnificent Prefent, accusing his brother Hyrcanus very strongly to be a perturber of the common peace. Pompey heereupon appointed, that at the Spring time, both the brethren should be personally prefent, before him at Damas. Where Pompey understanding the difference betweene them, was more inclined to the case of Hyrcanus; as well for the equitie of his cause, as for his love vnto Antipater . Neuertheleffe, he fuffered Aristobulus to depart, under conditions, which he cared not to keep, but (by machinations) made a mockerie at the matters commanded him; and (indeed) did

being the eldest son, made himselfe King | nothing at all. Hecreat Pompey beeing highly offended, entred into Iudea, with the Army which he had brought against the Arabian * Nabathaans . And because People of Aristobulus had againe mocked Gabenius, hetweene is one of the Lieutenants to Pompey, not Perfan Set furnishing him (according to promise) and the red concerning the delinering of certaine fummes of money: Pompey beeing much incenfed by the difloyalty of Ariftobulus, brought his Army and Engins before Ierusalem, and because the lews would not yeeld themselues, he tooke the Cittie by force, ayded by the councell of Hyrcanus, on the fasting day of the third month before Pentecost; and in the yeare when Marcus Tullius Cicero confounded the Conspiracie of Cataline in Rome.

In the furprizall of the Citty two and twenty thousand Iewes were flaine by the Souldiers, and Pompey (with his friends) entred into the place called Sanet um San-Etorum, and intruded to fee fuch things as were not lawfull, but onely for the Soue- and profand raign Sacrificer. And vnderstanding that by the Rothere were great fummes of Golde and gold money in the Treasury, and twelue tuns of filuer coyne; without taking anie thing, he departed thence, and commanded the place to be purified againe. Hee restored Hyrcanus to the high-priesthood, and caused the authors of the warre to be beheaded, who had bene motiues to the rebellion of Aristobulus . Afterward, he demolished the walles of Ierusalem, and made all Iudea tributarie to the Romaine people. Also he adjudged to the Empire and Towns of Rome, the Citties and Townes of the of the Afre-As moneans, which were take before from the Kings of Syria: restoring also such to pire of the Bo libertie, as in times past had lived in free- mane people. dome . By this meanes hee locked up the nation of the Icws within narrow limits, that before had extended their dominion very farre.

At his departure, hee left two legions in Iudea, vnder the conduction of Scaurus, taking Aristobulus captine, with A. lexander and Antigonus his two fonnes, to leade them home in triumph : but Alexander (having deceived his keepers) escaped by the way. Here was the beginning of the seruitude of the Iewish nation, who were thus enthralled to the power of the Judesbrought Romaines . The discord of two brethren into flauciy gaue the first occasion of this calamitie: by the different of a brethern

Christ; foure yeares before that Aristobulus (his Mother dead, and his Brother Hyrcanus dejected from the feate Royall) had taken the Kingdome of Indea. Saint lerome writeth, that Iskin, father to the euer-bleffed Virgin Marie, was borne the fame yeare that Ierufalem was surprized.

Chap. 10.

A towne on the edge of

three score yeares before the nativitie of

I thought it fit also, to infert heere the fad iffue and fuccesse of Pompey, conside. ring, that it feemed to be done dininely, that hee should be murdered face to face the place which hee had profaned, aswell by effusion of bloud, as by foolish audaciousnesse. For, soureteene yeares after the taking of Ierusalem, being vanquished by Cafar in the battaile of Pharfalia, and thinking to faue himfelfe by flying to the Sonne of Ptolomie the Fleutster, whom he had recommended to the Romaine Senate, when he was chased and banished out of his Kingdome neare to * Pelusium, coming foorth of a small Barke, and aged about three score yeares; he was flaine by

thought, Virgill wrote these verses on his A great Truncklying wpon the Sea shore, A bodie without head; a headlying

the command of King Ptolomy, in the pre-

sence of his wife Cornelia. And, as it is

Farre from the (boulders. Relusium is distant from Ierusalem, a litle more then thirtie Germaine miles, but iust confronting it, according to the calculation of Ptolamie . Sequen weares after the furprizing of terufalem, A iftobulus, being escaped from imprisonment at Kome; came into Indea with his other Sonne Antigonus , where agains he forrified the Fort of Alexandrion, which Gabinim had destroyed. Many lewes (affecting nouelties) ranne to him, fo that being accompanied with eight thousand chosen men, hee dared to encounter with the Romaines, which Gabinius (then Proconfull for Syria) conducted, who, but a little before, constrained Alexander, the other sonne of Aristobulus (thinking to posfelle himselfe of the kingdome) to deliuer him vp those Fortresses, and to crave peace. But Aristobulus, sustaining the worst in a sharpe fight, retired with two bands of men into the most strong towne hederonde of Macheron, feituated on the Lake Af-bie where of Macheron, feituated on the Lake Af-phalista, formewhat a little lower then the party as a to eath, place where Lordaine entreth into it. In

which towne Saint Iohn Baptist, beeing a long while imprisoned, was finally beheaded. In two dayes the Romaines conquered the towne perforce, and Aristobulus taken, was led to Gabinius, wounded as he was; and fo the second time sent bound to Rome, with his two children.

Matters thus pacified in Iudea, Gabinius, attended by his Gendarmery, reseated Ptolomie the Fleutster in his Kingdome, he being expulsed thence by them of Alexandria; in which exploite he was affished by Hyrcanus the soueraigne Sacrificer, and Antipater the Idumean . At his returne, he found all in Judea and Syria full of troubles and tempests, for Alexander ranaged againe throughout Indea : but Gabinius ouercame him in a day of battell (where he had worke enough to doe) and chased him quite out of Lidea; having massacred ten thousand Iewes.

Afterwards hee continued two yeares Iofin Apr. in the Province, governing all matters lud.lib.9.c.15 quietly, according to the testimony of Iofephius. And having repayred many Townes, which had beene much spoyled in the precedent warre; he left the Army in the power of Marcus Craffus, a veric Marc. Craffus greedy and couetous man, who attempting warre against the Parthians, arrived the armie.

there in Syria, in the yeare after his fecond Consulship, one and fiftie yeares before the birth of Christ. This man having intelligence, that

there was a great maffe of money locked vp in the Temple of the Iewes, went to Ierusalem, and was admitted to the most fecret place of the Temple; from whence (contrary to his former faithfull promife) he carryed away more then ten thousand ralents, that is to fay, three score tunnes Crassus breaof golde; beside a beame of gold, which weighed three hundred Minaes, or (as Io-Sephus expoundeth it) feuen hundred and fifty Romaine pounds weight, amounting to fiue Quintalles and more then an halfe of our weight. Eleazar, Guardian of the Temple, deliuered that beame to Craffus very willingly, because he had promised and protested by oathe, that hee would not touch any treasure of the Temple, no more then Pompey had done tenne yeares

Now, concerning this auaritious Pro- heaven on confull, foone after, he dearely payed for Graffus for his wilfull periury and facrilege; beeing his periury & facriledge. miferably

Fleuister re. fored to his

plighted to E-leazas guardian of the

tred into la dea with his Armic.

Chap. 10.

Pitholaus a Iew raifeth tumultson the behalfe of Aristobulus.

Cassius takes

Pitholaus pri

Ariftobulus

poyfoned and buried in the

Sepulchre of

The feditious

Spirit of Ari-Stobulus.

milerably flaine by the Parthians, with his | andra. First married to Philippion, sonne fon Publius, an excellent towardly young man, and wel-neare thirty thousand Romaines, that rather would bee flaine, then taken; Crassus was then threescore yeares In the meane while, one Pitholaus, 2

very powerfull Icw, and friend to Aristobulus the captine; after his second surprizall, beganne to raise tumults in Iudea, and weakened the fide of Hyrcanus and Antipater. But after the ouerthrow of the Romaines by the Parthians, when Calfius, Questor to Crassus, re-assembled the rest of the Romaine Armie, who had fled away, and brought them backe into Syria, and as he ransacked the Cities of Indea for want of mony : he was perfwaded by Antipater and Hyrcanus the High-prieft, to make triall of his forces against Pitholaus, whom he vanquished in the field of battell, and brought him captine with the Romaine army into Syria, fo that thereon en-

Fine yeares after, the warre was kindled betweene Cafar and Pompey; and Cafar comming to Rome (forfaken of Pomper) tooke Aristobulus out of prison, and fent him into the East with two Legions, to subdue Syria & Iudea. But being poifoned by the way, by them that tooke part with Pompey : hee remayned long time in the Ile of Malta vnburied , vntill Marke Anthony, one of the three Monarchs, fent his body into Iudea, and commanded that he should be interred in the Sepulchre of

fued peace in Iudea for some time.

Such was the end of Aristobulus, after many mutations of fortune, having been twife taken and fent to Rome, where hee was almost foureteene yeares prisoner. He was of a factious and feditious spirit, for being moued with ambition, he quarrelled for the kingdome of Judea with his brother Hyrcanus: vntill fuch time as hee caused his death, and brought his Countrey into miserable seruitude, which proued the ruine of all his nation.

He had two fons, and as many daughters; Hyrcanus the second his first sonne, foueraigne Sacrificer, who had a daughter named Alexandra, married to his cofin Alexander : a woman wife, but very vehement, whom Herode afterward put to death . Ariftobulus the fecond had Alexander, Antigonus the second, Alexto Ptolomy, king of Chalcis, which is a Region on the coalt of Libanus. Afterward, Ptolomie (inflamed with the loue of his daughter in lawe) flew his fonne Phillippion, and tooke her in marriage. And after succoured and defended his brother Antigonus, against Herode and the Ro-

Alexander the second.

Surprized with his father Aristobulus by Pompey; before he arrived at Kome, de-Alexander ceiued his guardes, and escaped. Fiue elcaped from yeares after, affifted by an Armie, hee inuaded Iudea, expulsed his vnckle Hyrca. com to Rome nus from Ierusalem, repayred the destroyed munitions, and planted there a Garrifon. But Gabinius, Proconfull of Syria, being called thereto by Hyrcanus and An- The explain tipater, hauing fought with him in bate Syria, tell; held him a long time besieged in the Citty of Alexandrion, vutill fuch time as he was constrained to yeeld himselfe, and put downe the chiefest fortifications. Being pacified by the entreaties of Alexanders mother (who always condemned the foolish enterprises of her sonne against the Romaines) face obtayned pardon for Alexander . Neuerthelesse , Gabinius sent him to Rome with his father Aristobulus, and Antigonius his brother captines : yet writing to the Senate, that it might fland with their good liking, to fend backe the of Obbinion children of Aristobulus to their mother, of the find of Aristobulus to their mother, of Aristobulus to their mother, of the find of Aristobulus of Aristobulus and the control of Aristobulus of Aristobulus and the control of Aristobulus of Aristobulus and the control of Aristobulus and t because he had made such a promise in name of the Senate; in regarde that that valiant woman, had euermore také good pare with the Romaines.

The Senate was willing heerein to gratifie Gabinius, but Alexander, being returned into Iudea; returned bad recompence to Gabinius, and the Senate, for the great grace which they had granted him. For, feeing Gabinius to be hindred in Egypt, by much trouble (as hath already beene faid) being fauored with thirty thousand men: againe he ftroue to fubiugate Iudea, and tallofder cruelly murdered all the Romaine Souldi-anderto 0 ers, that he could finde in the garrifons of binius and the furprized Cities. For which cruelty, Senate, hee payed the just punishment about fine veares after.

Gabinius being returned into Iudea, laboured first to appeale these matters with Antipater: but no way preuayling, he vni ted the forces of the Romaine Armie; giuing aviolent and dangerous encounter to Alexander, wherein ten thousand Iemes loft their lines, and the rest driven all in route. Alexander strining to saue himselfe, and feeing his attempts fo often times frustrated and his forces broken lay close hidden for a while vntill he vnderstoode. that civile warre was kindled betweene Pompey and Cafar, and his father Aristo. bulus (deliuered out of prison) came thither with two legions. Then he bestirred himselfe to leuy Souldiers also; but was taken in Syria, euen vpon the very beginning of his enterprise, and led to Antioche to Scipio. Before him the Romanes accused him of cruelty, which he had vied against the Romaine Souldiers in the Garrisons: whereuppon, by Commaund received from Pompey, hee was beheaded before Scipio, who then helde Syria, fome few moneths after the death of his father Aristobulus; forty fixe yeares before the Natinity of Christ; and the selfe same yeare as Pompey was flaine in Egypt, as hath bin

This Alexander had these children by Alexandra, daughter to Hyrcanus the fe-

Wistobulus the third.

Alexanders

Alexander

accused of crueltie be-

Mariana, whom Herod after espoused But we shall speake hereafter of Alex-

anders children, because I am desirous first to relate somwhat, concerning the a-Ctions & fortuns of his brother Antigonis. Antigonus, the last sonne to Aristobulus

the 2. was twice taken with his father, and fent to Rome: once by Pompey, and another time by Gabinius. But then (by the fauour of the Senate) he was returned into Iudea with his brother Alexander ; & spent some time with his Mother in the City of Ascalon . Then hee went to Ptolomy, (Lord of Chalcis) his kinfeman, who refuled to affift the fool-hardy and vnhappy attempts of his brother Alexander, for feare of the Romanes. But after the death of his father and brother, when as Iulius Cafar had finished the war of Alexandria, & was come into Spaine: he presented himselfe before him in al humility, and made a great complaint, aswell of the pittifull ouerthrow of his father Aristobulus, as also of his brother ther Alexander, both being cruelly flaine by the partakers with Pompey.

He further proceeded, and taxed Antipater with vniust governing, who becing but of a meane descent, and a stranger: had (neueriheleffe) vfurped the kingdome of the Iswes, and had left nothing to Hyrcanus, but the filly name of Soueraigne Sacrificer, doing all at his owne pleafure, to establish the power of his children, and pretending to take away the principalitie from the lewith : the people (of the royall family of the Asmoneans) thereby to tranf- The allegation ferre it to his Sonnes. He faid, that him- onsimerred felfe was the onely man left, to whom the against Anti-Lawfull fuccession of the kingdome apper tained; who notwithstanding, being spoiled of his hereditarie dignity, was forced to wander as a vagabond, a banished man and left to all distresse. Concluding finally with humble interceffions, hee requefted, that the administration of the lewith principality might be restored to him, and Antipater dismissed.

Whereunto Antipater answering, began to accuse Aristobulus and his sonnes Antipater no before Cafar, because (contrary to all bules and his right and equity)he had violently rent the tensbetore kingdome from Hyrcanus his eldest bro- Caefar. ther, and alwayes beene difloyall and an enemy to the Romaines: wherein, his fons had well followed his example, filling Iudea and Syria with tumults and blood: that being the maine reason, why Aristobulus was follong, detained prisoner, and Alexander had his head finitten from his shoulders, for the cruelties he vsed to the Romaines. Afterward, hee procured faithfull witnesses, how modestly he had carried himselfe in governing, and what favors he had ener extended to the Romane Captaines. Cafar beeing thereto mooued by these inst causes, licenced Antigonus to depart, and confirmed the High-prieft- Antigonus hoode to Hyrcanus; and ennobling Anti-dismiffed from Cafar pater with new titles of Dignity, he con-without any

stituted him Tutor of all Indea. Antigonus much displeased with this refufall, returned to his kinfeman the king of Chalcis, where he contayned himfelfe almost foure yeares space, vntill Iulius Cafar was murdered by the Conspiratours. For then, when all the world was vp in mutinie, and that Cassins (who was forraging in Syria, impeaching the warre a. gainst Marke Anthony) had retired the Romaine Armies out of Syria : Antigonus, affifted by his kinfman Ptolomy, and other

The Sonne murdered by his owne Father, to enjoy

Antigonus far against the gouerne-ment of Anti-

The Sacerdo tall Familie of the Afino-

agayne with fresh forces.

An office fo

gouerning the fourth

part of the Realme.

New deuifes

and machina

tions of Anti-

gonus to com

paffe his in-

What cannot

gold and wo

men procure?

tent.

neighbouring kings, inuaded Indea with put Herod in possession of the Icwish kinghis Army againe; where Herode (his father Antipater being dead) being very powerfull and strong, repelled and gaue him coming into Indea. tharpe repulse, after the fighting of a bartell with him.

Some yeares after, when Anthony one of the three Monarchs had encreased the power of Herode, having ordayned him (with his brother Phaselus) Tetrarches of all Iudea: Antigonus enraged with anger. thought it not tollerable, that the kingdome of Indea should bee devolved vnto strangers in this manner. Wherefore, to leny a new Armie, hee had found out a yong man of a fiery temper, named Ly (ahand the kingdome of Chalcie was fallen, by the death of his father Ptolomy, vnto whom (as hath afore beene fayd) Alexandra, the Sister of Antigonius, was given in marriage. As they were working vpon these conclusions, another occasion (very apt and opportune) offered it felfe, because (asthen) the Parthians insulted ouer the Province of Syria, vnder the conduct of Pacorus and Barzaphernes. Lyfanias having fent great presents to them, and a thousand Talents promised by Antizonus, as also fine hundred women, excelling in nobility and beauty; they were heereby incited, to reseate Antigonus in

Before, in the life of Hyrcanus, we have expressed the stratagem of the barbarous people, to furprize Hyrcanus and Phafelus (being Ambaffadours)caprines, and how wickedly Antigonus did cut off his vnckles eares, fending him also captine into Parthia, to the end, that hee might the more fafely enion the High-priesthood and the Kingdome But this authoritie, gotten by fuch wicked cunning and practifes, could not keepe firme, or last any long while. For Sone after, Herode going to Rome, declared there to Marke Anthony, his flight and calamitie, complaining on the outrages and difloyaltie of Antigonus. In briefe, hee sped so well in his purpose, that instead of Tetrarch, he was proclaimed King of all Iudea, by confent of Augustus, Anthony and the Senate, and Antigonus adjudged enemy to the people of Rome. And although fome Romane Captaines, being fent with Legions into Sy-

ria, had charge to expulse Antigonus, and

possession of his fathers kingdome.

dome : yet notwithstanding, by bribes and gifts, Antigonus kept them off from

At length, Anthony undertaking warre Sudurfar against the Parthians, Sofius was sent into with an sing against the Partmans, softway was tone must be to referre the redes the red the redes the redes the redes the redes the red rode; wherefore he and Herode, their for- ludes. ces being joyned together, befreged fome few moneths the Cittie of Ierusalem. Finally, they tooke it by force, the feuenth yeare after the death of Cafar, or of the Empire of Octavius Augustus, and the felfe same day that Pompey (scauen yeares before) had taken it.

At that time, as the Souldiers (indiffemiss, his kinfinan and hofte; into whofe rently on either fide) flew and murdered one another, without sparing eyther age or fexe: Antigonus, not able to endure the fight of fuch a flaughter among the Cittizens, came willingly forth of the muniti- who fenthin ons of the Temple, and fell before the captine into feere of Sosius the Romane Captaine, crauing pardon for his offences, and defiring (aboue all elfe) that hee would remit the common people, who were no warriours, and to spare the Temple. But the prowd Conquerour, making a mockerie of the fuppliant King, called him oftentimes (in derition) Antigonas, and after fent him captine into Syria to Anthony, who was returned from the warre of the Parthians.

Herode being possessed of the whole Kingdome, was advertised, that Anthony purposed to leade Antigonus with him in re-advance triumph to Rome . And fearing withall, ment of Anthat in due consideration of his nobilitie, kethhisdera or in compassion of his miserie, Augustus and the Senate would free him from imprisonment, and send him backe agayne into Iudea: with much ado, he obtaind of Anthony, by many reasons alleadged, and great gifts bestowed, that Antigoniu was flaine.

The principal argument that made Anthony yeelde thereto, beyond all other. was, that Iudea would neuer be peaceable, that procured folong as Antigonus lived. Confidering, the death of that many lewes were fo displeased by be- Antigonus ing subjects to high; as it was not possible, by horrible and extreamest torments, to force them acknowledge him the name of King. And therefore hee conceived, that there would neuer want companions in feditions and mutinies, where fuch a Commaunder as Antigonus should beare

rule, against the liking of the people.

And thus Antigonus the last King of the Asmoneans, was flaine by the Romains in Antioche, after that Herode had expulfed him, and led away his vnckle Hyrcanus having obtayned about fine yeares the kingdome of Indea, by helpe of the Parthians: twelue yeares after the death of his father Aristobulus, and of his brother Alexander; thirty fourcycares also before the Nativitie of Lesus Christ our Sauior.

Afterward, the Principalitie of the Icwith people, taken from the Sacerdotall Familie of the Asmoneans, and especially, from the nation of the lewes: fell into the hand of Herode the foune of Antipater the Ilumean, and of his fonnes, and fonnes fonnes. So that from the first yeare of Iudas Macchabeus, whom his Father Mattathias (dying) appoynted Duke of the warlike troupes, vntill this yeare that Herode beganne to reigne, after the taking in of Ierusalem, and death of Antigonus, was an hundred and thirty yeares. Antigonus left not any heire maffe, but only one daughter, who afterward was wife to Antipater, the fonne of Herode . But his brother 4lexander, by Alexandra, the daughter to Hyrcanus, had these children.

CAriftobulus the the third

This Aristobulus, was but foure yeares olde, when his father Alexander was beheaded at Antioche by the Romaines . Afterward, coming to the age of 17. yeares: hee obtained at the beginning of Neroes reigne, the hie-priesthood by this occasio.

Herode beeing fully confirmed in the kingdome, would not establish in the hiepriesthood, his brother in law Hyrcanus, renoked from his banishment in Babylon: as fearing to contrary the Lawe of God, that denyed imperfect or difmembered people, to minister in the holy Temple, and fuch a one was the care-leffe Hyrcanus; but exalted to the dignitic of Soueraigne Sacrificer, another Iew of meane condition, named Ananelus, who was lately come from Babylan. Alexandra daughter to Hyrcanus, taking it to heart, that Herede made none account of her father, nor of her fonne Aristobulus, but had conferred the high-priefthood vpon a strange man; laboured by letters and gifts, to in-

cite Cleopatra, that by the means of Marke Anthony, the High-priefthood might be conferred upon her fonne Ariftobulus.

Herode having intelligence heereof, & receiving letters from Anthony, whereby he was charged to fend him Ariftobulus; fearing left Anthony (although a wicked minded man) wold be inneigled with the beautie of the youth, and judge him, not onely worthy of the Priesthoode, but likewife of fome portion in the kingdom; Herodes cunmade a modest denyall to Anthony, vnder ning denyall colour, that if Ariftobulus thould be fent to Marke Anout of Indea, it would be the occasion of thony, for not many mutinies to arife in the kingdome, Hobulus to as in hope to enjoy a new King : Neuer- him. theleffe, to pacific Alexandra and Mariana, who he fawe trauelled fo earnestly on the behalfe of Aristobulus, and to the end, they should compasse no more contriuings, with working new cases to Anthony and Cleopatra: of his owne goodwill, hee deposed Ananelus from the High-priesthood, and inuefted therein Aristobulus: Notwithstanding, being highly offended against his mother Alexandra, for working fuch close and vnder-hand practifes: he gaue order, that shee should be arre- Alexandra fled, and more warily attended within the watch and Pallace, because (hereaster) she should warde. not attempt any thing in the like maner.

Shee beeing a Lady of great refolue, scorned this suspition and distrust in the King', holding it most dishonourable in him . to be so watchfully kept and obserued : by a faythfull and fecret Meffenger. fignified all her misfortunes to Cleopatra: who againe commaunded, that Alexandra, accompanied with her fonne Aristobules, should be fent to her in Egypt.

To compaffe her intent the more cunningly, Alexandra had caused two Coffins and Beeres to bee prepared, fuch as the dead are vsed to bee carried vpon into buriall : wherein shee and her sonne should bee carried to the Sca side; and there a Shippe attended ready for them, the custodie for transporting them thence to Cleopatra.

Alexandra imparted this denice of her owne wit, to a certayne Courtier, named Sabbion, whome thee knew to bee farre out of fauour with Herode: because hee stoode suspected as one consenting to the death of Antipater, father to Herode, who formerly had beene poyloned; and therefore fice made no doubt, but

must needess continuance.

Authoririe

gotten by vn-

iust meanes

Anágonus bribis the Ro maine Cap.

Mariana wife

ode, and his

to King He-

other wife

Doris put a

Resions al-

ledged why

Mariana did

Sabbion proued falle, and betrayed Alexandra to Herode.

No miserie

more, then to

finde treaton

where trust i

faithfully rc-

Sabbion would bee the more fure and fecret, in furthering of her escape from thence. But hee considering, that now hee

had an apt occasion thrust euen into his hand, whereby to treade downe the conceiued fuspition of poyloning, and make good proofe of his loyaltie to the King; declared the whole intent and purpose vnto him, and how it was to be perfour-

Especiall Spies and Guardes were ap-

poynted, to take knowledge of anie ap-

pearing accident, but most of all, when the Coffins and Beeres, should be transported away, and in such artificiall order euerything was carried : that Alexandra and her Sonne were both furprized, euen in the very bearing thence in the Beeres. Sharpe and seuere threatnings were vttered by the King, to the no small affliction of Alexandra and Aristobulus, to be fo treacherously preuented in the verie height of all their hopes : yet pretending pittie and commiseration, hee promised his free and gracious pardon for this offence, prouided, that (afterward) they should not practise any such attempt a-

gaine. This clemencie hee then vsed, fearing lest if he should have inslicted any other execution on them : hee might thereby runne into the displeasure of Cleopatra, who was confenting to the manner of their escape. And yet hee would gladly haue punished this feminine boldnesse in her, but (aboue all) faine he would have Aristobulus dispatched out of the way : because hee was the High-priest, and highly affected of the people, in regard of his Royall discent, and many finguler graces

Ariftobulus highly plea-feth the peobyeuerything that he did or

In the projecting of these his wicked deuices, it chaunced to be the Feaft of Tabernacles, when Aristobulus, beeing ple inthe feast richly adorned in his Priestly garments, performed the office of foueraigne Sacrificer, with fuch extraordinarie grauitie and decencie: that both in respect of his age, stature, and beautie of body, he appeared wonderfully pleafing in every eic, so that the people standing about him, showted out aloude with ioy, applauding enery gesture, and any thing that hee did or faid, with clapping their hands, expresfing the fauour and inclination of all the

people to Aristobulus, and what desire they had, to enjoy a King of their owne Nation, in regard that their hatred to the present estate of the Kingdome, therein plainely appeared.

Herode ill digefling this love to hisenemy, which he imagined would increase Herode condaily more and more; began to feeke into death of Ati all contriuings, whereby he might (forth- Robulat. with) compasse the death of Aristobulus. And it came to passe, that the Feast being ended, Alexandra feasted him in the citic of Iericho, as hoping to qualifie all displeafure in the King. Hered there shewed him felfe so chearefull and gracious to the women, as possibly might be, and (aboue all) having to the youthfull Lord, I othat the whole reliance day was spent in sports and delights of distinct the way was spent in sports and delights of distinct the way was spent in sports and delights of distinct the way was spent in sports and delights of distinct the way was spent in sports and delights of distinct the way was spent in sports and the way was spent in sports and delights of distinct the way was spent in sports and the way was spent in the way was spent in sports and the way was spent in the uers kindes. At enening Aristobulus walked with his company in the Kings Garden, where (after he had somewhat extraordinarily heated himfelfe with running and leaping) the Guard of Herode, thereto appoynted by the King; prouoked A.

ristobulus, to coole his sweating by swim-

Such was his gentle & flexible nature.

ming in a fish-pond neare adjoyning.

and no way suspitious of anie intended treacherie, as hee was thereto foone perswaded. And as he came swimming neere to the banckes fide: they threw water on him in leasting manner, holding his head ditters times vnder water, vntill at laft he Herodercunwas quite stifled thereby, while Herode inprocuring (walking by himfelfe alone) feemed not they to thinke on any fuch matter. But when and death of Ariftobulus, one of the guard came, and informed him thereof, and in what maner it happened, without any mallice intended towardes him:one while he gricued, another while raged, threatning the guard with death, for being so ouer. bold with him . Before the Mother and Sifter of Aristobulus, he Pompe and presented himselfe in most wofull maner, cost do iman wringing his hands, and tearing the haire monftrous & from his head, as if he had truly mourned horrideallifor the Princes death; preparing a most one magnificent funerall for him, and whereat there wanted no cost and pompe. By this hellish fraude in Herode, was Aristobulus the third innocently murdered, aged 18. yeares; and after hee had one yeare enioyed the High-priesthood, which Herod restored Ananelus againe vnto, Hyrcanus the second, yet living, who remayned the onely masse of the Associate and
Mariana fu-

Ipefred by Herode, and

accused of a

Chap. 10. was not fit to administer the Priesthoode, as hath alredy beene declared.

> Mariana. Sifter to this Aristobulus, daughter to

the fecond Alexander, the youngest sonne of the fecond Hyrcanus, was most excellent both for beauty and chaftity. Herode espoused her, after he was declared King dea remayned, vittil the destruction of by the Romanes, a little before the furpri- Ierusalem. zing of Ierusalem, and the death of Antigonus: hee having repudiated his wife Doris of Idumea, by whome hee had a fonne named Antipater. This dinorce was the cause, that Mariana was continually in the diflike of Cipris, mother to the King, of his fifter Salome, and of fome other women beside. Herselse also (after-

ward) encreased this hatred, because she,

being iffued and descended from Kings:

despised the Mother and Sister to the King, they being strangers, and derined but from meane condition. It may be, that thee grew the leffe familiar with the King, acquainting herfelfe but feldome in his company; because hee had taken the Kingdome of Iudea men that we reade of, the feemeth to me king Herode from her father Alexander, and put to the most vnfortunate, as well by accident, therand fifter death her vnckle Antigonus, and had also as thorow her owne defects. And that (by treason) murthered her brother Athey may be the better understood, I have ristobulus the third, a worthy innocent in order here inferted her parentage. voong Prince : Adding withall, that he had executed her grandfather Hyrcanus, a good olde man, impoling vppon him, that hee affected the Kingdome . It was no great matter of maruell then, if this noble and high spirited woman, disdained amiable conversation with him, who

had given her fo many occasions of ex-

treame affliction; confidering also, that

the eares of this yoong Lady were dai-

ly pestered, with shamefull injuries and

complaints, which her Mother Alexan-

dra continually made against the house of

Antipater. Finally, the grew to be suspected by the King, for matter of adultery (as I shall heercafter more at large relate in the life of Herod.) And Salome the Kings fifter, confederated with other Ladies of the Court (abounding in hatred more and more against her) maintayned strongly the suspicion; adding moreouer, an intent of impoyloning him. Wherein the

taking no care to cleare herfelfe, relying vpon Herodes intimate lone vnto her, and her owne innocencie: thee was accused Mariana. by Herode before his friends, and flayne by the sentence of them. Shee left fine children liuing, which thee had by Herode, three fonnes, and two daughters, of whom afterward came the two Agrippaes, to whom the Royall power in 111-

All the other race of Herode, which Herodes iffue he had by nine other wines, and in great vitterly failed. number, fayled, as shall be declared in their due places.

Almost all the whole family of the Afmoneans, beeing thus expressed, there re- Alexandra maineth now for me, that I should write the race of of the posteritie of Antipater : but A'exan- the Almonedra yet resteth of the Asmoneans, who and most standing upon the Nobilitie of her race, | was daughter to the second Hyrcanus, and valorunate. wife to the second Alexander. And although we have already fayd fomewhat of her, and are yet to speake of the actions of Herode : yet notwithstanding, I have thought good to descipher heere summarily, the wofull misaduentures of this Ladie: for, amongst all other miserable wo-

> Hyrcanus 2. Aristobulus. Alexandra. Alexander 2. Antigonus. Aristobulus 3.

[Irst of all, this Alexandra beeing but a The kingdom young maid, faw, after the death of A- and Highlexandra her grandmother (who reigned ken from her but nine yeares after the deceasse of her father. husband) the hereditarie Kingdome and High-priesthood, taken perforce from her father Hyrcanus, by his brother Ariftobulus, who had long time besieged him in the munition of the Temple.

Afterward, being very young, she was married to his cofin Alexander; and the Cittie of Ierufalem beeing furprized by Pompey: The faw the pitifull fortune of her tather, most vnhappily performed, to the

The diacrs aductfities 8 calamities happening t Alexandra.

A fecond fub

iection of A-

lexander to

the flatteric of

the Romaines

His expulsion

out of Judea

like a poore exile, and

fhamefull ex

ecution.

being accomplished with horrible massacres, foule prophanation of the Temple, flaughter of infinite Citizens, beside robberies of their goods. Moreouer, the destruction of the Cittie walles, insupportable exactions, with a perpetuall yoake of most seuere dominion of the Romaines: belide the captinity and transport of her vnckle Aristobulus, her husband Alexander, and her cofin Antigonus, to be led villainously (in derision) through the Citic of Rome, to grace Pompeys triumph. No doubt but thefe mighty misfortunes, were causes of no meane griefe to Alexandra.

Shee likewife beheld the escape of her husband Alexander by the way, who came to make new tumults in Indea: but being ouerthrowne in many encounters, and beside despoyled of allenabling forces: the fawehim againe fent captine to Rome by Gabinius, with his father Aristobulus,

and his brother Antigonus.

Againe, shee sawe him sent into Iudea, where growing as tempestuous and troublesome as before: he was agayne chased out of the Countries limits, wandering from thence as a poore vagabond and banished man. At length, she heard that (by the commaund of Pompey) he was fhamefully executed at Antioche, and that (but a little before) his father Aristobulus, after a long detention of his person, being (with great difficulty) deliuered from imprisonment, was poyfoned.

Next, shee saw the Cittie of Ierusalem taken by the Parthians treacherie, and her father Hyrcanus (by fraude and deceite in Aristobulus) apprehended, his cars cut off. and led away into the enemies land. She. in this perillous furptifall of Ierufalem, got forth by night with her Mother, the wife. the fifter of Herode, and many other Ladies, hauing her son with her, aged a dofen yeares, and her daughter little more then he: but both exposed to infinite iniuries, as well of Souldiers violence, as of great wrongs to their tender yeares, the barbarous people spoyling and rauishing

From thence the was fent (with the other Ladies) to a strong fortresse in the Citty of Maffada in Idumea, in great feare and danger of Antigonus, then reigning: where thee remayned about two yeares, vntill fuch time as Herode (hauing obtai-

all wherefocuer they came.

great harme of the country and her felfe, I ned the title of King by the Romaines) returned into Iudea; and finding there his power to be ftrongest, deliuered her and the rest from imprisonment.

A third time also she saw the Citty of Irusalem taken, ransacked, and filled with Lerusalem fin. murders, by the Souldiors of Herode and Prizeda third Sosius : her cosin Antigonus led prisoner to Marke Anthony, and afterward pur to execution.

Alexandra fawe and felt all these extremities, before the Kingdome of Herode could be confirmed : which beeing once effected, the likewise beganne to breathe, feeming fully acquitted from all calamities. Nay, which is more, the might haue ties. Nay, which is more, the might have fetled hir estate in the height of happines, forume sholl if shee could have made vse of Fortunes have some fauours, as they showred themselves in plentifull manner vpon her-

For Herode being King, had divorced his first wife Doru, and defeated his sonne Antipater, from all hope of incceeding after him; having married Mariana, the daughter of Alexandra, whom hee most fingularly affected, as wel for her beautie, as many other graces of spirit wherewith the was plentifully endowed. Hereupon ensued, that her Mother Alexandra, being The grants called to the Court, was worthily respe- uours and ho cted, and had great credite with the King nourdogeto and all other. Her Father Hyrcanus alfo the Court (already returned from exile) was reuoked home into his countrey to him Herode, and the rest (by the Kings example) yeelded great honour, as vnto their Fa-

But Alexandra ouerthrew all this happines, by her vehement ambition, fiercenesse and impatience; so that (at length) the became to be enucloped with might her faire for ty calamities, and was the cause of her tunes, & conowne death. For, taking in high difplea- renterly fure, that Ananelus was authorized with death. the High-priesthood, without any regard of her sonne Aristobulus, to whom it appertained by hereditarie right : she grew to machinate many dangerous matters, to exalt her fonne to that dignitie of the Priesthood, procuring (by the meanes of Cleopatra) to incente Marke Anthonie against Herode. Which being discouered, the yet attayned the felicitie, that her fon was made soueraigne Sacrificer : but her advanced to felfe was not in fo noble estate as before, the hie-priestbecause thee was heedefully guarded, as hoode.

one dangerously enclined, and much suspecied by the king.

She, not able to endure this intollerable rigor of the King, being thut vp from the vie of her libertie; practifed fecretly to escape to Cleopatra, as hath already bin faid, and being taken with her fonne in the very act, wel vnderstood, that she was then runne into the vnrecouerable hatred of Herode . Shortly after , the extreame forrow the fuffered, to fee her fonne A. ristobulus so treacherously murthered, might well have admonished her: that it much better anayled, to conquer Injurie by Patience, then roughly to wrastle with a Kings courage, naturally addicted to wickednesse.

Then againe, bringing Herode into

on to wexe coole; but not without cause

and fuspition, in regarde of her Mothers

cunning contriuings. Adding withall,

that her father Hyrcanus was not so much

honoured, neither respected by the king,

as he was wont to be. Whereby Alexan-

dra tooke occasion, to incite her father a-

lichus, King of the Arabians, euen then,

when (after the battaile of Actium) the

King was in great danger, standing then

in no meane feare, because Augustus was

fure in Augustus against Herode, for his

friendship to Marke Anthonie; the Scep-

ter would be taken from the Idumean, and

restored to the true heires of the house of

This vnhappy councell being discoue-

red, by the meanes of intercepted letters;

was the cause of putting to death the

good olde Hyreanus, aged foure score

yeares, and bringing Alexandra into the

very depth of forrowes. Neuerthelesse,

her fromak froken with fo many wounds;

and, even hardned (as it were) against all

grieuances whatfocuer, was scarcely sen-

lible of any of these oppressions; after the

loffe of fo many neare kinred, dispatched

by diners kindes of strange and vinworthy

deaths. Among whom, her husband A-

the Amoneans.

danger, by accusing him before Anthony, for the murdering of her fonne : she won nothing thereby, but much more contempt and hatred in the King. Infomuch, that her daughter (otherwise choicely cherished by the King) found his affecti-

hight to Cl

whight from gainft Herode, advising him to flic to Ma-

quitor in the Conquerour. For the wily woman did day at A dium thinke, that if the could procure displea-

Hyrcanus pu to death be ing aged, 80

lexander , and Antigonus his Lrother were | The kinred of beheaded. Her vnckle Arytobulus, who was likewise her father in law, was poiso-dinersmanned : her onely fonne Aristobulus trayte- neis. roufly drowned, by the procurement of Herode. Her father Hyrcanus (fo neare to his graue) dispatched by an ignominious infliction.

Her onely daughter Mariana remay- Mariana most ned, who beeing married to the King, gainst the might somewhat comfort her in these ex- king herhus. tremities. But this violent woman, fwel- band. ling in hatred against the King, declared herfelfe most strangely troublesome vnto her husband, by continuall reproaching the Idumean house, and complaying of the Kings horrible cruelties : So that, after she became to be suspected of adulterie; and a falle crime imposed on her, that the practifed to poison her husband : He. rode was the easier wonne to her death, albeit he loued her intirely, and the had borne him fiue children.

mitie, in the miserable & voworthie death and voconofher daughter; Alexandra could not yet querable coube conquered, neyther understand, how rage. many incumbrances her accempts turned by misfortunes to her and hers; yearto many other that truely pittied her indif. cretion. Nor could the be admonished. moderately to beare precedent and prefent mishaps (whereof continually thee gaue the occasion) but rather prouoked nouell extreamities, by her impatience and pecuish folly : for, after the execution of Mariana, Doris, mother to Antipater, and formerly dinorced : fix yeares after was recalled to the Court, and her wonted lodging in the Kings Chamber, Herode recaland it appeared, that her sonne Antipater led home to Court his former dimored mer dimored

cluded quite. Alexandra perceiving, that the onely remayned of the Asmonean royall family, and that the was to take care of hir daughters children: affected rather to runne into extreamity, then after fuch frequent causes of griefe, to line in the despite and contempt of Doris, Salome and Antipater, who was to reigne after his father, and to Such yikesom fee the same Antipater, borne of Doris the and offensive Idumean, and not noble (cuen when He- fights as Alex rode lived but in private condition) to be able to indure

after him, and the sonnes of Mariana ex-

Now, notwithstanding so great cala- A woman of

ned by the King, in hope of fucceeding wife Doris.

preferred

Hard and wo full extremities for a Ladie to fuffer and endure,

Her imprilon ment with o ther Ladies in Indumea.

She laboured

tilons to re-

Her endeuors

for advancing

ters children

to the king-

Herode veri

icalous of any

that affected

his kingdome

dome.

her daugh-

Chap. 12.

laid upon lo-fephus the hi-doria, for not juftly nubring the foueraign

ly of lefus the

fonne of lofe-dech and how

Herodes reigning. Hereupon, the began to confider on some apt opportunitie, to exploit a certaine desseigne, which shee imagined to be divinely instructed to hir foulc; in regard that the King (being very greatly perplexed in mind, grieued extraordinarily for his wifes execution) was ficke; even to death, in the citty of Samaria: which made her (by faire promises) follicite the Kings Garrisons to renolt from him, whereof there were two, one in the Cittie, the other in the Temple, and these beeing reduced to partake with uolt from him her, it would be a very casie way for her

to enjoy the Kingdome.

Alexandra exhorted those warrelike bands by faithful messengers (considering the incertitude of the Kings life, or rather the affurance of his death:) to possesse themselues of the Pallace, before that Antipater, or any other should inuade the kingdome, and to preferue the fucceffion thereof, for the fonnes of Herode by his Queene Mariana, till they came to lawfull age, because they were the legittimate heires, and the Kingdome (by right) belonged to them. But the Souldiors, hauing duely confidered on the matter among themselues: concluded, not to follow the perillous and ill-aduised councell of this audacious woman, whom they knew to be most maliciously enclined to the King . For (indeede) they greatly feared the Kings dangerous nature, most couctous of reigning and commanding, and accustomed to renenge (very seuerely) any attempts, in fuch as hee held the least fuspition of, beeing any way affected to the kingdome : as he witneffed most euidently, in the punishments inflicted upon his owne children.

One of the Souldiers thinking, that by reuealing the aduice of this woman, hee fhould winne great grace and fauour of the King: poafted to Samaria, and there disclosed to the sicke King, all the machination of his mother in law; which grew the more tedious to Herode, in regarde of very impatiently enduring the anguish of his difeate : and therefore (wholly ouercome with rage and choller) heefent instant commaund to Ierusalem, forthwith to put his mother in law Alexandra to death, as a trayterous confpitator against

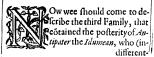
preferred the fons of Mariana, who was a | his life; and it was accordingly perfour-Queene, and they borne in the time of

Thus after infinite calamities, Alexandra ended her dayes in this tragicall maner; for, being neuer contented with any present fortune, she daily begate nouell miseries, one still in the necke of another, only through dittafting any initiant condi-tion. Otherwise, she was a woman graue, autoriting only through distasting any instant condidiscreet and ingenious, but ouer violently given vp to ambition, hatred and an- which short-inch the red her date! ger (very vile and bad councellers) more then needed. She had out-gone the compasse of three score yeares, when she was thus put to death; and so became the family of the Asmoneans quite extinct : but onely what remained in the heires of Mariana, deriued from an Idumean father.

Let this Discourse suffice, concerning the noble house of the Asmoneans, which from a finall beginning (in the defence of a most honest and good cause) became a most honest and good cause) became exalted to sourcaigne glory and dignity, the mole so by their owne industry, but (more especial Admostration) ally) the helpe of heaven. Afterward, hauing left the principall cause, they began to feeke after power and riches, according to the fashion of Pagan Kings, and to ftirre in many vnnecessarie matters: partly trusting to their owne might, and partly relying on the affiftance of strangers. Whereon ensued, that, being first distracted by domesticke discordes. and next, admitting entrance to strange enemies: they beganne (by little and lit- The whole tle) to diminish; and finally, to leane the other leading to leave the whole possession of the Iewish kingdome, kingdome to the dominion of ftrangers. Euen after den oue to they had held the principality of the people, from Indas Macchabeus, vnto the beginning of Herodes kingdome, for an hundred and thirty yeares, and hadkept the High-priefthoode an hundred and feuenteene yeares.

CHAP. XI.

Abriefe entrance into the description of the posteritie of Antipater, holding the principalitie of Iudea, but not the High-priest-



differently) held the principalitie of Judea, but not the foueraigne Sacrificers Office (for it was not lawfull, that so sacred a charge should bee administred by strangers) vntill the destruction of the Cittie, and the Temple of Ierusalem.

For the High-priesthoode was in the hands of others, who indeed were lewes; but yet of diners and obscure Families, enstalled by Herode and the Romaines, cyther by fauour or rewards.

It is no easie matter to describe their fuccession, neither doe I hold it any way necessary for this discourse : considering that afterward, the foueraigne Sacrificers were neuer potent or powerfull; and befide, the fourraigne gouernement remained in the hands of Romaine Captaynes and Princes.

In fephus also was not very carefull, curioully to number the fourraigne Sacrificers; but rather fatisfieth himfelfe, with declaring, that in the kingdom of Herode, accounting from his reigne, vntill the de-Aruction of the lewish nation; there had beene nine and twentie High-priests, which space of time continued litle more then an hundred yeares. For from the beginning of Herodes reigne, vnto the fecond yeare of the Empire of Vespasian, I finde by computation, an hundred and fixe yeares.

But in the first Familie of Iefus, which held the High-priesthoode, after their returne from Babylon, vntill the time of And tiochus the Noble; there are accounted fifteene foueraigne Sacrificers onely, although the time was thrice as long as the latter. For, as we have already elsewhere related, that from the first yeare of Cyrus, vntill that of Alcimus; are found three hundred eightie and fixe yeares, or thereabout. The cause of this multiplicitie of High-priefts, grew by so often and frequent changes, one still defeating and ouerthrowing another : one while by the power of money, fauour, or both; another while by might, and affiftance of eThe third Family.

CHAP. XII.

Concerning the Posteritie of Antipater the Idumean of Ascalon, transferring the High-priesthoode (at their pleasure) to frangers : having violently got it from the Asmoneans, and held the principalitie of the lewish people, untill the destru-Ction of Ierusalem, under the reigne of Ve/pafian.



Dumea is the vtmost part of the Land of Canaan, confining Exple and Arabia, and closing vp the coast of Indea towardes the South, holding on

that part, which the Tribe of Iuda had by lot in their inheritance. In elder times, it was inhabited by the posteritie of Esau, (brother to laacob) who was also named Edom, that is to fay, Red-hayred. Of him they came to be called Idumeans, and hauing lost the true doctrine, and holy sernices commaunded them by God: they fell to the worthipping of Idolles, with

their neighbouring nations. King David first of all brought them into fubication, and made them tributarie

to the Kings of Iuda. About an hundred and fiftie yeares after, they renolted agayne vnder Ioram King of Inda, fonne to Iehofaphat, and rebelled against the Iewes, divided into two

kingdomes. And although the succeeding Kings compelled them divers times, to vnder-goe againe their former feruilitie: vet notwithstanding, they defended their libertie by armes, vntill fuch time as Iudas was led captine into Babylon. And then, they tooke many Citties from the Iewes: which afterward (by the Edict of King Darius) they were enforced to reftore vnto them agayne, when they were returned from Babylon.

Not long after, John Hyrcanus, fonne to Simon the Asmonean, hauing ouercome them in a very difficult warre: constrayned them, to make profession of the same doctrine and religion with him, caufing

brother to

made the Idumeans tribu-

uolts and rebellions of the

fhed by John Hyrcanus.

Th'enterprife of Alexandra was diffoled and the put to

ther to King

Herode,

more freely with the lewes; fo that they Courts of the Iewish kings. Antipater fa-

in warre by A.

governour King of

of Icrufa- Iudea.

reftobulus a

Antipater came of this Idumean nation, whose sonne, named Herode, having afterward obtained the Iewish kingdome, and fearing to vie himselfe with them as a stranger: would be esteemed a Iew, because (as hath bene said) the Idumeans had received Circumcifion under John Hurcanus. Iofephus thus recordeth this family.

them to vndergoe Circumcifion. Heere-

hence it enfired, that they trafficked the

Antipas the Father

The iffue of Antipater the father.

Cephalion flaine Antipater the fa- Cypris an Idu mean wo canus Tutour of all Iudea.

These children came of Antipater.

Antipaters

Antipater go

Idumea.

~ ~ ~ ~ Phatelus Herode Sofippus Pheroras Salome a gouernor Tetrarch. daughter.

Antipas the Ascalonite, father to Antipater, was appointed Gouernour of his Countrey of Idumea, by Alexander Iamnes, and beside afterward enjoying it still (sometime) vnder the Queene Alexandra; he gathered great store of wealth, and obtained the principall authority in that Region.

Anaipater.

Succeeded in the government of Idumea, after his deceaffed father, during which time, he not only wonne the hearts of his owne nation, augmenting and confirming his wealth, by aliance with neighboring Kings, and Cities, but also strongly infinuated himfelfe into good grace with Hyrcanus the second, by many acceptable seruices. For he being instituted Soueraigne Sacrificer by his mother, who then ruled the kingdome. Antipater had great hope, that the fauour of Hyrcanus would (in time) aduaunce him to higher degree. Now, he perswaded himselfe, that withHyrcanus the mother being dead, hee should come to inion the kingdom by hereditary right. Wherefore , Antipaoer was very diligent towards him in all kindes of courtelies. making no account at all of the yoonger brother : which made him wonderfully

hated by Aristobulus, as it fell out after in open apparance. For their mother being dead, Aristobulus having fought with were called to their warres, and to the his brother Hyrcanus in a field of battell, & afterward held befieged in the temple: he was at length constrained, to dismiffe himselfe, both of the kingdome and high-Priesthood. And then (by flowe and politike degrees) he deposed Antipater from Antipater de the gouernement of Idumea, for his for the gouernemany good services to Hyreanus in war. mentolists

This injurie more and more enflamed the hatred of Antipater against Aristobulus, and because hee could not reuenge himselfe by power: hee incited the greatest Lords of the Iewes against King Ari-Stobulus by secret accusations. About all, he handled Hyrcanus in divers kindes (hee beeing of his owne nature, modest and temperate) one while terrifying him with frange feares, another while chearing hishopes, with vndoubted comming the chear that to his Crowneagaine. He told him that canus, his brother Aristobulus, (aman meerely vile by complexion) fought all occasions, either by close contrivings, or open violence, to prevaile against his life: for his more fecure enjoying of the kingdome, whereto hee had aspired by such wickednesse. Hee auouched, to have certayne knowledge, of divers enterprifes in Aristobulus by cuident fignes : either because they were truely so indeede, or for the more prouoking Hyrcanus against his brother. Moreouer, he shewed the meanes Incitation for and wayes, whereby Hyrcanus might regayne the Kingdome belonging to him, rabia. to wit, if they both fled thence to Aretas, king of Arabia, with whom he had ancient amitie and alliance, and who (he doubted not) could fatisfie their defires.

Hyrcanus was at last wonne by these speeches, being formerly wounded with the wrongs which his brother had offred Hyrcanusgs him; fo that accompanied with Antipater, eth with Anand some other, who not a little despised cret manner the dominion of Aristobulus; he fecretly to Aretas, and went to Aretas in the city of Petra. There complainto humbling himfelfe before the King, hee him. defired affiftance of him against his wicked and cruell brother, who not only had depriued him of the High-priesthoode, (contrary to all right and equitie) which hee had peaceably enjoyed nine yeares in his mothers life time; and not onely also bereft him of the kingdome, which by the

the eldest sonne : but (beside) layed daily trappes and traines for his life. Whereupon he promised, that it hee should be restored to his Kingdome; he would furrender to him ten Citties, which his father Alexander Jamnes had taken from the Realme of Arabia, and other honourable recompences beside.

Eng Arctas

Chap. 12.

Onias a holic

law of Nations belonged to him, as being | the people befreging against the Priests,

Aretas, more moued by the perswasions of Antipater, then all the praiers and promifes of Hyrcanus, inuaded Iudea with fiftie thousand men . Arist obulus encountring with him, was vanquished, chiefly by the valiancie of Antipater : and beeing abandoned of his fouldiers, the most part yeelded themselves to Hyrcanus . Aristobulus got closely into the Citie, and there (with some of the Sacrificers and Cittizens) kept within the fortresse of the temple, being prouided of all things necessarie to endure besieging. But yet besore this extremitie, he had sent an ambassage (in great haste) to Scaurus, Lieutenant, abiding then in Syria, intreating fuccour of him against the Arabes: promising him foure hundred Talents, that is, two hundred and fortie thousand crownes of the

Aretas pursuing Aristobalus with his Armie, entred into the Cittie, to lay his fiege before the Temple; the Cittizens yeelding themselves to Hyrcanus, and the Cittie alfo. But some Icwes foreseeing, that this debate betweene the brethren,about possession of the kingdome, would cause the ruine of the whole country; left there their goods, and fledde into Egypt. Other of the Cittizens ioyned with the Arabes, belieging the munition, and preffed the inclosed Sacrificers very narrowly; yea, much more nearely then the enemie, vfing deceits and fubrilties with their crueltie. For they drew out of the fecret Sanctuarie (where this civile warre was most vnciuilly maintained) a holy man, named Onias, who in an extreme drought and dread of sterilitie, made his prayers to God, defiring raine in that needefull feafon: and would have compelled him, nan,extreme to curffe and damne the befreged to the diuell, because they would not yeelde themselues. But hee (on the contrary) made his prayers aloude to God, that he would neither heare the Sacrificers, or Priests besieged against the people, nor

for which cause the lewes stoned him.

And when the feast of Easter was come, when there was neede of many beafts for Sacrifices, the Priests required, that such fore might be deliuered them, as was necessarily to be vsed in such solemne Sacrifices, agreeing to paya thousand drachmes for each beaft; that is to fay, an handred crownes of the Sunne. But after that the lewes had received fo great a fumme Falle and fraudtull dear from the Priests: they descended from the walles, and would not personne a lote lews with the of that which they had promised, but facificing mocked the facrificing Priefts, who were ouer credulous in beleeving them.

But the Lord God being offended with this wickednes, and taking vengeance for The inflice of their foule transgressions; sent a sharpe lews for their winde on the Corne then almost ripe, wickednes. which being vtterly spoyled, the famine was to great, that a buthell of wheate was

The belieged beginning to feele the want offoode, and that nothing hindred them from yeelding, but onely to heare an answer from Scaurus (under the hope whereof, Aristobulus encouraged the Ambassadors Priests, to endure all difficulties of the fent fro Scau. fiege:) it fortuned (very fucceffefully for retas. them) that Scaurus sent Ambassadours to King Aretas, that he should withdraw his Army out of Iudea, except hee meant to prooue the displeasure of the Romaine people. Aretas obeyed this commaund, and so much the rather, because his army was in great distresse for foode. By which meanes, (without doing any thing elfe) Hyrcanus and Antipater returned backe to Arabia with the King.

folde eleuen times more deare, then viu-

ally it was wont to be: to wit, at cleanen

drachmaes, whereas before (in eneric

yeare) it was fold for a drachma, and leffe.

Soone after, Pompey came out of Arme. nia into Syria, whereupon, Antipater pro- procured Ari cured many of the most potent lewes, to stobulus to be accuse Aristobulus before him. Himselfe fore Pompey likewise, as an Ambassador sent from Hyrcanus, went to Pompey, and pleaded the cause of Hyrcanus against Aristobulus, and entred into fuch respect with Pompey; that after the furprizing of the Cittle, Hyrcanus was restored to the High-priesthood, but not to the Kingdome. And from thence forward, Antipater beganne to grow great, gouerning (well neare) all

Antipater

ter laboured to keepe himfelfe in fauour

Thereason

why Antipa-

The cunning infinuations of Antipater with the Ro man captains

Antipater

peace betwin

Scaurus and

Aretas,king

of the Arabi

and his gene

rall Caffins.

The actions

of Antipater

in Egypt, and

his taithfull

ternice to lu

lius Catar,

(being a louer of quiemeffe) left all to his rule. And fo gracious was he with the Romune Captaines, in all fuch feruices as possibly he could do for them : that he infinuated farre into their friendship, caufing Hyreanis daily to bestow magnificet gifts, and himfelfe received all the thanks and profite for them. First, he was very diligent, to furnish

Seaurus with all kinde of munition, when he was left in *Judea* with two legions, and made warre upon the Arabes. Next, being fent in embaffage by the fame Scaurus to the king Aretas: hee procured peace, in regarde of his auncient amitie with the King, and perswaded Scaurus to bring his Army out of Arabia, after he had received of the King three hundred Talents, as much to fay, as an hundred and fourescore thousand crowns of the Sunne. Afterward, he affifted Gabiniss against Alexander, fonne to Aristobulus, but especially in the restitution of King Ptolomey the Fleutster: where he made passage for Gabinius, to goe from Indea into Egipt by Idumea.

By the like fubrile and cunning means, he qualified rich Crassus, and his General Casius, being removed from the Parthian warre; fearing left any thing fhould bee attempted, that might be hurtfull to Hyrcanus, who (from time to time) was accufed to the Romaine Captaines, as well by the formes of Aristobulus, as by diverse powerfull Iewes, that were of the fame

But, for the more fure establishing of his power, hee ayded Iulius Cafar more then all the reft. to whom he performed faithfull feruice in the Alexandrian warre, in bringing him three thousand Iewes. & procuring the Arabes, Idumeans, and Iews dwelling in Egipt, to be his companions in that warre. And when Mithridates of Pergamum (who went with a great Armie of Cilicia and Syria against Cafar) was repulsed in Egipt : Antipater (Damieta being fubdued) brought helpe to C.efar, and faued him by the way; when he was compelled (in an encounter) to give place to the enemy his men being ready prepared for flight.

For these deserts (the Alexandrian war being ended) Iulius Cafar confirmed the High priesthood vnto Hyrcanus, permit-

occasions what socuer, because Hyrcanus, | ting him to builde up the Citty walles agayne: Moreouer, he appoynted Antiba ter to be Tutour of all Juden, and fent him into Iudea, honoured with the title of a Romaine Bourgeffe, and perpetuall immunities beside.

Antipater seeing himselfe exalted to fuch dignitie, deuifed also how to aduace his fonnes. Whereupon, Phaselus (being alterhisticus the eldeft)he appointed him to be gouer- to feueral nour of Ierufalem, and the neighbouring dignities, places about it : in regarde of the negligence and carelefnesse of Hyrcanus in the gouernement. Next to him was Herode, and he as yet but yoong : yet he gaue the charge of Galilee to him. Both of them very commendably performed their feuerall offices, which caused their father to bee much more effected generally, and won the fauour of many powerfull persons, by both his owne, and his fonnes liberalitie.

Hereupon it hapned, that fome Iews grew iealous and fuspitious of Antipater, Diuers lewes feeing him (purpofly) to maintaine the remiffenesse of Hyrcanus, onely for the exAntipater. altation of his owne fonnes: abusing also his riches and reuenues, to bestow great fauors and gifts vpon the Romains. In this respect, some of the best adulted lewes, and of the better fort, feared not to reprehend Hyrcanus publiquely, for his neglect and flouthfulneffe, in referring the totall administration of all things, onely to Antipater and his fonnes, who were scarcely started out of childhood. Hauing already gathered fuch heaps of wealth and cheui-fance, onely to curry fauour with the Ro-maines, that they were become dreadfull, list great to the whole nation. They bad him to be negligence. well aduised, whereto tended this power in the Idumeans, shewing him withall, that he dealt vniuftly and indifcreetly, having fo many Iewes, excelling in valour and expertnesse of armes: to reject them from managing publike affaires, reposing his whole trust in the defence of a stranger, who intended no profit to the Iewish nation but only how to leave the kingdome of Iudea to his owne fonnes.

Now, albeit these speeches did a little moue Hyrcanus, himfelfe also fearing the power of Antipater:yet notwithstanding, he could not forget, what benefits he had received by him, and what loyalty he had declared towards him, having alwayes kept him in extreame dangers. Beside, he

Conspiracie how to comdeath of Anupater, by Malichus a

The horrible

rapines of Callius in

ludea,to pof-

Chap. 12.

Thereading of Antipater topleafe the feared Aristobulus, and his sonnes, against whom he thought he stood in need of a powerfull defender, which made him anfwere; that he could not difmiffe Antipater from gouerning the generall affaires, in regard he had received his authoritie from the Romaines; who he might by no meanes offend, without both hazarding himfelfe, and the whole Country to vnauoidable dangers.

When the accusers of Antipater perceiued, they could worke nothing on the flow and neglect nature of Hyrcanus, they began to colider on fome fubtile means, whereby they might put Antipater to death. And one of them being named Malichus, excelling all the rest in wealth, wisedome, and corage, sought how to intrap Antipater, by secret plots and ambuthes prepared. But Antipater getting intelligence thereof, withdrew himfelfe beyond Iordane, where he leuied an Army, by aide from King Aretas his deare frend, with full deliberation to reuenge this iniury. Neuerthelesse, he was appealed by Hyrcanus, because Malichus purged himfelfe by oath, that he neuer intended any treason against him. This hapned immediatly after that the

Conspirators had flayne Iulius Casar in the Senate house, when Cassius (Author and chiefe, in the conjuration) was come into Syria, and from thence into Indea: felle himfelfe where he villainoufly ranfacked the Cittics and Townes, onely to get money, fo that he fold the Magistrates of some places, with their whole families, and pillaged foure great citties in Indea, felling all the Citizens for flaues: because they had made refufall, to give fuch a large fumme as this infatiable beaft demanded. As he asked of the Iews feuen hundred talents, (which fumme amounted to foure tunnes of gold of our coyne, and twenty thoufand Crownes of the Sunne:) Antipater gaue charge to leny this money, partly of his Sons, and partly of the most powerfull Iewes: fo that the whole fumme being fuddenly payd in : Antipaters fonnes were the better welcomed among the Romans. And fo farre it proceeded, that Cassius (enen then) made promise of the kingdom of Indea to Herode, who ouer & aboue the

summe whereto the taxation mounted,

carryed store of gold to the campe in Sy-

Marke Anthony and Octausus. But for the present he commanded the Prouince of Syria to Herode, and the Army by Sea.

Malichus well obseruing, that the power of Antipater fo mightily encreasing, was not (by any patient meanes) to be indured; practifed & dealt with the Tafter or Cup-bearer to Hyrcanus the High- with Hyrcaprieft, by great gifts and fummes of mony : fo that one night, as Antipater was at Supper with Hyrcanus, the Tafter povio- his Fafter. ned him; albeit the fayd Tafter had twife bin deliuered from death by Antipater, & held his life of him . Thus was Antipater murdred, in the yere following the death of Iulius Cafar, he being (vndoubtedly) a man very excellent, wife, and provident. Some imagined, that Hyrcanus was not

ignorant of the deed doing, or (at leaft) it was not doone in any despight of him: although Antipater by the means of Pompey, got him restored to the Soueraigne Priesthood, and afterward (for the space of 22. yeares) alwayes kept and defended him against the violence of his enemies.

Perhaps one way he had offended Hyrcanus, that (to fatisfie the couetous defires wherby Hyrof Cassius, and to forestall perills incident be offeneed to himfelfe) he was fomewhat ouer-rude with Antipain vrging money from him, he being an old man, sparing by nature, and the more gripple in holding, in regarde of his age. For which fault, Hyrcanus declared no great distaste in the murdering of his Benefactor. Because many times it comes to passe, that some men, having received good benefites for a large length of time, and yet growing (at length) to be displeafed : they forget all good deferuings past, and resting not so contented, proceed to diuers dangerous practifes against them. Of fuch ingrateful men, Philip Melanet on, my worthy master, & good father, wrote certaine Verses to this effect:

Some men there are, if thou transport their states With pompe to Rome, and plant'ft them in the gate ! landlhons Such fauour they require not with due grace. But (like ingratefull wretches) all deface.

Not long after, Hyrcanus pavd dearly for this his foolish ingratitude, because (the yeare following) Antigonus compasfed the meanes to bring the Parthians in- payd dearely to Iudea; when Hyreanus being taken, & for his ingraled into a strange land by the enemy: well tipater, found(but ouer-late) what defence he had rea) when he had ended the war against lost by the death of Antipater, and then in

Antipater be-ing at Jupper

Philip Me-

Hyrcanus

Antipater made a Romaire Rour geffe by Inlin most commendably for fixe yeares space.

during the life time of his father . He be-

ing dead, hee appeafed (by his vertue) a

great trouble arising in Ierusalem, in re-

gard that a certayne man, named Falix.

driven by Casius into Ierusalem with Sol-

diours, being corrupted with mony from

diuerse lewes; laboured to ouerthrow it.

But this Falix was vanquished by Phase. lus, and for a while kept in prison; but af-

Next, it was no little joy to him, to fee

Malichus (the murderer of his father An-

tipater) punished for his wickednesse:

of Cassius, and by the industrious meanes

ny came into Syria, and made Phaselus &

Herode Tetrarches of Indea: notwith-

Cassius being conquerd, Marke Antho-

terward released vpon certayne conditi- found leufs

who labouring to inuade the Principali- fedition Mai

standing all the criminall accusations, al. Phaseles and

leadged by the Iewes against them. But Herodinite Phaselus enioyed not that dignity any ludes by

long while; for the yeare following the Marke At.

death of his father, the Citty beeing fur- thony.

prised by the Parthians and Antigonus:he

was (by fubtilty) taken with Hyrcanus, and

flew himselfe remayning prisoner, as I

have already related in the life of the fe-

ty of Iudea, was flayne by the Souldiours lichus.

Chap. 13.

Joseppus také & beheaded

vaine lamented his owne folly, in listning to Malichus, and other Boute-feux, against so deare a friend as Antipater had alwayes bin to him.

CHAP. XIII.

A further entrance into discourse, concerning the race and Posteritie of Antipater, for

the better clearing of some obscure doubts in divers Authors, and full satisfaction of the Reader.

Of the Sonnes of Antipater.

Phaselus the eldest.

The worthie performance of Phaselus in his charge. Ee being constituted by his Father, to be Gouernor of Lerufalem, and the round neighbouring places, to affift Hyrcanus (careleffe, and

very vnapt for administration) in regard of his age; discharged his Commission | cond Hyrcanus.

Phaselus left a sonne

Herode King.

of Herode.

Mariana the Asmonean.

Phaselus, to whom Salome, daughter to Herode and Mariana was married, by whom he had these children.

EXECUTE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE

Antipater, of whom Herode and Alex- Alexandra, mar- Cypris, afterward we reade nothing. der, both dying young children.

ried to a lew of marryed to king Cyprus, beeing Agryppa.

Iosippus the third Sonne of Antipater.

espect of his age. But I holde it more convenient to speak first of his brethren, whose actions were of lesse fame and e-

Iosippus (called by some Gisippus) the third sonne of Antipater, was appoynted Gouernour of Idumes by his father, who

Herode commeth next after Phaselus, in | had obtained the Principalitie of Iudea. After his fathers death, he valiantly defended the family and affaires of his brother Herode, they being driven into exile drawing them into the City of Massada, fended his by Antigonus and the Parthians : withagainst the fayd King Antigonus, enduring brothers there a very difficult fiege, vntill that his hisfriends

brother Herode (being returned out of Italie) delivered him and them, and was afterward proclaymed King by Octanius Augustus, and by Marke Anthony. Within a while after, when his bro-

ther Herode went to Marke Anthony, who belieged the Citty of Samofata, neare vnto Euphrates the charge of the Army was giuen to him. But going inconfiderately forraging for Corne, with fixe filly bands of Souldiers : he was taken in the Straits of the mountaines neare to Iericho, and there flain with all his men by Antigonus, about foure yeares after the death of his father.

His head being smitten off, was carried vp and downe in a mockery, and finally bought of Antigonius, by his brother Pheroras, for fifty Talents, that is, 20000 Crownes of the Sunne. He had a fonne named Iosippus also, to whom his vnckle Herode gaue in marriage, Olimpia, the Sifler of Archelaus, of whom he begat Mariana, afterwards marryed to Herode the leffe, King of Chalais.

Antipater

Iosippus Pre- Herode King Manthaca 2 fident of I- of Indea. Samaritane his wife.

Iosippus, his Wife Olympia.

Of them was borne Mariana, wife to Herode, fon to Aristobulus, King of Chal-

Pheroras, the yongest sonne to Antipater, when his brother Tofippus was flain; being as yet but young, he continued alone, yet ayded his brother Herode valiantly, managing dangerous warres (on his behalfe) against Antigonus, At the request of Herode, Amoustus Cafar thade him Tettarche, and yed him very honorably, yet returning but bad recompence therefore to his brother! For having procured him ito pur his wife Marina to death, and his two fontes Mlexander and Aristobulus heat the length compacted with Antipater, to compaffe the death of his brotheralfo. But being preuented by fudden death, hee efcaped punishment. He dyed forme few yeares before his brother Herod, and left two formes, to whom Augustus marryed two dalighters of deceassed Hirode, Roxana and Salome, endowing each with fine and twentie thoufand Crownes of the Sunne. Hee had a daughter also, marryed to the sonne of Antipater, yongest sonne of King Herode.

Salome, daughter of Antipater, Sister to Herode King of Indea.

IN her first marriage, thee was given to one named losippus, who being constituted guardian of Mariana, wife to Herod; was flaine by the Kings commaund . because hee would not reueale some matters of secrecie. Afterward she was married to Costabarus, Gouernor of Idumea. from whom the seperated her selfe by di uorce, contrary to the Lawe of Mofes: which permitted Husbands to leave their Wines for fome cause of importance; but not Wines to leave their Husbands. Neuerthelesse, Salome wfed this licence, confiding in the power of her brother : and afterward was the cause, that the sayd Costabarus dyed miserably. Finally, in despight of her selfe-will, Herede made her marry one Alexas although the was almost madde in love with a potent Arabe, third mariage named Sylens, an ytter enemy to Herode, and one that would not be circumcifed.

This Salome was a meere Fury in the Court of her brother, and a flaming firebrand of domesticke discordes, whereon many murders enfued. For being whol- fusion in the ly ouercome with hatred against Mariana | Court of king the Afmonean (who despised her, because brother. the was not nobly borne) the ceaffed not to enflame the spleene of her brother: contriving false crimes of adultery and poyfoning against her, vntill Herode had put his dearely affected wife to death. Which being done, and Salome fearing fome revenge to be inflicted on her : be. ganne to prouoke the father against Alexander and Aristobulus, the sonne of Mariana, feruing her turne heerein with Antipater, the forme of Herode, who flood in feare, that these two yong men should be aduanced and preferred before him to the kingdome.

She preuayled fo well by her cunning plots and practifes, that they both standing accused, for affecting the Kingdome, both execuand preparing of poylons, they were condemned; and, notwithstanding all their excellent partes and perfections, they

Her firft huf-

from her buf.

Salomethwar.

Alexander &

Concerning the brethren of Phatelus

Antipater dif

graced by her

meanes, and

The bountie

of Herode to

his fifter at

his death.

brought to

his de ath.

6. Books

Of Antipaters Posteritie.

803

were strangled by their fathers com- [which amounts to fifty thousand crowns maund.

Moreouer, by her secret and subtile reports, the wrung Antipater into his fathers ill opinion and difgrace, although hee had beene her companion in all her wickednesse; plotting and preparing all the treasons against his father, whereof he had falfly accused his most innocent brethren, the sonnes of Mariana, vntill himfelfe was caught in the fame fnare, and (by his fathers commaund) dispatched

Shee, the minister of so many monstrous cruelties, did survive her brother Herode; who left her (by his last will and testament) three most opulent Citties, to wit, Jamnia, Azot and Phafelis; befide two millions and an halfe of filuer coine, I came these children following.

Castabarus President

of Idumea.

Mariana the Af- was his confine. ristobulus.

fifter to Herod, Judea.

Vnckle Herode.

by the 3. huf-

Cypris.

law to Salome, King of King of bulus. fifter to Herod, Judea. Chalcus.

of the Sunne.

Moreouer, the being familiar (by Let ters) with Liuia, wife to August us (whom Infepher continually calleth Iulia) the faid Augustus gave her the Castle royall in the Citty of Ascalon. And the received called called annually out of the fore-named Citties, calon given three score Talents, which arise to thir- to Salone. tie fixe thousand crownes of the Sunne.

Haning lined twelve yeares after the death of her brother Herode; thee dyeda yeare before the departure of Augustus out of this life, and left (by her testament) to Liuia, wife to Augustus, those Citties Theldenhol which the formerly held. She left a fonne salome, and named Antipater, and a daughter fingu- what if ue larly beautifull, called Berenice, of whom field

the Asmonean.

mentiond

in the go-

Levelle, and Markey . 1 compare

a the congestion are with

SECTIONS OF STREET

Salome fister to

King Herode.

Cypris daughter Antipater espou- Berinice married Aristolulus Son

to king Herode by sed her, albeit she to her cousine A- to king Herod by

Alexas fonin Agrippa Herode Aristo- Herodias Mariana.

Agrippa
The second, succeeded in the Kingdome of Chalcis, after his

Herode, the second sonne of Antipater; whom some doe call and can-

the Great, was the first King of Indea, being of a contrary

of Hyrcanus him from th

Chap. 13.

against Icrureverled by his father 8

bethAnthony

with a reasonable guard, and recommended by Sextus Cafar. Hyrcanus perceiving, that the Iudges were heavily incenfed by the adverfaries of Antipater, and that they would not faile to giue sentence in sharpe manner: desiring to gratifie his friend Antipater, he fecretly admonished Herode, to withdraw himselfe out of the citty, before he were condemned by the Iewes fentence; and thereupon conuaied to punishment. The yong man returned backe into Syria,

ters from his father, appeared at Jerusalem

on the day of Affignation, accompanied

very impatiently bearing the injurie, which he conceined to be doone him by the Iudges declaring to Sextus Cafar the treacherie of the Cittizens, and having received from him part of the Romaine Army, and the regiment of the lower Syria: hee resolued to revenge the wrong which the Councellhad offred him : So, going vp to Ierusalem with a maine Army, hee could hardly be with-held by his father, and his brother Phaselus; who met him by the way, and made him to retreate his army into Syria. But yethe could not remoone his mallice, which still he continued against the Consistorie: and which he veterly quailed and ouerthrew, after

his coming to the Crowne. Not long after the death of Iulius Cal far, by a close ambush, and ayde of Cassius his Souldiours; he procured Malichus to beflaine, beeing the murtherer of his father Antipater . Which beeing done, once more hee expelled out of Indea Antigonius, the fonne of Aristobulus, whom he ouercame in warre, albeit he had reconcred part of Iudea.

After that Cassius and Brutus were vanquished neare to Philippi, when Marke Anthony was come into Syria: Ambaffa. dours went from the lewes to meete him at Bithynia, accusing there Phaselus and Herode to him, because the lawfull heires of the kingdome were expulsed, and they (by force) holde the whole gouernement of Indea. Herod also met them there, wel furnished with rich and sumptuous gifts. to bestow on Marke Anthony: of whom he was entertained most benignely, for the loue he had borne to his father Antipater, when being Lieutenant to Gabimius, hee was still in warre, during the

howfocuer he liftened to the leves acenfations; yet he ordained Phafelus and his brother Herode Tetrarchs of Indea. And because the lews ceassed not to send Embaffie vpon Embaffie, and continually in great number, amounting to a thousand men in the end. Marke Anthony punished them with imprisonment . And because Anthony, imthey never would gine over, but daily intreated, that (by no meanes) they might be subjected to Herode; hee caused some of them to be put to death.

Hyrcanin descended to Anthony in Syria (already conioyned with Herode in af- Hyrcanus co. finitie, to whom hee had given his younger fifter Mariana, daughter of Alexander and Alexandra:) who was honourably ly welcomed entertained by Anthony, and confirmed in the possession of the High-pricsthood: and obtained those cities and persons(reduced by Cassius into servitude) to be delinered and enfranchifed; and that the rapined goodes should be restored to their

first owners.

The yeare following, Pacorus having fubdued Syria (attracted by great promificial in the fes) brought Antigonys backe againe to Ierusalem, as hath formerly beene sayde. great compa-Where Herode (hearing that his brother Phalelus and Hyrcanus the foueraigne Sacrificer were detained prisoners, contrary to the lawes of Nations, knowing alfo , that the lewes were affected to Antigonns, fearing both his enemies and the Cittizens) he departed foorth fecretly in the dead time of the night, with his Mother Cypris, his wife Doris, his fifter Salome, his affianced Mariana, his mother in lawe Alexandra, and eight hundred other women, beside a great company of friends, and (with much adoe) got not safelie into Idumea. For his mother was fore wounded by the way, by reason of the Waggons ouerthrow vpon her : for that Herode (as halfe desperate) thought to have flaine himfelfe, because he was ouer-closely pursued by the barbarous people, whom (neuerthelesse) hee valiantly droue backe, and quite ouercame.

There he left al his company, and fuch Herode leagoodes as they carried with them, in a ftrong Cittie named Maffada, vinder the fada, and go charge and protection of his brother Io- eth lecretly fippus: and went very fecretly (attended to King Aretas in Arabia, but with a few Souldiours) to king Arepeace of Syria and Indea. Wherefore, tas, relying vpon the love and friendship

pidoned and put to death the lews Am

ny with him.

Ezechias the Iew and his complices vanquithed & flayne by Herode in his yong dayes.

Herode being as yet but young, was ordayned President of Galilee, by his father Antipater, foone after Julius Cafar had fi. nished the warres in Egypt . He gaue immediate probation of his industry and valour, having destroyed and flaine Ezechias the lew, and a troop of thecues that wasted Syria: for the which being highly commended by the Syrians, hee found great grace and fauor with Sextus Cafar, who then gouerned the Prouince of Syria. It fortuned, that by the instigation of them that enuyed Antipater, Hyrcanus the

Soueraigne Sactificer (contrary to his will) gaue personall summons to Herode, in regarde of the Temes by him taken and flayne in Syria, without liftening to the fentence of foneraign Judgement, which Herode fone then was tearmed Sanhedrin, of the Greek only specword Synedrion, as I conceine, and con- rance by its fisted of seauenty and two Judges , who were called the feuentie Ancients . Philo writeth, that before the kingdome of Herode, the Judges of that Councell were. chosen out of the posteritie of David only. Herode having advertisement (by Let-

Chap. 14.

The arrivall of Herode a Rome with Marke Anthony.

The grace & i wour that Herod found

mane Senate

to Rou e,and

of iudea.

TheRomaia

captains cor-

repredby

golde from

Antigonus, ftill hindere

Herode.

Antipater. But being hindered from entring into Arabia, hee paffed (with great difficultie) into Egypt to Cleopatra, who furnithing him with needfull things : hee tooke shipping in the worst scason of all the yeare, and shaped his course directly for Rome; where being arrived, he acquainted Mark Anthony with the fraud of Antigonus, his owne flight, and perill of the people hee had in charge; humbly entreating him, that hee would not fuffer him to be thus trampled on by his enemies, to whom he had expressed kindneffe, and oftentimes exalted them.

Anthony reported the complaint and request of Herode, to his companion Augustus in the Empire, and both they together commended their suppliant friend to the Senate remembring the perpetual denotion & loyaltie of his father Antipater, towards the Captaines and Souldiours of Rome, and especially to Iulius Cafar. In briefe, they prenailed fo farre, that (by common voice) Antigonus was indged enemy to the people of Rome : and the kingdome of Indea conferred on Herode, the seauenth day after his coming to clared enimy Rome. He was conducted to the Senate house, going in the middle betweene Auclaimed King gustus and Anthony; Domitius Calumius, and Afinius Pollie, Confulles, going beforehim, accompanied with other Magistrates and Senatours, even all the way thence to the Capitole, where the Sacrifices were perfourmed. And this beeing the first day of his reigne, hee was magnificently feafted by Marke Anthonie: foure yeares after the death of Julius Cafar: two yeares after them of Cicero, and thirty seuen before the birth of our Sauiour Christ.

> Herode being returned into Indea, had a very difficult warre against King Antigonus, which continued the space of foure yeares : because that the Romaine Captaines (as Ventidius, Silo and some other, who had the charge of placing Herode in ful possession of the kingdome) were corrupted by gold fent from Antigonus, defiring nothing more then deferring, and neuer earneftly affifted Herode. Befides, many lewes (ill affected to the house of Antipater) moued many troubles against

The beginning then of Herodes reigne

which was betweene him and his father was wonderfully difficile, and yet (not. withstanding) by his industrie, diligence and vertue, and foftly, steppe by steppe; he Herod out. ouercame all hinderances, and possessed hinderances himselfe of Galilee, Samaria, and the very whatforuer. greatest part of ludea.

Afterward, Ventidius fent some bands to fuccour him, conducted by one named Macheras; but Herode perceiving him to be dull and flowe, and that hee went but coldly about the businesse, as expecting, Herole good. that Antigonus should fill furnish him against Antiwith fresh handfulls; without expecting Bonus belie. any further ayde from fuch Captains, he lata, vndertook great journies, to encounter with Antigonus, who befreged Samolata. And (by the way) sped very successefully, against diners theenes that hindered his passages.

As thus he drew nearer to his enemie. Marke Anthony came to meete him , and did him fuch honour as became a King, with the greater part of his Armie. After Marke An hee had heard his complaints, concern- thony acen ing the disloyaltie of some Captaines, with Herod, and vied his who(corrupted by the gifts of Antigonus) very honors had executed no part of the commaund bly. from Augustus and the Senate : hee fent two legions of olde Souldiours into Indes, and commaunded Sofius (one of his faithfull Captaines) to follow them with an other Armie, fo foone as the Citty of Samofata was furrendred.

In the absence of Herode, his brother Iosippus, fighting to his owne disaduantage; was flaine with his Armie, by the flaine, and Souldiers of Antigonus, neare to Iericho, Galileerend Alfo, the Galileans revolted, and many rebelled in Iudea': wherefore Herode returned with those olde bands, and hardly appeafed them of Galilee . Afterwards , by many encounters, wherein hee had one while the best, and another while the worst, he so weakened the forces of Antigonus: as (at length) hee withdrew into the fortreffe of Ierusalem.

Herode brought his Armie against the Cittie, and after he had raised his munitions, and builded diverse engines needfull for batterie: hee left the Armie vnder certaine Captaines and iournied into Samaria, to espouse Mariana the Asmonean, who (as I have formerly tolde you) was daughter to Alexander, the yongest fonne of Hyrcanus the fecond, who (foure yeares before) was affianced to Herode,

conquered by Herode and Sofius,

The furie of very eafily robberie and that is to fay, before that the Parthians had inuaded the Countrey.

In the meane while, Sofius being fent from Anthony with his Souldiers, marched on diligently, and joyned his armie with the other belonging to Herod; whose nuptialls being ended, and he returned to istorces with lerufalem: the two Captaines beganne to affaile the Cittie manfully in diners places. The belieged lewes had great want ofprincipall munitions, and yet notwithstanding having embraced an imaginary hope, they thought, that they mould be divinely delivered. For they continutope and perwifion in the ally vied to fay, that they fought for freelensfor their dome of the people for their lawfull king against strangers, for the Temple and Religion against Pagans; sustaining (for fome length of time) a very sharpe besieging, and much molesting the enemy by their fallies. But finally the City was furprized in the moneth of Maie, the very fame day as (fetten and twenty yeares before) Pompey had conquered it as hath beene faid, M. Agrippa and Canidius Gallus being then Confulls.

The Romaine Souldiers being much displeased at so long a siege, and losse of many of their people; made pittileffe flaughter, not onely of the armed lewes. but also of such as had no defence at all. King Antigonus, throwing himselfe at the feete of Sofius, humbly defired pardon: but he was injurioufly rejected, and being strongly bound, sent to Marke Anthonie at Antioche, where, at the request of Herod, he was flaine.

In this Militarie furie and combustion, Herodhad worke enough to do to hinder the Romaines, from entring into the most fecret place of the Temple, to robbe and carry thence the facred treasures. Moreouer, hee was glad to promise an infinite fumme of mony, to obtaine fuch fauour, that the goods of the Citizens might not bee imbezeled, and borne away by the Souldiours. And in this troublefome tempest, we will give conclusion to this Chapter; because we enter now into the reigne of Herode, and are to speake of matters concerning those times.

CHAP. XIIII.

How Herode, after all thefe tumultuous troubles and molestations, attained to the fole Gouernement of the Kingdome of Iu-



ken in this manner, and Antiques (the last King of the Association) states the enione of enioyed the Kingdom of Fter that the Cittie was ta-

King Herede

Indea, three and thirtie yeares before the Natiuity of Christ. Hauing taken order for the Realmes affaires, hee cruelly murdered all those great Lords, that had joyned themselves with Antigonus against him. And feeing that hee had confirmed and waited all his goods, as also those of his kinred and friends, in gifts and charges of the warre; by an especial Edict, he compelled the Citizens, to bring all their Iewells of gold and filuer to the kings castell, and all such money as they had befide. He appoynted likewise Guardes at the gates, to fearch all fuch as paffed in or out : yea, such as carried the dead to buriall, fearing left (in any manner) they should convey thence coine, or any precious thing whatfocuer.

Hereds cruell

At this time happened a famine, in re- A great fagarde of the feuenth yeare of reft, where- mine among in it was not lawfull to fowe the grounds. And in the former yeares past, the fields remayned (in many places) vntilled by reason of the continual civile warres. So that the estate of the Cittie was very miferable, being fallen into woful feruitudes whereof the better fort of people, as Simeon, Zachary, Iofeph and some such other tooke part: who neverthelesse, in these fad spectacles and miserable calamities, cheared up their drouping spirites, by hope of the Mesias his comming, who should saue them. And they perceived it to draw neare, because they obserued, that the Scepter was now wholly taken from the house of Iuda.

Herode standing in scare of the displeased people, by his horrible rapines and cruelties: to appeale and quiet them, re-

! lope of the comming of the Meffias', a great con o lation to the faithfull.

Hyrcanus re called from bandlment by Herode,& highly hono

Ananclus de

poled and A

riflohilus

made high-

pricft.

of Epire,

hs.

Hyrcanus the second, who lived then in Babylon, bicause he had maried the daughter of his daughter, and fent presents to theking of Parthia, for the ranfome of his captiuitie. When he was come to Ieruimperfect : but in recompence therefo that in publique affemblies, he caused him to fit in the highest roome. At the der an account for this imputation: rather pacified him by golden giftes, then any vaine and vnaudible excuses.

* Towne and Promontorie where Augu flus,after hee had conquered Anthony and Cleopatra built the citic Nicopo

fauourable and aducife to Herode.

An earthquake, which killed many people in lu-dea.

repealed(by his letters) from banishment falem; hee did not make him foueraigne Sacrificer, because hee was mutilate or of, bestowed great honours vpon him, fame time he substituted (in stead of Antigonus in the High-priesthood) another Iew come from Babylon, named Ananelus, a matter greatly offenfiue to him and the people. Which Herode perceiving, hee deposed Ananelus, and placed in his stead Aristobulus, brother to his wife Mariana: whom hee caused to die by detestable fraude a yeare after, rendering the Highprieft-hoode to the fayd Ananelus againc. Whereupon, Alexandra accused him of this crime to Cleopatra, and he being appealed by Anthony to Landicea, to ren-

The warre at * Actium being now on foote, as Augustus and Anthony prepared themselves, to contend who should remaine the mafter: Herode conveyed himfelfe to Anthony, and vokuntarily made him offer, of whatfocuer he could doc against Augustus, having forces in readines for him . But Anthony made him anfwere, that he had not any neede of fuch fuccour; giving him charge (by the perswafton of Cleopatra) to make warre on the Arabes, who would not pay the annuall pension of two hundred Talents. whercof, he had made promife to Cleapatra. At the very entrance into this war, he ouerthrew the Arabes in one day: but Fortune afterward changing her fauour, hee loft (well-neare) all his armic, and was taken likewife in the field.

Befide this calamity of the Iewes, a fudden Earthquake happened, which flew aboue ten thousand persons in Iudea: euen when the Armies by Sea of Augustus and Anthony, encountred together at Actium, in the feuenth yeare of Herods reigne. Hee having (fo well as he could) vnited his forces together againe; repulfed the Arabes, and compelled them to returne home into their countrey: which otherwife had converted to the lewes heavier One mife. wife had converted to the renes meaner calamitie, because they (encouraged by the ned to their wofull miseries) put all to fire and another. fword throughout Iudea. And this earthquake, as also the inrodes of the enemie were followed by a dreadfull peftilence: which made lamentable spoyle and hauocke, both in the fields and citties, and likewise in the Kings campe.

After these apparent and publique calamities, meeting together in fuch grieuous manner; Herode fell into a great perfonall danger. For after the day at Adium, wherein Anthony (the chiefest friend Herode lost Mark Anthto Herode) was foyled, and dying there- ny his bell vpon : Herode was in no meane difmay, friend, for feare of Augustus the Conquerour; and the people well perceived his feare, because hee knew not how to determine Herodein of himselfe. Whereupon, some of the great season people (vnable to endure this dominion Augustus, of a stranger) beganne to exalt their spirits, vnder hope of some sudden nouelty, and loyed at the danger wherein Herode was. Aboue all the reft his mother in law Alexandra (imagining the time to be now come, wherein thee might renenge the andra against death of her fonne, and retreate the king- her fonne in dome againe to her own family) folicited very strong and firmely her father Hyrcanus (now very aged and decrepite, and one that alwayes affected quietnesse) in regarde of his many injuries; to flie into Arabia, to the end, that if Herode were ill entreated by Augustus; he might the cafier inuade the kingdome, beeing affifted by the Arabes.

Dositheus, a most disloyall servant, deliuered the Letters (intended for this purpole, and fent by him to the King of Ara- vofaithfull bia) to King Herode: who defiring to bee feruant. more fully informed in the fact, feut Defithem into Arabia with the Letters, and after hee had receyued answere from the King, concerning the Letters fent vnto him : he caused Hyrcanus to be condemned, by the sentence of Iustice as a traytour, and so put to death. Some others Hyrcanus write, that Herod, fearing the peril where- condemned in hee fawe himfelfe to be fallen, and the multitude of the Iewes (of whom he was by the cun deadly hated) might eafily be moued by ning treacheric of Herod fuch an occasion, to transferre the Kingdome to Hyrcanus, who onely remayned of the Asmoneans race : imposed a false

int to the drion, and his

Chap. 14.

n what gratorable man er Augustus

crime vpon him, and preuayled fo well by counterfeited letters, that the good olde man was condemned to death.

This being done, hee fent his mother, his fifter, their other kinred, and all their attendants, as also his brother Pheroras, to a strong munited Cittle in Idumea, called Massada. But withdrew his mother in lawe Alexandra, and his wife Mariana (who hee thought could not well agree with the other women) to another Fort, named Alexandrion; giving the charge of them to Dippes, General for the finances of the kingdorne, and to Soemus his most certaine and singular friends. And this trust also he imposed on them, that if Augustus offered any ill to him: they should kill the two women instantly, and conferue (fo much as in them possibly lay) the kingdome for his fonnes, vntill they were come to age, by the affiftance of his brother Pheroras.

These matters being thus ordered and

cause and the Emperours clemencie; he

confessed, that hee had beene a friend to

Marka Anthony, and would have fent him

fuccour, if he had required it; but that he

was dininely withdrawne from his com-

pany (in how miferable condition foe-

uer by the warre Which hee then made

ypon the Arabes. Wherein he had fustai-

ned fo many loffes and misfortunes, that

he was sufficiently bunished for his friend.

Thip to Anthony, and for the feruices he

had done vnto himt. But if now it plea-

fed Mugustus to experiment his faithful-

neffes hee would make it apparent vnto

19 Mugustus tooke fuch delight in the

magnanimous confession of Herode , that

hee embraced him amiably i restoring

him to his Crowne, and afforing him.

to expect as many kinde benduolences

from him, as ever hee had received by

, on Herode finding Augustus forgracious,

tooke courage from the former despayte

wherein hee was, affuring now the post-

fession of his Kingdome the more firme-

ly to him . Wherefore hee exceeded his abilition gifts to stuguetus; as also to his

ansthean.

him, by as true feruices.

Marke Anthony.

appoynted, he trauelled on to Augustus, who then heard all Ambassadours in the merchion he Isle of Rhodes, where, leaving off his diademe and kingly roabes, keeping all the rest of royall liberty, as trusting in his

friends and the Army. Hee bare the Emperour company befide, at his fayling into Egypt; and when he came into Syria: hee receyued him with entertainement more then royall, having borrowed all

parts of Iudea.

Augustus finding so many great respects, meerely flowing from Herode: refored that part of Iudea to him, which Anthonie had given to Cleopatra : adding larged the po thereto likewife Samaria, and other Citties on the Sea coastes, whereby the Herode. wealth of hiskingdome was greatly aug-

necessarie prouision, throughout all the

mented. Herode having mette with all this hap-

pinesse and felicitie abroad at his returne home into Indea, found all things there very bitter and troublesome, by private and domesticke hatreds. For, his wife :Mariana had already gotten intelligence (two feuerall times) by the Guardes, that they had charge to kill her and her mo- forme or ther; if eyther Anthony before hand, or Herodes in. Augustus now in this doubtfull time, difpoled otherwise then well of him. Wherupon, at their meeting, Mariana by no meanes would come neare him, not withflanding all the flatteries or fignes of ardent loue hee shewed to her : reprooning him for fuch cruell commaunds, and plainely telling him, that they were no testimonies of a true husband. Herode entred into suspition, that it was not posfible for him to be disclosed or his secrets knowne to the Guardes : but eyther it | fing and pramust be by losppus, or lastly, by Soemus, wherefore he grew very chollericke, and studied how to taxe and punish her for adultery And yet fuch was the power of his loue, thathe could not credite all that he suspected, neyther exercise any crueltie against so faire a woman of great Nobilitie, endowed with all graces belonging to a body of fuch fingularitie.

At lengthi, his fifter Saldme remooned Deadly is the all these hinderances in him, and prouoked him on to an execuable execution; woman to an for, finding apt occasion to reuengeher owne contempt, The kindled a fierce fire in him of suspition, namely, in the matter of adulterie, adding withall, an intent of poylon prepared for him, which shee appropued to the King! by testimonie of bis owne Tafter or Cup bearer, whome the had wonne thereto by liberall gifts of

money.

Herods bountie to Auguond his power & ability.

Mariana in-

Herodes fuffecrets difcloching genft

lappoynted to

ches were v-

Mariana the wife of King Herod wron fully executed, for which he repented heauily after ward.

A gricuous

pellilence in

ludea,King Herode him

felfe lying deadly ficke

in Samaria.

The death of

Alexandra.

Herode crue

to his famili-

ar irsends.

to be immediatly executed, although the had beene the mother to him of five chilthunning all focietie wharfoeuer. And, vnder colour of riding on hunting, hee would fecretly steale into Caues and Dennes in the forrest, as hoping there to finde fome affwaging of his forrow; and of melancholie, hee fell into a deadly dif-

plague or pestilence in Iudea, whereby multitudes of people were confumed: fo that many men were perswaded verily. that God had fent this punishment for the Kings cruelties. And as the King himfelfe lay extreamly fick in Samaria, where cuery one was in mightie despaire of his life: Alexandra(his mother in law) ftroue; by large promises, to winne the Guardes | Marches of Arabia. of the Temple and Cittle to partake with her. But the conspiracie being reuealed, Herode gaue order for her fudden execution. The King then feemed outwardly to be somewhat recourred, but yet carryed himselfe most cruelly against those friends, that were of greatest familiaritie with him; because his sickenesse (howeuer shaddowed) encreased daily impatience, which made him the more inclined

When he perceived, that there remained not any one of the Almeneans Family, or of any other fide, to interrupt him in his power, onely the multitude excepted; hee grew to fuch affurance of himfelfe, that he did many things repugnant to the lawes of God, and the customes received by the lewes. For, in the Citie of Jerufalem it felfe, he builded a Theater and an Amphitheater, wherein were perfourmed foule and diffolute playes, huntings, and combates of Fencers, according to the maner of the Pagans. He instituted alfo (at enery five yeares end) a louft and Tournament, in the honour of Augustus, proposing there publiquely

to all vileneffe and tyrannie.

money. Heereupon, the King grew out- tayned by them. But vnderstanding, that ragiously incensed against her; and hat the people were greatly offended with uing caused her to be condemned by the these vn vsuall things, prohibited by the sentence of his friends; commaunded her Lawes of God, and prouoking many to practife his killing, as also conspiring meanes whereby to effect it : he fortified had beene the mother to him of flue coni-dren. But soone after hee repented his divers places very respectively, against all of Renet, of Renet, and the control of the control vnaduifed raffineffe, and so extreamely ambushes and seditions; as Alexandrion, flanding in defired his wifes company agayne; that Herodion, Hyrcanion, and others, and plan- feared his he fell into an extraordinary languishing, ted strong garrisons in the most commodious places.

He builded also newly (or else magnificently repayred) diverse Citties and Townes, which he stiled by the names of Emperours, or of his friends: the princibeing vnable to withstand the extremitie pall whereof was the Tower of Straton on the Sea fide, which hee called Cafarea: and Samaria, distant a dayes iorney from At the same time, there was a great Isrusalem, which he called Sebasta, that is Citional to fay, Augustus, according to the Eripe- towns areh builded or rours name. Also, he repayred Athedon, repaired by which he called Azrippion, of Agrippa, the Herode. kinfeman to Cafar . Hee builded Antipatrida, by the name of his father, in the field of Caphar salania. Also Phaselida, by the name of his brother, neare to Iericho: and Herodion, by his owne name, on the

> In the thirteenth yeare of his reigne, A wonderful there happened a great dearth through- famint to the with the out the Land, by reason of an extraordi- petilenced nary drought; which was the cause, that men & beat a great famine did accompany the preceeding mortalitie of men and beafts: during which time, Hered caused diligent fearch for corne, & brought great quantities out of Egypt, and other neighbouring Regions befide, which he diffributed all his plant (by the poule) to the people But, be- and tends cause money grew short for sitch a distribution, in regarde that the royall trea- the proph fure had bene wasted, about those sumptuous and excessive buildings; hee employed all his veffells of golde and filuer, and all his lewells besides, in the buying of corne: By which bounteous liberality, hee not onely redeemed the loffe of his eredite, by the offences done to his people, but also drew great fauour and affection from them.

In the fourneenth years of his reigne, A regional Augustus comming into Syria, gaue the Syriabethan Kingdome of Chaleis to Herode; adding Libarus and alfo therero * Drachanitis, and Batanea. Therist Moreover, he gave him power , in this A place the Cafara Images, and the Victories ob- his long fickeneffe, to appoying and leave neare to far which phrates.

heire and successour. In recompence of which large bountie, Herode dedicated a goodly Temple to Argustus, which hee builded in Paneada, neare to the fourfes that feede the river Iordane. Which Pagan flattery of his, estranged agayne the multitude of the lewes from him; and therefore to please them, hee quitted the third part of their taxations. Notwithstanding, as he could not containe some of them, crying out inceffantly, that it was intolerable, to erect temples to mortall men in Iudea, and there to reverence them as Gods: fo hee fought to restraine other by violent torments, fending Spies and Picke-thankes into publique and priuate Assemblies, who reported vnto the King whatfocuer was spoken of him. It is further reported of him, that himselfe (fickely as hee was) in a common habite or difguife, would often walke abroade in the night time, liftening in such companies as conferred together, to know what they faid, concerning the present e-

At length, finding neither love nor fidelitie in the people, hee strone to binde them fast to him by oath; wherein hee of all, he bestowed wines on them; gipreuayled, attracting some by large and goodly promifes, to give him their oath of Allegeance and Lovaltie: others hee constrained by feare of torments, putting some to death in diners kindes, that peremptorily refused to sweare. Onelie the Pharifes stoode excepted, whom hee pardoned, in loue to a few aged men, that hee reuerenced for their fanctitie of life, and which made them deare to the people. Neuerthelesse, he condemned them in great fines and amercements, which were payed by the wife of Pheroras, to binde that Sect in loue to her. He quitted also the Effeans from taking the Oath, holding them in no meane admiration: as following a manner of living most holily, and farre exceeding humane nature; beeing fingular in fore-telling things to come.

flate of the kingdome.

In the eighteenth yeare of his reigne, beeing defirous to vnite his subjects to him by farre greater benefites, and to abolish the remembrance of his precedent excesses: hee vndertooke to builde the Temple of Ierufalem most magnificent- shewne him the munitions and other

which of his fonnes he pleased, to be his may beleeue losephus) beeing vtterly beaten downe, which building had continued fine hundred yeares, after the returne from Babylon. This worke, admirable in The Temple greatnesse, sumptuousnesse and cunning, was finished in eight yeares, and dedica- deaby King ted with great folemnitie: wherein hee gane three hundred Oxen for the Sacrifices, seauen yeares before the Nativitie of

> Afterward, the Disciples declared the Matth. 24.1. magnificence of the building. And, as Marke 17.1 Christ fore-tolde, after that the Temple had continued about foure-score yeares; it was vecerly ruined by the Romanes, from the top to the bottome.

The building of the Temple being ended, he would needs be carried to Rome, to falute the Emperour August us : From thence hee brought with him his formes to lee the em-Alexander and Artitobalus, whom he had Perour. by his murdered Mariana, and had fent them tenne yeares before to Rome, to be brought vp in the house of Asinius Pollio. And the reason of his bringing them his anoble thence into Indea, was, to quicken and Romaine. cheare their hopes; that they were to fucceede him in the kingdome. And first uing to Alexander, Glaphira, daughter to Archalaus, King of Cappadocia; and to The matiages Aristobulus, Berenice, daughter to his fi- of Herodes Ster Salome.

These yoong Lords and Ladies, were very gracefull both in minde and bodie, which made them the more choicely affected of the people. But Salome, and They that fome other (who had induced Herode to dealt in blod murder his wife, fearing if they should are alwayes come to the Crowne, they would re- sufpitious of uenge the death of their mother) laboured, by little and little, to kindle hatred in Herode against them, deliuering asper. fions abroade; that they difdayned their fathers company, bicause he had put their mother to death.

Herode growing into health, by weake degrees, and thefe wicked deuices proceeding on; newes came, that Agrippa (neare kinseman to Augustus) was arriman to Augustus) was arriman to Augustus) was arriman to Augustus of Bustus came meete him, quickely perswaded him to mto Asia. visite Iudea. Having ginen him there most honourable entertainement, and lly, the former building (if heerein wee | buildings; he returned to his Campe, ma-

Afinius Pol.

Theaters erected in lerufalem for lewd and dif folute (porter

Falle accufa tions imposed on Alexander and Ari tobu lus, by Salome and Pherora

him, when he croffed to Pontus his armie by fea, and kept him company during the time of that expedition. Returning foon after to his owne home, hee found all in disorder, by domesticke harreds purposely prepared. For his fifter Salome, and his brother Pheroras, immediately accused had openly complayned on the vniust death of their mother, and threatened to be revenged for it. Heereto they added, traine for their auncient father : trufting the Romaines on the other fide, which they had long both wrought to this inof Augustus.

Herode layes traines to en trap his inno cent fonnes vpon the trea cherous Spee ches of his brother and fifter.

A man willing to credit lies is foone perswaded of any thing to uantage.

king great hafte in going thither. The winter being ouer-past, Herode followed Alexander and Aristobulus (beeing the fonnes of Mariana) affirming, that they that winning the Vulgars fauour without any diffimulation; they had prepared a to the power of Archelaus, father in lawe to one of them, and to the friendship of Herod enduring continually any thing,

much rather then the least suspition of undermining his kingdome; became amazed mightily at these allegations, appoynted some of his intimate friends, to be present at banquets, and other familiar conferences with his fonnes, to be the better affured of their words & attempts: When (perchannee) the yoong Lords (neither projecting or suspecting any ill) might vtter some one word more liberally then other (being thereto prouoked by croffe language in the vrgers) purposly delinered forth, to draw somewhat from them, in extolling the nobilitie and vertue of their Mother, which is the bounden duty of any childe to doe. Bur this ferued the turne fufficiently, for Herode to credite, that whatfoeuer his fifter had reported, was true. First of all theretheir truth in fore, he reprehended them very feuerely; next, to induce their better modesty and reuerence to their father, by feare and iealousie; he beganne to countenance, and carefully respect his sonne Antibater. (who was borne of Doris, when the lived a person of private condition) that they might thereby gather his intention, for

kingdome. This did more vehemently distaste the voong Lords, and made them now to as also of their owne vnhappinesse and ill vfage; all which behaviour in them, was imparted to their father by the afore-fayd intelligencing spies. Beside, Salome compelled her daughter Berenice (by frequent injuries incited betweene her and her hufband) to disclose what secrets passed betweene the two brothers, and what priuate conferences they had together. All daughters. which the made in much greater manner gainft the lite to the King, then they were indeed, onely by hir vile additions, and falfifications, incenfing him still so extreamely against them, that he tooke them both with him to Rome, and accused them of treason before Augustus.

There, after the infortunate Gentlemen had made satisfaction to Augustus and some other Judges, by enident purgations, teares and intreaties, they were conciled the reconciled again into their fathers grace, fonsto their father, tent, with the very mightiest in the Court | and returned home with him to Indea: where the Multitude beeing met together, he declared before them the cause of his iourney, and to what happie fucceffe it had forted. Adding withall, that (by the liking of Augustus) Antipater was next to succeede after his death, as being his eldest sonne; and then afterward, A. lexander and Aristobulus should enjoy their right, in reigning each after other: all which hee reported to the people in a long discourse, which we have formerly related in our Militarie Orations.

From this time forward, Antipater in- Antipateth fifted the more audaciously, in whetting worken as the fathers spleene against his brethren, liciously by falle, forged and crafty calumniations; betthen, beside divers other reports of nouelties, having that meerely denifed for the purpose. He being highly displeased, that they should haue any title or claime at all to the kingdome : as fretting extreamely, that their credite held more specially with the people then theirs did, for the mothers fake of whome they came. In briefe, he neuer ceassed, till (by the helpe of Pheroras and Salome) till he had perswaded his father. that his two fonnes Alexander and Aristobulus, were growne prowde voon their reconciliation, and practifed (instantly) making him to bee his successour in the to possesse the Kingdome. Herodounts Herode becing further informed of those ny friends of accusations, by such as were employed his ownered for the purpose; by racking, torturing of his fonner complaine more bitterly of their father, and other cruelties, put to death many of you faller And yet no other harme could bee approoued against them, but onely youthfull and vnaduifed complaints, of exceffine cruelty in their father; and his ouercalie facilitie, in lending care to false reports, only through the detestable impietie of their brother Antipater, and them of his linage.

hetwo bre-

and time.

Herode impatient at fo many suspiti-The two bre-hrenaccuted ons, and fiered housely with the diuells gaine by let- of his house, Salome, Antipater and their complices: once more, by his letters fent to Augustus, he flatly accused Alexander and Ariftobulus of treason. Now, because Augustus had given him permission, to punish his formes according to the exigence of their crimes : hee accused them before Saturninus and Volumnius, Gouernours of Syria, and other Romaine Cittizens his friends there present, whom he had caused to come from Indea to Beritha, a Cittle of Syria. After that they were condemned by pluralitie of voyces, he fent them to be strangled in Sebasta : where likewife were executed three hundred persons more, who were said to give consent, to an imaginarie flight imposed vpon the two innocent Princes. Arifto-

bidus at his death left three formes and

twoo daughters, which hee had by his

wife Berenice; and Alexander two fonnes

by Glaphyra, befides foine daughters,

whereof we will speake in their due place

From this time forward, Herode beganne to be very vnfortunate, because all his Court was troubled with bitter hatreds, disdaines, suspitions and treasons: fo that Antipater (compacting with Pheroras and some other Courtiers) determined to kill the King his father. And as hee was plotting printly, how he might be called to Rome by Augustus, for better strengthening himselfe with the Emperours power, and winning friends in his Court by gifts : it came to passe that Pheroras dyed, whose wife was accused before Herode by some of her owne friends, to have poyfoned her husband. Herode making inquifition after this oftence by tortures, channeed (by little and little) to come to the knowledge of farre greater crimes, and the treasons of his sonne Antipater plainely appeared.

his owne friends, and of his Sonnes, enraged, spared not any of his Court from torturing cruelly; no not so much as the women and their daughters, very neare in loue and kinred to him, if hee tiers cruelly. could suspect them in the very least manner. And as hee strone to informe himfelfe, by all his best and diligent meanes, fo much the more hee grew to be hated of all his followers, fo that (confequently)he became worfe then miferable.

Onely his Sifter Salome, was faithfull to him, who compaffed the meanes by craftie Spies, to finde out the plots of all the Conspiratours, which shee still reuealing to her brother, enflamed his fury her brother extraordinarily : making him to diffruft Herode. them that were most familiar with him. by forged tales and faithleffe fuspitions. So that Herade accused Antipater (who was taken with the poyfon readily prepared for his father) before Quintilius Va. ken with poy rus (who was flayne by Arminius Cherufehres in Germanie, twelue yeres after with Legions) and beeing connicted of the finne of parricide, and condemned; hee commaunded him to bee kept prisoner. untill by Letters and Ambassadours, hee understoode the will and pleasure of Augultus, concerning his punishment.

In the meane while, hee executed many, both men and women, as beeing consenting to Antipaters attempts : amongst whome were diverse innocents, hardly want wrongfully accused by malicious ene- workeon, mies, and meerely swallowed up in Herodes furie, as in the roaring billowes of

Soone after, beeing about the age of feauentie yeares, quasht and confounded with domesticke calamities: his former fickenesse grew now to farre greater Herods fickviolence vpon him, which made him ten fed vpon him times more cruell towards his subjects. For now hee was verily perswaded, that the lewes reioyced as much at his homebred miseries, as they did at the extreamitie of his disease. Wherefore hee deuised very cruell punishments, for matters of filly or finall offence : for hec bur- The cruel tyned aline fortie yoong Schollers, of the ranny of Hevery chiefest houses in Indea, with two sickenesse. Maisters that were excellent men : because (being mooned with just griefe, to fee the Temple of God prophaned) they had ouerthrowne (fomewhat violently) Heereupon, the King being extreamly an Eagle of golde, placed in the Portall of

lerod tortu. erh his cour-

for his father.

Forty schollers and thei maifters burned aline.

Sanhedrin

the auncient

ladges of lu

dea flayne.

The husban

The murde.

ring of the

yoong infants

in Bethlehem

and other

places.

of Salome

flaine.

the Temple, and in the honor of Cafar; a thing very coftly and magnificent, but contrary to the customes of the Iewish nation. The monstrous crueltie inflicted vpon these yoong men, was the cause of great troubles in the Cittie, after Herodes

Hee exercised also other great cruelties, amongst which, Philo the Iew recordeth, that in the thirtieth yeare of his tyrannicall reigne, he flew the Sanhedrin: to wit, the ordinary Judges of the house of Danid, and substituted other (newly converted to Iudaisme, or skilfull in the Lawe) in their stead. Moreover, he slew the husband of his fifter Salome, who was of the Tribe or Linage of Iuda, and a Sonne, which hee himfelfe begate of a woman of the same Tribe; because hee had fayd, that Christ our Saujour was already borne, who was promised in the Lawe, and by the Prophets, to be of the house of Danid.

Also Saint Matthew the Euangelist, in the fecond chapter and fixeteenth verfe, maketh mention of an other notable example of his crueltie, where he writeth. that being advertised by the wise men of Persia, that the Messias was horne; hee gaue strict commaund, that all the masle Children should bee murdered, in the Towne of Bethlehem, and all the villages round about.

Macrobius is a witnesse of this most inhumane act, who recounteth (among the witty conceits of Augustus) that hearing report of the Infants flaughter, from two yeares olde and under, caused by Herode to be done in Syria, and his owne fonne, being also slayne among them, hee fayd: That he had much rather be Herodes Hogge, then his Sonne.

Morcouer, feeling his entrailes to rot and putrifie, his bloud and flesh boyling, and vermine creeping all ouer his bodie, despayring of living any longer : by Edict he assembled the chiefest of the Iews, fuch as excelled the rest in wisedome, wealth and authoritie; causing them to come from all parts of the Kingdome to Iericho.

Beeing there arrived vpon his commaund, they were thut vppe in the place appointed for Triumphs, as if hee purposed to conferre with them before his death, of some important matter con-

cerning the State of the Kingdome. But hee gaue charge to his fifter Salome, and to her husband Alexas, that fo foone as hee had given up the Ghost: they should dispatch the lives of the mightiest lewes by the Archers of his Guarde, coueting ill beferening by this meanes, to make a wofull lamentation amongest the lewes, who else would rejoyce at theyr Kings miserable

Besides, that they should thus keepe (without any manner of impeachment) the possession of the Kingdome for his fonnes, when they of greatest power were dead and gone.

Now, albeit Salome, and her husband made promise to the King, for the execution of his bloudy will: yet after his death, and before they made any declaration thereof, they let loofe all the leafed with lewes, without offering them the least out any hum iniury, accounting it to be neyther safe done to them for them, nor the children of Herod, to obey such a barbarous and inhumane iniunction.

A little before his death, the Ambasfadours which returned from Italy, did bring him Letters from Augustus, whereby hee gaue him power ouer his Sonne ued letters Antipater, eyther for life or death. But from Auguthe rage of the Father was now fome- his death. what cooler, wherefore hee commaunded, that his Sonne should be brought to Ieriche; but yet to keepe him still in

It fortuned, that Herod (living in fuch horrible and extreame torments. with flincking putrifaction of his body:) Herod into fodainely caught a knife, and fought for lytokillian the fittest place to ridde himfalfa our of the the fittest place to ridde himselfe out of selfe. those paines.

But Archelaus, one of his kinsemen, and other scruants (beeing by) hindered his violent intent of murdering himselfe: whereuppon, a great tumult and out-cry ranne throughout the whole Pallace; euen as if the King had beene dead . Antipater being prisoner, and understanding, why these cries came thus from enery place: beganne to be very iocund and mirthfull, euen as if his father were dead indeede, and would have induced the Antipater Guardes to let him haue liberty, vpon ve- feekethio ry liberall promifes he made to them.

But he that had the especiall charge of him, fearing the crueltie of the King, went

ull and ignoof Herode.

Three (peci: aductfaries with whom bee had to

htrusteth a

cur Lord

Chap. 14. to fee whether he was dead or no : reporting to him his fonnes merry disposition. and the matter which he had fo earneftly mooued him voto.

Herode mightily offended at these tydings, commaunded, that (without any delay) his fon Antipater (hould be flayne in prison. Which beging done himselfe. lined but fine dayes after his fonne. So that, what with the violence of his fickenesse, encreasing the torments of his foule, he died: having reigned foure and thirtie yeares after the furprizall of Ieru-

(alem; and seauen and thirtie yeares after the Romaines had proclaimed him King. minioutdeath A man equally cuell to all men: from base and lowe degree, exalted to eminent place of honour, by industrie, bountie and friendship: very happy abroade, vnfortunate among ft his owne, and hated (both of his subjects and domestickes) for his crueltie.

> All the time of his government, hee had contention and quarrell principally with three aduerfaries. First of all, against the Family of the Almoneans, which hee strone vtterly to extirpate by all his pollicies Secondly, against the lewish people, who could not endure the dominion of a stranger: and although they kicked continually against him, yet finally they were charged with a hard yoake of feruitude. The third aduerfarie; more troublefome and difficult then both the rest. was his owne housholde people. For, as hee flew one part of them (beeing no way guilty or offenfine towardes him) by liftening to falfe reportes of the enuious. and according to his owne suspicions . still to support his greedie desire of rule: fo did he punish others taken in the fact. who indeede conspired against him , vntill fuch time, as beeing more broken and battered by his domesticke encumbrances, then by extreamitie of age; he payed the tribute due to Nature. Philo the lew writeth, that hee reigned fixe

> In the three and thirtie yeare of his reigne (as it is auouched by Epiphanius) under the first description of the World: Iefus Christ, our bleffed Saniour and Redeemer, was borne in Bethlehem of the Virgine Mary. At the age of two yeares, by the Angelles admonition, hee was

yeares lawfully, and one and thirty yeares

tyrannically.

with-drawne from the cruckie of this wretch, by his father and mother, who fled with him into Egypt . Afterwardes, hee was brought backe againe into Iudea, at the beginning of the Primacie of Archelaus.

Herode altered his Will three feuerall The test amer times : The first chaunge was, after hee changed by had put to death his two fonnes by Marians the Asmonean, and then hee fent it by the hands of Antipater (hee going to Rome) to Augustus. That Will confirmed as his heire in the Kingdome, Antipater, his eldest some by Doris : but yet with this condition, that if he dyed before the time, his fonne Herode, whome hee had by the daughter of Simon the high-prieft, should succeede him. To whom (vpon this occasion) according to the opinion of tolephus, hee had given in marriage Herodias, the daughter to Aristobulis, fonne of Mariana the Almonean.

After the death of Pheroras, brother to Herode, the treasons began to be difconered, and the King beeing informed, that the Mother of Herode, his destinated successour (and daughter to the Soueraigne Sacrificer) had confented in wicked councell with Antipater : hee Antipater & razed the names both of Antipater and Herode out of his Will, frustrating them fathers tellafrom all hope of euer comming to the mothers ex-Crowne.

Beside, he expulsed the two mothers, Court Doris and Mariana, out of the Pallace, despoyling also his father in lawe Simon. of the High-priesthoode.

In his second Testament , hee lest the The second Kingdome to his last sonne, named He- alteration of rode Antipas, and hee to succeede after his Wil. his death, beeing borne of Marthaca a Samaritane. Therein hee made no mention at all of Archelaus, nor of Phillip, who were elder in yeares then hee : because. by the suggestion of Antipater, some of of his friends had falfely accused them by Letters, in the time of their studying at

By the fame Testament, he left a thou- A thousand fand Talents to Augustus, which amoun- talents given teth to three score tunnes of Golde . To by Herode to Liuia the wife of Augustus, and to the children and enfranchiled friends of Augustus, hee gaue fine hundred Talents, that is to fay, thirtie tunnes of golde.

Last of all, after that (a little before Ggg 2

Joseph in Ant.

A most horrible intention in King Herode.

A witty faying of Augu-

Chap. 15.

The iffue to

Herode by

Mariana, and

their matches

in marriage.

The third and laft alteration of his teflament.

Herode Anti

pas and Phil

lip made both Fetrarches.

Herode boun

gacies to Au-

ther.

616

his death) hee had caused Antipater to bee flayne, for dinerfe conspiracies against his father and brethren : he grew into good liking of his two elder fonnes, which was the reason of altering his will the third time, leaving the Kingdome of Indea to Archelaus; provided also, that it might bee as pleasing to Augu-

In stead of King, hee made Antipas Tetrarch of Galilee and Perea, that is to fay, of the Region scituate beyond Ior-

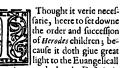
In like manner, hee appoynted Phillip Tetrarch of Gallonitida, Traconitis, Batanca and Paneada. To his Sister Salome (who amongst all his kinred) he had onely found faithfull to him, and helpefull in all his aductities, hee left three wealthy Citties , Iumnia , Azot and Phaselidi, with fiftie thousand Crownes be-

Hee affigned great reuenews to his o. ther fonnes, and to their children, whom hee left in private condition, and augmented the Legacies which he had fent to Augustus and other at Rome. But Augustus (afterwards) distributed all the gustus and o money to him appoynted to Herodes kinred; retayning nothing to himselfe, but onely certayne costly vessells, as a token of remembrance for the dead.

CHAP. XV.

A briefe Collection, concerning the children of Herode the Great, which hee had by his tenne wines, as also the order of their (enerall successions.

losephus varieth from the Euange. licall historie



Hillorie, in regarde that the Description made by Iosephus, is somewhat disfenting. Especially in Herodias, whom Iofe; bus fayth, to be formetime married, not to Phillip the Tetrarch, as the Euangelist Saint Mark, in the fixteenth chapter and seauenteenth verse of his Gospell auoucheth, but to Harad, sonne to the daughter of Simon the High-prieft, who soone after was advaunced, and joyned with Herode Antipas Tetrarch of Galilee, that flew Saint John Baptist.

He fayth besides, that the dauncing daughter of Herodias, was married to The gener Phillip: But the authoritie of the Euangelists ought to be of greater weight with vs, then to that of Iofephus, who in this Genealogie of Herode, speaketh things very contrary, which is not much to bee maruelled at, in a Familie of so great extendure. For King Herode, according to the auncient manner of the Kings of Iudea, had many wives together, in all being tenne, two whereof were barren.

Doris his first wife.

Her he married in private condition, taking her from a place of flender repute, her father beeing as then living. Of her hee begate Antipater, whom hee dis-inherited, his mother Doris beeing divorced, after he was married to Mariana the As monean: nor would hee permit her to be present in lerusalem, but onely at three famous folemnities.

But after that Mariana was put to death, hee received Doris agayne into uedintogua his Court, and gaue her admittance to agains and his bedde, re-calling home the fonne her fonner alfo : beeing fully refolued, to have left him heyre to the Kingdome, if hee had not beene the cause of his owne ruine and death, by wicked machinations, contriued against his father and brethren; beside, hee brought his owne mother into the diflike of his father.

Antipater tooke to wife the daughter of Antigonus, the last King of the Asmoneans, by whom hee had also antipa- had a sonne ter, to whom was married the daughter pater also. of Pheroras his great vnckle. Afterward hee married Mariana, daughter vnto his brother Aristobulus, whom he caused to be murdered.

> The iffue by the third wife to king He-

By

Theiffue of

Ariftobulus.

and his write

By his fecond wife Mariana the Asmonean, he had many heires, thus following in order.

Mariana.

Glaphyra, daughter to Archelaus king of Cappadocia; Alexander, flaine by his fa-

Herode.

Aristobulus, flaine by his father, left fine children by Berenice, as followeth after. The third dyed immediately.

Salome was married to Phaselus, sonne of Phaselus, brother to Herode, of whose children we have spoken before.

Cypris was married to Antipater, the fonne of Salome, fifter to the King.

Alexander,

Tygranes, who was fent by Nere King into Armenia.

Tygranes was King of Armenia, and afterward accused at Rome, dyed without

The names of Aristobulus his children, by Berenice.

Aristobulus, strangled by the command of his father Herode.

Berenice his wife, daughter of Salome, fister to King Herode.

Agrippa the first King of Iudea.

Herode the fourth King of Chalcis. Aristobulus, to whom was espoused lotapata, daughter to the king of the Emefians, by whom hee had lotapasa, a deafe daughter.

Herodias, who left her husband, and the laft; had a daughter Salome; who for the reward of her goodly danneing, required, and had the head of Saint John Baptist.

Mariana, affianced first to Antipater the sonne of Antipater: but afterward Antipater, fonne of great Herode, tooke her to wife.

Mariana daughter to Simeon the foueraigne Sacrificer, the third wife to Herode, of whom came. .

Herode the fecond, who had a daughter named Salome, married fometime to his vnckle Phillip the Tetrarch; and afterward to Aristobulus, some to Herode king of Chalcis.

Herodias his wife, yoongest daughter of Great Herode, and also the daughter of Aristobulus, flaine by his father.

Herode affecting this Mariana for her rare beauty, who was the daughter to to a filly facrificing Prieft, he perceiving unneed to the that he could no otherwise enjoy her, but High priest. by lawfull marriage; made her father Si- houde. meon (fonne to Boethus) High-priest, by deposing lesis, the succession to Ana-

Of her hee begate Herode the fecond, Herod thefewhom he had instituted (in his first Will) second heire after Antipater his elden ceeding in fonne. But growing offended(afterward) the kingdom. for fome fault in his mother: hee altered his Will, and deprived him of all hope of facceeding.

Is fephus writeth, that this Herode the fecond (who alwayes afterward lined priuately) tooke to wife Herodias, the daughter of Aristobulus, flaine by his father; who afterward was exalted by his brother Hered Antipas, contrary to all right and rea- Genealogie. fon. But (as I have already faid) this Genealogie of Islephus agreeth not with Saint Marke, who ruleth it in this maner.

Herode the fecond, borne of the Highpriests daughter, lived without publique

His wife Herodias that left him, married with the brother to her husband.

Herode Antipas, Tetrarch of Galilee. Phillip the Tetrarch, who died

without children. The daughter Salome was married to both, each after other, and engendred by

Herode, Agrippa, Aristobulus; of whom I finde nothing at all recorded.

The fourth wife of Herode was Marthaca, or Malthaca, a Samaritane: of whom were borne,

Archelaus, who by the last Testament Theissue of of his father, was ordayned to be his fuc- Herode by ceffour . But by Augustus he was inflitu- his fourth wife. ted to be * Ethnarche.

Herode the third, called also Antipas, Terrarch of Galilee; the ravisher of Herodias, and murderer of Saint Iohn Baptist : he was called also, the Fox for Christ.

The Geneaogie according to the description of Saint Marke.

Seditions and

tumults hap-

Olympia, married to Iosippus, sonne of | long with him his mother Marthaca, who Tofippus the brother to King Herode : Of whom came this Posteritie following:

Mariana, espoused to Herod the fourth, King of Chalcie, and had a fonne named Aristobulus, who (by Nero) was instituted Gouernor of Armenia the leffer . He had to wife Salome, the daughter of Herodias, as formerly hath bene declared.

The iffue of Herod by his

618

The fift wife of Herode was Cleopatra of Jerusalem, whose chil-

Phillip, who (by the last Testament of his father) was appoynted Tetrarch of Trachonitis.

Herode, of whom I finde nothing recorded in any Historie.

lofepb. in Antiquit Ind libr. 17 (49.10.

Iosephus foud

contradictory

to himfelfe.

But, confidering that losephus faith, that this Phillip was brother to the father and mother of Archelaus; I make some doubt of divers other places before mentioned by him, where (perhaps by want of memory) he wrongeth himfelfe in the numbring of Herodes children; as in the fecond Chapter of the same Booke. And that of the same mother Marthaca, were borne Archelaus, Phillip and Olympia: And that of this Cleopatra, issued only Herode, called Antipas. From whence it proceeded (as I thinke) that Iofephile attributeth two fonnes vnto this Cleopatra, Phillip and Herode: of whom (neverthelesse) he maketh not any mention in his Historie.

I thinke then, that Antipas should bee

placed for Phillip vnder Cleopatra; for because he nameth Herode also : some (not very skilfull) have attributed two fonnes to Cleopatra: euen as if I should say, that Iulius and Cafar had beene two Confulls. Affuredly, this coniecture feemeth to be confirmed, because Archelaus (being vpon his departure to Rome, after the death of his father) left all the care and managing of the kingdomes affaires to Phillip, as to his nearest and dearest brother; and not to! Antipas, whom he ought to hauc preferred before Phillip, if hee had beene his germaine brother by the same mother. But this showes it selfe much more euidently, in regard that Iofephus, in the thirteenth and fourereenth Chapters of the same seuenteenth Booke, saith: That Archelaus iourneying to Rome, tooke adved there, before the fuite (concerning the fuccession) was descided; and that (foone after) Antipus followed him, who Antipus and likewife was accompanied with his mother. It must needes follow then necesfarily, that they had diverfitie of mothers. Wherefore it somewhat amazeth mee, that Iosephus repeateth in the Historie of the lewes warres, to have spoken ill in his Antiquities: to wit, that Archelaus and Antipas were brethren by one mother.

The fixt wife of Herode, was Pallas, who Pallas, Phz. had a fonne named Phaselus, of whom dra and Elpis Islephus writeth nothing.

The feauenth wife was Phadra, who had by Herod(being then ancient)a daughter named Roxana.

The eight wife of Herode, was Elpis, by whom hee had a daughter named Sa-

Afterward, Augustus married the two formes of Pheroras, to these two fisters. Roxana and Salome, beeing but young when their father died . To whome (befide the Legacies of their father) hee added (of his owne) in their dowrie, two hundred thousand peeces of filuer mony: The bounce which fumme, if Insert it is a limit in the mumber of Augusts to the mumber of the mum mounteth to five and twentie thousand and and sand San crownes of the Sunne.

The ninth wife, was the daughter of his brother, whom tofephus nameth not. The tenth, was his Cousine germane, vn-

By these two wines Herode had not any children.

named alfo.

All this fo great linage of Herode, failed (well-neare veterly) within the space of feuenty yeares, the most part of them liuing in prinate manner . Such as attai- competico ned to governement of affaires, and fuc- yeares. ceeded in some small portions of their fathers dignitie; were only three fonnes of Herode, to wit, Archelaus the Ethnarch, Phillip and Antipas, Tetrarches, and two yonger fonnes; the first Agrippa, King of Iudea, and Herod the fourth King of Chalcis; Agrippa the last, in whose reigne was fucceededin the lewish warre, and the destruction of gouernment Ierusalem. I will speake briefly of them all in order.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Ethnarchie of Archelams; and the plea of him and his Brother Antipas before Augustus, for the right of Gouernment.

commotion or mutiny, riing in the ci-

Y the last Testament or the Father (as I haue already sayd) Archelaus was appointed successfor with royall power; prouided, that Augusta Sepleased. But scarsly was

the fathers body interred, when a great mutiny arose in the Citty, and he lost his peoples affection by cruelty. For some of the kindred & parents of the yong schollers that wer burned aline, about beating down the golden Eagle, returning to the Feast at Easter, mooning the people by their teares and complaints to challenge reuenge of certaine flanderous persons. and deposition of the Soueraigne Sacrificer, whom Herode had established in the ending of his dayes: Archelaus fent his Light horsemen against the people, and made a bloody flaughter, to the number of three thousand, beside divers put to flight. After that, the tumult was for a time appealed, hee left the charge of his kingdomes affayres to his brother Phillip. and tooke his journey to Rome, accompanied with his mother Marthaca, and fome other friends, to require of Augustuche full establishment of his Fathers VVill.

By the fuggestion of their Aunt Salome, Herode Antipas followed after his Brother, to contend with him for fuccession in the kingdome before Augustus. There hee accused him of cruelty, approouing, that the Crowne should rather bee his. then any due to Archelaus because by the fecond testament, he was onely ordained heyre to the Royall dignity; when his father Herode was found both in bodie and memory. And fuch a Will fo made, ought to bee of farre greater respect and weight, then the last so neere his death ; when both body and mind were vncapeable of fenfe and reason.

Soone after, fifty Ambassadours were fent from the people of Iudea to Rome, to

entreate, that they might no longer bee Arequest gouerned by a King : but rather that In- made by the dea (being reduced to the form of a Prono longer go.
uince) might be vnder command of the Romane Captaines (as afterward it was, but to the Iewes no great aduantage. But if needes they must have a King, and of Herodes posterity : they openly confesfed, that they much rather affected Herode Antipas, then Archelaus, who (at his very entrance) gaue them sufficient vnderstanding, what mildnesse and mode ration they thould afterwardes expect in

While this fute was thus in hearing, and Augustus confulted thereon, with fome of his most intimate friends; gree- ning in Ieruuous tumults chanced to be moued; first, ther places of by Sabinus, Procurator for Cafar in Ieru- Iudea. Salem, and afterward in diners other places of Judea. For some people (of no worth)emboldned by the Kings absence; having gathered together certaine companies of Theenes; durst attribute vnto themselues, both the Royall dignity and Ornaments, During which time, Iudea was wonderfully wasted in manie places with fire and fword; vntill (by the vertue of Quintillius Varus, who scattered the armies of the Theeues, and hanged vppe aboue two thousand, such as were cheefe Leaders in the fedition) the danger was well ouer-blowne.

These troubles being certified by Let- Herodes fons ters to Rome by Varus, caufed Augustus fentbacke to (having ended the fute concerning the ludea againe, fuccession) to send backe the Sonnes of dome divided Herode to Indea againe. But he had divi- into partitided the whole kingdome of Herode into two partitions: one whereof hee gaue to Archelaus, whom he named Ethnarche, which dignity he affoorded to be greater then that of Tetrarche, & yet much leffe then Royall power. Promiting (neuertheleffe) that he would make him King, after he had made triall of his industry & moderation in this government. Moreover, hee divided the other part into two Tetrarchies, which he gaue to the two Brethren to Herode Antipas, Galilee and Peres; the revennewes wheteof amounted to two hundred Talents, that is fixe fcore thousand Crownes of the Sun. But the Ethnarchie of Archelaus, which containd Idumaa, Indea, and Samaria, valewed fixe hundred Talents in reuennewes.

The division Tetrarchies.

fue by Herod

Jaughter of

thet Archeus to Rome

veterly expiring in a fmal Title to the

Arche-

The iourney of Archelaus to Rome, after the King his fachers death, and hi mother with

The cruel behautor of Ar che aus to lus lubicets after his returne a mong them-

Archelaus fell

in loue with

his brothers

wife Glaphy

ra,& married

her, contration

to the Lawcol

The death of

Glephyra, af-frighted by a fearful dream

Archelaus

fent for to

death.

Rome, his co

uiction and

God.

des, enflamed with hatred against his subiects (by whose accusation, hee had not only loft his Kingly authority, but almost the halfe part of his gouernment) began to carry himfelfe cruelly towardes them, and (for small or no causes at all) did put to death fuch persons, as hee imagined had defired the alteration of the State. Moreover, he highly foyled his reputation, with marriage prohibited by the laws of God. For at his returne from Rome, as he passed thorow Cappadocia, to visite his kinfman king Archelaus; hee found there Glaphyra (widdowed the second time) who had bene first married to Alexander that was put to death by his Father Hered with his brother Aristobulm. After his death, her Father in law Herode, fent her (with her dowry) vnto her owne father, where the was remarried to Inba King of the Numidians; who being likewise dead, the came and lived with hir father again. Archelaus (inneigled with her beautie) tooke her to wife, notwithstanding shee had bene married to his brother Alexander, divorcing his owne wife, named Mariana. This Glaphyra died a little before Archelaus was lent into exile, beeing afrighted with a dreame, wherein the feemed to fee the ghost of her first husband, reproouing her for this wicked marriage with his brother.

ting extraordinary oruelties; fo he chanced to be accused at Rome, by some of the principall Iewes: after he had nine yeares held the principality, from the death of his Father Berode. Whereupon, Augufire fummoned him to his appearance; & after he had bene convinced by fufficient Witnesses, hee was sent into Daulphine, where he died, without leaning any children that were knowne. His goods were confiscated to the Romaine Emperour, and the Countries of his Ethnarchie were (for a time) ruled by the Romaine Gouernors: as by Coponius, Marcus, and Annius Rufus, who governed the Countreves (each of them) two years, euch vntill the death of Augustus, whose succes-

for Tiberias, fant Valerius Gratus into In-

den. Eleugy yeares after, he fent Pontius

Pilate alfo, who behaued himfelfe cruelly

in Judea : and (amongft other notorious

matters) he condemned our, Lord & Sa-

Finally as he ceased not from commit-

Pontius Pilat fent gouernos into ludea.

Archelaus being come backe into Iu- | uiour Iesus Christ to be hanged vpon a Crosse, in the seauenth yeare of his Gouernment, and the eighteenth of the Emperor Tyberius.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Phillip, Sonne to Herod the Great, do how be governed in his Tetrarchie.

Ing Herod, by his last Wil

Jand Teftament, lefte his troduct from Philip Tetrache of Philip Tracont is, & of the neighbouring Regions beyond Iordane; euen from the Sea of Tyberias or Genezareth, to the fprings of Iordane, and the foot of Mount Libanus. He gouerned this his Tetrarchy the space of seuen and thirty yeeres (with great commendation for inflice and modesty) which hee also beautified with many goodly Buildinges: For in Paneada, neere to the fourfes of Iordane (where fometime his Father Herod had erected and dedicated a Temple to Augustus) he builded a Cittie, which he called Cefarea of Philippi: and another Thebuildy vpon the lake of Genezareth, named Bath- of Cziana faida, which encreasing and growing into great wealth, he called it Iuliada, after daby Phip the name of the wife to Augustus.

Iosephus writeth, that this Phillip tooke in martiage Salome, the daughter of Herodias, whereas Saint Marke the Euangelist, in his fixt chapter and the seauenteenth verse writeth. That the Mother Herodian was espoused vnto Philip: and afterward being carried away, was coniovned with his Brother.

He dyed without any heyre, in the 20. yeare of Tyberius the Emperor, that is to lay, two yeeres after Christ was crucisied, role from the dead againe, and the Gospell was spread abroad by the Apo-files, from forth Indiana Neighbouring translated Nations. His Tetrarchie was annexed (by Tyberius) to the Province of Syria.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the life and death of Herod Antipas, brother to Phillip, and Tetrarche of Samaria and Perea, &c.

Perca a most

His Herode Antipas, by the fecond Will was instituted fuccessfor to his Father. But the Testament being the Testament being altred, he was ordained Tetrarche, and had (for his partage) Samaria and Pe-

rea, which is a most fertile Region beyond Irrdane, betweene the Lakes of Tyberias and Albhaltida. Neuertheleffe, being not contented with his Fathers gift, and trusting to the precedent Will; hee contended at Rome with his Brother before Augustus, touching the poffession of the kingdome. All which notwithftanding, hee obtained nothing else but the Tetrarchie left him by his fathet, & then againe confirmed to him. He took first to wife the daughter of Aretwe, King of Arabia, lining with him more then fifteene veares. But afterward, being called to Kome, paffing along by Phillip the Tetrarche, or (as Iofephis writeth) by Herode the Antipartalles fecond, borne of the daughter to the high Brouist, & Pricit: beeing enamous of the countries of the Priest : beeing enamoured on Herodias, contracted marriage with her promiting to repudiate his Arabian wife.

Being returned from Haly, he tooke away from his Brother, Herodias and her Herodias and daughter Salome; whereat the daughter per daug ter of Aretas finding her felfe offended (fecretly difguised) fled to her father in Arabia; whereupon enfued a famentable war. For Aretas, purposing toreuenge this vninft divorce of his daughter, fent a potent Army against Herode; which did vtterly ouerthrow all his Forces, notwithstanding their strength and multitude in num-

This Herode Antipas, detained S. John Baptist sometime prisoner in the Grongdefenced City of Macheron (fituated on the Marches of Perea and Arabia, neere to the lake Asphaltida:) because he hadde boldly reprodued him for this incessuous marriage; where the Adulteresse found

the meanes (afterward) to have his head smitten off. The same Herode laboured fubtilty to entrap Christ, as he was teaching in Galilee; and afterward, when Pilate fent him prisoner to him, hee sent him backe againe opprobrioufly, because (at his request) Christ would not worke any miracle before him.

He likewise embellished his Tetrarchy with faire buildinges; for (to his great Citties that charges) he builded Sephorim, a Cittie of were builded Galilee, which he caused to bee called An- by Antipa, in his Tettarchy tocratorida. He called another Inliada, by the name of Augustus wife, which before was named Betharanta. After the death of Augustus, because he had beene a kinde friend to Tyberius; he builded a new City in Lonour of him, neere to the Lake of The new citie Genazereeh, which he commanded to be called Tyberias. But because the place was prophaned by great heapes of dead bodies there buried, fo that (by Mosses Lawe) it was not lawfull to dwell there, he allured fome (by divers commodities and immunities) to builde there, making habitations for poore people; compelling the rich and mighty, to inhabit (with their families) in this new City.

In the second yeare of the Empire of Caius Caligula, when Agrippa the Brother of Herodius returned from Rome into Iu- Brother of dea; adorned(against all attempters) with Herodias, the royall dignity: Herode, by the continuall injuries of his wife, was enforced to Emperor, and undertake a iourny to Rome, to entreate allowed royal the royall dignity of the Emperour. For dignity. this woman (burning with ambition) said it was vnfufferable, that her Brother A. grippa (being but a while before poore & beggerly, and fo farre indebted, that hee was made fernile to his Creditors) shold now triumph with a Kingly Crowne; furmounting his Vnckle in power and dignity, he having beene to him as a nurling Father, and adjudged (by the second testament) worthy of the kingdome.

Antipas, prouoked by the inceffant in- Antipas accufligations of this arrogant woman, went or the street of t peror Cains, to enjoy the name and dignity Royall : beside, by manie greenous Caius Caliaccusations, he practised to make Agrippahatefull to the Emperor. But Agrippa (aduertised of his Vnckles voyage and intent) preuented him, and fent letters before him by an intimate friend: wherein

Agrippa the

CHAP.

S Ichn Bop. off kept in Pilon by An-

arriage, and

rie behea

Agricpa pre-uented his brothers acculations to the Emperor

he informed Caius, that Herode Antipas was confenting in the conspiracie of Seianus, against Tiberius, and that now (hauing close intelligence with the King of the Parthians) there was some noueltie intended against Caius. A matter easily tobe coniectured, by the great prepara. tion for Armes which Antipas made: whereby, in an instant, he could be suddenly furnished with an Army of threefcore and tenne thousand able fighting Caligula, incenfed by this report from

his friends, demaunded of Herode, what

prouision hee had in a readinesse for his

Tetratchie: Whereto hee aunswered:

Herod intrapped in his own answere, and fentinto per petuall banish ment at Lions in Fraunce,

The fubrile

answer of He

rodiasto the

Emperour.

That he had all things fitting for a King. Whereupon Caius inftantly commaunded, that hee should be carried prisoner to Lions in France, and therekept in perpetuall exile. Morcouer by his Letters, hee gaue all his goods, with the Tetrarchic of Galilee and Perea, to Agrippa: except what appertained in proprietie to his fifter Herodias, whom he reputed innocent, and for her hee would have all to be intirely referued, if the would returne into Iudea againe. But Herodias, thanking Caius for his liberalitie, replied: That presently she could not make any vie of this great fauour, because the held it vnreasonable, to leaue her husband in this calamitie, whom the had alwayes accompanied in his flowring prosperity, and taited thereof very royally.

Thus spake this subtile woman, as hoping thereby, that the Emperour would alter his rigorous fentence, concerning the condemnation of Herode, and that thee thould not undergoe the felfe-fame cenfure, confidering his supposall of her innocencie. But Cains (being highly difpleafed at her haughtie stomacke) commaunded, that being despoyled of all her goods, thee thould walke with her hufband in the same nature of exile. Thus Herode was the instrument of his owne harme, by liftening (ouer-lightly) to the perswasions of this ambitious woman: for, if he could have contented himfelfe with his estate, hee had longer time enioved peaceably his dignitie of Tetrarch. But they both descrued justly this heavie penaltie; because, beeing joyned together by incestuous marriage, and charitably admonished in the greatnesse of

their finne : they did put to death the The inno ica most innocent man Saint Ishn Baptist, deaths. 151. Baptist into vnder colour of a rash oath, pretending reneinged

This great downe-fall happened vnto them, about tenne yeares after the beheading of Saint Iohn; eight yeares after Herode had hunted Ielus Christ, and fent him bound(clothed like a foole in white) as vnwilling to endure his prefence. There is not any thing recorded of his Posteritie, but that the Principalitie of Iudea went from the fonnes of Great Herode, to a yonger sonne of another sonne Aristobulus and Mariana an Asmonean, to Translation wit, to Agrippa and Herode, of whom I have here let downe the Ancestors and dea.

Mariana, an Asmonean. Cypris, daughter of Salome, fifter to Aristobulus.

Agrippa the fecond, King of Chalcie. Drufus dyed in his youth.

Herode the Great.

Salome his fifter. Berenice his wife Aristobulus. Herodias. Mariana.

Aristobulus flayne by his father. Agrippa the first King of all Indea. Herod, the fourth King of Chalcie. Berenice, married to his vnckle Herod. king of Chalcis, who being dead, the remayned with Polemonking of Sicily.

Mariana joyned with Archelaus Helchias, and begate Berenice. Leauing him, the wedded Demetrius of Alexandria, by who the had Agrippina,

Drufilla most faire, being but young, fixe yeares olde, was affianced by her Enchans father to Epiphanes, fonne of Antiochus, king of *Comagena. But he making refufall to be circumcifed, her brother Agrippaganeher to Haziazeus, King of the Emefians. Afterward Felix, brother to Pallas, Gouernour of Isdes (by power of Promifes) made hir to leave hir husband, and tooke her to wife. By whom the had a sonne, named Agrippa, who dyed with Mount is his wife. at the burning of the Moun- Sommain taine *Vefenus : which made an inestiro, otherwise called the Great Campania.

is part of Spria, about Ci-

The line fis

whence the

difcent came, failing in the

fonnes o' He

rod the great

ertie and

CHAP. XIX.

The life of Agrippa, the first man of that name, coming to be King of Indea.

filla, in the foure and twentieth chapter

of the AIs of the Apostles, and the source

and twentieth verse, affirming her to be



wife to Felix.

Litle before the death of his grand-father Herode, being as then but eight yeares olde, this Agrippa was fent to Rome, and there nourished with

Drusus, the sonne of Tyberius. Hee was greatly affected by Anthonia mother of Agrippa was educated at Rome with the empetors Germanicus and Claudius the Emperour, in regarde of his mother Berenice; whom the loved as if the had beene her fifter.

Being come to age, he retired into 14-

dea, after the death of Drusus : because Tyberius expelled from his court, al them that had beene friends to his deceassed fonne; as fearing left the fight of them, should bee the renewing of his forrow. But Agrippa became charged with great doubts, whereinto he had entred at Rome, after the expence of all his owne meanes. Wherfore he wandred abroad for (fome times) with his wife Cypris, beggerly, poore, and veterly abandoned of his friends; so that at length, shame and pinching pouertie would have prouoked him to shorten his life. But his wife Cypris making humble supplications to Herodias, the fifter of her husband: The preuailed so farre, that Herode Antipas the Tetrarche, builded a house for him in the citty of Tiberias, and assigned him there a yearely reuenew. Not long had Agrip. pa enjoyed this benefite by his brother in law, but Herode growing offended at his table, for some wordes spoken by Agrip. pa, ouer-boldely reproued him angerly, terming him a begger, and a vagabond, and that he liued by his bounty.

Agrippa grieuing at this reproach, forfooke this fauour afforded by Herode: and borrowing some small store of money of one that respected him, but at extreame interest; once more hee intended to vifite Rome, and there agains to make triall of his fortune. Hee went to falute Tyberius in the Isle of Caprea, where he found gracious entertainement for a few dayes: vntill some Agent for the Emperour, wrote backe from Indea, that Arrippa did owe thirtie thouland Crownes of the Sunne, to the Receivers of the Emperor. Miferie foo. Beside, that he had formerly made many with enemies escapes, euen when the dayes for repay-then triends. ment came, ving nothing but fubrile and cosening shifts.

Tyberius much offended at these tydings, commaunded Agrippa to anoyde his Court, vntill hee had made full fatiffaction: which hee did (with great difficulty) by the means of Madame Antonia. Wherewith Tyberius was fo well pleased, The ftrange that hee appoynted him the guardian of and variable

his twinne sonne Tyberius. But a little condition of Agruppaes forume. he fell into his disfauour. For, becing at supper one night, with Caise, the young adopted fonne of Tyberius, among other speeches passing at the Table; Agrippa wished, that olde Tyberius might quickly die, to the end that Caius should enjoy the Empire.

This wish comming to the cares of Tyberius, Agrippa (by the Emperours commaund) was clapt vp in close pri- The coming fon, and there so kept, vntill such time of Caius to the Empire, as Tyberius deceassed. Caius, well affisted and read. by his warlike troupes, and by his father unncement Germanicus, came to enjoy the Empire, of Agrippa. and having released Agrippa out of prifon; adorned him with the habits befeeming a King, fubicating also those countries to him , which Phillip the Tetrarch. and Lysanias formerly had commaunded. Moreouer, he gaue him a chaine of gold, of equalitie in weight to the yron chaine, wherewith he was bound lying in prison.

scffion of his kingdome. Thus you fee, that hee who (before) was not onely despised, in regard of his necessitie and great debts, but also durst not abide in any place, for the importunitie of his creditors; was (to the admiration of all fuch as fawe him in that wofull miserie)raised to the magnificence royall,

Hee remained a yeare with the Emperor of Agrippa Caius at Rome; and then tooke leaue of to possessibility him for his returne to Iudea, to take pof- kingdome.

on Herod and his wife Herodias.

The punish-ment inflicted

Chap. 19.

Honors heaped more and more vepon Agrippa by

> Agrippa maketh a journy to Rome.

Philo the Icy fent Ambafla Jour for the lewes,

A great com plaint made to Caius against the

A commaund to erect the: Emperorifta tue in the ho lieft place of the Temple.

Petronius : o eth with a po werfull army to Ptolomas to execut the Emperours

ed and refuted to aide him, or had injurioufly repulfed him, while he lived in prinate estate and extreame ponerty. Soone after, Cains Caligula gane him Galilee and Berea; with all the cheuisance of Herode Antipas his emulatour, and of his fifter Herodias, as in our last Chapter we have related : wherfore, after he dad taken order for his kingdomes affaires, hee tooke his journey towards Rome, with gifts and presents, to declare (on his owne behalfe) what feruices and acknowledgement hee made, for fo many gracious fauors done to him by Caius.

During the time that Agrippa was at Rome, there happened a strife betweene the Cittizens of Alexandria, and the Iews dwelling in the same Cittie: fo that (by lottes) Ambassadours were sent on eyther part to the Emperour. Amongest whom was Philo the Icw, whose testimony we have divers times made vie of, in the course of this present Historic. There the lewes were tharpely accused by a Greeke named Appian, for many faults, and especially, for obstinate contempt of the Imperiall dignitie: because in all parts of those Citties where the Icwes dwelt, they would not fuffer any Statues or Images of the Emperour Caius to be erected; but if any were fet uppe, immediately they would throw them downe very oppro-

with this complaint, repulsed the Iewish Ambassadours, somewhat rudely, and wrote to Petronius, (who from the beginning of his Empire, he had fent Gouernour into Indea) that with all the hafte he could possibly vie, hee should erect the Emperors Statue, in the most holy place of the Temple of Ierusalem, if not by confent of the lewes, yet in despight of them, and (by force of Armes) whether they would or no.

Petronists, willing to obey this comand, the least of his commaunds. vetknowing the execution would not be eafic; called the Legions from all parts,& being prouided of fufficient fuccor, went from Syria to Ptolomais, carrying a braue army along with him . But first he made knowne to the lewes (by Ambaffadours and Letters,) whereforehe came in fuch dreadfull manner, as grounded upon the Emperors commaund; defiring the peo-

which caused some to tremble, that deni- ple, that he might rather perfourme it by their good liking, then by the course of force & violence. The Iews, not a litle affrighted at these news, came from a great number of Townes and Citties, into the fields before Ptolomais, bringing no arms or weapons with them : but entreating Petronius, not to fulfill fo wicked a com- lance palled maund, protesting, that they would ra- betweene the rher endure a thousand deaths, then fusfer the Temple to be prophaned with the Statue of a man.

Contrariwife, Petronus admonished them to take heede, lest this their stiffenecked opinio, should procure the countries devastation by fire and sword; alledging stil vnto them, the sterne commands of the Emperour, how gracious hee had beene towards him, and (being angerly mooued) would admit no mercy, to fuch proouing his speeches by examples of diuers tormented in strange kinds. He further defired them to pardon him, in not commands a denying to execute the Emperors charge imposed on him : because they knew well enough themselues, that neuer any refused to fulfill his command, but was extreamely punished for it. Wherefore, hee rather intended to aduenture his life, in fighting against their whole Nation: then to bee held remisse or negligent, in what the Emperour had enjoyned him.

ioufly.

Hecreupon the multitude refolued to Angunent alleged in infift, entreating him to pardon their religion and iust constancie, if (more fear-the lewish ing God, the Creatour of heaven and muliture earth, and having often experimented his heavy wrath, by their transgressing his commandements) they did now oppose themselves against the Emperours will, beeing full of impietie. Confidering alfo, that Petronius himfelfe confessed, that he stoode in such feare of a mortall man (whose life was vncertaine) that he held it no fafetie for his person, to transgresse

> Petronius, amased at this obstinacie in the people, and (after that the affembly was dispersed) finding himselfe in great perplexitie, what hee should doe in this dangerous case; paused a while vponit. For, hee had beene particularly admonished by Aristobulus, brother to King Agrippa, and some other Princes of Iudea, with earnest imprecatious, not to soyle

himfelfe

The lewes

efteeme their

remonies and

The confetence be-

ewes againfl

himfelfe, with the innocent bloud of fo great a multitude, by the wicked commaund of the Emperours; because in to doing, hee thould brand the Romaine Empire, with so infamous a note of cruelty, as the like was never heard of before, destroying a whole Nation, for refuling to fuffer the Image of a finfull man, to be advaunced in their most holie Temple. Which divine honour, no man (of vnderstanding or good judgement) did euer couet before : but contrariewife, many, to whom such an offer had beene made, did holde it in no meane detestation.

They further aduited him, that hee would write to the Emperour, and let him vnderstand the peremptorie resolutiunciented on of the people, in defence of the doctrine and ceremonies given them by Almighty God, calming his displeasure so well as hee could, from proceeding in so cruell a sentence. But if it should so come to passe, that the humour of the Gouernour might not bee altered : yet then hee had enough to goe on in, and (when hee did please) to proceede in

Petronius desiring to consider in these matters more maturely, and to trie the peoples inclination yet a little further: went with his Army to Tybersas, where an infinite number of Iewes met him, inceffantly entreating him, that their facred Temple might not bee prophaned. Why ? answered Petronius, Dare you watre with the Emperour? Feare you not the power of the Romaine Empire, knowing how weake your strength is, to contend against so mighty a Monarch? Wee relist not by Armes so great a power (cryed out the Icwes) but humbly lay downe our lines at Cafars foote: rather then, against the Lawe of our God, we will see the Stame of the Emperour, to bee erected in the holiest place of our Temple. Which words were no fooner spoken, but they all fell flat vpon their faces, prostrating their neckes to any that would finite them.

Petronius perceiuing them fo refolued and inuincible, that they rather would die, then suffer their Temple to be violated; confidering also, that already (for the space of fortied , , they had not toucht the carth with any labor, although

it was the onely apt time to fowe their leede : after he had confulted with forne of his friends, hee coucluded, that hee would write to the Emperour . Yet, before he would make any publication therof, he meant to presse those people somwhat further. So, caufing a mighty multitude of the vnarmed Iewes to meete at vrged by Pe Tiberias, and to feare them in most dreadfull manner; he engirt them on all fides with warrelike troupes, and his horsfemen ready prepared to ouer-runne them. Once more hee declared to them, the rigorous commaund of the Romaine Emperour, the obedience of all the people in the like case; the daunger wherein he and al his were, if they did not effect what hee had commaunded. Wherefore hee exhorted them, that the Emperours anger might be endured : because such fayled not to revenge cruelly, the breach of any thing commaunded by him.

But when the Iewes cryed out all with The answer of one voyce, that hee ought to make more the people to account of Gods commaund, then of a- Petronius. ny mortali mans whatfocuer, to trample them vnder his horses seete, or slice them in peeces with their Swords, that fo all the lewes being extirpated, he might vie the Temple at his owne pleasure: Petronius, entirely mooned to mercy, his heart throbbing, and his eyes ouer-flowing with teares, commaunding filence by a Trumpet, thus he spake.

The Oration made by Petronius, to the Icroes affembled at Tyberias.

Seeing you are so resolute, that you desire rather to die, then violate the Law given you by God, I am not the man, that (by a wic- ble dispositiked kinde of obedience) will foyle your Temple; for which I fee you endeaour fo much. Nor will I doe feruice to the Emperour my Maister, in a matter so monstrous and inhumane:but rather willbe a partaker in your perill, then purchase my life, by the innocent bloud of so great a multitude . Be comforted then in this your Religion, and returne to your labour, which (for fo many dayes) you have omitted . For mine owne part . I will labour by my friends and mine owne Letters, links in Co to alter this opinion in the Emperour . If hee commaund me to Rome, and condemne mee Hbb

Commander.

626

The lewes

interpretati

on concer-

of raine

ning a showr

King Agripps

Empe, or, and

maketh inter-

cession for

the lewes.

Agrippa win

neth pardon for the pco-

ple of the

iewes.

to death, I will gladly endure it : knowing, that by my death, a people lining in great daunger, may yet preserve their Religion to themselues. For your part, pray to God, that what I enterprise for your safetie, may have a good iffue for ws all.

When the Iewes had heard this Oration; as people extraordinarily joyfull, they beganne (with loude voyces) to extoll the pictic of Petronius, wishing to him all felicitie. And fodainely, vpon the Assemblies seperation, there fell a mightie thowre of raine (all the day before, and the whole moneth fore-going, the Heauens were fo cleare and bright, that the earth was burnt by extremity of heat) and this the Iewes interpreted to bee a signe of their happinesse.

While matters proceeded thus In Iudea, King Agrippa being at Rome, vnderstoode the troubles in his kingdome, and the occasion from whence they proceeded. Whereupon, he made a magnificent feast for the Emperour, consisting of all the delicates that possibly could be deuised. Caius welknew, that Agrippa would not launch out in fuch liberall expences, but that hee intended some especiall suite to him: wherefore, with a gracious countenance and franke spirit, hee bade him boldly ask what he would protesting that he should not be denied. In a long & well prepared Oration, Agrippa refolued the Emperour, that he defired not any enriching of his kingdome; but humbly craued pardon for the lewish people, if, in feare to be punished by God; they had not received his Statue into their Temple of Ierusalem.

Caius accounting it a shame and disgrace to him, if heerein he should refuse his friends request: wrote to Petronius, of his commaund. Adding withall, that if (with the peoples liking) the Image was already placed in the Temple, fo to let it rest : but if the people would not voluntarily suffer it to bee doone, by no means to offer them any violence. Soone after came the Letters fent from Petronius, concerning the stowte resolution of the Icwish Nation: which quite altered him from his former minde, and made him highly displeased with his Captaine, for not perfourning what hee had enjoy-

Wherefore hee wrote agains to him, that if he would not be brought to Rome, and there be maffacred with most horrible torments : hee should make choice of what kinde of death himfelfe pleafed, as a punishment for the contempt of his

It came to passe, and (no doubt) diuinely, that the ship which carried these cruell Letters, was greatly tardied by Chim Cales boysterous tempests: so that an other la,his with shippe (bringing the newes of Caligulaes daughter murdreds) death) arrived there in Iudea before it. murdred together, and Fearefull indeede was his death, but well brendly a worthy fuch a monster, who shortly after took years hee had written these terrible menaces culously proto Petronius, was maffacred, with his uented. wife and daughter, by Chereas and his confederated conspiratours. Whereuppon Petronius, beeing infourmed of the Emperours death, and thereby exempted from all feare; received the other Letters of his death. Thereby he plainely perceyued, that almighty GOD had miraculously prescrued his life, for the good hee had doone to the lewish Na-

About the same time, Claudius was faluted Emperour by the Souldiours: madeline has been both country, when had been both country, which we had been both country, which we had been both country, when had been both country, which we had been both count celled and affifted by Agrippa, at fuch time | pa confi as hee remayned in Rome: he confirmed kingdom, with ohim (by publique Edict) the Kingdirigan before dome of Iudea given him by Caligula, adding also Samaria, and all the other parts and portions, which his grandfather Herode the Great formerly posses-

Moreover, hee gaue him the Tetrarchie of Lysanias, called Abella, with a A Town part of Cilicia, and Comagena, which hee Campana in had taken from Antiochus. He conferred called Bella. commending his care for the execution | also on Herode, brother to Agrippa, the Kingdome of Chalcis.

Agrippa beeing in this manner richly recompenced, returned to Iudea, in the first yeare of the Empire of Claudius, and ascending up to Ierusalem, gaue thanks to the Lord for his good successe. There hee made a follemne great feast, hanging vp in the Temple, the Chaine of The Chaint golde which Caligula had giuen him in of goldhand memory of his miferies, and divine deli-ple.

Afterward, he beganne to fortifie the

ancient tra-

put to death and 5. Peter

Agrippa.

non of lose-

the theater to fpeake to the people,

with the Historic of Saint Luke in this manner. After hee had reigned ouer all Indea for the space of three yeares; in the fourth, hee came to Cafarea, where hee celebrated the Feast with a great company of the Iewes; canfing Playes to be acted, in honour of the Emperour Claudies, and for his health. The second day of the Feast, he entred the Theater in the morning, attired in a Roabe of cloth of filuer, tiffued, and made most sumptious and artificiall: where. on when the bright beames of the Sunne did cast their radiance, it caused such a lustre by their reverberation; that all cies were dazeled with the folendour of the garment. Whereupon it happened, that fome of his Flatterers, interrupting him in his Oration; tolde him, that he spake like a god; nay, and (with a loude voice) called him God berauing mercy of him, begause (viill then) they had feared him

Cittie of Ierusalem, and with such suffi-

cient furniture, that Claudius (fearing a

revolt in the lewes, vnder truft in fuch a

well ordered fortification) forbade A-

grippa by his Letters, to finish the work

hee had begunne. Hee was also most li-

berall towards his subjects, and (about

all) a superstitious observer of the tradi-

tions, received in the forefathers lawe.

So that, hearing the Apostles to valew

them of no reckoning to winne the good

liking of the facrificing Priests, and fa-

uour of the vulgare people: Hee execu-

ted some of the Disciples of our Saviour

Christ, and namely James the brother to

Iohn, they beeing the fonnes of Zebedee.

Hee also caused Saint Peter to bee put in

prison, during the dayes of valeauened

Bread, to bring him foorth to the peo-

ple after the Feaft. But the Euangelist

Saint Luke amply declareth, that Saint

Peter was delivered by the continuall

prayers of the Church: where hee also

declareth, the miferable end of this Herod

Infephus, speaking of his death: it agrees

Now, concerning the description of

As the King gloried in these flattering clamours, no way reproouing them for fuch impious behauiour: hee was fodainely finitten with a most gricuous

but as a man onely; but now they plain-

ly perceined, that he farre excelled all hu-

mane nature.

paine in his entrailes, fo that very hardly hee could bee carryed to his Pallace. & just judge Where, after many horrible torments, mentof God his life expired the fift day : beeing iufly vpon King punished for the crueltie, which hee had exercifed against the members of the true Church of Christ, whereas otherwise, he was very benigne and gracious towardes all men, especially to strangers and Gentiles. Hee reigned (in all) about seauen yeares; for hee helde the Tetrarchie of Phillip(vnder Caius Caligula) three yeares. and foure other yeares, the whole Kingdome of Indea. He dyed in the foure and The yeares of fiftieth yeare of his age; the third of the Empire of Clandius; and the twelfth yeare after the refurrection of our Lord and Saujour Christ Icfus.

His posteritie hath already beene related, whereof Agrippa, beeing his eldest Sonne, and of the age of seven years when his Father dyed, albeit Claudins the Emperour gladly defired, that hee should have beene successour in his Fathers kingdome: yet fome other preuavled fo farre with him , that all the Regions (fubicated before to his Father:)were againe reduced into the forme of a Prouince; and the first Gouernour sent thither to rule in Indea, was Cuffins Fadus, dus. or Fadus Cultius.

ded not his father in the kingdome.

Culpius Fa-

CHAP. XX.

Of Herode, the fourth King of Chalcis, youngest forme to Herode the Great, brother to the first Agrippa.



brother Agrippa.

Haue heretofore named this man, Herode the fourth, for his better differenting from other; who led a private kind of life, witill Clandius (mooned to be here). Haue heretofore named led a private kind of life, Claudius by the intercession of his brother Agrippa) bestowed vpon him the Kingdome yeare of his Empire. of Chalcis, in the first yeare of his Em-

yeares, furniting onely five yeares his

Hhh 2

pire, which he enjoyed the space of eight

foone changed from lis promife made to Agrippa, S wrathfully in-

The Empero

cenfed againft Petro

After

A debate or contention for keeping the ornamé of the hig 1-Priefts.

The liberall triunt of laudius to Herode.

Thendas the So ceret his abufing the people, and put to death by Cuipius Fadus.

A&15.36.

A great fanane in Iudea, toretold by Agabus. Act: 11.28,

A people li ungbeyond Armenia.

Accs 11.29.

The death of

After the death of his brother , Cufpim Fadus beeing fent into Iudea, stroue to have the custodie of the Roabes and other ornaments, which belonged to the Soueraigne Sacrificers, and to transferre the Sacrificers to Romaine Gouernours: whereupon, Harode transported himselfe to Rome, at request made to him by the lewes, whose cause he maintained there to well; that he obtained, that the garments belonging vnto the High-priest, should be kept in the custody of the Hiepriest. Moreover, hee obtained of Claudias, that he should have the charge and care of the money, confectated to the Temple of Ierusalem. Having power alfo, to depose the High-priest, for some causes of importance, and to substitute an other more sufficient. A Graunt which brought great gaine and profite to the Kings; because the Priests sought by power of mony, who should have that foueraigne dignitie.

Culpius Fadus gouerned the Countrie of Iudea, when a certaine man, named Theudas, abused in such fort the vulgare people by his enchauntments: that hee brought them to lordane, promifing to make them passe (dry-footed) ouer the dinided riner. But Fadus following, took him by his horse-men, and having put him to death, feattered all the heapes of his followers . Gamaliell maketh mention of this Theudes, in the fift chapter of the Astes of the Apostles.

Tyberius Alexander was fent by Claudius, to fucceede Fadus in the government; under whom happened that terrible famine in Indea, which Agabus had foretold in the eleanenth chapter of the Actes of the Apostles; and which was about the fixt or fenenth yeare of Claudius : which extreamitie was fomewhat affwaged, by the liberalitie of Helena, Queene of the * Adiabanes, who caused great plenty of corne to bee brought out of Egypt, and figges from Cyprus. Also the Churches of Greece and Afa, gathered much mony which they feat to fuccourthe brethren. that endured the famine it widea.

Herode, King of Chalcio dyed in the eight yeare of the Emperour Claudius. Hee had two wines, each after other; the first was Mariana, daughter to Olympia, the yoongest daughter to Great Herode, Herode king by whom he had Aristobulus. Afterward, he married Berenice, daughter to his brother Agrippa, who brought vnto him two fonnes. And this was his iffue or posteritie, which was reputed quite confumed, by the calamities happing in the warres

> Aristobulus. flaine by his Father Herod the Great.

Agrippa the first. Mariana, daughter of Olympia. Herode, the fourth King of Chalcis. Berenice, daughter of Agrippa the first,

who had by her vnckle, Berenicina, Hyrcanus. Of these we reade nothing.

Agrippa the last. Salome, daughter of Herodias, first maried to Phillip the Terrarch.

Aristobulus, to whom Nero gaue the gouernement of the Leffer Armenia, and had by Salome,

Herode Agrippa Aristobulus.

Iosephus maketh no other kind of mention (concerning them) that I can finde.

CHAP. XXI.

I Of Agrippa the last, Sonne to the youngest fonne of Herod the Great, the last King in any part of Indea.



His Agrippa, being aged seuenteen years, Agrippa hing was at Rome with declaration in mediate face Claudius when his fa-ther dyed; and fue-this father. acceded not immediately after his father,

because of some enemies about Claudius therein were his hinderance: who alleaged; That his youthfull yeares were not apt to gouerne so great a kingdome, neither to bridle a people fo rebellious. But indeede, their pretence was, to enrich themselues by gouerning the Countrey.

The iffue of Herod the 4

Agrippa made King

and enabled

rend behauiour of an in-lokent Souliour to the

A of Cuma

Fine yeares after his fathers death, his vnckle Herode beeing dead also : Claudius conferred on him the Kingdome of Chalcis, at the age of 22. veares. He gaue him also the same power his vnckle had, to keepe the treasure of the Temple of Ierusalem, and to create the High priests. Of which authoritie Agrippa made verie good vie: for (in a short time) he deposed divers, and substituted other at his pleafure.

At fuch time as Agrippa beganne his reigne, Cumanus was fent into Iudea, to fucceed Tiberius Alexander in the gouernment, who greatly tormented the country, which already fauored of the fucceeding ruine. For, at Easter, the fourth day of vnleauened bread, a Romain Souldier of the band, which (according to custom) kept a garrison about the Temple; vnreucrently shewed his base backe-part to the people, they being dutifully bufied in the service of God.

The Iewes not a little mooued at this iniurie, gaue very bitter speeches against the Gouernour Cumanue, because hee did not punish this wicked act of the Soldiour.

Cumanus taking in difdayne their bold words, and fearing fome violence by the mutinous multitude : fodainely (but vel ry fecretly) fommoned his armed Legiz ens and horsemen together, who discol uering themselues before they could be suppected; made such an affright among the marmed popularity, that they fled away so consusedly crowding, that more then twenty thousand men and women. were trodden and crushed to death in the Streetes and other places, to the great and grieuous lamentation of all the peo-

Another tumult also followed soone after, the issue whereof was not yet fo pittifull. Por some theening lewes, had (vpon the highway) (hrewdly beaten and wounded one Stephen, a fertiant to the Emperour Claudius, stripping him out of all that he had about him.

Cumanus heereat highly offended, and not finding them that had done the deed; tooke all the neighbouring parts, where the fault was committed. Which being done, a Souldiour finding a Booke in his booty, which containd the writings of Moses and the Prophets, made a publike shew thereof in derision, & after tore it to peeces, in prefence of the chiefest Iewes. Sodainly a great multitude of the Icws ranne (by troups) to Cafarea (where then was the ordinary abiding of the Romaine Gouernors) and required, that iuflice might be inflicted vpon him for this wicked act: whom if Cumanus (by the perfwafion of some) had not beheaded , to fatisfie the enraged peoples anger; this tumult could not have been appealed, without very great effusion of blood.

Afterward, some of the Galleansascen - Divers Galiding vppe to Ierusalem to the Feast, were the Samaritas flaine by the Samaritanes; which was the cause of many murthers committed on both fides. For, eyther part beeing encouraged to reuenge, ranne into fresh iniuries, by way of robberies, putting to fire and fword all they met withall. But, because Cumanus (corrupted with money) did not represse those thecueries done by neighbour on neighbour. Quarreus, Prcfident of Syria, was called thither by the Cumanus fent to Rome contrary fide, who (having received in- by Quarreus, formation of the fact, and executed the after whom authours of the mutinies) fent Cumanus lix, to Rome, to render a reason for the Prouince committed to his charge. He being consided of auarice and crueltie, was fent into exile by Claudius, & in his place, was appointed governor of Indea and Samaria, Claudius Pælix, brother to Pallas, who (long time before) was fent into Palestine, to gouerne the Tetrarchy of Philip, as is affirmed by Cornelius Tacitus.

Almost at the same time, that is to say, in the twelfth yeare of his Empire, Cliudies gaue to King Agrippa the Tetrarchy of Phillip (being destitute of a Gouernor) which contained Trachonitis and Batanea; The liberall giving him alfo Abella, the Tetrarely of bountie of Eyfanias. Then he gaue to his vnckle pa- Claudius to ternall Aristobulus (brother to the first K Agrippa. Agrippa, and Herode of Chalcis) the kingdome of Chalcis.

After these affayres thus paffed ouer, the condition and estate of the Iews grew worse and worse; and now beganne the government of Falix, who beeing reprooued by Ionathas the High-prieft, for high-Prieft his rapines and other wicked actions by reproued the him perfourmed, and yet not daring to lix, and was depole him from the Sacerdotall dig- fecretly murnitie, because hee stoode in feare of the dered. people: subborned diverse Ruffians, who

Hhh 3

leans flain by

Mens liues bought and

The miferable afflifitio of the lewes, no way to b redreffed.

fold as roffi;

pleased, with

out any pu-

Paul imprifoand Druilla. Actes 24.24.

The death of Claudiusand reigne of

Portins Fcflus fent to govern Inde

entring into Ierufalomat the feast with | Portius Festus was arrived in Iudea, hee the multitude) flew fo fecretly the High-Priest Ionathas, and others marked for the same purpose with him; as very easily they were concealed in the troupes.

This attempt speeding so well as the Ruffians could defire, fell out to bee the occasion, that (at every feast) they made a market or merchandise, of killing the honestest of the people : sometimes being hired there-to by other, fometimes out of their owne spleene and mallice. So that every man stoode in seare, because no one knew how to fecure himfelfe; audacious boldenesse dreading no punishment, in regard of the Gouernors carelesse negligence.

Troups of the cues ranne cuery where making spoile, though many were apprehended by Falix, and executed : yet wickednesse had taken such deep roote, onely through neglect in the precedent Gouernours, as it could no way be holpen; no not by the greatest scuerity of instice. And the worst of all was, that these theeucries were maintayned by the Highpriests authoritie: amongst whom, such as were best stored with money , kept bands of desperate villaines about them. by whose meanes they oppressed such as they pleafed, laying close ambushes to kill and murder them.

In the thirteenth yeare of Claudius his Empire, Paul the Apostle was taken in Ierusalem, and being led thence to Cafareas pleaded his cause before Falix and Drufilla, as S. Luke declareth in the foure and twentieth of the Actes. Afterward, Fabefore Folix Lix called for him divers times, and heard him answere for himselfe, hoping that Paul would redeeme himfelfe by money. But after hee had kept him two whole yeares in prison; at his departing from Iudea, hee left him there, to please the Icwes.

Claudius died in the foureteenth yeare of his Empire, and Nero (at the beginning of his gouernment) encreased the authoritie of Agrippa, adding thereto part of Galilee, with the Citties of Tyberias, Tariches and Iuliada . Forthwith he fent Portim Fest us into Indea, calling home Falix, whom they of Cafarea followed, and accused him of cruelty, rapines and other vniust dealing; but he escaped by the cunning of his brother Pallas. So foone as

Portius Festus was arrived in Indea, nee gaue audience (at Cafarea) to Paul and Paul approx the lewes his accusers : and as he inten- to answere ded to fend Paul to Ierufalem, he (fearing before Cziu the ambushes of the Iewes) appealed to the Emperour Nero.

Some few dayes after, Agrippa went to Cafarea with his fifter Berenice, onely to falute the new gouernor: which fifter (after the death of her husband Herode of Chalcis) lived so familiarly with her brother, that there was great suspition of incestuous acquaintance. Paul was brought Paul phades before them to pleade his cause, and (in a before Festus wel couched oration) fo approued his innocencie; that, according to the Kings owne opinion, he might have gone at liberty, if hee had not appealed to Cafar. Not long it was, but Paul was fent (with other prisoners) to Rome, in the first yeare of Neroes Empire, as is auouched.

Agrippa returning to Ierusalem, offended the Priests very grieuously, by a building erected in the Pallacerovall, and fomewhat neare to the Temple : for hee A continue could thence discerne, whatsoeuer the gippa a de Priests did in the inward parts, and when they loytered in the facrifices and diuine abuilding. Service. The Priests holding this action vnlawfull, erected a wall (on the Temple fide) of the like height; whereby Agrippa was not onely hindered from feeing the Temple, but also a great part of the City. The King infifted, that the wall should be beaten downe; but the Priests so preuailed (by means made to Poppea the Emperours wife) that Nero allowed the wall to remaine as it did.

Heereat Agrippa being exceedingly offended, deposed softended to seph the sourceaigne Sacrificer, placing Ananias in his roome, who was of the Saduces Sect, a man very Ralled bolde and cruell. He (Festus dying in Indea, and Abinus his successour staying fomewhat long ere he came) tooke occafion to exercise crueltie against many worthy persons; especially against James the sonne of Joseph, brother to our Lord Iesus Christ by an other mother, a man (in the judgement of all them dwelling in Ierusalem) excelling in innocencie of life and piety, who was throwne down headand (by command of the faid Anamias) obecomdend
with flones about the first becomdend yeares after the birth of Christ. For

Ananias dismiffed from his Office by

Chap. 21.

Florus a more

wicked goues not then Al-;

binus, fent a a luft plague

come to paffe

For this wicked deed, he was accused before Agrippa, who feared the Romane Gouernour, named Albinus, now neere approaching; and also stoode in feare of the peoples fury : wherefore Anamas was dismissed from his Office, exercised by him but three moneths onely. And yet he ceased not to commit great cruelties, against them that were of his owne condition. For, in regard of his great power, hee had many Theeues (kept at his charges) of whom he made vie to murther his enemies privily. Beside, hee made them breake into the Garners of corne to steal the Tythes therein enclosed : which beeing often done without any punishment, was the cause of staruing to death manie of the poore Priests.

Albinus being ouercome with infatiable couetoufneffe, cared for nothing elfe The greedy & infatiable co. uctoufnes of Albinus the but onely to get wealth together, by any vile meanes whatfocuer : wherefore, fuch of the Priests as gaue him Gold, hee winhed at all their wickednesse, and permitted Theeues to doe what they lifted, if their kindred or friendes would redeeme them with money. By which meanes, in short time, all Judea was full of Theeues, all things turned topfic turuy, no Iustice exercifed in any place : and there was no acte fo horrid or execrable, but it might quickly be pardoned for money.

Gessius Florus was sent as successor to this Horse-leech, who farre exceeded the rapines of Albinus, by infinit other wicked courses; so that the Iews reputed Albinus 2 Saint vnto this other. For Florus proceeded not couertly, nor after the cunning manner of his predecellour: but by open violence, scorning, stealing, rudely taking, and doing whatfocuer hee pleafed; for will onely was a Law to him. And furely it feemed, that he was meerly fent by destiny to the Iewes, so to irritate them by open injuries, and blinde them from all defire of reuenge, as finally to be their yeter ruine, For, the whole country being ouer-runne with Theeues, and the people growne desperately desirous of warre, had a hope of some other Dominion, groaning under the tyrannical Romaine rule, and (infortish zeale) were per-The time forc fwaded to recover their liberty. prophesiedfor the destruction

In breefe, the time was come, which Christand the Prophets had foretolde, concerning the destruction of the whole

Priesthood, and policy ordained by Mofer and divine authority: confidering. that the Messias had already beene sent, for the loue of whome, both the Priesthood and policy had bin (till that time) dininely preserved. Wherefore, under Gessius Florus, threescore yeeres after the Nativity of Christ, five and thirty yeeres after hee was crucified and rifen againe, the twelfth of Nerses Empire, the feuenteenth of this Agrippa now in question; and three yeares before Paul was put to death by Nero: the warre began to waxe tempestuous, because the Iewes revolted from the Romane Empire, and entred into mutiny against Cafar.

Florus could eafily have quenched this Florus a bloowarre in the beginning; but that hee rather affected, to nourish and feede the of the lewish flame newly kindled, by prouoking the Iewes dayly more and more, still adding iniury vppon iniury: vntill the fire flewe foorth both farre and neere, that finally, it wrought the destruction of all In-

Agrippa labo

At the beginning of this revolt, Agrip. palabored very ferioufly, to flay the lews from this furious desire of warre, and to to the Romas regaine peace and tranquility, by requiring pardon of the Romanes for their offence, which they might have obtayned on meane conditions, in regard it was very euident, that they had some inst causes of rebelling, by the outrages done vnto them by Florus. But he came so short of their expectation, they hating nothing more, then to heare of peace or equity:as (very hardly) he escaped theyr violence. Perceiuing then the Nation fo enraged for fight, & (like men blindfolded) throwing themsclues imperuously into perdition; he retired from their furious enterprize, and fent ayde to Velpaliania Iudea, to tame the head-strong course of those Rebelles, foreseeing already in his foule, the fad ruine of all the Iewish peoplc.

Heere I could weave up the fagge-end of this History, with report of the lewish the warre bewarre, which Iofephus and other authors tweene the haue described; but that my heart will not ferue me, to discourse those straunge & milerable ouerthrows, which (in their pitileffe euents) did exceede humane beleefe. For no History is found of any nation whatfocuer, that was fo long time

ble horror of Romaines.

Chap. 21.

The viter ex-

termination

of the lewish

people, for their contem-

ning Iclus

and fantasticke spectacles. Some other

(by huge troopes) to cut out a Channell

heavy wrath, against the contemners of

his Sonne Christ, and the doctrine Euan-

gelicall; almost all this nation was vtter-

ly exterminated. Hapning by the Divine

permission, that at the Feast of vnleaue-

ned bread, when the Iewes were wont to

meete at Ierusalem, from the farthest parts

of all Indea; the Citty should be thus be-

fiedged, and all the desperate Robbers.

Theeues, & Ruffians, dispersed through-

out the whole Regions, should (euen

then) be retyred to Ieru(alem) to fhelter

space of fine yeares) had first of all subdu-

ed well-neere all Indea, conquering ma-

ny strongly munited Citties, yea, destroy-

ing and burning them, onely through the

wilfull obstinacie of the inhabitants: in

the last halfe yeare, Titus brought his Ar-

my to the Citty of Ierusalem, and there

planted his fiedge, in the fecond yeare of

the Emperor his Father; and the fiedge

continued for the space of sixe moneths,

which sofephus tearmeth by Macedonian

Language

CHAP. XXII.

A breefe Collection, of the principall Acci-

dents which happened in the time of the

which in our May.

(are thus cal-)luly.

Aprill.

August.

-September

JIune.

names.

Xantiqua.

Dention.

Panemon,

Gorpiaion.

Loion.

The names of Artemision.

the 6. months

wherein leru-

falem was be-

After that Vespasian (for about the

themselues in her fortifications.

By these pittifull examples of Gods

betweene the Agaum and Ionian leas.

The lewes reuolted in the 12 yeare of Nero the en peror.

tiality and fa-

ctions in Ica

The richest

Citizens in

most wofull

perplexity.

rula!cm.

thut vp from all fuccour, wofully tormented, and finally (wholy confounded, with ther quite raced out, and destroyed. For after that the Iewes were repolted in the twelfth yeare (as is affirmed) of Nero, the army of the Romanes neuer ceased for fix whole yeeres together, cruelly to ratiage the countrey of Indea, because from time to time, the Iewes (by their inuincible obstinacy) prouoked the victorious foldiers to fuch tyrannies, as the like were neuer heard of.

But though Ispare to relate the deua-The milerastation of the whole countrey: who can ble effare of Ierufalem, fi conceine (with true indgement) but the whole yeares miseries of the Citty Ierusalem it selfe? tegether. Which, before it beheld the Romane enemy, for the space of sixe whole yeers, felt (within it felfe) farre more cruell domeflicke aduerfaries : as beeing divided and torne in peeces, by Sects, Factions, and Seditions of Theenes, fighting amongst themselues (when they had none else to Bands of parquarrell withall) for rapines, murthers,

and other mischeefs, every Faction thinking to support it selfe, by dooing injurie vnto it selfe, and surmounting one another in number, and manner of nonel vil-

lanies and extremity.

Furie grew on to fuch horrid perfection, that if any Man or woman were effected holy, religious, and modest s these were arguments sufficient, to yeild a pregnant reason for their death; and the goodes of the richest Cittizens, must bee brought foorth, and layde before their doores, while the Factious fought who should enjoy them. To kill people of meane or simple condition, was but to ridde them out of the turbulent crowdes, for they were efteemed but as a charge to the Citty, and hindered the way when the fiedge fhould beginne: for this they accounted their wisestionists, and best meanes, to abide a long lingering fiedge.

If any man durst but speake a word, or expresse by any apparant signe, that hee difliked the present License vnto all Villanics, it was presently termed Treafon, and flatte conspiracy with the Romaines; yea, it was a finne deferting terrible punishment. And as great an offence it was, to mourne or lament for Parents or Friends, being flaine or murthered in these vprores.

To prophane the verie holyest part numberlesse calamities) almost altoge- of the Temple, with Rapes, Murthers, and Massacres; they sayde, it was fighting in defence of the Temple, and for the Religion of the countrey. To beare away violently the riches out of the Temples Treasurie, and to waste them in all Villanie and abhominable excesse: this was tearmed, borrowing money, wherewith to defend the feruice ordayned by GOD. And vpon paine of death, no man durft flye, or get him gone, from these horrible, diuellish, and dangerous

Moreover, fuch as dwelt in the Citie, the lews fuch beheld (beside these publike miseries) as sildom any their owne bodies, their wives, children, natton was e uersubied to and goods, exposed to the violent & vnbridled attempts of those mercilesse Villaines. In breefe, there could not be thought or denifed any injury or opprobrious behaviour, which the miserable Icwes might feare or expect from the Enemy, but they first made triall thereof Men forward nemy, but they first made triall thereot to vseany in open themselves, vsing no resistance at all object vsean against it. Wherefore the coming of the themselves. enemies army was no way dreadful vnto them, but rather gladly defired; and even but as a tolleration, or rather a recreation (when the City was sharply assayled) the feditious factions were enforced to joyne their forces, for repulling the enemy, and to breath awhile, from their owne dome-

Ricke theeneries and warres. The last fix moneths of this warre, after that the Citty was round engirt with enemies, and themselves had pilled, polled, and miferably spoyled all that they could by their intestine robberies they began to feele a famine in the heighth of extremity, which was accompanied likewife with fo greeuous a Peftilence, that in Peftilence & the time of the fiedge, about eleation extrangit, hundred thousand me died by the plague whereof thete and famine. During this war alfo, great died, 11000 multitudes wer daily murdred within the wals, by the mutinous and rebellious factionifis: & in the affaults, furprizals, and facking of the city many millions of people loft their lives. Also in the war time, there were taken 97000, persons, who were partly sold as slaues, and partly difinbuted to rounde neighbouring great desouncedy Citties, there to bee giuen and detions red by wilde beafts, in publique Playes,

The begining of the fiedge.

He fourth day of the first moneth, Xantiqua (which is Aprill with vs) the Citic of lerufalem was befiedged neere to the feast of Easter.

The two and twentith day after, Titus Preparation were compelled to fight as Fencers in the effaying (in vaine) to have it yeilded, rai for battery. Theaters, with the like fury as hostile efed his Bulwarkes, and prepared his Ennemies: and some were sent into Morea gines to batter the City.

The scuenth day of Artemision, which is May, Bazetha (that is to fay, the new ci- The tiking of ty, the first wall being taken) which was a the first wall by the Romis part of the Citty beyond the Temple towards Bifa, newly annexed, and enuironed with walles by the first Agrippa) was seized on by the Romanes.

The tweifth day of the faid month, the fecond wall was taken, and yet the fame day it was recourred againe.

The fixteenth day, the Romanes hauing taken the other wal again the second time, enjoyed the base or lower part of the City, which the Iewes called Acra, & was feated beneath on a little hill.

The one and twenty day, two parts of Two parts of the Citty were loft, when the lewes (being graciously entreated by Titus) disdained to embrace peace. Then the Souldiers began to mount their scaladoes neere to the Towre called Antonia, ioyning to the third wall, where their Enfignes and Bulwarkes being raifed in twelve dayes. they were againe as quickely burned by the lewes.

All the whole moneth of Dention, the which answereth to that of lune, the Romanes were ferioufly bufied, in engirting the whole Citty with a Wall, to hinder the bringing of victualles to the Iewes, and also to bereaue them from all means of flight.

The first day of Panemon, which referreth it felfe to our July, Titus taking compaffion on the people, whom he knew to dve by the extremity of the Famine and Pestilence, onely through the obstinacie of some among them; being defirous to deliuer them without long delay, he ere-&ed new Terraffes vp aloft, and began to batter the third wall, called Antonia, veric difficult to be surprized . This Antonia, was a most magnificent building, and very strongly munited nere to the Temple, foure square in forme, and carrying the greatnesse of a very large Castle. Herod the Great had builded it, in fauour of the Herode the Soueraigne Sacrificers, and gaue it the Great builded name of Marke Anthony the Triumuire. Within that goodly Monument, the Ornaments belonging to the High-Prieftes were continually kept.

the city taken

A wall built

ing on Antonia the thirde

this Antonia

The

Such matters as they accounted in their madne to be Treafor & confpiring with the Ro

634 The Antonia

The furpri-

ning of the

Temple.

zing and but

The batterie

of the City of

The hie town

All the Cittle

The Natioin

taken.

burnt.

Dauid.

The fixt day, the Antonia was wonne, King Danids reigne, untill the finall debecause the walls fell downe of theselues, on that fide where the Iewes hadde vndermined, to get foorth of the Cittie, with intent to burne the enemies rampiers.

The eight day of Loion, which is the moneth of August, after that the Iewes had beene many times exhorted, to defire peace of fo gracious a Conquerour; after they had repulsed his often Ambasfages by base injuries, and wicked abuses: the Temple was forcibly taken, beeing a worke well worthy of admiration. And (contrary to the Edict of Titus) it was fet on fire by the offended Souldiers. So that it burned the very fame day, when as (fix hundred, threefcore, and nineteen yeares before past) it was burned by Nabuchodonofor, Collonell of the Chaldeans.

The twentith day, was the batterie of the high Towne (called the City of Dauid) begunne: after that the Iewes (once more admonished to lay downe Armes) refused peace, being gently offered vnto

The seventh day of Gorpiaion, which is our September, the high part of the City was taken : the Fortreffe whereof was the Temple, as the Antonia was Bulwarke to the Temple.

The eight day, all the City of Ierufalem, (pilled & ranfacked before) was conuerted all into ashes.

The foure and twentith day of October, Titus celebrating the birth-day of his brother Domitian in Cafarea (a Cittie on the Sea-coast) had Playes there of fundry kindes: wherin were brought forth three thousand lewes captines; some of them being denoured by beafts, the rest killing one another, fencing and fighting each against another.

The feuenth day of Nouember, Titus went to Berytha, a City in Syria, where he celebrated the Nativity of his Father Vespasian; & where (in sports & pastimes presented before the Romans and Grecians) a great nüber of captine lewes, were some trodden to death, others hackt, hewed and torne in peeces.

I have collected this small discourse, concerning the wofull confummation of this Citty, which fometime was the principall feate of Gods people, and of his dithese histories uine Doctrine : from the eight yeare of

struction, being eleuen hundred, thirtie and seuen yeares. The due Observation whereof, may ferue to testify the mighty anger of God, against the despisers of his Sonne, and of his word in him reuealed; exampling vs. from falling into the like calamities, either by a violent appetite of oppressing the true Doctrine, or to darken & obscure it by false interpretations, or (vtterly contemning it) by wandering into enery wickednesse.

Now I returne againe to Agrippa, who His returne (according as hath beene fayde) detefting backeto the the furious madnesse of his Nation, and ry of King Aeuidently fore-feeing their wofull ruine) Brippafent ayde to Velpalian, making VV arre against the Iewes, and by that means partly faued his owne Countries, from the lamentable spoile happening in this warre. Nero being dead, and Galba chosen Em- The death of perour, he proiected a journey to Rome, Nero, and fee with Titus the sonne of Vespasian, to en- Cession of Galba, treate the confirmation in his kingdome by the new made Emperor. But contrary winds intercepting them, they could not compasse what was intended: but receyued tydings neere vnto Achaia, of Galbaes ney to Rome. death: which was the reason, that Titus returned towards Syria, Agrippa holding on his course for Rome. But Italy beeing embraced with civill warre, because Otho tending Viciliar one (successor to Galba) being slaine, and Fis-passani lib tellius presuming to the Empire, Agripha ted Emperot. was very hastily called backe to Indea by Letters, where he affifted Vefpafian to bee faluted Emperor by his foldiers, and fafely to conduct a well prouided Armie towardes Italy, with purpose to encounter the Captaines of Vitellius. So he left his fonne Titus (with fome legions) to beate down the Iewes, especially them of Ieru-(alem, as hath bin faid before.

I finde no other matter of Agrippa, or Howlong h any other of the posterity of Herode the gippa reignd. Great: but onely Philo, writing of Agrip-deed. pa, faith; That he reigned seuen and twenty yeares. He dyed then (by Philoes account) in the threescore and eighteenth yeare of Christ, the seauenth of Vespafian, and the fift yeare after the destruction of Ierusalem.

Philo further faith, that this Agrippa had Agripine, for and furcellor a fonne, named Agripine, who reigned to K. Agrippo thirty yeares after the death of his father: wherefore he attained to the year an hundred and eight after the death of Christ, and to the eight of Traiane the Emperor, which yeare Philo, being ouer-spent with yeares, foretold would be the last of his rcigne.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of three great and notable Doubtes, which the ancient Philosophers knew not how to resolue, and for what cause.

demination of ancient

naturall de

Chap. 23.

musil defire

HE ancient Philosophers. illumined by the gard God, madecurious fearch into all things belonging to nature and verified all their illumined by the gifte of

propositions (without contradiction or repugnancie) by other propositions meer ly naturall. Notwithstanding, they never knew how to resolue three things, verie doubtfull and of importance, neyther could yeelde a reason for the causes of their originall.

The first was, that they well knewe a defire given to man by nature, that hee would neuer dye, neither feele any paine or greeuance whatfocuer:but to line happily in the pleasures of this world, without the want or neede of any thing; and yethee could neuer attaine to the end thereof. On the other fide, having made this proposition, that God and Nature neuer did any thing in vaine, & that this appetite in man enfired thence, whereof they coucted to finde the cause; considering belide, that in all other naturall effects the proposition alwayes did verifie it selfe: they were veterly confounded in infinite perplexities, being neuer able to compasse the end.

The fecond was, they faid & affirmed naturally in like manner, that cuery man felt in himselse a peruerse carnall inclination, or sensuality, quite contrarie to the former appetite of vnwillingnesse to dye: and yet this carnall lusting defire, canfeth full difficulty; but feemed (as it were) a man fall into diuers diseases, which are the abridging of life, yea hafteneth on death, wherto his other appetite is an vt-

and pompe; feeking to winne them couragiously in the field; where soonest of all they meete with death, or elfe hear away wounds, maimes, afflictions of mind, & other misfortunes, quite contrary totheir defire indeed.

The third doubt proceeded from the The .doubt, order of nature, all inferiour things beeing gouerned by their fuperiour : as wee orde in the fee the elements obedient to the celestial bod of mar. bodies; the Orbes and Spheres to the mooning intelligence, and all the intelligences to the cheefest of al, which is God loued and defired. Onely in man is this order peruerted; for he being composed of a foule and a body, the fleth which is the vileft part of all other, flands repugnant to reason, yea and to the soul, which them stand is the very noblest part of all: and (which blep it of all is farre worse) draweth it to the bent of other in man. his owne wicked will. And therefore the Apostle saide ; That hee felt a Lawe in his members, repugnat to the law of his thoghts, and attracted him to fin.

The Philosophers that were before the comming of Christ, neuer knew how to find out the occasion of this disorder: yet making curious fearch for it, fell into many and fundry errors. Wherefore Anagorastaide : This exorbitant irregularity, The opinion happened at the beginning of the world, and and faying of when all things were confused in the ancient Anaxagoras, Chaos. For the intellect being separated by the discordace discord, and reiogned by concord, all things of things in were created good, and well ordered in their kinde; onely man excepted, whose slesh hee Saw to be ill disposed, and disagreeing with the reasonable soule. And therefore, euen as in that Chaos thefe two things were difcordant : so in like manner afterward, they still

continued repugnant, contrary to the rule do

order of allother things in the world . In

this manner, this poore Philosopher im-

puted the blame of all, to the Dinine in-

tellect, which is God himfelfe.

Others faide: That this proceeded from the celestiall constellations, under the which The indgeman is engendred, and receivesh birth. For other Philo-Aristotle durst neuer bee so bolde, as (o- phers, and A penly)to yeeld a refolution of this doubtto contradict himselse sometimes, saying , Senfuality is naturally enclined to evil, howbeit (with great difficulty)it may fometime be ruled or tamed by the moral vertues. Moreouer, many couct after riches | And in another place he faith, That the fe-

riflotle him-

of Domitian celebrated by Titus, with the death of gooo.lewes. Titus honou

> The cheefe reason why the Authour made the col

red his fathers

bi th day.

licity which is atcheened by the vertues mo- [rall is the gift of God. By confequence then those morall vertues, in whose operation the happinelle of man doth confift; must be the gift of GOD, and no way natu-

Contrarywife, the Manichees, defirous

to render a reason for this peruerse disor-

der, saide : That there were two soules in

The Manichees main. tained a man to haue two foules.

man, the one good, made of the substance of the Prince of Light; and the other badde, made of the Substance of the Prince of darkenesse, and these do cause this continuall com-Origen afterward saide; That before the Origens con

creation of the world, all things were conferued in Heauen which sinned against God: & ceit of this irtherefore (as apunishment) they were disporegularitie in fed into ill complexioned bodies, and from thence enfued this controverse in man.

Aug.in Lib.1. De duab, enin Et in lib.s. de Nat.boni.

All these detestable opinions wer confuted by Saint Augustine, writing against the Manichees; where, by long & pregnant reasons, hee producth the occasion of the subuersion of this order; and that because they had no understanding in the facred Scriptures, they veterly loft that light. For in them is declared to vs, the full resolution of these doubts, and there may plainly be discerned, that these two propositions are good and true, and both of them in the order of Nature. To wit, that God and nature neuer did any thing voide of purpole, and that it is very conuenable, that a man (by nature) should not desire to dye, but to leade a happie kinde of life, and yet without power of attaining thereto; not because he hath this defire given him in vaine, for it is truely naturall: but to obtaine the end and effe@therof, is a matter accidental to man,

God created man immortall, and not b

Death not natural to o first father, nor fuccelul to vs.

our prime father, neither successively enfuing to vs, but accidentall; beecause it was not the intention of God.

Thus come wee then to refolue this doubt, that defire not to dye, nor endure refound any paines; is given to vs by nature, and not in vaine because the power was giuen vs to obtaine the effect, but in regard of our disobedience, the desire stil remaineth, and cannot be taken from vs. By the felfefame reason is the second doubt an- second. fwered: for of our felues, by carnall obfeenity, and gluttinous gourmandize, we purchase death, and make way to this

disorder. In like manner, the third is refolued Refolution in by Adams sinne committed, whereby he thethird. loft the originall righteoufnesse vyhich God had given him, which ferued him as a bridle to moderate himselfe by just order, and so this harmony fell into confusion. For the foule, which ought to gouern the body, as beeing the thing most noble the body, as beeing the thing most noble and excellent; came afterward to bee gouerned by the fenfe, and by the bodye. And so wee see enidently, that this subuersion is no way naturall, but acciden-

By this meanes then, the proposition remaineth firme & true, that those things most worthy and most noble, ought to gouernethem of leffe noble and inferior quality: which fayleth not, neyther can, as well wee may observe in the celestiall bodies. And if in man it fallethout otherwise, it is by accident of the faulte, deferuing this and worfe, but not by Na-

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Such Ceremonies as were wfed by the Romaines, before they mooned any warre.



Vch as haue reade the facred Ceremonies, and Religious obfernations which of pate and
were vsed by the auncient
Romaines, as well in mat-

ters concerning peace, as attemptes and enterprizes of warre: doe not make any wonderment at all of the great Victories

by them obtained, against so many furi- | like afterward; wherein finding obstinacy; ous people, and most potent nations. On the contrary also, they maruell not at the decadence of that Empire, which begans when they began to contamne those Ceremonics and religion . For we may obferue by infinit histories, full of examples, that fo long as they were best obedient to religion; their Common-weales profpe red fo much the more happily, & the enterprizes of their Captaines fell out then; fuccessively. As was well noted in Pompey, Brennus, and infinite other, who albeit they were idolaters land neuer knew the true God: yet it fcemed (neuertheles) that by certaine meanes of terrestrialline; tribution, God fauoured them that were religious. And it might be perhaps to this end, that like as the people were then zer lous in a religion, whereof they had neither foundation, or any perfect beleefe; they would (by far stronger reason) bee good observers of the true faith, if it had bin renealed to them, as now it is votto us, The effects then make it enident that hea uen neuer left them, without fome apparance of good profperity, & fortunate fucceffe in their temporall affaires.

The Geremonies which the auncient Romaines observed in times of warre, or peace, were many and divers; wherein I must needs be filent, because the relating of them all, would require more time the I am alowed; and it might offend to fpeak of some, and not of other. My intent therfore is, to make relation of fine only, and especially by them observed, before war was mooned against any Pronince. To the end, that moderne Princes may perceiue, how farre our of the way they wander, in attempting war inconfiderately, & making no confultation first to GOD: wherein (if they judge rightly) they may conceive, that ill fucceffe happeneth to them by no other occasion, they living in Religion fo farre inferiour to Ethnickes

When newes came to Rome, concerning the rebellion of fome Prouince, or of any trouble gitten by fome barbarous Prince to their countries, or to anie of their confederates: they fent ambaffadors to him, by whom the Senatogaue to vnderstand, that they would know, in what maner the wrong received should be repaired, with refraining from offering the principall Cittizens, as intending to gra-

and Idolaters.

then war was intimated! The Senate hauing created a Gaptain for this expedition, called the Sactificers who were conmanded to innocate the Gods with their prayersifor the Romans neuer went forth to fhed the blood of their enemies, varill the Priefts had first webt and made their folemne prayers in the Temples. Afterward, the Senate beeing affembled, went to the temple of hunisquiper they fwore a most folenm path. That at all times when the enemy (against whom the instant warre going to the was published would require a new coufe- temple of lu deration publishers, or defire pardon for the piter, & their Oath there offence pathotementy found never be denied taken. him. This being don, the Gonful blegged for the enterprize went to the Capitole, and theremade a folemnayow, to flight a one of the Godein whom he reposed cofidence to offer forme lingular thing vito vammade in himsiffic returned home victorious from the Capitole. the war. And were the offering of neuer forgreat yalug, yet the people floode obliged to pay it. Then the bannen of the Eagle, being the ancient enfigne of the Romans, was broght forth into Campus Martim, which they did, to let the people ynderstand, that in Rome ther might no feaths bacelebrated, fo long as their fellow Citizone and kindred were in war: & fo bringing out the enfiguess, delivered them to their feneral Captains. But first, a Prætor mounted on the gate called Salaria, caufing a Trumpet there to found, while the their captains foldiers reddiliod flidit pay. Wherby may be gathered, that they flird not their armics at any time, till they had first appeafed and honored their Gods, and likewife made their orifons for the prosperitie of their Captains, and vertuous carriage to their enemies in conquering them. For, if their Confuls (appointed for war) in coquering any Province or city, made not enident testimony, aswell of their vertue as valor, they were greenously punished by the Senat. Hereof we have many examples, but two only shall ferue my turn: the one for vling vertue in his campe; the other, for due punishment insticted vpon him, who (being victorions) foiled his reputation in base manner. Fabrities, be e-

The Confuls

The Enfigne of the liagle, the Confull in Campus Mar

The other en-

ing encamped with his army of Romanes | The honorabefore Fidena, a schoolmafter of the Cit- ble act of Fatie came forth with the Sonnes of diners difloyall and ichoolmafter.

Both the pro politions aprr.oued to be good and true

created man immortall, in such fort, as ef-

fectually (according to the very foundest

opinion of all Dinines)he could not have

dyed, nor be subjected to any miserie, if

hee had observed his commaundement.

But having transgressed, hee ought inftly

to fuffer death, and the miseries of the

world; therefore, because he obeyed not

his command, he incurred death and all

afflictions. So that by the finne of difo-

bedience(as the Apostile said)death came

into the world. Hereby it appeareth the,

that death was not (at the first) natural to

and not naturall. For it is plain and apparant, that God

The Confuls

of Rome make

warre against

the Sarmates

Pius was ap -

the expeditio.

and Lucius

pointed for

The Scienari

tific the Confull with them, and fo prefented them vnto him. The Confull (albeit hee might haue detayned them, and and thereby have made himfelfe Lord of the Cittie) not onely refused to accept them : but stripping the Schoolemaister naked, and binding his hands, hee gaue a Rod to every Scholler, and fo fent them (whipping him) backe to their fathers. This benignitie tooke fuch preuzyling power in the foules of the Cittizens; that they yeelded themselves instantly to the

The other was thus. In the yeare of Romes foundation, 218. warre was deliberated by the Senate and Confulles, against the Sarmates } and other people inhabiting by the Mountaine Caucasus, which (according to Cosmographers) deuiding Afia in the middelt, terminareth Syria on the one fide, and finishetli India on the other; where, by extremitie of cold, the Vine hath no ability to grow. Lucius Pins was created Confull, and appointed for this expedition; where, was ging cruell warre against them : Fortune was one while fanourable to him, & then againe frowhing. But in the time of a ence concluded betweene them, Lucius very friendly entertained the Sarmates Captaines, and having divers times butketted them, perceiuling that they were

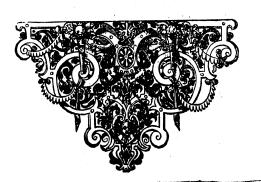
lickerously affected to wine, because it was a rarity among them; at last he made them a bountifull feast, wherein he fitted them a bountituil learn, where the triber with great planty of wines that they which want to him) yeelded the which want whole Prouitice tributary to the Roman had nothe people. The warres fo concluding, & the Power today Confull being returned to Rome, hee demanded Triumphes; which not only was denied him by the Senate, but also his forme of victory fo abhorred by the that publikely they did put him to death, and for his greater defamation, engraued an Epitaph on his Tombe, speaking in this manner. 1 () กอบเฉลาเลือง เลือง

The Epitaph appointed by the Romaines, to be engraven on the Tombe of

Lucius Pius. Here lyeth the Confull Lucius Pius , who ,not An Episph by Armes in the fielde, but by carrowfing at hing Conqui bis Table : not by the Lance, but plenty of tor. wine conquered the Sarmates.

And yet the Senate, not fatisfied with this his differace; caused publikely to bee proclaimed thoroughout Rome, that all (whatfoener) had bene wonne in the Romaine peoples name, by Lucius Pius, shold be accounted as nothing. And wrote (moreover) to the Sarmates; that they denyed any Conquest of them; but referred them vnro their former priviledge and liberty.

The end of the fixt Booke.





THE SEVENTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

¶ Of the Gouernement and Administration of Iustice observed in the Commonwealth

vea is a noble Cittie (leated in the Country of Tuscam) so called of Lucomenus, King of the Tuscanes. Strabo saith, that Lucais a Citieneare to

the mountaines of Luna (and nowadayes the Country is called Lunigiana) and that the Region yeeldeth very woorthy men. apt and able in valour for Armes: there being a multitude of knights, from whom the Senate received the Military order.

But because we are to discourse of our times, I fay, that Luca is now found to be about two miles in circuite, seated singularly, and in a good place. It containeth about foure and thirty thousand persons within the walles; and there are rich families, because the men of this Citty do trafficke greatly in merchandife, and especially in matters of Silkes: for which (amongest all Christians) they have no meane name . In the time of Castrucio Castracani (who was of the Interminelli) he became Lord thereof, there beeing a division of many families, that would not obey a Tyrant; they vied the Arte of making filke together, derining great wealth from divers parts of Italie. They brought also into Florence, the Artes of making cloth of golde and filuer, whereby they attained to inestimable riches. The men are (naturally) very curteous and modeft. not niggardly, but bountifull, and therefore prosperity commeth the more freely vpon them. The Lucan tongue in Tuf-

because they have no medling with novous accents, which are common to all other cities of the Prouince. This fo small a cittie, hath a long time maintained it felfe in freedome, and fo flill doth, with good and fubstantiall orders.

The Councell.

HEr maine foundation (as it is in all other Common-wealths) confettes of the Councell; because on them depend, and from them are deriued all the other Magistrates, that are members of a bodie so well ordered. These Councellors do discourse on the State occasions, and are (indeede) Fathers of that Common-wealth, It is compounded of three kindes of persons, because some are ordinarily of the Councel, and they continue awhole yeare. Some others are inuited lors. ad bene placitum, and are not ordinary. Some others are subrogated in the place of fuch as die, and fo endure for a full yeare. This Councell confisteth of an hundred and three score Cittizens, but ordinarily are in number an hundred and twentie.

The Signoria.

The City of Luca is divided into three parts, which (there) they vie to tearine Terzieri: The one is of S. Salnadore, the fecond of S. Pauline, and the third of S. Martine, The Councell doe elect the Signoric from the three forenamed Terzieri, that is, for every Terziere they ereate three men, which are nine in ful number. Beside these, they elect the Gonfaloniere, who is the head, or chiefe of the Common-wealth, & (for examples fake) he is first elected from the Terziero of S. Saulour; next from that of Saint Pauline; and the third time from that of Saint Martine: and the Terzieri being once fo cany, is held to be very sweete and pure, gone ouer, the Gonfaloniere returneth

The Languagei (weete

or creating all other Ma giftrates.

rall degrees

uiour, S.Pauline and S. Martine.

Some hold this Office to be the cheefe StanderdThree Secre-

640

for election to S. Sauieur, and fo succel- it fine Lordes or Signiors, they remaine finely (each after other) according to the with him : yet notwithstanding he canot forefaid order.

Elders, Con forts, or Con panions.

Acount mode of the Ballot to their full numbèt.or ouer againe.

The outhwi

ty of the A!-

bringing the

elected per-

fons to the

Magiftrates.

formeri in

liuing abroad, other are to be elected, called Antiani, and the election is made in they tearme Affortitori, one for each Terziero. These, have the charge of couning the Ballots of them that are elected, culling out such as they think fittest, after that the Councell have made choyse of many men, and then they elect the Gonfaloniere. And in making this election, the Affortitori fit in Councell separately els rebaiotted in a place, and account the Ballots vntill they come to the number : which beeing not compleate, they reballot them ouer againe, vitill they be an hundred & eighty in number. And neither such as are ilibrogated, nor the other ballotted, are published to the Councel; but onely are made knowne to the Affortitori. And becanfeino fraud or deceit may enfu by the Affortitori itwo principall chosen Fryars are as their affillants; one of the order of S. Dominicke, and the other of S. Fran-

Thefe Affortitori hane Authoritie, to: bring the men elected to the Magistrates, at fuch time as they think fitting in feueral months: and this deputation done by the Affortitori (who are the prime men of Luca i) it is kept by them in fecret, & they are sworne not to reneale it. The Affortitori created, then they create the Seigniory, who cannot bee vanquished, if they haue two third partes of the Ballots, alby none but onely by the Affortitori. The charge of the Seignory is to hear (freely) matters of justice and punishment, being alwaies prefent in the Palace, & may not depart thence under capitall penalty: the in the Palace, publike purfe payeth their expences.

By this forenamed body of ten, one other officer is chosen, whom they call Comandatore, and this new man they make neere voto them, his government lafting no longer then three daies: in which time he hath liberty and authority to commad all the other; yea, and the Confaloniere, & is Patron in enery busines. And although the Supplications which com to the Signory, are prefented to the Comandatore, & lifthe wil not prefent them to the colledge

dispose of them without the authoritie of By these men, and by the Gonfaloniere the Signiory. And if the Comandatore propone the supplications to the Signorie,& there they paffe two thirds the Gonfaloled Antiani, and the election is made in the election is made in this manner. Three men are chosen, who nieve propones them afterwardes in the the Signal, Councell. The authority of the Signorie Power, extendeth vnto straungers, but not ouer the Citizenstand they propone al things, but conclude nothing.

The Secretaries Office. The Office of the Secretaries (who are) three in number) is very important. These taries, and its men haue authority; onely in matters of- authorite. fensive to the maiesty of the Commonwealth, being absolute in that case, & are about the Gonfaloniere. But true it is, that they can do nothing without the Gonfaloniere; and before they conclude any action they must tender the cause vnto the Councell. Sometime it falleth out, that feeking judiciously into the matter, they accomplish it, & afterward render a reafon for it to the Councel, when they have done it: either, because they coulde not congregate the Councell in the instant, or in regarde the cause necessarily required, to have flich fodaine expedition.

The Councell of Conference. The Colloquie, or Councell of Conference, is composed of 18. Citizens, and they are elected by the Councell. These where days they are elected by the Councell. men, if the Lordes are doubtfull in any matter, and that the case cannot be easily deliberated: they meet together, and difcourse on the cause propounded to the Councell, and after they have discussed though the forefaid Ballots are to be feen | it pregnantly, then they determine together, whether it is to bee granted by the Councell, or no.

The Councell of fixe.

Thefe fix men (being of found reputation) have charge of the expences & pro-fits for common imployment. They pro-or received uide and command all things, which paffe uennues for in mony accounts, and are as Gouernors generall vice of the rents and reuennewes. They have alfo a Chamberlaine, who is the executer of their deliberations. And all these are likewise chosen by the greater Councell. The Rota.

In many Cities of Italy, this office is ordinary, confifting of three forraine Doc- liming out of tors, within the compasse of fiftie miles. the Cities la One of them hath the Title of Potestata;

the second is Judge of malefactors, & the third is Judge in civill causes. By turnes they have their feuerall changes, and euery fixe moneths, one of the Centers as Potestare, beeing first judge of malefa-Aors; and his Office of Potestate beeing past, hee becommeth Judge in causes ciuill. So that each one of them is Potestate, Judge for Malefactours, and Judge in ciuil occasions, as it comes to his turn. If the Potestate haue (perhaps) a Citizen in his power; he doth no more but form the Processe, and sets downe (in writing) his owne opinion, what is the merite of the delinquent, and fo it passeth vnto the Councell, who either commend, teare, or temper the opinion and fentence of the Potestate; and then in such a case, the Potestate entreth into the Councell. On strangers, the Potestate may absolutely determine, without any other: And in breefe, these three men do also discourse

The Marchants Court.

on civill matters.

These Officers are nine in number, being elected (by threes) out of the Terzieraes. They have a forraine Doctour for their Judge, being their Affistant. They iudge in causes appertaining to merchan! dife their authority ftretching (in the faid matters)to blood.

The Office for Store.

In like manner there are nine Officers, & fo chosen out of the Terzieroes. These men are the prouiders of Corne, that the Citty may continually be furnished therwith, and they hear all causes concerning the matter. Provision still beeing made for every three yeares, and the Garners diligently respected where the Come is kept, being still supplied, that there may be no want.

Six Commissioners.

And because thoroughout the whole Commiffaries Countie certain assemblies are ordained of fuch persons as are meete to manage armes: for this especiall businesses, and fuch occasions as may happen in times of warre; these sixe Commissaries have authoritie to muster and make ready bads of Souldiers, and all fuch things as are requilite for them. What focuer belongeth to this bufineffe, paffeth thorough theyr power, and their centence in their carieth allowance.

For Health.

There are likewise three especiall Prefidents, for matters concerning the countries health. Thefe Officers do regard, that Prefidents ap all the food may be found and good; that whollome dyall filth and vncleannesse may be fent out et, and cleane of the Citty, and men imploying all dili- keeping the Citie, gence, to conferue the people from being offended by any pestifferous accident, or whatfoeuer annoyance may be prejudiciall to health.

The Councell for disobedience.

And because in enery Citty, there are | Slothfull found too many perions, not enclineable Rogues and to any goodnesse, but practifing to line idle vagavicioufly, addicting themselues to lewde courfes, and are meerely opposite to all well inftituted rules, for living civilly, & in good order, therefore the men of Luca haue a Councel, which they entitle, for disobedience, and inflicting punishment on such (as by their vile example) may be the ruine of a well-policied Common- Banishment wealth. And the forme of their discipline yeares. (in this case) carieth some correspondencie with the Ostracisme vsed amongst the Athenians; only herein is this difference, that the Athenians banished such, whose greatnesse and power grew suspitious to the people, and fo fentenced them for ten years, wheras here it extended but to rafcality onely, and the fentence lasting but three yeares.

The Office for Lodgings, Eight Gentlemen are appointed to this Office, who have charge for vnderstanding the affaires of all strangers comming provider care into the Citty, and what bufineffes they and meeteto haue there. All hofts stand bound to give in writing the names of such Guestes, as werner Civic. come from any part abroad, and are not of the Citty, and those names they must deliuer to these officers. And if perchace fome one tell a lye, reporting one thing for another; he is then examined by the strappado, because the truth of his busineffethere, ought to be knowne. Such as approue themselves good and honest, being no spies or treachers to the Citie, are kindely entertained, their Lodginges orderly appointed, and their expences well respected.

The Guard.

The Signorie electeth an hundred Soldiours, living within fifty miles compasse, to bee as a Guarde for the Pallace,

The power of the Coman datore.

Their abiding

O'Supply:n ed cohe Co macadarate.

heir prouifio

Citizens are the watch and guard for the walles.

Two cirizens Commillaries & their charg

and out of this hundred are chosen Captaines and Collonels. These men haue good Wages, if they be called to guard the Walles in the night time: wheras otherwise, the guard for the wals consisteth of Cittizens artificers, such as haue wives and children, and are waged with three Crownes each man every month. At the gates stand men of the country, and each gate also hath two Cittizens Commissaries: one of them being there early in the morning at the gates opening, & fo continuing til dinner time; and at his parting commeth the other, who stayeth there til Evening, when the gates are shutte in a-

CHAP. II.

What benefite and honor it is to a Prince, to have a comely bodye, a gracious countenance, and venerable aspect.

Beauty of bo dy is no mean blessing in a Prince.

Pythagoras,

punion) which Maieflie of a Prince to be Maieflie of a Prince to be most venerable (speaking of exteriour graces) is beautic he accompani NE of the parison maketh the pinion) which maketh the INE of the parts (in mine o-

of body: which we fee to be accompanisd with fingular grauity, and which yeeldeth argument of wifedome and know-

ledge.
And although the rule of Pythagor as The faying of hath often bene noted to faile, affirming, That in a crooked body, there can never dwell crooked body a right foule (because we have seene in an ill thaped body, to reigne divers choyce vertues) yet that which is most frequent and ordinary, is to fee the contrary. And if an honourable aspect and representation, scrued to no other end in a Prince , but to encrease his authority and reuerence, yet are they much more dignified, if fome fignes of vertue and bountie doe beare them company. As on the contrary, they are diminished by ill shape and detormity. For Cicero Tayeth , The habitude of vertue is of such efficacie, that it maketh us to love him that is possessed therewith. Euen fo, Maichtie in the person of a Prince, hath a veneration meerely in it felfe, which attracteth the heartes | be Alexander.

of his subjects vnto loue: vrged thereunto (perhappes) by no expresse fantasie, in vis. Prince ought to bee vertuous, and it. conforme his actions to the beauty of his

This reason (it may be) hath induced many barbarous people to judge, that of dimension there was no man capeable of a good fpi- barour nui. rit, to bring any great attempt to fuccef- ons. full end; but onely fuch a one, as was endued (by nature) with a goodly proportion of body, and an honorable presence. Macrobius declareth, that in the Isle of wan, is, in, Meroe on Nilus, the inhabitants (who are faid to live halfe againe as long as we do) vie to elect as their Prince, him whome they know to be the strongest, and of far goodlier presence then any other. There is no man, but will repute a deformed Prince, yet vertuous; ought to be prefer- ther favoreh red before him of goodly person, and vi- comelined, cious: but when wee come to make equality of them, our affection will rather leane to the comely body, then vnto the

Demetrius, the fonne of Antigonus, was The exceller of fuch a goodly and honourable reprefentation; that there was neither Painter fon of Antior Caruer that durst attempt to portraire gonut. him: for there was in him both a sweete complexion, and terror mixed together, yet loyned with fuch manfuetude & grauity, as it plainly appeared, that hee was meerely borne, to be affected feared and reuerenced altogether . VVcc reade of The country Marius (who had so many Triumphs) that he was of such a venerable aspect, as beelife in gent ing prisoner to his enemy Silla : a French perill. man was fent by him to murther him Who entering into the prison, with his weapon ready drawne, and noting in him a verie graue and dreadfull aspect; he became to difmayed and terrified, that hee returned backe, leaving the prison open, and (by that means) was the cause of preferuing his life. Alexander the Macedonian (being but of meane stature, and not ouercomely countenanced) walking with his deerely affected Friend Ephestion: the Mother of King Darim (being verie delirous to falute Alexander) offered her courtefies to Ephestion, making him ma- flead of A ny humble reuerences. For, feeing him lexander, or hee for goodly a man of the fee for goodly a man of the fee for goodly a man of the feet of the fee to bee fo goodly a man of perfonishe verily thought, that (of necessity) hee must

The benefit of manly ap-

core lightly appeared

Historics make report, that Alcibiades, Scipio, and many other, did highly honor and make great the dignitie of their authoritie, onely by their fightly appearance: wherewith also their innated vertues being combind, did inestimable benefite to their seuerall Countries and Common-weales. On the contrary, we finde that many Princes and Captaines, as well auncient as moderne, haue bene despised for their lowe stature, and other defects of honourable presence, even to the peril of their lines, whereof I purpose to produce two examples onely.

Philopæmenes, Duke of the Achaians, and much renowned, was of so lowe stature, mil shapen presence, and deformed countenance, that when he arryred himfelfe in mechanicke habite (as oftentimes he vied to doe) he seemed rather to bee of vile and vulgare place, then woorthy to have governement of the people. He was greatly addicted to hunting, and therefore reforted very often to Megara, It fo chaunced on a certaine day, that this defire of hunting carried him further off, then hee had any willing intent to goe: fo that hee arrived at the house of a Cittizen neare adioyning, who was a fingular friend of his, and had lately before beene marryed. He had but one feruant in his company; because the rest hee had fent to other places, and being come to his friends house, he knockt at the doore: and the women looking foorth at their window, demaunded what they would have; when the fernant replyed, That Philopamenes, Duke of the Achaians came to have entertainment there. . The woman being much amazed, that

a man of fuch worth, and to much vnexpected, should come on such a fodaine thither, and (having neuer feene the Duke) reputing thefe to be but two of his fernants, which came before to give knowledge of his coming, because they were thus alone ; without returning any other answer, came and opened the dore to them. When they were entred into the house, she sent one of her servants to aducttife her husband speedily (who was then abroad at the next village:) requiring Philopamenes & the other with him, to fit downe in the meane time, while the bestirred her felfe to prepare supper. About the house trots she and her maid,

her thoughts much builed and molefted, beginning one thing, and then another, but neuer going thorow or finithing any, though the had but little time of allowance. At last, looking on Philopæmenes, who fare muffled in his cloake, and might be more cold then hee would make thew lette the wold of (whereat (happily) the more smiled, not have then at his deformitie) the, fomewhat roundly (like animble flirring hufwife) prayed him to lay by his Cloake, and help her to make a good fire, because her want. other feruants were elfe-where imploied, and that supper might be made readie in due time, against the coming of his Lord and maifter.

Heereupon, he tooke a hatchet which the gaue him, and fell to cleaning wood Philopomen for the kitchin : having formerly given | cleveth wood order to his man, to take no other knowledge of him, left the woman (hould difcerne any feruple of the deceit. While hee stoode stoutly to this employment; home came the mafter of the house, who knowing Philopamenes, and wondering to see him so homely busied; did him humble reuerence , faying ; My Lord, this is no office for you to undergoe. Whereto (Imiling) hee replyed : Worthy friend , les A free conmee alone, I doe but pay the penaltie due to leislonot his my deformitie.

In our time, Ferdinand King of Spaine, who had the title of Catholike, a verywife and different Prince; but of flature rather too lowe, then of any mediocritic, and although hee had a royall face, and was a man of great governements yet it appeared plainely in him, that it was not correspondent to his other members. Be- Ferdinand, fides, hee virially wore his garments of called the cloth, whereby he was rather thought to Spaine. be a Cittizen, then any way taken to be

The King transiling (on a time) to Naples, accompanied with Queene Ifabell, and beeing there louingly expected; by occasion of weather, hee arrived at a hauen towne on the Sea coaft (called * Pwteoli) with his onely Gally, the rest bee- Campania, ing much better prepared, remaining be- eight miles hinde. Landing there, he was honourably received by the Inhabitants, according to the extent of their power in such a place. While the Pallace was furnishing, and prouision for his diet preparings hee walked alone by himselfe in a Hall,

the tooke him in fome

chen to make ready supper.

Another Hi-

1.1b. 3 cay 7.

oca gorth

The conference betweene a blunt Fifterman and the King

The Fisherman would not credite outward apparance.

The Kings pleafant words to his Lords.

Another Hiftory concer ning the fame more diffafte full manner.

The King in danger of life by his de formity.

where (very soone after) a poore blunt fisherman came to him, who (by chance) had taken a goodly fifh, wherewith he intended to present the King. The Fisherman, not knowing him, defired to vnderstand where the King was : he presently answered him; I am he. The Fisherman brake foorth into loude laughter, imagining that hee had meerely mocked him wherefore hee prayed him agayne, to tell him where the King was: and he againe affirmed himselfe to be hee. But the Fitherman, difcerning in him no maiesticall refemblance, either for his person or habite, and no attendants about him fitting for a King; returned backe, and carryed away the fish with him. Hereat the King could not chose but smile, and some of his especiall Lords and Fauourites immediately entring (after they had faluted him with their wonted reuerence) laughing outright, thus hee spake viito them. Lordes, did yee not meete a Fisherman going foorth? If you doe not goe and give him af-Surance, that I am your King, wee shall loofe the best Fish that ever I faw . Instantly the Fisherman returned backe againe, and beholding him (whom he fo much negle-Acd) to bee fo duetifully reverenced by fuch worthy persons; he beganne to conceiue in his foule, that (vndoubtedly) he was the King, and falling vpon his knees before him, he humbly presented the fish

Wee may account this for a merry accident, in regarde of another which hapned to him, and by the fame occasion of mif-cenfuring his person. For, at another time, the same King being at Barcellona, going in Procession with his courtly attendants, as wayting on the Sacrament, on the day dedicated to that follemnity: hee was fodainely fet vpon by a Spaniard, who gave him so mightie a stroke with a great Dagger on his necke, as had beene sufficient to finite off his head; but that the blow was rebated by a great chaine of golde, being then (accidentally) about his necko. This Spaniard being taken, and suspected that hee had fome other complices in the action; was put to the tortures, where he would confelle nothing elfe, but onely that he was moued out of his owne mind to do it, in meere hatred he bare to the King. Heere-

fhould so prouoke him to hate the King? He answered; Truely nothing else, but because his countenance did not please him, for, it appeared fo vngracious vnto him, that if they did fet him at libertie, yet he would kil him, what so euer came of it. Questionlesse, it was a strange case, that a man should so desperately endanger his owne life, because a King was not formed to his liking.

CHAP. III.

Cofthe inhumane actions, and monstrous cruelties of Aristotimus the tyrant; a subielt well befeeming a Tragedy.



Ristorimm, vnder the fauors, and forces of King Antigones, tyrannically vsurpedouer the * Elensians, exercifing his power so intemperature.

fing his power fo intempe-rately, that he omitted not any kinde of tica near # injury or crueltie, whereby he might af- thens, where flichthe miserable Cittizens; for he was Cerestide (by nature) more inhumane and cruell, then any man liuing in his time. Hee added to this his cruel disposition, the councell of barbarous men, to whom hee not only gaue the rule of the kingdome, but also the gardance of his owne person. Among all the extraordinary cruelties, that which he inflicted on Philodamus, a very honourable Cittizen, deserueth to be recorded for a most especiall example.

This Philodamus had a daughter of ad-This Philodamu had a daughter of ad-mirable beauty & fingular graces, named Mica, on whom a foldier called Lucium (an especiall fauourite to the Tyrant) became daughtet & daughtet became fo extremely enamored; that (in a bold & ca. imperious manner) he fent to her father, commading him to fend him his daugh. ter. Philodamus, much afflicted at fo fawcie a commaund, & knowing what power Lucius had with the Tyrant, fearing also what might happen to him and her mother, laboured by perswassons, that his claughter (hould go to him. But the yong Virgin, who more prized honor then life, by meere inftinct of her noble education, fell on her knees before her father, & embracing his knee very (trictly, humbly entreated, that hee would not expose her to Mica to bet fuch monstrous dishonour, but rather to Father. fenher dead before his face, then deliver upon he was demanded, what occasion her to such shame and indignitie.

The father being moued by her teares to compassion, sate downe by his wofull wife, and forrow now fung gricfe in three fad parts, which admitted no leifure for a finall resolution. Whereat Lucius growing impatient, through the violence of his hote and fiery luft, feeing the mavd not brought, according to his wicked expectation: he ran himfelfe to the house, where finding her on hir knees before hir parents, fall holding her fathers legge in her armes; with heavy threatnings, hee commanded her to arife, and goe thence along with him immediately. Shee continuing her wofull complaints, refufing to rife, or liften to his menaces; the cruellman, tearing off her garments to her maked skinne, did ftrike and beate her in most vnmanly manner; all which she endured with a most constant courage, not breathing foorth fo much as a figh, but as one prepared to fuffer his vetermost

On their knees fell the mournefull father and mother, before the wretched man, not able to abide forufull a spectacle, entreating him, to take pitty on the Virgine, and their age. But feeing they could not preuayle with this mercileffe barbarian; they called for helpe to the gods and men, whereat hee wexing extreamely displeased, drew out his sword, and flew the Virgine, as thus the embraeed the knee of her father. Although this horrible cruelty mooned not the Tyrant aiote, yet the Cittizens fodistasted the deede; that fome of them hee punished with present death, and banished some other, fo that eight hundred fearefully fledde into Aetolia: who afterward writing backe to the Tirant, defired to much fauour of him, that their wines and children (with some part of their goodes) might bee fent thither to them, to line with their husbands.

The women, not a little glad at this good motion, beganne to make vp their fardells, fome prouiding wagons, others horfes, for conveying thence their goods and children.

Vpon the day appoynted for their departure, all the Gates were fet open for them to passe out at; their waggons and horsics loaden with their children and goods; and as they offered to iffue forth, diners Sergeants and Catch poles (flan- | dure, the outrage and crueltic inflicted

ding ready for the purpole) cryed out to them with dreadfull threatnings, to ftay the monand paffe no further, ouerthrowing the cruellacte of waggons and horses, laden with their Atalonaus, goods and children, fo that they were not women and able to escape out of the crowds: but be- children. held their yoong children bruifed in pecces vnder their heels, they not being any way vnable to helpe them. Afterward, fuch women and children as were left aline, the Souldiers affembled them together, driving them on before them, (like heards of cattell) beating them with staues towards the Tyrants Pallace, who (caufing all their goods to be taken from them) imprisond them and their children together.

This horrible cruelty did highly dif-

pleafe the Cittizens, who not knowing

how they might belt incite the Tyrant to pitty their wines : tooke fixeteene velfall A Procession Virgins, confectated to Diomfine, and at- or fixteene tyring them in their religious habites ! veitallyinging they tooke facred things out of the Tem- cruell Tyrant ple in their hands, and (in follenne manner of a Procession) went towards the tyrant, to crave mercie of him for the women and children. The Souldiers, who floode as a guarde about the Tyrant, being mooued with reverence to those holy Virgins; inade way for them, that they might the eatier come into his prefence. Aristotimus affoording audience, to vnderstand what these women desired, and gathering by the very entrance into their Oration, to what end the full scope aymed; hee gaue very disdainefull lookes vpon his Guard, reprouing them roughly and rigoroutly, because they suffered them to come so nearehim. Whereupon, the rude Souldiers, without any regarde of their Sexe or religious condition; fmote them with the flanes of their halberds, giving them many cruell blows by view by the and bastinadoes, vntill such time as they soldious awent away from him, being each of them | bout Authori condemned in two Talents fine belide,

enter into his presence. There was a noble Cittizen in the Citie,named Hellanieus, two of whofe chil- Noble Caudren the tyrant had put to death, and yet | ren, practi-(in regarde of his age) did not account him any way to be suspected. This working the tythy Gentleman, being no longer able to

because they had prefumed so boldely to

diferente ils

" A Region in Greece,betweene Acar-

Ariftotimus

elly threat-

neth them.

on his Countrey: determined to finde out some apt occasion, and to revenge all wrongs by the death of Aristotimus . In the meane while, the other Cittizens, that were fled before into Aetolia, having mustred so many men togither as they could possibly procure; entred into open armes, and came into the Eleusians confines, where they fortified themselues, and daily drew more and more to their faction, determining present warre vpon the Tyrant, many neighbouring friends affilting them with supplying forces, so that they encreased to an indifferent armie.

Vpon these proceedings, the Tyrant

became afflicted with very great feare, fo being in feare that he went to the women whom he dewomen prifo. tained prifoners, and being a man of a diners, and cru uellish spirit, coueting to compasse whatfocuer he would have, rather by rigorous menaces, then any faire or gentle means) commanded them very roughly, to write to their husbands by Ambassadours, that they should defiss from their present enterprise : otherwise, hee would instantly massacre al their children, and cause them to be beaten starke naked throughout the Cittie. To these threatnings the women returned not any answer, which incensed him with the greater rage against them; and hee sternely commaunded them, to giue him resolution what they would do. Some, not having the boldneffe of spirit

yet making no account of all his threat-

Megeftena, wife to the Noble Lord Thimoleon, chiefe among all the women

Among this company of worthy women, was one, named Megestena, wife to Thimoleon, who, as well in regarde of her husbands Nobilitie, as her owne innated fingular vertues, was held to be the very chiefest of them, & (with the like esteeme) they honoured her. This Lady, when the Tyrant came in among them, would not rife to giue him any reuerence, neyther fuffer any of the rest to do otherwise then as the did. She having heard the Tyrants menaces, litting stil ypon the ground, and returning no figne at all of reverence, the

to reply, stoode stedfastly looking uppon

the rest, as questioning in their soules,

which of them should returne the answer,

foake thus,

The answer of Megestena to the Tyrant Aristotimus.

A Ristotimus, if there remained in thee any wisedome, then wouldest thou not The proud make thy recourse to women, to have them tolly of the write a direction to their husbands, what reproved by they should doe; but rather thou wouldst send their wives to them, with better speeches and more woorthy consideration, then thou hast vsed toward them, making a mockerie of vs, by a most base and dishonourable deceit. And now, when thou feest thy felfe able to doe nothing else; thou presumest (by our meanes) to beguile our husbands by faire wordes as formerly thou hast abused our credulitie. Thou deceinest thine owne indgement, for, wee will not suffer them to be agayne ouerreached by thee; neyther doe thou imagine them to bee fo foolish, as to shield their children from death, or prevent the losse of their poore wines lines, they will forbeare to execute that whereto they stand obliged: I meane the freedome of their Countrey. For the loffe of us & their children is not fo yrkefome to them, as the glad some satisfaction will be, to deliner their people and Countrey from outrage and cruelty.

Longer would Megestena have continued her discourse, but that the Tyrant rable & wot (beeing vnable to bridle his rage) commanded the Ladies sonne to be brought to the amit thither, that there hee might be flaine in mentofile her fight . But whileft the Officers were Tyrant. feeking among the rest of the imprisoned children for her fonne; the mother (with an vindaunted courage) calling him by his name, fayd. Come hither to me, [weete Boy, and rather die by thy mothers hand, then endure the bloudy crueltie of a Tyrant. Thele wordes to amazed Aristotimus, and kindled fuch outragious choller in him. that (drawing foorth his Sword) hee purposed to have flaine the Lady. But one of his chiefest familiar friends, named Chilon, standing by, caught her in his armes, and pacified his fury.

This Chilon was one of them, who pra- Chilon one of Ctifed with Hellanicus the Tyrants death, the Confede as vnable also to suffer his cruelties. Hee Hellanicus having somewhat calmed the extreami-ty of his rage, caused him to put vp his Sword agayne: plainely telling him, that it was a matter monftrous, and ill befeeming the dignitie of a Prince, to foile his hand with the bloud of a woman.

Within a while after, there hapned a Arange

strange prodigie, as foretelling the death of the Tyrant. For, being in bedde with his wife, whileft the Cooks were making ready his diet, an Eagle was feene to houer ouer the Lant-horne of the Pallace. and letting fall a great stone directly into. it (it being ouer the Chamber where hee lay) it made a great noyfe in the fall, and giving a fearefull loud shoute, the Eagle vanished from the fight of all that beheld it. The Tyrant awaking, with the confuled murmure of fuch as had feene it, and not a little difmaied when it was reported to him; fent for a cunning Soothfayer, in whome her repoted no meane confidence, to understand what the meaning neercof might bee. The Wizard bade him be of good courage, for it figured nothing elfe, but that Iupiter had an especiall care of him, and fent his Eagle so to expresse it. But he told the Cittizens quite contrary, in whom he durst repose his truft, because he knew their hatred to Aistotimus: and bade them be bolde, that some sodayne and strange kinde of death, thould (in a thort while) happen to the Tyrant.

Hecreupon Hellanicus and his Confederates, thought fit to delay the time no longer, but concluded to kill him on the morrow following; because the verie fame night, Hellanicus fleeping in his bed, feemed to fee one of his founce, that before had beene flaine by the Tyrant, who cryed out aloude to him , faying , Deare father, Why doe you fleepeshus? Wherefore doe you trille away the time? Stand you in doubt, that you (ball not be made Prince of the Cittie? Hellanicus confirmed by this Vision, went earely the next morning to finde his vowed friends, haftening them to execute the deed determined. At the felfe same time, Aristotimus had received tydings, that Crateris was comming to affifthim with a great power of Souldiers, and that hee was already fet foorth from *Olympia. Which news were not a little welcome to him, fo that feeming now free from all feare; he walked abroad to take the aire, forme finall distance from the Pallace, accompanied onely with Chilon, not attending for any more, although they came dropping after one by one. Which Hellanicus well obserning, thought it now a fit time to execute the

nall to the rest of the confederacie, he lifted vp his hands to Heauen, speaking aloude; What stay yee for, valiant Gentlemen? Why make yee not now the goodlieft spectacle that ever yet was seene?

Chilon was the first that drew his weapon, and killing one that came laft from the Pallace, who offered to steppe in the tyrants defence: Arestotimus espied Thrafibulus and Lampidius (two whom he most trufted) drawing their weapons likewife vpon him. Whereupon, hoping to escape their violence, hee ranno into the Temple of Lapiter, where he was flaine by his flaine by his owne followers. Afterward, his bodie owne follow being throwne forth into the open ftreet, Temple of the people cryed out , Libertie , Libertie. Iupiter. The women were the first, that (making way through the throngs) came thither, who joyfully embraced them, that by the tyranis death) were the happy delinerers of their Countrey. In the meane while, multitudes flocked to the Pallace, where The Tyrante the wife of Arifformus (hauing heard of the murder of her husband; and doubt-withher ing how the people would deale with hir) chaine of gold flutting her Chamber doores about her; there with her Chaine thee strangled her

The Tyrant had two very goodly and beautiful daughters, of yeares apt and able for marriage, who having heard of Afpafia and their futhers death, had lockt themselues Hillaria, the vp close in a Chamber; from whence daughters of they were drawne by the peoples violence, and in their furie they would have flaine them. But Megestens, with divers other of the Ladies, stoode in their defence, faying: That it were an cuill deed, and inftly deferuing blame, to kill them confidering, they had not learnd fo much courage of the Tyrant their father, to exercife cruelty vpon themselves. By these speeches the people were appealed, and a decree was fet downe, that they should make election of their death, and performe it on themselves with their owne hands, if they had the heart to doe it.

So beeing fent into their Chamber, Applia the eldest fifter expressing no ap reduction of pearance, eyther by countenance, or any twosisters in figne elfe, that the flood in feare of death; their death, loofed her girdle, and faftening it about a timber-beame, refolued to there to hang her felfe, exhorting her fifter (with enterprife, and without giving any fig- manly courage) to perfourme the like

The words of Aspasia to her fifter Hillaria, before her

vpon her felfe; Hillaria the yonger daughter, taking her fifter by the hand, defired her to permit, that thee might die first. Whereto thee replyed in this manner: As during the time, that Nature permitted vs to line like Sisters, I never did willingly deny thee any thing; so farre be it from mee now to refuse thee in thy latest request : howbeit, nothing can afflict mee more, then to fee thee die. No sooner were these words Spoken, but Hillaria taking the Girdle, Brangled her felfe therewith immediately. When thee was dead , Alpafia kneeling by her body; and loofing her girdle from about her necke, turning herfelfe to Megestena, & intreating, that their bodies might receive no shame after death, with the felfo same constancie of corage, the ended her life likewife.

CHAP, IIII.

MIT he reason why men cannot know and understand the truth of many things while they remaine in this life.

I ue principall calles there are, why a man can not thow the truth of diuerfe things, during his abiding in this world: which if hee could attaine vnto, he might repute him-

selfe to be wife indeede.

The first is ignorance of his end, that is he knows not to what end he was created for it is a matter most certayne, that if he did know that; he would labor no leffe to obtaine it, then he doth to get digniagree with his appetite) they make him to imagine, that all his happines confifts in them. But in this cafe it fareth with him. as with a kings fon in his child-hood. For, if it be demaded of him, whether he doth more affect the succession in his Fathers kingdom, then Apples, Cheries, or fome other fruites, presented instantly to him: questionlesse, hee will rather accept the Apples or Cherries, then the kingdome, bicaufe he finds them futable to his yong defires, as having both fight and knowledge of them in talte and apprehension.

Euch fo it happeneth to a man, for if it were demaunded of him, whether he best liked to make choice of, Riches or Wile-

dom: his election would fland on wealth and power, being meetely ignorant, that Wifedome onely is the chiefest wealth. and that the Wife man only ought to ordame and gouerne. For without Wifedome and Knowledge, power 3s not po There canbe Wer, but weakenes, and vtter deprination no greater of power indeede: And riches without wealthing knowledge, is but a bestiall possession, worldthen an abundance of prefumption, and a kind of fottish substance. Whereas on the contrary, a wife man hath alwayes fufficient for himfelfe & others befide having in him that truly abounding treafure, that can never faile or deceive film And all this onfueth to a man, because he is ignorantin his true onde

The fecond cause, is the vie of corporall delectations, voluntary and fensible, which ouerwhelme and drowne, not on-ly the femes of the body, but alfo-those of the spirit and intellect. So that a man, be-thower took ing thus wrapped vppe in the mire of the body and this world, is like the beautifull daugh? ter of a King, to whom appelraineth the inheritance of her fathers Kingdome, but having committed adultery with some blacke deformed flaue, loofeth the right ofher fuccession thereby.

The third cause ensueth by the Indisposition of such matter, as many times maketh a man vncapable of learning and vpapenetic of knowledge which commeth often fo to the County whereaman paffe, in regarde that the region or place is borne, by of his birth ; is veterly difagreeable, and two extremicaufeth him to receive a bad complexio. As in some of the Easterne parts, and of Affrica, where men are borne fo beaftly. by reason of the heates expreamity; that ties & riches : wherein (because they best | they are not capable of any reasons And contrariwife, some places in the northern parts are so colde, that verie furious men are there borne & bred; fuch as the Gothes and Oftrogothes: fome whereof feede on humane flesh. And these people may aptly be compared to an Eagle, that hath a stone fastened to her soote, to keepe her from ouer-violent flight, which commonly is naturall vnto this Bird, caufing her to foare about the cloudes.

The fourth is , difficulty in the Scien- 4.Difficulty in ces. For, although a man doe plainely nuely under differne, that the defire of his foule is to thanding the feeke attentively, as coueting to know the truth of high and deepe causes : yet notwithstanding, he findes them to hard

3. The indif-

to be understoode that he retreates, and quite giueth ouer his enterprise. Wherein he resembleth his owne eye, which fixing respectively to beholde the Sunne: the splendour thereof producth so piercing, that it ecclipfeth and troubleth fo his fight, as he is not able to endure it.

The last and strangest of all, is an affe-

An affecti. en to fome the time of a man youth, and so conti

ction taken by a man in his youth, vnto things wherein he hath beene instructed. and especially when his defire hath lasted of fomelong continuance thereto. For then, Custome converteth it selfe into Nature, and therefore worketh a fetled feare in the mans foule, and a fingular loue to those things embraced, hating all other contrary to them, and the whole world (almost) is swallowed up in this errour. Do we not observe that children among the Turkes, before they can reach to the yeares of reason: doe vtterly abhorre our Faith and Religion; and to the Iewes in like manner? Wee fee alfo, that countrey people, by being inured and accustomed to field-dwelling, do liue grofely, disdayning conversation with Courtiers, or fuch as inhabite citile Citties. From whence infued the Prouerbe : Vnluckie is the Bird, that is bred in a bad valley. For, by vse and conversation receiued there, he cannot part thence, though he beholdes a much better place for him. And not onely heerein is knowne the power of this habitude: for we our felues do despile them of another countrey (except fight or frequentation have begot more familiaritie) and only through fome bad and abufine relations of them. This errour hath also prenayled with women, with whom, matters of long vie beare fo high a priviledge, that beethey never fo badiyet they despite the contrary, be they neuer fo good. Finally, this affection to continued

vie, and detellation of fuch things as we know not; extendeth it felfe to all matters in our election. Wherefore, it were good to expell those hinderances out of our hearts, to the end we may (if possibly wee can) know the veritie and tructh of things indeed. For, in the knowledge The true fell. of them, confifteth all contentment in opinish this world, and the way to an some that her cafter : imitating the good hufgrounds for the best advantage, doth first

roote vp the thornes and weeds, because his graine will bee the better borne. So, when the Physitian would give a sicke man health, he first purgeth his stomacke from all corrupt humors; because in matter ill disposed, the former cannot induct it selfe. Let vs then contend against all these impediments; for the reasonable man, that will not yeelde to reason, but onely leane to his owne appetite: is like Comparisons to him that will fayle ouer Mountaynes, aprly aniweor builde his dwelling in the Sca: for the purpole. effect both of the one and the other, are deprined of their proper ends.

CHAP. V.

■ Of diners Accidents (monstrous in nature) which ferued as dinining Auguries, or coniectures of shings to come, in olde and auncient times.



N precedent times, who by permiffion of the true GOD; fundry Oracles, which were spirites of illustions, in Idelles and Images,

gaue answere to Idolaters : many prodigious fights were seene in the Ayre and on the earth.

And because that in these latter dayes of ours (we living in the light and tructh of faith) none fuch are now to be feene ; it is a matter of some difficultie, to credite what learned Authors have written, concerning those which hapned in their

Yet (mee thinketh) there needeth Graue Auno diffruft at all 3 for they having written Histories of warres, and other occa- ble credite, fions happening in those dayes: by infer- deferue not to ting the memorie of prodigious Accidents, we ought not to make any ferupu- tingslous doubt of them; but rather to reft perswaded; that as they dealt faithfully in the one, they yfed the like inflice in the other; especially, when they are likewife confirmed by many and fundry other Authours.

Kkk Amongs

A Kings Son cares more for an Apple or a Cherry in his childehood, then his Fathers king. dome,

Fine impedi-

menu to a

mans knows

t Ignorance

in the cause

why he was

created.

ledge.

Plininlg4.14

of Modena, vnder the Consulship of Lucius Martius, and Iulius Sextius, Confulls: where two mountaines arose out Two great of their proper places, and mette toge-Mountaines ther so impetuously, that hurling a great met together, and did much flame and sinoake vp into the ayre, by the harme to violence of their encounter; they retur-Townes, Men and Cattell. ned backe agayne, not onelie destroying villages which were betweene them, but also killing an infinite number of cat-

mane Knights.

Pliny, in his ninth booke, and in the fifteenth chapter, likewise relateth in the Plm in 1,9.c.15 fameplace, faying, that in his time, and

vnder the same Empire of Nero, Vessus Marcellus, a Romaine Knight, whome the Emperour had fent (on his behalfe) into the kingdome of Naples: had (there in the maritime territorie) two fieldes, each distant from the other, the one becing a fayre meadow, and the other veric thickely planted with Oliue trees.

tell, in the open fight of many trauellers,

and likewise of a great company of Ro-

Amongst other Prodigies in the Ro-

By an admirable accident, but how, I know not, these two fieldes chaunged into each others place : for the Oliues field was transported where the meadow stoode, and the meadow into the Oliuc plottes place; and this was conceyued to be doone by an Earthquake. This is not onely reported by Plinie, but also is anouched in the Chronicles of manie

learned men, as also in the Booke of the Mountaines warre.

And although hee cannot be induced to credite, that men may be metamorphofed into Woolues; yet neuertheleffe hee declareth, that Enanthes, an Authour of no meane authoritie among the Grecians, recordeth the Arabians to haue written, that in Arcadia there is a great standing Poole, whereto men are brought at certayne times to passe thorow it: and as they fincke into the fand, they are instantly transfourmed into the (hape of Woolues; and having continued to for the space and tearme of nine yeares : they doe recouer their former formes agayne, according as Fabius Pietor in his second booke and in the ninth chapter; who addeth also, that Scopas, who wrote the Olympiades, speaketh of

one, named Demarchus, had eaten the

bowelles of a young Boy, which they of Arabia had facrificed to Inpiter Lyceus, maines dayes, the most notable was, that and presently hee was transfourmed into a Woolfe, in which forme he continued the space of tenne yeares, and afterwardes recovering the shape of man agayne, he wonne the victoric for Luteplaying at the Mount of Olympus. Saint Augustine in his fourteenth booke De Ci-Augustine in his tourteenth Dooke De Ci-uitate Dei, and the third chapter faith, that Daili [19]. Varro also recordeth the same. In mine opinion these transformations could not thus happen, but rather were performed by diabolicall Arces.

Now, concerning these things of wonder written by Pliny, they are not to Plin intbak be wondred at , because he setteth downe figra. many matters, reputed vtterly impossible, as the transformation of a woman into man, and yet himselfe will not credite the like things, or of leffe impossibilitie, and which have beene apparant to his owne judgement. Notwithstanding, fuch as confider well the Scriptures, need not incruaile at transformations, happening really, and not feigned. For we know what is written in the feuenth chapter of The forcern Exodus and twelfth verse, That the Rods rods connerof the Nations were (not in apparance, tedino Serbut in effect, by fecret charmes) turned Exod 7,11. into Serpents. Now, which thing is more casie, to change a Rodde into a Serpent, or the true body of a man (I doe not fay his spirit) transformed into a beast. The opinion of Saint Augustine is heerein a- Augustinais uaileable, where hee fayth; A certayne Dallingar man conceined in his minde, that his daughter was turned into a young Mare. And bringing her to an holy man, named Hellarion, the grave olde man looking on her, faid: I fee a young Maid, but no Mare: for it appeared that by his deuoute prayers, the had recovered her former thape againe. Wherefore we may judge, that fome things are shewne to men, which are not indeede; and fuch a thing may be apparant, and yet not existent.

But returne wee now againe to our Auguries. It hath beene observed divers in a Beall be times, that in the opening of a beaft, that ing imband no heart hath beene found in him : as it leaded to happened at the General state. happened at the first time, when Cafar, the Dictatour fate in his golden Chaire, and then it was disputed among the Auruspices, if a beast were to be found with-

out a heart.

Plinie

figure of featenth chapter reporteth; fo doth Ci- Trumpets, and clathing of weapons. District Cap .9 prefumed, that false spirits did thus delude and abuse the people, taking away the beaftes heart in the Sacrifice time, knowing well thereby what was to hap-

Two harts

Chap. 6.

A Country in ihe North de les fide. lb.16.cap 14. Afree country of Macegaules.

donia hy the

tuftunder in

cero in his Divinations, that Caiss Mari- And in the third yeare of the Confulus, offering Sacrifice at Vica: even in the Thip of Marius, two Armies were feene same manner, there was not any heart in the heavens, that went from the East, found in the beaft. But it might be then to meete in the West: besides many owell observed, that it chaunced not thus ther the like Prodigies, whereof Saint by nature : but rather was rightly to bee pen after.

Oftentimes likewise hath beene obferued, that two hearts have beene found in one beaft. For, wee reade that in the Sacrifices, which Marcus Marcellus made before hee dyed in the battaile against Hanniball: the first day he found no heart in the beaft he facrificed; and the next day following, hee found two. Pliny writeth in the place before alleaged, that in Paphlagonia, the Partrige hath two hearts: fo likewife faith Theophrastus, the most expert (among Philosophers) in naturall kiler Afia, by things, as Adus Gelline declareth. Theophrastus fayth, that in * Bifaltia, each

> In Naffa it is quite contrary, for there they are very great, and double in divers. And Frogges, which are there called Ru. bettes, have two livers, the one venemous, the other medicinable : fo that when they are dead, the Antes make fearch for them, and feede on that which is Phyficall.

> Wee reade, that on the day when Pyrrhus dyed, they facrificed the heads of dead beaftes, that licked their owne bloud youn the ground.

> The same yeare, when Hanniball was vanquithed by the Romaines, vnder Publins Active, and Cheus Cornelins, Confulls, Wheate was feene to growe vppon

Aristander (a learned Greeke Author) declareth in his Booke of Prodigies, and (ten spiding in the third chapter (and it is also confirmed by Cneus Epidius, the Romaine, in his Commentaries) that fome Trees haue beene changed into another kinde of Trees.

> We reade also, that in the warre of the Cimbrians, a great noyfe was heard

Plime in his foureteenth booke and the in the Ayre, like vnto the founding of Augustine maketh mention in his Booke of the Cittie of God.

CHAP. VI.

Of a very strange and admirable A:cident, which happened on an Armie in the night feafon.



Hofoeuer shall reade aunci-ent Histories, needeth not wonder at somethings, hap-pening in those times, or else related by such as haue

feene them : for fometimes it hath beene observed, that either the same accident, or elfe but little differing, hath chaunced in one place as well as another. Among Hare hath two Livers . And in some plat the admirable Accidents, which I have ces (as in Euboa) the beaftes have no read in auncient or moderne Hiftories: I finde that to be very finguler, and well deferuing memorie, which happened to Agathoeles (the Tyrant of Sicilie) in

This Agathecles was a man very expert in Armes , whereby (beeing but of Agathocles base condition, to wit, the some of a the some of a poore Potter) hee made himfelfe Lord poore Potter, of the whole Isle of Sicilie. Having had fingular Sollong warre against the Carthageni- diouranda ans, and feeing himfelfe befieged (both by Land and Sea) in Syracufa, by Amilcar, with a powerfull Armie of Lybians: hee was of fuch an vudaunted courage, that, leaning the Cittle to the guarde of his brother Antander, and having certain thippes readily prepared; by the helpe of a cunning stratageme, hee gote foorth at a narrow port, with about feauen thoufand footemen, and a finall number of horse, and went to land on the thoares of Affrica. Having gote there in pay fixe thousand Greekes, he went and befreged Carthage, bringing the Citie into fuch di- Carthage befireffe, that the Senators knew not which | fiedged by Againstes,

Many battailes were fought betweene

Two distant

Fields remo-

ued ftrangel

others place

by reason of

Men meta-

morphofed

into Wolues

Ewanthes in la

2.cap.5.

an Earth-

quake.

into each

Fabius Pictor in Ub. 2 _cap_0. Scopas in O. lymp.s.

A fresh supply

from Lybia,

came to the

Carthageni-

Agathocles

maintained

the allault fti

A bloody and

of facrificin

oblerued a

mong the

Carthageni-

cruel manner

to his owne

loffe.

ans,

victorious; because the time so sauored him, that he had drawn no meane troups of horse to take part with him. The Carthaginians (beside their Citizens, and many mercenary Souldiers (in great number) which they had for defence of the Citty, being vnable to equal the cauallerie of Agathocles) called one of their chiefe Captaines from Lybia, bringing with him a powerfull army into the field, to haue a day of tryall against Agathocles. After divers skirmishes passing betweene them, vppon a day, Agathocles would needs affault the enemies Campe (for his men wanting victualles, defired nothing more then prefent fight) but the enemy being very firogly planted, would not iffue foorth, though they were very hotely fet vpon in theff Fort; knowing the necessitie of Agathocles, and the defperate condition of his men.

them, wherein Agathocles proued alwaics

Continuing the affault still, to his owne difaduantage, he payed the penaltie due to his boldenesse: for the enemy repulfed him with great loffe of his Souldiers; one part of them beeing flayne, and the other within compasse of the enemies power. The night preuenting the battailes conclusion; I am to tell yee an example of wonder, which strangely followed thereupon, in this manner. The Carthaginians, after their victorie, facrificing vnto their Gods, in figne of their thankefulneffe (with a cruell superstition) a great number of their prisoners, both Greeks and Italians; brought fuch a quantitie of wood to burne the bodies, that the fire grew fo impetuous: asit not only confumed the facrificing Tent, but alfo the Pauillion of their Captayne and Generall, besides infinite other, being a lamentable spectacle to all that beheld it. For, through the extreamity of this accident, a mighty tumult grew among them, proouing to occasion the death of many; for fome, labouting to quench the fire, fell into it, and so perished; others thrining to escape from it, crowded one another to death in the throngs.

In this night of horrour and confusion, one nonell accident drew on an other: for, in the Campe of Agathocles. there was found about fine thousand Lybians newly arrived, in whom hee durft repose no trust; for they intending to this contuffon

passe on, and to joyne with the Carthaginians forces, were miss-led, onely thorow the darkenesse of the night. On still they went from Agathocles Campe, till they came within hearing of the Guards and Centinells of the Carthaginians, who imagining them to be the Armie of Agathocles, re-affembled againe for a fresh affault; and hoping to finde them in diforder (as indeede they were, through the foes violence) rayled fodainely fuch a strange noyfe themselves, that the whole Camp fell to flight, and was vtterly broken, so that few or none remained, but all were dispersed, some running thwart the fieldes, others backe to the Citty, to fane

The Cittizens hearing this noyfe of the people (conceining verily, that it was fulion happe. the enemy, who had foiled their Campe, and came now to affault the Cittie:) were fo confounded with feare and amazment, Caulinge. that they left the Citty without any dofence, feeking how they might best secure their owne lines. So that if Agatho cles had received but the least intelligence thereof, and had gone immediately to giue the affault: this night had made him Lord of Carthage, and the whole Kingdome thereto belonging. Fortune, not yet satisfied with blinde-folde confusion. caused the fine thousand Lybiano (perceiuing what had happened) to turne backe vpon the difordred Campe of Agathocles, who fearing a fresh onset of the enemie; Anothered fled, fome one way; fome another, and dent in the felinto fuch a madding fury among them felues, that thinking their owne people among them (still as they mette) to be Carthaginians: | felues. they flew one another very cruelly, the obscurity of the night not permitting them to fee their owne errour. So that, through this inaduertence or inconfideration, fine thousand were flaine among the Grecians, and as many of the Carthaginians, flying and fighting in this confufed maner. By which meanes, fine thoufand men (erronioufly mif-ledde) againft their willes, brake three hoafts or Armies, with no meane example, of Fortunes power in actions of Armes.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

7. Booke Chap. 7.

the combate was honours

ptelly forbid-deh combate

Cittizensat

■ How indifereete a thing it is, and greatly to be blamed in Christian Princes, to permit the Duello, or fingle Combat between man and man.

Ike as abuse is growne among

all things (well-neare) in the

all things (well-neare) in the world, by the coldnesse of cha-ritie in men, and their mallice augmented one towards an other; Euen fo falleth it out in Duells or fingle fights. For, amongest great Princes, when they lawfully exercifed themselues in Armes, it was honourably admitted in certayne cales, and differences of most high importance, which could not otherwise bee termined or discided. But now it is grown to fuch corruption, as every filly and priuate Souldiour, for very small or simple occasion, presumeth, that it is lawfull for him to vindertake it. But that which most of all distasteth me, is to fee, that Christian Princes onely doe permit it, confidering, that in them (more then in any other) the Lawe doth exprelly forbidde it:

and it is encreased to such an abuse, that,

except God amend it, it is to bee feared,

that Prelates of the Church will also suf-

The Duell or Combate, is denied to a Christian man, to docit, to graunt it, and to fee it, by reason both dinine and humane, as well Canonicall as Ciuile. It is prohibited by divine reason, according to this argument. Eucry acte whereby God may be tempted, is prohibited to a Christian by the commaundement of God : For, it is written; Theu Shalt not tempt the Lord thy God. That GOD is tempted by the Duell or Combate, I produc it in this manner: To make triall of things, which cannot be reduced to an end by naturall meanes, but onely by the Hand of Heauen: fuch attempting is to tempt God. As it happeneth in cafes of purgation, where it is most notorious and enident, that (by naturall courfe or disposition) the strongest, active, and most powerfull person cuer vanquisheth

the weaker, and of leffe abilitie. Contrariwife, that the stronger bodie shall be ouercome by the weaker, can not happen but miraculoufly.

Bringing then two fuch vnequall perfons into the field, victorie is defired for him which hath right and reason on his fide, to the end, that the trueth may be made apparent. But then God is tempted, in feeking, that he should performe Miracles only a myracle; which must needes bee so, the power of when the weaker man conquereth the God. stronger, beeing (as it were) directly against nature.

I prooue it further forbidden by Diuine reason, after this argument: when a Law prohibiteth a thing, it forbiddeth also the dooing of it; and a man performeth an especiall inhibited thing, when hee knoweth (by the Divine Lawe) that hee is not to kill a man : The Combate | Murder may then is flatly forbidden, because thereby harpen by

I yet proue it otherwise thus. The Dinine Lawe forbiddeth enery action, that differeth from the fountaine of charitie, which is the scope and end, of al vertues, and veterly expelleth vice : The acte of The acte of Combate is farre off from charitie, lean- combate kiling vnto vice ; because charitie is nothing leth , Charity elfe, but to love God and thy neighbour, and he that enters the Combate to kil his neighbor, is out of all obedience to God.

It is likewise prohibited by the Canonicall Lawe, because it evermore followeth the divine Law; and in plaine reason, what the one inhibiteth, the other neuer aloweth. Combat is also forbidden by the Lawe of men, and the proofe is, that cuery thing which repugneth and contradi- common law. Geth naturall equitie, is likewife prohibi- and law of ted by the reason of man; because reason turall equity, is grounded vpon naturall equitie. The reason of equity among men willeth, that he which committeth a crime Ishould be punished, and the innocent cleared: notwithstanding, by Combate it falleth out many times quite contrary.

It is turther proued by this argument. Naturall equitie, whereon (as we have already fayde) all reason in men is groun- try i for the ded; is entirely for the confernation and conternation encrease of them. That acte then, which turnerh vnto the diminution and destru-Gion of men, is quite forbidden : fo ought Combate to be, because thereby

Combate cor

Naturall coulof mankinde, and combate is for his de.

The coming of a treffi company of Lybians,caufed a ftrange accidentin

murder may happen.

The two'ma precepts of naturali equ ty,are broke by the acte combate.

Combate for

bidden by the

greatest price in the world. Moreover, of naturall equitie, is forbidden by mans reason, because it is grounded thereupon. One of the precepts is, that no man shall defire profit or honour, by the prejudice and hinderance of another. The fecond is, that no man shall wish that to another, which he would not have done to himselfe. The acte of Combate contradicteth them both, because hee which commeth so prepared into the field, coueteth his owne glorie, by the shame and harme of him against whom he fighteth, which is his neighbour; and witheth that to him, which he would not have executed on himfelfe; for, he would vanquish and kill him.

It is also forbidden by Ciuile reason. and this is the rule. Civile right prohibiteth euery acte, whereby Iustice may bee denved to men, or injurie doone them. Now, in the case of Combate, oft times it falleth out quite contrary; for the innocent man dyeth, and the guilty offender remayneth aline, so that by this meanes, Iustice can not take her due place.

CHAP. VIII.

of strange and admirable properties in the Affe.



Mongstall the properties in beafts, those of the Affe are most to be admired; for hee is so meeke and domesticke, as that Isidore doth fay,

He taketh his name of feating; for, in elder times, men motited on fuch beafts backs, to faue themselues securely. Or else it cometh of the Greeke diction Afinos, composed of A, which is a Greek diction prinatiue, fignifying Sine, Without, and Cinos, which fignificth Senfus, Wit or Senfe: fo that coupling thefe two vocables together, fignificth, without Wit or Scales. Heereupon it is faid, that hee is fearefull to goe ouer a Bridge, where water runneth underneath it : because having a weake brayne, hee is (by instinct of na-

ture) fearefull to fall therein. He is timo-

men kill one another, and men are of rous also to enterwater, how shallow soener it be; fearing by the current thereof. euery acte which repugneth the precepts his braine may be troubled, and he drowned; which proceedeth from a kinde of knowledge that hee hath of his owne imperfection.

This creature is flouthfull and melancholy, because he is colde, drie, without The Affe memory, laborious, and apt to carry bur- flothfull and dens. By reason of his great frugalitie, he cannot live in colde Countries, and if by aduenture he doe live there : hee affeetch not the generative action, neyther can he there ingender. Hee beareth best vpon his reines, rather then on his backe The ability of or shoulders : for, being melancholie, burdens, his bones behinde are the more strong and dry, for there is the figne of melancholy, and there is his skinne so thicke and hard, that though he be bearen with great staues, he cannot be killed without much paines. Also, because he consisteth of an earthie nature, hee is hardly disciplinable, and fatneth very little. Albertus Magnus fayth, That by the felfe-fame Albert Mign reason, hee endureth much paine in his head, and dieth tumbling his head afide, and in regarde of his heads weightinesse, a thicke and viscuous humour falleth on his lights or lungs, which maketh him to breathe with difficulty, and fall downe swowning. He eateth little, and the more he watcheth, fo much the more he drinketh beyond other beafts.

In regarde of his great coldenesse and drienesse, hee can not stirre to ingender, gendechoo at fuch times as other beafts doc, to wit, whenother before the Winter Equinoctiall, or else beafts & vnder the Equino cially but in the month of May, when the Sunne mounteth, almost to the right angle of the Equinoctiall, and then his groffe humiditie beeing depressed and diminished; he is prouoked to the acte with fuch fury, as if hee were a wilde foale, and especially when he is yong. The thickneffe of his skinne, is caused (as we have sayd) by his grosse humours ; and he that mendeth his thoes of the Alle with leather, of that part of the skinne, skin in weswhere the Asse hath longest borne his lingitin burdens, can not weare it out at all, but it will long time endure, paffing oner stony or craggy wayes, and will at the last growe to fuch hardnesse, as the feete can not suffer it : Albertus Magnus speaketh thereof by proofe.

milke of the Female Asse is subtile, that it cannot curdle: and therefore it is Physihyfical for a call for fuch as are in a confumptio. Moreouer, the purity of this milkes whitenesse maketh the skin of men or women wonderously faire, and very cleare. Hereupon Pluny reporteth, that Pappaa, Cnocubine to Nero, often yied to bathe her bodie in

before. because he bites of the bushes & thornes, Small birdes are enemics where they builde their nefts: and with

de Affe hath,

The curiofity

of the Affe in

gendering of Mule be-

een an Affe

Chap.8.

his crying noise, makes them fall vnto the ground, or frights them away when they fit in the bushes. The Rauen is his naturall enemie, to that when hee hath taken any harme on his skinne; hee mounteth thereon, and pittifully plagues it with his bill. So do the small Birds likewife, onely to be reuenged of him : but the Rauen aboue all the rest, labours to picke out his eyes with his beake; against which cruelty, the hollow concauity of them, docth ferue him as an especial defence, the hard nesse of his hide, and continuall agitation of his cares; for by cloting his eies, he

chaseth them away with his cars' stirring.

The Bear alfo is his enemy, wearying him

(oftentimes) to kill him, defiring to feede

the Milke of a shee-Asse. This beast hath

a custome to Vrine in the place, where

he finelleth that another Affe hath staled

He is very much hated by fmall Birds,

on his raw flesh. He will not drinke but at fuch Springs or Welles where he is inuredly & where hee may paffe without wetting but that deferuing meruaile, is, that if the water be troubled, though hee be never fo thirfly, he cannot be procured to drinke, vntill fuch be given him as is pure and clear. Pliny faith befide, that he will hardly bee constrained to drinke, vntill his backe bee disburthened of his loade. The shee-Asse fo intirely affecteth her young Foale, and is to fearefull of it by Nature: as thee dreadeth not to passe through fire to find

Anglin Gener. Aristotle faith, that the shee-Asse will remaine to long time from conceyning, vitill the graines of Barley, steepte in the blood of a Mulet, bee given her to feede on. For the generation of Mules, the Mare must be of no lesse age then source yeares, and not about tenne. Now, in regard that (naturally) no beaft will habite

From this drinesse it ensueth, that the | with any other then of his owne kinde , fuch Heardfinen as would have a Mule engendred by an Affe and a Mare, do vfe this kinde of cunning. The young Affefoale is nourished with Mares milk ali his tender time, but in some obscure place, for better taking it. By this meanes, comming to age (as adulterated) he groweth to lone Mares. And in like manner, norithing the Foales of Marcs with milke of a shee. Asse; they habite afterwardes willingly with thee-Afles. And if it happen that the Mare be taken, and the Afle hath yet vic of her immediately, her greatneffe will corrupt, through the extreme coldnesse of the Asse. And so it fareth with the shee-Asse, if the horse have joyned with her, and by the same reason.

The Mule that is bred of an Asse and a Mare, cannot engender, the caufe (according to Aristotle) is, that the feede of the Affe (as we have already faid)being cold, & that ionning with the feed of the Mare which (hauing respect to the sexe Feminine) is also of cold complexion; & therefore, that engendred is so cold, as it canot be proper for generation. And albeit Plimy faith, that divers times they have yong ones: vet (for all that) it is not naturallie. but rather as a thing prodigious.

Aristotle granteth that they do engen- Aift de Gener. der, but the fruite cannot bee reared or Anim. La. cap. 3 brought vp. Theophrastus faith, That in Cappadocia they engender and haue yong. Aristotle further faith, that the Afle fatneth more by drinking troubled Water then that which is cleare, and best agreeeth with Kine. The Foale of the fhe-Affe, The thort is of fo fhort memory, that following the memory of damme, if it be but five paces behind hir. it hath forgot, and followes no further, but stayes and standeth stone still. It is faid, that the flice. Affe hath a natural cuflome, when the is ready to Foale, thee withdraweth into some obscure place. but the opinion of Alberta's Magnas is y albert Aleg, in the doth fo in regard of the weakenes of 16.4-49.7.

the Foales fight. It is a thing well approved, according to the judgement of the fame author, that the Liner of an Affe being boyled, and afterward roafted the fame day is verie foueraigne for the falling fickneffe!, prouided, that it be often yfed : the like power hath his hoofes, being burnt, beaten into powder, and drinking the weight of three Ducates Aistot lin Lib.

Pli,in 1,8, c.44

the Aile toale

A definition of the Affes

Isider in lib A

nim.3.cap.8.

name.

Fearefulneffe in the Affe to paffe ouer a Bridge.

A present re

medy for blee

Plin.in L.B.c.44

ding at the

Ducates, and enery day an ounce. An emplaister made of the same powder, diffolueth the Kings cuill, & heals the chaps,

which trouble the handes in Winter by cold.

Moreover, the hooves so beaten into powder, and applyed vnto an Impo-For an Impostume, quickely breaketh it. The Vrine flume. of an Affe, is very anaileable for the Difease of the Reines, caused by grosse humidities; and his dung, either burnt, or

not, made in an emplaister, restraineth the Flux of blood, and fmoking any house with the Lunges of an Affe, it killeth all

wormes and mothes.

long a time to relate.

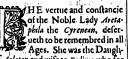
Againe, his dung steeped in Vinegar, and applied to the nose in a cloth, ceaseth the extreme bleeding:making also an emplaister thereof, and binding it to the forhead, it hath the same vertue . Pliny also faith, that both the Milke and bloud of an Affe, are very effectuall against the biting of a Scorpion.

His Vrine, applyed with Spickenard, encreafeth and conferueth haire : and his bones being broken, and the powder of them drunke in white VVine, is very foudraigne against poyson. Aristotle, Albertus Magnus, and Pliny, reporteth infinite other Vertues, abiding in this much despised creature, which would require too

CHAP. IX.

Of the fingular wertue and constancie, of the Noble Lady Aretaphila, the enforced Wife to the Tyrant Nicoreon: And her honest policy, for the deliverance of her Countrey.

An honorable Gentleman of Cyprus, and a worthy foldi-



ter of Aglator, and wife to Fedimo, who for Nobility and riches, was one of the worthiest men in the whole countrey : and in those times the was no leffe endued with fingular beauty, then admired wifedome and eloquence in her fpeaking. It came to

paffe, that Wicoreon vfurping the gouernment by tiranies, condemned many wor- Nicerconagi thy Cittizens to death. And among other cruelties by him committed, hee caused preme authorized Melnapius (the Priest of Apollo) to bee iny. flaine, to make vsurpation of his Priesly

Afterward, hausing treacherously put to death Fedimo, the husband of Aretaphila; constrainedly, and whether she would or no, he married Aretaphila. Continuing on his pride against his people, & day by day encreasing his cruelty, hee furiously put a great number to death. And beecause they were to be buried without the Citty, he was enftructed by fome of his ny were put picke-thankes, that many counterfeyted to for eleathemselues to be dead, for their safer efcaping out of the City, onely thereby to auoid his cruelty. Hereupon, guards of fouldiers kept the gates, with long Iron Pikes and Bodkins, made red hotte in the fire; wherewith they pierced the bodyes carried by, to try whether they were dead

These cruelties, were greatly displeafing to his wife Aretaphila, who greeued Actions to fee her Countrey thus oppreffed; and to fuch a height grewe her compassion, that hating Nicoreon for her former Huf-hazuedh bands death, the refolued to make aduen- ownellien ture of her owne life, to free her country deliuer it. from fo bloody a Tyrant. And although Nicoreon affected her extraordinarily, & bestowed infinite fauours on her, onely to please her : yet could shee not quit her thoughts from this magnanimous determination. And, when (through the tyrants power) all hope in the people was viterly loft, for ever freeing themselves from his tiranny: The only grew the ftronger in her confidence, that shee should

compasse the meanes of his death. Heerein the was still the more encouraged; by remembring the vndaunted refolue of the Thebane * Pheraa, fo much | Anhonorrenowned thorough the world, coueting to imitate her example. But because sheet had not the benefite of affilting Friends, as Pherea had; the concluded her enter- fon. prize alone by her felfe, purpofing to kill the Tyrant by poylon. By which meanes the ranne into great dangers (as you shall reade heereafter) in regard me failed many times of her attempting; and beeing furprized at the last; all dissimulations

were not fufficient, but shee was conuinced by most cuident arguments.

Chap. 9.

The Tyrants

Her witty In-fenation to

couer what

Achad close

At this time, Caluia, Mother to the tyrant (beeing a Woman of fierie temper, and one that heavily hated Arctaphila) laboured him by earnest perswasions to put her to death with grieuous torments but the feruent loue of Nicoreon towards hir, and her owne couragious spirit, in answering the accusations of her enemies; occasioned the delaying of her death. Neuerthelesse, after much clamor and constraint, she being conuinced by apparant testimonies, and no longer able to denie, but that she had prepared a breuage for him: In the presence of the Judges, with an vndanted and cheerefull countenance, thus she spake.

The Speech of Aretaphila,

in the presence of the Tyrant, and allher hatefullene-

Y Lord and Husband, I freely con-

fesse, that a drinke was prepared by

mee to give thee ; yet farre from fo much as thought, that porton, or any harmefull thing should therein be compounded : but onely as a drinke, whereby to incite feruent love and affection. For, feeing my felfe to bee enuied by so many Ladies, in regarde of the kinde love by thee extended to me, and exalting me to wealth and honor, farre beyonde any capacity in them of compassing the like: fearing withall (most worthy Lord) that they would not pare their ottermost endeuour to kil that louing kindnesse in thee towards me, and quench the intire affection folong continued: I made that Breuage purpofely, to preferue the heate of Loue in full power, and rather orgeit to a higher reach, then fuffer it to qualle in the least degree. If therefore beerein I have offended, Reafon (me thinkes) should free mee from punishment; inregard that [botleffe love(to confound that foul frend

hatred) thereto procured me. Nevertheleffe,

if I shall bee faide to merite chastifement; it

cannot wree death, as to an hatefull impoyfo-

ner : but rather fuch an amable and fauou-

ring affliction, as fuch a wife may be thought

worthy of, who will not pare to practife any

enchanting Potions on her Husband to conti-

nue his Loue in correspondencie, equall unto

Such was her constant carriage in this answer, and appearing of so sound truth in the Tyrants opinion; that by no means ther tryall by he would permit thee should bee put to death. Onely, through their diuellish & dye. violent vrging, he suffered her to be further tryed by Racks and Tortures, as hoping (that way) to extort confession. Caluia causing the extreamest tortures to be prepared, floode by, while they were inflicted on her, even according to the mea fure of her monstrous crucky; and fo many violences was done to the poor Lady, mild, patient, that Caluia her felfe, grewe wearie with and constant the very fight of them. So that Aretaphila, not confessing any thing more then the had done, was deliuered from further tormenting, and adjudged innocent by Nicoreon; repenting that hee had permitted her to bee so cruelly misused, and his loue now growing to farre greater extremity towards her, made him labour by al amorous blandiffiments, and gifts of extraordinary valew, to reconcile fanour,& qualifie all conceiued vokindnesse in her. And she, being a wise and sprightly minded Lady, had her owne discretion so much at command, that the could feeme as earnest in loue to him as euer : vet car- phila. rying an inward vnconquerable remembrance of her Countreyes Oppressions, and her owne extreame wrongs, waiting but time and meanes for iust reuendge, which offered it selfe to her in this man-

-She had (by Fedimo her husband) a yong daughter, of admirable beauty and vertuous qualities , named Miraguarda; and Miraguarda, Nicoreon had a Brother, named Leander ; daughter to youthfull, gallant, and somewhat diffo- Acetaphila, & lute in affection to women, which made ther to Nicoher the more diligent, to procure liking reon. in him towards her daughter, and cafily the prenailed therein, by the help of amorous enticing drinkes, and other devices, wherin the wanted no furtherance of her cunning Physitian. Beside, the witty enstructions shee had given her daughter, for her carriage in the company of Leander; caught fire on the Tinder of his affection, in such violent manner; that in all haft) he entreated his Brother to graunt

wil not let her

his marriage with Miraguarda, wherto he as quickely gaue confent, prouided, that he could induce the good liking of Aretaphila therto, which was not long in obtaining (though excused with some sewe faint and modest doubts) because it was the onely mark the aimed at to compatte that which the further intended.

The marriage the onely meanes to be reuenged on the Tyrant.

The perfwafi guarda to Le anderfor kil ling his Brother.

Leander is won to murther his Brother, afsisted therein by his Dannilles.

Leander, being married to his beloued Miraguarda, their mutuall affections fo fweetly simpathized together, as he could neuer besatisfied with her louely embracings, nor shee contented without his company. During the heate of this reciprocall fierie temper on both fides, Miraguarda, ingeniously instructed thereto by her mother (knowing the could craue nothing ofher Leander, that eyther hee durst or would deny her) aduited him to were her witty remonstrances to his veilding foulc (alledging the acte to be generous, the freeing of his country from tyranny, and a certaine affurance to himfelf, that in requitall of so bleffed a benefit, the people could not choose but elect him their King, by whom they enjoyed theyr long defired deliverance) that he liked the motion extraordinarily. Nor left thee off fo, but plyed him still vnto the same purpose, that if hee did make deniall of the decde, the Cittizens (in their violent hatred to the Tyrant) would acte this Tragedy themselues, as therto they were all folemnly fworn; and then there could

So prenailing were thefe perswasions with Leander, that instantly he conspired against Nicoreon, perceiving that Aretaphila did not difallowe it; and imparting faithfulfriend his intent to Dannilles, his familiar & very faithful friend: by his affiftance he flew him, fleeping in an Arbor of his Garden, and thereby became Lorde of the Kingdome. The possession whereof made him fo proud and powerfull, that, despising Aretaphila and her worthy counfels; the world might plainely perceive, that hee was rather a murtherer of his Brother, then a conspirator for his countries freedome, because he governed by injustice and improvidence; albeit (afterward) he began to renerence his mother in Lawe fomewhat more respectively, though the

people were still oppressed, by many ex-

treme violences.

be no fecurity of his own life.

Aretaphila perceiuing, that shee had not yet deliuered her country from tyrannot yet deliuered her country from tyran-ny; concluded to compasse it by his death taphilatore likewise. Heereupon, by secret intelli- deliuerance gence, the wrought with Anabius, a warlike Prince, and a Natiue of Lybia, to rife in Armes against Leander, wherto he was very eafily induced. Hee being at hand with a potent Army, Aretaphila conuerfing with Leander, told him, that his Captaines were not equall in courage and ftrength, to those braue Warriours that came with Anabius, and therefore it wold proue disaduantageous for him, to make hazard of his weake forces against him, being not certaine of his owne subjectes, whom he had too much prouoked by his harsh vsage; and therefore farre vnfit to be trusted in trial of warre. Wherfore she the killing of her brother. And so sutable admised him, to labour by honest & planfible meanes, that a pacification might passe betweene them, promising to practife fuch meanes her felfe, that hee

should have a friendly imparlance with

Leander liked well the Counsell of his Aretsohile mother in law, and praied her to proceed contributa therein; whereuppon, thee dealt for the meeting beday of their meeting. Prevailing fo well der & Anabl (in the meane time) by faithfull Messen- us. gers to Anabius, that when Leander shold come forth to confer with him: he either should kil him, or take him prisoner, promiling a great fum of money for the performance therof. Leander being fearful by nature (as commonly all Tyrants are)dai- Tyrants at ly deferred the enterparlance: but his themselves mothers pressing him with shame of base cowardife, and faint-harted effiminacy, (sheepromising to goe along with him in company) procured him to iffue forth vnarmed. Anabius comming on to meete him with his traine, Leander made a timorous flay, faying; hee would not passe any further, vntil he had his guard about him. But Aretaphila, one while by faire foceches, another while by foule reproaches, calling him nothing but coward at every delineted le word; ftil made him to walke on alog with her, and taking him by the arme, as to infpire him with courage, brought him forcily to Anabius, and deliuered him vp as his prisoner, who safely there kept him, vntill the promifed fumme of mony was

Afterward, the returned backe to the

Chap. 10. her fuccesse, and how shee had deliuered her Countrey from the Tyrants power: Whereupon, the fumme of money was collected and forthwith fent ynto Anabius. Then was Leander delinered to Aretaphila, who instantly gaue him into the Magistrates power : so that by generall sentence, he was sowed up in a sacke, and drowned in the Sea, after he had feen his Mother Caluia burned. All the Citizens flocking before Aretaphila, humbled them felues on their knees, confessing the just merit of her praise: because (with so great perill of her life) the had faued her Countrey; enforcing her to vndergoe the Gouernment, which shee did, and ruled graciously vntill she had reduced the estate to perfect peace. Then, refigning vp her Office into the Senates hands: Thee entred a Monasterie of Sacred Virgines, where shee lived privately, and peaceably passed the remainder and rest of her dayes.

CHAP. X.

Of the Famous Philasopher Euxinus: And of a Letter fent by the Senate of the Athenians, to the Lacedemonians.

discomfitted by the Athenians: the van-

quished defired truce with the Victors,

and for their eafier attaining therto, they

fent (as Ambassador) the renowned Phi-losopher Euxinus, who spake in so elo-

quent a style to the Senate, and onely in

the praise of peace, deliuering such lear-

ned and pleasing allegations, as not only

truce was granted to them, but alfo they

freely gaue them those Confines, which

they pretended was appertaining to the,

and (by the chance of warre) hadde loft.

Such power had the Oration, deliuered

by Buxinus; and the Senat of Athens back

Lacedemonians, a verie cruell warre was waged, about the difference of certaine Confines, and in the field of batteristics warries theing foyled and

City, there manifesting the manner of to the acquainted them with their minds in this maner.

> The Senate and People of Athens, send health and peace to the Lacedemo-

TEE call the Goddes to Witnesse, that in the late passed battell betweenevs, Wee more greened to see you so bloodily vanquifhed, then we loyed in our owne fortune of victory: because the effects of Warre are fuch, that damage is certaine to the Conqueror, and benefit to the Conquered is doubtfull. Wee could heartily haue wished, that the demaund by you now propounded had bene before in like manner required : but fuch is the lot falne both on you and vs, that you have loft very much in this warre, and yet wee can boaft of no benefit thereby. For the rule hath ordaind, is most certaine, that what soeuer is ap- is not to bee: pointed by the Gods, cannot be compre- ditappointed, hended by humane judgement, nor impeached by the power of man.

You require truce for three moneths, to the end, that in that time, an agreemet may be concluded betweene vs. Wee returne you answer, that the Senate of A-

ancient Lawe) that either they accept of cruell warre, or elfe freely condifcend to perpetuall peace.

thens neuer vied to make truce, after they

had begun a VV ar : obseruing (as a most

VV ee labour and practife in the times of peace, to allure Wife-men into our Schooles, to helpe vs with their counfell in the times of VV arre; and now they aduise vs, not to make a truce on suspected conditions: whetein wee thinke they counfell vs well, because a counterfeyte peace is more dangerous then an open

waged warre. The Philosopher Euxinus your Ambaffadour, hath spoken so eloquently in Good wordes the Senate, that we hold it vnreasonable, then weapons to deny any thing by him named : and can doe. therefore it is a matter more honest, to granthim peace that requires it by kinde words, then him that rudely askes it with the Weapon. Wherefore we tel you, and now give you to understand, that our Senate (with a franke and free hart)granteth to you Lacedemonians, loyall peace,

The events of warre are vncertaine 10

7 Booke

Of the Bees Commonwealth.

66r

deliuering you from all suspition of war: | And this wee doe, that the world may know, the Athenians are of fo great spirite against the audacious, and so woorthic friends to fuch as are wife, that they both know how to chastise foolish Captaines, and how to be commanded by discreete

The occasion of the war be tween the two States.

A worthy c. filmation of Learning and learned men.

Philosophers. Well wot yee, that all our difference hath growne about possession of Townes

seated on the bankes of the River Milina. By this letter we tell ye, and fweare thereto also by the immortall Gods, that wee freely renounce all right wee can pretend vnto them, on this condition: that(at our meeting) you shal give vs your Ambassador Euxinus: for the happy Athenians do more affect a Philosopher in their school, then a whole Prouince for their Commonwealth. Yet Lacedemonians account it no acte of leuity in vs. to change towns and territories, to bee governed by one onely man: because the Philosopher can teach vs how to line well, whereas fuch Countreyes may give vs occasion of dying ill. And in regard, that (of auncient enemies) we now declare our felues your true louing Friends: We not onely deliuer you from VV arre, and fend you Peace; but likewise will give you Counfell how to conscrueit; for the Physicke that preferueth health, is farre more excellent then that which expelleth difeafes. And this is theremedy which wee!

giue you.

As ye defire, that your yong men shal exercise themselues to Armes, in like manner bee as diligent, that your Children may have Learning in due time: For, as Warre is made with cruell weapons, so with sweete words is peace soonest obtained. And thinke not (Lacedemonians) that wee heereto aduife yee without cause; for, in leaving the counfell of the Wife, and fuffering ydlenesse to encrease among the people: it engendreth seditions and civill Warres, onely to make men murther one another. Nor would we have ye thinke vs friends to busie pratiers; for our ancient Father Socrates appointed; that the first Lesson read to a Scholler in our Academy; was, that for the space of two yeares, hee should not dare to speake a word; beecause it is a matter impossible, that any man can be wife in speaking, except he be admirably

patient in filence, and knoweth howe to hold his peace.

May it please you then, to permitte Euxinus to remaine with vs. and immagine, that if wee hope for benefite by his presence; you may rest assured that from fuch counfell as he gives vs, you cannot receive any damage. For, it is a very ancient law in Athens, that the Senate may A consumin neuer attempt any Warre, vntil our Philosophers have first made examination, kingdone whether the cause bee just or no. So wee ceasie, praying both your and our immortall Goddes, to preserve you and vs in perpetuall peace: for that onely is perpetuall that stands confirmed by the will of the Gods.

CHAP. XI.

The true Module and Patterne of Gouernement, to be observed in any Commonwealth; derived from the communitie among Bees, and how many wayes they may be examples to men.



HE forme of a Co-🏖 monwealth obserued amongst Bees, mecthinkes is fo proper and answerable vnto that of mentas it may bee verily prefumed,

that GOD gaue them it by a Naturall instinct, and for an instruction vnto our manner of Gouernement. This little The deint Creature, is named by the Latines Apis, inc worth a derivation from the Greeke, which figpis from the
nifieth to bee without feet : not in regard
Greeke that it hath no feete, but because they do ioyne fo closely and aptly with the body, as if indeede it had none at all.

Many haue written of their propertics and qualities; as Aristotle, Pliny, and many more: beside, I find in elder times, that Hilifous Tatius was verie inquifitiue, usa diligen to vnderstande the properties of these searcher if Creatures, and that he might render the the properfounder reasons of his knowledge; hee liued in Forests and solitarie places, where best he might attaine to his owne intent.

Hilifens Tai

of forty yeeres (without attending to any other exercise) gaue himselfe wholly to the same labour : and both of them wrote divers Bookes very apt and worthy for all posterity. The first and most notable thing, ob-

A kinde of religious reucued in Beet, ming forth of their hiues.

Chap. 11.

ferued in the writings of moderne men, is, that they have noted an admirable kinde of Religion in these little Creatures: For, before they wil yssue forth of their Hiues, they bow downe their heads forwarde in such humble manner, as if they were deuoutly at meditation on their knees. Declaring therein (euen by Naturall instinct as it were) to vs that we should not undertake, or beginne any thing, before wee haue first honoured God, and recommended our endeuours to his gracious goodnesse, that they be begunne and ended in his name. Very respective are they, that | fire abroad, untill they first fee, wwhether say y. by the foode they gather from fweet Flowers, they may produce hony, beneficiall both for others and themselues; demonbonn for them frating thereby, that men should labour Glues, but for (by vertuous meanes) to performe good ring their Prince, to whom GOD hath actions in their life time, auaileable both for themselues and others; considering, it is a duty required in men, and for which they are born, not to labor for themselues, but also for their Countrey, and their Friends.

They are content to liue in their owne habitation, without intruding for dwelling in anothers house. As a notable example to vs, that (for the peace of the Common-wealth) enery man should rest contented with his owne, without coueting or viurping ought from any other.

Eucry Hine hath his King, and both he Nomore but one king im e buy hine (or order of Go and his attendants, doc thun noyfes, clamours, and windes. Which teachethys, that we ought to have one cheefe Commander in one Common-wealth, by who all the rest may be well gouerned: & that we should shunne the smoake of Ambition, in being greater one then another in the Common-wealth, to the end, that there may be good discipline. Also, we should the from all windes of vanities, tumults, partialities, and enmities. Flight, labour, foode, and fruite is common alike to enery one; to let vs vnderstand, the mutual lone and charity which ought to be among Cittizens, in being helpful one to another: and partaking likewise in o-

Andlowachus | And Aristomachus likewise, for the space | thers diffresses, for by this meanes, mens mindes become linked together in fuch amity, that the Commonwealth flourisheth in peace and quietnesse, and is a goodly president to other estates.

These creatures line without lubricitie, although they engender more then a- A worthy preny other. Which instructeth vs, that infect in life, for the peace and repose of the people, men should have care of childrens generation, to perpetuate their owne kind and the Common-wealth, without lufting after adulteries: but to live chaste and temperate in pleasures carnall, the libertic wherof doth procure contentions, quar-

rels, and death.

They doe respect their King with such loue and obsernance, that they account it an honourable deede to die for him. And Saint Ambrofe faieth thus: They will not de Cena Dom. he will flye foorth, or no : that they may keepe him company, in finding foode, and other effects for common benefite. Which may minister example vnto men, for honougiven such Authoritie, to bee assisted and imitated in those paines, which he taketh for the good of his people, hee being the principall of the Common-

They endeuour continually, to cleat In what manfuch a one for their King, as (in appa-ner the Bees rance) is most Noble, as also the mildest, a choice of their not vling his fling against anie other, king. which onely is as a punishment for offenders. Aduifing vs heereby, to elect fuch for our Gouernors and Magistrates, as are of generous Nature, discreete, wise, and debonnaire. And these small creatures, are of fuch nature, that they who are of greatest bodie amongst them, are alfo (commonly) the most humaine and gracious. Signifying nothing elfe to vs, but that he ought to be most milde such as are and courteous, that is exalted vnto the highly advanhighest dignity, as well in Nobilitie of bloode, as in wealth and vertue: which things naturally beget enuy in others, and vet destroy themselves by humanitie, and converteth into love. Most obedient are they to their King; and if any one haue declared disdaine, or disobedience, & the same bee discerned : hee neuer attendeth for other correction, but instantly flayeth Loue and fihimselfe with his sting. Whereby we are delity to our superiours.

A bufy talker can neuer bee

Honourable

counsel giuen

by the Athe-nians to the

Lacedemoni-

ans.

a Wileman.

No idlenes a mongst the Bees, but all imployed in feuerall offices, & all fo

generalbene

A good admo

ties & incor-

liners.

offend, euen to death it felfe. No Bec is flothful or idle in the Hiue; for some flye forth to combate against other in open field: others watch to feeke for foode; others contemplate times, to foresee when stormes and raines will enfue; others compose the hony Combes; others lay aside the waxe by it selfe, and thereof others make little Lodgets, caries and rounds, in very straunge and wonderfull order. Neuertheleffe, in fo many and fundry offices, no one intrudes into anothers businesse, or dare make any stealth or robbery from his companions: but by his owne labor and vertue, hee feedeth abroad on hearbes and flowers, and yet brings a part of his pains home, for generall good of the Commonwealth. Herein we have a notable instruction, to abhor & banish out of our Ciries, flothfull rogues nition for Citand idle vagabonds, that will not like by porate townes their owne labour as they ought to doe. to auoyd ydle Wherefore through fuch deboshment & negligence in men, all fuch vices arise in Citties, as doe corrupt good manners, and ouerthrow order: for every one shold liue vpon his owne endeuour, without vfurping ought of others; and what he hath superfluous, is for generall aide of the Common-wealth, and to be ministred to others necessities.

admonished, to be faithfull and louing to

our Prince or Magistrate, and searefull to

Naturehath giuen them stings to defend themselues, and offendsich as dare The weapons of defence for or acrence for themselves, & affaile themsor prefume into their citty or hiue: and although they are not of any offending ene great corpulence, yet not with stading they haue vnconquerable corage & prudence. For with the gum of trees, they annoynt the superficies of their hines, to the end, y no beaft or other enemy may enter in at any rift or chinke; and if the passage or isfue be ouer large, they labor diligently to restrain and make it lesse. By which example men are admonished, to bee stout and couragious for desence of their countrie, and wifely to foresce, that no Vices enter into their Common-wealth, that may in-

fect, corrupt, or poyfon it.
By naturall inftinct, they are enclined, that each one staies on the first flower hee finds, and parts not thence away, vntill he haue taken his refection and norishment: whereof he wil discharge himselfe, before he seekes out any other. And much they

frequent the leaves and flowers of the Oliue tree, making there fom long abiding. feruing vs as an example, what fobriety wee should vie in the course of our Life. When they feed on the flowers of the Almond tree, their hony is the more fauoury and temperate; whereas contrary-wife, when they feed on bitter herbs or flowers it is far leffe fweet: notwithstanding, it is thinner, very mundificatine, profitable for divers difeathe opilations of the Liner, and good for fes. the dropsie, as also to heale the biting of a mad dogge.

Such as have made triall by experience When the K, of these creatures, doe instific, that when their king cannot fly he is carried abroad & cannot fly by troops of them; and during the time y he lineth fo fickly, the females are separated from the males. But when he is dead, then they conuerfe together again: which declareth, what pitty and piety wee owe to our Prince and countrey, and that men thold gladly support and suffer for one another. The sting of the female is sharper then the males, & there are many males, that have no stings at all. Hereby we may A good advnderstand, that the tongues of women uestilemen are more piercing then mens, & ofttimes for Women cause very great inconveniences: in which respect, they should be kept short & temperated that their lauish liberty breed no blame and contention among neighbors. The best Bee is litle, round, closely plump bending in the midft, and least hairy. Som feed on flowers of the mountaines, others onthem of Gardens and husbanded pla- Of mountain ces: the first whereof, are much lesse then from whet. the other, as also more strong and robust, Phinhiodist to endure labor. Beside, according to Pliny they are of far dreadfuller aspect, abiding in the rifts of trees, or in some smal vaults. And what fairer example can nature afford vs, then of their strength and abilitie? For, such people as are not educated in delicacies, but in continual exercises of mind and body; are most profitable memuney ply their worke in their hines, & feed on the superabundance of their Combes, beriefeld knowing by meere instinct of security. bers for the Common-wealth. Closely if they shold not do so, & give vigilant attendance: Spiders wold get into the hine, & there kil the. When they have but smal ftore of hony, the most of them keepes the entrance, it may not be taken from them vntill they are better prouided. A worthy

ous things out of their Common-wealth, least by the meanes of them, the venome of hatred may be bred among the, which may procure the death of one another. And when dearth or scarsitie happens in their Cities, vigilancy is needfully required, to preserve such store as they have; that it may not bee elfwhere transported, & so publike calamity ensue thereon.

There are a kind of Bees which labour

president to men, to banish all superflu-

erfection in

he gouerne-

Chap. 11.

not to produce hony, but cate that already made, and they are longer then the other: the good Bees have continuall war with them, to expell them out of their Commonwealth. Signifying to vs, that flothful persons should be excluded from other mens company; and fuch as feeke to feed by others fweat. Their King neuer flies abroad, but he is atteded round with a great company of Bees, and if it fo happen, that they meet with another flight of Bees, that likewife haue their King with them, they leave their owne, to accompany the new King. And if their owne King contends to reduce them againe under his obedience; they kill him, and follow the other newly made choise of and him they elect as their king. This excesse hapnesh very fildom, & is one of the two imperfections which these creatures have in their gouernment:beside,it is necessarie, that in euery kind there mould be some vice. If they chance to fting hard, they put foorth the whole length of their fting; whereon themselves die withall, because their bowels iffue out thereby.

Their Kings and Gouernors sting but fildome, although they are thereto prouoked; for some say, that they have no fling at all. And Pliny is not certaine, whether they have any or no : but notwith flading he is well affured that they fting not: Neither care they that the king should be fo armed, prouided, that he bee of good gouernment, valiant, & maiesticall: which proueth, that Princes ought to be benign. milde, and patient : neuer to take any delight in cruelty, but rather to be gentle & mercifull. Such is the cleanlines of these creatures, that they cannot endure any foule or noisom fauour; & therfore when they returne to their Cittle or Castle (for fuch they account their Hine to be) they discharge their bellies in the aire, & many

times(through bad finelles)they become

fickly, and fo foone as any one of them dycil, the rest hurle him out of the Hine. They grow ficke also thorow idlenes, and therefore they will not fuffer any to bee flothfull amongst them : and the finell of boiled fish, such as Creuises, Lobsters, and Crab-fish is deadly to them. An excellent example for men to live cleane & neatly, free from a vicious life, carefully respecting both their foules and bodies.

The winde is very contrary and hurtfull for them; and therefore when it is great, Their delight fiffe and boysterous, the hives ought to in winter and be carefully couered. VV arme places they fummer. affect in winter, as other creatures do, and in Summer, fresh aires are most fitting for them. It is very necessary to vse dili- A caucate for gence, when the hony is taken from the: taking the ho because, if ouermuch be taken away, they ny from them will labour little; and if more likewise be left then is convenient, they will bee the leffe diligent in making more, & therefore a moderate and reasonable quantity must remain, according to the number wherof they consist. What worthier example to men can there be then this? declaring that in the commonwealth, cuery thing ought to be moderately measured; because ouer-great, pompous, and luxurious dyer, digality is not to but deftroy famous families, abound to beevled, fo do but destroy famous families, abounding in al superfluous things. And yet not gardiferdefer to be too niggardly and iparing in proui- ueth reproofe fion needfully required. For as by the first children and fernants may become careleffe and negligent; fo by the latter, they

may grow wretched and desperate. Another diligent care is required in the that make vie of Bees, to witte, that when A note forethey heare their great swarming noise in telling when the hiue, it is a fignificatio that they wold for fake their begone and leave the hine: but then if the hine. hiue be gently fprinkled ouer with fweete wine they will not flir abroad . Such as keepe them may eafily take note hecreof, because (ordinarily) they make no other noise then when they are flying: Wherein we are instructed, that by sweet language and kind behauiour, we may qualify sterne anger in discontented brethren.

'Aristotle further faith, he did wel obserue it by experience, that their feet before are fhorter then them behind; which is fo giuen them by nature, for their eafter rifing from the ground. He faith moreouer, that when the hony corrupteth in the hine, it engendreth certaine wormes, which make

Aristot, in Lib.

naturally addiaed in their diet and feeding, and what leaues and flowers doc most delight

mies to their

Theneste thanlineffe of Bees, ex-impling men

7 Booke

Chap. 11.

Pliniu lib.11.

Of Reuelations from the dead.

665

weaue spiders webbes in the

Reasons of

their multiply

ing & decrea

Three rampiers of defence to guard their hony combes

Their flight 2-broad,& hinderance from seturning home at nigh

The Sentinell to awake the nings.

Wormesthat | webbes like vnto Spiders; whereby they wexe ficke, and dye. A very apt example for men, to bee vigilant and respective of themselues, that the sweet daies and prosperity in the world, doe not so corrupt their foules, as to beget the baneful worm of ambition, which is deadly. In moyste times of raines, they multiply greatly, by reason of the humidity: and contrariwise they decrease in the times of drought, thorow want of moisture. Also in Winter, their strength much faileth them, in regard of cold weather, fnowes, and windes out of the North; which hindereth theyr fruitefulnesse, and therefore they keepe closely hidden. But when the Flowers of Beans begin to sprout, they come abroad to labour : and the first worke they doe at home, is to builde their dwelling houses, next to engender, & then to yeeld hony. They make three feuerall rampiers be-

foretheir Combes, as their guarde and strength: the first crust (being vemost) they makebitter; the second (within) somewhat fweeter; and the third, thickeft of al, because it ioyneth next to the Combes; & thus is the foundation of their defence. A good instruction for men, how to shape their building in this worlde, to vie diligence in their prouision, so soone as they can, especially of things necessary; then to marry, for encrease of children, and still to keepe employment in naturall exercises. When they flye foorth vpon fome vrgent occasions, and are preuented by night, so that they cannot returne home vnto their owne habitation, they fleepe topfie turny, the vpfide downe, because cold mists, fogs and raines should not offend their wings, to hinder their flight home to their owne houses, or execution of their other enterprizes and affaires.

Sentinels they have of their owne appointment, who make a noise at break of day, by which found they all awake; and turning themselues on their secte, they make a noise againe to their Sontinels, as a thankfull figne of ioy: but then, vppon another found from the same Sentinelles, they are all filent, as attending what instat charge is to be given them. Informing our judgements, in times of warre to bee very vigilant; well prouided, and no way negligent. Excellent experience hand they, when raines and vnfeafonable times will enfue, which they foresee by flying a-

broad in the Euenings, about their owne needfull occasions; and finding it to follow as they feared, they will not by anie meanes boudge from home.

They hauc (befide) a maruellous order among them; namely, that the youngest Bees flye abroad, and bring home the foode; the elder fort biding at home, to order natural dreffe and prepare it . But that which is ly observed. yet far more admirable is, that when the yong ones arriue, laden with hearbes and flowers laborioully; fome of the aged fort do meet them at the entrance, and help to ease themostheir burthen. Moreouer, such as come so home ouer-charged, seeke the fweetest aires to passe thorow, and where they are calmest : as fearing, least rude winds should make them let fal what they haue carefully gathered, or dry vppe their honey, and therefore they flye lower towards the ground : and fuch as can bring home no lading, are woont to carrie little stones or grauell, that by the weight of them, they may the better resist impetuous windes.

By this precedent example, yong men A notable al are admonished, that they ought to stirre and labour in the Commonwealth; & the porting of the pring of the p more aged, to preserve the fruits of their Common paines. Yong men also, that do busy their, braines in the blufterings of ambition; should take a lower flight, and neerer to the ground, efteeming themselues to bee no more then men : confidering vprightly in their foules, that what foeuer benefit enfueth by their paines to the Commonwealth, they stand bound thereto by obligation. Let no man therefore ouer-ween, or striue to outgo or be aboue other, except his contention be honorable, & that his trauell may most aduance the good of the Commonwealth.

While thus these poore creatures are The King P laboring abroad, their Ki. abides at home, werfully defended by his having a ftrong court of guard about him Corpide wel armed with their stings, for the defece Guard & & ing abroad of his person. He goeth abroad but very with his arm fildom, and when it is his pleasure to goe forth, he is (in like manner)royally attended. But whe he wil haue his army abroad to any expeditions three daies before, loud fummons is given for orderly preparatio. If any troop of them fwerue from following him, they find their error, by fmelling to the ground where the King hath past, & fo pursue in that tract, vntill they ouertake

loft by their negligence, the army loofeth it selfe, and then they go to ioyne with another King. Pliny also reporteth, that whe their king dieth, they are fo full of anguish reuelation, not onely should faith bee deand forrow, that they will neither feed nor stroyed, but also it would bee an occasion flye abroad for any provision: so that if he be not taken away dead from before the, they will also dye with greese and hunger.
Tutoring vs heerein, that if strifes & variances happen among vs, they should not or brother were raised, and returned again Kingdoms fil-dome gain by chaunge of last of any continuance: also howe the death of our Prince should be irkesom to vs, because little benefit cometh by changing Gouernors. Thus we perceive, how many good examples may bee derived from the Bees Common-wealth, not veterly vnnecessary for our imitation.

CHAP. XII.

How finfull and dungerous a thing it is to de-fire reuelations from the dead, or know-ledge of things belonging to future life.

not faue vs without our felues, wil not faue vs without our felues, wil feluesieuen fo hath he giuen the ground-wall he given Vike as God, who hath crea-The absolute foundation of ternall life in he worlde to

the ground-worke of all meanes for our faluation, which is Faith, with hope of all those bleffings, which (in the ancient Law) he hath promised, concerning the life to come, which also hee hath reuealed by his owne fonne, and are not to bee obtained without beleefe and hope in him. But humane frailty, or to speake more properly, Faith in man is so weake, that when the glorie which God hath ordained for that life is preached to him, he answeres, he beleeves it: But vet notwithstanding (faith he) it is a matter of no meane meruaile, that of fo many men as haue dyed; not fo much as one man is returned back, to tell vs the fecrets of that other life.

The very greatest signe of incredulity, that can be in the heart of man (in mine opinion) is this earnest defire, to wish from God a reuclation of the life to come. For feeing that faith confisteth in beleefe, and

him. It is to be admired, how highly they I to hope in such things as are not apparant are comforted in his presence: for if he be if they were reuealed to vs: why then faith remaineth no more, and fo the fingulare meanes of faluation should be taken from vs I say moreouer, that by such manner of in vs, whereby to runne into great error against God, as wee may easily prooue by

> Admit the case, that our father, mother, or brother were rancu, and returned into this world, euen in the fame fieth as to appropriate they parted from vs: and to the end, wee the intalgability of the instalgability o might the more confidently credit therif, to be the very fame persons, they did cate, of reuelations drinke,& converse with vs(as our bleffed Sauior of the world did with his Apostles, to avoide all scruple of doubt, that they were not shadowes or phantasinaes) they reuealing to vs, matters belonging to that concealed life: no doubt need to be made but wee would liften, and verily beleeve whatsoeuer they said to bee true. If this were fo, all were but man, having a bodie and a foul, and we beleeve him, whom we credit to be but a man, who is a liar by nature. Hereon then it followeth, that in giuing faith to him, we that thew our felues Godonely is rather to beleeue a man naturally a Lyar, lyars then God, who is the foueraigne truth indeed, and cannot lie, but hath oftentimes repeated tovs, what rewarde is prepared for the good, and what punishment for the wicked.

I thinke then, there is no man, but he wil confesse it a greenous sinne, if hee should lend faith to a reuelation, defired by a retched man, to beloeue the creature, rather then the Creator. Let no man then couet beleeued, but that which may redound to his own damnation; confidering, what God hath bestowed vpon him, and also what is denied for his faluation, when hee may helpe to worke it with feare and trembling. If all, are tyed to this conclusion, so much the more it belongeth to a Christian, whom our Sautor hath taught to beleeue, whatfoeuer hee hath renealed in the Scripture, And faith in the Parable of the Glutton, that to know heavenly things, wee have the Lawe and the Prophets to instruct vs fufficiently.

> LII 3 CHAP.

ter alledged by the deade.

The creature ought not to the Creator

ι,

dowes might

offer in this

Temple,but

good for fo lewd a kinde

CHAP. XIII.

Of a Disputation made in Antioche, in the presence of King Ptolomy, by seuen seuerall Ambassadors; to know, which of their kingdomes had the best Lawes and Cu-Stomes.

Ing Ptolomy being at Anti-oche, Ambassadors from the Romaines, Carthageni-ans, Sicilians, Rhodians, A-thenians, Lacedemonians, &

Sicyonians, came thither vpon feuerall occasions to him. And sitting at supper with the King, a disputation chaunced to bee moued, cocerning the condition of their Countries and Common-weales, which of them was best policied, and prouided ofgood Lawes and commendable Customes. The dispute was long debated & maintained among them, being defended with good and fufficient reasons. Whereuppon, King Ptolomy, being defirous to be resolved in the truth, commaded each man to speake, the customes in their kingdomes : whereby might best be differned, which of the Proninces merited most to be commended.

The Ambassador for the Romanes first began, and answered in this maner. We hold our Temples in great and reuerend respect; wee are obedient to our Gouerpours; and greeuoufly we punish wicked and lewd liners.

He for Carchage next spake, faying. In the Common-wealth of Carthage, our Noblemen fight for vs; our Plebeians & Mechanickes labour for vs; and our Philofophers enstructivs.

He for the Sicilians; faid In our Common-wealth, Iuftice is intirely kept; our Negotiations are truly managed, and all live equally together.

Hee for the Rhodians, faide. In our Common wealth, our olde men are how nest; our young men bashfully modest; and our women line folitarily, vfing but few words.

our Common-wealth, we neuer confent, that rich men shall be partiall, poore men idle, nor our Gouernors ignorant.

He for the Lacedemonians, faid. In our He for the Lacedemonians, raite. In our Common-wealth, entry cannot reigne, Sparta or Lacedemon, because we are all equally nor auarice, because all our goods are in common; nor idlenesse, because all labour.

In our common-wealth (faid the Am- Sicyonia, baffadour for the Sicyonians) weepermit none to voyage fourth abroad, because at his returning home, hee shal not teach & instruct vs in matters of nouelties; neither do we fuffer Physicians, who may kil our healthfull men; nordo we allow Orators, because we couet not quarrelling

When King Ptolomy had heard all the feuen Ambassadors, he highly comment of King Pleded all their kingdomes; affirming, that long to the they were all well and iuffly gouerned. Ambassadors. That each of them had good Customs, worthily deferning commendation: and that it was hard for him to judge, which of them was best ruled and ordered. So the Ambassadors taking their leaue of the King, returned home vnto their severall countries, very joyful and contented, that the king had dealt with them fo gracioufly in judgement.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of a very proud and sumptuous Temple (dedicated to Venus) in the City of Corinth. in the service whereof, were fine hundred Ladics : And of the answer of an Abbelle to a great Lord.

N Corinth, the principall City of Achaia, lined a ty, Greece, carried thant, famous for wealth & called the Victous life, firnamed Heringent, who cattled a fumpture on; who cattled a fumpture

ous Temple to be built in the middeft of Phocis the City, in the maner of a Monastery, & dedicated it to the Goddesse Venus . In this abhominable Temple, were more then 500. young Ladies & Gentlewomen of Afia, whom their fathers there offred to the Goddeffe Venus, and to her feruice ! The Athenian Ambassador saide. In fo that such of them as were most wan-

ton and lascinious, were held in greatest unileso farte off, to find out Monasteries Monasteries and religious. It was not lawfull for any of them to go out of the Temple; but each one might there sinne, and please her selse ued in this dewith fuch as thee best liked, and as often uftable Temas shee would: so that all their Religion confisted not in being honest and vertuous maydens, but they had power to doe what they pleafed.

Among them was an other Lawe also, that if any of them had a mind to marrie. the infamy of her body, which was permitted that the might fo doe. Moreouerthat befide her husband, the might have an amorous friend : for, in being dedicated to the goddeffe of Loue, they intended, not to loofe the name of Wanton and Amorous. And no married wife or widdow, might offer in this Temple, but onely virgines. And fuch as were fo vnhappy, or wretched in fortune, to come and offer their Oblations there: before a yeare was expired, became a she diuell in this hellish fanctuarie; and, of a chaste virgin, a shamelesse and lascinious strum-

All such as had admittance there, were expert in reading, writing, finging, playing on instrumenrs, and dancing. Wherby men were allured thither extraordina. rily, and it was no shame for them to bee feene there.

The like Temples are (at this day to be feene) in the Portugall Indiaes, in the Prouinces of Iappan, where there are aboue eight hundred Monasteries, the least of which hath more then thirtie Nunnes in it, called there Banzes; whereof there are two forts : one clothed in blacke, the other in lighter colours.

It is a common fame in those Countrics, that these Bonzes doe feede on a certayne hearbe, to anoyde conceining with childe; but if conception can not be preuented, then they eate another hearbe, to destroy the infant conceined. They enftruct yong maydens in reading, and fuch is the fortifhnesse of the people, to credit verily, that they can deliuer the foules of their deceassed parents from Hell; and therefore (in that respect) they are greatly honoured and reuerenced.

Woour felues in thefe dayes (almost monstrous and miserable) neede not tra-

where Religious women or Nunnes (if Monatteries of Nuns necwee may tearme them Religions) leade rerhome, litheir lines as lewelly and diffolutely, wherof themselues make no other concealement, but that all commers and goers, finde there exceeding kinde wellcome. Which ensueth by ouer-much libertie & ydlenesse, or else, by being placed there by their parents, contrary to their owne liking. But the good and vertuoufly difposed (whereof there are many) are not comprehended amongest these deboshed women: And as for the voluptuous and immodeft; they regarde not who knowes their loofenesse, and may well say of them selected, as an Abbesse did, of whom Nicholas Boyerus maketh mention in his Decisions. She had fortie Nunnes voder her charge, and there belonged to that Monastery twenty Priests.

It came to paffe, that a Prince, whose predecessours had founded that Monasterie; passing rhat way, and visiting the Re- The confeligious companies : found all (elfe where) rencebe-

in good order, except the number of Prince & the Priests, and these Nunnes, whose number Lady Abbetse he thought not well ordayned; whereup-

CHAP. XV.

on hee sayde to the Abbesse. Truely Ma-

dame, me thinkes, that in flead of fourty

Nunnes, fortie Priests had beene better

appoynted, and twenty Nunnes onelie

had beene sufficient. My Lord (quoth

the) perhaps the order is not fo ill contri-

ued, as you imagine it to be, neither is it to be condemned: for, of the fortie Nuns

heere appointed, twenty are for the twen-

tic Priests; and the other twenty serue for

all comers and goers.

¶ Of the Oracle of Apollo in the Isle of Del-phos, the Originall thereof, and upon what occasion it came.

He most renowned Oracle long since in Asia, was that of Apollo in the Isle of Del-People of Babanata phos, whither resorted infinite persons, and from all

parts of the world: offering there great gifts, and confulting on especial matters;

moued to the Ambaffadors by the King. for a refoluti on therein.

The argumet

For the Romaines.

Carthage.

Sicily.

Rhodes.

Athens.

Chap. 16.

The admira-

blepiety of the Ladies &

Matrones of

Genef,8,18,

Dan. , , 2.

3 Reg. 22, 25

Pompeymade

Gods Temple

and the pu-

therefore in-

flicted on him

The words 'in

the Letter of

Marcus Aure-

King of Tri-

nacria.

nifhment

thence, then from all other Oracles. At the first, there was a deepe, crooked, winding caue or ditch, out of which issued a winde, that blew extremely at the mouth or entrance; thereon was feated a yoong Virgine, dedicated to Apollo, that gaue aunswere to all things demaunded of her. This winde was the diuell, who blew into her eares; and before the Temple was builded in Delphos, a she-Goat descending downe into that caue or ditch, became fuddenly filled with a dinine Spirit, dannfing, skipping and leaping for ioy, as the like had neuer bin feene before. Whereat the Goate-heard wondering, followed her downe into the caue, and beganne to fore-tell of things to come. Many more beside made proofe in the same maner; so that who focuer would know what was to enfue, most put his head into the entrance of the caue.

because more aunsweres were returned

But in the end, this could not be doone without daunger, and loffe of many perfons: whereupon a Temple was erected to Apollo the Diviner, and the Priest named Pythia, who made choice of a Virgine, to be placed on the Tripos: whereof Lactantius the Grammarian speaketh thus, interpreting this Verse of Achilles Statius, in his first Booke of his Thebays.

Salue prisca sides Tripodam. Tripos (faith he) species est lauri tribus radicibus, Apollini confecrata, propter vim diuinationis. Iamblichus, in his booke of the Aegyptian Mysteries, saith; Sybilla, in Delphis duobus modis suscipiebat Deum, vel per spiritum quendam tamen igneumque, qui erumpebat alicubi ex ore antri cuius dam, wel sedem in adyto super sedem aneam, habentem tres aut quatuor pedes , & Deo dicatam. The Virgine that was the Organe of Apollo, fitting on the Tripos , held'a Rod in her hand, and was crowned with a greene Chaplet of Laurell.

Many other Oracles there were in diuers other places. Liber was the Oracle of the Sicilians; Ceres, that of the Rhodians; Diana, of the Ephesians: "Berecinthia, of the Romaines; Belus, of the Palestines; Iuno, of the Numidians ; Venus, of the Thebans and Cypriots; and many others, in whom poore abused Idolaters reposed all their confidence, rendring to them their Vowes and Sacrifices, albeit veterly in vaine. For, the answers of these Oracles, vs in pietie and religion.

were nothing else but ydle imaginations, and meere fables proceeding from the dinell, the father of lies. And by good right were fuch abuses and superstitions condemned, by them that had knowledge of our true eternall God; as Dauid, Baruch, and other holy men, who detested such Idolls and Images of the Gentiles, made of golde, filuer, stone, wood, and other matter, and by the hand of man.

CHAP. XVI.

¶What care our Elders had in ancient times, concerning the perfourmance of their Sa-

N auncient custome (good and commendable) hath euermore beene, not onelie
on the behalfe of Christians, but also amongst the Ethnickes: in acknowledging the benefite hauebing they received from God; not by wordes full of Religion and alone, but also by effects and exterior Sa- time, crifices. So that there is no Nation fo barbarous, but hath confessed his God, by fome outward figne. And the Roman Senate did alwayes holde Religion in veneration, that so often as they met together (as Varro reporteth.) Although they Maus Van had affaires of great importance, and which inlib.1.414 required hastie diligence : yet the first thing ligings. that they propounded to themselves (before decision of any doubts) was religious humili-

ation to their gods. At all times, and when soeuer the Romaine Confulls or Emperours should go forth to warre, they never would prepare Ammiant for the field, till they had first facrificed to Marchath their gods, faying; All felicitie and prof- 1993 peritie proceeded from them. And Marcus Aurelius faith; They helde it for an infallible in Hordey. rule, that there can be nothing perfect among Prim. mortall men, except it bee perfected by God. Lycurgus, the auncient Law-maker of the Lacedemonians, among other Lawes, ordayned : That no man should be so bolde to feeke for fauor from a Prince, except he were knowne to ferue the Gods diligently. Nor do I alledge these examples, as intending to confirme my faying by Pagans and Idolaters : but onely to make vs bluth with fhame, by feeing, how farre they exceeded For,

For, if wee would reade Histories, we should finde, that Gentiles and Pagans fought carefully, to recouer all their neceffities from the gods.

In the time of Quintus Fabius and Publius Decius, they warring against the Samnites and Hetrurians, the Roman Matrons performed wonderfull things, neuer ceafing day and night, in offering great Sacrifices to the gods, faying: If they were once appeased, they needed not to stand in feare of their enemies.

But leaue we Idolaters, and let vs feeke what the auncient children of Goddid, Examples of the children of God. who at all times, and whenfocuer they were afflicted, had their recourse to Sacrifices, when they would expresse their rhankefulnesse to Almighty God, for benefites received . Noah, after hee came foorth of the Arke, erected an Altare, facrificed thereon, and the facrifice was fo acceptable to God, that he promised him, neuer more to drowne the world agayne. Good Taacob, being gone from the house of Laban, to give thankes to God, built an Altare, which hee confedrated to God.

> our God. We reade in Efdras, that after the children of Israel were returned, to re-edifie their Temple, that they might facrifice to God; they were fo carefull, that building with one hand, they helde their weapons in the other, to defend them from their ea nemics.

SMS CONFORD ON L

The children of Ifrael, beeing afflicted in

the wilderneffe, fayd : Let vs go on for three

dayes, and afterward wee will facrifice wato

In Leuiticus, mention is made of innumerable Sacrifices, whereby God pardoned offences committed. Hereupon Daniel being in the captivitie of Babylon, and feeing the Sacrifices to be forfaken, favd : In these times, there is heere neyther Princes Gouernaur, nor Prophet; nor Holocaust, nor Sacrifice, nor Oblation, nor Incense, nor place to offer our First-fruites on before thee: Re. cesue therefore vs, with our foules broken. and our firites cast downe . Elias alfo. lamented grienously, because the Altares were ouerthrowne, and in his carnest zeale to God, vnable to fuffer fuch ruine, defired to die . For without all doubt, nothing is more milerable, then when the feruice of Almightie God is despised, and where it faileth, a punishment from God furely followeth.

Aarons sonnes, Nadab and Abihu, were confumed with fire from heaven, before all the people; because they observed not the Lawe ordayned for the Sacrifices. King Balthafar, prophaning the veffels of gold and filuer, dedicated to the Temples feruice, to ferue his wines & concubines for drinking therein at his Table : didinely fawe a Hand writing on the wall, foretelling his neere approching ruine; so that he was taken by his enemies, and flayne the same instant . Achab, having prophaned the holy place, erected a Temple to the Idoll Baal : but afterwardes, going a-

gainst the Syrians, he was slayne with an

Arrow shot from a bowe.

The Records of Histories doe also tell vs, that Pompey, hauing made a Stable of Gods Temple, after hee had robbed, ranfackt,& spoyled Ierufalem, became thereby fo abominable to GOD, that thence forward he was most vnfortunate. And although hee had before vanquished two and twentie Kings, yet at the laft, himfelfe was miferably ouercome. The fonne of Darius was so prowde and presumptuous, that hee would not onely abuse men, but euen the gods also, and sent soure thoufand men to beate downe the Temple of Apollo : but fo great a hayle and tempest fell from Heauen, that destroyed them cuery many For this cause, the good Emperour Marcus Aurelius, writing a Letter to the King of * Trinacria; reprodued him greatlys, because he had beaten downe a Sicily. moity of the remple, to enlarge his house. Thou thinkest (quoth he) that the stones and morter, wherewith the Temple was built, to be of small value : it is very true ; but the Gods to whom they are dedicated; are most mightie. I wish therefore, if thou would have peace wish the Romaines, I having frandallzed Rome, and priened the Senate) that thou Shouldest take as much of thy house to enlarge the Temple, us thou halt taken from it, and build it a great deale higher, and wider then it was; and then thou shalt be happie, in taking nothing from the house of the Gods, but rather that they possesse part of thine.

The Athenians, who were alwayes conquered by the Lacedemonians, in many wars which they have had together : complayned to their God, because they had exceeded in their Sacrifices to him , farre beyond those of the Lacedemonians, But the Oracle of Jupiter made them answere

In what manner answer was giuen hefore the Temples erection.

The reason for building the Temple.

Laclant.Gram mat,in Achil. Stat.lib.Thebayd.

Lamblic.in lib. Egipt.Mist. cap.s.

One of the names gluen Cibele, mother of the Gods.

by Licurgus

Reg.19,14.

Chap. 19.

Peacthes a

The Oracle of Jupiter an fwering the Athenians.

I Peter 5.3.

the Lacedemonians, are more agreeable to the Gods, then all the exteriour pompe of the Athenians. In which respect, we holde it as a Catholique maxime, That God giueth care to the prayers of the humble, and reproueth those of the presumptuous. Deus enim superbu resistit, humilibus autem dat gratiam. For God relifteth the prowde, and giveth grace to the humble; fo fayth Saint Peter.

CHAP. XVII.

Tof divers and fundry opinions of the Philosophers, concerning the feate of the Soule in the body of Man; And a contrarie coniecture of the Platonists.

Variety of conie 5 ures dinerfly deli

Philo Indaic. in

lib.Alleger : leg.

Opinion of Christians

Aug in lib.ver

vil.cap.33.

Lato and Democritus lay, That the feate of the Soule is in the head. Straton the Philosopher limitteth it; Betweene the eyebrowes. Erastratus within the

skinne or filme of the Braine. Heraclitus placeth it, in the outward agitation. Moschion gives it place, throughout all she hodie . Xenocrates , in the crowne of the head. Parmenides, Epicurus, the Stoicket and Aeexptians, lodge it wholly in the heart: as the like doth Orpheus. Xerxes, King of Perfia, thought it to be in the eares. Empedocles, in the heape or pile of the bloud . Philo the Iew, in his Booke of Allegories of the Lawe, faith thus. The reasonable facultie or part of the soule, is in the head; the irrascible, in the heart, and the concupifcible, in the groine, or lower part of the belly.

Butwe Christians, hold it to be in the beart, whence proceedeth good and euill cogitations. Saint Augustine in his booke concerning the knowledge of true Life, Writeth thus; The Soule is difperfed thoroughout all the body, and keepeth wholly in every part thereof . Very true it is (layth he alfa) that it yeeldeth far greater effects and actions, in some one place, then other : either by the will, which in that place fendeth out. his strength; or elfe by those instruments, proper and commodious for action.

The Platonifts fay , That the Soule defcendeth by Cancer, and mounteth agayne by Capricorne, and I thinke, that from hence they ground this coniecture Because Cancer is the house of the Moone, the vortue

thus. The humble and fincere Sacrifices of | whereof gouerneth ouer the vegetable parts, it viuisieth the body; And Capricorne is the house of Saturne, which prefideth for contemplation, whereto the Soule being freed from the body it may walke at libertie.

CHAP. XVIII.

 How men ought to shunne and auoyde Cu-riositie; And what penalties and punishments were appoynted by our Auncients, for curious people.

HE Athenians had a Lawe, which was well observed among them which was well observed a- The Athenia mong them , whereby eue-ry man was forbidden (of what degree or qualitie foe-

uer he were) that hee should not dare, to enquire of any stranger, newly arrived in their Cittie : from whence he came, what hee was, nor what he fought for; under penaltie for him that demaunded such questions, to be well whipt with roddes, and banished his Countrey. The end, for which our grave Auncients made fuch Lawes, was, to keepe men from the vice of curiofitie; which is alwayes ouer-ready, to prie into other mens affaires, and be regardlesse of their owne.

Plutarch, Aulus Gellius and Pliny doe thinke, that they can never fufficiently The great commend Marcus Portius the Romaine, wifedomes because no man did euer heare him, to enquire what newes were at Rome; nor maine. how the people liued in their houses. His talke alwayes was, of fuch things as hee knew was profitable for the Commonwealth, or elfe fitted fuch demaunds as required necessary answere, Plato, writing of Diony sus the Syracufan, speaketh thus : Plate in libb The curious man, that would know the life | Legis, 3,49,6 and actions of another man; is more friend to his enemies shen to himfelfe . For hee will quickely bestirre his tongue, in talking of his enemy, and what harme hee knoweth by him; but never cares what foule offences himfelfe hath committed.

A King of Sparta requested Pindarus to The answer tell him, what was the most difficult thing the Poet Pie for a man to doe } Whereunto Pindarus thus replyed; Nothing is more easie for a man, then to reprodue an other; nor more dif-

A good ad-

of Plato to

Dyonifius the

Tyrant.

ring with the Poet Philip

Penethes, who among the Thebanes was a Philosopher much renowned, could neuer be numbred among the curious, nor condemned with the malicious. He hauing liued as a Philosopher, for the space of thirtie yeares in the Academies of Thebes; being blamed by some, because hee did not reprehend the finnes which hee fawe committed, answered: When I know that I have no sinne in my selfe, then will I beginne to reprooue sinne in other. Plate departing from Sicilie, for his returne to Greece, and taking his leaue of Dionyfius, the King spake thus vnto him.

After thou commess among the Philosophers of Greece : O how ill wilt thou speak of me, and of my tyranny ? Plate an fwered; Doubt not (Diony fins) what I shall speake of thee in the hearing of Philosophers: for their manners are fo vertuous, and themselves so imployed in their studies; that they have no time to heare idle talke. Moreouer he fayd; Know, O Diony fius, if thou beeft ignorant, that fuch is the height of our Philosophie, as to perfwade and councell men. Then every one should judge himselfe, and not to busie his brains, to defame or reproue the lines of other.

Philippides, who was the first innenter of Comedies, being a great friend to king Lysimachus; the King conversing with him vpon a day, fayd; What dost thou defire of me (O Philippides) and I will freely graunt it thee, whatfocuer thou requireft? The greatest grace (quoth Philippides, that thou canst give me, is, never to acquaint mee with any of thy secrets. O wise and worthy answere! read by many, and vnderstoode of few : For if this Philosopher would not know the secrets of a King, much lesse would hee ynderstand them of his neighbours.

CHAP. XIX.

¶ Of the three Conquests of England, by the Saxons, Danes and Normans; occasioned by the finnes, either of the Princes, or of tht People, or of both.

F wee confider the three diverse Conquests of England, fince it receyued the

ficult, then to endure reprehension in him- Christian faith, and the state thereof at the same time, together with the judgement and testimony of the grauest Authors that have written thereof; we shall eafily fee, that the same have proceeded of no other cause, but by the sinnes of the Princes, or of the People, or of both. For, although the infirmitic of man is fuch, as the three co. there never wanteth matter for Gods Iu- quests of Engflice to punish in Common-wealths (by Saxons, reason whereof, we see, that in all Coun-Danes and tries, the people are scourged more or leffe from time to time, not onely particularly enery one in his owne person, with misaduentures, sickenesse, losse of goods, death of children, and fuch like, but also generally, with plagues, famine, inundations and warres) yet the subuersion of Common-wealths neuer chaunceth, but for some great excesse of sinne, eyther in the Prince, or in the People, or in both: Great excelle And commonly, after many warnings & of fine in Prince, people and fweete corrections. Such being the longanimitie and patience of Almighty God, that he layeth the Axe at the foote of the tree, long before he cutteth it downe, and trieth all means to cure the foares of his feruants, by lenetiues and fomentations, rather then by cauterifings and incifions, or by cutting off the infected meber, which hee neuer doth, but when there is no other remedy.

This course (we see) hee helde with his owne people, for, though hee often chastifed them with famine, pestilence, inuaquilitie, plentie and peace, vntill they held with the

fions of enemies, and civile wars: yet (after a while) he cuer restored them to tranprooued so incorrigible, that the Prophet Ieremi in the second chapter, and the thirtieth verse, lamented, in the person of God, that all his Fatherly corrections were lost vppon rhem, saying : Frustra percusti silios vestros : I haue beaten and chastised your children in vaine. And againe, the aforesayd Prophet in the fifth chapter and in the third verse, faith to Almightie God; Percusisti eos, &c. Thou haft beaten them (O Lord) and they haue not beene forie; thou hast confumed them, and they have refused to teceiue correction. As who would Gy, there is no other remedy left, but reprobation, subuersion, and veter extirpation of them. And therefore Almightie God

The causes of

towards his owne people, like to the

The opinion of the Platonifts concerning the figns Capricorne.

gaue them ouer into the hands of their enemies; first, the tenne Tribes in Samaria, as in the fourth booke of the Kings the feuenteenth chapter and eighteene verfe, which were all taken with their King Hofea, and translated into Syria. And afterwardalfo, the other two Tribes in Inda, were carried into captiuitie by Nabuchadonofor king of Babylon, where they remayned three score and ten yeares. And though they were afterwards restored to their Countrey, and their Temple reedified; yet at length they were (for their extreame ingratitude, and peruerfe obstinacie) vtterly ruinated.

The like proceeding Almighty God v-

fed with England, in the time of the Brit-

taines, after they receyued the Christian

Faith; for he chastised them, sometimes

with dearth and famine, fometimes with

pestilence, and other-whiles with incur-

frons of their enemies, and with civill

warres amongest themselues : so long as

the same sufficed to reduce them vnto re-

pentance, and amendment of their fin-

full lines, as fometimes it did; which

their famous Countrey-man Beda, and

auncient Guildas called, the Sage, doe

testifie : Declaring, that the Brittaines,

being partly driven by famine, and part-

ly by inuation of Scottes, and Pictes, cy-

ther to abandon the Country, or to hide

themselves in the Mountaines, Woods,

and Caues; craued helpe and fuccour of

the Romaines, writing vnto them that

lamentable Epistle, whereof Guildas ma-

keth mention; in the which they fayd:

Our barbarous enemies doe driue vs to

the Sea, and the Sea doth drive vs backe

to them agayne: fo that of two kindes of

death we have our choice; that is to fay,

Whether we will have our throates cut,

or elfe be drowned. Thus wrote they to

reason of their great warres at the same

time with Attila, they beganne to haue

recourse to the mercie of God, and to

relie wholly vppon his helpe (as the fore-

fayd Authors have reported) and fo (with

his affiltance) affayled their enemies out

of the Caues and Woods where they lay

hidden, and not onely gaue vnto them

great ouerthrowes, but also droue them

out of the Countrey; and shortly after

had such plenty of corne, fruite, and all

But being not succoured by them, by

the Romaines.

The patience which God vied towards the Britaines before their Conquest.

The miferable state of the Britains inuaded by the Picts and Guildas de ex cidio Britan.

The Britains destitute of humane help had recourfe to the diune and obtaine

Beda Ecclef. Hift lib,1,c. 11 Giildas de ex cid. Britan.

kinde of victualles, that the like had neuer beene feene, nor heard of before in many ages. Whereuppon followed the effect, which Mofes noted and lamented in the children of Ifrael , Deuteronomie the one and thirtie chapter and the three and twentieth verse : Incrassatus est dilectus Deut.31,13. (fayeth hee) & recalcitrauit : The beloued people of God was made fatte, and then they beganne to kicke: that is to fay, (as hee expoundeth it even presently after) Incrassatus, impinguatus, dilatatus dereliquit Deum factorem fuum. Being become faire and fatte, they for looke their became into God and Creator; fo fell it out with the lent and vo.

For, they prooued fo vngratefull for Gods great mercy towards them, that (as the aforesaid Authors doe affirme) they fell into the extreamitie of all mischiefe Beda Eulif. and wickednesse. Non folum seculares vi- Hill librate ri, &c. Not onely Secular men, but also the Ecclefiasticall; giving themselves wholly it drunkennesse, to animositie and contention, enuy, cruelty, hatred of trueth, loue of lies, and all vice. Wherevpon our Lord fcourged them with fuch a pestilent mortalitie, that (within but a Idem Isid while) there were not men enow aliue(as these Authors testifie) to burie the dead.

And when that sufficed not to renoke them from their vicious lives; Non multo New insufpost (faith Beda) acrior gentem peccatricem white diri seeleris secutaest. Shortly after, the Pitchen a sharper punishment of such detestable wickednesse sollowed vpon that sinnefull people. For the Pictes and Scots beganne againe to make fuch irruptions vppon them, that (not being able to with stand them) they were forced to call in the Saxons to affift them. Quod Domininutu (faith Beda) dispositum esse constat, &c. Which it is manifest was done by Gods disposititheir defents which (by on, to the end that their wickednes might receive due punishment. For, within a Gods infice, while, the Saxons did confederate themfelues with their enemies, and picking their ouerquarrells against them, destroyed all the end Countrey with fire and fword, burning Idem, cap. 14 vp houses, villages, and townes, and killing all fortes of people: infomuch, that many fledde into forraine Countries, and others hid themselves amongst the hilles, mountaines and wooddes, vntill acknowledging the instindgement of Almightie God vpon them, they called to

him for mercie. Vnanimo confensu auxili- nerall corruption and wickednesse of the um cæleste precante; Crauing helpe from Heauen with vniforme confent, wherethem Ambrosius Aurelianus for their captaine, and diverse notable victories, by his meanes. And especially at Blackamore in Yorkeshire (for so was called Mons Badonicus, as faith Polydore Virgil in his flaughter of them : as that (for fome certayne yeares) they did not further molest

For, beeing (as Guildas in his booke De Excid. Britann. reporteth) mindefull a few, and those very few. For the kings the Altar with a pure heart. Ignorant, mies, and all kindes of iniquitie.

le vices of te Cleargië nd Laytie in

And now to shew some particularities of this, and how justly the vengeance of Almightie GOD was powred out vppon the whole Kingdome: The fame Authour, in the place before cited, toucheth briefly the lines of fome of the Kings and Princes, which lived in his time: as of Constantius, Aurelius, Conanus, Vortiporius, Cuneglasus and Maglocunus, tax. ing them with tyrannie, periurie, facrilegious murthers, and parricides (committed euen before holy Altars) adulteries, horrible incests, breach of vowes, of religion and chastitie; yea, and two of them with beaftly Sodomie.

For the which enormities, and the ge-

whole Kingdome, hee threatneth, or rather prophesieth vnto them, vtter ruine and destruction; which (shortly after) worthily fell vppon them, as the Brittifb Chronicles by Geoffrey of Monmouth in the twelfth booke of his Historie and the fifteenth chapter, also acknowledgeth: For hee fayth, That King Cadwallader (who was the last of the Brittaines race) vied thefe wordes, as hee fledde by Sea King Cadwalinto Fraunce, with the reliques of the Bretaine nation; Va nobis peccatoribus ob immamia scelera nostra, &c. Woe beeto vs fin Gods inflice ners, for our grieuous fins, wherewith we voon himfelfe neuer ceased to offend God, while we had for their fins, time of repentance; and therfore now the punishment of God falles vpon vs. which roots vs out of our native foile. Thus faid

realme at fundry times, for the space of al-

most 200 yeares. But the good king Alu-

red, or Alfred, Founder of the famous Va

niversity of Oxenford, recovered all for-

land : except fuch as were content to be-

parts, stirring afterward against his sonne, Angli

called Edward, were by him veterly oner

throwne; as also the other in Northum-

berland, in like manner, and vpon the like

occasion, were subdewed by his Grand-

childe Alelstane, who made England a

Monarchie, which fo remained and flourished without further infestation of the

as Ingulphus tearmeth him, Honor & Rofa

Regum: The Honour and Rose of Kings.

all Ecclefiasticall Orders flourished, lear-

ned and vertuous men were highly effec-

med, all civill and forraine warres ceased,

and he was called the King of Albion, be-

Of whom it is written, that in his time,

K.Cadwallader, and more to that purpose. Afterward hapned the invasion of the The conquest

Danes, who first by piracies, & after by o- of the English pen wars, cruelly infested & troubled the

merly loft, & droue the Danes out of Eng- expelld al the would not be come Christians, to whom he game the come Christians kingdomes of Northumberland, and of the ans. East-Angles, who, during his time, neuer mooued warre. And they of the Easterne ingulph.hist. Poli Virg.hift.

Danes, during the reigne of four kings, the The mercie of

fucceffors of Adelstane; to wit, his two bre- God to the thren, Edmond and Eldred (who succeeded the good king one another) and the two fons of Edmond, Alured, to the called Edwin and Edgar, which Edgar was Guil, Malmel (for his excellent vertues, and prosperous reigne) called Honor or delacie Anglorum, Agelorum

with Gods mercie was mooued to give third booke) where they made fuch great

of their former calamities, and of afflictions laid on them for their finnes: all forts of men spirituall and temporall, as well the Princes as their subjects, did eneric one their duetie in his vocation. At illis (faith Guildas) decedentibus, &c. But they being dead, and another Age succeding, ignorant of the miferies past, and corrupted with present ease and pleasure; All trueth and inflice was fo subverted : that there appeared not fo much as anie fight thereof, in all the aforefaid states of men: Except is pancis, or valde pancis, Excepting (faith he) were Tyrants, the Iudges most wicked and corrupt; the Priests negligent of their duetie. Rard facrificantes, on nunquampuro corde inter altaria stantes; Seldome facrificing, and neuer comming to impudent, fimoniacall, lascinious; and all fortes of Lay men loaden with wickedneffe, with murder, parricides, pride, adulteries, swearing, periuries, blasphe-

The honour and delight of England : or,

Mmm

land by Swc-

no,recouere England a-

gune,& vied hisformer

crucky and

Idem Ibid.

no King of

The Danes

returned a-

gaine into

England, an

conquered i

Polyd.Plrg. Hist.Anglic. lib 6.

What the of-

fence was of

King Edgar, and Alfreda bis wife.

3 Reg 12,10

Anglib.7.

7 Book

ing no lesse powerfull by Sea, then by well, that the like sinne of King Edgar, was Land. No yeare of his reigne passed, wherein hee built not a Monasterie, or else did some great and notable good to his Countrey: And fuch were his vertues, and great fame for felicity, that there came principall men from out of all the Countries adjoyning, to see, and be acquainted with him.

Now, whereas the Danes returned againe into England, Thortly after Edgar, in the reigne of his sonne Etheldred; and not onely molested it with incursions (as they were wont) but also conquered and possessed it for a time : it may well be prefumed that they were but the instruments of Gods inflice therein; and that this conquest made by the Danes, proceeded of the finnes, partly of the famous King Edgar (though hee were dead before) and partly of his wife Alfreda; and lastly, of their sonne Etheldred, in whose time the Countrey was conquered. For, although King Edgar excelled in all pietie and vertue in his latter dayes; vet he did an acte in his youth, whereof it may be thought, that his children and posteritie payed the

This I fay, for that after the death of Elfreda his wife (by whom hee had King Edward the Martyr) hee fell in loue with Alfreda, wife to a Noble man called Ethelwoolfe, whom (with her confent) he caufed to be killed, to the end he might marrie her. How grieuous this sinne was in the fight of Almightie GOD, and how iustly punished in his posteritie, wee may well judge by the like offence of King Dauid, who, to the end he might marry Bath-Beba, procured the death of Vrias her hufband, for the which, the Prophet Nathan, in the second booke of the Kings, chapter twelve, veife ten, told him from Almightie God: that the sword should neuer depart from his house; and that his sonne in the Cradle, should die therefore. Befide, Almightie God permitted (for punishment of that sinne) that all his other children (except Salomon) died most vnfortunately. For Amnon, having defloured his fifter Thamar, was killed by his brother A folon; and Adonias by Salomon; and laftly, Absolon rebelling and fighting against his owne father King Dauid, was miserably slaine, hanging on a tree by the

also seuerely punished in his children.

To this purpose, it is to be noted, that his marriage prooued most vnfortunate, not only to the fruit that proceeded therof, and the whole Realme (as shall be declared hereafter) but also to king Edward, his fonne by his former wife, who shortly after was killed, by the meanes of Atfreda his stepmother, for the advauncement of her sonne Eltheldred. Wherein I cannot but note (by the way) the feueri- The feuering tie of Gods Iustice in punishing sinne, of Gods is feeing the fayd young Prince, being very ing finne. holyand innocent of life, could not escape the temporall punishment, due to his Fa-

But to proceede, such was the common opinion of the innocencie and holinesse of this young King Edward, and enormitie of the sinne committed by Alfredright in da, in the murder of him : that the conceit Anglibrary of most men at that time was (as William of Malmesburie witnesseth) that the Conquest of England by the Danes, was a punishment of God for the same; which wel may be so presumed, especially, if we adde thereunto the offence, not onely of his father(whereof I have already (poken)but also of his brother Etheldred, for whose cause hee was murthered; and in whose time that Conquest hapned. For it may be thought most consonant to the Iustice of Almightic God, that Etheldred (being the sonne of the wicked Alfreda, and fruit of the curfed marriage; yea, and withall, most wicked of himselfe) should beare the penaltie as well of his owne, as of both his parents finnes : As partly was fore-tolde Dallant for at his coronation, by Dunstane then Arch- told the con bishop of Canterbury, saying: That for his questo Ext Mothers sin in the murder of King Edward, popd. Vr. 8 both hee and his children should bee sewerely 7.Inguish punished, and his Kingdome transferred to Hill.day.

And if wee doe confider the manner of his life, and the nature and qualitie of his offences; we shall find them to be the very fame, which the Scriptures affirme to Ecclesion. bee the cause of the translation of King- The offence doms from one nation to another; whereof Ecclesia friend Saich . Research of Ecclesiaticus saith: Regnum de gentein gentem transfertur, &c. Kingdomes are conquerd transferred from one nation to another, England. because of iniustice, iniuries, calumniatihaire of the head. And therefore no mar- ons and divers deceits. In which kinde of

finnes King Etheldred greatly exceeded; for he had his eares fo open, and shewed fuch fauour to all kind of accusers and calumniators: that (as Polydore Virgill faith) No mans life was in securitie. Besides, on euery light occasion, spoyld & banished the richest and wealthiest of his subjects, beeing also addicted to all kinde of riot and diffolution. And therefore William Culiel. Malfm. of Malmesburie writeth of him briefely thus : Eius vita cursus sauns in principio, miser in medio, turpis in exitu: The course of his life was cruell in the beginning, miferable in the middeft, and shamefull in the end.

Furthermore, he was fo cowardly and base minded, that hee was no lesse contemptible to strangers abroad, then hateful to his owne fubiccts at home. Where-King Ethel-dred expelled upon, the Danes tooke courage to enter England againe, who made him graunt them a yearely tribute, wherewith they were content for a time; and after turning thither agayne, forced him to flie into Normandie, and to leave his kingdome to Sweno their King, who exercised all kind of cruelty vpon the English, and enioyed the Kingdome as long as he lived. Which was not past fine yeares. After whose King Ethel- was not patt true yeares. After whole death, Etheldred recoursed it againe, and possessed it two yeares, whilest Canutus fonne to Sweno was held busied at home. with a rebellion of the people of Nor-

In which meane while, Etheldred returned like the dogge to his olde vomite of cruelty and iniuffice, especially against the Danes (who had beene for fome yeares planted and marrowed in England) caufing many of them to be killed with cruell torments. And amongst others, Sigifredus and Morgandus, two of the noblest of them) were falfly accused of fained crimes. and put to death for the fame. Befides. Prince Edmund sonne to Etheldred, rauished the wife of Sigiffed, being a woman no leffe admirable for her beautie, then commendable for her chastitie. All which when Canutus vnderstood, being mooned with defire, as well to reuenge these iniuries done to his Countreymen, as also to recouer the Kingdome of England, conquered by his father : hee passed ouer thither with an Armie, and put all to fire and fword; whereupon Etheldred dyed with

And although his forme, fornamed Ironfide (after disers conflicts, and a com- Edmond bate fought hand to hand with Canutus) possessed the one half of England by com- dred. polition : yet within a yeare, Canutus enloyed the whole by the todaine death of Edmond, flaine vpon a priny as he was eafing himfelfe; and so he remayned absolute King thereof as long as hee did line. which was about some twentie yeares af-

The three Conquests of England.

Herein neuerthelesse it is to be noted, how the mercie of Almightie God concurred with his Inflice, and moderated the rigour thereof; for that (of his infinite turning then bounty) he determined by this conquest, as it feemed, rather to chaftife, correct and redresse England, then to ruine and oppresse it. And therfore, after he had somewhat facisfied the feueritie of his justice. not onely vpon the Realine, by the fine veares cruell reigne of Sweno (who ranfacked and spoyled all forts of men, aswell Ecclesiasticall as Temporall) but also vpon the persons of Etheldred, and his sonne Edmund : hee gaue them Canutus, sonne to Sweno, for their King, who, although he was a stranger, yet gouerned with all clemencie and good example of life, doing continually actes of pietie, making good Lawes and wholesome, easing the people of taxes and impositions, and deferuing well of all estates, by the meanes whereof England flourished (in his time) in peace and much plentie. Of whom I can not forbeare (this occasion beeing offered) to expresse and declare heere (by the way) a notable acte, which I with all Princes would well weigh and consider, in the height of their prosperity and greatest fortune.

It chanced once, as he was walking at Southhampton, by the Sea fide, some of his noble men flattered him, and extolled (a long angl. Hift. 7 in fine. him the most mightie and potent King of all Kings, commaunding absolutely over men, land & sea. Whereupon to correct their flatterie, and to shew mans infirmitie, he went to the very Sea fide, and fitting downe, faid to the waves (as the tide was comingin,) I command yee, that you touch not my feete. And beeing presently after well washed with a wane that came in vppon him; hee arose; and turning himselfe to his noblemen, said vnto theme Mmm 2

Canutus king

The mercy of God rowards conquetts to their comfort

piety of king

2 Reg 13,29

3 Reg. 2,25. 2 Reg. 18,9.

An admonici-

on to Princes

& Magiftrate

Henricus Hun tind Hift, Angl 4 .6.

Guliel.Milfm.

de geft Reg lib

Polyd. rirg. 1 8

Ingulphus Hift. Hen Huntind.

Roger Haved.

Annul par. 1.

Guliel Malme

Hist. Angl. Lib.

2 CAP-12

Lord of Land and Sea; though I cannot commaund one of these little waves : Therefore know yee, that the King of Kings, and hee that commaundeth Land and Sea, is the Father of our Lord Isfus Christ, by whose will and providence all things were governed. And having thus faide, hee returned to Winchester, and tooke the Crowne which he yfed to weare voon his head, and put it (with his owne hands) vpon an Image of CHRIST crucified, which was in the Church of Saint Peter and Saint Paule. and would neuer after weare any crowne so long as he liued.

Though this may feeme a digression from my matter, yet I thought good to recount it heere, as well for the raritie of the example; as also that it may appeare, how mercifully God dealt with the people of England, to give them fuch a King, by whose pictic their Conquest turned to comfort. And this his mercie appeared much more afterward, when it pleased his divine Maiestie so sweetly to dispose, that after the death of Canuttes, and his two fonnes Haraldus and Hardicanutus, or (as Polydore calles him) Cunuaus, which two reigned but fixe yeares: the Crowne returned agayne to English blood; yea, and to fo excellent a Prince, as was King Edward the Confessour, who reigned in all tranquility, peace and felicitie aboue three and twenty yeares.

Now, although learning, religion, and vertue had flourished many yeres among the English, yet a little before the comming of the Normans, the same was vtterly destroyed and decayed. For (fayth William of Malmesbury, who lived in the same age) the Priest's were fo unlearned, that they could scant pronounce truely, the very words of the Sacraments and divine fervice. And fuch was the ignorance generally of all men, that a Grammarian was helde for a wonder; Religious men were wholly giuen to delicacie and kept no rules of Religion; the Noblemen and Gentlemen gave themselves to gluttony and lasciuionfnesse: there was no respect of Religion nor care of Iustice : infomuch that the common people serued for no other then as a prey to the Nobility, who spoyled and ranfacked them at their pleafure. It was a common custome when men had got their maid-fernants with childe, ey-

Loemy Lords, you call me King of Kings, and ther to fend them to the Stewes, or to fell them for Slaues. Drunkennesse, and all the vices which commonly doe accompany the same, or follow thereon, were generally throughout the whole Realme; This reporteth william of Malmesburie in

Also holy King Edward himselfe, declaring a Vition which happened to him, Edward. fayd, That the Magistrates, as well first wall King Edward as temporall, were no better then ministers words atha death, conof the dinell; that God was every where dif- cerning the honoured , lawes contemned, truth trodden finnes of the under foote, pitty and mercy banished, crueltie helde for a pastime and entertainement, follow in re-And therefore (layd he) the wickednesse of nishment thereof. the English is now complexee and growne to the height, and the revenee and punishment thereof is Shortly to follow.

This was proued true by the euent, which in a yeare after, when William Duke of Normandie, called the Conquerour, came Pula ringill into England, whom God made the instrument and minister of his Iustice, to them. chastife them . For, beeing admitted and crowned King (presently after the bloody battell, wherein king Haralde and twentie thousand men were slaine) hee beganne to tyrannize vpon all estates: hee spoyled The tyring the Nobilitie of their lands, goods, digni- of William ties and offices, to give the same to the goryoons Normans. He oppressed the people with estates. infinite and intollerable taxes and impofitions, he depriued Citties, Bishoppricks and Monasteries of their immunities and privileges forcing them to redeeme them of him againe for great fummes of mony. Hee tooke from Churches and Religious houses, not onely such mony as they had in store, but also the holy vessells, dedicated to Gods service. He abolished the olde Lawes, and ordened new, caufing abolifiction them to be written in the Norman tongue, new ordinal which the Early of the Control of the which the English vnderstood not: wher- in the Nor vpon there grew great confusion in the exercise thereof in all sortes of Actions and Pleas, as well criminall as civile, and many men wrongfully loft their lands, and goodes, and many their lives, and a gate was (at that time) opened to all in-

Furthermore, he was not content onlie to spoyle the English of their wealth, but also deprined them of their pleasures, taking from very many Noble men and Gentlemen The English depoyled of dest wealth and pleasure

crucky of

Chap.20.

Gentlemen, their Parkes and Chafes for

his owne vse; but also overthrowing hou-

fes, Churches, Villages and whole Pari-

thes, to make Forreits. Infomuch, that

(as Rolydore Virgilbreporteth) to make the

Chase, which now is called New Forrest.

hee dispeopled and made desert all the

Countrey betwixt Salisbury and the Sea

fide, for thirtie miles space. And when

divers of his Nobilitie (by reason of his

tyrannie) rebelled against him; he tooke

occasion thereuppon, to vse all kinde of

seucritie and crueltie not only your their

persons, when they fell into his hands but

allo voon whole Countries and Prouin-

ces, which hee fo spoyled and ranfacked,

that they lay walte for some yeares after.

Finally, his governement, during the time

of his reigne, feemed to ayme at nothing

elfe, but to extirpate and extinguish the

in England in his time, partly by rebellion

of his Subjects, and partly by inualion of

Strangers; wee shall finde, that England

had not one yeare, no, not one day of

eafe and repose, during the one and twen-

tie yeares of his reigne. Which calami-

tic also continued, or rather encreased for

thirteene yeres after his death, by the fue-

cession of his sonne William Rufut, who

farre exceeded his father in cruckie, aua-

rice, oppression of his Subjects, and con-

tempt of God and man; by reason where-

of, hee was so hat dof the people, that

when his death was knowne (which was

to fodaine, and exemplary, for he was kil-

led by chaunce with an Arrow, as he was

hunting) the people were so transported

with ioy, that they went enery where to

the Churches, to give God thanks there-

fore, as for the happiest newes that ener

came to England, in hope, that the last

day of his life, would be the first of their

libertie. If therefore we confider all this.

we shall enidently fee , how true the pro-

phecy of holy king Edward proued, when he said; That England should be given (for

a time) into the hands of enill and wicked Bi-

Whereto if we adde the frequent wars

race and name of the English.

The cuelty and austice of King Willian Rufus, Payd vir. 1 10

The English had not one day of ease, during the

thereof.

rits, for the fins of the Nobilitie, Cleargie and Heere then I conclude, that whereas the first Conquest seemes to have proceeded, of the fins as well of the People, as of the Princes; and the second, of the offences, rather of the Princes, then of the Peond the cau-

ple; the last was (as good King Edward teftified) in punishment of the peoples fins, rather then of the Princes. Whereby:we may fee the fimpathy in the body politike,no leffe then in the naturall body betwixt the head and the members in the participation for finne, or reward for vertue. Which may ferue for a morine to all Princes and Magistrates, to have especiall care, to anoyde the offence of God, not onely by their owne lines, but also by puniffling and reforming their Subjects left enegligence in cyther may draw GODS wrath vpon both, to the destruction of the whole Common-wealthwayair maker

The three Conquests of England.

TRO COST ALSA FRANCE TO A STORY CHAP. XX.

I foll is emelyoffall for.

The Battell of Gaza, fought betweene Synan-balha, Generall for Selym the great Turke; And Gazelles, Lieutenant of Tomumbeyo, athe Soldane, or Sultane of Egypt. 1516.

Selymintending to intuade Egypt, sent before (from Damafen) his Generall Synanba-

Tha into Indea, with fifteene thousand horse, and a very strong power of Harquebusiers, selected our of the Ianizaries and Afappes, only to furuey that Region, and to open a passage way to Ga. za; which indeed was very moleftuous & troublesome, in regard of the potent'. rabes. The dity is feated on the fea-coast, on of the Cit. and in the confines of Egypt, neighboring ty of Gaza. vpon the hote fandy deferts; a very hard and painefull paffage, for fuch as journey to the remotest Egypt, and to the Citty of Cayro. The people of Gaza, being deftitute of warlike garrisons of souldiers, to stead them in extremitie of armes, entertained Synanbalha at the very first view, although in craftie and diffembling maner, Synanbalha giuing him many thankefull gratulations, deceitfully welcommed for vouchfafing to free them from the by the Citti-Mamalukes intollerable flauerie; in requi- zens of Gaza tall of which benefite, they promifed to continue loyall and feruiceable to Selym and his fucceffors for ever.

Now, while Synanbalbalay encamped. within an Arrow reach from the Citty in expectation of Selyms comming, and practifing his best meanes of understanding the course of the Region and Countrey, that should allow them passage into Mmm a

Colletted our of Paulus Io-

The scituati-

of the Clergy Nobility-and people of Englandat the time of the conquest thereof by

the Normans

The enor-

mous finnes

Synanballia

released his

army, beeing

Intelligence fent by the men of Gaza to the new. Sultane Tomumbeyo.

Syrian Spycs fend aduertif

ment to Sy-

nanbafha,an

what he pre-

fently did to

preuent all danger.

Ægypt; endemouring belide, to compalle friendship with the Arabian Commaunders, and subborning certaine Spies, that went to Cayro, to vndermine the counsels of the Mamalukes and Tomumbeyo, whome (vpon Campfons death) they hadde made choise of to be their Sultane : the inhabitants of Gaza (beeing naturally extreame enemies of the present Turkish Armie) gane Tomumbero intelligence of Synanba-These comming , addertifing him withall, that this power of Turkes might eafily be oppressed and destroyed, before Selim could arrive with his supplies : onely by fending a strong power of Mamalukes, vnder conduct of some skilfull Leaders, to venture vpon them at an expeditious aduantage, projected in this maner. A time (in the dead of night) beeing concluded on, betweene themselues and the Cittizens, the Mamalukes should make a fodaine inualion on the fleeping Turks, and they likewise (at the same instant) would yffue forth of the City, and idyning with them, make vnauoidable fpoile & hauock of the enemies Campe.

This aduife is allowed and embraced, betweene Tomumbeyo and the Mamalukes; and Gazelles fent with fix thousand horse or Mamalukes, and a strong Armie of the Arabes. Scarfely was hee departed from Cayro, but (by certaine Syrian Spyes) Synanbasba had advertisement thereof, and that (not staying for any carriages) they would be there within two dayes. Now, as these newes preserved the Turkish Army, fo was it of no meane moment, for compassing the intirevictory of the whol warres. And although Synanbasha had no intelligence at all of the Gazans falshood, yet (being a man of great wisedome and prouidence) suspecting what Treacheries might circumuent him, and fearing least hee might meddle with two enemies at once : refolued to meet the Mamalukes by the way, and fo try the fortune of fight. So, dislodging after the second watch, he filently marched away out of the Citties fight, reaching fifteene miles on the way towards Cayro; arriving; neere to a small village, which had the benefit of a plentifull Spring there arising, and therefore was the reason of Trauellers vsual lodging

It fortuned, that Synanbasha purposed to stay in that Village, and Gazelles had the Turkes. The fight was very cruel, and

the like intention of breathing there fome few houres, to refresh both his men and horses, that he might the sooner galloppe to Gaza in the night time: when, even at one instant (as it were) both the Generals the lamping at one in received intelligence (on either fide) by their vant-currers, that a mighty dust was raised, and the enemy neere approached. Gazelles became much perplexed in mind at this strange and vislookt for accident: perceiving apparantly, that fayling of his purposed intent, heewas also mable to match the enemy, if he should encounter with him, because his horses were halfe spent and weary. Yet had he no diffray in courage, although he was compelled (vpon fuch a fodaine) to denife what instantly might be done, for generall fafety of the Army. Whereupon, he aduised eueric Therefold man to make ready his Weapon; and to of Gazelija confider, that what could not be performed by flealth and ambush, according to a precedent intention, required now couragious resolution, and must be dispatcht

On the other fide, Synanbasha having his men fooner fet in order, then Gazelles could doe, having formerly advertised them, what was to be done on the fightes encounters cheared all the ranks with honourable speeches. And the iffue of his his encour Oration, was, That flight must veterly bee forgot, because all places round about the would be thut vp, and injurious to them, except they were victors. Moreover, of one thing to perswade themselves especially, that no man should perish that day, but he whom heaven had destinated vnto death, by the most certaine lawes of Fate; and that with equall perill, the Valiant should finde safety in middest of the encmies fwords, and also the fearfull, death in their very fafest flight, through the power of ineuitable lot.

The Harquebusiers were in the wings, wwwere extended foorth in length with a fingle array, and no man standing nere to another, for handling their Harquebuffes ficulty of the more freely, and to compaffe the encmy but the Pikes were placed in the very midft, to sustaine the impression of the Mamalukes. But Gazelles approching, fent the Arabian troopes before, to disturbe the Wings; and he himself (with a square battaile) charged the middle regiment of

greatly boaft fhis Victory

long time doubtfull, because the Turkes (though superiour in number) were not able to endure the power of the Armed horse. And now being beaten from their ground; and dispersed, some one way, and fome another, by the Mamalukes that brake in vpon them, they looked rounde about for flight, fixing their eies and harts stedfastly for it. When sodainly, by Synanbasbaes commaund, the Harquebusiers, who (with their first storme of shotte)had driven backe the Arabes: reducing in their wings, enclosed all the whole battaile of the enemy.

Now, both meh and horse, were (a far

off)beaten down with deadly bullets ftor-

ming vpon them in fuch multitudes, as no

place (to expresse valour) was left to the

enclosed. For when any troope of Mama-

lukes ranne in violently vpon the Turkes;

they, by reason of their nimble lightnesse

(being accustomed to give ground) did

fwiftly flye backe : and in all places this

was their endeuour, not to encounter the

with their horses, but onely to play vpon

them with their Harquebuffes. When

Gazelles faw, that his horffes were tyred

with extreme wearineffe, and that manie

of his stoutest men, were now either flain

or hurt, and hehimfelf greenoully woun-

ded in the necke; he; with the reft, making

themselues way with their weapons, fled

vnto Cayro, through those defarts that he

There perished in this battel the Cap-

came, lofing all his Enfignes, lands

Victory incli neth vato th Turkes, For-

> taine of Alexandria, and Orcomas the go uernour of Cayro, men of great account; & befides them, a great number of Arabes, and almost a thousand horsmen of marke. Nordld Synanbasha win a joyfull and vn-bloody victory, for nee lost about two thousand horse; and (among them) some of his cheefest Captaines. But because the fight had continued from noone to Sunfet, the Turkes were not able to purfue their enemies, their horses beeing wellnere dead with thirst, and they themselves fainting through want of meate, and ex-

treme labour : but encamped in the place

where the battell was fought, neere to the

Spring before remembred.

CHAP. XXI.

Of three seuerall Battails, fought in the years 1516. and 1517. betweene Selym the Great Turke, and Tomumbeyo, the great Sultan of Agipt.



Elymhauing received intelligence, that Symanbalha of Paulus Iohad furprized Gazal's overdrowne Gazelles, and had
received a fresh supplie of

men by Sea, from Constantinople, for his owne further feruice he marched with all his Army towardes Gaza, and (vvithin eight dayes more) recourred fo farre as *A City in E-*Cayro, reputed to be the Sultanes cheefe gypt, not faire feat, Synanda Ba still marching a daies iour- from the life

ney before him.

About the distance of fixe miles from the Citty, there was a fmal village, named Rhodania, whereto Tomumbeyo (the newe made Sultane) had conveyed all his prouision and furniture of great Ordnance, having made also ditches, crosse thwarting the plaine fieldes, and high wayes: which ditches were couered ouer with light earth, and finall stickes, artificially shadowing them. But himselfe, with his Mamalukes (who were about twelve thousand) and a great number of Arabian A cusning horsemen, fitted for the intent, kept in a ambuscado, place better befeeming: that when the prepared by Turkes Army should drawe neere, they to entraphis might be there entrapt and beaten downe enemy. by the vndiscouerable Ordnance, ere they could come to reach the Ægyptians with their Harquebusses; and then this stratagem having round engirt them, hee had the aduantage of immediate fight, they being veterly distoynted, and fall into the fnare prepared for them.

So cunningly and prouidently were thefe matters ordered, and perfected with fuch answerable opportunity, that not a of wars neuer man in the Army could imagine, or vrge any doubt of the dayes victory. And questionlesse, no meane difaster had mette be a flickler. with the Turkes: but that the giddie headed Goddesse Fortune, ouer-friendly to Selym, and cruelly vokinde to Tomumbeyo,

In stratagems

Chap. 21.

The Egyptias

Gunners for their great

Foure treche rous Mamalukes defeated Tomumbeyos hopefor

Preuention of perill is no meane helpe in accidents of Armes.

A diffeeffe that would trouble the braine of the bett foldier it the world.

as (had not the worthy paines of the Mamalukes, bin treacherously disappointed) onely through the meanes of a few perfidious Varlets, plainly had appeared.

As in all Armies there neuer wantes Villaines, fo in the Sultanes were foure Mamalukes, borne Albanoises, who fliffely stomacked, that Tomumbeyo (by suffrages of the contrary faction) was aduanced to the dignity royall. And they, either impelled by lewd disposition, or adducted by hope of rewarde, and more bountifull respect, foreseeing their owne side to fall on wracke, and wisedome aduising, to feeke for new and more affured Friends: fled to Synanbasha, as to their chiefest Turkish Captaine and Countriman. By these horsemen Synanhalba, and (soon after) Selym, vnderstood all the counsels & intents of the enemy, and what an Ambufcado Tomumbero had prepared for them, with fingular fubtilty and dexterious Art, vnauoidable from falling into, except they forfooke the high and direct way. Whereupon, beeing guided by thefe Fugitiues, they fetched a great compasse about on the left hand, and (before breake of day) recovered their old wonted way, having their battels ranged, their Ordnance ready mounted, to anoyde the least delay of fight, and so shewed themselves at the enemies rereward, and neuer coming neere the front of their Campe.

ctured by his enemies march, that (by his owne mens treason)his provided ambush was discoucred. And albeit his mind was afflicted with matchlesse greefe, to see so painfull an employment of his men, and fo full of expectation, to be in a moment vtterly defeated : yet notwithstanding, he being a man of vnconquerable courage, called all his fenses and valour to sodaine counfell, and fummoning his Captaines about him, gaue present order for those things which were to be done. And now was Tomumbeyo in fo narrow a straite and necessity, that all thinges, and at one inftant, must receiue order from him. Hee was to give the fignall to his Soldiers, for mounting on horse-backe, vsing theyr weapons, turning the course of his camp, ranging his battailes, encoraging his men, and conceying his Ordenance to contrary quarters, as the occasion required . Al

which things, as one Captaine could not

When Tomumbeyo faw this, he conie-

performe alone, but very hardly aud con- | The beff ca. fuledly, fo must they needs be effected as Generall or rawly, peruerfly, and to halfes, by manie Commander, indifereet vndertakers.

But that which most hindered speedie performance, was the hudling of men together, for removing the Ordnance from place to place, they being ill-fauored huge pieces, made of fron, and fette in great stockes of Wood, with Iron ringes, after the rude and nauall forme of Workmanthip, yied in elder times: and fo, by reafon of their excessive waight, could not be carried from their places, but by the draught of many beaftes; besides, great heaving with iron Crowes and Leavers, Many inconrequiring greeuous labour of men. And ueniences the other great Field-peeces, mounted on rough want carriages with wheeles, being drawne by different and the witlesse and hasty multitude, with orderly Mills great clamor of fuch as haled and should them through all parts of the Campethe tumultuous passage of them, disordered men mounted on their horses, and the Souldiers repairing to their enfignes: yet two maine helps equalled these hindering difficulties; namely, the chearefulnesse of A great conthe foldiers, and the fingular constancy of nerall, who them all, almost beyond the compasse of his Souldiers mans beleefe : because they had not conceiued fo much as a thought of feare, nor polition, failed in their hopefull hearts, as it commonly happeneth in fodain aduerfe chances, whereby old tryed foldiers do manie times forget their ancient valour. For being twice before vanquished in battel, yet they refumed the greater confidence and courage : perswading themselues, that not valour or skill in fight, but onely fortune

favled them. Nowe, when Tomumbeyo had fet his men in good order, and the foldiers (with earnest desire of fight) requested the signall : he commanded the multitude of the Arabians, to bring their winges about on the rere of the enemy, and to beginne the fight first that the Turkish horsmen might be troubled and disordered with a doubtfull danger of fight, before himselse would Tomumbeyo iffue forth with his felected troops. Strait prepareth his way he commanded the great Ordnance the chemit (which by this time was brought about, battaile. and directed against the enemyes) to bee shot off. And immediately the Turkes did the like; who had once discharged their smaller and greater peeces, when

is well tried in

they were a just distance off, and quickely. I their backes, as they had beene comman. Four efightes re-charging them, had brought the within an Arrowes shoote of the Ægyptians Ordnance, fighting a long time on either fide, onely with discharging their Orde-Ordnance al. nance, while the Armies approched neerer. In which contention, almost all the Ægyptians Gunners were flain, and most of their Artillery dismounted from theyr wheeles, beeing broken in peeces by vio-

lence of the enemies bullets. The Turke had very skilfull Gunners in his Campe, whom he had allured (by his great rewardes, and rich entertainment) out of Italy and Germany, and especially many out of the Iewes rable, who beeing expelled by the picty of King Ferdinand out of the Spaines; brought afterwardes fuch rare and vnufed deadly Artes into all rhe East, o spice our men withall. The Captaine or cheefe man of all these Gunners, was one lames, borne at Reggio in Lombardie, a man of extraordinary skill in those Artes, who being enticed by Turkish gittes: had (a little before) forsaken the service of Christ, and revolted vnto Mahomets superstition. The fight beeing brought (on both fides) to handy ftrokes. the Mamalukes raifed a cruel and horrible cry, and in three quarters, charged the Turkes with great valour : For Selym(kceping his old order) fo marched, that hee approached in the forme of a Crescent. The Captaine of the Afians in the right Wing, was Mustapha, and Innubasha of the Europeans in the left : but himselfe gouerned the middle battell, whierin was the squadron of the Ianizaries, with a great multitude of Ordnance.

But Synanbasha being made General of the fielde, had chosen for himselfe a band of the valiantest men, taken and pickt out of all the companies, to ferue for all vncertaine euents of the battaile. Whereto hee added (out of Selyms (quadron) fine hundred foote of extraordinary valor and swiftnesse, that hee being ready in all places of the battaile, and for all chaunces (were they neuer fo fodaine) might fuccour that part of his fellowes, which was most pressed by the enemy. So that almost at one time, when Tomumbeyo had stood in the middle battaile against Selvin. and the wings of the Mamalukes, had encountred the Turkith with equall Front, and the Arabians had fought valiantly at

ded; foure fights were very furioufly and at one time in hotly attached at one time, and in diverfe places. distinct places.

They that were present at this battell, Credible redo report, that thorough the cries of the ports concer-Soldiers, the noise of Drums and Trum- ning this pets, the thundering of the Artillery, the tell bat clouds of dust, and clashing of Weapons, all mens minds were fo amazed and confounded, that they, being al on both fides alike blinded with furle, rushed on with fuch desperate madnesse, that neyther could the voices and watch wordes bee heard or knowne one from another, nor the Enfignes feene, nor commaundes of Captaines be regarded; but even (by mutuallerror) they flew a great number both of their owne fellowes, and also of theyr enemies, without any respect at all. For neuer before that day, had any armies endespetate finy
countred together, enflamed with greaor both the ter spleene and harred; nor euer had two Armies, as the fuch miglity Emperors, more constantly ucrheard of. and feruently declared their valour both of body and minde; nor with leffe care of life and fafety: For, when both of them plainly perceived, that with like daunger of theinselnes and their Armies, they had fet their lines and Empires vppon present ruine : they also well vnderstoode. that

felfe should bring with it. Now Gazelles enflumed with defire of The course honor and reuenge, to returne the Buro- of Gazelles peans a foile equall to that which liee had inhope offoi received at Gaza, charging Innubalha with paies. great violence, had ouer-run the formoft and refifting troopes shad beaten downe the Guidons : and the Arabes purfying on hard at his heeles, had made the vanquithing companies (enenthole of the Thracians, Theffalians, and Macedons) to turne their backes which noner any enemie had done before.

there would be no other hope lefte to ev-

ther of them, but that which victorie it

Then Synanbalba, beeing readie for all occasions of victory, flew upon the fide of the enemy, with a fresh and powerfull company of his men, re-enforcing the battell, which was much declined & foully scattered. But anon after, Synanbusha, who had discontinued the manifest victory of the enemy, by exercifing a fupreme finine fighting acte of proweffe, was flaine, fighting veric valuantly bevaliantly before his men, after that the forchismen.

Hevitus Dia-

darius and

Giapall Or-

comas,two

famous Cap

taines of the

Egiptians.

Chap. 22.

alwayes were

vnfortunately

lifcoucted.

Mamalakes (vnder their fierce Captayne, Bido) had turned themselves prowdly on their new enemy. And his horsemen striuing to take up their dead captaines body from the ground, were (a great number of them) flaine and put to flight by Gazelles, who had spread abroad his troups, that having the more spacious roome, they might the more freely vie their fwords; in which kinde of fight the Mamalukes doe most excell. And also that noble band of Ianizaries, being enclosed, were ouer-runne & flaine; after that they (being forfaken of the horfmen) had long time relisted very valiantly.

In another quarter, Mustapha giving a vehement charge with all his horfe, wpon the left wing of the Egyptians (wherin comaunded the most renowned captaines Haylius Diadarius and Giapall Orcomas) very sharply viged them. A little before they had received a notable detriment, by the Ordnance, which (by chaunce) was shot fro Selyms middle battell thwart the field; which Multapha perceiving, and being defirous to trample on olde ignominy, they being once disordered, constrained them fiercely, & bringing in his troupes freshly yoon them, brake thorow, ouer-ranne and beat them downe. And being remarkeable all the battell over, both by his Armes and vovce: adhorted the Asians to confider, that their ancient martiall honor, they lately loft at the battell of Alepo, must be recovered now by height of manhood, or (at vitermost) by an honourable death.

At the same time also, Tomumbeyo, hauing broken through the midle regiment of horse, was come to the foot, and being a mighty man both in body and strength, performed infinite actions of worth with his Cemitarie: the Arabians likewise enclosed the outer-wings of the Turkes, forcing them (in many places) to fight with double front . And Selym aduaunced forward his foote squadron, which was his onely and affured helpe in this extremitie, whose charge, neither the fierce barded horse, nor the victors men could abide: because most part of his Souldiers being harquebusiers, and beeing impaled with pikes, did much mischiefe, for their immoneable force, being closed into the array of one body, bare downeall that they incountred. Yet they fought with variable cuet on both fides, from the fourth houre

of the day, till Sun-fet, neither was there any part of eyther Armie, but suffered sun- and success dry alterations. Fortune being fome while alike in both prosperous, and then againe aduerse. For, the Amer, from the 4 both the vanquished and victors, beeing houre of the madded with mutuall & implacable rage, day till Sun. fought with obstinate & indurate hearts; the Mamalukes disdaining, that victorie should be taken from them, by men (of whom) they had flaine fo many; and the Turkes chafing, that they whom they thad before foiled in two feueralbattels, should make follong refistance against them. Informuch, that their bodies, wearied and tired with wounds, and their armes faintly languishing, yet supported onely by furie & pertinacy of heart; scemed able to have maintained another daies murdering, but that dark shut vp the violence of so great a

Tomumbeyo, who (no doubt) was vanquished, distrusting the entire losse of the first founded field, first commanded retreat to be sounin the Cuppe
ded, that his men, who now could not
beyout match the other fquadron, might feeme not to haue bin beaten backe, but onely to be led backe: which he conceived to be of no meane moment, both for the establishing of his fouldiers, & maintenance of his owne authority. As one that being deceiued in his first hope, might promise himfelfe(as men in mifery commoly do) more prosperous successe afterward, prouided, that he fainted not in corage. Whereup- effeinste on, preserving those few powers lest him, condbatuit he intended a fresh reparation of warre. The battell being broken off by the nights countermad, the Turks being victors, won the enimies tents and Ordnance, purfued the Mamalukes still very late in the night, albeit (almost in maner of flight) they mar-

ched towards Cayro. In the flight were taken Diadarius, who could make no speed, by reson of his grieuous wounds, and with him Bidon, having and flinkly one of his knees broke with a falcon-shot, mand. which also sue his horse. But the next day, Selym caused them both to be flain, either in regard they could not be healed, or as thinking them to be acceptable facrifices for appealing Synanbasha; for whose losse hee igreatly lamented. Now albeit the Turkes had nobly vanquished, yet was their strength mightily empayred, and by the meanes of these fortunate battells, wherein the 4. part of them was spent with

fickneffe

Variable tit

my four daics at Rhodania.

Selym resteth

his weary Ar-

Of the second Battell at Cayro, betweene Selym and Tomumbeyo. The valiant

corage of Fo nithstanding all his gree-nous mistor-nucs & loffer

Omumbeyo, beeing all this while nothing bruifed, not-withstanding so many lamentable losses and disa-steers; still affembled together. ther the Mamalukes from all parts, and pitched his Campe in a most commodious place, betweene new Cayro and the riner Nilus, wherein he had eight thousand Æthyopian flaues or bondmen, which kinde of men he had not (till then) made any vie of, in regard of an ancient Rebellion by them committed. Beside, setting open the old Armory, he gaue armor and weapons to the Mamalukes sonnes, and to Moores which were their retainers, as also to the Iewes and Arabians, preparing for farre

fickeneffe and wounds, and a great number of their Horses vtterly foyled, especially through the tediousnesse of this daies feruice.

These were maine motiues, to hinder Selym in his wonted course of expedition, because (as yet) he was ignorant, what deuotion the Ægyptian inhabitants of Cayro bare towards him ; neither did rumour afford him any intelligence, where Tomumbeyo had bestowed himselfe, or what hee furthet intended. For, till he had deliberately confidered on all these occasions, he would not adventure the fafety of his owne person, and perill of his whole Armie, to the mercy of innumerable Cittizens, and in the greatest Cittie of the world. Wherefore, abiding foure dayes space in his old Campe at Rhodania, caufing the wounded to bee cured, and his flaine souldiours to bee buried : but the bodies of his enemies, he left to be deuoured by Birds and Beafts. And then dislodging thence, and marching towards Cayro; he encamped on a plain, between old Cayro and Bulach: for the City of Cayro is divided into three Townes; old Cayro, new Cayro, and Bulach, for their more commodious feruice of water.

CHAP. XXII.

kish Campe, and the same againe vuluckily discoucred to the Turkes (who beeing readily prepared for it, repelled (though with some losse) his formost rankes, he by the aduice of all his Captaines, entred the City of Cayro.

fharper warre against the Turks, then for-

merly had bene. But afterward, having in-

tend da fodaine camifado vpon the Tur-

The Battaile of Cayro.

The motiue heereto was, because the Mamalukes (hauing bene foyled in all precedent battailes) confidered with themschues, that they must now make warre after some other manner of way: & in that regard, aduised him to fortifie the Cittie, placing strong Courts of guard in the most conucnient parts thereof, to hinder enery way their enemies entrance. And being in this lamentable condition, that they must needes fight for their houses, wines, and children; they helde it highly to dye in the honourable, aud answerable to the glorie fight of their of their ancient valour, to dye fighting in dren. their fight, and even before theyr owne

Heereupon, each Mamaluke going to

his own house, furnished all his houshold, and the very toppe of his house with all kinde of weapons: instantly also entreating the Egyptians in each ward & firecte to take Armes against the common cruell enemie, not fuffering themselues to bee flaine, and their wives and children carried away as flaues. For (quoth they) if the fauage and infatiate enemy do winne witten norethe victory, as accidents of warre are al- spectof perwayes doubtfull : no spare will bee made, fone. no not of fuch as beare themselves but indifferently, leaning in help to neither fide; because victory swelles with such infolent licence, as he respects not any man, but fuch as (without doubtful staggering)run desperately to assist his fortune, when war stands vpon vncertaine successe.

Most of the Egyptians that were rich and wealthy, as they did well foresee, that alteration in the State and Empire would be very hurtfull, and bring great losse and hinderance to their wealth and Trafficke: The baser fort fo, in denotion and helpe, they were not best benefite failing to the Mamalukes . As on the contrary, most of the poorer Citizens, and no means multimate a felture of the poorer Citizens. meane multitude of the worfer fort (who, ftreames. being voide of danger, do euermore gaine by others losses) remembring all the villanies and extreme oppressions, which they

table spirit of Tomumbeyo in the tokk cft throngs.

The vndaun

had fuffered (for the space almost of three | hundred yeares) under the Mamalukes, in very wofull and wretched flauery, they kept themselues within doores, awayting for the fights fuccesse: iocondly hoping, that the time was now come, for punishing their proud oppreffors, and that reuenge would be fought by the bloud of strangers; the iffue forting so, that theyr eyes should be satisfied, with a pleasing & long expected spectacle.

Tomumbeyo fortified the gates & waies belonging to the City.

The bufie im

ployment of the Mama-

lukes against

their enimie

without any

curiofity, or

scorne of taking paines.

In the meane time, Tomumbeyo with most indulgent care and labour, fortified the gates, and all the waies of the Citties entrance, appointing Captaines for eucry street. In cuery market place, Court, and affembly of people, he made very witty and perswasine Orations, permitting no idle loytering in the workes: and finally (which is faide to be the hardest matter in diffresse and danger) he' carried an vnappalled countenance, deliuering fignes of extraordinary hope and valour no way to be daunted. But the Mamalukes, ouer and about necessity (which in extreamities makes men mad and desperate; yea, kindleth courage in errant Cowards) being stirred up by emulation : did speedily and couragioufly execute the duties and offices of worthy Captaines; for euerie one of them, as his wit and invention best instructed him, made trenches thwart the most passable streetes, laying also great Logges of Timber croffe vpon them. Others, made priny pits and holes, with sharpe-pointed stakes surely fastened in them, whereon the enemies vnwarily falling, might gore and split themselves. Others likewise fitted the houses and VVindowes of enery turning streete, with such plenty of thot as their store and ability afforded; and all these thinges were performed with fuch expedition, as no man (not the very Mamalukes) made it nice, or strained courtesie, to take the pickaxe & spade, or to do any seruile seruiceable Worke: whereby it appeared, that nothing could be thought denised, but it was as expeditiously effected. Now, although the Citty (being verie

ver there were Gates, and but certayne

the middeft of the Citty. The rest of the

great and old) had no wals to enclose it; The great Ci ty of Cayro was not enwayes for entering into it, one whereof closed with was a direct and very broad street, leading wals. from the East gate to the Castle, and into

waves wer but very narrow freets or paffages, somewhat vnsightly and disgracefull, where no Ordnance could be drawn, nor an aranged battell meete with his opposite. Into this maine way or streete had Tomumbeyo especially brought a power, because he well perceived, that their enemy would couet entrance, in regarde of the spacious admittance. But the other in the City, all quarters of the City further off, hee kept the reftbutef flender pas with small guards: yet the inner & middle fage. part, where the Castle stood, was guarded with a sufficient power, for the better supply of all other places, where the enemies cry, or their owne fellowes perill might call their affistance. For the Citie, being the greatest of all other, with fo fmal a power, could not be defended round about, namely, wayes lying open into it in euery

When Selym had received certaine intelligence, that Tomumbeyo vvas entred. marchethon Cayro, and all the Mamalukes (gathering Cayro, All the way he encouraged his troopes, to confider with themselves advisedly, that now they must intend an entire conquest of those Enemies, whom they had already fo often vanquished; and to take a little the more paines, that their victorious rewards, might be answerable vnto theyr braue endeuour, for which they had formerly coueted with immoderate defires. So paufing a while, and commaunding a Trumper to fummon general filence, thus againe he proceeded.

A briefe Oration of Selym, to his Souldiers.

Riends, and Fellowes in Armes, let mee intreat you to remember, that there re- He encount maineth now but a few wretched men, gethihemby with a for faken naked King; who, being lately bent with wounds and feare, were not able successe. to endure the field, but flying thence cowardly have verily determined, to expect at home (in the fight of their wines and children) the Supreme and last cast of a miserable life.

Moreover the Egyptians (of their owne accord) hane fent for me: for they deadly ha-

their strength into one maine head) wold try the vtmost fortune of warre : hee marched with his Army neerer to the Cittie.

The great

harm done b the ambushe

promise to fight from their owne houses, vtterly to destroy the race of those wicked sauage men. Neuerthelesse, the absolute victory of the whole war, confisteth in viter vanquishing the remnants of the defeated, or thorowly affrighted Army; because they cannot bee accounted as overcome, that are yet hopefull in Armes, and possesse the seat

defire of spoile, and being all readily ran-

ked wanted but the fignall for irruption .

Whe Selym entring at Baffuel gate, fent in

Cayro at Baf-fuel gate, and further pro-

Chap. 22.

The Battell of Cayro.

ting the Mamalukes very name: dee with greedy desire expect their destruction, and of the Empire, euen the greatest Citie there-The fouldiers foules were on fire with

his horse troopes at many places at once: but the Ianizaries entred at the broader passage, where the horse (on eyther side) meeting together, a cruell & bloudy fight began in the turning streets, and narrow lanes. The foot, haling out their Falcons and Culuerings before them in the front; flanked all the streetes with them as they went along, making them naked of anic defendants. But when they came to the munitions and trenches, labouring to remove the logges and beames, which were great hinderances vnto their passage . the Mamalukes gaue them very valiant refiftayre was meerly darkned with the fmoake ance, and either fide thewed fuch rare corage and valour: as neuer(in our memory) did men encounter more fiercely & bloodily. For both the Mamalukes and Turkes mour among the foldiers, the clattering stoode on their highest tearmes of manhood, vling all their cunning flights & policies of war, in this one deadly dagerous fight ineither part beeing ignorant, that this was the last hope of life and Empyre, Fortune equally and indifferently presenting them with honorable rewards for the Conqueror, and shamefull disgrace for ble to endure labour and watching) had the vanquished.

Mighty flaughter was made at the munitions, by reason that the Turkes rashly running vpon the couered trenches, pits, and downfals, were ouerthrown on heaps one vpon another, the hindmost thrusting them on that were before; others, beeing gored & spitted on sharpe pointed stakes: vpon which aduantage, the Mamalukes wines and children (with man-like hardineffe) hurled and tumbled down tiles and great stones on them thus ouerthrowne beneath, beating out the braines of verie many. On the contrary fide, the Turkes

with their Harquebusses, fetcht off such as they faw in the windowes, & on the houfes, breaking open the doores where any harmfull thing was throwne downe, and fighting in those houses with diverse euents. Also the Egyptians, beholding fortune now on the one fide, and then againe turned to the other; affayled both fides alike as equall enemies, leaning where the A cunning lot of victory was likelieft to happen, that they might appeare onely to have affifted the Egypuam that page and the Egypuam that part, and thought vtter enemy to the other.

Many encounters happened in diners

quarters at once, and according to theyr

confused running in the streets, now this

company, then that, lighting vppon fresh

and new troopes of enemies: & they that

constrained the victors in the Front, were

often intercluded by the adverse part, and

beaten downe in the Rere. It was a wofull

fight to beholde, the distances betweene

house and house, ouer-flowing with rec-

king blood, which ranne out of the flaine

which rose like athicke mist or dark cloud

of the Ordnance and leffer Artillerie, as

also clouds of Arrowes shot from theyr

bowes: and fo great was the cry and cla-

of weapons, and thundering of the Can-

nons, that the very earth feemed to groan

and tremble, and the houses were rent &

tage on either fide : but only that the Ma-

malukes (being few in number, and not a-

retreated themselves by little and litle, in-

to the inner parts of the City, vtterly for-

mens bodies, as there they lay mangled & The extremidismembred on heapes : that the Dust, ty of a thicke before, was now laide therewith, and not blood of flain to be seene at all. Notwithstanding, the mens bodyes.

torne in peeces. They fought continually They fought two dayes and two nights, with doubtfull two dayes and fortune, and flender apparence of aduan-two nightes continually.

faking the formost munitions. The third day, when the Mamalukes were in the very pitch of perill of lofing their whole estate, and all that they had, (which case viually augmenteth supreme enterprizes) chearing up the hearts and endenours of all men, they renewed the fight with fuch furpaffing valor, that they droue the Turkes a great way backe, and intercepted certains of their Faulcons. Which accident, made Selym to despaire

to let the hou les on fire.

A fodain fuc-

cesse happing to Mustapha, against the Mamalukes.

The Mama-

Selym despair of victory, so that hee commanded to set ring of victory the houses on fire in all places: inst wrath against the Ægyptians, compelling him | the will and pleasure of the Conquerour. to that cruell proclamation, because (in his very fight, and but a little before) Innubasha was greeuously wounded in the head by a great stone thrown down from a window.

Now were the houses on a flaming fire, now was nothing heard but wayling and weeping of the suppliant entreating A. gyptians: and nowe the Turkes fighting fornewhat faintly, expected that retreate should be founded: when sodainly newes was brought by many men together, that in another quarter, the Mamalukes being beaten from their stand, and defeated by enforcing Mustapha, reposed they latest refuge in flight. For Mustapha thorough the intimation of certaine Egyptians, and fugitive Mamalukes, came to a very large streete, where the Mamalukes had placed their horses ready bridled and sadled; intending, that if any ill hap befell the, their recourse might beethicher, where taking theirhorses, they might escape to places of further determination. He got al those horses, and led them away, having chased their guides within a part of the citie, nothing fuspected, which was very weake, & defended by none but boyes and horse-

Which accident/as commonly it hap-

neth in ferious and vnexpected chances) luker vangu shed and en did wonderfully weaken their valour and forced to resolution, wherefore when they wer thus defeated in their hope of flight, and they fo roud ringed about, that the fight could be maintained by no other helpe or comfort, but onely meere manhood:being as men vanquished by their own confession, they turnd their backs. Many making haft to Wilus with Tomumbeyo (who had in vaine tried all Art of valiancie, wisedome, and policy, to avoide the foile in this battaile)passing ouer the river by boats, went

into the Region of Seiectica. Another multitude hid themselves in the Egyptianshouses, and in most shamefull lurking dennes, But aboue 1500. of the valiantest Mamalukes, fled vnto the greatoft Temple Temple couk be no retuge of the Citty; where after they had long for them. time defended themselves, as out of a cafile, because they would not yeeld but vpon honotable termes : at length, beeing confounded with thirst, wearines, wounds

and the Ordnance violently playing still vpon them they submitted themselves to Part of them were presently flaine before the Temple, by the angry fouldiers of Selym, he politickly winking thereat; & another part(fome few dayes after) were caried downe the river to Alexandria.

The victory thus flanding for Selym, he fent two bands to quench the fires, and proclamations were made thorough all fauouring Se parts of the Citty, that all the Mamalukes which would come in and yeelde themeth his fould felues, and within the limitation of twelve ento quench houres space; should be secured from any the flaming fire. further harme. But all fuch as were found after that time, should dye for their refufall; and large rewards were promifed to all the Egypuans, that could disclose the lurking Mamalukes. Cootrarywife, fuch as hid or concealed any of them, were prefently to be spitted vpon stakes, & selling their wives and children as flaves to burn their houses to the ground. Vppon the fame of this Proclamation, a great number of them came abroad, who were inthering of the
thankly put in yrons, & afterward all most Mamalukua cruelly flaine in prison; because they were prison, after that they had faid to haue practifed an escape. But di- yeelded then uers, who would not violate the rites of feluts faith and friendshippe by betraying their friends being accused by their neighbors, fuffered loffe of life, dying very constantly for their friends.

After this, the foldiers encreasing their fury, vpon the pride of this victory, fearching all places; drew violently out all such as were hidden, and prefently flewe them, spoiling also the Egyptians houses where they were found, leaving no place that or concealed from them. And the very fame The coming day it hapned, that Gazelles cam to Cayro; of Gazelles Cayro, & his who had beene (ent (a little before) into [hb miffion to] Thebus, to leuy Arabians, & to hire aides. Selym. But seeing the case to bee quite changed, and that he was able to do no good either by his person or aduice; hee came with three Arabian Captaines, and many horse with them, and yeelded himfelfe to Selim; who entertained him and all his traine very honourably, euery man according to his degree and merit.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the third and last Battell fought at Nilus, betweene Tomumbeyo and Selym, with the ill successe and disgracefull death of Tomumbeyo, and hard face of his Ma-

River of Nilus, into that re-gion which is called Seietti-ca, lying towards * Cyrenai-

ca;although with fo many difastrous mis-

the war. For there was come to him a po-

tent supply of Mamalukes fro Alexandria

being sent for by letters out of the Cittie

Garrifons, and many more also followed

him in flight. Beside, the Arabians of Affri-

ca repaired to him, and the Moores like-

wife which were inhabitants of that coun

try promising him their vittermost fauour

and helpe. Nay more, diners Ægyptians

of Cayro, whose houses and people had bin

spoyled and dishonested, by the couctous

and luxurious Turks, gaue faith alfo, that

they would raise a tumult and insurrecti-

V.T Tomumbeyo, being fled

(as ye haue heard) ouer the

haps he had formerly bin vanquished, yet na, of the fine still hee made a couragious reparation of

Chap. 22.

The coming

on, if he would speedily come thither in the dead of night; wherby might be compassed, that such Turkes as were lodged in the City houses, might sodainly be destroyed by inuasion of all the people together. For the Citizens, having suffered by them all abhominable and enemy-like parts could no longer endure the injuries of fuch proude and malapart oppressors. Further they alledged, that the Turks, being (before)a potent army, were now reduced to a contemptible number: for, a great part of them were flaine in the battels at Rhodania and Cayro, and well-neere all the rest were spent with woundes and fickneffe. While Tomumbeyo was thus busied about

his needfull preparations, Albuchomar the very greatest man (for authority, lands,& riches) in all Seiestica, came to Selym : eyther to preuent the mischiefe of imminet warre, to the no meane peril of his coun-

trey, or elfe to win the victors favour by Treason: and acquainted him not onely with the new collected powers of Tomumbeyo, but also with the practifes concluded among the Cittizens of Cayro. Which when Selym vnderstood, he caused stricte and strong watch and ward, to bee planted in all parts of the City; commanding alfo, that the suspected Cittizens should be kept in the Castle, which (vppon the Garrisons for saking it) very easily hee surprized. Furthermore, in diners places along the river of Nilus, he ordered a great number of veffelles, well furnished with fland Tomum Ordnance and foldiers, to defend the further banke of the river.

Neuerthelesse, considering aduisedly

with himselfe, how perillously he had often fought with most valiant enemies, and ous deliberahow difficult it would be for him to inter- tion concercept Tomumbeyo, who (by flight) ftill into dangerous waste and vnknowne Regions prolonged condition. the Warre, still getting fresh and newe supplies. Considering also, that his owne power was fo fmall, and fo far from fuccour, as it might eafily bee oppressed in that mighty Citty, by huge multitudes of men of vncertaine Faith. Vppon these discreece considerations, hee desired rather to conclude the Warre by fome honest composition, then by forcible fur-

And so much the rather, because hee Fresh compahad intelligence by them of Seiestica, that nies of Horlie fresh Companies of Horsse were leaved Mamalukes. from all partes by the Mamalukes, which had fledde into divers Regions: and the Nauie likewise, which was sent into the streights of the Red Sea, in the Arabian Gulffe against the Portugals, stoode now vppon the hopefull expectation at Porte,

ther contending, to entangle himfelfe in

new dangers.

In the Nauy were about three thoufand Mamalukes, land Amyraffes, and Ray Salomon, all very expert Captaines: and a great number of braffe Peeces: whereby it appeared, that Tomumbeyo might gather ability, to repaire his former received iniuries, and so returne againe to the Cittie, being fent for thither by his friends.

But the maine motive of all, was his care of the Persian affairs, lest Humbracof-(a(whom he had sent before to the mountaine Taurus) should not prooue able to match the Persian power, whereby hee

The cheefe matter that moued Selym to feeke compolition with Tomumbero

688

The effect of the charge giuen to the Amballadors

audience.

The Ambaffa dors barbarou fly murdred.

A bridg builded ouer Ni-lus by Selym,

Fomumbeyo distructed the Prouincials constancie to

should be excluded out of the lesser Asia and Syria, before the Fleet from Constantinople could come to Alexandria, with new supply of Victuals and soldiers. Hereupon, he fent very honorable men of the Cleargy, and likewise certaine Ægyptians of great estimation amongst them, as Ambassadors from him vnto Tomumbeyo. The effect of their Commission was brieffly thus. To counfell him for a ceffation from Armes, and now (at length) to acknowledge the Victors great fortune, engaging their faith to him, that if (in fuppliant manner) he would come to Selym; by humanity and fauour of the Conqueror, he should quietly enjoy the kingdom, which he was not able to hold by power. But if hee would proceede and continue Warre, careleffely forgetting his owne weakenesse: then, when warres fortune was thorowly found and determined; according to his inft defert, he shold expect no condition of dignity or life, at displeafed Selyms hands. Thefe Ambaffadors being come into Seiectica, were (with franticke and barbarous cruelty) all flaine by certaine Mamalukes, before they had any

Which proud and cruell deede, brake off all further patience in Selym, who was a man by nature (though not otherwise mooned) extraordinarily vehement and fierce. Immediately he proclaimed a voyage into Seiectica against Tomumbeyo, comanding victuals and other provision for it. Moreover he gathered Boats from all parts, causing a sure and a very broade bridge to be built ouer Nilus riner : as allowing it neyther answerable vnto his dignitie, nor futing with the vigent occalion, to make his passage ouer with

When Tomumbeyo had intelligence by his Spies, as also from the Cittizens of Cayro, that fuch an intention was prepared against him, and so strong a Bridge made ouer Nilus; hee (doubting the vnfaithfulnesse of the Propincialles, whose hearts he feared to be revolted from him, by the treacherous departure of Albuchomar) determined to try the felfe-fame fortune of battell, which had so oftentimes deceived his hopes. For he being inferior in all things, could not now lengthen out the war, nor make expectation of his ene-

to fly againe with loffe of his dignity, and thorough farther wildernesses of hazardous aduenture, and dangerous successe.

Outs aduenture, and dangerous inceesie.

Wherefore, confulting with his Captaines & Commanders, concerning this cap to preced last attempt, which he and his Mamalukes the intention were to make; by breake of day he departed fro Selectica, accompanied with 4000. horfe, and twice fo many Moores and A- Ittatagem. rabes foot, continuing trauel night & day til they came to Nilus, that (by a bolde and fodain aduenture) he might decevue the Turkes, who (as he vnderstood) suspected no fuch forwardnes, in weake, vanquisted & more then halfe difmayed men, wheras celerity would forftall any fame of his vnlookt for comming; fo to destroy y part of the Turkish power, which first had aduentured ouer the river-before they could receive fuccour by their following Fellowes. Nor did the space of time beguile his opinion, because the hours (being truly accounted) made iust agreement with his speedy march thither; and even as hee formerly coniectured fo fel it out, that the vaw-ward of the Asians had alreadie past the River. But the Muleters and boyes of Selyms Camp, feeking for the pleafanteft places for pitching their Tents, raunging The discour ouer farre, were the first that descried the beyos neer dust of the approching enemy: whereof approaching Mustapha being certified, the allarum was presently giuen.

This rumour fo danted all hearts with feare, both of them that had already paffed the river and theirs also which stoode ready to follow after them : that Tomumbeyo charging the Asians with incomparable valour, while they were making themfelues ready, and reforting vnto their Enfignes, flew them in the Front, that durst endure the shocke of the affailants) disperfed the reft, and forced them to flight; and all the vantgard was wel-neere ouer-run. and trodden downe, beside the disorder of the rest: before Mustapha (albeit hee fought fearlesse in the van, & very chearfully encouraged his fouldiers) was able to retaine them that fledde, or to repayre the other in array. For in this fodaine and vnexpected chance, enery place was full Sodaine acti of the peoples confused hudlings together, flaughter, flight, and feare: and all along the river banke both aboue and below the newe made Bridge, were divers
the troops ful my : neither did he hold it good for him, companies of men discerned, looking ru- into disorder

fully behind them, and crying out to their | being fo let loofe at liberty, might be carifellowes for fuccour. Many also being enforced (by the vrging troope of the Encmy) to the very brinke of the banke, fell headlong downe into the river and many also perished at the end or heade of the bridge, by reason they could not passe ouer it, beeing hindred by them that were continually fent from the further fide; befide, many that would have ascended the bridge, being impeached by fear, & thrust backe by their owne fellowes, were drow-

Sclimmaketh a notable fup ply by the help of his Ianizaries fenz

The Tartares

ned in the river.

The Bridge was [pacious and large for

The bridge was so broad, that 4 horse in rank might well passe ouer together, & agreat number fent ouer in an houres space. But because the Ordnance was to as plainly perceived that except they kept be drawne ouer, fewer horse were sent, and preferued the bridge, the fafety of thethen either the greatnesse of the danger, or fodainnesse of such a chance did vrgent ly require. Nor was there any helpe in the Ordnance, which could not speedily bee Harquebusiers, & troops of Greek horse, drawne ouer, or shot off from the hither banke to the other against the Enemie, which in fundry companies had paffed the without great danger to themselues, by bridge: that the enemies were repulfed & reason that their owne men stoode in the forced to retire a great way backe. Now way. In the meane time, Selym who ranne Tomumbeyo that he might give fome respit downe to the rivers fide, at the beginning to his Mamalukes to breathe themselves a of this hurly burly, filled finall boates with while, being not able to fight fiercely, be-Ianizaries Harquebusiers, & sent them ocause their horse were spent and tired, & uer to succour their distressed fellowes; commading the horse also to make what hast they could ouer the bridge, the nimble Marriners vsing their best pains, in often passing and returning with fresh supplies; fo that within a fhort space they had

on their behalfe, that Selym (distrusting Alfo Canoglas, fon to a Tartar king, encouraging his troopes of Tartares to take the river with their horses; attained to the further bank of the riner, to the admiration of all men, and lofing but fewe of his men : for the Tartares having learned to fwim ouer the violent and mightie Riuer of Tanais and Volga with their horses, were the more apt for passage heere. At the fame instant also, Tomumbeyo fore-seeing, that the speedy victory consisted therein. endenoured with his thickest troopes, to win the head of the bridge, that pulling away the formost boats, and cutting in funder the cables, which fastened the rest together, & to the bankes : the whole bridge

conveyed over many bands of Ianizaries,

whose comming confirmed the disorde-

red Asians, and now boldly they endured

the enemies violence.

ed away with the streames violence, & all the Turkes that were vpon it. This caused a very dangerous conflict, for the chosen A worthy policy deuiled and best armed Mamalukes constraining by Tomumthe front, fought with fingular valor. And beyo, to cut on the other fidel, Mustapha perceiving away the bridg of boats the present perill, brought vp the colours, and all the valiantest of his soldiours, to make good that place : fo that both fides contended with fuch furpaffing manhood

as the weightinesse of the case required.

For the Mamalukes faw manifestly, that if

they could winne that place, they should

(with very fhort worke) ouerthrow all the

enemies former victories: and the Turks

felues, the whole estate of the army, yea &

the ruine of their Emperor, lay now at the

Hereupon, Mustapha so prevailed by his

stake, and all brought to vtter despaire.

The maine

that after a fresh repairing of their streath he might aduenture the extreme & latest Tomumbeyo fortune of the battell, encouraged the encourageth Moores and Arabians to maintaine the the Moores & fight, vntill the Mamalukes had breathed a maintaine the little. Which when they had valiantly fight. performed, and the Mamalukes (hauing

to the contrary. His coming (which brought fresh hope into his Souldiers hearts, they coueting to win reward and praife, by doing some feruiceable action in their Emperours The Ianizafight) repressed all the enemies best en- ries put the denour, and were forced vnto flight, and win the onely through the valiancie of the Iani- honour of the zaries. Purfued were they ouer all the day. Fieldes, by those Horse which had beene at the fight, and likewife by the Tartares, who gaulled them very greenously

fomwhat comforted their own bodies &

tel was againe renewed with such rigour

the victory) doubted not to ascend the

bridge, and runne to fuccour his men, al-

though his friends earneftly, labored him

horses)making good their place, the bat-

Nnng

7. Booke

Of Rings and their first vse.

691

Tomumbey taken and brought to Selym.

How basely Selym vied Tomumbeyo,

All the Sultanes Empire yeelded to Selym.

Rings inuen-sed by the va

nity of man-

Hapha, Cayerbey, and Gazelles, were sent with a company of fresh and swift horse, to follow them that fled, and not to fuffer Tomumbeyo to escape: who the third day after, was found by certaine Peazants, standing in a Marish vppe to the waste in Water, among Bull-rushes and Reedes; and they (for feare of death) delinered him to the Captaines, who brought him to Selym, who would not vouchfafe to fee After he had caused him to bee a long

time in vaine tormented, to disclose the treasures of Campson; at last he gaue command, that he should be carried about all the famous streets of the Citty, riding on a vile Camels backe, and in poore ragged Garments, with his hands bound behind him; and then to bee hanged vp with an halter, for the murthering (as hee pretended) of his Ambassadors, although the Noble Prince was altogether guiltlesse thereof. The like fate also befell to all the Mamalukes that were in prison, or could be taken. After the shamefull death of Tomumbeyo, who was executed the thirteenth day of Aprill, Anno 1517. all the whole Empire of the Soldan yeelded, and likewise all the Princes that had beene tributaries to the Soldan, even vnto the dominions of Prestre Iohn.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the first invention of wearing Ringes: to what and it was . And of many ancient and admirable things, tending vato the same purpose.



Mong all other Iewels and Ornaments, inuenced by the spirite and industry, or rather by the vanity of man, to cmbellish & beautify him-

felfe withall: there is not any comparable to that of Rings bee it for riches, or curiofity in workemanship. For, ouer and beside that they are made in a round and circular figure, which is the most perfect of all other: they are befide fo fubicat

with their Arrowes. But afterward, Mu-, and light, that they may be worne on the least finger of the hand. Neuertheleste, Ringes mide they are alwayes made of the very richest and richest mettall of all, and accompanyed with stones, the most precious and exquisite other. that are to be had, and valewed to bee the onely effectived things in the world. Behold then, what meanes the ambition of men found out, to weare a ring vpon one finger, valewing in price the worth of a Citty: for, it is not vnknowne, there are some such precious stones, that are esteemed as a world of Gold, and yet notwithstanding, they hinder not the hand from the vie of any exercise whatsoeuer. And The principal albeit that Rings have ferued, and yet do bring Rings to some other more necessary ends & ef- into vie. fects, then those before related: yet the very principall point which brought them into vie, was to glad and delight the eye, and to deliuer an outward testimonie of Rings were Nobility, and shew the persons estimation. But because they are now grown ve- Nobility. ry common, and yet much esteemed, I will fet downe certaine ancient Histories, incident to our present purpose, not greatly irkfome to reade or heare. In the first place, it is not resolutely de-

termined, who was the prime inventer of Concerning Rings: and yet some do say, that the first the inuention Rings knowne to be worne, was in the re- of Rings. membrance of Prometheus, who (as the Poets faigned) beeing chained to a rocke by the appointment of Inpiter, was delinered by Hercules, with the permission of In- deliuered its piter; with this condition neuertheleffe, therocke by that in perpetual memory of his imprison ment, the faide Prometheus flood obliged, to weare incessantly a ring of gold enchafed with a stone of the rocke whereto hee was prisoner; and thereby some hold, that the vie of rings tooke thence the first beginning. Pliny and many other authors reputed this discourse for a fable, as al Chriftians ought to do: and because it is a leafing, and friuolously feigned, I meane to infift thereon no further.

Concerning mine owne opinion, I am of the mind, that the inuention of Ringes of one man came not by one man only, but from ma- onely. ny, and in divers times; confidering, it neuer was any note of great cunning to take the fingers bigneffe by a thred, and with that measure to make a Ring of Golde or Iron: fuch as aunciently were worne by the very cheefest Lordes of Lacedemon

Ring not in

Ring of Ho-

Chap.23.

Pin.inlib 7.

and Rome, before they gaue themselues ouer to the superfluities and dissolutions, which afterwardes reigned in all things. And vndoubtedly, the custome and ceremonie continued long time amongst the Romaines, that the Ring of Honour, which the husband fent to his spouse on the mararing the Ro riage day, was made of yron. Plinie difcourfing on the antiquitie of Rings, faith, That they were not in vie in the war time betweene the Greekes and Trojans : confidering that Homer (who wrote thereof very amply) maketh no mention at all of Rings, much leffe, that they fealed then with Rings. And yet notwithstanding he speaketh sufficiently of Chains and Brace-

lets, which were at that time worne, and

of the manner of closing and sealing Let-

ters : so that if Rings had then bin in vse,

Homer would never have let it sleepe in si-

But the good olde man Plinie, cannot ouer-reach vs with his idle arguments and coniectures; for we reade in Genefis, that Iofeph (who lived aboue five hundred and

lence.

fifty yeares before the warres of Troy) hauing expounded the dreame of Pharaoh, King of Aegypt, was by the fayde Prince made Superintendent ouer his kingdom, and for his fafer possession in that estate he tooke off his Ring from his hand, and put it vpon Iofephs hand. And furely, kings did not onely weare Rings in those times, because we reade that Thamar, defiring to have iffue by the race of Iudah her father in lawe (who was brother to Joseph) had his company, under colour of beeing a common whoore, and received as prefents from him, his Staffe and his Ring. In Mofes time, which was more then foure hundred yeares before Troy warres, wee find Rings to be then in vie; for we reade that they were comprehended in the ornaments, which Aaron the High-Priest mould weare, and they of hisposteritie afterward, as also it was anouched by Io-Cephus.

Whereby appearoth plainely, that the vie of Rings was much more ancient then Pliny reporteth them in his Conjectures: but as he was a Pagan, and ignorant in facred writings, fo it is no maruell, if thefe things went beyond his knowledge. According as himfelfe apparently manifesteth, speaking of them of his owne Counkrey: for hee fayth, the vie of Rings were

anciently fo rare in Rome, & specially such as were of gold; that there was no auncient Statue to be seen ringed, except those of the Kings, Numa, and Seruius Tullius, kings wearing for all other Statues were without Rings . | Rings w Hee fayth moreouer, that (ordinarily) no other Rings were worne in Rome, but of yron, and that the custome of the Romans was, to give Rings of gold (by way of prerogatine) to Ambassadours, which they fent to any King, or to some strange Nation. And yet notwithstanding, they that entred Rome triumphantly, wore no other Rings then of yron, although crownes of wore from gold were allowed for their heads, & long Rings, but time did this custome continue.

Afterward, when the Romaines became more braue and fumptuous, yet did they expresly prohibite in Rome, to all mechanicall persons, and men of meane conditi- No Mechaon, to weare Rings of golde: except they nick or mean were rancked with the Souldiers, or Romain Cauallerie, which was a third estate, betweene the Order of the Senators, and the common popularitie; as now-adayes is our Nobilitie. Whereuppon, Rings were so priviledged, that in giving licence to any one to weare a ring of gold, it was as much as to ennoble him, and to passehim for a Gentleman. For, as Pliny, Dion, and many other have left in their Dien intib 9. writings, the Roman Knights were known, Plin. inlib. vbi and those of the Military Order, amongst Supra. the common people, and diftinguished from them by Rings, which they wore on their fingers: euen as euidently as Senatours were knowne by their long Purple Roabes, embroidered with large headed nailes . For this cause , the Poet Horace Equester ordo. attributed Rings to the Cauallerie, bestowing on them the name of Knights, or Gentlemen.

This priviledge then of wearing Rings ofgolde, might not be graunted, but to fuch as had accomplished some high en- rings of gold. terprife, or that were men of power, and worthily deferred. And affuredly, this prerogative was fo affected generally that fulius Cafar, coueting to embolden his Souldiours by remunerations and promifes : after a long Oration made to them. hee would lift up his finger, in figne, that they should enjoy whatsoener he promifed. And all his Army conceiuing, that Cafara enby this figne, hee would permit them to couraging figne to his weare Rings of golde, which intimated Soldiors. asinuch,

of gold in

Who onely

The famous

Rings giuen to fuch as dethe Emperors in the Commentaries or Chronicles of times.

a buffiells of rings found the battel of

On what fin-

ger our graue elders vied to

weare their

ringa,& theyr

doing,

ouerthrow of the Romaines which happened at Cannas; for according as Pliny and Titus Linius doe report, three bushells of Ringd (belonging to the Romaines flaine in the battell of Cannas) were found among the flaughtered bodies. In like maner, as Cicero alleadged in his fift pleading against Verres, he vsed these very words; When a Generall of the Romaine Army obtained any victorie, hee ordinarily gaue a Ring to his Secretarie. as a reward for his faithfulnesse. Many other things were also in custome then, which wee will heereafter more at large discusse: after we have proued by Examples and Histories, to what end Rings were worne in elder times, and in what manner.

were the more forightly encouraged, and

serued him with most chearful dispositio.

Emperours, this preheminence was gi-

uen to many that deferued it not, as wee

may fee in Iuuenall and Suetonius, as also

Iulius Casar, and of Vitellius. Neuer-

theleffe, the Edict, whereby it was inhi-

bited to Mechanickes to weare Rings of

golde, was not in force at the second

warre against the Carthaginians, and the

Very true it is, that in the time of the

First then, our reuerend predecessours vsed to weare their Rings, on the next finger to the least vpon the left hand, according as it was observed by the Statues of Numa, and Servius Tullus, Romain kings; because that finger was called Digitus Annularis. The Ring finger . And certainely (as Plinie faith in his feauenth Booke and eighteenth chapter) the Ring worne vpon the left hand, was a mecre expression of modesty: the Romaines imagining, that it was a matter ouer-curious and superfluous, to weare any Rings at al: and therfore to make the leffer thew of them they did euer weare them on the left hand. Nor can we say (according to Plinie) that this was done to any other end, but because the left hand was more at liberty then the right in the mannaging of Armes, it feruing then, but as a defence to the bodie, in carrying onely Shields and Targets, as

Neuerthelesse, some do say, that Rings. were worne on the left hand, for the more fafetie and affurance, confidering that it

asmuch, as that they should all be knights; is the hand least employed; and that the Ring-finger was elected for the fame respect : For it is least fet to labour of all the fingers, as Macrobius faith . Pursuing the fame case, and alleging Pliny for the point, he addeth thefe words, There is a veine or A veine inthe nerue, comming from the heart, which taketh coming from his ending in the Ring-finger for which cause the heart, and reason, that finger deserueth to be crowned with golde . Aulus Gellius also is of the fame opinion. Others affirme, that Rings are worne vpon that finger, for phylicke, on Digital or ous stones enchased in them, doe peneor physically: and that the vertue of precious stones enchased in them, doe pene-trate to the heart, by meanes of the fore-veine leading named veine. Macrobius, grounding his to the heart conceit vpon the Pythagorian numbers, whereof the Egyptians made vie; alleageth many other reasons concerning Rings, which I passe the lightlier ouer as seeming to bee matters of fmall importance. We will refolue then on the last opinion, appearing to bee the most receivable: although we feerings to be worne indifferently, vpon all the fingers that are on the hand.

> Macrobius doth anouch, that the most principall cause of inventing or finding rings, was to serue as Seales: for in former times, euerie man caused to be engrauen in Stones fo enchased in Rings, of Letterrat what did best please his owne minde and the first. affection, and wherewith to seale up his Letters.

This was then the reason of bringing Rings in vie, although now-adayes they are that way least imployed : and afforedly, men (in elder dayes) were fo curious for well keeping their Rings and Signets, that they would feale with them verie feldome. Which I thinke not to be so vsed amongst the Romaines, because they were fo neare-handed, as not onely they fealed their Letters with their Signets, but The gripple also sealed therewith their Chests, Cofnesses in the property of the sealed th fers, Ambries, Cub-boords and pursses, that kept the housholde keyes; yea, and things. fealed their Cellers, wherein were their stored wines for feare lest they should be stollen away from them; and Marcus Tullius Cicero himfelfe fayth, that his mother did the fame.

Now cocerning the vse of sealing with Rings, it is very ancient, according as we may reade in many Examples and Histories, especially in the facred Scriptures,

to Achab King of Samaria, Sealed with the Kings Ring, the Commaund whereby the fent to have Naboth put to death ; and ver notwithstanding, this was fifteene hundred yeares before the foundation of the Cittic of Rome.

Moreouer, when the Prophet Daniel (by the Kings commaundement) was put into the Denne of Lions; the stone which closed the mouth of the favde denne, was fealed with the Kings Ring, and the rings of all the Princes in the kingdome:whereby appeareth, that Rings served them to feale withall; as now they are vsed in any Kingdome, when the King confirmeth any especiall privilege. And in these venerable elder times, Stones were enchased and fixed in Rings,

a man to be so fortunate, but ere long he must fall into farre greater misfortune, c. uen to the pittying of his best friends. As vpon which stones were cut and engrauen diuers formes and figures, denised onelie to seale withall. Heereupon did the Poet to be hanged and strangled. This came

I knew the Letter, and the faithfull stone. Asmuch to say, as he knew the partie

thus to paffe, two hundred & thirty yeres from whence the Letter came, by the fibefore the foundation of the Cittie of gure engrauen vpon the stone in the ring, implying, that he knew the Seale. In regard wherof, when men made their rings, they studied to exceede one an other in ri-Herodotus affirmeth it to be an Emerauld; ches and costlinesse, especially Kings and but there appeareth some defect heerein, other great Lords; witnesse the so much because Pliny fayth , How was it possible in renowned Seale-ring of Polycrates a Ty-

rant in the Isle of Samos. And although many did suspect the narration of that Cumo de finit Seale, as a matter meerely fabulous : yet Minint 14.c.s notwithstanding, Cicero, Plinie, Strabo and Herodotus, doe holde it for a true historie, affirming it to be an Emerauld engrauen, wherewith this Prince vsed to seale his Missiues and Patents, as briefly wee will

fav somewhat of the discourse. This Prince, hauing long time lived in finger, and fet it to Hephestions lippes, as great prosperitie, neuer finding Fortune Polygrates any way contrary to him, knowing also in others her instabilitie to be fuch, as it was impossible for a man to passe through the

courses of this life, without experimenting her variable trauerfes; was willing to fal into a voluntary misfortune, as hoping (by that meanes) to fatisfie whatfocuer their Riddles . Whereupon the Romaines Fortune could inflict vpon him . Hereupon, taking the Ring which he fo highly eemblazoning the Seale of Octavius, vied ficemed, he threw it into the very deepest as a commo faying; that his Sphinz might place of the Seasto have the leffe hope for raife fome fuch doubtfull cause, as would euer finding it againe; which yet he did, be very difficult to resolue. And this made

where it is faid, That Queene Iefabel, wife | as Herodotus maintaineth, by the aduice of Amasias King of Aegypt, and his confederate. It hapned, that within some few dayes after, a Fisher-man presented him with a fifth caught in the Sea, which was very great, and much remarkeable. As the Cooke belonging to Polycrates was in dents do not dreffing the fame fifth, he found in the bo- happen to wells thereof, the Ring which his Lord many men, let

departed from the league of friendship

which hee had long continued with Poly-

crates, sending him expresse word by his

Ambassadours; that it was impossible for

ftion, his choice fauourite, with a fecret

which he had fet downe in a Letter, fhew-

ing it to him, he tooke the Ring from his

a figne of fealing them vp with filence.

had throwne into the Seajan accident very admirable, and fortunate to Polycrates. often. When King Amafias heard thereof, hee

it hapned to him in short time after : For, The forunat King Darius making war against him, was man is altaken in the faid war by Orandus, Ligute- waics waited nant generall to Darius, who caused him on by mistor-

Pliny fayth, that the Stone enchased in Plin in lib. vbi this costly Ring, was a Cornalline : yet Jupra.

those times, that an Emeraulde could bee engrauen? In briefe, it was an ordinarie matter among Princes , to feale Letters with Princes to

their Rings. As we may observe by Alexander the Great, who (according as Quintus Curtius, and many more beside doe auouch) being willing to acquaint Hephe-

Suetonius fayth, that Octavius the Emperour vsed the forme of a * Sphinx in his to an Ape or Monky. * A beaft like the Sphinx was a monster like to a * Har- * The monpie, which demaunded many doubtfull from and ra questions of passengers, ouerthrowing Aello Ocypte

and also killing such, as could not resoluc and Celane.

The left hand more at eafe then the right

Souldiers vied then to doe, the right hand hauing no fuch cafe.

Doubtfall figures in Signet Rings

A fignet ring caused the long war be tweene Marius and Silla.

Grandfather to Cato.

Mens figures engrauen in Rings, as in the time of the Remane Emperers.

Rings onely brauery, and the eyes con tentment.

ludith 10,4.

Octavius to alter his Seale, engraving therein the Image of Alexander the great. Mecanas, a great fauourite of the fayde Octavius, had a Frogge engraven in his Seale; and although that creature is naturally very timorous: yet notwithstanding, the Romains greatly feared the Frog of Mecanas, because by vertue of the Mandations fent under that Scale, they payed great subsidies and tributes . Pom-

per the Great had a Lion in his Signet.

In briefe, Signets were so much respe-Aed, as it is well remembred, that the Signet Ring of Silla, moued that most cruell warre, which happened betweene him and Marius. In that Ring was engrauen the Image of Bocchus, King of Carthay or Mauritania, whom Silla tooke with king Iugurthe; which was so highly displeafing to Marius, to whom Silla was Licutenant; as hee tooke occasion thereby, to enter open Armes against him. Plime alfo faith, that the Sociall warre, which the Romaines waged against their confederates, was moved by the meanes of a Signet, which procured the enmitte between * Drufus and Scipio.

But passing from these particular Signets of divers Princes, we are to observe, that the Romains caused their owne proper figures to be engrauen in their Rings. As is well deliuered by Plautus, who introduceth a Bawde in one of his Comedies, that by the impression of a Ring, knew the iests and countenance of a fouldier her friend . Neuerthelesse, when the Emperours reigned in Rome; such as then were pleasing to them, carried their Images engrauen in their Signets. It may then be helde for certaine, that (almost) from the beginning of the world (by that which hath already beene faid)Rings were in vie to bee worne, euen as now-adayes they are in many Countries, where Armes and other devices, are ordinarily carried in Rings.

Weemay conclude then, that Rings were made (at the first) for brauerie, and onely to give delight to the eie; as also for fome other reasons, whereof wee shall speake heereafter. And vindoubtedly, the custome of wearing Rings hath beene of long continuance; for, beside the Historeade of that couragious woman Iudith, who having fworne the death of Holo-

phernes, thee put off her mourning garments, and to execute her intention, thee clothed herfelfe with goodly habites, enriching hir comely person with Bracelets, Rings and eare-rings. The Romains likewife wore lewelles, and Rings on all fin- All fingers gers of the hand, except on the middle ringd except finger, which is the greatest about all the finger, other, and which they holde to bee infamous; for a reason, whereof I purpose not now to speake.

Pliny faith, that after the victory which Pompey obtayned in Asia, the Romaines greatly inured themselues to weare rings; and brauery grew then into such request, Winter and that in Winter they yied to weare bigge for Summer. rings: but those appoynted for Summer, were much more light, fubtile and ingeniously made. Also, they named theyr Rings according to the fingers whereon they wore them, as is affirmed by Julius Pelagius. Plinie faith, that the second finger, or that whereon the Romaines beganne to weare their rings, next vnto the Ring-finger, was the first finger, which is nearest to the pulse; and then afterwards they wore them on the litle finger. Moreouer he faith, that many (in his time) wore three Rings on ech finger : neuerthelesse, fuch as were most dainty and curious, would weare but one Ring only vpon the whole hand.

From hence it enfued, that enery Nation beganne to feeke very diligently for Richiftons ftones that were of greatest price and value; onely to serue in Rings as Signets, make Signets and thereon to engrave their denices. Notwithstanding, among the stones of choicest esteeme, that of Pyrrhus (who waged warre against the Romaines) in auncient times was accounted to be most excellent. For, in that precious stone, (without any helpe , invention or arte of The rare pit man) was naturally differend, the figures cious flone of nine goddeffes, and a yong naked child belonging to standing by them: so that they were cenfured, by graue opinion, to bee the portraits of the nine Muses, and of Apollo. A matter very strange, and somewhat difficult to be credited : neuerthelesse, many Authors (worthy beliefe) doe anouch it for a true historic, especially Plinie. And Plinis libral questionles, according to the judgement fupra. ries and Examples before related, wee of Philosophers, this might happen thus naturally, by the great and immeasurable heate of matter confishing in the sayde

be and laiper

ftone;

stone; or elle by some correspondencie, | tally) turned the stone in the Ring toward or celestiall influence, with the Stars and Planets, cuen as a woman may produce a monster, wholly different from humane kind, and by the felfe fame influences.

Albertus Magnus faith, that he fawe at

Collen, in the chappell of the three Kings,

a Stone, wherein was naturally figured

and discerned two mens heads, placed vp-

on a Serpent. Leonardus Camillus, in his

Mirrour of precious Stones fayth, that

this may be for naturally, affirming more-

ouer, to have feene feauen trees, all of one

forme, naturally portrayted in a Stone.

And not to tie my felfe to other mens te-

flimonies, I have observed in Columnes

of Marble and Iasper, men naturally figu-

red, and many other shapes beside, very

remarkeable, both for the diversitie of co-

lours, and fingularitie of shadowes natu-

rally thereto belonging. And therefore,

feeing fo manie credible perfons haue

written, concerning the precious Ring-

stone of King Pyrrhus: it might very well

be, that the Nine Muses were therein na-

Now, for that which is reported, as

turally figured, and appearing to the life.

touching the Ring of Giges, King of Lydia,

(which Plinie attributeth to King Midas)

it feemes a matter strange and incredible.

This Ring had fuch a property, that being

on the finger, and turned to the in-fide of

the hand, the wearer went invisible; but

turning it to the out-fide, then he was vi-

fible againe, and to be seeue of all men as

before; all which was made so publique-

ly knowne, that men tooke it offenfiuely,

ded downe into the gulfe, and found there

a great horse, which was of Brasse, and

hollow; within which horffe was a dead

body; of a Giant-like and prodigious sta-

tue. He looking confideratly on the huge

body, espied a Ring vpon his finger, which

he tooke off, and having put it vppon his

owne, found himselfe sodainely returned

to his fellowes: where they (as then) were

It came to passe, that Gyges (acciden-

keeping Cattell.

ROMB. courd.Camil. a Mir.Lap.

Abert. Magnu

islib de prop.

Chap. 24.

The wonder

when they were demaunded, if they had feene Gyges Ring, or no. Plato the divine Philosopher fayth in his Booke of Com-Concerning mon-wealth, that by reason of a certaine Gyes, and in tempest and carriques of the same manner ned, and a great deepe gulfe was publiketempest and earthquake, the ground opely differned. Gyges, being then a Sheepheard, but a man of bolde spirit, descen-

the palme of his hand, and then heard his found our the palme of his hand, and then heard his found our the companions talking of him; as a free was insignify of ablent from their company : wherenpon, the Rings beeing wife and ingenious, hee prefently conceined, that this proceeded from forme hidden vertue in the Ring. So, finding it to be true; and trufting to the feeret vertue thereof, he went to the Court of Candaules King of Lydia; where hee prepayled fo fortunately, that he obtained the loue of the Queene. Afterward, having flaine the King, by meanes of his wife, he posses - in what me fed himselfe of the kingdome, and so be- became king came King of Lydia. Cicerd taketh this of Lydia. narration of Plato; no otherwise then as a morali Fable, applyed by him to colour what he fayd. Philostratus, discourting of Philostratus Serpents and dragons in the Indiaes, faith, discouring of That in certaine Stones, the heads of Ser- flones in inpents and Dragons are to be feene, natu- diarally figured; and that this may be proued by the Ring of Grees. Seeing then, that fo many famous Writers make mention

of Gyges Ring, we may well allow it to be a true Historie, and no Fable.

CHAP. XXIIII.

of the properties and vertues, secretly concealed in precious Stones: And whence the vertue proceedeth, which is fayd to be in Magicall Rines.



S touching the before remembred Ring of Gyes, albeit I will not refolutely affirme, that it had (indeede) refused to the refus any fuch propertie (as elfe- infine the

where in other places, according as hath hidden vertue beene observed by experience, and as may of Gyges ring be gathered by the writings of divers credible authors, cocerning precious stones, having wonderfull and vnfpeakeable qualities and vertues;) yet notwithstanding, making no fuch strange reckoning of that ring, Magitians have promifed to execute far greater matters, then the ring of Gyges was able to do. Therefore, if that which is written of Giges be true, I am of the mind, that he did it by the Art of Magick, rather then any other vertue elfe: as all they doe,

1930

formation re

each feucrall

Planet, and

Magicall mat sers perfor-med by Aftro

that compasse all their intentions, by the power of Astrologie, obseruing times, as also the aspects and influences of Starres and Planets, whereunto they afcribe peculiar rule, whereof we purpose to speake fomeváát.

But returning to the vertues and properties of precious flones: It is very certayne, that our grave Ancients did place More vertil≥ reputed tobe fuch stones in their Rings, and wore them in precioss ftones, then vpon their fingers, onely to be fenfible the Andror of their properties. Neuerthelesse, although they should be indued with great vertues, yet I am perswaded, that theyr qualities are not so precious, as proclamation is made of them. Wherefore, not to stand on desciphering their virtues particularly, I will direct my Readers to fuch

> of fome few, as they have beene (in fome measure) related to me.

> Bookes, where their natures are at large

described; contenting my selfe, to speake

Of the Diamond, and his properties

The Amethyft.

The Rubye.

The Carbun-

The Corall.

The Crystall.

The Iacindi.

charmes and enchauntments, naturally strengthening the heart by his vertues: but especially against illusions of phantasies and spirites, which terrifie by sodaine affrightings. Also I reade, that it is exceeding good for women with child, for the conferuation of their fruit. The Amethyst ferueth as a counter-poylon, and likewife is a defensatiue against drunkennesse. The Balais or Ruby, restraineth the inordinate appetites of the flesh, and is a fourraigne help to the health of any body. The Carbuncle is very preservative against pestior fight: and it also is a restriction and defence, from dreaming of offenflue matters. The Iacinth, is cordiall and comfortable to the heart, in like manner as the Corall is; and is also a soueraigne preferuative against the pestilence.

It is credibly reported and written, that wearing an Emeraulde on the finger, it

maketh the partie chaste and continent, as maketh the partie charge and continent; as hating and despising the lusts of the flesh. | called the And some holde it for certaine, that if it stone of Ch. be worne on the finger of a Maide, that fury. hath loft her virgin honour, it will break immediatly. It is also greatly availeable against cuill spirits, against tempests, and against the falling sickenes. The Cornal. line moderateth all wanton appetites, and The Comalglads the heart wonderfully : this stone is line or Cor. the best of all other to seale withall, because waxe will never cleave vnto it. The Topaze doth appeale the passions of the The Topak mind, affwageth the imperuous tempefts of choller and phrenfies, quite ouerthroweth the melancholy humour; and finally, it purifieth the blood. Behold what feuerall vertues remayne in the fore-remembred Stones.

Many other there are, of great and extraordinary vertue, which I let passe the lightlier, referring the Reader to Aristotle (although the banke of Stones, and bearof precious Stones. Plinie also hath written of them in many places; likewife Vincentius, and many other, whom I spare to

But I pray you, let vs bestow a little confideration, on the perspicacitie and ty of men, by ready apprehension of mans spirit, in fin-enchasing ding out the maner and meanes to fet and enchase precious Stones in Rings, there Rings, by to enloy their proprieties and vertues. Nay, there were some that conveighed poilon into their rings, to compaffe their owne speedy death, if any misfortune did throw them into any dangerous disafter: Ringsinelnotwithstanding it ensued from the instial der times. gation of the divell, inducing divers auncient Pagans to despaire, as may be obferued in fundry olde Histories. Especially renowned Hanniball, who viually ca- Thering of ried poylon in his Ring, whereofhe dyed Hanniball in Bythinia, because he would not fall into fon in it. the hands of Titus Flaminius (Ambassador from the Romaines) his capitall enemies

he having flaine (before) the father of Flan difeafes; asto conferne a man, even for the mimus in Italy: to whom Prusias King of Bythinia, would have delivered Hannibal, thereby to winne grace with the Remanes. Plinie fayth, that the great Athenian Oratour Demosthenes, imitated the very fame example. Heliogabalus, a very vile conditioned

Heliogabalus the Romane

Chap. 24.

prince, ordinarily carryed poyfon in his Ring, and to the fame end : albeit as Lampridius fayth, in reporting his life, he deferued not so honourable a death, as impoyfoning. Pliny speaks of this matter, and maner of carrying poyfons in rings, to bee an ordinary observation, and very common in his time.

Moreover, those ancient fore-goers did

fingularly observe the aspects, & influen-

Aspects and influences of the flars enchased in rings, and

greatly tru

rall Magicke

raner,being

pplyed for

the curing of fundry infir-

ces of Starres, as well by forging them into their rings, as also by engracing them in stones, when they were to be enchased, by those meanes to give them vertue : a most wicked, vile & vnworthy action, not meet to be remembred amog Christians. And affuredly there are many Authours. which discourse on those Images & Carracters, made by observation of Astronomicall Constellations, and which made promise of mountaines and meruailes by those meanes. Affirming, that ouer and beside the naturall vertue of the stone; it attained to a new firength and quality, by the Image engrauen thereon, as also by the alliance and propinquity, which it had with the mettall wherein it was placed. And they would maintayne, that those Planets and Starres gaue influence, and communicated their virtue to those rings, forged in that ceremonious manner; euen as to the things subjected to their influences; and so by this means, the naturall vertue of those stones, was fortified by the

In this manner, they baptized (by the name of naturall Magicke) this colligation or connexion, which they performed by hearbs, mettalls, perfumes and carracters, and which they vnited or combined together in one ring, faying : That rings composed in that maner, were soueraigne against the Apoplexie or dead palsie, and anguish in the sides. Some there were made proper to rejoyce the heart, to heale and mittigate the rage and fury of a madman; and also that they served as preserva-

Magicall vertue thus attained vnto.

encreasing of his naturall strength. In briefe, they attributed many admirable proprieties to these Rings, wherein breuitie constraineth me to be filent. Norwithflanding, who focuer defireth to be heere- Helps for in further informd, may make his recourse further into the Mirrour of precious Stones, fet fuch as are downe by Leonardus Camillus, and to Cornelius Agrippa, in his Booke of Secret Philosophie; to Albertus Magnus; and Tal. theus, a Philosopher highly renowned, difcourfing on this Argument; as the like doth Instinatus, Softerinus and diverse o. ther. Neuerthelesse, I doe not great. ly rely on what they have fayd; because I neuer experimented the vertue of Magicall Rings.

True it is, that such as make profession heereof, do say and auouch, That by obferuing the Constellations, requisite as well for forging the mettall, as for engrauing the stone enchased in the Ring, and vnder the Planet named Mars; that ring west doth fortifie the heart, and hath the retentiue vertue, working many other great effects, almost incredible. Likewise, such Rings as are made under the influence of Mercurie, doe adorne the speaking of a man; and maketh him a fingular Orator, as also apt to deale in merchandise. And fo the like may bee fayde of fuch, as are made under the observation of other Pla-

Others engraue in their Rings, the carracters belonging to the fignes of the Zo. Carracters of diacke, and according to their triplicities, the Zodiack faying ; that they of the first triplicitie, as rings, & their namely, Aries, Leo and Sagittarius, doe vertue ferue for colde diseases, for Feauers occafioned by phlegme, and for dead Palfies. Also the caracters appertaining to the fecond and ayrie triplicitie, as Gemini, Libra and Aquarius; are fingular against corruption and putrifaction of the blood. And so doe they say of other triplicities of the fignes, according to their Elementarie qualitie. And indeed, this observation is very auncient, and was practifed a long time amongest the oldest Philosophers, as well Chaldeans, and Aegyptians, as the

Some also affirme, that the seauen fortunate Rings, which King Lurchas gaue to Appolonius Thyanaus (according as Philociues against poyson, and for many other fratus sayth) were of the same temper. 000

Of rings tearnate rings.

lentiall and infecting ayres, and affwaging luxurious or carnall defires, doth greatly comfort and delight the heart. The Corall contayneth in it divers especiall properties; for it stencheth or stayeth bleeding; it is a preferuarine against gastly vifions, and dreadfull dreames; it is likewife very chearefull to the heart and vitall spirits. As concerning the Crystall, it is foueraigne against fuch persons or things, as can enchaunt or charme by their looks

First then, it is saide of the Diamond, that it is very fingular against forcerie,

ing his name, was none of his worke, by plaine appearance;) and to Albertus Magnus, in his Treatife of Minerall matters to the Poet Marbodeus, in his Booke of precious Stones; to Serapion, in his Booke of Simples, to Ifdorus, in his fixt Booke of Etymologies; to Bartholomeus the Englishman, in his Tract of the Properties of natural things; and (about all) to Leenardus Camillus, in his Mitrour or Glaffe

name for breuities fake.

Iarchas was cheefest of the Indian Philosopher

698

A man liued 130.yeares by vertue of a Ring.

Aristophanes in Pluto.

(elfe from his teeth, and from his barking. Erasmus, speaking of these Magicall Rings, hath these words : Some daily wfe to

Erafmus Rotrerodamus. concerning Magical rings

Clausenles de

Difeafes cuted by images pon ftones,

Farther affirming, that the fayd Prince | eafe; but let fuch as pleafe, make their own did daily weare a Ring, answerable to the Planet that day reigning : by the which meanes, he preserved himselfe for an hundred yeares, being alwayes as in the floure of his age. The grand-father to this King Jarchas, lived an hundred and thirty yeres, by vertue of the afore-fayd Rings, beeing continually in manly verdure. And herevpon, the Greekes made great vie of thefe Magicall and sophisticated Rings, as may be seene in the Comedies of Aristophanes, where hee bringeth in a man-Bawde, peremptorily contesting against Difem, who had threatened him, and these are his words: Icare not for all the threatnings that can be veed against me, having this Ring upon my finger, which his Mistresse solde for a Drachma. And thewing the Ring, he proceedeth thus : With this Ring I wil keep my

weare Rings, wherein are certayne caracters engrauen, under observation of constellations and aspects of Starres, and firmely holde. that they lerue for diseases in the sides, and are proper (also) for diverse infirmities. Others, imagining this to be true, do counterfeit these Rings; but all is meerely abuse. For, to oine them fuch vertue; the course of the Starres must be diligently observed, and the constellations when they are made. Notwithstanding, many regardenot the influences of the Starres at all; but onely respect the nature of the stone enchased in the Ring, and the carracter there engrauen. This may bee feene in the Bookes of the wings of Rogerius, and in the writings of Leonardus Camillus, as also of Tetellus and Caclus, in those bookes which are attributed to Salomon for their credite, and which amply doe discourse thereon. For, according as Tetellus fayth, a Iaspar stone enchased in a Ring, having the Image of a Maiden engrauen thereon : preserueth the wearer from ill foirits, and from water. If a Lambe be engraven thereon, the Ring defendeth from the Apoplexie, and cureth also the feauer quartane. A Cornalline also, hauing the shape of a man figured thereon, holding in his hand fome goodly and respectable thing; doth stench the fluxe of blood. In briefe, they ipeake of so manie matters, pleafant to heare, and very hard to be credited: as I can fay nothing in the

experience of them.

But returning againe to Rings & Signets, in Spaine they ferue in all contracts, What vie is instead of full determination : also in matter of marriage, the two parties give rings in Spaine, to ech other, as a fignall and confirmation of the mutuall promise, which they have made one to an other. In like manner, when religious women doe vndertake the veile; in figne of their profession, Rings are given them, as well from the religious house, as from their Parents, in testimony of this true and chafte marriage. There is yet an other poynt, concerning this case in question, and though of small importance, yet it doth divers needfull fervices. Many will change their Rings from one finger to another, for better remembring farily vied to fome occasion to be performed, which ootherwise might remayne forgotten. Wherefore, if we confider well the vie of speciedby rings, they are not fo much to be blamed, men of honor as Pliny and some others doe: For, (in all times) men of vertue and honour haue vfed them. Hereto we may adde, that God created golde and precious stones, for the feruice of man, and to maintaine him in health; enduing them with fuch fundrie proprieties, to the end they might be the more commodious for men. Finally Rings are particularly attributed vnto Bithops, in figne of dignitie.

CHAP. XXV.

Whenc eit came at the first, that the name of Gentleman was given, as wel to Knights, as to the fonnes of Presidents & Councellers. What Armes the ancient Romans carried: And whence came the invention of emblazoning Armes first in Escutchions.



HE custome ordinarily obferued in France, Italy and Cathonet for Spain, is to call him a Gentle-the filters man, that is a Knight extra-Gentlems. Acd of a noble house; especi-

ally fuch a one, as is a Gentleman by name and Arms. Alfo, when a Kiug fends a man of noble house in Embassie, he stileth him fo in his Patent, by these words: I fend you a Gentleman of my house. Kings and Princes, as well in these dayes, as in times past, vsed to haue (ordinarily) in theyr Courts, men of learning, and Knights,

thekings

Gentleman fignifieth No-

Chap.25.

Rings necef-

Bookes of Io-

Budeus his 2. degrees of Romane du-

Gentleman

who were named Gentlemen of the kings house, or Gentlemen servants. And these Gentlemen were discended of great houfes in the Kingdome, as well Schollers as Souldiers, and they remained continually in the Court, attending on the King in times of peace and warre. Wherefore, the name of Gentleman, fignifies afmuch as Noblemman, and extracted of a noble linage. Neuerthelesse, it appeareth not much differing from our purpose, to say fomewhat, concerning whence came the name of Gentleman, or of Gentillitic, together, with the custome of bearing Arms in Escutchions.

As touching the first point, the name

of Gentile came from the Latines, who

called fuch men Gentles or Gentiles, as

Whence the name Gentle or Gentile come at the

were of one and the same race, and of one felfe same name; being at libertie, and of free condition from all Antiquitie: and those houses also were tearmed Auncient Gentiles, euen as now-adayes wee call them houses of Noble race, houses of Gentlemen. Which Cicero well wit-Ckero.in l.Top. neffeth, in his Topickes, speaking thus : IVe call them Gentiles, that are of one name, and who from all times have beene of free condition : fo that no part or parcell of their race. gicalliouenti was ever servant or save, and much leste, degraded from honour, and of the Romaine Burgelbip. And Bætius also savth in his Batius in Topic Topickes, We call ancient Gentiles, all such as are issued of one ancient house and race, franke and free : as were the Scipioes , the family of Brutus of other noble houses of Rome. Cicero likewise taketh this name of Gentile,

Mad Alla ver For one that is of our race, and that beareth the same name and Armes as we doe. The learned Budens, speaking of de-

uoires or duties of parentage, observed among the Romaines, fayth: They were three in number : Duetie of consanguinitie; Dutie of bloud and linage in direct line: And duety of Gentilitie, as much to fay, as when a man is discended of the same name & Armes. The title then of Gentle or Gentility, was and should be attributed onely to Noble houses. And therefore the name of Gentleman among the Romaines, valued as much as a Nobleman among the Castilians and French. And affuredly, the Romaine Gentlemen did (ordinarily) shew the Images and Deuices of their predeceffors, that had illustrated their memorie by their worthy deedes: and this reprefentation of Nobility, was highly effecmed among the Romaines, cuen as yet to Ancient arms this day, are ancient Armes, and Penons Standards and Standards, belonging to the prede-belonging to cessours of Gentlemen, who would not forget any thing of Antiquitie (concerning their linage) in furreral orations, made at the obsequies of their parents, thereby to have the man accounted to much the

In this respect Cicero reprooued Pife, in the change and pleading he made against him, faying; The honours and effates which thou halt obtayned, were given thee, onely for respect of the (moakie images of thy predeces-(ours, of whom thou car rieft the colour onely; (o that thou canst not be denied to be a Gentle- cicero in Orat. man. And in another place, speaking of lib.3. himselfe, he confesseth: To have no Images of his race; for by his excellent knowledge, admirable wifedome and highly esteemed eloquence, be so much ennobled himselfe; that he came to be Confull of Rome, enjoying other degrees and prerogatives, even as if hee had beene a Gentleman of race, and iffued from the house of a Senatour. Which himselfe alfo further confesseth in his last pleading against Verres, faying : Thou beeing great cicere in De-Surveyour of Rome, for some especiall serui- clanat cont. ces done by thee to the Common-wealth , hast Verres. a place appoynted for thine Image, and enioyest the priviledges of a Gentleman.

I reade, that the Romaines were verie Images made careful of those images, which were called of waxe, and Stemmates: for commonly they were made crowned with of waxe, and placed ouer the portalles of Flowers. their houses; or else prouidently kept in aptly contriued boxes, and so preserved in places appointed for theyr standing, as witnesseth Iunenal, Martial, Seneca, Plinie. and many more.

And when there was question of some publique ceremony or of funerall pompe, the people of the houses would make a goodly shew of the Images belonging to their Auncestours, with their names fixed vpon them, according as Plinie repor- Plininlib, e.s. teth. He also declareth in his ninth booke and fift chapter, that the Romaines would place before their houses, the Ensignes, Penons and other Coates of Armes and spoyles, which they had wonne from their enemies in war, and remained there to perpetuitie : fo that if the house were folde, it was not lawfull for the buyer to take them away, because they served for 000 2

Enfignes and Romans houThe original

of bearing

Armes in an

Eschutchian.

1 Macchab. 13

27,18.19.

Ar nes in vie

long before the Romaines

Or. t.Octa.Im-

The Troyans

Armesypon

new Padua.

Mc [als in lib.

vbi ∫ûpra.

time.

7. Booke

Of the Septuagint.

an honour and preheminence vnto their, who were of the third estate or degree a-

From hence came the custome of bearing Armes in a Escutchian, as now-adaies Gentlemen vie to do. Notwithstanding, received their originall from those devices, which were on the Banners and Enfignes, as well of the Romaines, as other strange Nations, and carried by them in warre. As at this very day, the Emperors beare an Eagle in their Armes; because Iulius Casar, the first Emperour of Rome, The Romane carried an Eagle in his Enfignes. As Engle borne by Emperors. much may be faid cocerning the Flowers de Luces, which the Kings of France carrie, and of diuers other.

Now, concerning mine owne opinion, I finde, that long time before the Romains were, the Armes of Gentlemen were in vie. For, it is faid, in the first Booke of the Macchabees, that Simon, Captaine generall of the Iews armie, made a very fumptuous sepulcher for his father, mother and brethren, which was enriched with Pyramids and Pillars, whereon was engrauen Ships, in maner of a Deuice; and thereon were fixed coats of Armes, wherewith he had vanquished his brethren . Messala Coruinus, in the Oration which he made. to honour the linage of the Emperour O-Etanius (although the Oration descrued not the title of Meffala, alleadging Virgil, vpon that he wrote; affirming Antenor the Troian, to be the founder of Padua) fayth; The Troians Armes were placed by Antener, on the Temple of new Padua; and that the emblazon of the Armes, was a Swine in a field golde. So that, if Messala do speake truely, the vse of Armes is very auncient. Heereupon I conceine, that the emblazons of Gentlemen, took name of Armes or Armories, because they were continually engrauen neare to their Armes. For, as Meffala faith; Our Auncients, after they had obtained any victorie, ordinarily placed in their Temples, the Armes and Ensignes, wherewith they wonne the victorie from the

Wherefore we may well fay, that the name of Gentleman, and the manner of bearing Armes in Escutchions, is no moderne matter, but very auncient; and that the name of Gentle or Gentile, came from those ordained and appoynted for very ancient horssemen in the Romaine Cauallerie:

mongst the common people. And they that wore the long robe or Gowne, were the Order of Senators, and their sonnes aunciently called Patricians; asmuch to it seemes that the emblazoning of Armes, fay, as iffued from fathers. For, in the time of Romulus, according as Titus Liuius aof Romutus, according as 1 um 1 um a- Senators Fa. uoucheth: The Senatours were called Father, & there, & there thers, and their sonnes Patricians, and this fonnes Padegree was the most noble and chiefest in tricians. Rome. Other Gentlemen, that were not of this rancke, were stilled Knights: from whence infued, that Gentlemen in Spaine are called Cheualiers. The like wee fay of the long gowned men, who commaund ouer the people, as Senatours; and yet notwithstanding, they come after the other. Briefly, the name of Knight is come to fuch credite, as the very greatest doe Knight holde themselues honoured to bee called Knights: albeit the name of Knight was but the proper title of a Souldier of the ordnances, or of the light horse.

CHAP. XXVI.

¶ Of the Septuagint , or Seauentie Translatours of the olde Testament, out of Hebrue into Greeke : At what time it was done, and for what occasion.

Veryman is very briefe, concerning the traduction of the Seauentie perfors, who translated the Olde Testament out of Hebrew into ment out of Hebrew into

Greek; but yet very few do know, whence Septuagint, it came, and wherefore that translation was so appointed: wherein affuredly, many Diuines, in their publique preaching, haue declared ouer-much floath & negligence. First then it is to be observed, that this Translation of the Seauentie men, hath beene only in the Church holily and religiously respected : but in the time of Pope Damasus, Saint Hierome converted The credite's it into Latine. And to speak seriously, the authority of traduction of the Septuagint hath beene sprua-offuch authoritie, that it is alleadged for tion. diuine; for so it appeareth by our blessed Saujour and his Apostles, in often alledging Scriptures, according to the faide Translation.

And because the historie of that Tran- | a great part of Europe and Affrica : he died flation is very worthy and famous, I will fer downe that which is fayd by Saint Augustine, in his Booke of the Citic of God, Is sephies the lew, Eusebius, Irenaus, Iustinus, Ruffinus, and many other.

Here is to be noted, that the five books of Moles, the Prophets, and other Histor ries of the holy Bible, were first of al written in the Hebrew tongue, which was the first vsuall tongue among men; before the confusion of Tongues, which happened at the building of the Tower of Babylon. In that tongue and language God spake first to his Prophets; as the like our bleffed Lord and Saujour did, when he was conuerfant among men. This language then being particular to the Iewes, and the mysteries and prophecies (as also the coming of Christ)being concealed therein: it was very requisite, that such mysteries should bee written in a tong more common then the Hebrue: as that was then among the Greekes, who were fole Governours of the wide Vniuerse, by the fresh and recent victories of Alexander the Great. So that by the frequentation and traffique of men, the Greeke tongue had courfe ge. nerally, and was esteemed the most common of all other Languages whatfor-

To the end then, that the mysteries of facred Scripture, might bee understood of enery one . before the comming of Ic. fus Christ; it was requisite of necessitie. that the Scriptures should be traduced into a common and vulgar tongue; for feare left the Iewes at the Messas his coming thould suppresse them or elfe fallifie them (for that race of people was of bolde and most wicked inclination) because it might not be fayd, that the Christians had added or diminished any thing from the Scriptures, according to their owne humour and phantalie. And therefore, about two hundred and feauentie yeares before the Incarnation of Jesus Christ, it pleased the goodnesse of Almightie God, to in-Spire Ptolomie Philadelphus King of Egypt, to procure the translation of the holie Bible.But feeing we are fallen into discourse of that Prince; we will reach into his Historie somewhat higher.

After that Alexander the great had fubdued Asia (which he performed in small compasse of time) and that he had ranged

without any lawfull heire, that might fucceede him in such great Empires . He being dead, the Princes and Captains of his Court, who were all most valiant and famousmen: laboured by force of Armes to possesse themselves of what they posfibly could: So that the kingdomes appertaming to Alexander onely, became divided into many parts: for Antigonus possesfed himfelfe of Afia; Selenchus of Chaldea, Alexanders and of many other Prouinces. By the Kingdome di same meanes also Ptolomie, the sonne of Lagus made himfelfking of Egypt, of Phameia, of Cyprus, and diverse other Countries, among which Iudea then was one. Being Lord of Judea, he made there many great booties, leading away store of lewes captines into Egypt, where hee had ordained the chiefe feate of his Kingdome. So that he was the first King of Egypt, that The first Procalled himselfe Ptolomie : which name re- Egypt, after mayned hereditary to the fucceffours in the fayd Kingdome; for, before that Cambyfes, sonne to Cyrus, King of Persia, had conquered Egypt, all the Egyptian Kings

called themselves Pharaohs. But returning againe to our Ptolomie, after he had reigned a long time, he dyed, and then succeeded him Ptolomie Philadelphus, who likewife reigned peaceably in Egypt.

This Prince gaue leave; and fer at libertie all the lewes , which his father led prisoners into Egypt. And then it came to passe, according to the pleasure of Al. mightie GOD, that this King credted a goodly Librarie, in Alexandria the gapitall Cittie of Egypt, by the meanes of Demetrius Phalareus the Athenian; a man much renowned for his knowledge ; and to whome hee gaue full power and com- Scholler to mission. So that, by the diligence of Phalarens, hee compassed the finishing of the fairest and most compleate Librarie, that euer was feene in the world, as well for number of Bookes, as the qualitie of Authours, and divertitie of disciplines.

This King, understanding that the Books of the Iewes, contained admirable and vnexpressable mysteries, resolued to haue them reduced into the Greeke language. And to effect this his purpose, he dispatched an Embassie to Eleazar, Prince Ambassage to of the Iewish Synagogue, with great pre- Eleazar the fents; intreating him, in memory of fauors \lew.

000 1 done by

eg in Cinit.

Chap.26.

The hebrew tongue the

God spake to his Prophets in the hebrew

The Greeke med the mo

The necessity

The death o

Noble Philofopher and Oratour, lent verrues governed the Athenians

ten yeares.

Gentleman,&

And

Chap.26.

692

by him to those of his Nation, and for the good neighbourhood betweene them, to fend him a Bible in Hebrue, as also such lerned and skilfull men, as could translate it into the Greeke tongue. Infephus and Eu-Cebius have fet downe the forme of the Letter, which was as followeth:

The Tenour of the Letter. fent by King Ptolomy Phi-

ladelphus, to Eleazar the High-Prieft.

Ptolomy a King, to the High-Priest Eleazar, health. JO man can be ignorant, that manie

Iewes have dwelt in this kingdome of

Egypt, being brought thither prisoners by

The Icwes were divers times broght as cantilles in to Egypt, by conquefts ouer them.

King Ptolomy vied great kindnelle and humanity to the lewes.

He defireth

the full furn

fhing of his goodly Ly-

the Perfians, at fuch time as they fubiugated Iudea. And againe, when the late deceatled king my father brought divers hither alfo, to whom (neuertheleffe) my faid Lord & Father trufted fo much, that they did him feruice in his warres : yea, he planted them in strong forts, by way of Garrifons, to keep the Egiptians in awe & feare. As for my selfe, from such time as I came to the Crowne I have alwaies yied humanity towards your Nation, and have fent home more then 100000 that were detained here as flaues, paying their ranfome & charges to them that held them prisoners. Such as defird to follow the wars, to them I haue giuen wages, euery one answerable to his worth and merit. Many of them I have lodged in mine owne house ordinarily, as hoping by this means, to do fomewhat acceptable to God, who delivered this Kingdome into my hands.

And the better to declare the affection I beare in doing all pleafures that I can to you, and all the rest of your nation, aswell for the time present as to come: I have determined, to cause your Bookes in the Hebrew language, to be translated into the Greek tong, because I would not have my newly crected Library, to remaine vnfurnisht any way. And therefore you shall do me a great fauor, to chuse sixe auncient men out of each Tribe, that are expert in your Lawe, and well versed in the Greeke for this intended translation. Not doubting, but that it will redound to our great honour, and ample contentment of mind. For this purpose, I have sent vntoyou Andress and Aristess, who more at large will informe you of mine intention : to them great hoogy haue I delinerd large fummes of gold and worth filuer, to fulfill the Sacrifices as I have appoynted them, defiring you to fend mee by them, fuch as may further this negotiation. Affuring you, that you cannot doe me a greater pleasure, nor more, to maintaine the friendship begun betweeneys:

if (as I intreat you) this may be done with

Prolomie.

some expedition.

After that the High-Priest Eleazar had received the Kings Letters, and understood the further trust referred to the Am- Eleazar en bassadors; he entertained them very honorably, receiving (with chearefull looks) very bonce the golde and filuer fent by king Ptolomie, rably. which (according to Josephus) was a mightie quantitie. And having affembled the principall men of the twelve Tribes of I/rael, hee acquainted them with the Kings intention, and to what end he had fent the Ambassadors. Wherein, to fatisfie his defire, they elected out of each Tribe fixe aged men, well experimented in the Lawe, and expert in the Greek language. For the Iewes had a custome to send their people into Asia, to learne the Greek and Latine frequenting tongues, as also the Artes and Sciences Asia, learned comprised vnder those languages, euen and Latine as yet to this day they observe the same; Languages, fo that all the men made choice of, were seuenty two. After they were thus chofen, they were fent with the Ambassadors to King Ptolomie, and the Bookes of the Old Testament with them, written (as Jofephus fayth) in most places all in golden Letters, and wpon fuch parchment, the most ingeniously made that euer was feene. Moreouer, he fent divers great gifts to the faid Prince, returning him answere in maner following.

The Answere of the High-Priest Eleazar, to great king

> Eleazar, to his friend King Ptolomie health.

T Am very glad of your prefent welfare, Priefts vied and the health of Queene Arfinoe your to write very wife, with the young Lords your Sonnes, familish of gardinary or any thing you can with to your con-with thing the tentment: certifying you likewife of my they were inflant.

instant healthfull condition. By the Mif- they setled themselues to the Bibles transfine you fent voto mee, I voderstand the faire love and affection, which you beare to our Nation, and have caused your let-

A confession of the Lewes mablenes to requite so

ters to bee publikely read before all the people, and to let them fully understand, what holy denotion you declare towards God; I have exposed to open view, the twenty Vossels of gold, and thirty of filuer, together with fifty Cups, and a Table of filuer for the facrifices, befide forty Talents of gold, and as many of filuer, fent by you to furnish the Ornaments of our Temple. All which I have received from the hands of the Noble Lords Andress and Aristeus, your faithfull Counfellors and Ambaffadors, who have amply enstructed vs in the cause by you re-

by them, to accomplish your good plea-And because the extraordinary great fauours which you have done to them of our Nation, are such, as it is impossible for vs to vie or return any condigne requital: wee must make our recourse to folemne prayers and facrifices, for the profperity of you, of your Queene, and of the Noble Lords your formes. In which holy action, all our people very voluntarily defire to imploy their vtmost paines, in craning of God, to further and finish your defires, as lation was perfected. Nay more, he affirmay best stand with the conservation of meth to have feene the ruines and olde

your Estate, and maintainance of your

Kingdome in glory and honour.

quired. And therefore we have fent them

backe againe vnto yee, offering our felues

Now concerning the Translation of the Bookes of our Law, by you fo greatly and earneftly defired; we have elected fix Auncients out of our feuerall Tribes, who we fend vnto you with the Bookes of our Bible. But when the Translation shall be perfected; according to the office of a just and louing king, wee defire that they may be fent back againe to their natiue Country.

Eleazar, and the people of the Iewes,

. 220 When King Ptolomy had receyued the Letters of Elazar, with the Books of the Bible, and fuch Presents as were sent by Eleazar; he most royally welcommed the feuenty two aged men, and (as Iofephus faith) loyed not a little for their arriwall. Their lodgings being prepared, & all things necessary for their imployment,

lation: wherein happened an admirable and miraculous case; for the seuenty two men being placed feparately, according to the kings Commission, without any meanes or power of conferring one with

another: after they had thus dividedly finished their Translation, they all appeared before the King with their feuerall labours, and were found therein all so coforme and agreeing, that one man had not a fillable more then another; which

doubtleffe could not bee done, without the power and especiall grace of the holy Ghoft, according to the faying of S. A. gustine, Ireneus and Tertullian; who auou

Ang.in Civit. cheth in his time, to have seene at Alexirencus cont. andria in Egipt, the written Bookes of the Tertud.cont. feuenty two Translators, vnder their own hands, which were in Hebrew and in Grecke.

As much is faid and maintained by Infinus the Philosopher, in the book of Adtustin.in Aduer

uertisements, which he wrote to the Gentiles and Pagans, where he speaketh thus. King Ptolomy caused to bee builded without the Citty of Alexandria, seventy two Halles, to lodge therein separately, the seventy two Translators, and there provided for them all things necessary, in most honourable manner. In which places the Translators remained without feeing one another; untill the trans-

wals of those buildings, which were eftee med as reliques and facred things. And although S. Hierome and Ruffinus do difagree concerning the number of those The diffrence Halles or Chambers: yet notwithstanding, that is no matter of any moment, co- about the fidering (according to S. Argustine, and buildings. many other Authors) each Translatour wrote his bookes alone by himfelfe, not any way conferring one with another, and yet neuerthelesse, all the Translations

were found conformable. And affuredly, when I confider aduifedly on this mystery, I hold it for a mighty miracle, that they should agree in such ble conformi a conformity of fille, order and method, reducing matter fo long and diuers, although they had beene admitted altogelog labour. ther, and had begun the worke with their owne agreement, because we see it a matter of no meane moment, to finde two me agreeing voon one and the fame point,

amazed at the facred Scrip-

> ently seene, came from God; and no Lawyer ever durst be so bold, to meddle withit vnreverently, or mifufe any text therein contained. Theopompus was smitten with the hand of heaven with an extraordinary perturbation in his senses, and mighty paine at his hart: because he medled with the holy Histories of

to him againe.

answered.

of the Iewes ? Whereto Demetrius thus

the Hebrues among his owne, beautifying the

with borrowed words, and rhetoricall phra-

fes. But upon bis true repentance and humi-

I remember also to have read, that Theo-

dorus a Tragicall Poet, lost his fight fodainly

argument in his Tragedy : and yet upon his

unfeigned repentance, his fight was restored

course of Demetrius, placed the translated

Bible in his Library, and having thanke-

fully respected the ancient Iews, he licen-

fed their departure, giving to each man

fumptuous gifts; thanking likewife (by his

Letters) the Prince Eleazar, to whom he

fent Kingly prefents. Thus you fee, how

the translation of the Septuagint was per-

formed, they being men (as S. Augustine

and Saint Hierom (aide) that then had the

fpirit of Prophesic: which appeared plain-

ly, in that our bleffed Lord and his Euan-

gelists, alledged Scriptures according to

their translation. And if perhappes any

thing is found in the Hebrew Bible, which

King Ptolomy wondering at this dif-

Sir, this Law, as your selfe have suffici-

liation to God, committing him felfe wholly to his mercy, it was revealed to him in his fleep: Gods facted word hath no that this disaster happened to him, because he durst be fo bolde, to embellish and enrich the need of mens vaine adorfincerity of holy Scripsure, with surious and ning. adorning words : and thereby to impart them to Pagan and Infidell Nations.

prophaning

Scriptures.

for taking a place of Scripture to maintaine an gicall Post,

when they are to intermeddle with one is not in the translatio of the Septuagint, argument together. But, after the translawee may well fay, that the holye Ghost tion was finished, the Icwes which dwelt would not reueale it by their means. And contrarywife, if something beein their in Egypt, and were very learnedly skilfull in their Law, commended these Sacred translation & is not in the Hebrue text: writings to the King, wherewith hee was we must verily beleeue, that the blessed Spirite reuealed the paffage by their most highly pleased. And according as 10meanes. For the felfesame Spirit that di- One and the (ephus and Eulebius do maintaine, King Ptolomy, beeing amazed at those Scriprected the Prophets, when they fet down tures, and the holy mysteries in them their Prophesies in writing, gouerned the Prophes the featienty two Translatours in tradu- and Septia. comprized, demanded of Demetrius Phalarem, who had the charge of his Library, cing the holy Bible; fo faith S. Augustine, how it hapned, that Lycurg w., Solon, and concerning the version of the Old Testaother Law-makers, were filent in this law ment.

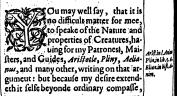
This was the first, before the comming of Iclus Christ; for, after our Sauiours Passion, Aquila the Iew wrote another. Aquila the Two other translations were afterwardes fecond tranperformed, but by whom it was not kno- flation. wen : notwithstanding, they came to the hands of Saint Hierom, as Enfebius ma- Rulib in Hid. keth mention in the fixt booke of his Ec. Beclef lib. 6. clesiasticall history. By these translations the Bible was reduced out of Greeke into Latine : but Saint Hierom did his out of Hebrew into Latine, without staying on the Septuagints labour, nor the other Grecke translations . Beside Psalmes and other thinges are fung and fayde in the Church, whereof no disputation neede to

CHAP. XXVII.

be made, whether they were of S. Hieroms

writing or no.

■ Of the admirable vertues and proprieties. which God and Nature hath given water the Ant, Emmet, or Piffe-mire: And what worthy examples have from it bin derined.



Chap.27.

Of the Ant or Pisse-mire.

few people; I purpose to say something of the Ant, Emmot, or Piffe-mire, albeit may thereby take occasion to condemne my discourse. Neuerthelesse, let their humors ferue them howfocuer, I cannot exclude this creature out of our rich & spacious Forrest: for there is not any garden how warily or closely soener it bee kept; but the Ant will make his entrance, euen in despight of the Master and Owner. And how little in our judgement and substace of the creature, it feemeth to vs; yet many renowned Authors haue written won-

Very true it is, that Pliny fayeth; This

creature is unprofitable, and of no worth at

all, but onely for it felie: when contrariwife,

the Bee, as little as is is , doeth (nevertheleffe)

giue a pleasing taste to our food, by the sweet

Tauour of his hony, whereas the Ant doeth

gnaw and eate them. But yet in another

place, he speaketh wonders of the Ant,&

extolleth it extraordinarily. For, concer-

ning the blamefull imputation hee impo-

der things, in such kinde as duly apperrai-

neth to them, we should finde more pro-

fit from the Ant, then from the Bee. For

the Ant ferueth vs as an example of indu-

ftry, prouidence and friendship, and of

der what paine and folicitude the taketh,

and to learne discipline and direction of

derfull things thereof.

Planial S.c. 2. The Ant

The Ant will

haue roome

in all mens

feth on this little creature, it proceedeth from a certaine kinde of Couctoufneffe, whereunto man is so inclined for his own particular profit, that he would derive benefit from all creatures . how finall focuer neffe of men they be, being greatly offended, that our 10 gather benefite from all Ant should prouide it selfe of one poore graine of Corne. But if we would confi-

many other vertues beside, related at Prou. 6, 6, 7, 8. large by Salomon in his Prouerbes, who fendeth the fluggard to the Ant, to confi-

> her. For, having neither guide or Captaine, or any to command and direct her : Thee prepareth her food in the Summer for Winter. From hence it enfued, that Saint Am-

brofe (speaking of this filly little creature) vieth these words: The deffeignes and enterdotrof in Ho. prifes of the Ant, being justly confidered, do mil. timis feet. farre exceede her power and strength. And although she have none to incite her to labor: yet notwithstanding, by a vertaine kind of dominion or authority, she provideth for afterclaps and future necessities . Behold what

coueting things curious, and knowne to | Saint Ambrose hath saide, who speaketh much more amply concerning the pro prieties of this little Ant; whereon Cicero in regard of the creatures smalnesse, some likewise discoursing, sayeth: That the Ants ciecro in Tus-Commonwealth is to be aduited to every City.

For not onely they have understanding like other Animalles : but also they have fense, reason, and memory.

Pliny, Aristotle, and Elianus, are veric Pliny, Aristotle, stayed in judgement, for their confideration of the Ant, and not without great reason: for in duly obseruing her forme, her dreadfull afpect, her hardnesse, her liuely colour, and her piercing fnowte; there is not any Lion fo fierce as this creature, were it but as great as it is little: it is

fo strong, bold, and dreadfull. First, there is not any animall, that can

carry the weight of himfelfe : but the Ant Nobeastable carrieth and draweth ten times a heavier tobeare to load then it felfe, fo that if this smal creatithen as the: ture were as great as a horse, it would ea- Antfily beare the burthen of foure Waggons. Other beafts can hardly defend thefelues against her affaults; for, although fliec is fo finall a worme, yet notwithitanding, her teeth are fo ftrong, as the very hardeft graine of Corne is not able to withstande them. Nay, the wil carry hard ftones in her teeth, and howfoeuer the fafteneth voon them, thee will fquash and bruife them,

holding them fo forcibly: that no pincers her teeth, are able to open her mouth. And so opinitiue is the is of her power, as theewill

rather fuffer her felfe to be rent in pecces, then to forfake whatfoeuer fhee holdeth: which strength would be farre greater, if her body were equivalent thereto. But leauing her strength (whereof fo

small account is made, in regard of her litlenesse) let vs somewhat consider the naturall inftinct, together with the vertue & wisedome abiding in her. For nature (thoroughout the whole wide world) hath not are in the Aut produced any other creature, making by naturall infting, more demonstration of vertue, then the Ant: nor fuch profession of amity, induftry, prouidence, and divers other fingular vertues, as wee shall have occasion to speake of heereafter, in theyr apre pla-

In the prime place. Ants have the form of a Commonwealth among themselues, according as Pliny faith; for they have neither King, Lord, nor any Commander; as much is affirmed by Aristotle and Salo-

neuer any Warre or citill contention among them. Likewife they are neuer feen to fight or kill one another, 'as men doe: but, as hath bene observed, all labour for any thing for private vie, as other Creatures do, that fight for feeding of theyr

their prouision generally for all together;

How they sup conducting home their store, and make ply one anoneffe in liking their prouifio.

Ante: haue

ner altoge-

his fellowe gives his supply, and in such naturall understanding, to dry and refresh heavy to bee carried away with their prouision, they take so much thereof asis needfull, and easie to bee trained along, going on together fo chearfull and dexterioufly, that they may well be faid, to bee creatures fit and apt for portage. Other creatures have their neftes and retreats a their dwelling part by themselues, so that (oftentimes) in frendly ma they necessarily war against them of their kinde, for their nests and lodgings: wherany divided chambers or Parlors for particular persons: by which meanes, they another, therein giuing vs a familiar ex-

> Moreover, the industry which they declare in their Cauc or roome, is a matter maruellous; because if it bee possible for them, they will alwayes make their dwelling nere to a riner, or fome little running brooke, and plant the earth which they bring to the mouth of their caue to ferue as a rampier against rough winter, as fearing least water should winne entrance: & within the entry, they winde and turned diners wayes, to the end, that their maine abiding should not easily be found, & the

> ample, to vie the like lociable vertue as

Beside, they have three roomes or sta-Creatures. In the third stage they make ding or diforder. their Garner, wherein they bestow theyr

mon: And yet their Commonwealth is so food and prouision, according as Aristowell policied and ordered, as they have the affirmeth. Vling their flore so measurrably, as they never have any want of victuals. And because the most part of their purueyance is Corn to preferue it in fuch fort, that moysture may not make it the Weale-publike, without laying afide | sprout; they bite and nibble the Graine within the midft, where the forouting vffueth foorth; a thing most admirable and miraculous in Nature, notwithstanding, Ants helpe and affift one another, in | Pliny, Alianu, and many other good au- A miraculoui thors, do anouch it to be certaine & true. | industry inthe If they finde their Corne to bee wette and feruing her and if any one be ouer-loaden or wearie, moissined with winter raines, they have a provision, decent manner, as one is no hinderance to it agains in the Sunne, to preferue it from another. And if there be any thing ouer | putrifying : so that the little poote Ant is neuer idle either day or night, for then the vieth the helpe of the Moone, when the Sunne-shine is denied her, which ensueth from incomparable prudence.

Such as have written on this argument, and daily experience confirmes the same, that the Ants are well inured to thefe la- endeuour fo bors; for they dayly rome abroade from feeth supply their Caues, to bring home fresh and new nourishment. And after that such nouell as the like filly Ants haue but one roome prouisions is brought in, whether theyr or receipt for them all in general, without | knowledge confifteth in the fmelling it, or by a naturall instinct given from God, enstructing how to order and vse it, all come maintaine loue and friendship one with forth together, to refresh both their olde and new prouision, and following theyr guides in great crowds, conney their store in all by one way, without the least injury one to another: because in doing a kinde of couttesie, they make way for each o- in the portige thers free paffage, and sometimes walk on of their proin couples together.

Now here is a further matter to be obferued, what order they keepe, when they come to the place, where they do charge themselves with their provision. For some get the Corne out of the straw; Others, carry it to the Caue, at the entrance wher- Themaner of of, there stand divers other readie to re- carrying their criue it, and so conuey it into the garner, the garner, & mouth or doore is very narrow, in regard of the spacious field within.

euery one doing his duty according vnto in what must his office and degree. And when they call a chelping are helping ry a Peafe, a Chiche, or some other grain, one to allo ges within their Caue; one whereof is for more weighty then a graine of Wheate; ther. the males, the second for the Females, three or soure undertake the burthen, or where they produce their yong ones, for fo many as the case requireth, pacing on there are male and female of these small very gently together, without any crow-

And if by chance they come vnto any

Arift in Lib. de

ties in the Ant are anouched

Thefe admi-

The Ant de-

wout and reli-

Many melefic

that maketh

prouision for

history recorded by Clean thes and Elia-

place, irkesome or offensine to their pasfage, the order is admirable which they obserue therein. For, some raise up the loade aloft, and others labour to thrust it forward, by stepping vnder to ease theyr fellowes: and if any meete them accidentally by the way, they all lay helpe to get home the burthen. And being come vnto the Caues entrance, if the graine be grearer then the mouth thereof will admitte: they cut it in quarters, and fo carry it into the Granary. In the while of this their bufie toile, others are not negligent, in bringing home purneyance beside: so that wee may fay (in conclusion of this point) all generally labour for the Weale pub-

lique.

Chap.27.

After their prouision is thus made, and their Garner well stored for the season, they fortifie and fast close vp the Caue, against the injurie of winters stormes and raine: norithing themselves all the while, with their plenty formerly brought in . W hich naturall instinct is denied vnto all other Animals, man onely excepted: and yet there are many men, scarfely prouided for a morrowes necessity. Moreouer, that the Ant maketh a double prouision for her age, is very confiderable; for, according as Virgil faith : She provideth for her agedyeeres, which ensueth to her by instinct of Nature, preparing still (euery yeare) for a following Winter, implying the Winter of

This creature, hath also a naturall inclination, quite contrary to all brutish behaujour. For the feemeth to have fome knowledge of God, and a kinde of religious vnderstanding. For as Pliny and Ælian do both affirme, they obserue Religiously certaine festinal daies, as all the newe Moones; a matter fomewhat hard to bee credited, and yet possible neuerthelesse. The same authors say also, that they have a naturall kind of charitie amongst them; The Ant chabecause they will bury their dead, euen in meere compassion.

> Cleanthes reporteth an admirable history, which by Aelian is maintained to bee true. Cleanthes beeing a learned Philosopher, and fitting one day by an Ant hillocke, to confider their naturall disposition : he espied two Ants bearing a thirde Antthat was dead, and comming neere to the Caues entrance, which belonged

to the other dead; they fet downe theyr

load, and two other Ants came out of the Caue to them, feeming to confer & ralke together by outward action. The last two returned into the caue againe, & brought foorth a little Worme betweene them. which the other received of them, as in payment for their paines, and returned backe, leaving the dead Ants bodie, that they of the Caue might give it buriall the which they presently did, so soone as the

pers, laborious, prouident, and charita-

ble; aptly therein enstructing the spirit &

understanding of men; not reputing the

Ant to bee so vnbeneficiall, as Plinie did.

thogh it produce no hony or other food.

Yet it is greatly availeable for the health

ofman, especially her Egges, which (as

thes in the face : and Ants beeing eaten,

dooth cure all diseases incident vnto the

Neuerthelesse, because this poore A-

nimall feeds on graine, herbes, and fruits

of trees, onely to conferue her felfe in her

a little vnflaked Lime, killeth Ants. He

fayth moreouer, that damming vppe the

mouth of their Caue with Sea-mud and

withstanding, there is not any thing more

proper to kil Ants, then the Hearb called

Heliotropium. And beside, Auicenne studied

in a whole Chapter how to be thedeath

of this poore Creature, taking as much

paines therein, as if it had beene to expel

other were departed.

Vndoubtedly, it is a matter maruellous, What an exthat thefe creatures, being fo final, as fom ample the of them can scarfely be seene, should thus in many matferue as an example to me, to fludy peace ters. and concord, and to be good house-kee-

Pliny faith) being incorporated with the milke of a Bitch, healeth all paine and anguish in the ears. If they be beaten in pour helpefull for der, they make an Vnguent, which mixed paines in the with falt, taketh away all pimples and pu-

being, and to perpetuate her generation. whereby some damage may redounde to the fields: reuengefull man, finding himfelfe offended at fo little harme, hath intiented a thousand wayes to worke her onely to dedeath. For (as Pliny fayth) the power of froy it. Origan, incorporated with fulphure, and

Meanes wher-Ashes, they can neuer get forth. Not- by to kill beds of Ants.

the plague, or the featier quartane. I reade of certaine Ants in the Region of the Dardas, who doe inhabite the East Indiaes, toward the North seashores, Wolues, that which are as groffe and great as Wolues, caft vp Golde

Antsin India, as big as our

Their caue is nere to fome

they do.

Brook or Ri

The Tree of

dife, prefer-uing from

Life lasteth

longer or les

and the people fearé them as they do Lyons, according to the testimony of divers Authors. And some say, that in digging and turning up the earth, they throwe up great quantities of gold; which the country people go to gather, when these dreadfull Ants are retired; which they dare not do, if they but fent them in the fields. For fontetimes, these Antes having winded those seekers for Gold, rush foorth vpon them, and kill as many as they can meete withall.

Riding on light Camels, to escape fro

And they have no other means to feek for gold with fafety, but by comming thither mounted uppon light Camels, for their better expedition in flight. And if (by mischance) these Ants do winde those Gold-finders: they have some peece of flesh hanging about them, which sodainly they let fall, and so escape away. Finally, it feemeth a thing monstrous, that our Ants thould be charged with wings : Neuerthelesse, there is a common Prouerbe, saying: To the damme of the Ant, wings are proper. Whereby it appeareth, that some further meaning is hid therein: because fuch creatures as haue Wings, the winds will carrie them whether they pleafe.

CHAP. XXVIII.

From whence it proceedeth, that some men line long, and others farre leffer wohile. And what complexion is the best for liuing long. Also how we are to understand the place, where it is faid, that The dayes of a man are numbred.



HE Apostle S. Paul sayeth, That all men are subject once to dye, and therein all men are equall and alike. Notwithstanding, there is a dif-

ference in the tearmes of life; because som liue long, and other leffe space. Nevertheleffe (as Iob faith) The time of our life is compassed, and no man can passe the boundes which God hath limited and determined to our life. These things then standing thus (as in truth they do) it is not ill or amiffe, to understand that which causeth the life another swhat complexion is most proper for long life: and laftly, how it ought to be understood, when it is faid, that our dayes are counted and determined, being no way able to passe on further which are points sufficiently obscure, and comprehended by few people.

To vnderstand therefore the cause of The hermon long life, it behooueth vs to presuppose of the source in the first place, that the life of man, and qualities go maintenance of this his humane bodie, uernethebo confifteth in the concord and hermony of the foure Elementary qualities whereof it is composed, as namely heate, colde, movsture, and drinesse. But expressely in the proportionable hermony of heate and moisture, which Aristotle well declareth: who onely maketh mention of the conuenicncy of these two qualities, for the support and continuance of man. In like maner, we perceive by experience, that man hath little care of his owne failing, fo long as he keepeth his naturall heate: for that heate is the principall instrument, to conferue the vegetative foule.

Now, to speake vprightly, the life of man confisteth in nothing else, then in life of man maintaining the instruments and organes mainly confi of the foule; among which, naturall hear fteth natural (by right) holdeth the prime place: for the chiefe in this heate is fo necessary to support mans farument, body, as whenfoeuer it is failing, the foul is constrained to forfake the body, & giue a period to the life of man. And because this naturall heate holdeth of fire, which (of his owne nature) confumeth whatfoeuer it meeteth withall : it was truely conuenient, that another contrarie qualitie should be opposed against it, for conferuation of the inferiour bodies. Vppon Of the radiwhich occasion, God placed the radicall hamour. or naturall humor, with this natural heate, onely to nourish and maintaine it, euen as fire feedeth it felfe by Oyle. And, in regard that this radicall humour confumeth

turall defect. But seeing that (according to Aristotle) which is cause the humor which is cause of digestion, is of digestion, neuer so perfect as the radicall and natu-tall, although it serveth much for mainteof man; wherefore one liueth longer then nance: of necessity the radical humor de-

and diminisheth it selfe daily; to supply &

defend it, it was necessary, that all Crea-

tures should browse and feede, and that

by meanes thereof, the humor (being the

cause of digestion) should supply the na-

heate being

cayeth it felfe dayly (for the accidentall | faile, who hath as much of the moys? huhumour, cause of digestion, is neuersfo perfect as the radicall, which vanishesh away) and by this meanes of intirely vanithing, naturall heate loofeth it felfe, and the body takes ending. For, if the humour radicall, and cause of digestion, were so perfect as the naturall humor vanished away, a man should live infinitely, according as Diuines fay. Who maintain, that the propriety of the Tree of life, which life in the ter-God placed in the terrestrial Paradise, confisted in this principally: that eating the fruite thereof, it should re-establish the radicall humor, that elfe would vanish & be loft. From hence it enfued, that this tree was prohibited to Adam and Eue, aftenthey were excluded out of terrestriall Paradife. For if our first Parents had kept themselues in their originall righteousnes; they and their fucceffors, feeding on the fruite of that tree, had lived eternally in the flower of their time, without euer tafling corruption, or old age: vntill fuch time as God had glorified theyr bodyes, without enduring the passage of death . But seeing that humane Linage hath lost this prerogatiue by sinne, which brought death into the world; it is no wonder, if

Proceeding nowe to our former purpose, I say, that life endureth more or leffe, according as the radicall humour is concordant and proportionable: for they in whom these qualities are most temperate and best proportioned, live longest. and not fuch as abound in those qualities. From thence it cometh, that wee fee many finall animals, who have least heat and humidity, to liue (neuertheleffe) longer then they that are of bigger and greater bulke, and abound more in the faide qualities which likewise commeth so to passe in trees, as well as in men. So that we may fay, and fay truly, that long life confifteth in the temperature and just proportion of heate and moisture: which wanting their kind companion life, diffolueth it felf. For when heate ouer aboundeth humidity, it confumeth the body in little time, as may be discerned in chollericke men. Where contrariwife, by excessive humiditie, heat feeleth it felfe to be quenched, as in Flegmaticke persons it happeneth in the same maner. Neuerthelesse, we do not by these examples understand, that hee must also

this defect sheweth it selfe in vs all.

mor as of heat, because it is necessary, that a proportion should be observed therein: midity protestate to fay, heate to exceed humiditie proportionably. For one thing beeing agent, hath no great vertue in working on the other, if it furmount not the part patient. And this did Aristotle couertly de- Arift in Airist clare, when he faid; Among those two qued- liv. s.cap.10. lities before remembred, there ought to bee a little coldnes mingled, to moderate the beat of the radicall fire, to the end it may not whollie consume the humour naturall. And drineffe alfo is as requisite, to dry up the radicall his mour, so that it may not extinguish the naturall fire. As we often fee to happe in youg dying by ouer children, that dy by ouermuch humidity; abounding notwithstanding, among these four qualities, heate and moisture are held for the principall, as being virall complexions & caufing life. As for the humors cold and dry, although they serue greatly to the conservation of life:yet nevertheles these two qualities are held for the doore & en- | Concerning trance to death. Because cold is enemy to the divertime heate, wherein principally confisteth the ties. point of life: and drinesse is opposite and contrary to moissure, which yet is the norisher of naturall heat. According as wee fee in aged people, who grow to be colde and dry, when they draw nere to death; as chiefly in dead bodies, which ordinarily are dry and cold. A man then (according to the good temperature of heaue) ought also to temper his complexaion by these man should go foure qualities, and that in such fort : as, to maintaine his heate in the first place, and in those foure humidity next after, caufing cold and dry to do feruice, according to their offices & quarters. By which meanes, they that finde not themselues thus proportiona-

thus then you fee the causes of long life. Now remaineth that fomewhat should be faide concerning the best complexion of all other, for the maintenance of long life. First of all then is to be noted, that of the foure complexions as Choler, flegme | Blood the best Blood, & Melancholy, blood is the best, complexions to help him in the length of life; for blood in man. is hot & moist, which qualities are the aptest to prolong life. But the humidity must not be watry, but airy, being hot & moift, and fo the fanguine complexion, participating of some temperate heat and moifture sufficiet to norish the hear, it is most

bly temperated, are naturally of flort life:

Heate ought

uerne his own complexion qualities.

yet the number of their daves are not alike. lob.14,5.

Though all

men are lub-

i: A to death,

The Chollerick comple-

The Phlegma tick & wattic.

The Melancholy. Challer and

Phiceme.

Blood and Melancholy.

Compounded Complexions

The life of man limited by power of h complexion.

Many men dy before nature through theyt owne extremity of exceffe.

proper of all the complexions to make waterly impossible for them to passe that long life. As for the Cholerike coplexion, it is of lesse continuance, because the viuacity and force of his fire, and also of the heate, cannot long endure with his drynesse. The Phlegmaticke & watric complexion, cannot bee digested by heate, in regard of his excessive humidity: & therefore falleth eafily into corruption, which (in the end)procureth death.

The melancholy complexion, beeing earthic, abridgeth life by his coldnesse & drought, which are qualities contrary to heate and moistures and therfore it is not to bee wondred at, though they shorten life, by ouer-abounding in some bodyes. Notwithstanding if Choller mingle it self with Phlegme, and that it furmounteth proportionably the Phlegme; that Complexion also is very apt to maintaine long life When likewise blood surpasseth Melancholy in a good proportion, that complexion is good: for the heate and humidity of the blood do beguile themselues, wish the cold and drineffe of melancholy. Whereby we may gather, that there are compounded Complexions, which are much better then the Sanguine simplie, to preserue and prosper the length of

By that which formerly hath bene faid, wee may perceine, that the life of man is limited by power and vertue of his Complexion, and by the proportion of Elementary qualities: fo that the diversitie of proportions doe cause the diversity of tearmes of life in man . And some hold, that a man may live fo long as naturall heate lasteth, and the radicall humor giueth maintenance. Also, whereas some fay, that the life of man hath his limit, beyond which, it is impossible for him to paffe; it is to be noted, that although the complexion and naturall vertue of man, may supply and maintaine vnto the latest point; yet notwithstanding, of a thousand men, hardly one attaineth to that point, because there are so many disasters which happen accidentally, or elfe by fome diforder that the most part die before nature failes in them, either by hunger, pestilence, poison, gourmandize, who redome, bad victuals, or by diseases, cansed thorow infinit excesses in me, by them daily committed, and so the true naturall tearme of mans life, is, when nature faileth, being the

Thus are we to viderstand that place in Job, where it is fayde : Lord, thou haft established the bounds of mans life, which is imnosible for him to go beyond. Whereby may clearely be differned, that a man may very eafily shorten his life, but not lengthen it. So that we see many of good complexion, and likely to linea. Worlde of yeares:who nevertheleffe are of ffort life, by some exteriour cause, which hastens on the expiration of their daies. Notwith@a. ding, that paffage in leb may bee otherwife vinderstood, in regard of Gods prescience or foreknowledge, who giveth to eucry one his terme of life; be it by his naturall complexion, or by fome other meanes, which he hath affigued to the life of man. And because ther is nothing hidden from the wisedome of God (for, hee knoweth all the causes and accidents that can happen to man) it is impossible for man, to have any power of lengthening his life beyond the ordination of God although there were contingent causes.

In this respect it may be faid, that there aretwo tearmes in the life of man, one whereof, dependeth upon the hermony & Two terms proportion of the Elementary qualities; in the lift of and the other is according to the preor-dination and prescience of God. Between rained was which tearmes, there is onely this difference, that a man may come or proceede fo farre as the first, and yet without passing it; but all men attaine to the second. And although that (by courfe of nature) fome one may passe on to his second terme yet notwithstanding there is not any that can go beyond it; as the like may bee fay de of other creatures and plants.

CHAP. XXIX.

How the life of man hath beene abridged and (hortned from the beginning of the World, de that in diners times. Of the diner fit y of termes allotted to men : With many historiestending to that purpose, especially of such as have lived longest.

Hauing the wne how to maintaine this life, & declared also the reasons, why fome live long, & others leffe time; it may appeare

Concerning be naturali hermonic of Elementatio qualities, fup porting mans

first world.

Chap.29.

Gen, 6,3. Gods owne li-

> Genelis 25,7. Genefis 46,6

shorter they will be, God only knoweth.

he yeares of nen in thefe

peare good to understand, at what times the naturall hermonie of the Elementary qualities (which support the body of man) began to grow into decadence; which, from the beginning of the world, even to this instant day, hath kept alwayes in diminution, concerning the temperature of Complexions, with the quality of foode, which do conferue and establish life, and yet mans life daily waxing to be leffe and

lesse in continuance.

In the first world, men lived eight hundred and nine hundred yeares, according as we have already declared in our former

thers in the volume, and the eight Chapter; where is amply related the yeares of our auncient fore fathers, farre differing from ours. Our present intention and purpose, is to speake concerning the decadence of the age of man; a matter very remarkeable,& whereof the facred Scripture doth make mention. For it is written, that the first declining of mans yeares or age, was ruled and limited to an 120. yeares, immediatly after the flood, according as we read in Genesis, where the Lord God himselfe Said, The life of man shall be an hundred and twentie yeares. Not that hee faith, that a man cannot out-line fix fcore yeares; but as if that the rest or ouer-plus of his life, will be but wearifome and insupportable

Abraham, who was long time after the deluge, liued an hundred feuenty and fiue yeares. Iaacob was an hundred and thirty yeares olde, when he went down into Æ gypt, where hee yet liued ten yeares longer. And so of many other to bee alledged, that lived many happy yeares. Since then, the life of man became shortned againe, even in the time of Danid, who speaketh thus in one of his Psalmes. The dayes of our age is threescore yeares and ten. & thogh men be fo strong that they attain to foure (core yeares ; yet is their strength then. but labour and forrow, fo foone it paffeth amay, and we are gone. Now a dayes we fee. that fuch as are of feeble Complexion passe not about fine and fifty yeares, and (very strong men) but three score & fine (I meane in lufty disposition, for operatitak &fleong ons and actions to be in men) & therefore the life of man in thefe our daies, lasteth not the twentith part; of those men liuing in the worlds first Age, and howe much

The ancient Philosophers labored very ferioufly, in feeking a reason for this dif- The fearch of ference and decadence in mens yeares. Some attributed it to the celestiall influ- of mans frort ences. Others alledged farre contrarie life, as is to be reasons, as Plinie, and many more beside, feuerall writhat limit the life of man to fixe fcore tings, yeares. Berofus alloweth no more then an hundred and seaventeene; Petofiris, an hundred twenty fix : but Cenforinus (following the opinion of the Philosopher Effatius) affigneth a man to line but foure score yeares. Dioscorides, imitating the Egyptians, and speaking of the life of man, faith: It is long or fort, according white the poife or weight of his heart. Euen as wee have more at large delivered, in the precedent part to this Volume, where manie reasons are alledged, making to this purpose, without presuming into any secret, concerning the will and prouidence of God.

In the first place, God ordaind al creatures to cate and drinke, for maintenance of the naturall and radicall humor, graunting them means also, to perpetuate their feuerall kindes, by the acte of generation. But, as eating & drinking is not sufficient and naturall. enough, to re-establish the radical humor, which diminisheth and vanisheth away of it felfe daily, so that life may likewise be lost as soone as it; so is it not possible alfo, to yeeld a body by the act of generation, of such compleat perfection, as others were, that lived in the first age of the world. For the vertue and power of the radical complexion (which is called the principal complexion) is mightily decayed: & from hence it enfueth, that the life of the principall Complexion. man became abridged and shortned day-

ly more and more. Another reason, which neuertheles dependeth vpon the former, is this; that the A fecondreafood wherewith man fuftaineth himfelfe, fon concernhath loft, and commeth far short of such ing toode and fustentiation. vertue, as it had at the beginning of the world. So that it is vtterly impossible, to have mankinde in fuch bodily perfection, as the men of the first worlde had. And therfore the vertue of complexion failing in man, and the hermony of the Elementary qualities beeing adulterated and bastardized, and foode likewise decayed in goodnes; it is no maruel, if our prefent life be become fo much shortned. And thogh those times then observed, even as an Ppp 2

for maintaining the hu. mor rddicall

The radicall

Chap.29.

Valeria Ca-

priola a fa-mous Ladiu

Pin in l. 10-6-7

*A valiant

Scythian

nonia,&c.

He was alfo

King of Nu-

yet notwithstanding, divers personnes (among them) have bene noted to live longer then some other, by being of a strong and good complexion; and, in regard it pleafed God that it should be so, whose hand is never tied, much leffe subjected to any law or limit. Neuerthelesse, because we may not complaine, concerning our little time of life, and also to comfort vs in the breuity thereof: I will fet downe certaine examples of fome men, that have exceeded others in length of life, though not speaking of any in the first age, because such as I purpose to discourse on, liued long fince that large extent of life came to be shortned.

Arpach/bad, sonne of Sem, and Nephew to Noals, lived two hundred yeares after The life time of men after the flood; and yet notwithstanding, he atthe generall tained to foure hundred and thirty yeares before he dyed. Shelah also his sonne, li-Gen 11,12,13 uad foure hundred and three yeares. Heber, the fon of Shelab, (of whome the Hebrewes took their name) lived foure hundred fixty and feuen yeares. In his time happened the confusion of tongues: but When the confulion of he fafely preferued the Hebrue which was tongues was. the first language of the worlde) because

he consented not to the proud building of Babels Tower.

Terah, the Father of Abraham, lived two hundred and five yeares, and Abraham lived an hundred, seaventie and fiue yeares; as also saacob an hundred feauenty fine yeares, after which time, the life time of men beganne greatly to diminish. Neuerthelesse, Moyles lived fix score yeares, and Aaron fixe score and three yeares: Sara, that ancient matrone (fo much renowned) lived fixe score and seuen yeares, and that valiant woman Iudith who imote off the head of Holofernes, lyued an hundred and five yeares', as wee may reade in the facred Scriptures, which render true testimony of all that hath hitherto bin faid.

Now, as concerning prophane Histories, many are recorded to line long time: as 2Vestor, who lined fo faire and large an extent of life, that our reverend predeceffors, when they defired the long life of any man; they wished, that hee might live Nestors yeares, hee being three hundred yeares old, when he went with the Greekes to Troy. For Homer fayeth: Prince Nestor

ordinarie limitation to the life of man: | being about three hundred yeares of age, went | Homers to succour the Greekes against the Troyans, words on N flors going with a potent army by fea.

The same is also anouched by Ouid, Innenall, and Tibullus, with many other Authours besides. Arganthonius King of Andalouzia (anciently called Turditania) lived an hundred and fiftie yeares, according as Strabe affirmeth, from the Poet Anachreon: Neuerthelesse Herodotus, and Arganihonius Silius Italicus, a Spanish Poet do auouch, kingos Turdithat this Prince lived the space of three tania. hundred yeares.

Valerius Maximus, and Pliny also say, that he reigned fourescore yeares, and lined fixe score yeares. Pliny likewise maketh a large Narration, of certaine Kings in Arabia, ard many other (as well men Kingsof A. as women) that lived multitudes of years: rabiathath but because matters fecht so farre off, may | ued long. raise doubt and suspition, I will insert other histories, which are maintained to be true and certaine.

Valerius Maximus Coruinus, did line an Thelifetime hundred yeares, at it is auouched by Vale- or Maicus Va rius Maximus, hauing beene fixe times lerius Cons-Confull of Rome : and further faieth, That | Confull of there were fixe and forty yeares betweene his first Consulship, and the last yeare of his honor in the fame dignity, and that he lived the rest of his age in abledisposition, so that hee could make good vie of all the dignities and Offices imposed vppon

Stephanus the Romane, beeing farre entred into yeares, ferued as dancer before the Emperour Octavius, in those Secular These were pastimes which he ordained in Rome: and sports vied feuenty three yeeres after, hee danced againe in the sports of the Emperor Clauther hundred diss, and yet lived long time afterwarde. Titus Fullonius, borne in Bologna, lined an hundred and fifty iyeeres, as appeared by the numbering and accounts, made from five yeares to five yeares in elder times, & wherein the Emperour Claudius tooke great paines to be informed in the trueth, for he was very curious in fuch matters.

And, not to estrange or barre women, The long from the benefite of our instant discourse, life of divers but to bleffe them also with hope of long life; it is observed that Terentia, the wife of Cicero, lived an hundred and feventeen yeares. Claudia, the Wife of Offellus, attained to an hundred and fifteene yeares of age, having had fifteen male children.

words of Nethe Troyan

" Now Gra-

A note well werthy obler-

A Cittle of Brica in

liocrates.

Samura

Samura a Romane Lady, "was an hundred | ans, lived (in absolute and able dispositi-, Galen, Prince and ten yeares old when the dyed; who being aged an hundred and foure yeares, yet ferued as Lady dancer, in the fecular sports of the Emperor Ostanius; having formerly danced in other fecular pastimes, when the was fourescore and eleuen years

Pluny reporteth a matter very admirable, and yet true, that in the accounts and numberings made by Titus and Velbalian. then Cenfors, there lived three men at Parma, each of them being aged fix fcore yeares, and two that were fixe score and ten yeares old; beside a woman, that was aged fixe score and twelve years. He faith moreouer, that in Romania, there were foure and fifty men, each of them beeing an hundred yeares olde : fifty feauen men being aged an hundred and tenne yeares: foure men, aged an hundred and thirtie yeares: and other foure men, who were feuerally aged fixe fcore & fifteen yeares: belide foure men more, each of them being feauen fcore yeares old, a thing not ve fuall, and hardly to be seene in these daies of ours.

But leaving Italy, let vs looke vpon some *A Rhetoritifurther strangers, that lived long. Gorgias Leontinus, a Philosopher greatly renow-Empedocles. ned, who lived (in very healthfull disposiand Master to tion) more then an hundred yeares. Hee having attained to an hundred and feuen yeares, was demanded, why he tooke for great delight to abide in the world; wherto he thus replyed, I thanke God, I never did any thing, whereby I deferued to bee blamed in mine Age. An answer very excellent and fingular, for fuch as areable to make or speake it truly.

Seneca the Philosopher, borne at * Corduba, lived an hundred & fourteen yeeres. The famous Appollonius Thyaneus hadde passed an hundred yeares before he dyed. Democritus, by the testimony of Diogenes, lived an hundred and nine yeares; and dyed, having neuer felt Feauer, nor any other disease. Galen, the Prince of Physition) an hundred and forty yeares : and dyed by defect of Nature, without the fenfe

of any fickneffe. * Attyla, King of the Gothes, who (in his time) was most cruell, and of great power lived an hundred and foure years, ferting fundated Parts as a fecurge to mankinde, and making lamentable waste and spoile by his warres, and infinite cruelties. Massinissa, King of Gninea, liued fourescore and seauchteene yeares, hauing reigned threescore. This Prince neuer had his head couered, nevther from the Sun, windes, or raines, or greatest Tempests, but continued so (bareheaded) to his very latest dayes:marching alwayes on foote in his Armour, and as lightly as the youngest fouldier in his Ar, mie. When hee was fourescore yeeres of age, he begate a Son, and left (after his death) foure and forty fonnes, by him be-

Anthony the Ægyptian Hermit , who li-

ued an hundred and fifty yeeres; and Gre-

onius (his Companion) an hundred. Now

a dayes, wee finde few, or none at all, to

line fo long, for (day by day) the life time

of man groweth shorter and shorters

whereby it appeareth, that the end of the

world approacheth neere. Neuerthelesse

God hath declared his wonderful workes

in all times; for in the life of the Empe-

rour Conrade, which was in the yeare one

the old Prouerbe, when men commonly

faide, John, John, truff then in God.

As for Hermites and ancient Fathers, many are recorded to line long, onely by their abstinence; as Saint Panle, the first boly Fathers. Hermit, who lived fixe score yeares, Saint

thousand, one hundred, and forty, or nere thereabout, a man dyed, who had ferued the Emperour Charlemaione in his warres, fo large a time, that this man was founde to have lived three hundred and three- hadde lived score yeares, and was called John of Time. 360 yeares, Which name was given him(as I thinke) in regard of his great age; and I am halfe perswaded also, that of him was raised

CHAP

At what time mens hues began to shot

The liues of renowned women.

"Son to Nelcus & Chloris.

Chap.30.

The Frizelan

ers rebell a-

A dreadfult

814 .

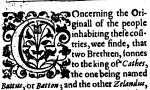
4.3

A people neere to the

Seythians.

CHAP. XXX.

A briefe Chronologicall Suruey, concerning the Netherlands, divided into seventeene Provinces: with a breutate of the Earles and Princes there reigning, from Thierry (who was the first Earle of Holland and Zeland) to this instant time.



were the first Fathers of them, and that (from them) they derived their Names. For these two Princes, being too extream ly purfued by the hatred of a Stepmother. and no way pittled or supported by the King their fathet (escaping many traines and machinations, of poyloning, murthering, and divers other dangers by her daily deuised and put in practife against the) were forced to forfake their natiue abyding, & fly to an Island within the Rhine: where Battus determining to make his stay, called it Battauia, after his owne Name; and that is (in plainer vnderstanding) Holland.

Zelandus, not liking to live fo neere, or with his brother (least pursue should furprize them both, and reuenge there fasten which in more desperate place they had auoyded) he trauelled on to the vitermost confines of the Rhine, and liking there to fet downe his rest, imitated his Brothers example (in ftyling the country) and called it Zeland.

Concerning their building of Cities, Townes, Castles, and Forts, which afterward came to be ruined & defaced againe by warres with the Romans, Saxons, Gauls, Danes, &c. or to what order of life the people disposed themselves, and through how many and infinite encumbrances (from their originall) they passed, for no meane store of yeares together: these are matters meerely exempt from our intended breuity, and may more amply be feen

in the history at large, whereunto I refer any fuch defirous Reader, and borrowing fauour for fo large a leap, I instantly proceed to the yeare, 863 . when Holland first became to be an Earledome.

In the yeare before mentioned, Charles the Bald, King of France, at Bladell in the Prouince of Campaigne, having there (in his company). a generall affembly of his Princes and Barons, for confultation of many important matters; pleased to aduance the two fonnes of Count Haghen (who was Vnckle to the King) for theyr The two & great deseruings, and for the farther en- of Count couragement of the like vertuous minded Gentlemen. Walger, who was the cldest sonne, he made Earl of Teysterbands; and Thierry the vongest fon, or Theodor, as fome tearme him, beeing formerly called Thierry of Aquitaine, he made earle of Hol-

This gift of the kings, especially that to Thierry was much withflood by the Frize landers, as fcorning to be commanded by any new Lord or Ruler : wherefore they confulted with the Hollanders, and a plot was laid to expell this new Earle. But it proued to no effect for the king comming. thither (in person) with a powerful army, made such an example on the Ring-leaders in this rebellion, that the rest (in very great humility) submitted themselues,cafting their Weapons not onely at the Kings feete, but likewife at the Earles, and (vpon pardon) they vowed their continuall bounden duty to Thierry. His authority was then further strengthened, in the year eight hundred fixty eight, by the letters Patents of King Charles, as also by them of Lewes King of Germany, confir- zeland, and ming him to bee Earle of Holland, Zeland, Lord of First and Lord of Frizeland.

This Thierry married Genna, or Ienna, daughter to Pepin the Bald, king of Italy. fonne to the Emperor Charlemaigne. Hee worthily foyled the Danes, that then poffessed the Towne of Vericht, the Wiltes and the Slaves, disabling them from any further footing in Holland, which made them presume to meddle in Zeland, but thence they were repulfed likewife. By which meanes, he remained afterward in peace, beautifying his Countries both with faire buildings and good Lawes. He dyed very old having reigned 40. yeares, and after him fucceeded

2 Thierry

863.

Simple. The Frizelanders did twice reuolt from their obedience, and would not allow Earl Thierry to be their Lord, flaying. very many of them that obeyed the Earls walting, spoiling, and burning all the way as they went. But at length they were just, ly repayed for their infolencie, and fuch a flaughter was made of the Frisons (without any mercy) that few or nong of them returned home to their dwellings. Afterward, he forced them to make the doores of entrance into their houses, so lowe and narrow, that they must stoope verie lowe before they could get in ; and this he did, to make them the more humble and feruile, receiving a new Oath of allegeance of them. And having reigned about fiftie father in the Abbey of Egmont,

yeares, being then aged 88. yeares old, he dyed, leaving two fonnes behind him, the eldest whereof (being named Egbert) became Archbyshop of Trengs, and Arnold his yongest fon succeeded him. 3 Arnold, or (as others will have it) Ar-

nulph, yongest son to Earle Thierry, followed in rule as his fathers fucceffor: but he held the Earledomes of Holland, Zeland, and Lordship of Frizeland, no longer of the crown of France, but of Otho the third, Emperour; and so became in see to the Empire. A very fearefull Comet appeared in his time, with straunge Ecclipses both of the Sunne and Moone, beeing as red as blood, and terrible Earthquakes: a fire also fell from heaven, in similitude like an huge Tower, burning for a long time: after which enfued so violent a pestilence, that the living died burying the dead. The Frizons reuolting again from obedience, made all his reigne a continuall warfare, and the Armies (on either fide) meeting neere vnto Winckell, fo dreadfull a battaile was fought betweene them : that the Hollanders lustained the worst, Count Arnold being there flaine, and a great number of his cheefest Nobility. This battaile was fought the eighteenth of October, the morrow after S. Lamberts day, in the yeare 993. So this Earle Arnold, having reigned fine yeares, and being thus vnfortunately flaine, was buried by his Father and Grandfather, in the Abbey of Egmont.

2 Thierry his fon fecond of that name, 4 Thierry, third of that name, and fon Earle of Holland, Zeland, and Lord of to Count Arnold, succeeded as fourth Frizeland, who married with Hildegarde. Earle of Holland, Zeland, and Lorde of daughter vnto King Lewes of France, the Frizeland. Being desirous to reuenge his Stammerer, and Sifter to King Charls the Fathers death ypon the Frizons : hee was Adelbold bymuch impeached therein by Adelbold, By- trecht, thop of Virecht, against whom (neuertheleffe) hee prenailed in two foughten bartailes, in the yeare 1018, and (with great flaughter of the Frizens) brought them under obedience to his youngest son Floru, whom he made Lord of them. This Earle Thierry , living afterward in veric peacefull dayes, undertooke a Pilgrimage to lerufalem, with the Lord of Arckell, his loyall fubica , who died at Hierufalem & was there very honourably buried by Thierry. After whose return home, and some yeares passed in peace with his Wife and Children, having reigned 46 ; yeares, hee died in Anno 1039, and was buried by his

> 5 Thierry, fourth of that Name, was the fift Earle of Holland, Zeland, & Lord of Frizeland, after the decease of Thierry his Father. In a Tourney of Princes and Lords, performed (for pleasure) in the Citie of Liege, it was this Earles hard happe, to kill a Brother of the Byshops of Cullen and Liege: whereby enfued fuch discorde and mollestation, that, after many aduent of Cullen and tures of reuenge, vndertaken by the Germaine Gentlemen, albeit therein they fustained much losse of men, the Earle was fhot into the thigh with a poisoned dart. of which wound hee dyed the fifteenth of May, one thousand soure hundred and eight, after he had gouerned nine yeares, and was buried by his father, in the Abbey of Egmont. He was neuer maried, and therefore left not any childe to succeede

6 Floris, who (as you have heard before) was Earle of Frizeland, now after his brothers death, became the fixt Earle of Hol. land and Zeland. The former mithappe at Liege, could not as yet be forgotten by the Bythops of Cullen and Liege; but they wold needs profecute fresh reuenge on Count Floris, who being a man of vndáted spirit, descated his enemies in two attemptes. Once by a cunning stratagem, causing ditches and pitfals to be made in fouth Holland, couering them with straw and grasse, fo that they could not be eafily discerned. At this time a bloody batell being fought

1300.

Zelád, named by Zelandus

Battauia is

Holland.

Chap.30.

1063.

1077.

The crooke-

backt Duke

of Lorraine

Robert the

Frizon.

betweene them, there was forty thousand I strument (in regard of the former quarre) of the Earles enemies flaine, beside twenty fixe thousand more, who were drowned and smothered in those ditches. Anno Domini 1058. The second foyle of his aduerfaries, happened foure yeres after this, when the Hollanders (putting the Germans to flight) returned with rich spoiles, and great store of prisoners; this was in the veare of our Lord 1062. Yet was it this Earles ill fortune, to be afterward slayne vnarmed, as he fate under an Elme, taking the ayre, his enemies preuayling by this advantage. He had ruled in Holland fourereene yeares, and in Frizeland 21. yeares, and lyeth buryed at Egmont.

7. 8. Gertrade, widow to Earle Floris, in regarde that Thierrieher fonne was in his nonage, gouerned those Countries in his right. And in the yeare of our Lord, 1063. The re-married with Robert the Frizon (fonne to Baldwine of Lifle de Bucke, Earle of Flaunders) with the good liking of all the States and Nobilitie. Hee also was made Guardian of young Earle Thierrie, and (had by this Gertrude) three formes, Robert, furnamed the Yong (who went with Godfrey of Bullen to the holie Land, and was (after his fathers decease) Earle of Flaunders;) Philip, father to william of Ixt, and Baldwin Bishop of Teroanne; beside three daughters alfo, which he had by the faid Gertrude . This Robert was called the Frizon, notin regarde of his birth, but of his bigge stature, firength and courage. For, having prevailed against the Frizons, and hearing of his Brothers death, Baldwine de Mons, Earle of Flaunders; hee layd clayme to the fayde Earledome, and (notwithstanding the opposition of Richild, widow to Earle Baldwine: by meanes of the Flemings, he overthrew the King of France in battell, and the with her sonne Baldwine, remayning satisfied with the Countie of Henault, Robert be-Robert Earle came quietly Earle of Flanders. For eight yeares space, hee carried himselfe with great wisedome and valour, and dying in the yeare of our Lord 1077. was buried in the Cannons Church, founded by himselfe at Cassell . Gertrudes time of rule by her felfe, and Roberts after, are reckoned as two feuerall gouernements.

9. Godfrey, furnamed the crooke-backed Duke of Lorraine, in this time of yong Earle Thierries minoritie, was made an in-

of Count Floris, and the Bishops of Cullen and Liege, as yet not revenged to their mindes) to fuggest a falle information to Henry the fourth, Emperour, whereby the fayde Godfrey became an viurper of the young Earles right, for the space of source years. But as he was litting on the draught to eafe his body, a fertiant of young Count Thierries, did thruft a laucline vp into his fundament, whereof he died (not long after) at Maestrecht.

10. Thierrie, the fift of that name, who (by crook-backt Godfrey, and other ftrange oppositions) had long time beene debarred from quiet possession of his right; at length, by an absolute conquest of the Frizons, in two feuerall great battells, recovered all, and returned home as a Conqueror. Afterward, he married Whithilde, Iwobanth. daughter to Fredericke, Duke of Saxonie, by whom he had a fonne and daughter: Floris that succeeded him, and Mathilde, married to the Duke of Orleance. Earle Therrie having governed fifteene yeares, dyed, and was buryed in the Abbey of

11 Floris, the second of that name, & furnamed the Fat or Groffe, fucceeded 1119. next after his father Thierry: he greatly fauoured Church-men, whereby the Abbey of Egmonts revenews were largely encreafed. He being a man of very peacefull inclination, little or no disturbances happened in his time : but onely by the Frizons, who, for their rebelling, were feuerely punished, and forced to submit themfelues to his mercy. This Floris married Petronilla, or Parnell, daughter to Didier, Duke of Saxonie, and fifter to Lotharius of Saxony. the Emperour: By her he had three fons, Thierrie, Floris, called the Blacke Prince of Kenemerlandt; and Symon, also one daughter named Hadewicke, who was Countesse of Gueldres. Hauing gouerned his Countries very honourably, for the space of one and thirty yeares; he dyed in the yeare of our Lord, one thousand one hundred thirty and three, and lyeth buried in the Abbey of Egmont,

12. Thierrie, fixt of that name, fucceeded his father Floris, and was much mole. sted by the Frizons, in regard that his brother Floris the Blacke Prince, enuying the happines and quiet of Thierrie, went and tooke part with them against him; vntill

Of the Seuenteene Prouinces. fuch time as the Emperour Lotharim (be- | there many honourable feruices) thorow ing theyr vnckle) had reconciled them. and made them friends. Conrade beeing ioyned as competitor in the Empire with Lotharius, caused a fresh quarrell between Thierrie and the Bishop of Vereche, he ra-Lotharius & tifying the former graunt of H.mry, which Conrade Em caused very long contention, and much bloud to be shed on either side. Thierrie having governed his Countries of Holland, Zeland, and Frizeland fortic yeares, died in the yeare 1163, and lieth buried in

The Frizons

of Oftergo'& Westergo.

116.3

1168.

The Dam or Sluce, called

Didier Dde

1133.

1208.

the Abbey of Egmont. 13 Floris the third, eldeft fonne of Thierry, as heyre to his father, inherited his right in Holland, Zeland, and Frizeland. The Frizons (preteding their former freedomes and imperiall liberties) made still their renoltes from time to time, imboldned thereto by the often fuggestions of Godfrey of Rhemen, Bishop of Verecht, who (as his predeceffors had done before him) still questioned the Earledomes of Oftergo and Westergoe in Frizeland : but the Emperour Fredericke , went himselfe in person, and made an agreement between them. All which notwithstanding, much hurt was done on eyther fide, as time and treachery fitted them with apt opportunity. A great controuerfie happened betweene the Earles of Holland and Flaunders, for the Isle of Walchren, and Count Floris (in triall of fight) became prisoner to the Earle of Flaunders: who nevertheleffe vied him princely, and they beeing accorded by the Archbishop of Cullen, and the Bishoppe of Liege; the great hole neare to the damme or fluce; was reco. uered with much adoe, by caffing a dogfifh thereinto, and speedy filling it vp with earth, whereon they named it Hondidam, that is, Dogs-fluce. This Earle Floris, affifting the Emperour Fredericke , Phillip King of France , Richard King of England, with many other Dukes, Christian Princes and Earles, at the fiege of Damieta in Soria : fell there ficke in the Army, and died 1208. having gouerned his provinces twenty feuen yeares.

14 Thierrie the feuenth, hearing of his fathers death in Palestine; succeeded as his heire in all his Earledoms . The whole time of his regiment, was in war and continuall combuttions. First by his brother Lord William of Holland (who was with his father Floris in Palestine, and performd

divers disagreements that happened betweene them; notwithstanding, as many laboured reconcilings, and pacifications. Next, Baldwine Earle of Flaunders, he was as molestuous to him likewise, for the Isle of Walchren: besides the Frizons rebellions, and his trouble with the Bishops of Cologne and Liege, as also his imprisonment to the Duke of Brabant, and then the intrusion of the Bishop of Verecht, after which, enfued a peace and united amity on all fides. This Count Thierrie had no heires male, but two beautifull daughters; Adella, marryed to Henry of Gueldres, who dyed without anie Children, and Ada, meanly marryed by her mother (after her fathers death) to Count Lewes of Loos, that fo the gouetnement might be disposed at her pleasure. In the yeare of our Lord, 1203. Earle Thierry dyed , hauing gouerned his Countries thirtcene yeares, and and lyeth buryed in the Abbey of Egmont. 15 Ala, daughter to Earle Thierrie,

was Countesse of Holland and Zeland, af- The gouernter her fathers death; which mooned a mentofawogreat heart-burning in the Lordes and Gentlemen, that they should line vnder a Woman, and a poore Earles command. Therefore, they fent into Frizeland for Count William, protesting to affilt him in attayning the gouernement of Holland. The young Countesse Ada was surprized in their first attempt, and her husband the Earle of Loos driven to flight; who yet wunne the Bishop of Verecht (by money and other promises) to ayde him, and by this means he had some small successe for a while. But the Counteffe Ada dying without any children, Earle William was then the true and onely heyre to Holland and Zeland. In which right of his, hee went with his power against the Earle of Loos, and such was his successe, that the Women did beate his enemies with Di-Staues and Stones, they beeing glad to flaues and Men with Dicast away their Armour for lightnesse, to Stones. faue themselues by flight; yet many were drowned in the Ditches, and a great number taken prisoners, with all the Earle of Loos Tents, Pauillions, Plate, Iewelles, and Munition, which Count William roy-

16 William, first of that name, succee-

land, and Frizeland.

1198,

ally divided amongst his H. llanders, remayning absolute Prince of Holland, Ze-

Edmond of

England.

Lancaster, for

King William quelly flaine.

ded rightfully in all his Earledoms, by the | & (for her deliuerance) went into Holland, death of his Neecethe yong Counteffe Ada. He had some strife with Didier Bishop of Vtrecht, and Gerard V ander Are his brother: but (vpon certayne Articles) all difpleasures were qualified. By his first wife Alix, daughter to the Earle of Gueldres, he had Floris, that next succeeded him, Otho Bishop of Verecht, william Lieutenant of Holland, and two daughters, the one was Abbelle at Rhynsbourg, and the other at Delfte. His second wife was named Mary, daughter to Edmund of Lancaster, fon to Henry the third, King of England, by whom he had no iffue. He gouerned 19 to the King of years; and dying, lies buried at Rhynsbourg.

17 Floris the fourth, succeeded his fa-

ther Count william in his Earledomes. He took great delight in Iusts & Turnaments, and the Earle of Clermont proclayming a publike Triumph for all commers, at the Countelle his wifes request (who greatly defired to fee this Floris, of whom the had heard much commendation:)this honorable Erle of Holland, Zeland, &c. was there tteacherously flaine, onely through iealous suspition of the old Erle of Clermont, who was there likewise presently slaine himselfe, and the Countesse (grieuing for this great mishap) died soone after. This Count Floris had a daughter named Ma-The wonder thilde, or Margaret, as some call her, who was married to Count Herman of Henne-365.Children berg. She despising a poore widdow, that desired her almes vpon vrgent necessitie, holding in either arme a fweet yong child, both which, God had fent hirat one birth; gaue hir very reprochful words beside, as, that the could not be honest of her bodie; and (by her husband) haue two children lawfully begotten. The poore woman, grieuing to be rejected in such extreame want and need, but much more, to heare her reputation to nearely touched, knowing her foule cleare from al dishonest detection : made no further fuite to the Lady, but (falling vpon her knees) appealed to God for defence of her Innocencie, and earneftly defired, that as the had coccined and borne those two infants lawfully by

as many children at one birth, as there are

daies in the yeare. Not long after, the La-

dy conceiued with childe by her husband,

to visite the Earle her brother, taking vp lodging in the Abbey of religious women at Lofdunen, and grew to exceeding great, as the like had neuer before beene feene. When her time came, on the Friday before Palme-funday, in the yeare of our Lord God 1276. Thee was delivered of 365, children, the one halfe being fonnes, and the other daughters; but the odde childe was an Hermaphrodite, and they were all well shaped and proportioned in their little members. These children were layd in two basins, and were all baptized by Guydon, Suffragan to the Bishop of Vtrecht, who named all the fonnes lohn, and the daughters Ellzabeth, but what name hee gaue the Hermaphrodite, it is not recorded. They were no sooner baptized, but they all died, and the mother alfo. The two Basins are yet to bee seene in the fayde Church of Lofdunen, and a memorie of them, both in Latine and Dutch. The Latine beginning thus : Margareta, Comitis Hennebergia vxor, & Florentij Hollandia & Zelandia filia, &c. Vnderneath are these verses:

En tibi monstrofum & memorabile fastum, Quale nec à mundi conditione datum.

This Count Floris, being fo treacheroufly flaine, as yee haue heard before, had his body brought backe into Holland, by the Earle of Cleues, and other noble Lords, who buried it in the Abby of Rhynsbourg; he having honourably and vertuoufly gouerned his Countries twelue yeares. He left but one fon named william, fix yeares old, who was in the tutelage of his vnckle Othe, Bishop of Vtrecht, during his mino-

18 William, second of that name, succeeded his father Floris in all his dominions, being all the time of his vnder yeares, in the government of Otho Bishop of Vtrecht his vnckle, who was a very worthy & carefull Guardian to him. The Pope hauing deposed Fredericke the second, and Conrade his sonne from the Empire : the Princes Electors (in despight of the Pope) made this Earle William King of the Romans, and crowned him at Aix le Chapelle, Earle Willia he having then attained to the age of 20. am Kingof yearcs. A long & tedious trouble hapned, betweene him, & Margaret Counteffe of Flanders, a very high-minded and proude

woman, for the country of walchren, wherin, after a great foile and flaughter of the Flemings, (taking part with her) and imprisonment of her two sonnes (Guy and Iohn) the implored the aid of Charles duke of Aniou, again & king William, & sped ther. by no better then the had done before, but was glad in the end to feek reconcilement. This King William built the Pallace of the Earles of Holland, in the vilage of La Hage, or the Hague, where it is at this day, and a goodly Cloister at Harlem. At his warres in west Frizeland, where he prevailed very successefully, he would needs (without any other affiltance then himfelfe) follow the rebells ouer the Ice, where his horffe flipping in, himfelfe almost drowned, and none neare to helpe him (but enemies of the Frizons, that lay fecretly in ambushi) they beate him downe with clubbes and stanes, not knowing that it was the King, and fo they flew him. But when afterward they tooke better notice of him, by his Target and Armes thereon emblazoned: in very hearty forrow for their foule deed, they buried him fecretly, in a poore house in the village of Hooktwond, thinking fo to wipe out all remembrance of him. But his body was after found, and buried in the Abbeyof Middlebourg, in the Isle of Wal-

19 Floris the fift, fon to King William, who was flaine so inhumanely; albeit hee was but fixe months old, yet he fucceeded his father, his vnckle Floris being his Gouernor and Tutor. At 17. yeares of age, he went with an army against the euer-reuolting Frizons, and ouercame them at a village called Schellinckhout, very feuerely reuenging his fathers death on them, and (by building foure Castles in Frizeland) brought them wholly under his obediece. Afterward, Count Floris made a voyage into England, where a marriage was contracted betweene Iohn, eldeft fon to Earle Floris, and Elizabeth, daughter to king Edward the first : Iohn being (not long after) fent into England, to accomplish the sayd mariage, where he remained in the Court of England, vntill his fathers vnfortunate death, which briefly was thus:

A knight lived in the Earles Court, named Gerard wan Velson, who had beene a whole yeares space detayned in prison, & his brother beheaded, through certaine falle suggestions whispered to the Earle,

which(afterward)appearing to be a meere iniury: the Earle fought to repayre this wrong, with very especiali fauors done to the knight, great aduancements, & would haue bestowed also his concubine in marriage on him Which Gerard difdaining & replying, that he would not weare his cast shooes: the Barle rathly answerd, that he should take his leavings, in despite of his hart. To preuent mariage with the Earles minion, the knight bestowedhis affe aions elfe-where, and wedded a Ladie of great honour and beauty. Which when the Earle understood, he pursued his former rash folly, to the price of his own life: Sending Genard on an employment of much credit & respect, and wherewith he was not a little pleased, not doubting anie fuch wicked intention. The Earle came to Gerards house, vnder color of hospitality, and there (winning her to primate conference in her bed chamber)forcibly defloured her, to performe his rath promife to her husband. At Gerards returne, and this foule wrong discouered, it was pursued with very bloudy reuenge, by a resolued conspiracy sworne against his life: which albeit he had some warning of (by a paper rdelinerd him by a poore woman;) yet his difaster being menitable, a traine was laid for him as he rode a hawking, and twentie one wounds he received on his body, by the hand of the fayd Gerard. But hee and the rest of the conspiratorsescaped not vnpunished, for they had their heads smitten off, and were then laid vpon wheeles; but Gerard was put (stark naked) into a Pipe stucke full of tharp nailes, and was fo rowled vp and downe through all the streetes of Leyden. Then was he beheaded, & layd on a wheele, and al his kinred (to the ninth

degree)put to death, and laid on wheeles. 20 After the wicked murder of Earle Floris the fift, committed by the Fryzons, as hath beene declared: John his only fon (being then in England with King Edward his father in law) was next to succeed him as his rightfull heire. But before he could leave England, fome partialities and factions happened in Holland for the gouernement, which foone were qualified at Earle Iohns being there present, notwithstäding the subtile policie of Wolfart of Borffele, Wolfart of feizing the person of Earle lohn, and Lady Borifele, his Elezabeth his wife, thinking to have the go- fecret intenuernement of the fayd Earle, because, as tion.

A feuere re-

This History is aunuched for a truth by diuers good Authors.

full birth of

her husband; euen so, if euer that Ladie should be subject to the custome of Women, that it would please him, to send her

Vtrecht.

720

1300.

The end of the race of the Dukes of Aquitaine,& fuccelsion of the Earles of Henault.

yet, he was but young. Earle Iohn preuailed against the Frizons, and the Bishop of Vereche, and having governed his Countries about foure yeares, hee fell ficke at Harlem, and there dyed. He was the first of al the Earles of Holland, that died without children: wherefore in him failed the line masculine of the Earls from the dukes of Aquitaine, which Thierry, or Theodor, the first Earle of Holland, had continued 4)7. yeares. He was buried in the Abbey of Rhinsbourg, his widdow Lady Elizabeth being caried back into England, where the was afterward maried to the Earle of Oxford: So that by the death of Earle Iohn in this manner, those Countries were devolued to the Earles of Henault, issuing by the mothers fide fro the earles of Holland.

21 Iohn, the second of that name, called John of Henault (claiming his right from Alix, Sifter to William king of the Romans) succeeded after John, as Earle of Holland, Zeland, and Frizeland, &c. He had a long and tedious trouble with John de Reueffe, who perswaded the Emperour, that Iohn Earle of Holland dying without iffue, his Earledomes ought (in right) to returne to the Empire; according as Charls the bald, Emperor of the Romans, had at first ginen them in fee and homage to Therry of Aquitaine. This suggestion raised the Emperour Albert in Armes against Iohn of Henault, but the Bishop of Cullen compounded the matter betweene them; and John de Reueffe was afterward drowned, by which means, John of Henault, having gouerned Henault thirty yeres, and his countries of Holland, Zeland, and Frizeland fine

yeares, died, & was buried at Valenciennes. 22 William the third, fonne and heire to count John of Henault, succeeded his fathers Earledomes: he was commonly called. The good Earle William, for his vertues, iuffice, good life, and honourable actions. In his time hapned fo great a dearth and famine in Holland, that poore people dyed with hunger, even in the streets as they went: feeking also for hearbs and rootes in the fields and woods, there they were likewise found dead, and in the common high wayes: little children dyed fucking at their mothers breafts, and some were enforced to feede on their dead children. In this time of famine, a poore woman in the Towne of Leyden, being extreamely ouercharged with hunger, entreated her

owne fifter, (being a woman of better abilitie) to lend her some bread, which she would thankefully repay againe, when God should enable her. She very vnkindly, and without any pirty of her extreamity, denyed her oftentimes, notwithftanding the others often vrgings; that shee was affured, that fhee could not be without bread. Heereupon the vimercifull sifter (lying, both to God and to her owne poore filter) fayde : If I haue any bread, I with that it may instantly be turned into a stone: wherewith the heavy displeasure of almighty God laid hold vpon her words, and going afterward to hir Cupboord(to relieue her felfe) the found all her loanes of bread converted into apparant stones, and died herfelfe with extreamity of hunger. It is credibly faid, that one or two of those stones, are yet to be seene in Saint Peters Church at Leyden, as a memorie of this iust judgement of God.

There is also recorded another memo-There is also recorded another metric.

A worthyse rable Historie, of vpright Iustice done by toon of infinite. this good Earle William, to a poore coun- done by this try-man, against a Bayliffe of South Hol- william land, who had taken a goodly faire Cowe from him, that was the reliefe of himfelfe, his poore wife and children; as there are fome Kine in that Countrey, which doe give twenty pottles of milke and more, in aday. The Bayliffe at the poore mans complaint to this good earle william, who lay then sicke in his Bed at Valenciennes (yet neuer debarred any fuiters from audience, were he ficke or well) was adjudged to give the poore man an hundred crownes of good gold, for the wrong he had done to him, which was accordingly performed. But for his iniurie to publike Iustice (being himselse an Officer) and abusing the authority committed in trust to him; the Earle lent for an Executioner, and caused his head to be smitten off by his beds fide. This good Count William, beeing a vertuous Prince, victorious in warre, a man learned, wife, wel spoken, and iudicious, a great friend to peace, gracious to all men, and beloued in all courts, having governed his Provinces 32. years, dyed the ninth day of June 1337, and was buried with great pomp at Valenciennes.

23 william the fourth, fon to the good Earle William, came to his fathers Earle Harle William a worthy sa doms by lawfull fuccession. He was a man of high merit, & a most famous Souldier,

wherof he made good proofe; first against \ the Sarazins and Moores, in the kingdome of Granada : Next, with the Emperor Lewes, and many noble Earles, ayding his brother in lawe Edward the third King of England, against the king of France; thirdly, in ouer-running Lithuania, Liuenia, and warring against the Russian Infidels 1 lading home his men with victory & wealthy spoiles: And lastly, in preuayling against the Frizons, and Robert of Archell Robert of Arckell Go-sernour of gouernour of Virecht: Yet it was his hard hap to be flaine vnknowne (amongest the Frizons) before any could have power to 1346. helpe him : fo that he left no lawfull child to succeede him, and therefore his fifter, (beeing Empresse) remayned his onelie

24 Margaret, wife to Lewes of Bauaria, Mergaret the (then Emperour) and the eldest fifter to Earle William, flayne (as you have heard) by the Frizans, by the Emperors interpofition of his authority, and her ownenatiue right, went downe by the Rhine into Holland, accompanied with a most princely and well-befeeming traine, and was acknowledged to be Ladie and Princesse of Holland, Zeland, and Frizeland. But before her returne back to the Emperor againe, thee constituted both his and her eldest fonne (named William of Bauaria) to bee her Regent there in those Countries, for a fumme of money yearely payed to hen: but remayning vnpayd, the might refume all herrights to herfelfe againe. The Emperor decealing, the Empresse Margaret came thither againe, and had refignation (from her fonne william) of all the aforefaide Countries, retyring himfelfe into Henault, as being well contented there to line : vntill by intestine discord, and dangerous practifes of two intruded factions, called Cabillaux and Hoecks (wherin both nobles and gentlemen did too far enter) the mothers government did grow vnfufferable, and Duke William was recoucred from Henault, to vnder-goe the fole authority. Two very bloody battels were fought betweene the Empresse and her sonne; and in the first, Earle William escaped with great difficultie, and fledde into Holland, for this battell was fought at La Verein Zeland. But in the second, there was fo much bloud spile, that (for three dayes after) the old River of Menfe (at full Sea) was (all ouer) red in that place. The

Empresse (by helpe of a finall Barke) escaped into England; and vpon an agreement afterwards made betweene them: Duke William had the quiet possession of Holland, Zeland, and Frineland affigued him. and the Empresse Margaret had the countie of Henault, where (five yeares after) she ended her dayes, and lyeth buried at Fa-

25 Duke William being peaceably poffeffed of his Seigneuries, according to the former composition, being also Duke of Banaria, Ralatine of Rhine, and Earloof Henault by his mothers death, tooke to wife the Lady Matilda, daughter to Henry duke Matilda, of Lancaster in England, by whom hee had daughter to no children. Much strife, warre, and blody bickering, hapned betweene him and the Bishop of Vtrecht, with shrewd disaduantages on eyther fide; till, by the meanes of fome Noblemen, they were reduced to amitic.

This Duke william (vpon what occasion it could never be knowne) fell diftracted of his fenfes, and flew a Knight with a blow of his fift: fo that hee was thut vp (vnder good Guarde) for ninetcene years ipace, even till he dyed. Having governed his provinces of Holland, Zeland and Frizland (before his madnesse) scauen yeares. and Henault two.

26 Albert of Banaria, brother to Duke William, in the time of his distraction, was tent for from Banaria, and made Gouernor of his brothers Countries, in hope of his recouery, which by no meanes could be compassed. Hee vanquished the Frizons in many rebellions, tooke the towne. The Baron of of Delft, and beheaded the Baron of Eug- headed. hien, vpon smister reformations, which caused great trouble betweene him, and fixe brethren of the faid Baron : but, vpon their reconcilement . Count Albert builded the Chanonry of the Chappell, at the Court of the Hugue.

In his time, a Sea-woman (by reason of great tempests at Sea, and extraordinarie high Tides) was feene fwimming in A Sca-Wothe Zuydenzee; betweene the Townes of man feene in Campen and Edam; which being brought the Zuyderto Edam, and cleanfed from the Sea- zee. moffe growne about her, by her long abiding there: the was like to mother woma, endured to be apparelled, and would food on meats as others did , yet fought the all meanes to escape, and get into the water

Qqq

1441

1301.

Iohn de Reueffe drownd

1301.

The good Easle William

1716. A wonderful dearth.

A Grange ex ample of an vnmercifull fifter.

Agreat effuli-on of blood.

135t. .

The factions

stantly affirme.

1 /04

Philip the

of Burgund

rended. Shee did learne to spinne, and exercise other womanly qualities, beeing daily seene of infinite persons, who have made perfect testimonial of this rare accident, and fignified it for an undoubted truth, auouching, that the lived fifteene yeares, and lyeth there buryed in the Church yard. In the yeare of our Lord, one thousand soure hundred and soure, this famous Prince Albert dyed, after hee had governed his Countries fixe and fortie yeares: nineteene as he was Tutour to his diffracted brother, and twenty seauen as Prince, heire and Lord of those Countries, beeing buryed at the Hague in Hol

Of the Seventeene Provinces.

27 William, fixt of that name, after the death of Duke Abert of Bauaria his father, fucceeded as his immediate heyre. His first wife was daughter to Charles the fift, King of Fraunce, and the dyed yong, without any iffue. He secondly marryed the daughter of John, sonne to Phillip the bold Duke of Burgundy, by whom he had one onely daughter, named Inqueline or lacoba, as the Dutch vieto call her. This Count William wasted Frizeland, spoyled Liege, and prenayled against the Gueldres, and also the Lordes (father and sonne) of Arckell at Gorrichom, and reconciled the Duke of Burgandy to the French King. The Dolphine of Praunce, sonne to King Charles the fixt , marryed Inquiline, Count Williams daughter; but hee being poyfoned, by putting on a shirt of maile, dyed without iffue. As Earle William himfelfe did not long after, being bitten in the leg by a mad Dogge, which huttoould never be cared. So that the Lady laqueline (his daughter, and widow to the Dolphine of Fraunce) was his true heire in all his Seigneuries : Hee gouerned thirteene yeares, and firth buried at Valenciennes in Henault.

28 Jaqueline, or Jacoba; daughter and fole heire to William of Banaria, succeeded her father in all his Barledomes and Seigneuries, beeing then widdow to the Dolphine of France, and yet but nineteene yeares of age. In regard of her youth and widowhood, flie endured much moleftation in her gouernement, chiefly in Holland : for the two factions tooke head againe, and bandled their boldnes on both fides, the Hoeckins fauouring the Counteffes faction, and the Capillantines her e-

agayne, had the not very carefully beene i nemies, by which meanes her rule was greatly disturbed. For John of Banaria (forfaking his Bishoppricke of Liege) fought Iohn of Baus to make himselfe an Earle, and marrie his Liege. Niece Jaqueline (vtterly against her will) and yet to dispossesse her of her rightfull inheritance for which purpose he leagued himselfe with the Cabillantines, and other powerfull friends, who neuertheleffe were flaine in their bolde adventure at Gorrichome. And, to frustrate the Bishops vaine hope, the Pope dispensed her marriage with John Duke of Brabant, albeit he was her neare kinfman, whereby their patrimoniall inheritaces were the more strengthened, and hee acknowledged as their Prince, in Henault, Holland, Zeland, Frizeland, &c. It were needeleffe heere, to relate the following molestations of Iohn of lon of Bauria the Bishop, to his Niece Iaqueline, reckoned the taking on himselfe the title of Earle, and 29. Earle of therefore, (by fome) rancked among the Holland Earles of Holland, or the after-marriages of Lady Inqueline; to the Duke of Glowcester, vnckle to Henry the fixt, King of England: the fourth and last time (in great privacy) to Franke of Borffelle, Lieutevant of Zeland, or her (no meane troubles) by the Duke of Burgundy, to whom shee refigned vp all her Countries. Let it fuf fife, that thee lived in continuall vexationsh increene yeares, and dying at the Hague, was buryed in the Chappell of the Court of Holland.

30 Philip Duke of Burgundie, beeing (both by father & mother) rightfull heire and fuedeflour to the aforenamed Counseffe Liqueline: was thus entitled : Phillip Duke of Bourgogne, Brabam; and Lembourg; The Title of Earle of Flaunders, Artoli, Burgogne, Henault, Holland, Zeland, and Namure: Marqueffe of the holie Empire ; and Lord of Frizeland, Salins and Macklyn. Hee had three wines; by the two first hee had no children; but by the last, named Ifabell (daughter to John King of Portugall) hee had three formes; Anthony and loffe; who dyed yong, and Charles Martin, Earle of The order of Charolois, and successions vinto his father, the golden Flice infli-This Phillip of Bourgogne instituted the order of Knighthood of the golden Fleete, and had much discontent with his sonne Charles, whom (at length) he marryed to the Lady Margaret, fifter to Edward the fourth, King of England. The rebells of Gauns and Bruges dearely felt the Valour

The Earle of

Of the Seuenteene Prouinces.

of this *Phillip*; hee besieged *Callis*, surprized *Luxembourg*, subdued *Liege*; and ouercame the Hamecons. Hee exceeded all his predecessors (dukes of Burgogn) in riches, Seigneuries, height of Pompe and State. He dyed the fift day of June 1467. hauing gouerned about fortie yeares. In his time was the famous Arte of Printing first inuented; the men of Harlem in Holland do challenge the first honour thereof, but it was reduced to perfection at Mentz, by one Iohn Faustus, who had beene feruant to Laurence Ianson of Harlem, as they con-

he Att of

Printing firft

31 Charles, furnamed the Warlike Duke of Bourgogne, fucceeded in all his fathers Titles and Dignities. The Inhabitants of Gaunt relifting him, he brought them vnder obeisance, and descated the Liegeois in battell, which enforced Liege to yeelde to him. He made peace with the French king, who doubted to be detained at Peronne by Duke Charles. Vpon a fresh rebellion of the Liegeois, the duke forced King Lewes to go with him to the fiege of their town; which he ruined, and practifed the like to the house of Brederode. He warred against the Frizons; and carried many Princes in hope of his daughters marriage. The French King, and the Duke, fought to deceine each other, and the Constable of Saint Paul (waxing hatefull to them both) they resolued his ruine, and (on a Truce taken for nine yeares, betweene the King and Duke)the Constable was belieaded at Paris. The Duke warred against the Swiffes, and was defeated by them, both at Granson and Morat, wherewith the Swifles were enriched. The Dake besieged Nancie, and was there flaine in battell, by the treason of the Earle of Campobachio, an Italian; where beging engirt with a great troupe of Lanciers, he received wounds, one in the head, the second in the thigh, and the third in the fundament . Hee left one only daughter and heire.

32 Mary, daughter and heire to Duke Charles, the warrelike Duke of Bourgogne, fucceeded her father in all his Countries: being but eighteene yeares old when hee was flaine before Nancy, wherefore the remained under the charge of the Duke of Cleues, and his brother the Lord of Raue-Steine. The French King Sezied Piccardie & Arthois: and the happing into the Ganthois power, endured much trouble, by

putting her chiefest servants and councellers to death. The Flemings were defea ted, and the yong Duke of Gueldres flaine. Afterward, a marriage was concluded betweene Maximilian Arch-duke of Austria, fonne to the Emperor Fredericke, and the Lady Mary of Bourgogne, albeit the would more gladly have matched with the house of Fraunce.

33 Maximilian, Arch-duke of Austria. and sonne to the Emperout Fredericke, marying the Princesse Mary of Bourgogne; was thereby wedded to much warre and trouble. For, first the Guldres revolted from the house of Bourgogne. Next hap. ned the battell of Guinegate, wherein the Arch-duke was Conqueror: Then, Turnay yeelded to him a truce was taken betweene him and the French King, and the new tumults of the Cabillaux and Hoecks, were also by him pacified. Dordrecht was furprised by the yong lord of Egmont; also, of the Cabillaux and Ho many Townes in Gueldres yeelded to the ecks. Arch-duke: and (not long after) followed the death of the Arch-dutchesse Mary; who had (the first yeare of her matriage, a fonne named Phillip, father to Charles the fift) the fecond yeare a daughter, called Margaret, betroathed in her infancie, to Charles the Dolphine of Fraunce, sonne to Lewes 11. and the third yeare, a sonne named Frances, according to the name of Fraunces Duke of Brittaine his godfather. Maximilian being chosen King of the Romans, he made Engelbert Earle of Nassau, Earle of Nassault Gouernour of the Netherlands in his abfence: and afterward, vpon the hold infolency of the Ganthois and Brugois (keeping the K.of Romans prisoner) Albert duke of Saxony, was made fecond governor of the Netherlands,& General for the Emperor Fredericke against the Flemings. But Frederick dying, his fon Maximilia succeeded him in the Empire, by which means Philip of Austria, sonne to Maximilian, inherited his right in Holland, Zeland, Frizeland, &c.

34 Phillip, second of that name, being

16. yeares olde, and succeeding his father

Maximilian, Emperor in the Netherlands,

Qqq2

had these Titles : Philippe Arch-duke of Austria , Duke of Bourgogne, Lothier, Bra- The Titles of bant, Styria, Carinthia, Lembourg, Lux- Philip, Arch-Duke of Auembourg, and Gueldres; Earle of Haf- Rria. pourg, Flaunders, Arthois, Bourgogne, Ferrette and Kiburch; Palatine of Henault, Holland, Zeland, Namure and Zuiphen:

Marquesse

1479.

1482.

1194.

1497.

1515.

1419.

Of the seventeene Provinces.

7 Booke Marquesse of the holy Empyre, and of bloody edict from the Emperor, against Bourgogn; Landtgraue of Elfaten, Lord of the Netherland protestants, and then was Windifmarke, Portnean, Salynes, & Mack-

lyn. Vppon his full polletion of the Netherlands, peace was made between him, and Charles the eight. King of France; war happing betwixt the Arch-duke and the Duke of Guelders, great inconveniences followed thereon : but Duke Albert being 1503. flaine before Groningen, the Arch-Duke inherited the Realme of Spain by his wife,

being made King of Castile, & George duke of Sazony (being then made Gouernor of the Netherlands, for the Arch-duke Phillip) continued the Warres in Frizeland. For, youn the death of Ifabell, Queene of I ine daughte Castile, Iane her daughter being the onely to Habel mar ried voto the heyre, and married to the Arch duke Phil-

Arch duke Philip. lip; the hereby inuested him in the realms of Spaine, Leon, Granada, &c. as absolute 1505. King. But he enjoyed that Dignitie not 1506. long: for in the yeare 1506, the 27.day of September, he dyed (fodainly) in the Citty of Bourgos, suspected to bee poyfoned. After the death of Phillip King of Castile, the Emperor Maximillian took vpon him

the government of the Netherlandes, as Guardian vnto Charles and Ferdinand, his Grand children, being the fons of Phillip and Jane, King and Queene of Castile. 35 Charles of Austria, second of that name, fucceeded rightfully in al his fathers 1508. Lands and Seigneuries, and by the Empe-

rors appointment, his daughter the Lady Margaret (Dowager of Sauoy, and Aunt to the Princes Charles and Ferdinand) was Regent of the Low countries. Afterward, Prince Charles took possession of the Netherlands, and being crowned K. of Spaine and Arragon, soone after followed the marriages, and the relecte of Widdowes death of the Emperor Maximillian, and in

an affembly at Francfort, for choyle of a new Emperor, Charles king of Spaine had free election by the name of Charles thes. Then was Lady Morgaret (widdow both of Castile and Sauoy, and Aunt to the Em-Lady Marga peror Charles) accepted as fole governesse ret fole gouer of the Netherlands, in her Nephewes abfence. Troubles hapned in Spaine, by rea-

fon of the Kings departure thence, & not onely warre in Frizeland, but likewife betweene the French and Bourguignons.as also the warres of Boores or Peazants in Germany; and the Groningeois rejecting 1526. the Duke of Gueldres, did yeild themselues to the Emperor: then hapned the second

the imperial diet at Ausbourg, where the protestant Princespresented the confession of their faith. After followed the denouring inundation in the Netherlandes. and the death of the Lady dowager Margaret, whereby Mary of Austria, second daughter to King Phillip, and Queen Iane of Caftile, succeeded in the government of the Netherlands. War hapned betweene Mary of Ap the Emperor and the French king, but vp- this. on the coming of queene Elenor of France 1544. to the Emperour her brother, peace was concluded betwixt them. 36 While Mary of Austria governd the Netherlands, for the Emperor Charls her brother, great troubles hapned vnto the Protestants by opposition of the Pope & Emperor against them. The Emperor af-1549. tected the Empire for Prince Phillip his fonne, which bred a quarrell betwixt the Emperor, and his brother Ferdinand king of Hungary, to whom the Princes of the Empire were more enclined, then to Phillip; and then the Protestants denied their comming to the Councel of Trent. Philip King of Spaine married Mary queene of England: And not long after, the Emperor refigned the Netherlands to his fonne King Phillip (whereby he was reckned the 36. Earle of Holland, Zeland, &c.) and the Empire to his brother Ferdinand, King of the Romans and Hungary, departing out of the Netherlands, to end his dayes quietly in a Monastery, not far from Placentia. Referring an hundred thousand crowns yeerely to himfelfe, employing four thoufand for his dyet and maintenance, appointing the rest vnto young Maydens 15561

and Orphanes, hee not living about two

yeares after. When not onely happe-

ned his death, but likewise the deathes of

the Queenes Dowagers of France and

Hungary, as also of Mary Queen of Eng-

bert, Duke of Sanoy, and Prince of Pie-

mont, was Gouernour, and Lieutenant

Generall of the Netherlandes, for King

Phillip: till the King of Spaines marriage

(beeing turned into teares, by the most

vntimely death of the French King) cau-

fed Margaret of Austria, Bastarde to the

Emperor Charles the fift, and Dutchesse

land; after whome, succeeded her Sister Elizabeth Q. Elizabeth. In which time, Emanuell Phile- of England

flard fonne to the Emperour Charles the

fift) as gouernor for K. Philip in the Netherlands, all the Provinces whereof were vnited at the pacification of Gand; whereup-

Iohn Luwregui, a bakerupt-merchants fer-

uant, who was inffatly flain, but the prince Orange that escaped that attempt with life. Afterward he was traiteroufly murdred by Balthagar

Chap. 30.

1199.

Gerard a (high Bourguignion) at Delft in Hilland : whereon, Prince Maurice(be-The Prince or ing his Sonne) fucceeded his father in the Orange murgovernment. Then followed the fiege of Antuerpe, in which time, the States once more, re commended their cause to the Queene of England: eyther to give her the full Soueraigntie of the Netherlands, or else to succour and releeve them with her forces, vpon good conditions offered. Her Maiesty graunted to send them assistance, but no loueraignty or protection of them, would the take vpon her: whereupon, certaine cautionarie Townes and Skonces were deliuered up to her, for repayment of fuch fummes of mony, as should be difburled by hir, and Articles of couenant let downe betweene them. Alfo, Robers Lord Dudley, Baron of Denbigh, and Earle of Leicester, was appointed by the Q.of England, to be her Gouernour generall, ouer the English powers in the Netherlands.

In the time of the earle of Leicesters gouernement for the Queene, were fundrie worthy feruices performd by the Earle of Effex, fit Iohn Norris, the Lord Willoughby, fir Phillip Sidney, fir William Ruffell, dec. besides the subtile pretences of sir Welliam Stanley, Rowland Yorke, Patton, and others, who held faire weather with the Earle of Leicester, and had the government of Zutphen skonce, and the itrong towne of Dewenter (to the great diflike of the States) yet performed no such matter, as the Earles hope was perswaded of them: for, after the death of that matchles noble Gentleman fir Philip Sidney, he being that before Zutphen, & therof dying the Earle of Leicester (being gone for England) both Deuenter & Zusphen Skonce were delinered up to the Spaniards, by base corruption of money. And (not long after) the Prince of Parma beleagring Schuice; by composition it was also yielded up, after it had endured 17000 cannon shot & more. Beside, vpon some discontentment, betweene the Earle of Leicester, and the States; the Queene called home the favd Earle into England. and the Lord willoughby remained there Generall of the English forces. The sundry worthy feruices, both by him, and the English performed, with the Spanish vndoubted hopes of Englands Conquest, in the dreadefull yeare, one thousand fine hundred eightie and eight, Prince Manrice his entrance into the Netherlands re-

giment, and the Dukes of Parmaes warres in Fraunce; all these do I passe ouer . referring such as desire farther satisfaction therein, to the large Historie of the Netherlands.

The Prince of Parma dying at Arras (after his retreate from Rouen) the second of September, one thousand fine hundred ninety and two: Maurice of Nassau,borne Prince of Orange, Marquesse of La Vere, and of Flushing, &c. was made great Captaine and Admirall generall of the vnited Provinces in the Low-countries, by the Estates : and Ernestus, Archduke of Auftria, was also made Lieutenant Gouernour, and Captaine generall for Phillip of

Prince Maurice prouing very successéfull in his warrelike attempts, a Renegate or Apostate Priest (in the habite of Souldiet) was corrupted (by the Arch-duke Ernestus) to murther the Prince Maurice at Breda; and vpon his owne confession Prince Misthereof, he was executed at the Hage. Afterward, vpon Prince Maurice his valiant twice, furprizall of Gronning, Ernest us had dealt in like maner with a Souldier, named Peter de Four (who had sometime served in the companie of the Guarde to Prince Maurice) to vndertake the murthering of him at Lillo: the which treason being confessed by the man himselfe, he was executed in the towne of Berghenup-zoom. Here might be much faid of the honorable fernices of fir Frances Vere, and others, but Sir Frances our purposed breuitie is the onely imbar- vere. ment; and the Netherlands Historie (at large) may thereof discharge me. The Arch-duke Erneftus dyed the twenty one day of February, one thousand five hundred ninety and fine; Mondragons forces defeated by Prince Maurice, and La Motte flaine before Dourlaus : the Estates (vnder the king of Spaine) gladly fought peace with the vnited Provinces, and fent Articles in writing to Prince Maurice, for confideration of their motion. This was not done, but youn good aduice in the King of Spaine, perceiuing the Netherlands. and Prince Maurice his great fortunes against him, adding every day, (more and more) to his vtter abolition thence. Hereupon, Albertus the Cardinall, brother to Albertus deceased Ernestus, and Arch duke of An- Arch Duke of Auftin. firia, was fent (by the King) to gouerne there for him; many Easterlings and Netherland (hippes, which had beene stayed) in Spaine to meete the Indian fleete, were fodainely released; and Phillip of Nassau (who is now Prince of Orange and Earle of Buren, that had long time beene restrained of his liberty in Spaine) for the better countenancing of th'intended busines, he likewise was sent along with the Cardinall

The Cardinall being made Governour for the King of Spaine, tooke Callice from the French King, as his first peece of feruice: but for loffe thereof, he recovered La-fere from the Spaniards. Whereupon, the Cardinall besieged Hulff in Flanders, Hulft befiedgwhich yeelded in the end : but it was a deare purchase to the Cardinall, for this fiege, (continuing fome two moneths) cost him the lines of about three-score valiant Captaines, besides other Commanders, Collonels, and men of marke, and aboue five thousand well appropried soul-

Then did the King of Spaine dispense with himselfe for payment of his debts, which made many Merchants in Spaine, Ibourg, to become Bankerouts. A league was made betweene the French King, the Queene of England and the States, against the Spaniards; and then did Prince Maurice go to Tournhoult, where the Earle of Varax was flaine . Amiens also was furprized by the Spaniards; but soone besieged and recourred by the French King. albeit the Cardinall did offer succour, which proued in vain. Prince Maurice befieged, and tooke the Townes of Alpen, Meurs, Rhinberg, Groll, Brefort, Enfcheyde, Oldenzeel, Otmar fom, Goot, and Lingen; all which services he performed in three moneths. Then happened another treacherous plot, against the life of Prince Man. rice, by perswassion of the Iesuites of Damay, and undertaken by Peter Panne, a Cowper by trade; but being then a Broker or Bankerout Merchant, who having received the Sacrament to performe the deede, eyther with knife, ponyard, or pifoll: the Prouinciall of the Ichites made a long Sermon, to encourage him in the action, and affuring him of Paradice, if he performed it, vied theie words to him befices; Goe in peace, for thou shalt goe like an Angell, in the guarde of God . But the man (being terrified in conscience) discouerd

the whole treason, without any compulfion, and was therefore executed at Leyden in Holland. The King of Spaine growing weake and fickely, gaue his Daughter the Infanta, named Ifabella Clara Engenia, in marriage to the Arch duke and Cardinall Albertus, with transaction of the Netherlands and Bourgogne : whereupon he left his Cardinalles habite, and went to fetch the Infanta. Soone after dyed the King of Spaine, on the thirteenth day of king Philip. September, in the yeare of our Lord God 1598. beeing seauentie one yeares olde, and foure moneths. The Arch-duke and the Infanta being

come into the Netherlands, had their in-Stallment at Bruffells, Louaine, Antwerpe, &c. The Emperour fent to the States, concerning a peace, but their resolution helde to make warre in Flaunders . Then happened the fiege and memorable battaile of Nieuport, where Prince Maurice The bastale tooke diuers Fortes from the Spaniards, and ouerthrew the Arch-dukes Armie, he beeing there in person : but gladly fled away, leaving his Armes, Horsie of Comtaly, Antwerpe, Amsterdam, and Middle. bate, all his Houthold, Artillery, and baggage behinde him, and loft fixe thousand men, besides eight hundred taken prisoners, among whom was Don Francesco de Mendoza, Admirall of Arragon, Marqueffe of Guadaleste, and Lieutenant generall of the Arch-dukes Army, who was ledde to Oostend : Don Baptista de Villa noua , led to Horne in Holland ; Don Alonzo Ricquell, to Delft Don Gonzalo Hernandes de Spinola, to Vtrecht: Don Pedro de Montenegro, to the Haque ; Don Pedro de Valafco , to Berghen, with Don Francisco de Tarres, and Don Antonio de Mendoza, and Don Pedro de Leusina, to Enchuisen : besides the Archdukes three Pages, Count Carlo Rezi, Don Diego de Guzman, and Mortier : Don Fedro de Monte-maior, his chiefe Tafter; alfo his Phisition, Barber, Harbinger, Rider, Cook, Porter, Grooms of his Chamber, most of the Archers, Halberdiers of his Guarde, and (in a maner) all his houthold; with three Priests or Monkes; forty Auncients, and thirty feauen Pentioners, tearmed (by them) Ancients and Sergeants reformed. Hee loft also fixe peeces of Ordinance, one hundred thirty and fixe Enfignes of foote taken, and fine Corners of horfe, comprehending the Mutiners Standard, and the recoverd loft Colours.

Moreo-

1585.

The Earle of Leicester.

Siz Philip Sid stey (laine, 1587.

Schuice.

The Lord
Willoughby.

1488.

ince Mau

therland

Moreouer, on the Archdukes fide were flaine, the Earle of Saume, the Earle of La Fere, the Seneshall of Montelimar, the Baron of Pimereull, Chaffy Ottingny, fon to the President Richadot; Don Galbar de Sapens, Colonell, who dieds at Oastend, Don Diego de Torres, Don Gaspar de Loyaze, Don Gonzalo d'Espinola, Don Ioan de Parde, Don Garcia de Toledo, Don Lopode Capeta, Don Alonzo Carcamo, Don Louis Faccardo Sebastian Velasco, Sebastian Doteloa, Christianall Verduques, Mattheo d'Otteuille, Ioannettin de casa nueua, the Paymafter Alines, and many other neuer kno-

Prince Maurice and the States loffe.

728

Prince Maurice and the States', at the first encounter in the morning, and lastly in the battel, loft about 2000. men, among whom were Bernard, Couteler, & Hamelton, Captaines of horse, and some twentie Captaines offoot, but no man of marke or special note. In this brane exployte at Nieuport, the vertue and valor of Sir Frances Vere Generall, and Sir Horatio Vere his Brother, Colonell, will for cuer bee remembred.

The occurrences in the following years as the beliedging of Oastend, the enterprize on Flesigne, the practise to sacke Antwerpe againe, Grane yeelded vp vnto Prince Maurice; also his honorable offers to the towne of Sluice, and it being veel. ded to him vpon composition, even in the view of the Archdukes army: they require a larger field of discourse, whe by this breuity can be admitted. Proceed we then to speake of the long continued stedge at Oastend, which lasting three whol years and eleuen weekes, was at last compounded withall, and on the twentie two day of September, 1604. yeelded to the Arch-

duke. What numbers were flain in this long continued fiege of Oast-end, can hardly be gathered, albeit, a note was found in a Commissaries Pocket (who had bin slain the scuenth of August, 1604. before Ouftend) wherein were divers good obseruations stefpecially concerning the Arch-Dukes Campe, and also what number (of each degree) dyed and were flaine therein, during this fiedge, vntill the yeilding vp thereof, viz) Masters of the camp scuen; Colonels fifteene; Sergeant Ma- The Arch. iors twenty nine, Captaines 565. Licute- Oallend nants 1116. Enfigns 322. Sergeants 1911. Corporals 1166. Lansprizadocs 600. Soldiers,54663. Mariners 611. women and Children, 119. all amounting to 72124. persons.

To continue the memory of this long fiedge, as also the winning of Sluice; counters (of Siluer and Copper) were made in the vnited Prouinces, bearing (on the one fide) the figure of Oastend, and on the other, the Towns of Rhinberke, Grane, Sluice Ardenbourg, with the Forts of I fendyke & Cadfant, with this inscription round about ; Plus triennio obsessa, hosti rudera, Patria quatuor ex me vrbes dedi. Oastend being more then three years befiedged, gaue the enemy an heape of stones, and so her Natine Countrey foure Townes. Another Counter. concerning Sluice, had these wordes on the one fide, Traxit, duxit, dedit, Anno 1604. And with the Armes of Zeland on the other fide, were these words : Beatus populus cuius adiutor Deus. For the following yeares, from 1604. to 1608. I find no especiall or memorable accidents; but an enterprize by Prince Maurice, on the river of scheld and Antwerp, with the taking of the Castle of Woune, neere vnto Berghen Vp zeome; Spinolas taking of Linghen, with an attempt on Berghen & Groll, taken by composition,&c. For a treaty of peace happening betweene England and Spaine, the like also chanced to be talked on concerning the Netherlands, and many other meetings were made to bring it to effect. At length it was brought to paffe, by the labour and endeuor of a Friar (as it was reported) who made manie errands between Spaine and the Netherlands, vntill it was accomplished. Since when, nothing hath hapned of any confequence, but the taking of the Towns of Guliohe in Germany, where the Prince Maurice did behaue himselfe very hono.

cople of Pa

THE

1009. 160



The Eight Booke.

CHAP.I.

Containing, a breefe discourse of the Orioinall of the Venetians; the foundation of Venice, and how is bath beene gouerned from the yeare of our Lord, 421. to this

🔂 🚳 Istoriographers who

haue written of the Venetians, doe not agree together in their true Originall. For some doe write, that they are descended of the Venetian Gaules, inhabiting a-Jong the Ocean fea in little Britaigne, cal led Armorica, whereof one of the principall Citties (beeing a Byshops See) was called Vennes. Others, and (among them) Titus Liuius, born in Padua, affures vs, that they came forth of Paphlagonia, and that Philemon their Captaine (being flayne at Troy the great) they went with Antenor into Italy. Others write, that this Nation, having beene neighbours to the Cappado cians, and venturing fight with the Cimmerians, they hazarded farre further vppon the Adriaticke Sea in their Fortune . The most common opinion, is of them, who

changing of a Letter) were called Venitians, or Venetes. First of all, they expelled the Enganeans

fay, that the Hinitians or Henetes came

with Antenor; and, in fometime after (by

who inhabited this country, between the People by the Adriaticke sea and the Alpes, and builded the Citty of Padua. Afterward, by fuccesse | fea, rowardes of time, they increased in such fort, as they the Alpes. would not be fatisfied to be Masters (onely) of that which had appertained to the Enganeans (confisting of thirty foure fayre Citties and Townes;) but intruded farther, to leize on Breffano and Forli. Some report this Countrey to be bounded with the Rivers of Pau, and that of Adde, as alfo the Lake of Guard, anciently called the Benacke, the Alpes, and the Adriaticke fea.

And so the ancient Venitians in this maner, extended their Dominion, both in longitude and latitude, in the most pleafant Countrey of Italy: but the feating of the places did daily beget the elder estate of the Venitians hatred. For on the one fide, the ordinary robberies of the Libermians, and on the other fide, the frequent and frightfull courses of the Barbarians, land D.I natia, did hinder them from any long time of continuing in quiet. For, without these impeachments, this Nation had bin most fortunate, in conquering (by the right of Warre)one of the most goodly & beautifull regions in all Italy.

Now ouer & beside, that on the fouthfide, it is enuironed with a most calme of Venice, & circuire of the fea. and in regard thereof, capacity there is the most capable of receining al strange Merchandizes : fo it is likewise Watered with very delectable rivers, wherby whatsoeuer commeth from the Sca, is easilie transported to the very Nauel of the Prouince. It aboundeth in Pooles, Ponds, Forrests, and vnder-woods, & the whole Land is choifely fertile in Corne, Wine,

Liburnia, the countrey of Croatia, betweene litria,

fiege at Oaft

zfot.

602. 1604

Chap.i.

The first Church built

men the firft

Founders of

Venice.

Oyle, and all kindes of fruites. It is also | themselves to the Marshes or Fennes of plentifully stored with Countrey houses, Townes, Citties, and Villages, Castles, Fortes, and fuch like, verie commendable for the scituation & enclosure of their Walles.

These new inhabitants', when their weake estate beganne to grow in fayrer forme: they were fildom exempted from the Warres and incursions of strangers. For, after many bolde infolencies of the Barbarians, with continued Warres a gainst each other, even from their verie beginning, vntill the time of Attila: they were yet much more dreadfully encumbred, with the furious affault of the Goths, a Tempest farre exceeding in turbulency, all other former difasters happening vnto them whatfocuer. For first, the Hunnes (a people of Scythia, dwelling neere to the Riphean Mountaines) conducted by Attila, the Sonne of Mandlucke, dispersed themselues ouer Italy, and making horrible spoile wheresoeuer they went, fell into the Province belonging to the Venitians. After a long fiedge, they tooke the Citty of Aquilea, and spoyled and burnt it wholly. In like manner did they alfo ruinate the two Citties of Concordia and Altina, and almost all the Venitian re-

At the fearefull newes of this Warre. the Venitians were more amazed then any other, and so much the rather, because they had beene formerly inured, to fustaine their cheefest mishappes amongest the Barbarians. Whereupon it is faid, that (euen then) a great number of perfons withdrew themselves from the firme Land, to the Isles where Venice at this instant is builded : hasting thither from all other parts, especially vppon the arrivall of this cruell enemy Attila.

Some (of the better fort of Padua) first beganne the retreate, and being come to the entrance or iffue of the River, which was then very deepe (whence the name of Kialto hath remaind to the fame place, as deriued of the word Rinealto) they there laide the first foundation of the Cittie of

The meaner people of Padua, enforced by the felfe-fame feare; fled thence, and beganne to people themselves in Chieggia, Malamocco, and Albiola. Som of them of Aquileia (at the fame time) betooke Grada; and, vpon the fresh returne of Attila, the people ran (in mighty affluence) along the Coastes to the Neighbouring Isles. They of Aquileia bestowed themsclues in Grada, a place necrest vnto firme land, yet engirt with Waters. They that fledde from Concordia, made vse of Coarli and the Attinois, fixe little Islands neere to one another, which they gave names vnto, acording to the names of the gates of their former lost and ruined Citties: to wit, Torcello, Maiorbo, Buriano, Muriano, Amiana, and Gonstantiace.

Thefe fenerall places, where at this prefent the Citty of Venice is feated, were (in flate of the elder times) very straight or narrowe Iflands, and neere vnto each othersfauing randeth. onely that they were separated by the pleasing course of Rivers, which ranne into, and returned againe from the Sca. according to the changes of his fluxe and refluxe. Nor in these straights were then any dwellings to bee differred, but onely of Sea-Fowles, that flew thither from the Seas, to disport themselves vppon the Sunny bankes; and Fisher-men likewife, would fometimes there put in for harbour.

The Paduans, that tooke vp the Rialto, were the first that beganne to builde, and The first bulk it was in the very fame place, where the nice, and at first foundation of the Citty was layde . what time. Namely, the fine and twentieth day of March, in the yeare of our Lord, 42 1, and second yeare of the reigne of Pharamond. first King of the Gaules or French-mengin the time also of Pope Boniface the first. and of the Emperour Honorius, Whereby it plainly appeareth, that at one and the felfe-fame time, began both the kingdome of France and the Commonwealth of Venice. And that both the one and the other have continued to this prefent, for twelue hundred yeares, very little, either more or leffe.

This Citty fo newly begun, encreased dayly both in people and buildings. But fee what happened uppon a fodaine, a Greeke Carpenters house (or rather hee stroyed by fire was one of the Shipwrights, named Entinopus) falling on fire, confumed in a moment (with a violent & continuall embracing)24 faire new built houses. Which when these new come inhabitants perceiued,& fearing that heaven was offended

getting God, and feruing their owne appetites. They fell all to prayer, and made a solemne vow, to build a Church in the honour of God, and in memory of the Apostie Saint James; at which verie instant time, a mighty tempest of rain (as sodainly fell) whereby the rest of the new begun City was happily preserued.

That Church is yet at this day plainely to be difcerned, with the markes and appearances of great antiquity, euen in the very midft of the Rialto: And it was then confecrated by foure Bylhops, to with Seuerianus by thop of Padua; Ambrose, Byshop of Altina Jocundus, by shop of Treuifa and Epodius, by thop of Pderzo, and a Priest was there appointed, to performe divine Scruice.

The first foundations of this Famous Citty, were men of honest repute, Noble, and rich. For the ancient Venitians, at the chaunge of their abiding, brought with them thither their wives and childre, with the very wealthiest moneables which they had, and so (at leysure) withdrew themfelues, to places of a more secure dwelling. But being impeached (by incursions of the Hunnes) to Till the groundes vpon the fea Coasts; such as had any meanes or apt commodity : gaue themselues to fighting, and to make falt, or to transport the goods of their neighbors a effecting the benefit thereby gotten, to be no more dif-

honest or unbefitting, then to plough and

husband the grounds of others. As for the wealthier for they addicted themselucted traffick Merchandizes with Awangers, and by their frequent advencyring into diders Countries, some of them being very skilfull Minersyand well experienced in the trial of feverall Oares or Mettals hidden in theiground, which by industry and endeuour they found in the earth, became Finers on Tryers of those Mettals, and extracted (from the groffer Substances) the purer perfections of Gold and Silver, whereby, in theyr owne Languare, they well etermed Orifici, derived of the Latine world aurifest, Gold-linithes, or Hammer men, that (of those refined Mertals) could frame Cups, Pors, Rings, Basons, Ewres, or any other needful matter whatfocuer, both for the fernice of God in Churches and Temples, and for the royalty of Emperors, Kings, & Prin-

with this their manner of beginning, for- ces. So that, by the confent of divers good Authors, as Linie, Florus, Casidorus, Trogus Pompeius, and others, the first Gold- in Europ, wer fmiths, workers in Gold and Silver, and in Venice. framers of those excellent mettalles into fuch orderly meanes for vie (within the parts of Europe) lined in Venice, whereas yet (to this day) do remaine the very best ingenious, and perfect workmen for fuch matters (according to the judgement of many) that are to be found in any part of the world: Concerning fuch as remained more ordinarily at home, for care & fafety of the Citty; they applyed their spirits, to denife good lawes and customs for generall benefit. During which time, fuch was their due respect of justice, & so pre- Care of justice cife care of equity and right to all men; as good. among fo great a number of people, there could not bee any diforderly differences

> Catholike religion they fo fingularly commended, and the dayly presence of onin especial fome reverend Prelates, who had faued respect. themselues with their Compatriots; that it augmented (among them) a common affection to picty. And their affiftance appeared veric requifite, not onely for the ministry of holye Offices; but also for retention of the inhabitants of this new City, in ancient picty and religion. Fearing least they might be infected with the polfon of Arrian herefic, because nothing els made more spoile and hauock through all the Province, except the weapons of the Gothes and Hunnes. Such was the beginning of the City of

Venice, and in fuch manner of living, and in fuch exercises the effect her first infancy; till(by her vertues) thee attained vnto greater groweth, and grounded her felfe in her inflant flate and condition. It hath constantly bene held, that this Commonwealth (chermore) retified that forme of gouernmeth which is termed aristorasignification the thoft hoble and worthiell Civitens frould guide and gonern. putat. For, although it be faite; that it hath beite gouerned first by Confills, then by Tribunes, and laftly by Dakes, and Muifters of warlike power; yer horwithflanding, all thefe dignities, being but lective. and not hereditary; the election should (in right) appertain to the most Noble Islan. ders, and Gentlemen of name, by Whose advice the Common wealth ought to be

Mountains in the north pa. & of Scythia, where inow lieth continu

An ancient Citty in that part of Italy, called I orum

The firft foun dation of Venice.

in the fea, and neere adsoy-

Loue of religi

Arifloceatia op

were the firft

in Venice.

The creation

of Fribunes,

andwhat they

tinueth to this day. Confuls, to the number of three, were The gouerne chosen for two yeares, and albeit that this ment of Confuls, and who kinde of Gouernment lasted for about the space of threescore yeares, yet wee finde onely but three confecutive or fucceeding elections of them. The first Consuls, were Albertus Phalarius, Thomas Candianu, and Zeno Daulo. These men first gouerned the Citty in her Nonage, & some are of the minde, that they were the first Authors of the Paduans flight, and their retirement to the Lakish or Marish Isles, as also of their first building there. The second Consuls, were Lucianus Graulus, Maximus, of Marinus Lucius, and Hugo Fuscus. The third, were Marcus Aurelius, Andreas Claudim, and Albinus Maurus. The names of fuch as were elected after thefe, are not to bee found in anie Histo-

After, that the Isles (about the Rialto

were filled with inhabitants: in stedde of Confuls, Tribunes were created, and for their creation, the matter was first debared privately by few people, afterward, it was ordained and refolued in open afsembly of the Islanders: that in each Isle there should be a Tribune, and hee should bee a yearly Magistrate, to render Iustice to the Cittizens, and with leuerity, to punish their offences! But the remaynder which concerned the generalitie of the Common-weale; was referred to the generall affembly of the Islanders, to bee by them determined. Afterward, there was but one Tribune created for government of the Isles, which continued for some yeares. Finally, they concluded to creare ten, wherunto were added two more, who should dwell in Heracles, &cthis Tribunacy dignity held place for more then two hundred yeares. Heere is to bee noted, that the Tribunes of the Illos, abusing their authorities, did fo trouble the State with civill diffentions, as it plainly appeared; that the maine body of the Cittie would be diffoliod, without fome good and immediate remedy. Which gaue occalinn, that (to beare the complaints of chery one) a general affembly of the Illes was published and their meeting to be in

In this affembly, Christophere by thop of Grada was Prefident, accompanyed

managed, even as it hath bin, and stil con- | with a great number of the Cleargie, and after divine service was performed, the first proposition which he made, was, that (for good of the Common-wealth, each man might complaine of the future Tribune, which being done, and the offences no longer to be endured, for publike benefit of the state in generall, resolution was set downe, to make election of a Duke, who should represent all honor and Maiefly in the State or Seigneury, & he shold haue power to affemble the general coun fell, when questions were to be made, of any important matter concerning the Commonwealth. He thould have power alfo, to clect yearely Tribunes or Magistrates in every Isle, and their appellations to bee brought before him. Moreouer, if any should obtaine any dignity, Prelacie, or Benefice, by fuffrages of the Clergy or people: that he should not enjoy it, or be possessed therof, without the good liking and confent of the Duke, whole power al-So ended with his life.

> This being thus concluded, in the year | Who was the 697. Paullucio was created the first Duke: first Duke of and so hath that Ducall dignity continued euer fince. Saue onely that in the yeare 737. after the death of the third Duke Or-(o, it was determined, that no duke shold be clected, for fix yeares, but that a Mafler of the armed troopes or Souldiours should be established, and his Authoritie to be annuall; which lafted no longer then fine yeares. For in the year, 742 they proceeded agains to a Dukes election; and fince that time, the Common-wealth of Venice hath enermote had Dukes & Princes of the Seigneury ; by whole wiledoms (and his counsell affiling it hath bin proferued in an euer flourishing estate, euen to this inflant years, 1619.....

> > CHAP. II.

nder volt aufan die dienskhild. I

A (bors Summary, of the lines of the Dukes and Princes of Venice: And a breusase al-so of she most remarkeable actions, in the times of their Covernment.

DAuluccio Anpapetto, was first Duke of the people, cholen in Heracles. He took

Chap. 2. The Dukes of Venice.

> his Oath before Christophero, Patriarke of flayne his chiefe Maister Theodato: the Grada, to governe according to the lawes, & to regard nothing more then the weale publike. He pacified the difference which Luitprand, king of the Lombards had with K. Aribers, and made friendship with them both: as well by his authority, as by arms. He brought the rebellious Aquileians vn. der obedience, encreased the Citties customes and revenews, and dyed, having beene Duke twenty yeares, fixe moneths,

and eight dayes. 2 Marcello Tegaliano, of the fame place of Heracles, was elected his successour, by common voyce of the people. He was deuoute, modest and affable; but much lesse diligent in gouerning, then his predeceffour. The Patriarchat of Grada was tranfferred into Aquileia in his time, by Luitprand, and there hee had great warres, about the diffentions of the Bithops, wherinto he would not interpose himselfe, but dyed, having beene Duke nine yeares, and

twenty one dayes. 3 Orfo Hipato, anobleman of Heraclea, wonne himselse great reputation by his famous deedes. Paulo the Exarcho had recourse to him, the Gracian Armie beeing broken, and fiege layd to Rauenna by Luitprand. He re-gained Rauenna, made the Kings nephew his prisoner, slew the duke of Vicenza, and reseated the Exarcho in his due rights. Hee brideled the Aquileians, who troubled the publike peace, and put corage into the foules of the yonger fort. He was flaine, by reason of the dissentions of Iefolo, the cleauenth years, and fift monoth of his Principality.

4 Theodato Hipato, forme of Orfo, was proclaimed Duke 5. yeares after the death of his father: during which time, the people were gouerned by a Marshall or Maifter of the Souldiers: and for faking Heraclea, he brought the State to Malamocco. There he was the first created, and limited his Confines with Aftolpho King of the Lombards. He was also flayne by Galla a Cittizen of Malamocco, in the thirteenth yeare of his Principalitie.

5 Galla de Malamocco, a wicked and feditious man, yet thewing himfelfe as Protector of publique peace, was established in the place of Theodate. But his wickednesse being knowne, and that (being but a fubicat) he would needs make himfelfe absolute Lord, having before

people plucked out his eyes, and tooke from him the Dignitie, which hee had a yeare vsurped.

6 Dominico Monegario, of Malamocco, was feated in the steade of Galla . Somewhat to bridle this Dukes authoritie, the people ioyned two yearely Tribunes with him. But he, being a man audacious and arrogant, fought to tyrannize ouer the people : whereat they growing into furle. pluckt out his eyes, the eight yeare of his Principalitie.

7 Mauritio Galbaio, a noble Heraclean, for his justice, wiscdome, and wealth, was chosen to this dignity. He made his sonne Duke with him, and they gouerned together . In his time, the Church of Grada being molested, he sent an Ambassadour to Pope Stephen, to accord the difference. The Bishopricke of Saint Peter de Castello Olivolo, was then erecled. And he died, having governed twenty three yeares.

8 Gionanni Galbaio, hauing bene Duke nine yeares with his father, gouerned the Commonwealth yet nine yeres more, and after the fayd time, hee made Mauritio his fonne, companion with him in the Principality. But they being both of vnfufferable and wicked life, having murthered Iohn Patriarchat of Grada, throwing him downe headling from an high tower: Fortunatus, succession in the Patriarchate, made a conspiracie against them, and another was cleded Duke. Whereat, being not a little confounded, the father fled into Fraunce, and the fonne to Manena, the fixteenth yeate of their rule.

9 Obelerio, being elected Prince by them that had intelligence with Fortuna. tm, tooke his brother Beato as his affociate, and Valentine beside (being their third brother) was admitted with them in the fame dignitic. And it is worth the noting, that of these three brethren, Beato is onelie placed in the ranke of Dukes in the Counfell chamber of Fenice; whereas Obeleria incited Pepin King of Italy, to make warre on the Venetians : and Besto maintaind the Common-wealth, raigning five yeares.

10 Angelo Participatio, after he had wel bornehimfelfe in the warre against Pepin, was elected Duke, the people being fummond to the Ridto. He founded the Dukes palace, in the fame place where that now built, standeth. The division of the Empire

was made in his time, and the Venetians | chio, wasted the County of Rauenna, to releft in their owne liberty. The Citie was divided into wards, streets, and precincts. The Pregadi, and the Quaranta, who (for eriminal offences) was then instituted among them. He gouerned 18. years.

II Giustiniano Participatio, hauing beene an affociate in the dignity with his father, was(after his death)confirmed by the people. Hee repealed home his brother Iohn, who was then at Constantinople, & accepted him as his fellow ruler: hee made the peoples authority greater then before, & gaue ayde to Michael the Emperor against the Sarazins. The body of Saint Marke was in his time brought from Alexandria, accepting it into his protection, and the Church remaining at this day, was confecrated in his memory. He died the fecond yeare of his dignity.

I & Gionanni Participatio, remained in the royalty, and enlarged the Church of S. Marke, placing therein a great number of Priests and Canons, & appointing a Primicerio to gouerne them. Hee caused the head of Obelerio to be cut off, whome hee had befiedged in the lile of Curtia. He made war vpon the Nauratines, and ouercame them. In the end, a conspiracy was | gia. deuised against him, and beeing confined to Grada, in the eight yeare of his Principality; he shaued his head and beard, and made himselfe a Monke, in which estate he dyed.

12 Pietro Tradonico of Pola, hauing carried himselfe to the peoples contentment in the warres against Pepin, was elected Duke. He joyned John his son in rule with him, and gaue fuccour to the Emperor of Constantinople, who made request thereof veares. by Theodofius Patricius. He was made Protoppotary of the Empire: in help whereof. he fent 60. Gallies. Lewes 2. granted him many priviledges, and in the end, hee was | Constantinople, and hee was made Protoflaine by a fedition, in his 27. yearc.

14 Orfo Participatio having appealed the fedition, was made Du. The Turks having fooiled Dalmatia, even fo far as Grada, wer vanquished by him and Gionanni Participationis fon, whom he made affociat with him in his gouernment. Basilim the Emperor, highly honoured him for that good feruice, and made him Protofbatary of the Empire. He gouerned 17. yeares.

15 Giouanni Participatio, being confirmed in his dignity, tooke and burned Comauenge himself on the Count of Comachio, who had imprisoned and wounded vnto death his Brother Bradoario. He growing much ouercome with sicknesse, caused the Church of Saint Cornelius, and S. Cyprian to be built at Malomocco; and having gouerned five yeares, and fixe moneths, renounced the Dignity.

1 6 Pietro Candiano, was elected after the voluntary dismission of his Predecessour. He was a valiant man, and verie expert in Armes; and yet notwithstanding, greatly addicted to denotion. He went (in perfon) with ten Gallies against the Nanratines, who (as Theeues) robbed and purloyned from the Venitians. Fighting valiantly against them, hee dyed at the second time, with the Weapons in his handes. He gouerned no longer then fine

Dominico Tribuno, is set (by some) in ranke with the Dukes : but others, leffe curious in fearch of the History, have omitted him; because he was duke but three moneths, and thirteene dayes, and nothing is remarkeable in his time, but a certaine priviledge, granted by him to Chiog-

17 Pietro Tribuno, fonne of Dominico, was elected Duke. He obtained of Guydo, Emperour and King of Italy, a confirmation of all ancient Priviledges. The Barbarian Hunnes came againe into Italy, and burned Heraclea, Capo de Argier, and Chioggia. This Prince ouercame them, with very much honour : and this was the third time, that those Strangers sought to vsurp on that State. He gouerned twenty foure

18 Orfo Badoaro, called himfelfe Parvicipatio, and was the first that chaunged his name. He fent for his sonne Pietro to spatarie. In the yeare nine hundred and twentie, hee obtained of Rodulphus, Emperour and King of Italy, the confirmation of the Venitians ancient authoritie, to stampe Moneyes. Hee addicted himselfe wholly to piety, and in his 20. yeare, he renounced the Dignitie, to make himfelfe a Monke, and line prinately.

19 Pietro Candiano the fecond, was a worthy man, and made Warre on Lauterio, Marquesse of Istria, who hindred the Trafficke of the Venitians. He opercame

him, and re-conquered the people of Capo d' Litria. He vanquished Albertus, sonne to the Emperor Berengarius, who impatronizing himfelfe of Rauenna, impeached the passage of the Venitians shippes. In his time, Maidens were stollen by the Testaines, to ioyn in marriage with them; but they were soone recovered. He gouerned feuen yeares.

20 Pietro Badoaro, the sonne of Orso, was redeemed by him from the Sclauonians. He gouerned but two yeares and feuen moneths, alwayes in peace, which he much affected. Berengarius the Emperor did him many fauours, for his great de-

TI Pietro Candiano the third, fonne to the fecond Candiano, affociated himfelfe in his dignity with his fonne Pietro: and at two feuerall times armed three & thirty Shippes against the Warentines; but at the second time, he made peace with the. His sonne being reproued by him for his bad behaulour; revolted from him, and against the Common-wealth. The people would have flaine him, but hee was fent thece into exile: wher joyning with Guydo, sonne of Berengarius, hee endangered the Commonwealth: whereat his Father greeuing, died in his fifteenth yeare of gouernment.

22 Pietro Candiano the fourth, being repealed from exile (albeit the people had (worne neuer to receive him) was made Prince with very great applause. He dealt in such fort with Pope John the twelfth. that the Churche of Grada was made Patriarchall, and Metropolitane of all the Venitians State, and of Istria. Otho the Emperor, granted him many honourable priviledges. He mined Vderzo, and was flaine with his Sonne in a fedition of the people, having governed about twentie yeares.

23 Pietro Orfoolo, was a man altogither deuout, and was elected by the people against his will. He would very often walk in an voknownehabit, to visit the houses of poore people and Hospitals. Hee appeafed the diffentions between the Venitians, and them of Cape d'Istria, who yeilding themselues tributary; hee went with Beate Romnaldo of Rauenna, to line Religioufly. He gouerned two years and two months, doing many worthy and charitable decds.

24 Vitale Candiano, Sonne of Pietro the third, made the confederacy with the Em perour Otho. He fell ficke fo foone as hee entred vppon his charge: wherefore hee became a Monke, having governed about

25 Tribuno Memo, was very rich, but no man of State. In his time happened great diffentions, betweene the families of Morefina and Calleprina; by reason whereof, many notorious murthers were committed. He tooke part with the Merifini, which caused the faction to withdraw themselves to Verena, to the Emperor Othe. He gaue the Isle of S. Giorgio Maggiore to the Abbot of Moresini: and renounced the Principality in his twelfth yeare, entering into Religion.

26 Pietro Or seolo the second, beeing 2 very discreete man, ordered the matter fol well with the Emperours Bafiling and lexius: that the Venitians were exempted from Tolles and Taxations. Othe the Emperour lying at Perona, did highly fauour him; and, among other graces, to holde one of his fonnes at Baptisme. Hee was the first that extended their Confines on the Sea, winning many places in Istria and Dalmatia. Having caused the Church and Pallace to be finished in his time, hee dyed in the eighteenth yeare of his Principality.

27 Ottone Orfeelo, hauing Gouerned fome space with his father Pietro, was confirmed in the dignity, at the age of eighteene yeares. He winne fuch reputation. that Geta King of Hungaria, gaue him one of his Sifters in marriage. In person he conquered them of Istria, who were become Rebelles ; and went into Dalmatia, in the enterprize agaynst Cresmura. At length, the malicious enuiers of his glories, deuised a Conspiracie agaynst him, vppon the which, he was confined into Greece, in the feuenteenth yeare of his rule.

28 Pietro Centranico, or Barlolano, fucceeded next to Other. But having not well qualified all diffentions, as well concerning the Cittizens remooning, as the other Neighbours : he was compelled to forfake the dignity, and make himfelfe a Monke. Orfo, Brother of Ocho, returned from Constantinople, beeing Patriarche of Grada, and he was confituted in expectation of Oslos coming. He continued

Rrra

about

about a yeare in the Palace, and forfooke the Principality, newes being brought of Othos death. Dominico Orfeolo would then perforce vsurp, the dignity; but he was expelled by the people the next morning.& died at Rauenna.

736

29 Dominico Flabanico, was elected during his exile, by the faction of them that had excluded Dominico Or/eolo. In his time and in the year 1040. the national Councell was held, for government of the Ecclefiaftickes. He made the family of Orfeolo suspitious to the State, by his owne meanes, and laboured for their vtter supplantation. He gouerned ten yeares, foure months, and twelve dayes.

30 Dominico Contarini was verie pleafing to the people. He brought Dalmatia to peace, beeing heavily burthened with the rebellion of Zara. Hee fauoured the Normans against Robert King of Apulia. And the discord which hapned betweene the Common-wealth, and Papa, Patriarch of Aquileia, was by him qualifyed. Hee builded the Monasterie on the Lido, and dyed in the eight and twenty yeare of his Principality.

21 Dominico Silino, won himselfe such reputation, that Nicephorus, Emperour of Constantinople, gaue him his fifter in marriage; by whose perswasion, he made war vpon the forenamed King Robert of Apulia, and (at the first attempt) returned with a very honourable victory, possesfing himselfe of Duras. But at his second aduenture, hee fought with finall aduantage; whereby enfued the diminution of his credit. He pergetted the Church of Saint Marke with Marble, first and before any other, causing it also to be beautified with an artificiall Checker.worke. He died in the thirteenth yeare of his gouerne-

32 Vitale Faliero being made Duke, he immediately obtained of Alexius, then Emperour, to have the fourraigntie of Dalmatia and Croatia. Henry, successor in the Empire, did him many great fauors : and comming in denotion to Venice, hee helde one of his daughters at Baptisme. The Office of proprieties was constituted in his time, and the workemanship of S. Markes Church continued. He died in his fixteenth yeare.

33 Vitale Michele, by his worthy aduenturing on the fea, did very farre extend the Commonwealths limites. Hee made. the Easterne warre (by the perswasion of Pope Vrbanthe second) for Conquest of the Holy Land, with the Princes of Christendome. The Isle of Smyrna, Suria, and derusalem were then recoursed from the Infidels. He died in his fixt yeare.

34 Ordelafo Faliero, Sonne of Vitale, affifted King Baldwine against the Infidels in conquest of the holy Land: and made fuch progression, as they deuided the Empire betweene them, thoroughout all the kingdome of Indea. In the 8. yeare of his Principality, Malomocco was almost albur ned and submerged; by reason whereof, the Episcopal See was transferred to Chioggia. He went in person to the Warre against Zara, which was becom rebellious, and winning the victory : he would needs returne thither againe a second time, and on the like occasion; where hee died in Armes, in the fifteenth yeere of his Prin-

35 Dominico Michele, being made Duke for his high repute and merite, went to giue aide to the Christians in the Holie Land. With 200. well appointed thippes and Gallies, he made the Infidels to raife their fiedge from before Joppa. Hee tooke Tyre, which he gaue to Vaumoud Patriarch of lerufalem. Emanuel the Emperor made war against him, fro whom he won Chie, Rhodes, Samos, Mitylline, and Ifter. He renounced his principality, in the 13. yeare

36 Pietro Polani, kiniman to Michele, was a very wife man, infomuch as he was made Arbitrator of the diffrence, between Conrade and Emenuel the Emperour. Hee made war against them of Pifa & Padua, whom he conquered. He armed himselfe against the Duke of Apulia, in behalfe of the same Emanuell, to whose Empire hee added many worthy possessions!. Some fay it was his fonne that won all the bat tailes, and that himfelfe being falne ficke, returned thence, and dyed in his 18. yeare

37 Dominico Moresini, hee swept the Gulfe of certaine Pyrats of Ancona, the cheefe whereof beeing called Guiscardo, was taken and hanged. Hee layed fiedge vnto Pola, which he tooke, with Parenzo; which Citties were become rebellious in Iliria. Heheld confederacy with Williamking of Sicily, of whom hee obtayned many exemptions for the Trafficke of his | many Venitian Marchants. Hee renoun-Merchants. Zara made the Metropolitane Cittle (at his instance) and hee so prevayled, that Dominico his Sonne was made an Earle. Hee beautified the Buildinges of the Cittie of Venice, and began the Tower of Saint Marke. He dyed feauen moneths after the eight year of his

38 Vitale Michele the second, subdued the Tarentines, which now liad robelled the third time! He imprisoned Verich, Patriarch of Aquileia, and twelve Chapons. In an hundred dayes, he put forth an hundred Gallies, and twentie Shippes on the Sea, against the Emperor Emanuell. The great Family of the Instiniani, were, in his time brought to one onely man, and hee was become Religious; whom hee tooke foorth of his Monastery (by the Popes confent) and gaue him his owne daughter in marriage, because hee woulde not haue fo worthy a house to be extinct. Ther hapned a great Pestilence in his time, the occasion whereof, the people (in theyr weake judgment) laid vpon him. He was wounded, and dyed, having governed fenenteene yeares, and xxvii. daies.

39 Sebastiano Ziani, was the firft that ener was clotted by the eleanen Electors. In his time there was a great Schilme in the Church, by meanes of the Emperour Fredericke Barbarolla, who caused Alexander the third to forfake the See, Octanian having bene made Anti-pope, Alexander made his retirement to Venice, where having a long time ferued in the Monastery of La Charitaghe was in the end knowen, and taken thence by the Prince and Scigneury. Heereupon, Barbaraffa made warre against the Venetians: but his sonne Ostanian being taken, he mediated reconciliation betweene them. He died in the fift yeare of his government.

40 Orio Malipiero, or Mastropetro, was the first Duke elected by the foreyand for that purpose was created by the death of Ziami. Hee had fixe Councellors allowed him to authorize his deliberations. He reconquered Zara, that had now the fourth time rebelled. Hee fent fupply varo the Christians against the Moores, who began to viurpe in the holy Land 88. yeares after that Baldwine had delinered it. Ptolomais was recovered, and Andronicus, fuccessor to Emanuel the Emperors deliverd

ced the Principality in his 14. yeare and entred into Religion.

41 Henrico Dandolo was likewise elected by the forty. They of Zara were once againe vanquished, and Pola conquered In his time was the furprizall of Constantinople, & the acquisition of the East Empire, wherein hee affifted the Princes and French Barons. He died in his thirteenth yeare, being Generall of all the Christian pertinger to according to

42 Pietre Ziant Conne of Sebustian was made Duke within a while after the death of Dandole; the Correctors beging then first instituted. In his time came Ambasfadors from Mithews and Achain to fubmit themselues in obedience to the Common wealth. Candio was then peoplet with a Colony of noble Ventians. He manyed Constance daughter to Tangred R. of Sicily. In thound, he renounced the Principaliry, hading gouerned 24 yeares.

43 Giacomo Tiepolo; was made Dake by chance, in concurrency of Reniery Candelo, who had as many voices as he . Candie rebelled, and the feditious were fenerely chafufed. Zara, that had long borne the yoke, was now reduced under obedience. He had Warre against them of Forrara, and against Exzeline, who would trave innefted himfelfe with Pades. In conclusion, he gaue ouer the Principaly in his 20. yeare, and died soone after. 3.75 da.

44 Marino Morefini, was made Duke by the one and fortith, by reason of the precedent concurrence. In his time was another Courtly Noble man fint into Candie, who builded the Canes. He made Warre against Exzeline, who besiedged Manna, and who (in a furious rage) caufed 1200. Paduans to be hewne in peeces, which he had with him then in his armie. He died in the 4. year of his Principality.

45 Reineri Zeno Podesta at Bermeer, was elected Duke, and fent to be fetcht thence with foure Gallies. Vnder him, the Commonwealth wonne a famous victorie, against them of Genes: but the contentment therewith was very breefe, because Michaell Paleologus, expelled both the French-men and Venitians out of Con-Stantinople, being ayded by the Geneway forces, which was eight and fifty yeares after the furprizing of the fayde Cittle : yet once more (after that) the felfefame people

Chap.2.

people were againe reconquered: and ha- | yeare, having governed ten months, and uing gouerned this dignity 16, yeares, he

46 Lorenzo Tiepolo was made Duke, in memory of the victory hee had against them of Genes at Tyre. Hee allyed two of his fonnes(verie Nobly) with two strange Ladies: by reason whereof, a Lawe was then made, that the like might not be afterward done. He brought Serais in obedience to the Common-wealth, and the Bolognians were vanquished by him : hee governed feuen years, and fine and twen-

47 Giouanni Contarini, being aged eightie yeares, and Atturney of S. Mark, was made Duke. The law against illegittimates was then enacted, and they excluded from all publike Offices. There were fome rebellions moved in Istria, and by them of Genes, but they were quickely appeafed. At length, thorough vnwelidineffe of age, and by aduice of the Senat, hee gane ouer the dignity, having governed in this authority, fourc yeares, and fix moneths.

48 Gionanni Dandolo was clected, being then absent. The Citty was (in his time) much afflicted by water, & an earthquake. He made warre in Istria, agaynst the Patriarch of Aquileia, and the Count of Goritia. At the instance of Pope Nicholas he affilted the Archbyshop of Tripoli with 25. Gallies. He died seuen monthes after his eight yeare of rule.

49 Pietro Gradanigo, a man of great corage, delivered the Common-welch from two important dangers. One, was a high difgrace, which happened in a battell against them of Genes. The other was the conspiracie of Balamonte, which was bold ly checked with weapon in hand, uppon the place of S. Marke. It was then ordayned, that Noblemen onely should gouerne, and the counfel of ten was then in-Assured. Having ruled 22. years, and nine months, he dyed.

50 Marino Giorgio, was a man of fuch life, that they termed him a Saint. Fenice was continually excommunicated in his time, by reason of the taking of Ferrara. Zara rebelled again the fixt time, & much labour it cost, to reduce it vnder obedience againe. After he builded the Mona-Story of Saint Dominicke, and died (at the lage of eighty and one yeares) in his first

ten daves.

52 Gionanni Seranze, had the honor of recovering Zara, and many other places; which had revolted in his predeceffours time. Negropout, was re-obtained, & war afresh commenced against them of Genes, The excommunication was quitted from Venice, by the interpolition of Francisco Dandolo, kneeling before the Pope, with a Chaine of iron about his necke. The number of Atturneyes of S. Marke, was increased to fixe. Hee governed fixteene yeares, and fix months.

52 Francisco Dandole, who had fo lowly humbled himfelfe for his Countreyes good, was therefore exalted to her highest dignity. They of Pola, and of Valefia; fubmitted themselves to the Commonwealth, which gaue way vnto the warre against the Patriarch of Aquilea. Padua was taken on Albert Scaliger, and Trenifa. and the County remained to the Common-wealth. This man was of the league with the Christian Princes, against the Turke, and in his time were fixtie feuerall Ambaffadors at Venice. He gouerned ten yeares, and ten months.

55 Bartolomeo Gradenige, Atturney of S. Markey was made Duke at feuenty fix yeares of age, by the intercession of Atdrea Dandolo, and his cellation. In his time was Venice myraculously deliuered from a mighty imminent inundation's Candie rebelled, and the rebelles were feuerely punished. Therehapned a great dearth mithe Citry, which drove the people to discontentment: he dyed in his fourth yeare.

34 Andrea Dandolo, who had before religned his place vnto Bartolomeo Graningo, caused the dearth for to cease; by fending for great store of Corne out of Sicily. Hee obtained of the King of Babylon, free Nauigation into Egypt. Zara rebelled the seauenth time, and was reprized.

The Warre betweene them of Genes and the Citty, was troubled by two great accidents: happening; the one, was an Earth-quake very dreadfull; and the other was a greeuous Pestilence. Hee gouerned twelue yeares, wanting fome fewe

\$5 Marino Paliero, was elected Duke, being then Ambassador at Rome. Having

received an injurie by some particulars, I and twentie dayes: which was not reuenged according vnto his owne desire : hee determined in the eighty yeare of his age, to make himfelfe absolutely Lord, without any controule. The conspiracy being discouerd by Niebelao Lion; he had his head finitten off within the Pallace. And it was ordayned, that his Picture should not be placed amongs the other dukes, but the place being left voyde, had only this Writing: This is the place of Marino Faliero, who, for his grienous affence, had his head out off : hee was duke but ten moneths.

56. Giouanni Gradenigo had an excellent spirit, but a much mis-shapen countenance. The warre was renewed against the Genes, which teatmined with a mutuall peace. He had warre against the King of Hungarie for Dalmatia. Treuisa was befieged in his time, and thither he went in person. Hee governed one yeare, three moneths and foureteene dayes.

56 Gionanni Delfino, was elected Duke when hee was in Trenifa, defending it against the King of Hungary. The Senate fent to demaind free passage for him; which being denyed, he came forth with two hundred horste to beard the enemie, and so attained to Margliera, where the Senate in person received him. In short time he gave end to this warre, and reconered Conciliano, Serualla, and Afola. He made peace for the fourraignty of Dalmatia; and dyed aged forty and five yeares, having governed foure yeares, two moneths, and cleuen dayes.

58 Lorenzo Celfa, vpon a falle bruite, of a victorie against them of revoked Genes; was made Duke in concurrence of Pietro Gradenigo, Leonardo Dandolo, and Marco Cornaro. Candie rebelled againe, and it was regained with a very great difficulty. On this occasion, a lust and feast was publiquely made in the place of Saint Marke: he dyed two daies after the fourth yeare of his Principalitie.

59 Marco Cornaro, a man very wife and learned, was fent into Candie, which was rebellions, and there he made a cruel blody warre: the Pope graunting plenary Indulgence to all fuch as went thither . The Rebels being scuerely punished, the common-wealth fent to Pope Frbane the fift, a certaine number of their Gallies. He gouerned two yeares, fine months, and foure

60 Andrea Contarini, fled to the Paduans fearing to be elected Duke, and as presaging the ruine which (in his time) would betide the Common-wealth. First of all, he made warre with them of Triefle, then foone after, with Carrara for the confines of Padna : and fisch was the fortune, that Chioggas being taken, the Citty of Venice found it selfe to bee in extreame danger. But in the end, he went and opposed himselfe (in person) against the enemies, vanquished them, and regained Chi oggia: he dyed having governed fifreene yeares, foure moneths, and fifteene daies.

61 Michele Morifim, was a man well furnished with Learning and Wisconne. Some fay, that in his time the Isle of Thenedes was taken, and not in the time of his predecessour Consarini. There were diuers Lawes then made (and amongelt others) it was ordayned, that Homicides, who had formerly beene hanged, fhould afterwards have their heads imitten off. He lived but foure months, and five daies in his dignitie, and dyed in the threefcore and foureteene yeare of his age.

62 Antonio Veniero, was a rigorous obferuer of Inflice. He confined one of his owne Sonnes in exile, because he had (ouer-lightly) offended the familie of a noble Venitian. Hee made league with Galeand the Vicount, against Carrara, wherevpon he tooke Padua. He affisted the Emperour Emmanuell against the Turke; and gaue aid also vnto Sigismond, King of Hungaria; who afterwardes came to the Empire. The place of Saint Marke, and that of the Rialto, were greatly beautified in his time. Hee dyed two moneths, and three dayes, after the eighteenth yeare of his

63 Michele Stene, had the dignitic of Attourney of Saint Marke, with that of Duke. Hee wonne an important battell against the Genewaics. Carrara was now the last time vanquished, and Padwa and Verona surprized. They of Vicenca, to free themselves from his tyrannie, yeelded themselves to the Common-wealth . Ladillam King of Hungaria, did likewise forgoe Zara : Hee dyed , having governed thirteene yeares, and three dayes.

64 Thomaso Mocenigo , was first Gencrall of the Goulfe. He embraced peace, to the end, that the Cittizens might traffike.

Vdina became obedient to the Commonwealth, with the Countrey of Frinolis by meanes of the Lords of Sanorgnami, who were made noble-men of Venice. The Florentines were also succoured against the

740

Duke of Milaine. In his tenth were he died. 65 Francesco Foscari stoutly repressed the Dake of Milaine, who proceeded too farre on the liberties of Italy. Brefcia, Bergame, and other Citties of Lombardy were then, wonne : amongst which were Loda and Parma, and Rauenna in Romania, Hec made also a large progresse on the Seas, sugn into Morea. The Senate affifted Paleglegus the Emperour, against the Turks, who viurped Copstantinople, in the yeare \$453. Hee was made Arbitratour by the Duke of Milaine, incertaine differences of neighbour-hood. The King of Dacia was made a noble Venitian : And afterward, the Duke (in regarde of his age and infirmities) was dismissed, having governed thirty foure yeares, and fixe moneths.

66 Paschale Malapiero, was appoynted in the place of Foscari, being Atturney of Saint Marke, who dyed two dayes after his dismission. He made a Lawe, That in following times, the Duke should not be deposed. In his dayes, the samous Arte of Printing was brought into Venice. The Arfenall was greatly encreased: And bee maintayned the people in peace, during foure yeares, fixe moneths, and five daies that he gouerned.

67 Christophoro More, a Procuratour of Saint Marke, was made Duke . Heliued for some time in peace, till the second yeare of his gouernement; and then the Turke (proud of his furprizall of Constantinople) declared warre against the Venitians, He made peace with Pope Pius the fift, and the Duke of Burgundy: But the Pope dying, they remayned alone, and maintayned warre which lafted twentie yeares. And yet he dyed, having reigned nine yeares, and fixe moneths.

68 Nicholo Trono had fuch good hap, that (in his time) the Common wealths affaires went well against the Turke. Pietro Mocenige, General in the Archipelagus, vnited his power with the Popes. The king of Pope Sixtus the fourth, which occasioof Naples, and they of Rhodes font eightic fiue gallies together, and tooke Satalia, a Citty of Pamphilia. He made league likewise with the King of Persia, against the The Cittle became much disgraced by

Venice, espoused Catharina Cornara, adoptiue daughter of Saint Marke. He gouerned one yeare, eight moneths, and fine

69 Nicholo Marcello, Atturny of Saint Marke, after some laws made by the Correctors; was elected Duke. In his time there was a conspiracie in Cyprus, to have the Kingdome fall into the power of Ferdinand King of Naples . Pietro Morcenico went thirder with a great Armie, where he appealed all troubles, and feuerely chaftifed the Rebells . Scutari , 2 Cittie in Liburnia, was belieged by the Turke, and valiantly defended by Antonio Loredano. This duke gouerned one years foure moneths, and scuenteene dayes. I water

70 Pietro Motenigo was elected Duke. in desert of all his worthy deedes . Lepan. towas befieged in his time by the Turke, and vertuously maintayned by Antonio Lotedano. They brought their power likewife before the lile of Stalimena, but the fame Loredamo (by his valour) defended it. The daughter to King Ferdinand came to Venice, with the Cardinall her brother, where they were rotally entertained. This Prince caused a Money to beestamped, which hee furnamed by his owne name: And governed but two yeares, and nine moneths.

ು 7 ರ Andrea Fendramino had fuch ill hap in his gonernement, that the Venitian Army was two feuerall times put to flight by the Turkes : Once neare to Crove in Albania, and the other in the country of Friuli. He was a goodly man of person, and had a most beautifull Lady to his wife, by whom he had as goodly children, whom he allied in marriage with the chiefest Families: he gouerned one yeare, and eight moneths.

72 Giouanni Mocenigo, brother to Pietro Mecenigo, having continued the warre against the Turke; in the end made peace with him : ordering the matter fo, that he left Scutari and Stipula in liberty of Commerce, and power to keepe a Deputie at Constantinople. Hee made warre against Ferdinand King of Naples, at the instance ned the long warre called Sociale. In the end, peace was made, the Commonwealth having gotten Rouigo & Polefano. Turke. lames King of Cyprus comming to fire, and a pestilent sickenesse: The prince

dyed, having raigned feauen yeares, and fixe moneths.

73 Marco Barbarigo, the plague being ceased, caused all to be new builded, which the fire had defaced in the Pallace. Hee was greatly differing from all other Princes, to wit, in pardoning, and forgetting particular injuries doone vnto him: but fuch as were comitted against the State, he would have revenged with strictest feueritie. The grand Signeur or Turke fent a particular Ambassadour vnto him, to congratulate his election. He gouerned but nine moneths.

74 Agostino Barbarigo, withstood the progresse of Charles the eighth King of Fraunce, when hee made warre against them of Arragon, for the Kingdome of Naples, which he conquered. The Turke viurped on the Common-weales of Lepanto, Modona, and Corona. The Kingdome of Cyprus was brought under the tutelage of the Senate, and Qu. Catharina brought thence to Venice. The office de la Sante was created, by occasion of the pestilece: This Duke governed fifteene yeares, and twenty one dayes.

75 Leonardo Lauredano fustained a very rigorous war, againft the chiefest Princes of the world : there beeing a League made betweene the Emperour Maximilian : the King of France; them of Naples; and the Dukes of Sauoy, Ferrara, and Manina, incited thereto by Pope Iulius the second. All the whole estate of sirme land was furprized, except Trevi(a; but in the end it was recovered. He lived in the Principality nincteene yeares, eight moneths, and twenty dayes.

76 Antonio Grimani, being Generall, had a most infamous dis-rout or foile, by which occasion, hee was dismissed of the charge of Procurator of Saint Marke, and confined to Cher lo . He brake his limitation, and withdrew himfelfe to Rome to the Cardinall his fonne: where he had fo many worthy Offices imposed vpon him, as, not onely he was re-established in his Atturneys place againe; but he was likewife made Duke, at the age of foure fcore and two yeares, and gouerned but one yeare, ten moneths, and two dayes.

77 Andrea Gruti, gaining the best part of the glorie, for the reprizall of Padua, was in very great effective. Hee dealt fo with the King of Fraunce, (to whome he

was prisoner) that his Maiestie allied himfelfe with the Common-wealth, and Brefcia and Verona were reconquerd. He knew very well, how to make his carriage pleafing to the Senate, during the warres betweene Charles the fifth, Emperour, and King Fraunces the first, as also against Solyman. He gouerned fifteene yeares, feauen moneths, and eight dayes.

78 Pietro Lando continued the defence of the Commonwealth against the Turke: with whom(at last) he made a peace, know ing how to make vse thereof, and maintaine his owne charge, whileft the warre continued betweene Charles the fift, and King Frances the first. Hee governed fixe yeares, and eight moneths.

79 Francesco Donato, making benefite also of this peace, beautified the Cittie with many goodly buildings, besides that of the Pallace. He fent fuccor to the Emperour, against certaine Rebells in Germame. The Princes of Guife, coming to Penice in his time, were entertained as fitted their degree. He gouerned seauen yeares, and fixe moneths.

80 Marco Antonio Treuifano, a man altogether denout, laboured that the Common-wealth might abound in goodnesse and civill manners; preventing (by his owne worthy example) that vices should not be wincked at, as, in too many countries they are. He gouerned a yeare, wanting three dayes.

81 Francesco Veniero, could so well skill of gouerning the Common-wealth. that albeit the Turke (in his time) made warre in Apulia, and the King of Fraunce in Tuscanie: yet all was well at Venice, and the Queene of Poland roially welcommed thither. He gouernd two yeares, one moneth and twenty dayes.

82 Lorenzo Printi, was folligited (by the Pope) to make warre against the Emperor. But, he being a friend to the Common-wealth; by no meanes would offend him, but mediated a pacification of those affaires. In his time peace was made betweene Fraunce and Spaine, and Charles the fift dyed. This Prince governed three yeares, cleauen moneths, and eight dayes.

83 Girolamo Printi, brother to the precedet prince enjoyed those great honors, which Pope Pine the fourth gaue vnto the common-wealth: And all his delight was to heare ambaffadors in the hall of Kings. In his time the Councel of Trent was concluded, whither he fent (as Ambaffadors) Nicholo de Ponte, and Matheo Dandolo.

The Common-wealth helde (at Baptiline) the fontie to the Duke of Sauoy, by a Deputie botne of Margueret of Fraunce. He dyed, having governed eight yeares, two moneths, and foure dayes.

84 Pietro Loredano, by the concurrence of two others, was elected Duke, contraric to the hope of all, or his owne expectation. The Arfenall was burned in his time, and there then also happened a very great dearth of all things. Selim, successour of Solyman, tooke occasion to breake peace with the Common-wealth, demaunding of them the kingdome of Cyprus, and moued warre vpon this Subject. He gouerned foure yeares, fine moneths, and eight

85 Luigi Mocenigo, warre being kindled against the Turke, lost the kingdome of Cyprus, Nicofia being taken, and Famagosta furrendered. The Common-wealth made league with Pope Pius the fifth, and Phillip King of Spaine, so that their armies (being joyned togither in the yeare of our Lord, one thousand five hundred scuenty one) they obtayned a worthy victorie against the Turkes . Soone after, Henry the third, king of France, came to Venice, where he was magnificently entertayned. This Prince dyed in his scauenth yeare.

86 Sebastiano Veniero, was elected by common voyce, and with fuch applause, that divers Turkes ranne to him and kiffed his feete. He created five Correctours of the Lawes, for ruling the affaires of the Pallace. The Citty was delinered of a dangerous plague, and the Pallace was againe very greatly defaced by fire. This prince gouernd not aboue a whole yeare.

87 Nicholo de Ponte, was created Duke, a man very learned in all the Sciences, and whereof hee had made publike profession in Venice. He passed thorow all the honors of the Common-wealth, wherewith the Citizens could possibly gratifie him. The Seminary of Saint Marke was instituted by him . Certaine princes of Iapponia arriving then at Venice, were by him most honourably entertained. He builded the bridge of Canareggio: and governed feven yeares, nine moneths, and thirteen dayes.

88 Paschale Cicogna, Procuratour of S. Marke, was elected when he was at divine

Service in the Church. In his time there was great warres, betweene Fraunce and Spayne about Piedmont, and betweene the Emperour and the Turke, for some parts in Hungaria. He caused the towne of Palma to bee builded, in the confines of the Countrey of Friuli, and a new castle or fortresse, in the Isle of Cephalonia. He had the honor of the wonderfull bridge of the Rialto, which he builded : And gouerned ten yeares, or thereabout.

89 Marino Grimini, Procuratour of Saint Marke, was fo highly in grace and fauour of the people, that on the day of his Election: they declared extraordinarie fignes of ioy, and continued them for many following dayes. The fecond yeare of his Principality, he caused the dutchesse his wife to be crowned in great triumph. At which time, Pope Clement the eight fent her the Rose of gold. In his time was much joy and triumph made for the peace concluded betweene the Kings of Fraunce and Spayne. Vpon occasion of the Popes comming to Ferrara, obtained by the Ecclefiasticall Estate, the Cardinall Aldobrandino passed thence to Venice, where he was most honourably wel-comed, with divers other Cardinalls. There was fuch an extraordinary ouer-flow of waters, in the fift yeare of his Principality, that the Barkes, Boates, and Gundoloes floated on the place of Saint Mark, euen as if they had beene in a full maine river . He dyed, and was much bemoaned of the people, having governd ten yeares, and eight mo-

90 Leonardo Dandole, hauing by his worthy deferuings, finguler wifedome and dexterity, mannaged passed affaires, and gone thorow all honors of the Commonwealth, giving evident testimonie of his care and faithfulneffe; was aduaunced in the place of Grimani, the tenth day of Ianuary, 1606. He had beene sent Ambas-Sadour to Constantinople to Mahomet (hee being newly come to the Empire of the East) in the Common-wealths name, to falute him with accustomed complemets. He hath fuch a practick braine, & fo happie a memory, feated in a foule fo religioully zealous for common benefite; that the Senate hath referred more vnto him, then to any other of his Predecessours.

The Cttie hath (in his time) beene excommunicated, by Paulus Quintus, now

Pope, about some pretentions appertain- | hands: of whom, the most part went to ing to his See : But it may well be fayd of this Prince, that, against such Thunderclappes and Lightning flashes, hee hath fhewne himfelte an immoueable rocke, in defence of that effate in generall. In like maner, two principall Pillers of Christendome, threatned great disaster and ruine: but that most Christian Henry the fourth, King of Fraunce, embracing those two Collomnes, vpheld both the one and other, and redreffed all discontentment, by the entermife of his Ambassadours, and hath erected a triumphall Arche, to the immortalitie of his glorie. This Prince now living happily in peace, doth daily acknowledge to Fraunce, his particular affection for fuch fauour, & may (in time) much better declare it. God long preserue him, and all other good Princes.

CHAP. III.

■ Of Wounds made by Gun-shot, and other fierie Engines.



N the yeare of our Lotd, N the yeare of our Lord, 1536, the victorious king Frannces fent a great Armie vnto Piedmont, to vitaile Thurin, and to recoter those townes and ca-

files, which had beene taken by the Marquesse Du Guasto, Lieutenant generall of the Emperour, where Monfieur the Constable, then great Master, was Lieutenant generall of the Army, and Mounfieur de Monte-jan Captaine generall of the Footmen (of whom I was then Chirurgian.) A great part of the Armie arrived at the Pas of Suze, where we found the enemic keeping the paffage, and had made vnto themfelues certayne forts and trenches, in fuch fort, that before they could be raifed from thence, wee entered into battell: in which constict there was many hurt and slaine, as well on the one fide as on the other. But they were inforced to quit that passage, and to recouer the castle, which they held not long, but were compelld to give it vp; marching away in their fhirts onely, hauing each of them a white W and in their

the Castle de Villane, where there was about some two hundred Spaniards. To this castle my Lord the Constable drew his The Castle de forces, because hee would make his way Villane becleare before him . It is fituate vpon a lit- fiedged and tle Mountaine, which giueth great affurance to those within, that there can bee no Ordinance planted against it, to batter it downe. They were fummoned to reftore it vp, or elfe were threamed to haue it battered in peeces, which they flatly refused: answoring withall, that they were as good and faithfull feruants to the Emperour, as Mounfieur the Constable was to the King his maifter. Their answer being vnderstoode, the same night there was mounted two great Canons, by the force of armes with ropes and cordes, by the Switzers, where, (as mif-fortune would) those cannons being planted, a Gunner by indifcretion fired a barrel of Gun-pouder wherewith he himfelte was extreamely burned, together with tenne or twelue foldiers. Moreouer, the flame of the pouder was the cause of the discouerie of the Ordinance, whereby those of the Castle, the night following, discharged their Ordinance at that place where they disconered our Cannons; infomuch, that we had many of our men hurt and flaine.

The morrow after , very early wee beganne the battery, and in few houres after the breach was made; which those of the Castle perceining, defired a parley, but it was too late; for in the meane time fome of our foot-men, perceining them to be astonished, mounted the breach, and entred the Castle, putting cuery man to the fword, except onely a certaine beautifull Piedmontese, which a great Lord entertained into his fernice. The Captaine and Ancient were taken aline, but were prefently after hanged vpon the Gate of the Towne, to terrific the rest of the Emperours fouldiers, not to be fo foole-hardie, to hold fuch places against so great an armie. Now, the fouldiers of the Cattle feeing our men rufhing in vpon them in fuch great furie, made all the relittance they could to defend themselnes, in killing and wounding a great number of our Souldiers with their pikes and muskets; where the Chirurgianshad a great deale of work cut out to their hands.

I was (at that time) but a yong Chirur-

Pas of Suze

Chap.3.

744 The Author entreth into the matter,

A remedy

found by ac-

gian, and but little experienced in the to give me the receit of his Balme, which Art, because I neuer (as yet) had seene the curation of anie Wounds made by Gun-shot. True it is, that I had read John de Vigo, his first booke of Wounds in generall, chap. 8. where he faith, That those wounds made by fiery Engines, do participate of venenofity, because of the Powder; and for their curation, he commands to cauterize them with the Oile of Elders mixed with a litle Treacle: yet neuertheleffe because I would not be deceined, before I would make vie of the faid boyling oile, knowing that it brought with it extreme paine to the Patient, I observed the methode of other Chirurgians in the first dreffing of fuch wounds; which was by the application & infusion of the foresaid Oile, as hot as possibly they could suffer it, with Tents and Setons: wherefore I became emboldned to do as they did. But in the end my oile failed mee , fo that I was constrained to vse in stead thereof, a digestiue made of the yolke of an egge, Oile of Rofes and Terebinth. The night following, I could hardly fleep at mine cafe, fearing left that for wat of cauterizing, I shold find my Patients, on whom I had not vsed of the aforefaid Oyle, dead and empoyloned; which made mee to rife earely in the morning to visit them: where beyond my expectation, I found those on whom I had vied the digestive medicine, to feele but little paine, and their wounds without inflammation or tumor, having rested well all that night. The rest, on whom the aforesaide Oile was applyed, I found them inclining to Feauers, with great paine, tumor, and inflammation about their Wounds: then I refolued with my felfe. neuer to burne to cruelly the wounded Patients by Gun-shot any more.

When we entred Thurin, I was tolde of a Chirurgian, who was exceeding famous, especially for his curing wounds made by Gun-shot, with whom I found the means to acquaint my felfe : yet it was neare two yeares and a halfe, before hee would acquaint mee with his Medicine which hee called his Balme. In the meane time, Mounfieur the Marshall of Montejan, who was Lieutenant generall of the King in Piedmont, dyed : then I tolde this Chirurgian, that I had a defire to returne to Paris, withall, requesting him, that he would performe his promise, which was,

he willingly did, feeing that I was to leave that country. He fent me to fetch him two yong whelps, one pound of earth-worms, two pounds of the oyle of Lillies, fix ounces of the Terebinth of Venice, and one ounce of Aqua-vita: and in my presence, he boiled the whelps aliue in the faid oile, vntill the flesh departed from the bones. Afterward, he tooke the wormes (hauing before killed and purified them in white Wine, to purge themselves of the earth which they have alwayes in their bodies:) being so prepared, he boyled them also in the faid oile, till they became dry; this he strained thorow a napkin, without anie great expression; that doone, hee added thereto the Terebinth : and laftly, the Aqua-vita, and called God to witnesse, that this was his Balme which hee vsed in all wounds made by Gun-shot, and in others which required suppuration; withal, praying me not to divulge his fecret

From thence I returned to Paris, where fhortly after, Mounfieur Siluius, Lecturer of the King in Phylicke, a man greatly efleemd among learned men, requested me one day to dine with him, which I did willingly; where hee asked me many Questions, and among the rest, of the essence of wounds made by Gunne-shot, and of the combustions made by Gunne-pouder. Whereupon, I presently producd vnto him, that the pouder was not any thing Gunpowder venomous at all; because that no Simple that enters therein is any way venomous, much lesse the composition. Also, I have feene by experience, that fome Souldiers being hurt, will take of the faid powder in wine, saying; That pouder so taken, doth preserve the body from the ensuing accidents, the which I approue not. Alfo, others having vicers on their bodies, doe commonly vie of the faid pouder drie, and heale them without any daunger at all. And as for the Bullets, they can not containe any such heat, that they should have the facultie of burning : for a bullet being fhot against a stone-wall, it may presently be helde in the naked hand, although the collission made against the Stones, wounds made should (in reason) heate it the more: And by gunfhot, as for combustions or burnings made by are without Gun-pouder, I neuer found any particular accident in it, whereby the cure ought to be diversified from the cure of other com-

bustions. Whereupon, I related this Hiftory . A certaine boy of the Kitchin , of Mounfieur the Marshall de Monte-jan, fell into a Caldron full of oyle, almost boyling hote; to dreffe whom being fent for. I went presently to an Aporhecarie; demanding of him fuch cooling medicines; which are commonly applyed vnto burnings. An auncient Countrey-woman being by , hearing mee speake of this burn-ing , counselled me to apply for the first dreffing (to present the rifing of pultules or bladders) of rawe onions, bruifed with a little falt. I demaunded of this woman, Whether the had ever made experience of that Medicine before: Shee prefently Sware vnto me in her language, Si mese, à la fe de de; which did incite me to make experience heereof, on this scullion of the Kitchin, where truely I found the morrow after, that in those parts, where the Onions had touched, to bee altogether free from veffickes or blifters, and the other parts, where the Onions were not applyed, to be much bliftered.

Not long after, a certaine Dutch-man, one of the guard of the faid Lord de Monte-jan, having drunke hard, by indifcretion; fet his Flask afire, which caused a great difaster, both to his hands and face; and being called to dreffe him, I applyed of the faide Onions on the one halfe of his face; and on the other fide, of other common remedies. At the second dressing, I found that part where I had applied the Onions, to be altogether without blifters. or any excoriation, and the other altogether bliftred: then I first purposed to write of the effect of the faid Onions.

Moreover, I tolde vnto the fayd Syluiso, that for the better extraction of hullets which are hidden in any part of the body, it is requifit, the Patient should be placed in the fame fituation, that he was in at that time when he was wounded. Many other. things I discourred vnto him, which are contayned in this Booke following. My Discourse ended, he prayed me very earneftly, that I would publish it by writing; to the end, that that falle opinion of Vies might be altogether abolifhed; the which I willingly confented vnto, and caused many instruments to be cut, such as had not beene divulged, for the extraction of Bullets, and other vanaturall things out of the body.

And it was first Imprinted in the yeare, 1545. and well received, which caused me to renew it agayne, and publish it the fecond time, in the yeare 1550, and laftly in the yeare, 1564, where I have enriched it with many other things, because I have fince followed the warres, haue beene in many battells, and befieged Townes, as in Mes and Hedin. Alfo I have beene enterrayned into the fernice of fine Kings; where I have alwayes discoursed with the most excellent Physitians and Chirurgians of those times, to learne and discouer, if these were any other methode or way, to cure those wounds made by gun-shot a whereof the most part (specially those that haue followed the warres, and are guided by reason and experience) are of my opinion, which is, to vie Suppuratives in the beginning, and not boyling oyles. And I did protest moreoner to the fayd Sylving, that I have found those wounds as easie to cure (being in fleshy partes) as all other great contused wounds are . But, where The cause the Bullet meeterh with the bones and that maketh neruous parts, it teareth, dilacerateth, wounds by breaketh, and shinereth in peeces, not tobecured onely where it toucheth, but also the circumiacent parts, without any mercy; caufing great accidents which happen specially in the jounctures or joynts, and in bodies of cuill constitution, and in time subiect to corruption , that is to fay , where the Ayre is hote and moyft, then is the cure most difficult, and oftentimes imposfible; not onely of wounds made by gunthat, but also of those which are made by other instruments; yea, though they were but in fleshie parts.

Therefore, the aforefaid accidents do not proceede from the venenofity which is in the powder, or by the combustion or burning of the Bullet . For proofe of History. which, I will alleadge this observation, which I have experimented (not long fince) on the person of the Earle of Gourdon, Lord of Achindon, a Scottish-man, whom I cured by the commaundement of the Queene-mother, who was hure with the fhot of a Piffoll cleanethrough both the thighs, without fracture of the bones; he standing so neare the mouth of the Pistoll, that the fire tooke holde of his breeches; neuerthelesse, hee was persectly cured in two and thirtie dayes, without a Feauer or anie other cuill accident. I

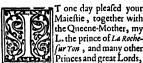
746

drest him at S. Iohn de Latran, in the house of the Archithoppe of Glasco, then Ambaffadour for Scotland, who came euery day to see him drest. Moreouer, for testimony, I could produce Mounsieur Brigard, Doctor Regent in the facultie of Philicke, who was an affiltant with me; together with Iames Guillemeau, Chirurgian to the King, and fworne at Paris, who was with me vntill his perfect curation. The same likewise Mounsieur Hautin, Doctour Regent in the faculty of Phylicke can testifie, who sometimes came to see him. Also Giles Buzet, Scotchman and Chirurgian, every of them marvailing how hee became to foone cured, without the application of hot and sharp medcines. Now, the reason wherefore I have made this litle Discourse, is to demonstrate, that it is aboue 20. yeares agoe, fince I first found out this maner of curing wounds made by gunshot, without the vie of boiling oiles, or any other tharp or burning medicines, valeffe I was constrained to vie them, for fuch accidents which hapned in Cacochymed bodies, or through the cuil dispositi tion and malignancy of the ayre, as I will thew more amply in this Discourse following, which I made vnto the deceaffed King, after the taking of Roan.

CHAP. IIII.

■ A Answer wato a certayne demaund, propounded by the vistorious Prince Charles the ninth, as touching the qualitie and Effence of wounds made by Gunne-shotte, at his Maiesties returne from the fiege, and taking of the Towne of Roan.

Occasion of this discourse



T one day pleased your Maiestie, rogether with the Queene-Mother, my L. the prince of La Roche-lary and many other

to demad of me how it came to passe, that in these last warres, the most part of such Gentlemen & Soldiers, who were wounded by Gun-shot, & other instruments of war, died, or were very hardly recouered from their diseases, although the wounds they received were but of small apparace, and the Chirurgians which were employed for their cures, did performe their du-

ties according to Art: I have bin the bolder to publish this discourse, to satisfie (in some measure) the duty of my Art, & that my Profession might not be spotted with the least dishonor; and that your Maiestie might vnderstäd the reasons, which might haue bin the cause of the death of so many valiant me; the most part of whom I have feene (to my great griefe) to finish theyr dayes pittifully, without any possibilitie in mee, or anie other more experienced then my felfe to give them remedy.

I know that this following Discourse will aftonish some, who reposing themfelues vppon their owne particular opinions, and not examining the matter deep-ly, will finde the first front of my disputation very strange; because that the contrary hath beene so long imprinted in their fantalies. For I doe hold, that the cause of the malignancy of wounds by Gun-shot, not to proceed from any poylon or venomous quality in the pouder (as they imagine) or from the Bullet it felfe, being rubbed or infused in any venomous mixture. Neuerthelesse, if their meekenesse and patience will extend fo farre, as first to weigh the motiues, which first moued me to vndertake this fubicet, which was a zeale of the publique good; towards the which the Lawe of Nature bindeth me, to shew the vttermost of my power in fuch things which the fingular providence of Almighty God hath reuealed vnto me. And secondly, that they will examine with judgement, the reasons which I shall vse in this present Treatife: then I shall bee certayne, they will both accept my labour thankefully, and free it from all future calumnie. Otherwise they will thew themselves to be so ill affectioned toward me, as if I should present my selfe before them, enriched with all the treafures of the auncient Philosophers, and they should place mee in the number of the poorest and ignorantest men in the world. To preuent therefore all the Arguments of venome and poisoning, which the Adversaries heere about mentioned may alleadge, I will make it plaine vnto your Maieltie, that fuch as are wounded by gunne-thot; I fay the malignancie of poyfon of the fuch wounds, not to proceed from the venome of the Powder, beeing of it felfe Bullet. fimply confidered : and much leffe from the cobustion or cauterization which the

of: although neuertheleffe fome do striue to maintayne; alledging for all, reasons, That a certayne Tower full of powder hath heeretofore beene seene ruinated in an instant, onely by the meanes of a Cannon shot. Also of a thatched house set on fire with a Musket shotte. Moreover, because that such wounds which are made by Gunne-shotte, we commonly behold their Orifices and other circum-incent parts fo blacke, as if an actuall Cauter had passed thereon. As also the fall of a certayne escarre, as they fay . All which Atguments are so ill framed, that they deferue no authoritie, beeing builded on fo flender a foundation : much leffe, that the resolution of your demaund should be taken from them, as I trust to give you plainely to understand in the Disputation following. Which (after I had feene a great number of those wounds, and diligently observed them, handling them according to the methode) I have collected from the auncient Philosophers, Physitians, and Chirurgians to prefent vnto your Maiesty, and to withdrawe your minde from the admiration of the lamentable death of so many braue Gentlemen and

can make in those parts, which it rendeth

& dilacerateth thorow the violence there-

Now, to enter into the matter propofed, and to answer the Arguments before alledged, we are first to examine, whether there be any poylon inclosed in the powder, or no i And if there bee, whether it may infect by meanes of the pretended poylon thereof. Which, that it may appeare plainely, wee must fearth into the composition of the sayd powder considering that it is not of substance simple, but compound: and to by examining the nature of fuch Simples, which enter into the composition thereof : I meane their qualities, effects, and operations, we shall the fooner attaine to the scope and intention pretended.

Souldiers.

As for the Simples it is a most assured thing, that there are but three in all which make the composition thereof, that is to (ay, coales of willow or birch) fulphure. and falt-peter, and fometimes Aqua-vitar which ingredients fenerally confidered are altogether exempt and free from povfon, or any venomous quality. And first

Bullet fo heated by the fire of the powder for the coales, there is not any thing confiderable in them, vnleffe it bee a drying quality, of subtile substance, by meanes whereof it is apt to take fire, euen as a linnen cloth burned into Tinder doth the sparkes that fall from a Flint stone. Sulphure is hote and drie, neuerthelesse, not excessive, and of a more oilie and viscuous fubstance, yet not so easie to inflame as coales, although it doth retaine the fire more forcibly when it is once inflamed, and is very hardly extinguished. As for the falt-peter, it is fuch , that many make | Salt-peteris vie thereofinstead offalt. Now let vs examine, whether there be any venenofity in the nature of these simples namely in that of fulphure, which is the most suspected. Dioscorides in his fift booke, chap. 37. prescribeth it to be taken in an Egge, in the astmaticke passion, coughes, and to such which spit matter, and those that have the Taundife. And Galen in his ninth booke of his Simples, cha. 36. ordaineth it as a topicall remedy, vnto fuch who are bitten by venomous beafts; and in all malignant practifes or itchings; as for the Aqua vita, it is a thing fubtile, that it will cusporate ifit be fet in the ayre; besides, it is vsed by most Chirurgians inwardly in drinkes, and outwardly in embrocations as a most fingular medicine. These things confidered, make mee to affirme, that the whole composition of powder is altogether free from venome or poylon, feeling that the ingredients are altogether cleare from the least touch in that kind.

Moreover, I have observed it to bee the practife of the Hollanders, beeing wounded by Gunne shorte, to diffolue two charges of powder in Wine, and to drinke it off, hoping, by that meanes to be freed from all future accidents which might happen to their wounds (although I doe not approduc thereof, because it is a most insufficient remedy.) Alfo, fifth vicers which are made through the cum bustion of powder, are of no other nature then those that are made by fite , or scald! ing water. Bur, wherefore mould I alledge any forraine example? Do we not fee amongst our owne fouldiers, I do not know on what occasion, but only to thew theinfelues braue fellowes; to emptie their charges of pouder into their cuppes. and drinke it without anie inconvenience atall, and others in like manner, beeing

The e-mpofi-uon of the powder,

Refutation of those that affirme the Bullet to be impoyloned.

hurt on any part of their bodies, will apply of the same vpon their vicers to drie them, and finde much profit by it. As for those which do affirme that it is not in the powder, but the Bullet, which being fubtilly pierced in many places, or filled vp with venome, or flicped, rubbed, or mixed with any poylon, caufeth the aforefayd daungerous accidents: To fuch do Lanswer without further trouble, that the fire fet to the powder, is sufficient to putifie the poylon of the Bullet, if any there were: the which can not be done by impoyloned Swords; Pikes, Arrowes, and fuch like, because they passe not thorow the action of the fire. Briefly, to confirme my opinion to be true, there is not anie one of those that were in your Maiesties Campe at Roan, that doth not affuredly know, that those Bullets which were thorte against those of the Towne, to be altogether free from poylon. Neuertheleffe, the belieged Townef-men affirmed, that all those Bullets were poyloned . Alfo, the Souldiers of your Maiesties Camp had the same opinion, of such Bullets which were shot at them out of the town, that they were all impoyloged, by them; rather belowing and judging of the qualitie of the wounds by their euill successe, then by the Causes whereby they were

True it is, that as in Phylicke, according to the Septence of Hyppacrates in the Epidemies, as Galen noteth on the twenty fentence, and the twenty one of the third Section of the third booke, all diseases are called Pestilentiall and venomous, being from common and general saules of what kinde focuershey be, and fuch kill many perions : fo in the like maner, we may call fuch wounds as are made by Gunne-shot venomous , which are more difficult to heale then others; not because they doe participate of any venonofity, but from fome generall capie depending, either fro the Cacachimie of the body putrifaction of the aire, or the corruption of the vicus alls, whereby those vicers, are brought to be more malignant Cacoethes, and rebellious to all medicines.

To affirme, that it is onely the combu-fion of the buller, which cause the afore faid danger , I cannot conceive their reafons, feeing that the Bullet is for the most part) made but of lead, and therefore vng.

ble to indure any great heate, without being altogether diffolued, which we neuertheleffe do fee to paffe thorow a coat Armour, and to penetrate the body through and through, and yet to remaine whole.

Moreouer, we do observe, that if a Bullet be shot against a stone, or against anie folid matter, it may in the fame instant be handled of vs in our hands, without feeling any notable heate, although the violent striking and collission made against the stone, should in reason encrease the heate, if anie there were. And which is more, if a Bullet bee shot against a bagge full of powder, the fire will not endanger it. This I dare be bolde to fay and affirme moreouer, That if a quantitie of powder should take fire, being kept in a Tower, or any other place, by the meanes of a Bullet shot; it was not the heate of the Bullet, but rather the violent striking of the Bullet against the stones of the said Tower, which might cause sparkes of fire to fall amonest the powder; even as the smiting of a steele against a flint stone. The like wee may judge of fuch thatched houses, which have bene fet on fire by a musket shot, to haue rather proceeded from some wad, either of Towe or Paper, rammed in with the powder; and so fired with it . But that which doth most confirme mee in the afford a ball furance of mine opinion, is, that if a ball waxe. of Waxe be that out of a Musket, it feeleth no force of fire at all for then would ir melt; neuerthelesse, it will pierce an inch boord. An argument of sufficient weight to prooue, that the Bullets cannot be for extreamely heated by the force of the powder, that they should cauterize and burne, as many have effected.

And as for that blackeneffe, which is ordinarily found to be about the Orifices of such wounds, and other adjacent parts: Laffirme, that this accident doth not procoed from any qualitie of fire accompanying the Bullet, but because of the great convultion that it maketha For it cannot Whenceit enter into the body otherwise then by an prodecedent carried in that wounds. of a round figure. Share the state of the country blitter of the cou is of a round figure.

sons themselves be demaunded; I beleeve they will testifie the trueth of my faying, because they are no sooner strooke with the Bullet, but they doe feele in the fame instant, as if a club or some other heavie burthen

burthen were falne on the offended parts in the which they feele a heavy paine with a benummed supifaction of the part; which diffipateth and fometimes extinguisheth the naturall heate, together with the spirites contayned therein; from whence there followeth oftentimes a gangrene and mortification of the part, year fometimes of the whole body. And as for the Escarre which they affirme there to be, and fall away as they fay, they doe abuse themselves: for it is onely some certaine portion of the membranes and contused stesh, dilacerated by the Bullet which becometh corrupted, and fo feperateth it felfe from the found parts which are greatly contufed.

Chap.4.

Although that thefe reasons doe make it manifest enough, that there is no venomous qualitie in the powder, nor action of fire carryed with the Bullet; neuertheleffe, many, building their opinions vpon naturall Philosophie, doe maintayne the contrarie, affirming that Cannon fhot is like vnto the clappes of Thunder, which burst foorth of the Clouds in the middle Region of the avre, and so fall violently on the earth. From the which similitude they would inferre and conclude, that there is both fire, and a venomous qualitie in the Bullet as it proceedeth out of the mouth of the Cannon . I know (Ithanke God) that Thunder beeing ingendered from a groffe and viscuous exhalation, by means of vapour coniovned with it, doth neuer breake foorth of the Clouds to penetrate heere below: but it draweth and bringeth immediately with it a certaine fire, sometimes more subtle, sometimes more grosse, according to the divertitie of the matter, whereof the exhalation is composed. For Sene-64 writeth in the fecond Booke of his Naturall Questions, chapter 49, that there are three kindes of Thunders, all diffring the one from the other, according to the quantitie and manner of their inflammation. The first, by reason of the matter thereof, it being most thin and subtle, it doth pierce & penetrate fuddenly the obiects which it toucheth. The fecond kind. by reason of the violence thereof, breaketh and diffipateth the fame things, because the matter thereof is more violent, and compact as a tempest. The third fort being composed of a more earthic matter,

being burnd leaueth behind it fuch a ftinking fauor, that all animals do fo much a: uoid it, that if it do happen to fal into their dennes, other places of haunt, they will veterly abandon and forfake fuch places; fo much do they hate the infectious stinke of that poison. The same is noted by Olaus Magnus, in his Septentrionall Historie, that in certayne places where Thunder hath faine, presently after the fall thereof. the fields have beene found afterwards to be courred & strewed over with sulphure, neuertheleffe vnprofitable, and almost extinguished. For all these reasons, I must not confesse, that the blows of Gun-shot the contrary are accompanyed with poylon and fire, as Reasons, the clappes of Thunder are. For although they doe agree the one with the other, in fome similitude, it is not therefore in their substance and matter, but rather in the manner which they have to batter, teare, and diffipate the objects which they doe meete with, that is to fay, the clappes of Thunder through the force of fire; and of the bolte or stone sometimes engendered therein : and the blowes of Gunne-shot by the meanes of the Ayre forced away by impetuolitie, and fo conducting the Bullet, caufeth the like difaster. What if I should be convicted by stronger Arguments, so that I were enforced to auouch, that Thunder and the Cannon to be of the like substance; yet I should never bee forced to say, that the shorte of the Cannons and Muskets doe participate of a fierie qualitie. Plinie faith in the second Booke of his Historie, and the 51.chapter, that among Thunder, one kinde is composed of a maruellous drie matter, diffipating all fuch things it meeteth withall; neuerthelesse, without anie figne of burning: others, of a more humid nature, which in like manner burneth not, but blacketh and discoloreth much, more then the first. Others are composed of a very cleare and fubtile matter : the nature

whereof is most maruellous, forfomuch

divine vertue : and it is in melting Golde

or Siluer in a mans purfe, the purfe it felfe

not beeing fo much as touched therewith.

SII 3

burneth with manifest tokens of the heate

thereof. I also know, that the Thunder is

of nature pestilentiall and sætide, because

of the grofe & flimy matter thereof which

that it is not to be doubted (as Seneca hath A maruailous well faid) that there is therein a certayne ders.

Refutation of those that affirme that the Bullet caufeth

Chap.4.

Also in melting a sword, the scabberd thereof remayning whole. Also, in disfoluing into droppes the yron head of a Pike, without burning, or so much as heating the wood. In shedding the wine out of a vessell, without burning or breaking of the caske. According to the aforefavd testimony I can assure you, and that without any prejudice, that those Thunders, which onelie breake and diffipate without any burning; and fuch which do leaue effects full of great admiration, not to be much valike in substance to the Canon shott, and not those which carrie immediately with them the action of fire.

To prooue my faying true, this one example shall suffice. A certaine Souldier receyued a wound in his Thigh with a Musket shot, from whence I extracted abullet; the which beeing wrapped in the Taffatie of his breeches, made a very deepe wound . Neuertheleffe, I drew it forth of the wound with the same Taffarie, it being without any figne of burn-

And which is more, I have seene manymen, who not beeing shot, nor anie thing touched therewith, valeffe it were in their apparrell only; have received fuch an aftonishment by a Cannon shot, that onely passed nere them: that their members thereby have become blacke and liuid; and shortly after, have fallen into a gangrene and mortification, whereof in

the end they have dyed.

These effects are like vnto those of the thunder before spoken of. Neuerthelesse, there is not in them any fire or poylon: which maketh mee conclude, that there is no poyfon in the common and ordinarie powder. Seeing therefore, that this disaster was common to all those which were hurt in these last warres, and yet neither by fire or poylon that lo many valiant men dyed. To what cause may wee impute this cuill? I am so confident of the true cause(my Liege) that I hope presently to make your Maiestie vnderstand the fame, to the end that your demaund may be fully fatisfied.

Those which have confumed their age and study in the secrets of natural Philofophie, haue left vs this amongest other things, for authenticke and appooued of all times. Which is, that the Elements doe symbolize in such fort the one with

the other, that they doe sometimes transforme and change themselves, the one into the other, in such fort, that not onelie their first qualities, which are heare, coldnes, drinesse and moysture: but also their Substances are changed, by rarification or condensation of themselves; so the fire doth convert it selfe ordinarily into ayre, the aire into water, the water into earth; and contrariwife the earth into water, the water into ayre, and the ayre into fire. The which wee may dayly behold, and prooue it by those bellowes of Copper which the Dutchman brings vs, being composed in the forme of a Boll, which beeing filled with water, and having but one hole in the middeft of the Sphericall forme thereof: receiveth the transmutation of the water within it into ayre, thorow the action of the fire, neare vnto the which the Boll must bee placed; and so thrusteth the aire forth of it with violence. making a continual noyfe or found, vntil all the avre be gone foorth of it. The like may be knowne by Egges or Chessenuts; for eyther of them being put into the fire before they are crackt, or the Rhinds broken, presently the watery humidity contained in them, doth convert it selfe into ayre, through the action of the fire : and the ayre in making his passage, bursteth the shell, because it occupieth more place being in the forme of ayre, into the which it was chaunged by rarification caused by the fire, then it did vnder the forme of water; and not finding pallage, is confirained to make one by violence, according vnto the proposition helde for most certayne and true amongost all Physitians; that is to fay, of that one part of earth is made tenne of water : and of one part of water is made tenne of ayre, as of one part of aire ten of fire. I do say and affirme fo much of the matters contayned in the faid Gun-pouder, which by meanes of the fire is converted into a great quantity of ayre; the which because it cannot be contained in the place, where the matter was before the transmutation thereof, is compelled to issue foorth with an incredible violence: by meanes whereof, the bullet breaketh, shiuereth and rendeth all that euer it meets with, yet doth not the fire accompany it. Euen as we see a Bow, or a Sling (hoote foorth an Arrow or Stone, without any aire at all.

But the bullet drineth before it fuch a conduits and passages, through the which fometimes the very winde it felfe, without the action of the Bullet, caufeth strage and wonderfull effects. For fometimes, I haueknowne it make a fracture in the bones, without any division of the flesh . And heerein it may be compared (as wee faid before) vnto the effect of Thunder: euen so we see, that if the saide powder bee inclosed in Mines and Vaults of the earth, and being converted into aire thorough the action of the fire fer wnto it, howe it doeth ruinate and reuerfe huge maffes of earth almost as bigge as Mountaines. Also in this yeare, in your Maiesties Towne of Paris, a certaine quantity of powder, but newly made in the Arcenall, by taking fire, caused such a great tempest, that the whole Towne shooke at it : for with an horrible fury, it levelled with the Earth all the houses neere vnto that place, and difcourred and battered down the windowes of all those that stood within the fury of its And to be briefe (euen as a clap of thunder) it did reuerse heere and there many men halfe flaine; taking away from fome their eyes, from others their hearing, and left others no leffe torne and mangled in their members, then if foure horses had drawne them in pieces ; and all this by the onely agitation of the ayre, into which substance, the powder was conucred. The which, according to the quantity and quality of the matter thereof, and according to his motion, either more or lesse violent, hath caused so many wonderfull accidents in our Provinces; altogether like vnto those which are caused through the inclosing of windes in the bowels and cauities of the earth, not being perspirable. The which striuing to have vent, bloeth with fuch a strong and violent agitation, that they make the earth to tremble & quake thereat: thereby debolishing Citties, and ruinating buildings, and transporting them from one place to another. As the Townes of Megara and Egina, anciently much celebrated in the Country of Greece, perishing by Earth-quakes can

witnesse vnto vs. I omit to discouer (as but little ferning to our purpose) how the winde enclosed in the Entrailes of the earth, maketh a novie of divers founds, and very strange,

subtle winde, and so swiftly agitated, that it issueth by, euen after the manner of muficall Instruments; the which being large, do giue a great and base sound, & being narrow, do make high and sharpe notes, and being crooked or replied, make divers founds; as wee fee by experience in the Huntsmans horne, and in Trumpers, the which also, being moistned with water, do make a hollow gufguling found.

In like manner, these noises, murmurings, and clamors, are fundry wayes diuersified, according to the places whence they proceed; in such fort, that somtimes hath beneheard a clamorous cry, reprefenting (asit feemed) the affault of a Citty, the cryes and lowings of Buls, or the neighing of Horses, roaring of Lyons, found of Trumpets, reports of Artillery, and many other dreadfull thinges; yea fometimes humane voyces. As it is reported by one, who had heard a voyce (as Diuers founds it were) of a woman beating; which made iffulng out of (as he imagined) fuch a wofull and gree- the veines of uous lamentation; where-with he became fo greatly affrighted, that he had fcarfely breath sufficient to make this report. But when he had well understood the cause of this plaintine voyce, he was presently deliuered from that feare, which otherwife

might haue killed him. But some perhaps will say, that these things have alwayes bene, and no leffe ordinary in the times past, then they are at this present : and therefore it is a great folly in me to alledge them, for efficient causes of the death of so many men. The which imputation, I should freely confesse, if I should present them for such: but seeing that by them I would onely paralel and compare the impetuofity of Artillery, with that of thunder, and the motions of the earth; which being fo, it will appeare, that it maketh nothing against my first intention, as I hope to demonstrate cleerely, that I am slandered without a cause, if you please to give eare to the deduction following. In the which, I will plainly and briefely describe the true caules of the late mortality, which hapned among your Highneffe Solfiers.

Amongst the things necessary for our lines, there is nothing that can more alter The true exour bodyes, then the ayre; the which continually (willing or vnwilling) we inspire according to the divers formes of the by those conduites which Nature hath ap-

Example.

Hyp.in the Preface of his Prognoft.

Hyp in the be

ginning of his book de Aere locis & aquis.

752

ed, whether wee cate, drinke, watch, or fleepe, or doe any other action, whether Natural, Vitall, or Animall. From thence it commeth, that the aire inspired into the Lungs, the Heart, and the Braine, and vniverfally in all the parts of the bodie, to refresh, and in some measure to nourish the fame, is the cause that a man cannot line one minute without inspiration ; according to the which wonderfull benefit, the excellent Physitian Hippocrates hath pronounced, and that truly, that the aire hath a kinde of Diuinity in it; because, that in breathing and blowing ouer all parts of the world vniuerfally, it doth circumuolue all things therein contayned: nourithing them miraculously, ftrengthning them firmly, and maintaining them in an amiable Vnion; altogether lymbolizing with the Starres and Planets, into the which the divine providence is infufed, which changeth the aire at his pleafure, and giveth it power not only over the mutation of times and scasons, but alfo of the alteration of naturall bodyes. And therefore the Philosophers and Phyfitians have expressely commanded, that we should have a principall regarde vnto the fituation and motions of the heavenly bodies, and constitutions of the Ayre, when the preferuation of health, or the curation of diseases are in question : but especially the course and mutation of the aire is of great power, as weemay easily judge by the foure seasons of the yeare. For the Aire being hot and dry in Sommer, our bodies in like manner doth therby become heated and dried : and in winter the humidity and coldnesse of the avre doth likewise fill our bodies with the very fame qualities; in fuch order neuertheles, and in fo good a disposition of nature, that although our temperatures feeme to bee changed, according to the foure feafons of the veere : we neuertheleffe receiue no harme thereby, if those times dockeepe their seasons and qualities free from exceffe. Bato the contrary, if the feafons be fo peruerted, that the Somer is colde, and the Winter hotte, and the other feafons in the like distemperature, this discord bringeth with it a great perturbation, both in our bodyes and in our spirits,

nose, and generally through all the porcs

of the skinne and Arteries therein infix-

pointed for that end; as the mouth, the | constrained neuerthelesse to receive the danger, by reason that the causes are extreame, and on every fide encompasse vs; fo that we are constrained to lodge it in style the following the style of the styl to expell the superfluous excrements of our nourishment, and partly to receyue the faid externall causes, which is the ayre or winde, producing in vs diners effects, according to those parts of the world fro whence they do proceed.

For, it beeing fo, that the Southerly Windes are hot and moyft, that of the North cold and dry; the Easterly Winds for the most part are cleare and pure, and the Westerly cloudy and subject to rain ; yet it is a most assured thing, that the aire which we do inspire continually holdeth in all, and through all, the qualitie that is most predominant. And therefore, wee should of necessity consider in all diseafes, and the inconveniences which happe therein, the quality of the winds, and the power which they have ouer the bodies; as Hippocrates hath lernedly left vs by writing in the third Booke of his Aphorisms. Chap. s. and 17. faying, That our bodies do receive a great alteration through the viciffitude of the times and feafons of the yeare. As by the South-winde our bodyes are subject to all diseases, because that movsture is their primitive cause: it also weakneth our naturall heate, the which in the opposite case is much fortified thorough a cold and dry winde, which also maketh our spirits more quick and subtle. The verity of which sentence, the inhabitants of the Territory of Narbonne doe too much experiment to their dammage. For being themselues betweene the lustiest and healthfullest people of all France; verneuerthelesse they themselves are very fickly for the most part, their bodyes leane, their countenances fad and heavy: their faces tawny, or of an Olive colour, do manifestly shew the same. Also among other diseases, they are almost all subject to the white Leprofie; and the last Vicers which they have, which we make no account of at Poictiers or Paris, do ordinarily continue with them a whole yeare together. Not for any other cause, as they themselues confesse, and as all straungers know that have lived in their country, but onely because they are for the most part,

blasted and breathed vpon with a South- So many kindes of venomous Beastes, as erly Winde, which in their language they call Altan, & maketh the aire to be groffe and clowdy scanfing in their bodies al the effects which are attributed by Hippocrates to the Southerly winds, in his third booke and fift Aphorisme, that is to say, when it reigneth, it dulleth the hearing, dimmeth the fight, swelleth and aggravateth the head, weakneth and abateth all the forces of the body.

Alfo, when Hippocrates compareth the temperatures of the one qualitie with the other, he resolueth voon this point, That the dry seasons are farre more healthfull then the humid, that have continued for a long succession of time, because excesfine humidity is the true matter of putrifaction, as experience telleth vs. For wee fee, that in those places where the Marine or Sea-winds have long blowne, all kindes of flesh (shough neuer so new and fresh) will corrupt in leffe then an houre. Thefe things beeing confidered, that it is most necessary for the conservation of our bor dies in health, that the feafons fhould follow their naturall temperatures, without any excesse or contrariety, there is no doubt to be made, but that our bodies wil fall into many ynnaturall difeafes, when the naturall qualities of the feafons are pernerted thorough the cuil disposition of the aire and winde, that predominateth therein. It being fo, that for these 3. yeares space heere in France, the seasons of euery yeare have not kept their ordinary qualities. In the Sommer wee have but little heare, in the Winter a little or no sold at all. Allo the other have bene continually diffempered with raine and moyflure, together with much foutherly winds whose nature we have declared before, & this throughout all France.

I know no man fo little feene in natural Philosophy, or in Astrologie, which will not finde the aire to be the efficient cause of fo many enils, which for these 3. yeares ipace have happened in the Kingdome of France. Forfeom whence thould proceed those contagious Pestilences, which hap-pened indifferently to old and young, to rich and poore, and in fo many places, but from the corruption of the Ayre? From whence thould proceeds to many kinds of Feauers, Pleurifics, Apostumes, Carara, defluctions of fmall Poxe and Meazels?

Frogges, Toads, Grashoppers, Caterpillers, Spiders, Flies, Waspes, Snailes, Serpents, Vipers, Snakes, Lizards, Scorpions, and Aspickes, but onely from a putrifaction resulting from the humiditie of the aire, accompanied with a languishingheate. This is it (I fay) that hath engendered in vs, and in all the Country of France, fo many strange and vnknowne accidents. Behold therefore how our naturall heate hath bene weakned, how our blood and humors have beene corrupted through the malignity of the ayre, which these Southerly winds have caused, thorough the hote and moyft quality there-

Thus much I have observed that wher there hath bene need of Phlebotomizing, there hath beene but little bloud drawne from any, whether they wer yong ot old, wounded, or not of fo good or cuill temperature, but it hath bene corrupted, and appeared of white or greenish Colours. This I have alwayes observed in these last Warres, and in other places where I have bene called to cure the wounded: fuch as haue bene phlebotomized by the preferip tion of the Physitian . either for the preuention of accidents, or the furtherance of the cure. In all which, I fay indifferent ly, I have found the bloode putrified and corrupted.

This being fo, it must needes follows that the flothy parts of our bodies cannot be otherwise then cuilly disposed : and all our bodies Cacochymate; feeing that their nourithment which is the blood ide putrified, and the ayre altogether corrup ted. From whence it followeth that those bodies which were wounded in the fleshy parts, were difficult to cure, confidering that there was in them a perdition of fubstance; the which having neede of the regeneration of the flesh, could not bee accomplished, neither by Medicines, nor any Art of the Chirurgian; fuch & fo great was the Cacochimy or cuill conflicution of their bodies . Euen as in an Hydropticke person, there can no flesh be regenerated, because the blood is too colde and A similande. watery; and in the Elephantick or leprous disease, the flesh and other parts do abide in putrifaction, because of the corrupted blood whereby they are nourified. In like manner, in wounds of Cacochymed bo-

of any good substance, because that to re-Store a lawdable flesh in the wounded part it is required, that the blood should not offend neither in quantity nor quality, & that the offended part bee in it naturall temperature. All these things were wanting in the times of these last Warres: and therefore it is not to be wondred at, if the woundes which were then received (although they were but small and of little cosequence in the noble or ignoble parts) haue brought with them fo many tedious accidents, and in the end death; because that the aire which doeth encompasse vs, maketh the wounds to be corrupt and putrified, by reason of the inspiration and transpiration thereof, especially when it felfe is corrupt and putrified, by altering & corrupting the humors.

Of this point I have had the experience

fomuch, that the affistants could hardlie

endure to be present at their dressings. It

need not to be here alledged, that this was

for want of being cleanely kept, or often

dreffing or for not administering to them

things necessary: for this corruption was

as common to Princes and great Lords,

as vnto poore foldiers; whole wounds (if

by chance one day escaped wherein they

were not dreft, fo great was the number

of the hurt foldiers) you should finde in

them the morrow after, a gloss quantitie

of wormes, with a maruellous flinking fa-

nour. And moreouer, there hapned vnto

them many Apollumes in divers parts of

their bodies opposite to their hurts. For

if they were shotte in the right shoulder,

they shold have an Apostume on the left

buce; and if the wound were in the right

logathe Apostume would arise in the lefte

arme. As it hapned to the late K. of 2/4-

war, to Mounfieur de Neuers, and to Mon-

freue de Rendan, and almost to all others

So it feemeth, that Nature being fo much

oppressed with corrupted humors, could

nor be fufficiently purged and discharged

of them by wounds onely, but fent fome

part of the corruption to forme other part

either hidden or apparent. For, if the A-

postumes appeared not outwardly, they

should be found in the inward part; as in

Intollerable flinke procee in many Wounds, which I have bin calding from the wounded led to dreffe, that have rendred a most inparts of men. supportable stinking sauour, as a certaine witnesse of corruption and infection, in-

Venoniou wounds.

consequently death.

made vs apt to receyue the aforefaide inconveniences which we have incurred by our iniquities. CHAP.

dies, there can be no regeneration made, the Liver, Lungs, or Spleen, Fro those putrifactions were ftirred vp certain vapors, which through their combination with the heart, caufeth continual Featiers, with the Liuer, a let and hinderance of the generation of good blood; & with the brain fwoonings, faintings, convultions, and

Now because of those aforesayde accidents, it is vnpossible for any Chirurgian (were he neuer so expert) to correct the malignity of the aforefaid wounds:neuertheleffe those that are employed therein, ought not to be reprehended; because it is impossible for them to warre against God, nor against the aire, wherein oftentimes are hidden the rods of his divine iuflice. If therefore, according to the fentence of ancient Hippocrates, who faieth; That all contused woundes ought to bee brought to suppuration, thereby to bee perfectly cured; which method wee are fomtimes constrained to change, because of the puttifactious Gangrenas and mortifications which doe accompanie fuch wounds, thorough the corruption of the aire; and can any blame or accuse vs,because we are constrained through necessity to change and alter that manner of curation, and insted of suppurative medicins to vie other remedies, to relit fuch accidents which not onely happen in wounds made by Gun-fhot, but also by fwords or flanes: which remedies shall be described in this present Discourse. Besides humane causes, that man is ill instructed in the knowledge of Celestial things, which doth not beleene for certaine, that the wrath of God hangeth ouer vs, to punnish the faults which ordinarily we comit against his Maiesty. His scourges are prepared ready, his rods and weapons have they ministers alwajes at hand, to execute the commandement of his dilline luftice, into whole fecrets I dare enter no further, but will conclude with the opinion of the bell aduited Practitioners, that the principall occasion of the aforesaide mortalitie, did proceede from the pure and determinate will of God, who by the temperature that he hath given to the agree and windes (as the Heraldes of his divine Tuffice) hath

CHAP. V.

¶ Gf the Excellencie of the Arte of Phisicke going farre beyond all other humane Arts and Sciences what soeuer.

What human Ans are trulic

the of man.

Chap.5.



E vnderstand humane Artes (as well Liberallias Mechanicall) to bee all those, that Man (inspired by God) hath inuented for his necessitie,

commoditie, or recreation. Amongest which also is Phisicke, the practise of naturall Philosophie vppon the bodies of men, for whom all mechanicall Arts were deuised; as Arres liberall for exercise of the minde. We except onely from all ordinary professions of Man, the sacred Science of Divinity; which we understand, not to come within compasse of this coparison, when we extoll Physicke to be aboue all humane Arts: because it is nevther Art or humane Science; but a matter meerely and purely divine, not invented by men, but infuled by God; concerning foules, and not bodies; eternall, infallible, immutable, having (for object) God Almighty, Creator of the World, who made it of nothing, and for the feruice of man. In whom we are to confider a reasonable soule, the body, and benefits which are given vnto him for the fup: port and maintaining of his life.

Dininity hath her especiall care of the foule, and next to her, Moral Philosophy. Skill and knowledge, restrained vntoshumane Lawes, do discourse on goods and proprieties appertaining to men, rendering to euery one that which is his owne. Betweene them both is Phylicke, conferuing the body in health, expelling Difeafes, and fauing from death, fo farre as it pleaseth God to permit. If then the excellency of professions, is to be esteemed in and by their fubicets, according as they ought to bee : Physicke will then assume the second place, For, the soule is more then the body, and the bodie more then garments.

I will not heere contest with my Grand Masters the Magistrates, who have power ouer mens bodies, as well in case of

life, as death: for their authority is nolife, as death: for their authority is no-thing elfe but a meere declaration; either Magistrates in of pardoning, or punithing with death, cates of life or according to the quality of desert. As for their authorithe power of absolution or pardon, if it ty from God bein grace, as the fole Prince or Soueraigne Magistrate may do it: it proceedeth from the priviledge given him by God, and not from any knowledge of the Lawes. Like to the other, that declareth the innocence and preuention of the accufed: the which is properly to faue, or giuellife, because the party standing so accused, hath not therefore descrued death,

And as for power of putting to death, therein is no praise; at least, it ought not to be compared with the power of fauing What diversilife. For, fo much doth the Phylition (the fity there is grace of God affilting) to man, beeing attainted with deadly difeases, and doubtles of saining life, should dye, except they were succoured and putting in such manner. Now, whether it is effectable, or no, and that (by the Art of Phyficke) life may be prolonged: that we shall more amply relate in the following chapter. Onely our intent heere, is, to showe the excellencie of man; to confirme the excellency of that Art, which is dedica-

ted onely to his confernation. The principall dignity of Man, is in wherein the this, that God hath vouchfafed to beftow on him his owne Image and refemblance, doubt confift. giuing him an immortall foule, capable of the Divinity: in regard that all thinges were submitted to him, for his necessitie. commodity, and recreation; having made (for his feruice) Heaven, Earth, the Sea, and all that is in them. For God hath no neede of any thing, made by himfelfe: All is for our vie, and therefore it is easie to vnderstand and know, that Man is more worthy and excellent then all the worlde. So, to speake truly, Heauen and Earth, which haue had a beginning; were ordainedfor an ending, and to wexe olde like a Garment. Onely Man shall never end, but change his condition, and of beeing mortall, he shall become immortall; in a Man was cre fhort while after the foule shal receive her have ending, diuorce from the body, taking it vp again, in much more glorious manner then before, and in such a perfect temper, as ne-

Seeing then, that Man is the worthieft thing in all the world, befide al other what | Man the only focuer: the Science ordained for his per-

uer can be subject to corruption.

worthy thing in althe world

fon, must needs bee the most excellent aboue all other, next vnto that which properly concerneth his Creator. For, Man is the most worthy creature of all, and (by consequence) the Art or Science which maintaineth him in life and health, is the onely excellent of all humane Arts. This is a strong argument, for the preheminece and dignity of Phylicke, according to the fingularity of the subject whereon it discourfeth.

I could give a glance at some other mat-The Antiquiters, which make (in like manner) for his ty,inecelsitie and vulitie o commendation: As his Antiquity, Neceffity, and Vtility, together with the Authority of them, that have the more reuerenced and effeemed him, for the same reasons. As concerning his Antiquitie, no man doubteth, but it is as olde as the Adam was transgression of Adam, and that so soone Physicion to as he had finned, he (thereby)becam fubiect to sicknesse. He must needs be Physition to himselfe, to whom God had given knowledge, concerning the vertue of all thinges whatfocuer, and causing him to

> Prophane Histories, doe attribute the inuention of Phylick to god Apollo, which is the Sunne : fignifying therby, that from the Sun proceedeth the vertue of Plants, and other medicaments, which the earth produceth. Hereupon they conclude that Æsculapius (the first that made profession of this Art) was his sonne; and he the Father of Machaon & Podalirius, vulnerarie Physitions (otherwised called Chirurgeons) who were in the warre of Troy, the History whereof, is the very ancientest in

> giue them seuerall names, answereable

and according to their fenerall proprie-

Now, concerning Antiquity, it is one of those conditions, that commendeth fomething; prouided, that it hath beene continued. For, if it be neither vie-able, nor beneficiall, it will foon have ending. But we see (euen to this instant) that Phyficke hath beene well maintained, euermore in augmentation, beauty, and liberall bounty. And that, by industrie of the cheefest persons that have bin, not onely Philosophers by profession, but likewise by Kings, Princes, and other men of greatest esteeme, it hath beene highly honoured, according as ancients Histories, and their learned labors left to vs of Phylicke, our graue father Hippocrates. Nor is he to

do plainly testifie.

True it is, that the Romaines did let it Plininlines passe by them, for about fixe hundred yeares, as holding it in detestation; for the Phylichene yeares, as holding it in detertations to the leded in Rome for Rome for forth of Greece, a Nation to them very ful- fometime. pitious. But fince those times, Physitions were honoured, much respected, & maintained in Rome; holding ranke with the cheefest Noblemen and Knights.

Now, touching the Necessity thereof, Of the neces it is fo manifest, as nothing more. But it fity of Phy. feemeth, that this may diminish the ex- ficke. cellency of the Art; because it is not expetible or desireable of it selfe, but onely for neede. Like as in Moral Philosophy, that is most esteemed, which is desirable of it selfe (Asto have children, then affectable, for some other respect, as to have goods for those children;) Euen fo, Phy- Physickense ficke, being not defirable of it felfe (like to defireables Musicke) but for necessity; it appeareth to be the leffe commendable, even as Mechanicall Arts, which cannot passe without vie. Yet notwithstanding, this is contrary; for, the more necessary Physick is, Arts cannot fo much the more it is to bee defired : and ve. the excellency of her effects, maketh her to be the more excellent.

And heere, Vtility or commodity ioyneth with it, commending it in the high- Of the ville est degree. For, as there is nothing in the world more welcome then Health, nor more defireable then long life: Phylicke, providing both for the one and other, is the more beneficiall to the contentment ofmen, then any other humane Science can be. For (by the contrary) as whofoeuer that hath not health, is vnprofitable Sicke men ste to the world: euen fo he whath lyued but to the world. a litle while, brought therto the leffer benefit with him. For, as the Father of Eloquence fayd. We are not borne for our felues onely, but our Parents, Kindred. & Friends, de Senellato our Countrey, yea the whole world; all thefe do vrge from vs (ome emolument, and commodity.

It remaineth now, to confirme al thefe reasons by great and good Authoritie, of Authoritie further as have much effected and extolled Physicke, and the professors therof, commending it infinitely by their Writinges . In the performance whereof, I shall content my felfe, with the exhortation made in Ecclesiatticus, and the remonstrance of

Hippocrates felt fenered Philicke from Philosophie.

Chap.s.

Galen difallo

Ezod.15,29.

be suspected in the matter, because he was a Physition : for, he was neuer mercenary, nor at the feruice of any man; but free and most liberall of his profession. And he it was, that first divided Physicke from Philosophie. Because (in elder daies) Phyfitions were not distinguished by themselues, but Philosophers did contemplate vpon diseases, and their remedies among naturall thinges: for their vie principally (as Celfus witneffeth) who had most need aboute other, in regarde of their bodyes weaknesse, being ouercome with continuall depressions of Age.

Hippocrates then was the first, that deuided this Art from Philosophy, and made profession therof publikely; as (afterward) did Diocles, Praxagoras, Chrysippus, Herophilus, and Erafistratus, all his successours. And they (at length) divided Phylicke into three parts, for better accommodation thereof to ficke persons: referring mechanicall people to manuall operation, called Chirurgery, and the preparation of Medicines, which are tearmed Pharmacie or Apothecaries skill, according as(in thefe our dayes) it is exercised among vs. But it is by mercenary people (for the most part) whose testimonie in the Art of phifick, can carry here no credit; no not that of Galen himselfe, although he was one of the first subjected fernants thereto.

Wherfore that shall satisfie me, which is recorded by fo great a Father, after I have made recitall of the words of Ecclesiasticus, the wiledome of tefus the fonne of Sirach, writing thus in his 38. Chapter, verse 1. Honor the Physicion with that honor which is due vinto him, because of the necessity thou hast of him: for the Lord hath created him. 2. Healing commeth of the most High, and the Physition shall bee honoured even of Kinges. 3. The knowledge of the Physition exalteth his head, and in the fight of Princes he shall be had in admiration . 4. The Lorde hath created Medicines of the Earth, and he that is wise will not abhorre them. 5. Was not the water made sweete with woode, that men should know the vertue thereof? 6. So he hath given knowledge unto men, that hee might be glorified in his mernailous workes, 7. With Such doth he heale men, and taketh away their paines.

8. The Apothecarie maketh his commixtions, and yet hee cannot finish his owne work: for, it is from God, that health commeth over all the earth.

wickednesse.

9. My sonne, faile not in thy ficknesse, but pray unto God and he will make thee whole. 10. Leave off from sinne, and order thine hands aright, and clenfe thine heart from all

11. Offer sweete Incense, and fine Floure for a remembrance , make the Offering fatte. for thou art not the first giver.

12. Then give place to the Phisition: for the Lord hath created him, let him not goe from thee, for than hast need of him.

13. The houre may come, that their enterprizes may have good successe.

14. For they shall also pray wate the Lord, that hee would profper that which is given for ease, and their Physicke for prolonging

These divine words do conclude (& verie sufficiently) our purpose, for the Sufficient dignity, excellency, necessify, vitility, and preore for the prerogative of Physitions: condemning Physicke. all fuch, as hold them in vile eft: eme, and (in them) do despise the great goodnesse of Almighty God, who hath bestowed vpon men such meanes of healing. Let vs now heare what was spoken by the learned Happocrates. The good olde man, in the Booke of the Lawe, complayined for long fince, that (even in his time) Physick was but flenderly effeemed, in regarde of abule; much more then must it needes be now at this day.

The Art of Phylicke (faith hoe) & the most apparant of all other .: but by the it at legeap. 14. merance of some that we it, and fach as indge of the Profesours; it is too farre onergone by all other Artes. The faulte (meethinkes) proceedesh principally from this; That in Citties, there is no punishment oppointed to the Art of Phylicke, as to other, Except dishonours done it, which are ver in flictions sufficient for such as fayle shere.

They may wellbee compared unto the A-Ctorsina Tragedie, who base the habite, wilage, and outward behaviour, of those per-Connes, which they represent and counterfeit - lersoffo fin-In like manner , there are many Rhylitions Bular a Sciin name and repute; but verie few that are the men indeede. For in him that would truely have the knowledge of Physicke, sixe Severall qualities or conditions, are necessarily required, which followe thus. I. The Nature. 2. Discipline. 3. Good Manners. 4. Learning from his Childe-hoode.

A familiar co

Philosophers Kings, and Princes, haue bin Physicions

What attribu

tion is made w

to Physick by

profane hifto

Chirurgions

rary Physicios

Of prolonging life by Physicke. 8. Booke

Six things re quired in a and (without which) he is no body.

Pliny his re-

prehension of

onely in name, but in deed alfo. But Ignorance is a wicked creasure of a lewell of vile price, to fuch as have it, and live but as in a dreame or opinion.

Plinte pursuing this matter, and to the Pli.inl.194.26 fame purpose, taxing the vulgare, that know not how to distinguish betweene the good and badde Physition, listening onely to fuch as are full of talke, making great vaunts and bragges of themselues, hath these wordes: They get (saith hee) a little taste of the Arte onely, and their rash prating Physijudgement fodainly conceiveth, that prefently they are skilfull Physicions; albeit (in anie kinde of lying) there is no greater daunger, yet it is not easily discovered, so pleasing is the sweetnesse to a man, in perswasson, and commending him felfe.

5. Loue to the toyle and labour; 6. And ob-

fernation of apt times and feafons. With and

by thefe he shall become a good Physition, not

Moreover, there is not any Lawe, for the No punishpunishing of capitallignorance, where it imment for caportesh the lines of men, neither is there anie pital ignor ace example of vengeance: for, they undertake matters of difficulty and danger, and make their proofes by killing men, and yet paffe onpunified for thus murdering men. Nay, and Ignorant Phi fitions are shar which is farre worle, when them (elues pad tuffly deferme the reproch: they excufeit,

> pudently doe lay their owne sinne uppon the dead.

rers of men.

-ratellar-

distant.

hi I thought it expedient to fet downe Hipsoniuli. diefe words, to the end it may be known, 41 QUIST 1 chartenen in thefe dayes of ours) there are many that wearing the maske and apparance of Phylicions, cause Phylicke (tho-The reason roublisheir abules) to bee greatly defoiwhy Physicke Red la Buen us many other thinks (good of is contempo chemielues, or newtrall) aremade worffe by many.

dienaher be indecide, in regard that they are very cafily abused. But because I have formerly promised, to declare in another Chapter, whether life may be prolonged by Phylicke, or no, which is an action fingular and excellent: I will nextefet downe in amplemanner, what mine opi-

by the ficke patients intemperancie, and im-

ansme and resules but were few that ore wen indeed for it beginst woods t new hane the entry to of Phylicke, fixe nesell qualities in con steel, it is meelfa represented, and 1 one 1. The

mion is concerning that point the

Mente 2 Decolor ; of den mere of Learning from his or we have be CHAP. VI.

Whether it bee posible, or no, to prolong the life of man, or woman, by Physicke.

His Question hath alwayes appeared to bee verie difficult, and hath much affliction on mendific de the verie greatest spirits; culty-to-te-called and concealed and concealed the veries of National Georges o

in the darkest and deepest secrecie of Nature; and therefore it hath bene the more painfull, to fuch as have curioufly fought after it. The reasons of them that have debated it, are so strong and powerfull on either fide; that hardly can any refolution bee yeelded, or what best may be saide in the case. For there are very many Arguments, absolutely concluding; that the life of man cannot be prolonged, by any remedies or meanes of Phylicke. On the contrary, Physitions have and doe main- on either fide taine, that it is possible. Therefore, for very contrathe better disciding of this doubt, I will differy to ch first of all defend each of the seuerall fides, and in the end (like to an honest and indifferent Arbitratour) deliver therein, mine owne opinion and judge-

That there is a rearme or limitation. appointed vito the life of man, and that het cannot goe beyond it by any meanes of time preli whatfoetter; wee haue (in the first place) of the life of Man. that which the patient man Job faid, chapt. 14. vetles 1. 5. inspired by the Spirite of God. The dayes of Man are Short, the number of his Moneths are with the Lord ; He hath ordained the boundes and limits of his life which he cannot paffe.

Artistica affirment the lame, in his lecond book of generation and corruption;
The time and life (laith he) of every shing,
hath his infinite count and determination; For in all things there is an order, and at things there is an order, and at the ined wed wed by aperiod. Also, to Gandal in his south booke of the Generation of mandal con-Creatures hee layeth ; It is but reasonable, that there should be periods and seasons, is well for Georgeth, as for Generation and Life : which are accounted by dayes, monethes, yeares, or other times that are

on a certaint

Of prolonging life by Physicke. decreed for them heere. And Auerroes ex- | fickly, have held out for long time; wher-

plicating the same faith; All things that are, have (necessarily) life determined unto

Seeing then, that all the works of Nature do (necessarily) consiston a certainty of order, fo that they neither can bee otherwife, or anoide it : And feeing alfo. that Art is heerein much inferiour to Nahare: it may eafily bee concluded (as Gales disputeth in the Booke called Marufmm) that life is no way to bee prolonged by any cunning. Whereunto Mulcen confehteth, where hee makethan expresse fearth, for the causes of our ineutrable death, faying This naturall death is winde uidable to every man, differing one from anasber, according to their prime complexion; rontill the time cher hane in shelr power . | for conferuing their haturallhumidity. For ewery one hash his tearme prefixed, which is divers in their indivision by diverfit of their temper : mbo have naturalleeumes, which in other are shoremed, and yes all according so the will of God yes . Ilonno I wonth If then the tearmes of life are prefix

ed and assigned to enery person 3 by the will of God, and his ordinance (Name being but a fernant to God, to wir, effablishing things (by order in this World) from their beginning) it is not to bet exeeded or out flept why any meanes in Man, but onely by the grade & goodnesse of Almighty God. As to King Exething to whom the Prophet If airly had fignified his death. Net vpon his Repentance, life was prolonged to him for fifteene yeares! onely by the mercy of God a Who alfo promifeth in his facred Law long life vnto children, That Honor their Father and Mother, and are no way ingratefull to them.

Thus we fee, if (contrary to thefe allegations to certaine) wee can extend and prolong the naturall termes of life, by any ordinances or remedies in our Arte. Because there are some store of reasons, which perswade, that not onely the order of Nature, but also our industry, doth promisc long life. First of all, Astrologers do maintaine it, where they discourse on elections, figures, and Images. And this hath bene confirmed by experience, in the care and diligence of Physitions to manie persons, who being assisted by remedies and good gouernment: haue maintained themselues in health. And being crazy & as otherwife, they had dyed yong, and neuer feene fo many yeares.

Plato & Aristotle (great and graue Authors) without all exception; doe teffifive (to this purpose) that a learned man, named Herbdicus, the most fubice to ficke- Sickly Heroneffe of any in his time? did yer heuertheleffe line an hundred yeares, by great skil, dred yeares and exquisite manner of Gouernment. Galeh allo (in diuers places) confesseth his owne natural infiction but he faith withall; that he had so weter brite Cool is a hard! Calena, experience appropriate the cool in the cool of fick. Except, when he was ones or wife affected with the Ephemerie (which is of a daies continuance) onely being painfull to him, in travailing to visit his Friends. And, if wee may credite fome that have written, he liued about feuenscore years. which may be counted a goodly time.

We shall not need to cite the authority of Platarte, who speakerh of manie Verie Intemperate Weak (yet delicate) bodies, that lived long time by the meanes of this Art: because we see the same now daily experienced helpe of Phyon as many. Nor shall we likewise neede to oppose against them, divers intemperate and diffolute peffons, that daily have despited all good gonernment; and yet notwithstanding, have attained to great yeares, yea, to decrepite age. For it is verie certaine that if fuch persons as are wel borne, and of good temper, woulde line and be affilted by Physicall means in their necessities; they should be flower to Age, Of personnes and have the benefit (doubtleffe) of long welborn, and life. Which is eafie to proue, because wee per. oftentimes fee, that fome, who are whelth full by nature, or elfe by accident : do yet line longer time, the others that are more firong and luftie. Because strong bodies. trusting onlie in their strength: do line diforderly, without any lawe or gouernment at all. Others, being fober and continent, abstaining from hurtfull things, and obferuing a certaine manner of living, by direction of a skilfull Physition indeede; haue hadde their life time longer, and much more healthfull. Whereuppon grew the old Prouerbe, A crackt Pitcher (sometime) lasteth longer, then one that is

Heereupon Galen saide well : It is verie credible, that such men live lessetime, then dicus that li

enine a

t ermes of life

ficke.

For fuch as defoile the art of Phyficke.

The radical naturall heat

good gouers ment may prolong it.

The reason of the fodaine stealing of aga vpon vs.

Life kept and retayned in great extresmity by drin-kes and Cor-

*A Philofopher that laughed at the worlde. ding for the health and life of Man, hath fuch vertue; as if any one shal rashly contemne the ordinances thereof he not only liueth in mifery, and all irkefomnesse of diseases, but also cutteth off his length of life, and abridgeth the tearme which Nature had prefixed for him, anticipating his death, and (as we may well fay) thereby cutteth his owne throate. As much to fav, when (by vfing cuill gouernment) he

is ordained them by Nature: who (being ig-

norant) do despise the healthfull maner of li-

uing. For, the Science of Phylicke, proui-

confumeth his radicall humour, sooner then it was ordained for him, or suffocateth or quencheth his naturall heate: on both which, do confift the continuance of Now, if such be the law and nature of

contraries, that they are faid to be in one and the same subject; as, if the one hold, the other also must do the like : it followeth then necessarily that if the one can Thorsen life, the other like wife can pro-long it. And feeing it is most euident, that if the life of Man may be abridged, by diuers faultes and blemishes of excesse: it may also as sufficiently be concluded, that life may bee prolonged by good governement and discreete order. For, although the discommodities, which depend vpon the principles of our generation, are not (by any means) to be anoyded or prenented (as the effluxion and continual diffi-pation of our whole substance, which is done by naturall heate, beeing the reason

of Ages fooner enfuing, in regard of ex-

ceffine and ineuitable exficeation:) yet

notwithstanding, it may bee tardyed by

Physicke, and so hindered, that the last

day shall not come so soone, nor so ha-

Hath it not beene (almost) in generall observation, that divers have lien gasping yea, even ready to give vp the ghoft; who (neuerthelesse) haue bin continued in life for longer time, by taking a small quantity of Malmefie, Aqua vita, Aqua Imperialis, the Confection of Akermes, or fome other cordiall thing? The period and laft limit of life beeing then fo neere; hath it not bene deferred (by those means) untill another houre ? It is reported of laughing " Democritus, that being entrea-

red by his Houshold servants (seeing his

all greefe and forrow from his boufe, during the The mophorian Feasts, which were then neere at hand, by prolonging his life till then : that he did it by the finel of Hony, though some others say, that it was by the favour of hot bread Thus you fee what our Phylitions haud delinerd, wherin there is a verie great apparance of trurecord at 117, and a

Wee have heard the two parties plead The feurni and debate, by contrarietie of fentences and reasons on either side sit behooveth by themselve now, to qualificathe contention, and to resolue on that which hath the best hold And to the end, that it may beer done with the greater cunning ; ipis necessarie alfo, to distinguish the tearmes of life; that some are super-naturall, others naturall, and othersaccidentarie, which wee call (hortned or shridged.

We call those super-naturall, which Of superns. GOD Almighty ordained and prefix- tural life a ed to fome, out of his owne meere will, beforethe fuch as are noted bee inflitured by anie Arre or Councell. As the date of verie long life, which God appointed in the first Age of the Worlde, and before the Flood for the multiplication of mankind: and especially to Weah, for the restauration the realist minef soud asserts

Those which we tearme Manurall, are they that be bestowed voon every man, Natural life secording both to the diversity of temper and building as they are in the principles and foundations, eyther ftrong or weake .. In regard whereof, fome may live long, others leffer while waccording vnto the order of Nature ... And they that doe attaine unto thefe tearings (the grace of God affifting) except they falling to diforder or fome inconnenience hap- Accidental peneth to them; which are (already to bee life happing called) the limits or termes of the thirde whatfourt kind, and which we have named accidentary, or accidentall, that may happen in. or to any age, by cafuall and inopinate cafes; as Wounds, Poylans, Burnings, fals, ruines, fhipwrackes, plagues, and other populare harmes. Such inconvenient ces no way M ces are (most often) ineuitable, and it ly- be auoyate eth not in the Science of Physicke, to vie any precaution against them; but onely to heale the harme already happened, if it be possible, So leaving these tearmes of life to the arbitration of fortune (which is health very crazie) that hee would banish nothing elfe, to speake more piously) then

Chap.6.

then the pure will of God, without order folong time as it is due, according to the of Nature, as elsewhere we have enstruder of the first acd: let vs speake onely concerning the tearme of naturall life, and explicate the manner thereof more amply.

All the Philosophers and Physitions do agree together, that we ought to meafure and bound the continuance or duration of our life, on that which may lengthen naturall heate, and the radicall hu-Naturall heat mor. Now, to the end that these things all humor do may last the longer in vs, our good Mother Nature (as Galen Speaketh) hath plaprolong life. ced in vs a meruailous power, which by continuall application of Nourishment, defendeth the ordinary diffipation of our

fubstance and Radicall humour, maintay-

ning our naturall heate, as well by this

meanes, as by respiration, and the pulse

Nutritine, being limited, and not infinit;

cannot alwayes defend and conferne the

fayde humour in fuggesting another.

But fuch a kinde of power as we terme

of Arteries.

An admirable

Whereby it commeth to to passe, that the body wexing dry, by little and little: procureth thence, that that power (afterward) is not well exercised in it selfe: but weakneth dayly more and more, fo that in the end, the bodies power ceaseth, from an especiall care of their health. This is being nourithed fufficiently. In this mannot the matter, of attaining voto the and ner, those parts becomming saplesse and and tearme ordained by Nature, withour foon com withered, the body wexeth meager & diout abridging or fhortning it, although ming to wrine minishing; and so passing on further thus, this is a case verie rare. But I demaund it dryeth; and then this condition is calprincipally, whether the end and natuled wrinkled Age. This is the principall rall period of life, may be advanced and natural necessity of corruption and death, prolonged by the Arte of Phylicke, or to all bodyes begotten : for death enfueth no? The Answere heereto, is, That life then, when the humor primitive, fuffavuing or radicall, fayleth, and natural heat becommeth quenched; and this is the end of life, which we terme naturall ending.

Asconcerning the Art of Phylicke: It is an Art (faith Auicenne) that exempteth ducted causes whereof, may be continuwords concer not from death, nor can conduct every one, so ed and extended, yea, & (especially) made ingthe Arte farre as to the latest tearme of humaine life. the stronger. Nowe, the principles of athylick, al. But it affureth and exempteth from two life (that is, naturall heate, and the primimics helpfull thinges; the one is from putrifaction, that it tiue humor) if they cannot bee re-integracan no way feize uppon the body, except it ted, yet (at least) they may be repaired, & bee by some externall occasion, as the Pestimade more vigorous by this Ast, Accorlence, or poy fon; the other is in defending the ding as the curing of Heaticke of consinaturall humiditie, to the end, that it may nual Feauers doth flew vs, and the recolast the longer, and bee the flower in confuuering or amending of energeomplexions whereby the naturall heate is ordered and

These two things are in the power of Physicke, whereby it may prolong life, for temper of every man, and that by three meanes. The first whereof, is, to preoccupate straunge heats to hinder opilati- Three feueral ons; and to eiect the excrements, from prolonging of whence enfueth the generation of putri- life. fying ; or when they are engendered, to qualific and quench them. The second is,

the due administration of drinking & ea-

ting; in substance, quality, quantity, time,

and order. The third is, to abstaine from

things, which, in confuming and exhau-

fting the Radicall humoursin a very fhort

the minde. But aboue all other, immo-

derate carnall Copulation, and at incom-

modious houres; with some other such

like things, which a man may, and ought

to shunne, by following the good and

wholesome ordinances and rules of Phy-

But (fay you) no man neede doubt of

while doeth resolue, or dissipate together the natural heate; as excessive travaile or cularthings labour; vie of tharpe or piercing things, hurtfull vato

watchings, cares, and divers passions of health.

these things, for energy one will gladly a-gree, to moone the foresaide Reasons that such cannot but line long, as keepe with with a further in the compasse of temperance, and haue objection.

is not onely conferred by Physicket but An Answerto likewise prolonged . For, it fandeth the principall with good, reason, that the thing must point in que . needs be the more confirmed and suan-ning the powced, the principles, foundation, and pro- er of Phylick

Ifthen, by way oflining humectinely,

tempered.

8. Booke

Of Physitions prolonging diseases.

763

The way and meanes for preferring the radical humor and naturall

A further en forcing, for better information in the maine Argument.

Concerning

moistening of

the folide and

fpermaticke

parts.

How Phyfick enstructeth to

or moiftly, as by Bathes of pure fresh waters, and other fuch like remedies, the radicall humour may be the longer conferued, which otherwise would be ouer soon confumed; and naturall heat kept temperate; so that it may consume her feeding the more sparingly, by defect whereof, death naturally enflicth:) wher is the man who wil not confesse, that life may be pro longed by Phylicke, which elfe wold haue bin much shorter, and according to Nature? I know well, and I confesse it, that the folid and spermaticke parts, cannot be moistned substantially, & of themselves neuertheles, you will grant, that they may be moistned through the voide spaces and pores, by which the feeding humour infinuateth it felfe, and whereby also the wasting of the radicall humour is the more tardied. And it is almost in the same maner, as when we put water with oyle into a Lampe; to the end, that the Oyle may the more strongly resist the slames denou-

But yet (fay you) although the termes of life may bee lengthened, yet it is not ftrongly enough proued by this argumer. Let me then reply, that of the Complexions or tempers of the body, that of the most and cheefest life, is moisture, or that which is in like manner (or together with it) hot and moyft, which vulgarly wee vie to terme Sanguine: the contrary, which weeall Melancholy, is of far horter life. So that, whenfoeuer both of them shall vse one gouernement together, and like maintaining; yet notwithstanding, the first will be of longest lasting, because it hatly the terme of it owne life furtheft off, from the principles of it own generation. Now, the Art of Phylicke enstructeth, & the vertue thereof is fo great; that it can chaunge (by little and little) the naturall temperature of cold and dry, into theyr contrary : as Galen teacheth how to do it, in his two last bookes of the preservation of health. Doth it not follow then hereby immediately, that the tearme of life may likewise be prolonged by the Art of Phyficke Yea, and that fome one, vnfortunately borne, and (even bound as it were) to mortneffe of life; hath yet chaunged the condition, and become thereby farre more lively and chearful. Onely by this meanes(in mine opinion) that eueric one eafily vinderstandeth, how to learn of an-

other; which is nothing elfe, but how to lengthen the limits of all Ages, whereby lengthen the limits of all Ages, whereby countouring enfueth, that the course of enery life may defire how to handle be prolonged.

And first of all that the vigor and flour grees. of youth, may long time be preferred by the Art of Phylicke: Galen declareth it in this manner: There are two principall ends in the conservation of health, wwhich are in de Reyms and our power : namely, to restore the substance capo. dissipated by meats and drinks convenient, & to reiect the excrements proceeding from them. If no defailance bee made in any of these: the body (so long) shal inioy helth, and will beevery long time conferred in the strength of his owne vigour. In like manner, and by the selfcsame reason, Age on of Age of the stating on of Age of the selfcs of such as ought be holpen by to dye by naturall death) is to bee prolon- Phylicke. ged by the helpe of Physicke: so that Iwoonings, trances, and the pale ashie countenances of extreme olde Age, shall come very flowly.

Heereby finally we may conclude that as in all ages (for we may in like manner, and much more easily, vnderstande the tearmes of childhood, infancy, & youth) and euery estate of life: the tearmes may longed yet be prolonged by Physick, for further time licke. then they are ordained by Nature. And these are the limits, which God the principall Authour of Phylicke) would have fubicated to this Art): which are in our power, so long as God permitteth, and cutteth not our thred of life, vntill it pleafeth him. Euen as in like manner heeretofore, and beyond all the order of Nature by him appointed: he fustained and prolonged life myraculously, without anie Physicall helpe, yea, euen without eating and drinking.

CHAP. VII.

Against fuch as hold opinion, that Physitions do delay, and prolong hurts & difeafes, and are meere abufers of the world.

Here is not any other Art, folmuch fubiect to flander and calumnic, as the Art Military and that of Phylicke:

Eucry one is lengthenout life in all deChap. 7.

which agree likewise (very wonderfully) together in many other things, as may more at large be discerne d, by divers discourses following. For, to explicate (familiarly) the deeds of Phylicke, I shall often borrowe fimilitudes from warre-like actions, and namely at this instant (meethinkes) I may ferue my turne with one, which aptly offers it felfe for my purpofe, thus. If a Generall besiedge a Towne,& take it not within some promised time, or a town or Citelfe fo foon as they hope, who are far off, ty, and what rash imputatiwithout knowing how it might be taken; although the Captaine performed his vtons (vndeferuedly)may be most diligence : he shall be suspected and laid ypon him accused in divers kindes, as of negligence, flothfulnesse, intelligence, corruption. treason, ignorance, precipitation, or tardinesse in his enterprizes, badde conduction, pufillanimity, or fome other defect in his charge, & yet all these veterly false. They that fee But they which judged thus peremptorily, knew not what resistance the besied-hamblinding, ged made, what good provision they had ged made, what good prouision they had, what strength of men, and all thinges requifite to defend themselves, beyond the expectation of the befiedged; who might be abused by his scowtes and spies, and diuers, making report of the estate of the place, and of some other exteriour semblances, whence might be imagined, what was within the Towne. So fareth it with the Physition, who befiedgeth any difeafe, treacheroufly entred into the bodye of Man, to enforce him bused by exteriour fignes, and very good-

definions la for fake the place. Oftentimes, hee is aly outward refemblances : whereby, thinking that he is at the end of the Cure, he is compelled to beginne againe. For hee meeteth with more corruption and ill humours, then hee knew how to fore fee, The best Art the Disease making farre greater resistman may bee ance, then the Physition thought on : rehowneskill enforcing, and repayring it felfe dayly more and more, against the best succour and remedies applyed. So that the fickenesse will last longer, then himselfe that hath it expected, and cannot be cured fo foone, as (perhappes) the Physition promifed, or others immagined, that had intelligence thereof. Whereuppon, hee groweth suspected presently, eyther of ignorance, or of negligence, of couctoufneffe, malice, or fome other vice, which induceth him to lengthen out the difeafe,

longer then it ought to be.

As touching ignorance, I suppose it Concerning could not bee fo, but that the Physition the Physicion. was held to bee skilfull, expert, and an honest man. If he prooue not such a one, it was ill done to call him, and to commit the patients life into his handes : fo that the Patient may well fay, as Iesus Christ replyed vnto Pilate, Iohn 19, verse 11. He that delinered mee to thee hath the greater lohn 19,11.

As for negligence, I grant that there are Physitions learned, expert, and men For Negliof good esteeme, who may passe (some- gence in their what ouer-lightly) their vifitation and cu- attendance on ring of sicke personnes : but I can neuer patients. thinke, that it should bee to any such end. as to prolong the paine; but rather that it is a negligence of inaduertence, as may happen in divers of their other affayres. For which, there is very good remedy, by ernest solicitations, inciting them (as they ought) to doe their dutie, and wishing them to be more frequent in attendance : or elfe, by giving them a coadiutor or affistant, to make them the more diligent in their care.

The most that is to bee doubted (in mine opinion) is greedie Auarice: For the vulgar fort thinke, that Physitions to prolongthe (commonly) lengthen out Difeafes, and Patient in draw the into some time of continuance, to derive the greater profite from them. Wherefore, I would gladly stand somewhat the longer vpon this point, to refute this falle opinion, which is the most erroncous of all.

First, I am of the minde, that the the Physition should bee an honest man, answere conin regarde, that hee ought to loue his cerningthis owne Honour and Reputation. I de- couetous fire also, that hee should profite in his halfe of good profession; as enerie one should gette and honest Goodes honeftly by his Vocation. If Physicions. hee bee an honest and Worthie man: hee hath bowelles of Christian Compaffion, and neuer will fuffer any man, (by or with his will) to languish out in sickenesse or disease: but if hee bee no fuch man, hee ought not to bee employed, as I have formerly faide. But if hee be badly enclined; he may make his aime and intent, to grafpe vp Wealth, getting a name for no other end, but to become rich. Yet let me tell yee, if hee prolong Diseases, which he may and can shorten:

Of Physicions prolonging diseases. fon should loue his Physitian, and he him

It is a matter of no great confequence to be famous and to haue great ref #t of Patients.

Physicions are not able to cure or recouer at their own pleafure.

Phylitions fhould take fmall delight in lingring

he is no able man, but goeth quite con | ledge; in regard of instaffection to their trary to his intention. For, if he can cure in leffer time then other men do ; he shall be in the greater request: hee shall have fuch crowdes of patients refort vnto him; as hee can hardly come neare them himfelfe, and rather they wil give him a french Crowne, then a Tester to any other. For, what is hee, that would not rather pay double, treble, yea foure-fold more then ordinarie, to be so soone recourred? If, to some other Physician, who commeth ouer-late to the cure, ten Crownes bee giuen: there needeth no complaint, if fiftie Crownes be distributed to him, that shall abridge the time of a mans agony, in halfe the third or fourth part of fuffe-

But, to speake vprightly, it is not in the Physitians power, to doe any such acte at his owne pleafure. He would gladly with it fo, that he had fuch a vertue, as to heale by touching, feeing, or the very first receipt giuen, or onely by good gouernement, or any other such light direction. He should have the leffer paines, be tenne times the more effeemed; and gaine infinitely to his owne aduantage. Oh good God! how foone might hee be rich, that could be so prosperous and successefull. It is not then to be imagined, that Physitians (prouoked by couetoufneffe) should delight in prolonging difeases : seeing they may gaine fo much with good-will, reputation, yea, and extraordinarie recompence, if they had power to cure with fuch expedition. But I pray you tell me one thing, Is there a Physitian, that having parents, kinred & familiar friends, of who he wil take nothing for his paines? Can hee cure them (for his credite fake) in leffer time : the difease being alike, and the subject answerable? Hee winneth nothing by the length of fuch fickeneffes; it is enough if he loofe not the good opinion conceived of him, and divers kind offices done vnto him. Let mee fav moreouer, when himfelfe, his wife, or children lie ficke; they depend upon his owne expence, and neede not to have any delay in their recouerie: but can he fooner cure them, then any other beeing in the fame distresse? Questionlesse, it is a great follie, to thinke, that Physitions should be so forgetfull of themselues, as, to prolong discases willingly, and with their know-

owne honour and profite.

It may fall out with them, as it often doeth to hardie Souldiours, in besieging Another/s. fome appoynted or determined place, miliar allufiwho thinke to effect the bufineffe in three discipline,to dayes compasse, and yet continue there a Physicke. moneth before it, without diffembling or sparing any paines. They were perswaded. that a wall could not refift tenne shotte of the Cannon; and yet it out-stoode more then an hundred. They held opinion that the belieged were not stored with victualls and munition, for aboue eight dayes: and finde them furnished for more then two months. Whatfocuer is thought or conceined in this kinde, be they never fo many, they are but conjectures, idiomes of fome refemblance, examples and obferuations, which faile as often as they speed. And yet (for all this) the valiant Captaine affaylant, ought not to bee accused, for ill doing his duety, when hee perfourmed all that Arte and Industrie

could require.

In all respects, this is the Phisitians case, who is most excusable altogether, when hee fayleth in the quantity and efficacie of his remedies. For this is the principall matter (as Galen auoucheth in many places) that makes the Arte of Phylicke conic Curall, Defining conie Aure to be a meanes or condition, between perfect knowledge, and pure ignorance. Therefore it ought to bee interpreted to the best, and taken in good part, what successe the remedies fort ynto, which a learned, expert, diligent and honest Physicion applyeth fittest for the purpose, and the most justly as is possible for him; euermore referring the euent and iffue to Almighty God, who giveth and taketh, augmenteth and diminisheth the power of those remedies, according as it bost pleaseth him, whether the disease shall be soone or slowely ended; one while indifferently amending, an other while agayne as doubtfully depen-

Mallice or folcene now remayneth; which may be suspected in the Physitian. Of malliceof If there be the very least occasion of ran cour, hatred and ill will between the Phi fitian and his patient: there was no good lient. aduice or discretion, in calling such a man to the businesse. For (on the contrary) it is very expedient, that the ficke per-

Howmallice in the Physiti on is under-flood by the

hee ought rather to be rancked with impayloners, and not any way to bee im-But, I vinderstand by the vulgare fort, that they take this word Mallice in another kinde of fence, to wit, that Physitians with their intent and knowledge) doe cast downe their patients bodies ouerlowe, by abstinence and enacuations, euen endangering the very latest passage. And that this is done, but in oftentation of their Arte , and to winne the worthier reputation, when they can come off with any credit: or elfe they falue and shield it, with some prognosticke opinion, conceyued at the beginning and vndertaking the bufineffe, that the patient was (even then) in daunger of death; but this doth proceede from such, as have formerly fallen

into the fame perill. Thus doe I compre-

hend the doubtful conjecture of the com-

agayne in like manner, although they

haue no knowledge of each other, eyther

by name or action. In this cafe, a firich

concordance of amity, ought to be con-

tracted betweene their hearts: For other-

wife, the patient will neuer kindely re-

ceiue his Physitions best succour, nor the

other care for administring, where hee

findeth his paynes not to bee affected. As

for deliberate and purposed mallice, with

an intent to doe hurt fecretly; if there be

any Physician to be taxed with such a fin:

mon people, and (many times) they spare not to speake it.

In very truth, it were most maliciously. traiteroufly and wickedly doone, if anie Physician should play such prankes with a poore ficke bodie: yez, as vilely done, as if a man should throw such a one into a riuer, as knew not how to fwimme, hoping quickely to cast a cord after him , thereby to get him on shoare agayne. For, it may fo fall out, that the party thus fowled and submerged in the water, knowes not how to catch the cord, or canot hold it strongly enough, or hath not power sufficient to be drawne foorth, and so is drowned in this distresse. But surely, it is not credible or likely, that any Physicians should be so bad minded, as to bring ficke bodies for How fick neffe lowe by their applications : which (if they the strength are not) ought to bee well immunes, a strength of accordingly as best appertaynesh to the strength of the strengt tinually vndermineth the forces of nature, encreasing still his owne power to a certayne poynt, which is the vigour and soueraigne condition of the fickenesse. After which, if the disease be curable, enfueth the declination, and diminution of the maladie; and thorow all thefe accidents, the patient proceedeth on to health, as wee shall have fitter occasion to speake of heereafter.

There are people somewhat more modest, who say not, that Physitians do take downe their patients bodies fo lowe, and bring them into daunger : but that they firetch foorth the fickeneffe in length, ey- plaining on Physicions, for ther by their indulgence (that is, by ouer-much pleafing the ficke persons, humour)

Phytupus, 10 lengthning their difeases. or to binde him in the larger advantage to them, by recovering him out of a long lingering maladie. As touching indulgence, or tender-heartednesse, it is verie true, that many ficke men affect rather, to be flowe in recouering, then speedily, only by being the gentlier handled: which is an excule sufficient for the Physician, prouided, that hee makes protestation thereof, for fafetie of his owne honour and reputation.

As for fuch as prolong ficknesse, thereby to deriue the greater benefite; that were a smoothe-faced kind of treason, and inglicknesse (indeede) meere villany. And furely, it for the larger cannot be credible (if the Phylitian do yn- benefit. derstand himselse well) that he should (at any time) offer to delay a difease. For he is not able to measure, or comprehend the times length; and, by giving way to fuch protraction, the interiour cuill may grow the worse; wherein is greater perill, then delaying simply, or the cure wexing long. It is another maner of thing, then vicers dealt withall by the Chirurgi- Vicers and an : for they may well bee maintayned, licknesse of without any prejudice to the person, because the inner parts of the body may be curing. fafe enough, purging themselves by the vicer, and that there be no other harme, then the vicerated parts.

For proofe whereof, wee oftentimes appoynt, that Fistulaes should be entertayned with delay, and make iffues and fontanelles in many places of the body, which wee must have kept open for verie long time. But inward maladies are of an Inward fickother confideration, and neuer ought to freedily cured cafe. It is the difeafe it felfe, which con- be dallyed withall : but if they can be cu- and no way

Of fuch as are more modeft in com.

not equall in

delayed.

red.

Chap.9.

Of Ingratitude to Physicions.

world by their confuled fitians doe abuse the world, that men may well be cured without them; nay, much better and fooner: and they doe nothing else but deale confusedly. Wee haue already sufficiently confuted this follie, by the facred authority of Ecclefiasticus. Notwithstanding, I will borrow one similitude more from that famous (and as much wronged) Militarie profession, our Arte holding therein equall comparison. Some places doe gladly yeeld themselues to the belieger, in regarde hee hath cutte off all their victualls and prouision. Others, at the very first view of the Cannon: Other at the first assault: And contrariwise, some there are that remain impregnable. Now, if we should argument in this manner lwe daily see places, that yeelde themselves without enforcing : what neede is there then of besieging, affaulting, fighting, ruinating the walles or any other hostile acte? What neede we to make warr e on Towne or Cittie; when (many times) wee see them voluntarily submitte themfelues? It is then but an abuse, and a foolifh idle expence to the country (how feditious foeuer it be) to haue Souldiers, Artillerie, and any other furniture for warre: where kich employment is counted a meere invention, and cheating of the people, who live free from such molestation, and all goes well with them. To our purpose then. If all places be

red, to procure it with all possible speede,

Another point of calumny, is that Phy-

or so soone as may be.

feeble, and no relistance is made, by men well munited, and prouided with courage, and other things requifite for their defence; those places may easily yeelde themselues. As the like doe light diseales, against which needeth no force of no table remedies: but many times do weare away of themselues : yea, and sometimes the very strongest, as burning seauers, when there is no great munition within the body to entertaine them, but that the naturall forces make worthy relistance, a-

gainst the insolencie of the cuill. Otherwife, there is neede of fuccour, to employ batterie, and all kindes of the best remedies : albeit often it commeth fo to paffe, that all these doe advantage nothing, the difeafe remayning still incurable.

What benefite is it to forrow then, or fay, that the partie might have beene bet-

ter holpen without all this, or that the patient is meerly abused? Rather account parient is meerly abuted. Nature activities that truely for an abufe, if a man promifie refuted, ocure of a difease, which is held to be it the cure of a difease, which is held to be it the cure by curable: hee not knowing any remedie, that hath power fufficient to ouercome it: Euen as he shall be abused, that attempt eth to compell a Towne to yeelde, by blowes of his fifts, or to beate downe the walles with a harquebuze fhot: where the Cannon is rather too little, and no anfwerable engin or inftrument is to be had. Such are the notable abuses, & true cheateries, which Mounte-banke Emperickes deren about impose upon the people, promising the the country curing of all diseases, and more then all many times. Wel may it be faid, that they abuse the world, and not naturall Physicians, being learned, expert, and approued honest men. ng piuda n

CHAP. VIII.

MThat it is neither sinne, or any acte ill done. to call for the Physition, and to vse his re-medies, when men are diseased.

Here is an other kinde of er-ror grounded on the foolish superfittion of some Ideats, who thinke it an offence to God; if they call for the Phy-

fitian, to cure their harms & ficknes ; faying, It is to contradict, and oppose our felues Curion Con against the will of God, who hash wifted combestuse them with such an affliction, and onely for find not their good : because , by chastifing the bodie, the foule is purged from finne. Adding further, as maister Guydo Chauliac declareth in his fingular chapter. God hath fent it me, their nice a as he pleased, and he will take it from mee. when he pleaseth, the name of God be bleffed, Amen. Referring their health and recouerie(wholy) to the intercession of he Saints and the Saints of Paradife, making Vows, Almes, Prayers, and Pilgrimages, &c.

This opinion most erroneous, is easily refuted, by that which wee haue alreadie alleadged, out of the Booke of Ecclesiasticus, where he piously exhorteth the sicke (and with great wisedome) To retoncile The saided himselfe first to God, whome bee hath offen. ded : and after, to give way to the Phylition, to every lid whom God bash created, & given bim know-

Wherethe

It is most true, that God sendeth afflichions for our chasticement, and hath made vs fubicct vnto them, because wee should acknowledge our owne infirmities. From membriner of high by fuch him also proceedes health and reconstrict by those means which he hath ordered in nature: giving vertue to plants and other creatures, to ouercome and expell difeafes: ordaining the Science of Physicke,& the Apothecaries skill to that effect, even as well as Tillage and husbandrie, ordayned for the fustentation of men, and support of this fraile and mortall life.

> Well may wee fay then, that thefe are the meanes which ought not to be defoifed; for, a wifeman will no way difdayne them. Otherwise it is to tempt God, as if (vainely) wee would have him to worke myracles, according to our appetite. For, he that faith , If God will that I (ball be healed of this sickenes. I shall be healed, without ving the Physicion: And if I must die, the Physition can not (ane mee . This is cuen as if hee should say; If I must yet line a yeare longer, and that it be fo appointed by God : I shall (afely line without eating or drinking, and then fuch expences may well bee pared. For if I must live (o long, it is impossible that I (bould die before although I neither eate nor

. An extraordinarie follie and rafhness. for a man to promife to himfelf, that God will worke a miracle vppon him; euen to tempt him by fuch an effay having foode fit for him, and appointed by God for the nourishment of his body. Is not this meetly tempting of God, to trie whether hee will worke against the order of nature, or no.? He may fuffer him to die in this follie by meere extreamitie of hunger , and the poore Idiot (hall then finde by effect, that he vainely collected this fantafficke brutalitie in his minde, that God should maintaine him in life, without receiving fuftenvation. If God will he can doo for but we know the ordination of his owne will, for will not do all men to make vid of his bleffings in their foode; whereto we are to keep vs, and not muthereby, to feeke after other extraordinarie means, which are voknowne to vs. and not to bee imployed, according to our prefuming appetites.

So flandeth the cafe of Phylicke . appointed by God for the health of the fick. and confernation of them in found condi-

ledge, to be glorified in his wonderfull works | tion. For, who foeuer will be cured other wife, and hath gotten an opinion, that if he must have health, he may have it with God, for Beneout helpe of the Physition, who hard the fit of the fitted only meanes to doe it : he tempteth God; and that no and expects, that hee fibuild perfourthe a man flould miracle, foolifuly contemning the hattirall course, which God ordained against difeafes . Euch as if his house were on fire and hee will fuffer none to quenchit with water, faying : If God will that it (balbe far med, the fire will be quenched by other means.

and healthful

CHAP. IX.

Concerning the ingratitude and onkindnes in sicke and diseased persons, towardes



Ngratitude is most odi-ous both to God & meti, and hath insily bin repu-puted for so notorious a vice: as he that speaketh of Ingratitude, speakes of all

the euills in the world . And this fin is fo common amongst men & especially in the cafe of Physicions; as I am amazed many times, that any generous heart will be a Physition : his profession beeing euerle where fubicate calumny and colline ger-

maine to Ingratitude.

But there are fome friends, men of reafon, honest and acknowledging, who can Outward pro-yet cleanely couler this offence: feeming festors of lone willing in any goodnes towards the profoffion and not altogither fo withankered as others are. For there are fome fo com- in acte. please in comtelle, as they have protefled publikely, & very often : that (next vnder God) they hold their lines of fuch & fuch Physicions: And, haning acknowledged (according to their faculty) the labor and industry of the Physition will also confesse freely, that they are vitable to recompende him with all their goodes! as therein they freak no more then truth. For if they owe sheir lines to the Phylidions Riccour, and life is of greatest valew about all their worth then all goodsin is not in their powerto discharge the world. that debr, though they gave him all their RibRance Later .

But the whitefelt poynt of recompence. kn their thankful processitions to the Phyl fleidn; faying they flahid obliged to him.

all in ceremo nv.but little

That physiti ons doe nothing elfe but abule the dealing.

The Countr that is free

from warre,

hath no need

of weapons.

Another allu

fion to Milita

ry feruice.

Sickneffes in cident to the body with their apt coparatiues.

Wherein the cheefelt point of recompece gratifying Phylitions.

The commo words of mamy ingratefull men in thefe wretched

is even as much, as if a man should fnatch a fword out of anothers hand, that stoode ready to kil him therewith; or a strangling cord, by which he meant to end his daies, Were it your cases stood you not beholding to that man for your life? And could (all you had) make him sufficient recompence? Some will fay, I have well payed my Physition, yea, ouer-payed him: I haue giuen him fo much euery day, I owe him nothing. If he have made me well, I have as wel requited him. Alas poore man, that which is given to the Physition, is a small acknowledgement, for so great a good as thou hast received: for thou payest or recompencest him with the fruit of his own labour: If hee preserved thee from death, (as happily he did, the grace of God affifting)there is no equal recompence in thy power, except thou expose thy life for him, as he made no spare of his for thee. In this maner thou remainest (for ever) indebted

How the words of fauing life,and preteruing from death, arc harfn to many nice hearers.

Cures perio med by phy-ficke in extr mity of dan-

The words of

and thus thou confesses truely thy obligation, when (with an intire and vpright heart) thou makest such an acknowledgement to him. I know there are some, who wil thinke these words to be hard, and harsh; when I fay, he faued thy life, and preferued thee from death; notwithstanding, it is discerned cuidently. Put the cale, that a man being wounded, lofeth his bloud in extreme abundance, and doubtleffe dyeth instantly sexcept the bloud be stated he that puts his finger into the wound, & thereby ceaffeth bleeding; is not he worthily faid, that hee faucth life? As much, and farre more doth he, that restraynes it by medcins, and fo confolidates the wound, as (otherwife) it could not be healed. As much also doth he that restrayneth a fluxe in the belly; an extreame vomiting, or fome other pernicious and deadly vacuitie: Or (conueniently) healeth a Pleurifie: Or him, whom the Squinzie hath fluffed and balfe strangled. As much alfo (questionlesse) doth he, that catcheth a child out of the fire, where

present succour. No lesse account ought to be made of Physitions, who make prouision against inward enilles, and fuccour nature fecretly by diners means, the power whereof ap. peareth by worthy effects; because they are (as Herophilas faith) The hands of God.

he had beene burnt to death, but for fuch

and are indebted to him for their life. This | For he telecueth and draweth from deadly dangers, by the means of aptremedies. which the Physition vseth in needefull time. Is it not then a worke more dinine then humane, and can no way be fufficiently recompenced? whereof Ecclefiasticus ipake very well. The Science of Physicke, and knowledge in the Physition Shall exalt his head, and make him admirable among Princes : the Physition (ball be honoured of Kings. These are the principall acknowledgements due vnto him , honour and gratitude, as a certaine obligation : and not perswasion, that money can returne him fufficient, or equall recompence.

But there are some, that doe deale farre worfe, who, after they have beene healed, Ingratinales by the means of good and loyall fuccour:
can not endure to betolde, that they are
hatching by the means of good and loyall fuccour: beholding to the Physition, but growe presetued hatefull against him, that saued their lives. Oh extreame ingratitude ! but yet not only in these our dayes : For Hyppocrates, in his Epistle to Damagetes, maketh Democritus to speake in this manner. I thinke (faith he) O Hippocrates, that in our Science, many things are subject to obloquie and ingratitude. For, ficke persons (if they escape) referre their recoverie to the Gods, or elle to Fortune, or elfe to their owne good complexion , robbing the Physicion of all honour: Whome (oftentimes) they have afterwards. beeing angrie and offended, that anie should thinke them beholding, or indebted to him.

Moreover, they will not attest or confesse their obligation: but rather are well pleased; that ignorants in the Arte (who neverthelesse live by the Profession) should be of the same semper, kicking envioully against him, &c.

This suiteth (best of all other) with these our dayes. For, the most part of learndings ficke people now referre theyr recouerie time of the wholly, to some he-Saint or the-Saint of not aloted paradife, to whome they vowe and deuote themselues.

And although (many times) they do not perfourme their vowes; yet can they follow that which the Italian fayd: Paffato lo malo gabate lo Santo : The discase being past, the Saint is cheated. Even (for all the world) as men make great promifes to the Physition; so long as the extreamitie of anguish lasteth, protesting to giue him mountaines and maruailes, yea, to pay all in Golde and precious Stones, or elfe, a good pension all his life time.

Chap. 6.8

All means de nicd, to rob the Physicion

ded to be doone him; but when the patienrommeth to health, then hee is of a quite contrary minde : Eyther, that the Physition perfourmed not the care, but that it might have beene doone without him. Or elfe, from the follemne vowe he made, came the cause of his recouerie. with the good attendance of his Keepers, and divers comfortable broaths. Or elfer from the Apothecarie, to whome hee rather will attribute all the fuccesse rather theu to the Physition; although thelother did nothing but by his direction Elfe, hee will attribute it voto the goodneffe of his owne complexion tor to fome cafuall channog by fome diforder in him committed and doone : fome of their must have the reference of his healing: So that the Physicion shall furely hand the smallest part and rather none at all of the honour, gratitude, kindnesse and recompence. And as concerning promises, the man

many fuch in

eeing with

In briefe, much goodnesse is preten-

beeing recourred, then he confidereth, what charges the fickeneffe hath coft him; how long hee hath depended uppon the cure, and what an hinderance it hath bin vnto him. Thus his debt to the Physition is forgotten, and to him hee impureth a part of his expences, reputing all fuperfluous, and keeping his bedde ouer

deale leffer charges . So that (in his account) the Phylition (hould be indebted to him: and if hee could finde Judges anfwerable to his minde, having judiciall authoritie; he would have him condemned in the greatest part of his expences. Heere is good acknowledgement of a benefice received; was there ever the like in-

long, hoping hee should have beene re-

stored much sooner, and with a great

gratitude ?

Surely, I can compare it with none other, then as if a man should strangle himfelfe by despayre; or otherwise, and some one comming to fuccour him, did cut the cord : when the other (maliciously) afterwards, should make him pay for cutting the halter. Or an other man, ready to be drowned in the water; any man endenoring to face him, put his own life in perill(by chance)teare a lapper of his garment; and the drowned man (after) to enforce repayment for his torne garment. So, they which should be payers, doe

become demaunders i confessing nevther gree nor grace, for all the good fer? uice perfourmed, vnto thom : but rather affect, that an ignorant variet; or fome charre-chamber woman; procured their healthfull recovery, then the cure and industrie of the painefull Physicion. And I gueffe this to enfue from one of thefotwo ned realons reasons, eyther that they are so dull and of this base fortish, as they have not the capacitie of well deservers comprehension. Or elfe, knowing it well enough; they are ashamed and confount ded, for not having the will to acknowle ledge and confesse it . Well may I then conclude, as I beganne this Chapter : Ingratitude is most contemptible to God and mensors as

Two imagi-

CHAP. VI.

Oth South in C

That the wulgare fort doe account it nothing, if they be not cured or healed contrary to their owne opinion . That the latest applyed remedies have all the henour: And happy is the Physition that commethed the declination of the difease.

Vr next enluing errour, is the former, and (often-times) is the caufe of the sayde Ingratitude. For, if a sicke person bee not healed against his

owne opinion, or of fuch as come to visite him; there is nothing at all doone, and therefore they know not how to conceine of the Physition.

Now, to heale or reconer a man a- Recourty cogainst opinion, consistesth of two partes: trary to opinion, is distinguished two were) at vnawares. As, if the difease last wayes. commonly with fo much accesse, or so many dayes; to cure it in much leffer then the difspace. For otherwise, say they : Well fir, the malady hath made his full course, and yet the Physition hath doone little or no feruice at all as well might it have beene done within the same time. Poore judgements, doe yee not beholde, that in one and the same kinde of infirmitie, some are fhort, and others long? There are tertish Feauers or Agues, and of conti-

770 Of tertian

Feuers, and

unuance.

them of con-

The fick man

be well done,

iwerable to

to cure ficke

men,except

they be repu-

or very neere

his owne opi-

accounteth

nething to

nuance also, which last and hold for a moneth or two,, you imagine, that the Tertian should not exceed (at the most) a seuenth accesse, which are fourteene daies, and the continuer to confift of feauen, eleauen, or foureteene, as you have heard Physitions speake, which is the tearme of exquilite feauers. But you know not that of a thousand, we shall hardly meete with two fuch , because the most part are confused and mingled, whereby their tearme is much more lengthened, as in all difeafes engendred of diners humours.

You imagine (and it is true) that if the tettian Ague doe end within three weeks, or a moneth, beeing well beaten by our remedies: that (but for fuch encountring) would have endured two or three moneths, as hath bin seene in many others. Was it not well rebated, and cunningly out-stept for the patient? Yet nothing at all is doue (faith he) if much more be not performed, then he pretended. For he is of the mind, that a Physition may handle fickenesse, as men doe Stirrop-leathers, in lengthening or shortening them as they lift. The acte is not sufficient to abate or extenuate a quarter, a third part, or the moitie of the paine, and to hinder or appeafe those divers accidents, which comif it be not anmonly happen in all kindes of difeafes delinering found and probable reasons, for the best account that can be possible, and the charges equall to his owne defire.

Yet this is falling into an other part of vulgar opinion, as namely, that all is no-2. It is nothing thing worth Sir, except ve can heale fuch as are held for dead. For, admit the ficknes to be deadly, as all difeafes are which we call eager (that is to fay, cutting, goes on fwiftly, and is not without terrible accidents) if the patient or his visitants hold opinion, that this great danger may be recured, and it producto be for yet still nothing is done. Contrariwife, if the ficke man chaunce to die, then the Phylitian is in all the fault. For the affiftants were perfwaded (though the Physition found the contrarie in his prognosticke rule) that he might be recoucred. But if they imagine that a man will dye, or hold him alreadie for dead, then the Physition beholdeth great wisedome. For, though he doe nothing elfe, but appoynt Broaths for him, with some drogueries or confectious, e(albeit they are not to any purpole;) yet hath he performed a chiefe piece of work. Heere is a rare cure; hee hath recoucred fuch a man, given over for dead : he hath rayled him agayne: Oh, he is a great and worthy man, & pitty it is he should want.

The same Doctour, at the very same time, hath another patient, whose fickenes is not reputed deadly , because the ewill lies mote closely concealed. He takes verwereat payers to reftore his health, and ent, is not a to compasse his intent, imployeth all his warrant for skill and industry for the patients safety: all other in the like tile. whom he knoweth to be in greater daunger, then all the friends (flanding by) doe or can imagine. At the laft, he dyeth, quite contrary to their common opinion. Look then vpon Maister Physicion, his reputation is fodainely loft, and then they tell him: That hee meddleth with too many matters at once : The other man was much better gouerned. Thus, neuer is any thing doone of value, if it be not performed, against the hope and expectation of the vulgare.

An other errour propounded in this Chapter is the attribution of the fucceffe proposition in the cure, to the latest administred remedies: euen as they referre the occasion of ficknes, to the last hurtfull acte that the party committed. As if a man had fed on fome fruit, salad, or other thing leffe ordinary, & (soon after) the party falls ficke, of fome disease more then of a months continuance) yet that must be the only cause: longer cont neuer remembring other precedent diforders, which procured the greater part in preparation. For, euill humors will have a meeting together by little and little, till they come to a certayne quantity, against which nature hath power to refift no longer. Buen as wee fee a Glasse (set in the raine) to fill it felfe by many drops of water, folong as till they come to the brim: but being full, the least drop then following, makes an ouer-flow. Even fo, the least addition, to that which nature hath alrea- fufficient of a dy supported, makes hir to finke vnder the felfe, that ouer-plus: as a yong Mule, vied to a common charge: how little focuer is added to deinburdif her vsuall burden, the is (by no meanes) eales. able to beare.

It was not then the last morfell, meate, or disorder, that did the harme, the precedent riots had perfourmed their parts bespecially restaurative and cordiall things fore. Even as in the felling of a tree, 100. Sickneffes they have

Chap. 7.

fris not the laft applicati on in physick that is the

jeuts(giuen with an Axe) appeare to be in / certaine remedies, are robbed of their due vaine, and ftil it ftands; for tis the ffundred and eleauenth stroake that overthrows it. Now, if a man that fay, the last odde blow did the deed should he not do great wrog to all the rest? As also, when a strong Tower hath endured 1000. discharges of the canon, and at the last shot of all, it falleth: Did the last do any more then the first It is all one in judging of remedies, which abate the harme, and expell fickeneffe out of the body. The last application (what socuer it was)may have the honor by vulgar censure, speaking according to their capacity: but what was the labour and paines perfourmed before, of purging, glyfters, drugges of divers kinds, administred both within and without, did all thefe nothing In the end, forme one thing is added, and then the man is made well . Poore idle opinion, if this last admired acte had beene done at the first , it had ferued to no yfe at all: but after the hot feruice of fo many other remedies, which controuled and difheartned the enill, thaking, and renting it from the root; the least thing in the world

Like to poore belieged people, no longer able to hold out; let but a man be flain among them, and they yeeld chemfelues immediately. Shall it therefore be favd. that all the battery, all the affaults, cutting them off from virtailes, and other good means for conquering; thele ferued to no purpose at all? But only he did the deed, that discharged the last Musker; and yet (notwithstanding) he killed but one man: If he had flaine a chiefe Commaunder, it had bin a matter of much more moments Euen fo, abriefe or ticket, hung about the necke; or drugges tied about the wrift of aman; shall have the honour of healing Agues, affirming, that they could not bee cured by any other applyed good orders, directions, remedies, and great medcines. This is all one, as if the difeate hung but by a twine threed, which may eafily bee broken by perswafion and opinion, and thereupon the ficke man reflored : but if this had beene applyed in the beginning; the patient could not have beene cured, by an hundred times as many perfwafeons, or the very strongest imaginations. tite, but not Perswasion & imagination may do somwhat in healing, but not all, nor alone of themselves. Thus you see how true and

could then quite displace it.

honour, by judging ill of the fuccesse, be-cause men would be cured sudenly, before any thing at all is done to effect it : otherwife, all indeuor else is but in vaine, & ferueth to no purpose. He only is the author of the happines, after whom (immediatly) a man findes himselfe to be recovered.

And bicause it is commonly said (which is the fourth poynt of this Chapter) Happy is the Physitton, that comes to the detlination med a happy of the difeafes we must imagine, that what man, that focuer was done before , health flood at ending of an the doore; tarrying but for his entrances infirmity. healths introduction is attributed to him. And although that Physitian shall do nothing at all nor appoint or give direction; yet (fay the people) he in the cause of the happines: and if he had bin font for at the beginning, the licke man had fooner bin fet on foot. But if the Physicion be wife & honest, he will not be bonneted with this No honest mi honor, confenting to thiculth larceny and base preferrer detraction, against them that well entrea of another ted the patient, & (vnder God) were truly the Authors of his testoring : Rather he putation. will reforme those poore opinionists, by thewing them that the pecidents formerlypalt, were of the nature of the fickenes, which hath had fuch a courfe; and that thy good directions already administred) all fucceeded wall, and to the advantage of the patient of the region of the land

. If he doe otherwife, and attribute that honor to himfelfe, or accept it from their vulgar ignorance the commits a fhamefull wrong, and she like lewell may afterwards man wrong, hang at his owne care. For, of what fuf may meete ficiency or reputation fobuer hebeit may himfele. fo come to passe, that another Physicion shall be called, uppon the ending of some cure by him taken in hand at the first; and he may require him inche same kinde. Euery man thereforeigught to be wellad. A duty necefuifed, and honeftly content himfelfe with red among fuch honor as is due unen him ; bantob learned and bing his colleague ar fellow-labourds in fitions, painefull endeauours ly relding good and faithfull restimony of ech others laudable performed actions, Accounting bimfelfe happy (neuertheleffs), that he came to the declination of the difeate; where, taking no more pains, yether hared a pardinalie gratefull acceptation, due vnto them that were employed from the fiff beginning.

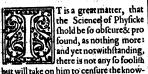
D. Jobid, a Habinoo soaq begoilad Vvv 2 CHAP.

Men repute themiclues in dicious and wife in their owne conscit.

CHAP. XI.

Against such as censure and indge of Physitions (ufficiencie, by their successe: which oftentimes is more due to a happy chance. then skill or knowledge.

Badly can a blinde man judge of colours, no more can a foole of Physicke,



ledge of a Phylition. To iudge foundly & juffly, concerning the fufficiencie of anie man: it behooneth him (at the leaft) to be of the same profession, and to know somthing therein too. It must needs then be great rathnesse, for men that vnderstand nothing in Physicke, to enterprize to ludge, who are the best and most skillfull Phylitions. Their eye and confure waites on the fuccesse of their practise; & if som one heale (by chance, or fodamely, as we faid before:) he is censured for a fingular Physition, although he did not any thing deseruing speech -- On the contrarie, the Phylition little knowes, whether the patient shall die, of linger long it the agonie, which the vulgar effeeme lighteft of all. Modelty will neagr fay, fuch a mais more or leffe skilfulf if he be repured learned among men of knowledge : but will rather fay he is not happy among fickemen, and confeduently, no great Physicion; cuer-more censuring by the successor.

there is a happinede and unhappinede, & (25 the Italian faireds) Labasna è la male for to Good for inni mid bad. And the bell happinelle for the Phylition is not to be miled or employed for fuch as are certain guently vpon abdic For there is no reputation to bee had no, not in respect or friendship ; nepercheleffe he fast be fure notto efcape blame although he hath done his very vtremoli endenous? And ought to bee no leffe effectmed then if the patient had efcapied Buen as we thay fay of a Captain. that thall defend a Town to the very latest Effore and labour having eaten up all the

horfes, Affes, Dogs, Cats, Rats, which the

befieged place could afford, hides, parch-

. It is vindoubtedly true, that in al things

ments, and other vile foode (as is fayde of them of Sanferre, in the yeare 1573, who fed upon the very tiles and flates, making bread of them, as I know not how.) Hauing loft the most part of his men, the wal all battered, and no meanes wherby to refift any longer; conftrainedly (in the end) renders up the Towne. Shall hee deserve a Generaling leffe commendation (nay rather not farre faue a Town more) then he that faued his own towne, ble to with being well munitioned and provided of al | fland all res things needfull which he preferued with- flance. out any paine, & very eafily might do fo?

If this case should bee controuersed, it were easie to be discided; prouided, that the censurer be a man of judgement, and not transported with affection; as the most part of men are, in being wilfully blinded. Whereuppon ensueth, that they will not such said bee perswaded, but that there must bee a definite their owner. fault in the Physicion, if the patient (of personale, whom he is most carefull and diligent) a- wilfully bismend not as they defire and hope. Nor ded. doth this case differ from the Captaines. that was the Gouernor of the loft Town, against whom remaineth continuall rancour and discontentment: because he did not fufficiently forefee the fleges affaires: but thus is all his paines baffulde in particularities of obinions, even to the valewe of a straw. Whereas contrarywise, he shall be accounted for a valiant man (although hee bee the bafest villaine in the world) if hee have but good fuccoffe in his enterprizes.

Affuredly, it is no meane matter, for a man to bee happie in his attemptes ; but this happine fe dependeth not uppon his laisagear matteriors knowledge or infificiency, because it is an man to be especiall gift of God; withour which, he happy a far may be called to succour slich as shall es- effection cape, continuing and effectuating the vertues given to remedies; as allo, in not being called to fuch as shall dye, to whome the greatest paines and skill profiteth nothing. It is then verie ill done, to censure the fufficiency of a Physition by successe, which is more due to happinelle, and to the grace of God, then to all the knowledge that can be in man.

And yet wee may not from hence inferre, or conclude, that it is all one, whatfoeuer Phylition is called, to fay; If God will that the ficke man shall recouer, hee will bestow his bleffing on the remedies, if they bee ministred by the most ignorant

y best Phy G

Accufations

For fuch as delpife all good meanes ordayned, for deir health.

inpuration aid ypon di ers other a denta by ig norance of fuch as are

man in the world, and they shall prooue happy. It is very true, but yet it is to tempt God, as we have formerly alleadged. As if we would have him, that of frones, he should make bread; and of a remedie to no purpose, make it profitable. It is a common faying: Helpe thou, and God will afift thee. Let all the best meanes bee sought that may be vied, and referre the iffue to God, in whose hands are all things.

CHAP. VIII.

Against fuch men, to whom all things are filfeeted, and Physitions Saundered, in the most part of those accidents, which happen

Ne of the very great paines, which a Phylition (beeing the most generous, and of best spirit) hath, is, to sup-Ne of the very great paines, which a Phylition (beeing port the reproaches, and

false accusations of the sieke person, or of his affiftant friends, who are fo voreasonable; that all the accidents which do happen in fickeneffe, they attribute them to the remedies; and those of good succeffe, they doubt whether they are due to the Physition, or no.

For first of all, when they see the person very weak, they accuse the abstinence and paucitie of food, appointed to him by the Physition: or else letting himbloud, or the purgation, and that they are the caufes of the weakenes; imputing no vertue to the remedies, which (in diminishing the euill and bad humours) fuftained the ficke body in farre greater strength; for, but by the vic of them, his estate would be a great deale weaker. That this must needs be so. do we not fee fome, who, condemning abstinence, bloudletting and purgatives, become in farre more feeble condition? If they that make no vse of such remedies. maintaine themselves in greater strength then other; one then might better fay, that the remedies are the occasion of weakenes but on the contrary, we behold those despisers to be more feeble, and (in the end) to die fooner then the other.

So is it of the other accidents, imputed vniuftly to the remedies; as vomiting, flux of the belly, distaste of meates, alteration, paine, want of fleepe or watching, raning

and fuch like, happening by reason of the disease properly, & from the nature thereof: but not from applyed remedies as ig-norant people suppose. For, if after the patient hath taken fomething, by ordination of the Phylition, or onely lome marter is applyed vnto him and then (quickely after) he hath a casting , or fluxe in the belly: this was the cause, by reason he did it not before. After fuch a medicine receiued, this Syrrope, that Restaurative, this Cordial potion is fo diffastefull. as nothing can be more, alteration hath made the impressure far greater then be-

It is true, that thefe occurrences happen after, but not thereby caused. And is it not as ill argued, if a man should say: Since it fnowed, my cloake grew more torne then without any it was before; therefore the fnow was the reason. cause thereof. Or otherwise; Since I fed on that Capon, I have had the head-ach. the Collicke, or fluxe in the belly, therefore the Capon caused al these accidents. Sillie capacities, what focuer commethafter, proceeds not from all that which harh preceeded. The fluxe in the belly, the cafting, distasting, alteration, lacke of fleepe, rating, and the like other causes (to you vnknowne) which produce fuch effects in their due time! was, as the learned Physition knew how to direct the medicine, by breaking the course of the disease, foreseeing the dangerous accidents, and diminithing them. All which not with standing, in despight of what hee hath doone; the fickeneffe will make his part good against him, and encrease it selte to a certain point commonly called, the estate of the disease: but that may grow on more gently, then is to be permitted.

And if alteration, distaste, and other accidents doe encrease, after the vse of some medicaments well appointed : beleeue affuredly, that they are from the difeafes further progression, notwithstanding all the re-trenchings and reliftances formerly made. Credite also, that the sickenesse would have beene more furious, and the aforenamed aecidents leffe supportable, if no meanes had beene made against them : as wee fee by good experience, in fuch as mif-prife those remedies . For if killeth many, it be true, that many do die through want and divers of helpe (which is a Maxime receyued of helpe. generally) it must needes fall out then;

true fence or

Of idle Aru-

When the fickneffe is

Vvv 3

Successe of

practile is the

vulgars direc-

tion in célure

on the paine of any Physi-

Good and ill hap awaiteth vpenthe acti-

Chap. 12.

The policy of Genello, to make good what hee pro

that they have had more accidets, & more tediousnes, then such as escape in the like perils. There is no need then of suspecting, or calumniating the remedies, which have bin followed by some accidents, olde or new, and then to fay; This frontall (after the vie of it) he hath flept leffe, or raued

774

Faults are ca fily found, bu

few good rea-

fone can be

thewne for them.

Of divers er

counters, no

forefeene or

preuented.

Nature will

haue her fre

passage in the body of man, beside all ap-

plication of physicke.

way to be

more: for the frontall was no cause thereof, but the fickenes it felfe, that could not by the best meanes then be tamed.

Next, after the Cordiall potion, he had the hiccoke, the diffenterie, or the cramp. It is very true but this taile belongs not to this Calfe, as we fay in the common Prouerb, this is another maner of ftraine. I deny not, but remedies may be threwd occafions fometimes, for they may be ill ordered; and but badly to the purpose. But Leuer prefume, that the Physicion should be learned, diligent and affectionate : of all which he should continually relish, for the better interpretation of his ordinaces, and receuing them in the more respect; attributing rather to the difease, or the expresse will of God, those accidents which happen (be they new or olde) then to the remedies. For there are diners sodaine incounters, and which cannot any way bee foreseene, to make a guarde or preuenti-

on of them : as sometimes of a very light

medicine, we shal proceed so far as bloud,

because the patient was then vppon the

poynt, of having the fluxe in his belly. The Phylition, who can not divine, especially on a neutrall body, neither sicke nor found, that keeps not in bed, because he would be no ficker then he lifted : if nature make some cuacuation of it selfe; hee (knowing it needfull) makes his medicine light enough. It hapneth hereupon, that after the operation, nature paffeth on further, and makes a flux in the belly, which continueth inordinately: because the expultrix vertue, being pricked bythe eagre and mordicant excrements, cannot of her selfe restraine them. And the matter being corrofine, cuts out the way as it paffes along, that bloud enfueth of it. The medicine must endure the accusation of al this, which (notwithstanding) gaue but two or three small sieges : all the rest was but a furrounding, & as a meere torrent of humours, gathered together of longer time. As somtime it comes to passe, that a man

pulling but one stone out of a wall; a fa-

dome or two follows after, because it was

fo old and ruinous. Against a strong wall. there needs a Cannon or double cannons but for a weake and feeble wall, a fieldepeece there will make a great breach.

And also, to judge well of the effects of medicins; their true condition & estate must first be knowne, which none can so well do as the Physition, and not to judge only by the effects. For it during the operation or foone after we fee that happen. which is not of that nature, caried or forced from the medicine; it is not to be attributed thereunto. No more then as if a child, should give a blow with his fift to a drunken reeling man, and hee should sodainely fall to the ground. It was not the stroke of the hand, that had such strengthi but the wine or strong drinke which had ouercome him, whereby the fal happened

Neuerthelesse, some one may reply by the felfefame comparison, that in like maner, to a ficke man (very weake) a light menet, to a licke main (very woman, and the power to obtain given it hath the power to ouerthrow him to the ground. Then may of physics we well couple therewith this other comparison; If a man should give a fillop on the arme, to a woman beeing great with child, immediatly after the should miscarry. Hapned this by the fillop? The arme is far enough from the belly, & the fillop too light to enforce it: It is to be understoode then, that from some other inward occasion, this fo fodaine mif-hap received fuch vigour. Euen fo, many other things doe meet together of themselves, not any way depending one vpon another; but cafually & accidentally, & the causes (commonly) neuer preteded or by any means differend.

CHAP. IX.

That there are more store and plentie of Physitions, then of anie other fort of peo

Finderecorded, that Alphonfo de EHe, Duke of Ferrara, being on a time in familiar coference, on a time in familiar coference, floor mosel demanunded; of what trade or by the Nation Profession there was not to the profession to the profession there was not to the profession there are not to the profession that the profession the profession that the profession th profession there was most people. One Dukeof For answered, of Cordwainers or Shoomakers; another faide, of Tailers; another, of Carpenters; another, of Mariners; and another, of Lawyers. Gonelle, a famous

must be knose rather then sheir effects

Many are mediers in gi-ung councell but fewe or none can give right directi-

fireet, going a foft and gentle pace, euerie man he met withall, stil gaue him counsel for feuerall receipts, and no one agreeing with another ; yet fill each friend affured him, that (what he spake off) had bin approoued certains and infallible; and fill he wrote downe every mans name. Being come to the low Bulwarke of the Pallace; hee was round engirt with many people there attending a because he was most familiarly knowne to them all: and everie man pittying to see him thus distressed, (vnderstanding the reason of his pain) aduised him to many receiptes, which each man auouched to be the verie best in the World: he writing downe their Names, gaue them infinite thankes at his depar-

Being entred into the Dukes chamber. his Excellencie no fooner fawe him, but running to him, faide: How now Gonello, what aylest thou? In pittifull manner hee replyed (cuen as if he had bene scarse able to speak :) Ah my Lord, I haue the toothake, in the most cruell manner that cuer man had. Whereuppon, his Excellencie

Buffone or lefter, replied, that there were staids vnto him; Alas poore Gonello, I know ther kinde of people : and waged agayoft the Duke his mafter (who was far off from any fuch conceite) that he wold approug his wordes, within the compasse of foure

and twenty houres. On the morrow morning, Gonello went from his lodging, with a great Night-cap on his head, and a Kerchiefe binding vp his chin, and then a huge hatte courring them all, beside a warme cloake about his body. In this furnishment, hee tooke the way towards the Pallace of his Excellencie, along the streete called Larne des Anges. The first man he met withall, demanded of him, what he ayled ? Whereto hee answered, that he had an outragious pain in his teeth. Omy good friend (fayde the other) I know the best receit in the world for it telling him the matter & the means. Gonello wrote downe his name in his Tables, making thew, as if he had fet downe the receipt. Not two paces further had he gone, but hee found two or three talking together: who demaunding of him the fame question; each man declared to him a seuerall remedy; he writing downe their names, as he did the first.

As he held on his way along the fame

more store of Physicions, then of any o- a thing that will helpe thy paine presently, yea, if thy teeth were spoiled and rottens Meffer Antonio Muffa Braffonolo, my Phyfition, neuer found a better in all his pra-Cife; take it, and it will immediatly helpe thee. Sodainely, Gonello threw off all his fickely outfide, faying out slowde : How now my Lord, what are you become a Physition too? See heere my roll of Phyfitions, how many I have met withall, betweene mine owne Lodging, and your Court : they are in number almost two hundred, and yet I have past through but one streete only. I will gage as much more to my wager, to finde aboue ten thousand in this Cittie, if I should but go thorow it, as I have done this one streete: finde you out as many more my Lord, of some other profession.

A history well met withall to our purpose, and verie true; for, euery man will be a Physition for one thing or other, and there are very fewpcople, but they pretend to knowe enough, nay more then some Physitions do. I set aside some Chirurgeons, Barbers, Apothecaries, Nursses, or attendants vppon ficke persons, wife women, Mountebankes, and other Emperickes, euen to very Merchants, who, to make some profession of a part of Physick become meere Polypragmons; pretending to vndersland more then Maister * Mouche, making great outward shewes, lugler, a and medling with many difeafes, accompanied with shamelesse assurances, and no meane promises. I would leave them, but that they are fuch a goodly number, and daily they encrease by multitudes, out of the basest mechanical trades; as it is most lamentable to behold, and many lines pe-

rish by their meanes. There are divers of them, that will Among verie controule the directions of a Physition, base mechanipresuming to handle the pacients pulse, there are pler and observe his Vrine. Delivering theyr in there are printed by of these own aduices, quite contraty to that which Phylicke prothe Physition appointed. If there be any, fessions, leawho are better aduised heerein; I thinke owne, because the number of them to be fo fmall, as a they cannot man had much rather write of those prefumptuous companions, making vp a role of fo manie vndertakers, as (indeede) they would appeare to be infinite. Some of the are fo bold and impudent, as before the learned Physition (yea, euen in his pre-

Eucry man periwadeth ledge, then di-

in France.

The fool cam

taken, and no more: That it is not good to purge, the feafon is not proper, but fitter for nourishing; when to minister restoratives, diets, coullifes, preffis, Orges mondes, &c. which must be given by their order, or elfo the patients friends will nes uer be quiet. In briefe, the great controller, euen the

the patient should be let blood, or no and

when he bleedeth, that fo much may bee

prime and cheefest ludge of all, is, the ig-The verie norant vulgar, most vniust and vnindiffechiefe contro rent, who (as Terence faide) Thinke nothing ler of all Arte and knoledge so be well done, but what they do themselves. And if their aduice be not followed, it is

attributed to the Patients death, or to the prolonging of his ficknesse, if that some other courle is nottaken. Let the but imagine, and the Patient bee perswaded (by them) that it must be so; all other proceeding is absolutely erroneous, and thinges elfe is blamed, be they applied to the true purpose indeede. Is not this a miserable case? In other Arts, which are lesse obfeure and difficult, and all thinges (well-

neere) apparant to enery eye; the Artezan is permitted to follow his owne mind. In Physicke, the most secret and hidden of all, and wherein the people cannot difcerne a ior; euery man will dominere,like Rats in straw. Nor shall wee cuer see better successe by the order of Nature, for the most part of diseases, in persons of degree, that have great visitation of followers : but alwayes they have health foonest of whom the least account is made.

CHAP. XIIII.

That it is not for the ficke Patients profite. to have many Physitions, as in ordinarie: but one Physition sufficeth, being asiduate and skilfull.

The Authour writeth heere to fuch as are Phyfitions in decde.

All Arts elfe

but Physicke,

ica to fomuch

controule &

obloquy.



His proposition may be vnderstood, by what we have lately faide, touching vulgar estimation of Physicions: but I would not be mi-

fence) they will define opinion, whether skill, knowledge, and profession. It is velice patient should be let blood, or no and recessionable and necessary, that the adpice of many should bee had, in difficulties, and matters doubtfull concerning a fickeneffe. For /as the common faying is) Pource ves may fee more then two that is, Physician to fuppoling them all to fee clearly ; for, one another, can inay aduite one thing, and a contrary party another; whereby, their meeting and tient. agreement, isto the profit of the patient. But to have many Physitions, in ordinary (as it were) and all to have equall care of the ficke person; can no way bee for his good and profit. For, in eneric purpole, they may contradict one another in fome thing, or elfe about a matter indifferent, one in enuv of another, and more for ostentation then necessity.

Pliny did very well observe and note this writing thus. It neede not to be doubted, that Physicions (coucting reputation by some nouelty) make a (odaine Traffick of our fouls. Hence ensueth those miserable contestations, about sicke bodies; none of them beeing of one and the same opinion, because no repetition must be made. Thence came that superscription on the unhappy Tombe : I was spoilde by haning too many Physitions. Meaning thereby the Emperor Adrian, who (in dying) Adrian old cryed out: That the multitude of Physitions death be had kild him.

The reason of this mischeese is divers waies understood. As first, the enuy or ieloufie, which (commonly) one man beareth to another; especially such, as are the worst created, ambitious, and couetous, beyond the ordinary course of other is wo, ander Artesmen. For, it is viually seene . That by the door one Potter is enuious at another, according | doth go. to the ancient Adage. But much more (without comparison) the Physition, because he desireth, that the whole honour should be referred to him, of well predicting, well ordering, and well finishing the difeafe. Wherefore, hee cannot willingly endure, that any other should share of courtous a part with them. I fpeak of the conetous quarrellost ambirious man : who is likewife (comon- Physitions ly) quarrellous, a detractor, and insupportable.

You have fome men very modest, but yet icalous of the honor, which they conceine is due to them; chiefely, in fuch occasions, which they thinke may bee done Maken, because my meaning here proper- by themselves, as being cases light, comly is 3 of fuch as are truely Physitions, in mon, and ordinarie. They can bee well

contented, not to be contradicted; & yet | notwithstanding, they will give confent, and yeelde to the defire or pleafure of the Patient, or those friends that are about him. But this is not for the ficke parties profit, as I have undertaken to prove. For although there be three or foure Phylirions; one affilting to another for cure of the man, being all modest, peacefull, and skilfull: yet notwithstanding, weeknowe not how to preuent and avoide, the most part of fuch inconveniences as I will fette downe, and are (oftentimes) ordinary. For I leaue to them, who have observed it by others, to judge how much this maner of proceeding is incommodious, and hurtfull to poore patients.

First, if there be but one or two Physi-

Of the first in

convenience

by wultiplici-ty of Phyliti-

Chap. 14.

tions ordinarily employed: they will (no doubt) be most carefull, most diligent, most affectionate, to come off with theyr credit and honour. And yet one man alone, who shall have the charge layde on his shoulders, may be there much more attentiue, because the trust is wholly reposed in him, and all the worth must redound to him. If that man have a good heart, he will studie and labor, to do much better, then if he were conforted with another; confidering euermore(as he ought to do) that in all difficulties he may quickly haue counfell:

Another discommodity is, that manie Ofthe fecond Physicions can hardly meete together, to visit the sicke patient, and all ar one hout. For each of them have other cures of visitation, befide fome hapning in the meane while, and other affaires of importance: whereby, men are ofteimes compelled to faile of the appointed time; that all cannot be present with the ficke person. In this case, the Physicion most vsed, or such as meete there, are greatly hindered in giuing their aduice, or for ordering against some occasion which may happen; fearing leaft the absent parties or partie, shall not allow their judgement, whereupon, Many Physian canhard it may breede an error in the patient or meete al ac his affifting friends, who will after knowe his opinion, and demand it alone by himselfe. Sometime, this may chance but about a Cherry, or a difference of as small moment, deferving (of it felfe) not to bee fpoken of , buryet al must agree togither. and give confent in the cafe. This keeps the attending Physitions in no meane af-

fliction, and many times the patient in much more.

In like manner (comming now vnto a third point) they may endure many small The 3, inconthings, which the ordinary and prefent Phylition would order otherwife following fuch occasions as present themselties at eueric moment. I do call them small of themselnes, yet often inight bee brought to the patients great benefit; but hee dare not apply them, dreading discontentment in them which are absent. Herebythe patient may paffe thorow divers afflictions Many affiled (from which hee might have bene fleed) as, during too much drought, or beeing to a manin kept ouer hot, or too much prefled with ficknesse, yet cafily holpen. foode and Medicines, "or prohibited of fome pleasure and recreation, no way preiudiciall to his healing, and fuch like. I hold my felfe fatisfied, in fetting downe these three inconveniences, which are brdinary in the plurality of Phylitions, to thew and approue, that it is much better (withour comparison) to haire but one Phylition; prouided, that he be affiduate

and carefull.

It is the greatest happinesse for the fick Great happithall attend him diligetly.

man (that can be)to have but one Physition, that goeth not away from him, For, by vifiting him once or twice in a day, the Phylition, that patient cannot bee well cured : this may be called healing in groffe, and not exact ly. For the present Physition, observeth many particularities, which caufeth him to change opinion enery hours; as wel of his nourishment, as in other Remedies Wherefore Celfus faide very well, where he sheweth, what diligence a Phylicion ought to vie, in well directing the patients foode, for due houres, and measure of them, because it is one of the cheefest points in the whole cure. For (as hee writeth) Foode fitted to purpofe, is a most finpular Medicine and remedy. It ought alwaies so be observed, and generally, that the atten- The words of ding Physition do continually respect the Pa-tients strength: When it shall be good or able, fiction. to use abstinence; and when hee beginneth to doubt his weakeneffe, then to make supply of food. For it is his duty, that he furcharge not the ficke body with superfluous matter; hey. ther to betray it to feebleneffe, by famine, or farming, oc. Heereby may eafily bee winderflood, that many (together) cannot bee cured by one Physition: by that helif he understand truely his Art) is most proper, that never par.

Kerry at

teth from the ficke per (on . But fuch as are addited to gaine , beesause much is to bee had by a multitude of people : they willingly embrace those Rules, which require no such great cursosity, as in this case. For it is verie easie, so account daies, and houres, and other times of accesse: especially in such, as we not often to fee their patients. But it behooveth him to be attendant, that must have a care of all needfull things, and when the patient shall bee once feeble, to fee that hee have good nourishment.

Heereby you may perceive, how im-

The great im portance of the fick mans feruice.

One honest

painfull Phy

fition is bette

then twenty,

268121

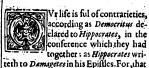
glas, bure

portant the ficke mans feruice is, that he must alwayes be affisted by a good Physition, both for his gouernement, and also for the vie of remedies . For, by being present, hee may advance or tardie, encrease or diminish, and doe many things in other manner, then when the fick-man is scene but by starts and leysures, as is too much practifed upon the people. Wherefore, it is best to hauebut one Physition, though he be of the leffe fufficiency or reputation (and confequently of leffe preffure; fo that he be honest, most frequent, and diligent. For diligence, vigilancy, & careful observation in the ordinary Phyfition; may counterpoize one of greater knowledge, that is not halfe fo much imployed.

CHAP. XV.

Against such as complaine on the over-short visitation of some Physitions.

Hip.in Epist. ad Demag.



which pleafeth vs now, will discontent vs within an houre. The labourer would bee fouldier, and (in fhort time) fall to his are ful of conformer condition againe. The Merchant would be made a Gentleman, and (foone after) returne to his Merchandize againe. But contradiction is yet more palpably

discouered, when wee see contradictorie

quality in one and the same thing. As, to

be a foldier, and yet not engaged to follow war to be a great landed man, and yet Contradict not subject to suites in law; to haue Varlets and Drabs in the house, and yet to be free from robbing; to live diffolutely, and neuer to be ficke. So is it in many, who would have Physitions of greatest following, and most reported of for practife, (of whome the vulgar give great judge-men, that they are men of fingular knowledge, as oftentimes it fo fals out, though not alwaies.) And fodainely they make made of Phy complaint, of their too short or seldome tings. visitation, and that they come not (so often as they ought) to fee them.

This is a complaint commonly made of our Parifian Physitions, being the most The Physics famous, who in fo great a Citie, haue ordinarily such plentie of patients, as it is vtterly impossible, that they shold stay long with any one of them. For, if a Physition haue twentie patients to visite in a day, is is not much, if hee abide with each one a quarter of an houre at a time? For, in the longest day, which may consist of xvi. houres, I would have him begin to visite at fine of the clock in the morning, and fo continue vntill ten then begin againe at noon, and hold on till five in the evening, times; for vil heere are ten houres imployed in visitation. It is verie necessary, that hee should haue some time of rest, as from tenne to twelve for his dinner, & refreshing from fine to featen in the fame evening, and then to fleepe in quiet : for if he ceafe not day nor night, it is not possible for him to haue long continuance.

I will yet allow fix houres for the morning, and fix more after dinner. For to go from one house to another to mount and descend againe all the staires; importeth afternoon to wel the space of two houres, in visiting of twentie seuerall persons. For no man whatfoeuer, can ride in poste quite thorough a Cittle; and then in the Sommer, when the dayes bee long, the fwiftnesse of motion is very dangerous, by ouer-heating, sweating, alteration of body, and other fuch like accidents. There remaineth then ten houres wholly cleere, that the Physicion may bee by each sicke A very short mans bedde, and that is the most for fuch fitting twenter imployment: And howe much time is patients. heere allowed then to each of the twenty? If I could account well, there were (for euericone) a quarter of an houre in the

time for vili

morning, and as much againe after din-

But very certaine it is, that the most famous Phylitions, have to visite (som such dayes) about thirty patients; and befides that, to vie confultations, where a man is constrained to stay longer then a simple visiting. Whence ensueth necessarilie, yea, and ineuitably, that each of the other visitations, cannot bee halfe a quarter of an houre. For, hee must conrent enerie man, and he that imparts himselfe among fo many, must needes allow every one a little. Thus the Physition doth but enter and depart, and (curforily) informeth himselfe of the patients estate; feeles his pulse, obserues his vrine, speaketh a word of that which is to be done, and then away to another.

He is not justly to bee blamed, for his celerity and fummarie visitation, seeing it is not possible for him to doe otherwise: and they that call such men to their cure. are not well informed. Nay more, if the Physition answer sometime, that hee can haue no leyfure, confidering the great number of patients he is to attend: fome one or other will reply, O good Sir, if you do but booke in a doores, and then depart; the sicke man will thinke, that he shall bee healed by your verie fight onely : if you woulde but once in a day fee him, as you passe along, hee were well fatisfied. As much faith another. yea, three or foure: What shall we fay to fuch a man?

But some one will answere mee: He ought to haue regard of the persons quality, and make longer stay with a great Lord, Byshoppe, Abbor, Earle, Baron, President, Councellor, Treasurer, Generall of the Finances, and other men of Honour, who have where withall to acknowledge and recompence him better, then ordinarily other men doe or can. heare one make reply, that he ought to do his duty towards all men, and to acquitte himselfe faithfully of his Charge. Beside, that (by fome) he is to be much more comanded; as his parents, neerest Kindred Friends, Familiars, and some to whom he standeth in high degree obliged. Such persons indeed (according vnto humane fense and judgement) ought to be preferred before the other, what ranke or degree focuer they hold. And fuch, of whom lip-labour. no money is to be taken, in segarde of the

fore-named obligation; do infly require of the Physicion, much more care and diligence, then they from whom hee may expect recompence. And therefore, it is no small matter, to have a learned & wife Physicion obliged and affected vnto anie one, who will alwayes make more regard of friendship, then of greatnesse.

Of Short Visitation.

And although the most part of our greatest personnes, haue no other know- greatmen ledge of the Physition, but by his Fame the tame of onely, and are much leffe knowne to the Phyfitions. Physicion; yet such knowledge being not reciprocall, and having no familiaritie, friendthip, nor mutuall Obligation; the Philition is no more proper to them, then any other beside of thesame profession, who having fewer crowds following the. may (happily) as foone minister succour, and giue more respect. But passion is so prevalent in these our dayes, as none must bee had, but hee that is in most request; and every man would very willingly have him, which properly is no way possible, and yet they complaine of his flack atten-

If a man fay, I am none of the meannest persons, and I have wherewithall to have one man pay him, as wel as another: you shall have onely, what on hundred to speake the same Wordes. We is like to be made of What shall the Physition then doe? But the rest? divide his visitations into so many pieces, as enery one may have a little. But ever more let him reserve the longest, for such to whom hee is most obliged, and standeth engaged; as reason and humanitie commandeth him.

Wherefore, it were much better (in my minde) that men heerein would take more aduisement, and to defire y which Men of leffe they may haue: that is, a Physition easyer to bee had, among them that are accountaged experience as ted learned and expert, and yet have not greater boafuch busie imployment; because their seasters, & what
speciong, beeing post-posed
performe in to others, that have more name, and lon- leffer time. ger time. And if there bee any difficultie in the disease, it may as judiciously bee consulted on, as they that bragge most, and performe least. Beleeue it vndoubtedly, that if the Philytion be an able ma, he can soone understand, and hath sewest words; which he had rather shold appeare by proofe, then waste the time in vaine

This is the best advice that a sicke pa-

trarieties.

tient can take, of what quality focuer hee be, for his foonest helpe and succor. And if his meanes be fuch, as to have the Phyfition full with him, or that hee goe but little from him: it wil be much the better for him, imitating what hath bin discourfed in the precedent Chapter."

CHAP. XVI.

How much it importeth, that the ficke patient [bould repose confidence in his Physition.

The Authors clearing himning the for-

He taxeth no-

thing but val-

gar coplaints

Ome may mif-vnderstand, what which I haue serdown in the neighboring Chapter; as if I reprehended the affection which many haue to be visited by the most famous Physitical ways and the serious affection.

ons, and who (for their great reputation) have most accesse in the best Cities. God forbid, I should therein do wrong to very venerable and rare persons, who (by their merit) have acquired fuch tenowne And I should also offer injurie to the sick if I perswaded them from affection, and recourse to the healers of theyr harmes . For, on the contrary, if men may joy plainely, and so much as neede requiretly, none in the Worlde may better doe it then they.

I taxe onely vulgar complaint, and in fuch as (to their owne shame) are discontented, because they cannot enjoy/what they would haue. I alwaies maintain, that they are onely the meetest men, in regard of themsclues, and for their respect. Onely this is my defyre, that men of fuch fame and reputation, remaining alwaies in fo great request: should also be most skilfull and expert, happy in their practifes, and conformable to their patients. For otherwife, their high failes will strike, and their reputation (badly grounded) will flic vp in finoake.

But for the choife men themselues, they are verie meete, apt, and correspondent, to cure the greatest diseases, and in the worthielt personages: in which respect, ranke among Physitions, onely for happinesse in their cures. Because opinion conceiued of them, giues certaine confi-

dence to the ficke man, to bee recovered better, and more securely by their means, then any other whatfocuer. Whereupon, we commonly fay in out schooles, He healeth most difeafes, in whom most confidence is reposed. And this proceedeth from strong imagination, which hath mightie Confidences power, to make impression in vs; as I fulficiently have shewne, in the Preface to the Phinon my 2.booke of Laughter.

It is a power of the foule, which strongly mooueth the blood and spirits, in such a strange manner; that if she walke along (hand in hand) with firme opinion and confidence, the very powers of Nature affemble, to fight against the sicknes. And thereupon, great changes are noted in the Patient, onely at the very presence of a Physition denoutly attending. For, desire and hope being satisfied, the soule relecueth it felfe, and re-enforceth against the fickenesse. So that (verie often) Nature maketh some braue fally and effort; chafing the matter of offence impetuouslie, by a Crisis as we vie to call it, which is the conflict of Nature and Sicknesse. Contrariwife, if the Physition be not verie answerable in liking to the patient, perceiuing him not so succourable, as hee desireth or would haue: fuch a Physition shal neuer proceed fucceffefully, and the sicke Anynekin man (contrifting and discouraging) will Philipping become much more feeble then euer hee do no godo

on his heart. There is another benefite, which returneth to the patient, by having a Physition at his owne deuotion, and according to his wish and liking; because from him hee hopeth to have great comfort. For, hee willingly apteth and accommodateth him felfe, to whatfoeuer he ordaineth for him: with a chearefull confidence, that all this will furely helpe and heale him. As on the contrarie, what hee receiveth (from ano- Nothing the ther Physition) all is in missive & disdain, the patient, whereby, nothing can be profitable vnto hebeout him. For, although it were the best, and love within physicia. most delicate thing in the world, if hee haue not a good opinion of itsthe stomack they holde reputation, and the cheefest | fals to a loathing, and neuer can it come fo gladfome to his heart, as when he takes it with a chearefull disposition. Wine, the brothe of a Capon, and the Brawne of a

was. For his spirites being danted, they

haue no vigour at all; onely by the feare

and diffrust which hath before seized vp-

Many afflictions happens to the patient i he bee not confident in his Phylition

Mariage vied

fon with the

will endure many annoyances, wherein he shall be greatly impatient to his owne preiudice: if he haue not a good opinion of his Physition, and be consident in him. For, hee may approoue him to bee fuch a man, as the credite of any other could neuer perswade him. Therefore, it is not in vaine, that poore ficke men should defire fuch as holde great reputation, and of whom (commonly) paffeth good opinion ; for fuch haue the best efficacy in their proceedings and directions. But yet they are not fo much to bee affected, as no respect at all should be vsed of other: wherof choyfe also may bee made at a second or third time of occasion, and they then must needs bee vied, for want of the former. When any fuch man happens to be called: the patient must likewise repose his trust, confidence, and affection in him,

Partridge, are most excellent nourish-

ments, delicate, and dainty : but if a man

take them frowningly, with an ill opinion of the Butlers bringing them, or that

the Cookes dreffing them is not agreea-

ble; all will doe no good, the stomack be-

ing directly opposite vnto them. What

will he thinke then of things, which (are

of themselues) very vnpleasing, and sick-

neffeabhorreth naturally, as medicines &

It followeth moreouer, that the patient

other druggeries ?

dies, at his owne good will and pleasure. For, in mariage, Maids couet to match in great houses; but if it will not come so to passe, they must content themselues with meaner place, giuing all their loue and affection, to the husbands chosen by themselues. And God may give them as much (or more) happinesse and contentment with their meane match, then if they had the richest husbands in the Worlde. This may redound to an honest houshold life, whereas the other might haue prooued iust nothing like the Physition, stand-ing out of his patients affection, beeing daily defirous of another.

without defiring any other; relying onely

vpon God, who giueth vertue to reme-

CHAP. XVII.

Of such as well have Physitions, and yet deny to do as they appoint and direct them.

Ot long fince, I met at Nar-bona with a Gentleman of the Nega-tive of Physics of Physi king purposely concerning their affirmations, pleasantly said: That he wold

beleeue them well in their Negatiues, but not in their affirmatines. This was a good old man, gallant and pleasantly disposed, who came from Spaine, having accomplifhed the tearme of his legation with King Phillip. Hee thus interpreted Negatives prohibited by Physitions: As not to drink Wine, nor eate fruite, nor to feede on windie meates, and fuch like. And their affirmatives were, to take medicines, glifers, Inleppes, and other things by them appointed. Was not this agoodly propolition, which many put in practife, to their extreame harme. For, they are will his countell his countell his countell. ling to have Physitions: but go looke for speaked. fuch as shal do as they direct them. Hardly will they keepe within the boundes of this Venitian, who (at least) would abstaine from what he was forbidden:but the most part of patients now a dayes, do quite con trary. What availeth it to have a Physition, if a man bee resolued, not to execute and accomplish his counfell, for the defence of his owne life?

Some will answer, that the presence of Friuolous anthe Physicion comforteth, delighteth, and ing the Physician the Physicia encreaseth courage; whereby they feele tions counsell the infirmity to diminish, & their strength to augment. Another saieth, I will doe fomething that the Physition doth aduise mee, at least of foode and gouernement; but of his Drugges I will not heare him

Well may wee compare this case, vnto people besiedged in a Towne or Cittie; calling some good and expert Captaine or Commander, for their succour and defence. Hee being come to them, they wil not obey him, nor accoplish any of his

In commendation of the renowned ge nerally by the world,

Excellent ad-

ordinances, but fay: That they are vvell pleased with his presence, and they are sufficiently fortified; it is enough for them, if he but take order for victuals, & be prouident in policie. As for fight, mounting the Artillery, and other needfull preparations, they will not heare a word of thate. Is this any thing elfe, but meerly to mock a braue foldier for his paines, & fend him away with loffe of credit?

I durst not tearme this folly, if Ecclefia-

Sticus had not taught me, faying; Hee that

is wife, will not abhorre the Physition. Oh,

Ecclef. 38,4.

By tasting sick nes, we know the better how precious a thing health

but Phylicke (fav fome) is very irkefome to take. It is true, and God hath so ordained it, that it may the better fight against the cuill. For, as health is pleasing and acceptable fo is it entertained with as accep table things: and as ficknes is vnpleafing, so must distastful things helpe to conquer it. It is not wisedome, if we apply not our willes, to whatfocuer the Physition appointeth, without contemning any thing. For oftentimes, thorough defect of one observation, which may seeme but small': the disease impaireth, euen to death. Like as a Towne may (fometime) bee loft, by lacke of a Sentinell; or by the meanes of a little hole or passage, which appeared to be of no importance. Sometime, a sparke offire enflames a whole heape of Straw, and thereby a house, and of one house, a whole Burrough or Towne. If a small

fault grow into excelle, or faileth of help

in due time, no meane disorder ensueth

Contempers of Physicke feek for helpe thereby, when it is too late.

Small errours

may grow o

uer great to be easily ap-peased.

What then shall become of such as defpife the Physition, when he (many times) hath worke enough to doe, to faue them, that are willing to doe whatfocuer hee would have them? Commonly, it falleth out with them who are fo difficult, that (in the end) they would yeeld to all, & more, euen then when there is neither meanes, nor time, and can no way bee preferued from death, as they might have bene before, by Gods gracious affiftance. Euen like to befiedged people, that began but coldly in their owne defence, not imploy. ing all their means; but sparing theyr bedtickes, balles of Wooll, Cheffs, Cuppeboords, and other mooueables, for re-impairing their victualles and money, that their Soldiers, Armes, and persons might be the better fecured, and to fight valiantly. But at length, beholding themselues

constrained; then they can offer bags of Gold, Plate, Iewels, yea, all to their verie bowels, onely for fafety; when there is no remedy at all to fled them, but become wife too late, with the Phrygians, according to the Prouerbe . Wherefore, let e- rous, & hardy uery man determine with himselfe (euen recourted in the very beginning) to doe willingly what the Physition shall counsell and ordaine for him, without restriction, or distinguishing Negatiues and affirmatiues, that God may the better give his bleffing, to concurre with the Physitions true en-

CHAP. XVIII.

Of such as in their sicknesse, will admitte no medicine or remedy; but only for the prefent paine and anguish.



Observed this opinion, in a Gentleman of Viuares, affect ed greatly to his pleafures. He made no particulare account buttothe

of infirmities, which were without greeuance, thinking remedies to ferue little or nothing at all for them; even as if it yvere necessary, that the disease shold have his courfe. And whatfoeuer was done, the infirmity would passe his foure times, if it were recouerable: but if it were deadly, then there was no remedy that could bee proper for it; which were erroneous specches, grounded on those folies heretofore refuted. In breefe, he would not allow of any Physition, nor any medicine; but to take away instant anguishes. But, if he wer falne into a palfie, which is a difeafe without paine, I beleeve he could gladly have defired, that it might be cured by medicin, or any other helpe elfe whatfocuer.

Now, concerning dolorous and painefull difeafes, it is to bee vinderftoode, that Concerning greefe there is not the principal(although dolorous an of very great importance) and that the e- les, wherein uill must and ought to be taken away, fro anguish is not which the anguish proceedeth, if men do deale inftly in their cures. For if one stand trifling fimply vpon the paine, & the cause is mistaken (which is the fourfe, root, and mother of cuill:) there are then but two

Chap. 19. Subject to sicknes, subject to Physick.

meanes; the one is by Anodyne medicines, which diminish the pain in some measure. and causeth the party to endure the rest more patiently.

The other is by Arcotick medicins, that is to fay stupifying, making the member sleepy, in astonning the Natural heate. Which is not to be vsed, but in extreme necessitie, and very wifely, but, as wel the one, as the other, do not let passe or lesfen the greefe, but onely for a time.

The ground& are to bee caken away, or

Euermore, wee should come to Cure the principall, otherwise it is still to begin againe. And if our remedies serue not to take away the euill, which is without paine, or which causeth paine: that were the greatest falshoode in the worlde, as I haue apparantly proued before, where I ouerthrew the idle imagination, that Phisitions serued to no purpose, but abused the world. If any yet shall reply vnto me, that many are well re-cured, both without Phylitions and Medicines: I answere also in the same manner, that as many lose their greeuances, without Phylicke, or any other applyed remedies, whereby that proposition is meerely confounded of it felfe.

CHAP. XIX.

That such as are subject to diseases, are in like manner subject to Physicke: and o-



Lub.9, 12

ANY throw aspersions of blame and reproofe, on fuch as observe some orderly rule and government, subjecting themselues to certaine reme-

dies to maintaine their healthfull condition, and prevent some knowne cuilles, whereto they are subject. They that condemne those meanes, are (doubtles) verie healthfull, and of good Complexion: in which respect, the position is verie true, according to that which is faide in Sacred Scripture, The law was not given to the suft. But more expressely, where it is saide, The whole need not the Physition, but they that are ficke. These words likewise do confirm the contrary, to wit; That fuch as are fick, haue need of the Physition; & such as are

subject to any sicknesse, are also subject to fome rule. Euen according as we are fubiect to fin, so are we subject to the Law.

I shall alwaies give confent with most Celinib. s.c. cloquent Celfus : That the healthfull Man, while he carieth himselfe well, and is truely himselfc: needeth not to be tyed to any Law or Gouernment, nor to imploy the Physition. It wice given by is very expedient, that he fould have diners lerned Cellus manners of life; one while in the field, then a- to a healthfull gaine in the City, but more often in the field: To Nauigate, hunt, to be at rest and ease formtimes, but yet to exercise himselfe more ofte. For, floath and idleneffe, maketh the bodye drowfie and dull , but travell confirmeth it : The one is the haltner of Age, the other is the continuer of iolly wouth.

It is good also sometimes to bath, and sometimes to vecolde waters ; one while to annoint, then againe to for beare. Feare no kind of meats, that are wied among civill people; to be sometimes present at Feasts, another while to refraine them. One while feede some what immeasurably, and afterward soberly. Make two meales a day more oftner then one, and alwayes eate well, folong as it may have digestion, &c. As concerning carnall Copulation, it may not bee defired too much, nor too much feared neither : That which is rare and fildome, exciteth the body that more frequent

diffolueth it, & c.

These rules are to be observed by such, Hethatis well that haue their health firme, and can fo &cannot keep keepe themselues; that remedies ordayned for cuil carriage be not employed & owne. confumed in vaine. In this maner are men of found health indifferent to all, and fubied to nothing, while they beare themfelues well, and are fo firmely in health, as Celfus hath limited. It were very great shame for a man, to make himselse delicate, foft, and tender, foupling and eneruing his good and strong Complexion; which would extend it felfe a great deale more, by bolde, valiant, and manly exercifes. But for valetudinarie perfonnes, Many dileales vnhealthfull, subject vnto manie Diseafer, as Epilepfies (commonly called, Mal laidtobechede S. Jean) Megrimes, Rheumes, Catarhs, reditarie to shortmesse of breath, Ache in the bones, Oppilations in the Liver or Spleene, the Winde Collicke, or Stone, Gowts, and the like infirmities (whereof the most part are Hereditarie, yea, and the Leaprofictoo), who makes any doubt or queftion, but that fuch men ought to live

The left skill

ouer prefu-

For Nurfics,

keepers, and

attenders a-

bout patients.

pretending to

baue no mican

knowledge.

Concerning Students and men in pub-like offices,

to vnderstand

our being fub-

784

Such also as addict themselves to studie, or vnto publike charges in the Common-wealth, because they are subject to many necessities, ought to be gouerned; otherwise, they often fall into divers infirmities. For they tie & constraine themselues to store of things, which are verie hurtful for them. And Celfus in the words before alledged, presupposeth, that the healthfull man, must also be wholly himfelfe in all respects. Now, in the polition formerly allead-

enuious of, and desire to see manie

ged, faying, Subiect to difeafes; we underand a particular subjection & aptitude. For all men in the world are fubicat to all kinds of fickneffe, euen as we are all fubiect to death. But we fay, fome are fubiect thereto particularly, that have an inclination and disposition to some cuil, the rudiment wherof is in them: not that they are already ficke, but because a small matter will throw them into ficknesse; and therefore, they ought the more respectively, to carry themselves. By example of him formerly spoken of, who being the only fick man in his time : made shift yet to liue an

CHAP. XX.

quifite manner of lite.

hundred yeares, by great cunning, and ex-

That such as know some little matter in Physicke, are more dangerous to be neere sicke personnes, then they that know nothing at

In the 13.



Must confesse, that this error ought to haue followed a former Chapter, where we declared, that there were more Physics ons, then of anic other

protession. But fearing to offend any succorable people, I had a long conflict with mine owne cogitations, whether I should taxe and reprodue them in fuch publique manner. At length, I concluded to holde on my courfe; knowing, that ther is more danger (then we wold eafily think) in fuch

within rule, if their owne ease they be not | as know something, and imagine to know all things . For out of this ouer-weening, either they prefume, and vndertake the very greatest cures; or withstand and hinder Physicions, from beeing imployed in fentyinging principall remedies, necessarily requiring to prefump quick and fure healing. But these infolent tion . controllers, keep them fo engaged to fear; that they neither dare, nor will aduen-

There are some persons, who know not any thing in Phisick, in regard of discourse and reason; as ignorant women, who can tions, that the neither write nor reade; but onelie haue certaine observations and rules, knowing have known how to make a good Broth, a Cullife, a Restorative, to make a bed well, and knit a kerchiefe about the fick mans head. Befide, they know fome infant remedies, against itch, scabs, burnings, falling of the Fuula, wormes, the Mother, &c. Hereupon, they imagine themselues compleat in knowledge, and make many things out of their owne braine and fantafies and if their experiment succeede ill, they spare not to yaunt, that the Physitions great Gowne shall couer all this.

It were very good and expedient, that affiftants about ficke patients, did knowe nothing elfe, but to obey the Physicions directions. It were a knowledge very beside perior, when they we neficiall to the patient; for, such as do not young the presume of theselues, will neuer attempt sie beine to execute any thing, but what is preferibed, ordained, and commanded. Others, that dreame they have knowledge; they will adde, diminish, alter, or else do infi nothing at all. Like to lewd Apothecarles, who execute the Physitions directions at their owne pleasure, as presuming to know the curing of the disease, and the nature better in course, then he doth : being drunke with some opinion concerning the like; as having observed divers the like ficknesses, attended many Physitions, and feene the fuccesse of the like re-

O dangerous ouer-weening! fee here Betterto ka the verie ruine of most ficke personnes. It then to have were much better (before God I speak it) knowledge it not to know any thing, then to know shus in this Empericke manner. What more vnhappinesse for the patients life, and honour to the Physicion, then to haue an Apothecarie fo ouerweening, temerarious, and prefumptuous? In Italy, and in Spain,

Opportunity is the greatest ging to the

the ficke are in much better manner ferued. For, the Apothecary goeth not to fee the ficke man, except it be in courtefie and friendship; and yet not as an Apothecary neither: nor do the Phylitions under write their bils of receipts, by or for who the remedies were compounded. Whereby, the Apothecarie knowes as litle of the Physitions intent, euen as if hee were acquainted with nothing. By this meanes, hee cannot abuse the Physitions directions; or, much lesse then our Apothecaries, to whom all is imparted ouer familiming Apothe-

> Next to Apothecaries. I speak of those vile and bad (not good, provident, modeft, and honest people, that meddle not. but what they have to doe withall) yea, most dangerous keepers or servants, attending about poore weak patients, who thinke they have more knowledge then the Physicion (especially, if they be anciently traded in the bulinesse) touching nourishing principally; beecause it ought to be of inestimable importance, qualitie, fit houres, and measure. True it is of the quality they credite enough by the Physitions order; but for the houre and meafure, they do all at their owne liking. I spare the drugeries they couertly vie, and the omissions of Ordinances appointed to them, when they meete with patients fitte for their purpose. Such people are most daungerous, and much better to have them that know no fuch cunning, neither haue learned any other lesson; but to doe what they are apointed, which is the main article of their duty.

> > CHAP. XXI.

The manner of knowing Opportunity truely, for understanding or performing such actions, as we would have to be well done: And how our grave Elders weed to depict or figure Occasion.

Here confisteth no meane wit and indgement, in knowing howe to make vse of Opportunity;& to perform our actions in due time:be-

cause great care is to be had, either for doing, or not doing a thing at a time; in regarde there is no alteration or returning backe, when defect falleth uppon the aduenture. Heereupon, the Grecian Philophers lefte vs many notable fentences in writing, making to that purpose : in regard that they truely understoode, what wisedome depended uppon knowledge, for doing a bufineffe in apt opportunitie, and taking occasion when it is fairely offered.

Salomon faith in his Eccleftastes: To all Ecc. 3,1,2,3.4 things there is an appointed time . There is a A discours time to be borne, and a time to dye: A time to plant, and a time to plucke up that which is planted: A time to kill, and a time to heale: A time to builde, and a time to ruinate: A time for warre, and a time for peace. In breefe, many examples might bee alledged, whereby to demonstrate, what loffe relyeth on dooing any thing out of due time; and what benefite redoundeth voto men, when things are accomplished aptly to time and place.

Menander, a Greeke Poet faid; That all things done to purpose, & in time have great grace, for Opportunity hath more power then

Law. So that a little attendance given on time, is esteemed highly worth. Hestodus, a Grecke Authour also, appointed vs te keepe meanes and observation of times: For, the importance of all affayres (faith he) confistethin attending on time and opportunity. Pindarus faid; Time hath great power in all things. Also (according to Horace,) Horace, A man should alwaies fet forward his affairs, when he feeth due time. Socrates, writing to

Democritus, Said; Allthings are naught, being done out of due feafon. In breefe, there is no man of judgement or experience, but will purfue his bufines in fitteft times.

All which notwithstanding, it is to be Opportunitie noted, that as it is good to waite on Op- mult by no portunity, and apteft times to perfourme anything : fo likewife, the point or instant while it may is not to bee flipt, for exact executing be. any matter when it commeth. This is that which hath commonly beene fayde, Occasion is neuer to be misprized. For all things y are done out of their confiellation, & confent of the stars (although occafion commeth otherwife) can neuer grow to good perfection.

And to speake seriously, occasion and opportunity for our actions, was in firch Xxxx

ing of Menan

Pindarus,

Socrates.

Democritus,

flip,but taken

ding one foot vpon a turning wheele, and all before the face couered with Hayre, dangling downe in long treffes; but althe head behind was bald and thanen. This Occasion or shape was given to occasion or Opportu-Opportunity, moralized in nity, by Polidsus, or Polidippus as some cal-

Occasion familiarly defcribed by Sys Thom. More, Englishman.

Figure.

led him, a Greek Poet, translated into Latine by the learned Erasmus, and Ausonius the Lombards Poet. Whom Sir Tho: More of England, aman much renowned for wifdome and learning, traduced into the Ca-Stillian tongue, in forme of a dialogue. For More faid, that Occasion, standing so vpon a wheele, declared thereby her instability; and having wings both at her handes and feet, shewed, how lightly shee past away, without tarrying. Moreouer, said he, her forhead and face being couerd with hairy long locks, expressed; that she might easily be held, by fuch to whom the prefented her felfe; but being vnwilling to be known to others, thee kept her face fo couered, because she would escape away vnknown: being also bald and shauen behinde, for feare the should be stayed, after shee was once past. Whereby may be comprehended, that Opportunity once loft, is not to bee recovered, by all our paines applyed afterward.

Aulonius making a further addition to

vse of this example. For, some are so so-

daine in their affaires, that they can neuer

bring them about, by not tarrying for op-

pen; that in the time of this lingering ne-

gotiating, Occasion hath past by the Both

which extremities are to bee anoyded by

men of good judgement, who, in waiting

the time for best performing their busines

fuffer no occasions (in the meane while)

offaire offer to ouer-flip them. For other

her portraiture, like as a Mirrour before

their cies. The Latines figured Occasion

in the form of a woman; but the Grecians

figured her in the shape of an infant, hol-

this picture, placed the figure of Repen-Repensance figured fitting tance, litting vpon the moulders of Occaon the floulders of Occafion : declaring thereby, that whatfocuer happeneth by the loffe of Occasion, may well be repented. And truly there are two kinds of people, who might make good

portune time. And others(on the contra-A worthy prery) are fo long and tedious in concluding fident for two forts of pcotheir bufinesse, beeing troubled with so many inconveniences, which may hap-

high esteeme with our Ancients, as well wise, they may fall into a tardy repentace. Greeks as Latines; that they had alwaies | which will be little to their credite and be-

CHAP. XXII.

Of Fanour, Grace, or Good opinion: Howit hath bene described by picture, and also concerning the Morall fignification.



He precedent discourse, co-cerning the portraiture of Opportunity, or Occasion, hath brought that to my re-membrance, which the an-

cient Romanes gaue and granted to Fauor, Grace, or good Opinion : as well for the great coueniency which thefe two things hold together, as also because the tru time and very occasion of wel-doing any thing is, when Fauour standeth fairest for him; as much to fay, as when the Prince lendeth an attentiue care, and vouchsafeth (withall)a gracious countenance: For, a man that is in credite with a Prince, is very much made of by all men, euerie one Princes ateno thinkes well of what he doth, or faith; be- meant blifcause all things succeede to his good and at heue then honor : for all are full of fauour towardes him, either with an honest heart, or else in outward ceremony.

Little need is there to produce Histoties or examples to this effect, confidering that (at all times) it hath bin in practife, & cuery yeare is a breuiate therof; wherfore it shal suffice me only to represent the true figure of Fauor, according to the draught of our grave Elders, which may fom way conforme it selfe with that of Occasion. For in their truest picturing Fauour, they figured a yong infant blind, being alone, & without any company. Bartholomeus Dardanus, moralizing vpon this picture intro-duceth himselfe) speaking to the Painter according to Apelles, by way of dialogue, in this maner. by Apelles.

O Apelles! Perceyuing the great paines that thou hast taken, to portraite truely the Image of Fanour : I pray thee tell mee, of what race shee is descended? Whereunto Apelles fodainly replying, fayde; Her The impar-Race is knowne, but to verie few people. And lace between indeede, the Originall of Fauour is hardly

Chap.23. Of Fauour, Grace, or good Opinion.

to be found. For some say, that fauour commeth by corporall beauty: Others hold, that the commeth by adventure, or good hap. Tet Some will have her to be the daughter of Fortune, or of accident. And yet neverthelesse, many are of the minde; that (beey (lueth from true Noblenesse of the minde. As is cafilic discerned, by this short Dialogue following, where a Poet, speaking to Apelles, beginneth thus.

A discoursiue Dialogue(actording to Morall (ence) betweene a Poet and Apelles, concerning the true Image of Fauour.

Poet. IT PHat is that Woman, standing on yonder side, who is never forfaken, but still hath store of company?

Apelles. Her name is Flattery.

Poet. And what is shee that attendeth. or followeth after her ?

Apelles. Her Name is commonly called Enuie.

Poet. What people are they that fo round engirt her?

Apelles. They are fuch as continually keep company with Fauour, and are especially obedient to her: As namely, Riches and Pleafures, the four se and originall of all vices.

Poet. Why hast thou (in figure) given wings to Fanour?

Apelles. Because she cannot step a foote abroad, but she mounts aloft, when the wind of good Fortune raifeth her.

Poet. And wherefore hast thou painted her blinde?

Apelles. Because such as are incredite, will no more take knowledge of their ancient Friends.

Poet. And why hast thou placed hir feet vpon a wheele?

Apelles. Because she followeth the steppes of Fortune, being evermore as inconstant as

Poet. But why dost thou make her puffe and fwell to proudly?

Apelles. Because prosperity blindeth the understanding of all men.

This Dialogue, reported in the Lan guage belonging to it, would have much more grace, then any tongue elfe can be-

flow vpon it. Neuertheleffe, the most gracious Fauourites may heereby take aduice, to know, what companions attend vpon Fanour, and the instabilitie both of them and her. To the end, they may the The greatest better gouerne themselves with modestie Fauourites of in their credit, without puffing or fivel Princes, have ling vp into pride. For, ouer and belide, to many misthat God is greatly there-with offended, fortunes. there are many other dangers elfe, by the observation of passed times : as true testimonie hath beene made, by the voltage py and lamentable endof many Princes Fauourites, that knew not howe to vie their credit fo wifely, as they should have

CHAP. XXIII.

Of those seven Wife men of Greece commonly called the fenen Sages: With many notable Sentences which they left behinde them in writing.

Mong the ancient Gracians, crates, accounting the article of Sages or wife to be ouer-arrogant (because it was onely or, Wife, to proper and peculiar to God, to bee abio. b: ouer arrolutely called Sage or Wife) invented the gant. name of Philosopher, as much to fay, as a louer of wisedome; and being somewhat better qualified, and more moderate then the name of Sage or Wife; fo that al wife men, which were fince the time of Socrates, were well contented with the Title of Philosophers. Notwithstanding, there were seuen seuerall men, vnto whom the name of Sages or Wife-men, were attributed, by common confent of all Greece, in regarde of their Knowledge and Vertuc.

And indeede, many Authors (as well Ancient as Moderne) do make mention The Authors of them, and of notable fentences lefte by intention, them for memory : whereof(I purpose) to this Chapter. fet downe heere a breefe summarie, that understanding Readers (yet ignorant in the originali Language) may the better be acquainted with their wittie fayings.

Setting aside then that vaine and foo. lish Booke of the Seauen Sages, which hath runne thorow too many Countries, with many opinions divulged, concerning their lines (which yet were discredited, and rent in peeces by Diogenes Laertius) I will thape my courfe, according vnto that which hath beene auouched by Saint Augustine, Erasmus, Phillip Melan-Ethon, Beroaldus, Raphaell Volateranus, and many other Authors of great fame. The names of those seauenmen, were Solon, ges of Greece Chile, Cleobulus, Thales, Bias, Pittacus, and Periander, and they are all living together at one time : although some of them were more aged then the other, and (happily) lived longer then the reft did. For, all of them were in perfect beeing, the leven Sa- during the reigne of Cyrus King of Perfia, at fuch time as the Iewes remayned captines in Babylon: which was about the space of fine hundred and fiftie yeares, before the comming of our Lord and Sauiour Ielus Chrift, as Eufebius faith.

We purpole to speake of them particularly, and likewife of fome of their principall Sentences, which they left respectiuely for vs: albeit memory harb embrared infinite common fayings of theirs, as ordinarily all Authors have concluded in their writings. Aufonias, a famous Poet of Lombardie, veric elegantly reduced into verse, many notable Sentences of those Sages, whereof he maketh very ample relation, in three feuerall Bookes published

Flest then, we will begin with wife Bias, who was borne in Priene, a Sea-coaft towne of Ionia, a Region in Greece, having where he was a very poore man to his father, named Totamus, This Bias was a great Oratour, a good Aduocate, and well feene in all the Sciences; beeing otherwise endued with many vertues. Among which, he held in highest estimation, to contemn the riches and honors of the world. Cicero, speaking of him, faith, that when the enimy deftroid the towne where he dwelt, and enery man labored to fane and carry away the best of his goods: Biss would not fare any thing belonging to him. And being domanded, why he was to respect lefte of his goodes: he answered; All my goods I carry with mee: meaning his wifedome, which (indeed) is

the greatest wealth of all.

Aboue all things, this man fought still to maintaine loue and amity, & therefore he was held the chiefest in the Commonwealth: hewould fay, he had much rather be a judge between two of his frinds, then between two of his enemies: for in condening a friend, he should loofe his frendhip;but in judging betwirt two enemies, hee for whome the sentence was given, would become a friend.

Of Friends

A lewd man once demanded of him. what was to be pittled in religion?wherto Bias answered not a word: the man growgaine; and Biss replyed; Why doit thou aske fooles floor a ing angry, mooned the same question a-

He vied oft-times to fay, that the greater part of men, were the worst men; and Ausonius took great paines in confirming Ausonius in the this faying. But it is fo manifest and true, that it needs no other confirmation, then what is auouched in the Gefpell, where it is faid : Many are called, but few are cholen. Cicero alfo maintaines it to be true, affir- eucrointa. ming the race of the wicked to be great. eulesp.3. Plato also saide to the same purpose, That good men were gone, and growne to no Platein Tries, thing : but contrariwise, the vices of the wicked encreased daily, euen as if they were watered hearbs.

There are some Authors, who alledge many other fentences of Bias, very fingu- layings autilar, and necessary; as, Attribute to God all the good thou doest: Neuer be envious at the rich. Hee may well be called a good man, that hath no remorfe of conscience, The greatest danger that happens to a man, commeth from man: The very richest gift in a woman, is to be vertuous and honest.

Aristotle attributeth this to Bias . Degrees of honor and offices, do most manifest what a man is: for, many appeare to be honest men (as indeede their actions show no lesse) beeing private persons: but hauing power to command, doe manifeftly declare the malignitie of their hearts: He addeth alfo. That a man should so carry himselfe to his friend, as if (another day) he should become his enemy : and so to deale with an enemy, as hoping(one day) he may be his friend. Yet Aristotle him-Arift in Rheia. felfe reproued this faying, in his Rhetho- Lb.3. (49.4, 1) ricke. Notwithstanding in duc consideration of managing friendshippe in these dayes, wee shall finde this Sentence to be most true.

There

8. Booke Chap.21. There are many other fayings, well de- , Subject to a tyrant. feruing memorie, which are attributed to this Philosopher, & would aske too much time heere to infert: and therefore I will leave them, having first informed theReader, that after the death of Bias, his funerall was follownely performed, at the coft and charge of the Common-wealth, in figne of his perpetuall honour.

> T'He second Sage or wiseman of Greese Solon, the fe-cond Sage or wie Man of was Solon, although some ranke him in the prime place. Plutarke, and many other haue written at large of his life, faying; That hee was borne in Salamina, an Iland in Subjection to the Athenians, iffued of an auncient and most Noble house; his fathers name being called Accresides. The Ashenians made fuch pretious effects of Solon, aswell in regarde of his wisedom, and the victories which he had obtayned against them of Mytilene, with fundry other enterprises, which hee had finished very dexteriously; that they limited themseluesto his ordinances, which were great (as Plutarke affirmeth) recording many of Pha in via Selõ them by particular mention.

Especially he moderated the Lawes of Draco, which were very rigorous, fo that for the very least facte committed in Athens, life depended thereupon. For, Demas the Oratour fayd, That the Lawes appaynted by Draco, were written downe with the bloud of men. Solon therefore corre-Acd them, and confirmed in Athens, the Councell of the Areopagites, according as Aristotle and Plutarke do plainly main-

Hee had a concurrent or corriuall in Athens, a kinfeman of his owne, named Fifthratus , to that, the more Solon labored the libertie of his Countrey, so much the more did hee study and endeauour to oppresse it. Neuerthelesse, in conclusion, the eloquence of Pifistratus had more power, then all the approoned goodnesse in Solon, whereby hee poffeffed himfelfe of the Seigneury and Rule of Athens; which Solon might have done (much more eafily then hee) if he would have vied but his owne meanes. For, when the men of A-Solom refusal shens offered him the soueraigntie of their of governing Citty, hee made them answer thus : The wife reason. house of tyrannic is very pleasing, but it must have a winding stayres to mount it: And therefore, I will neyther be a tyrant, nor

Piddratus, an Opposite a-gainst Soloss

Heereuppon, after that PifiHratus had gotten full possession of Athens, Solon departed thence, and trauelled Countries uailed Coun for the space of tenne yeares, as well in E- tries, gypt as in other places. Till at the length, he came to the Court of Crafus, the rich and powerfull King of Lydia, who having His comming frewed him his aboundant treasures, de- torith Crass maunded of him, if ever hee had feene fus, King of more Royall possessions? Whereto Solon (like a Philosopher and Free-man)re- with him,aplyed: That he had feene the possessions bout his riof diuers Fowles, Cockes, Capons, and pineffe. fuch like, which feemed goodlier to him, because they were naturall to them . Againe hee demaunded of him; If ever hee had seene any man more rich, or so happic as hee was? Solon answered him (without flattery) that hee had seene a man in his owne Countrey, named Tellus, who (in his opinion) was more happie then Crafus, for hee was an honest and vertuous man, and had seene his children. and the children of his children fo well aduaunced, that hee receyued feruice from them in his age. Nay more, being growne into the extreamitie of yeares; he dyed in the defence of his Countrey, and repelling the enemy.

The King being much displeased at the answer of Solom, sayd vnto him : Why dost have some denot thou attribute to me some degree of gree of haphappinesse? Whereunto Solon replying, shewed him the great trauerses and mutations, which may enfue vnto fuch as are constituted in great Estates: and they being subject to such alterations, he could not tearme them truely happie, alledging a common Prouerbe, vied among the Athenians: That the end of life must first bee feene, before any sudgement of happines paffe thereon.

O most notable saying, though to A ristotle, it seemed not receivable : for, while a man continueth in life, hee is alwayes vncertayne of his estate and condition, as also of his fame and reputation : as it was well approuedby the Wife man, who faid Commend no man before his death. Ecclef. 12,14 And our bleffed Lord alfo, would have Matha 8,19. his Apostles and Disciples to make stay in no place, or to falute any bodie by the way : which fome expounded according to the faying of Solon, who affirmed, that man(in his life time) could not affure him felf**e**

ches and hap-

A witty Athe-

No man can be happy be-

Authors of great & good fufficiency. The names of the feuen Sa-

ges liued.

Enfeb.in Hift." Eccleflev.q.c.7

Anfonius the Lombard Poct.

Bias one of the Sages, and

Cicero in Orat. ero Cluent.

Omnia mea mecuni porto.

The faying of Selon appro ued by many good authors. Plin,in lib. 14 cap.10. Oud, in Meta marp.ib.z.

ted from king

man vnregar.

Crefus found

Solons words

true, to the no

mean hazard

of his life.

Cyrus giuet

and made hin

Competitor in his King-

Arist.in polit.

lib 3.cap.13. The death o

domes.

Crefus, as a

79°

felfe from falling into many ineuitable inconveniences. Pliny also conforming him selfe to Solon, sayd; One day indgeth another, and the last day indeeth all . Ould maketh the like affirmation, faying: who foeuer considereth the last day of man, which is uncertaine; it is not possible for him to fay, that he can be any way truly happy.

But returne we againe to King Crafus, who, notwithstanding the wife answere Solon had made him, he regarded him not, neither what great benefit might after befall him, by enioying the companie of a man fo worthy, as neuer respecting future occasions to follow. Whereuppon Solon departed from his Court, with very vnkinde entertainement : but afterward, fuch an aduenture hapned, as made him dearely acknowledge his errour, and well to remember the words of Solon . Por, Great King Cyrus waging new warre against him; and having vanquished and taken him prisoner, gaue Sentence, that hee thould be burned aline. Hee being vpon the pile of wood, and fire making readie to confume him : cryed fodainely out aloude , O Solon, Solon, Solon, remembring now in this extreamitie, that his faying was true, and that no man could be happy while he lived! Crafes commanding the Officers to flay, and to keepe the fire from the pile: would needes understand of him, wherefore he vled that inuocation yppon Solon, or expected thereby for deliuerance from death? Crafus reported the whole History to him, what Solon had fayd, concerning his imaginarie happinesse; the trueth whereof he had now too apparantly prooued. Cyrus being much amazed thereat, and entring into mature confideration, of the strange and vnauoidable mutabilities of Fortune; deliuered King Crafus from death & captivity, doing him to great honor, that he made him his affociate in his kingdomes. Whereby we may perceive, that this wile and worthy faying of Solon, was the meanes of freeing one mighty King from death, and made an other also much wifer then hee

was before. Solon, having attained vnto the age of fourescore yeares, dyed at Rhodes, ordayning by his testament (as Aristotle layth) that his body should bee burned, and his ashes scattered in the Isle of Salamina: because they should not be carried to Athens,

for constrayning them (by that meanes) to keepe his ordinances. Because, before he departed from Athens, he made the Athenians to take an oathe, that they should keepe his Lawes inuiolably, vntill he was returned from his voyage. And indeede, according vnto Aristotle, the Commonwealth of the Athenians maintained them felues very profperoufly, fo long as they kept the Lawes of Solon.

Now, as concerning the fentences and fayings of Solon; for the most part, they were conformable to Christian Religion, and all Civilitic. As, Honour God: Be help-full to thy neighbour: Maintaine the vertue conformale of thy friend: Obey the Lawes: Bridle thine Religion and anger: Honor thy father and mother: Sweare Civilly, not : Keepe thy felfe from Enuy : Be not too light in confirming a friend, but learne to keep him when thou hast him . Marrie with thine equall: Reproone thy friend in Secret, but publikely thou mayest commend him: Shunne the company of wicked people: Praise and follow vertue. Hee favd moreouer, That Lawes were like to Spyders webs, wherein poore litle Flies were soone entangled, but such as were great and strong, could easily breake thorow. Such, and the like notable Sentences, are found among his Lawes and Ordinances: And fo much for Solom.

Hilo, fon of Amaratus, was also numbered amongest the seauen Sages of white Sugar Greece. He was of Lacedemon, a citty highly renowned in Greece, where he was ele-Acd in the Councell of the Ephori, in regard of his great wifedome & knowledge: this was an Estate among the Lacedemonia ans, as the Confernatours and Tribunes were among the Romains. Chilo was very lummary and fuecinct in his Discourse, as (ordinarily) all the Lacedemonians were : and hee was likewife called Arifta. Chile alle geras, in regard of that qualitie. When any one compiled an Oration, in few and sind differ witty words, they vsed to say i That he had sing. written a Chilonical Oration . He lived fo long (as Pliny and some others fay) even Plininks (4) till nature fayled in him . Neuerthelesse, he dyed with a conceit of ioy, feeing one of his fonnes, to winne the prizes of Honourin the Olympian games, and after his death; the Lacedemonians performed

his funerall with great folemnitie. The fingular wisedome of this man, appeared sufficiently, by the notable Sentences which he had written; but especially in this, that he exhorted every man to know himfelfe. Which being heedfully obserued, men would not bee so vaine, nor so proude and inordinate, as vsually they are: because all vices and disorders do proceed from felfe-conceite, and no man truely knowing himfelfe. Heereupon the Christian Church tooke an order, that euery yeare (in the begining of Lent) all men should bee admonished to remeber, that from dust they came, and to dust

Platin lib.de kgib.3.cap.9

to know the

Things fit and

roued to Chilo, and his

they should returne againe.

Plato recordeth, that this faying of Chilo, Know thy felfe, was written in letters of golde, vpon the portall of Apolloes Teple. Inuenall faith, That this (aying came fro Heauen. Macrobius, in his Tract of Scipioes Dreame, faith; That the Oracle of Apollo being demanded the meanes, what course should be taken, for attaining to felicity, answered: Onely teach a man to know himfelfe.Demonicus, being asked, at what time he began to be a Philosopher, answered; necessary tor when I began to know my felfe. O most neceffary rule; for if a man would confider himselfe well, and study but to understand his condition, estate and vacations, and frame his life accordingly thereto: hee could neuer bee fo changed, to attempt fuch things, as he neyther shold or ought to do, neyther would there bee so much diforder in the world, as now there is.

Chilo also had an accustomed kinde of Prouerbiall speeches, to wit: Remember graue fentenes witten & thou must dye, and therefore prouide for wied by Chilo thine owne (aluation. Honour olde men. Be no murmurer. Speake no euill of an offendour. Chuse rather losse, then dishonest gaine. In violence and constraint bee milde and humble. Labour rather to beloved, then feared. Try Gold by the touch; for, a golden-tongued ma, who feaketh all that comes into his mouth, men may often heare from him, (uch things as they would not.

Chilo being asked by one, named Æfope, what God had done, answered; Hee exalted humble men, and suppressed proudionorant Fooles. Being demanded also, what was the hardest thing in the world to bee done, replyed: To vse and imploy a (mans time well, and to pardon injuries and outrages received. In briefe, he would viually fay, that he would so dispose the course of his life: That the greatest persons should not despise, nor the meanest feare him . Finally,

Chilo both wrote and spake many notable things in his time, which would require ouermuch leyfure to report: And therefore, we wil take our leave of him, making way to entertaine our 4. man of Greece.

Leobulus, who was also one of the scauen Sages, was borne in Landos, a City in the Isle of Rhodes; or as some others fay, in Caria, a Towne of Anconia, a Region in Greece; and his Fathers name was Enagoras. This Cleobulus, beside his being a very fingular wife man, was also of very goodly bodily feature, and wonderfully actine of his person: so that eyther, or both these happy blessings togither, made him admired, and effected generally. The loue of learning prevailed in fuch fort with him, that he forfooke his Country, Parents and Friends; trauailing into Egipt, where (in those times) were many goodly and famous Vniuerfities.

He had a Daughter named Cleobolina, that could inuent and write in profe, be. yond ordinary compasse of men or women, and very skilfull thee was befide, in propounding questions of difficult resolution; as this one for an example. A Father had twelve children, and each childe had thirty sonnes, all white by nature, and thirty daughters, sall of them naturally blacke: all Her witty which were immortall, and yet (notwithstanding) were discerned to dye daily. By which Enigma, thee vnderstood the yeare, that hath twelue Moneths, and enery Moneth

thirty dayes and thirty nights.

But come we againe to Cleobulus, who after his returne out of Egipt," deferued fo highly by his learning and judgement, as to be ranked among the feauen Sages of Greece. And many of his learned fayings and fentences, were held as rules and directions for mens lives. Among other, he vsed most of all to say; That Mediocrity Cleobulus his was without compare. And affuredly, thefe on of Mediwords greatly confirmed the faying of octive. Chile, who wold have every man to know himselfe: For if we knew our selues well, and as we ought to do, a meane then in all things would eafily gouerne vs. By this fentence then of Cleobulus, making fuelf precious account of Mediocrity; we may Omne quodell well conclude, that all extremities are vi- nimia vertition cious. As much to fay, when there is too in vitium. much, or too little: whereupon our ancient Philosophers vsed to fay; Beware of

Cleobulus, wife man of Greece, a ma of learning and excellent compolure of body.

woman of rare ingenu

Solon in the

Atiflan Polit. Lib.3.cep.7.

Horace in lib.

1.cap.6.

ceffe is vile. Aistoile attributeth this sentence to wife Bias, and some other to Solon, but be it howfoeuer: Vertue alwayes confifteth in mediocrity: According to the faving of Aristotle Vertuctormenteth it selfe by too much or too little : For vertue is nothing elfe but a mean or mediocritic, confifting betweene two extreamities. Horace appointed in his Discourses, that a meane should be observed in all things. For (faith he) all that goeth before it, or contendeth to come after it keeping neither meane nor mea-Sure; can never be faid to be well accoplished.

An infinite number of examples may

be alleadged to this purpose, especially

concerning the foure principall vertues,

too much, declaring thereby, that all ex-

Approbation by the foure Cardinal Ver tues,& their contraries of opposites.

which are commonly called Cardinall. For Fortitude is lodged betwixt Feare & Boldnes; & Liberality keeps the mid-way betwixt Couctoufnes and Prodigality; as the like may be fayd of other vertues, and humane operations, which ought to gouerne themselves by time and necessity: vet with this charge neuertheleffe, to beware of ouer-much in any. This is a do-Arine conformable to the faying of Hefiodus, oftentimes alledged by reverend E-Heliodus rasmus, commanding all men to obserue Fraimus. Terentius. a measure in their actions. Asmuch maintaineth Plato, Terence, Plautus, and many o-Plautus.

ly; That happy men alwayes follow a meane in their trauells.

And(in this case) the reason is peremptory, for all things are even as nothing, they have their beginning and their end. and so they passe away : Reason then fits them with an apte conclusion, that theyr perfection confifts in the midft of the five Zones or Plages, which girdle round the whole wide Vniuerse; the two extremest are held to be inhabitable : and yet contrarywife, those in the middst are allowed to be most perfect. The Sunne which is held to be Prince of the Planets, is in the midft of the errant or wandring Stars. Among men, the place of honour is in the mid(t, & (indeed)it is hard to make any agreement, except ther be a third to ferue as the means. To conclude, the meane fo much commeded to vs in all things, con-

cernes chiefly Christ, that hee would be

caled the Mediator betwixt God & man.

ther Authors both ancient and moderne,

enery one of them anouching common-

He vsed divers other notable sentences beside, as, Beware of gining thy friend occasion to reprodue thee : shunne the ambushes of by Cleobular thy enemy: Before thou goeft out of thy houfe. remember what thou halt to do: and upon returning home, confider what thou halt done: match not in marriage, but with thine equall, for if thou takest a wife of a better house then thine owne thou makest thy selfe a slave to her and her kinred : Pardon the errours of other men, and never be paring of thine owne: The more liberty thou hast , so much the lesse vise make of it : Be not prowde in prosperity, nor faint-hearted in aduer sity. Inure thy selfe to beare the trauerses of fortune patiently. Many other fingular Sentences are attributed Ausministry to Cleobulus, which Ausonius and Diogenes vit.clieb. Laertius haue recorded in their works, affirming withall, that he dyed at the age of feauenty yeares.

Ow it remaineth to speake of Pittacus, of Mittylene, the capitall Citty in the 5. of the Gu Ifle of Lesbos, and at this day called Mity- cian Sign lene, his fathers name being called Hyrradius . He was of fuch learning , wifedome and ingenuitie of spirit, that the Græcians placed him in ranke among the seauen Sages. The loue hee bare to his Countrey, moued him to make warre against the tyrant Meleager (who vsurped thereon) so on the spran that he enforced him to flight. In the war betwixt the Athenians and them of Mitylene, about a field then in controuerficance Athenians was Generall for the Mityleneans, and became Conquerour, and flew Frinenes Generall for the Athenians in the open field. Whereupon, the Athenians quitted vnto Pittacus, the contentious field which they quarrelled for , in regarde of the victorie which hee obtayned against them; and gaue him the government of their Common-wealth, which he ruled worthily the space of ten years, ordayning many good Lawes and Constitutions for the benefit thereof. Which having done he willingly gaue ouer his gouernement, as it was freely put vpon him : and lived vntill hee was feuenty yeares olde, beloued and honoured generally.

His fayings and Sentences are no leffe confiderable, then those of the other Sages, neyther the maner of his life. For first The flender of all, he made fo final account of the dig-nity, gold and riches of Crafus, King of Crofus, and Lydia, that hee would not receive any of all his pompe.

The earth re

puted to be

certaine, bu

de fea moft

ngergine

Worthy Tay

ings vied by Pittacus.

A Table of

gold drawn

pout of the Sesin a Fi-

hims but fent him word, that he had no need of his gold or filuer, because he had already a great deale more, then willings lyne would have. Giving thereby to vor deritand, that hoe was forry for his Brotherefurceffion, which happened to him. because he affected his Brothers better ther his owne welfare. He often faide. that things to como were very difficult to understand and that therewas morning in the world more certain then the earth; and contrariwife, what there was potany corretory in the Seath to which sets in distance sefore shey happen, the better to bun and keepe bim alfe from them. Recourt that with patience, which force cannot commands Hethat knowes not haw to bolda his peace knowes no fit time when he hold heak. In time of properity get thee friends de make proofe of them in adversity ... Noner boost of what show wilt does least thou heaf corned if thou canst not do it. Looke how than art te-wards thy Father Luch shall the children bee to thee. So much for Pittacustatio T Hales, the fixt of the Sages of Greece,

was a Natiue of Miletums A. Citty much renowned in Greece; and for the many vertues abiding in him, deferued well, that the cheefe place among the Sages, should be assigned to him. For in the first place, he was Soueraigne in Geometry, and the first man thee discouered the prinsipall fecrets of Afrology has the courfe of the Sun, the reason of his Belinfes; and likewife of the Moone, and the Equinoctials. In briefe, he brought to light the courfe of the Planets, and many other fe-crets of natural Philosophy, Moreover, he was the cause, that the proud Title of Sages remained to the feuen learned men of Greece, by this accident.

Vpon a day, fundry young men, and friendly companions of Miletum, had bought a draught of certaine Fishermen, having cast foorth their Net into the sea, and thefe young men were to have the benefit, of al to be drawne up at that time. A most admirable case suddenly happened for when the Net was drawing up, they found therein a Table of Golde, beautified and enriched in most costly and sumptuous manner. They which bought the draught, pretended, that the table of gold belonged to them, by their bargaine. The Fishermen (on the contrary) auouched it

to be no file, & that they bought nothing of them but onely all the fifth which shold benaken cland therefore fin that respect) they had no right an all to the Table. A long and great contention grew between shems which to be the fooner ended by full confent on cyther lide they fented the Oracle of Abellos, for a finall resolution must end the on where he, or the divell foreking by controuetie. him, made this, answers by That the Table must be given to the only wife man at Grance Which beeing thus understood, the pedthen Table was fented Thales, as being the wifeft manie Greace. But he was fo modeflichat he fent it to another of the Sages before named (for they were al living authattime) and hee fent it to another to that the Table of gold paffed from hand spinand votill at last it camero Solon who likewife would not enjoy it thus fent is to the Temple of Apolle at Delphos. has Aufonius Callimachus and many other write, that shrough the courtefic yled in the Sages one towards another, the Table thors, concerreturned againe to the hand of Thales, to ning this Hiwhom at first it was presented; and that helent it to the Delphian Oracle Bur bowfoquer those Authors write diverfly concoming this Hultory, yet all doc agree togother in this that Thales was the first ma. to whom the golden Table was fent. (10) Aristotle making mention of Thales, Arifin 3.11b. reciteth many conceited fayings proces. Polit cap. 9. dipp from him especially in his Bookes of Pollicies and manuely one, which he vied Pollicies, and maniely one, which he view be rich when be pleafed, he could be be rich when rich. Whereof he made good and fuffici- he lifted. ent proofe , for forefeeing by Aftrology, that there would be a good feafon for Or lines, and Oyle of Olines (foone after) was likely to be deare; he laid out his monev to buy Olive-Ovle while the feafon ferued, which afterwards hee folde at what rate he pleafed. Not because thereby hee would enrich himselfe; but to make a manifestation, that when he listed he could be rich, confidering what knowledgehe had, both for times of abundance, & likewife of dearth, when they would happen. On a time it came to passe, that as he was gazing vpon the ftars, he fell into a ditch; which an old woman feeing, & comming fallen into a (woon his outcry) to help him, in mocking maner faid to him. Tel me Thales, how darelt

thou presume to foretell of things to come, by

consideration of the Stars, and yet couldst not

The Oracle of Apollo

The Table of gold fent to Thales, as the onely wife man of Greece

30563 aster Bas

ard marel mong Au-

A 6

ditch-was re-

The Sunne, Prince of the

Comparison

of the fiue

The onely cheefe meane . boue all oDiuers wife layings often

"A philolo-

pher & fchol

ler to Philo

Biblius,a Icw

Periander the

laft of the few

uen Sages of

Periander re

pured not to be a philoso-pher, but king of Corinth

borne in A.

lez andria.

fee, what was under thine owne feet upon the ground. And yet notwithstanding he was knowne to be an admirable wife man.He was wont to fay: That over-great affurance and confidence, rows evermore accompanyed with repentance. For many times, fuch as must roo much to others faithfull promiles are faine to pay the debts from which no other caution could prevayle with them . He fayd moreouer ; That the true meanes of lining vertuonfly, is, by not doing fuch things, as we condemne in other men. Being demanded, what was the cafielt

thing in the world to does he answered, To know other mens faults, and none of our owne. He fayd alfo; That few Tyrants lined to be old. Diogenes following the opinion of "Hermippus, fayd; that Thales vied to thanke God for three things (though this Schrence is fathered on Socrates:) First, that he had made him a man, and not a beast. Secondly, that hee had made him a man, and not a woman. Thirdly , that hee was borne a Greeke, and not a Barbarian.

Now we come to speake of Periander, the last of the Gracian Sages, of whom I haue no great matters to relate; because (according to divers authors) he was not in the rancke of the seauen Sages, and yet a man of fingular wit and vnderstanding. Periander was King of Corinth, and the fon of King Ciphilas: the maner of his life being rather tyrannicall, as litting like a Soldiour or Captaine, rather then a Philosopher . And hence it enfued, that Heraclides, and many more befide, efteemed this Periander to be none of the seauen Sages of Greece: but another Periander, who was (indeed) a great Philosopher; and a man highly renowned for vertue. Neuertheleffe, the most voices gave the title of Sage to Periander; for although hee reigned by power at Cerimb : yet notwithstanding, he was so discreet, valiant and of so absolute understanding, that thereby he won the name of Sage among the Greeks.

It was demaunded of him, why he did

Consideration very frequent in his talke, as

declaring therby, that the principall thing

not depart from his tyranny & kingdom? His answere because (quoth he) I may fall into as great when he wold daunger, by willingly leaning my kingnot leave his Kingdome. dome, which none other can dispossesse me of by force. He vied continually many notable Sentences, and had the word

wee should have care of, is, to consider well what affaires we vneettake. The Poer Aufonius, expounding the word confideration, faith; A man Should thinke terme times on any thing, before hee prefume to us semps it. For men (often-times) fall into deration great daungers, through much inconfideration : especially, when they will not be governed by wisedome or councell, but raffily follow the perfusions of For-Persue ((and Perlander) is immortally

but the pleasures of this world are of small continuance. In times of property , be wife and modest of in advertity patient and conftant . Line in such fort , that thou manest eternal me have honour by thy life, and that after thy death, men may account thee happy. Let ancient Lawes and Ordinances be rules for thy governement, inducing no novelties into the Common-wealsh . Profite flould alwayes be accompanyed with good grace and honestie. Performe that chearefully, which thou canst not prevent but cowardly.

Compleate he was in these, and infinite other of the fame nature, which breuity maketh me spare to speake of.

CHAP. XXIIII.

That Sight is the chiefest and principall Sence of all the rest. And of many being blind, who nevertheleffe were men of great honour and renowne.

Ristotle had great reason to of all the other corporeal fen-the emission for the case of the feated fight maine Cittadell, in the high

& most eminent part of the body, whereby we may understand, that it partaketh greatly with fire : by vertue and power whereof, it is placed about all the other fences. Touching hath a terrestrial participatio, for the earth is most touchable The Element and tracable; and of all the Elements, tary quitie Tasting holdeth with Aquositie and humiditie : for, without humidity, a man cannot tafte any thing. As for Smelling, Aristotle attributeth it to fire, faying: Heate is the foundation of odour, and her end confiffeth in vapour, toyned to an Ayre groffe, and full of exhalation . Concerning

partaketh with ayre, which entering into the cares, by found, caufeth hearing; but fight participateth with fire. And although that the Eye were com-

Chap.24.

posed of a moult and waterish bodie, yet notwithstanding, without Fire, it wer not Sight hol-leth more of Fire, possible to have sight : whereby wee may then al the o. perceine, that Sight or Seeing houldeth more of fire, then all the other fenfes doe beside. And because the eye (as Aristotle (aith) doth more present the figures of things to a man, then all the other fenfes: to it is granted, the beginning of contemplation, and knowledge of all things, For Sight the be-ginner of con from fight proceedeth admiration, and the confideration which a man hath by feeing, occasioneth a defire in him, of coming to vertue: So that (by good right) we may call the Eye, the Author and Inuenter of all Arts and Disciplines.

In the prime place, by the Eye, a man

The fingulare confidereth the admirable Architecture

emplation.

ther fenfet.

not attaine to but becomerh better enitru-

and celeritie of the Eye in er operatios

Hearing con Prehendeth

Hearing, euerie one well knoweth, that it king. For, Touching must have one thing or another, to execute her power and office vppon, before thee can expresse her prerogative. Tasting also must needs tarry, for some things answerable to hir pallate. And Smelling requireth fuch a levfure, in receiting an ayre qualified, as may penetrate into her nostrilles : As the like doth Hearing, to comprehend a voice entering into the cares. But Sight only worketh instantly, and presently comprehendeth the images of things prefented to hir in an vnípeakable and gracious manner. For, blowes may bee feene giuen a great way off, and although the found or noyfe of them bee not heard fo foone; yet notwithstanding, there is nothing that can on is, so can conceale fight of the strokes, for they are none of the fodaine and apprehensiue vnto the Eye. And therefore, Seeing furmounteth the other senses, because it extendeth it selfe so farre.

In this respect, by many Histories and

examples reported by Pliny, wee may ea-

fily gather, that Sight hath a farre larger

extent, then all the other fenfes, without

any comparison, or wearying her felfe te-

dioufly, as all the other do. For the Tafte

tireth it selfe by too much feeding. The

cerneth along other fenfes.

benefit recey- of the heavens, & of all the other bodies: by the Eye we discerne their colours and greatnesse, their formes, number, proportion, and measure; their sense motion, & their resting. And although Hearing had some concurrence in this case with Seeing, fo that it might be tearmed a fense of Hearing can- doctrine and of discipline, because men learne vertue by hearing and understanding: yet (for all this) that title appertayneth principally to the fight, as vnto her, that giveth the meanes to the vnderstanding to enquire by the plenitude of things which she heareth, to come to the true knowledge of them; to the end, that this knowledge may afterward be communicated to other. Hereby then we may obferue, that the first four fe or fpring of instruction, commeth from the Sight, who afterward maketh Hearing mistris of the worke, by comprehending those admirable things prelented first to the eies cenfure. Wherein also may be noted, that Hearing can comprehend nothing of it felfe, without vfing the means of another; but the Sight comprehendeth all thinges (as it were) cuen of it felfe.

Moreover, Seeing surpasseth all other fenfes, in swiftnesse and promptitude of her operations; for in an instant, and with no more then a cast of the eye, she perfetardines in all cteth her deffeignes : whereas the other fenfes are long, & laborious in their wor-

Eare is easily offended, by talkative babling. The Smell is trauailed extremely, by continuation of sweete Odors. But Sight folie, hath no fense of paine in her operations. Nor doth the at any time to wearie her felfe, as to close her lids retiredly; but rather, the is never fatisfied with Seeing. In briefe, the excellency of Seeing is fo The name of great, that the name of Seeing is attributed to all the other fenfes, in theyr fenerall buted to the operations. For, men ordinarily fay, Beother fenfes holde the excellencie of this fweete O.

dour a little while; or the Delicacie of this Mulicke; or the rare tafte of this Fruite. The name of Seeing, extendeth it felfe | Seeing extento the operations of the vnderstanding; deth to vnuer for it is an viuall faying; Marke how my intention will come to passe. It is like-

wife fayde in the Gospell, that our Lord and Saujour faw (that is to fay, knew) the Matth, 12,20, thoughts of the Scribes and Pharifees. And verily, among the miracles & workes which our bleffed Saujour did in those vnworthy Countreyes; it is helde for the uir g fight to most especiall and singular, that he gaue the blind must fight to the blind. And therfore ther is no

in their kinds

Christ his gicommended.

labor, wherein our Physitions more glad-

ly study and take paines, then to preserue

I reade of a holy man named Azarias,

turne to speake, he faid; There is nothing

better to comfort the fight, then enuy; because

it will alwayes make the goodes of an other

man feeme greater then they are . This a-

greeth with Ouids faying: Enuy euer thinks

his neighbours Corne, more goodly then his

owne. Notwithstanding, according to

the opinion (almost) of all men, Specta-

cles do greatly serue to defend the fight:

and furely, they were a very good innen-

tion, though the first deuiser neuer knew

I have heard of a great Lord in Spaine,

that would alwaies eate Cherries with his

Spectacles on his nofe; onely to make

them feeme the bigger and more nouri-

thing : but yet this gourmandife was ex-

orbitant. An other Gentleman, beeing

quipt by K. Phillip, because he sed ordina-

rily with Spectacles on his nofe; answe-

red the king, Sir you count it not strange,

that I viency Spectacles in reading a Let-

ter, in which can be no danger at all: why

then do you blame me, because I eat fish

with Spectacles on my nofe, wherein are

fuch an infinite number of bones, as the

very least is able to strangle me, & which

I canot fee without my Spectacles? Spe-

ctacles then ferue to very good purpofe

many times. But to our former purpose

Although Sight is the chiefe guide of

man: vet notwithstanding. I have read of

diuers blind men, who were of no meane

fame and reputation : Nature supplying

their understanding, for whatfoener wan-

ted in their fight. Appins Claudius the great

Orator, highly honored and effectmed of

Cicero and Titus Linius, although hee was

blind; was elected Cenfor at Rome, which

office hee mannaged with fo fingular au-

thority, as he only hindred the peace the

whole Senate had concluded with King

Pyrrhus. Cicero discourseth amply in the

fifth Booke of his Tusculans Questions,

concerning the blindnes of Appius Clau-

due, and of remedies against diseases in

againe concerning Sight.

and maintaine the fight of men.

who being present in a consultation, that 4 Hiftory of diuers Phylitions made before Fredericke Fredericke King of Na King of Naples, concerning the maintaining of mens fight . When it came to his

Of the enuious man.

Spectacles helpe to preferue the

A gluttonous Feeder.

A Gentleman of Spaine alwayes vied his Spectacles at his meales.

Diuers blinde men of great bonour and excellency.

Blinde Appius Claudius, Cenfor of

Ciceroin Tufculan.lib.s.

the eyes.

Antipater of Cyrenaica, and Asclepiades fter hapned to him in his olde age.

Didimus Alexandrinus, may likewise be ranked with them that have gone before, Didimus A who beeing blinde euen from his youth, the famous became (neuerthelesse) a most perfect Logitian, Logitian; studying besides, in all other humane disciplines; and hee made a very notable Commentary vpon the Pfalms of Dauid. Such then, as wee have before spoken of, perceiving themselues to be deprined of their fight, did yet strine and labour to perfourme things memorable, as Necessity is alwayes sayd to bee indu-

felfe, made the world both aftonished &

Caiss Drufus, the most famous Lawyer and Aduocate, was blinde; and yet nea famous law. uertheleffe, his house was continually full yer blinde, & of clients and futers, who rather affected yet wrote a to be guided by his darke wisdome, then nicle. worthy Chro. by their owne eye-fight. Caius Auphidius, a great companion with Cicero in his youth, was Prætor of Rome; and yet left not to opine in the Senate, and all his friends received councell from him, in their very greatest and weightiest affairs. And notwithstanding this blindnes, yet he digested a very notable Chronicle, of his own writing, whereof was made most high cstimation. Diodorus a Stoicall philosopher, was greatly renowned in his Diodorusa darkenes, and for all that imperfection, he who taught could fludy in the night time, & play on Gromety in his viole in the day; nay more, he taught his blindnede Geometry publikely, a matter almost incredible, confidering that it can not be practifed but by the eie.

the Critike Poet, were both of the blind; Antipater and yet bearing their difaster with patient and Asclepi foules, they never gaue over studying ades Critical Philosophy, but therein spent their time to the benifit of many. And when certain Ladies (griculog at his hard fortune) fate weeping by Asclepiades, hee said to them: Forbeare (noble Ladies) because you know not what a pleasure it is to dwell in darknes: they then demanding of him, what profit he received by his blindnes, he replied; I have a boy more now to keep me company then Ihad before. Homer, the Prince of Poets, Homer being was blind alfo, as his name imported; ac- blinde, was cording to the faying of Cicero: neuerthe called the leffe, tis vnknowne when he loft his fight; but true it is (as Owid faith) that this difa-

But that which Democritus did to him-

Democritus the Philoso sher, placke out his owne taineth, that he did it, onely to avoide the

Lica, chiefe Captains and of the Behe-

Chap.25.

Eng Edward of Englands lexandrinus,

fmile at together: For, (as Lucretime and Aulus Gellius do affirme) he pluckt out his owne cics, to injoy the more freedome in his contemplations. But Tertullian (who was an Author worthy of credite) maininordinate appetites of the fleth.

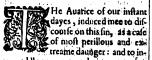
Aboue all other men, subjected to the infelicitie of blindenesse, Zifea the Bohemian deserueth no meane remembrance, who being blind, was chosen chiefe Captaine and Commaunder of the Sea hee professed among the Bohemians; and so well executed his charge, that he obtain ned many victories against his enemies, and carryed himselfe so woorthily in his place, that hee atchieued immortall me-

Belus also, second king of Hungaria, being elected chiefe of the Hungarian army, had his eyes pluckt out by the meanes of King Colomanus, his owne vnckle. Being blinded thus, hee withdrew into Greece, where he made fuch plaine apparance of his manly spirit and wisedome: that king Stephen, fonne to king Colomanu, repealed him, and gaue him in marriage the daughter to the count of Seruia. In which dignity he carried himfelfe with fuch rare integritie, as (after the death of King Seephen) hee was chosen King of Hungaria. And being blinde, reigned nine yeares; during which time he had divers warres, and especially against Broccus, the bastard fonne to King Colomanus; whom yethe vanquished, so that he left the kingdome of Hungaria peaceably to his fonnes.

The last blinde man, whereof wee will speake at this time, was John, King of Bo. bemis, who reigned in the yeare of our Lord 1350. or thereabout. And furely, it is almost myraculous of this Prince, that blinde Zifca should maintaine his Commaunders place so worthily, being Generall of the Behemian army, against Belus then reigning in Hungaria : yet I holdall nothing to blinde John of Bohemia, who had fo much valour (after his owne, vi-Ctories) to fuccour (in perfoh) Phillip king of Praunce, his kinfeman , in his warre a. gain f King Edward of England . For this blind King, euer affected to make one in the field; affifting also the Barle of Flanders, and many French Princes.

CHAP. XXV.

That Anarice or Coneton nelle, is a most enormous vice, and subject to great dangers: With fundry examples of divorte per (ons, who were extreamely conetons.



The reason of interting this

termeddle among my telations, certaine histories of many couctous men, which may ferue as example to other yet living. Defiring all Readers (in the meane while) to confider the estate of a conetous man. with the like cie, as common people doe diligently looke vpon a monfter, which fome Inggler or Mountebancke bringeth into a city, for fingularity & obscription. As entrance then into our discourse it

is to be noted, that Aristotle, Cicero, Thomas Aquinas, and many other Authours Tho-Adults belide, have dwerfly defined what Auarice is; neuertheleffe, we may deriue this resolution from their definitions. That Auarice is an inordinate delire of a mans enriching himfelfe, without sparing part of his goods to any others fo that we may well fay, this vice is excelling in defiring and griping, but very cold and flowe in gining or parting with any thing. Under the cloake of this finne, march a thousand diforders infinite injuffices and abhominations, fheltring themselves there to fafely, as they cannot doe the like in anie of the other vices. For as Fireil faith Execrable famine of gold, is there any vice which thou inducest not into the heart of mans | S. Paul alfo faith : Conetou [neffe or Anarice is the four feor roote of all entitles, banine made many to wander from Faith , which other. wifa would have kept and followed #;

That Avarice is a finne most abhominable, appeareth (ufficiently in this , because it makes a man hated both of God both of God and men, being (of it felle) quite contra- and Men. ry to Charitie: which is such a vertue, as conjoyneth God and men together, even as the opposite sinne maketh a man hatefull voto himselfe. For , the love of our felues is for potted in our hearts, that wee respect not any thing, in regarde of our

Yyy 3

Ariflotle. The definitio

Virgill, his exclamation or Auarice.

Austrice can

Augrice makerh mé care leffe of them felues in getting money, yes and to endanger their bodies and foules.

Men care nei

ther for Pa-

rent, Wife,

themfelnes,fo

they may get riches.

Luke 16.19.

Children, Friend nor

798

felues, louing alwayes our owne profit, more then any others. And yet notwithstanding, Auarice hath gotten such preheminence ouer man, as he cares for nothing but getting money, beeing to for getfull of himfelfe, that hee will nevther care, drinke , nor clothe himfelfe decently; but rather is content to fast, and almost starue himselse, because he will not allow the least leisure from the scraping goods together. Nay, he feareth not to hazard both his foule & body, fo he may be fure to get money; which is a thing repugnant to the Lawe of Nature, who or dained and instructed vs , to affect and maintaine our felues, and contemne all things, before our owne lines. And yet the couetous man cares not to loofe and condemne his owne foule; yea, and abridge his life, which he will endanger in amoment, for the getting of a Crowne.

Vndoubtedly, it is much to be lamented . that a man should not respect himfelfe, nor his parents, wife, children nor friends prouided that he may wallow in wealth and mucke of the world : fuch an one was the Rich man, spoken of in the Gospell. What a miserable and wretched follie is it, to endure hunger, thirst, colde, ill cloathing, and neyther fleep by day or night, but every houre to endanger life, and yer make no vie of golde when it is gotten? It ought, and should ferue for the fustentation of life , and to that end riches were ordayned. Obserue the words of our bleffed Sanjour: What auxylesh it a man to winne the whole world. and loofe his life, that is, his foule? Surely, Pans of opinion other this happeneth by the Divine permission, cashing such couerous men inco a reprobate fenfe, to the end they may did in that auaritious will and defire: Sonfueron : cital ?

And yet notwith handing God often remitteth that wealth for aped together by fuch toyle and trauaile : shall fall into the hards of othery to scatter as prodigally, as it was gotten wickedly, and won-derfully spaning this is that whereof Salamon focukerhin his Ecclofinites : Such as brape up riches, solven by this wife, leane them for other collends Forstan that thing bee good for an other, which is call in him who hath is a Tauenall allo voon the very fame words freakerh thus " Some doe e nine and make profit out of to maintaine sheir

life; and there are others, who line not but to game. In briefe, this wicked vice doth fo capeinate a many that it robbes him of all love and respect to himselfe: so that there is not any wickednesse in this world, but it may well bee expected in a concrous

" *Dion the Philosopher faid: Auarice is the head of all wickednesse. Euripides faith, pherof Bo. An ambitions & conetous Indge, can neither Tyfthenes. thinke or defire any just thing . Saint Augustine faith; who focuer (uffereth himfelfe Auginto he to be governed by Avarice , becommeth fub lib Arbit 144 iect to all vice: and wickednesse . And this is conformable to good reason. For the conetous man (by Auarice) becommeth a tempter, periured, an euill payer, an vfurer, a deceiner, a traytor, a turne-taile, a thiefe, a tyrant, and an idolater : fo that it is not possible, that a couetous man should have any good being; neyther as Lord nor vaffaile, gouernour nor subiect, father nor fonne, nor friend or coufine, and in the end, neuer doth good, execpt when he dyeth.

* Lucillius fayd . An auaritious man is good to no bodie, because he is wicked to him Selfe . Democritus maintained; That ex- liunginlutreame Auarice, is worfe then extreame Pouertie . Aristotle in the first Booke of his Politickes faith; Defire to become rich neuer 101.144. bath ending ; and therefore riches ferme as ponertie to a conetous man : because hee dare not rufe them, for feare of empayring his efate. The Stoickes had a faying , That withes and necessite came not of powertie, but of of the Stock aboundance: for, the more that a man hath, concerning without To much the more needy is he. Concluding, It is good to have a little, because at no time to be needie . Plato gaue this councell to a couetous man, to become rich indeed, hee should not encrease his wealth, but rather decrease his anarice or conerousneffer the years

All these notable Sentences before rentembred, are intirely conformable to Sentencerd she facred Scriptures, who declare; That touching to the eyes of a conetous man are infatiate . Sa- uctoufielle. boson allo faith in Ecclesiastions A conetons man is never fat is fied with money : And that who focuer additteth his mind pariches, that mouer entry them . Saint Augustine compareth the concrous man to hell, which dishes up can neuer be glutted enough and neuer faith it hath sufficient, although it hath beene fo long time in filling. Euen fo, the

concerning and other cre be auariciou

Augustine

greedy couctous man is neuer fatisfied, but the more he gaineth, the more he gapeth still after gayne; thinking himselfe poorer and poorer. Saint Ierome fayth: The conctous man is so needle of that which bee bath, as if hee had it not at all. And alwayes his anarice encreaseth, as fire doth, being continually fed with dry wood. As much or rather more, have many other holie men fayd; all in veter detestation of this damnable finne.

Neuerthelesse, because I will no longer weary the Reader . I shall conclude this poynt with the faying of Saint Augu-Stine : How strangely insatiable is this desire in men? Other creatures have their appetites limited: for they hunt when they are hunory. and being satusted, they leave their prey. But bee that conetetb the riches of this world, is insatiable : for hee seeketh and hoordeth wp daily, taking wealth from all hands, without fearing, eyther God or men; Hee knoweth neyther father nor mother; he maketh no account of his brethren, or any friends of his; hee neuer careth for keeping his word : Hee oppresseth Widdowes, robbeth Orphants, and and ferues his turne with free-men, even as if they were flanes : He is commonly a falfe witnes, and cares not how hee engroffeth up dead mens goods: Are not thefe commendabla analities in a conetous man? Let vs flic then from this accurred vice, which (ouer & beside the former notes of wickednes) is incurable (according vnto the faying of Aristotle) for it encreasesh with age : fo

To thunne one falling into this flauith fin, I will alleadge fome examples of wicked couetous men, among whom, ludas Ifcariot marcheth in the first rancke; he being an Apostle and Disciple of Christ Iclus, was to subjected to Avarice: that he would robbe the money from the rest of his fellowes and companions, by bearing the bagge, and having the money in his owne possession. This wicked passion had fo farre blinded him, that he accounthe total country mind and the second the precious Oynment to bee loft, whitewith Mary Magdaler shayned the fewer of our bleffed Sautour. For, if the Oynment had been folde, the would hauestolne part of the price. In the end, he was fo ftrangely led by this finne, that (formoney) he folde his Lord and Maifter. This onely example were sufficient

that Auarice is in his full reigne, when bodi-

ly strength fayleth in man.

to approoue whatfocuer hath beene faid concerning conetonines: neuertheleffest am content to report fome other, among which, Tiberius Cafar Emperour of Rome is the formost man; and questionlesse, there is no other vice in the world, better the Romane to be exampled in the Romain Emperors, then this of Augrice.

This Prince, among other his notorious vices, (whereto hee was very cafily mooued) was fo subject to penurious gri- far, who co ping, and pinching, that although he was uctoufly pur his own heire Lord of the whole world i yet notwithstanding, he put to death Cnaus Lentulus enioy his re-(whom he had instituted to be his heire) onely to enjoy his wealth. As much did he to the King of the Parthians, who did come to line with him under his fafeconduct; onely to possesse himselfe of the riches and treasure, belonging to the simply abused Prince. He so heavily charged the poore with taxes and toules, that they were enforced to forfake their countries, in such fort; that the Citties and Townes remayned defert and vn-inhabitable. In the end, purfuing on still his vn- He was found fatiable inclination : Caligula fmothered Galigula him betweene two pillowes, and so hee

Domitian the Emperout was more co uetous then het And the Emperor Commodus (therein) exceeded them both for he (ordinarily) vied to make port-fale of iustice : and therefore heuten iustly permitted them to be stabd to death by Ponyards . Achelous King of Lydis , was fo Achelous, ouercome with concroushesse, that hee could not be contented with his Crowne lands, and very large ordinary renenews; but layd (belide) fuch taxes and impositions vpon his fubicets, that they arole in Armes agains him , and having taken him, murdered him most miferably, and (afterwards) hong him up by the heeles! Pontanus maketh mention of a Cardinal who was fo extraordinarily muaritions; as treme couethe would often difguise himselfe like vitto ous Cardinall a poore groonie or flatte, and ficale away the proughder from before his owner hore fes. Horace faith, that there was a man in Rome, named Ouid, who was fo about? Awterclad dantly rich in money, that he could mea! and mifrepla fure his gold and Silver by many buffield couctous man and yet notwithstanding, hee would goe Rarke naked ; and neuer did eate halfe fo much as would fuffice-him; as fearing

Example of in divers of

Tiberius Cx to death to

Domitian and Commodus, two extreme

A most ex-

The niggard Oftentimes gets goods toprodigall to fpend varihrif-tily

Ecclel 7.3

8 Booke

Of great Policies prevented.

801

Or Pigmalion, as fome writers call

Poliftus, King of Troy.

most wretchedly all his life time. Many other might be spoken off, too much addicted to this detestable sinne, as Primaleon, the brother to Dide, who flew his coufine, onely to enjoy his riches. Polist walfo, King of Troy, who put to death one of King Priams fonnes, being fent to honour him in his Court: but fuch prolixity of examples may prooue offenfine. We will content our felues then, to know how we ought to shunne this sin, which is the occasion of infinite cuils: and so much the rather; because men are continuallie more enclined to Auarice, then to Liberality.

still least he should fall into pouerry, lived

CHAP. XXVI.

A verie singular reason, delivered by Phausrinus the Philosopher concerning Astrologers; that it is not good to demand any Question of them, having relation unto future matters.

Emore doubtfull in the act of

judiciall Aftrologie, which

Indicial A-firology con-tinually mif-

discourseth of shinges to come, and accidents happening to men, as wel in particular, as generally throughout the world some condemning it, and veterly reichting it; others approquing it in part : some beside maintaining it by strong reasons, and by experience. Moreoner, there are store of booker, which I could produce here, as warrantable prefidents : but I mean not way that to troble my felfer, although I have fludied fufficiently in that part of Astrology, which difcourfeth on the course and motion of the

Beging willing then, not to touch the honour and reputation of any person ... I will onely alledge, what the Philosopher Phanatinus laide, according as Aulus Gallim relateth. He being defirous to retreat and turne mens mindes, from repoling any truffin Aftrologers, Caldeans, or Mathematitians, concerning the knowledge of things to come : vied a reason very in-

genious and acute, speaking in this manner, and as himfelfe hath fette downe the

Be well adulfed, that thou give no credite to Afrologers, in any manner what soeuer: Physicians For, although they tell thee true, that which spaint coals they fay, will be either good or ill for thee; and dence in the being good, it must be truth, or a lye. If it be strologet. trueth thou mailt receive double damage by knowing it : for first of all thy desireruns into further paine and tranaile, what good therby shall happen to thee, and how soon. Secondly a good or benefite to come (whereof thou hast thus received inselligence) is alwaies reckoned the leffe, because it cannot bee so complease, as if thow wert possessed thereof instantly. If it be a tye, thon expect est in vain, the benefite which the Astrologer promised thee, in regard it hall never come onto thee. What if that which the Astrologer foretolde thee, is ill and burtfull for thee? Being enil & certaine ; what more great difgrace can happen to thee, then to be possest of an enill turne, which thou must embrace, and is out of thy power to shunne or anoide? If it be a lye, who (bould a man be afflicted, or driven into sadneffe, by feare of a mischeese that shall never come neere him? Be it therefore in what forte focuer, it is not good to enquire after future Vr Ancient, yez, and more moderne writers, were euer

For mine owne part, I finde the counfel of this Philosopher to be so good, that I hold it agreeable vnto the holy Gospell, the Philoso which fayeth: It is not for vs to know times, seasons nor moments.

CHAP. XXVII.

Divers examples of fundry accidents whereby great plots and designements of great Politickes, have bene distipated and overshrowne. Alfo, concerning Policies, the (for a time) have beene profitable, and yet in the end have proved pernitions.

E E reade in Plutarch, that the people of Sicily (beging oppressed with divers Ty-Trants) craved affiltance of the Corinthians, who fent

them (for their fuccoun) a Captaine of theirs called Timoleon, a man famous, not

kon, ouerthrowne by a frange acci

ferue the lines

of vertuous

Muriher is a

in fo heinou

that often it

is revenge d

Chap.27.

had (within a while) fuch good fuccesse, that the Tyrants despairing of ability eyther to ouercome him, or to defend them felues by force against him : One of them (being named Icetes) Subborned a couple of desperate companions to kill him. And they perswading themselves, that it might best be done, as he should bee facrificing to his Goddes; watched on opportunitie for that purpose, and finding him one day in the Temple, ready to facrifice; they drew neere him, to execute their intent. But as they were readie to strike him, one of the standers by (who suspected nothing of their intention) vppon a fodaine, gaue one of the Conspiratours such a mortall wound, that he fell downe deade in the Thefeare the place. The other (feeing his fellow flain, minist of hea and thinking that the confpiracy was difun, to pre- couered) fled into the Alrare, and taking hold thereof, craued pardon of the Gods and Timoleon, promifing, that (if he wold faue his life) hee would discouer all the practife.

morall vertue and piety. This Timoleon

In the meane time, hee that had killed the other Conspiratour, being fled; was taken and brought back, calling God and Man to witnes, that he had done nothing but a most just and lawfull acte, in killing him that had flaine his Father. Which being knowne to some that were present, and testified by them to be true; filled all the affiliants with admitation of Gods prouidence; who by fuch a fodgine and vnexpected accident had not onely ouerthrowne the pernitions plor, and defignement of the wicked Tyrant, and preferred Timoleon, but also had executed his justice on a murtherer.

Heereupon, Plutarch maketh a, notaof Fortune ac-Proclus in Com.

The definitio ble discourse of Fortune, following the opinion of the Platonists, concerning the same (which they define to bee Demoniacum potestatem, &c. An Angelicall power, connecting divers and different causes, to produce some effect.) And therfore, he nomen in Time. teth in this History, how the good Angel of Timoleon, did (for his preservation) affemble, and (as it were) chaine things together, that had no coherence of themfelues, making one of them to be the beginning of another. For, although the murther of his Father that flew the Con-

onely for Militarie discipline; but also for | spiracie against Timeleon; yet, neither that murther had bene reuenged, if this Conspiracy had not followed; nor this Conspiracy had beene discouered and ouerthrowne, but by occasion of that murther committed long before. Thus difcourfeth Plutarch vpon this accident; which beth the prealthough he referred to Fortune (fpeaking fernation of thereof, according to the opinion of the Timoleon, to Platonists) yet he alcribed it principally to of God, by the the providence of God, who by the mini- meanes of his stery of his good Angell', protected and preferued his fernant Timoleon, in refpect of his great piety and denotion: and this becing well understoode, is no way repugnant vnto Christian Catholike Do-Ctrine.

> Burto come to examples neerer our Phil com. c. 88 time, Charles Duke of Burgundie, beeing -at Warre with Lewes the cleuenth, King Another exof France, had (for his Confederates) the defiguement Dukes of Guienne and Britany, whereof of Charles D. the first was the Kinges owne Brother, of Burgundy, ouerthrowne And having beene (in former time) twice by a chance. deceined by the faid King, with falfe treaties, and now defirous to quite him with the like; offered him to abandon his two Confederates, vpon condition: That he would reftore vnto him certaine Towner, which he had of his voon the Frontiers'. Advertifing his Confederats (in the mean time) that his meaning was not to forfake them, of to keepe any Couchant with the King; but onely to recouer his owner and then to delude him, as he had bene before deluded by him.

The King (fuspeding no deceit)accorded to the conditions and fent his Ambafadors to Duke Charls to take his oath for performance of the Couenantes on his part. The Duke sware, of rather forsware himselfe (promising vppon his Oath that which he meant not to performe) & then fent his Ambassadors in like manner vinto the King, to take his oath! In the meane time, before the Ambassadours arrived Afalle Oath where the King was, it pleased God so to requited by a dispose, that the Duke of Guienne the kings | Confederates Brother, and Confederate to Charle, dy- death. ed. Which the King understanding, and feeing himfelfe already delinered (by his Brothers death) of the daunger of Civill Warre, which he most feared: refused to fweare, and stand to his couenants. And fo, all the crafty deuice and fubtle plot of spirator, had no connexion with this con- Charls was ouerthrowne, by the sodaine

Plutarch aferi

Aid Gel, in At

The Authou

himfelte a ftu

dent in Aftro

logie

The ouerthrow of Cz far Borgia (Machiauels mirrour for a Prince) by a fodain chance

Gwein Lib.6

Borgia the

great politici

Heereto I wil adde Cafar Borgia, Duke of Valencia; whome Machianell to highly admireth, that he proposeth him for a paterne or example to his Prince. This Cafar, being become exceeding tich and potent, by the helpe and Authority of Alexander the fixt, his Father; and fearing nothing so much as his Fathers death, wherby it might chance, that some enemie of his might be chosen to succeede him; ftodied and laboured by all meanes possible to preuent that inconvenience, & to procure, that the election of his Fathers fucceffour, might fall into the power of himfelfe and his friends. Which when hee had provided fufficiently, as he thought; it chanced by fuch meanes as I will de-

accident of his confederates death, which |

he neuer dreamed of; and he himfelfe for-

(worne for nothing.

ed; but he fell likewise so extremely sicke at that time, that hee could execute nothing of that which hee had before refolan preuented ued. Whereby it came to passe (Godso disposing in his just judgement) that an enemy of his fathers and his (being chosen to fucceede) he was within a while vtterly onerthrowne. In which respect, he himfelfe was wont afterward to confesse, and lament the imbecility of mans write, because when hee thought, that he had forescene all inconveniences, which might happen to him by his Fathers death, and provided to prevent them : hee never fo much as imagined, that he should bee so ficke at the fame time, that he should not

After a while, not onely his Father di-

execution. And herein is also to be noted, for further proofe of the matter in hand, that he himfelfe was the cause, aswell of his owne fickneffe, as of his fathers death, and (confequently) of his owne ouerthrowe, by a wonderfull chance, which happed contrary to his expectation. For having inuited his Father, and Cardinall Cornetti to a Vineyard, with intent to poyfon the Cardinall, to the end to inherit his goods; hee re-commended a certaine Bottle of impoisoned wine, to a trusty servant of his, with speciall charge to keepe it safe, and give it to none without his expresse order. But it so fell out, by his feruants negligence (or rather by Gods.iustice)

be able to put any of his designements in

that as the Pfalmift faith; Incidit in foucam quam fecit : He fell into the pit himfelfe, that Pfalme 7,16. he had made for other. For his Father, coming into supper very hot and thirsty, by reason of the great heates, and calling for wine; the feruant that had charge of the Bottle (not knowing it was poyfoned; but imagining onely, that it was fome especiall wine, more precious then the refidue) & not having any other ready (because the prouision was not brought from the Pallace) gaue him of that wine, whereof not onely he but his fon Borgia dranke. And being both poyloned therewith, the Father (who was old and weake) died prefently: but the Sonne being young, and more able to resist the force of the poifon; had time to take great and potent remedies, whereby (after a long and dangerous ficknesse) he hardly escaped. Thus was his bloodye plot and pernitious purpote preuented, by an accident which he neuer minded.

But let vs come now to an example in our Countrey of England, which manie the Duked yet may well remember. The Lord John Northumber Dudley, Earle of Warwick, and after Duke land, against the Lady Ma. of Northumberland, in the time of K. Ed-ry, elderland ward the fixte, meaning to advance himfelfe and his Family; married the Lorde ry the eight. Guilford Dudley (his fourth fonne) to the John Stowia Lady lane, daughter to the Duke of Suf. folke; pretending to make her Queene after King Edward, in prejudice of the Lady Mary, daughter to King Henry the 8. and eldeft fifter to the fayd King Edward. For, by reason of the Kings lingering sicknesse, he had time to vse all the meanes, which he thought convenient for the accomplishing of his desire. And therfore partly for friendship, and partly for feare, hee had heerein so farre prevailed, that therefeemed to want nothing for affurace of his intention : but only to haue the Ladie Mary in his hands; whome therefore hee procured the Councell to fend for in the Kings name; vpon pretence, that she should come to comfort the king, whereto the obeyed, not suspecting any finister meaning in the Duke.

But as the was voon the way, and formwhat necre to London; before the fell into the snare prepared for her, it pleased God, that thee received advice of the wardsher, by Dukes designement, from one of his own one of his counfell: wherupon the returned fodain- owne counce

ued at her owne house, she had newes of the King her Brothers death . And although the was destitute of men, money, counfell, and all other meanes to enable her, wherby to refift fo great an aduorary as the Duke (who was not meanly proud ded) yet fuch was her trust in God, as also the inflice and right of her canfe that the prouided her housholde servants to proclaime her Queene prefently in the countrey Townes thereabout. Whereupon, first the common people of the countries adioyning, and (afterward) divers Genclemen of account repaired vnto her in & great a number : that the Duke of Work thumberland and the Councell (who had already proclaimed the Lady Jane in London, and in divers parts) thought it conuenient to leuv forces, and to make a rovall Army, whereof the Duke himlelfo (for the authority of his person) was Geno-

The Duke then presently put himselfe into the fielde, leaving the charge of the Citty & Tower of London to the Lords of the Councell: who, vpon his absence. and vnderstanding the great concourse of people, to the affiftance of the Ladie Mary, and the equity of her cause infilie confidered : they agreed amongst themfelues, to proclaim her in London, as prefently they did, and committed to prifon the Lady Jane. Then fent they order to apprehend the Duke, who was fo diffnayed therewith when he understood it; that he vecerly loft his high and hopefull courage; and being taken prisoner at or nere Cambridge, was brought to London, and there afterward executed.

By thefe examples, and infinite others which might bee alledged, it is verie euident, that there is no furety in the plottes. and contriuings of men, be they never fo wife, except they be guided by the Spirit of God particularly. For, when they have built (as a man may fay) Towers of policy, as high as the Tower of Babel: a fodaine blast of an accident vnexpected, shall cast them downe to the very grounde, to the confusion (many times) and ruine of the builders and contriners.

But what shall we say of counselles and policies, that feeme not only to be grounded upon great reason, and contrined al fo with as great prudence; but also suc-

ly, and within a while after, that the arti- | ecede (for fome time) norably well. & yet in the end proue to be pernitious? When The Romane of we haue seene sufficient experience in thrown by the the Romane Empire, which was querthrowen in course of time, by that (which for many yeares) feemed to bee the ftrength and fecurity thereof. For whereas the first Romane Emperors, having oppressed the Common wealth by Azmes, perfineded therefelues, that their feate was to bee & stablished and conferred, by the selfesame meanes as it was gotten, and therefore refolued, that the fafety thereof, & of they persons, confisted in strong Guards, garrifons, Legions, and Armies of foldiers, to be distributed throughout all the parts of their Dominions : it is euident that the fame was (in the end) one of the principall and cheefels causes, of the Empyres verer ouerthrow, though (at the first) it feemed greatly to establish and affure the fame.

For, after the death of Nero (when the Family of the Calars was ended) not one- The factions ly the Guards deputed for the custody & sletion of fafegard of the Emperors persons, called guards and ar-Pretoriam milites; but alfo the Legions & mies of foldi-Armies, disposed and placed in diverse ours. quarters of the Empire (feeing as wel the porsonnes of the Emperours, as also the firength of the Empire in their own hads) did arrogate vnto themfelues fuch authority and liberty to chuse new Emperors: that they fet them vppe, and pulled them Suetonius downe at their pleafure. Wherby in leffe Platarch. then one yeare after Neroes death, foure Emperors, Galba, Otho, Vitellius, and Vepaffan, were chosen by the Guardes, who forced the Senate to admit and confirme them. And their infolency grewe to fuch extremity in time, that after the death of Elius Spartan the Emperor Pertinax (whom they killed) they made offer of the empire (by publike proclamation) to wholoeuer would give

most for it. And whereas there was but onely two that offered money for it, Sulpitianus, and field to luch at Didius Iulianus; they gaue it to the latter, would give partly because he gaue them ready mony, most money and partly because Sulpitianus was Father in Law to Pertinax, whom they had flain. And, whilest not onely the Emperours guards, but also the soldiours of every army tooks voon them to make Emperors: it fell out fometimes, that there were as many Emperors chofen at once, as there

fame meanes

Cafar Borgia thinking to poilon another poisoned

ther & humfelf

The wealth

Trebel Pollie in triginta tyvání

were divers Armies in the Empire. Infomuch, that in the time of Gales and Valerian, there were no leffe then thirtie Emperous declared in fundry places, within the fluce of fifteene years : Whereup-

The ruine o many Emperors by their owne Guatds

Suetonius. Iul. Capitolinus Elius Lamprid Trebel, Pollio. Flanius vopifiu

pon it followed, that the Empire (beeing pittifully rent and torne with ritill warre) was fo weakened, that it became a prey to the Gothes, Vandides, Alans, Hannes, Lom bardes, and such other batbarous Natior Thus was the Romane Empire ouershowne, by the fame meanes, that were

not only ordained to conferue and maineamout : but alfordid indeede (fot a time) preferue it from many dangers, both domesticall and forraine, to wit as well from inuation of formino enemics, asfrom rebellions of Subjects: which by the Emperours Guards, and the ordinary Legions, dispersed through all parts of the empire; were either easily preuented, or speedily repressed. For which cause, the Emperors themselves were content; to stand(15 it were) at their mercy, to the end that they might (by them) rule and command others; which although to some it was a fafegard and fecurity, yet to manie more it brought ruine and perdition; as to Caligula, Pertinax, Caracalla, Heliogabalus, Pupienus, Balbinus Galien. Severus, Macrinus, Aurelianus, Iulius Maximinus, Probus, With diversother; fome of them being flaine by their owne Guards, and some by their Soldiers,

This inconvenience, the Emperors of Turkes doe feeke to remedy, in their Tyrannicall Dominion (which they also vphold by force, as the Romans did, thogh with leffe danger.) For, although they have about three hundred thousad horse, and foote euer in readinesse, under theyr Golonels and Captaines, in Europe, Asia, and Affrica: yet they keepe them alwayes fundered, and farre difperfed, that they neuer come together in any number, vnleffethey are to be imployed in some forraine Warre. Neuerthelesse; theyr Guardes of Ianizaries, which they have alwaits neere about them, for the fecurity of their persons, to the number of thirteene or fourescene thousand, have proued (many times) no lesse dammageable, then dangerous to their States. For they have not onely fometime fet the younger Brother against the elder, and holpe the

fonne to depose the father : but also (cuer in our Ago), i him etaken the most confi- Paullain, dene Officers and greatelt favorites of the Turke from him by force and imote off | va.z. sheir heades; and compelled him to pardoubliem wearand to gine them whatfacuer they would demaund; to appeale them. I in flury and saw them to thest

oul Myhercuppeniowo donfiderations may be gathered; the one, the infelicitie flaut to he of Tyrants; who while they feek rather to by whom he be feared, then louingly affected: are for oed to make themselves subjects & flaves to those, by whome they kneps other in Subjection and Sauery. Whereby wellet, how true it is which Soneca faith; Qued alienometà magnum est, suo non vacat. That which is great by others feare, is not voide of feare in in selfer. The other consideration, from and is, how tickle the state of Princes is, how weake their policies, how yncertaine the ces, without successe of their plots; and consequently, how needfull it is for them, to crave and haue the especiall protection of Almighty God, in all their delignements and a-Gions ; feeing the meanes, whereby they labour to preserve themselves from dangers, proue many times more dangerous in the end, then the dangers themselves. which they feeke to auoid.

This may further appeare, by the policie which Rodericke King of Spaine vied, Roderiche to affure his state against the children and friends of King Vitiza, whom hee had de- through posed. For fearing lest his subjects might owne put rebell in their fauour he dismantled al the frong holds and places in Spaine, and difarmed the people. Whereby, though hee ftrengthned his state, in regard of domeflical danger; yet he weakned it in refpect offorraine attempts. Infomuch, that the Moores invading him shortly after, and ouerthrowing him in battel found fo flender resistance afterward, that in seauen or eight moneths, they conquered almost al Spaine.

The like also may be saide of the Brittaines, to whom their owne policie proo- last ver ued most pernitious; for, being mollested incom, as by the Picts and Scottes; they called in the Sarons for their defence, who (for fome 16) 149.14 time) ferued them to good purpofe; but in the end, they conquered them & their

In like manner, the Queene of Hungarie thought it good pollicie, to procure

of policies to the devilers

worft kindes

No policie prevaileth a gainst the wil of heaven,

of the Romaines, brother vnto the Em- bleffed Lord and Saujour was there cruperour Charles, the fifth of that name; and | cified, dead and buried; and that the my-(for a certayne time) thee was releeued fleries and fecrets of our redemption, had and supported thereby : but in the end, Solyman comming into Hungarie, in his riwife, there is not any City in the world, owne person, with a pretence to succour that euer endured so many miseries and her : he depriued both her and her sonne mischiefes, or fell into such flauish setuiof their Kingdome : Also Amurath, one tude, as shee, and as is to be discerned at of Selymans Ancestours, conquered and this day. subdewed the greatest part of all Greece, euen by the very like kinde of meanes and occation.

this was so grosse a follie in Christian Princes (to put confidence and trust in the helpe of such potent and perfidious collect, that it was one of the most po-Infidells) that it is not to bee alleadged for an example of pollicie. I graunt that meth losephus, who describeth the three it was follie; but fuch kindes of follie walles wherewith it was ingirt : which nemay bee committed and doone, euen by uertheleffe were adorned with goodly the wifest Princes and their councells, when Almightie GOD will punish and rare; besides the excellencie of the Tentafflict them. For, hee eyther taketh from ple, a thing beyond all compaffe of comthem their polliticke wittes, to the end parison. All which considerd, I thought they may erreand precipitate themselves: it not vn necessary, to make some briefe or, hee ouerthroweth their wifest designements, by fuch kinde of meanes as they cannot imagine : or elfe, he doth bring thereto (as well good as euill) by a fumthem to fuch exigents, that they are forced (fometimes) wittingly, to take in hand some daungerous and desperate refolution, whereby they are difgraced and ruined.

CHAP. XXVIII.

¶ Abriefe Discourse concerning the first foundation of Ierusalem, What fortunes (from time to time) befell thereto : And of the Kings that there did reigne.

Euer was there any Towne or Cittie (of what estate or condition foeuer) that had o many especiall graces and priuiledges from Almightie

God, nor euer had fuch store of facred mysteries therein persourmed, as in the rome is of the opinion, that it had the filem.

the ayde and assistannce of Solyman the Cittie of Ierusalem: although it had not Great Turke, against Ferdinando King had that (onely chiefe) note, that our not beene there accomplished. Contra-

As concerning her riches, and fumpus. ous buildings, no Cittie vpon the earth and fumprucould euer equall them; as Pliny extolleth ous buildings But peraduenture you will fay, that it aboue all the Citties in the East; and Cornelius Tacitus amply describeth the sci- Cor. Tac in tuation thereof: whereby wee may eafily lib. 3.cap. 4. tent Citties in the world . As much affir-Towers, Bulwarkes, and buildings moft report, concerning the first foundation of this Citty, with what fortunes happened marie Collection, of such things as I find recorded in her owne Chronicles.

Ierusalem was scituated and founded, in Concerning the very middeft of Iudea or Iewrie, at the the feating of toppe or knap of Mount Sion; which is plantation of helde or reputed (commonly) to be the middle or centre of the earths superficies. Ezechiel also saith, That it was feated in the middest of Nations. David likewise fayth That the saluation of men was perfected in the middest of the earth. Which Saint Hierome declareth, writing on that passage of Exechiel before specified. Moreover, it is written in Genesis, That Melchisedech Hebr. 7.1.2.3 (which, according to the interpretation of Saint Paul) is as much to fay, as a Just King, or a King of Iustice. Abraham hauing conquered foure Kings, that kept Lot prisoner) mett him and made a sacrifice to God, and that this Prince baptized this Citty of Salom, or (as some say) Salem, which is as much to fay, as Peace:in

regard wherof, he was called King of Peace. Salem then was the first name imposed Salem the vppon this Cittie : although Saint Hie- first name gi-

men to letu-

go in his Otto mas par.1.

Lagero Soran

The Turkes

great Guarde of Ianizaries

his State.

name of Iebus at the beginning. Strabo, Cornelius Tacitus, and many other Authors beside, called it Solima, speaking otherwise of the foundation, then formerly hath beene fayd.

It was also called lebus and lerufalem. Ioseph.Ant. ludea : plis

palace of king Salomone

The opinion of Nicholas,

de Lyra con-

cerning leru-

This Citty likewise was called Iebus and Ierusalem, as wee may reade in the facred Scriptures. Saint Hierome writing to Dardanus, doeth giue it three names: Notwithstanding, it was (in the end) called Aelia, in regarde of the Emperours name Aelim Adrianii. who caused it to bee re-builded and fortified. Saint Hierome fayth, that it had the name of Iebus, in regard of the Iebasites, who had founded it, vntill the time of the holy Prophet

Is septius and Asgesippus say, that Mel-Melchifede 4 chi fedech gave it the name of Jerufalem, called it leruas much to fay , as Vision of peace : making (alem, Vifion of peace. one word of lebus and Salem, fo that lerusalem found it selfe to be composed of

these two wordes, onely by chaunging B. into R.Others fay, that it had the name of Here, that is to fay, Vision : by reafon of the Angell which appeared to braham, when hee would have facrificed his fonne I faack. Some others fay, that it was called Jerusalem, as much to say, as the house of Salordon: in regarde of the admirable The house or buildings which King Salomon erected

there: many other opinions are there vpon this poynt, which I passe ouer lightly because I am of the minde, that as the Icwes called it in their tongue Ierusalem, so did the Greekes and the Latines name it Ierofolima, as wee may reade in Iofephus and Aegesippus, Greeke Authors. Yet, Nicholas de Lyra will not haue it to bee so receyued, because hee sayth, that Ieru-(alem was first called Luca and Bethell: which I can give but little credite vnto; for (according as Saint Hierome fayth) Bethellis twelve miles off from Ierufalem, as wee may see it also auouched by Iofephus. Notwithstanding all these opinions, it is to be noted, that lerufalem (in

many other fuch like Titles, besides her

owne proper and peculiar name, Jeru-

Many partiformer times)had many particular names; cular names which were thereto attributed, in regard giuen to Ieru of the manifolde high mysteries therein accomplished. As, The Holy Citty , The Sacred Cittie; The Cittie of David, and

salem.

But come wee now vnto the Historie. Concerning.
The Bebusites and the Canaanites, who and Canaanites and Canaanites. were one and the same Nation (for Ia- nites the lords bus or lebus, was the fonne of Canaan, and policion the fonne of Can, Nephew to Noah, of whom these Nations tooke their name) were Lordes of Ierusalem, at such time as the Children of Ifraell (deliuered from the Captiuity of Egipt) possessed themselves of Palestine and Sudea. And it came to passe, that in the division for partage, which the twelve Tribes of Ifraell made of the Land promised vnto them: Ierufalem fell into the portion of Ierufalen [4] the Tribe of Beniamin. Neuerthelesse, Beniaming because this Tribe of Bentamin (notwith- the division. standing all their aduentures in Armes) could not wholly cleare the Country of the lebufites: they were constrained to let them live there among them, for more then three hundred and feauenty yeares after, even to the time of Danid. Hee beeing both a Prophet and King, and descended of the Tribe of Inda; ex- expelled the pulfing the lebufites, wonne their Fortresses from them, building them new lose, in An againe; and erected there a goodly Pal- Indlib.184 lace, as wee may reade in the Booke of Kings, and also in Tofephius. David hauing thus expelled the Ichufites, called lerusalem. The Citty of God, creating it to be the chiefe and Capitall Citty in all

During the Reigne of King David, Arusalem was in her triumphing iollity, and highly renowned among all the Nations, in regarde of the great victoryes which David obtayned: after whose death, wife Salomon fucceeded him. And Salomon fue although this King laboured to line in ceeded his fapeace, yet Ierusalem ftill encreased in ther Danid. fame, riches and sumptuous buildings: for Salomon enlarged the walles thereof, and erected there goodly fortifications. Hee builded many other costly Castles beside: but especially the Temple, so greatly renowned, in regard of the treafure and arteficiall cunning bestowed thereon, as neuer could any other building be compared therewith. For, as Infep. in Au we may reade in holy Scripture, and alfo in Iofephus, the Furniture thereto belonging, was infinite and incomprehensible. So that the very fame thereof, incited the Queene of Saba to vilite of Saba view et ding Sabamon King Salomon.

Many Kings likewise sent him choyse Presents to the same effect, Gold, Silver, and Treasure, which they brought to him by fea, and in fuch abundance, as no more account was made thereof, then as stones in the streete.

This King neuerthelesse, forgetting the great bleffings which God had bestowed vpon him; became an Idolater, to that God fuffered hiskingdome to be divided

Hauing reigned forty yeares, Rehoboam

his fonne succeeded him, against whom

ten of the Tribes revolted, who elected le-

roboam to be their King. Rehoboam had the

but two of the Tribes onely, to wit, Iuda

and Beniamin, whereupon he fortified his

Citties: and afterward, this Kingdome re-

maining to his fuccessours, began to take

and continue the name of lewes, because

of the Tribe of Iuda. Ieroboam and his fuc-

ceffors, called themselues Kings of Israel,

and chose Samaria to bee the chiefe Citty

of that Kingdome: and by this division,

thole Kings were alwayes at continuall

warre, each against other. Notwithstan-

ding, although Rehoboam had but two of

the Tribes subject to him, yet his reputati-

on was fo great (because hee was descen-

ded of Dauid) that euermore hee prenai-

led in fight, and was much more feared

and obeyed, then the King of Ifraell, fo

that Ierusalem became not a jote dimini-

thed, eyther in strength or riches. But

when the Kings of Iuda and their people,

grew offensive to God by Idolatry: then

this goodly Citty suffered many miseries

his Townes and Cities, and they flourish-

ing in all pompe and prosperity; hee not-

withstanding, fell to Idolatry, as we may

reade in the holy Chronicles, and like-

wife in Iosephus. In regard whereof, God

raifed vp against him, Sufac or Shifhack,

lesse number of Infantery, belonging to

the Egiptians, Ethiopians, Troglodites, with

many Lybians, which came from Guynea,

to his feruice. Boldly they entred into

1eru falem, facked the Citty and the Tem-

Treasures, as is to be observed in his chro-

Rehobeam having strongly defenced

and calamities.

after his death.

Chap.28.

The kingdom and the king dome of Itra-

thriued in all his attempts, being defeen-ded of David

kdypby God King of Egipt, who came and conered his gainst Reho. Country with twelve hundred Chariots, 1 Reg. 14,3. threescore thousand horse, and a count-

Shifhack rei-

The first facking and spoy-ling of leru-salem, in the dayes of Re-hobosm.

anger of God being appealed; Rehoboam remained peaceably in his Kingdome, all the remainder of his life; and being dead, Abias succeeded him, who over-came terobeam King of Ifrael; in which conquest were flaine fifty thousand men belonging to Ieroboam.

After the death of Abias, who lived After Abias, but a while (being also an Idolator; and succeeded A yet God permitted him to haue this victory, in confideration of David his grand- Prince. father) Afasucceeded him. This Prince was good, inft, and feared God, and therefore he gaue him many great and figuall victories, against Zarab, King of Ethiopia: who had entred to farre upon his Country, that he kept lerufalem besiedged. In his time, the Ki gdome of Inda was fo A goodly muflourishing, that (vpon an account made) | fler or min there were found fine hundred and fourescore thousand men, able to beare Arms. I finde also in the facred Scripture, that this King builded and fortified many Cit-

Hee being deceaffed, Tehofophat his

fonnecame to the Crowne, during whose Reigne, Ierusalem was in great reputati- letusalem bleffed with on : chiefely in respect of Prophets, as many famous Abias, Micheas, Ofias, Elias and Elifens, Prophets. who were all then at that time. This King found such fauour in the fight of God (according as wee reade in the holy Chronicles of the Kings) that the Moabites, Ammonites, and the Mountaincers of Seir (being gathered together, with an infinite number of people, to runne vpon this Prince) God fent a diffention among A mighty arthem, that they connerted thence, and by Godspro. employed their powers to fpoyle them- uidence. felues, fo that without flriking a ftroake, King lehosaphat returned with great triumph to Ierufalem. Where having reigned peaceably, and in no meane power; he dyed, leaving the Kingdome vnto Joram his fonne, giving also to his other Children, divers Citties, with great fummes of gold and filuer.

Irram being come vnto the Crowne, he followed not the steppes of his Father, The Impious nor of his Grand-tather; but gaue him- and wicked felfe to impiety and cruelty, putting to ram. death his owne Brethren. He laboured al fo to have alliance with Achab King of 1/ple, from whence they carried infinite | raell, whose councell he mainely followed in his affaires, and likewife tooke his nicle. After which chastifements, the Daughter in marriage. Whereat

of Edom to revolt from him. The Araof Judea spoiled & ruined. bes also made warre vpon him; which proued in fuch cruell manner, that the whole Countrey of Indea, was thereby vtterly wasted.

Wicked lines haue common ly as wicked deaths.

to death by

Ochoziat.

Another gret

mitery hap-

ning to letu-falem.

After his death, Ahazia, or Ochozias his Sonne, fucceeded in the Kingdome, with his Mother Athalia: and, as they were both of most VV icked life, euen fo, hadde they as ynhappie an end-

Next him succeeded Ochozias, who gaue good apparance in the beginning of his Reigne, to doe all thinges for the best, as well in regard of Religion, as for actions of pollicie. For, heereduced the Temple into the first condition, and re-established all the damages and iniuries which the Kinges of Egypt (and especially his Father Ahazia) had done. But soone after, hee fell vnto Idolattie, The Prophet fo that (by common voyce of the people) hee canfed the Prophet Zacharie to

be put to death. So highly was the goodnesse of Almightie God distasted heerewith, that he sent a terrible chastisement vppon Jerusalem, and that in the time of King Amasias, Sonne vnto this Ochozias. Who having Warre against low, King of Ifraell, and neuer remembering the great Victories, which God had given him against the Idumaans, and manie other Nations: both hee and his people were ouer-come, and beeing ledde Prisoner vnto terusalem his owne Citty, was compelled to yeelde it to the mercy of loas, who caused it to be difinantelled, and foure hundred fadomes of the Walles to bee beaten downe. He spoyled the Temple also, and possessed himselfe of all the wealth and riches belonging vnto King Amasias: returning home afterwardes (in Triumph) to his Cittie of Sa-

Amalias mu thered by ercason,his fon Azarias fucceedes him

Furthermore, King Anasias beeing flaine by Treason, Azarias, or Ozias his Sonne next succeeded, who yvas a verie valiant and potent Prince. First of all, he strengthened Ierusalem, and all king of Iuda, vanquished and ouerthrew the other dismantled Citties, enriching his Countrey, by divers great victories which hee obtained against the Philistimes, Arabes, and Ammonites, making

God being displeased, suffered the men | that the renowne of Ierusalem, encreased day by day, while hee reigned; and hee founded and builded many Townes and Citties beside.

Neuerthelesse, pride made him to forget his dutie; for, perceiuing that he had three hundered thousand men subiect vnto him, and all in abilitie to carry Armes: hee grew fo exceeding arrogant, that hee would needes vsurpe the High-Priestes Office. But as hee was perfourming his Sacrifice in the Temple; God punished by smote him with a fowle Leaprosie, the the hande of which continued with him to the time of his death.

After his decease, Iotham his Sonne next fucceeded him, being a Prince very | Iothamfucwife, inft, and valiaunt; hee also enlar- ceeded Azz. ged Ierusalem verie spaciously, by manie reparations and new foundations; befides, the building of fome other Cities . Hee likewise ouercame and vanquished the Ammonites, from whom he brought backe great summes of Golde and Silucr. But after his death, Triumphing times beganne to weare away, and all vnhappinesse fell vpon the people of Iuda: For, his Sonne Achaz, fur named Elea- Pagane Cengar, beeing come to the Crowne; gaue montes and fuper fluir of himselfe to Idolatry, introducing the ce- brought into remonies and superstitions of the Pagans, ludea. In regard whereof, God chastised them by the hand of Rasis, King of Suria; and Phezias king of Ifraell, who flaughtered (in one day) fixe score thousand men. After which pittifull ouerthrow, they ranne thorow the Countrey of Indea, robbing and spoyling it in lamentable manner; and because Ierusalem was strong, it outstoode the sharpe besiedging of these kings folong, til they despayring of their insufficiency, were forced (with great fummes of Golde) to buy their fuccor of Salmanazar king of the Allyrians . And for the better satisfaction of him, they Jerusalem re tooke the Vesselles of Gold and Silver; de diffeelle in which onely were for the Temples fer- world maner uice, to helpe them withall in this great distresse.

Salmanazar beeing come to affift the the king of Ifraell: and yet notwithstanding, ledde away with him a great number of the lewes prisoners, to whom he gaue The first diff the Region of Ithena to dwell in . And persion and them all Tributarie vnto his Crownes fo this was the first dispersion and captuitie captuity of the lewes. King of Ifraell, every yeare to pay them yeares. Tribute. At this very time, the Prophers

Chap.28.

on to enfor.

mane King

Achsz, fuccs

His rooting

rp of idolatr and warning given to the tenne Tribes

in great reputation.

After the death of this vnfortunate Achaz, next came to the Crowne his fon of his Father; for, hee was wife, iuft, religious, and one that feared God . Ierufamore her former credite; policy becomming better reformed, and the service of cipall Citty of that Countrey. The Ally-God reduced to fuch perfection : that (as rians made a mixture of the Iewes Lawes the Scripture it lelfe amply declareth) the with their Indiatries, yet held them in ab-Realme of Indah neuer had a better king; liuing in great prosperity, and honouring his Countrey, with many famous Vido.

Hee could not content himselfe, with renting up the rootes of Idolatry, whereto the people were ouer-much enclined; and bringing them entirely vnto the true Ifraelites, the Kingdome of Inda onely of inda remain feruice of God: but hee also gaue funmons to the ten Tribes of Ifraell, to line according to that Lawe, which God had fierce rage and furie of King Salmanadelivered by the hand of Moyfes. Where- zar, and to preserve his owne dominions unto many condificending, they came in peace; gauchim great fummes of gold, to Sacrifice in Ierusalem, and to celebrate Easter, according vnto the ordinance of time. Neuerthelesse, this Infidell King

Moyfes. Notwithstanding, as the facred Scriptures doe testifye, the rest persevered still in their Idolatrie, and made a mockerie of those gentle inuitations, as also the aduertisements which the Prophets had giuen them. For which contempt, GOD layde his correcting roddes uppon them. aswell by Salmanazar, as Senacherib, kings of the Affyrians, who oppressed them greatly, in the first yeare of King Ezechias his reigne.

Also in the fourth yeare of the reign of Ozias, King of I fraell, the Affirian broght fo heavy a warre against seven Tribes of Ifrael, for the space of three whole yeares: as he inforced them to forfake their countries, and to go dwell as flaues among the

Thus you fee how the Iewes were difperfed heere and there, among forrayne and strange Nations, without euer returning againe home to their owne houses, so that none knew what afterward should

of the Iewes, fince their miraculous deli- become of them. For heere was the end uerance out of Egypt : and in short time and ruine of the kingdom of Hrael, which after, the Affyrian king, compelled the had continued three hundred and feuenty

On the contrarie, Salmanazar fent his Ofea, Efay, Amos, Micheas and Ionas were Affrians into Samaria, to inhabite there; who (viurpingly) got poficition of all the Countreyes (wherein the Israelites had formerly dwelt) and tooke the name of How the Sa-Exechias, a man farre beyond the Nature Samaritanes vpon them. Yet Eufebing rakeih that name but as a Garrison, wherein name. his opinion (me thinkes) is not warrantalem alfo (in his reigne) recoursed once blesfor they were called Samaritanes, after the name of Samaria, the chiefe and prinhomination, as excommunicated people. As concerning their actions, I shall be silent therein, because it no way concerneth my discourse : and if heerein I have committed any error, I fubmit my felfe to the Churches correction.

> Exechias, to fauchis people from the lifaclites. buying (by that meanes) peace for long fallifyed his Fayth vnto him, and came with a mighty powerfull Armie, intending to ruinate the Kingdome of Iuda, as formerly hee had done the Kingdome of Israell. But GOD beeing pleased to defend his people, fent the Prophet E-Say vnto King Exechias to comfort him, (beecause this Prophet lined then) and in one night, the Angell of the Lorde, flew one hundred and foure score thoufand fighting men in the Affyrians camp : by meanes of which great flaughter, and fourfcore the rest retyred thence. And Ezechias, hauing escaped this dangerous perill to himselfe, and his people, lyued the remainder of his dayes peacefully in his Kingdome. And God having evidently declared great Myracles, on the behalfe of this King, he dyed peaceably, lea-uing his Sonne Manaffes fuccessour in his

kingdome. This Prince wandered from the good wayes of his Father, and addicted himfelfe altogether to Idolatry, committing

After the ouerthrow and ruine of the The kingdom

fyrians flaine

nb, Gods

he dispersio uo ftrange

Manaffes renolted from the wayes of good king E. zechias his fa ther, and was led captine into Babylon.

The deeds of

the holy king

Iolias, repay-

ring the Tem-

ple, and expel-

ling idolatry

out of his king

contrary to the Law of God, and thereto likewise induced the people. Whereat God growing offended, raifed up the Affyrians against him, who so well chastised him; that, ouer and beside the ouerthrow of his people, himselfe was taken prisoner, and ledde away captine into Babylon. Notwithstanding, he repented him of his finnes, which caused God to deliuer him out of the Allyrians hands; fo that hee returned home to his owne estates, and dyed there in peace. After him, succeeded his wicked fon Amon, who was flain most milerably : the Prophets Ioel, Nahum, and Habbakuk succeeded in his time. Next him, came to the crowne his fonne loftas, who was a Prince that feared God & very vigilant for the reformation of his people; performing many other actions, rightly becomming fo good and just a King. For, he expulsed all idolatry quite out of his kingdom, which had taken deepe roote in the harts of men, and he repaired the Temple alfo. Neuerthelesse, the anger of God against the lewes was not appealed, in regard of the abhominable idolatries committed, in the reigns of the Kings Manaf. les & Amon. Notwithstanding in respect of King Iofi.ts, who (thorough his owne folly) dyed poorely; God deferred to chastife the lewish people, in such manner as he did afterward.

many most abhominable sinnes, directly

This king dyed of a wound, which hee received on the day that hee had agaynft Necar, King of Ægypt, when hee might haue bin better imployed. For Necar had no matter of quarrell against him, but ra-King Iofias died of a wound ther fought his friendship so much as hee could: and having no other intention, but to imploy his forces against the King of Affyria. Neuertheleffe, in a brauery of fpirit, losias would needs meddle with him, which cost the deere price of his life. His death was very much bemoaned especially by the Prophet Ieremy, who wrote his Lamentations on his behalfe.

Toachaz his fon succeeded him, who was giuen to all iniquity and wickednes:wherfore God fuffered him to reigne no more then three moneths: for Necar, who had before foyled his father, deprined him of his kingdome, making the countrey of Iudea tributary, paying an hundred Talents of Gold, and one of Silver, cucry yeare. Toachaz being thus defeated of his king-

dome, and led prisoner into Ægypt, wher he dyed; Joachim his Brother, was enftal- loachaz die led in his place, behaving himfelfe verie Egyptied the wickedly; for hee was wholly affected to ther in capit. Idolatry, and prouoked his people to doe uitie. the like. In which respect, God stirred vp king Nabuchodonofor to be his enemie, who had already reigned forty foure years in Babylon,

This Prince having won the victoric against the Iewish people, ledde away the King Naba. most part of the greatest personnes in all chodonoser the Country, as captine flanes and Vaffals, and tooke away also the Vesselles of people. the Temple. The occasion of this warre grew, because loachim gane ayde vnto the King of Ægypt, against Nabuchodonofor, contrary to the counsell of Ieremy. Iouchim having reigned eleven yeeres, and liued prisoner three yeeres, dyed in great

After whom succeeded Iechonias, following the steppes of his Father, because The long to hee was as wicked as hee. In his time, ferred agent of god agent of god agent of god agent lengths. of vengeance, prepared long time before now cometh against lerusalem, but deferred in the re- to appearance gard of Iofias, according as the Prophets Nabudoca had foretold. For King Nabuchodonofor, nofor, came in his owne person, with an exceeding great and powerfull Armie, to befiedge the Cittie of Ierusalem: but, Iechonias beeing not able to make refistance, fubmitted vnto his will, himfelfe, his Mother, his Wife, and the principall personnes that were of his House. Moreouer, hee made him a present, of the Vesselles and Treasures which remained (as yet) in the Temple. By which meanes, King Jechomas, and the cheefest men of his Court, were ledde away captiues into Babylon : But Nabuchodonofor, tooke all the affurances and fidelitie of Mattathias, vncle to King Iechonias, and made him king of Iudea, calling him by the name of Sedechias.

In speaking of this King, I must needs fay, hee was one of the most Wicked of the world and vnhappy Princes that ever reigned: Kings that For, not onely was hee ingratefull vn-uer reigned to Almightie GOD, for the great Graces which hee had bestowed vppon him(turning still his backe, and not willing to heare any thing which the Prophet Jeremy tolde him) but also did falfifie his word vnto King Nabuchodonofor 3

Chap.28.

eisen to this King,by Ier

The wrath of

ine of the Ta le'of Lerus

the lewes in Babilon,& ontinued, as denying him his friendship. And if this till and husband the grounds: under the Prince was no more worthy: much leffe then were the facrificing Priests, and least of all the common people: fo that all abhominations and idolatries reigned in Indea, even to the prophanation of the Temple, which had beene held in fuch facredesteeme. And notwithstanding all the aduertisements given to this King, by leremie, Ezechiell, and other Prophets : yet his obstinacy encreased daily more and more. Whereupon, God raifed Wabuchodonofor, who, to reuenge the wrongs donehim by Sedechias; In the ninth yeare of his Reigne, he came and couered the Country of Indea with a mighty Army, and held terufalem befiedged, the space of two yeares, where King Sedechias had betaken himfelfe for his more fecurity.

The poore people languishing with famine & pestilence, were no longer able to endure the fiedge; but being thus by extremity compelled, yeelded to the enemics mercy: when hee entring into the Citty, put all to fire and fword. Sedechias was taken in his flight, and being brought before Nabuchodonofor ; faw his own children flaine before his face; and as for himfelfe he had his eyes pluckt out, and fent (in that miferable maner) captine to Babilon. After the Conqueror was returned home he fent to Ierufalem Nabuzaradan. who was one of his principall Captaines. with especiall charge, veterly to ruinate the Temple. This was foure hundred yeares after the building thereof by King Salomon : as he performed the like, to all the Fortresses and sumptuous buildings of Ierusalem, beating downe the walles of the Citty, and defacing the Pallace belonging to the Kings of Juda.

Hee carried away also all the mettall that was in the Temple, and ledde thence the Sacrificers, and all the chiefe men, as well of Ierufalem, as throughout the coutry beside, with their Wiues and Children; who continued Captines in Babylon, for the space of about threescore and ten yeares. This was the Captivity of Babylon, which hath fo much bene spoken of, and which happened about fixe hundred yeares before the comming of our Lord and Saujour Iefus Chrift. Thus you fce, how the poore Citty of Ierusalem remained defert and defolate, except fome

who had enstalled him in the Kingdome, few of the meaner people, lest behinde to charge (neuenthelesse) of Godolias, Deputy Gouernor in Iudea. But the people falling into mutiny, flew Godolius, and then fearing the fury of Nabuchodonofor; fuch as remained of the lewes, went and dwelt in Egipt, leaving terufalem waste and vnpeopled.

> S. Hierome faith, that after the furprizal Hier.in Lib. and facking of Ierufalem, there paffed well Queft. Hebraic. neere fifty yeares, when neyther Man, Beaft nor Bird entred into it : whereby may fufficiently be knowne, what great punishments this people had deserved, that were so highly beloved and priviledged by God. Seauenty yeares being passed ouer, it pleased God with the eye of pitty, to looke vpon the Captiuity of to commilehis people: being then, when the Empire rate the difell into the dominion of the Persians, who thereof differzed the Allyrians, and in the time of the puillant King Cyrus. He, being moued by the Spirit of God, fuffered fifty thousand lemes to returne home Fifty thouinto their Country, under the conduct of fand lewes released by Zerobabell their Captaine, and lofuah or King Cyrus,

God began

ftreffe of his

Iefus, the foueraigne Sacrificer or High. and lent into their Country Priest: who beeing returned into Indea, began to repaire the ruines of their Cit-

CHAP. XXIX.

ces appointed in his Law.

ties, and especially Iern(alem, which they

re-builded with great ioy, offering facri-

fices to God, according to the Ordinan-

What difference there is betweene Leasino and Lying; And how a man may tell a lea fing, and yet not to be faide, that it is a lye.



Ying, is one of the greatest vices that any man can haue; for it is not any way possible to negotiate, or to conclude any matter, with the conclude any matter, with

him that is a lyar, because lying maketh euery thing to be suspected. Moreover, the horrour of lying sheweth it selfe sufficiently, in that it is directly opposite to truth, which is God: as likewise the dinell is called the Father of lyes. Salomon (in

The lamenta tions of the prophet Icre-

needlefly re-

ceiud in fight.

The hatred to lying, both by Infidels and Christians,

Stobeus.

all times) bene so abhorred both by Infidels and Christians; that a man knowne to be a lyar, was reputed as a plague to the Common-wealth, as we may perceiue in Euripides, according as is auouched by

ranke, of the feauen vices greatly displea-

fing to God. In briefe, this vice hath (at

But not to make any longer stay, in thewing how pernitious and detestable a thing lying is, in regard that it is so common and vulgar: I take it as a matter conuenient, to declare what difference there is betweene leasing and lying, according to the faying of Aulus Gellius, and of many other Authors more; for oftentimes, there is a great diffrence in thefe two bad qualities. Observe we thento this effect,

The diffrence that to tell a lyd, is to affirme the contra-

ry, of that which a man knoweth to bee true. But telling a fallacie or leafing, is to affirme lying, with an intention to speake truth: wherein a man cannot be faide to haue lyed, when he speaketh not against that which he holdeth for truth & knowethit fo to be. Contrariwife, a man may lye, and yet

How a man

(notwithstanding) tell tructh, when hee fpeaketh against that which hee thinketh. although that which he hath faid, be true. But when a man vttereth a leafing, knowing the thing it selfe to be otherwise then as he hath faid : hee lyeth, and then it is a direct lye. From hence it ensueth that it is impossible to tell alve without vice or finne:but he that speaketh a leasing, thinking to fay the truth, lyeth not at all. This is that which Nigidius faith, according to the expression of Gellius: That an honest

man will neuer lye, and a wife man hates to

tell a leasing. For mine owne opinion

heerein, I would aduife all men to auoyde

both the one and other vice, although

they may imagine to speake truely.

Aul. Gellius in lib.1.cap.9.

de Cena Dom.

Heere it is to be noted, that although the tongue keepe filence, yet deeds fometimes may belye the person. For as Saint Ambrofe faith: He which makes profession of being a Christian, without conforming himselfe to the works of Christ, lieth, or is a lyar. As also that man doth, which makes a solemne promise to obserue Religion, and yet notwithstanding obserueth none at all. As much may we fay of some vgly women, as black as faire diuels, who paint

his Prouerbs) placeth lying in the fecond \ & paint to get them botter faces, and look Of fachlyin therby worfe the euer they did: And foo- there are no lift olde men, that would be yong againe meane flore in the world by fantasticke meanes. I remember an old man, of whom Thee. phrastus speaketh, who being of great authority and credite, and having fome im-A pleafane portant bufineffe before the Lacedemon history of an Senate; was very much greeued, to ap- ydle headed peare there in fuch antiquity of yeares as forethese he was stepr into; which made him to cut | nate of Laco and shaue his head and beard, hoping by this meanes to feeme much younger. As

the cause was in debating, Archidamus

(speaking for his Clyent, against him) de-

clared to the Senate, that no credit ought

to be given to the words of him, that ap-

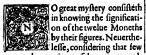
parantly carried lying in his head & face.

So that, according to Archidamus, fuch a-

ged fooles can lye, without speaking any

CHAP. XXX.

Of the twelve Moneths in the yeare; how both Ancients and Moderne men veed to figure them: And of Some mysteries represensed by them.



or none haue written of them, in our vulgar tongue: I am the more willing to take a little paines, in acquainting some particular friends, that by looking vpon their portraitures, they may the better reach to their interpretation.

First of all then, beginning with Lanuary, it was presented by a man scated at a lanuary. Table, holding a Glasse of Wine in his hand, as being ready to drinke. Whereby was intended, that in this Moneth, all creatures haue better appetite and defire

to eate and drink then at any other time: because heat is retired inward, & strengthneth the stomacke in such fort, that it is capable of the easier digestion. February, was a ma heating his hands a- February.

Chap.30. is very requilite, in regard of the great | the Trees, because in this Month, Acorns coldes in Winter, caused by the absence

of the Sunne. March, was figured in form of a Gardiner: because (in this Moneth) the pores and spiracles of the earth, do open themselues, insomuch, that the moisture of the

earth commeth (of it owne accord) to all the Trees, Hearbs and Plants. In which respect, all superfluities are to bee cut away, that the nutritine humour may extend it felfe to the living Branches, for bearing the fairer fruite.

Aprill, was made in the shape of a young man, holding a Nofegay of flowers in his hand : for in this Moneth, the earth hauing communicated his vertue to Trees and Hearbs, maketh enery thing to flourish, and bring foorth Flowers. For May, a yong gallant Gentleman

backe, and brauely apparelled, bearing a Hawke vpon his Fist. Considering, that in this Moneth, the Trees commonly begin to beare fruite. Birds flye abroad merrily, and all creatures strine to have their best

was portraited, being mounted on horse-

pleasures, and make loue to one another. Iune, was painted, carrying a Scythe on his backe; because in this Moneth, the Medowes must be moved downe.

July, carried a Sickle in his hand, where with to reape downe the ripened

And because these Fruites are commonly to bee gathered in August, and then they are to be laide and lockt vp in Barnes and Garners : August was figured like to a Country Carter, standing by his laden Cart, with a whip in his hand, as haftening homeward with his theaues of Corne.

September, was in the habite of a Vintager, as thereby fignifying, that the beginning of Vintage is to bee in this Mo-

October, was figured like a husbandman carrying a Sack voon his shoulders, and fowing Corne as hee paffeth along. Meaning thereby, that as this Moneth is colde and dry; so is it very apt and conuenient, for the lowing of Scede.

November stood in the shape of a Thrasher, labouring his Flayle vpon the Corne in the flicaucs. He had another mon-wealth: fo that all affaires paffed companion standing by him, who with a through the hands and intelligence of the pole did beate downe the Acornes from two Lords, Iuliano and Laurentio de Medi.

ferue best to fatten Swine; andithen also they ordinarily kill Swine, for making Ba-

December flood in the likenesse of a December. Butcher, with a knife in his hand, and killing a Hog. Thus were the twelue Moneths viually figured.

As for the yeare it felfe, they made The Yeare. the modell thereof, in the relemblance of a Serpent, writhed into a roundle, & holding the tayle in the mouth: because the end of the yeare euermore is joyned with the beginning.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of astrange Conjuration or Conspiracy, which happened in the goodly Citty of Florence, and of the slaughter which ensued

LL the World is naturally defirous to heare and vndermonth and the greatest enterprizes, and such thrange accidents as happen to then: to the ende, nouelies.

that they may the better defend themsclues, from falling into such inconventences, as waite vpon inconftant and mutable Fortune. And therefore I concluded with my felfe, to relate a very rare and admirable chance, which happened in the wealthy Citty of Florence, and which (in mine opinion) is one that descrueth as much meruaile, as any other that over I heard of.

In the yeare, 1478. the Citty of Flo- The fumpturence was in great peace, abounding day ous and flouby day) in fumptuoufnesse and riches and the affayrs of the Common-wealth hold- in thole times ing on fuch a prosperous course, that no imagination was fo idle, as to thinke, that any misfortune had the power to alter this happinesse. In those Sun-shine dayes, the illustrious house of Medicis (of whom the Duke was Cofimo, and all the

Iuliano and Dukes of Florence to this day are descen- Laurentio de ded) gouerned the fuld State and Com- Medices, both

ouember.

bout his own body: for in this month, fire

Ambr in Serm.

October.

Emulation &

hart-burning

in fome a-

gainst the

Medicissin

regard of

their author

among the people, in regard of their Ancestours, and especially for Cosimo de Medicis their Grand-father, who had beene the onely and richest Merchant of Italy; although that in Florence wer very wealthy Merchants beside.

Now there were (at this time) in the faide Citty, many other Gentlemen and rich Merchants, who thought themselves euery way as fufficient to manage and order the Common-wealths affaires; as those that were of the house of Medici. Neuerthelesse, the Medici still had the great opinion, being euery day respected, hayled and louingly entertained of the people. In the ende, the house of the Pazzi. Salviati, and many other iffued of Noble and ancient Families in Florence (being moued by passion and particular affection (coupled with innated enuy, which they bare to them of the Medicis) contriued a feeret complot, whereby to take the Common-wealths gouernment from the Medici . And this their intent could not

The death co be accomplished, without the death of Intriued of luliano and Laurentio de Medicis, because they liano & Lauwere rich and potent Lords, sentio de Me dicis

Francesco and Giouanni de Pazzi, Cousins-germaine to Giacomo de Pazzi, and cheefest men of that house, vndertooke to kill the faid Brethren of the Medici, and joyned with them the Family of the Saluiati; especially Signior Francesco Saluiati. Archbishop of Pisa, and they vndertooke to kill Pope Sixtus the fourth, Vnckle to them of the Medics, & likewife Ferdinando, King of Waples, whom they had constrained into their league: all verily perswaded, that being rid of them, they fhould not meete with any resistance in the execution of their purpofe.

This complot fully agreed vpon, and all things provided to fit their enterprize accordingly; the Archbishoppe of Pifa eame to Florence, where (vnder another colour) they entred into roule a number of Soldiours, all well knowne : yet without discouering to any one, what was to be done. The Archbishop of Fifa, of whom neuer any doubt was conceined, practifed fuch meanes, that a young Cardinall, Nephew to Pope Sixom (who then studied at Bologna) should come to passe the time a while at Florence, to fitte their

turne (in the action) with him and his peo-

cu, Brethren; who were highly effeemed ple, yet neuer acquainting him with a thought of the intention.

Order being taken for all occasions, and every thing kept close in the bosornes The appoint of the principall conspirators, the conclufion was thus; that the two Brethren de houldbe per Medici should be flaine together, eyther formed, & by in the great Church, or else where the what persons Cardinall should heare Masse. Francesco de Pazzi, and Bernardo Bandino, tooke charge of killing the Lord Iuliano de Medicis: but the death of the Lord Laurentio, was committed to Antonio de Volterra, and to another, called Stephano, being a Priest. The houre or moment, affigued by Giacomo de Pazzi, for the execution of these two murders, was at fuch time, as the Priests shold be at the elevation in Masse, holding the Hoast or Sacrifice aloft a- Inengana boue his head, although the two brethren tobe done then were in divers places.

Vpon the Sunday following, which was the third of May, 1478. this conclusion tooke effect thus. The Cardinall came to heare Masse, and with him the Lord Laurentio de Medicis, without his brother. For they vied to walke (as men fuspecting A care in the ambushes) fildome or neuer together in two brethers, the Citty, for feare of falling into any difafter together: knowing right well, that no man durst make an attempt offensively vpon them, if one of the two were left aliue. The conspirators perceiving that Lord Iuliano came not at all . Francesco de

Pazzi, and Bernardo Bandino (who had (worne his death) vnder the shaddow of Courtly attendance, went to come along Ceremonlos with him from his house, and bestowed so Courthip, many embrassadoes voon him, that they make way to brought him vnto the Church where his diuelliches Brother was, and yet hee then fate farre e- tifes. nough off from his Brother. Conspiring eyes were full fixed on them both, enuying that they should fitte fo farre afunder: but yet the time and place gaue the courage, that they might easily accomplish the acte; and yet not be profecuted by any for few or none tooke notice of them. The point for performance being come, Lord Julian

France co de Pazzi gane a ftabbe with his flaine by Fri poniard to the Lord Iuliano, which thwar- celco de parted the stomacke, and issued foorth at his fhoulder, fo that immediately he fel down dead : and Bernardo Bandino, by making hafte(leaft Lord Juliano shold not be thorowlysped) wounded himselfe with his

owne Dagger in the stomacke, albeit hee faw the Lord Inliano lye dead before him. There dyed also Francesco Nori, flaine by Bernardo Bandino, because he laid hand on his weapon, in the defence of Lord Iulia-

ued himselfe from their fury.

ano. Antonio Volterra, and Stephano the Priest, sharply assayled the Lord Laurentio de Medicie, but yet with such slender dexterity; that vsing his owne couragious defence, hee was wounded a little in the mouth, and (in despight of all they could do) by meanes of certaine friends, he got into the Sacriftia or Vestrie, and there sa-

This affault was fo fudden, that it had

speedier execution, then any knowledge

could be had of them that acted it : for

fuch was the cry of the people, as if the

Church had fallen to the earth. The Car-

dinall had worke enough to doe, to get

himselfe free, and in safety to the high Al-

tar. All the Citty was vp in a furious vp-

rore; for some cryed out, that the two

Brethren de Medici were flaine, & others

faide no, putting themselves presently in

Armes. They of the houses of Pazzi

and Saluiati, began aloud to cry, Liberty,

Liberty, so that the Seigneury resorted to

the great Pallace with all diligence, where

the Gonfaloniero loyning with them, they

fortified themselves with armedmen in

the house. The Councellors of the Cit-

tie, and fuch as tooke part with the Medi-

ci, went to seeke for the Lord Laurentie;

conducting him home to his own house,

where stood readily prepared about eight

with the house of Medici; yet notwith-

standing they were so pressed, as they had

not any leyfure, for making any Armed

prouision, nor to appoint a Garrison for

the Pallace. Yet they knew well enough,

that Lord Laurentie was not much hurt,

and that he had men about him valiant &

Seigneury had no leyfure to take a refolu-

tion, in some mattets that he would have

The Archbishop perceiving, that the

As for the Archbishop of Pifa, hee

A Conspiracy at Florence.

ofeued his

Chap.31.

dop of Pila rideth to the Pallace, to conferre with the Seigneu.

pursuing on still the point with the Saluiati, being accompanied with many of their league, and fuch as were the Cardinals followers; rode directly vnto the Pallace, with intent to make their meaning well liking to the Seigneury . The Lords of the Seigneury, although they tooke part

hardy.

thousand armed men.

appointing one part of them to keep poffession of the Pallace Gates. Hee, with Pallace, and made it knowne to the Seigneury, that he had fome-what to acquaint them withall, for generall benefit of the Common-wealth.Whereupon,hebeing admitted in, with some few of his people, that knew no part of his vile purpofe: the Gates of the Pallace were made fo strongly fast; that the Archbishop could have no fuccor of his followers nor the Lords of the Seigneury themselves have any affistance. So loudly did the Archbishop deliuer his minde, speaking of matters in fuch vnorderly manners that the Seigneurie (well vnderstanding his bad intention) The Arch Bicommanded the Gonfaloniero to take hold of him, as allo of Giacoma Saluiati, and Giacomo, the fonne of Messier Poppio de most of them Pazzi. And fo varuly grew the tumult. that all their attendants were instantly flaine in the fury, and thirty dead bodies throwne out of the Pallace windowes, vppon the heads of them that were beneath in the Court. Within a while after, the common

propounded to them: divided the traine

of his followers into two Companies,

people, who greatly fauoured them of the Medici, ranne in huge heapes and crowds The other to the Pallace : where all the other part of partofthe the Archbishops men (that had the trust Archbishops of keeping the Pallace Gates) were taken fine, & him. and flaine presently, without any respect selfe hanged, vsed towards them. As for the Arch-Bishop, and his two friends with himsthey were hanged in the Market-place, to cause moreterrour in the reft. Giacomo de Paza zi. and divers other of the Conspirators. rode vp and downe through the Citty, crying Liberty, Liberty: but perceining none to make them answer, as leaning rather to the part of Lord Laurentio; they thought to faue themselues by slight. Only Bernardo Bandino excepted, who lay in his bed very ficke, by paine of the wound which he had given himfelfe; fo that hee was not able to fit on horsebacke, or come come abroad out of his Chamber.

By this time the whole Citty was vp in Armes, to defend the cause of the Lord Laurentio, who extremely greeued, for the Citty maindeath of Lord Juliano his Brother: caut- caufe of Lord fing seuere pursuite after the Conspira. tors, so that many, who were but meerely

fulpcacd

Laurentio de Medicis.

diours prepa red for the purpole.

A lift of Sol-

The combi-

nation for a

murder.

most horrible

The Archthe other company, ascended up into the Bishop admit-

Scuerity of

on the bloody

A briefe fur-

confpiracy, &

tor s therein.

with fome o

ther accidets

the maine ac-

uay of the

life: but at length, his innocence being truely knowne, he was acquitted; continuing (neuerthelesse) long time prisoner. Bernardo Bandino, was ledde starke naked Bernardo Báto the Pallace, and so hanged vp, next to dino hanged vp ftarke nathe Archbishop. As for Antonio de Volked by the Archbishop. terra, and Stephano the Priest, who should haue flaine the Lord Laurentio: they were trodden to death among the rude multi-

tude, that ranne enery where in the Citty, crying Medicis, Medicis, burning and pulling downe all their houses, whom they knew to be of the contrary Faction. In briefe, the disorder was such, and so confuled, as it exceeded the capacity of writing; especially the furies and cruelties, committed in this horrid tempelt.

suspected in the case, could not escape, al-

though no matter was prooued against

them; but no knowne offender could any

way be spared. The young Cardinall,

Nephew to the Pope, was kept prisoner

in the Pallace, with very great perill of his

Giácomo de Pazzi, was taken in his flight, & brought back to Florence: where he was hanged or strangled, and his body being cut in pecces, was after buried in prophane ground; all his lands & goods (which being of great value) were confifcated, and adjudged to the Seigneuries possession. And after condigne punishment inflicted vpon the malefactors, the body of Lord Iuliano was most honourably buried, and with very folemne Funerall pompe.

Such iffue had the Conjuration of the Pazzi, which was a matter very strange. For, in leffe then three houres, the Lord Iuliano de Medicis (an extraordinary rich man) was flaine; the Archbishop of Pisa hanged, with some other of his confederates, and the houses of the adverse part vtterly destroyed. Pope Sixtur, and Ferdinando, King of Naples, conceived fuch a folcene against this action at Florence; that they (together) lenyed a powerfull Army against the Florentines, who (with the aid of their friends) defended themselves so well; that no other aduantage was due to the disturbers, but that the war was long, and very cruell, great effusion of blood happening on eyther fide. Behold the poore and vnfortunate iffue of thefe conspirators, who thinking to winne honour, and high degrees by indifcreete meanes: lost their lives, disloynted the peace and

vnity of their Country, and made their enemy much mightier then before, for Lord Laurentio de Medicis gouerned Florence fo long as he liucd.

CHAP. XXXII.

Avery remarkable and worthy Historie, delinering in true and briefe discourse; the life and memorable actions of that famous Captaine, commonly called, Castruccio Castracagnio.



Astruccio Castracagnio, a Captaine of much fame and merit, in my poore opinion, It is not pormay be rancked among the unity of bad greatest and most renowned the mented

Captaines of the world: confidering the any well to pouerty of his originall, and the flender fertisg man meanes he had, without the fauours of any, compared also with those strange trauerses, which Fortune put vppon him. Wherein I may well fay, that very few Captaines or Generals are to bee found, who with fo poore & imperfect furnishment did euer reach to those honours and chates, as this our Castruccio Castracagnio attained. Wherefore, I thought it no disparagement vnto our precedent best subjects, that his History should make one among them: not purpoling to vie any larger dilation therein, then already I haue observed in the rest, because it shall fuffice me, fummarily to report the courage of this Captaine.

Beginning then with his originall, which was very strange, you are to vnder- Here the M stand, that in Luca, a Citty of no meane discoursed fame in Italy, there was a Chanon belonging ing to the Church of S. Michaell, named of Caffred Caffred Messire Antonio Castracagnio, who had a cagnio, kin fifter (of his owne) liuing with him, being what mand he was found a very honest and vertuous woman. Close ioyning to this Chanons house, was a little Close or Field of * Autines, which was plentifully furnished with variety of fruit- Vines tafte full Trees, as is the manner vied in Italy. ned to Tet The fifter to this Chanon (by fortune) according to the manner going one morning into this Close, to in tally. gather some Hearbs for her vie, without dreming on any fuch matter as after hapned: as the was gathering Hearbs heere

and there, heard a small voyce, as if it were or truce; Captaine Guinguo returned to of fome new borne babe. And walking Luca, with his Caftruccio, wher he was most that way where she heard the cty; among kindly embraced by enery one, as well in the leaves and young bourgeons of the general as particular, in regard of the good Vines, was an infant laide, appearing to bee report noised enery where of him. So that very lately before borne, tenderly crying, more account was made of him, then of as defiring aide in that wofull diffresse.

The good widdow, fomewhat fadly moued at the beginning of this aduenture, yet increased towards him daily more & more. prouoked by a womans louing compatition: carried in the tender childe, & shewed Guiniquo leeling himselfe ficke, & in some Castraccio it to the Chanon her brother, who being a danger of death; gaue the tutelage & go tredited with mazed at fo strange an accident, and yet o- uernement of Pagola his sonne, to his man this por his uercome with Christianlike pitty, determi- Castruccio. In which charge; Castruccio car- Masters Sonne ned to provide nurfing for the Babe. And ried himfelfe fo faithfully, that fo long as in regard that it was a manchilde, hee gaue he liued, he had at his command the affairs it the name of his owne Father, calling him of Pagola, enen as if hee had bene his owne Castruccio. When the Nursse was come, he sonne. After the decease of Captaine Guicaused it to be nourished as if it had beene miguo, the credite and reputation of Cahis owne : & after growing to a great boy, fruccia wonderfully augmented. Neuerfent him to schoole, with full intention of thelesse, because he was very fiery, impatifurrendring his Chanons place to him. But ent and vindicatine, when any wrong had when the Lad grew to 14. yeares of age, bene done vnto him: the men of Luca be Learning and Bookes was the least part of gan to grow suspitious, that he purposed to his care, for he was no way addicted to let-make himselse Lord of Luca, and not with ded by the ters, but rather delighted in handling of a out some pregnant occasion; in which te Seignewy to fword:and in regard that he was very active fpect, the Seigneury commanded him to aof body, he gaue himselfe greatly to leap- woide the City. Which difference Castruccio ing,dancing, & wrastling with other strong for much distasted, that he resolved to be re-Lads like himfelf. Speaking al in a word, he tuenged, even with the ruine and confusion was so dexterious in what soener he did; as of his head-strong enemies. At this very none of his companions could equall him, time, the Factions of the Guelphes and Gibes

Guinigue, a man much renowned, for worthy actions of Armes performed by him in neury of Pifa; Gaftructie practifed (by infi-Lombardy, was then at Lucas He hearing muation) to compaffe grace & fauour with betweene the fuch report of young Castruccio, & seeing this Lord Faginala, & therfore complotted Guelphes and him bold & braucly spirited, found meanes with the Gibelines, to make Figiuala Lord of to have him in his fervice. And Castruccio Luca. Working this traine on secretly, he being now where he best desired, became prevailed so well with some of his friends (in leffe then fine yeares) fo expert a Soul- in the City: that (at an appointed inftant) dior, as his like was not to be found, as well he won a Port of Luca. By means whereof on horse as foot : for he could so cunningly the Gibelines entred, with such succor as the manage any horse, that Caualendore of Ita- Lord Faginola had given them, expulsing lie hardly came neere him.

Being come to the age of 18, yeares, Cap- their very veremost they could. taine Guiniguo, his Malter, departed thence for Millaine, in aide of the Vifcantines, who cuer, & in fuch fort, as he was held to be the Caffricelore were in Armes against the Thuriani, and many other Millaine Gentlemen. He tooke the lord Faginala, to who he made recourse Lord of Lu-Cestruccio along with him, who caried him in simes of necessity. The Florentines, who felfe fo valiant and wifely in this war; that deadly despighted Castrucio, vnderstading The Florenlice bare away the fame from all the Soldi- the fuccesse of his affaires; leuied a great time fought

Guinique his Mafter; for hee was fo humane and courteous to every man, that affection

Within a short while after, Captaine but Castruccio becae respected in euery eyes lines reigned powerfully in Italy; and euen complored Ico fortuned, that Captaine Francesco the also, the lord Hugo Faginola was in some against the thence the Guelphes, after they had done

Castruccio was now in greater esteeme the Lord of Luca, although he was inferior to puted the ots in the Campe. This war lasted flue or Army, by helpe of such as were in league he death of six yeares, which being ended by peace with the purposing to outr-run Castraocie. Castructo.

Young Ca-fractio not addicted to

Caffruccio

Carolo flaine

dy. Concerning men of name in the Florentines Campe, there was among them Don Pedro, Brother to Robert, King of Naples, accompanied with Don Carolo his Nephew, sonne to Phillip. But the vertue of Lord Faginola and Construccio, served wel to counterpoile the greatnes of the other. After that this war had continued for some space of time, the Lord Fagiuola re-The Army left wholly t ceiued intelligence, that there had hap-Castruccioes ned a great commotion at Pisa, in redresse gouernment whereof, Lord Faginola was faine to leave the Armies conduct wholy to Caltruccio: who behaued himfelfe fo wifely and valiantly in this great truft, that after many fallies and light skirmithes, hee came to battaile with the Florentines. Castruccio maintained the fight with fuch good order and judgement, that (although he was the most obstinate má that euer was born in Italy) yet notwithstanding, the victory winneth the remained to him, and the flaughter was fo victory gains great, that there were flaine about tenne tines, Don thouland Florentines, among whom, Don Pedro & Don Pedro and Don Carolo his Nephew, were

But Lord Faginola and Castruccio, dispo-

fed fo well for the meeting with them, that

the warre grew to be very cruell & bloo-

Winter being come, Call ruccio returned to Luca, by the command of Lord Paginola, towards whom he showed himfelfe very obedient. But, as it is a customary case, that wealth and great honors doe cause feare and enuy : so the Lord Faginola, perceining the credite of Castruccio to encrease daily more and more: determined his death, in recompence of all the worthy feruices he had done him. To effect this dishonourable businesse; he sent one of his formes to Luca, who caused Ca-Aruccio to be committed prisoner, vnder pretence, of fome fecret blame imposed yon him. But the imprisonment of Ca-Struccio was to offentine to the Lucanes that the people began to mutiny against their Lord Facinals: who having advertifement thereof, left Pifa, and marched thether with a potent Army.

found in number with the dead. Which

victory, affured to the Lord Paginola, all

those estates (held by him) in farre better

fecurity, and enlarged the credite and re-

putation of Castruccio, beyond all com-

mon expectation.

But there hapned to him a very strange accident, and yet no more then hee jully

deferued for his vnmanly dealing. When the Pilanes were advertised, that Castrus-1 cio was deteined as a prisoner; they began fo to ftomacke the matter, that they flew The Gouerthe Governor, whom Lord Faginola had left as his Deputy, and all fuch as were to do him any feruice; fo that they enfranchized themselues from the tyranny of to the Lucan Faginola. He receiving intelligence of this mi(hap, and that (by this meanes) his returne to Pifa was bard vp against him:purfued on his purpose, to make all sure and fafe at Luca. But therin he proued likewife as vnfortunate as at Pifa, for the Pifanes had informed the Lucanes of their affaires, and with such speedy diligence; that the Poste fro the Pilanes arrived at Luca, much fooner then the Lord Faginola could do.

Heereupon, the Lucanes put them in

Armes, so that they expulsed the sonne of Faginola out of Luca, with absolute purpose, of allowing no entrance to the Father; but gaue freedome to Castruccio, in clude hir for meere despight of him. Yet some say, that Faginola entred Luca, & very quickly was expelled thence; when losing all hope of recovering his estates, he was glad to saue himselfe by flight into Lombardy. But be it howfoeuer, this I am fore of, that hee loft his dominion over both the Cities in one day: which he might fafely have enjoyed stil if he had but kept faire friendship with Castruccio: who being thus fet at liberty, Castruccio was elected Captaine and General of the made Gene Lucanes, by free confent of the whol Seig- rall of Luca neury. In which authority he being loath sonfent to live idle. leuved a great Army, wherewith hee recouered many strong Holds from the Florentines, which they had long vsurped from the Lucanes: taking diners other of their owne beside, in despight of their best Forces, albeit they were strong indeed. Caltruccio returning then to Luca, was there most honourably welcomed in regard of his worthy victories obtayned, and created absolute Lord of Luca. of Lucand became mad From which time forward, hee became dreaded, much feared of the neighbours round about, especially the Florentines, who were the most powerfull in all Tufcany: For, he had many wars against them, and tooke many Ports and Castles from them, yea, and ouerthrew them in a plaine fielde of Battaile, equally appointed on either fide.

As thus the fortunes of Castruccio grew daily better and better, the Emperor Fre-

de feruice of not of Pifa flaine by the

taining to him.

Chap.32.

in Army of finy shou-led men le-ded by the forentines spent Ca-fraccio,

ror there: wher being enstructed of the ma- the cheefest of the Plorentines were eyther tines out ny good parts remaining in Castruccio, hee flaine, or taken prisoners. Castruccio him-throwns in a laboured greatly to win him to his feruice. felfe being wounded, and a great number basale by Castruccio then leaving Pagola Guimiguo (of of his men flaine; yet all this could not a Castruccio his Lieutenant to gouern Luca: went to fee vpon his victory, marching in all hafte with fo far as Rome. Some hold, that he came this very speedily, as also all the Castles and in Tuscany. ther before the Coronation; but, after the Townes thereabout. So that (without any prenailed fo well by good means, that they within two miles of Florence, whereat the of Pifa chose him to be their Prince. Which | Florentines were not a little amazed. newes being brought to Rene, King of Maples (his old heavy enemy)he bega to grow entrance into Florence, hee received aduer. He encamped doubtfull of Castruccio, and perceiuing his tilement, that the Pifanes were practifing within two mailes of Flo. power to encrease so greatly: hee made a league with the Florentines against Castruc- leaving his intent for Florence, he returned called thence cio, intending now to fee the veter ruine of

fo manfully encountred by Castruccio; that affured, neuer to continue long in peace. euermore he had the better of the, although without some imployment for warre. with great expence of blood, and recovery of many places from them: fo that the Flo- by their peoples ouerthrow, and loffe be- The Florenrentines were meerely enforced, to craue a fide of fo many Towns : freely gaue them-themselves in truce for certaine time; during which ref- felues to the King of Maples, promifing him habitation to pite, Castruccio largely increased his power. a yearely tribute of two hundred thousand haples. For, as they of * Piftorium were in diffrence Crownes. The King of Naples accepted one with another within the Towne : Cafruccio shouldred in (during their civill disfention) and poffessed himselfe of Pistoria, of the Cauallery and Infantery that hee

and more in daily dangers, endenoured by of Castruccioes Forces: to that now the Ar- Another al the best meanes they could deuise, to ga- my of the Florentines consisted of tenne great Aimy ther people from all parts, onely to breake thousand horse, and thirty thousand foote. Florentines, the Forces of Castruccio, or else to drine With this powerfull preparation (perswa- against Ca. him out of Piftorium. In which respect, the ding themselves, that Castruccio durft not Supplies which came to them, as well from come into the fielde) they intended to bethe Kingdome of Naples, as other places fiedge Pifa; but Castruccio, who was one of more remote, were fo great; that upon the the most valiant & politique Generals, that musters account, they were numbred to be the whole world then afforded, went forth 40000.men. Seeing then, that they had so to meete them, attended only with 4000. goodly an Army, they began their march horse, and 20000 foote, but all in excellent directly towards Pistorium, where Castruc- Military order. As these two Camps becio had his Campe, confifting of far fewer gan to draw neere each other, there paffed people then the Florentines. Neuerthelesse, diuers skirmishes in the plaine sield, wherin he guided his war fo wifely, vfing fo many continually Castruccio had the best. Finally, Surprizals, skirmishes and encounters, that Castruccio seeking opportunity, to deliver fucceffe attended upon him continually.

order, that he vanquished the Florentines: the to accept the battel, wherin was a great in which ouerthrow was great flaughter

ricke came into Iraly, to be crownd Empe- made, and flore of rich booty taken, for all The Forenwhom he had thus long beene Turour) as lote daunt his courage, but still he pursued the Emperor Frederick whom he followed his Army against * Partum, which he tooke A faire town Emperors return into Germany, Castruccio resistance) he went and placed his Campe

As hee was effaying all meanes for his fome matter to his disaduantage: fo that, rence, & was to Pifaa triumphant Conqueror. After he by a mutiny him, and recouery of all the honors apper. had inflicted punishment upon the mutiners, he went to vifite all the neighbouring Hercupon, the King of Naples & the Flo- parts, taking order for all needfull occasiremines prepared a ftrong army, which was one beforming warre: because he was well

The Florentines, mightily confounded the Florentines offer, and fent Don Carolo his fonne to their affiftance, with the most part and all other places subjected to that Citty. could command; and the like did some o-The Florentines sceing themselves more ther Citties of Italy, who stood all in feare battaile to the Florentines : paffed ouer the In the end, comming to the day of bat- Foord at the Riner of "Arno, and found the A goodly taile, he proceeded therein with fuch good | Florentines in fuch diforder, as he compeld River in Italy

flaughter

diffionorably

Lord Fagiue

la concludet

the death of

Caftruccio

The Lucane Lord Fagi-. عزون

necessary vie

Castruccio his victory o uer the Flo rentines, and cafie meanes to have made a further conqueft.

Caltruccio fe

ficke of a

Feauer, and

dyed within

feauen dayer

The Authors

farwell to the

endleffe me -

mory of Ca-

ftruccio Car-

cagnio.

fullowing.

Quotidian

flaughter on both fides, but yet the victory fell to Castruccio; twenty thousand Florentines being flam in the field, befide two thousand prisoners taken : among whom was Don Carolo, sonne to the King of Naples, and many other Commanders of name. And affuredly (without all queftion to the contrary) confidering this last great victory, which Castruccio had against the Florentines: he might not onely haue conquered Florence it felfe, but likewise no meane part of Italy befide.

But heere may bee apparantly obserued how weake and feeble the strength of man is ; for a Glasse is no sooner crackt & thinerd, then a mans best might, when Gods affistance giveth him ouer. Castruccie, following his fortune vpon the spurre, and having made the surprizall before remembred; rode coasting along the River of Arno like a worthy Generall, to rallire all his people together. And being fore wearied and ouer-fweated, (for he had fought all the day) the fresh cooleneffe, or dampe of the River finote him inwardly, that the night following, he fell into a Quotidian Feauer, whereof (no doubt as God had appointed) he dyed on the scuenth day after, being then in the very flower of his time.

Surely, had this Castruccio bene a Natine of Rome, or Athens, as he was of Luca, where he was borne, without knoledge of Father or Mother; Or had he beene brought vp in the Kings Court of Macedon: he had greatly blemifhed the renown of Scipio, Phillip, yea, and Alexander the Great. Notwithstanding (a Lucane borne as he was) had hee lined a longer date of yeares, which his youth and ablenes made faire promife of: hee had equalled any of them in richnesse of fame. But returning to our History, Castruccio made Pagola Guiniquo his heyre; albeit some say, that he had Children of his owne, whom he instituted to bee his heyres. But be it howfocuer, as he got his effate & wealth by manhood and valour: his fuccessours loft all by lewdneffe and negligence, if we may credite Aretine, Blondus, Toninus &

CHAP. XXXIII.

A Discourse concerning the Windes: And of their Seuerall names, as well Ancient, as Moderne.



HE Windes, according as Seneca faith, are very meete and concerning the Winder, and of what are very meete and necellary for the spa-cious. Vniuerse; to conferne the winds who were conferne the temperature of Heauen

and Earth; to disperse and scatter raines and mysts sand to helpe the Trees in producing their Fruites. Nature also gaue them creation, to be the meanes of mens Nauigation, whereby they might communicat together the goods of the earth: fo that Regions which are fertile in some particular things, may impart them to other that are not fo well prouided. In briefe, the VV indes do cause an infinity of commerces among men, which my intended breuity will not spare me to speake of.

Onely I have propounded to my felfe, to shew how many Windes there are, The Arguwhat they are, whence they come, and how they are : wherein I am perswaded, coursed in that some benefit will redownd to divers this Chapter persons, especially to such as professe sayling on the Seas. To vnderstand then, what the Winde is, I will not relye on diuerfity of opinions, in fuch as have written thereon : but following Aristotle, and The winder the most common judgment of the wife : chalation I fay that the Winde is a vapour and ex hor and day halation hot and dry, drawnevp into the Ayre by vertue of the Sunne. And being driven aloft by his heate and lightnesse. proceeding on into the middle Region of the Ayre, which is alwayes coldescommeth to be repulfed by that contrary quality. So that being vnable to mount any higher, it breaketh foorth into blafts whether it can go, & being hindred of descen-bluftering in ding downe, in regard of lightnes : is con-the Ayre strained to tosse and tumble here & there in the Ayre; eyther more or leffe, according to the strength of the matter wherof it is caused. So that the definition of Seneca is not warrantable, who faieth, That the Winde is nothing elfe, but the Ayre mooued without any other matter: because these Exhalation are the exhalations and vapors, which ftir and vapour and mooue the Ayre; for, after they are moulingthe Ayre topos confirmed the winde ceaffeth.

Antiquity no

windes. T Luft

The West

The North

mentsinto-ded to be di.

themiclus

As concerning their names, our reuerend Ancients imposed such vpon them, as corresponded with the parts and Regions of the world, from whence they came. Neuertheleffe, Antiquitie neuer acknowledged fo many windes, as haue beene fince those times . For, according as Plinie, Aulus Gellius, Vegetius, Homer and other auncient Poets lay, no other mention was made, but of foure windes onely, which came from the foure parts or quarters of the world, viz. East, West, North and South; those are the parts or quarters most remarkeable that can be obserued throughout the world., For, as Danid and Lucan fay; Hence cometh day, and thence cometh night.

According then vnto this proportion,

our auncient Latines termed Subsolanus

the winde that came from the East Equi-

noctiall: The Greekes called it Apeliotes,

or Eurus: In Italy and Spaine, they call it

Leuante; and French Marriners terme it

the auncient names of the

> EH. Now, for the right winde belonging to Sunne-fetting, which is opposite and contrary to the precedent : the Greekes called it Zephyrus, that is, Vinifying : for it makes all plants to flourish: The Latines named it Fauonius: And the Italians and Spaniards call it Ponente: But our French Mariners call it Owest. And yet some others fay, that the word Zephyrus fignifieth conching or fetting. The third winde was called by the Latines Septemerio, in regard offeatien Starres, which turne or wheele about the North-Starre. By the same reafon the Greeks called it Apparetias, or Boreas; the Italians terme it Tramontana; the Spaniards Worte brifa; and the French do giue it the title of Nort. The fourth wind, which is opposite to the North, the Latines termed Auster, cuen as if they would

> haue called it a Water driver, for that

this winde is often rainy; which made the

Greeks to call it Notus, that is, watriff, or

moift. The Italians name it Menzodi; the

Spaniards Abrego far, and Vendeual 3 and

the French, Sud. Thus you fee as concerning the foure windes, whereof only speake Homer, and Ouid in his Metamorphotis. But (with much more respect and renerence) let vs yer fay, that our bleffed Lord and Sauior makes mention of the foure windes, fpeaking of the last day of Judgement, both in Saint Mathew and Saint Marke, wherehe fayth : That hee will fend his Angells with troupes, to affemble his Elect from the foure

Now, astouching the qualitie of the foure windes, we will make some relation Of the quali thereof, in discoursing on other subalter- winder, nate windes. Since the time of Homer, we find an addition of foure other windes to the former, as affigning (between the Leuant or East, and the Mezzedi, or South) The Northa winde which the Latines call Vulturnus. because this wind whistleth like the wing of a Vulture, when he dislodgeth. The Greekes do terme it Eurus; and some call it vulgarly in Italian Lenante, or Siroc, or

The other winde which rayfeth it felfe The North from the place, where the Sunne moun- West winde. teth at mid lune, hath no name amongst the Latines. Notwithstanding some call it Ardant, or Hellesponticus, because it cometh from the coast of the Hellesponticke Sea. Our Mariners call it Gree, or Nordest. Gellius and Vegetius, attribute thereto the name of Aprilo, which nevertheleffe is the name of another winde.

The other winde is justly betweene the The South-North and the West, and cometh from that Region, where the Sunne fetteth in winter, and is called by the Latines Affricus, because (in regard of Rome) this wind commeth directly from Affrica. The Greekes called it Lybs, because they entitle Guynea to be Lybia : Our Italians terme it Lybechio, the French and Spaniards Saouch, or Garbin.

The other winde is justly betweene the The South-North and the West, and cometh from the place where the Stiffne coucheth him felte in broad day. Some call it Aufo, or Cancro. The Greekes called it Argeftes, as much to fay, as full of rayes. His impetuousnesse is called Apix, because it cometh from a quarter of Italy, fo called: Others give it the name of Olympick. Our Italians itile it Mestrall, the French & Spaniards doc tearme it Nort-onest. These are the eight feuerall winds, whereof Anlus Gelline and Vitranius, maketh mention

Moreover, Andronicus the Athenian Philosopher, builded a Tower at Athens, Andronicus with eight angles or corners of Marble, & pher, and he at euery angle was figured the Image of a wet at Athens Winde, which blew against the saide angle. On the top of the tame Tower, was Aaaa a

Macchianell.

The Eaft

Arift, in Cool of

What winde

fixed a Triton of gold (reputed to be the | God of the Sea) holding a Rodde in his hand. And this Triton was composed in fuch artificiall fort, that he turned still with enery winde; like as the Vaynes or weather-flags vpo Castles or stately houfes now adayes do; shewing, or pointing still with his Rod, from whence the winde came, and where it reigned or dominee-Ouer and beside the forenamed eight

Foure winder windes there were yet added foure more. more,added to the former to make up just the number of twelue; plaeight, and in what feuerall cing two windes on this fide, and beyond the North, which is the high North, and are described two other on both fides of the South. which is the right winde for the South. That on the right fide of the Tramontana or North, betweene that and the winde Cafins, they called Aquilo; in regard of his impetuous bluftering, which is more fudden, then the wing of the fleetest Faulconthat is or can bec. The Greekes also

called it Boreas, in respect of the great noife it maketh when it bloweth : forne other tearme it Mefes. The other winde. which is on the fide of the couchant or Sun fetting, betweene the Tramontana & the winde Cancro, was cald by the Greekes Thrasias. Seneca giueth it no name at all in Latine; neuerthelesse, there are some who name it Circius, or Circus: the Cha-Stillians call it Galego.

The other two windes are also oppofite to these heere related, whereof the one commeth from the entrance to the right winde of the South, and the Region where the Sunne hideth himfelfe in Winter, which also is called Euro auster, or Euronorus. Aristotle reporteth, that (in his time) in Affrica they yied to call it Phenicias. The other winde plainly is betweene the direct winde of the South and the Garbin or Su-West: in which relpe & they call it Lybonorus, or Lybonuster. And these are the twelve Windes, according

to the foure Regions of the World. Aristotle, in his Booke of Heaven & the World, and in his Meteors, maketh mention of the Windes; but he neyther affigneth to them any names or number. Pliny notwithstanding, Seneca and Vegetim doe make mention of twelue, as the like also is done by our moderne Astrologers and Cosmographers, as namely 0rontius, Appianus, Gemma-Frisius, Henri-

cus Glareanus, Stoflerinus, Ioannes Berenus, Ioannes Fernelius, Robertus Valturinus, and many more beside. Vitruuius neuertheleffe, after he hath affigned the eight prin- Foure & rut. cipall Windes to their Regions: doth yet y winder granted by give two subakernate Windes to each of Vitrump. the other Windes; so that (by his account) there should be foure and twenty Windes.

Notwithstanding, to enstruct our better apprehension of the Windes, he presupposeth three Circles, whereof one ferueth for the opinion of foure Windes, the other is for that of eight, and the last windes, for that of twelve. Hee fetteth downe (befide)the names of the Windes, according as Marriners (and especially the Spamiards) have stiled them. Yet (in the mean while)it is to be observed, that the windes are alwayes conformed, to the qualities of the Regions from whence they come.

For the three Orientall or Eastwindes, that is to fay, Subsolanus, Cacias, and Vulturnus, are hot and dry: whereas windesto contrariwife, Zephyrus and his neighbors, their Regions which come from the West or Sun-set, are colde and moist: because the absence of the Sunne, maketh the Regions colde where those windes blow. As is easily discerned by the night time, which is e- The diffrence uermore colde, as also by places subjected betweenedy to flades, that are (ordinarily) coole and and night timet. fresh. From the same cause proceedeth humidity; for, as heate in the day time dryeth the Easterne windes: so on the contrary, moisture encreaseth in the nights coolenesse.

As for the three Septentrionall or Northerly Windes, they are cold and dry; be- Of the Norcause they come from colde Regions, & they have their rayes writhed and wrinckled. Their coldnes also causeth drinesse, which they borrow of the castern windes, that are their neighbours : and yet they can take no moviture from the Occidentall or Westerne windes, because their drought and humidity are directly contrary.

Come we now to the Meridionall or Southerly Windes, they are hot & moift: Of the Method because they derive their warmth from Southerly hot Regions, comming from where the winder Sunne heateth downe right: with this addition moreouer, that they are neighbors to the East windes, which are hot. Concerning their humidity, they draw it from

the Westerne windes, and vapours both of the Sea and Land. In Mountainy Regions, charged with Snowes, the Southerly winde may there get his moysture, as the like hee doth in fenny and muddy places: euen as drinesse may be caused by Plaines and champaigne grounds, so that they may be charged in the occurrences, according to the qualities of the windes. Here we are to obserue, that in every Region, the three windes comming thence, are all of one quality, & produce the same effects, which cause other effects (great or fmall) according to fuch as they happen to meete withall.

It resteth now to speake of the particular qualitie belonging to each winde. Beginne wee then with the right East winde, which is the most healthfull of all . For, it is subtile and pure, and partaketh more with choller, then his companions. His neighbour, blowing against the South, is more movil, and farre more furious then the former, and chargeth the ayre with cloudes. Aristotle sayth, that when this winde bloweth, all things do feeme more great and groffe, then they are indeede. The right winde of the South, causeth raines and tempelts, it troubleth the aire with cloudes, procuring pestilence and corruption. The winde Garbin, which is neighbor to the right West, is very tempestine, according vnto Virgill. But the Quest or West wind encreaseth seugme. and procureth thunders : it beginneth to blow, at the first appearing of the Spring. The direct Trimontana, which we call the right North winde, causeth colde and froft, it burneth floures and fruites, and purifieth a corrupted ayre. Now, in regarde it shutteth and locketh up the pores in mens bodies; this winde is helde very apt for health. As much may be fayde of

the other Septentrionall windes, which are his conforts or companions.

It is to be held then for a conclusion, that these windes proceede from vapours and hote exhalations, and that (in al) there are twelve: without depending vppon other allegories, affigned to some infant windes. The Spaniards hold for principall winds, those foure which come from of them. the foure parts of the world, to wit, East, West North and South . As for the other foure, they tooke their names from them precedent : for the North-east is betweene the North and East wind: that which is betweene the Sunne-fet and the South, is also called South-west, and the other betweene the East and South, is also termed South-east: these are their seuerall nominations.

Afterward, eight other were talked of, which are equally bi-parted betweene the former eight, being termed Collaterall, of interport fide or middle windes. As that which is betweene the North and the North-east, was called North-North-east: The other which is betwixt the East and the North, is called by the Spaniards Zefur-dest, and by French Marriners, North-east; that which is betweene the South and Southcast, is called South-South-east; and the other betweene East and South east, is named East-South-east. The other betweene South-west and East, is tearmed West-South-West; and so of the other in the same distinguishing: so that sixeteene Windes are equally distributed ouer the Earth. Some adde other fixeteene Windes beside, which they tearme | Sixteene Quarter windes, by which allowance, wee, windes called flould then have two and thirty windes: but these latter borrowe all their names of their neighbours. Thus much therefore may ferue for all the Windes.

number of the windes,&

tion & their appellations.

The end of the eight Booke.

Two other winder oppofite to the for-

A Southand

A South and

by Eaft-winde

Ariff in lib. Cotiat Mund.

Moderne A Arologers & Colmogra-



The Ninth Booke.

Of the Great Prouince of Moscouia: As also the Man-ners, Religion, and Power, of the Prince there Ruling. Divided into five severall Tractes.

CHAP. I.

In this first Tract, is contained a Cosmographicall description of the whole Countrey; the Climate and Soyle . Also what Shires or Regions are therein contained. What Commodities the feuerall parts of the land yeeldeth : And then a breefe Collection, of the principall Citties and Townes in Mofcouia or Russia.

ea,or Mofcu

Molcouia form

Sarmatia.

ren dinided

parts between

Veha North.

Coma or Rusia, a great norther. ly Region containingmorethen fiue hundred leagues in length. The principal Ci-tic thereof, being

called Mofca, or Mofcuua, greater then the Citty Paris in France, and leated on the River Molqua. I read alfo, that this Countrey was (fometimes) called Sarmatia, and came to varry or change from the name, by calling it felfe Rufsia, as beeing parted or divided into fundry fmall, yet abfolute Regiments negate designiding; or being in libication one to another.

Some of their Writers doe affirme, that the North partes of the Countrey, chanced to bee divided betweene foure Brethren, whose names were Trubor, Rurico, Sinces, and Parinus, and in that coun-

trey Language, when they speak the word Russe, it implyeth as much, as to part or diuide. They anouch likewise, that source other persons made the like partition of the South parts, as Kto, Scieko, Choranus, Diffonette and a Sifter of theirs, named Libeda; and cuery one termed his Province or Territory, according vnto his owne particular name : and so from this their division, the Countrey came to be called Rufsia, about the yeare of our Lord eight hundred and

At such time as it was called Sarmatia of the White it confifted of two peculiar Divisions Namely, the Blacke and White. White mates in their Sarmatia contained all that portion that diffine dividlyeth towards the North, and on the fide of Licefland, which Prouinces are now termed Duyna, Vagha, Vologda, Cargapolia, Nowogradia,8404 Newogradia being the chief and Metropolitane City of them all. The Blacke Sarmatia contained all the country Southward, towards the black or Euxine The bounder Sea, with the Dukedome of Valodemer of and bording of Mosco, Rezan, &c. It is bounded Northward by the Lappes and the north Ocean: On the Southfide by the Tartars, called Chrimes: Haftward they have the Nagaian Tartat, who poffeffethall the country of the Easi side of the Volaba, toward the Caspian Sear On the west and South-west border, lye Lituania, Liuonia, and Polonia.

All the Countrey beeing brought to the obedience of one Gouernor, do com prehend these cheese Shyres or Prouin-

The Kings c enniarka owner a. monalt the Rulica

place in the Emperors stile, because their house came first of the Dukes of that Countrey) Mosko, Nisnouogrod, Plaska, Smolensko, Nonogrod Velica (or Nouogrod of the Low countries) Roftone, Yaruflane, Bealozera, Bezan, Duyna, Cargapolia, Mcfchora, Vagha, Vstuga, Ghaletfa. These are the shyres naturally belonging to Moscouia or Russia; but farre greater and larger then the Shires of England; albeit I cannot fay that they are so well peopled. The other Countreyes or Prouinces, which the Emperors have wonne by power, and more lately annexed to their former Dominion, follow by these names . Twerra, Toughoria Permia Vadska Boulghoria Chernigo, Oudoria, Obdoria, Condora, beside a great part of Siberia, where the people, (though they are not naturall Ruffians) obey the Emperor of Russia or Mosconia, being gouerned by his Countrey Lawes; paying Taxes and Customes, even as his owne people doe. Ouer and beside all which, the Kingdomes of Caxan and A-Stracan (not long fince obtained by con-

quest) are under his command. Concerning all his possessions in Lituania (to the number of thirtie great Townes, and more) with Narue & Dorp unand Aftra in Liuonia: they are quite gone from him, beeing (of late yeares) furprized by the Kings of Poland and Sweden. The fore-named Provinces or Shires, are all reduced into foure Iurisdictions, tearmed by them Chetfyrds, as much to fay, as Tetrarchyes or fourth-parts, whereof wee shall have more occation to speake hereafter.

The whole countrey is of great length and bredth: for, from the North vnto the South (measuring from Cola to Astracan, leaning fomewhat Eastward) containeth in length about foure thoufand two hundred fixty miles, which they terme worft. And yet the Emperor hath more extendure Northward, farre beyond Cola, euen to the Rivet of Tromschma, which runneth a thousand verst or miles beyond Pechinga, necre to Wardboufe, yet not intire nor clearly limited, because the kings of Sweden and Denmarke, having divers Townes there, as well as the Ruffe; are plotted together, the one with the other, all of them laying claime to those whole North-parts as their owne peculiar right. As for the Countreyes bredth, from that part of the

ces. Volodomer (which beareth the first) Territory lying farthest Westward on the Narne fide, to the Eastward parts of Siberia, where the Emperors Garrisons are kept, is counted forty four thousand verst or miles, or thereabout. They holde a Verst to be a thousand paces, yet lesse(by a quarter) then an English Mile. If the whole Dominion of the Ruffian Empe- iors dominirour were all habitable, and peopled in al on not all ha places, he would either hardly hold it all bitable. within one Gouernment, or bee too potent for all his neighboring Princes.

> To speake somewhat of the Soile and Climate, for the most part it consisteth in Moscouis. of a flight fandy mould, yet differing farre in one place from another; for yeelding fuch things as the earth affoordeth! Concerning the Countrey North-ward, vnto Barren foyle the parts of Saint Nicholas and Cola, and and delart North-East towards Siberia; it is all verie woods. barren, and full of defert woodes, by reafon of the Clymate, and extremitie of the cold in winter.

> In like manner, along the riner Voleba, betweene the Countries of Casan and Affracan, where, though the foyle is fruitfull, yet it is vn-inhabited : except on the well fide of the river Folgha, where the Emperour hath fome few Castells, and garrifons in them . But this is occasioned The Quige & by the Chrim Tartar, who will nevther extraungane himselfe plant Townes to dwell there (as the Chrun delighting in an extrauagant and wilde Tartar. kinde of life) nor yet fuffer the Ruffe (who is farre off with the thrength of his Countrey) to people those paris.

> From Vologda, which lieth well-neare featien thousand verst from the Port of Saint Nicholas, downe toward Moske, and fo towards the South Port, bordering vpon the Chrim, contaying the like fpace of 1700. verst : it is a very pleasant and fruitfull Countrey, yeelding pasture and full and pleacorne, with woods and waters in great plentie. The like is betweene Rezun (lying South-calt from Mosko) to Nonegrad and Vobsko, the which reacheth furthell towards the mountaines: So betweene Mosko and Smolensko (lying South-west towards Lituania, is a very pleafant and fruitfull foyle.

To observe the whole Countrey, maketh a great difference from it felfe, in regard of the yeares courfe; viging a firange alteration, betweene Winter and Summer in Ruffis. All the Countrey lyeth in

Of the foyle

Chap.1.

Astrange in equality of the countrey in winter and Summer.

Mighty deepe Inowes and i ces in Molco-

The extream freezing cold of the countr

Divers froze to death with cold in Markets and frequeted ffreets and traue lers on their Sleds

An ad mirable in Molcouis

Winter vnder fnow, which falleth there | ly trauaile in a more delightfull countrey. continually, contayning (fometime) two vardes in thickeneffe, and yet farre greater towardes the North: the Rivers and Waters being all frozen ouer a yard and more in depth of crust, how broade or fwift in current focuer they bee, continuing to commonly for the space of five moneths; as from the beginning of Nouember, vntill it draw towardes the end of March, and then the Snowes begin to

Well may we judge of the ayres sharpnesse there; because Water dropping downe, or throwne vp into the Aire freezeth to Ice before it can fall to the groud. And let a man hold a dish or pot of pewter in his hand, during the extremitie of Winter (except in some chamber where the warme Stoaues are) and his fingers will freeze fast vnto it, euen to tearing the skin off at the parting with it. And let a man go out of a warme room into a cold, he shall sensibly feele his breath to grow starke, euen as stisling with the cold, drawing it in, and vrging it forth.

Many haue bene noted, not onely such as trauaile abroad, but others in the frequented Markets, and common streetes of Townes, to bee mortally pinched and meerely killed with colde. So that divers haue beene scene to droppe downe dead in the streetes, and many trauaylers are brought into the Townes, fitting stiffe and dead in their Sleds: yea, some haue loft their nofes, the tips of their cares, the balles of their checkes, their verie Toes, fecte,&c. Many times, when Winter is very hard and violent, Beares & Wolues haue come (by huge troopes) out of the woods, as enforced thereto by meer hunger, and entering into Townes and Villages, have rent and torne whatfoever they could finde or meete withall, whereby the inhabitants were enforced to flight, onely for fafery of their lines.

But when the Sommer is come, neuer was feene a more fresh and delicate countrey, the woods (confilling most of Firre and Birch) being fo fweet and louely; the Pastures and Meddowes so greene and well growne, yea and ypon a fodaine, fuch variety of Flowers, such harmonie of Birdes (chiefely of Nightingales, whose notes feeme more foud and variable, then in other countries) that no man can light-

From the fresh and speedy growth of the Spring there, the fnow grueth no meane Spring there, the inow greeting winter time reason of opinion, because all winter time the fedding a it feemeth as mantled in a white Liuerie, fresh spring in the Country the Country while, till Spring time, and then the Suns hear diffolueth it to water. All which, do fo sweetly sympathize with the ground, bestowing on it such sufficient drenching and foaking (being of a flight and fandie mould, chearing it againe with the funnes reverberating brightnesse) that it produceth quickly all hearbes and plants in extraordinary aboundance. So that, as win- The Winter ter there superaboundeth in colde, Som- net so colde, mer answeres it with so much the more as violendy heate: chiefely in Iune, Iuly, and August, hot, it equalling then the best ayres in any other Countrey.

Comming nowe to speake of the Riuers, the first is the famous Volgha, whose head or Spring arifeth at an Alder-trees roote, some two hundred Verst beyonde Taruslane. It entreth into such bignes by Of the prince the entercourse of other rivers gyring in- palriumin to it; that in fome places it extendeth in Molcouis, bredth a mile and more, till at length it cluefe, falleth into the Caspian sea, by estimation neere 2800 Verst or miles in length. Beristhenes is the second, called now Neper: dividing the country from Lituania, and thence having his course into the Buxine Sea. Tanais, otherwise termed Don (boun- Tanais, ding anciently betweene Asia and Europ) feemeth to have his rifing out of the Rezan Ozera, passing thorough the Chrim Rezan Ozer Tartares Countrey, till hee makes his fall into the Sca-lake, or great Meare, neere to the Cittie of Azon, called Maotis . Mentis Report runneth among the Ruffes, that from their cheefe Citty of Moleo, even to Constantinople, and so into all those parts of the world men may eafily make paf- An excellent fage by this River. But then the con-uoy Boate must bee drawne ouer a lit-uer. tle Istmus, some sewe Verstes thwartwife, as proofe was not long fince made

Duyna, being many hundred Miles in length, must bee remembred amongst the Duynas rest, falling North into the Bay of Saint Nicholas, and on the Sea-fide it hath great Rockes of Alablaster vppon each banke. Duna emprieth it selfe into the Balticke Duna, Sea, neere to the town of Riga. And then

is Onega, which some ninetie Verst from the port of Saint Nicholas, hath his downfall into the Bay at Solonet sco. Not far beneath Cargapolia, this river meeterh with another, called Volocke, which by Yama (a fmall Towne, droppeth into the Finland fea. Into which Sea, from Saint Nicholas Port, and so into the Sound, the Russes eafily paffe by water.

Suchana is another, which flowing into Duyna, runneth on into the North fea. As for Ocka, his head commeth from the Chrims borders, streaming on into Volgha. And Moleus glideth thorough the Cittie Miesco, borrowing his name thereof. Wichida likewise is a very long and spacious river, rifing out of Permia, and falling into the Volgha. So much for these memorable rivers in this country.

We come now to speak of those fruits as Malconia yeeldeth, which are in diners kinds; as Apples, Peares, Plums, Cherries red and blacke, but the black ones are wilde. Then have they a Deene, which is like to a Musk Mellon, but much more fweete and delicious. Also Cucumbers, Gourdes (which they tearme Arbouse,) Raspes, Straw-berries, and Hurtleberries, beside many other in great plenty; for euerie Woodde and hedge is well stored with them.

But if you demand of their Corne and Graine, they have Wheate, Rye, Barley, Oates, Peafe, Buckway, Plnytha, which resembleth Rice in taste. The Countrey is for bounding in these Graines, that it can allow a large ouer-plus quantity : for Wheate is sometime there solde for two Alteens the Chetfird, valewing ten pence sterling, and the measure amounteth well neere to three Bushels.

Concerning scasons of Husbandrie, Rye is there fowen before Winter, and all other graine in the Spring time. Such as dwell farre off in the North, and defere places, as the Permians, the partes more Southward do furnish them i beeing constrained yet (sometimes) to make Bread of a Rorte called Paghnon, and of the middle rind of the Firre tree, when any dearth

Natine commodities yeelded by the Countrey are many, and of good worth, for feruice of the peoples belt expectation, and benefitting the Emperor, by venting them abroad in the World : for the

cold of the Climate (being a naturall inconvenience) by Gods great goodnesse, is therein much remedied. Their cheefest Furres are Blacke Fox, Sables, Lufernes, The principal Dun-fox, Martrones, Gurnstalles or Armines, Lasets or Mineuer, Beuer, Wul- meichandize nerins, being the skinne of a great water-Rat, that finelleth naturally like Muske; Calaber or greene Squirrell, red Squirrel, red and white Fox, what plentie of these are spent in the Countrey (because the people weare Furres all the winter time) is almost incredible. And yet the Merchants fome yeares, transport thence, to the valew of foure or flue hundred thoufand Rubbles, to Turkie, Perfia, Boulgharia, Georgia, Armenia, with fome other of Christendome.

In the Countreyes of Pechora, Momgoforfria, Obdorskoy, and other places, do the best Sable furres growe; and the worfer in Siberia, Perm, and fuch like places. The blacke Foxe and red come from Siberia: as from Pechora the white and Dun: the Wolues and Beares skins (both beeing white) come also thence. Perm yeildeth the choylest Wuluerin, and the best Martrones come from Syberia, Cadam, Morum, Perm and Cazan, Gallets & Ouelites fend out the best Luserns, Mininer, and Erufines; yet some come from Nonogrod and Perm; and Murmonkey by Co-La hath the best breed of Beauers. Common Furres (with some of these fore-named) are in cuerie part of the Coun-

A fecond commoditie is waxe, which | Wax, wheref hath beene thint thence into far remote Countreves yearely, the valew of 50000. fortie pounde Pood. Honey also is there in great quantity, spent dayly in their ordinarie drinkes, which is Mead of all forts : and yet carried out of the Countrey in great abundance. Mordua and Cadam nere vnto Cheremiffen Tartar, yeeldeth the greatest encrease of Hony : but good ftore also commeth out of Severskoy, Regan, Morum, Casasi; Derogobole, and Walma.

Tallow is yeelded in great weight for Tallow. transportation, by reason of much good Many Lente ground for feeding Cattle; as also manie Lents observed among them. Partly befide, because the greatest personnes vie waxe Lights as the poorer and meaner fort do Byrch, dryed in their floues, being cut into long flices, called there Luchine-

The places that afford the very best furs in all their feuerall kindes.

Lefh & Cow-

Quelits, Nouegrod Vologda, Otfer and Gorodetskev. Another principal commodity is Losh and Cow-hides : their Losh and Buffe beeing very faire. Their Bull and Cow-

hide is but small of fize, for Oxen they make none, nor of weather. Strange Marchants have transported thence some yeares aboue an hundred thousand hides. beside great store of Goats skinnes, shipt also thence in large number. The breede for the fairest Losh or Buffe, is about Ro-Houe, Wichida, Nouogrod, Morum and Permas the leffer fort are in the kingdom of Caran. Traine Oyle, beeing made or drawne

out of the Seale-fish, is no mean commo-Traine Oyle. dity there. And because we are speaking of the Seale-fish, it shall not much diffent

After what

from our matter, to report in what manner they hunt the Seale, whereof afterward this Oyle is made. When the end of Summer draweth neere, and the frosts are not (as yet) begun; they descend with | Sope. manner they their boats into S. Nicholas Baye, to the they leave their boates till the next fpring tide. When the Sunne waxeth warme towards the fpring, and yet the ice not mel-

ted in the Bay; they return thither again, and drawing their Boats ouer the ice, vie them as houses to lodge and rest in. Commonly, there are about seauenteene or eighteene Fleete of them, being divided into divers companies, five or fixe boates

Such as light first upon the fifthes haunt

made to the other Companies, they re-

alwayes conforting together A Beacon fior refort, do fire a Beacon, carryed with them for the same purpose, and certaine warning. are appointed, to observe when the Bea-

viewito lode

round in a ring, as they ly Sunning themfulnes'together yponishe less being commonly foure or five thousand in a those; Theo cuery man, having a Clubbe in his hand enters frontly woon them; & if they his them on the noise then they are foone kilden But if on the backetor fides, they beard out the blowes fuffely, and manie times catch the chib fo falt, and holde it

downe with their teeth fo strongly, that os. Some yeares haue fent away by Shipthe party is forced to call for helpe to his ping, aboue an hundred thousand Poode yearely, which hath come out of the parts fellowes. and Territories of Smolensko, Yaruflaue,

The maner of the Seales is, when they perceiue themselues beset round about; trall behave to gather all close together, as in a throng or heape, to sway and beare downe the state of the Ice, and to breake it if they can: which fence. bending of the Ice, brings vp fuch a Sea-

water voon it, that the Hunters are faine to wade a foote or more deepe. When they have killed what they can, & intend no further flaughter at that time: the hunters fall to fharing, every boat his part by fpoile among equall portions. And so they flay them, taking off the skinne from the bodie, and the Lard or fat withall that cleaueth vnto the skinne, which they beare thence with them, going to the shore, leaving the bodies behind. Pits they dig in the ground, of a fathome & a halfe in depth, and hauing taken off the Fat or Larde from the skin, cast it into the pits, and then hurle in hot burning coales to melt it withall The vppermost and purest is fold, and v-

fer, being red of colour, they fell to make Great quantity also of Ickary or Canea-Ickary or Ca-Cape called Cusconesse or Foundse, where 7, is made vpon the river of Voleha, out of a Fish called Bellougina, the Sturgeon, the Severiga, and the Sterledey: most part whereof is shipt thence by French & Netherland Merchants for Italy, Spaine, and

fed to oyle wooll for cloth : but the grof-

England. Flaxe and Hempe is another commodity, whereof hath bene thipt at the Port Flax & Hemp of Narue, the more part of an hundered Ships small and great yearely. But great abatement is in these and other commodities, by shutting up the Port of Narue towards the Finland Sea, which is now in Great hinder possession of the Sweden. The stop of past- rance in vea fage also ouer land, by the way of Smor commodite

con shall be fired; whereof report beeing linite and Plotte, in regard of warre with made to the other Companies, they refort all together, compassing the Seals | beleffe carefull in prouiding these and or ther commodities because they want sale. Por growth of Flax, the Prouince of Vobske and country thereabout is chiefe: like as Smolensko, Dorogobofe, and Vasma is for

> Great flore of Salt the Countrey mas Salt, where keth, wherebiebe best is at Storaroufe in fome is male very great quantity, having flote of Saltwols, fometwo hundred hity nine Verft

from the Sea. But at A tracan, Salt is naturally made by the Sea-water, which cafleth it vp in great hilles, from whence it is digged downe, and carryed away by Merchants, or any that will fetch of it. Three pence Ruffe is payed to the Emperour vpon cuery hundred weight of Salt, which is likewise made in many other places, as in Berm, Wichida, Totina, Kenitima, Souvletskey, Jrc. all out of Salt-pits, except at Solouetskey, which lyeth neare vnto the Tarre also they make great store of,

Tarre a great

Slude, which

their Mosco

talls are in

out of Firre trees in the Country of Dayna and Smolensko, fending no meane plenty theteof abroade. To these before remembred, there are many more (naturall to the countrey) though of meaner estimation : As the fish-tooth, which they call Ribazuba, vied both amongeft themfence, and the Perfians and Bougharians, who fetch it thence for Beades, Kniues and Sword-handles for Noblemen and Gentlemen, and diverse other vses.

Some doe vie the powder of it against poyfon; like to Vnicornes horne, and the fifth that oweth it, is called a Morfe, beeing caught about Pechora : Some of these teeth are well-neare two foote in length, and do weigh cleaven or twelve pounds each tooth.

There is a foft Rocke, which they doe cutte into peeces or into thinne flakes, and are naturally to bee vied and employed as Glaffe, for Lant-hornes and fuch like : but yet yet is not fo brittle in breaking as Glaffe, yet it dooth give a farre clearer light. They doe tearme it slude, and it groweth in the Pronince of Corelia, and about the Riner Duyna, towardes the Salt-peter & North Sca.

Befides, they make Salt-peter in many places, as at Onglites, Tarullaine, and Vilug; with fome meane ftore of Brimstone uppon the River Polehal but they want skill to refine it.

As for their Iron, it is but brittle; yet much thereof is made in Carelia, Cargapoleia, and V Stug Thelefna, for other mines they have none growing within the king-What Arange

As for Beafts of ftrange kindes, they hane the Loth, the Oilen, the wilde Horfe, the Wulucring or Wood dogge, the Lyferne, the Beauer, the Sable, the Martroun, the blacke and dunne Fox, the

white Beare, towards the Sea-coast of Pechora, the Gurnstall, and the Laset or Miniuer. Likewise, there is a kinde of Squirrell, having growing on the pinion of his shoulder bone, a long tuft of haire, much like vnto feathers, with a farre broader taile then other Squirrels haue, which they doe moone and thake, as they mone Squirrell.

from tree to tree, like to a Wing in refemblance, and feeming as if they flewe thereby, whereby they were called, Letach Vechsbe, that is to say, flying Squirrells. In the Summer their Hares and

Squirrells are of the fame colour as other Hares milke are; but in Winter, the Hare changeth white. her coate into milke-white, and the Squirrell into grey, and thereof is it that the Calaber commerh.

Fallow Deere likewise they have, the Fallow deere, Roe Bucke, and great plenty and flore Roe Bucks, of Goates. Their horffes are but small. yet fwift and hard, and both in Winter and Summer, they travell them vnfhod, vling no respect at all of pace. Small are their sheepe, bearing harsh and course wooll, not so apt and convenient for the making of Cloath, as is affoorded in diuers other Countries, nor of fo good a

Of Foules they have of the principal! Foules of dikindes; and great flore of Hawkes, as alfo the Eagle, the Ger-faulcon, the Slight- and tame. faulcon, the Gof hawke, the Taffell, the

Spar-hawke. But the principall Hawke breeding in the Countrey is counted the Ger-faulcon . We may not forget other chiefe Foules, as the Swanne wilde and tame in great plentie; the Storke, the Crane, the Tedder, refembling a Feafant in colour, but much bigger, and liueth in the Firrewoods. Of Pheazant and Partridge they have great plenty; and an Owle, fo great and ougly to beholde, as few countries affoorde the like, with a huge broad face, and eares much like to a

We come now to speake of fresh-wa- Varietie of ter Fifh, besides the common fort; as Fish and o-Carpes, Pikes, Pearch, Tench, Roach, &c. ther befide. they have dinerfe kindes very good and delicate. As the Bellouga or Bellougina, of foure or fine elles in length; the O/irrina or Sturgeon, the Seneriga and Sterledy, fomewhat in rashion and in taste like voto

the Sturgeon, but not fo thicke, nor fo

long.

Bbbb

, Thefe

red to giuc

How they fo vyon the Scales with

These foure kindes of Fish breed in the Volgha, and are there catcht in great abundance, feruing generally (as a great food) to the whole kingdome. And of the roes of these foure fishes, are made very great store of icary or Caneary. Besides these breeding in the Volgha,

The Ribabela or white Salmon.

The Moleouia fresh herring

the cheefest Citties in Mo fcouiz or Ruf-

litie in the description, wee enter into a relation of the chiefe and principall Citties in Moscouia or Russia, and as our direction guideth vs, thefe are their names.

to all parts of the Realme.

thing the Emperor hath an yearely large

custome, which they practife in the Sum-

mer : but fend it frozen in the Winter in-

Now, because wee aymed at a forma-

I Mosko. Nouograd. Rostoue. Volodomer. Plesko. Smolensko. Iarustaue. Peristane. 9 Nisnouograd. 10 Vologda.

11 Vfliuck. 12 Golmigree.

12 Cazan. 14 Astracan.

15 Cargapolia. 16 Columna.

The Citty of Mosco is supposed to bee The Citie of of great antiquitie, though the first foun-Molco very der thereof be vnknowne to the Moscouites or Ruffe. It feemeth to derine the name from the river, running on the one fide thereof. Berofus the Chaldean telleth

Berofus in li. vs, that Nimred (in other profane Stories Molcus plan called Saturne) fent Affyrius Medus, Mofsed Colonies in A fia and Hurope, and Mo'co feemes cus and Magog into Alia, to plant Colo-10 take name some probabilitie, that the City, or rather the River whereon it is built, tooke the

denomination from this Moscus. And so much the rather, because of the Climate or scituation, which is in the very furthest part and lift of Europe, bordering voon

It appeareth, that this Citie was much enlarged by one Euan or Iohn fonne vnto ging the tide of Daniell, the first that changed his Title of Duke into Duke into King; though that honor con-

they have a Fish called Ribabela, or white Salmon, which they hold to be more detinued not to his posteritie, the rather, licate then the red Salmon, having alfo because hee was innested into it by the great plenty of them in the Rivers north-Popes Legate, who at that time was Inward, as in Duyna and Cola, oc. In the Onocentius the fourth about the yere 1246. zera, or Lake neare to Perissaue, they have which was much misliked by the Russe a small Fish, which they call the fresh herpeople, being then a part of the Easterne ring, of the same fashion, and tasting also like a Sea herring . From the trades of fi-

or Greeke Church . Since that time, the name of that Cittle hath growne more famous, and much better knowne to the world. Infomuch, that not only the pro-uince, but the whole country of Mafcouia the Citic. or Russia, is termed by some, by the name

of Moscouia the Metropolite Cittie. The forme of this Citty is (in a maner) The model or

round, with three ftrong walles, circuling forme of the the one within the other, and ftreetes lying betweene, wherof the in-most wall, and the buildings closed within it, lying fo fast (as the heart within the body) fenced and watred with the Riner Moskua, which runneth close by it; is all accounted the Emperours Castell. The number

of houses through the whole Citty (being reckoned a litle before it was fiered by the Chrim) were 41500. Since the Tartar be- fore the Class fieged and fiered it (which was in the yere fiering. 1571.) there doth lye waste of it a great breadth of ground, which before was wel Chrim Tstfet and planted with buildings; especially turficred the that part on the South fide of Moskua, Ciuic,

built(not long before) by Bafilius the Em-

perour for his garrison of Souldiours, to whom he gaue privilege to drinke Mead and Beere, at the drie or prohibited times. And for that cause called his new Cittie Naloi, that is to fay, Skinke or poure A name gluen

in, So that now the Cittie of Mosco is not much bigger then the Citty of London in England. The next in greatnesse, and (in a man-

ner) as large, is the Citty Nouograde, Nouograde where happened (as the Ruffe fayth) the city to Mofo. memorable warre, fo much spoken of in niesthere, and that Mofcus planted both Histories, of the Scythian servants, that in Afia and Europe. Which may make tooke vppe Armes against their Maisters, which they have reported to be after this manner.

Chapin. Of the Country Climate and People.

The historie uants warre against their Maifters, at their returning home from the Tar tats warre.

Tartars. Which being well perfourmed and ended by them they returned homewards. Where they understoode by the way, that their Cholopey I or Bondflaues whom they left at home, had (in their abfence) poffeffed their townes, lands, honfes, wines and all. Ar which newes being somewhat amazed, and yet

dildayning the villance of their fernances they made the more speed home, and fo. not farre from Nouograde, mette them in warrelike maner marching against them. My hereupon, aduiting what was best to be done, they all agreed, to fet yppon them with no other fhew of weapons, but

Aworthy To-Solution in Mailters a gainst their

with their horse whippes (which as their manner is, every man rideth withall) to

put them in remembrance of their fertile together with dents or notches at cuerie condition. thereby to terrific them and abate their courage . And fo marching corner; and fo clapped fast together. Betwixt the trees of timber, they thruft on, lashing all together with their whips in Mosle, whereof they gather plenty in in their hands, they gave the on-fette which seemed so terrible in the cares of the woods, to keepe out the ayre : And the villaines, and ftrooke fuch a fence inenery house hath a paire of staires, which to them of the whips finart (whereof they leade vpge into the chambers out of the had (harpely) tafted before) that they all yard or threete, after the Scottish maner. fled together, euen like theepe before This building appeareth farre better for their drivers. In memorie of which victorie, the Naugradians (euer fince) have stamped their Coine, which they call a colde, then those woodden houses; e-

horsebacke, shaking a witip aloft in his hand. These two Citties exceede the reft in greatnelle. Inuffaue the For frength , their chiefe Cittles ard Volifco, Smolenico, Canan and Astracan, as all lying vpon the borders; but for scituation, Yarullane farre exceedeth all the

Dingae Nouogredskot, currant through

all Russia: with the figure of a man on

reft. Begaufe, belide those commodities veelded by pasturage and corne, it lieth ypon the famous river Polaba, and lookes ouer it, from a banke most faire and stately to beholde, whereof the Towne taketh | till all bequite confirmed.

decree

The Bolardines or Gentlemen of No- | name . For Laruflane (in that language) ungrade, and the adjacent torritories (that | fignifieth a faire and famous banke. In onely are Souldiers afred the discipline this Cittle (as may be well imagined by of those countries) had warre with the i that name) dwelt the Moscoulan or Russe King Vlademir, furnamed Irruflaue : that

married the daughter to Harold King of A Mofcoulan England, by mediation of Sueno the Dane, as the Danish historie restifieth, about the king of the yeare of our Lord God, one thousand Englands fixty featien.

Nothing greatly memorable, is to be spoken of the other Cittles and Townes, but onely ruines within their walles: which declareth the peoples decrease vnder this gouernement. In flead of pa-

uing , the freetes (in their Townes and Pauing of the Cittles) are plancked with Firre trees, plained and layd even close one to an o-

ther. Their houses are of wood, with- The Moscoul out any Lime or Stone, built very close an manner of and warme, with Firre trees playned, and building their houses. layd one uppon another, being fastened

their Countrey, then that of Stone and Brickes because they are danker and more Bricke and consenient specially them of Firre, which is a verie building in drie and warme kinde of wood: whereof Mofcount.

thirty Rubbels, or litle more where wood

Onely the greatest inconvenience of The danger their woodden building, is the aptnoffe denhouses. for fiering, which happenech there verie often, and in as fearefull fort, by reafon of the drienetle and fatnetle of the Firre.

that beeing once fiered, it burneth like

voto a Torch, and is hardly quenched,

God hath prouided them such store, that

a faire house may be built for twenty or

Bbbb 2

GHAP

CHAP. IL

Our fecond Tract relateth of what Linage or house the great Emperors are descended: And a view of their enstalment or Inauguration in that Supreame dignitie: with the form of publike Government, & order observed in holding their Parliaments. Then, of the Nobility, dignifying the state, with the regiment of their Provinces, and Councell attending upon the Emperour: His Customes, Revenueros & Sophismes; and a breefe relation of the Comminaltie. in their obedience and fernice.

Originall of an Imperiall house from the kings of Hungary.

HE sirname of the Imperiil house of Moscoma or Rus-sia, is called Beala, receiving Original (as is supposed) from the kings of Hungaria, which may appeare the more probable;

because the Hungarian Kings (many years fince) have borne that name, as is noted by Bonfinius, and other Histories written of that Countrey. For, about the yeare, 1059, mention is made of one Beala, that succeeded his brother Andreas, who reducedethe Hungarians to the Christian Faith, from which they were faln by Turkish perswasion before. The second of that name was called Beala the Blinde, after whome succeeded diners of the same name.

That their Angestours came not of the Ruffe Nation, Iuan Vafilowich (Father to this Emperour) would many times boall. disdaining (as it should seems) to have his progeny defined from the Ruffian blood. As namely, to an English-man his Goldsmith, that lind received Bullion of him to make certaine Plate: whom the Emperour commanded, to looke wel to his weight. For my Ruffes (laid he) are all Thecues. Whereat the workman, looking Redfallly vpon the Emperor, began

to finile. The Emperour being of verie quicke conceite, charged him to tell, what hee

fmiled at. If your Maiefly will pardon me (quoth the Gold-smith) I will tell you. Your Highnessesayde, that all the Rus-

fes were Theenes, and forgotte (in the meane while) that your felfe was a Ruffe. I thought fo layde the Emperor, but thou art deceyned, for I am no Ruffe: my Ancestours were Germaines (for so they ac-

count the Hungarians, to bee part of the Germaine Nation) although (indeede) they come of the Hunnes, who mollefled and inuaded that country, and refled in those partes of Pannonia, now called

How they aspired to the Dukedome of Valodemer (which was their first degree, and ingrafting into Mosconia.) And whether it were by Conquest, or by Matriage, or by what other meanes; no certainty is to be learned among them. But from these beginnings, of a small Duke. How first they dom (which bare notwithstanding an abfolute gouernment with it, as at that time Volodemer did all the other Shires or Provinces of norknowne. Mesconia) this house of Beala spred it selfe foorth, and aspired (by degrees) vnto the Monarchie of the whole Countrey, as it is a thing well knowne, and but of late memory.

The cheefe of that house, that aduan- The adumet ced the Stocke, and enlarged their Do- ment of the minions: were the three last that reigned before this Emperour, to witte, Juan Bufilieus, and Iwan, Father to the other that reigneth at this time. Whereof the first that tooke vnto him the Name and Title of Emperor, was Bafilieus, Fa. ther to Inan, and Grandfather vinco this man. For (before that time) they onely were contented, to bee called by the Name of Great Dukes of Mosco or Mos-

What hath beene done by eyther Reference to of these three, and how much they have a place of bet added vnto their first estate, eyther by ency. Conquest, or otherwise; wee shall thew more at large, when we come to speake of their Collonies, or purchafes perforce. For the continuance of the race. this House of Beala at this present, is in like case, as are many of the greatest Houses of Christendome, (Viz:) the whole Stocke and Race, concluded in one, two, or some sewe of the blood. For, besides the Emperour that now is, who hath no childe (neyther is like cuer

Of Muscouia or Russia. Chap. 1. ctured by the constitution of his bodye, and barrenuesse of his wife, after so ma-

ny yeares marriage) there is but one more, which is a Childe of fixe or feauen yeares olde, in whom resteth all the hope of succession, and posteritie of that

A great mifhap & much fing also the

As for the other Brother, that was eldeft of the three, and of the best toward neffe: hee dyed of a blow given him by his Father yppon the head (in furie) with his walking Staffe, or (as fome fay) of a thrust with the prong of it, driuen deep into his head. That hee meant him no. fuch mortall harme, when hee gaue him the blowe, appeared by his wonderfull great mourning and passion after his Sonnes vntimely death; which never left him, vntill it brought him to his Graue Wherein may bee noted the Inflice of God, that punnished his delight in shedding of blood, with this murther of his Sonne by his owne hand. And fo ended his dayes and tyranny together, with the murthering of himfelfe by extream greef,

The Emperours younger Brother,

Treachery at-

of fixe or feauen yeares olde (as was faid before;) is kept in a remote place from the Mosko, under the tuition and government of his Mother, and her Kindred, of the house of the Nagates ; yet not fafe (as I have heard) from atempts of making

> diately. That he is the Naturall Sonne vnto Iuan Vafilowich, the Ruffe people warrant it, by the fathers qualities, which appear alreadie in his tender yeeres. He delights to fee Sheepe and other Cattle kilde, and to looke on their throates, while they are

away, by practife of fome that would a-

fpire vnto the Crowne, if the Emperour

dye without any yffue. For the Nurfe

that tailed before him of certaine meate,

(as I have heard reported) dyed imme-

bleeding (which commonly, children are affrayde to beholde) and to beate Geefe and Hennes with a Staffe, till he fee them

Another title of inheritance

Qualities of

Besides these of the maste kinde, there is a Widdow, that hath right in the fuccession, Sister to the olde Emperour, and Aunt to him living; fometime wife vnto Magnus, Duke of Holit, Brother to the the Emperor fetteth foot into the church

to have, for ought that can bee conie- | King of Denmarke, by whom the had one daughter.

This Woman', fince the death of her Husband, hath beene allured againe into Russia, by some that love the succession better then her selfe, which appeareth by the fequele. For her felfe, with her daughter, so soone as they were returned againe into Russia, were thrust into a Nunnery, where her daughter dyed this last yeare; but of no naturall disease, as was supposed. The Mother remaineth still in the

Nunnery, bewayling her felfe, and cur-fing the time when thee returned into Nunnery, the Rufsia, enticed with the hope of Marti- Mother liveth age, and many other fayre promifes in an meane anguith, the Emperours name. And thus it standeth with the Imperiall stocke of Russia, of the House of Beala, which is like to determine in those that now are, and to make a conversion of the Russe Estate. If it bee into a Governement of some better temper, and milder conflictation; it will bee happie for the people, that are nowe oppressed with intollerable seinifor this his vuhappy, and most vunatural

Our nexte Discourse, must extend it felfe, to report fuch folemnities, as are commonly vsed at the Russe Emperors Corronation, which followeth in this

Of the manner of Crow-

ning or Inauguration of the Ruffe Emperors

HE folemnities vsed at the Rulfe Emperors Corronation, are on this manner. In the great Church of Prechethe Emperours Caffle, is erected a stage, whereon frandeth a Screene, that beareth

vppon it the Imperiall Cappe and Robe. of exceeding rich stuffe. When the day of Inauguration is come, there reforte thether, first the Patriarche with the Me- The lecelesiatropolitanes, Arch bythops, Bythoppes, dants. Abbots, and Priors, alrichly clad in their Pontificalibus. Then enter the Deacons, with the Quier of fingers: who fo foon as

Bbbb 3

begin

Familiar talk betweene the Emperer, and an Englith Goldfinith,

The liquide

Bealæ not na

turally Moi-

Ruffe,

begin to fing: Many yeares may line noble Robe and the Cap, he bleffeth the Em-Theodore Inanowich, &c. Whereunto the | peror with the figne of the Croffe: fayof the Cleargy, answere with a certaine Hymne, in forme of a prayer, finging it al being ended, the Patriarch with the Emperor mount up the stage, where standeth a feat ready for the Emperour . Whereon the Patriarch willeth him to fit down, and then placing himfelfe by him, vppon another seate prouided for that purpose, boweth down his head toward the groud, and faith this prayer.

The prayer vetered by the Patriarch, before the Coronation

Oh Lord God, King of Kinges, Lord of Lords, which by the Prophet Samuell diddest King ouer thy people ifrael; heare nowe our this thy ferwant Theodore, whomethou hast chosen, and exalted for King, ouer these thy of Iustice, strengthen his arme, make Subjett feare be in his whole heart; turne him from of all Russia. &c. an cuill Faith, and from all errour, and shew him the faluation of thy holie and vniver fall Church; that he may judge thy people with Iustice, and protect the children of the poores Nobility, and the whol companie in their Emperor. and finally attaine everlasting life. This praier he speaketh with a low voyce, and then pronounceth alowd: All praise and power to God the Father, the Sonne, and the holy.

The Ceremo mies tobee vfed in order.

The prayer being ended, he commandeth certaine Abbots to reach the Imperiall Robe and Cap; which is done verie decently, and with great folemnitie, the Patriarch withall pronouncing alowde; Peace be voto all. And so he beginneth another prayer to this effect: Bow your felues together with us, and pray to him that reigneth ouer all. Preferue him (O Lord) under thy protection, keepe him that he may do good and holy things, let iustice shine foorth in his

alowd: Thou art the King of the whol world, and the Saujour of our foules, to thee the Faeuer and euer, Amen. Then putting on the many other Countries, &c.

Patriarch and Metropolite, with the rest | ing withall; In the name of the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost . The like is done by the Metropolites, Arch-byshops, and together, with a great noise. The Hymne | Byshops: who all in their order come to the Chaire, and one after another, doe bleffe the Emperor with their two fore-

Then is saide by the Patriarch another According to prayer, that beginneth, Omost holy Virgin, their ancien mother of God drc. After which, a Deacon custome pronounceth with an high lowde voyce: Manieyeares to Noble Theodore, good, honourable beloved of God, great Duke of Volodemer of Mosko, Emperour, and Monarch chuse thy servant Danid, and annoint him for of all Russia, Go. Wherto the other priests and Deacons, that stand somewhat far off Prayers, and looke from thy Sanctuarie upon by the Altar or Table, answere singing: Many yeares, many yeares to the noble Theodore. The same note is taken uppe by the boly Nations. Annoint him with the Oyle of Priestes and Deacons, that are placed at gladnelle, protest him by thy power put woon the right and left fide of the Church, land his head a Crowne of Gold of precious stones, then all together they chaunt and thungive him length of dayes, place him in the feat | der out, finging; Many yeeres to the noble Theodore, good, honourable, belowed of God, unto him all the barbarous Nations. Let thy great Duke of Volodemer, Mosko, Emperour

> Thefe folemnities being ended, first cometh the Patriarch with the Metropolits, Arch-byshops, and Byshoppes; then the done to the order, to doe homage vnto the Emperour, bending downe theyr heades, and knocking them at his feete vnto the very

The Stile wherewith hee is inuested at his Corronation,

runneth after this

Heodore Iuanowich, by the Grace of God, great Lord and Emperor of all Rufsia great Duke of Volodemer, Mosko, and Nouograd, King of Cazan, King of Astracan, Lord of Plesko, and great Duke of Smodayes, that we may line quietly without strife lensko, of Twerria, longhoria, Permia, Vadska, Bulghoria, and others. Lord and great This is pronounced formwhat foftly by Duke of Nouograd of the Low Countreyes, the Patriarch, whereto he addeth againe of Chernigo, Rezan, Polotskoy, Rostone, Yarustanely, Bealozera, Liefland, Oudoria, Obdoria, and Condensa: Commander of all Sither, Sonne, and Holy Ghost, be all praise for beria, and of the North partes, and Lorde of

This

perors Proninces, and fetteth foorth his greatnesse. And therefore they have a very great delight and pride init, forcing power to make warre or league with any force not onely their owne people, but likewife strangers (that have any matter to deliver to the Emperor by speech or writing) to repeate the whole forme from the beginning to the end. Which breedeth much cauill, and sometimes quarrell, betwixt them and the Tartar, and Poland Ambasfadors; who refuse to call him Czar, that is Emperor, and to repeat the other parts

The manner of their Gouernement,

is much after the Turkish fashion: which

they doe seeme to imitate as neere as the

Countrey, and reach of their capacities

(in politick affayres) will give them leave

The State or orme of their ouernment.

of his long style.

Chap. 2.

The Emperor proud of his

many Titles.

The Ruffe go uernment ty-

Exaction in

Prince.

to doc. The State and forme of their Gouernement is plaine tyrannicall, as applying all to the behoofe of the Prince, and that after a most open and barbarous manner;as may appeare by the Sophismata, or secrets of their Gouernment afterward set down, aswel for the keeping of the Nobility and Commons in an under proportion, and farre vneuen ballance in their feuerall degrees; as also in their impositions and exactions, wherein they exceed al iust meafure, without any regard of Nobilitic 01 people.

Furthermore, it giueth the Nobilitie a kinde of iniust, and vnmeasured liberty, No lemen oto command and exact uppon the Commons and bafer fortof people, in all parts of the Realme wherefocuer they come,especially in the place where theyr Lands lye, or where they are appointed by the Emperor to gouerne vnder him. Also to the Commons some small contentment, in that they passe ouer their lands (by difcent of inheritance) to whither fon they will: which commonly they do after our Gauill kinde, and dispose of their goodes by gift or Testament, without anie controulment. Wherein notwithstanding. both Nobility and Commons are but floand Comons, florers for the rers for the Prince, all running in the end into the Emperors Coffers : as may appear by the practife of enriching his treafurie, and the manner of Exactions fette downe in the title of his Customes and Reuennewes.

Concerning the principall points and

This flyle containeth in it all the Em- | matters of State, wherein the Soueraignty confisteth (as the making and annulling of publike Lawes, the making of Magestrats, raine State, to execute or to pardon life, with the right of appeale in all matters, both civill and criminall) they doe so wholly and abfolutely pertaine to the Emperor and his Councell under him; as that hee may be faide to be the Soueraigne Commanders and the executioner of all thefe. For, as touching any Law or publike order of the Realme, it is euer determined of, before any publike Affembly or Parliament bee fummoned, Where befides his Councel, he hath none other to consult with him of fuch matters as are concluded before had but onely a few Bythoppes, Abbots, and Friars: to no other end, then to make aduantage of the peoples superstitions, euen against themselves which think to be holy and inft, that paffeth with confent of their Byshops and Cleargy men, whatsocuer it bee.

For which purpose, the Emperors are Benefit made content to make much of the corupt state by corruption of the Church, as now it is among them, and to nourith the same by extraordinary fauours and immunities to the Byshopps Seas, Abbeyes, and Fryaries: as knowing, superstition and false Religion best to agree with a tyrannicall State, and to be a speciall meanes to vphold and maintaine the fame.

Secondly, as touching the publique Offices and Magistracies of the Realme, by the Empethere is none Hereditarie, neyther any fo | tor himfelte. great nor so little in that Countrey, but the bestowing of it, is done immediately by the Emperour himselfe. Infomuch, that the very Diackes or Clearkes in enery head Towne, are (for the most part) asfigned by himfelfe. Notwithstanding, the Emperor that now is (the better to entend his Denotions) referreth al such mat ters pertaining to the State, wholly to the ordering of his VV ines brother, the Lord Borris Federowich Godonoe.

Thirdly, the like is to bee faide of the Of judiciall Inrifdiction, concerning matters judicial, matters conspecially such as concerne life and death . Wherein there is none that hath any authority, or publike Iurifdiction that goeth by discent, or is held by Charter; but al at the appointment and pleasure of the Emperour.

And



Offices giuen

cerning life &

The Empetors power o uer life.

Of appeales and pardon in criminal ca

The Empres her tree par.

The manner their Patha-

No commons in Parliament

The order of the fummons

And the same practised by the ludges | begin. Which commonly is vpon Friday with fuch awe and restraint; as that they dare not determine vpon any special matter, but must referre the same wholly, vp the Mosko to the Emperours Councell. To shew his Soueraignty ouer the lines of his Subjects, the late Emperour Iuan Valilowich (in his walkes or progresses) if man whom hee met by the way, or that looked vpon him; would command his head to be strook off. Which was presently done, and the head cast before him.

Fourthly, for the foueraigne appeale, and giving of pardons in criminal matters to fuch as are convicted; it is wholly at the plefure and grace of the Emperor. Wherein also the Empresse that now is. being a woman of great clemency, and withall, delighting to deale in publike affaires of the Realme, (the rather to supply the defect of her husband) doth behaue her felfe after an absolute manner, giving out pardon (specially on her birth day, & other folemne times) in her ownename, by open Proclamation, without any mention at all of the Emperor.

Their highest Court of publike confultation for matter of State is called the Zabore, that is, the Publike Affembly. The states and degrees of persons that are prefent at their Parliaments, are thefe in order. First, the Emperour himselfe. Secondly, fome of his Nobility, about the number of twenty, being all of his Councell. Thirdly, certaine of the Cleargymen,&c.about the same number. As for Burghers, or other to represent the Comminalty, they have no place there: the people beeing of no better account with them, then as feruants or bondflaues, that are to obey, not to make lawes, nor to know any thing of publike matters, before they are concluded.

The Court of Parliament (called Zabore) is held in this manner. The Emperour caufeth to be fummoned fuch of his Nobility, as himfelfe thinketh meete, being (as was faid) all of his Councell: together with the Patriarch, who calleth his Cleargy, to wit, the two Metropolites, the two Archbishops, with such Bishops. Abbost, and Fryars, as are of best account and reputation among them. When they are all affembled at the Emperors Court, the day is intimated when the Session shall

for the religion of that day.

When the day is come, the Cleargymen assemble before, at the time & place The place of appointed, which is called the Stolly. And meeting for when the Emperous commeth attended the affembly, by his Nobility, they arife all, and meete him in an out-roome, following their Pahe had milliked the face or person of any triarch, who bleffeth the Emperour with his two fore-fingers, laying them on his forchead, and the fides of his face, & then kisseth him on the right side of his breast. So they passe on into their Parliament house, where they sit in this order. The Emperor is enthronized on the one fide Their maner of the Chamber. In the next place, not of fitting in farre from him, at a small square Table (that giveth roome to twelve persons or thereabouts) sitteth the Patriarch, with the Metropolites and Bishops, & certaine of the principall Nobility of the Emperours Councell, together with two Diacks or Secretaries (called Dumnoy Dyakey) that enact that which passeth. The rest place themselues on Benches round about the Roome, euery man in his ranck after his degree. Then is there propounded by one of the Secretaries (who representeth the Speaker) the cause of their assembly, and the principal matters that they are to confider of. For to propound bils, what euery man thinketh good for the publike benefit (as in other Countries is vsed) the Russe Parliament alloweth no fuch custome, nor liberty to subjects.

> The points being opened, the Patri- Their difarch (with his Cleargy-men) have the course at Parprerogatiue, to be first asked their vote, or liament. opinion, what they thinke of the pointes propounded by the Secretary. Whereto they answere in order, according to their degrees, but all in one forme, without any discourse : as having learned their Lesson before, that serueth their turnes at al Parliaments alike what soeuer is propounded. Commonly it is to this effect. That the Emperor and his Councell are of great wife- The effect of dome, and experience, touching the pollicies propounded, and publike affaires of the Realme, and farre better able to judge what is profitable for the Common-wealth, then they are, which attend upon the service of God onely, and matters of Religion. And therefore it may pleafe them to proceede. That instead of their aduise they will asde them with their prayers as their du-

by, and by bat means an under pro recable 10

Of the Nobi

at State.

Chap. 2.0 ties and vocations do require of the Tosbie | wards (referring their rights upon comor like effect hauling made their aplweren euery man in his courfe yp Randeth foms Abbot or Fryar, more bold then the reff (yet appointed before hand as himseter of forme) and definesh the Emperor it wold please his Maielty to command to be de linered vinto them, what his Maielies owne judgement, and determinate plos fute is as touching those matters propounded by his Deicke?

..... Vy bareto is replied by the faide Secretary, in the Emperors name, That be Highnelle, with thele of his Noble Cauncell (wpop good and found aduica) have found the moisers propoled, so bec wary good and negallary for the Common woolen of his Reuling , Natwishit anding fora much as they are relieious men, and know what is right; bis Maiesty requireth their godly ontnions, yea and their censures tog for the approvine or correctine of the Saide propositionsu And therefore defireth them againe, to speake their mindes freely. And if they shall like to give their consents, that then the mattens may paffe to a full conclusion.

Hecreunto, when the Gleargy-men have given their confents (which they ye to do without any great pauling) they takotheir leaues with bleffing of the Emperor: who bringesh the Patriarch on his way to farre as the next Roome, and fo returneth to his feate, till allbe made ready for his returne homeward. The Actes that thus are passed by the Zabore or Parliament, the Detaken or Secretaries draw into a forme of Proclamation, which they fond abroad into every Province, & head towns of the Realme, to bee published there, by the Dukes & Deiakeis, or Secreraries of those places. The Session of Parliament being fully ended; the Emperour inniteth the Cleargy-men to a folemne Dinner. And so they depart enery man to his home.

... The degrees of persons at estates of Russia (besides the Soucraigne State or Emperour himfelfe) are these in order. First the Mobility which is of four forts. Whereof the chiefe for birth, authority. and renonnue, are balled the Vdelney Knasex, that is, the exempt or priniledged Dukes. These held fometime a souerall iunifdiction, and absolute authority within their Precincts, much like vnto the States or Nobles of Germany. But after-

polition) shey yeelded then felues to this house of Beales) when it began to waxe mighty, and to enlarge it felfe by our marching their neighbours. Onely they were bound to ferue the Emperour in his warren, with a certaine number of horse. But the late Emperout Juan Kafilewich. Father to this Prince, beging a man of high fpirith and fubtle in his kinde, meading to reduce his government into a more fricktforme; began by degrees to The dunning ship off their greatheries and to bring a superour. downero a letter proponion: till in the ende he made them not onely his vallals. but his Kolambay that is his very villains or bond-flaues. For fo they terme & write themselvest in any publike instrumentor private petition which they make to the Emperour. So that now they hold their authorities lands lines and all at the Emperors pleasure, as the rest do.

The meanes and practife whereby he wrought this to effect, against those, and scher of the Mobility (lowell as I could nate out of the report of his doings) were The Empethefe, and fuch like. First he cast private emulations among them, about premeasive of their Titles and Dignities, Wherin he wied to let an the Inferiors, to preferre or equall themselves to those, that were accounted to be of the Nobler hou. (fes. Where hee made his advantage of their mallice and contentions, the one against the other, by receiving devised matter, and accusations of secret practife and conspiracies, to bee intended against his person and state. And so, having singled out the greatest of them, and cut them off, with the good liking of the rest; hee

2. He divided his subjects into two parts or Factions by a generall schisme. The Faction of Opprefisi The one part he called the Oppresimi or and Zemskey, Select men. These were such of the Nobi- identiced by lity and Gentry, as hee tooke to his owne part, to protect, and maintaine them as his faithfull subjects . The other he called Zemskey, or the Commons. The Zemskey contained the base and vulgar fort. with fuch Noblemen and Gentlemen as he meant to cut off, as suspected to mislike his government, and to have a meaning to practife against him. Wherein he prouded that the Oppressini, for num+

fell at last to open practife, by forcing of

the other to yeeld their rights ynto him.

The Faction

The diffingut thing of the o Opprehint & Zempskeý each from o-

. 838

The reason o this cruell practile.

Lands helde

at the Empe

rors pleature.

&c.far exceeded the other of the Zemps key fide, whom hee put (as it were) from under his protection: fo that if any of the were spoyled or killed by those of the of pressini (which he accounted of his owne part) there was no amende to bee fought for by way of publike inflice, or by complaint to the Emperor.

and The whole number of boult parts was orderly registred and kept in a Booke ! lo that enery manknew, who was a Zempkker man, and who of the Oppressing. And this liberty of the one part, to fpoyle and lell the other without any helpe of Magi-Brare or law (that continued fenen years) pariched that fide and the Emperors treafury and wrought that withall, which hee antended by this practife, vizi to take out withe way flich of the Nobility, as Mintfolfe misliked i wherof were flaine (within one weeke) to the number of three hisdred within the Citty of Mosko. This tyrannicall practife, of making a generall Schishie, and publike division among the subjects of his whole Realine, proceeded (as flould feem) from an extreme doubt, and desperate scare, which he had conceiued of most of his Nobility, and Gentlemen of his Roalme, in his warres with the Polonian and Chrim Tartari What time ho grew into a vehement suspition (con-ceined of the ill success of his affayres) that they practifed treason with the Polonian and Chrim. Whereupon he executed fome, and deuised this way to be rid of the

And this wicked pollicy and tyrannous practifo (though now it be ceaffed) hath to troubled that Country, and filled it fo full of grudge and mortall hatred euer fince, that it will not bee quenehed (as it feemeth now) till it burne againe into a ciuill flame.

Haning thus pulled thom, and feafed all their inheritance, lands, priviledges,&c.faue fome very furall part, which he left to their name; he gave them other lands of the tenour of Pomelinoy (as they cal it) that are held at the Emperors pleafure, lying farre off in another Country, and fo removed them into another of his Proninces, where they might have neyther favour, nor authority, not being nasine nor wellknowne there. So that now these of the cheese Nobility (called Vdel-

ber and quality of valour, money, armor, Ary Knazey are equalled with the restrance mat in the opinion and fauor of the been stathey are of more account, and keepe Bill the prefogative of their place, with (yet appointed be legal postinosal dust the H blow Photo practife to know downerhald houses from riling again cland recouding House kept their dientiles are thefer of fuch like Birth, riling and to many of their heyrestars kepe ynphatrical couring perforce that the florking dye with the. Some are fent into sibil mi Cakian and a. Bracan vinder protence of fornice, & there wither made away, or elfelfall clapped vo. Some are put into Abbeyes; and the A'c themselots Fryars by pletence with you to be made voluntary, and of their owne accord bue indeed forced wnto it by fear, voon forme pretenced crime obicated against them? Where they are so garded By fome of Speciall walk and the Couent it felfe (voon whose head it standeth, that they make no efeape) as that they have no other hope, but to end their lives there. Of this kinde, there are many of very great Nobility N. M. such ar confine.

Thefe and fuch like wayes (begun by the Emperor Juan Wallowith) are fill pra- Nobilityle Riled by the Godonoes, who being adition, creely & me ced by the mariage of the Empresse their kinfewoman rule both the Emperor, and his Realmo, (specially) Borris Federowich Godonoe, brother to the Empresse) & endenour by all meanes to cut off, or keepe downe all of the best and auncientest Nobility Whereof diners already they haue taken away, whom they thoght likelieft to make head against them, and to hinder their purpole, as Knez Andreas Guraken Bulgatkene, a man of great birth and authority in the Country. The like they have done with Peeter Gollanni (who they put into a dungeon where hee ended his life) with Knez Vafilie Vriwich Golloohen, with Andrieu Inanowich Suskey, accounted among them for a man of great wisedome. So this last yeare waskilled in a Monastery, (whether they had thrust persons made him) on Knez Juan Petrowich Suskoy, a man among them. of great valour, and feruice in that Country: who about fine or fixe yeares fince, bare out the fiedge of the Citty Pobsko, made by Stepan Batore King of Polonia, with one hundred thousand men, and repulled him very valiantly, with great honour to himfelfe and his Country, & difgrace to the Polonian. Also Micheta Romanowich.

14:5

Chap.2.

Names of the

The authority No respect of preffi . Bro.

Mothers fide, was supposed to have died of poylon, or some such like practise.

The names of these Families of greatest Nobility, are these in their order. The first is of Cnez Volodemer, which resteth at this time in one daughter a widdow, and without childre (mentioned before) fomtime Wife to Hartock Magnus, brother to the King of Denmarke, now closed within a Nunnery. The fecond Knez Metheloskey, thrust into a Friery, and his onely fonne kept from marriage, to decay the house. The third Glimskoy: but one left of his house, and he without children, sauc one daughter. The fourth Suskoy, wherof there are foure brethren young men, and vnmarried all. The fift Hubetskoy. Of this house are foureliuing. The fixt Bulgaloy, now called Guletcher house, wherof are fine lining, but youths all. The feauenth Vorallinskoy. Two left of that stock. The eight Odgoskey. Two. The ninth Telletskoy. Onc. The tenth Taytone. Three. These are the names of the cheese Families called Vdelney Knazay: that in effect haue loft all now, faue the very name it felfe, and fauour of the people, which is like one day to restore them againe, if any

The fecond degree of Nobility, is of the Boiarens. These are such, as the Emperor honoureth (beside their Nobility) with the Title of Counfellers. The reuennue of these two sorts of Nobles, that rifeth out of their Lands affigned them by the Emperor, and held at his pleasure (for of their owne Inheritance there is little left them, as was faid before) is about a thousand marks a yeare: besides a pension which they receive of the Emperour, for their fernice in his wars, to the fumme of feuen hundred Rubbels a yeare, and none aboue that fumme.

But in this number, the Lord Borris Federowich Godenoe is not to be reckoned. that is like a Transendent, and in no such predicament with the rest, being the Emperors brother in law, his Protectour for direction; for command and authority Emperor of Russia. His yearely revennue (in land and pension) amounteth to the fumme of 93700. Rubbels and more, as appeareth by the particulars. He hath of inheritance (which himselfe hath augmented in Vafma Dorogobofe, fixe thou-

manowich, Vnckle to the Emperor by the fand Rubbels a yeare. For his Office of Connick, or Mafter of the Horfe, twelve thousand Rubbels, or Markes, raised out of the Canaslue Sloboday, or the liberties pertaining to that Office, which are certaine Lands and Townes neere about the Mosko. Besides, all the Meddow and Pafture ground on both fides the banke of the riner Mosko, thirty veril vp the ftreme. and forty verst downwards. For his penfion of the Emperour (belides the other for his Office) fifty thousand Rubbels. Out of the Province or Shire of Vagha, there' is given him for a peculiar (exempted out of the Chetfird of Pofolskoy, two & thirty thousand Rubbels, beside a rent of Furs. Out of Rezan and Seuer, (another peculiar) thirty thousand Rubbels. Out of Otfer and Turiock, another exempt place, eight thousand Rubbels. For rent of Bathstoaues and Bathing-houtes without the walles of Mosko, fifteene hundred Rubbels. Befides his pomest, or lands which he holdeth at the Emperours pleafure, which farre exceedeth the proportion of land allotted to the rest of the Nobility.

> One other there is of the house of Allowance Glinskoy, that dispendeth in land and penfion, about forty thoufand Rubbels yearely. Which he is suffered to enjoy, because he hath married Borris his Wines fifter, being himselfe simple, and almost a Naturall. The ordering of him & his Lands are committed to Borris.

In the third rancke are the Foyauodey, or fuch Nobles as are, or have beene Generals in the Emperours warres. Which deliuer the honour of their Title to their posterities also: who take their place aboue the other Dukes and Nobles, that are not of the two former forts, viz. of the Vdelney Knazey, nor of the Boiarens.

These three degrees of their Nobility (to wit) the Vdelney Knazey, the Boiarens, and the Voisuodey have the addition of Vich, put vnto their firname as Borris Federovich, &c. which is a note of honor. that the rest may not vsurpe. And in case it be not added in the naming of the; they may fue the Bestchest, or penalty of dishonor ypon them, that otherwise shall terme

The fourth and lowest degree of Nobility with them, is of fuch as beare the name of Knazey or Dukes, but come of bility. the yonger Brothers of those chiefe hou-

The third for of Nobility.

The fecond

degree of

The third de

fes, through many discents, and haue no | rubbels or markes. inheritance of their owne, faue the bare name or title of Duke onely. For their order is to deliner their names and titles of their dignities ouer to all their Children alike, whatfoener elfe they leane the. So that the sonnes of a Voianodey, or Generall in the fielde, are called Voiauodey, though they neuer faw the fielde, and the fonnes of a Knez or Duke, are called Knazey, though they have not one groat of inheritance or livelyhood, to maintaine themselues withall. Of this sort there are fo many, that the plenty maketh them cheape: so that you shall see Dukes glad to ferue a meane man, for fine or fix rub. bels or marks a yeare; and yet rhey will stand highly vpon their Bestchest or reputation of their honours. And these are their feuerall degrees of Nobility.

The second de gree of persons, is of their Sina Beiarskey or the fons of Gentlemen: which all are preferred, & hold that name by their feruice in the Emperors wars, being Soldiors by their very stocke & birth. To which order are referred their Diacks or Secretaries, that serue the Emperor in euery head towne, being joyned in Commiffion with the Dukes of that place.

The last are their Commons, whom they call Moussicks. In which number they reckon their Merchants, and their common Artificers. The very lowest & basest fort of this kinde (which are helde in no degree) are their Country people, whom they call Christianeis. Of the Sina Boiarskey (which are all Soldiours) we are to fee in the description of their Forces, and Military prouisions. Concerning their Mouficks, what their condition and behaulour is, expect them among the Common people.

The whole Country of Russia (as was faide before) is divided into foure parts, which they call Chetfirds, or Tetrarchies. Euery Chetfird containeth diuers Shires, and is annexed to a feuerall Office, whereof it takes the name.

The first Chetfird or Tetrarchy beareth the name of Foloskoy Chetfird, or the Jurisdiction of the Office of Ambassages, and at this time is under the chiefe Secretary & Officer of the Ambassages, called Andreas Shalealoue. The standing fee or stipend that he receiveth yearely of the Emperor for this feruice, is one hundred

The fecond is called the Roferadney Chetfird, because it is proper to the Rose-rade or high Constable. At this time it pertaineth (by vertue of Office) to Basilie Shalcaloue, brother to the Chancellor, but it is executed by one Zapon Abramouc. His pension is an hundred rubbels yearly.

The third is the Chetfird of Pomesinoy, as pertaining to that Office. This keepeth a Register of all Lands given by the Emperor for service, to his Noblemen, Gentlemen, & others, he giveth out & taketh in all affurances for them. The Officer at this time is called Eleazar Wellusgine. His stipend is 500 rubbels a yeare.

The fourth is called Caffanskoy Dworets, The fourth as beeing appropriate to the Office that hath the jurisdiction of the kingdomes of Cazan and Astracan, with the other towns lying vpon the Volgha, now ordered by one Druzhine Penteleoue, aman of very speciall account among the, for his wise-dome, and promptnesse in matters of pollicy. His pension is 150 rnbbels a yeare.

From these Chetfirds or Tetrarchies, is Exemption exempted the Emperors inheritance or on the Em-Vochin (as they call it) for that it pertained (from ancient time) to the house of Beala, which is the fur-name of the Imperiall bloud. This standeth of 36. Townes with their bounds or territories. Besides divers peculiar jurisdictions, which are likewise deducted out of those Chetfirds, as the Shire of Vagha (belonging to the Lord Borris Federowich Godonoe) and such like.

These are the cheese Gouernors or Officers of the Prouinces, not refident at their charge abroad, but attending the Emperor where focuer he goeth, and carrying their Offices about with the, which for the most part they hold at Mosko, as the Emperors chiefe Seate.

The parts and practife of these soure actions what focuser, that are brought out the four of Offices, is to receive all complaints and of their feuerall Chetfirds and quarters, & fices. to informe them to the Emperors Coun-fell. Likewise to send direction againe to those that are under them in their saide Prouinces, for all matters given in charge by the Emperor and his Counsell, to bee done or put in execution within their

For the ordering of enery particular Province of these foure Chessirds, there is appointed

The fecond.

Chap. 3.

The Comhe Dukes o

appointed one of these Dukes; which | yeares ende; except vpon some speciall were reckoned before in the lowest de- liking or suit, the time be prolonged for a | Concerning Dukes there, gree of their Nobility, and which are refident in the head townes of the faid Prouinces. Whereof enery one hath joyned with him in Commission, a Dyack or Secretary, to affift him, or rather to direct him. For in the executing of their Commission, the Dyack doth all.

The parts of their Commission are these in essect. First, to heare and determine in all civill matters within their Precinct. To which purpose, they have vnder them certaine Officers, as Gubnoy Starets, or Coroners, who, besides the tryall of they racke and spoile them, without all refelfe-murders, are to attach Fellons: and the Soudia or vnder-Iustices, who themfelues also may heare and determine in all matters of the fame nature, among the them againe,& haue a better booty when and careth Country people of their owne Wards they call them to account: which comor Bayliwicks: but fo, that in cafe eyther party diffent, they may appeale, and goe farther to the Duke & Dyack, that relide within the head towne. From whom alfo, they may remoue the matter to the high-er Court at Mosko, of the Emperours which themselves (for the most part) do Counfell, where lie all appeales. They haue under them alfo Sotskoy Starets, that nith themselues, with all the spoile they is, Aldermen or Bailiffes of the hundreds.

theft, murder, treason, &c. they have authority to apprehend, to examine, and to imprison the malefactor, & so having receiued perfect enidence and information of the cause, they are to send it (ready drawne and orderly digested) vp to the Mosko, to the officer of the Chetfird whervnto that Prouince is annexed: by whom it is referred and propounded to the Emperors Counsell. But to determine in any matter criminall, or to do execution vpo the party offending; is more then their Commission will allow them to do.

Thirdly, if there bee any publike fer-uice to be done within that Prouince, (as the publishing of any Law, or common order, by way of Proclamation, collecting of taxes, and impositions for the Emperour, mustering of Soldiors, and fending happen vpon the borders, that are far of, them foorth at the day, and to the place and may not stay for direction, about eueaffigned by the Empetour or his Counfell) all these and such like, pertaine unto the Emperor and his Counsell. They are

These Dukes and Dyacks are appointed to their place by the Emperour himfelfe, and are changed ordinarily at enery

yeare or two more. They are men of theselues of no credite, nor fauour with the people, where they gouerne, being neyther borne, nor brought vp among them. nor yet having inheritance of their owne there; or elfewhere. Onely of the Emperor they have for that fervice, an hundred Marks a yeare he that hath most, some 50. fomebut 30. Which maketh them more fuspected and odious to the people, because being so bare, and comming fresh and hungry vpon them; lightly enery year gard of inflice, or conscience. Which is easily tollerated by the cheese Officers of Heere one the Cheefirds, to the ende they may rob theefe robmonly they do at the end of their feruice, ment. making an advantage of their iniuffice & oppression ouer the poore people. There are few of them, but they come to the Pudmake account of. And therefore they furcan for the time of their gotternment; that Secondly, in all criminal matters, as they may have for both turnes, aswell for the Emperor, and Lord of the Chet fird, as to referue some goodpart for themselues.

They that are appointed to gouerne abroad, are men of this quality : faue that Officers for in the foure border Townes (that are of dering towns. greatest importance) are set men of more speciall valor & trust, two in enery towne. Whereofone is cuer of the Emperours priny Counsell. These 4 border Towns, The source are Smolensko, Vobsko, Nougrad, & Cazan, whereof three lie towards the Polonian & Sweaden, one bordereth farre off vpon the Chrim Tartar. These haue larger Commission, then the other Dukes of the Prouinces that I spake of before, and may do execution in criminal matters. Which is thought behoonefull for the Common. wealth: for incident occasions that may ry occurrent and particular matter from changed enery yeare (except as before) The yearely and have for their flipend, 700. rubbels a flipend of those bash as hash mode. Complete the bash mode of those Officers

their credite.

yeare he that hath most: some haue but foure hundred rubbels. Many of thefe

places.

Of the gouernment of their Prouin ces & Shires.

The foure Chetfirds,and their Offices.

the Soldiors and Commons, it is a thing

not to be feared, beeing of fo opposite &

contrary practife much one to the other.

This desperate state of things at home,

maketh the people (for the most part) to

wish for some forraigne inuation, which

they suppose to be the onely meanes, to

rid them of the heavy yoke of this tyran-

The Emperors of Russia give the name

of Counsellor, to divers of their chiefe

Nobility, rather for honours fake, the for

any vie they make of the about their mat-

ters of state. These are called Boiarens,

without any addition, and may be called

Counsellors at large. For they are sildom

or neuer called to any publike confultation. They which are of his special and pri-

uy Counfell indeed (whom he vieth daily

and ordinarily for al publike matters per-

taining to the State) have the addition of

Dumnoy, and are named Dumnoy Boiaren,

nous gouernment.

places, that are of greatest importance, and almost the whole Country, is managed (at this time) by the Godonoes & their Chents.

The Citty of Mosko (that is the Emperors (eat) is gouerned altogether by the Emperors Counsell. All matters there (both civill and criminall) are heard and determined in the severall Courts, helde by some of the said Counsell, that reside there all the yeare long.

Onely for their ordinary matters (as

buildings, reparations, keeping of their

freetes decent and cleane, collections,

are appointed two Gentlemen, and two

Dyacks or Secretaries, who hold a Court

rogether for the ordring of fuch matters.

This is called the Zempskey house. If any

towns-man suspect his servant of thest or

like matter, hither he may bring him, to

haue him examined vpon the Pudkey, or

other torture. Besides these two Gentle-

rich) are reduced into Companies. The

chiefe Officers (as the Dyacks & Gentle-

men) are appointed by the Emperor him-

selfe, the Staruft by the Genrlemen & Dy-

acks, the sotskoy by the Staruft or Alder-

man, & the Decetskeis by the Conflables.

This manner of government of their

Provinces and Townes, if it were aswell

fet for the giving of iustice indifferently

to al forts, as it is to prenent innouations,

by keeping of the Nobility within order,

and length as is the Kingdome of Russia.

But the oppreision and flauery is so open,

and fo great, that a man would maruell,

how the Nobility & people should suffer

The government of Mos leuying of taxes, impolitions & fuch like)

Of the Zemp ske, house.

> Aldermen & Contlables.

Preuention

of innouati-

Oppreision and flauery very great.

being the selues of a Christian profession.

By this it appeareth, how hard a matter it were, to alter the state of the Russe Gouernment, as now it standeth. First, the State of because they have none of the Nobility Russia. able to make head. As for the Lords of the foure Chetfirds or Tetrarchies, they are men of no Nobility, but Dyacks, aduanced by the Emperour, depending on his fauour, & attending onely about his owne person. And for the Dukes that are appointed to gouerne vnder them, they are Dukebut al but men of a titular dignity (as was faid tulary dignity before) of no power, authority, nor credite, faue that which they have out of the Office, for the time they enjoy it. Which doth purchase them no favour, but rather hatred of the people, for almuch as they fee that they are fet ouer the, not so much for any care to do them right and inflice; as to keep them under in a miferable fubmen and Secretaries, that order the whole iection, and to take the fliece from them, City, there are Starufts or Aldermen for not once in the yeare (as the owner from the sheepe) but to poule and clip them all encry fenerali Company. The Alderman hath his Sotskey or Constable, & the Cothe yeare long-Besides, the authority and rule which they beare, is rent and divided ftable hath certaine Decetskeis or Decuriinto many small pieces, being divers of ons vader him, which have the overfight them in enery great Shire, limited besides of ten housholds a peece, whereby enery with a very short time: which giueth the diforder is fooner fpide, and the common no scope to make any strength, nor to fernice hath the quicker dispatch. The contriue fuch an enterprize, if haply they whole number of Cittizens (poore and

intended any matter of innouation. As for the common people (as may The come frame and quality afterwards fit downe) from Airest before their want of armour and a company from Airest of war (which they are kept from of purpose) they are robbed continually both of their hearts and money, (besides other meanes) fometimes by pretence of fome feruice to bee done for the common defence, fometimes without any shew at all, and the Commons in Subjection; it might of any necessity of Common-wealth or Prince. So that there is no meanes eyther feeme (in that kinde) to bee no bad, nor vnpollitique way for the containing of fo for Nobility or people, to attempt any large a Common-wealth, of that breadth innouation, fo long as the Military forces of the Emperour (which are the number of 8000, at the least in continual pay) hold themselnes fast and sure vnto him,& to the present state. Which needs they must do, being of the quality of Soldiors, themschies to be brought under it; while they had any meanes to avoid and repulse and enjoying withall that free liberty, of it : or being to strengthned as it is at this wronging and spoiling the Commons at their pleasure, which is permitted them present how the Emperors the-selues can

Agreement ot the Soldi-An hard mat ors and Com

Chap.2.

Boiarens Counfellers to the Empe ror, but diffe ring from his priny Coun-

Of the Empe-

The number he Countel

or Lords of the Counfell, their Office or fitting, Boar ftua Dumna. Their names (at this present) are these in their order. First, Knez Feoder Ioanowich Methisloskey. 2. Knez Iuan Michailowich Glinskoy. 3. Knez Vafilie Iuanowich Suskoy Scopin. These three are accounted to be of greater birth then wiledome, taken in (as may sceme) for that ende, rather to fürnish the place with their honours & presence, then with their aduice or Counsel. 4. Knez Vafilie Iuanowich Suskey, thought to bee more wife then the other of his name.s.Knez Feodor Michailowieh.6.Knez Micheta Romanowich Trowbetskoy. 7. Knez Timophey Romanowich Trowbetskoy. 8. Knez Andriew Gregoriwich Curakine. 9. Knez Demetrie Iuanowich Forestine. 10 Knez Feoder Inanowich Forestine. 11. Bodan Inanowich Sabaroue. 12. Knez Iuan Vafilowich. 13.Knez Feoder Demetriwich Shestinoue. 14.Knez Feoder Michailowich Troyconioue. 15. Juan Buterlyuey. 16. Demetrie Iuanowich Godonoe. 17. Borrise Federowich Godonoe, brother to the Empresse. 18. Stephan Vasilowich Godonoe. 19. Gregorie Vafilowich Godonoe. 20. Iuan Vasilowich Godonoe. 21. Feoder Sheremitoue. 22. Andriew Petrowich Cleshenina. 23 Ignatie Petrowich Tatisloue. 24. Romain Michailowich Pena. 25. Demen. shoy tuanowich Cheremissen. 26. Romain Va-

Silowich Alferioue. 27. Andriew Shalcacolue.

of purpose to make them have a liking of 28. Vasilie Shalcaloue. 29. Eleazar Wellingin. the present state. As for the agreement of 30. Drezheen Penteleoue. 31. Zapon Abra.

The foure last of these are called Dumnoy Deiakey, or Lord Secretaries. These raries. are all of the Emperours priny Counfell, though but few of them are called to any consultation, for that all matters are aduifed and determined upon by Borris Fede- All matters fed and determined upon by Borris Feae-rowich Godonoe, Brother to the Empresse, the Empresse with some fine or fix more, whom it plea- Brother, and feth him to call. If they come, they are bue or fixe rather to heare, then to give counfell, and do lo demeane themselues. The matters occurrent which are of state, done within the Realme, are informed them(at their fittings) by the Lords of the foure Cheifirds, or Tetrarchies. Whereof mention is made in the Chapter concerning the Government of their Provinces. Who bring in all fuch letters as they receive from the Dukes, Dyacks, Captaines, and other Officers of the Citties and Caffles, pertaining to their fenerall quarter or Chetfird, with other adnettifements, and informe the Counsell of them.

The like is done by the chiefe Officer of enery fenerall Office of Record : who The Officers may come into the Counfel Chamber, & of Records, informe them, as occasion incident to his Office doth require. Besides matters of State, they confider of many private caufes, informed by way of supplication, in very great numbers. Whereof some they entertaine and determine, as the cause or meanes can procure fauour. Some they fend to the Offices whereto they pertaine, by common course of Law. Their ordinary daies for their fitting, are Mondaies, Wensdaies, and Fridaies. Their time of meeting, is commonly feuen a clocke in the morning. If there be any extraordinary occasion, that requireth consultation on some other day, they have warning by the Clarke of the Counfell, called Dorofe) Bushew, who receiveth order from the Roserad or high Constable of the Realm, to call them together at the time appoin-

For the receiving of Customes, & other Rents belonging vnto the Crowne, ther are appointed divers under-Officers, which deliner ouer the same into the head Treasury. The first is the office of Dwoers-Joua or Steward of the houthold. The fecond is the Office of the Chetfirds:

rors Cuftoms Reuenues.

Cccc2

Foure Secre-

Of the Empe-

Cody

The Steward receiver of the Crowne land rents.

> in it 36. Townes, with the Territories or Hundreds belonging vnto them. Whereof the chiefe that yeeld the greatest rents, are thefe : Alexandrifca, Corelskey, Otfer, Slobodey, Danielska, Moifalskoy, Chara, Sametska, Strararoufe, Branfoue, Oc. The

The Tenant of Townes & their rent.

Inhabitants or Tenants of these and the other Townes, pay fome rent-money, fome other rent duties (called Obrokey) as

certaine Chetfirds, or measures of Graine, Wheate, Rye, Barley, Oates, &c.or of other victuall, as Oxen, Sheepe, Swans, Geese, Hares, Hennes, wilde Fowle, Fish, Hay, Wood, Honey, &c. Some are bound to fowe for the Emperours provision, certaine Akers of ground, and to make the Corne ready for his vie: hauing for it an allowance of certaine Akers of ground for their owne proper vie.

it be divided into foure severall parts, as

As touching the first, which is the Of-

fice of the Steward, it receiveth all the

Prechod, or the great Income.

This prouision for the houshold, speci-Provision for ally of graine ferued in by the Tenants, is

the Houthold, a great deale more then is spent in his house, or in other allowance served out in liuery, or for the Emperours honour, called Schalouaney : for which vie there is bestowed very much, both in graine, and other victuall. This furplus of prouision is fold by the Steward to the best hand, and

runneth into the Emperors treasury.

In the time of Inan Vafilowich, Father to

Diffrence of this Emperor (who kept a more Princely for prouifion.

and bountifull house then the Emperour now doth) this overplus of graine, and other Incomes into the Stewards Office, veelded to his Treasury, not past 60.thoufand rubbels yearely; but rifeth now by good husbanding of the Steward Gregory Valilowich Godonoe, to 230. thousand rubbels a yeare. And this by the meanes of the Empresse, and her kindred, specially (Borris Federowich Godonoe) that account it all their owne, that runneth into the Emperors treasure. Much of this surplufage that rifeth out of the rent prouition, is employed to the payment of the wages of his houthold Officers, which are very many attending at home, and purueying

abroad. which I comprehend under one, though

The second Office of receipt called the Chetfirds (being divided into four feuerall Chetfird was faid before. The third is called Bullha parts, as before was faid) hath foure head Officers: which, besides the ordering & government of the Shires, contained within their feuerall Chetfirds; haue this Rents of the Emperours Inheritance, or alfo as a part of their office, to receive the Crowne Land, which they call Vochin. Tagla and Podat belonging to the Empe-Tagla and Podat belonging to the Emperour, that rifeth out of the foure Chetfirds dat, andhos The Vochin or Crowne land, containeth or Quarters. The Tagla is a yearely rent they aredi-

or imposition, raised upon enery Wite or Itinguished. Measure of graine that groweth within the Land, gathered by fworne men, and brought into the Office. The wite containeth 60. Chetfirds. Enery Chetfird is three common bushels or little lesse. The Podat is an ordinary rent of money, imposed vpon every Soake, or Hundred within the whole Realme. This Tagla and Podat bring in veerely

to the Offices of the Chetfirds a great fum of money: as may appeare by the parti- nev raiddly culars beere fet downe. The Towneand Tagla and Prouince of Vobsko, pay yearely for Tagla Podat yearly. and Podat about 18000 rubbels. Nouogrod 35000 rubbels. Torfhocke and Otfer 8000 rubbels. Razan 30000 rubbels. Morum 12000, rubbels. Colmigroe and Duyna, 8000. rubbels. Vologda 12000.

rubbels. Cazan 18000. rubbels. Viting 30000.rubbels. Roftone 50000.rubbels. The City of Mosko, forty thousand Rubbels. Sibierskey, twenty thousand Rubbels. Castrome twelve thousand Rubbels. The totall amounteth to foure hundred thoufand Rubbels or Markes a yeare, which is brought in yearely the first day of September that is reckoned by them the first day of the yeare. The third (that is called the Bullha Pre-

chod, or great Income) receiveth all the The Office Customes that are gathered out of all the chod, or great principall Townes and Citties within Income. the whole Realme. Besides the fees & other duties, which rife out of diners fmaller Offices, which are all brought into this Office of Bulfha Preched. The townes

of most trade, that do yeeld greatest Cu-

ftome, are thefe heere fet downe. Mof-

ko. Smolensko, Vobsko, Nouogrod Velica,

Strararoufe, Torfbocke, Otfer, Yarusflaue, Castrome, Nefna Nouverod, Cazan Vologds. This Custome out of the great townes is therefore more certaine and easie to be reckned, because it is set and Chap. 2.

Rents out of

The Imperial Dignity.

custome of the yeare. Which needs must be paid into the said Office, though they receive not so much. If it fall out to be more, it runneth all into the Emperors aduantage.

The whole

The custome at Mosko for enery yeare, is 12000 rubbels. The custome of Smointheir places lensko, 8000. rubbels. Vobsko, 12000. rubbels. Nouograd velica, 6000 rubbels. Stararouse, by salt and other commodities, 18000. rubbels. Tor/bock 800 . rubbels. Otfer 700.rubbels. Tarus lane 1200. rubbels. Castrome 1800.rubbels. Nefna No-

> fometimes more, fometimes leffe, as their trafficke and dealings with commodities too and fro, falleth out for the yeare. This may be faid for certaine, that the three tables of receipts, belonging to this

receipt of the Bu'fha Pre-Office of Bulfha Prechod, whe they receive leaft, account for thus much, viz. The first chodor great table 160000 rubbels. The second table 90000 rubbels. The third 70000 rubbels. So that there commeth into the Office of Bullha Prechod, at the least rackoning (as

> out of these and other Townes, & maketh the fum of 340000. rubbelsa yeare. Be. fides this cultome out of the townes of trade, there is received by this Office of Bullba Preched, the yearely rent of the comon Bath-floaues, and Cabacks or drink-

appeareth by their Bookes of Customes)

ing houses, which pertaine to the Emperour. Which (though it be vncertaine for the just summe, yet because it is certaine and an ordinary matter, that the Ruffe will bathe himfelfe afwell within as without)yeeldeth a large Rent to the Emperors Treasury.

There is besides, a certaine mulct or penalty, that groweth to the Emperour out of enery judgement, or fentence that palleth in any of his Courts of Record in all civill matters. This penalty, or mulg

is twenty Dingues or pence, vpon enery rubble or marke, and to tenne in the himbring into the Offico of Bullba Preshot dred. Which is paid by the party that is convict by law. Hee hath besides for enery name, contained in the Writs that paffe out of thefe Courts fing Alcens, An Alteen is fine pence fterling, or there a

bouts. This is made good out of the

rated precifely, what they shall pay for the Thence it goeth to the Office that keepeth the leffer feale, where againe it payeth as much more to the Emperours yie. This rifeth commonly to three thousand rubbels a yeare, or thereabouts . Further alfo, out of the Office of Roisbonia, The Office of

where all Fellonies are tried, is received for the Emperour the halfe part of Fellons goods, the other halfe goeth the one part to the Informer, the other to the OF

All this is brought into the Office of Bulfha Prethed, or great Income a l' Befides the ouerplus or remainder, that is uogrod, 7000. rubbels. Cazan 11000. rubfaued out of the Land Rents, allotted to bels. Vologda 2000 rubbels. The custome diners other Offices: '2s namely to the of the rest that are Townes of trade, is

TheRoferade Office called Roferade, which hath Lands Office for and Rents affigned vnto it, to pay the Soldiors pay. yearely falaries of the Souldiors, or horsemen, that are kept still in pay. Which in time of peace when they rest at home, not employed in any feruice is commonly cut off, and paide them by halfes, forme-

times not the halfe : fo that the remainder out of the Roferade Office, that is laid into the Emperours Treasury, commeth (for the most part) every years to two hundred and fifty thousand rubbels.

In like fort (though not fo much) is brought in the furplus out of the Strellets- The Strellets

koy Offices, which hath proper Lands for he for the flor at the payment of the Strelfeymen or Gun- Mosko, &c. ners, as well those at Mosko, that are of

the Emperors guard (twelve thousand in ordinary) as on the borders, and other garrison Townes and Gastles. Likewise out of the Office of Brethafe , Shiftury Nomfhoy, which hath fee allowance of Lands to maintaine the forraine moteo nary Soldiours, as Poles, Sweadens, Dones ches, Scotts door So out of the Office of Rufbarskoy) (which hath Lands and Ronts allowed for the provision of munition. great Ordenance, Powderi Shory Salt Formercens

Pceter, Brirnstone, Lead, and füch like) ry Soldiors, & there is left formewhat at the yeares ende; munition. that runnethanto the Treasury. All these

Suine

that which remaineth ift sheir hand at the yeares end. Whencoahis delivered into the Emperours Treasury. So that the whole fum that groweth to this Office w Bullha Prechad or the areat Income (as appencerlaby the Bookes of the faid Offibe) amountesber 800000 rubbels a verition Office, whence the Writ is taken foorth. the read popularity and most remo sololet Cccca

rent-money.

cleere,be-

charges for

ordinary fal-laries of his

foldiours o

therwife dif-

charged.

All these Offices, to wit, the Office of the Steward, the foure Chetfirds, and the The Empe-rors treasure house within his Castle of

Bullha Prechod, deliuer in their receipts to the head treasury, that lyeth within the Emperors house or Castle at the Mosko. Where lye all his monies, iewels, crowns, scepters, plate, and such like, the chefts, hutches, and bagges being figned by the Emperours themselues with their owne Seale. Though (at this time) the Lord Borris Federowich Godonoe, his Scale and

overlight supplieth for the Emperour, as in all other things. The vnder-Officer at this time, is one Stepan Vafilowich Godomoe, Coufin-germane to the faide Borris, who hath two Clearks allowed to ferue

under him in the Office. I . Out of the Steward Office aboue the expence of his house The fum of Summe.

23000. Rubbels. the Emperors The fumme 3. Out of the foure that grow-Chetfirds for foake eth to the and bead money, Emperours, 400000.rubbels. mony only, 3. Out of the Bulfha for every Precod Office, or great Income, for rents,800000.rubbels.

a, j But befides this revenue, that is paid all in money to the Emperours Treasury, horeceiucth yearely in Furres, and other dution to a great value, out of Siberia, Pethora, Permia, and other places, which are folde or barred away for fome forraigne

His yearely benefit by Fors and ocommodities to the Turkiffs Perfian, Ari menian, Georgian and Bougharian Merchants, that trade within his Countries. besides others of Christendome. What it maketh in the whole (though the value cannot be fet downe precifely, asbeing a thing cafuall, as the commodity may bee got) it may be gueffed, by that which was gathered the last yeare out of Siberia for

of Sables, five timber of Matrones, 180, Of feizures,

blacke Foxes, besides other commodiries, 5:00. mail and whole To thefe may be added their feizures. came new still voon all olde fores. To and confifcations upon fuch as are in difwhom he was wont to compare his Prapleasure, which riseth to a great summe. tors, and other provincial Officers. Besides other their extraordinary impo-

the Emperors custome, viz.466 timber

fitions, and exactions done upon their Officers, Monasteries, &c. not for any apparant necessity or vic of the Prince or Comon-wealth, but of will and custome : yet with some pretence of a Scythian, that is, groffe and barbarous pollicy (as may appeare) by these few Sophismata, or counterfeit pollicies, put in practife by the emperours of Rufsia, all tending to this ende, to rob their people, and to enrich their Treasury. To this purpose this by-word was vied by the late Emperor Juan Vafilewich: That his people were like to his beard. The oftner shauen, the thicker it would grow.

Meanes vsed to draw the wealth of the Land into the Emperors Treasury.

Or like (beepe, that must needs bee shorne once

a yeare at the least : to keepe them from being

ouer laden with their Wooll.

First.
O preuent no extortions, exactions, or briberies whatfoeuer, done vpon the Commons business. Commons by their Dukes, Diacks, or other Officers in

their Prouinces; but to fuffer them to go on till their time be expired, and to fucke themselves full. Then to call them to the Praueulb (or whip) for their behaulor, and to beate out of them all, or the most part of the booty, (as the Hony from the denyers or Bee) which they have wrong from the Commons, and to turne it into the Em-

perors Treasury, but never any thing back againe to the right owners, how great or euident soeuer the iniury be. To this end the needy Dukes; and Diacks, that are fent into their Provinces, ferue the turne very well being changed to often (to wit)once a veare: where, in respect of their owne, and the quality of the people (as before was faide) they might bee continued for forthe longer time, without all feare of innouation." For comming full fresh vpon the Commons, they fucke more eagerly: like Tiberius the Emperours flyes, that

The whip or-dayned for all

Secondly. TO make of these Officers '(that have robbed their people) fometimes a many times is doone without any noyfe: publique example, if any be more notothe Fryers beeing content, rather to part from somewhat (as the encrease groweth) rious then the rest that the Emperor may feeme to diflike the oppressions done to his people, and rransferre the fault to his ill Officers.

As among divers other, was done by the late Emperour Juan Vasilowich, to a Diack in one of his Provinces; that (befides many other extortions and briberies) had taken a Goose ready drest full of A Goole reamony. The man was brought to the mardy dreffed full of money for ket place in Mosko. The Emperour him-

felfe present, made an Oration; Thefe good

people are they, that would eate you uppe like bread, &c. Then asked he his Polachies or Cutting vp of executioners, who could cut vp a Goofe? and commanded one of them first to cut off his legges, about the middest of the

Chap. 2.

fhinne, then his armes about his elbowes (demaunding of him still, if Goose sless were good meate) in the end to choppe off his head: that he might have the right fashion of a Goose ready dressed. This might seeme to have beene a tollerable peece of Iustice (as Iustice goeth in Ruffia) except his subtillend, to couerhis owne oppressions. Thirdly. TO make an open thew of want, when

any great taxe, or imposition is to wardes. As was done by this Emperour Acunning co. Theodore Iuanowich, by the adulfe of some about him, even at the beginning of his reigne: when beeing left very rich (as it was thought) by his father, he folde the most of his plate, and stamped some into soyne; that he might seeme to want money. Whereupon presently out came a taxation.

... Fourthly. O fuffer their fubicats to give freely to the Monasteries (which for their Superstition very many do especially in their laft Wills) and to lay up their mony Superstitious charitie and and fubstance in them , to keepe it more tountie giuen to Monaste fafe. Which all is permitted them with-

one any restraint or prouiso, as was and is in fome Countries of Christendome. Whereby their Monasteries grow to exceeding great wealth . This they doe , to

haue the money of the Realme better ftored together, and more ready for their hand, when they lift to take it. Which

then to loofe all at once. Which they were made to doubt of in the other Bmperours dayes. To this end Iuan Vafilowich, late Bmperour vied a very strange practife; that few Princes would have doone in their greatest extreamities. Hee refigned his practife to kingdome to one Velica Knez Simeon, the get money. Emperours sonne of Cazan : as though he meant to draw himselfe from all pub-

before. Which were all cancelled. This done, (as in diflike of the fact, and of the milgouemement of the new King) herefumed his Scepter, and fo was content (as in fauour vnto the Church and Religious men) that they should renew their Charters, and take them of himselfe: reserving and annexing to the Crowne fo much of their Lands, as himfelfe thought good. By this practife, he wrong from the Bishoprickes, and Monasteries (besides the been seldom lands which he annexed to the Crowne) heard of. an huge masse of money; from some forty, from some fifty, from some an hun-dred thousand rubbels. And this, aswell

like doings, to a quiet private life. To-wards the end of the yeare, he caused this

new King to call in all Charters graunted

to Bishoprickes and Monasteries, which

they had enioyed many hundred yeares

bate the cuill opinion of his hard gotternment, by a fnew of worle in another man. Wherein his ftrange fpirit is to be noted; that being hated of his Subjects (as him. selfe knew well enough) yet would adiienture such a practife, to fer an other in his faddle, that might have ridde away with his horffe, whileft himfelfe walked by on foore, while in Fifty: one T Ofend their meffengers into the pro-tinces, or Shires where the special and engro-fing common

for the increase of his treasure, as to a-

commodities of their countrey grows as dities in a furres, wake, hony, &c. There to forestall firange mand ingrosse, sometime one whole confiner. modity, Cometime two, or more, taking them at small prices what themselves lift, and felling them againe at an excessive

& impolitions on Monalteries,&c.

An engrofing

Engrossing

forren com

Monopolifing

of Rents and

Cuftomes.

modities.

rate to their owne marchants, and vnto Marchants strangers. If they shall refuse to buy them, then to enforce them vnto

The like is doone when any commodity, eyther natiue, or forreine (as cloth of golde, broad-cloth, &c.) thus engrossed by the Emperour, and received into his Treasurie, chaunceth to decay, or marre by long lying, or some other casualty. Which is forced vpon the marchants, to bee bought by them at the Emperours price, whether they will, or no.

Not long fince was engrossed all the Waxe of the Countrey; fo that no man might deale with that commoditie, but

the Emperour onely.

Sixtly.

TO take vp and engrosse (in like fort) I fometime forreine commodities (as Silkes, Cloth, Lead, Pearle, &c.) brought into his kingdome by Turkish marchants, Armenians, Bougharians, Poles, English, and others. And then to force his Marchants; to buy them of his Officers at his owne price.

Seaventhly.

TO make a Monopoly (for the time) of I fuch commodities as are payed him for Rent, or Custome, and to inhance the price of them, as Furres, Corne, Wood, &c. Whattime, none must fell of the fame kinde of commodity, vntill the Emperours be all folde .. By this meanes hee maketh of his Rent, Corn, and other prowifion of victuall (as before was fayd) 4hour two hundred thousand rubbells or markes a yeare, Of his Rent, Wood, Hay Scor thirtie thousand rubbells, or therea-Fire security in much) year on samped ு வின்றிர் வுக்கமான

His Cabacks or drinking houses in euery towne.

Boga

Houery great Towns of his Realme, he hath a Caback, or drinking house, where Aqua vita is fold (which they call Ruffewine, Mead, Beere, Jrc. Out of these he receineth Rent , that amounteth to a great fumme of money. Some yeeld eight hundred fome nine hundred fome a thoufand, fome two thousand, or three thoufand rubbells a yeare. Wherein befides the base and dis-honorable meanes to encreate his Treasurie; many foule faultes

The poore labouring man and Artificer, many times founds all from his wife. and children. Some vie to lay in twenty, thirty forty rubbels, or more into the Caback, and vowe themselves to the pot, till all that be spent. And all this (as hee will fay) is for the honour of Holpodare, or the the Emperor Emperour. You shall have many there, honour, that have drunke all away even to the very skinne, and so walke naked (whome they call Naga.) While they are in the Caback, none may call them forth, whatfocuer cause there be; because he hindereth the Emperours reuenue.

TO cause some of his Boiarens , or No- Pretence of bles of his Court, (whom he vieth vp- robbery tom on truft) that have houses in the Mosco, to other end. faine themselues robbed. Then to send for the Zemskey men, or Aldermen of the Citty, and to command them to finde out the robbery. In default of not finding it, to praue or feaffe the Cittle for their misgouernement in eight thousand, nine thousand, or tenne thousand rubbells at a time. This many times is and hath beene practized. A salaman a triang

Tenthly.

IN these exactions, to shew their soueraigntie, sometime they vse very plaine, and yet strange cauillations. As was that of Juan Valilowich, father to this Emperour, after this fort. He fent into Permia for certaine loads of Cedar wood, whereof he knew right well, that none grew in that Countrey. The Inhabitants returned answere, they could find none there. Whereupon he feaffed their Countryin swelve thousand tubbells as if they consealed the commoditie of purpole. A gaine . he fent to the Cittie of Molca , to prouide for him a Colpacke, or meafare ful of live Fleas, for a medicine. They returned answer, that the thing was impos fible. And if they could get them, yet they could not measure them, for leaving out Whereuppon, hee praned or beat on of their thinnes, feuen thousand tubbels for and field une in the on the co. Sluma.

By like equillation, lice extorted from his Nobilitie thirtie thousand rubbells, because he missed of his game, when hec went a hunting for the Hare as if theyr hunting and murdering of Hares had bin

Exactions countenan

A bushell of

The Imperiall Dignity. the cause of it. Which the Nobilitie (as | by his Nobility, cheese Officers, and Solthe manner is) praued prefently againe vpon the Mousicks, or common people of the Country. This may feem a strange kinde of extortion, by fuch pleafant cauils, to fleece his poore subjects in good fadnesse: but that it agreeth with the qualitie of those Emperours, and the mise-

rable subjection of that poore Countrie. Thefe, and such like meanes are practifed by the Emperours of Russia, to encrease their Treasurie.

The condition of the Commons and vulgar fort of people, may partly bec vnderitoode by that which hath already bin fayd, concerning the manner of their go-uernement, and the state of the Nobilitie in their owne degrees and places with the ordering of their Provinces, and chiefe townes of the land . And first touching their libertie, how it standeth with them, it may appeare by this: that they are reckoned in no degree at all, nor have anie fuffrage nor place in their Zabore or high Court of Parliament, where theyr lawes and publique orders are concluded vpon. Which commonly tend to the oppression of the commons. For the other two degrees, that is to fay, of the Nobility, and Cleargie, which have a vote in the Parliaments (though farre from that libertie, that ought to be in common confultations for the publike benefite, according vnto the measure and proportion of their degrees) are well contented, that the whole burthen shall light uppon the commons, so that they may ease theyr

Againe, into what feruile condition their libertie is brought, not onely to the Prince but to the Nobles and Gentlemen of the Country (who themselves also are but feruile, specially of late yeares) it may farther appeare by their owne acknowledgements in their supplications, and other writings to any of the Nobles or chiefe officers of the Emperors. Wherein they name and fubscribe themselues Kolophey, that is to fay, their villaines or bondilaues; as they of the Nobilitie doe unto the Emperour. This may truely be fayd of them, that there is no feruant of bondslave more awed by his Maister, nor kept downe in a more feruile fubication. then the poore people are, and that vniuerfally, not onely by the Emperour, but

owne shoulders by laying all vpon them.

diours. So that when a poore Mouficke meeteth with any of them vpon the high way; hee must turne himselfe about, as not daring to looke him on the face, and fall downe, with knocking of his head to the very ground, as hee doth vnto his

Secondly, as concerning the lands, Goods, lands, goods, and other possessions of the commons, they answere the name, and lie Commons. common indeede, without any fence against the rapine, and spoyle, not onelie of the highest, but of his Nobilitie, Officers and Souldiers. Besides, thetaxes, customes, seazures, and other publike exactions, doone vppon them by the Emperour: they are so racked and polled by the Nobles, Officers and Meffengers fent abroad by the Emperour in his publike affaires , especially in the Tammes (as Yammes are they do stearme them) and thorow-fare thorow-fare townes, that you shall have many villages and townes of halfe a mile, and a mile long, stand all vn-inhabited : the people being fled all into other places, by reason of the extreame vsage, and exactions on them done. So that in the way towards Mosco, betwixt Volozda and Yarustaneley, (which is two nineties, after theyr reckoning, little more then an hundred miles) there are in fight fiftie Darieunes or Villages at the least, some halfe a mile, some a mile long (that stand vacant) and deso late without any Inhabitant. The like is in all other places of the Realme, as they that have trauelled the Countrey, well can report.

The great oppression ouer the poore Commons, maketh them to have no corage in following their trades: for that the more they have, the more daunger they are in, not onely of their goods, but A miterable condition of of their lines alfo. And if they have anie pooremen. thing, they conceale it all they can, sometimes conneying it into Monasteries, fomtimes hiding it vnder the ground, and in woods, as men are wont to doe, where they are in feare of forreine inuation. Infomuch, that (many times) you shall see them afrayd to be knowne to any Boiaren or Gentleman, of fuch commodities as they have to fell. They have beene feene fometimes, when they have layed open their commodities for a liking (as theyr principall Furres and fuch like) to looke

Townes emp

doore: as men in some feare, that looked to be fet vpon, and furprized by some enimy. Whereof being asked the cause, it was found to be this, that they have doub ted, least some Nobleman or Sinaboiarskey of the Emperor, had beene in company, and so laide a traine for them, to pray vpon their commodities perforce. This maketh the people (thogh other-

wife hardned to beare any toyle) to give

in farre leffe plenty then they were wont

to doe: because the people being oppres-

fed and spoyled of they rgettings, are dif-

couraged from their Labours. Yet this

one thing is much to be noted, that in all

still behinde them, and towardes eueric,

themselves much to idlenesse and drinking: as caring for no more, then from hand to mouth. And hereof it commeth that the commodities of Russia (as vvas favde before) as Waxe, Tallow, Hydes, Flax, Hempe, &c.) grow and goe abroad

Of three bre thren Merchants.

ther fuch men

in the whole

Country

The people made yelle s

gainst theyr

this oppression, there were three Bretheren Marchants of late, that traded together with one stocke in common, that were found to be worth 300000 rubbels in mony, befide lands, cattels, and other commodities. Which may partly be imputed to their dwellings far off from the cie of the Court, viz. in Wichida, a thou-

fend miles from Mosko, and more. The fame men were faid (by those that knewe them) to have fet on worke all the yeare long, ten thousand men in making of salt, carriages by Cart and Boate, hewing of Wood, and fuch like; besides five thoufand bondflaues at the leaft, to inhabit & Till their land.

They had also their Physitions, Chirurgeons, Apothecaries, and all manner of Artificers of Doutches and others, belonging voto them. They wer faid to haue payed to the Emperour (for Custome)to the fumme of three and twenty thousand Rubbles a yeare (for which cause they were fuffered to enjoy their trade) befides the maintaining of certaine Garrisons on the borders of Siberia, which were neere vnto them. Wherein the Emperour was content to vie their purie, till fuch time as they had gotten ground in Siberia, and made it habitable, by burning & cutting downe woodes from wichida to Perm, a-

boue a thousand Verst, and then tooke it all away from them perforce. But this in the end being enuied, and

disdained, as a matter not standing with their policie, to have any fo great, specially a Mousick: the Emperour beganne first to pull from them by peeces, sometimes twenty thousand rubbels at a time; till in the end, their fonnes that followed were well eafed of their flocke, & had but small part of their Fathers substance: the

rest being drawne all into the Emperors

Treasury. Their names were lacoue, Gre-

gory, and Simon, the fonnes of Onyka. For the quality of their people otherwife though there feemeth to be in them fome aptnesse to receive any Art (as appeareth by the naturall wits in the men, and very children) yet they excell in no and wits. kinde of common Art, much leffe in any Learning, or litterall kinde of knowledge, which they are kept from of purpose, as they are also from all Military practife: that they may be fitter for the feruile condition wherein still they are, & haue neither reason, nor valor to attempt innoua-

For this purpose also, they are kepte from trauailing, that they may learne nothing, nor fee the fashions of other countreyes abroad. You shall seldome see a Rulle a Traueller, except he be with fome Ambaffador, or that he make a scape out of his Countrey. Which hardly hee can do, by reason of the borders that are watchedionarrowly, and the punnishment for any fuch attempt, which is death if he be taken, and all his goods confiscate. Onely they learne to write, and to reade, and that verie few of them. Neyther doe they fuffer any ftranger willingly to come into their Realme out of any civil Countrey, for the fame cause; farther then necessity of vetering their commodities. and taking in of forraine, doeth enforce them to do.

And therefore not long fince, they confulted, about the remoting of al Marchants strangers to the border townes, to rour concerabide and have their residency there, and ning his State to be more wary, in admitting other firan gers (hecreafter) into the In-land parts of the Realme; for feare of infection with better manners and qualities, then they haue of their owne.

For the same purpose also, they are kept within the bounds of theyr degree, by the Law of their Country: fo that the fonne of a Moufick, Artificer, or Husband Chap.3. The Politicke and iudiciall proceeding

man, is euer a Moufick, Artificer, &c. and uors, and employ themselves to advance hath no meanes to aspire any higher: excapt (hauing learned to write and reade) he attaine to the preferment of a Priest or Dyacke.

Their Language is all one with the Slauonian, which is thought to have bene desinted from the Ruffe tongue, rather uage antiwethen the Russe from the Slauonian. For the people called Sclaui, are knowne to have had their beginning out of Sarmatia, and to have tearmed themselves of their conquest Sclaues (that is) famous or Glorious, of the word Sclaua, which in the Rul and Sclauonian tongue, fignifieth as much as Glory, or Fame. Though afterwards, being subdued and trod vpon by divers

Nations, the Italians (their Neighbours) haue turned the word to a contrary fignification, and tearme enery fernant or pezant, by the name of Sclaue; as did the Romanes by the Getes and Syrians, for the fame reason. The Russe Charracter or Letter, is no other then the Greeke, fomwhat distorted.

And because we were speaking of Sarmatia, whence this people seeme to deriue themselues : Some haue thought, that the name of Sarmatia, was first taken

from one Sarmates, whom Moles and Io-Sephus call Asarmathes, sonne to Jocktan, and Nephew to Heber, of the posterity of Sem. But this feemeth to be nothing but a coniceture, taken from the likeneffe of the name Afarmathes. For, the dwelling

of al tocktans posterity is described by Moles, to have been betwixt Melcha or Mafius) an hill of the Ammonites) & Sephace, neere to the River Euphrates. Which maketh it very vnlikely, that A(armathes should plant any Collonies so farre off, in the North, and North-West Coun-

Concerning their Trades, Diet, Apwas fayde. From these foure Courtes, parrell, and fuch like, it is to bee noted they may appeale, and remooue theyr where we speake of their prinate behauifuites to the cheefe Court, that is kept at our. This order, that bindeth eueric man to keepe his ranke and feueral degree wherein his forefathers lived before him, is more meete to keepe the fubicates in a feruile subjection, and so, apt for this and

like Common-wealths; then to aduance any vertue, or to breed any rare or excellent quality in Nobility or Commons. As hauing no farther reward nor preferment, whereunto they may bend their endea-

their estate : but rather procuring more danger to themselues, the more they excell in any noble or principall quality.

CHAP. III.

Thirdly, we discourse on their Politicke and Indiciall proceeding. Alfo the Emperors powers for war, and their falaries : with their Mustering, Munition, and Military prouision. Their Collonies, bordering Friends or Enemies, either in Peace or



Heir Courts of Civill Iuflice, formatters of Country track, and other of like fort, are of three kindes, the one beeing, fubicet vnto the o

ther by way of Appeal. The lowest court that feemeth to bee appointed for fome The Alderease to the subjects) is the Office of the mans Court, Gubnoy Starust, that fignifieth an Alderman, and of the Sotskoy Starust, or Bayliffe of the foake or hundred, whereof I spake before in the ordering of the Prouinces. These may end matters among their Neighbours, within their Soake, or seuerall Hundred, where they are apointed under the Dukes and Dyackes of the

Provinces, to whome the parties may remooue their matter, if they cannot bee agreed by the faide Gubnoy, or Sotskoy Sta-The second is kept in the head townes of euery Province or Shire, by the fayde Dukes and Diackes, that are deputies to Diacks Court

the four Lords of the Chetfirds, as before

Mosko, where are relident the officers of the foure Chetfirds. These are the chiefe Inflices or Iudges, euery of them in all ci- The high uill matters that growe within their feucrall Cherfird or quarter, and may bee either commenced originally before them. or profecuted out of the inferior Courts

of the Shires, by way of appeale. Their commencing and proceeding in civill actions, is on this manner. First.

The dealing

of Sergeants

in their offi-

No Counfel-

lors or Attur

Ending of

Croile

Indgment by

parties bille

the Croile.

the plaintiffe putteth vp his supplication, wherein hee declareth the effecte of his

or Sergeant, to doe the arrest vppon the twenty pence vpon enery Mark, as before party whom hee meaneth to impleade. Who uppon the Arrest, is to put in sureties to answer at the day appointed, or els standeth at the Sergeants denotion, to be kept fafe by fuch means as he thinketh

good. The Sergeants are many, & excell for their hard and cruell dealing toward their

prisoners; commonly they clappe Irons vpon them, as many as they can beare to wring out from them some larger Fees. Though it be but for fixe pence, you shal fee them go with chaines on their legges, armes, and necke. When they come before the Judge, the Plaintiffe beginneth to declare his matter, after the content of his

lors, Procurators and aduocates to plead nies to pleade Tale, and pleade for himselfe so well as

If they have any witnesse or other euidence, they produce it before the ludge. If they have none, or if the trueth of the cause cannot so well be discerned by the plea, or euidence on both parts, then the by kilving the Judge asketh either party (which he thin-

keth good, Plaintiff or Defendant) whether he will kiffe the Croffe, vppon that which he anoucheth, or denieth. He that taketh the Crosse (being so offred by the Iudge) is accounted cleare, and carryeth away the matter. This Ceremony is not done within the Court or Office, but the party is carried to the Church by an Officer, and there the Ceremony is done: the money in the meane while hanging vpon a nayle, or elfelying at the Idolles feete, ready to be delinered to the party fo foon as he hath kiffed the Croffe, before the

faide Idoll. This kiffing of the Croffe(called Creu-Stina Chelouania) is as their corporal oath; and accounted (with them) a verie holie thing, which no man will dare to violate, or prophane with a falle Allegation. If both parties offer tot kiffe the Croffe in a contradictory matter, then they drawe

The better Lotte is supposed to have the right, and beareth away the matter. cause.or wrong done vnto him. Where- So the party connicted is adjudged to pay upon is granted vnto him a wepis or war- the debt or penalty what soener, and withrant, which he deliuereth to the Prastane, all, to pay the Emperours fees, which is

hath bene noted. When the matter is thus ended, the party connicted, is delivered to the Sergeant, who hath a VV rit for his warrant, out of the office, to carry him to the Praneulb or Righter of Instice, if presently he pay not the money, nor content not the

This Praueufh or Righter, is a place The order of neere vnto the Office where fuch as haue the Prauculh fentence passed against them, and refuse or Righter. to pay that which is adjudged; are beaten with great Cudgels on the shinnes, and calues of the legges. Euery fornoon from eight to eleauen, they are fet on the Prauensh, and beate in this fort till the monie supplication. As for Atturneys, Counselbe payed. The afternoone & night time, they are kept in Chains by the Sergeant: their cause for them, they have no such except they put insufficient sureties, for order; but euerie man is to tell his owne their appearance at the Praueulb at the houre appointed. You shall see fortie or fifty frand together on the Praueufb all on a rowe, and their thinnes thus becudgelled and behafted enery morning, with

> a pitteous cry. If after a years standing on the Praneush the party will not, or lacke wherewithall and caldres to pay his Creditour, it is lawfull for him to pay debts. to fell his Wife and Children either ontright, or for a certaine tearme of yeares. And if the price of them doe not amount to the full payment, the Creditour may take them to be his bondflaues for years, or for euer, according as the valew of the debt requireth.

Such kinde of fuites as lack direct euidence, or stand vpon coniectures and circumstances, to bee weighed by the Judge, draw of great length, and yeelde great aduantage vnto the Judge and Officers. If the fuite be vppon a bonde or bill, they have for the most part good & speedy instice. Their Bondes or Billes, are drawne in a very plaine fort, after this te-

I Iuan Vafileo, have borrowed of Alpho-The forme of nasse Dementio, the summe of one hundered Ruffe bils or bonds, as they poller etween Rubbles of going money of Mosko, from the Kresbenea (or hallowing of the Water) man and man ontill the Saburney Voscreshenea (or counChap. 3. Of Moscouia or Russia.

> fell Sunday) without interrest. And if this money rest unpayed after that day, then hee shall give interest wpon the saide mony, after the common rate, as it goeth among the people, viz: for every five the fixt rubbell Vpon this there are witnesses, Micheta Sydroneskoy.co: Subscribed.This Bill have I written Gabriel Iacouelesni, in the yeare 7096. The witneffes and debter (if he can write) endorse their names on the back side of the Bill. Other figning or fealing haue they

Proceeding in

Order after

When any is taken for a matter of crime (as treason, murther, theft, and the like) he is first brought to the Duke and Diacke, that are for the Province where the party is attached, by whom he is examined. The manner of examination in fuch cases, is all by torture, as scourging with whips made of finnewes or whitleather (called the Pudkey) as big as a mans finger, which giveth a fore lash, and entereth into the flesh : Or by tying vnto a spitte, and roasting at the Fire. Sometimes, by breaking and wresting one of their ribs with a payre of hot Tonges, or cutting their fleth vnder the nayles, and

fuch like. The examination thus taken, withall the proofes and euidences that can be al-

ledged against the party, it is sent vppe to the Mosko, to the Lord of the Chetfirde or Fourth-part, vnder whome the Prouince is, and by him is presented vnto the Councell Table, to be reade and fentenced there, where onely judgement is gi-

uen in matter of life and death, and that

by enidence uppon information, though Men are fen they neuer faw nor heard the party, who tenced withoutperfonall is kept still in prison where the Facte was

committed, & neuer fent vp to the place boiarskey, or the sonnes of Gentlemen, bewhere he is tryed. If they find the partie cause they are all of that degree, by vertue guilty, they give sentence of death accorof their Military profession. For every fol ding to the quality of the facte, which is dier is a Gentleman, and none are gentlefent downe by the Lord of the Chetfird, men, but onely the foldiers, that take it by to the Duke and Diacke to be put in exdiscent from their Ancestors; so that the ecution. The prisoner is carried vnto the fon of a Gentleman (which is borne a folplace of execution, with his hands bound dier)is euer a Gentleman, and a Soldier and a wax candle burning held betweene withall, and professeth nothing else but

Theorder of heir cheefest

his fingers. Military matters. When they are of years ' Their capitall punishments, are hanging, heading, knocking on the head, drow ning, putting vnder the Ife, fetting on a there present themselves, who entereth flake, and fuch like. But (for the most part) their names, and allotteth them certayne the prisoners that are condemned in sumlands to maintaine their charges, for the mer, are kept for the winter, to be knockt most part, the same that their fathers enioved.

on the head, and put vnder the Ice. This is to be understood of common persons. For theft and murther, if they be committed vpon a poore Moufick by one of Nobilitie, it is not lightly punnished, nor yet is he called to any account for it. Their reason is, because they are accounted their Kolophey or bond flaues. If by some Sinaboiarskey, or Gentleman Souldiour, a murther or theft bee com- and fouldiers,

mitted, peraduenture he shall be imprisoned at the Emperors pleasure. If the manner of the fact beevery notorious, hee is whipped perchance, and this is commonly all the punishment that is inflicted vp-

on them. If a man kill his owne feruant, little or nothing is saide vnto him, for the aforefaide reason: because he is accounted to be his Kolophey or bondflaue, & so to have right ouerhis very head. The vemost is fome small mulet to the Emperour, if the party be rich : and fo the quarrell is made rather against the purse, then against the iniustice. They have no Written Lawe, faue onely a small booke, that containeth Law among

al formes and circumstances, but nothing

Which sheweth the miserable condition

of this poore people, that are forced to

haue them for their Law and direction of

Iustice; against whose iniustice & extream

oppression, they had neede to bee armed

The Soldiers of Russia are called Sina-

Dddd

with many good and strong lawes.

the time and manner of their fitting, order in proceeding, and fuch other indici-

to direct them, to give fentence on right or wrong. Their onely Law is their Spea- Speaking law

king Law, and that is the pleasure of the Prince, and of his Magistrates & officers.

> for the wars, with the chief officers, and

able to bear Armes, they come to the of- Souldiers by fice of Roserade, or great Constable, and birth and in

For

Army, are ever certaine, annexed to this office without improouing, or detracting one foot. But that if the Emperour haue Sufficient in wages, the roomes being full fo farre as the land doth extend alreadie; they are many times deferred, and have nothing allowed them, except fome one portion of the land be divided into two. Which is a cause of great disorder within that country: when a fouldier that hath many children, shall have sometimes but one entertained in the Emperors pay. So that therest having nothing, are forced to line by vnioft and wicked Thiftes, that tend vnto the hurt and oppression of the Moufick or common fort of people. This inconvenience groweth, by maintaining his forces in a continual fuccession. The whole number of his fouldiers in continual:pay, is this. First, he hath of his Dwo-

raney, that is, Penfioners, or guarde of his

person, to the number of 15000. horse-

men, with their Captaines and other offi-

cers, that are alwayes in a readinesse.

Degrees of Horiemen.

I.Pretoriani, perors person

Of these 15000 horssemen, there are three forts or degrees, which differ aswel in estimation, as in wages, one degree from another. The first fort of them, is called Dworaney Bullbey, or the company of head Penfioners, that have fome an hundred, some sourscore Rubbels a yeare, & none under feuenty. The fecond fort are called Seredney Dworaney, or the middle ranke of Penfioners. Thefe haue fixty, or fifty rubbels by the yeare, none vnder forty. The third and lowest fort are the Dyta Boianskey, that is, the lowest Pensioners. Their falary is thirty rubbels a yeare for him that hath most, fome have but five and twenty, some twenty, none vnder twelue. Whereof the halfe part is paide them at the Mosko, the other halfe in the fielde by the Generall, when they have any warres, and are employed in feruice. When they receive their whole pay, it amounteth to 55000 rubbels yearely. And to this their wages, besides Lands

alotted to enery one of them, both to the greater and the leffe, according vnto their degrees. Wherof he that hath least, hath to yeeld him twenty Rubbels or Markes by the yeare. Besides these 1 5000 horssemen that are of better choife (as beeing the Emperors owne gard, when himfelfe goeth to the wars, not vnlike the Roman

For the Lands affigned to maintaine the | fouldiers cald Pratoriani) are an hundred & ten men of special accourt for their Nobility and truft, which are chosen by the Emperor, and haue their names registered, that find among them for the Empe-Two other rours warres, to the number of 65000. 1100ps, tothe horsemen, with all necessaries meete for number of the wars, after the Ruffe manner.

To this end they have yearly allowance made by the Emperor for themselues, & their companies to the fumme of 40000 rubbels. And these 65 000. are to repaire to the field enery year on the borders towards the Chrim Tartar (except they bee appointed for some other service) whether there be warres with the Tartars, or

This might feeme(peraduenture)fomwhat dangerous for some state, to have fo great forces vnder the commaund of Noblemen, to affemble euery yeare vnto one certaine place. But the matter is fo vfed, as that no danger can growe to the Emperor, or his state by this means. Fir because these Noblemp are many wit, an hundred and in all, & change by the Emperor, so describe thinks good Secondly, because they have their livings of the Emperor, being otherwise but of very fmall renennew, and receive this yearly pay of 40000 rubbels, when it is presently to be paid forth againe vnto the foldiers that are under them. Thirdly, because (for the most part) they are about the Emperors person, being of his counfell either speciall, or at large. Fourthly, they are rather as paymasters then Captaines to their companies, themselus not going forth ordinarily to the warres, fanc when some of them are appointed by speciall order from the Emperor himselfe fo the whole number of horsemen that are communality euer in a readines, and in continual pay, 80000. are 80000, a few more or leffe. If he have neede of a greater number,

(which fildom falleth out) then he entertaineth of those Sinaboiarskey, that are out of pay so many as he needeth: and if yet he want of his number, hee giveth charge to his Noblemen (that hold lands of him) to bring into the Fielde (enery man) a proportionable number of his Seruants, (called Kolophey) fuch as Till his Landes, with their Furniture, according vnto the full and just number, that hee intendeth to make uppe. The which feruice beeing Chap.3.

of Moscouia or Russia.

Of Footmen that are in continuall Footmen in ontinual pay

pay,he hath to the number of 12000. all Gunners, called Strelfey. Whereof 5000 are to attend about the Citty of Mosko, or any other place where the Emperour shall abide, and 2000. (which are called Stremaney, Strefley, or Gunners at the ftirrop) about his owne person, at the very

The rest are placed in his garrison towns, till there be occasion to have them in the field, and receive for their fallery or ftibesides twelue measures, a piece of Rye, and Polonian. Next, vnder the Voianod and Oates. Of mercenary Soldiours, that and his Lieutenant Generall, are foure

they have at this time,4300.of Polonians: of Chirchaffes (that are vnder the Polonians) about foure thousand, whereof 3500. are abroad in his garrisons: of Doutches Scots about 150.01 Greekes, Turkes, Danes and Sweadens, all in one band, an 100. or thereabouts. But these they vie onely

vpon the Tartar side, and against the Siberians: as they doe the Tartar Soldioms (whom they hire fometimes but onely for

the present) on the other side against the Polonian and Sweden: thinking it best pollicie, fo to vse their feruice vpon the contrary border. The chiefe Captaines or Leaders of these Forces, according to their names

Captaine, or Lieutenant Generall vnder iustice for all faults, and disorders comthe Emperour. This commonly is one of the fourehouses of the chiefe Nobility of the Land: but so chosen otherwise, sen out of the 113. (which I spake of beas that he is of small valour, or practise in Martiall matters, being thought to serue that turne fo much the better, if he bring no other parts with him, faue the countenance of his Nobility, to be liked of by the Soldiours for that, and nothing elfc. or Captaines of fifties, and the Decetskies, For in this point they are very wary, that or Captaines of tens. these two (to wit) Nobility, and power meete not both in one, specially if they fee wifedome with all, or aptnesse forpol-

Their great Voianod or Generall at this present in their warres, is commonly one of these foure: Knez Feeder Iuanowich Methisloskey, Knez Iuan Michailo-

done, presently lay in their Weapons, wich Glinskoy, Cherechaskoy, and Trowand returne to their seruile occupations betskoy, all of great Nobility, but of very simple quality otherwise: though in Glinskoy (as they fay) there is forme-what

more then in the rest. To make vp this 1. Lieutenant defect in the Voianod or Generall, there is Generall.

fome other ioyned with him as Lieutenant Generall, of farre leffe Nobility, but of more valour and experience in the warres then he, who ordereth all things Court or house where himselfe lodgeth.

that the other countenanceth. At this time their principall man, and most ysed in their warres, is one Knez Demetrie Iuanowich Forestine, an ancient and expert Captaine, and one that hath done great pend enery man feuen rubbels a yeare, feruice (as they fay) against the Tartar

3 Marshals of are strangers (whom they call Nimschoy) other, that have the Marshalling of the whole Army divided among them, and may bee called the Marshalles of the field.

Euery man hath his quarter or fourth part vnder him. Whereof the first is of each quarcalled the Praua Polskoy, or right wing. or e. The second is the Leuoy Polskoy, or left wing . The third is Rusnoy Polskor, or

the broken band, because out of this there are chosen to send abroad vpon any fuddaine exploit, or to make a refeue or supply, as occasion doth require. The fourth is Storeshoung Potskoy, or the warding band. Every one of these soure Marshals haue two other vnder them (eight in all) that twice enery Weeke at and degrees, are these which follow. First, the least, must muster and traine their sethe Voyanodey Bulsbaia, that is, the Great uerall wings or bands, and hold and give

mitted in the Campe. And these eight are commonly chofore) that receive and deliver the pay to the Soldiours. Under these eight are diuers other Captaines, as the Gulauoy Five Coro-Captaines of thousands, fiue hundreds, nels vnder and one hundred. The Petyde Setskoy,

Besides the Voiauoday or Generall of the Army (spoken of before) they haue two other that beare the name of haue two other that beare the name of Voiauoda: wherof one is the Master of the of the Artilgreat Ordenance (called Naradna Voiano- lery. da) who hath divers vnder Officers, neceffary for that service. The other is called the Voianoda Gulanov, or the walking

4. Marthals

Dddd 2 Cap-

n pay,4300.

Dutch manner.

Captaine, that hath allowed him a thoufand good horsemen of principall choise, to range and spie abroad, and hadde the charge of the running Castle, which wee are to speake of hereafter. All these Captaines and men of charge, must (once e-

ucry day) refort to the Bulfha Voiauoda, or Generall of the Armie, to know his pleafure, and to informe him, if there be any requifite matter pertaining to theyr Of-

When warres are towardes (which

Of their mu ftering and leuying of forces, maner of Armour, 8 prouision of victuall for the warre.

Their order

Default of

they faile not of lightly cuery yeare with the Tartar, and many times with the Polonian and Sweden) the foure Lordes of the Chetfirds fend foorth their fummons in the Emperors name, to all the Dukes and Dyackes of the Provinces, to bee proclaimed in the head Townes of enery Shire: that all the Sinaboiarskey, or fonnes

of Gentlemen, make their repaire to fuch a border where the feruice is to be done, at fuch a place, and by fuch a day,& there present themselves vnto such and such Captaines.

When they come to the place affigned them in the Summons or Proclamation, their names are taken by certain Officers, that have Commission for that purpose, from the Roferade or High Constable, as Clearkes of the Bands.

If any make default and faile at the day, he is mulcted, and punished very seucrely. As for the Generall and other cheefe Captaines, they are fent thither from the Emperours owne hand, with fuch Commission and charge, as hee thinketh behoouefull for the present seruice. When the Soldiours are affembled, they are reduced into their Bands and Companies, under their seuerall Captaines of tennes, fifties, hundreds, thou fands, &c. and thefe Bands into foure Polskeis or Legions (but

of farre greater numbers then the Ro-

maine Legions were) under they foure

great Leaders; which also have the Au-

thority of Marshals of the fielde, as was

faide before. Concerning their Armour, they are The horfebut flightly appointed. The common mans furni-Horseman hath nothing else but his Bow ture.

in his case, under his right Arme, and his Quiuer and Sword hanging on the lefte fide: except some few that beare a Case of Dags, or a lanelin, or short staffe along their Horse side. The under Captains will

haue commonly some piece of Armour besides, as a Shirt of Male, or such like. The Generall, with the other chief Captaines and men of Nobilitie, will have The General their horse very richly furnished, theyr Saddles of Cloth of Golde, their Bridles faire boffed and taffelled with Golde and Silke Frindge, bestudded with Pearle &

precious Stones: themselues in very faire Armour, which they call Bullatnoy, made of faire shining Steele yet couered commonly with cloth of Golde, and edged round with Ermin Furre, his steele Helmet on his head, of a very great price, his

Sword, Bow and Arrowes at his fide, his Speare in his hand, with another fayre Helmet, and his Shesta pera or Horsmans Scepter caried before him. Their Swords, Bowes, and Arrowes, are of the Turkish fashion. They practife like the Tartar, to shoote forwards and backwards, as they Aye and retyre.

The Strelley or Foote-man, hath nothing but his peece in his hand, his striking Hatchet at his backe, and his Sword by his fide. The stocke of his peece, is not made Calieuer-wife, but with a plaine & straight stocke (somewhat like a Fouling peece) the barrel is rudely and vnartificially made, very heavy, yet shooteth but a very finall Bullet.

As for their prouision of victuall, the Emperor alloweth none, eyther for Captaine or Soldiour, neither prouideth any for them, except peraduenture fome corn for their mony. Euery man is to bring fufficient for himfelfe, to ferue his turne for foure moneths, and (if neede require) to giue order for more to bee brought vnto him to the Campe, from his Tenant that tilleth his land, or some other place.

One great helpe they have, that for Their fielde Lodging and Dyet, every Ruffe is prepared to be a souldiour before-hand. Al. though the chiefe Captaines, and other of account, do carrie Tents along with them, after the form and fashion of ours, with some better provision of Victuall then the rest; they bring with them commonly into the Campe for Victuall, a kinde of dryed Bread (vyhich they call Sucharie) with some store of Meale, the which they temper withwater, & fo make it into a Ball, or finall lump of Dough, called Tollockno. And this they eat raw in stead of Bread. Their meat is Bacon, or

The Horffe-

nans Illanner

them vppon aboord layde on foure horscs, that are sparred together with Iron Chaines, euery Drumme hauing eyght Beaters or Drummers, besides Trumpets, and Shawmes, which they found after a wilde manner, much diffrent from

of Moscouia or Russia. fome other flesh or fish dryed, after the If it bee a fet battaile, or if any great inua-

fion bee made uppon the Ruffe borders. If the Ruffe Souldier were as hardie to | by the Tartar; they are fette within the execute an enterprize, as hee is harde to running of mooning Castle (called Beza, or Gulay gorod) which is carried about with shem by the Voiauoda gulanoy (or the wal-

king Generall) whome I spake of before. This Walking or mooning Caffle is fo framed, that it may be fet up in length(as occasion doth require) the space of one, two, three, foure, fiuc, fix, or feuen miles : for fo long will it reach. It is nothing elfe not fuffer any great courage or valour to but a double wall of Woode, to defend What the them on both fides, behinde and before; walking Cawith a space of three yards or thereabout, betwixt the two fides : fo that they may

Of their marching, charging, and other mattiall difeihe doc.

The Russe trusteth rather to his number, then to the valor of his Soldiers, or good ordering of his forces. Their marching or leading is without all order, faue that the foure Polskey or Legions (whereinto their army is divided) keepe themselues under their Ensignes, and so thrust all on together in a hurrey, as they are directed by their Generall, Their Enfigne

beare out toyle and trauaile, or were o-

therwise as apt and well trayned for the

warres, as he is indifferent for his lodging

and dyer, he would farre exceed the Sol-

diours of other parts. Whereas now, hee

is farre meaner of courage, and execution

in any warlike feruice. Which commeth

partly of his feruile condition, that will

grow in him. Partly for lacke of due ho-

nour and reward, which he hath no great

hope of, whatfoeuer feruice or execution

is the image of Saint George. The Bullha Dworaney or cheefe Horsemen, have enery man a finall Drumme of Braffe at his Saddle-bow, which he striketh when hee giueth the charge; or onfet.

They have Drummes besides of a huge biggeneffe, which they carrie with

When they give any Charge, or make any inuation, they make a great hallowe or showte altogether, as lowde as they can, which with the found of their Trumpets, Shawmes, and Drummes, maketh a confused and horrible noyse. So they fer on first discharging their Arrows, then dealing with their Swordes, which they vse in a brauery to shake, and brandish ouer their Heades, before they come to

ftrokes. . Their Footmen (because otherwise they want order in leading) are commonly placed in fome ambuth, or place of aduantage, where they may most annov the enemy, with least hurt to themselves. The walking

to vic their other weapons. It is closed at both ends, & made with loope holes on either fide, to lay out the nose of their peece, or to push forth any other weapon. It is caried along with the army wherfocuer it goeth, being taken in to peeces, and so layde on Cartes sparred together, and drawen by horse that are not feene, by reason that they are couered with their carriage, as with a shelfe

stand within it, and have roome enough

to charge and discharge their peeces, and

or pent-house. When it is brought, vnto the place where it is to be vsed (which is denised & The planting chosen out before by the Walking Vola- ing Castle, uod) it is planted, so much as the present vse requireth, sometime a mile long, som times two, fometimes three, or more:

Which is foone done without the helpe of any Carpenter, or instrument : because the Timber is so framed to clasp together one peece within another : as is eafily vn. derstood, by those that know the manner

of the Ruffe byilding, In this Castle standeth their Shot well fenced for aduantage, especially agaynst the Tartar, that bringeth no Ordenance, Tartar. nor other Weapon into the Fielde with him, faue his Sword, and Bowe and Arrowes. They have also within it diverse

fielde peeces, which they vie as occasion doth require. Of peeces for the fielde, they carry no great store, when they war against the Tartar : but when they deale with the Polonian (of whose forces they make more account) they go better furnithed with all kind of munition, and other necessarie provisions. It is thought, that no Prince of Christendome, hath better Dddda

holding the

Countries of

Pechora, Per-

mia, and Sibe

The quality of the Ruffe Soldier.

number. The Russe Soldiour is thought to be better at his defence within some Castle, or Towne, then hee is abroad at a fet pitched fielde. Which is ever noted in the practife of his warres, and namely, at the fiedge of Vobsko, fome few yeares fince: where he repulsed the Polonian king, Stephan Batere, with his whole Army of an hundred thousand men, and forced him (in the end) to give over his fiedge, with the loffe of many of his best Captaines and Soldiers. But in a fet fielde, the Ruffe is noted to have the worfe of the Polonian and Sweden.

store of munition, then the Russe Empe-

rour. And it may partly appeare by the

Artillerie house at Mosko, where are of all

fortes of great Ordenance, all Braffe pec-

ces, very faire, to an exceeding great

If any behaue himfelfe more valiantly then the rest, or doe any speciall peece of feruice, the Emperor fendeth him a piece of Gold, stamped with the image of Saint George on horse backe. Which peece they hang on their fleenes, and fet in their Caps. And this is accounted the greatest honor they can receive for any service they do.

The Ruffe Emperors (of late years) have very much enlarged their Dominions & Territories. Their first Conquest after the Dukedome of Mosko (for before that time they were but Dukes of Volodemer, as before was fayde) was the Cittie, and Dukedome of Nouverad on the West and North-West side: which was no smal inlargement of their Dominion, & strengthening vnto them for the winning of the rest. This was done by Iuan, great Grand father to Theodore now Emperour, about the yeare 1480.

The fame began likewife to encroach vpon the Countreyes of Linonia and Lituania but the Conquest onely intended, and attempted by him your some part of those Countreyes, was pursued and performed by his fonne Bafileus, who first of all wan the Cittie and Dukedom of Plefko, afterwards the City and Dukedom of Smolensko, and many other faire Townes, with a large Territory belonging vnto them, about the yeare 1514.

These victories against the Lettoes or Lituanians, in the time of Alexander their Duke, hee atchieued rather by aduantage

of civill diffentions and treasons among themselues, then by any great pollicie or force of his owne. But all this was loft againe by his sonne Inan Vasilowich, about the saber, lot eight or nine yeares past, vpon composibly the sonne, tion with the Polonian King Stephen Batore; whereunto he was forced by the aduantages which the Pole had then of him, by reason of the soyle hee had given him before, and the disquietnesse of his owne state at home. Onely the Russe Emperor, at this time, bath left him on that fide his Countrey, the Cities of Smolensko, Vitobsko, Cheringo, and Beala Gorod in Lituania. In Lituania, not a Towne, nor one foote of ground.

When Basileus first Conquered those Countreyes, hee suffered the Natines to keepe their possessions, and to inhabit all the Emperon their Townes, onely paying him a Tri- remissenes in bute, vnder the gouernment of his Ruffe thereof. Captaines. But by their Conspiracies & attempts not long after, he was taught to deale more furely with them. And fo coming youn them the second time, hee killed and caried away with him, three parts of foure, which he gaue or folde vnto the Tartars that served him in those wars, & (insted of them) placed there his Ruffes, formany as might oner-match the reft, with certaine Garrisons of strength befides. Wherein, notwithstanding this ouerlight was committed, for that (taking away with him the Vpland or Countrey people (that should have tild the ground and might eafily have bene kept in order without any daunger, by other good policies) hee was driven afterwardes manie yeares together, to Victuall the Countrey (especially the great Townes) out of his owne Countrey of Russia, the foyle lying there in the meane while waste and vntilled.

The like fell out at the port of Narue, Narue eur in Liefland, where his fonne Iuan Vasilowith denifed to build a Towns and a Caftle on the other fide the River, (called Inangorod) to keepe the Town and countrey in subjection. The Castle he caused to bee so built and fortified, that it was thought to bee inuincible. And when it was finished, for reward to the Architect (that was a Polonian) hee put out both his A most vn. eyes, to make him vnable to build the like againe. But having left the Natives all within their owne Countrey, without a.

bating their number or strength; the Towne and Castle (not long after) was betrayed, and furrendred agains to the King of Sweden. Kingdomes won from the Tartar.

On the Southeast side, they have got the Kingdomes of Cazan, and Altracan. These were wonne from the Tartar, by the late Emperor Iuan Vafilowich, Father to the Emperour that now is: the one about 35. the other about 33. yeares agoe. Northward out of the Country of Siberia, he hath laide vnto his Realme, a great bredth and length of ground, from wichida to the River of Obba, about a thousand miles space: so that hee is bold to write himselfe now, The Great Commander of Si-

The Countries likewise of Permia & Pechora, are a diuerse people & language from the Ruffe, ouercome not long fince, and that rather by threatning, & thaking of the Sword, then by any actuall force: as being a weake and naked people, without meanes to relift.

Meanes of holding his chiefe towner

The strength

Permia and

heir conque

Pechora,

That which the Ruffe hath in his prefent possession, he keepeth on this fort. In his foure cheefe border townes of Vobsko, Smolensko, Astracan, and Cazan, he hath certaine of his Counfel, not of greatest Nobility, but of greatest trust, which haue more authority within their Precincts (for the countenancing & strengthening of their gouernment there) then the other Dukes that are set to gouerne in other places, as was noted before, in the manner of ordering their Prouinces. These he changeth somtime enery yeare, fometime enery fecond or third yeare, but exceedeth not that time; except vppon very speciall trust, and good liking of the party, and his service : least by enlarging of their time, they might grow into fome familiarity with the enemy (as fome haue done) being so far out of sight.

The Townes besides are very strongly fenced with Trenches, Castles, & store Townes & of munition, and have garrifons within the, to the number of two or three thoufand a piece. They are stored with victuall(if any fiedge fhould come vpon them) for the space of two or three yeares before hand. The foure Castles of Smelensko, Vobsko, Cazan and Astracan, hee hath made very strong to beare out any siedge: so that it is thought that those Townes are impregnable.

As for the Countries of Pechora and Permia, and that part of Siberia, which hee hath now under him, they are kept by as easie meanes, as they were first got, viz.rather by thewing, then by vling of Armes. First, he hath stored the Country with as many Ruffes as there are Natines, & hath there some few Soldiours in garrison, enough to keepe them under. Secondly, his Officers and Magistrates there, are of his owne Ruffe people, and he changeth them very often viz. euery yeare twice or thrice; notwithstanding there be no great feare of any innouation. Thirdly he diuideth them into many fmall gouernements, like a staffe broke in many small pieces: fo that they have no strength being senered, which was but little neyther, when they were all in one. Fourthly, he prouideth that the people of the country haue neyther Armour, nor mony, being taxed and pilled so often as he thinketh good: without any meanes to shake off that yoke, or to releeue themselues.

In Siberia (where he goeth on in purfuing his Conquest) hee hath divers Cafiles and Garrisons, to the number of fixe thousand Soldiours of Russes and Polonians, and fendeth many new supplies thither, to plant and inhabite, as he winneth ground. At this time besides, he hath gotten the Kings Brother of Siberia, allured by certaine of his Captains, to leave Brother of Siberia alluhis owne Country, by offers of greaten- red from his tertainment, and pleasanter life with the Russe Emperor, then he had in Siberia. He was brought in this last yeare, and is now with the Emperor at Maska well entertai-

This may be faid of the Ruffe practife. wherefocuer he ruleth, either by right of Inheritance, or by Conquest.

First, hee bereaueth the Country of Thepollicy of Armour, and other meanes of defence, their Con-which he permitteth to none, but to his quell or other Boiarskeis onely.

Secondly, he robbeth them continue they come, ally of their mony and commodities, and leaueth them bare, with nothing but their bodies and lines, within certaine yeares compasse:

Thirdly, hee renteth and divideth his Territories into many small pieces, by feuerall gouernments: fo that none hath much vnder him to make any strength, though he had other opportunities.

Fourthly

prenailing,

Of their Col-

Reward for

lonies and maintaining of their Con quests or purchafes by force.

The victories & conquestes of Theodore

reliated by

the Chrims

fuprizall.

The Chrims

er of themselues, and strangers (in those places) where their gouernment lyeth. Fiftly, he changeth his Gouernors once a yeare ordinarily, that there grow no great liking, nor intiernesse betwixt the people and them, nor acquaintance with the enemy, if they lie towards the Bor-

Sixtly, hee appointeth in one and the fame place aduerfary Gouernors, the one to be as Controller of the other, as the Dukes and Diacks: where (by meanes of their enuies and emulations) there is lesse hurt to be feared by their agreement, and himselse is better informed what is done

amisse. Seventhly, he sendeth many times into euery Prouince fecret Messengers (of speciall trust about him) as intelligencers, to pry and hearken out what is doing, and what is amisse there. And this is ordinary, though it be fudden, and vnknowne what time they will come.

Their neighbours with whom they haue greatest dealings and intercourse, tars, and other both in peace and warre, are first the Tarborderers to tar: Secondly the Polonian, whom the the Country of Kulsia, with Ruffe calleth Laches, noting the first Author or Founder of the Nation, who was haue most to called Laches or Leches, whereunto is addo in warre & peace. The Poloni ded Po, which fignifieth People, and fo is made Polaches, that is, the People or Posterity of Laches: which the Latines (after their

ans called Laches by the Ruffe, and the manner of writing) call Polanos. The third reason why. are the Swedens. The Polonians and Swedens are better knowne to these parts of Europe, then are the Tartars, that are farther off from vs (as beeing of Asia) and divided into many Tribes, different both in name and government one from ano-The greatest and mightiest of them is

the Chrim Tartar, (whom some call the Great Cham) that Iveth South, & Southeastward from Russia, and doth most annoy the Country by often inuations, comonly once every yeare, fometime entering very farre within the inland parts. In the yeare 1571 he came as far as the Cittie of Mosko, with an Army of two hun-

dred thousand men, without any battaile,

or resistance at all, for that the Russe Em-

peror (then Iuan Vafilowich) leading forth

his Army to encounter with him march-

of very purpole, as not daring to aduenture the Fielde, by reason that he doubted his Nobility and cheefe Captaines. of a meaning to betray him to the Tar-The Cittie hee tooke not but fired the

Subburbs, which by reason of the build- The fring of ings (which are al of Wood, without any Mosko by the Stone, Brick or Lime, saue certaine out-roomes) kindled so quickly, and went on yeare 1571. with fuch rage; as that it confumed the greatest part of the Citty, almost within the space of foure houres, being of thirty miles or more of compasse. Then might you have seene a lamentable spectacle: besides the huge and mighty slame of the Citty all on light fire, the people burning

in their houses and streetes, but most of all of fuch as laboured to passe out of the gates, farthest from the enemy; where meeting together in a mightie throng, & fo prefling enery man to preuent another: wedged themselves so fast within A strange acthe gate and freetes neere vnto it, as that cident as cut three rankes walked one vpon the others was heard of. head the vopermost treading down those that were lower : fo that there perished at

that time (as was faide) by the fire & the

prease, the number of eight hudred thoufand people, or more. The Chrim thus having fired the City, and fed his eyes with the fight of it all on The Chrim a light flame; returned with his Army, and faluration to the Emperor. fent to the Ruffe Emperor a Knife (as was faid) to flick himfelfe withall : vpbraiding this loffe, and his desperate case, as not

daring cyther to meete his enemy in the fielde, nor to trust his friends nor subjects at home. The principall cause of this continual quarrell betwixt the Ruffe and The quarrell the Chrim, is for the right of certaine bor Ruffe and der parts, claimed by the Tartar, but pof- Tartar. fessed by the Russe. The Tartar alleadgeth, that besides Astracan, & Cazan (that are the ancient possession of the East Tartar) the whole Country from his bounds

North and Westward, so farre as the Ci-

feeding the Chrims Horse (him-selfe

ty of Mosko, and Mosko it selfe, pertaineth to his right. Which feemeth to haue bin true, by the report of the Ruffes them-felues, that tell of a certaine homage, that was done by the Ruffe Emperour (euery Tattar, and in yeare) to the Great Chrim or Cham, the Ruffe Emperour standing on foote, and

Their paffage

of Moscouia or Russia.

fitting on his back) with O ites out of his owne Cap, instead of a Boule or Maunger, and that within the Castle of Mosko. And this homage (they fay) was done till the time of Bafileus, grandfather to this man. Who furprizing the Chrim Empe-Th: homage rour by a stratagem, done by one of his Nobility (called Iuan Demetrowich Belfchey) was content with this ranfome, viz. with the changing of this homage into a tribute of Furres: which afterwards also was denied to be paide by this Emperors are very pregnant, and ready witted to de-

Hereupon they continue the quarrell, their better aduantage. As in their war the Ruffe defending his Country, & that against Beala the fourth, King of Hungary, which he hath won, the Chrim Tartar inwhom they inuaded with fine hundred uading him once or twice every yeare, sometime about Whitsontide, but oftner in Haruest. What time, if the great having flaine his Chancellor, called Ni-Cham or Chrim come in his owne person, hee bringeth with him a great Army of an hundred thousand, or two hundred thousand men. Otherwise, they make Short and Sudden roads into the Country with leffer numbers, running about the list of the border, as wilde Geese flie, inuading and retiring where they fee aduan-

Their common practife (beeing very The manner populous) is to make divers Armies, and fo drawing the Ruffe to one or two places

of the Frontiers, to inuade at some other place, that is left without defence. Their manner of fight, or ordering of their Forces, is much after the Ruffe manner (fpoken of before) saue that they are all horsemen, and carry nothing elfe but a Bowe, a sheafe of Arrowes, & a faulchon sword after the Turkish fashion. They are very expert horsemen, and vse to shoote as readily backward, as forward. Some will haue a horsemans staffe like vnto a boare speare, besides their other weapons. The

common Soldiour hath no other armour then his ordinary apparell, viz. a blacke sheepes skinne, with the wooll fide ourward in the day time, and inward in the night time, with a cap of the same. But their Morseys or Noblemen imitate the Turke both in apparell and armor. When

they are to passe ouer a Riner with their Army, they tye three or foure horses together, and taking long Poles or pieces of wood, binde them fast to the tayles of their hories : fo fitting on the Poles they

(when they come to joyne battaile) they are accounted farrebetter men then the Russe people, fierce by nature, but more hardy and bloudy by continuall practife of warre: as men knowing no parts of peace, nor any civill practife.

Yet their fubtilty is more then may feeme to agree with their barbarous condition. By reason they are practised to inuade continually, and to robbe their

neighbours that border about them; they

uise stratageins (vponthe sudden) for

a great victory. Where (among other)

The Tarrers war against Beala King of thousand men, and obtained against him Hungary, and their cunning

cholas Schinick; they found about him the Kingspriny Seale. Whereupon, they deuised presently to counterfeit Letters in the Kings Name, to the Citties and Townes next about the place, where the field was fought; with charge, that in no case they should convey themselves and their goods out of their dwellings, where they might abide fafely without all feare of danger, and not leave the Country defolate, to the possession of so vile and barbarous an enemy, as was the Tartar Nation, tearming themselues in all reprochfull manner.

For, notwithstanding he had lost his carriages, with some few straglers that had marched diforderly; yet hee doubted not but to recover that loffe, with the accesse of a notable victory, if the fauage All policies in Tartar durst abide him in the field. To watte are by this purpose, having written their letters them account in the Polish Charactes, by certaine young

men whom they tooke in the fielde, and figned them with the Kings Seale; they dispatched them foorth to all the quarters of Hungary, that lay neare about the place. Whereupon the Hungarians, that were now flying away with their goods, wines, and children, vppon the rumour of the kings ouerthrow taking comfort by thefe counterfeit Letters; staied at home. And

fo were made a prey, being furprized on the fudden by the huge number of thefe Tartars, that had compassed them about before they were aware. When they befiege a Towne or Fort, Befiedging of

drine their horse ouer. At handy-strokes they offer much Parley, and send many Towners flattering

The Chrim Tartar, or the Great Cham.

together by

Of the Tar-

whom they

ftility, and cruelty. This they do vpon a rule they have, viz. That Iustice is to bee practised but towards their owne. They encounter not lightly, but they have fome ambush, whereunto (hauing once shewed themselues, and made some short conflict) they retire, as repulsed for feare, and so draw the enemy into it if they can. But the Ruffe being wel acquainted with their

practife, is more wary of them. When they come a rouing with fome final number, they fet on horsebacke counterfeit shapes of men, that their number may

sceme greater.

When they make any onfet, their manner is to make a great shoute, crying all out together, Olla Billa, Olla Billa, God help vs, God helpe vs. They contemne death fo much, as that they chuse rather to die, then to yeeld to their enemy, & are feene (when they are flaine) to bite the very weapon when they are past striking, or helping of themselues. Wherein appeareth, how diffrent the Tartar is in his defperate courage, from the Ruffe and Turke. For the Ruffe Souldior, if hee begin once to retire, putteth all his fafety in his speedy flight. And if once he be taken by his

enemy, he neither defendeth himfelfe, nor intreateth for his life, as reckning straight to die. The Turke commonly, when hee is past hope of escaping, falleth to entretie, and casteth away his weapon, offereth both his hands, and holdeth them vp, as it were to be tied: hoping to faue his life,

by offering himfelfe bondflane. The cheefe booty the Tartars feeke

for in all their wars, is to get store of captines, specially yong boies and girles, who they fell vnto the Turkes, or other their neighbours. To this purpose they take with them great Baskets, made like Bakers Panniers, to carry them tenderly, and if any of them happen to tier, or to be fick on the way, they dash him against the ground, or some tree, and so leave him dead. The Soldiours are not troubled with keeping the Captiues, and the other bootic, for hindering the execution of their wars; but they have certaine bands that intend nothing elfe, appointed of purpose to receive and keepe the Cap-

tines and the other prey.

The Ruffe borders (being vsed to their inuafions lightly euery yeare in the Summcr) keepe few other Cattell on the border parts, faue Swine onely, which the religion lee Tartar wil not touch, nor drive away with him: for that he is of the Turkish religion, and will eate no Swines flesh. Of Christ our Sauior, they confesse as much as doth the Turk in his Alkaron, viz. That he came of the Angell Gabriel, & the Virgin Mary, that he was a great Prophet, & shall be the ludge of the world at the last day. In other matters likewise, they are much ordered after the manner and direction of the Turke: having felt the Turkish Forces, when hee wonne from them Azou, and Caffa, with fome other townes about the Euxine, or Blacke Sea, that were before tributaries to the Chrim Tartar. So that now the Emperor of the Chrims (for Choile of the the most part) is chosen some one of the Taitars Em Nobility, whom the Turke doth commend: whereby it is brought now to that paffe, that the Chrim Tartar giveth to the Turke the tenth part of the spoile, which he getteth in his wars against the Christi-

Heerein they differ from the Turkish Religion, for that they have certaine idoll puppers, made of filke, or like stuffe, of the kish Religion. fashion of a man, which they fasten to the doore of their walking houses, to bee as Ianusses or keepers of their house. And these Idols are made not by all, but by certaine religious women, which they have among them, for that and like vies. They haue besides, the image of their King or Great Cham, of an huge bignesse, which they erect at enery stage, when the Army marcheth: and this every one must bend and bow vnto as he paffeth by it, be hee Tartar, or stranger. They are much gi-uen to witchcraft, and eminous coniec-witchcraft. tures, vpon enery accident which they heare or fee.

In making of marriages, they have no regard of alliance or confanguinity. One- Making of ly with his Mother, Sifter, and Daughter, a man may not marry, and though hee take the woman into his house, and accompany with her; yet hee accounterh her not for his Wife, till he have a childe by her. Then he beginneth to take a dowry of her friends, of Horse, Sheep, Kine, &c. If the bee barren, after a certaine

Chap. 3.

Ine Tartar

heir autho-

time, he turneth her home agayne.

Voder the Emperour they have certayne Dukes, whom they call Marfeis, or Diusymirseis: that rule ouer a certayne number of tenne thousand, twenty thoufand, or forty thousand a peece, which they call Hoords. When the Emperour hath any vie of them to ferue in his wars, they are bound to come, and to bring with them their Souldiers to a certayne number, euery man with his two horses at the least, the one to ride on, the other to kill, when it commeth to his turne to haue his horse eaten. For their chiefe vit-The Tartars taile is horfe flesh, which they eate without bread, or any other thing with it. So that if a Tartar be taken by a Ruffe, he shal be fure lightly to finde a horse legge, or fome other part of him hanging at his faddle bowe.

> This iast yeare, when I was at the Mofco, came in one Kiriach Morfey, Nephew to the Emperour of the Chrims that now is (whose father was Emperour before) accompanied with 3, hundred Tartars, and his two wives, whereof one was his brothers widdow. Where being entertayned in very good fort (after the Russe manner) he had fent vnto his lodging for his welcome, to bee made ready for his fupper and his companies, two very large and fatte horses, ready flayed on a sledde. They preferre it before other flesh, because the meate is stronger (as they say) then beefe, mutton, and fuch like. And yet (which is maruell) though they ferue all as horsemen in the warres, and care all of horse slesh, there are brought yearely to the Mosco, to be exchanged for other commodities, thirty or fortie thousand

Their vie of

present at

a Tartars en-

Difference

They keepe also great heards of kine. and flockes of blacke sheepe, rather for the skinnes and milke (which they carrie with them in great bottles) then for the vie of the flesh, though sometimes they eate of it. Some vse they have of Rice, Figges, and other Fruites. They drinke milke or warme blood, and for the most part, carde them both together. They vse sometimes (as they doe trauell by the way) to let their horses blood in a veine, and to drink it warme, as it cometh from his body.

Tartar horses, which they commonly call

Townesthydo plant none, nor other

Of Moscouia or Russia.

flanding buildings, but have walking hou The Tarrars fes, which the Latines call Veii, built vpon | dwelling, walking, or rewheeles, like vnto a Shepheards cottage. moung hou-These they draw with them whither soe- les. uer they goe, driving their cattaile with them. And whe they come to their stage, or standing place, they plant their Carthouses very orderly in a ranke; and so do make the forme of the streetes, and of a large towne. And this is the manner of the Emperour himselse, who hath no other feate of his Empire, but an Agora, or towne of wood, that mooneth with him Towne of whither focuer he goeth. As for the fix- wood mouing ed and standing buildings vsed in other with the Em-Countries, they fay they are vnwholefome and vnpleafant.

They beginne to mooue their houses and cattaile in the Spring time, from the | The times of South part of their Countrey towardes remooning the North parts. And so driving on till they have grased all vp vnto the farthest part Northward, they returne backe agayne towardes their South Countrey (where they continue all the winter) by ten or twelue miles a stage : in the meane while, the graffe being fprung vp againe, to serue for their cattaile as they returne. From the border of the Shalcan towardes the Caspian Sea, vnto the Russe frontires, they have a goodly Countrey, specially on the South and South-east parts, but lost for lacke of tillage.

Of money they have no vie at all, and They have no therefore prefer Braffe and Steele before among them. other mettalls, especially bullate, which they vie for Swords, Kniues, and other necessaries. As for Golde and Silver, they neglect it of very purpole, (as they do all tillage of their ground) to be more free for their wandring kinde of life, and to keepe their Countrey leffe subiect to inualions, Which giveth them great aduantage against all their neighbours, euer inuading, and neuer being inuaded. Such as have taken vpon them to invade their Countrey (as of olde time Cyrus and Darius Hystaspis, on the East and Southeast fide) have done it with very ill successe. as we finde in the Stories written of those | Their pollicy times. For their manner is, when any will inuade them, to allure and draw them on, by flying and reculing (as if they were af-fraid) vntill they have drawne them some good way within their Countrey. Then, when they beginne to want vittaile and

heir houses.

of their coun-

A fubtle rule among the Tartars.

> The Tartars contempt of

Of the Ruffe

Of the Turk ish Soldiour,

the Tartara.

The Politicke and iudiciall proceeding 9 Booke 864.

Laonicus Chalcocondylas.

where nothing is to bee had) to ftop vp the paffages, and enclose them with multitudes. By which stratagem (as wee reade in Laonicus Chalcocondylas in his Turkifh flory) they had well nigh furprized the great and hige Army of Tamberlaine; but that he retired with al speed he could, towards the River Tanais, or Don, not without great losse of his men, and carriages.

Pachymerius.

A ftory of a Tartarian Captaine.

Person and

complection of the Tartar

and their na

turall inclina

tion.

In the story of Pachymerius the Greeke (which hee wrote of the Emperours of Constantinople, from the beginning of the Reigne of Michael Palaologus, to the time of Andronieus the elder) I remember hee telleth (to the same purpose) of one Nogas, a Tartarian Captaine vnder Cazan, the Emperor of the E. ft Tartars (of who the Citty and Kingdome of Cazan may feeme to have taken the denomination) who refused a Present of Pearle & other Iewels, sent vnto him from Michael Palaologus: Asking (withall) for what vie they ferued, and whither they were good to keepe away fickneffe, death, or other miffortunes of this life, or no? So that it feemeth, they have ever (or long time) bene of that minde, to value things no further, then by the vic, and necessity for which they ferue.

For person and complection, they have broad and flat vifages, of a tanned colour into yellow and blacke, fierce and cruell lookes, thin haired vpon the vpper lip, and pit of the chin, light and nimble bodied, with short legges, as if they were made naturally for Horsemen whereto they practife themselues from their childhood, fildome going afoote about any bufineffe. Their speech is very sudden and loud, speaking as it were out of a deep hollow throate. When they fing, you would thinke a Cow lowed, or some great bandog howled. Their greatest exercise is Mooting, wherin they traine up their children from their very infancy, not fuffring them to eate, til they have thot neere the marke within a certaine scantling. They are the very fame, that (fometimes) were called * Scytha Nomades, or the Scythian Shepheards, both by the Greekes and La-

Some thinke, that the Turkes tooke their beginning from the Nation of the Chrim Tartars. Of which opinion is Lao-

other necessaries (as needes they must | nicus Chalcocondylas the Grecke Historiographer, in his first Booke of his Turkifh ftory. Wherein he followeth divers very probable coniectures.

The first, taken from the very name it felfe, for that the word Turke, fignifieth a The reason Shepheard, or one that followeth a vagrant and wilde kinde of life. By which his opinion of name these Scythian Tartars haue euer bin the Tartars. noted, being called by the Greeks, Skuthai Nomades, or the Scythian Shepheards.

His second reason, because the Turkes (in his time) that dwelt in Afia the leffe, to wit, in Lydia, Coria, Phrygia, and Cappadocia, fpake the very fame Language that these Tartars did, that dwelt betwixt the River Tanais or Don, and the Country of Sarmatia, which (as is well knowne) are these Tartars called Chrims. At this time also, the whole Nation of the Turks differ not much in their common speech from the Tartar Language.

Thirdly, because the Turke and the Chrim Tartar agree so well together, as well in Religion, as matter of Trafficke, neuer inuading, or iniurying one another: faue that the Turke (fince Laonicus his time) hath encroached vppon some Towns vpon the *Euxine Sea, that before *Apartofit pertained to the Chrim Tartar.

tained to the Chrim Tartar.

Sea, dividing Europe from Fourthly, because Orcogules sonne to Asia, Oguzalpes, and (Father to Ottoman, the first of name of the Turkish Nation) made his first rodes out of those partes of Asia, vpon the next borderers, til he cam towards the Countreyes about the Hill Taurus, where he ouercame the Greckes that inhabited there: and so enlarged the name and territory of the Turkish Nation till he came to Eubæa and Attica, and other parts of Greece. This is the opinion of Laonicus, who lived amongest the Turkes, in the time of Amurath, the fixte Turkish Emperor, about the year 1400. when the memory of their originall yvas more fresh:and therefore the likelyer hee was to hit the truth.

There are divers other Tartars that border vpon Russia, as the Nagaies, the Che- The Nagay remifens, the Mordwites, the Chircaffes, & Tattar, the the Shalcans, which all differ (in name, The Chirof more then in Regiment, or other condi- cethe ciuld tion) from the Chrim Tartar, except the Tattar. Chircasses, that border South-West, towards Lituania, and are farre more civill then the rest of the Tartars; of a comely

The Cheremifen Tartat very trouble fome and dan-

The Mord-

Chap.3.

The Cheremifen Tartars, that lye betwixt the Russe and the Nagay, are of two forts, the Lugauoy (that is of the Valley) and the Nagoruay, or of the hilly Country. These haue much troubled the Emperours of Russia. And therefore they are content now to buy peace of them, under pretence of giving a yearely pension of Ruffe commodities, to their Morfeis, or Dinoymorfeis, that are cheefe of their Tribes. For which also they are bound to ferue them in their wars, vnder certaine conditions. They are faide to be just and true in their dealings: and for that cause they hate the Russe people, whom they account to bee double, and false in all their dealings. And therefore the common fort are very vnwilling to keepe agreement with them, but that they are kept in by their Morfeis, or Dukes for their pensions fake.

plying themselues to the fashion of the Polonian. Some of them have subjec-

ted themselves vnto the Kings of Poland,

and professe Christianity. The Nagay

lyeth Eastward, and is reckoned for the

best man of warre among all the Tursars,

but very fauage and cruell about all the

The most rude and barbarous is counted the Mordwite Tartar, that hath many selfe-fashions, and strange kindes of behauiour, differing from the rest. For his Religion, though hee acknowledge one God, yet his manner is to worshippe for God, that living thing, that hee first meeteth in the morning, and to sweare by it all that whole day, whether it be Horse, Dogge, Catte, or whatfoeuer else it bee. When his friend dieth, he killeth his best Horse, and having flayed off the skinne, he carrieth it on high vppon a long Pole, before the corpes to the place of buriall. This hee doth (as the Ruffe faith) that his friend may have a good Horse to carry him to Heauen: but it is likelier to declare his loue towards his dead friend, in that he will have to die with him the best thing that he hath.

Next to the Kingdome of Astracan, that is the farthest part Southeastward of the Ruffe Dominion, lyeth the Shalcans, and the Countrey of Media: whether the Ruffe Merchants trade for raw filkes, fyndon, faphion, skins, and other commodi-

person, and of a stately behauiour, as ap- | ties. The chiefe Townes of Media where the Ruffe tradeth, are Derbent (built by A lexander the great, as the Inhabitants fay). and Zamachio, where the staple is kept for rawe filkes. Their manner is (in the Spring) time) to reviue the filke-worms (that lye) Of reviving dead all the Winter) by laying them in the Silkethe warme Sun, and to haften their quick- wormer in ning, that they may fooner goe to worke) time. to put them into bags, and fo to hang the under their childrens armes. As for the Worme called Chrinisin (as wee call it Chrymfon) that maketh coloured filke, it is: bred not in Media, but in Affyria. This trade to Derbent & Zamachio for raw filks. and other commodities of that Country, as also into Persia, and Bougharia, downe the River Volgha, and through the Caspian Sea; is permitted aswell to the English, as to the Ruffe Merchants, by the Emperors last Graunt, as appeareth. Which he accounteth for a very special fauour, and might prooue indeed very beneficiall to all kinde of Merchants, if the trade

were well and orderly vsed. The whole Nation of the Tartars, are etterly voide of all learning, & with have no learout written Law. Yet certaine rules ning or writthey have, which they hold by tradition, common to all the Hoords, for the practife of their life. Which are of this fort.

ten Law.

First, To obey their Emperour and other Magistrates, what soeuer they command a bout the publike service.

2. Except for the publike behoofe, enery Orders and man to be free, and out of controlement.

3. No prinate man to possesse any Lands, but the whole Country to be in common.

4. To neglect all daintinesse and variety of meates, and to content themselves with that which commeth next to hand, for more hardnesse, and readinesse in the executing of their affaires.

5. To weare any base attire, and to patch their cloathes, whether there be any neede or not: that when there is neede, it be no shame to weare a patcht Coate.

6. To take, or steale from any stranger what soeuer they can get, as being enemies to all men, faue to fuch as will subject them-Selues to them.

7. Towards their owne Hoord and Na. tion, to be true in word and deed.

8. To Suffer no stranger to come within the Realm. If any do, the same to be bond-slave to objeruations

• A people Scythia a bout Meotis

the Chirchaffe,.

North sea.

perour of Rusia.

The Permi-

The Samoites

faith) of eating himselfe: as if in times past, they lived as Cannibals, eating one an other. Which they make more probable,

Indigenz or beggers.

The Samoite religion.

Slata Baba o the golden Hagge

The Obdo.

chants, and other as have the Tartar Bull, or Pastport about them. The Permians and Samoites, that do lie from Rusia, North and Northeast, are thought likewise to have taken their beginning from the Tartar kinde. And it may partly be ghessed by the fashion of their countenance, as having all broade

and flat faces, as the Tartars have, except

The Permans are accounted for a very

ancient people. They are now subject

to the Rulle. They live by hunting, and

trading with their furres, as doth also the

ofrawe flesh, whatsoeuer it be, euen the

very cartion that lyeth in the ditch. But

as the Samoites themselues will say, they

were called Samoie, that is of themselves,

as though they were Indigena, or poore

people bred vpon that very foile, that ne-

uer changed their feate from one place to

another, as most Nations have doone.

They are subject, at this time, to the Em-

I talked with certaine of them, & finde

ba, or the Golden hagge, (which I have read

in some Maps and Descriptions of these

countries, to be an Idole, after the forme

of an old woman) that being demaunded

by the Priest, gives them certaine oracles,

concerning the successe, and event of

things; I found it to be but a very Fable.

Onely in the Prouince of Obdaria, vppon

the Sea fide, neare to the mouth of the

great river Obda, there is a Rocke, which

naturally (beeing fornewhat helped by

imagination) may feeme to beare the

shape of a ragged woman, with a childe

in her armes (as the Rocke by the North

Cape the (hape of a Fryer) where the Ob-

dorian Samoites vie much to refore, by rea-

fon of the commoditie of the place for

fishing: and there sometime(as their ma-

stocks of the same, both men and women. They are all black haired naturally beardleffe. Therefore the men are hardly difcerned from the women by their lookes,

Samoyt, that dwellesh more towards the rouing still from one place of the country to another, without any property of house or land, more to one then to an other. The Samoyt hath his name (as the Ruffe Their leader or directer in enery company is their Papa or Prieft. because (at this time) they eate all kinde

North-cape) to the farthest part Southeast (which the Russe calleth Sweetnesse or Holy note, the Englishmen Capegrace) about 345. verst or miles. From Sweetnelle to Candelox by the way of Verlega (which measureth the breadth of that countrey)is 90 miles, or thereabouts. The whole Countrey (in a manner) is eviler Lakes or Mountains, which towards the Sea fide are called Tondro, because they that they acknowledge one God; but represent him by such things as they have are all of hard and craggy rocke, but the in-land parces are well furnished with most vie and good by. Therefore they do worship, the Sunne, the Ollen, the Losh, woods growing upon the hilles fides, the and fuch like. As for the storie of Slata Ba-

that is , the Noruegian Lappes : because

ner is) conceine and practife their forceries, and ominous coniecturings, about the good or the bad speede of their iourneys, fishings, huntings, and other such

They are clad in Seale skins, with the hairie fide outwards downe, as low as the habite and

knees, with their breeches and neather- behauiour. lave that the women weare a locke of haire downe along both their eares. They

live (in a maner) a wilde and a fauage life,

On the North fide of Ruffia next vnto The Lappet, Corelia, lyeth the Countrey of Lappia, which reacheth in length from the farthest point Northward, (towardes the

Lakes lying betweene. Their dyet is very bare and funple. Bread they have none, and feeding. but feed onely your fifth and fowle. They

are subject to the Emperour of Russia,

and the two Kings of Sweden and Den-

marke: which all exact tribute & custome

of them (as was faid before:)but the Em-

perour of Russia beareth the greatest hand

ouer them, and exact of them farre more

then the rest. The opinion is, that they

were first tearmed Lappes, of their briefe

they be of the Danish Religion. For the

Danes & Noruegians they account for one

people. The other that have no Religi-

on at all but live as brute and Heathenish

and fhort speach. The Ruffe divideth the whole nation of the Lappes into two forts. The one they call Nowremanskoy Lapary, the Lapper Of Moscouia or Russia.

people, without God in the world, they call Dikoy Lopary, or the wilde Lappes.

The whole Nation is veterly vulearned, hauing not fo much as the vie of any The Lappes Alphabet, or Letter among them. For ruide of all practife of witchcraft and forcery, they Learning. passe all Nations in the world. Though for the inchanting of Ships that fayle along their Coast (as I have heard it reported) and their giuing of windes, good The Lappes

gue or fell no

Their Wea-

to their friends, and contrary vnto other, whom they meane to hurt by tying of certaine knots vpon a Rope (some-what like to the tale of Æolus his winde-bag) is a very fable, deuised (as may seeme) by themselues, to terrifie saylers for comming neare their Coast. Their Weapons are the long Bow, and hand-gunne, wherein they excell, aswell for quicknesse to charge and discharge; as for nearnesse at the marke, by reason of their continual practife (whereto they are forced) of shooting at wilde Fowle.

Their manner is (in Summer time) to come downe in great companies to the fea fide, to Wardhuyfe, Cola, Kegor, & the bay of Vedagoba, and there to fish for Cod, Salmon, and But-fish, which they fell to the Ruffes, Danes, and Norgenians, and now of late to the English men, that trade thither with cloth, which they exchange with the Lappes and Corelians for their Fish, Oyle, & Furs, whereof also they haue some store. They hold their Mart at Cola on S. Peters day: what time the Cap-

for the king of Denmark) must be present,

their stockfish, traine oile, furs, and other

commodities: as also the Russe Emperors

Customer, or tribute taker, to receive his

custome, which is euer payed before any

manner is, to draw their Carbaffes, or

Boates on shore, and there to leave them

with the keele turned vpwards, till the

next spring tide. Their trauaile too and

fro, is vpon fleds, drawne by the Ollen

Deere : which they vie to turne a grazing

all the Summer time, in an Island called

Kilden (of a very good foyle, compared

with other parts of that Country) and to-

wards the Winter time, when the Snow

beginneth to fall, they fetch them home

againe for the vie of their fledde.

When their fishing is done, their

thing can be bought or folde.

The Lappes Mart on S.Pe-

CHAP. IIII.

Fourthly, concerning Ecclesiasticall Offices and Orders; The Rites and Sacraments observed in the Moscoulan Church: with their Marriages and other Ceremontes be-



Oncerning the gouernment of their Church, it is framed altogether after the manner of the Greeks, as being a part of that

Church, and neuer acknowledging the iurildiction of the Latine Church, vsurped by the Pope. That I may keepe the better measure in describing their Ceremonies, then they in the viing the (wherein they are infinite) I will note briefly.

First, what Ecclefiasticall degrees, or Offices they have, with the jurifdiction & practife of them.

Secondly, what doctrine they holde in matter of Religion.

Thirdly, what Leiturgy, or forme of

feruice they vse in their Churches, with the manner of their administring the Sacraments. Fourthly, what other flrange Cere-

taine of wardhuyfe (that is refiant there monies, and superstitious denotions are vsed among them. or at least fend his deputy, to set prices on

Their Offices, or degrees of Churchmen, are as many in number, and the fame in a manner (both in name and degree) Officers. that were in the Westerne Churches. First they have their Patriarch, then their Metropolites, their Archbishops, their Vladikey or Bishops, their Protopapes or Arch-Priests, their Papes or Priests, their Dea-

cons, Fryars, Monks, Nuns, and Eremites.

The Church

Their Patriarch, or chiefe directer in

matter of religion vntill this laft year, was of the Citty of Constanstinople (whom they called the Patriarch of Sio) because, being driven by the Turke out of Constanstinople (the seat of his Empire) he remoued to the Isle Sio, fomtimes called Chio.

and there placed his Patriarchall Sea. So that the Emperors & Cleargy of Russia, were wont yearely to fend guifts thither,

Ecce 2

and to acknowledge a spirituall kinde of homage, and subjection due to him, and to that Church. Which custome they haue held (as it feemeth) euer fince they professed the Christian religion. Which how long it hath bene, I coulde not well learne, for that they have no story or mo-nument of Antiquity (that I could heare of) to shew what hath bene done in times past within their Countrey, concerning either Church or Commonwealth mat-

Onely I heard a report amongst them, that about three hundred yeares fince, there was a marriage betwirt the Emperour of Constantinople, & thekings daugh ter of that Country: who (at the first) denied to ioyne his danghter in marriage with the Greek Emperor, because he was of the Christian Religion. Which agreeeth well with that which I find in the ftory of Laonicus Chalcacondylas, concerning Turkish affaires in his fourth book:where he speaketh of such a marriage, betwixt John the Greeke Emperor, and the Kings daughter of Sarmatia.

And this argueth (out of their own re-port) thar at that time, they had not receyued the Christian Religion: As also, that they were converted to the faith, and withall peruerted at the very same time, receyuing the doctrine of the Gospel corrupted with superstitions even at the very first, when they tooke it from the Greek Church, which it selfe then was degenerate, and corrupted with many superstitions and fowle errors, both in Doctrine & Discipline: as may appeare by the Storie of Nicephorus Gregorus, in his eight and ninth bookes.

But, as touching the time of their conuersion to the Christian faith, I suppose rather, that it is mistaken by the Russe sfor that which I find in the Polonian story, the fecond Booke, the third chapter: where is fayde, that about the yeare 990. Vlodomi. rus Duke of Russia, married one Anne, sifter to Basilius and Constantinus brothers, and Emperors of Constantinople. Whereupon the Russe receyued the Fayth and profession of Christ. Which, though it be somwhat more ancient then the time noted before out of the Ruffereport; yet it falleth out al to one reckning, touching this point, viz: in what truth and fincerity of doctrine the Ruffe receyued the first

stamp of religion: forasmuch as the Greek church(at that time also) was many waies infected with error and superstition.

In the yeare 1588.came vnto the Mofko the Patriarch of Constantinople, or Sio, called Hieronomo, being banished (as som from Confi fayd)by the Turke, as some other reported, by the Greeke Clergy depriued. The Emperour being ginen altogether to fuperstitious deuotions, gaue him great entertainment. Before his comming vnto Miosko, he had bin in Italy with the Pope, as was reported there by fom of his company. His errand was, to confult with the Emperor, concerning these points.

First, about a league to passe between him and the King of Spaine, as the meetest Prince to ioyne with him in opposition against the Turke. To which purpose alfo Ambaffages had paffed betwixt the Russe and the Persian. Likewise from the Ambassage Georgians to the Emperour of Ruffia, to Ruffe & Perioyne league together, for the invading fian, of the Turke on al fides of his dominion: taking the advantage of the simple quality of the Turk that then was. This treatie was helped forward by the Emperours Ambassador of Almaigne, sent at the same time to folicite an inuation on the partes of Polonia, that lye towards Rusland, and to borrow money of the Ruffe Emperor, to pursue the warre for his brother Maximillian against the Swedens son, then King of Poland.

But this confultation concerning a league betwixt the Russe & the Spaniard (which was then in fome forwardnesse, and already one apointed for Ambassage into Spaine) was defeated, by meanes of the ouerthrow given to the Spanish king by her Maiesty, the Queen of Englad the last yeare before. Which made the Russe Emperor and his Counfell, to give the fadder countenance to the English Ambaffador there at that time: for that they were disappointed of so good a policy, as was this coniunction, supposed to be betwixt them and the Spanish.

His second purpose (whereto the first ferued as an introduction) was, in reuege The fecond of the Turke and the Greeke Cleargye, intention. that hadde thrust him from his seate, to treate with him about the reducing of the Russe church vnder the Pope of Rome. Wherein it may feeme, that comming lately from Rome, hee was fet vppon by

triarchall Sca

The third in

Chap.4.

The Ruffe daughter to the Greeke

Resfons y eel

ded by the

Cunning in the Patriarch

The Patri. erchfhip of Constantino ple translated

many times before, though all in vaine: and namely in the time of the late Emperor I san Vasilowich, by one Anthony his Legate. But thought this (belike) a far better meane to obtaine his purpose, by treaty and mediation of their owne Patriarch. But this not fucceeding, the Patriarch fell to a third point of treaty, concerning the refignation of his Patriarchthip, and translation of the Sea from Con-Stantinople, or Sio, to the Citty of Mosko. Which was fo well liked, and entertained by the Emperor (as a matter of high religion and pollicy) that no other treaty (specially of forraign Ambaffages) could be heard or regarded, till that matter was concluded.

The reasons wherewith the Patriarch perswaded the translating of his Sea to the Citty of Mosko, were thefe in effect.

First, for that the Sea of the Patriarch was under the Turke, that is enemy to the faith. And therefore to be removed into some other Country of Christian profesfion.

Secondly, because the Russe Church was the onely naturall Daughter of the Greek at this time, and holdeth the same Doctrine and Ceremonies with it: the rest being all subject to the Turke, and fallen away fro the right profession. Wherein the subtill Greeke (to make the better market of his broken ware) advanced the honour that would grow to the Emperour, and his Country: to have the Patriarchs seate, translated into the chiefe City, and seate of his Empire. As for the right of translating the Sea, and appointing his fuccessour; hee made no doubt of it, but that it pertained wholly voto him-

So the Emperour and his Counfell, with the principall of his Cleargy, being affembled at the Mosko, it was determined, that the Metropolite of Mosko, shold become Patriarch of the whole Greeke Church, and have the fame full authority and jurisdiction, that pertained before to the Patriarch of Constantinople, or Sio. And that it might be done with more order and folemnity, the 25. of Ianuary, 1588 the Greeke Patriarch, accompanied with the Ruffe Cleargy, went vnto the great Church of Prechefte, or our Lady, within the Emperors Castle (hauing first

the Pope, who hath attempted the fame I wandred through the whole City in manner of a procession, and blessing the people with his two fingers) where he made an Oration, and delivered his refignation in an instrument of writing, and so layde downe his Patriarchiall faffe. Which was presently received by the Metropolite of Mosko, & divers other ceremonies vsed about the inauguration of this new Patriarch.

The day was holden very folemne by the people of the City, who were com- Holliday in manded to forbeare their works, and to Mosko. attend this folemnity. The great Patriarchthat day was honored with rich prefents sent him from the Emperor & Empresse, of Plate, Cloth of Gold, Furs, &c. carried with great pompe through the freetes of Mosko, and (at his departing) received many gifts more, both from the Emperor, Nobility, and Cleargy. Thus the Patriarchship of Constantinople, or Sio, (which hath continued fince the Counsell of Nice) is now translated vnto Mosko, or they made beleene, that they Aneaficmat haue a Patriarch, with the same right and authority that the other had. Wherin the same right and same authority that the other had. fubtle Greeke hath made good aduantage of their superstition, & is now gone away with a rich booty into Poland, whither their Patriarchthip be current or not.

The matter is not valike to make some Schisme betwixt the Greeke and Russe Church, if the Russe hold this Patriarchship that he hath so well payed for, & the Greekes elect another withall, as likely they wil, whither this man were banished by the Turke, or depriued by order of his owne Cleargy. Which might happen to giue aduantage to the Pope, & to bring ouer the Ruffe Church to the Sea of Rome (to which ende peraduenture hee deuised this stratagem, and cast in this matter of Schisme among them) but that the Emperors of Russia knew well enough, (by the example of other Christian Princes) what inconvenience would grow to their State and Country, by subjecting themfelues to the Romish Sea. To which ende, the late Emperor Juan Vafilowich was ve ry inquisitiue, of the Popes authority ouer the Princes of Christendome, and sent one of very purpose to Rome, to behold

the order and behaviour of his Court. With this Patriarch Hieronimo was driven out (at the same time by the great

The Polonian history.

A folemne

agc.

great marri.

the Metropolite of Nonograde.

Crofiers staffe in their hands, layed ouer

Crosse or Shepheards crook at the upper

downe their backs, and standeth out like

(which they call Reis) is a gowne or Man-

tle of blacke Damaske, with many lifts or

gardes of white Sattin laid vpon it, cuery

gard about two fingers broad, and theyr

Crossers staffe carried before them. The-

sclues followe after, bleffing the people

with their two forefingers, with a marue-

The election, and appointing of the

Byshops and the rest, pertaineth wholly

to the Emperor himselfe. They are cho-

fen euer out of the Monasteries : fo that

there is no Byshop, Archbyshoppe, nor

Metropolite, but hath bene a Monke; or

Fryer before. And (by that reason) they

are, and must all bee vnmarried men, for

their vow of Chastity, when they wer first

thorne. When the Emperour hath ap-

pointed whom he thinkerh good, hee is

Demetrio Archbithop of Larifla ex cluded with the Patriarch

Reasons of

good & gre

stances. First, because there is no such affection, nor friendly respect, betwirt the Pope and the Turke; as that he should banish a subject, for not obeying the Popes

ded the same cause of their banishment

by the Turke (to wit) their not admitting

of the Popes new Kalender, for the alte-

ration of the yeare. Which, how vn-

likely it is, may appeare by thefe circum-

ordinance, specially in a matter of some fequell, for the alteration of times within his owne Countries. Secondly, for that he maketh no fuch

scruple in deducting of times, and keeping of a just and precise account from the incarnation of Christ: whom hee doth not acknowledge, otherwise then as I noted before.

Thirdly, for that the faide Patriarch is now at Naples in Italy, whither (it may be gueffed) he would not have gone within the Popes reach, and fo neare to his nofe, if he had been ebanished, for opposing himselfe against the Popes Decree.

This Office of Patriarchship now tra-

The Patriarks Iurifdiction.

flated to Mosko, beareth a superior authority ouer all the Churches, not onely of Russia, and other the Emperors dominions; but throughout all the Churches of Christendome, that were before vnder the Patriarch of Constantinople, or Sio: or at least, the Russe Patriarch imagineth himselse to have the same authority. He hath under him (as his proper Diocesse) the Province of Mosko, besides other peculiars. His Court or Office is kept

The Metropolites.

at the Mosko.

Before the creation of this new Patriarch, they had but one Metropolite, that was called the Metropolite of Mosko. Now for more state to their Church, and new Patriarch; they have two Metropolites, the one of Nouogrod velica, the other of Rostone. Their Office is to receipe of the Patriarch fuch Ecclefiasticall Orders, as he thinks good, & to deliner the charge of the ouer to the Archbishops: besides

Archbishops,

the ordering of their owne Diocesse. Their Archbishops are foure: of Smolensko, Cazan, Vobsko, and Vologda. The parts of their Office is all one with the Metropolits: faue that they have an vnder iurisdiction, as Suffraganes to the Metro-

polites, and superiors to the Bishoppes. Turke) one Demetrio, Archbishop of La-The next are the Vladikeis, or Bishops, Bishops, resta : who went into England, and preten-

that are but fixe in all: of Crutitska, of Rezan, of Otfer, and Torsbock, of Collo. menska, of Volodemer, of Sufdalla. These haue euery one a very large Diocesse: as dividing the rest of the whole Country amone them.

The matters pertaining to the Ecclesiafficall iurifdiction, of the Metropolites, | Eccletiatical Iurifdiction, Archbishops, and Bishops, are the same (in a manner) that are vied by the Clear-

gie in other parts of Christendome. For, besides their authority over the Cleargy, and ordering fuch matters as are meere Ecclefiatticall; their jurifdiction extendeth to all testamentary causes, matters of marriage, and divorcements, fome pleas of injuries, &c.

Officials, or Commissaries (which they Their Gencall Boiaren Vladitskey) that are Lay-men tlemen, Commissiones. of the degree of Dukes, or Gentlemen, that keepe their Courts, and execute their iurifdiction. Which besides their other oppressions over the common people, raigne ouer the Priefts : as the Dukes and Priefts, Diacks do ouer the poore people, with-

To which purpose also they have their

in their Precincts. As for the Archbifhoppe or Bifhop himselfe, he beareth no sway in deciding those causes, that are brought into his Court. But if hee would moderate any matter, he must do it by entreaty with his Gentleman Officiall. The reason is, be-

cause these Boiarskey, or Gentlemen offici- The Empeals, are not appointed by the Bishops, but eth the Gen by the Emperour himselfe, or his Coun-fell, and are to give account of their do-the Arch Biings to none but to them. If the Bishop stop, can entreat (at his admiffion) to have the choife of his owne Officiall, it is accounted for a speciall great fauour. But to speake it as it is, the Cleargy of Russia, as well concerning their lands and reuennues, as their authority and inrifdiction; are altogether ordered and over-ruled by the Emperor, and his Counfell, and have fo much, and no more of both as their pleasure doth permit them.

They have also their affiftants or fene Asistance rall Counfels (as they call them) of cers ingent all countries of cers in an all countries of cers in a certain certai taine Priests that are of their Dioces, reûding within their Cathedrall cities, to the number of foure & twenty apiece. Thefe aduife with them, about the theciall and

9 Booke

their Clergie

Their vpper

The election

end of it.

lous grace.

Chap.4.

Ecclefiafticall

Their ordina

inuested in the Cathedrall Church of his Diocesse, with many ceremonies, much after the manner of the Popish inauguration. They have also their Deanes, and their Arch-deacons. The learning and exercise

f the Ruffe Cleargy.

As for preaching the word of God, or any teaching or exhorting such as are vn-

necessary matters belonging vnto theyr | der them; they neither vseit, nor haue any skill of it: the whole Cleargie beging Concerning their rents and revennews veterly volearned, both for other know-

The Church

to maintaine their dignities, it is somwhat ledge, and in the worde of God. Onely large. The Patriarches yearely rents out their manner is twice every yeare, viz: the The first day of his lands (besides other fees) is about first of September (which is the first day of the yeare, three thousand Rubbels or Markes. The of their yeare) and on S. John Baptifts day Metropolites and Archbyshops, about to make an ordinary speech to the peotwo thousand and fine hundred. The Byple, euery Metropolite, Archbyshop and shops some a thousand, some eight hun-Bythop in his Cathedrall Church, to this dred, some fine hundred, &c. They have or the like effect. had some of them (as I have heard fay)ten

That if any be in malice toward his neigh or twelue thousand rubbles a year; as had bour, he shall leave off his malice: If any have thought of treason or rebellion against his Their habite or apparrell (when they shew themselues in their Pontificalibus, Prince, he beware of such practife: If he have not kept his fasts and Vowes, nor doone his after their folemnest manner) is a Miter other duties to the holy church he shal amend on their heads, after the Popish fashion, that fault dec.

with Pearle and precious stone, a Cope And this is a matter of forme with the on their backes, commonly of Cloth of vttered in as many words, and no more Gold, embroidered with Pearle, and a (in a manner) then I have here fet down. Yet the matter is done with that grace & all with plate of filuer double gilt, with a folemnity, in a pulpit of purpose set vppe for this one Act; as if he wer to discourse at large of the whole substance of divinity. At the Mosko, the Emperour himfelfe is euer present at this solemne exhortati-

Their ordinary habit otherwife, when they ride or go abroad, is a hood on their heads of blacke colour, that hangeth As themselues are voyde of all manner a Bongrace before. Their vpper garment of learning, fo they are warie to keepe out | The Prieftes all means that might bring any in : as fea- fearfull to haue their igring to have their ignorance and vngodnorance dif-

linefle discouered. To that purposethey couered. haue perswaded the Emperours, that it would breed innouation, and fo damager to their State, to have any novelty of lerto their State, to have any nouelty of ier-ning come within the Realme. Wherein hardly live vn they fay but truth, for that a man of fpirit der tyranny. and understanding, holpen by Learning and liberall education, can hardly endure

a tyrannicall gouernment. Some yeares paft, in the other Empe-Some yeares path in the other Emperors time) there came a Presse & Letters house erected out of Polonia, to the City of Mosko, wher in Mosko.

a Printing-house was set vp, with great liking and allowance of the Emperour himself. But not long after, the house was fet on fire in the night time, & the Preffe and Letters quite burnt vp, and (as it was thoght) by the procurement of the Cler-

Their Priests, whome they call Papaes) are made by the Byshoppes, without any great triall for worthineffe of gifts, before they admit them, or ceremonies in theyr rit or worthi admillion: faue that their heads are fhorn nefle, and the

Prieftes not

made for me-

Chap. 4.

(not shauen, for that they like not) about an hand bredth or more in the Crowne, and that place annointed with Oyle by the Bythop: who in his admission putterh vpon the Priest, first his Surplesse; and then fetteth a white croffe on his breft of filke, or some other matter, which hee is to weare eight dayes, and no more: and fo giveth him authority to fay and fing in the Church, and to administer the Sacra-

They are men veterly volearned, which

is no maruell; for a fouch as their makers, the Byshoppes themselues (as before was fayde) are cleere of that quality, & make no farther vie at all of any kinde of Learning, no not of the Scriptures themselus, faue to reade and to fing them. Their ordinary charge end function, is to fay the Liturgie, to administer the Sacraments after their manner, to keep & decke their Idols, and to doe the other Ceremonies vsuall in their Churches . Their num-

ber is great, because theyr Townes are parted into many small Parithes, without any discretion, for deuiding them into competent numbers of housholds, and people for a just Congregation: as the manner in all places where the meanes is neglected, for increasing of knowledge, and instruction towardes God . Which cannot well be had, where by meanes of an vnequall partition of the people, and parishes there followeth a want and vnequality of stipend, for a sufficient Mini-

ry for the first time. But if the first Wife dye, a second he cannot take, but he must lose his Priesthood, and his living withal. The reason, they make out of that place of Saint Paul to Timothy, 1.3.2. not well viderstood, thinking that to bee spoken of divers wives fuccessively, that the Apostle speaketh of at one and the same time. If he will needes marry againe after his first Wife is dead, hee is no longer called Papa, but Rospapa, or Priest Quondam. This maketh the Priests to make much of their Wines, who are accounted as the Matrones, and of best reputation, among the Women of the

For the stipend of the Priest, their manner is not to pay him any tenths of corne, or ought elfe: but hee must stand at the denotion of the people of his owne Parish, and make vp the Incomes towards his maintenance, fo well as he can, by offerings, shrifts, marriages, burials, dirges, and prayers for the dead and the living (which they call Molitua.) For besides their publike service within their Churches, their manner is, for every private Prayers foreman to have a prayer faide for him by the Priest, vppon any occasion of businesse whatfoeuer, whether he ride, goe, fayle, plough, or whatfoeuer elfe hee doeth. Which is not framed according to the occasion of his businesse, but at random, being some of their ordinary and vsuall Church prayers. And this is thought to bemore holy and effectuall, if it be repeated by the Priests mouth, rather then

They have a custome besides to solem-nize the Saints day, that is Patron to their of the Chur. Church once euery yeare. What time ches. all their neighbours of their Country. & parishes about, come into haue prayers faide to that Saint, for themselves, and their friends: and so make an Offering to the Priest for his paines.

This Offering may yeeld them some ten pounds a yeare, more or lesse, as the Patron or Saint of that Church is of credite and estimation among them. The manner is on this day (which they keepe anniuersary for the Priest) to hyre divers of his neighbour-Priestes to helpe him : The mannet ashauing more Dishes to dresse for the Saint, then hee can well turne his hand Anniueriant. For their Priests, it is lawfull to mar-

They vse besides to visite their parishioners houses, with holy Water, and Perfume, commonly once a quarter: and fo having sprinkled and besensed the goodman and his Wife, with the rest of their houshold and houshold-stuffe, they receyue some denotion (more or lesse) as the man is of ability. This and the reft laid maintenance together, may make up for the Priest towards his maintenance, about thirtie or fourty Rubbels a yeere : whereof he payeth the tenth part to the Byshoppe of the

The Papa or Priest is knowne by his long tufts of hayre, hanging down by his The Priefts eares, his gowne with a broad Cape, and he is knowne a walking staffe in his hand. For the rest of his habite, he is apparrelled like to the common fort. When he faith the Litur-

on him his Surplesse, and sometimes his Cope, if the day be more folemne. They haue besides their Papaes or priests, theyr Black Priests for keeping Churnapapaes (as they call them) that is, f Benefices. Blacke Priests; that may keepe their benefices, though they bee admitted Friars withall within some Monasterie. They feeme to be the very fame, that were called Regular Priests in the Popish church. Vnder the Priest, is a Deacon in euerie

Cathedrall Churches.

riers an infinitecompany in the Coun try,and as many fuper -

flitions.

Fryars liue

fateft from

oppression &

taxation im-

poicd on the

Commons.

Deacon or

otopapaes.

farre greater then in any other Country, where Popery is professed. Euery Citie, and good part of the Country, swarmeth full of them. For they have wrought (as the Popish Fryars did by their superstition and hypocrifie) that if any part of the Realme be better and sweeter then other; there standeth a Friery or a Monasterie, dedicated to some Saint. The number of them is so much the

greater, not onely for that it is augmen-

ted by the superstition of the country; but

Church, that doth nothing but the office

of a Parish Clearke. As for their Proto-

papaes, or Arch-priests, and their Arch-

deacons(that are next in election to bee

their Protopapaes) they ferue onely in the

Of Fryars they have an infinite rabble,

because the Fryars life is the safest from the oppressions and exactions which fall vpon the Commons. Which causeth many to put on the Friers weede, as the best Armour to beare off such blowes. Befides fuch as are voluntary, there are divers that are forced to sheare theselves Fryers, vppon some displeasure. These are for the most part of the cheefe Nobi-Divers take the Monasteries as a place

of Sanctuary, and there become Fryers. to auoid fome punishment, that they had deserned by the lawes of the realme. For The Monaif he get a Monastery ouer his heade, and there put on a Coule before hee be attafanduary for offences com ched, it is a protection to him for euer against any Law, for what crime socuer: except it be for treason. But this Prouiso goeth withall, that no man commeth

there (except fuch as are commanded by

the Emperour to be receyued) but he gi-

ueth them Lands, or bringeth his stocke

with him, and putteth it into the comon

Treasury. Some bring a thousand Rub-bels, and some more. None is admitted

gie or feruice, within the Church, he hath vnder three or foure hundred. The manner of their admission is after

this fort. First, the Abbot strippeth him Fryats, of all his fecular or ordinary Apparrell. Then he putteth vpon him next vnto his skinne, a white Flannell shirt, with a long garment ouer it downe vnto the ground, girded to him with a broad leather belt. His vppermost Garment is a Weede of Garras or Say, for colour and fashion. much like to the vpper weed of a Chimney fweeper. Then is crowne shorne a hand bredth, or more, close to the verie skin, and these or the like words are pronounced by the Abbot, while he clippeth his haire.

As these haires are clipped off, and taken The Abbots from thy head : fo now wee take thee, and fe-wordes at a parate thee cleane from the world and worldly things dre.

This done he annointeth his crowne with oyle, and putteth on his Coule; and fo taketh him in among the Fraternitie. They vow perpetuall chaftity, and absti-

nence from fleth. Besides their Landes (that are verie Fryers the great) they are the greatest Marchants in chants in the the whole Countrey, and deale for all Countrey. manner of commodities. Some of their

Monasteries dispend in Lands one thoufand, or two thousand Rubbels a yeare. There is one Abbey called Troits, that hath in lands and fees, the fumme of an hundred thousand Rubbels, or markes a veare.

It is built in manner of a Castle, walled round about with great Ordenance plan- A warlike ted on the Wall, and containeth within Abbey. it a large bredth of ground, and great variety of building. There are of Fryers within it (besides their Officers and other feruants) about feuen hundred. The Empresse that then was had many Vowes to Saint Sergius, that is patrone there: to in-The Saint to treat him to make her fruitfull, as having no children by the Emperour her Hufband. Lightly (euery yeare) the went on Children.

Pilgrimage to him from the Mosko, on foote, about fourescore ordinary miles. with five or fixe thousand women attending upon her, all in blew Lineries, and fee going on foure thousand souldiers for her Guarde. Pilgrimage. But S. Sergius hath not yet heard her pray ers, though (they fay) hee hath a speciall gift and faculty that way. What Learning there is among theyr

charge and

Partition of their townes

into 'parishes-

Their viuall

The Ruffe priefts can marry but

The Quon-dam Priefts.

Stipends allorted to the Pricfts.

The Empress

The Fryars learning an-fwerable to their Bythops Fryars, may be known by their Bythops, that are the choise men out of all theyr Monasteries. I talked with one of them at the City of Vologda, where (to trie his skill) I offered him a Ruffe Testament, and turned him to the first chap. of S. Mathews Gospell. Where he began to read in very good order.

Questions & answeres betweene the Authour & a Ruffe prieft.

I asked him first, W hat part of Scripture it was that he had read? Hee answered, that he could not well tell. How many Euangelists there were in the Newe Testament? He saide he knew not. How many Apostles there were? Heethought there were twelue. How he should be saued? Whereunto he answered me (with a peece of Russe Doctrine) that heeknew not whether hee should be faued, or no: But if God wold Polhallouate him, or gratifie him so much, as to saue him, so it was; he would be glad of it: if not, what remedy? I asked him. VV hy he shore him selse a Fryer? Hee answered, because hee would eate his breade in quietnesse and

This is the learning of the Fryars of Russia, which though it be not to be meafured by one, yet partly it may be gessed (by the ignorance of this man) what is in

the reft.

They have also very many Nunneries, whereof some may admit none but No-Widdowes & blemens Widdowes and Daughters, when the Emperour meaneth to keepe and none also them vnmarried, from continuing the blood or flocke, which hee would have extinguished. To speak of the life of their Fryers and Nunnes, it needs not, to those that know the hypocrific and vncleanenesse of that Cloyster-broode. The Russe himselfe (though otherwise addicted to all superstition) speaketh so fowly of it, that it must needs gain silence of any modest man.

Eremites called holy men, like to Gym-nosophistes.

Nunneries of

Noblemens

daughters.

to be admit-

ted there.

Besides these, they have certaine Eremites (whome they call Holymen) that are like to those Gymnosophists for their life and behaujours: though farre vnlike for their knowledge and Learning. They vie to goe starke naked, faue a clowte about their middle, with their hayre hanging long and wildely about their shoulders, and many of them with an iron coller, or chaine about their neckes or middle, euen in the very extremity of Win-

These they take as Prophets, and men of great holinesse, giving them a libertie Prophets and to speake what they list, without any controlment though it be of the very highest himselfe. So that if he reproue any openly, in what fort focuer; they answere nothing, but that it is Pogracum, that is, for their finnes. And if any of them take some peece of fale ware from any mans shop, as he paffeth by, to give where he lifte; hee thinketh himselse much beloued of God, and much beholding to the holy man, for taking it in that fort.

Of this kinde there are not many, because it is a very hard and cold profession, to goe naked in Russia, especially in winter. Among other at this time, they have An Eremite one at Mosko, that walketh naked about Rusia. the Streetes, and inueyeth commonly, against the State and Gouernment, especially against the Godonoes, that are thoght at this time, to bee great Oppressours of that Common-wealth.

Another there was, that died not many yeares agoe(whom they called Bafileo) Bafileothe that would take vpon him to reproue the Ermite olde Emperor for all his cruelty, and oppressions done towards his people. His body they have translated (of late) into a fumptuous Church, neere the Emperors house in Mosko, & have Canonized him for a Saint. Many miracles he doth there (for fo the Fryers make the people to beleene) and many Offerings are made vnto him, not onely by the people, but by the cheefe Nobility, and the Emperor & Empresse themselves, which visite that posedsaint Church with great denotion.

But at my beeing at Mosko, this Saint had ill lucke in working his miracles. For a lame man, that had his limbes restored (as it was pretended by him) was charged A mery mire by a woman that was familiar with him (being then falne out) that he halted but in the day time, and could leape merrily when he came home at night. And that he had intended this matter fix yeares be-

Now he is put into a Monasterie, and there raileth vpon the Fryers, that hyred him to haue this counterfeyte myracle practised vppon him. Besides this disgrace, a little before my comming from thence, there were eight flaine within his Church, by fire in a Thunder. Which caused his bels (that wer tingling before

Nichola the great estima

Chap.4.

Prefents berecene the Emperor and an Éremite.

Of their Li-

turgy or forms of Church

eruire, and

heir manne

of administe.

the myracles wrought by Bafileo their S.) to ring for what foftly; and hath wroght no little discredit vnto this Miracle wor-There was another of great account at Plesko (called Nichola of Plesko) that

did much good, when this Emperors Father came to facke the Towne, vpon fuspition of their revolting and rebellion against him. The Emperor, after he had saluted the Eremite, at his lodging, fent him a reward. And the Holy man, to requite the Emperour, sent him a peece of raw fleih, being then their Lent. Which the Emperour seeing, bid one to tel him, that hee maruelled, that the Holye man would offer him flesh to eat in the Lent, when it was forbidden by order of holie Church. And doth Enasko (which is as much to fay as Iacke) thinke (quoth Nicola) that it is unlawfull to eat a peece of beafts flesh in Lent, & not to eate up so much mans flesh, as he hath done already?

So, threatning the Emperor, with a prophesie of some harde aduenture to come vpon him, except hee left murthering of his people, and departing from the Towne, he faued a great many mens

hues at that time.

This maketh the people to like very well of them, because they are as Pasquils Lawful repro to note their great mens faultes, that no man else dare speake of. Yet it falleth out fomtime, that for this rude liberty which they take vpon them (after a counterfeite

manner) by imitation of Prophets, they are made away in secret: as was one or two of them, in the last Emperours time, for being ouer-bolde in speaking against his gouernment.

Their morning service they call Zautrana, that is, Mattins. It is done in this

The Priest entereth into the Church, with his Deacon following him. And, when hee is come vnto the middle of the Church, he beginneth to fay with a lowd vovce: Blas flaney Vladika, that is, Bleffe vs heavenly Pastor, meaning of Christ. Then he addeth, In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Ghost, one very God in Trinity : and Aspody Fomeluy, Or, Lord have mercy upon us, Lord have mercie upon vs, Lord have mercy uppen vs, repeated

all day and night long, as in triumphe of | This done, he marcheth on toward the Chancell or Sanctum Sanctorum (as they

vieto cal it) and fo entreth into the Scharfuey Dwere, or the heavenly doore: which no man may enter into, but the Priest dore, for none to enter but onely. Where standing at the Altare or the priest. Table (fet neere to the upper wall of the Chancell) hee fayeth the Lordes prayer,

and then againe Apody Fomeluy, or Lorde have mercy upon vs, Lord have mercy upon vs, &c. pronounced twelve times. Then prayfed be the Trinity, the Father, the Son, and the holy Ghost, for ever and ever. Whetto the Deacons and people say, Amen. Next after, the Priest addeth the Psalmes for that day, and beginneth with, Ocome let us worlbip and fall down before the Lord co. and therewithall himselfe, with the Deacons, and people, all turn themselues Worthip to towards their Idols or Images that hang their Idols on the Wall, and (croffing themselnes)

bow downe three times, knocking theyr

This being done, the Deacon that stadeth without the heavenly dore or Chan cell, readeth a peece of a Legend, out of a Written Booke (for they have it not in Print) of some Saints life, Miracles, &c. This is divided into many parts, for every day in the yeare, and is read by them with a plaine finging Note, not vnlike to the Popish Tune, when they fung their Gof-

heads to the very ground. Airer this, hee

readeth the ten Commaundements, and

Athanasius Creede, out of the Seruice

Aftet all this (which reacheth vnto an houre, and an halfe, or two howers of length) he addeth certaine fet Collectes, or prayers vpon that which he hath read out of the Legend before: and fo endeth his Seruice. All this while stande burning before their Idols, a great many of Wax Candles (whereof some are of the biggenesse of a mans waste) vowed, or enjoyned by penance, vpon the people of the Parith.

About nine of the clocke in the Mor- Ninea clocke ning, they have another Service, called fervice in the Obeiana (or Compline) much after the order of the Popish Seruice, that bare that name. If it be some high or Festivall day, they furnish their Service besides, With Bleffed be the Lord God of Ifrael, &c. and We praife thee, O God. &c. fung with a more folemne and curious note.

Their

ceiue the Ruf.

what ceremo-

Their euen-

Their Euening Service, called Vechering Seruice. na, where the Priest beginneth with Blai-Sauey Vladika, as hee did in the morning, and with the Psalmes appoynted for the Vecherna. Which being read, he fingeth, My foule doth magnific the Lord, &c. And then the Priest, Deacons, and People, all

with one voyce fing, Afpody pomelui, or Lord have mercy upon vs, thirty times together. Whereunto the boyes that are in the Church, answer all with one voice, rowling it up to fast, as their lips can goe; Very, Very, Very, Very, or Praise, Praise, Praile dre, thirty times together, with a very strange noyse. Then is read by the Priest, and vpon the Holy-dayes sung the first Pfalme, Bleffed is the man, &c. And in the end of it, is added, Alleluia, repeated

The next in order, is some part of the Gospel read by the Priest, which he ends with Alleluia, repeated three times. And so having said a Collect, in remembrance of the Saint of that day, he ends his euen-

ing Seruice.

All this while, the Priest stands about at the Altare or high Table, within the Chancel, or Sanctum Sanctorum, whence hee neuer mooueth all the Scruice time. The Deacon or Deacons (which are many in their Cathedrall Churches) stand without the Chauncell by the Scharfuey Dwere, or heavenly dore: for within they

may not be seene all the Seruice time, though otherwise their office is to sweep, and Reepe it, and to fet up the waxe can-The Deacons dles before their Idoles. The people do ftand together (the whole Seruice time) porch; for Piew or Seate they have none within their Churches.

The Sacrament of Baptisme they ad-

The manner of the Ruffe Baptiline.

office or fer-

minister after this manner: The childe is brought to the Church (and this is done within eight dayes after it is borne:) If it | porch. be the childe of some Noble man, it is brought in a rich Sled or Waggon, with and fuch like fumptuous shew of their best furniture. When they are come to the Church, the Priest standeth readie to receive the childe within the Churchporch, with his tub of water by him. And then beginneth to declare vnto them, that they have brought a little Infidell to be made a Christian, &c. This ended, he

teacheth the witnesses, that are two or Intructions three, in a certayne fet forme out of his Booke (what their duty is,) in bringing witneffes.

vp the childe after he is baptized, viz. That hee must bee taught to know God, and Christ our Saniour. And because God is of great Maiestie, and we must not prefirme to come vnto him, without Mediatours (as the manner is when we make any suite to an Emperour, or great Prince) therfore they must teach him what Saints

are the best, and chiefe mediatours, &c.

This done, he commaundeth the diuell in the name of God (after a conjuring manner) to come out of the water sand so after certaine praiers, he plungeth the child ouer head and eares. For this they holde to be a poynt very necessary, that no part of the child be left vndipped into the wa-The words that beare with them the

forme of Baptisme, vttered by the Priest, The Priests when he dippeth in the childe, are the very fame that are prescribed in the Gospel, childe in the and vsed by vs, that is, In the name of the water.

Father, and of the Sonne, and of the Ghost. For that they should alter the forme of the words, and say, by the hely Ghost, as I have heard they did, following certaine heretikes of the Greeke Church, I found to be vntrue, aswell by the report of them

that have beene often at their Baptismes,

as by their Booke of Leiturgie it selfe,

wherein the order of Baptisme is precise-

ly set downe. When the childe is baptized, the Priest Other cere layeth Oyle and Salt tempered together Baptime. vpon the fore-head, and both the fides of in the Church, and some in the Church | his face, and then vpon his mouth, drawing it along with his finger ouer the childs lippes (as did the Popish Priests) faying withall, certaine prayers, to this effect:

That God will make him a good Christian, &c. All this is doone in the Church Then is the childe(as being now made a Christian, & meet to be received withchaires and cushions of cloath of Golde, in the Church doore) carried into the

Church, the Priest going before, and is there presented to the chiefe Idoll of the Church, being layd on a cushion before the feet of the Image, by it (as by the mediatour) to be commended vnto God . If the childe be ficke, or weake (specially in the Winter) they vie to make the water luke warme. After Baptilme, the maner

Chap.4.

Ruffe manner. When they take any Tartar prisoner, commonly they will offer him life, with

100. Tartars hatwold not be baptized.

An English-Ruffe manner

is to cut off the haire from the childs head and having wrapped it within a peece of wax, to lay it up, as a relike or monument This is the manner of their Baptisine,

in a fecret place of the Church. which they account to be the best & perfecteft forme. As they do all other parts of their religion, received (as they fay) by tradition from the best church, meaning the Greeke. And therefore they will take great paines to make a Profelite or Con-

Proteities or uert, either of an Infidell, or of a forraign Christian, by rebaptizing him after the

condition to be baptized. And yet they perswade very sewe of them to redeeme their life fo: because of the natural hatred the Tartar beareth to the Ruffe, and the opinion he hath of his falshoode and ininstice. The yeare after Mosko was fired by the Chrim Tartar, there was taken a Diwoymor fey, one of the chief in that exploit, with 300. Tartars more: who had al their liues offered them, if they would be bap-

tized after the Ruffe maner. Which they

all refused to do, with many reproches a-

gainst those that perswaded them. And

fo being carried to the river Mosko, (that

runneth thorough the Citty) they were all baptized after a violent manner:being thrust downe with a knocke on the head into the water, through an hole made in the Ice for that purpofe. Of Lieflanders that are Captines, there Rebaptizing are many that take on them this second

Russe baptisme, to get more libertie, and fome-what befides towards their liuing, which the Emperour ordinarily vieth to

giue them. Of Englishmen (fince they frequented the country) there was never any found, that fo much forgot God, his and after the faith, and countrey, as that he would bee content to be baptized Ruffe, for any respect of feare, preferment, or other means whatfocuer : faue onely Richard Relph .

that following before an vngodly Trade,

by keeping a Caback (against the order of

the countrey) and being putte off from

that Trade, and spoiled by the Emperors

Officers of that which he hadde, entered

himselfe into the Russe profession, and so

was rebaptized, living now as much an I-

dolater, as before he was a rioter and vn-

thrifty person.

Such as thus receive the Ruffe baptisme, are first caried into some Monastery, to be instructed there in the doctrine and ceremonies of the Church. Where they vie thefe ceremonies.

nies are víed First, they put him into a new & fresh fuite of apparrell, made of the Russe fafhion, and fet a Coronet, or (in Sommer)

a garland vpon his head. Then they annoint his head with oile; & put a wax candle light into his hand: & lo pray ouer him foure times a day, the space of vii.daies. All this while hee is to abstaine from flesh and white meats. The feuen dayes being ended he is pu-

rified and washed in a Bath-stone, and so the eight day he is broght to the church, where he is taught (by the Friers) how to behaue himfelf in presence of their idols; by ducking down, knocking of the head, croffing himfelfe, and fuch like gestures, which are the greatest part of the Russe

The Sacrament of the Lords Supper, The admini-

neuer aboue. The manner of their com-

municating is thus. First, they do confesse

themselues of all their sins, to the Priest

(whome they call their ghoftly Father.)

Then they come to the Church, and are

they receive but once a year, in their gret | firing of the Lords Supper Lent time, a little before Easter. Three at the most are admitted at one time, and

called up to the Communion table, that standeth like an Altar, a little remooued from the vpper end of the Church, after the Dutch manner. Heere first they are asked of the Priest. whither they be clean, or no? that is, whither they have never a finne behinde that they left vnconfessed. If they answer, No.

they are taken to the table. Where the Priest beginneth with certain vsuall prayers, the Communicants standing in the meane while with their armes folded one within another, like penitentiaries, or mourners. When these praiers are ended, the Priest taketh a spoone, and filleth it full of Claret Wine. Then he putteth into it a small pecce of bread, and tempereth them both together, and so deliuereth them in the Spoone to the Communicants, that stand in order, speaking the viuall words of the Sacrament, Eate this, &c.Drink this,&cc. both at one time without any paule. After that hee deliucreth them againe

the Russian

Of the Doc-

Ruffe church

9 Booke

Chap. 4.

6.Iustification

workes.

7.Saluation

&Auriculat

Three Sa-

but exchanged mony for it.

their numbering beads about with them

continually; aswell the Emperor and his

Nobility, as the common people, not

action)from to many fins as they confesse

They do hold three Sacraments, of

sapifme, the Lords Supper, and the last an-

novling or unition. Yet concerning theyr

Sacrament of extreame Vnction, they

hold it not so necessary to faluation, as

they doe Baptisine; but thinke it a great

curse and punishment of God if any dye

hyname, and in particular to the Priest.

Ambassad fuch like.

standing they have had their Antichristes bread by it felfe, and then wine carded toof the Greek Church, and may find their gether with a little warme water, to repreown falling off, and the punishments for fent blood more rightly (as they thinke) and the water withall, that flowed out of it (by the Turkish inuasion) in the prothe fide of Christ. Whiles this is in dophelies of that Booke. ing, the Communicants vnfolde their Secondly (which is the fountain of the

The Ecclesiasticall Iurisdiction

rest of all their corruptions both in Doc- 2. Traditions armes. And then folding them againe, foltrine and Ceremonies) they holde with holy feripune low the Priest thrice round about the the Papifts, that their Church Traditions Communion Table, and fo returne to their places againe. Where having faide are of equall authority with the written certaine other prayers, hee difmiffeth the

word of God. Wherein they prefer them Communicants, with charge to be merfelues before other Churches: affirming, ry, and to cheere vp themselues for the sethat they hand the true and right traditions, deliuerd by the Apostles to the Greek uen dayes next following. Which being Church, and so vnto them. ended, he enjoyneth them to fast for it as 3. That the Church (meaning the 3. The church Greeke, and specially the Patriarch & his raigne autho. ferue with very great denotion, eating nothing else but bread and falt, except a

Synod, as the head of the reft) haue a fo- rity in inter. neraigne authority to interpret the fcriptures, and that all are bound, to hold that interpretation as found and authentique. 4. Concerning the divine Nature, and

the three persons, in the one substance of shost upon God, that the Holye ghost proceedeth coedinates the Father only. from the Father onely, and not from the 5. About the office of Christ, they hold 5 Christ no

many fowle errors, and the fame (almost) fole median as doth the Popish Church;namely,that of intercessi he is their fole Mediator of redemption, but not of intercession. Their cheefe reason (if they be talked An idle con

withall) for defence of this errour, is, that parison, of vnapt and foolish comparison, betweene Prince of the

God and a Monarch or Prince of this world. world, that must be sued vnto by Mediators about him: wherein they give special preferment to fome aboue others, as to the bleffed Virgin, whom they cal Preche-S. Nicolasth fe, or vndefiled: & S. Nicolas, whom they freedy helped cal Scora pomo (nick, or the Speedy helper, & fay, that he hath 300. Angels of the chee-

fell, appointed by God to attend on him.

This bath brought them to an horrible

fend not God. Forgetting the commade-

met of God, that forbiddeth to make the

low of, but reade them not publikely in their Churches, for the same reason; because they wer but directers vnto Christ, and proper (as they fay) to the Nation of the lewes. Onely the booke of Pfalmes they have in great estimation, and sing & fay them daily in their Churches.

long time after. Which they vie to ob-

little cabbage, and some other hearb or

roote, with water or quaffe mead for their

!This is their manner of administring the Sacraments wherein what they dif-

fer from the inflitution of Christ, and

what ceremomes they have added of

their owne, or rather borrowed of the

Their cheefest errours in matter of

First, concerning the word of God it

felfe, they will not reade publikely certain

Bookes of the Canonicall Scripture, as

the Bookes of Moles; specially the foure

last, Exodus, Leuiticus, Numeri, and Deu-

teronomie, which they fay are all made

difauthentique, and put out of vie by the

comming of Christ; as not able to dis-

cerne the difference bet wixt the Morall,

The Bookes of the Prophets they al-

Greekes, may eafily be noted.

faith. I finde to be thefe.

and the Ceremoniall law!

drinke.

Of the new Testament they allow, and reade all except the Revelation: which therefore they read not (though they allow it) because they understand it not nei-

ther have the like occasion, to know the fulfilling of the propheties contained within it, concerning especially the Apostasie of the Antichristian Church, as fian Church. haue the Westerne Churches. Notwith-

excesse of idolatry, after the grossess and prophanest manner; giving vnto theyr Images, all Religious worship of Prayer, Thankelgiving, Offerings, and Adoration, with proftrating and knocking theyr heads to the ground hefore them, as to God himselfe. Which beecause they doo to the picture, not to the portraiture A vaine exclof the Saint, they say they worthip not an fing palpalik. Idoll, but the Saint in his image, & so of-

10. They thinke there is a necessitie of Baptisme, and that al are condemned that Aldamned hat dy , withdye without it. ut baptiime. 11. They rebaptize as many Christians II. Anabap-(not being of the Greeke church) as they convert to their Ruffe profession: because they are divided from the true Church, which is the Greeke, as they fay. 2. They make a difference of meates a Difference

to have changed by any innovation, but to retaine that Religion that best agreeeth with it . Which notwithstanding it and drinkes, accounting the vie of one, to is not to be doubted, but that having the be more holy then of another. And thereword of God in some fort (though with-

image or likeneffe of any thing, for any fore in their fet falls, they forbeare to eat religious worshippe or vse whatsoeuer. Their Church walles are very ful of them,

flesh, and white meates (as we call them) after the manner of the Popish superstitirichly hanged and fet forth with Pearle & on: which they observe so strictly, and stone vppon the smooth Table. Though with fuch blind denotion, as that they wil fome also they have embossed, that sticke rather die, then cate one bit of flesh, egges or fuch like, for the health of their bodyes from the boord almost an inch outwards. in their extreme fickneffe. They call them Chudouodites, or their miracle workers: and when they prouide the 13. They hold mariage to be volawful to fet vp in their churches, in no case they

for all the Clergy men, except the Pricits for fome per may fay that they have bought the image only, and for them also after the first wife fons ynlawful (as was faid before.) Neither do they wel 6. For the meanes of Iustification, they allowe of it in Lay-men after the fecond agree with the Papistes, that it is not by marriage. Which is a pretence now vsed faith onely, apprehending Christ, but by against the Emperours onely brother, a their workes also. And that Opus operatum child of fix yeares old : Who therfore is not prayed for in their Churches, as their or the worke for the worke fake, must maner is otherwise for the Princes blood Anill perswa needs please God. And therefore they are because he was borne of the fixt mariage, all in their numbers of Prayers, Fastes, Vowes, and offerings to Saints, Almefand so not legitimate. This charge was deeds, Croffings, and fuch like, and carrie

given to the Priests by the Emperor himfelf, by procurement of the Godonoes: who make him beleeue, that it is a good pollicy, to turne away the liking of the people from the next fucceffor. onely in the Church, but in all other pub Many other falle opinions they have

like places, specially at any fet or solemne in matter of Religion. But these are the meeting, as in their Fasts, Law Courtes, common confultations, entertainment of chiefe, which they hold partly by meanes of their traditions (which they have re-7. They fay (with the Papifts) that no ceiued from the Greeke Church)but speman can be affured of his faluation, til the cially by ignorance of the holye Scriptures. Which notwithstanding they have The Polonian last sentence be passed at the day of judgin the Polonian toong (that is al one with tongue differ 8. They vse Auricular confession, and theirs, some few words only excepted) yet very little. thinke that they are purged (by the verie few of them read them with that godlye

care which they ought to doe: neyther

haue they (if they would) bookes fuffici-

led among them : which the Emperours

(whom it specially behooueth) lifte not

ent of the Olde and New Testament for the common people, but of their Leiturgie onely, or Booke of common Seruice, whereof there are very great num-All this mischeese commeth from the Cleargie, who being ignoraunt and

godlesse themselves, are exceedingly warie, to keepe the people (likewise) in norance, their ignoraunce and blindenesse, for theyrlining and bellies fake : partly alfo from their manner of Gouernement fet-

876

113

without it.

Titles giuen

to the Bride

Barbarous be-

uing with

880

A man and

his wife kept

in prison 28.

yeares, and

The manner

After liking

ot solemni-

zing their Marriages. out the ordinary meanes, to attaine to a | dowry: if the husband leave so much betrue fense and vnderstanding of it) God hath also his number among them. As may partly appeare, by that which a Ruffe at Aroske faid to a follower of an Ambas. sador, speaking against their Images and other superstitions: That God had given vnto his Country light to day, and might giue it to morrow (if he pleased) to them.

As for any inquisition or proceeding against me for matter of religion, I could heare of none: faue (a few yeares fince)against one man and his wife, who were kept in close prison, the space of 28. years, till they were ouer-growne into a deformed fashion, for their hayre, nailes, coulor of countenance, and fuch like, and in the ende were burned at Mosko, in a small house set on fire. The cause was kept secret, but like it was for fome part of truth, in matter of religion: though the people were made to beleeue by the Priests and Fryars, that they held some great & dam-

nable herefie.

The manner of making and folemnizing their Mariages, is different from the manner of other Countries. The man (though he neuer faw the woman before) is not permitted to have any fight of her | felfe. all the time of his wooing: which hee doth not by himselfe, but by his Mother, or some other ancient woman of his kin or acquaintance. When the liking is taken (aswell by the Parents, as by the parties themselues, for, without the knoledge and confent of the parents, the contract is not lawfull) the fathers on both fides, or fuch as are to them in stead of Fathers. with their other chiefe friends, haue a meeting and conference about the dowry, which is commonly very large, after the ability of the Parents: so that you shal haue a Market-man (as they call them) giue a thousand Rubbels, or more with

The manner

of endowment for Wines.

his daughter. As for the man, it is never required of him, nor standeth with their custome, to make any joynter in recompence of the dowry. But in case he haue a childe by his Wife, the enjoyeth a third deale after his decease. If he have two children by her, or more, shee is to have a courteste more, at the discretion of the husband. If the husband depart without iffue by his wife, thee is returned home to her friends without any thing at all, faue onely her

hinde him in goods. When the agreement is made concerning the Dowry, Agreement they figne bonds one to the other, as well concerning the Dowry. for the payment of the dowry, as the performing of the marriage by a certain day. If the woman were never married before. her father and friends are bound (befides) to affure her a maiden. Which breedeth many brabbels and quarrels at law, if the man take any conceit, concerning the behaulour and honesty of his wife.

Thus the contract beeing made, the parties begin to fend Tokens the one to the other; the woman first, then afterward No fightull the man, but yet see not one another till be solemni. the marriage be folemnized. On the eque | zed. before the marriage day, the bride is carried in a Collimago, or Coach, or in a fled (if it be Winter) to the bridegroomes house, with her marriage apparrell and bedstead with her, which they are to lye in. For this is euer prouided by the bride, and is commonly very faire, with much cost bestowed vpon it. Heere shee is accompanied all that night by her mother, and other women : but not welcommed, nor once feene by the bridegroome him-

When the time is come to have the Marriage folemnized, the Bride hath put in matriage, vpon her a kinde of hoode, made of fine knitworke or Lawne, that couereth her head, and all her bodie down to the middle. And so accompanied with hir frends and the bride-groome with his, they goe to Church all on horsebacke, though the Church bee neere hand, and themselves

but of very meane degree.

The wordes of contract, and other ceremonies in folemnizing the marriage, are much after the order, and with the fame words that are vsed with vs: with a ring also given to the Bride. Which being put on, & the words of contract pronounced: the Brides hand is delivered into the hand of the Bridegroome, which standeth all this while on the one side of the Altar or Table, and the Bride on the other. So the marriage knot beeing knit by the Prieft, the Bride commeth to the The Brides Bridegroome (standing at the end of the Altar or Table) and falleth downe at his husband. feete, knocking her head vpon his shooe, in token of her subjection & obedience. And the Bridegroome againe casteth the

lappe

tweene the

Chap.4.

tect and cherith her. Then the Bridegroom and Bride, stan-Signs of loue

ding both together at the Tables end, cometh first the father, and the other friends of the Bride, and bow themselues downe low to the Bride-groome: and fo likewife his friends bow themselues to the Bride, in token of affinity and loue, euer after, betwixt the two Kindreds. And withall, the father of the Bridegroom, offereth to the priest a loase of bread, who deliuereth it straight againe to the father, and other friends of the Bride, with attestation before God and their Idols, that he deliuer the Dowry wholly and truely at the day appointed, and hold loue cuer after, one Kindred with another. Wherupon they breake the loafe into peeces, and cate of it, to testifie their true and sincere meanings, for performing of that charge, and thenceforth to become as graines of one Loafe, or men of one Table.

lappe of his Gowne or vpper garment, o-uer the Bride, in token of his duty to pro-

These Ceremonies being ended, the Bride-groome taketh the Brideby the hand, and so they goe on together, with their friendes after them, towardes the Church porch. Where meet them certaine with pots and cups in theyr hands, with Meade and Ruffe Wine. Whereof the Bride-groome taketh first a Charke. or little cuppe full in his hand, and drinketh to the Bride: who opening her hood or vaile belowe, and putting the Cup to her mouth vnderneath it (for being feene of the Bridge-groome) pledgeth him a-

Thus returning altogether from the Church, the Bride-groome goeth not home to his owne, but vnto his Fathers house, and she likewise to hers, where eyther entertaine their friends apart. At the entering into the house, they vie to fling Corne out of the windowes vppon the Bridegroome and Bride, in token of plenty and fruitfulneffe to be with them euer

tion from her mother and other matrons

after.

When the Euening is come, the Bride The euening is brought to the Bride-groomes Fathers and night cohouse, and there lodgeth that night, with her vaile or couer still ouer her head . All that night, fhee may not speak one word (for that charge shee receiveth by tradi-

must neither heare, nor see her, till the day after the marriage. Neither three dayes after, may the be heard to speake, faue certaine few words at the Table, in a fet forme, with great manners and reuerence to the Bride-groome. If shee behaue her selfe otherwise, it is a great preiudice to her credite and life euer after: and will highly bee difliked of the Bridegroome himselfe.

After the third day, they depart voto their own house, and make a feast to both their friends together. The mariage day, and the whole time of their Festivall, the Bride-groome hath the honor to be called Moloday Knez, or young Duke, and the Bride Moloday Knezay, or yong Dut-

In liuing with their wives, they shew themselues to be but of a barbarous condition : vsing them as servantes rather then wives. Except the Noble-women, baufour inli which are, or seeme to bee of more estimation with their husbands, then the rest of meaner fort. They have this fowle abuse, contrary to good order, and the word of God it selfe, that vpon dislike of his wife, or other cause whatsoener, the man may go into a Monastery, & sheare himselse a Fryer, by pretence of deuotion, and so leave his wife to shifte for her felfe fo well as the can.

The other Ceremonies of theyr Church, are many in number: especially, | Ceremonies the abuse about the signe of the Croffe, of the Russe which they fet up in their high-wayes, in the tops of their Churches, and in every doore of their houses, signing themselves continually with it on their forcheads & brefts, with great denotion, as they will feeme by their outward gesture and behaujour. Which were much leffe offence, if they gaue not withall, that Religious reuerence and worshippe vnto it, which is due vnto none but God onely, and vsed the dumbe shew and signing of it, instead of Thankesgiuing, and of all other duties which they doe owe vnto

When they rife euery day in the Morning, they goe commonlie in the fight of some Steeple, that hath a crosse morning, made on the toppe of it : and fo bowing themselves tovvardes the crosse, they figne themselues withall on theyr foreher Friendes) that the Bride-groome heads and brests. And this is their thanks-Ffff 3

Rifing in the

Drinking of the Bride and

Ceremonies

to meate.

out any word speaking, except peraduenture they fay, Albody Pomelay, or, Lord have mercy upon us.

When they fit downe to meate, and Sitting downe rife againe from it, the thankfgining to God, is the croffing of their fore-heads and breafts. Except it be some few that adde peraducture, a word or two of some ordinary prayer, impertinent to that pur-

When they are to give an oath, for the Oath for dedeciding of any controuerfic at law, they ciding contro do it by swearing by the Crosse, and kisfing the feete of it, making it as GOD,

whose name onely is to bee vsed in such triall of Iustice.

When they enter into any house (where At entring incuer there is an Idoll hanging on the wal) they figne themselves with the crosse, and bow themselues to it. When they beginne any worke, be

At beginning

to houses.

it little or much, they arme themselves first with the signe of the crosse. And this commonly is all their prayer vnto God, for good speede of their businesse. And thus they ferue God with croffes, after a croffe and vaine manner: not vnderstanding what the Crosse of Christ is nor the power of it. And yet they thinke all strangers Christians, to be no better then Turkes, in comparison of themselves (and fo they wil fay) because they bow not thefelues, when they meete with the Croffe, nor figne themselves with it, as the Russe manner is.

They have holy water, in like vie and estimation as the Popish Church hath. But herein they exceed them, in that they doe not onely hallow their holy water stockes, and tubs full of water; but all the Hallowing of

Riuers.

Holy water

The hallowuer at Mosko. Rivers of the Country once enery yeare. At Mosko it is done with great pompe & folemnity: the Emperour himfelfe being present at it, with all his Nobility, marching through the streetes towards the Riuer of Moskua, in manner of procession, in this order as followeth. First goe two Deacons, with banners in their hands, the one of Precheste (or our Lady) the other a ranke, with coaps on their backes, and their Idols at their breafts, carried with girdles or flings, made fast about their | fickenesse.

giuing to God for their nights reft, with- | necks. Next the Priefts, come their Bithops in their pontificalibus; then the Fryars, Monks and Abbots: and after the Patriarchs in very rich attire, with a ball, or fphere on the top of his myter, to fig. nifie his vniuersality over that Church. Last commeth the Emperor, with all his Nobility. The whole traine is of a mile long, or more.

When they are come to the River, a Order obsergreat hole is made in the yee, where the und at the market is kept, of a rod and a halfe broad, River. with a stage round about it to keepe off the prease. Then beginneth the Patriarch to fay certaine prayers, and conjureth the diuell to come out of the water: and so casting in falt, and centing it with frankingenfe, maketh the whole River to become holy water. The morning before, all the people of Mosko vie to make croffes of chawlke ouer enery doore, & window of their houses: least the divell being conjured out of the water, (hould flye in-

to their houses. When the ceremonies are ended, you shall see the black gard of the Emperors remonies are house, & then the rest of the Towne with ended. their pailes and buckets, to take off the hallowed water for drinke, and other vies. You shall also see the women dippe in their children ouer head and eares, and many men and women leap into it, some naked, some with their clothes on, when fome man would thinke his finger would freeze off, if hee should but dippe it into the water. When the men haue doone, they bring their horses to the river, to Horses drinke drink of the fanctified water; and fo make water on them as holy as a horse. Their fet day Twelith day.

is doone by other Bishops, in all parts of the Realme. Their maner is also to give it to their ficke, in their greatest extreamitie; thin- Drinking of king that it will cyther recouer them, or holy water. fanctifie them to God. Whereby they kill many, through their vnreasonable superstition, as did the Lord Borris his onely fonne, at my being at the Mofco: whom

for this folemne action of halowing their

rivers, is that we call Twelfe day. The like

Church, to their Saint Bafileo, in the

Chap.4. The louise They have an Image of Christ, which | Christ on they call Neruchi, (which fignifies afmuch oceffions, as Made without hands) for fo their priefts (and superstition withall) perswades them it was. This in their processions, they carry about with them on high vpon a pole, enclosed within a Pixe, made like a Lanthorne, and doe reuerence to it, as to a great mysterie.

Brewing with

Palmefundaio ncient a a

Another ce. remony be-fore Christ-

After the ce.

At every brewing, their manner is likewife, to bring a diffi of their woort to the Priest, within the Church: which being hallowed by him is poured into the brewing, and fo giveth it fuch a vertue, as when

they drinke of it, they are feldome fober.

The like they doe with the first fruites of

They have an other ceremony vppon

Palme-funday of ancient tradition: what

time the Patriarch rideth through the

their corne in Haruest.

eremonie by

Mosko, the Emperour himselfe holding his horse bridle, and the people crying, Hofanna, and spreading their vpper garments under his horse seete. The Emverour hath of the Patriarch for his good feruice of that day, 200. rubbles of standing pension. Another Pageant they have much like vnto this, the weeke before the Natiuity of Christ: When every Bishop in his Cathedrall Church, setteth foorth a thew of the three children in the Ouen. Where the Angell is made to come flying from the roofe of the Church, with great admiration of the lookers on, and many terible flashes of fire, are made with rozen, and gun-powder, by the Chaldeans (as they call them) that runne about the towne all the Twelue dayes, difguifed in their Players coats, and make much good sport for the honour of the Bishops Pageant. At the Mosco, the Emperour himfelfe, and the Empresse neuer faile to be

played euery yeare, without any new in-uention at all. Fasts, beside Besides their fasts on Wednesdayes, foure feuerall and Fridayes throughout the whole yere, Lents, and at (the one, because they say Christ was fold

on the Wednesday, the other, because he fuffered on the Friday) they have foure great Fasts, or Lents enery yeare. The first, (which they call their great Lent) is at the same time with ours. The second, about Midsomer. The third, in Haruest time. The fourth, about Hallowntide: which they keepe not of pollicie, but of | rell.

at it, although it be but the same matter

meere superstitions.

In their great Lent, for the first weeke. they doe cate nothing but Bread and falt, and drinke nothing but water, neyther meddle with any matter of their vocation, but intend their shriving and fasting

Wakesthey They have also three Vigils or wakes in haue three. their Lent , which they call Stoiania , and the last Friday their great Vigil, as they do call it. What time the whole parish must be present in the Church, and watch from nine of the clocke in the Eucning, vntill fixe in the Morning, all the while flanding, except when they do fall downe, and knocke their heads to their Idoles, which must be an hundred and seauentie times, iust, through the whole night. Burialle, and About their burialls alfo, they have their superfti

many superstitious and prophane cere-monies: as putting within the singer of the corpes , a Letter to Saint Nicholas ; whome they make their chiefe Mediator, and (as it were) the Porter of Heal

uen gates, as the Papifts doe theyr Peter. In Winter time, when all is concred Noburbil in

with frow, and the ground fo hard fro- the winter.

zen, as that no spade, nor picke-axe can enter; their manner is not to bury their dead, but to keepe the bodies (fo many as die all the Winter time) in an house, in the suburbs, or out-parts of the towne, which they call Bohfedom, that is to fay, Gods house: where the dead bodies are piled vp together, like billets on a woodstacke, as hard, with the frost, as a verie stone, till the Spring-tide come and diffolueth the frost, what time enery man raketh his dead friend, and committeth him to the ground.

They have besides, their yeares and moneths mindes, for their friends departed. What time they have prayers faide ouer the graue by the priest; who hath a penny ordinary for his paines. When any dyeth, they have ordinarie women mourners, that come to lament for the

dead party: and stand howling ouer the

body, after a prophane, and heathenish

manner (sometimes in the house, sometimes bringing the body into the backefide : Asking him what he wanted, and what | Buriall accor. he meant to die? They bury theyr dead, as went living. the party vied to goe, with coate, hofe, bootes, hatte, and the rest of his appar.

Many

Month-minds

he killed (as was fayd by the Physitions) of S. Michael, fighting with his Dragon. Then follow after, the rest of the Deacons by powring into him colde holy water, and the Priests of Mosko, two and two in and by presenting him naked into the

colde of the Winter, in an extreamity of

Many other vaine and superstitious ce- | grefnick Syhodestua : which is as much remonies they have, which were long and tedious to report. By these it may appeare, how farre they are fallen from the true knowledge and practife of Christian Religion: having changed the Word of God, for their vaine traditions, and brought all to externall, and ridiculous ceremonies, without any regard of spirite and truth, which God requires in his true worftio.

CHAP. V.

I Lastly, an Oeconomicall discourse of the Emperours Court ; his Familie and Hon-(bolde affaires : And more private behauiour of the people.

Of the Empe routs domestike or privat. behauiour.

His private

He Emperours private behauior, so much as may be, or is meete to be knowne, is after this manner: Heering the commonly about four feth commonly about foure of the clocke in the morning. After his

apparolling and washing, in cometh his The emperors ghoftly father, or priest of his chamber, which is named in their tongue, Otetz Duhouna, with his Croffe in his hand. wherewith he bleffeth him , laying it first on his fore-head, then ypon his cheekes, or fides of his face, and then offreth him the end of it to kiffe. This being doone, the clarke of the croffe (calld Chresby Deyack Profery) bringeth into his chamber a

praier, and th is perfourmed

paynted Image, representing the Saint for that day. For euery day with them hath his feuerall Saint, as it were a patron for that day. This he placeth among the rest of his Image gods, wherewithall his Chamber is decked, as thicke almost as the wall can beare, with Lampes and wax Candles burning before them. They are very coffly and gorgeoufly decked with pearles and precious flones. This Image being placed before him, the Emperour beginnes to croffe himfelfe after the Ruffe manner; first on the fore-head, then on both fides of his breaft, with Affody Pomeluy, Pomeluy mena hospody, sacroy mena

to fay, as, Helpe mee O Lord my God, Lord comfort mee, defend and keepe mee a sinner from doing enill, dre. This he directeth towards the Image or Saint for that day, whom he nameth in his prayer, together with our Lady (whom they call Precheste) Saint Nicholas, or some other, to whome he beareth most denotion, bowing himfelfe proftrate vnto them, with knocking his head to the very ground. Thus he continueth the space of a quarter of an houre or thereabouts. Then commeth againe the ghoftly fa- | Sprinkling

ther, or chamber prieft, with a filuer bole with holy we ful of holywater, which they call in Ruffe, Sweta Voda, and a sprinkle of Basill (as they call it) in his hand, and so all to besprinkles first the Image gods, and then the Emperour. This holy water is brought fresh euery day from the Monasteries, farre and neere, fent vnto the Emperour from the Abbot or from the Priour, in the name of the Saint, which is patrone of that Monaftery, as a speciall token of good will

from him. These denotions being ended, he sendeth in to the Empresse, to aske whether the Empresse, the hath rested in health, &c. And after a little pawfe.goeth himfelfe to falute her in a middle roome betwixt both their chambers. The Empresse lyeth apart from him, and keepeth not one Chamber, nor Table with the Emperour daily, faue vppon the eeue of their Lents, or commo Fasts : what time she is his ordinary ghest at bed and boord. After their meeting in the morning, they go together to their priuate Church or Chappell, where is faide, or fung a morning Seruice (called Zau-

cept his health, or some other occasion alter the custome. About nine in the morning, he goeth vinto another Church within his Castle: leanne service. where is fung by Priests and Choristers, the high Seruice (called Obeadna or Complin) which commonly lasteth the space of two houres : the Emperor in the mean time, talking commonly with some

be feene and faluted by his Nobility, fuch

as are in fauour about the Court. If he

haue to fay to any of the, or they to him.

then is the time. And this is ordinary, ex-

trana) of an houre long or there-abouts. The Empero From the Church he returneth home, & giveth prefitteth him downe in a great Chamber, to morning.

of his Councell, Nobilitie, or Captains, \ Empresse till supper time, with leasters, And the Councell likewise conferre togither among themselues, as if they were in their councell house. This ended, he returneth home, and recreateth himfelfe till it be dinner time. Hee is served at his Table on this man-

The Emperours feruice at his Table.

Chap. 5.

ner; First, euery dish (as it is delinered at the Dreffer) is tafted by the Cooke, in the presence of his high Steward, or his Deputy. And so is received by the Gentlemen waiters (called Shilfhey) and by them carried up to the Emperours Table, the high Steward going before. There it is round about, where hee is to quite himreceived by the Sewer (called Erastnoy) who giveth a tafte of every diff vnto the Tafter, and so placeth it before the Emperour. The number of his dishes for his ordinary feruice, is about feauentie; dreffed fomewhat grofely, with much garlike and falt, much after the Dutch manner. When he exceedeth, 'vpon fome occasion of the day, or entertainement of some Ambassador, he hath many more dishes. The service is sent up by two dishes at a time, or three at the most, that hee may eate it warme : first the baked , then the roste meates, and last of all, the brothes. In his dining Chamber is an other Table: where fit the chiefe of his Nobility that are about his Court, and his ghostly Father, or Chaplaine. On the one fide of the

Chamber standeth a Cubbard, or Table

of Plate, very favre and rich, with a great

cesterne of Copper by it, full of yee and

fnow, wherein stand the pots that serue

for that meale. The tafter holdeth the cup

thathe drinketh in all dinner time, and

deliuereth it vnto him with a fay, when he

calleth for it. The manner is to make ma-

ny dishes out of the seruice, after it is set

on the Table, and to fend them to fuch

Noblemen and Officers, as the Emperor

A Table for

liketh best. And this is counted a great fauour and honour. After dinner, he layeth him downe to His fleeping rest, where commonly hee taketh three houres fleepe, vnleffe hee doe employ one of the houres to bathing or boxing. And this custome for sleeping after dinner, is an ordinary matter with him, as with all the Ruffes. After his fleepe hee goeth to Euchfong (called by them Vechurna:) and thence returning (for the most part) recreateth himselfe with the

which have to fay to him, or hee to them. | and dwarfes, men and women , that doe tumble before him, and fing many fongs after the Ruffe manner. This is his common and viuall forme of recreation betweene his meales, wherein he most delighteth.

One other speciall recreation, is the fight with wilde Beares, which are caught in pittes, or netts, and are kept in barred Cages for that purpole, against the Em- Fight with perour bee disposed to fee the pastime. Beares, by The fight with the Beare is on this fort: them. The man is turned into a circle walled

felfe so well as hee can; for there is no way to flie out. When the Beare is turned loofe, he cometh upon him with open mouth. If at the first push hee misse his ayme, fo that the Beare doe come within him, he is in great danger. But the wilde Beare being very fierce, hath this quality, that giveth advantage to the Hunter. His manner is, when he affaileth a man, to rife vpright on his two hinder legges, and so to come roaring with open mouth vpon him. And if the Hunter then can push right into the very breast of him betweene his fore-legges (as commonly he will not miffe) refting the other end of The manner the Boare-speare at the side of his foote: tokill the

and so keeping the pike still towardes the Beare.

face of the Beare, hee speedeth him commonly at one blowe. But many times these Hunters come fhort, and are eyther flaine, or miferably torne with the teeth and talents of the fierce beaft. If the party quitte himselse well in this fight with the Beare, he is carried to drinke at the Emperours Seller doore; where he drinketh himfelfe drunke for the honour of Hospodare. And this is his reward, for adventuring his life for the Emperours pleasure.

To maintaine this pastime, the Emperor hath certaine Huntimen, that are appointed for that purpose, to take the wilde Beare. This is his recreation commonly on the Holy-daies. Sometimes he spendeth his time in looking uppon his Goldsmiths and Iewellers, Taylors, Embroyderers, Painters, and fuch like, and fo goeth to his supper. When it draweth towards bed time, his Priestfaith certaine tion to bed. prayers; and then the Emperour bleffeth and croffeth himfelfe, as in the morning,

2 Booke

of Moscouia or Russia.

887

Wome there

paint groffely

A description of the Emperor, when the Author was

there.

and so goeth to his bed. The Emperor that now is (called Theodore Iuanowich) is for his person of a mean stature, somewhat lowe and grosse, of a fallow complection, and enclining to the dropfie, hawk nofed, vnfteady in his pace, by reason of some weaknesse of his limbs, heavy and vnactive, yet commonly fmiling almost to a laughter. For quality otherwise, simple and slowe witted, but very gentle, and of an easie nature, quiet, mercifull, of no martiall disposition, nor greatly apt for matter of pollicy, very fuperstitious, and infinite that way. Belides his private devotions at home, hee goeth euery Wecke commonly on pilgrimage to some Monastery, or other that is necrest hand. He is of 34. yeares old, or therabouts, and hath reigned almost the space of fixe yeares.

for a quarter of an houre or there-abouts,

The cheefe Officers of the Emperors houshold, are these which follow. The Of the Empefirst is the Office of the Boiaren Conesheua, or Master of the Horse. Which containeth no more then is expressed by the Mafter of the name, that is, to be Ouerfeer of the horfe, and not Magister equitum, or Master of the horsemen. For hee appointeth other for that seruice, as occasion doth require (as before was faid.) He that beareth that Office at this time, is Borris Federowich Godonos, Brother to the Empresse. Of Horse for seruice in his wars (besides o-

ther for his ordinary vses) hee hath to the

houshold, at this time, one Gregory Vafilo-

eth all his monies, iewels, plate, &c. now

called Stepan Vafilowich Godonoe.

dreas Petrowich Clesinine.

The third is his Treasurer, that keep-

The fourth his Controller, now An-

The fift his Chamberlaine. He that at-

tendeth that Office at this time, is called

number of ten thousand, which are kept about Mosko. The next is the Lord Steward of his

wich Godonoe.

Controller.

Chamberlain

Tafters.

Harbengers.

Of Gentlemen beside that waite about his Chamber and Person (called shilfer of the Chamber) Strap(ex) there are two hundred, all No- ber. blemens sonnes. His ordinary Guard is 2000. Hag-

The Guard, butters, ready with their pieces charged. and their match lighted, with other necesfary Furniture continually day & night: which come not within the house, but waite without in the court or yard, where the Emperour is abiding. In the night time, there lodgeth next to his bedchamber, the chiefe Chamberlaine, with one or two more of best trust about him.

A fecond chamber off, there lodge fixe other of like account, for their trust and faithfulnesse.

In the third Chamber lie certaine yong Gentlemen, of these two hundred, called Shilfey Strapfey, that take their turnes by forties cuery night.

There are Groomes besides, that watch in their course, and lye at every gate and doore of the Court, called Estopnick.

The Hagbutters or Gunners, whereof there are two thousand (as was faide The Guard before) watch about the Emperors lodg- for his lodg. ing, or bed-chamber by course two hundred and fifty enery night, and two hundred and fifty more in the Court yard, & about the Treasure house.

His Court or House at the Mosko, is made Castle-wife, walled about with great store of faire Ordenance planted vpon the Wall, and containeth a great bredth of ground within it, with many dwelling houses. Which are appointed for fuch as areknowne to be fure and tru-

sty to the Emperor. The private behaviour and qualitie of the Ruffe people, may partly bee vnder-froode, by that which hath beene fayde of the Ruffe concerning the publique state and viage people. of the Countrey. As touching the natu- Conflitution rall habite of their bodies, they are, for of their bothe most part, of a large sife, and of verie dies. fleshy bodies; accounting it a grace to be fomewhat groffe and burley, and therefore they nourish and spread their beards, to have them long and broade. But, for the most part, they are very vnweldy and vnactiue withall. Which may be thought to come, partly of the Climate, and the numbnesse which they get by the colde in

winter, and partly of their dyer, which is Their ordina

most of rootes, onions, garlike, cabbage, ry dyer.

and fuch like things that breed groffe hu- | leape into the River starke naked, orto mours, which they vie to cate alone, and with their other meates.

Their dyet is rather much then curi-Their drinke ous. At their meales they beginne commonly with a Chark, or finall cuppe of Aqua vita, (which they do call Ruffe wine) and then drinke not till towards the end of their meales, taking it in largely, and all together, with kiffing one another, at eutry pledge . And therefore, after dinner there is no talking with them, but enery man goeth to his bench to take his after-noones fleepe, which is as ordinary with them as theyr nights rest. When they exceed, and have varietie of dishes, the first are their baked meates (for roste meates they vie little) and then their pottage and broaths. To drinke drunke, is an ordinary matter with them every day in the week. Their common drinke is Mead, the poorer fort vie water, and thin drinke called Qualle, which is nothing elfe (as weeve to fay) but water turned out of his wittes, with a little branne meathed

> This dyet would breede in them many diseases, but that they vie bath stoues, or hot houses, in stead of all physicke, commonly twice or thrice cuery weeke. All the Winter time, and almost the whole Summer, they heate there Peaches, which are made like the Germane Bathfloues, & their Potlads like Ouens, that so warme the house, that a stranger at the first shall hardly like of it. These two extremities, specially in the Winter of heate within their houses, and of extreme colde without, together with their dyet: maketh them of a darke and fallow complection. their skinnes beeing tanned and parched both with cold and with heate: specially the women that (for the greater part) are of farre worse complections, then the men. Wherof the cause I take to be their keeping within the hot-houses, and busiing themselves about the heating & vsing of their bathstones, and peaches.

The Russe, because that he is vsed to both these extremities of heate and of colde, can beare them both a great deale more patiently, then strangers can doe. You shall see them sometimes (to season their bodies) come out of their Bath-Roues all on a froth, and furning as hot almost as a Pig at a Spit, and presently to

poure colde water all ouer their bodies, and that in the coldeft of all the Winter time. The women, to mend the bad hue of their skins, vie to paint their faces with white and red colours, so visibly, that euery man may perceive it. Which is made no matter, because it is common, and liked well by their husbands: who make their Wines and Daughters ordinary allowance, to buy them colours to paint their faces withal, and delight themselves much, to fee them of fowle women, to become such faire Images. This parcheth the skinne, and helpeth to deforme them when their painting is off.

They apparell themselves after the Greeke manner. The Noblemans attire is mans attire. on this fashion.

First a Taffia, or little night-cappe on his head, that concreth little more then his crowne, commonly very rich, wrought of filke and gold thred, and fet with pearl

and precious stones. His head he keepeth shauen close to the very skin, except he be in some displeasure with the Emperour. Then hee suffereth his hayre to grow and hang downeypon his shoulders, couering his face as vgly and deformedly as he can.

Ouer the Taffia, hee weareth a wide Cap of blacke Foxe (which they account for the best Furre) with a Tiara or long bonnet put within it, standing vp like a Perfian or Babilonian Hat.

About his necke (which is feene all bare) is a coller fet with pearle and precious stones, about three or foure fingers broad.

Next ouer his thirt (which is curioufly wrought, because he strippeth himfelfe into it in the Summer time, while he is in the house) is a Shepon, or light Garment of filke, made downe to the knees. buttoned before: and then a Caftan or a close coate buttoned, & girt to him with a Persian girdle, whereat hee hangs his kniues and spoone. This commonly is of cloth of gold, and hangeth downe as low as his anckles.

Ouer that he weareth a loofe garment of some rich filke, furred and faced about with some gold Lace, called a Ferris.

Another ouer that, of Chamlet, or like stuffe, called an Alkaben, sleened and hanging lowe, and the cape commonly

tors prinate,

Officers.

The Lord Steward.

The Lord Treasurer.

Estoma Bisabroza Pastelnischay. The fixthis Tafters, now Theodore Alexandrowich, and Iuan Vafilowich Godo-

> The feuenth his Harbengers, which are three Noblemen, and divers other Gentlemen that do the Office vnder the. These are his ordinary Officers, and Offices of the cheefest account.

Chap.s.

The after-

Groomes.

Two extre-

Their often

vic of Bath.

brooched and fet all with pearle.

When he goeth abroad, he casteth ouer al these, which are but sleight (though they feeme to be many) another garment called an Honoratkey, like to the Alkaben, faue that it is made without a coller for the necke. And this is commonly of fine cloth, or Camells haire.

His buskins, which he weareth in stead of hofe, with linnen folds under them in steed of boot-hose, are made of a Persian leather called Saphian, embrodered with pearle. His vpper stockes commonly are of cloth of gold.

When he goeth abroade, hee mounteth on horse backe, although it be but to goe to the next doore; which is the cufrome and maner also of the Boiarskey, or

The Boiarskey or gentlemans attire is of the same fashion, but diffreth in stuffe; and yet he will have his Caftan or vndercoate fometimes of cloth of golde, the rest of cloth or silke.

The Noble woman (called Chyna Boiarlbena) weareth on her head, first a kall of some soft filke (which commonly is red) and over it a frontlet, called Obrofa | Thion. of white colour.

Quer that , her Cap (made after the coife fashion of cloath of golde) called Shapka Zempska, edged with fomerich furre, and fet with pearles and stones. Though they have of late begunne to difdaine embrodering with pearles about their caps, because the Diacks, and some Merchants wines have taken uppe the fa-

In their cares they weare eare-rings (which they call Sargee) of two inches or more in compasse, the matter of golde fet with Rubies, or Saphires, or some like pretious stone.

In Sommer they goe often withkerchiefs of fine white lawne or Cambricke, fastened under the chinne, with two long tasselles pendent. The kerchiefe spotted and fet thicke with rich pearle.

When they ride or goe abroad in raynie weather, they vie to weare white hats with coloured bands, called by them Scapa Zemskoy.

rich pearle and pretious stones.

Their vpper garment is a loofe gowne

(called Oposhen) commonly of Skarlet, with wide loofe fleeues, hanging downe to the ground, buttond before with great gold buttons, or at the least, filuer and gilt, nigh as bigge as a wallnut. Which hath hanging oner it fastened under the cappe, a large broade cape of some rich Furre, that hangeth downe almost to the middes of their backes.

Next under the Opolhers or upper gar. The under ment, they weare an other , called a Leit- gowner nick, that is made close before with great wide fleeues, the cuffe or halfe fleeue vp to the elbowes commonly of cloath of golde : and voder that a Ferris Zemskoy, which hangeth loofe buttoned throughout to the very foote.

On the hand-wreafts they weare very Bracelets. faire Bracelets, about two fingers broade of pearles and precious stones. They goe all in Buskins of white, yellow, blew, or some other coloured leather, embrodered with pearle. This is the attire of the Noble woman of Rußia, when thee maketh the best shew of her selfe. The gentlewomans apparrell may differ in the fuffe, but is all one for the making or fa-

As for the poore Moufick, and his wife, The Moufie, they goe poorely clad. The man with his manualture. Odnoratkey, or loofe gowne to the small of the legge, tied together with a lace before, of course white or blew cloth, with some Shube or long wast-coate of Furre, or of sheepe-skinne under it, and his furred cappe, and buskins.

The poorer fort of them have their Od- The poore noratkey, or upper garment, made of man. Cowes haire. This is their winter habite. In the former time, commonly they doe weare nothing but their thirts voon their backes, and buskins on their legges.

The woman goeth in a redde or blew gowne, when thee maketh the best thew, and with fome warme Shube of Furre vnder it in the winter time . But in the fommer, nothing but her two shirts (for so do they call them) one over the other, whether they be within doores, or without.

On their heads, they weare caps of some Head artire. colored fluffe, many of veluet, or of cloth of gold, but for the most part, kerchiefes. About their neckes they weare collers of three or foure fingers broade, fet with ther mettall, and her croffe about her Croffe. necke, you shall see no Russia woman, be the wife, or maide.

lity otherwise, they are of reasonable capacities, if they had those meanes that fome other Nations have, to traine vp their witts in good nurture and learning. Which they might borrow of the Polonians, and other their neighbors : but that they refuse it of a very selfe pride, as accounting their owne fashion to be farre the best. Partly also (as I sayd before) for that their manner of bringing vp (voyd of all good learning, and civill behaviour) is thought (by their gouernors) most agreeable to that State, and their maner of gouernement. Which the people would hardly beare, if they were once civilled, geththe know and brought to more understanding of God, and good policie.

edge of God This causeth the Emperours to keepe out all meanes of making it better, and to

be very wary for excluding of all peregrinitie, that might alter their fashions. Which were leffe to be difliked, if it fet not a print into the very mindes of his people. For, as themselves are very hardly and cruelly dealt withall by their chiefe Magistrates, and other superiours: foure they as cruell one against an other, especially ouer their inferiours, and fuch as are under them . So that the basest and wretchedest Christianoe (as they call him) that stoupeth and crowcheth like a dogge to the Gentleman, and licketh up the duft that lieth at his feete, is an intollerable tyrant, where he hath the advantage.

By this meanes the whole Countrie is filled with rapine, and murder. They doe make no account of the life of a man. Yee thall have a man robbed fometime in the very streetes of their Townes, if hee goe late in the evening : and yet no man to come foorth out of his doores to rescue him, though he heare him cry out, I will not speake of the strangenesse of the murders, and other cruelties committed amongst them, that would scarcely be beleened to be doone amongst men, especially fuch as professe themselves to be chriflians.

The number of their vagrant and begging poore is almost infinite; that are fo pinched with famine and extreme neede, as that they doe begge after a violent and desperate manner; with, Gine me, and out mee; Giue mee, and kill mee; and fuch like phraies. Whereby it may bee gheffed!

As touching their behaviour, and qua- | what they are towards strangers, that are fo vnnaturall and cruell towardes their owne. And yet it may be doubted when ther is the greater, the crueltie, or intem- Intemperance perancie that is yied in that Countrie. I will not speake of it, because it is so foole and not to be named. The whole Countric overfloweth with all finne of that) kinde. And no maruell, as bauing no law to restraine who redomes, adulteries, and like vncleannesse of life.

As for the truth of his word, the Ruffe No care of (for the most part) maketh small regard of mile, it: fo he may gaine by a lie, and breach of his promife. And it may be faid truely (as they know best that have traded most with them) that from the great to the small (except some few that will scarcely bee found) the Ruffe neyther beleeueth anie thing that an other man speaketh, nor speaketh any thing himselfe worthy to be beleeved.

These qualities make them very odious to all their neighbours, especially to the Tartars, that account themselves to dious to his be honest and just, in comparison of the neighbours, Ruffe. It is supposed by some, that doe well confider of the flate of both Countries, that the offence they do take at the Rulle gouernement, and their manner of behaufour ; hath beene a great caufe to keepe the Tartar still heathenish, and to millike (as hee dooth) of the Christian

CHAP. VI.

If it may be fo ordered or limited, that paifons given at a certaine day, shall not cause death, watill a time appointed and prefixed.

Ir, though you can much more clearetly and exactly first the sate of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

This is the last paradox of the first thread.

mine aduice therein, concerning the littletation and efficacie of poylons, araday or time prefixed; I shall briefly resolute you of my judgement.

uo Thaue euermore helde it abfurde and Gggg

Weather hats

Chin clothes

The Gentle

mans apparel

The noble wo-

mans apparel.

A coife cap.

Rich eare-

Necke collers

The vpper garment.

Vagrant beg-

Civilitie brin

The Market

A comparison deriued from phyficall meby empoyfoners. For, how can it be fo, dicines of bell feeing Physicall medicines, euen such as worth. are most profitable, whose vertue (in

ridiculous (although it bee maintayned | businesse. in vulgare opinion) that venoms or poyfons should be limited to a certaine time.

knowledge thereof, is limited to the com-

position and quantitie of the dose) cannot

be apprehended, but by long and frequent

experience: And that being knowne, doth

not yet leane vs any certaine act, but con-

iecturall: wherfore, I cannot fee by what

reason, an empoysoner should gaine a

prefixion of time, for the efficacie of his

poyfon. For, it is not lawfull to make tri-

all, without danger, no nor without pu-

nishment : euen as if the action of Physi-

call receipts, should be experimented vp-

It may be alleadged, and I am of the

fame opinion too, that they approue their

cuent and successe, should happen vnto

beafts then to men. For creatures depri-

ued of reason, haue very little diversitie

(in their kinde) betweene them, feeding

on one and the same pasturage, and being

not addicted to fundry studies, and occu-

pations: from whence enfueth, that even

by and of the fame things, beafts endure

But for men, although they agree to-

gether in kinde, yet notwithstanding they

are so different, as seldome or neuer, shall

we find two together of likenesse in face :

but are diverse in complexions, conditi-

ons and occupations or professions, and

no one like other among a thousand. Vn-

doubtedly, I am of the minde, that in the

kinde of man, there is as many differences

among particulars, as there is diversities

ofkinde among all other creatures. And

therefore, it ought to be helde altogether

abusue, and no way firme, and such con-

iecure of empoyloners; as is very easie

to be prooued, and made plaine to energ

vnderstanding: and vppon this hopefull

perswasion, wee will fall presently to our

(almost) passions alike.

on healthfull persons.

Many haue thought and held, that The-

ophrastus (a very grave and approved Philosopher) was the Authour of this opinion because he wrote thus of Aconitum. It is faid to be compounded in such fort, that it a learned Phi can kill at a certaine time : as namely, within lofopher, his two moneths, three moneths, fixe moneths, 4 whole yeare, and sometimes in two yeares.

And some affirme, that such people shall die more miferably, then if they could have resi-

sted longer time. For their bodies will impaire by little and little, perishing in a daily languifling: whereas such as die suddenly have the more easie death. But the authoritie of Theophrastus, or Theophrastus of our felues, can mooue nothing in this dited in the

matter; confidering, that he wrote this, cafe. more vpon others opinion, then his own, as the words themselves doe evidently testifie. And if any one defire to know the cause of this perswasion, hee shall meete

poylons vpon bealts, as Dogges, Swine and Birds, and that thereby they constiwith a two-folde answere thereto. The Two answers first is, the subtile craftinesse of men, who | to the true tute rules to themselves, having observed flatter and fondly play with their owne Thehidan divers times of death, according to the nature of the poylons. As if the natures vices. For how many may be found that livere. of men, (being the most temperate of all can not so paciently endure, when they are reprodued in some cuill, happening creatures) and the other were not verie farre different. Besides, it is much more by an externall accident; as if one thould casie, that a precise and certaine houre of

tell them, that it received originall by a bad temperature of their body or of their owne intemperance? For, admit that no-We can not thing could be faide, to bee the cause of indure to hear the first constitution, and therefore (by our owneign-

consequent) the reproofe of his imperseaion concerned him nothing : yet notwithstanding, because it is our owne naturally, we will conceale and couer it, yea, and fauour it beyond measure. So that if there happen any fault on the behalfe of our imperfection, we stand most in seare to be thereof reproued. And hence it enfueth, that we more gladly yeelde agree-

ment, to have the cause from some externall occasion, then of any interiour. Examples in this case are very manifest, The ignorace of causesinda euen in fuch as haue least knowledge, be- of cautesmourceth (very ofing ignorant in good Arts and Sciences, ten atalien

transported by simple judgement of felle- pinion and Sorceries loue. As aged, and the most part of weake witted people doe, to whom nothing admitable can be spoken; ynlesse it be referred to some Saint, or poyson closely giuen, or to the witching lookes of some old woman: whence proceeded the com-

plaint whereof Virgill (peaketh.

Chap.6.

I know not by what illaspect of wrong, My tender Lambes (enchanted) walke along. For there must needes be probable lying, that either instantly, or soone after

the poyfon is given, or contriued in the furest manner; if any length or respite of time can be given thereto. The other cause of this opinion, is the depraued interpretation of Aftronomi-

mwere and the fecond

The like ift of

Theophrastus That death happeneth in as short a time, as a his words for tir fudden en hing of death

Adefinition of philon or

The operations on of positions in their owner

call Theoremes or Speculations. For the proofe whereof', Aftrologers constitute As certaine poisons artificial, which have

Of poyloning at prefixed times.

(which is true) the divers manners or paffions of inferiour bodies, to be from the diuers conjunction, opposition and enterchanged aspect of the superiour. From hence, the ignorant vulgar take occasion. to ground and establish the varietie of esfects, euen vpon the least differences that can bee observed in the celestial bodies. As when they constitute some one plant,

to have power and efficacie against feauers; prouided, that it be gathered before Sunne rifing. This is an errour foread kents gathe-ind you Saint lake Eue or account at all) men commonly construct these venoms may be referred, such askill the diversitie of effects in their kinds : but only by fight, finel, or being but talled onalso would have the accidents of those efly (without swallowing or letting downe) fects to be divers, for the felfe fame reafon; euen as is the time to manifest the efthe least lingering. ficacie of poylon. The folly (in this point) further related by Theopbrastus, he fayth:

Plant is to be gathered . Let vs feeke then for a true folution of this Probleme, by reason rather then the testimonies of any. Which we may most commodiously doe (if I abuse not mine owne judgement) by beginning with the definition of venome

our instant disputation. We properly call venome or poyfon, whatfocuer being received into the body, doth fo fight against the body, as it is not to be furmounted; but contrariwife, doth fo alter the body, as the body it felfe alters

or poison; to the end it may be the easier

understood, what the matter is that vigeth

in diet. In all venoms there are two espefooner or later then other; fome are ouerciall differences : for, eyther they are enethrowne thereby others escape. Because mies to humane nature, by reason of their many times it comes fo to paffe, that the manifest qualitie; or esse they are aduerse poisons power is mitigated & overcome, thereto in their whole substance. Moreouer, some may kill quickely, others more

tardily, even of their owne proper nature. Such kill fuddenly, and in fewest daies and houres, which are immediatly carried to

the profunditie of the hart. Such venoms are extreamly hot, and (for the most part) corrofine or purrefactine; the Greeks call them Septiques, endued with most subtile parts. For, colde and groffe venomes are

thorow the bootes of the Rider, even till

it attaine to the naked foale of his foote,

more yele, and infinuate into the veines and arteries more flowly. Some there are , which infect and kill Of fome that the body, by their onely vapour or inuiti- detroytoon, then other. ble exhalation. Others, that holde the prime place of atrocitie and malignitie.

fo subtile a vertue, as being but rubbed or annointed vpon the stirrops, will pierce

and from thence ascendeth vp into the bo dy, by the fourpiralles or ouertures of the skinne, and so corrupt all the members. Poysoning Bridles and Saddles of horfesmay also be mens flirrops infected, and afterwards, inducted by naturall heate into the arteries and veins of fes, garments,

the rider entring by the pores in his hands beds, &c. and thighes. As in like maner, Garments, Beds and Couerings may be poyfond. To

tuddenly destroying a man , without any All venomes or poylons bring prefent death with them, fo as there remains not Such speeding any time of respite, for succor to faue the poysons are in poore mans life but he dies. I vnderftand, daily vie amongest the that such poylons are in frequent vse a- Turkes and o

mong the Turkes, and fuch other nations. ther barba-Groffer venoms or poifons do differ from rous nations thele, as being flower in performing their action; but in the end burne very firongly,

efficacie, in poisons of divers kinds, but alfo there happens to them as great a varietie ofrespites, to hurt according to their the poysons, constitution and temperature, by whom and difference they are taken. For some feele the harme of working.

by the very complexio of him that hath received it, elfe, that it is fo firog of it felf, as it needeth no other counterpoyfon to vanquish it. So falleth it out with them that dwell in pestilent aires, & others that

Gggg 2

bite, eat, torment, & (by their lingring) be-

get the greater strength & cruel violence.

Now there is not onely a difference of

Little diuerfitie betweene vnreasonable creatures in their kinde. Very great &

Triall of poy-

fons made or

Dogs, Hoge,

Birds,&c.

ftrange varietie among me, for feldome or neuer are two found of one and the fame complexion,

Chap. 6.

The Art of

phylicke is

turall then

Reafts na

much diffe

nefelf-fame

poylon diffe-teth in his o-

ring from

more conice

Ofbodies pe | stilentially in-

them being ficke, chance to die fuddenly, others later, and other (in the end) escape. If it be fo, it seemes then altogether ridiculous to affirme, that it is possible to

are attainted with the plague : some of

giue a poison, which (at a day prefixed,& A very ridicu-

lous affirmation.

rad.I.Dec. 1.

ging from our heate. Whence it ensueth, that being groffely preffed, they produce their effects the later. But if I should confent to them herein, yet notwithstanding, they can neuer come to approve their affirmation, vnleffe it be captiously. For if any man argue thus: This drugge difco-A kind of ydle argumentatiú uereth his power later then this; there-

thing in fome time.

fore he will doe it at a certaine time. The

argumentation is false, and Aristotle cal-

leth it Elenchus non confequens : Euen as if

a man should say, A Goat is a Beast, ther-

fore a Goate is an Affe. For, To do a thing

late, and to do a thing at a certaine time, are

of divers kindes, and differ from doing a

Heereby it appeareth, that these great

on the conditions of the poylons, as in

this poynt it is very enident, for we heare

no distinction of bodies : but onely pre-

tence of the poylon, whereunto they on-

ly attribute the limitation of time, and not

to any complexion in the parties. Obser-

uation hath beene made, that poison hath

beene giuen at a Frast or Banquet to di-

uers persons, all in one houre, (when

friends have merrily met together, with-

out suspition of any such villanie) where-

of some dyed suddenly, others died with-

A Goate is a heaft, therefore a Goate is an Affe.

At a folemne Banquet in I.

ralie made by Carfar Borgia

An example physicall pur

in some few dayes after, and some felt no anguish at all, yet every one received a like quantitie. The like we fee to happen daily in purgatine medicines, which being given to divers persons (even all alike in measure;

and all alike in preparation) they worke vpon fome bodies very fuddenly, others more flowly, others very hardly, and vpon some nothing at all. Moreover, the vacuitie of some men is with much ease, others with great difficultie, grieuously grinding or cutting, and frequent debility I am determined to exercise my selfe

of the heart. What need is there then of alleadging many men, when vppon one and the same man, one and the same me-

dicine cannot produce the same effectse Seeing then, that according to the diuers and vnparaleld complexion, & conformation of the body, we fee fuch things in and ten

at a certaine time of that day) shall cause to happen for the most part; and besides, perature of a the parties death, & that the condition of the poison is so to doe. To which errour that the iust temperature of euery parti-I may well referre another, fauouring of cular man is no way to be comprehenthe fame tafte, and which we have long ded: how then shall any one man dare to Poisons work fince operthrowne, to wit: That medicines take the beginning of their mutation or chan-

in one and the fay, how long time naturall heate shall refift or withstand poison ? Say I admitted, vpon them. that fome one man should be so expert an empoisoner that he could weigh (in a certainty of judgement) the power of his poifon , euen as exquifitely as he weigheth muske in the Ballance : yet notwirhstanding, I will neuer graunt, that he can as exactly limite poylon, for the nature of him that is to receive it : but he wil faile somewhat of the end, or of the time by him

proposed. For Physicke it selfe is held to erce grown be a Science, grounded but vpon coniectures, concerning what is to be prescribed for every man, in the proper quantitie and qualitie of meetest remedies. For, no man knoweth how to write or speake infly or properly, as Galen faith in the third book of his Methods. And a little after: In the Professours have no other eye, but onelie Arte of Physicke (faith he) there is not anie

> kinde : but that which cannot be foken, written, nor entirely appointed or ordained, is the

quantitie for every onc. Hee repeateth this fame matter many times, and to the purpose ensuing, as enfiructing, that every man hath his peculiar curing, and that the naturall propertie is vnfpeakeable and incomprehenfible of an exact Science . Vulgar Physitians call it Idiolyneralis, the naturall propertie, as

thing or remedie, but may bee named in his

Galen faith. And because all confesse, that ir canot be comprehended; they attribute the true Art of Physicke to Aesculapius & Apollo. For the principle, and foundation (as it were) of perfect, compleate, & infallible Phylicke (which Galen calls; The true

Arte of Medicine) is the particular knowledge of Naturals. Whereupon he makes this addition. If I knew how to acknowledge Galen in his fully, the nature of each one in particular : I should verily thinke to be such a one as Ae-

Sculapius and to know as much in my under-

flanding . But because it is not to be doone.

and to exhort others therein to follow mine example. If Phylicke then be conjecturall, and

not certaine in the party that prepareth or appointeth remedies to every body, & the iffue is not to be feene, but finally by along observation and experience; who can perswade himselfe herein concerning poylons? For, if in the Art of phylicke, Experience is dangerous, as the wife & lear-Hippocin lib.s . ned Hippocrates well aduifeth vs : it is cafie to conceiue, how vncertain the proofe of poylons are, because it is not lawfull to experiment their vertue, both with-

vpon brute Beafts, as I formerly faide, is very yeapt for any accommodation to a tures are very man, because the natures of men and beafts are greatly differing, as namely by this proofe: that Stares feede fafely vpon

vs. From these reasons then we may colthat one selfe same poyson produceth his action, fometimes quickly, and fome-

Bodies of frong and good tempeature relift the power of

Cold poytons work toonest

their force, when they are given to hotte natures. Which may appeare a Paradoxe to many: but having bin made most eni-

out danger and punishment also, as wholsome medicines in diversitie of persons. And whatfocuer hath bin observed

Hemlocke, and Quailes on Helleborus, which are both physicke and poyson to

lect finally, that the Arte (if it may bee tearmed an Arte) or coniectures of empoyloners, is to be effeemed very erronious, and of flender firmnes : confidering, times flackly; and that not fo much by any reason in it selfe, as by the nature and complection of the body, widenesse or narrownesse of the passages, strength or weaknesse of naturall heate; and the plenty or scarsity of semblable excrements, &

diuers other meanes. For the power of poylon remaineth sometimes vaine and fruitlesse, or mightily rebated, according to fuch bodies, as haue their faculties of the foule front and ftrong, by reason of an excellent good temperature. And Galen thinketh, that the building and composition of the body, is the cause why Hemlocke killeth a man.& nourisheth Stares. Whereto he addeth, the strength and vigour of heate, diminithing and tubtillizing, in regard he is perswaded that it happeneth for that colde poyfons better and fooner doe declare

dently apparant by the faid author, I dare

So much, to come so neere him as a man may, I let the proofe passe voon my credite, because his experience is warrantable.

As for the nature of excrements, they weaken the actions of poylons, being re- Of the feneral pugnant to their qualities. For if there be action of any aboundance of phlegine in the en- phlegine and trailes, the power of hot poyfon will bee choller, by greatly rebated : and on the contrary, hot or aboundmoysture hasteneth the action of such a ing. poyfon. Likewise, ouer-copious choller stoppeth and breaketh the stupefactine venome received, whereas phlegme fauoreth it. And all that these wicked empoyfoners do know, is nothing elfe, but what poylons onely kill, by enident condition of their qualities, and that they hurt with all their substance. Such are they as kill by corrupting or corrofion, which must have

time to enforce their mallice (as Galen faieth) wheras other do weaken themselnes by their tardying. For they do all putrific in time, & so much the more, as the place is moister and hotter. Such then as worke by putrifying, time

doth augment their action : because they of poylons that have encrease the corruption, and in regard their working they ceasse not to corrupt themselves; re- by putrifacticiprocally they corrupt and rot the body. From whence ensueth, that death is caufed long time after: especially such poy-

fons as are of groffe and earthy fubstance. Thus you may fee, what empoysoners haue learned by long observation. First, they know how to distinguish ve- What apprenomes, which kill by their infigne and no- henfion em-

torious qualities, from other that cause poysoners have of them death by their whole substance. Secondly, that they naturally bring in observatito any man whatfocuer, a most sudden

harme, and yet doe not discouer their vigour, but vpon longer time. Thirdly, that (of both the two kindes) they kill eyther fooner or later (without any respect to the body) acording as they

haue the most, or the least quantity. Fourthly, they can deale in fuch fort, that all poylons shall be tempered according to their owne pleasure, and make them sweeter or sharper, because they should kill the sooner or slower, which is without any fecret or myracle of nature.

We viually exercise the same cunning, in purgative drugges, fetting an edge on of purgative fuch as are dull and flowe, and give them as fpurs to further purpofe; and contrariwife, wee tetaine over-hafty penetration

Gggg 3

Effects of poyfons im polsible to be limitted to a moment of

as are naturally more flacke & tardy. But that a man should limit the effects of poifons, to a certaine day, and to a point or moment named; we hold to bee meerely abfurd and ridiculous, because the nature of each man cannot be perfectly knowne (as we have before sufficiently declared) from whence proceedeth the most vncer-

in the other, by mingling with them, fuch

Digetfity of effects both in the agent and patient.

fects, according to the divers disposition, as well of that which worketh, as of that which suffereth. And this happeneth, not onely by reason of euident qualities, but also of hidden and proper: whence alfo it enfueth, that the thing which doth this man a great deale of harme, may bee as profitable to another. Pedro de Albano (whom some call the

call humour: may give him a poylon, that

shall consume in ten yeares space. From

hence he collecteth, fome men may bee

poyfoned, that droope and dry away dai-

ly (vulgarly teatmed in Italian, Herbatiet

Strigati) and so it may bee ordered some-

times, that poyfoning may bee limitted.

But that it is to be presupposed by Astro-

logye, I hardly thinke to be ener dinined.

those men shall bee taken hence. Pliny

focaketh of no time knowne more cer-

taine of death, then yfe of the Sea Hare (a

venomous fish) bringeth, where he faith:

Such men as (in eating) feele poy fon, and by

the first signe perceive the poyson: (ball dye

in as many houres after, as the Hare hath li-

ned. Now, who shall divine the age of

the Hare, to the ende, that the appointed

houre of death, may be fore-tolde there-

I confesse, that all such as are seene to

taine tearme or time of enery poylon, for

procuring the death of a man. For enery

naturall action meeteth with divers ef-

Reconciler, or Peace-maker) where hee explicateth this question, propoundeth: ment and aniwer of Pedre That he may do it, who having certainly de Albano knowne the continuance of a mans life, vpon this by the measure and quantity of his radi-

point.

Fore-spoken or bewitched.

> droope and decay by little and little, being empoyfoned, haue a long affliction: but yet there is no certaine time when

Plininlib.14. сар.7.

A má of more then ordinary skill to haue fuch know . ledge.

And yet if I did admit them, that a man didknow how many dayes the Hare hath lived: I can never grant (for al that) that all men shall dye at one and the same time; because one and the selfe-same poifon, worketh diucrily, according to the

diversity of mens bodies, as it hath beene more then sufficiently proued. So that it had beene much more truely faide (as Poyfon can the fame Pliny after addeth) The faide poy- haue no cer. fon can have no certainty of time, according

CHAP. VII.

as Licinius Macer alfo faith.

Of diners erronious and idle opinions, conceined in fantasticke braines, and verily beleeved, as if they were found truths.



Eople erre in many matters, concerning diuers creatures (haply not inuented of them clius) but held by elder and precedent intimation, as lit- cient people,

tle also apprehended or vnderstoode by them; but, perhappes, meere fictions of among many their owne braines, vpon some appearing probable reasons. As wife and woorthie Poets, who have enfructed bad and bestiall men, to the imitation of vertue, by witty fables and pleasant inventions. which euer hath bene, and still is permitted as lawfull in them, even as the like licence is allowed to Painters, as Horace teflifieth faying:

Poets and Rainters equall power containe, To fay on do, what best shall like their braine.

As for Painters, we fee that they figure an Angell in the forme of a Youth, cloa- The variable thed with a garment of Starres, bare hea- fliapes given ded, and having wings like a Bird. And to many the Soule of man is represented like to a things. young Infant, ftark naked. The divell, to Divell. haue hornes, and a dreadfull raile: And yet neuerthelesse, these are but spirites without bodies, and cannot carry the refemblance of any visible creature.

In the like manner, Hell, which is but a place, is figured with a hideous gaping Hell. throate : Death, beeing but a privation of life, is resembled by the Anatomized bones of a dead man, carrying a Scithe in his hand . Loue, which is but a paffion Loue. and accident, not subsisting any way of it felfesis painted and prefented like a naked

The figures as Saturne, Jupiter, Mars, Mercurie, and

Chap. 7.

do carry no

The faying of

The Pellican.

childe, and blind; wearing wings, a Bow, and a Quiver furnished with Arrowes. The Winds, which are but a moued agitated Ayre; are figured with mens heads, hauing their Checkes hugely fwolne, euen as we see one founding of a Trum-

people: yet haue they demonstrations

fignes in the likewife, and prefentation is made of the twelue Signes of the Zodiack (which are but certaine Starres) yet disposed into diuers figures, as one of a Ramme, another of a Bull, the third of two twinne infants, &c. And so the images of heaven which are out of the Zodiacke; one in forme of a Beare, another of an Eagle, others in riuers, in an Harpie, Dogge, Dragon, &c.

> Venus; thefe beare the forme of perfonages, in diners habites and countenances: but the Sun and Moone are otherwife shewne and distinguished. Painters alfo, have evermore deno-

> ted the figure of a Starre with five rayons or beames, thereby expressing theyr twinckling splendour : although all the Starres do not sparkle in that manner; and

well wee know beside, that they are all

round in figure, without points or corpo-

misse to the purpose. The Ayre cannot

be painted, no more then heaven, cleare

and transparant bodyes; but yet they are

represented by a blewe or azure colour.

Water is figured by Waues, and the

reall beams. As for the Elements, they fi-The elements gure the fire (which is inuifible) like vnto our artificiall fire, which is not much a-

Earth in thape of a Globe, rounde as a Of Creatures, they counterfeyte some Creatures figured in fafabulously : as the Salamander, which is no fuch thing as it is painted nor the Dol-The Salaman phine likewife , as it is prefented in he Dolphin. Armes and Deuices : Nor the Flower de Luce, as it is commonly knowne to euc-

ry one. And the Heart, beit of a man. or of other creature, it is of no fuch shape as Painters giue it. The Pellicane is figured, with her tharpe Beake turned vpon his breft, which

The launceth therwith, to make hir blood vilue forth, for the norithing of hir york

dying thereby: And yet we see and know that the Pellican hath her beak edgeleffe. flat, and broad; justly like in fathion voto the Apothecaries Spatule or Slice, as being no way able to wound her breaft. Alfo, the Greeke worde [Pettican,] fignifying an Axe or Coopers Adge or Ads, As for Astrologers, though they want | plainly declareth that her Beake is flat, &

paintings, whereby to enstruct ignorant | as it should be. Moreouer it is fayde, that the Sire or Hee-Bird, beateth the young ones, euen as with blowes on the face, or (as wee vie

to fay) boxes on the eare, vntill they are almost dead and then the Dam woundeth her breaft, to reuiue them with her blood: blowes commonly are given with flat, and not pointed things. The Phoenix, being painted burning

her felfe in a fire, prepared purpofely for And next the Planets, which are but stars, her; is much more fabulous. But al these things are lawfully permitted to Painters and Poets (as we faide before) vpon fome good respect and secret reason, needlesse to bee reported hecre; making mention onely but of certaine erronious opinions.

which the sulgar holde for fute and most certaine, and which are the more excu-Sable, because many great Philosophers and ancient Phylitions, have defended the like opinions. 1. Of the Vipen.

TT hath bin givery ancient opinion, that In what manthe Viper ioyneth with her male, by re- ner the Viper Reyuing his head in at her mouth (throgh gender by his defect of other genitall partes) and that male. the female by the delight the feeleth, locketh her teeth fo fast together, as thereby the biteth off her males head, and fo conceyueth. Afterwardes, when the time for delinery commeth, the yong ones having no other vilue, and (cuen as it were) to reuenge the death of theyr Father: bice and teare the belly of their mother, wherby the dyeth. Here is the reason why it is faide of a Posthumus, of whome the mother dieth in deliuerance the is like the Viper, that never feeth his father nor mather. This hath fomtime ferued as an Emblem with this deuice of motto, Quod tibi fieri haue done to non vis alteri ne feceris.

All this is falle, and fauored by many, but hadly a that beeing well understood which Artifotle hath faid The Viper (aith ones, euen to the price of her owne life, he) is conceined of Egges which fhe hardred

Whatthou wouldft not thee doe not hou to ano-

Arift. in Anim. lib 9.cep.7.

Chap.8.

Aug in Civitat.

come foorth all formed, being despoyled of the membrane or thinne skinne, which contained The Viper de liuereth her broode, but by one daily.

them within the wombe; and that is their fecondine. But the later-most (mooned with impatience) bite and teare that membrane, to effue forth the more hastily. For the damme or mother bringeth above twenty, and yet delivereth but one daily; which maketh the hinmost impatient, and constraineth them angerly to gnawe the tunicle or membrane; but neither the mothers lides or belly, as is vainely imagined. Many may be deceived also, concern-

ing the originall and etymologic of the word, as if Vipera were to fay, Quafi vi pariens: whereas it is (indeed) of Vivum pariens. For there is not any Serpent, that produceth her broade or young aline, or living, but the Viper. Others lay egges, which (out of the belly) are converted into Serpents.

2. Of the Beauer, called Caftor alfo. TT is vulgarly helde, that this beaft tea-

The naturall ynderstanding of the Beauer.

No Serpent yeeldeth her

yong liuing,

but the Viper.

rethaway his testicles with his owne teeth, when he perceiveth himfelfe to be purfued by Hunts-men: hauling a kind of knowledge naturally, that they feeke him only for them. Whereupon some thinke, that this name of Caftor was given him: because he geldeth himselse, and so (by confequent) becometh chafte, . Which is incerely falle, for, as Diofco-

Diglati.42.23. Vides wrote long fince; hee can by no meanes reach or rouch his stones. Those are onely two tumours, which (by yeares) comes to him, & are as impostums, ful of fatte matter or suppouration, called Caftoriam, which also hee can not teare away. And he is nor rearmed Cafter, of gelding, or of chastine ; but of the Greeke word Gafter, which fignifieth a Bolly, becausehe is full paunched, and this is nothing elfe. but by changing the letter Ginto C. Read hereupon the most learned History of M. tam. z.cap.vit.

3. Of the Salamander.

of the second Tome.

Rear errour is there also, concerning the true flature of this creature, which is faid to line in the fire, and bath power to extinguish it. From which coniecture, thereof, by licking al the filth away, wher-

in her belue, and become little Vipers: they | was taken the device of great King Frances, the first of that name (father of Arts and Sciences) Nutrifco, & extingo: I feed and extinguish. Dioscorides hath very learnedly deli- Diosc lib.a.ca.,

uered the contrary, and Galen also, saying: Galen in lib.; That the Salamander can resist the fire for de Tempo. Some time; but it burneth, by tarrying any long while therein. Neuertheleffe, it were better to hold with Aristotle, in faying; Arifin bifor. Anim.l. g.c. 19 That the Salamander is not burned in the

fire, but walkes aloft woon it extincting both the flame and coales. Experience, which is more flrong Painters have then all authorities of the wifest in the failed in the world teacheth vs, that this is a matter no Salamander. way to be credited . As for the figure of

the Salamander, the portraiture thereof

alfo is meerely fabulous, and contrined

by Painters, who have thrust such an imagination vponit; making thew also of it, to be a farre greater Beaft then it is. It is like to the smaller fort of Lizzards, which Like Newtes, frequent the walles in Languedoc, named the Lizardi Langroles, and in Daulphine Larmufes. But hauntingold the Salamander is formwhat greater, mar-houses, ked with many spots. His body is full of a white movifure, and thicke like Milke,

which issueth foorth by the pores of the skinne, preffing it neuer fo little. Which A defaisti milke or moifture is fo colde, that the Sa- of the Sallamander may (for fome time) withfrand (emblance. the fire but yet not long, without burning roafting and dying, as we have many times made good triall of. Farre is it from quenching the fire, or much leffe living in it like as the Chameleon lineth by the ayre; and I indge both alike in truth : albeit I never faw any Chameleon aline to make proofe of.

4. Of the Shee-Beare. Tis faid alfo, that the produceth a piece

of flesh, not having the forme of any creature : and afterward thee licketh it in The Bearing fuch manner, that thereby onely free giueth it both fashion and forme . This is ture at the Rendeletius, of Bifhes, in the laft chapter but a kinde of hyperbolicall fpeaking, for fifth, although to fay truely, the vone one is very unfake. to fay truely, the yong one is very vnfight- diffinguified ly after the birth, being all couered with as atterward. foame or froth, and in fuch a quantity, as it feemeth indeede but a himpe of fleth, without any distinction of parts. The Dam or Mother cleanfeth it immediately

true shape of a creature. So may we fee a W helpe (or a yong Lambe newly yeaned)much muddied and before ared at the first, as it is hardly knowne at the prime view: but when the Damme hath doone her louing and naturall Office, then all the parts are plainly seene and distinguished.

CHAP. VIII.

Avulgar Question: What Language a child Chall peake, that never heard any peech. That a man or woman borne dumb, is neceffarily deafe. As also, beethat is Nurst among dumbe people; And not, on the contrary, that one dumbe by Nature, should be deafe: And whence it ensueth, that a man is so tardie, in knowing howe to Meake.

cie; euen as if hee had bene nurffed by a

dumbe Woman, among dumbe people;

or in a Desert vitterly vninhabited of peo-

ple, where neuer any speech had beene

Herodotus declareth in his fecond book,

that Pfammeticus, a King of the Ægypti-

ans, was defirous (on a time) to make

proofe heereof, to the end, that he might

where neuer any voyce of man was, or

could be heard... After two yeeres were

past, and they being brought before the

King, fometimes they could pronounce

this Word Bdc, which in the Phrygian

tongue, fignificth Bread . Whereuppon

some gathered, that the Phrygian was

The opinion of the vulgar

roofe made 7 a King of judge thereby, what was the most auncius the molt ent and naturall Language, of all them that were spoken in the world. He caused two Children to bee nurfed in a Forrest.

he op inion of S. Augustin

the first language of man. But as Saint Augustine fayeth, thefe children might have learned the Word Bee (and so retained it) of Goats, among

by (not long after) it appeareth in the | which they were nourished. For, as hee sheweth in his worke of the quantitie of the Soule; all manner of speaking is by hearing, and by imitation. Notwithstanding, in his Booke of the Cittie of God, hee thinketh and beleeueth, that before the confusion of Tongues (which happened at the building of the Tower of Ba-

bell) the Hebrew Language was natural-

laugh, mouing hands and feet, & when

ftrength ferueth, to go.

ly to all . As if words were an action pro-

ceeding from naturall instinct, or the fim- A refutation ple and proper motion of the foule: euen of the latter words of S. as if they had power in themselves (and of Augustine. themselves, with some naturall inclinations) to bring forth in euidence and effect fpeech, without any enstructing. Such knowledge is to fucke, to cry, mourne,

The Goate, Lambe, Chicken, and other fuch like creatures, fo foone as they as are done are bred and brought forth, bring them- by inftinet of felues to the teates, knowing naturally, nature onely,

that there is their nourifhment. Beeing grown greater, they make choife (among a thousand divers plants) such as best di-Vlgar people.

hold it as a thing most alfured, that a man shoulde naturally speake the Language of Adam, if he neuer beech from his instances to be the standard of the stand gest and agree with their complexion. They bleate and cackle, even from theyr production, which answereth to the cries of children: and this is done without teaching, or any enfirmation, or fo much as example or imitation.

Man hath the like actions and reprefentations, euen as other creatures, fimply naturall of his owne, and without any of a science apprentiship. But the worde or Speech, or discipline. which is a voyce fignificatine, expressing the conceptions of a reasonable Soule : they proceede onely and wholly from a Science or Discipline, which is compre-

hended by the means of hearing. So that it is impossible, that any one being deafe, from his birth, and persenering in the fame deafenesse, should ever knowe how to speake, although that his tongue, and other parts thereto appointed, sare most exquifitely composed and ordayned, as none more formally can be any way de-What then shall wee say of him that

neuer heard any thing? Speech is a Dif cipline, no leffe then that of Mufick: both the one and the other, are apprehended by hearing. From whence it commeth, that a childe (in what place focuer it is nourished and brought vp) apprehend-

Speech is an comparable to Mulicke.

The mother tongue,or learned from the Mother.

guage (which some tearme Vernacle or Maternall) whatsoeuer it be, either Hebrew, Greeke, Latine or Barbarisme; one is as casic to him as another. For in hauing nothing by naturall impression, he is indifferent to all: like as the colour of white receiveth all other tinetures, and fome kinde of water all sauours; and so in the like comparisons.

Adam could never have spoken any That Adam naturall language of his owne, no more had neuer then we : but God inspired him with an fpoken of vnderstanding soule, capable of such a himfelte,or naturally. language as pleased him. As he did like-

wife to Eue; and their first children learned to speake by them, enen as ours now do of vs.

Heere wee are to know, that from the corruption of our first Parents transgression, we have and hold al our naturall conditions and inclinations, and namely, the very greatest imperfection Men natural.

that can be, of enclining more vnto cuill ly more en clined to cuill then good, more truely tearmed Original finne. But as concerning speech or speaking, we have it not but by apritude & hability, euen as all other disciplines or en-

ftructions.

That which is truely naturall of our foule, is enchased or carractred into abody of fuch quality, temperature and complection, as man ought to have for his perfection. For the fonde nicenesse of birth, is like the jufant in his first yeare, vnapt to reason, by the impersection of The vnarence his body, and likewife as they, who by accident of sicknesse, or passion of minde (as Loue and idle disturbances) become weakly braind, foolish, fortish, lunaticke, and mad. In all which imperfections, the foule is cuermore her owne, remai-

> not having the body at her command. Aristotle enstructeth (to fingular good purpose) That our (onle is ignorant of all things, and like wate a new Table, neatly po-Whed and prepared, wherein nothing hath bene depicted or engrauen, when it was infufed into the body of man, but fent downe from Heaven as we beleeve . Shee hath nothing but simplicity, sincerity, purity, facility and conveniencie, with inclination and aptitude to enery Arte and Science, and to all

ning still in her integrity : and yet(neuer-

thelesse) cannot exercise her reason, by

eth and retaineth the same vulgar Lan- | knowledge of things divine and humane (which is the true definition of Philoso- The true def. phy) Alwayes referred and excepted, nition of phi those faculties and actions, necessarily losophy conrequired in a living foule, as those in Soule. Beafts; which our foule exercifeth in the body from the very beginning, and before the infant is borne, without doctrine or discipline (as already hath beene rela-

Doctrine is not requifite in her, but for Artes and Sciences, having nothing in her, whatfoeuer divine Flato fayeth to The opinion the contrary, affirming; That the reasona- of Plato, qui ble soule hath knowledge of all things, when it commeth into the body: but beeing plunged and Submerged in the great humidity of ning the cape the body, it forgetteth all. Like to him foule. that becommeth oblinious, or (as they fay in Greek) ficke of a Lethargye, in regard of the Phlegmaticke humour which drowneth his braine. But afterward, in fuch measure, as the body loseth this great humidity, and drieth it felfe by little and little: the Soule also recouereth it selfe by paucity of degrees, and comprehendeth all things demonstrated and shewne vnto her, as in remembring and acknowledging her felfe, and not in learning any nouelties.

This was the opinion of good olde Plato, which maketh well for such as affirme, that wee haue fome certainty of from our full Language, which came from our first Parents A. Parents, Adam and Ene: and that wee dam & im. should (in time) speake thevery same, if the other, which wee ordinarily heare in our houses, did not preoccupate it. But in truth, our foule neyther knoweth, or The our foul holdeth (of it felfe) any Language, nor is affected or given to any one in particular: but enclineth equally, and is indif- naturally, ferent to all tongues, and in so good maner, as one hindereth not another, which (perhaps) a naturall tongue would, if it had any at all. At leastwife, some slippes or branches would be remembred thereof, as in fuch, that could not altogether forget the accents, or the prolations, with

mother-tongue. The reasonable soule then, having not any language of it felfe, is very proper and apt to comprehend, and well to expresse by found and entire instru-

fome certaine words and phrases of their

That the not of words

Chap. 7.

Arift.Probl.57

fpeake, how it is formed,

ments, all diversity of tongues. As it is recorded of King Mithridates, to have fo memory of King Mithrihappy a memory; that he could well and properly speake two and twenty divers

voice is onely dinature, and

By nature, we have no more simply then a voyce, common to all other creaone word. And in his Booke of the Sen- cap.t. tures that breathe, and different onely in ces, and their organs, where he maketh a them, by and according to their kindes. comparison of such as are blind and deafe For euery animall hath a proper voyce. borne, he faith, Desfe and dumbe are as acwhich groffely fignifieth his affections or cidents, which necessarily follow one another. passions: Which is no way knowne how to Also Alexander Aphrodifeus produceth in be expressed (laith Ammenus voon Aristo. his Problemes, that beeing demaunded, tle) or represented by letters or syllables, no why men borne deafe, should be dumbe more then the fundry murmures of the Sea. likewife : answereth familiarly . They can

What it is to

beginneth

and of the Windes. Euen fo, man in his never speake that which they never heard. prime or first moneths, when hee liueth

fimply as a beaft, hath nothing but a voice edy a voice. Onely, before he learnes to speake: wherof being depriued, he is faid to be dumb, although he hath not loft his voyce. Wherof Aristotle speaketh very notably in his Problems : That Man onely is dumbe.

Speech then is nothing elfe, but to For, I will not heere inferre, that some fashion and articulate the voice naturall, man may teach a Bird, to tune another by addition of a vocall conforance, in the Song beside her owne; and the enstructicomposing and enterlacing, for the exon of the dammes (both he and the) to pressing of fignificant words, which extheir yong ones. Whereby we may eafily

plicate, and (as a man may fay) do infancomprehend, that if Birds have one natutize and produce the conceptions of ma. rall fong (which is the voyce common to which are infinitely more divers, and in all their kinde) and another taught or apfarre greater number, then those of other prehended in time of continuing with Creatures, exempted of reason and distheir owne : that, they could not fo keepe

course. And therefore it greatly behoof and enioy, as if they had bin immediatly ueth, that a man should know extraordiseperated, and taken out of the neast. E. narily, how to diucrlifie his voice, for anfwering to that which the great capacity

of his spirit containeth. An infant collecteth and affembleth

diuers conceptions in his understanding, his owne naturall voyce, as at the instant rall voyce. How an infant and the words which he heareth (accomof his birth, and bringing into the world. panied with some actions) striue to make tic & attaine fignification of all: which he comprehendeth by little and little, and then retaineth by frequent reitteration. Afterward, whe of one and the same kinde, in divers places. his tongue is growne more firme and able; hee stringth to represent that which

Let the Partridge in fundry Countries ferue for example, having divers notes; for some he hath retained by imperfect fumbling, chucke or louke, and others clacker or chirpe. and at the ende of a little long apprenti-And there are divers (maller Birds, which (hip, speaketh like to a young Patrot, afchaunt no fuch notes as their Dams doe : but ter a long time spent in listening. For obeing taken out of their Nests, are quite châtherwise, as well the one as the other, would have but his branches or flippes, the tunes of other enstructed Birds, or of

which is the naturall voyce, without any other fignification, then of certaine affections or passions, as we have already said.

Lets now obserue that which Ariftotle Difference faith, in his Historie of Creatures. Those creatures which speake, have voyce also : but voyce and all such as have voyce, beake not. For, such speech. Arist in 4 lib. as are deaffe by nature, are also dumb: whereby they may yet render a voyce, but now peake

For better confirmation of this matter,

we must necessarily adde that which Ari-

fotle writeth in the same place before al-

ledged, concerning the Voyce, and the

finging of Birdes, which is in part fimply

The voice (faith Aristotle) difplaieth,

naturall, and in part of some intelligence is in part by and learning as his owne amongst them. apprehension or learning.

uen fo in like manner, an infant to be fre- A child withquented with all people that speake, and out teaching (by their meere conversation) instructed to speake, could have to fpeake; would elfe haue none other but but his natu-

what difference is faide to be among the lan- ariff in lib. 4. quages of Beasts & Birds, even among them de Animago,7

ged from paternall education: and folearne That Birds ucrs notes & mens voices: inuring themselves to their tunes one of notes, customes and manners. Sometime it another, behath beene observed in a Nightingale, that fides their

of Ariftotle. that the foule hath nothing of it felte, as concerning Sciences

The opinion

then good.

What is truly

the Soule.

their firft

yeares, & the

ing by passi-

minde.

roids.

taught her Isrgen to her young ones, and fo case them mutation to divers fongs. For, Beech cannot come of nature, as the voyce

doth : but is to be attained by study and difcipline. Thus you may perceive alfo, why men make wee of divers Languages, albeit they are like to one another in voice dec.

The conclusion,that men borne dumb, are deafe alf.

What diffe

rence there i

betweene the

focech at In

fants & that of Birds,

Mc-thinks this should sceme proofe enough, that speech is athing properly learned by the meanes of hearing, from whence it enfueth incuitably, that fuch as are deaffe borne, & they that never heard any speech (without being deaffe) are dumbe by consequent, except (by succesfion of time) they doe enjoy hearing, and their cares be vnftopt; as we have divers times observed, and made practise of, by children that have not spoken before seauen or eight yeares.

touch a point not impertinent toour pur- one of the faid portions may bee offended and pole, to wit: What difference there is in corrupted, without the other : it hapneth alfo, the fpeech, which an Infant learneth of himfelfe, from that of a Parrot, a Starling, a Pye,a Larke, a Linner, a Thrush, a Rauen, a laye, and such like, as they have learned. Very certaine it is, that as their foules are different, even fo is their Language : in regard that a childe vnderstanfo and fo, or better if hee could, to explicare and make his conceptions under-Hath not any intelligence, of the fignificaif a Bird demaund, or answere sometime (prouing to purpo(e) it is by hap or aduenture, and not ordinary; except it bee fuggefted remembred, or elfe expressely made to speake it.

in 10 Morcouer, a Bird will alwaies adde

forme croffe thwarting word or other,

which argueth fufficiently, that it hath

on it hath bin commonly faide, that who-

simple man may learne some folly, or vn-

fitting words in the Germaine, Polifb, or a-

ny other vnknowne tongueto him, and

ignorantly vieit as a falutation, and be

derided for his labour. like others, that

thinking to bee reputed learned, will vie

many Latine fentences and phrases, quite

contrary to their owne meaning in the

speaking.

Whatfocuer Bird practite, out any intel- not any in telligence at all. Whereupligence.

It remaineth now to know, feeing the naturall dumbe man is deaffe by confe- Thefecond quent : if likewise the man dumbe by na-whether the ture (by reason of some defect in his dombe man tongue, or in other parts requisite for by bind, is also deafeby (peaking) bee also deaffe consequently ? to deate by consequent. Lactantius Firmianus, in his Booke of the workes of God, would have it to bee fo: Lettan in Open. but being too groffe an Anatomist (as is Dall, 1, cap 7) easily comprehended by his reasons) hee is not in this point to be credited. Alexander Aphrodifeus, in the place before al- Alex Aphrodia ledged, Gemeth to fay no: but he buildeth the Prod. 133. vpon no good foundation, when he faith; That there is a paire of nerues, which come from the Braine, one portion whereof goeth to the tongue, and the other to the cares. And that by this means, the affections of the toong and of the eares, doe enfily communicate the-Now I come (in passing along) to selves together. Also, for a much as that that a man may become deaffe by some dif-

But his supposition holdeth no place in this point, no more then the reasons of Divers both fome moderne men ; following Pedro de nucient and Albano, tearmed the Peace-maker, faying: ters deceived That the fixt likeneffein the Nerues of the in this point. deth what he speaketh, and would speake Braine, which mooneth the tongue, is firmely allied to the fift likeneffe, which ferueth for hearing. For, as I will never grant, that stood: whereas on the contrary, a Bird defect of speech followeth deafenesse, by any confent or simpathy of the toong note well cion of whatfocuer it pratieth. So that, with the cares, but only through want of worth the ch enstruction, which should be received by feruing. the eares: fo can I not confent, that by the vice or incongruity of those parts dedicated to speaking, hearing should any way be offended.

eafe, and yet (on the contrary) not be dumbe.

In the ace also there is no likelyhood or coherece, confidering that those parts worke not; cyther for the integrity, nibt for the construction of the cares, & leffe for the enfirmation of hearing, who (for What the esfoeuerspeaketh, and knoweth not what he speaketh, prateth like a Parror. So a no more then the fight, or any of the extension of the collarly translations and the speaketh of the speaketh. teriour sences. And as for them, they require nothing elfe, but to be free and de pen, without any impeachment or him! derance, and that their object should bee neere, within a certaine distance. Why then, we fee and heare naturally, without any doctrine or discipline. Seeing then, that hearing neyther taketh or apprehendeth any thing of the verball infiruments,

Thethird arit enfueth.

In the voice of beafts, are ew or no let-

of speech.

nor of words themselues (as concerning | letters, expresse their passions (no other.) A childes her owne simple action to heare) he that sothing of the is dumbe from his birth, by the imperfection of his tongue, shall not be deafe in nents, nor of that respect : no more, then as if from a braue discoursing man, the toong should bee torne out of his head. And it hath bene commonly observed, that such as haue their tongues cut or flit, haue heard neuer a fot the leffe in that regard, neither found any defect in their hearing.

If it be true then, that the instruments of speech, conferre not nor communicate particularly with the earcs, and that fpeaking worketh nothing with hearing, as (on the contrary) hearing doth, and is neceffarie for speech; it ensueth plainely, that the dumbe by nature, shall never heare in that respect (supposing, that the organ of the eare or hearing, is no way therein interessed. And that the deafe by byrth, must be dumbe necessarily: although in his tongue, and those other parts, requi-The Authors lite for speech, there is not any defect at caucate, beepurpose, Ispeake of birth and of Nature, indifferently to Garife dumbe from the beginning. And I name

to speake. Let vs come now to the third point. From whence it proceedeth, that a man haning so prompt and able a spirite, that hee comprehendethall thinges in finall that man is at compasse of time; is yet (notwithstanding) fo flow and tardie, in knowing howe first so tardie to speak, and articulate his voice. Wheras on the contrarie, beafts & other creatures, immediately, or foone after theyr production, have their voice absolute &

the dumbe from byrth, not he that can-

not speake (for so wee should bee all

dumbe) but hee that is not any way apte

perfect, euen as well and fully, as euer they thall haue.

Aristotle in his Problemes, maketh bilimib. 11. answer heereto, faying; The voyce of man hath great diversities in it; other creatures expresse no Letters at all, or very fewe, (as two or three onely) and without Consonants, which joyned with Vowels, make the worde. Speech (faith he) is not foly and simply of the voice, but is perfected and accomplished of the affection or condition of the voyce, with signification : and the affections of the voice, they are the letters. Children therefore, before they know how, or can pronounce

wife then as beafts do) by a natural voice freech but and no way taught or cultructed, which many divertiis common to all infants, of any country lies and dithiwhatfocuer. But yet speech is different in Towns and Towns, nay, in one and the fame Towne or Citty, by reason of the voice artificially diffinguished, thorough the great diversity of letters coupled, and interlaced of infinite kinds; whereof pro- and Towne. ceedeth divers words, fignifying an infinity of things. Socing then that there are fo many manners or fathions of fpeaking, and that (of fine or fix letters) may bee made fifty feuerall words, and al differing the one from the other : wee may eafilie thereby understand, why an infant for- Concerning meth his voice so late, in regard of beasts, the voyce of beasts, who have their voices meerely simple, & dlex. Applied.

For whatfoener is extreamly divers, & must be diversified by many differeces; cannot bee attained in any fuortipace of time. Be it in regard of the fool, which ap- Things of exprehendeth the science of speaking; or be treme diversi it in the toong, which ought to expres it, tie craue time or their lear & requireth time alfo, both to break and lung. enable the words in their vttering, as we vie to fav of the hand, for inftruments of Musick. Wherupon he that is dumb, beginneth at the first to mumble and snaffle in the mouth, beeing not able to make a found of al the Letters, nor to pronounce words with any hability; onely by reason of the tongues foftnes, whereas her rudenesse requireth a new labour.

turall of all creatures.

There is another doubt vpon the fame purpose, which is much more vneasse to explicate, & Aristotle propoundeth it in Arift.inlib. 11. his Problemes. From whence it cometh that Prot. 27. Some infants begin to Speak before due age; to What is the whem commonly the words are formed, and reason, that after they have welexpressed som words, become dumb again, and return to the first con- their time, & dition, until the ordinary terme and time of afterward be-(keaking? Many have held this to be prodigious, & especially, when it is told them, that some haue spoke at the very point of their birth. Questionles, it is very rare, and hardly to be credited: and yet it may well happen by naturall reason, as thus. An infant, at the same instant it heareth, it vnder standeth, & then it may speake. But ordinarily hearing goeth far before vnderstading, & vnderstanding likewise precedeth Hhhh fpca-

culties in it.

(as Alexander Aphrodifeus fayth)moft na- 1.11, Prob 1 41

Of fuch in-

fants as foo-

neft practile to speake, and

An apt com-

pariton of fome conditi-

ons in out felues, answer

able to chil-

drens imper-

fections.

speaking: the instrument for speech and the little Language, which they had learwords, is not (as yet) of such temperature as is convenient for explicating those things which the spirit hath conceived. On the contrary, some speake much

fooner then they knowe how to vnderstand (as we have already saide of Parrats and other Birds that prattle) counterfeyting fuch words as they heare: vntill time convenient for them both, that is to fay,

ability to vinderstand and speake. Such children then, to whom the objectes of

hearing make much fooner impression in

the foule, then the instrument of Speech

knowes how to perfect: it happeneth to

derstood divers things, sodainly they pro nounce them. And especially after theyr

fleepe, when the spirits have made them-

felues more copious; they have the more

strength and impetuous vigour, to moue

the tongue in diftincter manner. But this

endureth not, neither can be of any long continuance; but the infant will returne

In like manner, fometimes wee shall

thinking thereon) words and fentences

things well knowne and familiar vnto vs .

Euen fo it may come to passe, that an in-

fant shall speak something, and afterward

condition: he becommeth dumbe, vntill

the vitermost time of his persection and

It is a contrary case, in an infant that

becommeth dumbe by deafeneffe, after

he hath spoken some gibbridge or prittle

prattle, yea spoken intelligibly; as we have

heard credibly reported, concerning all

the male children of M. Anthony Butin (2

famous Apothecary in Toloffa, dwelling

at the figne of the three Kings) fro which

his daughters were exempted. They all

spake, till about the age of foure years, &

afterward became deafe in fuch forte, as

they could not heare any noyle; and lo (by

little and little) ceafed to speake. This

hapned, in regard that their hearing con-

tinuing no longer, they did cafilic forget

of afterwards, them fometimes, that after they have vn-

to his first dumbnesse againe.

Butines children, who were verie rheumaticke. And so having no longer means of continuance, to apprehend and speake Languages, by hearing, they became dumbe. As any may foone one, who hath learned fome few French lote them by

or Dutch words, through want of continuing conference in those Languages, forgets the little he had before. Or hee that discontinueth his Grammer, or som other Science, or playing on Instruments

ned in their first yeares. As an infant (indeed) is very oblinious, by reason of his

great humidity: and particularly the faide

of Mulicke, eafily forgetteth all by want These and such like accidents hapning dayly, confirme our first proposition, in fauour whereof, we have thus largely dif-

couried. For, if one may become dumb, dumbe, by reason of deasenesse, which happeneth by accident, & after he could speak:who will make any doubt at all but that the deafe by birth, must needes be incuitably

I will adde heereto a very notable accident, which maketh fome-what so this haue forgot

finde our selves so disposed as (vvithout purpole: of fome, that by a Wounde or all things, and hurt, or some sickenesse beside of the their owne braine: haue wholly lost remembrance of will meerely flow in our mouths: whereof againe (at other times) we shall be so delayed and hindred, as wee can scarfely, all things yea euen of speech, which they learned againe by little and little, like as or with any easie possibility, expresse children do having hearing at their command, and the instruments of speech no way engaged. Graue men, and woorthie his tongue returning to the first ordinarie

of faith, doe testifie, to have seene some wounded in the head, from one fide to the other, and even in the eye (wherof M. Rondeletius relateth an History in his pra-Cife, and the appendix to the 21. Chapter) who forgot fo much as theyr owne

Names, and were faine to bee taught all things, even like yong children. So came they wholly to the first condition of an infant from birth: except vulgar fpeech. which yet some of them retained. But other impressions of their tongues became estranged, concerning Artes and Sciences learned before, and thinges which they had formerly both feene and knowne; all quite defaced out of their foules, by the inundation and rauine of

The End of the Ninth booke.

the hatme.

The warning given by No-ah of the vorlds vniue i feli destructi-

nby water.

Chap.r.

Cefara,who

ed in Irelad, nen, and fiftie

finnes; and hee prepared to builde the Arke, as thereby foreshewing to his kinffolke and friends, the vniuerfall Flood or Deluge that was to enfue, and wherewith the whole face of the earth should be coucred within few yeares, except amendment grew from them in short time; all which he did before the Flood, one hundred and fine and twenty years. But when enery man feemed to neglect his worthie admonitions ;a Neece to Noah, who was named Cefara, hearing this dreadful prophefic of her Vnckle, and doubting least it would come to paffe indeed, determined (with certaine friends of hers) to feek their fortune in some forraigne Region.

quently) vnfpotted with fine the generall lentence of Gods wrath would not there take effect. Hereupon, rigging a Nauy, shee committed her selfe to the seas, sayling foorth fil, til at length the arrived in Ireland, with three men only, and fifty women; having

Perswading her selfe, that if she could find

a Countrey neuer inhabited, and (confe-

ued from violence of the VVaters, have

beene seene of some, as they themselves

haue reported, but how truely I haue not

The Tenth Booke.

to fay.

CHAP. I.

Of the Kingdome of Ireland : The Antiquity Originall, and first Inhabitation there first fet foote on land, and where also she of actording to the confirmation of the best approxed Authors. The Shipping rivage or shore. The Stones, wherein the memory heereof was preser-



N the yeare of the world
1525, the holy Patriarch
Noah, began to admonth
the people, of vengeance
to follow, for their wicdeliues and deteffable

Within forty dayes after her comming on Landthere, the Vniuerfall Floude came, and ouer-flowed all that coaft, as well as the other parts of the worlde. But whereas this tale bewrayeth it felfe (too This tale can manifeftly) to bee an vntrueth, if time and other circumftances be thorowly examined; I will stand no longer about the proofe or disproofe thereof. Onely this is sufficient (I thinke) to bring it out of credite, to confider : that the Art of Na- Rab. Ifaac in uigation or fayling, was voknowne to the world, before the vniuerfall Deluge, and no part inhabited, except the continent of Syria, and thereabout. But to let passe such a forged fable, with the record thereof engrauen in a Stone,

(a deuice borrowed, as some think, from Anmun, 1557 Tofephus;) it shall bee sufficient for the After the best glory of the Irifh nation in their Antiquity, to graunt, that Ireland was discouered and peopled by forme of Noahs kindred e- tweene Nouen as the first Islands of the Worlde (if Babell, they wil needs have it fo, as the likelihood is great) according to y which is fee forth in their histories. When about 300 years after the generall floode, immediately vpon the confusion of Tongues; Iaphet Hhhh2

loft the refidue of her company, by miffortune of fundry shipwrackes, sustayned in that her long and troublesome voyage. The names of the men were thefe, Bithi, Bithi, Laigria, Laigria, and Fintan. The coast where shee

lyeth buried, was cald Aaniculare Littus, Naniculare

17 JUNE 1 556

not 100, be-

Of children becomming dumbe by

strength.

A rare exam ple of dumbBastolenus.

Clem.lib.4.

Cambreid.li

Languina,

10. Booke

and his posteritie (imboldened by Noahs example) aduentured by thip, to commit themselves to passe the seas, and to search out the vnknowne corners of the world, and so finding out divers Isles in the west parts of the world.

There was (fay they) in that retinue, Bartolenus e one of the same progeny named Bartolemus, or Baffolenus, who, encouraged with the late attempt and successe of Nimrod, kinseman to Ninus (then newly intruded vpon the Monarchy of Affyria) fearched so farre west intending to attaine to some gouernement, where he might rule without any partner in authoritie; till at the length, Fortune brought him and his peo-

ple yoon the coast of Ireland. Heere hee

fetled himfelfe with his three fonnes Lan-

guina, Salanus and Ruthurgus, right active Ruthurgus, the three fon and frout Gentlemen, who, fearthing the to Bartolenus. Land from fide to fide, and from end to end, left remembrances of their names, in certaine notable places, and named after them; as Languine, Stragruus & mount Salanga, fince named Saint Dominicks hill.

(pace(with many hands working at once)

Ruthurgi Sta

he ridde and made playne a great part of the Countrey, ouer-growne with woods and thickets. Thus became Ireland inhabited by this Ireland firft people, under the government of the inhabited. three Sonnes to Bartolenus, and their off-

fpring, for the space of three hundred yeares. Together with Bartolenus, arrived in Ireland certain vngodly people of Nim-Giants ariued rods race, woorthily tearmed Giants, as

common proportion of other men, and Bergion the fonne of Nep tune and bro. ther to Albion (as John Bale

in Ireland.

vsed their strength to gaine soueraigntie, and to oppresse the weake with rapine and violence. That linage (Chams brood) did grow, in short while, to great numbers, and alwaies endeuoured themselues (wherefocuer they came) to beare the querdlireland rule ouer others. One cause thereof was their bodily strength, answerable to their hugeneffe of flature; another, the examples of Cham or Zoroastres the Magitian, & Nimpod, grandfather to Nimm. Which like a fort of dead dogs; through the noy-two persons (in themselues and progenie) some stench whereof, such an infectious were renowned through the world as vi-Actions Princes, ruling ouer two mighty Kingdomes, Acgipt and Affyria. A third cause also there was , namely,

those that (in bodily shape) exceeded the

they repined at the bleffings bestowed on Sem and laphet, thinking it necessary to withfrand all lawfull rule and dominion : Enill example lest the curse of slavery (prophesied by are too quick Noah) (hould light vpon them, as at the lyfollowed,

length it did. Whereupon, rebelliously withdrawing their obedience, from their lawfull Gouernours heere in Ireland, and taking head; they fet vp a King of theyr owne fashion, and maintayning his estate to the oppression of the subjects, by bringing them into continual bondage . The Rebellions. fuccesse was variable on both sides, be- gainst Gouer tweene the lawfull Gouernours and these nours, vsurpers, with daily risings and skirmithes, so much to thegriefe of them, who

coueted to live in quiet order under their rightfull Princes: that they determined, with the chance of one generall battel, eyther wholie to subdue those prowd rebellious tyrants, or else, to end their liues in freedome, and so be rid of further misery. thy resolution

But first, whereas there had growne certayne debates and enmities amongest themselves, whereby they had weakened their owne forces; they held it not amisse, and Ruthurgus his Poole. Little is rememto make peace together, before they put bred of Bartolenus, fauing that in short their whole state in hazard of one battell against the Giants: concluding therefore an agreement, & ioyning in league (with

promife) to affift each other in fibdewing in weaken, the common enemy. Growing to affemble their power, out of all partes of the trongmen, land, and coming to joyne battel with the Giants; after they had fought fiercely together for the space of certayne houres: victorie enclined to the rightfull part, fo that the lawfull Kings preuayling against the viurping tyrants, great flaughter was made on the whole broode of that mif-

chieuous generation . For the Kings , Victory oue meaning to free themselues from all dan-ger in time to come, vsed their happy vi-chorie with too great crueltie, which after turned to their owne confusion. For, sparing neyther man, woman, nor childe that came in their way, for meere despite, & fuller fatisfying their intended reuenge; they vouchfafed not to bury the carkales

of their flaine enemies, but cast them out

pestilence ensued in all places, only thorow the ayres corruption, as few cleaped infeeding pe with life, belides fuch as got away by Sca. Bilence. And And hereby runnes a vaine tale among

Of Ireland.

ant lived, and

the Irifb, that one of the Giants named Ruanus, chancing to be preserved from this mortalitie, liued 2041 yeares, which is more then twife the age of Methufalem. By this man (fay they) Saint Patricke was informed, concerning the whole estate of the Countrey, and afterwards, (vppon request) having received Baptisme of the Nemodus, and named Gandius, Genandius,

fayd Saint Patricke : hee deceassed in the yeare after the birth of our Saujour foure hundred and thirty, as in the Irilb historie hath beene very vnaduifedly written. But. letting that passe, wee finde it recorded, That an infinite number of Giants were flayne and destroyed, in manner as bath

been already related : yet fome got them-

ner) left defolate; they waxed bolder, and

when they understoode how matters had

paffed: they fetled themfelues in the best

parts of the Countrey, eafily subdewing

the poore filly foules that remayned, and

left that faued felues into lurking Caues and Dens, and skeir lines in kept closely there, till lacke offood caused them to come foorth, and make shift for fustenance. When, perceiving no refistance, because the Land was (in a man-

> fo reuiuing their linage, they became lords of the whole Iland, keping the same in subjection, three score years together. Among the fons of Lapher, we reade in

Genefis 10,2 Genesis, that Magog was one, who planted his people in Scythia, neare Tanais, from thence, about the yere of the world, 20 17 Nemodus and Wemodus, with his foure fonnes, Starius, his foure forms Garbaneles, Anuinus and Fergusius Cap-Starius, Gar. baneles, Anu-inus, and Fer-gulius. taines ouer a faire companie of people)

> to feeke aduentures with them: at length they landed in Ireland, inhabited the Countrey, and multiplied the Land, although not without continuall warre, which they helde with the Giants two hundred and fixteene yeares. At the end

were fent into Ireland : who passing by

Grecia, and taking in fuch as were defirous

of which tearme, the Giants preuayling, chased them thence agayne, so that they returned into Syria. This was about the yeare after the Creation (as by their account it (hould (ceme) two thousand fine hundred thirtie three; from which time. the Giants kept possession of the Land

(without forraine inualion) till the yeare two thousand seauen hundred and foureteene. But yet all that time, they were not able to frame a Common-wealth : for, falling still at variance among themselves, | ing) grew after to be a senerall kingdome.

and measuring enery thing by might , feditiously they vexed one another.

Which comming to the knowledge of the Grecians, it mooned fine brethren, fonnes to one Dela (being notable Sea- The fonnes of men and skilfull Pilots) to rigge a Nauie, Dela, neere in linage to Ne. & to attempt the conquest of this Iland, modus, skilful These were all of the necrest posteritie to in Nauigation

Sagandus, Rutheranius and Slanius, When

within the Countrey foile.

foure brethren to a lowe ebbe : tooke on

him as chiefe aboue his other brethren.

intruding round about the Meare-middle

Stone, for the space of certayne miles,

which plot of ground (in time) obtayned

the privilege and name, of one intire part,

and now maketh up the number of fine

Cantreds comprehended 32. a peece : or

elfe, because it lyeth in the middest of the

land. This part Slanius joyned as a furplu-

fage (ouer and abone his inheritance) to

the Monarchy; which part (notwithstand-

Hhhh 3

all things were ready, and their companies affembled: they put to Sea, and lan- They paffe in-

ded at the length in Ireland; where find- to Iteland,& ing the power of the Giants greatly weak out the race ned, by their owne quarrells and civile of the Giants diffentions; with the more ease did they come to the end of their owne purpose, winning the whole Countrey, and veterly extirpating that bloodie generation. deadly enemies to mankinde: dividing also the Island into five parts, and in each of them they fenerally reigning. Furthermore, to fatisfie all fides, and anoyde contention; they concluded to fixe a

Meare-stone in the middle point of Ire- They divided land, to which each of their kingdomes the whole Ishould extend; fo that they might be equally partakers of the comodities found guifted by a meare flone. These brethren also are supposed, to

have invented the distribution of Shires into Cantreds, euery Cantred or Baron-

ny to containe one hundred towneships. At length, defire of foueraignetie, fet the Defire of Sofine brethten at variance, and greatly hindered their growing wealth. But Slanius, variance, getting the voper hand, and bringing his

parts (into which treland is favd to be diuided) and is called Meth , and in Latine Methor the Media; taking this name (as fome have middle part supposed)bicause (in respect of the other) how it attai

it contained but the moitie of Cantreds, ned that name viz. fixteene; whereas each of the other

Thirtic

Slanius dyed and was buried in a mountaine in Meth

they fay) beareth name after him. Then the Princes, subject to him, began to stomacke the matter, and denied their obedience to his successor: whereuppon enfued continuall Warres betweene them, which (in long time) could never be fully ceassed. In the necke of these troubles alfo, there arrived in Ireland a new Army of Scythians, who made claime vnto the

A.new Armic of Scyth ans Land (by a title of right) which they preariued in Iretended from their fore-father Nemodus: and so taking and making parts, they set all in fuch an vorore, that hauocke vvas made on each fide hoftilely, in most miserable manner. To be short, they spent themselues.

Brennus cald in purfuing one another with fuch outinto Ireland. rage: that they began to grow careleffe, to avde one part of the fawhat Nations or Soldiers they receyued ctious people.

to their ayde, either to keepe vp, or beate downe a fide. By which occasion, the Britaines also stept in among them, procuring Brennus, the brother of Belinus, to direct his course thither with the same Nauv, which he had made ready to paffe o-Segwine king uer int) Gallia, now called France, to the of the Allo.

ayde of Segwine, then King of the Allo-Lioges. broges, that inuaded the Countreyes of Sauoy and Daulphinou. But his enterprize into Ireland tooke finall effect, though there were other The Brittish

Kings of the Britaines, that got domini-Princes neue on there; infomuch that Gurewinting, or enjoyed the Gurguntius, the fonne of Belinus, accounquiet possessi on of Ireland ted Ireland (among other his dominions) to belong to him by lineall descent. Notwithstanding, the British Princes neuer enjoyed the quiet possession thereof, longer then they held it by maine force; but were often repelled, and put to the worfe with feeking after it, finding there little other gaine then stripes, whereof they carried away good store. But now to com to the Spaniards, that lastly (vnder the conduct of foure Captaines) paffed into Ireland, from Biscaye, and inhabited that Island: it shall not be impertinent (follo-

nation had their first beginning.

Thirty yeares the Monarchy yet conthe vniuerfall flood, 870. while the Ifraetinued in this order; but finally, Slanius lites ferued in Ægypt, Gathelus the fonne The history of one Nealus, a great Lord in Grecia, vp. of the Spaniards artical in Ireland, rain artical in departed this life, and was buryed in a Mountaine of Meth, which till nowe (as a number of his factious friends and ad- der the conherents. This noble Gentleman, beeing duct of four very wife, valiant, and well spoken : gotte honourable entertaine of Pharaoh, furnamed Orus. And afterward departing that Countrey, trauerfed the feas, and landing first in Portugall, after some bickerings with the inhabitants: at length, yet hee got (by their confent) a portion of the Countrey, lying by the bankes of the Riuer, anciently called Munda, and nowe Mondego, where (fhortly after) he began Munda,now to builde a Citty, first named Brachara, Mondego. but now Bar falo, as Hector Batim affir-

After this, when the people vnder Ga- falo. thelm began to encrease in power; thorough perswasion of the Spaniards theyr neighbours, they removed into Gallicia, where they also builded a Citty, named Brigantium, which is now called Coruna. Compostella Finally, when they grewe into fuch a of Gallicia in huge multitude, that Gallicin was not able Spaine.

to lustaine them; Gathelus, with a certain number of them, passed ouer into Ireland and there grewinto fuch estimation with Gathelus pasthe barbarous people, that for his know- feth into lieledge especially in Languages, hee was land, and in there highly honoured. For, he not onely enriched and beautified the Irish tongue: but enstructed them in letters also: he fought vp their Antiquities, and likewise practifed their youth in warlike exercises, after the manner of the Greekes and Egypti-

ans, from whence he was discended.

To conclude, hee was so acceptable and welcome to them, that (to gratifye fuch a worthy benefactor) they agreed to The names of call the Island Gathelia, and after his wife Ireland, and Scotia. This is one opinion, but yet incre- whereof they dible, not onely to Humfrey Lhuid, but al-fo to other learned men, and diligent ferchers of Antiquities: by reason of the sundry arguments of improbability, as well in the miscount of yeares, as other vnlikelyhoods found therein, when the circum stances come to be duly examined, thorowly weighed, and well confidered. Yet certaine it is, that Ireland was aunciently named Scotia, and the people Scots, as by

divers old writings it may be fufficiently

proued: albeit, by what occasion it took

Bracharano

Braga or Bar-

first that name, or from whence they Ire land was came, it is yet doubted. But to proceede anciently cal led Scotis. with the History, as we finde it. The refi-

Bayon builded by Gathe-lus his people

Chap.i.

due of Gathelus his people, which remayned in Spaine, founded the City of Bayon, in the Confines of Gascoigne, and replenished the Sea coastes of Spaine, with flore of inhabitants. And wel-neere about two hundred yeares, after their first arriuall there (when they were againe peftered with multitudes of people) they began to fancie a new voyage : but whether at that time, or fome other els, they croffed ouer into Ireland, is altogether vncer-Notwithstanding, sure it is, that in the

understanding that divers of the westerne

Isles were empty of inhabitants : assem-

bling a great company of men, women,

dayes of Gurgantius, King of the Britains, The gouernor the cheefe Gouernour of Bayon, with four of Bayon, and Brethren Spaniardes, two of which are foure breshe. faide to be Hiberus and Hermion , not the ren Spaniards trauelled to fonnes (as some thinke) of Gathelus (as feeke their Hector Batius affirmeth) but some other fortune a. perhaps, that were descended of him: who

and children, embarked with the fame in threescore great vesselles, and directing of his brethren, against Hermion and his their course Westwarde, houered a long Gurguntius

time on the Sea, about the Ifles of Orkeney. At length, they met (by good hap) with Gurguntius, then returning from the med Hibernia. Although fome are of opicoming from conquest of Denmarke (as in the Brittish history it apeareth) whom they befought of Denmarke in confideration of their want of victuals and other necessaries (being such, as they were no longer able to endure the Sea, name it more aptly after the speech of the being cumbred with fuch flore of women inhabitants, then others which callit Hiand children) to direct & appoint them berma. fome place, where they might inhabite : promiting to hold the fame of him, and to become liege-people to him and his taining thus to the Soueraignty, making No crime for heires for cuer. Gurguntius aduiting with himfelfe here-

on,remembred, with what troble he held

the Irifh in Subjection, & cocciuing hope

that these strangers might either subdue,

or wholy destroy that viruly generation;

accepted & took those oathes of the Spa-

niards with hostages, & furnishing them

& their ships, with all needful things; fet

them ouer into Ireland, where, affifted

with fuch Britaines as Gurguntius had ap-

pointed to go with them for their guides:

they made a conquest of the whole coun-

try,& fetled themselves joyfully therein.

Gurguntius ppointeth the Spaniardi feates in Ireland, to liuc

Subjection.

present)voide of all inhabitants : but yet The arrivall they agree, that these Spaniards were guided thither by the Britains, & under fuch and their conconditions as before is recited. Whereby quest there. it appeareth, that the kings of Britain had Geffrey Mon. an elder right to the realm of Ireland, then by the conquest of K. Henry 2 which title they euer maintained, & fometimes preuailed in pursuit thereof, as in the daies of K. Arthur, to whom the Irith (as in divers histories is remembred) acknowledged

Some write, that Ireland was (before that)

their due subiection, with paimet of their Atthur, and tribute, & making their appearance at the payedhim west Chester.

city, called in the British toong, Caer Lheon. Wherunto, when their free affent, the fubmiffion of their Princes, with lawfull conqueit & prescription are annexed; an invincible title must needs be enforced. But now to our purpofe. The Spaniards substantially affisted with the Britains, fetled themselues, and divided their seats in

wherewith the land abounded & fo those

Authors of Antiquity, which call it terna,

Proceede wee now to Hermion, who

to anoyde the ill opinion of men, by at-

he was from all defire to rule alone: hee

appointed certaine Captaines, as Kings,

to rule (vnder him) fenerall Countreyes:

referring to himfelfe but one fourth part,

and the portion of Meth, allotted to the

Monarchy, for the better maintenance

of his cftare.

led themselues, and divided their seats in between ethe quarters; the source Brethren reigning se-Diffention uerally apart in findry portions, with good fuch are the quietnesse and encrease of wealth: vntill bitton. pride & ambition armed two of them, against the other two; as Hiberus and one

Brother. In this diffention, Hermion flewe his brother Hiberus: of whom, at the fame Hibernio,aftime(as some hold) the countrey was nafome imaginion, that it tooke name of Iron, by plentifull Mines of that kinde of Mettall.

his way through his brothers blood most detestable, unnaturally, and in an vnhappie Civill-Warre: purged himfelte to his fubicels, a colourable that neyther maliciously, nor contentioufly, but for his necessarie defence and fafety, hee had borne Armes agaynst his brethren. And to witnesse, how farre

Thefe

wing the order observed) to speake somwhat of their originall, that it may the better appeare, from whence the Irishe

In the years of the world, 2436. after

Ireland divi ded into frue Kingdomes: ouer the reft.

These parts appointed foorth in this wife, at length grew to flue Kingdomes, Leinster, Connaght, VIster, and Mounster divided into two parts, and sometime to raigne Ruier more, by viurping or compounding among theinfelues: but euer, one was chosen to bee chiefe soueraigne Monarch ouer them all. Thus it seemeth certainly, that the Spaniards of the North parts of Spaine, inhabiting about the Countries of Biscase and Gallicia, came and peopled Ire-Lind (as both their owne Histories, & the British do agree wholly)but from whence they came first, to inhabite those Countries of Spain, cannot by me be auduched. For no other Writers (but such as haue registred the Scottish Chronicles) make mention of Gathelia his coming thither, with Scota his Wife, and their people, as by the faid Chronicles is pretended.

An hundred and thirty Kings from Hermion to Laogirius.

arriued in

Ireland.

are reckoned of this Nation, from Hermion to Laugirius, the sonne of Nealus Magnus; in whose time, that holy effecmed man, S. Patricke converted them to Christianity. But now, while the Irishmen lived in some tollerable rest & order, vnder their feuerall Kings; one Rodoricke,2 Scythian Prince (with a small company of men, being weather-driven about the Coasts of Britaine) was by chaunce cast vpon the shore of Ireland. These were Picts, and the very first sthat had bin heard off in those parts (as some good Authors haue recorded)a people (euen from their cradle) naturally addicted to contention, land-leapers, mercileffe, fierce and hardy. They being brought & presented to the Irifb King, defired Interpretors; which being granted them; Rodorick their chiefe Commander and Leader, made this re-

An hundred and thirty cheefe Kings

The Oration of Roderick, King of the Picts, to the King of Ireland.

quest for him and his, as followeth.



Ot as degenerate, or falling from the courage of our Ancestours, but fashioning our felues to Fortunes courfe; Science to Fortumes with the of week

Ireland (as humble Suppliants) who never before this prefent, have embased our selues | those few new commers, beeing placed a-

to any other Nation. Behold Sir King , and regard vs well: no light occasion causeth Dreadlesse he thele lustie bodies to stoope. Scythians delivereth of we are, and Picts of Scythia; no small portion of glory remaineth in thefe two names. what manner What shall I speake of the civil warre, that the Country, hath expelled vs from our native homes, or rip up olde Histories, to moone strangers to bemoane us? Let our sernants and children discourse thereof at leisure. Our in-Stant motion is, to grant ws some time of abode in your Land, for which effect & purpole, our vrgent necessity befeecheth your fanour : A King, of a King, and men of men, are to crave af sistance.

Princes can well discerne and consider. how neere it touchesh their honour and reputation, yea, and their owne (urety, to uphold, how to lucand releeve the state of a King, decayed by cour and retreason. And manifest it is to all men of nothers di real onable confideration, that nothing more ficile. befeemeth the nature of men, then to be moued with compa(sion : yea, euen (as it were) to feele themselves hurt, when they heare and understand of other mens calamities. Admit then (we befeech you) and receive among yee, thefe few scattered remnants of Scythians. If your roomes be narrow, we are not many : If the Soile of your Country be barren, we are borne and inured to hardnesse: If you live in peace, wee are at your command as Subjects: If you warre, we are ready to ferue you as Soldiors. We demaund no King dome, no State, no pompeous triumph hewes of in Ireland. We are heere alone, and have left great humis (uch vanities behinde vs with our enemies. How foeuer you esteeme of vs, we shall content our felues therewith and learne to frame our likings to yours: as calling unto minde, what we have bene not what we are.

Great confultation was had about the request of these strangers, & many things | In doubtfull debated to and tro . In conclusion, the wayes good It for gaue foorth for answer, the opinion of confult with deliberation & adults the adults adults adults the state of the in olde Historic , & graue fayings of their Elders. Whereby they gathered, that it could not be expenient for the, to accept the Scythians into their Land; because commixtue of Nations in any Realme, bringeth quarrels. Moreover, the multitude of their owne Inhabitantants was fuch, that roome in the whole Isle was fearle able to receive them : and therfore

Princes can

Marius, other-

King of the Britaines flew

king Roderick

Corned to

marry their

daughter

wife called

Arniragus

Chap.1.

mong fo many auncient Inhabitants, might quickly breed disturbance to bring all out of ioynt, neuertheleffe, they returned them this answer.

The Answere of the Irish King, to the Oration made by King Rodericke.

TE haue considered on your request

as also those extremities ordging thereto: And though we may not (conueni-Wifemen prevent their ently) receive you among vs; yet shall you mne perils finde vs ready in furthering ye to our neighby putting bours. Not farre hence lyeth the great Isle to the Irith of Britaine, in the North-part whereof (beperswaded ing voide of Inhabitants) your manhood and the Picts to place thempollicie may purchase roome, toplace your selues at your ease. We shall appoint Caplelues in Brittaines to guide you thither, and wee shall asfift yee with our Forces in that Countrey. Make ready your Shippes, that you may paffe

thither with all convenient (beed.

Encouraged by this perswasion, they tooke their course towards the North parts of Britaine, now called Scotland where (contrary to their expectation) Marius, King of Britaine, was ready to awaite their comming, and with tharpe battaile vanquishing them in field, slewe Rodericke, with a great number of his followers. Those that escaped with life,& fought vnto him for grace; he licenfed to inhabite the vetermost ende of Scotland.

the same, whom the Romaine Writers name Aruiragus, who reigned about the yeare of our Lord, scuenty : A Prince of noble courage, and of no final estimation in his dayes, as appeareth by that which is written of him. His right name (as the (aid Lhuid anoucheth) was Meurig.

This Marius, Humfrey Lhuid taketh to be

But now concerning the Pists, whether those that escaped with life, got the Seas by King Meurigs graunt, or getting to their Ships, with-drew into the Isle of Orkency, is doubtfull. Wines also they wanted to encrease their issue, & because The Britaines the Britaines thought fcome to match their daughters, with fuch an voknowne and new come Nation: the Piets contiwith the Pies nued, their first acquaintance with the I-

rifb, and (by entreaty) obtained Wines from them, with condition, that if the Picts marry Crowne should hap to fall in contention, with the trith they should yeelde thus much to the pre- and couchant rogatiue of the woman: that the Prince of their kings should bee elected rather of the blood Royall of the Female kinde, then of the Male. Which order (faith Beda) the Piets were very well knowne to keepe vnto his

Heere I could enter into a long, various and friuilous discourse, concerning great combustions, warres and bloody contentions, happening (for a very long time) betweene the Irifb, Picts and Scots: but beeing impertinent to my intended purpose, and little beneficiall to the Reader, I will first describe the parts and diuisions of treland into Shires and Countries, and then proceed to shew, how it

receiued the Christian faith at the first. Ireland became divided into foure Regions; Leinster Eaft; Connaght Weft; Vister North ; Mounster South : And into a fift plot, defalked from enery fourth part, yet mearing on each part, called

thereof Media, Meeth, comprizing as well East Meeth, as West Meeth. Leinster butteth voon England; VISter vpon the Scot- Hukonia. tifb Islands, which face with the Hebriades, 4 Momonia scattered betweene both the Realmes: West Meeth wherein (at this day) the Irifh Scot, Suc- & East Meeth ceffour of the elder Scythian, Pict or Red. Hebriades. shanke dwelleth. Each of these fine, where they are frame-able to civility, & answer the Writs of the Princes Courts; are fundred into Shires or Counties in this

In Leinster lyeth the Counties of Dublyn, Kildare, Weiseford or Gueisford, The Shires & Catherlach, Kilkenny, the Counties of licland, Leife and Ophalie, called the Kings and Leinfter, Queenes Counties: these two were so named by Parliament, in the Reignes of Phillip and Mary, having Shire-Townes concordant, as Phillips Towne, and Mary-Bourgh.

Connaght hath the County Clare.

Vister, the Counties of Louth, Donne, Vifer. Antrim, one moity of the Towne of Droghedagh (for the reft is in Atceth) and Carreefergus.

In Mounster lye the Counties of waterford, Limerike, Corke, the County Pa- how danded lantine of Topperary, Kerie, & the Croffe in elder time. of Tipperarie. In elder time, Mounster

Legenia.

Connaghe.

Mounster, and

Another divi fion of Ire-

English Pale

and the Irish-

The empay-

ring of the English Pale

was divided into East Mouniter, Ormand, | civility engrafted, good lawes establisht. West Mounster, Desmond, South Mounfter, and Toonemound . Now the reason why Ireland was thus divided, you have heard already, by the fine brethren arriuing there, valiant and Martiall Gentlemen ; Gandius, Genandius, Sagundus, otherwise named Gangandus, Rutheragus or Rutheranus and Slanius.

Ireland, into the English Pale, and Irishry. For whe Ireland was subdued by the Englifb, divers of the Conquerours planted themselves neere vnto Dublin, and the confines thereto adioyning, and so enclofing and impaling themselues (as it were) within certaine lists and territories; they forced away the Irilb. Infomuch, as that Country became meere English, and therof it was tearmed the English Pale : which (in ancient time) stretched from Dundalk to Catherlagh or Kilkenny. But afterward. what by the flackneffe of Marchers, and encroching of the Irifh enemy; the scope of the English Pale became greatly impaired, being cramperned and caught into

and civilest foyles in Ireland. But Fin-

gall especially (from time to time) was

alwayes to addicted to the chiefepoints

of husbandry; as that they became nick-

named by their neighbors (for their con-

tinuall drudgery) Collonnes, of the La-

lifb word Clowne, seemeth to be answe-

English, the race or sept of the English or

strangers, because they were soly seized

of that part of the Island, gryping with

their Talents that warme nell fo firmely;

that from the Conquest, to this day, the

Irifh enemy could not rouze the thence.

The Inhabitants of the English Pale, haue

beene (in olde time) to much addicted to

their ciunity, and so farre sequestred from

barbatous fauagenesse; that their onely

mother tongue was English. And truely,

fo long as thefe impaled dwellers, did fun-

grage) from the rude Iri/h: rudenesse was

The word Fingall counternaileth in

Fingall excel led in hus bandry.

Fingal clowns tine word Coloni, wherunto the clipt Eng-

Fingelf, and why it was fo named.

The great ciuility in anci-ent times a. der themselves (aswell in land, as in lan-

lovalty observed rebellion suppressed, & in the ende, the coine of a young England was like to shoote in Ireland. But when their posterity became not altogether so wary in keeping, as their Ancestors were valiant in conquering; the Irifh language The Irifh La became free-dennized in the English Pale. This canker tooke such deepe roote, that dennized in the English There was also another division of the body, which before was whole and Pale. found: became festered by little and little, and (in a manner) wholly putrified. And not only this parcel of Ireland grew to that civility; but Vister also, and the greater part of Mounster. Albeit of all other places, weifeford, with the territory baied, and perclosed within the River cal- list. led the Pill, was fo quite estranged from Irifbry (which was rare in those dayes) that if a trausiler of the Irifb, had pitcht his foote within the Pill, and fooken Irifb: the Weisfordians would command him forthwith, to turne the other ende of his tongue, and speake English, or else to bring his Trouchman with him. But afterward, they so acquainted themselues with the Irib, making a mingle-mangle an odde corner of the Country, named Finzall, with a parcell of Meeth the Kings of both languages, that (commonly) the Inhabitants of the meaner fort, grew to Land the Countries of Kildare & Louth, which parts were applyed cheefely with | speake neither good English nor good Igood husbandry, and taken for the richest rifb.

Wee come now to declare, in what manner Ireland came to receive the chriftian faith : And finde, that immediately the Christian after Christs time, Saint lames the Apo-file & other, trauailing into these West parts; did first enstruct the Irifh people, and teach them the glad tydings of the Gospel. So that divers among them, even then were christened, and beleeved: but not in fuch numbers (as may be thought) wherby it should be faid, that the Country was generally converted. Notwithstanding, the Scottill Chronicles doe awouch, that in the dayes of Fincomarke King of Sco their King, who departed this life in the land.

converted to the faith, by this meanes. A woman of the Pittifh blood (fay A Pidish we they) chanced in those dayes to scrue the man connect Queene of Ireland; which woman her- tedthe quee felle beeing a Christian, first enstructed the saith. her Queene and Mittreffe, in the faith & true points of Christianity, & the Queen her Husband the King, who converted day by day supplanted in the Country, the whole Irish Nation. Howbeit, by the

yeare of our Redemptio, 358, Ireland was

Pincomarke

of the Irish Writers themselves, this

The herelie of Pelagius had tour decai d Christian faith in the west parts of

Weiseford

o Ireland, and The River Pil

Patricke fent nto Ireland, and Paladius should not feeme altogether true. For they affirmed, that their Country was rather still esteemed as one of the vnthristned Isles, till about the yeare of our Lord, foure hundred twenty and fixe:

when Celestine, the first of that name, gouernd the See of Rome, who, on conference had with his Cleargie, touching the restoring of the Christian faith in the West parts of the world (greatly there decayed

by the herefie of Pelagius Junderstood that Ireland also, by reason of distance from the heart of Christendome, and rudenesse of the Nation; had received little fruit at all of true Religion, a thing much to bee lamented.

Among other, that then were affem-Paladiusmade tine, that famous Bishoppe of Tours in offer to go in bled to treate of those matters, was one France. Patricke (of a childe) was brought Paladins, Arch deacon of Rome, who offered his charitable trauaile, towardes the faith, beeing much given to devotion. couerfion of those lands, whither it shold

pleafe them to appoynt him to goe . Celestine knowing the sufficiecie of the man, confecrated him Bishop, authorized his lourney by Letters under his Scale, furnithed his wants, and affociating to him, fuch religious persons and others, as were

along the shore, and would leade away the Inhabitants captine homeinto their thought necessary to affist him : deliuered vnto him the Bible with great solemnitie, and other monuments, in furtherance of his good speede, for so long and tedious a journey.

At length hee landed in the North of

Iraland, from whence he hardly escaped

nouh of Ire-land, and cor (with life) into the Islesadiouning, where he found in a clod of earth, that the swine he preached the Gospell, and converted no finall number of Scots to the Christian had newly turned up, as he followed the faith and beleefe; purging also that part in the time of his captiuity, beeing appointed (by his Master) to take chargetof which was chriftened, from the infection them, and keepe them. of the Pelagians, as in the Scottish historie more at large appeareth. He was required by the Scots, that dwelt in Britaine, to leave the Isles, and come over to them, Britaine requi

it the compa there to enftruct the people in the way of by of Paladius true faluation : to the which (with the Popes licence) he feemd willing enough. And the bishop of Rome, the more readily condificended thereto, because at that instant time, when Paladius was to depart: one Paricke attended at Rome, fuing for licence to be fent into Ireland.

The Pope therefore graunted, that Paladius might paffe ouer to the Scottes in Britaine, and appoynted Patricke to goe (with authoritic from him) into Ireland,

where, vpon his arrivall, hee found the people so well bent to heare his admonitions (contrary to their accustomed forwardnesse) that a man would have imagined , vpon fight of their readinesse ; that The toward. the Land had beene referred for him to helfe of the t

(by following our Author herein) to touch

This Patricke, in Latine called Patrici-

w, was borne in the Marches betweene

name was likewise called Calphurnius, a

Deacon, and fonne to a Priest: his Mo-

ther, named Conches, was fifter to S. Mar-

vp in learning, and well enftructed in the

fome Scots and Piets, were become arch-

the Coasts of Britaine, and vsed to sacke

little fmall Villages, that lay featteringly

tooke himfelfe to contemplation, ever la-

menting the lacke of grace and trueth in

that Land. And withall not despairing,

but that (in continuance of time) fome

good might be wrought vpon them; hee

learned the Language perfectly. And,

fome part of the course of his life.

convert. And because it pleased God, to heare Patr eks bestow such an universall benefite on the preaching. Land, by his meanes; wee thought good

England and Scotland, in a Towne by the In what place Sea fide , named Eiburne , whose fathers Saint Patricke

The Irishmen (in those daies) affished with The life of S couried brief Pirats, greatly disquieting the Seas about lie.

Country. And as it channeed, Patricke Saint Patricke being a Lad of fixteene yeares olde, and taken prifones

a Scholler then in feculer learning: was when he was taken among other, and became flaue to he redesmed an Irifb Lord called Machusine, from who himfelfe. (after the terme of fixe yeares) he redeemed himfelfe, with a piece of gold, which

And as affliction (commonly) maketh men religious; the regard of his former Affliction is education, had stamped in him such re- an especiall morfe and humility, that beeing thencemake men be foorth weared from the world; heebecom religious

alluring one of that Nation, to beare him The pattage

company for exercise sake; hee departed Fraunce. thence, and got him into France, ener hauing in his minde, a defire to fee the conwas divided into East Mouniter, Ormand, | civility engrafted, good lawes establishes West Mounster, Desmond, South Mounfter, and Toonemound. Now the reason why Ireland was thus divided, you have heard already, by the fine brethren arriuing there, valiant and Martiall Gentlemen ; Gandius, Genandius, Sagundus, otherwise named Gangandus Rutheragus or Rutheranus and Slanius.

There was also another division of Ireland, into the English Pale, and Irishry. Another divi fion of Ire-For whe Ireland was subdued by the England into the lifb, divers of the Conquerours planted themselves neere vnto Dublin, and the and the Irificonfines thereto adioyning, and fo enclo-

fing and impaling themselues (as it were) within certaine lifts and territories; they forced away the Irifb. Infomuch, as that Country became meere English, and therof it was tearmed the English Pale : which (in ancient time) stretched from Dundalk to Catherlagh or Kilkenny. But afterward, what by the flackneffe of Marchers, and The empayencroching of the Irifh enemy; the scope ring of the English Pale of the English Pale became greatly impaired, being cramperned and caught into an odde corner of the Country, named Fingall, with a parcell of Meeth the Kings Land the Countries of Kildare & Louth. which parts were applyed cheefely with good husbandry, and taken for the richest and civilest foyles in Ireland. But Fingall especially (from time to time) was Fingall excel alwayes to addicted to the chiefe points

ulb word Clowne, feemeth to be answe-

English, the race or lept of the English or

beene (in olde time) fo much addicted to

their contity, and fo farre fequestred from

barbarous fauagenesse; that their onely

mother tongue was English. And truely.

fo long as thefe impaled dwellers, did fun-

der themselves (aswell in land, as in lan-

The word Fingall counternaileth in

led in husbandıy. of husbandry; as that they became nicknamed by their neighbors (for their continuall drudgery) Collonnes, of the Latine word Coloni, wherunto the clipt Eng-Pingal clowns

Fingelf,and

strangers, because they were soly seized of that part of the Island, gryping with their Talents that warme nell fo firmely; thar from the Conquest, to this day, the Irifh enemy could not rouze the thence.

The great ciuility in anci ent times a. puled dwelloyalty observed, rebellion suppressed, & in the ende, the coine of a young England was like to shoote in Ireland. But when their posterity became not altogether so wary in keeping, as their Ancestors were valiant in conquering; the Irifb language The Irifb Li. became free dennized in the English Pale, guage free the body, which before was whole and Pale. found: became festered by little and little, and (in a manner) wholly putrified. And not only this parcel of Ireland grew to that civility; but VISTer also, and the greater part of Mounster. Albeit, of all other places, weifeford, with the territory baied, and perclosed within the River called the Pill, was fo quite estranged from Irishry (which was rare in those dayes) that if a travailer of the Irifb, had pitcht his foote within the Pill, and fpoken Irilb: the Weisfordians would command him forthwith, to turne the other ende of his tongue, and speake English, or else to bring his Trouchman with him. But afterward, they so acquainted themselues with the Irib, making a mingle-mangle of both languages, that (commonly) the Inhabitants of the meaner fort, grew to speake neither good English nor good I-

manner Ireland came to receive the chri- fruited in ftian faith : And finde, that immediately the Christian after Christs time, Saint James the Apo- faith by Sain file & other, trauailing into these West poste. parts; did first enstruct the Irilb people, and teach them the glad tydings of the Gospel. So that divers among them even then were christened, and beleeved: but not in fuch numbers (as may be thought) wherby it should be faid, that the Country was generally converted. Notwithstanding, the Scottish Chronicles doe auouch, that in the dayes of Fincomarke King of Sco their King, who departed this life in the land. yeare of our Redemptio, 358, Ireland was

The Inhabitants of the English Pale, have | converted to the faith, by this meanes. A woman of the Pictiff blood (fay they) chanced in those dayes to serue the Queenc of Ireland; which woman herfelle beeing a Christian, first enstructed the faith. her Queene and Millreffe, in the faith & true points of Christianity, & the Queen goage) from the rude Irillo: rudeneffe was her Flusband the King, who concerted day by day supplanted in the Country, the whole Irish Nation. Howbeit, by the

This canker tooke fuch deepe roote, that dennized in

Wee come now to declare, in what

The River Pil

A Piclift wo

of the Irifk Writers themselues, this where, vpon his arrivall, hee found the should not seeme altogether true.

The herefie of clagius had taile decai d Chriftian faith in the weft parts of

Chap. 1.

For they affirmed, that their Country was rather still esteemed as one of the vnchristned Isles, till about the yeare of our Lord, foure hundred twenty and fixe: when Celestine, the first of that name, gouernd the See of Rome, who, on conference had with his Cleargie, touching the restoring of the Christian faith in the West (by following our Author herein) to touch parts of the world (greatly there decayed by the herefie of Pelagius) understood that Ireland also, by reason of distance from

the heart of Christendome, and rudenesse

of the Nation; had received little fruit at

all of true Religion, a thing much to bee

Among other, that then were affem-

Paladiusmade offer to go into Ireland, and therupon was

lamented.

bled to treate of those matters, was one Paladius, Arch-deacon of Rome, who offered his charitable trauaile, towardes the couerfion of those lands, whither it shold pleafe them to appoynt him to goe . Celestine knowing the sufficiecie of the man, confecrated him Bishop, authorized his lourney by Letters under his Scale, furnifhed his wants, and affociating to him, fuch religious persons and others, as were thought necessary to affish him : delinered vnto him the Bible with great folemnitie, and other monuments, in furtherance of his good speede, for so long and tedious a lourney. At length hee landed in the North of

Ireland, from whence he hardly escaped

quired by the Scots, that dwelt in Britaine,

And the biftion of Rome, the more readily

condificended thereto, because at that in-

frant time, when Paladius was to depart:

(with life) into the Iflesadjoyning, where he preached the Gospell, and converted no finall number of Scots to the Christian faith and beleefe; purging also that part which was christened, from the infection of the Pelagians, as in the Scottish historiemore at large appeareth. He was re-

to leave the Isles, and come over to them, there to enfirmed the people in the way of ay of Paladina true faluation : to the which (with the Popes licence) he feemd willing enough.

Paladius Ian-

ded in the

north of Ire-

and, and con

into Ireland, and Paladius

one Patricke attended at Rome, fuing for licence to be fent into Ireland. The Pope therefore graunted, that Paladius might passe ouer to the Scottes in Britaine, and appoynted Patricke to goe (with authoritic from him) into Ireland,

people so well bent to heare his admonitions (contrary to their accustomed forwardnesse) that a man would have imagined , vpon fight of their readinesse; that The toward. the Land had beene reserved for him to tish men to convert. And because it pleased God, to heare Patr ets bestow such an universall benefite on the preaching. Land, by his meanes; weethought good

This Patricke , in Latine called Patrici-

Deacon, and fonne to a Priest: his Mo-

ther, named Conches, was fifter to S. Mar-

tine, that famous Bishoppe of Tours in

France. Patricke (of a childe) was brought

vp in learning, and well enftructed in the

faith, beeing much given to denotion.

The Irifhmen (in those daies) affisted with

fome Scots and Piets, were become arch-

the Coasts of Britaine, and vsed to facke

little small Villages, that lay scatteringly

And as affliction (commonly) maketh

education, had stamped in him such re-

tooke himfelieto contemplation, ener la-

menting the lacke of grace and trueth in

that Land. And withall not despairing,

but that (in continuance of time) fome

good might be wrought vpon them; hee

learned the Language perfectly. And,

thence, and got him into France, ener ha-

them, and keepe them.

some part of the course of his life.

m, was borne in the Marches betweene England and Scotland, in a Towne by the In what place Sea fide , named Eiburne , whose fathers Saint Patricke

name was likewise called Calphurnius, a wasborne,

Pirats, greatly disquicting the Seas about lie.

along the thore, and would leade away the Inhabitants captine home into their Country. And as it channeed, Patricke Saint Patricke being a Lad of fixteene yeares olde, and a Scholler then in feculer learning: was taken among other, and became flaue to he redeemed an Lifb Lord called Machusine, from who himselfe. (after the terme of fixe yeares) he redecmed himfelte, with a piece of gold, which he found in a clod of earth, that the fwine had newly turned up, as he followed the in the time of his captiuity, beeing appointed (by his Matter) to take charge of

men religious, the regard of his former Affliction is morfe and humility, that beeing thence-meanes to foorth weared from the world : hee be- com religious

alluring one of that Nation, to beare him The pattage company for exercise sake; hee departed Fraunce.

uing in his minde, a defire to fee the conucrtion Sain: Patricke placed in feruice with Gerof Auxerre.

He went to Rome, highly commended to pope Cele-

Patricke inue ft-d Archbift of Ireland.

reverently re-

Albius an Irifh l ithop disciple to Paladius.

great monark of Ireland, per rifhmen wbecome christiás

uersion of the Irish people, whose babes yet vnborne, feemed to him in his dreaming, from forth theyr mothers wombs, to call for Christendome.

In this purpose, he sought out his vnkle Martine, by whose meanes he was placed with Germanus the Bish. of Auxerre, continuing with him as Scholler or Difmanus Bithop ciple for the space of fourtie yeares : all which time hee bestowed in the studie of holy Scriptures, Prayers, and fuch godly exercifes. Afterwards, beeing renowned through the Latine Church, for his wifedome, vertue and learning : hee went to Rome, bearing Letters with him in his commendation from the French bishops vnto Pope Celestine, to whom hee vttered his whole minde and fecret vow, which long before hee had conceined as touching Ireland. Celestine inuested him Arch-

bishop and Primate of the whole Mand,

fer him forward with al fattor he could de-

uife, bringing him and his disciples on-

ward to their Countrey.

In the 23 years of the Emperour Theodofius the yonger, being the yeare of our Lord, 430. Patricke landed in Ireland, and Patricke verie bicause he spake the tongue perfectly, and withall being a reucrend personage in the people in Ire-land. eare to his preaching. And the rather, because (as some VV riters have recorded) he confirmed his Doctrine with diverse miracles. But especially those men regarded his words before all others, that had some rafte of the Christian Faith before, eyther by the comming into those partes of Paladius and his Disciple one Albius, an Irifh Bishop, or otherwise by some other. For, it is to be thought, that continually there remained fome spark of knowledge of Christianity, cuer fince the first preaching of the Gospell, which was shortly after Christs Ascention, by S. lames as before is mentioned. But in continuance of time , Patricke wonne the better part of

Laigerius fon that kingdome to the faith of Christ. Lai gerius son to Nealus the great Monarch, albeit he received not the Gospell himfelfe; yet he permitted all that would from God accordingly, but yet tempered with mercy and indgement, as thus: That during his life he should be vill orious : but | Cittie hath (in elder times) beene go-

after him, neither should the kingdome stand, nor his linage inherit. Thence he tooke his way to Conill, lord of Connach, who ho- Conill Lord norably received him, and was converted of Connagh with all his people: fending him afterward to his brother Logan, king of Leinster, who Logan Kinger he also connerted. In Mounster he found great frendship, by the means of an Earle there , called the Earle of Daris, who ho- The Earle of nored him highly, & gaue him a dwelling Daris. place in the East Angle of Armagh, called Sorta, where he creeted many Celles and Monasteries, both for religious men and women. He trauelled 20. yeares in preaching through the land, planting Bishops and Priests in convenient places, whose learning and convertation, by the especiall grace & fauor of God, established the Faith in that rude nation. Other 20 veres he spet in his prouince of Armagh, among his brethren placed in those houses of Religion, which by his means were founded. S. Patricket So he lived (in all) about 122. yeares, and his place of he riall in Down lyeth buryed in Downe. Now, concerning the chiefe citties and

townes of Ireland, we are first to speake of Dublin, termed the beautie and eye of Ire- Thefamon land. I find it recorded that about the vere 155. three noble Easterlings, being brethien, ariued in Ireland, whose names were Auellanus, Sitaracus and Tuorus. Auellanus being the eldest brother, built Dubling thereof, who Situracus, Waterford and Tuorus, Limerike. Was Auching Of the founder Auellanus, Dublin was termed Auellana, and after by corruption of speech, Eblana, and so Ptolomie calleth it. Some termed it Dublin, other, Dublinia, many Dublinum, but Authors of better skill name it Dublinium, This cittie as it is not inferiour for Antiquity to any in Ireland, fo in pleafant scituation, gorgeous buildings, multitude of people, martiall Chiualry, obedience and loyalty, aboundance of wealth, largeneffe of hospitality, in manner, and civilitie, it is superiour to all other citties and towns in that realmer whereupon it is commonly called, the /rift or yong London. The Charter of this Dublinthe citie is large, King Henry the 4. gaue it the Sword, in the yeare 1409, and was ruled The Sword to embrace it . But because he refused to by a Maior and two Bailiffes : which were guerto Di be haprifed, and apply to his doctrine; the changed into Sherifs, by a Charter gran- sheriffer of Bishop denounced against him a curste | ted by king Edward the fixt, 1547. But it Baylies. appeares by the ancient Scale of this cittie called Signum prapositura, that the

Waterford called Mena pia by Ptolo

Chap. 1.

ucrned by a Pronost. the yeare 155. beeing a Citty properly yong and old there are given to thriving, they spinne the cheefest Rugge in Ireland.

The worthy loialty of Wa

Limericke, Yuorus the Founder ther

Corke the of Ireland.

firft founder

Drogheda.

uerned

waterford was founded by Sitaracus, in builded, and very well compact. Both from Roffe, whereof no great matters are free from factions: the men deale in trafficke, the women in spinning & carding; and as they distill the best Aqua vita, io

Of this Citty Waterford it is written, to have continued to loyall to the Crowne of England, that it is not found registred (since the Conquest) to have bin stained with the smallest spot of treason, notwithfranding the fundry affaults of traiterous attempts. And therfore the Cities Armes are deckt with this golden word : In tac-Limericke, called in Latine Limericum,

was builded by Tuorus, about the very fame yeare of 155, coasting on the Sea. hard voon the River Sennan; whereby are most notably seuered Mounster and Connaght, the Irifh name this Citty, Loumneagh, and therefore in English it is called Limerike. Corke, in Latine Corcinam or Corracium

the fourth Citty of Ireland, happily planted on the Sea : their Hauen being a Hauen royall. On the land-fide they were fo

encumbred with cuill neighbours, the Irifb Out-lawes, that they were faine to watch their gates hourely, to keepe them thut at feruice times, and at meales. And from Sun to Sun, not to fuffer any ftranger to enter the Citty with his weapon, but to leave it at a Lodge appointed.

Drogheda, accounted the best Towne in Ireland, and truely not fatre behinde fome of their Citties: the one moity of this Towne is in Meeth, the other planted on the further fide of the water, lycth in Vliter.

There ranne a blinde Prophesie of | Ibelle, Callanne, Kilkenny, Knocktofer, Cheese towns this Towne, that Rolle was, Dublin is, Drogheds fhall be the best of the three.

Roffe, a Hauen Towne in Mounster, not farre from waterford, feeming to have beene (in ancient time) a Towne of great port, whereof fundry and probable conicctures are given, by the olde Dirches, which are now a mile distant from the Walles of Rolle : betweene which walles and ditches, the reliques of the auncient Walles, Gates, and Towers (placed be-

tweene both) are to bee seene unto this

weisford, a Hauen Towne not farre recorded : but onely that it is to be effecmed by all the English posterity planted in Ireland, as a Towne that was the first Fortresse and Harbourer, of the English Conquerors, doing them (from time to time) many great and acceptable ferui-

Kilkenny, the best vpland, or (as they Kilkenny, tearme it) the properest dry Towne in Ireland; is divided into the high Towne, and the Irifb Towne. The high Towne was builded by the English, after the Conquest, and had a parcell of the I fb Towne vnited to it, by the Bifhops grant, made vnto the Founders vpon their earnest request. Robert Talbot, a worthy Gentleman, in the yeare one thousand foure ded in Anno. hundred, enclosed with walles the better Rebert Talbot, part of this Towne.

Thomas Towne, a proper Towne builded in the County of Rilkenny, by one Thomas Fitz-Anthony, an Englishman: thereof the frifb call it Ballie mac-Andan, that is, The Towne of Fitz- Anthony. But because the Reader may perceive, in what parts of the Country the Citties and cheefe Townes fland, I haue fet them downe in this order.

Drogheda, Carregfargus, Downe, Armagh, Arglafbe, Clougher, Muneigh an, Doonnegaule, Karree mac Roffe, Newrie, Carlingford, Ardie, Doondalke, Louth, Dublin , Bulrudrie, Luske , Swords Tafbacrard, Lions, Newcastle, Ratheonle, Onghter arde, Naas, Clane Mainooth, Kilcocke, Rathaimgan, Kildare, Luianne: Cafle-Towne, Phillips-Towne, Mary boroneh, Kilcullen, Cattle-Marten, Thistledermot. Kilea, Athie, Catherlangh, Leighelen, Ganranne , Thomas Towne, Enestio ke, Ca-

Roffe, Cloumelle, Weifeford, Fernes, Fidderd, Enefcortie, Tathmon, wickles, Ackloa , Waterford, Lifmore , Deengarnen, Toobill, Corke, Limerike, Kilmallocke, Alo. ana, Galuoie, Anrie, Lonagbriagh, Clare, in Wellmeet Toame, Sligagh, Rolle comman, Aritlowne, Trimme, Doonfbaghlenne, Rathlouth, Na. nanne, Aooie, Scrine, Taraugh, Kelmles. Doonboine, Greenocke, Dulceke, Molingare. Fowre, Loughfende, Kilkeniwell, Moilagagh, Deluinne.

Weisford

Walles buil-

The names of the cheefe

The names of the cheefe I ownes in

in Mounfler. Checte town in Connaghr. Chiefe towns in Meeth. Chiefe towns

Iiii

In

Chap.1.

lin, before Sir Anthony Sentleger, Knight, Lord Deputy of Ireland: that Meeth of Meeth into ewo Counties. should be divided and made two Shires, one of them to bee called the County of Meeth, and the other to bee named the County of Westmeeth . And that there should be two Sheriffes, & Officers conuenient within the faide Shieres, as is

more at large expressed in the Act.

Loughfoile, the Banne, Wolderfrith, Car-

The names of the cheefest Hauen towns in Ireland.

regfergus, Strangford, Ardglas, Longheue, Carling ford, Kilkeale, Dunkalke, Kilclogher, Dunane , Drogheda, Houlepatrike, Nanie, Baltraie, Brimore, Balbriggen, Roggers-Towne, Skerrift, Ruft, Malahide, Banledoile, Houth, Dublin, Dalkee, Wickincloa, Arckloa, Weisford, Bazganbun, the Paffage, Waterford, Dungaruan, Roffe noua, Youghille, Corke mabegge, Corke, Kinfale, Kierie, Koffe Ilbere, Dorrie, Baltinimere, Downenere, Downesbead, Downelounge, Attannanne, Craghanne, Downeuebwine, Balineskililiedge, Daugine Ichouse, Trolie, Semme, Caffanne, Kilwewine, Limerike, Inniskartee, Belalenne, Arinenewing Glanemauch, Balliweibam, Binwarre, Dowris, Woran, Koskam, Galwaie, Killinillie, Innesbosinne. Owran, Moore, Kilcolken, Burske, Belleclare, Rathefilbene, Bierweifowre, Bucaneis hare, Ardnemakow, Rosbare, Kilgolinne Wallalele, Rabranne, Strone, Berweis now, Zaltra, Kal-

Bowlenne. The spiritual Iurisdiction of Ireland, is ordered into foure Proninces, whereof the Primacy was ever given (in reverence of S. Patricke, that conucrted the Country) to the Archbishoppricke of Armagh, who is called Primas totius Hibernia, and the Archbishop of Dublin, Primas Hibernia. Which custome was fince confirmed by Eugenius the third, in Anno. 1 148. or 1152, Who fent withal three other palles of Archbishops to be placed, one at Dublin , one at Calhill, and the laft at Twene.

balie, Ardnocke, Adrowfe, Sligaghe, Innes

To thefe were Suffraganes in right, nine and twenty, and they all to the Primas of Armagh. Vnder whose Province are the Bishops of Meeth and Deren, Ardach, Kilmore, Cloghere, Donne, Coner, Clanknos, Kaboo, Dromoore.

Vuder Dublin, wheretunto Innocentius the third vnited Glandelagh, the Bithop | Robert V fford, againe Lord luftice. Vnder Dublin

In the foure and thirtie yeare of the | of Elphine, Kildare, Fernes, Osforie, and Vnder Cashill, the Bishop of Water-

ford, to whom Lismore is vnited, Corke Vnder Cashi and Clone, Roffe, Ardigh, Limerike, Emelse, Killalooe and Ardfert.

Vnder Twene, Kilmaco, Olfine, Anaghdonne, Clonfers and Morroo.

In this recount some difference happeneth, by reason of personall and reall vnion of the Sees, and for other alterati-

The Names of the Gouernours, Lieutenants, Lord Iustices, and Deputies of Ireland, since the Conquest thereof, by King Henry the fecond.



Ichard Strongbow, Earle of Pembroke Governor of Pembroke, Gouernour, The yeares of R Keimond le Grace beeing ioyned (for his more cale) in Commission with

1177.

1182

1272.

1369.

1381.

Reimondle Grace, Lieutenant by himwilliam Fitz. Adelme, Liebtenant, hauing John de Curcy, Robert Fitz-Stephans, and Miles Cogan, joyned in Commissi-

Hugh Lacie Lieutenant. Iohn Lacie, Conftable of Che- & Gouer-Iter, and Richard de Peche. . Snours: Hugh Lacy, againe Lieutenant Hugh Lacy the younger , Lord Iuftice. Henry Loandorie, Archbishop of Dublin,

1227. Lord Iuftice. Maurice Pux-Gerald, Lord Iuflice. 1 2 28. John Fitz Geffrey, Knight, Lord luftice. 1253. Alan de la Zouch, Lord Iustice. 1 2 5 8. Stephen de Long Effe, Lord Iuftice. William Deane, Lord luftice. 1261. Sir Richard Rochell, or Capell, Lord In-Have flice. David Barry, Lord Inflice. 1267. 1268. Robert VHord Lord Inflice ... 1260 Richard de Excester, Lord Inflice. 1270 Lames Lord Andley, Lord Inflice.

Maurice Fitz-Maurice, Lord Inflice.

walter, Lord Gennille, Lord Inflice. Fulborne.

Iohn Stamford, Archbishoppe of Dublin, Lord Instice. william Vescie, Lard Iustice. william Dodingfels, Lord Iuftice. Thomas Fitz-Maurice, Lord Iustice. John Wogan, Lord Iustice. 1384. Theobald Verdon, Lord Iuflice. Edmond Butler, Lord Iulice. 1315. Roger Lord Mortimer, Lord Iuftice. 1317. Alexander Bigner, Archbishop of Dublin; Lord Iustice. 1319, Roger Lord Mortimer, the second time Lord Inflice. Thomas Fitz-John, Earle of Kildare, Lotd Iohn Birmingham, Earle of Louth, Lord Iohn Lord Darcy, Lord Iustice. Roger Outlaw, Prior of Kilmainan, Lord 1327. Anthony Lord Lucy, Lord Iustice. Ichn lord Darcy, fecond time Lord Iustice Iohn Lord Charleton. Lord Iustice. 1333+ Thomas, Bithop of Hereford, L. Justice. John Lord Darcy, ordayned Lord Inflice 1339. by Patent, during his life, by King Edward the third. Raphe Vifordi Lord Iustice. 1346. Robert Darcy, Lord Inflice. John Fitz Maurice, Lord Inflice. walter, Lord Birmingham, Lord Iuflice: his Deputies were John Archer, Prior of Kilmainan, and Baron Carew, with had the Office of Lord Inflice, for tearine of his life, by the grant of king Edward the third. Thomas Rokesby, Knight, Lord Inflice. 1355. Almericke de S. Amand. 1357. John Butler, Earle of appointed lord Manrice Fitz Henry, Stirries. Idonall, Dake of Clarence, Lord Inflice. 1261. Gerald Fitz-Maurice, Earle of Defmond, 1367. Lord luftice.

william Lord windfor, the first Lieutenant

Rogar Mortimer. \ Iultices & Lieutenants

Phillip Courtney. Cofpecially recorded, in

lames Earle of the dayes of King Ri-

Dehard the second.

in Ireland.

Ormond.

Roger Aluton, Lord Iuftice.

1281. Fulborne, Bishop of Waterford, Lord Iu- Robert Vere, Earle of Oxford, Marquesse of Dublin, created Duke of Ireland, Roger Mortimer Earl of March Lieutenat. 1394. Roger Mortimer, Earle of March and VIfter Lieutenant. Roger Grey, Lord Inflice. John Stanley Knight, Lord Lieutenant. Thomas of Lancaster, brother vnto King Henry the 4. Lord Lieutenant : whole 1401. Deputies at fundry times, were Alexander Bishop of Meeth Stephen Scroop, Knight, and the Prior of Kilmainan. Iames Butler, Earl of Ormand, Lord Iustice 1403. Gerald, Earle of Kildare, Lord luftice. Lames Butler, Earle of Ormand, fonne to 1407. the forelaid lames, Lord Iuftice. Iohn Stanley, againe Lord Lieutenant. 1413. Thomas Cranley, Archbishop of Dublin, Lord Iuflice. Iohn Lord Talbet of Sheffield, Lieutenant.
Ismes Busles, carle of Ormand, the Second 1414. 1420. time Lieutenant. Edmand Earle of March, James) Earle of Ormana, his Deputy. Iobn Sutton, Lord Dudley; Sir Thomas Strange, his Deputy Six Thomas Stanley Six Christo Lieutepher Plunkes his Deputy. nants to Lion Liond Welles, Deputy to king Hethe Earle of Ormand. Tames Earl of Ormand, by himry the 6. felfé. " Iobn Batle of Shrewsbury; the Archbithop of Dublin (in his absence) Lord Iustice. Richard Plantagenes, Duke of Torke, Father to King Edward the 4. had the Office of Lieutenant, by letters Patents from King Heavy the fixt for ten yeares. His Deputies (at fundry times) were the Baron of Deluin; Richard Fitz-Enflace, Knight; James Earle of Ormond; and Thomas Fitz-Morris, Earle of Kildare. homas Fitz-Morris, Earle of Kildare, Lord Inflice in the dayes of King Ed-

ward the fourth, vitill the third yeare

of his reigne. After whom, George

Duke of Clarence, brother to the King.

had the Office of Lieutenant during

his life, and made his Deputies (at fun-

) Depu-

theD.of

Richard

Clarence

14500

dry times) thefe men following:

Sir Rowland Enstace, Lord Deputy.

John Tiptoft, Earle of Worcefler Ctics to

Thomas, Earle of Definand.

Thomas, Earle of Kildare.

Henry, Lord Grey of Ruthin.

Of Ireland.

Vnder Ar-

Of the Feele

Gofficell ru-

rifdictionin

The Archbi

(hoppricks.

Ireland.

dge

Ductor Coren, or Cormen. Sces.

916	Of Irela	and. 10. E	OOK
	Richard, Duke of Torke, younger fonne to	Sir Henry Sidney, Lord Iustice alone, 18.	
	King Edward the fourth, Lieutenant.	Ianuary.	1556.
	Edward, sonne to King Richard the third,	Thomas Earle of Suffex, Lord Licutenant	1
	Lieutenant, his Deputy was Gerald,	19.Martij.	1557.
	Earle of Kildare.	Sir William Fitz-Williams, Lord Iustice.	7 0
	lafter, Duke of Bedford, and Earle of Pen-	Thomas Earle of Suffex, Lord Deputy,6.	1558.
	broke, Lieutenant: his Deputy was wal-	Maij Anno primo Reg. Elizab.	1559.
	ter, Archbishop of Dublin.	Sir Nicholas Arnold, Lord lustice.	1564.
	Edward Poynings Knight, Lord Deputy.	Sir Henry Sidney, Lord Deputy the third	1565.
1494	Henry, Duke of Torke, afterward King, by	time.	
1501.	the name of Henry the eight, Lieute-	Doctor Weston, Lord Chancellor.	' '
	nant: his Deputy was Gerald, Earle of	Sir William Fitz Williams.	1567.
	Kildare.	Sir Henry Sidney, lord Deputy the fourth	.1568.
	Gerald Fitz-Gerald, Earle of Kildare, Lord	time.	
	Deputy.	Sir William Fitz-Williams, Lord Deputy,	1570.
1520.	Thomas Howard, Earle of Surrey, after-	11. Decemb. Anno. 14. Elizab.	1571.
	ward Duke of Norfolke, Lieutenant.	Sir Henry Sidney, Lord Deputy the fift	1572.
	Plers Butler, Earle of Offorie, L. Deputy.	time, August 3.	
1523.	Gerald Fitz Gerald, Earl of Kildare, again	Sir William Drury, Lord Iustice, 14. Sep-	1579.
	Lord Deputy.	tember, by Patent, 18. May.	0-
	The Baron of Dublin, Lord Deputy.	Shwilliam Pelham, Lord Inflice.	1580,
****	Pieres Butler, Earle of Offorg, againe Lord	The Lord Arthur Grey.	1580,
1529.	Deputy.	Dublin. Lords Iustices.	1582.
	William Skeffington Knight, Lord Deputy	Sir Henry Wallop.	
	Gerald Fitz Gerald, Earle of Kildare, the	Sir Tohn Berot, Lord Deputy	1584.
	william Skeffington, againe Lord Deputy.	Sir William Fire-williams, Lord Deputy.	1588.
	Leonard Lord Grey, Lord Deputy.	Sir william Ruffell, Lord Deputy.	1595.
1535.	Sir William Bereton, Knight, Lord Lustice.	Thomas, Lord Burrough, Lord Deputy.	1597.
1540:	Sir Anthony Sentleger Knight, L.Deputy.	Kobert Earle of Effex, Lord Lieutenant.	1599.
1541.		Charles Blount, Baron Monttoy, Lord De-	.1600,
		puty. within we treem's come is	
	The Names of all the Lords,	Sie George Odraw, Lord Deputy.	1602.
	Deputies, and Iuftices in Ireland, fince	Sir Arthur Chichester, Lord Deputy.	1604.
	the death of King Herry the	Sit Oliver S. 16hn, Lord Deputy, who yet	1618.
	eight, who dyed in Ia-	to this day, condition that honou-	
	nuary, 1546.	A rable Officedant	
	and our of the sent to	I have Office of Lond I there the	1
	CIR Anthony Sentleger Knight, by Pa-	<u>पंतरी विकास नुभविष्ट , वीर वीर्व विकास कर ।</u>	1
1546.	Stent, dated 24. Marty. Anno primo	out CHAP. I'Pdi	1
1546.	Edw.6.	•350 processing (1973) (1986)	
1,547.	Sir Edward Bellingham, Lord Deputy, 22.	and the second control of the second	
	Aprilis An.codem.	Abriefe Discourse, how those pars, and	
1548.	Sir Francis Brian, Lord Iustice.	Countries, commonly called The New Worlds	
1542.	Sir William Brabeiton, Lord Willice.	were first found : Alfo by wham, and what	
1550.	Sir Anthony Sentleger, the third time lord	things were there found, and feene, and	١.
	Deputy, 4. August. Sir lames Crostes, Lord Deputy, 29. Apri-	breught away thence.	1
1551.	lu.	1 ~ 1 luffice.	
	Sir Anthony Seneleger, the fourth time	na I admings shelled be come	
1553.	Lord Deputy, September 1. Annoprime	Carnell fayling win the Spa-	
	Reg. Marie,	nifb Seas; there fell a tom-	The Winder
1	Thomas Lord Fitz-Walter, Lord Deputy,	peff, comming to impetit-	will be Com
	27. Aprilu.	outly from the East, the	manders at Sea.
	Sir Henry Sidney. 7 Lords Iusti-	Windes growing still fo	
1556.	TX 0	Lange of the second sec	1

croffe and contrary ; that at length it was

tranfpor-

Of Ireland

transported into an vnknowne Country, I that he dwelt when the faid Caruell coawhich never was in any Carde for Nauigation. Staying there longer time, then was or could be allowed for returning, no more remayned living then the Pilote or Maister, and three or foure Mariners befide: who also falling ficke, by extreamitie of hunger and tedious labour, dyed al. fo at a Port some sew daies distance from thence.

But the Pilote, whose name was Anda-

luzo, dyed in the house of one Christopher

Columbus, a natine of Cuguero, or (as some

others fay) of Albizolo, a fmall village on

the river of Genes, neare to Sauona. With

this Colombus remayned all the Pilotes

goods of the fayd Carnell, and especially

the Papers and Memories of that whole

vovage reporting the height of the lands.

which by them had beene difconerd, and

found . Some fay, that the fayel Andaluze

trafficked in Canaria and Madera, when

this long and fatall nauigation happened.

Others also tearme him a Biscane, which

dealt with England and France : and fome

repute him a Portuguize, that went and

came from Myrrha or India. Others 2-

gayne report, that the faid Carnell went

into Portugall, or to Madera, and other I-

lands; but none doe affure any thing for

certaine. It is no maruell then, if Authors

do difagree in many points, concerning

things happening, or found by graue An-

cients, and that the Inventors of them are

not to be knowne; when our felues are

ignorant of matters, within the compaffe

of to fmall time fince, for finding the Oc-

cidentall or Westerne Isles (which we call

the New-found World) and which was a

In the house

of Christopher Columbus died the Pilote Andaluzo.

Chap.2.

Variety of o pinions concerning this Andeluzo.

Needs muft moy Antienucs be loft. when later mosnegicat ali memorie.

What Chriflopher Co-lumbus was at is beginning

matter to figuall, nonell, and remarkable. But all agree together, that this Andaluzo dyed in the house of the sayd Christo. pher Columbia; who having (at the first) beene a Sayler or Mariner, had practited in divers parts of the world. Afrerward, hee learned diligently the measure of the two Tropickes, of the Equator, and of the Clymates, proouing an expert Maifter, in making Cardes to fayle by . And

to be informed concerning the Meridio-

nall coasts of Affrica, and of other places

where the Portugalls had fayled: he went

into Portugall, to the end he might make

his Cards the better, and there he marti-

ed. Or, as fome fay, in the lile of Madera:

where it may be credited (as most likely)

sted there;and the Patron or Pilote there-Reasons of ap. of lodged in his house, where he recounted to him the voyage he had made, and cale of Cothe new lands by him discouered : to the lundus. end that Columbus might fet them downe in his Garde, wherein he was further enftructed by him.

Of the Nevv-found World.

It is generally supposed, that Columbus was a learned man, a good Geographer, very fingularly experienced in Attronomy and Cosmography; and that hee la- Thegenerall

boured to finde the land of the antipodes, ceining Coand Il Rico Cipango de Marco Polo. Morco- lumbus, rouuer, he was often heard to fay, that (ne-ficency in lear ceffarily) by good conicctures there was ning and ingeanother world, which extended it felle to- ment wards the Weit : whereof Plato, Seneca, and many other Authors, both Greek and Latin, did leaue to Cosmographers some good and confiderable arguments. Alfo, that he had read many good ancient Authours, who, in the place where they difcourse on the great Athlanticke lile; make mention of a land vnknowne and concealed, more great then Afia or Affrica. And especially Aristotle, writing, that certaine Merchants of Carthage, fayling in those parts of Gibralterre, towards the Well & South after many dayes found a great I-

land inhabited, with Rivers name, ble. But, after all this fo dinertly delinered. on the behalfe of Columbus, it is most cer-taine, that he was not learned, but of good to the resamt judgement and viderflanding, and re- maion, and h ceining notice of these new Lands, by the nat conclusion meanes of Andalueo; he conterred with Celaubus diners learnd and indicious men, concerning what had aunciently beene written of other lands and worlds. And the fayd Columbus, wanting meanes to bring to

paffe what he fo carneftly defired, because he was poore; floode in neede offorme farre greater fanour, whereby hee might difcouer those lands. Perceiuing then , that the King of Par- Kings, whose

ingall was hindered by his enterprize of help beginnen-Africa, 8 natigation into the East, which mound he had then in readines, and that the king of Cattele was bufied about the warre of Granada : he fent his brother, named Bartholomew, to Henry the featenth, king of England, a very rich and potent Prince, (who had at that prefent time no warres

or troubles) to furnish him with fanour

and thippes apt and fit for the enterprize,

liti 3

promi

Columbus

though dif

not yet be

couraged,w

whelly dif-

heartened.

The 1.Dukes

of Medina

acquainted

great offer, &

with this

loue and amity.

turning thence without any refolution; he began to negotiate with Alphonfus the fift, King of Portugall: of whom he could neyther haue fauour nor money, to finde Columbus fuch wealth as he had promifed; because hindered in the Bishop of Viso, and one Master Rodedealing with the King of rick, men greatly experienced in Cosmo-Portugall. graphy contraried him therein, confidently affuring; that there could not bee

> Columbus spake of. Beeing much difmayed and out of comfort (yet his heart encouraging him still, with hope of a happy and successeful adventure) and being embarqued at Lifborne : hee fet thence to Paly de Moquera, where he spake with Alphonso Pinzono, a Pylot well skild in the arte of Nauigation : there also he discouered his secret to

in the West, any such gold or treasure, as

vnknowne Islands (and in small time)vn-

valuable treafures. But Bartholmew re-

to Iohn Perez, a Fryar Minor, in the Conuent of S. Frances de la Rubida, 2 most excellent Cosinographer. These men encouraged him to follow his enterprize, councelling him further, to impart the businesse to Henry, Duke de Medina Sidania, and then to Lodwick, Duke de Medina Calia, who, in his Port of S. Maria, had good and commodious meanes to prorefuted it also uide Shipping, and people apt for fuch a bulineffe. But thefe two Dukes helde this Voyage and Nauigation, for no other then as a dreame or phantasmaseuen as the Kings of England and Portugall did. In regard whereof, the poore grey Fryar aduited him to goe to the Court of the

Catholique King, and (on his behalfe)

wrote to Fryar Ferdinando de Talaueia,

Confessiour to the Queene. Columbus followed this aduice of the Frvar, and came to the Court of Caffile, in the yeare 1486. and (by written petition)presented both his fight and demand, to King Ferdinand and Queen Elizabeth, who made no great account thereof; as having their mindes troubled, for expelling the Moores out of Granado. He grew then to fpeake with fome, that had neerer care about the King, and were of most employment with his Maiesty, to negotiate in affaires of importance. But because he was a stranger, meanly habited, and without any other credit, then being commended by a poore Fryar Minor: he

promiting to bring him home from those | was no way beleeued, and much worse listened vnto; whereat Columbus grew very greatly displeased.

Alphonso Quinta-villa, Great Chamberlaine or Treasurer to the King, kept of entrance him in his house, and dietted him at his for Columbus owne table, taking great delight to heare him talke of fuch things, as he made pro-

mise of in vnknowne Countries. By the helpe of this Great Treasurer, Columbus found the meanes, to have accesse & audience with Gonzales de Mendozza, arch-Bishop of Toledo, and Cardinall, who had great credit and authority with their Maiesties. This Lord brought him to the Kings presence, and, after the case was Columbus well examined and vnderstood (notwith- was promife standing all was esteemed vaine and falle, supply by the which Columbus had spoken off in the be- King.

ginning) yet hope was given him of expedition, and imployment in his voyage of Nauigation, to those Islands vnknowns fo foone as the King had taken order for the war of Granado, which then lay heauily on his hand.

Columbus, vpon this answere, began

to mount his hopes farre higher then be-

fore, and was then graciously both heard and esteemed of all the Courtiers, who laughed and made a mockery of him at the first. After the surprizall of Granado, he prevailed fo successefully, that the Catholique King confented vnto his request, for passage into those vnknowne parts:affigning vnto him in gift, the tenth part of the Rents and Royall tributes, in all the Lands found and conquered: but without prejudice (notwithstanding) to all rights belonging to the King of Portugall. And because the King was then unfurnished of money for this expediti- Christopher on , Lodonico, Secretary for his accounts, Columbus (by lent him seuenteene thousand Ducats: by means of the meanes whereof, Columbia armed & fur- King) armed nished " three Caruels at Pally de Mogu- three Caruels era, and in them fitted 120. men, aswell to you find Marriners as Soldiours.

Of one, hee made Martino Alphonfo Paulus Ioff Pinzono the Guide and Conducter. Of Hisodenis the second, France sco & Vincentio Aeneio, of the Carthe second, France see Vincentio Acnes, or the chinadite in Brethren to the faid Martino. And him-felfe was Captaine and Commander of his Yoyage. the greatest Carnell among them; taking also with him his Brother Hartholmew, who (in like manner) was very practicke and well experienced on the Seas. From

third day of August, and held on his youage betweene the West and South, pasfing by Gomera, one of the Canary Islands, Some meanes where he stayed for a small refreshing : & thence onward, followed the directions given him in the papers and memories of deceased Andaluzo.

Chap.2.

Hauing fayled eight dayes, he espied so much graffe or Herbage, as if it feemed to be a Meadow; whereof (at first) he & all grew doubtfull, although ther was no danger at all, and backe they would have returned, but that they faw divers Willow trees a farre off, which gaue an euident and mott certaine figne, that fome Land must needs be neere.

great excesse of ioy, and proud of a hope-

The first land which they faw, was Gua-

banay, one of the liles Lucages, fituated

betweene Florida and Cuba; where foden-

ly they went on shoare, and there tooke

possession of the New world. From Gua-

banay they went to Barucon, the Porte of

Cuba, & there tooke fome Indians, and re-

turning backe to the Ifle of Hayti, caft an-

chor in the Port, which Columbus called

Porte Royall. There hastily they were faine

to land againe; because the chief Caruell

fmote against a rocke, and began to rift;

On the morrowe following, which After 8.dayes was the eleauenth day of Nouember, in the yeare 1492. Rodericke de Traiana, berick de Traia ganne to cry out alowd, Land, Land: at na was the fiftman that which words, all ran to fee whether they discourred were true or no; and having likewife difconcred that it was firme Land, they beganne to praise GOD, and fung Te Deum Landamus, mourning euen with

full proceeding.

Their fyrft landing at Guabanay, beiween Flo tida & Cuba.

but yet no person was in perill. When the inhabitants of the life faw the Spanyards come on thore to speedily, and with their The Indians Armes: they fled from the fea fide up to feareful of the paniar des at their landing.

the Monntaines, imagining them to bee the Carybes or Canibales, that came to af-After them ran the Spaniards, as haftily as they might, and yet could take none woman Indan taken & but one woman, vitto whom they gaue closthed, and Bread, Wine, and Comfittes, as also a

imocke, and other Garments, because the was naked, and to fent her away after the reft. She went and told her country people, how kindly thee had bin vied, thewing them the giftes bellowed vppon here

Paly he fet forward on Friday, beeing the which caused them presently to come downe agame to the Sea fide, to speake with the Spaniards, without any vnder-flanding on either file; otherwise then by fignes; euen as dumbe folke vie to do . They brought Birds, Bread, Fruits, Gold, and other things, to give in exchange for Ballads, Beads, Glaffes, Needles, Sizers, Pinnes, and other fuch like things, to the no little ioy and comfort of Christopher Columbus, who faluted, embraced, &renerendly entreated the Lord of that land, being of his people called Cachico, & gifts fyrit ladian palled betweene one another, in figne of Prince teene

owne, wherein to bestowe the goodes of

by Columbus The Indians brought boats of theyr

the cheefe Carnell that was broken, and The kind offbrought them on Land with the Spany- ccsofthe Inards, so louingly, euen as if they hadde dians to the dwelt all their life time among them: fal-

ling downe in reverence to the Croffe, and beating themselves on the brests, like vnto Christians. Now Columbus, thinking no time foon enough for his teturne to Spaine, with newes to the Catholike King, of what he had scene and done, prevailed so wel with the prompt and fodaine confent of Ca-Columbus.by chico, and the affiltance of his fubiects: as confere of C

to build a Castle of Woode and Earth; chico, thelp wherein hee left eight and thirty Spany-ords, under the charge of Captaine Rode-file of Wood rigo d' Arma, of Cordona : to the end, that and earth. during his voyage, they might learne the Language and fecrets, both of the Nation and Countrey. And this was the first inhabiting of the Spanyardes in the In-

The Castle being finished, Columbia tooke with him tenne Indian men, forty such things Parrats, many Tortoiles, Conies, and other strange thinges, farre differing from his shipt with ours in forme and nature, as testimonies in. of the places where hee had found them. He brought aboord also into his ships, all the Golde which the people of the countrey had ginen him, in exchange of those toyes and trifles which hee returned for them. And, after hee had taken leane of his friendly Companions, appointed to remaine there in his absence, as also of Guacanari (for fo was the Cachico or king of that Countrey named) who was verice forry and loath, that hee fhould depart thence, he fent away with two Carnels.

to the Catholique King Feidinand & his Queene, & neglecting where he had greateft hope.

Hisperition

Columbus goeth to Bar cellona to the K.and Queen

The peoples

variety in o

Sence in Tra-

2rd.Medea.

the things which hee brought from the New-found Worlde, which were of extraordinary wealth and riches, beside the strangemen, of such colour and habit, as neuer hadde the like beene feene before . Some fayde, that hee had found the Nauigation, concealed from the Carthagepinton concer ning this voy-age of Co-lumbus. mians. And others affirmed it, to be that which Plate had written of to bee loft by fortune, and by an ouer-great quantity of mudde or slime encreasing in the Sea. Some other helde another opinion, faying, That that which Seneca had foretold

was now accomplished, speaking in his

Fragedy of Medea after this manner. The

time vvill come, that (manie yeares hence)

before remembred, and (having a fuccef-

full winde) arrived at Paly within 50.daies

The Catholike King and queene vvere

then at Barcellona, whither Columbus went

to fee them; and although it was a long

way, and he had many things to carry: yet

notwithstanding, they were all conucyed

with him by Land, and hee was welcom-

med vnto the Court with great Honour.

Infinite people flocked about him, to fee

or fomewhat leffe.

Newworldes shall bee found, and that their Thile could not bee the furthest part of the

Nomean ad mi ation in inc King Queenc and Courtiers at the rare nouelties broght

Finally, Columbus entred the Court of Spaine, the third day of April, a yeare after he had departed thence, presenting to their Maiesties, the Golde and all thinges elle which he had brought from the New World ; whereat the King, Queene, and all then prefent, merualed not a little, to fee fuch rare things, all (but the gold)nonell and vnaccustomed vnto theyr fight. They highly commended the Parrats, being of to many goodly colours; fome of an extraordinary (hining green, others of a liuely red or Vermillion colour, intermixed with many other of choise splendour, little or nothing at all refembling them that were brought from other places. The Conies were small having their cares and tayles like vnto Rats, and their colour grizeld. Also they greatly praised the Cockes of those Countreyes, beeing farre more beautifull then Pea-cockes, wondering befides, that those Countries yeelded no other Corne, and no other bread was yet fedde on there, but fuch as

was made of rootes and the like thinges. wherein were all the other Spaniardes of the voyage, except the eight and thirtie But their cheefest meruaile was at the men, who had little circklets or Buckles of Gold hanging in their eares, and fine- The Indian of Gold nanging in their eares, and they men wer their ly pierced through their nostrilles: theyr greatest matbodies being neither white nor black, or rei of maruell

browne, but like vnto an Oliue colour, or boyled Quinces. Very attentiue was the King, to heare what a worthy Relation Columbus made, wondering greatly, that the people shold haue no Habite, Learning, Mony, Iron, Corne, Wine, neyther any Animall

which was greater then a Dogge, nor Shippes or Boates of any bigneffe. And much was his patience mooned, when The people he heard him tell, that they did cate one did cate one another, being all Idolaters. But heepromised, that if God pleased to blesse him ters. with life and health: he would free them from that horrible inhumanity, and root Idolatrie out of those Lands, that could bee reduced under his dominion and power. In like manner, hee extended great fauour and courtefie to Columbus, commanding that he should fit down before him, because (according to the custome

of Spaine) the Gentlemen and other attendants, fland alwayes in the Kings pre- in the Court fence, for greater honour to the Royall of Spaine. authority. Moreover he confirmed his grant and

priviledge, concerning the tenth part of Columbus reuennewes in the faide Lands, gining made Admi him the title and Office of Admirall of rall of the the Indiaes, and made his Brother Bartholmen Lieutenant or vice-Admiral to him. All which beging done, a Courrier or Poaste was dispatched vnto Rome, with letters concerning the New-found lands, to his Maiesties ambassadors, whom (but fome few moneths before) he had fent to News of thefe congratulate Pope Alexander the fixt, at Indian difcohis new creation, and (on his behalfe) to Rome topope do him obeyfance. Which letters of full Alexander and further information, they delivered the fixt. to his Holineffe, he not a little rejoycing at these good newes, as the like did al the Roman Court. In regard wherof, the holy Father, with confent of the whole Col-

ledge of Cardinals, made a new donation

to the Kinges of Castile and Leon, of all

the Isles and firme lands that should bee

found in the West : with charge to fend

Preachers thither, for conversion of the

Infidels.

When

Of the Nevv-found VV orld. Chap.2.

Columbus fent againe, with more po wer to the in-

fent Christopher Columbus againe, with more store of people, for further trafficking in this New-found World, and for veter destruction of Idolatry, and adoration giuen to false Gods. For the better furtherance heerein, by John Fon (equeio, Deanc of Sinell, he fent eight Carnelles, making him Prefident of those countries. He sent also twelue Priestes, of vertuous life, and good leatning, with Friar Buileie

nerall tent on the Popes be-

The King and Queene Catholi' e,fent preachets and handy- crafts men into the Indiaes,

Observance

Catellano, of the order of S. Benedict, who went to be Vicar-Generall for the Pope: to the end, that those Ecclesiasticall perfons might preach the word of God, con-

uerting the people to the Faith of Iefus Christ, and do all things appertaining to the connersion of soules. Befide all this, many Knights & courtiers, moued by the fame and defire of ri-

ches in the fame Countries, and earnest affection to fee them; went along with them in company, having divers Artezans among them, as Goldfmithes, Taylors, Masons, Carpenters, Laborers, Fifhermen, and fuch like persons, fit for di-

The King caused also (at his own charge) to be bought fome flore of Horfes, Kine, Sheepe, Goates, Swine, and Affes, that | fing Columbus of crucky and couctoufbreede might there enfire of them. Great ftore also was fent of Wheat, Barly, and Grame of all kindes to fowe 3 with Slips, Sprigs of Vives, Sugar Carres, and Plants of lweete fruites, as also Chalk and Lime to build withall. In breefe, they carried divers other things for the like needefull yfes centertaining into this fernice 1500. Soldiers, which Columbus thipt at Cadia the 25.day of September, 1497, and good provision of Artillery. Proceeding on in his voyage, & much

more neere to the Equinochiall then hee

without any flaying there, won the Port

D'A gent, in the life called Hiffaniols. Paff

fing on thence to Parte Royalle, where he had left the eight and thirtie. Spanyards

who were all flaine by the Indians, beet

cause they had luftfully forced their wines

and done them many outrages befides .

Columbus being displeased hereat, yet the-

wing no outward discontentment, imme-

ners imployments.

Histocond did before in his first possage; he came to ctung to fea gaine for the arrive and take landing in an Iland, which Well Indian. he tearmed by the name of Defire, and

When the Catholike King had receyl diately commanded his Masons & other ued this ioyfull answer from the Pope, he men to fall to worke, for the building of a men to fall to worke, for the building of a ded by Co. Towne, which (in honor of the Queene) la nbus, and called liabella he named Isabella. in honour of He builded also a Fort or castle among the queene. the Mines of Cibao, where he established as Gouernor, Moyfes Marguarito, & fent twelue Carnels thence into Spain by Antonio de Turco, which carried many grains of Golde, one especially amongst them, weighing eight ounces, which was found by A'phonfo de Houseda. Hee fent likewife

many Parrats, very faire and goodly, and certaine Indian Caribes, being fuch as fed on the flesh of men, bred and born in the Columbus fin Island of Acay, which hee called Santa deth out di-Gruz, and hee himfelfe, went with three uers other imall Iflandes

Caruels more, to finde out other Lands: where he found Cubo on the South-fide, and Ianianca, with other finall Isles in diners pares. At his teturne backe, he found many

Spaniards dead and ficke, and some that hadde carried themselves scarsely honest Spaniards with their companions: whereof he com- hanged for manded fome to bee hanged, and others and Columto be well beaten, that had given forthe. but accused uill speeches of him. By means whereof, the Popes Vi he had some talke with the Vicare to the ca. Pope, who had written to the King; accuneffe : which caufed his Maieftie to fend thither his Cliamberlain John de Aguado, who fent Columbus into Spaine prifoner. to render an account of his behaulour to

the King. Christopher Columbus obeying the kings command, went away to inflify himfelfe. Columbus re-And arriving at Medina del Campo (where jurned as a as then the Court was) hee came before priloner into the King and Queene, prefenting infinite graines of Gold to them; forme whereof; weighed fifteene, and twenty Ounces a peece, with great lumps of Amber, goodly wilde Oliuc trees, and wonderfull huge

plumes of Parrats Feathers, vied & worn

by the Indians, befide many other frange things. le made report also into their Maie- Columbus his flies, concerning the Countries founde appraints by him, greatly commending the Itlands and Queene. for their admirable riches; declaring befide, that in the moneth of December. which we hold to be the Itemiest time of all Winter, that the Birds there, do then

produce their yong ones oil the trees; &

The wonderfull plentie yielded by the

turneth hon

rably to the Indiacs.

His voyage

Entry against

Columbus by Rolden Sime

nes and his af

lociates, and

great com-

corne (fowne in Ianuarie) yeelded graine within seauentie dayes, Lettice and all rootes grew to be very great. Afterward, he gaue a faithfull report to the king, concerning the behaulour of the Spaniards how he had punished some; and inflicted death uppon other, to the end, that his justification might the more plainely

Greatly did the King both commend and thanke him for his good service, and knowing, that hee had doone no more then Iustice: declared him to be absolued of all imputations laved vnto his charge. furnishing him with eight shippes, for the finding out of other Countries: two whereof Columbus fent before with victualles and munition, and with the other fixe shippes, himselfe set away from Saint Luca de Barrameda, about the end of the month of Maie, in the yeare of our Lord God, one thousand soure hundred ninetie and seauen. And because same and rumour of Indian treasure did spread it selfe, enciting divers Pirates of Frauce to make voyages ebroade: hee went to Madera, and from thence hee fent three thippes, by the right way, for the Island called Hispaniola, with three hundred banished men; and with the other three shippes, he went vnto the Isle of Cape de Verd, to make his voyage very neare to the Equinoctiall, arriving at the last in the Equinoca great Countrey of firme land. On hee went coasting three hundred leagues, beyond the Cape with full fayle, and thwarting the Sea, came to Saint Dominico, a

it : because (in his absence) till now, he had the care and managing of all affaires. Columbus having taken on him the gouernement, and made many enterprises against them of the Countrey, finding out many other Islands belide; grew to be enuied by the Spaniards, and in fuch fort, that a man named Roldan Simenes (a great against him to Potestate or Judge) mutined against him,

towne belonging to his brother Bartho-

lomen, and builded on the River Ozama,

where hee was received to be governor,

as was contained in his Letters of prini-

ledge and grant, which the King Catho-

lique had made vnto him, and which hee

brought thither with him . Albeit fome

were much displeased thereat, and his

brother Barthelomew did not greatly like

in March, the wilde raisins were ripe; and | and three-score and ten men more, all leagued and conjured against him, who forfaking Columbus, went to Siragua, and wrote infinite euilles of him and his brethren to the King. His Maiestie, beeing not a little mooued, that matters should be thus combustuous in the Indiaes, and the Queene taking it very heavily : fuddenly fent Francesco de Bouadello, a knight of good repute, to be governour in those

parts, and giving him authoritie, eyther to punish or imprison the faultie. This man came to the Island of Hilla-Columbusard niola, and foure Carnells with him, in the yeare, one thousand foure hundred nine- thren Bartho tie and nine; and after hee had made in- Diego fent pi quisition in the Citie of Dominico; he sent foners into Christopher Columbus, with Bartholomem and Diego his brethren, all prisoners to

Spaine, with yron fetters on their feete. Being landed at Cadez, they were delinered, by Commission sent from the King, and commanded to appeare at the court. Columbus readily obeyed thereto, and could so well shape his excuses (mingled with teares and sighes very passionately) that the King having heard him, and knowing his fidelitie, fent him againe (three Columbus 2. yeares after) with foure Caruells, to dif-

couer more new Countries, and this was with foure

in the yeare of our Lord God, 1502. or Carnelle.

Columbus being come to the Island of Hilbaniola, and arriving neare to the river Ozama Nicholas de Ouanda Gouernour of the Isle, would not suffer his entrance into the Cittie of Saint Dominico, whereat Columbus being much distasted, sent in to tell him: That if he might not come into Columbus de

thereabouts.

the citty, which he himselfe had caused to into SaintDebe builded; he would goe finde out an o-ther Port, where he might be in better af-further for furance. So parting thence, and coueting tune. to fearch the Straits, for passing beyond the Æquinoctiall, which he had promifed the King to doe: hee drew directly towards the West, withall, turning to the Cape of Niguerra, following still the Meridionall coast, returning then to Cuba, and after to lanianca, where hee loft two Gallies, and with two other he went to discouer new lands. But not without great harmes and perills endured before.

for fome of his followers grew ficke, and

certaine other Spaniards made warre vp-

Of the New-found VV orld. Chap. 2.

Francesco de Porras, Captaine of one present) is in the Conuent of Saint Do-Galley, and Diego, brother to Columbus, minico at Seuill, a worthy deede of the fon-Natiues and Inhabitants feeing them; would admit them to haue no Victualls, Whereuppon, Christopher Columbus cal-

The ingratitude of the people to Co-lumbus in denying him vitípiring againít his life,

lacke of kindnesse and charity, entreating 1604. them to fell him fome victuals; aduiting them further, that except they did fuccor the New-found World, it shall not varie them, all they in the Island should dye of the plague. And to give them a figne as witheffe of his words, he tolde them, that fuch a day it would so come to passe; that ever were in the world, and likewise as they should see the Moone whollie as of the generall Floud or Deluge, as I doe red as bloode, and quite contrarie to her former condition.

Afterwardes, when they behelde the Moone Ecclipfed, at the fame houre of the day, as Columbus had foretolde (not knowing any rules of Astrologie) they verily beleeued his words. And, crauing pardon of him, defired him not to be offended with them; & brought him what | therne partes, there came a man called | inhis fleffs, victuals he could defire. By this meanes, Con, or Conon, who had no bones in his Golumbus having gotten the victoric a. whole body, and therefore went verie gainst those Spaniards, gaue a name vnto the Port, calling it Porta S. Gloria. and raifing the lowe-layd vallies, onelie

The death of Christopher Columbus at Valydolid in

The two wor hy fonnes to Chtiftopher Columbus.

The Library Don Ferdinando, fon Columbus.

Returning home afterward into Spain, to yeelde an account of all that hee had done, being arrived at Valyllolid 32 fickeneffe feized on him, whereof hee dyed in May, in the yeare 1586. and was enterred at Simil, in the Monastery of the Charter-house Monkes. During his life time, he was a man very patient in all his Trauailes, and in foure voyages which hee made into the Vadiaes, both founde and conquered many Countries, vetterly vnknowne before:befide,he builded a great part of the Towns and Castles in the Isle of Hifpaniola, purchasing great renowne, by bringing to end many actions, fo well deserving glory and fame; that his name can neuer be forgotten, or Spaine cease to speake, in giving him such true honour as he worthily merited. He had two Sonnes, Don Diego, who

was married to Madam Maria of Tolledo, daughter to Don Ferdinando, great Commandadore of Leon; and Don Ferdinando, who was never married, but hee had a Library, confifting of more then twelve

having taken certayne small Barkes, went to so famous a Father. As for King Ferditowards the lile of Hiffaniola: where the nand, he dyed in the yeare of our Lord, one thousand fine hundred and fixteene, having reigned fortic and two yeares, in but laide trappes and traines to kill them. the two kingdomes of Castile and Arragon: Queene Elizabeth his wife dyed beling some of them to him, reproued their fore him, in the yeare of our Lord God.

Before wee close vp this Discourse of much from the matter, to speake of a ftrange opinion, among the people there first men in naturally living concerning the first men the world, &

Among the Inhabitants of the Weaft

Indiaes, or New world, a common and

quicke and lightly, much thortening the

wayes, abating the hills and mountaines.

with his word and will, and named him-

and women, which he produced, giving

vnto them divers fruites, and other things

the end, that they might conferue thein-

felues, in watering the grounds by theyr

owne paine and labour.

This man filled the earth with men

felfe to be the fonne of the Sunne.

of Vaaprinaz, in this manner.

The peoples opinio of the of the deluge

finde it fet downe by the worthy Gentleman of Fraunce, Anthony du Verdier, lord

generall received opinion was embraced Control Control with them, that (at the beginning of the non, a man world) from the Septentrionall or Nor- withoutbones

necestary for humane life. But by a dif- A heavie difpleafure he received from them, hee con-

uerted the earth (which hee before had non against freely ginen them) into a drie and barren men. fand, and tooke away the raine also, that it should never more showre downe, nor moisture any place. Yet, as pittying their milery, he left them tiners onely, to

At length came one Pachamo, who was like-wife forme both to the Sunne and Pachamo Moone, and (hauing expelled or bani-

(hed Conon) connected those men into Cattes and afterward created other men. The people tooke this man to be a God, and to he was generally reputed : vntill

the Christians came into those countries, thousand Volumes, and which (at this having crected a very good Temple vnto him,

Francef-

Oracles and Answers of di uells in their Temple by Liqua.

nowned in all those lands : because of extraordinary denotion there yied in regard of Oracles and Answeres, which dinells gaue to Pricits and Sacrificers there dwel ling in divers places. The Spaniards carried away all the golde and filuer (in wonderfull heapes) out of this Temple, and all the Oracles and Visions ceased, divine prayers having beene fayd there, the Sacraments administred, and the Crosse placed where the Idolles stoode, which caused no mean maruell and seare among the Indians.

him, neare to Lima, it beeing the most re-

Their opinio concerning a general Dening of the

lowe grounds and lands were drowned, and all the world likewife; except fuch as could hide themselues within some caues, which were among the high mountaines, having little doores or mouthes of entrance, and closed so fast to them, as no water could gaine the least passage in , and therein also they had store of foode and beafts. Afterwards, when they felt the raine and water to be somewhat pasfed ouer, they fent foorth two dogges, which returned all wet and befineared: whereby they judged that the waters were not (as yet) wholly thrunke and gone away.

Moreover they fayd, that at a certaine

time it rained so extreamely, that all the

Within some while after, they put meanes they foorth many dogges together, which regathered the turned in againe, drie and fleeke as when cellation of they went abroade. And by this meanes they conceined, that the waters were quite fpent; and fo came foorth agayne to dwell vppon the earth: where theyr greatest paine and trauell was to kill infinite Serpents, which the mightie extreamitie of mudde and slime had engendred euery where.

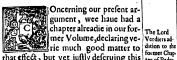
Their ackno legement of the worlds ending.

By what

They beleeve an end of the world; but that a great drought shall goe before it, and that the Sunne and Moone (which they all adore and reuerence) shall loofe themselues. And, uppon this occasion, they make cries and lamentations whenfoeuer the Ecclypfes happen: but especially them of the Sunne, as fearing then, that the Sunne, they, and all the whole World, shall be quite confumed and de-Aroyed together,

CHAP. III.

I Of the Excellencie and Dignitie of Marriage: with many fingular and worthy examples, tending to that purpofe.



that effect, but yet infly descruing this ter of Pedro addition or supplement; in regard, that Mexia. nothing can be fayd too much in the honour of Marriage. This holy institution of Marriage, was made in the earthly Paradife before finne, in the time of Innocencie, when as God faid to our first Parents. Bring foorth fruit, and multiplie, and Gene, 1.28. fill the earth. But it was not brought to

effect, vntill the offence by them committed, and for which, they were expulsed out of the terrestriall Paradise : as Saint Ierome hath obscrued in his Booke against Hieromin lib contra louin Iouinian.

to marry: which yet is expedient for them

(if I might fay fo) to the end, that they

may passe theyr age the more joyously,

as in the kinde company of husband and

wife, receiving pleafure, folace, confola-

tion, and comfortable services each to o-

Abifbag the Shunamite, with whom hee

ordinarily lay, and thee flept in the bo-

fome of the King, warming and comfor-

ting him, and yet the King knew her not

carnally.

ther . Euen as heereof we have an exam- King Davids

ple by Dauid, who (in his very olde age) marriage in his olde age.

tooke a yong maiden to wife, as namely, & Kings Lit.

What more holy, chafte, affured, and mendations

acceptable focietie can be amongst men,

then that of the husband and wife? Oh; the dinnek

how heavenly an harmony, when the one fluvion is

After the vniuerfall Deluge, God gaue command to the good Patriarch Noah a- Genel 8.17 gaine; To encrease and multiplie, which is the principall occasion, wherefore Mar-

riage was ordayned, and bath ener fince beene so generally recommended: that it hath beene, and is permitted to aged and no prohibidecrepite people (free from all power of ted to marry. encreasing, and our of hope of any linage).

The just and

Hoband and of Almightic GOD: And man had

Baffards hauc her, but are en onely.

is as the other, two bodies, one foule, one spirit, one will, and one mutual consent lympathizing in two bodies? The fole marryed man and his wife, enuy not one another, but love infinitely together, each depending upon the other, thee repoting in him, and he in her : euen as one felfefame flesh, one and the same concord, alike equally in all things, and all but one: One ioy, one forrow, one wealth, one pouerty, one gaine, one loffe, and one felfe fame dignitie. They are alwayes companions of one felfe fame bed one and the same table. Therefore they shall be two in one flesh (faid God) and not three, or many. God would by no meanes have in the Ark of Noah, to be any more women then

appointment n the Arke of Noah. rible loue of man and wife.

Gods owne

Chap. 3.

like as the Ring which the husband (euen Compatison of the Ring gias God) puts on the finger of his Spoule uen by the husband to or wife(as the foule to the Church)ought to be of golde, and round, as gold, being the most excellent of all mettalles: euch fo this conjugal loue exceedeth all other,

her, mottler, his Wife, and Wife had her Husband, before there was eyther Father, Mother, or Children. The fruits of Marriage are of Almightie GOD, and not of Nature, from

oceitain fa. proceede of loyall Marriage, are fayd to be Legitimate. And therefore, the opinion of Lawyers, is, That a childe borne out of marriage, bath no certaine father, but we may well fay, a bad or lewd mother . He (fay they) is the Sonne of the people, or elfe the Sonne of no body , that is the Sonne of an runmarried woman . Onely marriage then

(which Baldus calleth , The principle, origi-

and ought to continue perpetually. And

as Propertius faith : Omnis amor magno, fed

aperto in conjuge major . Euery love is great.

but in wedlocke it appeareth to be much grea-

ter. For, Father, Mother, Children,

Brethren, Sifters, Coufins and Friends,

all these are the workes of Fortune : but

the Husband and the Wife are Mysteries

whence it ensueth, that children borne

out of Marriage, that is to fay, Bastards,

are called Naturall onely, but they which

nall and foundation of Mankinde) maketh Children and Heires certayne, augmenteth kindred, engendereth amitie among Allies, reuerenceth and pleafeth God. Holy Marriage was to pleating to the Authour thereof, that he would have his

onely Sonne, to bee borne of a married woman, and although it was his will, to beborne of a Virgine, without the feede of a man; yet was it not without the honour of Marriage. For it pleafed him, to The great glo proceed from a Mother married; yet pure God to the ho norable chate foyling : elected to be the Arke of the Te- of Marriage, frament, the Bush not burning, and the as also arthe Violl of golde to contayne the celestiall Canain Ga. men, to the end that they should all be as

Manna; as well to declare the wonders of lilee. his infinite power, as to make that facred one fole woman. In briefe, the lone of estate so much the more honorable, Witthe husband to the wife, and of the wife nes the presence of the same son of God to her husband, furpaffeth that of father himselfe, at the mariage of Cana in Galile, and mother to their children, of children where expressing his gracious lone & furvnto the father; and that which brothers therance, he converted water into wine, and fifters ought to have together. And by an especial and extraordinary miracle. Moreover, there is not the name of any The manifold

house or stocke, but (without a woman) it great blef-ings that en-would be quite extinct in either kinred per fire to the petuated, family increased, of a Common worldby wowealth continue in intire condition, or a men in marriny Empire hold, without such help; which

the first founders of the Romaine Empire approved; for, they having no wives, defired the Daughters of the Sabines, theyr neighbors, but they would not grant the. Whereuppon, there followed arape or Diony Halicar, ftealth of 68 3. of them, which procured a in libra.

mighty & mortall warre, betwixt the Romans and the faid Sabines; albeit Romulus well forefawe, that his Empire could not last, without women. For, the Citty being composed of houses, and the Common-wealth of chosen Princes, both domeflickes and familiers, how thall he gouerne a Citty, that bath not learned what it is to governe a prinate house? The Philosopher Socrates tellifieth , to haue Socrates lear.

learned more morall Philosophic of woned Morall Philosophy of women, then euer he could naturall, of A-women. naxagoras and Archelaus.

Affuredly, Mariage gines exercitation to morall Philosophie; there is a domesticall Common-wealth conjoyned there- Marriage ocwith, and in it felfe. For the government caffors great whereof, a man may eafily experiment morall Philothe power of wifedome, temperance, pie- fophie. tie, & al other vertues; whereby louing his

Kkkk

10 Booke

wife, enstructing his children, ruling his | mous and worthy priviledges for newe family, protecting his goodes, ordering his house, and encreasing his race; the yeares of his life, will pace on the more happily. Whereas on the contrary, hee that feeketh to spend his life time without being married; is miserable, and worthie to be abandoned of all men.

Lycurgus made for the vnmarried yong men of Lacedemon.

The Romans

Law for men

vnmarried ti

their age.

For this cause, Lycurgus made a Lawe to the Lacedemonians, that all fuch as had attained vnto the age of eight and thirty yeares, without enjoying women in marriage; should be banished in somer time, from all publique playes, spectacles and pastimes, judging them as vnworthic, to be seene there amongst other in an open affembly. And in winter, they were led out naked, in the common view of the people, because they should be outraged and abused by words and exclamations of chery one, detefted as vnwoorthie the name of men . And themselues enjoyned to confesse, that they suffered these afflictions inftly, as having fcorned and despised that religion: whereof they were prenaricators, and disobedient to the ordinance of Nature.

As concerning the Romans, they were not altogether fo strict and seuere, & yet ordained, that fuch as had lived without marriage till their olde age: should bee condemned in painrent of a great fumme of money to the publike Treasury, according to their quality and facultie. Plato appointed in his lawes, that fuch men as were not married, should enjoy no honor estate, or publike dignity: but to be more charged with fines and mulcts, then any of the other Citizens.

A yong man of Lacedemon, would not arise out of his place in the publike Theater, to give way and honour to a valiant ancient Captaine (neuer married)named Callidus, who was come thither to fee the pastimes. And the Captaine growing offended at the arrogancy of the yong man because he disdained him in that manner; gaue him some words of heat and choler. whereto the yong man returned him this answer. O Callidis, thou hast not (as yet)begotten neither occasioned the birth of any one that being now at mine age, and vnmaried as thou art, may arife hereafter to give me place. and therefore no other esteeme is to bee made of thee. The Romaines in the time of 2.

married persons; and for such as had three fons, as may be feen in the Digest, of fuch as had ten. And our greatest Diuines, set downe twelue causes, the which hinder a man from marriage, and doe yet difanull marriage, although it be confummated & children procreated. As namely errour, con ition, vow.parentage, fin, to wit, of Twelue effe-adultery or murther, diversity & diffrence ciall occasions in religion, violence, prophanes in Priest- and hinder hood, or profession of a false religio, bond marriage. and promise of contrary marriage, as being otherwise contracted, honesty, affinity, and inhability. Althefetwelne, are bars and hinderances to marriage, according as Cardinall Cajetane hath comprehended them in these verses.

Error, conditio, votum, cognatio, crimen, Cultus disparitas, vis, or do, ligamen, honest as Si sis affinis, si forte coire nequibis : Hac socianda vetant connubia, facta retra-

I have a great defire to discourse particularly on enery one of these causes, if I had not such a multitude of other matters to speake of: let therefore (for this time) suffice that which hath bin faid. And for fuch as are louers of Poesie, I referre them to the renowned Poet Scauola de S. Martha, partly turned and imitated out of the fifte booke of Marcellus Palingenius, a Latine Poet, in his Zodiack of Life, where he fingeth elegantly in the praise of Marriage.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Partharites, King of the Lombards, who being pursued by Grimoald, fledde first to Cacanus, King of the Auarians or Huns, afterward into France. And in the end af ter many heavy and trouble om Trauayls; was (with great honor and renowne, feased in his owne king dome.



Artharites was fonneto Al-bers King of the Lombards, who (after the death of his father) reigned at Myllaine: and Gondebert his brother, at

Pauia. A strife and quarrell, growing Metellus Confull, established many fa- betweene the two Bretheren, Gondebert

fent Garibald, Duke of Thurine, towardes | City of Lody, he called to a Gentleman of Paulus Diaco- Grimoald, Duke of Beneuentum, a verie his, named Vnulphus, in whom his intigenerous Captaine and Commaunder, requiring his affiftance against Partharites, with folemne promise, of giving him his Sister in marriage. But Garibald intending treason to his Lord and Master; perswaded Grimoald, to come and possesse the kingdome to his owne vie which (thorow discord betweene the two brethren) was growne to weake estate, and verie neare vpon vpon vtter ruine. When Grimoald understood this, hee

gaue ouer his Dukedome of Beneuentum

to his fonne, creating him there as abfo-

lute Duke, and, with the greatest forces

he could get together, prepared his jour-

ney for Paula: and in all citties and towns

as he passed along, begot himselfe store

of friends, for his better helpe in obtayn-

ing the kingdome. Being come to Pania,

and entring into private conference with

Gondebert : by close practise and intelli-

gence with Garibald, Gondebert was flaine

at a Banquet, and he made possessour of

the kingdome. No fooner did Parthari-

tes heare these sad tydings, but, leaving

faire Rhodalinda his wife and Queenc, and

a young fonne of his (both confined by

Grimoald to Beneuentum for close custody)

fled fecretly away, making his recourse to

Grimoald having made fure his King-

Cacanus, king of the Auarians or Hunnes.

dome at Pauia, and understanding, that

Partharites secured his safetie with Caca-

nus: sent Ambassadours to him, to let

him know, that if hee kept Partharites in

his kingdome, no long peace should con-

tinue betweene him and the Lombardes,

but he must expect a King as his enemie.

According to this Ambaffage, the King

of the Auarians called Partharites to him

in fecret, defiring him, that he would wan-

der whither himfelfe pleased: because

(thorow his meanes) the Auarians might

not fall into the hatred of the Lombardes.

And fo, vpon a royall, fad and mutuall in-

terchange of wofull lamentations on ey-

ther fide, the two kings parted, as might

Grimoald gaue ouer his Dukedome to his Sonne inhope of a Kingdome.

Chap.4.

nus fets down

nore at large

shis hiftorie

Partharites fled and left his kingdome

Grimoald fuffered not Parthatites to abide with Ca-

haue moued pitty in Marble to behold it. Partharites, frustrated now of all helpe A hard cafe, when a King and comfort, returning into Italie againe: s constrained purposed his repaire to his enemie Grimatruft to his ald, confiding on his kingly clemencie, enemy for bicaule he weas left destitute of any other fuccour. And beeing come neare to the

mate trust wholly confisted, sending him before, to acquaint Grimeald with his coming, and to deale justly for his fafctie. Vnulphus presented himselfe before the new-made King, vfing fuch wife and honourable language to him , concerning to Partherites Partharites his King and Maister, making recourse to his royall mercie, and trusting onely in his goodnesse; that he would freely fubmit himfelfe to him, if he (with

the like benignitie) would vouchfafe to embrace him. So effectually did Vnulphus deliuer his Partharites

message, and Grimoald (eyther in pride or presenteth pleasure)accept it : that hee promised and himselfe befware vpon his faith, no displesure should fore Grimo any way be done to the King his maister,

brought backe this aunswere to Partharites, hee went and presented himselfe be- Conference fore Grimoald, meerely prostrate at his mosid and

feete, who took him vp graciously, & in Partharites. most friendly manner kissed him: wherevppon, Partharites beganne thus : Sith I am your humble vassaile and servant, and knowing you to be most Christian, and a faithfull louer of pietie : though I might live fafe among Pagans, yet, building vpon your mildnesse and mercy, I am come,

he might come when he would, & builde

fecurely vpon his faith. Vnulphus, having

and heere yeeld my felfe at your feete. Grimoald vling his accustomed oathes, Grimoald his promifed him, faying By him that made me protestations to be borne, feeing you have put your felfe in- to Parthatites

to my power, you shall suffer no harme anie and the honoway what foeuer; but I will take fuch order, ment he gaue that you shall live well and honorably. So he him. commanded him a convenient lodging, with entertainement aunswerable to his qualitie, and all things affoorded to him in plentifull maner. Partharites being departed from the King, to fuch place as was appointed for him; it came to paffe, that the people flocked and reforted dai. ly thither (having formerly knowne & honoured him) earneftly defiring to fee and

But see how ready cuill tongues are to commit mischiefe, divers flatterers and audacious Informers, observing the peo- are alwayes ples kind greetings to Partharites : repor- too neare ated it in fuch maner to Grimoald, that they bout kingsand incenfed him very strangely, perswading him, that if he did not the fooner procure Kkkk 2

falute him.

Sycophanes and flatterers

Pt in inflitut.de excuftut. vel

treachery.

he fell into an extraordinary rage, and in The death of Partharites is extremity of heate and choller, fwore the vowed by Gri death of innocent Partharites, wanting nothing but aduice and meanes, how it might both fafely and fodamely bee effe-

&cd. Now, because it grew somewhat late,

One of Gri-

Gentlemen

moalds owne

bewrayed the

The wifedom

of Parthatites

in preventing

the Treason

prepared for

and on the morrow the deed must needes be done; he caused (that Euening) great flore of delicate meates and wines to bee Cent to Partharites, purposely to make him drunke: that being ouercome with eating and drinking, and all his fenfes poffeffed with drowfineffe, hee might haue the leffe care of his health, and fo his life be the fooner betrayed. But a Gentleman who before had ferued the father of Partharites, and brought him these Iunkets from the King: stouping his head lowe beneath the table, as doing him reuerece and embracing his knee, fecretly reuealed to him, now Grimoald had concluded his death, and that this nightes iouiall drinking supper, must be a folemne induction thereto.

Hecreupon, Partharites immediately, (but very concretly) gaue order vnto his Cup bearer and Tafter, to fill and bring him no other drinke all supper while, but fome fmall quantities of water onely, and in his private filuer Bowle. So that the Courtiers (who were fent to keepe him company) quaffing and carowling many healths of the King to Partharites, defiring him still to pledge them in like manner, as thereby expressing his loue to the King: Partharites accepted all their feuerall charges, protesting all honor and reuerence to Grimeald, rowfling vp cup after cup as readily as they, feeming as merrie as any of thein all, and yet drank nothing elle but water. Supper being ended, and the Courtiers returning back to the king, reported the jocond behavior of Partharites, and how forward still he was in turning off his owne Bolle, as readily as they did theirs, and never refused to pledge his

the death of Partharites, hee would bee | Highnesse health, thinking him to be very farre fpent with wine. Whereat Grimoald heartily rejoycing, merrily faide; Alas poore filly Drunkard, little thinkes hee, that The best and the Wine and his blood wil lye mingled on the earth to morrow together, in despith of all may somitime the friends he hath.

The same night, he sent strong guards to watch about the house where Partharites was lodged, because he should have no meanes to escape, nor any frends com to give him assistance. But the poor harmleffe Prince, when supper was past, and al the Courtiers departed thence (remayning alone in his Chamber, & none with Partharites him but Vnulphus, and a Page that vsed hisdanger to to waite neerest about, to helpe his Gar- Vnulphus and ments both off and on, they beeing both his Page. his faithfull teruants, and in whom he reposed most confidence :) he discouered plainely to them, how peremptorily his death was concluded on by Grimoald, and what a strong watch was set round about his lodging, To that now their poor Lord and Maisters life must needs perish by his

Vnulphus having a prompt and readie witte, louing his Lord deerely, & caring The cleanely for no danger to himselfe, so hee might phus to save fet him free from perill: by means of certified his taine Blankers belonging to a bedde, and a Beares skinne which he found there in his chamber by channee, fo substantially he difguifed Partharites, that it was impoffible to diftinguish him from a meere

Country Boore or Pezant, and his coun-

terfeiting drunkennesse, made the mat-

ter to seeme the more likely. Vnulphus

had gotten a good traggot-flick, and pre-

tending sweating, with beating that drun

ken Rascall (for so, and somtimes worse

matter? Hee answered, faying : Here is tharites.

adrunken slaue, who while the Lordes

were beere at Supper with Partharites,

hath fecretly gotten in , and stolne him-

felfe starke drunke; keeping such a terri-

ble noise, that my Lord (who is as drunk

as hee) I feare can take no reft, and by

no meanes would I have him to bee di-

he commonly called him) tumbledhim first downe the staires, and lastly out of doores, labouring fill as if he had given many fore blowes. Which when the Guardes there attending perceyued, they gainethithe demanded of Vnulphin, what was the creape of Par

quickest wit-

be deceyued.

futed well fo

delivering

Grimoald

fends for Par

tharites to

the Palace,in

cute his will

vpon him.

on effed.

from his ene

Of Partharites King of Lombardy. Chap.5.

No doubt at all made the Guardes of | & honesty; demanded, whether he would Vnulphus his words, but laughing, to fee chuse to live with him in good grace and the flaue belabored to luftily; fuffered him to drive him on before him, bidding him beate still, and spare him not . While the Guards flood laughing at this merry ieft, no man needed to bid them make haft, & Partharites being quickly got out of fight, Vnulphus returned to the lodging, which

Fuery thing the Kings fafe made the Guards the more confidently perswaded, and secured the King from all pursuite. Morcouer, after the Kings departure in that manner, the faithfull Page kept the doors lockt vp fast, till Vnulphus was returned againe: where they two only remained in the chamber, praying for their Kings prosperous successe; who arrived that night at the Towne of Afte, and from thence (paffing the mountaines) went into Fraunce.

On the morrow morning, messengers came from the King, to bring Partharites to the Pallace, and beating at the doore, the Page spake out at the windowe, saying: Good Gentlemen forbeare, his Mahope to exeiestie hath drunke somewhat hard, is very fleepy, and therfore I pray ye trouble not his reft. Whereto they in modesty yeelding, went and reported the fame to Grimould, who well liked that he should sleep fo long: yet fent them againe in all hafte, and howfoener (awake or afleep) to bring him away with them. The Souldiers feating to displease the king, came and knockt carneftly at the doore; but being intreated by the Page, as aforefaid, they boldely broke the doore open , & feeking for Partharites in his bed, found him not, which made them to demaund, what was be-

com of him; & the Page faid, he was fled.
Prefently were Vnulphus and the Page scized on, and haled furiously to the Pal-Court,& the lace, where being broght before the king; whole matte with vnappalled countenance, they tolde, that the King had escaped with life, discoucring the maner truely how, and dreading no infliction for the fact. When Grimoald had aduifedly confidered on theyr faith and loyalty, he called them fenerally againe before him; withing he had fuch an other faithfull Page, exhorting him earnefly, to keepe his loyalty to his Lord Partharites, promifing to recompece him worthily for it . Vnulphus afterwards was brought againe before him, and the king greatly commending both his wisedome

acceptance, or follow Partherites in the extremity of his fortunes? whereto Vaulphus faid, with an oath, That he would ra- The worthy ther chuse to die with Partharites, in al tor loyall and con

ments whatfoeuer; then live any where flant feruant. elfe, with all the pleasures and delights that the world could give him.

The same demand was also made to the Page, & his answer was the like in effect: whereon the King highly extolling theyr vnparaleld loyaltic; prayed them both, to Thehonoracommaund what sourt his Court affoor- ble dealing of ded,& go in all fafety to feek their mafter. Grimodd with Prouided of all things they could defire the Page, fen or carry with them, and securitie granted ding them at for their fafe paffage; they fet onward to ter their toyal France, in a longing defire to meete with Partharites; as soone after they did, to greatioy and comfort on enery fide. But first, newes being abroade, that Grimoald

had vnited peace with Dagobert King of France: it made Partharites fearful of fome close ambushes to be layed for him, & fo he might be fent backe to Grimoald again: which made him for fake France, & to thip himselse for England: all which calamities happened to him, before his two faithfull fernants could any where finde him.

Being on the Sea all together, and (in hope of good fuccesse) boud for England, they had not past a full league from land: But Partharites heard a voyce, feeming to myraculous come directly from the flioare where hee accident haptook thipping, demanding in this maner: Speake there, is Partharites in the Ship, or no? ling towards Partharites replyed without paufing : tvho England. is it that calleth Partharites? I am that most unhappy man, and (bleffed be heaven) heere I am . Tell him then (answered the voyce) his native Country calles him home, and further he may not goe; for, within three dayes, Grimoald is dead. Partharites amafed at this strange accident, required fauor to be landed with his feruants again; but could neuer know him that tolde those tidings of Grimoalds death, which made him verily perfuaded, that it was no mortal man, but his owne good Angell, that thus enftrucled him, after his paffing thorow fo ma-

ny mileries. Partharites returning home againe, towardes his owne native Countrey, hee was no fooner arrived at the limites of /talies but he met there with a goodly com-Kkkk 3

pening to Par

flurbed.

No

A goodly Mo naftery buil

ded by Par-

to the River

Thefinain

Italy.

on their heads, and Palme branches in their hands, who purposely attended there for his comming, and so conducted him joyfully to Pausa; from whence, the Sonne of Grimoald being expelled, he was there (by generall confent) created abfolute King of the Lombards, within three moneths after the death of Grimoald. He dispatched Poasts to Beneuentum, in quest of Rodefinda his Queene and Wife, as alfo his founc Cunibert. And being a man pious, Catholique, a great observer of luflice and charitable to the poore; fo foon as he was quietly seated in his kingdome, he builded a goodly Monastery, neere vnto the River Thefina, in which sometime he had concealed himfelfe, when he was enforced from place to place; dedicating the Temple to Gods service, and in honour of S. Agatha the Virgin & Martyr, planting therein many religious virgins, and endowing it with great liberality of rents and renennues. His Queene also, after her many troubles, and long feparation fro her husband, erected the Church of our Lady without the walles, bestowing infinite rich and precious ornaments thereon. And at length, Partharites (hauing reigned eighteene yeares) changed this mortall life for a better, to the great greefe of his louing Subjects the Lom-

Nor may we heere omit to fay somewhat of Garibald, Duke of Thurine, the A further beginner of this poore Princes calamiprofecution ties.He hauing infligated (as hath bin reof the Hifto lated) Grimoald, Duke of Beneuentum, to ry,concerning Garimurder Gondebert, King of the Lombards, bald, the Duke of Thu

a poore filly

treacherously: within no long while after, a certaine meane man, of little or no respect at all, comming to the Citty of the true original thereof, how, and vpon Thurine, and vnderstanding, that Garibald what occasion it came so to passe. would be in the cheefe Church on Easter day neere enfuing; flood on the steps of the Font for baptisme, leaning careleffely on his left arme, by a collome of the Tabernacle, being at the very entrance into the Church, hauing a weapon ready drawne vnder his Cloake. So foone as Garibald came to bee neere him : he (not in the cheefe Garrona Came to bee heere min; he (not Church vpon fearing all the traine about him) fudden-Easter day, by ly ran the Rapier quite through his body, that instantly he fell downe dead. Such as attended Garibald, being somewhat amazed at fo vnexpected an accident, purfu-

pany of Lombards, with Laurell wreathes ing the murderer, could fasten no hold on him, vntill they had flaine him, with many weapons being in his body at once. So, although he loft his life; yet couragioufly he reuenged the iniurious act, committed on Gondebert his Lord & Master.

CHAP. V.

what manner of men those were and are, that be called Doctors of Sorbonne, or Sor-



Am fure there are many, that neuer faw the goodly, rich, populous, commodious, and well gouerned City and Vniuerfity of Paris; and yet di-Am fure there are many,

uers that have seene it, or read the Antiquities thereof, may perhaps be ignorant, what kinde of men they are, that beare the title or name of Doctors of Sorbonne. For all other Doctors'are honoured by those Citties names, wherein they recei- except they ued their degrees: As Doctours of Lou-uaine, of Poittiers, of Doway, of Tholoss, by names of of Montpelier , of Pauia, of Bologna , of the Cittles & Tubinge, of Fribourge, and fo of divers o- Vniuerskies ther. But the Doctours in divinity of were gradued Sorbonne, beare their name, not of the City where they received their licences and degrees Doctorall; but of the place peculiarly. A matter which hath much amazed many, & raised doubt in divers other, that neuer had the happinesse to visit Parisin which respect, I purpose to set down

It is to be understood, as I have elsewhere faide, that the course of nature will fooner faile; then people be any other but as their Princes are, as Calsiodorms faieth. King Lewis, ninth of that name, reigning King in France, whereas other The holy life Princes deuted (cuen as to this day many of Lewis the do) how to build Palaces & vnprofitable ninth, com-monly called houses, for pride, luxury and prodigality: | Saint Lewis this holy & religious King caused Churches to be crecied, Hospitals, Abbayes, Colledges,& other places of pietyan imitation of whom, many of his Subicas, &

water from

Arcueill to

All Doctors

other strangers did the like. Amongst other, there was a Diuine of

the Kings house, his Almoner, and one of his Preachers, who was thought to bee provided of some good Benefice; yet neyther enriched his kinred, or fpent his revenues in vanities, as too many churchmen now-adayes vie to doe. This good

The place that at this day is called how, and by

Chap. 5.

man was called Master Robert de Sorbonne: but to relate further, of what Nation hee was, or of what Family, hath scarcely (as yet) beene discouered by any. In briefe, mooued in great pictic, and by the example of his King; hee bought a place, which viually was called in Latine, Locum Termarum Cafaris, that is to fay, The place of Cafars Bathes. And it is fayd, that Iutine, Gouernour of the Ganles, caused those Bathes to be builded, and the Lodgings of Clany, which then were without the Citty of Paris, and as places of pleafure: according as we reade in some Epistles, which Iulian wrote to them of Ansioche. The faide Iulian was afterwardes Emperour, firnamed the Apostata by the Christians. And then, such as pretended to the Imperiall Crowne, termed themfelues Cafars: as now at this day, fuch as are defigued Emperours after him living, are called Kings of the Romaines. In this place there is apparance, that

there the Cafars Bathes were, as enidently may be discerned, by the channells of hewne stone, which were found in the eaphysicke. And many times some such yeare of our Lord God, one thousand fine hundred forty and foure, at the gate Aquæduæs or Gutters for of Saint lames, when Baltions and Ramconneying of pires were then made, to refift the forces of Charles the fift, Emperour, who was entred into Fraunce with a mighty army. Which gutters or coducts of water, were continued from the village of Arcueill(fo named, in regarde of Arches builded of Bricke, as yet to this present are to bee feene; or of the Latine compounded word Aqua ductio) and reaching into Paris . Those conducts of water served well for those Bathes, and were needfull now

> of the Universitie of Paris (which have great neede thereof) if my maisters the Escheuins, would therein employ theyr

As already hath beene fayd, this place was builded to bathe or wash the Romain

to be renewed, to water the higher parts

fuch like, and was bought by the faid Ma- Bathes for the fter Robert Sorbonne, in the yeare of our emperors and Lord, one thousand two hundred three- Rome. score and foure. If you defire to know, to whom (as then) that place appertayned; I must therein confesse mine ignorance, al-

bonne, & elsewhere (specifying large rents & revenews thereto belonging, yet much enlarged by the bounty of K. Lewis 9 king of France, and others, calling it only Sorbonne) and finding it appoynted, to maintaine a certayne number of Doctors, who should reade publiquely in Dininitie; and and also of Batchellers to study, there to be lodged and maintained. Whereuppon, from that time to this present, the voon what Profesiors , Batchellers , and other Stu- occasion, and dents in this Colledge, did endeuoure the Colledge themselves so industriously, and became of Sorbonne fo capable; as there is hardly any other Colledge throughout all Christendome, wherein may be found men fo ready and exact in Divinitie, as they are that belong to this Sorbonne Colledge.

Emperours, Confulls, Proconfulls, and

though I have made good fearch in the e-

uidences, belonging to that place of Sor-

The Students in this House, are not (as commonly elfe-where) young men, but wel stept in yeares, because they have read publiquely, enstructing the course of Philosophie, which is perfourmed in three yeares, in regard there are as many parts, which are Logicke, Physicke and Meare there, that have made three courses, which are nine yeares, and employed by them in publique Lectures; before they will adventure to fludy or reade publikely in Divinities and therefore it is no matter of maruell, that there should continually be fuch fingularly learned men in that

Colledge. The Doctours and Batchellers, ouer & beside their being great Philosophers, are likewise very skilfull in humane learn-bonne, how ning, and vnderstand the tongues, Greeke, they becom Latine and Hebrew, speaking them (for the most part) eloquently. They are held in fuch reputation, that (commonly) they deale in the greatest difficulties, and in all Ecclefiasticall occasions, their aduice is wholly vsed; the Colledge being reputed as one of the best Bulwarks to the Romain Catholique Church, and fo accounted through Christendome.

The Batchel-

Vcrv

Admirable disputations of the Doctors o' bor bonne,& ho th ir order egan at the

Very laborious are they in their disputations of the facred Scriptures, resolute, and of great understanding, and the generall disputes yied in this Colledge, are on euery Friday after the Feafts of S. Peter & S. Paul, in the Moneth of Iune, vntill the folemnity of the Feast of All-Saints, the answerer standing there from morning till evening, and bound to answere all the Batchellors Questions, which commonly are aboue two hundred in number, euery one keeping his ranke and place: nor is there any Prefident, to support him that answereth, whereas all other faculties do not obserue any such order. It is reported, that this custome was introduced by a religious man, of the order of S. Franses, who (to make proofe of his knoledge) kept open the Schoole all the whole day: and his fellowes, coueting after as much honour as hee had; continued the fame course, so that what soeuer consisted in the will of the arguers and answerers, became converted into an inviolable loue.

Learned Doctours are as Affiftants there, to the end they may judge on the merit of men, and understand withall, to whom the prime places for Licences are to be giuen. And thus you fee, why all Doctors in the facultie of dininity, which receive their degrees in that place of Sorbonne; are stiled by an Emphasis, Doctors there are principall acts observed, to apfor antiquity (hauing bene one of the appurtenances to the Pallace Imperiall, at fuch time as the Romanes were Lords of this Chapter,) As also in regard of the famous men renowned for their learning and knowledge, that line (ordinarily) in a respect, the most part of the best Citties in France, Bishoppricks and Collegiate Churches, refort thither, to make choyle of their Divines, to provide them of Prebends, and other reuennues meete for fuch men.

CHAP. VI.

That the Law of the Emperour Senerus. and that of Solon, for promoting any one to Office and Authority in the Common-wealth (being first informed, of a mans life of good manners was much better then those of the Venetians, Florentines, Genewayes and Lucanes; examining after the time of their Iuris diction is past.

He Emperour Seue-2 rus, the eighteenth, of lefus Chrift, 1966.

albeit that he was no denist here chriftian; yet (after the example of Christians) experiments.

flianity) wold ordinarily fay: That it was great shame, to bee lesse sarefull of the life of a Gouernor; or one that exercifeth the place of judgement; then the Christians were, in the quality of their Shepheards and Watchmen oner their Flocks. For they observed a kinde of Siauis, or a Bill fixed upon Poalts, wherein were let downe the names of luch as aspired to any Ecclesiasticall dignity, and of Sorbonne, or Sorbonnists, because that examined their lines and behaviour with frictest severity. In the very same manproue the learning of any, that would af- | ner, this good Emperor, when hee intenpire to haue the degree of a Doctor. And | ded to prouide any man for the gouernthis place is perticularly noted, as well | ment of a Prouince, or place where judgment was to be vied, or what focuer elle Placards Bils appeared requifite: would first set vp pub-like Placards, or Bils of inscription, in di-feription fixed Gaule, as I declared in the beginning of uers places about the Citty, to the ende, vpon Poatit, and to what that if any notorious vice were knowne, and to what or criminal cause deseruing open detec- ordained. tion, in fuch as were named in those pubfacred fociety in that Colledge. In which like Placards: it was lawfull for all men, to accuse or set downe their blemishes & incapacities, that no wicked or vnworthy person, might be advanced to such degree of eminency. Thus enery one, and all in generall were permitted to accuse; but vet on penalty of life, if it should be proued to be scandall or calumniation, and thereupon, an especiall Law was ordained

and enrouled expressely. In my poore opinion, this Law feemeth much more honest and equall, then

Of Lavves for good Life. Chap.6.

those now adayes in vse, with the Venetians, Florentines, Genewaies, and Lucanes, comparison of who after the time of a mans Office is exwith prefent ordenations pired, or, that the limitation of his go-

A good aduice against

bue, then ne-

What kindo of men are in

equity to be

places of au-thority.

Mexander

Seuerus was

no Chtistian

et imitated

he Christian

n making his Edi&.

uernment ceaffeth : do then make enquiry, to cause him render an account of his administration, and then proceed against him according to his demerits. A wicked Magistrate, and publike Concussionary or extortioner, by giving a piece of bread to dogs barking at him, fo to flop their mouths: may thus falue his thefts, and other depredations of his vile life.

It is much more expedient, to preuent a difease, then to tarry till it come, & then to expulse it : notwithstanding, it is better late, then neuer, to the ende (at the least) that feare of fearch and fyndication, may retaine Officers within compasse of their

And yet the ordination of Solon (methinks) was farre better, whereby the lines of Officers was to be examined, both before and after their authority, as we reade in the lawes fet downe by Demosthenes. For by examining the life and manners of fuch as couet or feeke after degrees of Offices, Benefices, Knighthood, exemptions, immunities, gifts and rewards, if they appeare to bee foule or deformed: not onely they may be reiected, but also directly (in inflice) punished, & rewards distributed to honest persons, according to the merit of every man . And by an hermonious proportion, the purffe shold be given to the most faithfull , Armes to the most valiant; Instice degree to the vprightest; censure to the entirest; painfull trauaile to the strongest and best able; Prelacy to the most learned and deuoutest. And yet neuerthelesse, carrying respect to Nobility, wealth, age, and the power of enery one, as also the quality of their charges and offices: for it were very ridiculous, to make a Judge a Warriour, a Prelate a common Lawyer, or a Soldiour to manage cases of conscience.

Now for the better comprehension of our purpose in this Chapter, it is to be observed, that Alexander Senerus neuer was a Christian: but a worthy man otherwise, and when he made that Edict. As being defirous to place good Magistrats, to gouerne in the Romaine Commonwealth under his Empire (finding it full of exacting Officers) in imitation of the

Christians; euen (as it is faide) in the fecond time of the Primitive Church. And when (for any perticular Church) any need appeared of a Bishoppe, a Priest, a Deacon, or some other Officer; the Christians (in those times) fixed up their Placards, fetting downe the name of him or them, that fought to have such office and dignity: they did it to fuch ende, that if any vice were knowne in him or them; obiection might bee made against the pretendant, so to debout him of his requisition and fute.

And questionlesse, great need there was, that this pollicy should bee observed among the Christians; for the Pagans & Idolaters then (being their capitall enemies) fought nothing more, then some subject or argument, whereby to injurie and calumniate the Pastors and Prelates among the Christians, onely to make the odious to the people. And they that were The Pastours promoted vnto Ecclesiasticali Offices in and Preachthose dayes, had no other stipend or reward, but only some collection of Corne were very and other matters, among the Christians poore in the of the Churches then, to make them garments, and maintaine them poorely e- their charges nough, being provided of those places,& oftentimes their best affurance was most cruell marryrdome. And that which made men then desirous of Ecclesiasti call aduancements, was not (as now adayes) to derive thence large benefits &: reuennues: for then, there were not any foundations ordained, neither were any tenths leuied for or from them. But the Pastours then, in a most facred kinde of The desire of charity, coueted to enstruct the ignorant, Pattors in the and confirme in faith, intimidate, affrigh- Church. ted and dispersed Christians, persecuted by the Romanes and other Princes, onely for the Christian faith, and to encourage them for fuffering martyrdome, according as Enfebius (who lived in those times) hath written at large.

As for the estates of the Venetians, Genewayes, Lucanes, and others now exercifed in Italy, they are not during life, as it is The effates & in France: wherein yet it is not much amiffe, to have information of them, vpon thein France. the expiration of their charges, to cause terror in their offices successors, for best carriage and behauior in their dutie, least a further inquisition come vpon them. In France, estates and offices are exercised.

beginning of

worth and e

Doctours of

Paris are vii

ally tearmed

Deftonis of

Provision made by the Statutes of of France.

The observation of Spaine in the admifei on of their Officers.

How the kings of Spai carry them.

during life of the party in possession: but yet with caution, that if he commit any vnbesceming ace, to bee instantly dismisfed, and (oftentimes) death enfueth thervpon. But before any man may bee fo advanced, the Statutes of France have enioyned, that good information must be made, concerning the life and manners of the party to enjoy it; before fuch perfons as his Maiesty, or other soueraigne Iudges shall appoint.

The Kings of Spaine, cause information of life and behaviour, of any that aime at degrees and offices, before they are admitted to them. And moreover, at every fine yeares end, sometime in more, and in lesse compasse of yeares very often; secret enquiries & informations are made, of all Officers in enery Seigneury: as in all the Spaines, the Kingdomes of 24ples, Sicily, Millaine, the lower Countries of Germany, the County of Bourgongne, the Dutchy of Luxembourg, and other, & namely of the places where they exercise their Offices. And if the King do finde, that they mis-behaued themselues; his Councell deposeth them, appointing other in their places, of whom (likewise) the life and converfation is well questioned. Sometimes they are put to death, but very rarely, and many times deposed, yet without note of infamy : only giving them to understand, that the King is not well contented with their service. Heere is also to be vaderstood, that information commeth not onely against Officers of lustice, as Aduocates, Procurators, Pregnotaries, ludges soueraigne and subalternate: but likewise against Ecclesiasticks. and men of warre. By which means, every one is compelled to containe himfelfe within compasse of duty; and beside, the estates & offices are not vendible.

CHAP. VII.

Of the reason and cause, why both some Princes, and also some Common-wealths, have alwaies prosperously flourished in the times of warre; and in peacefull dayes have runne to decay and ruine.

Lthough I discourse in this Chapter, Athat fome Princes and Common-

wealths have bin very happy and fucceffull, in times of wars and molestations; Peaceiral. and contrariwife, in times of peace haue wayes tobe become vicious, running on to ruine and fore war in adesolation : yet I neyther will, or do ther- ny Kingdome. by inferre, that warre is to bee effeemed more necessary then peace. But I will thew the causes whereby (not all Common-wealths, nor all Princes in generall) yet many lived more vertuously & happily in the times of war, then in their eafier dayes of peace. And that fo foone as they came to enjoy peace; they fell into ruine, vtterly losing all their greatnesse & splendour. Euen like vnto Iron, which not being vsed or handled, or whereof no frequent employment is made; rufteth and confumeth of it selfe. And this enfired by In Sunshine no other occasion, but only through negdayes men ligence and want of respect, that when have greatest they enioyed the Sunny daies of peace; the state of the no discreete order was taken, for institution of good life and pollicie, and how to make vie (as men ought to doe) of fuch fweet tranquility. Before I come to approoue my fay-

ings by examples, I would first make a briefe relation, concerning the actions of The fruit are men ofwarre; to demonstrate, that it is but bad that (almost) veterly incredible, that any good war, be it neneffe can deriue it felfe from war. For, wer fo iuftly who is a greater enemy to the peacefull followed. man, then the furious Soldior? To the milde, meeke countriman, then the bloody Warriour? To the Philosopher, then the fierce Captaine? To the wife, then fooles? Because the greatest delight and felicity of warriors, is, to forradge Countries, rob the husbandmen, burne Towns and Villages, to massacre good men, to giue all licence to the wicked, to befrege, Batter, force and ransacke houses, to kill olde and young, to spare no age or sexe, to rauish Wines and Virgins, to bathe their hands brutishly in innocent blood, to make a spoile of facred things, to ru-

inate Temples, to blaspheme the Name

of God, to trample (vnder their foule

feete) all right both divine and humane.

These are the fruites of warre, highly ac-Where warre ceptable and pleasing to fiery-eyde Solkeepes his rediors, abhominable to good men, & deteftable before God. Needleffe is it to
amplifie with words, that which hath bin
too well feene and felt in ouer-many platemosfe. ces, whose very memory hath startled the

foules of them in best fasety, and made | behausour. their haire stand on ende, that thought themselves of boldest resolution.

If then the case stand thus, and that war hath fo many discommodities and mischiefes waiting uppon it: how can any good enfue from it?

Further wee are to understand, that when Soldiours are guided by Captaines voide of judgement, understanding and vertue: all the forenamed cuils and mifchiefes are ordinarily committed. But if they have a vertuous Commander, hee will carry himfelte fo much the more modeftly. And like as greatnesse of courage & magnanimity, is a bright flaming Beacon, leading the way to all other vertues, and exalteth Princes vnto the very highest point of honor : euen fo it is vertue (onely) likewife, that most discourageth the hearts of enemies, be they never lo potent or powerfull warriours, and (oftentimes) gaineth the victory, without a blow delivered on either fide.

Heereof Lintend to fet downe some

examples, that in the Roman Common-

wealth, and in the times of their war, there

was greater store of vertuous minded

men, then when they lived in peace and

quietnesse. First let varemember Furius

Camillus, who having fent backe the chil-

dren, which the Schoole-Master had

brought into his Campe, to make them

bondslaues to the Romanes; conquered

the Citty without one blow fmitten,

which neuerthelesse was very strong, and

well furnished with al warlike munition.

which Pyrrhus had freely delinered, not

fuffering the meanest of them to stand

beholding to fo great a King. And Sci-

pio, who (without any paine) conquered

a great part of both the Spaines: by fend-

ing a lady of rare beauty to her husband,

the Prince of Celtiberia, according to the

example of Cyrus . Thefe fo generous

and vertuous actions, tooke away all

courage from enemies, to make war any

longer against such magnanimous peo-

ple; who neither could conquer, nor yet

The Romane had more vertuous men in warre then is

Vertue is ma

ny times vic-

orious with-

lowes giuen

out any

Furius Ca

Fabritius,

And Fabritius, having fent the Physition to king Pyrrhus, that had promifed to poifon him, and refused the moity of his Kingdomes: although he was one of the

Vertue can neuer conquer by cow

And yet this was much better made knowne, after the great day at Cannas, when Hinmball had puteight thousand prisoners to their ransome, as an hundred his 8000 Ro-Crownes each man, and one bearing cre- mane prifodite for another: hoping vndoubtedly, ners. that the Romanes having loft fo many men, would not be flacke in paying their ransome. But it was flatly forbidden (by the Senates especial decree) that not one prisoner of them al should be redeemed. Whereat Hinniball (faith Polybius) was fo amazed, avail his courage quite forfookehims. Whereas on the contrary, the Romanes fecured their state the better, which was threwdly thaken, and veterly abandoned (as it were) of all friends and confederates. For the judgement of the Senate was wife and honourable, because Hanniball, having to much Romane blood to spil at his pleasure, rhoght to empty their Treasury of money, and draw eight hundred thousand Crownes from them, which they rather chose to grounded on spare, then to redeeme the very scum and cowards of all the Roman Army. Whervpon, and thence forward, eucry one took a resolution to conquer or dye; & So became dreadfull and inuincible. And like as their hearts never failed them in their greatest losses; so were they never conquered by arrogancy in their victories. And therefore, in the time of war, the Romanes more expressed their greatneffe in courage, then in peace they could

Charles the eight of that name, King | The honouraof France, in the voyage which hee made lication of into Italy, to conquer the Kingdomes of 8.Kingor Naples and Sicily, they belonging to him, France. very poorest Romane Gentlemen, and | as he pretended: at the surprizal of a Citcaused the prisoners ransome to be paide, ty, a very goodly Lady was brought vnto him, whom he would not touch; but fent her away (and great gifts with her) to her husband. By this acte of chaftity he foed fo well, that most part of the Townes and Citties as he paffed along, brought their keyes unto him, and conquered (the more cafily) the Kingdomes hee laide clayme to. And yet nevertheleffe, this King had Ladies (fometimes) at commaund in his owne Court, albeit very fecretly.

So long as Caius Marius followed war. he performed many braue and vertuous Matins, for be conquered, by base or unbesceming exploits therein, largely encreasing (with long as he

The fame & reputation of great Warriour,

The misfor-

tune that idle

nefle & negli

gence brogh to Marius and

Eafe hath bi

reputed the

Nurfle of ty

ranny.

Thed the Cymbrians in Gaule, and the Germanes that were entred into Italy, and feauen times was he made Confull, euen in iust regard of his great deseruings. But when he ceassed from being a Warriour, addicting himselfe to idlenesse, and desifiring to liue in peace: aspiring by his ambition to tyranny, he caused about tenne thousand Cittizens to dye wretchedly, & ended his owne life in miserable exile. And the very fame did Sylla, who was e-

great Provinces) his Country and Com-

mon-wealth of Rome. As having con-

quered Jugarthe, King of the Numidians,

and made an absolute surrender of his

Kingdome to Rome: hee likewise vanqui-

steemed one of the most fortunate men in his time; who in a ranged battaile, ouerthrew Mithridates neere to Charonea; and his Lieutenant at another time after, not farre from Athens. He vanquished also the Medes, and the Dardanians or Troyan he put Carbo to flight, & droue him quite out of Italy; winning the battaile likewife against Marius; and so long as he followed the warres, lived most nobly and vertuoufly. But being returned home to his house, and living there in peace; hee became a tyrant and butcher of the Cittizens; so that (in one day) he commanded nine thousand of them to be flaine, promifing a certaine stipend or wages, to any one that brought him a Romane Cittizens head.

While Pombey managed Armes, and

was a braue Commander in Armies; hee The renown of Pompey lo long as he followed was esteemed the most vertuous man the living!. For he restored the Kingdome of Numidia to Massinissa, which Hiarbas had vsurped from him. He vanquished Sertorius, King of Portugall, ending also the most dangerous warre of the Pyrats, and ouercame Mithridates, King of Pontus, conftraining him to flay himselfe. He warred in the Northerne parts, conquered Albania, Morea, the Heuioches, Caspia, Hiberia, and afterwards (in the East) furmoun ed the Parthians, Arabians, and fubiceted Indea belide. But afterward, the Romane people hauing no longer warre, and

he returning home to his abiding; grew

entious against his kinesman Cafar, and

as by the precedent warres, the Romane

Empire had attained vnto vnspeakable

greatnesse: so by peace it impayred too

much, onely through civill warre, engen-

dred among themselues. In which refpect, many people and Kings shooke off the voke, wherein they flood tributaries to the Romanes, and fo their Empire (by little and little came to decadence.

Great Alexander, so long as hee continued warre in the East hee was accounted most valiant and temperate. And hauing vanquished Darius, finding none other to relist against him, he grew to such infolence; that he would be often drunk, & made himfelfe so contemptible, as he became despised of his owne people, his friends and kindred, who caused him to dye by poison, having scarfely attained to the age of thirty yeares.

So long as the Lacedemonians had braue

warlike Kings and Captaines, and found

them imployment in warres, eyther, whe-

ther it were for defence of their owne Country, or for conquering others, fuch men as were Agefilaus, Agis, Archidamus, Brasidas, Damonidas, Euricratidas, Temistaas, Callicratides, and more such like threw thembeside; they daily prospered in all attempts they vndertooke. But so soone as they had conquered the Athenians, & pilled and polled their City under Ly fander, and had filled their purffes with money, making no more account of care of war: the sweet case and goodnesse of the time then seized on them, & contemning both exercise and military discipline, they became quickly ruined. For from all former times of antiquity, they commonly imployed painfull diligence, rather by stratagems and pollicies of warre to conquer their enemies, then by power: which was more commended in * Archidamus, then any other vertue elfe. They alwayes of Sparta, for to Telis, that

thunned peace, not as disallowing it to be

without light; because a Soldiour, most

often being in war, might (by all meanes)

march against his enemy, and at al houres

as occasion presented it selfe, eyther by

day or night. Patient also they were in all

externall injuries, as raines, windes, heats,

frosts, mysts, and in greatest hungers; be-

ing euermore constantly resolued, eyther

to conquer, or dye in the field. Which

extremities, could not bee exercised by

The

flothfull people, or living in peace.

Idleneffe and was the tuine of Great A. lexander.

and idleneffe. the Lacede monians vt-

good; but because it continually entited ture any dan them to too many vices. For the Lacede- ger whatfor monian Lawes ordained, that men might Countries walke through the City in the night time lafety.

The Romans, in those times, when they | about the State affaires : some vnder cowere not corrupted with forces of forcen nations, banished all the Gracian Philofophers, and would not admit any knowledge of letters among them, but for their vie : and no leffe hated they the professors of questionary sciences, then their books. They would not practife or learne anie thing, but to know how they might best bee obedient to Magistrates, and endure the hardft trauels in battels, to live or die. A Thessalian being demaunded, who were the worst conditiond people in his counrey, answered; Such as had withdrawne themselues from Military labour and discipline. A poet, named Archilochus; being come

to dwell in Lacedemon, was banished pre-

fently thence, being knowne to have writ-

ten : That it was much better to for fake the

A poet bani-fied out of L: cedemon for wating agent

The gods of the Lacede-

monians wer

pointed armd

and those of

the Greekes

The French

into long con. tinued fedi-

tions, onely by

Chap. 7.

The Grecian

Philosophers banished out

of Rome,an

the reason

Target and Armes, then to die in warre. Among the Lacedemonians, it was an especiall observation, to figure al the Images of their gods and goddeffes armed, holding launces in their hands, as fignifying themfelues to be warriors: Because they reputed nothing to be more vile & infamous, then idlenesse and vnarmed peace, being no way fo goodly in apparance, as Military vertue : and therefore they paynted their gods in fuch forme, as themselves alwayes wished to be. Contrariwise, the Gracians Theology instructed them; to figure their gods, idle, peaceable, and lying all along . And it feemed, that the Lacedemonians had good reason so to do bicause they imagined, that alour actions should be conformable to those of the gods: for, in painting the shapes of the gods effeminately, and so to follow them in like qualities, is to be pernitious, and unprofitable to the Common-wealth.

So foone as Henry, fecond of that name king of France, had contracted peace with the Emperor, the Kings of Spain and England, with all the princes of Italy, and with the countries of high and lower Germany, they all being enemies to him: he was venation entred ry shortly after slaine in a lousting, with a spield of a launce, entring in at the fight of his Beauer. All the great Captaines of France esteemd vertuous among all other Nations, in times of peace, fell to killing one an other, keeping neither faith nor promife, but proditoriously massacring their very best friends: feining assemblies

lour of marriages; others, by pretended feasts and banquets, proceeding on fo far in this wicked course, till they killed theyr king, yea & fought to murder his fucceffor. In brief, they leagued themselues daily one against another, and some against the State, growing into fuch factious and treacherous conjurations, that the French were thoght to be a most barbarous kind of people. All which had hapned, but thorow discontinuing exercise of Armes a- Discontinuace gainst ancient enemies, and calling them of mi itary dif in, to despoyle them of their goods. Like cipline breeds as the ancient Gaules formerly did, who in meere enuy one to an other , and having peaceable na ginen ouer the exercise of Armes, one part called in the Romaines, and an other the Almaines or Germaines, who were their vtter ruine in the end. And so they became tributaries, who were wont to bee the onely terrour of the Romaines, Graci-

Germaines. Seeing then it cometh fo to paffe, that fome Princes, and likewife fome Common-weales (as appeareth by our paffed Discourse) attained to much honor, and orderd their affaires better in their storms of warre, then in the calmer feafons of peace : and because it is not possible that warres should continually endure, but Peace must, and will have some time of fway and dominion: Let vs now fee, if there be not as good meanes of vertuous The Authour containment, as well in the dayes of prehend his peace as of warre; doubtleffe it may bee first propositi done more commodiously, and the waies on, and to effect unit pur. of compaffing it I will briefly declare.

ans, Spaniards, yea, and likewise of the

First of all, when there is no more occasion, for employing men of warre in a Kingdome or Common-weale : advice is to be had, what Princes, friends or confe- How Souldiderats of ftrangers, have any need of men dealt withall of fuch martiall qualitie, and thither to when theyr fend them in their affiltance, with charge of returning from thence agayne, when for them. they shall bee sommoned thereto. Not onely shall the State or Common-wealth be thus disburthened of paying such wages: but also of such scelerates, as ordinarily doe follow men of warre, the more fafely to commit their thefts and villa-

nies, without checke, law, or punishment. In like manner did Charles the fifth of that name, and King of Fraunce, who LIII haning'

By peace the Romane Em pire veerly oft it felfe.

How Mari-

Chap. 8.

by their buil-

Princes are

aptly compa-

loue to they

buildings.

A good aduise to discharge any kingdom of thecues & wicked perfons, who are dangerous people in the times of peace

having taken truce with the English, Nanarrians, and Britaines, beeing entreated by Henry of Castile, the Bastard, who made warre voon his legittimate brother for the kingdome. For Pope Vrbane had conferred the Crowne vppon him, in regard that Don Peter, king of Castile; had intelligence and confederacy with the King of Granada, who was of the Mahometane Religion. Morcouer, he was a tyrant, doing many things unbefeeming the name or credit of a Christian King Charls fant him fuccous of fouldiers, vnder conduct of the Constable Bertrand du Guesclin, who (by that voyage) purged France of an infinite number of Theores, the greater part whereof were flaine in that warre. The like did Lewes the eleuenth, who, having peace with all his enemies, fent all his foldiers (that rauaged ftrangely in his kingdome) to the Earle of Rich mend; who paffed them ouer with him into England, because he laid claime to the kingdome. By this meanes, hee ridde his realme of rafcality, and had fome revenge alfo vpon his ancient enemies.

Augustus Ca lars care of his countries

Henry Earle

of Rightmond

afterward K.

ot England.

Augustus Cafar, having overcome his Competitor Mark Anthony, and having no further imployment for war; was not so improvident or indiscreete, as to suffer his fouldiers line idle and negligently:but fent forty Legions into remote Prouinces, and to the frontiers of barbarous nations, still to support their militarie discipline, and to keepe all occasions of civill war, fo farre off as might bee. But Great Constantine the Emperor, following the counfell of divers Bythops and Prieftes, who were flenderly experienced in State affaires: threwe off his Legionaries and men of warre; which was the cause, that ancient Military Discipline became quite loft, and opened a gate to fuch enemies, as (afterward) inuaded the Romane Empire on al fides. For they understood not, that Lawe, Inflice, and the whole State (next vnder God) are in the protection of Armes, as vnder a foueraign & fafe buckler of defence.

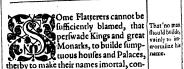
War ferueth good Phyfick, for a Commonwealth. to rid it of cor rupted hu-

Yet there is one point more, very considerable, to shew, that Militarie Discipline ought to be maintained, and warre made, vpon good and just occasions; for there hath alwayes bene (and neuer shall we bee without) fome theeues, murtherers, idle loyterers, vagabonds, murmu-

rers, and flurdy vagrants, which (in any Common-wealth) do hurt and spoyle the honest simplicity of good subjects, & notwithstanding the verie best Instice that may be vied, yet can no countrey bee intirely clenfed of fuch Cankers. The best helpe (in this case) is warre, to fend such vnnecessary members farre off from home-abidings, wherefoeuer any fitting employment happeneth. Because it serueth as a purgative medicine, very cordiall and convenient, for expelling fuch cor rupted humours, out of the Common-wealths vniuerfall body. Furthermore, in times of peace, and for better enjoying ty in times of the benefit thereof; no tolleration is any way to bee suffered, of such as have not trade or vocation; for idlenesse and negligence cause too many cuils in any kingdome. By this discourse then may bee obferued those reasons, why many Princes & Commonweales florished in times of war. & fell to ruine in the daies of peace; the best meanes also in both of them hath briefly bin deliuered.

CHAP. VIII

That Princes ought not to erect Sumptuous and stately buildings; as hoping thereby to make their names immortall.



trary to the judgment of Count Balthazar the Castillian, in his booke of the Courtier, who (in mine opinion) hath highly erred to write and approoue fuch a vanitie. For the end of all vertuous actions (according to the faying of Cicero, in the 3.book cicero in Tufa of his Tu(culanes) is honour, glory, and good renown not a dumb building, which is copo-fed of the sweat, blood, and means of poor people. Palaces canot mone out of the places where they are builded, nor can they make knowne the generous deeds of fuch as erected them : And men that dwell

o fmall vic.

by those places, and strangers that see or | Magdalen, for sinfull women and maides, M en snames paffe by them, when some fifty yeares (or fo) are ouer-passed, can scarcely bee informed, who were the founders, albeit their names may be engrauen vpon some stone or other matter; whereby the ere-Acers of Pallaces and prowde Buildings, are often frustrated of theyr hope and intention.

Moreouer, if it be well pondered and

considered, the fayrest buylding is but a matter of frailtie, and subject to no long continuance: for, when men ceasife from dwelling there, they runne in poasting speede to ruine and decay. And Princes are the occasion heereof: Resembling Swallowes, who will never neaftle twife in one neaft: Euen fo, the most parte of Princes dwellings become defert, like to King Frances, who buylded a great Tower in the Castell of the Louure in Paris, made after the auncient manner, and ruinated the body of the Lodging, by caufing another to be erected. Afterward he builded Madric, and then agayne the house of Fontaine bleau, yet neuer dwelt in any of the fayd buildings.

Example of Catharine de Medicis, not long fince Q. Mother of Fr. Catharine de Medicis, widdow to King Henry the fecond deceaffed, when the was Regent (although thee was well furnished with understanding, and a Lady of great honour) yet notwithstanding, shee fuffred her felfe, to be ouermuch perfwaded by some flatterers in the Court about her : that , to render her memory to posteritie euerlastingly, shee should erect fome goodly Pallace; whereto the yielded after a long time of follicitation. She had not feene the fourth part of the building out of the ground, but shee began to repent her felfe, faying: She knew well enough, that it was meere vanity, to hope for immortallizing by buildings, frayle,& fubicct to ruine in a short time, and so left off, from proceeding any further in fo friuolous a bufineffe.

The fayd Lady had houses of pleasure The Qu. Mo-ther of Frace abroad, paffably fayre and commodious: liked not the building of fumptuous houles, which but in Paris shee had not a dwelling, her children being come to age. The Louure, a royall habitation, was not sufficient to receive her and her traine: wherefore, feeing that the Court (in those times) kept ordinarily at Paris: Thee built an other of indifferent cost, in the place where was founded the order and religion of Marie

converted to repentance, and transported the religious women thence, vnto the Abbey of Saint Mary Magdalen, beeing much more commodious for them . Reproouing the councell formerly given to her, the would viually fay: That money might be better employed, in redeeming the Crowne lands, paying of debts, ealing the people oppressed with grieuous taxations; then to bee wasted in fuch vaine manner, which wordes right well became so great a Princesse as thee

Oftentimes the commended the good Emperour Vespasian, who never builded any Pallace, but contented himfelfel with fuch as were erected by his prede-ther was receffours : yet did hee re-edifie diverse and puted a very fundry ruined Temples and Theaters, wife Lady. and gaue very bounteoufly to Hospitalls. As the like did the Emperour Domitian, who was well fatisfied with a finall dwelling : and yet builded hee the Capitole, which was greatly decayed by age, and a Temple of his owne, dedicated vato In

The facred Scriptures tell vs , that the ding loft 5amagnificence and ouer great sumptuousnesse of Salomon, in building his pallaces Tribes of Ifand houses, were the cause, that tenne raell. Tribes of Ifraelldid seperate themselves from obedience to his heyre Rehobeam, and reigned onely but over two. I will not speake here of the Temples building, for his father left him all the stuffe and the

loft ten in his kingdome. It is right well knowne, by the Text of Salomons of the lewish Chronicles, that King pallace. Salomon abused the Graces and Bleffings both of Almightie God and men; for, it was not fufficient for him, to make walls in his pallace of the very goodlieft stones, the best pollished, and most splendant in in all the world; but he would needes illumine them also with exquisite colors, couering them besides with massie golde, as LIII 2 making

meanes, as needed for the crection of fo

holy a Temple. But the immefurable ex-

pences layde out on his Pallace, for fur-

nishment whereof, the people themselves

fo pressed after his decease: that they were

constrayned to seeke another King, then

his Sonne Rehoboam, who would conti-

nue the prodigall expences of his father

in building, and so (of twelve partes) he The exceed.

Coftly wood of Cedar and Cethin,wher of the planks and floores were made.

did of leade or yron. The like is to bee understood of the planchers and sloores, all made of curious and strange woods, the very worst being of Cedar and Cethin, without corruption, and fmelling most sweetly, resembling in coulor, the beames of the Sun, being to ingeniously handled in the working, that they appeared like most curious shapes and figures, as no men in the world were able to inuent, or counterfeit the like. And yet neuerthelesse, hee couered those costly woods with plates of gold, enchafed with infinite precious flones: fo that the very floores feemed to bee fecond starry Heauens; whereby may eafily bee prefupposed, what the other parts of his Pallace were. Moreouer, Salomen did not onely

build one Pallace in Ierufalem, but many

more beside in divers places, even as rich,

Salomon buil ded many more Pallace befide that in Ierusalen,& all asrich as that.

or rather more costly then the other. As that which hee erected for his Summers recreation, in the Wood of Lybanus, 2bounding in all variety of vanities. In two Hals he placed fine hundred Shields or Targets, of immeasurable greatnesse, and all of massive gold, each Target valuing (at the leaft) two thousand and foure hundred Crownes, as Empolemus hath recorded. The faid Bucklers or Targets were beaten with the hammer, and engrauen with rare and coftly braunched workes. He builded another Pallace in Gazer, more sumptuous then the two former were: which was quickly ruined after his death, and at this day the places are not knowne where those Pallaces stood. For the building of these, hee transiled and molested his people, who revolted from him, losing thereby his heyre and fucceffour, and (well neere) all his Kingdome; his Reigne (befide) being full of many warres and other miferies. Behold what goodly benefit redounded to him, by erecting fuch ouer-fumptuous buildings: for, the Egiptian people destroyed and pilled his Pallace before his

them with bi buildings.

The vanity of

Nero Claudi

us Cæfar.

Salomons

people reuol-

ted from him

for oppressing

Tranquillus declareth, that Nero Claudius Cafar, the fixt Romane Emperour, was to ambitious; that he defired to make his name immortall, by the meanes of buildings, which he intended to erect, and valued the price of his life, whereof I pur-

making lesse account of filuer, then hee | pose to sette downe a briefe descripti-

First he would have had all Rome to bee pulde downe, and then to be built againe at the Cittizens charges: faying, that the The reason freets were not straite nor large enough. Heereupon, divers leud persons (by him manded that fubborned) fiered the City in fundry places: hee intending afterward to haue it beare his name, and to be called Neropolis: which partly was put in execution, albeit the eight part could hardly bee burned, and because many houses were built all of stone; with engines he caused them to be destroyed. And as he perseuered thus in ruinating the houses, certaine conspiracies (intended against him) chanced to bee discouered to him; which made him leave off, and proceed therein no further. Cornelius Tacitus writeth, that hee caused a false fame to be noyled in Rome, throwing scandalous aspersions vpon the Nero.lib.3.ca; Christians, as if that they had fired the Slanderous city. And great likelihood there was, that laide on the this imposture should proceed from him, Christians, and to be imposed on the Christians: because he was a vowed enemy to all vertuous, holy and well affected people. In which respect, so many Christians as hee could apprehend, were bathed and an-

gers and night-walkers through the Cit-For continuance of his names immortalizing, and onely by fuch buildings One Pallace he intended . I meane to describe one, another manner of thing, then those which Salomen caused to be erecked, what store with all them of gold focuer he bestowed vpon them : creded by whereof let the Reader be Judge for what is heere inferted, I have traduced out of the faide Tranquillus, who both faw that Nero, and his Pallace, and auoucheth, that

nointed on their naked bodies, with

greafe and pitch, and then tyed to pillers,

and fire put vnto them; fo they feemed as

flaming Linkes or Torches, for paffen-

Nere neuer did more harmes in all his actions, then in his buildings. He erected a house, extending from his Pallace so farre as Mount Efquiline, which hee na- The descripti med, The House of Gold: and being almost on of Netsen finished, it was wholly destroyed with thunder and lightning fallings from Healing of the Health of Cold. uen, and yet neuerthelesse, hee builded it

againe. It was fo spacious, that it had a place for him to walke in, which was a

Gold,

Gallery

Gallery at the very entrance, containing a thousand paces in length, having three rankes of Marble pillars, all made with Arches, most proudly glittering with goodly coulors, having infinite fabulous Histories, and Poeticall figures. In that place also was a Colossis; of an hundred and twenty foote in height, formed after his owne effigie and resemblance. There was likewise a Poole or Pond, seeming as if it had beene an huge spacious Sea : on the Bankes wherof (all round about) were stately houses builded, so that it appeared to be a faire great Citty. Within the compasse of this build-

ing, were eareable grounds, Vineyards,

Paffurages, Medowes and Forrests, with

multitudes of divers kindes of Beafte, as

well wilde as tame, enclosed within high

walles, in the manner of a Parke, and for-

med with very atteficiall cunning. All

other parts of this Pallace, were richly

guilded, thickly powdered with precious

frones, and mother of Pearle, the floores

of the Halles for Dinners and Suppers,

were all in-layed with Iuory, and curious

turning each against other; that flowers

was one entirely round, which (by inimi-

table arte) was so composed, that it tur-

ned round night and day, like vnto the

must needs containe a wonderfull compaffe to haue fo ma memailes wirhin ie.

Planchers &

Tables of ad-

mirable cun-

world.

The building

Chap.8.

Annal et vit.

An admirable Fish-pond,&
a strage Dirch
for Bardges.

counterfer

Sea made at

Ouer and beside all these, hee caused a Fish-Pond to be made, from Misena, so farre as the Lake Anerna, all engire with Galleries: where the warme waters of the gulfe Baia fell into it. Beside, he had a trench or ditch made, reaching from Auerna to Ostia, for Boates to floate on, containing foure score French miles in length, and of fuch widenesse, that two great Gallies, with fine rankes of Oares might passe on front. Because if one should mount one way, and the other come againe to meet it : they might freely passe without danger of touching one another.

Nor could these Fish-Ponds, Lakes, Ditches, and other deuices ferue the turn; the charge of but hee must also have an artificial Sea made, which he caused to come from ve-

ry farre off, cutting through Mountaines, Rocks, pulling downe Forrests, and such like : fo that it feemed a worke of no mortall power, but as if it were done by God himselfe. To perfect this mighty labour, he gaue command, that fo many prifonners as could be found, were it for criminall causes, debts, or any case else whatfocuer throughout the whole Romane Empire (which contained then almost al our Hemisphere) should bee brought to Rome, and there to bee employed in this

And because these mighty workes could not bee effected without inestimable expences the imposed on the City of Rome (without exempting people of any quality) great and extraordinary fubfidies, and uppon the whole Lands of the feeling these Empire, wherein the Gaules (among other Provinces) felt no meane affliction, although they were (well neere) quite ruined by the precedent warres, so that they were confirmined to reuolt from his obedience. The like did Spaine, and great ftore of the Provinces in Afia and Affriwrought plates of fine gold, fo subtilly | ca, and (in the end) all Italy. Heereuppon, he fent out strickt prohibitions, that no Officer of the Empire should be paid The next way his wages, no not the Bishops & Priefts, to our throw who were paied by the hands of the pub- all together. like Receivers; neither could the Legions haue their pay, which caused great hauock in the Provinces whether they were fent. For he employed all his moneyes, about those admirable Workes and Buildings, and yet could not provide sufficient for that purpofe.

> In regard whereof, the Senate and whole body of the people, being no longer able to support those prodigall expen. ces; conspired against him. Which comming to his knowledge, & he perceining approching danger (being forfaken of all The end of his owne followers) fled out of the Citty, The end of Nero like to to a Country Farme belonging to one of that of Sarda his Libertines; where, by the help of one napalus. of his friends, he had his throate cut; for he was fuch a cowardly flaue, that he durst not do it himselfe.

Such was the deserued and miserable end of this Emperour, which happened to him, by employing his reuennes, and the goodes of his Subjects fo prodigally, in erecting proude buildings, and to no

Lilla

This

and sweete waters descending from the Roofe, by conuoyes of arteficiall conuciance, fell on them fitting at the Table, & after were received into the floores. Among al the Halles for banquetting, there

The horrible

taxations in

Neroes Pallace was mor fumptuousthe all them of

This one worke of his, was three or foure times more costly, and of greater admiration, then eyther the Temple, or all the Pallaces of Salomon, King of Ifrael. Of which (as also of Neroes) not anie kinde of noate or memory remayneth to be seene, and the places are not knowne where they stoode. And although men commune and speake of Nero; in these our dayes, it is not in regarde of his fumptuous buildings, whereby hee thought to immortallize his name: but for his abhominable whooredomes, parricides, and infamous life, which hee ledde fo long as hee lived. Whereof, at this time, I desire not to make anie more mention: for fo many Historians have written therof, and especially Tranquillus (Authour of all that hitherto hath beene spoken) as I must send them to his Volumes, which are defirous to reade any more of his life and actions.

CHAP. IX.

who was the first, among st all other Monarches and Princes, that commaunded, to present by writing, what soener was to be negotiated with him.

Very man of iudgement wel-may thinke, that a Prince, who hath manie Prouinces vnder his charge, and giueth command to diuers people; must needes be much hindered, from an-

fwering all fuch as are to negotiate with

him. And it would be a matter vtterly im-

possible for him to fatisfie al sutes and de-

A great troble to any Prince, ny futes made vnto him by wordof mouth

maunds made vnto him: if hee were not eased by some especiall persons, of good understanding in the State affaires, as a Chancellor, Secretary, and some such other beside. In like maner, that which giueth him greatest contentment, is, when men make their futes to him by writing, as in these dayes is discreetely vied: which was well invented (and to good purpofe) Tyberius, the by the Emperor Tyberius, who commansiting of petiduifed by him focuer, and likewise delivered his aun-

fwers by writing. The reason was, to the end that nothing might escape, till it had beene confidered on so well as possibly might be: For, by ouer much talking, and communicating himselfe too often, a Prince may commit divers errors, which will cause him to be misprised, or meanely esteemed. And it neuer ought to bee (as an auncient Greeke faid) That a Prince (bould freake any otherwise before the people, then as if he were in a stately Tragedy.

But some may object vnto mee, That this is not the true state of a Prince; for, in doing justice to his people; hee should heare theyr complaints and greenances, understanding from each mans mouth, the vigent occasions constraining them thereunto, which are ordinarily suppresfed, or elfe difguyfed by others manna-

I am not of the minde, to have him fo conceale himselse, that hee should not be seene but very seldome, or neuer. As now-adayes the Kings in the East Indiaes in this case at vic to doe, and especially the King of ledged, and to Borney, who never speaketh, but onely to his wife and children. When hee is to fpeake to other, hee doth it by a Gentleman, through a place made of purpole, where he can not be feene, but hath the wordes conneyed from the Gentlemans mouth to his eare, thorow the hollow paffage of a Truncke : as hee did vnto the The King! in Ambaffadour of the King Catholique, the East Indi and as wee reade in the Histories of the of their fight

little, as standing vpon his greatnesse and majestie; regarde is yet to be had to his quality and power. For, it is not feemely that a petty Prince should counterfeit maiestic the the great Kings of Aethiopia, of Tartaria, Power. Persia and Turkie, who (indeed) will not have their subjects to looke directly ypon them: because, they are not so much redoubted for power, as they are for maieftie, as they expresse sufficiently, when they will be seene of their Subjects. And if fome fay, that the Princes of the East and South should gouerne in that maner, and not they of the West and North: I holde it to be all one in the maine regard. For, it is knowne well enough, that the

But although he shew himselfe very

Kings of England, Sweden, Denmarke and life misley to towards their Subiecas, then the King of their Subiecas to the subject towards their Subiecas, then the King of their Subiecas to the subject towards their Subiecas to the subject to the subje France.

Good and fub fantiall reafone, why prin negotiat with writing,rather then con

Demetrius

made a fcorn

Plut in vit.De

Bold affron-

Chap.9.

France, and the King of Moscouia, much of expedition which the required of him, more then all the reft: and yet perhappes they are not leffe, but (it may bee) better obeved.

Now let vs returne againe to our purpole, of conferring with a Prince by petition or writing, whereby many commodities enfue voto him. For first (as hath already bene faid) he vieth no communication by that meanes, nor thewes himselse too familiar with his people. fer in person which contayneth him still in the farre greater effeeme.

Another reason is, that either if he will not, or cannot grant the demands monued vnto him : if he make refufall, he can receiue no shame or disgrace therbysconfidering, that the written paper will not blush.

Moreouer, answere is returned with the more affured judgment, by the time allowed to fet downe the Princes Will: which cannot be fo well done, fpeaking with him face so face. For oftentimes, he may be incited to anger, by mooning the matter disorderly, or else vppon some other occasion, whereby he may answere farre from his owne minde. Or els it may happen in some intemperate time; for all Princes are not alike in diet; & then gifts fo immense; and of such importance may be granted, as the whole State shall fare the worfe for it.

All which approounth not, that hee should despise to answer requests, being made to him by his people : least it happen to him, as it did to Demetrius, who quarrelled the kingdome of Epyre aof his fubic As gainst Pyrrhus. Hee having receyued a great number of petitions, kept them all in the lap of his cloake; and, paffing ouer the bridge of a River; he let them all fall downe into the water, according as wee reade in Plutarke. Whereupon, his subiects feeing themselves so contemned. conceined capitall hatred against him: & (soone after) he was forsaken of his Army, who yeelded themselues & the kingdome to Pyrrhus, and so he won it with-

It hath bene observed also, that princes, liftening verbally to the futes and retings receised by Princes, only through speaking with quests of their subjects, have mette with bold and infolent confronters. As the woman, who was put off day by day by Phillip, King of Neacedon, in some matter

out fighting.

whereupon the fayd: If thou neither wilt, nor canft do instice : depofe thy felfe, and another will give it me : faucily freming (by this meanes) to taxe the King with neglect and carelefnesse. The very like words vsed Ioane de Pierre busiere, a Ladie of Chambaret, to King Charles the ninth, he being in the City of Bordeaux, where the demanded inflice of him against the murtherer of her husband.

A certaine Rouer of the Sea was taken, who was reported, to bee the most fea, that was cruell and detestable Pyrat, that euer was taken and heard of. Alexander the Great, woulde fore Great needes fee him and speake with him , to Alexander. the end hee might the fooner condemne him. Wherefore he demanded of him: whence it proceeded, that he would be a Pyrate, and leade fuch an infamous kind of life; having meanes to provide for himselse otherwise: As to be in pay with fome Warlike Nauy, where hee might receyue good respect; considering, that hee was ftrong, four, and a good Soldier, as it had apeared by his paffed course of life? With a bold and vndanted countenance, the Rouer returned him this answere. I am fayd to be a Pirate and Roner on the Sea, because I sayle with a small Veffel, without any other Followers: and The bold anwhen I meete with another, beeing weaker then my felfe; then I make some appropriati- lexander. on of him. But thou that makest thy Nautgations, with great multitudes of Gallies. and other Shippes of Warre, robbing and ransacking all Maritime Townes and places, yea, and uppon the firme land likewife: Thou must be called an Emperour and a Monarch. Full well knew alexander by the Pyrates answere, that his behaujour differed verie little from the others, and that hee deserved as well to bee punnished as hee: and therefore, beeing ashamed of so fowle a detection, he freely pardoned him.

Frances, Duke of Anion, and a fonne of France, not long fince deceafed, being defirous to fettle himfelfe, and to match with some Queene or Princesse that was an heyree made meanes of marriage vnto Elizabeth Queene of England, letters paf- lizabeth Q fing betweene them to that purpose, and their pictures. In the end, the Queen fent him word, that the wold neuer contract with any that fought her, except shee

Mounfieur of riage with E of England.

fwer of the Pirate to A-

The Arch-

ftria,& Henry

Sweden much

The Author

aduice vppor this Chapter

Prince of

might fee his person, otherwise there necded no further speech. The Prince, beeing perswaded by yong heads (as litle aduiled in fuch a bulineffe, as himfelfe) and leauing the counfell of more graue experience; went into England to bee seene, and with a very flender train. But beeing well observed by that Lady, he was found fo deformed by the small pockes, which had left fuch a deep driving into his face, his nofe also much mishapen, and some kernels rifing in his necke belide; as might bee the causes of loosing the fauour of so favre a Queene. Some were of opinion, that hee should not have gone, but to have continued the treatie of Marriage fill by Letters; which peraduenture(at length) would have wonne him grace and fauour.

More wifely dealt the Arch-duke of Austria, and Prince Henry, afterwardes King of Sweden, who made fuite also to the fayde Queene to espouse her, but at fundry times, and were fent for likewife better aduited to be seene. But they satisfied themselues to treate with the Queene by theyr Letters, and not verbally : for, by this means, they wer affured that the could not caufe them to blush.

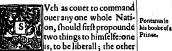
I conclude then, that this invention of Tyberius, was, and is very convenient for great Monarches and Soueraigne Princes, not to negotiate by words with their Subjects; but to expedite by Writings, because thereby they shall so much the fooner dispatch, and a great deale more

Moreouer, if Princes or Princesses, haue any matters betweene them to difintangle; to performe the fame by Letters and Deputies fent from either fide: for by enter-view and spea-

king together, litle good can enfue, at least verie fildom.

CHAP. X.

Of such qualities and carriage, as (necessarily) is required to be in a Prince.



delinquents.

is, to bee clement and gentle. For the Prince, which exercifeth liberality, shall make his enemies to become his frends; those of all other places to be his owner and of difloyall, faithfull feruantes. Hee must bee affable to strangers, chiefly such as dwell in the furthest parts of his Land : And as a Prince endued with elemencie. Of Liberalitie is admired of all men, and honoured as and elementy a God : So by these two Vertues, Liberality and Clemencie, hee is made like

vnto God; because his Office is, to doe

good vnto all, and to pardon fuch as are

med a kinde of rigour, at fuch times as

neede requireth: to cause seare and terror

in bad livers, and to punnish them rigo-

roully, if necessity enforce it, for the pre-

uention of a greater cuill. Otherwise, the

Prince may bee the cause of his peoples

loffe, if hee permit too much license and

libertie, in the performance of dishonest

actions; like to Aleibiades, who thorough

too much easie carriage in himselfe, cor-

I confesse it to bee true, that a Prince ought not (alwayes) to be facile and benigne to his subjectes: but that (with his ought to bee facility and mildeneffe) he may commixe a gravity and feuerity, fuch as may be ter-

> The divertitie and vnikenes

Seucrity out

circumstances and difference of persons, the Prince ought to vie, eyther more feueritie, or sometimes more facilitie (according to reason) and as Wisedome ime, place & judgeth it fittest to be done, or spared for ifference of generall good. Affuredly, in regard that the people is ophocles in An

as a Monster with many heads; there is tig Pomp Trag. great neede (as Sophocles fayth) of a maine and strong bridle. And as it is a principall poynt of Arte in a good Querrie to make a horse pace milde and obediently; euen

fuch is the office of discipline in a Prince,

to render his subjects obedient and mo-

dest. And yet notwithstanding, to do it

in gentle manner, and by benigne means,

not rudely constrayning them alwayes:

but perswading, admonishing, and repre-

hending fometimes, not purfuing everie

fuspition; but conniuing in light matters,

deferring a businesse in time of daunger

and doubt, to redreffe it at fome other

scason, more apte and proper. For, by re-

preffing and punishing all arrogancie and

wickednesse; he may the more benignely

entertayne the good, when humbly they

present their afflictions and requests vnto

him. All which is the eafier done, by vn-

derstanding the manners and spirites of

the people, because, such as are of rude

and harih brain (like vnto to those of bar-

barous nations) must bee governed with

more seueritie; then they that be of more

docible nature, who ought to be manna-

ged with mildenesse and benignitie, with-

out stearne lookes or vakinde manner of

and diffemblable, either by the nature of

the place and ayre; or elfe by custome

and manner of life. The Athenians, were

easie to anger and mercy, the Carthage-

nians fad, opinionatine and obstinate; the

Romanes great, benigne, louers of theyr

Country, ambitious end couctous of glo-

ry and honor. And therefore, ignorance

in the manners of fuch as wee converse

withall, doth oft deceine and disappoint

vs in our opinions and enterprifes, where-

fore, by the divers nature and cultome of

For, as a Prince (in civile actions) im-

mitateth the skilfull behauiour of a Lute-

betweene Ly- the people, Lycurgus was rather a fecta-

urgus & Nu- tor of power, then inflice; and Numa Pompilius Pompilius of iustice, rather then of po-

The complexions of men are divers

The office of Discipline in

> The spirits & maners of the people are by

Lespect of

erlons.

nist, who tendeth and diftendeth their cordes of the instrument, to bring an accord of tune as he would have it: fo doth hee likewise follow the Chirurgian, in order and meanes for tempering with life; because light infirmities hee can cure eafily, whereas to them of more perill, hee Apte compaapplyeth both yron and fire. In the farm princes imitation, a Prince maketh vse of the Rod and the Sword, according to the seuerall occurrences, and as they appeare.

It followeth, that a Prince ought to en-

feare of God before his eyes. It is neces-

fary also for a Prince to haue the com-

maund of himfelfe, and beare a strict hand

on the bridle of his owne affections : di-

recting first a good course of life to him-

felfe, to the ende, that it may ferue as a

For the feare tertaine good Lawes, and to observe the of God, and chiefest of such as hee hath made : but a- maintaing of boue all other) to have the honour and good Lawes.

A good dire-

Square or Rule sto measure the lines of other after his manners . For, very hardly Thall hee commaund others (fayth Pindarus) that hath not learned him felfe to obey reafon, the poet. which is the Queene of all things, and a Law, not engrauen in Marble , but in our fpirites , commaunding to perfourme lawfull actions,

and probibiting such as are contrary, and bad. Her woorthy enstructions, wicked Kings (being flaues to theyr owne affections) will not immittate: For, if thee were their Queene & Gouerneffe, they should bee constrained to contemne their vile-

nesse, and honestly to enter faire Vertues feruice.

The Pythian Oracle, by the answere it The answere gaue to King Crafus, That he should know of the Pythi-himselfe, was not to be vnderstoode; that he should know the glory and greatnesse of his Empire: but Reason, Queene and mistris of humane life, which appealeth the perturbations of the minde, and restrayneth the mightinesse of power : For, the Poet Horace fayth (by way of enstru-Ction) that it is a matter no leffe royall, to The enfirmerepresse appetites and affections, then to Horace. rule ouer people.

Latins regnes auidum domando Spiritum, quam si Lybiam remotis Gallibus iungas, & vter g. Poemos Seruiat vni.

And Agefilaus gloried, that hee had learned better to commaund himfelfe.

rupted and spoyled his people. And yet feuerity ought to be moderated for when it is excessive, and ouer-sharpe severitie : it afflicteth Townes and Citties with that pe is the

great miseries: euen as when license is fa- occasion of cetiously accommodated to the onely ance. grace and fauour of the people, it prooueth to be the cause of their ruine, by the lacke of a levell temperature both in the

one and other. Howbeit that in time & place, acording

king Croefus.

counted it much more honest and glorious, to conquer himselse, rather then to conquer enemies. A Prince should (hunne flattery, for if he lend his eares to Flattery oght to be auoyded by a Prince. flatterers, he will not alwayes bee himfelfe. Credulity is accompanied with rashnesse and folly, and there is no greater argument of folly, then credulity: therefore a Prince should not be too credulous, that is ouer-light in beleefe,

Ambition also, which is the Mother and Nursse of many great euils, and the Ambition the plague of Kingdoines and Common-Mother of wealths, should bee excluded from the many mifchieres & the heart of a Prince. A Prince that remembane of king. bershimfelfe to be but a man, and confequently mortall, will neuer mount vp his thoughts in pride; but purfue equality. If he perceive all things profper, and fucceed according as hee can wish : hee

will then beleeue, that God commandeth ouer humane occasions, whereof himfelfe onely hath care, and pride is highly

displeasing to him. I would aduise a Prince, to be carefull

mens merits and their faculties, as also the times of his giving promife, for the better preservation of his faith: because there is nothing more vnworthy, and villainlike, then to breake fidelity, and the force of faith is fo great, that it ought to be kept, eue with an enemy, if it be promifed. And in regard that faith (according as our graue Auncients haue defined it) is constancy and truth in words and conuentions: a Prince ought to be true, and to loue truth, in regard whereof, our betters and elders ordained, and by them it was most wisely instituted; that the Booke of the holy Euangelists (wherein the diuine verity is contained) (hould daily (in the time of divine feruice) be given to the Prince to kiffe, to the end, that being admonished thereby, to pursue and honour

truth; he should likewise remember, how

Of affability

in his lookes

& language.

Of care and

refpect in a

Princes pro-

An auncient

and exceller

ordination for faithful.

miles.

I could wish also, that a Prince should fuffer no man to depart fad and discontented from his presence : but with cheerfull lookes and gracious language, and fo expresse himselfe both vnto small and great. Whofocuer knoweth his Prince

studious he must be in louing her vpright.

then other. Alexander the Great, ac- | to be endued with temperance, dare neuer vrge any vile or vnbeseeming motion to him. O happy Marcus Cato (faid Cirero) to whom no man durst make any uniust cicero in Offic demand! He shall bee thought worthy of authority and soueraigne power, and bee reputed a hopefull Prince by his people; that (harply purfueth wicked men, hateth the intemperate, reiecteth lyars, & flyeth (as from the plague) fuch as adulfe him to follow voluptuousnesse: for whosoeuer takes pleasure in crediting such colicellers; his childhood in rule shall be im-

modefly, his youth effeminacy, and his

age infanty.

Whofoeuer holdeth gouernment ouer the people, ought to be free from af- Perticular re fections; for anger hindereth knowledge for whatfoeuer is good; hatred puffes him or Gouernon, on to imperfect actions; loue blindeth his judgement; pleasure and inordinate will induceth him to violence; paffion pricketh him on to reuenge; and enuy enflameth him, with a more hafty and fiery temper, then is expedient in him. One and the same constancy in courage (at all of what he promifeth, and to whom hee times) is most required and commended in courage in a King, as well in cases of aduersity, as all occasions ments merits and their faculties as also conform prosperity. And if God please to visite whatsoeuer, best become

> the vertue of patience in contrary fortunes, and not to mount vp in pride, whe affaires are fitting to his owne defires. Sloth, accompanied with negligence, is greatly hurtfull to a Prince, which in times of fafety, begetteth (oftentimes) feare and distrust, whereof the Poet faith,

> him, with any scourge of his divine Iu-

ber, that God chastiseth such as hee lo-

ueth, learning thereby, to support all with

flice; he ought to reioyce, and remem-

Otium Reges prius et beatas Perdidit vrbes.

Wherefore, to fhunne fuch inconueniences, some honest exercise is very fit For the prefor him; to play at Tennis (even till hee floth & negfweates) is wholefome for him, and Mu-ficke is very commendable; fometimes to hunt, and to ride great Horses is neceffary, for which Virgill gaue commendations to Picus, King of the Latines.

Picus equum domitor, debellatorque feraru.

Which exercises of hunting & mana-

Chap.11.

Of Birth-right.

Enftructions Dikipline

ging horses, were (about all other) frequent with King Cyrus, for encrealing the strength of his body, and greatly feruing for the enfiruction of Militarie difcipline. And patience, to endure both heate and colde, is laudable in a Prince, and is many times more expediens for him, then ftrict abstinence from meate and drinke.

Historic and Morall philo fophic fit for minces : and Poetric a dayу сопіравіол

these Sciences, shall receive inestimable benefite thereby.

the prince rerudition.

Comparanorant man.

Councell is held to be faaffect the Profesiors of them, alwayes hauing wife and learned men about him, and to execute nothing, vntil he have first ces and Captains, who highly loued and maintained Philosophers, Poets and skil-

Anespeciall looking (glaffe for all Kings and princes.

It is very necessary also, that he should have good knowledge in Histories, and (if it were possible) not to bee ignorant in Morall Philosophie, which may well be tearmed the Hunt-vice : also, to vnderfland Naturall Philosophy, the Science of Ciuile right, and Mathematicali Disciplines. He should be affiduate in reading Pocts, as Homer, whome Alexander had alwayes in his hand: and Virgill, fingularly affected by the Emperor Octavius Augustus . A Prince beeing endued with all

First, he shall become wife; for learning begetteth wisedome, next, they will yeeld him fuch vnfpeakeable pleafure, as no delectations can be thought or veterd, comparable to those that come from erudition : for, inquisition after trueth, is the proper worke and perfection of the Spirit. What is more woorthy in a Prince. then to vnderstand true & honest things ?

villany from honestic? In mine owne indgement, Laccount an ignorant mantines of an ig-I will not fay onely, like vnto a Statue or Image, or the truncke of a tree : but (almost) differing in nothing from a bruite

To discerne falshoode from trueth, and

If the Prince himfelfe be not feens in all these Sciences and Disciplines, it shall be a good quality in him, to cherifh and

heard the councell of them; For, Councell is a facred thing faid Epicharmus. And he should striue to be like vnto them . infomuch as possibly he may: according to the example of many great Kings, Prin-

full men.

A Prince may perceine, what account Great Aiexander made of Aristotle, and how much he admired learned men; what \ dement of God. For, although that the Deut. 21-16.

dignitie and praise Pericles wonne by the institutions of Anaxagoras; and Epaminondas by the fludy of philosophy, who (almost of himselfe) subdued the Lacedemonians, that commanded all Greece. He may further obserue, how Scipio kept company with Panetius and Polybius, learned men; how Augustus would walke betweene Virgilland Horace; and what honours he gauc to * Arrive. Finally, what * A philosodeportments were vied by many other pher of Alex Emperours and Kings, on the behalfe of learned men, and, by the example of fuch persons, himselfe ought to performe the like. The Prince that attaineth to the iffue of the qualities before remembred.

CHAP. XI.

and are required necessarily in him : shall

reigne happily, and the people that line

under the lawes of such a Gouernor, will

finde themselves more happy then he.

That the eldest Sonne ought alwayes to bee preferred before ayonger, especially in the Succession of Kingdomes and Principalities, according to the Lawe of Nature. And what harmes have followed by doing the contrary.



N Allemaione or Germany, this bad custom they have (I meane among A custome obthe Noblemen,) herued in Ocithat if they perceine their youngest Sonnes able of spirit, and ad-

dict themselves to Armes, and not to endure any injuries; they make them theyr heyres. And the elder, perhappes more discreete, following naturall goodnesse, & being nothing fo turbulent; they make them beleeue, that they are idiotes and fooles, confining them in prison, or else appointing them to Church-service. This maner of dealing, hath caused much war in the Realmes where it is put in practife : The Lawe of and the reason is, because it behoueth alwayes, to keepe the order and commaun-

Concerning

Concerning right in the faccelsion of kingdomes.

The Hungari

of the eldeft

The iourney

o! Pompey

into Iudea.

The equall

Pompey.

iudgement o

brother.

eldest Sonne be ill-sighted, lame, crooked, and wholly mif-shapen, prouided, that hee haue a reasonable soule remaining in him; he is not to be excluded from his naturall right. This is not onely to holde, and take place, when question is made about the right of eldership : but alfo, when the very nearest male by the fathers fide, ought to fucceed in the crown, how much deformed foeuer hebe. Because, for one inconvenience, a good law (hould not be infringed, and so daungerous an ouerture made in Monarchies. Nor ought that to be followed, or held as a good lawe, which was made by Lycurgus, commaunding, that deformed or mif-shapen children, should be slaine.

Heereupon Judgement passed for the Realme of Hungarie, by the States of the Countrey, against the disposition of Launcelot , King of Hungarie : who adopted Alanus, the youngest sonne of his brother, to make him King, and fent Colomanus, his eldest brother to study at Paris, ans held firmly for the right causing him afterward, to vadergoe the Orders of Priesthoode, and bestowed a Bishoppricke vppon him, to depriue him of all hope offucceeding in the Crowne; because he was squint-eyed, crook-backt, lame and stammered. Neuerthelesse, the State and people expelled the younger brother: and would have none other to be King then the eldeft, who was brought backe againe, dispensation being graunted for his Orders, and he married.

> Iudea, found it full of warre, because two brethren warred each with other, onely for the kingly dignity. For Aristobalus the younger brother, had inuaded the best places of the Kingdome, and quite expulled his brother Hyrcanus: because hee fayd, that hee was not borne, or apte for Armes. Notwithstanding Pompey adjudged the Kingdoine to Hyrcanus, and the high-Pricsthoode to Aristobulus, which was the chiefest degree next to the King; from profecution of his purpofe.

Pompey, being gone into the East parts,

to make Conquests, and comming into

Ptolomie, the first of that name, King of Egipt, preferred the youngest before the eldeft; Against the Lawe of Wations, faith Instine, and to caused the one to kill the other. In the same kingdome, an other Ptolomie, named Philconius, at the entrea-

tie of his wife Cleopatra, preferred the voungest sonne before the eldest: but after the fathers death, the people repealed the eldeft, and excluded the youngest, as Paufan in lib. Paulanias affirmeth.

In like manner, Anaxandrides, King of Lacedemon, preferred Doricus before Cleomenes his elder brother, because hee was more gentle; and yet notwithstanding, Herodotus in his fourth Booke fayth, That the people would not permit or Juffer it, because it was against the right of Nations.

King Pyrrhus making election of an The greaterhevre amongest his Sonnes, chose him rour of King that had the best and keenest Sword: neuerthelesse, after his death, the eldest (who was leffe valiant) carried the inleritance away. For, whatfocuer hardines, gentlenesse, fayre feature and wisedome, that may be in the younger, more then in the elder: yet it is not anie occasion. whereby the father should so forget himselfe, as to preferre the youngest before felie, as to preferre the youngest Desore the eldest, as did the father of Atress and fonnes of Pe-Thyestes, who would needs preferre the lops and Hypyoungest Sonne, because hee had better Podamia.

Hecreunto likewise I may adde, Lemes the Pittifull, King of Fraunce, who (at the request of his second wife) preferred Lewes the Charles the Baulde, before his elder Bro- mercifull. ther Lotharius; whereby the Realme became embraced with warres.

and more viderstanding in the affayres

of State, but thereon enfued bloudie tra-

gedies.

The like confequence came by Robert, King of Fraunce, in preferring Henry, the of France. first of that name, before his eldest brother, who contented himfelfe with Bosrgongne, because he was a coward and false to his owne heart.

Charles the feuenth, could neuer ob-taine of Pope Pius the second to advance the seconds. Charles the yongest Sonne, before Lewes the cleaventh, although the King had then good occasion : because the sayde Lewes made two attempts to take the Crowne, and to teare away the Scepter and thus the flowt warriour was stayed from his father, without anie occasion whatfocuer. And in very truth (as Herodo- Herodoins li. tus faith:) Toroughout the whole world, the literate and eldest are advanced to the dominion, even amongest the most illiterate and barbarous on taied nature.

the earth, they observe the course of Nature. When Frances Bizarro, a Spanilh Captayne, conquered the kingdome of Peru,

decided by

Tit.Liuius in

ib.8. Bello Pu-

A pretext of

inheritance

he put to death king Attabaliba: whereof | betweene them, as it hath often hapned all the people were very joyfull, to fee him dye, that had flaine his elder brother, to make himfelfe King, contrary to the custome of the Country, & conforme to the testament of the Father, who having two fonnes, willed, that Gafea the eldeft, thould fucceede him in the Kingdome, without any division.

Concerning wo Twins.

There might also arise a doubt, to wit if two infants be twins which of them both should bee reputed the eldest; that must needs bee the eldest, which came foorth first to the worlds light. Another that if any man (not being a king) having a fonne, shall afterward conquer a Kingdome or fome other fuch like dignity, be it eyther by Armes, or by donation. It falleth out in following dayes or yeares, that he hath another some; to which of thefe shall belong the kingdome or other honor? It is held for certain, that he who was or shal be borne, after that the Father became a king, in right ought to forceed: for the eldest son was not of royal blood. but holds of his fathersfirst conditio, who was not then royall by nature. But the other yonger-borne fonne, though comming long after the first, is truely & really a Prince by blood. Like as he is not to be accounted for infamous, and out of hope for being legitimate, who was begot by a man neuer made Prieft : but afterward, when he commeth to vndergo the order of Priesthood he begetteth then another Sonne: that Son is to remaine impea-

ched, and can neuer come to fuch legittimacy, as the first borne. Another difficulty there remaineth yet vndecided, to wit, whether the fonne of the eldeft ought to succeed his grand-father, or elie the Crown appertaine to the yonger brother (as it should seeme) because he is the neerest to the King, & the yonger standeth withdrawne in degree. It was the opinion of fome, and this difficulty hapned for the Kingdome of Numidia, where the younger fon would fucceed next after his elder brother, without any respect to the children of the eldest. Heereupon, Scipio the Affricane being arbitratour, not knowing what to answere in this case, betweene the Vnekle and the Nephew: gaue order, that the Kingdome | for, although the Lacedemonians had crea-

in Germany. Now at this instant, the Kingdome

of Moscouis is deferred vnto the younger the Kingdome fonne, after the death of the grandfather, without any regard of the sonne to him that was eldeft. Nay, which is more, the elder brother succeedeth to theyong er in the Kingdome, although hee haue fonnes: As great Bafilius, King of Mofcouia, succeeded in the Kingdome after his elder Brother, who had fonnes. And this was viuall, not onely among the Fandales; but also in all the Northerne coundoubt also may bee moued in this case, tries, according to the affirmation of Procopius, as also in England. And for this cause, Richard, sonne to the heire & eldest, was defeated of the Crowne, which was adjudged by the States to Henry of Lancaster, younger brother to the Father of Richard, in the yeare 1199 . And in the like case, Robert of Naples, the younger fonne, enjoyed the kingdome of Waples, An vefitting by fentence of the Pope, and the fonne to law deferueil the elder brother, King of Hangary, was fied. dispossessed. But now adayes, this rule holdeth not in the countries hitnerward, neyther doth it carrie any practife in the Crowne of France, fince then when it fo happened; the fonnes of the electrare alwaies preferd before the yonger brother, and the English observe the same course.

Somekings have bin to superstitiously affected, and (befide) very ill admifed, that ming superfit they would needs make fearch for the na- tious Affrolotiuities of their childre, to give to him the gers. Crowne, whose Stars appeard most to fauor him. In the number of whom, was Alphonfus, king of Castile, who by this means Alphonfus, would needs preferre the yoonger fon be- K, of Caffile fore the elder, but he flew the yonger, and caufd his father to die in prison; by which I find that he was but a poore Prognosticator. Wherefore, to anoyde citile war, which is the ruine of kingdoms and common-weales, the law of nature, (or rather the Lawe of God) ought to be followed. which commaundeth, to conferre kingdomes upon the eldeft, as alwayes it was practifed among the Hebrues : and as we further finde, that the kingdome of Inda was conferred vpon Iehoram, because he was the eldeft, as the Scripture affirmeth. Which also the wife Lycurgus imitated: should be enjoyed, by a combate fought ted him King, after the death of Charilaus:

Injuffice in Ptolomy the firll King of cheefest Cap-

taines : reigned

5.yeares.He vanquished Pompey & his confederats : Ptolomy he flew, & refored Cleopatra his friend (fifter to Ptolomy) to the Kingdome of Egipt. Returning home to Rome, hee was flaine in the Senate house, by Brutus, Cassius, and other Conspirators. Dioscorides then lived: But if you would have more of Cafars life, reade Suctonius and Florus, in the life of

Cafar.

3923+

3953.

Julius, by the fifters fide, and his adopted Sonne reigned 56. yeares : he was happy in warre, moderate in peace, and liberall to every one. Then lived virgill, Horace, Tibullus, Propertius, Vitrunius, Mecenas: And then died Cleopatra, and her husband teene yeares. He was the first Persecu-Marke Anthony, Egipt beeing then reduced into a Province. Herod a stranger (fauoured by Augustus) was then King of Indea. So the Scepter being wholly taken from Iuda; Iesus Christ, Godandman, the Saujour of the world, was then borne of a Virgin in Bethlehem, according to the

Icfus Christcame in the yeare of Augustus, 42. and of the world, 3963. Ouid was then in exile : the City of Lyons fouded : and then lived Titus Livius, Valerim Maximus, Strabo: and Francus, King of the Sicambrians, in the lower Allemaigne: Aquila, Tuberus, Galba, Labem and Caim,

Prophesies of Iacob, Genef. 49 . Efay 7. Mi-

10 Booke

17.

39.

43.

57.

81.

Herod the great murderer of Innocents; and there were numbred then at Rome, foure hundred, fixty foure thousand

Claudius Tiberius, the fonne of Liura, af-The yeares of terward Wife to Augustus, reigned 23. yeares, beginning very well, but prouing afterward to bee most wicked. Iesus

Christ (for our saluation) was then crucified in Hierusalem, vnder Pilate the Prouoft of Iudea: he faide, that A good Shepheard (bould clip his Sheepe, and not denoure

C.Caligula, Sonne of Germanus, a most wicked ma, reigned 13. yeares. This beaft, the ruine of men, made himselfe to be adored as God: hee poyfoned his Vnckle Tiberius, and deflowred all his Sisters, leaving them then vnto others like abu-

T. Claudius, Vnckle of Caligula, and monster of men, reigned fourteene years. He preferred Nero before his owne Son, by the treason of whom, he was poyloned with a Mushrome. Messalina, his first Wife, peerelesse in all lubricity and wickednesse, then flourished : And Saint Peter the Apostle lived (reported to bee fird Bishop of Rome:) Then lived likewife Philo the Icw, Perfeus, Mela, Pliny the elder, and Columella. Saint Paul the Apostle went then through the World, Octavius Augustus, the last Nephew of proclaiming Iclus Christ, accompanied with Saint Luke. Then lived Dyonifius Areopagita: And then was the first councell of Ierusalem.

Nero, the sonne of Agripina, afterward the Wife of Claudius, reigned thirtor of the Church, and did put Saint Peter and Saint Paul to death : he flew likewise his Master Seneca, also his owne Mother, and Lucan the Poet. Then lived Simon Magus, and Appolonius. Nero being expulsed from Rome, flew himselfe; after he had fet Rome on fire, to make himselfe pastime of a Bon-fire. Sergius Galba, in the feuenth Month of

his Empire, was flaine by Otho. Suctonius, Egesius, lib.4.cap.21. M. Silurus Otho, hee also most wickedly flew himselfe, in the third Moneth of his Empire: confessing, that hee had cruelly tormented the spirit of Galba. According

to Suetonius, and Tacitus, lib.7.

Of the Cæsars Monarchy. Chap.13.

Aulus Vitellius, brought vp at Bourde-71. aus de Caprea, being a vicious man and a glutton, was hewed in peeces, and cast into Tyber having reigned eight Moneths. He caused himselfe to be serued at his ta ble, with two thousand severall kindes of Fishes, and seauen thousand of Fowles, all at one supper. Suetonius, lib.9. Tofephus, lib.s.de Bel. Indai. Velpasian, a modest & gracious Prince a louer of skilfull men, and good Artizans, reigned tenne yeares, accompanied with his fonne Titus, who ruinated Ierufalem: Iosephus, Proclus, Epictetus. This

ruine was the most lamentable that ever happened, for therein dyed eleuen hundred thousand men : Reade Iosephus, in his fixe and feauen Bookes of the lewish wars, and Egefippus.
Titus, the delight and solace of man-

kinde reigned two yeares. He vied to fay, That no man ought to depart from a Prince, with a fad countenance : Cafsius, Neracius, Proculius & Pegafus were then Lawyers, and Saint Bartholmen was then marryred in India : Saint Matthias in Iudea : Saint Andrew in Scythia: Saint Mathew in Ethyopia : Saint Thomas in Bragmania. Hieru-

to eate their owne children. Domitian, brother to Titus, was a most wicked man, and perfecutor of the Chriflians : he reigned fifteene yeares: then liued Martiall, Innenall, Statins, Trogus: and Saint John wrote the Gospell, as also Infephus did the warres of the lewes. Do-

mitian would needs afterward bee called God and Lord of his people, wherefore (being greatly hated of all men) hee was flaine. Nerua, a good Prince, and the adopted Father of Traian, reigned one yeare :

he gaue more then an hundred thousand Crownes, to releeve poore Cittizens. He tooke away extreame taxations,& (wanting money) he fold his garments, plate and Pallace, esteeming his owne Parents and Kindred much leffe, then hee did the publike benefit. The Christians were in great quiet vnder him, and the banished repealed, among whom was Saint Traian, a good Emperour, but that

hee perfecuted the Church; reigned nineteene yeares. Being admonished,

that he was ouer-gracious to all men.hee answered ; That he was fuch to his Subjects. as hee could wish others should bee to him, if he were a Subject . Then lived S. Ignatius, S. Eustachius, Pliny the younger, Plutarch, Aulus Gellius, Suetonius, Tacitus Solt-

118, Aelius Adrianus, a man studious and skilfull in all Sciences, and the first Emperour that suffered a Beard on his Face, reigned 21. yeares : Iulius Celfus, Iulian, and Neracius Priscus, were Lawyers and Councellors to the Emperour. Then were living Ptolomy the great Aftrologer, Phanorinus, Dyonifius the Milefian, and Heliodorus . Hierufalem was repaired by Adrian, who therfore had his name chap-

ged, and was called Helias. Antoninus Pius reigned twenty three 139. yeares. He was a Prince of fuch effeeme. as strange Nations wold refort vnto him, and make him ludge of their differences for he had alway this faying ready: I had A divine fayrather faue one Cittizen, then kill a thoufand ing of a Paga

Enemies. In this time were Polycarpus, Ireneus, Iustine Martire, Egefippus, Appian, Florus, Macrobius, Instine, Galen, and Palladius: Lucian the Atheift, also was Talem was then taken; the famine beeing then torne with Dogs . This Emperor to extreame, as Mothers were compelled tooke away the wages or hyre of Strumpets, punished idle Magistrates, and was called, Father of his Country. Reade Eutropius lib.8. Thelefphorus the ninth Pope (as fome report) did then institute, or rather

> M. Antoninus the Philosopher (called Aurelius,borne in Gaul, with L. Commodus Verus, and called Brethren in the Bookes of the Pandectes) reigned nineteen years. This yong Prince being vnwilling to oppresse his subjects, made sale of all his fairest and richest Iewels, Place, and wearing garments belonging vnto him and his Wife. Eutrop. lib. 8.

restore the time of Lene.

Lucius Aurelius Verus, gouerned the Empire with his brother Marcus Antoninus, the space of eleuen yeares: By some Authors he is set downe in order before his brother, and by others after him.

L.Commodus, the most wicked fonte of good Antoninus reigned 13. yeares. He was strangled by his Concubine, & other Conspirators. Eutrop.lib.8. Orofius lib.8. cap. 18. Lampridius doth most amply describe his life at large.

Aelius Pertinax reigned fixe Moneths. Mmmma

194

181.

162.

221.

225.

238.

241.

247.

252.

194

195.

He had refused the Empire, and beeing defirous to reforme the government, hee was flaine by Iulian his Successor; who bought the name of Cefar of the Warriours. The people much bemoaned this Prince, crying out aloud: O Father of goodnelle; Father of the Senate; Father of all bounty : Farewell.

V. Iulian, reigned seuen Moneths, and being hated of al men, for fleying his predecessour, himselfe was also slaine by appointment of the Senate. Diffention grew amongst the Christians, for the celebration of Easter: And the second Councell appointed the day of Sunday, and fine other after, Eufeb.lib. 5.cap. 24. Metianus, Scenola, Martianus and Cafsius, were now Iurif-confults : Aphrodifeus and Aphronisu Sophisters.

Prescennus Niger, or Nigerius, the fonne of Annius Fulcus, indifferently learned, fierce, proud, and inclined to all vice; was faluted as Emperor, by the Soldiors of Syria, where he commanded, and was flaine by Severus.

L. Septimius Seuerus, reigned 18 years. He was a persecuter of the Church, but otherwise a valiant Prince, addicted both to good Letters and Armes. He was fo well beloued, and gouerned fo nobly, that the Senate faid of him: Eyther hee should neuer haue beene borne, or else hee deserued neuer to dye. Reade Spart. and Vict. Then hued Origen, Tertullian, Philostratus the Sophister, and Apuleyus.

Cl. Albinus, issued of the Romane Families, of the Posthumians and Albines. made himselfe Emperor in France . He was furprized by the Soldiors & brought halfe aliue to Senerus: where having his head finitten off, he was hanged on a gibbet, and being torne with dogs, he was throwne into the River.

A.B. Caracalla, the fonne of Senerus and husband to his stepmother, reigned feauen yeares. He flew Gets his brother. and Papinian the great and famous Lawver, with divers other. At last, himselfe was flaine by a Soldiour of his Guard. Herod.lib.4.

Antoninus Geta, the fonne of Senerus and Iulia, borne at Milain; After the Parthian warre, wherein hee wonne great fauour, was called Cafar Antoninus, in the life of his Father.

Op. Macrinus, with his sonne Diadume-

nw, reigned one yeare. Both the one and o her had their heads smitten off by their men of warre. Macrinus was learned and seuere, but (withall) detestable and crafty, caufing his Predecessour to bee murde-

Marcus Aurelius Antoninus Heliogabalus, the baffard of Caracalla, who was a dishonest whore-hunter, and most abhominable in life beside; gaue great estares to wicked Bawds, Panders, Jesters, &c. And beeing generally despised, hee was flaine by his Soldiors, in the fourth yeare of his Reigne: both his owne body and his Mothers beeing dragged along the Streetes, and cast into the common lay-

Alexander Seuerus, reigned peaceably without effusion of blood, 13. yeares. He was a good Prince, & did vtterly forbid the selling of Offices. Vlpianus, Paulus, Pomponius, Alpheneus, Affricanus, Callistratus, and other excellent Civil Lawyers (the Schollers of Papinian) then liued, with Dion the Historian, and Philostratus. The Kingdome of the Persians was then founded by Atarxerxes, and af- The kingdom ter transported to the Sarrazins, and now

commanded by the Sophi. Maximinus, a persecutor of the Christians, reigned three yeares. Being at first but a filly Shepheard; he was made Emperour by the Souldiors (without authority of the Senate) and then by them was flainc.

Gordianus, a Prince of a Noble spirit, with his Son named Gordianus the yonger, a good Prince, reigned fixe yeares, and was flaine by Phillip his fuccessour. In his time was a wonderfull Ecclipse of the Sunne.Reade I. Capitolinus, who placeth alfo Pupienus and Balbinus (created by the Senate) with Gordianus the elder.

Pupienus Maximus, a new man, and fonne to a Smith, gaue himfelfe alwayes to vertue and Military fertices, proouing fortunate against the Polonians and Ger-

M.Calsus Babynus, and Pupienus, after they had bin Confuls, and that the Gordians were flaine in Affrica; were created Emperours, by appointment of the Senate, against Maximinus, and both of the

were undeferuedly flaine. Gordianus the fecond, yongest son of Gordianus by his Daughter, borne at Rome;

Of the Cæsars Monarchy. Chap. 12.

> Phillip, Prefect of the Preterians: C. Valens Hostilianus, is not placed in this ranke by some Historians, because immediately hee dyed, finitten with the pestilence, so that scarfely there remaineth any memory of him.

Phillip, an Arabian by Nation, was the first Christian of the Cafars, and reigned five yeares. He gave (by his Testament) all his rights and treasures to Pope Fabian; and heere began the riches of the Romane Church. He was likewise slaine by his fucceffor, as he had kild his Predecef-

Decius Traian, a persecuter of the Chriflians, reigned two years. S. Saturnine the Bishop was martired at Tholouse. S. Laurence, Hippolita, Cecily, Azatha, and Appollina.

2. Herennius Hetruscus, is not by any Historian placed among the Emperours. Neuertheleffe, in this ranke is his picture found in the Booke of Hubert Goltzius, and there it is recorded of him, that hee was the fonne of Decius, and that he was flaine in Hungaria, in a battell against the

Vibius Gallus, with his foune Volusianus, reigned two yeares: Being perfecutors of the Church, were both flaine by the Soldiours. At this time there was fuch a contagious pestilence, and almost so generally dispersed, that in many places ther was left no creature living. This pestilence continued fifteene yeares, and feemed to be partly occasioned through the wicked gouernment of this Emperor.

Aemilianus Lybienus, borne in Mauritama, in his young yeares followed armes, and foone after he was made Emperour. He was flaine at Spoleta, being aged forty yeares.

Licinius Valerianus, with his Son Galien. persecuting the Church, reigned fifteene yeares. He was Captine to Sapor, King of Persia, who ysed him as a footstoole when he mounted on horse-backe. S. Cyprian & S, Cornelia, were then martyred. Porphiriwww.wrote against the christians: The thirtie Tyrants vsurped the Empire. Reade Trebellius Pollio, &c. S. Paul the first Hermite began the folitary life.

Galien the fon of Valerian, suffered the Christians to live in quiet, and reigned 9. yeares alone, after that his Father was led

was flaine in a fedition of Soldiours, by captine into Persia by sapor. He was ex. ceeding wife, but addicted to Luft.

Saleninus Valerianus, the fonne of Galsen, was flaine with his Father, being retired to Millaine, and was but tenne yeares

Cassius Labienus Posthumus, from being a fimple Souldior, attained to great dignities : and being in France, was made Emperor in the time of Galien, where he

Flauius Claudeus (of whom issued the family of the Constantines) a good Prince, of Noble Linnage, and highly esteemed, reigned two yeares. Dyonifim being then Pope, divided the Diocesses and Parishes of the Christians. Tom. I.de Concil. I amblicus, Plotinus. and Invencus Prieft, reduced the foure Gospels into Hexameter Ver-

Aurelius Quintillius, brother to Claudies, after the death of his brother, was faluted as Emperour by the Senate, and flaine 17.dayes after.

Valerius Aurelianus, a cruell man, reigned fixe yeares. He tormented the Christians, and repulsed the Franconians, entring out of Germany into Gaul. He was the first that wore an Emperiall Crowne : a louer of Military discipline, and one that rigoroully punnished the vices of his Soldiors. He vanquithed Zenobia, a very Warlike Lady, holding the Empire of the East.

Tacitus was flaine the fixt Moneth of his Empire. This good Prince caused the Bookes of Cornelius Tacitus to bee receined into all Libraries . The Manicheans began (from the time of Aurelianus) to infect the Church.

Annius Florianus, brother to Tacitus, being defirous to reigne, vsurped the Empire as by inheritance: but in a fhort time he was flaine at Tharfus, by his Soldiors.

Probies, a good Prince, the Authour of peace in the high and lower Germany or Almaine, reigned fixe yeares and foure Moneths. He faid, That he had no neede of Warriors, having no enemies; and that the Souldier (not doing any thing) ought not to cate up publike provision.

Carus, a good and wife Prince, reigned two yeares, with his fonnes Carinus and Numerianus, two Brethren of very different nature. The first, was most wicked. and full of cruelty: The other was full of

Mmmm 3 good-

271.

279.

286.

213.

288.

308.

395.

399.

goodnesse, valour and knowledge. Then liued Volcatius, Herodian, Lampridius, Spartianus, Pollio, Vopiscus and Capitolinus Historians.

Dipclesian with Maximianus Herculius, reigned 20 yeares: hee was a most cruell persecutor of the Christians, and would haue himfelfe to be worshipped. Katharine, Lucy, Agnes, Barbus, Sebastian, Vincent, Colmo and Damian, and innumerable other Martyrs through the world (in his Reign, to the number of 17.thousand)

were put to death in thirty dayes. Valerius Maximus, fir-named Herculis,a man of fierce and cruell nature, was very out-ragious in luft, especially with his owne fifters blockish in giving councell, without civillity and government, & therefore had Dioclesian to affith him in the Empire.

Constantius Chlorus, father of Constanfine and Galerius, the one gouerned in the East, the other in the West, 4. yeares together. Constantine commaunded in Gaul, Spaine, Affrica, and Italy: The other in Greece. Arnobius, Lactantius, Derotheus, Bishop of Tyre, Eusebius and other learned personages lined at this time.

Galerius Maximianus tearmed Armentarius, because he was a Neat-heards son, was made Emperor, being a goodly perfon, and a fortunate warrior. Maximinus, Nephew to Armentarius by his fifter, was Emperor, and perfecuted the Christians in the East. Seuerus, Prefect of Italy and Affricke, was published Emperor by Galerius, and fighting with Maxentius, was taken at Rauenna, and flaine.

Maxentius, elected Emperour by his Soldiors, reigned a Tyrant, and was like voto his Father Maximinus. Being vanquithed by Constantine, neere to Pont-Miluius, he was drowned in a Gulfe, and his body neuer after found.

Licinius Licinianus, borne of Country Parents, was fortunate in the wars which he had against Maximinus. Afterward, he became a mocker of Christ, and perfecuted fuch as beleeved in him; and because he was ignorant, he was a great enemy to all that were learned.

Martinianus, was created Cafar by Licinius against Constantine; hee was in his Camp at night, but fled before next mor-

Constantine the Great, sonne of Helena

an holy woman, with Maxentine and Licinius, reigned 31. yeares. He was religious and affable, and transported the Bible into divers Countries. He affembled the Councell of Nire, against Arrise the He- The Councel

reticke. He builded the Citty of Constan- of Nice. tinople, calling it after his owne Name: whither the Imperiall feate was translated, and changed from Rome into Greece, after he had granted Siluester to be Pope.

Eufeb.lib.10. Niceph.lib.8. Crispus was made Casar by his Father Constantine, but beeing afterward fallely accused to his Father, he was put to deth; for that hee would not confent to the inordinate appetite of Faustine his stepmo-

Constantine the second, with his Brethren reigned 17. yeares, ioyning thereto the three yeares reigne of Maxmentiue. Themistius, Donatus, and Libanius the Sophister then lived: and Saint Anthony the Hermite was knowne in Egipt; by many

Iulian the Apostata, held the true Religion ten yeares, and was named Emperor by the men of warre in Paris, against his will. Hee forbadthe Christians the study of letters: and beeing wounded to death, he cryed out: At length whou haft vanquished, O Galilean. S. Cyrill, Optatus, Basile, Nazianzene, Epiphanius, Hillary Didimus, Exuperus (all learned Divines) then flourished.

Touismus, a kind and learned man, reignedeight Moneths, and made confession to his Warriours, of the name of Ielus Christ. Now was the first order of Monks instituted by S. Basile, under certaine rules of liuing.

Valentinian, a good and Catholique Prince, and Valens his brother, reigned 15. yeare. This man held the error of the Arrians, and constrained the Monkes to vnderrake Armes in warre: he dyed vnhap-

Gratian, the sonne of Valentinian, during whose life time he was an associate in the Empire. He reigned afterward with Valentinian the second, his younger Brother, and Theodofiss fixe yeares.

Maximus, rearmed Emperour by his Soldiors flew Gratian, and held the Empire foure yeares: after which time Valentinian returned to the Empire againe fine veares.

Theodolius,

368.

381.

460.

476.

Of the Cæsars Monarchy. Chap. 12.

Theodofius, after that Gratian was flaine | perors in twenty yeares, who all flew one by Maximus, reigned three yeares with his brother Valentinian : the death of who was bemoned by S. Ambrofe for the great zeale hee had to Christian Religion. S. Hierome, S. Augustine, and P. Orofius then

Arcadius and Honorius, the fonnes of Theodofius, reigned twenty nine yeares, as well in the East as in the West. About this time, the great empire of Rome began to decline (by the infidelity of Ruffinus & Stilico their Tutors.) The very greatest part thereof was vied by the Scythians. times furpri-

Burgundians Lombards Hugarians French Goths, and Vandales : And Rome was four times taken by the Gothes and Vandals, within one hundred thirty nine yeares. Then lived S. Chryfostome and Claudian. Honorius reigned with Theodofius, Son to his Brother, fixteene yeares.

Theodofius the fecond, youngest fonne of Arcadius, reigned at Constantinople 27. veares, after the death of Honorius; hauing affified Valentinian the third, the fon of Constantine, and Placida, daughter to Theodofius, who reigned fine yeares in the West. At this time, the Frenchmen leauing Franconia, began to enter vpon the

Gaules, under Clodion their fecond King. F. Valerius Martianus, reigned in the East, scauen yeares, and Valentiman the third (at the same time) in the West: during their Reigne, the Burgundians and other Westerne Nations, were converted to the Faith. The Vandals came out of Spaine into Affrica, and afterward they tooke Rome, voder the conduct of theyr King Genlerichus. Attila, King of the Hunnes, entered into Gaul with five hundred thousand men delingred battaile to Merailess their fecond King, who had ioyned with Acuse, Lieutenant vnto the Emperor. There he loft an hundred and fourescore thousand men, and fled into Hungaria, not any man beging wounded

behinde. About this time was great Arthur King of Britaine. Leothe first, reigned 17 yeares, affociated by Leothe Sonne of his Daughter; who after he had reigned one year alone, gaue up the Empire to Zeno his Grandfire, who reigned tyrannically 17. yeares. The estate of the Church was then very

greatly troubled, as alforthat of the We-

Acrne Empire. Italy had then nine Em-

another. Anastafius reigned twenty fine years :

955

519.

577.

584.

493. he was an Eutichian Heretique, was smitten with lightning, and dyed (as a inft punishment) for his heresie. Fulgentius.

Iustine reigned nine yeares : hee was first a Swine-heard, afterward a Cowheard, next a Carpenter, a Souldior, a Captaine, and last of all Emperour, gouerning very well and godly, and expel-

ling the Arrian Heretiques. Then lived Boetius; and S. Bennet or Benedict began this Order.

Iustinian reigned thirty eight yeares. 528. All his care and fludy, was to repaire the decayed Empire, and re-establish ciuill right; in the execution whereof, hee was feconded by excellent personages, especially by Belifarius, Narfes, and Tribomianus. They first chased the Vandals out of Affrica, which they had held 95. yeares: and delivered Rome from the Gothes, who had conquered it, & yet were once more

expulsed thence by Narfes. Instine the second, reigned ten yeares, ¢66. beloued of all men for his liberality. Sophia his wife mocked him with Narles, the Gouernour of Italy, whereat he being of- The kingdem fended, called the Lombardes, by whose of the Lombards. helpe he reugnged himfelfe. Now was the Kingdome of the Lambards founded by Clebus, wher reigned thirty two kings,

vntill the time of Charles the Great. Tiberius the second reigned 7.yeares : he was a very charitable man, one that loued God and his Saints, and therefore (no doubt) was beloued of him againe.

Mauritius reigned twenty yeares : he was descended of very meane Parentage, and (in the end) was murdered for his conotoufnesse: a vice as much discommendable in a Prince, as liberality is befeeming, and maketh him renowned.

Phocas reigned eight yeares : and being the murderer of his Predeceffor himfelfe was likewife murdered, with all his Race. Nowwas the contention for the Contention Primacy of the Church, hetweene Rome for Primacy and Constantinople, and now was S. Gre- of the church.

Heraclius reigned thirty yeares, who was the murderer of Phocas. The fifteenth yeare of his reigne, began the rule of Mahomet, the false Prophet of Arabia, where were the Agarens & Sarrazins: to whom

612.

310.

641

643

670

687.

The State of

717

719

the Egyptian and Arabian princes (called Soldanes) next succeeded. After them came the Turkes, about the yeare of our Lord God, one thousand and three hundred, Mahomets false doctrine (through the negligence of the Emperors & Chri-(tian princes) grewe to fuch an head; that it not onely poyloned Asia and Affrica, but also a very great part of Europe. 640 Constantine the third, reigned foure

moneths, being a good prince, and verie young: He was poyfoned by his stepmother, that her sonne might reigne. Heraclion, who having his nose and

tongue cut out, was banished two yeares Constans, the sonne of Constantine.

reigned twenty and seauen yeares: And

beeing very couctous, hee was flayne by

his owne followers, in the Bathes of sy-Constantine the fourth, reigned scauentcene yeares. Hee ouercame in one

battell, thirty thousand Syracusans, and afterward fell to great wickednesse. The learned and venerable Beda lived in this Instinian the second, a wicked man,

reigned fixteene yeares, but not without interruption, being deiected by Leontius, and Leontius by Tyberius Absimaris, who reigned other three yeares; therefore these three are sayde to reigne sixeteene yeares. Now was the beginning of the Dukes of Venice, which had beene gouerthe Venetias. ned before (for the space of two hundred | Emperour dyed a Leaper.

and thirty yearcs) by Tribunes. Phillip Bardafanes, reigned two yeres. Hee was cast out of his Empire by his Licutenant: and after that, they plucked foorth his eyes. Hee had much talke and little wisedome, disposing badly of the Empire, he became after a schismaticall Monke.

Anthemius, called also Athanasius the fecond, reigned three yeares: He was deiected from his Empire by Theodosius chiefe of his Armie, and turned into a Monastery. He had taken away the Empire, and then pluckt out the eyes of his predecessour.

Theodofius the third, reigned one yeare. He left the Empire, seeing himselfe to be affayled by Leo his fucceffor, and became a Monke.

Lee the third, a wicked man, reigned | uout, and one that loued God, would

fine and twenty yeares. Hee was called Iconomachus, a Defacer of Images, and would not fuffer the Christians to have any in their Temples. He was excommunicated by Gregorie, and by authoritie of a Councell held at Rome, against his owne of Constantinople. Blond. in his tenth book. The Sarazins befiegd Constantinople three yeares together, in which time died three

hundred thousand of the pestilence and fa-Constantine, the fift of that name, the

fonne of Leo the Ifaurian, succeeded his father in the Empire of Constantinople, in the yeare of our Saluation, seauen hundred fortie and two. Hee was sirnamed Copronymus, because he would discharge his belly in the Fonts, appoynted for Christian Baptisme. Hee was an vtter enemy, not onely to the Images of Saints, but also to theyr Reliques, causing them

ny of the best and most respected persons, and (amongst others) two Patriarchs of Constantinople. He made warre against the Bulgarians, both by Land and Sea, Fortune fmiling vpon him, other-whiles lowring. In his ablence, one Artabafdus was

to be burned . Hee did put to death ma-

made Emperour at Constantinople. But he receiving news thereof, returned, and either put out, or rent foorth the new Emperours eyes, and caused his children to be flaine. In his time, there was so cold 2 Winter, that the Sca of Constantinople was frozen. After many cruelties, this

Artaba dus, albeit he was descended of meane birth; yet notwithstanding, for the faithfulneffe, good vertues, and commendable qualities which were in him, he was liked of the Senate and Souldiers, & afterward was elected Emporour by the

zealous Christians, for the hatred that euery one bare to Constantine the fift. Hee became a better louer of the Saints, and fortified the City of Constantinople against Constantine, who had beene expulsed from thence. Neuerthelesse, both hee and it were belieged; and the Citty beeing fur-

prized, his eyes were pluckt out, and his children put to death. Lee the fourth, was Emperour after his father Constantine the fift. He was not only heyre to the Empire, but also to his fa-

thers vices: And his mother, who was de-

745

Chap.13. Of faire Landgartha Qu. of Norway.

giue no confent, that he should be Emperour. Hee made some attempts upon the Sarazins that dwelt in Syria. Hee tooke the Crowne, which Mauritius had dedicated vnto Almighty God, and fet it on

his owne head, it being very richly beautified with rich pretious stones: But soon after, hee had an Impostume in his head, with a fiery Ague, whereof he dved.

Constantine, the fixt of that name, and sonne to Leo the fourth, was Emperour after his father: Hee reigned nine yeares (very young) with his mother, who with his confent also, was perswaded by The-

rafius Patriarch of Constantinople, to call

a general Councell of three hundred and fifty Bishops. In a short while after, Constantine excluded his Mother from the Empires gouernement. Hee caused the eyes and tongue of Nicephorus to be pulld and cut out, hearing of a fecret intention, to make him Emperour. Also he did shut up in a Monastery, his wife Marie, who was the daughter of King Charlemaine, and then tooke a Concubine, by

the councell of his Mother, who pretended that her fonne was hated of the people. Heereupon not long after thee caufed him to be taken, and plucking foorth his eyes, that him up in prison, where hee dyed in the yeare 798, and then the reigned alone, about the space of fine yeares.

Irene, iffued from Attica, was Wife to the Emperour Leo the fourth, by whome he had Constantine the fixt before mentioned, and reigned with him nine yeares,

& afterward (alone by herfelfe) fine yeres, or little more, as hath already beene fayd. She was thence expelled by Nicephorus, thoughts fit for flock-keepers, not knowand fent into exile to the Ifle of Lesbos, ing the spirites forces, the beautie of the foule, the gentleneffe of vuderflanding, which at this instant is called Mitiline. At the time when this Lady gouerned the Empire of Conftantinople, Charlemaine was and the galliardise of the bodie it selfe, in being gouerned by interiour reason; gaue the prize (he knew nor how) of beauty, by facred and crowned Emperour of Rome, (or of the West) for his vertues. appearing in the exteriour shape of a laf-

CHAP. XIII

The ancient and honourable Historie of the life, fortunes and admired vertues, of faire Landgartha, the royall Queene of

T is a case most certayne and assured. that a generous spirit, a gentle soule, and an understanding filld with cheareful delicacie, is much fooner feized with amorous apprehensions; then that which is farre off from this queint temper, and

which subtillizeth the same perfection of why good spithe foule. Considering that love, pure its are much and perfectly naturall, being a vertue, and more amorous then dull and vertue euermore biding in fuch fubiects, leaden ca; a. where the hearts are bolt and most fanc- cities. timoniously nourithed, and gentle spirits having (I know not how) a rellish more

divine then vulgare, or apted for groffe popularitie: It followeth, without anie question to the contrary, that men, the more remarkable they are for greatnesse. gentines, good spirit, & illustrious blood: doe also best discourse on louely occasions, and effect them with clearer judgement, then such as fayle in the accomplithments of the foule.

And, to fift this poynt the more ferioully; Is it for a Clowne or peazant, to It is not for judge on the raritie of vertues, on the fin- the Buzzards gular giftes of the Spirit, of that which is on the Sunner beloued; and what offices and duties are radiant fplent in the partie affectionate? Effectes doe doui. plainely approoue the contrary; for Poets, who are the very subtillest Painters

which trace Trueth under the distemperd

colours of wittie Fables, can not better

And if that indifcreet Judge pronounced

the Sentence, in fauour of the most vn-

woorthie, and lent his affections to the

ciuious Lady.

of humane affections, that I know, and

let vs beholde the picture of fuch an impression; then by the judgement (so often fung) and perfourmed by the Troyan, on the interpre-tation of the three Goddefles. For, Fable, concerthe rudenesse of the Shepheard, having ningtheiudge extincted the bright beams of bloud fro ment of Paris his Parents, among the base and groffe

Beholde how farre Poeticall Philoso- The extedure phy extendeth it felfe, and judge, if the of poetical Philosophyin the Fable. his Parents, who should more have che-

rished vertue, which liveth and continueth for euer; then that which withereth, and loofeth it felfe by the steppes of age. folly: fo was he as well recompensed according to his merit, and felt in the ende, that a manly Heltors desseignes, sauouring of that which is proper to the vertue of a man; was much rather to be chosen, then the light promise of a hurtful thing, how pleasant soeuer in wish, and alluring the fenfuall part of a man.

Corporcall beauty & fea ture in a woman,is no matter of any great moment

Alfo, to speake truely, so many famous women, as have honoured all the Ages past and ours, by effect and memory of their commendable vertues; if they had had no other rarities to renowne them. but onely beauty of the body: questionleffe, their names had long fince bin buried in a more obscure graue, then ever time ordained for things to be forgotten. No, no, it was vertue, generofity, height of courage, and great enterprizes; which made them immortall, and equalled their glory with the renowne of men, yea, of the most signall and illustrious. Against the venemous tongues of

fuch, as neuer ceaffe to taxe the reputation of so honourable a sexe: no boast need to be made, either of fearch into the valiancies of Semyramis, whose memorie Semyramis the Affyrian is somewhat too farre off; neyther the incredible forces of the Amazones, the Hiftory being (I know not how) doubtfull zones wome in the occurrences. Nor will I induce Zenobia the Asian Queene, the dreadfull

Queene Zenobia that made warre vpon the Re manes .

Queene. The Amo-

warrior s.

Cinana daug ter to Philip King of Ma-cedon.

aftonishment (sometime) of the Romane Empire: whose wisedome also was as much to bee commended, as any of the very chiefest Generals, her direction, pollicy and good carriage, all making her reputed (long time) for one of the Worlds Monarchs. Nor am I willing (fearing to make men blush, by reading how many women haue managed Armes, and with no meane felicity) to infert Cinana, Daughter to Phillip King of Macedon who made head against the ingratefull fuccessours of her Brother Alexander. purfuing the vtter ruine of his bloode that had advanced them. After many foughten Battailes, hauing carried herfelfe beyond the compafie of man-like valiancy; in the ende, the affected rather to dye, then to fee the vitter ruine of the famous House of her Ancestors, beeing vnable any way to helpe it. I will be (ilent alfo, in speaking of the brane Valasca, a young Lady of Bohemia, who arming

onely tickling of defire, full of wretched) the Ladyes of her Country against their Husbands; made a happy course of long warre against the men : vntill such time, as (being berrayed) fhee crowded into the throngs of her enemies, of whom (before the could be flaine) the flew a great the Country.

> I will not (I fay) discourse so many examples, beeing fatisfied with a History most true and memorable, collected fro famous Antiquity, and from among the The Author Ladyes of a people, heeretofore accounted very barbarous: wherein (by my flender opinion) honest Gentlewomen shall onely. receive some taste of vertue, without lerning the fierce obstinacy of any; and Getlemen, may have meanes to fee and confider, how to make choyle of vertue in louing; and faire minded Maidens, obferue a rule, how to contain their thoghts in loyall affection, to them whom they

have dedicated their defires.

In the time when Dagobert, fonne to Charles the Great, reigned in France, and ouer the Empire, there was a King in Swetia, named Froll, or Frolle, a cruell man, a tyrant, and insupportable to every one. This King being neuer contented with his owne Royalties, began to infult obstinately on his neighbours Lands: but especially to flesh on the king of Norway. vpon whose Countries entring without challenge or defiance, he made fuch great spoyle; that having pilled, facked, and well-neere ruined the whole Country, he vanquished and and slew the King, with all his Family. Nor did it suffice this rauenous Wolfe, to have fled fo much A bloody ty innocent blood, for the glutting of his greedy destree: but hee must needs also holiparen with all kindes of cruelty and villany, informuch, that hee lest ney wite destree. ther Lady of the House Royall, nor any other that he could lay hold on but he abufed them as villanoufly, as wickedly hee had robbed other of their inheritable rights. They that were not (as yer) fallen into the gripes of this abhominable Goate, and not knowing how to shunne falling into his cunning and treacherous fnares, made fuch a private confultation among themselves by secret intelligence; that at length, they mette together in a corner of the defert belonging vnto the Kingdome, to have a more free vnderstanding of particular grieuances, and

Armes in Bo hemis,gainst

King Frollo

marke to redreffe their woful miferi

this Hiftory

and innocencie. Newes likewife ran curforily among The noble me of Norway folicite Reyner king of Den-

Chap. 13.

them, that the Nobilitic of the Country (who had withdrawne themselues into Denmarke) folicited King Reyner, to bring thither his forces, in revenge of a dishonourable injury done to his owne bloud (for his mother was iffued from Normy) and the Dane being eafily spurred on to warre, in regarde he was very youthfull, his bloud chearefully boyling, and defirous to atchieue honour by Armes, gaue the easier eare to the motion. Beside, defire of revenge, to fee his reputation for

much interested, by the tyrannies of Swe-

tid, with pretending a right and title vnto

thekingdome of Norway: These were no

meane motines to incite him on the fooner. And these considerations, gaue hart Diffreff ed ho also to the distressed Ladies, for hope of nor, especially good successe thereby: but fearing, that euneftly de. matter and meanes (in this case) were not firous of reas yet sufficiently ready; this intimated perswasion vanished into smoake, euch (well-neare) as fodainely as it was concei-

Councell alled among the Ladies of

la extresani

At length, one in their goodly troupe, and (almost) one of the youngest, fairest and gentlest Virgines, and such a one as had propounded to herfelfe, neuer to fubmit ynder any Lawe, that gaue a man power ouer his wife: She, beholding the lad aftonishment of the whole company, and what inft reason they had to be so dreadfully difmayed; making a reuerent obeyfance vnto them all, deliuered her minde in this manner.

ued, being no way able to refolue on anie

The Oration of Landgartha, to the whole Company of Ladyes.

CAnit be (faire Ladies of Norway) that illustrous blood, appeareth onely in the strength and dexteritie, which fondly wee presume proper and peculiar to men: and we that have hearts, spirits, bodies and members like unto theirs, must make them revengers, and defenders of our continence dy chaftity? ties all means If Fate be fo maleuolently affected, that our fathers, brothers and husbands, can obtayne

how they might best defend theyr honor | no succour, to recover their lands, and expulse the Tyrant out of theyr territories : shall it therefore be fayd, that we must needs ferue the inordinate appetits of a villaine, & Frollo must abuse those remayning Ladies, that neuer tasted his abhominable embracements.Let Landgarthaliue no longer, if the be voyde of all other ducties and denotion, then to attend the pleasures of a Tyrant, and (without resistance) suffer violence to be done to her honour and modeltie.

why Ladies, the Lyoneffe and Tygreffe whet their clawes and sharpen theyr teeth, to Voreasonable defend theyr young ones, and preserve theyr themselves in lines from the Hunt mens bands. The verie their owne de-(mallest Bird will wie both the Beake and fence & theirs Wing, to revenue the wrong offered by rape of her brood. An! we that furmount the one. in lence and reason, the other in strength, dr all in wifedome and councell for bolde attempts; Iballive Suffer that a Stranger (not one lote firanger then our owne Countries (trength) (hall make a mockery and abuline pastime, of the most honourable Matrones dy Gentlewomen in our Land? No no it is not for Landgartha to endure such indignitie, or that (without effusion of her blood) can yeeld to the beaft-like Prince of Swetia. Are weinferiour in courage and generofi- Aluilda was

tie of spirit, to braue Aluilda, who fo long daughter to time fought on the Seas, and amazed the ve- the Gothes, & ry boldest warriours of the world? Are wee ranged on the feas as a Pirat defective in any thing (be had? We are healthfull, young, gallant, strong and rich enough, towinne what soener is needefull for us, by Service eyther on Sea or Land. And if Aluilda (moued by vniust means) prosperd in her actions, and had Fortune favorable to all her attempts: can you imagine, that Heaven hath not farre fayrer (ucceffe in store for vs, hauing Reason and Vertue on our side, and vpright iustice to support our cause? were our iourney to death onely, and that the ending

tune, and beg our bread through all strange countries in the world. Ah, no, no, ([weete Ladies) heelikes our lines too well, and by taking pleafure in them. desireth our enerlasting diplicasure. He will

of this wretched life, could appeale the Ty-

rants cruelty, without proceeding any fur-

ther : I would be the foremost, freely offering

my selfe as a Sacrifice , to satiate the furie of

his raging lust. If he coueted, and would have

nothing elfe but our wealth and treasure; I

would aduise you to deliner all, and rather

then spare aught, let vs goe seeke future for-

Shame and infamy waite continually at

lution in a

Virgin.

luffer ws to enioy our wealth, for his freeer wallowing in wicked dalliances, which prey is the maine purchase whereat hee most the heeles of symeth : for hee more delighteth in our Honours violation, then, by maffacring our bodies, to become Lord of all our Iewells, lands, and inheritances . What remayneth then for worthy refochafte, veriuous & iprightfull minded

A League fworne, amóg Landgartha made the La dy Generall.

Itisno comthat mooue march in arm

our delinerance? Shall we tarry for them that are in Denmarke, expecting when they will come to succour vs? No, rather let Ladies arme themselves, and appearing in open field; fight valiantly against the villaine, that seeketh to rob ws of our true repute. Let ws give him plainely to understand, that effeminate persons are more soft, and lesse valiant then we are; that chaste and vertuous Ladies are of other temper, then Souldiers mollified by hase paillardise: yea that they are more truely constant then the Tyrant, whose conscious quiltinesse in foule offences, is his owne continuall torturing hangman. On then (valiant Prin effes, and Ladies of no meane lustre;) away with our wanton tires, paintings, perrivies, and ydle deckings: Let vs change our Spindles Needles and Samplers into Horfes. Launces, Swords and Armour, and trie, if Prollo be as furious in warre, as hee is fierte wantonin his lascinious Pallace. Let vs reuenge the wrongs our Parents and Kindred have received; or die most glorioufly, in the pursuite of so holy, iust and commendable a This couragious remonstrance of the

braue spirited Virgine, gaue such bolde animation vnto the rest of the Ladies, as with one confent) they made a league, vowing louing alliance, and (folleninly fwearing faith, loyaltie, mutuall fuccour, and affiftance among themselves;) Land-gartha was elected chiefe commandresse, or Lady Generall of the Army, and well descruing that, or any other higher dignitie, being the motine to fuch a maine and important businesse. Now beganne a muster of all the VVo-

men and Maidens, of the most noble and famous houses throughout the whole Countrey: but not without much amazment in Frollo, wondering whereto tended fuch an affembly. Hee, perswading himselfe, that they intended flight to their friends and kinred in Denmarke; fent commaund vnto them, that (on perill of their liues) they should returne home to their houses, for enjoying the benefite of their

libertie; which he was content to graunt them, in regard of their beauties and gentle behaujour.

But Landgartha, the man-like woman The Heraulds champion, hearing the peremptory com-maund deliuered by the Tyrants Heralds:sent them backe with blows and iniurious speeches, telling them; that they would not take their lines, in regarde of any respect they had to their Lord : but onely, because they should let him vnderstand, in what denotion and readinesse they found them, & or feeking fome conuenient means and way whereby to make him render an account for his tyrannie

When Frollo heard thefe tidings, at the

and cruelties.

first he made but a scorne thereof, laughing extreamely, at this womanish enterprife and Armie of Ladies, faying: They did well, to make a present of themselues, made a moebecause he should have the easier way to kerie of the find them, and if they came into the field; Ladies prepa the bootie would fuffice for his Souldiers meaning to pay, and likewise for their pleasure beside, marry themte in regarde he would bestow wines vopon them all, and faue them a labour from any further fighting. But this pleafant humour foone forfooke him, and converted into fury, when he was aduertifed of their being in the field, & making fuch a strange massacre of his men, as the like was teldome seene or heard of. Nor spared they the lines of any, that durst reclaime himfelfe from following his feruice, which made him curffe and fweare, threatning them with a thousand kinde of torments and afflictions, going now (in good carnest) to arme himselfe; as being perswaded that this feminine furre had extended fo farre, that it was no light matter that could allay it . Hee grew also into such Frollo prepa

encreased daily more and more, both in number, victuals and munitions, brought continually to them from enery part. But howfoeuer (one way) the bad affection of the Norwegians gaue affliction

affurance of his life, amongest the armed i dies.

troupes of his owne Souldiers: yet hee

made many large promises vnto them, of

the very fairest and richest amongst them.

with all their lands and treasure, to shew

themselves valiant and coragious, against

this giddy headed army of women; which

Tyranny is al wayes fubica passions.

Chap. 14.

The arrivall

of Reyner, K

of Denmarke

with a mighty

in Norway

Armie-

his Sou ldien

fuspition of himselse, that he kept a strong to Armes a-Guard about him : as holding but Imall gainst the La

to his spirits, and the favour which his / then, gentle and worthy warriours : Let owne fubicats affoorded to this womanish Army, tormented his soule as violently on the other fide : yet he feemed to fee a good countenance on his feares, declatotormenting ring no outward doubt of prenavling against them, though (inwardly) his cogitations tolde him dreadfull tydings . Nouertheleffe, being already in the field; and

preparing his equipage, to get the best ad-uantage he could, of the place where the Ladies were encamped:a Courtier came galloping in poaft to him, bringing newes of the king of Denmarks descent into Nor-

way, with a very potent Armie. What astonishment socuer seized on his soule to fee himfelfe inclosed (as it were) with two puliffant enemies, and knowing how highly he was hated, by them whom hee had ouercome and subjected a yet notwithstanding, perceiving that flight was preiudiciall to his honour; and (moreover) almost impossible in regard that the ways whereby he should passe into Suetia, as alfo enery port and paffage were in the enemics powershe refolued, first to runne his fortune on the men, who being defeated, the fight would be farre eafier against the women; and thereupon, in the forme of an Oration, thus he spake to his Army.

> The Oration of Frollo, King of Swetia, to his Soldiers.

When menbe in bad actions especially in rmes voiuft good incour

F you were not those valiant Gothes and Swetians, that have tamed and beaten this kennell broode of Norwegians, and now conquered their land : If it were not your valiancie, that hath often made pillage and spoile of the Danes; If your inuincible force were not well knowne to the world : I should then have now entreated you , to remeber your Ancestors. and the glorious conquests of your predeceffors: I should also fet before your eies. how many Kings, People and Nations were vnder-yoaked, by the greatnesse and deedes of your famous fore-goers. But, feeing that your proper vertue fufficiently (heweth it felfe, and auoucheth you to be the worthy fonnes and fucceffours , to fo many valiant and famous Fathers, and ny parts of the world. He alfo fet before that your deedes are no way indebted to their eies, the courage and animofitie of the glorie of their greatnesse: Let vs goe the Ladies, who marcht orderly vnder the

vs pace on, and give Reyner to know, that this is no Countrey for him to reigne in, nor to deale in actions of Armes, with the most furious and brauest Nation of Europe . Let vs on (bold spirites) to chase them againe, which have so many times fled before vs; and let vs chastice the rebellion of the Norwegians, who falfifying their faith fworne vnto vs : haue called in our enemy to their fuccor, to quarrell with me for that , which is yours by right of Conquest.

ched on to meete use Danes, Obligation wifedome, and diligence of Landgartha, ing her forces and her Ladies, who stepped before him hers Campe. with fuch positing speede, that ere the time, as any intelligence could be obtayned of her departure : tydings were fuddenly brought him, that both the Camps were joyned together, and came mainly marching onward to bidde him battaile. Now, although this did not alittle startle his minde, and intimated a fufpitious kind offeare, left Fortune should turne her backe on him , having formerly favored him in all his proceedings : yet being a man of high heart, valiant, and borne for Armes: he shewed no semblance of dread Necessity and or distrust, but rather still sollicited his enforcemen men, to fhew themselves such as alwayes usnly coward they were knowne to be, and to account | valiant. the ennemy no stronger by the womens combination; but rather to hope, that fortune had conducted them purpofely this ther, for the larger encreasing of their benefit, and to heighten their corage against any, that durst presume to deprive them

of so faire a booty. On the other fide, King Reyner, beeing come within the view of the enemie, rode among the ranks, encoraging his people, an Oration proposing to them his right, and the ins made by king Reiner of Den ualion made by the Swetian. He required marke to his them, to reuenge the wrong doone to fo folowers, in many honourable houses, veterly over- light of theethrowne by the Tyrant, and to fustain the cause of womens modesties, for whome, and in whose defence, long agone theyr Auncestours had attempted rare actions of Armes, and spent their blood in ma-

Nnun

In the meane space, while Frollomar- The noble diched on to meete the Danes, observe the gartha, joyn-

makes a cra-

The effect of

Fighting in a good cause is an especial! encoragemét

Ensignes of valiant Landgartha, and to imitate by theyr force, that which weake women had vndertaken, to free themfelues from the violence of a Tyrant. Alfo . that they might affuredly bee perfwaded, beside the gaine and bootle, in getting the bagge and baggage of the Swetians: himfelfe would (moreouer) vie fuch rewarde and courtefie to well deseruers; that they should for ever have just cause to commend his munificence. He declared to the Norwegians, that (for the loue to them) hee would adventure to fight against Frollo, whom if he conquered, hee. would foare him no more, then the reft of his race formerly had doone. And thereforesto fnew themselves valiant, and now to bee fully reveniged on the Swetians tyrannies; feeing Fortune had almost (with great advantage) delivered himinto their

Landgarthe, beholding how every one encouraged other to the fight, and obferning fome rare galliardife ; euen in the gracefull lookes of her female followers; in fleade of further animating, thus the fpake vnto them:

Another Oration of Land gartha, made to the Armie of Ladies.

Her action, gesture and behautour in flamed the defires of all her faire folowers

Tis for vs (fayre Ladies:) that the glorie of this battaile is referred, and to none elfe is due the revenge, for our parents, kinred, friends and familiars. Men may fight (if they will) in their owne quarrell, and deale with whom them clues thinke beft : but the valorous Ladies of Norway will pur sue none other then the very Squadron of the Tyrant, and there will wee die in the middest of our endeuour, or make this the last day of his mi-Grable life . Let our horfes feeme to flie among the rankes, that we may be observed to Surmount the prowesse of men, and that wee can quickely re-unite our strength againe, if any diforder should chaunce to divide vs. Fair Fortune be our guide, and fauour vs. to die gloriously, or vanquish (with hearts be-(ceming our Sex) the onely infamous Prince in the world. In a spirit gentle and generous, fee (I befeech you) what power Disdayne bath, to behold it felfe offended, and of what woorth illustrous blood is , (touched with wrong) received by women and maydens,

tender, foft, and delicately borne and bred, not invred to the trauaile of Armes, but driven by defire of revenge onely. For the rapes made on theyr violated kindred and friends : must needes bee now acknowledged, by the ornament which fayrest embellisheth our faces, and exposeth vs to all manner of hazards, amongest the gallantest troupes of men.

King Reyner; having given the affaults The valiancie

fignall, aduifedly observed the behaviour of Landgartha and warelike order of the women, seeing greatly admi-Landgartha perfourme both the actions red bythek. and discreete conduct of a good Souldier, making way through the throngs, and entring (euen in meere despite of the enemie) with her faire-locked troups of Ladies, into the Tyrant of Swetiaes squadron. Hee stoode as assonied at so braue hardiment; and (in this aftonishment)he fele a kind of foftning in his manly foule, rauishing both his eyes and thoughts, with admiration & contemplation of this chafte Damofell : he foorthwith followed her fighing, yet knew he not the cause of so fodayne an alteration, and beholding her woonderfull carriage in the fight, faw no firoke returned against her, but it see- Keynerbemed to cleave his heart in funder. Hee commeth fud wished himselfe neere her, to free her from all perill and daunger; yet he tooke great delight to beholde her braue beha-

So long his eyes were led by this amorous contemplation, that (very foone after) he faw the Ladies presse on with such imperuous furie, into the maine body of the battaile; and where the king of Swetia was in person: that (in a short while) it became fo shrewdly shaken, as, both the vanguishers, and the vanguisht confessed, that the victory was more to be attributed to the wife leading of Landgartha, and valiant following of her Ladies, then to the long breathing and loofe courage, either in the Souldiers of Denmarke or Norway . The orethrow for they neuer ceased to pursue the point, ans, and death till Frollo was hewne in peeces amongest of their King them; as the corrupter of blooming by the brane youth, and violater of their chastities, whom he ought (in honour and duty) to defend. Thus in an instant, Frollo payed the crueltie due voto his difgracefull life, & was punished by celestial Indgement; for inuading the land and inheritance belonging

nor of so many chaste Ladies.

Chap. 13.

victory to the

valiant Land-

garsha, & her

The victory won by the Dane, he freely confessed, that he enjoyed it by the valiancy of the Ladies, and aboue al the rest by the wife and hardy conduct of hir who commanded ouer the female troops. But concealing(as yet) the fire crept into his heart, and which stole on still to the verie depth of his foule; he cunningly enquired (as one rapt with amazement, among the refl, at the dexterity of this woman Warriour) what the was, of what house, and in what country the received her Originall? Answer was returned to him that she was a Maiden to be married, so chast as possibly might be, as vertuous as any that lived in Norway, in blood Noble, of a famous house, and inferiour to no Ladie in wifedome. The vertue and wife carriage of

The kings paf

ires in a king,

are no meanic

finencreases Landgartha in war, having won the heart of this youthfull King; gaue yet a far lar-her commendable reports. his foule vubefieged : when he heard fay, that the was a Virgin Lady, and of great But because he could rather have wishe

her to be his louely friend, then wedded wife; he faw how thore hee came of any fuch hope, being truely informed of her virgin modesty, standing cleere from all pollibility of corruption:neither might he dare to attept it, feeing how respectively the was efteemed, affected, and renerenced, & hardy enough to suppresse all such finister enterprises. Morcouer, as elswhere on what he had to do, and finding the powe have declared, though rapes had bene wer of loue so potent, that it exceeded all too common in that Scandian countrey; possibility of resistance, as having a priviyet it was no easy offer to her, that knew ledge about nature, and Landgartha no wel how to renenge such wrong, and had way to be enjoyed, but by the chafte emmade good proofe therof fo lately, in the braces of a marriage bed: he fent for the iuft infliction on a luftfull tyrant. In which Lady and her friends, imparting his mind respect, having a faire and gentle spirit; he to her in this manner. refolued, to cloath with grace and good acceptance, what focuer might appear vnequall in her, to fute with the greatnes of a King, and to fatisfie his owne defires, by contracting honourable Marriage with her. And because common same had noifed of her, that the had concluded to keep her virginity for ener, without admitting any man to triumph ouer her chafte honor: he laboured the more to win her, & to break this vncharitable purpose in her; affecting her as dearely as his ownelife; accounting her the most compleate crea-

longing to another, and abusing the ho- / ture in the world, & such a Iewel, as none could be more precious.

If this opinion, concerning the rare vertues of Landgartha, had alwayes continued carractered in the foule of this prince; and if he had respected her as well after the enjoying her, as before hee had the happinesse to be possessed of her: she should have received no occasion to complaine of him, and he never had flood accused of such infidelity and ingratitude to her. But (the more the pitty), there is not any thing fo precious, rare, or of greatelt consequence; but if a man bee possesfed of it, and hath it freely at his owne command : he groweth diffaftefull of it; couet to inioy accounting his appetite loathingly glut-ted therewith, and nothing can feeme attended attenuated. more contemptible to him. Reyner, how great a King focuer hee

thought himselfe to bee, and how powerfull in his cheefest commands a yet he felt himfelf a flaue to Loue, not daring to difcouer his thoughts the was become (contrary to precedent cuftom) a friend to fo- The perplexilitude, full of passions, compassed with york Reiner feares, troubled in spirit, martired in his fenfes, fearfe fuftaining any hope; but very coldly and breathing forth fighs inceffantly; fo that all were amazed at this fo strange behaviour in him. Notwithstanding, no one durst enter into such boldenesse, as to demand of him, whence came the causes of such comfortlesse sollitude. At length, having confidered sufficiently

Know well (gentle Damofel) that it may moue fome admiration in you, vppon Thespeech of what occasion I haue thus fent foryou: language, albeit, the obligation wherein I stande bound to your high descruings, might in the presecte haue commanded me to do it much fooner,& yet a matter no more then reasonable. But to hold you in no longer suspense the hope I have, v you wil continue heere in court; was the motine to my mission, & the power I might pretend ouer your parents and frends, thold with their willing

Nnnn 2

Whatmemost

endeuor how to compaffe it

of hir parent

Woersare

more folemne

stations, then

they prooue found in their

performance

in their prote-

commonly

aduice to you, and enioyne you to grace | having regard vnto the duty I owe my vs with your company. I know what you are, and am informed of your house and breeding; but much more am I affured of your valor and other vertuous merits, by the commendable partes and fingular rarieties, whereof mine owne eies haue bin a witnesse. You also are not ignorant who I am, what my power is, and the meanes to make my felfe fenfible, either offauors or injures, from whom focuer I happen to receiue them. I confesse, that if there be any thing extrauagant in Loue, or furpaffeth the greatest power in man;it hath taken foundation in my foule, enflaming my best desires to wish you wel:but I am vncertaine, whether you be so courteous or no, to take a liking or acceptable allowance of this affection, and so much the rather, because you appear aboue the reach of other Ladies. Neuertheleffe, if you measure the greatnesse of a King, and of him that is your Soueraigne, with the luster of your choise perfections: you shal fee, that both these rarieties paired together, do make but one voion, & the most excellent that any man can imagine. In breefe, all my wish, intent, and affection confifteth in this that if you thinke good, or I may feeme worthy in your eye, to be a fit husband for Landgartha; I wold take you to Wife, and make you Queene of Denmarke and Norway. You may thinke heereon, it is in you to conclude all, and to whom I referre my felfe : for, of this my submission, I make your parents and friends witnesses, calling for them purpofely hither, to heare my motion, and

Landgartha, who was as apprehenfiue, courteous and modest, as high in corage, and strict in opinion : considering who it was that made the motion, and how much he imbased himself in the demand. returned this answer.

vour answer.

SIR, although my deliberation from mine infancie, and continuing to this flouring condition of mine age, hath alwaies beene, neuer to fubicet my felfe to the lawes ordained for marriage, because freedom euer feemed more conforme to the disposition of my spirit, then such obedience as a wife owes to her husband, not that I have vowed or fworne to any citate whatlocuer: yet notwithstanding,

Prince, and feeing how juffly I may deferue blame and punishment, in refusing him that hath foueraigntie ouer mee and mine: I beseech you to thinke, that your thoughts being so direct as they pretend declaration, and respecting one of so meane merite as my felfe: I am also the onely Maiden of the World, ready to do you most humble service. Thanking the great God, that feeing I owe dutie to the fancy of a man (albeit against my former refolue) it falleth fo successefully, as in feruice to the most wise and valiant Prince, that of long time hath reigned in these countries. Neuertheleffe Sir, thinke it not Verie worthin strange, I humbly befeech you, if I speake ring of a dif. (perhaps) more boldly then becommeth me, to vie a filly virgins aduice, to take 10ger and more deliberate confideration in a case so seriously important as this is: humane affections being to light in cases of thefe and the like impressions; that (many times) they as fod ainely wipe themselves out of the foule, as at the first they came to be carractered there. Not that I wil accufe fo great a King of leuity, nor suspect his faith any way infirme: but to this end, that having made a neer view of my complexions, and more exactly enquired the lift of my life; you may the better cenfure my merit, measuring for hereafter, what you may now most valew in my meannes and infufficiency: fo shall you be fure, neuer to vnfay your owne words, or be fory then for that which you make fo great account of now. For know Sir, that the horiage is verie nor which you please to do me at this pre-necellary, because repenfent is nothing in respect of the great in- tance after famy, redounding then both vppon you ward cometh and me, & those that gaue you no better too late, counsell in this case, whom it may as neer ly concerne. This would be a worthy recompence, for the intire affection you beare me now, and I should dedicate my life to you in deeper denotion, remaining for euer your most loyal & dutiful seruat. With fuch a grave and scuere counte-

nance she vttered these speeches, that the king, amazed at her wisedome, but more at the Maiesticall delivery of her wordes. and freedome of fo faire and compleate a spirit: swore instantly such loyalty to hir, as fitted with a king and faithful husband; wherein he plainly forfwore himfelfe, as you shall hear in this discourse following.

King Reyner elpould Land

gartha, to the

joy of her pa-

rents, but ap

her of his affo

Rions conti-

The perfidi

ous and vn-

ling of Reiner

with his fayre

wite Land-

gartha.

Queene of Norway. Chap.13.

> to the youthfull king (who longed after nothing fo much, as to croppe the fayre flower of her chaffity) but thee returned home with her parents and frends again; hoping, that the heate of this royall fire, would be quailed in time, and her absence would be the meanes to effect it. But Reyner, who could not forget her that had fo worthily assisted him, and whose figure was lively imprinted in his foule: followed her to her Fathers dwelling; and, scorning to be delayd by many daies accesse, espoused her, to the vnspeakable comfort of her parents and frends, but fom dread and great diffrust in her self, as fearing the continuance of this feruent affection, and hauing won the heart of a King, doubted to be dispossessed thereof. Neuerthelesse, fuch was her wife and commendable carriage, as to conceale her fears with maieflicke modefly : fubmitting her felf to the Kings delightful pleasures, and the yoake of marriage, which formerly the had contemned.

But, as no loyes are durable, being perpetually followed by worldly occurrencessio Reyner (being a yong, wanton, and lascinious king)after hee had bene Father to three children by his Queene, two daughters, and a hopefull yong Prince, filled, or rather ouer-fatisfied with the embraces of this poore Lady (who broght him no other dowry but bright beautie, and vertue vnmatchable in all the countrey) coneting after matter of greater moment; withdrew thence into Denmarke, leaving his truely elected spouse in Norway, not with any purpose of sending for her, or returning to her againe, but veterly to abandon & forfake her. Being in Denmark, | yeeld him pleasure, succour, or defence, he heard report of the K. of Swetias daughter, whom he defired to inioy, accusing his indifcretion, that he had embased the greatnes of a king, and much blemished his royall title, by marrying with a fillie damofell and fending a folemne Ambaffage into Swetia, he obtaind (without war or any other great difficulty) her whome he coueted to enjoy in marriage.

Heere behold, how constant the Kings affection stoode to vertue, and howe the maske of fained loue discouered it self. He had fworne fidelity vnto his best beloued Landgartha (notwithstanding her wife & worthie aduice of inconucniences to fol-

At this time the Maiden was not married | low) with no meane admiration of her vertues and perfections: but Vertue was then bound to the Idea of pleasure, and therefore of as little lafting, as ease hath continuance in occasions of the flesh. Befide, no fooner had he received answer to his minde, from the king of Swetta; but forthwith, he advertised Landgartha of a fecond intended marriage, although vnlawfully; yet praying her patiently to endure a dinorce.

The poore Lady hearing this determination(althogh long time before, the had Landgartha both divined and feared fuch difafter) was was to bee diready to dy with conceit of greefe, to fee the Kingher her felfe despised, without the least occa- husband, with fion of offence given, or why he shold so of offence given vnkindly refuse her. At length, considering uen. that the king had some reason for this repudiatio, by feeking better aliance, which might fuccour him in his ferious affayres; because he had an enemy that contended with him for the Crowne of Denmark, & incited the Emperor to lend him ayd, vnder colour of becomming a Christian, if he would help him to compasse the kingdome: The began formwhat to affwage her minds perturbations, answering the that brought her these bad tydings, thus. The King(my friends) should not thus

feek any further, for streethning his house by ftronger alliance: and well may I accuse him of lightnes, whereof I aduertised him in the beginning; and which (to my greefe) I finde now by ouer-deare experience. But if I were as reuengefull for the fhame I fuffer, as hee is voluft on my behalfe : I could (perhaps) finde him as bufy and troublesome imployment, as thee can with whom he hath fuch haft to mary. He knowes what means I have to disease him feeinghe felt part of my power in fauouring him, and should perswade himselfe, that Landgartha was never fornuch offended by the tyrant of Swetia, as by him, who vnder the flattring name of mariage, hath wronged the modesty of her, that discerneth now, how men the greater they are, fo much they think themselues dispensed withall, in breaking those Lawes, whereto they binde other in obedience.

pardon his fault, and also to accuse mine

owne indifcretion, that he being blinded

Nnnn 3

abule Landgartha, because he needs not to

Yet one thing caufeth me fomwhat to

Kings breake their fubiects.

The gener and modeft, answer of

Chap.13.

All Ladies

are not like

to Landgar-

tha in the true

vertue of pa-

tience.

Men may run on in vacon fant courfes til at length they chance to pe onermatched.

name Royall: we have both fayled in one kinde, but not equally punishable, his shame being not so great as mine, because fubmit my selfe to the will of him, who durst not vse any violence towards mee; whereas he was a flaue to his owne cogitations, and transported with desire, which maketh fooles of the very wifest in the world. Let him enjoy the embracings of his new elected Lady, at his own pleafure and contentment; but I pray, (in regard of the faithfull loue I beare him, and fo shall doe for euer, being such as I am) that heereafter, he may never be fo light & changeable in affection, left fome one (offar leffe cunning then himfelfe) make him not doe penance for wrong to all the rest. And assure him, that although hee hath wounded the heart of Landgartha to death, by preferring another of much leffe merit, and forgetting the debt, which maketh him mine by bond : yet notwithftanding, the Image of King Reyner shall re-

to him that had forfaken

Her vertuous

parting with the Ambassa.

before his eyes, not any despayring cogitations in mee, but vnconquerable patience. Tellhim, I am not alittle joyful, to lianor, Countesse of Poictiers, and Dutfee my felfe free from fibiection to a hufband : but yet fo forie as possibly can be, to loofe him whom I loue more then my felfe, and without whom, my daves for eand charitable uer are dedicated to mourning. Report conclutions at vnto him, that Landgartha will live, not to be revenged upon the difloyaltie of King Reyner; but to the end, that by the effulion of her owne bloud, the may yet make him once more to know, that the is more his friend, and more carefull of his States confernation, then himselfe is. Tell him alfo, that fuch Ladies as refemble me, haue their hearts more generously dispofed, and farre more fairely furnished with vertue: then base minded men, that alwais carry gentlenes in their looks, but villanie truly stamped in their hearts. For a finall conclusion, I pray God giue more ease to my vnfaithfull husband, then (through his

imprinted in my foule.

by loue, and I, by fole reuerence vnto the /difloyalty)he leaues forrow and affliction in the foule of his loyall wife: and that the who vsurpeth my place (in regard the fault is not hers) may long enjoy peace in that (being free, & without paffions) I would | bed, which vertue and merite once made me Mistresse of, and the King taketh from me, I know not by what difaster, but in meere malice and hatred to mee and my What greater constancy could be wi-

shed, in the heart of the very wisest Phi-

lofopher, that euer Greece or Afia vielded,

then appeared in the inuincible foule of

this Norwegian Lady? What deeper defpight could be done to a worthy woma; then to reject and throw her off, as if the had beene wicked and immodest? Or what greater occasion may bee given, for betraying a husband; then causelesse sufpition, and dinorce or refufall, where reafon and inflice can show no cause why? Poets have lively depicted in their Verfes, the desperate transports of Medea, Medea distraforfaken by Iafon, and the fearefull cruelties vied by her, to bee reuenged on fuch by lafon. an iniury . Marke Anthony, by refusing Civile wars at maine perpetually engrauen in my heart, and forfaking the faire fifter to Augustus, and no accidents of the greatest disaster, attracted by foolish affection to blacke uorce. can euer deface the facred and fincere af-Cleopatra; both Europe, Affricke & Asia, fection, which his plighted faith fo lately were inhumanely bathed with the blood ofmen, the brother endeuouring to re- the long war Goe and report vnto him, the offer of uenge the iniury, which was offered vnto his fifter and the whole Family. And tell French. my feruice, and the defire I have to pleafe him, instead of seeking any reuenge. Set me (I pray yee) what a wound in France was fometime made, by the dinorce of E-

> themselues so strong in Fraunce? Notwithstanding all these, and many more that I could speake of, we see Landgartha fo humble, wife, difereete, and fuch a louer of quietneffe, that, having meanes to be reuenged on so high a wrong done her; fo farre was the from pursuite, heate, rage or tempest, that making Patience prowd of her example: shee offered feruice to him, by whome the was contemned and despised, presenting all duety to an ingratefull husband, and promiting fresh supply, after receit of a former difloyali recompence. You which are iea-lous of Ladies honour, and complaine of fexe of wome a giddie madnesse in theyr braines, and observe the of immortall enmity and harred engranen in their Soules; behold this rare woman, Langarita. declaring

chesse of Guienne; the meanes whereof

gaue way to the English, & that they made

declaring truely a Christian minde, although the neuer received baptisme: Of her you may learn, that Ladies have fomthing in them rightly heroycall, which men can neuer comprehend nor tafte of, but by long, studious and wise experi-And yet Landgartha stands not alone

in this example, for France can make

boast of many more great Ladies, that imitated her mildnesse and constancy, & of whom I could enter into a large Difcourse: if French Histories were not so frequent among you, wherein you can lose no time to bee continually reading. But yet we have not faid all, that Landgartha (not hurried with lealoufie, or tempefled with fury for this refufall) fought any meanes whereby the might be reuenged; but in doing much more, furmounted all opinion and judgement, giuing aide to him that had fo shamefully left her, and doing good for enill, contrary to fome stearne and combustious natures of her fexe, and as the fequell will more amply deliuer.

Reyner, being a Prince greatly addicted to Armes, seeing himselfe at home in peace, and that none of his neighbours follicited him by warre; because his Sub-

Harold a chri ftian Prince

The Subjects

take occasion

gainst Reyner

made King of Denmarke by the Emperor Lewes

fuch as followed his Faction. Reyner,

Queene of Norway.

iects (being naturally giuen to warre, and inured to courses both by Land and Sea) might not line ydle and flothfull: he permitted them to purfue their fortune, paffing them into the Isles of Ireland, Britain and Scotland. Whereupon, the Iutes, and fome other of the Scandian Territories. that bare him but bad affection, taking occasion by the Kings absence with his Forces: elected and created for their king, a Prince of royall blood, named Harok e, who shaping his course to the Emperour Lewes the debonnaire, that made his abiding then at Magunce, having received baptisme with His followers: was facred

Emperor for his Kingdome. Harolde, being fauoured of his owne people, and affected by the most of them that embraced Christianity (to whom Reyner was no way pleasing) and re-enforced by a goodly band of Germanes, wherwith the Emperour furnished him, to put him in possession of hislands: went into Denmarke, to expell Reyner thence, and all

and crowned King of Denmarke, by au-

thority Imperiall, doing homage to the

waxing weary againe of his wanton defires, returning home fecretly into Den-King Reyners marke: found strange alteration fince his returnehome departure thence. His owne people he into Denmark encouraged to stand fast with him, called and craving the Swetians also to his succour, and dif- assistance of patching letters into Norway: requested | Landgartha, affiftance of her, from whom hee might more justly expect warre then defence,

and seuerity of reuenge for his vile dea-What would an angry heart haue

done in this case? A minde neuer satisfied but in doing ill; what an opportunity had it heare to worke vpon? How would a man have carried himfelfe, hauing beene notoriously injuried, and so faire a way fer wide open for him, as neuer was the like to bee expected againe: what hafte would he make now to be fully reuenged? Without all contradiction, the breach of faith is very abhominable, and wrongs received by Noble natures, are not easily quallified, when times and The noble feafons shape out revengefull meanes, nature of fuch as was this warryppon the faithlesse Landgartha. Dane. Neuertheleffe Landgartha, hea-

ring in what anguish her vokind husband

was, and confidering with her felfe, that

his ruine could not returne her any bene-

fit, feeing alfo, that shee had two louely

Daughters by him, and a Princely fonne,

intended to fuccour her distressed Hus-

band, to whom thee fent tydings of her

preparation and comming, in thefe few

disposition &

named Fridellaus (who afterward was Fridellaus King of Norway) motives sufficient for fon to Land his longer abiding with her: face leuied Royner, was an Army of fixe fcore Ships, enery one afterward K. being worthily furnished, wherewith the of Denmarke

The Letter fent by Landgartha, to her Husband, King Reyner.

IF this my fecond duty may proue as happy, in the recovery of thy Lands & Kingdoms, as my first was against a Tyrant, and yet honouring thee with the victory : I fall account my paines well imployed, and never expest any other recompence. Make head brauely against the Enemy, for I am commine with all speede, to let him know, that

The Rebels a fraid of Land garthacs co-

ming with her

The landing

of Landgat-

The Danes

worft by Ha

garthas wor

thy affiftance

in very great

tha in Den-

marke.

Landgartha. The Rebells, beeing aduertized of this Supply from Norway, labored by all means possible) to prouoke King Reyner to the fight, before the comming of Landgartha, whom they knew to be wife, and very skilfull in the Art Militarie. And the king knowing their intention, delayed the day of battell, by marching further off from them, towards the place where hee expe-Sted Landgarthaes landing, that their two forces might the fooner loyne together, & then to give the enemy battell. Which Harolde well perceiving, and knowing, that such delay would redound to his disaduantage; he pursued after Reyner with fuch expedition, laying fuch traines and ambuscadoes for him, that he compelled him to handy blowes, even at the verie

same instant as Landgartha landed. The fight fell out to bee very furious and bloody, and great numbers of men fel as well on the one fide, as on the other, the chiefe Commaunders beeing fiercely animated, the one to defend his Crowne, and the other to viurpe an estate whereto he pretended a just title, by reason of the quarrell betweene the King and his Subiects. And both of them standing on the adventure of life, as well understanding, that no fanour was to be expeded, which

side soeuer prooued to bee Conquerour.

Now, though the Danes that followed Reyner, perfourmed so much duty as warriours could do, fustaining many impetuous efforts of the affailants; yet were they constrained to turne their backes, beginning to fall into rout and diforder. By this time was Landgartha come neare to the Campe, where the made a paufe a while, to fee which fide behaued it felfe braueft; and perceiving Reyners men in no meane extreamity, valiantly the entred amongst the thickest of them, incouraging her husbands foldiers on thus : On them braue (pirits, fet on them manfully they are our foile, as villaines not deserving to live, seeing traiterously they lift up their weapons against their king. On then (I (ay) undaunted (birits, heere is Landgartha, who hath brought you victorie, as well against Harolde, as some-

time (he did against Frollo in Norway. In delivering these wordes, the dealt

Landgartha is both a Queene and a warri- | fuch bold blows amog the Rebels, as they hardly knew which way to bestirre themfelues. Now the battell grew to be more fierce on either fide the before: the Danes, to repaire their disorderd flight, th'other,

to maintaine their hope of victory, wherof they doubted not, but disdained a woman shold deprine them of the occasion, of wholly ruinating Reiner and his Army. Neuerthelesse, whatsoeuer manhood Harold and his men declared in the fight, yet they were oppressed by multitudes, being

wearie, fpent, & closely followed by the Norwegians, who were fresh, chearefull and active, conducted by a woman of very high resolue, and as furious in warre, as modest and gracious in her Pallace. Thus Harolde and were they enforced to fight, not without his men drius great losse of the very worthiest me in the the victorie Army, and the vanquished delivered to remaining to

the Conquerours mercie. But, though Requer triumphed of thevictorie, yet hee gartha and hir enjoyed it by the fortune of her, who, albeit the might boaft of her happineffe in war, and thereby attained to a great mariage; yet her other infelicity was a great corfey to her heart, to be disdained where the ought to be most beloued & esteemd. Reyner now was growne fenfible, of the

shamefull wrong he had offred to his first wife, accusing himselfe of disloyaltie, and The reconcidetesting his former leuitie, entreated her liatio betwint to take such reuege on him, as she thoght King! Reyner and Landgarfirtest in her own judgement. But she, be that ing a Lady of vnmatchable mind, fearing lest the king (conquerd by this obligation of ducty to her) should commit an other fault by leaving the K. daughter of Swesia, who had brought him divers children also:pardond all his passed injuries to hir, & yowing her felfe to a widdowed estate of life, neuer more to converse with him or any man lining; after a folemne parting betweene them. The returned home into Norway, to gouerne the Countrey by her discreete care, til her son Fredislaus should attaine to yeres of rule, and whom the K. there had constituted as his lawfull heire.

The remainder of this discourse, being more at large purfued by the Annalists of Denmarke, Swetia and Norway; I purpose here to conclude the Historie, which'I haue in this place fet downe, more to relate the valour, councell, aduice, good conduct and wisdome, seldome wanting in Ladies deriued from good birth; then I

Of the Bezaars Stone. Chap. 14.

care for the idle loues of Regner, or any of | The Letter of a Gentleman his Conquelts. To the end, that such Ladies, as excell in the like vertues in thefe our times : may hold on in the pursuite of their perfections, by the honorable exaples of them, that (in those precedent daies) declared themfelues admirable in their actions, & imitable for their vertues and commendable carriage.

CHAP, XIIII.

Of the Bezaars Stone, which is reputed to be very vertuous and soueraigne, against all venomes and porsons.



He Stone of the Bezaar or Pazer, is a true and affured Antidote against all poyfons, vénomes, bytings of though they are subjects to us Spaniards, yet they are our deadly enemies. Notwithstan ons of the Ayre; As pestilence, carbun-

cles or plague-fores. Purples, the fmall ting, they got the Boy afide and flew him, and Pox, the Meazels, and in briefe, against all afteward facrificed him, as we were given to diseases popular and contagious. And understand. because experience hath made this stone to be in daily request, and causeth it to be esteeme, placing them for Ornaments in their fought for by people of good meanes; Temples, which they call Guacas, adorning therefore sale hath bene made thereof at extraordinary rates, and avarice being fo great among men, hath therefore practifed and compaffed the meanes whereby of some admiration, that this Beast is not to adulterate it, as hecretofore they did found in any of the hither Indiaes, but in the the like by Bauline or Balfamum. But Mountaines of Peru, neyther could I fee before I write any further thereof, I will them any where elfe: albeit I have trauailed tell you from whence they bring it, and through all the Kingdomes of Mexico and how it is engendred in the bodies of cer-Peru. In the Provinces and Illes of Marataine creatures, which are like vnto Goats non, Florida, and the Westerne Islands, I heere among vs; but they have no horns, being of a reddish colour, and feed not but on good and wholesome Hearbes. whereof are plenty on the Mountaines,

and where they startle at the least noise of

a Piece. But for our better vnderstand-

ing this History, I will infert a small par-

cell of a Letter, written from Peru by a

Spanish Gentleman, to Monardus a Phy-

fition of Hilpalis, dwelling then in Seuill,

whereby we shall perceive how they are

Whence the ftone is brogh and how it is engendred.

found.

or Pazar

gainst all vc-

nonies and

contagions.

redding in Peru.

THe fifteenth of June, 1568, being at the Hunting of exercise of hunting, with divers of my the Bezaar in friends, among the Mountains in this Coun- Peru.

try of Peru, continuing at the Bort for the space of fine dayes, and having flaine some of the Beasts called Bezaars, we diffected their bodies, to finde the stones. But it beeing a matter impossible for us to do, because wee were not vied thereto: we demanded of the

Indians, which we had brought with vs thither to attend upon us; in what part of the body we might foonest finde them; whereto they made us answere, that they knew it not. But a young Indian Lad, aged about tenne yeares, and being then in our company shewed In what part us whereit was, and we found it in the first of the Beaff stomacke, where the food of the Beast falleth found. down, to be ruminated or chawed afterward.

enstruction given vs : but we would not fuf-

fer them to doe him such violence, and al-

The Indians hold those stones ingreat

have beene diligently informed, and by the In-

leth wormes out of the body. Being put into

for it but that onely.

Which when the Indians (aw, they would have killed the Boy, as being offended at his

ding while we followed our pastime of hun- He that fea-

also their Images with them, and many other The Indians things beside, as Gold, Silver, precious stones their temple and rich lewels . And I repute it a matter in rich maner.

wounds, made by impoyfoned Arrowes (As Wounds cuheere it is too much in v(e) it is an affured red of impoi healing, and no other remedy could be found loned Ar-

dians heere among vs, uppon vrging them to what we these stones are proper: And Informations they have assured mee, that they are singular concerning against all venomes, eyther applied outward- the Bezaars ly, or received inwardly; but especially a- Ronce vertues vainst all harmes of the heart, and it expel-

Landgar tha encourageth gainst their nemics.

Stones are in fome Beafts more, and in other leffe, according to their yeares.

Nicholas Mo naidus a Phy

futon of Seur

Of other

bed by the Portugals. found in a Bagge like a little Purffe,9 ftones, which Nature had there engendered, onely by the benefit of feeding on good and whole-Some hearbs: and in all those which we diffe-Eted afterward, we found in some more, in others leffe, according as they were aged in yeares. It is to be noted, that although they are found also in Beasts of the same kinder which broule and feede on the Plaines : yet they are not so vertuous, as in those bred uppon the Mountaines.

Thus you fee in briefe, what was written by this Captaine (and indeed a very worthy Gentleman living then in the Indiaes) to Nicholas Monardus, alearned Physition, and dwelling in Seuill; whereby may be understood, how and fro whence these stones proceede. Now wee will heare what the Portugals fay, who have made their conquests farre off fro thence, to know, whether they agree with the Spaniards in this report or no. Garcias d'Orta a Portuguize, Physition

to the Viceroy in the Indiaes discouered by the Portugalles, faieth, that in Corazine, and in the Countries of Persia, there is a-Stones of Be nother kinde of Goates, of meaner greatzaars.deferi nesse, which they call Pazans, in whose stomack or bulke are found stones of the Bezaar, the beginning of them beeing 2 fmall little straw, growing on to a certain greatnesse, by recovering many coates or tunicles: whereof fome are found to bee as big as our common Beanes, others as Acornes, and other of more or leffe quatity, smoothe for the most part, and in colour refembling a darke greene. The greatest, because the rarest, are more fought for then the leffer fort, by them of the Country where they are found, as re-

flone that weighed five ducats, broght into Pottuga

A Bezaars

where Goats are found

beene often approued. This Stone (faithhe) is not found in Persia onely, but also in Malaca, and in the Isle which is named Vaccai, not farre off from the Promontory of Comorina. For,

puting them to have the most vertue. He

reporteth, that he faw one which weigh-

worth whence it came : and in all those

stones which are brought out of the Per-

fian Countries, a littlestraw or stalke is

found in the very midft of them, as hath

In the first Beast that we dissected, wee | as they can betray those Beasts, so they kil them, and being well falted or powdred. they ferue as good provision for their Armies. In many of them are found very great stones, viknownero the people there inhabiting, or why the Portugalles labour so much in search of them : which (indeed) is more for the faid flones, then any lone they have to the flesh, although it is very fanoury.

The Bezaars stones which come from Peru, haue no strawes or stalkes in the midft of them; but onely a little cauity or hollowneffe, wherein may be found fome | Perfia. thicke dust or fand, which is of far greater efficacy then the stone it selfe. I have feene flue graines of this stone (in a little water of Mugwort) giuen to a Gentlewoman, who had beene scuen dayes in child-birth travaile: and she was instantly deliuered of a childe dead and putrified. At the Castle of Luke, in the lower Lymofine, there was a great pestilence, wherof (in leffe space then foure & twenty houres) dyed three persons: afterward it tooke hold on the rest of the houshold which were eighteene in number. Each one received two graines of this stone euery morning, with a little water of Aenula Campana, continuing fo for feuen daies space together, and not any one dyed afterward, or became further touched with the pestilence. Divers beside, that had carbuncles and fores, by vfing this ftone, preserved their lines : It is very good also in application, to botches, byles, and all irkefome paines or fwellings.

A young Gentleman, with whom it was my chance to be bathing in a River, ting by a Ser was bitten in the leg by a Serpent, fo that pent on a gen his leg was become very black, and greatly swolne: hee was aduited, to take foure graines of Bezaars Hone, with a smal quatity of Rofe-water, and a graine also was put into the wound; which caused the ed fine Ducates, and which was brought ranckling and paine to ceasie, and he was into Portugall, that would not be bought fully cured within tweltte dayes space. forthreescore Ducats, albeit it was more

Monsieur le Vicomte de Conborn, and Lord of Chasteauneuf, Licutenant for the King in Lymofine, reported to me, that he Historics of was touched with a pestilential Feauer at rare vertues in the Bera-Paris, and whereof many dyed, of every ars flone. quality, age and fexe, and abandoned of all Physitions. By the aduice of his Father in law, the Marshall de Biron, he took Bezaars stone for some few dayes,& with-

Difference betweene the Bezaars flőes of Peru and

proued of the

in a little while after, he recoursed, grew to indifferent strength, and was much more luftily disposed, then any of them that had beene offended by the same difeafe, to the no little admiration of all them, that had knowledge of him and his The Inhabitants of Ormuza (an Island

Chap. 14.

An observati

on among the

Inhabitants

of the Island

of Ormuza.

eafes cured

by the Beza-

How the

Moores di-

Ainguish the

true stones

from falle.

Experiment

made in Lif-

bourne for

the true kno

ledge of the

that is most rich, situate youn the red sea, and fubiccted to the Persian) after they haue purged themselues in the Spring & Autumne: vie to take ten graines of this stone, in as many spoonefull of Rose-water, for five mornings following each other, by which meanes (they fay) their health is foundly preferued, and youthfull disposition maintained. Against an inueterated fenrife on the head, or body, a loathfomeitch, the wilde scab, called S. Martins mange, and (aboue all) againfta confirmed ladry or leprofic; there is not any remedy like to this. As can well bee witnessed by a Prelate of Languedoc, liuing at this day, who would have flaine himfelfe an hundred times, and throwne himselfe out of windowes (if hee had not beene carefully respected) onely beeing tormented with that disease of S. Martine. But by vling this stone, which hee tooke three Months together cuery morning, and good government otherwife directed to him, hee is perfectly recouered. Now let vs fee how true and natu-

The Moores are exceeding skilfull in knowing them, and especially, from what parts they are broght, in the doing wherof the Moore will lay one in the palme of his hand, and closing it then fast together, he will breathe or blow strongly into his hand: if hee feele his breathing to paffe through his hand, he is all wred then, that the stone is falsified . A great number of them are oftenrimes to be folde at Lifbonne, the cheefest Metropolitane City of Portugall, where is one of the most frequented Portes in al Christendome. And fuch as there buy them, content not thefelues, with this order of triall made by the Moores : but dip a twined thred in the invec of a very venomous hearbe, which there they call Balistera. Then paffing it Bezaars stone thwart the foote, or other part of any Beaft (as of a Dog) with a Needle, hee fo

rall stones are to bee discerned; from such

as are counterfeir, and meerely adultera-

leaueth it in the wound, vntill such time as he feeleth those aggidents, which commonly feize on them that are poyloned. And when he is perceived to draw neere death; then to make him fwallow three or foure graines of Bezaars stone, mingled with water : if it preserve his life; it is an apparant figne of the flones goodnes and perfection; but if not, it is adultera-

The Beast in whose body these stones are found, in Persia and other parts of that The variety Climate, as in Comorina (according to borne by this the writing of Garcias d'Orta, who had Beaft A feene of them in divers places) hath horns bending backward; but those in Peru haue none at all. Theues faieth, that they have but one, and that the skinne of the faide Beaft is kept, to be laid to the stomacke of Some thinke man or woman, possessed with any paine greatly misor anguish there, and to procure digesti- informed in on and that (without all question to the contrary) this skinne healeth all fuch difcases, although the persons bee aged and decreipt. Moreouer, that he faw a stone of the Pexar, or Bezaar, in the cuftody of the Greekes Patriarch of Carro, which was as big as a good great Nut : if it were fo, that from was worth no meane fumme of money. It were a thing miraculous, to finde a stone of such greatnesse; & yet he further faith, that an Arabian Captain had it given him, because hee was secretly converted, and became a Christian.

It is not to be thought, that this stone hath beene knowne but within fome fmal compasse of time; because antiquity speftone known keth of it more then five hundred yeares fince. For proofe whereof, Rafis, an Arabian Physition maketh mention therof, though not relating from whence it was brought, or where it is to bee found: yet he affirmeth, that it relisteth all kindes of poylon, and that hee made experiment thereof vpon a childe, that innocently had eaten a venomous plant, called Napellus, Proofe made which caufeth death immediately; and vpona childe yet by giving him a finall quantity of this that had fed yet by giving him a small quantity of this on a poylon-frone, his life was preferred. This frone nous hearbe, hath beene so highly esteemed, and especially in those precedent times; that, as it is reported by Abdara Warach, an Arabian Doctour in physicke, who was then at Corduba, about those later yeares, when the Sarrazins made their viurpation in spaine: he faw a Bezaars stone, in the hand

great antiqui

Chap 5

The Egyptian

non how

Pearles are

ngendred.

Variety of o

pinions con-

cerning the

generation

of Pearles.

The ludge-

ment of Cha-res of Mittlen

Americus Ve

putius recor

himfelfe had

deth what

on of Pearles

Abdara Narach,a skilfull Phyfit on of Acabia.

of one of the children of Amirama(a great and diligent observer of Religion) for which he gaue in exchange, a very goodly house which he had in Corduba, equall (well neere) to a Princes Pallace. And the faid Abdara further faicth (alleadging the forenamed Rasis) that this stone being worne about a mans necke, and kept fo neere to the heart as may be; defendeth it and the party from all infection, & no poylon can offend the body of him, that hath it thus about him. Seeing then, that this Stone hath fo

The Authors friendly aduertifement to the reader.

The admira-

ty of the Be-

divers other

many good and fingular vertues in it, methinks,men (of meanes and worth) shold fildome or neuer be without it, for a prefent fuccour in fuch weighty infirmities. Beside. Apothecaries of skill and judgement shold euermore be wel prouided of them because Physitions continually prescribe it in their directions, which they would not do, if they knew men to be vnfurnished of it. For more affurance is to be reposed in it (next to the affisting power of Heauen) then in Treacle or Mible foueraignthridatum, the confection of Alkermes,& zaars ftone in of Zacinth. As is too well knowne by comparison of many barbarous Kings; gouerning in preferuatiues. those Regions, where the Beasts are bred that engender these stones, reposing such confidence in them, and making fo precious estimation of them; as they cause the expresly to bee brought from all parts. And when they are possessed of them, it is a difficult case to get any one from the: which partly is the reason, why they are so deare and rare to be had.

Heere the Reader likewise is to bee advertised, that some of these stones are All Bezaars not pointed, or marply cornerd; but ftones are no alike in forme blunt, edgeleffe and rounded, like to the & propertion. little fingers ende, or as an Acorne. And although some are found to be great, yet commonly they are but as our ordinary Almonds, and not pointed. They have alfo diners foldes or lappings, one wrapping ouer another, like vnto Onions, all fleecke and smoothe; for if you finde the

> iected as falle and counterfeit. One of these stones was presented to Charles the ninth King of France, hee be-

otherwis, compacted they are to bee re-

ing then at Molins, which he caused to be effayed vpon two persons, that had deferued ignominious death, & both of them having poyfon given them to drinke.

One of them was holpen by the stone. who neverthelesse dyed; and the other that tooke it not dyed also. The stone being broken, was found thicke and maffine, not divided by Sphericall robes or foldings, and was throwne into the fire . And the giver, who expected to derine fome great recompence from his Maiefty; had nothing at al, but frowning looks of the King, and the Queene his Mother, for his reward.

CHAP. XV.

Concerning the generation of Pearles: where and how they are found; from whence they are brought; and of their value and e-

Haue read many Authors, to be refolued affuredly concerning the generation of Pearles: but I could finde none of one confent, or agreeing together, and namely, fuch as frequent the Indiaes in these dayes, are divers and doubtfull also in their answers. For some say, that they are engendred in Fish-shels, like to those of our Oysters heere among vs, but much greater, and somewhat longer. And when they are defirous to conceine (vrged ther to by nature, and at a certaine time) they generation open of themselnes, to sucke in and draw Pearles. the dew of heaven: when if the Avre bee cloudy or lowring, then they engender troubled Pearles; and if it be windy, they cannot conceine, folong as the wind continueth. But how fabulous this is, I refer to others judgement : because in one and the same shels, are found Pearles trobled, cleare.& of divers colours and formes.

Others fay, that the proper birth and production of the Oyster, is by egs, wherof they are produced, and that the Pearls Another opi come forth of the fand and grauelly dust, nion of their whereby they are nourished, & wherein they hide themselves: which gravell refineth it felfe, & encreaseth in them, as the graines of the Raisin in the Grape. And this fandy feed foftneth it felfe, the Oyster being in the water: but so soone as it is out of the water, it hardneth of it felfe, as we may fee daily: and this is another opi-

nion of our Pearles production.

Of Pearles ound among

day Traffique with them, and bring them from the Perfian Sea, make men here beleeue that negotiate with them: that perls are engendred in the stomacke of a flatte Fish, round like to a Trencher-plate, and as big as a common plate, which is found on the shores of Nilus; and that it drinketh the dewe of heaven, as wee formerly favd of the Ovster, all which is a meere fable. And although the Egyptians of these dayes know the matter truly; yet notwithstanding, meaning to mocke such as are ignorant in these things, they publish lies for apparant truths. Adrosthenes fayth, Pearles are engendred in Oysters, as certaine white and solide graines are in the Flesh of

Swine, which we wfe to tearme Meazels, er is made of a clammy slime, congealing and hardning of it selfe . Which I thinke to be very likely: For, beeing at Paris in the yeare 1566.and(in affiftance with others) at the diffecting of a woman's body, long troubled with a discase in the reines, in each of the reines was found a folide fubstance or body, as big as a comon Pease, glistering, cleere and round, like vnto Pearles. Chares the Mitilenian faith, Pearles are

made of the bones of the Oyster 31 but the sin he is much deceyned, because the bones are alwayes in feruice to strengthen the body:but Oysters have no need of bones: and likewise Pearles are not found in all of them; and if they had bones, then they would be found in all Oysters.

Americus Vesputius, in his booke of Indian Nauigations writeth, that he obserued the opening of many, & out of fome certaine Pearles, which had not attained (as yet) to their maturity and perfection, being in some pretty store or number; but ver those Pearles perished of themselves and came to nothing. But in them that were more aged, Pearles were founde in the flesh of the Oister, easily parting from it, and those were the best. And they that are found in them fo aged and ancient, were wrinkled and very darke, which is likely to be true, if we do well confider thereon.

It is a meere Fable, which fome haue divulged, that Pearles are found among the Rockes, by reason of many fishes laying their Egges, and because they cleave to the fleft, or to the fhell; but this hap-

The Merchants of Ægypt, that at this | neth very rarely. For, all Oviters are not apt to procreate Pearles, but onely fuch as are rude, white, and pointing, like to the teeth of a Combe; which the Persians call Cherippo, cleere and verie smooth within: of which thelles are made Cups, Boxes, Spoones, and other very fightly things. Some are found in other kinds of Oysters; but they are neither so great, nor fo good, as these that the Cherrippo produceth, which some have termed mother of Pearles.

Heere we may note the variety of opi-

nions, concerning the production of Pearles, the knowledge whereof is much A reason for concealed a for Oyfters keepe alwayes at the variety of the depths of the fea, because their shelles opinions in are great, and therefore they are fo deepe in the fea. If fomctimes they are founde neerer to the shores, it happneth by tempefts of the fea; also they swim heere and there, to feeke their best nourishings; which when they have found, there they flay, votill they have eaten all they can find. Then if they fenetior perceive fuch as feeke for them, they will fasten them-

felues fo ftrongly to the rockes & ftones. ouer-covering one another: as very hardly can they be forced thence, but oftentimes labour is bestowed in vaine, and they left there, as being immagined to be

Of Pearles O

They are fished for in store of sindrie Countreyes and Regions; but the goodlieft and those most common , are fished fters are viufor in the Ific of Baharem, an Ifland bigge ally fified for enough, and well peopled; being fubicel to the Vicerov of Ormuza and is negreto the Cape of Massina, in Arabia Faller, & there is no meane fifthing for them. In the Isles of Maniel a alfo, is continual! fifthing for them (they beeing as good there, as those of Baharem) and the Isle seated on the Perfian Gulfe, an hundred Leagues br thereabout, from Calcuth, and almost throughout the inner India. In the Me of Zeilan, in the Ifles called Veigues , will fo thorowe the great Empire of Mexico At Tarate, more then in any of the forenamed Mandes, and in the Isles of the New World, they have beene fifth for in fuch plentie that the Gasico or Prince of A Casket of the faide Isle, made a prefent of a Casket to a Spanish full of Pearls, to Galpar de Morales (a Spa. Captaine. nith Commaunder) which weighed an hundred and ten pounds. He promifed 0000

The discourse of a falle ftone giuen to Charls

A tribute giué of a Quintall Pearles year-

and value.

In our neeres

Seas they fill

for Pearles, &

finde fome

ftorc.

beside, to give yearely a Quintall weight of Pearles, as a Tribute to the Emperor, and (among them) some were as great as fmall Nuts, others as big as Nutmegs; & one (about the rest) was found to weigh fixe and twenty Carrats, and another one and thirty: it had the shape of a Muske-Peare, being very perfect and orientall.

A Merchant, being named Peter du Port, bought the faid Pearle of Gafper de Morales, for eighteene hundred Ducates of gold, and after he had bought it, hee could not fleepe for melancholy, and inward griefe he conceived, because he had given fo much mony for a stone : yet hee fold it againe on the next morrow (& for ble greatnesse the same price) to Pedrarias d'Auila, for his Wife, the Lady I fabella Bouadillia, who and of extra ordinary price also solde it to the Empresse, Madame Isabella. A lew named Daniell, bought of a country peazant of Baharem (no long time fince) a Pearle, of the greatnesse of a Musket Bullet, for no more then the fumme of eight shillings; and afterward fold it to a Lord in Sclauonia, for three thousand Crownes. There was a present made to Fernando Magellano, in one of the Isles of the Molucques, of foure Pearles, each one of them being asbig as a Pigeons Egge; and they were efteemed worth an hundred thousand Crownes, at the

> entenReturning now to our former purpofe, which was to discribe where Pearles are found, I fay, that not onely they fifth for them in the fore-named places: but likewise in all other Seas, bee it eyther of the South or Occeans of Peru, the Antarticke, Florida, Canada, Guinea; yea, euen | ler. beere in our neerer Seas, of England, Scotland and Denmarke; but in some place they are better, fairer, greater and rounderathen in other. And namely in some parts of France, as at Rouen, Dieppe and Rochelle, where some are found very rare and passable. Now let vs obserue, how, and in what manner their fishing is for them.

Such as are appointed for this manner of fishing, entring into their Barques; and (leaving some to tend and hauecare of them, and to keepe the Oysters after they are brought to them) leape by great numbers into the Sea, remaining sometimes under water halfe an houres space, before they be seene againe, and so conti-

nue at the bottome : having strong pockets, or small twisted nettings hanging:about them, wherin they put their Oysters. Which being thus taken, they ascend aboue water againe, and are received into their Ships : where having a while taken the avre, and strengthned their bodies with fome fustenance; they put on their wrappers againe before their faces, which commonly are thin waxed toylers, as fine as the bladders of Swine, that they may the clearer fee in the water. Fine or fixe times in a day, thus they throw thefelues into the water, and towards night returne home with their takings, I meane such Oysters as they hope to finde Pearles in.

Vpon the Sea-shore there are a great number of flaues, as well women as men, who as often as the Oysters are brought tend on the on land; fill their Scuttles and Baskets, feruice. made of Sea Rushes, carrying them to Vessels full of fresh water, wherein when In what man the Oysters have continued foure and are separated twenty houres space, and feeling a con- from the flesh trary fauour to the Sea-water; they open & how they of themselves, and so soone as they are differ in good open, the Pearles funder themselues from nesse & great the flesh of the Oysters. Afterward, the Merchants emptying the shels out of the vessels, finde all the Pearles in the bottom of the fresh water, and thus they gather the Pearles of Peru, and likewife in other places. Nepertheleffe, they are not the hundred part fo good nor fo fair, as those

of Baharem and Maniela: And observe

withall, that Pearles are not found in eue-

ry Oyster, but in some few, in other more,

some breeding the greater, other smal-

The Pearles being thus taken, fome- The flaues re times they eate the Oysters, and otherwhiles they throw the away, as being wearie and ouer-glutted with them by too the benefitby frequent vie. Thefe Fifters are flaues, fer- their feruice. uing (for this purpose) the Christian Merchants, Maronites, Iewes or Indians, which traffick in Baharem: and according to their taking pearled Oyffers, fo are they cherished and respected by their Masters euery night, which maketh euery one strine to be most beneficiall by his paines. Some times the Seas are swolne more high & boifterous, then the Fishers wold haue them to be because then it is an himderance to their tarrying long vnder was ter; and then they make prouision for

The industric of the diuers or fishers vnder water to finde the best

Chap. 15.

Oyfters.

flone, which cord they binde about their backes, and fo fincking downe into the Sea, by the weight of those stones, they continue firmely under water, and gather the Oysters at their ease : and when they would mount up to the Shippe, lightly they cast off the stones, and swimme nimbly in their rifing. Such as would meddle in fishing for these Oysters, it behooueth them to be very expert in fwimming and diving; because many drown themselves, through want of taking winde, or elfe are drawne into the depth of the fea, by huge and mighty Fishes, which there they met withall, and then by no meanes can escape Marcus Paulus faw this kind of fishing

in the kingdom of Vara, which is in India.

ters, there called by them Abraiamins,

haue the twentieth part, and the Peazants

haue their payment in money. Here you

must know, that without these Enchaun-

ters, they that fifth in this manner for Oy-

fters, should bee denoured by certaine

greedie and venemous fishes, as Croco-

diles, Whales, and other fuch like denou-

corde, at each end whereof they fasten a

where it was performed in the fame man-Marche Panner, and he fayth, that they fifh not but in lus an cic witneffe of this the moneth of Maie, and then the Peafants or Boores are fet on worke by the ing for pearls Merchants. The King hath his Tenths or Tithes, and certain Sorcerers or Enchan-

rers: but they conjure them in fuch fort, that they escaped from them without any daunger. But when night commeth, and the fifting must be forborne till the morrow; the Enchaunters release and make their conjurations to ceafe: onely to pre-Ofinchanter uent thecues, who elfe (in the night time) whole conjurations doc would plunge and diue into the water. great feruice knowing they may doe it fafely without in the fithing for pearled Oysters. perill, and so carry away the pearly Ov-

expectation.

Moreover, there is no people in all the Countrey, that can enchaunt those terrible fishes, or docknow the words belonging to this conjuration, but onely thefe Abraiamins. And it is to be noted, that all fuch as trafficke in this fifthing; doe not All Countries | cause the Oysters to open themselves in not alike in o. fresh water; but in some Countries, they pening the oil open them with little knines, or tharpe pointed bodkins. And in many other pla-

fters, and frustrate the Merchants of their

pening the oi-

themselues in this manner. They have a | ces, as in the Indiaes lately discovered, they fer their Oifters ouer a fire and fo by heat procure them to open, by which meanes they finde the Pearles : but then those pearles appeare of a reddish colour, and carry no chearefull water.

> Also it is to be observed, that all pearls are not white of themselves naturally, but in some places they are found to bee red? as in the Island of Zipangrie, scituate in the All pearles be East Indiaes, according as the faid Veneti-an Paulus reporteth. And yet there they felues: tut haue great plentic of them, very fingular- tome redde ly excellent, both for greatnes and round- pearles have nesse: and in those Countries, they are of white imprice dearer value, price and estimation, that & estimation. those white do carry no companion with them. Somewhat I can fay of my felfe, that I have feene feauen redde pearles, and no more, belonging vnto the late deceasifed Dutchesse of Valentinois; which had a most goodly lustre, and I was (for a while) perfwaded, that they wonne that colour by fome artificiall meanes: but after I had read the Discourse of Marcus Paulus, then I became to be of another opinion. * :

Heere likewise will I infert a great secret in nature, and (in my minde) very A ftrange meruailous, reported to mee by men of kind of moi good credite, that have feene the fifthing from those for those Oysters, and found it true by pearly o sters their owne experience. In a certaine sea- at a certaine fon of the yeare, these Oysters of pearles, yeare. doe belch and cast forth a red and bloodlike moisture, in great abundance : so that many (of the best in judgement) among those barbarous people, imagined them to fuffer a fluxe of menstruositie, as other fishes in the same Ocean doe. These Oysters have their passages, like to all other fishes in Seas or Rivers, so that in some places great store of them is to be found, and within a while after, a rare matter if tenne remayne there to be had, but all are fallen downe aboue tenne miles further Oysters con off- Sometimes, they which fifth in an o- tinue not in ther Countrey, where scarcely one is left: on the morrow or next day, shall light on more then ever was there before.

The Persians have moreover invented A later invenan other manner of fifthing, more com- Persians in fimodious, and of leffe charge and perill. thing for their By making of hurdles of Ofiers or Palms, pearled Oywell knit together with strong bindings, in such manner as the fishing observed in

O000 2

How and in what manne they fish for such Ovsters as have pearls in them.

fands, and when they find the beds of Oycolour.

Barbarous na tions made no account of pearles in clder times.

The wifeden and long continued experience of the Egyptians.

Pli.li. 12.ca.17. A king among the Oysters. and yet it is doubted, whether Oyfters derstanding. or no, and a best Natural-

our Xantonge Seas for Casserons, vsing . certaine Rakes, which rash into the Sca fters, fo force the enter into those hurdls. Others walke along amongst the Rockes and Stones, which appeare about the water, where oftentimes, they finde fome of those Oysters, so fast knit to the Rockes or Stones, as very much labour can scarcely get them off, without breaking the rocke or shell of the Oysters, and then taking from thence the Pearle, fo soone as the shell is broken; for otherwise it diminisheth, and doth loofe the true and naturall

The Indians, Arabians, Persians and others, in auncient times, made no more account of Pearles, then of ordures and corruptions which the Seas cleered them felues of during the feafons of their turbulence and boyling. But now wee haue fo well enstructed them, in knowledge both of the worth and profite, that they Ægyptian hath beene quicke witted alwayes, as having knowledge in good letters of longest continuance, addicting his studious contemplations, to vaderstand the fecrets of Nature: fo that Pearles and precious Stones, at all times hath tafted of his approbation and esteeme. The flaues and basest peazants in the Isle of firme Land, neighbouring vpon the Sea; haue oftentimes found Nacres and Oyfters on the thoares, beeing dead, and yet they made fearch into them, and often they found very favre and also rich Pearles.

Pliny faith, that Oysters have a King amongh them, according as the like is affirmed of the Bees, Antes, and a guide allotted to the Cranes, and that this king charge of all the reft : And that is the Oymost to finde, being then assured, that the rest will not feare to followe. Atheneus alleadgeth another Fable, as thus: That they doe striue to reuenge themselues on the fishers, by opening their shells so to catch holde of their fingers. But fuch opinions are meerely friuolous, and they

which ordinarily fish in the Oyster-Seas, make a mockerie of fuch reports. Beside, our Naturallists stand in doubt, whether Cockles, Scallops, Muscles, Oysters, and fuch like shell-fish (living in the water) have any part of understanding. And, by the same reason, if they have the meanes of withdrawing themselves, vpon sight of the fishers comming, or from any other fish (opposite or contrary to them) endemouring to eate and deuoure them.

... There is a fifh , which is very opposite | Taruphall, or to the Oyster, being tearmed by the Per- Taball, a fish fians, Taruphall, or Taball, and is of the bignesse of a midling Salmon, hauing a Oisters, liuing hard skinne, yet without scales, and his them. finnes of an azure colour. This fish hath a little head, a sharpe nose or snowt, seruing for his mouth, which is full of tharp teeth: and these pearly Oysters are his delicious diet, liuing (almost) by no other kind of foode. When he is defirous of feeding, he watcheth till fuch time as the Oican skill of the goodnesse, and value of sters beginne to open, as oftentimes they things in fuch fort, as they will fell those doe, beeing in the Sea: whereof making commodities at rates deare enough. The his aduantage, and thrusting in his nose, hee devoureth the fifth quickely, leaving the thell quite emptie. The fishermen of the Islands, labour diligently to catch this hath plenty of fifh, and first of all they open her bowells, rich Pearles wherein they finde store of very goodlie found in his belly. Pearles: then feede they on the fish, becanfe it is dainty and delicate meate. The fewer number of Pearles they finde in an Baharem, and other adiacent partes of Oyster, so much the greater and fayrer they are, and where they chaunce on anic ftore, they are the clowdier and small. Some are found to be so little, that they can not bee drilled by any meanes; and therefore they call them Seede-pearles, which are purposely kept for Apothecaries, who imploy them according to their owne knowledge and experience, or as they are aduised by the Physitian.

The most commendable forme and is elected and chosen (by being the very shape of the pearl, is faid to be that which carriemost fayrest and greatest) to take a carefull is roundest, yet that in fashion of a Peare commendati or Akorne, is not much worfe; and next tion by their ster, which the fishers or divers couet to these is that like to a little Nutte : nor doe they reject fuch as are writhed and wrinkled, nor the very fmalleft; but all are employed and made vic of : the best for the richest people, and the other for them of lower qualitie, because they are worne by all degrees of persons, as well men as women in regarde they are growne to be

Chap.15.

A doubt and

demand, what

may be, that

Pearle, shold

exceed gold

and filuet in

value and e-

the reason

fo common. No Prouince doe I know, I neuer we shall light on two, that are alike whereunto more Pearles are brought, then into Spaine, and next into France, within some small compasse of time, which makes mee fo much to marnell at them the more.

Of Pearles.

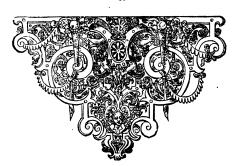
In briefe, Pearles have surpassed the riches of gold and filuer, and of Emralds brought from foorth the Indiaes. And yet I would gladly know the reason, wherefore our graue Auncients made fuch estimation of Pearles; confidering they knew them not to have any medicinable vertue, and in regard alfo, they grew quickely olde, as we plainly perceive, when they haue lost their lustre, clearenesse and whitenesse. Formy selfe, I cannot imagine what should be the reason, except it be in regarde of their whiteneffe, which is not common to other precious stones: and I perceive, that no account is made of them, which are of another colour, although they be of the felf-same substance. Some haue enstructed mee in an other reason, to wit, because they have beene brought from the new-found world, and likewise, that in times past, they fetcht them from very farre remote Countries, which needs must vrge the more affection to them, because they come from farre hence: Or else wee make such deare estimation of them, in regarde that (many times) they cost the lines of men in sithing for them, as partly we have before reported. The greatest Pearles are called in Latine Vniones, because sildome or

eyther in greatnesse, roundnesse, or splendour, or answerable in weight : for wee test Pearles finde them alwayes separated one from a- latine Vninother, and not joyned together; And ones the leffer fort they vie to call Marguerites.

After that the Merchants have them in their power, they permit them to bee The Indiane period by divers people, wherein the Indians and Persians are the best exercised, test skill in as beeing naturally enclined thereto by Pearles. frequent practife. Nor do Pearles continue still in one and the same condition, for the truth is, they will fade, wither and waxe light by course of times: especially fuch as are caught after the full Moone. But being kept in the floure of Rice, ming led with Bay-Salt, they will recouer their decay & wake former beauty and weight. But they light, which are caught deepeft, and in the new Moone, are never subject to any such inconveniences.

The flesh (as they vse to call it) or body of the Pearly Oyster, is most wholsom, and of great nourishment; excellent good good for diagond for diagond for fuch as language, or are in a confumption, and also for Hectiques and Tificks. But the Indians make no vie of Pearles in their medicines, although the moderne Phylitions of the Arabes and Moores doe, which hath beene learned of them by fome of ours, and vsed in all cordiall medicines, being good also for the eyes, finely beaten into powder, and held as an especiall preservatiue for the fight.

Pearly Ofters





A Table of the seuerall Bookes and

Chapters, with their particular Arguments, contained in this Second Volume.

THE FIRST BOOKE.



F the Ancient Countrey of Gaule, now called France. What Lawes, Culfomes, Religion, Ceremonies, and other manners were vyled among the people of that Nation in their first Originall, and howe (since then) they have continued. An introduction to the whold different them.

courfe. Page i Of the Temperance in cating and drinking, rufed among the Gaules: As alfo of their Marriages, and fingle condition of life. How the Gaules rufed to we are their hairs, and what

kinde of garments they wifed, with painting their bodyes. Of their Coines, Gold, Silver, &c. pag: 6 Of the houfes and dwellings of the Gaules, their townes,

and willages, and of what manner they were. pag. 8 of the humanity, liberality, hopitality, and courtefie of the Gaules to firangers 3 and care for benefiting each ther equally

How the Gaules made choife of their Generalles and Commanders for their warres; with a true description of their Military services and discipline.

Page 18
Of the (houts, cries, and strange noises, deuised and
ofed by the Gaules, to comfort and encourage themselanes,
and to affright or dismay their enemies. Also of their signs
of contentiment, peace, mercy; their Barit, Songes, and
Rithmes.

page 24 Of the difference between the Soldiours of Cafar, and

the Ancient Countrey of Gaule, of Pompey (being the valiant Gaules) in comparing them ow called France. What Lawes, with the Romanes: As alfo of the Spaniards and the Gauls, in the Country of the Spaniards and the Gauls, in what manner the Gaules fortefied their Cities and

Townes, &c. 30

Of the service on the Sea and other waters, wsedby the

bayes, and profession of Languages.

A Dialogue or Communication betweene Socrates and
Phedrus, concerning what oreat difference there is, betweene the Arte of Memory, and matters registred down
www.ivieu.

of writing.

A further addition to the Artes and Sciences, taught among the Gaules, by their Druides, Bardes and learned
men, according to the iuftification of diners good Authors;
And what Religious Ceremonious Orders they observed.

43
Of the dinimation of ed by the Surronides, who were a kinde of Philosophers among the ancient Gaules; their manner of Oblations and Surrifices: As also of their spels, charmes and incantations.

47

charmes and incantations.

47
What Ceremonies were observed among the Gaules, at
the times of their Burials or Funerals.

50
Of the Institute exercised in auncient Gaule, compa-

Of the tuftice exercifed in nuncient Gaule, compared with that of the Romanes, by duiding the cheefe men intertwo degrees, of Druides and Knights, and two kindes of Magifrates: with the purilhment of dijobedience to fuperior Officers.

00004

Of the forme of Gouernment observed in the Commonwealths of the leural Cities and Nation: And what their Rulers and Mazistrates were; As also how they attained to their Authority.

The Second Booke.

F the new Gauls, or those that are called (now adaies)
Frenchmen, or the people of France, (ucceeding after their Predecessors the Auncient Gaules.

70

Of the people dwelling in the fruitful Land of France, what they were being aunciently Gaules, and afterwards Frenchmen: their manhood, valour, and fuccessfeful fortunes.

Of the Maiesty, Dignity, and high Eminency of the Kings of France: And what infinite actions of honour they have done from time to time, to renowne the glory of that Kingdome.

A Funerall Oration, written upon the most unnaturall and untimely death of Great Henry the fourth, Father to the King now Reigning. 143

The Battaile of Rauenna, which was fought in Italy, in Anno, 1512. betweene Gatton du Foix, Duke of Namures, Generall for Lewes the 12. Ring of France, on the one party: And Raymond de Cardonna, Viceroy of Naples, Generall for the King of Spaine, and Pope Iulio, on the other.

what they were, whom the world tearmed by the name of the Shillas. Of their Prophesies: but more principally of those things which they jeake and wrote, concerning Christian Religion. 160

Concerning the featurn Wonders or Meruailes of the two ld; what they were. Alfo, in what feuerall parts and places of the World, they are remembred to bee by grauest writers. 164

The Oration of Antipater, the Father to Herod, which he made before Cafar; standing accused for sollowing Pompeys part. 170

The Oration of Herod to his Martiall troopes, being woon the point of fighting with the Arabes. 171

The Oration of Herod before Anguitus Cafar, who bad conceined anner againfi him, because hee had taken part, and followed Marke Anthony.

The magnanimous answer of Augustus, instantly returned to Herod.

The Oration of Herod to the lewes, upon the partage or division of his Seigneuries, to be made to his Children.

The Battaile of Riotta or Nouara, which was fought in the Dukedome of Millaine, betweene lohn Trivulzi, and the Lord of Trimouilla, Generals for Lewes the 12. King of France, on the one fide; and Maximillian Sforza, Duke of Millaine, accompanied with the Switzers, on the other, in the yeare 1513.

Of the force of Sudden Chances and vnexpected E-

nents, for the dispation of well of mans power, as of his policy. And of the hazards and doubs fulleacnts of Buttailes, and other enterprises of warre.

How our Auncients and reverend Predecesforus punified fuch in former times, as durst do any dishonour to their Mistresses.

Concerning divers kindes of Salutations, wied among our Auncients, when they met together.

What a commendable thing it is to purdon iniuries, effectally in Princes and great Lords.

From whence (at the first) came the Title or Name of King, and also of Emperor.

What was the reason, and woon what occassion, King, in ancient times were created and est absished. And of the

The Third Bocke.

Dignity Royall.

The Originall of the Switzers; and the Government of the Country, in the publike estate of their thuseene Cantons, with their Confederats both in generall and paticular, &c. 193

of the three first Cantons of the Switzers. 193 Of the Original lestate of Lucerna, before it leagued it Selfe with the Cantons. 214 Of the Original, condition, and estate of Zurich, be-

for eit leagued in with the Cantons amity.

How Glaris, being conquered by the Cantons; came afterward to be accepted into their louing alliance.
230

Of Zug, and at what time it came to be comprehended

Of Zug, and at what time it came to be comprehended in league and confederacy, with the other Cantons of the Switzers.

Of the building of Eerne, the feituation and conduton thereof; And how it was yeelded to the Empire. 233 Of the Towne of Fribourg; who was the first Founder thereof: And how it came into league of alliance with the Cantons. 247 Of the City of Solleurre, being one of greatest names

Swetia. 248
Of the Switzers warres against them of Millaine;4gainst the Venetians, and at the conquest of Naples. 249

gainfi the Venetians, and at the conquest of Naples. 249
Of the City of Bassile, and diversity of opinions, howevi received that name: as also the Originall and Aniquitie of the City. 251

At what time Schaffouse was received into the number of the Cantons, and the Antiquity thereof. 2,2 If the Switzers warres, since such time as they can't to be in number of the Cantons, and making them to be

Of the Originall of Appenzell: how it took that name.
The Lawes, Cultomes, and manner of Gouernment there
observed.
257

Concerning the alliance made betweene the fine last Cantons: and a brewiate of their Articles, binding them together in Confederacie.

The Table.

dertooke to recover the Dukedome of Millaine.	259	nen
A discourse, concerning the alliance of the S	witzers,	ווטי
with the kings of France	260	
Of them that are allied and leagued with the	Cantons,	thi
and first the Abbot of S. Gall	263	the
Of the Towne or City of S.Gall	264	
Of the Leagued Grifons	265	Ar
The alliance of the people of Valois	267	1
Of Rotwill, or Rotuill	268	GA
of Mulhusc	Fol:cod	1
Of Bienna	269	1
Óf Geneua	Fol: eod	loi
Of New-Castle	270	1
of those people that are governed (in common) b	y the Can-	1
tons of the Switzers	271	(in
Of Bada	Fol: eod	of
Of Bremgarten and Mellingen	2 3	1
Of Rasperwill	274	1
Of Frawenfeld	Fol.cod	1
Of the nine Bayliwickes or Gouernments	275	
Of Bada and Turgow	Fol: cod	
Of the three first Provinces	eod	1
Of the Sargans	276	1
Of the Rhegusces, now adayes called Rhinthall:	That is to	1
fay, the valley of the Rheine	Fol: cod	1
Of the Gouernements and Baylywickes which as	re in Italy,	1
	277	1
Of Bellizona	278	1.
Of the Alliances made (by the Cantons) with I	cinges and	
Princes, necre neighbouring to them.	Fol: cod	
Of the Alliance made by the Switzers, with th	e Dukes of	
Millaine	279	
Of the Switzers Alliances with the Dukes of	Austria &	L
Bourgongne	280	1
Of the Aliances betweene Sauoy and the Swit	zers 283	1
Of the Alliances betweene the Switzers, and the	he Kings of	
France	284	P
The Second Part.		a
		a
The manner of Government observed as	manait the	· 13

Of the Switzers warres in Italy, when the French vn-

The manner of Gouernement observed among it the Switzers 289
Of the manner and behaviour of the Switzers, in the time both of war and peace 190
Of publike Assemblers and meetings: Or rather of the Councell and Senate of the Switzers 297
Concerning senate of the Switzers in publike and peculiar differences and independents, in publike and peculiar differences 303
Of those Commonwealths, which are in each of the served Cannos: And firit, of the Commonwealths of Zurich Basile, and Schaffouse 305

Of the publike effate and government of the Townes of Berne, Lucerna, Fribourg, and Solleurre: which are not divided into Tribes and Companies, as Zurich, Bafile, and Schaffoufe are Of the Common-wealth of those Cantons, that have ither Cities nor Townes: but dwell only in the Country illages Of the sixe Cantons, which are handled together in

his Chapter, according to their fenerall rights ; and alfo heir Iurifdictions Folicod Of the Commonwealths belonging to the Confederates: and first, of the Abbey of S.Gald 325

An April, of the Abberg of S. Gall 345
Of the Commonwealth in the Towne or Cittle of S.
Gall Fol. end
The Commonwealth of the Grifons
The Commonwealth of the Valajians, or people of Valains

lois. 334
The Commonwealth of Bienns 355
The Commonwealth of fuch people, as are gouerned (in common) by the Cantons of Switzerland. And first, of Stipensary Townes 336
Of the Baylyvickes or Gouernments Of the Switzerland. Fol: col

Of Bada

(f Turgery

340

Of Sargans

342

Of Rhinthall

Of the Barons of Altfax

The Baylywickes or Governments which are in Italy,

The fourth Booke.

Of the Kingdome and Court of Spaine 3 the Lawes,cufomes, and manners of the people: as alfo the division and fituation of the Country 350

Of the kingdome of Portugall, the beginning, contiiance, and prefent estate thereo: with the Customes, awes, and administration of Iustice therein observed.

Of the Antiquity, Originall, Customes, Lawes, and administration of Iustice, observed in the kingdome of Naples 356

Of a Law observed among the Rhodians, that enjoyed and communited Fathers (setting aside all other businesse and assumes) to marry their Daughters with all possible speed.

peca. 302
That Tyrants doline continually infeares: and that
their ends are most miserable. 367
A most horrible cruelty weed by the Numantines against

the Romanes, and (in the end) upon themfelues. 368 That a valiant Captaine or Generall, ought first to embrace wifedome and prouidence, before he do make experiment of his fortune: And also, that after wittery, hee should be milde and pittifull.

Of the Salique Law, the Original therof, and who were the first Authors and Inventers of it. 370 Examples of some Letters containing secrecy, and some

in fuch manner, as they might not be knowne, but onely to fuch whom they especially concerned. A discourse concerning the Originall of the Normans;

wha

Fol. cod

what valiant acts have bene performed by them, and of circkling round about. Robert Guiscardo. Of two yong youths of Paris, that trauailed to the Indiaes, to cure themselves of the Neapolitane disease, or French Dox.

why there is not found fo much vertue in the Guyacum that is brought hither; as in that whereof the Indians them Celues do make vie, against the Neapolitane disease; and the description thereof.

From whence it proceedeth, that Graine or Corne is not To long time preferued in our Countries, as it hath bin, and still is in Egipt. Also in what manner our Lands and vines Should be corrected and qualified without digging, &c.

Of the great difference, which both ancient and modern writers have observed to be, betweene the royall Title of a King, and the difgracefull name of a tyrant. In what high account and esteeme Philosophers, and o-

ther men of knowledge (in what Sciences foeuer) were held in elder times by Emperors and Kings. That Learning is not onely necessary in Kings and Princes : but also for Generals, Captaines, and Commanders,

that follow the exercise of Armes. Of divers fecret naturall properties, being in the Viper: And how he may be fed on, and eaten without any danger

Of the admirable property of a little creature, the biting whereof is healed by the found of Musique. Likewise, of many other infirmities, which are only holpen by the fame medicine

Of a straunge medicine, whereby Faustine of Rome, wife unto the Emperor Marcus Aurelius, was cured of an infirmity of dishonest loue: and of many other remedies, against that powerfull passion

Of the strange and furious love of a young Athenian; and of the ridiculous love of King Xerxes: and howe that Bealts have many times affested both men and women.

Of a man, that receiving a wounde from his enemies hand, was delivered from a deadly danger, wherin he had long time lived: with fundry other examples to the same purpofe.

Who was the first that planted the Vine: and who began to put water into wine. To whom, and in what manner the Romaines did prohibite Wine.

Of many dammages and dangers, which ensue by the immoderate drinking of wine. And how it hath bene held as an healthfull thing (by some Physitions) to be drunken **Sometimes**

Certaine advices and instructions, against forward affection to wine. And some reasons delivered, why two things do appeare to bee three, to men that are overcome with drinke.

In what manner a man may knowe and measure, the rotundity or round compasse of the whole earth: And how much it is reputed to containe, in the circumference or Of the reason, why Snow (beeing coursed with Straw)

doth preserve it selfe in his entire coldnes, and warme water in his heate : two contrary effects working by one and the Same thing. Of Sudden death happening wnto divers great per. fons that have thereto bene wished or threatned, by such

as they have uniufly put to death before &c. Of the cruelty which Albouine, King of Lombardy, vsed to his Queene and Wife Rosamond: And by what meanes (he revenged her felfe on him.

Of a pleasant, witty, and honest deceipt, which a famous and vertuous Queene veed to her owne Husband, where. by lames, King of Arragon was begotten. Of an auncient and memorable Custome, observed by

the Inhabitants of Carinthia, at the Coronation of their In what part of the Zodiacke the Sunne and Moone, &

likewise the other Planets were, at their first creating. Al fo of the beginning of yeares and times. That men may learne examples by Birds, Flues and o ther Creatures, to leade a vertuous life.

Of neglect in Martiall Discipline, and of an Army of Christians, that lost all their lines through drunkennelle and want of following Military discipline.

Of the miserable ends, and other strange traverses, endured by divers Kings, Emperors, Dukes and other great Princes de. That People are commonly fuch in their actions, man-

ners, and piety; as they perceine their Kings, Princes and Rulers to be. Of the Originall of Triumphs: why they were firl

granted and ofed in Rome. How many they were that triumphed What a Triumph is: And that there are two forts of Triumphs. Of fuch names of immortall honour and renowne,

which the Romane Captaines had granted and gruen them. according to their feuerall victories.

Of such Crownes, with other recompences and salaries which the Romanes gaue to Soldiors. Alfo of punishing offenders, &c. Of the reason wherefore sleepe was granted and given

toman: And likewife, that too much fleepe is hurtfull and Of an ancient wife and custome in Spaine, in making

their account of times, by thefe words, Here de Cæsar. What that Here is and wherefore and when the veetherof was left.

The Fift Booke.

F Nobility Politicall and Ciuill. 448 Of the Nobility of the first Age.

The Table.

CI CA CI I STATE	
Of the first Greeke Nobility. 45	
Of the first Romane Nobility. 45	
Of the divers beginnings of Nobility Datine. 46	I
The Rites and Ceremonies Ved in creating of Baron	
by Charter. 47	
The Kings Charter for the creating of a Viscount. 48	
The Royall Charter for the creating of an Earle. 48	
The Rites and Ceremonies for the creating of an Earl	
48	4 1
The iKings Charter concerning the creating of a Man	- 0
I allelles	61
The Kings Charter for the creating of a Marchionesse	
485	7 7
The Kings Charter for the creating of a Duke. 450	
The manner of creating a Duke. 45	2 6
The Kings Charter for creating of the Prince of Wales	•
454	4 9
Things required unto the Creation of the Prince of	f th
Wales. Ibid	·
Of the Crowning of the King. 450	5 60
Abriefe description of the Pompe & Ceremonies at the	0
Coronation of Edward the fixt, King of England, accor	- r
ding to the ancient manner, wfed in the Confectation of	f so
the Kings of England.)
The memorable and famous Coronation, of our most	m
gracious Soueraigne Lord King Iames, and Queene	e de
Anne nis wife, the 25.of July, 1603.	5
A Statute and Acte of Parliament, made in the 31.0	f th
King Henry the eight, concerning placing of Lords in the	e do
Parliament Chamber, and other Affembles and Conferen-	-
itis of Counties.	bi
The Order of the Parliament Pompe. 512 The manner of restoring of renewed Nobility, lost be-	
Themanner of restoring of renewed Nobiluy, lost be-	·
yore. 518	ne
Of Customes. 1bid.	
Of Noblemen of the leffer fort. 526	Pl.
The Order of the Knights of the Garter, when, and by	
woom a was organies.	to
The Preroration, or Epilogue of the whole Worke. 543	
	111
The Sixt Booke,	١.
	I Pl

An excellent Relation, concerning the estate of Religion and Common-wealth, which was observed among the The first Family, being the Posterity of Icfus. 556 Of the Asmoneans, being the second Family. 562 Antiochus and Lyfias are put to death by Demetrius; the wicked behauiour of Alcimus the Priest : The death of Indus, and succession of his Brother Ionath, is. Concerning the imprisonment of Simons two Connes and their Mother, by their cruell prickle Ptolomy; and lastly their lamentable death. The valiant access of lohn

F the Government and administration of Iustice, ob-

ferned in the Common-wealth of Gennes or Geneway.

Hyrcanus, Sonne to Simon; and destruction of Sama-How the rest and prosperity of Indea begate fundrie Sects among the people, especially of the Pharifies, Saddu ces, &c. The diversitie of their opinions, and a breefe narration of the Doctrine in whe among the first Fathers'

Concerning the Originall of the Sadduces Sest, conrary in nature to the Pharifies, and what cuftomes were oblerued among them

Of a third Sect, contrary to the Pharifies and Sad duces, who tearmed then selves by the name of Essans: Their Originall, Religion, and manner of life

A returning backe to speake more of Hyrcanus, and of A breefe entrance into the description of the posterity f Antipater, holding the Principality of Indea, but not he High-Priesthood

The third Family concerning the posterity of Antipaer the Idumean of Ascalon, erc

A further entrance into the discourse, concerning the ace and posterity of Antipater, for the better clearing of ome obscure doubts in divers Authors dec

How Herode after all his tumultuous troubles and pollestations, attained to the sole government of the kingome of Iudea A breefe Collection, concerning the children of Herode

ne Great, which he had by his tenne wives: As also the orer of their fenerall successions Of the Ethnarchie of Archelaus, and the plea of him &

is Brother Antipas before Augustus, for the right of go-

Of Phillip, fon to Herode the Great, and how he gouerdin his Tetrarchy Of the life and death of Herode Antipas, Brother unto

hillip, and Tetrarch of Samaria, &c. The life of Agrippa, the first man of that name, coming be king of Indea

A breefe Collection of the principall accidents hapning the time of the fiege Of three great and notable doubts, which the anciet

hilosophers knew not how to resolve, and for what cause.

Of such ceremonies as were wfed by the Romans, before they moved any war.

The Seuenth Booke

Of the Government and administration of Iustice, obferued in the Commonwealth of Luca. What benefite and honour it is to a Prince, to have a comely body dec.

Of the inhumane actions, and monftrous cruelties, of Aristotimus the Tyrant

The reason, why men cannot know and understande the truth of many things, while they remain in this life.648

Of divers accidents (monstrous in nature) which ferued as divining Auguries, or coniectures of thinges to come in olde and ancient times. Of a very Strange and admirable accident, which happened to an Army in the night feafon. How indiscreete a thing it is and greatly to bee blamed in Christian Princes, to permit the Duello, or fingle Com-

bate bet weene man and man. Of strange and admirable properties in the Asse. 654 Of the fingular vertues and constancy of the noble Lady Aretaphila, the enforced Wife to the Tyrant Nicoreon : And the honest pollicy, for the deliverance of her Country.

Of the famous Philosopher Euxines: And of a Letter fent by the Senate of the Athenians, to the Lacedemo-

nians. The true Module and Patterne of Government, to be observed in any Common-wealth, derived from the community of Bees, and how many waies they may bee exam-

ples to men. How finfull and dangerous a thing it is, to desire reuelations from the dead, or knowledge of things belonging to a future life.

Of a Disputation made in Antioche, in the presence of King Ptolomy, by feauenfeuerall Ambaffadors: to know which of their Kingdomes have the best Lawes and Cu-

Stomes. Of a very proud and sumptuous Temple (dedicated

to Venus) in the Citty of Corinth, in the feruite whereof were five hundred Ladies: And of the answere of an Ab Ibid. belle to a great Lord. Of the Oracle of Apollo in the Ifle of Delphos; the originall thereof, and opon what occasion it came. What care our Elders had in ancient times, concerning

the performance of their facrifices. Of divers and fundry opinions of the Philosophers concerning the feate of the foule in the body of man: And a contrary coniecture of the Platonists. How men ought to foun and avoide curso fity. And what

penalties and pumshments were appointed by our Auncients, for curious people. Of the three Conquells of England, by the Saxons,

Danes and Normans; occasioned by the sinnes, eyther of the Princes, or of the people, or of both. The Battaile of Gaza, fought betweene Synanbasha, Generall for Selym the Great Turke; And Gazelles, Lieutenant of Tomumbeyo, the Soldan or Sultane of Egipt, in Of three severall Battailes, fought in the yeares 1516.

and 1517 betweene Selymthe Great Turke, and Tomumkeyo the Great Sultan of Egipt. Of the fecond Battaile fought at Cayro, betweene Se-

Of the third and last battaile, fought at Nilus, between Tomumbeyo and Selym, with the ill Juccesse, and disgracefull death of Tomumbeyo. &c.

Of the first invention of wearing rings, to what endit was. And of many ancient and admirable thinges, oc

Of the properties and vertues secretly concealed in precious stones : And whence the vertue proceedeth, that is faid to be in Magicall rings Whence it came at the first, that the name of Gentle-

man was given, as well to Knights, as to the fons of Presidents & Councellors. What Armes the ancient Romaines carried drc.

Of the Septuagint, or seventy Translators of the old Te-Stament, out of Hebrew into Greeke, oc. Of the admirable vertues and properties, which God and Nature hath given unto the Ant, Emmet, or Pi(mire, oc.

From whence it proceedeth, that some menline long, and others farre leffer while. And what complexion is the best for living long, &c.

How the life of Man hath beene abridged & shortened from the beginning of the worlde, and that in diverse times. Of the diversity of tearmes allotted to men : with many histories tending to that purpose

Abreefe Chronologicall Survey, concerning the Netherlands, divided into seaventeene Provinces : with a breuiate of the Earles and Princes there reigning, from Thierry (who was the first Earle of Holland and Zeland) to this instant time. The Eighth Booke.

Abreefe Discourse, concerning the Originall of the Venitians, and the foundation of Venice, eyc.

A Short Summary, of the lines of the Dukes and Princes of Venice: and a breviate also of the most remarkeable actions in the times of their Gouernment

Of Gun-shot, and other siery Engines

An answer unto a certaine demaund, propounded by the villorious Prince Charles the ninth, as touching the quality and effence of wounds made by Gunshotte; at his Maiesties returne from the siedge and taking of Roane.

Of the Excellencie of the Art of Physicke going farre beyond all other humane Arts and Sciences Whether it be possible, or no, to prolong the life of man

or woman by Physicke Against fuch as hold opinion, that Physicions doe delay and prolong hurtes and diseases, and are abusers of the world

The Table.

A breefe discourse concerning the first foundation of That it is neyther sinne, nor any ill acte done, to call for Ierusalem, what fortunes (from time to time) befel thereto: and of the kings that there reigned What difference there is betweene Leafing and Lying ; and how a man may tell a leafing, and not lye

Concerning the ingratitude and unkindnesse in sicke Of the twelve months in the yeare : how both Ancient and Moderne men seed to figure them, and of some myste-

That the vulgar fort do account it nothing, if they be not cured and healed contrary to their owne opinion. That the latest remedies have all the honour : And happy is the Physition that commeth to the difeafes declination. 769 ries represented by them. Of a strange Consuration or Conspiracy, which happned Against such as censure and judge of Physicions sufficiency, by their successe: which oftentimes is more due to a happy chance, then skill or knowledge.

the Physicion and to ve his remedies in difeases.

That it is not for the ficke patients profite, to have ma-

Against such as complaine on the over-short visitation

How much it importeth, that the ficke patient should

Of such as will have Physitions, and yet deny to doe

Of such as (in their sicknesse) will admit no medi-

That fuch as are subject to discases, are in like maner

That fuch as know some little matter in Physicke, ata.

The manner of knowing Opportunity truely, for wn-

Of favour, grace or good opinion : how it hath beene

Of those feauen wife men of Greece, commonly called

That Auarice or Conetou nelle is a most enormous

A very fingular reason, delinered by Phanorinus the

Diners examples of fundry accidents, whereby great

rest. And of many being blinde, who neverthelesse were me

vice and subject to great dangers : with fundry examples

Philosopher, concerning Astrologers, that it is not good to

demand any question of them, having relation onto future

more dangerous to bee neere ficke persons, then they that

derstanding or performing fuch actions, as we wold have

to be well done : And how our grave Elders ofed to depict

described by Picture; And of the Morall signification.

the featien Sages: with many notable fentences. That fight is the principall and cheefest sence of all the

of diverspersons, who were extremely conetous.

cine or remedy but onely for the prefent anguish.

my Physitions, as in ordinary : but one Physition sufficeth,

and diseased persons, towards Physicions.

which happen in difeafes.

of any other fort of people.

being assiduate and skilfull.

repose considence in his Physition.

as they direct and appoint them.

Subject to Physicke, and others not.

of fome Phylitions.

know nothing at all.

or figure Opportunity.

of great honour and renowne.

in the end

in the goodly City of Florence: and of the flaughter enfuing thercom A very remarkeable and worshy history, delivering in Against fuch men, to whom all things are suspected. breefe discourse, the life and memorable actions, of that faand Physitions slandered in the most part of those accidents

That there are more store and plenty of Physitions, the

mous Captaine Castruccio Castracagnio. A discounse concerning the winds, and of their severall

The Ninth Booke.

IN the first Tract, is contained a Cosmographicall De-Scription of the whole Countrey of Moscouia or Russia, the Climate and Shieres, with the commodities the feuerallparts of the Land yeeldeth; and the principall Citties

and Townes The second Tract, relateth the Emperors linage to defcent; his instalment and inauguration in the dignitie; the forme of publike Government, holding of Parliaments, and regiment, of the Prouinces. His Customes, Revennewes, Sophifmes, crc. The third discourseth on their Politike and Inditiall proceeding. The Emperors powers for war, and their falaries,

mustering, munition, and military provision : their Collonies, friends, and enemies Fourthly, concerning Ecclefiasticall Offices & Orders, Rites, and Sacraments observed in the Mosconian church, Mariages, and other Ceremonies Laftly, an Occonomicall discourse of the Emperours Cours, his Family and houshold affaires, and more private

behaviour of his people If it may bee fo ordered, or limited, that poyfons given

at a certaine day, shall not cause death, untilla time ap-Of diners erroneous and vile opinions, conceyued in fantasticke braines, and verily beleeved for sound truths.

A vulgar Question : What Language they shall speak, that never heard any feech. That a man or woman borne dumbe is necessarily deafe. As also, he that is nurst among dumbe people: And not (on the contrary) that one dumbe by nature, fould also bee deafe. And whence it ensuch, that a child is fo tardy in knowing how to speake.

The Tenth Booke.

plots and defignements of great Politians have bene difsipated and overthrowne. Alfo, concerning Pollicies, that F the Kingdome of Ireland, the Antiquity, Originall, (for a time) have bene profitable, and yet proved permitious and habitation thereof, according to the confirmation

of the best approved Authors.	903
A briefe Discourse, how those parts and	Countries,
commonly called, The New World; were first fo	
	916
Of the Excellency and Dignity of Marri	iage: with
many singular and worthy examples, tending t pose.	o that pur-
pole.	914
Of Partharites, King of the Lombards, who	being pur-
fued by Grimoald, fled first to Cacanus, King o	of the Aua-
rians or Huns, afterward into France, Jec.	922
What manner of men those were and are, t	hat bee cal-
led Doctors of Sorbonne, or Sorbonnists.	928
That the Law of the Emperour Seucrus,	and that of
Solon, for promoting any one to Office and A	luthority in
the Common-wealth (being first informed, of	amans, life
and good manners) was much better then those	e of the Ve-
netians, Florentines, Genewayes and Lucane	s; exami-
ning after the time of their Iurifdiction is past.	930
Of the reason and cause, why both some Pr	inces, and

. «	iolo.	
3	also some Common-wealths, have alwaies prospero	ully flo-
ſ,	rished in the times of warre; and in peacefull da	ies haue
с.	runne so decay ana ruine.	022
6	That Princes ought not to erect Sumptuous and	d Chatala
b	buildings; as hoping thereby to make their names i	mmor-
r-	tall.	026
4	who was the first, among all other Monarchs &	Prim
Y-	ces, that commanded, to present by writing, wha	tlocuer
4-	was to be negotiated with him.	!
2	Of such qualities and carriage, (as necessarily	940
l- ,	quired to be in a Prince.	_ 1
8	That the eldest Sonne ought alwayes to beepr	942
f	before the younger, &c.	(
M	The Monarchy of the Cafars, or Romanes.	947
e	The ancient and honourable History of the li	950
-	tunes, and admired vertues, of faire Landgartha, t	le, jor-
į-	all Queene of Norway.	
0		957
d	Of the Bezaars stone, &c.	669
4	Concerning the generation of Pearles, &c.	972

FINIS.



THE TREASVRIE OF AVNCIENT AND MODERNE TIMES

Containing the Learned Collections, Iudicious Readings, and Memorable Observations: Not onely Divine,
Morrall and Phylosophicall, But also Poeticall, Martiall,
Politicall, Historicall, astrologicall, esc.

Translated out of that Worthy Spanish Gentleman, Pedro Mexic.
And M. Francesco Sansonino, that Famous Italian. As also, of those Honourable Frenchmen, Anthonic Du Ferdier, Lord of Fauprinas: Loss Guyon,
Sieur de la Nauche, Counsellor vito the Kings Claudius Grages, Parisian, &c.



LONDON,
Printed by W. laggard, 1613.

HINRAUM

Transferred by State of the Sta

roman and the little and the second of the little and the second of the little and the second of the



To the Reader.



Know (Gentle Reader) that (ustome commands an Epistle to thre, for Fauourable Acceptance, and honest Entertainment of such a great Labour. But Iam (at this time) forced to Write with thee, both on the behalfe of my selfe and the Printer: in regard of ma-

ny Escapes, which vsually chanceth in Printer: in regard of many Escapes, which vsually chanceth in Printing, by reason, that immediately after the Bookes beginning, sicknesses other instructions, did bereaue him of his sight. If therefore any thing do or may appeare offensive, either in Method or Matter, I would not have thee displeased in any thing what soever, or that any Argument thorough the whole Booke, should be (in the least degree)

presudiciall to thee . Therefore, accept it with like
Loue and Kindnesse, sit is sent onto thee,
in Honest Affection and
Friendlinesse.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Vertue and excellency of Hony, and how it ought to be vsed and applied.

Of Tadeus the couctous Phifition or Fle-

Of Hony and

ged by Galen.

Gsl inlid.de

Confer Sanit.



Adams, the Florensine Phifition, a Man most couetous, for he would not go forth of the Citty, to vifite any fickly and discaled

person; except hee might haue fiftie Crownes allowed him for his paines; and to vilite Pope Honorius, he had each day allowed him an hundred Crownes. This Man perusing the workes of Car-danus (who left a small Treatise, which was (as yet) neuer imprinted to our knowledge, for hee lived in the yeare one thousand two hundred and sourcscore) found certaine places, where hee discoursed of Milke, Wine, Beere, and many other thinges : but he observed one especiall Chapter, concerning Hony and Manna, & that he alleaged Galen therefore, but declareth not out of which Booke he deriued his Authority. I enquired of many learned Philitions, 30 whether it were true or no, that Galen had written on any fuch matter ? Some told me, that they had never reade any fuch thing in his Workes: yet others affirmed, that hee had made fome report thereof, in his Booke of the Preservation of Health. But whether it be fo or no feeing the discourse is commendable, and full of learning: this Chapter shall containe some portion 40 of his relation, to the end, that the Reader (not as yet there-with acquainted) may vnderstand the Vertue of Hony.

He delinereth it for certaine, that Galen had seene two men, very different Two Men difin yeares, for the one was old, and well ferent in opi-nion as touch neere decrepite ; and the other, in the ing Hony. best time of his age. These men were most contrary in opinion, concerning Hony yet brought to agreement , by 5 ftore of good reasons, as you shall perceiue. The Auncient and decrepite Man saide; that Hony made him verie

healthfull, because it gaue warmth to

his Body; stayed the fluxe in his belly, when it greatly pained him; cleanfed

his Lights and Lungs, when they were

The old Mans defence of Hony.

ouer-charged with raw and indigested were cured of Tetters, Itch, and Ringwormes ; by application of Hony : befide, divers others, that had loud tincklings, noyfes, and winds in their eares yea & were almost stark deafe; yet holpen by Hony. It caused quick motion in the Pulses, and (vsed as a Gargarisme) it is a finguler remedy against the fquinzy, Kernels in the Necke, fwolne Aldmonds in the Mouth, and forenesse in the Throat. Applied to the eyes, it took away thicke miftes and vapours, which oftentimes obscureth fight. In breefe, the old man was affuredlie

perswaded, that there was not a better thus disputing. The young Man being Chollerique, prompt, ambitious, Anthonius Aurelius Verus, and to his fucceffor Commodus) required filence; and having heard the aged mans report, was as defirous also to heare the young man,

Phlegme, onely by spitting; made his Vrine come orderly, and (consequent-lie) discharged the Reines. Hee had also seene some, who were impossoned with Opium, and had daungerously fed on venomous Mushromes or Toadstooles; that recovered found health by the vie of Hony. He faid moreoner, that he had had an inueterare & fordide Vicer in one of his Legs, for which he could compasse no remedy, by application of manifold very likely helpes; and yet he was thorowly cured, and the VIcer consolidated by Hony onely . He faid also, that he heard of many, who

Aliment or Medicament in all the World, then Hony; according to the experience he had made thercof, vpon his owne person . Hauing spoken these things with good judgment and diferetion, he held his peace, and Galen commanded the other party, to fpeak what he could concerning H 79, fo highlic commended by the olde Man; admonithing him withall, to deliver his minde without passion or choller, and likewise to fet afide al partiall affection : For Galen found (accidentally) these two Men and impacient ; perswaded himselfe of victory before hand, and to prenayle Galon a Man against the graue man . But Galen, who of great auhad great credite in many partes of the world (in regarde of his finguler knowledge, and renowne of his learned labors, being also Phisition to the Emperors M.

The Vertue of Hony. Chap. 15.

> and giving him a fignall when to begin, he arose vp (as in anger) and proceeded in this manner:

The young mans declara tion against

The vie of

I protest to speake nothing at this instant, concerning Hony, which I have not experimented in mine owne person; and it may be more truly and certainely. then he hath any way made proofe of the like. I protest withall, that it is the most pernitious aliment or medicament, that 10 can be vinder heaven. For, I have divers times made vie thereof (vpon vrgent necessity) having beene surprized on the Sea by Pyrats, who kept mee captine for diners moneths; when I was constrained to feed thereon, enforced thereunto by meere hunger : but having eaten it , I found my stomacke wholly vndigestable, with much procuring to catting, which brought me (at length) to fuch gripes in 20 the belly, that by the meanes of Windineffe, which it extreamely caused, I looked for no escape with life. Beside these things, it brought mee to a dry Cough, and engendred fuch a number of worms in a friend of mine:that, notwithstanding hee dranke Vineger, for want of better Wine, he must needs have dyed, if hee had not voided them.

The ving of Hony, after my deline- 30 rance, made me fall into a Feauer Tertian; during which time, by aduife of fom, I dranke nothing but Hydromell, or Metheglin, which is a Breuage made of Hony, and fodden Water, boiled till the third part thereof bee confumed, and it prolonged my disease: but so some as I made pure Water my drinke, I mended presently.

Moréouer, the skinne being (by a mifchance) a little flayed off my foot by the aduile of some Women, I vsed an oyntment of Honic, which never brought any skin againe: but when I applied a litle burnt Paper thereto, it dried and healed it verie speedily. Briefly, I conclude, that Honie is neither Aliment, nor wholfom Medicament, either for the inwarde or outward affections : but contrariwife, it is verie dangerous and hurtfull to Nature, 50 He pronounced these wordes with such vehemencie and affection, according to his vie and behaujour; as if he wold have torne the aduerfarie partie in pieces with his teeth and nailes.

Galen then spake with great Modestie, (albeit he was by nature, as Chollerick as

red the truth, & no man needed to make anie doubt, because hee would make it presently apparant. It is most certaine derhiche rwo (quoth hee) that this aged man speaketh Concraryants nothing but truth, declaring what goodby learned nesse he findeth in Honie; because Honie is hotte, and all Aliments or Nutriments of hot Nature, doe agree with all persons, ages, and sexes, temperately, or of cold complexion. But this man is of a Flegmaticke complexion, old, fubicat to many cold distillations, Flegmatick and Quotidian Featiers; and therfore it is no maruell. though he give fuch affurance, and finds the vie of Hony wholesome for him. But yet it is verie likely, that he doth not vic it indifferently, as it is brought from the Bee-hine, but rather prepareth it : for he causeth it to be boyled, forden, Hony boyled and taketh off the four, in which maner it norisheth and converteth into good blood. If it much holp him in restraining the Flux of his Belly, it was in this regard, that being in that maner prepared, it had no mordication in it, neither excited any gripings, as it doeth when it is crude and

crates hath left written. And whereas hee

faith, that it made speedy discharge of his

Vrine and Reines, from Sand and Gra-

iect: furely, being boiled with Water,

(which the Phylitians call Mulla) it hath

out of question, such Vertue. By cough-

depend ypon age) when it is thus reduced

into a Syrrope, and taken in Morninges

long before feeding, it is verie foueraign,

and excellent alfo, to make olde people

It cannot bee good for such as have

uenture, follie, or pride of mind (as now

Grecians vse to do)but it is necessary that

the Honie should be verie aged, as, of ten

or twelve yeares at the least, boyled and

clarified in Wine often or twelue yeares

old; and being so prepared, it correcteth

the great coldnesse of the saide Cpium or

vindoubtedly, it is a most certain remedy,

as he hath formerly faid : but it must then

line merrily.

the other) that both of them had deline-

good blood.

275

Hip, in lib de raw, as my Great Schoole-maifter Hippo- Dista.

uell, whereto in age he becam much fub- Against Sand

ing and spitting, it cleanseth the Lightes Against couand the Liner; and the Pipes being char-ged with colde Flegmes (difeases which

drunke Opium, or cold poilon, by milad- Old Honie good against Opium & poya adaies the Turkes, and a great part of the ion.

poison: Against Mushromes or Toade- Agains Must fooles (which are commonly venemous) Toad-flooles

The vertue rances, which proceede from any thicke or Metheglin. phlegme, either in the throat, Fuula or the Almondes. Concerning the fordide and inueterate Vlcer, which he seemeth to have had in his leg, and cured it by the for Hony cleanfeth, cleareth, and is vtter enemy to all fordity or fithinesse, and hauing thus neated the Vlcer; it eafily heals For olde and foule Vicers.

For deaffenes and windines in the head.

Against, Itwormes and Tetters.

> Against the weakenesse of

The faying of

tooke to defend the yong mans ipee-

be ordered into a Syrope, as in that nature it is yfed, to displace phlegme, and an old dry cough . Hidromell or Metheglin gargarized, doth very well cleanfe all hindehelpe of Hony: the case is very enident, 10 & closeth it vp. Touching that which he alleadged, of fome, who have distilled & put Hony into their eares, being deaffened, full of windes, and afcending vp into the braine : this must be understood of very old Hony, fodden with foure times as much old Wine, for all hot medicaments (as very olde wine and Hony are) they doe disperse windes very easily, and other cold causes, which procure deaffenesse, and other accidents in those parts. That it causeth the drying vp of Itches,

Tetters, Ring-wormes, and other fuch like defoedations in the skinne; proceedeth from hence, that it is absterfine of his owne nature, and a great enemy to al corruption, for whatfoeuer thinges are 30 confected in Hony, will neuer corrupt. By the same reason, it worketh the death of Itches and Tetters, which are nothing elfe, but meere vncleannesse and filthineffe of the body. In regard of fight, questionlesse, being mingled with a little Fenell water, and so distilled into the eyes; it quitteth them from blearings and waterish humors, which congealing in the, doth greatly trouble the fight, especially 40 in such as vse ouermuch weeping. To conclude, Ladies and Gentlewomen doc wash their faces and hands therewith, to keepe them smooth, faire and white. And Cato was wont to fay; That to live long, we must vie Hony within the body, and oyle without.

Galen thus finishing his proofe (by very good reasons) that the olde man had ipoken truely; would not fo giue it ouer, but though the young man (who was oppositively contrary to the other) had declared fo much against Hony, yet would he maintaine the truth of his speeches likewise. And directing his eye to him, began in this manner, discoursing with plenty of words, after the Affatick course, and not Laconically, as his good and an-

time. Let no man count it ftrange (quoth he) if thou doe millike the vie of Hony, and lay fo much blame vpon it : for it is very contrary to thy nature, being of an angry and chollericke temper, hot in ac- The fignes of tion, and eafily displeased. And though I a chollericke had not heard thee speak, nor beheld any man. action of thine: yet very fight had beene fufficient to me; thy haire being red, thy skin yellowish, thy body leane and meager; these are enow whereby to direct judgement. First, let me tell thee, that diseases are neuer cured, but by their con Hony quite traries, for whereas thou faidft, that thou Feauer tertihadft a Feauer tertian, and supposed it to an. come by the vie of Hony, a food enforced in the time of thy captivity: I make no doubt at all thereof, for Hony conuerteth it felfe quickly into red choller, in any body naturally hot, as thine is, and I wonder it did not more hurt vnto thee, because it was in no manner prepared. a certaine malignity, which they have naturally in them. As Coriander, which is venemous of it selfe; Neuerthelesse,corindigestions, and filled with windenesse. In like manner, crude and raw Hony, not repurged from his excrements; offendeth the stomack, engendering a defire of cafling, and descending into the intestines, begetteth there such windinesse, and so painefull gripings, as are not possible to be declared, and therfore thou haft affirmed nothing but truth. As for the drie cough which it raised in thee, there is no doubt thereof, for but by eating it rawe; in all liquid things (that are thick and impure) received into the body. And his tartnesse or faltnesse (not being scummed away before):prouoketh a dry cough, yet auoyding nothing in spitting; because no matter at al was desceded to the lights & liuer . Which hapned not in like fort to this old man, for he had phlegm enough in him, to let fall downe ordinarily vpon in him, to let fall downe ordinarily vpon those parts. But fot that report, that Ho-not engende ny should engender wormes, it is quite wormes. contrary to all reason; because all things steeped in Hony, are exempt from ver-

cient M. Hypocrates was wont to do in his For albeit that many viands are good, yet Rawe Hory there be some that (before they are eaten) doe require preparation, to correct red is danger tous. rected with Vineger, it is an excellent Coriander medicine for the Homack, transiled with venemous. fome part thereof must needs fal into the Crude Horry control of the lights and liner, as it doth in all liquid things (that are shiel, and in a dry cough

Chap.16.

mine or corruption. But if it fall out, that a man vsing Hony, had wormes before, or is enclined naturally to them : then it dorh maintaine and nourish them, euen as Suger doth; but it can bee no cause of their generation.

Concerning Hydromell or Metheelin.

Metheglin, for what persons it is good.

drunke in the continuance of thy Feauer Terrian, and prefumed to prolong the same : there is nothing more certaine, then that this drinke (composed of Hony and Water) did it. But it was not caused by any defect in the liquor, which of it felfe is most wholesome, for Men of melancholly habitude, and for difeafes of black Choller and Phlegmaticke: but for any chollcricke perfon, fuch as thy felfe is, most certaine is it, that it is a true foment, and a maintainer offiery Agues, euen fuch as thine 20 then was, and he was greatly to be blamed, that thereto did aduise or councell thee. And whereas thou faiest, that it is an enimy to fuch places, as the skin is flaied or gone off: it is to be confidered, that it was no Vicer, like voto the other; for it detergeth, cleaneth, and dryeth not. To regenerate new skinne, we must not apply deterfine Medicins, but fuch as are deficcative, without any mordication. And I credit well,

are not therefore good, being fitly ap-

I conclude then (by these reasons)

nion : but all your contrariety hath no 40

that you both haue spoken very well of

Hony, albeit ye are so different in opi-

other ground, but that the younger

man of ye both, did not vie Hony due-

ly, and with confideration and good

indgement, according as the circum-

flances required. Thus Galen gaue en-

ding to this Controversie, and it was

to be feared, that if Galen had not thus

moderated the matter: the difference

had caused blowes between them. Such

debates and contentions, are daily feen

in Countrey Townes and Villages,

when a man will rashly commend his

Scithe, Hatchet, Sickle, Dogge, Bull,

or Cow, beyond his Neighbours, and

thereupon are ready to goe to Law.

But breaking off this discourse, because

I would not be offentine to the reader:

I wil adde another Chapter, to declare

that burnt Paper was much more conuenient for it : but yet we must not say. that if Medicines be badly vsed, they

plyed.

Galens conclu fion of thefe two contra-

whence the matter of Hony is taken, and how it is made.

CHAP. XVI.

How Hony is made ; Whence Manna proceedeth; Of the Aiery Hony; And of Sa

closed in their stomackes : afterward, it



Of making Hony.

Ony commeth from the Dew of Hearier, which falleth upon the Hearbes and Flowers, and is fuckt up by the Bees, and envp by the Bees, and en-

is vomited or cast vp at their mouthes, and they preserve much part thereof in the hollow of their lawes to line ther- Natures proon during winter, and other hard times. Man.

Prouident Nature hath fo well ordered al thinges, for the benefit and commo-

pretty Flies, in gathering fufficient for themselues, and liberall extendure for Man alfo. For it is a great merchandife, helpfull for divers Maladies, and a finguler nourifiment for some bodies, as may bee gathered by our former difcourfe.

dity of Man; that thee hath bestowed

many vertues and vigours on those

Nature hath beene so bountifull to Man, and ftill continueth the same affe- Hony-dew ction; that the caufeth great quantitie raine in form of this Hony dew to fall, even like raine places. vpon the earth in some Countries, vpon the Mountaines, and places where Frankinsence groweth. To gather it. the Inhabitants lay fleeces of Wooll

cause the Dew to fall vpon the flieces, which drinke it in afterward, they presse the flieces, and receiving this ho ny-dew into convenient Veffels ; they boyle and purific it, making vie thereof in their foode, as also in their Medicines, as they thinke best, and it is much better then that which is wrought by the Bees.

under the Trees, and bear the Trees, to

Galen faith, that there fell fuch great | Galen his requantity of this Dew (in his time) in port of Hony his Countrey of Pergamus; that the Countrey people (greatly delighted therein) gaue thankes therefore to Inpiser. Ælianus writeth alfo, that there fell

fuch plenty thereof in India; in a Region which is called Prasia, and so moistened the Graffe, that the Sheepe, Kine, and Goates feeding thereon, yeelded Milke sweete like Hony, which was very pleasing to drinke. And when they vfed that Milke in any difeafe, they needed not to put any Hony therein, to the end it should not corrupt in the stomacke: as it is appointed in Hecticke Feauers, Confumptions, Tifickes, and for others that are vicered in the intestines, as is confirmed by the Histories of Portugall.

Euripides faith, that meere Hony fell

vponthe Trees in Media; and Alianus

faith, that in Trapezonde, the people ga-

thered Hony on the Boxe-tree leanes;

and albeit it was bitter, and of strong

fauour, yet it cured fuch as were mad,

and them that were tormented with

the falling sicknesse. Doubtlesse, it is

very likely, that Hony should rellish of

the Plant or Hearbes quality, from

whence it is gathered : for if the Tree

be venomous, fuch will the Hony bee,

and if the Hearb or Graffe be healthful,

so is it likewise. Which was very well

observed by Diosearides, who faith; In

Heraclea of Pontas, there was some Honie

fovenemous, that it would reduce all the

fes, that aid eate thereof: but the Hearbe

Rhue being presently taken, was animme-

diate remedie. In Sardignia it is gathered

of very bitter taft, because it may bee,

that much Worme-wood or Sothern-

wood groweth in that Countrey : and

yet notwithstanding, it is not veno-

And to the end, that nothing may

be omitted, of what may be faid concer-

ning Hony; I finde, that there is ano-

ther kinde of Dew, beside the former,

which congealeth of it felfe, & is found

and taken vpon the leaves and branches

of Trees, vpon Hearbs and flones, and

fometimes on the very ground, for-

ming it self into litle Grains, like Gum,

of day being very sweete in tast . And

this dew or moissure, is called grained

Manna, the best whercof commeth

from Calabria, where they take it on

their common Ath-trees, vppon the

wide commons, and (many times) vp-on some other Trees, by some secret of

which falleth from heaven before break 50

mous, but irksome to tast.

Euripides and vertue of Ho-

Hony hinde-

reth Milke

ting.

from corrup-

Sec. 1 Hony both & venomous

Dioscorides con cerning hony body into a sweat, and take away their sen-

Hony gathered in Sardig

Another kind of dew belide

> Grained Man na, the best is

Nature. It maketh the belly loofe, the vertue of without any violence, as by daily expertis Mannain rience ir is to be feene, for if a man take vie. the waight of two ounces and an halfe thereof; it releaseth the belly gently, and purgeth choller particularly : nor is there any feare, in giving it to Women great with childe, and young fucking Children, if they neede any purging. Now adaies, because in stead of Hony most part of men doe make vfe of Suger, as being more amiable vnto Nature; it shall not vary much from our purpose, if wee enter into some breefe discourse thereof.

Suger is but the Pith or Marrow of The definitiof the Cane, by a rift made thereinto, as being over full of fugred pith, which congealed to the Cane like a Gumme; and long time (both before and after) only through defect of knowing Suger in those times.

But fince Madame Auatice discoues Couerousines red the Art, of preffing and boyling the first inthose Suger Canes, deriuing thence ger. great aboundance of Suger : it hath happened, that the Indians have (and yer yearly do)cut the Suger Canes, making also a yearely planting of the. And therefore there needeth no maruaile, if those great Suger Canca be not to bee foundiwherein nature shewed her effects, and fo (by confequent) the naturall Suger yfed by our fore fathers, is vtterlie loft. In flead whereof, our moderne rimes have vied Suger-candy, which is arteficiall and cleare, drawne Surver candy forth of minerall Salt; being fucked vp of thefe dairs on the tongue, whereby is wholely refembleth the Suger of out Auncients! The transfer of The

certaine cultiued Reedes or Canes, on of Suger. naturally produced, and boiled in Water, vntillit grow to fome hardnesse. The Suger, whereof our auncients (as Pliny, Galen, Dioscorides, Paulus Agine- Pliny, Galen, pliny, Galen, Diofeorides, Pantos Inglorides, paulus Aegme none other, but that which came forth tus. no other kinde of Suger was knowne, The naturall but onely that, which quenched thirst Suger wedly in the horrest fiery Agues. Quite contrary to the Suger of these daies, which prouoketh thirlt, and turneth it felfe into bitter choller, euen as Hony doth. This Hony was then rare, and all Sauces, Conserues, Confections, Opiates, Electuaries , and other medicinable compositions, were made with Hony;

Chap.17. Of Kings among the Gothes.

Difference between Hony & Sugar in

The comparison which our Physitions make betweene Hony and Sugar, is, that they are both Absterfine, Desiccatine, and Refolueable; but yet Sugar much leffe then Honie. Sugar is not fo contrarie to the stomacke, as Honie, neither so hot, that it may be numbered amongest those Medicines, which may be adminiftred in Feauers: and this is the opinion both of Galen and Auicen.

The invention of boyling, and making

How long time it is lince fugar was firf

Maiorque and

Minorque.

it into a Licquid kinde of Loanes, for common Traffique and distribution (in fuch great quantity) through all parts of the world, began within these last 800. yeares. In which time (vet farre off from the Originall) the Affricans, and people of Asia, being Neighbors to the Indiaes, got the fight of making Sugar in India, & preparing their grounds aptly for Sugar Canes; by transporting some of those sigar Canes into their Countries, and hufbanding their tillage for them . Afterward, they communicated the manner therof to other people, as (at this instant) there is verie good Sugar made in Egipt, Madera, the Canarie Illands, throughout all Barbary, Sicily, the Ifles * Baleares, in fome partes of spaine, and other places . The Reader may perceive by this Dif-course, in what case Honie is good, and in what euil: how it ought to be applied. and in what things it is best vsed; What difference there is betweene Honie and Sugar, and the generation both of the one and other . By obseruing also the disputation, which hapned between those men of different yeares, some profit may bee gathered; in what kinde it is wholefome, Nutritiue, and Physicall ; and in what Nature alfo, dangerous and hurt-

CHAP. XVII.

How the Gothes vied to elect their Kings. Great, Fat, and Corpulent of Bodie . Contrariwife, how the Sarrazins wold have their Kings to be Meager Leane and of (ma! stature.

T were needleffe to declare, what maner of people the Sarrazins vvere, haning formerly spoken sufficient there-

of, in a Chapter onely thereto appertaining. And for the Gothes likewife, fomewhat hath alreadie bin faide, and the rest remaineth to more convenient place. My instant purpose is, to relate of what stature and habitude of bodie, both those Nations vsed to create their Kings, therby to appeare more apt and proper for command ouer them. The Gothes would not elect anie man to be their King, except he were tall, great, groffe, and verie corpulent. On the contrary, the Sarazins would have no King to commaund over them, except he were little, lean, and low of stature. Whosoener considereth well on these matters, will find neither side to be voide of reason, albeit their opinions were so opposite; and therefore wee will begin with them of great, grofe, and cor-

mendable in a young man, and it begesteth

him much grace; but it is an unprofitable

charge to age, and much worfe then smal-

neffe. Doubtleffe, a Prince of high great

apparaunce, and goodly shape, is much

more respected by the greater part of his

backe in their Ships divers Captaines of

the Caribes, and made a present of them

to King Charles the ninth, who was then

young in yeares, onely about the age of

fifteene. The Saluages perceiuing his

pulent condition.

Hippocrates, the Prince of Physitions, Aphor. 94.lib.z faith; Great flature is verie feemly & com-

Kinges for, great, and tal, and others

leane,lowe,&

279

people; then one that is lowe, leane, and little. To approue this certain Normans, hauing made a Voyage into the Countries of Brafile (where the people were The Normas tearmed Saluages, and went whollie Naked, feeding on humaine flesh) brought

great attendance, and that enery one was verie respective of him, demanded what he was? One told them, that he was the King, who absolutely commaunded all France, a Countrie of large extendure, and well peopled. The Caribes answered, faying ; Surely, there was but ill proceeding in the election of fo young a King, rather ger in choise pointing their fingers to two Switzers, of great corpulence, and were of the Guard

belonging to the faid King. It is contemptible and vnseemelie, to behold a chiefe person, as the king, Captaine, or other men of command, to bee of finall stature, and their servants great. The first King of I/rael, which GOD chose and gaue to his people, was Saule;

The judge-

Men of fmall

3. Booke.

Small stature

Hippoc Aphorif.

Great flature is very hurtfull to age.

in them of leffer corpulence.

The discommoditie of great or grofe corpulence.

A good rea-ion against corpulency of

Concerning men of indif-ferent flature

a man of high and great stature. After fuch fightly personage, commended by Hippocrates in a yong man; he addeth, a great discommoditie, saying ; Great Corpulence is insupportable and hurtfulto ages because a great man being old, becommeth bending or bowing, and hath labor enough to beare the bigneffe of his bodie by the puffing up or swelling in his legges. Moreover, for the most part they are Cowardes, without magnanimitie or bodily strength : For neither their spirits, natural heat, or animal forces, are fo well affembled and united, as If occasion so required, that such men

should be exposed to danger, either by Sea or Land, or some misfortune or aduerfity shold befall them, they wil quickly shake and tremble with feare: which hapneth thus to them, because their Na- 20 turall heat languisheth, their spirites are thin and little, and their blood leffe boyling, Besides, Naturall Vertue spendes it felfe, when it spreads into a long & large extendure; which vniting and enclosing it selfe in a little bodie, is much more vigorous and powerfull then that which is heer and there disperfed. And that which yet is worse, what grace could the Gethes finde, in a bodie fo great and groffe? For ouer and beside, that they must needs be vnable for all royal actions, either in bodie or understanding; fo likewise, life could not prolong it selse so wel in them, as it commonlie dooth in leaner bodies The reason is, because grosse corpulency hath not so manie vitall spirites, neither fach plentie of bloode in the Veines and Arteries, as Leannesse generally hath. For, Fatnesse doth cause great oppression, whereby (fuch men) doe verie foone fuffocate vnder anie laborious trauell, or sharpe disease. It procureth also, that in the least ficknesse or indisposition happening to them; they thereby become daily tired, panting, fighing, grieuing, hart-leffe, deie&ed, and in fuch fort emptied of all courage, that life it selfe (thogh ten-derly affected) is tedious and irkesome to them.

Men of leffer flature, haue (naturally) a meruailous vigor, and the faculties of Nature strongly combined. We may discerne in them verie excellent graces, both Corporall and Spirituall, with fingular promptitude and subtiltie of mind, and that in fuch fort, as not only they excell, or equall (at least) the others in any disposition: but likewise, in strength and fwiftnesse, as also in goodnes of stomack for eating or drinking. I have oftentimes noted in our Armies, some French men of flender flature, who have bin drinking a Vie (as we terme it) with Switzers and Germaines, great of bodie, and verie fat: fore fat Cor but the Switzers and Germains were foo- pulence. ner drunke, became fleepie, reeling, and fell to the ground, vnable to vse any function of foule or bodie; then the other light timberd men, that went away clenly. The cause of all these thinges remaineth, not only in great capacitie & largenesse of the Veines and other Vesselles:

but likewise in heate both Naturall and vehement, which boileth, concocteth, and confumeth all Likewife, in a strong and firme braine, which doth not eafilie apprehend or receive fumes :but, in fuch maner, as a Tile made red hot with fire, or asa hot Iron, that flips water off, being

cast vponthem; also, like to a verie drie ground, which suddenly dispatcheth and confumeth Water cast on it, for there it loofeth it felfe, and paffeth away, as in a fubile vapour.

Moreover, that commonly there is more magnanimitie and valour in a litle bodie, then in the corpulent, may be approued by the Annals and Histories of Pepin the lide Fraunce, in the life of King Pepin, called man preferd before Childe the Lowe or Little man, Major of the rick the great Pallace, who lived about the yeare, 750. He was of no corpulence, yet contained in him a great spirite, generous and robust of his members : which was the cause, that all the people of France, reiecled Childerick (who was their legitimate and Naturall King, a man of great stature) and hauing (i orne him as a Monk, did locke him vp in a Monastery, there to end his daies, because he was tearmed De Nothing, a Coward, dull, and ordinarily addicted to drunkennesse.

We read in the Romain Histories, that aman of Gaule, of immeasurable great- Ofa great neffe, and higher (by the head) then anie little Romain in the Army, called or Challenged anie Romaine to fight with him in fingle combate. Among all the rest, Marcus Corninus (being a man of lowe stature) could not endure this infolence and arrogancy in the Gaule, but vndertook the fight with

him, and flew him, in faire warre, as we yse to tearme it.

Chapits. Of Perfunes and Syreet Povvders.

The addifed led tweete fa-

Tho Corthageniant weter of no fuch humoun asithe Gothes and Sangarase left their eyes were not fixed on Eatuelle 94 Leannesse fireacon small stature; but 198 auman that was originanimious and Wertumes, documentally refrecting dithet ben dilybonney or feature ... broprices kind dist. the Corbrowest not lookly in the election of their Kingos, deale Sagrarias Indicomminer, they worepdople word of A dictions or Hearning, and wole between which they won conflict by are in the ritudes of men , then anylindistry of Thunis by the Spaniards, whiminengem 10 On the donmario, the Barazini Affeit canes; and Ambians; had amongs them many men of girdar Learning, and woll read in all the Sciences a Manonett all other excellent qualities, they were very skilfull in the chose of their Kinges as being able (by Philiogndenie) to gather mature judgemendof their Magnapimit tie, Vertue, and Vices, well knowing, that in great and groffe Bodies, neyther Science; Godeh Spirite, but Generofitie,

hath (commonly) any labiding . And to this Day, they are knowne to be good

Of the abuse committed, in carrying sweet Drugges, Powders, and, Perfumes, 41 bout Men or Weomen ; What harms thereby ensueth, and at wwhat time they came to be first veed, and of their. properties.

Ethinks, that the Romans deals both wifely and worthily, in ordaining (at the request of their Cenfors, P. Licinius Craffus, &

C. Iulius Cafar) that no man shoulde fell any fweet Odonrs, or Arromaticall Vnguents, which commonly were brought forth of strange Countries. For this law, they had (vindoibtedly) very great reaeidents infering by the carriage fon, because such sweet perfumes and sanours, do make men effeminate, weak in

the brain, and all the other animal parts: engendering nothing alls, but vertigino-frie or addinethe, and great to ments in the head with trembling of the Nerues, Henergy with the interest a pale and the about the color in the face, and the same left-fluor ascident, which Quicklines causely, among the Viorsers, in Gold Sub and removed a sub do sub do Histograph Substance Both Soft Graph of Third Alex

debegge great paines in the head, and al

Suchas make vee of them in wearing them

rifin.28 Lib. 9

dies imperfe-

about their hoods: tis is only but to attract voluptuous Loue, whether it be in Men or Wanter, It was never feen, that any brave Princes, Captaines, or men of great cru-

dition, and that made account of verrue, did vie any of those Perfumes, or Muske (auours. Not any (as I have already faid) but the voluptuous, or fuch as hane form defect in their bodie, do carry luch finels about them; as aftrong vulauoury breth, Sweete Per-

Vicer in the Lights and Lunges, beging commonly called, a corrupt & finking breath Or for rotten teet 1, ful of psyrifed food flicking in them. Or for luch as have a Goat-like favour, by reason of an ill-forting fweat ynder their arme pits, & other parts of the bodie. For fych peo-

ple, I fay, it is permitted (as a Maddow) Who are alow to their defects) to carrie Bertumes, or edio weare fweete Powders about them, or elle to perfumes. haue their Garments perfumed. Martial fpcaketh the verie fame in his Epigrams to Pollhatyus. The Eaftgrue people did much more vie these sweete Vinguentes, then they of the VVell; and were extra-

ordinarily addicted to Luxuries and Vo-Iuptuousnesse, beyond all other parts of the world.

Face.

The verie greatest antiquitie that I The antiquitie can finde, for the vie of these tweete Vnguents, is in Genefit, where it is faid, That Jacob fent fuch guiftes into Egipt, because there was a great dearth of Corne, and to be favoured of Infepts, who distributed the Kings corn out of his Garners, which he hadde referred to preferue his people. or to make profit thereof, or rather, by divine inspiration. Salomon in his Canticles, speaketh of most sweete Oyntmentes, especiallie in the first Chapter. The like dooth his Father DAVID,

Cant. 2, 1, 11

and that hee did Annoint his owner After

XUM

Very bad ac-

281

The Sarrazins were great louers of lerning

Phyliognomifies, and, burfor them, all the Learning which the Gregians left vs.

had veterlie beene loft, thorough those 130 bloody warres of the Gethes Wandalles, Ostrogothes, Wwife other, and other bar-

> ាស៊ី ទ្រង់នៅ សា<u>យ២៤៤៤ ប្រ</u>បិទា and the control theory CHAP, XVIII invoce. W Large entreur of his morning

barous people in a mileness are

roani galifican i dilani riana

Genel.43, Iz.

The composi-

tion of all per-

Plutark invit.

Herodot in Es

Onwhat

beaftly plea-

futes fweete

periumes are

imployed.

After that Alexander had conquered on Darsus, there was found (amonged the other spoiles) a fittle Coffer full of thost fweet and fin gular Vnguents. We read in Herodosus, that Cambyfes King of Perfla, and Sonne to Cyrus, Tent His Ambat fadors with very rich prefents, and vellels full of precious Oyuments, to Macrobi-M, King of the Ethyopians. But the King having viderfloode by the Ithyophages, (who brought him this Present) in what manner those compositions were mades would by no me anes accept them, beecause, they were too effeminate for

a good Lesson to vs that are Christians, and thinke our elues to excell all other in the worlde for Vertue: that wee are his Countrey of Ethyopia. For, in thefe our dayes, wee cannot bee content with perfuming our Garments, and the haire on our heads; but many are growne to fucli horride immodesty, as to annoint those secretes both in men and VVeomen (only to prottoke Luft, and for the more lascinionsnesse) which were not ordained for any such brutish wickednesse. fiveet Perfumes, not to vie in their prinat Orifons, but only for Vaine-glorie, and where any interchange of affection is, to procure the better meanes for voluptuous pleasures, and seeme more acceptaperfumed but with Sitim woode, accor-

The Authors

In troth, this barbarous Moore gane much more barbarous then hee, and all 20 Many alfo, have their Beades made of 30 ble to his wanton Mistris, or thee to her as idle feruant. Incense bestowd in churches, or on hallowed Altars, are matters of no great value or moment. And yet the Altar of God in Ierufalem, was not 40

ding to his owne appointment: Let me not heerein be miltaken, as if I would inferre, that Benjamine, Storax, Amber, Muske, Ciuette, and fuch like, which are the principall foundation of Vnguents, Ponders and sweets, are wholy to bee rejected; for they are of great Vertues, and have peculiar properties against divers diseases, and then they may lawfully be yied, but not abused. Not as did Muleaffes King of Thunis, who in the yeare, 1554. having left his Kingdome, to require aid of Charles the fift, Emperour, fearing the Turkish forces, which the Admiral to Barbaroffa prepared agains him; wherefocuer hee went, hee abused these

blefsings very highly. Frontie had ordina-rily (well-neare) ferued in to his Fable al Peacocke and two Phefants, farced full Orion previous and odorificious. Val giring amounting control and Corows feet beliefdis other delicious. Sawaes ied weet fa-Pottages se indats dreffed in like manen and this was plainly feene at Waples. He was for extremely befored in the forweare fatours, and yet without came onneedel, that when he was cast out of his kingdorn for his cruelties, wherein he was re-feated by the faid Emperor, and at the facker of Thunis by the Spaniards, when he return ned to his Cafile, and found his Cabinet emptied of those precious persumes, which the insolent Souldiers (not knowing their value) carelelly threw away, he faid. That he grieved more for his Delicate

Drugges, then if he had lost his wholkingdome, which he had but newly reconques ceitin a King red, by the helpe of the Emperor. Going afterward againe, to entreate fresh succour being still feareful of Barbareffa) while hee went about this bustneffe, he placed his Sonne (as his Lieut- The fon fuptenant) in his Kingdome; who feazed it planteth the

only to himfelfe. Which when Muleaffes heard of the returned (with a few people) backero Thuris, thinking they wold open the Gates vnto him ; but hee found the contrary, for his Son having flain about fifteene hundred of his Followers, and finding the King to be none in number amongst them: at length his Father was knowne, only by the sweete smell of his Odours and Viguents; and his Son Amades beeing possesses and nis Son The milerable end of his eyes to be pulled out. Beholde, what mitassis. benefite this wretched King gotte by his fweete failours and perfumes, being vied vpon no cause or necessity. I have known too many, that bearin gover-muhaffection to this vanitie, and enriched with more wealth then wisedom, haue vtterly loft their health, and falne into exceeding

Thus yee fee , what I have collected for yee, out of many good and auncient The Authout Authors concerning the viage of drugs his condulion or fweet Perfumes; what euil vie is made of them, and how being vnfitly applied, they are the chiefe causes of manie maladies, and feruing (for the most part) for nothing but voluptuousnesse. I hold Opinion, that no man dooth more abuse them, then a man that shouldemostre-

Of the name ambar or Am-

spect his honor, and hold it in highest recommendation; to be fo much forgetful of himfelfe, as to feed his efferninate and voluptuous apetites, with thefe vnfitting & wanton procurements. Now, because there are great controuerfies, and manie are ignorant, from whence wee haue our Amber-Greece, Muske, Ciuit, Beniamine, and Storax, wherewith are compofed the faid Vnguents, Powders, Sweete Pomanders, and Perfumes, it shall not alter our determination, in our next fucceeding Chapter (to recreate the Readers spirits) to speake something more of them, and of their faculties.

CHAP. XIX.

of Amber-Greece; From wheree it is brought : The wearth and properties thereof. And certaine Fables (concerning the (ame) refuted.

There are twe fenerall kinds of Amber.

Y purpose is not, to speake of that Amber, which is bred among Rockes of coloured ftone, and (by his Natine Vertue) attracteth

Straw thereto, as the Adamant doth Iron : But of that fweet Aromaticall juice of Amber-Greece; wherof, because many men haue diversopinions, concerning the production of a thing fo rare & precious, I thought good to make some briefe discourse. I woulde gladly also refute diners Fables, delinered in publicke conference thereof, without alledging any Authours in my conclusions, that write or speake by heare-fay; but onely fuch perfons as have feen the places from whence it is had.

Concerning the name of Ambar or Amber, it is so called in all Countries of the name. Our ancients have supposed, that it is the feede of the W hale, which is left by her vpon the Waters, and fo is gathered, because in the Bellies of some Whales, there hath beene found thereof, Nicholas Monardus, a Spanish Physition, faith; That in the year, 1590 (himfelfe being prefent) a Whale was taken neere to the Canarie Islands, which are tearmed the fortunate, and in the Bellie thereof, was found about four pounds

waight of Amber. Afterward, he was alfo present, at the taking of manie other, with their young Ones, but not a jotte was to bee found in any one of them. Others are of the minde, that amber is nothing else but the excrement

of the Whale, which he attoydeth by his egestions in April and May: because hee then feedeth on certaine fruites growing on the Sea-bankes, which are verie odorifferous. Some do affirme, that it is not any excrement of the Whale, but of another huge Fish, as great; or much more in greatneffe exceeding the Whale, and it hath a head more hard then Marble,& neuer swimmeth but in the Northerne Seas. But all these conjectures come up thing neere to truth, because all thinges of good and great fations, do com from Countries and Regions which are hor; as experience deliuereth by our Spice- A firange Fifth ries, of which, no one kinde was euer

... I finde fome other Authors, who fav.

that Amber is fought for and found, be-

ingdeuoured by a Great Fishe, named

the Azell, which dying, and floating vp-

on the Waues, hee is quickely knowne

of truth heerein; for Amber is not anie

ly or cold Countries.

knowne to be produced, from Norther- befound.

by Marriners, that feaze on him with their Hookes, and so dragge him on the frore. There opening his Bellie, they Amber is alounde flore of Amber; but that is onelie user and friend good and pure, which they finde against his chine-bone. But there is no aparance

kinde of poilou, but a dear Friend to the heart and life. On the otherfide, Fithes doe never feeke anie thing to hurt them, except by Trecherie vied to them, and that men do mingle Venom among other foode, which is apte and proper for them, as they do to Lyons, Wolnes, Foxes, Leopards, Rattes, and diners other harmefull Beaftes, that live on the land-Many also have bin perswaded, that Amber is a kind of froth or four of the led to bee a Sea but this Coniccture, is even as Fabulous as the other . For , Amber is not found in those Seas, where W hales

place, where the Sca is continuallie full of Eillowes, or store of froth appeareth. Theuer faith, that hee Learned of diuers Arabes, lewes, and Eafterne Greeks dispersed heere and there thorough the Turks jurisdiction, that there are certain

Bbz.

doo frequent, and much leffe in any

Variety of O. jound, & how men come by

Amber fuppo

Birds in the Isles of the Voiques (which A verie erroneous opiui-on of Andrew Theuet, concer

arescituated in the way leading to Mozambique, towards the North) as great as our Geele, and called by them Afchibobne. These Birds, doe ordinarily withdraw themselves, farre off from any Inhabitations of men, and pearch in the Night time, either in these vn-inhabited Mands, or on the toppes and pointes of Rockes and Clifts, for auoyding difturbance in their rest: and there they mute in great aboundance, because they company in huge flightes together, euen as our Cranes or other Wilde Fowles do with vs. It is faide, that this Dung or muting of these Birdes, is true Amber, Which beeing concocted in the heate of the Sunne, purified by the Moones power in the Night, and refined by the ayres Subtilty, which keepeth continually vpon those promontories: it so remaineth, till the Sea doth swell and rise (either by those violent Windes, or some out-ragious Tempest) and carrie it thence away. Floating thus, by Morfelles or Fraggements upon the Waues, it is one while cast into Creekes, Hauens, or Neighboring Strands: and another while, deuoured or swallowed up by Fishes . But, it beeing a matter undigeftine, they are en- /30 forced to cast it uppe againe. And the other, that continueth still swimming hither and thither, yeeldeth a reason (by Three feueral these seuerall meanes) of three kindes of Amber. The one, is of a Whitish Colour, which is the true Naturall qualitie of fine Amber-Greece. The second, is more Clowdie and obscure, and yet good account is likewise made thereof. But, as for the thirde fort, which hath beene swallowed by Fishes, and sent vp againe, thorough the lacke of Digestion, being Blacke, waightie, and of much leffe fauour, they reckon it to be of flender perfection, and therefore, make no esteeme at all thereof. But all these thinges, come nothing neere vnto the trueth, and I am verie forrie, that Theues (having travailed fo much) shoulde set downe this in Writing, euen in the verie same manner, as I have delivered

it, beeing a matter no way likely or pro-

Authors, who onely and chiefelie hatie

spoken of this Amber, do say; That it is

a kinde of Bitumen, comming foorth of

Acius, and Simeon Sethius, Greeke

Ecius and Sionly Writers concerning Amber.

the Pountains of Springs in the bottom of the Sea, and that by floating upon the water it becommeth hardened, as manie things elfe doe, which honer vppon the Seas, being first bred in them; all which while, they are fost and tender, but comming forth, they wax presently hardned, as Corrall doth. This Amber thus floating, when the Seas are angry and tempestuous, as many times they bee: there the Amber is is store thereof found among the Rocks tound. and stones, as also about the trees growing on the Sea-shores, when the Eastwind, or else the North-east (but more enclining to the East) bloweth. A great quantitie thereof is found in Islands where

Sofa'a, and in the Isles of Comaro, Demo- the bestiAmgra, Mozambique, and along this Tract, ber is found. cuen to the Isles of Maldina, or Naledina, which looke into the East. But when Zephirm, or the Westerne Windes do moue the Seas to choller, then is a great quantitie found in the later named Islandes. There have beene fome fragments found floating on the Sea, as great and tall as any man; and others of the bredth of foure spannes, and twentie in length. Some do affirme, that they have a whole Ifle (as it were) all built of pure Amber; and within some fewe daies after, when fearch was made for it, it was dispersed, and could not be found.

Garcias d'Orta, a Portugall Physicion, from whom I tooke this latter opinion: Orta, a Portugate opinion: and with whom, the best judgements of these times doe give consent, for, being witnesse. alwaies found veritable, and hauing been present in the Countries where this drug is had, where heekept possession of an Island belonging vnto the King of Portugal, wherein great quantity of Amber was daily founde : hee was of the fame minde with Æcus and Sethius , & heard them when they delinered their ludgement therein. Hee faith also, that in the yeare, one thousand fine hundered fiftie fine, neere to the Promontory of Comaro, a great lumpe or proportion thereof was founde, which waighed more then three thousand pounds waight, and hee that found it (supposing it to be a kind of Pitch or Bitumen) fold it almost for nothing. For himselfe, hee sayeth; the very greatest lumpe that ever hee faw, did not exceed about the waight of fifteene pounds. But the Merchants which tranaile into Ethiopia, giue good affurance,

Chap.19.

The Merch-

that they do ordinarily behold pieces of inuch greater feantling is for all the pafants that com fage from Sophala, euen to Brana, aboundeth plenrifully in Amber. In the country of Brafile, there hath bin some found, and yet is, but very rarely. In the year, one thousande fine hundered thirtie, a fragment was there found, contayning the waight of foure poundes, in fayling vnto a Porte of Portugall, called Setu-

Of Amber-Greece, &c.

Aniber found in the beakes of Birds, and cleaning to

by the rich

Some fay, that Amber hath bin found in the Beakes or Billes of certaine Birds. which may be fo : and cleaning to fome Cockles and Scallops of the Sea, which I immagine happened, by being fastned thereto. But, Maister Nicholas Raffess, a verie Learned Man (my intimate Friende, living yet in Para) and curious in fearch of the rarest thinges; shewed mee what manner of Beakes those were, and we plainly perceived, that they were the beakes of Sounds or Cuttle-Fithes, and not of Birds.

Amber, is of great estimation among the Wealthie Indians, for they eate it in their Meates; and looke how much the price appeareth in bigneffe, so much the greater is his price in Value, euen as of precious Stones . There is no Countrey or Region, where more fale is made thereof, then in China : for, as the Porsugales obtained fauour of the China Kinges, to Trafficke with that kingdom, and bringing thence some small quantitie of Amber, they folde the Waight of twentic Ounces, for fifteene hundered Crownes: Which beeing vinderstoode by other Merchants, they broght thence more store afterward, because (thence-

In Fraunce, it is commonly folde (at this day) for eight or nine Crownes the Ounce, at the leaft : Neuertheleffe, it is fometimes more, and fometimes

forward) they would not pay fuch a hye

price in that Countrey.

Amber maintaineth helth and long life.

Amber fold at

deare value

end other

The Vertue

Let no man count it straunge, that it is fo curioufly coneted by Rich and Noble persons ; for it hath manie especiall 50 properties, whereby to preferue foundheffe of Health, and to maintaine long life, as I will briefely declare . First of all, it ftrengtheneth the Praine, appealing all phines therein; either of the Netues or Heade; comming of Colde califes by chafing the fore-head there-

with, and all the Head oner, or making a good bigge Emplaifter, and mingling a little Oyntment of Muske with it, lay it fo to the Head. If a good lumpe there For memorie of, be hanged about the Necke of Man braine. or Woman, tempered with a little Lignum Aloes, and a finall quantity of Musk, the very finell thereof cheareth vp a dult braine, augmenteth memory, and reuiueth both the spirits and heart extraordinarily. Refides, it is a fingular remedy . gainst the plague, and all colde deflu it ons, onely by petfuming a Night-Cappe therewith. There is nothing more beneficiall for auncient people, and toilengthen life in them, if they moderately vie it in finelling either in perfuming their Garments, anointing their faces or mingling it amongft their Meates . A little For Women pouder of the Load-frone compounded with it, and applied Emplaifter wife to the Nauell, it holdethand restraineth the Fruit, that it fall not before due and con- to them. uenient time. It is a fingular Remedie. not onely against the procidence of the Matrixe, but likewife to pretient the fifffocation; being applied with a litle Corton, and yied in the focret parts: Applying it both outwardly & inwardly it maketh Women fruitfull, whose barrennes is caused by coldnesse. It profiteth greatly for paines in the heart and stomacke. occasioned by windinesse. Such as are For the fal-afflicted with the Epilepsie, that is to say, the falling ficknesse, or disease of S. John. if they vie it as an ordinary finell, or receine it as a perfume, it quite appealeth it, or caufeth a mightie affwaging thereof, as hath beene many times crediblie experimented. In like maner, it is verie For the Pally finguler good against the Palife, if, be-fide taking it inwardly, yee vie it as an Oyntment to the necke and Chin bone of the backe, mingled with fome nernall

If it be taken in Wine, as some Physitions (not well informed in the Nature thereof) have appointed; it presentic half, and all to caufeth drunkenneffe, and brings a man be vied. (at length) to a trembling in al his joints. But if any necessity doe require vs to vse it, it must be mingled with the volke of a new-laid Egge; and the Dofe or quantity to bee taken, is commonly fixe Graines each day, & to drink no wine in the space | For a hot or of two houres after. If a man that hath a dry traine. home Chafing Braine, fo procured by Bb3

For the Peffi

of Heaven's

For auncient people víca moderately.

For what peo

Amber of 4.

Scuerall Co-

lours, and to know the bel

Nature, do either vie it as a fauour, or receiue it inwardly: questionlesse, it will proue verie troublesome to his memorie and understanding, and cause divers difeafes in his head, endangering his fal into frenzie or madnesse. And therefore, it is most availeable for olde decrepit people, and fuch as have a cold braine; and for fuch Difeases, whose Causes or Originall do proceed of frigidity.

There is Amber of foure fenerall colours: White, Gray, Red, and Blacke; which commeth according to the variety of places or Regions, where it is found out. The Gray, is preferred before al the other, and is knowne to be good, if when pricking it with pin, it deliuereth forth a moisture like Oyle. It hath bin tempered in Torches, Tapers, and Candles, for Emperors, Kinges, and Great Princes: as in the Court of Camplon, the last Soldane of Egypt, Muleaffes King of Thunis, and divers others. It is mingled also amongst other Drugges, for making of Chaines and Bracelettes, worne viually by Ladies, and Great Courtiers, without anie great offence or discommendation, the causes in our precedent Chapter alwaies remembred

CHAP. XX.

Of Muske, and of Civit, howethey are ingendred, From whence they are broght, and how they are any way good.



Extento Amber, me-Ext vnto Amber, me-thinks that Musk ought to haue his due ranke. The Barbarians call it Patt, and there are manie forts or kinds there-

of. The best of all, is that which commeth from a Countrey, that leaneth very much into the West, as faire as the Citty of Chorasa doth, and is yellowish, or of Gold colour. The best, next to it, is that which is brought from the Indiaes, and appeareth blacke, whereby it is not fo good as the first. The worst of all, is that which they bring from the Land of Sini. All these kinds of Musk, are engendered in the Nauell of a certaine Beaft, like vnto a wilde Goat, which hath only

one home, and is verie great of bodie, When this Beaft is in paine, by a raging fwelling in his Nauell, which filleth it felfe with a kind of groffe bloud, in manner of an impostume: he afterwarde voideth this bloude, halfe corrupted, and within a certaine while after, it becom-

meth of very fweet fauour. Serapie (among the Arabes) hath writ-ten diligently and carefully concerning Muske, speaking in this manner : The

Beafts that make Muske, and are like vnto wild Goats; are principally bred in the Countries of Tumbafco, & of Sini, which bee neere neighbouring to each other. The Muske of Tumba/co, is better then that of Sini, because the Goates which make the Muske, do feed on nothing but Spicknard, & other odorifferous plants, whereon only they live. Which hapneth not so in the land of Sini, for, albeit the Musk-Goats do there line also on sweet hearbs and plants: yet are they not to be compared in their Muske, neither to the Spickenard, nor to the other plantes of Tumbalco.

The maner also of gathering the Musk, is some reason of the difference, for they The maner of of Tumba co, do neuer take the Musk out Musk in Tumof the thin skin or wrapper, to fophisticat | Musk in 1 min. it; neither will they gather it, but when the feafon is bright & clear. But the men of Sini, they vie to squeeze the skin of the fwoln impostume, and mingle and fophisticate it even in the iffuing foorth, not caring whither the time be foul or faire, and so they shut it vp in purposed boxes. That is the best Muske, which is the most odorant, and is very ripe when it cometh forth of the swoln bag. These goatswhich Difference of carry the Musk are no way different but onely in their teeth, for they haue teeth of the musked Goats only in their reeth (there commonly cald Dogs teeth) very long, stading out of their mouths, aboue

a span-long, like to the wild Boare. Musk that is not mature & ripe, hath Muske not a most offensive smell: but they which feek for the Musk, do shake the thin skins and how they wherein it is not ripe; and hanging them ripenit. in the open aire, there leave them fo, vntill they be ripe, and the foule fauour bee vtterly gone. It becommeth very odo-rant of it felf, when it is perfectly baked in the aire : neuerthelesse, the best Muske is that, which naturaly receiveth his maturity, euen in the thinne wrappers of the Musk-Goat. The people of this country,

The errour of matus a Phi-

Howthey find | doe gather it among Stones & Trunkes of Trees; for the Beaft, when he feeles his impostumation ready to ripen thee taketh great delight, in rubbing his body against the Rockes and Trunkes of Trees, vntill the Bag be broken, and all the congealed matter bee voyded out. This Muske is better then all the other. as being that which is plainely ripened; uen, and perfect concoction of the fun.

Ghap.20.

The best Muske, and how it is foss

In what man

ner we finde Muske to be

hurtfull.

and vied.

both by the good temperature of Hea-They then that seeke after it, so soone as they have found and gathered it; they close it up in the thin skinnes and Bladders, of fuch Beafts as have bred Musk, and have (formerly) bin flaine by them in hunting.

Of this Muske is it, that prefents is made to Kinges and Princes, & whereof they make vie. It hath (almost)the 20 equall properties to Amber, but herein it is much worste; for if a Man beare too great quantitie about him, or if he receive over much inwardlie : it brings him to a palfie trembling, and raifeth great torments in the head, enforcing To vehement an attraction of blood to the Nofe: as many have fuddenly dyed by bleeding. But in a small and modetate quantity, it is good against all 30 paines in the head, comming of colde

caufes. I have not found any Author, either Greeke, Arabe, or Moderne, but inma

peth with this Man in opinion, and in the gathering of Muske except one Amatus, a Portugall Philition, a Man of very great inconstancy, as divers have declared to mee, that had knowledge of him in Turky. Hee makes a moc- 40 kerie, of that which hath beene deliuered by divers good Authours, concerning Musk, and laboureth to affure vs. that in a certaine Countrey of India, there is a Beaft as big as the Hares here among vs, which being taken, and beaten to death with rods; the bowels and inwardes is then taken forth, and the Flesh bruised or beaten in a Morter. Afterward it paffeth through a Searce, 40 to the end that no bone may remaine unbruifed, and then the flesh is made into round Bals, and wrapped up in piewes of the faid Beafts skinne; ftil to preferue them in a round forme, and because the Merchants, that buy them thus readily prepared; may make no

doubt, but that the Muske is of the very The opinion fame Muske-beaft. But both Portugals, Arabes, and Iewes, who have travailed of Amatus ftrongly reinto those partes, and seene these matters thus gathered: are of Serapios mind, and hold the courte which I have formerly alleadged; and that our Muske commeth from a Beaft like vnto the wilde Goat.

Marcus Paulus, a Venetian, in the first Booke of his Voyages, and the first Chapter, faith; That in the Pronince a worthy Veof Singuil in India, himfelfe found the ler, best Muske in all the world. For in that Countrey, they have a Beast, of no strange kinde, but about the bignesse of a Cat, with haire like to a Hart, or red Deere, very great Clawes, and foure teeth only; to wit, two aboue, and two beneath. Neere, or about the nauell of this Beail, betweene the Fleih and the skin, there is a bladder full of blood, which is true Muske, yeelding the vertuall fent and fweete fauour. I would be loath to belve fuch an approued Authour : For it may very welbe, that this Beaft is of the fame kind, as the Muske-Goat is, notwithstanding the smalnesse in body : because (heere among vs) we fee Dogges, Horfes, and other Beaftes, of all shapes and formes. But yet he agreeth with all the reft in this that the Muske is found about the Nauell, as

hath formerly bin faid. Muske (by length of time) loofeth Of Muske his good fmell, or beeing rainted with loofing his fawind, or too closely kept . Therefore, wour. to preserve him still in his goodnesse, he must be kept in Boxes of Lead, verie

well Ropped. Platearius, a learned man, is of this Areceiptto opinion; That if Muske haue loft his re-accommo vertue and good odour; it must be hanged in a Viall of Glaffe, with the mouth open, in the midst of a Sink or house of Office, and fo it wil recouer his former fauour. There is some found composed of another fashion; but then it is sophisticated, and how that composition is made, Gefner enstructeth in his History

Ouer and beside Muske, we have yet Of Cluet. another licquid matter, which is not onely odorant; but also pierceth all the sences and spirits at the first encounter. Perfumers make great vie thereof, in their compositions of sweete smelles,

The Authors

How the Mus kes are en-gendered.

ties of Muske

How the Ty-

his peoples Monies, and

ouer-awed

affceted.

brave and

The mighty

A Tyrant ta

keth aduan-

tage on all

How Ciuet is engendred.

The vertue &

power of Ci-

gendred in the skinne of the Testicles of a Beaft, much like vnto a Feyne, fome calling them Cats. To speake more properly, Ciuet is as a sweate, passing betweene the Testicles of this Beast, being of a temperature hot and moyft. If it be put into the pits about the Nauel, or into the Wombe-pipe; it serueth manualously against the suffocations of the Matrix. Many times, vpon vrgent extremity, the Husband vieth it to his owne fecrets, and fo conuayeth it vnto his Wife; whereby immediate remedy enfueth for the paine.

which they tearme mixtures. It is en-

And as we have already faide, that Muske being tainted, or ouer-aged, recouereth his strength and quicknesse by flinking ayre, as of a Sinke or Priny, as by one contrary to correct another. 20 Euen fo, in those Countries where these Ciuet Creatures are bred , there is another Beaft, equalling the Ciuet Cat in bigneffe, called Agobdilhat (which fignificth nothing elfe but foule fauor, and this beaft is (indeede) the most stinally betweene the Agobdilhat and the Ciuet Cat. king of all other) who continually is at Warre with the Ciuet Cat, his colour being very pleafing,& somewhat neere

A History of Ciuet Cat in France.

War continu-

to a Sky-colour. I call to memory, that beeing (one day) in the House of the Constable of Fraunce, Anne de Montmorancye, a Cat (not being discharged of her Ciuet, according as her felfe fought meanes and place) emptied her burden vppon the Gowne of a young Gentlewoman, de-livering thereon such a great quantitie of Ciuet; that all the spacious roome was filled with the ouer-piercing fauor 40 thereof. Wherevpon, diuers were readie to fall into fownings, others felt grieuous paines in their heads, and (among the rest) the young Gentlewoman fell fuddenly into a fuffocation of the Matrixe; yea, and in fuch extreame manner, that the was reputed dead for the space of twelue houres, and was cured by flinking fumes and ill finels onely. The Gentlewoman gaue sufficient testimony, that she had neuer (before) beene subiect to that perplexitie: and yet notwithstanding, when Women are vexed with the anguish forenamed, if Ciuct be put into the Nauell pictes, they feele presently ease. But ye must vnderstand, that it ought to be applied

in a very small quantity. For this cause How Cinet is it, that Muske and Amber are wholefome formany cold difeafes, being applied and advant in the state of plied and taken in fmall quantitie. Here also the Reader may be aduertised, that there are people of fuch complexion, as do affect fuch fauours naturally : and others againe, who finde them very hurrfull, and therefore doe fly from them; of which fort there are many more, then of the other. Therefore, when any vie is to be made of them, let euerie one well vnderstand his owne naturall inclination, or take the adnise of some skilfull Phisition: for oftentimes, by vsing them indiscreetely, they have beene the death of divers people.

CHAP. XXI.

Of an Edict, made by Dionisius the elder King of Scicily, against Women, Maids, and youngest Virgines ; whereby he pur chased a double returne of Mony.



Hosocuer readeth the Grecian Histories, shall water aigned finde, that the Isle of Scicily hath anciently beene

fubicit, to be gouerned and commaunded by Tyrant Kings: 2mong which Tyrants, it appeareth that Dienisius (whom they vied to tearme the elder) furpassed all the rest in tyranny. For, after he had drawne all meanes from his people, by frequent, great and intollerable impositions : hee surchar- plutarek.in ged them againe with a new taxation, vit. de Dim, much more irkesome and burdenous, then any one, or all the other gone before, Which was an expresse payment, by poule, or head (as they call it) both for Men, Women, Maidens, children, Anintollers great or little, young or old. And albe-ble taxation it the Collectours of these imposed by the poule Monies, made great and grienous execution in the leucy , as well vpon Cattell, as feazing mooncables and immoueables , year, imprisoning the people (euen to the death of many) by cru-

ell vlage, and bad handling : yet, not-

withstanding all these extreamiries, no

Mony could be had, because the Tirant

had drawn them dry, euen to the vtter-

Island, hee had imployed (in daily payments) for ten thousand foot Souldiers. to guard his person, and ten thousand Horffe-men, befide foure hundred Gallies, well armed and furnished. Beside this, he payed great pensions to other Common-weales, and to strange Princes; to the end, hee might have their ayde when neede required; repofing little (or no trust at all) in his own Subiects. In breefe, he exercifed all kindes of prodigalitie towards Straungers, at the cost and expences of his owne people, for the more fafe affurance of his Estate and dignitic. He had aduertisement, that there

most penny. All the Mony of this rich

Signes wher-by to know the pouerty of the people. was no more Money to be raifed, nevther by Wine or Corne, or any other Commodities : for there was great 20 dearth of Victuals two whole yeares together. He knew it enidently because the people were growne carelesse, and did nothing but laugh at his impositions; as knowing, that he could not bee paide, when they had nothing wherewithall to pay, which made them then raife that memorable Prouerbe: Where nothing is to bee had, the King loofeth his

But this old Tyrant Foxe, knew wel The Scicilians enough the Custome of the Scicilians, which was, to be pompous, affecting proud appar-rell, both in the Men and brauerie in Apparrell, and (aboue all) to be richly decked with Iewels of gold and Silver, embellished with costly precious stones : neuer regarding their owne condition, as Husbandes and Wines, nor good of their Families; but fuffering all their provisions to be fold, 40 to feede the Kinges impositions, and ferue other Negotiations, prouided, that they might fill enjoy their Iewels and brauery. The Men (for Antiqui-ty of this idle Custome) did willinglie tollerate it, though they were to endure all the necessities in the World; yea, death it selfe. And this was all which riches of the remained, of the mightie riches of Sticilie: for the Island had abounded in 50 plenty of Corne, which was the maine hope of all the Inhabitants, and (next to Ægipt)it was one of the best Garners

in the whole World. Heereupon, he would instantly help himselie, according as the time fitted him with occasion, which was (in re-

gard that his tyranny, and the two precedent years, had greatly impouerished the Kingdome) notwithstanding al former oppressions: he would now have the Iewels of the Women and Damfels, then which, they had nothing elfe remaining to them. And for his more cleanely conveyance heerein, he caused to be published by the Priestes and Saerificers (whose Ceremonies hee gaue no faith to, nor any way beleeved) that the Goddeffe Ceres was very greatly offended with the Islanders, because there | A cunning fubrilly of the was no worshippe given her, but in an old Temple, ruined, darke, and otterlie unpleasing wherefore, she would have a new one crected to her, built with faire shew, and sumptuous cost, else there hould no more happy daies bee feene in that Island. According to these remenstrances, made by the Priestes and Sacrificers, with interpolition of his owne anthoritie: it was credibly giuen forth, that the Goddesse her felfe had appeared to him, & this the Priests follemnely inftified, being well enftructed in the treacherie. Vpon this vrgent occasion, and pretending carefull respect of the Common weale, as also to appeale the high disfauout of Ceres, (the being the Goddeffe of Corne and Fruites of the Earth:) he had determined, to erect her a new and magnificent Temple. Now, because he had no Mony, nor the people neither, who are called the Kinges Purfle: he willed and commanded, that all Women, Wines, Widdowes, Maids, & Damfels, should bring foorth their Iewels of Gold, Siluer, precious stones, and all other matter else whatsoeuer, to a certaine place, and at a time by him appointed; impo-

Now, for the better obtaining his purpofe, and inducement of the people to more willing forwardnesse heerein: he caused a spacious compasse of grossd

fing grieuous paines and penalties, on

any that durst vie the least contradicti-

on. The female fexe were in wonderful

perplexitie, and durst not hide any of

their Iewels or brauery: because they

had so long openly worne them, and

good note was taken of them from time

to time, both of the riches and value, on

feastinall daies, at follemne factifices,

publique plaies, banquets, and marria-

A cunning

A feigned apparition of the Goddesse

An Edict very displeasing

The deuile of the Tyrant to people.

> Neighboring people also cheated by the Tyrant.

to be prepared, in an eminent place of the Citty Stracufa, not far off from the Fountaine Arethusa, where hee made fome project, of present building a goodly Temple, by a forme or Modell thaped thereof. Farre off was his mind from any fuch intent, but day by day to get possession of the Womens Lewels, and hanested the levey of them with all possible speed. He gaue notice heereof alfo, to the round neighbouring Itles and Countries, where he had no commaund: from whence he got almost a Million of Gold, where-with they wil-lingly furnished him, onely that the Goddesse would be gracious to them. And thus he held the people in suspence the space of the three whole yeares. In his time, the Land began (naturally) to waxe fruitfull againe, yeilding as great plentie of Corne and all things, as formerly it had doone: by which good meanes, Corne, Wine, and Cattell, thriuing stil with them, the Inhabitants became rich and sufficiently flored. When the women began to taft of

this well-rellishing fertility; they could

not forget their former vanities, but

faine would fall againe to their pride &

The women could not forget their pomp

Tyrant.

rich brauery: Only their feare was, least | 30 the Tyrant should play the like tricke againe with them. To make an estimate, of the inestimable masse of Wealth, which they were copelled to lay down, for building this new Temple to the Goddeffe Ceres ; is a matter exceeding my capacity, and yet no Temple at all builded. The Tyrants ayme was only at wealth, and having compaffed what he intended; by the aduite of fome well- 40 willers to the Women (pretending comiseration on their disfurnishment of Iewels)a counterfeit request was made vnto him, that he would be pleased to permit their wearing of Lewels againe. Standing (like a crafty Reinard) vppon Some strangenes for a while, the suit at length was granted with this Prouiso. tilty of an old That enery one of the Female fexe (of what degree or age focuer) should per- 50 ticularly present her offering to the Goddes Ceres, cither in Goldor Siluer, according to the number and value of those lewels, which thee purposed to weare: whereto they confented verie gladly, to foolinly fond were they of their curious adornments, which gaue

way to the Tyrant, to make a double benefit of one and the same Edict; And to this very day, the Women of that Island do continue this proud humour, in beautifying themselves with lewels, beyond any other Country that I have read of. The riches that he compassed The City of by this Edict, is not to be valued, for Syracufa, now the Isle was (in those daies) much more is called Sartagoffa. peopled then now it is: And then the principall and royall Citty, was called Syracu/a, which at this present is named Sarragoffa. This Tyrant, hauing occasion then to vie men of Armes, beside such Strangers as he kept in pay : could leny fixescore thousand socte, and twelve thousand Horsemen, beside foure hundred Ships and Gallies; whereas at this day, the Land will hardly yeeld fifteene hundred able fighting men. When it was furprized by the Romaines, for hauing taken part with the Carthagenians; there was found in one place (called the Magazine or Store house for war) furniture to arme feauenty thousand men; and fuch large booty was found therein, that Carthage (which fought for the Empire) could hardly yeeld the like.

This Dionifius was an affronter and Concerning Deceiver, who knew better then any Man elfe in the World, how to finde meanes of non paiment, when reason & equity did require it. Among divers other, he had entertained a young man, who was reputed to be very skilfull in playing on musicall Instruments, and tearmed the very best that those times afforded, to whom he promised liberall wages. The Mulition having ferued A Hillory of him a long while, requested to haue his due recompence; whereto Dionifius replied : That he ought him nothing ; Becaufe (quoth he) I have given thee as much contentment, by hope and promise of great wages and enriching thee, as thou hast yeilded me, for I have taken paine enough , to heare the idle found of thy instrument.

In breefe, he cared not how he came by any thing whatfocuer, prouided that it would yelld him profit, making spare, neither of Statues of the Goddes, or any other facred thing, but made a meere mockerie of all, as I shall have occasion to speake else-where. The Scieilians have neede of fuch a King in The Scieilians these daies, to punnish that shamefull murder and massacre, which they commurder and maffacre, which they com-

former times

The name of

The ancient Latines in Cice

> Grammarians cald Critiques

Grammarians were moft vife and learned men, and acounted the best Schollers of those times

Of the Name Grammarian.

The Scicilian Volumes

Chap. 23.

mitted (on a day in the Euening time) vpon fo many worthy French-men, called thither in their aide and fuccour, to deliuer them from the seruitude of an other Tyrant; and when they were at libertie, they did bloodily put them all to death.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Word or Name Grammarian, and what it is truely and properly.



Hose persons which the Latines properly called Grammaticos (which in all other Languages is tear-Latines properly called med Grammarians) were

not any fuch men, as knew not how to speake congruately, or write Orthographically, with good observation of accents in their speech, as being viskilfull in the Etimology of Dictions or Vocables, according as fome (to this day) haue supposed. For well I know, that it hath beene a common matter, when one would point at a man flenderly learned, or little feene in the foundnesse of learning, as vnderstanding nothing but the very principles: they would tearme him a Grammarian, or a Grammer Schoole-Boy, for his greater scorne and open disgrace.

But contrariwife, the ancient Latines, as in the time of Cicero, had no other vnderstanding of the word Grammarian: then of a learned Man, well skild in all 40 the Sciences, and thought fit to be the Interpreter of our grauest Authours. The Greekes called Grammarians, Critiques, of the Greeke Verbe xelve which fignifieth to be judged. For when learned men (were they Greekes or Latines) had any doubt about the interpretation of fome Text, sentence, or faying, in any Science whatfoeuer: it was then wholely referred to a Grammarian.

Suctionius was of the same opinion, in his Booke of famous Grammarians, who were likewise called Learned, as for example, Mesala. Corninus and Macrobius write, that one Didimus, fufficiently learned in the Sciences; was esteemed to be a great Grammarian . Ci-

sero made high account of one named Emiphon, whose Schoole continuallie he frequented, after his handling causes in the Senate . Nidigius Figulus, and the excellent Wife-man Varre, are faid to be the learnedst Grammarians of all other : as alfo Mareus Valerius . Probus. and Palemon, the most audacious of the that euer professed Letters, with many more beside . And among the Greenans, who triumphed more then Ariftarchus, Aristotle, Theodorus, and divers o. thersaall which were eftermed admired Grammarians.

CHAP, XXIII.

A Paradoxe maintaining by witty Arguments : That foredy death is much better to be defired, then a long & tedious late of life.

any other hope of speedy amendment)

hath made the better fort of people to

affirme and maintaine : That it is more

fured way of our eternall health) per-

formes no other good or fauour to

Men; but takes them from the afflicti-

ons of this World, hindering them

(thereby) from offending GOD most

strangely, and delivering them from

feruile fubiection, being in the hands of

rauenous, cruell, and bloody Tyrants:

most highly to be extolled and praised.

For, without this happy helpe, wee

should be miserably condemned to vn-

fufferable pains, and altogether preffed

downe, or smothered, by vnresistable

stormes. Our hope (without this)

would be quite quenched. And, with-

out this) what is the Sinner, be he ne-

uer fo great a Prince or Lorde, not

knowing, fearing, and regarding God?

O great is the difafter & milerie of worldly occafions; that long griefe, and our-burdenous copaffion of them (without

expedient for a Man (who feareth GOD) to wish for death quickely; then long to en-A definition dure in these labour some tranailes. For alof Death, and beit that death (the true Minister of Iuwhat good he performeth. flice, end of all vexations, and most af-

yet for this one and onely reason, hee is An especial

Chap.14.

A memorable custome obterued in

rowes and mishaps. This was the reason, why the ancient custome of Thrace was fo denoutlie obferned, that at the birth of enery Infan-they vied great forrow and lamentation . Contrariwife, when any (eyther aged in yeares, or of what time foeuer) died : They would make much 10 ioy, rriumph, and feafting, and (according to the parties Dignity) celebrated the Funerall, with sportes, plaies, and other varietie of pleasures. If such a barbarous Nation as this was (depriued of all vie of Philosophy, and good Letters) could doe fo great an honour to death: Is it not a shame for vs, that call our felues Christians, and know, that our very best benefit came by his death, to whom we pretend both Faith and service : to be so wretchedly amorous of life, which is nothing elfe (according to the learned Poets opinion.) But an obscure Prison, enthralling the best ennobled Spirits.

Bleffed Saint Paule, The Veffell of ele-

ction, did not he defire to dye, That hee

might line with his Lord and Maister?

Yet we (onely to compasse leyfure, for

committing ten thousand horrible ex-

ceffes)make life our great God; adding

daily one paine vpon another, and aug-

menting the Register of our number-

lesse offences. Are not we so obstinate-

ly affected to this thort and dangerous

pleasure (if that may be called pleasure,

which is the plaine high-way to euerla-

fting death) that for it onely : wee care

not to loofe the life celestiall, dinine, &

(then which) the like can no way be fo

much as dreampt on ? Ezechiel wished

for speedy death; That hee might ioy in

the beauties and excellencies of Heauen.

But we couet long life, the more to

entangle our felues in the filthes of

this World. Simeon, that good, iuft, and

holy old man, Defired death with all his

beart : But we (blinded, or deprined, e-

By death we line eternally, and by death

we are freed from the prison of all for-

Foolifn men doe couet long life.

Pindarus.

Ezechels desire

Old Simeon defired deat

Why death was called Thanalos.

uen of naturall discourse) hate Death, and speake all the cuill we can imagine against it. Wherefore (thinke ye) was it, that death was (by our Elders) called Thanates? But onely in this respect: That (in the end) it makes vs all loyfull, and wel pleased with that, which we ought

most of all to defire. Are we then so ignorant and fenceleffe, as not to acknowledge the aboundance of benefits; which we gaine by beeing taken out of this fo hatefull a Labyrinth? Do we not plainly perceine, that he which escapeth longest, and tarrieth the longest while in this world; beholdeth (euery day)more troubles and discontentments, then reall loyes, or true recrea-

If ye alleage vnto me, the noblenesse An Allegai-of Age and length of life, for great experience in things past, as feruing to dif. Age or length coner and approue them which follow of life. after. Let me then aske ye, of how much happinesse may we boast, in proouing our vnhappinesse? Considering, that (whether we be well or ill-pleafed) wee must patiently endure those thinges, which we canot tell how to fhun: hearing that which our cares hateth, and feeing things, wherewith our eyes are most itrangely offended.

But what is that which we call olde What old age Age; if not a continual dolour, and lan- is. guishing disease what other fir-names can we give to aged men; but moving Anatomies, or living Mortuaries ? Filling them with fo many distillations,& falling humors; as leaues them not one good houre, during the remainder of al their poore life time. If then, the verie memory of death, and hourely cogitae Remembrace tion of our departure, makes fuch a certaine aduantage for vs, and affures vs infallibly, that we are (thereby) permitted immunity from fin : how much more then would deaths reall presence prenaile with vs ?

Who are more fearefull of death, then fitch, as neither know, nor under fractell of fland the faire straine passages thereof? which indeede are fuch, as all the art in Man canot corrupt or blemish; except (like a Monster, and no sensible Creature) he would deface al Histories both facred and prophane. What had the famous Romaine people bin, if the valiant Horatius Cocles had feared death ? If Quintus Curtius had bin fearfull and ti-morous, and had not preferred glorious cartius, two death, before the irkefome life of the mainer. world: had not (but for him) the goodly Citty of Rome, bin fubicat to the most daungerous Hell, as can be deuised to name vpon earth ? VVhar shall I say of Cheereful go them,

chem, who for the freedome of their country) went cheerfully to death with Briking vp the drum, and thowery higheft founds of the Trumpor leuen as if they had been bidden to lone triumph? Did ye ener know a manifehat feared death) worthy of fo greadan honour For this cause was it that ancient His Rorians fo highly praifed & applauded, the Custome of some barbarous Nantons, who, with like promptitude and alacrity ranne to their death ; as if they were to be presented in some publique triumphe, or other greapploafures and Iouial speciacles . Why are the Gamaines entred into fuch credit with vs. if it were not onely for this that they are knowne to be a Nation, meerelie prodigall of their lines, and concrous

The Musicke vled in warre. Conclusion,

The Cuftome

of fome bar-

Of the Ger-

battery of warre; as Drummes, Phifes, Trumpets, Clarions, and Harps (albeit theyfe of the Harpe is now altogether left) did it for no other occasion, but for a found affurance to Souldiers : that to dye, was, as if a man were going to the Fountaine of all consolation i yea. euen to the perpetuall ionifance, of eternall and immortall Treasures with the highest. Conclude we then, that it much better availeth to dye quickely, then long time to languish in this wretched world. Let vs also maintaine, that death is more noble and excellent, then life: Because his power extendeth ouer all, without any limit or exception; and in regard likewife, that he is the Maister Controler of this life . As, not 4 without iust cause and good reason, a Philosopher (being demaunded whar Death was) readily answered : Angeordent and passage ineutrable, from which, neyther by teares, entreats, fighes, or the (weetest Kiffes, we can be delivered.

A Philofophers answer concerning

of most precious death? Hee that gaue the first enstruction. for entermedling Musick with the harsh

CHAP. XXIIII.

The Saying of Plato familiarly interpreted. That Kings should be Philosophers , or Philosophers raigne.

milmiliker.w., 2012, 2012, 2013, 2015, 201

the more defirous; to interpreted to ing of Plato, to often spokened within the sale wo thousand years, biomany learned and excellent Morral affis words are thefe; Those common weales faill be most happy white Kinger be ishila-Jophäria on philosopher are fauntes the places of governments. And Socaute that diving Men (especially such as are not convertant in State affanion idoe wish for a King, who might alidgether beegiven to learning; and not worker pollicies firting his Kingdoine igreatic abile their judgement hecrein, for this would bee the totall ruine of his Monarchy: therefore I will fer down forme obsernation, what Philosophy it is what Plate meaneth, wherein a King olight to apply his fludies, and wherby, there cannor bin tedound extraordinary good and profit to all his people; and

This Dinine Man Plate, viderflood nor by a King Philosopher, a Prince so addicted and bene to fludie, that if hee should chance to be deposed from his Dignitie; he might thereof make abenefit of living afterward. This humous appeared in Dyoniftes, the younger (King of Sarragoffa, and the greater part of the Isle of Sticily) Sonne to the affronter, and impofer of Nouell subfidies; for he beeing offended with his Subjects, and doubring least his estate would have no long durance fell to learne good Letters, to the end that if he happened to be expulsed his Royal. ty; he might become a Schoole Maifler, for the better support of his life; as indeede (afterward) flich fortune befell him. This his fludy of Philosophy. (which is as much to fay, as the loud of wifedome) while he raigned King profor he had done much better, in effecting fome worthy pollicies in his kingdome, then frequent vie of vices quand exercifing tyranny, thereby to have prevented the office of a Pedant; and li-

uing in fuch an ablect manner. 2008. Nero was enstructed (from his youth) in the three partes of Philosophy and

bor morning bishmacad

Suds Art of Vpon occasi-

on, that kings were addicted

irshimi£...C

The ayme and intent of Dvonificis the von ger in giung ftudy.

Los anteins andebare i Conference dolophy.

eckenedas. Nero learned

In like maner, he ought to make no

beeing created Emperor, was skilfull in Poofie, much addicted to Musique, and to play on the Harpe: yet would hee fay, that he could live well, if he were depoted from the Empire. We find recorded, that many Princes were ginen to learning, as Tiberius and Adriancy lio found good companions of Onids loue-Books, and Martiel his Epigrants. But this is no part of Philosophizing, neyther labour of minde, how a Prince should live after his falling.

How a Prince ought to be a Phileiopher.

For a King to bee a Philosopher, it consistes in establishing his Throne so affiredly; that he may never fit tottering in it, or be haken out of it. In rendring himselfe necessary to the comonwealth, as well by his vertues, as generous disposition; he sits safe from all deiection : carrying himselfe in such fort, like one that is a Tutor over many inferiours, as well in charge, as in correction, and (as he) when time respireth his Office; thento take delight and recreation. Princes that read plenty of Books, doe it (oftentimes) for pleafure, rather then to deriue any observations thence, for profit of their people. And when they cherish learned men about them; it is onely in hypocrific, and to let their 30 in fom Princes Subjects understand, that they are gouerned by their aduise, and by Men of knowledge. So dealt the fore-named Dyonifius the elder, as himfelfe would often reueale, to fuch as were his familiar and intimate friends.

The Emperor made but bac benefit of his Philosophy.

Dissimulation

The Emperor Commodus (Sonne to Marcus Antoninus, and Emperour likewife) fir-named the Philosopher; was learned, and readouer divers Books of Philosophy: Andyet notwithstanding, he couldnot refraine, from beeing the most detestable Emperour, which had beenebefore, or came after him. Contrarlwife, his Successour, who had imployed all his life time, in exercifing Marchandize about the sale of Wood or Billets: is numbred among the most bemoaned Emperors; and Traiane likewisc(who scarcely could write his own 50 name) was esteemed a very vertuous Prince and Emperor.

Princes are not to be repured Philosophers, if they can reade lascinious Poetry is not Bookes of Loue or compose in in poctry ; as Thibaulte, Earle of Brie & Chambe Philosophy paigne, and Raymond, Counte of Tolofa,

whose Poems are yet (at this day) to be ifcene, and they accounted rather ignorant, then learned Philosophers . This is no fuch Philosophy as ought to bee exercifed but that of true and especiciall import, I will come now breefely to relate : a Le is to be understood ; that Philosophy is deuided into three diftinet parts, to wit : into Phificke, Logicke, and Morall Philosophy, accor, Thehree parts ding as Cieero faith in his Oratour, The of Philosophy first, aymeth onelie at an intire fearch into the obscuritie of Natures secrets.

Logicke diueth into the subtilty of difputations and discourse. Morall Philofophy, speakes of Life and civill manners; & this is that which Kings ought Which part of to feeke after. The best exercising Philosophy is whereof is neyther read or fludyed in bell in a King. the Bookes of the Romaines Lawes, called Ciuill Law : For, how euer it produceth some honourable effectes, yet (questionlesse) it is the onely Motiue, whereby we enter into a Labyrinth of fuits. Because, in not beeing built vpon one only piece, but running into diverdity of scantlings; ech man makes a cloak thereof after his owne fashion. Therefore, let Princes neuer meddle with fuch intricate matter, but referre the ftudy thereof, to men destined for so troublefome a profession.

The first Lecture that a Prince bught | The first less to take, is out of facred & vnreptouable for a Prince. writ; because (thereby) he shall learne knowledge both of God, & of himfelfe, and that the beginning of true Philoso-phy, is the fear of God. Next, he ought (aboue all things else) to bring his people in obedience of the Magistrate, and the Magistrate of the Law, without any infringing or violation. We read of first, and the Magistrate, and the Athiopians, that at the receipt of Magistrates their Lawes, they protested ; that they would be subject to those laws, & passe no other letters contrary to them. The people of France. when they place their K.in the feat of Iustice; they deliuer him a staffe in his right hand, on the toppe whereof is the figure of a hand : Giuing therby to vuderstand, that the K. should lend a strong hand to Iustice; and then they give him a scepter in the left hand.

He must study to quench civill warres in his Kingdome, if there be any, and in his Kingdome, it there be any, and Akingtokeep preuent fuch as may enfue, vppon the his word with least presumption or apparance; euer- Lis subiects.

cicero. in Orat. Wickedcoun chianel.

Chap.24.

Of Flanders 8 the Law Coun-

How a Prince ought to begin watre.

more keeping promife with his Subiects, for otherwife it may fall out, that delay and length of time, will bring his life and the State into great daunger. The death of Henrie the third, King of France, happened thorow euill councell given him, and also to his Predecesfour; as the Histories of Fraunce and Flanders (written according to truth) doe credibly declare: without credit 10 ting, what detestable Macchianell hath written on that Article. By the last ciuill warres in Allemaigne, the French brought their Frontiers into the Cities of Mentz, Toula, and Verdune, which are three goodly Imperiali Citties, and held by them to this day. They that are called the States of the Low-Countries, and of Flanders, hardned by long-Warres against their naturall Prince, vpon refufall of some serious requests: are become Cantonned; fo that in comon opinion, the whole Countries have fuffered grieuoufly: all which had bin well eafed, if no Marchiauelist had medled among them.

As for itrange warres, which a King may haue with other Princes; he must bee mindfull of Faith therein, for they are euer the least hurtfull. Prouided, that he do it in fuch fort, that being fortefied with alliance and Confederats, strength, and meanes; hee may have peace when himfelfe pleafeth. Euermore remebring, that he do not imitate Mithridates, King of Pontus, who coueting to make himselfe great, lost both his State and life together. And Frances the first, King of France, in seeking to ioyne Millaine and Italy to his Crown, 40

He must not likewise lend eareto

in time of their continuance, hee may

impose great taxes and subsidies on his

people, which the faide people, taking

then to be a matter extaordinary; doe

ordinary. These meanes (indeede) may

encrease his reuenewes; but somtimes

they reach to troublefome rebellions,

wherein the Prince loofeth both his

land and subjects. The leagued Coun-

tries of Germany, had neuer come vnder

their Lords obedience; but for the like

was fondly taken Prisoner.

Taxations for fome kinde of Courtiers; who comw rre ought monly are prating, that a generous nor to be con-King should neuer be without war : For

caufes.

ry vrgent necessitie; for it doth but declare contempt and diffrust, conceined People. in the Prince against his people, procuring (oftentimes) a revolt in the fubiects, with defire to feeke a new Maister. As the like was imagined to have happened at the good Cittle of Lyons, which hath euermore beene very obedient to her kings, and lent them ftrong aide in their necessities, when they have beene thereto required. Neuerthelesse, through some bad counsell, and uppon finall occasion, the Kings of France did build a Cutadell there, a meere retreate for al scelerates: who, by the cautels of diners loofe Captaines, too much diminishing the renenewes of the * Donane, and the Souldiers committed many in- of the customfolencies in the Citty, viciating diners Virgins, & making pillage of althings. Which was the cause, that the men of Lyons arose to ruinate this Cittadell, that ferued for nothing elfe but wicked purposes. And albeit they were folliei- the Cittadell. ted to take a new party, yet would they not yeild thereto; but kept themselues in obedience to their King, being contented with the demolition of the Cittadell, how cuer the king otherwife mistrusted them. Such Cittadels ought not to be erected, but in countries newly conquered, and not in ancient and obedient Citties, whence Princes can receine nothing, but commodity & pleafure. Nor ought he to exercise prodigality, or give immense gifts, especially to fuch people as have no merit: for wee know very well, that it is the blood and labour of the people, which is fo pro- mealurally to digally wasted. And for offending in fuch manner, fome Kings haue been deiected from their Thrones; as hapned to Edw. King of England, second of that name, in the yeare 1325. who affected nothing but the Family of the Spencers, giving them all great confiscations, and the Mony of his subsidies. These exfinde them (foone after) to hold on as | 50 treame and vnsufferable courses, raised his Queene, Sonne and people against him, who were punished with death, &

Of Kings Philosophers.

the King (at length) strangled. Adde we hereto, that it is a great blemith and deformity in any Kingsnot to bee liberall : for a couctous Prince is contemned of every one, and hath few

Forts or Cittadels, except in case of ve-

hatred in the

* The name house at Lyens.

Lyons impaci-

Prodigality is a Prince, when inwerthy m.c.

Couetouinelle di commenda ble in a King.

A Prince finalld inquire what is reported or him.

Friends . He should informe himselfe, what is reported of him, to understand who are malecontent, and who pleased, providing for both in good difcretion. As (very wifely) did Phillip, King of Macedon, Father to Alexander the Great, who was informed, that an auncient Knight (following his Court) did nothing but speak badly of him, and raised ditters enemies against him. The King comming couertly to know the cause of this obloquy; heard the old Knight complaine, that he had imployed both his youth, age, and vttermost meanes in the Kings fernice, whereby he was not onely growne poore, but also vnregarded. The K. well noting fo foule a fault in himselse, prouided for the Knight in fuch gracious manner: that he had not (formerly) fo greatly reproued him, but | 20 now he did much more exalt him. Whe the King heard thereof, he faid to enery one about him ; I was the fole cause of the Knights iust complaint, but hence-forward I will take order, that others fhall not have the like advantage against me.

A gracious & in a King.

The bad and dangerous

The cau'e

why Richard

King of Enga-

bad man in great authority, and to have rule in his Kingdome, euen as his Lieutenant : to the end, that he may bear all 20 the blame, and if the people fall into commotion, they may rest contented with killing him, and so the K. shall remaine safe. This is the Philosophy of Maister Macchiauell, a matter verie dangerous; for hereby, both the one & other may well loofe their lines. As we may read in the History of England, that King Richard accusing his Earle Marshal to the people, to be the onely cause of Subfidies, and robbing them of their Monies, feeming willing to content the people; he banished him the Land. Which man, could finde no place of fafety, either in Fraunce, Flanders, Allemaigne, nor thorow all Europe, where to make his abiding. After this bad man, the king committed the gouernment of his kingdom to four other Men, against whom, the people conceined as great hatred, as before they had done against the Earle Marshall. Which caused the faide Richard to be imprisoned; where those soure men were beheaded before his prison window, and he himselse (afterward) loft his life.

He must be careful to constitute some

He shold study, not to be over dread-

full to his Subjectes, nor too familiar; Nut to be ofor the one begetteth hatred, and the othercontempt. He should punish the liar to his sub-wrongs of other men, and be sparing in his owne. As did good King Lewes of France, the 12. who in the time when he was but Duke of Orleance, having some enmity with King Charles the eight, and the Duke of feeking to feaze the Citty of Grleance, Orleance, for security of his own person, least the King should surther labour to disquiet him: the Citizens made fast their gates against him. It happened, not with standing many traneries and misfortunes; this Duke came to the Crowne, after decease of the said King: And then the people of Orleance came to entreat him, not to remember precedent accidents, but graciously to grant them pardon. The King made aunswere, that he had An answere forgotten all iniuries doone him: but ly Royall. wished them afterward to be carefull, how they offended another man. After that Haniball with-drew himselse from Italie, the Romaines found no better means of raigning in quiet for the time to come: then by forgetting those iniuries, which they had received by the Common-weales of Italy, that had ioy. ned with Hamball in making the warre.

In quarrels among great men hee How he ought ought not to entermedle, to support to behaue him one fide more then the other: but cause felle in other them to lay downe their Armes, by his mens quartels absolute authority, and seek best means to reconcile them. For, in formalizing himfelfe, more for the one then the other, it hath many times occasioned intestine war, and sometimes the losse of Royal dignity, as hath too often happe-

nedboth in France and England. He should not be addicted to wine, A king should but fhun drunkenneffe as poyfon. For a foun drunken King being drunke, is like a Lion, or a- nesse. ny other furious beaft, that bites and teares the first he meets withall. It caufeth beside, that the K (having his spirits fiered and troubled with wine) may kil some one man in that fury, or otherwife so offend him : as may afterward endaunger both his Royall person and the State. He must moderate choller, so much as in him possible lieth, without wing either a Sword or Staffe. Imitating heerein the Bees, whose King hath dangerous. no fting at all: For choller and fury are the chiefe hinderers, that the foule can-

cy al-hominable in a King.

led tarre off, full of loffes.

Examples of

ty in Subjects

t their Prin-

not forme her functions according to Incontinency, who redome, and ob-

scenity, should be detestible to him, and for his better support, he must frequent no luxurious company, nor haue any fuch person about him, whose ordinary talk is cuermore thereto enclining but fuch, whose speech is alwaies vertuous. Luxury makes a mandull, neglect, and effeminate, and a King (ginen to that vice) should rather carry a distaffe, then a Scepter. Sardanapalus, King of Afiria, loft his life, by being over-greedily giuen to this fin. So did Nero, Emperor of Kame. King Frances, first of that name, became very vnhealthfull in his aged daies, by being too much addicted to this vice; and yet otherwise, he was ver-

mons, and a louer of learning.

Being affected of his Subjects, for his

Where the nedure Royall most confi-

Examples of

Chap.24.

Whoredome

good life, his treasury is the purffe of his people, who will fuccour him liberally when he shall have any needfull occasion. Which, in our memory, and not long fince, Elizabeth, that famous Q.of Eng. found to be true. For in al her time, the neuer oppressed her people, but declared her felfe to be the lively Mirrour of true Maiesty. And therefore, when there came a very potent Army (verie strongly bent against her and her Kingdomes) fuch as (in humaine judgment) was likely to prenaile; yet her subjects Bounty & Loue (next to heavens bleffing)flood fo ftrongly to her, that when her enimies supposedher ruine neerest. they were thamefully foyled, and the gloriously triumphed. Cyrus and Alexander, two great Monarches, made thefelues mighty, not by their Money (for they had none avall, or at least very little, at their first adventuring) but were only affifted by friends, and the purfe of their people. Wheras on the contrary, Darius and Crafus, two Kings that had aboundance of treasure, and no loue of their people; were brought into most miferable condition.

Let him not be eafily led, to beleene some Courriers, men affected in the scarch of nouelties, vsing persuasion, to attempt Conquests and far off voyages; as croffing the Seas, either to Barbarre, Afia, and the foure quarters of the world, 500. a thousand, or two thoufand leagues distant from his own king-

dome; and ther to make war: flich wats doe (oftentimes) beget the totall juine of his owne estate. As hapned to King Lewes of France, ninth of that name, who loft a goodly Army of Noble-men and braue Souldiers in Spria, himfelfe alfo beeing there taken Prisoner, to the no little coft of his owne Kingdome. After his returne home, he would needes be gone thither againe : but he died before the Citty of Thunis, and loft the verie

Counte of Neuers, was fent with a wor-

thy French army into Epire, against Ba-

iazeth, Emperour of the Turkes, in affi-

stance of the Hungarians: but there hee

was furprized, and kept as Prisoner,

with the Constable of France, and di-

uers others, and the whole French Ar-

mie quite defeated. Lewes of France the

twelfth, fent an army against the Turks,

that befiedged Mitylene, a Cittie in the

Isle of Lesbos: but vererly in vaine, for

withstanding, if a King make a league

against any Infidell Prince, and that all

Christian Princes (or the more part of

them) are thereto likewife mooned

and follicited, vpon good reason; the

King ought to contribute both Men

and Money, but not to goe in perfor.

except hee haue an affored peace with

all his Neighbour Princes. Now, al-

beir a King had conquered a farre-off

Country, yet scarcely knowes he how

to keepe it for any long time : because

the manners of firangers will hardly a-

gree with theirs of that Countrey, and

then the building of Cittadels is to be

talkt on, but yet he must Philosophize

how to maintaine them. It much better

lity of his Subiccts 5 then on the fron-

gest wals he can huild. Which the Lace-demonians practifed, by the adulte of

Lycurgus. But after they had engire the

Cittie of Sparta with Walles, and

gaue themselues wholely to the forti-

greatest part of his Army. By perlivation of the Genewater, Charls King of France, the fixt, fent an Armie into Barbarie, against the chiefe Cittie of Affrica: but one part of the French | pupole. dyed there thorow Famine, and by inclemency of the aire, and the rest returned home; not having performed any one act of honour, John of Bourgonene,

Diners true & well knowne Hillories cending to this

Exceptions in he loft (well necre) all his people. Not- this cale to be

No truft to be

for any King, to fuffaine himfelfe ypon terong wals, the forces of his men of armes, and fide- | but in the faith and power of

ນອ ຄານຄອນ

XUM

no it stan

fying of places : thence forward, their Common-weale grew to bee infrnothing. The Turke practifeth the verie fame yet to this day. The first Cantons of the Suitzers, had never any wals, and were no other then great Villages; for they relyed more uppon their strength, then any trust in wals.

What profit a Prince should make of rea-

Bookes of Hi

ftories.

But it may be alleaged vnto me, that it is good for a King to read, to the end, he may learne something, as other men doe, and as other Kings have formerlie done. This I approoue, and do no way mislike, at such times as he is not to bee more seriously imployed: For, 2 King that will well discharge his duty, shall find very little time of respit or leisure. Bookes that discourse on matter of good manners, should then be most familiar with him: because, in them hee 20 shall learne such lessons, as no man else dare be so bold as to teach him. As for Bookes of Histories, he must

have choise and plenty of them, because in reading fuch as are another mans Collections, that neuer faw, or came where they were acted: they cannot alwaies talke of truth, in regard, that hee giueth credit but to what he finds in another mans Papers, and Writers, will (vfually) speak fauourably of their owne occasions. If they be Histories, concercerning the time when the Authour liued:he wil be fure to fauor the Prince, and the party which hee best affected, or to whom he was Pentioner. As may be noted in Paulus Jouius, the Italian, and Sleydan, the Germaine Historian, who haue written well enough : except whe they fall into some particular matters, 4 as of Religion, or fuch like; there they are enidently perceived to wander, in speaking partially, or out of prinate affection. Likewife, he should not judge Bookes of Hiof good and lawfull enterprifes, according to the bad successe they have had, or fo to condemne them : neither, whe affaires haue bin ill grounded, & worfe mannaged, to repute them good, be-

cause they have passed with fortunate euents. Therefore it behooueth any Prince, to read Histories, with good

stories are to be read with

good delibe-ration and

iudgement.

Concerning the reading of

fome Princes.

and deliberate indgement. Alexander Seuerus (at an houre of leifure) would read Platees Commonwealth, the Offices of Cicero, and fententious Horace. Wife Scipio, when oc-

casion ferued, would read the Institutions of Cyrus, proposed by Kenophon. Charles the fift, Emperour, neuerreade any Authour, but Phillip de Commines, who wrote the life of King Lewes the cleauenth. I would not be mistaken herein, as (feeking by thefe allegations) to restraine a Prince from reading, or limit him none other, but these Books onely. But I say, that the principall Bookes, and those which bee most neceffary for him:are fuch, as do discourse on the affaires of State, and of matter belonging to the Common-wealth.

Many times, it fals out, to bee more Bridge of mo expedient for a Prince, to buy a Town | ny into the eby intelligence, or giving Mony to the nemies coun Enemy then to take it by force of trey. armes, though it cost him not so much; fo is the Land fure to be no way ruina-

To conclude, let a King stand vppon Alwaies to be his Guards, and have affired and trufty provided of people about him; euermore ready, least occasion should present it selfe, & he be fuddenly furprized: fuch as were the Legionaries, or those trained Souldiers, instituted by King Frances, first of that name.

And for conclusion to his Philoso- Hamility anaiphy, he should be little, or of least rec-koning in his owne eye, how great or potent soeuer hee appeareth to other. As it happened to Alexander, who had no sooner ended his Conquests in the East, but (standing vpon his own pride) he was calt downe, and poyfoned by his owne Followers. Baiazeth, the verie greatest Emperor of all the Turkes that were before him: was vanquished chained, and carried about in a Cage of Iron, by Tamberlaine, King of the Tareares, who was but a Neat-heard by his first profession.

Behold (in fumine) what Philosophy The Authour Princes ought to learne, which is not fo much comprized in Bookes; as it is the braine (provided of good and solid iudgement) the seare of Godbeeing alwaies principally preferred So shall the faying of Plate be truely found in them: That Kinges ought to be Philosophers , or Philosophers raigne.

The end of the third BOOKE.

iras the chief

Chap.1.

The Gouernment of the great Sophy,



The Fourth Booke.

CHAP. I.

Of the Kingdome of Persia; Nature of the Country and People; Condition of their Court, Lawes, and Commonwealth affaires, &c.



Ersia hath caried the fame name, from the beginning to this day, containing it in these seucral Regions, Lar and Requelmall. The

elder times tearmed Perfepolis; which is gouerned by the Sophy, Great Lord of all Perfia and Azimia, called (by our Elders) Affyria; and the Kingdom of Dearbech, fometime named Melopotamia; and Seroan that was Media; and Parthia now called lex; with His ca, now tearmed Coraxan; And Sarmania, now Dulcendana; and Afia, at this inftant called Hetti. All these Regions, with the greater Armenia (which is a part also of them) are gouerned by the Great Sophy, and the greatest or largest Citty under his command, is named Tauris, being built in the midst of the Mountaine Taurus, foure Dayes iourney off from the Calpian Sea. Next vnto Tauris, there are other Citties befide; as Soltania, Coneaffan, Saphan, Corazan, Lera, Mora, Sarmachand, Gefti, Far, Siras, and Ormuz, a City in the Perlicke

principall Citty thereof is called Siras, in

Sea, which at this day, is called Mare Mısındia. In this Citty, is great Com-merce of Merchants, made with the Portugals, and there they Fish for great a-bundance of Pearles. There are also o-ther Citties, as Cureh, Iex, Casmine, and Coy, with infinite Castles. On the westfide of the Cittie Tauris, are the Calpian Mountaines, which bee now called the Mountaines of Ararat : And on the Bacchan Sea (aunciently named the Caspian Sea) are these Citties ; Summachia, Derbent, Bacchan, and Mamutaga. All thefe Provinces, and their Regions, are very barren, because they have small store of Rivers: the greatest whereof, is cald Bindarin, but (in former times) they entitled it Bragada. The people of these Regions, are warlicke, civil, and very valiant men: ther is not fo much civility found in al-Asin these people, but they are al Mahumerifts.

These Provinces do produce the best Horses that are to be found in the world. And there they make the best steele Armors, that is in any Lande, which are made at a place called Azimina, where there is great abundance of Silke. As concerning the Gouernment heere obferued, Zenophon (fpeaking of those elder dayes) faith; That they have a certaine cheefe place, called by them, Preedome; cerning their wherein flandeth the Kings Pallace, and all the houses of the cheefest men Neere vnto this, ther is fuch another void place made fit for Merchants, and things to be fold by Mercenary Artificers, seuered farre off one from another, to the end, that fuch as are addicted to vertue and Liberall Arts, may not be molested with

Merchandize, and fishing to: Peatles.

The nature & qualitie of the

The bestbreed of Horffes in

Bad people fcgood and ver-

fooles, and their yelle chatting; besides, beastly people, and the rude misgouernd multitude, may not prelume to meddle with them.

Fourt Court for foure degrees of peo-

The Market-place of Freedom or Liberty, is deuided into foure parts or habitations, and are rearined Courts. In one, dwelleth young Children In the fecond, Youths without Beards : in the third, men of mature yeares : and in the 10 fourth; fuch as (by Age) are no more able or bound to follow the warres. Each of these (by Law) hath his place and exercise: the Ghildren and men do affemble together daily, in their feuerall quarters; but the Olde men not so often, but only vpon some appointed dayes. The young men, with such Armes as they are allowed to exercise, doe tend about the the Princes dwelling in the Night time; except they be fuch as haue wines, who, not being subject to such commaund, is fauoured for the Night-scruice. But they account it not honest but rather a shame and difgrace, to be ouer-foone married. Each Court hath twelue Prafetts, acording to the number of the Persian tribes. To the Children, are old graue men appointed, apt for their better continuance in good manners : and fuch men likewife to the youthes, as (by their Vertue) can yeild them best example of immitation. For, the men of riper yeares, there are Gouernors elected, that by conformitie of their passed lines, and regular sway of authority, may holde good disposition with them, not anie way to swerue from the wil and direction of their Prince, but doe containe them in verie facile obedi-The exercises of each age and degree

(to the end that euerie mau may knowe,

with what care and industry he must be-

come a good Cittizen) are these. The

Children of Perfia (like to ours) doe at-

taine to Learning in Schooles, and there

they are taught to vnderstand, what it is

to line according to Inflice and honesty.

Such as are their Gouernors there, doe

frend the most part of theday, in judging

and giving fentence on fuch Delictes, as

are reported one of another. Such as are

accused of Thest, Rapine, Violence, De-

ceit, Dishonest Language, and such like offences, being found innocent in these

Crimes, the falle accusers, are presently

punished. About all other Vices, In-

The exercises of each age 30 degree.

lowed to each

Court,& their

The Children are enstructed gratitude is most seuearely chastised, as being the occasion of infinite shames among men. And he that is found negligent, in returning like thankfulneffe for Ingratitude is a benefit received, they flicke not pub- feuercly punilickly to maintaine, that out of this Vice, fied. iffueth contempt of the imortall Gods, their Countrey, Parents, and Friends: & finally, that it is the head and manifelt originall of all other enils whatfocuer. Be- Offining tent fide this, they learne to line temperately, perately. and for inducement thereto, they repute example of the most ancient, to bee best availeable, and the beholding of their temperate behauiour.

In like manner, with no great difficultie, they are incited to continencie, with abilitie to endure both hunger and thirst: by feeing men of fuch grave yeares, not part away thence to eating or drinking, without license obtained of the Prafects. They eate not in the Mothers compa- Children eate ny, but alwayes with their Maisters : for their diet is brought to the School, whi-che is Breade and Hearbes, commonlie called * Nofurtium . Little need of drink haue they, because they vie nothing but crestes. Water, vitill the age of fixteene yeares. They have Bowes and Arrowes, wherewith they practife shooting, and afterward are fon to dwell among the * Ephr-b, who are young youths, that likewife haue, and do ftill lead the fame kinde of

Their attendance and fleepe time, is The attendace as we have already faid, about the Prin- of the yourbs ces Lodgings, and as well for a Watch or guard to the Citty, as also to preuent fuch Luxuries, which commonly do oner-abound in these young years, except they be holpen by diligent solicitude, & verie stirring exercises. In the day time, they waite upon their Prafects, to the end that they may bee alwaies in readincife. When the King rides on hunting (which The Kings of happens ditters times in the month) one part of them do go along with him, carr and how an ended. rying each man his Bow, and Quiuer of Arrowes, his Axc or Long Sworde, his Shield, and two Dartes : one readie to draw, and the other to hold in his hand, as well to defend as offende with them. The King, as in a vion of a King, euen fo in Hunting, he is the Captaine, purfuing the chase with greatest dilligence, and commanding all the rest what is necessary to be done. So that this exercise, ap-

*Water-Kars,

*Striplings of

Who are mof

Concerning loch as remain

In causes of vigent necessi ty, who are

Of the Kingdome of Persia.

peareth like vnto warre, by carefull forefight, to keepe a good houre of rifing in the morning, to endure both colde and heate, to run after Wild-Beafts; and (by the Tharpeneffe of a fauage Countrey) to make the body able to enery labor. They are likewife (manie times) enforced, to awaite the wilde Beafts comming against them, respecting alwayes, that if hee be more powerful then he was reputed they to may all stirre presently, exercising still that small respit of time, euen as if they

Euerie man bears his own

Chap. 1.

Hunting com

pared to war-

were in the Campe for battaile. Eucry man carries his own food with him; and yet they cate not before the houre of supper time, except they have leyfure to stand still awhile, in expectation of force wilde Beaftes comming, or have given better order for the Chafe. When they have fupt, the next day fol- 20 lowing they purfue still the Game, vntill the fame houre of Supper againe, enermore without feeding, making two daies together but one, in respect of eating: which habitude is also most profitable in Warre, respecting times, which often do enforce a great scarsitie of Victuals. If there bee any dearth, then they vie to temper their bread, with the aforesaide Nafturtium, for no man there will cate, till vrgent hunger compell him . Farre differing from them, that care not what

excesse they feede Gluttony withal, who can neuer judge truly, how little woulde scrue, or be really delightfull to Nature: like to him that can please appetite with fimple Bread, or a poore finall Cake, & feekes not to flake thirst with Wine, but

harmeleffe water. They that remaine at home in their

houses, for safegard of the Cittie , haue 40 publick places appointed, for like exercifes in them, They have a care of all occafions, even from verie Childe-hood, to fee them vie their Bowes , hurle their Darts, and exercise Armes. They that are most vertuous, wife, learned, and actiue of person, doe carry greatest Commendation, and are honoured of the people; not onely the Prafects, but euen fuch alfo, as have, bin any occasion (by their diligence) of their education from

Child-hood, they carry worthic Commendation, and are contained in highest fauour.

If any lewd Offender should be fought for, any Theefe apprehended, or speedy

fuccour fent to fome needefull place, in dealing with these occurrences, which require haft and firength of bodye; the Gouernors make vie of none but young lufty men, who (having bin trained ten yeares in fuch Disciplines) are ranked among the number of men, that (to the age of fine and twenty) have hadde the Gouernment of them, as the Præfectes had of their Childe-hood, euer to make them ready for service of the Commonwealth. When they go in battell order, they we neither Bowes, Darts or Weapons, to offend a farre offe but ech mans brest is armed with a Cuirace, his shield vpon his arme, and fo he confrontes his Enemy, either with his Axe, or with his Sword. The Heads or Commanders are all Prefittes, yet none of them abide in the Citty, having care of the yong Chil-

When they have past this time, and attained to the age of fiftie yeares, they What they do are placed among the old men fent forth at the age of

Whenthevgo

no more to warre:but rest in their countrey, where they elect Præfects, ordaine Indges for publicke and prinate causes, and likewife (as Iurors)do paffe vpon the lines of men, that sentence may be given vpon euery delict, acording as the crime appeareth by due enidence, in which ca-

fes, eueric man offended, hath free liberty to accuse. He that stands condemned in the whole course of his life, is reputed most infamous. The whole Common-Wealth of the Persians, containeth in it an hundered and twentie thousands

dren and youth.

There is no prohibition, of being inftructed in the publicke Schooles, where nied infructi-Inflice is truely taught, neither is it for-bidden by any Lawe, but that a man (by licke Schools, his Vertues) may attaine to dignitie and honor, no exception is made, but onely want of Vertue. Yet let me tell ye, most choife is made of Rich mens sonnes for the Schooles, not because their Parents have least need, but that themselves are foonest infected with Vices. And poore Difference bemens fonnes (for necessity of common maintenance) are fent to Shoppes, to fennes. learne Mercenarie exercifes, whereby to

The Children that have been enfiructed in the Disciplines fore-named, may converse with the Ephebi, but not the others. The Ephebi, that have lived accor-

very needic o

much betten.

Seauen Tow-

ers ful of mo-

Three kinds

of Soldiers in

condition.

Order of delcent from one degree to ano

The Perfians

temperate life.

mong the men, and attaine to Honours and Magistracie. And these men, after they have lived according to the Persian Discipline, may go amongs the Oldest Men, who having lived (all their time) with greatest Instice, are most woorthie

Persians, is, that they can endure labour enough, yet live moderately. But among vs, there is little or no respect at all, albeit they hold it for the greatest infamy, to fpet in company, or make clean the nofe, and to voide Vrine publickely, or do any fuch Offices in open fight. All which, we might eafily thun, if wee would eate but little, and the groffe natural humors

many notable victories, and being neuer

foyled in any place; hath brought verie

great and important warres to end. It is a

matter also verie vnbeneficial to the Per-

fians, that they vie no Shotte, neither a-

bounde in any Artillerie on Carriages;

with which terrible helpe, enery attempt

is soonest concluded. As was too wel ex-

ampled, by the vnhappy proofe of Vlan-

Caffanus, and of Ifmaell, whose Caualle-

ry were then honourably victorious.

Lately also, in the Caldean Fields, and (in

memory of our Fathers) at Harfengs and

Emphrates, where they could not endure

the great and vn-accustomed noise of

their Horsses, in that most cruel & bloo-

die Tempest. Wherefore, in no place

may the armed man of Persia, compare

with the Turke, if he were difarmed. Be-

cause the Persian is (of all parts) couered

with a scalie Cuirace; his Panciere or

Belly-peece, of Iron; his buffied Helmet

strongly creasted, and hung thicke with

Feathers, his Shield or Target rounde,

and curioufly embellished with Golde.

But the Turke of Europe, as vtterly vnar-

med, is fearfly halfe conerd with a round

by labour and exercise of the body. The Perfects in thefe dayes

Their want of

Their lacke of Shot & great Ordinance.

Example of

Difference be tweene the Turks arming and the Persi-

ding to the Lawes, may likewife abide aand excellent Citizens in the Common-An expresse note of abstinence in the

of the bodie, would confume themselues 20 In these daies, all things in the world being altred the Persians make theirwars with most vnindifferent course, and (for ought I can perceive) bad conditions, because as they have a wonderful Caualerie, so they have no certaine power of Infanterie or Footmen, either ordinarie or aged. By which part of strength, the Turke (euen in our times) hauing gotten 30

> All these thinges being equally compared together, the armie of the Sophie, The Sophi euen bounde and deuoted to the King, army feemet (by an opinion of a high and Diuine minde, and by a certaine Religious Sacramentall reason) not being searefull of death in any place, although it bee inferiour to the Turkes in number, might feeme inuincible, if it were not oppreffed by Treacherous and vnworthie men of valour, furie of Artillerie, and vnvfual multitudes of men.

Tartars manner, and his fall is almost

I finde, that the principall occasion, Thereafond why I/mael brought fo many Prouinces (uccelle in was (by glorious Armes) vnder one fole Emperie, yet with leffe number of Soldiers then others would beleeue (especially against Ottoman, who ouer-ran the countrey fo farre as Armenia, and wasted all

bended Target, after the manner of the Alian Shieldes, inter-wouen with Reeds, hibtilly sweetned with Cinnamon, and embroidered with Silke of fundrie Colours. The Persian likewise couereth his arme and right hand, with a false sleene and Gauntlet of Steele, galloping with a Launce of Ash, which hath two points; Launce for the Launce of Ain, which nath two points; ing from the and being met in the middeft, (after the Turker. Moores fashion) oftentimes beares off the blowe on high, for easier passage of the men and Horse disarmed. But, the Turke (according to the Gracian vie)placing his Launces butt-end in his flanke, and stouping it vnto his horses care (like them that are made of light and brittle Firre) runnes swiftly vppon the spurre, breakes it at the first blow, and so passing on to the enemies Armie, is constrained to lay hand to his Semitar, or to his iron Mace, as vnable to gouerne the Persians furie. For, they are mounted on great & verte strong horses, that have their foreheads armed with Iron, and their bodies covered with fodden Leather hides(after the manner of the Italians Capparisons) plaited together in narrowe foldes, and Ruffed with Bumbast or Silke, to beare off every blow falling thereon. In which regard, no one of them (except ouer-audauciously) will compare the best Persian, either with the Archer on Horsebacke, or foote-Soldier of the Turk. For fed by the he being armed with a big ftrong Bowe, Turker. full of manie knotted Nerues, drawes an Arrowe of good roundnesse, after the

Liberality to the Kinges

In times when

(things) was onely this pare released all Tribinestandrooke away enery taxation concly to purchase falme by liberality to tien who has very enmance And it much imported this new King dien; fo to doe, because (by force of Armes) he expulsed the lawfull heires I from the State and Empire after Van-Caffanus the Grandfire, and ratoppo their Father. In which respect, her was ener needle of Money; and therefore, when any warre arole, he brought forthino Armies, combined by their strong and just Nerves, albeit the countries of the East (abounding in manie things) belide fuch ditterfitie of rich Kingdomes) benignlic and largely wold have affoorded supply of pay, for all fiecessaries belonging to life and warfare. Quite contraty to solymins case, who cotinually was ferued with Infanteric and 20 Horsemen, Maisters of the Artillerie, Captaines of the Army, and all fuch befide, as were either Officers for the field, or attended in his Pallace, who were daily and monthly paid by the treasurer, that deliuered forth monies. Nor in this cafe is there any want of Freafitries, because that in Constantinople there are schen Towers or Caffles, which containe in them inestimable mountains of mony, both of gold and Siluer, with perpetual entrance yearely, of so many tributes and taxations, as do exceed all expences whatfor-

Among the Persians there are 3 forts of Soldiers, to wit, of the Guard; of men vnder commaund; and of voluntarie affiftants. Those of the Guard, are at a certain pay, and are dieted at the Kings coft. and he likewise (according to an auncient Custome) and at cerraine times of the year, observed in writing, as an overplus of bounty, gives them Armor horfes, Garments, Pauillions or Tents for the field, and victuals. At these times, being attended with a goodly companie of Lords; as also the Soldiers at command, and braneft voluntaries : hee maintaines the reputation of a frequent Court, and Progracing vnto places of best maintetenance, proceedeth on to visit the most Noble Citties of the Prouinces. When ther is no wars, the Dinafti Lords Detrarchi, and Feudataries of ancient Nobility (who enjoy the Signories of the Caftles and Countries, given by their elders, do find all the prouision in Prograce; or if

uer, by the fourth part.

it be given them by the King, it is collected againe by Edict. They do also whatfocuer elle is commanded them, according to the fame reason, or equality in condition; as (vniner(ally) al the Nobili-tie in spatial Praduct and Will), Weeke to forue their Lord had King Withan.

The number of the Soldleis Is great. and when they are in Armes, they refort to their Enfignes; but if a diligent inquiry be made they never amount to 20000. Horfe Wor doe the third part of them (furnathed in hichelich manner syve have before declared) go for to battely for all the rest are consented with their Fiel mets Mantles (of hard and thick-woulen fluffe)wrapped about them; and churged with fundry thickle their fight is onelic with the Lance and Bow. For they have novelearned to lielpe those former kinde The Persians of Armes, and according as place & oci cafion required; dollar the third ouer | mes. the Moulder, to to evening the Launce of a purling enemy and flaids voor luedefence before with his Bow and Antows. Those Shields which are truely fande to come from Perflur and from the Royall City of stires (where Airnor is made of mortexcellent temper and verie worthy certes in him, which examination Next vnto thefe, are the neighboring

Affirems, by authority of numer sethorer fore the Kingdoms of the Medes of Dara thians, do affoord the verie befrandvaliantest Archers, beyond all other except the Tarvars. But the Armenians docouct most of all to fight on foor & write them felues of the Infanterie . For they plant (vpon the ground) a long preparation of in lland Shields, great and plaine, even as if they had a Rampier before them, and for defend themselves against the first of the Horlemen, fighting with Piker, and wery Thort Axes, as also Bowes and randwes: yearmany times they fight both neer and far off, with Slings that hange shore hairdles. People that come to helpe them as Voluntaries voluntaries, are fent out of Iberia and Albania, who are their confederate Kinges, and neighbor vpon Media and sermenia. beeing (for the most part) halfe Christians, and therefore do maintaine equall hatred against the Ottomens, and warre againft themasol of the additable

The Perfian Soldiers great in number.

> tice (pecial) a Chapter.

are altered iro their first ar-

าในก*ับสา*เส vas an excel-THE MER THE the Perstans.

The fighting of the Armen

fent from con federate Kings

ATA HO dere or difparel.

four of April 11 . . . for up 1

it be giuça them by the King, it is colred againe by Edick, They do allo what Couer elle it. I In & Au HO them, accorconstroide (i. ne senter, es equalistical de la constitución de la collection de la constitución de la const

mentaries of the Warres in Gaule, he of tentimes culleth the Gaules (at this day Erenth-men) Barbarians.

The especiall occasion of this Chapter. Harwhich I haue purposed to handle in this Chapter, proceeded not either from affections or over-great animosity; but rather to defend (against the Spaniard, Ralian, or Greeke)

the famous Kingdome of Frances: For, when they are growne discontented with the Erench, or be chafed, and over-come 20 by them in warre, they spightfully rerine them! Harbarians, Incivill, and Saluages, and fay, they learned it of Iulius Cefar. Novel to discusse whether it bee true, or no that the whole Civility of the world was amonigh the Romaines, and that the Ganles hadde not as much or more then they it remaineth you fufficient proofe and triall. Althogh that Julius Cafar was a great Captaine, having all those good 20 partes in him, which are required in an Empelour vet notwithstanding, it may plainly bee noted, that beeing vnable to effectuate his Conqueltes in Gaule, hee therefore calles it a light Nation, inconftant and barbarous.

cause they ysed humaine. Oblations in their Sacrifices, facrififing fornetimes, their Schildren, other whiles their flaues, Romaines were both cruell in their factifices and veric often themselves, vppoh some

Vow or folemne Oath taken: for vanquithing their enemies in Warre, or for fom other special matter. Which I must needs confesse to be a great cruelty, and farrefrom all humanity: albeit that in thoforimes and parts of the world, they vsed the fame manner of facrificing. And yet the Romaines did much worse heerein, then all other Nations whatfoeuer. For from all Antiquity, in the Country of the Latines (where Rome is built) they threw manie men off a bridge, into the River of Tiber , having their Feete and hands fast bound, to honour their facrifices of Saturne. Nor would they otherwife malfacre or dispatch them, in reigard offen anticon Oracle(se Korre faith) the last Veries, whereoff contenneth thus nucles. Send the abeefelf least abs and the lugar roll arbor. Surarnes, that was 63%, the

ingoined this new King them to saul. Titu Liuing a Romain Hillorian who was from the time of Iulius Calar, buth left Written, That the faid Romains had a Cultome when they behelde them felues in any great perill to yow and promife folemnly, that they woulde intino rower of the late to Jupiter, all creatures that received life in the next Spring time scalling the Spring time Hely. In these vowes, were comprized at the Infants lives that shold be born duting this feafon. But at length, they converted this facilitieing of infants. by fending them into exile which like wife feemed verie cruell, to banish poore and innocent Infants.

For ought I knowe, there is not arrie Who have bin people or Nation, that can fay of themfelues, they have stood cleare from these horrible Sacrifices. For, in Chier, a Greejan Island, thy yied the fame. In Agypt, in Heliopolis, where every day they maffacred three men to offer them to the Goddeffe June, The Lacedemonians, Sacrificed to God Mars. The Phanitians did as much to Saturne, when they were vexed with Pestilence, or persecuted with great warres. Hiftrens, an auncient Author, faieth; that the * Curetes, a peo ple of Creete, vied to appeale Saturne, by called alio Co. offering young Infants in facrifice vnto him. In Landicea, a Cittle of Calo-Sy ria, they did the like, to make the Goddeffe Pallas placable. The Jewes do ftiffely denie, that they did not immolat their Infants to God Moloch. The Thracians. Carthagenians, Scythians, and (wel-neere) all the Grecians, did exercise such detestable Sacrifices. And it was common euerie where, vntill the time of the Emperor Claudius, who made an Edicte to the contrary. And yet at this day, thorow all the Great Provinces of India, o-

on humaine flesh. If Julius Cafar reputed the Gauls to be Thefe offings barbarous, because (hauing promised & reputed piette and religion in the Gaules. win battailes against their enemies, they offered fuch Sacrifices to them: I should rather judge it great Picty and Religion in them, towards their Gods and Coun-

therwise called the New-world, not on-

ly do they still facrifice men, but also feed

Chap.2.

Oblations of

the spoyles of the Gaules &

pared toge-ther.

The Gardes

neuer flew

themselues

but in adue

Verie cruell

Once (thofeed on hu-

facult de Alz-

trey, because they made no spare of them felues, but Sacrificed also (with them) all that which they had conquered in wafre, of what great value and estimation socuer it were. For it is especially to bee noted, that wherefoeuer Religion & Justice is, there can bee accounted no barbarifine. Contrariwife, after victory obrained in fome battalle, the Romaines facrificed common Creatures, and made particular profit of the very greatest Riches conquered by them as of Cap-tiues, Gold, Silver, Horfes, and fuch like, offering to their God Inpiter Pheretrue, mooueables of small value; as fome Armours, price-leffe Rings, and Garments. Moreouer, such was the vertue and magnanimity of the Gaules, as to endure fo many tribulatios, which time could lay vppon them while they | 200 lived. But the Komaines, to free themfelues from all perils; would commonly kill themselves; if they were detained in prison, or otherwise, which is the act

of men downe-falne in hart. If he hold them for barbarous, because they have eaten humaine fiesh, as it is very true: he must vnderstand, that it happened vpon an extreame necessity, when himselfe came downe vpon | 30 them with three hundred thousand Cymbrians, Teutons, or Allemaignes into Gallia Sequana, and befiedged the Citty of Sens. For victuals failing them, by reason that all the Countrey was spoiled about them, and the Enemy kept a long and first fiedge voon them this poore diffressed people (vnable to de-fend the Citty otherwise) consisting of aged persons, women and children, very young in yeares, did voluntarily expose their lines, to feede their bowels that defended their Countrey, and for preservation of the Gaules Commonwealth. But this was not ordinarily done, nor vpon any wanton or lickerish appetite; likewise, neuer was it cuer heard to bee done , either before that time or after. Contratiwife, much more barbaroufly, and without any necessity at all; the Romaines made it a Iouial vie. to feed on mens flesh in their feasts and banquets, as Galen affures vs, that himfelfe hath scene, in the time of the Emperot Commodust Some Spaniards (euen in our times) have done as much in the Indiaes, for having no other victuals;

In Defence of the Gaules. they would eate their owne compani-

or famine.

Inlius Cefar also makes a mockery because there were certaine people, tearmed waged or mercenary Souldiers among the Gaules, who made a free gift of themfelies to people of wealth, to do all fuch feruices as they would imploy them in 3 receiving their whole nourithment and maintenance (from them) while they lived . But looke of what death focuer their Maifters dyed; they would gladly and willingly follow them therein, to keepe them company, of Gaule wher and do fernice to their Lords foules, in to they were another world, because this was an Article of their Religion. But the Romaines had an inuiolable law, which was, that if a mailter had few or many flaues, and he hapned to be flaine (albeit that fome other had kild their Mailler) yet all the Slaues must be flaine. Nay, they had worse customes, for if a Captaine were offended with his Soldiers, or fome idle toy tooke him in the head; hee would haue every tenth man in his Army culd Decimation out, and cause them to be hewen in pie- of the Romain ces before him, by the other Souldiers of the same company. More, the great number of Gladiatores or Fencers, that they caused to kill one another (either in their open Theaters, or other publique places strewed with Sand) with very keene edged and sharpe pointed Gladiatores Swordes, before all the people, with-out any pitty or compassion, saying: Thus did the Romaine people, and

so affured of their vovces. Perhaps he called them barbarous; because that the Gaules (in his time) had familiar food no other food for their ordinary prouifion, but Swines Fleih. I aunswere him, that it is one of the best and wholefomest meate, which can beg vsed for any nourishment; for it verie

Dd a

more cruelly in war. Nor might thefe

Fencers gine ouer the fight, what hurts

or woundes foeuer they had received

except the people were fo pleafed. They

would make their Captines also fight

with cruell Beaftes; as Lyons, Beares.

Tygers, and others, not in any small

number but by thousandes at a time;

only for a pastime to the people, and to

win themfelues credit, that when they

fought after any office, they might bee

ons, and Indians, that died on discales;

Of hyred &

Swines Flesh

caffiv

mong the Ro-Iulius Cafar was an excellent Captaine.

The first reason was (as I thinke) bee-

The Gauss and

sharmdoV

ent from

All Cigility a-

di manano

tony and Lu-

Cornelius Cel-

The Gaules

(at all times)

on the harde

The Gaules

vied to weare

ground.

eafily converteth into the substaunce of man, as being almost of the same temperature. The Athletes and Wraftlers of Greece, to make themselus, sturdy, strong, and of the best habitude, would feed on no other Victuals, but bread and Porke. But the Romaines of Cafars time inriched and made fat with the spoils of the world; were become Gourmandes, dissolute, and prodigall, as the like could not bee 1 found in any other Nation. One may ferue for an example of the rest, who termed himselfe a great friend vnto Casar, named Lucullus, that spent vppon one meale, twentie thousand Crownes. But by this kinde of badde life, multitude and varietie of Dishes, and extreame Gluttonie vsed amongst them: the Romaines grew to be verie vnhealthfull, according as Cornelius Celfus writeth. And no man is so ignoraunt, but knoweth verie well; that leading such a life, doth rather truly fauour of Beafts lines and barbariline, then of the least part or iotte of Civili-

Hee should not call them barbarous, because when they were at rest in their houses, they slept not vpon fost featherbeddes, but ordinarily vppon the harde ground; which the Romaines (in those times) could not doe. Most certaine it is that it is rather a Vertue to fleepe in fuch manner, then otherwise, for more easie support of such discommodities, as commonly doe attend on men of warre: who (as it should seeme) are sent of heauen, for defence of their Countrey, to fubdue incivill people for their finnes. fhort garmets Nor, for wearing of thort Garmentes, could he call them barbarous, because it is the nature of a Warlicke people, rather to bee clad in Garments which are fhort, then such as be long and trou-

Besides the Title of Barbarous, he ac-Cafar termed counts them to bee a light-headed peothe Gaules to ple, verie mutable in opinion and counbe a light-braind people fell. Hee speaketh these thinges, as a fworne enemic vnto them. For, when he had fowne divisions and Quarrelles among them, hee would feigne to bee on one fide, and quite against the other. But they perceiuing his fubtilty, disclaymed from his kindnesse, and brake the agreements which they hadde made with

blesome.

He neither furmounted or went be-

yond them in open and faire warre, for indeed he could not : but only by trecheries, because his intent was, to possesse himselfe of Gaule, and be King thereof, if colors ambiti-he had vanquithed pamper. Now, be-cause they differend his deusles, & knew the Dominion of the Romans to be more insupportable, then that of the Allemaignes, whom the Gaules of Sequana had called to their aide, against them of Anuni, and fo leagued theinfelues together very gladly: therefore he cals them light and inconstant. I leave to further consideration, whether hee had fufficient subject to hold them for fuch.

If he conceited them (then) not to be Lettered, hee was much deceived; for from all antiquity, the Gaules had knowledge in that part of Phylosophy, which In what Phywe tearme Naturall, and of the Ethique Gaules were or Morrall too, instructing pollicie and skilfull. good manners, which ought to support a Common-wealth. Nor went they among the Greekes to feeke instruction, as manie haue immagined. For, whereas Cafar faith in his Commentaries, That they vsed Greek Carracters in their writinges; hee meaneth not, that they fpake the Greeke Language. But three hundred yeares (or thereabout) before that Rome was taken and fackt by the Gauler, it was (as their owne Historians haue recorded) both without Law and Iuflice. The first Ro-True it is, that they were good Warri- maines begd ours, and that tenne men were fent from their Lawet in Greece, to feeke lawes, whereby to pollicie their Common-Wealth. The Gaules on the contrarie, woulde neuer vie the Lawes of any other; but contented themselues with those, which they hadde received from eldest antiquitie, as manie people yfed by their example yea. cuen the Romaines themselues, immitated them in Articles (enow) of their Religion, hauing withdrawne fome of their Phylosophers and Priestes, who coulde not followe those other Gaules, when as they departed from Italy to goe into Greece, by reason of the Dearth of Victu-

The Reader, by conferring both ma- The Reader ners and fashions in behauior of the one to be an indiff and other; will finde as much, or rather ferent ludge more Barbarisme in the Romaines, then in the Gaules. And although they have changed their Name, for that braue nation of Warriors in Franconia, who are

A long conti-

nued vice in

Of the Switzers Cantons

Chap. 3. mingled among them :yet doo they carrie (to this day) the Fame and Renowne, to be the Gallant, Civill, and most courseous Nation of the World, and where Learned men abound, more then in any other Province . But the Romaines and Italians, have had this Vice for long themselves . For, it is plainely seene in

time; to make estimation of none but all their Histories, that they make themselves to be evermore Conquerors, with out attributing anie thing to others . As may be evidently noted in the very commentaries of this Cafar : but if it were fo wel knowne by other Historians of their owne Nation, how often the Gaules did beat, vanquish and put him to his flight, ouer-throwing the Pallifadoes of his Campe, by their cunning Mines made Vnder-ground, wherein they were verie skilfull Maisters: the Gaules (as I have faide elfewhere) neede care for no other Written Histories; knowing that (for the most part) they are either Flatterers or Lyers.

Scaliger, borne at Verona, in his fourth Booke against Cardanus, sayeth, That there is not any Nation, which hath a more lively spirit, in doing whatfocuer themselves would, then were the French, be it in Armes, Learning, Merchandize, or Well-speaking ; but, about all the rest, they have (saieth hee) a most Generous and innocent heart, keeping Faith most constantly, with anie people whatsoeuer. Beholde the Judgement of a man, reputed the cheefest of

his qualitie, against the opinion of the faid Cefar; Tacitus, Trebellius & PolCHAP. III. ""

How long time it is fince the Switzer's were Cantonned : and uppon what occasion their Countrey was called. the Land of Leagues.

Efore we speake ame thing of the Switzers; Efore we freake anie I should describe the feituation, Grounde tation of the country, which was given their; to bee Mountai-

An aductrife

3125 N

ftory, purposely intended for his inffrue tion, in knowing, why the people vvere Cantonned. To thew yee then, what the Country is, which is cald of the Suitzers, or the Lande of Cansons, or of Leagues; ye must understand, it is that which was called by the Romaines, Heluctia. It beginneth in the veric highest Alpes, and endeth (on the East side) at Rh. ine., defcountry of cending towardes the North, fo farre as Laugher: Waltzhut and Laufembourge ; and from thence it turneth towardes the West, as in a direct tracte, by the Mountaine /#ra, even to the Lake of Geneua: and afterwards, remounteth vppon the Alpes

nous and ftrong (the onely benefit of be-

getting Liberty) to the end that the Rea-

der may the better comprehend the HI

The Country seemeth to be straight feription of and narrow; as appearing, that the veric the Country largest place, thould not extend it felfe a-

much leffe: the length alfo to confift of about an hundered and ten Leagues. It is verie Mountainy, populous, and yet more then other Countries, cannot nourith or maintaine men. They are a warlicke people, able to endure all trauailes in warre : Manie of them (at this day) Switzers take doeling yppon fucit Wages, as they re-ceine of ftrange Princes that will imploy mony. them : not that they take part with fuch as will give them most Wages (as some think) but in willingnesse to serue whom most they loue.

boue forty Leagues, and (in fome places)

In this Countrey, there are manie goodly Citties and I ownes, as also verie great Villages, and very well pollicied

The cruell

Gouernour

sensi kanal

Foure Swit-

zers enforce

to eate their

owne cares.

The region 8 tonning the Countrey.

308

Exaction by the Romaines ypon the Switzers.

> Of the Gouernour of

three Vales,

three yoak o

Oxcn.

Cruell tyrannics and oppreflions in the Gouer-

whereof we meane to speake hereafter. The occasion then, wherefore this Country was and is reduced into Cantons, and to become leagued, against those that oppressed them; was thus, according as Blondus maketh faithfull relation thereof. About the yeare 1305. the Emperours and Kinges of the Romaines, during the Schismes of the Em-

pire, did place Gouernours good ftore in the Switzers Countrey, as to recompence fush as had taken part with them. not having where withall (otherwise) to reward them. They gave them leave to do whatfocuer feemed good in their owne opinion, being as many of them there, as there were Cittles, Townes, and Villages, or few wanting: who molested the people with subsidies and borrowings, extorting all thinges elfe whatfocuer from them, according as it came into their fantafie. And yet notwithstanding, a great many of the Citties, Townes, and Comminalties, had long continued their immunity & franchife; eyther by especiall grace of the Emperours or by buying fuch priviledges with their Money, for which they had good & fufficient Patents to fnew. Neuerthelesse, these Harpie Gouernours, by perfusiion of fome Noblemen of the Countrey; did manifold wrongs and injuries to this people.

It happened, that the Governour of three Vales, wherein are three great Townes; to wit, Vri, Suutta, and Vnderualden (that were free of long time) fent fundry of his Catch-poles or Sergeants to demand three couple of Oxen, which belonged to a man of Vnder- 40 ualden,& to bring them away perforce: vfing no other reason, but: that Country men should labour with their hands, and not with the help of staule-fed Oxen. The Sonne to the man, from whom the Oxen were taken, impatient at his Fathers oppression; laying hand on his Sword, chanced to cut off a Finger of one of the Sergeants. The poore youth was afterward apprehended, and the Tyrant (beeing extreamely enraged) commaunded his eyes to bee pulled

Another Gouernour of the faid Vnderualden, sent for an honest Woman, that should prepare a bath for him in his owne House; which she did accordingly, as not daring to disobey the Tirant. No foonerhad the made ready his Bath, and pliroofing ap part thence againe : but the Villaine rauished her, for which thee was flaine by her Hulband, with the helpe of his Friends.

There was another Quernour of Anotorious Vri, who, befide his exacting on many Gouernour. meanes of the people, entredinto fuch folly and prefumption, that he erected (in a faire spacious place of the faide Vri), an high pearch or poule; on the top whereof was fastned a Hat or Bonnet, which he himfelfe had fometime worne, commaunding the like to bee done in the Villedge of Suuitz. Af- Reuerence of Countrey people should performe as much reverence to the Bonnet, as if himselfe were there in person. There was a man of very generous Spirit, and borne in that Countrey, named Guillaume Tell, who refuted to doe this friuolous reuerence. Whereupon hee was apprehended, brought before this proud and insupportable Gouernour, and sentenced with death: except hee Acruelimpo could falue his disobedience, by taking Father. a young Sonne of his owne (about fine yeares old) and standing fifty paces off from the Childe; cleaue an Apple vpon his bare head, with an Arrow deliuered from a Croffe-bow, without any harme done to the Childe. The man was both famed, andknowne to bee an expert Crosse-bow-man, and being heereto thus rigorously constrained : he performed the deede, without any hurt to his Child; but it was more by the grace of God, then his owne in-

dustry. The Gouernour beeing offended A further pro that the man had sped so well, and perceiting that hee had another Arrow by the gouerleft under his Girdle; demaunded, for nour. what purpose hee had that other Arrow, when he was enjoyned to shoote but one? Guillaume Tell answered. If I had flaine my Son; this other Arrow should have had thy life. In regard of these words, he was taken, bound fast with Gords, and put into a Boate, to be conveyed to prison. Now, it fortuned, that they were to passe a Lake in rowing thither, vpon which Lake hee escaped very strangely from them. For, having (by meere firength) bro-

idle tolly in a

The rich Abbot of the her mits claimeth an interest in

fecution of

The first victorie of the Switzers, a-gainst the D.

ken his bonds, he threw himfelfe fuddenly into the Lake, and recovering certaine Mountaines not farre off, lyued there verie concertly, and awayting for the Conernour (one day) in a verie narow passage, there slew him with the fore fild Airow.

-1 Another Conternor, caused the cares of foure Country-memof switts tobes cut off then commanding them to bee roafted, he compelled them to eat them. The people of the Countrey, beeing not a little mooned with these extreame injuries, and manie other out-rages in the Gouernours: expelled them quite out of those three Vales & from thenceforward) entering into Confederacies), beganne to Cantone or quarter themfelies, fwearing a folemnet rague, with absolute promise to succor one another 20 if they thould livereafter be modlefted by

any wholoetier.

Within thort time after, a tich Abbot, entitled of the Hermits, faide , That hee had right and Title . To leavie fome Provision of Corne, and of Mony alfo, vppon the Village of Switzd and fummoned them to make payment thereof. They answered, that they houer hearde before of any thing due vito the fayde 30 Abbot, nor did nnie fuch right (to their knowledge) appertaine voto him: and therefore, they would pay him nothing. Hee growing verie anglie at this auni-Iwere, and beeing descended of a Great and Noble house: leavied an Armie, accompanied with Leopolde, the Duke of Austruche, who had great Landes both within, and uppon the Frontiers of the Swatzers . Befreles manie Barons and 40 other Gentlemen of the Country; came vnto him (Voluhtarily) from all partes, haning alreadie gone on, and yfed thofe places where they were to paffe, more then Hostily.

The Armie of the three Vales, which coulde not amount vnto thirteene hundered men, charged with humble heads. (yet vnconquerable spirits and affurance) the Armie of the Duke and Abbotte; and having purthom to flight; flewe verie manie of them, and a great number likewife were taken Prifoners, befides, the Dukes best safetie of his life, was speedie flight. This Victorie of these fimple, but verie Warlicke people, enconraged them to attempt and put in

pra life much greater matters, and to thand upon their best desence, in all coluing occasions.

Thefe leagued Vallies, within little The fecond while after; to wit; uppon the fixteenth switzenship day of Youember, according as Matta, sainf, the part declareth, in the years one thousand three hundered and fifteene; ouercame, another Army of twentie thousand men. which the Emperout Fredericke of Au-Striche and Duke Leapolde his Brother had prepared, to ruinate those three Vil lages because they would not take the Outh of allegeance to the hide Enter rour, athis news creation; and youthey The occasion had formerly doone into Lewes of Band of this found red, who called himfelfe also Emperour, and lawfully elected. The big

vrgedon, and thereto vehencetly perfwaded, by a great number of Noblemen and potent Lordes, who had made great spoyles both of Castels & Towns, But, the Confederated Switzers, being advertised of Freins HICKS intention, closely ambushed themselves (to Apoliticke the humber of fifteene hundered men) the Leagued vppon the grappie hie Mountaines, and Switzers. narrowe paffages, full of great Rockes and Quarries of stone s whereof they chose the biggest, & rowled them downe vppontherAtmie, as it came vppe from the Mountaines foote, and went along

the strait waies. The meeting For, from the bottome of the Mounraine, the one fide of the Rocke feened like an vpright Wall on the one fide. and on the other, were greate Lakes of Deepe Water, not easie to bee wadget and the huge stones tumbling downe so fast vppon them, drowned no means number of them in those Lakes, or did beate out their braines, and the reft beeing disfronted, Duke Leepolde was glad and faigne to shift for his life the second time.

Notwithstanding these two sustained foyles and loffes, Duke L B O PO L+ b a loftnot a lotte of his Courage and Valour, but made againe uppon them with freth Forces; perfwading himfelfe, that hee thould get the Maistry of these Boores, Peazants, and Shepheardes, for so hee tearmed these Confederates. Calling the Men of Strasbourge vnto his ayde and assistaunce, with divers other Townes, that tooke parte with the

Duke Leanolde faueth his life

The third at onthe Swire

The third vio tory of the

Emperour Fredericke, and manie other great Princes:he entered agains into the Confederates Country, by the Valley of Vndernalden amog the Mountains. Now was he the third time well beaten and repulled, by eight or nine hundred people, & yet his army consisted of about 1200.

Some Write, that the Duke himfelf, was not there in person; but the Count of Haffourge, who went as his Lieute-nant. From this time forwards, thefe-three Gantons tooke hart and boldnesse of spirit vppon them, seizing (by waie of Warre) the Castles, Townes, Forts, and Signeuries, offuch Gentlemen as had affisted the Duke, quite ruinating the faide Forts and Castles, or appropriating them to their owne reuennues. For, before these fortunate successes, they had 20 not any thing in proper, but onely their Townes and Villages : but nowadayes, they have reduced those lands into Bayliwickes, whereunto they depute Gouemors, which either they change yearly, or continue to further time; according as it is adulfed by the Senate, belonging to each Village of the confederats, and some others, that have (since then) Cantonned themselves, and entred into alliance with them.

Duke Leopolde, and the Emperor his Brother, died within fewe yeares after these losses, without any Children, and their fucceeding heires fuffred these confederates to live peaceably, till the yeare, 1390. Neuerthelesse, they were mollefted by other great Lordes, whom still they manfully withstood, and stil got the better hand of all in their attemptes. At last, there came one, named Leopolde alfo, descended of the same family of Aufriche, an audacious Prince, ouer-light in beleefe, and fearfely aged xx. yeares. He was prouoked by those Noble and Gentlemen, who either were expulsed from their houses, or elfe had voluntarily forfaken them, and albeit there hadde past some transaction and truce between them: yet now they would breake their faith and promise made to these Confederates. All the pretence that this young Prince had for warre, was, because Lucerna, which was a goodly Towne, had

leagued and cantonned it felfe with the

fore-named Villages, and many subjects

of Duke Leopoldes, in regard of his often

mollestations, were now (bythis means) become Bourgeffes, and quietly enjoyed the benefits of their Country, Their matters, intermedled with the Princes rash furie, made him so violent in spleen against them: that so manie as hee could cause to be taken of Lucerna, or those other subjects that had the office of Bour-

strangled in the open fields. The leagued Inhabitants, not a little displeased at these cruelties, broght their armed troupes into the fielde, and (by a fidden affault made vpon this yong Du, Leopolde) tooke the firong Caftle of Pter-phicon, and pureynto death all that vvere Theswines found therein. At the very fame time al- honourably re fo, they tooke two Townes of Duke Let young Duke opoldes, to wit ; Deelibouch and Sampach, Leopolde. that gladly yeilded themselnes into the protection of the Confederates, and Bourgeship of Lucerna. The Duke beeing highly heerewith displeased, hauing an Armie readie of ten thousande men; entered into the Countrey of the Cantones. But notwithstanding all his heate and haft, by the aduise of some: peace was made betweene them, under certain a peace made conditions, fo that no battel was fought,

or Towne taken. The yong Duke being returned home to his Court, with intent to sport and recreate himselfe, was perswaded by many Noblemen, that he had greatly difhonored himfelfe in making anie contract of Euilleounfeli peace with his fubicets, and that al Lords were dispensed withall, for anie oath taken in that nature. Moreover, they obiected, that this might prooue a principall cause, to hinder him from succession in the Empire, whereto his predeceffours had formerly attained. Being ouercome

by their foolish perswasions, he emploied a great part of the Empires forces; and A fourth premost of the Nobilitie, beeing numbered gainst the con twentier thousand men, both horse and sederates. foote, all verie expert and wel tried Soldiers, the greater part Noblemen, pretending interest in the cause, and accompanied with manie Princes of power. Thus came they vnto the field, with all kinds of munition, to befiedge Sampach: where the Armie also of the confederats met them, who were (in all) but a thoufand and fix hundred men. But shey being possessed of the most advantageable place in the field, and where the Horse-

geffes, they were forthwith hangde and to the Confe-

Violence done

Crantz Lib 1 c Minist Lib. 3

The Castels mined about Bearmoand h

A fift victory

of the Suitzer.

The Switzers.

The Army of

he Abbot of

S. Gal, van.

quithed.

The great and goodly Cattle of Zurick wher the Earle of Hafpurge was taken priloner

Chap.3. Of the Switzers Cantones. men could do no good for them felues, or prejudice to the Suitzer pithe Mobile

men were feigneso dismount and batraile being giacu, the honor of the daig remained to the Cantons Lewas flich an extreame houdays that the Noblemen were not able to endure any part of the paines (which the puote Ruflicks were not formuch conformed voto; but could ably out fland farrel greater to toyle) but were glad to flye. Albeir, young Leopalde Roud fining and noura-

gions, vntill bewas flaine, with manie other worthymen ; as Other Marquelle of Hich, John Earle of Fust denbange, and divers others for very few ofcaped, but they were eyther taken Prisoners, or flaine. Two yeares after, fome of the Gentle-men which had then ofcaped, returned thither agains with fixe thousand fighting men; but two hundred men of Glarouna flood against the, and flew two thousand and soure hun-

dred of them, compelling the reft to faue their lines by flight, according as I finde it recorded in the Books of Crantcins and Muniter. Now, these Noblemen and Gouer-

nors, did not onely molest these three Vallies and Lucerna; but likewife all 30 them inhabiting about Bearne, pillaging all the goods in the fieldes of Bearne. Yet notwithstanding, by continuall waging War with them, the Cantons deteated all their purpofes, ruinated their Castels, and appropriated all vnto their owne Dominions; except it were of fuch, as contracted amity and alliance with them. I forbeare heere to fet downe, the potent war which they 40 which the more part of the do now pof had against the Abbot of S. Gal, especially those of Appenzell, because they vrged a right vnto their corne and other fruites : but they could get nothing of them but blowes, albeit, their Armies were verie great. Glaris, in fhort while after, being troubled by the Noblemen and cruell Gouernours, which they of Austriche had fet ouer them : entred inother of the foure Cantons.

Zurick, a great and worthy Citry, feated vpon the River of Indmat, had beene vexed about fiftie yeares by the Nobility, and a puiffant Prince, who was the valiant Counte of Halpounge, and extream in hatred to them, because

he was taken in Zurick (beging entered thereinto in the night time) by meanes of the treacherous Inhabitants, with foure hundred men he being made Priv foner, and all his men flaine, Yet, with in some few yeares, he was fer at liberty, at the follicitation made by his C90 zin Albertithe Emperous, and thence forward, Zurick came into the number of the leagued Confederars. This Citty | cause. called it felfe Tigurum, and is the most rich and powerfull Cantone, about all the reft, next voto Bearne, and holdeth procedence beyond all the other : he caufe all Ambaffadours refore thisber, and the affemblies are most of all there made. Whereby plan ely appeareth,

that the Cantons doe not hold place of

precedency, according as they were re-

ceined into the league; and I confesse

mine owne ignorance, nor knowing

how these degrees have passed among them. It is presupposed, that because there Almost all -W45 (then) no Luthice for the people; the Nobility of the Switger. burthanalithe Noblemen (almoit) in were bately their quarters of the Heluctians, were minded. (as we yes to fay) cut out of one cloath, that is to fay ; had fworne the ruing of the third estate : Therefore, Zong; Bafile, Fribourg, Soleurre, and Shaffonze, (by laps of time) confederated themfelues with the feauen before named. All which together, beeing in number thirteene, had many warres against the

Emperors, and other great Lords, and were euermore Conquerours. It is therefore to be prefumed, that they got nor their libertie, nor the goodly lands feffe, in a day but before they could haue peace with their Neighbors, they paffed ouer (well neere) fix (core years, This Countrey of the Leagues or Cantones, neither knew how to gaine cause of re-

their freedome, or conquer fo many bellions. Countries as they have done; if the Emperours had not beene bufied in ciuill warres, whereof the Popes (for the to league with the men of Bearne, and 50 most part) were the fole occasion, or Germany had beene united, as fametime it was . But the Nobilitie being become infolent by Cinill wars, acknowledging no Superiours nor Goucenours, that kney well enough how to fish in troubled Waters conferred by their tyranny) the people of the Helic

The death of the Emperour and Duke Le-

The Switzers

fucceffe, vpon thele obtained

victorics.

trace of water

agaipft Can-

onned Lucer-

tians, to shake off the yoake of their superiors also, and to expell them thence.
At this present, and since the time of
King Frances the fifth, they saue made confederation with the Crowne of Fraunce, receiving both presents and pentions. Mine intent was not (in this breefe

The Authors purpose in relation of the Switzers

Aduise to

Princes and Noblemen.

difcourse) to shew my selfe any Histo-rian, neither to set downe all the gestes and warres, which this warlike Nation have made, fince they began to fecke their liberty; for, to performe that labour, it would require three or foure great volumes . Beside, I haue spoken but of three or foure, the most notable and chiefest in the Countrey, thereby to let the Reader vnderstand; whereforethe Region of the Switzers, is calledthe Country of Leagues, or of the Cantons . Wherein I have followed the best Writers; as Blondus, Crantzius and Munster. By this discourse, I would gladly give adinse to Princes and No-ble-men to deale better with their subiects, then these Lords did in the Swiszers Countrey; least (by successe of time) Heauen frowne vpon them, and they be throwne into the like disaster.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the excellency and deferued commendasion of Trauaile; And what great daungers are begosten, and doe enfue of idie-

Travaile first commaunded by God



E are enioined by the law and commaundement of God, that wee must tranaile and labour in this world : For the very first

Man that euer was, having broken Gods commaundement, was throwne out of Terrestriall Paradise, and the Earth was given him to enjoy; but yet with this condition, to labour therein with continuall Tranaile, without any limitation of time, but even folong as he lived. And yet this was not imposed vpon the first man onely ; but it came as an iniunction also, to all his posteritie. Now, notwithstanding holy Scripture tels vs; that Trauaile was laid on Man

as a matter of repensance: vet it appear rethlikewile, to be a proper medicine, whereby to recousuand help fome paffedenils io For a man arramerh by I fa- fed offences, uaile; wregaine that which lie loft by feeding And thoughthis came as mea-frigation, yet God commanding no-thing bury habis good inst. felfe; hath (in this nature) given man time to en togring land by liboury according as Job faith; Man u borne to trauvile. (slyo) lebs.7.

Looke vpon our Saniour and Rey Thelife of deemer Jefus Christy our Sourgage our bleffed Maifter, who, as an example to vs. all; trauailed continually in painefull exercifes, enen till his death. And beside, in his parables, heblamed and reprooned the fleepy Virgines, that were neglect and flothfull: euermore fauouring and commending fuch as transiled, faying, in an especiali place of note; Come unto me allyothat Francile and are heavy laden, and I will eafe ye. If we would fit downe to read, we should finde, that the auncient Saints, imployed all their time in continual exercises and labours. More Trauaileis ouer, Tranaile is not onely healthfull beneficiall for the Soule, but it is likewise as befieandbody. ficiall to the body for it caufeth agility, ftrength; and quick disposition; it cheareth and encreaseth good Spirits, and consumeth all bad and offensive humors ... And concerning the Soule; it cleanfeth it from all occasions of euill doing, and conucreth bad thoughts into better endeuours. Most certaine is it, that (without paine and tranaile) neuer did matter of any great confequence fort to good effect; but the paines feemed the fweeter, because no flothfull eafe was interposed in the action. He that transiles and takes paines, Paineful men takes quiet repose and rest also, because doe best take to a weary man, all thinges are sweete their rest, and acceptable : his meate is fauoury

are to him in truest contentment. But returning to the benefits of the Thebenefits body, trauaile maketh a man differency vigilant, welladuifed, wife, & all good-neffe elfe proceedeth thence. It is transpille the approach to the control of uaile that apparelleth and beautifieth a Man: it maketh lodgings for him to rest in; waies to walke in; Ships to saile in; Armes to defend him; in breefe, innumerable are the bleffings thereby abounding. By trauaile, barren Landes

to him, fleepe casie, and all pleasures

The way to Heauen is 'X

paine and

Chap.4.

The comme

dations of

paine and trauaile.

Travaile is a

ielp to natur

peciall objeruation in this

A'exander and lalius Cafar.

are made fresh, teeming, and fruitfull: to fuch as are dry it giveth water, by opening the earths Wombe, to let forth her owne moyfture. It exalteth humble Vallies, where neede requireth, and throwes down high Mountaines, whose fleepe paffage offendeth. It turneth foorth-right Flouds and Ruiers; to take their more needfull coulfe by dry landes without waters, helping (thereby) to a dorne and pollith Nature, compelling her fometimes, to engender fuch things, as in her own proper wil the would not It tameth the wildest beasts, and maketh them familiar. It maketh mens Spirits prompt and fubtile, having the like po-wer in all the other fences of man; and he that makes due tryall, findes the will ualuable riches which is got by Traualte.

Veffels to comie to Heauen, but by the rugged pathes of paine and travaile. If fumptuous buildings, goodly Pallaces, and populous Cittles doc feeme mightie thinges: then know, that all those were performed by the labour, fiveate, and tranaile of thy Predeceffors. If likewife, Arts and Sciences doe highly content thee : why then remember, that they were the spiritual! I rauaile of learned Men in times past. If thou looke vpon faire fields, beautiful Gardens, and plenteousyeelding Vines : fay to thy felfe, all these proceeded from the workes of Itauaile because idlenesse dooth not any thing, but rather destroyeth whatsoener is already done . By Travaile, men attail ned to very great and famous renowne. It was that which made wife Plate, Art. flotle, Pythagoras, and the rest of those learned men, neuer cease to trauaile their bodies and studious Spirits; both in

What was it that made Hercules fo famous and farre honoured; but onelie his twelue labourious Tranailes? What was it that gaue fuch plendour to the Names of Alexander the Great, Inline Cafar, with all those excellent Kings and Captaines; but painefull exercise, and industrious Trauaile? Whereas on the

contrary, Sardanapalus, and other fuch Sardanapalus, like idle and lascinious Princes, both ruined and oppressed their Countries, and themfelies dved very thamefull deathes. Whereby may early be gathered, that if the World were deprined of Transile; all would turne to nothing. Offices in The injuries all would turne to nounces. Charles the manage humanity would fall into Decaderice; entaining by humanity would fall into Decaderice; entaining by Mechanicall Artes, Letters, Studies, unic. Goods, ttemembrances, tuffice, Lawes and Peace; no one of all there could continue without Tranaile. Aff the verthes are supported; only by incalles ther. The vermes of and without they could no way be maintined to Training exercifed because, he that will minter Infriee, blight to tratialle and tave pains. To conclude, no vertue can beet let on

Worke; Without Travalle, and therefore Historia faid by fiven and punched Travalle, Vertue is to be with. God would not have his owne chosen 20 1 wee would well and exactly con-contemplate all the things which God hath works of created; we shall find, that by how much God, & how the more they are perfected in a certaine media. By so much the more may we tru ly fay, that hee hath ginen to them great rall kindes.
Trailante, Leeve bellold his superfor handy-workes'; the Sunne mooneth it lelfe continually; the Moone never standeth still; the Heavens and the Planners have beene, are, and thall be daily in continuall motion. The fire cannot containe it felfe, Without some operation; the Ayre goes alwaies to fome place or other. In the inferiour bodies, the Water, Fountaines and Rivers flow inceffantly, and the Sea mooueth without ceffation. For the Earth it felfe, albeit it were immoueable (for it ought fo to be, & vpon necesfity, both that men may Transile whether they would thereon, and afterward take their reft) yer notwithstanding, it neuer emoyeth any repole: but continu-ally bringeth foorth Hearbs, Trees, and ally bringeth foorth Hearbs, Trees, and Plants, even like a diligent and panyifull Mother, that counts her felfe obliged to maintaine and notifil both their and Beafts. And therefore, five would bring all thefe thinges to due confidention, we ould then finde, this Nature is intended the finde, this Nature is intended. tiue to no other thing but onely to continual labour and trauailte in creating forming, making symmaking producing and Beeth. corrupting, altering, or gazing and toiling, without the leaft repite of felt or

repose in any kind whatsoener.

That this which I have saide must

ו יטר, וטר diam'r. a hna par

XUM

or HeF.re.

Plato, Ariflotte

writing, enftructing, & disputing, withont any care at all for fleeping, feeding, or cloathing their bodies; and yet, at fach times as Nature compeld them to thefe

necessities; they seemed much more sweete and pleasing to them, then they can doe to idle and floathfull Gluttons.

Herenles Tra-

Quint. Curtius

When the Ro-

A Romaine

Scipio Nalica.

The labour and trauailo the body. Vargill. Horace.

Euripides.

Menander.

Democritus.

Hermicon.

labours, that they were neuer weary in commending the trauaile & exercise of the body . Virgill faith, That continuall labour surmounteth all things. Horace, the Lyricke and Satiricall Poet, faith in his workes : That God gave nothing to Man, but with paine and labour . Eurypides faith: eth him that transileth : without Transile, there is no true renowne, praife, nor happie aduenture. The Poet Menander wrote ve-

Pythagoras. Salomon.

The onely meanes that made any man famous

> The fruits of idleneffe and

Quid concerning idlenelle

Examples al-leaged by the Author, for defence of labour and tra-Of the Fire.

needes be true, the wife Philosophers (in times past) fignified by their daily Travaile is the Father of Fame : God helpry wifely ; a healthful man idle, is in worfe condition then he that hath an Aque. The faying of Democritus pleaseth me highly, where he faith: Paines taken voluntarily, are never distastefull when they bee enforced . When Hermicon was demaunded, of whom he learned those deepe Sciences which he professed; he answered: Of Trauaile and Experience. It was the faying of great Pythagoras; That a Man ought to make choise of a good life, and to let it appeare, by paine and Trauaile, which brings it to a sweete and casie custome. Salomon faith; The flothfull man hould learns example of the Ant.
I should never end, if I were to name

heere, the plenty of testimonies to bee alleadged in this kinde. It shall suffice then, for me to fay, that never was any man famous for Armes, Learning, example of good life, or any of the Arts; without great Tranaile. And, to fpeak truly, neuer were any idle people great, or knowne, but if it happened that a Man being borne great, liued neglectly or idle : most cerraine it is , that (by flothfulnesse) his estate was ruined, or else hee lost his renowne, quiet or life, the loffe being the true fruit of floathes Tree, whereby all vices are multiplied, as the wife man wel witneffeth, faying; Idlenesse enstrusteth many mischiefes.Ouid could affirme, that Without idlene fe, Cuped bath no power, and hee spake truely: For in idlenesse, wickednesse is dreampt on, treasons inuented, and foule sinnes acted . Ezechiell numbreth idlenesse among those fins, which were the cause

that Sodome was destroyed. To fpeak mine one owne judgement in this case, I neuer knew any thing, wherein idlenesse got entrance, but it came to vtter ruine. We fee the fire, if it be not maintained, it quickly quench-

be continually mooning; for if it bee with held and restrained, it will breake forth of it selfe. Water, compelled to any limitted place, and where it may not have his course and free passage, it putrifieth, corrupteth, and stincketh. red; it will produce nothing but Brambles, Bryers, Thiftles, and other vaprofitable Hearbs. It is cuident to our cies, that Gold, if it be not much laboured and purified, it will neuer appeare in his perfect beauty. Iron likewise, and other Mettals, will meerely rust and canker of themselues; except they bee wrought to some kinde of service. Prouinces and Countries, if they be not inhabited and laboured; they will proue barren & subiect to pestilence. Houses and dwellings, let them stand voyd and empty; they forthwith fal to ruine and decay. Common high-waies, let them not be trauailed and frequented; they will thut vp themselues into impossibility of passage, so that all knowledge of them will be veterly loft, All things whatfoener, if they be not imployed, and made vie of by labor; they perish, impaire of themselues. Yea, euen the if they be not quickned and viuified by daily exercises; they will become lazy and flothfull; fo that the hart and foule will confume themselues, the powers of the body be so wasted and weakned, that no vie or motion can be made with

I haue already (in this Chapter) told ye, that trauaile makes a man agile, and chearefully disposed: and now (on the contrary) I am alfo to informe ye, that floath and idlenesse spoyleth the complexion, corrupteth all good humours in mans body, and gives Dominion to them that are bad and naught. Galen faith: It is impossible for a man, to keepe himselfe healthfull, except he tranaile and labour . And Auicenne is of the same mind, with Cornelius Celfus, and other very excellent Phisitions . Horses, and fuch kind of Beafts, if they be kept idle; Of Horfes. they become unprofitable. Ships rot and feemely vgly, if they be kept still in Ports and Hauens: but when they faile abroad, they are both beautifull and beneficiall, and keepe themselues from

eth of it felfe. The Aire likewise, it must | Of the Ayre. Of the water. If the earth be not opened and labout- Of the Earth Of Gold and other Mercals Of Lands and Countries. Ofdwelling Of common rode-waics. All things very vitall Spirits of Men or Women, The vitall spirits, Hart and Soule.

Idleneffe is

The faying o Galen, Auice

Of Souldiers, base corrupting. Souldiers, and men inured to Armes; they grow our of heart, in the times of rest and peace. Befide, I finde it faithfully recorded, that Hanibals idle-Hannibals idlenesse at Capna, was the onely cause of the Romaines victorie a-The flothfull gainst him. The floathfull man hath no other Lesson; but that all imployment is painefull to him. He that marcheth best in Warre, fights alwaies in greatest security: but hee that abideth still in one place, is apt to all inconveniences, and the Sunne burnes him with the more advantage. The Archer herein serues as a Schoole-maister to vs, who neuer drawes his Arrow at a Bird flying; but when he findes her flothfully

Of instruvoyces.

Example of

the Archer.

Chap.4.

neffe at Capua

Of Wines, Of precious stones.

Of Iron. Ofbrute

> is wanting, for full confirmation of this needfull discourse. Saints have cursted it; Philosophers condemned it; Onid, Plato, Horace, Claudian, Virgill, and all other Poets have fung against it. All Histories are full of the cuils derived from it . Plato and Aristotle, condemning idlenesse, doe highly exalt the Art

the clearer it shineth. Among brute

beasts, they that take the greatest pains,

are most esteemed of men. To support

this cause, I could alleadge so many au-

thorities of Philosophers and Poets, al

that was called Gymnastia, whereby, all necessary occasions and matters for war were enstructed. Of the Empe-The Emperor Adrian had long time educated, favoured, and (at laft) exalted

a man, named Turbo, who was a most

diligent and labourious follower of his

affaires, and the Emperor, noting him

We do ordinarily behold, and finde it true in common experience, that both voices and instruments, not being imploied; they lofe their vertue, found hoarfly and discordant : whereas on the contrary, vie refineth, concordeth, and makes them most pleasing. There are some kindes of Wines, that must bee rackt and roughly mannaged, to pre-ferue them in yeilding the better rellish. Pretious stones, if they bee not pollifhed and purely cleanfed, they cannot 30 appeare in their perfect lufter : but by painefull labour and trauaile, they are discerned in their highest excellencie. Rude Iron it felfe, the more it is vied,

gine leylure. Apuleius faide, that nothing feemed Apuleius conblaming and rebuking idlenesse: as would serue to compleat whatsoever more commendable to him, then Fen- cerning Fencers, who had idlenesse in such abhomination; that the Maifters would neuer fuffer their Schollers to eare, till they had first performed some act of vertue and man-hood. Citero declareth (to the same effect;) That Men were truely borne to good deedes and adventures; The faying of whereof our Soule is a sufficient argument. for it is never idle, or at reft. Draco, the famous Law-maker of athens, among the most notable Lawes which hee deuifed, he had one deferring the chiefest praise of all ; which was : That such men were fentenced with death, as The Law of should be found idle, or walking at their Drace against idlenetie, pleasure or pastimes, when others were

one day, that (in his opinion) hee was too earnest in his businesse, he said vnto him. Turbo, doe not kill thy felfe, but be more carefull of thy health: whereto Turbo replyed. My Lord, the Manthat bath beene nourished, fauoured and advanced by an Emperour, as I have beene, ought to dye in Tranaile at his foote . Quintus Curtius declareth, that the diseases of idlenesse should be cured by Trauaile. The Romaines had a custome, to begin the day at midnight, to the end, that at the rifing and apparition of the Sunne; they might all fall to labour together: for they were perswaded, that (already) a moity of the day was pall, and yet no good Act performed by them. A Ryman fought to perswade the Senate, that the Senate. Carthage could not be destroyed; least the Romans boafting offecurity bywant of imployment there, should become idle. Vpon which occasion, Scipio Nafi- The words of ca, perceining that fome held Rome to be in fafety, after that Carthage was made defolate, and Grecce wafted; gaue them this answere. I am of a contrary opinion, and doe thinke our selves now to be in much greater perill, because we now stand in feare of no body. Whereby this worthy man inferred, that idleneffe was the idleneffe caucause of more dreadfull daunger, then feth more either warre or neighbouring enemies; because feare yeeldes more aduantage of safetie, then when we stand free from all doubtfull confideration. And therefore the French have a prety Proucrbe : Make Hollidaie when the times

feriously and honestly busied. It defer-

Three Idols elteeme among the Gentiles.

ueth some consideration, to note in what account trauaile was among the Gentiles; in regard, that they had three Idols : the first was named Serenna, that is, dexterity, or agility: the second, agenoria, which signified virility, or manlines: and the third, Stimula, which is as much to fay, as a spurre and pricke to honour and vertue; and trausile was (with them) in fuch precious reckoning, that they erected these Ideaes to But not to flay our felues (ouer long)

on the Gentiles opinion, let vs come to

the facted Scriptures; where we are no

lesse bound to tranaile, then restrained

and prohibited from prophane thinges.

other places, where he fo deepely con-

demneth idleneffe, faith : That the flug-

gard or flouthfull person, which forbeareth to worke in Winter shall be a Beggar. Saint

Paule, the Doctour of the Gentiles, ta-

keth glory in nothing more, then in not

beeing idle, commending labour and

trauaile aboue all things. And writing

to the The falonians, hee tels them, that

they knew wel enough how to imitate

him, for he was neuer idle among them,

day, in that he had gained them; not by

any indirect meanes or charge to them,

but in giving them good example. Sai-

ing moreover, that hee that would not

labour, ought notto cat. The like did he

to the Corinthians, recounting his Tra-

uailes taken for their example; and fo

in many other places beside. Let vs then

(hence-forward) imploy our time in

floth aud idlenelle, that neuer can per-

forme any act of estimation.

good and honest exercises, shunning 40

And yet wee are not commaunded,

to follow labour and trauaile, with fuch

extreamity or rigour; as to leaue our

meate, drinke, fleep, or honeftly taking

our rest and quiet : for decent recreati-

ons, and honest repose is sometimes

lawfull. In which regard, Cicero exalted

he was never leffe at rest, then when he was

at rest . Which Cicero maintaineth to

be a notable faying : Because (quoth he)

be declared thereby that in his idleneffe, he

thought on his businesse, and so in solitude,

he could take councell with himfelfe. Moral

Seneca alleaged; That idle time, without

and commaunded Scipio, who faid : That 50

but it was foode to him both night and | 30

The holy Scripture binderh vs

Salomon in his Prouerbs, among those

I Thef. 2, 9.

2 Thef. 3,8, 9.

2 Corin, 5,7.

In what manner trauaile is commanded.

ning the fay-ing of Scipio.

The faying

Man, and onely they that are exercised in knowledge, know best what sleath and idlenesse is. Plutarch would have a man to Morralles. make some dispensation of his time, in exercifing the difference betweene knowledge and experience. O that men (then) would but ducly confider, how their time is to bee imployed; which glides away fo fwiftly, and remember withall, that they must render an account for enery word spoken vainely & idly. Cate, although he was a Pagan, Men did Stand as much bound to yeilde an account, for their time lost or neglected; as

bonest imployment. To conclude, we should make such The Authors good expence of our rime, in honeft, concurring lawdable, and blamclefte exercises labour and that the fruites thereof may be aduan-trauaile. tageable to vs, and we efteemed as hyred Seruants for heaven ; which is prouided for none, but fuch, as are called to travaile in the Lords Vine-yard, and shall have their Wages according to their worke. And Saint John the Dinine faith . The dead which dye in the Lord, are Renel, 14,13 fully bleffed, for they rest from their la-

bours, and their workes and transiles follow them. This authority doth well approue, that trauaile is the merchandise of this World; heere bought and fold but rewarded in Heauen . For fo Saint Paule testifieth, faying : Euery one Shall receive his wages and payment according as

attribute to Conquerours; and Lawrell observed as a signe of victory.



Oft certaine is it, that (in elder times) the Romaines gaue the Palme to Conquerours, in figne of Triumph; and it is fo true, that

by writing in Latine the word Palma, it is meerely understood for victory . Plu- Plutarch in tarch also affirmeth, that for each Traff, de Cam kind of victory, there was a feuerall putat.

Letters or fludy, is death and buriall to a yet he could fay : That great and worthy faving affecting they that could best deliner reason for their

he hath travailed here beneath.

CHAP. V.

The reason, why the Palme was given as an

Of the Palme and Laurell.

Romaines for Conquerors.

Plin Lib. 6.

Anius Gellius.

before the

male.

Chap.5. Crowne defigned, where with their heads were circkled, that had obtained fisch honor in field. One was made of Oline branches; another of Laurell; a third of Oaken Leaues, andothers, of other trees; but among them all , the Palme was the general figne of victory. Those ancients do likewise say, that the cause why this fignification (more then any other) was attributed to them:proceeded from an admirable propriety in the Tree it felfe, which (without any other proofe to confirme it) is allowed to be most certaine, by authority of the that have written theron ; as Pliny, Ari-Storle, Theophrastus , Aulus Gellius, and Plutarch. All which learned Writers do

Theophra lib.s. maintain, that the more the Palmetree (or one of his branches) is charged with any heavy weight or burden; the more it refills and withstandeth the oppression. And whereas all other Trees doe yeelde under fuch lading, and are furmounted by the burden : the Palme only refisteth, and cannot be ouer-awed; because the greater the weight is, the more doth it still our stand it. In this

respect, both Plutarch and Aulus Gellius fay: That he which goes with an intent to Conquer another, must not fuffer himfelfe to be surmounted by feare of the perrill, nor

waxe weake in the attempt : but rather tranaile on with height of courage, and (with resolute resistance) pursue victorie, as being a man, meete to carry comparison with that Tree, which bath the fame naturall quality, both in refisting and over-

comming any weighty oppression, and therefore it is given as a signe of victory. Others fay , that this honour was 40

The Palme practifed by the Gentiles, because the ted to Phabus, Palme was confecrated to Phabus, long before the Laurell was, and was held to be a most auncient figne of victory. Pliny and Theophrastus, doe write of many other properties in this Tree, whereof we neede not speake, to avoide expence of time. And yet notwithftanding, I am very loath, to conceale that which is affirmed by fo many; to wit, that as the Palme hath contrary effects to all other Trees : fo is there of them Palme-trees both Maile and Female, and the Fethat are both males are they which bring forth dates: male and fethe Masses onelie flourish, and when they happen to yeelde any fruite, they

are verie small, without good tast, and no profit is made of them. It is also to be observed, that in what place foeuer the Females grow, if the Malles be not neere voto them, they will not beare any fruit: but if it chance, that the Mafle-tree bee cut or disbranched the Female (like a Widdowe) thence-forward, will neuer yeelde any more fron.

But ceafing further speech of the Palme, we are heere to remember, that Crownes of in the Triumphes at Rome, the Triumphers vsed to bee Crowned with Laurell, and the Captaine that triumphed, carried a braunch thereof in his hand. So is the Triumphe described of Scipio Affricanus, by Appianus Alexandrinus, Plin. Lib. 6. and many others, whereof Plany yeeldeth fomereason, and faith. The Laurell was confectated to spolls or Phabus, because that on the Mount of Pernassius there grew great store of them ; And hee beleeueth, that for this reason, the Triumphers Crowned themselues with

Laurell. He delivereth another reason, concerning a wonderfull propertie in the periyot the Laurell, to wit; that (naturally) it is an enemy to Fire, and Thunder, and Lightening (be it neuer fo violent) hath not the power to touchit. Heereupon was it, that fo often as the Emperour Tiberius heard any Thunder, and beheld the lightning flathes; hee tooke a The Emperor Leafe of Laurell or Bayes; and laide Tiberius, it on his bare head, judging himfelfe (by that meanes) to beefree from the Thunder and Lightnings daunger. The Priefes of Divination in Rome; vied alfo to Crowne themselves with Laurel, Laurell and afterward burning them; would divine (by the noise it made) of that which was to enfire and therfore Claudian called this Tree, The Dininer of

things to come. Piny and Suctonius, in the beginning Pln 16.7. of the Emperour Gelbaes life, doe de- Galb, clare a matter very ftrange , faying; that Linia Drefilla (who afterward was Of Linia Dru named Augusta, hecause the wasinanried to Offanianus Augustus) going Augustus from Rome, to a place out of of the Cirtie, called Veietana; the chanced to fit downe under a Laurell Tree, and very foone after, an Ergle flying ouer

Wreatheson Laurel worne Triumphes.

The Dinina-

CUDAY.

The carryin

of Laurell

triumphes.

Another Hi-

ched by Sueto

Nero the laft

Emperor of the Cafars 1200

the Laurell.

her head in the Ayre(through the branches of the Bay-tree) did let fall into her lap, a Hen as white as Snow, that carried a branch of greene Bayes fast in her Bill . Liuia beeing fomewhat amazed thereat, caused the Henne to bee well kept, and of it came many more befide; wherefore, the name of the Graundge where thee kept the Henne, was euer after called Gallina. She commaunded also, that the braunch (found in the Hennes Bill) should be planted, which grew fo faire, and prospered in such plenty; as it was wonderfull to behold, what aboundance of Trees came of that one Plant. So that, from that time forward, both Octanianus and his Successours, (in a kinde of Custome, or superstitious Religion) when they triumphed: would cut braunches of those Baytrees, and beare them in their handes; but when the Triumphe was ended, they would plant them againe by those Trees, from whence they had beene cut, and they prospered as well as the other did. This History is (in this manner) related by these two credible Authors. Suetonius, whose authority is of great reputation, addeth yet another matter, whereat I doe not a little maruaile. He faith, that at fuch times as any Emperour dyed; the Plant of Laurell likewise withered, and all the branches cut from those boughs, which had bin planted at the time of his triumph. And when Nero died, who was the last of the Cafars Linage, all the Bay-trees dryed vp and withcred, that had grown cheerefully before, and came of that one braunch, which the Hen brought in her beake, and had bin planted by Lsuia. Beside, all the thrining store of the white Hennes brood, dyed, not one remaining, and in the Imperial Pallace fell fuch Lightnings and Thunder: as smote off the heads of the Emperours statues, crected there in their remembrance, and the Scepter which Augu-Stess Cafar helde in his hand, was also finitten downe to the ground. Continually they placed Crownes of Laurell vpon enery Cornish of the Emperours houses. Ouid, among many other things in his Meramorphosis, faith; That the The Romaines Romaines reputed the Laurell, to bee estimation of a very facred Tree, and would make no

vie therof, about things that were vile,

vicleane, or prophane: but euer accounted it as a figne of peace, and therforetearmed it the Peacefull Laurell. Pliny faith, that the Laurell hath a vertuous property against the Pestilence, & against all venemous Serpents. Ouid declareth, that the faire & chast Nimph Daphne, was converted into this Tree, and in regard thereof, it was confecta. ted to Phabus, who (among other vanities) was adored by the ancient Romain's as a God.

CHAP. VI.

Of the abhominable and most detested vice of Cruelty; How horrid it is to humane Nature : With many excellent examples depending on this Argument.

Mong all vicious pollutions, which are most repugnant, euen to common humanity, and make men to become abhominable; me thinks, that cruelty is the fupreame and Soueraign of all other. For, man is a most Noble Creature, made in the Image and fimilitude of God; yea, borne to exercise nothing but mildenesse: but being feruile to cruelty ; he becommeth a brute Beaft, terrible, furious, wicked, and an vtter enemy to God, who is the Prince

of clemency, and would not have one man to be bitter, or tyrrannous to another . Aristotle faith, that fierceneffe, cruelty, and inhumanity, belongeth only to wild and furious beafts. Seneca, in his fecond Book of Clemency, termeth 40 it Fellony against the Soule, and from thence concludeth; that it is opposite and contrary to the vertue of Clemency. Cruelty is the greatest enemy to lustice and reason, and is a more detestable fin then Pride or Anger . For it feemeth, that anger proceedeth from fom meth, that anger proceedeth from for conceined displeasure, to behold any euill offered to another : but in a cruell disposition, there is found far other maleuolent matter, because in smiles (and without any disdaine, but only in meere mallice) mercileffe torments are inflieted on men; yea, enen to the deprivation of life. Therfore it is capitall enemie to Iustice, which honorably defendeth, and will permit no man to receive any domage or harme; without fome fault my to Iulice.

Arlft, in Ethic

Sence in Lib de Plin, Lib. g. the lewes, at

Chap.6.

The cruelty of Herod at his death, against

our Saulour.

for his bloody

The cruelties of Abimelech, the Sonne of Gedem, vpon his owne Brethren, and the

committed, and yet taketh order alfo, that offenders that have milde and remperate correction. Seneca, in his Booke of manners, faith; If we vall them Hangmen, that whe no measure in the correction of vices: what then may wee tearmethem, that cruelly oppresse and murder Innocents?

Examples of cruell men are infinite. among whom was Hered, King of the Jewes, who raigned at the time, as our Lord & Saujor Iefus Christ was born. For, after the flaughter of fo many Innocents (purpofely performed in hope to have flaine him among them, that came into the world for our Redemption) he would yet make further shew of his cruelty, not only while he lived, but euen at the instant of his death. And because he well perceived his end approaching he called all the chiefe persons of 20

Jerulalem, who being come before him: he caused them to be seazed on, and fast lockt vp in a place neere to himfelfe, giuing frict charge to his Sifter that at the point of his Soules furrender, shee fhould fee them every one put to death; wherein the failed, in regard that God appointed the contrary. And what was his reason for his bloody intent? Onely this, as himfelfe confessed a little before his death. He knew very wel, that al the people of Ierufalem would be very iovful for his departure, because other matters had happened to the people, then they expected; and therefore (mooued onely by cruelty) to make this the faddest day that ever they endured he concluded this bloody flaughter and horrible murder. The cruckties of Abimelech, the Son to great Gedeon, were as wonderfull, for, that himselfe might enioy the Kingdome alone, he put to death threefcore of his owne Bretheren : one onely escaping, named Ionathas, who fled (by the will of God) that the Traytour might live in continual fuspition. Now,1 know not whether this cruelty, or the other following, may be counted the greatest, acted by the same man, againft the Siehimites, and in reuenge because they had expulsed him out of their Citty. But he getting entrance againe by power, and in the night time : flew all that were therein, Men, Women, Children, great and finall. And because fome were fled into the Temples ; hee caused them to bee round engirt with

wood, se putting fire thereto; the hear and smoak was so great, that there they were all smothered . Then destroying the Citty, he caused the ground to bee ploughed, and gaue commaund, that it should be fowen with Salt.

Of Cruelty.

Very great alto, was the truelty of the Of dulles Ke-Carthagenians, executed on Attitus Re- guillus, the tagulus, who being taken Prifoner by the Captaine they fent him (vpon his owne word) to gainst the the Romaines; to worke the meanes of Carthageniane. peace by the permuptation of Prifoners and Captines. But he not regarding his owne life, but preferring the honour of his Country before all other respects: returned againe to Carthage, where (for confernation of his faith)he willingly veilded himfelfe. They, in extreamity of cruelty, made him vp fast in a Tun of wood, which was fluck thick with there pointed Nailes of Iron, not affoording the least place, where any member of him might be free from torture: and fo, rowling him vp and down their streetes, did put him to death in that miferable manner.

All Tyrants have a custome to be cru- Of cruel Pistell by nature, but aboue all the reft, the land, the blooexecrable and bloody Tyrant Phalaris of Steily, carrieth the chiefest place of Builof Breste eminence. He flew infinite men, with- made by Feout any offence committed against him, and (if it were well confidered) he was much more cruell in affection, then in action. For he had a Bull of Braffe, which Perillas (a cunning workman) had made for him, wherein the party was enclosed, whom he would have to bee put to death. Then kindling an hot Fire round about it, the voyce of the poore pacient (fuffering this torture within) feemed to the Tirant, as if it had bin the bellowing of a true Bull. And this he did, to the end, that the cries of an humane voyce, in fuch extreamity, might not moone him to the least fot of compassion. Yet one thing is much commended in him, that Perillus, the inuen- rant, ter and maker of this terrible punnishment; was the first (by the Tirants com-

mand) that made proofe thereof-Nor can I well aduife my felfe, with what kinde of crucky, to compare that to enjoy his of Tullia, daughter to Tarquine, king of Kingdome. Kome, who caused her father to be flain, because she might inherit the kingdom; which himfelfe had willingly given her;

Ec 2

Inflice execu-

Tullia flew hir owne Father

Extraordina-

ry cruelty in a Daughter.

Thehorrible

huing men.

and Maxestin

The cruelty

Phereus.

cruelty of the

she would but have stayed a little longer. And that which is much more note worthy in her cruelty, was; that her father lying dead voon the ground, & she being mounted in his Charlot; would needes ride ouer the dead body. And wheras the Horses that drew the Chariot, being fearefull at fight of the dead body, retused to goe on ; as also the Coach man that guided them (moued with compassion of his murdred Maifter) would have turned them another way, to the end, that the Kinges body might not be difinembred : yet took the pleasure in her cruell affection, & what the dumb beafts (in pitty) denied to do; (he (in meere cruelty) would execute, compelling the Horses to obey hir wil, and trample vppon the body of her Fa-

The Stythians, a people very furious & valiant in warre, are likewise recorded, (by Historians) to be exceeding cruell: but among their other cruelties (which gaue much matter of maruaile) this one is especially remebred. They wold that their greatest beasts, as Horses & Buls, and fuch men as they would have to be tormented, must be bound fast within the opened bodies of the flaughtered Beafts, so that they could not possible flirre any way. There would they give them food to eate, that while they thus lined: the Fleth of the dead beaftes might putrific and flincke, and the Wormes issuing forth of the putrifa-Ction, thould feede on the living men,

and they dye in this cruell torment. We reade that Maximinus, Emperour of Rome, did as much, having deuised the most horrible cruelty, that euer entredinto the heart of Man: hee caused living men to bee fast bound to the bodies of dead men, and left them in that manner, till the noyfome finell

of the dead had kild the living.

Virgill affirmeth the like of Maxentius. As ftrange horrid cruelties doe we read of, done by Alexander Phereus, who commaunded living men to bee 50 buried, being bound face to face one against another. Others, he caused to beecloathed in the skinnes of Beares. and other wilde beafts, and then threw them forth into the open fields, among Wolves and Mastines, that they might beetorne in peeces and denoured of

them. I know not, whether the cruelty done The Hillory by Affiages (King of the Medes) to Arpalus, or Harpagus (one of the cheefest and dearest Friendes of his Kingdome) may be reported; without amazement and dreadfull aftonishment. This Affiages appointed a young Sonne of his owne to bee flaine (in regard of a troublesome dreame, concerning the faid Child) and gaue the charge of this bloody execution to Harpagus. But he, mooued to compassion, by the moanes and teares of the young Infant (which was afterward called Cyrus the Great) and franding in feare also of the Childs uation of Mother, the being daughter to Afliages: young cyrus, would not kill the Infant, but with all care and diligence, tooke order for the fafety and education therof. Long time after, Affiages was aduertifed, that the Child was not dead, which fmothering inwardly to himfelfe, with a countenance declaring no discontentment : he closely practifed, how he might repay the pitty of Harpagus, in breaking his commaund, and preferring the life of young Cyrus. Harpagus hauing a young Sonne, Astiages (by fecret meanes) got possession of him, and having invited The cruelty Harpagus to dine with him the next day. among the other viands ferued in at the Table sthe Father fed vpon the flesh of his owne Childe, with exceeding appetite and good liking, because the Kings cruelty was vnknowne to him. Altiages not fatisfied with the bloody deceipt, did another most cruell deede : for, among the fruites and delicates to finish this dinner, vpon severall plates and di-fines; the head, feet, and hands of the In-

fines; the nead, teet, and nands of the In-fant was fet vpon the table, and prefen-King. ted so apparantly before the father, that he could not avoyde the knowledge of his wofull dinner. Betweene the two Warlicke Cap- Contention

taines, Marius and Silla, being Capitall between Marius and Silla Enemies to each other, were fo many to exceedeth tyrannies exercifed; as it feemed, they elty. listned to nothing else, but contended which should exceede in the greatest Crueltie. Silla caused foure Legions of Souldiers to bee flaine in one day. Likewise the Pranestines, a people of Italy, that defired mercy of him, because they had received Marius into their fafetie and keeping; they could get

The crueltie of the Emperor Tiberius. throwne on

Chap. 6.

An incompa-

Violence don

The words of the Emperor

defeated. -iMain on roy to a fathin

Anablenina ble torment.

no release from his nyranny but were all generally flaine, and their budyes throwne into the fleider in feed Vultures and Rauens. The like son the other fide, dist Marine, that helmight not come a lot behindhis enemblineruelty of lose Could he World weld an equal

to the Emperour Tibernia, the Succelfour of Octanius? Heey after a feigned elemency at the beginning of his raigh, fuffered no day to paffethim, without fredding the blood of roop. Innocents. Moreouer, he denifed a kind of crubley, the like whereof (in mine opinion) was heuer heardiFor he prohibited (on pain of death) that no one should be so boild

as to wespe, or make anythew of forrow, forthem whom he had innocently put to death. Truely, this was a verie ftrange critelty, for I am of the minde, that there can be no greater paine, then that which bindereil an affliced hears, from calinghis ouer-weighty butthen of woe, by fighes and teares, the poolrest remedischar oppression can have. That which he afterward did to young Maides and Virgines, deferueth no repetion, but onely to his endlesse shame. For, before their death, he would have them violated and defloured by Ruffi- 30 ans and Hang-men, to the ende, that (with death) they might lofe their chiefest honour and palme of victory. And fuch was his delight in putting people to death, that when newes was brought him, that one (whom he had condenined to death) had flain himfelfe; he cryedout, faying. Ch how could this Corneliw (for fo was the condenined persons name) escape me? Hee (bould have vnerflood, Infe to torment patients in fuch fort before they dye, that death it felfe is the greatest grate Loan dot them. There then lined not any man, but he was amazed at his variety, of inventions, wherby he cormented and put mento death. Whe he was disposed to fee fore men die. he would have them first to drinke exeffinely, and when they were able to drinke no mores then frould their cunduit paffage for Vrine bee to friellie

bound, that the least droppe of Vrine

could not be voyded, and in this mer-

eileffe Agony must they be left, vntill

they dyed with extreamity of anguish.

Befide, onelie for his pleafure, men

must bee throwne head-long from an

high Rocke (named Capraria, neere Naples) into the Sea, and because he imagined, that (thus dying in the Water) was roo eafic a death . hee would have armed men to fland beneath, to recountrie bound bodies on their Pikes and Halbardes, fo to mangle and cut them pieces, before they were thrown into the Sea.

uen fuch a death as hee worthily deferwish to this ned; Caius Caligula succeeded in the People of Rome. Empire, and in the violent affection of his Prodecessours. He wished, that all the people in Rome had but one head; that (at one stroke) himselfe might imite it off. He thought himfelfe vnfortunate, & complained of the felicitie in his time; because that (while he gonerned) there was no Famine, vninerfall Pestilence, Deluges, Ruines, and inbucriions of Countries, for veter desolation of the whole World to. gether . A man was brought before him, that formerly had beene banifhed him, that formerly had beene banifhed him that he demainded; berial, twhat he did all the house he demainded; berial. what he did all the time of his bannishment? The man made answer(in meere adulation) that he praied to God, without intermission, for the death of Tiberius, & that his Maiesty might succeede in the Empire. Which when Califoula heard, he remembred himfelfe, howingny thousands of menhad bin banished, & thrust into exile by him, who (doubtlesse) might make the like Prayer for repealed and lim the forthwith gaue command, that | put to death, they should be all repealed, and everie man of them put to death. Such as (by him) were fentenced to die, hee would have the manner of their dying prolonged by little and litle, and inflict (at first) longed by lit but small woundes on them, that their the and sinte paine might last the longer. For he vied to fay to his Tormentours; Deale with them fo that they may feele them felues die. He observed also a saying of his predeceffor : People wish me il because they fear me. Afterthis Caligula, Nerofucceded Nerofucceffor

inwhom (if possible it might be) all the

others cruelties were enclosed, and all

elfe that could (by Men) be imagined.

For without any regard of fanctified

chinges, or persons (of like qualitie)pri-

uate or publike : hee caused the Citrie Èe 2

Banishedmen

in the gouernment, & in no leffe fierce- to caligula in nes and druckey hechuse he was a Mad tyranny and

nes and cruelty ; because he was a Man, cruelty.

aideosa ed

Rome fet on fire, and not to be quen-

> Nere murdered his owne Mother.

Nero exceeded all other in wickednes and tyrannic

> The cruelts of Dioclefian

against the Christians

dus, Maximus, and fuch others : but the

cruelties of Dioclesian against the Christi-

ank, and whereof Eufebius maketh decla-

ration in his Ecclefiaftical Hiftory, I can-

bad people now lining, may fee what the Christians endured in the Primitiue

Church, because they woulde not denie

be dragd thorow the streets, at the tailes

of Horses, and their bodies beeing thus

fore bruifed and broken, they were fent

backe to prison againe, where they had

Potshards, and such like vn-easie matter,

whereon they were fure to tafte no reft.

He would also cause the lofty branches

of trees, to be gently haled downe with-

out breaking; and then binding the limbs

of Christians vnto them, command their

fudden exaltation, that fo their bodyes

the name of Christ.

not well let passe, without some breese note, to the end, that Blasphemers and

This wicked Tyrant, caused men to

Christians dragd at Ho

> The limbes of bound to the

might be remaindrome in pieces. In the of Rome to bee fet on fire, with expresse Cityofidlexind in ho commanded ma prohibition not to quench it, or any man by to be diffmer which, the incares works, to make fafety of his owne goods. So the lippes handspaile feere con offy leaving fire continued seauen daies, and seauen mytheir eies/abut they mighthicholde nights, burning the Cittie; and hee beeach others wofull extremitien He taufed ing on a high Tower fome small distance fharpefplinters of wood tolbe made, and off, clapped his hands, and loyed to bethrust into their maked bodies, betweene hold this difinall spectacle, so far exceethe flesh and bones, and likewise under ding all humanity. He flew his owne the Nails of their Fingers and toes. Moh Mother, and put to death the Husbands ten Lead and Braffe, in extremity of the of Octania and Sabina, which Ladies he greatest heat, he would have throwne vpmarried, and soone after deprined them on their naked bodies, and into their Seof life also. Indeed this man attained to crets: making Women also to haue butthe verie height of all cruelty, for he was ning Irons bound to their Breafts, and all the first that persecuted the Christians: violence elfe that could be denifed. By al and in his time was the first & verie greawhich cruelties inflicted on their weake test persecution of the Church. And wel bodies, hee fent infinite constant soules did he declare, that hee surpassed all the to God, who made this Typant and his other in wickednesse, and was the Prince Tormenters, Instrumentes (thus) to adof all furious brutality: for he would ofuance his glorie, and his ferwants afflictiten repeate a Greeke Verse, to this effect. ons to shine more clearly. All these Cru-After my death , let heaven and earth conelties are written by faithfull: Authours found themselves togither. Or I could rafor , besides those recorded in Sacred ther with (quoth he) that fuch a generall Scripture, the rest are recited by Tofephus dissolution might happen in my daies. in his Antiquities of the Iewish Warres, For I had rather deriue mine examples by Suctonius Tranquillus, Plutarch, Titus from barbarous people, then anie touch Luius, Iustine, Valerius Maximus, Eufeof our precedent Romain Emperors. But bius, Panlus Orofius, Iulius Capitolinus, & the successours to these men, who imitaothers of no leffe authority. ted them in all vilenesse: barres my further proceeding, because they were such in tiranny, as no where else are they to CHAP. VII. be fellowed. And therefore I wil leaue the lives of Domitian, Vitellius, Commo-

How that oftentimes wicked Kings and Tirants are Gods Ministers, and yet neuertheleffe, they have continually bad and enill endes , in open viewe of the 4 44 MARCH

Vch as haue beene, & yet
Are fishiceted to wicked
Tyrants, lought to confidence that though they are ore
awed by fuch opprefiours, they are (notwith the state of the state

withstanding) the Ministers of God. In no other beds to repose on, but broken 50 many places of the Holy Scriptures, they are named the feruants of God, because (by them) God punisheth the wicked, & perfecteth them that are good. The Hæbrewes having beene governed by Indges and Priests, Samuel growne into old yeares, and finne and contempt of God encreasing among the people; Kings wer

the farge-Th. freange and Braffe of to throwne on Christians na pibility is ked bodies. Janu Budy

> med Gods Miniflers.

Efay. 13, 3.

Bot & co

Execb . 26, 7.

Totila called the Flayle of God.

> Tamberlaine wrath of Go

Wicked men

are faid to be Gods inftru-

Of wicked Kings and Tyrants.

Saul was a good King at his beginning

Chap. 7.

gitten yoro them, and the people shem. felues required the chaftifement which they worthily deferred sirtasking a Hing to be given them This Bing Mas Shale algood man at his beginning a bir offer! wanda cruelt Tyrant : foblinspoke from shorn their goodles and Alberting land although he was tainted with many wicked vices, yet we can bor deny, but that hee was called the Lords annihinted by mostare whereof, God kept them all in foare and terror.

But let vs fet afide, both him & diners others, who lined under the law of God Idolaters naand knewe him; and come to Idolaters, who likewise are named by the holy scrip tutes, Ministers of God; for fo faith the Lord by the mouth of Efay. Les the Cap-

taines enter by the Port of Bubylon, I bane commaunded my fanctified, and delled the 20 mightie to my wrath, to the end shat they may glorifie them felues in my glory . The Prophet spake these words on the behalfe of King Cyrus, and King Daring, Behold, how he called the Meder and Perfiant his fanctified, who (neuertheleffe) were nevther holy nor just, but only executioners of the will of God, for the putnishment of Babylen. In another place, by Exechiel he faith, I wil bring my Jeruana Nabucho-

dono for, and because he bath served me wel neer to Tyre I wil give him Egipt alfo, And yet for all this , these men were no Seruants of God, because they neither knew him, ferued him, nor beleened in him:neuertheleffe, they were executioners of his

luffice, and (in this understanding) were named his feruants.

Cruell Tetyla, King of the Goths, was named the threshing Flaile of God, and 40 justly reputed so to be . Great Tamberlaine, who lived in the time of our Grand fathers, a most powerfull and cruel Captain, fubduing and vanquithing numberles Prouinces; when he was demaunded wherefore he was fo cruell and inhumain to men by him vanquished , Answered in great Choller ; Thinke ye that I am any other then the wrath of God? Hence therfore may we wel conclude, that (very often) cruell and wicked men are Inftruments, whereby God punisheth the finfull, and appropueth the vertuous. And yet notwithstanding, he doth not thereby cleare thefe men from beeing wicked! ftill, and worthy of greater chaftifement, euen for these actions of theirs : Besaufe

(according to bur Saniours worden) in it mose flara that foundals forgeta be, but me be de themibushofe actifiun they comai Allo; ie is a cole most consindutiat. Godinduit leaneth them enpumitioned, a mobile othis world (beliede sterpensall diffictions quies pared to which the world to contend and that by most stratinge and critell deaths, abhverable to fuch askirdy have inflicted aske a redious relation, died ainsholde ofibalaris, the Tyrant of Sicilia died mi-

femblyarithe Brazen Bull, which hadde The death of beque the death of many of his fibrons, the Tyrans and make like Mufickethen to binhfalfs, as both fet taken delighe in heare. fform of theis A March doclareth, that Sylla was miferable eaten with there, and by no Thedeath of possible meanes could get any remedie. Silla. Beside, pliny tels vs, that he dide biting &

tearing his felh with his own teeth. Marius his Capitall enemie, and enerie way
as cruell, inhumaine, and wicked as hee,
Marius. was brought into fuchedeforate conditi on: this flying to hidehimfelfe, he was glad to wilde into the handes of Pantius The fletimes, and entreas hish to curoff his

head to russe which a bed descripted . The Emperour Tiberius, was murde red by his owne people, being finiotherd to death with pillowes : and yet Suetoniw affirmeth, that his death was wrought by poylon. Caligata having received to wounds by the hands of Cheroses Cornelius Sabinus, and many others fworne in The death of the same Conspiracy, there ended his

daies among them. Cruell Nero, before he died faw himfelfe deprined of his Empire, & judged a deadly enemy to Kown, by which means, beeing enforced to hide himfelfe in hollow Vaults, which were wholly infected with humane exgrements, he wold needs kill himfelfe. But wanting power to execute his owne will, and calling others to helpe him in the action ! three Villaines came and murdered him, mocking him extreamely all the while, which they delayed fo long as they could, for his greatertorment, according as Suctomus re-

porteth. Dioclesian likewife, having lefe the empire, died by poison, which he had secretly prepared for himselfe. Domitian also died, having received feuen woundes by Stephanus, Saturnius, Maximus , and otheiss Tullia, of whom we spake before, The death ? that yied her owne Father fo cruellie be-

323:

The death of the Emperor

The milerable death of

The death of

That speech

to man onely

The death of

ing banished from Rome; died poore and miserably. Assinges, Grand-Fadrer to Cjra, whom he would have mendered in his Infancie, by the aide of Harphen, and whomhe made to feed on the flesh of his owne Childe, was despoiled of his Kingdome by Crrus, and died wretched ly. Herodlikewife, and many other wicked Tyrants, of whom to Totale, would aske a tedious relation, died all the like infamous deaths. Let fuch them, as now do command & bear fivey in the world; Chimertieltie, and embrace clemencie, that they may the better beloued of their fubicats. For the verie greatest and furest safety of a King, consisteth in the amitie and affection of his people. in block

.... CHAP. VIII. edited

The strange fortune, which happened to the Sonne of Crafus, King of Lydia, and likewife to the Sonne of another King. in regard wheref it is discourfed whither speech bee athing natural to man or no : and whether man only feaketh, Senocreature elfer

Herodoths and Aulus Gellius

Crafus bereft

bodie A-

Enadotic writeth, a merue-lous accident happening for the fonne of Crafic, K. of Lifits; and in the fame mainter, is it reported by Aulus Gellius This Crafus was a Rich

King, and the fame that was vanquished by Gyrus; as many good Historiogra-phers haue declared. During the time that this King lined prosperously in his Countrey, he had by one of his Lawful Wines, a goodly Sonne, healthfull and compleate in all his parts and vinderstanding. The Child having attained conuenient yeares, to forme speech,& make vse thereof, was (notwithstanding) by the meanes of some vnknowne ftring, or other hinderance in the tongue, debarred from speaking for long time after. Yet grew he to good flature, and aptly dispofed to divers enterprizes, which caused him to bee much pittied, & this restraint of his speech, made euerie one to repute him dumbe, albeit hee had good knowledge, and heard verie perfectly;, which

is against the order of Nature, for neuer

was any quanknowne to bed Naturallie dumberburbiewas delle likewife, could It formied the orlefus was various

flied, and the City wherein hee was far ken by the enemies, fo that the forwarde Soldierspressed on tornel Pallace where in the King and his dumbe Sonne were hidden together: Butbeing found by a Soldier who had perfect knowledge of them both randlifting vp his fivord with full intent to kill Crofus "his Son was fo affrighted at the bloody proffer, and puffion had fuch dipowerful working in him that he strone for speech extraordinarily. And pressing the extreame Dominion, which the foule harh of the body, immediately the corporall Organes yeelded to the firong determination of the will, and breaking the strings that had fo long restrained his liberty of speech, he spake out alowd, faying, Oh do not kil him, confider that hee is King Crafus , and my father. When the Soldier heard these wordes, he with-held his stroke, and woulde not finite the King: fo he escaped death, and from thence-forward his fonne continua ed in perfect fpeaking, even as if hee had spoken all his life time till then . Surelie, this was a matter verie maruellous, and I cannot immagine, what naturall reason may be fufficiently given for it.

Ariflotle faith, that men are born commonly dumbe and deafe, because they are not formed with such disposition of these two apprehensions, neither in such perfection as is required . Afterwards; in further growing on, they dispose them felues, and striue first of all to begin with hearing; and after they have hearde (for many daies together) then they labour how to fpeake. Pliny faith alfo, hee that is borne and continueth deafe, is compeld likewise to bee dumbe . For, most certaine it is, that if a deafe man hearde, he would eafily learne to speake, and speech is impossible to be taught him that is en-

tirely deafe. Ariftotle alfo faieth : It may well happen, that a Childe may pronounce some words before ordinary time, and yet not- Nat. Lib. 2, withstanding, he will begin to lose those words againe, vntill fuch time as Natures allowed houre (for Infants to speake) be come, and when (by her appointment) they commonly vie to fpeake. To this purpose, Pliny speaketh of this sonne to King Crafus (whose History we have in plink tib.s.

The strange extasy of a fon, seeing his Father readic to be flaine.

> each Fraid z stanki The ffraung E . : 1 4 9 2 wordes of a yong Infant.

A wonderfull recouerie of ipeech.

The Allegation of Arithmia

The faying o

The opinion of astrologers

Whither fpeech be naturall to man,

naturall ap-

Plin.Lib.6.

briefe related) and faith; That at the age of fine moneths, hee pronounced fome words, which were reputed as Prognoflicaters of his Fathers ruine : and foit feemed, that fuch effect proceeded from that fore-telling, for he neuer spake afterwardes, vntill the memorable accident which we have already declared. I call to minde another aduenture in

Another Hifloric of the like nature.

Chap.8.

the like case, recited by Haliben Ragel, in his Indiciare, wher he speaketh, as an eiewitnesse; and being present in a Kinges Court, who had a Son borne, that within foure and twenty hours after his birth, began to speake perfectly, and stirred his hands, whereat al the Beholders maruelled not a little, for with a ftrong voice, he delinered these words; I am borne whappily, because I come to fore-tel that the King my Father (hal loofe his Scepter, & that his Kingdome must be destroyed . At the ending of which words, the Childes life ended also. This accident (vndoubtedly) was verie dreadfull; and yet it feemeth to mee, rather as an Aduertisement sent from God, then any wonderfull woorke of Nature. Aftrologers do tell vs. that the Child whose birth shal happen when Mercury is Lord of the Ascendent and Orientall; hee will speake much sooner then anie other, who speake not, but according vnto the ordinary course of Na-

I remember likewise another matter, conformable to the case now in hand, to wit; that some haue helde opinion, That fpeech is not a thing naturall to man, but is learned and gotten, as other Artes and Sciences are. Others hold directly, that our speaking Naturally, is not a matter proper and peculiar to man only. The first, who are of the minde, that speech is not a thing naturall, do labour to proone it, in faying: That that strength, which is naturally conucnient to one kind, should be, and is as meet to all of the fame kind. As wee may perceine by barking in all Dogges, by Lowing or bellowing in all Bulles, Oxen, &c. and fo (in like case) to al other kinds of Beafts, And yet not with Randing, wee behold in men, that fome speake in one manner, and others quite contrary, so that they do not understand themselves naturally; and therefore it feemeth, that speech proceedeth rather from Art, then Nature.

Againe, according to Pliny, there are

fome people that speake not all, but their speaking appeareth to be rather a kinde or forme of bellowing, then anie fetled fpeech, which never could so happen, if all men did speake by the guist of nature, for, if it were fo, then all men wold speak in one and the fame manner.

Now, as concerning the other opinion, in such as fay, that speech is not perticularly proper to man, they ground their judgement on the 'A ords of Lanctantius Firmianus, who tels vs : That wee haue some parts, which seeme to vs, proper to men onely; and yet nevertheleffe, the verie same are found to bee in other Creatures; as dinerlitic of voice in Birds, by the fenerall tunes wee heere difcerne | Birds do nain one another; whereby we plainly per- turaly vnderceiue, that they do vnderstad each other, fand one anfo that it can bee no otherwife, but as a meere forme of Language among thein. Moreouer, they maintaine their argument uppon this ground, in that manie Parrats, Pies, Popingayes, and fuch like Birds, are heard to fpeake plainly.

But the truth of this matter is (albeit Speech, the their opinions haue fome apparance of only to man, veritie) that speech is the guift of GOD only to man, not that he purchaseth it by Art: but is proper and peculiar to him, and not to any other creature. True it is that other Creatures have voice, and yet notwithstanding, they have no Speech: and fuch is the opinion of Quintilian, & Quintillian. likewise of Aristotle.

In like manner, wee have good aunfweres to these contraty reasons : As, to the first Argument we may well answere, Answeres to That a thing may be Natural vniuerfally, but in perticuler, it may be exercised according to the will. It is naturallie enill done, and he deserueth punishment for it, that killeth another man, or robbeth him of any of his goodes; and yet neuertheleffe, to inflict one kind of correction or other (vpon him) for the offence, proccedeth from the will of the Judge. Therfore, although that men do speake divers tongues, yet is it not to bee faid, that this their speaking commeth from Nature. And so much the stronger is the Argument, that fuch divertitie and confusion of tongues, was for the punnithment of their pride, that laboured to builde the Tower of Babe! : for, as we have alreadie faid, there was then but one language in the world, which could be faid to be na-

Speech is not

are also deafe

The language of the Troglodytes.

Of Birds that

ipeake,a Par-

rat that could

speake all the Creed.

are faid not to speake at all, it is reputed, that this infirmity proceedeth, by reason that their tongue is ouermuch barbarous and imperfect, and they feele nothing, as it were, of humanity; and yet notwithstanding, it is a kind of Language among them, whereby they feeme to understand one another. And whereas it is further faid, that there be divers Birds that fpeak, as the Parrat, whereof Lodonicus Calius maketh mention, that belonged to Cardinall A feanus, which Parrat (in his prefence) pronounced (word by worde) all the Creed in Latine, without fayling in any one fillable: We may lawfully aunfwere, that this is no speaking, for they knowe not what they fay; but it is a cervolle; but a true worde is conceyned in the foule, before it is pronounced, whereof Birdes haue no fuch Capaci-

The diversity of Voyces amongest all creatures.

eth, that wee knowe all creatures by the divertitie of their Voices, that they vnderstand each other, and call one another amongst themselves wee may not heereby inferre, that such a Voyce is a word formed. For, as Aristotle faith, the Voyce loofeth it felfe, and so can wee, (without any formed word) fignifie and giue to be vinderstoode, either ioy or difcontent, and all vniuerfall passions: as presseth it selfe in laughter, & with pleafure, or by fighes and laments, in deepe

forrow and anguish.

among beafts

Man onely hath the be-nefit of spea-

And as for the Troglodites, who are taine custom taught them for many daies together, whereby to forme fuch a

And to that Argument, which implywee see by the Voice, when it thus ex-

And for the respect of brute beastes, that have difference either in their fong or voice, and may be knowne when they are displeased or contented : and the like in Birds, either by motion of their winges, loftie flying, or some such other sign according to the effect : these are matters not incident to the case in question. For to speake and otter wordes, whereby may perticularly be expressed, profit, necessitie, harme, Mallice, Instice, Iniuflice, honestie, goodnesse, and whereby also passed actions are delivered, and forfight of them to come, by folide reasons and words, in declaring themselues, and other things are done, answerable to the benefit enfuing by speech: this is a blesfing bestowed onely vpon man, even as Hereditarie to him by Nature, & whereof no other Creature whatfoeuer, can any way be faide to ftand in neede, or is so meete to merrite so gracious a bene-

CHAP. IX.

Of a Woman that was married manie times And of a Manthas had manie Wines, and hapned at length to ioyne in mariage with that woman.



Haue many times noted that the honor of Widdowes of mon and publicke taxation, if they had beene married, the married three or foure

times. Now, albeit it feemeth exteriourly, that men had good reason for this detection; yer notwithstanding, no man ought to judge of another bodies fecret

Conscience.

Marriage, was first instituted in Para-dise, and is allowed by the Church to be Sacred and Lawful; in which respect no man should or ought vse any reprehension against it. And yet wee must not denie, but that a Chast life, without subiection to marriage, is the more perfect e- A chaft life state, and is to bee elected as the better. I most comen Neuerthelesse, the bounty of heauen diminisheth no iot of eithers goodnes; but both estates are godly and commenda-ble. If then a Widdow do marie, the offendeth not God there n; and besides, as concerning the World, it may very well be answered, that it is the smallest faulte the can commit. And because I would no way be mistaken by the Reader, I will produce (vnto this purpole) what I have read concerning a Widdow, and it is recorded by Saint Hierome: of whose Authoritie (I thinke) no one will make scruple, in regard of his Religion and great holinesse.

He faith, that in the time of Damafus, A Widdowin he both law and knew in Rome a woman, Rome that had that had lawfully beene married to two bin maried to and twenty feuerall men, and remaining a Widdowe, after the decease of the two and twentith Husbande: there was a man came thither, that likewise hadde

Chap.10.

Of Sudden Conceit.

ried to twen-

bin married to twenty Wines; and was then a Widdower of the last, and both of them at freedome and libertie; which being understood to either, no difference in their degrees, but both of equal mean condition : they contracted Marriage together, which was a thing verie notable; and raised a generall defire in the people of Kome, to fee which of this strange maried couple frould first die.

It fortuned that the Woman first deceased, to whose obsequies, al the Roman people mainly flocked, to congratulate the Husbands happineffe, as beeing victorious in no fimple Conquest: fetting a Crowne of Lawrell vpon his heade, and placing him first in following the bodye of his Wife, bearing a branch of Palme in his hand, in figne of his victorie, and numberleffe people accompanying him 20 in his triumph.

Another Hiflory repor-

men compa-ted together.

A Victoric of no mean mo-

ment.

The fame holy Father, recounteth another matter very notable, which he fetteth downe for truth, because it was deliuered to him by fuch as deferued credit: The case concerneth a woman also, who to shewe her selfe some-what charitable. tooke a young Boy from verie poore parents, that had no releef but fro the Hofpitall, intending to nourish the childe as 30 if it were hir owne, feeding it at hir owne Table, and nightly lodging it in her bed. When the child had attained to x. yeares of age, the woman grew to be fo incontinent, that the woulds needes have carhall knowledge of the Ladde, and that in fuch manner, as at the terme of fixe moof conceiving neths, the became quicke with Childe by him contrary to the rule and order of na ture, which neuer doth permit any fuch 46 conception at ten yeares of age . But, it rather feemeth that this happened by the permission of God, to the end, that such turpitude and dishonesty in a Woman. (vailed under prefence of charity) (hould be apparantly discourred to the worlde. So that, although the other woman had married three and twenty feuerall times. yet are not we to judge or conceite, that therein the finned. For, I am perfiva- 50 ded, that in being fo oftentimes fawfully married, in publicke confirmation of the Church, and without any insteause of contradiction: the did much better then this other luftfull lewd Woman in committing fuch a foule and inordinat finne; for which, no colour or excuse can anie

way be made: whereas, on the other fide the faying of bleffed Saint Paule Standeth in force : That it is bester to marrie then to

CHAP.X.

The frange fortune which happened to two Princes of Callile.

HE power of fodain conceite, or immediate appre-hension of some inward diflike, is knowne to bee of powerful on the life of ma fuch strong impressio; that

it is able to be the death of man or Woman, and vnto this purpose tendeth our present discourse. Don Alphonso, deauenth of that name, who was Father to Don Peter, having finished his raigne in Caftile, left his Sonne Don Peter, a verie young King . In which regard, the kingdome was gouerned by two Princes of the Countrey (who were Vnickles to the King, the one named Don Reter, and the cles to the other Don Iohn) and likewife by Queene youg King. Mary, that was his Grand-mother.

In the yeare one thousand three hund dred and fixteen, these two Princes, who were Vnkle and Nephew, liquing manie times(like valiant and worthy men)made warre vppon the Moores, for exaltation of the Christian Faith, and returned with famous Victories, as well approued and vindauntable Captaines: concluded togither to make Warre on the kingdome of Granado, with purposed spoyles & dammages on the Countreves belonging to the Moores; having joyned with the Alcantaro and Galacrana, Great Maisters of Saint lames in Galicia, and the Arch-byshop of Toledo.

The businesse being growne to full warremade effect, and great numbers both of horse kingdome of and foot affembled, they began to inuade Granada athe Country, and fped fowell in the aduenture: that (with very faccessefull fortune) they came before Granado, where they fought valiantly, and furprized di-uers Castels, among which, was that na-

med Eliora. When fitting time for retirement cam. they returned backe againe by the Chriflians Countrey, and marching in good

order.

Don Peter, and tharply affalted by the Moores, in their returning backe.

Don Peters fol-

fully danted.

multitude of Moores, that had affembled themselues fro all parts, and their affault was fo furious, as he was constrained to fend to Don Peter, to leave his leading, & to come to his assistance in the Arriere. Don Peter verie gladly yeelded thereto, and marching back with admirable courage: founde his men to bee fo daunted and weakened with difmay, as by no meanes possible, could he eause them to returne with him . By meanes whereof, he entered into fuch a fudden alteration and conceined displeasure, that albeit he contended woorthily to effay a fresh march vppon the enemie, inciting both his horse and foot thereto, and by no reathem become obedient. But all prouing

The ftrange death of Don

The violent apprehension in Prince Iohn phewes death

order; Don Peter was in the Vant-garde, and the Lord Don Tohn in the Rereward, wher he was fuddenly charged by a huge fon could preuaile; hee drew foorth his fourd, and fmote fome, thereby to terrifie the rest, and that terror might make in vaine, his trouble in minde was fo excessine, that perceiving he could no way helpe his Vnkle, he was no longer able to manage his sworde, but speech presently forfooke him, & understanding likewife, fo that he fell downe from his horse dead to the ground, without either stirring or 30 fpeaking one word. This wofull accident, was (by some)

too speedily reported vnto Prince Ichn, who fought manfully against the Moors, and had (in a manner) quite vanquished them. When he understood the occasion of his Nephews fudden death; as fuddenly likewise entred he into an extream passion, and gaue outward testimonie of fuch a violent inward alteration, that he fell also from his horse, losing the stregth and vigor of all his members, and neuer after could vtter one word, fo that he was taken vp by his people, and kept (in that ftrange maner) from midday to the Eucning . In which time, the Moores being ignorant of these seuerall mishaps, were put to flight by the Christians who marching onward in forme of battaile, at the instant, as the body of Don Peter was laid vppon an horse, Prince John gaue vp his latest gaspe. These accidents were veric remarkeable, and the like very feldome heard of: whereby plainely appeareth, that fudden conceit may cause the death of a man.

CHAP. XI.

The strange and variable complexions of two Phylosophers: the one of them weeping, and the other laughing, at the government & condition of the world.



N the recitall made by Dio-genes Laertius, concerning the lines & diuerfity of Phi-lofshers: he speaketh perticulerly of two; the one be-

ing named Heraclitus, and the other Democritus, because each of them was in Nature and Complexion verie strange. Heraclitus observed (as a common Cuftome) that alwayes as hee walked along the freetes and publicke passages, hee Disposition of would weepe and shedde abundance of Heraclius. teares, in regard of the compassion hee had on humaine Nature. For, hee was abfolutely perswaded, that all our life time, confisted in nothing but miserie,& that all the trauailes, labours, and endea-

uers of men, feemed worthy both of pit-

tie and compassion, both in their paines

and afflictions, as also for the fins by the

daily committed. This is much better, and more amply described, in a letter sent

by this Phylosopher to King Darius, ac-

All men that walke upon the earth, are ve-

rie farre off from Iuffice : for they ferue A-

uarice and Vaine-glory, with too much af-

fection and loffe of time. As for my felfe,

Ineuer thought any enill thing ; and to the

end that I might shunne the paine, which I

feele by beholding and knowing these thin-

ges: I have evermore beene desirous, that I

might containe my felfe in some fuch place,

where I might never looke on men, because

I can sufficiently content my felfe with that

which is onely necessary for me. We read of this Philosopher, that (in all things) he

was conformable to this perswasion. For

fubstance. All the while he was yong,

he faid he knew nothing; and when hee

attained to greater growth, he faide, hee knew all things, and that nothing els had

cording as our fore-named Diogenes La- The Letter errius reporteth, and in thefe very words. Heraelius to

Thegreat natural thinnointing.

was comormanic to this pertivation. For lie lined the very greatest part of his time in follitude, and in the fields, contenting thimselfe with hearbs and food of slender this lines.

Chap.11. Of divers qualities in Men.

beene his enstructer, but contemplation

The Complexion of Democritus was no leffe strange then this mans . For, although he would leave his lodging, and frequent mens companies, yet would he laugh immeasurably at al the actions and behauiours of men, tearming the life of man to bee vanity and folly, and that all appetites and defires, were foolish, true 10 fubicets to fuch Mafters, and meere matter of laughter. And such was the immagination of this Phylosopher, that it was only enough for him, to go laughing along the streets, as the other went weeping: and confidering the paines and tranails of men, it feemeth that ech of them had reason sufficient to do as they did. Seneca in his Booke of the Tranquility

of life, speaketh of these two Philoso-

Sence. in lib. di

The words

an 109 years

The strange Nature of De

phers, approuing rather the Opinion of laughing Democratus, and aduiting to immitate his merrie humour, rather then that of weeping Heraclitus. And it apcareth, that Invenal was of the fame mind, when speaking of them both, hee sayeth, That he was amazed, whence and how Heraclitus could receive fo great quantitie of moisture, as satisfied his liberall expence of feares. And to speake truly of both these follies (for I hold these two complexions to be no otherwise) that of Democritus is allowed for the better, because wee read that he was a man taking no diflike at any thing whatfocuer, and lived an 100 yeares. I find of him, that he yied verie often to feed on Hony, and beeing on a time, demanded whither it were good to preferue the health of man, or no, he answered; These are only fittest for mans Health, Hony taken inwardly, and Oyle outwardle, giving thereby to vnderstand, that Hony was good for feeding, and Oyle for an-

Laertius reporteth many thinges of ludgement of him, whereby is cuidently differend how great his knowledge was in naturall thinges He faith, that one day among others, a meffe of milke was brought him, & after he had looked on the Milke, he faide; 50 This Milke is of a Goat that hath had young ones of this is the first time of bey Kidding; and indeed it was fo. Another time, hee met a yong maid vpon the way, and with doing reverence to hir, he faid; God bleffe ye Maid. Meeting her againe on the next day following, he made no reuerence to

hir, but faid: Farewell Woman. Such as had heard thefe feueral falutations, greatly meruailed thereat, and gathered there by, that thee had companied that Night with a man, which Democritus knewe to be true, onely by the Womans countenance. Tertullian likewife telleth vs., that this Democritus did put out both his cies, because he would not bee tempted with carnall concupieences, which ordinarily are occasioned by the fight of weomen. But An in Gellins Taith, that he did it only the horarres and in a second to the concession of the better to addict himselse to the contemplation of natural thinges, for which this Phylosopher was very highly commended by the learned.

Cicero writeth the like of him, fo doth

Cicero writeth the fire of final transfer and many others. Pliny reported in Tuculan, Plin, Lib. 22. divers places, that hee was a great Aftrologer, and a Magitian, and that to learne al the Arts and practife them among the skilfull; he trauailed through all Afia; A. rabia, Egypt, and many other Provinces . And Solimus maketh mention of his Difputations against Magitians. Concerning mine owne opinion of this man; I will conclude further speech of him with a matter meruailous, and not to be omitted, to wit; that by the means of naturall light only, he fought for and beleeud the immortality of the foule, and the refur-

rection of all the dead, in which contem- Nature only. plation, and many other of like quality, he fpent the length of life before remembe-

But as for Heraclities, by his wretched Complexion, and feeding on nothing indgement but hearbs, and fuch like Viands, which concerning Heraclitus. continually kept him hungrie: Hee dyed confumingly, and full of Gowtineffe, being wrapt in an Oxe-hide, wherein hee

had put himselfe, in hope to bee cured . And some do say, that being thus hidden in an Oxe-hide, hee was denoured by Dogges, that knew him not to be a man, Neuertheleffe, he wrote Books of great Learning, but so difficult and obscure, as few attained truly to vnderstande them: which is a fault wherein many great perfons have finned, only thorow prefumption and arrogancy.

> Ff CHAP.

a of Ale

Cicero lib. 5. de

À rare vnder-

Extreamitie

in both kinds

Variety of hu-

Concerning

the Citty of Constantinople

Of Sampson

maine acci-

dents.

CHAP. XII.

Of some perticuler notable occasions, which have happened in one and the same maner, and rather in one place more then in another.



Hose things whereof wee haue spoken in our precedent Chapter, may vvell cause great meruaile in the consideration of men,

whose Conditions and Opinions haue beene so extreamely estraunged from one another; that the verie fame thing, which hath made one man to weepe inceffantly, hath caused another to Laugh without any intermission. It is likewife amatter well woorthy of Contemplation, to obserue, that in such rarietie of humaine occasions: and amongest so many of divers difference, fom are found that do feeme as if they were meerly constrained, and that it ought vppon necessi- 30 ty, that (in some places) aduentures shold perticulerly happen, as we shall discerne

by our ensuing discourse. First of all, it was a matter very admirable (as wee haue alreadie faide) concerning the Cittie of Constantinople, to witte; That the first Emperour which builded it, and made his abiding there, should bee named Constantine, and his Mother Helens. In like manner after-warde, that the last Emperor there raigning, and during whose time the Cittie was loft, shoulde bee called Constantine, and his Mother also named Hele-

It deserueth likewise due consideration, that there should be two such most Valiaunt men, as were Herenles & Samp-(on, and that both of them began their great deedes of Armes, with each mans 50 encountering of a Lyon, and both of them deceyned and vindoone by Weomen, euen as if the one were obliged to the others Fortune. It is yet a matter more notable, that in Arabia, fur-named Happie, Cham the Sonne of Noah, and his Successours, should forfake the A-

doration of the true GOD, to vndergo the Idolatrie of Men. And that in the fame Province also, after so great and long revolutions of yeares, shoulde bee bred and borne Mahomet, the perfecuter of the true Faith and Doctrine given by our Saujour Iesus Christ, God and

The Cittie of Carthage, a most po- Of the Cittie werfull Common-Wealth, had fo ma- of Carthage. nie seuerall forces in Armes, that no King or Captaine could refift against it. And yet notwithstanding, it was two seuerall times vanquished by two Romaine Captaines, both bearing one name, and called Scipios; fo that it feemed, in that verie name confisted the power of Con-

It is likewise verie remarkeable, in the Historie of the Byshops of Rome, of the Popes that all the Popes which bare the name of the Alexander, were all Anti-popes, and that (in their times) grew the Scismes in the Church, as in the time of Alexander the fecond, third, fift, fixt, &c. Another meruailous matter was noted in Spaine, that Of the King commonly all the Kings which were na- of Spaine. med Ferdinands or Alphonfus, were very good and excellent Kinges . Cafar and Pompey were two Captains of Rome, very Of Cafar and famous and most puisant, great enemies Pompey. and competitors one against another:yet it happened, that they both died on their very Birth-dayes, yea violent kindes of very Birth-dayes, yea violent kindes of death, and by weapons. As worthy war-mous warring death, and by weapons. Its words, was increased in their forms likewife were Hannibal of Carthage, King Phillip, Father to Alexander, King unes. Antigonus, Father to Demetrius, Sertorius the Romaine, Viriatus the Spaniard, and in our time, Fredericke Duke of Vrbine, and divers others befide, refembling one another in behauiour and Regiment of Warre; but in one thing, they were all truly equal, to wit, they halted euery one vpon one and the fame leg, and each man loft his left eye by misfortune. The Emperour Charles the fift, was borne on the Of charles the day of S. Mathias the Apostle, on which fift Emperor day also (in course of his life) was King Fraunces taken by him in battaile, and the victory likewise woonne at Biccoque: Hee was also elected and Crowned Em-

great Fortunes befell him still vpon that Yet I cannot choose but reproue such men, as in their woorkes and especiall

perour on the same day, and many other

on of perticular dayes, for vindertaking of our affaires

good or cuill

Secret caufe

large.

are onely knowne to

Chap.13.

Of Men resembling one another. actions, do obserue perticuler dayes and names, wherein to beginne or undertake their purposed businesse: neuerthelesse, feeing that fuch things have formerly bin confidered and read of I make the leffe account of their humour. It hatly beene noted, that not onely the French but form others Nations belide, do holde diverse dayes to be vnfortunate, and that no refpect in the world whatfoeuer, can caufe 10 them then to vndertake any fight or com bate, because vpon those daies) commonly fome great mis-fortunes haue befalne them . And yet they esteeme some other dayes, to have a kinde of happineffe attending on them, because that on them no loffe or euill mischaunce hath happened to them. All these things may wel vrge amazement, in regard that the caufesare vnknowne to vs, albeit neuer fo good a rule or reason may therto induce vs : firch fecrets are only known to God, and such hath beene, and is his appointment. Of Accidents that have hapned, and actions of notable fucceffe (enfining by one and the fame meanes) both vnto

CHAP.XIII.

the Romaines and Gracians, Plusarch hath

Written a Treatife called his Paralelle,

wherein hee alledgeth manie excellent examples, which the curious Searchers

of Nouelties, may there reade more at

That divers men have beene foreally alike, both in hape and countenaunce, that they have many times taken one for an- 40

À wonderfull feeret in Na-

Ccasion doth heere freelie offer it felfe, to make mention of fome perticuler perfons, that haue (in figure & gesture) beene alike and

femblable each to other. And indeed, it is one of the greatest secrets and wonders in Nature, to behold fuch an infinit number of men, the varietie of their geflures, and all having one kind of forme: ye tnotwithstanding, it seemeth a matter of much more meruaile, when (in

fuch a variable multitude) fearfly but two men can be culd ointhly do the thing the men can be culd ointhly do the which be in all parts, each politics. Of which two femeral matters, were will relate the causes arent - Jaffer, we have in the political causes arent - Jaffer, we have in the politics of the causes arent of the causes are the causes a and perfect refemblance varo apparant

Inggenent.

First of all then, we will space of the same of the sa of antiochus King of sgria, being (according to Pliny and Solinus) but of preance condition, albeit Valence Maximus af firmeth, that hee was Kinfman ynto the King and refembled him fo trucke that the Queen (having murther de pricebus) concealed her Wicked Act by the meanes of this arthenius, whom the had acquainted with hir purpole dinerle dayes before . Arthemius was laide in the Kings bed, as if he had been the Queens fickly Husband, for for fine then salled him, and fo was he reputed to bee being vilited by all the Princes of the kingdon euen as if it had beene the King himfelfg. Thus vnder frew and supposition of the King, hee maden, Whill and named (as heire to the Kingdon) flucts an one as the Queene, had determined to wherein hee was obeyed, for eueric one tooke him to be the true King indeed, which was a verice fraunge and admirable deceipt. But (to this purpose the adventure of Queen Semiramis is much more notorious, of whom to many commendable Authors hane Written memorable actions. 14fline, and diners others fay, that hir fonne Ninus refembled her fo perfectly both in speech, gesture, and disposition of body, that after the death of the King her hufband, the cloathed her felfe in the habite of a man, and reprefenting the person of her Some, held and governed the king-dome for the space of forty yeares, with absolute beleefe generally, that shee was her some Ninus, whom the so neere refembled, that in this maner was the State abused. In the time of pompey, there were two men in Rome, the one named Biblius, Publicus, that and the other Publicius, who wer both fo were like to like to Pompey, as if there had bin no other difference, then in the plain figure, it was very difficult(as Plin) reporteth) to know which of them was Pompey or no, and euery man supposed, that this resemblance

cam from the father to the fon by friccef-

fion. In the time of Pompeyes father, there

Solonya in Po-

The History

the anni--88° N . 10' N . 1

Of the great according to

drage tions,

Of Cham and

Chap.13.

Of Francis

Sforza Duke of Millains.

Of Menogenes that refembled Pompeyer father.

There was one li ewife, named Tu-

Two infant Slaues brogh to Rome, and bought of The ranspus By Marke Antho

ys. Mari

The cunning antiwere of 2 krannus.

> . ang midi or Ashra

A plefant accident happening to the Emperour Offanus.

was in Rome a Cooke, called Menogenes, that to Hinely refembled him, as (for that very cause) the people imposed the name of the one vpon the other; and this is affured for tructh, both by Pliny and Soli-

rangius, that brought two Infant Slaues to Rome, of equality in age, and they both (in geffure and all other thinges) were of fuch refemblaunce, that people went to fee them as a matter of merciell. Turannus alfo faide, That they were Twin-brethren by birth, but it was falle; for the one was of Ma, and the other of Allemaigne . In regard of their fo necre likeneffe to each other, Marke Anthonie, Cozen vnto the great Ottains, bought them : But after hee had intelligence of the Deceite, and that they were not Naturall borne- 20 Brethren hee fent for the feller of them, and tolde him, that hee must restore the mone backe (which was a great fumme) beerafe hee had beguiled him, in making him beloeue, that the Slaues were Twin borne Brethren. But Turannius With cumingly anoyded repayment of the Money; in replying, that (in this refrectiy hee ought to have a farre greater furnitie paide him 3 confidering, that it 30 was a matter of more merualle, that the two Infants (being borne in divers Nations) shoulde have such a perfect resemblance, as if they had beene borne vpon one felfe-fame day, and of one Mother . Which defence, was well accepted by Marke Anthony, the reason appearing to be found and good, and therfore he held himselfe well contented.

Concerning this case of so meere re- 40 femblance, a matter of pretty merriment happened vinto the Emperour Octavius. There chanced a young Ladde to come and dwell in Rome, who had the feature of his face and bodie; so absolute in likenesse vnto the Emperour Octavius, that no man in some could difcerne anie difference. This being brought vnto the Emperours knowledge, hee foorthwith fent for the youth, and then the portrait 50 of each other was more apparantly difcouered . Which when the Emperour hadde well noted, hee being a man verie affable, pleafantly disposed, and mooued (with the least occasion) to mirth, he faide to the young man, Tell me Brother, did thy Mother vee at anie time to come to

Rome? As inferring thereby, that then his Father might have knowledge of hir. The youth perceiuing the facetious and pleafant humour of the Emperour, replyed to him in as merrie a Disposition, made to the with these Wordes: My LORDE, con- Emperour. cerning my Mother, thee never came onto Rome, but my Father reforted hither many times.

Pliny writeth of a man, named Surras, Pro-Confull to Sylla, and borne in Proconfull, Sicily, to whom, there was a Fifterman and a Fifterof verie neere likenesse, both in speeche and behauiour, for they both stammered in equall manner, and fashioned all their actions in one forme: fo that when they were cloathed alike, it was impossible to make any distinction, neither could anie man dire tly fay, this is the Pro-confull, and this the Fitherman; which was no meane meruell to the people. And yet Albertus Magnus, in his booke of beafts, declareth a much stranger matter. Hec faith, that he both knewe and behelde in Allemaigne, two Infant Twinnes, who resembled each other so truly, that when Of two infant they were seperated assunder, the one twinnes in Allemaigne, could not bee discerned from the other. Moreouer, beside their iesture and actions, they had fuch a conformitie in all things els, as the one could not live without the other. So that when they were fometimes for triall fundered, they indured verie straunge Agonies. They spake both alike in founde of voice, and when the one was ficke, fo was the other like wife: whereby plainly appeard that they were two bodies formed of one Nature and complexion. For my judgement in The Authors this case, I say, that this likenes must needs oution conproceed, that they were both begotten in Twinnes. one instant, of one and the same matter. ftrongly difposed: by reason whereof, all parts were equally and perfectly conditioned. S. Augustine, in his Booke of the Cittie of GOD, reporteth the verie like Story. And although thefe thinges doth feeme verie maruellous, yet may we not fcornfully feeke to difcredite them, in regard of Natures powerfull working, and vindoubted Authority of fuch as confirm them. For we could fpeake of matters more lately happening, yea, euen in our times; as of the Lord Count John Giron, who fo abfolutely refembled his brother, happening in later dayes. the Great Maister of Calatrana, that was counte lone

flaine by the Moores, that by their owne

A witty and

Albert, Magin Lib, Animal

Concerning gesture and

Like accidents

rents and housholde servants, they were equally taken the one for the other. I remember that I have read in the Historic of the Dukes of Millaine, that Fraunces Sforza (of whom somwhat hath bin saide already) had among his warlicke troops, a Gentleman belonging to the company of his Light-horse-men, that was of such perfect refemblance vnto the Duke himfelfe; as he was verie often both taken for him, and called by the name of Duke. I could alledge many other examples, which I am forced to forbeare, because I would not willingly offend anie Reader: wherefore, I will speake of the occasion of fuch usere refemblance wherof I find three principall, that (according to their degre es and places) shall speak for them-

The first is, that nature enermore tra-

ons of neere refemblance. The first rea fon of nature working, in maile or te-

Three occasi-

uzileth and striueth, to make the best Workemanship that possibly shee can; and this reason is helde by all Naturall Phylosophers. Hence it proceedeth, that The effayeth to make the Male childe, rather then the female, and to fashion him more like the Father, then the Mother; in imitation of the Painter, that portraiteth one thing (according to Nature) by another. Now, if Nature be noted foritime to faile heerein, wholly, or in part, it is alwaies by defect and debilitie in the matter: For, when a man hath not fufficient perfection in him to procreat, then is he faid to forme a female childe. Likewife, concerning the gesture and figure, when that Vertue which makes the form (which the Phylosophers call the Vertue informatiue) is most strong and powerfull in the partes of man: the childe doth then more refemble the Father, then the Mother. But when (in this Vertue) there happeneth forme indisposition and defailance in strength, and that the Vertue and power of the VVoman prooueth to be the stronger, the Child dooth then resemble the Mother . There are some other causes beside, whereof wee thall speake heereafter; and principally (in this cafe) the good or cuill disposition in the 50 matter of the parties generative, is much auailcable.

In the first place, it behooueth, that Of the partics patient the Woman thould be as the partie paand agent in tient or fuffering, and the man as the Atheir enerall gent which maketh the worke, because vertues. that (according to the disposition) nature bufieth hir felfe in the fimilitude, and frameth not only the vertue of the Paternall or Maternall party, in the likeneffe of gdfture, and of the members : but likewife in the complexion, disposition, strength, and (befide) in fome passions, diseases, & other things. As wee may and do manie

times obserue, that the Sonnes of Baldeheaded men, doe likewife become balde theselues, & deaf mens sons, are deaf also Very often (in like manner) as Galen affirmeth, the Sonnes do becom heires to their discases, as to the Gout, the dropsy, Palie, falling ficknes, &c. Auten addeth Leprofic, Tilicke, and Melancholy alfo. infirmities. And that which is yet much more admirable, Nature, in meer deceining hir felf, doth give formetimes to Children, fuch forming likehurts and woundes, as their fathers have neffeformerly received, which is plainly to declare, that thee continually laboureth to make true likenes. Columella maintaineth Columella in the fame argument, and fo doth Pliny the Lib. 8. de Reb. yonger likewife, in an Epiffle which hee Ruft Plin. wrote; where speaking of the wife to Cornelius, he faith; That the died of the gout, cap. 12. which was the disease of hir father, & of all his linage. This Author further faith. that infirmities discend from the father to the for and oftentimes from children to children : as it hapned to Nicerus the the Poet, borne in Constantinople, of who Pling writeth, that his Father & Mother Plin found. being white, yethe was borne blacke, be- Lib. 2. cause that his Grandfather (by the mothers (ide) was black. These accidents we daily behold by proofe, in horses & other creatures, that doe refemble their Sires most of al, not only in colour, but also in greatnes and disposition. This is the reafon of Aristotle, and of Empedocles, as also Aristotle. of Albertus Magnus. In this maner is formed the variety of geltures in men, the nus. disposition and shape of their members, according to them of father and mother, euen then in the generative action.

The fecond reason, is likewise derined The second from Ariflotle and Plinie, and they fay, ariflorible de That it is the immagination of the Father, enen in the instant, and likewife the prefent affection or passion then working in the foule. For, fight, or present immagination, is greatly analyling in this case, and is a most strong occasion, being joyned to the former ; because the Father or the mother then thinking on fom beauty, it is a great ocalio of begetting a bentiful

Natures en-

Albertus Mag-

Emped recit. per Petrarch is lib de placitisp Alb Magin lib 16,0 18 de

Gen. 30, 40.

Aduise of naturall Phylolophers.

Alexan Approf concerning Baftard chil-

Ariflotles aciri wer concerin figure.

Childe, and forming it answerable to the immagined subject. And because it many times hapneth, that Fathers have diuers immaginations; they do likewife engender diversitie and difference of gestures, so that the Infant will resemble diners persons. And this matter is reputed of fuch importance, that Empedocles faieth, Some Women have beene noted, that they have conceived, and beene delivered of 10 Children, that have refembled Statues, Figures, and Pictures, that hung in the chambers, at the time of their conception. That this hath hapned in Beaftes, is sufficiently probable in the History of Iacob, who layed the pilled rods (being White and Blacke) in those places where the flockes conceyned, by meanes whereof, partie coloured Lambes were also engendered. And it is further to bee observed, that not onely this immagination hath power on the Corporall Members; but likewife on the Soules of Children. In regarde whereof, Naturall Phylosophers haue aduised, that when a man is angry, or Melancholy, or Drunke, he shoulde not companie with his Wife : Because (commonly) Children are of the same Complexion, wherein the Father was, at the generative action. And yet, it 30 hath oftentimes come to passe, that a merrie-hearted Father, and deliberate of Nature, hath gotten a Melancholly Childe.

To this purpose, Alexander Aphrodifeus declareth a verie notable thing; that (manie times) Ballard Children, begotten in Adulterie, are wicked and vicious, in regard of the bad immagination, and fearefull terrour, wherein their Fathers were at the time of their begetting. From the verie fame reason, may an anfwere be framed to the case following. For, if it bee demanded, whence commeth it, that among men onely, there is fo great diversitie in figure ? Aristotle replyeth, it is, because that Beastes haue no Cares, Thoughtes, or Immaginations, but onely in their present Action: whereas (on the contrarie) men haue their thoughts in many places, and on diuerfitie of thinges, whereby enfueth, that manie children are borne, which neither resemble the father or mother.

Aristotle gineth (almost) the same answere vnto the Question propounded: Wherefore are foolish Children begot ten by Wife Fathers ? Hee faith, That men which know little (as wee haue formerly spoken of Beastes) are very intentiue in the generative acte: by meanes whereof, the matter being disposed, and Fathers doe without any alteration children are then beget foolith borne perfect, because nature (in the verie same instant) was busied about no other occasions. But in wife and learned men, it doth not alwayes fo fall out: because they (commonly) having their spirits more fubtle and penetrative, have alfo their thoughts otherwife busied most part of the time, which is a great hinderance, when the power is not wholy imployed in the action . From whence it proceedeth, that the matter being not perfectly disposed; . Nature coulde not perfectly perfourme her Workeman-

The third reason, rendered for aunfwere to this doubt, is from Aftrologye derived from caused by influence of the Stars, accor- Afrology. ding into the opinion delivered by Ptolomie. For, by the disposition of heaven, Ptol. in Cetiloq and the figne or Image ascendant,& the Aspects which the Planets haue, both in the Conception and Birth of man: the manners and Naturall disposition are infused, rendering themselues semblable or different to the Father, according to the proportion and conformitie of the Father, or of the Childe, at the time of Generation. Wee might heere rehearfe the Influences of these Plannets, by their seuerall proprieties, but it would require too long a time : Besides, Ptolomie hath Spoken thereof sufficiently; so hath Iulius Ptolo. in Qua-Firmicus, Haly ben Rosel, Guy, Bonatus,

and others : And the reason is so strong, as it cannot bee denied; Confidering and perceyuing the Influxion and power, which the Superiour Bodies haue ouer the Inferiour, with their Ef-

Now, in regard that this enfueth by The cause of motion or agitation, which is the cause generation of generation and corruption, and is that corruption, which first disposeth the matter, and afterwardes formeth it: it followeth, that as the motion of time dooth neuer cease, and that there are divers times, and diuers Motions . And besides (as vvec haue alreadic fayde, that they haue diuers Natures; euen fo, the matter dispofeth it felfe dinerfly ! and caufeth variable actions and dispositions in the creatures,

Thefe three gaufes concu ring together

Chap. 14.

Goodly chil-

Ariflotles anfwerwhy wife

dren procee-ding from vn-fightly fathers

Thechiefe confpiratours of Cafarideath

Marcus Varro

achiefe man

He chiefe men in the confpiracy for the death of In-lim Cafar (according as Plutarch and others have declared) were Brutus and

20

Casins, who afterward (with their Adherents) were profecuted, and proclaimed open Enemies to the people of 40 Rome by Octavius, Lepidus, and Marke Anthonie, that had gotten possession of the Citty . Among the complices of Brutus and Cassins, Martin Varro was a principall man, who (beeing present in the battaile, which Octaules and Marke Anthonie had against the conspiratours; and when Offaning was the Conque! tour) for fafegard of his life and escape of apprehention, chausged his habite with a poore Souldier, and appearing rancked among them, and fold (in confused manner, as the rest were. It was his happe to be bought by a Romaine Knight, named Barbulas I who (within fome while after) iceing his faire de-

Of Equal Courtesie.

fometimes refembling one another, according to the conformity that was in Heaven, and in the one time, and in the other. Likewise, sometimes these causes and occasions are occurrent all together. Sometimes, one, or two: And (very often) the one proueth contrary to the other, from whence enfireth fuch divers effectes, which daily offer themselves to our view. By the very fame occasions, wee may easily difcerne, whence it commeth, that goodly Children are begotten by deformed and vgly Fathers, and likewise the con-

trary; wherein there can nothing elfe bee alleadged, but the good or bad difpolition of the matter, and the imagination of the parties agent and fuffrant; with the Celestiall influence at the inftant, all which we have delivered to be 26 doubtfull, according as other things are of the like nature.

CHAP, XIIII.

Of a very Brange and memorable fortune.

which happened in one kinde, though at

fundry times, to two Knights of Rome.

borne; albeit; he contectured the fame by no other relation. To be resoluted in this doubt, he tooke him (one daie) afide, and inftantly entrearedhim, to tell him of whence, and what he was, promifing him withall, to purfue his pardon to Octavius and Marke Anthonie. But Marcus Varro, diffen bling fill his aduerse fortune; by no meanes couered. would disclose himselfe : so that Barbulas altered his former opinion, and perfwaded himfelfe, that he was no Roman; according as his judgement had before imagined. Soone after, Octavius and Marke Anthony returned to some, and Barbulas alfo with his Slave, who (perhaos) was a better man then himfelfe.

meanor, and honest carriage of life;

began to suspect, that he was a komaine

It fortuned afterward, that Marcis Marcus disco-Varro being at the Senate-doore, attending for his Maister, that stayed within fetat liberty. vpon fome vrgent bufines : was known by a Romaine, that prefently advertised Barbulas thereof . Barbulas, not lecming to know any fuch matter, and vfing no further speech thereof; so labored with Octavius (who governed then in Rome) that he obtained his pardon; by meants whereof; Varre enjoyed his liberty, and being brought to Octavine; hee was honourable entertained, and thenceforward refrected in the number of his friends.

Within a while after, Octanius and Barbulas in Marke Anthony fell at discord and vari- the like diance. & Barbulas taking part with Mark Marcus Varro. Anthonie (who was vanquished in the adventured triall of fight) grew to bee doubtfull of the fame for-Offanius, and made his recourse to the fame remedy, as formerly Marcus Varro was forced to undergoe, by changing his habite, and feigning himfelfe to bee another . Mareus Varro not know in him, by fome length of time fince last he faw him, but especially by the pomanner as himfelte had been. But comming afterward to knowledge of him, he wrought fo with Octavius, that his offence was pardoned, and hee fet at li-Bertie. So that in fatisfying what he Courteffe eflood bouind to doe, and repaying the qually requikindnesse which he had formerly receiued heeleft a linely example to vs , of the inconstancy of our lives best condition, with a rule and enstruction to all

Mans life

time denided

into feauen

Ages. Infancy the

first Age.

CHAP. XV.

The Ages of Man Severally distinguished, according the enstructions of Astrolo-



common denision of Astrologers, Arabians , Chaldeans . Greekes, and Latines, and perticularly by Proclus, a Greek Au-

thour, Ptolomse and Haly ben Razell; the life time of man is divided into seaven Ages, ouer each one of which Ages, one of the seauen Planets is said to rule and gouerne. The first Age is called Infancy, containing the space of soure yeares, during which time, the necreft Planet to the Earth hath Dominion, that is the Moone, because the qualities of Infancy hath vrged men to fay; that the influence of this Planet is wholelie conformable to this Age, wherein the body is humide, tender, weake, moueable, and altogether like vnto the Moone . For the very least matter caufeth alteration, his members (by the smallest Trauaile) is weakned, and the body (in little time) encreaseth, euen plainely to bee discerned by the eye. These thinges doe happen generally in all persons, by reason of the Moones gouernment, neuerthelesse, more in fome then in others, and not equally alike ; in regard, that other particular qualities, which hold no subsistance of the Moone, doe receive their originall, in manner as the Childe commeth into the World, according to the estate and disposition of other Plannets. The fecond Age continueth tenne

yeares, vntill he attaine to the yeares of

foureteene : this Age is called by the

Latines Pueritia, or Child-hood, which

giueth a ceffation to Infancy, and pro-

ceedeth on toward adolosencie: In this

Age raigneth another Planet, named

The fecond Age, is called Child-hood.

The Moone

gouerneth

Mercury, seated in the second Heauen, mercury go-uerneithe This is a Celestial body, apt and easie second Age. to change, being good with the good, and bad by the aspect of euill. During this time, nature composeth it selfe, according to the quality of this Planet. For then doe young Children declare fome principles whereby to make relation of their Spirits : bee it in reading, writing, or finging, then are they docible and tractable, and yet not withfranding, light in their speeches, inconstant and mutable.

The third Age, confident of eyght the third age yeares, being named by our Auncients is caldyouth Adolescencie, or Youth-hood, and it la. hood. steth from foureteene, till two and twenty yeares be fully compleate; during which time, the third Planet, called Venus ruleth. For a man then begin, venus gouer-neth to be prompt by Nature, power-neth the third full, and able for procreation: as enclining to loue, to Women, and addicted to Musicke, sports, pleasures, bankets, and other worldly delights. This is to be vnderstood, of naturall prouocations in Man to any of these; for, having loft the benefit of his own free will and Naturall pro election, hee leaueth or taketh fuch in- uocations in clinations by influences. And yet wee are to know, that neither the force of the Planets, nor power of the Starres, hath priniledge on the liberty of the Soule; although they incline the fenfitine appetite, the members and Organs

in the body of man. The fourth Age paceth on vntill a Thefourth Man haue accomplished two and fortie is young Man yeares, & is tearmed young man-hood, the course whereof continueth ningteene yeares , and hath Soll the Sunne for Gouernour and Commaunder sel gouerneth the fourth Heauen, called the fourth se by most ancient Astrologians, the fountaine of light, the principall eye of the whole World King of the Planets, and hart of the widsyniuczie, iln iks man-ner, this Age is Prince of all other, and the floure of life, during which times floure of life the facultids and powers of the body & of the Spirit, doe acquire and attaine so their ftrength, and man beeing then apprehenfine, bold, and hardy ; knoweth, how to, order and dispose of his owneaffaires. He then defireth and purchaseth Treasures, he coueteth to be excellent, and well famed and is full

Mars course. neth the fitt

Saturn gouerdeth the laft

The feauenth

Age is decre-

pite Age.

Saturnes greated kindnesse to decrepité Arc.

The seauch Ages of Man. enclined to well doing. Briefely, in all thinges generall, he delareth apparantly, that the Sunne raigneth ouer

The fil: Age is ripe man-hood.

The fixt Age is Old Age.

Iupiter ruleth the fixt Age.

Age.

Chap.15.

The fift Age, named Mature Manhood, hath (according to the faid Authours) fifteene yeares of continuance, and therefore makes his Prograce fo farre as fix and fifty yeares, ben glubiect to the Planet Mars, which to (of it felfe) is enill, dangerous, and hot, enclining men to Auarice, and making them chollericke, fickly ; yet temperate in cating and drinking, and conftant in their actions.

Afterward, in adding twelve to fiftie fixe, you shall make up fixty eight years; which reach to the end of the fixt Age, and is called Old Age, whereof Jupiter is the great Governour . This is a Noble Planet, the fignifier of Equity, Religion, Piety, Temperance, and Cha-flitie; proudking men to finish al pains and hazzards, and feeke quiet repofe. In this time, men addict themselves to holy works, affecting Temperance and Charitie, defiring honour, accompanied with due praise; they are honest; fearefull of thame, difgrace, and reproach.

giueth a true and apt name to it felfe, being called, weake, declining, and decrepite Age, in regard whereof, Saturn commaundeth oner it, as the most tarnamed. His Complexion is cold, dry; and melancholly, weariforne, and troublesome. By this meanes, he cloatheth aged men with follitude, choller, meagerneffe, difdaine, and anger. He en-feebletir their memory and their strength, then doth he ouercharge their bodies with griefes, long tadneffe, languifning discases, endlesse thoughtes, and with an earnest defire to enterprise 50 feeret & concealed matters; and which

that hee will returne to his first condi-

tion of infancy againe, and haue a part of the Moone to bee his Gouernour, which was his first Planet (as I have al- againe. ready declared) in his first Age of all. In regard whereof, they are then viuallie dealt withall, euen as we doe to young Infants, according to their conditions

Marcus Varro, a learned man among

the Romaines detrided the life of man in-

hood, as being but an entrance into fur-

ther growing. The fecond was Adole-

feentia, the fpringall or ftripling effate

of a youth, which hee tearmed the en-

creating time, for then the body goeth

on by encreasing. The third fifteene

yeares, mounting vp to forty fine years,

of helping; because men doe then service

as helpers to their Countrey, cyther in

warlike occasions, or other affaires fir

for the Common-wealth, and this Age

gers, whereto every man may give credit, as himselse best pleaseth. Let vs now come to the denission made by

part of their report, that young Spirits may exercise themselvies a little. The great Philosopher Pythagoras, how to the foure feafons or quarters of the time, when al things are in their floure, beginning to encrease and augment themselues . Youth-hood, he compared to Summer, by the Ardour and ftrength that men haue in that Age.

The seauenth and last of these seuen Ages, is limitted from fixty eight years, fo farre as fourescore and eight, and few there are that attaine thereto. It dy, and yet the very highest Planet, and which enuironeth all the other before 40 is more, they will be alwaies Maisters; Superiours, and wholly obeyed. If any man chance to goe beyond this Age, which is more admired, then noted in many : you shall cuidently perceine,

and daily inclinations.

The denision of these severall Ages; The Aftroloin manner as formerly hath beene difcourfed, was the invention of Aftrolo- on ot Ages.

Philosophers, Phisitions, and Poets, The dentition who were of diners opinions : yet be- made by Phicause in this Argument there are some losophers, we wil enter into some and Poets.

long ficuer the life of man was; made The denision but foure partes thereof, comparing it the made by Py-

yeare. He faid, Infancy is the Spring- Spring time.

Summer.

Manly Age is Autumne, because lin this time, a man hath experience, is Autumne. ripe and apt for good councell, with certaine knowledge of all thinges. Old

Age he figured in winter, being a friit- Winter.

leffe time, cumberforne, and hauling no benefit of any bleffings, but what haue proceeded from the former featons.

to fine partes, attributing the space of fifteene years to each one of them. The The denision first fifteene he named Puerita, Childe-madeby Mar-Adolescentia.

> er Antinis anoine.

he called tunentus, as comming of the Latine word lunare, to fignifie the time

is held for the flability or firmenelle of

Maturitas.

the Age of man is called Maturitas, maturity, full of ripenesse, because (in Lais to fay; Ancient men, or grave aged men, in respect of the precedent condi-

Hippocrát, in Lib, de Dier. Nat. And his deuifion.

Sentelus.

The deuision made by Solon

Ifidor lib. 11. de Etimol And his deuision.

Horace in Art. Poet Andhi denifion.

life. After forty fine, euen to threescore, tine) fuch men are named Seniores, that tions. Alfo, in these times men doe begin to decline, and walke on toward Old Age, which accomplisheth the last fifteene yeares, after threefcore, and containeth the rest of mans life time. Behold how Varro deuided the life of man, according as Cenforines hath de-Hippocrates the Philosopher, he de-

uided it also into seauen Ages, the two first seauens, rising to fourescene; The third, ascending from loureteene, to eight and twenty. The featens that make up the fourth and fift, doerife to forty two : The fixt, from forty two, to fifty fixe; And the reft of mans lite, he attributeth to the featienth Age. Solon the Philosopher, as the same Cenforinus relateth, brought these seauen parts into fixe, deuiding the third, the fixt and the featenth in the midft, fo that each of the fixe parts should last scuin yeares; And the like description is made by the other Philosophers . Bur Isidore hath distinguished it into fixe Ages, agreeing in the two first with Hippoerates, making every one feaven; naming the first Infancy; the second childhood. Afterward, from foureteene to eight and twenty, he tearmeth Adolefcentie, or the encreasing age. From twenty eight, to forty, he nameth it Iuuentus, or the helping time, which is the 4 in order. The fift, which he calleth declination, or the beginning of Oldeage he maketh to confift of 20. yeares, and amount (in all) to fixty. The remainder of life, he attributeth to Olde Age, and nameth it the fixt Age.

Horace, the excellent Poet, hath likewifemade deuision of mans Ages; but it is into four partes onely, according as Pythagoras did, to wit ; Child hood, Youth hood, Man-hood, and Old age: 50 all which he hath elegantly described in his Art of Poesie, with those conditions belonging to men, in all those seuerall times. Neuerthelesse, according to the rule of naturall Philosophy, the life time of man should not be deuided, but into three Ages : The first, the en-

creafing Age; The second, the continuing Age, or, while a man remaineth in one citate; And the third, the Age of Diminution : For, according to Aristotle; Allthinges that doe procreate or Anima. engender, have augmentation, retention of Effence, and diminution: fo, in like manner, three Ages ought to be affigued to Man. The Philitions of Arabia haue beene of the same opinion, and yet notwithstanding, Auicenne, a very learned man, diftinguisheth our life into foure Ages, or principall partes. The first, which lafteth thirty yeares, hee calleth fioninto four Adolescencie, because, during this time, all things go on by encreasing . The fecond, from thirty, fo farre as forty fine, he calleth the stayed and setled Age, or of beauty and comelinesse; for at this time, aman is in his best perfection. From thence onward, and so farre as to threefcore yeares; he tearmeth, fecret diminution, and the way to Old Age. The rest that a man liveth afterward, as being his fourth and last estate; he namethit, clearely discouered Old-Age, or falling, and downe-stooping Age. Now, notwithstanding this opinion of The first age his, it is to be noted, that albeit he haue devided by made this principall denision : yet hee duceme into forgetteth not, to deuide the first of there foure (which containeth thirtie yeares) and maketh three parts thereof. Whereby wee may well fay, that hee confenteth with fuch, as denided it into Now, after wee have confidered all

these variable opinions, I cannot tell to which I should betake my felfe, as beeing the trueft; and to speake vprightly, no man knoweth how to give an affu- in this case, redrule, or any certaine ayme; as well in regard of the divers complexions & dispositions of men, as also their dwelling in fundry Landes and Provinces, and their nourithing by good or bad foods, by meanes whereof, men arrive fooner or later at the state of Old Age. For which cause, Galen would have no ages: which being well confidered, it danged maketh all these discordances of formany Authors, need no water formany and the second formany and formany and formany formands for many formands f maruaile, confidering that each man had a severall consideration. Accorhad a fenerall confineration.

Servins Immunity of Rome his desification of Aulus Gellius)

Servins Immunity of Aulus Gellius) had, who (according to Aulus Gellius)

Arist,in lib. 3.

Mellow Age. Old Age.

Viridifque In

Yeares called limattericall, dangerous mans life.

of much more perill and danger then others be; which they named Climactericall, by reason of the

had no respect but to common benefit, when he deuided the people of Rome into fine estates. And yet he distinguishedthe life of men, but into three parts, calling the first age (which he affigned to be scauenteene yeares) Childhood. From that estate to forty fixe; he declared them to bee men, able for the Warres, and so caused them to be fet downe in writing. Lastly, from fortie 10 fixe onward; he called them, ripe and mellow men, fit for graue imployment and counsell.

This denision not contrary ing the for-

Chap.16.

This devision doth not contrary any of the other, because it is vniuerfall, and includeth the meanest particulars in it, and it feemeth, that he grew conformable to the common denisions, when it was viually observed, to separate (in divers kinds) the Greene Age, Ripe-age, and Old-age. The Greeneage, from the time of our birth, even to the ending of our youth, which goeth fo farre as forty fine yeares, little more, or little leffe; according as Virgillfaith, Viridifque inuentus, that is to fay ; Greenyouth. The Ripe and Mellow Age, proceedeth on to threescore yeares, which time was attributed by Sernius Tullius, to men of Wisedome, meete for grane counsels and consultations. The rest is

tearmed to be decrepite Old-age. Thefe

three parts, may likewise be denided in-

to other proportions; and (by that

meanes) be answerable to the varietie,

which appeareth to have beene (by di-

uersitie of coniecture) among so many

CHAP. XVI.

That there be certaine yeares in the life of Man, which our Ancients have indged to be more dangerous, then any other; And for what caufe.

good Writers.

Ncient Philosophers 50 & Aftrologers haue obseried, that there are certaine yeares in our course of life,

Ladder or forme of degrees, finguity ing thereby, that frich yeares are limitted, in the fashion of degrees on Aldps, but hard to paffe, during the nece of this mortall life. For like as they maintaine in daies, that the fearenth, ninch, and fourteenth, are dangerous during mens fickneffes and infirmities ikn like cafe, they have especiall tespect withat fuch a numberd limitation, takethplace also in the course and yeards of our fraile life; in regard of the members firength, whereof great account hath beene made by Bythagoras, Themistius, Battus, Averroes, and many others. Al- Battus. fo, in regard of the influences and domination of enill Planers; as I may alleadge of Saturne, who reigneth indiuerfity of feafons, and fundry Ages. Whereby they gather judicially (according as Marsilus Ficinus, Cenforinus, & Massius Fi Aulus Gellius doc testific) that all the Conformation Collins Septenary yeares ; or those comprised of seauens, doe portend great alterations, changes; & impossible (as it were) that flich tearmes can bee paffed, without mighty hazzard, alteration of life, estate, health, or complexion . Vpon this occasion, the yeare feauenth, four-

teenth, twenty one, twenty eight; thir-

ty fine, forty two, forty nine, and fo

for every scauenth yeare, is to bee fea-

Greeke word Clima, that is it gillane 3

And because they defend the number Tenarie, or of three, to be likewife ber of three, of great efficacy; they fay, that three times feauen (which maketh one and twenty) is of maine importance. The like speech doe they make of the yeare forty nine, because it is composed of feauen times feuen. But the yeare (most of all other) to be feared, is that of fix, ty three. For like as the number of one and twenty, arifeth out of three times feauen: fo, likewife the number of fixey three, begetteth it felfe of three times one and twenty; or of nine times feauen, or of seauen times nine; which compleateth the number celebrated & recommended by the very aveileft. When a man therefore commeth to the age, of entring into the year ahreefcore and three; he ought to be carefull of his health and life, waiting (dain by day) for some change therein; or whatfocuer elfe may happen vnto him liaco

Bearing Fr

States Louisia Character to

Daies main-

tained to be

Masilius Fici-

credin/A sa

Of the num-

The dangerous yeare of

> Coldul not 4 Son

4.Booke.

Inlins Firmicus in lib. Aftrolog.

The Letter of Octavius to Cassius.

The death Ariftotle.

> The death of Dioine Plato,

The Authors thisargument famous persons.

्रक्षा अपूर्ण जनकारी Man fubica to the will of God.

cording as Tulius Firmieus affirmeth in his Books of Afrology

To this purpose; Aultus Gellius ma-keth mention of the Emperor Off aulus his Letter, whereby he fignified to his Nephew Cassus (having escaped this yeare of fo much danger) how carefull he ought to be of the yeare fixty foure, because he had preuented the yeare fixty three; fo that he declared a good intention, to celebrate his second Natiuity . For these reasons, our Elders made doubt of this yeare threefcore and three, perceiving many worthy men to die, euen ar the arrivall thereof: for in the fame yeare dyed Aristotle, and divers other notable perfonages. And, as I have formerly faid, the number of nine was also feared, because they faid, that he which escaped the yeare fixetie 20 three, could not passe the boundes of fourescore and one ; in regard that this age was composed of nine times nine: at which age died dinine Plato, the great Geographer Eratosthenes, Zenocrates, the Platonicall Prince of the auncient Academie, Diogenes the Cinick, and other

Gentlemen, I was willing to make some observation of these matters, more for curiofitie and exercise, then for any credence given to them : albeit they are not veterly impertinent, nor voide of naturall reason. For, as wee may behold, that fome fickneffes and humours doc end in a man, and, that in other Creatures, the change of teeth, encrease of Beard, the voyce augmenting, and nature worketh other effectes and notable changings, on such complexions as are knowne by the tearmes of yeares: wherefore should not wee credite, that (by the same meanes) limited times doe make other alterations and impressions? Why should we not beleeue, that our humaine body hath communication with the Celestiall influences, as with humours; by fome efpecial meanes; which is hidden from vs Because, man is subject to the will and government of God. And God, although he hath formed all things miraculoufly; and fuper naturally : yet notwithstanding, he will have his works to be naturall; onely fuch excepted, as were created by him against the Lawes of Nature, and according to his owne

fecret and inscrutable judgement.

CHAP. XVII.

That Orpheus, Homer, Pythagoras, Plato, and other of the ancient Philosophers and Poets, did read the Books of Moyfes, and haue taken many particuler points out of



T is not to bee found, whether any that any man (before man wrote be fore Moyfes) hath left any thing written ; except it were Abraham and Enoch, whose learning,

Moyles (as their lawfull Inheritor) harh comprehended in his Bookes, adding thereunto, those things which he heard from the mouth of the living God, by Oracles daily received from him. At fuch time as Pythagoras and Plato learned the Sciences in Agypt; they would (first of all) study the Doctrine of Moyfes, whose name (in those times) was in great admiration through all Egipt, & out of his Bookes they conceined the reason of God; to wit, of the first cause. After whom, Numenius the Pythagorian, Numenius the wrote down in his Bookes, many thinges concerning. Moyfaicall Doctrine, us Bafile the great witneffeth; and the fame Numenius faith, that Plate was no other then Moyses, speaking in the

Greeke Language. Clemens Alexandri- Clemens Alex mus, and Eufebius, doe both fay, that the Eufebius, Gentiles receined their very greatest Mysteries from the lewes, wrapping & enfolding them in their Fables. That of Dencalion, was taken from the Historie of the Deluge . The fixion of Phaeton from the retrogradation and going back of the Sunne, which was in the time of Ezechias.

They that would behold the building The Tower of the Tower of Babell, which Nimrod and his pertakers undertooke, meaning (by Ladders) to climb vp into Heauen, and fee what was done there : shall find it under certaine Allegories, amply de- The Gyants fcribed in Homer, under the Fable of the Octo and Gyants Oetus and Ephialtes, Sonnes to iphimedia, where hee describeth their zib. 11. height

height and wonderfull greatnesse, and how they would lay the Mountaine Of-Ja, vpon that of Olympus, and Pelion vpon Offa. The Poet Ouid, borne in Sulmo. tooke that which hee fingeth, of the beginning and Creation of the World (like as Homer, Hefiodus, and Linus, borrowed their Songs, of fanctifying the

Chap.18.19.

Hefiodus,Li-

Saturnes gol-

feauenth day) from none elfe but Moyfes. Many haue fung the golden Age and raigne of Saturne, hauing gathered it from the most happy estate, wherein Adam was before hee finned. Many more before them; as Orpheus, who learned divers things from the doctrine of Moyfes, especially in the Book which he made of the facred word : he confeffeth, that he took out of the Moyfaicall Tables, that which hee fingeth concerning God, knowne to the onely Chalde- 20 an Moyfes, by these Verses, which Frances George, in his Hermony of the world, hath reduced into Latine.

Fran. Georg.in lib.de Hermo

Prius perfectus Dens est, qui cuntta creanit Cuntta fouens, atque iple fouens fisper emmia in st. 2 du capitar mente tantum, qui mente viuletra Qui ma llima e unatum mortalismi interbit vanquam; Quem perter mon est attus i u cuntta violeto. He inform in teris matina quo carrer e pesse. Hi cettumi viulen i presenti perfectus della processione della proc euc cientin video: spint velifica forcin: Hicque manum video : verum ipfus, cernere, quis fit, Nequaquan valeo, nam mubibus infect altis. Nemo illum nifi Chaldeo de fanguine quidam Progenitus vidit: quem calorum aurea fèdes Sublimisque tenet : cuius se dextera tendit Occani ad fines : quem de radicibus imis Oceani saj unes : quem sa vasicious imms. Consulfique remuni montes : rec pindere quamuia Immunfi fast, ferre quiumt : qui cuboine cati Alta colons : terri immquam tamun tile fit affirm, 196 sil principium, medium quoque, & exitus idemi, Priferum mahe abe descurant omnia voices.
Quæbinus tabulis Deus olim tradidis itlis.

Some haue been of opinion, that Orpheus meant by this Chaldean, Noah, others, Enoch, and the Platonists tooke him for Zoroastres, who was the Sonne of cham : but to none of them were the Tables of the Commaundements giuen, but to Moyfes onely.

CHAP, XVIII.

A Mystical Signification, concerning the body of Elifeus, and of the dead man raifed to life in the Prophets Graue.

Of the body of Elifeus.

T is written in the * fecond Booke of the
Kinges, and the thirteenth Chapter, that as
they were burying a
Man, they efpyed the
Souldiours of the Madutes: wherecond Booke of the fourth backe

341

fourth backe.

The myfticall

application of this History.

fore, they threw the dead man into the Grave of Elifeus, and the man beeing downe, and having touched the bunes of Elifeus; he remited, and stood vppe on his feete . This History containeth in it, the figure of our Lord lefus Christ, and under the superficies there of, is hidden a very great Mysterie. Dead Elifem, is mysticallic vnderstood to be Iefus Christ, who died for vs; and the Souldiers or Thecues of Moab, doe represent wicked spirits, and the sinnes of the world.

The Men that espied the Moabites, and threwe the dead bodie into the Graue of Elifens; doe fignifie the Apoftles, who prouided for the peoples fauing health, against the mallice of wicked Demons, and against the burthen of finnes and therefore plunged mankinde (being dead) into the Sepulcher 30 of Christ, that is to say, into the Water of Baptisme, because the Water of Baptisme is Christes Graue or Sepulcher, wherein wee are fanctified three times in the name of the bleffed Trinitie, in regard that Iefus Christ continued three dayes and nights in the Sepulcher. Whereupon, Saint Paule saide to the Romaines : We are buried with him in his death by Baptisme. Concerning the dead man, that having touched the bones of Elsfeus, renined, and rose vpon his fecte : read but the fame Apostle. in his fecond Chapter to the Cologians, and there you shall finde him perfectlie

Rom. 7, 9.

CHAP.XIX.

The Interpretation, of the Dreame of the great King Nabuchodonofor. ∍ไลเไม่ที่ จะ ระกง ท_{ี่}นัก

Nabuchodonofor, King of Babylon, beheld

Dan.z.

fors Image.

or statue, the glory whereof was high, and it had a terrible regard. His head was of fine Gold; his Breaft and armes of Siluer, his belley and Thighes of Braffe; his Legges of Iron; and his Feetewere partly of Iron, and partlie of Earth. He saw afterward, that a little stone (came of it selfe) out of a Me antaine, and descended from such an height; as by the very blow of his fall, the Image was broken in all parts, and beaten into Powder . Daniell Interpreted this statue, and gaue the fignification thereof in the Kinges prefence, as is contained in the fecond Chapter of his Booke : but heere it is more amply interpreted, and in a larger

The fignificamage, which for faw in his

Good reasons to perfwade that we liue in the latest age.

Exaltation of the Arts and Sciences.

Shortneffe of

Forwardnesse

beheld (in a Dream) a very great Image The Image or Statue, denoted the

Monarchies of the World; the head of Goldwas the Kingdome of the Asirians; the Breast and Armes of Siluer, the Empire of the Persians ; the Belly & Thighes of Braffe, the Monarchy of the Grecians; the rest remaining (consifling of Iron and Earth) the State and Dominion of the Romaines. The stone is Iesus Christ, who descending from the Celestiall Mountaine, hath 20 humbled al these Kingdoms, & brought them to nothing. By this it appeareth, that we are in the last age, and that smal time of passing hence remaineth: because, this world must be ouerthrowne and ruined, all the Kingdomes having already paffed, and all Prophefies fullie accomplished. All which, if we were not able to coniecture; yet might wee easily comprehend by good reasons.

In the first place, wee cannot deny, but that vertue is at her chiefest height, and all Vices at their pitch of extreamity. In the fecond place, who ever beheld Divinity and Learning more exalted, then it is at this day? Philosophy, Musicke, Armes, Carning, Painting, and Eloquence more common, then now they are? very children neuer grew so soone to be perfect. We daily behold, that men do not now reach to the yeares of an hundred, or if they do, it is very fildome; as in former times they did. And we may perceive withal, that at the age of 18. yeares, a young Springall shewes himselfe of as good shape, and provided of as able firength; as a

young man at the age of thirty in elder daies. I cannot deliuer any reason, why men doe live in this World fo short a while; except it be thorough their bad the breuity of gouernment, and that diffolutions and life. vices are the maine cause thereof: or rather, that God being willing to hasten the end of the World, would have all these predictions, to be as warning pieces of his neere approach. We can deliuer another Allegory, or Expositi- Another exon of King Nabuchodonofors Dreame. Defion of this Dreame. wherein we are Inhabitants, and where the more part of Mortall Men, are called Rich, Noble, and Mighty, vnder which Titles, we comprise the head of Gold. The cleare fhining Siluer, and of Siluer, very good found; is the Learning of Braffe. Men, tearmed wife, religious, and vertuous. By the Brazen part, wee vnderstand invented Artes, by which ensue the benefits of life and maintenance. As for the feete of Earth and Iron, wee Earth & Iro may well admit them to be our bad actions, the very best whereof, will scarfe allow any boafting: because they are full of filthinesse, soyled with hatreds, enmities, and rancours, that (too foone) get possession of our harts. Our stupidity and vnaptnesse to good workes, and our iniquity of life, which is all made of Earth; both gouerneth and supporteth this huge masse, this vaine corruption, despoiled of all this, euen by it felfe, by this ouer-burdening and loading it felfe. But our Lord will The little

CHAP.XX.

descend from Heauen, the little Stone, fone.

euen that (I fay) which became fo great;

and at his fecond comming, he shal cast

downe to the ground, all humaine E-

states, and shall judge (in the last day)

the Gold, the Siluer, and all the rest of

the actions of our life.

when the ending of the world shall come, by the coniect ures of divers learned Doctors, and other great personages.

COme have delivered their opinion, Othat the Worlde is to endure fixe

thousandycares, to wit; two thousand without the Law; two thousand with the Law, and another two thousand after the first comming of the Sonne of God. This was not the Prophesic of Helie the Thesbite, but rather the innen-Genebrad in tion of another Helie, a Rabbie of the Iewes, uppon the Talmud; in the tract Sanedrin . Chapter Helee ; in the tract of Idolatry, Chapter Libne; and in 10 the Tract of the Sabbath. The coniectures of whom, are reported by Rabbi IJaac, upon the first Chapter of Gene-

fis, the principall whereof are thefe that

The coniccred by Rabbi follow.

The first Versicle of Genesis, contain neth the Summary of the workes of God, expressing fix times the Letter N. Now, Aleph fignificth a thousand, Moreouer, Godperfected the World 20 in fixe daies, the featenth bee ceaffed from his works, and fanctified the Sab. both: And, a thousand yeares are with God, cuen as yesterday which is past, so faith the Pfalmift. Finally, the fixe first Fathers, Adam, Seth, Enos, Caynam, Malaleel, lared, are dead; the feauenth; to wit ; Enoch, was transported alive vp into Headen. After fixe thousand yeares then, during which time, transiles, and 30 death wil be in their vigour : thal begin the feauenth thousand of repose, and of the life immortall. Nicholas de Cufa, a very wife Cardi-

The conicetutes of Nicha Lu de Cufa, Cardinall.

nall, gaue many other conjectures of the last times, which I wil relate here at large. If wee defire (faith he) to have knowledge of the time (how little focner it be) concerning the ending of the world, and the last daies : wee haue just 140 cause then to meditate on the tranailes, which our Saujor Jefus Christ endured in this World. For, as himfelfe bath four Saujor taught vs, if we will line as Christians, we ought to follow, and learne of him. Learne of me (faith he) for I am humble of meeke of beart. In like manner, himselfe hath given vs example, to doe as hee did, if wee define to bee his followers. Moreouer, hee affureth vs, that all the faithfull are his members, when hee faith; that which is done to the least of his, he reputeth it as done to himfelfel The Church then is his myflicall body, and thee, in her totall perigrination in this World; imitateth her head lefus

Christ, who opened Heauen by his af-

cension. He hath gone before, as her rule and example this Church followeth after, ashis Image and refemblance. Morfes behelde the truth the the flaming Mountaine Smal, by vision of the versty, and after the Milian Mas. vanished, hee did according to the vaample which he has feene, lefus Chrift Chrift his enentredinto this World, in the forme trance into of a young Infant, beggereafed in age this world. and Wildlome, became a many entires Cling the truth, and walking in it 3 vntill fuch time, as (to bee a Testimonie thereof) he was taken from this world, by the mallice of the leves, who made hun to fuffer death appointhe Croffe. Menortheleffe, hee bath left his leedey which is his Church, in whom he abideth, as Adam in Ene, his Wife formed The Church of his Fleth, and brought forth of his the Spone of Ching. fide: to the ende, that his Spoule the Church (full of his Seede) thould afterward be nourished in the House of his heavenly, Father, by her glorious affumption wo into Heatien . The Church was regenerated from hir Infancy, cuch like an Infant; thee bath encreased in yeares and divine wifedome, and (bylitle and little) the shall accomplish and

finifiche time of her (Travailes in this Worldshirt Now, if we would have a linely expectation of the time of chirts being ample, we may fay by confecture, that the time which lefus Christ lived vpon really the mi the Earth; is represented and declared; litant Church by his Militant Church . We knowly that hee is called the Sonne of Many and the Lord of the Sabbath. Likewife, in him was accomplished, that which was prophefied by Efay, to wit; The yeare of the Lord, which yeare of The yeare of the Lorde, is the yeare of Inbilie and Jubilie. freedome. (For lobell in Hebrew, is as much to fay, as the fiftith yeare, at which time of Iubily in Ifraell, cuery feller might (by right) recouer againe the hins parenthings which he had fold, without re-floring the price received.) All this Nichala Co. time is revolued by the septenary number, to wit; from feauen dayes, from featien yeares, and from featien times. feauen yeares, which are fortie nine yeares . After which, the fiftith yeare following this laborious renolution, is the yeare Inbilie, free and full of liberty, in which all fernitude ceafing, liberty returneth freely againe. Andit is to

ot. gast.

The Church is the mystical body of christ

* This is out

of cufa, who

liued & spake

yeare: 464. made Cardi-

nall vnder

fecond. So that, in per-

fect account

yeare, is the 31. Iubily, fince Ielus Christ.

the instant

this, in the

Now if we will confider further, the things which our Lord & Sauior hath done, and those which he suffered after the twenty ninth yeare of his age, vntill the day that he arose, triumphing ouer Sin, Death, and Hell, and then, if wee | 30 extend those yeares into lubilies: wee may (by coniectures) foretell what shal happen to the Church. So that, in the foure and thirtith Iubily, after the refurrection of the Redeemer of al mankind; the may well hope (by the goodnesse of God) to be raifed vp into the glorie, to the ruine of Antichrift. And this is thought, that it will happen, after the birth of our Lord Iefus Christ into the World, 1700. and before the yeare 1734. And as in the time of Noah, the confummation of fin came by the Deluge, the 34. Iubily after the first Adam, according as wife Philo the Iew hath written: we may also fore-tell by coniectures, that in the 34. Iubily after the A comparison fecond Adam, both fin and the World shall be consumed by the fire of the holy spirit. And then shall the Church be transferred out of this corruptible world, into the glory of the liuing, by the comming of her Spouse to Ludgemen. And yet the houre of his fecond comming will be vncertaine, for come he will, & when least doubt is made of him; like as a Thiefe commeth in the

night, and as the deluge came vpon the might, and as the deluge came vpon the earth. Philo the lew declareth, that Moyof a reueland fes (at the houre of his death) defired made to Moyof a reueland made to Moyof God to reueale vnto him; how much fer, concerof the time was passed, and how much ning the times, (as then) remained : whereto God aunfwered, that two had already paffed, & two wer as yet to come. And so Moyfes being full of vnderstanding, yeilded vp his Soule. Heerein then (faith he) God reuealed four times to Morfes, two paft, and two to come: of which, from Adam to the Deluge or Floud, paffed the first time. The second, after the floud, vntil Moyles. The third, from Moyles to Lefus Chrift. And the fourth, from Iefus Christ, to the end and consummation of the world. Now, the last time took beginning at the Refurrection of the Son of God, and continueth to the ending of the world, vpon which good reason, the Saints (oftentimes) called them the latter daies, and the ends of the world.

Now, notwithstanding that these sup- Concerning putations of yeares are very divers, according to the truth of the lewes, according to the lewes a ding to the 70. Greeke Interpreters, as alfo according to Iofephus & Philo: I am of the minde (neuerthelesse) it is much more true, that there hath passed so many Iubilies from the death of Morfes to lefus Christ ; as from Adam to the time of Noah, and as many from the floud vnder Noah, vnto the death of Morfes. In like manner, as many Jubilies haue and shall run their course, from the resurrection of our Saujour, to the end of the last times, and of 34. Inbilies. Moyfes died(according to that divine revelation) in the midft of these 4. times, whereof two were finished, & two were then to * All hitherto come. * There are many other coniectures of the latter daies, which are found cholas de chifa written, and vet are so diners, as no one agreeth with another. And to speak truly, the ending of the world, and the generall-judgement is vncertaine to any creature; for it is onely in the hand and onely known power of God, whose secrets are con- to God. cealed to himfelfe, and he being God referued them to his owne peculiar knowledge. So that, if those auncient men would needs undertake to write thereof fom perticularities; yet they al deceiud themselues by abusing coniectures, far off from all verity. We then of thefe

daies, who have much leffe learning &

to come, especially daies, houres, and moments, which God hath so restraind to his owne power, that the Angels in heauen do not know them. For so himfelfe faith; Of that day and houre, no Man knoweth, no not the Angels of Heaven, but 10 my Father onely. But fure and certain are we, that the world shall perish by an vniverfall flame, and shall bee renewed: which the Spirit of God delinered by Moyfes, in his Song in Deutronomy . Fire is kindled in my wrath, and that burne vnto the bottome of Hell, and Shall consume the earth with her encrease, and set on fire the foundations of the Mountaines.

judgement then they had, without any

comparison, and enjoy not a sparke of

the like functity; ought to cease and de-

fift, fro ouer-curious fearch into things

Sophocles rela-ted by John de Maulment,

2 Pct. 3, 12.

August, in Lib.

Actes 1,7.

Sophocles the Pagan Poet, feemed to 20 touch with his finger (as it were) the ending of the W orld, in divers verses, translated by John de Maulmont, the meaning wherof briefely folowes thus. The Age shall come that wil bring vsriches from the high Heauens, when they shall be filled, and round engirt with fire. All places on the earth the flames (hall enclose, and burne all things, as well in the water, as in the Ayre. Not any thing in this world, under earth, or in the deepest Sea, fall fcape from burning. When then, by fo cruell a flames fury, all things shall be consumed: the springes of all waters (hall be without cour fe like a bottomles gulfe. No fields shal produce any more fruits, nor the earth be inhabited : No this Shall floate upon the Sea : No Birds fly in the Ayre. But a cruell tempeft of ferie thunder. shall burle Heaven and Earth into eternall ruine; burning the Earth and all things into Cinders. Then Shall her great backe re-af-Jume no other effence or ycelde any nourish. ment, for all is brought into putrifaction.

Saint Peter writeth ; That Heanen and Earth which is at this instant, are referred for Fire at the day of Judgement, and the Elements (hall refolue them fe ues into fire. Saint Augustine anniwered a demaund which might he made, as thus. When after the Indeement is ended this World shall bee burnt, before (instead thereof) a new Heaven be created, and a new Earth: in what place shall the Saints be, when this burning is performed? Confidering, it followeth neceffarily, that they thould be in fome corporeall place, because they all have bo-

Chap.21. Of the Conquest of Naples. dies. They fhall be (faith he) in high b'a ces, whereverothe flam s can never mount, as likewife the Waters of the Deluge could not . For they Shall then have fuch bodies . as they may bee where they will be, without fearing the Fire of barning, being made immortall and incorruptible : as the corruptible and Mortall bodies of the three Dan. 3, 24. Men, Sidrach, Mifaack, and Abednago lined, without being offended in the fiery fur-

> Now, if we will be Christians, wee ought to beleeve, that the Refurreeri. I Cor. inig. on of the dead, is in Flesh, and that it will bee done in a moment, or in the twinckling of an eye, faith the Apostle: but our Faith heerein is not ynprofitable, although our understanding doe not perfectly comprehend, howe, and in what manner it shal be done. Let vs leaue then to God, the causes and reafons whereby this is to bee done, and let not vs enquire (ouer bufily) after his admirable secrets I could continue on this discourse, with divers other Chapters, and handle in them this Refurrection, fetting downe the folution and aunswers of Doctors in Dininity, touching those high questions and demaunds, which may be made in this matter. But I will faile no further in fo high a Sea, nor enter into an * Eurypus * A narrow of reasons, where the Billowes may fea betweene of reasons, where the binoves may thehauen Aufhip ; therefore here shall be my Hauen which ebbeth and landing.

and floweth leuen times a day, and lo vi-olently, that it carryeth (with it) thips with full faile

CHAP, XXI.

The Conquest of the Kingdome of Naples. by Charles the eight, King of France.

Hillip de Comines, a worthy learned Gentleman, mens in Caroli
who was Counfellour to 8.
King Gharles thy learned Gentleman, who was Counfelour to King Charles, and ferued him insteaction; given him the section of the country and the country and the country and therenotable restimony thereof, and therefore I think it not amiffe, to vie his own words; in regard of his grauly and au-

thority. He relateth finit, the critelty & tyranny of Ferdinando, King of Naples; and of his Son Alphonio, in canfing 24.

This is onely

conceined in

opinion.

first and se-

. Pet.3, 10.

against the winde.

Noble-men (their Subjects) to be most cruelly murdered in Prison: then, difcourfing of their vices and wickednes, he afterward speaketh of Gods indgements vpon them, proceeding in this manner.

man were richer then the reft ; hee for-

ced him to lend him great fummes of

Money. He tooke from his Nobility

their races of horses, or else made them

keepe them for him, whereby he had

many thousands of Horses, Mares, and

Coltes. Both the Father and the Son

neuer had reuerence or respect to the

holy Church; but fold By shopprickes,

as for example, that of Taranto, which

Ferdinande the Father fold for 12000.

Ducates, to a Icw for his Son, who (he

faid) was a Christian. He gaue Abbaies

to Faulconers, with charge, to keepe

him a certaine number of Haukes at

their expences. Alphonfo the Sonne ne-

as any shew to keepe it. He neuer made

conscience of any committed sinue,

nor euer communicated : and, to con-

clude, it is not possible to doe worfe,

Thus faith this Authour, of the liues

and manners of these two Kinges, and

then they both did.

The Indgecruell, more wicked, more vicious, nor tip de Comines, of the Conquest of Na-ples, for the finnes of the Kings thereof

The tyranny. cruelt e, and vicious life of the Kings of

Bifhoppricks and Abbaies

then hee further addeth, concerning Phillip de Co-Gods Iudgements vpon them. It may (faith he) seeme to the Readers, that I haue spoken this on some particular passion, or hatred towardes them. But (in good faith) I haue not faid it to any other end, then to continue the course No man (faith hee) was euer more of my History, and that it may appeare, that this voyage to King Charles to Nagreater Glutton, then Alphonfo, ples, proceeded onely of the will of Although his Father Ferdinande was mighty GOD, who ordained, that fo the Comiffamore daungerous then he: for, in mayoung a King, destitute of Councell, ry of God to chassise the king men faire weather (as we tearme Mony, and all fufficient meanes for fuch | kingsof Naples it) and good cheare; he commonly bean enterprise : should be his Comissary trayed them. As he dealt by Count Ia-(as it were) to chastice these Kinges, ques; whom he murthered villainously, who were wife, potent, and rich, and though hee were Ambassadour with had many wife Counfellours and grane him for Frances Sforza, Duke of Milpersonages about them; yea, many sublaine, and so he dealt likewise with maiects, friends, and allies, abroad in Itany other, neuer vling mercy to any,no, ly, whom it imported to conferue and not so much as to his owne Kins-man. defend that Kingdome. And yet neuer-Besides, he neuer had any pitty or comtheleffe, though they fore-faw the passion on his poore people, for hee ftorm long before : they could not find made a very merchandize of his Kingmeanes to anoid it, nor make refistance dome, infomuch; that hee forced his any where. For, excepting onely the his facility Subjects to feede and fat his Hogges, Caftle of Naples, there was not any the Conquest and pay for them if they chanced to die. place, Town, or Fort, that flayed King of Naples. He bought vp all the Oyle and Graine Charles at one whole day . Infomuch, in the Countrey, before it was ripe, that Pope Alexander faid very wel; That and fold it afterward extreamely deare, the French-men came with Chalke in their compelling them to take it at his price, bands like Harbingers to make and take up and, while he fold, no man elfe might their lodgings wher they pleased : For they fell any. If any Noble-man or Gentle-

their Armour, in all the Voyage. Therefore I conclude, according to the opinion of very many good and religious men, and other forts of people (& the voyce of the people is the voice of God) that GOD did punnish these Naples. Kings visibly, and in such euident mantooke many Women by force. They 40 ner; that it might ferue for an example and admonition to all Kinges, to line well, according to the commandement of God. For these Kinges whereof I haue spoken, lost their Honours and Realme, great riches, and mooueables of al forts; yea, and their owne persons in the ende, three of them in the space of one yeare, or little more. And, as I haue understood of some (that were veuer kept any Lent, nor made fo much | 50 ry neere them) they found (in pulling downe an olde Chappell) a Booke, whereof the Title was ; The Truth, with her secret counsell; in which Booke, of the Conwas contained all that had happened after vnto them : And when they three (onely) had read it, they burnt it.

had not occasion, so much as to put on

The enident

King Ferdinan do of Naples. before King Charles entred into Italy. And Alphon to his Sonne (who then The idle brag ging of King

Guiteiard 1btd

The spirit of King Ferdi-nand apeared after his deth

The Kings of Naples depri-ued of their Kingdonie.

Guic, ibid. The torments of a guiltie Confeience.

Of the Conquest of Naples. Chap.21.

Thus much I thought good to fet down in the words of this wife and grave Authour, to the end, that not only the bad lines of these Kinges, but also his indgement may appeare concerning Gods Iuflice showed upon them and their whole Kingdome for the fame. And this may alfo bee confirmed by other perticulers. which Guiceiardine recounteth of them, and of the successe of that warre, signifying, that Ferdinando the Father being verie wife, and understanding of that intention of King Charles, to come and inuade his Kingdome; he feared so greatlie the fuccesse (in respect of his owne bad life and his fonnes) that hee laboured by all meanes possible, by Ambassadours and Friends to diverthim from his purpose, offering to pay him yearely Tribute, of 10000. Ducates, and to holde his King- 20 dom of him, by fealty and homage. And when hee faw that nothing woulde preuaile, hee fell ficke with forrow, and died

fucceeded him in the Kingdome)though he bragd long before that he woulde go so farre as to the Mountaines, to meete King Charles if he came forwards (which he faid, he would neuer beleeve he durft | 3 do) yet afterward, when the French were in Italy, and came so farre as Rome, hee tooke flich a fright, that he cried out every night, he heard the French-men comming, and that the verie trees and flones cried France. And, as Guicciardine affirmeth (who was not a man either eafily to beleeue, or rashly to Write Fables) it was credibly and constantly reported, that the spirit of Ferdinand his father, ap- 40 peared to one that had beene his Physition, and bad him tell his fonne Alphonio from him, that he thould not bee able to refift the Frenchmen. For God hadde ordained, that his progeny should (after many great afflictions) bee deprined of their Kingdome, for the multitude and great enormity of their finnes. And efpecially, for that which he had done(by the perswasion of Alphonso) himselfe, in the 50 Church of S. Leander, in Chaia necte to Noples, whereof he told not the perticulers.

Furthermore, the same Authour signifieth, that A phonfo was exagitated with fuspitions and feares, whiles he was waking, and in his fleepe, with the reprefen-

tation of the Noblemen, whom hee had caused to be secretly murdered in prisons (as I have declared before) and that being in this miferable perplexitie, he refigned his Crowne vnto his sonne (that was called Ferdinando, after his grand fathers name) and ranne away into sieily in fuch haft, that his Mother in law (with whom. only he communicated his intention)beto ling defrons to flie with him, coulde not perswade him to stay for her so much as three dayes, which the earnestly defired, to the end, the might have that comfort at least, to be Queen of Nap'es a ful year. But he told her, that if the would not go presently with him, he would leane her: protesting(as Phillip de Commes testifieth) mines in Carolo that if any fought to stay him by force, 8. hee would call himselfe, or t at the Windowes. Asking hir further, if the heard on the ling Brangely not enery one crie France, France. Thus tormented being tormented with the horrour of his with the horowne Conscience, and the terrour of conscience, Gods Indgements alreadie falue vppon fled into skily him : he fled into Sicily, taking with him divers fortes of delicate Wines, (which he had alwayes loued ouer-well) and form Garden feeds to fowe, and a few Iewels, and a little mony, without taking any order in the Worlde, for his goodes and Moneables, which he left in great quantitie and aboundance, in the Castle of

But being arrived in Sicily, and touched with Gods grace, he fell into the ag- King Alphosis count of his bad life past, and of Gods iu- very tepenflice executed vpon him, he becam verie tant. penitent, gaue great almes, and entered into Religion, in which offate, hee dyed foone after of the stone, with the extreamest torments that could be immagined, as fome of the Religious, with whom he lined, tolde after to Phill p'de Comines as himfelfe writeth. And to conclude the bid Cap. 19: Tragicall Hiftory of the Kings his forme Ferdinanday to whome hee refigned his Crowneili uing affembled al his forces, durst make no resistance any where your the French but fieldelbefore them from place to place, vitill artength, almost all his fubicates forfooke him, and reballed against him; whereupon; he fled also into Sicily, and within awhile dyed there. Loe heare the miferable calamity which (for the finnes of thefe Kings) fell not only vpon them, but also vpon their whole Kingdome, ferning for many yearesaf-

K. Ferdinand forfaken of his fubicets, fled into Sici y ana

ter, for a prey and spoile to forrain Nations, vntill at length it injoyed the repose, which now it hath vinder the K. of

CHAP. XXII.

Of a Courtier; And what manner of man he ought to be.

Popular opinion concer-ning a Cour

He reason inducing mee to write of a Courtier, is to write of a Courtier, take away a falle perswasi-on, imprinted in common on, imprinted in common and popular Indgement,

in thinking; that a Courtier is none other, the an afronter of Merchants, a Diffembler, a Flatterer, Incivil; a Lyer, a ruffian, a Swaggerer, a troublefome fellow: In briefe, a man made vp of all Vices, because that in the Kings times, the Sonnes to late King Henry the second, raigning in young yeares; many then were fuch, which being well observed by that worthie and great man, the Lord de Pybrack, inhis Poesie of Quatraines , hee sung 30 thus:

Le Sieur de Pv brac in fon Quatrains.

The Authors

Proposition,

Go not to Reuelles, if thou loue no dancing, Nor venter on the Sea, if thou feare danger Go nor to Bankets if thou canft not eate, Nor to the Court if thou speake what thou thinkest.

Now at this present, living in such a time, when wee have a King of a confistant age, of a ripe ynderstanding, and Princes and Princesses, that will have none in their Courts, but people of vertue; I purpose to propound, what manmer of man a Courtier ought to bee, and his cads. To qualify this errour of the people, wherein they have beene led ful manie yeares. Moreouer fuch as would or else pretend themselues to be. Courtiers, may heerein marke and learne, by what meanes and with what great faciliity, they shall attaine thereto.

First of all, he that defireth to followe the Courts of Emperors, Kings, Queens, A Courtier Dukes Dutcheffes, Marqueffes , and ought to be Noble by rac Earles, or other illustrious persons, ought to be a Gentleman by birth, and of a noble house of Antiquity: because it is lesse repreachfull for a Ycoman, to fail in the exercise of Vertuous actions, then for him that is Noble borne; who erring from those steppes which his predecelfors walkt in, foyleth the name & honor of his house and race. Before hee go to Of what yea-Court, he must be past the age of Adolescencie, which is about twentie or fine and twenty yeares of his age: for beeing much older, he will not finde it to his liking. Hee must bee well featured and formed, both of his bodye and countenance, least he be misprized and scorned. He must bee of an indifferent stature, to Of what stawit : neither extreamly high nor low: for men of fuch fort, are lookt on like things of monftrous shape. Hefide, men of fo great stature, ouer and aboue their common addiction, to dull vnderstanding are verie vnapt to all exercises of agility, matters verie commendable in a Cour-

He must be expert in all kind of arms, mes. to helpe himselfe, as neede shall require, both at all times, and in all places. He A goodhorfe must be a good Horseman, and actiue in managing him; that he may bee knowne (among others) to be hardie and valiant. He must be loyall and faithfull vnto him whom he ferueth, and addicted to acord quarrels and contentions, his own honor fafely kept, and his for whom hee maketh the agreement. Besides, as hee ought to be skilfull in Wrastling Leaping, dancing, and playing on fome or manie Infruments of Musicke, so should he likewife readily fing any Poet or Historian. He must be exquisite in speaking divers ker of manie Languages: if he be French, English, or by visiting what elfe, he ought to speake Latine, Ita- Countries. lian, Spanish, yea the Germaine tongue tongue also, if it be possible. And for his better attaining thereto, before hee pra-Ctife any of them, he must have visited the Countries where the Languages are naturally spoken. For, to learne them by Bookes, he shall never pronounce them truly. I meane the like of other Nations, in regard that the Frenchmen ? Italians, Spaniards, and Germaines, do ordina. rily converse together.

He must not vie any fortish presumption, nor bee a reporter of weariforne his goodpath Offenfine speeches, in steade of such as may better please . Hee must not bee Opinitiue, or Contentious, as some doe feeme to have no other delight, then in

Of what form

No vanter or

Iells comended for wit &

The Historie

of a Malon of

Habit often-

times makes

A lovall Ser

Actine in ex-A good Mus

A ready fpea

No learning of Language

> The Spanish pieces of fixe pence Value.

> > ling fearfe ommenda

Of a Courtier.

No troblesom being crosse and troublesome, like Flies

Chap. 22.

Bad and vndecent quali-

Fame purfu-

or Waspes, and make it their profession, to gainfay euery man despightfully, with-out any respect at all. He must bee no prater, Vaine-glorious Boaffer, Lyer, Flatterer, or Knaue; but moderate and peaceable, vfing enerinore (efpecially in publicke) reuerence and refrect towards his Lorde, which is most commendable in a fernant. Fame and renowne do follow all good parts, if they appeare in action, both in due time and place, and he canot faile in thefe things, but to his own great dishonor. He must make no vants of himselfe, except he be truly valiant, & haue acted fome great enterprizes, or done fome memorable Stratagems, Neither must be vie any lests, that may offend his Prince, or others : except hee order his icfts, and fo fattor them, as the Prince may speake their woorth for wit and discretion, and not reproue them with want of Judgement; but, insted of displeasure, thinke them to deserve both respect and

To this purpose, wee may alledge the Historie of a Marshal of France tearmed of S. Andrew, who knowing that King Henry, fecond of that name, could hardly finde an Architect to his liking, to forme him a model for two bodies of lodgings, which he purposed to build at Fontainebleau, brought him a man of Lymoline, a Mason by his trade, yet ignorant . But hauing fitted him with fufficient habite. he made the King beleeue, that hee was a great Architect, verie deepely experienced in that Art, & that it was the fame man, who had projected al the buildings which Charles the fift, Emperor and king of spaine, had caused to bee made. And indeed, this poore man had bin in Spaine, in his yonger years, to gaine fome knowledge by Trauaile, for his best practife could not maintain him in his own countrey. And having gotten in Spaine (in the compasse of fixe or seatten yeares) some fiftie*Reals of filuer; thinking himfelfe to be the richest man in his Countrey, hee returned home againe. Hauing spent a good part of his Money, he had married another Wife; for all Lymofines, or pcople of those parts, vling Mechanical professions, when (for lucres sake) they tra-

uaile into Spaine: they marrie there (for

the most part) to weomen that doo but

lend themselues (as it were) for that time,

and comming into their owne Country there they are at libertie againe to take other Wines.

This poore Mason came to dwell at Orleance, having spent well-neere all his Reals, and eaten up his Wiles Dowrie befide, which might amount to twente pounds the heard there of fom other Mafons, that earned daily featien or eight *Sols or Sous, and in his Countrey, they had no more but two Sals, or fix *Blanks. The Lorde Marthall meeting with this Mafon by chance, as hee walked one day abroad in the Fieldes, to paffe awaie the Halica sal time pleafantly : he fell into Conference with him, and found that he had a verie proude and ouer-weening prefumption of his owne fufficiency. So much the rather, because hee was a workeman at the building of the new Concent of Nostre Dame ae Monferrat. Wherein indeed he Prefumption holpe to Supply the Masons with Mor- never warmed ter, which made him of opinion, that he felly. was the verie best Architect of his time : Albeit hee vnderstood little or nothing, scarsly knowing howe to order or lay a

Stone in a wall in his right place. The King crediting the Lord Marshals wordes, spake a long time together in good French to the Mason, and yet vn-the Mason, and yet vn-the Mason, the Mason, the Mason derstood nothing backe again from him: for he stoode with his Hat on without vfing any renerence to the King, or respe-Ching him any more, then if he had beene his daily companion. Sometime, hee called his maiefly Mounfieur, or my Lord the King, fpeaking one while Limofine, then again thrusting forth a word or two of spanelb: the King perceiving nothing all this while, but continued his speeches earnestly to the Mason, that hee might at

full vnderstand his mind. At length, the King beholding that all the standers by smiled, and aboue all, the Lord Marthall, defired to knowe the reason of their Laughter; which beeing disclosed to him, himselse fall into a verie mirthfull humour, and laughed heartily, because he had no better noted the Language, the Crifpe countenance and ignorance of the poore Mason. Nor did the King any way take the ieft offenfinely; but contrarywife, was well pleafed, & much commended the Lorde Marshall for it: The like maner of iesting, innented by a quicke and apprehenfine spirite, An aduertifewith observation of time and place; may Courser.

*The French thi ling, ten whereof doe

make one

rioufly speak-

bee

of the Prince

Of Speeches

Of Requests.

Chamber.

Of mockes, girds, & tants

vieno bitter or vnfanoury mocks, girds, or tants, neither towards poore or Rich, and especially not to women, who (in regard of their imbecility) are to be respected. He must forbeare entrance into the Princes Chamber, except he be called, or commaunded thither. If the Prince haue retired himselfe, to recreate his spirit, beware of vsing any speeches to him, that may fauour of irkeformes, but rather of Delectation. Let him not request any thing for himself, that former-

Of Princes fauours.

Of vndecent feruices, if they be vrged

Of reprehen-

A Courtiers ainse and end

Of Garments

Election of

Companie

keeping, and behauiour.

ous friend, and not two (for two will carrie themselus better together then three) conformable to himselfe in life and manners. Neuerthelesse, hee must loue, ho-

be permitted in a Courtier, not offending his Prince, but vsed with such discretion, as may rather procure recompence, then any difgrace.

In these pleasant behauiours, he must lyhath beene mooued by another, and may be to his aduatage, euermore fhunning importunity in fuch proceedinges. Let him attend the fauors of his Prince, and not demand them; anoiding folitude least either he be thought vain glorious, or weake spirited.

By foule and vnfitting actions, neuer feeke to compasse fauour, as seruing in murderous or Bawdy employments; but if such occasions be offered, let a diffembled deafenesse excuse it, or some other prinate matter, cause present retirement, which may returne answere, without any other reply. For a Courtier that falles into fuch imployments for his Prince, vpon ouer-much pressing, may well declare the case to be dishonest: and if hee still persist, let wisedome give direction to withdraw from his Court. For, reprehensions may not bee given to Princes publickely, but private and apart, albeit he exceed his Prince in yeares . For, a Courtiers aime only should be, to teach his Prince A Courtiers Garmentes ought to be of blacke colour, or of such darke decencie, as may rather expresse grauity, then giddineffe or glory. Except it be in Armes, Maskes, or Triumphes, where gay and goodly colours are more fitting, and Imbroideries, Iewelles, and

Magnificent pompe. Let him entertaine one only Vertu- 50 nor, and respect all other friends, according to their worth and merit. He must also endeuour daily, to confort himselfe

with men of esteeme, Noble by Nature and birth, and fuch as are truely knowne to be men of Honor and Honofty, rather then Villaines, or prople of no credite. His care likewise must be, to be beloued and honoured of them, which he cannot faile of, if he be courteous, humaine, liberall, affable, and kind in company, ready to pleafure any, diligent in feruice, & carefull of his friends honor, eyther abfent or prefent; supporting their naturall and tollerable defects, without breach of Nottoo much amity betweene them, for final matters, correcting fuch errors in himself, as shall pending o be louingly thewne him, without effections ming himselfe about others, or affecting the highest and most honourable places. And he must not imitate some humours, that seeme to despise the world, & strine Austere life (by a kinde of troublesome austeritie) to prescribe Lawes or directions to others: fo that, besides their mollestuous and quarrelling condition, even for the leaft Trifles in the world; they will reprehend where they should not, and seeke all oc-casions to complaine of their verie best Friends, which is an odious and bad behauiour.

If it happen that he bee called or chal- Of the Duelli lenged to the Duello or fingle fight (as of- or fingle com tentimes it fals out in the courts of Print bate. ces) and by indifcretion or rashnesse, he must not ouer-violently and vnaduifedly present himselfe thereto, but with a cool and temperate carriage, even as compelled or enforced to his aunswere. And if the businesse can fall out no otherwise, but he must needs proceede to the acte; for fafety of his honor, he may boldly vn

40 dergo it. It is also absurde and ynfightlie in a Ofsports and Courtier, to carry himselfe extreamelie Passines. or enragedly in any sport or recreation: for then hee resembleth rather a furious Madman, then one of civill and fetled condition. His conversation must be Violence in fober, and (aboue all things) hee must auoid drunkennesse, and beware of those trickes, which are too ordinarily vsed in Courtes, in strining who shall foonest Of Drunken make a man drunke, onely to shame and nesse. difgrace him. In being a man of fuch behaujour, cuery one will bee fure to note and fcome him; and the Prince himselfe will ftande doubtfull of his honeftye: or, how he should trust him with any case of Consequence, for Drunkardes are vnapt

Maintenance

perforts for State affaires. Playing with the Prince.

If he bee inuited by his Prince to anie play or pastime; he may safely yeild therto, not in hope to make gaine of himsbut only to yeild him contentment. And let him be careful, that he be not too opinitiue in any accident against him: but giue way to him in all, and by al meanes, in regard of fo great inconveniences that thereby do daily happen. Likewise, let him not immitate some,

who will spare no time (either daie or

night) from playing, but thereby do lofe

many faire occasions, of performing fom

good Offices vnto their Prince, whence

might be deriued great merit and fauors.

Some haue beene noted to assiduate and

earnest, that they would play away lands,

houses, Garments, yea, their verie Hor-

row (by importunitie of their Friendes)

without any re-payment, whereuppon,

haue enfued Contempts, Quarrels, and

Let him not speak of any thing which

fes and Armours: and afterwards, bor- 20

Too much de light in play or sport.

Chap.22.

he vnderstandeth not, wherein hee shall expresse more Wisedome to bee silent: How to couer his ignorance and imperfe-tion of bodie. for it is an honest shaddow and cloake to his ignorance. Likewife, if he have anie imperfection in some part of his body, let him hide and concease it by all possible

Bloud.

meanes. As did Ferrand King of Naples, who would neuer plucke off his Gloues, because his hands were not white. Inline Ferrand King Cafar also did daily weare a Chaplet of

In his talke and discoursing, hee must report no Myracles, that is to fay, things that are not likely, nor neuer were. They that make profession of relating such noueltics, are enermore held for Lyers; and

Courtier.

Bayes, because he was bald,

He must keepe his credite with Mer-

chants and others, not following the dea-

ling of many, who are beholding to fuch

as lend them: yet must be daily importu-

ned to make repayment, even vnto fuch

enforcement, as their goodes and landes

must be seazed on, yea, sometimes their

bodies confined to prison. These beha-

tiours, do rather rellish of a man veterly

lost and forfaken, then of a Vertuous

euery man that is a lyar, will cary the like credit of beleefe, when he speaketh truth. Laughter likewife, except it light vppon, good ground, is no vvay commendable: For any man, that is subject vnto long

laughter, and without some sounde subiect, deliners no better vuderstanding of himselfe, then of a meere Foole.

Now, because no Court appeareth to be compleat, except it be accompanied with Ladies; let vs admit the case, that our instant described Courtier, bee in fuch a Court fo worthily furnished; and and loue. where he may bee become an amorous feruant to some beauty, and to an honest end for (otherwise) he will find his own perill. He must not immediatelie make knowne his passions by parlannce, with furious gestures and obstinations, as many vnaduised Courtiers have done: But the best bewraver of his affections, are amorous continence, a figh, respect, fear, & humble meekeneffe, which availe more then a thousand fond words can do; and hee may fo order his carriage, that his eyes may ferue as his best messengers, & beare the true Embassie of his heart, to his deareft efteemed.

Afterward, by equall degrees, he may attaine to speak with his Goddesse, when a touch, or kiffe of the hand, and fuch like honest fauours, may civilly be derived from any Ladie of respect, honourablie affected . Wherefore, hee that hath not lost the restraint of reason, will Gouerne himselfe wilely, observe fit times and place; and (when neede requireth) will containe due regard verie diligently, although it bee in neuer fo fweete a pa-

Ature, because publick and apparant loue, is a matter of great difficulty to order. The ends then of a perfect Courtier, The end and fuch an one as I cannot heere fufficiently describe; is (in mine Opinion) to win by feet Courtier is to make his the meanes of those qualities which I Prince Verhaue fer downe to him, the fauour and tuous. affection of his Prince in such fort: that his fernice may bee alwaies commendable, and to tell him the truth in all things

that are convenient for him; to wit, without feare or danger of displeasing him. & fo to order himfelfe, that when he knowes his mind enclined to matters inconuenient for him, to bee so hardie as to gainfay them. Scruing him in gentle maner, and gaining fauour by the good parts in him, to the end that he may preuent all bad intentions in him, and conduct him the pathes of Vertue. And fo, our Courtier having nothing but good! cf a complean neffe in him, accompanied with promp titude of spirit, chearefulnes, providence,

Behauiour in cafe of Ladies

The best Ornaments in an

A Vertuous

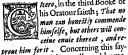
keth a good

wifedome, knowledge, in learning, and all other vertuous qualities: hee shall (in all occasious) woorthily make apparaunt to his Prince, what profite and honour commeth to him and his, by meanes of Iustice, Liberality, Magnanimity, Affability, Familiarity, and all other Vertucs which are conuenable for a good prince. And contrariwife, what infamy and loffe proceedeth from those Vices, which are fworne enemies to these Vertues . And for a full conclusion, 'as manie times it happenerh, that a Vertuous Courtier maketh the Prince good; fo a vicious
Courtier maketh his Prince wicked and detestable. Of this mind were all such, as haue medled in Writing of a Courtier; and among others, Balthazar the Ca-Rillanneis.

CHAP. XXIII.

How a man may give praife and commendation to himfelfe, without impeache or preindice to others.

The faying of Ciccroin lib.3. de Orat.



Icero, in the third Booke of his Oratour faieth; That no man can honestly commende himselfe, but others will conceiue enuie thereat, and re-

ing, albeit it hath beene allowed by many; yet it is not generally receyued and warranted. For, a man may lawfullie commend himselfe, without attraction of enuie vpon him: especially, if hee be a worthy Soldier, or a man of fuch merit, as can speake of generous actions, or valiant employments, if they beene perforbyhim, and their Carracter apparant. Iulius Cefar may ferue for an example , who hath spoken great matters of himfelfe, and yet (for al that) no way discommendable therein. His Commentaries which discourse of nothing, but his braue and generous exploits in the Gaulifb Warres, were seene and read of all men in his time, yet no way blamed or despited, so farre as we know; but on the

contrarie, were highly praifed, both in regard of his eloquence, as also his singular expeditions.

But, if he had attributed to himselfe. or made vaunt of more then was performed by him: hee could not have stoode cleare from mallice, yea, in great men, who durft and would haue boldly tolde him, that hee lyed And all fuch perfons as doe make vaunt of finall matters, or of any thing done by the meanes and helpe of others, attributing fuch actions foly to themselues : they cannot doe it. but with great shame and infamy.

In men of good and worthy respecte,

Of personner

it hath beene, and is permitted (cuen for permitted to the benefit of others) to speake descrued-ommended by of themselves, and to their owne ad-themselves, uantage. As, if in procuring to bee credited, we render a reason of an honest integritie, by some effects of our owne past before; to the end, that having the meanes to continue our Vertuous actions, for the profit of manie : we may imbrace their praise, in despight of their ownespleene (as we tearme it) and conftraine them to receive both profite and pleasure from vs, euen such as would else thun all like occasions.

This was it, which made Themisto- the Athenia cles vie these wordes in the Counsell of the Athenians, even when be fawe them fully glutted with his good deedes. O
poore people (quoth hee) why doe you suffer
your felus to receive so manie benefits from one and the same per son? At another time hee vied these Words to them. In time of Raine and Tempestes, you make your recourse to me, as under the spreading armes of a Tree. And when faire vveather comes againe, you teare downe each branch as you

pase by. Homer maketh Nestor to speake his owne Valiant deedes, to encourage Pa-Homer of No. trotlus, and nine other Knightes, in at- flor. tempting the Combate (bodie to bodie) against Hetter. In like maner, the words of exhortation, action of the hande, and of exhortation, action of the hards, The verue example with the Spurre of amulation; of words well delivered delivered. is lively, and pierceth meruailously; yea, it bringeth (with courage and affection) hope to attaine vnto the heighth of anic thing, which otherwife woulde appeare impossible, A man mayallo commend himselfe gratitude.

before an ingratefull person, to shewe

him his fault, in forgetting former benefits received. A ftraunger, to gaine the good opinion of Inhabitants, amongest whom he is newly arrived may attribute fome honourable Title vnto his present condition, and speake well of himselfe. As it is to bee noted in Virgil, that Aneas did, after the Destruction of Troy his natiue Countrey, wandering by Sea and Lande, to feeke a newed welling, vfing these Wordes (when Enquire was made of him) Sum pine Eneas, that is to fay, I am Eneas the Troyan, full of Pictic and Religion, it ewing the Goddes his aged feeble Father, and his verie young fonne, whom (with great perrill) he had faued from the ruine and destruction of his Countrey; and this was not vnfitting

I have many times beene amazed at

Cicero appro-und to be forgetful of him-

Chap. 23.

A straunger

the reason for

Cicero, who Writes (as I have fayde in the beginning of this Chapter) that a man in praising himselfe, dooth but attract Malice and Enuie on his own heads And yet notwithstanding, there is an Epittle of his owne, which (in verie vehement affection) he wrote to an Historiographer; wherein hee entreats him, not to bee vomindfull of inferting in his Hiflories of memorable actions, what hee 30 hadde written perticulerlie of himfelfe. In mine opinion, there was neither man-ners nor Modesty, but excesse beyond al reason. There is nothing more vaine, or fur-ther off from equity, then for men to pur-

fue the Quest of their owne praise & re-

Men fhoulde not couet their owne

thrifippus and

The vanity of

nowne. Chrisippus and Diogenes vvere the first Authors, and firmest of al other. in the contempt of glory; for they faide, 40 That among al defires, there is none more daungerous or with greater care to be aunided, then that which commeth to vs from the approbation of others. And all the glorie of the world, is of no fuch merrit, as that a man of on terflanding , (bould fo much as fretch foorth his finger, onely to gaine it. There are manie men in thele dayes, that will never adventure in the portilles of Warre, or where their duty most com- 50 mandeth them; if they thought that they frould not be seene, or it should not bee publickely reported, that they have perfourmed some perriculer deed of praise, beyonde the honour they presended to enion, only because they are couetous of

glory and reputation.

(where is the true feate of Vertue) hould ferne vs to no other end, but to vie them as a rule and order, without any endeuor to attain the knowledge of them in other persons: Vertue then thould bee a verte vaine and friuolous thing, if thee deriued her commendation from Glorie. For what is more cafuall and accidentall then reputation ? To cause that our Actions Thould be feene and knowne, belongeth Not to be no to the Handle-worke of Fortune Of ted, is to do tentimes, the reputation of an action wel | well continu

three or foure dayes ? Other whiles, fo

long as hee and his lineth; and yet foone

after, no more memorie remaineth of

Of Praise or Commendation

performed, continuent (it may bee) but

Some there are, that will rashlie and willingly fall into daunger, to purchase Fallehonour

falle Honor; and dving fo, he is neuer after fo much as talkt of : whereby both he and his renowne dooth perith together. It hath been meere hazard, that is reported of some Captaines ; Crecians , Romaines, Persons, French, Germaines, and others; as also of an hulldered thousand Fortunentuch men, that are dead, in execution of worthy enterprizes, or hindering of them, commendati yet none spoken of, because all depended on. on Fortune. Wee reade , that Cafar was neuer wounded; yet was he prefent in more then fiftie battailes, and at infinite Citties furprizing. Whereas others. voon much leffe occasions, have beene maimed and flaine : and what can be faid

of Cafar heerein, but that it was his good

Fortune? It hath beene, and yet is an ordinary Vice, that we are more defirous of great | The common then of good Reputation : And it appeareth to be sufficient, that our names run thorowe other mens mouthes, as recevning there both life and lafting, and must Beetherekept, out of our owne pofferfron. But Wise men do propose vinto themselves a more just and certain end, in any Important enterprizes, to wit; actions of Vertues, which are fo Noble of themselus; is there needs no other praise or recompence to be fought for, but ente endeauor of their owne Worth & value; and Namely, vertions man not to fecke for their effective, in the val nitie of humaine judgements. And yet notwithstanding, this falle opinion fer-

The duty she

Ηh

An exceptió against the laying of Circ-

Of Cafars Co

353

ueth to containe men in their denoire, that it may bee executed with a certaine caution and modesty. In this manner, Women of what degree focuer, may be aduertised, when they are sought after by lascinious men; not to make refusall, by faying, they holde their Honour in account: but rather to tell them, that it is their dutie to gouerne themselues chaft-

Of Lyfander the famous Lacedemonia Soldier.

Lyfander, the great Lacedemonian captaine, answered a certaine odde Fellow, who told him; That he would commend him enerie where, and counter-checke all his Dispraisers. I have two Oxen (quoth he) in the fielde that cannot speake, and yet nevertheleffe, I know that which is good for labour, from the other that is not. Heereby he gaue to vnderstand, that vertue stood in no neede of mens Commendations, confidering thee carrieth with her felfe good renowne and honor: but fuch men as do not performe any Vertuous acte, they (indeed) haue need of popular prai-

Antifthenes the Athenian, made a mockerie of fuch, as by fumptuous buildings, Statues, Trophies, and composition of Books, promised vnto themselues an immortall reputation: for he taught them, 30 that the true and only means of compaffing praise, was to line justly and Religioully. It was also one day told him, that certaine scelerous and bad persons commended him: whereto he replyed If Juch men praise me, I feare that I have commitsed some foule offence : perswading himfelfe, that fuch kind of people can neuer giue any good reputation. Erethrion the Sophister, hearing that

he was ordinarily commended by Alexi-

nus, answered; That is a great meruail, for

I do nothing but detract and speake enill of

him in all places where I come . Declaring

by this answere, that he would not have

his renowne to be wronged and baffeld

by fuch an one as was worthy of nothing

but reprehension . And to speake the

truth, this Alexinus was a man of no rec-

koning, or deserved to have anie good

speeches vsed of him. For, vpon a time,

as hee was verie vehemently depraying

Stelpo the Megarian, reputed in those

times for a great Phylosopher, one sud-

denly told him, that it was not long fince

that Seilpe had spoken verie well of him,

and with great respect, giving him extra-

Of Erethrion theSophister

The praises of bad & wic-ked persons, are worth no

ordinarie Commendations: By Impiter (answered Alexinus) I fay at this prefent, that Stilpe is a very braue & excellent man: Thus yee may discerne, what vanity and inconstancy was (in an instant) apparantly discouered in Alexinus.

The Reader may gather by this Dif-courfe; that hee should neuer give anic Conclusion praise of himselfe, except hee haue done on this Argu-Tomething that commendeth it felfe, and may thereby incite others to Vertue, although thorough want of Modestie, he shall otherwise bee blameable. In like manner, not to deferre or keepe himfelfe from dooing well and Vertuously, when any occasion shall aptly offer it selfe, and where his owne perticuler dutie both bindeth and commandeth him, albeit no Witnesses, Beholders, or Scriueners stand by, to Register or set downe his actions in Writing. So banishing from ys all fuch vanity, wee shall well content our felues with that recompence, which Vertue draweth after her continually; because it is immortall, and subject vnto no perrithing, as that Renowne is, which dependeth wholy on mens judge-

CHAP. XXIIII.

By what varietie of meanes , Frances Sforza, and Nicholas Pichiniue wonne the renowne, of being the most skilful men in the Art Military, that lived in their dayes.



T appeareth, according to Naturall Reasonsthat he who hath attained to any degree, in anie Art or Facultie whatseuri it bee, ought whollie to falls thereto, following

accomodate himfelfe thereto, following his beginning, thereby to purchase his Fame and Reputation. Neuerthelesse, we do daily fee, that (by divers meanes) men reach to one & the fame end, wherof we have infinite examples: Among which, it likes me to nominate Fraunces Sforza, who afterward was Duke of Mil-

Chap.24.

Of Sforza and Pichinine.

when they

laine, and Nicholas Pichinine the Italian, men verie singuler and expert in Armes: who were in the time of King Alphon (us. of Arragen and Naples, and of Lewes Maria, Duke of Millaine. Thefe two Cabtaines were very contrarie and entious

against each other, because they severally pretended, to beare chiefe honour in Armes aboue his competitor. In which respect, they both declared such courage I o and dexterity of spirit; as for a long while it was vehemently doubted, whether of them merited most to be preferred. This equall contention fo long continued, till after expence of many yeares, and fundry well fought battailes on both fides; Pichinine was Conquered: by meanes whereof, Sforza having the right apparantly on his part, got the glorie, was made Duke of Millaine, and was the fole 20 Maister, or (at least) the more fortunate

These two Contenders, attained (by

diners meanes) to great effecime and re-

putation. Nicholas Pichinine, was fo li-

tle of bodie, as for that cause only he was

called Pichinine. But albeit he was offo

litle stature, he was contrarie thereto, in

greatnesse of heart, and vndantable reso-

and them he vitted but badly too : wet he

comprehended in them manygreat mat-

ters. With his Soldiers, he was of a chear

full and recreatine spirit; and bountiful to

his friends; but tharpe and furious to his

enemies. In warre, he was enermore de-

firous to come to the point, and alwayes

(as occasion gane way) hee would gine

present battaile, wherein he wanted nei-

in exposing himselfe to perils : euermore

hating eafe, and offuch a prompt dispo-

polition, as many times he would take his

enemies vnprouided. Hee much deligh-

ted in Watch-Towers, Beacons, and

Ambuscadoes, affecting more to vie the

feruice of Horsse, rather then Foote, in

warre; coueting still to have his follow-

ers Valiant, sharpe of Nature, & dread-

full. This Captaine was of fo great fpi-

rit, that he could no way be daunted, or

declare any figne of feare, albeit his ene-

mies were never fo many in number. He

had a finguler grace and dexteritie in

caufing his men to march faire, and gui-

ding them fafely : and to conclude, hee

won so many excellent Victories in di-

ther wit or counfell, and was provident |

lution. He was a man of few Wordes, 30

The reason of Pichinine

long conten-

tionconclu-ded at laft.

His marria!! courage and dipolition.

His maner of

His fortune & fucceffion

uers parts of Italy, that he was renowned for a finguler good Captaine.

Now, as concerning his Competitor, Frances Sforza, his qualities and dispositions were quite contrary to those of Pichinine. He was bigge of body, well pro-portioned, and strongly limbd, of gentle countenance, a quicke ftirring eye, baldheaded, a good prefence, copious in difcourse, and well ordered, a linely spirite, and well aduised, desirous to reach high enterprises, and patient in aductities, He alwayes anoided the meanes of breaking Warre, labouring more to vanquish by befiedging, or temporizing, then prefent fight. He would never gine battaile, except he were enforced thereto, or that he faw himfelfe vpon a great aduenture. He would have his men march in good Order; and by the best meanes to be valiant. and yet gracious: making more account his men. of his Infanterie, then his Compleateft Horsemen, continually preferring them to the greatest stratagems, because hee placed best trust in them. He was firme

and conftant in all his enterprizes, quick and wife in beguiling his enemie, and difcouering his Fallacies in all Branadoes made vppon him . In Nouell inuentions, he would fland vpon his guard; being a man of readye counfell, and aproft forit in all occasions. By which Rules and Observations (although they were fo different from those

in the other) he was effected as a woorthy Soldier, attaining (by divers meanes and deuifes) to the Dukedom of Millain, and to be one of the cheefest men in the world. Of these two men, so descruedly famous, manie Moderne Historians liane largely written : especiallie Aneas Syluins, Pope, in his Colinography, and Anthonius Sabellicus, in his Eneades, wher fuch Readers, as are defirous to bee further informed, concerning these men, inay read more amply their liues and actions; for in this place (according to our method in all observations; which barres vs from ful report, and bindes vs to breuitie) we are perfwaded, that we have fooken well and fufficiently.

CAP.

Of Francis Sforfa quite contrarie in respects to

His descrip-

His warre

His minde &

Historians written of CHAP. XXV.

That the Lyon naturally feareth the Cocke: with many other notable matters concerning the Lyon.

Nothing in this World o aflurance.

Naturall loue

or hatred a-

mong al crea-

fight, fmel, or

noife of a Cock, or an

light in a mans hand.

OD hath not made any creature in this Worlde so strong and powerfull, but there abideth in him some cause of seare or terror, and fomething is ordained to offend him. In

like maner, there is nothing in this world firme and affured, for one thing is destroyed by another; and the same also afterward, ruined by fome other thing: fo that we know not what may bee warranted, or which thing can bee kept from

Hence it ensueth, that oftentimes we shunne such thinges as are likely to hurt ys, and fall (some other way) into perils, which we least suspect or imagine. Moreouer, among Beaftes and other thinges 30 created, there is a kind of naturall Loue, or Hatred, by a fecret and conceald propriety; by meanes whereof, fome feeke and purfue, and others shun and anoyde each other . What Beaft is more ftrong then the Lyon, the Prince of Beafts? Not any, and therefore beares he that name, because (according to som Judgements) the worde Lyon in Greeke, fignifyeth a (King): Or, according to others (Sight) 40 & that in regard of his perfection in feeing, he is so named. But beeit howsouer, this powerfull Beast which euerie one feareth, so soon as he espieth a Cock, he fearfully gets him gone: and that by a fecret propertie in Nature, euen as the Hare shuns the Hound: and not onelie doth the fight of the Cocke cause this auoydance, but the verie finell, if he feele it far off; or hearing him Crow, it makes him maruailoufly affraid. Nor doth hee fhun this creature only, but also the noise of a Charriot or Waggon running on the way: and by no meanes can hee bee compelled to fray, if he fee a man bearing any light in his hand. Which feemeth to bee an incredible matter, that a Beaft

fo furious, should stand in awe or dreade of so small a thing: and yet notwithstanding, it hath been noted by experience: Besides, that which is Written by Plubelides, that which is Written by Plu-differen. Innie tarch, in his Booke of the difference be-explinitib 8. tweene Hate and Enuie: Pliny, Saint Ambrose, and Albertus Magnus, who fayeth and maintaineth, that if the Cock Animal. be of a White Colour, hee maketh the Lyon stande much more in feare of him. Nor can there any affured Reason bee yeelded in this case, but euen (as I formerly faide) that it commeth by a secret proppertie in Nature. And yet Lucre- Lucretius the tius, the Auncient Poet, fayth; That the old Poet. Cocke and his Feathers have a certaine propertie or qualitie, which the Lyon feeing, hee receiveth great terror thereby, and is not able by anie meanes to endure it.

Some others do attribute the cause of this feare, vnto the supreame and celesti- The opinion

this teare, vnto the supreame and celesti-all Influences, and not vnto the Beaftes this case, con Sight, Smell, or the matter it selfe. For, cerning the (fay they) these two Creatures are subiect vnto the Sunne, the Vertue whereof toucheth the Cocke more then the Lyon; and thence it ensueth, that the Inferiour and lesse Vertuous in this kinde(albeit the bigger and greater in (trength) feareth and obeyeth his superiour. And they hay moreouer, that in regarde the sunnes rung Cocke is of the Sunnes Nature, hee reioyceth and fingeth in the morning at the comming and rifing of the Sunne. But be it howfocuer, we know that the Lyon is more strong, and of greater spirit then all other Beafts; also, extreame in fury & crueltie, against all other of the like Na-

ture. Neuerthelesse, wee haue infinite plain and manifest examples, of his great Mildenesse and Clemencie, whereof it shall not bee amisse to alledge some, according as I finde them crediblie recor-

Appion the Greeke writeth (according as Aul. Gellius declareth, of a matter feen Elian in lib.d. by himself, & the same is likewise affirmd nimal. by Ælianus in his Book of Beafts) that in certaine feaftes, folemnly observed in the the great Theater (where divers kinds of to wild heafts Citie of Rome, it was vied as a custome in Saluage and cruell beaftes were kept, as in the Theater of Rome. Lyons, Leopards, and others) men condemned to death were brought and put in to the end that either they might bee denourd of them, or to deferue life by va-

knowledge of the Lyon.

Androdus com

meth to take

Chap.25.

The history of Androdus his Lyon.

A wonderfu

vertue in a

Lyon to a ma

The Emperor fendeth for Andredut, and vederstandknowledge of the Lyon.

liant defence of themselves, a Spectacle (indeede) verie cruell and inhumaine. It happened vpon a day, that among other offenders thus brought thither, a man named Androdus, Seruant to a Romaine Senator, was to take his Fortune, and amongst the other Beasts in the Theater. there was a Lyon of infigne power and greatnesse, as also verie cruel, which had bin brought lately out of Affrica, and the eyes of all the Beholders were fixed on this Lyon. The Beaft walking Maiestically about the place, beganne to looke aduifedly vpon Androdus; and feeming to confider, or take fome acknowledgement of him; went steppe by step toward him verie gently, albeit, in opinion of all the By-standers, to rent and teare him in peeces. But their expectation was deceined, for the Lyon bowing downe his 20 head, came curteously to androdus, who (trembling)awaited nothing else but immediat death; and walking along very louingly by him, stroked his bodie on the legges and thighes of Androdus, kilsing and licking his hands and feete, Leaping famiarly & gently on him; euen as young Whelpes, and other waiting Dogs are wont to doe, when they have not seene their Maisters in a long time.

Androdus perceiving the perticular affability of the Lyon vnto himfelfe, without any fliew of the least kind to any of the other condemned persons : cheared his difinaged Spirits, and made much of the Lyon, finoathed his head & havre with his hand, and looking adjustedly on him, came to former knowledge of him, deliuering manifest figues of iny and gladnesse, conceyned by this notice takon. Wherear the people were not a litle amazed, & stricken with great astonishment, giving forth straunge and variable speeches, according as each fancie made coniccture. By meanes whereof, the Emperor caused androdus to be fent for thence, and beeing brought instantly before him; defired to vnderstand for reafon for this private and familiar acquaintance, and where hee had formerly feene that Lyon. Whereto he answered, that having beene in Affrica, at fuch time as his Lord was Lieutenant Generall, and great Gonernour there and of that Prouince in regard of some wrongs & outrages done to him by his faide Lord, hee was enforced to become a fugitive, and

having no other place of shelter or safetie, went fecretly into a great Forrest. where he tooke vp his lodging in a Caue or Den. Not long had he staid there, but this Lyon entered in yoon him, and not only abstained from doing any harm Lyon, and the but lying downe before him, shewed him by him to the one of his pawes, which was wounded Lyon. and bleeding, even as if hee would have defired helpe and remedie of him for his griefe. Androdus dreading no danger by this milde behauiour, tooke vp the Lions legge, and looking vppon the bleeding wound, found a great tharpe Thorn Ric-king in the foot, which plucking forth fo gently as possibly he could, hee steinched the blood, so that the paine appeared to be indifferently appealed. This begins done, the Lyon laying his head in the lap of Androdue, flept verie foundly; & from thence-forwardes, the Lyon walking abroad daily, would bring the best preyes he could get (by his hunting) to Androdue, who dreft his food in the Mid-dayes Sun, because hee had no other fire, and was well contented with fuch provision.

this kind of life. Wherefore vpon a day,

when the Lyon was gone abroad about

his wonted game; Androdus departed thence, to take such fortune as might be-

fall him. Not farre had he trausiled from

death, as others in the like cafe were vili-

ally fentenced, fent him with the other

offenders to the publicke Theater there

to be torne in pieces by the wilde Beafts.

and there the Lyon tooke knowledge of

the Emperour had heard this admyrable

Lyon likewife, because he had extended

fuch fauor to him. Thenceforward, and

a long time after, the Lyon daily walked

thorow the streetes of Rome, in the com-

pany of Androdus onely, without dooing

harme to any body, which was the cause,

that manie Romaine Cittizens affected

Androdus greatly, and bestowed divers

liberall giftes on him, tearming him the

Hha

After hee had lived thus continually Androdin lived with the Lyon, for more then the fpace with the Lion more then 3. of three yeares, he grew to bee wearie of yeares.

the Forrest, but he was met by some that Androdus is knew him to be a fugitive feruatint ! and brought to his therefore brought him home to Rame to Mailler, and

him, as formerly hath bin related, VV hen History, in his owne gracious Nature &

at the peoples importunity : Androdus his Lyon, are was deliueredand fet at liberty, fo was the berty.

The first mee-

his Maister, who judging him worthie of fent to death.

4. Booke.

The Lyon wounded, comes to man for remedie.

Lyons Physition, and the Lyon the host to Androdus. Thus the Lyons misfortune, to be wounded in the foote by a Thorne: instinct of Nature taught him, to make his recourse to man for helpe. And this appeareth to be verie true, because we have manie more examples to the fame effect, aledged by Authors worthy of credit.

Plin.lib 8. Of Mutor the Syracufane, that holp another wounded Lyon.

Plin.lib.9.

Elpis of Samo

who cured

wounded.

another Liot

Pliny, in his Booke fore-named, speaketh of a Syracusane named Mutor, who being in Syria, mette with a Lyon, that presented himselfe gently before him, & couching downe on the grounde, made fignes (as it were of entreaties) to him; but the Syracu/ane beeing fearefull of his life, fled away from him, with all the haft he could vie. The Lyon still followed, and got againe before him, fawning on him, and licking him verie kindely, till at length the Syracu fan perceiued the Lyon to bee wounded in the foote: which the Lyon lifting vp vnto him, euen as if hee desired to be eased; Mutor tooke foorth a sharpe splinter of Woode, which (by treading thereon) was runne farre into the Flesh, and so the Lyon was released. This Historie, being painted in a goodly Table by the same Mutor in Syracufa, continued there long after, as a true Te- 30 stimonie thereof. The same Authour speaketh also of

another man, named Elpis, borne in Samos, who being disimbarqued in Affrica; espyed somewhat neere vnto the Hauen, a Lyon roaring, making towardes him, moaning and complaining verie greeuously. The man beeing fearefull, for Safetie of his life got vppe into a Tree, at the foote whereof, lay the Lyon flat vpon his backe, deliuering manie cries and moanes, lifting vp and Thewing his paw all bloody, even as to moove the man to commisseration.

Elpis looking more aduitedly, with better courage descended from the Tree, and drew a great I horne out of the Lyons foote. In acknowledgement of which good turne done vnto him, so long as the Shippe remained in that Hauen: 50 the Lyon brought him and his men dayly, great store of Flesh, which hee hadde kild in hunting, in a neere neighbouring Forrest, wherewith they were long time relected.

These Histories, are the better to be credited, by that which (in like manner)

happened vnto Saint Hierome, who healed a Lyon, that hadde received the like hurr; in recompence whereof, the Ly- wounded Lyon kept companie with Saint Hieromes on. Asse, that was Laden with Wood, euen till he brought him home vato his Here

Wee read moreouer, that Godfrey of Bullen, after hee had Conquered the Ho-Bullen, after nee nad Conquered the Line of Godfrey of ly Land, rode vppon a day on hunting in Bullen, and a Iudea, where hee found a Lyon fighting Lyon fuccout with a Serpent: which Serpent had fo red by him. writhed and knit his taile and body about the Lyon, that he was in verie great danger of death . But the Serpent beeing flaine by Godfrey, the Lyon in remuneration of this benefite, followed and accompanied him daily, without departing from his guard : and euer when he went on Hunting, the Lyon served in stead of his Grey-hound.

It chaunced afterwardes, that Godfrey fayling vpon the Sea; the Lyon was lefte behinde him, and his Maister retirned not, to take him with him in the Shippe: vet fuch was the Loue of the Lyon vnto his Maister, that he would needes swim after him in the Water, and was drowned before he could be fuccored. Concerning those Lyons of Babylon, that did no harme voto the Prophet Daniell, and divers other belides, that (in the times of Dioclesian and Numerian, Emperours of Rome) not so much as touched those Christians, which were nakedly throwne vnto them, for foode and fustenaunce: I fet not them downe as examples of the Naturall loue or qualitie in Lyons, beecause Godhad a woorking power in so high a businesse; and those blessed Fauours proceeded only from his appointment.

Amongest other notable thinges of Amongelt other notable thinges of Of noblena-That he will neuer do anie hurt to man, Lyon. except hee be thereto constrained thorough great necessitie and Hunger. If hee then chaunce to meete a man and a Woman together, hee addresseth himfelfe rather vnto the Man, then vnto the Woman; and neuer (or verie seldome) The Lyon in doth he anie hurt to Children . It ap for immitation of the Lyon (in immitation of the Lyon (in immitation of the Lyon) man) hath fome Audacitie in thinges regainer. that concerne honour, with a kinde of feare to derogate from it . For, if hee finde himselse to bee pursued, and

Astrange stoded Lyon.

Aelianus in lib.

Of a Lion and

his Lyonnesle

He Animal,

ledge of it by her fmell, and then will beate and punnish her very grieuously. Likewise, when the Lyon waxeth so old, as he can fight no longer, neyther chase any other Beastes : his young Lyons, that are more strong and able, doe belpe to prouide for him, and killing Plin.in lib. 8. Ariflot. in lib. their feuerall preyes, they bring it to E at g.de Ahim him where he is, to feede thereon. The Abertus Magmus in lib. 22. Authours to approue al these thinges, are Pliny, Aristotle, Albertus Magnus, Solmus in Poliand Iulius Solinus; who doe write many

knowes that he is feene: he goes with a flow and tardy pace, to declare no want of courage in his flight. But if he know himselfe to bee in the thickest Woodes, and where no eye can catch hold of him : his flight is then to his vttermost power. It is further faide, that when hee flyeth in this manner, he neuer looketh behinde him, to declare thereby, how much hee contemneth them that follow.

The Lyon, by meere inflinct or mo-

tion of nature, is of such great and per-

Wonderfull knowledge in the Lyen by inflinct of na-

Chap.26.

feet knowledge, that if any man wound him with a Lance, or any other kind of W capon : let him bee in the company of neuer so many men, yet length of time is no hindrance to him, but hee will felect him out among them all, and be reuenged on him, if he can . To this 20

purpose, Elianus declareth the History of a young Infant, nourithed and brought up by luba, King of Mauritania, who growing further in years, and riding on hunting with the King; wounded a Lyon with his Launce. But

the Lyon recouering his hurt, within fome long while after, the King paffed by the same Mountaine where the Lyon was wounded, accompanied with the same young Gentleman that did the deede, and a great many more in the fame affembly. The Lyon knowing

him that formerly had hurt him, came with great fury and animofity, and entring into the thickest of themsyled his fight and fauour in fuch fort, as, if the

young Gallant had not beene stronglie def nded, the Lyon had torne him ther in piccesa: The same Authour, and fundry o-

thers beside doe assure vs, of matter (in

my mind) very marualous, to wit; that

if a Lyonesse haue companied with an-

other Lyon : her Male doth take know-

other matters, which now I speake not off. Onely I thought it good to fet downe these examples, for to confound cruell and vnthankfull men; in shewing then, that among brute and fauage Beafts, clemency is not only found, but also acknowledgement of good turnes received.

CHAP. XXVI.

Who was the first Manthat tamed the Lyon's And of Lysimachus, a Captaine to great Alexander, what hapned between him and a Lyon.



He powerfull Beaft, wherof we have discourred in our precedent Chapter, although he is so cruell & furious; yet notwith fan-

ding, he hath beene tamed and made gentle, by diligence and dexterity in Man. The first that cuer vndertook that labour, was a Carthagenian by birth, and thage first ta-

the fierce Lyon; he might the more ea-

fily perswade the Cittizens, and worke

with them what himselse pleased. He

togentlenesse: as lice would put their

neckes into vokes, and make them draw

his Chariot where focuer he rode. We

gabalus, of whose prodigatities and lu-

brienies, we shall finde fitter place to

fate in his Stare, the Lyon Would lye

downe close at his feere. MeBire Leques

named Hanno; but the reward he recei- med the Lyon ued therefore, was bannishment from

his Countrey. For they faid, that this act of raming the Lyon, was a prefaging of fuch a Spirit in him; that hee would make himselfe Lord of the coun-

trey . But Plinie faith, that the reason Panin Lib. 16 why the Carthagenians banished Hanno, was because he having thus qualified

maketh report alfo of Marke Anthonies Marke Ambony Cozin to Octaniur, who caufed Lyons caufed Lyon

in fuch fort to be tamed, and brought milde.

finde that the like was done by Helio- Heliogabalus.

discourse. King tohn of castile, second of that name, had a Lyon so domestick Castle. and familiar; that at all times when he

of Deffa, Arch bithop of Seuile, had the like. Lodonicus Calius writeth, that hee Lod. Calius in read in a good and approved Authour, 7.lib. de Am.

of an Ewe, which conceiued and eaned a Lyon, a matter very monstrous in Nature. We likewise read of men, that with their hands have flaine Lyons, as Sampson, David, Hercules, and others.

The History of Lyfimachus, and Califibene the Philoso-

I remember also, I have read that Lysimachus, one of the Captaines to Alexander the great flew a Lyon in this manner following. Alexander had then in his company Calisthenes the Philo- 10 sopher, who was a man free, learned, and wife; and (according to the true quality of fuch a man) would oftentimes giue him good enstructions, and reprehenfions alfo, when hee did not as became a King, Whereupon, Alexander growing into displeasure against him; caused him to bee put into a Cage among his Dogs. This was fuch a shame and ignominy, as so free and vertuous Califibenes caft a Spirit as Calisthenes had, was no way among Dogs. able to endure: but rather would voluntarily have embraced death, and wherein he was holpen by his Scholler Lysimachus, who grieued not a little, to see his Maister so dishonorably dealt

withall. When Alexander was aduerti-

fed thereof, in a great rage ; he caused

him to be throwne before a Lyon, that

the Beaft furiously might denour him.

But Lysimachus, beeing a Man of excel-

lent courage, fecretly armed his right

arme and hand, afterward, when hee

was exposed to the Lyon, and saw him

come running (greedily gaping) to de-

uoure him with a bold and vndaunted

Spirit: hee thrust his Arme into his

throat, and held him by the root of the

tongue fo strongely, that albeit the Ly-

(whereof he was afterward in daunger

of death) yet would he not let goe his

hold, vntill the Lyon seemed as quite

choaked and strangled, by keeping his

Arme fo long in his throat. Alexander

having intelligence thereof, defifted

from all further anger and rage against

him, and commanuded him to be care-

fully recovered : holding him (thence-

forward) for one of his very chiefest fa-

uourites, yea, and in fuch account, as

(after the death of Alexander) hee was

one in the number of his Successors, &

a most powerfull King. The Authours

that doe anough the truth heercof, are

Justine, and Plutareh in the life of Deme-

on did him much harm with his pawes, 40

Lyfimachus exposed to the fury of a Lion

The admiraof Lysimachus

Lvlimaebus kil led the Lyon

Iustine in lib. c. Plutare, in vit.

CHAP.XXVII.

That the most and greatest part of people in the world, spake at the first but one language onely, which was given them by the will of God: And after the destruction of Babell, then it was changed.



Orphyrius, Iulian the Apostat Emperour, and opostat Emperour, and other enimies to sacred letters, do consesse with the learned, that from the beginning of the Worldes Creation, as

there was but one Man and one Woman : euen fo there was likewife but one Language onely, which continued to all the people on Earth, vntill the Deluge; yea, till the destruction of Babell, for fernice of the people which made their abiding thereabout, and (by prefumption) had made a Tower, or rather a high mounted causey, to warrant and defend themselves from another flood, if so be there should any other happen. But me-thinks, that the people of those times were very groffely conceited, in

feeking to fortefic themselues by such

cunning : because it had beene much better to hinder, then to whet on the anger of God.

There was neuer any man found, or heard of how great an enemy focuer he was to the holy Scriptures, that could euer render any reason of the variety of Languages, which are spoken in so many Nations : but onely that which Moyles alleadged; to wit, that it was done by the will of God, to the end, that the Earth might be wholly inhabited, as it was before the flood, and the great race of Noah (finding themselues diffemblable in tongues) might therefore difperfe themselues abroad. For men deuided not the tongues, but the devision of tongues denided Men, neither was it 2- The denision ny intention of men, vied then fuffici- oftongues deuidedmen ently by necessary knowledge of Na-

flicted on mankinde. It is a case very

cleare and euident, that Languages are

not profitable, but in their diversity,

ture, and by the inuention of Artes and Sciences; but a punishment of God in-

do giue language to the conquered.

Chap.27.

and if there were but one onely vied in the World, it would bee meere vanity to know many : for all the first tongues had diners originals, and depending (in any thing) one vpon another.

Neuerthelesse, after that Warres began to be moued through the world, the people that were brought into fubiection, received the Language of the Conquerours. And it is a true marke of Soueraignty, to constraine the subdued to change their Language; which the Romains much better executed, then any Prince or people whatfocuer:wherby they feeme (as yet) to commaund in the most part of Europe. Likewise,

the last King of the Hetrurians, beeing

vanquished, did all that the Romaines

pleafed, but yet he would neuer receive

the Latine toong. And by the like rea-

fons, the Gaules, who fpake as the Helue-

tians (as Glareanus and many other Au-

thours thinke) in the time of Cafar, as

by coniecture may bee gathered in the

Commentaries of the faide Cafar: did

afterward learne the Latine Tongue,

because they were conquered by the Ro-

maines. After that againe, they spake

the language of the Franconians, a peo-

ple of Allemaigne, who were mingled a-

mong them, by their victories gotten

ouer the Romaines . In following time,

the Gothes, Vandals, Hunnes, and other

people, that ranged thorow the world;

left them also their tongues. In briefe,

of all thefe fenerall languages, the Gauls

(at this instant called the French)builded

and framed one perticuler tongue, euen

that which to this day they enjoy. So

their variant changes, in leffe then fif-

teene hundred yeares, very neere three

times each fenerall tongue: for at this

day, and so hence-forward, it will bee

impossible to understand the language,

that hath beene spoken for the space of

This hath happened in the very fame

manner at Rome, and in Italy, fince the

that no man can vinderstand those

Hymnes, which the Priests called Salii.

or Saliens fung in their processions,

which were composed in Latine, that

Language being then there spoken and

very soone after the foundation of

Rome : As also the Sibyls Verses, and ma-

time of Cicero and before, for he faith; 50

fonre hundred yeares in France.

that all the fore-faid tongues, have had 40

cerning the Gaules and

Whence the language of France had

Variety of

Onelanguage

om one mai

and one wo-

Groffeneffe

inmen of th

Saly, the Priests of

Of the Worlds first Language. ny other ancient bookes of those tunes, that contained very facred things . But being fearefull to offend the Gods, or to induce any nouelty in Religion, a matter which draweth after it daily too many calamities: the Senate would haue no other Hymnes to be made, nor that any one should mingle other matter among them, or comment or correct those Bookes of the Sibriles.

It is generally knowne, that the aun- By what peo-It is generally knowne, that the auti-cient Language which Rome vfed first ple the La-tine tongue of all, was pure, delicate, and most elo- became to be quent Latine : and now at this day,

there is hardly any one word thereof truely recained. The Italian tongue now spoken, declareth in plaine apparance, to have taken originall and encreasing from Strangers, vpon the Empires declination; especially from such as did most harme to Italy it felfe; to wit, the Gaules, Prouincials, Gothes, Hunnes, Vandals, and other barbarous people, all voyde of humanity; who instead of Trophees, have left them nothing but words and names, even the most excellent that they had. It is not voknowne to vs alfo, that the Arabians had planted their Language throughout Asia and Affrica; and yet within tew yeares, Phillip King of Spaine, hath constrained the Thenew con-Moores of Granada, to change both their am have chan habite and Language. Peru, common- gedtheir lanly tearmed the golden Castile, a very guage, great Pronince, now speaketh no more her naturall Language: for the Spaniard having conquered it, hath there planted his Language, although it bee

tearmed the new World In the Ifle of Mally, they were wont Of the Ifle of to speak the Punick tongue; to wit, that Maha. vied by the Carthageniums, when they would needes hold superiority ouer the Romaines; and now at this day, the Greek tongue is spoken there, but very corruptly, mingled also with Swill as. That they had no other Language but the Punick, is casie to be prooued, because it is not abone thirty yeares, fince there was found engranen in olde Murble, this which followeth, written in Greek Letters, and yet not with standing, the

distance thence the space of a thousand

hath done the like, in all his other con-

quered Countries, in those Proninces

Language feemeth for to bee Hebrew.

*Ital*y hath alfo changed her language.

and fine hundred leagues; enen as hee

Procopius in Hist. Vandal. The scituation

of Phomicia.

The ancient

ftrong Cittie

in Numidia.

The Con-

quests of Eng-

vpon grane

Arabes and

derstanders

of tongues.

The language

The Arabian

tongue a per-fect language

Scitio 11.de

The request

Trismegijtus

vlt.Lib.

of Egypt changed.

ELOI. EFFETHA CVMI, and many other auncient Epitaphes. Alfo, as the Foundation of Castle Angelo was laying, there was found vpon an olde Stone of Marble-Iasper, these words engrauen; IEHIEW IEPH-DAIA, and others, which (by the iniury of time) were quite defaced. And these latter wordes, were written (for the more part) in Hebrew Letters, and hardly was there found any one, were he Arabe or Iew (who doe furpasse all other Nations in the understanding of Languages) that could deliuer the interpretation thereof.

Ægypt, from the time of Mercurius Trismegistus (Author of that worthy booke tituled Pimander;) that was before Abraham and Moyles, had a perticular Language: a thing yet to this day to be seene, by Bookes written in the Ægyptian hand, and in many places of Palestine, in the tongue vied in those dayes, which (I say) was in the time of the first Kinges that were named Pharaohs, wherein nothing is to be comprehended, neither reade, albeit the Letters are very visible, and not de-

Neuerthelesse, at this day they doe | 30 not speake that Language, but the Arabian Tongue, without retaining any one word of her auncient tongue: which is faide to bee graue, briefe, accompanied with goodly tearmes, and proper to comprehend all Sciences, as all the Easterne partes (well neere) are, and apt to discourse of Diuine matters; much more then the Greeke, full of oftentation and vanity. Which being well perceived by that worthy Afculapius, the fore-named Trismegistus : he defired of GOD and the King, that his Bookes and Writings might not passe through the Grecians handes, neyther bee translated or commented by

Heerewe are to note, that if (at this day) wee have any Bookes of the ancient Ægyptians; they came from the Greekes and Iewes, who traduced them into their Language, when they kept their Schooles, where they taught all Sciences : witnesse Socrates, Plato, Democritus, Xenophon, Philostratus, 1amblicus, Apollonius, and diners other great personages, who went purposely thither, to be enfireded in good Sciences, whereof great account was made in those times. And let vs not forget Mofes, the great Law-giver, who was learned in all the wifedome of the Ægyptians : as we may gather by the Egyptians words of Saint Stephen, in the seuenth Greaces. Acts Chapter of the Actes of the Apostles.

In Palestine, and in Ierusalem, they Palestine and were wont to speake the Syriake toong changed their now a dayes they fpeake the Arabian-Belonius, in his fecond booke of Singu-larities, hath noted, that at this day la. there are spoken twelue seueral toongs in Ierufalem; and yet notwithstanding, as I have formerly faide, the Arabian tongue is the most common. Greece hath loft her auncient Language, for in the Citties and Townes, the Primitiue tongue is now not spoken: but a new kinde of Language, which the Turkes (fince they began to bee Gouernours there) brought thither with them. And yet neuerthelesse, in some perticuler places, they speake Greeke verie viuallie. But by little and little, as the naturall borne Greekes, by reason of their Princes tyranny, became Vagabonds, and went to feeke out other Countries: euen fo they (for the more part) hoping there to meet with better The alteration entertainement, made themselues Ma- of Greece, and humetifts, that is to fay; they for fooke casion. Christian Religion, and (by the same meanes also) left their Mother tongue, enclining wholly to the Turkish and Arabian; and therfore, before an hundred years can be expired, they wil not speak any more Greeke.

In the Kingdome of Tremiffem, otherwife called Telesin, seated on the Coast of Barbarie, in the Mediterranean Sea, fins changed they were wont to speake the Phanician tongue : now-adaies they doe not retaine any one word thereof, but speake the Morisco Language, because they had beene formerly fubdued by the great King Manfor . The cause why this people spake the Phanician tongue (although they were diftant from the Countrey of Phanicia, verie neere foure hundred Leagues) I will briefely declare, according as Procopius fetteth it downe in the Historie of the Vandales, leaving a verie notable marke thereof, in these wordes. All this Countrey (faith he) which reacheth from

Moles was

Great nations peake the IIlyran tongue.

Venerable

Bede, and Sir

Thomas Moore

Sidon, fo farre as Ægypt, mas beretofore cald Phanicia, and such as have written the History of the Phænicians, do declare; that Sometime one King onely raigned there. In thefe Countries dwelt the Gergefites, Iebulites, and others who when they beheld lofuals great Army comming against them : they pa [ed into Agipt, but foone af. ter that Countrey being not able to support the they went thence into Affrica, wher they i builded many Townes and Villages, and peopled the Countrey, even fo farre as the Psilars of Hercules, and their language was Phanician. In Numidia likewife they builded, and (among other Citties) that most strong and firmely fested Citty of Tingitana, where two Collomnes of white stone are to bee feene, neere the great Fountaine, whereon (in the Phantian tongue) are engranen thefe wordes. We are they, who were 2 before that great Brigande Josuah, the Son of Nun. Such (faith he) was the originall of these people, who are (at this day) called Mau: usians, or Mauritanians, Their Languages then became wholly changed, by the comming in of other people.

England was wont to have a perticular Language by her felfe, according as Cafar testifieth : but beeing afterward 30 conquered by the Saxons, a people of Germany, they long time kept the Saxon tongue. In following time also, growing frequent with the French, hoping to ouer rule them : they well neere quite changed the Saxon tongue, begetting one Language, confilting partly of French, Danifb, Saxon, and Pictifb. So that out of all these tongues, they forged one intirely new, and that little abone three hundred years fince. Which hath beene well observed by venerable Bede, a great Dinine, and Sir Thomas Moore, fometime Lord Chancellour, and a very learned Gentleman, and both these Men of the English Nation.

The Polanders, Vandales, Bulgarians, Serusans , Daimatians, Croatians , Bofnians, Rushians, Valachians, Bohemians, Lituanians, Moscouites, &c. Spake the Garmaine or Tentonicke tongue : but authis day they speak the Selanenian language, that is to fay, Illyrian, witnesse Ladiflans King of Lituania, who about the yeare 1399. hauing espoused a Virgine mamed Anne, the Heire of Poland that could speak no other Language but the Allemaigne, as then in those times it was Spoken in Poland : would never leave her company, vntill the had learned the Listuanian tongue, which thee cafily attained voto in eight months space. The Allemaignes also lay, that the language which by them is now vied, is not their auncient tongue; but is very divers, and hath borrowed great store of wordes, from people by whom they have hitherto beene foyled, or ranaged, or by beeing imployed in Warres, as among the Gaules in Italy, Spain, Greece, and the Easterne Countries. Neuer should I growe to any conclusion, if I were to fet downe those seuerall people, that haue changed their Language fince the Deluge: or proone, that there is not any Nation at this day, which speaketh the Language of our first Father Adam and Nosh. All have changed, and yet will change, fo long as the Worldendureth; for such is the Nature of viciffitude, in thinges of this world.

CHAP.XXVIII.

Of Graning or Carning, and of Painting: which of them is most ancient and excel-

N these times I have heard of very many different opinions in a concerning these two Arts of Statuary or Stones.

cutting, and Painting; to wit, which of them is most commendable; and best worthy of praise. . Very perinent reafons are alleadged both for the one and other, for in the Statue or Sculpture, there is discerned an artificiall initiation of Nature representing therein the members wholly round, well formed, andfully measured, even as if Nature lrap felfe had shaped them, and much better imitated then in a Table, where we but behold the superficies and colours, which beguile the eye. For the fuoftance is much neerer to truth, then the refemblances Befide, Sculpture or engraning, is more difficult, because if afault be therm committed, very hard-

The Allema gr

mail.com

Variety of o-Caruing and

engan pengangalah di sebagai sebagai bah

The commendation of Car-

Similitudes

cannot per-uert or alter

nature in li-

uing Crea-

tures.

Statues eftee med in ancient times,an for good oc-

An ancient

custome for

offenders and

Bond-flaues.

ly can bee amended: in regard, that the Marble or other matter is not to bee pieced or patched, but another figure must of necessity be made. Which fallethnot out fo in painting, for it may be altered a thousand times, adding thereto, or diminishing, by daily amending. Statues were (in elder times, & yet are to this day) esteemed facred things, to beautifie Temples or publike places, for the commemoration of famous perfons, and fuch actions of theirs as were heroycall especially fuch as we see in the Porches of Temples, and divers within : which are placed to no other end, but for a remebrance of holy Men or women, that performed many pious deedes, and stood for plantation of the Faith And for the great respect then made of them it was permitted (by Emperiall Edictes) to Offenders, and Slaves badly vied by their Maisters; to haue their enfranchisement, and case from further perfecutions, by holding fast voon some of those Statues, till audience might bee graunted to their oppreflions. Such as do hold Painting to be more

excellent, make their allegations; that The commen thereby is imitated much more truely, dation of pain the very Nature of the thing foreprefented then it can be by the Statue. And that it must needes be so, they produce (for example) that which is written by

Plin.inlib. 12.

Hiltories con cerning Pain-

> out any feare at all of the young man. They fay moreouer, that Parrhafins, a Painter likewise, and an emulatour of the forefaid Zenxis, painting a Partridge vpon a Collomne in Rhodes, drew it fo naturally according to life that (in the indgment of enery beholder) it feemed

Plinie, concerning one Xeuxis, a Painter

of Heraelea, who presented a Table,

wherein hee had painted bunches of

Grapes fo naturally: that Sparrowes

flying by it, strone to rest on them, and

true Grapes indeede, fo that his worke-

manship was reputed to bee both fa-

mous and finguler. At another time,

the same Zeuxis: painted a young Man

in a Table, carrying like bunches of Rai-

fine Grapes in a Difh, which were fo

lively made : as the Birds were thereby

againe deceived, the Birds likewise de-

feending from the ayre, to peck authem

to be alive indeed. Nay more, the perfection of painting this Foule was fuch, and so compleate, that bringing other Partridges before it (fuch as now adaies are kept in Cages:) they would call vnto it, flutter their Winges before it, and vie their kinde of finging, taking it for a lively Bird indeede. They yet goe further, faying, that Apelles painted a Horse according to life, and other Painters making proofe in their skill of the like; would needes vrge tryall of the most ablest workmanship . Wherevpondit was thought fit to bring liuing Horses before him, for better approbation of the experiment, and beeing brought before those figures painted by the other Painters; they stood still, without any fhew of account or motion. But when that which Apelles drewe was presented before them; they began to ftirre, tread, and whinnow, which they did not at the fight of any of the other whereby, the greatest honour and aduantage in Art, was adjudged to Apelles, and he reputed to bee the most excellent Painter.

Now to speake mine opinion heerein, I fay, that (for all thefe Fables, leffe the former feeming true, then Pliny writes them) Histories, Painting cannot be accounted to be the more excellent Art: For all Creatures that fly in the Ayre, or feede on the earth, or live in the Water, do nourish themsclues, and are more mooued by the sence of smelling, then by fight. To approoue the truth hereof, let any man paint a Rat, and draw it nener fo artificially according to life: then let it bee profented before a Cat, to try if the wil pecked at them, as taking them to bee 40 ftirre, or offerto take it . Let any man also fet a Table before Fowles, with painted Capons Hennes, Cockes, Pigeons, or fuch like; let there be likewife painted in the Table, Barly, Oates, or any other Corne fit for them to feede on; and try if they moone or come to touch it. Let any Painter portraite a Ginne or Snare, with either a Goofe, Lambe, or any other prey furprised in as if they had beene very Raizins, with- 50 the Snare, counterfeired by Art most naturally; and then make triall, if a Wolfe or Foxe will offer to lay holde on it, which indeede they would doe, if they had life. Some

In like manner, let there be painted in a Table a goodly Mare, formed with

Apelles a famous Painter of the Ifle Con

all features neerest to life, then bring a Stallion before it, and try if he will offer to coner her. Let there be also in the fame Table a goodly fielde, with divers Horses feeding at pasture; and try if he will beare them company. Shew to any Horse painted Prouender, and try if he will whinhow to have it: which naturally he wilbdo, if he Be in his Stable, although there be none at all offered to his fight. By these Allegations I would plainly thew, that Creatures (of thefe kinds)do notão much mouethemschies by fight, as by fence of finelling; and that all which Pliny hath faide of thefe Paintings, are meere fables, for these Creatures have no knowledge of Pain-

Painters of ancient time: did not furpatfe the men of these daies

Another Hi-

flory of Par-flufius and Zeuxis

comparisons.

It ferueth to no purpofe, to fay, that the Painters of these daies, are not so futficier, neither do make fuch exquifite workes, as those in former times did. I answer, that there are men as excellent euery way, & that wil not gine ground in any iot, to the very best before them. For there are yet to bee feene in thefe daics, both Paintings and Statues of ancient Grecians, Romaines , Ægyptians, and other Lenantines; which come nothing neere (by much) in perfection, to 30 things done by Painters and Statuaries of our time. I dare make them my ludges, who, being curious in the fight of fuch thinges, and trausiling thorow lower Germany; have visited the Chambers and cabinets of many famous houfes, as also in France and Italy, and what e'fe is to be scene in Churches.

There is another History alleadged, borrowed likewise out of the same Pii- 40 nies shop, that Parrhasius deceived Zeuxis by a Table, whereon nothing elfe was painted but a Curtaine, and it beeing presented to Zenzis, to yeeld his indge-ment of the workmanship, he offered to draw the Curtaine, to behold what was figured vider it. I answer, that this Hillory, how true focuer it be, & whether it fo hapned or no may make painting to bee much more commendable, then all the other Fables formerly delinered from Plmy. For as man is the leaft of all creatures, in exquifite perfection of sense, and that often deceineth himfelfe, in the fenfes of fight, touching, taft, and fmell; yea, cuen in judgement, especially when he is decained by a precipitation, or paffion of Spirit, and then apprehenden one thing for another: enen fo might it then fall lour with Zenxis, in regard of the Unuylipe bare to

Hauing confitted thefe fables atlead. The Authors ged by Plany, which ferocorrely for the Painting prepraife of Painting Lwell rowlinglown cedeth Carfomereafons of whing white white wing. wil approue Painaing, beyond Caruing or Graning. In Stanies or Carned Fit gures, there are many thinks defectiue, which cannot faile in Palnging, and principally day light and thaddow; because fleth yeildeith a different light, from that which Marble or flone affordeth, and that the Painter imitateth, with clearnesse or obsenity, more or leffe, according as the thing requireth, which the Image-maker cannot performe. And yet notwithstanding,

though painting doth not make the Figure round : yet it sheweth the museles and members in rounded shape, fo that they are discerned, as joyned to those parts which cannot be scone, & by such apt meanes; as it is eafily knowne, that the Painter under stands and perfectlie knowes them. And heerein is required For forming another artifice more great in forming portion of the the members that lengthen or fhorten, members. according to the proportion of fight, by reason of perspective; which by the power of lines and measure of colours, day-light and shaddowes, doe showin their toperficies on a plaine wall, neere or farre off, more or leffe, as himfelie pleafeth.

Nor is the true imitation of naturall Of the vie & colours, a matter of fuch final mement handling to lours in their as fome do imagine; in counterfeiting true Nature. fleth, fhape of Garments; and all other thinges requiring colours. And yet the Caruer cannot doe this; much leffe expresse and represent the gratious fight of the eye, black green, or otherwife, with the splendour of amourous beames, or in Colour full of reuenge. The Carner also knowes not how to difeouer the beames of the Sunne, Lightning, Thunders, and other fuch like thinges; as faire Lockes of Haire nor the goodly troopes of armed forces, nor a darkefome night; nor a teinpett on the Sea; nor a flath of Light- Admirable ning, nor flormie Windes, nor the befiedging of a Citty, nor the Suns rifing

Parrhalius a cunning painter of Ephelius

Forrefts, Fields, Gardens, Rivers, Citties, nor Houses, all which the Painter can perfectly thew Is is also welknown, that if a Painter apply his colours vpon a carned statue, what soener it be ; it wil appeare so much the more commenda-

in the morning, or Aurora her felfe,

(bringing bright day) in her colours like

Rofes, diffarkled with radiances of gold

and purple... Briefely, he cannot repre-

fent Heaven, Earth, Seas, Mountaines,

Painting no mechanicall Science.

Painting a more Noble

Science then

Caruing.

Noblemen v fed the Art of

Fabius a Noble man of Rome a skilful

ble. In this respect, me thinks that painting is a more Noble Science, and of much greater artifice, then Carning or Graning, and I think that our ancients held it in great reputation, & as highly as other things: a beit, both these Arts do feeme to iffue out of one & the fame fountaine, because that in both the one and other ; Geometry is very requifite, | 20 for the understanding of perspective. This Science appeares to me, not to be mechanicall, because it is very conucnable, & may well be vied by any Gentleman. I remember I haue read, that our auncient predecessours, especially throughout all Greece, would have Noble mens children enstructed in schools in the art of painting, as a Science most honest, and very necessary. It was ad- 30 mitted in the first degree of the liberall Arts, and soone after defended by publike Edict, that it should not be taught to Slaues or Seruants.

Among the Romaines, Painting was held in great honor, and thence it deriueda most Noble sir-name, euen from the House of the Faby; for the first Fabius was fir-named the Painter, because he was (indeede) a very excellent Pain- 40 ter . And so much was he addicted to painting, that having painted the wals of Templum Salutis; he placed there his owne name; as thinking, that although he was deriued of a noble house, honored with many Titles, Confulfhips, triumphes, and other dignities; albeit he he was learned, well read in the lawes, & numbred amongst the best Orators : yet he was of the mind, that hereby he might (neuerthelesse) encrease his renowne, by fuch an especiall splendour and ornament, and left it to memory, that he was a Painter.

Painting not onely Noble, but pleafing Moreover, many other are recorded of noble houses, that have bin famous in this art, in which, befide the Nobility & profitable for warre.

& Dignity therof; many commodities are thence deriued. Especially in the time of wars, for deligning and portraiing Countries, scirnations of Rivers, Bridges, Caftles, Fortes, and fuch like thinges: which thus may be described to others, euen as if they were exactlie imprinted in memory, which otherwise were a difficult thing to do. I conclude then by this discourse, that the Art of sculpture or carning, is much inferiour to painting: yea, and it will be of much longer continuance, if it beekept in a dry place, and wel sheltred from winds and raine, and the longer it lasteth, so much the more pleafing it is to behold.

CHAP. XXIX.

Against such aged per sons as think nothing to be well done, but what was performed by themselues in their youth ; blamine extreamely the present times, and what is now done, in respect of the former; And what is the caufe thereof.

T Auing many times confidered, (and not without great admiration) whence fuch an error enfueth, which verily may be beleeued, to be proper and naturall to aged people; because it is commonly noted in them, that they doe wholly (as it were) commend times past, condemning the prefent, and blaming our maners, actions, & whatfocuer elfe they themfelues did not in their younger daies; Affirming alfo, that all good customes, behauior of life, all vertue, and all thinges grow reason and worse and worse : Truely, it seemeth to | iudgement me a matter farre off from reason; nay more, very maruailous, that mature and ripe age should wander so strangely. For long experience begetteth custome, & (in follemne allowance) prefumeth to iudge perfectly of men. And yet herein their judgments were fo much corrupted, as they never perceived, how the world began daily to impaire, and that the Fathers were better then their chil- Our fore fr dren; a very long time remaining, to a-riue at the vittermost degree of wicked-happy then their children nes, times ftill declining from better to. worse. And yet notwithstanding all this, we behold it daily, a vice proper

Aged people do oftentim

Afmilitude

the argument

Of Times past and present. Chap. 29.

> and peculiar to age, even as it hath bin in former daies : fo to continue ftill among vs lining. Which hath beene knowne and made manifest, by the writings of many very ancient Authours, and especially by the Comicks, who (much better then any other) expressed the true Image of humaine life. Therefore I conceine, that aged people hold this falle opinion, breause our yeares poasting away so swiftly, as they carry hence many other commodities; fo (among others) they rob vs of our blood, and a great part of our vitall Spirits. In reg and wherof, our complexion changeth it felfe, and the bodies Organes become feeble, that should exercise the vertues of the Soule.

The cause of our generall

the inconuc-

niences be-fore alleage

And this is the cause, that in these our instant daies, the delicate and sweet floures of contentment doe fall from our heartes, as Leaues doe from the Trees in Autumne, and, in flead of clear and free thoughts; obfcure, troubled, melancholly, and fad concerts get entrance, accompanied with a thoufand calamities. So that, not onely the Body, but the Spirit also becommeth fick, which retaineth not any lot of our passed Spirits, except a long remem- 30 brance, and Image of that acceptable time of youth; which wee perswading our felues to finde againe, it appeareth then to vs, that Heaven, Earth, and all things elfe are glad therof, and do smile at them (verily) in our fight; refoluing our thoughts, that in them(as in a faire and goodly Garden) the fweet Spring time of joyfulneffe ftill flourisheth. In which respect, perhaps it would proue profitable, when (already) in a cold and backward feafon, the Sunne of our life beginneth to decline towardes the West, in despoyling vs of our pleafures ; that we would also (there-with) loofe the remembrance of them, and finde (as Themistocles faid) A Science en-The wife fayfructing how to forget them. Because the fences of our body are so fallacious that oftentimes themselves do beguile | 50 the judgement of the spirit.

And therefore it feemeth to me, that aged reople are of their condition, who niwerable to fetting forth from any Port or Hauen, doe ftill fixe their eies vpon the Land! whereby they conceit, that the Shippe moueth not but that the land & houses

are in motion, which nevertheleffe is quite contrary. For the Hauen, as alfo the time, and former or prefent pleafores, continue fill in their wontede. flate, and we (with the Ship of mortal lity) faile away; we posit on one after another, thorow this impetuous Sea, that denoureth all things. Nor are we euer permitted to take landing againe; but beeing continually toffed by contrary winds, our veffell runs and breaks it felfe againft one Rocke or other con

old, a tubicat contrary to alkind of plefures sit cannot apprehend any tale of them. And, as all forts of Wines, although they be never lo good freme Another exbitter to fuch as are troubled with a Feuer, in regard that the rait is changed, onely by the meanes of corrupted humors: euen fo in aged people, by reafon of their inaufpolition (albeit there is no defect in defire) all pleafures feemewn. fauory, cold, and far differing from fuch as they remember once to have effaied; and yet those pleasures (in themselues) are the very fame which they wer wont toba And because they finde theselies No defection to be deprined of those pleasures; they in our telus complaine and blame the pretime, as if it were naught, neuer confidering, that

this mutation proceedeth from themfelues, and not from the time. On the contrary, when they fit down & call to memory their paffed delights; they then likewife remember the time wherin they enjoyed them; and (in that respect) repare them to be good, because it appeared then, and so doth yer, that they brought a fweete rellish with them; which they (yet) remember to haue felt when they had them . For, in effect, our thoughts doe harefully condemne all things, that have bin companions with our displeasures; and loue al them that have fored with their likings. In which regard it happens fometime! that we fee an amourous Fellow, take great delight to behold a Window, although it be thut against him : yet hed Comparisons conceineth a liking thereof, because (in not vulithing former time)he had the fanour there to the purefert gaze on his Lady, or loues Miffris. In like manner, to fee a lewell, a Letter, a Garden, or any other thing whatfoe-

uer; that seemeth (as yet) to be a telli-

mony; to former effected pleafures:

liż

The Spirit (then) of a man waxing The Spirit

the time but

Pleafures ap.

where-

whereas on the contrary, a goodly, faire, and rich adorned Chamber, will appeare hatefull to him, that hath been imprisoned therein, or that there hath fuffered any difliking. I have knowne some, who (by no

meanes) would drinke in a Cup that re-

fembled some other Cup, wherein (be-

ing fick) they received a medicine. For,

as the window, or the Ring, or the Let-

ter, representeth to the one party, a

fweete remembrance, which to him is

the more acceptable, by how much it

appeareth still a pertaker of his former

enioied pleasure: euen such is the other

parties conceit, that the Chamber, or

the Cup, are full fresh Ensignes of his

imprisonment, or sicknesse. I think, that

for the very same reason men (in years)

are moored to commend passed times.

and throw blamefull aspertions on the

present. By means whereof, in speaking

of Warres, Courts of Iustice, or those

belonging to Princes, & fuch like, they

affirme: that those in their time, and

wherofthey do yet bear remembrance;

were much more excellent, and filled

with more finguler men, then they are

which at this instant they daily behold.

question, they presently begin to exalt

infinitely, the people that lived in their

former times, and declare, that (in those

elder daies) it could not bee found, but

very rarely, that a man commit-

ted a murder; that then were any com-

bats or fights, ambushes or treacheries:

but an affured honesty and faithfulnes,

an amiable and loyall infineffe among

reigned fo many good manners, & fuch

a persect honesty : that all Courtiers

were then religious, and Saintes, that

they would not take part with any man,

who had offered a badword to another,

al Men. That in Courts (in those times) 40

So soone as such cases doe come in 30

Strange-humors in fome Men and women.

The reason o aged peoples

The prayles giuen by aged people to former times.

of aged peo-ple on these instant times.

or had vsed any figne of dishonesty to a Woman of Honour. On the contrary, they fay, that now in these daies, they behold all things to bee quite opposite to the former, and 50 that not onely among Courtiers, men of warre, and young people, brotherly affection is loft, and al laudable manner of living: but also in Courts and Citties, now raigneth nothing but enuies, euill will, wicked manners, and a life most dissolute, abounding in all kindes

of vices. That Women are lascinious, hauelost all shame, and men (for the more part) are become effeminate. Moreover, they blazon their garments to be dishonest, and ouer pompous. In that meritrebreefe, they reprehend a number of prehension things, among which (truely) there are some that wel deserue reprehension, because it cannot be denied; but that there are (among vs) many badand wicked men, by whose meanes, this present world must needs be fuller of errours, then that which these good people so

highly commend.

It appeareth to me, that they doe ill discerne the cause of this difference, and made to these declare themselves to be made to the declare themselues to be meere fooles; complaints. in that they would now haue the world to be wholly good, without any cuill remaining in it, which is a matter vtterly impossible. For, cuill being contrary to goodnesse, and goodnesse to enill : it appeareth euen necessary (as it were) that by a certaine kinde of repugnancie and contrariety; yea, by a manner of counterpoise; the one should sustaine and firengthen the other. In fuch fort, No contrary, that the one failing, or encreasing; the other likewise should encrease, or run to ruine, because there is no contrarie, without another.

Who doth not know, that no Iuflice A reason for could be found in the world, if therwere annoyances, iniuries, & oppressions? No magnanimity, if there were not pufillanimity? No continence, if there were not incontinency? No health, if ficknesse had not his course? No truth, if therwere not lying & falshood? Nor any felicity or happinesse, if there were not fals and misfortunes For this cause The faying of Socrates faid well with Plato; He meruai-Socrates and led very much, that Æsope had not made a Fable, feigning therein, why God did not unite pleasure and greefe togethor, tying them to such extreamities, as the beginning of the one might be the ending of the other. For we doe enidentlie behold, that no pleafure would at any time be acceptable, if forrow had not gone before it.

What is he that could discerne, how of al things is precious quiet rest and repose is, if first approued by the haue not felt the pain of trauaile and their contrawearinesse? Who could tell, what the ries. benefit is of eating, drinking, and fleeping, if first he had not endured hunger, thirft, and watchings ? Let mee tell yee

No euill fo great, as that which groweth out of

Vices doe al-

waies attend the Vertucs.

Chap.29. The Grossenesse of former Times.

then, that passions and diseases given to men by nature, not principally to make them subject thereto, for it would feeme very inconnenient, that the who is the Mother of all, should (by her counfell and wifedome) fend vs many harms : But nature having made health. pleafure, and other good things : fends after them fickneffe, displeasure, and other annoyances . For all vertues being 10 first graunted to the world, by the free gift and fauour of Nature: afterward immediatly, all vices, by a contrary concathenation or combination follow as their companions or arrendants. So that the one encreasing, or decaying; the is compelled to grant (in this manner) that the other also shall encrease, or grow to defaulance.

were then fo vicious, as now they are in thefe daies: they may also alledge their ignorance, whether then fuch vertuous men were to be found, as many are well approoued to bee at this day. Nor is there any matter of maruaile heerein, because there is no cuill so great; as that which springeth from the seede of corrupted goodnes. And for this cause, | 20 Nature producing now great store of Spirits, of much better temper then before they were, as fuch who of themfelues haue turned to goodnesse: hath performed a better workmanship, then

in those times (thee did) whereof they

talke fo much, even as they that turne

to euill, doe so much the worse. We

may not then fay, that fuch as ceafe to

doe cuill (because they know it not) do

in this case deserve any praise : for al-

though they have fildome committed

any harme, yet (notwithstanding) they

would have done much more if they

Wherefore, when old men do extol

the passed times, affirming, that no men

Former spirits inferior to the of these daies.

could. Now, that the Spirits of those precedent times in generall, were much inferiour to them lately or now lining : may fufficiently be knowne, by all matters obscrued of them: as well in learning, as in Painting, Statues, Buildings, and in all other things. And yet Men of yeares, doe reproue and blame many thinges in vs, which are not (of themselues) cyther good or cuill, onely because that they (in those daies) did them not . . They fay, it is not fit for a

Nagge thorow the Cittle, but especially not on a Mule for to weare any skinnes of Furres in Winter or a long gainft youn-Gown in the Spring time; or any bonnet, vnleffe the Man have attained to the age of eighteene yeares. And other fuch like things, wherein (truely) they greatly discontent themselves, because that fuelt Customes (beside the commodity and benefit they affoord) have been brought in by vie, and are as pleafingnow to enery one, as then men delighted to goe in Caffockes or lackets, with open thooes; and close Breeches. And for a man to flew himfelfe a Gallane, he must carry a Hawke on his Fift all day to no purpofe; daunce, without ury in a Gal holding his Mistresse by the hand, and lant. vie many other fashions, which were then much esteemed; but now doe appeare to bee groffe and vnbefitting. Thefe are most of their foundest reafons, why the cultomes of these times should not bee observed, but remaine fill to the calumnies of aged folke, ex- Obiections v tolling themselnes, by faying : Twenty fed by the a yeares and more were past with mee, sed. and yet I flept with my Mother and Siiters; andknewnot (in long time after) whata Woman was But now, Boyes, almost as soone as they be borne, know more naughtinesse, then the taulest Men could reach voto in those dayes.

When they vtter thefe speeches, they

doe not perceive, how firongly they

confirme, that the very Children of our

time, have much more spirit, then aged

Men had in those daies. And that was

well noted by Horace the Poet, in his

felues did in their youth ; And will have

young people to forme their lines by their.

Age. But I purpose to shew more

perticularly in the following Chapter,

the groffenesse of people in those fore-

paffed times, and the fubtility of braue

Spirits in young men of thefe daies.

young man, to ride on his Foot-cloath

ctiues of age

time, speaking of our auncients, to this Thesaying of

effect : They commend what focuer them- Horace.

0.000001

gyana palina farana gg CHAP: XXX:

A comparison betweene the Buildings. Feastes, Garments of Men and Women. Armes, and manner of making warre in the dates of our fore fathers, and those that are veed in the e our times.

Ourpredecef-fors forme of building,very groffe & rude E will begin, without v-fing any other preamble, with, those Buildinges, which were made in the daies of our fore-fathers;

confliting of nothing but very chicke wals; bad VV indows, continually beaten with winds and ftormes : chambers | 20 fubicated one to another; the vaults or houses of Office, enermore in the most eminent places of the House, which ought to be much further off, both from the nofe & eies : imitating nature, who hath placed those partes in our bodyes, through which our vncleannesse is to be anoyded, farre enough off from the eyes and Nofe. Of this fashion, and in fuch manner of building, it is no long | 3 time fince, that the more part of Mafons and Worke men shaped Castles, being places of pleafure, and Countrey houses of pleasure, in no other kinde of constructure. But within an hundred yeares, or there-about, a great part of them are demolished; and (in stead of them) others erected; after out Moderne manner, much more commodious, and of leffe coft, in regard of the 40

Some-what let vs fay, concerning their Feafts and Banquets, and observe in what manner they were ordered. The meate ferued into the Table, was alwajes in great Chargers, filled with Peafe and Bacon; Gammons of Bacon; huge Neats toongs falted; great pieces of Beefe, boyled Poultry, with pottage about them; boyled Mutton, Veale, & 50 other groffe food, common (almost)in enery ordinary family; and they gorged in these Victuals, so long as they could cram any more into their bellies. Afterward, they brought in other meats, anfwerable to the former, but roafted and larded(oftentimes) with vnfauory lard,

but it would ferue for Pigs and Hares, After this fecond feruice had flood as while on the Table, well-neere to no effect: then came in more dainty meats of Foules: as Mallards, wilde Duckes, bale groomes Ringdoues, young Pigeons, Partridges, to feede on, woodcocks, Quailes, Pheafants, woodhennes, Plouers, Turtles, and others of like kinde: which are carried away (like the second service) almost nevertoucht, for they (good men) had filled their stomackes with the first course meates, feeding hungerly on them, and drinking fower wines, fuch as Summer marreth, fo they left the best and daintiest meats indeede, for their Varlets and base Seruants to feede on. Was not this a verie lourdery and blockishnesse, to vse their meates in this groffe manner? The Maisters cate nothing but the very hea-uiest meates of all, and their Knaues did feede on the lightest, most exquisite, and best for digestion. Let it then be helde no matter of maruaile, if those men had groffe and heavy Spirits, because, according to the opinion of Plato: Our manners do follow the temperature The faying o and quality of the Chylus, or white inyce, of the digested meates which we ve to eate.

But in these daies, this manner of furnishing the Table at Feastes and meetings, is no more vied : for in well gouerned houses, they serue in both boyld androasted meates, grosse and delicate together, that each man may eat according to his appetite, or what he best liketh vpon the boord. For (vnder fubmiffion to better judgement) I thinke it no way fitting, that the feruant should feed on the finest, and his Maister on the courfest; the Knaue served like a Lord, and his commaunder like a Buffone.

Proceed we now to mens garments. First, the head, having bush naturall (as in auncient time, of very they tearme it) a huge deale of haire on heavy weight it; must have as big a Bonnet to couer it, which (in those daies) were cald spamilb Bonnets, having a turning vp behind, double fringed with red, and this turning vp contained halfe an Elle of woollen-cloath. I haue feene one of the in Paris, that weighed foure pound and fixe ounces. Another fashion they had, more honest and lighter, tearmed the Croffe-Bow-Cap vet with feauen or eight Elles of Riband about it: This ponderous wearing (in my minde) did

The third and comes last of al, and ferueth for none but

Their wearing Doublets and the fashi on of them. Womens Collers. Mens Hofe o Breeches close to the body. Hard meanes

Feafts vied

Bonnets vsed

Letters.

ther Pouch.

nothing els but dull the braine. Their Doublets (I meane for the better fort of men) were of leather or course Linnen Cloath behind and before, of Woofted, or Serge of Arras, which ferued halfe the Breast, and so on the armes likewise; yet some (from the Elbowe to the Wrist) yfed to weare Veluet or Sattin This kinde of Doubtlet, the Frenchmen tearmed Nichil-au-dos, Nothing Bebinde, and it was cut according vito the fashion of Weomens Gownes nowe adayes, that thewes their Breaftes naked . The Weomen also in those dayes, had their plaited Collors, wrought with blk. either Blacke or Red, and they were fastened behinde the necke and Shoulders with Silke-Lages: fo that they hidde and kept close that which was fairest, & wold have made them most gracefull. Mens 20 Hose or Breeches, answered in length to their thortskirted Doublets, being made close to their limbes, wherein they had no meanes for Pockets. But in flead thereof, they hadde a large and ample Cod-piece, which came vppe with two wings, and fo were fastned to eyther fide with two Pointes . In this wide rooms. they had Linnen bagges, tied with likel Points to the infide, betweene the Shirte

and Cod-piece. This ferued as the receipt for Purfle, Hand-kerchers, Apples, Plummes, Peares, Orenges, and other fruits . But did it not feeme verie Inciuill, that fitting at the Table, hee should make a prefent of fuch, preferred (for fom) time in fo fweet a Cloffet, euen as now adaies, some (as mannerly) vse the like out of their Pockets? As for papers, Letters, and fuch like, which they ordinarilie received, they were to put them in their Wearing of Hat-bandes, or weare them at their Girdles, like Gloues: wher hung also a great Pouch, made fast with a Ring and Locke of iron, waighing three or foure pound A great Lea waight, and oftentimes no money at all in it. Surely, in my poore opinion, the fashion of Pockets made in the Doublet Sleene, or in the hofe, is much more honest and commendable.

Leaning their high and vnhandforn Shooes, let vs speake a little of weomens What Garhabits then yfed wherein I meane not to ments womé be tedious. The Attire on the Head, ried to wear. was of great broad Wollen Cloath, of Red or Violet colour, fet out with flickes of Woode, and made in the forme of a

Suger-loafe. Her Gowne was verie large and plaited; and the Sleeues thereof fo wide, that a Lambe might calific leape into them A Traine also was fastned to Gownes. this Gowne, which commonly contained fix paces in length. At affemblies and meetings of Weomen, as the rest, so did thee let fall her Traine, dragging it after her in Halles, Churches, perhaps ouer . Dunghils, and other vnfauoury filthines. Preparing to Dannee, or some other delight, itiwas taken vpiagaine, thogh it fermed to hopurpofe; and then made faft behind, either with a Tach hooke of Siltier, or a Button of Golde, or of Iuorie. This Garment was not made without great charge, and was verie painfull allo A painfull to her that did weare it. For I have heard pride, aged Weomen (of very honorable houics, that lived in those times, and vsed the fame habite) credibly report; that they haue knowne and fedne fome weomen, who were meerely Hifled under fuch long traind Cownes.

Moreoner, were it Winter or Sum- Furred Garmer, in regard of honour, they also were furred with Ermins, Martines, or Sables. I forbearero speaké of their heavie Vardingales, worne under those long & waighty Gownes; the Fore-part whereof, Great Var-wasicouered with Silke, or Cloth of gold dingales. or Silver, & all the reft was course Buckram or Canuas . At Night, when they haue gone to bed, their bellies and thighs haue beene greenously chafed and flaid, by reason of so heaties waight, and extreamity of heate.

As for the defensive Armes then vfed, which was Harnoffe; were they not The Armour (beyonde comparison) more massic and heavie, then those that now adayes wee Cuiralles. warre withall? Neuertheleffe, they were commonly pierced with Arrows Darts, and Quarries of Croffe-bowes, which in those times were their best weapons. But in these daies, they are so well made and yet not (by three parts) fo waighty, that defence. they will relift a Musker hotte! The like is to be vuderstood of their Swords, and other Weapons of Defence: for in one word of their vie, there was more stuffe, then now we have in three; & yet they will perfourme as much, nay more, then theirs then did.

It hapned manie times, that in their Sword-fight, the one man flepping afide for advantage, the other finiting at him;

Long trained

then vied

wordes and

almond.

The fecond feruice.

The Feafts &

The first fer-

Banquets of our elders.

the verie waight of the Swords fall, hath fmote it into the ground, fo that he could not eafily recouer it, but stoode vnto the mercy of his enemy. If we trauel yer thorow forme partes, in auncient Castles or Fortrefles, or Armories of long continued Citties; forne of these vnwealdie weapons are daily to be feene. They never made Warre but foure

moneths in the years for fixe at the most:

after which time, both the one fide and

other withdrewe themselves till VV inter

was past and gone. This course is quite

Their time when they warred.

> Winter is the fitteft time for warte, and fome reasons therefore alledged.

contrarievato that which is to bee done in the time of Warre: For, in Winter is the fittest feason, and then doe our best warlicke spirits performe the best exploites of Warre. Then are furprizals aptest, in regard of long Nights, when Riuers and Ditches (being filled with Waters) are firongly frozen. Then dooth a good Captaine take occasion, to make his attempt vppon some place, either to furprize it by scaling, or otherwise. For, then the Spies, Sentinelles, and Watch, are more subject to sleepe, then at other times. And so much the rather, because (viually) that mens Bellies are better fed in this feason; then other-whiles they are, in regard of the plentic of Victualls, which makes the bodie fleepie and floth-

full. Likewise, by the fauour of Long Nightes, a great deale of Ground is eafily ridden, and the Enemie fet vppon, when himfelfe least furmizeth it, without much effusion of Bloode, with lesse Companie of Men, and weakest Char-

In those Elder dayes, they thought it a great offence and dishonor, to surprize an Enemy enprouded: but he must have a day affigned him, when hee pleafed to accept the Battaile and this was the reafon, why wars continued fo long a time. But we see quite contrarie, that Warre now commeth fooner to an end, by com pelling the Enemy to come to fight, and prouiding polliticke Ambuscadoes for him: in imitation of Hunters & Woodmen, when they chase wilde and vnruely Beafts, that will neuer yeild, except they be enforced thereto. For if they escape, they wil continually returne to their first

The custome of battailes in

A fault to en

force the eni-

my to the

fight, fuch

was the opi-

fore-fathers.

bad Nature. It was a Custome helde in those former Battailes, and verie often obserued, that when men were wearie with Fighting (beeing oppressed with the heauie load of troublesome Harnesse, Goates of Maile and Brigandines, where with their bodies were couered, besides their massie and waightie Swords)they (hould go repose themselves to take breath, yea, (many times) to eate and drink, and then returne to the fight again. As the French men did on the day of battell, before the Citty of Alexandria, about the yeare one thousand three hundred ninety one whiche day they then loft, with Count Iohn

John d'Armignac their chiefe. In those times, battails continued the space of a day; and if they were not then concluded, they went to it again the next morning, to know who then should bee Superior. This was more for honor many times, then any profit enfuing therby, and to have Songs afterwardes made of their floth and negligence. But in these dayes, within two or three houres(commonly) the battell is won or loft, as I my self have obserned in five fought battels, where I flood not as an ydle spectator: & the like haue I heard in other places, performed by the best and most approoued

Captaines of these times. What shall wee fay of their Duello, Combate, or fingle fight, betweene man and man? It was commonly performed combate bewith Swordes, tearmed two-hand swordes, without standing vppon anie war-rantable Guard; but both parts meeting resoluedly on foote; the one receyuing a

stroake, while his Enemie stood waiting for another, without any couerture. For, euen like two Smiths beating vppon an Anuile, euch fuch was their behauiour, fmiting alternatively; vling then nothing but cut and flash, without any foine or

In our daics, this kinde of fight endureth but a moment of time, for nothing is vsed but Estoccadoes : fo that vvithin three or foure thrusts, the deadly combat is concluded. For Breuities fake, I omit many other remarkeable thinges: as that they would car no kind of flesh, except it had some strange fauor, like Veni- Eating of fon and wild beafts. Now albeit these viands were dangerous to health, yet I refer it to all mens judgments for it is most certaine, that vie of fuch foode infecteth the heart, and is the cause of diffenterie. Wherefore such as entend to have and keep an honest table, and to cloth or arm

Long cond-

Ancient fin-

HE first Princes and Law-makers, that had not as yet discouered the difficulties iects by inflice; permitted

fraternities, Colledges, & Comunities, the end, that the partes and members of one body (in a Common-wealth) beeing at Vnity, the whole Common-wealth it felfe might be the more eafily gouerned. As wee may perceive Numa did, a King and Law-maker amongst the first, who established Fraternities and Colledges, of all Trades and Occupations, and to each Brother-hood, he appointed certain Patrons, Priests, and perticular Sacrifices, after the Sabines name was abolished; that denided it felfe fomewhat from the

Lycurgus gand

The Sodalitia

Lyeurgus alfo, not only gane the fame permission, but likewise strictly commanded the good entertainment of fuch Comunities, aswell generall as perticuler,& that all the Subjects should take their refection in those Colledges, from fifteene dayes, to fifteene dayes: and he cald fuch Affemblies in Greek, pilitia or of Aitia; a Parsimonia, that is to fay, of living Frugally, in regard of the amity they hadde fworne one to another, as also in all the 50 Citties of Greece.

There were likewife of the like Fraternities, which were called etaileias . As in Italy, the felflame Colledges were called Sodalitia, for Vnion, Frequentation, and Amity, which they helde together, cating and drinking (in one Affembly)

Chap. 31. Of Fraternities and Fellovy-ships.

> themselues respectively : must Learne much better directions, and imitate the worthy innentions of these daies, leaning those grose absurdities (for the most part vnprofitable) of our Elders, which themfelues approued and esteemed, but verie flenderly to any purpofe.

> > CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Antiquity of Fraternities, Brotherhoods, Fellow (hips, Societies, or Companies : And to what end they were as first instituted.

The reason of institutingthe firft traterni-

no other Judges but themselves. It there grew any difference among these Companions in Society:they knew that amity was the fole foundation of all Societies. and to be much more requifite amongst men, then Iustice. For, Iustice who is neuer pittifull, but holdes on her direct course oftentimes maketh friendes ne-10 mies, and Amity giuing way to her Seuerity, establisheth true natural Instice. Confidering, that the fole aime of all lawes Divine and Humain, is to maintain loue amongst men, and the loue of men towardes GOD, which could never be compaffed, but by frequent and fociable Conuerfation, and ordinary vnity.

the most part of their time : and having

The verie fame we may fee in the law of God, the Fealt of Easter to be recom- Con-fratermended in the company of ten, to tenne | nall Feafles persons; beside the Feast of Tabernacles in the law of and ordinary bankets of Sacrifices, which | God. God commanded to be folemnized with all ioy and gladneffe, which were entertained in the Primitive Church of Chriftians, who oftentimes made fuch Feafts, in the Primiwhich they called ayarac, for the Kiffes time Church. of Picty and Charitable embracements. which one gaue vnto another besides the fraction, and ordinarie Communica-

This Order is yet better kept in Swetia, then in any place of the world: For, in all Citties and Townes, Fraternities hoods kept a and Occupations have their Common | mongfithe Houses, where they keepe their Featles and Banquets; and there is no Village fo little, but it hath a Common house only for this purpose, wher (continually) suits, Quarrels; and Contentions are louingly concluded; and the fentence is Written downe with White Chalke, vppon the Table where they have Banketted, in token of a white & pure ending of al strifes whatfouer. It were very necessary, that An honest defuch an honest Custome should be every fire determent where vsed for it woulde predent great expences and charges beltowed in friuolous and idle pleadings, whereby infinite persons are viterly vindone.

And euen in like manner as at Rome, according to the Institution of Numa, ar- At Rome, and tificers, Merchants, Priefts, Bythops, & al forts of men had their Fraternities, and of Artezanes. certaine Gods for their Patrons (as Mercury was assigned to the Merchantes, Apollo to Priells, and the like to others, af-

Amity is worth then

had their bro-ther-hood.

Christians

learned of Pa

gans to whip thendelues.

Where the

Ads 1,9.

ot the Guelphs and Gibelines,

first Fraterni-

Cornel Tacitus.

Plin in Lib. 17

Tile Lupercal Fraternity of Shepheards.

The yearely of this Brother-hood.

The idle opinion of We

Invenall,

Marke Antho nya Lupercal Brother.

ter the example of Solon, who ordained by his Lawe, that all Communities and Brotherhoods should be permitted, with power to make fuch Statutes as they plefcd.) Euen fo in like maner, Phylosophers had Fraternities among them, especially the Pythagorianss who affembled together ordinarily, and lived (for the most part)in common.

Herodotus (who lived before Rome was builded) writeth, that there were certain Societies of men in Egypt, who woulde beate and whip themselues so long as the Sacrifice endured, when they immolated a Cowe to their God Apis. Komulus hauing entered into alliance with Tatius, K. of the Sabines, instituted a number of Priests, which were cald the Totian Fraternity. The faid Romulus made himfelfe one of a Brother-hood, which was called Amaux, that is to fay, belonging vnto the Fielde, whereof hee was the Twelfte

About the time of Romes first foundation, because manie VVolues lived then thereabout, which destroyed the Cattle, fo that great loffes were dayly receyued: the Romaines, who were onely but fillie warlicke Shepheards, instituted a fraternitie, and affociated many men togither, 30 electing God Pan to be the chief Patron, to the end, that vnanimately, and with one confent (when occasion required) they might oppose themselus against the VVolues, this was their first foundation. Not long after, neere vnto Mount Palatine, they founde a Litter of younge VVolues, which having destroyed: they afterward builded there a field Temple, dedicated to their God and Patron Pan, according as then their power and ability ferned them. This Fraternity kept ther Celebration anually, and the Brothers went naked, running thorow the Cittie, holding long strappes of Goates skinnes in their handes, wherewith they vied to lash their bodies. The women among them, fuch as were barren, would (in like manner) strike themselues on the palmes of their hands; and verily beleened, that these superstitious Ceremonies woulde cause them to become fruitfull . As may be noted in Invenall, thus mocking a wo-

Nec prodest agili palmas prabere luperco. VVhich is as much to fay, as, it ferues thee to no purpose, to present thy handes thus to the Lupercall Brother-hoode, to bee made fruitful. Marke Anthony the Emperor, he was one of this fraternity, in the yeare, 700. after it was instituted, & ran starke naked through the Citty, as the other did. Iulius Copitolinus faith, that many Brotherhoods were made at Rome, after the decease of Emperors, whom the cofar. Senate (in a manner) deifyed. As, in regard of Augustus, the Fraternities were called Augustales, and Flaurales, after the Family of the Flaurans . Aurelians and Anthonians, in respect of Aurelius and

Anthonius, Emperors. Tertullian, Bythop of Carthage, in the Cap. 39. time of great perfecutions and of Paganifine, beholding certain Brother-hoods to be made among the Pagans, carrying meats into the Temples, performing of Sacrifices, eating together, and giving to the poore: hee admonithed the Chriftians to doe the like, but not to meddle with any reuerence to the Gentiles gods, only they should continue firme in the Christian Faith. And it is verie likelie, ples are wor that Popes, Byshoppes, and other holy thy imitation men haue perswaded the Christians to immitate those Assemblies and Fellowflips: for continuance of praier to God, and censuring and separating one from another, when it should truly be known, that some one among them, had doone an acte vnbeseeming the name of a christian. Also, to conferre amiably amongst themselves if any strifes or contentions Holy and Rehad happened in the Company; then to ligious care accord such differences by their Pietie mour Anceand Loue, rather then to plead those di- uoyding of Staffull matters before Judges; keeping bad and feanpurposely an Informer among them, on- unincees, ly to accuse such delinquentes. They

would conclude amongst themselves, to

redeeme prisoners for debts, and purfue

the deliucraunce of prisoners for their

Faith; leuying a Collection of fuch fums

of money, as should easily compasse this

businesse. Also to give aide and assistance

to Christians, being in persecution, and

forced from place to place: contributing

for reliefe of the poor, comforting help-

leffe VV iddowes and Orphanes, giving

them food, cloathing, and maintenance.

To marry and lend helpe to poor maids,

in some competent and reasonable dow-

ries; prouiding for the Funerals of nee-

dy people, dying in necessity, or beeing

martyred, not having any thing lefte to

Volawful fraternit es prohibited & tocounted as ho prembers of

the Common

wealth.

France.

Of outward Apparance. burie them withall, but onely referred to

their care and mercy. Some Brother-hoods learned of those faide Pagan Agyptians, to whippe themfelues; and do practife yet to this day yea euen to effusion of bloud to subdue their bodies (as they fay) enclined to voluptuoutneffe; and this they do twice or thrice weekely; Others more rarely, according to their Denotion. Thefe Fraternities 10 haue fliled themselues Niniutes, because they finde in the Sacred Scripture, that the Inhabitants of Niniuy, being warned by the Prophet Imas, that they thould be destroyed for their finnes: heereon they became verie penitent, put on fackcloath

The first Society or Fraternitie made among Christians (fo farre as my judge- 20 Of Polybius the Romaine Ambassador, and ment reacheth) was in Ierusalem, where the ever-bleffed Virgin Marte, the Mother of lefus, all the Apostles, and many other, as well weomen as men, Disciples of Ielus Chrift, met together, and were in number about fixe fcore, after he was exalted up into Heauen, where they recevued the Holy-Ghoft, and afterwards, remaind long time in their Brotherhood and affembly.

cause it is long since, that it hath bin too

well noted in Italy, when the factions of

and athes, and chastifed their bodies, to

appeale the wrath of God.

I will not fay, that both Holy and vertuous affemblies have not beene abused. The factions under pretence of Piety and religion, be

the Guelphes and Gibelines were under ful faile, labouring with one confent (vinder the pretence of fraternity) quite to exterminat one another. As much is found to be done in Germany, especialy in the Diocelfes of Treues, Colugne, Liege, Mayence The barms in and elsewhere during the trobles of their Germany and

Countreves.

This miferie also made way into France; gathering vp Monopolies, in sted of congregating like louing Brethren; yea, bandying and elevating themselves against their King, and against the Catholicke Church, which succeeded to nothing els, but multiplicity of feditions, only to fupport the part they had taken. But fuch vnlawfull affemblies are reprodued by the Church, and no such Fraternities should be permitted in Communion of the Sacrament, prophaning holy things, & the peace of the Church. I or they ought not to intrude into fuch matters as appertaine only to the Prince, under colour of reforming, but they should be taken as feditious, factious, and feelerates, yea, to be quite cut off from the bodie of the militant Church.

Thus you fee, what I thought good to discourse, concerning the Antiquity and Vtility of Fraternities or Brother-hoods. And that they were not instituted by the first Christians, for Sporting, Dancing, and Drinking, as many ignorant and detracting persons have thought, and so laboured to perswade the simple people.

CHAP. XXXII.

his opinion of the lewish Commonwealth when hee was at Alexandria in



Olybius the great Historian, a most elegant orator, and learned Phylo-fopher, School-maister, or (as some will haue it) Companion vnto Sa

the Affrican, being fent by a Senat on Embassic to Alexandria in Egipt hauing heard of the civill warres that then were in Iudea, made a mockery of the Iewes, and fuch as held opinion that the church and Doctrine of God, should bee consti- sedition in tuted by the lewish people. For then, all fould be the that Nation was full of troubles and inte- Sacrificer. fline broiles, the great facrificing Priest being violently dispossessed of his estate by another, and this man flain or murdered by another. Euen as lason did, who expulsed his Brother Menelaus : & then, his Fellow afterward caused his Brother Onias to bee murthered . In briefe, by Ambition of the Sacrificers, who raifed civill warres; they prophaned the bloud of their Fellow-Cittizens, the Dead bodies of their elders were scattered in the ftreets, yea, hurled into the Porch of the

Temple. During which time, Intiochus King Antiochus of Syria, called thether by one of the fac- knew how to or syria, cancel there by one of the face Fish introductions, exercised cruell thecueries in euc-

ric

Cruch es vied towardes women, and their Children.

Three contra

ry Citty. He placed his Garrison in the Temple, celebrated the Feast of Bacchus in the City in which City only, stoode the Temple of the true God. Circumcifion was interdicted, and because two Weomen had caused their Children to be circumcifed, they were led naked thorough the Citty, bearing their strangled Infants at their Breafts; and (at length) themselues were throwne ouer the wals. Another, who had feauen Children was flayed, difmembred, and fried in a burning Caldron, because shee would not eate Swines flesh, contrary to the Ordinance of the Law. Befide this, during these Calamities,

there were rifen three different Sects, of

ry Sects in te

the Effees, Saducees, and Pharifees; who more tormented the Church, and her true Doctrine, then all the maffacres comitted by the lewes. In the end, Polybins to behold this so much deformed estate, thought then, that the Romain Scnate (where there was a Scipio, a Lalius, a Scauola, a Cato, a Fannitu, and others, that gouerned in the World wifely) was the place where God delighted most to be : & that he fauoured the Romans most. For, they profeered more in all their conquests, then all other Princes or people of the world did: and hee judged the affaires and condition of the world, acording as hee faw people in their good bad estate.

Now, albeit it was verie strange to see

the Church in such a dissipation and de-

formity, yet notwithstanding, there were

(euen then) fome good members that cleaued fast to her: Such were Simeon,

Zachary, and many others, both Maisters

and Disciples in her Divine School; and

after them, the Asmonees or Machabees .

I alledge these things for many Reasons:

First, to the end, that we should hold this

Confolation, that God hath enermore

his Church truely permanent, especially

in this mortall life : to the end, that al-

wayes some part of mankind should truly

know God, call vpon him, and celebrate

his name, and that part need not doubt,

but that they are preferred, counter-gar-

If Polybius had feen fome hundreds of

yeares afterward, when the Popes were

expelled out of Rome, and perfecuted, he

would have faid as much of the Catho-

licke Church. As we read of Pope Alex-

ded, and heard of God.

The Church ofGod can neuer lofe his

Gods church alwayes per-manent in this life. ander, third of that name, molested for many wayes by the most potent Emperor Frederick Barbaraffa, finding no place in all Christendome for fafety of his life: that (in the end) hee was constrained to retire himselfe to Venice, in the habite of a poor Prieft, hiding himself in the church of La Charita, where he was received as a poore Chaplaine, and relicued for the loue of God. But at length, being known for the man he was indeed, hee found affiftance, and was re-feated in his place. Pope Clement fift of that name, in regard the fift forces of the factions in Italy, durft not abide at to flie Rome, Rome, but was compelled to hold his See at Auignon, where (after him) it was coiltinued by his fuccessours, the space of threefcore yeares and more. Likewise, because there happened about three and twenty Schiffnes in the Church, fome whereof, lasted seaventeene yeares and more: fometimes three Popes were elected at one time, who made most cruell Warre one vpon another; One, defending Emperors; Others, fom other Princes, I cannot expresse the Cruelties, Infolencies, Diforders, and Wickedneffes, which (during these troubles)were committed in the Church. And yet neuerthelesse, in these hor times of Molestations, there were many good people, full of Piety, aswell women as men, among whom Gods true Church was stil preferued and manifested.

For proofe whereof, while thefe three Popes were thus in contention, to wit; holy perform Symmachies, Laurentius, and Petrus Alti- in the timed nus; there flourished great store of wor- the Schismes thy personages, that were of Holie and vertuous life, of whom I wil name some. Fulgentius Bythop of Hifbalis, a Monke; Theodores a Gracian Prieft , Ifidore, Byshop of Auuergne; Eusebius of Carthage; Dionisius the Abbot: Auitus Vuiencis; Senerims. Bishop of Trenes : Ægisippus the Divine; S. Patrick of Ireland; Pommerius and Honoratus : Cassiodorus the Monke; Fridelin of Bafile, and many others. If The Coman hundred yeares after Polybius lined, he could have feene the Romain Common- fipated. wealth wholly dissipated by the factions of Pempey, of Cafar; then of the Trium-ueri, all the World being filled with Ci-uill Wars; to attribute that which those famous Romaines (in his time) had conquered, by so great providence and discreet prefernation, hee would then have

Pope Alexan. der the third bannhed out of Rome.

Three Popes

faid, that God did not respect Rome more then he did any other nation. He thould also then have well noted the Pagans, among whom, Vertue, true Doctrine, and Honesty, was daily perfecuted and despifed: for then, if a man did but faigne to haue the truth, he was fure his Throate should be cut. But Polybius is excuseable, for he had

no knowledge of God, but was a Pagan.

He could not comprehend, that the paf-

fage to the Kingdome of heaven, is tho-

row infinite Tribulations. He beleeved,

that there was no other Paradife, but on-

ly to liue happily in this world. Hee was an Areadian, borne in the Cittle of Me-

galopolis, a great Phylosopher and Histo-

riographer, verie wel skilled in militarie

Discipline. He wrote fortie Bookes in

the Greeke tongue, containing the gefts

and pollicies of the Romains. Of all which

Bookes, at this day, hardly is any more

to be found, then five the reft were loft

and burnt by his Maid-fernant, being ig-

norant what they were. But a yong man,

that fometime attended on him , know-

ing the merit of his writings, hindred the

Maids follie, and preferred those which

wee haue, from hurling them into the

Titus Linius hath beene much behol-

ding to him, for it plainly appeareth, that

he followed him (word by word) in ma-

Of outward Apparance.

Polybius knew not God, but was a Pagan.

Chap. 32.

His Countrey and place of birth.

. Palybius was true Historian, not fubfolly of fome

Titus Livius

beholding to

ny of his paffages, without altering anie thing : and yet it was the space of an hundered years, or thereabout between him and the faide Tiens Linius. He was not fo Superstitions as some other Historiographers, who mingled falle miracles of their Gods among their Woorkes: as apparitions of Gods, Goddelles speaking with Captaines or heads of printes; that they rained downe Blood, Milke, Stones, and fuch like that Beafts did fpeake, Riuers conuert their Naturall colour into Blood, and other thinges meerely incredible. Nordid he write the Orations of Ambassadors, Captaines, and Kinges, wholly at large; without forgetting any iot, as many other Historians (both be- 50 fore and after him) have done; laboring to perswade their Readers, that those affaires whereof they discourse, passed according as they are let downe; which is not easily to be credited,

Now, as concerning the cause why he went into Egypt, it was not to learne

there what God was, or any of his workes : as did Plato, Democritus, Chrisippus, Anaxagoras and others; for he had read | Embassie inwhat those Phylosophers had Written, to Egypt. and many more befide. But the Romaine Senat wellknowing him, althogh a strahger, and that he had done very much fernice to Scipio, in giving him good adulfe and Counfel, for his conduct in the wars of Affrica, and of Carebage, deputed him their Amballador, to negotiate and accord fome matter of peace, between Ptolomy Energetes, King of Egipt; and Antiochies, King of syria, and of manie other great Provinces, who formerly had ranged ouer the Egyptian Territories, and Polybius accorded them verie worthilie. Hauing ended his Legation, he returned to Rome, where (it is faid)he died, deeply charged with yeares.

He taught and instructed that Noble Scipio, in many Vertues, and among other precepts which he left him ! that he mould never removie from the place, whereto occasion called him, vitill hee had won himfelfe a friend there. In brief, enerie man of good judgement, will not iudge rafnly, of good or cuill perfons, by outward apparance, beholding them to be fortunate, rich, or poore, nor feeing them afflicted; but rather, by their good actions, vprightnes of life, and pureneffe of Doctrine.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of a firance conseit or opinion, in the Weomen of Molcouia, to wit; That if they be not beaten by their Husbands, they thinke that they are not loved of them.



Imagined(for a long time)that that which is reported of the Weomen of Mosconia, frouldbee
a meère Fable, to

wit that if they were not very often beaten by their husbands, they presently supposed that they did not Loue them; although it is vied as a common Proucibe : Hee that loueth K k

he death of

Few women I thinke) of this minde.

Weomen in

our countries

be erronious.

Weomen are

eafily moned

to helpe one another in te-

uenge.

most, correct eth most. But such as are subicct to Discipline, Correction, and Chastifement, as are Slaues, Seruaunts, and Children of a Family, beeing vnder the power of Maisters, Tutors, or Parents, they will hardly confesse themselues, to be beloued more then any other, because they are beaten more then other. Neuertheleffe, the Wcomen of Moseouia doo hold this opinion quite contrary vnto all other elfe-where, that if they be not beaten, they are despised, and no way estee-

med.

I am well affured, that no man can perswade this for allowable, to the weomen of France, Italy, Spaine, England, no nor to the Germain weomen, or that they would accept, and let it passe for currant Doctrine: although, if it happen that they should bee beaten, even when they have verie justly deserved it; yet notwithstanding, they will strine to cry first, yea, and to beate their Husbands too, if they could; or otherwise injurie and abuse them . And Weomen-Neighbours to impeach the entraunce of fo bad a Custome, would helpe such women as complained, both in their maledictions and imprications, against such as (deseruedly) do strike their Wines, aledging Saint Paules saying, Thei, no man should hate his owne Flesh. The Wicomen of Moscoura, do neuer go out of their owne Houses, not so much as to the Churches, and do nothing else but spin. And to give affurance of what I have alreadie faid, I will declare three Historics, which very good Authors haue left Written, and which I my felfe haue heard credibly auouched by men of worth, that have bin in those 40

Laurentius Surius, a Religious Char-

kinde of affection, because he did not at

any time beate her. The Germaine hea-

ring this, made answere; that hee loued

her entirely; and perfwaded himfelfe.

that blowes could bee no true fignes of

Loue. Afterward, he vsed to beate her

fo extreamly, and fo often, that he found

treux of Cologne in Germany, Writes in his Booke of memorable matters, aswell Laurent Sur in Ecclefiasticall as Secular: how it happe Lib.ae Kub. Mem tant, Ec ned (in his time) that a Germaine trauaicief.qua Seculed into those parts, and married with a Woman of that Countrey, and his wife made a great complaint to him, that hee did not loue her, neither bare her anie 50

(by good proofe) his Wife did loue him much better then the did before. But his beating was fuch, and so immeasurably, as (at length) the Hangman brake both his legs and necke.

I was verie familiar with a Germaine Another Hiof Lunebourg, whose father was Ambas- ther confirfador for Ferdinando, Emperour, first of mation of this that Name, not long fince deceased, de- custome. puted to Basilius , Duke and King of Moscours; and hee affured me, that this Opinion was a Custome, and still in vie with the Weomen of that Country, & heard his Father faithfully report it. For he being lodged in the house of an honorable Burgeffe in the City Moschna, about the

bufineffe then referred to his truft, fawe his hoste oftentimes beate his wife vpon no occasion, and yet notwithstanding, thee left not to love him, and they spake ftill kindly each to other, without the verie leaft thew of discontent; and yet the faid woman was very often beaten, sometimes with his dagger, or aftaffe, or kickt with his feete. He said moreouer, that there a was Gold-Smith in the fame Ci-

tie, with who this Ambaffador often fre- Another Hiquented, because he knew him before in Gold mith & the Towne of Lunebourg, This Woman his wife. fent word by one of her young Children to her husband, that hee had not beaten his mother (fo much as once) althat week time: but if he would not beate her, the

would never love him, neither would fing

prouide any more diet for him . The

Goldfinith beging very builty imployed

about his worke, regarded not his fonnes

words, neither remembred this, cultome

our, to finite his dearest triend and wife,

or fo much as to flew her any vnkinde

countenance : yet afterward, ypponher

importunity, and to discharge his dutie;

fo generally in vic, as those (Naturally borne in the Country) had great respect Authors that vnto it for their pwne quiet For hee was have written of the war of a man hungaine quough (far a Germaine) and allowed northis barbarous behauis

hee gaue her halfe a dozen blowes with a Cudgell on the backe and fhoulders, & puld off her Head-attire, wherewith the was well contented, and called him prefently to an excellent prepared Dinner. Otherwise, if a whole week should passe,

and he not beate her, there could be no quietnesse in the house, norshould he get one good looke of her. This is an ordinary custome among the V Veomen in the great Province of Mofconia.

In briefe, this manner and custome of men beating their Wines, could not arife but out of Sathans shoppe; for the Christian Church hath euermore condemned it. There are none in these parts, but Knaues, Fooles, Icalous Coxcombs, Drunkards, or men voide of vnderftanding, that will exercise such Barbarous behauiour on their Wines : yet let mee not be mistaken, for I do not excuse som Weomen, that deferue to bee beaten for their vices and badneffe, and wil give extraordinary occasion to be marply handled by their Husbands. But my meaning is, of vertuous, difereet, and well adulfed women, whose merits are not meanly to

do deferue beating.

Chap.?4.

Whence this

cultome grew

CHAP. XXXIIII.

be cherrithed, but highly respected by

their Husbands.

That those things, which some Authors have left written, concerning the De-Struction and raine of great Iruy, performed by the Greekes, are true.



very much, at the wilful pertinacity of some men, who rathly have effeemed, that those things written by ma-

ny good Authors, deferuing credite and faithfull opinion of the warre and ruine of Troy in Phrygia, thould be meere Fables, and ydle vanities This error happeneth, because they have not read some Bookes, Written by parties prefent at the Warre on either fide as well Greekes as Troyans : as Dictys of Creet, and Dares Phrygius, and others, who collected alfo their Writings out of found Authority, living not long after the time when those things happened, As Herodotus and others, that heard them reported by Captaines & Commanders who had charge in the faid Warres among whom, was Philiftie the Greeke, and some others befide, that felected them out of verie auncient Authors. As namely, Quintus Septimines the Romain ; Damafcenius Sicierus; Amtlius Mater the Poet ; Enclide the

Megarian Phylosilpher, and Homer, who was about eight score yeares after.

Many Monarkes, Kinges, and other Princes took the paines, comming from farre Countries, to fee the City of Troy : Emperon as Alexander the Great, that found it rui- wene to ice ned by the Persians, who likewise destroied all that part of affa, wherein it was feated. But Fenthylus, Nephew to Agamemnon, builded it againe, after that the Greekes had facked it : raigning there, & his fuccessors (as is affirmed) vntill such time as the Perfians querthrew it. Alexander the Great, then having readmanie Heroicall actions, performed at the befiedging of this Cittie, and finding it laid defert, caused it to be re-edified, & gane great immunities and Priviledges to the inhabitants, whom hee exempted from 20 ordinary tributes; instituting there Free-Fayre, Martes, and Markets, for all fuch as would dwell there, or Negotiate with Trey changed them : in regard whereof, it was named and called & Alexandria. M. Anreliue, Dioclesian, & lexandria. C'andisse, Romaine Emperours, potent and mighty, tooke paines to travell thether from some, not without much coft and labour. And to leaue a memorie to posterity, of their beeing there, they caused a goodly Columbe to be erected, (which is yet (at this day) to be seene) of white Marble, very great, and placed in it being called Troy : but in regard of the great Antiquity thereof, it standers not directly vpright, but leaneth fome-what towards the Sea ; and thereon is engrauen these words following!

Imperator Cafat. Mer. Antonius pi- Interiprions us, Falix, Parthiel Maximus, Trib. Pl. vpon a Pilice Imp. P.XV. Conf. III, Prouinciam Affant, per viam, & flumina, pontibus fullingawir.

And on the other fide of the faid Piller, was likewife written :

Imperator Cafar Augustus, Diocletiano, P. Col. II. regnante Tribunicia vicit poteflate. M. F. Tiet Clandens, C. VIII.

In the time of the Warre which the Romans had against Withridates this Ci- Another dety was again destroyed to the verie foun- Troy. dation by a Roman Captain, named Fimbria, because Mithridates was possessed thereof, and had planted there his Garrifon, which did much harme to the Romaines. Yet it was new builded againe. Kk2

Alexander and other Kemania

The name of

Matter that

the time of Marcus Aurelius the Emperour there was an excellent Vniuerfitie Gi'en a Studentiu Troy

in the fame place, of all Sciences, and Galen the Physician was then a Student Likewise, Saint Luke testifieth, that

(but I know not by whom) because in

Acts 20, 12.

Troy again de

The ruines of

are at this day

ilion Caftle.

Troy which

Gothes.

Saint Paule paffed thorough it, and that he raifed up there, a young man, named Eutichus, that fell downe deade out at a Window, from the third Loft of the house: Also, that he preached there, and celebrated the holy Communion, where there remained a great number of Iewes. Three hundered yeares after, or thereabout, this Cittie was once again destroied by the Gothes.

I thinke it was yet againe re-builded afterward, and that the Inhabitants were Christians, because (at this day) manie 20 croffes may be feen Engrauen on ftones, enclosed in the walles of divers temples therein, that stand (as yet) most part of them, being not wholly destroyed.

At this present, no person dwelleth there, nor within a Leagues compasse round about it; I know not whence this differtion should proceed. The neere Neighboring Inhabitants do fay, that before the Turkes got their enterance into Greece, it was then to be feen in the fame condition. The fix ancient Gates, are yet there (almost) intire, with their Posternes. The Towers about the walles in many places are yet standing vpright; and the height of the VValles are (verie neere) firmely standing; against which, and circuit of

> The wals were builded of Free-stone, blacke like Iet; hard, but fpungy; asking a large time to goe about them : and the Ditches are not (as yet) filled vp. There are two Castelles, verie ancient, within the circuite of the Cittie, builded vpon the pendant of a Mountaine: one of the which, being much higher then the Cittie, as having command thereof, and was called Him Caftle, The other beeing 50 much lower, had command of the Sea; both of them beeing builded of bright Marble; and so excellent in their constru-

are erected strong Piles and Spurres of

two Fadomes breadth, to sustaine them

cture, as it is impossible for anie man in the world, wholly to demolish them. Concerning matters within the City, there are yet to be discerned the marks and tracts of such goodly buildinges, as | The markes exceed my capacity to expresse. There are yet to be feene strong Conduits and Cesternes, without any water belonging to them. The streets are verie confused, by reason of the houses ouerthrow which (for the most part) was flat forward. Of Welles or Fountaines, there is no more but one now to be seene, and that is neer to the Sea fide. Naturall Baths are there yet to be noted, holding their nature dry and hot, builded by excellent Art, and Artificially conered with fine Bricke. But be it howfoeuer, it must be much greater matter, then as yet I have heard of, that shall or can cause mee to beleeve those things for Fables, that are written and reported of the greatnesse, wealth, and power of this Citty.

There are yet many Sepulchres to be seen, both within and without the Citie, of Captains and Princes, aswell Troians as Greeks, that were flaine during the warre, made (in Anticke maner) of Marble, all in one peece, after the fashion of a Chest, the couers whereof are whole & found. Halfe a League or a mile from Troy, is the Isle of Tenedos, where are the The Isle of most part of the Greekes Sepulchers. As Tenedos. that of Achilles, who was the terror of the Troyans, yet flaine by Paris . He was fo highly effeemed, that many of his blood | many more, were afterward carried thither, to lye by vifited by A him in his Tombe, so much did they ad-

mire his memory.

This was the Tombe that Alexander went to vifit, weeping oner it, and much complaining, because he was not so happie, as to haue a man that could fo well publish his praises, as Homer had doone those of Achilles; it remaineth yet entirely whole with divers Greeke Verses thereon engrauen. And about the yeare of Iefus Chrift, 1379, when Baiazeth the fon of Selim raigned ouer the Turkes , there was found in the faide Ifle of Tenedos, the Sepulcher of an Amazon Queen, named The Tombe Marpelia: who after many booties, being an Amazon tichly laden with spoiles, made hir return Queene. to this Island, verie fore hurt and wounded, and there ended her dayes. This Tombe is yet to be seene, betweene two hilles of indifferent height; and a litle before one of them, there is a Greeke Epitaph on the couer of the Marble Cheft, and there her name is comprized in faire Carracters. Αt

One onely Well as yet remaining.

Naturall Bathes yet tobe

Tombes and Sepulchers yet to be feen

feription is to be doubted.

Belian in Lib :

Chap. 34. At any times with opening verie late ground, or passing not about a foote in depth, many other famous tombs might be easily discourred. As the Tombe of Aiax was, in that quarter where Achilles, encamped his men. About this Itle, of Tenedos, there are many other little le flands, of as good ground as that of Ten nedos, but vn-inhabited, except by fome poore Fisher-men that make their retirement thither fometimes . And it hath beene immagined, to be hanted with spirites, which speake to men in regard whereof, the men that refort thither and abide there any time, do fay, that the fpi-

rit of Homer wanders in those Islandes, where he did (in former dayes) Phylosophize; and that he (hewed himfelf to certaine Shepherds, as they paffed that way to feed their Cattle. Thus you may heare 20 the opinion of fuch as doo now dwell about Troy, and neere the lile of Tenedos; touching visions and spirits that appeare

in those Islands.

The Rivers of Simois and

The Spirito

walke yet in

Honey faid to

The Tombe

they are dried up in Summer, and in the deepest of Winter, a Duck cannot swim there. But our Poets have published fo many Fables of these Rivers, as they should seeme to have beene much greater, then now they are. Yet must we not (for all this) fay, that the History is not true, because Painters and Poets are Licenfed to embellish their woorkes with more then their inftant fubiect requireth; 40 and we must likewise understand, that vnder Poeticall Fables; there is viuallie a morrall sense contayed. As concerning the Scituation of this Citty, Theuer maketh a quite contrarie description thereof, and faith, That these two fore-named, are great Rivers : and

As for the Rivers of Simois and Xin-

thus, fo much renowned by many Poets

which watered the fields of Troy, we can

now fay no otherwise of them, but that

they are finall Brookes or Gullets, scarfe

able to nourish a Loach or Minnow: for 30

that it is feated in a good foile. I would be loth to contradict fuch a person, but that which I write, I have gathered from Bellonius a Physitian of Mans; in the fecond Booke of his Observations: and 1 my felfe haue heard him often report being at Paris, at Postell, that foure years he frequented that Country. Afterward, a man of Rohan, named Albert le bon, declared that he had bin in those parts, and

remained there a whole W inter, agreeing in all things which Beloni to had written . I thinke verily, that Theuet was neuer there, but what hee bath recorded. was onely by heare-fay.

That which hath given occasion to fome, not to credite the destruction of Troy, is (as I have heard) the judgement of the defireof Paris, concerning the beautie of the three Goddeffes Dares Phrygius Writeth, that it was nothing but a Dreame which Paris had as he flept vnder a Tree, being concerning wearied with Hunting in the Forrest of the three Ida: and Poets making vie of this dream. haue aduifed young Princes, not to imitate the folly of Paris. For hee refused Riches, which Juno presented him; and wisedome and understanding in all thinges, offered him by Pallas, if to eyther of them he would have given the Golden Ball. But fuffering himfelfe to be fwayed by voluptuous defires, hee chofe rather to give it to Venus, the Goddeffe of loofe and mif-governed affections, that has might line (alwaies after) in fuch licentious liberty. And, as an especiall note of his skilfull progression, hee made a Rape of faire Helena, wife to Menelaus, King of Lacedemon, that entertained him in his Court as a kind friend. A matter, which caused the ruine of all his family, and of all the Treyan Kingdome befide.

Secondly, they alledge also as a fable, that Priam commanded his fon Paris to be flaine, because Heenba(his Queen)being great with childe, had a dreame that The thould be delivered of a Tire-brand. And having conferred with interpreters of dreames, the King was informed, that the infant then in hir womb, thold be the cause of his ruine, and of the whole kingdom. This dreame might very likely bee dreamed by Hecuha, in regard, that verie Princes have often Princes and Princesses (by ef- many adropecial grace) forewarned of God; both in niffments in Dreames, dreames and otherwife; concerning diuers things which are to happen, to the end, that they might preuent them. For, accidents good or cuil do not only touch them, but all the people likewife. In brief, Paris from his infancy was fo vicious, as his father could neuer afford him a good looke. And when he was in his youthfull dayes, without any adule of his Pa- Paris made a rents, he married a Nimph of the Fields, marriage. but yet thee was verie faire and vertuous,

Named Oenone; and afterwardes for

ion the dream

A third reafon for the

Diana caule

of the plague

A meere pra-

and where-

gini y.

Thirdly, they affirme for a fable, that which Dictys Cretenfis, Homer and other Authours have Written, of the Plague dispersed in the Campe of the Gracians, when they affembled to plant their fiege before Trey, the Armie confifting then of no leffe, then twelve hundered thoufand able men. Euery man knoweth, that contagious Diseases doo seldome cease from pursuing great Armies, because men live there vnwholesomely, in regard of Corruptions by dead Bodies, and other annoyances amongest Men: Befides, Welles and Waters abused or corrupted; for men and beafts drinke all together, whereby the ayre becommeth infected.

fookeher, when he had enjoyed her vir-

The people then perceyning fo great a Mortality, without finding any Remedie for it, had re-course to their Goddes, and confulted with Oracles. The Priests 1 7 ng then verie fubtle and crafty, made aunswere; That this Pestilence ensued by the anger of Diana, and this was the reason thereof . Agamemnon, Brother to Menelaus , elected Chiefe Leader of the Armie, had flaine a goodly Hinde, which was Prinate and Sacred, and was 30 kept by the Sacrificing Priests (for pleafure) in some Fielde or Forrest, Dedicated to the faide Goddesse. They made them also beleeue, that they had oftentimes seene Diana, to take great delight in sporting and playing with that Hinde. Wherefore, if they would have the plague to cease, they must Sacrifice the Daughter of Agamemnon, King of Mycema, who was the onely cause of all the 40 euill.

Now, it is well knowne, that this ydle practife or Gullerie, was expressely prepared against sigamemnin, by some of the other Kinges, who were malicious and enuious (effeeming themselues aboue him) because he was chosen chiefe Soueraigne, and commaunded ouer fo great an Armie, wherein were no lesse then thirtie nine Kings. And this was 50 denifed onely to discontent him, and giue him occasion for to depart home againe: yea, and the Oracle being enftructed to this Coolenage, returned that

Beeing on the verie point of constraining him to deliuer his Daughter to bee

Sacrificed, Achilles and some other of Sactificed, Ashuer and tome other of his Friends, who had Credite fufficient with the other Kings, found the meanes to redirefte this extreamitie. For they being afsifted by fome of the Priefts and Sacrificers, that ire-confuted with the coracle. Oracle, having receyued a good fumme of Money, returned a report, that Diana would be contented with the facrifice of another Hinde, and of a Bull, which accordingly was performed.

Then the Gracian Armie entered into their prepared Shippes, which amounted to the number of eleanen hundered and fortie Saile, or there-aboutes : and dislodging thence, changed the Ayre. So, by Naturall Reason, that Contagious infection ceased : and thus should that part of the Historie bee vnder-

ftoode. For the Palladium, which was an I-mage of Woodde, representing Pallas dium or image fainc from Heauen, with a mighty thundring for image faince from Heauen, with a mighty thundring for from the Troyans had builded in the Citties which being finished, and they not knowing to what God or Goddeffe they shold make their Vowes, or elect as their Patron, this happening in the Night time, the Gates of the saide Temple being fast thut. This was nothing elfe, but onely a meere inuention of men, and principally of the Sacrificers, and Conctons Idolatrous Priestes, who found the meanes (one Night) when there was great lightning, Thunder, and Raine, to bring the faide Image thither fecretly. And comming the next morning to open the teniple Gates, in the presence of manie people; they made them beleeve, that in this ple are forterrible time of night, the Image was def cended from Heauen. Whereuppon, the Troians admyring this deceitful won- of Holineffe. der, sent some of their Noblest Cittizens (with the Sacrificers) to Delphos, there to confult what was to be done with this statue descended from heaven. The Priests of Delphos, understanding the drift of the fubtle Treyans, conspired one with another, to aunswere by the Oracle (which was a Virgine closely concealed in the Vault, and well instructed in hir answer:) That the Image of Pallas had not beene fent from Heauen , but for the more affurance and preferuation of the Troyans

estate; and that so long as shee remay-

ned within the Temple, the Cittie of

Conspirators

Chap. 34. Troy could not be furprized by Warre. The Troyan people tooke this Oracle for an Article of Faith, and so did the Grecians also: for it brought them into dispaire of euer taking the Citty, and gaue the other fide vindoubted affurance, that they frould never be furprized or vanquished; and the better to countenance their perswasion, the Troyans placed strong Guards (ordina- 10

of warre; yea, even the most resolved

ger: and none remained, but tyred

weake men, wearied with fustaining

folong a fiedge, and voide of any hope

of fuccour. Some Prin es, and other

men of marke, fore-feeing that the

Palladium could not bee preserved;

without speaking to Priam their King,

(who was then very old and feeble) or

Hecuba the Queene: conferred closelie

weary and tyred as they, defiring no-

thing more, but to raise their siedge, &

returne home to their owne Countrey)

yet made an outward bold shew, of stil

continuing the fiedge. When they

met to capitulate, among others were

Anthenor, Aneas, and some elfe, who

promifed, if they might have their lives

and goods faued, they would admit the

Enemy benefit of entrance. Promifes

past on both sides by sollemne oath, in

a place very fecret and free for the pur-

pose; the people (in meane while) sup-

poling, that they treated of a truce a

mong themselves, of the reddition of

Prisoners, and recovery of worthy

mens bodies, flaine in the skirmithes.

But aboue all thinges elfe, the Greekes

ftrictly held, that the Palladium should

bee delinered to them : for they were

perswaded, that they should neuer get

entrance into Trey, folong as the Image

continued there, fo farre did the deuill

(then) preuaile with men. This fot-

tish light beleefe, S. Augustine verie ex-

ceeding wel mocked, when he faid: The

Troyans were keepers of the Palladium, but

with the Greekes, (who were as much | 3

Two brought into wofull

bufed by a falle Oracle.

not the Palladium of the Troyans. The Guards were wun with Mony, and the Vest ales that were there destined; contrary to their Oath and Vow, suffered their Palladium to bee lott, and another Image pur into the place, very neerche refombling it, covered with the fame ornaments and lewels, whereof none was then mindfull.

> tented, and fent great prefents to the Traytors, with reiteration of their Oathes. Whereupon, in the dead time of night, the Traytours opened the Gate called Scea, whereon was emboffed the head of a Horse, and by a flaming Torch, gaue fignall to the Greekes for entring the Citrie, which they did, and defroyed having yet the Traytours Children in their hands as hostages. Thus was the Citty taken, King Priam flaine, his wife and Children led away Captines, and fuch as remained of the Royall Isfue. were murdred, and almost all the people maffacred: Faith was kept with the of Tray faued, were exempted from spoile. To wit, Anchifes, Father to Aneas, Anthener, neere Kinfman to King Priam, Polydamas, Vealegon, Amphidamas, Dolon, and divers other ; to whom Ships were giuen, for conucighing thence their wines, children, & what focuer elfe they could'carry away . After the facke had

> > The number that dved in

tiucs. As concerning the Horse of wood,

The Palladium being now in the berily well payed) about the Palladium. fiedgers power, they were highly con-Now, it fortuned, that by long delay of time, many rough battailes and skirmishes, and all places of entrance

into the Citty fo strongly besiedged; that Troy could no way bee supplyed with victuals . But being thus fenerelie beleagerd, themore part of the best men

and valiantest Troyans, dyed with hun- 20

betrayers, but yet with great difficulty : and their neuertheleffe, after the reduction, they

continued the space of eight daies, the Citty was wholy burned, but they had great difficulty to destroy it : for the buildings were all of Marble, or of free

Stone, strongly courred and tarraffed. But the Greeks were very great in spleen against it, because the most part of them (in this long fiedge) had loft many of their Kinred and deere Friends, beside

their owne hard sufferance in the warre. There dyed in this befiedging, eight hundred, eighty and fixe thousand Greekes, vntill the reddition of the Citty; and fixe hundred; featienty; fixe thousand, as well of the Citty, as such

fuccours as was fent them, by Kinges, Queenes, and their Allies abroad, without making any account of both Men and Women, that were led thence cap-

in like cafe.

A fift reason the fable of harfe of wood within whose belly men were hidden, and whereof they made an offering to Pallas, to compaffothe meanes of breaking the wals thereby, and fo to ouercome their enemies : thefe (truely) are Poeticall Fables, But yet we are to obferue, that the Citty was furprized at that gate, whereon there was the head of a Horse (very bigly) embossed, and of blacke Marble, as before wee haue

A fixt reason, the Fables of the Antagones,

faid to come to the fuccour of Troy, conducted by their Queene Penthefileas this is a Fable too. But yet we must credit that this Woman was a Queen, and commaunded ouer many Countries; a Friendand neere Ally to King Priam, in whose aide she came bringing with her eight orten thousand men, and not Women, that were flaine in feuerall fights; and the her felfe (at laft) in a fingle combate with Achilles. For, there was neuer any Countrey, inhabited onely by Women, nor is at this present, which I purpose else-where to It is also held for a Fable, that the

A feauenth reafon, the tenne yearcs fiedge of Troy.

> Whence the Author tooke his interpretation of the Poeticall Fa-

which is faid to be made by the Greekes, faid, and it remainerly yet to be feene. Next, for the Amazones, which are

Greekes should abide at the siedge of 20 Troy, the space of ten yeares: this is not altogether incredible, because as much hath beene done in our time. The fiedge which Baiazeth brought before Constantinople, lasted eight yeares and some moneths, in the yeare 1373. and yet (for all that) was not taken. That which I have written, concerning the subtilties of the Priestes in those daies: I protest, I faw them in the hand 40 of Monsieur Pelerin, a Parisian, Schoolemaister to the children of the late Lord De l'Aubespine, in a Booke being a Manuscript, & in the Greeke tongue, which a man of the Church had ginen him, who was a follower of Monfieur de Fumell, Ambassadour in the East. This man had the Booke of a Caloere, or religious Greeke at Mount Athos; and therin is the Interpretation of the Fables, which I have alledged in this Chapter, and many more belied. The Authour thereof was one Temifon, a Smyrnian, who (I thinke) was a Sacrificer, and afterwardbecame a Christian.

There is a certaine Booke, intitled, Troy not taken, it is in the Greeke toong,

and translated likewise into Latine, which is faide to be composed by one named Dion the Sophister, that lived Dion the Soin the time of Traiane the Emperour phifter deceiand neuer vsed any other Garment, writings. then the skinne of a Lyon. But he alleadgeth such poore reasons, to proue that Troy was neuer taken, nor befieged by the Greekes: that a Childe of tenne yeares olde would fet downe better. Therefore, fuch as doe yet hold that error, and are perswaded, that what hath beene written by many oculary Au-thours, and others beside of good credit, concerning the Troyan History, is no way veritable: let them see (to their shame) the ruines of that famous Cittie, which yet (to this day) doe make thew of themselues, as I have described them in this Chapter. The round neighbouring places, ports of the Sea, which doe (yet) retaine the very fame names, that then they had. The Toombes of fuch famous men (with their infcriptions) that died as well on the one fide, as the other; being all of Marble, with the couertures whole, but no bones in them : for neuer was any thing put into them, but the ashes of the dead, because (in those times) the bodies were all burned.

CHAP. XXXV.

How a Man may eafily know, what kinde of drinke will foonest make one drunke : As with Wine , Beere, Ale, Cider , Perry and other drinkes.



Ine is not the only drinke Wine onelie that causeth drunkennes, doth not pro-when it is immeasurablie taken, or when it is receiued by Men or Women,

whose braines are weake and feeble. For, there are many other arteficiall Beuerages, made in those Regions, where no Wine hath encrease or growth; as in Normandy, Brittaigne, in the more part of Piccardie, the lower Wine. Germany, and other Northerly Countries. But they make vie of Cider, Perrie, Beere, Ale, Raffis, and other drinks, which procure drunkennes more then

Wine doth. In Turky, it is forbidden to fuch as are of the Mohometane Law, to drinke Wine vpon paine of life; and drinking wine there are likewife Drinkes arteficiallie

> The drinke of the Caribes &

Chap.35.

The Caribes and Anthropophages, pcople that feed on the flesh of Men, make a kind of drinke, which they call Canonin: it is made of certaine roots called Aypie, and groffe Miller, champed in Ic the mouths of Women, and then boyled in some quantitie of Water. Of this drinke they make vie after their repast, for they drink not at all in the time of their feeding, as wee doe in thefe partes : but rather imitate nature, as other Creatures do. This Canonin cauferh drunkennesse, more then Wine doth here, if too much be taken thereof.

In the Kingdome of Narfingua, Ta-

Akinde of drinke iffuing cut of a tree.

Metheglin madein Turky

drinkes hurt

more then

ranganor, Calceut and Peru, they drinke akind of liquor which commeth forth of a Tree, that is therefore, purposelie cut in the Spring time, like vnto the Palme, and it inciteth drunkennesse alfo. Many Countries in the Asian Indi-aes, do make divers drinkes of Rice and Tpiceries, which will procure drunkennesse likewise. In Turky they make a 30 certaine Hydromell or Metheg in which troubleth the braine much more then Wine. In breefe, there is not any Nation that will content it felfe with drinking Water onely : but have denifed one or other arteficiall benarage to please the Pallet, and delight their talt. I my felte having frequented those Countries, where no Wine at all is Hiade, but other arteficiall drinkes dai 40 fie vied, as harly before beene declared: I have apparantly perceived, that fuch as receive their drunkennelle by wine

haue quite contrary behaufour to others, that are ouercome with Beuerages; as of Beere, Cider, Perry, and the And although thore then that are actions and behaviour in drunkennesse

fand follies, and counterfeit diners anfind follies, and counterreit, quiers and ticke fopperies yet it is most certaine, that nopetan declare the like fortiffication of the counter of the counte

they neither reele or stagger on any fide ; but onely backeward ; and fall The differece downe flat on their backes: but flich as are drunke with Wine, reele forward, ther beueraand alwaies fall or lye vpon their face | ges. and nofe; whereas the other do bruife their shoulders, and breake their heads behind. As likewise may be discerned when they are ouercome with fleepe in drinking, for they that are drunke with Beere, Ale, Cider, and other drinkes arteficiali; doe fleepe on their backes, with their bosomes open. I have beene credibly affured, that duen fuch is their behaulour in Turky, the Indiaes, America, and other Regions, when the , are

Where men doe become drunke with Wine, they fleepe vpon their faces, the Chinne enclining into the bo-fome. The reason is, because his fumes and vapours proceeding from most parcel Wine; do gaine possession in the heads the braine. formost parr, and the anterior parts of the body alfo. But those fumes which mount aloft by other drinkes; doe in-cline to the head behind, and the polic-tion parts also; which is a realon what they are very oblinious enermore flee-

py, and no great praters or brablers,
The French, that (during the States Warres in the Lowe Countries) trauailed thither as Souldiers would make their boafts, that they had familiaritie with many. Women there, when they found them to bee made drunk with Beere : for then they would fall downe backeward, at which time, their pudicity might cafflic be attempted, finding them in lich ynwomanlie readineffe. Let them (therefore) that have care of their Chaffity, take heede how they become drunke. And as for men, ouer and belide, that many doe then disclose their owne fecrees they enter also (oftentimes) into quarrels, destroying their health, and va-doing themselues. Our Lawes do hold them for infamous pet fons, that are addicted to drunkeineffe. after in the left of some left, on

co helbas in them decided

Applied to most concern, that Posts

Bread er: dio He druh 40 CRES 18 45.

ers are apr at

80.64

the way and is shook. I CHAP:

Bread made

CHAP. XXXVI.

Against the Axiome, which maintaineth, that all Repletion is naught, by what fu-Stenance foener it be; But of Bread most



Could neuer vnderfland the reason, although I have enquired of many learned Philitions, who (neuertheleffe) haue published

the fame alfo : that Repletion of bread, 20 is more dangerous and pernicious, then all other nourishments beside. For not onely it feemeth to me voyd of all reafon but it hath beene fo accounted, by all them that I have conferred withall. Because all other foods, as the flesh of Oxen, Kine, Murton, Veale, Goat, Hare, Hart, Hinde, Boare, Swine, of Fowles, and alfo of all Fishes which we vie, and any Fruit whatfocuer , doe | 30 corrupt eafily of themselves, if they remaine any while in the stomacke and be not digested: the like doth Egges, and all things prepared with Milke, except Cheefe, which is faide to be (almost) indigestible. All such as vie these meates without Bread, haue neuer any good colour, but are much subject to vnfauoury breath, and fometimes (of their owne bodies) a finell fcant plea- 40 fing : neither are they fo wel nourified, nor fo ftrong; as they that care more Bread, then any other meat belide.

To prooue that it must needs be fo, we may behold, that the most of other Viandes, how acceptable focuer they feeme to the taft, well prepared and fea-foned with good Sauces: they doe yet (very often) bring a diflike and con-tempt of themseldes. Bread only neuer distateth, be it in health or in fickneffe; it it is the last appetite lost, and the first recoucred in sicknesse. In health, it is alwaies the first and last eaten, pleasing and most agreeable to nature, beyond all other kindes of repast. Againe, it is most certaine, that Bread

(by a wonderfull bleffing in Nature) is endued with all those fauours; which perticularly doe incite and allure each meates to bee fed on : pleasing fome in their sweetnesse, others in their sharpneffe or tartneffe; some in their faltneffe; others in their fowreneffe, and all in their due apprehension. Bread containeth in it, whatfocuer any Man can taft, or is acceptable in other ineats. For, albeit other foodes have never fo good rellish of themselues : yet can they not bee sutable, or profitable to feede on for health, except they be accompanied with Bread. To speake all in a word, Bread, by his goodneffe correcteth the vices of other meates, and helpeth their vertues ; whereon it is vied as a common Prouerbe: That all meats are good and beneficiall, when Bread is their companion.

Some Spagirickes, Alchymists, and Extractors of Quinteffences, have told and affured me, that having put Bread ding from the into their Limbecks or vessels of glasse. Quintessens as meaning to deriue an Effence from ces him : they have divers times found the Bread converted into Fleih. We doe daily note (as already I have faid) that the most part of them, which doe eate their meate without Bread, be it Flesh or otherwise, they have continuallie flincking breath . The Athletes or flour Wraftlers (as I finde recorded in the Wraftlers Bookes of Galen) fuch as were eftecmed the very best, and strongest in habitude among other men: had neuer any other nourishment but Bread, accompanied with a little Hogs Flesh.

When the Scots vicd to warre out An inuenite of their owne limits, as in England and of the South other places, if they thought to finde in warre the Country ruined where they frould paffe: they droue with them a great number of Beafts for flaughter, and liued (by the way) vpon those Beafter. And because they had lived sometime by Fleth alone, their flomackes a long while would be fickely, by not having had the vie of any Bread, For remedie of which domachall dileafe, each man perticularly carried a Sachell of Meale, weighing about some pound & a halfe ar the most, and a little Iron Plate, thin and flender. Then mingling a little of the Meale, in a woodden dish with water, and driving it into a Past: they laid

Bread consir all kinds of

Arabes and Mores becom

Bread not wel

Of Repletion.

it on the Plate ouer a small fire; and in I this manner (immediatly) they made Bread. This doth in some manner) refemble our Waferers making of Wafers. The Scots having eaten of this Bread ; found their stomackes well refreshed, and their bodily strength sufficiently restored; after which, they would begin againe to vie flesh onelie, according to their wonted custome.

Chap.37.

our Wafer-

An argumen

to approue the power of good Bread.

Bakers.

I alleadge this Hiftory; to demonstrate, that if fo little bad made Bread, neither leauened nor kneaded, could restore the languishing strength of men : what then is good Bread able to do being kneaded and baked to full perfection? This benefit of baking Bread upon a Plate of Iron, brought much commodity to that Nation: for they needed little fearch after Brakes or Mils, which commonly are beaten downe and deftroyed (before all thinges elfe) that in the degastes of warre, the enemy may hane no benefit by them.

The Lord of Villamond declareth, that being gone forth of his Ship, and likewise all those in his company, at the Port of Ioffa, and putting themfelues on the way, to trauaile by Land to Ierufalem: the Moores and Arabes entred vpon their veffell lying at Anker, and robbed them of nothing elfe but Bread. Other Theeues alfo, of the fame feet and kinde of men's meeting with the same company the day following: tooke also nothing from them but Bread, All Nations have not Bread, nor the vie thereof, and fuch as never had (as many Countries but lately disconered) when Christians give it them to Sauages doe lighly effects ead. cate, although it be but a Bisker, and of the very courfest: they make great account of it, they finde it so fauourie.

I am of the minde, that he which faith, fatietie and Repletion of Bread. is more dangerous then all other nourishments: his meaning is of such bread prepared, is most fast kneaded, and well baked, or without Leauen, because it is the more hard to digeft. As for my felfe, my meaning is of such Bread, as is made of good and pure graine, wel cleanfed, kneaded, raifed, baked, and fresh . I speake not heere of Fish-bread, which is made in Hirland, among the people which dwell on the Lake of Barcena, & that in the Isles of Imangla, Inebila, and

and an infinite of Countries on the red Sea, and elfe-where. Nor also of that which is made of the barke of Trees, vsed in the Country of Vendenao, which is called Sagu, and is faide to be very fauoury sheing reduced into Meale, and afterwardinto Bread; As finite alfo of the same Tree is, in the Isles of Moluquoi/es. By the reasons fore-alleadged, I would perswade all persons not to forfake the vie of Bread, for fond or lickorish defire after other meats: if they couer to have good ftrength, a chearefull complexion, and health.

Concerning the innention of Bread, fince what length of time it hath continued, and who was the first Inuencor thereof; there is not any thing found for certaine. In the East Countries; the vie of Bread is very ancient; for We finde, that it was vied in the times of Abraham, and of lacob, when his Son's descended into Egypt, onely to buy Corne, to make Bread . But neerer vs. the vie thereof is not found to ancient; because the Romaines vsed no kinde of Bread, but onely Corne boiled (as likewife the Gaules and Germaines did) till they brought it a perfect rifting in funder, and then they did cate it among their other freates, euen as at this prefent as we do our bread. This continued thus till the Perfian W arres, which In Haly along was in the yeare (after the Cities foun- time after. dation) 580 And then came Bread-makers, or Bakers of Bread, out of Afia to Tome; who gave enfirition, how to multure or grinde Corne, then to knead it with Leauen; and lastly, to bake it in Loaucs.

CH AP.XXXVII.

Of the excellent and profitable properties of the Swallow; And the Nature of the



Ecause the Swallow never nestleth in Cities, nor on their Walles; which are fubiect to be taken and retaken by war; because by

her comming and presence, she assureth those places where she is not to be sub-

meats in taft.

Great vie of

Bread, cau-

feth funch.

Bread maketh

men frong

and robust.

many excel-

lent things.

House or Wall where she buildeth her nest, not to be threatned by any necre ruine : Because, that by her comming, the resolueth winter to be past, and the Spring time beginning; because (likewife) the hath in her many especial properties, by divers benefits and other things arifing to man, whereof we shal discourse hereafter : it seemed meer (in my judgement) that this Bird well deferued to have a perticular Chapter

The Swallow knoweth the feafons and temperature of Climates.

The great

memory of the Swallow

extreamity of heat, and of cold likewife. Pliny faith, that this Bird, feeling the extreame heat of Affricke approaching; the flyeth thence in the prime, to delight her felfe in a temperate ayre: And when the perceiveth Winter enfuing, which is about the midft of September ; the then returneth to the Countries extreamely hot, where winter is in the fame manner, as Summer is here with vs. This Bird hath fuch an absolute memory, that having re-pas-Led the Sea, and many other Regions, which are two thousand miles off, at 30 the leaft : yet shee well knoweth to returne to the place or lodging, where (in the precedent years) the made her Neft, and where thee had young ones. This I have seene, and made proofe of by one Swalow, haning tied a red Silk twine about her Claw; and the fayled not the yeare following, to returne and build her nest, where she had done the yeare before, bringing the Silke faft tyed ather foote. She neuer lodgeth

The Swallow cleanieth the

ica to the rigour of Warre; as also the written of her, in her iuft defence 2gainst such as labour to depraue her.

The Swallow abideth ordinarily, in Regions temperately hot, shunning the two yeares together, in one and the

She is not affraid of a man, and (willingly) buildeth not her nest in Houses. It is faide, that God hath done this in his great providence, to the ende, that fuch Creatures, as have no other feeding but on Flyes, which doe fo much mollestation to men all Summer, and in the beginning of Autumne; might thus be denoured. It is the onely Bird which feedeth in the Ayre, and there catcheth a prey, to carry to her young ones . But some people, not knowing what they do; will breake downe their Nefts, thur their windowes and doores

of their Chambers, to the ende, they The barbamay not enter in or out, to carry feed full grotheir young. Nay, they do them all the injuries they can, breaking their this poor but Egges; yea, sometimes they kill both He and She. But if a man knew the good and commoditie, which these pretty Birdes doe bring vnto vs; they would be more milde, and let them line in peace.

I know very wel, there are fome who will alleadge, that the Dung of thefe Birds is fo pernicious, as if it fall into a Mans eyes (as it did to Tobias) it will then, without all question, make him By not vnder blind. But they that have alleaged this flanding the History, were not skilful in the congs; fault was com albeit Mathio us, a man learned, hath a- mitted. uouched the same following their opinion. For the lewish Theologian Doctors, wel skild in the Syrian and Hebrew Languages, fay : that it was not Swal- The laurned lowes that dunged on the eyes of Tobi- their Books, as, but Sparrowes, which is confirmed that Tobias by Diojcorides, when he faith, Swallowes became blind north Swallowes, being eaten, doesleare the fight, like as the lowes, buth Beeficie or Gnat Inapper . The Athes of Sparrowes them, as well of the great as smal(their bodies being burned in an earthen pot; and Hony applyed to them) doe take away al impeachments that trouble the fight . It may then well be discerned here by that the dung of the Bird which tool caway the fight of Tobias, was not that of the Swallow, according to their indgement. And Galen is of the fame mind with Diofcarides : I refer it then to beiter censure.

She hath enftructed man, how hee The Swallon ought to builde, for with Straw and Morter the buildeth her Neft, and with man dobated fuch cumning; that hardly can any proudeth for M. make the like. When the defireth propagation, the Male medleth with his Female; but not in mounting, or rreading upon her, but by ioyning both their hinder parts together, for which to yeilde a reason, Alianus faith, that he never knew any rendred. They fly abroad in the fields, to feeke for Wooll, which they plucke from the backs of Sheepe with their clawes, and carry into their Nests, whereon they lay their Egges, to preserve them from breaking, as also the enclosed young ones from hurring.

The Male and Female, supplying the

place of Pather and Mother, give tee-The manner ding to their little Birdes, beginning at ot teeding their young Birds. the first which is hatched and first broaking forth of the shell. Then they feeke another feeding, & give to the fecond, and fo to the reft tollowing cuen to the fift and last for they lay and fit no more but fine Egges at each brood. Thus we may fee how this Bird instructeth mant how to carry himfelfe in nourithing | 12 exalting and distribution of his goodes to his Children, aduancing alwaies the first borne or eldest. They duily cleanse Cleanling their nefts, their nefts of al ordure and dung tound therein, and are very skilfull in defant their Egges. ding themselves from verinine, which are enemies to their Egges, and will bite them . But nature hath endued them with fo much knowledge, as they can well preserve their Egges from 20 harmefull vermine : for they tocke but kang tan enad the Hearbe called Smallage, in Labine guertes. called Apium, and bring it into their Nefts, and by the flrong fent of bitterheffe thereof, the vermine dye. it is a and Their young Birdes doe refemble whelps, that continue for a time blind: are hatched but the Male flieth abroad, and findeth blind like our Whelpes. acertaine Hearbe, by meanes whereof their fight quickly commeth. Very 3c long and diligent inquifition hath been made after this Hearbe, and the Birdes very narrowly watcht for it; yet could it never beeknowne what Hearbein is. If a man open the eyes of the young Birds, they recouer their fight without any other help: but fome do affureiva, that (by meanes of that Hearbe) their n inidad (fight is the clearer. Which being known tomen, the Plant would ferue to make Que ean words their fight more perfect : and therefore (gueffing at the true Hearb) they call it Celandine, or Chelidonia, or Hirundinaria. illolo) For formany benefits, which menge

seine by means of this Bird, befide those

recited in the beginning of this Chap-

ser; enftructing how to build, keep our

Houses cleane, delighting vs by her

finging, preferring fight by that kinde

mine i me thinkes no man hould mol-

left her but rather peaceably converse

with her, as a guest or friend that com-

weil but to fde hun . She careth not a-

my thing of ours, but the frees visirom

a multitude of flyer, at the flyeth in the

Avre and the found bee entertained.

of Hearbe, and detroying hurtfull ver-

(as Holow faith) chearfully, like a good guest acher comming, and when the is willing to depart aut to with holdber.

The Aftes and Fleila of this Bird, as | The Aftes & we have formerly faid, dorh not onelie | Swallow. ferue to cleare the fight, and recouer it if it bee loft : but it is a remedy allo for many multiprestrevils; For if wee take the Swallowes first young ones, in the Moones encreasing, and cleave them; we that Rode Black there wones intheir bellies; white est two weeks bec in young taken to with the things of white co- swallowes, lours, and amountain which is but of one good against the falling colour onely. These stones, wrapt in seeknesse. the skin of a young Hart, or Heiler before it have toucht the ground) and tyedobbbotheneckers and Kinglia usiboblefor fireh lashbog probabing dicknesses and maketh them very chearfiel - date gineth afforance, that Swals lower glades, incorporated with Hony; doubelife the Squinality, and all other defects ion lamps fluines in the throat. ro alla Periodele sont Accorde alla ga : D'im faith the ist broate thier finits of Swallowes, whendof, one buildeth Three kindes her bielt vinde Hittles whe fecond in or Swallowes: old ruined buildings, in holes and Car uernes of Rockes and chies on the Sea fidd ; and the thing a buildeliniuthe bankes of Rivers. In the Ille of Samos, there are Swallowes namehild att white Behold what I have gathered our of guiddiand approoned Authoris, concoming the properties of dis Bird; in whospination weappy well order our Deconomy or Hou hold goderncafily toucht with lightning strategue said framhowethnicallificanteral Men juho haub compared droft friend ly Similares too Tearle faithfull and diffembling /Friender who and no Friendes , bundonlong as there are mednes remaining to derine any commodification wherepy Hor they halis imagined , thut those Birdes dod line on the Seedes! Graine, and Fruites of the fielde : and that to foone us they ard locking; they dye away into fome other Countrey of Bac to sion ande moft sertaine ; that thele kinde Birdes doe not line vpop any kind of Grand or Practice when on Flyes, which thy very indeat agility of they take in the Asirch hoing x bry molectious to men)

tables of Las \$1000

Plin in lib, 14:

Impertinent compatifons

wile of reor 🖒 á liteach ea anoltog set s

nec elektricie

Swallowes are no way hurrful to me.

The benefit

of poore and homely buil-

Heauen noe-

nemy to hum-ble dwellings.

CHAP, XXXVIII.

A Paradoxe in defence of Hard-Lodging, appropuing it to be more healthfull and commendable then thofe in great Pallaces and houses of pleasure.



Lready we have discourfed of poore and meane descent, now come we to 20 speak of the humble cot-

tage, the dwelling wher-in I have and will maintaine. The building of fuch honest boules of harbour, doe require little expences and charge, in leffe time are they crected, more cafily furnished, and with far greater commodity kept and frequented, then flately Pallaces, and houses of pleasure. The proportion of a handfomelistle house, 30 carrieth good correspondency, and no outward wanton appearance. It is leffe fubicat to the danger of Theenes, then is the large and spacious Pallace, compaffed about with rare deckings, great & bale Courts, Offices, Stables, Dogkennels, Hearnrios, Hauks-mewes, and other fuch superfluous delights.

The poore and simple house, is not eafily toucht with lightning and tem- 40 pelts from Heaven and a man may dwell there more quietly, then in the faireft profpected Lordinip garnified with fo many Gardens, Arbours, Turrets, Vaults, Mountainelike wals, and other curiofities swhich doe nothing elfe buetire and weary men. The poore house's sooner provided, and with lesse coff then the greater. It excuses the Mailter from making Fealts, to fuch as (commonly)returne but mockes when they are inuited. The smal house is free from the Harbingers marke, or the Marshals of Princes, Cardinalles, and Lords, that cannot be entertained but in pompous d welings. Let vs but confider, where fuch States have made but

the least folourning; how many things have need of new mending? And their passage that way, resembled a storme and tempest of raine, washing all good order for a long while after. See if your Sernauts become the better enftructed thereby your Houshold in any more civill manners, or your house furniture in fuch good fort as it ought to be. I had almost forgot, that (many times) they put their Hoft to the perill of borrowing, inciting great Lords to affect his Living. So that, if they can cunningly compasse the meanes in recompense of their kinde entertainement: the Hoft is brought to the hazzard of confiscation, for the very least word inconfiderately fpoken, eyther a gainst the Prince or Religion.

This is the reason, why I cannot fufficiently meruaile, at the great follie and poore judgement of some Men, who couer huge Pallaces, and fumptuous Houses for their abiding and lodging; beeing much grieued and of-fended, if they should take but one nights rest in a meane, poore, and po-puler house. As if our Soule (full of all excellent nobleneffe, and endued with infinite priniledges, which God hath thereto affigned;) should imagine the body too straite and narrow a roome, for hir to abide in. Or as if (in how thort time God best knoweth, whether wee be willing or no) we (hould not render the bodie into a much leffe Lodging, to finde out one farre more excellent and magnificent for the Soule. Can a meane House, a hard Bed, or a narrow roome bee any hindrance : but that our Spirit (freely, and at her owne gafe) may make discourse thorow all Celestiall pleasures, much better delights then can bee wished for in this world? It need not (there) ftand bound to fo many inconveniences; as the dwellers in faire and Lordly places, are euermore subject vnto.

When Warre had his beginning, and entred into confultation, to burne and destroy the Countrey on all sides, as it prooued most to yeelde disaduansage: the Soldiours, and men appointed for spoyle, received ho charge to meddle with little Hamlets, or poore Shepheardes Houses ; but the most magnificent and beautifull habitations

Great person eane house

One man eafily purcha-feth anothers

The spirit is at liberty in the least Cottage

The Titles of

vertue are truelie fa-

booty of poor places, their aime is at dreatperfons hue lodged Of Hard-Lodging.

of great Lordes and Princes. Befide, if neede required to make a Fielde affembly, in what place focuer it were: the fayrest Castels & cossiest buildings were fure to bee first taken up and ve

Chap. 38.

Great houses

ruined, aske long time to rebuild.

Bur let vs admir, that a poore mans Corrage suffers spoyle among the rest: yet the Man hath this comfort left him (a priviledge beyond the large cal pacity of Castles) that his House will (well-nere) be as foone builded againe, as a Captaine can commaund and fet his fielde in order. But when a great Pallace becommeth ruined, many years are required to erect it againe; beside; it ferueth(a long while after) as a recept racle for Rascals and Field Run-awaies; or as a warren for Toads and Serpents, or as a Garden for Fresh water Souldi-

I cannot chuse, but take pitty and

compassion on such mens affections, that place their whole felicity on fuch thinges, whereby they can receive no praise or honour. For it oftentimes commeth to passe, that the gloric of a goodly building, beareth not his name that caused it to bee made; but of the new Purchaser, or the cunning Archi-tect, who desernedly is styled Maister of the worker But fay that the party himfelfe, who was at the charge of the building, doe carry Name and Title thereof: what a fillic glorie is it (but faire greater vanitie) to dougt honour by beeing a Lord ouer Stones, which are thinges fenceleffe and voide of life ? To be Maister of a peece of Wood? Or, when all is faid, a Lord of Chalke and Duft? Were it not much more famous for him, to bee entitled a Lord of many faire Artes and Sciences? Or to win honour by fome heroycal worthy, and vertuous actions.

That it ought to be for ancient Princes and potent Lords, who more effecmed valour and vertue, then matters earthly & transitory; were nelier wont to fer their affections on fumprious buildings : but were altogether fludious and addicted for the extellencie of vertue and proweffe. Wha not the house of great Enander, little, mean, & poorely built a And yet notwith anding, the fame of the vertuous Maifter thereof made it effected of no leffe va-

lue, then other great & royall Pallaces. and deferred to chrertaine the fal your & highly renowifed Hereales . In his Cafar, never builded but alliele houle, be caufo he would not be hindred from fo many finguler'vertiles, as broughthim (aclength) to govern the great komaine Emplre Mighry sepre, that compered most kubbotne Affrek, had wener day perticuler Lodging but aboad in one poorevillage, then in another ; to Make off wearineffe, and with draw hithfelfe from the mollestation of great affaires.

Dingenes, the grant Philosopher, that was of flich an excellent Spirit, as euer any man was in his time : made his dwelling in a poor Fab, to defend himfelfe from the raine? and heate of the Sunne ?" Hillarion, that good and deuout man; lay very hardly nithe Ea-Acrne Deferts, if appoore little Cell. which he had (as Saint Hierome reporteth) more truely made as a Sepulcher, then any Honle to dwellh: Gatha lod ged in a Honie for tell and for ne on all fides, to open about the many black; that being (tine day) defired by a friend of his; but had him his Manile! The almfwered that hee bold hot finite it be canfe it ferned to woulder and the poor lodging. This he forke benefiting a great hale in the toofe oner his head. which had been lately broken, and perceiting a darke cloud not farre off that threathed a prefent frewer offine da lines Drufus Publicola, had (in like hadnner) a house so broken and minered: as whofocuer was without, might caffile differne and count the mousables with in, and behold what the good man the

in his house. thofe gaudy places, and Built with fuch in the world beauty, were more defending then the other from nicering With the affaults of death, and infinite milhaps and dileafesthatbefall vs in the World . Such as are readin Hiltories! Or contelife in the any pleasure, can lay with me; that when Tullies Hon ilius Wis finiteen with thunder, he was then mon merry in his Pallace royall. When Tarquining Phil cus was flaine, he was IR Was high mag-

moft dangers.

of Coldes

of dwelling doth not dif-

parage the

yerrue of the

great persons

A little Cot-

tage (with content) is

poore mans

Kingdome.

nificent Lodging. How many other Lords may we speake of hoth Ancient and Moderne, that have beene flaine in their braue Castles, by divers accidents and misfortunes? The Duke of Prbine, who builded a Pallace most faire and rich: did it defend him from danger, or being the most wofull example of calamity to enery eye, that happened in his time? The goodly Pallace of Trent, faid to be without comparison, for the infinite Roomes contained in the round: was it any printledge to the Builder thereof, in exempting him from as many miseries and mishaps, as the wretchedit Varlet in the World could have no more? To what end ferued fo many and excellent sare Buildings, erected by Lucullus and Metellus? wherein were Caligula or Nero more happy then others, though they had houses of such fpacious circuit, as comprehended (wel negre) the whole Citty? The braue worke man that builded the Pallace at Para; could he warrant himfelfe from firetching on Mount Falcon, which hee likewife made for Malefactors? Wewil conclude then, that he is to

Great Houses are the places most dangers.

in gay buil-

one moneths experience, and he will finde it too true ro his cost . For asluredly, these are the places, where commonly hapneth most secret mischiefes either by broaths or drinkes, feafoned otherwise then they should bee, or by the power of too keene a Weapon for other Stratagems of like nature. They are fafe thelters alfo, for wanton and libidinous pleafures; where a falle friend may (conest graft hornes on his companions head, and where fire is foone, kindled, but flowly quenched.

beholding to cunning Builders, highly

be accounted a meere Foole, that dif-

house, or take quiet rest in a good hard

bed; coueting with heat and greedy de-

fire to make his aboad in flately places,

wherein (for the most part) lurketh all

misfortune, fraud, diffimulation, flan-

der treason, and misery. He that is loth

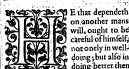
to credit what I fay slethim make but

dames to dwell in a poore or meane 30

Lot vs then flunne them fo diligent-The Authors ly, as (with our best meanes) we may, this Paradox. and let vs delight in simple habitations, fit and aptly furnished with all peace and tranquility. In so doing, we hall not fland obliged, or be any way praised and esteemed by their Worke-Maisters; and yet can purchase good Liuings out of their vanities, where afterward they fit and floute at their follies. Rather let vs content our selues to imitate the workes and Buildings of Dexim, Sonne to Calius; who first found out the invention, to crect his House after the manner of Swallowes. Then will wee remember, to frame our Houses, according as Mortall men ought to doe, not as if wee should continue in them perpetuallie: but as hoping (one day) after our short voyage in this world to inherit & haue part in another manner of dwelling, builded after a much better fashion and compasse then those that are framed, by the fraile and earthlie hands of men,

egryk room of ask or CHAP. XXXIX.

Of some that have beene punished, for hauing done better then they were commaunded: And others, because they did well, without commaund.



on another mans will, ought to be careful of himfelf, not onely in well-doing but also indoing better then he is commaunded . For al will declare

by fome Histories in this Chapter, that of these two forts, of doing well, and better then well sthere haue been fome seuerely punished. Asit happened to an ingenious Maister of Athens to whom Publius Graffus, a Matian (being of Public Proconcil in Afia for the Ramaines; and Graffus a Main being ready to befiedge a Citry) gaire an, Proconful charge, to feeke for two Shippe Mafts, in Afa. which he had feene in otebens, to make an Engine for battery of the wall, telling him, that he would have the greateft. The skilfull Maifter, liceing a Man of greatynder flanding, well knew, that a Mast offich greatnesse would not be apt for any luch effect vin regard where of, becanfe a meaner was much more convenient for the battery, and eafier

Chap.39.

Of WVell-doing.

for carriage; he lent luch 4 one to Chaf-for a What he percount his purpola to be thinkerted, has spuled theningenic ous man to be brough he fore him and dentaunded of him, why hap had not of beyed as he was commanded And bei

ing willing to hear no realon or excuses gauc charge to Brip him naked, and o bamhipo wish Rode, as he was, and h long, till liedyede a lot it appeared to Graffus, dhatan flead of obeying thee fought connected him So, it was not without canfel that there atole acome mon Proverbe; A Man hall have worke enoughtaganerne himfeife well in this World. Jin Long time before this Mutian dealt

fo hardly with this skilfull man, one

Papyrius, a Romaine Dictatour, did no

The History of Papyrius the Romaine Dictator.

Miferable cor

rection before

The crue!

conflancy of Papyrins a-

gainst Kutilia

A cruell act in Publius Crassus

leffe : but rather proceeded further, or more rigoroufly, (in regard of qualitie among persons) towards a Noble Romaine, Colonell of the Romaine Caualery. This man gaue battaile to the Samnites, without his expresse commaund, and flew twenty thousand of the enemies. Neuertheleffe, though he had done well and valiantly: yet hee was condemned to death (beeing named Quintus Fabius Rutilianus) without any respect of his merit, or race. And, as the custome then was, before the stroke of death, the condemned person must be scucrely beaten, which while the miferable Rutilianus endured; the most Honourable Lords in the Armic, entreated Papyrius, to deferre his death till the next morning, which (with much ado) at length he granted. In meane while, night granting means 40 to the condemned man to faue himfelf, he fled to Rome, and implored the avde of the Senate, for fafetic of his life but it was in vaine, for Papyrius still stood resolute for his death. Whereupon, the condemned parties Father (who had formerly beene Dictatour, and three times Confull) was constrained

to make his recourse to the people, and

the Tribunes of the teople for his Son,

all which could not divert the rigor of

Papyrius. Finally, he was entreated of

all the people, and by the Tribunes of

the people, protesting, that he should

not pardon Fabius the punishment hee had deserved but to deliver to the Ro-

(by way of supplication) to follicite 50

maingpeople, and they tilbunes ithe but often ir hagigeileenigen siche gewood and aligner white place is a property of the control of the contro fariboutinene bed actioned winter w Askas Ravijaniacid shorthsoffspa taine or Generall, that had guten hate taile to the Enemy without provelle dacenting hit dayinstrabulanting though he had won the days was fune tobshanged ... And to frenke much in

prohibition made yoto him deferred

he where flech as was encollented book

hath energy or chame objeryoda an all Militarie discipline suca, from all antiquitie ; that the Squidier or Capraine, that fought (Brigane, battell cagainfl

In like maner, Cafar speaking of one The indgeof his Captaines, named Syllanus, laid: in this cale.

He did well and wilely, for to give bat-taile, albeit he was thre to have had the victorie . Because (faith hee) it is not in the Captaine, to goe beyonde the prohibitions giuen him. For it is most certaine, that nothing should be done in matter ofwarre, contrary to commands: nor a Captaine or Liuetenant ought not to giue battaffe, except he bee expresselie commainded. And this was the cause, that the Counte of Aignement was in The Count of danger, and had at length (by especiall consured, fanour) onely as punishment, a reprehenfion publikely given him, by Charls the fift; Emp. for gining battaile to the Marshall de Termes, although hee had the victory because the danger of al the Low Country lay at the flake, if he had

loft the day. But this last point is to be understood How far, and of Captaines, that have no charge of to whom this command in title of offices, for the Offinitation exficer, as the Confull, Conflable, the rendeth, Captaine creded in Title of Office, to haue ful command ouer the Army, and make the war: may(by vertue of his office) without attending especiall com-mand, give war to a published enemie, pursue him, bid battaile, besiedge, and (if he can) take Fortes, and dispose the Army at his discretion; if hee have not perticular prohibition from his Soueraigne, by who his power is appointed. But having taken strong holdes, or the chiefe of the enemies the canot re-deliuer them withour especiall command. True it is, that in the populer Comon- Concerning weales, there points are not observed, mon-weales,

neither

Obedience is he ducte in Military dif-

ne Alipi enian -nad a be

it icary

neither can they beckept with rigour : but often it happerfeth, that Captaines doe dispote the way greatest affaires, which they cannor the in a Moharchy, for the difference of achile and will of

Of Helyodorus the Myti'enia quet.

*Prince for the people, of one man, or Worcad in the Greeke Histories, that one Heliodorus a Mityleman, made a banquet, in midit whereof, delivering demonstration, that his guests flould not make space of any thing : he comanded two of his Slaues to goe buy two Septiers of Wine, of a Man that fold wine ncere to his house. The Slaves finding the Wineto be bad, went and bought

elfe-where, fuch as was excellent good,

and liked all the company; faying, they neuer dranke better. Whereon the Slaves faid, that it was not of the wine which their Lord feat them for, for it beeing naught , they were faine to buy in another place . Wherear Heliodorus grew offended; because they brought for according to his commaund, although the wine was better when the company was departed, he fo tormented the poore Slaves that they dyed. Thus you ice what ill fortune it is, to be in lubication to people ouer feuere, and without any temperance : punishing fuch as they have command over, rather for doing well, then ill.

The end of the fourth Booke.



Chap.i.



The Fift Booke.

CHAP. I

Of the Emperour of Æthyopia; called Prete-Ian or Prester-Iohn : Of his Origimall, and Customes of his people.

Ian. is neither Priest or facrificer, though he be(by fome) called PRETE-IAN, and (by his owne people) named Belaugian, that is to fay, loy of incompareable excellencie, or of most value; and by others of them, he is allo called Ian, which (in their Language) fignificth Mightie. He commandeth ouer seauenty and two Kingdomes, which are all of different languages, hauing their diversity of Customs, and the colour or complexion of their Faces, are much difagreeing. He is able to leuy in

ter, with an infinite number of Horffes

Armour for

He Great Emperor of Athropia, vnto whom we corruptlie giue the Name of Pres-biter-

preparation for warre, a Million of fighting men i five hundered Elephants with their Armour and Munition for encoun-

and Camels . His Knights or Warlick Soldiers, enter armed to the battell, each His foldiers wearing a long Coat of Maile, stretching downe closely to their Thighes, a Sallet

or Head-piece on the head, a crooked Fauchion by their fide, and a Lance with two Steele points of Pikes. Such as haue to Speich as no Sallets of Head-pieces, do wear thick quilted Caps on the inheads, plaited after the manner of Mameluke Soldiers. The me manter of manufactures. The yonger fort, carry Darts, Arrowes, and Slings, observing the fame Discipline, as be as obedient or well-gouerned, inranging their battale, as wee are. They we Drummes of Brasse, and Trumpets also, to encourage their Soldiers to the fight, which is performed with great hardiment, appointing allo, fundry honours, and re-fpective rewards, to fuch as declare the felues to be of highest merit. They doo daily pay the families of their Warriors, and marke the Children that are born of

them, with a Croffe, which they imprint Their Cerefiddenly in the fleth with an hot Iron, fo mony to their that the figne remaineth, as if it were naturall vnto them. The King himfelfe (most commonly

called Prete-lan) after he hath bestowed Tome houres about State-affaires, when of the King he perceiveth that he is indifferently cafed of them: he employeth almost all the remainder of his time, in the fludy of holy Readings and Histories; which being done, he vieth a little exercise of the body; and then entering into his Bath, hee taketh (afterward) his refection alone by hunfelfe (as most of our Kings yle to do) vpon a little Table of Gold, without any cloath or Napkin; and it is fet in fuch a place, as there are divers degrees or fteps his table-fer in ascending to it. He is serued by Pages, wice, his dyer who are of Noble birth; and they bring life. him his meate (ready cut and prepared) in little Baskets or Panniers. He drinketh

The exercise

Chap. 3. 3

are very rich.

Or Xoa, as

fome call it.

dicipate 4

Two hartiefts

and great] 24

Their Wine

Their Hun-

Their order of Dignities obscrued a-

Their punish

and other

hings.

An Ancient custome still

The atten-

dants uppon the Empero

The King fa-reth delicate-

Winein a Cup of Golde; but he hath another kinde of drinke, made of fower Apples, and mingled with Sugar, which he receiveth in a cup of Christal, While hee feedeth, three hundred luftie young men (chosen out of the seueral kingdoms vnder his Dominion, having the place of Archers, and of his Guard) doo fand about the Tent-royall. For by atr auncient custome it hath been kept, that the 10 on these ordained daies; which hath con-King liueth continually out of any City, wherein he neuer abideth but two dayes only; and those Tents are erected in such manner, that the back-part is ener placed to the East, and the doore opening is opposite to the West. The viual Armes or weapons of these

Guards, are Swords, Daggers, and Iauelins, their neckes and moulders beeing gorgetted with thicke skinnes of Beafts. | 20 Foure Kings, who (by commandement) do attend the Court, follow (each after other) the Table-feruice, accompanied with many Barons, and meaner Officers, euen from the Kitchen, vnto the Tent of Prese-Ian, all cloathed in Silke, Seudale, and Scarlet: and there they deliver it to the Pages, who come forth purposely to receive it. The King and alhis Court fare deliciously, with Fowle, Fish, and al | 30 kind of Venison. So soone as he hath dined (for hee neuer fups, but in Feathwall dayes) his Eunuchs goe to fetch divers Queenes (according vnto their feuerall quarters) being VV ines of the forenamed Kings, to waite on the Queene and wife to Prese-Jan, conducting her who his Tent, to give him pleasure and content-ment, and there they sing and Dance in his presence. He hath foure Wines, who are the Daughters of his neighbor-kings, yet he lodgeth but with one of thein, to whom he is folemnly maried with many Ceremonies: but if it channee that hee

have no Children by her, then he cals to his bed one of the other.

in publicke his face is couered with a vail

of Paffata, which hee lifteth vp, and pul-

leth downe, that hardly can his face bee

wholly differred : but if it bee, it is verie

quickly concred againe . Hee vieth to

thew himfelf vnto the people three times

in the yeare, that is to fay, on the daies of

Christmas, Easter, and the holy Crosse

in September; and (for this purpose) is a goodly high Scaffold duly prepared. The

When he purpofeth to thew himfelfe

His manner of shewing himselfe in publicke.

The wines of

the Emperor

cause of this Ceremony, received Originall from Dauid Prote-Ian, fir-named Alexander, whose death was three whole veares concealed by his chiefe Seruants. that gouerned the Kingdome in his time. Therefore to avoide all the like fucceeding incontreniences, the Father of Dauid Prett-lan, at the carnelt entreatie of his people, began first to thew himselfe tinually (ever fince) been observed, even to Panuscius Prete-Ian, now raigning in Æthyopia, only excepted when he goeth in warre, for then he marcheth daily difcouered. He is crowned with a precious Diadem'; the one part whereof is habite. Gold, and the other Silver, and carrieth (inflead of a Scepter) a Croffe of Silver in his hand: All his Seruants are marked with a Croffe, in the verie flesh on the right (houlder. He is cloathed with rich Garments of frizeled Cloath of Golde, wearing a shirt of Silke, with verie large and wide fleenes, as Dukes in elder times were wont to doe. And from the Girdle downward, he weareth a wide Kirtle of Silke and Cloath of Gold with a Linnen couerture, after a Bythops manner. On either fide of him, goe two Pages, each holding a Croffe of Siluer in the one hand, and a naked Sword in the other.

His Lords, who are as Kings, and carry that Title, do pay him tribute of Gold and other Mettals; of Horsles, and great Cattell of divers kinds: likewife of cloath his kings. of Golde, and of Wooll, according to the quality & best Nature of those countries under their Gouernment : Which rights and Tributes they have from their Subjects, although they be Vaffailes (indeed)to none but Prete-Ian himfelfe, and to whom they yeilde the greater part of Tributes in their substance. Some do pay him large quantities of Corne, and of Salt, for the maintaining of his Armies. Others do bring him Pepper, which is a rare Commodity in that Countrey; and some do pay him Slaues.

The Rustickes, and Country Boores, who line in the wild and field-frequented Forrests, do bring vnto the Court great flore of Lyons, Tygers, and other living fauage Beafts, which are afterward fhut ypinto apt appointed places, to yeelde pleasure and delight to him and his Princes. As for fuch as dwell further off from the Court, it is sufficient for them to

The Original of the Cere-mony of the-wing himfelf.

The Empe-

The Emperors Tribute paid him by

Wild Beafts kept for the

bring the skinnes of frich Beaftes onely, wherewith the Aby sines do in a brantry) cloath themselves when they goe to lin Prete-Ian, is greatly honoured and lohed of his people who are verierich in Gold, not Coined, and other Mettalles: and his Landes being well peopled and inhabited he deritteth from them verie great Revenuewes I hey doath themfebies with Linneng Wollend and Silke addicting their minds much to Husbandby and Filling the groundness illithe Realme of * Seeud, wherethe King most abilleth, they have two crops or Haruests cach yeare, for they have ale fortwo Summers: They gather al things necessary forthe maintenance of life, and inigrear abundance; especially, the grain of Barley, and all kinds of Pulle, Pealer arld Beanes, &c. Millet and Panicke, or andian Oatsineale, groweth there so hieg asticone toppeed a man riding outhorse backe. This Vines do yeelde are infinitie of Grapes of Rading, whereofthey make great plentic of Wine; but belies, they downdinatily under Benerates of Beore, and other of Poarbs & Applies well compounded with Bhyley, Millett of Wall! worr, whereof the verie theanest of the people do daily drinke . I They vio to fets foorth their Bankers yearely, with greent Figges, and Apples that the very fauous by 4. They, thin eigreau flore of VV ood; called Home, and divers kindles there old They we to haint Lyons, Leopards, Rhivi nocerots, and Elephants. They havel great store of Gatter goodly Morfes and gollant Mules of which they fell (argreat price) to Barons of the Country of careful price) to Baronsot the Gounge of Pulsa, "I he find dignity among them, is that of the Price sincht control privater is and wiferness, whether he is a sufficient much freely assay from the good of Sunsarion that is highly effectived training the mini-less that of the goldenses with Mobile was, and then that of the goldenses with the mini-bilished to header sight, and the action of the beautiful of the goldenses with the date of with believe than the public accent of hydrighted the decoration, the public accent of the the date.

tery man, ida punilly green or the tracking in the control of the

pany; and leidelrem thorow far remous Countries and Kingdolnes (gotting digit

and to go linging from dobates dottes

icifico. dep Hodres garrillerd garrill famous

more then a day to they are both put to death, the Theefe and the Slave well bey deliner a Murtheror, into the handes of his Kindred whom he bath flaine, to the end, that they may take such wengeance. as to them feemeth good for the outrage committed on their blood. If anie deale with Children, in the abhominable finne of Sodowby the offender is indeed (by them) to be worthy of death and whofocuer deth rafhly renot from his Religion, is stoned to death before al thopeople. Alfo, hee that transgreffeth the Ceremonles and Commandements of Religioni, wickedly blafphening God, the glorious Wirgin Jonthe Saints, is burned aliue in a publishe place. Other dollers of leffer Natthe pard indged according to the will and Arbitrage of the Interpretersoftha Lawcselw) should vaning and The hylimilane a persiculantan-grage, and Carracters of Letters proper to themselves wherein the New Teltament was imprinted at Rome. The Holy Scripturcibath also beetherranslated into their additine tongue banid ? I implelfe beingshen a younglaad in some) began tolearne the Language off one Price le-ter, and by fine; and of the order of Saint Prancis 3 am an of a trickly and gravity belonged by Pope Hade the third; and all his Colum of This linyer dwelt behind the Tribunal of & Peterin the house and Chinal delicated hosthe Abyformer where they celebrated after their maner; and were maintained at the Popes charges if on office the comeThe Aby/sinesde hondamp ante nio

and if they channed to flay in one place

nevy about make ideof that which dome metli from others lightich is of gold marked with serabe for Letters, and they cal tholopieces of mony; pardals & Sinaphs, They pay their Soldiers in certain pieces of Gold and Silvery of divers waightes i and with them also they buy such things as are fold in the Markets. They celebrate their weddings, with means wery folershy ly, and if the manor woman be taken in Additionity they doo repudiate both the original the other. They are baptifed and yeurlouidhflanding that they adde forme miniteupon theifore head; with a hot I read and will nonwholy leave the diebrue time and circumcifion. No stor they coult he Propuce, and take at lime defis allo from womens feores, The children mothin years care heirs to thein

How they

or the figne

For repole from Religion, and for

The head or off to going

Of the aluf-

This is fport ten by Hierom Giglo an Hali-

i he coque to

Coine vied

Their Gele-

Their Bap

his kingdom.

The head or fpring of the Riner Nilus.

26. 00.

The Pather of Prete-Tan. People in the tarthell part of Affrica beyond Ethys-

The coquefts of Prete-Jans Father.

The Parriark of the Abyf-fines, and hi

Fathers, thorow the Kingdome and by want of Males, one of the Kinred; being the most vertirelts; doth next sicceede. This Prete-Ian governeth many Countreyes, and boundleffe Seas.

They have greatly erred, that in their Maps and Tables whate placed his feate in Alias beeing ignorant that there is a double India; the one in Afia, and the other in Ethyopin on His Kingdome confineth(on the Leuancor Eaft-fide)the Red and Burbarian Sea? And on the South the Sels called diffmbe; and on this fide, the Region goeth like a Promontorie towards the South, to the Cape called De bona Speranza Almolt at the end of Prete-Line Land, in one of his Kingdomes called Goyaume, is the found of 2vilus, Riner that runnes bathing all Ethyopia and having made a long coulder, inauerfing many Islands (whereof Maist is the greatest it pulich fivelling along Egypt. Treonfideth offthe Mouth lide; Egipt & Lybia; and on that West, the lower Lybia, and the Mooren Butthe Father of Prese-Lani being a warlicke nian, and expert in Alchest amplified and enlarged his Entpiretaind among other difficult and perrillous Wars the variouithed the Trogs ledites who vime povioned Artowes, he tooke (byithe way) King Cafana, conquered in battell, driebfmore off his licad, as an infamous and cruell Traitor ... This manufaced also in that countrey, which lookorhiplainely Southward to the Sea, called Munambizique, and is facuto face with the great Ide of Saint Laurence. He ouercame likewise the King of Municangofe, with afterward became a Chriftian: and Thermeda Psinoe of the Blacke pear 40 ple. He vanquished also King Selan, Lord of shothdahometan Moors, whose paffage was along time ont of Archia Palix by the firm of the Red len, into the firme Land neighboring on Ethyopias blo

These aby sines (for to are they called of allibrate lans Subjects) haue a Patriark, whosh they name stbana, that is to fay, [Father;] hee hath the government of spiritual things, and soueraigne Autho- 50 proceeds the Priests, which are hisinicin number and diffinguished by their ohurclies and Monasteries Toiperfousbad ly complexioned in manners, communations; and corrupted in the right rules of Discipline her exercises a secret disfure, and excommunication; for that beis

ing expelled and abandoned of all ment they wander and dye miferably fearueds. This Patriarke maketh refidence (with his Senate) in the Cittle of Borrara; fittaate in a Mountaine vericaustere and full of Woodes, enuironed with perpetuall umbrages, for his better recreation : and there the braunches of the broad leafed Trees are lo phyant, & swine themselves in manner of an Arch , that though the Countrey berilofflioriver in the midday Sun, little or no heate at allisthere felt: for their continuall dewing with healthfull and lively fpringes, compleateth the grace of their freshnes and verdure. This Patriark receiueth a great leny of tenths. The Patrias also the Riesennites of the King Press arkes maintenant, who is greatly given and affected to be alice to Religion, as appeareth by his liberall pies the poore. ticiand denotion. He distributeth these Treasures to the

poore, and to Hofpitals, maintaining infinite Monafteries of Friers of diversions ders : of Saint Knehony, of Saint Frances. of Saint Augustine; of Sain'd Dominick of the Calaguranin; and of the Macharians many whereof he fendeth wently to wood falem, to wifet the Sepulchell doont Lord Ithis Christ When the Watharker yerby Order when furth Riches of his as is found to maining the Patriark returned beceases. then they proceed to new election of and other, that shall be judged to be the most vertuous. Hechineth chaftly, though it Marriage law boe lawfull for all Priest to take a Witchin full to Priest Marriage; and yet he may halte normore nocerous, and Elephants. Thepnound

The only ellipses of Preseden and his Ethyopians lave that the welo rebute thein- The glories felues to bentue verid anciontell Nation of Prete-lan & anning men benause they batte alwayes llured in their innated libertie Cand were Horrer conducted; cither by sempranicy northeredd bnor Byamfan of he ket maines thus day themselves dequithed King Cambiff of anthone others his pot rentiarries chiereto theo adde a inord king Cambyli true and britishme glouie indeede; which denqueredly is, that they were one of the fulf nations; in receiptof the christian Faishavel-near from the verie beginning thereof .. By meanes of the Extruct, vare the famous Quoene Candanes who was baptized by Saint Phillip. And that find their Conperfion, they Haudiconflanthid opt the A famous James Religion hoofe many hundreds of quity. vegroso Albeitsthat during this time, they

The Patriarches place of abiding with

one them.

Amballadors fent to Prete-

Letters lent Lun to the

haue beene generally (euen as yet they are at this day) mollested, assaulted, and enuironed with Moores, Sarazins, & the Idolatrous Worthippers of Mahomet. And yet, notwithstanding all those cruel Tempelts (which heeretofore destroyed the Romaine Empire, and the very greatest part of Christendom, Ethyopia could neuer hitherto be spoyled, either of their Dominion or Religion, albeit some Idolatrous mixture hath crept thereinto: which is the leffe to bee maruelled at, if we may credit their own faying, in alledging their constancie and Antiquity, because they deriue their Noble Originall and continuance, from the royall Kings, Rauid and Salomon; of whome, the bleffed Virgin Marie (Mother to our Sauiour descended, and he himselfe, accor-

The Religion

Ethyopia could

neuer be con-

Whence the

Ethyopians

their antiqu

quered.

Chap. 1.

ding to the fle(h... The people of this Nation, doo hold our Lord God in great reverence, & the Redeemer of the world; Next, the most Bleffed Virgin, and Saint Thomas the Apostle more then any other of the Saints. Rope Eugentee the fourth, in the yeare one thousand foure hundered and forty, Ignt an Amballadour voto the Prete-Map then living. And afterward in the yeare one thouland fine hundred thirtie three, 30 Pope Clement the featienth, and the Empt four Charles the fift, being mer together at Bolognan, an Ambaffador came to them, from valiant David King of Ethropia being hamed Don Frances Aluares, a Portuguai to whom audience was given in the publicke Confiftory, the 29. day of lanuary . There bee presented the Letten (enfluing) to his Holineffe, & (in naute of his King) he gave the obedi- 40 ence observed from Antiquity, and likewife in his name, profented a Croffe of Golde, waighing apound thaning first killed his foot, hand, and mouth. The Letter was written in the Helyopian Laniguage; afterward translated into the Porsugall tongue, then into Lating and a gaine into Italian, and it was read by the Secretary to his Holine fin the publick

me vour blei- .orangrq

A Letter fent from the most Mighty David, King of Ethyopia, to the most Holy Father , Pope Clement the featienth. $\forall 1, x \in$

Olt Happy and France, ordained of Godto

Father, ordained of Godto

be the Confectage of men,
and to fit in the feat of Saint Oft Happy and Holic

Peter sto whom the Keyes of the Kingdome of Heauen was gipen, and whatfocuer he bound or loofed on earth, the like should be done in Heaven, as lefus Christ hunselfe spakes and Saint Mathew hath written in his Gospell: The King to whose name Lyons doo, reuerence, and (by the grace of God) named in Baptism, Atanatings, that is to lay, Infired by the Vargin; but after I tooks the royal Scepter, was named Daniel Beloved of God, a Piller of the Faith, of the Line of Inda; the forme of David the forme of Salemon, fonne to the Piller of sign, fonne of the feed of Jacob, fonne to the hands of Mary, by carnall fuccession, and for of Nahu, Emperor of high Fibropia, of manie great Kingdomes, Inrifdictions, and Lands King of Xea, of Caffata, of Fatigar, of Angota, of Barn, of Bellenguangua, of Adear, of Vangua, of * Gaziama, whence if fueth Wilus, of Amara of Burgnamadi of Ambea of Tigremation, of Sabaia whote raigned the Queen of Saba of Bernagaes. and Lord fo farre as to Leigh All thefe Landes are under my power, and manie others, great and finall, which I newther number or expresse by their names all as induced thereto by sny prider buttonely to the end, that the four trigger food may be praifed, who hath hellowed Christian Religion on fo many great Kingdomes and hath enlarged to me fo great a grace ga continually I may do him fernice, hawing toade me a Capitall enemie to the Monros, and such as worthin Idolles. I Tenstockiffe misses of your Holinesse. as other Christian Princes vse to doo, to whom I am not the meanest both in po-

wer and Religion. I am in my Realmes, a strong Collumb of the Faith, and have no neede of any other, but put in God my whole hope and fuccour, he having alwaies fultained and gouerned me fince fuch time as the Angell of God fpake to Saint Phillip, when hee taught the true & fincere Faith vnto the Eunuch, belonging to the potent Queene Candace, Qu. of Ethyopia, when hee returned from Ierulalem to Gaza, where Saint Phillip baptized the faid Eunuch; by whom likewife the Queen was afterward baptized, with a great part of her house and people. The fuccessors of which famous Queene, did neuer fince faile in true Christianity, but haue continued enermore firme & confrant in the faith, fo that my predeceffors have not beene holpen by any but God, and have extended the Christian Faith, 20 as khaue laboured to do the like.

I keepe my felfe impaled within mine own limits, like a Eyon compaffed with: in a thicke Forrest, strong against the Moores, and other Nations enemies to Chrift, that will not heare the worde of God, nor my faithfull exhortations. I have purfued them with my fword in my hand, and (by hitle and lide) chafed them from their Nelles; by the helpe of God, 3.0 who never failed mee; which hath not happened in like manner to other Chriftian Kings; for when they wold extend their limits, they went not against Infidelles, as eafily they might have done, by meanes of assisting one another, besides their further aid of your Holinesse Benediction, wherein I also claime a part. For among my Charters, there is found the Letter of Pope Eugenius, which he fent heeretofore (with his benediction) to the King of the feed of Iscob; of which benediction, I have ioniffance, and highly delight in it.

Befide this, I holde the Temple of lerusalem in greathonor, and thither I fend goodly offeringes by my Pilgrams, and much more rich and couly thould they bee, if the wayes were affured from Infidelles, who beside their robbing the mesfengers of their prefents, do hinder them allo from free pastage. And if the voyage to Rome were free and open; I wold com in familiarity and company of the Roman Church; as other Christian Primode do,

es other Chriftian Princip com I am not they out it, such in

to whom I am not inferiour. For, euen as they do, I confesse one direct faith, and one Catholicke Church, I beleeue fincerely in the holy Trinity, one only God, and I beleeve the virginity of our bleffed Lady. I hold and keepe the Articles of the Faith, as they were written by the A-

At this present, the Lord God by the 10 hand of the most puissant King * Emanuel, hath opened the way, to the end that we may visit one another by Embassies, and (ioyntly in faith) serve one God. But it so pleased God, that his Ambassadors being in our Court, they told vs tydings of his death, and the fuccession of his fon (my Brother John) in the Crown. So that the death of the Father, brought me not more griefe and discontent, then the hap-py comming of his son to the Kingdom, canfed ioy and gladneffe.

Aed fuch is my hope, that ioyning our forces and Armies together, we may run thorough the Prouinces of the Moores, and vitterly deftroy them . By which meanes, Christians may (more commodioullie) go and returne from the Temple of Jerufalem. And as Learneftly defire, that I may be made pertaker of the done of God, in the Temples of the holy Apostles Paule and Peter, fo do I wish to haue the Benediction of the Vicar of Iefus Christ, which (withour any doubt) I repute you to be:

"I heare manie things alfo of your fanetitie to Pilgrimes, which go from our Regions vnto Terufalem, and thence to Rome, returning backe naraculouslie, which hash beene to mee unspeakeable pleafure i Buy indeed A Thould receive much greates contenument, if my Ambaffadors could vie a shorter way, and bring me (at all times) ridings from you, which I hope they will doo heer cafeer, fondetime before I die; God afsifting, who I praymaintaine you in health and holineffe. So be it. I laffe your Holie feete, and humblie pray lald grybur Holineffe to fend and

me your blef-

*This was the

Chap. 1.

An other Letter fent from the fame Prete-Ian, to the fore-named Holy Father.



N the name of God the Father Almighty, Creator of Heauen and of earth, and of all thinges wifible and inuifible. In the Name of God the

the Name of God the Sonne, Icfus Chrift, who is one and the same with him, from the beginning of the world, Light of Lights, veric God of 20 very God . In the name of God the holy spirit, liuing God, proceeding from God the Father: [1] the King, to whose Name Lyons doo reuerence, fend you these Letters, and by the Grace of God, am called Athani-Tinghil, that is to fay, Incense of the Virgin, the sonne of King Dauid, the sonne of Salomon, son of the King of the hand of Mary, the fon of Nahum by carnall fuccession, sonne of 30 S. Peter and S. Paul by grace; Peace bee with you fust Lord, Holy Father, Mightie, pure and confecrate, that is the chief of all Byshops, not fearing any, nor anie one being that may speake malediction of you; who is vigilant ouer foules, the friend of Pilgrims, a Holy Maifter, Preacher of faith, and capitall enemie vnto all things that offend conscience, a louer of good manners, a holy man, lauded and 40 bleffed of all.

O happy holy Father, I render ye obedience with great reuerence, you beeing the peace of all, deferuing all goodnesse, procuring(by duty)that al should render ye obeyfance, as the holie Apostles commanded, next vnto God. It is truly faide of you, and the same Apostles commanded vs. to do reuerence to Byshops, Archbythops and Prelates. Alfo to loue 50 you in place of a Father, reuerencing ye in place of a King, and to haue Faith in you as in God. For this reason, I bowing my Knees humbly to the earth, doo acknowledge you with a pure and fincere heart for my Father, and that I am your i katawa na minara

O most Holic and mightic father, why haue you not fent forme one hither to vs. to the end, that you might bee informed

of my life and helth, you being the thepheard and I your theepe, ? For the good Shephcard neuer forgetteth his flocke. I should not seem to be too far from your Regions, but that your Mellengers may have the meanes to come hither . confi-10 dering that the King of Portugal Emanyel, your Son hath verie commodionilie, and from much farther Regions of land, fent me his Ambassadors, And if God had deferred a little longer his calling to heaven, doubtles those matters that then were in discussion between vs wold have fucceeded to an happie end. But my de. fire is at this present (even so much as can be)to heare good, wholefome and profsperous things of your holinesse, by meflengers trulty and faithful, & fent expres ly: because I have never received anie word from your Holinesse, but heard only fome final matters by fuch as have gon on pilgrimage in my name, and vet never broght meany of your letters. But in our interogations, they have answerd (vocertainly enough), that having paide disir vowes and denotions at Jerufalen, they went afterward to Rome, to visit the points of the Holy Apostles, having first of all understood; that it was calle enough for them to abide in those Countries and to be accounted as Christians. And futelies it pleafed mee highly to heare their dilcourse, by meanes whereof (in a sweete conceined immagination) methought I beheld and contemplated the figure of your Holy face which feemed to me like that of an Angell; and Leonfesse to lone and honor it as Angellicall, But affored ly it would be more freet and acceptable to mee, denoutly to contemplate your

benediction to rejoyee my hart. . 19 13d For feeing we are both of one faith & Religion and thinkes that (about all think ges elfe) I should require you to do this. Most humbly praying you also, that is you put the Gold Ring whom your Hint-ger, and the Chaine of Gold about your necke: etten fo, you wold place my amitie in the depth of your cheart, that the memorie thereof man never besidoft. For by kinde Wordes and Gracit

words and Letters . Wherefore, I praie

you at this present, that it would please

you to fend me your Nuntia, with your

M m ...

ous Letters, annity encreaseth fironglie; especially when it is embraced by holy peace, from whence (doubtleffe) all humaine ioy proceedeth. And like as the man that is extream thirsty, desireth earnestly fresh water, as is to be found in the facred Writings; even fo my heart longeth, to have Newes by Messengers and Letters from farre off Countries, wherein I take incredible pleasure. And not only if I might hear fome matter of your Holinesse: but also, if such Newes bee certaine, which have been reported to me, concerning Christian Princes, which ioy would be answereable to that, which Conquerors get by rich spoiles and pur-

chafes. Which now at this time may the more eafily be done, because the King of Portugal/hath opened the paffage, which long time hath beene vied, fending mee his Ambassadours, accompanied with many valiant Knights, in the time of his Father Emanuel, & while he lined. Since when, I have received neither Embassie nor Letters from any Christian King, much lesse from any Pope. Albeit in our Rolles, or Treasury of Charters, which belonged sometime to our great Grandfather, is preserved the memorie of Let- 30 ters from a Pope of Rome, named Eugenim, fent into these parts, when the seed of Iatob raigned, the King of Kinges thoroughout all Ethyopia, & the fuperscription of the saide Letters was in this manner: Eugenius Pope of Rome, to our Wellbeloued Sonne, the King of the feede of Iacob King of Kings throughout all Ethyopia, worthy to be reverenced. And by the fummary of the faide Letters, hee declared, 40 that his Sonne John Paleologus, who was as forgotten two yeares before, K. of the Romaines was called from Conftantinople, to celebrat the facred Counfel, and with hlm went tofeph the Patriarke of Constanrinople, accompanied with a great number of Arch-bythops, Bythops, and Prelates of all forts; and among them also affifted the Procuraters of the Patriarkes of Antioth, of Alexandria, and of lexufalem, all affembled with him in loue of the holyifaith and religion. By meanes whereof the vnity of the Church was confirmed, with grace of the Lord, and al difficulties of the passed tames (which appeared to be erroneous, and contrary to Christian religion) taken away t which things, being

by good order established and confirmd, the same Pope had given to all the world occasion of rejoicing, as to each one per-

Now at this time, wee fend you this Book of pope Eugenius, that hath alwaies bin kept by vs without corruption. We would also in like maner have sent ye, the tract of the order and power of the ponto tificall benediction, had not the Volume bin ouer-great, for truly it is as big as the Booke of S. Paul to the Gentiles. And the Legates which brought these things hither on the Popes behalfe, were Theodorus , Petrus Dydimus , and George , fernants of Jesus Christ. But you (most holie Father, shall do well to command that the Bookes of your Rols may be turned ouer and perused, where I think you shall find fome memory of this which I have written vnto ye, that if any thing be referued on our behalfe, it may be diligently regiftred among our Bookes, that perpetuall memory thereof may remaine to our pofterity & fucceffors. And truly, I account him most happy, whose memory is in letters preserved in the holy City of Rome, the feat of S. Peter and S. Paule, who are Lords in Heauen,& Iudges of the whole world. And because my beleefe is such, I fend yee these presents, to the end, that I may win grace with your holinesse, and with your most facred Colledge, hoping that from thence will come holy benediction, with encrease of all goodnesse.

Moreouer, I do intreat your Holinesse to fend me fome Images of the Saints, & principally of the virgin Mary to the end that the name of hir and of your holines, may be often in my mouth and memory, and that I may continualy take delight in your presents. I also require ye to send me fome Artezans and workmen, that know how to make those Images, and swordes and armor of all kinds, to fight withal; as also such as can engraue in Gold and Siluer Maifter-Carpenters, Architects, and Masons, to make houses of stone. And men that are skilfull in Catting of Lead, Copper and Braffe, to couer the tops of those houses. Beside these men, we shall highly esteeme such worke in Glasse, or fuch as are Falconers, & fuch ascan make Instruments of Musicke; as also such as can play on Flutes & trompets. Al which workenien, I defire that may bee of your house; or if you bee not so sufficiently

provided, your Holinesse may easily win fuch from other Christian Kinges your children, who are all obedient vnto your command : affuring yee, that no fooner shall those workemen heere arrive, but they hall be held in great honour, according to the fenerall merit of enerie man, and shall receive of my liberality, ample courtefie, reward, and wages: with this condition, that if any one hecreafter, be defirous to returne into his owne Country, hee shall depart from my Court so well recompensed, as shall give him cause to rest contented, carrying hence with him, fuch thinges as himfelfe (hall pleafe, for I wil not keep any man against his mind, when I have received fom be-

Now am I to speake of other things,

and would gladly demand of you Holie

Father, why you doe not admonish the Christian Kings your Children, to agree

among themselves, as it becommeth bre-

thren, confidering they are of your flock

and you their Shepheard? And wel doth

your Holinesse know that which is com-

manded in the Gospell, where it is saide 3
Euery Kingdome divided in it selfe shall bee

defolate. For if the kings of Christendom

were vnited and leagued together, eafilie

might they destroy the Mahometans, &

all other Infidelles, and all their actions

wold fucceed to their with rumating the

Sepulchre of that falle Prophet, which is

in the Citty of Mecha. Wherefore I pray

ye, to labour a firme league of amitie a-

mong them, exhorting them to lend ine

fauour and fuccor. For on all the Con-

fines of my Kingdomes, I am enuironed

They interchangeably aide one another

making alliance Kings with Kinges; and

Lords with Lords, in great Loyaltie and constancie, and all against vs : There is a

King Moore my Neighbor, whom al the other Moare-Kings (his Neighbours) do

furnish with Atmes, horses, and all other

the Kings of India, Perfia, Arabia, and F-

gipt, by whom I daily receive much grie-

uance; beholding the enimies of Christi-

anity joyned together in brotherly chari-

ty enjoying peace & christian Kings my

Brethren, not according togither in any

maner, nor are moned at their outrages.

Inftruments for warre. These men, are 50

with Moores, Mahometans, and wicked people, who (neuerthelesse) do hold such fidelity together, as wee see not the like:

nefit of his Art.

or any way giving mee fuccour, as is the duty of al christians. And so much the rather because the most filthy fons of Mehomes fo aid one another. Nor that (in this respect) I would have you think that I defire any forces for fuch an enterprife. for I have fufficient of mine owne, and more then I need But I intreat only your Prayers and Orifons to God, and couet to find grace with your holineffe, & with all other Kings my Brethren. This is the reason why I seeke amitie with you and them, to the end, of beeing

Of Prester-John.

furnithed abundantly, with fuch things as are before required, to the feare and aftonishment of the Moores, and that my neighbours (enemies vnto the Christians name) may know, that Christian Kinges (my Brethren)can giue me fauor and affiftance, which truly appertaineth to our common honor, fince we agree in vnitie of Faith and true religion. We are refolued to continue firme in this counfell & deliberation, which feemeth to Vs.most affured, perfect, and profitable. God ful-fill your defires to the praise of Iefus Christ, and of God our Father, whose name be praised of al, in al ages. And you holie Father; embrace mee with all the Saints of lefus Christ, which are at Rome: and in the fame imbracement, I pray yee to receive al the inhabitants of my king. domes, and they that remaine in Ethyo-Pia. Thankes be rendred to our Lord Ie-

fus Christ, by your spirit. Your Holineffe Phall receine thefe Letters. by the helpe of my Brother King John; fon to the most potent King Emanuella by the handes of Frances Alwares our Ambassador.

CHAP. II.

Of the onergreat Superflition of the Queon of Mangy, who loft her mighty Estate; by putting too much considence in the predictions of Aftrologers.



Hat Superstition is a veric great Vice; bringing ma-nie discommodities and datungers, vinto fuch as are thereto inclined, may Ordinarily bee feene; As for example;

Min 2

10 : 11 :

5. Booke.

Of Iada the

Note the vain opinion of this world, in meeting fonce accidents on the way.

The Romain

were greatly addicted vnto

Superstitions.

Cicero in Lib.

The Tartarre.

of Afia very fuperitatious

* Casters of

mens fortune

by the day &

de Dininut.

If a man (returning from some journey, or fetting forth vpon it, his bufineffe being ferious and importent, if hee chance to meet an old Woman on the way, or perceiveth a Hare to crosse the passage before him, he presently takes it for an euill encounter, and to prefage some perill towards him.

Some Huntimen also are of opinion, that if they meete a Priest or a Frier vpon the way, as they ride on Hunting, they shall furely (that day) not take any thing. Some others, if they but heare a Pie to chatter, they shall shortly understand of euill tidinges. There are some also, so strangely incensed, that they verilie beleeue, if they meete a Serpent or Snake: that day ino inconvenience can betide them with divers other vanities belide, which fauour much more of Paganisme,

then of any Christianity. Such superstitions were deepely grounded among the Romaine people, yea, much more then in any other, witnesse their Auspices, that is; their Confultations which they wold make, hefore they began any war or expedition, by the observation of Birds beholding their flight, liftening their fongs, and whether they fed wel or ill, in regard whereof, they loft many commodities in | 20 their warres. And it is not to be doubted, but that euerie superstitious Captain, wil hardly do any thing of defert; which Cisero well noted in his Bookes of Diuination, and maketh a mockery thereat. This follie is dispersed thorough the

world, but yet in some Countries more then other. As among the Afian Tartars who are so much addicted to indicial Aftrologie, and therein fo superstitious, as 40 they will neither build a House, Village, Cittie, Temple, or any other building whatfoeuer, but at laying the first stone, they will fet downe in Writing, the day, the houre, the moneth, and the feafon. The like they do at the Nativitie of their Children, then they confult with Aftrologers and *Generhliagues, who then doo fore-tell what pleafeth themselues. And these people are now (at this day) more 50 superstitious in these affaires, then euer they were . And this is the matter which I am now to speake of, in the wing that a woman (being too much ouer-fivaled by these superstitions, lost one of the verie fairest Estates in the worlde, and how it

hapned, I shall briefely relate.

The Tartarian Annales do declare, that there was a King of Maugy, named Or Iada the King of Mau-gie, and his hunting. Iada, who beeing on Hunting, espyed a great Lake of Fresh-Water, thorough the middest whereof, passed so strong a River, as was able to beare a Boat, which came from the East Indiaes, a rich countrev. Heereon he confidered, that for

Commerce and good of his Kingdome, the Territorie round about it was fruitfull, and the Lakes Water nourifhed great store of Fish, a faire Hauen also, being not farre off thence, standing for the benefit of all Windes, being on the Ocean Sea, which is (almost) continually calme, and in that quarter it would be verie conuenient to build a Citie. Hauing had Communication in this case with his Counsell, and they allowing the goodnesse of his conceit, hee gaue order to them, for further proceeding in the purpose: this happed in the yeare of the worlde, according to their Supputation, fine thousand, fixe hundred . This Ci-

tie was founded upon piles, and (according to their Custome) they consulted with their Genethliaques, to know if this Cittie should flourish and continue for any length of time. Whereto they anfwered, that it should never fall into anie others power, but only of them as should be of the Lignage of Inda, first founder thereof, vntill such time, as a man (who (hould have an hundered eies, all clearly feeing) came to befrege it. The Cittie was named Quinfay, a worde corrup- ty of Quinfay ted of Kynsin, or Checin, in the I auian tongue, which fignifieth a Happy Cittie, and whereof, the whole Province where it is feated, tooke the Name of Quinzi There are two Castles, which command on the Sea, and are adjoyning vnto the Lake before named : and there doo the

their paffage ouer the Lake. It is feated about forty fine degrees on this side the Tropicke, in the fixt climate, and the tenth Paralell. This goodly Cittie containeth (as fuch as haue Voyaged thither fay) fine good Leagues or thereabout in circuit: which is verie likely to be true, by reason it is erected in the way The greatiles ter; and the freetes are verie large, the diounnelled Pallace great, and forced Garden-plots; the City. the whole bodie being planted at eale, &

fo well disposed, as a man may goe thou

Waters of the River of Babala, yeelde

furrender of themselves, as they make

The scituati-

Of the Queene of Maugy. Chap. 2.

> rough all the Cittle on Land, and in the Channels also, which are large, case, & great, because the Barkes may the fooner paffe them. Horfes also may cafily passe through the streets, to bring such things as are necessarie for them of the Citty: And there is no enclosed City in the whole Vnineric, either on this fide, or beyond the Equator, of fuch wonderfull greatnesse. In regard of the goodlie Scituation, it required no long time of peopling & frequentation of Merchant-

The Traffick and refort to Quinfay.

Dererminan

...) 28° Faciar the rich King of

Mangy.

Opinion of Arength, breeds neglect of marti-

all Discipline cause of too much securi-

The Royaltie of the Kings Court, & his

furance, that (many times) Tradef-men left their Mops wide open in the Night, yer none durit be to bolde, as enter into

itrangers, comming from many Countries : as from the rich Bafterne Indiaes, by the River of Babala; and by Sea, the Ethyopians, Armenians, Persians, Arabians, Egyptians, Seythians, and others. Heereupon the King failed not to graunt

good store of immunities, to draw inhabitants thinher: which forting to his expectation; hee builded a verie beautifull Pallace, that flandeth yet intirely whole. Now, it came to paffe fine hundered

yearesafter, that there raigned a King, very rich, named Facfur; by whom, the Kingdomes were feated in the great Prouince of Maney, which is faid to be one of the verie greatest in the world; and by whom, the Lands and Seigneuries were fo well fortified, as they were thought to | 30 be inuincible. By means whereof, none durst affaile or meddle with them; and this was the cause, that both the King and his people left off, and fuffered the exercife of Armes to grow quite out of vie. For euerie Cittie was circled and engirt with great and deepe ditches (brim-full of VV ater) as also with huge walles, verie ftrongly flanked with goodlie Towers & vnder-props. And in those times, he had 40 (at the least) the number of one thousand and fine hundred, but now they can reckon no more then eleanen hundred; and vet hee had no Horfes for warre, or anle other feruice; and this affurance occafi-

oned, that the King made no vie of time, but continually tooke his delight & pleafure. He had ordinarily in his Court a thousand Gentlemen, beside his traine of

Seruants and Officers', which was great | 50 and honourable. Neuerthelesse, hee held Inflice in highest esteeme, affecting peace and tranquility, and he was verie mercifulled No mandurft offend, or do wrong to his Neighbor, but he was fure of feuere punnithment In breefe, his Kingdome was of fuch freedome and afThis would do well in all parts of the

Strangers and Transilers paffing thorough the Countrey, might goe both night and day in fafe fecuritie, without feare of any man. In like manner, the King was veric kind and charitable to the poore, and neuer suffered such as were in extreame pouerty, to complaine of their want and indigence. Moreover, euerie yeare(by diligent fearch)he affembled together a great number of children, expoled as Orphans, and forfaken of their

Parents (whereof sometimes there were Great charitwentie thousand) and them he caused to tie to poore Children. be kept & brought vp at his own charge beside many other Charities which wold require much time to reherfe, and which

405

is not vied by christian Princes elswhere. And although he was a Pagan and Idolater, yet hee fuffered Tewes and Christians (whereof fome were Westerians) to line in all his Kingdoms, and thefe things were in the yeare of Grace, 1268. Cublay, King of the Turtary, was then

accounted one of the greatest Princes in and his nuni the world; for he had (as fome haue left | ber of Kingdonies. in writings) thirty or fortic great Kingdomes. Such as make any doubt heerof, let them read M. Paulus, who was (at that

time) in those parts, a verie true Author, and they shall find much more then I can heere speake of. His Capraines gane him to understand, that they could not find any more lands to conquer: for the Sea, and verie huge deferts had fet a period ar their Conquests, only this Kingdome of Many excepted, Which confined on foin lands of the great Cham Cublay. Now, albeit Faefur was a frend and had gitten no occasion of making warre vpon him, on-great ambiti-ly because he was almost as powerfull as on in Cublay.

him. So minding to vie his men of war, he found them at variance among them

felues, and that a great bulineffe was first

to be ended, touching his two nephowes,

whereof I have formerly fooken, Heere-

upon, Neftordin a neere Kinfman to Cub-

Lay, was chosen for this expedition, albeit

hee was not then in the Court; but the

Commissions beeing directed to his a-

biding the king had newes fent him, that

Min 2

The ouer-

27.....

the faid Cublay, yet Cublay Was now aduifed to contend for superioritie; and to make his great neighbor tributary vito

The Christi-

aus opposed

themielues a-

geinst the re-

d tion of

The extraction of Bajam Chinfan, a va-

he died two dayes before of a ftraunge ficknesse. Wherefore, the charge of this businesse, was transferred to Baiam Chinfan, the Sonne of a publicke poore Woman, not auouched by anie Father, and he was borne with many spottes on his bodie, verie neere refembling the eies of a man; whereby hee had the firname given him of Batam Chinfan, which fign fieth in their Language, the fight of 10 an hundred eyes.

The education of Baiam.

The famous

Conquells of

Baians Chinfan

This poore Boy was brought vp by his Mother, fo well as her pouerty would permit, not having any man that would anouch her to be his wife. As he grew in stature, he addicted his minde to follow one of the Emperors Armies, beeing at first but as a Lackey or Drudge, that carried a Soldiers furniture after him. Afterward, having attained to more yeares and strength, he was entertained as a Soldier, becomming first a Corporall: next Engine, Lieutenant, Captaine, or Chiefe, then a Colonell: at length, being knowne a man of ynderstanding valiant, and fortunate, he had the charge of an Army, which hee guided to fuccessefully, that he annexed to the Crowne of Cublay, Emperour of Tartaria, and his Maifler, ten great Provinces or King-

domes, to wit; Miena, Caraiena, Beugala, Canquigu, Amu, Tholomana, Gnigut, Caranfu, Ciangli, and Tadiufu : and he neuer, attempted any matter, but he brought it to full effect, except the conquest of Piamfu, whereof I am to speake elswhere. Baiam entered with a great Armie in-

Bàiam entred to the Province of Maney, and fuminointo Maugy, ned the King to render himselfe tributaand funimoned the King ry, or elfe he would warre voon him, for and diners and in the name of his Prince Cublage but Citties. the King made answere, that he had no fuch intention. Wherefore at his first arrivall, he beliedged the Cittie of Coninganguy, and fummoned the Cittizens thereof to yeelde themselues: as also, to take an Oath of fidelity and obedience to the Emperor Cabley, which they like-

> fiege, and departed thence, without offering them anic other harme or molleftation. Afterward, hee did as much to the next Citty, which also made the like

wife refused to do. By meanes whereof,

haufing heard their answere, he raised his

Passing on, he fummoned four or fine other Citties, all which refused yeilding:

but comming to the fixt, he affailed it in great furie, and tooke it by affault which being done, he returned backe vpon the other Citties, which he took and mined; fo that in very (hort time, he fubdued & by Baiam, tooke twelue Cities. For, he had in his Army verie braue and valiaunt men, all pickt or choise Soldiers, bold and couragious. And the Great Cham, fent him

another Armie, as a fresh supply of as great power as the first, which gaue great terror to them of Mangy, causing them to wax desperate, and their hearts to faile them. And King Facfur himfelfe, having King Facfur had fuch deare experience of the corage leauch Quin and valour of the Tartars, and perceiving fay, and goeth how they proceeded on still in their vn-danted fury, became so much amazed, that he betooke himselfe to sea, with so

many people as hee could muster togither withdrawing into an impregnable Ifland, having with him above a thousand thips; and leaving the guard of the Citic of the Citic of Quin(ay, to the disposition of his wife, of Quin(ay. there to have her best support & defence. In this extreamity the Queen contained

focuer, that was judged necessary for ayd and defence of the Cittie. For free had fiftie thousand men of warre; both Inhabitants and strangers, and twelve or fifteene thousand Divers, men that coulde abide long time ynder water, and pierce the bottomes of the enemies thips to fink them in the River. The Cittie was well furnished with Victuals; and all needfull Munition, to endure a long fiege, impeaching (enerie way) the entrance into the The Queene

yery manly courage : and caried her felfe

fo prouidently, as nothing wanted what-

Hauen, by the Sea. Neuertheleffe, the andher peo-Queene and the chiefe Commaunders ple too fuperwere possessed with ouer-great superstition, till they heard, that he who maintained the fiege, was named Baians Chin-(an, that is (as we have formerly faid) the fight of an hundred eies. This made both her and them to tremble with feare, remembring both the Father and fon: and also because it was registred in the books which were kept in the publick treasurie. that neuer should the Citty be surprized,

but by a man that had an hundered eyes Thefe Kingand therefore they refolued to yeelde it. othaue been though it feemed a matter wholly imposanquered in ahundred fible, yea quite against nature, that a man thould have an hundred eyes. As they were vppon the point of furrendering

the Cittle by composition; the Chri-Rians, who had lived in all quiernesse in those Countries; by the meanes of their Bishop Gaspar, declared in the full Senate, where the Queen also was pre-

Quinfay to the Enemy. fent : that no regard was to be made of fuch Prognoftickes, as proceeded from lying Mathematicians, and Generaliaques, to whom if the Mans Name appeared for to have the fight of an hundred eyes; yet notwithstanding, the man himselfe had onely but two, as other men haue, and thefe were but theillusions of Sathan, the Father of lying heereupon, some in the Senatehouse alledged many Histories, which happened in their time; to thew how vaine these friuolous predictions were. Neuerthelesse, the Cowardise of diuers, that neuer understood the nature 20 of warre, or what honour attended on bold hardiment, they being of the grea-

test in authority, and relying on these

foolish superstitions concluded to fur-

render the Citty . Wherefore, having

made (by confent of the Queene) an

honest capitulation: they suffered the

Enemy to enter; that kept faith exactly

with them. Whereat Baiam was not

a little amazed, for hee imagined his

ftrength neuer able to furprize it . Cub-

lay being aductifed thereof, caused ge-

merall proceffions to be made, and fol-

lemne facrifices performed to the Sun;

mocking at the superstition of the

Quin ayans, and admiring the vnmatch-

able fortune attending on Baiam . As

for the Queene, she retyred her feife to

the Court of the great Cham, who re-

ceiued and vied her very honourably:

and concerning the King of Mangy her

Husband, he continued his aboade in

At that instant also, the nine King-

doms contained in that Province, yeil-

ded themselues : except the Citty of

Stanfu, which out held the Tartars Ar-

the Island, where he ended his daies.

Quinfay yeel-ded up to Baiawand his

The capitall

my three whole yeares. And it had neuer beene taken, but that M. Paulus, and his Father and Vickle (by permiffi- 50 on of the Tartarian Emperour) made Engines of Wood, which hurled great Stones into the Citry, and did such harme to the fo long befiedged; as they were constrained to yeilde themselues! Thus you may perceine, that fuperftition is the cause of much euill; for

doubtleffe, if the Queene and the beffeged had ftil kept Quinfay, and the other Cities : an hundred years labour could not have conquered the Kingdomes of

And heere I would entrear the genrle Readers, not to conceine amile of me, for not following the writing of M. Paulas, in his description of Quinto far, for hee faith That there is withe midft thereof a lake, which containeth ten miles in circuit, and that the Cittle

is 34 miles in compatte, and hath fixe hundred thousand Houses in it ."I rather thought fit, to follow what I What the

finde written in a Dialogue, made by Garcias Orta a Portugall Phifitian, who dayes. faith That it is not about thirty fine yeares fince he wrote, that it contained not about foure or fine feagues n compaffe, beeing feated wholly in a Lake,

and hath not about threefcote thoufand Houses init. I know not whether it be diminished, since the faid Venetian came thence. It valued in reuennewes, fifteene Millions, and fixe hundredthousand Crownes, to the King yearely, in regard of his right (by way

of leucy) vpon merchandiles, and yet not counting the Toule faide on Salt, and this was but the ninth part of the great Province of Mangy. Arthis day, as I heard by a letuite of Chalous in Champaigne, named Gobert , who told me, that he remained there about two yeares : and he faith, that the valuation

is much more now at this instant. Angustus C.efar made better vie of his superstition, then the men of Quin-Jay, or their Queene did; for, a little before the laft battaile, which hee had a gainst his Compenitor Anthonie : as he went from his Land Army, to that on the Sea, hee met a Sutler or Victualer to the Campe, driving an Affe laden beforehim, of whom he demainded,

how hee was called : the Sutler made answer, that his owne name was Entichus, and his Affes Niconta : which two Greeke Names fignified nothing elfe. but Fortunate victorie. Heereupon, the faid Cafar, prefaged by this encounter, that he should be victorious ouer Anthony, who contended for the Empire of the VV orld, and that the Gods had

defigned it vnto him. On this afflirance,

he forth-with gaue battell by Sea to

The great Renennuesof

A good kinds of Superflition

1.62-4

5. Booke.

Of the Knights Templers.

Pope Honorius

iustituted the

the iccond

Templers.

Anthony, wherein he prevailed, and fo (by consequent) got the Empire. Pompey, quite contrary, through a

Pompey neuc thing in goo fort, or fuc-

great distrust, that he could neuer faue himselfe, nor finde any ayde or assured retreat, after he lost the battaile at Pharfalia against Julius Cafar ; grounded his folly on this occasion. In his flight, passing by the Isle of Cyprus, to the end hee might breath a while; with-drew into Ægypt. And being entertained (by the Gouernour) into the Citty of Paphos, where his lodging was prepared in a Pallace, builded in a very pleafant plot ypon the Sea, he defired to know who builded it, and how it was named. Answere was returned, that the place was called Cacobafilea, which is as much to fay, as Bad Harbour. In regard of which name, it appearing to him to be 20 an euill presage : hee would not enter into it, but paffed on farther, and tooke Shipping very fuddenly. Being verilie perswaded, that this accident to him at this Pallace, did presage; that he should Toone enough meete with a bad lodging to last all his life time . Being landed in Ægypt, to deriue some succour from the King, whose Father he hadrefeated in his Kingdome: he caused him to be trayteroully flaine, as thinking to doe a great fauour to victorious Iulius

But Sylla did better, who percei-

of the Fabi, were flaine in the Warre,

by fecret Ambushes of the Veientines,

who had long time warred against the,

hardby * Cremera; and many worthy

Captaines beside, had received great

mischances on the same day. But Sylla,

who was no way superstitious, encou-

raged his Army, faying . Let vs fbew our

Telues fo valiant this day, that although it

h th beene infortunate heeretofore ; yet it

may produe happy to vs. So, suddenly gi-

uing battaile, they won the day. Some

other would not have done it , but ra-

Cefar. uing his Army ready for to give bat-Sylla, by not being supertaile to the power of Mithridates, King flitious, won of Pontus; yet all being out of hart, as the battaile. holding that the day would be loft, because both the Priests and Soothsayers had observed, that the like day had been 40 alwaies vnfortunate to the Romaines. For it was registred in their Calender, that (as on the very same day) three hundred and fixe Noble Gentlemen, al

A River in Tulcia where the noble Faby were flain

The Noble laying of Sylla ther would have given credit to the difsemblings of Wizzards and Sacrificers. But to punish such men, for weakning the courage of Souldiours prepared to fight : fome of them have beene put into the front of the battaile, where they haue beene flaine, and very few others. In breefe, superstition neuer caused any goodnesse but hath procured many great loffes.

CHAP.III.

Of the Order and Knight-hood of the Templers; and how long it continued.



N the yeare of our Lord, one thousand, ninety six, some Christian Princes (of diuers Nations) made a Congregation, by the county

of honest and holy life. It was then determined, to goe for the Conquest of the Holy Land, which was in the power of prophane Infidels, who had kept it foure hundred and ninety years. Among the chiefe in this action, was Godfrey of Buillon, Duke of Lorraine, the The Conquet most apparant of them all, and he that of lerufalend carried the greatest merit. It pleased buillon. God, that after many battailes, which lasted for the space of three yeares : the Citty of Ierusalem, and many other Citties in Syria and Indea were conquered, beside divers other neighbouring Prouinces. Afterward, all the Christian Princes having regard to the high deferts of Godfrey; elected him King of Ierufalem : and Arnulphus; Arch-bishop of Pifa, was likewise cre-

Godfrey of Buillon remaining King of lerusalem, there also continued in his company, many great and worthy Christians, who daily made warre vpon the Infidels; as well round about Ierufalem, as in other neighbouring Countries. Which being vnderstoodby diuers faithful Christians in the westerne parts, and on what tearmes the affaires

ated Patriarch, by Pope Calixius the fe-

nice, and regaine the vsurped Landes; and others on voyages, to visite the Holy Sepulcher. Now, about a yeare The death of Godfrey of Buillon & the instaulment of Balwine.

Hugues de Pagams, and Gau-frede de Saint

Chap. 3.

after his Coronation, Godfrey of Buillon dyed, and his Brother, named Baldwine (a man equall enery way to the others merits) was crowned King in his stead. During whose raigne, among many other that reforted daily thither: were nine Gentlemen, intimate friends and great companions, of whom we finde the names but of two; who (it may be) were the chiefest to wit : Higues de Paganis, and Gaufrede de Saint Adelman. These men beeing come to Jerulalem, and having well contemplated the Countrey, and all the neighbouring places : they found, that at the Port of lapha, and other places of their paffage, there were many bufie spies upon the waies, that daily both robbed and kild Pilgrimes and Paffengers. In regard whereof, after good and mature deliberation, they concluded, with the helpe of many more; for it is to be prefumed. that they leagued themselves with other people of the faute mind) to make 30 avow, for doing some service acceptable to God, and to imploy their whole life time, in making the waies fecure & paffable, or else to loofe their lines in the enterprise; while the other Christians were buffed in other places, fighting with the Infidels. Perseuering in this religious purpose; they tooke (as an affigned place for their retreate) à Church, called, The Holy Temple, by 40 permission of the Abbot there abiding:

stood beyond the Seas: great numbers

of people went continually thither,

fome (in meere zeale) to affift Gods fer-

The King and Patriarch, allow their pro-

How they first

attained to

and others. Forwing to

uing their vow, and so they continued for the space of nine yeares. During which time, for the great feruice they did to Christendome , their credite and renowne highly encreased, beside the meanes of fo worthy an example. By reason of their encrease in number, Pope Honorius the second, at the request of Stephen, Patriarch of Ierufalem; deuised a rule and manner of life for them : appointing, that they should be cloathed in white. Afterward, Pope Engenius the third, added a Badge, or Armoury of a red Croffe; to be worne on their breasts : which they promised by a follemne vow to observe for ever, according as other religious Knightes did. And therefore they were honored, to have it brought them by the

hand of Saint Bernard, a reverend and S. Bernard was holy Doctour, whom they elected as the first Maichiefe and first Maister of their Order, Knights Temaccording as other religious Knightes

multiplication of their Order, and honour of their deedes in Armes; as not onely they kept the wayes of the holie voyage, lafe from Theeues and Murdeters : but alfo (both by Sea and Land) they made great incursions and strong warres voon the Infidels . So that their fame and worth spreading it felle throughout Christendome, the Kinges and Princes (in many partes) ordained and allowed them great Rents and Reuenues, which they imploied in those warres, like true Knights, attending on the feruice of Ichis Chrift. And by fucceffe of time, growing on in ftrength and ability of weartn: man and Provinces, they had abiding in the Order flayed and Provinces, they had abiding in the Order flayed in the Holy and ability of wealth: in all Countries The Great cheefest Citries and strongest places; in the but most especially in the Holy Land, Land.

greater number of them , keeping an

yeares after the conquest made by God-

In fhort time after, fuch was the

had the like observation.

edino.

where ordinarily the great Maifter of the Order made his aboad, will the

Army cotinually there, as also in other places, where most necessity required; It happened afterward, that for the fins of men, difcord monied among the Christians, and the great negligence in Princes not onely the Citty of Ierufalem, but other flaces also formerlie conquered (as we have before declared) were regained by the Infidels i ninetie

and in that respect, they were cald Templers, a name which alwaies after remained to them. When the King and the Patriarch had intelligence thereof, and perceived their paines to bee holy and commend ble they administred all thinges neceffary voto them , fo that they lived (after this manner) in the Temple both 50 very religiously and chaftly, and (which is more) their number multiplyed, and encreased day by day. Norwithstans ding, albeit there were now a great number of them, yethad they hey ther habite, or any rules defigned them! but lined together in common, obfer

more humaine and pious toward it, then

Macrob lib.z. Samual cap 4

Herods owne fonne flain mong the InKing Hered (when he understoode, that among the Innocents which he had caufed to be killed, after the birth of our Satheir Dammes : whereas the Children of men, should bee in daunger to be forfaken both of Father and Mother, and fo oerith.

Another ab-Arifotle.

.

Lascinions pictures and Images of Gods,abfurd ly allowed by

> IfGods do : misse, men

the Pather himfelfe. Well then, to conclude this point, I fay of Aristotle, as Augustus Cafar faid of utour, one of his owne Sons was flaine) His better, quothhe, to be Herods Pigge, then his sonne. And this he faid in regard that Pigges were not killed in Ludes, because the Iewes did not eate anie Swines Fleih. And even fo I fay, it were better tobee a Beaft in Aristot es Commonwealth, then aman, for Beaftes shoulde bee affuredly cared and provided for by

And heere I cannot forbeare to fay fornewhat, of another Constitution of his, which I knowe not, whither it were more absurd or ridiculous. We made mention a little before, of a notable Law of his, forbidding in his Commonwelth, the vse of lasciulous Pictures & Images; least young men, and especialy children. might be corrupted in manners by fight of them. Neuerthelesse, he excepteth in the fame Law, the Images and Pictures of certaine Gods : In whom (faith he) Cu-Stome allowveth Lacinion fre Se. Meaning no doubt, the painted and graued Stories of the Adulteries of Jupiter, Mars, and Venus, and other Gods and Goddeffes, fet foorth euery where amongest the Paynims, as well in publicke places, as in their private Houses and Temples. Wherein may bee obserued, the ridiculous absurdity of this great Phylosopher, not only in matter appertaining to Religion, but also in matter of Commonwealth; yea, and concerning his owne law formerly mentiond. For, what could it auaile, to take away all other wanton pictures and representations that might corrupt the minds of youth, when he expressely alloweth the vse of Lascinious Gods pictures, which must needes corrupt them much more, and as it were, instill into them, vicious affections & wils together, with their Religion, and by example of their Goddes? For, by their im-

mitation, they could not but hope to at-

taine, as well to perfection of Vertue, as

to eternall beatitude and felicite, belee-

ting as they did, that they were true

For, how could any man bee perfwaded, that Adulterie deferued punnish. ment, or was not a great, yea, a Dimne Vertue, feeing Mars taken tardy With Venus, or Impiter Stealing away Europa, in the hape of a Bull or violating Lada In the forme of a Swanne; or entering into the house of Danae (by the Louer) in a Golden it owre? Would not anie man that were Religiously delibred vinto thele Gods, bee animated by right of them to do the like? Yea, and Children Learning their Religion, and not only hearing, but alfo feeing eliery where, by Pictures and Images, that fuch actes were confillited by their Gods, could they imagine, that the same were enill, and not to be imitated ? 7 10 7

This is verie well declared by Lucian, of his owne experience, who, in his nippo. Dialogues, maketh Menippue fay thus: When I was yet but a Boy , and heard out of Homer and Hefiode, of the Adultaries, Fornications, Rapes, and Seditions of the Gods, Truely I thought, that those thinges were very excellent, and began even then, to be greatly affected towards them. For I could not imagine that the Goddes themfelues wou'd euer have committed Adultery, if they had not esteemed the same to bee lawfull and good. The like also fignifyeth Charea in Terence, who beholding a Table, wherein was painted how Jupiter deceiued Danae, when he came in ar the top of the house, saith; that hee was greatlie encouraged to defloure a yong Maid, by the example of so great a God. At quem Deum? (laith he) Qui templa cali summa Conitu concutit . Ego homunicio boc non facerem? Ego vero illud ita feci & lubens. But what God was this? Even hee, which

my heart. These are the effects, that the fight of Aristotles ab fuch Lascinious Pictures of the Goddes, furdity made must needes worke in their minds which plaine & man beholderhem; and are withall; Religioully affected towards them. And therefore, Arestotle permitting these, and forbidding all other, to prenent thereby the wonderfull corruption of youth, may verie fitly bee compared vnto one, that

Chakes the highest Temples of the Heavens

with Thunder. And therefore, might

not I, that am but a poore wretch, doe the

like? Yes truely, I did it, and that with all

8. Booke

distant?

Mens minde

Gentiles, by

A verie true andapt Com

Chap.5.

fhould make a Law to prohibite the burning of houses, except it were with some artificiall wilde fire , that could not bee extinguished. For such may be said to be the fire of Concupilcence, kindled in the minds of men or Children, by Religious acts or representations, which maketh fuch impressions, as neuer after can be rafed out againe, fo long as affection to the fame Religion remaineth. Which maketh me therefore to conclude, that Aristotle failed and erred no leffe, or rather more abfurdly, then the other Lawmakers, whose errors hee censured and controlled. Heereby two things are inferred, and

do appeare enidently. The one the weak-

neffe of mans wit, when it is not suppor-

The weaknes ted and directed by the grace of GOD. of mans wit, and the im-Lawes infere vpon the pre

tic de Reip. in

And the infufficiencie of humain lawes, 20 through the weaknesse of the Law-Makers, who intending (manie times) to make good and wholesome Lawes, for benefit of the Commonwealth, doo ordaine things very inconvenient and preiudiciall thereto: which Cicero observeth in some of the Wiselt men of his time. Ican tell you (faith hee) of Marcus Cotta . whole Law concerning private indgements, was abrogated by his own Brother, the fame 30 yeare that it was made . And the Lawet of Licinia and Mutia, made by two most wife Consulles were in the judgements of al men not onely unprofitable, but alfo, pernitious to the Commonwealth . As allo the Lawes called Liuix, were abrogated by the Senate in an instant. And in like manner, I holde the Lawes Seix and Apulix to be nothing worth. Thus farre Cicero.

The like whereof might be exemplified in euery Commonwealth, but this thal fuffice at this time, concerning Lawmakers. Now let vs confider Law in it felfe, what it is ; to what end it is ordained; and what it can perform in a Com-

monwealth, for the perfection & establishment thereof.

CHAP.V.

adont, dat neveler

What Law is : To what pind it was ordained. And what it can performe in a Common-

in grimmorr a droduction, and the



VV hat Lavvis.

Lato, peaking generally Plain Mino de of all Law, as well writ-ten as vnwliten; defi-neth it to be; A relifona-ble vale; leading and di-recting menso sheyr dae

end for a publicke good, ordaining Penalties for them that transgreffe, and Rewards for them that obey. And Citero more brief- cicin lib. t. de ly thus : Law is (faith hee) the highest or chiefe reason grafted in nature . commaunding those things which are to be doone and forbidding the contrary. And againe, Law is the force of Nature . the under standing and realon of a Wileman : the rule of right and wrong. And speaking more perticulerly of written Lawe, hee faith : It is the The definition reason & understanding of a Wiseman who ordaineth in writing what he thinketh good by way either of commandement, or of Rrohibitions. Laftly, the Civilians, moft briefly and properly defineth it thus " Lex est fanctio fancta jubens bonefta prohibens cotraria. Law is a holy decree, that is to fay A Decree which ought not to be broken, commanding good and holy things, and forbid-

ding the contrary. This Law, Plato calleth, The foule, that giueth forme and life to the Commonwelth, and the Anchor that stateth and assureth it. And Cicero fayth : That neither any house, nor Cittie, nor Nation, nor yet humaine kinde can Stand wvithout Law. Nevertheleffe, how excellent or defective foeuer it is for a Commonwealth, yet it is to be understood, that all Lawes whatfoeuer (which are meerely humaine) are defectine, Defective and insufficient, for the perfect Gouernement of a State. For whereas humaine Lawes confifteth eyther in Written Statutes or Decrees, or in the Commandements and Ordinances of a king Law & wife Magistrate (which Magistrate, Ci- die Eawe's cero therefore calleth, A Speaking Lawe, dambe Mage as he also calleth the Lawe, A dumb Ma-

Rrr 3

Accur [in inftit Scaus.comf. 3.

All Lawes written or vii

Ould, Lib, 3, de

Arte amande

giftrate) yet it is enident, that neyther of both apart, nor yet both concurring, can fuffice.

The imperie-Aton of writ-

Arif in Ethic. libes scap. vo. Int.lib. vo ad e dictum ff. de legib.& Senatus conflit.3 et Iul. Lib.89 digef.

> The imperfe ction of vnwritten lawe

Better to bee gouerned by good Lawes, then by the man, & why. Arifin Polit. lib.3 cap, 12.

Where good Laws govern God doth go-

As a Magiftrate should gouerne the people, fo fhold the law gouerne the Magistrate. Jul.lib. 15. digef. ff de legi. & Se-

For the first, whereas written Lawes are vniuerfall, and concerne the action of men, which are infinite and perticuler, it is not possible, that any Law-Maker thould extend his Lawes fo farre, that they may fufficiently prouide for all cafes that may occurre; but that hee must leaue place for the determination and indgement of men, according to equity. As not oncly Aristotle, but also the comlians themselves, doe teach, and experience is daily feene thereof. In the neceffity of interpretation and mittigation of Lawes in Dispensations, and in Appealations from Law to Conscience; whereby the imperfection of al written Lawes, fufficiently appeareth. And as for the ordinances of wife Magistrates, it is manifest (by that which I have fayde before, concerning the errours of wife Gouernors and Law-makers) that the weakneffe and blindnesse of mans wit, and the corruption of his Nature, is fuch; that hee can neither fee fo clearely in all cafes, nor yet be so voide of affection and passion, that he can be able to determine, decree, and judge according to equity. In which refpect. Aristoile disputeth , Whether it were besser, That a Commonwealth should be governed by good Lawes, or by the wil of the heft man? And he preferreth the Gonermment of Lawes, before the other, faying of he Lam is (as it were) a pure and cleare under standing : whereas the understanding of the best man, is toyned with fenfual appetite, whereby it may bee corrupted. And therefore, where the Law gouerneth, there God gouerneth: but where man gouerneth, be he neuer fo wife and vertuous, there a cruell Beaft (to witte; Concupifcence and Passion) entreth into the government with him, and manie times obscureth his understanding. For which cause, the Magistrate ought in all cases, wherein the meaning of the Law is cleare: to judge and determine according to the prescript thereof, as the Ciuill Law it felfe ordaineth. And Cicero faith: As the Magistrate gouerneth the people, fo flow'd the Law governe the Magistrate. Whereupon I inferre, that feeing no Law-maker can fo fufficientlie prouide for the government, and direct ruling of a Common-wealth, by the Let-

ter of the Law; but he must leane infinite | Cicer de legibre cases, yea, and the interpretation of the Lawe themselves, to the determination and judgement of men, who are also (on their part) defective, to wit; subject vnto passion and error: It followeth then, that No sufficience neither the Law without the Magistrate, meanes to nor the Magistrate without the Law, nor fed Common vet both concurring, can suffice for the welth, by huperfect government of a commonwelth, maine Lawes but should bee to supply the defectes of each other. And therefore I conclude, that there is no fufficient and affured meanes, to establish any State by humain This will be more euident, if wee confider, what are the especiall ends whereto Two princi-

Lawes were ordained, and what they can perform. Two things are principaly inte- main Laws ded by them. The one, the administration of Inflice, by the decision of causes, controuerfies, and fuites, betwixt partie and partie. The other, is the reformation of manners, and repression of vice, for that it is permitious to a Commonwealth. Of the first I have already spoken sufficient- A reference ly, as well in the weakeneffe of the Lawmaker and Magistrat, as imperfection of the Law, in the determination of causes. And therefore, I will a little further enlarge my felfe, concerning the latter; which is, suppression of Vice, and reformation of manners : and I will declare that humaine Lawes cannot sufficientlie performe, either the one or other.

If Lawes were able to reforme mens ff. de legib. maners, or to represse vice, they must do send. cinful. it, sither by Precept, or by Prohibition, or 1, Elmol. by Permission, or by Rewarding, or by Punishing, for in these five things, confist al the force of human lawes, as the Lawiers do testify of themselves. For the two first, human lawes to wit; Precept & Prohibition, they are al- confifteth in together vnable and insufficient, to bring Precept, Prothe corrupt nature of man to any perfec- mission, Retion or vertue. For what other help haue ward and Pawe thereby, but only the knoledge of our numers. duty ? which knowledge alone, as Ariftotle faith, Helpeth litle or nothing to vertue, ine praye and commendation whereof, con-fifteth in action and operation. Because it bb. 2.2094. 50 the praise and commendation whereof, connothing availeth, though wee know neuer so much, if we do not put our knowledge in practife. And as little it profiteth a fickeman, to know what meat is good

for him: when hee hath fuch a loathing

vnto it, that hee cannot eate it. Euen fo,

the corrupt nature of man hath litle help or remedy by the knowledge of his duty: when vertue is so loathsome vnto Sence. Epift.95 him, that he cannot brooke it. For, as Precepts a-lone little a-Seneca faith. Nihil proderit dare pracepta; uaile to the niss prius amoueris obstantia praceptis. It obtaining of is to little purpose to gine precepts, except thou first remoone the obstacles of them. And therefore the Poet faide truely

Chap.5.

The precept and prohibi -

mc.Epift.95.

Prohibition

(of it felfe)

rather hur-

teth then o-

-Si possem, santor essem: Sed trahit innitum, nous vis, aliuda, cupido, Mens alius fuadet, video meliora, proboá, Deteriora fequor.

That is to fay; I would bee better, if I could; but a new and strange force draweth me against my will. Senfua ity per swades me one thing, and reason anosber . I see and approoue the better, but I follow the worle.

Alfo, the Apostle speaking in the perfon of our corrupt nature, testifieth the fame, faying. Scio quia non habitat in me, Ge. I know that there dwelleth no goodnes in me, that is to fay, in my flesh : For I have a good will or defire, but I cannot performe it. For I doe not the good which I defire to doe; but I do the entll which I would not do. Thus farre the Apostle. Whereupon it followeth, that precept and prohibition of the Law (whereby wee have the onely knowledge of good and euill) little anayleth vs for the attayning of vertue; except the infirmitie and corruption of Nature, be cured by fome other meanes. For Animus (faith Seneca) ve ad praceptapossit ire, soluendus est. The Soule must be loofed from the bonds that tye and entangleit, or otherwise, it cannot follow

the good precepts that are given. But what if the prohibition of cuill doe hurt alfo, if it be not otherwise holpen? The Apostle proqueth this clearely. Peccatum (faith he) non cognoui, erc. I knew not sinne, but by the Law, for Iknow not concupiscence, but because the law said: Thou shals not lust. And sinne, by occasion of the Commaundement, bath wrought all concupi (cence in me. And how true this is; common experience may teach vs, feeing nothing is more proper and peculiar to the mallice of mans Nature; then desire to doe that which is forbidden,

and commonly for no other reason, but

because it is forbidden. Which the Po-

et fignifieth elegantly, faying;

Cui peccare licet , peccat minus ; ip/a poteftas Semina pequitia languidiora facit, &c. Nitimur inuetitu femper, cupima fa nega-Sie interdictis imminet ager aquis. , (ta!

He which hath leave to sinne, sinnes lesse: Mant corrupt for the libertie to finne, weakenesh the nature thir like to the ficke Man, who this stes most after forbidden Water.

And another Poet faith to the fame purpose. Gens humanarait per vetitum nefas. Mankind runneth bead long to finne, Horatius 1. when it is forbidden him: For enen as a | carminu Od.3. torrent or Land flood funning avio-

lent and precipitous courle, and meeting with any stop by the way becomes the more furious, and with re-thoubled An excellent force makes it felfe puffage, bearing downeall before it Enen fo, mans corrupt Nature, being carryed head long with unbrideled defires and finding it selfe repressed or hindred, by any Law or Commaundement; breaketh down the bankes or bounds of dutie with redoubled fury, in fuch fort, that it committeth double offence, to wit sie doth not onely the defired euill, but breaketh the Law alfo. As the Apostle infinuateth, faying: Lex tram operatur, &c. The Law worketh or caufesh wrath for where there is no Law, there is no breach of Law. Whereupon Saint Augustine faith. The letter of the Law killeth, for it makes a man In description rather know euill, then eschew it; and by s. August. that meanes, rather encreaseth then diminisheth sinne : because mans concupiscence or unlawfull defire, is accompanied also with breach of the Law. Whereby it appeareth, that the Law in commaunding or forbidding, helpeth not fufficiently the reformation of mans corrupt nature.

But can Permiffion, or contienience flieweth the with enill (which is another point of the Law, the Law) worke any greater effect? Who feeth not, that it dooth nothing elfe, but bewray the imbecilitie and imperfection of the Law? Because it is forced to permit that , which it gladlie common would, and fhould remedy, but cannot. And therefore I will proceede, to treat of Reward and Punishment, wherein, as Solon was wont to fay, principally confifteth the government of a Commonwealth. And Isidorus faith ; Legis pramio Etimol.

Ilidor, Lib. 9.

very roots and feeds of finne. We alwaies frine to doe that which is forbidden vs, bidden.

comparison.

Rom. 4. 15.

Permission

Of reward & punifluient.

Example by

the yearely lopping of trees & vines

aut pana, v tamoderatur humana. Mans life is wholy governed by reward or punnish-

ment of the Law. Now then, for as much as these two have all their operation, about the effects of Vertue or Vice, that is to fay; about good or bad actions (which are onely, rewarded and punished by Law) and not about the rootes and causes thereof, to wit; the good or bad habits or affections of the mind, from whence doe spring all good and euill actions: It is manifelt, that though they may bee Motiues to good syet they cannot bee effectualland sufficient meanes to work it. For, fo long as the cause remaineth; fo long will the effects follow thereof, at one time or other. We fee that trees are yearely lopped, and Vines cropped: yet while the rootes remaine found, 20 they bud afresh, and bring foorth new Boughes, Leaves, and Fruits. Euen fo, although quill and finfull Acts be punifhed in wicked men, yet if the caufes from whence they proceede (to wit, inordinate affections and passions) be not taken awaysthey produce the very same effects fooner or later, openly or fecretly. For, what commonly followeth on the punishment of a vicious Act, when the habit of the Vice remaineth: but that the offender finneth more warilie another time? And how often do men offend the lawes, without punishment, yea, without any feare or danger there. of ? That Man (faith Cicero) who feares nothing but a Judge and a Witneffe : what

Cecero de legib.

How many nalties of po liticall Lawcs may be esca-

will he not do in the dark? Or when he finds a weak and rich man alone, of whom he may

(afely have the (boile? Furthermore, how many waies may the penaltie of the Law bee anoyded? Some escape it by their power, in which respect, Anacharsis compared Lawes to the Spiders Web: which takes onelie the little Flyes, while the great ones breake thorough it. Some againe auoyde it by corruption, either of the Iudge, Witnesse, or Iurie. And some by fauour or friendship. Others by negligence of Officers, which doe not exccute the Lawes: And fome by the Princes pardon. But what shall we say of fuch, who offend the Law, not onelie without punishment ; but also with reward? To the ende, that this may the better appeare, and that wee may fee

(withall) what force Law may have for suppressing the mallice of mans nature: let vs confider the power of a contrarie Law, which encountreth enery Common-wealth, and impugneth Politicall Law, to wit, the Law of the Flesh, whereof the Apostle faith. Video Rom. 7. 23. aliam legem, &c. I fee another Law in my body repugnant to the Law of my minde. And for as much, as this Law hath alfo

her Precepts, Prohibitions , Rewards , and An exedeo-Panishmenes: Let vs put it in a Ballance hitell Law, with the Civill and Political Law, with the Law weighing the one with the other, that of the Fleft, weighing the one with the other, that to frew the come, in a man denoyd of Gods grace, the later. & consequently in Common-wealths, that relye onely vpon humaine pollicie and power.

It is therefore to be confidered, that the Carnall Law, flowing from the very bottome of mans corrupt Nature; is fo much stronger, and more forcible. then the other, to moue and draw him: by how much it is more internall and familiar with him, and the end or scope thereof more agreeable, and confonant to his corrupt humour, will, and affection. For Politicall Law tendeth onely to Bonum werum, and Bonum commune, Atrue good, and the common good, confi-fling in follide & perfect vertue: wher-Lawes doe as the Carnall Law tendeth to Bonum tend. apparens, and Bonum privatum; An apparent and private good confisting onely in a Mans owne profit, pleasure, and delectation, whereto every one is (of his

owne corrupt nature) enclined. The like also may be faid, of the Statutes and Decrees both of the one and of both the other, that is to fay; their Precepts and Prohibitions: confifting in Commatinalli. dements Negatine and Affirmatine. Wherein the Carnal Law hath also the like aduantage, in respect of the greater facilitie of the precepts thereof, and difficulty of the things it forbiddeth. For, whereas the Civill and Politicall Lawe commaundethys, to loue our Neighbours as our selves, and to preferre the publique good before our private; to be temperate and continent; not to Steale; not to deceine; not to commit Fornication or Adultery: The Law of the Flesh, beeing opposite in all, commaundeth the contrary sas to lone our selues better then our Neighbours; to

wardnesse to

Sence in Epift.

Seneca vbi fie.

thened by

preferre our prinate good before the publique to feale; to decente for our commoditity and to commit Fornigae The Garnall tion and Adultery for our pleafures And to conclude all, in one precept, it faithft Ede , bibe , lude , post mortem nulla vo: luptas. Eate, drinke, and be merry for after death there is no pleafure.

Chaps.

Wild.2,6,7.8

The Statutes

The Statutes of the Carnall Law. the Holy Ghost layeth downe notably; in the Booke of Wisedome, speaking of wicked men, in these wordes. Dixes rant impy , &c. The wicked faid. Let weeniby the goods that we have, and wie the Creature in this time of our youth without delay. Let ws fill our falues with Wine and Cyntments, and let us not loofe the floure

of the carnall of the time, one. Let us leave every where the fignes of our mirth, for this is our part, and this is our lot. Let us oppresse the poore sust Man, and let vs not fare the Widdow. nor have respect to the hoary Haires of any. And let our frength be the Law of in-iu-Stice. Thefe are the Statutes of the Flesh, which how much more confonant and agreeable they are tomans corrupt Nature, and how much more casie to be performed, then the statutes and decrees of Politicall Law, which commaunds and forbids the constante; 30 I neede not to declare.

But who knoweth not, that to learn Mans prompt Vice, a man hath no neede of any great wir, or of a Councellour, or of compulfion? who is fo fimple, that he hath not wit enough to be wicked? Whereas, to be vertuous, we neede not onely wit and capacity, Maisters & Teachers: but alfo Lawes, stripes, Prisons, Gines and Gibbets. And yet, as Seneca faith; 40 We may thinke we profit well, if we be none of the worst. So that, he which is eyther

left to his own corrupt Nature, or hath no other then humaine help; is drowned in vice and finne, before hee come within a kenning of vertues port. We are (faith Seneca) taken up by the way wee labour to come to Vertue being already entangled and intercepted by vice . And no maruaile, seeing menivoyde of Grace, (for fuch I speake of) have neither sufficient Armes to defend themselues, nor refuge where to faue themselues. For reason, which is their onely Weapon, not being strengthened by Grace sis fo weak and brickle, that it breaketh at the first blow. And Morall Vertue (where-

in confilterhall their hope and refuge is fo hard to be attained : that a man receiusth many deadly wounds of his E. nemy before herein arrive where it is-Belides, his danger is the greater, because his Warfe is so domosticall and intelline; that hee is not fecure from harme himfelfe. For, he is to fight, not onely with the World and the Dettill : but also with his owne passions and affections, in fo much, that his greateft feare may be gleaft he himfelfe betray himfelfe, and render himfelfe Prilonet tohis Enemy, too i woo adoto was

Furthermore, wee fee that our proclinity to Vice, and anertion flor Vertue, is fuch, that as it fufficeth to fleth a Dogge onelie once vpon a Sheepe, to make him a Sheepe-wurrier as long as he lines : Euen fo, one onely raft of vice is enough, to make a man vicious euer after. Whereas contrariwife, many acts are requird; to the attaining the ha bite of any one vertue, and fo timely is mans friendship with sensualitie, the Mother of Vice, and fo late his knowledge and vie of reason, which leadeth to vertue: that he hath gone halfe the way to Vice, before hee know where Verme dwels:

By meanes whereof, he commonlie groweth to bee victous very earlie; to halfe the way wir, in his Childe-hood, and vertuous very late, if euer he prooue vertuous mey know verues dwelat all. For the way to vertile is long, ling, and full of difficulties; but the way to al kinde of vice, is easie, and, as Salomon faith ; Complanata lapidibus , Made plaine with flones, ceuen, and wel paued, thort, and gone in a trice. Heftodies faith, Hand procul illa habitant, breuis est via que fit eundem. Vice dwelleth not farre from vis, the way is short, and all in a destent Whervpon the Poet faith ; Facilis defeenfus Auerni , The descent to Hell is very easte. Finally, of these two waies our Saujour faith. Lataporta & Patiofa via est . Co. The way is broad and patious that leadeth to perdition, and many enter in thereat: but the Gate is frait, and the way is narrow, which leadeth to life, and few men finde it. Thus we fee, what great addiantage the The addan-Law of the flesh hath, of the Political | tage that the Law in respect of the facilitie frat men hath of the finde, to fulfill the precepts thereof, politicall law. which (in fome) are nothing elic but to

be vicious.

ad draft we £2915550055 Oracers, Phies modadio I cachers.

Vice is very eafily learned but vertue very hardly.

difficilities and I r rough auf

la stat. 35.545

Men learne to vice, before nr. Da ... a touts cannon

gegirrous sea Ectle 27, 10

Virgil in Lib.6

Mat. 7,13,14.

The Carnall Law hath her Aduocates, Orators, Phi losophers and

SE OF BLA

very hardly

The doctrine

of Epicurus & his followers.

Metrodorus a

Disciple of

2dem in his

live merily in

2.7

the Sect of

Phil. 3, 19.

Youth cor-

754

But wanteth it any thing, wherewith Politicall, Lawe is furnished ? Hath nor therhem in as high a degree, and a ble to build equall competence? Hash not this Carnall Law (thinke you) her Aduncates Orators, Philosophers, & Teachers to publish and proclaime its to pleadit, to teach it? What fay yeto all the Sect of Epicuraut Whose Doctrine confided principally in the Brecepts of this Law, and impugning (as much as he durft) the Civill and Politicall Law In which respect, al Epienrians were banished out of many good Common-wealthes of Greece : as Plutarch testifieth, and that worthily. For Epicerus having made a demaund, in certaine questions which hee wrote, whether a wife man would nor doe against the Political Law, if he might be fure to escape vnpunished? aunswered freely thereto himselfe, Testruly. And writing to Idomeneus, one of his Schol-Jers, he admonished him seriously ; not to fubicet himfelfe to the Lawes and opinions of Men, when focuer he might hope to auoid the penalty of the lawes. And Metrodorus, a Disciple and familiar friend of his, writing to his Brother: forbad him to go to the warres, or endanger himfelfe for the good of all Greece; aduiting him, rather to drinke good Wine at home, and entreate himfelfe well, that his body might receive all pleasure and contentment. Concluding, that the chiefe and foueraigne good, confifteth in the belly, and in the pleatures therof. This is the Philosophy that belongeth to the Law of the flesh, and experience heweth, what number 40 of professors there are thereof in enery Common-wealth. Quorum Deus venter est, as the Apostle faith ; Whofe bellies are their Gods. Whose endeuors tend to nothing but to their private pleasure & commodity. Who imploy their wits, ftudies, and pens, to nothing fo much, as to publish and promulgate the Carnall Law, in amourous and lascinious Books, wanton Poems, and scurrillous bandy Ballads, which abound cuery where, to the corruption of youth, and confequently, to the prejudice of the Commonweale, & to the great shame

of Magistrates, that see and suffer it.

Morgouer to the end we may fee, that

this Carnall Law will yelld in nothing

rupted by laf-citious books and ballads.

Acres.

to the Politically hath it novalfo Common-wealths wherein it gouernerh, and a prindence and pollicy appropriate vntoit? Yea polliticke Princes and Magifleates that practife it, and politick writers that teach and maintaine it . Looke upon all tyrannicall States, where all is ruled according to the precepts of this Lawi doe Magistrates and Gouernours practife any other pollicy, but Prudents am carnis; as the Apostle calleth it; The Prudence and wifedome of the fleft? And Machianell, whose workes are so highly efteemed of many men at this day doth hereach any other gouernment, then that which proceedeth from the principles of this law, to wit; from felfe loue, and perticuler interest? Yet this were not fo much to be wondred; at if it had nor alfo a Religion conforme to it felfe, with Doctors and Dinines, to Preach and defend it. For as Politicall Law.hauing the help and affiftance of true Religion, is more perfect, and worketh far greater effects in the Common-wealth, cours and for the establishment and confernation thereof: So also hath the Carnall Law, being masked with the Vizard of some Religion, eyther true or falle, is of farre greater force, to ouerthrow or destroy any Common-wealth. And therefore it feeketh alwaies, to haue eyther the apparance and shew of true Religion, (in which respect , Machianell teacheth his Tyrant to be an Hippocrite) or elle it ferueth it felfe, with fome new fangled and false Religion : which the Apofile fign fieth, when amongst Operacar- Gal 5.20 nis, The workes of the flefb, he numbreth Sects of Herefies. But perhaps you will fay, that the'o-

ther Law (in rewarding and punishing) furmounteth this, and repressethit in fuch fort, that it can have no force in any wel gouerned Commonwealth. Let vs.then examine this a little, and we shall finde: that the Politicall Law hath no oddes of this in that point, for it hath rewards and punishments also, as well as the other . The rewards which this The reward Law proposeth, are diuers; for it pro-misch (for somethinges) the pleasure of the Fich proposeth. & delight which is taken in the action, with the which the party thinketh himfelfe fo well fatisfied: that he is contented (many times) to bestow his Mony, yea, to venter his life to obtaine it. Some-

in it gouer-

Rom. 8.6.

Machiauell de

The rewards certaine, for the most part

Chap.5.

The two laws

The reward

for vertue ve-

ry yncertain.

The Carnall

Goodmen dy many times.

Law.

Sometimes againe, it proposeth some commoditie or benefit, which may accompanie or follow the fact. And lastly, it findeth meanes (otherwhiles) to rob vertue of her reward, and apply it to it felfe: in fo much, that there is no remuneration promifed by the Politicall Law, whereof the Carnall may not fometimes give hope, to fuch as follow it. As I will make euident, by comparifon of the one with the other : whereby it shall appeare, that the Carnall Law hath enery where the adnantage.

Therefore (I fay) that the rewardes

proposed for Vertue by the Politicall

Law, are vncertaine, in respect of the other, for neither is ther any at all affigned for very many good actes, neyther are all those rewards promised, performed. Whereas on the contrary, the 20 rewards of Vice, are commonly more certaine, for eyther they goe before the act (as it falleth out in bribes, and many other cases of volawfull gaine, where the reward is paid before hand) or else they accompany the fact (as in al cases of intemperance and incontinency, wherein onely pleafure is fought, or in cofenages and deceipts, which bring present gaine) or else they follow vpon | 30 the deede, as when some volawfull act is done, vpon promife of future pay. So that, for Vice the reward is alwaics eyther affured, or (at leaft) hoped for

and expected; which is no smal Motiue

to induce men thereto. But for vertue,

neither is there any reward to bee had

many times, nor yet hope of any by po-

liticall Law, as we see by experience in

very many Men, who live laudably in

the Common-wealth all their lines:

and yet are so farre from having any re-

muneration, or from expecting any;

that they thinke themselves happy, in

that they can escape the penalties of the

But let vs proceede a little further. Is The ministers there any reward for vertue, fo affured nest exalted by Politicall Law, that Vice cannot; yea, doth not abtaine it daily? Hath it 50 not honour (many times) for reward, as well as Vertue? Who fooner rifeth to the highest offices, and credit in some Courts: then the Ministers of the Princes pleasures, or Instruments of his wickedneffe? As Seianus, under the Empe-

ror Tiberius. Two Slaues, called Narcif-

fus and Pallas, vnder Claudius. Tigellinus; vndcr Nero. Pexennius, Cleander, Regii-us, Iulianus, and other Slaues, vnder Comodus. All which men, gouerned both the Emperours, and the Empire : to Lampid Hers whom I might adde divers other, if I de with Impethought it convenient. For, whether it weelooke to former times, or to the present: we shall finde every where, as many advanced by cuill meanes, as by good. For no man is fo wicked; but if he have Mony, he may hope for any pre ferment whatfocuer.

Curia pauperibus claufa est, das census hono- Ouid. Eleg. 7. Census amiettias, pauper vbiá, iacet. (res,

The Court (faith the Poet) is flut up to poore men: but wealth glueth honours; wealth gineth friendship, and the poore Man lyeth enery where in the dust.

And if we confider also, how Princes Philip de comidoe commonly bestow their rewardes : nes in cron. du wee shall fee that merit is least respect ted. Which Phillip de Comines (heweth by a pleafant example, of Lewes the cleanenth, King of Fraunce, and Charles Duke of Bourgundy: Who, after the battaile (which was fought betwixt them at Montlebery in France) being determined to reward and punish such, as had deferued well or ill in their Armies. and finding, that divers ranne away on both fides, while the battel was doubtfull (fome on the one fide an hundred Miles East-ward, and others on the other fide as many West-ward) the K. of France tooke from one of his Subjects, all his Offices and dignities for running away, and gaue it to another that ranne ten miles further then he. The Duke Rewards giof Bourgundie deprived also one of his, any defert, of all his goods and authority, for the like cause, & within a while after, gaue him more then euer hee had before. VV hereby (Saith Comines) it appeareth; that Princes bestow their rewardes and fauours, not like Angels, but like Men, as they

Seeing then that Vice bath not onely perticular rewards, either of gaine or commoditie, or of pleasure at least, (which contenteth fome more then Gold) but also hope of the rewards due to vertue it felfe, eyther by the Princes error or infirmitie, or by his fauour, or

753

LEWY. Wicked men

Gods in elder

Wicked men fomtimes get topes in stead

of dignities.

Vermous me difgraced and punished.

Read Plutarel in the lines of all thefe men

by purchase, or by accident and chance, (whereby many wicked men are also aduanced.) What aduantage can the Political Law have of the other, by proposing reward, though it be neuer fo great? Doe we not fee Crownes and Sourraignties (wherin most men place the greatest felicity of this life)procured by murders, mischiefes, and most wicked meanes? And doth Machiavell propose any lesse reward to his Prince (for extreame wickednesse) then assurance in Soueraignety? So that the most wicked man that is, having hope to get or conserue a Crowne, (or rather, Soueraigne State) by some murder or mischiefe: what greater, or fo great a reward, could be expect for all the vertue in the world, by obeying Political laws? Didnot very many (in old time) get di- 20 uine honours, though they were most wicked men: as Jupiter, Venus, Bacchus, Hercules, Tiberius Cafar, and divers Emperours as bad as he? And fo it would still fall out, if Christian Religion had not expelled Idolatry out of the world-Whereby we see, Politicall Lawes. without the helpe of Gods Grace and Religion (for I confider them here) cannot assigne so great a reward for vertue: but that the wickedst man in the world may hope also to haue it, though he follow and obey the lufts of the flesh. But a man may fay, that many wicked men, which promise themselues

great gaine or advancement, by some wicked act : get nothing in the end, but rackes and ropes in recompence thereof. This I grant, but then let vs also confider on the other fide, how many no- 4 table Men, cyther loofe their liues in actions, for which they should beerewarded, or, in flead of the reward which they deserue, get nothing but ignominy, banishment, hatred of their Princes or people, death, and vtter ruine? As Marcus Coriolanus, Furius Camillus, Scipio, Cicero, Themistocles, Aristides, Phocion, Dion the Sicilian, and infinite others. Some of which men, were depriued of their Dignities, others banished their Countries, and others shamefully put to death by publike authoritie; after they had done great feruices to their Common-weales and States, wherein they lined. And did not Lewes the eleauenth, King of France, discouer a great

ces, in rewarding services past, when he said; Il perd Jouwent d'auoir trop bien Serui ; It ouerthroweth Men many times to Philip de Comibaue done too good feruice ? Signifying, that Princes are more willing to haue others beholding to them; then to bee themselves beholding to any. And fome, as well Princes as others, are of fuch Nature, that when they fee their obligation fo great to any man, as they thinke that they cannot commodiously rewardhim, according to his fatisfaction and merit: they hold him then but for an eye-fore, and feek to rid him one way or other. Therefore, how vncertaine and cafuall is the reward of vertue by Politicall Lawes, feeing the diffri-toution thereof is in the hands of fuch: as for some perticular respect, or interest of their owne, may not onely forbeare to reward, but also (some-times) undog and destroy those, that have best deferred of them and the Commonwealth > Thus much of Reward. Now, to speake of Punishment, wherein confilteth the greatest force of any Politicall Law, for the repression of mans mallice : let vs fee, what are the mans mallice: let vs fee, what are the penalties or punishments, where-with the Law of the sent he far the penalties he Law of the sent which the Law of the sent which the carnel that the ca (of it felfe) inflict any punishment vpon the true louers of vertue, who tread downe and triumph ouer all power of the flesh, and Lawes thereof: yet it fetteth vp certaine Scarre-Crowes, to The Scarrefrightfuch fimple Soules as it deceiueth, proposing vnto them farre greater difficulties, labour, and paine, then
Law. there is (indeed) in the practife and ex-ercise of vertue. Which difficultie, they hold for no other then continual affliction, and (as it were) a penalty or punishment, inflicted upon such as labour to be vertuous. By meanes whereof, they contemne the penalties of Politicall Lawes, effeeming them, not only more easie to bee anoyded, but also more tollcrable to bee borne, then the other. Ifay, more easie to be anoyded, for that, neither there is a penalty imthose that be ordained, alwaies exacted Law. vpon offenders . For, as I have noted before, they are many times escaped, cy-

fecret, concerning the humors of Prinposed for eucry offence, neither are Theescapes

the politicall law feeme he carnall

Pfalme 52, 1.

and irksome hen vertue.

for a worldly

ther by power, or by fauour, or by corruption of Officers, or by their negligence, or by their Princes pardo, wheras the paines that worldly men conceine to accompany vertue, sceme to them inenitable, except vertue it selfe be auoyded: whereto no man can arrive, burby the ftrait, narrow, and painefull way, which I have before described. And againe, the penalties of Politi-

Penalties of more tollera. ble to wicked men, then the penalties of

Chap.s.

nal mulces, confilt either in payment of Mony, or in Infamy, or in corporall or Capitall punishment. If in Monvethey feare it not much ; for they are content to buy their fatisfying there-with, and many we fee doe voluntarily begger themselnes, to obtaine their pleasures. If the penalties confift in Infamy; what 2 care they for it, who hold finne for no shame, but as an honour? And (as the Pfalmist faith) Gloriantur in malitia; They glory in wickedneffe. Et latantur (faith Salomon) cum male fecerint, & exultant rebus possimis, quorum via peruer a, querum greffus infames funt . Who reioyce when they have done amiffe, and exalt in the worst thinges. Whose waies are peruerfe, whofe steppes are infamous. If the

punishment be Corporall, or Capitall, they esteeme the practise of vertue more painefull. For, what affliction. Prison, restraint of liberty, torment or death, can feeme fo grieuous to a Man given ouer to lust and pleasure, as to af-flict himselfe by restraint of his owne will? To conguer and fubdue his owne vnbrideled affections? To chaftife his body, that it may be made obedient to the Spirit? To mortifie, and crucifie himselfer To dye to his Lust and Concupisence? Yea, and to bee (as it were) his owne Butcher and Hang-man? To execute ail this vpon himselfe, not for once or twice, or for a day or two, or for now and then : but daily, continually, and without intermission : for otherwife, true vertue can neither be attained nor conferued. Can any thing (1 59 fay) seeme more irkesome, or any punnishment more corporall or capitall to fenfual & fleshy men, destitute of grace?

Qui non percipiunt ea qua funt spiritus dei; Who have no feeling or apprehension of matters belonging to the spirit of God? Corporall torments they think (with

Epicurus) the greater they are, the foocall Lawes, doe feeme to them more

of mifery., But the labours and paines. which they imagine to be in continuall exercise of vertue: they take for acontinual and never dying toument, & for an cuerlasting death. So that very mad my are for difgusted with the onely code ceiptis apprehention thereof: tharthely tollerable then the other, because al pewill not take fo much as a raft of sentrey to anoidany panalny of Law subattino ucreas we fee daily in many Malefacture uerfion of wie that aromeorrigible. And again; divers ked men from that have already made fomie entrance; into the course and way of vertue, and thereby to wearied within a while, that they veterly despaire, ever to arrive an any perfection therein , fuch men (1 mean) as have no light or help of Gods grace . Infomuch, that one Sexius a Gentleman Romaine, of whom Plusarch Plutar in Lib. writesh, having given himfelfe to the de Tranquil. fludy of Philosophy, and the practife of morall vertue, was within a while fo difcouraged that his friendes had much a do to keepe him from drowning himfelfe. Amelius Probus teftifieth, that the Son of the famous Dion of Scilie, being restrained by his Father from the licentious life which hee had led (for fome long time) in his Fathers banishment's did desperatly cast himselfe from the top of the house, and brake his necke...

But pur the case, that Subjects might Nomeanes in politicallian, be made vertuous, by the feare of punnishment; what remedy is there for the vicious prince Prince, when he is of a bad and maligne Nature ? Truelie none, for he feareth no penaltie of the Law, being himselfe about the Law: and as for good councell, if any man dare giue it, hee dare contemne it. What good did the good councell and precepts, of the Divine Plato, and of famous Dion, to the two Tyrants of sicily, the Father & the Son called Dienssius? In requitall of their Dionistus Fagood enffructions, was not Plate folde ther and Son for a Slaue, and Dion bannished out of of Sicily. Sicilie ? VV hat benefit reaped the wicked and cruell Nero, by all the good difcipline he received from the wife Seneta? Did he exercise any lesse crucky on him, then vpon all others? And what

good effect wroght the good education, example, and enstructions, which the Empe-

757

ner they dispatch a Man out of paine, & Freurus his the leffe they be, the more tollerable corporall tor they are, and death they hold for an end iments.

The great a

ous in Bione,

Nero & Sence

Marcus Aureliss and his

The Princes life is a great example to the Common wealth.

Plin.in lib. 4.

No fufficient neans in Politicall Law, to make the Prince and wealth truely

Al the premiouer in due order for a

Emperour Marcus Aurelius (called the Philosopher) gaue to his Sonne Commodus? Succeeding him in the Empire, was not he far more detestable and hatefull for vice, then his Father was renouned & beloued for vertue ? If then there be no sufficient meanes, by lawes, education, counfell, or exhortation, to reforme the victous and corrupt Nature of a wicked Prince : who feeth not, that 10 (by confequence) there is no affured meanes, to make the Common-wealth vertuous? For though it beeneuer fo well ordered and disposed in the body: yet it may receive such corruption from the head, that it may perish thereby. For, as Plinie faith ; Euen as in Mens bodies, fo in Common-weales, the difeafe is most grieuous and dangerous which proceedeth from the head. And we commonlie 20 fee, that the maners of the people, are conforme to the manners of the Prince. Now then to conclude. What sufficient meanes there is in Political Law, to suppresse the Law of the Flesh, and to make the Prince and people truely vertuous ? Is it precepts or Prohibitions ? Nothing leffe. For, if they confift but in wordes; they are eafily contemned. And (as I have faid before) Prohibition 30 doth encrease the disease, that is to fay; the offence and fin, rather then remedie it. And as for permission of euill, it doth but bewray the weaknesse of the Politicall Law, and shew the force of carnall Law: which the other is faine to permit, because it cannot redresse it. What then? Is it punnishment or reward? Neither of both. For, as I have fignified, either the offences are fo fecret, that 40 they are not subject to punishment : or the Law is deluded, and the penaltie many waies anoyded. Or if not, yet in respect of the paines, that wicked men imagine to be in the exercise of vertue, they are litle feared. And as for reward, what reward (ordained by Law) can fo fatisfie a fensuall man, as pleasure? Which he holderh for his Soueraigne and chiefe good, and for the onely felicity of his life? In fo much, that I have heard fome men, most wickedly protest and sweare, that if it were not for the pleafures of the flesh; their lines would be loathsome and hatefull vnto them. Therefore Lieurgus (with great reason)

despaired, to make either the King, or

the Subjects in his Common-wealth, The infuffici vertuous by the force of Lawes. For ency of Political Lawfor which cause, he ordained (as Aristotle the reformafaith) that the Kinges of Lacedemonia should not be perpetuall, but gouerne for a time: least some euill King, if his gouernment were for rearme of life, might destroy the Common-wealth:

CHAP. VI.

Of Sleepe and Rest; And what manner of feating, or lying in our Beds, ought to be observed in our sleeping, as well for civility as for health.



Y good reason did Galen fay ; That Sleepe is the repofe Galen his de of the whole body, and principally of the animal faculties pally of the animall faculties, and without sleepe, a Man

could not (ubfist : therefore there are certaine rules to be observed in fleeping, as neceffary as in eating and drinking . For it is not enough, that a man fleepe feauen or eight houres in a night; rife early in the morning; thun fleepe after dinner, vpon an indigested stomack, &c. But he is to ynderstand withall, what comportement or behaulour is convenient for him in fleepe. Beafts and other animals, do hecein lend vs fome enstruction, for Beatsdogius they do not fall downe backward, when for fleep. they prepare to rest; but couch downe ypon one of their fides, and (almost ordinarily) on the right fide, and according to Nature, neuer faile therein. Neuertheleffe, albeit that men are endued. with reason, yet very hardly shall three men bee found, lying in on Bed, or in one company, that do take their rest after one and the same manner. For one his sleeping. will haue his head raifed high, another low. One lyeth to fleepe on the right fide, and others on the left very ordinarily. Some on their bellies, or on their backs. In regard whereof, many people (thorow want of due observation) doe fall into grieuous diseases, which proue

fled in their fleeping, which falleth out too ordinary. The man that defireth to preserue his

(oftentimes) incurable, or are found fli-

ged by Lytur.

tion of vice acknowledgus, Arift in Polit, Lib. 2. Cap. 7.

finition of Sleepe.

mans fleepir

health, should sleepe on his right side, during the time of his first sleepe to the end, that the meates may descend into the bottome of the stomack: because it is fleshy, and lesse full of membranes then the vpper part; and fo, by confequent, more hot and proper for concoction. Afterward, for his fecond fleepe, hauing continued fome foure houres, or therabout, on the right fide: he may to turne on the left, to the end, that the liuer may the better extend it felfe, and rest vpon the stomacke. In doing thus, digestion is made perfect; because the Liner is hotter then the belly, and embracing al, serueth as if it were a warmth offire. But if a man be constrained to keep his bed long, at one time & other, he must obserue turnings, one while on

the one fide, and then on the other.

To fleep vpon the belly availeth no-

thing, except in such as are of baddige-

ftion for fuch manner of lying heateth

the stomacke so well, that it facilitateth

and accelerates concoction :but then it

bringeth a great discommodity; to wit,

that it filleth the eyes full of defluxions,

and (confequently) troubleth the fight,

hindereth the excrements also, in their

ies, and other capitall diseases, beside the pussing up or swelling of the Lights, and the Midriffe or Diaphragma. Wher-

fore, of al healthful fituations for fleep,

there is none better (as hath beene faid)

then to rest on the sides : for beside all

other benefits enfuing thereby, the bo-

dy being turned one while on the right

fide, and then againe on the left, feeleth

Offleeping on the belly, what inconcaused there-

Chap. 6.

auoydance out of the belly. To fleepe vpon the backe and reines, doth manie times engender stones & fand in them, and being no way helpfull to digestion, caufeth the Rhume to rife, which coueteth most vp to the throat, and hastneth a man to the Falling-ficknes, Apoplex-

> pleasure, contentment, and sweetest The body then ought not to bee fo much extended or stretched out, being turned on either fide : but that the thighs and legs must be somewhat ben-

ded or retired, for fuch is the figure of a healthfull mans fleeping. The head fhould not be laid too high, nor to low: for being raised too high, it prepareth a man to the Cough, and infirmitie of the Lunges, and caufeth that he cannot

fleep foundlie. And being laid too low, it procureth broken and painefull fleepes, and engendereth offenfine dreames.

To sleepe with wide open eyes, indurates (all along) the Tunickles or couering skinnes of them, and so by confequent, begetteth a short or nere hand fighe, because that the visuall Spirit cannot penetrate crosse-wise. It may alfo happen, that fome thing falling strangely into them, may greatly harme and perish the fight. And in any tharpe or extraordinarie difeafe, to fleep with the eyes open, it is an affured figne of death: except the party haue been long invred thereto sor have had fome great fluxe of the belly; or taken some violent purgation; or else hath endured 20 long warchings.

To fleepe with the mouth open, is Offleeing very contrarie and incommodious to with the the health of a man, because hee draweth aboundantly to him (by the vocall Artery) all the ayre that it meeteth withall: which commonly (in the night time) is very impure and troubled. By meanes whereof, the Conduits where-by a man respireth, being ouer-moystened: either it maketh the voyce hoarfe, or dull and feeble. Whereas, if a man fleepe with his mouth closed; then the exteriour ayre (by little and little, and not in any excelline quantitie) entereth mouth close at both the possesses and the contract of at both the passages of the Noshhrils. and so goeth on to the Lights, where it moderateth the heate of the heart. Which is the cause, that they which fleepe with their Lippes fast shut ; doe feele themselues the lesse disturbed. For they that fleepe open throated, by reafon of thebreath, which entereth and issueth forth aboundantly: the tongue and roofe of the mouth becommeth very much dried, which makes them, both in the night time, and in the morning, to finde themselves much altered.

In like manner, when the breath is fome way kept and retained, concoction is made the more strongly & foundly : euen as meat is the better boyled in a coucred pot. There may happen many other inconveniences beside, for in fleeping open throated a Feather may fall, and passe into the body, which will cause a continual Cough, by reafon that neuer, or very hardly, it can

Officeping with open

The lips fast

Sleeping ope

A good Com

A deadly Phtificke.

ly Phtificke . A Serpent Stellio , Spider, or some such venomous Creature, may also get his passage, without all meanes of recouery, as I have knowne

After what manner to hold the arms

Of talking is

the night time, how hurtfull it is.

very healthfull. But one thing (kinde Reader) rake as a warning, that it is a very euill custome, to talke in the night time, and a notorious inciuility. For fuch as are vied to prattle at their wakings, doe very hardly fall to fasten on fleepe againe. And so consequently, such wakings doe cause Crudities in them : because their sleeps have not bin

Of fnoring of inorting in our fleepe.

A pretty Receipt against Inoring in

* Myrrbis, an Hearblike to Hemlocke. Some call it Kex or Kexes.

be anoyded, and fo grow to a deadtoo often.

As concerning the Armes, if they be held croffe-wife, like the figne of the Crosse, or else halfe courbed, and the hands resting vpon the little belly; it is fufficient, to boyle the meates received 20 into the stomacke. Another reason is, that it impeacheth and interrupteth the rest of others, who (perhaps) take little delight in talking at fuch vnfit houres : but when once they have made custome of it, they keepe it as an especiall habite.

Some, in their sleepe, are subject to fnore or fnort, especially fat and round bellied people. It is a thing very odi- 30 ous and offenfine, to lie by fuch a body, or in the Chamber where fuch a one resteth. A man were almost as good, to lodge in a Stye among the Swine, as neere or with fuch persons, especiallie, fuch as delight in living civilly and honeftly. Therefore I will fet downe a prettie receipt, which a Portugall Apothecarie (but yet a lew by his Religion) taught me against this vndecency, and 40 the receipt is thus. He that is subject to this infirmity, halfe an houre before he goeth to reft, let him eate a little Conserue of an Hearbe called Perfil d' Asne, Asse Perselie, or Wilde Cheruill. It is an Hearbe very fufficiently knowne, and the Conserue must be made of the root thereof. I have made good experience of it many times . Or else let him gargarize a pretty deale of good Vineger, made somewhat warme, a quarter of an houre before he lyeth downe. This last remedy was practifed by a Courtier (in the time of King Charles the ninth) with very happy fuccesse: for, if he had snored neuer so little (2s he was much subject thereto) hee had

lost the gracious fauours of a Gentlewoman, who admitted him to her owne Lodging, her Husband being ab-

Therefore I would gladlie perfwade The Authors Fathers and Mothers; yea, Schoole- friendly ad. maisters and others, who have the uertifement. charge of youth and young Children, to constraine and accustome them in their tender yeares, to honest, decent, and wholesome lodging in their Beds: For, beside the comlinesse and civility, it is no meane propagation of their health. And let me tell ye more, thorough such vndecent behauiour in bed; I haueknowne many vnhappy quarrels and debates, sometimes betwixt the Husband and Wife.

CHAP. VII.

Concerning the constancy, of some Lacedemonian, Romaine, and French women At the decease of their Children hurts, and nur Sing of them.



Hat Commonwealth may Of good and tearm it felfe happy, wher the Weomen are not on-ly chaft: but likewife endued with manly Spirits,

full of constancy and magnanimity, for of fuch Women (commonly) are Heroycall Children bred and borne. Which Argument gineth me leave, to speake of some Weomen among the Lacedemonians; then the Romaines, and laftly the French :but first we will begin with the most generous Lacedemoni-

Lacedemon, Sparta, and Laconia, were The feuerall allbut one, to wit, a people and Country (cituated in Pelopome/w, a Region of Greece, where Lycurgus had not onely beene King, but also was their Law-Maker. Heleft them many good lawes and Morall precepts, which while both the Men and Weomen knew how to keepe: they continued Lords of themfelues, living in all enfranchisement

wandered and fwerued; from those good manners which the faid Lycurgus had taught them: they became forthwith Seruants and Slaues vnto others. During such time, as they were obser-uers of his Morall precepts; it happe-ned, that the Athenians made Warre, inhope to fubdue them: but as they were farre inferior to them in their forces, fo were they as ftoutly and valiantly refifted. Among the women of Sparta, there was one, that had but one only Sonne,

who was grieuously wounded in the

frequent among them. Whereas this

worthy Mother, did breath her Spirit

into his Heart, to teach him, how hee

should suffer harmes manfully, and not

Another Lacedemonian VVoman like-

wife, having tidings brought her, that

one of her Sonnes was flaine in the bat-

taile, faid : Why, he was one of my Sons too:

reioyling in the generolitie of her Son,

and neuer mourning for his death.

Contrariwile, another woman, hearing

that her Sonne fled away cowardly;

quoth fhe, He never was any Son of mine.

Intimating thereby, that fuch Sons de-

ferued no acknowledgement, who de-

and libertie. But so soone as they

foote, and greatly complained, of the vrkefome paines which thereby he endured : but his Mother faide vnto him. Good & con-My Sonne, if thou didst fet vertue before ragious counthine eyes; not onely would this anguish bee 20 forgotten: but (in revenge thereof) thou would st flow thy felfe valsant. But the Mothers of our Countries, doe cuftomarily augment the grienances of their Children, by teares and cockerings, too

Chap.6.

What benefit

enfued by keeping the Lawes of Ly-

curgus.

Of a mother

and her onely

Foolith Mothers of the fe

Two honor ble minded

Another Mother worthy of immortall

generated from the vertue of their Ancestours. I cannot forget another Laconian Woman, who had five Sonnes, and all of them loft their lines, fighting valiantly for the freedome of their Countrey. She, going into the Subburbs of the Citty, to know the iffue of the battaile, meeting with a Vant-currer, demanded how all matters went? And he told hir the fatall hap of her fine Sonnes. Wicked Slave (quoth (he) this is no answere to my demaund. I pray thee to tell mee, in what e-State stands the affaires of the Commonwealth? Hec told her, that the victorie went with the Lacedemonians . Why now

(quoth the) thou art an honest man, and beare my Childrens death paciently. Was not this a Woman full of honour, and endued with an incomparable Spirit; to prefer the welfare of the Commonwealth, before so many lines of her dearefteemed Sons?

Cleere alleadgeth another, who was circro in lib. de a noble Romaine Lady, no leffe to be e- Urat. 3. steemed then the Laconian women. She beholding her Some, named Spurius Caluidise, that could go no other wife, but euen as Beaftes doe, on all foure, through the greatest wounds he had receiued in the warres, fighting for his Countries liberty, and perceiuing him to bee ashamed, because one had icorned him for going in that manner; the faid vnto him. Thou fouldst be the more A moft valiiocond, and proud of thy valour, that made Mother. thee go in this crooked manner ; then grieue at that poore fpirit, that dare not fbew his face where thou hast beene.

demon nor Rome, contained all the ge-

nerous Wcomen: for in our Natine Country of France, there have bin very many, and yet are at this present, of whom I will(for breuities fake) alledge to complaine, like a cowardly woman. 30 buttwo. The first shallbee Madame Margaret de Sauoje, Wife to the deceafed Anne de Montmorency, Constable of France, who had five Children, all worthily educated, and euermore most louingly affected vnto the Crowne of France, as beeing very remarkeable for their fidelitie, as also well prouided of honourable estates. When newes was brought her, that one of her Sons was dead, named Mombrun, whom the most dearely affected about all the rest. and was flaine in the battaile at Dreux, The Battaile fought against the French Protestants, at Dreux, in in the yeare 1562. and also that her Husband (being wounded) was there furprized: She faid. Bleffed be God, as well for the bad as the good, and gaue him

> his King, Oc. Madame de Saint Blancar, Wife to the late magnanimious Marefehall de Biron, Madame de was visited by a Lady of great Birth, bldcar, wite to who brought with her very goodlie Biron. workes of Silke, which thee and her Daughters had wrought in Samplers. SII3

was staine : but that her Husband remained

wounded, and a Prifoner, for the fertice of

Butlet me tell ye, that neither Lace- Generous we

The braue rehartie thankes, not onely because her Sorine folucion of

Madame de

She brought with her also one of her Children; that daunged delicately, and played sweetly on the Gitterne, whom the thewed to the faid Lady Marthall, that the and her Children, thould learn to spend their time in the like delightfull exercises. Madame Marshall made her answer; That shee could not denife any better works exercifes, wherein to enstruct ber Sons and Daughters ; then in the fear of 10 God, and good maners; whereby their harts would become magnanimious, to do feruice for their King according as their Father had formerly done. And indeed, all the Male children issuing of her, were very braue minded and valiant men. As for her Daughters ouer and befide their happinesse, to marrie with wife and worthy Knights: fo were they well eductated in houshold discipline, by their excel- 2 lent breeding, and famous houses of generous nourishing. As Madame the Countesse de Chasteauneuf, whose Husband is (at this present) Lieutenant to the King, in higher and lower Lymofine. Madame de Force, & others that I know.

Let then great Ladies of blood, and others of meaner birth, bee advertised by this discourse, that if it happen, that their Husbands and Children dye, or become maimed in their Kings feruice, and for the good of the Commonwealth: they would not bee so weake hearted, as to lament, grieue, or beate their heads against walles, because such behaujour is not scene, but in Women of ignoble and flender worth. But fixing rather before their eyes, the generous Spirits of these Laconian, Romaine, and French Ladies, formerly exemplified; to account themselves happy, when focuer the like difasters shall happen to them. Confidering withall, that they whom they esteeme to be dead, do live, and they shall fee them again at the day of refurrection, accompanied with much glory and honor.

To lob, all his goods and wealth were redoubled, onely his Children excepted, for he begat but fuch a number, and 50 in the like number he had them againe. Yet heerein the promise of God was as well accomplished, as in his other goods: for he knew that they were not dead, but should be raised againe, and re-knowne of their Father and Mother.

It may be prefumed, that fuch women

as are fo full of forrow and vexation:do not beleeue any refurrection. Otherwife they would embrace aduite and enstruction, to teach their Sons & daughters al fuch exercifes, as might redound to the benefit of the Common-wealth. As their Sons to hatte learning, to manage Armes and Horses, with all vertues becomming man-hood. Their Daughter to feare God, and learne womens huswinery : not idle Samplery, or Silken follies, which (elfe-where) is the exercife of Eunuches & Slaves. I would with them to hold as firme a purpofe, as did Madame Katherine du Salaignat, Wife to the late Messiere Geffrey de Saillet, a braue and hardy Knight in his life laignat. time . She fending her Sonnes (in their very young yeares) to Paris for enftruction, was adulfed by fome familiar Friend, to keepe them (as yet) at home, because they were but young and tender. She made answer. That her Children resembled Vessels wholly new, wherein if good liquor were put at the first, they would Sauour thereof folong as Nature lasted. In like manner, if Children embrace good doctrine in their young age, they will rellish alwaies after thereof, even to old age. Which they cannot doe, being kept under the Mothers Wing, as wee tearme it, where neither are like Maisters, or commodious meanes, as is in fuch places, wher all vertues are taught, to fuch as will feeke for them. For this good Lady added, That she desired rather to be without Children, then that they shold be not vertuous. And indeed, fuch did her Sons proue to be, and good Scruitours to their King, notwithstanding all the partialities in France.

and nice Mo

Example of

therine de Sa.

CHAP. VIII.

Against Obtrectation, or Detraction. And why it is more unseemly for men to speak euill of Women, then Women of Men.



Ll Diuines and Philosophers, as well Auncient as
one of the
photography of the philosof Moderne, have held, and branches of Enuy. doe maintaine, that detraction is one of the braunches of Enuy,

which delighteth and nourisheth it felfe by calumny and lying : whereby people of honest conversation, do continually receine most greenous wounds; by giving ouer light beleefe, to fuch as have a felicity in lying. And therefore, Diogenes the Cinickbeing demaunded, what bite of any Beaft was most hurtfull and dangerous, answered: Amongst furious and wilde Bealts, none like the Detractor, and among tame or gentle, only the Souther and Flatterer. Vpon the same words, Themi-Stocles the Thebane, Said ; There is no greater paine or miferie in the worlde, then to know and behold the honor of an honest and good man, to be in the mercy of a venomous tongue, there to be outraged by detracting speeches.

Full wel we know, that vertuous fame

and good renowne, is more precious

then any treasure whatsoeuer. No lesse

shame and wrong is done to a man, in

taking away his honest name and good

efteeme, then as if hee were robbed and

despoiled of all his substance. But aboue

Good fame is the greatest riches in the

answere,con

cerning De-

Flatterers.

Chap.8.

Anexcellent

all other, Detraction and calumny yeeldeth most pernitious effects, when Princes do willingly lend care to deprauers; by whom, even themselves doe become at length corrupted. For the enuious detractor, dealeth like a bad Painter, who when he hath made a mishapen Cocke, commandeth his Boy, to drive all Naturall Cockes farre enough off from his foule handy-worke. So hee, from fuch as he would command or gouerne, hee striues to keep off al honest minded men, for hee cannot worke his intent openlie, because hee stands in feare of their Vertue whom he hateth in his heart. Hee 40 maketh a thew of honouring, admiring, and affectuous embracing: but vnderhand, and behinde his backe, hee cafteth forth and foweth all seditions slaunders. But if his claudestine, and secret-wounding reports of the absent, do not quickly beget the yffue of his intent : hee hath yet alwayes readye in his memory, that which in elder times was observed by This Medius of whom we are to fpeak

was as the Maister , or chiefe of all the troope of flatterers, that honered about Of Medius, Flatterers athe mightie A exander, cuermore bandybout King A ing against well disposed people in his Court. Hee gaue instruction, that no one should bee so bolde, as to backebite

openly, or vie the power of calumnie too apparantly, But rather in fuch fort (quoth he) that albeit the partie bitten doe recouer his harme syet that the gripes or firatches may remaine incureable. Even fo, by fuch scarres and gripes of lies and falle accusations, or to call them better (according to Plutarch) by such Cankers and Gaugreues many great persons have suffered themselves to be corrupted and retained still in their memory, detestable yntruth, delinered of vertuous men, to their innocent ouerthrowe, and their owne great diffiguor.

All the enmities and quarrelles, as wel among great as meaner perfons, whence the ground of haue enfued fo manie flaughters, as day- quarrels and ly are behelde with great greefe neuer murders. had any other ground or Originall, but onely detracting the honour or repute of absent people Now, albeit this Vice in generall, is most infamous, and about all other, vnfightly and il-feeming in perfons of honor eyet, of both the fexes, I Detraction is hold it to be more incivil and difgraceful more vabeto a man, then to a woman. Howbeit, I men then wo know, that there are manie people; that men, and the are of contrarie opinion vnto my prefent reasons why. purpose of speech. My first reason is, The first reathat among all the Nations of the world, for, there is a natural Law, observing it selfe; whereby a diffolute life is not held as any Vice, defect, or infamic in men : but in women it is an opprobrie, & fo extreame a shame, that she of whom an euil report hath once passed (be it true or false in the imposition) she standeth for ever blamed or branded. Therefore, a wel aduifed man, wil neuer touch the honor of women.

There is likewise another reason, to wit; That Weomen beeing imperfect The fecond creatures, and of little or no dignitic at reason. al, in respect of men, it were verie requifite, that (feeing of themselves they are not capeable, to performe any vertuous action) fome bridle or restriction were imposed on them, by shame and feare of infamy, that any good qualitie (though it were perforce) might bee planted in Continencie them. And it feemeth, that continency thoght most concentent in was thought more necessarie for them, women then any other, for the better certifude of their Children. Now, because this hath beene enforced, even by all ingenuous fubtilties, Arts, and possible meanes or wayes, to make Ladies become conti-

River of a vermons & mans ly courage.

The greatest

to any Chri-

A generous

Exhortation

of the Autho

to Ladies of

greatest birth and others.

The bountifull mercy of

In the case of Death, how Parents ought to com-

God to lob.

referued.

tinent; yea, it hath appealed, and (as it were) confented thereto by themselues, that in all other things they are of no validity, but continually they doe the contrary to all that they ought to do. Wher-fore, feeing it is lawfull for them, to commit all other errours without blame, let them neuer bee taxed with those imper-Women alov fections that they have done, they being ed to commit all errours, all permitted to them, which (in this refrect) mult not be judged inconvenient, or careleffely regarded by them ; proui-

ded, that their Chastitie be presented.

And yet for all this, I doe not inferre that it is lawfull for weomen to depraue or milpeake by any means: for as I have dies, and also. faide, it is one of the very greatest imperther women. fections, and draweth vnto it more contempt and difgrace, then any other Vice An aft of pie ty to defend womens ho-

A History alledged by Vaientinus Ba vuchius of Tolning the false a Dutchelle

nor.

whatfocuer. But I would aduife honourable and worthy women, if at anie time it happen, that a Woman haue spoken reproachfully of them, or fuch as do appertaine vnto them, to tollerate & make no account thereof, for the reasons forementioned. But on the contrarie, it is a worke of picty, to offend their quarrel, if any do presume to defend their honor. And formuch the rather, because it was neuerknowne, that eneric any Knight, who undertooke the Combat, to support the honor of a woman, was at anie time vanquished. Weehaue some proofe thereof, by a Hiltory, which Valentinus Barruchius, a Natine of Tolledo in Spaine, hath fette downe a in great Latine Tome, most exactly written, and in verice elegant phrase, the briefe whereof, is thus: A Daughter to the King of England, being maried to a Duke of Sauoy, & Prince of Piedmont; by not yeilding to the immodest requests

of the Count of Pancalser (whome the

Duke her husband, had left Regent and

Lieutenant of al his Lands in his absence

while he was bufied in the wars of France,

because hee was there Constable) falsely

imposed on her the crime of Adulterie,

which he faide she had committed with

against all such, as woulde gainesay the

truth of his deposition, he presented him-

felfe in the Lifts.

his Nephew. And being to combate 10

In the end, as a matter proceeding from Dinine inspiration, a Knight of the Noble house of Mendoza, who although he was farre inferiour in bodily frength, not only in regard of a former long fickneffe, but also by so long a way of trauel, which had so tired himselfe and his horfes: yethe accepted the canfe and Combate, to maintaine the honor of that verthous Princeffe. He foiled him in fight, and made him confesse his damnable imposture. After which, partly by some grieuous wounds received, but more by meere spight and hatefull malice, he died within few daies. And yet the faid Count was one of the most valiant and strongest Knights (of his time) in al Lombardy.

In Fraunce, about the space of threefcore yeares fince, the combat was granted by King Frances, first of that name, to two French Knights, the one named La Chastagneraye, and the other larnac. It was a great quarrell to bee discided, because the Lord de la Chastaignerave , had offended the lionor of a Ladie, that appertained in blood to the Lord de Iarnac. These two Knightes, fighting in the sin-gle Duello, and according to the Kinges und in proofe judgement, the whole Court, and all the 30 spectators, it appeared that La Chastaigneraye, would have the vpper frande, as having made good proofe of his person, in divers battailes, and fingle combates: yet notwithflanding, Jarnas flew La Chastagnerave, and, as manie people were perswaded in Conscience; by the inft judgement of God, for having defamed fo worthy a Ladie. If it might be permitred, I could alledge infinite other Histories, tending to this purpole: but feare of offending, is my onely hinderance. And therefore, I will conclude with the Pro-

uerbe, more then true: That neuer were Women depraued, but by a Knaue or a Co-

CHAP.

The Noble Spain, defenof the wrong-ed Princeffe.

> A Combate tried between

A Towne in

the west part

of Peloponne-is, neere the

where the O-

An auntient

The measure of Hercules body. Chap.9.

CHAP, IX.

How Pythagoras founde out (verie ingenioully) the iust measure and proportion of the bodie of great Hercules.

T is verie memorable,& therefore not to bee let paffe in filence, the ingenious inuentio found out in a fubtle and curious maner, concerning 10

the true shape and measure of Hercules his body. When it was knowne, that 20 the place where the Olympian Games were folemnized (from fine years to fine yeares) in Achaya, neere * Elis, & before the Temple of Iupiter Olympus, had been measured by Herenles, who hadde there made a Stadium, containing fix hundred and five and twentie foote, by the meafure of his owne foote. Vnderstanding also, that the other Stadiums, which his fucceffors afterward ordained throughout all Greece, did hold the like length of fixe hundred and fine and twentie foote, it appeared yet neuerthelesse, that they were much shorter, then that of Hereules. For, Pythagoras knew eafily by this proportion, how much the foote of Hercules contained in greatnesse, from the ordinarie feete of other men. And hauing thus vnderstoode, the size or meafure of his foote, hee comprehended thereby: that the whole bodie of Hercules, must needs be (according to that proportion) much greater then the bodies

of all other men, in regard that his Stadium surpassed al the rest.

CHAP. X.

How the Iewes did continually, and from time to time, give Law and Religion to fuch as were their Conquerours and Commanders.

scattered vnto the soure Corners of the

world, should administer Law and Reli-

gion to their vanquishers. For, as con-

cerning their subjectio, they are a people

that have beene troden vnder foote by

Law and Faith, hath beene found some

femblable constancie: but that the sub-

dued, transported, vilified, made slaues,

led in triumph thorowe Empires; that

fuch men, I fay, should not only subdue

the hearts of their Triumphers to God,

Eneca fel into great admy-Tration, fo did diuters Sometia his Rooke of Su-thers, how it shold come to passe, that the vanqui she di Lewes, dispersed and

the Egyptians, Allyrians, Persians, Gracians, Romaines, Turkes, &c. and how many Maisters socuer they hadde, yet they wermore sub neuer changed or altered their Law. Amongst other people, in matter of their times.

but (in a manner of speaking) traine their Gods also themselves, in triumph after them, is verie admirable. That the Conquerour could not give Law to the conquered, but that the vanquished hath done it to the victor the fubicct vnto the in common Prince; the Captine to the Maister; and observation the condemned vnto the Judge; Who quifted to be would beleeve this, I pray ye, except he victor.

But if Seneca could hear me paaceably. I woulde deliuer him from this aftonishment and admiration, fo strangely conceited, as thus. Those Gods which the Iewes had caused to be left to the people (commonly called inviolable and imortall) confifted of dumbe and infentible Statues, difguifed like men, Beaftes, and Fishes; and some of them, resembled hiddeous Monsters. So that infamous Dæmons, possessed themselves of these Statues and Symulacres, and in them requi-

faw it? And having feene it, how can he

fay otherwise, but that GOD onelie did

without anic

The Tranf. migration of the lews, was

for the honor

and glorie of

Danie! disco-

uereth the I

King of Persia

Anancient

taining 36.

quarrers.

red worse matters of men, then did the most detestable Tyrants that euer were. As, that a man thould geld himfelf, lame himfelfe, kill himfelfe, yea, and that men fnould Sacrifice Women, Virgins, and Children to them. But when the people heard speech of

one only true God, the Creator of heauen and earth; and that he would be ferued in heart and spirit: these wordes, although they came forth of a poor flaues mouth, made Captines of the men them felues that heard them, and fubdued their Gods . What then shall we say of the Iewes transmigrations, and flitting from place to place: but that they were as fo many Colonies and Preachers, to proclaime the true GOD, and euen as so many armics, to extirpate Idolles?

That it could be no otherwise, Daniell and his affociats, being as the rest) transported into Allyria, he shewed vnto the King, that the Idoll Bell (which hee caufed to be worthipped, and had daily deliuered him fuch quantities of bread made of the finest Flower, a great number of Sheepe and fatted Cattle, and fix * Amphores of Wine) was no true God, thogh measure,conhe himselfe worshipped him, and went enery day to adore him, as beliening that 30 he denoured all that meate and wine. He made it apparant to him, that it was but a meere manifest deceite, performed by his Priests & Sacrificers, who with their Wines and Children, came in the night time, and cate vp al the Viands fet before the Idoll, for which they were descrued-

After he had thus shewne to the Ass.

nied to be a God. Daniel having obtayned

leaue to kill the Draggon, without the

help either of fword or staffe, with pitch,

fat, and haire (which he boyled altoge-

ther) made rounde balles thereof, and

threw them into the Draggons throate.

which made him burft in funder. And

then faid Daniel, Behold what ye have wor-

(hipped. But for these thinges, the people

threw Daniell into a denne of hungry Li-

ons, of which Beafts hee was not denou-

ly punished. The King fhewed Daniel rian King, the vanitie of the Idoll Bel, the 40 the great dra-King tooke him, and shewd him a mighty great Dragon, which the Babylonians, and himfelfe, as well as the reft, worthipped befide the faide Idoll Bell. The King faide to Daniel, Thou wilt not fay that this is of Braffe, like the other this cannot be de-

Dmiel killed the great dra-

Daniel caff into the den of red, although he had nothing given him to eate, in the space of seauen dayes before. At the end of which time, the King finding Daniel yet living amongest the Lyons caused him to be taken forth, Daviel deline. and forfaking all Idolatrie, worshipped red, and the the true GOD, the God of the Iewes. K. conuerted. Were not these worthy slaues, that con-

uerted this great King, and thus trium-Who gaue intelligence to Cyrus, K. of Perfin, concerning the true God, the God of the Ifraelites and Iewes, and to Cym, King of cause him send home the captived Iewish Persia, belee

people, giving them meanes to repayre uedin God the Temple, ruined by the Affyrians, com manding them also, to pray to God for his prosperity; but euen the same Slaues of the Iewes? May we not likewife fay as much, of Alexander the Great? He was broght to worship the true God, throw- Quintu cantiing and prostrating himself before Iddus of Great determine the High-priest, who came before him lexander. with all the people of Ierusalem, having their heads and feete bare, to implore his mercie, and not to bee put to death by him, because they gave him no aide with men and victualles, when hee befiedged Tire. Notwithstanding, these conquered and halfe-dead lewes, by their humble maner of behauiour, but Gods grace more especially woorking, caused that great and inuincible Monarch, to fall on fpiredby God his Knees before their chiefe Prieft; and to his humilinot onely fo, but to embrace, them with y. amitie, and graunt them manie gratious priviledges. And to their Neighbors the Samaritans, who observed not the same Religion, he gaue inhibition and countermand, of enjoying the fame immunities. And himfelfe would confesse, that

cians Law was of no worth. Did they not impose the selftame Law probinic got the possession on the Egyptians, who likewise led them of Egyptians into Captinity? Wee may read in the poyled India Greeke Histories, that after the death of Alexander, many of his Kindred, & fome of his aduanced fauourites, possessed themselues (as best they could) on divers portions of his Monarchy. And among the rest, reolomy seazed on Egypt, and on many other adjacent Provinces. And purpofing to do as muchon Iudea, he was impeached by the Iewish people, who would acknowledge no other superiour, but their High-priest and Sacrificer,

the Iewish Law was good, but the Gra-

vileft flaueries. All which notwithftanding, poore foules, they ceafed not to cry and call to the Egyptians, that their Religion was falle, and that they had manie 10 monstrous Gods: As Onions, a Cow, a

The captine lewes did flew the error of the E

Chap.10.

The Iews led

Captines in-

o Egypt.

The Bible translated out of Hebrue, in-

The vanguishedgaue law to the Victor.

The Syrians

Whereupon, Ptolomy entred into Pale-Stine, made there great denastation and spoile, beating down divers strong forts, and led away many thousands of them, as captines into Egypt, where they were ill entreated, and employed in the basest & Crocodile, and others.

In the end, their declarations were fo manifest, and their cries so violent on their idolatries, that the verie wisest men of the Countrey, with their King Philadelphus (one of the successors to the former King, who led the poore Iews awaie as Captines) lent eare vnto them, and found all true, which the miferable and 20 distressed I ewes had preached to them. In regard whereof, the King wold needs make more ample enquiry, concerning their Law and Religion. He caused al the Books of the Old Testament to be tranflated out of Hebrewe into the Greeke tongue, by feauenty Interpreters of the Iewes (most learned in the said tongues) feperately, fo that they could not confer one with another, to know whether they | 30 agreed in their traduction of the Booke of the Old Testament, or no. When he had found a meruailous concordance in the feuerall translations, and had read, and read againe the faide Booke; hee acknowledged, that his Captines the Iewes had saide nothing but the truth; and that there was but one God, the GOD of the Ifraelites, and the Iewes. Wherefore, he afterward embraced the feare of God 40 in his heart, reformed his life, and fet at liberty all the Captine Iewes, the rough-out his Land. Thus you may fee, how the vanquished gaue Law and Religion to the victor.

When that the Egyptians had fuffered the Iewes to live in peace, the Syrians within a while after, conceived harred against the Iewes, and perceiving Civill diffentions to be among them, they also warred on them. Antiochus their King (by the meanes of Traitors) was brought into Ierufalem, where hee placed Idols in the Temple, ranaged all Indea, and ledde away a great number of Captines, according as Zonarus declareth. Yet the poore captined lewes thewed vnto the Syrians, that they had done verie euill, in polluting the Temple of the true GOD, for The Syrians which they should be seuerely punished. instructed by As afterwardes it came to paffe, for the the lewes. faide King Antioches was conquered by the Romaines, and paide tribute to them. Theil could the Syrians and their King, remember the predictions of their poore captines, whom they did gladly fet at libertie, and entreated, that they woulde pray to God for them, being afterwards in the Romains fafegard.

It were a matter impossible for me, to The captivity fet downe all the Kingdomes ; where the of the lewes I ewes haue beene kept Captines; & perfecured; and verneuertheleffe, still acknowledged, that they worthipped the only true God, and brought due's kings and people to differne their Lawe. And fome verie speculative Divines, have bin perfinaded, that thefe Captinities of the lewes had not beene permitted by God, but onely to the end, that they shoulde beare tellimonie in all the quarters of the earth: that the Histories of the Olde-Testament were true, and that the God of the lewes, was the only true God. Therfore, it was no fuch matter of wonder, as Seneta made it, that cuermore the Iewes gaue Law to the Conquerours, and fuch The Lawe of as kept them in captinitie. For the law of the Gentiles. the Gentiles, was nothing elfe but vanitie and lies: but that of the lewes, was grounded on the knowledge of the true God.

The cause of the Transmi grations of

CHAP, XI.

Of Sorrow or Mourning for the dead. How it hath beene observed and yet is to this day, in manie Prouinces and Countries of the world.



O mourne and forrowe for Parents, Kindred, & Friends deceased, is not any matter of Nouelty, but most anci- ty of mour

uen score and ten yeares after the floode, and threefcore yeares after the death of Weah, and in the year of the world, two thousand fixtie, according to the calcu-

ent. For it is found, that fea- ning for the

lous vnhealthfull for Straungers; and

therefore (very often) it causeth their

death. The Vice-Rev of the place know-

eth well enough how to appropriate

to himfelfe (hy way of Escherage) what

goods foeuer doe belong to ftrangers,

being no Natiues of the Councry. And

therfore when any one there dyeth, the

wife of the dead man doth weare mour-

ning the space of foure yeares, and ne-

uer marrieth againe during that time.

But all that long and irkfom limitation,

the hath certaine fequestred houres dai-

ly, to kneel in her Chamber, accompa-

nied with some of her necrest kinred &

friends; to make moanes, lamentations

and funerall complaints, for the loffe of

her deceased Husband . As concerning

the Men of this Country, and to of Tur-

ky; I cannot give ye any affurance, of

their mourning for the death of their

Wines: because their King despenseth

with them, for the marrying of manie

wines. But the women of this Pronince

of Cormos, are much to be commended

for their chaftity, beyond many ofthem

remaining among vs, who rarely will

tarry a yeares space of mourning.

CHAP. XII.

of divers Paganes, that tooke the matter

or contemne their Religion.

very offensive y, and a great dishonour to

them felues ; that any one should mesprife,

14124 Mourning vfed amongeft the christians

Mourning of the Larine Christians.

The mourn ing of the

Terence and

The Mour-Lapparians.

Postel.in lib. 2 De Repub. F.

The mour ning of the lation of Carion, and of other Chroniclers, that Abraham mourned and forrowed for his wife Sara, the space of thirtie dayes. I thinke, that the lewes afterward continued(and yet do to this day) the cuftome of mourning, for no more then 30 dayes. But Christians, belonging to the Church of God, vsed mourning a whole yeare, to wit; cloathed in blacke for the most part : but Women, were cloathed partly in white, and partly in blacke; efpecially in some Countreyes, which was done according to the divertity of Nations. But the ancient Romaines, before they were Christians, mourned 9. moneths onely. Heere we are to know, that if a Christian man or woman, in those parts, wearing mourning, came to agree againe in a fecond marriage, during the yeare appointed for mourning, the Matrimony was stayed; but thence-forward, hee nor thee were bound to weare any more mourning.

The people of the Greeke Church, mourned a whole yeare, like to them of the Latine and Romaine, and neuer made any motion of a fecond marriage, during the limited yeares space: but did much more, for euerie day of that yeare, at a certaine appointed houre, all the people of the house, yiel lamentations, and yery greeuous cries, for the party deceafed. But at the renewing of the year, they left off their mourning habits, and Funerall forrowings . In the times of Terence and Plantus, Commicall Poets, the like was

practifed. They that inhabit the great Isle of Iapparia, and (wel-neere) thorow al the Prouinces, which are called Malabria, after that the dead mans bodie is publickelie throwne into a fire, and one of his living wives therewith, the nearest in Kindred to the deceafed party weareth a garment of Violet colour, and neuer putteth it off for a whole yeares space, eating also but one meale a day during that yeare.

They that are of the Mahomeran Religion dwelling in the leffer Afia, Europe, and Affrica, do mourne no longer for any man or woman deceased, but onelie eight dayes; & that it is the limited time for mourning. Their Garments are of coorfe wollen cloath, gray of colour(called among them, Chenine or Felte) and whereof couerings are made for horses . But fuch as will not weare them of this fashion, do carry a white Lippen Cloath, hanging down from the Turbant fo low as the Girdle, and fo go on with Teares and cries to the graue.

If the deceased Turk be a man of qualitie, and had Dogges and Horses, before he bee brought foorth of his dwelling to buriall, they rub their nofes with some fharpe graine or hearbe, to vrge teares out of their eyes, that they may appeare to mourne for their deceafed Maister, & they are made to follow the bodye to the Graue, which commonly is without the Cittie, and fo they continue on the mourning for eight dayes. Al which notwithstanding once every day(during this short time of forrow, at a certaine limited hour in the day time, all the Kindred and friends do meet at the graue, to pray to God for the dead mans foule. The eight dayes being ouer-passed, all mour-ning is laide aside, and then they make a Feaft: which beeing likewife ended, the furniuer may then feeke after a feconde match.

Some do Write, that the Parents or Kindred of the dead, during the space of a whole yeare, do giue order to certaine men, called Saintons, to read enery daie in the Alcher an ouer the Graue, for the faluation of the deceafed parties foule. In like maner, that some women very much denoted to the Mahometan Religion, do leave divers Legacies, to fuch as vie the wars during the space of a year aftertheir husbands death to bring them home the heades of Christians, to offer vpon their graues. And commonly, they allow a* Sultain of Gold, to bee given for everie head; but he must produce good witnes and testimony, and it must bee foundly verified that it is a Christians head Most viualy they do but bring the skin or form of the face, but fildome the whole head. And this is the mourning of the Turkes. It was my chance to find another mourning, of much longer continuance, then those formerly recited; which is vsed in a great Province, named Cormos, fubiect to the Perfran, and professing the Mahometan Religion. This Province lyeth in so hot a country, that the inhabitants are wholy black Neuertheleffe, the Lande is rich, abounding in Horses, gold, Silver, and Precious stones, of inestimable value

for many rare and beautifull embellish-

ings. Notwithstanding the aire is meruai

The women of Cormos doc mourne for their husbad Beafts made

The Turkes

apt to mourn for the dead.

vie praier for the dead, and Feafting.

* A Turkish Coin of gold

Aepyibės, Son to Hippotes,



Aufanias reporteth, that neere the Citty of * Mantines in Arcadia, there was a Temple confecrated to

Neptune, the enteraunce whereof was interdicted to men : and yet notwithstanding, it had no other guard or defence, but certaine little woollen cords, placed before the Gate, which caused such dreadfull fears, as the 50 place thereby was accounted very renerent. It chanced, that Æpythes, Son to Hippotes, King of Arcadia, a man flenderly affected to Religion, without any reuerence or respect, did cut the saide cords, and as he would have entred into the Temple: the Waters of the Sea

guthed foorth aboundantly voon him and wholy blinded him fo that having loft his eyes in this manner, he prefent ly died. The auncient fame and report was, that the Waters were noted and observed to rest in that Temple : And it was reputed to bee the greater Miracle, because the Sea was three miles, or thereabout, distant from that place.

In the Citty of Cabiria in Beetia, with-in a mile of Thebes, there stood a Temple dedicated to Geres, and entrance Beetiadedicathereinto was granted to none; but only the Cabirians. It so fell out, that Mardonius, one of the Captaines to Xernel entring thereinto with his Souldiours; to rob and bereaue it of the Treasures: both he & all the rest of his Army were (in an instant) surprized with such a sudden fury, that calting themselves down headlong into very deep ditches, and from the tops of Rocks and Mountains, they all dyed most miscrably. The like Another accihappened to the Souldiers of great A lexander, who having taken Thebes by Temple. power, they would likewife enter into the faid temple; but being finitten with lightning from heaven, they endedtheir lines cruelly, which proqued a mighie terror to the Nation of that age . Phiegyas, King of the Orchomenians, or (according to Virgil) of the * Lapithes , ha- dwelling in a uing done infinite dammages in Greece, part of Theffafurprizing many Townes and Citties: became (in the end) fo ouer-weening & foolish bold, that he facked the Temple of Apollo in Delphos, and flew Philamon, Philamon a who brought a power of people to ref- cunning Harcue the Temple. But it came to paffe, per, Sonne to that within no long while after, all the Countrey of the Phlegyans was vtterlie ruinated, by a violent earthquake, and flaming Arrowes that from Heauen, which killed most of the people, & they few that remained, died of the plague. Vpon which facriledge, and contempt of the Gods, Virgil faith, that their king Phlegyas is gricuoufly punished in Helk

Phieg yas miferimus omnes Admonet, & magn-sellatur voce per umbras, Difeite iufitiam monti, et non temnere Divos.

Which Verses were thus translated by Masures:

Placyds in that place, Forewarneth all, of his great mifery, And as fad witnesse of such wreighed cale In those dim shades he cryss out would you Learshe'to do Instice And by hy contempt Of the high Gods, dolynudic sata prevent and Tet

Stee " . . .

Virg in Lib. 6

aius Caffius, third Maister of the Horie.

Betweene the two Riuers, Sybaris

* The place where Apollo made answer.

S 42 14

The Historie of a flaue bea ten by his Lord and

That which could not be gained in reerence of the Gods, was for a Fathers fake won.

Amyris makes open fale of all his goods, fearing what was to follow.

King Cambyles his vnhallowed intent a

The Sybarites, people of a * citty in great Greece, (so called, by reason of a River which paffeth there along, named Sybaris) being defirous to understand the future felicity of themselues and their Citty: fent to confult with the Oracle of Delphos, to be resolued in the matter. Wherto Apollo in his * Pytheum, gaue them this answer Your Land Shall run to perdition, your felicity (bal have end ; when you begin to make more account of men, then of the Goddes. The Ambassadors having heard this answere, made report thereof to the Sybarites: who tooke good courage to them, perswading themselves assuredlie, that such disaster should never happen to them, and therefore their felicity would be eternall. But within some pretty while after, it happened, that a Maister beating his Slave neere to the Temple : the Slave | 20 fled from him, & knowing that the temple affoorded refoge, ran thereinto, and mounting vp to the Altar, embraced the Image. His Lord purfued him, & having forcibly recouered him from the Statue, without any reuerence of the place, began againe to giue him many Bastona does. The feruant fled fro him oncemore, ran to faue himselfe at the Tombe of his Lords deceafed Father: but then, in meer paternall duty, hee left punnishing any more, and pardoned the fault which hee had committed. All this being noted by Amiris, one of them that had bin Ambaffador to Delphosine cald to remembrance the former words of the Oracle, and declared to some other of his Friends, that the time for accomplishment of Apolloes answere; was even now come. But they giuing no credit to his words; imagined 40 that hee was become foolish. Which when he perceived, he took hold of their supposition, and soone after) counterfeited as if he were growne formwhat diffracted in his sences. So that, making publike sale of all his goods, and getting a large fumme of Mony together : he departed fuddenly thence, & went to dwell in Morea, expecting continually the fate of his Country. It fortuned, that within | 50 no long time after, the Cittie of the Sybarites (by what accident I know not) was raced, rent, and torne, and ytterly made

a heap of stones. Cambyfes, the Son of Cyrus, fent fiftie thousand mento destroy the Temple of Inpiter Hammon : but by a fudden furious with heaps of fand, before they could get Temple of Inthither, and fo perished most wretchedly, without executing their pernitious deffeigne. All they which were with Quintus Cepio, at the robbery of the Gold out Aul. Gelin [i of the Temples of Tholoufe in France, to 3. cap. 9. the quantity of one hundred & ten thoufand markes of Gold, and 500. Millions of markes in Siluer: dyed enery Man of them (with all their kinred and Families) within that yeares compasse, and not aboue one of them, did carry fo much as one piece therof home to his own house. Strabe in lib4 Strabo hath left it written, that this Treafure of Tholonfe, was a part of the Delphi-an riches . For Brennie, Captaine of the Gauls, being assisted by the * Tectofages, had ranfacked Delphos : according as we find it recorded by Justine the Historian. As then thefe Tellofages made their retreat to Tholoufe, which was their auncient Country: the plague began to affaile them, and neuer ceased, vntill such time, (as answere came from the Diuines) that they had drowned al the Gold and Silver (gotten by facriledge) in the bottome of it was (long time after) won and gotten, Apollo, of a costly robe of Gold worne a-

CHAP, XI.

Of the Seiane Horse. And of the admirable Statue of a Horfe, erected in Altina, a Citty in the Country of Olympia.

Aius Bassius, in his Comentaries, and Inlins Modestimus, in his second Communitation (Communitation) with that which Aulus Gellius reporteth Lul, Modeli.in in his Attick nights) do relate a memora-ble History, concerning the Seiane horse, Aul. Gellius. in & in this maner. In the Prounce of Argos, Not. Attic.

tempest, they were al quite ouerwhelmed the Thoulguzan Lake. Out of which place by Q. Cepio & his followers, who carried it thence to their owne deare detriment. The Romaine The Romains having furprized Carthage, certaine of them despoyled the Statue of bout him: but the hands of him that comitted this facriledge, wer found cut off, and fastned to the same garment. And Brennus, captain of the forenamed Gauls, entred forcibly into the Temple of Apollo at Delphos: and having committed it to publike spoile, was so furiously possessed, that he flue himfelfe with his own hands.

Chap.13.

Great affecti.

on to a Hoyfic that had fo fa"

tall a defteny

Curus Seignus

first bought

People of the west part of Narbon, to-wards the Pjrene Mountaines. Iuft.in Lib.31,

at their fur-

Cornelius Dolabella the Con-Maifter of the Horfe.

the race of those Horses, belonging vnto Diomedes the Thracian, which horse Hercules brought with him into Greece, after he had flain the faid Diomedes. This horfe was of a Bay colour, and of vnufual greatneffe; his Maine yellowith and long; his Nosthrils very wide and open; his eyes great; his legges well formed; his breaft goodly, and his taile long: in briefe, hee was perfectly faire, well limbd, frout, and full of courage for the wars. In the time of his beeing but a Colte, great rumour ran abroad of him, in Afia, Indea, Thebes, Pentapolis, and all ouer Greece, procuring very many (from all these parts, and many more beside) to transile to see him; others to buy him; and diners to draw his figure or proportion. But this goodly Beast had such an vnfortunate destinie, that whofoeuer was his Maister; must needes perish, with his Familier, House, and Goods whatfocuer. For proofe wherof, such as bought him, and mounted on his backe (which were fine worthy Knights) dyed all both miserably and infamoully. The first that bought and backthim, beeing then little about two yeares old : was Cneus Seianus, a omaine Confull, and of great birth, as also verie 30 verie wife in gouerning the Commonwealth, who being to returne out of Perfia to Rome, followed the faction of Octauius Augustus; in regard whereof, fixe moneths after hee had bought the faide Horse, Marke Anthonie caused his head to be finitten off in Greece, and commanded that his body should remaine without any buriall. Now, because that Cneus Scianus was the first Buier and Maister 40 of this Horse, and also had (by his death) first experimented his fatall fortune : hee was therefore called the Seiane Horffe.

there was a horse bred, reported to be of

Afterward, a Romaine, named Cornelius Dalabella, Confull also: bought this horse at an hundred thousand Sestertiaes, which amounted to the value of two thousand Duckets. But if hee had knowne, that hee bought misfortune at fo deare a rate: he neuer would have ac- 50 cepted him in gift: For within leffe then a yeares space after hee had him, the vnfortunate Dolabella was massacred in Syria, in a mutiny of people that rofe against him, and being thus slaine, his body (in meere despight) was dragd along the streets. Dolabella being thus dead, Cas-

us Cafsius, who had great commaund in Rome, performed many warlike exploits in Alfa, and had befiedged and overcom Dolabella in that fedition; took the horse for his owne imployment; but bee had not kept him any long while, till his troups being vanquished, and his Armie quite broken, himfelfe dyed very mifera-

Thus writeth Aulus Gellius, howbeit,

I have elfe-where read, that at a Dinner,

both Hee, his Wife and Children, were

poyfoned, and all them dyed within an

houre after. Vpon the death of Cafsius,

as much as hee would have given him if

he had bought him. Marke Anthonse was

vanquithed by Augustus Cafar, in a bat-

hee grew to waxe olde: but his fuccesse

proued as deare and fatall, as any of the

former owners, and much more notori-

ous. For within the years time of buying

Horse were drowned, and neuer after a-

ny tydings heard of them . This Historie

which continuallie was spoken of him,

that came to any miferable and vnfortu-

nate end. As the like was otherwise vite-

red, He met with the Gold of Tholonfe, for

the reasons remembred in the precedent

very goodly, and forged by the hands of

Dionifius the Argine, in honor of Phormi-

us the Arcagian, as was plainely given to

Chapter.

this vnhappy and difastrous Horse hapned into the power of great Marke An thony, who found him fo faire, and well the fourth fitting his owne minde, that hee gave in recompence to the bringer of the horfe,

taile on the Sea necre to Actium, and fa-

uing himfelfe by flight into Alexandria, (where likewise he was engirt, with sharp besiedging;) hee stabdhis owne Sword into his belly, and to perished by a violent and contemptible death. When Cleopatra, built Marke Anthony was thus dead, a Knight the Citty of of Asia, named Nigidius, bought the Horse, at a reasonable price, because now

this Horfe, as he rode with him ouer the Belonging to River * Marathon: the Horfe stumbling a Towne is in the Water, could by meanes recouer mi'es distant himselfe, but there, both Maister and from aibens.

made way to the ancient and well known Prouerb, to wit; He had she Seiane Horfe, 1. Cent. Lib.10

A very admirable matter is likewife The Statue of remembred, of the Statue of the Horse Horse,

of I hormius, crected in Altma, a Citty of Olympia in Elis . There stood a horse of Braffe, without any taile; yet appearing

A strange per fwasion of the

772

good Authors for a truth.

Elians.

be understood; by certaine Carracters or Letters engravien on his fide. And the Elians were verily perfivaded, and held it for infallible, that Stallions and Mares should both beget and bring foorth the goodlier Beaftes, if the act were performed before this Statue. And whether it confifted in some matter of enchantmet, or any other vnknowne mystery, I know not; but if a man rode on any Stallion by this Statue: his rider could not be able to fit him, but he would breake al his Furniture, Bridle, Raines, Girts, &c. of what strength foeter, and neuer cease till hee were at liberty, offering then to couer the Statue, as if it had bin a lining Mare. And this was not don in the Spring time only, whe these beasts are said to be most thereto inclinable; but euen at other times likewise, contrary to the naturall 20 custome of Horses. And he could not be had thence, but by violent strokes, and great compulsion.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Lais, the famous Courtezane of Greece; And the Epitaph engrauen wpon hir Tomb. 30

Ais was borne in a Towne of

Sicily, named Hiccara, and be-

Lais in her tender youth taken & fold among flancs

L Sicily, named runsur, and Ning a young Girle, when Nicias, Duke and Captaine of the Athenians, furprized both Catania & Hiceara: she was also taken by some of the Souldiers, and brought to Corinthe, where the was fold among diners other Slaves, in the open Market. Being afterward enfranchifed and fet at liberty : ouer-much licence, want of respect and correction (being absent from her Parents and Friendes, whose care should haue extended, for her good education in honest and ciuill manners) was the onely cause of making abooty of her honor, to him that wold give the most for it . So that, through wanton carri- 50 age in men, as forward as shee to all loofenesse: she won the fame and reputation, of the most queint and witty Courtezane (of her time) in all Greece. Wherupon, the Corinthians did efteem her as a great glory to them, and held themselues to be not a little honoured

by her, infomucht, har they stiled her to be a native of their Country, and left it recorded in their Bookes and writings. Some fay, that fhee remained a great while in the Camp of King Pyrrhus, and went along with him into Italy: from whence returning againe to Corinthe, there he made her retirement altogether. This amourous woman, was endued with such exquisite beauty, that the chiefest Painters (according as Athenaus reporteth) came expresly to Corinth to fee her, to draw her Picture, & beare thence the true figure of her face, breafts. & whole body. She was of fuch entifing nature, that men of the greatest wealth, would give a knocke at her doore; yea, many Kings, Princes, and great Lords cam not only from Europe, but from Affricalikewise, to serue, court and require her fauour. In briefe, thee was generally affected, highly eftecmed, and enflamed all Greece, to woc & win her. For either in speaking, singing, dauncing, or what elfe, the could performe it with fo absolute a grace : that the meerly rapished the harts of all men to behold her, and hardly could they refraine to be out of her company, fuch a commanding power had her beautie ouer them. Notwithstanding, she would neuer yeild her felfe to one Man; albeit Aristippus, Demosthenes, and Diogenes, were extraordinarily enamoured of hir. True it is that Ariftippus made his vant, that he had Lais alone in his owne priuate possession swhereas others did defire that they could have the like fauor. Demosthenes came once from Athens to Corinthe, in a difguifed habir, to fee Lais, and enjoy her if he could. But before the would open the doore to him, thee bad him first fend her 10000. Drachmaes (which valued 1000. Crownes, but elfe wher I have read 8000.) for one nights lodging with her: he was fo amazed at heat of his affections, hee went away, faving out aloud: I will never buy repentance at so deare a price. Aulus Gellius recordeth it in this manner. oun ar 8 μου, μυριομ διραχμών μέτα μέλειαμ. That is to

worthy Phi-losopher of Cilicia in Au gustus time, From far and neere they the demaund, that prevailing ouer the fay: I will not buy repentance with a thou-(and Drachmaes. This hee spake (as I

thinke) according to the faying of Dio-

genes, to wit : That every Creature is fad

after the Veneriall Act.

Thaue read that the Drack mae was a piece of MoOne day, in the presence of Luis there was one that verie highly commended the Phylosophers of Athens to be exceled lent Wifemen, lerned & honeft. Where to Lais answered thus : I knowe not what great Learning is in your Phylosopheres much lesse what they studie, or what Bookes shey read : considering that I who am a woman, and never was in Athens, do beholde them to come higher : & being Phylofophers I can make them to bee Louers andyse notwithstanding shey cannot make unie of my other faugurites, Phylofophers. Walve li Aristippui the Phylosopher, borne in *Syrenaich; of whom, I hade formerlio

made mention, did yearely continue for

the space of two moneths, in the time of

ledalio Penta. wiitana of the iue Citties seronice, Arfitpollonia, and Athen.in li. 1:

n Affrica, cal

lisques & Dio, ener concer

Aul, Gel.in lib.

Leit was skilful in making vicof hir vain time, yet stoo-ped to al priindifferently, without exception, and at howamanca priodificular, Asuphicular painted henfords, vindingly of alours, thy thoffer Verifes williels a defourer wrote int her, the fibliance whenere are contins of atten inti. 131 fect. Lais is a very flothful drunken Woman, fup. 10. doing weeking but nave and when hill the tily long. I thinke she hath experimented the hehautour and cuftome of Lagles, volto when they are young do ferse on Sheepe cas Hares on the highest Mountaines lifting them aloft by the gripes of their Talents, hal when olde age stealeth on them; then they le sue that big der prey, and five at none but young and finallest Birds, Eucn fo, Lais beeing your and gallant, had great funs of Money giren for enjoying her favours ; but when many yeares cante on her and ble mished the beauty of her former cariage the wold go then whither any man plea fed. the *Carolus or the Sous, ferued infted English penof a Crowne of former offers, and old or ny, but valewvong was not to be rejected. Authors do not agree concerning the

place where Lass died; fome fay, it was

hir Sepulcher stood a carned Lionnesse

in Braffe, holding a male Goat between

her former feete. Some others, do holde

it affiredly, that hir death happened in

ly without the knowledge of anie of her

louers,into the field of Alexander, where

other women being both ielious and en-

nions of her fame, forcibly drew her into

the Temple of Venus, and there fromed

hir to death with flones . Athenus faith.

with feats and stooles : for which cause it

was after called the Temple of Venus the

Murdreffe: otherwife tearmed associate

acagestiruciof Impious Venus. Her Tombe

was found in Theffaly, necre to the River

thus in Latine.

ing ten pence

at Cormet, the being aged 71 yeares, and that the Corinthians made her a magnifi- Variance a-

cent Tomb without the Citie where the about the dwelled. Y for they did not allowe anic death of Lais. M hores or Harlots to abide within the City, neither vsed they to bury their dead within their wals) and that on the top of

A 46 60 2

Theffay, whether the had followed one, named Hippostrates, whom atheneus cal-Atheneus whi

lerh Paulanise, and Plutarch Hippolochus the Theffalian . She doating in affection 'A high Hill towards him, for fooke the Mount of *Acro-Corinthis (continually bedewed with fresh springs & waters)& escaped secret-

1 sales de

Lais beaten to death with

Peneus, whereon was made an Vrne of A Riger tun flore, and thereon was engrauen certain ning between Greeke Verfes, which were translated in Ro-

The Answere of Lais concerning the Phylosophers

the Nepsuanales (Feafts Dedicated voto Meptune) with Lais in Egypt. And bees ing reprodued by a familiar frend of hisa because he spent so much money vppon that woman who would neuertheleffu entertaine Diogenes without and falarie; returned this affwere. I give bountifullie to Lais, because I would have my fill of content with her and yet not to hinder anie other from enjoying her . Diogenes on a time faid vnto him : Aristippus , thou thinkest that thou hast thy pleasure alone with Lais, and yet fhe is a common Whore : Either lead thy life like a Cynick, as I do, or elfe leave hir I would aduise thee, Aristippus presentlie replied. Diogenes, Dooft thou deeme it in-

convenient, to live in an house where one hath dwelt before thee? Or to wenter in the Same (hip where many others have formerly successefully (asled? Compare my case then on the contraries that feare not to affect the Woman, where many fauourites have beene

accepted before me. If Lais knew in hir youthful time, how

to make fale of her kind entertainment to her Louers, and at fo deare a rate, as beuty was fildom bought at the like cost: we must needs conceit, that when more mature and riper yeares came vpon her, the could much better skill of making hir Market, being so well plied with bountifull Pay-maifters. Morcouer, when her gallant flouring daies were passed ouer, that her faire complexion began to faile, and furrowed wrinckles appeared in her face: The flew not then fo loftic a pitch, but was content to welcome both young and olde, rich and poore, faire and deformed, lufty bloods, and cooler spirits; and to be briefe, all goers, and commers

tezane in all reputed as an honour to the

Lais the onely

famous Cour-

Juba, in his

to death in

Egypt.

Roboris inuitti animi sit Grazia quamuit, Victa samen forma paruit illa fua: Laidis ipfe parens amor est aluit á, corinthus Ac nunc ipfa tenet inclita The falia.

By the Author thus turned into French.

Bien que la Grece foit d'innincible courage, Vaincue toutesfois a cede au visage De sa chere Lais, belle comme la ione Brane et Pimpante en tout, fille du Dieu Amour : Aux meilleurs de set ans Corinthe la nourrie, Et ores fes os font gardez en Theffalie.

And thus by the Translater into English.

Though Greece was of vnconquerable might, Yet ne'rtheleffe it yeelded, and gaue way To the faire lookes of Law, bright as the day: Feate in all forme, the Loue-Gods deare delight. Corinth gave breeding to her better daies, But Thessay keepes both her Bones and praise.

CHAP. XV.

of Androchia and Alcida, who were Sisters. Also of Macharia, Daughter to Hercules: Which Ladies, for the safety of their Countries, flew themselves.

ghters to Antipenus the Thebane Cittizen ; the one, beeing named Androchia . 40 and the other Alcida.

A Tyraunt whome Hercules draue

The rare retwo famous Virgins,

Yell & Ophocles maketh mention, in one of his Tragedies, that his Tragedies, that at Thebes, in the temple of Diana Euclia, were buried two Virgines; dau-

It happened that * Erginus, King of the Orchomenians, having besiedged the Cittie of Thebes, with full determination to ruinate it, in reuenge of the death of his Father Climon : the Thebanes confulted with the Oracle, concerning theyr fortune in this extreamity. Afterward. when the two fore-named young virgins had understood from the Oracle, that if 50 two fuch Virgines were to bee found (of Noble Family) and would bee so couragious as to kill themselues: they shoulde thereby be the cause of their Citties freedome, and ouerthrowe of the Enemie. Thefe two young Ladies, defiring to be that happie paire of Virgins, and prefer-

ring their Countryes deliuerance before their owne liues: killed themselues prefently, and the enemy returned ashamed and foiled; whereby both honor and victorie remained to the Thebanes , to the eternall praise & memories of those two

Hercules escaping the power of * Eu-Stantly the flew her felfe, and the Athenidayes of ignoraunce, when almost the whole world beleeved those deluding Oracles: wherein, for any one truth, infinite Lies, Riddles, and Ambages, were

CHAP. XVI.

deliuered vnto the poore ouer credulous

From whenee came at first our Orange and Cadar Trees. And how the Cadar is verie good and soueraigne, against the poyson of Serpents.



people.

Ranges, Citrons, and Cadars, were neuer in ancient times known to be good to conset, Creat: but onely they were gi-uen as Offeringes vnto the the Gods.

Gods, and effectmed most especiallie for their beauty and fight; & being thut vp in

worthy Virgins.

ristheus, went into Thrace, where hee remained til the time of his deth. He being dead, Eurisheus demanded his Children of Seix Lord and commander of Thrace; who fearing their lines loffe, fent them to Thefeus at Athens, to whose especiall care and truff hee re-commended them . When Euristheus had intelligence therof, he proclaimed war against the Athemians: who as well for their owne fafetie, as the Children of Hercules, determined constant resistance against Ceix. But confulting with the Oracle, which side shold be the Conquerour in this doubtfull triall, the Oracle gaue answere, that they should have the dayes victory, prouided, that one of Hercules his Children, must first die. This was no sooner heard by Macharia, Daughter to Hercules: but inans were the Conquerors. Thus you may fee, how the Deuill could get himfelf facrifices, and make humain creatures prodigall of their lives to him, in those darke

ghter to Her. cutes flew her Athenians d

to Cloathes and Garments, as also to preserve them from Mothes & worms. Then, in regard that they first came out of Persia and Media: men vsed to call them Persian Apples, and Median Apples : Howbeit, Iuba, in his Histories, tearmes them Apples of Gold, or Apples of the Helperides. In no long while after, men began to cate of the Cædar, 10 and thereupon appeared, that a meruailous vertue was found therein, against the venome and poylon of Scrpents & Aspicks. To approve the truth therof, we finde it credibly recorded, that two men, being condemned to death in Ægypt, their fentence was; that they should be exposed to Serpents, to bee denoured by them, which kind of death had beene vied among them from olde 20 Antiquitie. The day being come wheron they should dye, one of them was (accidentally) visited by a friend of his in the Prison, who was champing and chewing a piece of Cedar in his mouth, and bestowed some little part thereof on the condemned Prifoner, which hee accepted very thankfully, and byting thereon, gaue some also to his deathes

chelts or coffers, to yeild a pleafing fauor

Denouring Serpents re-fuled to touch oor condem ned men, on-ly because hey had ea-

companion, in meere simplicity, and without knowledge of any fecret vertue They being brought to the place of death, and thrust out to the greedy Serpents; they would by no meanes come neere them, or touch them, but auoyded to farre as possibly they could from them. The Officers of Iustice beeing there prefent, began to examine, what might be the reason of this sildome 40 feene wonder: whereupon they found, that the Cedar (eaten by both the Prifoners) was the onely cause. But in regard they intended a more ample proof thereof, on the next day following, they caused one of the condemned Men to eate of the Cedar again, but gaue to the other his accustomed food, and bringing them both to the place of execution; all the people beheld, that the Serpent ran fiercely on him that was fafling from Cedar, tearing and renting him in infinite morfels ; but left the other againe without any touch, who

died also the day following by the same

Scrpents, according as his fellow had

done before him.

CHAP. XVII.

How hurtfull a thing it is to endure fasting or hunger : And what the reason is, that aged people are more capable thereof, the youthfull bodies, yet without any preiudice. Alfo, whence it proceedeth, and upon what occasion, that fasting is hurtfull to chollericke per fons, and profitable to the Phleematicke.



Histions doe hold opinion, that two Two inconue principall inconue- niences cauniences doe enfue fed by hunger by Hunger and Fafting : the one is, the naturall heate

weakened. The body that is most offended by these two harms, endureth hunger with exceeding great difficulty: but whereas these annoyances do cause no oppression, it is suffered with the grea- of naturall ter eafe. The Infant then that encrea- heat in Infeth, hath his naturall heat in fufficient diedl moyftrength, and radicall moyfure verie fure. fubtile: which resolueth it selfe much more by equall proportion, in not enduring hunger then, then it can doe in any other degree of age.

the humiditie of the stomack is thereby

Moreover the sensitive vertue is then forcibly mooued, whereby it suffereth hunger with much passion and damage, which causeth both heat & the naturall Spirit to diminish mightily, & keeping nourishment then from him: is the maine, hinderance to his growth and rance of an encreasing. By which occasion we may Infants grow. perceive, that an Infant or young child ing. is more injured by hunger, then all per-

fons elfe in any other age. The young man, that hath attained to his intire and perfect encreasing, although his naturall heate beeas strong flacofenas that of the Infant : yet notwithftan- creafing. ding, he hath his naturall humiditie more groffe, and therefore it cannot fo foone diffolue, as that in the Childe. In which respect, hunger doth no way for much offend a Man of middle age; as a

younger Child or Infant . For it is vniuerfally observed, that in Adolescency Youth-hood, or when a man is neerest to his original : with fo much the more paine and difficultie hee endureth hunger, because his naturall moysture is

more subtile and resolucable. The old, or aged man, hath his natu-Of the Aged rall heat much abased or dejected, and his declining

his humidity greatly thickned or closed together, which cannot fo eafily refolue it felfe. The fensitiue vertue also is highly decayed in him, and fenteth nothing so perfectly, as when hee was an In ant, a Youth, or in his strength and best of yeares . And therefore, hee endureth not fo much paine and dammage then, as in the precedent conditions. But he who is the decrepite, or very old man, although he have his na- 20 turall moisture much more groffe, his heare very feeble, and his fenfible vertue farre more imperfect, then is in all the other Ages, as being Neighbour and neere to his extinction : yet for all that, how little soeuer he suffereth the accident or discommoditie of hunger; it endangereth the quite quenching of his naturall heat, whereon immediatlic he dyeth. And therefore it is very need- 30 full, that food should be as often given to the decrepite man, as to the young

heateremaining in him; as we fee by a

flender flame, when too much Oyle is

Hunger is caused in vs, and all other

Creatures elfe, by reason that naturall

heate continually confumeth, and dry-

eth the humiditie of our members,

which being confumed, confumeth like-

wife the moysture of the veines, and

their confumption causeth attraction

from the Liner, and the Liner from the

stomacke. These humours thus confu-

med, the Soueraigne Creator hath or-

dained in vs, that the Spleene or Milt

should conuay the Melancholly humor

to the stomack, which being eager and

corrofiue, confumeth likewife the fub-

stantiall humiditie in the stomacke it

felfe, and so inciteth a desire of foode,

from whence enfueth the occasion of

put into the Lamp.

old must be as often fed as a child but Infant, but yet diversly. For the Infant in another kind. must have enough at every time given him, and but litle to the decrepite man: because, if he should receive over much, it would suffocate the small quantity of

The decripite

Of Decripite

How hunger man, and in al

The Melancholly humor

Hunger. Which is very hurtfull to Chollericke bodies, because whensoe- The Cholle. uer they fuffer hunger, their choller defrendeth into the stomacke, and wil not let them cate; but are poffeffed with fumes and vapours while choller fo mounteth, which afterward (when they doe eate) corrupteth and putrifieth the meates received. But in Phlegmatique | The Phlegcomplexions, there is humidity enough in the stomacke, and in al the members. And therefore it is profitable for them to endure hunger, for by their sufferance thereof, their bad and ill-affected humours are confumed away by chol-

CHAP, XVIII.

That there is not any thing in the World, which is more hurtfull to man, or procureth him more loffe and danger, then the Tonque: with many notable Examples sothat effect.



Nacharfis the Philosopher, being one daie connecting with his Schollers, concerning the tongue, spake thus vnto them . Not with-

out oreat Art and Mystery (ô my Schollers) did Nature bestow on vs two Feete, two Legges, two Armes, two Hands, two Eyes, two Eares, and no more but one tongue. As fignifying thereby, that cyther to goe, fee, or heare are offices which we can doe as often as we pleafe : but to fpeake well, wifelie, and modestly, is more then we can easily attaine unto. He faid moreouer. For no other occasion hath Nature left our face vncouered, our eyes, eares, hands, feete, and al the rest of our body, except the tonque: but the toong which she impaled with lawes, and walled about with teeth, and afterward defenced it with lippes ; but onely to let us under stand, that (in this prefent life) there is nothing that deferueth a stronger guard, then the unbrideledtongue. We have no part belonging to our body, which Nature hath fo furely Rampiard up, as the tongue. Before it is placed a Bulwarke of teeth, to the end, that it should be o-

Banket with

Prou. 18.21.

Chap. 18.

The reeth or-

dained to pu-nish the tong.

Ànacharlis at a

Fraf in Enchir.

Pittacus his comparison of the tongue

The answere

The speech

charfis the Philosopher to his Schol-

ning the

Plutar. in Lib.

Law among them, that fuch Men as had bad and wicked tongues : should be bannished and confined for halfe a yeare, into some distant seperate place. without power of speaking to any one whatfoeuer. And many times it happened, that some of them chose

rather three yeares flauery in the Gallies, then to be so bard of speaking for halfe a veare.

ritie, and prevailance in fpeaking; was much feared throughout all Greece, and therefore talked at his owne pleafure. In regard whereof, all the chiefe of the

bedient to reason, which restraines it; (as with a strong bridle) within : but if it will not be kept backe, her intemperance may be justly punnished, with a bloody gripe betweene the teeth. The fame Philosopher banqueting

one day with Solon, was esteemed to be wife, because being a-sleepe afterward, hee was noted by one or two to hold his right hand on his mouth, and the Ic lefevpon his naturall partes of fecrecie, as thereby declaring, that the tongue had neede of a much stronger Bridle, then the other partes of Nature. For the tongue containeth in it both good and enill; And Salomon faith: Both life and death is in the power of the Tonque. If we vee the tongue well (faith Erasmus) it is as a Horne of plentie or aboundance: but if it want a Gouernour , there is no- 20 thing more offensive. The Philosopher Pittacus faide. The Tongue resembleth to the world; the forme of a Lances point, but is much more dangerous : for the Launce woundeth the Flesh onelie, but the Tonque Striketh quite thorough the

Affranlus, another Philosopher, was one day demaunded, wherefore he spent the most part of his time, in walking among the Mountaines, hazzarding his life everie houre, where fo many wilde Beaftes might suddenlie deuour him? Hee presentlie replyed. Beastes have no other weapons but their teeth, where-with to teare me: but Men ceafe not daily to commit outrage with their members, and to defame with their mallicious Tongues.

Plutarch; in his Booke of Banishment, declareth, that the Lydians had a

Demostheres, a Man of great autho-

Athenians mer together on a day , and at a meet appointed place, concluding The manner to bestow a large recompence, and II- how the area beralt Wages also on him befide. And peticed Demol. calling him in among them, to let him benes. vnderstand their bounty and beneuolencesone (in name of othe roft) fpake thus voro him . Demosthenes ; we dor not bestow this great carfe cether because thou hast spoken or thus thou should st speake but onely to the end that thou fhouldit hold thipeacean almitenant free de banna

Marke Anthony caused the Father of Eloquence to be flaine, vpon no other Mark Aniben occasion : but because hee had spoken caused the too advantagiously on his behalfe. death of cice Which was manifestly declared by Fuluia, Wife to Marke Anthonie, when thee procured Ciceroes Tongue to bee puld out, for his false speaking, and pierced it thorough (in many places) with Needles. Salust, the Romaine Oratour, was verie odious vnto Stran-gers, and fenerely purfued by his owne or. Companions: because he neuer tooke Penne in his hand to Write, but it was against some especiall persons; neither would be open his mouth, but it was to depraue some others. The Lydians had an inviolable Law, to punnish The Lydians Detractors with death, but Homicides law against and Men-killers, they condemned them Detractours. to labour in their Gallies. So that among those barbarous people, for one Man to depraue or defame another : it was reputed a far greater offence, then if he had flaine him.

ner in his Tent , fuch as hee pleafed to mindin King accept in companie at his owne Ta- Darius toble, beganne to moone fome Millirary meny. Argument, concerning the warlike affaires of Alexander the Great. In which discourse, a Captaine, named Mygdonius, (one very highly favoured of Darius) delinered some reproachfull fpeeches of Alexander, whereupon Darius fuddenlie faide. Hold the Tongue Mygdonius, and know, that I This Mygdoni brought thee not with mee to this Warre, in tearned by to defume Alexander with thy Tonque; but onelie to conquer him in Armes, if thou canft. By which example, we may perceine, how detestable and odious the Vice of Detraction is: because it is apparants that enen Enemies themsary and are the real than a constitution of the luces

As King Darius far one day at Din- An honorable

on-1. Saler

tales & newes

Ouer-much talkeis a grea blemish to Honor.

felues cannot endure, to heare difgracefull wordes of one another . Pytheus, Duke of Athens, was a very honorable Prince, full of courage and resolution: but yet fo ouer-abounding in talke, that it greatly diminished the glorie of all his other atchieuements. A Philosopher beeing bidden to a follemne Banquet, spake not one word while the feafting continued, which made cuery one maruaile at his fo long filence, and demanded, for what reason he was so sparing of speech? Whereto he returned this answere. It is much better to know the time when a Man should speake, then barely how to freak : For nature hath taught vs the one, but wisedome is the enstructer in the other. No Man (at any time) repented him-

selfe for beeing filent, but many haue

Read Plutare Tracte of too much talking. Of him that found the empty Bot-tle in the Temple of Iuno Chalcocco

done it for too much talking, because oneword hath fometimes beene the price of a mans life. Let him be a Witnesse, who interpreted the signification of the emptie Bottle, found in the Temple of Iuno Chalcoccos in Lacedemonia, after it was stolne thence : by ouer-lauish pratling, when no man demaun. ded any question of him, hee lost his life, with his owne confent. He could 30 then have wisht his wordes in his belly againe, but it was too late, and time past: for a word cannot be recourred againe, when it is out of the mouth, no more then a Bird, when the is let go at libertie: whereupon it was faide: That Words have wingges . Sildome hath an vttered word returned any fuch fervice, as profit hathenfued by divers never fpoken : For wee may alwaies deliuer 40 that wel, which is yet within vs, but neuer call that backe to mending, which is gone from vs.

Frimenides, a Painter, parting from

Rhodes, travailing into Asia, where hee

continued many yeares together : but

at length returned to Khodes againe, yet

no one in the Cittie could heare one

word of him, concerning what he had done and feene in Afia. Whereat the

Rhodians making no little maruaile, they

entreated him, to acquaint them with

fome discourse of his long travailes;

whereupon, he gaue this answere. I

was ten yeares on the Seas, to make me apt

for parting from place to place : Other tenne

yeares I tarryed in Asia, to better my skill in

Of Dpimenides the Painter of Rhodes, that trauailed into

answere to the men of painting : And sixe yeares afterward I studied in Greece, onely to learne how to hold my peace. Your comming to menow, is, that I should vie wordes to ye , and tell ye newes. Come to me no more (kinde Countrey-men) to any such intent: For you mey see Pictures in my House, if you please to buy them, but I have no newes to feede your eares withall. In my poor opinion, he answered them like a verie wife man, for, by reporting matters of farre Countries, which are rare and divers : people (of weake capacity) give no credit to them; others, make a mockery, and most are doubtful of them.

Pythagoras being feriously questioned, what was the reason that hee kept so ftrict filence in his Academie (because in the space of two yeares, all Schollers that came to be enstructed there, might not speake one word, being thereto enioyned by his feuere commaund) returned this answere. In the Schooles of other Philosophers , they teach their Schollers to peake; but mine learne onely how to bee filent. And vindoubtedly, concerning the life of man, there is no higher or fairer Philosophy, that this World can affoord; then how to restraine the

CHAP. XIX.

tongue, when it is most needfull.

What Feasts and Banquets were weed in anciens times; And how Augustus prohibited in Rome, that any Man should inuite another to eate in his house.



Mong the Spartanes, there . Common were certaine Banquets Suppers
Bread and Swines Flesh fodden in Water, without any thing elfe for their first feruice. For their last course, which those Auncients called, the second Table: they were ferued with Olines, Cheefe, and Figges. And to close vp the feast, they had certaine baked cakes, made of fine Flower and Oyle, cut vpon Bay-leaues: without any Perfumes at their Tables, curious backt meates,

couragement for youth full

Of Auncient Feasts and Banquets. Chap.19.

Atheneus in Lib. 4. Cap. 5. Feafts in Creek free for all

and prepara-tion of the Feafts,

or choife fauces of fundry taftes, thinges in those dayes neuer heard or thought on, their Fealts & Banquets being much more modest then ours now are. In those elder dayes, thorough al the citties in Creete, on certaine dayes of the yeare; they were wont to make Banquets, common for who foeur pleafed to come to them . For maintenance whereof; euery Cittizen gaue the tenth part of all his fruites, which were gathered duely at the Citties entrance, by some of the society thereto deputed. The care and charge of the whole Banquet: was referred to a worthy Lady, who had (vnder her) three or foure weomen of more inferiour degree, beside two seruants, that fed the Fire with wood. In the house appointed for the Feast, first of all were prepared two Tables for the Cittizens, 20 and two other, onely for strangers. The affiftants were all ferued with equal allowance: but younger people had leffe flesh meates affoorded them, then the elder. At each Table there was appointed a Veffell full of Wine, well qualified with water, whereof they dranke in common, and after they had indifferently eaten, they had other wine brought them, of better qualitie then the first : whereof 3 the grauer fort dranke fo much as they pleafed, but the younger: in more moderate manner.

The Noble Lady, who helde the fu-

preame authority of the Feast, accompa-

nied with some other Ladyes; brought

the most delicious meates to them, that

in times of warre or peace, had done any famous and remarkeable deede, as being

those that best deserved honour. When

this Dinner, or Supper (as it fell out to

be) was ended, they would fit still, con-

fulting first together on publique affaires

and afterward on matters appertaining

to the warres, with repetition of their

names and fernices, that had best defer-

ued of the Common-wealth; profited

their Country; beene benificiall to the

Temples, and houshold Gods of enery

Familie; and were dread leffe of death

in all good actions. These wanted not

their due praise and commendation, to

the end, that youg men hearing the me-

mory of fuch vertuous persons, might

adict them-felnes to the like endeauours,

and (finally) be pertakers of their glory.

This beeing done, they arose from the

he chicle Lady and dif-pofer of the

Their Table talke, after Dinner or

Tables, and departed thence about their occasions.

The Lacedemonians, at their marriage | Marriage Fealts, would permit no more but nine Fealts among perfors to dine together, which they did the Lacedemo as in rederence to the nine Muses. And this was conditioned also, that if any man talked at the Table, no wine should bee ginen him to drinke fo that if a man defired to drinke, hee mult be fure to holde his peace. This law would ferue to good purpose in these dayes, because both in our marriage Feasts and other Banquets, nothing is more viually heard then noise, rumour and babling, and they are best e fleemed, that can maintaine the longest pratling. The * Nancratites in the hal-lowed Feafts, which they celebrated in City in honour of their Father Dionyfins, or Bac- Egypt. chus, in the Pritaneum, were all clothed in white Albes, then called Pritanean Gownes, and when they had heard the voice of the publique Cryer: they would al fal down on their knees to the ground, and having faide certaine private prayers, feate themselves at the Table, every one receiving two measures of wine; the ance of the Priefts of Apollo Pitheus, and of Bacchus Prieftes. only excepted who were allowed a double portion, as well of wine, as of all oble portion, as well of wine. 3 as of all other thinges befide. Afterward the viet was, that euery one should hauc a fayre large slice of very puric bread giuen him, Fras, and no theteon a piece of courter Bread, with a morfell of Swines Flesh on it, be allowed. fide a Cake of Barly Bread fryed, or elfe fo much Meale fryed, or a messe of Pottage made of Hearbes, according to the feafon of the yeare, two Egges, a cantle of Cheefe, dryed Figs, and a Cake crow-ned with a Garland. If any one (in thefe facrifices) prouided any other meats then those aboue rehearsed, he was to be ammerced with a pecuniarie fine.

The vie of making Feafles and Ban- Arift in Lib. 9 quets (as Aristotle writeth) was invented cap, 16, by Italus, a very auncient King of Italy, The first in who kept company with groffe and boorith people, feeding among them, obliging them (by that meanes) to yeeld him the more obeylance, and he drawing the also thereby to a more humaine, ciuill and pleasing kinde of life . Suctonius Sucton Trang. Tranquellus declareth, that the Emperor ta. Anguit. Octanius Augustus prohibited in Rome, that any of his subjects should inuite one another, to dine or suppe with him: but

Nancratis,

The allow-

The answere Oratour.

Of Pericles the honourable Athenian.

Argument.

yet they might fo much honor one another, as to fend part of his Viands to the others Table, but not to pertake in earing thereof. But being demaunded, what was his reason for making this Law, he answered. The occasion that moned me to forbid Playes and Feastings, was for nothing elfe: but because in those plaies, Men cannot abstaine from blaftheming the Gods, and (at Peastes) one Neighbour defameth or backbiteth another. Cicero Writeth, that Cate the Cenfor, being at the point of death, delinered thefe wordes. Among other thinges done by me, not as became a good Romaine Cittizen, but rather like a presumptuous and barbarous Man; was this: I being once entreated by a friend of mine, that I would come and dine with him: fuffered my felfe to be ouer-ruled, and went unto him, which I ought not to have done. For to fleake uprightly, no genero s and vertuous man, should goe to cate in the House of any Friend, or other : because, hee thereby loofeth his owne liberty, and hazzardeth his reputation and grauity in extraordinary perill. A certaine man demaunded of Aschines the Oratour, what hee of Elebines the Should doe, to be esteemed a good and honest man? To whom he thus answered. If thou wouldst bee a perfect honest 30 Grecian, thou must go to the Temples willingly, and to warre upon necessity: but to Feast's or Banquets, neither on thine owne free will, or any importunitie; An answer

> Pericles, a man of great account among the Athenians, did fo highly detest the custome of Feasts and Bankets, and the prouision appointed for them: as hee did neuer dine or fup with any 40 Friend of his, but onely Eurytolemus, on the day of his Nuptials. And yet he was a man of great honor, very liberall, and maintained many people with his goods. Nor doe I (for all this) wholelie condemne Feafts and Banquets: prouided, that mediocrity bee obserued in them. For I hold it very vicious and vnfeemely, to shun honest conversation, and civill refort to feede together: as is 50 obserued in Societies and Companies, as well Religious, as others, in their Refectories or dining Haules, as we vie to tearme them. For, not onely Nature, but amity also necessarily requireth; that we should support this Custome of Banquets, which the Latines

well deferuing eternall memory.

(our betters) vied to tearme Connicium, of Cournendo, as a familiar kinde of life, when men, louingly feede together at one Table. Neuertheleffe, I much miflike, and judge it worthy of great reprehension ; to super-exceede both in pompe and superfluitie in our Feastes, with fuch diversity of meates, as (many times) producs to a mans vindoing. For nothing makes vs fo much like vnto brute beafts; as gluttonous gurmandife, and fludy wholy applyed for the

CHAP. XX.

of many Men, that by their Prodigalitie and lauish kinde of life, made expense of all their faculties in very short time.

He most Prodigall Man of Auncient times, was Epichari-des the Athenian, sir-2 Man of Auncient named the Little Man; who in fixe

the Athenian,

Cleops, King of

daies, confumed all his wealthy Patrimony. Pafchifyrus king of Creete, after he had spent all that hee had, and could make beside: at length fold his Kingdome, and lived afterward prinately, in the Citty of * Amathunta, * A Citty of where he dyed miserably. Athiops, the Coprus dedicaand inheritance, both what hee had in present possession, and was to enioy by his Birth-right: onely to maintaine his excessive drinking . Cleops, King of Agypt, hauing laide out vnfpeakable exgypt, hauing laide out vnspeakable ex-pences, for the building of a mightie huge Pyramides, was brought to such virginity. extreame necessity; that for his owne meere maintenance, he was enforced to expose his Daughters virginity to publike fale, to make Money of her lascinious and dishonest pleasures. Marcus Tigellus was fo prodigall in expences, that all his Flatterers, Picke thankes, Players, Pypers, and loofe Companions, who derined exceeding benefit daily from him : bemoand his death, & wept bitterly for him. Of him, Horace

maketh mention, faying.

Horace in Satir a. Lib.a.et in Satyr.3 ,Lib.2.

Societies of Flatterers infinite, That follow furnisht Tables day and night : Sellers of Vnguents, fweets . And Mountebancks, Lafciuious Women, vfing wanton Pranks. All these Horse-leaches rusully complaine Tigellus death; whose life was all their gaine.

The prodigality and voluptuous life

of Perieles ; of Callias, the Sonne of Hip-

Elianus in Lib. . Cap. 7.

Lib.4.Cap 12.

Ariflopbanes in Com.Predic.

Volat Anthrop.

Who after

his Fathers

death was brought vp by Phocion.

So called

of harneffe

Calar Calig.

ponicus; and of Nicias, brought them to extreame ponerty, and when Money failed them : they all three, (each after other)received Hemlock for their drink at their last banquet, and so ended their daies. Of Callias, Atheneus maketh mention, and Aristophanes, in his Comedie of Preachers, and Lylias writeth, that his Father Hipponicus was the very richest man in all Greece. Demades the Oratour, had gathered such a masse of Riches, as himfelfe confessed, that hee felt not the want of any thing : neuertheleffe, in the end (thorow his intemperance and diffolution) he fo wasted and consumed al his wealth, that he was banished from the Citty, because he had beene seauen times accused, for not payment of such fines, wherein the men of Athens had condemned him. And Antipater the Pooer of Sidon mocking him, faid : He had nothing but his toong and belly left him, for he had wasted and offered up all to his owne Senfuality, &c. * Ctesippus, Son to Chabrias, was fo Prodigal, that after he had lauishly confumed all his goods:he fold the very stones of his Fathers Tomb, in the building whereof, the Athenians disburffed a thoufand Drachmaes, Cornelius Lentulus, fir-named Sura, a man of Noble race, but of very bad gouern-

mon-wealth, when he was Quastor. G. Cafar * Caligula furpaffed all Prodigals, in inuentions of profuse expence and dissolutions. He invented a new bootes, called calige, which kind of Bath, and divers fortes (neuer he was wont before (eene) of Viands and Banquetings: for hee would bathe himfelfe in curious fweet waters, and cause Pearles of inestimable value to be dissolved with Vinegers and fet before them that hee feafted, having his Breads and Meates all guilded ouer. Moreover, he coinmaunded light Gallies or Foifts to bee made (which were called Liburnian Foifts) of Cedar wood, having all their

ment, fpent ouer-vainely, and foolifhly

(beside his owne possessions) a great

fum of Mony belonging to the Com-

poopes couered ouer with precious ftones. He had large and goodly ftones or Hot-houses, with rare perfumed ferned no chambers in them, where he would fir his expense and banquet in the night season ; but in and prodigathe day time, hee had variety of costlie lity. Arbors, Bowers, and Vines, abounding in the plenty of their fruits, wherein he would fit with his Conforts of Mufitions, fweetly finging among them. And when he pleased to take the open ayre, it was on the Sca-shoare of Campania. which was reputed (though beeing in Italy) to be the most pleasant and fertile ground in the whole World. As for his buildings and Houses of pleasure, abroad in the spacious fields, in groues, Woods, and other delightfull places : they exceeded all compaffe of reason, for hee coueted nothing more, then to effect fuch things as appeared to be impossible. Inbriefe, in lesse space then a yeare, he confumed immense riches. with the twenty seauen thousand times * H. S. being an hundred thousand smal Sestertiaes, which Tiberius had left him, a Coine aamounting to threefcore and featien maines, wher-Millions; and fifty thousand Crownes, allowing fortie fixe Sols to the crowne. But when Money began to fayle him, was marked and he waxed needy; he then gaue his with H.S.

mind to leuying of toules, and excessive fied 2.4th et tributes yea, hee exercifed rapines by dim. oc. diners meanes, beside calumnies and confiscations of his subjects goods.

The Emperour Nero, his Nephew, was not a jot inferiour to him in Prodi- 6. Cap. 50. gality, for hee observed no order or The prodigameafure in spending and giving : ac- lity of the Em counting them to be wretches and auaritions villaines, that kept any written Register of their expences. But contrariwife, he esteemed them to be honorable and magnanimious, that could foonest runne thorough their whole estate in fpending. He gaue to Tyridates (as a daily allowance) eight hundred thoufand Nummaes, valuing twenty thoufand Crownes of our Coyne, a matter almost incredible. He made a present of two goodly Pallaces ; the one to Menecrates, a Player on the Harpe; and the other to Spectallies, the Mirmyllon Fencer or Sword-Player . He would neuer ride abroad, or on any journey, Excettine without a thousand Chariots at the prodigatate,

leaft. His Mules were thoude with not to any purpofe. Siluer.

Chap.21.

any other.

The nature

of the coue-

retches of

quality then

ore hafe

Famous for fine wool of crimfon coul

lof ep.in Lib. d bel ludait. Cup. 13.

The Empemeales daily

A Prodigall defined by Vipian the Lawyer,

Lawes in ancient times ordayned against prodigall perfons,

Such a law would now digals of thefe

Siluer, and all his Mulets Saddles and furnitures, were of Cloth of * Canusium, a Towne in Apulia. Moreover, he neuer would weare any Garment twice.

Infephus, in his History of the lewes warres, maketh mention of the prodigalitie of the Emperor Vitellius; who helde the Empire no longer then eight months and fine dayes . If his life had beene of any longer continuance (faith Iolephu) I beleene, that the whole Empire could not have fuffifed his excesse and produgality. This Vitellius was fo diffolute and prodigall, that he would have foure feueral meales each day allowed him; which he thus deuided, into Breake-fast, Dinner, Supper, and Collation. At fuch time as hee came to Rome, his Brother made him a Supper, whereat hee was ferued with two thousand daintie and rare Fishes, and 20 feauen thousand as delicate Fowles and Birdes . Which pompe he exceeded in another Feast, of more excessive and fumptuous cost; which he made at the dedication of the ground plot, that (for the admirable greatnesse thereof) hee called the Shield of Minerua.

A Prodigall (faith Vipian, in the first law ff. de cura. fario) is he that hath no time or end of his fpending : but feattereth 3 and consumeth his goods beyond sence or reason, and is tearmed in Greeke actores, because that hee looseth himselfe, and wasteth his patrimony. Our grave and worthy fore-fathers, did establish Lawes against spend-thriftes and prodigalles. Solon, the famous Grecian, ordayned, that they should be made infamous. The Areopagites and criminal ludges of Athens, appealed prodigal persons in judgment, and being proued and continced for fuch offendours, were punished accordingly.

The Auncients, called the ten men, prohibited by their lawes, that prodigals should have the government of their owne goods, but all fuch authoritie was taken from them : and a Guardian or Ouer-feer was appointed the by the Judge, as is to be seene in the law Julianus . ff . de cura furio. Therefore they could not fell or alienate (by any valuable meanes) their Lands or goods, neither make any transport of them : moreouer, they were disabled by the Law, of making any wils or Testaments, as appeareth plainly in the Law . Is eui bonis. F. de verb. obliga. Whereupon, they were compared by the Iurisconsultes, to madde men; Seililet quod furiosum exitum pariat prodiga-

And as for the paine and punishment due to wait-full spend-thrifts, the Grecians had a law, whereby it was especially ordained, that who focuer confirmed his patrimony lauishly; he might not be per-mitted Buriall in the Graue of his Father, but abroade, among fuch as were strangers and vnknowne. The Law of the twelue Tables, interdicted all prodigall persons, from any administration of their owne goods; and in the end, all the Lenders (by commaund of the ludges) might let them have no more monies, on pawnes or otherwise : but Suruayers or Comptroullers were fet ouer them, according to the example and order for mad men or Lunaticks, and all mannaging of their owne affayres, was also prohibited them in this forme or manner. Quando bonatua paterna anitaque nequitia disperdis, liberosque tuos ad egestatem perducis 30b eam rem tibi ea re commercioque | Cap.5. interdico. In this very manner, 2. Pompeius, Pretor, perceiuing that Q. Fabius, (Sonne ro 2. Fabius the Great, firnamed Allobrogicus, because he conquered the * Allobroges, and Bituilus, Captaine and Duke, or King (as some write) of the * Aluernes) was extraordinarily diffolute and prodigall in his expences: deprined him of his Fathers Lands and goods. For every one pittied, and much lamented, to fee fo much Gold and Siluer wasted in lewdnesse and luxurie; which rather should have supported the fplendour and Nobilitie, of fo glorious a race and Family, as were the Fabij.

Dion writeth, that the Emperor Tiberius did fet a Tutour, ouer a certaine Senatour, who was void of all good gouernement to order him, as if he had beene his pupill. Iouianus Pontanus, in his Booke of Bounty or Liberallity, maketh a question to wit : which of the two, either the prodigall person, or the auaritious, is worst and most pernitious? ralit. Whereunto, himfelfe maketh answere thus . This doubt (faith he) is very eafi y discided . For first of all , the Prodigall person is benificiall and profitable to many, on whom he bestoweth his goodes bountsfully : whereas the couetous Mifer is not commedious to him-felfe , but maketh

Lexandrin. in

The law of

Valerius Max imus in Lib.

16. Booke of his Histories, calleth him Epimanes, that is to fay, mad, or vareasona-

Ntigonus, King of Syria , fir-named Epiphanes, that is to fay, Famous or illustrious, having heard recitall delinered of the mag-

nificent Triumphe, made by the Confull Paulus Æmylius, for the victory which he won against the Macedonians, when Perfeus their King was taken Prifoner: he conceined fuch enny and difdaine thereat, that in meere vanity and arrogancy, hee refolued to make another Triumphe, that should farre excell and goe beyond the Confuls. Vpon

Of Antigonus Epiphanes.

vee of his goodes, as if he had them not, at least-wife very paringly. He will not eate halfe Comuch, as is needfull for the meere maintenance of his owne life : which makes him looke with a wanne, pale, and meager complection. In the fecond place, the Prodigall gineth liberally, and guiftes paffe from him with a free generous, and good heart: especially, when he exceedeth not the bounds of reason, and his gifts are given to some honest and commendable purpole. But the couetous mans gifts are quite contrary, with a griple and pinching heart, and a villaines disposition. Moreover, as the greedy wretch encreafeth his flore day by day; even fo doth the Prodigall change his naturall inclination and manner of life, as well by course of time, as age drawing on him: which at length letteth him know that he must needs become poore, and fall into want . Whereby many times it comes to paffe, that his manners grow to better reformation then before, and yeares diminishing his lausshnesse: by little and little he recovereth health and (trength againe. Whereas (on the contrary) Auarice is an enerlasting and incurable difease. By which reasons it appeareth, that couctous and auaritious Mifers.

are of a more vile, base, and abject con-

CHAP. XXI.

The Magnificent Triumphe of Antigonus

Epiphanes, made in despight of the Con-

full Paulus Æmylius his Triumphe, for

his victory obtained against the Mace-

dition; then those that be prodigall.

knowne throughout his Kingdome. that on such a day, as he purposely appointed the would be in person at Daphneia, a Citty of Afia, where wonderfull sports and delights were to be performed. Which caused, that not onely the people of Greece, but infinite numbers also (from other Regions) repayred thither; and the order of the royall intended spectacle began in this man-First of all; as the formost leaders to The order & the famous troups following, marched proceeding in fine thousand young men, supposed to royal triumph

this occasion, hee made it publiquelie

bee the very Gallantest Spirits in all Greece, they being armed according to the Romaine manner. After them followed as many of Mysia, armed as the Custome of their owne Countrey required : beeing purfued by three thoufand Thracians, and fine thousand Galatians, and they were feconded with many other, who, because they carried certaine Bucklers or Targets of Silver, were fir-named * Argyrapides. Next vn-hold thefe to thefe, marched twenty fine rankes of warrours to Gladiatores, Sworders, or Fencers, and be of the life fubfequently a thoufand knights, whose Horses were all barbed and caparaso. ned with Gold and Silver, and each of rhem a Garland of Gold on his head. After them followed another thousand Knights, who were tearmed Fellowes! or Companions, and with them another company, that were called Friends Fellows, comto the King : who likewife had a thou- panions, and fand Noblemen following them, and a the King. thousand other braue Knights, called 40 the Kings Band. In the next place, marched fifteene hundred Knights armed al guilt with Armor, ouer which Armor, each man did weare a military Roab or Mantle, embroydered all with Gold & Silver, and enriched with many cofflie Figures of Beaftes. Then followed an hundred Chariots, each one drawne by

One wonder full fumptuous Charior, The spare drawn by ten Elephants, followed next, Chariot that being purfued by fixe and thirty other was to ferme Elephants; befide eight hundred gallant the King whe he pleafed, Youths, wearing Garlands or Crowns of Golde on their heads, embellished with many precious stones, and then followed a thousand fat Oxen, and 800.

V v v 2

fixe Horses, and forty other Chariots.

each drawne by foure Horses.

Memory con-

thy deeds, to

example o-

beautifie the

* A place for all kindes of

or bodie.

teeth of Indian Elephants, carryed by Men, purposely thereto appointed. After these, were borne aloft, an infinite number of Statues and Images, not onely of Gods, but of Damons likewife, and of many men, that had beene most excellent in any profession whatfocuer, which Images were attired in rich Garments of Gold and Silver, befide other coftly deckings of vnualua-ble Stones and Iewels. And at each Sta tues feete, hung a little Tablet of Gold, wherein was engrauen the Name, Titles, and honourable actions, that had beene performed by the party whom the figure expressed, and for whose sake it was thus dignified. Other Images were carried alfo; as of Day, Night, Heauen, Morning and Noone, beside an infinite number of Vessels of Gold 20 and Siluer, reputed to be of inestimable worth, al which were carried by Slaues and Bond-men. Then followed fixe hundred Pages,

attending on the King, all cloathed in The Kings Pages & chief Ladies to Golds next to whom, came two hundred Ladies, each bearing a golden Bottle in her hand, casting perfumes and fweet waters enery way about her : On them attended fifty Litters of Silver, 30 and as many more of Gold, wherein fate fourescore other Ladies, attyred in most sumpenous manner, exceeding al poffibility of expression. This Triumph continued thirty daies, during which time, Antigonus caused divers kindes of Playes and sports to be exercised, and al this while, it was lawfull for any, that were so minded or pleased, to enter into the publique * Gymnasium, and there to annoint himselfe with fifteene sortes of viguents, as of Saffron, Spicknard, Cinamon, Telin, Amazacin, Lillies, &c. Beside, in fundry places, were prepared aboue a thousand and fine hundred Ta-

bles, covered most royally, with all

freely feede, without any exception.

CHAP. XXII.

That Gold and Silver were not in any frequent vfe, among our reverent Aunce-Stours: And at what time they began to be imployed more largely. Alfo, what de--uifes were found out by Timotheus the Athenian, and Condalus, Captaine to Maufolus, for the gaining of Mony.



HE vse of those Mettals, called Golde and Silver, which werfound in Thrace, neere to the River * Pangaus; was very rare and

strange among our fore-fathers. For River receithe Lacedemonians, beeing defirous to guilde the Image or Statue of Apollo* Amycleus : made diligent fearch thorow all Greece, and yet could not finde any Gold: And therefore they were constrained, to fend and buy some of Croefus, King of Lydia. Hiero, the Tyrant of Syracula, having likewife vowed to dedicate a Table of Gold, to Apollo Delphiem, caused search to be made through-

out Greece and Italie, without finding a-

ny : nor euer had done, but of * Archite-

les the Corinthian, who (by little and little) in a long space had got it together. The people of * Phocis, having afterward facked the Temple of De phos, and Alexander carrying thence the prey or booty into Asia: the vie of Gold began so fast to encrease, that divers Vesselles were made thereof, even from fuch as

they washed their handes in , to them that they vied in the Kitchin. The The first flam first stamp that euer was beaten vppon | ping. Gold Coine, was at Rome, in the Temple of Scipio the Affricane.

The Athenians making long warres against the people of * Olynthus; Mony A City of beganne to faile very greatly in the Armie which the Souldiours perceiuing, try of Athens. and with what difficultie it was to bee expected from Athens : they entered into a mutinie or tumult, for appealing whereof, Timotheus, there Captaine, bethought himfelfe of a new and fudden deuised meanes. Hauing first covenanted and agreed with fuch MerLib.7.Cap.9.

drift in Polit

Condatus his prefent fupply of mony, by a politique Orațio made

* He is called

Of Truth and Lying.

The deuise of Timotheus to pay his Soul-diours,

Chap.24.

chants, as were (in this case) to fit and furnish him , vppon this faithfull promife, of exchange and repaiment when time better serued: he caused Mony of Copper to be made, wherewith he paied his Souldiours. And within no long while after, when Mony of Siluer was fent from Athens; he not onely fatisfied the Marchants & Victualers liberally: but also received in all the Copper | 10 Coyne againe, and gaue due restitution for it in Siluer. Aristotle writeth in his Pollitiques,

that Condalus, Captaine to Maufolus,

King of Caria, being in Lycia(a Province

of the Lesser Afia, scituate betweene

Pamphylia and Caria) with an Armie,

andwant of Mony growing greatlica-

his mind, and to his no little greefe, he

a Commission, which hee had (that in-

flant) received from his King, and

which hee likewife knew, could not

chusebut be greatly offensive to them.

For King Maufolus (qouth hee) com-maundeth, that all the Lycians must be

presently shauen, and all their goodlie

long Lockes be powled from their

Heades , to be fent vnto him into Ca-

strange kinde of Apparrell made of

them, in honour of the King of Per-

pretending much compassion towardes

them in this case; further added. That

if they would follow his councell, he

would finde out a meanes, whereby,

not onely their faire Haire should bee

fo be answered, without cutting them

off in any fuch manner. Whereunto

the Lycians auniwered, that they would

gladly follow his direction in all things;

prouided, that their Lockes of Haire

might be kept from defacing . Condalus

then aduifed them, to prepare Money

faued; but the Kinges intent fhould al- 50

sia: because hee will have a new and 40

Condalus continuing on his speech,

mong them : hee invented a meanes. though some-what ridiculous, yet well 20 auhiwering to his owne expectation. He knew very perfectly, that the people of Lycia tooke delight (about all thinges elfe) to weare their lockes of Haire very long: Whereupon, he called diners of the chiefest persons of that to the Lycians Province to him, and faide vnto them, after this manner. That much against

among them (appointing a round and indifferent fumme, which they might gather by the poule, eyther more or leffe, according as their Lockes were in tafhion) and then to fend that Money into Greece, where plenty of fuch haire he would eafily help them to, and afterward fend it to King Maufolms, and caufe it to bee received, as if it were their owne. The Lycians, with all possible Folly account haft that might be vsed, leuyed such a teth nothing deare, so it Maffe of Mony together; as (without felfebe fatisany great dicultie) would have bought them goodly Perriwigs; yea, if they had been all of Gold. Which fumme of Money they delinered to Condalus, who, feigning as if he fent it into Greece; discharged all his Souldiours wants there with, and yet no way displeased the people.

CHAP. XXIII.

What a commendable thing it is, evermore to speake the truth; And what a detestawas constrained to acquaint them with 30 ble vice lying is, with many examples concerning each Argument.



Pimenides the Philopher was asked by the Rhodians, what thing that Vertue was, which Men cald Truth? where to he aunswered.

Truth is that thing , whereof (more then al other) the Gods doe make profession and answere conthe vertue thereof heateth the Heauens; cerning truth illuminateth the Earth : maintaineth Iu-Stice : gowerneth the Common-wealth, and cannot endure any wicked thing neer it, but maketh all doubtfull matters to bee cleare and apparant.

The Corinthians also demanded of Chilo the Philosopher, what this Truth was ? And he replyed . It is an affured chilo his an-Gage, which never diminisheth it felfe: A swere of truth Buckler or Shielde, that never can bee pier- to the Corinced thorough : A time, wwhich never is troubled in it felfe : An Armie , neuer daunted or dismaied : A Floure, that never

Epimenides his

possible diversity of precious dainties and delicates, where every man might (by fome) Ar-

A Promontory of Threet,

whereof the

uted name,

A Citty of

Laconia, when

lux were

try of Greece,

Pretended pitty is often-times the greler, in matter of no meane

An excelleni

observation

of the power

Difference

betweene the

Diversity of

qualitic of

answer to the

erning truth

Philosopher.

reth Fortune : And a Hauen , wherein no Man Shall ever Suffer perill . The Lacedemonians likewife entreated Anaxarchus the Philosopher, to resolue them what Truth was, and he made answere . It is a perpetuall health and welfare; A life with out ending ; A Sirope that healeth all infirmities ; A Sunne alwaies (hining ; A Moon that neuer suffereth Eclipse; An Hearbe ener growing ; A Gate neuer fout against any; And a iourney, wherein no Man can waxe weary. Æschines also said of Truth. It is a vertue, without which, all strength is feeble and infirme : Iustice bloody : Humility a Traytreffe; Patience counterfeit; Chastity vaine ; Liberty a Prisoner; and Piety Superfluous. And another Philosopher, beeing demaunded by the be; gane them this answere. Truth is the Center, wherein all thinges doe rest;

The Emperor flus triumphing ouer Mark Anthonie and Cleopatra.

Spartianus his report of Pam philus the fa-

fadeth or withereth: A Sea, that never fea-Romaines, what he thought Truth to The Sea-mans Card, whereby all the Marri-uers doe gouerne themselues ; That Wisedome, which is the quide and directer to all Men; Aheight, on the top whereof is all fulnesse of repose; And a light, whereby the whole world is illumined.

The Emperour Angustus, in the Triumphe which he made of Marke Anthony and Cleopatra; brought with him to Rome a Priest of Ægypt, aged three-score yeares, who in all the daies of his life, had never told any lye. In regard whereof, the Senate prefently ordained, that he should be made free, and created Great Priest : Alfo, that a Statue should be erected for him, and placed among those of the most renowmed me of all the Ancients. Spartianus relateth an example much dissemblable from this last, and saith. In the time of the Emperor Claudius, there died a Man in Rome, named Pamphylus, who (as it was most enidently instified) never told any matter of truth in all his life time; but evermore had his chiefe delight in lying, which caused the Emperour to giue commaund, that no Graue should be graunted to his body: but his goods were confiscated his House ruined, and his Wife and Children banished out of Rome, to the end, that no memorie might remain in the Commonwealth, of fuch a venomous Beaft. At the time when these two notable effects hapned, the Romaines were Mortall enemies to

the Ægyptians, whereby may worthilie be observed how wonderful the power of truth is : in regard that the Romaines would advance a Statue, in the honour of their enemy, onely because he was a Man of truth, and deprive their Cittieborn son of a Sepulcher, because he was fuch a notorious Lyer. It is no way to be doubted, but that a true man may freely walke, and practife in all places, without feare of being accused by any perfon.He may alfo (in fafetie & dreadleffe) reprehend any Lyer, and speake Lyer. boldly in face of all the world, going alwaies with an erected and dauntlesse countenance. But the Lyer is fled of all Men, like to a noyfome pestilence, and fo long as hee lineth; yea, after death likewise, he is infamous to all Posterity. His reward and wages, is, that if hee chance to speake truth, no man wil beleeue him : For, by being fo knowne a Lyer, truth (in his mouth) standeth alwaies suspected.

CHAP. XXIIII.

What a benefit the Invention of Letters was unto man : Who fir st found out and deui-Sed them. Of the Hebrue Charracters & what fignification they have of them-(elues, differing from all other Letters else in any Nation.



F those men may justly & commendation, that were the first deuisers of liberall and mechanical Arts, and they likewife, & commendation, that merit, account of the

that found out divers Doctrines and enstructions nor onely appertaining to the rule and direction of the Soule, but likewise for bodily vse and behaulour: how much more great and especiall honor then is due to him, that was the first Inventer and deuiser of Letters ? Those incomparable Instruments, which have bin the certaine guards and conferuers, of all other inventions whatfoeuer : for without them, not any denife could haue been preferued, wherero we may adde moreouer, that Letters haue made Men halfe immortall.

The power and prerogaters, and wha hath enfued (by their meanes) from times of An-

No memory

had remained

but by Let-

ters, for elfe.

all precedent

accidents had bin vtterly

Diuerfity of

opinions a-

uention of

Pliny. in Lib.7.

Cadenus Cap-taine of the

Phanitions, brought Ler-

ing then but fixteene in

ters into

Chap. 24.

gatine, that matters of a thousand yeares past, are (by them) so familiarly presented vnto vs; as if there had beene no distance or deuision of time. By them are apprehended all kindes of Disciplines. They make knowne to men of this instant age, whatfoeuer our graue fore-goers learned and made vse off, or any famous actions by them perfourmed : And those thinges which these dayes affoord (as deserving future knowledge) by them, are left as Legacies to vtmost posteritie. They thew and represent vnto the eye, matters once done, euen as if they were in continuall action, and as full of life in the infant, as in the precedent : which neuer could have beene done, if Letters hadde neuer beene deuised . For neither Plato, Aristotle, nor a great number of other 20 wife Philosophers, had carried such reputation with vs, as now they doe but onely by their facred meanes. For conclusion then, we may very well fay that the onely best and greatest thing (among all humaine inuentions) was that of Lerters. Whofoeuer is doubtfull, or maketh any question in this case; let him but reade and confider what is left written to vs, whereby he shall well perceine: that | 20 all those famous memories and antiquities, had beene vtterly loft, and no record remained of them, but onely by Letters.

Such hath bin their power and prero-

Seeing then, that they are the cause of so great a happinesse, reason (in meere Inflice) requireth, that we hould know, to whom wee are beholding for them And yet I finde it to bee a matter of no meane difficultie, because opinions are fo various and doubtfull in this cafe. The Gentiles doe much difagree heerein with our Christians, and Christians also have not well concorded together . Pliny fetteth downe many opinions, and then addeth his owne; which (in my judgement) commeth much neerer to truth then the other. First of all he faith, that Letters were found out by the Affirians in Affiria : but others doe affirme that Mercury founde them first in Egypt . Some (be-side) are of the minde, that the Pelagians brought them into Italy; or elfe that they were carried into Greece by the Phanitiaus, with Cadmus, who was their Captaine, who had no more of them then. but fixteene in number : but in the warre of Troy, Palamedes added foure more vnto

them. After Plimes report of all these, and some opinions beside, he conclude the according to his owne judgement : That Letters were eternall, which is as much to fay, that they had beene from the beginning of the world.

Now, concerning the bringing of Letters into Greece by the Phanittans, ans, bringing Herodotus and divers others doe affirme it. The Egiptians also doe make their vaunt, that the invention of Artes and Letters came first from them . Diodorus Sten us is of the minde, that Mercury founde them out in Egipt . Howbeit, the fame Diodorus faith in his 4. Booke, that some are of opinion, that the Etheopians had Letters first of all, and that the Egiptians received their first vse of Letters from them Vpon this Argument. there are divers other ; as well lewes as Christians, who doe plainly auouch, that Moyles aid be the first finder out of Letters in the world : for he was much more an- inuenter of cient, then any letters or writings among the Gentiles, because the same Cadmus (of whom we have formerly fpoken, and that he should bring Letters into Greece) lined in the time of Othoniell , Duke and Othoniell, Captaine of Ifraell, and raigned forty featien years, after that the written lawes Ifraelli were given to Moyfes, as is enidently prootted, and lo not a home and a la

They that are of this opinion (anione whom were Eupolemus and Artabanus, Ethnique Historians) thog maintaine, that the Egiptians learned Letters of Moyfes, and that they galle them first to the people of Phantia, from whence (afterward) Cadmus transported themanto Greece. The fore named Artabanus instifieth, that the man, named Mercurius or Mereary (whom al do affirme to have taught Letters in Egipti) was cherfes; but called Mercurius by the Egiptians . Philo the lew a man of great authority, maketh Letters to be more anneient; for he faith, that they were found out by Abraham in But the truth is, that they were invented by Adam, or (at least) by his Sonnes, or Sonnes Sonnes, in the first age of the world, and before the Floud. Then were they conferued to Noah and his Successors, even to the comming of Abraham , and fo afterward to Moyles : And this is the judgement and opinion of S. Augustine. More ouer, this is yet further verified, by the authoritie of 10-18. de Cinii. Dei.

Duke and Captaine of

The Egipti-Letters of

Moyfes called the Egiptians

first inventers

Such

The Authors

Originall and

racters and

Hierom, in Pre

Letters.

Prefernation

Adam and his

3.950

The flock of

Heber loft not

their first lan-

Eufebius in lib.

z. de Preparat.

Phila the Idw

and diuers o

thers decei-

ued in their

guage.

of Letrers fro

Sonnes to

tofep, in Lib. 1. fephus, in Laying; That the Nephewes of de Antiquit. Adam, the Sonnes of Seth, made two Collombes, the one of Stone, and the other of Earth, whereon they wrote and insculpted all the Artes. He also affirmeth', that himselfe had seene one of those Pillers in Syria

We finde also, that Saint Inde the Apostle, alleadged in one of his Epifiles, the Booke of Enoch, which was before the Flood. So then, it is not to be doubted, but that Adam and his Sonnes (who were all fo wife, and had intelligence in fo many thinges) were the onely first Inventer of Letters. And that Noah alfo, who was both lettered and learned, preferred them with him in the Arke. Howbeit, that afterward, in the confusion of Tongues, which happened at the building of the Tower 20 of Babell: it might come to passe, that the greater part of the W orld lost the knowledge of those Letters, which remained onely in the Family of Heber, of whom (afterward) the Hebrues defcended, who, as we have alreadie faid, loft not their first Language. Saint Aueustine auoucheth as much, in his book before alleadged the like doth Eulehius alfo, in his first Booke of the Euangelicall preparation, and the greater part of the learnedst men of our times.

Wherefore Phile, and fuch befide him, as supposed, that Meyfes was the Inuenter of Letters swere greatly deceiusd in their owne imaginations: becanfelt is a matter most notorious, that the Bookes and Histories written by Moyfes were not the first before all other, por before the Philosophy and Wisedome of the Greekes, as Saint Augustine prooueth fufficiently in the faide Booke; and Infephus alfo, against Appion the famous Grammarian of Agypt and likewife Eufebius and lustine Martire. He and they should have concluded then, that Letters were before the time of Moyles ; because we finde it written that Moyfes learned in Ægypt, all the Arts and Sciences of the Ægyptians, which he could not have doone, except there had beene Letters before. And yet we know moreouer, that there were Hierogliphicall Figures, whereby (as we formerly prooued in the first

Booke) they had understanding of one anothers mind.

We will therefore fet downe our resolue, that Letters were from the dayes of Adam, and afterward, that Abraham had knowledge of them in Syria: and thence it enfued, that Plinie varried in so many opinions before related. It thall be needleffe therefore, to make any further curious fearch, as touching the Originall and causes of Charracters and Letters : because they may be made according to any mans mind or will; euen as now-adaics wee fee, that Ciphers, Figures, or what elfe, are formed; after the fancy of the Wrtter or Deuiser, and sometimes signes or shapes in stead of Letters.

So faith Saint Hierome, in his Prologue before the Booke of the Lawes, fat.Lib. de Leg. and that when Efdras, the great Scribe and Doctour of the Law, re-writ and restored them againe : hee found new Charracters or formes of Letters, whereof the lewes did make, vie to the time of Saint Hierome, euen as yet they doe to these dayes of ours. And those Hebrue Letters or Charracters , have a Secret propriety | not incident to the Hebrew Let Letters of any other Nation: for the ters have a voyce, found, or name of each one of them, yeildeth a fignification of some thing elfe belide.

The first Letter, which is tearmed Alegh, doth fignify Discipline. The fecond, named Beth, fignifyeth a House. Gymell, which is another Letter, relaterh replenishing, or aboundance. And Daleth, Tables or Bookes . All the reft of the Letters, doe interpret fome one thing or other which I forbeare to fpeake of, to amove prolixitie. Such as are more curious Inquitours into these occasions : let them read Eufe-

blus, in his first Booke, De Preparatione Enangelica.

Vicinities of the Control of A

o de la comilia de bacelos :

Chap.25. Of writing, before Paper was known. 789

How our Auncients wrote, and wherean. before the invention of Paper, and with what Instrument. How Paper and Parchment were first found out, and by whom.

whereon our

first Fathers

E haue spoken briefelv in

fay fomewhat, of the matter whereon our fore-fathers vied to write. Now, albeit wee cannot exactly fet downe, what it was that our first Fathers (in the first Age, and before the Flood) did write vpon, as being a cafe very doubtfull; to wit, whether then they had the vie of Letters, although we have made proofe thereof by the authority of Iofephus, affifted by fome other reasons befide:yet it euidently appears(according to the generall judgement of Writers) [3 that fuch as wrote in those elder times, had not, neither knew what Paper was; but onely did write on Leaues of the Palme or Date Tree, from whence followed the common word (yet vsed) the Leaues or Leafes of Bookes. Afterward they wrote vpon other Leaues of Trees, but principally fuch as came eafielt from each Tree: as the Birche, the Platane, the Ash, and the Elme, From these Trees they tooke the inner-most Rinde, which groweth betweene the Wood and the thicke blacke Barke, and these foft skinnes being subtillie smoothed and plained : of them they formed the Leaues of their Bookes, ioyning them arteficially one within another, that they might the more firmely hold together. And because (in those reuerend daies) the Latines tearmed those inner-most Rindes of Trees, by the Name of Libri: it thence enfued, that they gaue the Title of Liber to one of their Bookes, though afterward they refused all further vie of those meanes.

Within some while after, they found out another helpe for Writing, which was vpon Places of Lead, ingeniouslie made thin and plyant : whereof, fome Plates of lead Men (that were more curious and fpe- made apt to culariue) made likewise Collombes or Pillers, as well as Bookes, whereon they registred all publique actions; Those Ancient Fathers, found our yet another manner of Writing, which was on Linnen Cloath, finoothed and pollished with a certain kind of colour. Linnen cloth But heere we are to observe, that they a colour. vied not then to write with Pennes; write on. but with a little Cane or Reede, which yet is called by vs (as then) in Latine Calamu, and wherewith fome doe ftill vie Reeds.

Afrerward, another kinde of Paper was denifed to write vpon, which they made of divers little Shrubs of Trees, cald by them Papers : by reason of anothur addition thereto, to wit; of a certaine kind of Rushes, growing ordinarily in the Moores and Marithes of Ny. lus, and the name of this Rush in Latine, is called * Papyrus. Pliny faith, that there is yet growing in Syria, neere to the Ri-ure Euphrates, certaine Papers or Ru-fishes, that haue fundry little Leaues, groundes! Rindes, or Skinnes, growing naturally betweene the Pith and Barke: which they made beeing cunningly drawne our with the leaus to write point of a needle, and intermedled with of the first paa kinde of Glue, made of Meale (verie per was made finely fearced or boulted) and tempe-and now it is red with boyling Water and Vineger; the paper. Paper is made thereof, apt and very Prima the 12, 2 good to write vpon. But that skinne [49, 11.12. which is neerest to the Pith, maketh the best and smoothest Paper: whereby we may gather, that according to the forts and differences : fo are the Papers dinerfly named. And in regard that this Reede, Rufh, or little Shrub, was named Papyrus; the Name of Paper hath fo continued, and was likewife impoled on those kinds of Paper, which were (fince then) made of Shreds, rags, and smallest peeces of Linnen Cloath, past all kind of service, and fir for no o. ther vie.

Mareus Varro faith, that the first Inuention of making Leaues of Paper, ei- Mar. Varro, in ther of Shrubs, Rushes, or otherwise: Lib.7. was found out in the time of Alexander the Great, and at such time also, as the Cittie of Alexandria was first founded. Notwithstanding, Pliny prooueth it

Iofephus cont.

Moyfes learnd the Arts of the Egiptians

to write.

CHAP, XXV.

the precedent Chapter, concerning the invention of Letters : it now remaineth, that we should

ward peele or rinde of a

Parch-mene written on, before our kindes of Pa-

*That oner-

Plin in Lib. 12. Cap. 9. Iofephus.in Lib. 12.de Antiquit

much more auncient, by those Bookes which Cnews Terentius found, by digging in one of his Inheritances, which Books had formerly belonged to Numa Pompilliss, King of Rome, and had beene hidden in a Temple, where himselfe was buried, and the leaves of those Bookes were made of the faid Rushes or shrubbes. It is held for a certainty, that Numa lived long time before Alexander. And yet Titus Liusus reporteth otherwise of this Tomber affirming that two fuch Tombs were found by L. Patilius . Lattantius and Pluturch doe heerein agree with Titus Linius : and yet notwithstanding the intention of Pliny is most approued.

Now concerning the word Carta, or Charta, fome doe holde, that this name came of a Citty, scituated neere to Tyre, which was called Charta, or Cartha; whence Dide (altring the name) called it *A famous afterward * Carthage. I read alfo, that those reuerend men of former times, did write on waxed Tablet-leaues, made thin finooth and flippery: they likewise formed their letters, with sharpe pointed Bodkins or Punchions, which they tearmed Table-Pinnes, but others called the Stiles, whereon, he that (by expertnesse) wrote most perfect, was faid to haue a 30 good flile in writing, derining the worde from the instrument, and not by the integritie in Art or method.

Moreover, it is to be noated, that before fuch Paper (as we vie to write on) was invented : an auncient custome was observed, (without seeing any other help or meanes) to write onely vpon Parch-ment, which they made of Sheeps Skins, whereof Herodoiss maketh relation. The invention thereof is attributed (by Mareus Varro) to the people that inhabited the Country of Pergamus, or Pergama, who had (at that time) * Eumenes to be their King; where-vpon (in Latine) it bare the name of Pergamenum, which we do com monly call Parchment. And whereas in Latine alfo, it was called Membrana: yet it appeareth to take name of the Inuenter. Notwithstanding, in my judgment, fuch skinnes were written on long before the time affigned by Varro; mentioned (after him) in like manner by Plim : because Tosephus writeth, that the Books of the Hebrewes (which were long before the dayes of Eumenes) and many

other Bookes beside, were written on

fuch Skinnes .

In like manner, when he declareth, Ptolomic Phile that Eleazer, Prince of the Prieftes, fent delphus, and the Bookes of the facred Scriptures to the 72. Inter-Ptolemeus Philadelphus, with the feauenty two Interpreters, that they might bee translated out of the Hebrew tongue into Greeke, he faith; King Ptolomy was amazed, and wondred very much, at the invenious conjunction of those Skinnes of Parchment . Whereby may be obserued that the lines written on Parchment. were much more eafily perfourmed, and of longer continuance, then on any other Parthment of Skinnes or Leaues whatfoeuer, althogh they were of greater antiquity. In re-gard whereof, vie of Parchment neuer failed, neither euer will, especially for serious seruices : albeit, the Paper which is now in vie among vs, perhaps is easier and cheaper to be had, and may better fit the passage of infinite Letters, which ordinarily are entercourfed youn all oc-

Having thus farre proceeded in difcourse, concerning the first invention of Letters, Paper, Parchment and writing: Concerning me thinkes, I should very much forget the incomparable Art of my selfe, if the famous Art of Printing Printing. should passe vnspoken of, whereby so many Bookes are Imprinted, with no meane expedition, and which I doe ingeniously confesse, to be the best inuention in the world. By one Authour, the deuiser therof is said to be an Allemaigne or Germaine, of the Citty of Mentz, naor Germaine, of the Citty of Mentz, na-med Iohn Faustus, (although Po'idore Vir-gill doe call him Peter) yet others tearmed out, and y him John Cuthemberg, confessing him alfo to be a Germaine, and a Knight, and that the first impression of any Booke, was in the yeare of our Lord, 1453.

cafions, and necessitie of haft-

About which time also, or soone after (as Volateranus affirmeth) this worthy Science was brought into Italy by two Brethren, named Conrades, printing first in Rome, and in the house of the Maximes: where, the first Booke that ever was prin- The first ted, was S. Augustine de Cinitate Dei, & Bookes prin next, the divine Institutions of Lattantius Firmianus . Exemplaries of them were 1465. not long fince (and I thinke yet are) in the Library of the most reuerend Bishop of Sarne, the Lord Lucaouico Gomes, a Spaniard, a man of finguler learning, being Auditour of Rona, Regent of the Penetentiarie, and Referendarie of both the

Chap.25. Of writing, before Paper was known.

Printing be-gan in Venice in the yeare 1 4 8 3.

Signatures. After that, Nicholas Gerfon, being a Frenchman, honoured Venice therewith, in the time of Duke Augustine Barbarigo . And, as an invention of fuch merit could not be concealed; fo succeeded it to many Countries, and by divers worthy men, who befide their Art of Printing; were learned and indicious Correcters of errours and falfifications, eafily ouer-flipped by vnskilful worke-men. Among these men of noat, are especially commended, Aldus Manutius at Venice, who made a fresh restoring of the Latine tongue : Francis Priscianez, at Kome : Baldus Colinetus, Frobenius and Oporinus, at Bafile : Sebastian Gryphinis at Lyons : Robert Stephanus at Paris and Ant. werpe; and William Caxton at London in England, besides many more, whose names I omit, for breuity.

Printing was the onely meanes to moke learned

Especial men

excellent in

Printing, in

ly committed in the writing of Bookes, which (by Printing) haue beene

n objection against the er-general ing, where much hur

By these famous helpes, and furtherers of Learning, a number of Bookes hidden, obscured and veterly lost (asit were) received fresh life and light again; to the no meane enftruction and benefit of many men, whole learning hath made it felfe manifelt (onely by the meanes of Printing) througout all Christendome, yea, and elfe-where : whereas, before fo facred an affiltant was inuented; much greater paine and labour was imployed; of true forme and fathion, wheref curtowhereof the fruit could neuer be fo generall, or any fuch perfection appeare in Learning. And, if we doe graunt, that this deuise was not the chiefe and principall cause: yet affuredly (I am of the mind) it was the very greatest and most absolute; because, with much lesse paine and labour, Bookes (full of imperfections) haue beene found to be corrected. and purged from those macculations. blots, and blemishes, which ordinarilie doe attend on writing. Againe, if writ-ten corrected Copies had past from som one or two : yet they were fo rare to come by, and not to be perufed by many earnest and desirous mindes; that it hindered much forward endeuour, which this vniuerfality hath liberally friended. But, to speake truely, since immeasurable Licence tooke hold of Imprinting Bookes, especially of Fables and fruit-

leffe labours; it hath beene judged by

fome (yet none of meanest wisedome)

that Printing might well have beene spa-

red from so general knowledge, or neuer beene ysed at all; rather then such idle toyes should passe the Presse, to the preuarication and impoyfoning of divers good minds, especially the younger fort, who rather affect fuch vaine denifes, then fludies much more commendable, and fitting for them.

But leaving further speech of Printing; Hand-writing must not bee condemned, having (in these dayes) attay- fection there ned to more intire perfection, then ever of in thele was knowne in former times. Whereof Quintillian hath gluen good rules, well deferuing observation ; likewise the learned Erajmus, in his Booke of good and true pronounciation . And heerein Erafmus must be my directour , because he faith : Blinde men haue beene instructed ver pro. the good writing. For they had Tables made of Porphirie, Bone, or of some Mettall, wherein were insculpted the let. ters of A.B.C.D.E. &c. Then the blinde partie tooke fome that peninted write very Inftrument in his hand (made apr and a priferely, and ble to vie impression, yet with eafe and facilitie) and his hand being guided by its. the enftructers : vie, and practife framed a shape of each Letter in the blinde mans

marie acquaintaince (by heed and attention) gaue an Image, and of enery Letter, really in his memory, which afterward he could (with ease) forme vpon the Table, or any thing elfe of respect, whereto his minde flood most affected . Wherin might appeare some defect or impediment, but yet it would be well made, and indifferently leageable. After which often experimented proof, he may write

vpon Paper, in true order and Method: perfection, or any elfe, that (blind folded) hal make vie thereof, concerning any matter than best fitteth his fantasie

CHAP

The first Li-

mong the He-

The Chalde-

the Hebrues

The Prophet

Efdras re-writ

the Bookes.

according to

the dumber

Alphabet.

of the Hebrue

Inde.Cap. 1.14.

ans burned all

CHAP, XXVI.

Of the first Libraries in the world : As also, what Pictures and Portraitures of memorable men, were obsequiously preserued in them.



I is not to be doubted but that the first Bookes and Libraries that ener were in the world, must needes bee among 20 the Hebrue people.

For, as it is certaine, that Letters were by them first knowne, and vie made of them: so is it likewise to be presumed, that they were not neglect or carelesse in keeping them, or whatfocuer they committed to writing. This is instified by the authority of lofephus, before alleadged, as also, by that which we reade in the holy Scriptures . Ifidorus relateth, that 30 after the Chadaans had burned the Library of the Hebrewes, with all the Bookes of the Lawes: the Hebrewes being gon of the Laws, the Prophet Efdra (being thereto lightened by the bleffed Spirit) repaired that loffe, by writing those Bookes oner againe, reducing them into the number of two and twenty Bookes, according to the number of the Alphabet letters. Whereby may be gathered , that after Moyles had written : the Hebrewes had a Library, wherein they preserved the Books of the Law, as well those which we have of the old Testament, as the rest, whereof wee haue already made mention. Among which, was the Booke of Enoch, alleadged by Saint Inde the Apostle in his Epifile, spoken of also before : And the Book of the warres of the Lord, whereof memory is made in the twenty one Chapter of Numbers: And the Booke of the just fernants of the Lord, alleadged in the first Booke of the Kings and the Booke of Samuell, recorded in the last Chapter of the first Booke of Paralipomenon: And the Booke of Nathan the Prophet, with

many other beside, which appeared to haue bin burned and doft. Therefore we may plainly perceiue, that the lewes had Libraries had Libraries, and that those which appertained to the Gentiles, were both after the other, and of later time .

All the Grecians doe declare, that hee who first made any publique Library, Pifistraturos was named Pisifratue, a Tyrant ouer the Athenians: but afterward, it was greatly lique Libraincreased by those people. In follow- rie. ing time , when Xerxes came to Athens, he carried thence all those Bookes, and transported them into Persia: but a long while after, the King Selucus (called Ne-canor) bought them, and caused them to be carried backe to Athem againe. This affirmation proceedeth from Aulus Gelantimation proceeded from James 1611.

Instance of the King Protein Philadelphus made, was afterward very largely increased. Notwithstanding, that Library of Alexandria in Egipt, which the King Protein Philadelphus made, was (in very truth) the most excellent of all other in the world beside: because therein was the old Testament, and all the facred wri- The Library tings of the feauentie two Interpreters, of Alexandr and a great multitude of all other bookes whatfocuer. Yet Pliny auoucheth, that King Eumenes made another Library in the Citty of Pergama, in enuy of that which Ptolomie had founded . Aulus which Ptolomie had founded . Auus Anius Gellius and Amianus Marcellinus doe fay, in Lib. 6. that in the Library of Alexandria in E- Amian. Marie gipt, there were seauen hundred thousand in Lib 7. Copp. Bookes. Seneca doth (in a manner) agree concerning the number, which although it seeme to be excessive, yet notwithstanding, who foeuer hath read of the expences and great cost, which the Kings of Egipt have wasted, in the making of Obeliskes, Pyramides, Temples, Houses, Shippes, and other thinges of inestimable charge (some part of which matters are spoken of by Budeus, in his Annota- Budeus in At tions on the Pandettes, and Lazarus de not de Pand Barf, in his Art of Nauigation) this Libra-in Art Nauigation) this Libra-ry will not appeare impossible to their

Bookes were brought to this Library from al the Nations of the whole world, and also in all Languages; and they that had the charge thereof, were all of them very learned men. One part was appointed for Bookes of Poetry, others also for Histories, and elsewhere for all the Sciences and faculties: but all this

indgement.

Plutare, in vit

Strabo in lib.7

dicteth other

Domitian the

aulus Orofius

learning thus brought together, was bur ned by the Soldiers of Iulius Cafar, when he pursued Pompey thither, and fought against the people of Psolomie, who was brought vnto Cleopatra. As for that other Librarie, which was made by Eumenes in Pergama: Plutarch faith

The Lybrarie which we read of in

Greece, Strabo faith , that Aristotle was

the first that made a Collection of

in the life of Marke Anthonie, that it confifted of two hundered thousand Bookes.

Chap.26.

Cafart Souldi

ours burned

this goodly Library.

Bookes together, and framed a Library of Bookes in the Citty of Athens . But therein he contradicteth the other Hiftorians, who doe all maintaine, that it was Pisstratus, who lived long time before Aristotle. Therefore it is to be vnderstood, that Straboes meaning 20 aymed at some one particular Man, who was neither King or Prince, as Pifistratus was : howbeit, it may be pregnantly coniectured, that Aristotle was therein much succoured and affisted by Alexander. Later Libraries and Letters, where-

The first pubin Rome mad by Afsinius Pollio.

Al the Libra-

ries in Rome

burned and spoyled.

in the Cittie of Rome, and the first that erected a publique Lybrarie there, was Afinius Pollio, of whom Pliny faith: 30 That of the Spirits of Men he made a publique matter. The first man that brought thither any great quantitie of Bookes, was Paulus Emilius, when he had van-quished Perseus: And next to him, L. Lucullus, from the bootie of Pontus. Iulius Cafar also augmented and enriched the Lybraries, which he commit-ted to the charge and keeping of Marcus Varro : but all the Lybraries in Rome. were afterward burnt and brought to nothing, by the frequent Warres, and often spoyles made of the Cittie. And yet this great loffe was repaired againe, by the Emperour Domitian, for he caufed fearch to bee made thorough all Countries, for Bookes of any Nature whatfocuer; yea, he fent into Ægypt, to have the Lybrarie that remained there, to bee transported to Rome. Whereby it verie plainely appeareth, that all King Ptolomies Bookes were not destroyed (as formerly hath beene faid) because a great part of them were

afterward recovered . And Paulus O-

rofius doth heere perswade me, when

he faith; Foure hundred thoufand of the Bookes were burned : And by the confirmation of other Historians; we finde, that there were feaven hundred thoufand in all, and three hundred thousand doe then appeare to be faued howbeit, fome would faine enforce, that they were all burned.

Of the first Libraries.

But returning to the Lybragie of Rome Library burned again faith, that in the time of the Emperor in the time of Commodus, it was once more burned: the Empero neuertheleffe, Gordianus the Emperour regained a great number of Bookes; to the estimate of seauentie and two thousand Volumes. And that (which is much more notable) hee enjoyed them by the last Will and Testament of Seranus Samonieus, to whom they This man first appertained according as Julius Capitelinus recordeth. There were many other great and goodlie Lybraries made senator among those of elder times, as well prinate and meane persons, as Princes and great Lords. But the first Librarie among the Christians, was that (as Isl-dorus tellificity) of Pamphilius the Mar-brary among the Christian account to Pathing the Christian tire, whose life is registred by Ensebius, and that he had thirty thousand volums in his Library.

We read of a common Custome Pictures of observed among those grave Men, famous learned men pre-chiefely in their Lybraries: where they ferued in Lipreserved the Pictures, Portraites, and brailes.
Statues, of such men as had been most excellent in Learning. Plusy also faith. that Marcus Varro (euen in his life time) fo merited by his learning that cap. 7. his Statue was kept in the Library of Asinius Pollio. Cicero wrote to Fabianus the Gaule, that he should buy him fome Statues and Portraites, wherewith to grace and beautifie his Lybrarie. The younger Pliny, writing to Inlius Senerus, faith ; that Herennius Sewerus (a very excellent learned man) mlib.4. placed in his Librarie (among other Pi-Ctures) those of Cornelius and Titus Arius fufficient testimony have woof all those things.

Now, concerning these recited Ly-braries, and those of many other learned men, and of Princes alfo, in imitation of their example : they were all destroyed and ranaged by the Gothes, Alaines, and Vandales, vntill such time as

Xxx

Plin in lib. 9.

1.Chron.19.29

2.Kings. 1.18

Who were Libraries and Learning.

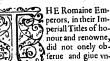
Our Bookes not equalling the tenth part of our Anci-

(by the goodnesse of God) both in our daies, and those of our fore-fathers, many learned and studious men lived, whose paines and endeuours created infinite others, from whom have proceeded heapes of huge Volumes; albeit I thinke them not the tenth part, compared with those which their graue Auncientaleft in Writing. Beside, such as haue beene sound, were so vncorrected, corrupted and badlie written: that had it not beene for the indulgent trauale, of divers great and worthy personages, they could hardly haue beene reduced to any order and perfe-

CHAP, XXVII.

The Interpretation of the Imperiall Titles, heeretofore given by the Romaine Emperours, as they have beene found regi-Stred in the Bookes De Iurisprudentia, abbreuiated and re-collected by commandement of the Emperour Iustinian, to wit: Of the Gothes, Allemaignes, Germaines, Alanes, Vandals, Affricanes, Gætes, Girpides, &c. and of many other Nations, appertaining to the Same kinde of Argument.

Vaine Titles affected by the Romaine Emperours.



periall Titles of ho-nour and renowne, did not onely ob-ferue and giue vn-to themselues, the to themselves, the

Names or Appellations of those Prouinces wonne by them, and reduced vnder the yoake of their Empire : but likewise of such Nations and people, as left their own Countries (in abounding multitudes) and entred on the so Landes and possession of others, thence to chafe and expell the naturall Inhabitants, to plant there their owne abiding, by giving them fundry battailes, and fome way furmounting, though not wholly exterminating them. Vpon which reason, Iustinian would en-

title himselfe, of the Goths, Allemaignes, Vandales, and of others. Of which Nations, I purpose to speake in some measure, what people they were, and whence they came : because (at length) they ruined the great Romain Empire. kened and ru Whereto I am the rather induced, to main Empire enstruct such as are little skilled in Histories (not onely Cosmographicall, but likewise Geographicall) how those people did not onely weaken and ruinate the faide Empire : but also did cast out the true and naturall Dwellers, of the verie greatest part of our Hemispheare.

Moreouer, they compelled the Emperours to graunt them places, wherein to live (afterward) in peace and quietnesse: for these Nations were the cause, whereby many Countries changed both their manners, Language, and Religion, which matters are necessarie to be spoken off, as nerely appertaining to our argument.

We will begin then first with the Gothes, because they were the first, that Of the Goth, forfooke their owne Natiue Country: their original, Country which was called Gothia, or Gothland, and nature, as fignifying a good Land, it beeing a Northerne Prouince of Germanie. This Land abounded in Graine, Fruites, Cattle, Woodes, Rivers, Mettalles: but especiallie in Copper, and Skinnes feruing to make Furres. At all times, and as yet (to this instant daie) is to bee discerned, the Kingdome of Swessia, or Sweuia , hath beene comprized vnder the Dominion of the Gothes . As the More plenty Countrey was fertile in Fruites of the Earth; euen fo were the Weomen thereof likewise in Children : for, as feed and no they were strong, and of great stature, rish. so had they viually two Children at a birth, which was the cause then, and so it yet continueth, that they had more people, then could well line together, the Countrey not beeing sufficient to yeilde fustenance for fo many. In like manner, they were very great feeders, eating much more then they that line in the Easterne or Meridionall

These people of the Gothes, perceiuing, and aduitedly pondering on the Aleuyof fore-ipecified reasons: leuyed the more part of the youngest and strongest men ablemenaof their Countrey, to the number of mong the Gother.

ting Armies abroad in trauaile.

three hundred thousand; and marryed fuch as were nor, to ridde themselies of the charge of Daughters, as well as of Sonnes, for the Countrey ordinari, ly abounded in the Feminine, more then in the Masculine Sexe. So, bei ing well prouided of all necessaries for Warre, and leaving a chiefe Commander at home, of the Royall linage ithey wandered abroad thorow the Fieldes, 10 to winne by power, or compasse by Loue, some new habitation wherein to liue.

ly and Spain.

the Gothes

The Gothes

wander to feeke a new dwelling.

Chap.28.

Many Authours, and, among the reft, Trebellius faith, that the first rumour of this their straying, was vnder the raigne of the Emperour Flaujas Claudius, about the yeare of our Lord lesus Christ, two hundred seuenty two. And that they paffed thorow Germany, 20 Hungaria, Thrace, Greece, Gaule, and fo farre as Italie . They loft many battailes, and wonne likewife as many, against the Romaines and other people, maintaining themselves so well : that they raigned in Italie (euen in despight of the stalians and Emperours) the space of seamentie and one yeares; as Procopius auoucheth. At length they went into Spaine, whence (afterward) 30 they would not remoone: for the Catholique Kinges of Spaine that then raigned by succession, and raigne yet to this present, descended from the race and line of their Kinges, who were (in-

Now, it is to be imagined, that in The reason of regard of fuch a mighty muster of men, the Countrey of Gothia, or Goth-land, and continuor the Neighboring Borders, remained 40 not without Inhabitants, or the rule of Kinges: For there were even then left behind, fo many as the Land was able to nourish, who had their Kinges in authority ouer them, and strength sufficient to with-fland any inuation of the Country. As for the conquering Armies abroad, they continued in honour for a verie long time; albeit, they loft great flore of men in battailes, encounters, furprizals, and paffages of Riuers: for these disaduantages were fill supplyed, by the daily birth of Children among them, because they had their Wines in all places among them . And perhaps fome Straungers

deed) very generous people.

mingled among them, who wearing their habites, and learning their Land guage shelpt still to encrease the fire of this people.

Such as hane boene namel Offro- Of the offmi gothes; were a people of the fame County gothing white treyof Gethia on Gatteland, from a place Coursey. which is called Offrogothis, the principall Citries whereof, are stheme and Lincope a This people made their warre apare by themselves, beeing separated from the Gothes, yet ranuging abroad in thewide World, according as they

.The Westrogorbes (in like manner) Of the Westro came out of a Countrey called Wellragothia, among whom, the chiefelt Citties, yet to this prefent daie, are tearmed Searis and Veruen. Wifigots, or Bifigures, came forth of a Countrey named Vishi, the very principall whereof, is yet stilled Vishi and was the more willing to make this description because I baue heard of divers (who are but flenderly experienced in Colmography) that they do term these Offre-gother, to be Gothes Orientall, or of the East, and the Westrogothes, Occidentall Gothes, or dwelling in the West land to contrariwise of the other. Albeit, they are all descended, and came out of the Kingdome of Gothis, or Gottehind, according as Munster hath very well ob Munfter. ferued.

The Vandals, in the erronious judgement of Procopius, a learned Greeke cerning the Authour, are faide for to be of the verie same Nation, and that all the seuerall people of the Gothes, Vandalles, Alaines, Hunnes, and divers others, (whom I am hecreafter to describe vnto you) were deriued out of one and the selfe-fame Land, and are all comprehended under the name of Sauremates, or Sarmates, and have no other difference, but onelie by the names of their Captaines or Kinges. But I muft maintaine against him, that the Land of the Vandales is diftant from Goshland, Gothes and aboue the space of two hundered leagues, and therefore they cannot bee ple. one people with the Gothes. True it is, that this Nation is Septentrionall, or in the Nonh, as the others are, and in a Maritime Countrey alfo , named yet to this day Vandalia, as I have al-

Xxx 2

ready

ifizots, or Bi-

tro beiler The error of Colmogre.

The trauailes

into diuers Countries.

They posses

fed Spaine &

Affrica, which

wer deiested

The Vandals

expulled out of Affrica by Belifarms.

The Hunnes of

Scythia, and

their trauails

* Hunos a part

of *Scythia*, in-habited by

the Hunnes.

in the end

by them.

ready faid, yet very far off the one from the other

This people did (almost) as much hurt to the Romaine Empire, as the Gothes did, for, loyning divers other people with them (as the Alaines, Suabes and Franconians:) they trauerfed the Rheine, Gauderichus beeing then their King, and paffing among the Gaules, walted and spoyled them very greatlie. Then went they into Spaine, and (in defpight of the Gothes) tooke possession of that part of the Countrey, which ioyneth to the Kingdome of Granada, and is (to this day) called Vandalia, or (by corrupting the W ord) Vandalusia, albeit the Spaniards mince it moronice. ly, and nick-name it to be Andalusia. To be briefe, they were (after much wast and spoyle) expulsed foorth of spaine wholy in the years foure hundred thirtie one, under another of their Kinges, named Genfericus, and passed thence into Affrica, where they raigned featienty fixe yeares. From thence they were compelled to auoyde, in the seauenth yeare of the Emperour Iustinian, in Anno. Domino. 5 2 8. by the valour of one of his Captaines, named Belifari-

their Countrey, for the selfe-same cause as the Goths did, about the yeare one hundred fixtie eight, onely to feek fome other Land, where they might liue after the Scythians Religion: first getting possession of Pannonia, where they alwaies fo strongly kept and guardedit, that (according to their owne name) it became to be called Hungaria. 40 This people came from that part of Scythia, which was tearmed " Hunos, no long distance from the River Tanais: but it is in a miserable estate at this day, and under subjection of the Moleouite. Having vsurped Pannonia, they kept it manfully against the Romaines, and two hundred yeares after, Attila Attila King of their King, accompanied with some people of the Allemaignes or Germaines; 50 as Bohemians, Gepydes or Gyrpides, Sch'e-

which they very much endammaged.

The Hunnes also departed out of

Then went he into France; where hee loft a battaile, in which perifhed a great number of his men. This battaile was given him by the Romaines, Gaules, and in France. certaine Gother allyed together, and he loft (as fome Authours doe affirme) aboue two hundred thousandmen. At length he journyed into Italie, which he (wel-neere) vtterlie ruined, and retiring afterward home into his owne Countrey of Hungarian he dyed within fome few following moneths, and on the day of his Nuptials, which was in the yeare of Iefus Christ, foure hundred

forty three. The Lombardes were a Northerne people, iffuing out of Denmarke, as Eusebius maintaineth, and no other reason had they to leave their Natiue Countrey ; but onely a defire to winne fome other. There happened in the time of one Seno, or Sweno (yet fome tearme him Snio) a very great dearth or fearfitie of victuals in the Land, and because the people endured it verie impacientlie:it was concluded by the King and his Councell (to eafe the Country of so many men as were ready to famish) that all such persons as were vnable, eyther for Warre, or labour of the Ground; should be flaine, whether they were old or young. But this feuere Edict being reuoked, they then re-folued to make a leuy of all fortes of dily recalled, people, that (by the helpe of Atmes)
might trauaile to finde out some other
fed. dwelling, so to discharge the Countries

heany burthen.

This being put in Execution, they travailed fo farre, and carryed themfelues fo couragiouslie in trauersing dipers Landes: that they came at last into Italie, and there conquered the Countrey, which was called Istria, Ifriain Italy making themselves absolute Maisters thereof. Now, because these people to the manual t were long and taule of ftature : the Italians and Istrians tearmed them long Barbarians, which by corruption of the Word, and succession of times, made them to be called Longbardes, or Lombardes . Some are of opinion, that under the raigne of Valentinian the Emperour, they beganne to make themselues first knowne; which was about the yeare of our Saniour Jesus

tila fustained

Chap.27.

Petrus Diaco -

ans, people of Danemarke.

Likewife, according to Petrus Diaconus, the Emperours made peace with them, in the yeare, feuen hundred and thirtie, and euer fince they have held that Countrey, which at this day is named Lombardy. Let it heere be further noted, that

Christ 385. and that they became Com-

maunders in Istria, in the yeare 570.

Of Imperiall Titles.

where (in any Historic) mention is 10 made of people tearmed Dates, or Danians, the Nation of Danemarke, is thereby vnderstood. Out of which Countrey, many great Armies haue trauailed at fundry times, and haue mightily troubled diners Kingdomes: among which, they continued along time in England, but were thence expelled, about the yeare eight hundred fixtie, as is generally granted. The Normanes were people of Nord-

uegia, or otherwife called Normania, a

Northerne Countrey, being much ad-

dicted to crueltie and inhumanitie, be-

cause they vsed many great Piracies on

the Seas. An hundred and fifty thou-

fand Men (of this Nation) bestowed

themselnes in Vessels on the Sea, and

tooke poffession of that part of Gaule,

Stria, now Normandse, and this was done

in the yeare of Iesus Christ, fixe hun-

dred; and others fay, eight hundred

eightie foure, and in the time of Charles

Le Gres. But be it howfocuer, they have

(fince then) kept it against all encoun-

ters of the Emperours, Kings of France

and England, preferring it still by the

name of Normandy, and themselves rec-

koned to be people of vndaunted cou-

rage. There are divers others, that

doe fauour of this their first Originall

and doe yet proule vppon the Seas,

committing many Thefts and Robbe-

Sueffes, or Sweues, but more vulgarlie

Zuitzers, and are (at this day) auxiliarie

vnto the Freneh: came out of Sueria,

Sweuia, or Sweueland, a Northerly Re-

gion like to the other. They likewife,

by reason of the dearth of foode among

them: departed foorth of their owne

Countrey, about the years of Grace,

eight hundred, and went fo farre as the

Rheine, which they would have paffed;

The Nation which we call Suiffes,

or France, which was then named 2Veu- 30

flued from Nordnegia, or

legiria now named Nor-mondy & hat continued

Sueffer of Enitzers came out of Swenia.

but were hindred by the Franconians. Thence went they to the Land of the Helnetians, who despiting the Sueffes, (because they were poorely and wret- The Sueffer chedly apparrelled, rude in their fee- defpited by the Helucians ding, and not looking like Souldiours) suffered them to wander about their

Countrey. At length, perceiving the kinde fufferance of the Heluctians : they fought to abide in a certaine Canton of their Land. Which when the He uetians noted, they demaunded of them s to what end they thus wandered about

the World? They aunswered, That they were poore people, and fought but to weare out their lines in trauaile. by deluing or labouring in the Earth. And seeing that there was wast ground Their pouerin those partes, valaboured, or any vie ty among the made of (it being Hilles and Vallyes, their request enuironed with divers Lakes) they defi- to them. red the Heluetians, to permit them to labour in those rough Fieldes, as yet not cultiue : and they should receive the gaine and benefit thereof, onely allowing them but nourithment for their paines. This was all that they fee-med to prețend, inflifying their re-did grant the

quests with many follemne Oaths and Sueffer re. protestations. Their defire was gran- quests. ted, and not long after, the Countrey wherein they lined, was not onely called Suessia, in regard, of the Suessians there dwelling : but likewise the Auncient Inhabitants had the fame Name given them, and (in truth) the Country

Iustinian, and other Emperours, Of the Alle-(both before and after him) entitled maignes and themselues Lordes of the Allemaignes, whence they were derived. by having received fome victories against the Allemaignes. But this may not be faide (as some hane done heeretofore) that those victories were obtained against the Germaines: for eucn at this prefent daie, when that wee speake or Write of Allemaigne ; therein is comprehended all the Nations, which are contained throughout Ger-

is very mountainie, and vnapt for ri-

manie, and that doe fpeake the language of the Teutones. But as concerning Allemaigne it felfe, and Allemaignes; The true All. the Romaines neuer understood, or of Suaba. meant any other people, then those

fites, Werlies, Thuringians, Gothes, Oftrogothes, and others, making (in all) about the number of fixe hundred thoufand Men: passed thorough Allemaigne, of Suaba . And, to speake vprightly,

they euer haue beene (and are) the true

and Auncient Allemaignes; as Cornelius

Tacitus plainely confirmeth. Drusus

Nero was the first, that styled himselfe

Germanicus: for having rather angered

the Germaines, then foyled them, as di-

uers other Emperours afterward did.

Moreouer, by Germanie is to be vnder-

stoodnine and forty great Provinces,

as well of the lower part, as of the high-

er part of the faid Germanie, comprizing

the Countries of the Switzers and Hel-

Ouer and befide the fore-named Ti-

them well, and placed them in a part of

Scythia. Capito inus bestowes them in

Dacia : Marcellinus, Pliny, & Dionisius the

Poet, doe graunt them a being in Sar-

Tofephus, in his last Book, affirmeth their

aboad to be betweene the river Tanais,

and the Palus Maotides : and faith more-

ouer, that (in his time) thefe Alaines or

onleffe, their descent was from Scythia,

according to the affirmation of Ptole-

If we shall speake of the Gepydes, Ggr-

pides, or Iupedes, and what people they

were: there are opinions enow concer-

ning them. Some fay, that they were

(at the first) of Seythia, and came thence

(as the Lombards did) into Italy . But ha-

fearch; I find, that they were a people

of Germanie, being then called Gepudy,

or Sepuly, and (according to Ptolomeus

Matauestus) now at this day, Siebem-

burgs , who followed the Gothes, the

Vanda!s and the Normanes also, they be-

ing erring and vagabond people. Till

matia of Europe.

Drufus Nero

Germany con taineth 49. great Proun

Of the Alains,

and what peo ple they were

tles, they vied the word Analieus, which by translation, implyeth Alaines. Many haue supposed, that these were a people of Germanie, but therein they were and are deceived: for Ptolomy knew

Alanes, accompanied with the Hircanians; both robbed and spoyled all the Region of the Medes. As for my felfe, by that which I have gathered, from fuch as have written on the actions of the Gothes: I am perswaded, that those Alaines were their Companions, and companions with the Goths that oftentimes (in their Warres) for their owne advantage, they fundred in their wars. themselues from them, as one while

Of the Gepi-

Gepudij or Sevusij

at length they ventred on the Seas, and went to inhabite the Isles of the Orchades, whereof Thille is the latest inhabited, as Volateranus auoucheth, and now is subject to the Kings of Scotland.

The Getes have beene, and are yet a Of the Getes warlike people, instantly much mollested by the Turkes; but they found the Romaines work enough to doe, confifling of Transiluanians, Wallachians, Moldauians, and other Countries about the River Ister, which falleth into the Pon-

ticke Sea. I may not be forgetful of the Bourguignay not be torgettin of the bourgary guignons, and nons, because I my selfe descended of whence they that Nation. Orofius holdeth, that they are iffued. are deriued out of Germany; And Volatteranus faith, that louinianus the Emperour vanquished such a people, which lined by the Riner of Rheine. But there is nothing more certaine (according as I have gathered by the Germaine Histories) then that they iffued from some remaines of the Gothes, Vandales, and Hunnes, who beeing altogether chased by the Romaines; threw themselues vpon that part of Gaule, which they fliled after their owne name, and there (perforce) enthroned themselues. For afterward, they could fo well refift the Romaines, that they were constrained to yeild them tolleration, and let them line in the faide Gountrey amongst the first Inhabitants. There they builded | Of their own Fortes, Villages, and Townes, which they tearmed Bourgs or Bouroughes of Gothes and Hunnes. And then coneting (corruptly) to speake it in one Word : from Bourg Goth Hunnes, they

they did with the Vandales. But quefti- 40 to fay, as a warring people. Ætius, Lieutenant to the Emperour deliusfoyled Theodofius, gauethema bartaile in the her Bourguige yeare of Christ, 435. and won the day : but it cost him so deare, that he would neuer after meddle any more with them. About the yeare 430 they receiued and embraced the Christian Faith. These people grew on in great ciulity, and became as much addicted to Learuing made a more curious and diligent | 50 ning, as to Armes: For they have a goodly university, fouded by one of the Dukes of Bourgongne, wherein many A faire vni-Lectures are read of all the Sciences, to Schollers of all Nations, at Dola, the capitall City of that part of Bourgongne, which is under commaund of the house

came to be called Bourguignons, as much

Of the Bour-

Affricanes and Parthians. Stephanus,

Euphrates th boundes betweene the

Titles full of

The mifery of most of the

of Austria, and there they hold a Parliamentalfo. As for the other part of Bourgongne, in obedience to the crown of France : Digeon is the Metropolirane Citty thereof where likewise is held another Parliament. And these two Bourgongnes are maintained in very good peace, albeit they are in obedience to diuers Princes.

The fore-named Emperours did also

ftile themselves by names of Franques,

as having fought with and repulsed the

Of Imperiall Titles.

Of the Franks

Digeon the Me ttopolitane Citty.

Chap.27.

Franconians, who were rifen vp in arms, and departed out of their Countrey of Germany. But so slender were their impeachings, that they inuaded the Gauls, which then were Provinces of the Romaines, notwithstanding, all the best meanes they could make. They were entitled Affricanes likewife, for having obtained some Conquests in Affrica: And Parthians also, for having wonne fome victories ouer the Parthians. Stephanus ranketh them among the people of Seythia: but I neuer knew, or read, that the Romaines made the Parthians tributary, being their best Friendes, for they had more victories over the Komās, then ever the Romans had against them. They did not leave their Countries, 20 and fought after a new habitation, eyther for pouertie or necessitie: but rather to conquer Kingdomes and Prouinces ; as Media, Hircania, Armenia, Caramania, and many other. The River Euphrates was the limits between them and the Romaines : but those Romaine Emperours, ypon the declining of their Empire, were Princes full of follie and vain-glory, attributing Titles to themfelues, without any matter of right or

They gave themselves also the Title of Happy and Prosperous, albeit they were (oftentimes) the most infortunate men al of other, as wel in their home affaires, as the Negotiations of the Empire. For (day by day) they loft their Prouinces, which precedent Auncient Captaines (endowed with many ver- 50 tues) and worthy Romaine Confuls had won, by no meane expence of paines, and effusion of their blood.

Moreover, the most part of the Emperors, beheld their Wines, Children, and Friends, murdred and maffacred; yea, and themselves subject to no better fortune in the end : as lustinian, who was cast out of his Empire by Florianus. They would likewise be called inclytes, that is to fay : Princes of glorious renowne, victorious, triumphing, and enermore Augustus, as much to fay, as enlargers of the Romaine Empire! but, as I formerly faid, thefe were but fuch Titles as Flatterers gaue them, for the greater number of those Emperours; after that these stiles of honour were imposed on them; could boast of no fuch happinelle, but rather came farre fhort of any fuch felicities.

Thus have ye briefely feenethe ori- Those Natiginall of all those people, which those on are all Emperours made vannt to haue foyled herome Christians. and vanquithed thowbeit, though they were tearmed barbarous by them, yet (by little and little) they rent and tore their Empire in pieces. At this day they are all become civilized, and (well-neere all) Christians : onely the Parthians excepted, who are Mahametists, pertaking in the Turkes Religion.

But having spoken of so many Nations, who are al faid to be derived from of the Pict. the Scythians : wee may not omit to fay & their com fome what of the Picts, who (by the ming into the ifle of Orkeney opinion of most Writers) do beare the name of a people of Germanie, that had their Originall out of Seythia, descending of the * Agathyrsi in Sarmatia, that * Arich peovsed to paint and couler their faces, and ple bordering on the scythic thereupon were named Piets. Before they entred into Brittaine, they inhabited the lse of Orkney for a long time to-gether, ferrying ouer into Cathnesse dai-of painting ly multiplying to in power and number: their faces. that (getting vp further into the Land) they poffeffed Roffe, Murreyland, Merne and Anguste, whence passing into Fife and Louthian, they drove thence the Britaine Inhabitants, who were onelie poore people, that lived by nourishing & breeding Cattle. This their enterance into Albion (for fo was it then called) was in the yeare of the Worlds Crea-

Cruchneus Camelonus is faid to be the cruibneus cafirst King of the Piets, and that he buil- King of the ded a famous Citty on the banke of the Pica. River cald Caron, appointing it to be the chiefe Citty of all the Pictifh Kingdom. He builded also the Towne of Agneda. afterward called Edenbrough, of Ethus, King of the Picts, and the Caftle, named

Kenneth King

of Scots quite

The Castle of Maydens, because the Pistifb Kinges kept their Daughter there, under frict custody, and in all good exercifes, till their meete yeares for mar-

Concerning the warres, strifes, and bloody contentions betweene the Albion Scots and Pictes, thorow all their Kings raigne, till their vtter ouerthrow, and quite diffolation of Pictland, by 10 Kenneth the victorious King of Scots : I referre it to fitter time and place, onely letting ve know, that this fubuerfion & and veter ruine of the Piets, happened in the yeare of our redemption, 839. in the fixt years of King Kenneths glorious raigne, and 1168. yeares after their first Plantation in Albion.

CHAP, XXVIII.

What benefit Musique bringeth to a Common-wealth; And how it hath beene naturally given to al Wations in the world, and (by the judgement of Some Historians) hath cured divers infirmities and difeases of the mind.

The folly of ome ouercurious Law makers.

comprehenfi-

on of Musick.

Ery certain it is, that some Law-makers, pecuifb, troublefome, and ouer-hard in many matters Lycurgus was one:did expel

Musick out of their Commonwealths, affirming, that it made people effeminate, negligent, and idle. But I am of a 40 quite contrary minde, and dare maintaine, that fuch as will truely confider Musique, and what it is in it felfe : shall finde, that it can make men bold, hardy, modest, and chast, especially being wel and vertuously vsed. Vnder this kind of Mufique, I comprehend not onely that which is fung by Art and mellodiously, as by the voyces of Men, Weomen, or Children: but also I presuppose (within the same compasse) all Instruments; as Flutes, Lutes, Viols, Drums, Trumpets, Organes, Virginals, Harpes, and others. And there is not any thing, that maketh men more civilly minded, or preserveth them in better concord and amitic, then Musique.

Polybius declareth, that the great Com- Polib in Lib. 4 mon-wealth of the *Cynethenfes in Areadia, falling from the delight they formerly had in Musique : grew soone after into feditious humors, & ciuil wars among themselves, wherein there wanted not any kind of crueltie. And when all their Neighbors round about them, were meerely confounded with admiration, as wondring how these people should become so harsh, barbarous, and rude, confidering that all the other people of Arabia, had by them been reduced to curtefie and humane tractability : Polybius was the first that took notice thereof, and auouched, that it onely proceeded, by leauing the vse of Mu-fique, which (from all Antiquity) had euermore beene prized and honoured in Arcadia, more then in any other place of the World. For it was especially ordained, by the customes and decrees of the Countrey, that enery one should make vie thereof for the space of thirty yeares ; yea, vpon very great paines and penalties. And this was the reason (faith Polybius) that the first Law-makers among those people, or dained and appointed continuall vie thereof : onely to cause civility & humanity, in regard that (of their owne naturall disposition) they were wilde, fierce, and barbarous, as all people inhabiting the Mountaines, and sold Countries are.

Perhaps the like judgement might passe on the Gaules of former times, Jul. 1mp. in Ewhom Iulian the Emperour tearmed piff.ad Antie. the barbarous people of his daies: which Nation (neuerthelesse) became afterward to courteous and tractable, as any other people whatfocuer in Eu-rope, whereat all Straungers wondred not a little. And yet it is generally The Gaules knowne, that no people did more practife Mufique, or fung more fweetely, yaddicted to Mufick. then they : nay, and that which goeth farre beyond this, they could dannee any daunce in France, were it Ionian or Lydian, that is to fay ; confishing of fine or featen notes or ftrains. Which were expresly forbidden to Youth, by Plato and Aristotle, because they had a great Plato in Lib.de power and prevailance, in forming and Leg et Republ. humbling the hearts of men. They would also exercise their Children to the " Dorion Musique, which was the first or chiefest note, to maintaine them kind of Muin an harmonious fweetneffe, accom- fickreprefer-

* A certaine panied ting grauity.

Chap.28. Dances vied Songes of the first note or found, not v-A Common wealth quite

Lawes and Cuftomes fo

Gaules fofte ned by Mu-

The ftern na

ture of the

Mufick a mé ber of the, Mathematiks

Musicke maketh all labor panied with granitie, which was the Dorion proper effect. all so

Such prohibition might better hane beene vied in the leffer Afia, where they had no other dances, but of fine or feuen straines, especially in the Countreyes of themia and Lydia. But people inhabiting the Northern parts; cold, Mountainous, and Rocky, who are ordinarily more fauage, or leffe courteous then the Inhabitants of the South, or dwelling on Plaines, neuer can be better qualified or foftened, then by vling the lonian & Lydian hermony, which was also forbidden in the Primitive Church : and nothing was there permitted to bee fung, but of the first note which is now most of all frequented in Churches ... And like as men do difarme fau age Beafts of furie & violence, to make them of a more tracta- 20 ble Nature : enen fo, the Lydian and Ionian Musicke or hermony, disarmeth the verie rudest and most barbarous Nations, of all their former, fauage, and cruell Natures; causing them to become milde, pliant, and affable. According as it fell out with the Gaules , who (it may be)could not have beene tamed & made obedient vnto the civill Lawes and Ordinances of a Monarchy, if their former 30 sterne Nature(which the Emperor Iulian faid, was fo high, and vnfufferable of feruitude) had not bin mollified and sweetned by Musicke.

Musick, is one of the members of the Mathematickes, as beeing a Science attracted from numbers : because that by them, the proportion Hermonicall is found out . Plasees will was, that Children should learne to fing, for recreation of their owne spirites, and to prayle God by Hymnes. And in truth, there is nothing that more taketh away offenfinenesse, or easeth matter of great and laborious trauaile (as woorking in the ground, Masonry, Catpentry, and exercifing other Arts, painefull to the bo-die) then finging doth.

In like manner, all Artezans, following any Trade or profession, doe vie to 50 fing: as Hay-makers, Haruefters, Gardiners, Deluers, Children and Weomen weeding grounds, doc weare awaic the irkefomnesse of their labour by singing, either in heate or colde, Winds or Rain, it maketh paine the more supportable to them.

Soldiers, euen when they goe (manie times) to be flaine in a battell, will yet fing by the way the beating of Drums, and founding of Fifes and Trompets, gimeth courage to the Soldier for his cariage in Warre, making him hardie, bold, Muficke vino and valiant. Nor is it to bee doubted in manfor his benefits benef that Nature gate Mulicke and melodie to man but onely for his good and benefirs as young Children do apparantly ina-nifelt into vs: for when their wirfles would have them to fleepe, and keepe them in their Cradles ; euen when they are molt impatient and froward nothing fooner affwageth and prenayleth-with them, then mellodie and finging . Info manie Barbarour Nations, as have bin disconcred in former Antiquitie, and in our dayes, in that part of the earth which Countries of is called the New-found World, Flutes the Newhave beene found among them. Drums. Hoboyes, and other Inftruments, and both prinately and publickely, as also in their Temples, finging of Pfalmes hath beene observed, to be dure the delivered.

Birds, when they are in any chearfull dif-position, will sing to solace and delight themselues: as the Nightingale, the Tarine, the Thru(h, Linnet, Blackbird and others; among which Birds, many haue beene taught to fing by men, as daylie in most places is discerned. As concerning foure-footed Beafts, diners of them doe take much pleafure in Musicke, as namely Camels : for iffuch as guide and Gouerne them, doe not ordinarily fing or plefiled with whiltle to them, they will not trauel with hinging. any foirit or chearfulnesse. All such as 40 have beene in the East Countreyes, and noted the Carauannes, which are troops of Camelles laden with Merchandizes, haue affirmed as much. Horses that are dreffed by their Keepers, and daily fung vnto as they do it, are made verie manageable, gentle, and apt for the Saddle.

About all other Beafts, the Hart or Stag The Hart or how wilde soener he bee, if hee heare a Stag, a great man play on a Violl, or on a Lute, he wil Musicke. (by flealths) draw neerer and neerer yea. and fuffer himselfe to bee touched, as I

my felfe haue feene by experience. Musicke hath mighty power and Au-thority ouer the spirits and affections of men; and amongst many examples, the first may be of Timothens, who by pleafing founds and chaunges of his Instru-

Many creatures as diverskindes of Birdes that

> المرافعة والمرا encare had

TAGES 801 Thun 804

Missine

PAGE(S) MISSING

1

Dances vied

panied with gravitie, which was the Dorion proper effect. Such prohibition might better hane beene vsed in the lesser Asia, where they had no other dances, but of fine or feuen straines, especially in the Countreyes of Ionia and Lydia. But people inhabiting the Northern parts; cold, Mountainous, and Rocky, who are ordinarily more fauage, or leffe courteous then the Inhabitants of the South, or dwelling on

Songes of the found, not v-fed in the priPlaines, neuer can be better qualified or foftened, then by vling the tonian & Lydian hermony, which was also forbidden in the Primitine Church : and nothing was there permitted to bee fung, but of the first note, which is now most of all frequented in Churches . And like as men do difarme fau age Beafts of furie & violence, to make them of a more tracta- 20 ble Nature : euen fo, the Lydian and Ionian Musicke or hermony, disarmeth the verie rudest and most barbarous Nations, of all their former, fauage, and cruell Natures, caufing them to become

milde, pliant, and affable. According as

it fell out with the Gaules, who (it may

be)could not have beene tamed & made

The stern naobedient vnto the civill Lawes and Orditure of the Gaules, fofte sterne Nature(which the Emperor Julian ned by Mufaid, was so high, and vnfusferable of seruitude) had not bin mollified and fweet-

Mufick a mé . ber of the,

ned by Musicke. Musick, is one of the members of the Mathematickes, as beeing a Science attracted from numbers : because that by them, the proportion Hermonicall is found out. Platoes will was, that Children should learne to fing, for recreation of their owne spirites, and to prayse God by Hymnes, And in truth, there is nothing that more taketh away offenfinenesse, or easeth matter of great and laborious trauaile (as woorking in the ground, Masonry, Carpentry, and ex-

Musicke ma. keth all labor feeme light and cafe.

ercifing other Arts, painefull to the bo-die) then finging doth. In like manner, all Artezans, following any Trade or profession, doe vie to 50 fing: as Hay-makers, Haruefters, Gardiners, Deluers, Children and Weomen weeding grounds, doe weare awaie the irkefomnesse of their labour by finging, either in heate or colde, Winds or Rain. it maketh paine the more supportable to them.

Soldiers, euen when they goe (manie times) to be flaine in a battell, will yet fing by the way : the beating of Drums . and founding of Fifes and Trompets, gineth courage to the Soldier for his cari-Nature gaue age in Warre, making him hardie, bold, Muncke vnu and valiant. Nor is it to bee doubted, man for his that Nature gave Musicke and melodie to man, but onely for his good and benefit s as yong Children do apparantly manifest vnto vs: for, when their Nursses would have them to fleepe, and keepe them in their Cradles : euen when they are most impatient and froward nothing fooner affwageths and prenayleth with them, then mellodie and finging . Info

discouered in former Antiquitie; and in our dayes, in that part of the earth which is called the New found World, Flutes the Newehaue beene found among them, Drums, Hoboyes, and other Instruments, and both prinately and publickely, as also in their Temples, finging of Pfalmes hath beene observed.

manie Barbarour Nations, as have bin

Many creatures, as diverskindes of Birds, when they are in any chearfull dif- in Musicke. position, will sing to solace and delight themselves: as the Nightingale, the Tanances of a Monarchy, if their former 30 rine, the Thrush, Linnet, Blackbird, and others; among which Birds, many haue beene taught to fing by men, as daylie in most places is discerned. As concerning foure-footed Beafts, diners of them doe take much pleasure in Musicke, as namely Camels for iffuch as guide and Gouerne them, doe not ordinarily fing or plefifed with whiftle to them, they will not trauel with finging. any spirit or chearfulnesse. All such as o haue beene in the East Countreyes, and noted the Carauannes, which are troops

> haue affirmed as much. Horfes that are dreffed by their Keepers, and daily fung vnto as they do it, are made verie manageable, gentle, and apt for the Saddle. About all other Beafts, the Hart or Stag The Hart or how wilde focuer he bee, if hee heare a sing, a great man play on a Violl, or on a Lute, he wil Musicke. (by flealths) draw neerer and neerer yea. and suffer himselfe to bee touched, as I my selfe haue seene by experience. Musicke hath mighty power and Au-thority ouer the spirits and affections of

of Camelles laden with Merchandizes,

men : and amongst many examples, the first may be of Timotheus, who by pleafing founds and channges of his Instru-

Mulicke in Countries of

The reason why Alexan-der went from a Banquet.

Agamemnon & his Wife Clytemnestra.

K.Dauid delighted highlie in his Pfalteri-

Moyfes apoin ted Mulickin the Temple

Mulick obler ued amongest

Of the first Touenrers of Musicke and

Gen. 41,21.

ment, constrained Alexander (as ouerioyed with pleasure) for to depart from a banket. Next, we may speake of Agamemnen, who was loath to part from his Countrey, and go to the fiedge of Troy, because he was doubtfull of the modesty of his wife Clysemnestra; and therefore, he left a Musition on the Harp with her; the found whereof, should incite her to bathfulneffe and continence, fo that Ægistus could not abuse her, without killing the Musition. But in speaking of this Harpers it maketh me to remember the Royall Pfalmist Danid, who of himselfe, was a man verie strong and seuere, yet much guided and detained by his Pfalterion. Nor are we to thinke, that the hermonie of this Instrument, was common or vulgar, whereof the facred Scripture maketh mention fo many times, and 20 which was judged only (among al other) meete to celebrate the praises of God. It is composed of seauentie two stringes, in formetrlangulare, and the confonaunce

thereof, is incompareable.

It was ordained by Morfes, that God should be praised in his Temple, with voices and Instruments; and Christians (afterward) made continuance thereof by finging Pfalmes, both with voices and Organs, which greatly incited Denotion in the verie dullest minds. It was an efpeciall note of civilitie among the Greatans, euen as it is to this day after any feast or Banquet, to play vppon fome Musical Instrument, or to sing anie Ode melodioufly. Which observation, reached into Italy, Germany, Spaine, and France, where much more account is made of a cunning Musition that can ting wel, play on Muficall Instruments, Dance, vie loftie trickes, yet keepe both tune and time, that the cadence of his feete may fit with the Instrument, then of any ydle, neglect or ignorant fellow.

Manie haue attributed the invention of Musicke, and playing on the Lyre or Harpe, to Orpheus; others, to Amphion; the Grecians to Dionysius or Bacchus; but others, to the people of Areadia, because the men of that Countrey, were naturally addicted thereto. The Hebrewes, as Moyfes and lofephus, doe fay; that luball the Sonne of Lamech (who lived in the yeare of the worlde, 1040, manie Ages before Amphion, and al other Musitions, was the Father of all that play vppon the

Harpe and Organs; and that he did first finde out the concords of Musicke; nay more, that hee carefully addicted himfelfe, and played both on the Pfalterion; and on the Harpe. As concerning my felfe, I will not deny, that all the fore-named men were good Musitions, but that any one man of them should bee the sole the onelie in inuenter, I can verie hardly therein bee heeke. perswaded.

Rather I am of the minde, that euerie finguler man, according varo the Ages wherein they lived, made addition of their skill and knowledge; and so broght it to the perfection wherein we now find it to bee. And in these verie dayes of ours, there have lived men fo excellent | Muficke and skilfull, as have added divers Rules, which neuer were knowne before, and brought the name of Musick to admired perfection, some inuenters whereof are knowne, but other vncertaine.

Before the Conclusion of this Chapter, I am desirous to set downe two seuerall experiences, concerning the efficacy and might of Musick: which my self faw practifed vpon two Gentlewomen; one of them being de la March, neer to Garet, of Muncke. young, vertuous, and paffable for beautie. This Gentlewoman fell into fuch a furie (by reason of a reporte made vnto her, ofher husbandes inclination, to change and nouell affection) that at euery fudden moment of time, shee woulde throw her felfe headlong into the fire, or out at a Window, or into a Fish-ponde neere to her house; out of which, she had beene rescued two seuerall times; and therefore committed to more dilligent keeping.

Physitions could returne no good by their paines and endeuours, but a religious Capucine passing that way, and crauing his Passade or Almes, at the doore of this Gentlewomans house; and hearing the strangeaccident befaln her gaue them aduife, that some skilfull man, well experienced in playing vppon the Lute,

should vse his cunning by her, and not to

The adulte of part from her in some prettie length of a caputine fitfull to her. Further hee added, that in the night time, fome pleating Ditties might well confort with the Muficke, which accordingly was performed; and within leffe then three months space, the violent passion forlooke her; and the re-

of another Gentlewomi of Honor, That no one

Chap.29.

The Historic

Griefes and

ercat infirmi

ues cured by

A ftrange ac-

brought vnto perfection in our dayes.

Two experi

A Gentlewo ted with iealoufly cured and how.

> The Authour anoucheth the trueth of this Huttorie.

The Authors

maineth at this time found both in mind and bodic.

I likewise knew another Gentle-woman of honor at Aohen, whose name may best be knowne by du Parreau, that al her life time, did neuer vie the helpe of anie Phylicke, how great or grienous foener her infirmities were. But in all hir difea-fes, griefes, hurts, Childe-weakenesses, and lamenesse, thee neuer defired anie better Physition, then one that could artificially play on the Taber and Pipe, and him thee would entitle her true Physiti-

This Gentlewoman being well entred into Age, it happened, that an extreame paine feazed on her knee, immagined to proceede from some tafte of the Cowte'. Whereupon, the would have her Taborer inflantly, to play her a pleafaunt and 20 liuely Carranto. The Taborer being verie willing to please his Mistris made fuch haft to touch his Taber, and founde his Pipe in the best manner : that striuing to exceede himselfe in Art and dexteritie, both in readinesse of his winde, and agility of hand, he fell down in a fwoond vpon the Floore. Hee being difabled from playing any longer, and all there present wondering not a little, to see him 30 lye in fuch stratinge estate, without anie recovery of strength or knowledge, for the space almost, of three quarters of an houre : the Gentlewoman her felfe, euen then complained, that her paine and af-

The Taborer having recovered strength and judgement againe, and indifferentlie refreshed with a sprightly Cup of Wine, fell afresh to his former skilfull Musicall playing, and the Gentlewoman felte her paine immediately to leaue her . I my felfe was in the Chamber when thefe accidents happened; and do auouch vppon my credit, that the Gentlewoman thus lined an hundred and fix yeares.

fliction was neuer so extraordinarilie on

her, as in the time of the Musicks so sud-

daine ceffation.

Inbriefe, in all well pollicied and ordered Commonweales, men should enstruct their Sons and Daughters in Nuficke, because it mollifieth angrie hearts, affwageth fadnesse, preserueth people in kinde concord and amitie, healeth many melancholy difeafes, and is no mean exciter of the minde to denotion . Plato was of the minde, that the Heauens (in

their motion and ftirring) doth make for Musicke and great and melodious an hermonie, that if man could be able to understand it, he tion. would neuer be wearied with abiding in this world.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Gold, the properties & excellency thereof : Where it is found: How it is extra-Eted purified; and what paine is beftewed in getting it.

E thinkes, I shoulde offer great wrong to Nature, if having written on so made in fundry things, I should and free from the company to company not fay fornewhat conger-

ning Gold, it beeing the most excellent faction.

The colour,

of all other mettals, yea (in a maner) furpassing all things created in this neather world. For it is faide to be immortall, exempted from all rust and corruption; infomuch, that lying hidden in the earth, in the Water, or in the most putrifyed heape of filth, for fo manie yeares as any one pleafeth, yet it wil neuer receyue or tast of any imperfection; or let it be continually kept in the fire, yet it never diminisheth, neither receiveth any change or alteration.

His colour carrieth resemblance with the beames of the Sunne, which reicy-ceth or cheareth melancholy people It periodions of hath no cuil fauour or tast neither soileth their hands that meddle with it, as all other Mettals else do ; which likewise float aloft aboue Quick-filuer, but Gold only goes to the bottome. If it be received into the bodie, it never offendeth the flomacke, be it either in powder, or folidly in Morfelles : but contrarywife, gitteth chearefulneffe to the heart, and comforteth the vital spirits, whereto other Mettals are often offenfine.

Therefore, let no man enter into anie meruaile, if the World doth make fuch estimation thereof, and prize it aboue all other thinges. For, as concerning the matter whereof it confifteth, a Learned Authour fayeth : That it is composed

The matter wherof Gold is composed being two E lementario fubstances.

Metally bo-

All actions &

endeuour s

thing more, then to the

gerting of Gold.

tend vnto no-

dies.

of two Elementarie substances, instlie and equally proportioned. These substaunces then so mingled, being equall and vnited in proprietie, can endure nothing else, but this amiable and concordiall Commixtion, which perfecteth it felfe in the fermentation and knitting togither, making fuch an interligation, and absolute vnion of the one with the other; that it appeareth meerly impossible to dissolue or seperate them. So that, beeit that this enfueth by the influence of the Cele. stiall bodies, or by the diuturnity and power of time, or by the admirable operation of Nature; or elfe, that all these are therein assisting: yet notwithstanding, these Elementarie substances do conuert themselues into a Mettally bodie, which is tearmed Golde . The temperature whereof, with the Colligation and Vnion, makethit so firme and solide, that not only it begetteth a common and vulgar permanencie: but receiueth likewise an incorruptible temperature, as it were, hauing (I know not how) fome what in him, that enricheth and honoureth him, with al the forenamed excellent proper-

Merchants faile by Sea, trauell on the Land, with infinite cares, dangers, and 30 paines, only to get this Gold. The maine intent of Soldiers, that expose themselus enerie moment into the pawes of death, or danger of her perpetuall thraldome, is only to winne Golde. For be it, that they furprize a Citty by affault, or winne the day by triall of battaile : they wil feeke after no other Luggage or Mooueables, but Gold onely and if prifoners labor to redeeme their lives, the ranfome must be 40 Gold only. Schollers, and men experienced in all Arts, their studie & practife is to no other end, but to gaine Golde. If a payment be made to anyi great person, it must be in faire Gold. If guists to Princes, none fitter then Golde. It but betweene Friend and Friend, the courtesie doth best expresse it selse in Gold.

Kinges, Emperours, and Princes, by

the meanes of Golde, have made themfelues redoubted and dreadfull, and con- Kingdomes & quered manie potent Provinces. Let Phillip King of Macedon remains as a te- Gold. stimonie; who causing a re-search to bee made in the Mines of Gold which were in his Countreyes (that formerly had bin throughly digged, and quite giuen ouer) found yet fo much remaining, as yeilded him the whole Conquest of Greece and Alexander his Sonne afterward, of all the East. And many times, by the meanes of this excelling Mettall, the same King Phillip, caused impregnable places to bee furrendred to him, which he neuer could

haue furprized by power. To approue the truth heerof, Plutark reporteth of the same Phillip, that he hauing befiedged a place, by Nature fo inexpugnable, that his owne followers adnifed him to withdraw from thence : he demaunded of him that had best experience of the faide place, if there were no meanes, to let an Affe (laden with Gold) but goe about it. Whereto aunswere was made, yes doubtleffe. Then Phillip affured himselfe of taking the place, for he that was the Commaunder in it, comming to parlie, and touching the Gold, Submitted himselfe to King Phillip, & the place also.

The Indiaes, which be so farre off, are fought for with danger of death, and vnspeakable trauails of so manie thousands of men, which the Kings of Spaine haue why the Incontinually fent thither : onely for the diaes are fo Mines of Golde, and rich fands fo fre- much trausyquently found in the Rivers. Which atter. neuer would be fo fiercely followed, if I were able to recount, how manie men and women grow negligent of their own honor and good fame, onely by the bale affection of Gold. But let vs nowe fee, where this Golde is found; and in what manner it is come by which I will relate in a Chapter by it selfe, least this should be offensive to the Reader by length.

CHAP.

No fuch flore of Gold now as in former

supposed to have Mines of Golde, but

The Neve World emptied of her

Of Golde.

CHAP. XXX.

How Mines of Gold are known where they are: And in what manner the Golde is taken forth & washed.



Chap.30.

Twould require too long a labour to relate all those Regions where Golde is found; for I am perfivaded, that if men did beflow their paines in feeking. Mines wold

be found (almost in cuerie Country : yet more in some one, then in other; and of greater ease to be obtained. In manie parts of Germany, Gold is found, as in Bohemia, Transyluania, Lauris, Sibebourg, and many other Countreyes. In England in some few places. In Macedonia in a place called Syderocapsa. In divers parts of Africa, as in Ethyopia, and beyond the reft, in the New worlde, which we improperly tearme India, where Gold is had with much leffe labour, then amongst vs.

Yet howfoeuer it be, nothing can be obtained without labour; and wee must Men find not not thinke, that when men are in the In-Ingotsof gold ready made diaes, they finde Ingots readic made to their hands, and gather vp Golde, as we do ftones vppon the High-wayes. Surely it cannot be fo, for we finde by the Spa. 40 nish Histories, that the more part of the Naturall Indians, do meerely dye with labouring in the Mines of Golde, as being ouer-enforced and constrained vnto hard toyles, and verie badly vsed by the Spaniards.

Now adayes, no fuch plentic of Gold is brought thence, as formerly hath bin, for that which was fent hither, and in fo great quantities, had long time before beene gathered by the Indians . And fo much the rather , because the greater part of their Idolles, were made of malsy Gold; the verie foles of their Shooes, Veffels, and wearing Garments. Their Temples and Royall Pallaces, were all

couered quite ouer with Golde, as ours are with Lead, and manie other mooueables, which were too long and tedious to relate. The

Next, the great and admirable ranfomes of manie of their Kinges, I paffe ouer in filence, as being at large difcourfed in diners other Bookes. But nowe at this prefent, a new kind of fearch must 10 bee made for Golde, with much difficult labour, and great expence of time, effeccially, to recouer anie fuch quantitie. Therefore, let vs examine the places where it is to be had, and what proceeds ing is vied therein.

Mettally matters have their propper feating in Mountaines, in the fame man Motters of ner, as Trees have their roots, Trunkes Mettals, are Braunches, and Leaues. And those in Mountains and discorned billes, whose toppestend towardes the by colour and South, and their feete ftretch towardes finell of the the North, dooth give a demonstrationto haue Mettall in them, beccause Mettalles doe engender themselves of a veriethicke and groffe humour, which may bee knowne by the colour and fauour, for, it yeeldeth a Blacke coloured, earth, in regard of the Golde and Silner, and fuch is the fauour alfo.

If yee breake two stones, of one and the same hill, if any Mettall be beneath Gold is creain the bowelles thereof; yee shall apparantly perceiue, that the Stones will sanour exceedingly of Sulphure. Where- whaquanner by is to bee vaderstoode, that the first creation or composure of Golde, is in the verie top and highest part of Mountaines, or other loftie places, because the Sunne there purifieth that, which is ouermuch earthy . But when Raynes and Torrents, doe(by little and little) diftill uppon the hilles, they beare the Golde along downe with them vnto the lower partes of those hilles : whence likewife enfucth, that the earth rifting by the Raine, Golde therein encloserh it

Hauing declared sufficiently (as I think). the true Originall of Golde, and of his Mines, I come now to relate, how it is Howe manie come by, as wel in Germany, as in Celicat, discribites of Fern, and other Provinces, be they in the East, West, North, or South, in which how they are places there are divers diversities of med. Graines of Golde in the Riners, or

there are, &

Yyy deluc

Of Pendant

Of lying or

feded Mines.

Of oblique or

winding Mi-

Of riversthat

of Golde, and

how they wer

Cerémonies

obserued by

Idolaters in

out of the

getting Gold

descerned.

haue pure &

Mines.

delue and digge in the Rockes & Mountaines, according vnto the places where fuch Mines are discourred. For knowledge whereof, it is to bee vnderstoode, that there be Mines, which are tearmed pendant or hanging Mines; others called lying or fetled; others, oblique, or winding diners waies: and others beside, that are freaming or gliding gently along in the earth or water.

The pendant Mines, be those which are found in the fommitie or superficies of hilles or Mountaines, and haue(from thence) earth underneath them. Those that bee called lying or fer'ed, are fuch as are beneath in the bottome, or playne firme ground, being carried downe thether by Torrents and outragious Raines. And the other which are fayde to be oblique or Circkling, haue their courses thwarting or trauerling, eyther in those which hang, or in the Lying Mines. And all of these, doo disperse and spred themfelues (by the meanes of little Pearling Gullets of Warer) into the neerest neyghbouring Rivers: from whence enfueth, that there are Rivers, generallie thoroughout the World, wherein is Sande and Grauell, appearing as if it were Azure and Golden in Colour, and therein 30

are pure and fine graines of good Gold. But returning to the pendant or hanging Mine, it behooueth heere to know, after what maner the Indians (and divers other Nations, where such matter is in vse and practife) do gouerne and carrie themselues, in getting or deriuing this Mettall out of the earths entrailes.

Before we enter vppon the worke, it is necessarie to knowe, that in the Ea- 40 sterne Countreyes, where the people are Idolaters, fuch men as intend to goe and digge for Gold, and neuer were before at any Mines opening: doe abstaine from their Wines, & all other pleasures of the body, vsing verie solemne Fastes and abstinences, adoring the Sun with earnest prayers. And this they doe, not onely because they hold a firme opinion, that Gold must needes be a sacred thing: 30 but also to arme and settle themselues against Diabolicall Visions and illusions, which they are often subject to in solitarie places, where they raife vp and finde fo precious a Mettall, as they that haue beene in Peru, and the other Neighbouring Countreyes, confessed to have seen,

during the time of their there present a-

Gold there is found in the earth, and in Rockie places, bee they the plaines or hilly grounds, where there is no verdure, but all naked and bare. In such partes as are without VV ater, as the experimented ter. and skilful in the Veyns of Mines (knowing for a certainty what can be in fuch an earth) do first wash the place very cleane where they purpose to digge; which being done, they deline about eight or ten foote in depth, and as much in length and largeneffe; then, in a certaine veffell made of purpose, they still doe wash the earth, as it is digged vp. If thus by wa-thing, they finde any Golde, they continue on the labour : but if they find none, Of digging they will not yet give ouer, vntill by digging deeper, they finde out the Rocke, which they breake and pierce thorough done after. with their Instruments, vaulting it daylie as they goe on, with Engines and strong defences of Woodde, that the earth or stones may not fall downe vppon them. Concerning such Mines as are fought for in plaine grounds, they beginne digging (fo neere as possibly they may) vnto plainground fome Brooke, River, Current, or Lake: because thereby (in washing the earth) they may the fooner perceive the Gold; or when any commeth to them, for otherwise, the labour would be too infup- ftoreof flaues portable. And this is the reason, that and how they the richest men in the Indiaes, have store of Slaues, whom they onely employ in digging and deluing, beside other laborers, that bring or draw vppe the earth in Baskets, and others that carrie it to the Water in Panniers or Doffers. In the Water, bee it Riuer, Lake, Brooke, or ! Ofwashing Spring there are divers other flaves, that Sives or Ser fland up about the Knees, washing the faide earth (as it is brought vnto them) in Sines or Scarces, making vie of no more water then is needfull and so dexteriously seperating the Golde from the Earth, that as the earth (by little, and little) glydeth away, fo the Golde remaineth behinde in the Sine or Searce, then afterward, making (as it were) a fecond kinde offeperation, it is put into a Veffell by it felfe, and more earth broght to washing in like maner, and vsed accordingly. Heer

is to be remembred, that they which wash

the Mettall in these Sines or Searces,

are most commonly VV omen, who have

The first ma

ter then wa-thing the erth

The power-full beames

treateth gold

the superfici-

Of Mines in

two men, flanding ready to fil their fines; two others, which bring the Earth or Oare to them; two more for lading, and two for fetching, drawing it vp from the Diggers. So much shall suffice for the first manner of bringing Golde from the There are other meanes, and in ano-

ther manner sas also the place where the

Golde is founde, is altogether different.

Confidering, that there are rivers, wher-

in both fande and Graines of Golde are

found; which for the more case in reco-

uering, if the River bee finall and little,

the Indians labour to emptie and draw it

drie. Then taking the fande and Earth

in the bottome, they wash it in such fore

Other means and waies for the finding out of Gold.

Chap.30.

Of Golde found within maks or Ri

as hath been declared. But if the River or Spring bee fuch, as it cannot bee made drie: they chaunge and turne the course some other waie, quite from his Naturall Bedde or Cur-Fishing for Gold, is bet-

rent. Which beeing done, they go to fecke for Gold in the very middeft of the Channell, amongeft the Pebbles and Flintes: and more profire returneth by this kinde of Fishing, then by washing the digged Earth, as I have truely found

by observation. But howfoeuer the Mettall of Golde

is thus found out in Rivers, or in the Plaine Fieldes: yet it is helde for moft certaine and infallible, that it was first bredde in the Sommetie and toppes of Hilles or Mountaines; and the vehement showres and falles of Raine (when this Earth was baked and converted into Golde, by the radiant and fplendant beames of the Sunne) by fofte and flow flydings, carried it downe into neere adioyning Rivers and Brookes, which lye apt and readie to receyue whatfoener is fent downe by Torrents from the Mountaines; as also, into the vnder-ceuen grounds.

Therefore, there is no further question to be viged, but that Golde hath his Originall in the superficies of the Earth, and breedeth in the most secret partes thereof. So that Mines are oftentimes 50 made like vnto Cauernes and Grottes: whereof, and likewise of Mines in the Mountaines, wee doe now purpose to speake.

The Indians, doe vie another kinde of meanes for the finding of Golde, which is much more daungerous; and is also

oblerned in those Countreyes, fulfelic called the VVeft indicate vea it is likewife vied in the Northerhe Regions, rowards the higher Sue/sia, Gurhia, and paires of the Varines; all joyning to the kingdome of Narway

This interior of emptying Mines, is How Goldis observed in those that are pendant, to gotten out of wit Mines of the Mountaines. In which pendat Mines labour, diners Engines are cimployed; which proper and vaulted Tables vied, to hinder the Mines of the daunger hourely to bee feared, begange, Mountaines, great perilles dooth ordinarily happen : For, fome haue beene doted, in VVorking to vndermine the Rocke, to be on Great danger the fuddaine murdered, with the fall of in the pendar great Stones, breaking out of the hole or Monaraine lowe riftes. Others, that climbe and Mines. grapple along the sharpe steepie Rockes. with Doffers and Baskets faftened vnto their backes, feeking for the Oare of the Mines, to carrie it vnto the VV ager, by beeing altogether vnable to holde theyr owne waight any longer, fall downe and

are defroyed.

But, that this businesse might be put in execution, with much leffe daunger, A commodifome haue inuented a verie great wheele, ous wines guided and directed (in fonce places) by Workmen in Horffes but for lacke of fuch help, men the Golden do therein employ their strength and industrie. By the meanes of this wheele, they let downe and mount vppe againe, the Delucrs and Diggers in the Mine; and those also that carrie the Oare to wathing. This VVheele ferueth likewife. to conuey away the VVater which the Diggers happen to light on, verie deepe in the Earth. Another great daunger which I do observe in this search, is the Thenoysome noyfome exhalations yffuing out of the fauors & ex-Mines, whereby many people have been Mines. flifled, not being able to endure fo groffe an Ayre. Many times also, rauines and invadations of water happeneth, fuddenly breaking foorth, by fome ouerture of the fourfe or Spring, and ouertaketh or rather furmounteth them fooner, then they can have respite for giving warning to them alofte, for drawing of them uppe. And therefore, those as The qualitie'

bee employed in this laborious paines & of fuch as vntrauaile, commonly are fuch as haue de- dergo: the ferued the Halter : or elfe, theyr ovene greateft dan-Slaues, whose Lines are of lesse esteeme

Yyy 2

vnto them. then are some of theyr best

Beafts.

fions and De-

Diuellish Vi.

Opinion con-

Wee are further to knowe, that the Golde which is found in the Indiaes, is not so much charged with Mettalles, as that which is hadde in Europe, Asia, or Affrica: because it is farre more pure, and yeeldeth not fo much labour to the Purifier . For that Golde of the Indiaes, is fined or purified only by fire : but that elswhere(ouer and beside the fire)is beaten and re-beaten with the strokes of hamours; and then in the end, refined with strong Water. Also, rarely or sildome

Gold in graines beeing founde in Ri

Fable of the Goldé-ficece do they find any pure Gold in the Mine: but it is intermedled with Siluer, or fome other Mettals. As for the Golde in Graines, which

is found in Rivers and perling Brookes, they vsed (in some parts) to gather it with the helpe of Sheepes skinnes, that hadde the Wool on them : but because it ap- 20 peared to bee ouer-laborious, the vie of Quicke-filuer was denifed; whereby it is eafily knowne among the fand. From which maner of trying or finding Gold, the Fable of the Golden Fleece was inuented, which lalon and his Argonantes, fayled for to Pontus. And having attained so farre as the River Phasis, where the Countrey people found out and gathered their Golde, with such Wooll skinnes: they derined thence, many good Golden Arguments, and could tel store of Tales, at their returning home. But bee it how focuer Ialon and his followers Fleeced, and got all the Golde from the Colchians, which they had gathered for manie yeares together, with their sheepskinnes: And then gaue it out in a mockery, that they had con-

quered and woonne

Gold.

the Fleece of

CHAP, XXXI.

Whence the diversitie of Golde proceedeth: His Medicinable Vertues. Of visions and illusions that are mette withall in Mines. And of the deceite that is committed in the composition, which is called Aurum potabile.

Ome do hold, that in the whole vniuerfall Worldes, there is but one kinde of Gold only; and that (generally) wherefocuer it is found, or whence foeuer it commeth: if it be well refined and purified without anie commistion, it is continuallie good Gold . Alfo, that that which is drawne out of the verie coldest Regions in the world, is as good as that of the verie hottest parts. And that of the East is no more excellent, then the other of the West. But when Finers, Gold-fmiths, and Monnovers, do attribute divertitie of Names thereto, esteeming one kinde to bee of the duters much greater price and value then ano- kinds of gold ther (as we may note for example; one is and of their tearmed Ducate Golde, another Crown Gold, another Maille Golde, or Or de Maille, another Pistolet Gold, valewing xxi. Carrats, another eighteene, and fo of others; some more, some lesse:) Questionlesse, these Names and dignitics, did receive their birth and Original in divers Countries, where Gold had beene adulterated and fophisticated, by the vnfaythfulneffe of Workemen, and multiplyed with other minglings of Metals, of much leffer value, and farre inferiour in puritie to the other . Which multiplication, hath beene invented, according vnto on began in Modernemotheir will and humour, that laboured to augment our moderne Moneyes. As for

Ducates, Crownes, * Fhilirpus, * AnGoine worth
Gis. Sterling
gelots, and * Portugaloifes, they were di'Our English Coinc worth uerfly forged of pure and impure Gold, and the inuention hath not beene Mogue, word: iii. li.x.s.Sterling

For wee finde, that from the time of the Romaines Greatnesse, the Commonwealth mon-wealth being not able to fupply the expences of their warres: did fometimes diminish the prices of their moneyes, for an ouer-plus gaine and aduantage. Likewife, they fophisticated their purest Siluer, enter-mingling it with an cyght part of Copper, onely because they wold encrease it. Some (neuerthelesse) contrarie to the

opinion of Antiquitie, and of many, ve-

rie skilfull in matter of Mettals, doe fay

the contrary, to wit; That the Fasterne

Golde is much better then the Nor-

therne; and better in one Country then in another. Byt as for my felfe, I holde

the first Opinion, as beeing perswaded,

that Nature neuer tooke delight, in ma-

king one Elementarie fabitance of gold,

more fine or perfect then another. For,

hee is fo much the neater and purer in 20

It is no shame then to vs. if we hold

farre about all other Riches, and valew

it in our judgement, to bee more pre-

cious then all other Mettalies whatfoe-

uer. For, Nature confulting with her

tie, truely correspondent to the Symme-

trie and inft proportion of the Elemen-

tes, yeeldeth it readilic purifyed from

the verie Originall, according as the

selfesame Elements were truely simple.

And by Conjunction of those Elements,

beeing in Vertue equall together, was

engendered fuch a Delicate and perfect

mixtion of indiffoluble Vnion, compo-

fing the Connexion fo intirely and faith-

fully: that it formed an incorruptible

Paste or substaunce, which is permanent

vnto all Eternitie both in goodnesse and

And this is the cause, why it cannot

bee Conquered by the injuries of Anti-

onely, aboue all other Mettalles what-

felie, to compose it of an equall quanti- 39

Opinion contrary to Antiquity & men of skil in Mc

Chap.31.

There is only but one kind of Gold, ion to aproue

his qualitie, as the Elements are simple, whereof hee is framed or compo-Golde in fuch excellent estimation,

The purity of

Gold cannor

Multiplicati-

neure an ex-

crefeence of

fowle Commixtion.

quity, and that it will not containe in it felfe, nevther endure anie excrescence and superfluity of fowle commixture. For, although it remaineth as buried in the W ater, or in the Fire, for fome long space of time: yet notwithstanding, it is neuer blemiffied, neyther receyueth anic other qualitie or defect, as I have for merly fayde. This is the priniledge, which is alone perticuler vnto Golde

excellencie.

focuer.

Now, albeit the Gracians have spoken nothing of his properties and Medicinable vertues: yet the Arabians were The Medicinot therein forgetfull, because they appointed it in prepared Medicaments, to 91 Gold. enacuate fullen and Melancholie Hu-

Item, to make an actuall Cautere, especiallie in his Soueraigne qualitie, it must onelie be done with Golde: for the with Golde. Wound which it maketh and Vicerates, is much more the fooner healed, Goldmakerh Golde held within the mouth, maketh fweet breath. the breath good and sweete. The Filedust of Golde, pounded or beaten smallest on a Marble stone is verie good Gold restoin fuch Medicines, as are given for the rethlodnaire re-growing of Haire againe, after it hath been formerly loft: or for Ring wormes and Tetters, when it is fo finall beaten as it may bee fearfe differned under the Thumbe Naile: then putting it into the eyes, it is very fourraigne for clearing of with the eye

Gold preferthe fight. It is drunke also, for a prefernatine against the accidents and dann-

(made red hotte in the Fire) hath beene fome few times quenched : or, wanting Goldquenched in Water an Ingot, a Ducate, Portugue, or forme helpeth the fuch other thick and great piece of gold: Qiartain A that Water, mingled with wine, helpeth the Quartaine Feauer, purgeth the Me-lancholy humor, diminificith the puft vp Spleene or Milte, and is also a singulare remedy against the Dropsie.

tings of the heart.

Nor are those reports to be reputed as Fables, concerning enill Spirites or Damons, which have bin feene and hearde Spirits haunin Mines: for this is the most irkeform and are verse dandangerous thing, that hurteth and offen gerous to the deth the poore Mettally Pioners. And Poor Pioners. manie times, they behold the rowling of great stones from the maine Rocke, their Engines fuddenly broken all to peeces; their Ladders ouerthrowne, and the Cords (whereby they holde) broken in funder; so that the parties fall beyond all

recoucty. Others have bin rapt and transported fuddenly away, and never after eyther feen or heard of. These hurtful spirits are thought alfo to do them infinit finall feruices, as to them that draw white Mine, and cleave the great stones of the Rock, (which is thought fometimes impossible

Water, wherein an Ingot of Golde

uiceable for a while, and

hurtiui átter:

to be done, without fuch strange help) & counterfetting a thouland voices, with as manie Apith and fantasticke trickes, for the pastime and pleasure of such poore people in their labour . But verie foon after, except they be aduifed and careful of themselues, a peece of the Rocke fals on their heades, and then this joy is conuerted into teares and fad complaintes. theidolatrous And this happeneth more in the Indiaes, and amongst those Idolaterous people, then where any Christians are, or fre-

Belonius his

More among

Indians, then

any wher els.

(a, where the Mines are, that appertaine to the Turke: himfelfe went to peepe in, at one of the spiracles or breathing holes of a Mine, which had formerlie beene, (but not for a long while) of great reuennew to his Maister, who was a Iew; but as then hee was conftrained to forfake it, because it was haunted with a Mettallie Spirit. And because he had very often theware himfelfe, in the forme and likeneffe of a Goate, with faire and goodlie Hornes of Golde, they called that hole or Spiracle, Hyaris Cabron, which was at the top of a Village, named Pianits, in the fame Mountaine, and neer to the Brook, 30 tearmed Rotas. But this was fuch a dif-

there were divers other mettally Spirits, in their labours. Munster, who had viof the Cittie of God.

Aug.in lib.9.de

An angry dif-

contented

Deceite com . mitted by Quackfaluers

Belonius reporteth, that when he was in Greece, at the Mountaine of Syderocapcontented Deuil, as none might be fuffered to labour there, neither in company,

nor alone. He affirmeth alfo, that in other Mines, that would doe no harme to anie of the Workemen, but helpe them many waies fited fundry Mines in Germanie, records 40 the verie same. To yeelde a reason for these marters, I cannot: but referre it to fuch as are better feene in fuch thinges, then I am my felfe : yet Saint Augustine speaketh verie amply thereof, in his book

But before I end this Chapter, I wold aduertife the well minded Reader, to beware of certaine gadding Emperickes or Mountebankes, making profession of Phylicke, who gine vnto lickely people a kinde of powder, or a certaine liquor to drinke, which enforceth the bodie for to purge so violently both vpward & downward, that verie many haue died thereby. Concerning mine owne judgment heerin, I take it to be Antimonie, though they

please to tearine it, Aurum Potabile. For, | durii Potabile. if it were Gold, it could not do any harm: for what soener proceedeth of Gold, cannot but be good, and free from hurt. But under the shaddow of his Sacred vertue, fuch Conferuers have taken occasion to commit thereby verie great abuses. As there are some also, that Nursing young Children after their owne manner, doo let them champe double Ducats in their Yong Chilmouths: and then their flauer or fpettle drendrivell is to bee preserved: affirming it to be veric helpeful to divers diseases.

But because these are enident and apparant tromperies; I am of the minde, that it wil not paffe any long time vnpunished.

Thus you fee, what I have Collected out of manie good Authors, both Anci-20 ent and Moderne; as also the judgement of approoued good Metallers, concerning the true History of this so excellent & much affected Mettal: which althogh it looke sometimes verie pale, it only proceedeth thorough the enuie and defire, that euerie man (Naturally) beareth vn-

CHAP. XXXII.

The Interpretation of those three severall Titles, Democratia, Aristocratia, Monarchia, which are three diners kindes of Governement in a Commonwea'th, to under Stand which of them, is the best and most expedient.



Did purposely insert this Chapter, to declare the The Authors great errour of manie in resson forthis thele our dayes, who beholding feditious troubles to offend the autho-

ritie of Soueraign Princes (without any cause or subject) in too manie countries and parts of Christendome; would have Common-weales formed, according to their perticuler affections, fome being Democratiques , others, Aristocratiques, and are all vtter Enemies vnto absolute Monarchy. Nowe, beecause these

three wordes are not easily understood, except it be by fuch men as have knowledge in the Greeke tongue; the courteous Reader shall finde my honest furtherance therein; albeit Monsieur du Verdier, Lord of Vauprinaz, hath written and related somewhat thereof, yet very succincily. But I will alleadge the reasons both of the one and other, to the end it may be knowne, which of thefe kindes 10 of Common wealth is the best, and likell to be of longest continuance.

The definition of Demo-TALIA.

These three

words not ca

fily vnder-

flood by cue

ry man.

Of Ariflocratia

When this

kind of go-

uerr ment is

allowed.

which we may interpret in our language, to be the power of the most vertuous. and in Latine, Optimarum Principatus : in regard, that they are reputed to be very good and vertuous, as commonly wee hold our best Gentlemen to be. This forme of government taketh place, when as few Noblemen are approoued vertuous, either in learning or good manners; to fway the Soueraignetie of the whole body, and minister Lawes to the rest of the people, as well in generall, as in perticular . Monarchia, is that 30 awefull authority, when one alone hath

The Source raigne authoity of Royal-

Many thinges o indeed.

Their renfons that defend the iway of Popularity.

Democratia, or populary estate and preheminence, is a Common-weale, where the free and poorest (beeing the

greatest number) do ouer-rule and commaund all the reft . Aristocratia, is that the fole power ouer all the people, both Nobles and others, commaunding abfolutely.

Common-weale, is called Royaltie. And me-thinkes, now that I have given yee the fignification of these three Titles : it would not much varry from our purpole, to fet downe which of them is 40 the most profitable to the people, tollerable, and of longest continuance. For many reasons and Arguments may bee produced on either fide, fome whereof will feeme to be receiveable; which neuerthelesse are not, and therefore I hold it fittest, to let them bee tried by open euidence.

This forme of government in any

First then, such as approue the estate of Democratia, or popularitie, will al- 50 leage vnto vs : that there have been Demorratics, of the very worthieft men in Armes, and that by the Lawes of the very greatest Intisconfults, Oratours, and Artezans, there should not be any other Common-weales, where the faction of a few Lords among them, or

the lealouse of one fole Monarchi should hinderstie subjects in any great attempts. And, which is more, it appeareth, that the true note of a Com- Generall bemon-wealth, should consist in a popu- people. lar estate onely: for then, all the people enioy the publike good, cach man pertaking in common good fortunes, spoyles, wages, and conquests. Wheras a few Lords in Aristocratia, and one alone in Monarchy; convert the publike benefit to perticular interest. In briefe, if there be nothing more to bee defired, then that Magistrates should be obedient to the Lawes, and subjects to Magistrates: it appearethalfo, that these may be best observed in a popular estate, wherethere is nothing else but Law, who is the Lady and Mistresse of Lnw the Lady and Mistris all. These are the principall points that of all. can be alleaged, to vphold popular authority, which carrieth a goodly lufter

in apparance : but indeed, all thefe reafons are nothing elfe in effect, but meer Spiders webs, foft, gentle and cunningly wouen, yet of no validity or strength

of Lawes, one repugnant to another,

which Magistrates suffered to line in

fulpence, during the time as they exer-

cifed their Offices; neuer caring or re-

specting, whether they were beneficial

or hurtfull, but onely that some memo-

ry might remaine of them, after the ex-

piration of their authority. This was

had no Houses in Rome, should avoide

and get them gone. Virginius, his com-

panion in rule, caused the confrary also

to be published, to make the people ca-

pable of fuch a Law as he would pro-

mulgate, and to flesh the Inhabitants

(in the harr of the Citty) against the

Strangers. By reason of these two con-

trarie Lawes, some were found, that

To refute that which hath been faid, A refutation of a popular estate, or Common-wealth, we will begin with the first Al-alleaged. legation: that therein hath been found more Law-makers, Orators, good cap-

taines, and Handy-crafts men, then in any other. It is very certaine, that the why there cause of so many Law-makers in this were so many estate, proceeded from the contrarietie Law-makers.

an ordinary custome in Kome, as may be Example of noted, when the Confull Cassius proclaimed by the found of a Trumpet; Pagamathis

that all the Latines and Hernians, which affociate.

The cause of fish ftore of Captaines.

beneficial tor

Souldsours,

then Citizens

bufily therein, were termed great Law Cittizens blood and lines.

Of Oratours, and eloquent Speakers.

Ignorant peo ple affect praifes.

Confusion is tude of pco.

Titus Links in Lib.7. 6 8.

studyed how to glose and accord these differences, and they that medled most makers. If (in this condition) fuch great Captains have bin found; it grew by no other occasion, but that in such popular estares, civill Warres were orderlie very frequent. Hecreof let Rome be a Winnesse, where oftentimes the people were beheld in a heape on the one fide, and the Nobility on another fide, fometimes in three devisions. Or, if they had peace among themselues; then they were at Warre with their Neighbours . And indeed, through this continuall exercise of Armes, there were many good Captaines and Souldiours made but with the dear expence of the

For Oratours, because any people that commonly are without Letters or learning, or any store of judgement, doe affect such as praise them the that can best please by those meanes, tickling the eare with finery wordes: (hall be fure to be efteemed among fuch people, and eloquence is very dangerous, except it be well vied. For the attaining of which degree, Oratours contend in the Art of Rhetoricke, who shall speake sinoothest. And it is no matter of meruaile if excellent Orators bee found in popular estates : for there was a Demosthenes in Athens, and a Cicero in kome. Morcouer, to aske counfell of the people, as anciently it was don in popular Comonweales : were nothing elfe, but to request Wisedome from furious mad men, and it hath long past 40 as a well knowne Prouerbe; Wile Men propound, and Fooles give resolution. Moreoner, we know very well, that in an affembly of people, nothing can be kept fecret, which is a most pernitious thing. The difficulties enfuir g, by conuentickling a multitude of people in one place, the diforder among croudes and throngs, the variety of voyces, and inconstancy of men of many minds; all these I passe ouer.

The people, of their owne Nature (faith Titus Liuius) are infolent and exceffine in all liberty and licence, when matters goe well with them; and as deiected or downe-pressed are they, vpon the least losse: for vicious and impudentmen, are advanced among them, but the honest and vertuous are thrust out by the eares. As for in-Iustice, the people fay, let no care be had thereof: prouided, that profit may bee deri- good men no ued from judgements, and fold to the way regarded fairest offerer : that good meanes may bee had, to ruinate, Rich, Noble, and honest men, hurrying them without any cause, but meere capitall hatred to fuch good mindes; contrary to the many-headed humour and Nature. For this cause, the popular estate or Common-weale, is the fourfe and refuge of all turbulent spirits mutiners, seditions, and exiles: who gine councell comfort

and exites: who gate counter connote and refiftance to the fillier fort, to make nite mifchies hauocke and spoile of the greater. But yet there is a more capitall plague, Titus Linius attending vpon those popular Common- 116.7. 48.

weales. to wit : impunity of wicked perfons, provided, that they bee Cittizens, that is to fay, petty Kinges. For in a popular estate of the Romaines, it was prohibited to all the Magistrates, on paine of death = to condenue a Cittizen to naturall or civill death, or to deprive him of decordinarihis libertie or Bourgeship, or to whip ly accompany him with Rods; were his offence neuer popular on haue ordinarily no other obiect, but | 30 fofoule. Yetwe read', that Verres was accused, attainted, and convinced, to haue robbed, stolne, and committed an hundred thoufand concuffions, or publike extortions, and falle indgements: neuertheleffe, by parting out of Rome, & leaving a good moity of those thefts Offenders behind him; he was quitted. And yet Innocents Rutillius, Metellius, Coriolanus, the two banuhid. Scipioes, and Cierro, they could have no better fauour then banishment. Ephesus alfo could banish the vertuous" Hermodoins: Athens expulsed inft Aristides: the twelve Themistocles died in exile; Militades in Tables to be Pulcin; Socrates was put to death; and * Photion, the most intire and vertuous *He was man of his age, after he had bin chofen Scholler to fine and forty times chiefe Captain and Commaunder, neuer receiving any of wonderfull blame or taxation, yet not with standing constancy & without admittance of any answere, he was condemned to death, with forty other famous men, onely because they were his friends. States & degrees were Degrees and therefold alfo, even as they did at Rome: Offices for Marius durft boldly bring Sumpters bought with Money. laden with Money, to buy the voyces

of the people; and Pompey did the like.

Bad men ad.

nocrates, and

The reason why the common wealth ters hath conunued fo

The concussions beside were an incredible matter, made in the face of judgement, and before the eyes of all behol-Much conformable to this, was that

of Statocles, and Democlides, Athenians,

who when they took possession of their

Offices, Come on (quoth they) let vs now

goe to the Harnest of Gold. If then fuch

eftares, degrees, and Inflice it felfe were 10

Extortion & in luftice committed in

Example of the Megaren-es to their

fo vnworthily fold, in two fuch great Common-weales, enriched with the spoyle of other people: what then may men judge of the popular preheminence, where the poore are alwaies needy, wretched and indigent? Wee haue an example of the Megarences, who having expulsed their Prince Theagines, established such an irregular populare gouernment, that it was lawfull 20 for the poore to line in rich mens Houfes, as Plato hath very well recorded.

Common-weales of the Romaines, Athenians, or others, hadde fome time of flourishing: it was onely occafioned, by hauing (in those tempestuous daies) a Senate, full of men of honour, as also of worthy and vertuous Captaines, that kept the people from difordering themselves, and served (indeed) as a bridle to them; As in Rome there a Mennius Agrippa, a Camillus, a Papyrius Curfor, a Fabius Maximus, a Scipio, a Ca-

to, a Scaurus, and a Pompey. In Athens,

there was a Senate of the Ariopagitas,

And a Pericle (faith Thucidides) who was

the true Monarch thereof, though in appa-

rance it was meerely populare, In briefe.

the popular estate can have no long

fubfifting; if there be not some especi-

all Wife-men, that have an eye to the

Now we are to know, that if the

Thucidides in

Lords of

Leagues and

ties, in their

The reason

why any po-

pular estate

time of conti

harh forme

nuance.

gouernment. But some will object vnto me, and fav: doe we not fee the Lordes of Leagues and Confederacies, that they haue built vp a goodly popular eftate, and continued in the government therof, more then three hundred and fiftie yeares? Are they not also (by these 50 meanes) warranted not onely from tyranny, but likewise have given chase to Tyrants, infulting on their Neighbors? To a double demannd, we must needes

returne a double answere. First, the Country it felfe, and naturall disposition of the people, is very conucnable for a popular effate. In the fecond place, they that are most quarrellous & mutinous, doe goe to the feruice of other strange Princes: the rest of the mil der people, apt and easie to be ordered, they have no great care how the State flands.

and popular Common-weales, do enter into confederation offenfine and defenfine, and are vnited strictly together : Not much valike to fuch as walke in darke nights, or goe over flipperie places, where is danger of downe-fals, A very apt they holdone another fast by the hand, companion. and in this manner they maintaine themselues, against the power of Monarchies, as the Athenians and Thebanes did in those elder daies. Yet one thing more may not bee forgotten, the foundation of their popular effate: was builded and cimented with the blood of Nobility, and of those that were the very richest.

Our auncient Predecessours, for the better affurance of their estates; did ftring to equalize all their Cittizens in Fondity is al Goods, Honours, Power, and recom- waies moft pences, and if there were some one, respected in more inft, more vertions, and more Commonwife then the rest : if he were not bani- wealth. flied, he was vied as badly, for al things possible was taken from him, euen as it was a common practife in the Common weale of Athens. It is an act of great in-luftice, to take away the goods of a rich man (which he hath obtained by his care and industry) and make them equall to another, of no meritor worthy qualitie. It is also contrary to the Law of God, who hath exprefly commaunded, that the proprietic of mens goods, thould be kept to themselves. It God: law for behooveth not then to fay, that nature the propriety of mes goods. made al things in common: for the law of the Mother, can no way be contrary to the commaundement of the Fa-

And as for the power of commaunding, wherin popular men would equal one another : there is much leffe apparance then in goods: for wifedome and leleting. Maprovidence is not given by an equal giftrates and distribution, and therefore (on meere Officers in a necessity) election must bee made in a stare. popular estate, of the most sufficient Magistrates, for the better commaund

ther.

Moreouer, all the Lords of Leagues,

and

haue leffe judgement then brute beafts: yet others againe, who have the divine Carracter fo clearely, that they appear rather to bee Angels, then Men? All

finde one among a thousand.

which notwithstanding, they that seeke after equality; would have authoritie giuen to furious, ignorant, and infenfi- 10 ble Men, as well as to the wife, and best understanding. For the voyce of such affemblies is not poyzed by weight, and euermore the number of Fooles, wicked and ignorants, is a thousand times greater then people of respect : therefore Salomon faid truely, Hardly ye shall

For conclusion, seeing it is not in the

and delivery of Iustice. But who is he

then, that perceitteth not at first fight,

that among men there are some, who

pular eftate.

Where lawes

Equalitie ef Authority in

power of good Cittizens and wife pol- 20 litiques, to change the populer estate into Monarchie; the principall foundation of popular fway, confifteth in the ftrict observation of Edicts and Ordinances. For in as much as the popular estate is established, contrarie to the course and order of Nature, which be-Stoweth commaund and preheminence on the verie wisest: this appeareth incompatible to the vulgar people, who | 30 will not receive any commaund in a collectine name, neither fet good lawes and ordinances before their eyes, as bright Torches for their better directiand ordinan on therefore fuch an estate must needs be quickly ouerthrowne. And this feuerelykept, be quickly ouerthrowne. And this the state can is the reason, why those Lordes of hardly indure Leagues doe fo strictly keepe Edicts

> fome to the Reader : the matter of Ari-Stocratia and Monarchia, shall be handled (by themfelues) in the following Chapter.

> and Ordinances: otherwife, their estate

regard that this Chapter feemeth am-

ple enough, and (I hope) not weary-

had long fince beene funke. Now, in 40

CHAP. XXXIII.

That Monarchia ought most especially to be preferred before Democratia or Aristo-GYASIA.



Y naturall reason, that Seigneuric or Dominion of the Arish is cald Ariflocraticall, where there be many Cittizens, and the leffer part of them

doe hold the estate : or more properlie, where the best and woorthiest people are onely received and aduanced. And yet it may be saide, that soucraignetie ought to be giuen to the richest perfons only, as to them that have therein the greatest interest : considering also, that they beare much heavier charge then the poorer fort, who having no-

thing to loofe, meere neede maketh them to forgoe authority. It appeareth then, that Aristocratia should be preferredbefore the popular estate, but not before Monarchia. And yet doubtlesse, they that doe well confider what Ariftocratia is; will finde it full of maine in- Thereafons commodities. That it must needes be of them that fo, make fome observation. In a great Common-wealth, ye shall have many Lords that wil command, and the more Lords there be, the greater store of factions: among whom, deliberations being difficult to refolue on, they rather vanish away like smoake, then are serioufly confidered. For this cause is it, that Aristocraticall authorities haue bin The fewer much longer durable and affored, wher Lords, the there have bin the fewer Lords : As the firmer go. Lacedemonians with thirty Lordes, and Ariflocratia.

others not halfe the while. It may be objected vnto me, that they which gouerne the Arisiocratical efface; thereto. must be prouident, valiant, wife, and rich. I answere, that it is very hard to finde fuch men there, but at length they will be touched with ambition; and if there happen any to be conscientious, or religiously affected; as commonlie they are the fewest in number, so shall

the Phar (alians with one and twentie,

did long time maintaine their rule, but

A litle country of Greece. by the gulfe riffeus.
* An life be-

fore Ionia, ouer against A Citry of Caria. A Cittie in

kept in quiet.

they be fure to have the leffe respect & partakers. In which regard, wicked and ambitious men gaining eminency; their conclusions passe for autenticall, and they may the easier tyrannize ouer the people.

The inconueniences hap-pening in the Sate Ariflo-

Chap.33.

The Seigneury of Venice.

> An allegation concerning councell.

But to be briefe, it is daily feene, that the more heads there are in governing, the more diffoures there will be an leffe refolution. For this caufe, and to thun the inconveniences before alreadged; the Seigneury of Ven ice, on other the managing of their State at a second a dozen persons, but more ofteruen: especially, for the detail. matters in fecrecy, wherein lieu, the

foule and fafety of any Estate.

Let vs put the case, that the private Councel in Aristocratia should be so fecret, that nothing could touch the ayre 20

or wind: yet it will bee a very difficult thing, for so few Lordes, to maintaine their estate against all the people, that haue no part at all in their honourable qualitic, confidering, that even the Lordes themselves doe continually despise popularitie, and the poorer fort alfo cary as cotemptible hatred against great men. So that, thorough the meanest sedition of Lordes among them, cuerthrow of (which is incuitable, if they bee people of martiall flomacke and disposition) the most ambitious and troublesome, will fall into the peoples mercy, and then comes the downefall and ruine of Aristocratia. And this was the onely occasion that ouerthrew many Seigneuries and Common-weales; as of Gennes, Sienna, Florence, Cologne, Zuricke, Strafbourg, Lindaw : And the ancient " Pho-

censes, * Samians, * Cnydians, * Mytilenians, and many other. If an Aristocraticall Common-weale haue warre against a Stranger, and doe come to the loffe of a battel : the estate

stands in danger, and as little assurance haue the Stangers also, fearing to bee foyled by the other. To which dangers the popular estate is not so much subicct each man having a part & interest in the Stare. Aristocraticall gouernment then, is not onely in danger of Straungers as enemies: but also of the people, who must be contented, or restrained by power. To content them, without giving them part in the estate is verie difficult : and impossible also to accept

them in honorable charges and offices, without changing the citate of Aristocratia, into popular rule. To restraine them by might, is no matter of certainty, or easie when to be performed : beciuseit were an open entrance into feare and diffrust of them, that rather are to be won by benefits and courtefic. For otherwife, the least warre of Stranreis against the Seignerry, or of Lords ameng them; wilmake the people vnde take Armes, onely to throw off the

For this reason, the Venetians (10 manthow fome finall Offices on part of the on of the Vepeople, contracting loue and alliance with them, & vie borrowings of them; to bi, de them the better for the States maintenance, yet wholely difarming them. And to the end, that they may be the more milde and plyable : they grant them freedome, and allkindes of pleaforce, yeilding fometimes the right of Bourgeships, to the richest Cittizens. Alfo, if they have War against a Stranger ; they have appointment therein, at what rate focuer it be . But about all Partialities thinges elic, they labour to quench par- and harreds tialities and hatreds among their Gen- qualified atlemen, which procureth: that the rich demen, beeing drunke with pleafures, and the poorer fort having meanes to Traffick, and exercise theselues in all Mechanic Aris, with commodity of the Maritime partes, and naturall strength; they can haue no great occasion, but much lesse

These are the onely meanes, which (next vnto God) hath principally maintained their estate: and not the Nature of Artstocratia, as many haue imagined. And yet notwithstanding, within these foure hundred yeares, or there-about, pening within they have hardly out-stood many civill four hundred Warres and feditions, of the Bocchoui- yeares. ans, Falerians, Tepolians, Baiemontanes, and cruell factions of the Iustinians, Seenolaes, Selians, Bassianes; the murders of eighteene Dukes, and a great number of Senators, as may be read in their own Histories.

the power of rebellifting among them-

felues.

If the worthy men that gouerned this Common-wealth, were generous and martiall minded: they feized the State, as Cefar did at Lome, and as Sylla before

For this reason, the Venetians (: o main-

Troubles hap

Daunger of Martial Com maunders in sall effate.

pall foundati on ot Arijiocritia.

The long con tinuance of fome Ariftoeraticall Common-weales.

Care of new election is an especiali mat-

The discomfuing by Mohim. Or as Hanniball at Carthage, who mooued Warre against the Lomaines, whereby he became the cause of rumating the estate of his Countrey: in regard of the Barchian faction, which was quity contrary to him, and hindred, that men and fuccour should bee fent vnto him in Italy. We may perceiue then, that the principall foundation of Aristocratia, confifteth in the mutuall amity of Lords: for if they agree and confent together, they will maintaine and gouerne much better then the people. But if there be any faction among them, there is no estate more difficult to be kept, for the reasons before specified; and namely it the Lords be Martiall, for men of war doe brooke nothing fo badly, as peace. It is no maruaile then, if the Aristocra- 20

tia of the Venetians, Regulians, and Lucanes have continued fome ages : confidering, that they doe not addict themfelues to armes, neither hold any thing in more recommendation, the Traffick, and vse of Mony. And, to speake all in one word, there is not any forme of Ariflocratia more fightly or affured, then that which maketh choise of Lordes of reputation and vertue, or (at least) that 30 are not infamous: especially when due care is had, of substituting another honest man, in the place of him that dieth, and by true election, as continuallie is done in Venice. Thus you fee the commodities and discommodities of the Aristoeraticallestate: Let vs now speake fomwhat concerning Monarchy, which all the best and chiefest men haue commended before al other commonweals. 40

It may be objected vnto me, by fuch as approone Aristocratia or Democratia, that in Monarchia, when the death of the Monarch happeneth: new defleignes doe thereon enfue, new Lawes, new Officers, new Friends, new Enemies, new Habits, and new forme of life. For Princes delight to pleafe themselues, by changing and remoning (well-nere) all things, to make speech of their own | 50 nouelties : which oftentimes caufeth great discommodities, not onely to the Subjects in perticular, but likewife to the whole bodie of the Commonwealth, holding the forme of Monar-

If things do not fall out in this man-

ner, but that the Prince is the wisest that can be wished; yet the alliances & loues made with the Predecessor, do vfually end in him. And fuch fauours and ceede in and respects beeing finished, Princes doe thereon betake themselues to Armes; and then the strongest assayleth the weakeft, or (at the leaft) will give him Law. Which cannot fo fall out in E-10 Itates Popular and Aristocratical, where perpetuall alliances are made, confidering that the people dye not. This occasioneth, that those other Princes, and particulers, do continually affect rather The affection to contract with a Seigneury, then with one Prince, for the affurance of Treaties and Obligations, whereto the Successionrs of Princes stand not obli-

Moreouer, Monarchies that make their Kings by election, do oftentimes their fources fall into civill Warres, by divisions among such as aspire to the Crowne, which draw after them the ruine of the whole Estate many times: confidering that even in the right of succession, there is no meane perill, if there be diuers in the same degree, who sometimes do murder one another, or make diuision among the Subjects, whereof too many examples are extant to our eyes; yea, it often falleth out, that the lawfull Successour is expulsed, by him that hath no right at all . But admit we If the King the case, that there is not any contenti- what danger on in Monarchia, yet if the Monarch be are depena Child: there will be denifion for his | ding thereon gouernment, betweene his Mother and the Princes, or elfe among the Princes themselues. And if the Child haue a Tutour or Guardian, by ordinance of the Predecessour, or elicby Custome: there is then some daunger, least this Guardian should make himfelfe Sole Commaunder, which is the most to be feared, if he marry with the Mother of his Pupill. And although (to anoyde this daunger) the government be given to the neerest, and the Dangerinthe Childes Nurffing to his Mother : yet Mother or the Prince. notwithstanding, there have some Mothers beene found to be Murderers, and haue not onely made fale of the effare, but also of their Childrens lines. And The danger fometimes the Tutour continueth in in Tutors and the government, and leaveth nothing vnto the King but the bare Title: as

their feuerall

· Offices in taxratia &

Guardians.

the Duke of Northumberland did to the R. of Ingland, Elles . And as apriles did. to yong Phillip King of Mucadon, who could not enjoy his own out ato, till hee had flaine his Tutor. I know likewife, fome one will tell mee, that many times it commeth to paffe, when a yong prince attaineth to the Grown, he wil not alow the government of Maisfers, that are placed neere him for instruction, but bee ruled by his owne fanfy, being addicted to Playes, Mafques, and fuch like In brief many times his Court thews like a meer Burdellae, fallinginto a thousand Vices, and the people following their Prince in imitation. If the Prince be a Soldier, he may expose his person and kingdome to

many hazards. Admit that none of thefe

aforefaid things doe happen, yet it hath

well mannered, when they arise to the

Monarchie, Soueraignty hath had this

hard fortune, that the very wifest have

proved fooles, the most valiant turnd co-

ward, and the very best to be most bad.

will establish tyrany; If cruell, he makes

a butchery of the Commonwealth; If

couetous, he will have both the haire &

will firek both the blood and Marrow to

glut some dozen of Horse leaches that

attend about him. And if he be ignorant

and fottith, then is tiranny fo much the

more to be feared, when as he hath nev-

ther Maister nor Companion that dare

make head against him . These are the

But yet there is much more perrill in

dangers that attend on Monarchies.

the hide of his fubiects; If Prodigall, he

If the Prince be fubrle and wicked he

bin observed, that Princes being wife & 20

pata Monar

thics are oftentimes fub

Chap.33.

the Estate Aristocraticall, and a great 4 deale more too, in the popular condition: for these daungers which wee have proposed, cease th for the most part, wher the Monarchy is devolved by fuccessing right. But seditions, partialities, and ciuill wars are ordinary, and continualy (as it were) arising in greatnesse, for the vaher-handing of Offices in the commonweale Seigneurall and Populary, then in the estate of Monarchy, which will endure no fedition for Offices, or for anie Estate, except after the Princes death, and but feldome then too. But the principall point of a Commonwelth, which is the right of Soueraignty, cannot bee,

neithersubsist (to speake properlie) but

only in Monarchy: for none can be So-

neraignein a Commonweale, but one only. If there be two, three gar more, the one isno Soucraigne, because one can neithengine, or yet receive lawe of his companion And although we may ima- Imaginations! gine abody of many Loris or of apon; are alwayes ple, to hold Soucraignty :: yet it is most irrigular and certaine, dist there is usbany true fubicot, or any improve, if there beautions head with Soueraigne power, to vnite one with another, which one simple Magistrare neuer can do, without Soucraigne Preheminence and authority.

The difficulties are daily noted, which Contrary opi Commonweal and Companied popular niens in popular Com-Commonweales and Seigneuries, when mon weales, both thu sine and other do holdcontrary very hard to parts; and by divers Magistrates: Some calling for peace, others war; One will haue this law another a quite contragy, One will have this man to be chiefe, and. ther aimes at his friend and pertaker, and the like in divers other matters.

Moreover, in a Seigneurall and Popular, effate, the greater part are continually made to belieue thinges, howbeit, the wife and vormous are alwaies the leffer number: by which means (divers times) the more found and better fort of people, are constrained to stoope under the greater, to pleafe the appetite of fom feditious fellow, or effronted Orationmaker . But the Sougraigne Monarch, hee can alwayes loyne with the more healthfull spirited and meaner part, making choife of wife men, and fuch as vn- Monarchia alderstand the State affaires: wheras quite wayes allow-contrary, necessity compelleth the populary of the best connects. lar and Ariffocratical estates to entertain councell. and embrace both fooles and Wifemen together.

When the Common-wealth of the Comparison Romaines was in perrill, they made a by divers co-Soueraigne Magistrate; according to mon-weales. which dignitie, hee had no Appellation, but commanded foueraignely, and they tearmed him Dictator. The Venetians created a Providadore : the Lacedemonians an Harmoste, & each of them did fo. confidering Monarchia to bee the most affured estate. Me thinkes, that these reasons, and manie other, which might bee drawne in perticulerly, are fufficient to thew, that amongefithe three kindes of lawfull Common-wealths, the right of Monarchie is most excel ent; and among them of Ryot and Diforder, the popu-

ffrained to

popular citate is the most vicious. Lawfull borne Monarchie, as a ftrong, and potent bodie, may eafilie maintaine it felfe: but popularequalitie, and Dominion of a few people (as being very weak and feeble) are subject voto many difeales, and must of necessity bee governed by dyet and prescriptions. Neuer were Ariforratiaes and Democratiaes feene to continue fo long as Monarchiaes, which 10 Comparison we finde (by writing) to haue endured a thousand or twelve hundered yeares, as of both kinds those of the Persians , Affyrians, Medes, and others: but the Populary or Aristocraticall, three or foure hundered yeares onely.

Monarchia is tigured and represented iu the Stars. and in other Creatures.

Therefore, it shall be needeleffe to infift any longer, in approuing Monarchia to be the most affured estate : considering, that a Family (which is the true I- 20 mage of a Common-wealth) can indure to have but one head only, as wee have approoued. And all the Lawes of Nature are our guides to Monarchy; be it, that wee respect the little Worlde Man, who hath but one bodye, and but one Head, as chiefe of all the other Members : on whom, dependeth the wil, motion, and understanding. Or bee it, that we looke vppon the great world, which 30 hath but one Soueraigne God. If we eleuate our eyes to Heauen, wee thall fee there but one Sunne. If we descend to fociable Creatures, we may plainely perceine, that they cannot fuffer many kinges, or many Lordes, how good foeuer

Read the Hiflory of the Turkes, and there this ex-

they be. This is the very fame example, which Solyman, King of the Turkes, vied in Anno Dom. 5,2. having heard the lowd 40 acclamations and thouts of ioy, which large related. the whole Armie made for the Sultane Mustapha his Son, at his returning from Perfin. Commanding him to bee strangled in his Chamber of presence. When he was dead, he threw his bodie foorth before the whole army, and cried out alowd, There is no more but one God in heauen, and one Sultan on Earth. Two dayes after, he did put to death Sultan Gobeus, because hee wept for his Brother, and Sultane Mehemet the third, because hee fled away for feare, and would leave no more but one only to flun the inconne-niences enfuing by many Lordes and Commanders. Euen fo we have beheld all the people vpon Earth, from the fur-

thest date of Antiquity, and when they were guided by one light onely : to like derived from nor allow of any other, forme of Com- Antiquity. monwealth, but absolute Monarchy.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the Vertnes & Secret properties of the Net-megge: That it was unknowne to our ancient predecesfors, with diners observations, worthy due regar-



HERE are manie 2 things, which beeing ordinarily worn or carried about a man, do impaire & grow vnto leffe eftimation: as fom pre-

cious stones, which though they are of aged by vie, and lose this a hard and folide matter: yet notwith-fanding they waxe old, and loofe much of their valew.

Cinnamon, Cloues, and Pepper, borne about vs, do drie of themselues and loofe their fweet fauour. Contrarywife, the Nut megge (on whose behalfe I have written this Chapter, termed by the Latines, Nux mixifties) being wome or carried about a man, doth encrease it felfe, and becommeth much the better. I Author mide found this rare effect of Nature, in the his first obleslower Germanie, where the Inhabitants of those Countreyes, doth vsuallie hang Nutmegs about their Childrens necks; and beeing fo worne fine or fixe yeares together: they were then much more Oyly and moyft, then they were the first yeare. After I had confidered on divers reasons inducing to this purpose, I could finde but one especially which I will declare: submitting my selfe neuerthelesse, to any other, that can alleadge a better, and more profitable.

Nutmegges (doubtleffe) beeing long time kepte in Spiceries, bee it in places dry or moift, and well pack to program and fasour. do yet dry of themselues, become fustie, full of holes, and of bad taft, euen like to worme-eaten and rotten wood. Neuertheleffe, a young man bearing a nutmeg

Chap.37.

The reason

how a Nut-

megge is bet-tered by wea-

ring, about a Child & yong

The ordinary

disposition of the Belgians. There are to

> The reason why Nuttenegges are worne about he necke.

The Sweates flome mens

bodies are ve-

ry fweete and

about him, & exposed to the open aire: dooth encrease and make it much the better thereby.

Now, to comprehend whence this proceedeth, we must vnderstande, that this is not proper to all Nutmegs, worne by all men indifferently : but it is to bee confidered; of fuch as is about an infant or elder Childe, a youth, or anie other young man, not having attained to the age of fortie yeares, as commonlie the Belgians are, and those of the nether Germany, beeing of verie good habitude, euen as vulgarly they are. This is easilic knowne, by the goodlie proportion of their bodies, the chearefull countenance and complexion of their faces, and firm fleshinesse of their limbes, by their Ordinarie appetite to feeding, strong digeftion, and beeing linely disposed in all 20 their joynts and members; alwayes trauailing couragiously, rarelic troubled with sicknesse or diseases, shunning and anoyding the riotous excesse, and lauith defire of gourmandizing, whereof they are verie carefull, mingling wholesome Spices continually amongst their meats;

and scarsely anie one of them, but wea-

ring some about them, especiallie Nut-

The yonger fort do weare them about their Neckes, because they hold opinion: that they make stay of the Rheume which falleth downe on the stomacke, and is a griefe enfuing by ouermuch eating and drinking; fuffocating thereby, the Naturall heate. And because such Nutmegs as are worne about the necke. for the space of foure, fine, or fix yeares, (fome more, fome leffe) do neither waft 40 or consume, but appeare to bee more weighty and Oily: it feemeth to proceed by this commendable temperance, from whence ir exhaleth a vapour somewhat delicate and humecting, wherewith the Nut-megges (which they weare) are plenteously stored, which causeth that their Oyly nature, cannot by no meanes

becom dry, but rather is much the more encreased. Nor is this to bee accounted any way straunge, because wee finde in Learned mens writings, that from the bodies of diners personnes, have yffued very sweet and odorifferous fweats. Among whom we read of Alexander the Great, whose Garments receyued a wonderful fweetnesse (as one recordeth) from his verie bodie, and so continued in them most pleasingly, without any other Arte or cunning. I my felfe fawe an Indian at Nantes, who though he was stark naked, dian at Nantes. and his bodie sceming of a wilde Olive colour: yet, when mens handes were ftreaked thereon, they brought thence a fweete fauour, very answereable vnto

As for Maides and young Women, fuch matter is not acknowledged of Mads and them : and therefore I thinke, that the young Wcohinderance proceedeth from this, that men. Naturall heate is more imbecille, and of leffe power in them, then it is men; and their exhalation is nothing fo temperat; and in regard also, that they are fuller of Excrements, as hath beene declared in the precedent Chapter. But if wee shall Aged men or speake of aged people, they do resemble trees ouer spent with yeares, full of Puperature, trifactious humors : which maketh them white-headed, wrinkled, and full of defects, having no more strength to grow or encrease, whereby to produce matter of anie worth. Otherwise, they are so drie, that no exhalation at all commeth from their bodies; for age is nothing els A definition but a meere exficcation of the Radicall of Age. humour, and an extinction of the Naturallheate. Whereby may appeare. that they can no way better a Nutmeg by their exhalation. The Reader may content himselfe (if he please) with this reason, which many learned men haue approoued, ar well as my felfe. It shall now not be much amis to difcourse a little further of the Nut-megge, concerning the manner of his growth, in what Countreyes; and likewife of the facul-

ties thereof. That Nutrnegges were vnknowne to our reuerend Attricients, is verie ea. Nur-megges fie to be comprehended : because, ney- and Maces ther Theophrastus, Diofcorides, nor Ga- knowne vnto len, did euer make any mention of them. our Aunci-And it ferueth to no purpose, to alledge, ents. that they have spoken of Macer: for, I fay, that the * Macer of the Greekes, but a reddish was not the Maces of the Arabes, which Aronaticall is a hide or skinne that dooth court Rinds of a the Nutmegge. And it is verie likelie, certaine inthat if they had hadde anie knowledge dian roote. of the Maces, question leffe they woulde haue lefte fomething Written thereof. Neyther could wee attaine vnto anie Aaaa know-

The reason tered by wea-Child & yong

about him, & exposed to the open aire; dooth encrease and make it much the better thereby. Now, to comprehend whence this proceedeth, we must understande, that

this is not proper to all Nutmegs, worne by all men indifferently : but it is to bee confidered; of fuch as is about an infant or elder Childe, a youth, or anic other young man, not having attained to the age of fortie yeares, as commonlie the Belgians are and those of the nether Germany, beeing of verie good habitude, euen as vulgarly they are. This is eafilie

their bodies, the chearefull countenance and complexion of their faces, and firm fleshinesse of their limbes, by their Ordinarie appetite to feeding, strong digeftion, and beeing lively disposed in all 20

knowne. by the goodlie proportion of

desire of gourmandizing, whereof they are verie carefull, mingling wholesome

Spices continually amongst their meats;

and scarsely anie one of them, but wea-

ring some about them, especiallie Nut-

their iovnts and members; alwayes tra-The ordinary disposition of the Belgians. uailing couragiously, rarelic troubled with fickneffe or difeafes, fhunning and anoyding the riotous excesse, and lauith

The yonger fort do weare them about their Neckes, because they hold opini-The reason on: that they make stay of the Rheume why Nutte-negges are which falleth downe on the stomacke,

and is a griefe enfuing by ouermuch eating and drinking; fuffocating thereby, the Naturall heate. And because such Nutmegs as are worne about the necke, for the space of foure, fine, or fix yeares, thome more, fome leffe) do neither walt or confume, but appeare to be more weighty and Oily: it feemeth to proceed by this commendable temperance, from

whence ir exhaleth a vapour fomewhat delicate and humecting, wherewith the Nut-megges (which they weare) are plentcoully stored, which causeth that their Oyly nature, cannot by no meanes becom dry, but rather is much the more encreased.

Nor is this to bee accounted any way straunge, because wee finde in Learned mens writings, that from the bodies of diners personnes, have yffued very sweet and odorifferous (weats. Among whom we read of Alexander the Great, whose Garments receyued a wonderful fweernesse (as one recordeth) from his verie bodie, and so continued in them most pleafingly, without any other Arte or cunning. I my felfe fawe an Indian at Nantes, who though he was ftark naked, dian at Nantes. and his bodie seeming of a wilde Oliue colour: yet, when mens handes were

fweete fauour, very answereable vnto As for Maides and young Women, As for Maides and young vvomen, Concerning fuch matter is not acknowledged of Maids and them : and therefore I thinke, that the young Wcohinderance proceedeth from this, that men. Naturall heate is more imbecille, and of

leffe power in them, then it is men; and

fects, having no more strength to grow

that they can no way better a Nutmeg

by their exhalation. The Reader may

ties thereof.

ftreaked thereon, they brought thence a

their exhalation is nothing fo temperat; and in regard also, that they are fuller of Excrements, as hath beene declared in the precedent Chapter. But if wee shall Aged men or speake of aged people, they do resemble weomen have trees ouer spent with yeares, full of Pu-loft their temtrifactious humors: which maketh them white-headed, wrinkled, and full of de-

or encrease, whereby to produce matter of anie worth. Otherwise, they are so drie, that no exhalation at all commeth)

from their bodies; for age is nothing els A definition but a mecre exficcation of the Radicall of Age. humour, and an extinction of the Naturallheate. Whereby may appeare

content himselfe (if he please) with this reason, which many learned men haue approoued, ar well as my felfe. It shall now not be much amis, to difcourse a little further of the Nut-megge, concerning the manner of his growth, in what Countreyes's and likewise of the facul-That Nutmegges were vnknowne

to our reuerend Auncients, is verie ea- Nuemegges fie to be comprehended : because, riey- and Maces ther Theophrastus, Diofcorides, nor Ga-knowne vnto len, did euer make any mention of them. our Aunci. And it ferueth to no purpose, to alledge,

that they have spoken of Macer: for, 1 fay, that the * Macer of the Greekes, but a reddift was not the Maces of the Arabes, which Acomaticall is a hide or skinne that dooth couer Rinds of a the Nutmegge. And it is verie likelie, certaine in that if they had hadde anie knowledge dien roote. of the Maces, questionlesse they woulde

haue lefte fomething Written thereof . Neyther could wee attaine vnto anie Aaaa

knowledge in this case, till after that the Arabes had gotten vnto some authority, who taught manie medicines, vtterly vnknowne to the Grecians, because they were much neerer vnto the Indiaes then

A description of the Nut-, megge and Mace Tree.

The outward Nut-megge.

The first ap-

alteration of

afterward.

The Tree which beareth these Nutmegges, and the Maces is as great as a Peare tree, having the like Leaues, but shorter and rounder. It carryeth his Nutlike fruite, couered with a very hard rinde: which (when the ripening feafon is come) cleaueth or openeth of it felfe; and sheweth the filme or skinne, hat encloseth the Nut-megge, like a scale or shells; and that is it which wee call the Maces or Mace. I meane not the exteriour or outward rinde, albeit (in diners parts) they vie to Confect it with Suger, and is much commended in the Countrey where it groweth, that the finell & taste thereof, is verie wholesome against the paine of the Collicke, and the difcase of the Reines.

The fruite being ripe, and the fayde rinde exteriour opening (like to the thel or scale that encloseth the Chestnuts of pearing of the Maces. & Lymofine:) the Mace appeareth as red as Scarlet, wonderfull goodly to beholde, especially, when the Trees are wel char- 30 ged and laden, and beare more then is their viuall custome. The Nutmeg drying, the Mace still keepeth close and fast about it, till loofing his red colour, hee begetteth another, which is like a Golden Complexion: And these Maces are

folde at three times dearer rate, then the

Nutmegges.

In what places the Nutmegge Trees doe viually most grow.

This Tree that beareth these Nuttes, groweth in one of the Islands of the Mo-Ineques, which is called Bandano. It is found also in divers other places, as in Banda, Bandornica, Herma, Tharod, Machedad, Lyzamath, Cares, and in Zeylan, which are the most fruitfull Landes, and better then anie other. The people of the Countrey do vie to gather them, fome more in one place, then in another, according as they can get them: for, in the most parts of all the Islands, all thinges are in common, without any prinate claime. This is affirmed by Garcias d' Horta, who transiled himfelf into those

They that be fresh, and not drie, withered or worme-eaten, are the best nutof Nut-megs, megs; likewife, they that were waightie,

massie, oyly, & abounding in moisture: fo that by pricking them with a pinne or Needle, they fend forth a fweete fauour. Nutmegges (according to the Arabians opinion) are hot and drie, in the second Naturall prodegree compleat : they are aftringent, & Nut megge. (by champing in the mouth) doe make the breath fweet : they take awaie spottes and blemishes out of the face, sharpen the fight, and strengthen the Liver and ftomacke: they diminish the Spleene or Milt, prouoke Vrine, stay the course and Flux of the Belly, expelling all Windinesse, and helpe greatly against the Disease of the Mother, proceeding of Frigiditie. In briefe, they have the very fame Vertues and properties, as the Cloaues haue. Numegs do yeilde a licquor or A foueraigne inice, being freshly pounded, heated in a Oyntment pan, and prefently preffed : which tuyce made of Nut being let stand til it be cold, becommeth like virgin wax, and fenteth very fweetly. This vinguent is very foueraigne for cold Gowts, and to make a man gracious in the fauor of Ladies. Thus much haue I gathered concerning the Nut-meg.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

A Paradox purpo [elywritten in the defence of Warre, approving and maintaining it to be much more famous, honorable, & meritorious of commendation then



Ecause many tutneism menhaue (heeretofore)

B werie plentifully discoursed on the praises of peace among which, wee haue Ecause many sufficient

Erasmus Roterodamus, Romulus Amaseus, Claudius Ptolomeus, and Adriano Bentiuoli; all of them (with others of no leffe e- defence of legancy) having spoken soundlie, and to the purpose, as being Orators of no lesse learning, then fluent and eloquent in the tongues: the two first in Latine, and the other in the Tuscan language, all having discreetely employed their paines : yet notwithstanding, al their defences bestowed on the behalfe of Peace, I cannot forbeare to maintaine the contrarie,

from Athens, flew a terrible *Along Moutaine paffing from Lencadia through the

AFieldren

miles diftant

Chap. 38.

Opposition made against

The apparant

harmes and

iniuries enfo-

ing by Peace.

defences.

Baoti a by Cytheren neere to Thebes A Towne in Ifle called A. dulles in Pen.

habits of Cit-

Worthy encouragement for Souldiers: and as great

and will approue with refolued corage, that they have done mightie injurie vinto themselves, in making such description of commendations, by multiplicitie of ydle arguments, which now I will not trouble my felfe withall, either to improoue or confute. But so many onely will I produce and aduertife yee of, as shall happen to my memorie, in fauour of honourable combustion 8: war, and appeare to the manifest discredite of Peace.

For the first of my reasons, I say that in the time of Peace . Millitarie Discipline is loft, and commeth to nothing: which (neuertheleffe) hath beene at all times in reckoning, and allowed as a matter most necessarie, for Conquest, enlarging and conferuing of Empires, Provinces, and the verie greatest and 20 civillest lurisdictions thoroughout the

Witnesses heereof, are * Marathon Salamins, * Thermopy a, * Plataa, * Leuca, and many other places, not meanely renowned by the Heroycall Actions of Armes. By the meanes of warte, Horatius Coc'es was made immortall; and the three Decii helde for three Demie Goddes. Hence arofe the great & in- 20 finite praifes (fo fiveetly fung and Celebrated by Poets, and our ancient Historians of both the serpices and honourable Marcellus. To whome, I would gladlie fee who can be justly compared, under Correction of whatfocuer hath beene faid by fore-named Authours, in honour of their Gowne-men, the onelie especial loners and fauourers of peace,

We see also by experience, that (welneere) all auncient Statues or Figures, both were and are formed in military habits. And it was not lawfull (by the customes of all elder and noble Nations) for a Cittizen to weare any other Garment, then a party coloured coate: vntill bee had flaine, or (at least) vanquisht two of his Countreyes enemies. In this cafe, the Carthagenians had a most notable observation; for, looke how manie 50 times a Soldier had beene feene in the face of the enemy fo many Plumes, helmets, or Horsles, should bee bestowed vppon each feuerall man: but contrarywife, as often as they were abfent from the field, so manie Law bes and Capons wer fent them, as remembrances of their

crauenly cowardife. Li! ewife by publick agreement, it was not lawful for any ma to marry, except hee had first ferued in fundry foughten battailes, or performed Law for mar fome one or other honourable exploite, in the defence of his Country.

Let vs confider the great honor which Warre maintaineth enen to this veric Honour perinftant, to fach as either haue or do bear pecuated by Armes for fafety and defence of our ho- Armes. ly Christian faith. In memorie whereof Noble and famous Orders of Knighthood were aunciently established. As Knights of lerufalem, of hodes, of Mal- Orders of ta, of Saint lames, of Holie Lazarus, of Knight-hood to enternize Ielus Christ in Portugall, of the Round the memory

Table, and of the Garter in England, of Aimes. with divers other Dignities for Religious warfare, onely for the performance of meruailous and excellent Actions. Whereas contrary-wife, rhe mindes that were thus fired to haughty atchieuments, in the floathfull times of peace, would too eafily (euen of themselues) be connerted to proud and infolent at-

To prooue this true, that they which in the times of Warre, doo accomplish Examination deeds of Vertue, and in the dull daies of of the leueral peace) fall into quite contrary behauiours, we may perceive by great Marins, the Conqueror of the Cymbrians. When warre did fet an edge voon his true temper, he had not his equall for valour and proweffe: but, in the trifling times of peace, he was the most wicked and dangerous man in all the Countrey. In like manner, wee shall finde it for most certaine, that Peace quencheth whatfoeuer is good in anie man; and quickneth or Peacethe giueth life vnto all fuch thinges, as are all goodnesse in him most hurtfull and dammage- in men.

able. Let mee moue a question (in meere Courtefie) vnto fuch as are the greatest blamers and deprauers of warre. What Concerning can they call Hatreds, Quarrelles, and tarreds and Seditions, but the onclie true and perfect Inftruments, whereby Nature oftentimes helpeth to perfourme manie verie lawdable actions? Ye may immagine, that it was not without very great reason, that VVarre (by the Latines) was called Fella, Fayre, Pleafaunt, and Commodious: for fuch indeede is the 'The name gitrue Nature thereof, albeit our new vpflart gaine-fayers dooth affirme, that

Aaaaz

Famous Ar-

mies destroy

ed by the

meanes of

Princes made

their people,

rough and

by peace.

it is meant in a contrarie sence. But if it were lawfull, to compare the losses in peace, with them that enfue onely by warre: the report would be pittifull, and the remembrance verie Tragicall.

How many goodly Armies haue bin broken, defeated and destroyed, by the meanes (I will not say of peace) of truce onely? Which, though it bee Warres neerest Kinsman, yet it is sworne enemy vnto all Vertue and Valor. The strength and powers of Truce, ministers the meanes (euen as Peace doth) to lessen and impaire Citties, Townes, and whole Prouinces, by straunge Lawes and Ordinances : beside, it engendereth infinit fecret hatreds, and vpholdeth Princes in roughnesse and seueritie against theyr Subjects. In time of peace, the dispofitions of men, which (but for it) would 20 be highly exalted with enflamed defire to expresse their brauerie and roialty, do become sleepie, drowsie, pensiue, slothfull, lascinious, and esseminate.

But to prooue that Warre hath bin

fauoured and esteemed by our Lorde

God himfelfe, tell mee (I pray yee) was he not called by the Children of Ifraell,

The Great God of Battailes, The Lorde of

Testament, how manie mightie ouer-

throwes and flaughters were executed in his Name, vppon them that were the Aduerfaries of his people? Howe ma-

nie were flaine by Moyfes, Iofuah, Gede-on, Sampson, and divers other? Howe

manie flew Abraham, David, Judas Ma-

chaheus, and they that wer in those times?

What shall weefay of Saint Michaell the Arch-Angell; who (euen in Hea-uen it felfe) made such a sharpe Con-

flict against the Draggon? And, to continue on this discourse, even to the

New Law, if GOD had beene displea-

fed with Warre, would hee haue com

maunded his Apostles to sel their cloaks,

and buy each of them a Sword ? If Saint

Iohn Baptist, had hated Soldiers, or Mi-

they demaunded of him, what way they

should take, whereby to attaine to the

Saluation of their soules) That they should

consent them felues with their Wages, and

not rob or pille from the poore people. Hee

woulde then rather have commaunded

them, to leave that estate, and betake

litarie Discipline, would he haue apointed them this Law and Ordinance(when 50

Hostes and Armies? Looke in the Olde 30

Warre, fauou red and allowed by god himicife, and what names were giuen

Examples alleaged out of facred Scrip-ture in the old Teftament.

Examples out of the new Testament.

them vnto some Hermitage; or else, to deale in some affavres of Merchandize, or in some such like employments. No, content your felues (quoth hee) in your Garrifons, with your ordinarie pay, and to the authors offer no shame, violence, or extortion, to any one. For your calling (which is the Art Militarie) will not let or hinder ye from your faluation: because manie of your profession, haue thereby wonne

their fafeft fecurity.

This in briefe, and in my conceipt, is that which bleffed Saint *Johns* words intended, if I bee no bad Paraphraftor Interpreter. If hee had beene willing to discommend W arre, yet he wold haue forborne it : perceyuing what pride and infolence was crept into rich mens mindes, during the pampring daies of peace and no way fo foone to be cured or corrected, as by the worthy discipline obserued in warre.

How many haue beene observed, of great Gentlemen, Merchants, Coun- only bride treymen, and other of all conditions, to many not who were woont to bee most proud and arrogant : fuddenly to become kind and fes tractable, onely by meanes of the bridle of Warre? This is it, which delivereth vs from a number of missaps by theenes ydle Vagabonds, Gamesters, Pipers, Players, young Rogues, Cozeners, Ruf-fians, and High-way watchers. It ferues to whet and waken the spirites of Men, making their bodies to become more strong, light, nimble, pacient; yea, and emboldened against all hard and sinister

Confider the sweetnesse and delight The cimbiwhich the Cymbrians founde in VVarre, anshada grea vfing it as the Confernation of theyr felicity in Warre. Countrey: and when they went to fight, they woulde fing as chearefullie, as if they had beene going vnto a wedding. Immagine what pleasure was taken therein by furious Hanniball, Valiaunt Marcellus, Vertuous Scipio, Couragious Camillus, and that Victorious Alexan-

I say moreouer, who so ever is ignorant in taking good order for publique affayres, there is no place or Schoole, wherein hee may more eafily attaine thereto; then by noting the preparation enjoys proand conducting of an Armie . Besides, uidence. whofoeuer knoweth not the deceiptes, fleights, and trickes of ingenious pru-

to the Souldi.

ring life.

Warre is the The conclusion

All kindes of Creatures haue their contraries appointed, to

dence, or how to stand vpon his guarde, to know what he should auoyd, and what he ought principally to followe: let him but line in war a month or two for pleafure; and in that time he shallern more then all the Bookes of Peace shall euer be able to teach him.

Leffons to be learned in a Field of Bat taile, for any mans benefit

Chap.39.

Furthermore, hee that couets to vnderstand the true Nature of inviolable obedience, frict diligence, incompareable vigillance, vnípeakeable proniptitude of heart, and inestimable strength of the bodie : let him but vouchsafe so much leyfure, as (for a while) to follow a field well manned and prepared, there to obserue carefully, what hee may behold for his owne benefit. If hee finde not himselfe well fatisfied ; yea, & more then contented in verie few dayes, I will yeeld, and loofe my credite in this caufe. Which therefore shall ferue me to conclude withall, maintaining ftill that war

before de prefetred before peace, as deerly befored, and with choifeft praifes com-mended. Befide, our Prayers should continually bee made to God, to create fuch chearfull hearts in our Princes, that wee may not any long time, remaine in want, of fuch a precious and vnvaluable

Iewell.

CHAP, XXXIX.

Of the Indian Peare: And of those Beares in our owne Natiue Countreyes, howe different they are in their feuerall Na-

Ature hath verie many times expressed hir care and providence (as a dutifull handmaid atending on God) whethere are any store of hurrfull

creatures in some country, that may impeach the inhabiting of men, or Liues of other beafts and animals, to engender fome other of contrary kinds, to defroy the ouer-abounding of such harmeful! things. As we may observe in Serpents, which do denoure vp Toads & Lizards: Serpents also themselnes, are exten by Storks, and many times they themselves

do feede one vpon another. Cats also do devoure Rats, and fo in divers more befide. I speake this the rather, because we finde recorded in the generall hittorie of the Indiaes, that in Quilon, a certaine gionin the Countrey of the New-world, there are New-found fuch extraordinarie swarmes of Antes, that they confume the feeds and rootes of all Trees and plants . So that, if there were no Beares (which Nature in especiall favour hath there appointed, and in great plentie) ther could not be any poffibilitie of dwelling there, because they would make the Countrey to bee quite

The Beare of this Region, liveth only The Indian (without anie other foode or Pastorage) Beare seedeth by eating those Antes, whose beddes and Nests hee easily findeth, and so with his tongue (which is verie broade and large) hee is so quicke and readie in licking of them vp, that hee is onely nourifhed by them. There are also great store of those Bears, but they are not fierce, wild and harmefull, as those in other partes: for they will not fet yppon men; neyther mount yppe ypon Trees, to deuoure the young fprouts and fruites, but are verie eafly made tame and tractable by the fu-

There is no need of plucking out their eyes, or boaring their lippes, to thruste Rings of Iron thorough them, onely to tame them. For even of themselves, they are (well-neere) Domesticall: and, if it were not for these Beares, neither men, and great store of other creatures, could not live there: but they encrease in those parts fo aboundantly, that they fuffice to destroy the plentie of Antes; in which respect, the Countrey may well account it felfe to be most happy.

I have not well beene informed, whether it bee the Nature of the Beares in Ariffulle and, ther tibee the Nature of the Beares in anglate said, whis Countrey, that (according as hath beene reported) the free-Beare yeldeth or whelpeth a Male of Fleth, without anie forme or apparance of life: and that the Damme, onely by the Vertue of lie-

king, giueth it true thape. Of this opinion, were manie Learned and grave men, as Aristotle, Plutarke , Plinte , Elianus , and Du Bartas: but it is a manifest ertour, as experience hath plainly declared vnto vs, because in manie enclosed places of Germanie, and of Fraunce alfo, Beares of both fexes

The errour of

knowledge in this case, till after that the Arabes had gotten vnto some authority, who taught manie medicines, vtterly vnknowne to the Grecians, because they were much neerer vnto the Indiaes then

The Tree which beareth these Nut-

A description of the Nut-, megge and Mace Tree.

The outward Rinde of the Nut-megge.

megges, and the Maces is as great as a Peare tree, having the like Leaues, but (horter and rounder. It carryeth his Nutlike fruite, coucred with a very hard rinde: which (when the ripening feafon is come) cleaueth or openeth of it felfe; and sheweth the filme or skinne, hat encloseth the Nut-megge, like a scale or shelle; and that is it which wee call the Maces or Mace. I meane not the exteriour or outward rinde, albeit (in diners parts) they vie to Confect it with Suger, and is much commended in the Countrey where it groweth, that the finell & taste thereof, is verie wholesome against the paine of the Collicke, and the difease of the Reines.

The fruite being ripe, and the fayde rinde exteriour opening (like to the fhel or scale that encloseth the Chestnuts of The first ap-pearing of the Maces, & I amoline:) the Mace appeareth as red as Scarlet, wonderfull goodly to beholde, alteration of especially, when the Trees are wel char- 30 their coullour ged and laden, and beare more then is their viuall custome. The Nutmeg drying, the Mace still keepeth close and fast about it, till loofing his red colour, hee begetteth another, which is like a Golden Complexion : And these Maces are folde at three times dearer rate, then the

In what places the Nutmegge Trees most grow.

afterward.

This Tree that beareth these Nuttes, groweth in one of the Islands of the Mo-Incaues, which is called Bandano. It is found also in divers other places, as in Banda, Bandornica, Herma, Tharod, Machedad, Lyzamath, Cares, and in Zeylan, which are the most fruitfull Landes, and better then anie other. The people of the Countrey do vie to gather them, fome more in one place, then in another, according as they can get them; for, in the most parts of all the Islands, all thinges 50 are in common, without any private claime. This is affirmed by Garcias d' liorta, who tranailed himself into those

They that be fresh, and not drie, withered or worme eaten, are the best nutof Nut-megs. megs; likewife, they that were waightie,

massie, oyly, & abounding in moisture: fo that by pricking them with a pinne or Needle, they fend forth a fwcete fauour. Nutmegges (according to the Arabians opinion) are hot and drie, in the second Naturall pro opinion) are not and drie, in the lecond perties of the degree compleat: they are aftringent, & Nut megge. (by champing in the mouth) doe make the breath fweet : they take awaie spottes and blemishes out of the face, sharpen the fight, and strengthen the Liver and ftomacke: they diminish the Spleene or Milt, prouoke Vrine, stay the course and Flux of the Belly, expelling all Windinesse, and helpe greatly against the Disease of the Mother, proceeding of Frigiditie. In briefe, they have the very fame Vertues and properties, as the Cloaues haue. Nutmegs do yeilde a licquor or nuice, being freshly pounded, heated in a pan, and presently pressed : which inyce being let stand til it be cold, becommeth like virgin wax, and fenteth very fweetly. This vinguent is very foueraigne for cold Gowts, and to make a man gracious in the fauor of Ladies. Thus much haue I gathered concerning the Nut-meg.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

A Paradox purposely written in the defence of Warre, approving and maintaining it to be much more famous, honorable, er meritorious of commendation then



Ecause many sufficient men haue (heeretofore) B verie plentifully discour-fed on the praises of peace among which, wee haue

Erasmus Roterodamus, Romulus Amaseus, Claudius Ptolomeus, and Adriano Bentuo-ten in the li : all of them (with others of no leffe elegancy)hauing spoken soundlie, and to the purpose, as being Orators of no lesse learning, then fluent and eloquent in the tongues: the two first in Latine, and the other in the Tuscan language, all having difcreetely employed their paines : yet notwithstanding, al their defences besto-wed on the behalfe of Peace, I cannot forbeare to maintaine the contrarie,

Chap. 38. Opposition made agains

the former

defences.

and will approue with refolued corage, that they have done mightie injurie vnto themselues, in making such description of commendations, by multiplicitie of ydle arguments, which now I will not trouble my selfe withall, either to improoue or confute. But so many onely will I produce and aduertife yee of, as shall happen to my memorie, in fauour of honourable combustion & war, and appeare to the manifest discredite of Peace.

For the first of my reasons, I say that

in the time of Peace, Millitarie Disci-

pline is loft, and commeth to nothing a

which (neuertheleffe) hath beene at all

times in reckoning, and allowed as a

matter most necessarie, for Conquest,

enlarging and conferuing of Empires,

Witnesses heereof, are * Marathon

brated by Poets, and our ancient Histo-

rians of both the surpues and honoura-

ble Marcellus. To whome, I would

gladlie see who can be justly compared,

under Correction of whatfocuer hath

beene faid by fore-named Authours, in

honour of their Gowne-men, the onelie

especial loners and tanourers of peace.

neere) all auncient Statues or Figures,

both were and are formed in military ha-

bits. And it was not lawfull (by the cu-

stomes of all elder and noble Nations)

for a Cittizen to weare any other Gar-

ment, then a party coloured coate: vn-

till hee had flaine, or (at least) vanquisht

two of his Countreves enemies. In this

cafe, the Carthagenians had a most nota-

times a Soldier had beene feene in the

face of the enemy fo many Plames, hel-

mets, or Horsles, should bee bestowed

vppon each feuerall man; but contrary-

wife, as often as they were abfent from

the field, so manie Law bes and Capons

wer fent them, as remembrances of their

ble observation; for, looke how manie 5

The apparant harmes and miuries enfuing by Peace.

> civillest lurisdictions thoroughout the A Fieldren niles diftant from Athens, Salamina, * Thermopy a, * Plataa, * Leuflew a terrible ca, and many other places, not meanely *Along Moúrenowned by the Heroycall Actions of taine paffing Armes. By the meanes of warte, Hofrom Leuradia ratius Coc'es was made immortall; and through the midft of Greece the three Decij helde for three Demie A Towne of Baoti a by Cy-

A Towne in he borders of Istia, and an Ifle called Achillea in Pon.

Auncient cuflonies for the habits of Cit-

Weithy encouragement for Souldiers: and as great difgrace to Cowards,

crauenly cowardife. Li! ewife by publick agreement, it was not lawful for any mã to marry, except hee had first served in fundry foughten battailes, or performed Law for mar fome one or other honourable exploite, in the defence of his Country.

Of Warre & Peace.

Let vs consider the great honor which Warre maintaineth enen to this veric Honour perinstant, to such as either haue or do bear Armes for lasety and desence of our holy Christian faith. In memorie whereof, Noble and famous Orders of Knighthood were aunciently established. As Knights of Ierufalem, of hodes, of Mal- Orders of

ta, of Saint lames, of Holie Lazarus, of knight-hood to enternize Iefus Chrest in Portugall, of the Round the memory Table, and of the Garter in England, of Armes. with divers other Dignities for Religi ous warfare, onely for the performance Provinces, and the verie greatest and 20 of meruailous and excellent Actions. Whereas contrary-wife, rhe mindes that were thus fired to haughty atchieuments, in the floathfull times of peace, would too eafily (euen of themselues) be connerted to proud and infolent at-

To prooue this true, that they which in the times of Warre, doo accomplish Examination deeds of Vertue, and in the dull daies of of the feueral peace) fall into quite contrary behaui-and peace. Goddes. Hence arose the great & in-finite praises (so sweetly sung and Celeours, we may perceine by great Marins, the Conqueror of the Cymbrians. When warre did fet an edge voon his true temper, he had not his equall for valour and proweffe: but, in the trifling times of peace, he was the most wicked and dangerous man in all the Countrey. In like manner, wee shall finde it for most certaine, that Peace quencheth whatfoeuer is good in anie man; and quickneth or Peacethe We fee also by experience, that (wel- 40 giueth life vnto all fuch thinges, as are all goodnesse in him most hurtfull and dammage- inmen.

Let mee moue a question (in meere Courtesie) vnto such as are the greatest blamers and deprauers of warre. What Concerning can they call Hatreds, Quarrelles, and Seditions, but the onclie true and perfect Instruments, whereby Nature oftentimes helpeth to perfourme manie verie lawdable actions? Ye may immagine, that it was not without very great reason, that VVarre (by the Latines) was called Hella, Fayre, Pleafaunt, and Commodious: for fuch indeede is the 'The name gitrue Nature thereof, albeit our new vpflart gaine-fayers dooth affirme, that,

Aaaaz

it is meant in a contrarie sence. But if it were lawfull, to compare the loffes in peace, with them that enfue onely by warre: the report would be pittifull, and

Famous Armies deftroy meanes of

Princes made tough and thearne to their people, by peace.

Warre, fauou red and allowed by god himlelte, and what names were giuen

Examples alleaged out of facred Scripture in the old Testament.

of the new Testament.

the remembrance verie Tragicall.

How many goodly Armies haue bin broken, defeated and destroyed, by the meanes (I will not fay of peace) of truce onely? Which, though it bee Warres neerest Kinsman, yet it is sworne enemy vnto all Vertue and Valor. The strength and powers of Truce, ministers the meanes (euen as Peace doth) to leffen and impaire Citties, Townes, and whole Prouinces, by straunge Lawes and Ordinances : beside, it engendereth infinit fecret hatreds, and vpholdeth Princes in roughnesse and severitie against theyr Subjects. In time of peace, the dispofitions of men, which (but for it) would be highly exalted with enflamed defire to expresse their brauerie and roialty, do become fleepie, drowfie, penfine, flothfull, lascinious, and esseminate.

But to prooue that Warre hath bin fauoured and esteemed by our Lorde God himselfe, tell mee (I pray yee) was he not called by the Children of Ifraell, The Great God of Battasles, The Lorde of Hostes and Armies? Looke in the Olde 30 Testament, how manie mightie ouerthrowes and flaughters were executed in his Name, vppon them that were the Aduerfaries of his people? Howe manie were flaine by Moyles, Iofuah, Gedeon, Sampson, and divers other? Howe manie flew Abraham, Dauid, Indas Machaheus, and they that wer in those times? What thall weefay of Saint Michaell the Arch-Angell; who (euen in Hea- 40 uen it selfe) made tucha sharpe Conflict against the Draggon? And, to continue on this discourse, even to the New Law, if GOD had beene displeafed with Warre, would hee haue com maunded his Apostles to sel their cloaks, and buy each of them a Sword ? If Saint John Baptist, had hated Soldiers, or Militarie Discipline, would he haue apointed them this Law and Ordinance (when 50 they demanded of him, what way they should take, whereby to attaine to the faluation of their foules) That they fhould content them felues with their Wages, and not rob or pille from the poore people . Hee woulde then rather haue commaunded them, to leave that estate, and betake

them vnto some Hermitage; or else, to deale in some affayres of Merchandize, or in some such like employments. No, content your felues (quoth hee) in your Garrisons, with your ordinarie pay, and offer no shame, violence, or extortion, to any one. For your calling (which is the Art Militarie) will not let or hinder ve from your faluation: because manie of your profession, have thereby wonne their fafest security.

I his in briefe, and in my conceipt, is that which bleffed Saint lohns words inrended, if I bee no bad Paraphrastor Interpreter. If hee had beene willing to discommend W arre, yet he wold haue forborne it : perceyuing what pride and infolence was crept into rich mens mindes, during the pampring daies of peace and no way fo foone to be cured or corrected as by the worthy discipline obserued in warre.

How many have beene observed, of great Gentlemen, Merchants, Coun- only bridle treymen, and other of all conditions, to many not who were woont to bee most proud and arrogant : fuddenly to become kind and fetractable, onely by meanes of the bridle of Warre? This is it, which delivereth vs from a number of mithaps by theenes vdle Vagabonds, Gamesters, Pipers, Players, young Rogues, Cozeners, Ruffians, and High-way watchers. It ferues to whet and waken the spirites of Men, making their bodies to become more strong, light, nimble, pacient; yea, and emboldened against all hard and sinister

Confider the sweetnesse and delight The cimbriwhich the Cymbrians founde in VVarre, anshada great vfing it as the Confernation of theyr felicity in Warre. Countrey: and when they went to fight, they woulde fing as chearefullie, as if they had beene going vnto a wedding. Immagine what pleafure was taken therein by furious Hanniball, Valiaunt Marcellus, Vertuous Scipio, Couragious Camillus, and that Victorious Alexan der.

I say moreouer, who so cuer is ignorant in taking good order for publique affayres, there is no place or Schoole, Schoole for wherein hee may more easily attaine publique afthereto; then by noting the preparation and conducting of an Armie . Befides, whofoeuer knoweth not the deceiptes, fleights, and trickes of ingenious pru-

The implica-Baptilis words to the Souldi. to the author interpretatió.

> Leffons to be learned in a ield of Bat taile, for any mans benefit during life,

> > The conclusió

be able to teach him.

Warre is the cies and abu

All kindes of Creatures haue thear contraries appointed, to specale their urtiulneffe.

Ature hath verie many times expressed his care and providence (as a dutifull handmaid atending on Godywhäthere ding on God)whe there are any store of hurtfull

creatures in some country, that may impeach the inhabiting of men, or Liues 50 of other beafts and animals, to engender fome other of contrary kinds, to deftroy the ouer-abounding of fuch harmefull things. As we may observe in Serpents, which do denoure vp Toads & Lizards: Serpents also themselves, are exten by Storks, and many times they themfelues

dence, or how to stand vpon his guarde, to know what he should anoyd, and what he ought principally to followe: let him but live in war a month or two for pleafore; and in that time he shallern more then all the Bookes of Peace shall euer Furthermore, hee that couets to vn-

derstand the true Nature of inuiolable obedience, strict diligence, incompareable vigiliance, vnípeakeable promptitude of heart, and inestimable strength of the bodie : let him but vouchsafe so much leyfure, as (for a while) to follow a field well manned and prepared, there barren. to obserue carefully, what hee may behold for his owne benefit. If hee finde not himfelfe well fatisfied; yea, & more then contented in verie few dayes. I will yeeld, and loofe my credite in this caufe. Which therefore shall ferue me to conclude withall, maintaining still that war is to be preferred before peace, as deerly beloued, and with choifest praises commended. Beside, our Prayers should continually bee made to God, to create fuch chearfull hearts in our Princes, that

CHAP, XXXIX.

wee may not any long time, remaine in

want, of fuch a precious and vnvaluable

Of the Indian Beare: And of those Beares in our owne Natiue Countreyes, howe different they are in their feuerall Na-

Iewcil.

do feede one voon another: Cats alfo do denoure Rats, and fo in divers more befide. I speake this the rather, because we finde recorded in the generall historie of the Indiaes, that in Quilds, a certaine Countrey of the New-world, there are fuch extraordinarie swarmes of Antes, that they confirme the feeds and rootes of all Trees and plants . So that, if there were no Beares (which Nature in effeciall fanour hath there appointed, and in great plentie) ther could not be any polfibilitie of dwelling there, because they would make the Countrey to bee quite

The Beare of this Region, lineth only The Indian (without anie other foode or Pastorage) on Anter only by eating those Antes, whose beddes and Nests hee easily findeth, and so with his tongue (which is verie broade and large hee is to quicke and readie in licking of them vp, that hee is onely nourished by them. There are also great store of those Bears, but they are not fierce, wild and harmefull, as those in other partes: for they will not fet uppon men, neither mount vppe vpon Trees, to denoure the Bearingen young fprouts and fruites, but are veried de and trafts eafily made tame and tractable by the Iv- ble. dians.

There is no need of plucking out their eyes, or boaring their lippes, to thruste Rings of Iron thorough them, onely to tame them. For even of themselves, they are (well-neere) Domesticall: and, if it were not for these Beares, neither men, and great store of other creatures, could not live there; but they encrease in those parts fo aboundantly, that they fuffice to destroy the plentie of Antes; in which respect, the Countrey may well account it felfe to be most happy.

I have not well beene informed, whether it bee the Nature of the Beares in this Countrey; that (according as hath beene reported) the thee-Beare yeildeth learned middle. or whelpeth a Male of Flesh, vvithout anie forme or apparance of life: and that the Damme, onely by the Vertue of lic-

king, giueth it true thape. Of this opinion, were manie Learned and grane men, as Aristotle, Plu-Farke , Plinte , Flianus , and Du Bartes: but it is a manifest errour, as experience hath plainly declared ynto vs, because in manie enclosed places of Germanie, and of France alfo, Beares of both fexes Aaaaa

gion in the New-tound

A strait obfernation by

Nature.

fare kept, which have engendered young ones, verie well formed in all their members. For, it is an order, observed by nature verie strictly in our terrestrial! Animalles, that in theyr passage out of the Matrixe, they are fully compleated in all their parts, without any need of further forming, encreasing verie well in those three dimensions, length, largenesse, & depth.

Coucerning teeth in yong they are not bred after their birth.

young whelps in the Dams

It ferueth to no purpose, to alledge, that Childrens teeth are engendered or formed after their birth. For I answere, that they bring then with them from the Mothers wombe : as I have seene in the diffection of many young infants, newly borne and dead, whose gummes beeing opened in the pittes and hollowes of the lawes, the Teeth have beene plainely

But indeede, no outward appearance is made of them, vntill certaine moneths determined by Nature; in which time, they grow greater and stronger, & pierce their passage through the gummes For mine owne part, in the Mountaines of Saint Claude, in La franche counte de Bourgongne, I haue seene a shee-Beare flaine: whose Belly being presently opened, three young Whelpes were there found, fully formed and hairy, and (as I thinke) verie soone to have beene whelped, and that which is affirmed by eyetestimony, I hope hath no neede of further probation. Sealiger, a great Phy-fition and Phylosopher, also affirmeth; . That he being once at the taking and killing of a Shee-Beare on the Alpes, the young Whelpes in her belly were found to be wholly formed, as I haue formerly 40 justified by mine owne fight.

Flinie faith, that the thirtith day after

ried no longer time, as Kine doo theyr

Calues, Mares their Foales; and other

great Beafts their young ones; and thefe

Shee-Beares hath commonlie three or

her conception, the shee-Beare deline-How long reth her young ones . but Elianus fayeth, within three moneths after, which is the more likely and credible, because all with her yong and manner of her whelps. great creatures do beare their burthens longer, then fuch as are finall and little. When they are broght into the world, they are about the bignesse of Weezels: 50 and there is good apparance, that they can be no bigger, because they are car-

So foone as thee hath conceived, the commeth no more into the males fight . How the She. VVhen defire of coupling with the male leth with the is kindled in her, thee is fo greatly afha- Male. med thereof: that the hideth her felfe in the remotest obscure places, and the male neuer feeketh after her. At length, being preffed by Nature, and defire of generation, thee commeth to finde the male, and tumbling and playing before him, lyeth directly vpon her backe; and fo hee coupleth with her, euen as men and women vie to doe. And this is the reason, why it should not bee accounted fo straunge, that Beares have had actuall dealing with VVomen, wandering thorow the Forrests and Mountaynes, and conceyued by them, as I shall declare more at large in the next following 20 Chapter.

They helpe themselues with their Pawes and Feete, euen as men do with their handes and feete; for, they can goe vpright along while together, and hurle or throwe stones with theyr formost Pawes, finite with a Staffe, and whatfoeuer elfe themfelues will doo, as well as we.

They are almost continuallie troubled with paine and Ache in the head, and in such violent manner, that oftentimes (as madded therwith) they throw themselues downe from very high rocks their heads going forwardes, couering their eyes with their pawes, beecause their fight is verie feeble, and by couering their eyes, they feeme to find fome cafe.

They espie out such places, where Bees doe make their Honie and VVax, onely to make them angrie, and to the end, they may be pricked and pierced helps in the helps and bow they by the Bees stinges, both in their heade, and about their eyes: wherby their fight is amended, and their head greefe much affwaged. They feede indifferently on all kindes of Foode, be it Flefth, Fruites, of Beares. Hearbes, sprouts of Trees, and Honey They will affaile and kill (if they can) all wild and fauage Beafts; as Harts, Hinds, Boares; yea, and VVilde Bulles manie

The Shee-Beare feeling her felfe to be bagde, or conceyned with yong (which Female is most commonly is in the winter rime) | bagde with with-draweth her selfe into her Caue, which shee prepareth in a strong de-

Chap.39.

How long

Beare faltet

comming forth of her

and of her

dealt carnal with weom

Actions per fourmed by

Beares trou

Fables repor ted by Deme-trius a Mofcoure Ambaffa dour to Rome

Ramp, Starch

worte, or Cuckoe-pint.

Beares haus

When the

Nature harh

giuen breafts

or dugges to She Beares.

When a She-

Beare & her

young ones are purfued.

fenced place, far from common refort, and well couered with earth, boughes, and braunches; entring thereinto alwaies backward, because it should not be knowne, or found by Huntsmen. There the remaineth forty dales together, without any food or fustentation; doing nothing elfe, but licke her right paw, whereby the liueth all that while . Afterward, the commeth forth againe, 10 and then eateth all the Antes she can come by eyet not for any nourishment (like to to the Indian Beare) but onely to prouoke her to vomit, to the ende that the may feed the better. Which when the hath done, the then feeketh after food, and because she hath continued the space of forty daves, and eaten nothing : her intestines are fast clunged together; fo that, no meate can haue entrance, but is instantly cast vp againe, and therefore the eates the Hearb called Aron, which giveth dilatation and open (preading to her bowels againe.

As for her Whelpes or young ones, they do not teate or fucke, like to other Creatures, because Munster reporteth (but I know not from whom) that one Demetrius a Moscouite, who was fent thence as an Ambaffadour to Rome, declared for a certainty to fome perticuler Men of credit : that in his Countrey of Moseonia, there were great store of Beares, big in stature of body, and very fierce, that after their birth (for the fpace of foureteene daies) lived without eating any thing, continuing in fo profound a fleepe, that nothing could waken them, no, though they were prickt and pierced very deepely . After that time is passed ouer, they do then awake, and fal to licking of their formost paws, and live (onely by this licking) till the Spring time, when they begin to come abroad with their Dammes, and nibble on tender Hearbs, as they fee them do Now, to speake vprightly, I can hardly be induced to beleeve this, because Nature hath giuen Breafts, or Duggesto She-Beares, as I my felfe haue feene, and then they should have their Milke in vainc.

Moreover, that if they be purfued by Hunters, having their young ones in their company, and they vnable to escape, in regard of their weaknesse: the Damme carryeth some on her back,

and one in her mouth, and fo climbeth vp vpon a high Tree, to preserve her felfe and them in this manner. This maketh me to remember, that which is recited by E'ianus, of a She-B. are and 3. cap. 30. two Lyons.

He fairh, that he heard it reported by one Eudemus, that a She-Beare of * Pangaus, a Mountaine in Thrace, chanced ' to finde a Denne; wherein were young Lyon-whelpes, and neither the Sire or Damme there present, to defend them from this She Beare, therefore the kil- A ftrange Hiled them, & afterward departed thence. Beare and a Within a thort while after, the Lyon Lyonneffe. and his Lyonnesse returned to their den, bringing preyes to nourish their young Whelpes withall: but finding them dead, and gathering (by their (ente) how they were murthered; they instantly pursued the Shee-Beares foo-ting by the smell, and discerning her a uer the killers farce off, drew neerer and neerer still, of their young deuting their best meanes, how to entrapher. Which the She-Beare also that did the perceiuing, and knowing her strength deed. these displeased Lyons : forthwith shee began to climbe a Tree, and got vp to the very top thereof. These entaged Beafts feeing they could compaffe no a- The Lioneffe mends from the murdreffe; tormented lyeth downe themselves exceedingly, and the Lyon- her enemic. nefle lying downe at the foote of the Tree, kept it as besiedged, to be reuenged on her Enimy. But the Sire or male Lyon, he ran vp and downe from Hill to Dale, making the Mountaines to tremble with his loud out-cryes, and all the other Beafts to be very fearefull. At length, hee lighted on a man a Woodfeller, who was hewing downe a Tree in the Forrest, and perceiving the Lyon to make towards him; with extreamity of difmay the Axe fell out of his hands, and faigne he would have fled for his

fome vrgent occasion. At length, he took him by the cloaths with his reeth, as if hee would bee his guide and conduct to some place, often

tentimes proftrating himfelfe at his feete, euen as if he implored his help in

do : licking his hands and garments, of- good.

ownerafety. The Lyon approaching neere voto him, made fignes of humble Admirable and gentle fawning on him, and in fuch Lyons, to doe pleafing manner, as we fee Dogges to themselues The Lyon gi-ueth directions to the mã

As expressing nature he had fustained, by

The She-Bear difinembred in many pic-

The Beare the flesh of no beafis, but fuch as he him

Munfler, ex Demetri.

A pretty Hiftory, and no way vnlikely, of a mans life

patting his paw vpon the Axe, that the Wood-feller should take it vp againe: which the fearefull man being not able to comprehend (though the beast still vrged it by divers perswasine signs) the Lyon took it vp with his teeth, and carried it himfelfe. So, winding his taile about one of the mans legs, he conducted him, first to the place where the young whelps lay murdred, which was not far from the Tree whereon the she-Beare was mounted. Thither also he brought him, and the Lyonnesse seeing them comming, the arole (with chearful disposition) to meete them, equalling, or rather exceeding the Male Lyons affability to the Man. In briefe, both the beafts made fuch apparant fignes to the Carpenter, that hee not onely faw the She-Beare aloft on the Tree; but ga- 20 thered also by their moanes, that thee had killed their young Whelpes, and therefore they would have him to cut downe the Tree; because, by no means elfe, they could be auenged on her. The man did quickly cut downe the Tree, & as it fell, fo did the She-Beare : which was so sooner on the ground, but instantly they rent her in infinite peeces, returning many gratefull fignes to the poore Carpenter, and conducting him fafely to his former working place againe.

But returne we now againe, to the naturall disposition of the Beare. He will neuer eate the Fleih of any Beaft, which he findeth dead, or readily killed for him. It is faide also, that if a man counterfeit himfelfe to be dead, and retaineth his breath while he smelleth to him; hee will not doehim any harme. He driueth all Rats out of his Denne, and will not abide therein, if there bee but one left in it. He will never cate any Hony out of the Hine, where he findes the Bees to be dead.

MunHer declareth (by direction from the fore-named Demetrius) that a Beare faued the life of Man, in the very remotest and vastest Forrest of all Moscomia, in the yeare, one thousand fine hundred and thirty, and after this manner. A man inhabiting in a neighbouring Village, went into the Forrest to gather Waxe and Hony: because in those Countries, the Bees vieto make

their Hony in hollow Trees in the For-

rests, whereof there are no meane number, and hee thereby maketh his best benefit, that is most diligent in fearch, and getteth the greatest quan-

The poore Countrey-man, standing with his Legges extended abroad in a hollow Tree, for his better gathering of his Hony-Combs : the flender hold (which supported his feete) chanced to breake, and downe he fell further into the hollow of the Tree, till hee was vp to the Chin in Waxe and Hony; deftitute of all strength for helping himfelfe, or hope of any fuccour, because no Passengers frequented that way (at least-wife, very sildome) that might heare his wofull complaints, fo that he continued there for the space of two

Now, it fortuned or rather, the especiall Grace of God fo directing, that a Beare came by the Tree, and finelling the Honny, climbed up the Tree, and descended downe to the place where the poore man was. The Beare beeing fearefull when he beheld the man, turned to get vp againe out of the Tree: but the poore man caught hold on one of his hinmost feet, and held so stronglie with both his hands, that the Beare A very great brought vp himfelfe and the man out and memorable delinerate of the Tree, and both fell downe together on the out-fide of the Tree, fomewhat aftonied with the fall, but no way hurt, the Beare returning into the Woodes, and the man to his home. Thus the Beare faued the poore Countrey-mans life, without declaring any figne of hurting or offending him.

Bachiles Anchifus faith, that in the Northerly Countries, there are white Bachiles Anchi Beares, that line both in Waters, and fo, or Anthife on the Land : befide, that either with white beares. hurling stones, or branches of Trees, or with their clawes, they will break open the Ices in Riners, and in the Sea, only to catch Fishes to seed on. Moreover, that they are not fo malicious or harmfull, as other Beares are, neither are luftfull, or feeking after weomen: As one, whereof I am now to speake, and wherby a Lady conceined, after the maner of women, witneffed for truth, by Ioannes loannes Mag. Saxonius, in his large History, and toannes Magnus, Arch-bishop of V palsain Olass Epife. Swetia; & lastly, by Arch-bishop Olaus, Vipal.

The poore

is weaken, heauen is the ftrongest.

Beare, and carried away to his Denne. ding all her ytte: moit re filtance.

the Beare to

his Successour, who in his Writings auoucheth the very fame, according as I have felected it from them in this enfuing Chapter.

CHAP. XL.

Of a Lady of Swetia, that was conceived with child by a Beare, and afterward what ensued thereon.



Chap. 40.

Swenia bor-

dereth on Ba-

ueria Halfatia

there and the

the River

N a part of the King-dome of Swetia or Swe-wia, there flood fome-time a goodly Cattle, builded neere vnto a Mountaine, by aweal-N apart of the King-

thy Lord, and one of great authoritie. This Lord had a very faire Daughter, who walkedabroad in an evening, accompanyed with some other Gentleweomen, to take the open ayre in the Fields. As they walked together, pleafantly talking and discoursing; a Bare (by chance) had strayed abroad from the thickets on the Mountaine, of verie huge stature, fierce and terrible, making directly towards this faire troup, who (in great feare) when they elpyed the Beare, fled, some one way, and the rest another, for their best delinerance. The The lady fur-Beare laying hold on the chiefest Ladie of all the rest, lifting her forcibly vpon his backe: ran (so fast as he could) into the thickest of the Forrest, not meeting 40 any refistance by the way, because the fore-faide Ladies came foorthalone of themseluee, not having any man in their company.

Now, albeit the Beare had thus wandered abroad, in fearch of some prey, for appealing his hunger: yet(referring the maine point hecrein, to Gods mercifull andomnipotent preservation)the Beare, mooued by some instinct of na- 50 ture (farre differing from that in Beafts of the fame kind) would not kill her for his foode, but carried her to his Caue, which was in a very darke and deep vallv. There his wonted, rough and fterne the Lady whe nature, became converted into lovelike embracings and careffes, which

were to extreamely purfued and continued : that the Lady apprehended his luftfull intention, which, though it was monstrous and vnnaturall, yet it quallified fome part of her former feare. And, as she durst not (in this extreamitie) refift the fury and power of the Beare, dreading each houre the loffe of her life : fo (questionlesse) much against her will or liking, thee was enforced to con-Tent, and endure fuch companying with him, as you may better imagine, then I expresse.

his den, hunt and kill all kinds of Beatts, nourithment and bring them home as food for himfelfe and the Lady: who (in this vrging Denne. nec. ffi v) vas glad to eat raw flesh, wilde Fruits, and some other foodes familiar to men; as Cheefe, Bread, and fuch like victuals, which he would get from the that kept Cattle in the fieldes, or fuch as traugiled to Faires and Markets, Her daily drinke, was Water of a cleare running Brooke at the Caucs entrance, shaddowed with a louely thicket of young Trees: and thus shee lived, in hope that (one day) God would deliner her, Many times (while the Boare was abroad at his prey and purchase) shee purposed to make an escape thence: yet minations to durst not attempt it, least hee should a- efector from the Beare. gaine recouer her, and then kill her ; befide, the feared the rauenous fury of other fauage Beaftes, whereof no meane ftore frequented the Mountaine.

As thus the fpent fome moneths in The happy this haplesse manner, it fortuned, that manner of the wotull certaine Huntsmen (pursuing their de-lightfull sporting ouer the Mountaine) the Beare. with their Grey hounds and Beagles, the Beare. followed this Beare fo mainly; that he being falne into their fnares, they there flew him. And although this was vnknown to the Lady, yet when the heard the voyces of men, and they appearing tobe neere the Caue fhe came foorth vnto them, to their no little dread and admiration. Yet looking more aduifedly on her, they perfectly knew her, The Lady, and had heard of her loffe, with generall supposition of her death : whereup- Father and on they conducted her home to her Fa- Mother. ther and Mother, who scarcely knew her her complexion had been fo greatly altered. In this time, Nature (who fomerimes worketh wonderfull things,

The Beare would daily iffue forth of What kind of

Chap.1.

The Lady was deliuere of a goodly Sonne, and he was named Beare.

Reare flew al

them that kil-

led the Beare

his begetter.

The Authors

out of his own

affirmation

knowledge.

posed to of the Beasts seed in her bodie; that the being growne great, and generally expected to be delinered of a monfter:it prooued to bee a goodly Male Childe, not any way pertaking in the Sires bestiall forme or appearance, sauing that his body was much more hairy all ouer, then is scene in other Children. He was carefully nurfed, and the I o name of Beare imposed on him : but when he grew to mans estate, hee became fo firong and powerfull, that cuery one stood in great feare of him. The Huntsinen that killed the Beare, his begetter, would often boalt in his company, after what manner they had delinered his Mother but hee was the Deathsman of them all, faying; Albeit, he had received (uch a favour by them, get 20 notwithstanding, he stood bound in nature, to resenge the death of his Father. This Man begat Trugillus Sprachaleg,

and contrary to common order) had dif-

The discent who was a very valiant Souldiour and of Beare, ac-cording to the Captaine; and he begat VIfen, a man of high deseruing: of whom, the Chroni-Chronicles. cles of the Countries of Dannemarch, Sweuia, and Gothia, doe make most large mention, for he was the Father of Suegus, who was King of Dacia; whereup- 30 on, all Histories doe affirme, that al the Kings of Dacia, and of Swenia, proceeded from this race, and all the fore reci-The Kings of ted Authours (who are of the same Dacks and Swe uia descended of a Beare. Countries) doe maintaine as much. Concerning my felfe, I have feene ma-

ny tame and domesticke Beares, amou-

rous of Women, and She-Beares to be

the like of Men, although their eyes

haue beene pluckt out, and very few are ignorant of the truth in this cafe: therefore this hiftory fufficiently approved, that these beastes doe couple after the manner of men.

Now, let vs admit the Bear of Sumuly meta-cruell and vile in all his actions; yet not cinable pro-perties below-Now, let vs admit the Beare to bee diuers medicinable properties, on fome ging to cerpeculiar parts of his body. His head is of the Beare. held venomous, to fuch as eate thereof, and to procure raging madnesse: in which regard, the Inhabitants of these Northerly Countries, doe vie to burne those heads, and the Ashes of them are exceeding good, for them that have the Foule-euill, or Falling-ficknesse, by often washing the diseased parties head, sickness. with Lye, made of the faide Ashes or Cinders. If they be mingled also among Hony, it will cause Haire to grow againe, where it hath long time wanted: euen as the Fat or Greafe of the Beare doth the like, when men haue loft their For refloring Haire, helping likewise the paines of lost haire, & the Sciatica, and other Gouts. Alfo his Sciatica and Flesh is wholesome to bee eaten, and Goutes, hath no euill taft. The Scythians, Getes, and other Notherne Countries, do fa- The Southing ften Beares heads on the Gates of their Getes and Citties and Townes, perswading them-Northerne Nations. felues; that they doe preserve them, from being hurt by their enemies. Thus you fee, what I collected out of good, ancient, and approoued Authors, concerning the Nature of the Indian Beare, and those of other Countries, better knowne to vs.

For the foole

The End of the Eight Booke.



The Ninth Booke.

CHAP. I.

Of the Great Turks Court, more commonly cald (in the fe daies) the Court of the Gret Signior: His Pompe, State, Officers, and Attendants; As also their daily Wages and Allowances, according to their degrees, and places of Service, &c.



E haue alreadie fpoken fufficiently (though briefely)concerning the Originall of the Turkish Empire, and in what manner

they attained to fuch height and greatneffe: Our purpose therefore, in this present Chapter, is, to discourse onely of the Government, and Order obserued in the Court, viually tearmed by themselues, the Porta or Court of the Grand Signore; whereto I am the more willingly induced, because the Pompe, Might, and Maiesty thereof, may bee publikely discerned.

The Cittie of Constantinople, wherein the Great Signior Turke (with his Court Royal) maketh his most residing; was in former times called Bizantium, and new Rome, containing now in circuit, about eighteene Miles. It hath scanen small Hils, not of any great height, and it is rounded with old ruined wals,

being full of Houses, though none of the best, yet composed of Clay, wood, and some few of stones. There are many Groues or Thickets of Trees in the Citty, vn-inhabited, confifting of Cipreffe Trees, and divers others there growing in like maner . In Constantinople is the Serraglio of the Signior Turke, Signor Tinco. which is a finguler thing, & very great, as we shall relate hereafter. There is the Serragiio of Weomen, for the Great Signior; The Serraglio of Ianiffarles; In Conftanti-The Patriarkes Pallace : The Pallace of nople. Constantine the Emperor, which is partly ruinated; The Church of Saint So- The goodly Church of S. phia, which was builded by the Empe- Sophia. Your Justinian, of admirable fine flone, and curious Marble, as yet (though very ancient and excellent) is to be itene, part whereof, the Great Signior imployeth as a Stable for his Horses. There is alfo the Molchea of the Sultane Mehemet. which hath an Amarato (that is as an Hospitall or Almes-house) joyned vnto it, wherein is entertained and lodged for people of men of all Nations and Religions, that and three will enter into it, and there they are al- dayes enterlowed three dayes acceptance and food, trainement as Hony, Rice, Bread, Water, anda Chamber to rest in. There is belonging to this Hospitall, goodly Bathes, and rare Fountaines or Springs of Water, very delightfull to behold. There are alfo the Molchenes of Sultane, Briazeth, Divers Atg. of Sultane Selim, and of divers other chears in the

and coftly builded: whereby it appea-

reth, that when they pleafed, they knew

how to make houses, and Pallaces most

The great abiding in Confrantino ple, with fome briefe diferipIl Serraglio del.

Lords, which are very beautifull and City.

A courfing or running place for Hor

The curious Needle in the

The three pent of Braffe

The great Co-

Antiquities in paffage tho-row the citty.

Gardens and goodly Hou-Private Mof-

The hils of Afia, now cal-led Natolia.

Caffelles Scutars. Chalcedonia in the Hellefpont.

The fite or Seare of Conantinople exceeding demagnificent and fumptuous.

There is likewise the * Hippodromo, which is a place, where anciently they vied to breake and run their Hories, in the forme of a Theater or circle in the midft of which Hippodromo, there ftandeth a sharp Spire or Pinnacle, being an ingenious Piller, made in the fathion of a Needle, very faire, well wrought, and without any Lime or Morter: yet made of fine Stone, and framed in fuch manner, that it rifeth aboue fifty fadome in height, observing still the true shape of a Needle, and resting upon foure round Bals of Marble. There is also a Piller of Braffe, in forme of a Serpent with three heads : and a Hercules of Braffe, brought thither from Hungaria; and in the midft of all thefe, flandeth'a frame or denife, made like a Coloffus, of divers kindes of beautifull Marble, whereon is curioufly engrauen, the Histories of all the forenamed thinges; and others, that were wont to be in the Theater or Hippodromo. Thorow the Citty, there are diners tracts or pathes of Antiquity, Arches,

Colloms of Porphiry, Springes tetcht from Danubie, & other neere neighbouring Riuers: many Gardens with goodly Houses in them; many Moschenes belonging to private Lordes, and great ftore of Bathes, annexed to the Mofeheaes of publike Magistrates, and other prinate persons.

On the other fide of the Sea, and at the head of the Serraglio, are the hils of Afia, containing the iourney of two miles, little more or leffe: which Afia, ander one name only is now cald Natolia, and there (on the shoaring banckes) are divers little Cafiles, termed Scutars. Next, there is that which they call Chalcedonia, feated in a corner of the Hellefont : where divers notes of Antiquitie are to be obserued, and (in many places) the foundation of auncient Churches many be scene, as well of Christians, as of the Gentiles, being now goodly places, and abounding in Fruits. The fite or scituation of Constantinople is fuch, as not only it exceedeth all description. equal to the due merit thereof : but alfo can as hardly be conceived in thought, in regard of the beauty and delicate composure therof, so that (vindoubtedly)it may rather be reputed divine then

otherwise, and whatsoeuer hee be that

shall behold it, will judge it worthy to be preferred, before all other sited. Citties in the world.

In the Citty, befide Turkes, there are Jewes, being * Marrani, fled, or repulfed * A Nicke. out of Spaine; and these are they that have taught, and do yet teach, all kinds dell Renegion of the spaining do Spaining of Trades to the Turkes, and the most part of all the Shoppes and Boothes for Trades, are kept and exercised by those Marrani. There is a place named Bifestano, where is bought and fold all kinde of chieffin. Cloathes, and Turkish Commodities, Confianting Silkes, wollen and Linnen Cloath, Siluer and Gold wrought into all formes, Bowes, Slaues, Horles, and all kinds of thinges elfe to be had in Constantinople, which continually are brought to this Market, and which is enery day kept open in full fale, except Friday onely. Constantinople is in Thrace, and the ter- In whatma minations thereof are in this manner.

On the East, is the *Proponiu*, and mouth dedor limit of the great Sea, from the streights of tedonall Hellefpont, to Bofphorus Thracius. On the West, is part of Bu'garia, and part of Macedonia. On the North, Basina; And

on the South, Egaam Mare, with part of Macedonia, which turneth towardes the River Neffana, anciently called *2Vefus Fluvius. This most Noble Citty is inhabited with Turks, who (by the wrirings of divers approoued Authours, for confirmation, and many of the Turkes themselves also) had their Original from Scythia, which now is part of Tartaria, a Northerly Region, and deuided into two parts by the River * Tana-

is one part whereof is in Europe, & the other in Afia. That part of Europe is confined (on the one fide) with Pontus, and on the other fide, with the Riphean Mountaines, being backed also with Afia it felfe, and with the River Thafpis. By Ptolomie, thefe two Scythiaes are named the one, Intra * Iamnum montem, In the leffer

and the other, Extra lamnum, as is more of the lifes called Balant at large elfe where to be feene.

This people, being parted from Seyshia, as formerly hath been faid, and beginning(in their own confines) to make | The Turker commodities and irruptions, proceeding on still further: in thort time they ouer-ruled a great part of Asia; but in regard they knew not how to maintain themselues under one Head or Commaunder, they could not make any

A River of

and large pro The conditions accepted and broleen-

Very liberall

Wher floo a Citty of descended Michaele Grece

> The Malcozo lis of Malco Greco.

The Euracasti.

Succession haterfued after Otthomä.

Orchanes. Amurath. 1.

Baiazeth, 1. Calopine.

Of the Great Turkes Court.

one, who was named Otthoman (a man of more condition then common base-Otthoman, a neffe, being of high fpright and valiant and fprightly minded) he confulted with his owne thoughts, that if he could compaffe the

firme or feiled foundation. Which be-

ing well perceined and confidered by

couered his fe

Chap. 1.

arme and furtherance of fome ingenious man that had authority: bee might eafily haue the people and whol Country vnder obedience, and encrease the fame as occasion stil ferued. Hereupon, he discovered his private intention to three men, whom he thought more apt and convenient for this bufineffe, then any of the rest: promising them, that if he could compasse the hope he aymed at 5 both they and their of-fpring thould be continued and maintained in fuch high state and dignity, answerable to fo | 20 great abenefit as he received by them. Moreouer, that not any one of their pofterity, fhould be vnder-handed, or left to the mercy of Law, except they offended very grieuously. The conditions were accepted by these men, and they conforced together against the chiefest Soueraignety: in which progression, what by art, craft, threatnings, & much expence of blood, all was obtained to 30 their full defire. These three men, one of them was named Michaele Greco, made a Turke: of whom are descended the Marcalogi, & one of them (is at this inflant) Saniack of Bossina. The second was called Males Green, a Renegado: of whom also came the Malcoroli, and there is but one

When the Race and Family of Otthoman failed, thefe other pretended right to the principalisie, and therefore they were very highly respected. This Otthoman came to the Gouernment, in the yeare one thousand, three hundred, or

onely left of them, who is Saniack in

Grecia. The third was Aurami, a Natiue

Turke, the descendants of whom were

tearmed Euracaft, and it is not knowne,

whether any of them bee left, or no.

there about, and lived in the regiment,

fixe yeares. Next him was Mihomet,

who raigned foureteene yeares. Then

twenty eight yeares. After whom fucceeded Orghanes, who lived twenty two yeares in the dominion. Next, Amurath raigning twenty three yeares. After him Batazeth; Then Cyrificlebes, or (as others will haue it) Calapine, who lived

Mahomet. 1.

Amurath the fecond, who ruled one and thirty years. Then Mahomet the second; who raigned two and thirty yeares and was called the first Emperour of the Turkes in Constantinople. Next, Baiazeth Baiazeth. 2. the fecond, who raigned one and thirty yeares. Then Selim, eight yeares, To whom fucceeded Sultan Soliman, who raigned forty seauen yeares : And after 10 him, Selim the second, raigning eyght Selin. ... yeares. Then Amurath the third, who raigned one and twenty years. Next to him, Mahomet the third, ruling nine yeares : And laftly Achmeth, or Achmet, who came to the Empire, being but feuenteene yeares old; and raigneth yet

at this prefent. THE Great Signior hath a

Serraglio in a part of Constantinopie, at the two Seas deuision, which containeth (in circuit) about three miles : and therein is his chiefe Seat and Court, which is called or Court, the Porta. This Serraglio, because it whering the was begun to be builded by the Sultane great Sections Mahomes: when hee dyed, liee would haue it levelled with his Moschea, and that a thousand Aspers should be dailie paied towards the charges, which Afpers documount to twenty Duca es, and this payment is as yet obserued. In the faid Serraglio are very many goodly Chambers, but one (aboue all the reft) appointed for the Great Signior, and wherein he fleepeth, where doe attend mor in his fixe Youthes (supposed by some to be Weomen) who onely doe awaite on his person. Of these fixe, two are appointed daily for feruice in the Chamber, and of the Signior, and by them at night time, the Office of Guard is performed, one standing at his head, and the other at his feete (continually vigil-

Thefe two doe helpe in the morning, to put on the Signiors Garments, the vppermoft whereof being called taffanno 3 hath two Pockets : into one where- fleeping in the night of, the Pages do put a thousand Affers, and into the other, twenty Ducates of Gold enery morning, which Mony, if (in the day time) it bee not given away by the Signior; it remaineth to them that maketh him vnreadic at night, Bbbb

lant) with two lighted Torches in their

Achmeth or Achmet, the Turke or great Signier now

raigning.

Of the Porta

Six youths that wait on the great Sig-Chamber, & order of their

and watching

What Money he daily carrieth about him, being put into his pockets by his Pages.

The Cofnadar Bajhae, the Signiors chiefe Treasurer.

The fix yong Pages, and what belong feuerall Offices, and their wadges.

Cafnadar-Ba-

Chilergi-Bafhan

Sara:dar-Bafhae, Eunuch

Tweluc Eunuchs.

Fine hundred young Weomen, who are Concubines to the great Signior, and kept in an especiall Serrazlio.

for he neuer putteth on those garments againe, neither weareth any twice, as is credibly affirmed. When he rideth abroad on pleafure, either to hunt, or any other sportfull exercise, beside the forenamed Mony which he carryeth about him ; the Cafnadar-Bafhae, who is his chiefe Treasurer, rideth next behind him, who carrieth great fums of Mony, which the Signior commaundeth to be given away. The Offices of the fore-named fixe young Pages, are altred according to the Signiors will and pleafure. One of them is called the Chiuchter, that is he which carrieth the Pantofles of the Signior; The fecond, Scilichtar, who beareth his Bow and Arrowes; The third, Chiocadar, who carrieth his cloak or Mantle; The fourth, Saraptar, who carieth his Vial of water : The fift Schemelioli, who beareth his stoole or seat; And the last is Oda-Bashae, who is chiefe of the Chamber. These Pages haue firm and fetled allowance of Wages; some fifteen, and others twenty, but the Oda-Bashae thirty Aspers daily. The Capagass Eunuch, that is he which

is chiefe of the Ports or Court, hath

three(core Afpers daily.

The Cafnadar-Bafbae Eunuch, chiefe of all the other Treasurers, hath threefcore and ten Aspers daily.

The Chilergi-Balbae Eunuch, chiefe of all the other Difpenfers or Stewards, hath forty Aspers daily.

The Saraidar-Bashae, Eunuch of the Serrag'io, when the Signior is in Prograce, hath fifty Aspers daily.

Twelve Eunuches, subject, or at commaund of these fore-named, haue fome ten, and some fifteen Aspers each man daily.

In the next place, we are to speake of fine hundred young Women, from the age of eight, to the yeares of twentie. who are kept in a Serraglio, and are the choise delights of the Grand Signior. They have ten and twelve Aspers daily each one of them, and are enstructed in divers Arts, according to their ableft 50 apprehension: but most especially in Reading, Writing, and Doctrine of their Law or Religion, and in riding. Their Maisters or Tutours, are ancient Talifmani, called Cozza, that is to fay, Doctours of the Law.

These young Women, at the time of

Bairono, which is (among vs) the Feast 7ail/mani Cor.
of Easter, are all allowed Garments by of the Lawet of Easter, are all allowed Garments by the Great Signior, which are of Silke Schoole Mai. and of Cloath, without any forme of fters to the Livery. Their Head Arrives are all of Gold, and they have Semitaries and Bowes, like Amazones : but they never go foorth of the faid Serraglio, till they attaine to fuch yeares, as the Signior thinketh them apt for some Office, and then they are made eyther Spacoglani, or Scilichtari, or of some greater degree, according to their carryage, or grace when the Sa that they have won with the Signior. Euery tenne of these Women are kept by an Eunuch, called Capoglano, that is to fay, chiefe of the younger Women, Eunuchs and and enery one of them hath a night-Slaue, and toucheth not him that lyeth neerest him. They lodge in goodlie bines in their Roomes, like great and spacious Hauls, verie full of lights, and their Eunuches doe fleepe in the middeft of those Roomes. There is a Garden belonging Bollangi, Garto the Serraglio, containing in compatie deners belon more then a mile, whereto appertai- ging to the Weomens neth fiue and thirtie Gardiners, called Bostangi, who are decayed and aged Ianissaries : and these Bostangi haue (from three to fine Aspers) each man dailie, and euery one hath a Livery of Turkish Cloath, and a Shirt yearelie allowed him. When they depart out of the Serraglio, they remaine Ianiffaries, or Solacchi, or Capigi, or otherwise, according to their qualitie.

The Bost angi-Bashae, who is chiefe of the Gardiners, hath fifty Afpers daylie Bollangi-Ball allowed him, and many other royall fa- chiefe Garde uours beside.

The Protogere, who is as Lieutenant Protogere, to the Gardiners, hath twentie Afpers to the Garde daily, and enery ten hath a chiefe, called ners. Boluch-Bashae. Out of this Garden, which is very great, well laboured, and full of excellent Fruits of all fortes, there is yearely gathered fuch plentie: that the benefit made onely thereby, fufficeth for the Signiors expences in dyer, beside a good ouer-plus remaining for other vies. Neere to the Gar- Foyths for the den, doetwo Foystes or small Barkes Signiors recontinually attend, which are rowed by the Gardiners, when the Signior plea-feth to follace himfelfe on the Water, and the Bolnch-Balhae governeth the Helme.

There

Chap.1.

Affi. Bafbae,

Canalgi Bafhac Maifter of the

afragir-Ba-bae, the chief Butler.

Mutpachemin the chiefe

Sreward.

an flaric-

Wood-carri

Sacca, water

Cookes.

Offices be-

Night Slaue the Concu-

Serraglio, and

The Signiors

daily expen reomen,&c.

> His Stable of Horfes in the

Capigi-Bafhaes Captaines of the Gates, who comand ouer the ca-

There is one called Asi-Bashae, who is chiefe of the Cooks, with fifty Cooks vnder him, that have each man fiftie Aspers by the day, under Cookes four, who have fixe Afpers; and fixe others, eight Aspers each man.

Canalgi-Bashae, is chiefe of the Confectionarie, having forty Aspers daylie allowed him: and he hath thirty other Companions, who have fome five, o- 10 thers fixe Aspers each man.

The Calnagir-Balbae, who is Maister of the Butlers, or chiefe Butler to the Great Signior, hath forty Aspers daily. Morning and Eucning hee bringeth in his hand, the Cuppe which the Signior drinketh in, and hath an hundered Casnegeri vnder him, who have from thirtie, to fixtie Afpers each man day-

The Mutpachemin, who is the chiefe Steward, hath fortie Afpers daily, and keepeth a Clearke under him, that hath twenty Aspers daily.

An hundred decayed Janiffaries, which with Carts doe carry Wood to the Serraglio, they have from three, to five Aspers a man daily, and are cloathed al-

Ten Sacca, which carry Water on 30 Horses in Bouges, haue each man from three, to fine Aspers daily.

The expences which is graunted by the Grand Signiors allowance, to his women and their Eunuches, with other persons, to the number of a thousand, or thereabout, amounteth to five thoufand Aspers euery day.

There is a Stable in the Serraglio, with two hundred Horses for the Signiors 40 person, and two hundred men to mannage and keepe them, who have from fiue, to eight Afpers each man daily.

Three Capigi-Bashaes, who are Captaines of the Portes or Gates, that have an hundred Afpers by the day, and are cloathed yearely. Vnder them they commaund two hundred and fifty Capigi, that have each man from fine to feanen Aspers dailie. Each Capigi Bashae, standeth obliged (with a third nuber of the Capigi) to keepe a Guard at the Gate of the Grand Signior, beeing changed still day by day. And when Ambassadours, or others doc come to killethe Grand Signiors hand: all of them are presented with Garments, or else Mo-

ny, according to the degree of him that is brought to that honor.

A Capigichechesi, who is as Protogero of the Capigi, and hath forty Afpers Protogeroto

Foure Bafbaes, called Vifirs, that is, Baffaes Vifies, chiefe Councellers to the Signior . He chiefe Counthat is greatest in authority, hath foure States-men and twenty thousand Ducates by the to the great yeare, and the other of them, have fix | S. gnior. teene and eighteene thousand yearely each man. They hold (beside) so much Land of him, as yeildeth three times more benefit, then is their allowance and provision of Money: whereto are added the rich garments given them by the Signior; the great prefents of Suiters, and others; beside the royalties held by their Offices, which are infinite. These Bashaes line and goe cloathed very pompoully, having Slaves, both Men and Women, to whom they give Wages, Horses, Garments, Head-attires of Gold, Girdles of Siluer, according to such Office and degree, as they hold about them : and by thefe(with his owne prouision) is each Bashae serucd,euen as the Signior is ferued by his attendants. They have five and twenty, or Secretaries thirty Secretaries granted them by the allowed by Signior, who are men of good effect, the Signior, to attend on his and haue flue and twenty or thirty Afforce Bafhaer pers ech man daily, befide Slaues, some Vifice. more, fom leffe, according to ech mans

things after their owne liking.

Next, there is the Mophty, who is the Interpreter and chiefe of the Law or chiefe Priest Religion: And he is not troubled with or Biffiep. any other matters, but in cases belonging to Religion, and concerning their Faith. His Office and Dignity is, as prefenting the person of the chiefe Priest

quality and estate. These Bastraes doe go

in and out to the Signior, about mat-

ters and occasions of State, & are they

(in briefe) that gouerne and manage all

or Bishop. Two Cadi Leschieri Talifmani, who Cadi Leschieri are Doctors of the Law for the Armie, Talifinani, Doone of Greece, the other of Nato'ta, and dours of Law they hold very worthy Offices. They fit at the Court gate, and do proceed or go before the Balbaes Vifirs, albeit the other are more effeemed. They are Executors of the Lawes, and with confent of the Bafbaes. They place and displace the Cadi, who are as Potestates and chiefe

Bbbb2 MagiCadi, Maiors or Poteffates through the Land.

Mochtur-Ba-Shaes, as Maifters of the Horffe.

Difterdari, Mai fters of the Rents & Reuenues.

The great Signiors Vicar and Lieuctenant in Con-Rantinople.

cafaa, the Treasure belonging to the

Rofunamegi, Maifters, or Comptrollers

Defnadar, weighers of Money.

Saraffieri,bankers or Mo. ney-Changers.

Magistrates thorow the Countries. They hold in Lands (each man) about feauen thousand ducates yearely, and do keep two hundred or three hundred Slaues scuerally: being also allowed by the Signior, ten Secretaries, and two Macheur-Bashaes, who performe the Office of Cauallery, and line on the royalties, whereof they have good store.

are towardes Danubie; and next, from

Afia, Soria, and Ægypt, with Landes of

ten thousand Ducates yearely, albeit,

(with their royalties) hee vaifeth three

times as much. The other hath charge

of the other two third partes of Grecia,

but when the great Signior goeth forth

into the Field: he remaineth as his Vi-

car and Lieutenant in Constantinople,

and hath fixe thousand ducates in lands,

whereof he maketh three times the va-

lue, and their feuerally Offices are of

great dignitie. They keepe under them

fifty Clearkes, with many coadiutores,

that is, of the Signiors Treasure: and

these Clearks are allowed wages by the

Signior, from fifteene, to fifty Afpers

each man daily. Also these Difterdari,

each one of them hath 1000. Slaues, &

the other five hundred: Likewise, the

Clearkes, they have from two, to twen-

Two Rolunamegi, Maisters of the

make disburfement thereof again when

need requireth, who have xxv. affiftants

betweene them. These two men are al-

lowed forty Aspers apiece; and the five

and twenty have from eight, to ten Af-

Defnadar, wherof there are two, whose

office is to weigh the Afpers and Duc-

kates, with five and twenty Aspers al-

Sixe Saraffieri, as Bankers or Lom-

bards, who know the true estimate of

Gold and Siluer, and have from ten to

Then there is a Nessangi-Bashae, who

figneth the Commaunds, and publique

fifteene Aspers, each man daily.

lowance daily for the one, and thirtie 50

pers each man daily.

for the other.

Clearkes, that receive the Monies, and 40

ty Slaues, each man allowed him.

There are two Difterdari, or rather, (as we vie to tearme them) Gouernors of the rents and renenues. One of them hath the collection, & keeping of those accounts, which come from one third part of Greece : to wit those parts which

each man.

who have care of the Cafna accounts, 30 better fort, fourescore Aspers a man

> There is a Chiaus-Bashae, who is chiefe of the Sergeants for the Army, and as Sergeant holdeth fuch credit with every man : Maior. that when he is fent by command from the Signior, to any Bashae, Saniack, or Cadi, with order, to cause the head of any one to be finitten off: he is obeyed, commandement inwriting, and euen no otherwise then acidet no otherwise, then as if the Signior himself were there in person, and commaunded it to be done. This man hath an hundred Aspers by the day, and keepeth an hundred Slaues vnder him, for whom he is allowed from fine & twenty, to forty Aspers for each man daily.

> The Mechter-Balhae, is Maister of them, that de display or spread abroad the Tents of Paullions, and the Tapefirst that couers the Floores in the ofter Tens Court, with fuch like bufineffes there- and Tapility. to belonging. He hath forty Aspers dailie; one Protogers, and fine and twenty Aspers allowance: threescore Mechters, waged from fine, to eyght

Writings, with the Signe or Marke of the Signior. His Office is, as Great or high Chanchiefe Chancellour, and he is a man of cellor, much reputation. He fitteth in the Porta, next to the Beglerbey, and hath eight thousand ducates of annuall Lands, befide very honorable places, with abone three hundred Slaues.

There is a Calnadar-Balbae abroad, or at large, as common Treasurer, with pac, Treasu. ten Casnadri vnder him: himselfe hath ter at large, fifty Afpers daily, and the ten other fif-

teene each man. The Deftermin, who is as Surueyer The Deftermin, who is as Surueyer of the Lands, and keepeth a Register of uayer of the them all. He hath forty Aspers dailie, Lands. and under him are ten Clearkes, rewarded from ten, to fifteene Aspers dailie

Then there are fourescore Mutafe- Mutaferath, rache, who are as Demy-Lances or light Demic Liun Horsemen to the Signior, carying their Horsemen Launces alwaies, whenfoeuer he rideth abroad, and acknowledging no other Head or Commaunder, but the Grand Signior himselfe onely. Afterward, when either by art or defert, any one of them can attaine so farre into his fauor; he is made Aga, that is a Captain. The meanest of them have ten, and the

Zagarzi-Bafhae for the Beaélcs.

fae, Maister

of the hunting Hounds.

Chap. 1.

Aga, Captain of the Iani¶a-

Checaya, Vice-

gerent of the

The number allowances & Commanders

The Laniffaries

dietting toge-

How they go

by hundreds.

Chiana-Bafbat

Aspers each man, and their yearelie Liucries from the Signior.

The Aga, that is, Captaine of the Iamissaries, who hath a thousand Aspers and more daily, and fixe thousand Duckats in Lands yearely. This Aga, when Court is kept, which is commonly twice or thrice enery weeke, standeth obliged, to feede the Ianisfaries, with Bread, Rice, Mutton, Hony, and Water. He hath a Checasa vnder him, or rather a Protogero of the Ianiffaries, who is as his Vice-gerent, and hath two hundred Aspers daily in ready Mony, and thirty thousand in Lands yearely. He also hath a Clearke of the Innissaries, called Janiffariasis, waged with an hundred Aspers daily.

The Sechmem-Bashae, is Maister of the Hounds for Hunting: he hath an hun- 20 dred Aspers daily, and to the number of almost two thousand Intillaries under

The Zagarzi-Balbae, is Maister of the Beagle-Hounds, beeing allowed fiftie Afpers daily, and hath about seauen hundred Janiffaries vnder him.

There are to the number of twelve thousand Janissaries, that have from three, to eight Afpers wages, each man | 30 daily allowed them. Every tenhaue their Oda-Bashae, and enery hundred haue their Boluch-Balbae : but these chief Men of the tens and hundreds, do ride on Horfebacke, the Oda-Balbacs beeing allowed forty Afpers each man dailie, and the Boluch-Bafhaes fixtie, the rest of the Ianisfaries doe goe on foote, beeing cloathed once ayeare by the Signior, in coorse Azure cloath.

Their dwelling is in two partes of Constantinople, freely given them by the Signior, wherein dwell they that have no Wiues: but fuch as be married, do inhabite divers places of the Citty. For their living together in friendly manner, euery Man layeth downe his perticulcr proportion; And they have a Steward, and a Cooke, who make preparation of their dyet: but fuch as come fhort in flipend to the reft, are bound by obligation to attend on the other, and take their leavings. Every hundred of them, when they go to the Field, do carry their Tent or Paullion with them, being all Foot-men: and part of them Shot, other Halbardiers, and

fome that vie the Semitary onely, euery three Men having a Horfe, for carriage of their necessaries. When they grow into yeares, or (in some other respects) their service seemeth not pleating to the Signior : they are cashiered out of the Janiffaries Booke, and are tearmed Affarers, that is to fay ; Guards Affareri, keefor Castles & then they have Comma- pers of Caders appointed them for that purpose, who are called Castillians, with equal allowance to the wages which formerly they had, so that no one of them falleth into diffreffe.

Some of them there be who freede fo successefullie in the Warres : that Vausides are they come to be made Vauoides, and Rulers or exalted to great Dignitie. They be Lords, aduangin the exercise of Armes when they |ced by their be but young Lads, and are enstructed merits in serby the most expert : beeing chosen of healthfull disposition, strongly limbde, yet quick and agile, but (aboue all)couragious, and much rather to bee cruell, then any way pittiful. In these men confifteth the strength and full firmenesse of all the Turkish Armies: who because they are continually exercised thereto, and (altogether) become one fole body as it were, are (indeede) to bee feared and doubted.

Of Janissaries there are elected an hundred and fiftie Solacchi, who are as Solacchi Foot-men to the Signior, with allow Signior. ance from fiftcene, to twentie Aspers each man daily : and they go evermore about his person, at all times when hee rideth abroad.

Two Solach-Bashes, are chiefe of the Maisters of Solachis, and ride on horsebacke; being the Solachi. allowed thirty Afpers daily each man, and the Solacthi are vnder obedience to the Aga of the Ianiffaries.

The Aga of the Spaceoglani, a very ho- Aga of the nourable Office, bath in Lands and day Wages, ten Duckets continually, and great store of Slaues, with a Checaia vnder him, or elfe a Protogero; who hath (betweene Lands and Wages) an hundred Aspers daily, beside a Janzei, that is, a Clearke, having thirty Afpers, and Intigi, anatfufficient regalities.

There be of the Spacenglani, who are young luftie men on horicbacke (for fo meaneth the Word Spaceoglano) three spaceoglani, young Galthousand, beeing waged from twentie, lants on Horsto fortie afpers each man daily, & euery backe, and Bbbb3 twenty

Education of the Spaceogla. ni from their

Child-hood.

Aga of the Si-

The differece

betweene the

Silubtari and

the Spaceogla.

Olofagi Ba.

fhawes, Com

maunders o-

uer the Soul-

Agaes of the

poore young men.

Caripoglani,

twenty hath a Boluch-Bafbae. Thefe do ferue on Horse-backe, with fiue or fixe Slaues, and as many Horses for each man; giving their attendance al-waies (and lodging likewife) on the right hand of the Signior. They are men of fufficiency, ouer whom the Signior appointeth no head or Controller, but onely himselfe. They are first brought vp or educated, in the Serraglio of yong Boyes, and as they grow in yeares and goodnesse, choyse is made of them, and fo they do attaine to this degree, which ferueth as a Ladder for them, whereby to mount to much greater grace, fauor, and preferment.

The Aga of the Silichtari, who hath thirty Afpers by the day, and ynder him a Protogero, a Cleark, and a Checaia, that are allowed thirty Aspers each man dai-

ly, and more.

Of these silichtari, there are three thoufand, who ride on horfebacke likewife, and lodge on the left hand of the Signior, having from twenty, to five and twenty Aspers each man daily: with four or fine Slanes, and as many Horfes, beside Lands for their better maintenance. These men are educated in the fame manner, as the Spacehi or Spaceo- 30 glani, and there is no other difference betweene them : but that the Spacchi attend on the right hand, and thefe on the left, of the Signior.

Two Olofagi-Bashaes, who are chiefe of the Souldiours, with two thousand Olofagi, that serue on the right and left hand of the Signior. The two chiefe Commaunders, haue an hundred and twenty Aspers each man daily, and the 40 other, from eight, to fixteen each man. Moreouer, the two haue vnder them, a Checaia, a Clearke and a Protogere, with Slaves and Horses, the one more, the o-

ther leffe.

Two Agaes, Maiesters or Rulers of the Caripoglani (who are poore young men) with fourfcore Afpers of allowance for each man . Their Protogeri haue thirtie Afpers, their Clearks fine and twentie: | 50 And they have vnder them, about two thousand Caripoglani (who are waged from seauen to sourceene Aspers each man) and they have Slaves and Horses

beside.

Two Bracor-Bafbaes, who are Maisters or chiefe Quiries of the Stable, one aboue the other in Office. The better hath five hundred Aspers by the day, & the other two hundred; befide Protogeri and Checaiaes, and others that are waged from thirty, to forty Aspers dailie each man.

Then there are to the number of fixteene thousand some tearmed Saracchi, who make Bridles and Saddles; others Ceifi, Servants or Groomes of the Stable ; others Carmandari, that attend on the Mules; others Denegi, that waite on the Camels; and Cauriligi, that feed the Heards of Horses in divers places, who are waged from two, to twentie Afpers each man daily.

Next there is betweene thirty and forty Peichi, Foote-Poalts, or Lackyes, Poalis or Lac who were brought vp(from their youn- | kies. geryeares) in knowledge of the miles, & difpatch much ground in short while, and with wonderfull swiftnesse. When the Grand Signior, is to ride abroad, they are continually ready, because they are imployed still in many busines-

Of elected and choife Horses, there are about foure thousand, for the per- Foure thoufon of the Signior : which are ridden by fand choice Horfes for the the vouthes of the Serraglio, and by the signior. Eunuches, as a daily practife and exer-

There is a Zachergi-Bashae, Maister of the yong Hauks, and another Zachergi- Zachergi-Ba-Bashae, Commaunder of all the Faul- Faulconers. coners. The first hath an hundred and fiftie Aspers daily, and the other but fourescore ; with their Checaines, Protogeri, and others, that are waged each Man daily, from ten, to fine and twenty Aspers. Vnderthese, are about two hundred Zaniglieri, one hundred wherof haue onely tenne Afpers each man the chiefe daily: but the rest hold Landes, or else exemption from taxations, and follow the fields as pleafeth the Signior.

The Gebegi-Balbae, is Maifter of the Gebegi-Balbat, Armour, having threefcore Afpers Maifter of the daily, a Protogro, and Clearke, with Armour. twenty Afped each Man dailie. Vnder him are a thousand and fine hundred Gebegi, waged from featen to foureteene Afpers dailie each man, and they all goe on foot with the Signior to the

The Tepei-Bashae, is M. of the Muskettiers, having threefcore Afpers dailie; Muskettiers.

Seracchi, as

Mulctters. Denegi, Cammellers. Caurigili, Herds for

the Signiors Standard-Bearer. Arpaemin,Puruever of grain and Corne.

Saracmin Pro

vider in gc-

nerall.

Imereiem-Aga,

Chap. 1.

Arabagi-Baffiac

Maifter of the

Mechter Ba-

hae, Maister

of the Drums & Trumpets.

Cariages.

Zaniglieri, at-

Dragoman, the Interpreter of Languages, er Maitter of the Ceremo-

E,tratemin.

Steward of

the Signiors

a Protogero, and a Clearke, with twenty Afpers, each man daily. And under him are two thousand Topci, waged from fix, to ter Afpers, each man dayly going on

Of the Great Turkes Court.

The Arabagi-Bashae, is Maister of the Carts, Waggons, and Carriages, haning fortie Aspers daily, a Protogero and Clearke, at twentie Aspers allowaunce, each man daily : & vnder him, are 3000. Arabagi, waged from three, to fix Aspers each man daily.

A Mechter Bashae, is Maister of the Trompets and Drummes, hauing thirtie Aspers daily allowance, a Protogrro and Cleark, at twelve Aspers a man daily. Vnder him, are a thousand and two hundred Mechters, partly on foote, and partly on horfebacke, from three to fine Afpers, each man daily.

Imerelem-Aga, who carrieth the grand Signiors Standard, having two hundred Afpers daily, and he is (befide) Captaine ouer all the Mechters.

The Arpaemin , hee is Purueyer for Corne, having a Protogero, and a Chan-cellor: himselfe hath sixtie Aspers, the Protogero thirty, and the Chancellour twenty daily. This Arpaemin hath xx. persons under him, who are allowed dayly amongst them, eight hundred Af-

The Saraemin, is Purueyer or prouider in common : for hee looketh to the streets of Constantinople, and al the waies whereby the Signior paffeth foorth to Warre. He hath charge also of publick Buildings; of Springs, Wels, and Water-conduct. He is allowed fifty Aspers daily, and hath foure hundred men vn- 40 der him: among whom, is giuen a thoufand Afpers : hauing a Protogere, and a Clearke alfo, with 38. Afpers, allowed each man daily.

The Baratemin, who is appointed to deliner the Signiors commands in writing, and to receive his house moneyes: having fortie Afpers daily, and attended with two Clearkes, and two Ouer-feers, with twenty Aspers daily each man.

The Dragoman, who is Interpreter of all Languages, which Office is as highly reputed, as is the Vertue and Wifedom of him that exerciseth it. He hath fine hundered Ducates in firme Provision euerie yeare, besides, his enjoyning as much in Landes, and about four times

as much in extraordinarie fauours, being alwayes verie especiallie respected of

The Womens Serraglio, differing from the other.

OVer and befide all the forena- The great med matters, there is another Signer his fe 10 Serraglio of the Signiors Women, con-taining in circuite more then a mile and for his Chila halfe: being richly furnished with di dren. ners goodly Chambers, and other retirements, wherein the Signiors Children are kept, seperately one from another, with their Mothers, and a great number of Eunuchs allowed for their keeping & feruice. There is also the Sultana, that The Sultana is to fay, the chiefe Mother, or the Sig- or the signiors wife. 20 niors Wife, by whom he is faid to haue his first Child.

In this place also, are three hundered young Damose's, brought thither Virgins, and deliuered to the government of many Matrons: which Virgines, are enstructed in al kinds of curious imbroidery and workes: and every one is allowed from ten to twentie Afpers daylie, as wages, and enery yeare, at the two Bairanges, they have costly Garments of filk given them Among these, hee maketh choise (to his owne liking) of such as hee will admit to his prinate companie: and when he hath lien with any of them, hee giueth her a rich head attire of Golde, His reward to & ten thousand Aspers, placing hir then arter her com in another lodging, seperate from the o- pany. ther Virgins, encreasing still hir ordina-

rie wages. To this Serraglio belongeth an Aga of the Eunuches, who hath an hundred fcore Afpers for him & his : three Capigi- lio, and their Balbaes, and a hundred Alpers amongest wadges daily. their Capigi. Ianiffaries at the Gates : among whom are daily given fix hundered Afpers. The Saccaes, that bringeth in Water, who have in al forty afpers daily. These Damosels are thus serued and enstructed, till they be fine and twentie How long the yeares of age, the Matrons beeing their Damofels con Mistresses, and the servants are the verie signors yes. yongest of them . When they are fine and what be and twenty yeares olde, if the Signiour commeth of pleafe to make no more vie of them, they ward. are then married to the Spaccogiani, and fom other of the Slaves about the court, according to the qualitie and degree on

for the Signi-

Bracor Bashaes chiefe Groo mes of the Stable.

Field.

Galatea or

Galatia in Gol

logracia, in A fia the leffe,

ioyning to

Phrigia and Lydia.

Mailters for

enstructing the youths in the Serraglio.

A Citty of

Thrace, built vpon the Ri-uer Hebrus.

The Serrag-

lio of Adria-

In Thrace,

rifing out of Rhodope by A-drianople, in-

to which Ri-

uer the head

of Orpheus was

Gardens be-

longing to young lanif-faries.

Afpers daily.

Workemen

in the Arfena'

and their was

ges in their

euerall de-

Care for for-

therance of

grees and

either part, and insted of the ones Josse, another is admitted.

The Serrag'so of Children.

"Here is another Serrag'io neere to" Pera, confifting of about foure hundred Children, who are waged each one from fixe, to ten Aspers daily, and are cloathed with Silke twice enerie yeare. These Children haue an Aga and Eunuches, even as the great Serraglio hath, with Capagi, young Ianissaries, and an hundred Maisters of divers Artes and professions: amongst whom, are giuen eight hundred Afpers daily. They are not fo Nobly borne, neyther of so feemelie presence or ingennity; as these that bee with the Signior : and yet neuertheleffe, many of them do attaine to greatnesse: | 20 and choife is made among them of many, that are admitted to the great Serraglio. Especialy, in Adrianople, called by fome Andrianople, there is a Serraglio of three hundred Children with Wages, Aga, Eunuchs, Capigi, Ianisfaries, & two hundred Maisters, that have amongest them, two thousand and eight hundred

These children are of a third or more inferiour quality; and therefore, are the more respectively enstructed and restrained, even as all the rest(in civill manner) are of them, according vnto their fpirit and behauiour, choise is also made for their further aduauncement. There is likewise in the same Countrey, another Seraglio, newly made with a goodly great Garden belonging to it, and feated on the River * Mariza: wherin ther is about 40 three hundred yong saniffaries, who difpend each man yearely, a thousand and two hundered A/pers . They have an Aga, allowed fortie Aspers, a Protogero, and a Clearke, each thitty Afters daylie. In divers other places of Adrianople, there are Gardens, continually belonging (euen as in Deposito) to a thousande and fluc hundered young taniffaries, felected out of these youths, as they grow 50 to yeares and qualitie : hauing Agaes, and Clearkes on whom are bestowed fix thousand Aspers enerie yeare, or very lit-

There is then an Aga of the Azamoglani, called young vntutord or vnciuill Jani faries, that abide in Constantinople, and have threefcore Alpers dayly: there being under his commaund, about five thousand of these wilde-headed lanisaries, who are cloathed twice enery year, and have Maisters for their instruction; wrights. among whom, is fpent tenne thousande Afpers yearely. These do attend about the Ship-wrights, bringing them wood to supply their building, and duers other affayres befide. Some practife Cookerie, and so become servants to the Ianiffaries, whereby (at length) they attain to bee Ianisaries themselues . Euerie fourth yeare, the Signiour sendeth into Grecia and Natolia, to take and furprize Children from the Christians, and then ten or twelue thousand of these men are fent out at a time, that doth bring verie many christian children back with them: who are then conucyed vppe further into Natolia, towards Burfia, now called * Mysia, or into * Caramania, where they are brought up in digging the Ground, because they may bee invred to labour, and also to learn the Turkish Language. These Children are thus kept, three or foure yeares; and then fent out to allure and India, other in like manner: being then given to the government and Discipline of the Aga Azamoglani. No wages or allowance is granted to these by the Signieur, Aga Azamogli fo long as they abide in Natolia, because they are both fedde and cloathed at their cost, in whose service, they delue the grounds, or doo any other labours for them.

I thought good to make mention (in this place) of all the Serreglioes, because All the Serreg they are as appendixes on that belong- or branches ing to the Signior, and reckoned in the of the Signim whole expences, returned into the books great Sering. of charge, belonging to the great Serraglie of the Signior. Into which accounts are also called the Moneyes laid out for cloathing (twice yearely) the Bafbaes, the Cadilescheri, the Difterdari, the Beglerbeyes, and the Neffangi-Bafhaes : which expences, allowed to them that be in extraordinarie, do amount to, and exceed the summe of a Million of aspers yeare-

> Of the Arfenale, or Store-house of Munition.

3. There is also an Arfenale on The Arfenale that part of Pera, not of anic

Attendants

ployed by the Signior for the flealth of

in Asia by Hel ring on Trau Narjinga, in Afia minor, be-tweene Perfu

Beg'erbey of the Sea is chiefe Consmander in the

His authorit and yearely

bigge or large circuite, which hath on the Sea-more, to the number of ninetic two Arches, and containeth folittle ground within: as not onely the Galies, but also their other appurtenances, and Timber for worke, can hardly bee there placed. In this Arsenale, do about two hundered men labour ordinarily enerie day; who, with their Maisters and O-uerseers, have daily two thousand Aspers among them. There are a thousande A/api; who have foure thousand Aspers among them.

Preti, or Workemaisters, to the number of fiftie, who when they are idle and labour not, have fixe Afpers dayly, but when they work, twelue A/pers each

The Emino hath fortie Aspers, the Clearke fiue and twenty, with ten clarks more vnder him, that have an hundered Aspers daily. All these, when neede requireth, do performe their seuerall Offices. But if they intend badly vnto theyr Trades, or labour not effectually in the building of Gallies, whereby no fuch benefit enfueth on their paines, or like expedition as is vied among vs: if the fault be found by any Christian, he is well recompenced, and the other verie feuerely punished.

Of the Beglerbey.

4. A S Commander over the Ar-fenale, and all the rest, there is one that is called the Beglerbey of the Sea, as much to fay, as Lord of Lords, an Office newly created: for, in times past, he was alwaies woom to bee called Captaine of the Sea. He that was Sansack of Callipolis, and is now the first that had the degree of Cairedinbei, was called Barbarolla, and afterward created the 4. Balbae. To him is given the government of all the Nauie, and he hath in prouifion euerie yeare (both in Lands and Ducates) fourteene thousand, collected on Rhodes, Negropont, and Mytelene, albeit he gathereth a double aduantage. There is not any other especiall man, appertayning to matters of the State, and charge of the Sea, that deserueth Annotation, and therefore comming to land affaires, I will proceed in this manner.

There is one called the Beglerbey of

Gracia, wherein is comprehended all the Countreyes which the Great Signiour enioyeth in Europe. This Beglerbey, is the greatest of all the rest, having in Lands fixteene thousand ducates yearly, but his benefite amounteth to twice as much more.

Hee fitteth in the Ports, behinde the chiefe Bafbae, and is of great reputation the Court, & with enery one. He hath befide his flanes his attendants (which are about a thousand) a Defterdaro, Landed at three thousand Ducates yearely: An hundred Clearks, that keep the Bookes and accounts of the Landes, Sub-Bafhaes assigned to the Sub-Bashaes, Cads, Spacehi, Cadi Spuchi. and others; among whom, is yearely giuen ten thousand Ducats. Thirtie seauen Saniaeks, who are al vnder his obedience: and have each man from five to twelve | Saniacks. thousand Ducats yearly

These men, are distributed into the Prouinces, where they remaine to long as pleafeth the Signior; and are thence translated or chaunged (as hee thinketh good) into fome other Provinces. Their Office, is to gouerne the Spacehi, to fee the Snacehi, and their imkept in due obedience. Foure hundred Ployment. Sub-Balbaes, who have in landes among them, foure hundred thou fand Ducates. Thirtie thousand Spacehi, who are Souldiers on Horsebacke, dinided for best order of service: partly of the Beglerbeis of Grecia, and partly of all the Sanicks of The Regier-Grecia. They have (one by another) in beys and San-Lands, two hundred Ducats, and each lacks of Greena, one of them, for every hundered of Ducates, is bounde to keepe a man armed on Horsebacke, with his Launce: and beside the saide armed man, they have, fome two, fome foure, and others fiue Seruants and Horses. These Spacehi, are all flaues to the Signior, and the fonnes

of flaues, and of Spaceki. Next, there are twentie thousand Timariotti, who have from tenne to fortie fuch as live Ducates in Lands, each man yearly:but to an hundred Ducates each man, they are not called Spacehi The Change, they are not called Spacehi The Change are not called Spacehi The Chan and two or three fernants for each man. feruing distributively to all the Saniaks of Greeta. That which they call Timati, is nation of the assignation or appointment of lands, Lands, Lithe Rents, Fees, or Reuennews of which or flates, lateassignations are deriued, partly from the ly conquered Fee farme, letting, or deniling: but the by the S gni-

the Beglerbey

His dignity in

The Office of

Timariotti, are

Timari, affig-

are young Ia be (as yet)

Ackengi, arc aduenterous feruitours on Horffe-backe

What number

ferue the Sig-

I The Begler-

bey of Natolia,

and the places

vnder his co-

His place in

the Court.

2 The Begler.

bey of Caraina.

nia and his

command.

maund.

nior thorow

Grecia.

greater part, is from the tenths of all the renennewes granted from the Turkes as well as Christians, and from the leauies which are fine and twenty Afpers (Per poule, as we vie to fay) of the Christians onely, and from the impositions on cattell, Trees, and other things, which taxes are ouer and aboue those, that are paied ordinarily to the Signiour . Sixteene thousand Archingi, those are aduenturers on horsebacke, set downe thorough the Countrey of Grecia, and bounde to follow the warres without any pay; and therefore are empted from all taxations: the Citties and Townes are tied to find their prouision of victuals onely, from place to place where they ferue.

There are in Gracia, that is, throughout the whole Country therofin towns, Villages, and other places, as well of Turkes and Christians, enjoyned to feruice, about the number of threescore & eight thousand.

Next, there are fix Beglerbeyes in Afia, and one by himfelfe in Egypt. The first, is called the Beglerbey of Nato'ia which (in elder times) was Asia minor : he hath fourteene thousand Ducates in Landes annually, but hee maketh much greater benefit thereof. This man hath under him, and in his government, Pontus, Bythinia, all Afia, Lydia, Caria, and Lycia; all which Provinces (vnder one Name only) is at this day cald Natolia. His place in the Borts, is next to the Beglerbey of Grecia, and he hath (befide his own proper Slaues) aboue a thousand more vnder him: and twelue Saniaks landed from foure to fix thousand Ducats each man; Spacehi, ten thousand; from five to ten 40 Aspers, each man dayly, besides much more in Landes, and those serue vnder him, according vnto euerie ones de-

The Beglerbev of Caramania, which aunciently was Celicia and Pamphilia, with tenne thousand Ducats in Landes. Hee hath under him feauen Saniackes, from foure to fixe thousande Ducates, each man in Lands. And fine thousande spacehi, from fine to tenne Afpers, each man daily befide their lands.

The Beglerbey of Amasia and Toccato which was Cappadocia and Galatia, with eight thousand Ducates in Landes. Of Saniacks he hath eight from fix, to eight thousand Ducates each man in Landes: Spacchi, foure thousand, from fyue to ten Aspers daily each man, and lands.

The Beglerbey of Aladula, which is a place betweene Soria, Caramania, and 4 The Begor bety of Aladah, and bis of Aladah, and his constraints on the Alfa of the 1 Constraints on the Aladah of the Aladah of the 1 Constraints on the Aladah of the 1 Constraints on the 1 Constra is the one halfe of the leffer Armenia. He mand. hath ten thousand ducates in landes, and Saniacks feuen (fometimes four, & fometimes fix) from foure to fix thousand ducates in lands: Spacehi fix thousand, from 5.to ten Aspers daily each man & lands. In this Pronince of Aladula, it is fayde, that when the Signior was there, befide being in 44 the stipendarie men; thirtie thousand o- dula. ther personnes were obliged to ride on with him, at the charges of two villages

The Beglerbey of Mesopotamia, under 5 The Begin. whom is the rest of Armenia Minor, and bey of Melinia, and his part of the greater, the other appertayning to the Sophie, and the Cordi, which confyneth with Bagadeth, or Baldacco. anciently called Babylon . His Landes amount to aboue thirtie thousande Ducates: and beside his owne slaues, hee hath more then two thousand. Vnder him are twelve Saniackes. landed from foure to fixe thousand Ducates yearelie each man: Spaechs, ten thousande, from 30 | ten to fyfteene Afpers each man daylie, and verie well landed, because they line on the Sophies Confynes, with whome they have continually bickerings.

The Beglerbey of Damaseo, Soria, and 6 The Ergin. Indea, Landed foure and twentie thou- beyon Dame! fand Ducates. Hee hath about two co, Soil, and thousand flaues, and twelve Saniackes command, vnder him, Landed from fyue vnto feauen thousand Ducates : Spacehi, twentic thousande, with Aspers from tenne, to fyfteene each man daylie, and good Lands.

The Beglerbey of Cairo, whose iurisdiction extendeth fo farre as Amech, beyof Caire, & that is in Arabia, and the Arabiaes are his large expossessed by the Signiour, in the fame tendure. manner as hee is poffeffed of Albania, where hee challengeth no fuch obedience, as all other States and Countries doo yeelde vnto him of his owne: yet, Arabia Fæ'ix is nowe in farre more subjection to him, then the other. He hath thirtie thousand Ducates in Lands, and Slaves about four thousand. Sixteene Saniackes. Landed from fixe vnto eight thousand Ducates each one of them; and fixteene thousande Spacchi, from

The Signion

A Region in Afia, enuironed with the Hill Caucafus. People of Scythia in Afia. Mountaine people of both the Armeni-

Chap. 1.

Lords vnder

In the cdge of Macedonia by the Euxine dffiria.

> The whole Country of

The Saniatks

are warlike men and of

great account

lats of the legiorbey for Grecia, accor-

ling to their

mes and

The Saniac-

fifteene, to twentie Aspers daylie each

Betweene Amech, and the Countrey of the Sophie, there are some Arabian Lords, that owe no obedience to anie bodie. The rest of the Sophies land, confineth on Mesapotamia, wherein is Maldacco, passing Mesapotamia, the Sophye also confineth the plaine of Nasinam, then toucheth Efdum and Erfum, which are principall places in Armenia Maior, and confine with the *Hybers and *Georgiani. In these Armeniaes, both the great and leffer, are many of the * cordi, people lining in the Mountaines, yet warlick and Martiall: those of the greater Armemia being in obedience, partly to the Signior, and partly to the Sophie, but those of the leffer, not to any one. *Trabifonde confineth with the Georgiani and Men- 20 grelli, and part of the Hyberi, which people were anciently called Colebians. * Azemia, which in elder times was Affyria, belongeth to the Sophie, and hee is the absolute Lord thereof.

In this Natolia, I mean in the whole Country which the Signio possesseth in Asia, Citties, Townes, and Villages belonging both to Turkes and Christians, are feauenty two thousand, besides them 30 in Egypt, whereof there are great store.

Of the Saniacks.

THe Saniacks affuredlie (as I haue alreadie faide) haue gouernment in the Provinces, committed vnto them by the Beglerbeys, and are men of much reputation and great esteeme, especially in warlicke occasions, whom I will also set downe, by the names of those places, which are giuen and assigned under their regiments.

First, the Biglerbey of Grecia, apointeth his Saniacats to these places : first toward Solonichi, & then follow the other of Caffa, and of Silistria, Nicopolis Vidin, Samandria, Seruia and Belgrada, Sournich Bolling, and Erlech, which is Seruia, and called a Dukedome ; Scutari, Valona, Iauina, Carlali, Lepanto, Morea, Negropont, Trica'a, Callipolis, Chricheliffa, that is, forty Churches, Vifa, Cirme, Chrostandill. Volcitrin, Prisdren, Ocria, Alazaassar, Elbassan, Voinug, Cinghene, and Taiazza. These are thirty, which were wont to be fine and thirty; but the fine are vnited to the propinquent places, as Philippelis, Sophia, Dyrrachium or Durace, Albania, and Scopia.

Natolia, that is Afia Minor, hath Fontus, thinia, Lydia, Caria, and Lycia. The San- ing to the iakats of this Beglerbey, are in Chiotha- Beglerbey of chia, and the rest in Chiogaeli, as Bols, Ca-Stamoni, Anguri, Cangri, Therebieli, Mateffeli, Aidineli, Hallaice, Buga and Magmesia, which apper ained to the Sultane Mustapha, the Signiors first borne son, and which place is half hemd in with the

Amasia and Tocatto, that is Paphlagonia, Galatia, and Cappadocia. The Saniakat of the Begierbey the Beglerbey, is in Amafia, and the relt of Amafia. in Chiorma, Gianich, Charaiffer, Safum, and Trabifonde.

Caramania, that is Cilicia by the midst of Cyprus and Pamphilia. The Saniakat of the Beglerbey is in Giogna, and the other stretch into Naranda, Axar, Eschisfar Verfageli and Siuraffar.

Aladula, that is Armenia Minor. The Saniakat of the Beglerby is in Maras, & those of the other, in Sarmuffacli, Albistancrassi, Adana & Tersis.

Dierbech, which is Mefopotamia, and part of Armenia Major, for the rest be- the Ecglerbey longeth to the Sophy, and to the Cordi. The Saniakat of the Beglerbey, is in Dierbech: and the rest haue their abiding in Charaenit , Arqui , Tolgich , Caffanchief , Meridin, Charput, Mufful, Efrum, Payburt, Eyeblis and Maxinancuafsi.

Soria and Indea. The Saniakat is in Damafee, and the other in Melathia, Diuitghi, Antep, Antiochia, Aleppo, Tripoli, Chama or Aman, Camps, Scepheto, Ierusalem, and Gazara.

Egypt, with part of Defert Arabia, to Alziden l'Almach, with all Arabia fælix, where are many Arabian Lords, which are partly at the denotion of the Grand Signior, and partly to no bodie. The Saniakat of the Beglerbey is in Cayro, & fome other places.

All the fore-recited Saniacks, Beglerbeyes, Bashaes, and other Officers, haue Lands and Wages (as hath beene faide) A briefe Sumfirmely in ordinarie pay: and get much mary of all the torena-more extraordinarily, liuing chiefely by med Officers the benefit of their flanes, whome they and Offices. must of necessity cloath, and allow some Wages to keepe them from stealing. What the Rents and Revennews of this Signior is may bee confidered by the

kats belong-

Saniackars of

Saniachats of the Begjerbei of Caramania.

Saniackts of the Beglerbey

Saniackrs of

Saniackars of

the Bezierbey of Soria and

Egipt and the Saniackars of her Beglerbey.

3 The Begler

bey of Amalia and Toccato.

Yearely Renenues comming into the the Grand

An inestimate

in generall.

mightie expences he is at daily, the whiche reuennewes is collected of the Carazo or impositions, proceeding fro those Subjectes that are not Turkes, yeelding yearely a Million and a halfe of ducates. The Customes or towle for cattell, yeeldeth eight hundered thousand Ducates; and the Mettall Mines affoord fixe hundred thousand Ducates.

There are infinite other Customes and payments, imposed on Salte, Commands, dead folkes goods, guifts, the reuennewes of Egypt, beside other Moneyes, Rents, and Tributes, which are fo much, as not only do supplie the expences ouer and about the Landes and readie Moneyes, and bringing daily into the great Caspar or Treasurie, aboue twelve thousand Ducates, besides other great aduantages, and ouerplus fummes of Moneyes. And it is supposed, that the least reckoning of the ordinary reuenues, may be about fyfteene thousande Millions of Gold: Five whereof onelic enter into the Cafnar, but the other ten remaine for the Ministers of the warres employments.

CHAP. II.

Of the lawfull meanes, whereby to compasse the esteeme and reputation, of beeing truely and excellentlie Couragious &

A demaund made to Auworthy an-iwere.



George Caffriot

T was demaunded of Augustus, in what hee could best observe the valour of a man of war.
Thus (quothhe) volum his effort and endeuon,

hash rellift (in common) with that of his Fellowes, but that some perticuler matter appeareth in his attempt, which is no way due to the Armies general victory, wherein himselfe fighteth under the Captaynes charge, yet as if himselfe were no chiefe in respect. Such a man among the Albanians, was George Castriot, who hadde to deale with two of the verie greatest, and most dreaded Princes of the East against whose Injustice he opposed himselfe only, and manie times wonne verie goodly victory ouer them : yea, and compelling them fometimes to require peace, yet without anie other aide, then his owne perfect valour, accompanied with Difcretion and Equity. Which yet (neuertheleffe) at length hee loft, both to his owne ruine and all Albania, by the entermifes and medlings of the Pope, and of The Pope& the Bythop of Durace, who conftrayned Bithop of Da him (initiriously) to breake his faith promifed vnto Mahomet the fecond, being matters. at that time in Warre against the Vene-

He could freely amouch, that (as naked and all alone) hee vndertooke warre against the Great Signior, and that hee did it onely by the bright beautie of his courage: which could no way gather ap- of confesion prehension of furmounting, fighting in to inft a cause as the Christians generall quarrell against the Turk. And he might also as freely confesse, that the losse of his estates and of his sonnes (which hee had not till after his death) was onlie conceited in the wombe of a Popes and Byshoppes rashnesse, who more enslamed with spleene, then strengthned with men of armes, over bare the modestie of this poore Lord, who died in a weake estate, yet not wholly troden downe; but in leauing nothing to his heires, whereby to make a fresh reply vpon Mahomet. Hee ruined Christianity in Greece, thorough the infolencie of these two men of the in Greece, by Church, who were more apte to command a fedition, then anie way to apeale it, and had more Cowardife in giving bad counsell to their friends then corage to helpe them out of the loffes bredde by them, even as in a fourfe of infallible and undrainable misfortunes. Whereinto alfo they threwe Hungary headlong, ha-

uing counselled a young King vnadui-

hath (almost) as great a share as the Em-

perour. And he, though endued with

perfect valiancie, hath had much payne

and care to repaire those wide gaps and breaches, which these rash & presump-

tuous men made, without any necessitie

or ouvert profitable confideration vnto

Christendome, but well-neere to the vt-

fedly to violate peace with the Great Turke: who (throrough this error onely) Further is at this day victorious, and remayneth possessor of the Hungars whole estate; & them, in Hungars and eller afterward fell vpon Austria, where hee

> A noble Citty be tweene Perfia where was the fumptu-ous Pallace

Darius con-

quered by

ter subuersion of the Easterne people in | those parts.

Leonides, King of Lacedeman flaine at Th.r. unpyle fighting against

Chap.2.

Leonides also is one of them, to whom infily may be attributed the glorie and perfection of intire man-hood, confidering, that without any curious inquifition for himfelfe, eyther of good or euill, and careleffe of any intention for prayle or misprisson: he vndertooke to oppose himself (at the Thermopy le) against great king Xerxes, the aftonisher of the world, who had filled all Greece with horrour and affrightments, both of Soldiers and horses, having no lesse provision (beside this equipage) of power & fighting men on the Sea, which they did nothing elfe, but meerely finite and beate with their Oares, euen as if hee would have compelled the infenfible Elements, to the vnderstanding and fauouring of his enterprizes. All which notwithstanding, the wor-

thy Leonides, accompanied onelie with

foure thousand men, fought against him

with fuch fprightly refolution and Ver-

tue : that he left vs more matter and fub-

iect of amazement, then capacity of im-

mitation. I must send ye amongest the

Greekes, there to admire the whole Hi-

flory, which is the most remarkable in al | 30

Brasidas must not be forgotten, who

Lemides vn-dertaketh the fight with

trauerfed the Campe of the enemie, at A valiant the fiedge of * Methone, and by a necel Captaine of Lacedemon.
The Citty
Modes by the fary endeauor, accomplished and woon immortall Fame and Renowne, which ferneth yet (to this day) for a common Sea fide in Peloponnefus. Prouerbe, by the wonderfull perfection of his courage, whose picture is plentiful among the Greekes, only with this

Antiquity.

Motto. Be as va'iant as Brasidas.

Hylparmenes, Captaine to Darius, is woorthy to holde ranke amongst them, that not onely had a beame, but an entire Starre of true valiancy. For, his Master, and the fortune of all Asia, bowing under the yoake of Great Alexander, he 5 would not yeeld himfelfe vnto the Conquerour, though his Castle was no longer holdable, the Cittie of Sufa beeing brought in Subjection to the Macedonians, to whom he made this answere. 1 do not resist against Great Alexander with any hope to ouercome him: but only to Conquer mine owne mufortune, which may will suffer me to dye yet not at the discretion of any other, then of my felle, wwho would farce the fortune of your Maister, if hope were answerable to my dutie. Tet, all that I can hope is now not lawfu', because

the royal Darius is dead. Hyrtius Mela, purchased most signale glorie, in perfection of courage, when feeing the Cittie wherein he dwelt, cal- "The Citty led * Praneste, wholly destroyed from Latinum in the toppe to the bottome, and by his Litar. Guest Sylla, who (in the right of Hospitality) graunted him both grace and life: hee valiantly made refusall with this exclamation against the Tyrant . Is to possible. O thou most barbarous and cruel of all men shat thou wouldst be so bloody to thine Hoste, as to let him line, after fo many cru- The couragielties which thy rage hath exercised on an Hyrius Mela innocent people ? Thou art not pittifull to to Sylla. me but onely to afflict me more & wouldst bestow life on me once, to make me thereby

dye a Million of times. Hast thou flaine my Companions, Fellow Cittizeus, Kindered and Friends, and wouldst thou new compel mee to line? Speaking these words, hee Hyrias Mela Stabbed with a Poniard, Mutius Listrio, flew Mutius the principall Instrument and Organ of Listing, the causer of his Syllaes cruekties; yea, the only Authour Citties ouerand motive of Pranestes ruine. To throw. whose Ashes, this good and Famous Cittizen, sacrificed his owne life, by the death of the dearest Friend vnto the Tyrant, who instantly commaunded, that hee should be massacred & thrown into the common Sinke, or Lay-stall of

the Citty. Quintus Curtins, that Honourable Romaine Knight, did a deede of abfo- The memoralute and respective manhoode . For, ble act of when he had Learned from the Oracle that the wide gaping Gulfe in the midth deligerance of Rome, which infected the Cittie with of his Counpestilence and most noysom aires, could ey. no way be closed againe, but by the Voluntarie leaping of a man into that infernall and darke downefall, he gladly threw himselfe thereinto, for to end the Romaines miserie, and saving the lives of infinite people of all degrees. The Inscription on his Brasen Statue was thus.

Cccc

This

This was the acceptable Sacrifice to the Goddes, and the Sautour of his Country. This was the Heire to the vertues of the chiefest Romaines, and the scandal of al cowardly men. This was he that could not die; but by being profitable to the lines of his Fellow-Cittizens.

Cneius Cepio, made his manly corage

to appeare, in a matter worthy to be obferued. For, when hee beheld a huge Domitius refmighte Elephant, flouping and make cued from a dangerous Elephant. offer to feize on Domitius his Captaine: he prevented him quickly, by throwing himfelfe underneath his bellie, which he stabd with so many stroakes of his Poniard, that the Elephant being faynt with A Noble napaine, violence of his wounds, and losse hearted Soul-

of blood, fell downe dead, and with his fal, crushed him also to death, who made no spare of his owne life, to speede his

Generals with fafety.

Fuluius Nassus, was carefull to winne himfelfe faire reputation in Arms, when the Romaines his Companions and warfellowes) being vanquished by Hannibal 30 at the Lake of Thrasymena, and flying away like Cowards, hee stept betweene their purfuite and attaint, allowing them time for running, by making a wall, as it were, of himfelte and his horse in a narrow passage, where the slight of the one side, and following of the other, was meerely logd vp. The death of his horse was frightfull and terrible to the Horses many prefer-red before aof his enemies, and a fafegarde also for 40 himfelfe, that he could not fuddenlie bee furprized by many Numidians. So that, thorough his long refiftance, even vnto death, he faued the remainder of the Romaines lives, that fled from foorth their owne field of battell.

> The valour of Mintius Scanola cannot be conflicted by eternity of ages. For he (all alone) amazed a victorious Prince. ready to poffesschimself of Rome, which | 50 must needes have yeilded in verie sewe dayes, or be compelled to render or ruin it felfe, by falling into the Tarquins handes, and the people of Hertruria, veric desperate enemies.

This braue and Couragious Scanola, (without any communication of his

desfeigne) threw himselse into his Enemies Army, not as a friend, but as an open enemy. He fought for King Por enms in all places of the field, he found his
Secretary to ma in all places of the field, he tound his Secretaryon Royall Paulillon, and flew the intendant on his affayres, as guessing by the riches of his habite, and the honour generalise done vnto him, that it had been the King himfelfe. Heereuppon, hee was apprehended, and brought before the King Paulima, who fuddenly converting rage into admiration, and admyrating rage into admiration. tion into pardon, fent backe Noble seanolato Rome. And which is much more, he raised his siedge, as beeing searefull, that fome other courage, more fortunat then that of Mutius) should make a focond attempt, and so prooue to bee his death indeede. But what gratitude did Seauola returne for this high fauor? that tion of Mulia you shall perceive by his owne wordes, Scanola to K. which are thefe : Sir, for the kindneffe I have receyued from your Maiesty, I purpose neuer to rest unthankfull. Let me then tell

ye, that there are yet in Rome, foure hunde-

red gallant young men, who have projected how to kil you, or elfe to loofe themfelues in the aduenture.

Androcides the Samian made the most aduantageable effay in Courage and perfection of valour, that anie of vs can defire to accomplifi. For, being prifoner vnto Eupolemus the great Pyrate, who (vnaduifedly) had tolde him, that the verienext Night, hee purposed to surprise the Cittie of samos (as doubtlesse the enterprise would have beene infallible, because all the ablest fighting Samians were restrained in Peloponnesus) hee preuented him halfe a day before, by giuing him fo strong a blowe with a Candlesticle under the eare, that so dyed the loffe of his Countrey, and he together that had intended it. A matter questionlesse exceeding beleefe, that a man to faue a Cittie, and the Inhabitantes, would run into fuch a certainty of death, whereto hee meerely proftituted his life, because hee would not behold the place of his birth and Nativitie, in the mercie of fuch an infamous and outragious Pi-

It is in fuch actions (you my braue ma- To fuch as fters, & dainty sweet perfumed Courtiers, that true courage makes it felfe to be beft feen: and not in committing effront terries and impudencies in our publicke freets.

Chap. 2.

A noated hu

mour in ouer

A denife how

to be benifi-ciall both to

Prince and

Country by

care, forward

neffe.& man-

ly behautour

many idle

Gallants.

The worthy antweres of Seleuchus to his Parafites

and Flatte-

The viuali

brauadoe of

Scipio Affrica-

streets, in bawdy-houses, yea, and in the frequent company of our best friendes. We are like to Lyons, that make no acknowledgement of their foftering nurfes. Gouernors or Guardians, if the colour and fashion of their garments be neuer fo little changed. If all their humors that keepe vs company, do not impe and correspond with ours; immediately one is an Asse, another a Nouice; this fellow hath no complement, that neuer came where courage was; either hee is too fad, or too merrie, or elfe he hath no tafte of our Court syre: these are our most familiar discourfings; yea, and (many times) all that we can fay. Make a little better fearch into your felues henceforward, for fom fuch faire occasions to appeare in, and that our outward shewe may not be by ftarts and passions, but on | 20 well formed and compleat deffeigns.Regard aduisedly, wherein we may be profitable to our Prince and Countrie; and thereon immediately refolue, to effect fome fuch one thing or other, as may be worthy each of the other. Let it appeare (then)that we are Captaines indeed, left we be not reckoned worfe then filly Soldiers : and let it be seene, that we are neceffary helpes then, when men woulde indge vs vtterly unprofitable. Let it bee noted, that we have courage then, euen when it faileth in our fellowes : and yet without accusing them of any cowardise but onely by attempting and executing more then they. Let vs then (in good earnest) performe the Rodomontado of Scipio Affricanus, who was wont to fay: I feeke not to be known to man by man but I wou'd only make my felfe known to al the world.

Seleutus hearing and perceiving, that every man boatted and flattred him, that he was worthy to inherit the fortune and vertue of Alexander, returned this aunfivere Tou should bid me fatisfie the creduliey, which you have conceived of my valor, and then you would quickly emptie mee of courage in afpyring, when you but make me to remember Alexander, who perfourmed more then a man can thinke, or anie way is able to do. He also said, Asia is yet the same field of battaile where his Captains disputed about his heritage : but no man was to bee found, that could answere his descruinges : Let vs striue to imitate the valiancy, and necessarie courage of Bertrand du Guefclin, who conquerd the fortune, enuy, hazards of war, and furie of the victorious. Let vs read the histories of such as theer. tofore) opposed themselves, against the good fucceffe and vertue of the English men. Let vs not make esteeme only, but forme in example and fingular study, the valor of those ancient knights, that made this State of ours inuincible, and drew it out of decayed ruines, yea; out of a bottomleffe gulfe, wherin it appeared to be funk, and (welneere) wholy fwallowed. In dooing fo, it is not to bee feared, that although we were no more then perticuler men, or Gentlemen, or Captaines, or Soldiers, yet we should attaine to worke woonders, and to arrive before the eyes of Commonweals, of Empires, Monarchies, and of their Princes, by whom (at length we should be admired, sought for, acknowledged, and recompenced, acording to our owne wishes, and contrarie to the mediocrity of a wel gouernd hope Aboue all, our courage declares it felfe, not checkable by a weake man, or one that is not so valiant as our felues, prouided, that it be stil vnder our own charge. and can commaund in some such case where it may well come off with dutie discharged. Otherwise, it will happen to

Who lets his furious congue walke liberally, In checking fome of fordered quality:
And hath no reason but his owne bare braine,
Must looke himselic to finde the like againe.

vs, as Sophocles faid;

I have feene fome to misprize their own companions to mainly, that they offred much injurie to Armes, and to the whol companie, whereof themselues were but poore dependants, feeming more in outward shew, then inward substance. For, a Vertuous Souldier, or he that is a man indeed, should alwayes bee conforted with judgement, to supply the defects of fuch as are leffe then himfelfe, and fay; that although they bee not qualified in fome one kinde, yet in some other, they owe nothing to him. One may bee a worthy Seruitor on Horseback, another on foote, euerie way equall to him, and fo likewife in the other degrees of Man-

The cie is the most excellent part of the countenance, yea of the whol body: and yet notwithstanding, if a man were composed of cies only, he would rather be a monster, then any piece of perfection &

Guefel n a taour of France.

Practife and example are of good men, and to renames to end lesse posteri-

Courage canued by weak-

Sophoc in Trag.

Of a vertuous Souldi-our and man indeed, how

A very excel-

la, a perpetu-all mirrour to all posterity.

Mutius Scaue

Fuluius Naffus

an honoura-

ble Romaine

A Lake in

The lines of

ny care for his owne.

What kind of men are most to be contem

When Igno

rance is not

to be recko-

ned as a vice

Of taking of-

tence or dif-

pleafure.

ther a man be inferiour to vs in anie one vertue: but rather confider, that manie other Vertues are needfull for vs, which we bestow no paines to purchase. Let ys expresse contempt of vile and detestable men, that ferue as fours to whoring, Sodomy, Flatterie, and foftnesse, which (among vices) are not onely enemies to true and perfect valour, but to the generall fociety of men, and Authours of fcandall to all Nations . Ignorance is not to be counted as a Vice, when it is accompanied with simplicitie and naturall care for the auoyding of euill. But misprission of Vertue, and disdayne to compasse it, is not onely an odious brutality amongest true men : but (which is much more) a crime punishable by fyre and fword, and all other inflictions Cu- 20 ftomarily due, to the perfeuerance of foule and guilty offenders or euil doers.

excellencie. Let vs neuet note then, whe-

There is no necessity, that a valiaunt man should be apt to spleene or offence, through the riots of a Court Minion, of a Buffone, or of some young Sir, that hath not as yet learned how to be filent, or when to speake to purpose. A Gentleman of couragious perfection indeed, should bee of the humour of inuincible 30 Hercules, of whom Homer deliucreth testimony in the first Booke of Odiffaes.

Homer in Lib. 1 de Odyss.

The words of

He made no more account of frowards words, Then of the Flie, that filly harme affords. He differed (in all) from common kinde: And Fortunes frownes with him were as the wind

Hee ought likewife, in all his other actions, to correspond with these precepts.

The constant wife, is ever like himselfe, And neare strinkes courage at the losse of pelfe The picture The death of Children cannot make him dye, But, when help fails, Hope doth the place supply. of a constant wife man.

> He should not conceite, that he is to deale with fome finall enemy, but rather to crie out with couragious Brasidas, of whom wee haue alreadie spoken. O God, there is not anie thing of so weake power; but, if it durst defend it selfe: it could finde 50 meanes whereby co preserve it ovene life . Hee vsed these Words, in regarde of a Mouse that bit him by the Finger, as he thrust his hande into a Fraile of drye

Demetrius beeing at Thebes, aduisedly noted a man that was Lame of all his

Members; and of whom, a Court Musk-Minion, made a subject of scornesull Laughter, faying: This is not he, that hath (til this day) tardied our victorie, for Nature hath made him a Cripple. It is true (answered Demetrius) but how doost thou know whether revenge and disclaime have any other weapons then hands onely , confidering that mine have done no feruice at al for the surprixing of this Cittle?

That the mea neft or fillieft to be despised

CHAP. III.

Of those meanes which Princes ought to obferue for beeing well attended vvith Gentlemen and valiaunt Captaines of true perfection.



Rinces that feeke the Conservation of their subjects, and to leane peaceable estates and Lawes for the dominions vnto theyr Children, ought Reli-Children, ought Reli-

giously to ordaine (next to the establish- Infancy, ment of Iustice) that lawes should be allowd to perticuler families, wherby children may bee educated euen from theyr infancy, as destenied to the inclination of fuch Artes, as (by manifest experience) their nature is subjected vnto, by the secret power of the more or leffe great blessings of God, and as it pleaseth him to extend or thut vppe his graces in one more then to another. Yet notwithstanding, as accommodating the divers inclinations of men, to perfect that great my bounds or measure. hermony which maintaineth the world, and combineth humain focietie with fo ftrict a bond, that (as it often commeth to paffe)the very greatest have neede of the meanest mens help, & al sciences, yea,euen the filliest, do tend to one selfcsame end by diners precepts & contrary manners yet all for the feruice of nature. For otherwise it would fal out that common weales would convert into deferts: and men being apt but to one exercise only, de, how exhow excellent foeuer) should have no commerce togither, but only in words & vse of the Elements, which being wholly contrary(as it feemeth) in that common

The bleffings

concord, for fortifying and maintaining this great building; and the leffer also, which boafts his owne mirror and liuely figure: doth teach vs, that wee ought to haue a generall vertue of profiting : and yet neuertheles, that it is necessary therein to make vie of diffrent effects and proprieties. This was well knowne to Hefiodus, when he faid :

Hefiodus his translated ou

Chap.3.

The very darkest sullen night, Helpes Nature with as deere delight, As the brightest Sun-shine day, That the Gods most honor may. They both most necessary be. Healthfullalike meach degree. Let me then tell ye, that neuer (through-

is, in that Christians are compeld to re-

nounce their Religion, to imbrace that

of Mahomet, which (at this day) is the ve-

rie greatest, and most respected in all the

East. Take off this defect, and then there

is not any thing(I fay)in the worlde, nei-

like For you may behold in Constantino-

ple, a Caranani or numberleffe troope of

yong Boies, that are carefully tended by

Maifters of all estates in al fuch things as

they are most apt vnto, without any con-

straint of Nature, and for the space of a

yeare, they are permitted all kinds of ex-

ercifes 3 to the end, that becomming ind-

ges of themselues, each one may after-

ward purfue his owne inftinct, and best

inclination. Some are found to be fit for

warre, and they are as quickly recom-

mended to Maisters meete for such en-

struction: yet with so great an observati-

on, that time shall rather bee wanting,

then care of their employment. Such as

are noted to please themselues, in the

composing of thips or gallies, with paper

failes, and pack thred tacklings, or anie o-

ther stuffe, more assiduate to their yong

fancies, then other they are forthwith be

flowed in the Sea Arfenale, & inftructed

in al affaires fit for the fea. These docible

and debonaire spirits are differently em-

ployd : fome to Phisick, others to priest-

hood,& fombefide to judiciary fernices.

Finally fuch as are of fo grofe teper, that

ther did all former ages euer afford the 30

out all the ancient Monarchies) was the The instituti like invented, for the inflitutio of youth; as the Discipline vsed by the Great Sigby the great nior, towards the Amasoglants, and children of the tribes. The only enill (which is great, in regard of God, yet litle acording to his estate &maner of governing)

How young Boyes are

The purfuite of severall in

or making of Ships and Gallies.

Phifick, Reli-

no faire apprehension thineth in them, are imployed in Gardening, a midle fort in Architecture, Painting, & Horology. Painting, and Clocke mature, are instructed in Carpentry, Taylo- king. ry, and twifting of Cables, making of fails and many other mean offices: which are by their aptnesse (in them) very gracious in the great Signiors respect, & begeteth them both lands & perpetual pensions.

It is necessary in a Christian Occonomy, to make the like practife, as we plainly behold in the fabrick of man, If we look or of Beatte. vpon our bodies, or those of beafts, wee may perceiue many members to haue their distinct operations; without the intrusion of any others office, or that the enuy of inferiors discontent themselves at the dignity of their superiors, or any of them(either through discord or partiality) do refuse to lend one another their af- in Christian fistance. It behooueth I say, that in well Commonordered Commonweales, but especialy weales. among Christians, the same course shold bee kept and maintained one with another : and although our charges and estates are different, yet that wee should euermore continue vnited in our spirits; and with a fulf defire, to supply the de-fects of our affociates, and allo to assist them. For it is very requifit, that we shold be all like to trauailers, wandering by diuers wayes, yet all to atriue at one hauen in the end.

But aboue all, a King ought to constrain his Nobility, to cause young Gentlemen to be enstructed in good Letters, for Ca- The especiall pacity of administring the great and so-neraign Magistracies of his kingdom: for King. therby must needs ensue, that dignity wil be more venerable, iustice in better respect, and indgements more legittimate. We may fee (to our shame) that at this day, the greater part of Magistrates in all our Parliaments of France, received their The diffrace original from plaine Pleberans and Yeo- of France at men, who neuer could have honour fo this present liuely imprinted in their brows and fouls; day. as they that naturally are heires, to I know not what admirable and holy vertue, which (with no meane aduantage) appeareth rather in young spirits of No-bilitie, then in them of the thirde ranke, who alwayes haue but feeble Concepwho alwayes have but feeble Conceptions, and neuer elevate or rayle their thoughts average is because will active Eaglets. thoughts, except it bee to cuill, as either to fedition, or infamous and dishonest

Cccc3

Gardening.

Our Christian rule or dif-position, com-

Owles are no way to bee

The worth of Sunne bright Nobility. againe. VV hereto wee may ad alfo, that their courages are cowardly, standing amazed and confounded at the smallest accidents; neyther are they fo apt to outstand tumults and civill inconveniences, as Sun-bright Nobility, which even of it felfe is engirt with some celestiall flame, that causeth the vulgar people to apprehende more in their opposition against them, then in thousands of poore spirits that are of their owne quality, whose fathers at the best, were but Farmers, keepers of Granges and Dairies, which they helde at a certaine price, and annuall

lors in the Courtes of Kings.

Base gripple Slauery, is alwayes enemy to Gentil-lity.

of these daies.

made capable of warre, anaturall incli

What spirits fit for Warre, by pertaking in the degrees

Nobilitie then doth shame to it felfe, by

Of prefidents and Counceland Councelant of the Senate: confidence authority of the Senate: confidence at the confidence Prefidents and Counfellors in Courtes Soueraigne, seeme to be voluntarie Tu- 20 tors to the Prince, and as Noble Guards to his inviolable Greatnesse. By this meanes they would free them from the gripes of a huge heape of wretched Officers, and they should never be subjected to the mercenary judgment of their fubiects, who mistake themselues verie suddenly, and dispose both of the lines and goods of Gentlemen drawn into action: euen like to their Shop keeping fathers, in their esteeme of paltry wares. In this manner, the King should have a more found, fure, and strong election of men meete for warre, which now adayes hee cannot haue: because Gentlemen doo (indifferently) imploy all their fonnes to fuch trades, as is impossible in conueniin the Gentry ency for them, confidering the dissimilitudeof their natures, repugnancy of their humors, and contrariety of their spirits, which is more; or which is leffe apt vnto one office then to another. I doubt not, but at length thorough the great scarsity to be found of martiall minded men: all forts of Gentlemen will not know howe to appeare in the diversitie of warre hazards, whither they be civill or straunge. Yet I may verie well fay, that there are many carried thereto, contrarie to the first conception of their Genius, who (neuertheleffe) being apt to divers thinges: can accommodate their spirits therto, albeit it is much leffe natural to them then fomthing els. This is the reason why Ari-Stotle faide, that lukewarme water was cold, in regard of that which is boiling, and yet esteemd hot, in consideration of

that which is yoie. This is asmuch to fay, as that the moderat spirits of gentlemen, pertaking in the thirde or fourth degree of heat, may ferue for warre. If fo, much better then should they be apt and profyrable for the affayres of State and pollicy. Such alfo, as encline to the fourth or fift degree, do pertake of an influence more strong and pregnant for war, then anie other exercise else . This is to bee discerned in the Nature or case of our infancie, which telleth vs by our yongest carriage, what will be the inclination of our most solide age, and inciteth, nay, meerely exalteth vs (with a certaine violence) to acknowledge that which shall (one day) be either necessary or profitable at the least. According to the faying of Heliodus.

> All Infant Pleafures, Playes, and Ioyes, All youthfull Apith trickes and toyes, Our Cradle power, which breaks no bands Our first essayes in riper houres, Our weaknesse, strength, or what else ours, As in a painted Table stands: For following yeares therein to fee, What good or bad fuccesse will bee.

> > cate their

Princes and great Lordes ought to enstruct their Pages in such exercises, as do best answere vnto the condition of true Gentlemen, and should make no vse of their fernice, in fernile, base, or abiect Pages. occasions: as in these daies they do, without any care of government, or prescribing them fome honest forme of conduction. I protest, as I see the carriage of these ill taught times, I had much rather place my fon or Kinfman, with a Spittle Mailler, or Hospitall Keeper, then with a Prince: considering how badly Pages are entertained, and so slenderlie enstructed in anie vertuous actions, as wee cannot distinguish them from common Lackeyes, but by the outward appellation, beeing elfe employed for all vies; euen all one, with the verie foulest condition Varlet of the house. One while they are Gourmands, by fome Groome of the Chamber; another while beaten by a Scullion of the Kitchen: and beaten they bee at euerie moment, but not to any good purpose; and more for Ceremonie, then with any vertuous intent of their Correction. They are baselie reputed, and badly nourished, whereby they constraine them, yea, and of themfelues are meerely constrained to forget

Hefiodus, concerning our veares of infancy, expre fing thereby, what our fire-

ger age will be.

fhould edu-

Pages very hardly diftin

ommon La

aboue all o-

and decline, from their owne first faire and naturall disposition, to sharke and get by vnlawfull meanes, fuch things as are most needfull for them. Some teach them how to be diffolute at their Table, for a Trencher can be no fooner offered: but it is presently swept ouer with the Nailes and Fingers; yea, with the whole hand, and tongue too fometimes. Afterward, perhaps Nature beeing scarse halfe contented : poore Youthes, they trot after their Galloping Maisters, who rid a great deale of ground in a very short while, whe their Pages follow not fo fast with their feet, as with frequent and difordred passions. By which meanes, Youth neither do or can learne any thing among them, but forgetfulnesse of vertue and good manners, by the example of indifcretion & folly in their Maisters.

Thefe are tearmed out

The Page is

Chap.3.

care and re-fpe& that

haue of their

The maine chiefest in-

Of Gentle -

Moreouer, we may fee our streetes crowded with a heap of young Gentlemen, who have much adoe to maintain themselues : and yet they must have attending Pages, to trudge with Tokens or Loue-scripts, to Madame or Mistris Many better. And then come they poafting after, even through the chiefest parts of the Citty, not shaming to let 30 the world fee their graceleffe infolence. Now, the very great hurt of all, confifteth in this, that the whole multitude of Pages (as well those about Princes, as them that follow great Lords and leffer Gentlemen, beeing themselues ill bred, and worse disciplinde:) are compelled to bastardise their naturalisplendour, by putting on a new habite, of difordred, fhameleffe, and monftrous 40 behauiour; that (afterward) they looke rather like wilde and barbarous Albanians, then any true borne Gentlemen of blood. By which meanes, Commonweales are afflicted, Kinges lewdly ferued, Magistrates scarcely obeyed, the Lawes dispised, and confusion embra-

Befide, a Gentleman brought vp out of the Princes eye, beginneth to grow disdainefull of him, when hee once apprehendeth (and malliciously enough) that he is not in any obligation to him: he waxeth proud, and fuch a man foone forgetteth al proportion and measure. The very highest degree of such a mans feruice, is to domineere and rule, to

mount into the Seat of his Maitter, Lord, or Prince: for, what focuer hee feethbeneath, or on either fide, is nothing to him, and the World (all this while)honoureth none more, then such

acknowledge, that Generofitie is more cerning Gefamiliar with good, then vicious men, nerofity. and, that valour is more domestick and naturall to a man that is temperate. peaceable, and milde, then the proud and ambitious, who is of the condition of a weake stomacke, which coulteth more meat, then it can resolue and digeft. Princes ought to be respective, An especiall of fuch arich and fanctified enftructi- dury imposed on Princes. on, and not admit fuch overture to the desseignes of Gentlemen; ouer greedie and couctous, in afpiring daily to fome nouell degree, yet no one of them fee-ing the way, by the eye of his owne power, or Inflice of his merit. Thus all runs wrong, for God bleffeth no Mans What endea actions, but his that doth well, & with-fed of God. draweth his eye from wicked inclinations : who wil have no other King then the State, or any Law, but fuch as may bring him in some benefit . Vertue is Vertue the the Primum mobile of courage, that fee- onely first meth (by his owne power) to attract all Courage. things to it felfe, that is required in the perfection of valour: which is onely borne to be enstructed, and enstructed to ferue, and (by feruice) to yeild it felfe not onely beneficiall, but necessarie

Princes in these daies, are faultie of The ouertoo little care, that Nobility should be much negled more forward in the exercise of vertue : of Princes in these dayes and themselves also doe lend most imployment, to fuch as are more commeded to them, then fit for vic. Vertue giueth no more hire to the intercessions of a Courtier, made honorable and rich altogether; then to one of her owne breeding and bringing vp. Hence shold arise all the Officers of a Crowne, and hence are aborted all the Creatures of a King, that leaneth wholly to paffion,& nothing to vertue. He ought then to hold the lift in his owne hand, to fore-fee each man in his profession and degree, and hence he will derive : that his hand, for the Financiers or Cherker-men, that bee election of without fraud, his Councellours free his followers from partialitie, and his Gouernours

Howbeit, the Paganes did euermore The Pagans

voyde of faction. All their ayme and scope, will be to instifie by their effects, the good choyfe and lawfull election, which the Prince hath made of fuch persons. And although they should come fomewhat short of merit, yet would they stretch their endeuour; to descrue the voyces of the honestest Men, and the grace of their fecond

When a Man of Honor is aduanced,

the people doe looke on it with a plea-

fing eye, and discerne (therein) the wis-

dome of their Prince : who instantly is

exalted to admiration; from admirati-

on, to intire love of his Subjects; and

from thence to the bleffing of GOD, who plantibly entertaineth the fuffra-

ges of the Common-weals suppliants,

for the health and preferuation of their

Prince. Contrariwise, all is in disorder,

when bad men hold the best places of

credit: then the people mutiny; the

Princes judgement is scandalized; com-

mon affection cooleth; the cursie of

God embraceth, and bringeth the latest

cauter that cleaueth to this euill. Aboue

all, I wish that he, of whose seruice a

Prince shall make vse, should have the

which: all Wisedome will easily bee

converted into craft; valour into vio-

lence : Iustice into Crueltie ; Pollicy in-

to Monopolies; and without which (I

fay) all those things which heaven hath

best bestowed on vs for the best, will on-

ly be Instruments of the worst. With-

out this, our very affections, are as fo

many violent torments, and cruell Hels

reason is nothing else, but meere trum-

pery and deceipt. O what inflictions

could I wish to some Machianelists, who

maintaine, that such as bee bound to

Conscience, reason, and Lawes, are no

meete Seruants to attend on Princes:

but that flattery is to be preferd, both a-

No Mancan ferne two Maisters. Com-

maunding vs also else-where; To feare

God, and honor the King : it is then a mat-

ter very enident, that the most part of

all other Servants, doe yeilde nothing

else but eye-service onely. And this is

the reason, that Kinges are cuill served

If it be so, that those blessed Quires

bone Lawes and Nature.

Honor aduas ced, is the peoples best

What enfueth by the ad bad and vn-

God is to be preferre 1 be-fore all things elie whatfo-

The opinion of fome wicked Matchia

Inftructions giuen out of Gods Booke uice of Kings

farre off, and betrayed infecret. They alfo do feruice to God; they euermore walke after one manner. They ferue 10 and Wages: being affured of recom-

The Prince that defireth to accomplish all these things, both for the quiet of his owne Conscience, and happy administration of his Estate : must be sure to haue no Flatterers about him, vnprofitable persons, Loue-Brokers, voluptuous and Epicurian Courtiers, that make the publike Pursse, serue for the expences of their perticular Luxurie, gurmandize and pomp, while (in the mean feare of God before his eyes, without 30 time) the vertuous, and fuch as have deferued much better of the State:remaine far enough off, flenderly known, without Grace, and without Honour, (I meane no other, then that of their owne proper merit) who neuerthelesse are (oftentimes) inestimable, and more worthy of administration; then of the blind and briske (let mee not fay faintboth to the Soule and Body, and our 40 hearted) fauours, which the Princes of vnworthy of eyther Sexe, their depraued Natures are fo highly subjected to infamous Vices, which funder them fró those common proprieties, that do let vs know a Man, to be truely a Man, and a Woman, truely a Woman. I am of Gods Booke, do beare witneffe, that 50 perswaded, that it was of them, which that Great Man fpake, on the Grecian

You Swinish men, that have no other eare, But onely for such food, as you prepare To gorge your foule polluted trunkes withall: Meere Swine you are, and such your actions all.

Theater, faying:

that being Servants to their King, will to content their Conscience, and not they eye of their Maister. They propose God before their eyes, as both the Beholder of their actions, and searcher of their harts. They waite for his grace pence and reward on his part, when they doe their dutie, although it bee to unthankfull Maifters . This is the Seed from whence Kinges should gather all Kings thebel hope, of being maintained, strengthe- encrease. ned, and wel ferued. From hence ought they alwaies to chuse their Councellors of State, and al the, to whom they will communicate their power and authori-

ued with goo men indetd thefe times vie towardes fome young Thefe are Gallants, that finell more of Cinet, Carpet Squi then the Cannons Powder, and much ers, not more of the Woman, then Man: yet Knights fixfor

> A Mirrour fo many, that dare not be

Like them you run, such is your leaden pace; Nor Soule, nor reason shineth in your face. Stabled you are within the Courts of Kings, Not he for Councell, Armour, or fuch things As to your Natures are contrary quite. Ea'fly you can faire Ornaments difgrace, Therefore you fit not fuch a royall place: Kings loofe themiciues, that doe in you delight.

But why do I feeke to enstruct Gen-

as possible that they may) not to be-

hold any lawfull action : because their

Soulcs should bring no judgement a-

gainst themselves for the excesses which

they have committed? It is enough for

them, to make some essay of that which

is written in Saint John, to wit. That if

all Testimonies of Scripture, and lawfull

imitations doe faile vs yet not withstanding

our Conscience, and Nature it selfe doth

Sufficiently shew, what is our dutie. Loo-

king thorowall Windowes of Equity,

Iustice, and Reason; Pagane Authours

tooke knowledge, yea, and did fet down

in Writing: that there were Furies,

who inflicted reuenge on the iniuries,

as also on the sinnes of Men, which is

nothing elfe, but the torments of vile

phet Efay speaketh; it is the Worme

(I fay) that neuer dyeth, but byteth and

teareth without intermission. These are

the Tapers and Torches, which terrifie

and burne our harts: This is that which

is called, the remembrance of our wic-

ked and abhominable lives . Epicurus

himfelfe, being an enemy to the Deitie,

could yet confesse, that the very great

paine of fuch as finned, was, that they

had finned: for the pnnishment of wic-

kednesse, is wickednesse it selfe. The

Man that is attainted with this great

scruple in his Soule, is of no worth,

neither can be valiant, or come any

thing neere to that happy quality. For

he that is a perfect knight indeed, ought not onely to win the Conquest of his

Enemies : but must also triumphe ouer

must be cleane, and exempt from all

vnlawfull defires, or abfurde and bafe

villainies. That which was prefented

to the Emperour Theodofius, is well

worthy to be followed by him, in whom

I would decypher perfect valiancie, as

the Paffions of his owne Soule, which 50

This is the worme whereof the Pro-

and wicked Consciences.

Greatmen will not willingly looke vpon ferious and weighty confiderati-

Chap. 3.

The Window of Equity. Iu-flice, and Rea ledged by the

> The confessi on of Epicurus concerning

The Anator my of a true

thus.

Though in rich India, or a further Land, Thou are adorde, and dott o're men commaund, Although the Medes and Arabes floupe to thee : Yet, if not just, valiant thou canst norbe. Thou are no Man, if terror (way thy Soule, Nor can be valiant, if weake thoughts controlle Such follies leave thee to thy felfe alone, In torment, fadnesse, and despaining mono But when thou dost o're-maister fond desires: Then thy faire Soule to her true pitch afpires And makes thee meet for Kingdomes, or all Nations; Hauing once conquerd thine owne private passions. tlemen, feeing they striue (as much 10 ,, Vertue doth neuer fight, but for successe.

If then base thoughts the Soule of Man possesse. And be not trod downe, at their first arise: In fuffering them, the greatest peril lies. Then boldly check thy inward dull conceasts, Shun those deepe blames that on negle& awaites, Let not the Lawes reprodue thy care and heed ? So shalt thou be a Man, in name and deed.

> This other of Clandian, is very little different.

If thaction, which is tearmed valiance, , Be not in vertue: then tis impudence.

Knights of greatest courtesie, Captainesmost remarkable, and Kinges of highest fame, did euermore accompany their Armes, and strengthen them by a gentle and liberall knowledge in Vertue: whereby they could best decipher fuch about them, as were most or least apt for Warre feruices, making diftinction of their valour, according to the circumftances and ordinary manner of Souldiours; were it in apparrelling themseluss for fight, or in firming the breaches happening in their Field, or in exercising and applying themselues to fome other feruice, convenable to the time, place, and commaundement giuen them. By this meanes, Men of merit addressed themselves vnto the Prince, who made profession to be carefull and respective, of every perticular wife and hardy mans courage, and vpon good note thereof : to render double recompence, that is to fay, by benefits, and by fust commendations. For hee must neuer hope to see vertuous Men flourith, or their actions in true apparance: if they be not recompenced, and

someway satisfied. The Prince that defireth to finde valiancy in his men of Warre, ought to imitate the discipline of Alexander Senerus, the Komaine Emperor: who would have his Souldiours to be well armed, wel enfirected, and continually to have fome Mony in their Purses, but (by no meanes) of that humour, as Iphicrates

The prefent, giuen to the Emperor The odofius.

to make

ground to builde all ac-

The cye of be fixed vpon

The Warrediscipline of Alexander Se ucrus, Empe-

Iphicrates of contrary mind to Alex

lowers to be, to wit ; auaritious, amourous, and full of voluptuousnesse. For he was wont to fay, that as they were perfecuted by those three violent paffions : cuen fo would they proftitute thefelues, and forfake all perill, to fatisfie their own deffeignes, and the free com-

Iulius Calar his Souldier

The faying of

The Great Turkes ordering of his Souldiours now adayes.

Tartarians Con pay with the

The only encouragement of Souldiours ed and respec

the Captaine wished his Warre-folpaffing of their base desires.

Truc it is, that Cafar wished his Souldiours to have faire and rich Armes, because they might have the more occasion to beknowne, for auoyding the fhame of flight; & not to fight so much for the worth of their Armes, as for their lines. But he was deceined, confidering as Thuesdides faith . The valiant Man is alwaies himselfe, and his, vertue appeareth much more, when he is disaduantaged and afflicted : then when he strengthneth himselfe with some apparance, if it be

not necessary.

The Great Turke, who continueth euen at this day) the Military Arte of the Romaines, and caufeth it to be much more observed, then the Spaniards doe, (who are in very deede, but Apes of the Turkes conduct) hath so admirable an observation: that a troupe of an hundred thousand men, do resemble rather a peaceable Congregation of people, affembled together to heare a Sermon; then an Army to fight against the World. The Great Turke (1 fay) is euermore accompanied with an incredible multitude of valorous men, which he winneth out of Tartaria, and areat his Wages and endleffe pay ; like as the Switzers are in France. He helpeth himfelfe also with the Souldiours of Mysia; of Europe : of the Albanians, sometimes called Epirotes; of the Theffalians, now called Fullaires; and of the Arabes, that tearme themselves Alarbes. All these glorious Nations (for their Armes) are so cherished by the Othomans, that there is no day ouer-passeth them : but they doereceiue fome honourable and notable reward and respect, from the Generals of the Turkish Armies, who imploy them at euery moment, in verie great and perilous enterprifes, wherein (neuerthelesse) all these Men do carrie themselues, with such prudence and iudgement, as is not to be a little wondred at.

New and fresh Armes is prouided

them, vpon the quickest and suddainest returne, and albeit their successe hath not answered to the premeditated deffeigne: yet, in the very least performance of well doing, they are not left though fuevnacknowledged, but vled, as if the at- ceffe oftentempt had beene happily ended. Hence enfued those great Stratagems at Modon, Chaly, Siget, Schaffarin in the Georgie, and at Traueils. In all which places, they furmounted the valour and fortune of the Romaines, the hardinesse of the Parthians, and the cunning and industry of the Christians , whose troups resembled Caravans of Goates, that make motion with their mouths on all thinges indifferently, how profitable or hurtfull foeuer they be.

The Persians, who seeme to be more civillized then the Turkes, and yet (notwithstanding) are lesse provident and with the capable of great matters, doe that vp the education of their Children of good Birth, in certain of their Children places of the Field-Countrey, which dren. they call Spitaf Kier Belti, that is to fay; The entrance into the Signeury of vertue , where they have Maisters to enstruct them, according to their inclinations: but at the charges of their Parents, vntill fuch time as it may be known, whether the Youths wil afterward be bene. ficiall to the Sophy, or no. For thenceforward, they are taken and maintained at his expences, to the number of two thousand, and are then called, Spiers Kiram Sophi, that is to fay ; Children of the sophy,

Signior Sophy.

These people, whom we tearme barbarous, and their Kings, called Tyrants by vs; I feare shall find (at the latter day) more grace in the grace of the Soueraigne ludge: then the Princes and people of Europe, who make no account, or verie little (at the most) of the Youth that is under their Empire, or the order and discipline Occonominall of the State, which is much lesse observed with them, I will not I fay then among Christendom the common people of Afia; but euen hathlesse care among the Toupinanbous & Magistrats, who doe enstruct their Children in the Historie of their Ancestours, the Father telling to his Sonne; what fights they have had against their Neighbors; what victories were obtained; and the routes which they endured. All thefe thinges are delivered with fatherly exhortations.

Good will

The writing and confession hortations, to continue them in well doing, for publike benefit, and to flew themselves icalous imitaters of their fore-goers, who (they tell them) are in Heauen, full of Glory and Triumphe: because they continually maintained the cause of their Countrey, and defended their poore Cottages, from the inualions of their ordinarie Ene-

The care of the Parthians for their yong Nobility in

Chap.3.

Enstructions

of Pagane Fa-

Sánnics.

Comparison of the Parthi-

The cone con ambition of the Othernans

heir Domi-

yeilding it to the transport of the Ma-

on of the Pa-

In former times, the Parihians had

fuch diligent care, for husbanding the Spirits of their young Nobility, that the more part of their Lawes discourfed on nothing elfe. By which meanes they were invincible, and evermore equall to the Romaine Empire, yet there was more Soueraignety, and leffe Barbarifme, in the commaundes of the Arfacides, their Kinges : then in the Empire of the Cafars, who were (almost all of them) fo abhominable, as all the Vices of the World, did beget their most monstrous qualities, from the imperfections of those Tyrants of Eu-

homeranes, who keepe it (at this day) more stronglie, then we doe the rest. And, if we observe no better discipline, then that which now wee doe: it is to bee feared, that before many yeares passe ouer our heades, the Rheine will fcarcely ferue for Frontiers to the Othomans Monarchie, who extend the Threds of their ambitious conetoufnesse, not onely voon Germanie, which can hardlie defend it felfe ; but on the rest of Christendomes happinesse; yea, ouer all that is further off from the East, then the East is from their selicitie, and the West from ours. Because it is impossible, yea, almost vninst, that the hand of God should bee succourable to fuch, as observe no Equity; but contemne his Lawes, despile Soueraigne Magistracy, making themselues in all, and by al, verely vnworthy of his dinine bleffings, which must be fought for with humble and lowly harts . The Paganes themselves do confesse.

The Goddes, by prayers are fatisfied, When fome out Soules are applied, To fatisfie their Deities: Ouer and belide all, the onely meanes to haue men valiant, is, to make no ac-

count of Cowards, and fuch as are but fices and dignities of War ! though (in fuch as are these daies) the quite contrary is practifed: for Regiments are given to fimple Clearks, that furrender them againe the

very fame day; Treasurers places are bestowed on impudent persons, and the Princes lodging is kepe by fuch, as fearfely are any found well willers. All degrees are valued by Mony, buying & felling are openly allowed, fo that there is no recompense or refpect made of All degrees true valor; onely hee that hath where- and Offices withall, may bee a Gouernour in fome for mony by Finallie, they loft Europe at length,

place, which he may likewife fel again, to the most giver. In all the Empire of the Turk, which is more (by halfe) then p the Romans had: there are but 216. Forts or Holds, which also are seated on the Frontiers, as well of the Sea, as of the firme Land. At every three yeares end. the Gouernors are changed, or receive The Torker new power to bee longer continued. Foreieres, and Gouer-nours of the then the Soldiers of the old bands, who being ouer-spent in war, or laden with wounds, or crazed by age : are to be receiued into the Grand Signiors fortreffes, where an honorable penfion is bestowed on them, which they tearme Timar. Hereby enfueth, that all men are made All men are vie of in this bright Monarchy, for fuch in the 7 wiles as are aged people, gouty, or lame, do dominions, keep the walles, while the younger doc may be seene fortifie the Prince and his Lieutenants in any nifein the Fielde, hoping (one day) to haue rable condition, for the entertainment in those Fortes. By this discouraging means. Souldiers are neuer in miferable of others. quality in the great Turks jurisdictions, which maketh them the more hardy & valiant:knowing, that (in their retreat from feruice) they fhall neuer want, by any difcommodity(whatfoeuer) happe-

ning to them. For beside those Fortresses on the Fine Mosquaes Confines of Asia, and Europe, there are in Natolia, for fine Molquaes in Notalia, forme whereof old, that none were builded by the Mahometane Empe- may be feene rors, and others by their Balhaes, and the in pouerty. least reuenties belonging to any one of them, is forty thousand Ducats of any nuall Rents. There is a publike Schoole, where the poore are enftructed, and befide, there is a verie goodly House, well fitted with most exquisite Bathes.

prating companions, nor to admit them The onely (in any manner what foener) to any Of Imeanes to

where, all that are billeted by the Aga, Colonell of the Infantery; are nourifined, maintained, and well tended, being fickly, weake, or aged, and althings are so well ordered, as no one can bee wearie, or dillike of their entertainement, or judge it other then it ought to

The bestowfor the wars.

All honourable charges of men for the Warres, are imparted to such, as haue best reputation among the Souldiours. If at any time fome offence be committed, vnworthy of the former opinion conceiued of mans valour, he is difmiffed from his authority : yet without any infamous note, or desperate hope of being againe reintegrated, by course of time, which moderateth all thinges, and changeth the councels and humours of Princes, who appeare (by an indifferent chastisement) to haue fatisfiedboth the Law and their owne lenity, in one selfe-same subiect. Thence came it, that Bashae-Abra,

having difordred himfelfe in the Geor-

gie, was repealed and difgraced, and Si-

nan-Balbae placed in his stead, who fuc-

ceeding in the room, of a Man ill hand-

led for his faults: flocd bound (by all

felfe to well, that the Great Signior

could receive no mislike in his carriage,

for hee regained what his Predecessour

had loft, beating and chafing the Persi-

ans with fo large an voury of ve geance;

that his Military services performed in the vpper Asia, were little indebted

to the of Alexander the Great although

he was of no fuch temper. Long time

and victory, in the Cittie of Constanti-

nople: he was flaine by a Foole, that

begd an Almes of him, and which Sinan

made himselfe ready also to gine him.

Wherein may bee obserued, that this

great and fortunate Mirrour dyed, in

doing the Office of a Christian, and not

of a Turke, that is to fay; in giving an

Almes, and rendring Juffice to the Por-

mitted to his charge againe; and then

he redeemed the injuries formerly re-

ceined, by fuch worthy actions of fer-

uice, as furnined the oblinion of his first

ments, if these people (which we call

I referre now to your owne indge-

after, returning home with triumphe 40

these considerations) to behave him- 130

Abra-Bafhae, repealed fro aduanced

Sinan-Bafhae coming with triumph and victory to Conflantinople was flaine by

Sinan-Bafiac being dead, Abra-Bafhae was readuar

defects.

barbarous) may not justly (and in good earnest) make vs blush, considering that Barbarous the greater part of them, which hold infly make great charges among vs in thefe daies: vs Christians doe declare themf lues veterly vnwor- to blush at our behauithy of them, and because there is no our. punishment for them, men are as little regarded, as a Varlet of the Chamber. Hence ensueth it, that the Prince is miferable, and confusion is so great among his Followers, that were it not for the huge throng and multitude of Noblemen, which ardently accost and company him, to couer this imperfection: ruines of the within fhort while we should be buried State. in the State ruines, which in the end must needes fall out, if no better order be prescribed for Souldiours, and some endenour vsed, for maintaining daily a sufficient number, that may ferue as a bound or banke, against the tempestu ous billowes of Strangers, who doubtleffe will triumph ouer vs continuallie, untill we have prouided for this important necessity, wherof (notwithstanding) no account at all is made.

Though it bee most true, that the Romaine Empire began to loofe it | pire began to felfe, from the day when Millitary pollicy was violated, for afterward, they that durst not so much as dreame of Italie: made no doubt at all to affault it. yea, and to force it, to the shame and confusion of them, that contemned the order religiously observed by their Predecessours. The infamous corruption in State Councellours of Princes, was Councellors the only cause thereof : yet some others of Estate to are perswaded, that the vniuerfall generous ruine, enfued perticularly to them; when they fold their Country to their enemies, as Aneas and Antenor did, of whom (I think) they are descended. For all was fet to fale for Money, both the offices of Magistrats, and seats of Iudges.

And even fo is it in these daies, ho- and fold, e nours of Warre cannot be had, without fuch manner of commerce, fo that the Romains (at length) publike commoditity wil be ta. After his death, the other was ad- 50 brought into a monstrous Caos, the first Sepulcher of the Elements. Armes will be made subject to Mony, euen as they were among the Romaines, whose pratorian troupes fold the Empire for good ready Mony, as bringing it to the common Out-cry, fairest offerer, and

Danger of

thrust better or all tauour and respect.

Rad men

Romain Em-

Warre ho-

The vertues other Prin es, ought to ours in thele

Chap. 3. Of Wisedome, Prudence, & Policy.

The faying

latest Purchaser. So that, it may be faid of France, as a Prince of Affrica was wont to do of Rome : Oh goodly City to be fold, if any man had Mony enough to buy it. And very certaine it is, that if the King of Spain had never fo little intelligence in this Kingdome, as hee hath had too much : he fhould not neede to defire it. He can forme Creatures enow heere. to be buyers for him, and (it may bee) 10 that have long fince bought the Pillers of the State, with Monies meete for fo glorious an exploit. We are all carried thither, the Market beginneth to open, the Traffiques hope is not a little, neyther is there any danger in the defleign, for impunity raigneth generally. The wicked doe thrult good men out of all fauour, accounting them unprofitable Members, and defertfull of no Name, among fuch a number of strange Cabalists, who thinke France to be no better then a Mart or Staple : where gaine is preferred before Honor; Mony before Merit; an Enemy before a Friend; a

Servant before the Son of the Family;

and a Seruant before a Domefticke

Behold what may be faid, on the be-

halfe of perfect valour, and the folid or 30

The Authors Conclusion the Nobilitie of France.

necessary meanes, for the gaining of worthy men: to make Kinges triumph, perpetuate their estates, and leave eternity to their Monarchies. My hearty with and defire is, that some benefit may ensue by my poore trauaile (as infallibly will) to our French Nobility, if this may be communicated (how little focuer) to the eyes of their fouls, which having heretofore been elevated to the 40 honest search of vertue, and especiallie that which shold be most familiar with them: will render them absolute in the perfection of this discourse, whereof I couet more to be the God-Father, then the true Father indeed. Because all the wonders of honor, grace, and valiancy therein alleaged, have beene felected from the Oracles and Miracles of the onely renowned Princes in the World. of whom I have figured the very fairest conditions. To the end that ours of this Age, may commendably enuy fuch gloty, and go as far beyond theirs, as they did all other whatfocuer.

CHAP, IIII.

Of Wifedome, Prudence, and Pollicy, and what difference is betweene them. Alfo, a consideration of the difficulties & dangers, incident to matters of State.

Ecaufe our prefent inten-ded difcourte, may fland B cleare from obloquy and detection is we wil first de-clare what Wifedome is,

and wherein it confifteth. For Pollicie being but (as it were) a branch thereof; it shall therefore be convenient, first to consider the nature of the root or Tree, that thereby we may know the property of the braunch. And to this end, it is to be considered, first whence wisedom is, and afterwards, what it is whereby it will appeare, that true wifedome, and (confequently)true Pollicy, can no way itand with wickednesse.

For the first, it is euident, by the doctrine as wel of the best Philosophers as of our holy Scriptures; that witedom is the especiall guift of God, which Plate taught, not onely concerning absolute wiledom (confishing in the speculation and knowledge of dinine things) but alfo of civill or politicall Wifedome and Prudence: which he faith. Is neither giuen to man by nature, nor taught by Philolophy, nor got by industry or experience. And therefore in his Book of Politicall Lawes the craueth it of Almighty God as his especiall guift, acknowledging: That no humain wit can (without his perticuler infbiration and affist ance) or daine fufficient lawes for the government of a Com-

where approued. This also our Scriptures doe aboundantly teach, deriving al wifedom from Almighty God, as from the Fountaine thereof, faying. Omnis fapientia à Domino Decest, All Wifedome commerb of the Lord. Et à Deo profectaest (apientia, &c. VVI (edome came from GOD, and it shall abound in the mouth of the faithful man and the gouernor or Lord of all will give it shee. And againe, Fons fapientia verbum Dei in excelsis. The Fountaine of wifedome

Dddd

mon-wealth, as partly hath beene elfe-

especiall gift

Plato in Lib. de Legib. et in Minoc. Wifedome not given by taught by Philosophy, nor got by in

Ecclef. t. 1. 6 Authour and guer of wifedome, accoraing to the Scriptures. Ecclef. 15.3.

Ecclef.19,20

True wifedome confifleth in the featre of God, and the execution of his

is the word of God on high. That is to fay, the Son of God, who is therefore called Sapientia Patris, The Wifedome of God the Father. For this cause S. James aduifeth vs. Si quis vestrum (faith he) indiget fapientia, postulet à Deo, & dabitur et . If any of you lacke wifedom, let him aske it of God, and it hallbe given him. And Salomon craued it of Almighty God, and obtained it. And Icfus the Son of Sirach land of I himselfe. Cum adhuc iunior sum, Ge. When I was yet your or ener I went abroad, I defired wifedome openly in my prayer. And I profited by her, therefore will I afcribe the glory unto him that gineth me wifedome.

Seeing then true wisedom is (according to the opinion both of Philotophers and Divines) and especiall gitt of Almighey God : it must needes to low, that it have no communication with 2 fin and wickednesse, or with any thing offenfine to God. And therefore Plato (with all his followers) doe teach, that for as much as true wifedom is nothing elfe, but (as it were) The light of the chiefe and true good (that is to fay, of Almighty God) reflected upon the foules of Men: no Soule defiled with finne, is any whit more capable of this light of rue Wifedome, then the ayre (beeing ouer-cast 20 with Clouds) is capable of the Sunne. And this Doctrine of Plate agreeth notably with our holy Scriptures, which teach, that In maleuolam animam, &c. Wifedome wil not enter into a wicked foule, nor dwell in the body that is (ubiect to fin. And therefore it is faid, That God giveth wifedome to luch as feare him.

This will be more cuident, by the confideration of what Wifedome is, and wherein it principally confifteth. Therefore first to speak of the Doctrin of our holy Scriptures, and after, of the opinion of Philosophers: 10b having asked. Where is Wiledome found, and where is the place of understanding ? Answereth himfelfe, faying; Ecce timor Domini. it fa est sapientia, de recedere à malo intelligentia. Behold, the feare of God is wifedom it fe fe, und to for (ake emil is under standing. Thus 5 faith lob, which the Preacher confirmeth, faying. Omnis fapientia timor Det, et in omni sapientia dispositio legis. The fear of God is all Wifedome, and the performing of the Law is perfect wiledome . That is to fay (as we read in the Greeke Text) Fa-Hio et operatio legis. The doing & working

of the Law, fignifying : That all wifedom confisteth in the feare of God; and in the execution of his Law, which is as much to faie, as in the keeping of his Commaundements, whereof three reafons may well be given.

The first, because hee which feareth God. & fulfilleth his commandements. hath the ground and principall part of wifedome, for in all his actions he principally respecteth two things: the one, the glory of God (for which, Man and all other creatures were chiefely ordained) and the other, the eternall good of his owne foule, which most importeth him. For, as our Sauior faith: What shall is profit a Man, though he should winne the whole world, if he loofe his own foule. Therfore the Preacher faith well, Sapiens est anima (ua (apiens : He which is wife is wife for his Soule. The second reason is, for that he which feareth God, and keepeth his commandements, doth therin work wifely, not onely for his eternall good, but also for his temporall and worldlie good: Seeing thereby hee conferneth himselfe, in the protection and fauor of him, who is the Authour and Giner as well of the one as other, and hath an efpecial care of fuch as fear and ferue him. For, as the Pfalmist faith, Oculi Domini Super metuentes eum ; The eyes of the Lord are upon them that feare him. Et aures eins in precessorum, And his eares are open to their prayers. Such also is his lone towards them, and the regard he hath of them, that, as our Sautour faith; Hee numbreth the very haires of their heads. Et custodit (faith the Pfalmift) omnia offaeorum : He keepeth all their bones, to the end, that there hall not any one of them perifb.

Therefore, as no manis, or can bee counted wife or happy, who (by contempt of Almighty God, and breach of his Commaundements) exposeth him. No man is felfe to his indignation, whereby both fing himfelfe he and his may veterly perish fo he like- to Gods in wife, that by the feare of God, and obfernation of his law, obtained his continuall fauour and protection, is not only truly wife, but also truly happy. Which zrisiotle himfelfe acknowledged, who teaching, that true wifedome and felici- Arill. in lib. Ety, doe chiefely confift, in the contem- the to Cap.T. plation of God and heavenly things: affirmeth the wifest man to be the happiest of al other, because he is most grateChap.3. Of Wisedome, Prudence, & Pollicy.

The law of God, is the rule of all pro

The differed betwixt wife dome and Prudence.

The principal

dome, to re-fpect in all things the

glory of God,

nall good,

Mat. 16, 16.

Wifd. 37,18,

He which tru

God, is wife

rall good, and

Pfalme 33,17.

The object of

The difinition t wifedome Cirero in Lib.z. de Offic. August.in lib. 14.de Trinit. Cip. 1. The Office of rudence. Bajıl in princip. Prouer.

Arifl. Moral, Nicom, Lib. 7. Cap. 5.5 Ethic Lib. 6. Tho. Aquin. 22 Cicero de nat. Dear, Lib. 3. August.Lib.63. The definition of Pru-

Math. 10,30. Pfalm: 34, 19

Ide Ibid,cap.8.

The end of euery action truely pru-dent, must needs bee

Arift, in Lib. 6.

Eshic. Cap. 4.

The meanes of cuery pru-dent action.

Arift. in Ethic.

full to God, best beloued of him, and protected by him continually.

The third reason, why the sear of God, & the keeping of his commandements, is true wisedome, is : because the Law of God is the true rule, whereby al prudent actions are to bee measured, for it comprehendeth in it selfe, and teacheth all true vertue and goodnesse, without the which, there can be no true Prudence, as shall appeare by the circumstances due and requisite thereto, according to the Doctrine of Philosophers. Wherein is to bee noted, that though Wisedome and Prudence (in common (peech) are commonly confounded: yet there is betwixt them this difference, that Wisedome hath for her object, not only humaine, but also Divine things. And therefore is defined, both by Pnilosophers and Dinines, to be Scientia diuinarum humanarumqua rerum, et corumquaillarum rerum funt caufa. The knowledge of things druine and humaine, and of their other causes. W hereas the office of Prudence, is duely to confider, and wel to direct humaine affaires, and is called by Thomas Aquinas, Sapientia in humanis rebus Wisedome in humaine things : consifling, as Cicero and S. Augustine teach, in the knowledge of Things good, bad, or indifferent, and is defined, Rerum expetendarum, fugiendarumque scientia, The knowledge of things to be defired or fled. OI as S.Basile faith, Eorum qua agenda et non agenda funt cognitio; The knowledge of those things which are to be done, or not to be done : whereto three circumstances are principally required.

The first is, that the end of enery action bee truely good, which Aristotle teacheth, to be the first & principal circumstance requisite to Prudence. And he affirmeth, that who focuer applieth his wit to worke for an euill end:although he have never fo good incceffe therein, yet he cannot bee called truclie wife or prudent, but crafty and fubtile.

The fecond circumstance is, not onlie that the end of every action bee good; 50 but alfo, that the meanes to attaine to that end be correspondent therto, that is to fay, that they be all good and inft, yea.wel and justly done. To which pur. pose, Aristotle prescriberh circumstances, of due time, place, and manner, to be confidered in enery Prudent action.

Teaching withall, that whofocuer tay-Vertue and leth in any one of the circumstances is Prudence fo not vertuous, nor (by confequent) prudent, because Vertue & Prudence are so they cannot ioyned, that the one cannot possibly be without the other. Macrobius affigning

counted circumfrection for one, which

(he faith) confitteth in confideration of

the circumstances of every action, that

the fame be most lawful good, and just.

loeuer followeth the rule of Prudence truly;

he shal never swerve from vertue nor fal in-

to vice. The third circumstance to bee

confidered in every prudent action, is,

that whereas there are certaine degrees

good, the scope & end of al his actions. 2. 1.q. 27.47.1.

Now then, feeing thefe three circum-

stances are requisite to true Prudence,

to wit; to chuse a good end; to practise

good & vertuous means; and to efteem

enery good thing in the degree that it

vertue, vfing al iust & vertuous means,

and effeeming every thing according

to the true worth thereof. For, he pre-

ferreth the Soule before the body ; eter-

nall things before temporall; the goods

of the body, before the goods of For-

tune; and the goods of the mind before

them both. Finally, he referreth and di-

recteth all his actions, and the whole

course of his life, to the service and glo-

ry of God, whom both divines and Phi-

Dddd2

losophers

Macrob in fom-(out of Plate) fix parts of Prudence ; ac- 100 Scip. Lib. 1.

Whereupon Saint Bafile faith. Quifquis Bafil in prinprudentiam recte feit atus fuerit &c. Who- cip. Proucrb.

of goodnes in things, some being good, others better, and one the best of all; (wherto all other things are to be referred, which is called by the Philosophers Summu bonu, The chiefe good; And alfo, ciecro de fini-Finis bonorum, The end of al good things) it but. Lib. 1.2.3. is (Ifay) especially required in Prudence: 4.65. Et to make a true estimate of the worth of Prudece preenery thing, & not only to reich things ferreth the absolutely euil, or of euils, to chuse the greater good before the least (as the Lacedemonians faid, he had lesse, and the done, that married a very little wife) but chiefe good before all oalso of good thinges to chuse the best: preferring those things which are abso- Plutarch, de alutely good, before all other goods More Frater. whatfoeuer, and making the chiefe 6.Thom. Aquin.

delerueth: it is euident, that he who fea- How he that reth God, and keepeth his Commande-teric Hood, ments, performes all these three things, pressive the not only in every perticular action, but three chiefe also throughour thewhole course of his Prudence. life, tending in al things to goodnes and

The light of Gods grace neceffary for the perfection of Prudence.

Ecclef. 1 1,16.

Prouer.4,18 The wifest worldly men are as it were blind-fold.

losophers do teach ; To bee the beginning and end of all Creatures, as partly hath bin before declared. But here (perhaps) some will fay, that there are necessarily required to Prudence, certain other parts, which I haue not yet mentioned: As fagacity of wit, a good memory, and a found judgment.

cerning other a good memory, and a found indgment, parts of Pru-dence.

Arifi Ethic.lib.

der, indge, conneell, ordaine, and execute, and that these partes (as Aristotle teacheth) proceede partly of a naturall hability, and partly of long experience. In which respect, he most approoueth the judgement and councel of old men. Whereupon it followeth, that it sufficeth not to Prudence, to feare God, and keepe his Commaundements: except a Man haue (withall) the other partes aboue mentioned, which many good & holy men want, either in respect of som naturall defect of Wit, Memory, and Indgement, or for lacke of experience. For the better fatisfaction hereof, one thing is to be confidered to wit, the naturall imbecility of mans wit, which is fuch in the wifest worldly man that liueth : that he knoweth not what is conuenint for himfelf, and much leffe for others, whereby he feeketh (many times) 30 that which turneth to his owner oine. Therefore, the most necessary part, for confummation & perfection of humain Prudence, is some supernaturall and diuine light, to illuminate the vnderstanding of men, to moue and encline their wils to make choice of that, which may be most convenient for the and others.

Without which light, the wifest worldly men(I mean fuch as have most excel- 40 lent talents and parts of nature, and are wicked withall) are but like to blinde men, and go (as it were) groping in the dark. Wherefore the Preacher faith, Error and darkness are appointed for Sinners:

that is to fay, ignorance and blindnesse are connaturall to wicked men. And againe. The way of the wicked is as the darknelle, and they know not where they that fal. Whereas on the contrary fide, The way 50

of the righteous (that is to fay, of those that feare God, and keep his commaunments) fhineth as the light, that shineth more and more unto the perfit day. And for this cause, the Pfalmist faith of the Law of God; That it is eleare and bright, and Shinesh light to the eies. That is to fay, the

light of grace, whereby the naturall good abilities of Gods Servants are enture accent creafed and perfited: doth also prosper creased and their actions, fo farre forth, as God Al- perfected by mighty thinketh it necessary for their good his glory, and the execution of his will. Whereto I adde, that also the defects of nature may be, and many times The defeat are, supplyed by the light of Grace, in of Nature fuch fort, that Gods Scruants do many often are for times, attaine to performe all the parts | plied by the of Prudence, though they have no natural ability for the fame, fuch being the effectes of Grace, that it perfecteth humaine nature: which although it aspire and tend to perfection, yet it cannot possibly attaine thereto, without some fupernaturall help. And for the better proofe of the matter in hand, I will lay down fome examples of Gods fernants. who, notwithstanding either their naturall defects & imperfections, or their want of experience : haue (by the conduct of Gods grace) most wisely behaued themselves, in most important matters. Who seemed more vnfit to vndertake the judgement of great causes, then Daniel, whiles he was a child of 12. years old (as Theodores testifieth) or, as other ancient Fathers affirm not much older, and therefore no lesse vnripe in experience then in yeares? And yet neuertheleffe, being affifted by the spirit of God, he confounded the adulterous Iudges

in the cause of Susanna, which he most prudently determined. Besides, the Sulpicina Sem Scripture witnesseth, that God gaue fuch profound knowledge and wildom, Augult in Sa not only to him, but also to Ananias, Mifael, and Azarias, while they were all

wife and learned Chaldeans. And was there ever any glorious en- ludith hereyterprife, more wifely continued, more caily and wife couragiously attempted, or more he- ly perfourroycally performed, the the overthrow ous enterpril of Holofernes : flaine by a holy Woman, Indith Cap,7; no leffe timerous of nature, then weake 8,9,80. of judgement, and void of experience. through the infirmity of her Sexe?

Againe, what fufficiency was there in Exod. 3, 10, Morfes, for the performance of fo great Moeracknown a charge as Almighty God laid on him; ledged his infirst, in his ambassage to Fharan, and af- sufficiency terward in the government and con-duct of his people, thorow fo manie kind of daungers and difficulties? This

Examples

of twelue yeares olde Ezech.

Children: that they far furpaffed all the faell and Age

was acknowledged by Moyfes himselfe, who confesseth his owne in-fusficiencie and weaknes, faying to Almighty God; Quis fum ego, coc Who am 1 6 Lord ? That is to fay, what is there in mee arthin I hould goe ento Pharach, and that I should conduct the Children of Ifraell out of Egipt? And againe afterwardesy being vereilie discouraged, with the consideration of his want of eloquence and were rance &c of his other infirmities; he defired to be Glaffa interlin. excused, saying. Obsecro Domine, mitte How God fup plyed the deque miffurus es, I befeech thee, o Lord , fend elfe whom it pleafe thee. Wherupon God tects of Mufes.

did not only promife him his owne con-

timuall affiftance : but also appointed

Auron to help him, and to speak for him

to the people in al occasions promising

withall, to be the mouths of them both.

Besides, lethro, Father in Law to Moy-

les, did also afterwardes (by Gods great

prouidence) reach him a notable point

of pollicy, for government of the peo-

ple. Wherin may be noted by the way,

how sweetely Almighty God guideth

his Seruants concurring with them, and

mooning them fometimes immediathe

by fecret inspiration, and sometimes by

the help and meanes of others. Where-

by, Moyles being (as it feemeth) altoge-

ther viskilfull, and vnexpert in matters

of State: did (neuertheleffe) many years

most prodently and happily govern the

people of God, as well in warlike, as in

In like manner, if we confider either

the yeares of the education of Danid.

when (being very young) he was called

from the Sheep-coat to the Court, and

weigh withall, his wife, victorious, and

glorious gouernment for forty yeares

together : we must needs confesse, that

the same proceeded of Gods affittance,

and not of his own fufficiency, whereof

Almighty God admonithed him by Na-

I tooke thee from the Pastures, when thou

alisted thee in all things where focuer thou

didit go. I kild all shine enemies before thy

face, and have magnified thy Name among

my people of Ifrael. And I was with thee and 50

(hortly after annointed King. If we 40

other ciuill affaires.

Chap. 4. Of Wisedome, Prudence, & Policy.

God concur reth with his times immediately, and fometimes by meanes of o

> Sam. 16,17 12. 2. Sam. 2, 4. ed and guided in all his Gouernment by Almighty

than the Propher, Taying. Egotuite, &c. 2.Sam,7,8,9. followedit thy flockes and made thee King of

the great ones of the earth. Thus spake the Prophet Nathan in the person of Al-David gratetully acknowmighty God: and this David himselfe, lenged Gods (who best knew himselfe, & the fauors

which God had done him) gratefully acknowledged : calling almighty God His Protector his flay his refuge his backler or Orieid his Greneth his bope, his glary, and humbly beforehing hum in all his occafions; cailluminate him, co protect and defend birm to direct his course & so mide his fleps . Lomit divers other examples for breuities lake, feeing by thefe it fufficiently appeareth, how true that is which the Padrift faith, Lex Domini fapientiam praftas parun'is, The Law of GOD ginesh wifedame to Children . That is to lay, to simple and ignorant men, & the reason is, forthat the Law of God containeth the precepts of all true Wifedome and Brud nce: teaching ws, what is our duty to God, to our Neighbour, to our Superiors, Inferiors, & equals : how to commaund, how to obey sto what end to direct our intents and our actions: how to line, how to die and lattly how to arrive (after the florms and tempefts of this life) at the secure port of cremail felicity, whereto true wisedome directeth and addresseth her whole course. And this is not only to be understood

of the written Law of God, that is to fay, the holy Scriptures of the Old and New Testament (in the which as Saint Chryfostome faith. Non est sittabe vel apienculus, &c. There is not a fillable nor fo much 4s a tritle, wherein there is not hidden fome great treasure) but much more it is to be understood of the Law of God vowertten, infused into the harts of Gods Seruants. Whereof Almighty God faid by the Prophet : Dabo legemeam, Go. I will gine them my law in their bowels, and I will write it in their harts; Which vnwritten

Law, is (as S. Augustine faith) nothing elle but Ip/a presentsa Spiritus Sancti, &c The very presence of the Ho'y Ghost, &c.by whom Charity is spread and printed in our harts, which charity is the confummation of the Law, and end of the Commaundement.

Thus faith S. Augustine of the infused law of God, which do h not only teach men true wifedome(as doth the written | ueth true Law) but doth also give it them: making them the temples of God, and habitacles of the Holy Ghost. By whose Grace, the good Talents of many Seruants of God are encreased and perfected, their defects supplied, their infirmities cured, the eies of their vnderstanding illuminated, and their judgements Dddd2

Pfalme, 17, ct Pfalme, 17, 16, 15, 24,

Pfalme to 8 How the law of God giueth

wifedome chiefoft in Pfal.

> The infused Ierem. 13,12.

August, in Lib.

defoir et Littera. Cap. 28.

The infuled I aw both rea cheth and gi-

874 Of Wisedome, Prudence, & Pollicy. 9. Booke.

The parts of

directed. By meanes whereof, they are replenished with heavenly VV isedome, and enabled to performe all the parts of true Prudence, to wit; to deliberate maturely; to indge foundly; to counfel fecurely; to ordaine and commaund exactly, and execute effectually. And fo they work in al things; no leffe prudently then happily, being mooued and led by the onely Author of wifedome and 10 happinesse: in whose hand are the harts of all men, and vpon whose will dependeth the successe of all actions whatsoeucr. Therefore I will inferre heereupon

certaine conclusions. The first, that, as

the Preacher faith, the fear of Godisnot

onely Initium & radix , The beginning

and roote; but also Plenitudo Sapientia;

dome. For those that sincerely tear God,

haue (consequently) the light and helpe

of his grace, whereby they may, and

many times do arrive to the perfection

of Wifedome and Prudence: whereas

otherwise, there is no possibilitie of at-

taining thereto, all humaine wifedome

being (of it felfe) lame and imperfect,

vncertaine, and subject to infinite er-

have never fo good partes of wit and

iudgement naturally, and may by the

force and meanes thereof, doe many

things prudently and wifely : yet, foraf-

much as they alwaies play the Fooles

notably, in that which importeth them

most, to wit; in thinges pertaining to

their eternall good or enill, and do also

erre very blindly and abfurdly (many

haue any perfection of wisedome, nor

Whereas on the other fide, the Ser-

uants of God, who have alwayes good

naturall parts, and the light and help of

grace withall, do not onely worke most

prudently alwaies, in matters that con-

cerne their eternall good or euill: but

alfo deale in all things whatfocuer, with

farre more light, certaintie and fecuri-

tie, then wicked Men, of like good parts

and Talents naturall. And although

the Servants of God have (fometimes)

fome naturall defects of wit and judge-

ment ; yet forasmuch , as such also doe

alwayes discharge the partes of true

Prudence, in matters which import the

can be counted truely wife.

The consummation and perfection of Wife- 20

The first con clusion.

Ecclef. 1.15. so. The feare of God is the beginning & perfection of and why,

> All humaine is of it felfe lame and vnperfect.

The wifest worldly man that which most imports

How the fernants of God are wife.

Why the fimplest servant of God is wiwifest wicked

most, and may have also, and many times haue (with the help of grace) fuch a supplement of their naturall imperfe-Ctions, that all of them may, and many of them doe; performe the Office of prudent and Wifemen in all affaires, which wicked men neither do nor post bly can doe : I will therefore conclude; that the perfection of humaine Wife- The perfectidome, confisterh in Gods grace, and on of human that the very simplest Servant of God, wiledome may more truely be accounted Wife, Gods grace then the wifest. I meane the subtilest and craftiest wicked Man whatsoe-

This the Royall Prophet acknowledged in himfelfe, comparing the Wifedome and Prudence which God had giuon him, by the observation of his commandements; with the Wifedome and Prudence of his Enemies, and of the wifest Worldlings, faying. Super inimi- Pfalme. 119 cos meos, &c. Thou hast made me (ô Lord) wifer then mine enemies, through thy Commandement or Law, and I have understood more, then all they which taught me. I am wifer then the aged, because I have sought to keepe thy Commandements.

The fecond Conclusion is, that (as rors. So that, wicked men, though they 3Q the Booke of Ecclesiasticus fignifieth.) Non est sapientia nequitia discipiina, & non est cogitatus peccatorum prudentia. The knowledge of wickedne (le is not wifedome, meither is there prudencie whereas the coun-(ell of Sinners is. For, seeing true Wifedome confifteth in the feare of God, & dome or Pru in the observation of his Commande- dence. ments: nothing that is offensive to God, or contrary to his Law, can fland with true Wisedome. And againe, seetimes) in temporall affaires; they neuer 40 in Prudence and Morall Vertue are so conjoyned, that they cannot be separated; yea, and that not onely the end of euery prudent action, but also the meanes must necessarily bee good and vertuous: it mult needes follow, that whatfocuer is vicious, impious, or wicked, is excluded from true Prudence. In which respect, Prudence is called in the Scriptures, Scientia Sanctorum. And therefore Salomon faith. Principium fapi-Prouer.9, 10 Prudence cal entia timor Domini, & scientia sanctorum Prudentia. The fear of God is the beginning of Wisedome, and the knowledge of hoise ledge of holy things is Prindence. Hereupon also follow two other Conclusions, concerning The third policy. The one that no true pollicy can

The fecond

Nothing that ftand with

> All humane pollicie is vr perfect and without the

The imprudence of those that prefume matters of out any re-

to meddle in State, withgard of Gods

Ghap. 4. Of VV isedome, Prudence, & Policy.

No true Polhey admit-teth any imnictic.

Pollicy a par of Prudence. Prudence de ided into three parts. Personal Prudence. Occonomic

Prudence. Politicall

cyhumaine (without the light and help of Gods grace) is vncertaine and defectuous. And for the better understanding heereof, it is to bee confidered, that as Prudence is a part of wifedome: fo Pollicy is a part of Prudence, and that Prudence also is divided into three partes. The first, Personall; the second, Occonomicall; and the third, Politicall. Perfonall Prudencesconfiftethin the focculation and practife of fuch things, as belong onely to perticular men. Occonomicall prudence, respecteth all thinges belonging to houtholde affayres . And Polliticall prudence is that, which con-

fidereth matters appertaining vnto com-

monwealth, and this kind of Prudence is

admit any impiety, wickednesse, or of-senge, of God. The other, that all poli-

properly called Policy. Therfore, as Prudence (being a branch of Wisedome)cannot disagree from the Pollicie can-

Nature thereof , no more then the braunch from the Nature of the tree; fo alfo, Pollicy being a part of Prudence, must needs bee conforme and agreeable together; in which respect, euerie Politicall Art must needs bee prudent, and euerie prudent act (concerning Commonwealth) must needes bee Politicall. 3 Whereuppon it followeth, that feeing true Prudence excludeth all wickednesse and impiety, true Pollicy also dooth exclude the fame. And againe, feeing true Wisedome

and Prudence are the especiall guiftes of

God (as I have shewed) and that with-

out the light and helpe of Gods grace, al

humaine wisedome is full of impersecti-

on, obscurity, uncertainty, and error, it

followeth also by the like consequence,

that the like judgement is to be given of

all humaine policy, to wit: that it is (of

it selfe) imperfect, vncertaine, obscure,

and erroneous; and to be perfected, af-

fured, rectified, and guided by the light

of grace, which is the point that I have

especialy laboured to proue throughout

The fourth

not dilagree

rom Ptu-

this whole discourse. Therefore, to conclude this Chapter, I cannot but lament and wonder at the imprudence of two forts of men. The one is of those, who make no doubt to deale in matters of Policy & State, without any care or regard of Gods help and assistance; yea, and with offence of god. Whereby they expose not only the mat-

ters (which they mannage) to dangerous errors, yea, and to all enill successe: but allo, the Princes whom they Councell, and the Common-wealthes where they gouerne, to Gods indignation, and confequently to viter ruine, as hath beene formerly proued.

Theother fort of impudent men (in my fancy) are those, who are so far transported, eyther with conceit of their own wit and fufficiency, or with a defire to deale in great matters, that they aspire to nothing more, then to meddle in matence. tets of State, yea, and boldly embarke themselves in the very greatest that doe occurre, before they have any experience or practife thereof in the world, or have so much as reflected vpon the Naturall imbecility of manswit; and the weakneffe of humaine pollicy, or of the insuperable difficulties and dangers incident to matters of State, which are fuch, as do many times, ouerthrow & difgrace the most wife and expertest Negotia-

And therefore it happeneth verie often to those, who so greedily and vnaduisedly sceke such employments, as it doth to man, that (in faire weather) putteth himselfe to Sea, in a little Boate or Frigot for his recreation; and vpon the fudden there arifeth a ftorme which carrieth him into the miane Sea, and so toffeth him too and fro: that he not onelie loofeth all the pleasure which he expected, but also escapeth verie hardlye with life. And therefore, with many a fighe and heavy grone, he looketh back to the Land from whence he came; but neuertheles is forced to go whither the winds and tempest carry him, and perhaps perisheth in the ende, by violence of the storme. Euenso I say, it fareth manie times, with those that embarke themselues ynaduisedly in matters of State: for, within a while, they find themselues fo perplexed, that they defire to returne to their former repose and quietnes. But yet they are forced to goe, whither the course, streame and current of theyr affaires doth carry them ; yea, and fometimes perish amidst the manifolde dangers, which commonly doe accompany State-matters, the practife whereof may well be compared to the practife of Phi

ficke, For, althogh fome Phylitions ex-

ercife their Science, with more indge-

State, without experi-

What happeneth to thole unfedly feeke great imploy

times in paine

The danger of dealing in

The practife of matters of State like the practile of Philick.

9. Booke.

Chap.5. Directions for yong Statists.

Young Statifts marre many matter before they make one.

of their plots and defignments: but (for the most part) at the first do marre many matters, before they make one. Info- 10 much, that I account him no leffe happy then wife, who can be the wifer not only by other mens errors, but also by his owne. And, as I hold him for the Wifest man, which erreth the least: so I take He is the wihim for the happiest & best at ease, who fest that erreth the leaft, meddleth the least, or not at all in matbut he the hai pieft, that medleth leaft ters of State, seeing there was neuer any that dealt in many, but he erred in some. in matters of And sometimes we see, that the least er- 20 State. rour worketh both his ouerthrowe who committed it : and also, the ruine of whole Kingdomes and Commonweals. Wherefore, I conclude with the Spanish

ment and better successe then others:yet

none is so skilfull and fortunate, that he

can alwayes warrant the cure of his pa-

cient, and young beginners many times

kill three, before they faue one. Euen fo,

young Statists, how expert soener they

be, can neuer warrant the good successe

I speake not this, to dehort or diswade all men from the dealing with matters of State, which is a thing fo necessary for the feruice of God and Princes, and for the good of a Commonwealth, that it is both honourable, yea, and highly deferuing, when it is done with circumstance convenient and requisit thereto. But my meaning is to fignifye with what great consideration and circumspection all men ought to vindertake fuch Negotiations especially young men, who have not had any experience or practife thereof, and therefore cannot have the matute and ripe judgement, which is necesfary thereto. For which cause, the Athenians did ordaine, that no man (vnder Plutarch in his fifty yeares of age) should bee called to giue aduise in the affaires of their Commonwealth. And although a man may be (as verie manie are no doubt) fooner ripe and able, to mannage anic matter whatfocuer: yet reason and experience teach, that the yonger a man is, and the leffe practife he hath, the more he is like

to crre. W herefore I craue thy patience

(gentle Reader) while I fet downe heere

a few general Rules for yong beginners,

Prouerbe, A queles Rey, que nunça vio

Rey, Hee is a K ng that never fame King .

That is to fay, hee is a happy man, who

neuer had to deale with the affayres of

Princes or State matters.

as well for their enstruction : as also, for the discouery of the difficulties, which occurre in the government of a Commonwealth.

an spirited to be

CHAP. V.

Certaine general Rules or Aduises; no leffe pious then Politicall, for the inflruction of Juch as defire to manage matters of State and have no experience thereof , to the end, that they may deal therein with leffe danger and difficulty.

Irst, hee that meaneth to apply himselfe to matters A pure and of State, must fee that his s good meaning on mother intention be clear & pure, that is to fay: that hee bee Statish

not mooued thereto by vainglory, ambition, conetoufnesse, or any vicious or vnlawfull defire, because they are overweake foundations to vpholde waightie affayres, being accompanied not onelic with the offence of God; but also, with passion; whereby mans judgement is blinded, and many times drawn to error. And therefore, the chiefe and principall intention of a Statist ought to bee, the fernion of a Statist ought to bee, the fernion of a Statist ought to bee, and the publicke good of his Country, whereto tobe enery man ought principally to direct & leuell all his actions, which otherwise, cannot be truly vertuous and wife, nor yet haue the assistaunce and blessing of Almighty God, which for the good fuccesse of all mens affaires, is most exquifite. For, as the Royall Prophet fayeth: Pfalm. 127,1. Nifi Dominus adificanerit domum in va-

in vaine which build the fame. This foundation being laide, any Ne- The comm gotiation, be it neuer fo waighty and important, may be built thereon, for foure reasons. First, for that a mans reason and takingmat indgement being free from passion and felfe loue, he shall the more clearlie and all Reasons. foundly both deliberate and worke in all occasions. Secondly, for that it is most likely, that Almighty God (feeing his

num laborauerunt qui edificant eam. Ex-

cept the Lord do build the house, they labor

The benefit of fore-fight and prouidence in Sta-

P'starch in his

Treatile of

enttruction

for Statifts.

Horat in Lib. 1.

Epift. ad Me-

A cleare con-

feience is a

Brazen wall.

Senca in lib.4

The difficul-

ties and dan-

onfidered in

Phil Com, Cron.

gers to be

natters of

de Benefic

Cap. 21.

cent.

good and holy intention) will concur & co-operate with him in all his Negotia-

Thirdly, though it would not please Almighty God (for his fecret judgements) to bleffe and prosper his actions: yet vindoubtedly, his good intentions shall not faile of their due recompence and reward.

Lastly, for that in case hee fall into the great difficulties and dangers, which are incident vnto dealing in matters of State, yet he shall have the comfort and consolation of a good and cleare Conscience, which as the Poet could fay, is Murus aheneus, A Brazen Wall, and the most affured Anchor in all the stormes and tempests of this life. Qua etiam obruta delectat, faith Seneca, which even when it is oppressed or overwhelmed, dooth then 2 delight. Thus much concerning the, first rule.

Secondly, it shall be convenient for a young Statist, well to weigh and forefee the difficulties and daungers, which he may (by all likelyhood) incur by dealing in matters of State, either thorough the nature and condition of the matters which he is to handle, or thorough the treachery and perfidiousnesse of those, with whom he is to deale; or thorough the malice and emulations (either publicke or private) which in Courts never want; or thorough the lealoufy of Princes, who (as Comineus well noteth) Doe easily suspect and distrust their best Sernants in matters concerning their State . Or lastly, thorow the vncertaintie of the fuccesse of businesse, which is in no mans hand to warrant, as hath bin sufficiently proued. By all which meanes, we fee(many times) most important matters miscarry, to the great grief, disgrace, yea and vtter ouerthrow of the Negotiators, especially if they have not foreseen the fame. Whereas, by confideration and forefight, they might perhaps haue prevented inconvenience; or at the left, have bin better armed, to beare theyr misfortune with patience.

Therefore, P. utarch worthily compareth improvident and vnaduifed Negotiators, to one that thoulde fall (before he were aware) into a Coal-pit or Mine; where, though perhaps hee escape with life: yet commonly hee receyueth fome hurt, or (at the left) is wonderfully aftonished and amazed, not onely with the fall, but also with the obscurity and horfor of the place, which, to those that go in of purpose, and with resolution to indure it, is nothing to offenfine or noy-

Thirdly, he ought alwayes to obserue three things. The first is the imbecility and weaknesse of mans wit: the second the vicertainty of the successe of al mens actions. The thirde, the prouidence of God, in the disposition of all humaine affaires. These three things I say euerie Statist should have continuallie before his eyes, to the end, that feeing his own infirmity, and vncertainty of the foccesse of all his defignments, hee may confider his danger, as well of error in his determinations, as of euill hap in his actions; and confequently, have recourse to the The counsell remedies ordained for the fame, by the of Tobias to providence and mercy of God. According to the adule which old Tobias gaue to his fon, for the direction of his whole course of life, to whom (amongst manie other notable precepts) hee gaue this Aske Counsel alwayes of the wife, and defife not any counsel that is profitable. Bleffe thy Lord God alwayes, & defire of him that thy wayes may bee made frait, and that all thy purpofes & councels may profper. Thus faid Tobias, or rather the Holy-Ghoft by Two things his mouth, aduiting notably two things, fed of all seanecessary to be practifed of all men, for tills. the remedy of their naturall, imbecilitie, to wit: to aske councell of wife men and to craue the assistance of God. Because we are neither so absolute of our selues, but that we neede (in all thinges) Gods helpe and assistance; neither yet so gouerned and guided by Almightie God, that we ought to contemne the helpe of man, such being the course of his diuine prouidence in humaine affaires, that hee doth his will not only in men, but also by them, and with their co-operations. In which respect, Saint Paul did not stick to call himselfe, and the other Apostles, Adjutores Dei, The helpers of God, in the

50 conversion of the Gentiles. Thetfore, as it were great folly, pride, folly in man, and prefumption in man, fo to trust in ly in humane himselfe, or in humaine Wisedome or wisedome & power, as to neglect the providence and A tempting o assistance of God: fo wer it on the other God, to confide, extreame negligence, yea, and a tempe hutempting of God, so to relie vpon him, maine helpe

I . Cor. 4, 9.

man should deale in matters of State.

Treatife, whe

ther an old

Dangerous

for very yong

men, to deale

in matters of

State.

as to contemne all humaine helpe and councell. Which we may learne by the example of Mosses, who though he was enstructed, inspired, and conducted by almighty God himfelfe : yet refused not the good councell of lethre, for the maner of his Gouernment, which almighty God also allowed in him.

1 .Reg 20. 2.Reg.19,et 16 1. Reg. 21. 23

On the other fide also, King David. although hee tooke the councell of his Friends, Councellers, and Seruants, as of Ionathan, Achitophe', Ioab, and others; and vsed also his owne prudence, as well in the deliberations, as in the execution of his affaires: yet hee neuer omitted to confult with almighty God by his Prophets and Priests, when he might conueniently do it, yea, and as I have fignified elsewhere, continually craued the assistance, illumination, and direction of 30 almighty God in all his actions whatfocuer.

Ceneurrence of humaine diligence: with divine helpe necessa.

Paralip, 14, 12,

Plutach in vit. Paul Armil

Prefumption isno way permitted by

maine.

fight. And therefore, God fauoured and

helped Paulus Emilius, who craued force

& victory with his weapons in his hands:

Gods affiftance bleffing mans endea

And this concurrence of Diuine help with humaine diligence, is notablie expreffed in the Scriptures, where it is fignified, that Gedeon gaue order vnto his Soldiers, to crie in their conflict with ludg.7,18,20. the Madianites, Domino & Gedeoni, For the Lord, and for Gedeon . And Gladius Domini & Gedeonis The fword of God & 30 of Gedeon. And againe, in the relation of the great victorie, which Ala K. of Inda had against the Ethyopians, the Scripture faith : Cadente Domino contriti funt ,et exercitus illius praliante, They were veterly overthrowne, the Lord God (miting them, and the Army of Asa fighting, which is as much to fay, as man doing his endeuor, and God giving the successe. This also

the very Paynims knew, and observed so 40 well, that Hutarch noteth it seriouslie, in the battaile betwixt Perfeus King of Macedon , and Paulus Æmilius the Ro-For, whereas Perfeus when hee should have fought, withdrew himselfe from the fielde, under colour of Sacrificing to Hercules, he faith : That God doth not fauour fuch vale fellowes, as prefume on his helpe, and wil do nothing themfelues. 50 For God (faith hee) hath (o ordained, that he which wil hit the marke, must shoote & hee which will winne the Goale, must run . and hee which wil have the victorie, must

A Dios rogando (as the Spanish Proucrbe faith) y con la maça dando, Praying to God, and laving on load with his Club.

But to fay fomewhat heere perticulerlie of an especiall meanes to winne the and necessing helpe and assistance of GOD, nothing of prayer, for behooueth a Statist more, then daylye to re-commend his actions vnto his Di- ters of State. uine Maiesty, by feruent and deuoute Prayer, the force and benefit whereof, is vnspeakeable, no lesse in all kind of temporall matters, then in spirituall. For the which, wee have not onely our Sauiours Doctrine and warrant: but also, infin te examples of holie and wife men, both in Diuine and humaine Histories. While Ioluah fought with Amalek, Moyfes prayed uppon the Mountaine, and obtained of God the Victory . The two Annaes beeing barren, were by Prayer made Mothers; the one of the Prophet Samuel, and the other, of the Virgine

Salomon, by Prayer obtained Wifedome. King Hezekias recourred health, Augin Lib. 1. and had victorye against the Assyrians. de civit. Dei. The three Children also (by praier) were deliuered from fire. And to speake of Gast. Europe bel. later times, Theodofius the Emperor, fir- inlib. 4.100 as named the Great (as Saint Augustine witneffeth) prenailed against the Tyrant Eugenius, more by Praier, then by force. And the like also is testifieth by Graue Writers, as of Narfes the Eunuch, Lieutenant to Justinus the Emperour, whose great victories were attributed vinto his zenlous prayers, and manly endeuours exercifed in armes.

In like manner, the famous victories which Heraclius the Emperor gaue vnto Cofrees, King of Persia (of whom hee re- Paul, Diacon. couered lerufalem and all the East parts) L.b. 18. are ascribed by the best historiographers that write thereof, to the earnest Deuoand commaunded also to be performed, Guilled Malfor his good succession in the for his good fucceffe in that warre. We read in our English Histories, that King Ethe red., elder Brother to the famous Regardens. Alfred or Alured, founder of the Vni- Annal. par. 1. uerfity of Oxford, beeing encamped a- An 871. gainst the Danes, and aduertised by his Baron, An. co-Captaines (when he was going to heare Diuine Seruice, and to perfourme his duty to God, as dayly hee was accustomed to doo) that his Brother Aifred, with the relidue of his Captaines, had

The benefit

Chap. 5.

Guliel Malmef.

Chryfoft de nat.

Det, Hom. 5.

The tellimo-

ny of Saint Cluifollome

concerning

the force of

ubi fispra.

Math. 6, & 7. Marke, 11. Examples of the great force of de Ioan, Damafin Grat. de nat. h

The necessity of humaine Eccles. 32,20.

dnno.621.622

Plutarch in his Treatife in tituled, wheioyned battail with the enemy, and were in great daunger to be onerthrowne: he had no fooner ended his' Divine Orifons, but he came himfelfe in person, and finding his Soldiers ready for flight, recalled them backe to the battel thrusting himfelfe into the middeft thereof. Cum virtute (faith the Hiftorie) 29 Del miratulo: By whose valour, and the myraculous helpe of God, the Danes were put to flight, and their King flaine, with diuers of their Nobility, and manie thoufands of the Soldiers.

To this purpose also may ferue, those examples of the famous victories of Edward the third, King of England, against the French, at Crefile in Piccardie, and of the Christians against the Turkes, at Lepanto in our dayes; as alfo, of manie other admirable victories which I refer the Reader vnto. And will end concerning Prayer, with this fentence of Saint Chryfostome. Vis orationis (faith he) Vim mignis extinguit, &c. The power of praier hath extinguished the force of fire, shut op the mouthes of Lyons, given victories in warre, appealed stormes and tempelts, expelled Deuths, opened the gates of Heatteth, broken the bands of death, cured difeafes, reconciled enemies, delinered Citties from Farth-quakes, and defended them as well from the punishments of God , as from the Treasons and attempts of men. Finallie, it. hath ouercome al forts of euils. Thus faith Saint Chrylostome, of the wonderfull efficacy of prayer, and thus much concerning Prayer and Divine helpe.

Now, to speake a word or two more, concerning humaine councell, the Holyghoft giueth a notable adnice. faying: Fili. line confilio mihil facias, & post facti non penitebis. My Son, do nothing without adnice and councell, fo Shall it not repent thee ofter the deed. And againe , Qui agunt omnia cum confilio, reguntur fapientia. They which do all things with Councel, are gonerned with wifedome . And this point I hold to be absolutely necessarie. not onely for young men, or others of finall experience: but also for the eldest and most expert. For Nemo emailies ho ris lapit, No man is wife at all houres. And as the Prouerbe faith, Two eves fee more

Therefore the famous Scipio Affricanee, did ener confult all his affaires with Cain Lelius. And Cicero confesseth.

that in his Confulflip, hee did nothing ther an olde, without the adnife of the Phylosopher, man flould deale with Publitis Wigidius. And for this cause, matters of Princes have divers Councellors, to the end, that matters being pondered by diuers at effeunitances may be duly examined and confidered. For as Salomon Proper 15,12 faith; D'befint plures conft tary, confirma- Many Coun tur cogitationes. Plots and definments are celor specet. confirmed and established, where there are ces. many Councellors. For fome find out one inconvenience, and fome another; fome one remedy, and fome another, whereof I shall have occasion to fay more heere-

Therfore, I conclude for the prefent, that a young Starift following the rule and councell of Tobias, that is to fay, fix. ing his heart and hopes upon Almightic God, adding the continual vie of denout and fernent Prayer, thumaine councel and diligence; and joyning thereby, The Wifedome of the Serpent, with the simplicity of the Done, Picty with Pollicy guiftes of Grace, with ability of Nature; and finally, the Wisedome of God, with the Prudence of Man, fliall deliberate and Worke in all occasions, no lesse happilye then wifely. And this shall suffice for the thirdrile.

Fourthly, it importes greatly, that after mature confultation of any matter of State, and ferious re-commendation before flow. thereof, to Almighty God, no time of ed or lot. action be fore flowed with needleffe delayes; after the matter determined. For time may fo alter the state of any affaire. be it neuer fo well and wifelie refolned: that the opportunity of execution may be etterly loft, and the businesse it selfe withall. And therefore, the common Prouerbe aduifeth , To frike while the Iron is hot. For the Poet could fay, Nocuit differre paratis, Delay is alwayes hurtfull, to those who are ready to execute. But especially in matters, wherein there is any competence of enemies, who ever watch diligently to take all opportunities: and do often helpe themselves very greatly, by the negligence and delayes of their aduerfaries.

And although this aduife is necessary in all matters of State, yet is most behoouefull and requifit in warlick affairs, whetein we fee many times, that friede Ware. and diligence is more important, then great force. For freed being commonly

fion concer-Mat. 10,16.

Lucen, in lib. t. The dancer of needleffe

Cron du Roy Louis; Cap. 26

The practife

when he im-

ploted a great

Aml ab idour

In what cases delay is neceffary.

The first case.

The 2. cafe.

The 3. cafe.

Plutarch in Periele. Time the be Councellour

that is, A mans own abilitie well to be weighed

Cor. 12, 11.

accompanied with fudden terrour and feare : doth open the way to finall force, and enable the fame to woorke great effects. And therefore Agathocles, one of the Tyrants of Sicily, having but a few Soldiers, and exhorting them vnto the speedie and sudden invasion of Carthage, faid : In repentino meta non modicum vieteria momentum. Sudden feare will be of no smal moment and importance, for obtaining of the victory . Which was proued to be true by the euent, and is dailie feene by the experience of furprizes, camifadoes, and all other fudden enterprifes of warre.

To conclude this aduit; one generall rule is to be held, that to temporize or delay time is neuer good, but in three cases. The first, when matters are not maturely confulted, and well digefted: wherein (neuerthelesse) al due diligence is to be yeed, least time and opportunitie of action, bee loft and fpent in confulta-

The fecond case is when there is som iust and important impediment of the execution. The third, is in cases of extreamitie, which furpaffe a mans power and wisedome to helpe; for then the only remedy is to temporize and win time, which produceth many accidents, that could neuer be foreseen or immagined, and discouereth soueraigne remedies, for the most desperate diseases. And therefore Pericles was wont to fay, Time is the wefest Councellor that is. Thus much for the fourth aduise.

Fiftly, let euery young Statist consider, and measure his owne ability, to the end, that he do not vndertake anie mat- 40 ter aboue his reach or capacity: for no man (how excellent focuer he bee) is fo perfect, that he excelleth in all thinges. And therefore the Poets faigned, that the Goddes themselues had not al giftes alike; but that fome excelled in one, and fome in another. And the Apostle saith, that God distributeth his gists vnto men, diverfly. Druidens fingulis prout vult. Diuiding them to every one as pleafeth him , to the end we may have need one of another. And this also, common experience teacheth; for some excell in depth of judgement; others, in tharpeneffe of wit : others, in eloquence; others in memory; others, in Science and learning; and of them, fome in one kind, and fome

Now then, it is convenient for every one, as well to weigh his owne Talents, and how they fort with the businesse in which he is to be employed. As if he be if fure the man to perswade, whether hee haue the guist ters he voder of vtterance and eloquence. If he bec to his owne abi paffe Couenants and Conuentions of livy. Leagues or Marriages; whether he be a Lawyer. And if he be to treat on matters of warre, whether hee be a Soldier, and so in like cases. For otherwise, hee shall proone, Afinus ad Liram, An Affe at an Harpe, as the Proucrbe faieth, and not only difgrace himself, and them that fent him: but also, loose his labour and businesse.

They that erre in this point, are those (commonly) which either haue fuch an are comm inordinate defire to be medling in great ly that voder matters, that they care not what they vndertake, so they be doing; or else haue an they can per-extraordinary concelt of their owne wit and fufficiency. And therefore, it shall be good for enery one, to moderate in himselse, as for the first, the desire of dealing fo for a remedy to the later, it shall be secure for any man in my fancy, not to relie wholly vppon his owne opi-nion, concerning his fufficiency, but partly vpon the judgement of others, re- ludge of his ceyuing rather imployment from his owne fundicions, or other superiours, then officency. ring or intruding himselfe thereto, til he have made some good triall of himselfe. For by that meanes, if the busines speed well, hee shall have the thankes and honor of it: and if it succeede otherwise, hee shall auoyde a verie great part of the

But if he find, that his fugeriors know him not fo well as he doth himselfe, and yet would employ him in matters, wher- Statistio acin hee hath neither experience nor abilitie, it shal be lesse shame for him to con- fed, then to fesse his defect, and either to refuse the accepta Commission, or to craue an affociate, he cannot furnished with the parts that he wanteth periousme. then to accept the charge, and fo faile in the performance.

Mojes being commanded by almightie God, to go in Embassage to Pharaoh King of Egypt, for the deliueric of the Children of I/rae/, humbly excused him felfe, as vnfit for fuch a waighty charge, by reason of the impediment of his speech: for the remedy whereof, God

Who they

The affiftice of wife & fincere friends, ry in great

Directions for yong Statists.

gaue him an assistant, to wit; his brother daren, who being verie eloquent, might fpeake for them both. Whereby, not onely Subjects, which are to be emploied, may learne to confider and acknowledge their owne defectes: but Princes also may learne so to employ their Subiects, that one may have the partes another wanteth, and fupply each one the defects of another.

A yong Sta-tift ought to begin his practife with mail matters

Infruction

both to: Prin

ces and Sub-

Chap. 5.

A yong Sta-Philition.

A yong Sta-tift compared to the Juic

imployments

The practife. of the Larciemaians in great imploy-ing An.b. ffadeur. Ariflot in 1. b. Polit. 2: Cap.

credits.

Sixtly, it shall not be amisse (in mine opinion) for a young beginner to enter into his first practise, with matters of finall importance, and to proceede vnto greater by degrees, as his experience and ability shall growe and encrease. Like vnto the wife Phyfition, who when hee beginneth to practife, taketh eafie cures in hand, and medleth not with inueterat and dangerous difeafes, vntill hee hath 20 got both experience and credit. And fo woulde I with a young beginner in matters of State, to flye businesse of great weight and disticulty; and rather to pro-cure at first, some honorable Commission or Embassage of congratulation, or condoling, including some ouerture of an important treaty, rather then to deale in the treatie it selfe, which requireth great practife, Experience, and Wife- 20 dome.

And, if hee be imployed in any fuch treaty, I wold with him to be contented, rather to be a fecond or an afsistant, then chiefe in Commission, and so to growe (for a while) like the Vine or Iny, by the support of another tree. Or, if his dignity be such, as cannot admit a seconde place; then, to procure(fo much as may be) to haue such assistants, as are not only men of founde judgement and Wifedome, but also his fincere friends. Such being commonly theemulation and ambition in Courts, that he may otherwise make account, that his owne affociates and Companions, will curiouflie obferue every little errour of his, and take aduantage thereof for their owne better

To which purpose is to be considered that the Lacedemonians yfed to choose fuch to fend on their Embaffages, as wer eyther publicke, or at least offecret enemics: to the end that one of them might ferue as a fpie ouer the others actions. And the like may still be vsed, and is (no doubt) many times. And Phillip de Co-

mines noteth of Lewes the eleventh King of France, that he was woont fometimes when hee fent a great Ambassadour, to giue fecret Commission (apart) to some meaner man in his company, vling the other for a shew, and for matters of complement; or perhaps to the end, that he 11. of France, thould beare the greatest part of the embaffage charges, as commonly greatment do, rather then for the dispatch of important affaires. And the like of both these examples may well be practised by Princes, when they fend great Ambaffa-dors, and especially when he that is chief in commission, is raw & vnexpert. And therefore, it shalbe convenient for such

him, wife and affured Friendes: leaft o-

therwife, his owne assistants, may let him

commit some groffe and absurd errors;

and fo handle the matter, that all the

Negotiation, shall turne to their owne

Honour, by the discouerie of his im-

And this hee may feare, not onely in

his affociates and fellowes in Commif-

spirit and talent then the rest, may seeke

to make advantage of his maifters weak-

nesse. As chanced to an Ambassador

(whom I knew) whose Secretary noting

in him some negligence in the dispatch

of aduifes; when occasion required, pre-

uented commonly his Maisters Letters

becility.

The danger a one, to confider the fame, to the end, in Commission that hee may the better looke and regard on, when they his owne carriage, and procure (as I baue alreadie faid before, to haue about

fion, but also in his followers and Ser- to be feared uants: among whom, fome one of more inweighty

with his owne. Befides, being emploied by his Maifter, to procure adules and intelligences, he concealed the most important matters from him, and VVrote them himfelfe to fome principall Couricellours, whose good grace hee gayned fo farre thereby, that they procured his aduancement at his home return: wherethe Ambaffadour himfelfe, was helde altogether vnwoorthy of further honor and preferment and fined ener after in difgrace.

Scauenthly, I would aduife a young | Many matbeginner, not to charge himfelfe with many matters at once, as forme do, that that caunot endure to fee any man em yong Statift, ployed bur themfelues Whereon it tolloweth, that fomeone or two businesses fucceeding il (as comonly among many foine do) Eecc

ters not to be

man of a weak Stomack.

then reputation or thankes for all the rest, though they succeede neuer so well. Therefore, it is wisedome for anie man (especially for such as be Nouices in affayres of State) to take but fewe matters in hand, and to dispatch them well. Like to a man that hath but a weake stomack, who is to take heede, that he neuer ouerwith diversitie of meates, because one thing will let and hinder the digestion of

An aduertifement to the Fauourites o Princes.

The danger that the Fanourites of incurre by ha tred of the people.

Polidar. Virgil

Secreev in matters of State, most necessary.

murthered.

do) they receive more difgrace thereby, lay it with quantitie : nor yet to pefter it 10 another.

And this I wish to bee considered efpecially, by fuch as are the fauourites of Princes, who (manie times) defiring to haue al in their owne hands, do not itick to charge themselues with much more, then they can attend to dispatch in due manner and scason, to the exceeding 2 great detriment, as well of perticuler men, as of the State ingenerall. Whereby allo, they expose not onely themfelues, but their Princes likewife, to fuch hatred of the Nobilitie and people, that thereon doth follow (manie times) commotions, and rebellions, infomuch, that their Princes are either forced to abandon them to their enemies, or elfe to perish with them . As to omit forraigne examples, we have seene by experience in England, in the times of King Edward the fecond, and King Richard the fecond against whom, the Nobilitie and Commons did take Armes, for the hatred they bare to their fauourites, Pierce Gauefton, the two Spencers, Kobert de la Vere, Earle of Oxford, and others theyr Adherents: vpon whose persons they discharged their fury, enercifing all kind of cruelty on them, except vpon the Earle of Oxford, who faued his life by flight into Holland, and ended his dayes in banithment. And heereto also may partly bee ascribed, the vnfortunate endes of both those Kinges, who were afterwards deposed, and cruelly and Treacherously

Eightly, nothing is more necessary in handling matters of State, then Secre. 50 cy, I meane matters intended and confulted, before they come to execution: for, they are like to a Mine, which has uing any vent, is wholly frustrate, and of no effect. Therefore, Peter King of Arragon, being demanded of Pope Martine the fourth, what hee meant to do

with the great Fleete, wherewith hee afterward recouerd Sielly from the French, made this aunswere vnto him: That if he thought his Shirt did know ic, hee woulde burne it.

But, because I am to speake of this A generali point of Secrecie heercafter, I wil heere rale to bee onely give a generall rule to bee helde heldconcerand practifed by young Statistes: which is, not to communicate anie important matter of State, to any man whatfoeuer; except he is to be imployed, or his councell to bee vsed therein. For, who soeuer fayleth in this point, is not fit to handle any matter of importance, nor thall Princes eeuer haue credit with Princes, who e-thing more in their Seruants, their feruans then Secrecy. Infomuch, that a Prince then Secrecy. in these dayes (whom for some respects I forbeare to name) caused a faithfull seruant of his (whom he also loued dearly) to be killed, for feare he should reueale a be pertakers fecret, which (by chaunce) hee came to of Princes know : whereby we may perceive, howe dangerous a thing it is, to bee pertakers of Princes fecrets. And therefore, Fhilippides the Comedian, beingwilled by king Lylimachus to aske fome fauour of him, Treatife of tolking to befeeched him to doo him what fauour much. else he pleased, so that he imparted none of his fecrets vnto him. And thus much

for this point. Ninthly, a young Statist is to haue e- Valawfullim foeciall care, to anoyde all linde of vnlawfull employments, as to be an Instru- auoyded. ment fany wickednesse for his Princes feruice: for, beside the offence to God, (who will affuredly punish the same sooner or later) he may well thinke, that his Prince also will never after trust him, howfocuer hee bee fatisfied with the feruice for the present. For, Princes manie times are contented, to take the benefit of a feruice done by euill meanes, and yer (euer after) holde fuspected, and hate the envious and mallicious nature and disposition of him that did it : for, they make vie of fuch men, no otherwife then as of poyfon, onely to ferue theyr turne, though they deseft the malignitie of it . And therefore, Augustus C.efar was woont to fay, I lone the Treason, but I hate the Traytor. And all wife Princes hold it for a rule, that where there is no bridle of Conscience, and seare of God,

expected.

there is no fidelity towardes man to bee

Chap. 6.

Of a young Councellor.

884

He that is talle to God will not be rue to man

Polidorus Vireil, in Heary.5.

When Princes are wife and learne to

Princes forme times difauow Plutarch in his

Platarch in his

We read, that Constantius Cafar, father voto the Emperour Constantine the Great, having commanded, that al fuch christians as would not adore his Gods, thould depart from his feruice : did (neuertheleffe banith all those that denved their Faith, and retained the others in his feruice and favour. Whereof hee gave this reason: That those who had so little Conscienca as to bee false unto their GOD, could not be true to him. And Henrie the fift, King of England, prefently after his Fathers death, banished from the court all fuch as had beene Councellours, Inffruments, or Companions of his rvots before, perswading himselfe, that they were not to bee trufted about his perfon. And so it commonly falleth out, when Princes are wife, and enter into due confideration of themselues, and of 20 their confeiences.

But fuch other Princes, as give themfelues ouer vnto deteftable Vices and finnes, and maketh no Confcience of anie thing, do not onely disauowe theyr owne Commissions, after that some Wicked acte is committed by their order: but also vse to picke quarrelles, or to take verie small occasions, whereby to make away the Instruments of their | 30 owne Wickedneffe, eyther to rid themfelues of the suspition, reproach or infamy thereof, or for the lealousie which they have of the maligne Natures of their Instruments; or for feare they may discouer their practises if they line; or sometimes for some other respects, God fo disposing (by his most just Judgements) to make them onely ferue for the Executors of his luftice vppon those, who preferred their owne feruice before

Iuftin in lib. 12.

Gods inflice

vponeuill in-

So did A'exander the Great at his fathers Obsequies, command publicke Iuflice ro be done uppon those, whom hee himselfe had secretly employed for to kil him. So did Tiberus the Emperour. disauow his Commission giuen vnto a Soldiour, to kill Agripps, telling him, that hee flould aunswere the matter before the Senate: As hee did also put to death Scianus his great fanourite, and Instrument of much mischiefe. And in the like forte, dealt Cafar Borgia with a fauourite of his. And so also have some in these our dayes, by divers and sundrie deuifes, beene made awaie in many

feuerall Courtes and Countreyes, when they had ferned the appetites of fome great personages, whome (for just respects) I will heere forbeare to Name. Which may ferue for an advertisement and warning vnto all men, to take heed how they fuffer themsclues to be imploied by any man, in matters which are vn- heed by ano lawfull and offenfue vnto GOD, Es therman fælix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum. Happie is hee, who can take heede by other mens harmes.

The tenth aduife which I give vnto a young Statist, is, that if his Prince doo him the honour, to make him of his Councell, to confider well, what is the Of the dutie dutie of a Councellour, to which purpofe, I will also set downe some Rules. Wherein neuerthelesse, I meane not handled in to frame an exact Councellour, as ciee- the tollowing Changer ro did an Orator, and Xenophon a Prince. and Castiglione a Courtier ; neyther yet do I take vppon me, to aduife old Councellours, whose experience must needes furpassemine. But onely to give some aduertisements, vnto such as haue not anie great experience or practife in matters of State. And for a finuch, as it requireth fome larger discourse, then were fit and convenient to profecute in this Chapter, it shall ferue for the subject

CHAP. VI.

of the next.

40 Other Generall Rules for a young Statist, aduanced by his Princes favour to bec of his Councell. What hee is to confider in himfelfe, in his Prince, and in the matters that are to bee confulted . And first, concerning the Councellour



H E poyntes which (in my fancy) are principally to be confidered by a young Councelfor, though they might be divided Ecce2

large to bee

Chap.6.

Princes that

tell them the

Flattery the

ruine o: Prin-

ces States.

Quint Curtius in Lib. 8.

How a Coun-

cellor ought

to admonish

his Prince of

Plutareb in his

Treatife of

lmonishing

ing their

haue all,

muth.

The points confidered in a yong Coun cellor, reduced to three

into manie members, yet may be well reduced to three heads. The first, concerning himfelfe; the fecond, concerning his Prince, and the third, touching the matters that are to be confulted. Of all which I will fay fornwhat, with fuch perspicuity and breuity that conveniently I

As for that which toucheth himselfe, he is to regard chiefely eight points. The first, that he procure by all good means, not onelie to have the reputation of vertue and religion : but also to be (indeed) truely vertuous and Religious, for two causes. The first, to obtain thereby the assistance of Gods grace, which howe necessarie it is, for the illumination of mans understanding : appeareth in our former Chapter of true Wisedome, Prudence, and Pollicie, to bee the especiall guiftes and graces of Almightie GOD, and no otherwaies to bee obtay-Numb. 3,4,5, 6,7,8,&c. ned, but by the observation of his com-

mandements.

The other cause, why it behooneth a Councellour to bee truely Religious and Vertuous, is, for that fuch is the force of Vertue, that it gineth credite to the possessions thereof, and dooth make them more easily to bee beleeved: and 30 their councell the better accepted. And therefore we fee, that all men of difcretion and judgement, do demaund Councell rather of those that are reputed wife and vertuous, then of wicked men, who onely haue a reputation of Wisedome. For, as Saint Ambrose sayeth; Where Wifedome and Vertue are contorned, Magna erit consiliorum (alubritas , There is all good and vuhole some councell to bee had. And all men (faith he) are willing to heare the wife and vertuous man, as well for the admiration of his wifedome, as for the loue of his versue. In which respect also he faith, that men addresse themselus commonly for Councell, to those who are more vertuous then themselues . For no man (faith he)hath reason to thinke him who is inferiour unto himselfe in manners, to bee his superiour in Wisedome and coun- 50

Furthermore, fuch is the dignitic and authoritie of Vertue, that cuill men bear a reuerend respect thereto, and stand (as it were) in awe of good men. W hereof we have an example in Herod, who al-

though he held Saint John Baptift in prifon, and would not followe his councell in the matter of his Dinorce : yet, for the reverence which hee bare voto his Vertue, hee confulted many other thinges with him, and followed his aduice therein. And, as the Holye Scripture fayth alfo, Metuebat eum . Hee feared

And no doubt but wife and Vertuous Princes, much more esteeme and respect the councell of wife men that are vertuous; then of others, of equall wit and judgement, that are vicious and Prouer.12,19 wicked: knowing that, as Salomon fayth, Consilia impiorum fraudulenta, The Councelles of the wicked are fraudulent . And more fraduthat hee who hath no care of his Conscience, and dutie towardes God, will haue no lesse care of his dutie towardes men.

The fecond point, is, that hee also gine fatisfaction vnto the worlde of his wifedome by the good and wife gouernment of his family. For no wife Prince ment of his can thinke him a fitte man to Councell him, or to gouerne vnder him, that cannot gouerne himfelfe and his owne Family. And therefore, Bafilius the Emperour aduised his Sonne, to choose those for his Councellours, who hadde giuen proofe and experience of theyr Wifedome, in the good conducte and direction of theyr owne prinate af- 2. de O fie.

fayres. Whereuppon also, Saint Ambrose faveth. An idoneum putabo, qui mihi & countellano consi sum, qui non dat sibi ? Can Ithinke ther, thar him fit to counce me, that cannot Councell fell himfelle. himselfe? For hee that is a Foole in 1 Tim 33+35 his owne bufinesse, can neuer bee wife in the businesse of other men. And therfore Saint Paule declaring the dutie of a Bythop, requireth, that hee bee such a one, as gouerneth well his owne family. For, Si quis (faith he) domni jua praeffe nefeit, quomodo Leclesia Dei diligentiam habebit. If a man cannot governe his owne house how hal hee gonerne the Church of

The third point is, that in all his specches and Conference with his Prince, hee vie all fincerity, trueth, and playnenesse, without Flatterie. For, although the common Proucibe fay; Objequium Turinin Andr. pmicos, Veritas odium parit; Flattery gay-

Marke, 6, 20.

The countell

A Councellor ought to have Family, and prinate af.

Ambrof. in Lib

No man fit to

A Conncellor

ouer shoot hemfelues is r contradict

> Arrian. in Lib. 8. de rebus Axand. Vnteafonable liberty of

there is nothing more pernitious to Princes the flattery; fo (by confequent) there is nothing more vnfit to beevled of Councellors. Whose office is, and especialicare should bee, to vindeceine their Prince in all things, wherein he is any way deceived, and to labour therein so much the more, by how much the leffe other men do it. Seeing one of the greatest infelicities of Princes, is, that all, or most Men flatter and footh them in all things, and few or none dare deale fincerely or plainely with them. In which respect Seneca faith; Quid omnia possidentibus dec st? Ille qui verum dicat. What wants he that bath all? A Man to tell him the truth. Which therefore the faithfull Councellour thould doe, for otherwise, the Prince shall live in con- 20 tinual crrour and ignoraunce of his owne Estate, and especiallie of his imperfections, yea, and in great perrill of ruine. For, as Quintus Curtius faith . Regum opes, &c. The States of Princes are oftener overthrowne by flattery, then by force.

neth friendes, and Truth hatred: yet, as

Neuercheleffe, if the Councellour haue occasion to admonish his Prince. in any error or fault of his: he ought to | 30 docit with great discreation and moderation. Ving (as Parifatis, Mother to Cyrus, was wont to fay) words of Silke, and launcing the fore (like a good Chirurgion) with fuch dexteritie : that hee may cure it, and not exasperate his Prince, and make him leffe cap, ble of his good councell. Those that offend in this kind, are commonly fuch, as prefume ouer-much, either on their owne 40 wits and power; or on their Princes weakeneffe; or on his ouer-great fauour and familiarity; or on the neede that he hath of them : or else perhaps, are of nature feuere, infolent, and paffionate, for fuch fometimes doe forget themselves, yea, and take a pride in contradicting or admonishing their Princes, with leffe duty and respect, then were convenient.

Such a one was Calisthenes, of whom Arrianus Writeth, that he made himfelfe odious to Alexander the Great: Tum ob intempestiuam liberatem, tum ob superbam flu titiam : Both for his vnleafobe libertie of speech, as also for his proud

Such a one alfo was a Philosopher that lived in the Court of Dionyfius the elder, a Tyrant of Sicilie. For, whereas the Tyrant (being delighted with his own Poems) was wont to impart them publiquely to certaine Philosophers, which lived in his Court, to have their opinions: there was one among the reft, who could not flatter, not endure the vanitie of the Tyrants humour ibut told him plainely, that his Veries were nothing worth, and that it was a shame to heare them. Where-with the Tyrant was so offender, that he comman-cated his Guard to take him presentie a way, and to carry him to the Mines, to worke there among other condemned fin of Sicily. perfons.

Afterward, the fame Philosopher be-

ing released, & returned to the Court.

A pleafane

at the fuite of his Friends: it chanced. that the Tyrant caused a certaine Poeme of his owne, to bee read againe in the presence of him, and all the other Philosophers, commaunding them to speake their opinions thereof. All the rest extelled the worke to the Skies; fome prayfing the inucrition, and others the vaine and grace of the Verfe. cuery one striving who should commend them moft : vntill it came to the turne of this Philospher, who, in stead of giving his centure, called fuddenlie to the Guards of the Tyrant, faying; Come Maisters, carry me away to the A bold, plaine Mines, for I cannot endure this extreame Philosopher. folly. The Tyrant being (as it chanced) in a good humour, tooke it not ill : but was content to put it off to a icit, and

laughed well at it. But this Philosopher seeking to anoyd The discreece silla, fell into Charibdie, for, by flying modelly of base flattery, he fell into another extre- rep efficient mity, to wit, impudent infolency, which to Alexander is no leffe wifit and abfurd for Councel- Quint. Curtine lors: who are to imitate the discreet & de reb. giftis prudent modelty of Haphestion, Coun cellor to A'exander the Great. For although he alwaics admonifhed Alexan-50 der difer cetly and freely, as occasion ferned: yet he ener did it in fuch fort, that it feemed rather to be Alexanders will and pleafure he should so do, then that hee challenged any fuch right to him-

The like stile ought a Councellour to vie, in contradicting or admonifying his Prince,

heads.

Eight points to be confidered in the Councellor himfelte. A Councellor ought to be truely vertuous and Religious. God doth 16fift and illuminate good ters of Coun

Vertue giueth reputation to the poffesiors

Ambrefide Offie.lib. 2 cap 10.

Whereverrue and wifedom concurre all good counexpected.

Ambref. Ibid.

The dignity of vertue is fuch, that euil men beare respect there-

ner Princes are to be spo ken too and admonished.

All speech

folency, or

contempt. 4

A wound at

better then

the kiffe of an

Prouer. 37.6

a friends hand

odious to

Princes.

enemy.

of passion, in

Prince obseruing exactly his disposition and humor, because no man is alwayes disposed alike, eitherto receiue contradiction, or to heare of his faults, especially in the presence of others. And therefore, fit time and place is alwayes to bee chosen for that purpose, and some plaufible preamble to be vsed of the Princes praises for some good parts of his:which (in fuch case) is no flattery, but a source to Vertue, and may ferue for a preparatiue to the pill of admonition, which hee meaneth to give him. So that hee deliuer it in fo good anxines, and with fuch dutifull respect, that the Prince may perceine, it proceedeth not of passion, or of a spirit of contradiction, or of audacious infolencie, or of contempt (al which are to Princes most odious, but of intyre loue and affection, for fo will hee (if hee 20 be wife) take the admonition in good part, and fay with Salomon, A wound at a Friends hand, as better then the Kiffe of an

To conclude, a Counfellor may hold

this rule, to speake alwayes in this man-

ner freely vnto the Prince himfelfe, al-

though it be of his errours, but neuer to

others of him, otherwise then in his ho-

the Prince bee neuera whit the better,

for the admonition, yet it may fuffice his

Councellor, to have done his dutie, and

not to be pertaker of his Princes faultes,

not (in all dutifull maner) aduife and ad-

monish him, as occasion should require.

And therefore, though he should feare

to incurre his displeasure for his plain-

science, and to say as Themistoeles did to

Eursbyades, who took vp a staffe to strike

him from his free fpeech: Strike mee fo,

neffe, yet he ought to discharge his con- 40

nour and commendation. And though 30

How a Councellour ought to fpeake to his Prince. and of his Prince.

Councellours by conviuency, are pertaas otherwise he should be, if he shoulde Princes faults.

that you heare me heereafter. Finally, a Councellor should not expect, that his Prince should alwayes follow his aduise, nor afflict himselfe much if he do not. For, though Princes give vnto their Councellors great libertie, to fay what they will: yet they do referue a 50 greater to themselves, that is to do what they lift. And thus much for the third

A Councellour ought to

The fourth point that a Councellour is to confider in himfelfe, is that it behoueth him to be graue and constant in his opinions, for lenity and inconstancie is a

most enident signe of folly. And to this end, it shall be necessarie for him, maturely to deliberate, and fully to confi- an euident der the matter propounded, before hee figne of folly, deliuer his opinion. For, as Seneca faith, Seneca in Pro-Sunt duo contraria confilio , festinatio et i- uerbijs. 1bidem ra, Two thinges are contrarie to Councell, Arift. in Ethic. Haft, and Anger. And againe, Deliberandum est din (faith he) quod statuendum est semel. The thing that is once to be determined, is to be deliberated by leyfure. And to the same purpose Aristotle faith, That a WHeman ought to councel flowly, and to execute (beedily. Therefore, he excludeth verie young men from councell in matters of State. For that (faith he) their naturall heate maketh them over-hastie and headlong, in giving their opinions . Befides, by realon of their want of experience, there doth not occure vnto them many reasons or difficulties to be considered : in which respect, they resolue eafily and speedily, and with lesse judgement. Whereas ancient men both by reason of their colder humour, and also of their greater experience(which ministreth vnto them more matter of discourse, and more doubts to be resolued) do determine flowly, and with far more iudgement. So that speedy resolutions, are arguments of weaknesse of witte, or want of judgement; and therefore, to bee thunned of all Councellors, as one farre more proper vnto Women:whole Councell (men commonly fay) is neuer to bee taken, but vppon a fuddaine, whereof I shall declare the reason heer-

The fifte point, is, to anoyde the other extreamitie opposite to lenitie, to wit; Obstinacie and Wilfulnesse, which is no leffe vnfit for a Wife Councellour, then the other. For, obstinancie is euermore accompanied with contempte of others mens Opinions, and contention, and is therefore a veric great Enemie vnto Refolution, which can neuer bee taken, where Obstinate and Contentious men, do meete together in a Councell.

This Defect, proceedeth common- From whence lie, either thorough great Pride and obilinacy in Prefumption of a mans owne witte, or ceedeth. elfe, of a falle conceite, that manie men have, that it is a shame for a Wife man to chaunge his opinion, which is farre otherwise. For althogh a wise man ought

de Benefi Cap.

Chap. 6.

Felly tor a

to change his

opinion, when there is just

Sentea in'lib. 4

neceffary xception to

the opinior

ofa wife man

dem. Ibid.

P'Hoin Lib.10

de Rep. Cap. 9.

councell.

Why old men

councell to be

fudden.

wife man mpared to good Game ler by Plato.

In what case a wife man may hange his o-

While the ehiefe and fundamenta casons of the defignement doc ftand good, the councell is

> Time alwaies affordeth new ifficulties.

not to doe it lightly, and without great reason; yet, when there is sufficient cause, it were great shame and folly not to do it. And therfore Senecathe Stoick, who according to the opinion of those of his Sect, held; That a wife man neuer changeth his opinion : expoundeth it in fuch fort, that eincludeth in the opinion of a Wife Man, a necessary exception, to wit; if nothing happen that may alter the case. And therefore hee alfo faith, that, It is the property of fooles, to affure themfe ues (ouer-much) of their counsels and determinations. And that a wife Manknoweth, what fway errour beareth in the affaires of Men : How uncertain all humaine things are : And how many accidents hinder good and wife designements. Whereupon he concludeth; That it is no shame for wife men to alter their opinions when occasion requireth. And Plato compareth a wife man to a good Gamester, Who doth occommodate his play to the chances of the Dice. And fo (faith he) should a wife Man accommodate his counfels and course of life to the occasions, which changing and varying with the time, doe often reautre new deliberation.

Of a young Councellour.

Neuertheleffe, it is heerein to be confions) is convenient only, when the occasions change the fundamentall and chiefe reason of the first resolution. For whereas in all matters of councell, many reasons may concurre to one end. whereof fome may be more important then other, and some one (perhaps) the ground and foundation of the rest: it falleth out other-whiles, that chaunge of times and variety of occasions . Loc 40 alter some confiderations and circumstances, and not the grounds and fundamentall reasons of the matter, in which case, the resolution is not to bee changed. For otherwise, men should be like Weather-cockes, which change with cuery winde: feeing time alwaies produceth fome new difficulties, and changeth some part of the reasons in all matters, that require any long time for the execution. Whereupon, there may follow some alteration of circumstance in the designement; though the refolution may fland good for the prin-

cipall. Wherefore, it were great temeritie and lenity in any Man, to condemne o-

ther mens councels; because some of the Motiues that induced them there- A Councell to, haue failed, or because the successe and denned, behath not (in the beginning) auniwered caute force of their expectations. As may appeare by he mone s have failed, the wife Photion of Athens who having diffwaded the Athenians, from a certain enterprise which succeeded well, and beeing reproached therewith by fome of his Advertaries, faid : I am right glad of the good successe, yet nothing repenteth Timoleon, et in me of mine opinion. This he faid, part-ly, because he fore-saw a bad sequell of their good beginning (as after it fel out) and partly, because a wife man dischargeth his part and duty, if his councell ning harb be wel grounded vpon good and found by times a reasons, although the successe bee not fo good as he expected. Confidering, that the eyent of all mens councels is onely in the hands of God, and cannot affuredly be fore-seene; but much lesse warranted by the wised one of Man.

To conclude this point, a Wife man Councelles oughtalwaies fo to ground his opini groundeu vpon sand councels vpon reason, confei-confeience. ence, and Iustice : that whatfocuer fue- and Iustice, ceedeth, he shall haue no just cause to neuer tobe repent or rerract the same . And there- repented. fidered, that this change (with the occa- 30 | fore Aristides, having faid to Dionylius the Tyrant (who demaunded one of his Daughters in marriage) That he had ra- Plutarch in Tither fee her burned, then married to a Tyrant : would never retract or recall his words againe, although it did cost him the life of his Sonne. For when the Tyrant had flaine his Sonne, and asked him, whether he was still of the same minde, concerning the marriage of his Daughter? He answered. Although 1 am forry for that which hath happened to my The constan-Sonne ; yet I doe not repent me of that which cy of Arifides I have faid. Which constancy of Aristides, Plutarch greatly commendeth: As proceeding (faith he) of a notable and compleat versue. And thus much for this fife

> The fixt point necessary in a Councellour, is Secrecy, whereof I have requisite in a faid somewhat before, and heere adde: Councellor. That Councellours must vnderstand, that their mouths are sealed up by their Princes, as Haphestions mouth was by Alexander the Great, who having Plutareh in A Thewn him a fecret Letter, faid nothing lexandio. elfe to him, but tooke off his fealing Ring, and put it to his lippes. This (1

bend of matters of State. Valer, Max. Lib. 2. Cap. 2 The Persians honoured Silence as a

Tit. Linius. in Lib. 42. The admira-

ble fecrefie of the Romaine Senate. Valer, Max, in Lib. 2. Cap. 2.

Some men are ouer-fecret, and fome too open.

The danger of taking information by obfcure que

Some intending to be fe-

fay) a young Councellour must vnder-stand, to passe betweene his Paince and him, when his Prince doth him the honour, to make him of his Councell, or to treat with him of matters of State. Wheroffecrecy is (as Valerius Maximus faith.) Optimum & tutifimum vinculum, The best and surest bond. And thereforeit was fo much efteemed among the Persians, that they honoured Silence for a God. And such was the care and respect that the Romaines had thereto. that when King Eumenes came into the Senate, to demaund affiftance against King Perfew: it was never vnderstood, (as Linie witneffeth)either what he faid, or what any answered, vntill the warre (which the Romans made at his request) was ended. Such being the fecrecie of the Romaine Senatours (though verie many in number) that, as Valerius faith, it feemed, that Not fo much as one Man heard, that which was committed to the eares of lo many.

Neuerthelesse, great discretion is to be yied herein : for a Man may as wel be ouer-fecret in some cales, as too open. I have noted fometimes, that fome great Princes and Councellors, for fear of discouring their designements, haue eyther for-borne to take sufficient information and enstruction, of such as could best isnorme them, and might have beene trusted, whereby they have gone blindly to work : or effe they have fought to inform themselves in clouds, by fuch darke and obscure questions, that they have beene falfly and ill informed. For the parties with whom they conferred, making a falle coniceoure of 40 their drift, and aunswering them according to their owne fenfe (far otherwife then they would have done, if they had knowne their meaning) have abused them against their wils.

Again, some there are, who intending to be very fecret, play, as a man may fay, wily beguile thefelues. I knew a Councellor, who being commaunded by his Prince, to give him his opinion in a 50 matter of exceeding great importance and secrecy: thought to informe himfelfe of fome circumstances to cunningly, that his meaning should not bee so much as gueffed at . But the party with whom he treated, being of an excellent

iudgment, presently vnderstood it, and

though he answered him to his great fa- An example tisfaction: yet, not thinking himselfe a-ny way bound to secrecy (because the Councellor neither had taken his oath nor his word, nor had shewne any confidence in him for that matter) wrote it to a great personage, with whom he had correspondence, by which meanes, it was (within amonth) fo publike, that it came into the Gazetta of Rome, & from thence was published throughout Christendome, as the Councellour himselse hath sithence told me. So that, in seeking information by Riddles & obscure questions, two inconneniences may be Information feared: the one to receive a false information, and the other, to discouer the designement against a mans will.

Therefore, to preuent thefe income- How informs niences, that when information must tions are to needs be taken (as in some cases it is abfolutely necessary, especially for enterprifes to be made in forraign countries, vnknowne to him who would lay the plot) it (hall be convenient, if a sufficient enformer may bee found, who is knowne to be of fincere conscience :to deale plainly with him, & to fhew confidence in him, taking (neuertheleffe) his oath for fecrecy, to binde him the more, and to vie other meanes of courteste and benefits to oblige him; yet to do this with the leave of the Prince for the Councellors better discharge. But when fuch a confident and fincere en- fidentinforformer cannot bee had any opinion is, that although it shall be good, to vse all possible meanes, to vnderstand what may be learned, without discouering the intention : yet neuerthelesse, no great foundation is to be made of an information taken by fuch a meanes, except it be of a matter of fact, wherein, no man (that knoweth the truth) can falfly enforme, except he will wilfullie lyc. For, in matters of discourse, depending vpon the judgement of the enformer, be hee neuer fo wife : fmall recko- when the in ning is to be made, whe he doth not fully vinderstand the intention of the proderstand the
dritted the pounder. Thus much concerning the

fixt point. The feauenth point, which a Councellor should consider in himselfe, is, that in the deliberation of all matters whatfoeuer : he be cleare and free from all paffion and perticuler affection, that

Paffion and affection dos blinde the iudgement.

When a con-

An informa-

to his owne

Platersh in hi Apotheg of Kings and

lique.

Councellous fhould le auc at the Councell-Chamber

Respects of ther mens Of a young Councellor.

A Councellour ought to paffion and perriculer afdion.

Saluft, in Cate-

Inflin.in lib.19

Enuy maketh

a man feme-

times enemy

Chap. 6.

is to fay, from all respects, eyther of loue, haired, or enuy to any. And this Ifay, for wife Princes are wont, exact ly to observe the humours and dispositions of their Councellors, & to make finall account of the adulfe or persons of fuch, as they finde to be subject to any of the foresaid imperfections. And with very great reason, for, as Salust faith. Non facile animus, &c. Them nde doth not easily fee the truth, where passion and affection beareth (way . Beside, passion not only blindeth the understanding of Man, but also dooth so corrupt his will: that although he fee the truth, yet he will not embrace it . Which Justine observed very well in King Antiochus, for when Hanniball had councelled him to inuade Italie: his Councell (faith Iu-Hine) was rejected, partly, because the chiefe Councellors and Fauourites of Antiochus feared, that if it were admitted, Hanniball might grow in more credite and fauour with Antiochas, then they; and partly, because Antiochus himselfe doubted, least his owne glorie might (in some part) be obscured, if he should be thought to doe any thing by Hannibals aduife. So pestilent is the past fion of enuy and emulation; that it ma- 20 keth a Man (sometimes) Enemie to his owne good, no lesse then of the pub-

Therefore Aristides of Athens, being fent Ambassadour with Themistocles, who was his Enemy, willed him at their departure out of the Cittie: that they might leave all their emulations behinde them at the Gates, least their private passions might hinder the pub- 40 lique good of the Common-wealth. And so in like manner, all Councellors that have any perticular quarrels, or difgusts among themselves: should House them at the Councell Chamber doore, when they enter in. And the like may also be faid, of therespects of private friendship, or of other mens greameffe and fauour with the Prince: which respects are (many times) no 5 lesse hurtfull in Councels, then Enuie or Hatred. For they make men conceale their owne indgements, because they will not difguit fome Friend or great Man, that holdeth a contrary opinion. In fo much , that it falleth out many times, that some favourite of the

Prince having once vetered his conceit, albeit none of the wifelt : carryeth afrer him all the rest without contradiction, and to the best opinions are either concealed, or not fo well debated as were convenient.

For the preuention and remedy of A prudent this inconvenience, the wife Cofmo de practie of the Medices, Duke of Florence, and Phillip the fecond, last King of Spaine, vicd to of Florence, & propound their most important matters to their Councellors, first by Writing commaunding them: to fet down their opinions also in Writing, with their reasons, and not to communicate the fame with any other. Afterward, if they thought it needfull, they affembled them in their presence, to heare them debate and defend their owne opinions; which proceeding (in my fancy) was very prudent. For to, enery Councellour gaue his opinion freely, without paffion, or respect to any other : & (for his owne honour and reputation) defended it so far as reason would beare him, whereby, matters were thorowlie bebated and discussed.

To conclude this point, Councellors must say of all perticuler respects, as Private friend Popilius the Romaine (being fent Ambaffadour to King Antiochus, his old triend) faide vnto him of their former amity: Facestat privata amicitia, Ge. Farewell private friendship, when publique matters are in hand. This (I fay) should Councellors, when they come to the Councell-Table, both fay and practife, laving afide all private and perticular respects, eyther to one or other, or vnto themselves. As having nothing else befortheir eyes, in all their deliberations: but the publique good; to wit, the the fernice of God, their Prince, and

their Countrey. The eight and last point, which I would with a young Councellour to that Councelconfider, concerning himfelfe, is: the lors incurre, daunger of punishment, both humane and Divine, which he shall incurre, if he to their Prin feduce or corrupt his Prince by early ces. Councell. Because the Prince himselfe, if ever he have the grace to fee his own errour: cannot but have and detest the Authour and Councellour thereof. As did King Henrie the fift, who repenting the riotous course of his youth: bannithed from the Court, all those which to their Prin-

The freedom of cuery Cau

cellors opinion to be given

Iulinin lib 24 flup not to be respected, when publike matters are in

What Councellor ought wayes before

Euill Couniul fonetimes

his Prince: yet he may justly feare the harred of the people, and his owne destruction to ensue thereof, as I have alfo fignified before (vpon another occafion) in Pierce Gauestone, the Spencers, and other Councellours of King Edward the second, and King Richard the 10

had milled and feduced him, as I have

partly noted before. And though he

escape the disgrace and punishment of

fecond.

To whom I may adde Emfon and Dudley, put to death by King Henry the eight, in the beginning of his raigne, to fatisfie the importunity of the people: who demaunded Iustice against them, for the cuill councell they had given to King Henrie the seaventh, in matters of exactions, impositions, and pecuniarie penalties.

And Plutarch also noteth, that the

Councellours and Fauourites of Apol-

lodorus, Phalaris, Dionyfius, Nero, and o-

ther Tyrants, were racked, flayed, bur-

ned, and other-wife most cruelly tor-

mented by the people. And tustile

(faith he) for that he which corrupteth or

seduceth a Prince, deserueth no lesse to bee

abhorred of all Men: then one that should

poylon a publique Fountaine, whereof all

Men must drinke. Seeing, that vppon

the Princes example and authority, de-

pendeth on the good or cuill estate of

all his Subiects. And therefore, hee

which mifleadeth the Prince, doth no-

table injurie to the Common-wealth:

and oweth the penaltie thereof, as well

to the people, as to the Prince him-

felfe. In which respect, Plutarch also no-

lour and Corrupter of Nero, that the

people (after the death of Nero) made

continuall instance for his punishment:

as for publique debt due to the Com-

mon-wealth, which at length they ob-

the people, doe exact this debt of a wic-

ked Councellour: yet hee thall be fure

if herefpect not, and fatisfie his luft ce

otherwise. For, if Not one'y they wnich

doe enill are worthy of death (as the Apo-

file faith) but alfo those, Qui consentiunt

facientibus , which confent thereto: much

more guiltie are the Councellors of e-

uill, who are sither the principall Au-

to pay it eternally to Almighty God, 50

But though neither the Prince nor

tained of Otho, Successour to Galba.

teth of Tigellinus, a wicked Councel- 40

Plutarch in his Treatife that Philosophers flould conuerfe with

The wicked

A wicked neth a publique Founsaine.

Plutarch in

The danger

Rom. 1, 31.

thours thereof, if they invent it; or abettors and affociates in the highest degree, if they approue and ratifie it. And therefore, how hatefull fuch are to Almighty God, it appeareth by the examples of Achitophell and Human, the one Councellour to Absolon, and the other to Ahalnerus, whose wicked councels Goddid not onely Frustrate and Infatuate, as the Scripture fpeaketh : but alfo punnish most exemplarely in this life, making the one of them his Instrument, to execute Inflice vpon himfelfe, and turning the wicked councell of the other, to his owne destruction. Also the like may bee observed in Gods iust punishment, vpon Cardinall Wolfey, and some other Councellours of latter

And Phillip de Commines Scriously noteth, how a Councellor vnto the Duke | Phil. Com in of Bourgundie, called Monsteur Coutay, Cron. au Roy. hauing given cruell Councell vnto the Duke (to put to-death certaine Hoftages of Liege) lined not long after. Which some (who were present, and What comise heard him) did in a manner prognosticate, faying ; That they would warrant bim. he would not line a yeare to an end. Which (faith he) fell out to be true, for he dyed within a short while after. Thus then it appeareth, how true the Latine Pronerbe is : Confilium malum consultori pessmum, Enill Councell is worst to the Counceller. This shall suffice for those points which a young Chuncellour ought to confider in himfelfe.

CHAP. VII.

What a Councellour onght to consider in his Prince: Namely; his Conscience; his Commodity; and his Reputation.



Councellor is to confider in his Prince, A Councello (principally) three thinges his Confidet in his Prince thinges : his Confci- his confcience ence, his Commondity, and his Reputa-

tion. Of which three, I place a Commodity in the midft, because it is to bee ballanced and weighed with both the

mighty God in this life for

Haman and

Achitophell pu-

their wicked

and reputati

Chrison To 2. conció 4,de La-7.170.

Conscience placed in the foule of man as a Tudge of his actions.

D.The quest li 2.4r.6.1. Conscience is a natural law,

alwayes a-

other: feeing, nothing can bee truelie commodious, which is not agreeable to both, and no temporall commoditie can recompence the losse of eyther of And first, to speake of Conscience.

The word Confesence is diverfly under-

stood, and commonly taken for an Act,

confilling in the application of our

knowledge to our actions. For that,

Canscientia is Scientia cum alio Knowledge

with another thing. In which fenfe,

Conscience may erre, when we erre in

Knowledge, or apply our true Know-

ledge erroniously to our actions. And

therefore I will not treat of Conscience

heere in this sense; but onely as it is the

first natural habite in the Soule of man,

which neuer erreth. And so Conscience

is the furest and highest part of reason,

whereby we doe naturally discerne betwixt

good and euill, rejecting the euill, and ap-

proouing the good. Wherevpon grow-

eth remorfe and repentance in our

Soules, after an euill act; and content-

ment, after a good. In which respect,

Origen faith, that Confcience, is Rector

& padagogus anima, &c. The Gouernour

Saint Basile, as Thomas Aquinas noteth,

called it Naturale indicatorium, The Na-

tural! facultie of judgement. Whereof S.

Augustine Speaketh, when he faith, that

there are in the Soule of Man, Certaine

infal'ible rules, true and incommutable

lights of vertue, wherby enery one con-

ceineth and judgeth truely, of the gene-

Man. S. Chrisottome Speaking of Con-

intentions. Whereupon it followeth,

that after any finne or offence is com-

mitted, a mans owne Conscience justly

judgeth and condemneth him, without

any other Accuser or Witnesse, then

rall principles of the office and dutie of 40

(bed reprodued, and chastifed.

and pedagogue of the Soule, whereby it is diverted from eaill, moved to good, admoni-

What the word Confcience fignifi-

Chap. 7.

Thom. Aquin.2 P. 24.2.2.dr. Cop. 4.

ldem. 1. P. 79 Q. 79. Ar. 13.

The definition of Confei

Remorfe of

Origen.in Lib.z in Epist. ad Ram. Cap. 2.

> S.Bafil. apud D 1 hum. 1.P.Q. 79.Ar.13.Ca.

August in lib. de Lib. arbit. Cap. o.

> science, faith . Alm ght God bath placed it in the Soule of man, as a sudge, which is ener vigilant, and attentine to his actions, incorruptible, inexorable, inflexible, and fearthing into his very cogitations and

> > himfelfe. Laftly, Thomas Aquinas calleth it Lex naturalis, Anaturall Lam, or the Law of Nature, by the light whereof, the verie Painims know those thinges which are commaunded by the Law of God, as

the Apostle restifieth, faying : The Gent | greeable to tiles who have not the Law (that is to fay, God. the written Law of God) doe by nature Rom 2, 14, the thinges contained in the Law, they buuing not the Law, are a Law unto them-felnes. Which shew the effect is of the Law written in their Hearts, their Confetence also bearing witnes, and their thoughts accusing one another, or excusing in the day of Iudgement. Thus faith the Apostle. Who doe ac-Wherby it appeareth, that those which cording to line according to the rule of reason, the Law of God, and the Law of Nature Confeience. (which are alwaies conforme one to ahother) do according to Confeience: and and on the contrary fide, those which decline and fwerue from any of them,

do against conscience.

Now then, for a fmuch as eternall felicitie dependeth, vpon the integritie & purity of Conscience, in which respect our Saujor faith : Beati mundo corde de. Bleffed are the cleane in heart, for they shall fee God: it followeth, that nothing can be truly commodious, which is contrary to Conscience. For, whatsoever hindreth our greatest good & commodity, that is fay; our Saluation, and draweth vs also to the greatest miserie that can be, to wit; to eternall damnation : the fame is not good and profitable, but mischieuous and pernitious. For, as I noted (elfc-where) out of our Saujors words : What doth it profit aman to eain the whole world if he loofe his fonle? And therefore Saint Augustine faith very well, that hee which councelleth a Man contrary to his Saluation, hath Pallium consulentis, & venenum perimentis: The Cloake of a Councellor, and the

Poylon of a Killer. Whereupon it followeth, that the first and principall thing, which eneric Councellour ought to regard, is, that his counfell be fo grounded upon Conscience: that God benot offended, nor his Princes conscience wounded therewith, which latter were (of it felfe) no fmall infelicity, though God fhould not otherwise punish the enillact . For, as on the one fide; There can be no greater happinelle in the life of Man, then the tranquility and quietneffe of Conscience , 25 S. Augustine faith: So, on the other fide, there can bee no greater miscrie or torment, then Notte, deque foum gest are in pettore sestem, To carrie day and night the

Math. 5, 8. Nothing trul commodious that is againft

Mat. 16,26.

August in P/alme. 119.

The principal ought to re-

No greater ti anquility of Confrience,

August. de ciuit. Dei. in Lib.

Іниспа!!.

Testimony

Polid. Virgil. in Hen. 4.

Euill Councellors hatefull to the punished by them. To Stowe . in Henry. 8.

Princes.

Councellors of divers Tyrants notably punnished.

Councellor like to one that poyfo-

Otho. The punishment of a wic ked Councellor, is a debt due to the wealth.

ofeternall damnation t a wicked Con

Testimonie of a Mans wickednesse in his owne breast. And although Princes do not alwaies

(at the first) feele the pricke of Consci-

ence, while the pleafure or commodi-

ty of wicked councell is yet fresh : ne-

uertheleffe, afterward they are flung,

and vexed there-with at one time or o-

ther. Such beeing the Nature of the

Worme of Conscience, that though

fometimes it feem to fleepe: yet other-

whiles it gnaweth and bitteth bitterlie.

as Saint Chrylostome witneffeth. Least if

it were continuall, it should not bee suppor-

ted . and if were not frequent, it might

quickly be contemned or forgotten. But

howfocuer it may feem to fleep in prof-

perity, it neuer faileth to prick and ffing

them . For, as S. Gregorie faith ; Culpa

claudit oulos, & pena aperit; Offence, or

sin shuts the eyes, and punnishment openeth

them. To which purpofe alfo, lob faith;

Cum reddiderit Deus, tunc fcient; When

God shall reward him, according to mis de-

ferts, then he shall know it, that he hath fin-

ned. The Children of Jacob, being taken

for fpies, and detained in Ægipt : fel pre-

fently into acount of their fin, in felling

their Brother lofeph, faying ; Merito hoc

patimur, &c. We fuffer this worthily. And

Mauritius the Emperor, seeing his Chil-

dren flame before his face, and himfelfe

alfo defigned for the flaughter, acknow-

ledged Gods Inflice, faying : Influses

Domine . & c. Thou art inst o Lord, and thy

iudgement is right, and full of equity. The

like may be noted in Alphonfus King of

ken, and infinite others, whom I omit

And this al wicked Councellors ought

well to confider and feare, in respect of

the hurt that may enfue thereby, as wel

to themselnes, as to their Princes : be-

cause the worm of conscience breedeth

not onely remorfe, & repentance of the

euill act; but also hatred, both of the

councell and the Councellor. As it did

King Adelftane, the first Monark of Eng-

land, after the entrie of the Saxons, who

being feduced by the bad councell, and

falle fuggestions of one of his favorites:

banished his Brother Edwin vninftly,

commaunding him to bee fent to Sea,

with onely one Seruant, and in a Boat

for brenities fake.

in aduerfity, giuing testimony to wicked men, of Gods institudgement vpon 2

Nogreater mifery, then tormented Confrience.

The worme of confeience byteth at one time or other

Christo,in 16. Luc. Con: io. 4. Why the fling of Confcience is frequent, and

Gregor in Iob. Sione fluttes the eyes, and openedi thé. lab. 11, 19.

Gen. 43, 21.

Nxephorus.in Lib. 8. Cap. 40

Guicciard in Lib. 1. Cap. 22 Num. 6, 7, 3.

Remorfe of Conscience breedeth ha tred of the e. uili councell Councellor.

Guliel. M.ilmelb in Lib. 2. Matth. we,"monast. 18.934.

thed. Which when King Adelst ane vnderstood, he fell into the account of his owne offence, and fo much repented it, that he not only tooke you him feuen yeares harty contrition: but also grew by little and little, to detest and abhorre his fauourite, who had councelled him thereto, infomuch, that in the end, he did cut off his head, taking occasion vpon certaine words of his. For he beeing his Cup-bearer, and coming one day to giue him drinke, in a follemne publique Featt: channeed to stumble with one foote, and ver to recover himfelfe with the other, faying; So one Brother helps another. Whereupon, the King remembring the loffe of his Brother, was fo moued therewith: that hee caused him

Naples, of whom I have formerly foo- 40 ned by the Prophet, with the spoile of his Pallace, and captinity of his posteri-

ty, which afterward was fulfilled. But of al other acts against conscience, for which God punnisheth Princes and their States, none are more pernitious to State : then fuch as are committed, with intention and hope to benefit the State. For how little focuer fome of them may feeme to be in their owne nature: yet they have one circumstance, which doth greatly agrauate them, and maketh them very havnous in the fight

without Oare or faile, wherein he periprefently to be taken and executed.

Furthermore, a Councellor is to confider, that counceling his Prince against Counceller his conscience: he endangereth not only his Princes Soule, but also his temporall ftate, expofing him and it to the inft punifhment of Almighty God, vpon whose will dependent the States of fence, God all Princes, as I have largly prooued already.Beside, no manknoweth, for how finall an offence, in the fight of man; State. God may punish a Prince in his person or State. Moyfes, for a litle diffrust in the promite of God, dyed before he entred into the Land of promise. King Saule was rejected of Almighty God, and difpossessed of his kingdom; for referring fome part of the spoile of Amalecke, at the request of the people, contrary to the commaundement of the Prophet. Dauid was punnished with the losse of 70000. of his Subjects, for numbring them. And Ezcehias for his vaine glory, in shewing his treasure to the Ambassa- 4. Reg. 20.13, dors of the King of Babylon : was threat- 14,15,16,17

> No wicked tate, then that which is given for the

God doth infily turne A memorali pollicies to of the contri-

How a wicked endangereth his Prince, weth for how fmall an ofwill punnifi

his Cup Bra.

Num. 20, 14. 1 Reg. 15, 11. Deut. 1,33.

of God, feeing that wicked pollicies do commonly proceed, of diffriell or lacker of beleefin the providence of God. For no man, who fincerely believeth; what all States depend upon Godsmill and prouidence; can with any reason perfivade hinfelfe sthat any thing which is offenfine to god, may be now for Hate. And therfore ho marvaile; f Almightie God, who of his luttice punitacto fins many times betten by the fine meaneswhereby they offend him : doorh often terne the wicked pollicie of Machinilans to their owne ouerthrow, orday-

leaft the Children of I/rue! nught mul

State: oppreffed them wrongfully, and

commaunding that their Male children

flould be cast into the River, as toone

as they were borne. Neuertheleffe, the

more they were opprefied, the more

they encreased and multiplyed: and,

thorow the special providence of God

Moy/es was fauch drowning, and nou-

rished by Pharachs owne Daughter. And

by his ministry, the Children of Mrnett

wer delinered, Egypt fpoyled, and Phase

rach himselte with all his Army drow-

ned. So it also fell out to the tenes who

fearing leaft Christ (it he should he a-

ny time) would draw to many to be-

lieue in him, that the comains might ca-

fily destroy their Nation and Temples

for want of people to defend the fame:

refolued to kill him, and to drew yppon

themselves & their Temple, the centiti-

ction which they fought to prenent.

God fo disposing, for punishment of

their wickednesse, that the domaines end

afterward vitterly deftroy their Temple

and Countrey, as I have amply related

before. And Herevpon S. zinguftine no-

tably faith : That while for feare of coling

their temporall State; they continued the

of Almighty God, may been oted in

King Astrages, who fearing that his

Daughtersaffue might deprine him of

the Kingdome: thought to present it,

by the marther of her Sonne Cyrus,

commaunding Harpsens to deftroy him

as foone as he was borne . But Godfo

eternall : they inst y lost both.

tiply over-much, to the daunger of his 20

ning that (as Sa omon faith.) Questinet impins vernat furerenm : That i bich the nvicked manifeareth, may feller bon hem. So it fell out to Pharach, who fearing

Chapir.

An example of Pharaob. xod. 1, 16.

Exod.72,36.

Exud.14,18.

An example of the lewes. Tohn. 11, 57.

August Tract.

talin in Lib. . An example of King Allia-

3,4. in Lib."

disposed, that the Child was faued, contrary to the expectation of them both. and that afterward, he dispossessed Altiages of his Kingdome, with the iffi Mancock Harpagus, whom Affrag I hae made the Instrument of his Wickednelle. So alto it happened to Amulius, who thinking to affore his owne State. by the murd'r of his two Nephewes, Komulus and Remus : Caufed thenito be Rosula layed foorth in the Woods, when they A example were new borne, to the end, that they o King Ann might be denoured of will beattes, or perithother-wates. Whom (nenertheleffe) it pleafed God to preferie thein;

Observations in a Prince.

and by the meanes of Romulus; to dilpossesse smulus of his Kingdome. Burto speake of Christians. In the time of the Emperous Valentinan the Pool Date in this, Attita, the Scythian, and King of Miller and the Haller lum Dei; The Scourge of God) invaded limiter on d the Romaine Empire, with an Aimic horge of of eleanen hundred thouland Men, and Goal having alreadie poff fled himfelie of all Pannonia, (called Hungaria euer fince) paffed thorough Germany into France, vfing all kindes of cruelties vppon all fortes of Christian people, threatning vtter ruine and destruction, as well to Christian Religion, as to the Romaine Empire. Wherevoon, the famous Captame Atim, beeing affilted with Theo dorieke, King of ti e Gothes, and chuers

which battaile, there were that e an Anhundred hundred fourefcore thousand on both a dieure fides, and Attila ouerthrowne in fucl. Jand then fort sthat he had no meanes to faire his mane mone owne person, but by returne himselfe battale. into his Campe, where hee fortified himselfe. Neuerthelesse, hee might haue beene eyther flaine or taken, and Christendome thereby deliucred of a most potent Enemie if Aties would have done his endenour thereto. But he preferring reaton of State, before canting true Christian zeale, and Gods fervice

Alfo, the like luftice and judgement 50 ipared him, fearing left if he were viterly ouerthrown: the Gothes (who had all come conte-ready conquered all Spaine, and a great encededing part of France) would be far more daun- and creating gerous to the Romaine Empire, beeing want and then free from the feare of Attila, who was comon enemy to both. For which respect, he suffered him to escape with

Platnebin

other Princes; prefented him battaile in France, not farre from Orleans. In

are boundedone.

Attila more

hurrful to the

Romaine Em-

pire, then be fore his spa

Blondies in De-

ad. 8 Lib. 1.

Baron.dn.452

the Reliques of his Army into Hungary: which (by the iust iudgement of God) turned as well to the destruction of Ætius, as to the great daunger of the Empire. For Ættus being returned most triumphant to Rome, fell shortly after into the difgrace of the Emperor, who suspected : that he had spared Ætius, to the end to make himfelfe Emperour by his affistance, whereupon he flew Ætius with his owne hand. And attila having (within a while) repaired his Army:was more terrible and noifome to the Roman Empire, then he had bin before. For he came into Italy, putting all to Fire and fword: he razed Aquilleia to the ground, tooke Pauia, facked and destroyed Millaine, and marched towards Rome to befiedge it. Which he had done, if he had not beene diverted from it by Pope Lee 20 the great: who going himselse in per-son to him, perswaded him to desist from his enterprise, and to retire himfelfe into Hungary, which he did presently. But to return to Ætim; we fee herein the bad successe of his policy. & how cad. 1. Lib 2. in the bad successe of this posity, when he preferred reason of state, before confcience, and the service of Almighty Hereto I may adde fome others of la-

ter time, of whom I have also spoken

before, vpon other occasions; as Calar

Casar Borgia of Machianels Prince. Guicciard. in Lib. 6. Hift.

The Queene men,An. 1542.

Iob. 5, 13.

Borgia, the Mirror of Machianels Prince: who determining to poylon Cardinall Cornetti, poyfoned his own Father and himfelfe. In like manner, the Queen of Hungarie, thinking to maintain her felfe and her Son, in the vniust possession of that kingdome, against Ferdinand, then 40 King of the Komains, and afterward Emperor : craued avde of Solyman the great Turke, by whom, both the and her Son were deprined thereof. Hereby it may appeare, how daungerous and pernitious all Councelles or attemps against conscience, areto State, in refpect of the offence of him, on whose will depend all States, and who, as lob faith : Apprehendit (apientes in astutia corum, &c. Ouertaketh the wife Men of the World in their owne craft and subtilty, and the counfell of the wicked is made foolifh. Therefore it may be truely faid of Machiauillian Princes, and their wicked Councellors, as the Prophet faid of the King and Councellors of Ægypt. Stulti

Principes, &c. The Princes are Fooles, and Elay. 16,9,10 their wife Counsellours have given foolish Councell: the Lord bath cast among them the Spirit of giddinesse, and hath made them stagger and erre in all their works, like a recling and vomiting drunken Man.

As for reputation, which is also called Honour, Estimation, Fame, Good- tion of the Name, or Credit, no small regard is to Prince gren be had therero, when there is any queftion of the Princes commodity : confidering, that of all externall goods, it is the principall and most precious, and (as Thomas Aguinas affirmeth) Most like to the goods of the minde. Wherevoon D. Thom. 114 Salomon faith : Melius est bonum nomen, 73. 41.263 quam divitia multa , Agood Name is better then great Riches. Which is most euident in matter of State, for that reputation conferueth the States of Princes many times, no leffe (or rather more) then wealth and force.

In which respect, Tiberius Cafar was Cornel. Tacito wont to fay, as Tacitus noteth . That Lib.4. And although the deliberations of all other men. doe commonly confist in the confideration of utility and profit : yet the State of a Prince is such, that he ought principalite to respect Fame and Reputation. And the reason is, for that the losse of reputation, is not onely the figne, and (as I may fay) the preamble of a Princes fall : but alfo the occasion thereof many times. Because, therewith decayeth and fal-leth(commonly)theastection of frends, and the respect, feare, and obedience of a Princes to Subjects, whereuppon followeth the puration. Subuction of States.

Now then, whereas the reputation of Princes confisteth especially in foure whereinth things, to wit; Wisedome, Valor, Vertue, and Power: all councell (tending to commodity) is to bee weighed with the estimation thereof, for nothing that may impaire the honour of the Prince in any of these, can be accounted truelie commodious for him. Therefore Phillip de Comines aduiseth, touching the Princes Wisedome, that if he bee Phillip, de com not verie wife, and of goodpartes: [49, 57. great care be had, that Strangers be not admitted to his presence, especiallie to treat with him, leaft the discouerie of his imperfection in that behalfe, may blemish his Reputation, and animate his Enemies to contemne him. For Du Haillan in the French Historiographers affirme, Charles le fage. that !

Charity great beauties in a Prince.

Observations in a Prince. Chap. 7.

> that the opinion which men had, of the Wiscdome of Charles the fitt, King of Fraunce, called the Wife: anayled him more against the English, then his force, in so much, that the dispatches which he made in his Chamber, were more feared then his Armies in the Fielde.

The like also is to be faid, of the opi-

nion of Valour in a Prince, which ma-

keth him no leffe redoubtable vnto his

Enemies, then beloued of his Friends

and Subjects. Whereas the opinion

of his effeminacy or balencife of mind.

maketh him contemptible to all men.

and often caufeth the deposition and

destruction of Princes ras it did to Sur-

danapalus, the great Affirian King; 10

Chilperick, King of Fraunce, to West As.

no the Emperour, and to many others 20

And as for vertue (wherein Liu-lude

Religion alfo) Aristotie teacheth, that

the onely reputation and opinion ther-

The reputa-

tuffin.in Lib.t Paulus Aemili-Nameler Chron

The reputa-

Councellor,

Arift. in Lib. 5. The reputation of versue and Religion.

Iudith. 5, 20,

Matthens Pa-

of: is a notable flay and prop to a Princes State. In respect, that all Men commonly conceine, that a vertuous and religious Prince, is in the favour and protection of Almightic GOD. And therefore Achior, chiefe Captaine 30 of the Ammonites, councelled Holophernes, when hee made Warre vpon the Children of Ifraell: To informe him felf, whether they had committed any great offences towardes their God, whereby they might loofe his fauour. Affuring him, that otherwise it would bee in vaine to affaile them, because their God would defend them. And the like conceit it feemeth, that Leolin Prince of Wales, had of 40 Henrie the third, King of England, for, when certaine Byshops (who were fent to treat with him, to reduce him to his obedience) threatned him with the Kings great power and forces : he aun-Swered. That he feared more his Prayers and Almes giving then his Armses. Mcaning, that hee doubted, leaft in respect of his Picty and Charity, God would protect and affift him : and that other- 50

wife, he would little effecte his force

and power. So much it importetha

Prince, to have the reputation of ver-

tue and Religion, which ferneth for a

Bridle to his Enemies, both Domesti-

call and Forraigne, to with-hold them

from all attemps against him. Beside, it

caufeth that his faults and errors are evther not beleeved; or more eafily excufed, and the blame thereof laid upon his Councellors.

And for these causes, Machianell also councelleth his Prince, to procure (by all meanes) to have the reputation of a religious, iuft, and vertuous Prince: though he teach him withall, to bee a most wicked Tyrant. Wherein I canot omit by the way, to note the abfurditie of his doctrine, notably repugning and contradicting it felfe. Seeing, he will have his Prince to feeme a Lambe, and be a Wolfe, and to make thew of a Saint, and yet to be a Devill indeede. Which is more possible, then, as the Comicall Poet faith : Cam ratione infauire: To bee madde with reason. For all feigned thinges (faith Cicero) fade and fall avvay like Flouvers, and nothing that is diffembled, can long last. Where our can last long. Saujour himfelfe alfo confirmeth, faying expressely of Hypocrisic. Attendite, or. Biware of the Leanen of the Pharifes, That is to fay; of Hypocrifie. For nothing is (ecret that shall not be revealed nor any thing hidde that had not bee knowne.

And this is more evident in dissembling and hypocriticall Tyrants, then in any other fort of Men. Because, foviolent is the flame of tyranny; that it breaketh through the weake and clouen Walles of Hypocrific, and difconereth it felfe to the World. Such being the State of publique persons, and especiallie of Princes (whose actions are subject to the eves and centures of all Men) that their least faultes cannot paffe, eyther vnknowne, or vncontrouled of the people.

As Plutarch affirmeth, notably aduiing Princes, to have an effectall regard vn.o all their actions: because their very for those that leaft defects or imperfections are noted. Which he confirmeth with examples of divers Princes : as of Pompey the Great, noted of fingularity, for fcratching his Head with one Finger; Lucullus, cenfured to be ouer delicate in his Dyet; the famous Scipio, blamed for much fleeping ; and C.efar, for going ill girded. What shall wee fay of tyrannicall Actes, fuch as Machianill commendeth in his Prince: I meane Murthers, breach of promifes, and Ffif 2

Machi.inPrinc. uifeth his Prince, to feeke to haue the reputation ot Religi-

on and Vertue. The absurdity of Machiane's Doctrine.

Terent, in

Cicero de Offie. Nothing that is diffembled

Math. 16, 6.

or concealed.

The leaft de feets of Prin ces are comto then Sub-

Plut arch in his Enftractions manage matters of State. No bypocri-fie can fuf-file to couer Tyrranny.

Hypocrific encreaseth the hatred of God and man against a Tylob. 20, 27.

The reputation of true & not of feigned vertue requifite in any Prince,

What true vertue in the Prince worketh in the fahiects.

What are the effects of vice

Concerning truth and fidelity in any Prince, in his Oaths, promi-fes and word,

Falfbood and deceipt, dan-gerous and damnable. oaths, frauds and deceipt, and all kind of in-Iustice can any man of reason think, that the same can be covered with any Cloak of Hypocrifie? Or can a people be so simple or senslesse, as not to know and fee a tyranny, when they behold the manifest effects, and sectoo heavie a weight thereof in themselves ? Therfore, what elfe can follow of Hypocrify in a Tyrant, but that his Subicets thall hate him much more, and the fooner conspire his querthrow, as of one no leffe odious to God then to man? wher by the Scripture shal be fulfilled, which faith; The heavens fall reveale the iniquisy of the Hypocrite, and the Earth Shallrife

Now, concerning the reputation of Vertue, which is necessary for the confernation of a Prince : it must be grounded voon true vertue, and not voon vain shewes, & hypocriticall diffimulations. For, as true Religion, Iustice, & Vertue (ioyned with princely power) do engender in the Subjects admiration, respect, reuerence, & loue towards their Prince: euen so impiety, in-iustice, and intemperance in him, do breed in the fubiects either hatred, or cotempt of his person. For of the crimes of implety and in Iuftice (as periury, deceipt, and crueitie) proceedeth hatred ; and of the vices of intemperance (as lasciniousnesse, drunkennesse, and such like) is engendred contempt, whereof I purpose to discourse more at large hereafter. Neuertheleffe, I think good to fay fomewhat more in this place, concerning one speciall vertue, very requifite in a Prince for his reputation: to wit, truth, fidelity, and constancy, in the exact observation of his oaths, promifes, and word. Wherof I am the more willing to treat, because Machiavill alloweth and commendeth all maner of falfhood, deceipt, treachery, and periury in a Prince, when he may hope to gaine, or to benefit his flate thereby. But how impious and abfurd his doctrine is in that behalfe, yea, and how pernitions to Princes & their States: it will the more evidentlie appeare, if we confider, how dangerous and damnable all falthood and deceipt is to any Common-wealth, for the confernation whereof nothing is more neceffary then truth and fidelity, as well in the Prince, as in the people.

Therefore Cicero teacheth, that Fides, which we may call Fidelitie (confifting, as he faith, in Veritie, and constant performance of wwordes, Promifes, and Couenants) is Fundamentum Iustitia, The Foundation of Iustice, which is the especiall prop and flay of State. In which Idem. pro Sext respect, he calleth it; Commune omnium | Rof. prafidium; The common defence or refuge of all Men. And also faith, that Nullares vehementius rempuplicam continet, quam fides. Nothing doth more firmelie de Offic. unite and bold together the Commonwealth, then Fidelitie. And Valerius Maximus calleth it : Venerabile numen, & certissimum humana salutis pignus; A venerable and Diuine power, and the most fure pledge of humane securitie. And the 2.413. Romaines so much esteemed it, that they builded and dedicated a Temple to it, as to a Goddeffe, in which Temple, all Leagues, Truces, Couenants, and important Bargaines, were publiquely made and fworne: which were fo religiously observed, that who foeuer brake them, was held for a curffed and damned Creature, and vnworthy to live in humaine focietie. And with great reason, for, if falshood and fraud were permitted to have courfe in com- Iffalthoods mon-wealths: what Traffique or Com- fraude were merce with Straungers or Friendes? permitteds What affurance in Leagues with For- no Comm raigne Princes, in Contracts and Marriages, in Promises and Bargaines, and in buying and felling ? What Loue? What Society ? What Commonwealth? Which confistesh in the communication of Commodities one with another; and flourish so much the more. by how much cuery one tendereth, and defireth the publique good, more then his owne: in which respect, it is called Respublica, that is to say, Weale-publique. And therefore, if truffie and faithfull dealing should faile among Men: there lique good wold beno more civill fociety among ft men, then amongst Tygers and Beares, Foxes and Wolues, Cats and Dogges. Which the Apostle infinuateth notably, when hee exhorteth the Ephelians, and (in them) all other Christians, to vie all Sincerity and truth one with another, because wee are all combined in one Mysticall Bodie. Propter quod (faith hee) deponentes mendaci-

um Ge. Therefore, laying afide all lies, let

de Offic. Wherein Fi delity confi-

1dem. Lib. 1

Valer Mer in Lib. 6. Cap. 6. Tit.Liui.inLib

litie of the Prince rehis owne

How the fide-

eueric one feake the truth to his Neighbour ; Quoniam (umus innicem membra; Because wee are all Members one of arother. Heerevoon it followeth, that fideli-

Fidelitie most necessary in the Prince for confernation mon-wealth.

Trust & con

fidence one

molt requifice

in another

Chap.7.

ty is not only necessary in the Subjects. but also in the Prince, for the conferua tion of the Common wealth. For, feeing nothing is more requifite, for maintenance of the Polliticall body, the the vnion of the head with the members thereof, that is to fay; of the Prince with the people, and nothing more neceffary thereto, then their truft and confidence one in another, which cannot be, where there is no fidelity: It tolloweth, that nothing is more requilite, for confernation both of the Prince and people, then fidelity in both; without the which, neither can the fubicets affure themselves of their Princes protection, nor the Prince be fatisfied of his Subjects Loyalty.

And to speake heere particularly of

the Prince, it is to bee confidered, that

the want of fidelity and fincerity in him,

is most dangerous : not onely vnso the

Common-wealth, but also to himselfe.

As it will be enident, if wee weigh the

force and effect, of the good or bad ex-

ample of the Prince, and how porent a

Motiue it is, to induce his Subjects to

vertue or vice. Seeing, as Salamon faith,

Qualis eft Rector Cinitatis, tales funt habi-

tantes in ea : What manner of Man the Ru-

ler of the Cittie is, fuch are they that dwel i

therein. Therefore (I fay) that as the

example of the Princes fidelity, dooth

redound both to the good of the Com-

mon-wealth, and also to his ownese-

curity (because the people doe learne

thereby, to be not onely faithfull vnto

one another, but also dutifull and loyal

towardes him:) euen fo, the example

of perfidious and double dealing in

him, dooth worke the contrary effect,

and teacheth his Subjects to be no leffe

faithleffe and treacherous toward him,

then fraudulent and treacherous one to

destruction, as to the hurt of the Com-

But perhaps some Machianillian will

fay, that although the Prince (for his

owne commodity) do vie fometimes to

violate his faith : yet he may fo feuerely

punnish it in his Subjects, that no in-

mon-wealth.

another, which may turne as wel to his | 50

The force of the Princes good or bad example in wealth.

Ecclef. 10,2,

A perfidious Prince teacheth his fub iccts to be traiterous to

congenience shall followe of his exam ple, eyther to the Commonwealth, or to himfelfe. Whereto I answer, that the Prince cannot (with reafon) xpect that the fenerity of Lawes, or other polliticke meanes, thall reprette any vice in eth good his Commonwealth: which that bee anie way Authorized by the example of his owne practite. For as the Poet

taith. Totus componitur or his Regis ad exemplum, nee fit inflettere fenfus claudies.

That is to fay, All the world is framed after the model of the King, and no Lawes or Edicts can to much moone the mindes of men, as dooth the life of the Gournour, Which Plutarke confirmeth notablye, Plutarch de faving : That enen de a Squire or rule mult delle na prinbe Braight in it felfe, befrie it can make o- cg.um. ther thinges straite : So the Prince , voho The Prince is is (as it were) the ule of his Subicetes, the sule of his ought first to rettifie himfelfe , before hee fubiects. go about (by Lawes or other meanes) to rectific his Commonwealth. For be that is falling (faith Plutarch) is not fit to veholde others, nor hee that is ignorant, to Teach; nor he that is incorrigible, to Correst ; nor he that is himfelfe difordered, to put others ın order.

Thus faith he, giving to vnderstand, that a vicious Prince, who feeketh to A bad Prince make his Subjects vertuous by rigor of whomaketh good lawes, Lawes, laboureth in vaine, like to one, bullacth with that buildeth with one hand, and pulleth one hand, and downe with the other, and to destroy with the oeth more in one day, then he can builde ther. in many. For fo do the bad example of the Prince, corrupt more in a day, then his Lawes can correct or amending yeare.

This the ancient Romans fo well confide ed that their Magistrats & Senate The Romaine were most exact and punctuall, in the senate and observation of Oaths and promises cue Magiliar's to their very enemics: for the regarde the observati they had, not onely to luftice, and to on of Oadis their own reputation : but also the con- and promifequence of their good example in the Commonwealth, as vportother occafions, I have formerly proved, by the examples of Marcus sittles Regulas, T. Veturius & Spurius Postkumas, Confuls, and of T. Mutius and Q. Emilio, bunes of the Temple.

bad example ouer weigh-

Humanos edicta valent vit vitaregentis.

Sextus Pompei us would not breake his Oath, to be Emperor of all the world

Plutarch in

Anton.

The like notable examples of perticuler men among Paganes, may also be alledged, whereof I will onely relate one or two, for breuities fake. Sextus Pompeius, Sonne to Pompey the Great, having warres with Antonius the Triumuir, and meeting with him at the Sea fide, vpon a treatie of peace: innited him to Supper in his Gally, giving him his oath for his affurance. And beeing fecretly demaunded by Metrodorus, the Pyrate, whether he should weigh Anker, and fet faile, and fo make himfelfe Lord of all the World > Aunswered. That it was not his custome or condition to for weare himfelte: esteeming it neither honourable nor profitable for him, to gaine the Empire of the World by per-No leffe care of fidelity had Licurgus,

Brother to Polidectes, King of Lacede-

monia. For, hauing taken vpon him

the government, of the Kingdome af-

ter his Brothers death, at the inflance

of the people, untill his Brothers Wife

(who was great with Childe) should be

brought to Bed, and the Child of years

thereby to affure his State : he not one-

lie refused it, but also proclaimed her

Sonne King, as foone as he was borne,

taking only the tuition of him, vntill he

came to age, as partly hath been before

The care which Lieur. gus had of his Plutarch in Li-

motion of a

Ferdinand,

Brother to

Henry, King

Lucas Marin.

Siculus, de Ret

Hifp.Lib. 1 1.

of Caffile.

to gouerne. And being folicited by her, to marrie with her, vpon her pro-

declared.

I neede not adde heereunto any examples of Christian Princes, whose Religion both teacheth and bindeth them to be more exact and precifethen Painims in this cafe. Neuerthelesse, I cannot forbeare to speake of a notable act in this kind, of the most Christian and vertuous Prince Ferdinand, Brother to Henry the third of that Name, King of Castile . This Ferdinand, being left by his Brothers Testament, Tutour to his Sonne King John the fecond (an Infant of eight moneths old) and being vrged greatly by the three States of Cafile, to take the Crowne to himfelfe: he would by (no means) confent thereto, faying. That he would mener be falle. erther to his Brother dead , or to his Nephew living, to whom be had promifed his

fidelity. For which faithfulneffe (no

doubt) God bleffed him, and (within

fixe yeares after) gaue him the Kingdome of Arragon, whereto he was chofen by the free election of the Nobility and Commons of the Realme. Behold then, how great refpect, not oneliethis Christian Prince, butalfo the Paganes before named, had to finceri- fincerity and ty and fidelitie, as well for the causes fidelity manibefore mentioned: as also for thewerie feited. detestation and hatred of perfidiousnesse, being a vice (of it selfe) most odious, and voworthy of Princelie Digni-

For whereas all other vices and finnes (for the most part) are, or may becattributed either to frailtie or errour, whereby they feeme (many times) the more woorthy of pardon : perfidious- Perfidiousneffe is ever prefumed, to proceed from of a bale and atteacherous, maligne, vile and base nature, and therefore not excufable in

Princes, whose proceedings ought to be (in al thinges) Reall, Generous, Noble and Heroycall. In which respect, one false and trecherous acte, may suffife to ecclipfe, and obscure the glory of many great vertues in a Prince. As Plutarke noteth in Alexander the Great; who caufing certaine Indian Souldiours to bee flaine, after they had rendered lexandre. mife to kill the Child in her Womb, 30 themselues vnto him vpon his worde: Spotted and flained (fath he) the renowne of all his glorious Conquests and Loyall vertues, with the ignominie of that one Acte. And the reason is , because so delicate | Once falle, is mans credite and reputation, in mat-ter of trust and confidence: that it is

likevnto a Glaffe, which beeing once broken, is not repayrable. And therefore, he that is once knowne for a Lyer, is not beleeved when he faith true; and he that is once reputed to bee falle, is euer after held in suspition. And according vnto the generall rule of the Law; Semper presumitur malus in eodem genere malt . Is euer presumed to be wicked in the L. Sicuif & fame kind of nickednesse. Wherevpon it. Cossius de

it followeth, that a faithlesse Prince is sena. hated of his Subjects; suspected of his best Friends ; irreconciliable with his Enemies; belowed and trufted of none; and betrayed or forfaken of all Men in The dangers, his greatest necessities. And that worthily, feeing hee himfelfe giveth the e- oufneffe in a uill example, which other Men follow

to his own vtter ouerthrow and destru-

fay, that a wife Prince hath sufficient remedies against these inconveniences, to wit; strong Gards, Garrisons, Forts, and Fortresses, besides his owne policy, asifted with the prudence of faithfull and vigilant Councellors, whereby hee may fecurely make his commoditie in all occasions, without feare of anie damage Thus faith the Machinillian, most ab-

The infufficiency of Ma-chiavillian remedies.

Chap.7.

The Pollitick

or Macchiauel

ns obiectió.

Falshood hate and man.

rouer. 8,13

Prouer. 3, 32.

P'ularchin A

Pfalme.52,9.

A Prince is the Image of respects.

nothing more

of man, then

Truth.

But the Pollitick or Machianillian wil

furdly, as it will appeare, if wee confider whence groweth the daunger that the Prince incurreth, by perfidious and deceitfull dealing, which being most hatefull, not only to man, but also to God, doth draw vpon him both Divine and humain punithment, against the which, neither these, nor any other Machiavilli- 20

an remedies can warrant him. And first to speake of the offence of God, and divine punnishment ensuing thereon, We finde in holy Scriptures, that nothing is more detestable vnto almighty God, then a deceitfull or double man. And therefore, the Holyghost faith in the Parables, Os bising ne detestor, I do detest a double tongued mouth . And againe in the same Booke; abominatio 30 himselse a most wise and potent Prince; Domini est omnis illufor, Euery deceyuer is

abhominable before God. And the Royall Prophet, coupling the deceyuer with the blood-fucker, faith of them both. Virum sanguinum & dolosum abominator Dominus, God dooth abhorre the bloudie and deceitful man. And speaking of the guilefull tongue of Doeg, hee threatneth the vengeaunce of God to him, and all fuch, faying: Lingua dolofa, propterea, ce. 40 A desciptful tongue, God will therefore destroy thee eternally, he will plucke thee up, and remove from thee from thy Tabernacle. and root thee out of the Land of the living. Lo the how odious fraudulent and dou-God exacteth ble dealing is to Almightic God, who being Ipfa veritas, Truthit felf; exacteth nothing more of man (created in his I-

more of a Prince, then of any other pri- 50 uate person, because the Prince is his Image, not only by reason of the naturall

guifts of his foule, as all other men are: but also in respect of his Office whereby he representeth his person (as his Lieutenant) in the administration of Instice, whereof Fidelitie and truth is the Foun-

mage) then verity and truth. But much

dation, as I have furficiently declared be-Wherein (neuerthelesse) it is to bee

understood, that although all real, laine and true dealing bee most requisite in a vied of Prin-Prince : yet hee is to vie great discretion ces in plaineand prudence therein, because infinite nife. occasions do occurre, wherein Princes ought to conceale and cover their inthat may ensue thereof to his person or 10 tentions, with more care and circumspe- Great diffeation then all other men, especiallye in rence to be matters to be executed. Wherefore, moated, begreat difference is to bee noted, betwixt a lye, and con telling a lye, and concealing the trueth, cealing the which the Latines do fignify in two pro- The diffeper words, to wit; Simulatio and Dist- rence betwin mulstio. Whereof the first, which we fixion and different may tearme Simulation or fiction, is cuer jution. vnlawfull, and therefore neuer to bee v- Diferecte diffed. But the latter which we may call commendable discreet dissimulation, is both lawfull & in a Prince. commendable; yea, and so necessarie fometimes in Princes, that it may well and truly be faid: Qui nescit dissimulare, nescit regnare: He which knowes not how A lee most to diffemble, that is to fay, discreetly to voscemely in cover and cloake his intentions when a Princes occasion requireth, knoweth not howe to raine. But fay with Salomon who was

that, Non decet principem labiu mentiens: Alying lip or mouth, dooth not befeeme 4 Pouer 30,2. Prince. In which respect, he also prayeth Prouer. 10,25. to Almighty God; Verba mendacia longe fac ame, () Lord preferne and keepe me far from lying words. And againe in another Parable, he faith ; Qui nititur mendacijs, palcit ventus; He which trusts to les fecas the winde. That is to fay, as Saint Auguthe winde. That is to lay, as Saint August. cont.

Hin expoundeth it, Fit efea spiritibus ma- creson. Lib. 3. lu. He becomes the meat or prey of cuill fpi- Cap. 9. rits, or of the Deuill, whose immitator, or rather whose childe hee maketh himfelfe. For, as our Saujour faith, the Deuill is Mendax & pater eius, A Lyer, and Child of the the Father of lyes; and is therefore called Deuill.

Diabolus, which fignifieth a deceiner. What then thall wee fay of such a Prince as Machiau !! frameth, to witte; a most treacherous, perfidious, and per- Macchiauels iured person? Can he deserue to be cal- Prince persiled the Image, Lieutenant, or Minister dious and periured. of God, whose similitude and likenesse he defaceth in himselse; whose Commission he abuseth, & whose holy name he shamefully prophaneth? What else can be expect at the hands of God, but

o.Booke.

Guliel. Mal-

mefb.de geft.

Reg. Angl. Lib

Regino, Chron.

A heauy and tearefull exoccitation.

feuere punnishment, not onelie in the world to come, but also in this life, if he repent not?

This may appeare by manifold examples, whereof I will alledge fome out of approoued Authors, both auncient and Moderne, to thew the impious abfurditie of Machiauels doctrine, allowing perfidiousnesse and periury in a Prince, as necessary fornetimes for the benefite of 10 his State.

But first, to speake of our holy Scrip-

Gen. 49, 7, 8 Simcon and Leui curifed by their Father laceb, for violating their league with Sielem and Hemor.

H cram in Tra-

Hebrack in

nef Cap. 49.

Gencsim.

detron.

tures. We read in Genesis that Simeon and Leus, the Children of Iacob, wer curfed by their Father at his death, because they had violated their league made with Sichem and Hemor, whom they destroied with all their Citty, contrary vnto theyr promise and couenant. Maledictus (faith Iacob) furor eorum quia pertinax & c. Curled be their furie, because it was obstinate. And prophelying further of the temporall punishment, which God woulde inflict vpon their posterity for the same, he added Dinidam cos in incob & dispergam in I (rael. I will divide them in Iaacob, and disperse them among the Children of Israel. Which was fulfilled afterward, as Saint Hierom witnesseth, for that their Tribes had not their habitation apart, as the others had: for the Tribe of Leni was distributed in divers Cirties, amongst the other Tribes, to bee their Leuites and Percrius in Ge-Priefts. And the Tribe of Simeon, had their dwelling with the Tribes of Iuda, & (as the Hebrewes affirme) ferued for School-Maisters in all the other Tribes, and got their living onely by teaching Children.

make league with them, putting on their olde thooes, and torne cloaths, and af-

firming, that they were a people dwel-

ling in a farre Countrey, and that being

mooned with the fame of his victories:

they were come fo many daves iourney

to meete him, that they had worne out

their thooes and cloaths in their voyage;

whereas they dwelt not farre off, and in

the very Land of promise, which GOD

2 Reg. 18, 17. Infuah, 9, 12. Sauls posteri-God was notable vppon King Sau'es po-flerity, for his breach of League which Tofuah made with the Gabaonites. Wher-in it is to bee noted, that although the Gabaonites craftily circumuented Tofuah, and induced him by fraud and deceipt to for his breach ot league with

gard that Iofaab had of his Oath and league with had given to the Children of Ifrael. NeBut answered to the Children of I/rael, when they murmured against him. Jurawimus eis (faith hee) We have [worne unto them, in the name of the Lord God of Ifrael ; and therefore wee may not touch them,

breake our Oath.

Thus faith 1 of huah: whereby we may learne, how great is the Obligation of all on of lawfull leagues. just and lawful Leagues, or other Couenants paffed by Oath, and how daungerous is the breach thereof, in respecte of Gods iust and seuere indgements, vpon | The iudgethe offenders in that behalfe. Whereof the experience was seene, about three after, in Sant hundred yeares after Iofuahs time, in the time. breach of that league by Saule. For the which, the Children of ifrael were afflicted with three yeares famine in Daniels time, and feauen of Saules Children and family, were delivered into the handes of the Gabaonites, and hanged by them in

punishment of Sanles offence. Furthermore, we read in the Booke of 2. Mac. 4, 38. Machabees, that Andronicus a Fauourite andronicus un nisted for his of King Antiochie, was by the inft indge- Treachers to ment of God, and the commaundement | wards Onice, of Antiochis himfelfe, thamefully put to death: euen in the veric fame place, wher he had killed Omas the Highprieft, who had rendred himfelfe vnto him voon his promife of fecurity. Also the exam- How the Pry ples heereof, are veric notable amongest | nims observe the Ethnicks, who observed (dilligently) ments viola the judgements of God, vpon traiterous | perfidious and perfidious perfons. And therefore In like manner, the punnithment of 40 when Tillaphernes the Perlian, made war against the Grecians, and brake Truce, which he had made with them for three months, Agefilaus reioyeed greatly, faying : We are beholding to Tiffaphernes, for making the Goddes his onemies, and our Poliminlih.

> great ouerthrow. Plutareh also recounteth a notable hiftorie, of C eomines King of Lacedemonia, Aprob. Lace-who having made truce with the Argians for featuen dayes: fet ypon their camp in the night, and taking them vnprouided by reason of the new type of thems. ded by reason of the truce, made great nes, for his flaughter of them. But being reproched persury. with his breach of promife and oath, he iested at it, faying ; That hee sware Truce

friends, therefore let us boldly give him

battell. And so he did, and gaue him a

uertheleffe, when Jofuah discoverd their deceipt, he had fuch regard to his Oath, that hee would by no meanes violate it. Ioliah,9,19 least the wrath of God fal upon us, if we breake our Oath.

2.Reg. 18.9.

Anotable example of a Noble man of England,milly pannithed for his periu-

for the dayes, but not for the nights. But fo it fell out (faith Plutarch) in punishment of his falthood and periury, that it ferued him to no purpose. For whereas, he affailed the Cittie presently, hoping for to take it with all facility, hee had a mamefull repulfe by the women which dwelt therein. And afterward falling furioufly mad, he tooke a Knife, and ript vp his owne body, from the very heele to the heart, and so dyed laughing.

The same Author also signifyeth, that one Calippus, being justly icharged with a conspiracie against Dion of Sicilie, and having denyed it with manie folemne Oaths) in the Temple of Ceres, was (by Gods inft indgement) flaine with the fame Dagger wherewith Dion was killed before by his confent. I omit divers other examples, which might be alleadged out of prophane Historiographers, to adde a few out of Christian & more Moderne Authors.

The scuere judgements of God vpon

Custom (as Saint Angustine witnesseth)

was in vie in his time, at Millain, where-

of he faith, Was nominus Medio ani, ere.

I my felfe have knowne in Miliaine, at the

Mommories of Saints, acertaine Theefe.

who went thither with intention to deceive

by periury, was compelled to confesse his

Theft, and to restore that which hee had 40

But of this matter, we have a most fa-

Matters in controuerfic men, for the finne of periury, haue been descided by alwayes so incident among Christians: Oaths at the that the custome was in the Primitine Tombes of Martires in Church, to discide matters in Controthe primitive Church. uersie by Oaths, at certaine holy places, and the Tombes of Martyrs, where Al- 30 mighty God did ordinarily extend his Iustice vpon periured persons. Which

Chap. 7.

A shamefull

repulle g uen

by weomen.

Plutarch in

Calippus pun-

mighty God for his persu

Dione.

Auzu,I. Epift. 137. What Saint knowledge.

Roine.

mous and autenticall example in our owne Histories. Elfred or Alfred, a Nobleman of England, in the time of King

Adelstane, conspired against him with certaine others : and beeing accused thereof, stood upon the denial, and because the propers were not sufficient to contince him, he was fent to some (as 50 the Custome was then) to make his purgation by Oath, at the Altar of S. Peter, where he swore contrary to his Conscience, and prefently fell down before the Altar, and dyed within three daies after. Vpon aduertisement whereof, King Adelstane gave all the Lands of Elfred, to

the Church of Saint Peter in the Abbey of Mal nesbury, by his Letters Patents; wherein, after the graunt of the fayde Lands, he declared the whole matter as | 2, cap.o. it paffed.

Alfo some yeares after, in the same age, Lotharius King of Austrasia (which contained all Lorraine, Flanders, & fome S'gm de Reg. part of Germany, Burgundy, and France) Naucier Chron came to Romej, accompanied with his I an 161. Nobility, in the time of Adrian the fe- | Baron, An. 868. cond, because he had bin excommunicated, for his dinorce fro his lawful wife Thentperga, and married with Wil rada his Concubine. Now he was content, for his purgation thereof, to receive the bleffed Sacrament at the hands of Pope Adrian, together with his Nobility, whiche he did, protesting for his part, that he stood cleare of those things wherwith he was accused, which also his Nobility affirmed. But, as they departed from Rome homewards, there hapned fuch a strange d sease among them, that Lothariss (hatting seene the death of most of his Noblemen) before he came to Luca. fell ficke there himfelfe, and died within a few dayes after at Placentia, so that of all those that receyued the Sacrament with him, there lived not any one to the veares end.

And nowe to returne vnto our owne Countrey. Earle Godwin , Father to K. Harold, having procured the vntimelie death of Alfred, Brother to King Edward the Confessor, denied it continually with folemne Oathes; and especiallie once, when he dined with the King. At what time, occasion beeing offered to speake of that matter, he took a piece of bread; and prayed to God, that the fame might be his laft, if he were any way confenting or priuy therto. And so cating the bread was choaked therewith, and died there in the Kings presence.

It is also observed and testified by most of the old Historiographers of ourcoimtry, that the ouerthrow of King Harolde by William the Conqueror, was a just punishment of God vpon him for his periury, the Story is briefely thus. Harold being in Normandy with Duke William, in the time of King Edward the Confeffor, promifed for to afsift him after the Kings death, in his pretence to the crown of England, which he also confirmed by folemne Oath. Whereupon, Duke Wil-

Henry Huntend in H:ft Lib. 6. Ingulphus Hift Angl. 153. Polidor, Hift.

Angl. Perjury notably punnifhed in Earle Godwine, Father to King

King Harold flaine by Duke William the Conqueror, in punish ment of his

The like Iustice of God may bee no-

ted also in Christern , King of Denmarke

and Worway, who maried a Sifter of the

Emperor Charles the fift, in the time of

Henry the eight, King of England . This

Christiern beliedging Stockholme in Swe-

tia, tooke it by composition, binding

himselfe to certaine conditions, not on-

ly by Oath, but also by receyuing the

he observed for some few dayes, till hee

had the Castle, and all the strongest pla-

ces of the towne in his owne hands, and

that hee had furnished them with men

and munition. But then, inuiting all the

Noblemen and Magistrates to a Ban-

quet, to the number of ninety foure per-

fons : he imprisoned and after kild them.

with a great number of the Cittizens.

(by Proclamation) life and libertie to all

those which were left aline, whereupon

they all thewed themselves, and were all

miferably flaine. But within a while af-

ter, he was driven out of his kingdom by

his owne subjects; and when he hadde

wandered from Countrey to Countrey

in all pouerty and mifery for the space of

of the chiefest Nobility, who although

they promised him obedience and assi-

stance vnto their handes and seales, yet

they tooke him prisoner vppon his ente-

rance, and (within a while) poyloned

ten yeares, he was received again by fom 30

And finding, that verie manie escaped .20 him, by hiding themselves, he promised

bleffed Sacrament. Which conditions, 10

Regard of

liam affianced his Daughter to him, and because the was not then of yeares to be married : he tooke Harolds oath, to perform the mariage within a certain time after. But when the time appointed for the mariage came, and Harold shewed no care to perform any part of his promifes, the Duke fent Meffengers vnto him, to request of him the accomplishment thereof. But he, in Read of giuing fatisfaction to the Duke: derided his Messengers, causing some of their Horfes tailes to be cut off, and others to be lamed. Alfo, afterward, when King Edward dyed, he practifed not onely to exclude the Duke from the Crowne: but also procured it for himself, pretending that his promise to the Duke, was made for feare, & therefore it could not binde

When the Doke was entred into England with his Army, and follicited him by Messengers, to have care of his conscience, representing vnto him the feuere judgements of God on periured persons, offering to come to some reafonable composition with him:he made no account therof, neither yet of the admonition of his owne Brother Gurth or Girth. Who adulfed him ferioufly before the battaile, to retire himselfe, and leans the conduct of the Army to him and others, who were not bound to the Duke vpon any oath or promife: leaft otherwise, GOD might suffer them all to bee quite ouerthrowne for his

he would put it in venter and that God shold be the Indge thereof. And fo giving the battaile, was flaine himfelfe, and all his Army ouerthrowne. And although the faid Conquest might feeme to be a punishment of God vpon the whol Realm, for the peoples fins:yet the perticulerdif grace, which happened to King Harolds perfon, may well bee thought to have proceeded (by Gods inft indgment) for his periurie, and so the English Chroniclers, which wrote in that age, doe fignifie: As /Heulphus William of Malmfburie, Henry Huntendon, Mathew of Westminiter, Matthew Paris, and Roger Houe. don, who freaking of the victory, faith. Vere & abla, dubio, Dei indicio à scribenda

est, qui puniendo, scelus periuri, ostendit

Whereto hee aunswered; That

le Deum nolentem iniquitatem. Truely and without doubt, it is to bee afcribed to the indeement of God, who punishing the fin of persurie, declared thereby, that hee is a GOD, who doth not like nor allow of ini-

But to come neerer to our time Phillip de Comines noteth the manifelt Inflice of God, in the difgracefull death of Louis Cap. 83. Charles, the last Duke of Bourgundy, thorow the treason of Compobachio, an Italian, shortly after that the saide Charles had betraied the Count S. Paule, and fent worthily behim Prisoner to Lewes the eleanenth, trayed. King of France : notwithstanding, that he had ginen him fafe conduct to come

into his Country. Furthermore, I cannot omit Cafar Borgia, though I have speken of him diuers times before. For, as Machanill infly to this worthily maketh him a Mirrour for his Perfidious Tyrany, in respect of his manifold vices: to he may as worthily be propoted for an example of Gods Justice, in regard of the manifold judgements of God diuerfly extended vpon him . And perticularly, in the punishment of his perfidiousnesse and periury, whereby hee had deceived and ruined divers other 30 principall personages : As Liverosto Vite lozzo Pagolo Vr fino and the duke of Grauina, whom he caused to be strangled; after they had rendred themselves to him vpon composition, and employed themselves faithfully in his service. Linerotto ha-Wherein Gods Iustice may bee noted, uing traite-(by the way) in Linerotto, who (a little dered his before) had cruelly and trayteroufly Vnckle, was murdered his owne Vnckle, and diuers traiteroully murdered other principall Cittizens of Fermo; himfelfe. having invited them to a banquet in his owne house.

Which perfidious treachery of his, God punnished (as it seemed) by the treachery and perfidiousnesse of Cafar Borgia: who also received the like meafure himselfe, by others. For, whereas he had taken an oath of fortie princi- Idem Ibid. pall personages, to affist him after his Fathers death: he was forfaken of them all, and putting himfelfe (afterward)into the handes of Henando Gonçales, Gouernour of Naples, vppon his fafe conduct the was also berrayed by him, and fent Prisoner into Spaine, as elie-where is fignified.

Another ex scaple of Chri-fium, King of Denmarks and

Chap. 7.

Phil. de Com Chron. du Roy

Chronicler.

Charles Duke

Freachery.

ulfed from is kingdoni his owne biccts, and after-ward woned in

Christiern ex-

Martin du Belley. An. 1527. The Duke of Burbon flaine at the fiedge of his periury.

him in prison: thus was his perfidious falshood justly repayed with the like. After whole deposition and death, his Vnkle Fredericke a worthy Prince, was chofen King of Denmark. About the same time, the Duke of Bourbon, being fled from Frances the first King of France, to the service of the Emperour Charles the fift, Emperour, and made by him Gouernour of Millayne:he fo exasperated the people by his exactions and crueltie, that they role against

Infomuch, that to pacifye them, he bound himselfe by Oath to certaine conditions, praying withall to Almightie God, that in case he did not exactly performe them, he might be flaine by a bullet, in the first occasion of warre which he offered. Neuertheleffe, hee fell afterward againe to his former course, without regard of his Oath, and being (with-

in a while after) made Generall of the Emperors Army in Italy, he was tumultwoully carried by his Souldiers (against his will) to the fiedge of Rome, where he de expug wrbit was presently slaine with a piece of Ar- Rome. tillery of his owne, negligently discharged by his Soldiers, and fo payed the perialtie of his periury, according vnto the judgement and sentence which hee had (prophetically as it were) given against himfelfe.

Now then, I with all Machinillians to confider heere three thinges, which are euident by these alledged examples. The first, how detestable all periory and perfidiousnesse is in the light of God . The fecond, how dangerous it is to Princes, Three things in respect of Gods wrath, which may fal to be considevpon them and their flates for the fame, through the feuerity of Gods Iuffice; 3a-ualimin in the gainst which, no humaine policy or power is able to defend them. The third, is a necessary confequent of these two to wit : that all Machini 'ian remedies (confifting partly in humaine prudence and ency and vadiligence, and partly in force, and nity of Maftrength of Guards, Garrisons, Fortres-licie, for the fes, and fuch like) are most friuolous and defence of a vaine when God is offended, and will wicked Prince punish for finne. Whereupon it followeth alfo, that the aforefaid remedies are (in like manner) infufficient, to protect a perfidious Prince from the danger of humaine punishment, which is comly but a fequel and effect of the just judgments of God. In whose hand are the hearts and willes of all men, and who v feth the fame as his Instruments, to execute his Iustice vpon Princes, when they deferue it.

Belides, it is evident enough in true reason of state, that although there were Concerning no danger at all of Gods wrath: yet thefe the danger of and such other Machinillian pollicies, are thered, that may be a not only insufficient to prevent or reme meanes to dy the inconveniences, which Wicked further detri-Princes incurre by the hatred of Men. but also do (many times) encréase theyr dangers, and helpe to præcipitate them to the vtter destruction, whereof I shall haue better occasion to speake lieereaf-

In the meane time, this shall suffice, for fo much as corteerneth the Vertue of fidelity in a Prince with this conclusion. That because the danger which groweth vnto Princes by fraud and deceite, pro-

Oath and promites vtterly for gotten by Harold.

Duke William honourable proceeding with Harold,

The vnaduifed answere of Harold to he kind 3ro ther Girth,

The ancient Antiquaries this History.

thers.

The prefer

Al reputation of vertue ought to be grounded vp on fincerity and truth.

Prouer, 10.

Princes power

Opinion of

the Princes

the Mother of conspira-

weakneffe is

meffe.

9, 10.

ceedeth principally from the iust Iudgements of God; therefore, the yong Statiff and Councellor (whom I labour to informe) ought to vnderstand concerning this, as well as all other Vertues, that the reputation thereof, which he is to defire and procure in his Prince, is too be grounded not you vaine theires and apparances of counterfeit vertue (which God of his Inflice will discouer, and pu- 10 nith fooner or later) but vpon the folide Coundation of all finceritie and trueth. which is the firest piller and stay of all humain actions, and most grateful both to God and man. And therefore, the Wifeman layeth : Qui ambulat fin pierter, ambulat confidentur. He that walketh simply and plainly , walketh boldly and furely. Et qui depravat vias funs, manifestus exit . And he which runneth an indirect 20 cour le halbe made manifest.

It resteth now, that I faic some-what, (though verie briefely) of the reputation of a Princes power and greatnesse, the The reputatiloffe and decay whereof, emboldneth his er and great- pnemies, discourageth his friends, and layeth open his perfort to the contempt of all men, yea, and his state to infinite daingers. For, as the reputation of a Princes greatneffe, wealth, and power, 30 firiketh a sease and terror into the hearts as well of his owne fubiects, as ftrangers, and with he ldeth them from conspiring against him : cuen fo, the opinion of his weaknesse, worketh the contrary effect, and is the verie Mother and Nursie of Rebellions, Conspiracies, and all hostile attempts. And no man knoweth howe finall an enterprize may overthrow the greatest State in the world, seeing it dependethypt on the faccesse which no man can warrant, and many times is fuch that it deceyneth all mens expectations.

> To which purpose, the reputation of a Princes power, force, and greatneffe, is highly availeable, the which Augustus Cafar knew fo well, that having loft an Army in Germany, of 40000, men: yet he continued the warre for no other reafon or necessity (as Tacitus noteth) then to maintaine the opinion and reputation of his power, least otherwise, thee might grow to be contemned as the great Xerxes was, who having terrified all Greece,

Therefore, the fureft and wifeft way is

to yee all preventions, that nothing bee

attempted against the State.

with his huge Armic of , a Million of men, was (vpon his querthrowe and returne into Renfla) fo despised that he was flaine by one of his owne fubicates. So: All benefit of the Prince to dangerous it is, and damageable voto a be weighted Prince, to loofe reputation, how great with his repu Prince, to loofe reputation, now great tation & confocuer it be. Whereupon I conclude, forence, but that it importeth a wife Councellour to . not in like measure and waigh all the commoditie degree. and benefits of his Prince; as well with his reputation, as with his Conscience. though not in the like degree.

For although reputation be the chief Reputation, externall good of man; yet it is inferior though it be to the internall, that is to fay, vnto the the chief externall good goods of the mind, whereof a pure con- is inferious a science is the principal, because therein | Conscience. consisteth the chiefe felicity of man, as de office feat Saint Ambroje faith. Befide, the benefite which redoundeth to Princes, by clearneffe of Conscience, is the fauour and protection of Almighty God, to them and their States heere in this world, and eternall faluation of their foules in the next. And the damage that enfueth of a corrupt and finfull Confcience, is Gods indignation in this life (whereby the greatest Monarkes and their Monarkies, that enfuel haue perified) and enerialting damnation in the world to come. Whereas (on the world to come and the world to come and the world to come and the world to come. the other fide) all the benefit or damage which the gaine or loffe of reputation, can yeild (beeing confidered in it felfe) extendeth no further then the fanour or Howfarreth disfauour of men: who can neither vp-hold him whom GOD ouerthroweth, nor ouerthrow the man whom God pro auaile. teeteth. For, as the Apostle faieth, Si Rom. 8,31. Deus pro nohus, &c. If God be for vs, what matter makes it who is against vs?

Whereupon it followeth, that whether we regard the dignity and benefit of Conscience and Reputation, or else the damage that cufueth by the bemith of The loffe of either of them: the respect of conscience chiefely tobe is farre to be preferred before the other, feared when and the loffe of reputation is then principally to be feared, when Conscience is fouly stained and polluted. For then the Prince lying open to the contempte and hatred, as well of God as man, hath no defence, but may well feare and expect punishment from both. And fo much the rather, because the losse and want of reputation, is one especiall meanes whereby God vieth to execute his inft judgement on wicked Princes: it be-

They that jultly be contemned by

dangerous

of a good Confeience.

Cor. 1, 12.

fignement is not to be left off, for feare of falle Ru-

A good de .

Plutarch in Fabio. Cicero in Lib. 1.de Offic.

The noble

ing most consonant to Iustice and Reafon, that they who contemn and difobey their Soueraigne Lord, King and Creator, should be ruined by the contempt, hatred, and disobedience of their owne fubicats. And this danger (I fay) is iustlie to be feared, when both reputation and

The loffe of when confeience is clear

Chap. 7.

The comfort

conscience are stained. But when Conscience is pure and entire, the loffe and reputation is nothing fo dangerous. For, although the jufteft

and best men, are sometimes so calumniated, that they incurre great infamie and difgrace through the practifes of the wicked: yet forafinuch as the fame hath no ground at all, it vanisheth away like smoak, and is ever through Gods instice) discouered & cleared in the end, to their greater reputation and honour. In the meane time, they have the comfort, not 20 only of Gods protection, as I have formerly faid : but also of their owne Cousciences, the good reputation whereof, gineth (in fuch cases) inclimable confolation. And therefore, the bleffed Apofile, faith; Gloria nostra hac est testimonium conscientia nostra: The Testimonie of our Conscience is our g'ery . In which respect, Wise, and Vertuous Princes, though they have due care of their reputation, yet doe not fo much regarde false rumors when their Conscience is cleare, as to forbeare the execution of any good and necessary designment, for the feare thereof. But rather follow the Councell and example of the Wife and valiant Confull, Fabius Maximus, Qui non penebat rumores aute falutem ; Who preferred not rumours, before the good of the Commonwealth. For, although his 40 delayes against Hannibal, were (through the malice of his enemies) much calumniated and generally condemned by the common people, as proceeding of Cowardife, yet hee was nothing mooued therewith, holding it, as he faid, Agreater Cowardise to leave a good purpose, for feare of mens tongues, then to leave the field for feare of an enemy. In which respect he continued his course, vntill hee had thereby, wasted and consumed the forces of Hannibal, with securitie to the Romain State. For which, he was afterward highly commended because (as Ennius faieth) Cunctando restituit xem : By delayes, hee prepaired and reflored the flate of the Romaines.

Neuertheleffe, in flich cales alfo, al diligence is to be vied by Princes and their not to be conand afterfions, that may growe by erro-neous conceit of their actions; airhough their Consciences bee neuer to deare:

Megal sea, ser Whereupon S. Augustine faith, That he no contained. which neglecteth his fame or good trufting cap. 21. to his Conscience, is cruel. And thereof he yeildeth arcason : Because (faith hee) he killeth the foules of others. For, although he do not the enill that is supposed, yet the very suspition thereof, serugth as a mans good frumbling blocke to ouerthrowfich as name; a care weak and il disposed. And therefore, S. Augustine also faith, That confainte is larged, it and the state of the fame being two thinges, the one of them is necessary for us, & the other for our neighbor. And that he which keepeth his confeience cleare dosh good so himfelfe sobut hee which preferueth his fame, deth good to o-

not be holpen, without some greater de-

For this cause also, Plato requireth in Pintarch. Epist. euery good and vertuous man, that hee all Diorifium. have especial care, to leaue behind him thousand the action of the second that the second an eternall reputation; and fame of his to leans me vertues to the end to firre vp not onely sucriaining men of his time, but all posterity also to the imitation therof. Which is most ne ceffarie in publick persons, and especially in Princes, because their example inciteth to vertue or vice, much more then the example of privat men. And therfore

not only by reason of state, but also con In what case fcience bindeth them to be moth dareful mish of repuof their reputation and good name, and ration is to be not to permit the least blemith thereof, tollerared. (though it be neuer fo vniuft) if it may be conveniently remedied, But when it ca-

nero z dMai s

triment to themselues, or to the Commonwealth, then it is to be endured with or dduff patience. For both reason and equity re- Publique quire, that the publicke, and compon good alwayes good be preferred before any mansper- to be preferticuler benefit, and that of two incomes periore niences the leffe is to bee preferted and nefice. cholen, wherof Conscience also is to be

Indge.
Therefore I conclude, that whereas Commoditie, Confeience, and Reputhe Touchtation are to bee respected in all Doli, fione of all berations concerning Princes affaying reputation & commodity. Confeience ought to predominate; and

to lerue for the couchitone and rules as well of reputation, as of all Temporal commodities, And thering Counceller

Augustus Cafar greatly to reputation of his greatneffe Cor. 7 acit. m L.b.s. Annal. Laftin, in Lib. 3.

ruined by the leffe of reputauon.

Cicero in Lib.1 de Offic. A Councello fhould holde for a ground, that nothing is profitable, that is not honest.

shall well discharge his dutie, if in al confultations, he hold the knowne Axiome of Cicero for his ground, to wit: Nibil est ville quod non sit honestum, Nothing is profitable that is not honest. Which point Cicero discourseth, and teacheth notably in his Offices.

CHAP.VIII.

What a Councellor is to consider in the matters which are to be consulted.

Concerning matters to be consulted.

Nd now to com to the last point of my division, that is, what a Councellor is to regard, in the matter it selfe that is to be consulted: it is to be understood. that although the affaires of state are infinit, and therefore, cannot sufficiently bee reduced to perticuler rules, yet fome things are generally to be confidered in all matters, whereof I wil touch fome few.

First for a necessary preamble and pre-paratiue to all deliberations in matters

of State it is to be confidered, that in re-

fpect of the connexion, which perticuler

with the general state of forrain Princes

it is convenient for a councellor to have

bin a traueller, or els to procure by all

Prouerb faith, Mas fabe el necio enfu ca-

la que el cuerdo en la ageno, A foole know-

eth more in his owne honfe then a wifeman

Connection may be many times trobled

with impertinent matters, yet hee shall

withall understand many thinges, which

may import him much to know. And

there is no man fo wife, but he may fom-

times heare of a fimple man, fomewhat

that may ferne him to verie good pur-

doth in another mans . And although a 50

affairs of State either haue, or may haue, 30

It is necessary for a Councellor to kno the state of forreigne Princes.

why.

means to have an exact knowledge, not only of his own Princes state and afairs, but also of the estates and affaires of other Princes, especially of such as are his Princes neighbors, enemies or confederates. To this end, two things are requi-A Counceller should bee fit that he be affable and courteous to al courteous and men, and willing to hear them, and confer with them, especially straungers, beftrangers, and cause he may learn by them many things more, then other wife he can attayne to know concerning the state of forraigne Princes and countries. For as the Spanish

A Spanish Properbe to good purpole.

The wifelt man may learne fomething of the fimpleft.

Letters from all parts, of the State, hu-mors, and dipolition of forraign Prin-reigne Counces; of all changes and innotations in what matters 10 their Courts and Countreyes : Of the Marriages and Alliances of them, their Children, and their most powerful subiects: Of Ambassages too and fro, and their Treaties : Of prouisions and preparations for warre, both by Sea and Land and their intentions therein: Of all Taxes and impositions laid vpon the people, or other leavies of Monies : Of the divisions that fall out amongest the Nobility or common people, and of their discontenements: Finally, of al matters that may tend to the establishment and strengthning, or to the weakening and innouating of other Princes States. For, although a Councellor shal by this meanes, heare manie vntruths: yet hee

good vie and benefit. And being a man of judgement, and having intelligence with manie, he may eafily discerne truths from falshoods, by conferring their aduites togither, efpecially, if hee take order that his Intelligencers doe not know of one anothers

shall verie often receiue aduise of im-

portant matters, whereof he may make

Finally, he shal by this meanes, not only judge better and more clearly of al matters ocurring for his Princes feruice, but shal also make himselse much more grateful to his Prince, by his diligence: and be more intrinfical with him, by occasion of his frequent aduices of forren newes, which Princes are alwayes most desirous to heare. And thus much for

the first point. Secondly, a Councellor is to confider, Three things

that in all matters of Councell, 3 things are efpecially to be refeoeded, as Thomas Aquinas (following arifforle) noateth.

The fyrft, a due end. The fecond, com. 77th dispute 1. The fyrft, a fixed for the conditions of the fixed for the fi uenient meanes. And the third fyt time in Lib.6.Elbic. and feafon, that is to fay, that the end and meanes be not only lawfull, iuft, and honorable in themselves, and in their owne Nature: but also to the person, state, and power of the Prince. For, if there bee

pole: therefore the trouble(in this case is to bee borne with patience, in respect of the benefit that he may reap thereby. The other thing necessary for a coun- A Councellor

cellors better information, is to procure ought topio frequent aduises and intelligences, by cure frequent

What benefit

fhall reapeb

may hear m

Plato in Phedro Necessary to know the Itare of the ntter, with l the circum Hances. One little cir umitance vn owce,may raule great trout in reolution. Nhy wife men due not

lwaies indge

with like pru-

Chap.8.

be confidered in cuery mat-

> nated in the Councellors

lound iudge-Sharpneffe of Lacke of cou

Phil. Con. in Chron du Roy Linis Cap. 21 Why it is con entent for rinces to auc in any ouncellors

any inconvenience or difproportion in any of these, I meane, if the meanes bee not contienent, for the obtaining of the end, or, if the end or meanes be impoffible, or about the might and power of the Prince, or base, or any way vnfit for his state and person, or if the councell be giuen out of due time and feafon, especially too late: it loofeth all grace, & cannot be accounted either good or prudent. I

To this purpose I say, that according to Platoes rule, he who is to give his opinion of any matter, Cught fir It to under-Stand & know fully the flate ther of with al the circumstances. For mans judgement is grounded on his knowledge, and guided therby,&fome one litle circumftance vnknowne may wholy alter the cafe. Infomuch, that a fimple man may judg more wisely thereof, then a far wifer man that 2 knoweth leffe. And the reason why wifemen do not alwaies judge with like wifedom and prudence in all causes, is, beecause they do not understand them alike.

But to proceed, the flate and circumstances of the marter beeing once fullie knowne to the Councellor, he is then to passe to the consideration of the inconueniences, difficulties, dangers, difcommodities,& commodities therof, which | 30 may minister diffrent arguments, Proct contra, in the discussion wherof, the prudence of a Councellor is especially seen. And heere I note by the way(thogh perhaps I may feeme to digreffe from the matter) that some men, who have great viuacity and tharpnes of wit, to find out inconveniences to forefee dangers, and to propound objections, doubtes, and difficulties, haue no maturity of judgement, to clear and defide them, or to find out remedies. And some others, who are of more found judgement, are leffe harp of wit. Again, 6 me who are of good ca-pacity, haue fo litle corage, that they are difinaid with enery difficulty, and therefore cannot eafily refolue on anie thing . Whereas some others of lesse capacitie and more corage, refolue more eafily in any ocasion. So that we may fay with the Poet, Non omnia possum us omnes, We can-not al do al things. And therefore Phil. de Commes, observeth very wel, that it is con uenient for Princes to haue many councellors, to the end, that one of them may

supply the defects of another. For the wi-

felt (faith he)erre oft-times either through

passion, or through hate or affection, or thorough the indisposition of the persons, especialy after dinner. And if any thinke, that fuch ought not to bee made Councellors , it may be answered that we are a men. And lors erre at who focuer wil have none to be of a Princes one time on council that erre at any time in [peech or o. other. pinion or are otherwhiles mooned, and led with passion or affection, he must leek them in heaven for in earth none futh are to bee found. Thus faith he who was himselfe a grave and wife councellor, which I note heere by the way to the end, that young Councellers may learne, neither to affore themselves much on their owne opinions, nor rathly to condemne others of their fellow-Councellors, if they erre and be deceived formetimes.

And to profecute this digréssion yet a A Princes little further, I also adde, that it is need ought to be fary for a Prince, to hatte his Councell composed of composed like mans body, that is, of men of different complexions & humors, to the end, that the Chollerick heate, and hafty feator of fome, may bee tempered with the Flegmatick coldnesse, and slow. The mellanresolution of some other, and that the pinacity of some mens anguine spirites, sounde. may be somwhat depressed and counterpoized wi h the maturity of some others me ancholy indgements, which Arifloele holdeth to be the foundest in matters of State. Whereby the whole bodie of the Councell, may be reduced vnto a perfect temperature, fo that the predominant qualitie therin be found in most,

mors of the rest, restraine the superfluity of ouer flowing conceits, cleare doubts wit, and open and difficulties, and fatisfye Obicetions the wnderflan which proceedeth (manie times) from uingthem who are not able to refolue them,

a Councell, as of the Office and duty of a Councellor. But now to return to the confideration of matters to be confulted, it is requifit, that a Counceller do prudently weigh and compare the discommodities with

or in some at the least, which may helpe

to correct the peccant and offenfine hu-

yet ferue to great purpose in Councels,

to whet the wits, and open the vnder

standing of men of judgement. This

I have thought good to touch by the

way, that the young Councel or, whom

I aduife, may ynderstande somewhat,

as well of the Nature and Condition of

the comodities, & inconveniences with Gggg2

Confideratio

Ariflin Proble.

No commo dity without a difcommo-

What is to be forefeene and that enery important danger may be pro prouided for in euery mat-

He that will hazzard nothing fhall win nothing.

What is to be confidered concerning danger, and the preuenti-

Better one Bird in the hand, then two in the Bush. Cor. Tacit. in Anaul. Refolations are to bee grounded vp. on probable reafons and lufficient meanes.

Nothing of importance is to be left to chance.

the remedies, the difficulties & dangers, with the possibility and probabilitie to ouercome them. And not to reiect averie commodious and honorable defignment, because it is costly, or some way discommodious or difficult and hard, or fome way dangerous. For as the prouerb faith ; There is no commodity without difcommodity, nor any thing honorable, which is not difficult. And therefore, it is to bee 10 forescene and provided, that the commodities may ouerweigh the damages, that the gaine quite the cost, that everie inconvenience have a due remedic, that enery difficulty before way facilitated; bably preuented or escaped; that of comodities (which cannot be had togither) the greater be chosen; and of inconueniences (when all cannot be avoided) the leaft be admitted. All which being forefeene, and probably provided for, anie important action whatfocuer, may bee determined, councelled, and vndertaken, notwithstanding some dangers may be incident thereto. For he that will not take paines to cracke the Nut, cannot eat the kernell, and he that will hazarde nothing, shall win nothing: for nought venter (faith the Prouerb) nought have. Yet this is to be vnderflood, that the

danger bee not ouer-great, which may partly be provided for, if it be foreseene, that the greatest danger rather doth con cerne fome circumstance of the matter, then the principall partes, or the whole body of the plot; that the benefit expected, exceed the loffe which may bee feared; that no certaine thing of thoment be aduptured, for a thing vocertain. For better one Bird in the hand, then two inthe bulb : that of matters doubtfell, which cannot fully be refolued, the leffe doubtfull, or more affured be preferred. And finaly, that the hope of benefit be grounded vpon probable reason, and sufficient meanes to atchieue the fame, and not vpon chance, which is fo vncertain, that no man may fafely build any important matter thereon. And therefore, Tiberius Cafar helde it for a ground, as Cornelius Tacities witneffeth , Non omittere caput verum, neque fe in cafum dare, Not to let flip the first opportunities, nor to aduenture himse to or his estate upon chance. That is to fay, not to hazard himfelfe or his state in any enterprise, when he hath not sufficisnt probability of good successe.

For althogh the event of al plots that are put in execution, is cafuall, dependare put in execution, is caluall, depend-ing vpon the will of God: yet it is a wife manspart, to do that which lieth in him, to affure it by all probable and conucnient meanes, and then to leave the rest to Gods disposition .. For otherwise, hee should tempt God, and offend him by his negligence: and therefore, without this probability of affurance, no matter of importance ought tobe attempted by a wise man. Except in desperate cases, when the necessity is for great and fo fudden(as fomtimes it falleth out to be) that | must trust to there is no time or place for discourse. God and his For then there is no remedy, but to trust only to God and a mans good fortune, which falleth out many times better, the by humaine discourse can bee expected or immagined . As it did to Iulius Cefar, Fortune. who finding himfelfe vnable to give bat- Plutarehin tel to Pomper, because his forces wer not Iulio Cafa. arrived, and beeing (in the meane time) constrained to go to sea in a litle Frigot, in fuch stormy rough seas, that the Pilot wold not passe forth, discouered himself, and bad him fet fail and go forward in any case, because he carried Casar and his fortune: which succeeded wel, for therby he escaped at that time, and afterward ouerthrew Pompey, and becam Emperor of the world. But this he did, because he had no other remedy, thinking it better to put himfelfe to the mercy of the feas,

And in such desperat and sudden exigents, when there is no time and place In extremifor wisedome and discourse, the councel of some woman or simple fellow, may be better then of the wifeft man . For that be good, and (as Aristotle fayth) form fuch being by the why. guift of God, born fortunate, and fol o. Fertuna. wing the impulse and motion of nature, may aduife or execute more happily, the men of great wifedome, who pondering all things in the ballance of reason and discourse, do not followe many times, a fortunat motion in themselues, nor happy concel of others, because they see not fome good and probable or reafonable ground for the same wherby they forgo Why a wor. and loofe their good fortune. And this is the reason, why the common Prouetbe cell in the reason, why the common Prouetbe cell in the reason with the reason w faith, That a Woman's Councel is never good on the fedden but upon the fuiden. For when Women councel according to their first motion,

then of his enemie.

In extremi-

Ecclef. 7, 27. Of Iulius Ce. He which fhall perifh in

> The necessity of daily re on of our serie ons to God.

Chap.8.

Ariflot. de bona

Nothing is to

be left to chance, but in

cale of necel-

Diligent pon examination in the prefent flate of the matter, & future fucceffe

> The ouer light in fome Councellors.

they may councell fortunately, either by chance, or by some naturall impulse or motion: whereas, falling to discourse of reason, or to deliberation, they sildom or neuer councell wifely, through the infirmity and weaknesse of their judgement. And to this purpose, Aristotle alledgeth the old Prouerb, Fortuna fauet fatuis, fortune fauoureth fooles, as I have fignified before concerning this point.

Heerupon I conclude two things. The one, that except in case of necessity : a wife-man ought to leave nothing vnto chance, that may be any way affured by reasonable meanes, in respect of the danger that may enfire thereby. For, although dangerous councels (grounded vpon hope of good fortune) speede well fomtimes by meer chance, yet they proned most commonly pernitions. And 20 therefore, the Wifeman fayeth wifelie: Qui amat periculum peribit in illo, He that louesh danger, shal perish therein.

The other Conclusion is, that fering men are many times put to fuch fudden extreamities, that they have no time or opportunity to aduife themselues, or to confult with others : it is most necessarie that they arme and prouide themselves against the same by frequent Praier, and 30 by dayly recommending al their actions to almighty God, the authour and giver of all good fuccesse. To the end, that he may (in fuch cases) guide, protect, and prosper them and this I hold to bee the foundest aduise, that any councellor can giue to his Prince. Thus much for the fecond confideration.

. The third, shall be to ponder and examine diligently, not onely the prefent 40 flate of the matter, and the imediate or next sequel thereof: but also, what may be like to fucceed from time to time:and especially, what may be the conclusion, or (as I may terme it) the volhor of the whol. For many times it falleth out that delignments prosper wel for a while, and yet ouerthrow the authors or attempters in the end : not fo much by Fortune or chance, as by ouer-fight in the councellor or contriner thereof. For hee being deceived with the appearaunce or hope of some present, or neere commoditie. fore feeth not, or elfe neglecterh fome future and finall difgrace. Much like vnto the ficke-man, who following his owne appetite, eateth or drinketh fome

one thing, which refreshesh and contenteth him for the prefent, yet augmen teth his discase, or killeth him in the

In this point, all wicked and Machiuilling. Councelles fayle for the most part, which do often (liceeede well for a time, thorough Gods permission, for fecret causes best knowne vnto his Diuine Wisedome: but in the end, do de ftroy Princes and their States, partie thorough the luftice of almighty, God, and partly by the errour and negligence of the Councellours, in true reason of State as shall be mote at large prooued

heereafter. The house line and or is sold.

In the meane time I adde for the prefent, a fourth Gonfideration to the fame purpole, to wit; that a Mile Councelfor ought to weigh the Commoditie of cuery thing, with the flability and feenrity thereof: and not to admic his Prince with a fewe yeares profent iples fure or benefit, to purchase manie yeares future paine or discommoditie. But; rather to endure some disadvantage or dammage for a time, when thereby he may attaine to fome ftable and permanent good afterward.

And this he may learner by the course that Nature holdeth in humain affaires, ordaining Motion for reft, bufineffe for repole, Labour for eafe, and payne: for pleasure. In which respect, a Wife man laboureth when he is y. ung to zelt in his Olde age, and taketh a loathforne Potion, or bitter Pill, to recouer health, and willingly endureth all Temporall milerie, to attaine in the end to eternall Felicitie. This (I fay) not onely Nature, but also true Wisedome) which alwayes followeth the courfe and fleps thereof) doth teach vs no leffe in matters of State, then in all other humayne affayres.

27.53570 Therfore by the lame reason, a councellor ought also to prefer a certain and durable commodity) though it be leffe, Plutarch in his before a greater, that is (hort and vncertaine. To which purpole, Theopompus K. of Lacedemonia answered the Queen his learned wife very well, when thee lamented to him, that he wold lead his foial and rity leffe to his children; the his children; the his ceiued it, because he had of the his ceiued it, because he had of the history taine Controllers of Kings sealled Fig.

uident Coun pared to ficke men.

Wherein all wicked and Machauillian councels faile or the most Part, 7 ... 7

Commodity to be weighed with flability and fecurity.

Nature to be followed in the deliberaters of State.

ought to be

Gggg 3

The greatnes of Princely authority to be measured by the Stabi-lity thereof

ly to be confidered concer-ning Stability

True Stability is Eternity.

Sufficient rules cannot be giuen in perticuler concerning matters of

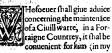
because it shalbe more firme and sure. Thus fayd he wifely measuring the benefite of Princely Authority; was fo much by greatnesse, as by furety and stabilitie, whereto all the Councelles and endeamones of Wife Councellours and Statifts ought chiefely to tend: yet with this confideration, that although of worldly things fome are more stable and permanent then others : yet there is no true ftability in any of them, and that therefore, all Wisemens Councelles are especially directed, to the attaining of Heauenlye things, wherein is true stability and eternity. Thus much for confiderations to be had in generall, concerning matters to be consulted. And foralmuch as fufficient Rules

cannot be given in perticuler, concerning the fame, in refpect that the affaires of State are infinite and variable, by reafon of the infinite occasions & accidents which fall out dayly to be confidered (all which may require different confiderations, according to the different Nature and quality of the matters, and the fundrie circumstances of times, places, and perfors) I have therefore thought good (for examples fake, and the instruction of young Statists) to handle and debate 3 heere, some one matter of State, by way of discourse. And because occasion is offered oftentimes, to deliberate about the maintenance of a Civill Warre in a forraigne Countrey, I will fet downe mine Opinion, what aduife a yong Statill may fafely give concerning the fame.

CHAP. IX.

For the better enstruction, and more persiculer information of a young Coun cellour, concerning matters to be confulted: a master of State is debased to wit : What is to be considered in a de 1beration, touching the maintenaunce of a Civill Warre, in a forraigne Countrey.

Concerning the maintenance of a ciuill warre in a forreigne Country.



fancy) for to confider principally these points following.

First, the Equity and Iustice of the cause, as well on his Princes part, to wit; whither it may be just and lawful in him, to give the assistance demanded: as also, whether their quarrell, which demaund the same, be lawfull and iuft, or no. For, if Iustice and Equitie want in eyther of both, no commodity that a Prince can receyue or expect, can counternaile the dishonor, danger, and damage which he shall affuredly incurre by the offence of Almighty God . Que aufert /piritum Pfalme, 76,11 Principum , & serribi is est apud Reges terra Who taketh the Spirit of Princes away and is terrible to the Kinges of the Earth: And will afforedly exact the penaltie thereof on him, or perhaps on his state, or on both, fooner or later. Which is The highest the chiefe and highest point of state, to point of state be confidred in all deliberations of princes, feeing the vtter destruction and ruin of them and their estates, proceedeth principally from the offence of God, as hath bin more at large before discussed.

It is also to be considered, what good and just motives his Prince may have on his own part, to give the succors demaded which may be reduced to four cases. The first, when he may thereby do some notable service to God, which is alwaies in it felfe not only honorable but profita- ble feruice to ble, as it were mony put to intreft, in refpect of the reward which hee shall affirredly receive at gods hands for the farme howfocuer it succeed for the present.

The fecond cafe is, when he is bound by Oath, promife, or gratitude, to fuccour the party that craueth his aide. For Obligation by in such case, the omission thereof (when oath, promise it may justly and conveniently be done) were both offenfine to God, & alfo, difhonorable and dangerous to a Prince, as we! in respect of Gods punnishment for his periury, as also for the bad example, and infloccation he should give vnto others his Allies and confederars, yea, and to his owne subjects to forfake him in his necessity. 50

The third cafe is, when the Prince of Aiuft prewhom the fuccour is demaunded, hath forreigne a just pretence vnto a forraigne Crowne Crowne or or State, for the obtaining whereof, he State, may hope to have a party, by maintay-ning a suff quartell in the fame State or Country. Wherein respect is to be had,

The equity of

A lamentable example of Seballian King of Por-tuzall, H:erom, Coue

A very indif-

vnkingly ad-

A forreigne

warre not to

be grounded principally

partic.

vpon hope of

Chap. 9.

to be confide

A perilous re folution in a

> A forreigne warre to be maintained. domefticall.

that the Princes own forces be fufficient for the execution of his enterprise, that he shall not neede to relie, further vport his partie; then onely to facilitate the fame. For, if his hope of good fucceffe, eyther in obtaining his pretence, or in conferning or maintaining it afterward, doe chiefely depend uppon the good will, fidelity, and fittength of fuch a party: he buildes (as a man may fay) spon the Sand, and puts in adventure his labour, charges, and reputation.

Heereof wee have had a lamentable example not many yeares past, in Seba-Hian, King of Portugall, who hoped to make himselfe. King of Marocco, under colour to restore thereto Muley Mahomet, whereof he made fo fure account; that he carryed a Crowne with him, to Crowne himfelfe King there. Not con- 20 fidering, that his aduerfary Muley Molucco (who was in possession of that kingdome) was not onely most valiant for his person; but able also to put into the field for his defence, about 100000. Horse and foote.

Against whom neuerthelesse, King Sebastian undertook the enterprife, with an Army of 13000. Souldiors, or there about, the most of them votrained : befide, neither he himfelfe, nor any that did commaund the Army under him. had ever borne Armes before. In fo much that he trufted (as it: feemed) to the conduct and forces of Muley Mahothet his Confederate, who when hee came to tryali, was not able to bring to the fielde 2000 men. So that, aduenturing with fo few, to fight with about 40000 Horie, and 10000 Foote, and 40 (as fome fay) a farre greater number: his Army was presently enclosed on all fides, and to opprest with multitudes, that he loft both the battaile, and his life. So perilous a thing it is for a Prince to ground any designement of a forraigne War : eyther on the weakeneffe of an Enemy, or on the strength of a Confederate, and not uppon fufficient forces of his owne. But to proceede.

The fourth cale is, when to anoyde fome imminent danger, of inualion or Warre at home, or other great vexauon : 2 Prince is forced to holde his Enemy occupyed in his owne Countrey, by supporting there a suft quarrellagainfithin. Wherein, though he fpend

largely, without fear of loffe, in respect of the present security which hee purchaleth, and exemption from greater expenses and daunger at home: neuertheleffe it shall be Wisedome for him, (in my faces) to practife the councell which Alabades the Athenian gaue to Tillaphernes in like cafe, to wit. Not to give greater succor, they may suffife to keep the warre flu on foote; as well to gain time, cell of Alcibia which often remedies b the greatest incan- desconcer. ueniente : as allo to extenuate and ruearie both parties , in fuch fort , that whe torreigne ther the marre end by victorie or com- water position, they may have no ability to assayle him. Which he may well feare, though the party which he affifteth should prouaile.

For this purpose, it is to be considered, that Civill differtions end many red, that Civili differtions end many coff of the times, to the cost of the Forteigne Prince who maintained them : whether they end by victoric of the enemy, or of his Confederate, or elfe by their composition. For, his enemy, if hee ouercome, remaineth more irretated, and more obliged to feek revenge then before ... And his Confederate, if hee yanquish the other, and succeed him in his State : is more like to prove an enemy then a friend, especiallie, if the quarell of the other was not personall (that is to fay, proceeding of some peruculer iniurie done to his perfon) but a quarrel of State, as commonly it is, for in that cafe, who foeuer shall be Gouernour of she same State, will be his enemy, notwithstanding, any benefit received. For experience teacheth, that respect of gratitude for benefits past, little auaileth, when it is any way encountred with reason of State.

Which (as Guiceiardin faith) Vinde ogni partito, Doth (with Princes) oner-weigh all other considerations. And is so varriable, according to the variety of occasions, and fuccesse of affaires a that it changeth daily, and of a Friend this day, maketh an enemy to morrow. In which respect, the Leagues & amities of Princes, is commonly very value, beethe obligation neuer lo great.

Moreouer, it commonly falleth out, Mony lent to that the party whom a forreign Prince | maintaine a helpeth to aduance, remaineth his deb-indanger to ter for the charges bestowed in his succour : wherevpon it followeth many

Good coun-

1 wast

Ciuill Warres that maintained them.

Respect of gratitude en countred with State, little

rangarana

Guicciard nelli Region of State very va riable

forreigne wa

Edward the

Polidor. Virgil.

in Hift, Angl.

Lib. 19.

his Friend and his Money. For, if he trust to bare promises of repayment, he is in danger to be ferued, as was Edward the Blacke Prince, who going in perfon (with a great Army into Spaine) to fuccour Peter the King of Caffile, vpon

Places or Townes giuen in pawne tor money make enemies of

Composition of deuided parties a-gainst the forreigner.

The Barrons England. or Vurgu m Hift. Augl. Lib 19, Paul, Aemil, it Phillip. 2.

Phillip. Duke

Pol dar. Virgil, in Hen. 5. 6.

times, that the Creditour loofeth both his promise to repay him all his expences : was after the victorie) fo delayed and deluded by him, that hee was faine to returne without any fatisfaction. By meanes whereof, hee was constrained to lay such impositions upon his owne Subjects in Aquitaine, for the payment of his Souldiours: that they rebelled, and hee loft the greatest part of that Country.

And put the case, that hee have any places or Towns deliuered him, in confideration of his expences, or his better 20 fecurity, which any Prince that giueth fuccour to Forraigners) hath reason to feck: then his friend many times (for reason of State) becomes his Enemy, to recouer those places which he gaue him before. And so it falleth out commonly, when focuer civill wars and diffentions come to end, by composition of the parties deuided:who willingly agree, and ioyne themselves against the Forraigner that maintained their deuifion. Especially, if he haue any hold or footing in their Countrey, though it were at the first with their owne confent swhereof I wil alleage a few examples, as well Andient as Moderne.

In the Barons wars in England, in the time of King John, Lewes the eight, then Son to Phillip the secondking of France, affisted the Barons against their King, 40 and being called by them into England, and proclaimed King therof: was shortly after (by common confent, as well of them, as of al the other English) driven

out againe. Also Phillip, Duke of Bourgundy, to be reuenged on the Duke of Orleans, & on Charles the seauenth, while hee was yet but Dolphin: called Henry fift, King of England into France, & affifted him first 50 to make him Regent, & after to crown not only him, but also Henry the fixt his Son, King of France in Paris . Yet in the end, he made his peace with King Charls aforefaide, and helped him to deprine the English of all that, which either they had got by his meanes, or other-

In like manner, Charles the eyght, King of France, was most earnestly follicited to the Conquest of Naples, euen in Carol. 8.Cap. by the Weapolitans themselves: who, neuertheleffe) fortly after helped to expel the Garisons and forces which he had left ther, notwithstanding they had received great benefits of him.

In this age also, the late Queene of England, of glorious memory, gane fome support in the first troubles of France, to her great charges. But when peace was made in the year of our Lord 1562, they all joyned against her, to recouer Haure de Grace from her, which they had before given her, for affurance of the Mony, by her lent them.

And laftly notwithstanding the costly fuccours of Men and Mony, that the French Catholikes received from the Catholike King of Spaine: yet they for-fook him almost all in the end, and joyned with his and their adnerse partie, and made War against him, to reconer of him fom few Towns in the frontiers of Flanders, which they had given him before, for his and their fecurity.

Therefore, although these things doe not alwaies fucceed in this manner, yet forafmuch as most commonly they do, and that nothing is more vicertaine, taine, then then that which dependeth on the will, affection, or gratitude of other men, or the will of vpon reason of state, which varieth and changeth daily, according to the varieev of occasions. I hold it for a speciall point of prudence in a Prince, to take the furest way, to wit; not to engage himfelf too far, nor to adventure more, then he careth not to loofe, in the maintenance of actuill VV arrein a forraigne Country; except, when either the fernice of God, for inft obligation, or the confernation of his own state doth neceffarily require it. Thus much concerning the behalfe of the Prince that is to gine the fuccour . Furthermore, great Confideration confideration is to be had, of the State ons concerand condition of the parties which demaundit : as, whether they bee able to fuccour. ouercome their aduerfaries, or (at least) to fland and maintaine their quarrell, with the affiftance which they crave, or may be given them. For otherwise, it were great impudence in any Prince, to vndertake their maintenance: but rather to endeauour by way of trea-

of France, Phillip Commi 2.0.39.

The motines or ends of leagues to be confidered. cond King of

> Phillip de Com. chron du Roy harles Cap. 23

The common

ende of the

French league.

Chap.9.

Concerning

Townes or

States con-

ederated.

The perticuier endes of many in the French league

Dinerfity of ends caufeth on of leagues.

A tew under one head is ftronger then

ty (betwixt them and their aduerfarie) to compound the quarrell, and thereby to make himselfe gratefull to both parties.

And for as much as it many times falleth out, that the ability and power of the party which craneth affiftance, confisteth not in the strength of some one potent and absolute Prince, but in the force of many Princes, Townes, or States, confederated and leagued together : it is in such case specially to bee considered, how, or voon what reasons, the faid partie is vnited.

To this purpose it is to be noted that in all confederacies and leagues, wherein many do vnite themselves : the confederaresare mooued thereto, eyther with one motive or end (as in the Cantons of the Smitzers, or in the League which the Pope, the King of the omaines, ine King of Spaine, the Venetians, and the Duke of Millaine, made against Charles the eight, King of France, for the defence of Italie.) Or elfe they are moued thereto with divers and fundry motines, fome with one, and fom with another.

As for example, in the late French League or vnion, fome entered onelie 30 for confernation of the Catholike Religion (which was the common and pretended end of all that partie) others entred for perticuler respects; as either for passion or ambition, or for the friendship of some one Man on the one fide, or hatred of fome on the other, or for hope of future gaine, or for prefent profit and commoditie, or fuch like.

Now then, those that are led by perriculer respects, doe not (for the most part) remaine any longer in any league, then they may hope to obtaine their defires. And when they are perswaded, that they may fooner obtaine the fame, by adhearing to the aduerfe partie; they are eafily induced thereto : and hereupon followeth commonly, the diffolution of such leagues and confederacies. For which cause, the strength and po- 5 wer of any leagues, is not to be meafured fo much by the multitude of confederates, be they never to great and potent :as by their concurrence and agreement in one and the fame end. For, as a few vnder one head, are ftronger then many, vinder many and different heads;

as Phillip de Comminaus noteth very wel: fo a few principall perfons or Townes, vnited together for one and the feltefame caule, are to be reputed far ftronger, and more like to fland; then verie many (chough much more potent) if they have many and different ends.

Therfore it much importeth a Prince, that shall support a Forraigne League, Necessary for to difcouer (as much as hee may) what a Prince to end or motive induced the Heades and ends of the principall Confederates, to make their principall entrance. Whereby he shall the better difcerne, what their force and firength may be, and how they are like to flund, and to maintaine their quarrell. For, if they have al but one end, they may be reputed the stronger: but if then endes be diners, they cannot long stand. As weehaue seene lately in the French League, which, notwithstanding the great fuccours (both of Men and Money) given them by the Catholique The diffoluti-King : diffolued rather of it lelfe, then on of the remebleague by any forces of enemics, by reason that through the many of the Gouernours of Townes, divertity of and chiefe Pillers thereof, concurred ends. not in one end with the whole league. And therefore, when they received fatisfaction for their perticular defires, or faw themselves out of hope thereof. they easily changed their party.

To fuch Leagues (I fay) vnited on- In what cafe ly in exterior flew, and not in one com-mon end: I hold it not fecure or conue-foreigne nient for a Prince to gine filecour, ex-league, not cept he be moued thereto by fome iminent danger of invalion, or other great dammage. Which he may feare to receiue from the enemy occupied, as I have fignified before, while he neyther prepares for his better defence at home, or at least may winne time; which in all extreamities is to be lought, and often remedicth the very greatest invenien-

Moreover, forafmuch as the fuccors demaunded or given, conful commonly eyther in Money, Men, or in both, confit enher and that it may import a Prince (for the in mony, men furtherance of some inft pretence. or obligation of his own, or for some publique good) to imploy not only his forces, but also his Mony largely, to mailtaile and support & Forraigne League : I will adde somewhat concerning the fame, to the cite, that a young Statist

many vnder Silip. Com oron, de Rov Louis Cap. 25.

vnited in one end.

The fuerous demanded

The Argumen

may the better understand, both what to aduife, and also how to deale there-

How money is to be beflowed in the maintenance of a forreigne league.

What effect money may worke.

Money is giuen to fuch as eyther are friends, enemies, or neutrall, and in what nature with eyther of them.

stowing of Mony, I say, that although it cannot be denied, but that Mony may doe very much in all businesses of this quality. (For, Quid non mortalia pettera cooit auri (acra fames ? What doth not the detestable hunger of Gold compell Men to do?) Yet ordinarily, the effect that Mony can worke, is but to dispose the wils and mindes of Men to the defired end. Which disposition (neuerthelesse) in fome that receive the Mony, is none at all, in others very little, and in most very doubtfull, and to be suspected. For those to whom thou giuest thy Mony, either are thine enemies, or thy friends, or elfe neutrall. If they be thine Ene- 20 mies, commonly they take thy Mony, to impouerifh thee, to enrich themfelues, and to imploy thine owne Mony against thee, when they shall see time.

Therefore, first concerning the be-

If they beethy Friends, thy Money worketh little; because their own good will and friendship, bindeth them more vnto thee, then thy Mony can doe. If they be neutrall, & become thy Friends 30 for the profit they have by thee: their friendshippe will last no longer then the profit continueth. And when they may think to get more by thine enemy, then by thee : they will be his friendes for the fame reason, that they were thine. And although they shall have never so great benefit by thee eyet they will perfwade themselves, that thou seekest thine own Commoditie, and not theirs, and that 4 thou are beholding vnro them, for that they doe vouchfafe to take any thing of

The defire of crealeth with the vie und possession Cicero in Offic.

thee. And foralmuch, as the hunger and defire of Mony, doth encrease with the possession and vse thereof: the more thou givest them, the more they will defire. For, as Cicero faith; Fit deterior qui accipit, & ad idem femper expectandum paration; He which taketh or recesueth Mony, is made wor fe thereby, and alwayes the more ready to expect the like. So that, if thou doe not ever give them, when, and how much they shall expect or demaund of thee : they will hate thee more for that which thou doft not give them, then they have loved thee for

that which they have received already. For, as Seneca faith. Vetus & nota ingra- Seneca in Lib. titudo est, dati immemores meminife ne- 2.de Ira.Ca.14 gati, ideoque rara & tepentes gratte ferui- A benefitrede & frequentes quarela. It is an old and forgotten; a novorious ingratitude, to forget a benefit benefit deuireceined, and still to remember a benefit de- bred euer, nied. Whereupon it followeth, that thankes are care and cold; and Complaints, feruent and frequent.

I fpeake not this, for that I thinke it not convenient to negotiate with Mony, to gaine and entertaine the affections of men : but to fignific, that it is to be don with great confideration. For, as Pling faith. Inconsiderate largitionis comes bestowed panitentia est . Repentance euer accompanieth the inconsiderate imployment of Mony . Therefore to fay fome-what of this point, my opinion is, that it is convenient for any man, that doth negotiate with Mony in a strange Country : to haue his Pursse alwaies open, for fuch as are true Friendes to him and the League, as well to gratifie them, and to recompence their good wils and good Offices; as also to helpe their necefficies, and to enable them to vphold their partie.

And those may bee accounted true Friends, whose end is either the com- to be befor mon end of the whole League : or fo ed vponfuf dependant thereon, that it cannot be o- fons, therwise obtained, but by the good succeffe of the League. And to fuch, Mony may ener bee fecurely given, when their necessities, or the publike good of the League shall require it. But vnto others, little or nothing is to be given (in my fancy) except it bee to buy of them some important places; or to recompence intelligences, or feruices already done. And therefore it shall bee convenient, to vse all diligence (as before I have fignified) to discover the true Motines, that induced enery one to Aill to be had whom Mony is to be given, to enter into the League.

And in case it may seeme needful to aduenture some what, to entertaine fome few principall men, though neu- Of entertaitrals, or suspected, to divert them from compounding with the enemic: it shall bee convenient (in my fancy) to give them largely, and more then the Enemy is like to give them, and precifely to accomplish what else shall be promised.

Plin.lib.7.Epiff. Monie to b

Liberality to be vied towardes true friends, and who they are

How mony i

few principall

bought with Cicero in Offic

No trust in

affe aion

Aman cot. rupted with monie, will be

For otherwise, they will acknowledge no Obligation, and when the Enemy shall give them more, they will follow him and if promise bee not kept with them, they will esteeme themselves to be mocked, and (for very difdaine) will paffe to the Enemy and of all this, I faw daily experience in the time of the League in France. There the Catholike King bestowed many Millions, in Penfions, in entertainements, which many received, and after became his open Enemies. Some of them, because they were not punctually paid their entertainements; Others, because (as they pretended) promise was not kept with them in other things; And some others againe, either because they could not haue whatsoeuer they demaunded, or because that others had more then 20 they.

Chap.10.

The danger of breach of

Example of

the league in

France, wit-neffed by the

Money and

forces con-

curring, doc

worke great effects,

The Oracle

promile.

But how much foeuer shall be bestowed vpon one or other, there is no fecurity or affurance, in negotiating with Money alone: except the fame be evther accompanied, or shortly seconded with fufficient forces, which concurring therewith, may work great effect. And therefore the Oracle faide to Phillip of Macedon : Hastis pugna argentatis & omnia vinces : Fight with filuered shields, and thou shalt overcome all: advising him therby, to imploy Mony and Forces together. For, as for negotiation with mony alone, the longer it continueth; the more danger there is, both to loofe the Mony and the businesse. For no trust is to be had in affection bought with Mony, and not grounded on reason & vertue. In which respect Phillip King of 40 Macedon, faide very well to his Sonne Alexander, who fought to gaine from him the good wils of the Macedonians, with guifts and bribes, What mischiefe (quoth he) per/wadeth thee to thinke, that

Thus much for this matter, whereof much more might be faid, if the question were reduced to perticular persons and Countries; which might minister other important confiderations of difficulties, according voto the Nature, ftrength, or weakenesse of the places, and the conditions and abilities of the persons, who were to bee succoured or impugned. Which I forbeare to pro-

those will bee faithfull to thee, whom theu

hast corrupted with Mony?

fecute any further, to paffe to another. matter meaning to debate, whether theremedies which Pollitiques teach, against the danngers and inconveniences growing of wickednesse be sufficient (in reason and true pollicy)to affire the State of a wicked Prince. By occasio whereof, I will examine divers princiwhereof, I will examine divers princi-proposed in ples of Machivillian Doctrine, and thew the ensuing the absurdity thereof. To the end, that Chapter, 210 theyoung Statist, whom I labout to informe, may understand as well what to anoyde, as what to embrace in matter of pollicy, and that a Princes State cannot be affired by wickednesse.

Of Forraigne Ciuill vvarre.

CHAP. X.

Another Question is debated, for the further enstruction of a young Statist, to wit: whether a Princes State can be affured by wicked pollicy? By the occasion whereof, many principles of Machiauill, and of the Pollitiques his followers, are examined and confuted by reason of state without the consideration of Gods In-



O Man that is endued with reason, will denie, Wherein conthat wickednesse in a fifteththe Prince, maketh him hate greatest part full to his Subjects, and policies.

(confequently) endangereth his Estate. Which al Machiauillians and Pollitiques knew fo well; that the greatest part of their pollicy, confifteth in denifing remedies against the same. To the ende, that their Prince may bee fecurely wicked, that is to fay, that he may purchase and eniov all Worldly pleafures and commodities, Perfas & nefas, By right paffedby or wrong: without danger of any re- right or nenge of Man, and not fearing the wrath and Iustice of God, because they beleeue nor, that there is a God, or (at leaft) that he medleth not with the affaires of Men.

First let vs see some of their Remedies. One of the principall (according to the Doctrine of their Maister Machi-

Machia. de

Machianels principall remedy confi fleth in extremity of wickedneffe.

Machiane!l would have

Machine habfuedity in fecking to remedie a difeafe, by encreasing the cause thercof.

Excelline wickedneffe exposeth a ceffiue hatred Cicero in Offic. Lib. z.

No force or power can fufficiently retift the hatred of many. Pollitiques fecke ablurdly to temedy hatred by

Feare concur ring with hate makes it more dangerous to hun which is hated, and

avill) is, extreamity of all mischiefe and wickednesse, which Machiauill teacheth to be far more secure for a Prince, then mediocrity betwixt vertue and vice. Therefore he would have his Prince to bee, either the best man living, or the worft: that is to fay either to be a Saint or a Deuill. Whereof his reason must a Prince to he needs be (if he have any) that he which holdeth the middle way betwirt vertue and vice, and dorh fometimes well, and fometimes ill: must needs incur the offence and hatred of some men, whereby he shall be endaungered. Therefore he thinkethit convenient for fuch a one to practife the common Prouerb, to wit; Qui semel verecundia fines transierit, &c. He that hath once past the bounds of Shame, must be notably impudent. That is to fay, he that is once over the shooes in sinne; 20 must (for his safety) goe ouer head and eares. As though the way to remedy a difeafe, were to norish and encrease the cause thereof: as to cure a dropsie with continuall drinking, or a burning feauer with hot Wines and Spices, or to cast Oyle into the fire, to the end to quench it. For so do Machiauillians, who, to remedy the danger that groweth to a wicked Prince by harred, doe make him more hatefull, and by the excelle of wickednesse, expose him to the extream & excessive harred of all men, and confequently, to ruine and perdition. For, as Cicero faith; Multorum ody's nulla opes. nulle vires poterunt resistere. No force power, or wealth, can sufife, to resist the hatred of many, and much leffe of all Men . Yes, fay they; Oderint dum metuant; Let them hate him (be they neuer fo many) fo that they feare him . For feare shall so repreffe their hatred: that they shall not dare to attempt any thing to his preindice. Thus fay they, but most absurdly: for feare (in a mind poffest with hate) is nothing elfe, but as it were Vnguis in vlcere: A mans naile or a foratch in an vlcer or botch, which is exasperated thereby, and the paine of the patient greatly agrauated. And although feare doe (in 50 forme fort) delay and represse the fury of hatred: yet it makes it much more fecure for the hater, and more dangerous

> For those that hate without feare, do many times attempt (vnaduifedly) to their own destruction ; but those which

to him that is hated.

both hate and feare, do deliberate, and execute with much more maturity and confideration, and (confequently) with confideration, and (confequently) with The Prince adding fear to their enemy. So that, who the Prince to the hatred doth adde feare to the hate of his Sub- of his fubices iects: he redoubleth both his own fear, his own fear and also his owne perill. Whereupon and danger, the Tragicall Poet faith.

Qui sceptra duro saus imperio regit, Timet timentes, metus in autorem redit. That is to fay. He which governeth by fenerity and cruelty feareth those which feare him, and the fear turneth upon the Author vpon the Au or cause thereof. And, as Senecathe Stoick faith. Neffe eft vt multos timeat, quem multitiment. He must needs be in feare of many, whom many feare. Also Cicero, fol- cicero in Offic lowing Ennius the Poer, faith notably Lib. 2. thus. Quem metuunt oderunt &c. Men hate him whom they fear, and every one defireth the destruction of him whom he hateth : And no force or power of Empire (bee it never fo great) can long stand if it be prest with continuall teare of the Subsects. Thus faith Cicero, declaring the daunger that groweth to a Prince by hatred & feare, which are the most focrible and vrgent Motiues that may be, to moue a people to conspiracies, as well among themfelues, as with forraigners: both to deliver themselves of the feare, as also to discharge their hatred & ire vpon their Prince. Wherefore Aristotle doth rec- Arifi in Polit. kon hatred and feare, among the princi- Lib. 5. pall causes, of the destruction of Monarchies and tyrannies.

But heere fay the Machiavillians. For, Machianillan this cause hath the Prince his Guardes, remedies a-Armies, and Fortresses, to defend him:
felfe from all attempts, both Fortaigne
red according and Domesticall; beside the vigillancy and pollicy which he vseth for the preuention of conspiracies; disarming and impouerishing his Subjects; forbidding their affemblies and publike conventions; and all other meanes, which may breedlove, truft, and confidence among them. Terrifying the (oftentimes) with the frequent thew of his Guardes and Garrisons, to make them feruile & base minded; fuffering them to be vicious & diffolute of life, to make them effeminate: nor permitting them the vie of Schooles, or other meanes, whereby they may become learned, wife, & pollitike. Imploying his fpies enery where,

Hatred and

feare are the

fpiracies.

Macbiavillian pollicies knowne and praétifed in al ages, by wic-ked Princes

to their raine

Machiguell

Arift.in Polit. Libiy, Capita. Machandhan politices reicéted by A. nhotle about 2000. yeares

agoc.

The speedy fal of tyrannicall flates noted by A. riflotle. Ariflot, Ibid.

for the discouery of enery mans intention. Nourifhing dinifions among the greatest, to counterpeize one with another. Suspecting al men, be they never fo much bound to him. And finally, cutting off (by one means or other) althose whose power, courage, or wir, he may thinke to bee daungerous to his State: wherby he thall be fecure from the dangers which may grow to his person or 10 State by the hatred of his Subjects.

Whereto I answere, that if Machiauill,

or some other Polliticke in these our was not the inventer of his pollicies.

daies, had bin the first inventers of these policies, and that they had never bin yet tried:it might with more reason be supposed, that there were, or might be som afforance therein for a wicked Prince. But feeing all this, or whatfocuer elfe Machinuil, or any Polliticke doth teach, 20 for the confernation of a Tyrant, bath bin practifed in all times & ages, by Tyrants and wicked Princes, who (neuertheleffe)haue al. or the most part of the perified by the hatred of men : who feeeth not the infufficiency thereof, for the affurance of a Prince in wickednesse?

Can Machianill or any other Pollitick,

teach more to this purpose, the we find written aboue 2000, yeares ago by Ariflotte in his Pollitickes ? Who thewing the meanes, whereby Tyrants feeke to preferue themselues and their states:mi nistreth to Machiauil and his fellowes, al the matter and substance of their wicked pollicies. Which neuertheles, were not appropued by Ariflotie, as fufficient for the confernation of tyranny : but vtterly rejected by him. In which refpect, he declareth how vnfure tyranny is, and 40 exemplifieth the fame in all tyranicali flate, which had beene before, or in his time. Shewing how speedily they all perished, excepting only foure: whereof the first continued 100, yeares, the fecond 73, and fixe months; the third. 33. and the fourth, 22. yeares. And the cante of the long continuance of the first and fecond, he ascribeth to the moderate and just government of the Tyrants, who though they got their States tirannically, and held them by vibrpation (in regard whereof they are called Tyrants;) yet they gonerned with fuch moderation and Inflice, that they were greatly beloued of their Subjects.

To which purpole Ariflotie also ob-

feruerh, that the state of a Tyrant is fo much the more fure: by how much Arift. Ibid. more moderate it is, and neerer to his iust government of a King. Wherein al Machianillians'inay note, both by the do-Ctrine and experience of Arifforles that Machanillian the extreamity of wickednesseand ty- pollicies conranny, is the high way to earry a Prince that defering headlong to his destruction, notwith- rnd experistanding all their presentions aforefaid, 'cace. Whereof some part are most necessary for the confernation of any Princes state: as Guardes, Garrisons, Fortresies, vigilance of Councellors, dilligence of Spies and Intelligencers, as also such other parts of those pollicies, as is conforme to reason, lustice, & conscience. But the refl, I mean those points of hindring love and confidence among Subiccts, immoderate pilling and poulling reached and them, making them effeminate, igno- inthe Machirant, & bafe minded nourithing debate an lan emeamongst great persons, and cutting off dies about fuch as are more eminent in credit, power, courage, and wit, then the rest: thefe I fay, and all fuch as are against charity, Iustice, and Conscience, are against all true pollicy, and so farre from helping a Tirant, that they help to ruine him, as heere in this Chapter Maltappear, concerning fome of thele pointes

in perticuler, and fome in generall.

fidence, there can be no fidelity; & with-

out fidelity, no luftice; and without lu-

flice, no Commonwealth, as you have

read in the necessity of fidelity in the

ties, publike Feafls, Playes, and affeni-

bles, where the people may meet toge-

ther : not onely for recreation, but to

make them also known one to another.

to Commonwealths. For faith he . Hy means

Hhbb

And now to speake of some of them. What can be more contrary to true real Missioneh fon of State: then to hinder truft, con- Doctrine con fidence, and love among the people, fun contained without the which there can be no conmonwealth? For, without lone & con-

Prince. For this caufe, all ancient Law- Why publique makers, and founders of comonweakhs, Pares was have ordained in all Countries and Git- | fint man ared

To the end, that of their conucrlation, The benefit may grow lone and friendflip, and the effore and fame redound to generall visty, for the friendfhip in confernation of peace in the whole wearing.

Comonweal h. And therefore Arillotte ! faith, that friendship is Maxima benum Lib. 2. C. 2. ciuitatibus, The greatest good that can bee

therief.

Plutarch, in

What Common-wealth Solon liked

The love & vnion of mem bers of the polliticall body, most neceffary for the conferuation hereof.

Senecain Lib.2. de Ira.Cap. 31.

Why Machia thinke, that factions among fubic & are good for Princes,

A Machiavilli an Prouerbe and principle

thereof, they shall be free from sedition. Alto, Solon effeemed this amity and vnion of minds to be so necessary for the conferuation of humaine Society, that, being demanded, what Common-wealth was best, and most like to continue: Such a one (faith he) wherein enery Man doth take the iniury which is don to another, to be done to himfelfe. And to the fame purpose he made a law in Athens, giuing leaue to euery one, to take vppon him the just quarrel of any other, and to demand reparation of the wrong, as if the matter concerned himfelf. Which constitution of Solon, Plutarch commendeth greatly. As a means (faith he) to accustom the people to feele and redresse the griefes & iniuries one of another, as being al members of one body. Whereby he may vnderstand, that the vnion and love of the political body (that is to fay, the Common-wealth) is no leffe necessary; then the combination of the parts in the body naturall. Which Seneca teacheth notably in these words . Vt omnia inter fe membra, &c. As all the members and parts of mans body, do agree together for the conleruation of the whole, which also redoundeth to the good of every part in particular : So all men ought to agree to the benefit one of another, because we are borne to line in focietie, which cannot be conferued, but by she agreement and love of the parts thereof. Thus faith Seneca.

How then can it fland with true pollicie, or reason of State, to hinder this vnion and loue of the people, or to fow and nourish factions among them, and especiallie among great personages; whereby seditions, tumults, and garboyles may grow in the Commonwealth? Yes, fay the Machiavillians, it standeth notably wel with the reason of our Princes State, who feeketh not the generall good of the Commonwealth: but his particular benefit. And therfore, foralmuch as the vnion and friendship of fubiects, may enable them the rather ro conspire against him : it is good pollicy & reason of State for him, to main- 50 taine factions among them, according to the old faying . Si visregnare, divide. If thou wilt raigne, make division.

Thus fay they. Of whom I wold gladly learne, how they can (in this case) seperate the perill of the Comon-wealth, from the perill of the Prince, to make this good pollicy for him? Can the body be in danger, without the peril of the head? Hath it not bin feen many times, that some private quarrell, growne at first betwirt meane personages: hath after paffed further to a multitude, and (from them) come to be general to the (trom them) come to be general to the gerous to ruine of a whole State? And therefore, Princes. Plutarch wifely compareth fedition to a little sparke of fire, which falling into straw, or other dry matter in some corner of a house : setteth the same on fire, whereby (in the end) a whole Towne is | for fuch as burnt. In which respect, he counteth it | deale in mat. for one of the most special pointes of politicall Science: to take away all occasion of sedition, and when it groweth, to appeare it quickly.

Aristotle alfo teacheth the same verie feriously, affirming, that Sedition is the chiefe cause, of the mutation and subuersion of Common-wealths. Shewing how many waies it may rife, and how it may be remedied, & that it is alwaies dangerous, but then most petnitious, when it grow. | fubuerfion of eth among great personages. And therfore he aduifeth, to remedy the same (if it be possible) in the very beginning, because: Principium dicitur effe dimidium totius: The beginning is faide to be the one halfe of the whole. And little feditions at the first, grow after to be great, especially among great men : Whose discord Factions a-(faith hee) draweth the whole Commonwealth after them. Whereby it may appeare, how dangerous and abfurd is the councell, which Machianillians give to their Princes, to norish factions in their Common-wealth, & especially among great personages: as if Princes were omnipotent, and had the harts and wils Princes may of al men in their hands, to moue, fway, make raction incense, or temper in such manner and measure, as it shall please them, which der the bad only is in Gods hand and power to do. effects there So then it is evident in this cafe, that the Machiauillians expose their Prince to manifest danger, without any affurance, or sufficient probability of remedie, which in matter of State is most absurd.

The like may also be said, of their other pestilent pollicies before mentio- Machiavillia ned, confifting in all kind of cruelty, injustice, and wickednesse: whereby they make their Prince most odious to all odious to men, and (by confequent) do draw them into manifest dangers, from which they

mon-wealth and of the conjoyned. Factions in the Common wealth dan-

Plutarch in his

Ariflin Polit. Lib. 5. Cap. 2.

1dem 1bid ca4

afterward his

the Empire of Rome and Con-Suction Tran quil. Aelius Lam Spartianus.

are notable to warrant or defend them by all their pollicies. As it may appeare by the experience of all ages & former times, vnto this wherein we line, feeing all Histories doe testifie, that the more wicked and tyrannical Princes haue bin, and the more they have incurred the harred of men; the fooner they have bin ruined; fome by open rebeliions of their fubicets; fome others, by their ge- 10 neral description in fauour of strangers; others by fecret confpiracies of a few ; and others also, by the desperate attempt of forme one man notwithstanding all their pollicies, power, force of Guards, Armies, Fortresses, or other humaine meanes.

This point Cicero proneth, by the ex-

Chap. 10.

The hatred o

fubicets most

dangerous ro Princes, by

the experi-

Cicero in Offic.

of hatred ex-

emplified by

first Kings of

by hatred.

lit Lingus Dec.

imples in

amples of Phalaris a most cruell Tyrans, whom all the people of the Agric n- 20 times oppressed in a general tumult ; and of Alexander, the Tyrants of Phere, killed by his owne craft : And of Demetrius. King of Macedon, forfaken of all his fubiects, in fauour of King Pyrrhus . To whom we may adde Romulus , the first Rome ruinated founder of the Romain Empire, who haning made himfelfe hateful to his Senators: was murdered by them in the very Senate house. As L. Tarquinius Priferia, his third Successor, being odious to the people for his In-juffice, and fraud towards the Children of Aucus Martius, whom he deprined of their Kingdome, though he was left their Tutor by their Father: was flaine by two Shephcards. In like manner, Tarquinius Superbus, the feauenth and laft King of the Romaines, who yfed all the tyrannicall pollices aboue mentioned, violated all Lawes 40 humaine and divine, for the confernation of his estate : was neuerthelesse driuen out of his kingdom by his fubiccts, and the name of King and kingly authority, abolished among the Romaines (in hatred of him) for the space of 500.

> And if wee looke into the Romaine Empire after Iulius Cefar, we shal finde, that neither pollicy nor power, could 50 defend many Emperors of Rome & Constantinopie, against the hatred of Men. As, to omit many others, who perished vpon other occasions; it may appear by (a) Iulius Cafar himfelfe, Caius Caligula, Claudius, Nero, Domitian, (b) Commodus, (c) Digius, Iulianus, (d) Caracalla, (c) Ofi-

lius Macrinus, and his Son Dradumenus (f) Heliogabalus, Alexander Seucrus, Iulius Maximus, (g) Gatienus, (h) Phillippus, (i) Aurelianus, (k) Constans the first; (i) Gratian, Valentinian the third, Bafiltous, Zeno, Mauritius, Phocas, Heracleon, with his picim. Mother Marting, Constans the second, Pom Instinian the second Phillippicus, Constan- Loannes Baptinus the fixt, Wicephorus Stauraties, Leo lifta Egnatus Armenius, Michael the Son of Theophilus, Nicetas Choni-Nicephorus, firmanica Phocas, Joannes Ze- ates. mifces, Michael Calaphrates, Stratioticus, Michael Parapinaseus, Andronicus Comnenas, and divers others, who having incurred the hatred, either of their Subiects in generall, or of fome particuler persons, were some of them payfoned, and others violently flaine, eyther by the fury of the people, or by their Nobility, or by their own Guards and Soldiours, or by their wives, Concubines, or feruants, or by other particuler men. Belides, some others of them were doposed, and eyther confined into Monafleries, or deprined as well of their eyes and nofes, as of their Empire. And one among the reft, to wit, Zeno, a most cru- Zeno a most ell and crafty Tyrant, was put into his Sepulcher aline (by the confent of his buried aline. Wife) while he was drunke, or, as some write, taken with a fit of the falling ficknesse. Being also so hated of his owne Scruants and Guards, that when hee Cedienini's came to himfelfe, and cried for help out Comp.Zena.cs of the sepulcher tho man affisted or pit- Ioan Baptifla tied him, and so he died raging, and rea- Egnatius in ring his flesh with his teeth, as it appeared afterward when the Tombe was opened.

Machiauill requireth in his Prince. As

(to omit others, for breuities fake) the

last whom I named of the Emperors of Hhhh 2

And although enery one of these was The hatred not so subtile, nor so pollitike, nor yet of Subjects so wicked, as Machianil would have his sious to Primero. Prince to be:yet it is cuident in them al, ces. that the hatred of Subjects is most pernitious to Princes . And in fome of them it appeareth manifeftly, that no humane power, or wicked pollicy, can' warrant and affure them the State of a Prince generally hated: feeing that diuers of them before named, excelled not onely in imperiall power; but alfo in subtiltie, eraft, persidiousnesse, periury, deepe diffimulation, crucltie, Egnatius, and all fuch kinde of wickednesse, as

relius h Viltor. Flawing Vo.

Wickedneffe

neuer wants

Nicetas Chani ates in Andronico Comneno. Lib. 1.

nenus, was fo eminent and egregious in all tyrannicall Pollicy: that Egnatius worthily calleth him; Callidi Gimum mortalium; The most crafty of all Mortal men. Of whose manner of gouernment I wil fay fomwhat briefely, to the end it may appeare: how little fecurity a Prince may have by wicked pollicies, against

The History of Andronicus Commenus, Emperour of an egregious Pollitique.

Idem. Lib. 2.

strangers, and his great dog.

ldë.I.Lib.& 2

His wicked

Inftruments.

1dcm.Lib.2. His care of the adminifirstion of Iuffice in all things which did not concerne his per ticuler bene-fit or pleafure Constantinople, to Wit; Andronicus Comthe hatred of men.

This Andronicus, having with great art and fubrilty, obtained to be Turour to the young Emperor Alexius, Son to Emanuell: made himfelte (thortly after) his Companion in the Empire, procuring the death of the Empresse, Mother to Alexius, and of diners others, whose liues hee thought to be prejudiciall to his pretence. Within a while also, hee caused the young Emperor himselfe to be murdred, norwithstanding, his former oath of fidelity; follennely confirmed with receiving the bleffed Sacrament. And being then Emperor alone, and finding him clfe to be hateful to his people: he practifed all the tyrannicall Pollicies, that could be deuted for his own confernation. He guarded his Pallace and person, with strong Guards of barbarous Strangers, and the most desperate Fellowes that could bee found, who could neither speake nor vnderstandthe language of the Country : and he had (befide) euery night at his chamber door, a huge Mastine dog, so fierce, that he durft fight body to body with a Lyon, or with an armed man on horfebacke. He was also provided of wicked Instruments, for the execution of his will in all cases: as Spies, Promoters, and false witnesses, whereby many Noblemen were flaine, imprisoned, or banished. Yet for no other cause, but for that he feared, that either their credit with the people, or their power, or their wealth, or their wit, might prooue in time dangerous to his State.

Neuertheleffe, knowing right well, that the more his Empire flourished in Inflice, the more it would be his honor, benefit, and security : hee shewed such especial care thereof, that hee excelled many notable Princes therein, not only prodiding for the election of inft and wife officers: but also feuerely punishing those, who eyther did, or permitted any wrong to beedone, to the meanest or

poorest subject he had. Beside, he ordained, and gaue most liberall allowance, to al Magistrats for their maintenance, to the end : that they should not have any need or pretence to take bribes. And fuch as were produed to be corrupt, he punished so exemplarly: that (within a while)no Magifttate durft take fo much as a present of any man, though it was neuer fo voluntarily offered. He shewed himselfe affable and courteous vnto the poore, and seemed ful of pitty and compaffion, whenfoeuer hee heard their complaints, and did them exact Inflice. Furthermore, he tooke fuch order, for the releefe of the necessities of the common people : that all kinde of victuals were most plentifull and cheape; the ground well tilled and mannured, the Countries well inhabited Villages and

Citties much augmented, & the Common-wealth greatly entiched. Such was the care he feemed to have

of Iustice, and of the publique good, which (neuertheleffe) he respected no further: then it might turne to his own perticular benefit or pleasure, whereof he preferred the confideration, before all things else whatsoeuer. For, as he provided the Commonwealth of notable Magistrates : so he furnished his Court with wicked Councellours and Indges, voyd of all conscience, who executed his will, ypon all fuch as incurred his diflike or fuspition. Some they banifhed, spoiled others of their goods; de prined others of their cies; murthered others fecretly, and condemned many publikely, vpon false pretences, of whom (neuertheleffe) he himfelfe would feem to have great compassion. As for example, understanding that one Hacius, a Noble-man, had taken Armes against He suspected and made him in the Island of Cyprus : he picked a away his most quarrel against two of his own trustiest fimiliare Ser-Seruants and Fauourites, because they were great friends to the other, caufing them to bee accused of Treason, condemned, and executed. And when fuite was made vnto him, after their deathes, that their Bodies (which were hanged vp) might be taken downe and buried : His deepe hee feemed fo much to pittie their cafe, and feigned that hee shed aboundance of teares, lamenting that the fentence of the Indges, and the feueritie and authori-

tie of Law, must needes ouer-weigh

to the poors and provision for plenty of

Iden Ibid

wealth with good Magi-ftrates, and his Count

His daily feares and fuspitions,

1dem, Lib. 2.

His horrible

cruelty crafti

ly couered.

refferer of

His Sorceties and witch-

.Of wicked Policies: Chap.10. his defire, and the affection that he bare

them And when any were touched withmatter of feditions not onelythey themselves, but also alshe wholekinted and families were condemned and the ned to the end, that none should be left of their tace to reuenge it. The which (neuertholeffe)he feemed rather to permir, and fuffer to be done, then himfelfe to ordaine it. For he caused his ludges and Magistrates, to give those sentences by publique Edict, with plaulible preambles: thewing their care of the Emperours person, and referring it not to his commaundement; but to divine inspiration, as a thing necessary for the service of God, and the good of the Common-wealth.

Heere now I appeale to any Machihad the Quin avillian, whether Andronicus had not the 20 Quinteffence of Machanels Pollicy, long pollicies, long before Machiauil was born? And whether he wanted eyther defire, wit, or evel was born. wickednes, to conferue his state against the hatred of men, if it had beene possible to have done it by wicked meanes? Therefore, let vs fee the end, which was fuch, that it may well ferue for an exemplare warning, to all Machiavillian

Pollitiques. Idem, Ibid.

While Andronicus gouerned in this manner, his cruelty and in-Iustice did purchase him more harred, the the good that he did for the publike, could recom pence. Which filled him enery day with new feares, fuspitions, and lealosies : efpecially, after that he was preffed with warres by William King of Sicily. Who having ouerthrown some of his armics, and taken The [[alenica, and other towns 40 ofimportance: marched towards Constantinople, wherwith the people began to take courage, and to discouer their hatred to Andronicus daily more and more. This did put him in fuch feare of Conspiracies, that hee consulted with Sorceres and Witches : especially with one Sethus a Magitian, who demined by a Bason of Water. And one day, when Andronieus defired to know the name of 50 his Successor; Sethus shewed him in the water, the two Letters, Land S. wherby he & his Councellors coniectured, that it thould be Ifacius, who had rebelled against him in the Island of Cyprus, as before hathbin declared. Nevertheleffe. forasmuch as there was another Ifasius

(fit-named Angelus) at the fame time in the Court, a man of fo quiet a Spirit, and fo fmall courage, that Andronicus himfelfe did no way fulpect him sone of How he was his speciall Councellours suggested to ouer reached in his Sorce. him; that it were good to command the iries. faid Hacius Angelus, to be taken and put into prison, to preuent the worst Least (laith he) we may feeke the Viperabroad in she field, when perhaps we have him in our before. And although Andronicus feemed (at the first) to contemne ffacius, as a man no way to be feared : yet at last it was refolued by him and his Conneell, that he should be taken. And for that purpose, Stephanies, one of his chiefe Councellours and worst Instruments, went himfelfe(with certain of his catchpoules) to the house of Ifacius, who defending himfelfe : killed Stephanus , & ran presently (with his sword bloody in his How his wichand)through the Market place to take Sanctuary in the chiefe Churchof the towne, imploring (as he went) the ayd of the people, declaring what hee had done, and why. The people flocked after him to the Church, pittying greatly his

case, and commending his act, and at

length, their courage encreasing with

their multitude: they began to embol-

himselfe well payed, if he could saue his

life, This resolution being taken among

them, they proclaimed him Emp. first

in the Church, and after in the streetes:

which was approved with general con-

fent of the Nobility, and all the people

of the Citty, who came to yeild him o-

bedience, and to affift him . Andronicae

feeing himfelfe forfaken of all his Sub-

iects, durft neither truft to the strength

of his Pallace, nor of his Guards, nor of

backe loaden with Iron Chaines. Hee

his haire of his head and beard pulled a-

way; his teeth strucken out; his right

hand cut off; and (a few daies after) one

of his eyes pulled out of his Head.

Then was he fet vpon a feabled Camel,

apparrelled ridiculouflie, and carryed Hhhh a

den one another; first to defend Ifacius; and afterward to make him Emperour. Haches fearing Which being propounded to the whol to loofe his affembly, was accepted of them all: Life, was fuddenly made Emperor, thogh he himfelfe neither defired it nor to much as dreampt of it, but thought

> Andronicus forfaken of all his Subjects.

his great Dog : but fled away in a Boat, The reward and was thortly after taken, and brought end of Andro nices for his was fcorned and reuiled by the people; Tyranny.

273

The fruit and

benefit of Ma-

chiauillian pol

but that I promised not to vige the

fame in this Chapter. Thus much con-

cerning the coman and Greek Emperors.

I might also produce many other no-

in Prison; Or yet of Fichard the third,

forfaken of all his Nobility and Com-

mons, and flaine at Bofworth Fielde;

what elfe (I fay) was the cause thereof,

but the hatred of their Subjects? And

as for the last of these, I meane Richard

and treacherous Nature, his cruelty, his

deepe diffimulation, his devillish devi-

fes and inventions, as well to get the

Crown, as after to conferue it : we thall

not finde him inferiour, to the most fa-

mous tyrants of former times, for al im-

pious and wicked pollicies, which ne-

uertheleffe could not free him from the

danger of destruction, which the hatred

amples, feeing the Mirror of Machianus

owne Prince, Cafar Borgia, may ferue

for a Witnesse of this matter? For,

though he fo far furpaffed al former Tv-

rants-in wickednesse and tyrannical po-

wernthat Machiauill made choife of him,

But what neede I alledge other ex-

of his Subjects justly drew vpon him.

through the streetes to be shewn to the

people: who threw vpon him all kinde

of ordure and filth, every one conten-

table examples of this matter, out of Examples out of our Eng-lish Histories. Histories as well of our own Country, as of al others. For, what caused the deftruction of Edmond Ironside, who was Polidor Virgi murdred vpon a priny; or the continual rebellions in the time of K. John ; Or the 30 vntimely death of Edward the fecond, Idem, Lib. broached with a hot fpit; Or of Richard the second, first deposed, and after slain

Sir Thomas Moore in Kin Richard the thirds life.

Richard the third, not in ferior to the famous Tymer times.

Example of Machianels owne Prince Cefar Borgia.

to frame his Prince by the modell of his tyranny: yet could he not vphold and conferhe his State, against the harred of Men. But beeing abandoned by his Subiects and Friends: became a notable example, not onely of humane imbegility, but also of the wofull end, of fuch astruft to wicked Pollicies, as I have declared before vpon other occa-

Hereupon it followeth, that no Prin- The littleft. ces power or pollicy, can sufficientlie cuity that warrant and affure his estate, against the ces have of vniuerfal harred of men; specially, con- their Guardi fidering the little fecurity, that wicked | or Armica. Princes (when they grow to be hated) haue of their owne Guards or Armies. For though they are the special means of their detence; yet they ferue (many times) for another end, then to butcher and flaughter them: As hath formerlie been auouched, by the examples of (a) Caligula, (b) Caracalla, (c) Heliogabains, b Spartimum Phillip (d) Galien, Macrinus, (c) Aurelianus, (1) Maximinus, and others, flaine partly by their Guards, and partlie by their Souldiours, notwithstanding, the picus. great liberality, which many of these Emperours vied, to buy their affections and fidelity. As it may be well observed (to omit divers other) in Maximinus of whom Iulius Capitolinus faith. Ea affutia fust, Ut milites non folum virtute regeret, nuin Maxi. fed etiam pramys et lucris (ui amantifsmos redderet. He was focrafty, that hee did not onely governe his Souldsours by vertue, but allowan their affections by guifts and rewards. And yet neuertheleste, they confoired diners times against him, and at length, when he was denounced pubthe third, if we confider his malignant 40 like enemy by the Senate, and formwhat distressed in his march towardes Rame for lacke of victuals: they flew him and his Sonne in their Tents, and fent their heads to Rome.

And heerein I wish two things to be Two things to be confide noted. The one, the fruit of cruelty; for red. this Maximinus beeing made Emperour The fruite of tyrannically by his Souldiours, against the will of the Senate: followed the principles which Machiavill teacheth his Prince, perswading himselfe, as Iulius Idem Ibidem. Capito inus teffifieth : Nest crudilitate imversum non teneri: That he could not holde the Empire but by eru lty. W herein he fo exceeded, that force called him Cyclops; fome Bufiris; fome Seyron; fome Typhon;

Guicciard.lib6

Romaine Emperors fold by their Guards

Plutarch, in

Nerø forfaken and Galha

An incuitable danger which nerally hated must needes incurre.

and forme Phalaris. And therefore (in the end) he received the just reward thereof at the handes of his owne Soldiers, to whom, notwithstanding his great Donatines, he became no leffe odious then to other men.

The other thing which I wish to bee

Chap.10.

The infelicity

of fuch Prin-

ces as feeke

rather to be

feared, then

to be beloued.

Of wicked Policies.

observed, is the great infelicitie of such Princes as feeke rather to be feared, then to be beloued. For, though they are 10 forced for their owne fafety to become flaues to those, by whom they keepe others in flauery, yet they are not fecure thereby, but it il in danger, not onely of others, but also of them that should defend them. Whole mercenarie mindes are fo inconstant, and subject to corruption, that the lives of the princes whom they guard, are over falable, and therefore neuer warrantable, by any humaine pollicy. For let the Prince give them neuer fo much, to binde them to his Sernice, yetherhat thall give, yea, or promife more, may win them from him. As it hath falne out many times to the Romaine Emperors, who have bin fold by their Guards and Soldiers not for readie money, but for the promife of greater fummes, then could be expected at their hands. As plutark noteth in the Guards & Soldiers of Nero, corrupted by Numphidius in fauour of Ga'ba, vpon promise of a greater Donatiue, then could afterward be performed. Which, fayth hee, caused the destruction both of 2Vero and Gulba: for the Soldiers for looke Nero, in hope of the paiment promised, and then killed Galba because he could not pay it. So tickle is the trust that Princes repose in Mercenary men ; and fo vafure the state that is to be vpholdenby such incertaine and weak props, which many times faile, when there is the most neede of them.

Furthermore, another especiall and incuitable danger is to bee noted, which any Prince (generally hated) must needs incurre, to wit; the defection of his fubiects, in all occasions of inualions from forraigne Countreyes. For, although he be neuer fo ftrong at home, in Gards, Garrifons, and Fortreffes, and his Subiects also so poore and weake, that they neither dare nor can rife against him : yet if forreigne Princes doe inuade him, eyther you a quarrell of state (which among Princes that are Neighbours neuer wanteth) or vpon. Ambition to enlarge their Dominions suitat remedie hath he against the generall hatted of his people, who have then fufficient oppor- Noremedy a tunity and manes, to bee revenged on peoples genehim, and to free, them felues from the rall hatred. yoake of his tirranny by taking part with the forreigner, the experience whereof hath boene feene often times.

Wice deade in sufficie, that the Subiects of Dometrine, King of Spria, abandoned him for the harred which they bare him, and tooke part with a knowne Demartus kn g Counterfeit, calling himselfe A exander, or Spria. pretending and naming himfelfe to be of the royall sace, as Rerken Warbeck did in England. This Alexander they accepted for their King, being so incensed against Demetrius : That they were content (faid Vustine) to admit any who foener , to be rid of him . Alfo the last Kings of Naples, no leffe rich and potent, then wickedly pollitique, being most hatefull to their Subjects for their Tirrannicall gouernment : were forfaken of them all, & All house and betraved to the French, to whom they Kings of Na. yeelded them-felues without any relift- Per.

ance de Alfo Ledonico Sforza, Duke of Millaine, may ferue for a notable example of this matter. For when Lewes the 12. 34, Duke of King of France, made warre againfthim- Millayne Guieand had already taken divers principall | ciardin lib.4. Townes and Fortes in the state of Millayne: Duke Lodowick (knowing himfelfe to be very odious to his Subjects, for his great exactions and impositions, and fearing leaft they would abandon him) affembled the people of Millagne, to recouer their good willes, and not only remitted divers taxes which he had impofed yoon them; but also gaue them many reasons and excuses for his former proceedings. Neuerthelesse such was the harred which they had conceived against him, that within a few daies after, they tooke Armes flew Antonio Landriano his Treasurer, forced him to fly, called in the French, and yeilded the town and themselves to their obedience. Have we not feene also the like effect of hatred in England, in the time of K. John, whom the Barons and Nobility of the Realme, called in Lewes the eight King of France while he was Dolphin, and proclaymed him King? Choosing rather to line vnder the Naturall King. Who, as Mathew

Comin. in Ca.

Polidor Virgil. in loan, King I ohn of England.

Math. Wellmin. of 11 Anno. 1216.

Machianell

die one poy-

ther, poyfo-

Prince dou-

The danger

incurre by

the ordinary

errours pro-

cceding of

becility.

which I trants

neth his

of Westminster writeth, Exosum fe prabuit, &c. Made himfelfe haseful to them, as wel for the murder of his Nephewe Arthur, as for his adulteries, tyranny and exactions, the continual feruitade wherein he kept England, and lastly, for the war which his deserts procured. In respect whereof, Vis alicuius meruit lamentione deplorari: He deferued not to be lamented fcaroelie of any man. Thus faith he, I forbeare to al- 10 ledge many other notable histories vnto the fame purpose, because I do holde it needlesse in a matter so enident.

What then shall we fay of Machiauils pestilent Precepts, for the preservation of a Prince already infected and poysofeeking to ex pell and reme ned with wickednesse? Can wee faie ought elfe, but that while he feeketh by fon with ano one poison to expel or remedy another, hee poysoneth him double, and killeth 20 him out right & For, a wicked Prince, adding (as Machiavel adviseth) wickedneffe to wickedneffe, and cruelty to cruelty doth accumulate vpon himfelfe, hatred spon hatred, which, as I have de-

clared; will breake out fooner or later to

his ouerthrow.

Neither can the Machinillian help his Maifters cause, by saying, that such wicked Princes as haue perished by the ha- 30 tred of men, have committed for error or other, which they shoulde or might haue forefeene and auoided. For the imbecility of mans wir and power is fuch that no man living, is able to foresee and preuent all the daungers and accidents, which may occurre in the afairs of men, to the ouerthrow of their designments . As hath bin already prooued by the examples of the abfurd errours, as well of 40 the wifest Senates and Councelles, as of most polliticke men. Whereupon, it followeth, that the Prince which expofeth himfelfe vnto the generall hatred of all men, incurreth many notable dan-

For, even as Townes of Warre, or

Fortresses which have no enemy neere.

do or may commit many errors (in mat-

ters appertaining to their defence with-

out danger; but being besieged by their

enemies, are fornetimes surprized, by oc-

casion of their least ouer fight or negli-

gence. Euen fo, it fareth with Princes,

who fo long as they are generally belo-

ued, are little or nothing prejudiced by

many errors which fall out in their Go-

Examples of Townes of warre & For ting enemies uernment, but beeing once (as I may tearme it) beliedged with the harred of their Subjects and Neighbours, they are ruined sometimes with the least errour, which they or their Magistrats do com-

For, the hatred of men when it is generall, may bee compared to a swelling Sea, which entironing a Ship on enery fide, dooth otherwhiles ouerwhelme it with the impetuofity of VVaues, and fometimes againe entereth in at enerie leake or rift, and fo finketh it . In like manner, the general hatred of men, doth not only ouerthrow a Princes state, by potent and powerfull attempts: but also by taking aduantage of euery little error or accident, which may helpe to ruine

And therfore, for a fmuch as the weakneffe of mans witte, and the varietie of No Prince times and occasions, do produce alwaies generally hated, can line fome dangerous accidents in the States long in focuof Princes, either by their errors or otherwife: whereuppon their industrious & watchful enemies (especialy at home) may take aduantage : it followeth, that no Prince generally hated, can line long in securitie, bee he neuer so Dilligent, vigilant, or suspicious of all Men, as Machiauil would wish to have his prince

. Who could vie greater vigilancie or diligence for his owne confernation; or be more suspinous, then Alexander the Tyrant of Phares? Who though he loued his Wife Thebes verie deerly, yet neuer came he to her chamber, but he caufed both her Coffers and her felfe to be
gainft theha
gainft theha fearched to fee whither the had any wea- tred of all pon hid in her Garments. And yet ne-uerthelesse, hee was killed by her, in the

Could any man bee more provident for his fafety, then was Claudius the Emperor? He would never goe to any banket, but where his owne Guardes and Souldiers feeued the Table; and neuer visited any sicke man, whose Chamber was not searched before by some of his Guards, even to the verie beds and bedftraw, and yet he was poyfoned at last by his owne Taster, whom he neuer suspensions. cted. W hat should we say of Domitian the Emperor? Hee was fo fearefull and fuspitious of all men, that hee made the walles of his Galleries where he yied to

Prince generally hated, is very dange

> Moft prouident and pohique Tyrants, ouerthrowne feine imes by the whom they moil feared, and formetimes by their lowne polis-

The stone

Phingues.

Chap. 10.

Phillip.Com n Cap.33. c 91.

last Duke of

Bourgundy.

walke, to be fet full of bright and cleare Stone, cald Phengites, wherin he might fee whatfoeuer was done behinde him: and neuertheleffe, he was murdered by his owne Chamberlins.

Many fuch other examples might be alledged of Princes, who besides theyr great Guards and Armies, for defence of their persons, vsed al human diligence alfo, being icalous and suspitious of all men : and yet neuertheleffe, were ouerreached, fometimes by those whom they most feared; and sometimes by those whom they least suspected, or best trusted. Whereto I adde (as I haue cliewhere noted, and cannot repeat too often) that fometimes the most prouident and polliticke Princes, are (through the imbelicity of humaine wit) ouerthrowne by their owne policies, that is to fay, by the verie same meanes wherby they seek either to benefit themselves, or to hurt and deftroy others, as hath fufficientlie appeared by many feuerall famous examples. But what fecurity can a wicked prince

haue by Guards, or other humaine pro-

uidence and diligence, feeing fomtimes,

that the wifest and best guarded, being

ther have not the hope to vnderstand it,

or the wit to beleeue it? So it happened

to Julius Cafar, who, as he was going to

the Senat, received a memorial, where-

in the Conspiratours against him were

discouered, and beeing willed to read it

presently because it imported him great-

ly : was fo troubled with the presse and

importunity of fuiters, that he could not

And beeing requested (by him that

brought it) to read it out of hande, for

that it concerned matters of great im-

portance: made auniwere, that it vvas

then no time to negotiate, and so laying it aside, was slaine within two houres af-

aduertifed of fome iminent daunger, ey- 30

Another dan ger procee-ding of hu-maine infir-

Example of Idious Cafar. Planten in lulo Cefar.

attend vnto it, and fo was flain the fame day in the Senate house. Archias also, a Tyrant in Thebes, being inuited vnto a Supper, where his death was conspired, received a Letter from a Friende of his, containing an aduise of the Conspiracy.

Archine a Tyrant of

> In like manner, Charles the last Duke of Burgundie, who, as I have declard before, was flaine at Nancy, by the treason, of Campobachio an Italian: was aducrtifed and fore-warned thereof, by Lewes the

eleauenth, King of France. Neuertheleffe, perfwading himfelfe, that his aduertifement proceeded either of malice to Campobachia, or out of a defire to deprive him of his most necessary and truitie feruant, he would not beleeve it, but loued him the better for it. Befiele, one cuill is deflithat was priny to the confipracy, being condemned to die for another matter, and determining to reneale it vnto the Duke, thereby to obtaine his pardon, made fute vnto him to speake with him, promising to aduertise him of som thinges, which it imported him greatlie to know, but the Duke would not bee intreated fo much as to heare him, for the man was executed, and the Duke flaine within a few daies after.

Now then, I would gladlic knowe of Machiane. I and his followers, what fecurity they can promife their Prince in ked Prince is wickednesse, seeing it is enident by the reasons and examples alledged, that the meanes of aextreame hatred, which extreame wick- uoyding the ednesse draweth vpon them, doth (potwithstanding all their power and policy) worke their ouerthrow by so many meanes as hath beene declared? As by open Rebellions, or the generall infurrection of a whole people, by enterprise of a few by the attempt of some one man, by the difloyalty and treachery of a falle wife, faigned Friends, fauourites, Soldiers,& Guards, by the defection of Subjects, in fauour of some enemy forraigne or Domeltica I, by the negligence of Officers and Ministers, by the cafualty, of all humaine affayres and defignments; & lastly, by the errors whereto all humain wit and policy is subject, which to Princes (that be generally beloued) are nothing fo dangerous. By all which meanes, the ftrongest, mightiest, and most politique Tyraunts haue bin ouerthrowne at one time or another.

So that the abfurditie of Machianel is Machianelles most manifest, in true reason of state, seeposed his
Prince to an
allowed days. ing that, in councelling Princes to wick-edneffe and tyranny ypon confidence of humaine force and policy, hee expofeth them to an affured danger; and doth not giue them any certaine or probable re-lied. medy, but rather heapeth danger vppon danger, by encrease of cruelty, and of all Tyranical impicty. Infomuch, that it How to know may be faide to Machainills Prince, as whether a Diogenes faid to a Disciple of his, whom

Plutareb in his

ΑΡΧΑΙΟ-ΠΛΟΥΤΟΣ.

CONTAINING,
Ten following Bookes to the former

TREASVRIE

OF AVNCIENT AND MODERNE TIMES.

Being the Learned Collections, Iudicious Readings, and Memorable Observations: Not onely Divine, Morall, and Philosophicall, But also Poeticall, Martiall, Politicall, Historicall, Astrologicall, &c.

Translated out of that Worthy Spanish Gentleman, PEDRO MEXIA, And
M. FRANCESCO SANSOVINO, that Famous Italian: As also, of
those Honourable Frenchmen, Ambony du Verdier, Lord of Vauprinaz:
Loys Guyon, Sieur de la Nauche, Counsellour vnto the King:
Claudius Gruges, Parssan & C.



LONDON Printed by WILLIAM LAGGARD, 1619. JAHOTAITA

The second section of the section

- DERT

The learned Collections Suditions Readings, and memorable Observa: tions of sundry worthy Personages. English, French, Italian, Spanish. &c. .vpon divers Subicots as will ap: peare by the severall heades in the page following: all of them no lesse vieful then and delighte: LITAS WHERVNTO
is annexed:

Afficiall Treatife of that kind of
NOBILITY which Sovernyne GRACE. and fauor, and Contryes Customes, baue made meerly POLITICALL

and peculiarly civil1 (neuer fo distinctly handled before)*

LONDON *
Printed by WILLIAM LAGGA
1619*

XUM



To the most Noble and Twin-like paire, of truely Honourable and compleat perfection, Sir PHILLIP HERBERT, Knight of the Bath to our dread Soueraigne King I AMES, at his Royall Coronation; Lord Baron of Sherland, Earle of Mounigomery, and Companion in the unparaleld and famous Fellowship, of the Order of the Garter.

As alfo, To the truly vertuous and Noble Countesse his Wife, the Lady Susan, Dauzher to the right Honourable Edward Vere, Earle of Oxen-ford, Viscount Bulbec, Lord Sandford and of Badelesmere: and Lord High Chamberlaine of England, &c.

The first Vo-lume of this Treasurie, published about 5.yeare



Orthily might I bee condemned of arrogancie, (most Noble Lord & Lady) because, having past the Pikes in a peece of the felfe-fame feruice (followed with fauour and kinde acceptation) I should therefore presume vppon the like successe: knowing the inconstant nature of Times, that as they alter, so do mens humours & dispositions with them.

For, that which carrieth liking and allowance to day, falles into loathing and contempt to morrow; Opinions being more various in the case of Bookes, then are the Arguments whereon they discourse, because carping curiofity will haue his censure. But, as the Last for Hercules, was not fafhioned to fit euerie foote, nor his Lyons skinne to be worne by any ignorance wil base Lout; even so the sublimitie of true judgement (in matters of boldy not be learned; bloody not be learned; bl

The Epistle Dedicatorie.

not to every course and mechanicke conceite, capeable of nothing, but of such occasions as are sutcable to his owne condition.

I haue read of the great River * Euripus, which ebbeth and flow- Anarrow fea eth seuen times a day, and with such violence; that it carrieth Ships betweene the vpon it with full fayle, directly against the winde. Seuen times in an or Beria, and houre ebbeth and floweth rath Opinion, in the torrent of indiscreet and troublesome apprehension: carrying Criticke calumnie, and fquint-eyed detraction, mainly against the winde of Wisedome and Iudgement, because their braines are no better ballast, nor their capacity of further reach or extendure.

And yet, if the faying of Hesiode be true ; That nothing can bee more pleasing, then variety, which is the soules cheefest solace : Then (not fearing folly, but speaking to peerelesse Noble nature) give mee leave to tell you, that there can hardly bee any especiall subject imagined, but one Argument or other heere meeteth with it. From Sacred Diuinity (the most solide and supreame of all other) through all other Artes and Sciences what soener, even to any lowly, and the meanest (worthy)profession; here is some notable marke or Monument thereof (if it be either Ancient or Moderne) flored vp in this Treafurie, for future Ages to delight in, and to receive no meane benefite thereby.

Then (Honourable Lord and Ladie) all these blessings beeing Yours (as also my selfe, in endlesse dutie and service) when any subiect of great, graue, and ferious confideration (as of Nations, Monarchies, Kingdomes, and People, in their Originall, Rifing or Declining, by Warres, Diffentions, Combustions, or otherwise in the like occurrences) shall seeme troublesome or tedious to you: walke on but a little further, & then you may enter into a spacious Forrest, affording all choise of pleasing Game, either for Hawking, Hunting,

Fishing, Fowling, or any other Noble exercise beside.

When those Forrest pleasures shall faint you (as all delights dull, by too much continuance) an Orchard standes wide open to welcome you, richly abounding in the fairest Frutages: not to feed the Eie onely, but likewise to refresh the Heart, inuiting you to plucke where, and while you please, and to bestow how, and when you list: because they are all yours, and whosoeuer else shall taste of them, do

enioy such freedome but by your fauor.

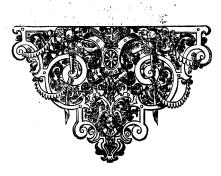
There is one especiall recreation more (Gracious Madam) which remaineth foly to your felfe, and fuch as may enter by your admittance; in a goodly large Garden, abounding with all kind of the fairest Flowers, that open with the cheerfull mornings Sun, and shut a gaine at his sad departure, all sweet, and all soueraigne. And, because Ladies of elder times (as many haue had the like delight in our more Moderne daies) were fingularly skilfull in Phyfick and Chirurgery: there is not a vacant place in the whole Garden, but it is fitly furniThe Epistle Dedicatory.

fhed euerie where; the verie common walkes (euen as if they were Bride-like strewed by hand) are couered with the choisest Simples, purest distillatorie Plants, and wholesome Herbes of euerie Vertue: for which, the Garden was purposely founded, and not for fruitlesse idle vanity.

And were you all alone, without companie, and by your felfe, yet can you not so continue there! For, you may meete with a faire Beuey of Queenes and Ladies, at divers turnings as you walke, and euerie one will tell you the Historie of her life and fortune (rare examples of Vertue and Honor) as themselues can best, truly & plainly discourse vnto you. Some other also you shall see, fadly sitting vnder Eughe & Cipresse trees, with Garlands of those leaues wreathed about their heads, fighing out their divers disasters: whom your Noble nature cannot choose but commiserate; as greening to see a feratch in a cleare skin, and a bodie beautified by Nature, to be blemished by vnkinde Destiny-

From manie remote Kingdomes and Countries (where natural ly they spake those severall Languages) are all these variable pleafures come hither, onely to kiffe your Noble hands. It was no mean infelicitie for them, to find no fitter a Tutor, that might have taught them to speake more eloquent English; which (indeede) also was my fault, feeing none else would tie themselves to so hard a Taske. But howfoeuer it may prooue, your rich judgements, and all-fufficient ability in the Languages, as also my weakenesse; will (I hope) bury all defects in your fauor, & beare out from scandall my willing endeuour, that I may finish the other (yet remaining) eleuen Bookes

behinde, to perfect fo rich and rure a Treasurie,





The Printer to the Reader.



Ome few yeares past, I intended the whol Worke of Pedro Mexia, with some other Authours on the like Arguments of variety. I then published nine Bookes, with intention to have made them vp fifteen, for the first Volume: but being pre-

uented by ficknesse, I finished but the first nine Bookes; and finding the good acceptance of them, I have adventured now on ten Bookes more, of the like Ancient and Moderne Times: sauing only, some particular Heads but lightly touched, are now (by the fame Authors) more at large illustrated. And may this finde equal fauour vnto the former (withoutany harsh censure, or vnkinde discouragement:) the other eleuen Bookes shall follow with all convenient speede, to finish up so faire a Treasury.

Earewell.

The Contents.

The first Booke.



F the Ancient Gauls, their Original, Lawes, Cuftomes, and Ceremonies. The Disciplines of theyr Druides

or Priestes, to the yonger people. Alfo of their Bards, Poets, Sarro-

nides, Eubages, & profession of Languages, with other manners veed among ft them, as well in warre as in peace, and how they have continued and changed fince.

The fecond Booke.

OF the New Gaules, now called the French their manhood, valor, and successeful fortunes

from their beginning. The greatnesse of their Kings, their many battels, and famous victories.

Of the names of Kings and Emperour: as also of the Originall of Royalty.

The Battell of Rauenna.

Of the learned women, called the Sybils. The feuen wonders of the World.

Famous military Orations both of Romaines nd lewes.

The Battaile of Nouara, &c.

The third Booke.

THe originall of the Switzers. 1 The manner of Gouernement observed in all their seuerall Cantons.

ınd particular.

Likewise of their warres and Battailes.

The fourth Booke.

OF the Kingdom and Court of Spaine, with the Lawes, Customes, and manners of the Nation. Alfo the division and Cituation of the faid country

Concerning the kingdome of Portugall, the be ginning, continuance, and present estate thereof, with the Lawes, Customes, and administration of lustice therein obserued.

Of the Kingdome of Naples, the Antiquitie, Lawes, and Customes thereof.

The Originall of the Salique Law, the first Auhors and inventers thereof.

The Originall of the Normans. The first planting of the Vine, and prohibition f wine among the ancient Romains.

Examples by Birds, Flyes, and other Creatures, for the leading of a vertuous life. The Originall of Triumphs : why they were first granted, and what a Triumph is.

Of the Crownes and other recompences, given by the Romaines to noble deserving Soldiers, &c.

The fifth Booke.

F the Nobility of England, Politicall and Ci-

The Rites and Ceremonies vsed in the Creation of Barons by Charter.

The Kings Charter for the creating of a Viscont The Charter Royall for the creation of an Earl, a Masquesse, Marchionesse, as also of a Duke, and the manner of creating them : being all lively represented in their seuerall habites, by Figures cut in Braffe.

The Kings Charter for creating the Prince of Wales.

The Crowning of the King, as well in former times, as now

The order of the Parliament pompe. The maner of restoring blood once tainted.

The Order of the Knights of the Garter, by who instituted, when, and how.

The Collegiate Society of Heralds.

The fixth Booke.

OF the Commonwealth of the Gennes or Genewayes, with the Government and admini-What Confederates they have, both in generall stration of Justice there weed.

An excellent Relation, concerning the estate, Religion, and Common-wealth, which was obserued among the lewes.

Of their three Sects, (viz:) the Pharifies, the Sadduces, and Essans : their Originall or man-

Of their three Families: The first being the po-Sterity of Iesus : The second, the Asmoneans : & the third, Antipater the Idumaan of Ascalon: with a clearing of doubts in divers Authors.

Of Ceremonies wfed by the Romaines, before they moued any warre, &c.

The feuenth Booke.

THe Common-wealth of Luca, with their Lawes and Constitutions.

Of divers accidents, serving as divining Auguries in elder times, whereby to judge of things to

The Contents.

A true module of Gouernment in any Common. wealth, derived from the communitie of Bees. The three Conquests of England by the Saxons,

Danes, and Normanes. The three famous battailes of Gaza, Grand

Cayer, and at Nylus.

The first invention of wearing Rings, with the vertues and properties remaining in precious

Of the Septuagint, or 70. Translators of the Olde Testament, out of Hebrew into Greeke.

The admirable vertues and properties of the lie dumbe also; and he that is borne among dumbe

A briefe survay concerning the Netherlands, divided into 17. Provinces, with a breviate of the knowing how to speake. Earles and Princes there raigning, from Thierry the first Earle of Holland and Zeland, to this infant time.

The eight Booke.

OF the Venetians, and the manner of their pollicie.

The foundation of Venice.

The lines and memorable acts of their Dukes

Of Gun-sbot, and other fiery Engines.

Of Physicke and Physitions.

Of the feuen Sages of Greece. The first foundation of Ierusalem, what fortunes befell it from time to time, and what Kings reig-

Of the twelve Moneths in the yeare, as also of ancient and moderne figures represented by them, with divers other misteries beside.

The ninth Booke.

Oncerning the Countrey of Molcouia or Rul-lia, and of the seureall commodities which the Pearles. land yeeldeth.

The Linage and descent of the Russian Empe- courses.

Against the permission of Duells, or single Com- perour, his Enstalment and Inauguration. His manner of Gouernment, Parliaments, Laws, Cultomes.Warres.erc.

> His power for warre and Military Discipline. What Orders, Rites, Sacraments and Ceremonies are observed in the Moscouian Church.

> Of poy (ons given to kill at a certaine day, whether they can doe it, or no.

Of erroneous and vile opinions, yet beleeved for What language they shall speak, that never heard

any speech. That a man or woman borne deafe, is necessari-

what the reason is of a childes being so tardie in

The tenth Booke.

The Kingdome of Ireland, the Original of it,

By whom it hath beene inhabited and Gouerned from the beginning.

How those parts and Countries, commonly caleld The New World, were first found.

The excellencie and dignitie of Marriage. Of the Doctors of Sorbonne, and their first Ori-

The reason why some Princes and Commonweales have prospered in the time of Warre, and runne to ruine in peacefull dayes.

Of those qualities and behaviours necessarily reauired to be in a Prince. That the eldest some ought alwaies to be aduan-

ced and preferred before the younger. Concerning the great Monarchy of the Casars

or Romanes. Of the Bezars stone.

A learned Tract, concerning the generation of

With many other excellent and memorable dif-

FINIS.

A Table of the Authours Names, that alledge and approoue the seuerall Arguments, contained in this Booke.



Aristotle). Ammianus Marcellinus Auenzoar. Арріапис

Agathias Alethina Auitus Arrianna Albertus Strasbourg Auicenne Auerroes

Athanasius

Antonius Sabellieus Archytas Tarentinus Antoninue Annsus de Viterbo Annales Constantinop. Annales Trenirensis Autor de Bel. Affric. Arnoldes Listans

Adrianus Imperat. Aymonius Āleuinus Agapeius Aulus Gellint Ægisîppus Ælianus Æneas Sylvina Æ schylus Æschines

Æmillius Viltor Ætisu. Ælius Lampridius Amilliu Macer **A**Sperarius Athenem Asinius Pollio

Apuleius Panisis

Alexander Alexandrinus Alexand. Aphrodiseus Apolonsus Thyaneus Anthony du Lebrix Aristander Antonius Nebricensis

Albertus Magnus Aristomachus Achilles Statins

Aristophanes Andronicus Athenensis. Ansonius Lombardus Aretine Acamathius Antoninus Syl. Alphonius Rex Hill. Attalus

Accurtius Azzo Alexand.Trallianus Atteius Capito Asconius Padianus Appianus Alexandrinus Archilocus

Arnoldus Ferronina Amatus **A**riftarchus Antoninus Arch. Floren. Antifthenes Anaximander

Albertus (rantzius Alexand. Guaguinus Anaximenes Abbas Siculus Almadattus Arab. Augurellus

Anthenor Annales I.Store Altuarisu Aurea Historia Asserina Meneuensis Álfridus Benerlacensis Adam Merimont b

> Alliances genealogiq**ues de** Rou & Princes d**e France** Annales de Aquitaine Annales de Bourgoigne Annales du France. Annales rerum Flandricayun

Biblia Sacra S.Basile S.Bernard Boter us Bene sus Baldus Abbat Baldm Doc. Civil. Berofus Bucchanan Baronius

Budaus

Bandello

Baptista Fulgotine Blandus Bartholomeus Boetsus

Boccace Bonfinus Barthol.Picenus Bartholus Ветепна

Barthol, Dardan 111 Beroaldus Baptifta Ignation

Rellonius Bodinus Bozins Bachi Anchisia

Bucholcerus Balthazar Castillanois. Bætius Senerinus B. Westmerus ,

S.Cerill. S. Ghry fost ome Columella Cedrenus Claudianua Crescentina Clemens Alexand. Cocil. Tolet

Capitolinus Cornelists Tacitus Cicero Ciaconisu Chrysippus Cardanus

Cleomedes Collenutius Conradus Epifc. Cneus Epidius Conelius Agrippa

Caclus Cenforinus Cellus Cleanthes Chalcidius

Caline Rhodiginus. (landini Victor Charles de Molin Comment. Cafar Constantinus Casar Calmatheus.

Cheremonius Chronersu Pol. Cassiodorus

Corninus Mell. CratinNe Ctesippus Alexand. Crantzius

Colophonius Count Balthazar Caline Calcagnine Сијріпіапна

Dion

Dicaarchus

D

Diodorus Siculus Dioni (Halicar. Dionif. Areopag. Diogenes Laersing Dioscorides Demosthenes . Democritus Diocles Diogenes Cynic. Damascene " D. Pedro Epif. Leon Demetrius Alexand Du Bart as Dictis Cretenfis Dares Phrygius Damasc.Sigierus Dionif.Lycinus

Dionif. Cassian Eumeniua Ephor**ns**

Donatus

Ecditius Eulebins. Eucherius Eumenides **Epiphanins** Estinan de Garibay Eghinhard Enuodius Euripides Eratosthenee Enniss Eustatius Eutropius

Erasistratus

Ebu-

		ors		

Ebulus Galen Galiotiu de Nargni. Enclides Еграсия Geor. Trabezon Euanthes Guliel. Budens Ерісичи Galerus Guydonius Empedocles Era(mus Roter. Guydo Bonatus Estius Genebrardus Egmus Empolemus Geor Leont inw Gregor, Giraldus Elpagoras Gregor. Rech. Eupolis **Снената.** Epifc. Tyrienfis P. Ereb de Rem Ind. Egnatius S.Hierom. Enagrine : Hift. Miscellan. Euans Estien Pasquier Homer Epilletiu Euchirid,Eral. Herodotus Hirtim **Epicharmus** Hermanu Hesiodne Heraclides Ponticus Hermolaus Barbar. Froi Tard Hugo de S.Victor

Fortunat us Hierocles Fanchet Heliconiensis Fenestella. Hippocrates Frontinus Harpocration Hift. D. Villamont Fabius Pictor. Flanins Epife. Herodianus Fasciculus Temp. Horace Hermes Trifmegist. Fernelius. Flores Poetar Hermocrates Fran. Georgius Heliscus Tatius Fabianus Prator Heraclisms Fran Philelphia Heraclidee Funtting Hen. Hunting don Festus Pompeius Hift Poland Hallian, Chron, Hall Holinshed Hostiensis Hermippus Herophilus

Hinemarus

Hier,Oforius

Hepheltion Grec.

Haly ben Razel.

Hier Conestagio

Inlim Pollux

Io(ephus

Innenall

Iustine

Inlina Florus

Iulius Secundus

Iul. Caf. Comment.

Innocentius Papa

Hinibaldus

Helsodorus

Houllier

S.Gregory S.Greg Nazianzen Guliel.Tyrien Gehmianus Cuil de Naugis Gennadius Greg .Floren. Greg. Turonnenf. Gregor . Papa cemer Guicciardine Gaudentine Merula Geber

Glareanus Gontierus Gualt. Monach. Garcias d'Orta Gaulfrid Monumet. Guyldas Gyrald. Cambrenlis Guliel. Malmef. Jemma Frisius

Ioan, Feraldus Ioan de Imola Inline Capitolinus Io.de Sacrabolco Io.Lincolniensis Io. Agricanus Io.Bale Iulius Frontinus Isidorus Íamblichus Ingulphus Inlina Pelagina Iustinatus I suac Rab. lo. Roufe Iulian Imperat. Iustin, Mattyr Io.Scotus Io. Alexandrinus Iulius Firmicus Io.de Mons Royalis

> Io. Math. Tierinus Io.Vasxus Io.Saxonius Io. Magnus Arch, Hispal. I Corrate Îreneus Io, Capgrane Invandue Io Monachus lacques Bofius Io. Damascenus Io. Baptift Equation Io. de A aulmont lacques de Magunti<mark>a</mark> Io. Boccace Ioachim Vadianus loel, Med, Hexand. Ionbert Med. Gal. lo: Camerses to: Carion Io: Cantachzenne lo: Fernelius I faac. Indaiche Іоніаны Роптаны Io: Lastens Iacobius Faber lo: Annius.

Io. Driodonni

I Ceus

Lucian Lnc:us Fruitus Leo Imperat Lucius Plotius Latinus Pacatus Lucane Lattan.Firmianus Lupu Episc.Troi Liebondus Lodonicus Vines Leo Affricanus

Lastantius Grammat Leonardus Camillus Laonicus Calchond. Licinius Macer Lucas Tudensis Lazaro Soranzo Lucretina Leo Hebraico Lodonicus Calina Leo Sophift. Labeo Antistins Limes Lateranus Lucius Florus Laurentine Surine Lopez de Caftagned Lucas Miarinus Sic. Lampridina Lazarus de Baif. Lodo: Valentinus Leo Papa Lucas de Tuy

M Marcus Aper Marcellus Marcus Varro Molina Hispa. Marineus Sicul Martianus Capellus Martin du Bellay Macrobius Marianna Scotus Martiall Mantuas Mesala Augurius

Lerrus

Lysias

Metrodorus Marcus . Aurelius Moschiones N'arbodeus Messala Corninus Macchianell Moyfes Bar: Cepha Marsilina Phicinus Matheus Palmerius Martinus Marcus Maniliue Marcus Paulus Metasthenes Mathew Paris

Manethon

Мафень

Munster

Mathiolus

Musaus

Mesuus

Machew Westminft Marcus Valerius Monsieur de Villament Marcus Damascenus Monsieur de la Noue

The Authors Names.

Mef. Angelo Catho. Paul. Touins Marnllus Phil Commines Mer, Gal, Bel. Pilonins Paul Orosins Platina Nodgerus Nazarius Nanclerus Nico. Boyerus Politianus Niceph.Gregorius Pindarus Nico de Lyra Nigidino Nico Secundinu Nicander

Nico. Monardus Nico.Raffans Parmenides Nicetas Consates Numenius Pythag. Petofyris Nico.de Cuía Nico. Myrepfic. Pachymerius Phil. Melanethon. Pojidius Praxagoras

Ozorina Optatus Onuphrica Orofiss Orontius Phineus Orpheus Oibo Sechiepif. Olradus Olaus Magnus Olans Arc. Ulpal.

Neuina

Pausanias Procopius Panius Polonius Paules Diaconns Ptolomens Pontine Paulinus Phæbadius ProSber Pub.Ter.Varro Phanorinus Petrarche

Polybius

Plato Plutarke Pliny Pomponius Mela Phadrus Posidon ins

Petrus Lombardus Petrus Abayelard. Philostratus Petrus Belluque Petrus Iacob. Paul Warnefridus

Pet.Martyr Pedro Mexia Paul. Emilling Phlegonius Grec. Paul de Castro Paul. Agmesus Pet Gellius P.C.Radianus Plining Secundar Pittacus Polydor Virgil Pedro de Albano

> Proculeius Philemon Philo Indai Pet Olinerine Pet.Comestar Pet . Crinit us Porphyrius Philippides . Pythagoras Properties Pansanias Pius 2. Papa Pomponius Latus Per (eus Poutanue Pet.de Aliacus Policrates Pegasus

Pontin,Verunnius Platearius Probus Palemon Paul, de Nola Pomp.Lensu Libert Plantus Piduxius Pog gins Popinierus

Quintillian Quintus Curtius Quint Septimius

Ronfard

Ruftic Theophrastus Rutil. Numation Trogus Pompeius Ritins Titus Lining Roder Ximenes Timagenes Rabanus Thomas Aquinas Rog. Honeden Rabbi Isaac Rogerius Theodoline Tertullian Themistocles Theopompus Tabitheus Tetellus

Toninus

Tibullus

Thales Milesina

Theod.Gaz.a

Timocrates

Tithalmanu

Rupertus Ruffinus Raph Volateran. Regino Chron Rabhi Helie Roder Toletan. Rondeletius Reuclin Rablaia Suetonisu Tranquil.

Seneca

Surdas

Solon

Scopas

Sophocles

Sim.Simoneu

Stoflerinus

Sannarar

Sabellicus

Spartianus

Surius

Sethins

Serapion

Stobens

Serenus

Schoners

Stoeflerus

Sammonicus

Trebellius Pollio

Sinesius

Sylina Italicus

Seleins Baffus

Sebast. Munster.

Simonides Melli.

Sexius Aurelius

Saxo.Grammat.

Sieur de Pybrac.

Sext. Pompeius

Sigif de Herbest.

Tranquillus Theuetus The odores Solinus Polyhift. Theophrast us Surianus Tuditanus Salust Theod, Bibliander Saluiantu Thucydides Servius Tritemins Symmachus Tilius Scaliger Theophanes Sigonius Terentius Stephanus Theodotus Suggerns 7 homistius Strabo Thomas More Tarcog. Hift.Mund. Socrates Sidonius Apollonar Sieur de Ionuille

Virgill Vitranius Vopiscus Varro Valerius Max. Welleine Patercul. Vincentius Lyranens. Valturinus Venerab, Beda Vegetius Valer, Flacens **Volatteranus** Vlpianus Valentinus Barruchius.

 \boldsymbol{z} Zenophon Zenocrates Zonarus Zozimus Zeno Zuricanus Zarmanochegas.

Nef.



THE TREASVRIE

of Ancient and Moderne TIMES.

THE FIRST BOOKE.

Of the ancient Countrey of Gaule, now called France; what Lawes, Customes, Ceremonies, and other manners were vied among the people of that Nation in their first Originals: and how (fince then) they have continued.

by the Belgians.

An Introduction to the whole Discourse.

The first li-



N ancient times, the Countrey of Gaule was enclofed within the limits of the Rhein, of the Alpes, of the Mediterrane-V an fea, of the Py-

renean Mountains, and of the Ocean fea. But after that the Gaules had passed the Alpes; all the Countrey which was from the Mountains, fo farre as the river * Rubicon, along by the coast of the Apennines, and so vp into the high Sea (which at this day is called the Gulfe of Venice) took the mata dwelt the Aquitans, which are they name of Gaule : as Galatia did the like, afof Guienne, euen from the Pyrenean ter that wee had subdued some people of Afia. That Gaule then which is in Europe, on the hitherfide whereof are the Celts, being halfe parted by the Alpes, is diviinhabiting fo farre as the Rivers of Sena and Marna. All the rest of the country

ded into two parts; the one on the hither fide of the Mountaines, and the other beyond. That which is on the further fide, yet concerning vs, was called by the Romanes *Togata: as Romane, in regard of

monly called a Gowne, and which they then did viually weare. That on the hither fide, was (by themselues) named properly Braceata (by a certain fashion of garment then worne by them, termed Breeches) and partly * Comata, in regard that the haire on their heads was verie bushy. Braccata in the time of Julius Cafar , had *Comata.com Bracesta in the time of Iulius Cafar , had his extendure from the Alpes, fo farre as Rofne or Rhodanus bending towardes the Pyrenean Mountaines, where were comprized the Volca, Armoreanes, Rhutheni or Rhunteni and Utlansius continuals to the Rhunteni and Utlansius continuals and Alperia.

the habit of the Romanes, being com-

Khynteni, and Heluetians, as it is to be feen in the feuenth Book of Cafars Commen-Iul Caf, In Com ment, bb 7. taries. This country was one while cal-

led Prouence, and then againe Narbone, after the name of Narbona, then the chiefe Prouence cal-led Narbone. and capitall Citie of the country. In Co-

Braccata,con

taining Narbó Proucuce, or Dau/phinie

Mountaines, so farre as the river Garona: A siuer pat ting Celica

extending toward the North, is possessed | The Authors Now the fearch would bee very great, fence concer and hard to be performed by any ma, that na, that ning his pur-pose in this Would History.

Italy, rifing out of Apenni betweene Areminum and Range into the Adriatique

A Riuer in

& new Lom-

and customes which the ancient Gaules Inlius Cafar, and their nouell qualities from those dayes to ours. But such as can content themselves with that diligence, which generally may be deliuered by the proofes of good and sufficient Authours, worthy of faith and found credit; perhaps shall finde their expectation well fitted, both with honest pleasure and profite in their reading. And with this intention am I determined to make (furnmarily) a collection out of many writers, that haue carefully imployed their paines, concerning the manners and behaulour of the Gaules, according as matters might be re-membred, in such diversity of distant places. And first, we will select out the most Ancient : afterward (if wee can bring our purpose to full effect, and as our endeuor shall nothing be wanting) we will as diligently feeke for the nouell customes.

Cafar hath comprehended a certaine forme and femblance of Gaul in her ancient dayes; especially in the fixt booke of his Commentaries, of the warre in Gaul: albeithe hath fowen many other things throughout his Bookes: which I having good Authors collected heere and there, and from infinite places in other Authors, so that the whole may ferue to encrease and fully illustrate the course of our purpose; wee may the more reasonably accomplish that which thall ferue to make knowne our ful aime and scope. Neuerthelesse, I am not to learne, that the Greekes which have followed Cafar, wer it that they understood not the latine tongue, or were it through carelefinesse and negligence; have declared in many places, that they scarsely vnderstoode the matters contained in his Commentaries. Wherefore we will first of all imitate Ca/ar, as the most great and fingular Author and master of our history: and then purfue others, according as they have borrowed any thing of him, or as they ferue to make the whole subject

Britaines and Germanes with the Gauls,

The cheefest placesin Great Britain poffetfed by the Gaules,

of the history

Tul.Cef.in com

Diners other

with Catar.

Errorsin

Greeke Au-

thers that fol-

owed Calar.

would (with a certaine history of all the | as will bee declared by that which Cafar times) fet downe the fathions, manners, hath written; I imagined with my felfe, that it would very conveniently fute with had held and observed, vntill the daies of our purpose, to compare such fashions as carried any coherence in these Nations. Confidering that Calar thought it fit, to compare the customes of Gaule, with Jul Cafin com them of Germany. And Strabo, percey- strabo in line. uing the Germanes to be called fo by the Romanes, as true brethren to the Gauls, by refemblance of their manner of living, when he wrote the fashions and customs of the ancient Gaules, he reproued them. and began with the Germanes. But although that Tacitus hath fayd, That they were named Germanes, by an appellation proper to their Nation, and fuch as they

pleased to stile themselnes; yet notwith-standing, how soeuer at first they received Resemblance that name, there may be differred in the in customes a great Germanity, or (for our better vnderstanding) a Fraternity, both in behauiour and customes, answerable one vnto Germans. another. For our better beginning then, we will

conclude on certaine kindes of manners. to the end, that each thing may be carried as may be most convenient. Plato sayeth. There are three principal parts in the bo-Three cheefe dy of Man, wherein are lodged the three principall powers of the foule; Concupiscence in the Liver, Anger in the Heart, and Reason in the Head, as in a Citadell. In like manner, there are three feuerall Three especikinds of vertues that do command & gouerne them : Sobriety or Temperance to ver ueto go ouerfway Concupiscence in the Liver; verne the po-Courage, against Anger in the Heart; and wers of the Wisedome, in thinking and judging with Reason. The common consent & agreement of all which, is the faithfull dutie of each one, euen as it were with diuers voices, & worthily may be called Iuffice. Cafar and Diodorus, Titus Linius, Strabo, and others, who are as interpreters of Ca-/ar, do declare many things of the Gauls and other in wif I wouldhaue fet down at large in my tersteters of Discourse, according as they are written by them: I should rehearse one and the

fame matter too many times. Wherefore

I will rather imitate their intention in

each place, then bee constrained to al-

ledge their multiplicity of words.

CHAP.

CHAP.I.

Of the Temperance in eating and drinking vfed among the Gaules : as also of theyr Marriages and fingle condition of life.

odging; their sportes, delights and assi-

fed to have standing by their fires, pottes

full of boyled flesh, and spits well loaden

with roafted flesh; the better part whereof

they would give to men of worth, to doe

them honor: as Homer writes, That the

Grecian Captains did to Aiax, when he

had won the victory against Hetter body

to body . Cafar granteth the felfe-fame

manner of life to the Britaines, and to the

Germanes. The Britaines (faith he)which

dwell furtheft up into the Countrey, the

most part of them do not sowe any corne

but live onely vpon milke and flesh. Ne-

uertheleffe, they hold in detestation (by

what religious opinion I know not) to

tafte of an Hare, of an Hen or Chicken,

and of a Goofe. Hee faith alfo the very

same in his seuenth book, speaking of the

Germanes; That they do not addict them

selues to any kinde of labour, and that

their very greatest nourishment is vppon

white meats, cheese and flesh. But Taci-

tue hath written much more amply con-

cerning the manner of life amongst the

Germans. Each mother (faith hee) doth

nurse her childe with her owne breft, and

neuer trufteth it in the hands of their fer-

uants, or other Nurses. Thou canst not

know the Master from the Varlet, by any

kinde of more delicate feeding. They

liue nakedly and flouenly euen amongit

their Heards or droues of Cattle; & lying

vponthe ground, vntill fuch time as age

The Authou beginneth with Tempe-

stance, which they affoord to one another in fuch things as they have. Concerning the eating and drinking of the ancient The eating & Gaules, they lived for the most part (acdrinking of the Ancient cording to Diedorus and Strabo) on white Gaules Diodor.in lib. 4 meats, and divers kinds of flesh, & principally on Porke fresh and salted. They v-

lu'ius Cafar is Of the Ger-

Corn.Tacitus lib.3. cap. 1.

doth fet apart fuch as are Mafters, & ver= tue doeth auouch and make them to bee knowne. Their viands are simply dreffed or prepared, being of wilde fruits; fometimes of fresh Venision, or curded milke. without any dainty cooking or dreffing.

Of the Ancient Gaules.

Without any canny cooking or meaning.

So much for their manner of eating.

As for their drinke, that among the field by the ancient Gaules, and termed Zythum: This (Tayth Diederus) was made of barley and water, having paffed thorowdiuers honicombs.

O enter then on the point of Temperance, wee might fpeake of their abflinence in the Germanes. They make a drinke (faith the of water, mingled both with barley & wheate, difguifed into fome refemblance of wheate, diffusited into fome refemblance of wheate, diffusited into fome refemblance of wheater of the refemblance of wheater of the refemblance of wheater of the refemblance of the refemblanc peech, their modesty in Garments and coasts, do buy wine. The most part of the Gaules (as Diodorus & Strabo doe both Diodor,in lib. write) vied to fitte on the ground and to eate their food, fitting on the skinnes of Their manner Dogges or of wolues: being ferued with of eating their earthen veffelles, which were strong and meate. massiue, and wrought about with branches of flowers; and they were alwayes attended and ferued by their young children. In like manner Tacitus recordeth, cornel, Tacitus That the Germans fo foone as they were awake and rifen (which they vsed not to their body in do till it was day:) they laued and washed warme water themselues with warme water, because winter continued in their region for the most part of the yeare; and at comming foorth of the bathe, they went vnto theyr foode, each one hauing his table and feat alone by himselfe. Thus then was their ancient and rude fimplicity, which caused the Germanes to be so big membred and big statute of corpulent, whereat Tactus feemeth to the Germans and Gaules. maruell greatly. And thence likewise enfued the selfe-same greatnesse of bodye which was among the Gaules, vvho for their huge corpulency, and regarding only their owne bigneffe of stature, held the finaller constitution of the Romanes in contempras may be seene in the 2, book of the wars in Gaul. But Plato reprehendeth the Gaules for

their intemperance and drunkennes with wine; and Diodorus writeth the very fame. neffe amongst They affected Wine fo excessively, that the Gaules. when the Merchants brought it to them, they dranke it wholly new as it was; and then becomining drunk, by having taken ouermuch, they lay downe to fleepe, or behaued themselues like mad men. And this was the reason that many of the Ita-

But in regard that the principall parts of Great Britaine, as also of Germany, haue bene seized by the Gan'es, as shal appear in due time and place; and forafmuch as there hath bene great resemblance of the

Ronalus Lawe

Italian Marchants broght wine to the

lian Merchants for the gaine which they of them, what might be their natural difgot both by fea and land; brought wine in great plenty thither, and for a imal veffell of wine, receyued (in exchange) foure times the value. And the same Authour not onely blameth their drunkennes, but alfo the quarrels which accompanied this excesse. They observed (saith he) as a custome, at their feeding, for the least debate of words, to rife presently from the

Diodor, in lib. The Gaules hazarded their lines vp quarrels.

corn Tacitus i lib.4.cap:5.

in nothing but drinking a mongest the Germanes.

An Order ae

Cafar in com ment lib s

Most valiant & fierce peo

Table, and defie one another to the combate, hazarding their lines without any diferetion. Thus you fee how the Greeks haue reprooued the ancient Gaules; and Tacitus calleth the Germanes theyr Brethren in the same vice, accusing them equally to bee drunkards and quarrellers. They vsed not (faith he) any such temperance against thirst. For they held it no di-

shonor, to spend the whole day and night The whol day in drinking, fo they might bee suffered to dricke their fill. furnishing them with fo much as they would have: you shold find them no leffe caffe to bee conquered by their vices, then by armes. The quarrels which rose very often among them, as among people subject to Wine, was no fooner mingled with injuries of the mouth; but (for the most part) did end with blowes by the fword to the expence of their blood, yea of their liues. Such was the blame which the Germanes received by making no more account of fo bad a cuftome; euen as if this vice had bene no vice among them, or did any way shame But the Gaules vsed themselues in bet-

ter manner: for by a publicke ordinance this vile behauiour (in particular persons) was verie greenously and rigorously punithed. Let vs heare then from Cafar the cause of the magnanimity of the Gaules; which was, by knowing how to keep thesclues from this disorderly kinde of life. The most magnanimous of all (faith he in his first Booke, speaking of the Belgians, Celts, and Aquitanes) are the Belgians, because they are furthest off in the countrey, which is carefully husbanded, and strangers doe but sildome trafficke with them, to bring them that which serveth to no other end but to effeminate their courages.

In the same book speaking of the Neruians, as of the most couragious of al the Belgians, he faith; Cafar making enquiry

position and manners, her found, That Merchants did not trafficke with them,& that they would not fuffer (by any means) that wine should be brought among the, or any thing that serued for delicacy. For they held (as an infallible opinion) that fuch things wer the cause of abasing their hinderers of courage, & that their natine vertue would nanly corage thereby be much weakned. Whereby we may perceive, that the intemperance of fome particular men, was condemned by a generall and publicke decree; and that fobriety & temperate carriage was greatly respected and honored in those parts. Strabe fayeth, That by the perswasion of Cenus, a grave and wife man, the Getes Of the Getes rent and pluckt vp all the Vines in theyr country, yet yied fome wine in the time of their childrens nursing. But our Anceftors did much better because they would No vines planeuer permit or suffer, that any Vine ted amongst the Gaules.

to be brought them from any other place.

Wherefore *Diodorus* had good reason to

fav, that in his time there came no vvine

at all into Gaule Comata.

Cafar in his fourth Booke, maketh the Iul. Cafar in Sueues, a people of Germany, equall in comment. Lib 4 temperance to the Neruians that were in Gaule. For they would not suffer that any wine should bee brought into their theriver countrey, because they were perswaded, Alpes. that it made men lazie, effeminate, and vnapt to endure any labor. Thus we may obserue then, what was their sobrictie in eating and driffking, wherein their greater part of vertue is commended; for abstinence from lewd and wanton women. And albeit that Diodorus, Strabo, * Barde- An Historiofanes, according as Eufebius reporteth; Babylon being all of them Grecian Authors, have Eulis in hiller Eccles 1.4.2.28 reproued this vice as frequent and common among the Gaules, and which is as innated (if credite may bee given to Ari-(totle) in warlike actions; whereby the fa- drift: in lib. 4. ble was fained of conjoyning Venus with de anim cap.9 God Mars: vet notwithstanding, Cafar fpeaketh nothing therof, but giveth great commendation to the Germans for their temperance, contrary to them that have written otherwise of them.

Such as haue continued in virgin estate Offuch as lithe longest while among them, and with - ued longest in out the knowledge of any other but their virgineitate owne body received the very greatest re-

should be planted among them, or wine

Of fuspition concerning the husban

phers concer

Of the Ancient Gaules.

villanous thing to haucknowledge of a woman, before the age of twenty veeres. In all which time they did not hide themfelues, but bathed daily together in the riuers. And this is the reason rendered by Herodotus, speaking of the nature of children, wherefore haire commeth much

Herod, in Terp

Of the nature

of Children.

men amongst tile Germans

Young men children equalled theyr fathersftregth

Iulius Celar in omment Lib 6

ued in marriages amongelt the Gaules.

The doctrine of the Philo ning the huf-bands power.

Chap. 1. spect and praise. For they held it as a most

The younger

fooner to fome then it doth to others:because the vie of Venus maketh the flesh more loofe and flaggy, and openeth the skinne, which affordeth the enfier paffage to the haire; contrarywife, fuch Children as are gelded, have never any haire at all. Tacities hath not omitted the felfefame attribution of praife to the Germans. Yong men are long time before they have any knowledge of women : and that is an efpeciall reason why they lose no part of their yourhfull strength, and therefore make no haft at all of parting with their virgin condition . Young Laddes, and fuch (of like stature) as are gelded, do make triall of their agility together, and their children do (commonly) partake of their Parents strength.

Marriages do appertaine to the rule of

the same vertue : but Cafar hath not writ-

ten carefully how the Gauls observed it. The husband (faith hee) laide downe the delight of women, nor to repaire a new valew of fo much goodes, as his wife brought with her, and a just account being taken thereof, the whole stocke was put together. The party that furuined enloved the others portion, with the reuennewes of all that had paft. The husbands are mafters and commaunders of their wines lines, and also of their Childrens. When any Father of a Family (of note) dyeth, the nerest of the kindred do affemble together, and if any fuspition be conceyued concerning his death: the Wife is committed to tortures, as they doe theyr flaues, and if the prooue to be convinced; after they have tormented her with fire, continually advertised, that she is thus reand all other kinds of paines, they put her ceiued and taken to be her husbads comto death. This law may seeme hard, that panion in all paines and dangers, and that giueth the husband fuch like power ouer (be it either peace or warre) thee must of the wife and children, as he hath ouer his necessity runne the same fortune. And

the fame Commonwealth, & to his chil-

flaues. For, according as the Philoso-phers have taught vs: the father of the family giveth command to his wife & children, as vnto free persons. Yet this is not all as one kinde of command: for hee giueth command to his wife as to one of

dren as a King. The Law truly may appeare to be hard, and yet it is Roman, euen the like as Komulus made, Ordayning; That the sonne should bee in his fathers power all his life; and that the father may fathers. chastife, beate, put him to any busines in the field, fell, or kill him. The fame King alfo appointed, That a man might punnish his wife, if the had drunke any wine. Cafar speaketh all this in his fixt booke: and in his fift hee declareth divers other fashions of behauiour in marriages, spea-

dowry to the husband, but the husband

to the wife. The parents, coufins, & kin-

dred are present thereat, and allow of all

presents passing between them. And they

are no presents deuised for delicacie or

mysteries, & these are the conjugal gods

these are plainly signified vnto her by the

coupled Oxen, the furnished horse, and

warlike weapons. She receiveth what the

that they hold in reverence.

king of the Britaines. Ten or twelue together (faith he) do Observation hold their wives in common, and princi-pally brethren with their brethren, and fathers with their daughters. And fuch as Britaines. are born of them, are assouched for children of them that have espoused their

mothers, being yet maids. So much also he relateth of the English . But Tacieres Cornelius Taciwriting of the Germaines, giueth them Inpraise of most noble commendation in this point. the Germans. The wife (faith hee) neuer offereth anie

intended marriage: but they are a gift of Oxen yoaked, a horse brideled and surni- Presents give fhed, & a Buckler or Target, with a fword and I aucline. For these presents the hufband.

band taketh his wife; who likewife (on hir owne behalfe) presenteth him with some weapons of warre. This is the great marriage bond, these are accounted sacred

And to the end that the wife may not Aduertifethinke her felfe exempted from vertuous wife from the deffeignes, nor the hazards of warre: from day of hir mathe very beginning of her marriage the is riage.

is to bestow on her children after that the Mysterious hath worthily and holily nurfed them vp: | Ingnincations to the Wife.

& fuch as are of most forward disposition the Father hath care of that they may refemble

Education of femble (in good quality) others of theyr 3, And Cafar speaketh thereof in his fealinage. And then they line, keeping their chastity well defended; not being corrupted by any occasions, nor the fight of wanton pastimes, or beeing present at Feafts or bankets.

Women puni-fhed by theyr adultery

ment thereof is very foeedy, and the hufband may lawfully do it . After hee hath thauen and stript her naked, the husband bringeth her forth of his house, in the prefence of all his and her neerest Kindred . and beateth her with a bastinado thorow all the streetes; for there is no allowance of any pardon after that a wife hath blegranted for a-dultery. mished her honor; and neither her beauty, youth, or riches can afterward winne

there to be laughed and iested at: & one

Vices not iefted at.

may well fay, That (there) is fuch a world, as neith r permitteth the doing or induring of any diffolutenesse. Those Commonweales are the best ordered, wherein is fuch permission, that the Maides onely finde themselves husbands, and mariage confifteth in mutuall accord(for a long while) in goodhope, and that the tion of marri Bride may haue her hearts desire. For in age making. this cafe the taketh her husband as one & the felfefame body, and one life is allowed by them both: because they can haue no contrary thoughts, neither theyr defires any way wandering, but their affections doe fo simpathize, as not in either to husband or wife, but to the fanctity of marriage. It is helde as a very great of-Against mur fence, to procure the death of any of their children, or of their kindred : And there good customes do beare more sway, then good Lawes and Ordinances doe elfewhere. Hitherto haue wee continued the writing of Tacitus, concerning the Germanes marriages.

Diodorus reprehendeth the Gaules for a certaine kinde of difordered behauiour

in their speaking, saying, They vse a short

kinde of speech, somewhat hard to be vn-

derstood, and without any deliberation :

speaking great store of doubtfull things,

vet deliuering many bragging and vaun-

ting words; much to commend the felues

and in the contempt of others. They are

threatners and bad speakers, and full of o-

uerweening. This vauntery of theirs hath

likewise beene reprooned by Strabo in lib.

of fpeaking a mongst the

thering of Children or

Kindred.

uenth Booke, and is also to be proued by diners examples in his other books. Such There are very few adulteries committed in so great a Nation; for the punish-

is that whereof hee tpeaketh in his first booke, of Diviconius the Heluctian, who Div conne the highly extolled and vaunted the vertue of Heluetian the Heluctians, and reproached the difcomfiture of the Romanes, admonifhing Cafar by menaces to beware of any further attempting; for feare, leaft the place where the Romanes miscarried, by a further loffe of their people, after the foiling of their whole Army, should take name thereby, and so remaine as a memorie of their difgrace.

Such alfo was Ariouistus, King of the Germans, who answering little or nothing mans. to matters which Cafar demaunded of her another husband. Vices serue not him; spake wonders of his owne valour. and that he neuer buckled with any man, but he was ruined. And Cafar might com Lib. 1. to fight whenfoeuer he pleafed, but he should learne of the Germaines, that they were a people neuer vanquished, and skilfull enough in actions of armes. Vercingetorix also vanted in his oration, that hee would make a League with all the Gaules, and then all the world durft not make head against them. This is sufficient concerning this matter; I come now to speake of the care which they had of their owne persons.

CHAP.II.

How the Gaules v fed to weare their Haire and what kinde of garments they wfed with the painting of their bodyes, their Coines, &c.



Iodorus, speaking of the Diodo, in Lib. Gaules, fayth; Albeit, that naturally they have good-to weare their ly lockes of hayre, yet doe haire. they helpe the naturall

colour thereof, by an instrument properly deuised for that purpole. They twine and twift theyr bushie lockes together, and fuffer them to hang dangling downe, euen from the forehead to the necke: fo that they refemble Satyres, and young vnshorne boyes. They haue practifed by Art, to make their haire

calling Gaule

Strabo in Lib,4

Titus Liui, dec. 3. Lib. 2.c.1p: 1

same of the Sueues, a people of Germany. But the especiall note of that Nation is, that they turne their haire croffe or ouerthwart, and then binde or truffe it vp in a the state of the sum o long, and briftling backward with a bending downe, and so they go till they bee mettall called Siluer: but nature hath gihoary or white; and then (oftentimes) uen it gold, without any labor or cunning they binde it together on the crowne of the head. The Lords are no more respe-Citie of their own persons, and yet with-out any proud or bad intention: For it is ling or circkling in wide compasse: the not done in regard that they affect or couet to be affected; but they doe onely fo

when occasion calleth them foorth to

Diodorus proceedeth on in this maner,

concerning the behaviour of the Gaules.

Some of them (faith he) doe vie to shaue

their beards, but others do weare them of

fome length. The Gentlemen do cutte

to seeme the more dreadfull and terrible.

confifting of divers colours, and tearmed

by them Braccates. They have long skir-

ted lackets or Cassockes, rewed or strea-

ked, beeing of the very courfest Cloath .

which they vie for winter, and the most

fimple or flendereft for fummer. Diodorus

speaketh thus of the Braccates, as the rea-

fon whereby the Romans called that part

of Gaule Braceata, and by which garment

the fame Authour affirmeth, That the

Gaules were more terrible to beholde. Strabo likewise writeth in his fourth book

concerning their haire, their Caffockes,

their rude and hairy garments, their long

high breeches, & their thort open cloaks

which hardly conered halfe theyr But-

tockes. All these Authors do agree toge-

ther, as touching the haire of the Gaules

and Germaines, and to be of a redde co-

lour, according as Titus Liuius, and Dio-

Diod in Lib.5 How the Gaules wore their beards. ther apparrel

Chap. 1.

Cornel. Taciti

vbifupra. How the

Sucues did

weare their

Of the Lords

amonett the

thicke and hard, that little difference ap- | all paint themtelnes with an hearb, called peareth betweene theirs and the haire of by them*G/aftum, which caufeth a blewith a The Hearbe a horic. Taciems speaketh (wel-neere) the or azure colour: and this made them vely by Dyers. ry dreadfull to looke on, when they went to any fight. Moreouer, they wore their lockes of haire very long; thaning off all their other haire except that on the head,

whole Countrey of Gaule is without the of Gaule, but endeauour. For, in regard that the most part of the rivers have their courses verie waters which descend from the hilles and mountaines, by difperfing themselues adecke themselues, to appeare the more fierce and terrible vnto theyr enemies,

Of the Ancient Gaules.

broad in the valleyes, do scatter a fand on the fields, which is mingled with golde. How they ga Afterwardes, kneading or tweaking the the reheir clods together, wherein they different the gold amongh the Gaules, & adome them become hard they then breake them in felues there peeces, and when they have washed it in with. water, and the earth is quite taken away, they hurle the rest into a furnace, and so melt it in that manner. When they have

short the haire on their cheekes, & suffer their beards to grow to fuch length, as it thus moulten and drawne out the golde will couer all their bodie. They weare alpure and cleane, the women and men do fo a kinde of garment, which is all hairie, adorne themselves therewith: for they weare it in rings on their fingers, and in bracelets about their armes, and in Carcanets on their brefts, & in chaines about their neckes, and about their middles as golden girdles. Polybrus also maketh mention in his fecond booke, of their Chaines

and Bracelets. And Serabo in his 4-booke Strabo in Lib. 4 the cheefest are in the Country of Tar= of Gascoigne, bells: and hee attributes this Ornament increase of the cheefest are in the Country of the cheefest are in the Country of the cheefest are in the cheefest and hee attributes this Ornament increase to the only vnto fuch as were in honor and dig- Pyrenean Mountaines

But Cafar and Tacitus do speake of an- Inl. Cafar in other manner of want or pouerty (of this Com.lib.7 magnificence) amongst the Germaines. They vie (faieth Cafar) skinnes in their garments, and thort cloakes made of file red skins, having the greater part of their body naked. But Traism speaketh more Corn. Tacit. amply, concerning the whole manner of in lib.6.c.3. the Germains, writing thus. I doubt whedorus haue written. Ca/ar speaking of the ther the gods were fauourable to them or No Golde or of ancient Br tany, writeth thus. They do quite contrary; because they denied them the Germans,

Polyb in Lib

Veffels of Sil uer held in n then the like

The Serrati &

Bigati wer mo-

nies amongst

the ancient

The commo

wearing habit

They weare

beafts, and o

the mettals of gold and filuer. Notwithstanding, I will not set it downe assuredly, but that there may bee some veine of gold or filuer in Germany: yet who (at any time) hath made fearch for it? They haue no fuch affection thereto, as to apply it to any feruice. Som vessels of filuer haue beene found amongst them (which haue bene giuen to their Ambassadors, or to their Princes) and yet to be held in no more esteeme or reckoning, then those that are made of earth. Neuertheles, they that dwell much neerer to vs, in regard that they have trafficked with our people: do make more esteeme of gold and filuer; allowing and commending fome peeces of our monies. They that live further off in the Countrey, doe deale more fimply, and (according to the most ancient manner) make their trafficke by exchange. They receive the old mony, and fuch as they have had longest knowledge of, as the Serrati and Bigati. They loue the coin of filter better then that of gold; not that they beare therto any particular affection, but because the filuer money is eafiest for them in buying things common, and offmallest price. The viuall habit or garment to them all, is a long skirted Iacket or Caffocke which they fasten together with a buckle, but (for want thereof) with a great pin. The rest of the body is not concred with any thing, and they fit the most part of the day voon the hearth, somewhat neere to the fire. Such as are of greatest wealth, doe differ from the other in their garments, which are not fo ample or large as those of the Sarmases, or of the Parthians : but juftly fitted to the body, and fuch as maketh apparant thew of every meber. They wear the skins of wild beafts, and fuch as dwell neerest to the rivers, are most curious of their habit: but they of more remote abiding, vie no g eat curiofity, as being least carefull what they weare, because they live so far from strangers. When they have made chaife of their beafts skinnes, they do the like of fifthes, taking fuch as are the greateft, or as the Ocean and most vnknowne Seas do yeeld, and fulleft of spots, and so they fow them together. The Women are no otherwise habited then the men: but that the women are oftner concred with a garment of linnen, inter-wouen

with a scarlet colour. They care for no

fleeues on the height of their armes, but are naked downe from the very shoulders and part of the breast (neerest adioyning) is as nakedly discourred. Thus you see the gayest brauery of the Gaules, & how simple the Germans are in their garments: it remaineth now that we say fomewhat of their houses and dwellings.

CHAP. III.

Of the houses and dwellings of the Gaules; their Townes and villages, and of what manner they were.



He habitations of the Gauls (according as Strabe fayth) Of their hou. are wide and spacious made fes, lodgings, of earth and planchers of & dwellings wood &couered with ftrong

reeds arched on the top together in form of a vault : for fo Cafar in the fift booke of the Gaules warres faith, That the Lod- Int Cafin com gings of 2. Cicero in the fields, were couered with straw and reeds, according to the manner of the Gaules. And in his fixt booke he sheweth, that the more part of Lib,6. the Mannor-houses appertaining to the gentlemen Gaules, were in the woods, or on the riners. Speaking of the house of Ambiorix, which was altogether engirt with woods; As were wel-nere al (fayth he) the houses of the Gauls are, who to shun the heate do dwel in woods , and neere to rivers. Cæfar deliuereth plainly, that the Aquitaines, Celts and first Belgians, had their Cities and Townes enclosed both with walles and ditches; but it may be doubted Townes. whether the like provision was vsed among the Gaules further off, and fuch as were neerest to the North; as the a Morini, b Admatiques, c Menapians, and d Ebn-

Cæfar declareth, That the most part of in France. thefe Belgians, are defeended of the Germaines, and faith, that the Germains had both fides of Itheins, next not their Townes and Villages made af= to the Vbii. ter our manner : as may bee observed by that which Tacitis hath written according to the custome which they had in Luke, Leyond his time. It is sufficiently known (faith he) Brabant that the German people dwell not in any in lib.5.

Of their first Citties and

Of Narbone

Towns,

Of the Mori ni, that made war contrarie

Chap. 3. Of the Ancient Gaules.

Townes, neither that they could endure | concluded there to fortifie his campe: as to have their houses neere vnto one another. They dwell distant or apart, scatteringly, where either riners, fieldes, or woods do best content them. Their Villages are not after our fashion: for their houses do not touch or joyne neere each other, Euery one leaueth a great wide distance or compasse about his dwelling; either to avoid the difastrous fortunes of fire, or elfe because they know not how to build better. They vie neither Morter nor Tiles : but the matter which doeth them seruice, is very rude, and is not prepared either for beauty or pleasure. They plaifter some places much more respectively. with a kinde of earth fo cleane & thining, as it feemeth to contend with painting,& portraitures of colours. They were wont

Their Caues and storehou fes of Corne

Com.Lib.6.

Oftowns be-

their building

among the Germanes.

to make caues vnder the ground, and couered them with thicke clods of dung, to withdraw themselves thither in the winter time, and therein also to hide theyr

Corne, because in such places, the colde weather had not so great power, & when the enemy came, hee could make pillage of nothing, but what hee found readily discouered. As for that which was thus hidden or buried, Theeues not knowing thereof, would bestow the lesse paines & fearch, in further enquiry after it . Calar Iul.Cafar in fpeaketh (almost) as much of the Britains. They tearmed it a Towne(faith he)when they had enclosed some tuffy wood with ditches and pales; whereinto they were wont to retire themselves, to shunne the courses of their enemies . And whereas Cafar speaketh sometimes of certaine

Townes of the Suenes: in mine opinion .

hee is so to be understood. Returne we now to the townes of the Belgians, which are vp higher in the coulonging to the Belgians try, and heere my question is: Whether they had any such Townes as the Britains or no? We will first of all speake of the Morini, who (according as Cafar writeth) beganne to make war, but in a quite contrary manner then the other Gaules. For they having heard, that the very greatest Nations which had hazarded battel, were quite defeated and conquered : withdrew themselues & their goods into the strongest places, which were great and long forrests, encompassed with fenny or marthy grounds. Cafar being come vnto the entrance of some such forrest, and having sage, gaue them affault three severall owne negli-

the homanes were feriously imployed about their busines; the enemy (of whom they had no doubt at all) fallied forth vpon them unprouided, at most places of the wood, and charged the Romanes very to their Armes, and repulled them backe Romines and into the wood, and hauing flaine a great were repulled number of them, purfued them thorough many vneasie places, yet with very little loffe of their people. The next day following, Cafar determined to fell down the Forrest, and suspecting least some harme might be done by the Flankers to Soldiers vnarmed: he caused al the trees which were howne downe, to bee made as ram= piers against the enemy, as d to serue as defences on either fide. Hauing made a great spacious coun-

trey (in few dayes) by incredible diligence, after that the Romaines had made themselues Maisters of the cattle & baggage which was in the rereward; they Cafar & his withdrew themselues into the thickest of men pursue
the Forrest. Casar speaketh this of the wood of the Morini , which ferued them to the Ferreft as a Towne or Village. And the yeare af-

ter, in regard of the drought which had dried vp all the Marishes (as is to be seene Int. Cafar in in his fourth booke) they having no more Com. lib.4. refuges to flye vnto as they had the yeare before, were (almost all of them) subdued by Labienus. In these two warres, hee maketh no mention of any other Townes.

then of woods and marishes. The like is affirmed of the Menapians, Of the Menain those Countries where the Romaine pians. Legions were broght, under the conduct Inl. Cafar in of Fabius and Cotta, as it is fet downe also Com. lib. 4. in his fourth booke. They made speyle in the fields, destroyed the Corne, fer the houses on fire; and all this happened, because the Menapians had hid themselves in the thickest Forrests. Afterward Calar himselfe came to them with five legions.

But they (as Cafar faith) not having gas thered any forces together, trufting only in the fecurity of the place, with rew themselues into the woods and marishes, and carried thither their goods also. Ca /ar having divided his powers with C. Theftratagem Fabius, who was his Lieutenant, and M.

Crassus Treasorer of his wars, and hauing gindth Me hapine, the also sodainely prouided bridges for pal rough theyr

wayes; gence.

What gar-

lages made himfelfe Master of a great number of men and cattle. The Menapians feeing themselves in this distresse; were constrained to send Ambassadours. humbly to entreate peace. In this place also there is no name of any village, or pregnant appearance that there were any, but fuch as wee haue alreadie fooken

Of the Nerui-Iul.Cafar in Com, Lib. 2.

The politicke defence of the Neruians against horse. men of their neighbours or

The Neruian had no walled townes or villages of de-

Iul, Cestin com

the Neruians

By due observation of this discourse, perhaps the villages of the Nernians will appear to be even the like. The Nervians (this speaketh Cafar in his second booke) from all antiquity, not having any power of horsemen (for even to this day they do not addict their mindes thereto, but all the strength which they have, consisteth onely in footemen) to the end they may impeach and withftand the horsemen of their neighbours, if they make any inrode vpon them, to rob and spoile them, cutting downe yong trees that had thot forth strong branches, they twined them together, and interweauing briars and thorns among them, they wrought them fo artificially, that thefe hedges or fences ferued them as a wall; wherein not onely a man could not enter, but also he was vnable to fee or difcerne any thing.

In the fame warre of the Wernians, the women,& fuch as(in regard of their age) were not feruiceable for bearing armes, had neuer any Village or Town for their fafety, which was engirt with wals; but in fuch a place where there was no coming or entrance for an Army, because of the marish grounds, which were the onely hinderance.

Now, in this first warre agaynst the Nernians, wee may plainly perceive that they had not any Towne enclosed with wals : and we may well credit it by that which is in the fixt booke. For Calar hauing affembled foure Legions with all possible diligence, entred (vnawares) into the Country of the Neruians, and before they could either draw their strength together, or tell how to faue themselves:after hee had surprized a great number of men, and heards of Cattle, and dispersed the booty to his Soldiers; he layde wafte their fields, and compelled them to yeeld and deliuer him hostages. This passage likewise of the Neruians, yeeldeth great coniecture, that they had no other towns

waves, and burning their houses and vil- | or villages in those times, but like them of the Britaines.

It may appeare also, that the Aduati- Of the Adus cases (by that which Cafar writeth in his tiques. fecond booke) have had the like townes. Int. Cafar in Hauing forfaken (faith he)al their towner and Castles, they brought all their goods into a village, which was wonderfully strong by natural situation. For, having (on al fides about it)huge rocks & downfalles of exceeding height, it had but one onely comming to it, which was hanging or descending downward, yet in a sweete and gentle manner, being in breadth no more then two hundred foote. This way A ftrong foror passage they had fortified with a dou- tified town of ble wall, of very great height, & the fame the Aduatiwas strengthened in many places with mighty huge stones, and sharpe-pointed beames or pyles. Heere Cafar describeth nothing but a wall onely, and on one fide of the Towne. And the like may be eafily prooned in the Nation of the Eburones: who are also called Germaines by Casar in his fecond booke. These men vnder the conduct of King Ambierix, had ouercom Sabinus and Cotta, with fifteene Companies, neere to Vatuqua, as it is fet downe in the fift booke. Cafar who had neuer receiued a greater iniurie, determined to mination for be reuenged for this loffe, and vtterly to reuenge vpon abolish and ruinate the nation of the Eburones, as we may reade in the 6. booke. Therefore he fent Bafilus on before with the whole band of horse, and leaving alegion for guard of the baggage; he divided the other nine into three Regiments, to ouerrunne and make spoile of the whole Countrey. He caused Labienus to march The severall with three Legions along by the Ocean, inited to Latoward that part which joyneth vnto the biemus and Menapians. Hee fent Trebonius with the Trebonius. same number of Legions, to sacke that Countrey which was neerest to the Adu. attques. Himfelfe, accompanied with the three other Legions, stayed to go toward the river Sabis, and the vtmost parts of the Fortest of * Ardene.

The Eburones not having any certaine Army, neither garrison, or any Towne length, reach wherein they might defend themselues ing from the river Rheine, by Armes, and the whole popularity be- to the City of ing fcattered every where abroad retired Tourney. themseluss to such places as were obscure valleyes, or wilde and fauage, or vvhere the moorish Fennes made a troublesome

Cælars deter-

accesse to them; these presented them with some imaginary hope, that thus they might defend and faue themselues. Cafar The great dein this fiery heate of reuenge, perceyuing fire of Cæfar, the great danger which might enfire, by tobe reuenged on the E having thus separated his Legionaries; called all the necre-neighbouring Citties the loffe and damage that (in hope of booty) to come and make pilhe fustained. lage of the Eburones, to the end that the race and name of them might bee veterly confounded. And because he could not very great, he put himselfe once more on enemies, affembling infinite troopes of people from all the Townes & neere adioyning parts, and so sent them outward by fundry wayes. They burned all the villages, and enery house that they could Iul Ca∫in com. Lib.8

Chap.4.

Of the Bellouafior Bello-

Thoght now to be the Towne Tulifurgium in low Germany

CHAP.III.

vengeance (as is to bee seene in his eight

booke) enflamed him the third time, and

the like waste he made : neuerthelesse, he

speaketh not of any rampier, or of any

ditch belonging vnto Towne or Village.

Whereby may justly bee observed, that

the Belgians as they were descended of the

Germaines, so in like manner they had the

The Bellouasi, or Bellouasians in like fort.

albeit that they were the very principal of

the Belgians, as wel in regard of their ver-

tue and authority, as for the great number

ofmen amongst them: yet it appeareth,

that they were no straungers to this cu-

stome : for in the first warre, he speaketh

not but of one Towne or Village, named

* Bractuf incium; in the other warres, hee

maketh no mention of any one. This may

feeme to be spoken sufficiently enough,

concerning the habitations of the Belgi-

same order of dwelling.

Of the Humanity, Liberality, Hofpitality, & Courtefie of the Gaules to Strangers, and care for beneficing each other equally.

Finde nothing written in Cafar, of the playes, sports, & pastimes of the youth among the Gauls. As for the Germans, to any commer; for each man will Feaft gers.

Tacieus Writeth thus. They had but one onely kind of spectacle in enery affembly yong boies that conceived delight in this fport, would run or leape forth violently (and starke naked) before swords & lauelines directed against them. This exercise grew to be an art, and Art made it verie gracefull in them: yet what they did, was not for any lucre, gaine, or wages, but the onely recompence of this their audacious gallantry, was, to bee pleafing in (as yet) appealehis thirsting soule by such their eyes that beheld them. They would Desperate & play(being in very stayed and settled judg- dangerous very great, he put himselfe once more on his way, to give surther vexation to his and dangerous adventure, as would make any other portions of surther vexation to his and dangerous adventure, as would make surely pursue. a man blush to stand and looke on, and edin the very they performed their intentions in such earnest manner, as if they were at strife for some matter of great moment : yea, fuch was their affection to the gaine or finde standing. The selfesame define of losse, as after they had nothing els to con tend for : they would ftrine about the very last hazard, laying downe their own liberty and perfons in pawne. Whofoeuer loft himfelfe, would yeelde to the others fernitude, with his ownekinde confent: And albeit hee were neuer fo young and ftrong, yet (in regard of his loffe)he wold suffer himselfe to be bound and sold. For fuch was their wilfull obstinacy, that they would lay down faith vpon the very leaft occasion.

But who focuer would take note of the Humanity, li great humanity, liberality, and courtefy, berality, and courtefy both as well in the Gaules as in the Germains, courtery both in the Gaules let hin read what followeth. They would and Germans inuite strangers (this speaketh Diodorus of the Gaules) to feast with them. And after nature was sufficed, they would enquire what people they were, and what occasion drew them thither. But Cafar and Tacitus giueth this commendation vnto the comment Lib s Germaines, by writing much more am- Corn. Tacit. ply. Th y make it a matter of great Con- in lib.7. science (faith Cafar) to offer any outrage to strangers, who, be it for what cause soeuer they come amongst them, yet they will defend them from all injuries, and thinke them to be facred people, each one allowing them part of his house, & vyhatfocuer he had to line on. Tacitas writeth in this manner. There is not any Nation | The love and more addicted to make good chear together, and feaft strangers. They doe make which they afgreat conscience in denying house-room | ford to stran

ı. Booke

Of the ancient Gaules.

13

No difference betweene a known friend

Hofte, enstructeth him to another mans dwelling; and thereinto (without any further bidding) they enter both togither, cuen the necreft house they come vnto; where their entertainment is voyde of all difficulty, and vsed with extraordinarie courtefie. As concerning the rites of hof-pitality, they make no difference between him that is knowne, and another that is vnknown. At his departure, if he defireth any thing, it is their order and custom to grant it: as they will doe the like when it falleth to their turne. They take great delight in giuing gifts : but will receyue no recompence for whatfocuer they give, or think themselues indebted or beholding for any thing that they receive. This is a testimony of their worthy hospitality, & I am of the minde, that fo great an honor descrueth not to be forgotten, as Germany iustly deserueth in regard of this Ver-

Arist in lib.4. uerty the two principall plagues vnto mankinde.

Plato in Lib.de Legib.cap.9.

The order of

Iulius Calar

he hath no further meanes, he that is the Phaleas the Chalcedonian, did first pub-

lish in the Commonwealth (as Aristotle affirmeth) that goods might bee equally divided; to the end, that the two principall plagues to mankinde (which are ri= ches and pouerty) might be banisht from the Citty. And this is that which Plate (most of all other) wished for the grounded estate of a happy Commonwealth. But the Germains neuer fixed their imaginations on such a most fortunate Com-monwealth, by disputes and discourses onely; but accomplished and brought it to effect by their owne good cuftoms and honest examples. For some of them (as Cafar auoucheth in his fixt booke, speaking of the Germaines) had not any certain measure of land, or any particular limitation: but the Princes and Magistrates asfigned enery yeare (both to kindreds and parentages, who were acknowledged and placed together) fomuch ground or land, and fuch a fite or fituation, as vnto them feemed best and convenient; & the yeare following, they were constrained to seeke elsewhere. In his fourth booke, hee sayth as much of the Sweues, another people of Germany. They had no land which they held in particular, or divided among the: neither were they permitted to tarry longer then a yeare in a place, to Til or make it husbandable. This is the equality of

him according to his power: And when goods, which then was among the Ger- Equality of maines.

And they rendered great store of reafons for this equality, as the fame Author The reasons witnesseth in his fixt booke, viz. Fearing maines, for least beeing retained by an accustomed their equality continuance in one quarter, they should The first, forfake the profession of warre, & follow the other more beneficial kind of life. Fea- The fecond. ring, least they should withdraw their minds from the enlarging and extendure of their bounds or limits: and growing to be too potent in strength, they should oueraweand expell the weaker from their goods. Fearing also, least they should be ouer curious in building, to defend themfelues against cold and heat, and so proue to be starke Cowards. Fearing beside, lest | The fourth. a wicked couetous desire should arise among them, of scraping and gathering goods together: wheron (custommarily) infueth threatnings, diffentions, & blood. Alfo, to the end that the popular fort The sandlast might bee contained within a reasonable contentment of mind, when the meanest perceined his goods to be equal with the most powerfull. This is (in effect) the words of Cæfar, touching the qualitie of goods vied then among the Germaines: and when the Greekes come to compare of the Greek with him, in commending this manner of with Calars behauiour either in the Cretanes or La- words. conians; all that they could auouch or fay, was; to terme this worthy and extraordinary vertue, to be no more then meer

barbaroufnesse. Seruitude or bondage was in vse aswel Bondage or feruite life among the Germaines and Gaules, as in mongft the other Nations. Many men (to speaketh Germains and Cæfar in his fixt booke, discourfing on Julices in the Gauls (finding themselves to be char-comment. Lib ged either with debts, or taxations, or iniuries of the mightier fort) did yeild them felues into feruitude or flauery of Gentlemen, who had the felfefame right ouer them, as Masters had ouer their slaves. It should seeme, that this Masterie or command was cruell, as well as that whereof Tieus Liuius recounteth in his 2. booke, Titus Liuius in to be vied in Rome, after that the Kings Libia. dec. 1. were expelled thence, when the commotion of the bondmen was on foote. For they were then controlled and handled by their Masters, as the bodies of debters were by their creditors, who were parted (as Quintillian writeth in the fixt chapter

Diodor.in L,

of his third booke) or divided betweene the creditors, according to the law of the twelue Tables. And that Law(as himfelfe The Romano faith) which naturally was not to bee allowed, and yet (notwithstanding)permitted as in right, was reprehended by publicke custome, and oftentimes(to remedy the same in meere pitty) the Commonwealth granted Letters of respite, aboli-

y and libera ity of the Gaules, beyond that of the Romaine

thing extorting interests, and making a

new obligation for the principall. The humani But the Gaules vsed much greater humanity and liberality then the Romaines did; because the Masters kept in honourable place, and about their persons such

Chap.5.

as thus stoode obliged to them, and they vsed their service also in their warres. Wherefore it appeareth, that that which Diodorus wrote, differed not from this purpose, where he faith; They employed

as guards and defenders of their bodyes,

fuch as (among freemen) were poore and

keth of the flaues among the Germaines.

They do not vie their flaues (faith hec) as

we do ours, appointing them certain of-

fices in our houses: for cuery one serueth

himfelfe, and gouerneth his houshold af-

faires. The Matter chargeth his flaue with certaine measures of Corn, or with some

Cattle, or with some kinde of cloth: euen

as we do our Farmers or Husbandmen,

and the feruant obeyeth him not but in

fuch bufineffe. If he would have any mat-

ter done in his house, his wife and Chil-

dren performeth it. It fildome or neuer

hapneth, that a mafter doth beat his flaue

or bindeth him, or enforceth and con-

straineth him to any businesse. They had

a custome to kil them, yet not by any ma-

ner of rigorous or feuere chastisement;

no more aduantages then feruants . Sel-

dom or rarely were they aduanced in the

house, and neuer vnto the managing of

Commonwealth affaires : except among

fuch Nations, as were in obedience to a king, and there they mounted higher then

Freemen, or then Gentlemen. Among

other Nations, libertines, being not re-

ceined into the like dignities as the free,

made distinction of their liberty.

needy, and they ferued them as Efquires and Armor-bearers in the warre. Tacitus Corn.Tacitus reporteth almost the very same custome lib.4.cap:5. as was vied by the Gaules, when he spea-

Of the flaues

Of feruices

nefit then fer-

CHAP. V.

How the Gaules wfed to educate and bring up their children. Of their corage, manbood, and valour in Armes and martial

of their admirable flature : whereat Cafar

was much amazed, when hee beheld the

Gaules which were flaine in the warres of

Affrica: you have also heard some part of their liberality, in the administration of

hauiour, to wit; That they would never

permit their children to come openly before them, vntill they were of able yeares

to beare Armes. And they held him to

be a villaine, whose sonne (being vnder li-

mited yeares) should be found in publike

before his fathers face. Ce/ar speaketh this

exercisepheir infancy was imployed, vn-

till this date of expectation, therefore we

of body, and (doubtleffe) was the cause

Hese then were the maners and temperance of the anci- The dispositi ent Gaules, which ferued of body a. very fufficiently to maintain their disposition & strength

their goods, for the relecte of others necessities.But there remaineth much more to fay, if wee would enter into discourse. concerning all the parts of their mahood The manand valiancy: were it in confidering the hood a valor exercise of their youth, or their earnest & Gaules.

violent defire in following armes, and the Nations which have beene conquered by them, and the Colonics established tho-

roughout the world, onely in the name of the Gaules. The Gaules (thus faith Ca-

far in his fixt booke) helde this as a diffe- ment lib.6 rence from others, in their manner of be-

neuertheleffe hee giueth not sufficiently Somewhat obut in choller, as an enemy, and done in the case of some reuenge. Freemen had the case of some reuenge. Freemen had

fici-

must make search into other Authors. Tacitus, speaking of the Germaines, Corn. Tacit. would have vs to know, at what time they m lib. 5.c.7. came vnto the service of the Commonwealth. They observed as a custom (faith At what time

he) that no one should vndertake the pro- feruethe Cofession of Armes, vitill the Common-monwealthin wealth had approved and allowed his fuf- martiall man .

A Garment which the Ro maines did al wayes wea in peace.

Arist in Polit. Lib. 8.cap.3.

Aristotle cal led the Celte barbarous propie.

Arift tele com

Galenin Gub. San.lib.t.cap.3

Galens reprethe Germains education of their children

ficiency. Then, in the martiall Confiftorie, either some one of the Princes, or his Father, or els his neerest Kinsman, armed the yong man with a shield and a Iauelin. This was the * Toga or Gown which they tooke, and this was the first degree of honor, wherunto their yong men mounted. Before, and till this dignity was done to them, they were but as a member of the house onely: but afterward, they appertained to the Commonwealth. Aristotle, who wrote long time before Cafar declareth vnto vs this manner of education of children (for it seemeth in the 8.Booke of his Politicks) that hee learned this instruction of vs. It is necessary (faith he) to accustome and vie the very yongest children to indure cold weather: for it profiteth maruelloufly, as well, for the disposition of the body, as for manly cariage in war. And this was the reason, why some barbarous people (as the Celts) observed it as a custome, to plunge their young Infants (so foone as they were borne) in the coldest water of the river, or els to cloath them in light garments. For, to whatfoeuer thing youth ought to apply it felf, this is the best course; to accustom them therto (by little and little) from their yongest houre, and when they are tender; because of the heate which is naturally in them, & therefore the first thing to be done, is to be carefull in this one point.

Aristotle in this place calleth the Celts barbarous, and yet hee accounteth not their customes barbarous; in regard that hee appointeth the Greekes to fashion themfelues after their manner. I know that Galen (harply reproueth this behauiour, when in the first booke of his Gouernment of health, and instructing how to order health, he faith. I am not of the minde, that Children should onely bee nurfed among the Germaines. Alfo, that which he writes of is neither for the Germaines, or for any other fuch fauage and barbarous men; no more then for Beares, wilde Boares, Lions, or fuch other beafts. I knowe (I say) that Galen reprehendeth this custome severely : but I know likewife, that the yong nice delicates of the Greekes, whom Galen striueth to please, in prescribing them an order for theyr health: haue beene quite deuoured by these Lyons (as he tearmeth them) and that the Gaules and Germanes, if they be

compared with the Greeks, may in good right be called Lyons.

And truly, Lacedemon, which was the Lacedemon most noble of all the Grecian Cities, was haped it selfe to endure the principally renowned for being studious hard cuttoms in hardning it felfe to trauaile, after the of the Celtes. true manner of the Celts. For the youths of Sparta, did dayly imbolden themselues against al manner of paines and exercises: neuer entering into the especial assembly, before the age of twenty yeares, as Plutarch recordeth in the life of Lyoungus . Plut, in vit. ty. Wherefore, not onely the power of this emg. vertue, which was in the Gauls and Germaines, but (ouer and befide) the authority of Aristotle, as also of Lacedemon (if any man be regardfull thereof) may well ferue to answer the reasons of Galen. We may also inferre (to this purpose) that which Strabo hath written, when he faith, The Gaules held this as proper and peculiar to them, to refuse no taking of pains, Strabo in Lib. as fearing to becom fat and fwoln bellied by ease : therfore they punished and con- The Gaules demned vnto some pecuniary fine, such ous & painful yong men as grew groffe through floath and excesse. Whereunto that ordinance of the Romaines was conformeable : that depriued any fat or corpulent Knight, of Knights had the Horfe graunted him by publique al- fet allowed

Now it is further to be confidered, that The Germa this exercise was not onely proper or pe- brethren to culiar vnto the Gaules : but it was in like the Gaules. common vse with the Germaines theyr brethren, as Galen himfelfe hath elfwhere declared, Let vs listen then to Casar, who Jul. Casar in heerein gineth them sufficient commen- Com, Lib, 6. dation. From their infancy (this hee writeth in his fixt book) they addicted them felues to paines taking, and imployed (almost) their whole life time, either in hunting, or feats of warre. They had divers kinds of wilde beafts, in the Forrest cal-woodin Ger led*Hercynia: as wilde Bulles, *Alees, but many, in especially Buffles, which they tooke with breathnine great labour in their dens or ditches, and dayes journy, and in length there flew them. The yong men hardned forty. themselues to this trauell, and enermore A wild beat exercifed this manner of hunting: & they in fashion and which had flaine most of them, bringing skin like a fallow Deere. their hornes to publicke view, as a testimony of their diligence, received both reward and great praise. This yeeldeth fufficient demonstration, how the young men prepared their spirits, to endure all

*People of Belgia,next to the Leuci and Madiom,

People of

drift in Polit ib.8 cap.6.

Roane in N

paine

paine and labout, and fell not off for any danger : as hading learned, though not of great and skilfull Doctors, which were best able to give them instructions; yet (at least) of their owne selues, and so put it in effectuall execution. Let vs now obserue what they were in

The Gauls wer Inl. Cafar in Com. lib. 6.

Chap. 6.

alwayes in ac. cause the Gauls were perpetually in war. tions of arms. For, before Calar came thither (as hee hath written in his fixt booke) it hapned enery yeare, that either they affailed others, or elfe were glad to defend themfelues; and it was eafily knowne, that by a custome among the Gaules, age was no excuse to any man, as appeareth by divers passages in the eight booke. Vertiscus.a chiefe Commander of the * Rhemi, albeit he could very hardly keepe himfelfe on horsebacke, because he was so farre gone in yeares : yet notwithstanding, according to the manner of the Gaules, hee would pleade no excuse by his age, in vndergoing fuch charges as were imposed on him; and he was very vnwilling, that any fight (hould bee performed without him. Likewise, in the warre of the Parisians, the whole charge (as is to be seene in the seuenth Booke) was given vnto Camulogenus, an especiall man of the * Aulerci, who was well-neere wholly spent with age: and yet for all that, the great experience which he had in martiall affaires, aduanced him to the highest degree of Honor. Answerable to this, Strabo faith, The Gaules were rather men of warre, then any way addicted vnto Tillage or husban-

Ariftot'e writeth, that the Celts helde the vertue of warlike actions in most fingular respect and commendation. And it was well noted, as Cafar affirmeth, that the cause of valour (both in the Belgians and Heluctians) grew through their continuall exercise of armes, for he faith: The most valiant people of al the Gaules, were the *Belgians*.

Now, as Temperance was the first and formost in ranke, as being the Mother, or the Nurse (at least) of true valiancy: so the fecond cause which Cafar rendreth, was; That they were neighbours to the Germanes, which dwelt on the further fide of the Rheine, with whom they were continually at warre. This (I fay) was ano-

ther cause of their valor, that continually they exercised armes, and by the same reafon, the Heluetians furpaffed (in this ver- exceled al the tue) all the other Celtes: As it might dai- other celter in ly be discerned, in regard, that ordinarily Armes. they fought with the Germanes, eyther in repulling them from their frontiers, or actions of warre, and as the Poet faveth: making war on them in their owne coun-The braue workemanshippe of Mars, betry. In this place also might be alledged, their often and frequent skirmishes, to deliuer true faithfulnesse of their valour. Moreouer, the Gaules for want of warre, to the end that they might still be in exercife of armes: gaue themselues to thests The Gands wer and robberies, as Diodorus faith, purloyning the goods of others, without any
beries. prouision of their owne. What were the Diodor in lib. 6 Germanes ? faith he. What participation had they in this vertue? All their life, as hath beene already declared, was no way imployed, but in deeds of armes. And as The greatest he hath further written in his fixt Booke, honour of a the very greatest ho rour that any Citty Cityamong could haue, was, to haue a great Defert & fpacious Country round about it. They esteemed it to bee proper and naturall to vertue, to compell their expulsed neigh- Few or no bours, to forfake their Lands and Terri-durit dwell tories, fo that few or none durft dwel nere neere to the vnto them. And by this meanes, they Gaules. imagined themselues to be in the greatest fecurity, in being deliuered from al dread of courses, which suddenly might bee made into their Country.

Tacitus speaketh of the same exercise corn. Tacitus in of armes. You could not fo readily put lib.o. cap.4. into their heads, any order for husbandry | No care of in their grounds, or carefulnes for gathe- husbandry, or ring their fruites, and corne, as to go af- gathering the faile the enemy, and to returne back with fruites of the wounds and maimes. Moreouer, it appear affaile the ered to them, that it was meere floth and nemy. carlefnesse, to winne that by sweate and labour, which a man might purchase with the price of his blood. Cafar faith likewife of the Germanes, the fame that Diodorus dother the Gaules, that they were addicted to rapine and thefts. Robberies (thus speaketh Cafar in his fixt booke) did Iul Cafin com. not make men any iot the worse citee- 146.6. med: fo that they were done out of those limits, which appertained to each Citty. Inerts & ropheries thought And it is faid that they vfed these courses, not diffeomen-onely to exercise their youthes, and for the auoyding of ydlenesse. And when fome one of the Lords would deliuer his meane affecti-

minde on.

3045 Ofpublike Sentences & Judgements. 3. Booke

Two Iudges ther fide.

Places apoin zed for the ending of rences accor ding to anci-

> They that met at one place,went not toanoth except by especiall appointment

Whe matters uingly ended, they take then

Thus then, for the deciding of fuch differences, each of the parties doe chuse two ludges for either fide, who are abfolued of the oath which they have taken to their Canton: and promise to judge according to right and equity, and labour that the fuite may bee louingly and very speedily accorded, or indicially ended.

By the ancient alliances, there were certaine places appointed, for the ending of fuch fuites. The feven first Cantons fent their ambassadors and arbitrators to the Abbey of the Hermitage, to end ther fuch fuites as happened among them. By an article of very ancient alliance with them of Glaris, it is expressely faid; that if they had any fuite with them of Vei, the affembly should be at Merch. If against the canton of Suits; the arbitrators shold meete at Bergeraz: and at Brunen, if against them of Vnderuald. And then the other Cantons, having had knowledge of the cause pronounced the sentence. The Bermans, and the three Cantons of Vri. Suits, and Vnderuald, affembled at a place named Daskienholtz. They of Zurich and Berne, at Zofinge. The Fribourgers & they of Solleurre, having a fuite against the eight first Cantons, or some of them, sent their Iudges to Zofinge; and if they were defendants to Willifow. As for the causes of them of Bafile, Schaffoufe, and Appenzell, they pleaded them at Bada, together with them of these Cantons, allied with them of Rotuille and of Mulhouse. but the differences of them of S.Gall. were determined in the Abbey of the Hermitage: and them of the Grifons, at Wallenstad, which is a Towne at the ende of the Lake of Rine, in the Bayliwick of Sar-

When then some difference happeneth, which cannot bee kindly accorded, and that the entreaty of the Cantons ferueth to no purpose: the arbitrators and ambassadours of the Cantons that are in fuite, do meete at the place appointed, & (with them) the ambaffadors of the other Cantons confederates, who come thether to attone the parties, and to make fome amiable composition. The Judges and Arbitrators beeing affembled, after that the parties have pleaded their caufes: if the Iudges take refolution, & giue fentence, the parties must (of necessity) be

contented. But if they be of divers opi-

nions (as many times it happeneth) and that there are as many voyces on the one fide, as on the other, then a fift Iudge or arbitrator is chosen, whom they call Jein When voyee obmann.or. Ein ameinen mann. He giueth no fentence at all, but onely appro- then a fift A ueth one of those, which the arbitratours haue pronounced. Sometimes the Judges themselves do chuse the odde arbitrator: yet in fuch fort notwithstanding that he is a man of one of the Cantons, no medler with eyther party, nor having any interest in the cause.

The alliance of the feuen first Cantons, makes mention of this election and choice: as that of Fribourg, that of Solleurre, that of Appenzell, and them of S. Gall and of Mulhoufe. It is added to the The addition articles of the alliance of Schaffoufe, that to the Article if the Judges cannot accord, by choife of another arbitrator, taken from one of the Cantons; they shall then take one of the Lords of the councell of S.Gall. And in the alliance of Rotuille, command is gineh to the ludges, to chuse for an odde arbitrator, one of the Lords of the councell of S.Gallor of Mulhoufe. Sometimes al-fo the complainant chufeth. As if the Bermians have a fuite against the three first edsomesor continues the Cantons, or any one of them; the Can-odde Assur tons thal name fixteen men, out of which www. number, the Bernians are to chuse a subarbitrator. But if they bee defendants, the Cantons will then (for fub-arbitrator) cluse one of the Lords of the leffer councell of Berne. If forne difference fall betweene them of Zurich, and of Berne: the complainants chuse for an odde arbitratonr, one of the defendants Lords of the councell. The same is observed in suites for them of Bafile, against the other cantons; and so in the Grifons causes.

Thus you fee how the Switzers gouerne themselues, in the deciding of con- There is no trouerfiall fuites betweene the common- thing to well wealths. I know very well that some may dispute subtilly, both for and against this it may seeme order there observed: but I will leave that valitor and discourse to the Readers. For mine owne part, I admire the simplicity and integrity of our ancestors, who by such manner of proceeding, have often broght to end very great variances, and carefully conferued publike peace and concord But they did not regard their owne particular profite, neither defired any thing

one place,

Of Zurich, Basile, and Schaffouse. Chap.5.

Their eads ours are quit and flourishing. If now each man had no other meaning, but would aime at that marke: fo many fuites would not be feene, and eafily might those be appealed, that are the hottelt attempted.

CHAP. V.

Of those Common-wealths, which are in each of the feuerall Cantons. And first, of the Common-wealths of Zurich, Bafile, and Schaffoufe.

Auing thewne almake mention, of

All the com-

of the Canons referred to three forms

The cheefe

men of fome

councell cal-ked Ammans

inan Estate

meerely po-

ready, how the whol Commonwealth of the Switzers is gouerned in common: it behoueth now to

the Common-wealth in each distinct Canton. Now it seemeth to me, that the common-wealths of the thirteene Casstons, may bee referred to three formes. For as there are three names of foueraign Magistrates and Cantons, so have they likewise as many formes of commonwealths; differing not onely in name, but alfo in the things themselues.

In some certaine Cantons, the cheese Commanders or Heads of the councell, are called Ammans. This is observed in the Cantons that haue no Citties or Townes, but Villages onely, hauing a popular estate, and the sourraignty appertaining to the people; by whose aduice, the very greatest affaires of importance are decided. Of this number are Vri, Suits, Vnderuald, Zue, Glaris, and Appenzell.

The other Cantons have their citties and townes, which have the foueraignty : yet in fuch manner, as there are two formes of common-wealths. For the citties and townes, especially such as haue bene built by fome Princes, or fome-

more, then to fee their country peaceable | times have beene subjected to them: are gouerned by an Auoyer, whom they call, citties, the Schulthels, (who is cheefe of the coun- cheefe man is cell) and by some number of councellers called the Acholen by free election, from and by the cheefe man of whole number of cittizens. The forme the councell. of this common-wealth is Aristocraticall among all the other: and in this manner are gouerned the common-wealths of Berne, Lucerna, Fribourg, and Solleur-

> There are other citties and townes Election of divided by certaine companies, by each the Lords of whereof, and by voyce of fuch men as the councell and the fuare in enery of them, the Lords of the preame Magicouncell are elected, and the fourraigne strate, called a Magistrate or cheefe of the councell, Rer. who by them is tearmed Burgermei= fter, that is to fay, Mafter of the Bourgeffes, which we in a shorter word cal Bourgmaster. Such are the common-wealths of Zurich, Bafile, and Schaffoufe. Now we are to speake of these diners formes of common-wealths in order, beginning with the last, first.

> First then, all the people of these Townes divi-Townes free and Imperiall, were divided ded into two into two rankes: the one of Noblemen, blemen and the other of Yeomen. The Noblemen Yoomen. had a Society by themselves, apart, which the Allemaignes or Germans did call, Em Beleitchafft, and they of Zurich, Ein Constaffell .

In elder times, in the citty of Bafile, which is very spacious, and for the multitude of Noblemen, they were divided into two focieties, bandes, or companies of Noblemen . Oftentimes they Two bands of were in quarrels, and had the foueraignty: Noblemen in fo that out of the one copany they chose Basile. the Confull, and out of the other, the Tribune or Captaine of the citty, which is bune or Capthe estate of greatest authority, next vnto City, the two that of Confull or Bourgmafter.

Neuerthelesse, afterward the Noblemen lost this fourraignty, or else for fook their right voluntarily. For at the time of the councell of Bafile, when Lewes, then Dolphin of France, brought (very neere to Bafile) an Army of Armignacks, in fauour of Pope Eugenius, and the Duke of Austria; many Gentlemen of Bafile; went and loyned with that Army, in regard whereof, they were all banished, and men banished their posterity deprived & excluded from and their poall publike honours.

After-

305

cheefe offices

Sterity depri-

dius his prea

ching & the

Religion.

Some of the Noblemen got entrance again into the excluded from gouers

ing in the

nies of Lords

fo called to do

Zurich in chu-

fing their

Lords of

councell

mon confent) made alliance with the ten Cantons of the Switzers, in the yeare, 1501. the most part of the Noble-men, who hated the Switzers: diflodged from the citty, and withdrew themselues to Castles heere and there, so that their authorisy diminished greatly then, and all the rest was lost in the yeare, 1 , 29. For by the Sermons & exhortations of Oecolampadius, the doctrine and ceremonies of the Church were reformed, by order fent from the councell, against which, many Noblemen opposed themselues. And althogh they could not hinder the change of Religion, yet they abandoned and left

Afterward, when the Burgesse (by com-

the citty, and would not abide in it. Afterwhich time, the two companies whereof we spake, entred in againe, and got possession of some private houses, & as yet they keepe those houses to themfelues, and they belong to the whole body of the Nobility. And those houses are called in their language, Zum umfft; en bnd sum brunnen, but yet none of the is of the councell. For although the councell do meete together (almost) euery day, and the Gentlemen (hauing forfaken the citty) dwelt most part of the time in their Castles: by common aduice of the Burgeffes, they were excluded fro gouerning in the common-wealth, which they had renounced voluntarily. Neuertheleffe, fome noble Families that dwell in the citty, & haue had care of the common-wealth with the other Bourgesses, are in ranke of the foure first companies or supporters of the citty, and (in them) are chosen to be of the councell. And therefore, to do them honour, in regard of their condition; these Tribes or companies are called berrensunfft, that is to fay the companies of Lords.

Therefore, there are no more companies of these Noblemen in Basile, but those that are distinguished with the other Bourgesses. But at Zurich and at Schaffoufe, the Nobleme haue their companies apart by themselues. And they of The priviledg Zurich have this priviledge befide, about the tribes and companies of Tradesmen, to take the moity, that is, the most part of the Lords of the councell, from foorth the company of these Noblemen: so that they are as a counterpoise to the other companies. Notwithstanding, there is

fome difference among these Noblemen, for the Families of race, that are very noble and ancient: they do make a band by themselues, and they are called Die Stublet, by reason of the place where they affemble apart by themselues, by right & especiall priviledge. To the whole body of these tribes or companies, are ioyned many cittizens, which are not of any trade nor traffick : in which respect, they may have place in one company, tather then in another. Porters, Labourers, Porter La-Burden-bearers, and other fuch like man- bourers, and ner of people, who when warre hapneth, are held and reputed to be of this body of dy politime. companies, which they call Ein Conz staffell, and receive wages : they have a voyce in electing the Master of the whole body of companies, and he is of the Seigneuries councell, in regard of his place.

Befide the Society and Company of Noblemen, the people of those citties & Of other Tribes and townes there, are parted into certaine tribes or companies, which the Germans call Zumfft. The word (it may be) taketh name or originall, of Zamenkunfft, which fignifieth to meete and affemble themselves in company. Some interpret them to be Tribes, others, Courts, and others, Colledges or Abbeyes: but wee will call them Tribes or Companies. The number of them is not equall in the forenamed Citties and Townes. For there are fifteene at Bafile: whereof the foure Fifteene comfirst are esteemed more noble then the other, and are called the companies of they are di-Lords, as already hath beene faid. The first tribe or companie, is that of Merchants. The second of Gold-smiths, Goldfiners, Founders, and Pewterers. The third is of Merchants dealing onely in wines: with whom the Notaries, Masters of Hospitals, Spittles, and other such like communities are joyned. The fourth is of Merchants dealing in Silkes, and of Factors for all States: This company is the very greatest of them all. The other eleuen, are of all forts of trades and handv-crafts men.

Now there is a dozen or twelue tribes Twelue trib or companies at Zurich: heeretofore they are at Zurich were thirteene in number, when many Drapers & workers in wooll dwelt there: for that was one company by it selfe. But now adaies, the weavers of woollen cloth and other things, are joyned into one co-

Schaffouse there are eleuen companies onely : neuertheleffe, it falleth out many times, that diuces trades are joyned together in one company. They have their meetings by themselnes : as at Zurich, the Millers and Bakers, the Barbers and Chirurgions, the Smiths and Mettall men. So at Bafile, the Fishermen and Marriners or Barquers, the Cordwainers and Curriers, the Taylors & Skinners. Thefe companies are divided, and they are called Bipaltue Zunfft. For whon there is question of cheefe Trades, and especially Chiefe trades workmen in them, their houses of meetings and affemblies are by themselues. But in things that concern the commonwealth, and when, and where all ought to be present, to elect Lords of the councell, or the Zunftt-Masters, who must be also in the councell; every man speaks his minde, and gines his voyce.

Out of each of these companies, some men are chosen as many of one company as of another, to be Lords of councell. In every city there are two publike councels, which have the principall authority: as namely, the great councell, when as a good number of councellers meete together, in name of all the people : as is vied in the affaires of greatest importance, and which do appertaine to the whole common-wealth. Next, the leffer councell, who meete together enery day, about the common-wealths bufineffe, and take knowledge of differences happening among the cittizens. The great councell of Zurich, confifteth of two hundred me : That of Bafile, is of two hundred forty foure: and that of Schaffoule, is of foure. fcore and fixe.

As concerning the leffer councell of Zurich, it is of fifty: that of Bafile hath threescore and foure: and that of Schaffouse, hath but twenty fixe. For out of each tribe or company, twelue are taken for the great councell: except at Zurich, where they elect eighteene of the Nobility. At Zurich also each company giueth three men for the leffer councell : at Rafile, foure; at Schaffoufe, two. Next, in enery of these citties, there are two Confuls or Bourgmafters, who are the cheefe and Prefidents of councell. Ouer and befide thefe two at Bafile there are two Tribunes, who are cheefe in councell with

pany with the Fullers and Diars. At | the Bourgmasters. Moreouer, at Zurich the Noblemen fend fixe from among them, to the leffer councell: the other companies doe fend each one but three. By the plurality of voyces, choife is made How many of fixe other men, out of fuch companies each company as the councell do propose, to fill vp the

As concerning the election of coun-

they call, Zunfttmeifter, that is to fay,

Master of the tribe or company. The cu-

stome of these three citties, is, that the

companies haue two Masters: but one of

them is in estate but fixe Moneths, at the

end whereof, the other succeedeth him.

Neuerthelesse, it often comes to passe,

halfe yeare before, is chofen againe. By

as haue beene in charge the first fixe Mo-

cell; for although they be called whe the

councell is helde, yet notwitftanding, it is

not alwayes so done, and there are many

matters which paffe in the new councell

counceller from each of the companies:

but the leffer councell of Bafile chufeth

two. These councellers thus elected,

with the other which we have faid to bee

chosen extraordinarily at Zurich, are di-

uided into two bands: whereof the one

is the old councel, and the other the new.

onely.

cellers (for fo will wee heereafter call the of councellers Lords of the leffer councell) it is done in for the leffer manner following. Euery yeare, about councell, and mid-Iune, and mid-December, all the cit-der that ortizens of Zurich affemble themselves ton the Zunffrgether, euery man in his tribe and comic meister. pany: and the elelect a chiefe man, whom

that hee who was Zunftemeifter the this meanes, the leffer councell is divided

in two parts, to wit, the old & new. Such neths, we tearme them of the olde coun-

The great councell of Basile is divided in the fame manner, and of twelve which The great is taken from each company, there are Bafile divided

fixe of the new councell, and fixe of the in like maner. olde. Befide the Zunfftmeifters, the leffer councell of Zurich chuseth one

These two councels are changed euerie The chanfixe Moneths at Zurich; fo that at their ging of the ending, the olde councell electeth the councels. new . At Bafile, and at Schaffoufe, they

continue in the estate a whole yeare to-The election of the councell at Schaf- The times of

foufe, is made on the morrow after Pentecoste : and that of Bafile, on Satterday approbation.

Eleuen tribes or companies are at Schaf-

Chap.5.

and artezans are diftinguiholeby them

Concerning

theelection

councels of Zurich, Bafile,

Ofthe leffer

Of Confuller and Bourg-masters in each Citty.

whereupon they all come to them in order, and tell them closely in the eare, for whom they give voyce to be Zunfft= meifter. The leffer councell affemble at the oftenest, three times enery weeke, and fome whiles (vpon carnest occasion) four times. The old and new councellers of The fitting of Zurich, are feated one by another, & fom-the oldeand times one among an all the old councellers are about the younger. They have also this custome, to withdraw often into another Hall, to confult together. After refolution is taken,a counceller of the first company, reporteth the aduice to the new councell: and

they call the reporter Den Offner.

The Bourgmaster, whom they call

the olde councell first electeth the Bourg-

mafter, and the new councell the yeare

following. The Bourgmafter is in flate at

Zurich, fixe Moneths: but at Bafile and

Schaffouse, a whole yeare together, and

Iune. At Zurich, the Zunfftmeifters

are eleacd by the companies in their hou-

fes of meeting : then the councell of two

hundred confirmeth this election; but at

Bafile this confirmation belongeth to the

in each tribe or company, charge is given

to particular persons, to collect the voice,

Of the Bourg-Burgermeilter, as much to fay, as Mamafters or ster of the Bourgesses, is President of the Confuls the old and new councels. The great councel manner of their election electeth him by open voyce at Zurich; at Schaffon/e by fecret voyce: and at Bafile.

turne by turne, the Bourgmasters and Councellers olde and new are changed. They whom at Bafile they terme Zunfft Masters of companies & meilterg, and Dberftermeifters at Zucommunities, rich (as much to fay, as Masters of com-Tribunes of panies and communities) doe fecond the the people. Bourgmasters in their authority.

At Zurich there are three, and at Bafile two, who with the two Bourgmasters are called the foure chiefe & principal Lords of the city. Nine other Lords of the leffer councel at Bafile, are joyned to these four in cheefe, and by reason of the number, they are called the councell of thirteene. They heare the causes of very gretest importance, and deliberate on them first, bebefore they propound any thing to the

before the foure and twentieth day of lers. Moreouer, there is a particular councell at Zurich, whom wee may name the The chamber Chamber of accounts, for it manageth the officers publike affaires: and is composed of eight thereof. councellers, and have the Bourgmafter of the olde councell for their Prefident. Then is there two Pursse-bearers or Trefurers, and the Superintendents for Ecclefiaftical goods do affift them, together with foure other councellers, two of the olde, and two of the new councell. They take knowledge not onely of monies employed for the common-wealth: but oftentimes also, the younger councell demandeth their aduice in cases of importance, whereon they confult a while, and then give their report to the yonger con-

> alwayes two Secretaries affilting, with ries affilting their committees, when necessity requireth. The first and chiefest is cald attschryber, that is to fay, Secretary of the citty. At Zurich, the other is called In-Derfehrpber, that is to fay, fub-Secretary: but they of Bafile call him Raat= schrpber, that is, Secretary to the councell. There is a particular Secretary for the Chamber of Accounts; whom they of Zurich call Bechenschrober. The eflate of Secretary in these citties is honorable, and of great gaine. In regard wher- gorable. of, the Gentlemen striue to keepe it in their owne power, as fildome is it given to any other. These men are they (among all other) that know the lawes, customes, priviledges, and all the fecrets of the com-

mon-wealth.

Next to the councels publike, are Instices of the citty. There are two at Zurich, one for civill causes, Das Statt- A Iustice for aricht, which was in ancient times vnder dealing in ci power of the Nunnes, and the Abbeffe will causes. clected the Lieutenant, or cheefe man in that kinde of inflice, whom they called Den Schultheiffen, and his affeffors or affiftants:but now the election belongeth to the leffer or yonger councell. Their number is of eight, and they have their Lieutenant, Secondary, and Serieant. To What causes them appertaineth the knowledge of ci-they take kno uill causes, Debtes, Hires, Lendings, ledge of. Borrowings, Sales, and as the Switzers vie to fay, they indge wimb erb und eigen. There is no appeale from No appeale their sentence : but if there happen any from the luflices sentece difficult

lawand lu-

Criminall Indgements

Chap.5.

To these publike councels, there are Two Secrets.

Criminall ca

fes at Zurich

The other or-

difficult cause, they send it to the Coun-

The other Iustice, whom they call Dag Zinstaricht, is a ludgement of The office & authority of processe and suites, which happen for the other Iu. rents and yearely reuennues. The Secre-

tary of the other Iustice, and two Lords of the younger councell, it feemes doe daily affift for the ending of all fuch differences. In the bigger Basile there are two fuch kindes of Justices, and a third in the leffer Bafile. That Law or Inflice of greatest authority, which they tearme alfo Das Stattgricht, is composed of ten ludges; one part whereof is of the councell, and the other, fuch as the people do name. They take knowledge of all causes, civill and criminall: but when there is question of testaments, wils, contracts, monies borrowed, and other fuch like things: the Prouoft or Lieutenant of the citty fitteth in judgement. As for caufes criminall the Prouost of the Empire indgeth them. And there are three Lords inall causes of the councell, who do purfue criminall causes by the follicitation of one, who is an ordinary Atturney, named by them, Dherstenknecht, and keepeth company with the Judges, having an advocate

waiting on him. These judgements are done publikediscourse on causes of matrimony. For ly, and haue eight open audiences, whereby all are permitted to be there prefent, to heare and see whatsoeuer is done. But at Zurich and at Schaffoufe, the new councell doth judge the criminal causes. Nefuffrages, and taken out of the olde and uerthelesse, the Bourgmaster doth not then fit: but it is the Prouost of the Empirc, whom Rychlugt, or, Blutrich= ter, who prefideth and collecteth the voices. Euery yeare the councell chuseth fome one of that body, to exercise that fome learned men admitted to councell. charge. Processe and suites criminall are

who had each one as his adjunct, fome Doctour of the Law. These Iudgestake handled at Zurich, with the doores fast shut: but at Schaffouse in open Court, so knowledge of all matrimoniall causes: that all men may understand the accusapunish whoredomes and adulteries, and haue charge to obserue the lines & mantions and defences. But the councell comners of euery one. mandeth all to bee absent, when there is question of pronouncing sentence. The fecond order of Iustice at great Bafile, iudgeth not but in cases of small importance, which hardly exceedeth the fumme of ten pounds. But the Iustice of smaller Bafile, hath a Judge apart, & taketh knowledge of all causes, except of criminall.
There are two Courts, or kindes of

Of Zurich, Berne, & Schaffouse. Inflices at Schaffouse . The one which Two kindes they call Das Schulbaricht, is law or of luftice at iuffice for debts: for therein onely is en | Schaffoule. ded differences of contracts, debts, and fuch like things. And if the fumme whereof question is made, doe amount about an hundred crownes, the councell theo takes knowledge of it. In this Court are twenty affesfors or assistants, to wit, one of each Tribe: moreover, eight other persons, chosen by the councell. The other order of Iustice is named Trout= quicht, or, Duffengricht, that is to lay, tice at Schaf Inflice for tines and amercements : because the Prouost of the empire, or ludge in causes criminall, presideth there, and condemneth all fuch forfeitures & fines. There are twelve affelfours out of the

twelue Tribes, and who are of the great

councell. Causes criminall of lesser im-

Iustice there; as light injuries, vulgar out-

rages, and fuch like. But when wordes

do wound honour, and the wrong is not

cafie to bee diffembled or digefted; the

knowledge of fuch cases appertaineth to

after that the religion was changed, the

councels of the three citties established

one councell: wherein were a certaine

number of affiftants, elected by buplike

Beside, in these common-wealths,

Beside what hath beene saide thele

the leffer councell.

portance, are debated and ended in this fences of flen

three citties have each one their particu- The three citlar councell, which they tearme Ein ties haue pe-Thorgricht, or, Eegricht, where they cels beside the other.

new councels, and among whom were Divines ad-

fome Divines or Theologians as they cal mitted to be them. Neuerthelesse, at Schaffouse none cell. of the Ministers were assistants, but onely

bastards are depriued of all honours and of such as are dignity: nor is it lawfull for them to bee prohibited, feene at the councell, nor in the Courts not to be feen of Inflice. True it is, they are not guilty cell, or in any of that staine to their birth, neither can Court of iuit bee denied, but that (oftentimes) ba- flice.

stards have wonne more commendations

leffer councell: and therefore they may be called Preconfulters, or first councel-

The councel

of thirteene

For men bor

out of Swit-

Against stran-

Againft ad.

uancement of

Adulterers.

murderers, &

infamous per-

zerland.

for their vertues, then ever could their legitimate brethren: as we have an example of Jephia, a Judge of Gods owne people. But to bridle the leud concupifcences of many, and to conferue the dignity of facred marriage: Baftards fland as branded with infamy, and yrkefome eye-fores to well ordered common-wealths.

Next, hee that bath not dwelt tenne For time of yeares within the citty of Zurich, cannot dwelling. be chosen to be one of the publike coun-

> Such as are borne out of Switzerland cannot be of the leffer councell at Schaffoule : But if they be Bourgesses of twenty yeares standing, they may be brought into the great councell, & into the number of the Indees.

I will not tell you that strangers are vnworthy of these honors: but it is requifite first of all, that hee who ought to haue charge in a common-wealth, should be particularly affectioned and obliged thereto, and afterward be well skilde and feene, in the lawes and customes of the country.

And me-thinks, cittizens, and fuch as (from their youth) haue beene bred in a common-wealth; should have more aduantage therein, then strangers.

Moreouer, there is nothing more pernitious to common-wealths, then enftrangers and nies and despights, proceeding from such aduancements to high degrees: as draw on partialities and factions, the danger whereof cannot be anoyded, when naturall borne subjects are left despised, and ancient Families contemned, and charge of publike Officers giuen to strangers, & men of no merit.

> Beside bastards and strangers, adulterers, murderers, and men made infamous for any crime : arc(by a common law)excluded from councell in these common-

> Publike citates and conditions are of diuers kinde sin these common-wealths, and in great number, according as the citties are peopled: we will make mention of the principals onely.

The highest degree, next after the Bourg masters and Zunfft=Masters, are fuch as have charge of the publike monies: who are called in many places of Switzerland, Seckelmeifter, as much to fay, as Treasurers or Pursse-bearers. At

Basile there are three, named Drperherren, that have the keeping of the citties treasures. Besides them, there are three other, named Lanenherren, who mannage the monies of the Imposts, Cuflomes, and yearely reuennues of the common-wealth: They also pursue criminall causes, making themselves parties, by meanes of the ordinary Atturney. At Zurich there are men (almost) in the felfefame charge, whom they call Die Timbgetter; who manageth the tolle-monies of Corne and Wine, which they cause to be gathered by their committees. This tolle or taxation is not but on the Wine Tolle or mise publikely fold, and on the Corne brought wine, in from abroad: but for the wine & come which the Bonrgesses eate and drinke in their houses, they pay not any thing.

Belide these two Treasurers of the common-wealth, there is a third at Zu- The Treasurich, for the reuennues of the Church, & ches revenue he is called Der Bloefteren obman : he gathereth certaine reuennues of the Abbeyes; wherewith the Ministers wages are payed the Churches maintained, and the poore cherished or released, and the ouerplus remaining, is referred to eafe the people in times of publike neecessities. Some yeares past, the country of Zurich having beene afflicted with an extreme dearth of victuals: the receiver fold in the cour corne at a meane price to them of the cit- of Zurich, ty, and to most part of the Villages round about, bought with the referred mony at the best rate, and thereby the Subjects of the Seigneury were greatly releesed.

Next to these, there are other Officers, as they that take care of publike buildings, whom the French call Voyers, the publike build Germans Buttherren, and they of Ba- ings & their file, Lonherren, because they pay the charge. works & workmen that ferue in publike. These Survayers have charge of the waies, Gates, Towers, Rampiers, Bridges, Couduits, and other publike Edifices: taking order that they shall bee maintained and kept in their best ability. Moreouer, they judge with three Lords of the They joynein councell (who are their adjuncts) fuch judgement differences as happen for the confines, with the concell on especially occasions. Willows, Walles, all occasions. and fuch like things, & wherin the neighbours are to be guided by their direction in their building. At Basile there are fiue Seigneurs, that take knowledge of these

There is another degree of them that take charge of victuals. Of this number are the vifiters for Bread, to confider if the Loafe carry his full weight, or no. Others view the Flesh in the Butchery, and aduifedly obserue, that they kill not any Beaft, the flesh whereof is bad, and dangerous to be eaten; they also set a price pon the pound, to fell it by. Then there are some that take charge of Fish, and heedfully foresee, that none be taken whe they are spawny, and have an eye beside to the goodnesse of all other Fish in the Market. Others looke to falt Fifh, and to the Market of Butter and Cheefe, how it is reasonably sold. There are some other Officers, whose names are sufficient to be noted: as the Patrons of Widdowes and Orphanes, Schumworgt, and at Bafile, Muleiffenherren : The Almoners; Visiters for weights and measures; Deputies for questioning of matters; Comptrolers of Ecclefiafticall goods; and Vifiters of

Of Schooles

Schooles.

The Vninersi ty at Basile, founded by Aeneas Sylui us,who was

the fame priviledges, rights, and immunities, which the Vniuerfities of Boulogne, Colongne, Heidelberg, Erdford, Lipfa & Vienne hauc. Aeneas Sylvius was lodged at Bafile, during the time as the councell was kept there. He found the citty fo pleafant, the ayre fo fweete, with fuch commodity and abundance of all things; that heereputed the place apt and worthy to haue an Vniuerlity founded in it. In the times of our ancestors, and our owne also, this Voiuerfity hath yeelded many wife men. professors of the tongues, in Philosophy and all Sciences, who are needleffe heere to be named. Neuertheleffe, confidering the greatnesse of the citty, and the same of the Doctours there abiding, there are but few Schollers. Beatus Rhenanus rendreth the reason, and faith; It is occasioned by the fmalneffe of reuennues belonging to this Vniuerfity, and to many Schooles in Germany. As thinking that

if there were fewer Schooles and Vniuer-

fities, they would bee much more fre-

quented then they are. There is not any

Vniuersity at Zurich; notwithstanding, e-

uen to this prefent day, the tongues have

Morcouer, in these citties there are

Schooles very well ordered. At Bafile is

an University greatly renowned, establi-

shed by Aene a Syluius, afterward Pope,

named Pius the second, who gaue it all

beene so faithfully taught there, and all good Sciences and Dininity, that it is very famous, and highly effected among all them that study Divinity.

Finally, these three citties whereof we Mint for the speake, haue power to stampe and coyne coyning of monie; and therefore there are fordging three sittles. Mints, and Masters of the monies, whose charge is to take order that the money coyned with the stamp of the citty, shold beare full weight, and be of a good allay. Each of these citties hath her mony apart by her felfe. They of Bafile do covne the fame mony with them of Halfatia and of Bourgongne, and call it a Rappenmunt 3, Baffe. in regard of a Rauen, which serueth for Armes to many peeces of their mony. Fine & twenty Sols of this mony, makes a Florin of gold, which is thought to value threescore crutzers. At Schaffouse the The monie of mony is of the same allay & price, as that Schaffouse. of the Empire. They of Zurich do coyne The monie of Dallers, and halfe Dallers, of equal price zurich, with them of the Empire : but they haue a kinde of mony, which is their owne in particular, whereof forty Sols makes a Florin of gold. They stampe also another fort of mony, which they cal Baches, wher-

of fixteene makes a Florin. In ranke of these publike charges and The watch offices, we may fet downe the Watch, & may not be fuch as take care for provision against the forgot among accidents of fire. There are two fortes of in publike,& watch, befides the Sentinels in the clock-houses, and the Porters. First the perpetuall guardes at the citties coft, who keepe watch enery night, and diligently fearch through all parts of the citty, crying at all houres of the night. Ouer and beside thefe, out of each company are taken a certaine number of Bourgeffes, who likewife watch (according to their turnes) with their Armes. This double guard is not done for any feare they have of enemies: but to avoid the inconveniences of fire, and to take order alfo, that (during the time of night)al maters may be peaceable and quier.

They that are Committees, to take care of dangers concerning fire, when a- The office of them that are ny fuch happeneth in the citty, may com- guards for acmand the Carpenters, and other men of cidents of fire like quality, to runne for quenching the fire, taking order that all may bee done without confusion, and for the best safety of them that have the mif-fortune of the fire.

The mony of

Treasurers o the publike monies,& of Cuftomes and Imports.

Of publike

offices and e-

Duers Offi cers appoincharge of vi-Auals. For bread. For Acfh. For fifh.

For butter &

Other Officers noted by their names.

why to few Schollers are in the Vniuer fity of Bafile,

der is in times of fire.

The citty diflinguified bands in martiall order.

When fire taketh a village ont of the cit-

What care

A collection of charitable

fire. Moreouer, they carry an eye ouer the watch at the Gates, and on the wals; lefte any tumult should happen in the city. For it is ordained, that when the fire What the or- is in any one place, a certaine number of

the Bourgesses (chosen out of each company) make their fudden appearance at the Gates or Ports, and vpon the walles in Armes. Moreoner, the whole citty is distributed into certaine bandes, euery one of them having his Captaine & Enfigne to it felfe, vnder whom they go marching in excellent order. The Bourgmaster betakes himselse to the Town-house, with some of the principall councellers and officers of the Seigneury, to aduite on what is good for the weale publike. And not onely Carpenters, Masons, and their servants, but likewise most of the Bourgeffes meete together, all labouring industriously to quench the fire: and oftentimes the women thew themselues of no meane courage, in bringing and casting on the water. Beside, if the fire happen in some Village out of the citty, the lustiest disposed of enery Tribe (whereof election is made for the purpose) do meete, and iffue foorth together, to quench the fire. They are conducted by one of the councell Seigneurs, who is fent to helpe

and aduife what is meetest to bee done, but most especially, to comfort them that haue the loffe.

We have already told you, that the Switzers take great care for the poore. At Zurich, and in some other Townes, there is a daily distribution of almes to all the poore there, as of Bread and Pulse-pottage. There are a great number of poore Schollers in Zurich, fometimes forty, otherwhiles fourescore, that are thus releeued; fome bestowing garments, and othe poore in no worfe manner, then they of the Abbeyes and Couents in the Seigneury of Zurich are. Vpon the Sundayes and festivall dayes, an almes collection is made of the people; which Monethly, or almes for the at enery two Moneths, by men chosen & deputed to the office, is distributed equally to the poore in the citty, and fuch as live abroad in the fields. Beside, in the Citties there are great Hospitals, wherin needy cittizens, aged, impotent, ficke perfons, orphanes, and many other are relec-

ued. The Seigneury appointeth divers

honest people, to have care of the poores necessities: such as are the Master of Hospitals Procters, Receivers, & their Committees and Comptrollers.

Hitherto wee haue shewne you the The citties forme and state gouernment observed in extent in gothe citties: but ouer and befide these, they have authority in the neighboring countries, and (among the reft) the canton of limits. Zurich hath more country jurisdiction, and larger Bayliwicks, then eyther Bafile or Schaffouse. But in all the Lands and Seigneuries belonging vnto these three cantons, there is one and the felfe-fame order of gouernment. For certaine Bayliwicks are gouerned by the councell of the citty in fuch manner, as the Bayliffes dwell in the citty, and are councellers of the common-wealth, and yet go to keepe Courts in the Villages. And if there happen any criminall fuite, and whereof there is defert of punishment capitall, the councell taketh knowledge thereof. There are other Bayliwicks of farre larger ex- All the Bayli tent, and thether Bayliffes are fent with wicks are no ample power: fo that they judge not on-ly in civili causes, but oftentimes in cri-authority. minall occasions, and chastise malefactors, according to the greatnesse of the delicts. These Bayliwicks have their priuiledges and ancient customes: some also haue law and inflice apart by themselves, and are administred by Judges chosen out

The Bayliffes make no change or alteration (of any thing) in these places; but lawes, print they leave to the inhabitants, all their ledges or and the state of t rights fafe and found: contenting themfelues onely to prefide in inflice, and give ny of their in fentence according to the lawes and customes of each Bayliwicke. The canton of Zurich hath nine great Bayliwicks, to ther needfull things on them also, vling | wit, the county of Kybourg, the Bailiwicks of Groningen, Andelfingen, Grifensee, Eglifow, the free Prouince, Regenspourg, Vadeuille, and Laufen, neere to the fall of Rhein. There are two and twenty fmall Bayli-There are two and twenty small Bayli-wicks or Cassle-ships beside: in some of which, there is as large extent of ground, and as great number of men, as in some Towneibe of the greater Bayliwicks. Moreouer, fide. beside these Bayliwickes, two pleasant Townes, namely Winterdner and Stein, are under the protection of Zurichs canton. The Officers of iustice are in the fame Townes; but the inhabitants are ty-

of the same places.

Of the fecond inde of gowithout tribe

The derivation

Of the government of Berne.&c. Chap.6.

led in obedience to the Seigneury of Zu- | Schuldahis, and intimate the cause, giving rich, to obey their lawes, and to go to war for that Canton; in which respect, the two Townes have their feuerall Enfignes by themselues.

The Bayli-

The Bayliwicks belonging to the Canton of Bafile, are the Cattle of Furnfperg, feated on the top of a Mountaine about Rhinfeld : Walbourg, a small towne on the Mount Jura, which they tearme Det Bowenstein, in regard of the Rock there cut in funder ; Hombourg , Munchenstein , and Ramstein.

Schaffouse hath the most part of the country of cletgoew, all about bafile, and fendeth Bayliffes and Chastellaines into the Bourroghs and Villages on it depen-

CHAP.VI.

Of the publike estate and government, of the Townes of Berne, Lucerna, Fribourg, and Solleurre : which are not divided into Tribes and Companies, as Zurich, Bafile, and Schaffouse are.

VEe have already faid, that the fe-cond kinde of publike government, is confidered in fuch Townes, as are not distributed into certaine Tribes or Companies, out of which are equally chosen, the Lord & Seigneurs appointed for Councell and Iustice. In these towns they that are foueraigne Magistrates, or Heads of publike councell, are called Em Schuldtheffen. The old Alleman word is found in the Lawes of the Lombardes, where it is written, Schuldahis. It feemeth that the word came of debt, which the Switzers tearme Schuld, and of comman-

ding : as much to fay, that the Schuldahis

commands the debters to fatisfie them of

whom they borrowed. And in this sence

it is found written in the Lombards lawes,

under the title of debts and wages, in thefe

If a free man who is a debter hath nothing The 'words as else wherewith to make satisfaction, but his owne prinate Cattell, as Horfes and Oxen for labour or Kine to the paile: then he that challengeth or demandeth the debt, (ball go to the

him to understand, that his debter hath nothing elfe to make repairment withall, but the matters aboue rehearfed. Then the Schuldahis is to make feizure on the faid Cattell, &c.

The same word is found also in the twentieth title of King Luitprands lawes in fignificant tearmes, as followeth. If 4- Luitprandes ny man haue a cause or suite, and do appeare lawes to he before his Schuldahis to demadinitiee : if in cafe that the Schuldahis do him not instice within foure houres after following (if both the parties stand bound to answer before him) himselfe shall pay to the demander lixe Sols.

and to his indge fixe Sols.

We may perceive heereby, that the word Schuldahis fignified (among our A Judgethat graue Ancients) a ludge, that gaue fenrence vpon differences concerning debts, onely. made leucy on the debters goods, and compelled them to pay their creditors. Neuerthelesse, there was no iustice so

high, but hee stood in subjection to the county. At this day, the name is in frequent vie among the Princes of Germany so that the ludges of Townes and Villages haue no othername. Among the Switzers it is more honourable, for in the forenamed townes, the Sehuldahu is lord ouerall. The foueraigne Magistrates of The cheese Townes among the Switzers, fome haue Magi trate of thought were called Coofuls, in imitation and the mong the mong the spirit on of the Romans: others hold opinion, that Bourgmasters and Schuldahis ought to be called Prestors. For mine owne part, I call them Confuls, that are Prefi-

dents in publike councel. The French call him an Auoyer, whom we tearme Schuld-

Now as concerning the Towns wherof we speak, they are not divided by companies and trades, because there are lawes these Townes which prohibite them from fo doing. But after fuch maalthough the forme of the Commonwelths of Zurich and Berne are different: yet the one stands bound to succour the other reciprocally, to maintaine and conferue the estate, such as is established in eythers common-wealth. In the meane while the trades that are at Berne, Lucerna, Fribourg, and Solleurre, haue houses established for meeting, for knowledge of the best and cheefest workmen, but not for the election of Magistrates. They tearme those Officers by the name of Blillichafften,and not Zunften.

Ino Treasu-

and their

Two publike councels in those Towns: the great and the leffer.

ike councels, as at Zurich, Basile, & Schaffoufe; to wit the great and the leffer. The great councell of Berne, is of two hundred men, as at Zurich, although it hath more then two hundred councellers. The leffer councell of Berne, is of fixe and twenty. At Lucerna, eighteen councellers do gouerne the estate, during the space of fixe Moneths, and eighteene other fixe Mothe councell of Berne, the proceeding is in this manner.

the Captaine any good Towne.

The manner of electing of two hundred.

The Seig-neurs of the great councel Towne-house

The election of the leffer

In these Townes there are two pub-

The third Feries before Easter day, the foure Banderets of the Towne, doe chuse, and take with them sixteene Bourgeffes, the worthieft and best esteemed men of all; then these twenty, with the Auoyer, do elect the great councell, wherfore we may well call them Electors. First of all, they confider and examine exactly, the lives and manners of all them that are to be of the councell of two hundred; and if any one of them hath foyled his dignity and reputation, with any bad or villainous acte; they depose him, and in the place, as wel of the deposed, as of the ded, they chuse another, whom they do better like and allow of. In meane while, their election remaineth secret, vntill the euening of the day before Easter, & then the Officers goe, and fignifie to all them that are elected for the great and leffer councels: that they are to meete on the morrow morning in the Towne-house.

The first Feries after Easter, the Seigneurs of the councell do affemble in their houses of meeting, and afterward they conduct them to the Towne-house, that are newly fet downe, to be in number of the two hundred, and then all the Magi-frates are elected. The election ended, the Bourgesses go to feast in their houses, and after dinner, walke foorth into the fields: exercifing themselues there in leaping,running,throwing the Barre, Stone, and other pastimes. But the Auger goes againe to the towne-house, accompanied with the twenty Electors; and there they elect the councellers that are to be of the leffer councell. On the morrow, they are named to the councell of two hundred. and after that their election is approued, they goe and fitte downe in their places. Now in regard that the councell of Lucerna doth command no longer time the

fixe Moneths onely: the election of the Seigneurs both for the leffe and greater councell, is made twice yearely, if there of Lucerna be any vacant places, and that is done a- chosen twice bout mid-Iune, and mid-December. The yearely. new councellers are taken from the leffer councell, that gouerned during the fixe precedent Moneths.

The Augyers or Confuls, who are aboue the other Seigneurs, are elected by of the Augy. neths, or the rest of the yeare. To elect | the lesse and greater councels, & by common voyces. The authority of the Auger fuls. at Lucerna, lafteth but a yeare, and a years at Berne: but yet in fuch manner that the voyces are yearely taken for him, and hee againe elected. Next to the Ausyers of Berne, the principall men in the commonwealth, are the foure Banderets, chosen of the chusing of the foure companies of trades-men onely, or men of handy-crafts, to wit, of four co Carpenters, Curryers, or Leather-dref- panies. fers (who are distributed in three parts) Bakers, and Butchers.

The Towne of Berne is divided into foure parts, which are committed (each The diatifo one of them) to these foure Banderets : of Berne to who view and ouer-fee the Armes of all the foure Bi the Bourgesses, and prouide for the affairs of warre. They continue in their charge the space of soure yeares: but every yeare on the same day as the Anoyer is elected, they refigne their estates, and deliver into the hands of the cheefe Viher of the Seigneury, their Enfignes, and all the other markes of their dignity, which are laide on a Table before the Auoyer and the councell: and then the great and left rets contin ler councell gives their voyces, concer-ing in their ning the Banderets. If one of them have office. continued in his charge fully four years, or is preuented by death, another is planted in his place: but yet it is thus conditionallydone, that if the dead did not finish his foure yeares, his fucceffour must accomplish them in the nature of a substitute, and afterward, execute the fame

charge foure other yeares. In all the Townes of the Switzers, the dignity of Pursie-bearers or Treasu-rers is great. Some whiles, the time of reason Iter their charge is not limitted at all; but furers, they continue in that estate, so long as pleafeth the councell, and themselues alfo. There are two of them at Berne, the one receiueth the reuennues of the Towne, and of the Allemaigne country:

cause hee receineth the reuennues which the Seigneury deriueth from the coun-

Concerning the election of other pub-

oftonncellers uBerne for

The ordinary

the other is for the Romane country, betries of Vant, and of Sauoye. Those men which we have so lately named Auoyers, Banderets, and Treasurers, with one counceller of the two hundred, are called at Berne Die heimlichen Rath, which is as much to fay, as the fecret or priny councell. For to them (before all other) matters of most secrecy, of consequence, and which concerne the whole Common-wealth, are reported and tru-

After that the abouenamed Magiffrares have beene elected, and confirmed by the leffe and greater councels; aduice is yled, concerning other publike Offices, which is done in some of those Townes the very same day, and on the morrow in others.

As for those estates that have not any dignity, as Serieants, Executers of iuftice, Messengers, Watches, and other such like charges: ordinarily, the leffer councell bestowes them of fuch, as they know meetest for them.

themselves, as concerning election of their councellers, that they will not receine any person into the lesser councell, if he be not borne within the Towne. In elder times, if the fonnes of councellers were borne out of the Towne, they could not attaine to the fathers dignity. Now adayes, when some councellers are abfent, about occasions of the weale-publike, and for the gouerning of fome Bayliwicke: if they happen to haue any children, they are reputed as borne in the Towne. For the great councell, they may bee elected that are borne out of Berne: prouided that they be Bourgeffes, haue houses in the Towne, and are issued of the Switzers country, or of the confederates of the Cantons. For no man is received into the councell of the two hundred, if he be borne out of Switzerland: and the same is in practise at Zurich, as we have already declared. In like manner, baftards, and people of infamous note, are quite excluded from coucell.

There are three Courts or Benches manner of lu- of inflice at Berne, all the Indges whereof, are elected by the Banderets & Trea-

furers, and are confirmed by the leffer councell.

The first Court of instice is called, Das Mercricht. The Anoyer prolis deth there, but the cheefe Viher, whom The first they call Der grofs meibell, doth (al- Court of lumost) daily keepe the place, and hath 12. Affiftants, to wit, the last man elected of are therein the foure Banderers, one of the Seigneurs determined. of the leffer conneell, and tenne of the great with one Secretary, and two Officers. They take knowledge of debts, iniuries &outrages of flender confequence, as if one man give another a box on the eare, or gines fome words to his difgrace. A man may appeale from their fentence, to the leffer councell, and from them, to the fixty men, which is a councell composed of Seigneurs of the lesser councel, and of fixe and thirty councellers of the great councell. From the fixty, appeale may bee made vnto the generall. The ludges doe affemble euery day to conclude causes, onely Tuesday excepted, which is the Market day.

The fecond Court of inflice, judgeth the appellations of the country of Sauoy: Court is cal-The Bernians hold this properly to and therefore it is commonly called, the led the Court Court for strange Appellations; Das of appellations, or a belteh Appellatz gricht. The Purffe- peales. bearer or Treasurer of the country, fitteth in judgement there, & hath ten affiftants, to wit two Seigneurs of the leffer councell, and eight of the great, with one Secretarie and an Officer. They end all the appeales for the country of Sausye, and giue audience to parties at all times, and as ofte as they defire it. Notwithstanding, their ordinary vse is to meete after the The ordinary day of S. Martin in Nouember, vntill the ine Court Moneth of December. All they of Sanoye come thether to the appellations, they onely of Laufanna excepted : but at enery two yeares, the Treasurer commeth to Laufanna with fome affiftants, and there decideth the causes of appeale.

The third Court or jurisdiction, takes knowledge of marrimoniall causes. It is The third the Confiftory, where there are eight Countitie Iudges; two of the leffer councell, who for manageprefide or give fentence there (turne by matters. turne) from two Moneths to two Moneths: two Ministers of the Church; foure of the great councell, and they have a Secretary or Clearke, and an Officer, They affemble three times in the weeke,

Ec2

namely.

The limitation of their authority.

Twe Courts of inflice at Lucerna, and what caules are cessiured in them.

likewise about the end of September.

Criminall causes concerning life and death.

How they proceed in ca-fes of death.

In the Bayliwicks of Berr

Of the Bayliwicks belonging to them of Berne.

namely, on Monday, VV eniday, and Friday, then they confider not onely on matrimoniall causes, but also censure such as wire scandales, and put in practise the discipline of the Church. Moreouer, these men and the Judges of the first court of iustice, doe hold in estate but halfe the veare, and are changed about Easter, and

They of Lucerna haue two courts of instice, the one they call Das mouchen= gricht, because the ludges do meete euery weeke, and decide al fuites proceeding of debts and contracts. The other is called Das nuce gricht, the inflice of nine: for nine Iudges take knowledge of iniuries and outrages, and accordingly inflict punishment. There is not any Consistory at Lucerna, neither at Fribourg, or Solleurre: because they are Catholiques, and fubicated to the jurisdiction of Bishops, by whose Officials the causes concerning matrimony are debated.

As for criminall matters capitall, there are not any particular Indges thereto appointed, neyther at Berne, nor Lucerna. But when question is made concerning any ones life, the great and imaller councels take knowledge thereof, and judge it. The Auoyers fit in cheefest authority, and censure on the matters. After sentence is refolued on at Berne, the Auoyer goes and fits in a feate of inflice, appointed in some eminent part of the Towne, enuironed with Officers of the Seigneury. Then the Clearke or Secretary readeth out aloud the confession of the offender, & the sentence giuen against him. Afterward the Auoyer enjoyneth the hangman to execute the fentence, and commandeth the condemned person to bee deliuered to him. At Lucerna, the councell do iudge in criminall causes, of all the Bayliwicks, and all the Malefactors are punished within the Towne. But in all the Bayliwicks of Berne, there is instice apart by it selfe, which they call Landtquicht, and thether the Judges of all the Bayliwicks are called, and give their advice in presence of the Bayliwicks, who prefideth: and yet in fuch fort, as the councell of Berne may approue, or change the sentence, if they thinke good.

The Bernians have many Bayliwicks, & are the most powerfull Seigneurs of the Leagues. In some they speak the Alleman or Germane tongue; in other the Romana or Sauoyan. Among the Alleman Bayliwicks, there are foure depending on the Towne, and are euen as Subburbs thereto: whereof the foure Banderets are Bayliffes, and if they were to go to war, those Bayliwicks march under the Enfignes of the foure Banderets. Moreouer, there are feuen and twenty other befide, to wir, the vale of Hafell, which hath an Amman, out of the Vale of the body of the inhabitants, but hee is of Hafell elected by the councell of Berne, & there rendreth an account of his charge. Vnderlée is a Towne so named, because it is at the end of a Lake : thether is an Auoyer The Auoyer fent, but he is of the Towne of Berne. The of Vadence vale of Simma, both high and low, do call their Bayliffes Schachtlandt, that is to fay, Castilians. Frutingen, Sane and Aelen, do name their Bayliffe, Gouernour. Laupen and Thun are in the same condition as V nder lee.

Next to these, are Signow, Trachfel- The Baylife wald, and the Rivers of the vale of Emme. of the Vale of Brandis, that receives her Bayliffe from the Lord of the place: but he is numbred among the Bourgesses of Berne. Sumsfwald, where the Masters of the "Tento- "The compa nicke Order estab ished a Bayliffe. Burg- nyof the dorff and Pyrnestic are governed all alike, change as Vnder (ee. Landhoutt, Arberg, Nidow, Erlach Bippin Wange , Arwange Arbourg, Biberstain, Schenkenberg, and Lentabourg. Moreouer, there are three free Townes in the country of Ergow, vnder the Seigneury of Berne, to wit, Zofinge, Arow, and Brug. There are eight Roman Bayliwicks, Eight W at as namely, Auanches, Modon, Tuerdun, Bayliwicks, Laufanna, Morges, Nyon, Orbe, Aille and Veuay. Befide, they of Berne and of Fribourg haue foure Bayliwickes in common; as Mort, Schuartzenbourg, Granson, & Cha-wicks in com lanfe, whether they fend a Bayliffe succes- mon. finely at enery 5. yeares end : fo that if the Bayliffe be of Berne, his causes of appeale goe to Fribourg, where the reasons of the Bayliffe are examined. There are Prouosts beside, for the government of Abbeyes. The Berninans had nine in the Allemane country, fixe wherof held jurifdicion, and three in the Romane country.

They of Lucerna have onely two out of the Towne, as at Wiken, and at Sempach: but hee of Sempach hath no other long to Laauthority in the place, but only the fuper- cerna. intendency of the Lake, and of the Fish.

Of the government of Berne,&c. Chap.8.

de, and of o-

ther places

Lex Talionis

sasyet in

fome vie at

Corners of

pets at Lu-

Monies coy-

thele towner

gouerned by some of the Seigneurs of the councell. Those Bayliwickes are Willifon, the Vale of Entlibuch, Rotenbourg, Habsbourg, Berone, and the neighbouring countrie, which they call, Che-The primledg lampt: Merifuande, that hath this priviledge, to chuse for Bayliffe, one of the Seigneurs of councell in Lucerna, euen whom they lift, except the Auoyer: Weggif, Ebicon, Horbe and Krientz. Moreouer, the two Townes of Surfey and Sempach, are in the protection of the Lucermans: Neuerthelesse, they have their councell apart by themselues, who judge in causes both civill and criminall. But the Auoyer of Surfey, gineth his oath to them of Lucerna. He of Sempach is ele-Eted by the councell at Lucerna: but he is in number among the cittizens of Sem-

> The law of likeneffe or equality, which the Latines tearmed Lex Talionis, is as vet vsed (in some fort) at Lucerna. For if any man kil a citizen of the place, althogh he did it voon just occasion, having beene prouoked thereto by the other, and in defence of his owne body: yet if hee betaken they fmite off his head; or if he flye, he is banished for euer. But if he make fatisfaction to the children or kindred of the dead, and cause them to give over all pursuite: hee may obtaine leaue of the councell to come againe into the rowne.

Among all the Switzers, there is not any but them of Lucerna, that make vie of Braffe vied in Braffe Cornets instead of Trumpets. The Read of trum crooked Corners, which they cal barienhoener, gives a frightfull found. The Romanes also made vie of Cornets in warre: and thereupon, they that founded or winded those Cornets, were called Comi= tines. The men of Lucerna fay, that Charlemaigne gaue those Cornets to the; because they carried themselues valiantly in a warre which he had against the Sarrazins, and that Rowland, a Lord very Rowland who highly beloued of Charlemaigne in those call Orlando times, ferued himfelfe with those kindes of Cornets long before.

These forenamed Townes do covne monies, but Berne, Fribourg, and Solleurre, haue one particular kind of coyne: wherof two and forty Sols, and two thirds of a Sol, makes a Florin of Rheine. Moreo. uer, they stampe another more great fort

As for their other Bayliwicks, they are of money, which the Switzers call Bin Wortheigh-Dickenpfeming, and the French a Te- teene pence fton. Tiefe Testones are minted at solleurre fterling. for the most part; and yet notwithstanding are counted of leffe value, by a tenth part, then them of France. They of Berne coyned first certaine money, which the Switzers termed Baches: in regard of the figure of a Beare, which was stamped on Mony with a the one fide for they called a Beare 113 ac- Beare fram ren and Bactsen. Afterward, the other Ped onit. Citties and Townes of Switzerland and of Suaba, coyned the same money: fixteene peeces whereof, valued a Florin of

gold. The mony of Lucerna commeth The valuatinot necre to the value and price of that of on of the coines.

Bafile, which is more hard and ftrong: for the Sol of Lucerna valueth but the moity of that of Bafile, and fifty Sols of Lucerna, will make one Florin.

Now we come to speake of Fribourg, The estate & which is diuided into foure parts, like vncondition of
to Berne: the first is called the Borrough,
howit is diaithe second, the Island, or the Medow; the dedinto source third, the new Towne; and the fourth, the parts. Hospitall. The councellers of the common-wealth are chosen out of these quarters. As in the other Townes, so in this there are two publike councels; to wit, The two couthe great councell, confisting of 2. hundred, and the leffer of foure and twenty. The election is made on the Sunday before S. Iohn Baptist day. The leffer counfore S. John Baptift day. The refer countries of the Towne the leffer countries of the Towne

deciding the causes of appeales : except cell and of of the Bayliwicks of Sauore, conquered in the greater. warre. As for the matters which concerne the whole State, and are of maine importance the councell of two hundred takes knowledge of them. The Auger, who presideth both in the lesser & great councels, is elected on S. Johns day by all the of charge. people, and continueth in his charge the space of two yeares.

Next vnto the Auover, are the foure Banderets, who are Captaines of seuerall anderets of the citty or towne, & although next to the they are not of the ordinary number of Ausyer. Seigneurs of the leffer councell . yet notwithstanding, they assist there in name of all the people, and deliuer their advice, except in appellations. If fome thing be propounded which feemeth to belong to the councell of two hundred; they may ther make their report of it. Furthermore they remaine in authority, three yeares

Ecz

The office of

the Treasu-

rer.

Of the gouernment of Berne,&c. 3. Booke

or moderate.

followeth the office of the Treasurer, who manageth the monies, and all the revenues of the Towne : he hath (as his coadiuter) the Secretary or Clearke of the Towne, or his Committees, who regifter downe all those summes, which the Treasurer receineth, or imployeth. His charge also is, to have an eye on all the

Foure principall Secreta ries in Fribourg.

The Saultier or chiefe Vih

The Courts of law and iuflice at Fri-

The first Court or afembly.

The other Court of iu ftice.

Twelue Iudges for the conquered

and are chosen by the great & lesse councels, as many other Officers are. Then publike buildings. Twice euery yeare he renders an account to the leffer councell, and remaineth in his charge, the space of three yeares. In Fribourg there are foure principall

Secretaries: the first is called Secretary of the Towne; the second, Secretary of the councell; the third, Secretary of the country; and the fourth, Secretary of law or inflice. In like manner, the estate of Saultier, or cheefe Viher, is honoureble both in Berne and Fribourg, where it is named Brolsweihels. He is very often neere to the Auoyer, and when the Seigneurs are fet in councel, he is at the door. takes care of prisoners. His charge continueth three yeares.

As concerning Law and Instice at Fribourg, they are established in manner following. First, the Court of Iustice belonging to the Towne, called, Dag Stattgricht, is a particular affembly of certaine ludges, to know and decide differences among the Bourgesles. And if there be any criminall processe or suite; their charge is to interrogate the prisonners, to present & deliuer the case in queftion, and then to relate all to the leffer councell. The other affembly of Iudges, is tearmed Das Landtgricht, iudging the causes of dwellers in the country. In each of these jurisdictions, there are two Seigneurs of the leffer councell, and two of the great, and they meet three times enery week. Appeale may be made from their fentence, to the Jeffer councel. Moreouer, there are twelue Iudges, chofen out of the great and leffer councels. for the appellations of the Bayliwickes, conquered in the last warre against the Duke of Sauoye. They meete together once in euery Moneth, and there is no appealing from their fentence.

At Fribourg there are two kindes of Bayliwicks as in the other Townes : the

one of Bayliwicks neighbouring to the Two kindes
Towne, which are gouerned by certaine
Seigneurs of the councell, who dwell in
belonging to
the the Towne, and come dayly to councell, Fribourg. and of fuch Bayliwicks there are fine. The other is, when the Bayliffes are fent to dwell on diffinct places with ample authority: and they of Fribourg have fourteene fuch Bayliwicks, and foure in common with the Bernians. The Bayliffes are mon with the elected by the great and leffer councels, of Berne, the morrow after S. John Baptists day, and hold in office the space of five yeares:but euery yeare they render an account of their charge, before the leffer councell. They enstruct also, and deale in criminal Dealing in fuites: but them they fend to the leffer criminalloc councell with their fentence, which the cafions, councell hath power to approue, change,

flunger, and in the vulgar, Lefthunger, bearing of debt at the coft a charge of the coft and the coft a charge of the coft a charge of the coft a charge of the coft and the coft a charge of the charge of t thefe words is understood a remise or ta- of the debut riance for certaine time, and the charges counteth voyces, calleth the parties, and to be on his owne head; when the debter doth not pay his debt, at or on the day of affignement, as in this manner. When the debter maketh not fatisfaction, on the day appointed for repayment, the creditor fendeth one two three or more feruants (on horfe-backe) to an Inne or Hoftery, whose expences there the debter is confirained to pay (tarry they there neuer fo long) vntill hee hath made fatisfa- Alaw made ction to the creditor. Some fay, that the of zeringen, Duke of Zeringen established this Law. for payment Such as infringe or breake it, are punished of debts. by imprisonment, banishment, or by the purffe. And there is a certaine Iudge, who they call Bourgmaster, that holdeth a ftrich hand in this cafe. Moreoner if action or fuite is moued, and a man demand the Exoftimo three times, if it is not grated to the demander, it is present banishment. Such as breake the peace, wherein they are enjoyned to line one with a- Banishment nother, are banished likewise: and they of peace. that (without inft cause) will meddle or take part on eyther fide, when a cause is in pleading.

Finally, the Fribourgers make feafting Dayes of fo. yearely, with folemne procession of all e-states through the Towne, on the second obtained. day of March, and on the eight and twentieth day of lune; which are dayes of bat-

Foure Bayli.

The author diffinguished the Cantons

according to

their qualities

of governmen & journation.

Amman is beld as a

Major or

That which at Fribourg is called Tto= A flay or for

The Cantons divided into certaine por

0115.

Chap. 7.8. Of those cantons that dvvell in villages. 319

Switzers, against the Duke of Bourgongne, at Granfon, and at Moral.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Commonwealth of those Cantons that have neither Citties nor Towns, but dwell onely in Villages.

I Itherto we have discoursed on two

formes of Common-wealths, con-

cerned in the Cantons of Switzerland, that have Citties and Townes. There remaineth now a third, which is of those Cantons that have no Townes, but make their abode in Villages, and for that cause are called Die Laender. There are fixe of them, to wit, Vri, Suits, Vnderuald, Zug,

towne, & hath her Officers in the towne, but the foueraignty of the Canton appertaineth to them that dwell in the lands of the Canton with them of the towne, and are Lords as well the one as other. In all these Cantons, the cheese of the publike councell, is tearmed Annnan, which fignifieth a man in office and authority. and that name is attributed to all publike Officers. So that Abbots, and other Ec-

Glaris, and Appenzell. Zug indeede is a

clefiasticall persons, do call their Iudges, Receivers, and other fuch like Officers. Anmans. As the Townes are divided or parted, by Companies and Colledges of Artezans, or Tradefinen; fo the Cantons are

distributed into certaine parts and porti-

CHAP.VIII.

Of all the fixe Cantons forenamed, which in this ensuing Chapter we will handle together, according to their feuerall rights & iurifdutions.

THE whole country of Vri is divided into ten parts, which by them are called Gnotsaminen, as if a man would fay, Participations. It may be in

tailes giuen, and victories wonneby the | this respect, because they are all partakers in pasturages, goods, honours, and publike charges, and that from those ten parts onely, they are fummoned and called, to be prefent at those affemblies which are yearely made.

The Country of Suits is divided into The division fixe parts, which they call quarters. Because the country (heeretofore) was distributed into foure portions but the people coming to encreate greatly, they made a new partage into fixe portions, which neuertheleffe do reteine the ancient name.

As for the Country of Vnderuald, vnderuald di there is a Forest that divideth it in the uided in the middeft: and therfore the division is thus midft. made to them that dwell about and beneathethe Forest. The whole Country taketh name of that part which is beneath the Forest: for Indernalden is as much Ofthe name. to fay, as beneathe or under the wood. In eldertimes, Stants, a principall Village cipall village beneathe the Forest, and neere to the Lake, was the prime and cheefe place of the country, and the people were called,

inhabitants of the Valley of Stants. But now adayes, because the word Vnderuald is taken for the whole country, the Switzers have added these words, aboue and beneathe the wood, Undernalden ob und nidt bem kernwald. Now as concerning them of Zug, we The partition

haue faid already, that they are divided in of Zug, the two parts; the one is the Towne it felfe, Towne & the Villages. the other the Villages round about comprehended under three affemblies, to wit, the Mountaine, the Vale Egeria, and Bara, a Parish very neere to the Towne.

Glaris is divided into fifteene parts, which they tearme & agman. The word The dinifion fignifieth the work of a day, and as much distance or spaciousnesse of ground, as a man can plow in a day. It may be, that these parts were called Iournals, or daylabours: because enery one prepareth & ordereth the way in his quarter, and each one knoweth where he is to labour.

The country of Appenzell is parted in- The orders or to twelve orders or portions, which they proportions call Raden, whereof those fixe conioy- Appenzell. ned to the Village of Appeneell, they name them the orders within, and anciently were subjects to the Abbot of S. Gall. The other fixe are called the orders without: to wit; out of the Abbots

Seigneury,

320 Of those cantons that dwell in villages. 3. Booke

Election of the councell Seigneury; heeretofore partly free, and partly in the jurisdiction of Gentlemen. Out of these parts (by equal number) are chosen certaine men, for the councell of the Canton: in many of them there are threefcore councellers, befide fuch as (hauing beene in office) continue perpetuall councellers. At Zug there are fine and forty councellers, nine of each affembly, for the Towne is counted for two.

The general Appenzell.

Publication

of a councel

on a day ap-

None but

of importance are to be treated on, and it appeareth needfull to affemble the councell of all the people: then they will double or treble the councell in this manner. Each of the councellers takes a man or two with him, if they be to hold a coucell of three times as many perfons, as ordinarily they vie to do: and one of the councellers, on Sunday, in the Church after Seruice is done, hath a custome to fignifie that on such a day as he nameth, all the councellers are to meete in the Towne-house of the Canton, and each man is to bring with him fuch a one, as he holdeth to bee an honest and wise man, who shall also bee there bound to obedience, under the oath whereby all are obliged to the common-wealth. Belide, no man is elected to be a counceller, neither can he affift in the generall councell, if he be councelers be not borne in the country, Ein Land= man : And it is much more easie to obtaine the degree of Bourgeshippe, in the Townes of the Switzers, then in these Villages. VV hich proceedeth not of any inhumanity, for there are great store of strangers among them, towards whom

they shew themselves very kinde and hu-

mane. But rather by a certaine order of

aduifed judgement, and according to the

custome of their predecessors: being ne-

uer willing to mingle new commers a-

mong olde inhabitants of the country,

both to preuent charges, and to preferue

the common-wealth (the more eafily) in

age of fourteene, or fixteene, or vpwards,

do meete eyther at the principall Village

of the Canton, or elfe at some other place

The foueraignty in these fixe Can-

one and the fame estate and condition.

The Switzers louing and kinde to firágers living a

The councel The council general of all tons, belongeth to the affembly of all the me people, & people. All they of the country, from the their appoin-ted places of meeting.

The councell generall of Appenzell, confifteth of an hundred forty foure, to being S. Iohn Baptists day. They of Vnderwit twelve of each order. And if matters uald about the wood, meete the first day

is in his office of authority, hee goeth to remaine in the principall Village, where the publike councell keepeth most.

At Zug there are three affembles of them without the Towne. Next, the Of the affen Towne hath the power of two affemblies and the animans are chosen by order of without and each affembly. They that are elected of within. the affemblies without, doe dwell in the Towne,during the two yeares that they are animans. In the fame affembly wher the amman is elected, his Lieutenant al- The election fo is chofen, whom they tearme statt= of the Lieux halter: and fo are the Treasurers or nant. Purfic-bearers, called by them Setelmeifters. Next, the Secretaries and Bayliffes which gouerne the Bayliwickes of Secretaries & the Canton: or those which the Canton Bayliffer holds apart with other Cantons. Moreouer Edicts are there read & confirmed. or abrogated yearely, by the voyces of all the people: so likewise sports, and playing at cardes, dice, dancing, excessive drinking, fore-stalling Markets of victuals, and

fuch like things. When the councell is thus held yeare in the midst of the country. As they of by yeare, councellers are elected and con-

Vri meete at Betzelinge, distant halfe a dayes iourney from Altorff, the cheefest Village of that Canton. The people of Glaris meete at Suanda. The ordinary and annuall affemblies of these Cantons, is made enery yeare about the beginning these anomy the ano of May. They of Suits, of Underwald

vnder the wood, of Glaris and of Appenzell, do meete the last Sunday of Aprill. They of Vri and of Zug, the first Sunday of May. In elder times, they of Zug held their generall councel the 24.day of June,

of May.

In these assemblies, first of all he is elected whom they call the Amman, in which office hee continueth the space of two yeares. Heeretofore there was no terme of time affigued, but (oftentimes) is the full of the fame Amman gouerned for many ficer chosen yeares together. He is permitted to be inthe affen chosen among all the people, as a man that (for his vertue and wisedome) shall be thought most worthy of that dignity and charge, without regard at all, in what place or Village of the Canton hee dwelleth. Notwithstanding, in certaine Cantons, as at Appenzell, while the Amman

Chap. 8. Of those Cantons that dyvell in Villages. 321 8

The electing and confirming of coun-

An extraordinary coun-cell holden.

Councell

The councel of feuen at

The fift of

The fecond of feuen.

The order at

Two Courts of law & iu-flice at Vnderuald.

affembly, but each of them ordered by the subjects of the Canton, and by the companies among whom they dwell. Finally, if at some other times of the yeare, there happen affaires that concerne the estate of the common-wealth, an extraordinary councell is held. As if need require, to fend Ambassadors to the dayes at Bada, or to some other Kings and Princes; or if there be question of making alliances, be they eyther for peace or warre, Befide the leffer councell and the ge-

nerall, composed of all the people; some of the cantonshaue a councell more firich and private, and courses of inflice for difcision of suites. In the Canton of Suits, which is divided in fixe parts, the principall counceller of each part is taken: and thefe fixe, with the Amman, make the councell of feuen, called fecret. Thefe feuen do manage and order all the reuennues of the country, and furnish all that is laid out for publike expences. Moreouer, there are two Courts of iustice, the one being called the order of nine, in regard of the number of Judges, and there the Amman fits as President. In this Court are decided the causes of greatest impor-

terrible injuries, hard to be endured. The Court of seuen, (so is the other order of inflice called) where the Lieutenant to the Amman fits as Prefident : and those seuen are Judges in causes concerning contracts, debts, and fuch like. They of Vri have (almost) the same government : for there the Court of feuen, with the Lieutenant to the Amman, doccenfure and judge of debts, which exceede not the fum of threescore pounds. There is another iudiciall Court of fifteene, where the Amman fits as Prefident, and concludeth causes civill of greatest consequence.

tance: as of inheritances, outrages, and

At V nderuald also there are 2. Courts of inflice, the one at Stants under the wood, and the other at Sarna about the wood, and each of them hath an Amman. It is faide, that the country was parted in the yeare one thousand, one hundred and fifty; when fome debate fell among them for paying of a certaine tribute. And are as Guardians of the lawes, and tearwhereas before that time, they had but med cheefest councellers: their charge is one councell, and one Standard, bearing perpetuall, and they are called in this can-

firmed : but yet this is not done by enery | a double key for the whole country ; this partition caused each of the sides to take one key onely, and they that were about the wood, retained full their olde Staindard, white and redde, because they were the greater part of the Canton. Then they under or beneathe the wood, receiued from Popes another Enfigne, which The Popes had two keyes in it: for in regard that nother fin-Stants (long before) had beene the prin- figne. cipall Village of the Canton, they therefore kept still the Ensigne, which in those times they had at Stants.

The Towne of Zug, befide the councell generall of the whole country, hath a councell apart, order of inflice, Magistrates, a Lieutenant to the Amman, Treafurer, Voyer, &c. who judge the causes of the Bourgesses, and manage all the publike affaires.

At Glaris there are two Courts of iuflice, one of nine, the other of flue Iudges, which the councell general of the Canton do elect every yeare. They deoide their feuerall law-fuites in the Moneths of May, and of December onely. The nine take knowledge of differences concerning inheritances, and dangerous injuries. The fine do censure suites of debts and payments, after that the nine (who keepe Court the space of fixe dayes) have ended.

They of Appenzell haue two courts The Courts of inflice also, the first is kept in a publike of inflice at place of the streete; in regard whereof, Appenzell. they call it Das gaffen gricht. Therein are foure and twenty ludges, two of each order of the canton, and their President is the Viher of the canton, Der Land Court. tweibell, and they meete together weekly euery Thursday: they condemne men in fines, and chastise such as wrong one another. The other court is called Das The feward aelchwozen aricht inflice of oath : because twelue ludges sitte there, and take knowledge of differences, which are ended by giving oath to one of the parties. Moreouer, from each order of the canton, a counceller is chosen, & many from the orders that are greater. These men make observation of such as breake pub. der of counlike ordinances, and deliberate on mat-

ters which are to bee propounded to the

councell generall. In which respect, they

Two Courts

authorities.

Suits, Vri, Vnderuald, Zug, Glaris, and appenzel, are Catholicke, and under the Diocesse of Constance. And if there hap pen any difference concerning mariages, they goe to the Officialtie of the fayde place, but they of the other opinion goe to Zurich.

Punishment for adultery.

The order &

Cantons.

Bellizora

ing to it.

As for adulteries, they are chastised in each Canton : fome, by confiscation of goods; others (fometime by the fine of ten Dallers. Thaue heard likewise, that (divers times) the councell general of the whole Canton, doeth decide some differences concerning marriages.

Iustice in causes criminall, is admini-

minall causes. stred (almost in all the Cantons) by the publike councell, and oftentimes doubled or multiplied by the ordinary councellers; the anunan fitting Prefident, or his Lieutenant. At Zug, in criminal matters, other assistants are joyned with the councell or Iudges, chosen out of each diuision or assembly of the Canton. Suites of Law are discust in an open publique place, where all may heare that which is faid, and know the merite of the fentence

given by the Iudges.

Now to speake of the Baylywickes or Gouernements appertaining vnto these disposition of the Bayly-wicks in these Cantons, they are carried and disposed in manner following. They of Fri fend a Bayliffe into the valley of Liuiner beyond the Mountaines: who hath one of the same valley for his Lieutenant and Assistants also, with whom he judgeth causes both civill and criminall, and continueth in his charge the space of three yeeres. Beyond the fame Mountaines, they fend Bayliffes also to Bellizona, and to two other places. They of Bellizona have three hath 3.Bayly-wicks belong-Bayliwickes, to wit, Bellizona, the Vale Brune, and Riviera, where the three Cantons do command in such manner, that each of them hath alwaies a Bayliwicke. Moreouer, the inhabitants of Mount S. Godardo, are subjectes to the Canton of Vri; neuertheleffe, they have their Councell and their Amman, who are confirmed by them of Vri, & when there are criminal fuites, two of the councell of Vri do meet there. They have their Standard likewise: but when they of Pri do display that belonging to the Canton, the other hold vp

They of Suites have fometimes hadde

foure Bayliwickes, to wit, the Marche, the Hermitage, Cusnach, and certaine small tofore below. Villages or great Farmes, neer to the lake of Zurich: but the two former haue obtained municipall right, and doe cleck a councell and triall of fuites in their owne bodye. Notwithstanding, enery yeare, when a councell generall is held at Suits, ordinarily they fend their Ambaffadors thether, and require, that they may have leaue to elect their Magistrates, which is granted them, as in verie great fauour, with this exception, that they are to bee modest and obedient, for otherwise it remaineth in the peoples power of Suits, to fend a Gouernour thether, whenfocuer they thinke meet.

Culnach hath the same condition, but What privibecause, within some few yeares certaine ledges below fraungers (customers for carriage of nach, but lost falt and other thinges that way) made through their complaint, that they of Cusach owne neglet did them wrong, and vsed them harshlie vpon no occasion: the men of Suits knowing the accufation to bee true, fent a Bayliffe thether againe, and appointed new ordinations for Cusnach. Besides, What Bayly they haue two Bayliwickes in common wickes they with them of Glaris, to wit, V znac, which enioy in con is a Towne, and Gastall. Thether they ther. fend Bayliffes, turne by turne, and alwaies there is one of Suits in one of the Bailywickes, and one of Glaris in the o-

In like m: nner, they have three other Bayliwickes in common, beyonde the Whattime Mountaines, in the valley of Liuiner, with the Cantons of Vri, Suits, and Vnderuald. authority of The charge and office of all their Bay- gouerning. liffes lasteth two yeeres, except in the Bayliwickes beyonde the Mountaines, where they holde for the space of three yeares; and they goe not to the other but at certaine times, and to decide law con-

trouerfies.

They of Toggenbourg are not Subjects | The ender but Bourgesses of Suits and Glaris, and and materal go to warre for them successively. They of Zng fend Bayliffes to Cham, a very lit- their feutral tle Towne neere vnto their lake . To places of lu-Saint Andrew, sometimes a Towne. To Huneberg, Walcheuill, Stein-house. To Saint Wolfgang, and to other Villages. They bought this Countie in the yeare 1517. Next, with them of Suites, they fend (turne by turne) Bayliffes to

For voices gisen at the ele dion of pub-

office Pro

Chap. 8. Of those cantons that dvvell in villages.

are their Bourgesses, as we have sayde already; and go to warre for them, and for the Canton of Suits. Finally, the five first Cantons are Lordes with the other Cantons of the Bayliwicks gouerned by them in common: except the men of Appenzel, who fend a Bayliffe onely to as are vied by others. Khinthal, with the feuen first Cantons, & in the faine manner.

Now follow some particular customs

of these fixe Cantons, and which are not

common to all the Switzers. Whofoe-

uer shall haue committed a murther, al-

though it was done in the defence of his

owne body, hee is conftrained to forfake

the Canton, and it is not lawfull for the

lesser councell to repeale him; but hee

They doe not permit, that Landes and

Of customes

In case of

may demaund and obtaine leave of the councell generall to returne againe. foundations of inheritances should bee Against m pawned or ingaged vnto any one that is

not of the Canton; for they holde them to be no longer Lords of their countrey, if once they will becom bound for debts and morgage in such manner their inheritances to straungers. Likewise in the Canton of Vri, it is not lawfull for strangers, that have bene receyued there as inhabitants, to buy any inheritances, but a

house and a small garden for Pot-herbes

If any man being drunke, doe commit AgainA drun kennesse fome feandalous action, hee is punified by imprisonment, and beside, hee is forbidden to drinke wine for the space of a certaine time, and votill the Councell

generall haue pardoned him. In publike affemblies, and in the diffribution of honourable charges and Offices : hee that is put in election, is prefent, and his parents, brethren, and fons may giue him their voyces. They giue their voyces by lifting vp their hands on high, and some are set in an eminent place to count them. If they stand in doubt, and cannot fo decide it, then they have another courfe. There are two men, who hold two Halberds touching together at the points; they that give their voyces, do passe vider them, and two other men count them as they passe.

Finally, they vie Feafts and Processions on fuch dayes as their Ancestors obtained any remarkable victory. As they

Vznac and Gastal. They of Toggenbourg | of Glaris do yearly celebrate the memoriall of the victory which they wonne against the Austrians, in the yeare 1387. and in the month of Aprill, I wil declare Reade in the at large, the ceremonies observed by them in this festivall; to the end, the better judgment may be made of fuch feafts

> The order of the folemne Feast and Procession, performed by the men of Glaris in honor of their victory against the Austrians.

> IN the moneth of Aprill, eueric yeare,

On the Sunday before, it is a lowde and

openly published in the church in behalf

of the Seigneury, that on Thursday follo-

wing, the most honourable persons of e-

ueric Family, especially the men, are to

meete and go in folemne Procession to

Mulhoufere, by those waies, places, and

other way. Moreouer, that all keepe si-

lence while the Sermon is done, and to

carrie themselues (that day) so modestly

in their refection, that no diforder may

beenoted, because the Seigneury will

chastife them seuerely that do otherwise, and because the whole Canton of Glaris

doth folemnly feast that day. Forbidding

After they are all affembled together,

and rounded in a ring as it were the Am-

yearly fent for celebration of the Feaft:

because thirtie Souldiers of Sustes were

present in the battell for which this Feast

is kept. Likewise, he saluteth the Abbots,

Priests, & neighbors of Gastal, la Marche,

Rasperwill and Toggenbourg, giving them

on the Thursday of the first weeke (except Easter day fall on the Sunday follo- The great wing, for then it is deferred til Thursday ris. in the weeke after) the Feast is celebrated.

paffages, where their Ancestors were in great danger, euen fo far as the Fountain, Remembrace and to be warie of descending to the Village of Haures, til first they have past the il.

hearty thanks, for comming to celebrate

alfo, that no man hall mount on Horfebacke out of the Village of Glaris, ficke & aged men onely excepted, who are not (being so mounted) to goe anie further then Scheneisinge.

man, who is in the midft, makes a kinde welcome(in name of the whole Canton) vnto fuch ftrangers as are come thether. gether. First, to the Ambassador of Suits, who is

Of the feast and procession in Glaris. 3. Booke 324

this folemne Procession, and to thanke & fing praifes to almighty God, the Virgin Marie, and their Patrones, S. Fridolin, and S.Hillary.

First, one beareth a red Standard, wherein is the Image of S. Fridolin, then The order of the Proceffifollow 4 men, bearing a guilded Toomb, on in marchwhereon are many faire and holy reliques ing, as they passe along to enchased. Then come the Crosse-beathe place rers, carrying the Crosses of Glaris, Hau-res, of the Vale of Linthe, and of the churwhere the bartaile was ches neighboring to the Canton of Glatought. ris, as of Schennis, Wesen, and others. The Croffes are followed with Banners of all the Churches, and the Priests come after them, finging according to their order. The Curate of Glarus is the first, accosted by an Abbor, or elfe fome other man of the Church. Among the strangers the

> Ambassadour of Suits; then the Lieutenant to the Amman, and the other Officers in their order, each guiding or leading one of the most honourable strangers. The women (in great number) follow, to make up the end and conclusion of the Procession.

> other Priests follow. Then the councell

of Glaris, to witte, the Amman, with the

Beeing come to the place where the battailwas fought, there are eleuen stones fet down in those seueral parts of ground where they began and held on fight with the enemy: for they had partings & meetings againe at hand-blowes, eleuen seuerall times, and at each of those stones the Standards and Banners stay, and all fall vpon their knees in prayer to God. Whe they are come to the fixt stone, they cast themselves round in a ring, and then the Secretarie of the Canton readeth in a paper the cause and original of this Procesfion the fummary whereof is this. War being moued betweene Leopold, Duke of Austria, and them of Zurich, Berne, Solof the Procesleurre, Lucerna, Vri, Suits, Vnderuald, Zug, particulars by and Glaris; Leopold led his Army to Sempach, where hee was ouercome, and flaine by the Switzers, the ninth day of Iune. one thousand, three hundred, fourescore and fixe, beside sixteene Earles and Barons, and a great number of Gentlemen.

Afterward, in mid-August following, they of Zurich, Vri, Suits, and Glaris, befiedged and tooke the towne of Wefen,& the inhabitants promifed perpetuall fidelity to the Switzers. Truce was made, till

the beginning of Leut in the yeare following; which being ended, and war beginning againe, they of Glaris fent a Garrison to Weson, wher the Souldiers thinking themselues to be in safety, and confiding on the oath of the townesmen, were flaine (for the most part) in a night by them of Austria, who entred in the dead of night, by intelligence which they had with certaine of the inhabitants, that machinated this villany against the garrison, and opened the gates to their enemies.

Furthermore, that the very same yeare, and the ninth day of Aprill, they of Auftria brought an Army of fifteene thoufand men towards Haures, and wonne the Fortresse of the Country. But three hundred and fifty Souldiers of Glaris, & thirty which the Canton of Suits lent to affift them, affayled the enemy, and (Gods helps furthering, the Virgin Marie, and their Patrones, S. Fredolin and S. Hilarie) they became conquerors, wonne eleuen of their cheefest Ensignes, and left two thousand fine hundred enemies slaine in the field, befide them that were drowned in the Lake, and among the reft, many of Wesen were there flaine, that formerly had betraied the Garrison of Glaris. And therefore, in dutifull thankfulnes to God almighty, the glorious Virgin Mary, and S. Fridolin, and S. Hilary their Patrones, and to all the Saints and Saintetles of Paradife, & in euerlasting remembrance of so great a helpe and delinerance, this annual Procession was ordained vppon those limits, where their Ancestours had fuffered many inconveniences.

After the reading of these severall letters, a Sermon is made in the fame place; the Priests of Glaris performe their Aniuersary, and followeth the Minister of the new opinion. All their prayers being ended they go againe to the fame stones, in the same ranke and ceremony as they began vntill they come to the eleventh, which is placed neere to the Village of Haures, towards Wefen, where they affayled the enemy at the last time. Then they take their way to the Church of Haures; but they of the new opinion return home to their houses. The rest go to the church, where they fing a Maffe for the Switzers that were flaine in the battaile: and one reciteth all the names of them of Glaris, that perished there. Soone after this, a

banquet

Chap.9. The gouernment of the abbey of S. Gal. 325

ABanquet made at the

A thudres-

againft Hau

Gods juft

for breach

ces) for the Priests, and all the strangers that came in the Procession. After dinner, the Priests singing, bring backe againe to Glaris the guilded Toombe, the Banners and Croffes.

This is the manner of the annuall Procession and Feast of them of Glaris, in remembrance of fo famous and remarkable victory. The other Cantons also have their Feasts, to celebrate the victories obtained at Morgarten, Sempach, and elfewhere.

CHAP.IX.

Of the Common-wealths belonging to the Confederates. And first of all, Of the Abbey of S.Gall.

The Abbor and Abbey 5 Gall the

Abbox Hul. dnch was made a prince

What poffer

fions the Ab-

bot hold in

Turgow, and diuers o-

her parts of

The condu ding of the the Stones,

A Ftet we have spoken of the thirteene Cantons, and of their severall Common-wealths; me-thinks now (according to the fame order) wee should make mention of their Confederates, among whom, the Abbot and Abbey of S. Gall holdeth the prime place. The Abbots of S. Gall, have bin great Lords for the space of many ages possessed of great meanes, and numbred with the Princes of the Empire: but I know not well, from what Emperour they received this honour and title. Stumpfius noteth, that Conrad de Pfauerts, Annalist of Switzerland writeth, that Abbet Huldrich, of the house of Altfax, was made Prince by the Emperour Phillip, in the citty of Bafile. Now albeit these Abbots are not of such power as heeretofore; yet notwithstanding, they continue still great Lords, and have their dominion in large extendure.

In the country of Turgow they are Lords of Wile, and haue a Pallace and a Vicar in the Towne. Moreouer, in the high country of Turgow, they have a great Territory, and well peopled, who are all subject to them. The inhabitants are called Toje Bottfbulglut, the Subiects of the house of God, or of the Abbey, and are parties in certaine Regions. Their names are Rofac, Thumbech, Gold, Vndereg, Morfwill, Tablate, Gozow, Wald-

banquet is made (at the Cantons expen- kilch, Romishorn, Summery, Mule, Hotischwill, Bernattzell, Lumifwell, Berg, Wittenbach, Rodtmont, Strubenzell, Geiferwald, Helbach, Bergknecht, Luzwill, Ziberwangen. Vnd Wiger. These places are divided into Castle-wicks or President-ships, and the Abbot sendeth Prouosts thether. Moreouer, he hath his Ammans and Officers, that hold meane Courts of Iuflice in many places. Befide, he hath a higher Court of inflice, whether refort all appellations, and where causes of importance are decided. Allkindes of duties, and fuch as are rendred to Princes, in these places are confirmd vpon him.

Beside this country, the country of Toggenbourg acknowledgeth (as Lord) the Abbot of S. Gall, who fenderh a Gouer- county of nour into the country, and a ludge in cri- Toggenbourg minall causes, which admitteth no further appeale. And yet they of Toggenbourg are Bourgesses of Suits, and of Glaris, & haue their priviledges & franchifes ; by meanes whereof (among other things) they enjoy the freedome of Religion. Also in the Bayliwick of Rhinthall which belong eth to the cantons: the Abbot holdeth law courts of inflice in many Villages, & keepeth Officers there for that purpofe.

CHAP.X.

Of the Common-wealth in the Towne or Citsie of S.Gall.

S Aint Gall, Mulboufe, and Rotuille, are numbred among the Imperial townes, Imperial and therfore have (almost) the fame man- Townes. ner of gouernement, as we have already described vnto you. But because the cittizens of S.Gall, do hold fomething in particular; I will here fet downe a fummary description of their common-wealth.

In the first place then, the Towns of S. | Size Tribes Gallis divided into fixe Tribes or Com- or Compapanies, & the Society of Noblemen. The nies in S. Gail. first & principal of these Tribes, is of weauers, because of the linnen cloth there woulen, which is made very faire, and in a-bounding quantity: which afterward is fold in Germany, France, Italy, Spaine, Eohemia, and Poland, greatly enriching the inhabitants that dwell in S. Gall, and ma-

Ff

king

A lesend reaion, vpon the . beliedging &

The ceremo-

Proceifion of Glarit, being

come to the

field where

the cleuen

ed in the

ground.

ftones are fix :

The reason

and originall

fion, read in

the Secretary

nies in the

the fecond of the olde. The thirteenth Zunfftmaster, is the first of the eleuen, which are elected out of each Tribe, to

be of the great councell.

of the Zunffe masters.

Three Conthey governe

Nine Sena-

Election of

The great Councell,in what manne they are chofen, and what order they obserue.

The Zunfftmasters are elected by fecret voyce in their Tribes, and are confirmed by the leffer councell. Enery yeare, the councell and officers of iustice, are elected about mid-Iune, and mid-December. Beside the Zunfftmasters nine other Senatours do affist in the lesser councell, and are chosen as well in the company of Noblemen, as in the other companies. The three Confuls (with them) make the number of foure and twenty councellers: For there are three Confuls in S.Gall, the first is in charge; the second is called olde Confull, for having governed in the very neerest yeare before; and the third presideth in judgement for criminall causes, and in other places he is called, Prouoft of the Empire, Repchuogt. The coursell is elected the first Sunday of Aduent, not in the leffer councell, but in the generall, by fecret voyce, Mit derrun: the Sub-confull and the Zunfftmasters, going then out of office, do collect the voyces.

The great councell is composed of threefcore and fixe, to wit, twelue of each company: whereby there are ninety perfons in the great and leffer councels. After the election of the Confuls and the councell, the ordinances of the Towne are read in this affembly: whereon the Confull and the new councell do deliberate. Then they go (by two and two together) to the great Temple or Church,named S. Laurence, where all the cittizens meete, and after reading of the lawes and ordinances, the Confull sweareth first to obserue them, and afterward, receiveth of the councell and whole affembly, the fame oath. This done, the morrow after christmas day, and the day following the Zunfftmasters, and the other eleven Seigneurs of the leffer councell, do meete to-

king the Towne much renowned. It hath | gether in the Towne-house, and cleet the Sub-confull, whom they call Vnderbur- The election germaster. His charge is to take order for Confull or the watch of the Towne, and to appoint Vnderburger Tutors and Ouerfeers for Widdowes & matter. Orphanes, and also to examine their accounts.

Euery weeke, the leffer councell do When the ke ordinarily meete together twice, on Tuef- | fer councell day and Thursday ; except those dayes be do allemble Festivals, or have Fayres. Also the Thurs- together. day before Lent, which they call the mad The mad Thurfday, Den Ultifiniugen Donftag: Thurfday. because once, and on that day, the people mutined against the councell, by meanes whereof, it was ordained, that (fro thence forward) there should be no more assemblies held, as on v day. The leffer councell manageth the Townes affaires, decideth civill causes, and giveth sentence concerning inheritances and willes: but med- councell. leth with no criminall fuites nor differences about Scedules, Obligations and in-

The great councell meeteth together fine times enery yeare. First, the morrow fines of the after christmas day, when they elect and confirme the new Magistrates. Secondly, yeare. in mid-Lent, to elect and confirme the Master of the Hospitall. Thirdly, the Friday before S. Bartholmewes day, being the foure and twentieth day of August, whe they establish the Masters of Halles, and confider on the tolles and taxes at the Gates. Fourthly, and fiftly, before the Fayres which they keepe, on the morrow after Ascension day, and the day of S. Gall; and then they confult on the confernation, and course of Courts for the

The great councell also doth sometimes extraordinarily meete when they rymeetings are to discourse on matters, whereof the of the great councell ought to have knowledge, as Councell. concerning fentences in criminall fuites. Then the Propost of the Empire sitteth President and demandeth each case: this is done in the Towne-house, and the doores kept close. The lesser councell electeth the Prouost, and giueth him po- Election of wer to judge. Afterward, the great councell decideth the appellations made vnto him, and receiveth such strangers as defire to be Bourgesses.

But this is done more often, in the ordinary affemblies of the great councell,

Chap.10.

of the towne of S. Gall.

ny appeales. Sometimes the leffer then they referre those causes till Wedcouncell fendeth affaires of importance to the great councell, to bee confidered | fentence, to the leffer councell, prouided,

The three meetings of the Councell

Euery yeare, the councell generall of all the people, is affembled three times, about publike affaires. First, to elect generall of all the Confull. Secondly, the morrow after Christmas day, to take oath of the new Confull, and to binde him to obey the Magistrates. And thirdly, in the Moneth of August, about S. Bartholmeres day, after that the ordinance for tolles and taxes is agreed uppon, to heare the Lecture, which is made before all. Moreouer, the lawes and statutes of the Towne are distributed into three parts; one part wherof is deliuered to the people, in each of

The cheefest Court of Iufice and authority there-

ficers belong

What causes

witha'l when

they deale

they fit in

The principall and cheefest Court of iustice, is that of fine: who are the Confull the Sub-Confull or Lieutenant, one of the new Zunftmaiters, and two of the new councell. They judge in differences concerning borrowed monies, things laid to pawne, debts that haue no certaine time prefixed, wages that are due, fuites concerning victuals, injuries, and fines. They fit on the Wednesday, or Friday, and there is no appeale from their fentence; neuertheleffe, they may fend backe difficult causes, and of importance, to the leffer councell.

these three affemblies.

Next to this, there is the Towne court of justice. Das Stattaricht, compoluffice, called fed of twelue Affiftants, cholen out of the the Towne or Noble mens companie, and out of the o-Citty Court, and what Ofther companies; so that the one is of Zunftmasters, and the other of the people. The cheefe Officer of this court is called Statamman, Maior of the citty, and is elected with the other Magigistrates, about Christmas day, and is confirmed by the great councell. As for the Affiftants, they are changed twice energy yeare, and elected by the great councell, on one of the feast dayes of christmas, & by the leffer councell, about S. Iohn Baptifts day, in the Moneth of June. These ludges take knowledge of debtes, barterings, and yearely rents, although the fummes bee great. They are called together by tolling the Bell, and affemble in

and then also they conclude there on ma- | all the councell doe meete together, for nefday. A man may appeale from their that the fuice be of no leffe moment then an hundred Sols, or Shillings: and if the appeallant loseth his cause, he is condemned in a fine to the Iudges.

> The confistory court is composed of eight Iudges, whereof foure are Ministers Of the Conof the Church, or some other men of and ludges learning: next, two councellers of the thereto beleffer councel, and two of the great. There longing. fitteth another Seigneur of the leffer councell, as Prefident, who questioneth the causes: and if there be as many voices on the one fide, as on the other, hee reduceth both parties to fuch a courfe, as hee conceineth to be inft, and then fentence is giuen accordingly. The confistory cenfureth matters of marriage, and of diuorces, and no appealing is permitted from sentence. But if there happen any involved or entangledvariance, or if some Concerning colour of pollicy be mixed with the cafe intrices and of marriage ; then cause and all, is sent to cases. the councel wherethe deciding is fufpended, vntill the councell, and some other learned men, hade-adulfedly confidered thereon.

> As for publike Offices, estates, and charges, this common-wealth is therein have charge gouerned, as the other are; having Trea- ges & furers, Mafters of Halles, Receivers, and Administrators at the Gates for customs. tolles, and taxations, Voyers, &c. Such as hold these places, doe render their accounts first to the Zunfftmatterg, next to the leffer, and laftly to the great councell, on the morrow after christmas day. Hauing giuen vp their accounts, the leffe and great councell do elect new officers, New Officers or reconfirme the olde: and it is openly olde admitted read, what the charge is of each one of againe. them in particular, and afterward in prefence of the councell, they sweare to difcharge their duty faithfully. But when many are established in one and the same charge, then such rules as they are to fol-

low, are given them in writing. And because the very greatest trading of S. Gall, consistent in linnen cloth, and the only main that not onely the people of the towne, trading or S. but them also in most part of the Villa- Gallthe Towne-house on Monday in enery ges round about, doe maintaine their weeke, except it bee a Feast day, or that | lines therby; the councell is diligent and

328 The government of the City of S. Gall. 3. Booke

Viewers and Ouerfeers fo the goodness of linnen

onely.

What is done

after appro-bation of the

cloths goodnelle.

Viewers of

cloth,& how

they are thickened.

fer on fuch and fuch markes. If it appeare to be bad and naught, they fend it to the Zunfftmafter of the weavers, and to the other eleuen Zunffimalters; who condemne the workman in a fine, or cut the whole peece into some portions, of eight Elles in length each one, or elfe through the midft, or if it bee worth nothing, they burne it openly. This view and visitation is done daily, and there is a Market of lin-A Market of nen cloth, which hath certaine Lawes, for linnen cloth the observation whereof, they that deale in fuch Merchandize are firicily bound.

and deceit. First, therefore, so soone as

the weaver hath finished a peece of cloth,

there are three expert sworne Visiters or

Querfeers that come to looke youn it and

according as it is good, or indiffrent, they

After that the cloth hath beene seene and approoued; the sworne Measurers do both Ellit, and marke it. The Measurers haue some other sworne men of the Mystery, to be their adjuncts; and the Merchants have with them the Ouer-feers of the measuring. They call them Den reiff, measurers of linnen cloth, which are of divers lengths: but a whole peece confisteth of 124. Elles, and may not be of view made at the whitsters, wher the cloth is thickened and whited. These Viewers the whiting of are called Die woffen Schower. They looke that the clothes have their requifite whiteneffe, and whether they fustaine any harme in the thickning: and according as they finde, they marke, or condemne the whitster in a fine. Likewise there are certaine Merchants and Weauers, that visite the whitsters houses and grounds, to see if all things bee fitting and convenient there: whether they have sufficiency of wood and ashes, that none may be wronged by delay. Euery yeare the Masters whitsters take newly their oaths, to doe

be died in colours,& how they deale

their duties as becommeth them. As for the clothes which the Viewers (whom they viually tearme Blam und Schwartz glehower) thinke fit to fend to the Diars: the cutters of linnen cloth, named Lynwathschnyder, do cut them iust in the midst, and there are other committees, to regard that they have their iust measure. After they are dyed into colours blew or blacke, if the Ouerseers

carefull, for well ordering all things in | finde the dying to bee well taken, they that respect, and for the anoyding of fraud | marke the peece, and when they have plained and smoothed it with a Rowler; others come to approue it valuable, and they fet on the Seale. Contrariwise, if it be spoyled and viciate in the dying: they Penake for cut it, or dip it againe, if it may bee done, in dying, and the Plainer and Diar are condemned in some fine. All these things about named, are very carefully observed, and if any dare do otherwife, hee is fenerely punished. For the Towne or Citty of S. Gall hath this priviledge, to condemne in criminall fuite, to fetch men out of places | S.Gall. of refuge, and to punish them that vse any fraud, in weauing, marking, fealing, dying, plaining, or misusing any Linnen clothes.

Something likewise must needs bee faid, what order they of S. Galltake, to auoid the inconveniences of fire: because they having beene heeretofore much endamaged thereby, it hath made them (furuiuing) to be the more prouident. Euery What prouid euening, for the space of a quarter of an houre, there is a Bell rung, and it is called against the Die feurglocken, the Fire-Bell: which ces of fire. admonisheth euery one, to looke to the hearths of their Chimnies, for feare lefte fire shold take in any part. Then are there any greater length. There is another two Zunfftmatters, that foure times Vificers for yearely do visite the hearths, surnaces, & fire. chimnies in all the houses; and thereupon are called Die Feurglehower, Vifiters for fire. They regard also, what Armes and provision of foode the Bourgesses haue : and whether they be prouided and furnished, according to the ordinances of the Seigneury.

Beside, if there rise any impetuous Against trop windes or any rough stormes or tempests blesom winds happen(befide the ordinary Captaines of and tempelis the watch, whom they call Die Wachtbieter) there are two other, named Mafters of the watch, Die Wachtmafter, who take with them two men of euery Tribe, well appointed, and goe with the Captaines of the watch, to walke the round through all the streetes of the Citty, to predent the dangerous accidents of fire.

Euery night, two and thirty men keepe watch on the Towers and Walles, and in other places of the Citty, beeing appointed as Sentinels, by the cheefe Zunitt= master, with the Captaines of the watch.

Chap.11. Of the gouernment of the Grisons.

When fire takes in any

zens runne to the Gates, some on the Towers and Walles, some into the cheefest streetes; some keepe company with the Confull, and others labour to quench the fire. There are foure Captaines of the leffer councell, that have a care of all this businesse, commanding enery one to that which is to be done, and punishing greenously the disobedient. If the fire be without, and neere the citty, they fend foorth a certaine number of men with their Captaines, to prouide against the inconvenience. Others keepe watch at the Portes, upon the Walles, and in other places, where they are by them appoin-

If fire take in any part, some of the Citti-

Schooles, Almes-houfes Hospitals,&c. Spared to be

I spare to speake heere of Schooles, Almes-houses, and Hospitals, because they of S.Gallgouerne themselves therein, as other well pollicied citties do, and carry a faire and comely order among them. Likewise, I will not speake of the election of the Ministers of the Church, nor of their establishing and charge, neither what order they hold in their affemblies: because in this worke, we treate on the matters of pollicy onely, referuing to discourse on the other, at some apter time and place.

CHAP.XI.

The Common-wealth of the Grifons.

the Grifons in

HE name and dominion of the Grisons heeretofore was of great extendure : but now wee vnderstande by that word, a people of the Alps,who

the French and Italians have named Grifons, and the Switzers Grawpundter. In ancient times, they inhabited Rhatta in the Alpes, neere to the fourfe or head of Rheine, and of Iun.

The Grisons are divided into three Leagues. The first is called the League

Grife, and hath ten Comminalties, to wit, J the Abbey of Diffentis, which the ancient Cardes or Mappes called Difertine. To this Abbey are joynd Tauetch, Trumb, and fome other places. 2. Walterspourg. 3. Oberfachs. 4. Luznits. 5. Fals. 6. Ylantz. 7. Schlawif. 8. They of Laax, Sinif, and them engironing about the wood. 9. Thannen. The Grifons call these nine Communities; the part about the wood, Die obbem malb; and the other ten, they call, under the wood, 10. Flims. 11. Trimon. 12. Safien. 13. Ratzuns, the ancient abiding of the noble Family of the Barons of Ratzuns. 14. Henltzenberg,

and Tufis. 15. Schopine. 16. Schamps

17. Splugen. 18. Mafax. 19. Rufflee. In each of these Comminatties, they yearely elect a soueraigne Magistrate, Magistratein which many of them do call Amman, who each of thefe with the Judges or Affiltants, elected by the fame comminalty, doth judge fuites in law, and condemneth delinquents, according to the exigence of the case. Befide these Ammans, there is a great Prouost of the whole League, whom they call Den Landtrichter, who is chosen by enery one in the generall affembly of all the comminalties, and fitteth Prefident in the dayes meetings for all the

These meeting dayes for this Grife The Grand League, is in the Village of Trumb, which Prouch of is the cheefe comminalty, and there also the whole League, and meet the Seigneurs of the Iusticial court, he order in wherein the Landtichter fitteth Prefi- Courtof Iudent, who hath fifteene Affistants, one tice. Clearke or Secretary, and one Officer. The Lord of the Castle, and of the Barony of Ratzuns, is yet aboue the Landtrichter, by an ancient prerogatine, belonging to the race of the Barons of Katzuns, in whose rights, the Lords of the places have evermore succeeded.

The fecond League is called Det Bottihusspundt, The League of Gods The League Houshold, or of the Cade or League Ca- of the Cade, thedrall, because of the Bishoppricke House, and Colledge of Coire: and it hath one and twenty Comminalties, which sometimes were reduced into eleuen much greater. The Towns or Citty of Coire is numbred in the first place, as the chiese of the League: and alone (among the eleuen Comminalties) is compounded of two lesser. But as the cittizens

Ff 2

329

The first league,hauing all thefe ties belong-

Drulus his whose physick kept him tro

Bitter A1fpeciall helpe

Plin.inlib 12. rap.14. The Raddiff

Saffron.

Plin.in lib.vbi Supra.cap.cod.

Arift,in Problem.part.z. Anicene in lib Animal.6. 600.9.

*The finewer which conduct the ver to the eyes.

being drunke, albeit he daily drank more wine then any other one man of his time: for he could out-drinke all commers, yet neuer be drunke, or bereft of his judgement. But in the ende it was knowne, that (viually) before hee entred drinking, he would eate fine or fixe bitter almonds, whose power and naturall property was fuch, as it impeached the wine from alienating his spirits. And experience thereof was afterward made, for when they bitter Almonds, and he vling to drinke as formerly he did; he became as foon drunk as any other man. That these Almonds haue this peculiar property, Pliny affirmeth it, adding further; that eating a Raddish roote before hard drinking, auoideth drunkennesse. He saith also, that Colewortes eaten before hand, keepeth a man from being distempered with wine: and being eaten after drunkennesse, they remoue instantly the distemperature, as Saffron also hath the selfe-fame power. Ther are many other remedies for this imperfection, wherein I will be filent; fpeaking onely of one, recited by Pliny. He faith, that taking a quantity of wine, mingled with the egges of a Chough, and, beeing drunke two or three mornings together. he that drinketh it, will hate wine in fuch fort, as he will neuer after drinke thereof. Herreto he addeth, that a Swallow being taken and burned to ashes, then beaten into powder and mingled with a little Myrrhe in the wine; whofoeuer receyueth a draught of this potion, (hall neuer be drunke, for this was experimented by

Aristotle, in the third part of his Problems, and Auicenne, in his fixt Booke of Beafts do yeeld a reason why in drunkenneffe, when a man looketh vpon any one thing, it appeares to him as if it were two, and albeit they doe both produce divers reasons, yet will I alledge but one from each of them. The first shall be Aristotles . who faith that thorow excessing heat of vapours in the wine, afcending vp into the braine : the little nerues called *Optici nerui, which go on directly to the eyes, do worke and moone with fuch power, that the visiall vertue, and the spirits of fight (altering in their motion) do cause whatfoeuer drunken men gaze on, to flirre ve-

Horus, King of Affyria.

admirable physick, to preserve him from | rystrongly and quicke; because the Organe of fight moueth it felfe in that manner, and maketh the common fense to receiue the Images of things, in a multiplyed quality to the eye . For fuch kinde of motion, maketh fingle things to feeme double, and because this motion is so sudden and infentible, it caufeth two things to seeme as one to the fight. As any man may eafily make tryall of, by laying Aproofees his finger vpon his eye-lid, and then re-mouing it thence, it will appeare to him, abridged him from the meanes of eating that it is the thingremoueth it felfe, which he beholdeth. Auicenne deliuereth another reason, saying : The vapours of wine, Anicen in the which afcend up into the head of him that is dnimd can of the trunke, are moilt, and because the little nerves of wine mod and muscles which reach to the eyes, doe enting rains grosse or swell themselves by this humidity the head of drunkenma (o much more the one (then the other) doe thereby mount them selves the one higher and the other lower . From hence ensueth that the visible rayes do not equally divide them-Selves foorth-right from both the eyes neither by a direct or right line : which is the cause, that the Images of things visible, doe extend to eyther eye by themselves. In this respect only things simple and single, appeare to be double, the commo fense receyuing & apprehending two images for one: and for the maintenance of this opinion, Auicenne yeeldeth the felfefame example, as Aristotle did.

CHAP. XXV.

In what manner a man may know and measure, the retundity or round compasse of the whole earth: and how much it is reputed to containe, in the circumference or circkling round about.



VII well I know, that the subject of this Chapter, will hardly feeme pleafing vnto all Readers; in regarde, that for the better vnderstäding ther.

of, fom of the principles of the Mathematicks, are necessarily Chap.25.

Of the worlds round compasse.

tical Sciences

The chiefe E. lemets of the Mathematiks

Eccliples, heights, and breadthes, mountaines.

How the rou dure of Land and fea is fea-

The Starrie eauen or fir

Helpe of a Quadrant or Aftrolabe to a man in this

Principles of | required to be well apprehended. Neuertheleffe, I am the more willing to fpeake fomewhat of the argument, onely for the delight and contentment of fuch mindes, as are enclined to the Science whereof it discourseth. Wherefore concerning our present purpose, it is needfull to presuppose, the first and cheese Elements of such a Science: which because they are common, shal require the lesse labor to proue them. The first is that whereof wee are now treating, the greatnesse of the earth, carrying with it both Land and Sea: because God did dispose them in such manner, when he faid ; Let the dry land appeare, for they both being vnited togither made one body perfectly round. So likewise is it to bee vnderstoode in all those actions

Actions attr buted to the

Genelis 1,9.

roundnesse, or it containeth so many degrees from one place to another; the fea is therein as well understood as the land. So in like manner are confidered the Ecclipfes, heights and breadths, to hold one and the same certitude : and yet notwithstanding, Mountaines, and Valleyes are not comprehended in this roundure, nor Woodes or Forrests likewise, which the earth contayneth in it felfe; because such things are not woorthie of any account, with the greatnesse of this wonderful bo-This rotundity of Land and Water, is feated in the midft of the circuite of Hea-

which are given to the earth, the Sea is

also therein comprized : For when a man

fayth, the earth hath fo many degrees in

uen, in such manner, as the point & center of that round body, composed of Sea and Land, is likewise the center and number of the whole world, as well of heauen, derstand and meane each eight part, in reas of the Elements. Ouer and beside this definition, there is another, true and abfolute, to wit, that the land and water (in regard of the starry heaven, which we call the Firmament) are so little; that all these two Elements serue thereto but for a center, and is euen but as a small point, in respect of his circumference. So that in whatfocuer part thereof a man best liketh to helpe himselfe, by meanes of a Quadrant or an Astrolabe: his labour forteth to the like effect, as if hee made the same for the center of the earth. For in what foeuer place of the earth we are (prouided

that it be not in any deepe or hollow bot-

tome) we shall discouer the moity of hea-

uen; which proceedeth by reason of the incomprehenfible distance, that is from hence beneath up to the Firmament, with his incompareable greatnesse. That this must needs be true, it is most euident, that the verie least Starre which we discerne in by enident heauen, is much more greater then the proofe. whole earth; and yet neuertheleffe, it appeareth to vs but as a fmall point, in regard of the heavens large spaciousnesse; by the least of which things, a man may make proofe in sufficient demonstration, but it suffiseth that experience hath apparantly showne the same.

Ptolomy approueth it, in the 10. chap- Ptolom in lib. 1 ter of his first booke of Geography ; Al- de Geograph. phraganus, in his fourth Difference, Cleomedes, in his first Booke; Geber, in his fe- cleoned in line cond Book; and John de Sacrobosco, as the Geber inlib. 2. like do all other that have written on the Spheare.

This then being thus presupposed, let vs imagine in our mindes, that the vvater and Land do make one round circkle, and that heaven is another, but much more great, as indeede it is; and that thefe two Howthis matcircles have no other, but one common ter may bee center within them. Which being fo imagined, let vs lay two lines of equall great- minde of man neffe, which may extend themselves (in common) to the circumferences of al the two circles, according as Euclides enftrutwo circles, according as Euclides entitu-each, cutting and dividing the two Circles by equall portions, each portion being infly equalled, in regard of each one of them : that is to fay, that if those two lines passe on right in such manner, they will make eight parts of a great circle, and fo shall make as much of the leffer, I vn-

spect of each ones greatnesse. Our elders in former times, in theyr manner of measuring the world, gaue aduice to divide the heaven into three hun- The advice dred and threefcore equal partes, which fathers, for we do now cal degrees & by confequent, mealiring of the roundnesse of the earth into as manie the world, by parts, by imaginations of lines, parting heaven. from the center, and making the division in fuch manner, that the like quantitie which each one of the degrees hath, in respect of the whole heaven; the verie like shal be that of each one of the degrees for the earth, having regard to the roundure and circuite thereof. And as these portions or degrees, if you please so to terme them,

4. Booke

Of Snovy, and hot water.

405

Concerning the nature of a degree, and how our Elders observed thereof, acor height of the Polc.

scope of miles; the like may be easily gathered, by multiplying what distance is contained in all the reft. To know then the nature of a degree, they made this obscruation. The Pole is a fixed point in heauen, whereon the whole heauen mathe knowledg keth his mouing, yet it remaineth firme & stable. Therefore with an Astrolabe, or any other instrument proper therto, being in some apt vncouered place, they would take the height which the Pole contained about the Horizon, within the limite of the felfesame fight, and noting the place which appeared convenable to the eleuation or height of the forefaide Pole: they certaine and infallible.

The greatnes gree within it

A measure of

ground.con

raining 117.

paces, al afte

fine feete to

An infallible

furing by do

grees.

the pace.

them, are equal among themselues, so that Geometrical paces, each pace containing themselves appeare to contain the as much as two of our common paces. So Stadey George went directly on thereto, without wandering to the Meridian, vntill fuch time (as with the feltefame instrument) they found it in one degree more higher, then in the first place, and therby they knew, that they had gone one degree of the earth fro that place whence they first parted, iust to that ground where they were arrived, confidering, that they had paced by the respect of heaven, in regarde of the fore-named rules of both the circles. Then they would measure that which this degree contayned, either by Stades, or thousands of paces; and this being thus knowne by them, they would make their account after this manner. If one degree contained fo many miles the whole roundnes of the earth did containe as many : confidering, that therein was to be observed three hundred and three core degrees, such and as great as the same were. This was the forme and manner by them observed, and it may wel bee continued to these times, for measuring of the whole earth, as being the most

And yet neuertheleffe we are to know, what greatnesse each degree of the earth felf,howmuch containeth in it felfe, and fo (by confeit containeth. quent) how much it tendeth to in the rotundity, measuring it according vnto the whole greatnesse, answerable to the sperience of both ancient and modern men, skilfull, and well studied therein. The most common opinion of all other, is; that each degree or portion of three hundred and threefcore, containeth fine hundred Stades of ground, and enery Stade is valewed to fix score and fine paces by our Geometricians, and according to theyr

that the degree containes fixty two thou- ometrical pa fand and an halfe, which amount to fixtie ces. two thousand Geometricall paces. Ptolemy auouchen the fame; as the like doeth de Googaja, Martianus Capellus, and the most part of Mar Capellus the wifest ancient Cosmographers : befide, this is the opinion in common, of the greater part of our moderne men.

being both of them learned men, and di-

ligent searchers into these matters : they

do both affirme, that they have made the

like experience, holding the fame for

most certaine. Albeit Eratosthenes, and

I fay then, that each of their degrees, con-

fifting of three hundred and fixty, far off

from fine hundred Stades: the whol three

hundred and fixty, wil containe togither,

twenty two thousand, and fine hundred

thousand paces, which do make an hun-

two millions, and fine hundred thousand

paces. And if you would know how many

French leagues or miles the whole Earth

containeth, we must then allow vnto each

League, the length of two Italian miles.

Then, if we divide twenty two thousand,

fiue hundred paces in twaine, we shal find

that the circuite of the earth, contayneth

eleven thousand, two hundred and fiftie

Leagues of France. And if we divide the

by foure; all the enuironing of the Earth,

will containe fine thousand, fixe hundred,

most common opinion received among

Orontius Phineus holdeth the fame judg- Oront. Phin, is ment, and fayeth, that this may eafily bee lib.1. de Gem. experimented by transiling from Paris to

Tholoufe. Glareanus, & Anthony de Lebrix, Glarim Lian,

fome other Gracians hold opinion, that The opinion all degrees had feauen hundred Stades: of ionie Grzwheerin (it may feeme) they were abu- cians concer fed, by measuring their places ouershort.

dred and eighty thousand Stades. By the Aneftimete which account, the round compas of the whole earth, comprehending therein the whole machine of water, beeing, reduced to a thousand paces, will containe twentic

and twentie fine miles of Germanie; for Division acfour Italian miles, do make but one Ger-maine mile. Thus haue we discoursed on miles. the earths dimension, according vnto the

CHAP

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the reason, why Snow (being concred with straw) doth preserve it selfe in his entire coldnesse, and warme water in his heate: confidering, that two contrary effects are wrought by one and the felfesame thing: with some other secrets beside.

ter or other may be found therein, to yeild

The works o Nature yeeld

Chap.26.

O men of spirite, such as affeet the contemplation of Natures workes, nothing can so lightly present it self, or appeare to bee of so slender esteeme; but some one notable mat-

contentment to their mindes, after they haue attained to the knowledge thereof. No doubt but there are many men, of whom if it were demanded, vppon vvhat occasion, Snow (beeing covered with straw) conferueth it felfe (for long time) in his true coldnesse, and without melting, they hardly knew how to make anie aniwer. Whereunto Alexander Aphrodi-Alex. Apbredif. Seus, that excellent Peripatetian, maketh this reply. Straw hath no manifest or known quality at all, for it is neither hot nor colde; therefore divers have reputed and termed it, Snaws thing to be a thing without any quality. For this cause, beeing a matter so singularly temuality at all, perate and delicate, euen as reaching to yet apprehen dethe qua- fuch a degree, that it may well be faide to be neither hot nor colde; it cafily conuerteth it felfe into the quality of anie fuch thing, as is thereto annexed. So that couering or laying Snow therein, which is colde, the straw apprehendeth the colde quality thereof, and by that means is holpen and affifted, in the true coldnesse of Snow: euen as a thing of one qualitie aydeth another, without yeelding any heate thereto, because it is not in it selfe. Therefore, fnow being accompanied with his owne coldnesse, & defended against heat, which straw prescrueth against the lest entrance; it is thus conferued in his entyre condition for long time, euen as if it were not couered with ffraw at all.

effect wroght by the fame By the felfefame reason, a contrarie efmeans to hot fect happeneth in warme or hotte water; water,keep. ing it in his defending the ayre that it cannot coole it, tire beate.

the strawe immediately entertaineth the quality of the warme water; and being fo fodainly heated, it helpeth & conserueth the water in his warmth, and keepeth the ayre off, that else would coole it. The same reason guides vs to understand other doubts and difficulties, which some curious questionists may impose vpon vs, like vnto those before alledged. I am fure wee The Avre is are not to learn, that ouer and befide our more hote in inward naturall heate, that which occasioneth our warmnesse in Summer time, is else befide, the ayre onely, which (in that season) is much more hot then in any other time of the veare : fo that the warmer the avre is. fo much the more are we fenfible of heat. If it be fo then, how commeth it to paffe, that we feele more freshnesse and cooleneffe, and leffe heate, when wee take the ayre in Sommer, and in mouing and walking to receive it; confidering, that (according to Aristotle) Motion, or mooning, causeth our heate to be the greater? For the ayre, by reason of this agitation, must needs cause the more warmnesse both in it felfe and vs. then if wee rested and sate

in quiet.

for it being likewife concred with Strawe,

The reason ensueth thus: VVce have then more warmth in our bodyes, then there is in the ayre: as wel in regard of our codyes in owne naturall heat, as also that which the then is in the ayre worketh in vs. For the ayre coming with a fresh and coole gale (I speake this because it is more temperate then we are) it maketh vs fome-what the more temperate: but being still and neere vs, it warmeth it felfe in our heate. Euen in the like manner as we have spoken of straw; for so How the quait conscrueth (yea augmenteth) our heate livy in fraw is in vs; albeit, when it is stirred, and freshly bodies. mooued, in comming more temperately vpon vs, then we our felues are; that temperature and difference which wee then feele of leffer heate, doth in the like manner qualifie and moderate ours in vs. This is the answere of the fore-named Alexander, but especially of Aristotle, vnto this

Neuertheleffe, it is to bee noted, that if we find an avre more hot then that wher-the Ayrein in we dwell; agitation or ftirring in fuch hear, & harme an ayre will not prooue fo good as our thereby entuowne, because wee shall there seele farre greater heate, as in divers places oftentimes we do . An argument in this cafe,

standing, let him hold it firmely therein, and it yeeldeth then leffe cause of passion then if he mooned it vp and downe. In regard, that the leffer part of the water en-Example of a uironeth the coole hand, whereby it caumanshand in feth fome fmall temperature round about hor water for heate or tem it: but being plunged and mooned about perature. the water, it reneweth fresh heate, and at

each time appropriateth new power to it felfe; for the more potent, must needes worke nouelly vppon that which is much weaker.

if a man put his hand rashly thereinto, he

can hardly fuffer or endure it. Notwith-

Of heate in

Iune and Iuly

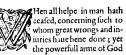
Ariflot in lib.2

It may be likewise demanded for what cause it is more hot arthe end of June, & all along the moneth of July, the Sun being then the furthest off from vs, then it is at the beginning of Iune; confidering we are then in the Solftice of the Sunne, and more directly smitten with his beames? Heercunto answereth Aristotle, in his fede Meteor, ca., cond Booke of Meteors, and the ninth Chapter, that the heate of the Sunne is not the cause thereof, neyther is there any more heatefelt by the Sunnes beeing neerest to vs, then when hee hath longest time to abide ouer vs. For in the months of lune and July, hee hath a great length of time in approaching towards vs; as alfo in declining, hee confeth the greater heate, because (in descending) here-heateth that part and tract of the ayre, which hee formerly had well warmed in mounting aloft.

CHAP, XXVII.

Of Sodaine death happing winto divers great Persons, that have thereto bene wished or threatned, by such as they have vniustlie put to death before, and their deaths have ensued to them in such manner, & at such times, as have beene assigned wnto them: With the notable history of an Archbyshop of Mentz or Magonce.

God neuer tailed in h inft caute or ronged innocents, to lend his help, when all power in man hath fayled.



may bee framed by hotte water, that | hath neuer failed them. And albeit it hath not enfued to speedily, or elfe so visibly as they could have wished; yet GOD, who knoweth both how and when to be auenged on them that are the oppressors of innocents, bath wrought to graciouslie for his own glory; that trecheries have come to light in due and meete times, & mens false judgements have felt his seuere condemnation, and publikely enough for other mens forewarning. In this case wee could alleadge many memorable examples; but beeing loth to trouble you with ouer many, these few commendable Collections thall ferue for this time.

I read of a Knight amongest the Templers (of whome wee haue fooken in our of a Knight former Volume) who beeing (in the opi- Templer, pu nion of many) fentenced to death verie to death varie infly, vniustly; as the Officers led him towardes the place of execution, hee espired Pope Clement, the fift of that name (by vvhole meanes he was condemned to death)looking out at a window; and by him stoode Phillip le Bel, then King of France. The Knight being an Italian, borne at Naples, beholding the Pope with an vndaunted countenance, with a lowde voyce spake

thus vnto him. Most cruell Clement, feeing that there is no Iudge in this world, before whome a poore The Knighte innocent man may call in question the vniust latest worder to the Pope, Inspected much thou hast given against mee. and Kingot I appeale from thee, a most univit Iudge, to France, whe the uprightest Iudge of all other, Iesus Christ, death. himfelfe, before whom I give thee warning, and likewife King Phillip there by thee, to make your appearance, to answere the false judgement of death which you have einen against me. This appearance of yours before the Tribunall feate of God, I do assigne to bee made within leffe then a yeare, to do me right there, where I may fafely have my cause deter mined without any auarice or passion at all, as here you both have dealt with me. The poore ment of Coo Knights defire forted with his wordes, for on the K. and about the same limited time, the Pope be- Pope, ing pained with a great greefe in his stomack, died; so did K. Philip:but howsoeuer

The very like fortune hapned to Ferdi-The very like fortune hapned to Ferdinand the fourth, King of Castile, who had of Ferdinand uing caufed two worthy Knightes to bee the 4. King of executed, more by his owne wrathfull & angry fpleen, then any warrant of inftices. being !

it hapned, it was thought to proceed from

the inft indgement of God.

death of the Seneway Captaine the

> isstierus in lib Pit.Fred. arad Epif. in Hif de Reb.di-

The hiftory of Henry arch bishoppe of Mentz in Germahie.

violent cruelty, either by teares, intreats, or earnest solicitations; they (in very like manner)cited the King before the Tribunall of Iesus Christ, and to make his ap-pearance within thirty dayes. And it is credibly anouched, that on the last of those thirty dayes, the King dyed. The like lot also befell to a Captain of the Gallies, which belonged to the inhabitants of Geneway, whereof Bapusta Ful-

gofo maketh this report. This Captaine

The historie ofa Captaine yes, who entelly put to death another innocen

Battiff Fulgof.

Chap.17.

making a fally forth vpon the Sea, tooke a Foyft or final Gally appertaining to them of Cathelogna; wherein there was another Captaine that neuer had done any injurie to the Genewayes. Notwithstanding, in regard of the malice which the Genewayes bare to the Cathelognians, hee gaue command, that this Captaine thus taken prifoner, should forthwith be hanged. The Captaine, shedding many teares, humbly requested, that he might not so shamefully be put to death, confidering that he had neuer offended him, or his Nation. But in the end, finding no fauour or mercy in him, he made his recourse to the Divine Iudge of al men, speaking thus to the cru-Captaines | tudge of al men, ipeaking thus to the en-words before | ell Captaine; Seeing thou wilt needes execute on me this most vniust fentence, I have no other friend but God to appeale unto who is the iust avencer of injuried innocents. And therefore I humbly defire, that (this instant day) thy foule may appeare with mine before him, to yeeld an account for the worong thou hast done me, Not many houres, after the

> extreme cruelty. I could alledge many examples more, aptly futed to this purpose; but for the strangest of all, I will relate what hapned at Magonce Or Mentz in Germany, which generally cost most deare vnto the whole Citty, according as it is briefely reported by Gontier, that renowned Poet, who wrot the life and actions of the Emperour Fredericke, first of that name. Conradus also the Byshop, declareth the same in his hiflory, among many things hapning in the time of that Fredericke, and of Henrie the

fixt his sonne; the History ensueth in this

Geneway Captaine also dyed, and doubt-

leffe went to render a reason for his most

In the Citty of Magonce or Ment z in Germany, in the yeare one thousand, fine hundred and fifty, little more or leffe, ther

being no way to bee diffwaded from this | liued an Arch Byshop, named Henrie, a man fingular in all vertues. This Archbythop, according to the duty and office of a faithfull Paftor, as indeed hee was, did feuerely chaftife publike finnes and offences, because he was very lealous of Gods honour, and loue of one neighbour vn:o another, the which made him to have the greater care of his flocke. Hecreuppon wicked and dissolute persons grewe hatefull against him, denising many false and crous enimies flanderous accufations, where-with the Pope was plentifully informed, imposing to many crimes and delicts upon him, that he was reputed vnmeete for fuch a digni-

> These matters thus vnder stoode by the Pope, who alwayes thought him to bee a iust and holy man; being no way able to deny audience to fuch a crowde of accufers as defired inflice; at last he advertised the Arch-byshop of these soule accusarions. The good reuerend man, to make The Pope accleare his innocence, elected (among all his other friends) a man whom hee most Archbyshop affected, and on whom hee had bestowed gulations. more efocciall fauours, then on any man else beside. Hee was a Priest by profession, named Arnolde, aduanced vnto many great dignities, as being a man of rich fpirite, eloquence, and abounding in the

wealth of the world beside. Arnolde comming to Rome, beeing enfructed and prefied on by the diucil; con-cluded in his prinate thoughts, to deprine Rome, and his his Lord of fo high a dignitie, and make wicked dea. application thereof to himfelfe. Which his Mafter. that he might the better compas, having brought great fummes of money thether with him, he suborned two wicked Cardinals, who, in fled of speaking in his Lords fauour, should enforce all matters more against him. For they affirmed, that they floode more obliged to God and trueth, neffe of two then to worldly respects or fauors of me: corrupted Cardinalles. and therefore maintained, that the Archby shop was apparantly culpable of all the crimes inferred against him, and thereby iufly deserved deprivation. The Pope being thus abufiuely perswaded by theyr report, thought to haue fent two Priestes thether, to acquaint him with this information confirmed against him : but (indeede) he fent the two Cardinals confederated with Arnolde, to perfect the Proceffe by them concluded for prefent exe-

cution.

They

Chap.28.

The Queene

in the Cuppe made of her

fishers head,

whereupon

Nothing can

be compared to the inward

lice of a wo

the Kings

The perfecution of the. Cardinal'es with Arnold, against the Arch byfhop.

The words o the Archbyth at his de prination befor Arnoldeand the Cardinals

The fcornfull

offenders.

many, but they fummoned the Arch-Bythop to come before them, wher his heating was admitted in such fort, that sentence was given against him, whereby he was deprined of his See and dignitie, and Arnolde aduanced into his place, who had fold his Master, even as Indas did our bleffed Saujour. In pronouncing the judgement, the Arch-Byshop Henry then prefent, delivered thefe wordes . God knoweth, that I am most uniustly condemned: neuerthelesse, I care not for making any appeale to the further censure of men : because I am affured, that lyes shall bee better beleeved amone you, then trueth can be in mee. Therefore I receive this sentence, as some inst punishment for my sinnes, and yes doe appeale fromyour indirect doome, to the eternall inst Iudge Icsius Christ : before whom I adiourne you three to appeare.

They were no fooner arrived in Ger-

These words were no sooner heard by the ludges, but they fell into extremity of laughter, faying; That if he pleafed to go on thither before, they would follow him at their leyfure. This fentence was given answer of the in the yeare one thousand, fine hundred, fifty fix, which the depriued Archbyshop endured with admirable patience; & being retired into his Monastery, he ther remained the rest of his life, yet without acception of the habite. To conclude, God would not permit this wickednes to paffe unpunished, to the end, that innocence the wronged might the better bee knowne : but about a yeare and an halfe after, this Henrie dyed in his Monastery in great holinesse, and doubtlesse attained the glorie long time

> Newes of his death being brought to Rome, the two Cardinals being very merrily met together, one of them, faid: The Arch-Bythoppe Henry is gone, and must not we in halt follow him? Indeed (quoth the other) fo wee made him promife; but let him tarry (wherefocuer he is) till wee come to him. Not many dayes after one of them, being fod ainly finiteen by one of his feruants upon the shoulder fel downe fo greenoufly afflicted with paine, that his bowels and entrailes issued out at his fundament, and instantly died. The other falling into phrensie and madnesse, did cate off his owne hands, and dyed very ftragely. Now as concerning false Arnolde, hee exercifed fuch cruelties and feditions a-

mong the people, that he became so hated and despised of them all; as being one day befiedged in a Monastery, hee vvas there flayne, and afterward left lying naked in the common ditch of the Cittie; where all the people, both men, women, and children, performed all cruelties vppon his body, that possibly could be deuifed by them.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the cruelty which Albouine, King of Lombardie, vied to his Queene & wife Rosamond: And by what meanes she reuenged her selfe on him at length.

Mong those warlike people, the Longo-barden now named Long. and the Northerne partes, to deficend into Italy; the Longobards are named, who for the space of two hundred yeares & more,

feized all those Lands, which (til this day) is called Lombardie, and vntill fuch time as Charlemaigne expelled them thence, according as in the History is amply related, written by Paulus Diaconus, in the par- in the dail. ticular Booke which he made for that pur- Mund cap, pofe. He faith, that when they left Hungary (where they had for fomtime dwelt) to passe into Italy, they had one named Albouine their King: a man of great spirit, and verie valiant in actions of warre. For he conquered in battayle Cunimond, King of the Girpides, and afterwardes, of the Gyrcaufing his head to bee smitten off, made a drinking Cuppe thereof, wherein hee vsed to drinke, and in triumph of his conquest and victorie. At which time, he detained (as his prisoner) a verie beautifull daughter to the fore-named King, called Rolamond, whom he made his wife, and then afterwards hee went to subdue Italy, carrying his Queene along with him, in the yeare, eight hundred, fixty

When he had conquered many towns and Cities, he came (at length) to the City Paula the and Care of of Paula : where (fince that time) the fuc- Kings. ceeding Kinges vied to keepe their feate and continuall refiding, as the very principall Citty of their Kingdome. Hauing

Cunimond K pides conque red by Albo-

> Ahard choice infuch an ex-

reigned three yeares and three moneths, and being then at Verona; he appoynted a folemne feast, where hee drunke to his Queene in the Cuppe made of her fathers head, and forced her to pledge him: whereat thee conceined fuch griefe and displeasure, that the intire loue which thee had formerly borne him, was conuerted into deadly hatred, with an abfolute resolue and conclusion to kill him in just reuenge of her fathers death, & cruelty extended to her. And to affift her in this determination, the conferred with a gentleman named Hermigilde: who prefently tolde her, that to the execution of fuch an important bulines, the should require the ayde of a valiant knight in the Court, called Paradine. Which instantly the did, but he would not yeeld thereto because he tooke it to be too horride atreason. Finding her hope frustrated, and fearing left hir intent would be difcouered, yet defiring nothing more in the world, then to compaffe the height and the will needs pitch of her enterprise : the fet afide all

ploiment for the Lady, & made vie of her place for the time, Paradine keeping her there company a long time, imagining his affections. The Queene, who had spent all this The Queene discouereth her self to Pa.

care of honour and honesty, & being ad-

uertifed by Hermigilde, that Paradine car-

neftly affected one of her attending La-

dies, the deutled therby to effect her pur-

pose. Being acquainted with the secret

refort where Paradine & his louer alwaies

met together; the found fome other em-

while in fost whispers and dalliance, not vfing any one word whereby thee might be discourred; perceiving opportunity fo aptly to fit her, fpake thus vnto him. have the king Knowest thou Paradine, who it is that keepeth thee company? Full well(quoth he) with my Mistresse, and then named her. Thou lyest (false traytour,) replyed the Queene, I am Rosamond thy Soueraignes wife, whom thou hast dared to abuse in this manner, and dye thou must by the inst wrath of Albouine, except thou saue thy life by killing him: aduife thee therefore, whether his life or thine owne is dearest to thee. When Paradine considered his dangerous estate, without any meanes of helpe or escape; hee resolued to kill the King: and for his better furthe-

rance therein, both hee, the Queene. and Hermigilde tooke counfell together, plotting the project in this manner.

The King vsed to sleepe in the heate of the day, and all elfe auoyded the chamber, the Queene onely excepted, and he being a king of courage and high refolue, cuer flept like a Souldier, with his Sword girded about him : which at this inten ded time of treason, the Queene had tyed to fast in the scabbard, as hee could by The maner of no meanes helpe himselfe therewith. Par the Kings death deterradine and Hermigelde waiting the houre, mined by the which was vppon the Queenes iffuing Queene, Pa foorth sthey entred, and for all their fort Hernigilde. treading, the King heard them , and ftarted from his bed. V Vhen he beheld two men armed with weapons, and at fuch a time of no fuspition: fury, not feare made The valeur of him take no knowlege of them, but foght garnithis mur to defend himfelfe with his weapon, derers, euen VVhich failing him, by the meanes of fo in his death. falle a Queene, and they with their weapons euery where, wounding him : hee caught vp a stoole, and therewith made his defence fo long as he could, till in the end they deprined him of life, yet neither noise heard, or any suspition of murther.

The king being thus dead, and all well carryed with a finoothe countenance: Hermigilde possessed himselfe of the Pal- Hermigilde lace, intending to make the Queene his marrierh with Roamondihe wife, as immediately he did. But not Queene. withstanding all their close packing; the Lombardes (notlong after) came to the no other, but that it was the mistresse of knowledge of their Kings death, and in what manner hee was murthered, which they purposed to revenge with all possible speed. Wherein they were prevented, for Rosamond and her complices having packed up most of her Iewells & treasure Royall, fled away thence, carrying with The flight of them Aluifinda Daughter to King Albo- Rolamond & uine, by his first wife. And for their safer the murderers to Rauenna, fecurity, they went to Rauenna, where then gouerned a Lieutenant of the Empire, named Longiuus, who kept that place for Tiberius, Sonne to the Empeperour Constantine of Constantinople, by whom they were curreoufly entertained.

Not long after , Longinus becomming Rosamond deenamored of Rolamond, & defirous to enioy her in mariage, whereto he found her by marrying very tractable; councelled her to procure with the Lieu the death of Hermigilde, & then be would cludeth the marry her . She that had loft all love and death of Her-

feare migilde.

firous to ad-

The inflice of

God on the

two wicked

Cardinals.

Scoffing iefts

A treaches

rous womans wickednelle

met witha'l,

by her owne

deutle againft

her husband.

4. Booke

dreadlesse of the shame of men, coueting withal, to aduance her downefalne estate, by marrying with the Emperours Lieutenant; gaue to Hermigilde an impoyfoned potion at his comming forth of his Bath, persivading him, that it was most soueraigne for his health; by which perswasion he dranke a good part thereof. But whenhee foundit afterward to afflict his body, to as he plainly perceived himfelfe to be poyloned; drawing forth his fword in extremity of rage, he compelled Rofamond to drinke up all the rest that remayned in the Cup, so that at one instant time they both were justly requited for the death of Albouine. Tydings hereof being brought to the Lieutenant Longinus, he caused the young Lady Aluisinda to be feized on, and fent her (with all her iewels and treature) to the Emperour Tiberius, at Constantinople, with Paradine also as a prisoner: where having his eyespulled forth, he lined a while, and then died most miferably.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of a pleasant, witty, and honest deceit, which a famous and vertuous Queene vied to her owne husband; whereby lames, King of Arragon was begotten, with other rememberances both of his birth and

The Authors the enfuing Hiftory.



VVell remember, that in reading the Chronicle of the Kings of Arragon; I finde, that Don Peter, Count of Barce-

lonna, who was the seauenth King of Arragon, had Madam Mary in marriage, daughter to the Earle of Mount Pefulin, Nephew to the Emperor of Constantinople, the being a very beautifull and vertuous Lady. All which notwithstanding, the King was much addicted vnto other women, and vsed such flender testimony of love towards his Queene, that hee refused to keepe her company, as (in the duty of an husband) he flood obliged to doe. This strange

feare of God, respect of womanhood, and behausour in the King, did much afflict and greene the Queene, because they had no childe to succeed in the Kingdome, the greateest misery (of all other) that can full offices happen to a well setled Estate. Heere- the greatest vpon, by aduice of one of the Kings Pa-milery of any ges of his Chamber who (it may be) had kingdome. formerly done fernice in the like affaires; thee compassed the meanes (vnder title of fome one of the Kingscheefest fauourites) to bee brought that hight to lodge with the King- Such familiar entercourfes having paffed betweene them, as in Shamedare fuch wanton feafons are commonly required, the King perceiving the day-light neere approching, in regard both of his owne honours fafety and hers, made meanes to her for her speedy departure, but the taking hold of to good an occafion spake thus vnto him.

My gracious Lord and husband, I am none fuch as (perhaps) you take mee to be, but be well affured, that this night to the King, you have flept with your true Queene and before the VVife.Vfe what violence you shall please would depart to mee, for I purpose not to leave your bed vntill some man, well deserving faith and credite, may be witneffe of my this nights keeping you company. To the ende, that if the fauour of heaven hath bin fo gracious to me, that fruite (long defired) may enfue by this aduenture; the world thal take true notice, that it is your owne. The King perceiting this honest deceit of his Queene, appeared to bee well pleafed therewith, and called two Gentlemen of his Chamber, to testifie the truth, according to her defire, and as (indeed) flood best with his honour . It fo pleased God, that at fit and conueni-ent time, the Queene having at that infrant time conceived with childe; at fuch of lames, King of Attr due season as the custome of women al- gon. loweth them for trauaile, thee was deliuered of a goodly Sonne, euen on the first day of February, in the yeare one thousand, one hundred, ninety fixe. Soone after it was borne, the Mother caufeditto bee carried to the Church, and (which is a thing deferuing memory) as they which carried the childe entred into the Church, the Priests began to fing, Te Deum laudamus, Wee praise thee O of the childe God. Paffing from thence vnto another to two fearest Church, as they were entring likewise thereinto, the Priests began to fing the

The Custome of Carinthia. Chap.33.

Pfalme of Benedictus Dominus Deus Ifrael; Bleffed be the Lord God of Ifrael; which gaue a great prognofficating & vndoubted hope, of some excellent vertues to succeed in the childe. The Father and Mother, notknow-

childe, which happened to be that of S.

James. Heercupon he was named James,

because it was the name, which the men

of Arragon gaue to that Apostle. Hee

proved to be an excellent Prince, and of

admirable gouernement, both in peace

and warre, for hee made a cruell inuation.

vpon the Moores, being euermore very li-

berall to his Souldiers. Among other

most notable matters, hee levied a great

Army, which he conducted into the Isle

of Maiorica, that then was in the Moores

possession, where hee fought many flour

battailes. But after he had a long while

befiedged the City, he won it in the ende,

and likewise other neighbouring Islands

beside. Then comming into hisking-

dome of the Moores, especially to the Ci-

ty of Carthage, hee proued still the Con-

queror, and neuer fayled in any of his at-

norica. He had another that was Arch-

bishop of Tolledo. Madame Tollant, who

was Queene of Castile; and Madame Ifa-

bell, that was Queene of France; and Ma-

dame Frraqua, who was married to Don

Emanuell, Prince of Castile; and Don Pe-

ter, who espoused the daughter vnto the

King of Nauarre. He lived seventy and

two yeares, and dyed religiously, taking

on him (before his death) the habite of a

Monke. For he had a greeuous disease.

which made him renounce his royall

Scepter, with deliberate purpose, that if

he might recouer his health againe, hee

would imploy the rest of his dayes in the

manner of naming the Childe, by lighting of hes, tearme

A ftrange

The vertuo qualities re-

His winning the life of the Citty of

fcending fro

King lames became a Monke be-

ing what name to give him, caufed twelve Torches (of equall length and making) to be all lighted in one instant, the twelve Torches bearing the feueral names of the twelve Apostles. With this conclusion, that the name of the Torch which first fayled, or became extinguished; the felfe-fame name should bee given to the

feruice of God. But weaknesse encreafing more and more you him, he dyed in the Citty of Valencia, Anno 1266. and at the beginning of the Moneth of Au-

CHAP.XXXIII.

Ofan ancient and memorable Custome, obferned by the Inhabitants of the Province of Carinthia, at the Coronation of their Prince : and how cruell their panishment is to Theenes.



Ope Pins the fecod of that name, who was a man of great learning, & deneas Sylvin a diligent inquisi- Atund lb.5. tour for the truth 149.7. of Histories, as wee haue in many places formerly

411

allodged, faieth in his description of the world; that the Pronince of Carinthia, is enclosed within the territory, and vader the gonernment of Austria. Hee likewife relateth a custome, which the Inhabitants of that Prouince have anciently observed, at the election and Coronation of their Princes; appearing some-what strange, yet honest and very commendable. VVhich custome is also confirmed by A. Sabellicus, in his tenth Decade : and by Sebastian Munster, in his composed Deca.Hift. Cosmography, which is after this man-

In this Prouince of Carinthia, there is a very great and spacious plaine of olde ruined buildings, which feeme to bee the foundation of some former auncient Cit

In which place also there is a great stone, and when obeyfance is to be given at the new creation of a Prince; there is a day appointed, and a country labourer, or meane husbandman (allowed to to the Printhis preheminence in regard of his li- ces election. nage) hath order to feate himfelfe vppon that same stone. On his right hand

He had many children, as well fonnes as daughters, on whom (during his life time) he bestowed great gifts and goodly cstates. Don Peter, that afterwad was Arragon, & King of Arragon, was his Sonne. Like-

their gracious wife Don lames, King of Majorica and Mi-

The manner

of the Princes

standeth a poore Cow, that hath lately calued, which hee holderh fastened by a corde, and on his left hand-frandeth avery leane and wretched Mare, tyed in like maner, and round about him is no meane crowd of labourers and country Boores. In this place, and at this Stone, the Prince that is to be enstalled, must make his apparance, attended with a great number of men on horse-backe, ryding in very formall order, with twelve Banners borne beforehim: among which there is one more large and fightly then all the reft, carried by an Earle, thereto admitted by especiall priniledge. The Arch-Duke, Prince of great Lord

voyce, what he is, that commeth towards

him with fuch glory and felicity? Answer

is instantly made him, that it is the man,

who commeth to bee created Prince of

the Country. Then as it were with a

voyce like thunder, the labourer cryeth

out. Is he a just ludge? Will he wel main-

taine inflice? Will hee preserue the de-

fence and fafety of this Country? Is hee a

man franke, and free-borne? Is he valiant,

vertuous, and worthy of honour and re-

uerence? Ishe a Christian? Ishee a De-

fender of the faith of Iefus Christ? And

all the company maketh answer, that he is

fuch a man, and will fo continue. Then

he beginneth againe, and maketh another

demand. By what right or reason cometh

he to dispossesse me of this place, which

belongeth onely to me? To which questi-

of gold shall be frankly given thee, & this

Cow, as also this Mare shall both be thine

owne, beside the rich Robe, which our

King didlast of all put off, shall also bee

thine: moreouer, thou and thy family shal

bee free, from paying any manner of tri-

bute. After these words, the Prince ap-

procheth neere to the Stone, & the poore

man giveth him a gentle blow on the

cheeke commanding him (in any case) to

be a good Iusticer : & so descending from

the Stone, he leadeth along with him the

Cow and Mare, and departeth.

howfocuer ye meane to tearme him, clo-The Princes thed in a Shepheards habite, commeth to being at the Stone before him that must the Stone wheron the poore man fitteth, & as he perceiveth him to approch somewhat neere, hee demandeth with a loud

The feuerall questions of

The Earle that carrieth the cheefest Standard, his answer to the poore man.

The Prince created with aboxe on th

Then the Prince dismounting from his horse, ascendoth vp, and sitteth vpon the The Prince Rone, where drawing foorth his Sword, the Stone, and turning to each fide of the ftone, ftill flourishing the weapon round about him; hee maketh a folemne promise before all the people, vetering the words as loud as The Prince be can speake, that he will be a just Iudge, promise be tore all the and a good Prince. This done, one bringeth him (in a Shepheards bonnet) a small quantity of water to drinke: and fo descending from the stone, hee re-mounteth on horsebacke, and rydeth on to a Church with all his company, there to heare Mas.

Which being finished, hee changeth his former plaine and rurall garments, to vechangethin ry Royall and Princely habites: and after humble gua pompeous Dinner with his whole train, ments. he returneth againe into the open fielde, where hee heareth all the Officers of luflice speake vnto him, to enstruct him in the lawes of the Country: and these are the viuall ceremonies, observed at the creation of enery Prince.

There is another custome in vse among these people, for the punishment of thefts and robberies ; which I hold to be vniuft, Acruellere and ouer-cruell, especially to beeved a mong Christians. For having but some of theeses & note or apprehension onely, that such a robbers, too man standeth in repute to be a theefe; they forthwith fend him to execution, without flians. any other proceeding against him. Then three dayes after his cleath, they examine the witnesses with all care and diligence; when if it shall appeare by solemne inquifition, that he proueth to be guilty of the crimes alledged; they fuffer him to hang vpon the Gibbet, vntill his limbes fall peecemeale from him. But if he be found to be innocent, they take him thence, and on, the Earle that beareth the cheefest giue him honourable obsequies and fune-Standard, replyeth thus. If thou wilt quit rall, with many prayers and almes-deeds, the losse of a and forfake this place, threefcore Ducates for the faluation of his foule.

With this feuerity doe they chaftife theeues and robbers neuertheleffe I read of some other Nations, that greatly have supported and countenanced them therein. As the Egiptians, of whom Aulus Gellius writeth in his Attick nights. And Nott Autic. the Lacedomians likewise, who permitted their children to bee theeues, and learne climbing in at windowes, and wandring abroad in the night feafon, that they might be the more bolde and hardy for warre. Notwithstanding, Draco, hee that gaue

In what part of the Zodiaque the Sunne and Moone, and likewife the other Planets were, at their first creating. Also of the beginning of yeares, and the course of

the bent of humane understanding so full

of strange questionings, as they cannot

content themselves to know such things

as they may with fome eafe comprehend

onely: but ouer and beside, they are scru-

tinous and fearching (through bold pre-

fumption) to know fuch causes as are ve-

ry hard, and almost impossible. Nor hath

this painefull defire beene altogether

fruitleffe and vaine, though many times it

fayled, and came farre thort of expecta-

tion: because by contemplation and con-

tinuall fludy, they have found out fuch

matters as feemed before vtterly impossi-

ble and supernaturall, or that they should

any way be attayned voto by the capacity

ofmen. As namely, the motions of the

Heavens: the course of the Planets and o-

ther Starres, with their feuerall influences

and power, and the like things beside: a-

HE learned Phi-

lofophers fav

that men are na-

turally curious &

couctous of kno-

ledge.Moreouer,

fuch is the zeale

of their affection

in this cafe, and

ricke, the third of that name; according

as Lodouicus Viues, that learned man in all

Arres and Sciences, writeth in the third

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Booke of his Disciplines.

Menare na-turally defi-rous to know all things whattoener-

ion and frud

Of the beginning of Times,&c.

Draco his femong the reft; wherein he commanded, uere Law a. that every kinde of theft (hould bee punigunit all ma-ner of thefts, and Solons thed with the penalty of death. In regard whereof, Solon faide, that hee had written that Law with blood, which made him (afterward) to allay and mitigate it. The custome which yet to this day is obferued for hanging of theeues, was first of all appointed by the Emperour Frede-

At what time was first or-

Chap.34.

Lawes vnto the Athenians, made one a- | mong which is comprized my present intended argument, and what in this Chapter 1 purpoled to discourse on, to wit; how purpose in to know the beginning of times & yeares; this Chapter. ter I purposed to discourse on, to wit how and on what day the world began, or to speake better; when, or in what season God created the world; when began the ueted to be yeare and times; and where was the Sun, or where God placed it at first, when hee began his courfe; & likewife the Moone, with the other Starres and Planets.

> Aristotle did little care for these queftions, and infinite other Philosophers be- Aristoile and fide, who thorow defect of the light of losephers of faith, did verily beleeue, that the world pinion of the was eternall, without any beginning or world. ending. But fuch as have declared themfelues not to be ignorant in thefe things, but verily believed the beginning of times, feeme to fland divided betweene Two opinions the world was created, the Sunne was worlds created found to be in the first point of Aries, or tion. the Ranme, which is in the Equino Ciall Fernale. of Summer, the time comming then to the eleventh day of March. Others fay, that the world began, the Sunne then being in the first point of Libra, or the Ballances, which is the other Equinocitall of Equin Clium VVinter, commonly happening in these our dayes, on the thirteenth or foureteenth day of September. Of this opinion were divers Egiptians, Arabes, and Greekes likewife ; according as Lincolnien- 1. Lincoln.in fis reporteth, in a Treatise of the world, Traft. Mund which he wrote to Pope Clement & Vin- Mir. Hilloriale,

> centius in his historicall Mirrour. Such as have followed this opinion, A reason alalledge a reason for it, which (in my judg- ledged for the ment) is very weake, and of no force. For earths perie they fay, that then the principall fruites of the beginning. the earth were fully ripe, and in the very best of their fauour, because it was most requifite, that (at the beginning) the earth should present it selfe in the height of perfection. To this purpose, they produce authority out of Deuteronomy, Deut. 32.3. where it is faid; That God made all things perfect and compleate. There are some others, who affirme, that the entrance of The entrance times, and of yeares, was on the very grea- of times and yeares. test day of all other; which was then, when the Sunne entred into the figne of Cancer, as now it is the eleventh or twelfth day of Iune. Iulius Firmicus, an ancient

The Authors Curious que. ftions, et co-

Inl.Fom cus in tib.; .de cre it.Mund.

The figne Leo the house of the Sunne.

The most pro bable opinion of all other.

S.Hierome. S. Ambrole. S.E. file.

The ful agree ment of all together.

enofourble;-

Concerning the first Mo neth of the yearc.

and part of

D'acent in Mir.Hift.cap.1

Aftrologye, in the beginning of his third Booke, which he wrote of the worlds creation, faith: That when the world began, the Sunne was in the fift degree of the signe Leo; which is the figne wherein hee hath most dominion, because it is called the house of the Sunne: the like he saieth, in discouring the other Planers, by their order and degrees. But that which rellisheth of most rea-

fon in all these opinions, and appeareth most conformable to truth, is ; that when both time and the heavens began to bee mooued; the Sun was in the first point of Aries, which is (with vs) in March, and at which time is the entrance of Summer. This is affirmed (belide all other reasons that we can alledge) by the greater part of H.ftorians, as well Christians as Heathens; among whom are S. Hierome, S. Ambrofe, S. Bafile, and others, who doe all maintaine, that the beginning of the world, and likewife of the yeare, was in the Equinoctiall of our Summer. And although there may appeare some difference among them, because some will haue the worlds begining to be in March, and others in Aprill: it may well bee endured, for they all agree together, that it was in the Equinoctiall, which now is in March. Notwithstanding, as wee haue formerly affirmed, the Equinoctiall is not alwaies firme or constantifor Iesus Christ fuffered his passion on the fine and twentieth day of March, which was then the Equinoctiall, and now it is the eleuenth day of the fame Moneth, whereby may well be prefumed, that heeretofore it was

For this cause, some would have April to be the first Moneth, and others March; yet notwithstanding, they all say, that whe the Sun enters into the first point or degree of Aries, then is the Equinoctiall. This opinion is grounded on the Scripture, especially on the twelfth Chapter of Exodus, where it is faid: The Moneth * Nifan (which is March with vs) is the entrance to your yeare. Vincentius, in the beginning of his historicall Mirrour, faith: The Hebrewesbegan their yeare in March. because in the like Moneth was the Equinoctiall, when as the world began. This opinion was likewise helde by some of the Eleacin Traft. Gentiles; as Elpacus in his Aftrologicall

ancient Author, and of great authority in | Treatife, where he faith: The Chaldeans being very great Astrologers, beleeved like Concerning being very great Astrologers, beteened like wife, that on the first day when the world was of the year, made the Sunne entred into the first point or what Moneth degree of Aries : and this is also confident- and on what ly maintained by the most part of Astrologers, both ancient and moderne. Therfore when the Sunne came in his course thither, or to that Signe; then was the beginning of the yeare, and thence enfued the principall or beginning day. For it is a matter most manifest, that the first day wherein the world began to be made, was also made the first day of the yeare:considering that till then there was neyther time nor yeare. And therefore the figne Aries the fife of Aries is reckoned (about all the rest) morder a. to be the first in order among the twelve mong the infigures.

> Now, as when we come to judge of the revolution of yeares, and things to happe therin, as of necessity we must equal the figures, by the beginning of the world; euen foit is as easie to prooue, that God placed the Sunne in the first degree of this figne, at the beginning and creation of the world. And this may bee conjectured without any great labor, by our profe Of the time made in the fixt Chapter of the feuenth and day when Book, in our first Volume, where dilcour- fered his Pal fing on the time and day, when as our red with the bleffed Lord and Saujour fuffered; it is day of the affirmed, that the Sunne was in the felfe- worldson fame at the creation, as it was when the great Sunne of righteoufnesse made the regeneration of the world fuffering death and paffion in humane flesh, and that happened (as is formerly faide) in the Equinoctial of Summer, which is an argument and presupposition, that even so hee placed it, when as he created it.

> Moreouer, it appeareth very credible, that it was so made, because such as the Sunne is know any thing in Aftrologye, and in the Juminatethal Sphere, do well perceive, that the Sunne the world to entring into the degree of this figne, and the cleare n making his revolution by the space of a diance of his wholeday: there is not any part of the beames. world, which he leaueth vislookt on with his bright splendour. And rhis he doth not in any other place of the Zodiaque, because in what place else soeuer hee is; there are some parts of the earth where he is not seene that day; but beeing in this first degree, as we have saide, there is no place where he is vnfeene, as hee walketh

mane yeare, beginning

Mecreb.in lib. Ond in Faft.

> The first fea knthat Ada and Euc faw in the world was the Spring time

ney. And it standeth with good reason | found it, if it had not beene Spring-time. and conveniency, that the first day of the Sunnes ferting foorth on prograce, hee may best visite the whole world with his beames. And that it should bee in the figue Aries, rather then in that of Libra, appeareth plainly by our former relation, fore there is some particular power in Holding this opinion then for the

most certaine, I say, that the reason alled-

ged, by fuch as would have the beginning

fufficient to fay, that all the fruites were

ripe and mellow; in regard it is no vni-

nerfall rule: for when the fruites are ripe-

ned towards the Northerne latitude, they

contrary. And therefore I craue no helpe

of their reason, who say, that the Equino-

citall of March (already prooued) is the

beginning of the Spring time, & of flow-

ers oner all the earth, all things beeing the

in procreation; for if with vs it be the be-

ginning of Spring time, it is then winter

in the Southerne parts. Let our reasons

then fuffice, & the authority of fuch wor-

nus, coucting to have their yeare beginne

with his name, as the Christians began

theirs with the Natiuity of Iefus Christ,

albeit the yeare doth not then begin.

Against fuch at maistaine the worlds beginning in of the world, to bee in the Equinoctiall of the Equinoc-September, is very weake. For it is not full of will of white a superior to full of white a superior t

Chap.34.

A reason al-

ledged of

quence for

6:ft appea-

At what time is the beginning of the

> thy men, to cleare all other doubt or feruple salthough the Romane yeare, now in Of the Rovie, seemeth to begin the first day of Ianuary : for this matter came fo to paffe, onely through the superstitious denotion, which the Gentiles had to their God Ia-

> > The Romanes (in like manner) began their years in March, according as Marcus Varro writeth, and Macrobius in his first Booke ouid in his Fasts, and many more beside. Also God shewed his immense goodnesse, in placing our first Parents Adam and Ene, in the Northerne parts of the earth, when he banished them out of the terrestriall Paradise; & that the first feason which they faw in this world, was the Spring-time, finding the earth to be greene & flowry, with the ayre milde,

> > fweete and temperare, which was done

along in his diurnal course, or dayes iour- | nakednesse, and so they could not have

ued, wee must know that there are other laid to be in thould begin in fuch a place, where hee Planets, and especially the Moone, as be-conjunction ing one of the principall, whom some do with the Sun maintaine, to be fet by God in coniunctions on with the Sunne, on the first day of her creation. Others fav. that the was in opthat on the day of our Lords passion, the position, and at the full. Saint Augustine Sunne was in the felfe-same place, there- reporteth these two opinions, in his booke Augin Gen. vpon Genesis, the fift Chapter, saying fur- cap. 5. ther, that fuch as maintaine her to bee in opposition, and arthe full; do alledge for Others hold their reason; that it was very inconucnienr, that at her beginning, God should create her any way defectuous. Others vrdge the contrary, and fay it is more credible; that the began her first day in coniunction, encreasing in her age answerable to our account. But to quiet this controuerfie, I fay (in mine opinion) that The Authors are not fo in the South, but wholly quite God at fuch time as he created her, made this cale. her aufull, and in opposition of the Sun. And it feemeth, that this judgement is the most received, as of Sangartine, in the place before alledged and Rubanes Rabanus in Ex on the twelfth Chapter of Exodus, faith od.cap. 12. the very fame. This appeareth conformable to holy Scripture, where it is faide: God made two great lights, the greater light Gen. 1,16. to governe the day, and the leffer light toilluminate the night. Now in the very fame instant as the Sunne began his light, hee gave splendour to the moity of the world, Sunne and because in that moity or halfe part, hee made day. But the other moity could night & day, haue no light of the Sunne, by reason of done at one the earths shadow; therefore it seemeth instant. confonant to reason, that in the other moity of the earth, where it was night, the Moone should extend her office of shining. For like as they were both created at one instant : so should they both fulfill their offices in one and the fame instant, and the one to gouerne the day, as the other the night, according to the words of the Text, verefied apparantly, that the world was wholly lightened at one & the

Contrariwife, if the Moone had bene in conjunction, the light common and v- conjunction niuerfall could not have come till fifteene of the Moone dayes after; and befide, three or foure at that time dayes must needs have passed, before she for the confolation of their mifery and | could lend any light to the earth, and that

fame time.

This matter being fufficiently proo-

Offices of the

Of her then

being in op-position with the Sunne.

de Somn.Scip.

lul Firmic.in

lib.2.de creat. Mund

we see her to be but four or fine daies old. Therefore it was very conuenable, that thefe two famous lights shold illuminate the earth at one instant. I say moreouer, that the Moone then being in opposition with the Sunne, fhee must needs have her being on the other fide of the figne Libra, for in her fo being, the performd the fame day the effects as the Sunne did, illuminating all the world, by her measurable pace of that dayes journy; which elfe she could not have done, if the had bin in any other place of the Zodiaque. Heereby it appeareth, that this opinion is the most likely although Iulius Firmicus will needs fay, that the Moone (at the time of her creation) had her first feating in the fifteenth degree of the figne Cancer, where shee affecteth most to be; & of this opinio is Macrobine, in his first Book of Scipius dreame. Macrob in lib. As for the other Planets, it is very diffi-

cult to certifie them, and leffe profitable to know them: in which respect, I am willing to bestow the lesse paines on them. Neuerthelesse, Inline Firmicus, in his second Booke before alledged, is fo bold as to name the places where each of them is feated, faying: Saturne should bee in the figne Capricorne ; Inpiter in Sagittarius ; Mars in Scorpio : Venm in Libra : & Mars in Virgo; which are the fignes wherein they have most power, and being signes likewise appointed to these Planets. Elpa-Elpacouin Trast.Astrolog himfelfe maintayneth as much according as Ioannes Agricanus declareth in his Ioan Agrican. in Sum.Agric. Summary, entitled Agricano; with Macro-Macrebin lib. bius in his fore-named Booke of Somno Scipionis, and thereunto confenteth Julius Firmicus, naming expressly the same signs, yet there are others, who have thought, that in the recited instant, all the Planets were found to be in conjunction with the Sunne. Gaultierus the Monke, in his book of the Ages of the world, faith, that the ancient Indians held firmely this opinion. As for my felfe, I am of the minde, that

God did then fet the Planets in fuch di-

stant places, one from another, especially from the Sunne; that on such a chosen

the earth with his beames. VVhich could

not be, they beeing in coniunction with the Sunne, because his presence, within a-

ny certaine space or proportion, so hindereth the greatest luster of their light, that

must be but very little too, euen as when they cannot bee discerned on the earth. Notwithstanding, beeing created according to the will of God : It [ufficeth (faith Augustine) that they were made, in beeing Augin Gen. perfected by the hand of God, whose workes cap.6. (in what kinde foeuer they be) are perfect.

CHAP. XXXV.

That men may learne examples by Birdes. Flyes Wormes, and other Creatures, to leade the course of a vertuous life.

TEe haue already declared in our first Volume how Beasts & Birds In the fiftee haue enstructed men in a great part of the the 7.Booke properties appertaining to Physicke, by purging and preferuing themselves from harmes: now I am briefely to entreate, how their example may bee profitable to vs, both in body and foule. And vndoubtedly, who foeuer wil confider & contemplate, on the nature & properties abiding in beafts; shall not onely thence derine good enstructions for life and safety of our humane bodies; but rules and examples belide, of good, commendable, and vertuous manners. VVhy do not men striue to purchase peace with their neighbours; feeing what concord and amity is among brute beats, Beafts of allkindes, and how they keepe exampled m company, vnite themselues together in each kinde, and stand defensive one for another? VVhy shame they not to bee flothfull and negligent, perceiuing & ob- | Slothfulleste feruing the care and follicitude of the Ant, and after what manner shee maketh her pronision in Summer for VVinter? VVhat vaffals and fubiects are they, that will not serue and honor their good Prin- to Princes ces;noting with what love and obedience taught by poore little Bees ferue and honour their King, and that which they doe for him befide? In which respect, such Commonweales as haue no Prince, but enjoy all Against comthings in common; may not they learne that have no prince. cord, by imitation of the poore Ants, who are fo great in multitude, and yet preserue an order of peace & inflice among themfelues? And why do not great Lords and Princes confider, what manfuetude and Of clemency clemency all of them are obliged vnto; mde.

For good or-

mitted tho-

friendship, & good turnes

Inducements to vertuous life. Chap.35.

when they but behold the King of Bees, I the poorest bread they cate. If a man who doth no offence, neyther worketh any displeasure to the very meanest and sillieft of his Subjects? Our great Seigniors and high-mind-

edmen, may learne humility of the Camell, who falleth on his knees, to accept a heavy and ouer chargeable burden. I'rue and loyall married couples, may take example by the good custome among some Birds: especially Pigeons and Turtle-Doues, noting both in the Male and Female, that nothing but death can impeach their continuall companying, or hinder eyther from their first choyse. I finde written moreover, concerning Turtle-Dones, that the one dying, the other re-

maineth in the condition of a widdow, &

finisheth the remainder of her life in wid-

dowhood. Saint Ambrose writeth, that widdowed women may learne chastity of

the Turtle-Doue. As touching continen-

cy, all beafts (well neere) do letion vs ther-

in: for after the Female hath conceived, the neuer feeketh, or hath any appetite to

the Male, till her full time be determined.

They are likewise examples of temprance

then sufficeth to maintaine life, neyther

fleepe they any more then necessity re-

To keepe our selues well and discreetly

giue it to his Hens, and when need requi-

reth, he will expose himselfe to all perils

in their defence. The great obligation.

wherein children standeth bound to their

Parents, and how they ought to ferue and

assist them, the Storke plainly witnesseth;

by nourithing their aged Parents in their

owne nefts, as they fedde and maintayned

Examples of in all vices; because they eate no more

quireth.

gouerned, the Peacoke may be our direaion. For defence and maintenance of For good and our houses, as also to line liberally among our people; what better enstructer can we have then the Cock? For he will part with the food out of his owne Beake, to

Duty in chiltheir parents

row feare and Faithfulneffe

them in their youth. Why should not men blush and be ashamed, to commit frailty and finne through feare, knowing the inuincible courage of the Lyon? Faithfulnesse, friendship, and acknow. ledgement of received benefits, wee are notably taught by the meere behaulour

of Dogs; that neuer forget the Masters

they have ferued, but continually love

them, neuer ceasing to bee thankfull for

would benefit himfelfe by the vie of another mans goods, yet without any harme or in ury done him; let him fo carry him felf in that cafe, as doth the little laboring Bee, who draweth hony out of the faire if flowers, and yet no wrong, at all done to

VVhat meanes and order we should daily observe, for healthfull conternation of our lives, we are not to learne it of any one beaft onely, but of many, that know what food doth soonest offend them, as alfo in with-drawing from one place to another, according to the mutation of times. Moreover, they will live in such foyles, as are answerable to their con:plexions and natures: excelling men herein as well as in all other things belide. VVhy should not men be absolutely learned, and ignorance in any thing quiere moued from them, beeing endued with derftanding. hearing and understanding: considering that an Elephant learneth whatfoeuer is shewne and taught him; a Dog attaineth to many familiar qualities; and Birds can fpeake, being thereto enstructed? He that heareth the Nightingales sweet Songs. and fome other mellodious Birds; how can he but defire to fing mufically? VV hy couet not men to be excellent builders, arte beholding the Swallowes skilfull enftruction; what arte thee declareth for her owne dwelling, and with what diverfity of matter it is composed? VVhat better Geometry. Geometry, then that of the Spide: ? What better Aitrologye, then that of the Ante, & likewise of a Fish (according to Galen) Galen in lib.4 called " Vranoscopos, that having but one * A Fish eye, vet lookes continually vp to heaven? whole eye

are meerely ignorant in these Artes? How many other industrious and excellent persections are in brute Beafts, which men either haue, or elfe may learne of them? Paffages under ground, making of Caues in the earth, and knowledge der ground. how to dwell in them; came they not first from the Mole and Fox? There are certaine little VVormes, in Latine called . eres, that enstructed the meanes and manner to spin and make Silke. Next, the Spi der taught how to spin thred for cloth, & fo to make Nets, whereby to catch Birds. Men learned of Beafts to swim in the water, for there is no one of them but can do the water.

417

Aftrologye.

Haue men reason and judgement, and yet is alwayes directed vp-

Making of

Aaking of Swimming in

The Planer conjunction with the Sun day, each one of them might illuminate

Gasttánlib, de Micad.cap.5.

de Som.Scip.

Rules for philedge in wea-

Our wearing The cheefest fupport of our

Examples concerning the loule.

rables groun

Beafts com-

ture, for our

imitation,

Reasonabl: men inftruct. ed by exam-

ple of bruite

beafte.

August.in lib.

practife and learning. What Physicall rules they have taught men, and knowledge in the changes of weather, hath elfe where bene handled; and yet notwithstading we make fuch provision of them, for supply of hunger and other necessities, as I know not how wee could live without their helpe. Our garments are made of theirs, and their flesh is our best Foode: both beeing brought home to vs from far remote countreyes, and whatfoeuer is needfull for vs, or elfe we fend abroad to feeke after them. They labour, and make the earth plyable for our vie; whence we get our bread, and the best fruites of su-Stentation, so that they are the principall maintenance of our lines. And although they are fore laboured, purfued, and euill entreated by the splcenes of men : yet are they still obedient, both knowing, following, and euermore dooing them fer-

Come wee now to examples concerning the foule, as a matter of higher Argument, and much greater importance. Whence can a man derine more worthie examples, both for vertues and good manners meete to bee in men, then from beafts? All those Vertues which naturall All moral Pa- Philosophers hath perswaded vnto vs, are grounded on the fimilitudes and parables of Beafts: Oratours serued their turnes with them; and all that have spoken or written elegantly.

God and his Saints have oftentimes in facred Scripture, inftructed and perin holy Scripfivaded vs, by the properties & conditions of beafts, for the perfection of our lines: And the rules of vertue and civil manners do tell vs, that we should be wise like Serpents, and simple as Doues; milde, like Lambes, and strong and constant as Lyons. In like fort, by the example of bruite beafts, and voide of reason; we are taught to become men reasonable, and spiritually affected. We finde many Offices & estates in the Church, applyed and figured by beaftes, and according vnto theyr properties. By Oxen (according to S. Augustine, writing on the second Chapter of S. John) fuch men are fignified, as 149. Januarap. 2. doepublish and preach the holye Scriptures: for they till and plough uppe the knotted furrowes of our foules, fowing therein the feedes of Gods most glorious

it; yet men cannot attaine thereto, but by | word.

Saint Paule, and Salomon in his Prouerbes docth fay; Thou fhalt not muzzle the mouth of the Oxe that laboureth, Rom. 9. verse 7. Prouerb. 12.chap. 14. The holy Doctors and Preachers of the Church, that with Doctrine and good Lawes doe Gregorin ld gouerne and defend it, are termed Dogs. Saint Gregorie speakes it on the wordes of 10b : Quorum non dignabar patres ponere cum cambus gregis mei. The fame Saint Gregorie, inuiteth men vnto a contempla. Contempla tiue kinde of life, by the immitation of life, Goates, that alwayes climbe vp to high places, spending there their time in contemplation as it were: the wordes in Leuitieus feem his motiue thereto, Leuitic. chapt. 14. verse 12. Out of the Herd let the Goate be offered.

Moreouer hee fayth, that Preachers Green, in 14 should immitate the Cocke; as ground- wifere. ing on the words of 10b, who fayde ; Who Preachers hath given understanding to the Cock? Adthey proclaime (in the dimme darkeneffe of this life) the glorious light that is to come, and awake vs with their shrill voyces, out of fleepy finnes, faying with S. Ephel. 3,9. Faul. The night is past and day approacheth. And againe, It is time for vs to arife from sleepe looke abroad yee iust, and sinne not. Phil.1.12.

The Church her felfe, pure, holy, and The Church immaculate, is compared to a Doue, as a Doue. Salomon declareth in his Canticles, faying. Beholde, thou art faire my Loue, thine Cant. 3,12 eyes are like the Doues. And againe in another place: Omy Loue, Omy Done. We fee likewife, that of the foure Euangelists three are figured by three beaftes. If I wold continue longer on this argument, I could finde matter enough to discourse But aboue all other, that of our Sa- Iclus Chrift uiour and Redeemer Iesus Christ, is the beast. most notable, who would bee figured by a Beaft, as Saint tohn speaketh in his Apocalypfe, chapt. 7. verse 14. The Lyon of the Tribe of Indah bath beene victoriom. And David fayeth in his Pfalmes, Rouze Pfalmerso, thee like a Lyon: and fo in many other places, which were too long to rehearfe. Befide, in S. Mashew, he tearmeth himfelfe Matth. 3,33 a Hen, Taying ; O Ierufalem, Ierufalem how often would I have gathered thee & thy children together as the Hen gathereth bir Chickens under her wings, and ye would not.

Chap.36. Of Neglect in Military Discipline.

Christs works |

Man more of God then all his other cre-

giue worfe

Seeing then, that Christ compareth his workes to the properties of Beaftes; the proper, men may doe well to receive instruction from them, in leading a good and holie life. And contrarywife, what shame and confusion is it to vs, to see and know, that all kinde of Beafts do follow theyr nature perfectly, and men (onely made reasonable) vie their owne fo badly, abusing that fuper-excellent gift very vilely. For, he that ought most to honor God, dothmost of all offend him, and farre beyonde all other creatures, dayly peruerting and adulterating his works. So that there are some beafts, of whome men may learne much better examples, then from some kind of men among whom they line. For they haue more apprehension of instice, and offend farre leffe, their men that knowe what is their dutie, and yet do it not. And therefore, God deliuereth it by the mouth

CHAP. XXXVI.

of the Prophet Efay : The Oxe knoweth his

Master, and the Affe his Cribbe; but Ifrael

knoweth him not neither will his people vn-

derstand him.

Of neglect in Martiall Discipline: and of an Army of Christians, that lost all their liues thorow drunkennesse, and want of following such courses, as are to be obserued in Military affayres.

REE haue already declared,

how Bayan Chinfan, Lieute-

the eight dapt of the 1.Book in the full volume.

nant to the Tartarian Emperor Cublay, and directer of his Military forces, tooke 12 Cities and Townes (by affault) at his first arrivall, for conquering the great Prouince of Maugy, before all the rest would yeeld themselues tributary. One of them was vtterly ruined to the very foundation and worse ysed then any other known to be, during the Empire of the faid Cublay, which was aboue fixe and thirtie yeares'. This City being called Cinguinguy, was the fecond in wealth, greatnesse, and multitude of inhabitants, in all the rich Kingdome of Mangy, and the reason why it

was wholly ruined, followeth thus.

Bayan Chinfan, purfuing his Conquest, was much withflood by a strong Castle, builded vpon a finall mountaine, very potent by naturall fituation, and artificiall constructure. For therein continued a powerfull Garrison, that preuayled with great aduantages on his Army, paffing a- Hic refifielt long the foote of that Mountain: and this Bayans pafwas the reason that he would proceed on fage. no further, till hee had derined fome better correspondencie from the people of this Garrison. And yet he durst promise to himselfe, that (within some small distance of time) he should preuaile against them, as afterwardes it prooued true in-In the meane while, and at the felffame

inftant, the explorators or fcoutes vvere Return of his come backe againe, which he had fent to Conguinguy furueigh the estate of Cinquinguy, who made knowne vnto him, that the people of the Citty appeared, to know nothing of his comming, neyther flood vpon any guard, or preparation to expect a befiedging. This was the cause (to the end hee might the better preuent them) that hee forthwith dispatched a squadron of thirty thousand men, armed at the lightest, and very good foldiers, all of them being chri-Stians (which came among the Tartarian gaue to his Idolaters in open liberty, as the Iews have iquadron of done from all times of antiquity, and day-

ly yet doe) to possesse themselves of the Citie, and hinder the entrance of any fuccour, either by way of power or victuals, affuring them likewise, that he would follow them with all conucnient speede that might be. This warlike band of Christians, made The Christi-

fuch speedy diligence, that (within three dayes) they arrived before the Citty, and guinguy lodged themselues on the Ditches side, before any in the Citty took notice therof. They made the scalado in so many seuerall places, and disposed their Archers fo conveniently, as no one durst peep out at any of the battlements, or elfebe feene vpon the wals. At length, the befiedged (imagining the army that had thus engirt the, was of far greater strength then it was indeed) being ouercome with feare, ren- Themen of dred themselues to the discretion & mer-cy of the assaylants, to the end, they might Christians. finde the more humanity at their handes. The gates being fet open, the Christians entred taking up their lodgings in feue-

The careleffe continuing ftill in furfet and drunken

The Army of

flaine in their

drunkenneile and fhame-

fully vied by

the Inhabi

The strong

Caftle taker

by Bayan,&

tydings brought him

of his mens

A Parlie re-

quited before further pro-

aniwer retur

ned by them

of Cinguin-

flaughter.

Christians

rall houses. And these indiscreete conquerors, without any other care of military discipline, finding the Citty well furnithed with victuals of all kindes, & whatfocuer was needfull for the life of man, but (aboue all) plenty of rich wines; fell to making themselves good cheere, and drinking hard, after the German manner, their victory, till they fell afleepe with the pots in their

Hecrcuppon the Inhabitants finding themselves deceived in yeelding to so final a number of people, that had no better understanding in actions of warre, neither knew how to vie the fortune fo fairely befalne them; began to consult heereon with themselves, and how to worke their deliuerance with as much speed, as they were ouer-hafty in lofing their liberty. The Christians continuing in this drunken behauiour, without any feare at

all of the Inhabitants, that lodged the Soldiors in their houses, though not halfe fo many as they were able to receive: in one night it was fully concluded that euery host should kill his guest, and so it was accordingly performed. Afterward, they threw their bodies into the great River, which runneth through the midft of the Citty faving: These are the renegadoes and faith-breakers, men of Christian Religion, of whom the Emperour Cublay made no great account, but suffered them to carry croffes in their Enfigns, to shame them the more in their least ill demea-

Eayan Chinfan having furprized the forefaid castle, commanded the Captains to be hanged, and the castle quite ruined but pardoned all the Soldiours, iourneying afterward on to Cinquinguy : but within leffe then two dayes journey, hee heard how all his men were flaine, therefore hee brought a strong fie ige before the Citty. The Inhabitants were not a little amazed, beholding so powerfull an Army to befet them, and conducted by a man fo highly renowned: and therefore defired to have a Parlee before any farther proceeding which accordingly was granted. The fumme of the Oration propounded by the Deputies, was thus. That they could not deny a manifest truth, but that they had flaine a number of runnagates, mafterleffe men, feeming to haue no faith

parance of their power; but fuddenly furprized their Citty. Moreover that they were all Christians, more addicted vnto wine and gourmandizing, then any refpect of valour or manhood: in which regard, his loffe was little or none at all, by specied then the deserved overthrow of such carelesse manhood people, and they humbly defired pardon, if in this case they had transgressed.

Bayan returned his answer brauely Bayans reph and fuccincity, faying. His men were to the men of warriours, that had no other direction in Cinquinger. this businesse, but commaund from his mouth onely, and he had beene well enformed that they tooke the Citty by faire order of warre; without offending any one in their goods, or violence offered to wives or mayds, or difarming any Inhabitant, but fuffering them to continue in their wonted liberty. And in being Christians, they did not therefore descrue The Christians death, because he could as well tollerate ans defended them, as his Master the Emperour, who festion, and not onely suffered them to line in all his whole king. Countries, without the least injury done vnto them; but having conquered kingdomes, wholly Christian, he neuer inno-uated any matter touching their Religi-ligion. on. Moreover, the greater part of Officers in his Court, and the very worthiest of his warriours, were all Christians, being men more faithful, and of better conuerfation, then any other Religion whatfocuer.

As for their neglect in martiall discipline, he did not allow it in them, but confessed, that they deserved death therein, which (doubtlesse) himselse would have inflicted on them; condemning them for beeing so forward, in executing any authority belonging onely to him. For which boldnesse (with an absolute deny- Bayandeniall of pardon or fauour) he vowed to bee fauour, row-reuen ged on the men of Cinguing uy; be-ingd-ah-ah cause (against all fidelity) they had flaine bloody rehis men, and declared monstrous ingratitude for their extraordinary manfuetude, and thence hee pretended to deriue his reason.

Hauing thus spoken, hee would see them no more, but in this rough manner In what man dismissed them . About an houre after, ner Bayan de he caused his Rammes and other Engines of battery, to bee mounted, for guinguy. destruction of the walles and houses, and within few dayes after, tooke the Citty,

to who gaue

by the perfidy of the Inhabitants, even as

A view of form fundifieders nearer to our felues, and speake of the

without any great refissance, putting all, whereof Anne de Montmorancy, Constar Thefault of the men to the fword, that were about 14 yeares of age. Women and maides went whither themselves pleased; but for their children, they were fold at the Out-crie, to fuch as would give the most mony for them: for there were certaine merchants of Beugala, which followed the army that did trafficke onely in fuch kinde of merchandife, and so do yet to this day. Afterward, vittailes beginning to faile, & the warlike enemy, having emptied the cittle of all the wealth; he commanded it to be fet on fire, and that the Army should not boudge thence, vntil it were intirely con-

This Citty was feated on a goodly ri-

comerce which it made with other coun-

In it was made the richest & fairest works

golde and filuer, as no other Citry in the

world beside had the like. There were al-

fo made tumptuous vessells (for all vses)

both of gold and filuer, by most admira-

ble cunning, and in great plenty : befides

costly clothes of fine Cotten, gold, silver

and filke. In briefe, it was the second or

third Citty (as then) in all those parts:

which was thus destroyed, thorow the

Troyan Illium by luxurie & whoredome.

fince when it was never rebuilded, or in-

habited. The ruines thereof may bee

feene to this day, whereat full many haue

potent aterritory: but it was thought to

proceed from the just displesure of God,

and for the bloudy mail acre of fo many

Protestants, ouerthrew with his horse-

men (wherein he was strongest) a great

part of the royall Catholique Armie,

Christians.

ton of the fi- uer, large and natigable, whereby, the guinguy, and the commodities made

ble, was commanded, putting the Z 25/t- in the Proteffats, in the battrile zers to flight, and the fayde Constable acDicux. taken prisoner. Heerenpon the Protestants becomming infolent, and veterly vnmindfull of Militarie Discipline : left their rankes, brake their order, gaue the chafe, purfuing after certayne runawayes, and, before they had fully conquered all their enemies; they beganne to gape after pillage with the Swart-rutters and Launce-knights. During this disorder, Monsieur de Guyse, a most wise and valiant Captaine, having yet left him a band of brane men, beganne to set vpon those worthie and negligent fellowes with his troupes, and used warrior running on the Protestants (who imagined they had the whole victorie, which and tooke the they knew not how to holde) got the Prince of Co tries, returned infinite profit and wealth. better of them, and tooke their Leader the Prince of Conde, becoming fole wronght with the needle, bothin cloth of maister of the field. Thus, not knowing how to vse Militarie Discipline, by breaking their rankes, following the chafe, and scraping for pillage, when they had gotten the better of their enemics fafe and foundly, yet not having wholly otiercome them : did they not declare themselves very vnaduised, becomming guilty and well worthie of death? I am perswaded, that all good warriours are drunkennes of Nestorian Christians, and of that opinion. And so it happened, for thus the Protestant Armie was veterly foyled, which was (wellneare) equall in The Proteffat great Captaines and good men to the Armyveely Royall. But fuch loffe doth almost daily happen, where Military discipline is not

stoode amazed, it being scituated in so obserued. They that (at so cheape a rate) tooke What the the Citty of Cinguinguy, should have Christians difarmed the Cittizens, seazed the strongest places into their owne power, plan- their victorie We may now come homeward, and ted Courts of guard in all the most fre- at Cinguinquented parts of the Citty, imprisoned guy. like faults, as were among these Tartathe chiefest persons, expelled out of the rian Christians, thorow lacke of know-Citry, a greater part of the youthfull and ledge, how to make vie of victorie: most forward men, if they would not As not long fince was feene in Fraunce, kill them, without vfing fuch courtefie in the first battaile ginen necre to Dreux, after conquest. In fo doing, they had betweene the French Protestants and the kept Martiall discipline on foore, and Catholiques, in the yeare of our Lord anoyded the loffe of their owne lines, God, 1562. vnder Charles the ninth. besides the reproach, to their great infamie. But ouer and aboue all the reit, Wine most The Prince of Conde, being chief of those they should (as much as in them lay) hurtful to any have abstavned from wine : For there is good souldinot anie thing, that fooner bereaueth a

good

or honesty, neither shewing any open ap-

good Souldiour of manly iudgement, and maketh him merely brutish in behaniour.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the miserable ends, and other strange trauerses, endured by diverse Kings, Emperours, Dukes, and other great Princes, within an hundred and fiftie yeares of these times.

The Authour shapeth his course in this argument af-ter Petrarke. Ccording to the imitation of Petrarke, I am defirous to deferibe the vnhappie ends, and other aduerfities, happening vnto diuerfe fa-

mous Christian Princes; as Kings, Emperours, Dukes, Popes, and other Prelates, living within an hundred and fiftie yeares of these dayes, some of them being familiarly knowne to vs; omitting fuch as the Greekes and Latines have fet downe in their writings, because I would not be troublesome to the Reader, by repearing Histories else-where to be read; (and perhappes) knowne to him before. Aduice toper- And if it come to passe, that any worthie fons of honor person, constituted in some eminent dignitie, chaunce to feele the ficklenesse of Fortune, by fuch occasions as shall ensue in this Chapter; let him take comfort, and forfake all fadnesse; for it is no meane confolation to the miferable, to have ftore of companions ranked with them in their disasters.

George King of Bohemia in Anno 1466.

and eminence

We will begin then with a king of Bohemia named George, who lived in the yere 1466, who was reputed to be a man of great wisedome, and was elected (in sede vacante) or inter-regnum after the death of I adillaus, who died on the very day of his marriage, folemnized at Prage, the capitall cittie of his Kingdome, hauing taken in marriage Madame Magdalen, daughter to Charles the feauenth King of Fraunce. This George hauing obtayned the amitie of many in the Kingdome, and making himfelfe much feared beyond many other; was installed King, and gane his daughter in marriage, to Mathias King of Hungarie. In his elder yeres

Ferdinand King of the Romaines, bro ther to Charles the fifth , Emperour, poffessed himselfe of his Kingdome, he holding then but a finall portion thereof, because hee was molested many yeares before, by the Kings of Poland, Hungaria, and fome Emperours, by the folicitation of Pope Paule, the second; King George for fattouring of the Hussites Doctrine, Hussites reliin which cause he was so vehemently af- gion. flicted, that it shortened his dayes. He dyed much bemoaned; for in his youth, and while his body held the strongest vigour, hee performed many notable and worthic exploits in warres against the Turkes.

Another Prince, some short while before, Charles Bourgony, Sonne vnto Phillip, one of the most potent and vndoubted Christian Princes, that was in those times, beeing in the yeare of our Lord God, one thousand soure hundred and two and twenty. Hee vnderstoode himselfe to be so rich and mightie, that hee pretended to create himselfe a King . But Fredericke the third of that name, beeing then Emperour, would not admit fuch an advancement of his Countrey. His father left him great store of coyne, and many large reuenewes of diuerfe Seigneuries: hauing lent foure hundred thousand crownes to Charles the seauenth , holding all the fand crowned Townes and Countries, on, and about Charles the the river of Somme; as Amiens, Abe- Caucath. wille, Saint Quintines, and others beside. Hee held also (by way of mortgage) of Sigifmund, Archduke of Austria in Germany, the lands to him belonging, both on this fide, and beyond the River of Rheine, and the Earledome of Ferrat, for three score and tenne thousand flo-rins: whereby ensued, the Gouernour Charles disc which he placed ouer those Lands, was of Burgape, with the cause of diuerse misshapes and ignominies, that followed vpon him very he was Lord fuddenly.

Moreouer, hee was Lord of foureteenegoodly Provinces; as the Dutchy of Bourgogne, the French Court, of Flanders, Brabant, Holland, Zeland, Frizeland, Henault, Artois, Namures, Gueldres, Luxembourg, Verecht, and Embourg, all which Countries valewed well a large Kingdome.

And in regarde of his pompe and

Chap.37. wealth, he became so proude, that hee durst vndertake the boldnesse (vpon some fmall suspition conceined, that Lewes the eleuenth King of Fraunce, had intelligence with them of Liege, beeing then his enemies) to imprison the fayd King in the great Tower of Peronne, where they met both together, under the colour of friendly conference. And there he made him condifcend to follow him (like a water Spaniell) in the warres, which hee had against the Inhabitants of Liege, euen vntill hee had ruined theyr Townes, and all the Countrey: Heere feated Edward king of England, beeing expelled from his Kingdome: giuing him mony, and an armie by Sea, to bring it to paffe.

Afterward, hee would needes coape in Armes with the Emperour, and (almost) all the Princes of Germanie : belieging The bold pre- the Towne of Nuz (which is not farre from Colsigne) for the space of a yeare, fumption of Charles duke Burgogne. but all in vaine. Euery one reputed him to be great, happy, and innincible: but we shal soone perceive the contrary, and how (by little and little) hee trode the path to his owne ruine, as briefly I purpofe to relate, It fortuned, that this Charls had inflituted as Gouernour ouer those Lands, which he held mortgaged by the Arch Duke of Austria: a thiefe and tyrant, named Peter de Hagembach, Counte of Thierstein , who (fo much as in him untering lay) tormented both them of Mulhuse.

hoode, and afterwards beheaded him in the open Market place. Next, the seauenty thousand florins were configned ouer to a Banquer of Bafile, and to the Duke it was fignified by an Herald, that hee held no more right The begin-ning of the Dukes downouer the Country, then what the Arch-Duke had mortgaged vnto him. Hereat hee grew verie highly offended, and fought all meanes how to be reuenged; especially for the death of Peter de Ha-

putie to Duke and the Switzers : whereupon, they took

him prisoner, and hauing proceeded a-hultin, degra ted and be-gainst him by due forme of Lawe: they

degraded him of his order of Knight-

gembach. Then hee affembled an Armie, being affisted by the Duke of Millame, and the Dutchesse of Sauoy; taking Lausanna, which was confedered with the Switzers.

Thence hee went and besieged the

Towne and Castle of Granson, Solliciting them to yeeld themselues. They hauing humbly submitted themselues, the buke. Duke commaunded foure score of them to be hanged, and an hundred more to A most inhubee drowned, in the nearest Lake ad-mane deed of ioyning to the Cittie. This inhumane act did not onely moue the Switzers; but likewise them of high Germanie, who with an Army belonging to the Arch-Duke of Auffria (whereof Harman d'Ex. The Duke tingen was the conducter) expelled the Granfon, and Duke from Granfon, and flew a great part his furniture of his Army; taking beside, his Artille- tor warre tarie and furniture for warre, which was, great and rich. Afterward, taking downe

The moueables of his house, which The Dukes hee would alwayes have carryed along moueables with him, were of extraordinary valew: with him in for among them were fo many rich tents, warre. all of coffly filkes, and veffells both of golde and filuer, embellished with store of precious stones, that it would require too long time to recount them. There were some Switzers, that fold great store of filuer plates, for two great blankes a pecce, not knowing their valew and estimation . A Diamond, thought to bee the greatest and clearest: that those times | The great affoorded; and, esteemed more worth simplicine of then fiftie thousand crownes, was folde the Switzers for twelve Sols. A faire bathing tubbe of the Dukes of filuer, richly guilded, wherein he vied treasure. to bathe himselfe, was solde for source pounds. I cannot heere set downe, the rich clothes of Tapistrie, wrought with vn-ualuable workes of filke and golde, for him to treade on wherefoeuer hee went. To be briefe, the Reader would be wearied in rehearfall of the incredible wealth

made their triumph. Then falling into a long and greeuous sickenesse, at the length hee recouered, and taking courage to himfelfe againe, hee returned the fecond time against the power and force of the Switzers. Hee had formerly taken Nancie from Rene, Duke of Lorraine; wherefore the fayde Duke of Lorraine forthwith ioyned his forces with the Swit-

and riches, which this vnfortunate prince

loft, and whereof his greatest enemies

O 2

The

all their friends, which the Duke had caufed to bee hanged, in their places they hung vp as many Bourgognions.

Fascic.Temp Mater Histor.

Rene Duke of Lorraine.

A third battel vndertaken and loft alfo.

The vanity of the Bourguig-Dukes death

Naucler, in lib

The vnfortu-

nate end of

fo great a

Duke.

7.cap.10.

as the Duke of Lorraine, and hee recouering the Towne of Nancy; returned with fresh forces, and besiedged it againe with fourteene thousand able sighting men, beside some other bandes in expectation. The Duke of Bourgongne was discomfited, and all his army; but by no meanes could his body be found. The Bourguignons could not be perfivaded that hee was flaine: but having escaped from the field, hee had retyred himselfe into Germanie, where he had vowed to live in feuen years

There were fome Bourguignous, that

Morat, the people of the Towne yffued

forth, and so beset the army of the Bour-

quienons, that twenty thousand (accor-

ding to Fafeiculus Temporum) ortwentie

two thousand, and seuen hundred (accor-

ding to the Mother of Histories) were ther

flaine. The spoyle was left to the Duke

of Lorraine, who likewife recourred Nan-

A third time likewise, the Duke of Bour-

ongne, being not a little offended, that he

shold be vanquished by so mean a Prince

ey againe afterward.

penitence.

made fale of precious Stones, Horfes, and fuch like things, to be paide againe vpon his returne, and namely to Brachelles; in the Diocesse of Spire. There was a poore Begger, immagined to bee the Duke of Bourgongne, because he lived in the like estate of penance; which made verie many trauaile to fee him, and bestow very liberall almes on him. Nauclerus reporteth. that he faw the poore man begging in the fame place. The King of France, hearing the Duke was dead, seized on Montdidier, Roye, Peronne, Abbeuille, Monstreul, Arras, Hefdin, and the two Bourgongnes, to wit the Dutchy and Countie. The men of Gaunt tooke his Daughter, that gouerned his estates very poorely, and marryed her as themfelues pleafed; the having put to death the Chancellor, and other of his best officers. Thus you see how this great Prince ended his life, accompanied with many misfortunes.

Vladiflams, King of Poland, a young and Vladiflaus K gallant Prince, was called by the Hungaof Poland and Hungaria, & rians to be their King, in the yeare 1440. howe little a He conceined fuch glory by feeing himwhile hee en. felfe King of two fuch mighty Kingdoms, that he thought himselfe to be inuincible. Whereuppon, being defirous to imploy

The Duke of Bourgongne being before, his valour in warre against some enemie, that might take notice of his courage and power; he brake faith and Truce, which the Hungares had made with the Turk the yeare before. In the first battayle hee gaue, he was quickely flavne, and hadde but a shortenioying of his two Kingdomes; for, thorow the inconstancie of Fortune, his pretended felicity was foon cut off, and all his supposed power vtterly quailed.

The Emperor of the East, Constantine Paleologus, some fifteen yeares after, went Paleologus, to keepe company with this young King Empero Vladiflaus, in the other world. For Con- the East. stantinople, the Metropolitane Cittie of his Empire, was besiedged and taken by Mahomet the fecond fir-named the Great thorow the negligence and treacherie of Iohn Iustinian of Geneway; Mahomet hauing 300000. able fighting men, and flowered fourchundred Cannons, and the fiedge fore Coultant continued threefcore dayes. The Emperour (in flight) was met withall, and murthered neere vnto the Gate: his head being carryed upon a Launces point, and foconucighed quite thorow the Cittie, for for body to while his bodye was trodden vnto dirte den vnder with their feete. Mahomet also caused a foote, and head out of. Crucifixe to bee erected, and wrote vppon it (in scorneful derision) these words: This is the GOD of the Christians : commanding likewise, that every one should cast dung and filthe vppon the fayre I-

The wife to the Emperour, with her The Mame daughters, and the very Noblest Ladyes done vnto the attending on them, were brought before he. daughten Mahomet; and after all reproach was done vnto them, euen the verie greateft Villa nies in the world, their bodies were hacked and hewne in peeces.

Some few dayes after, there was another King (but of three dayes standing) put to death likewise. VVhich I may by no meanes omit because it was the forenamed John Justinian the Genouele, a trayterous Villaine. For hee had concluded The Treason with Mahomet, that if he would make him
King he would week a concluded of John Iuffinian, and his King, he would yeelde vp Constantinople, | iuft requirall orbethe meanes whereby hee shoulde furprize it. Mahomet kept promisewith standing. him; for hee constituted him a King for three dayes space : and on the fourth day, hee commanded his head to bee finitten off. So fayerh Fasciculus Temporum; and

about the Moneth of May. I am sure few people are ignorant, in what Beds of state, the noble Kings of

France vie to take their rest, and under

what rich Pauillions; yet the inquity of

our times hath beene such, that a Kings

lodging hath bene more vile then a laxe.

I speake of King Charles the eight of that

name, who returning home to his king-

dome, having beene in Italy, where hee

conquered the kingdome of Naples, and

the great Dukedomes of Calbria and A-

pulia, and wonne two famous battailes in

those countries: vpon a Palme Sunday

Eeue, being the seuenth of Aprill, one

thousand foure hundred ninety eight, lea-

Bretaigne, to see certaine Gentlemen

play at the Tennis, in a Ditch belonging

to the Castle of Amboife, entred into an

olde broken, vncouered Gallery, where

he gaue his head a great blow against the

vpper part of the doore, albeit himfelfe

was but of lowe stature. Taking hold vp-

pon some stayes for his recourry, neere

vnto a noyfome place, where enery one

their vrine, and other vncleannesse of the

and many of the Nobility? Hee that was

King of the sweete smelling Floure-de-

Luce, to expire and ende his dayes, not a-

mong hearbs or flowers of pleasing fa-

Of Charles the eight, K.

Chap.37.

His conquest of Naples, Calabria an

What fate

both orday-

ned to a ma

Little care

had of 10 fa-

that these things happened in the yeare, mour: but in a place full of filth, then one thousand foure hundred fifty three, which, the whole world could yeelde no worfe?

And to thew yee, that great Princes are as subject to dye in battailes, as the James the fimpleft Souldiours : Iemes, King of fourth, King Scottes, may ferue as an example, for of Scott fla hee was flayne in the field, with twoo Bishoppes, a great part of his Nobility, and many men of warre, that hapned in the yeare of our Lord, one thoufand fine hundred and thirteene. And the yeare following, John d'Albrot king Tohn d'Albret of Nauarre, loft his Kingdome, which King of Nawas leazed by Ferdinand King of Spaine, hard lothis kingdome, because hee stoode accursed by Pope Iulins, for affifting King Lewes the twelfth, in warre against him; and ading his Queene by the hand, Anne of bout all, in the battaile of Rauenna, which untill this present his Successionrs neuer enjoyed.

> And Lewes Sforza , Duke of that Lewes Sforrich and goodly Countrey of Millaine, Millaine, Millaine, con was led prisoner into Fraunce, flying fined in pribefore the French to Nanarra, a Citty fon, where he of his Dukedome; hee was confined dyec. to imprisonment, within the great Tower of Bourge, where (in great want and pouertie) hee finished his dayes.

that would (by custome) vied to let passe What shall wee say of King Franbody; he was contented to endure it, and ces, first of that name, the Father of first, King of flood there merrily discoursing with the Learning, whose wisedome and mag- France, the pairone Queene, and other noble persons there nanimitie, could not warrant him a- of learning present, judging who deserved best of gainst the Ambuscadoes of Fortune, no them that played. Suddenly hee was more then any of them before rememouercome with a rheume or catarre, bred? Hee fell into the hands of Charles which taking from him all his strength the fifth, Emperour, envious of his and motion in every part of his body, he greatnesse, and had beene his compewas depriued likewise of his speech. This titour in the Empire, opposing himselfe against many of his dessignes. Hee dewas perceived by all there-about him, and mous a King, how he lay vppon the ground, in such a tayned him prisoner aboue a yeare; duain fogreat foule, flinking, and vnseemely place; yet ring which time, hee had a most yrkean extremity, to lethim die no one had the care, or subject-like affefome disease, which compelled him (for o fo finking Gion, to beare him thence to his royall enioying of his liberty, to yeeld to many hard and grieuous conditions. As, bed, which was not about twenty paces to renounce and disclayme a multitude The hardenof rights, which hee pretended to many forcements of Heelanguished in this manner, for the space of nine houres, and dyed there | Dukedomes, Earledomes, and King-King Frances in that noyfome place. Is it not a matdomes. Befide he gave fo great a quantity ter deferring admiration, that so worthy of money, as well for his expences, as difa King should dye in so vile a place, being charge of martiall affaires, and his ranin his owne house, among his Officers, some withall, that his kingdome (for euer

> after) felt the smart thereof. And not onely have temporall Princes felt the rigour of inconstant Fortune; but Ecclesiasticall persons also,

ioved both owne folly.

The Author Speaketh now of Spirituall persons.

> deposed from his Office, and one called Martine, fifte of that name, feated in his place, being likewise very inhumanly entreated, for the space of three yeares. Af-Pope Iohn terwardes, by the humanity of the fayde Martine, he was fet at liberty, and created imprifoned. Cardinall: whereby enery man may perceine, how farre this John was falne from

howfoener high and great degree they

haue carried in the world. For in the year

1410. Pope Iohn was put in prison, flying

his former degree.

The bishop of Liege, Bro ther vnto the Duke of Bour gongn, a lord both (piritual & temporal.

In the yeare 1466. the byshop of Liege brother to the fore-named Duke of Bourgongne, by his wife, who was of the house of Bourbon : beside his Office, hee was a Prince of the Empire, a Lord both spirituall and temporall, and holding fo great and rich a countrey, as that of Liege. He was taken prisoner by his subjectes, and a great fort of his friendes and officers (among whome were ten Abbots and Protonotaries, or Canons, al of worthy houles) maffacred in his prefence,& himfelfe kept prisoner for long time, and in great misery. At length hee got safely away, hauing (by money) won his Guards confent thereto.

The butchet ing of an arch bythop, and 4. Cardinals.

At Florence, in the yeare 1448.the arch-Byshop of the saide place, being cloathed in his habiliments of Priest-hood, and saying Maffe, was fodainely furprized, and hanged or strangled at a Window, by the hands of the hangman beside foure Cardinalles maffacred by the people, and many other Ecclesiasticall persons beheaded.

And although Popes (as hath beene held) by their great and spirituall authority, might impose silence vpon Christian Princes, from vndertaking warres, but to keepe themselues in quiet, and likewise to take armes at his command, for the affairs of the Christian world; yet it came so to passe, that Pope Clement was taken prisoner, and locked vp feuen months space in his castle of S. Angelo, kept by a guard of Spaniards and Germaines, and all of them Heretikes(wel-neere)about him. The City of Rome was greenoufly pilled, the Tem ples ranfacked and prophaned; all which happened by the Souldiers of Charles the

fift, a Catholike Emperour, in the years

After these men of Ecclefiasticall profession, it shall not differ much from our purpose, to conclude this chapter with from the Councell of Constance, and was given in guard to Lewes, Count Palatine, all three in one day to the end, we emay all in one day obserue how vnhappy it is for Princes, to thinke that they can well manage their affaires, in medling amongst the quarrels of other Princes, as puisant enery way as the-

It came to passe, that two Princes contended for the kingdome of Fex and Ma-locco, fituated in Barbarie of Affrica: the one of them being named Muley Mahu- met, & Abdel met, Nephew to the other that demaun-in Barbarie. ded thefe Realmes, called Abdelmelec. This Mahumet, who enjoyed those Kingdomes ten or twelue yeares, was affayled three or foure times by Abdelmelec, having gotten affiftance of the Turke, and wonne still the best in foure fought battailes. So that in the end, the inhabitants of Fez and Ma- expelled Ma- rocco receyued Abdelmelec: because Ma- ley Mahumu bumet was a Tyrant, had very few frends, Marocco. contemning enery one, and trusting altogether in his strength and Treasures. after all his losses in those former Bat-

Sebastian, King of Portugall, made offer Sebastian K. to him of his ayde and friendship, but hee offereth aid refused it; vntill such time as hee had ney-ther place or person to retire vnto, nor any to follow him. Moreouer, he had fpent the great heapes of money which hee had gotten together during his reigne, & now withdrew himfelfe into the Mountaines, which are fixe Leagues off from the Citty of Marocco, There hee lived about fea- The miferauen or eight months, like a theefe or rob- ble efface an ber, with some few companies of needie Muley Ma. persons, which yet againe were cut off by humet. the troopes of Abdelmelee; and Mahumet constrained to wander in the most vnacceffable places of the Mountaines, where he endured a million of miscries, for the space of a whole yeare, living in continuall feare and diffruft, onely thorough his conceyued opinion, that hee should bee taken, or betrayed in his fecret walkes.

In breefe, necessity compelled him to repent his former denials, and to require his friendly frecour offered by the friendly fuccour offered him, by that request the braue King of Portugall, Schaffian: vnto whom he fent an expresse Messenger, and (afterward) two of his Captaines. In the meane while, he found the means to def-

* An olde City of Mauritania, heere-tofore called

Chap.37.

gainst the o

pinion of all his friends.

field from

Portugall.

Abdelmelec.

with his ene-

cend from the Mountaines, by wayes of | nance for the field, well appointed & golittle or no refort, and fought for his fafety in " Tanger, 2 Towne which the Portugales held in Affrica: where hee was well entertained by the Gouernour, who knew some part of Sebastians minde towards him, and therefore furnished the two Captaines with well armed horsemen, for the dispatch of their Embassie in Portugall.

King Sebastifeeking openter Affrica. and his pretence, for the eduanceme fit of Christian Religion.

King Sebastian was very joyfull to fee these Ambassadors because he was naturally addicted to Armes, and the disposi-

tion of his person (ioyned with his height of courage) incessantly spurred him on to this businesse. And in this respect, hee did but awaite some apt ouerture, for making his passage into Affrica, forming his pretext, vppon an earnest desire (as hee would alwayes fay) which hee had to aduance Christian Religion, and to extirpate that of the Mahumetifts. Whereuppon he fuddenly promifed (without any better confideration of the businesse) to Succour Muley Mahumet, and to re-scate him in his kingdomes againe: hee made promise (I say) to such a one, as himselse had before fought vnto, for this effect, by fo large a paffage ouer the Seas, and two feuerall times had beene misorized by him. The Pope, the King of Spaine, and many other great personages, could not diffwadehim from this enterprize, but King Sebasti an pasted into Astrica afill he perfifted in treading the path vnto his owne death, death that followed him To hard at the heeles. So did hee fet on into Affrica, with thirteene hundred fayle, as well of great as small Vesselles in that Fleete, the very fayrest and goodliest that had bene seene in those times . His Ar-The Army is my was composed of Lance-knight, Spafull preparat. niards, Italians, Portugales, and some small number of Affricane Moores, which took part with the Portuguizes, and thirty fixe Pieces of Ordenance for the fielde, well fitted and furnished. In all, there was not aboue fixteene thousand men of warre; fetting afide the Soldiours boyes, Waggoners, Strumpets, Castadours, and other fuch like people very unprofitable for the The care of

Abdelmelec (wee may well perswade our felues) flept not all this while carelefly, for hee brought threefcore thousand to encounter men to the field as well Pykes as Harquebuziers, and twenty fixe Peeces of Orde-

uerned by most expert men. Abdelmelec was very forry, that hee should have any conquest against Christians, in regard he bare them much affection; not because he feared the Portuguizes, but as fore-feeing, that Barbary would proue the grane to the King of Portugall; who (indeede) was too weake to encounter with him, that went fo farre beyond him in power. And in due confideration of the cafe, hee would oftentimes thus fay to himfelfe. King Schaftian should bee more respective, melec did ofthen fo unaduifedly to runne upon his owne tentines com ruine: for he would take two king domes from case of King me, which in right and instice doe appertaine Schaffian. to me, and give them unto a Negro, wherein Christendome can no way be eafed or accommodated, neyther is it a thing which God (being iuft) will permit.

The report and rumors spread abroad,

of Abdelmelees valiant carriage, was the cause that every one came to offer him feruice and obeyfance; and from enery ches, and fer Prouince they brought him goodly pre- uice voluntafents and gifts of inestimable value. Many Christian Kings tooke pleasure in his by Christians friendshippe, and embraced him as their and others. kinde well-willer; esteeming themselues

diuers places, great store of Christians tranailed into his countries, where they received gracious entertainment, and hee shewed them much better countenance, then to any other men that reforted thither, helping them liberally in their necesfities . On the contrary part, Muley Ma- Muley Mahuhumet oppressed the Christians all the mets opprestime of his reigne, or else permitted, that fing the Chriall greefes and moleftations should bee done vnto them wherefore King Sebastian(in this respect) did greatly forget him-

happy in his acquaintance. So that from

Now to deteine the Reader no longer in suspence, the two Armies disposed the- How the two selues for the encounter, and mette in a Armies came field, which contained about two miles in the field in spaciousnesse, so cuen and plaine, that there was not any tree, graffe, brambles, or stones, to offer the least hinderance. The Army of Sebastian, had the River of Arache behinde it, and that of Abdelmelec, the River of Alcassar. Muley Mahumet, for whom this Tragedy was to bee acted, The trechery contrary to his oath and promife, did not bring with him any ayde for Sebastian, Schaftian, hauine

Pope Clemen taken prifo-ner,& Rome pilled by gree dy Soldiours.

1527.